
目录

1	INTRODUCTION	1
1.1	SERVICE INFORMATION	2
2	MAINTENANCE	18
2.1	MAINTENANCE ITEMS	19
2.2	INSPECTION ITEMS	25
3	ENGINE	30
3.1	ENGINE ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM.....	31
4	ENGINE	356
4.1	ENGINE MECHANICAL	357
5	ENGINE	430
5.1	INTAKE SYSTEM	431
6	ENGINE	460
6.1	EXHASUST SYSTEM	461
7	ENGINE	481
7.1	IGNITION SYSTEM	482
8	ENGINE	492
8.1	EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM.....	493
9	ENGINE	515
9.1	COOLING SYSTEM.....	516
10	ENGINE	547
10.1	LUBRICATION SYSTEM	548
11	ENGINE	570
11.1	STARTING AND CHARGING SYSTEM.....	571
12	ENGINE	591
12.1	FUEL SYSTEM.....	592
13	TRANSMISSION	613
13.1	TRANSMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM.....	614
14	TRANSMISSION	715
14.1	TRANSMISSION ASSEMBLY	716
15	7DCT	757
15.1	ELECTRONIC SHIFT	758
16	TRANSFER CASE	777
16.1	TRANSFER CASE	778
17	REAR FINAL DRIVE	784
17.1	REAR FINAL DRIVE	785
18	DRIVE SHAFT	803
18.1	DRIVE SHAFT	804

19 CHASSIS.....	813
19.1 SUSPENSION SYSTEM	814
20 FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT	862
20.1 FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT	863
21 SUSPENSION SYSTEM	869
21.1 TIRE AND WHEEL	870
22 SUSPENSION SYSTEM	879
22.1 TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM.....	880
23 BRAKE SYSTEM.....	914
23.1 FRONT BRAKE	915
24 BRAKE SYSTEM.....	926
24.1 REAR BRAKE	927
25 BRAKE SYSTEM.....	939
25.1 HYDRAULIC BRAKE	940
26 BRAKE.....	966
26.1 ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE SYSTEM.....	967
27 SUSPENSION SYSTEM	1004
27.1 BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM.....	1005
28 ELECTRONIC POWER STEERING CONTROL SYSTEM.....	1075
28.1 ELECTRONIC POWER STEERING CONTROL SYSTEM	1076
28.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1098
29 STEERING WHEEL	1107
29.1 STEERING WHEEL	1108
29.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1110
30 STEERING COLUMN MODULE (SCM).....	1114
30.1 STEERING COLUMN MODULE (SCM).....	1115
30.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1131
31 STEERING GEAR.....	1138
31.1 STEERING GEAR	1139
31.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1141
32 FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT	1145
32.1 FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT	1146
32.2 On-Vehicle Inspection	1148
33 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM.....	1152
33.1 Air Conditioning Control System.....	1154
34 SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM	1282
35 BODY ELECTRICAL	1355
35.1 AUDIO/VISUAL SYSTEM.....	1356
36 BODY ELECTRICAL	1381

36.1	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER SYSTEM.....	1382
37	BODY ELECTRICAL	1399
37.1	Driving Assist System.....	1400
38	BODY ELECTRICAL	1449
38.1	Blind Spot Monitoring System	1450
39	BODY ELECTRICAL	1530
39.1	Fatigue Monitoring	1531
39.2	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE.....	1538
40	BODY ELECTRICAL	1539
40.1	Head Up Display.....	1540
41	BODY ELECTRICAL	1594
41.1	Window/Sliding Roof.....	1596
42	BODY ELECTRICAL	1663
42.1	Backup Power Supply and Wireless Charging System.....	1664
43	BODY ELECTRICAL	1681
43.1	Wiper and Washer	1682
44	BODY ELECTRICAL	1709
44.1	LIGHTING SYSTEM	1710
45	BODY ELECTRICAL	1759
45.1	INTERIOR LIGHTING SYSTEM.....	1760
46	BODY ELECTRICAL	1778
46.1	CAN SYSTEM.....	1779
47	BODY ELECTRICAL	1805
47.1	HORN.....	1806
48	BODY ELECTRICAL	1814
48.1	BODY CONTROL SYSTEM.....	1816
49	BODY ELECTRICAL	1840
49.1	REMOTE CONTROL SYSTEM.....	1841
50	INSTRUMENT PANEL.....	1870
50.1	Warning and Precautions	1871
50.2	System Overview.....	1872
50.3	On-vehicle Service.....	1874
51	AUXILIARY FASCIA CONSOLE.....	1894
51.1	Warning and Precautions	1895
51.2	System Overview.....	1896
51.3	On-vehicle Service.....	1897
52	EXTERIOR.....	1904
52.1	Warning and Precaution	1906
52.2	System Overview.....	1907

52.3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1910
53	INTERIOR	1945
53.1	Warning and Precaution	1947
53.2	System Overview	1948
53.3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1951
54	SEAT	1976
54.1	Warnings and Precautions	1978
54.2	System Overview	1979
54.3	System Circuit Diagram	1999
54.4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2006
54.5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	2023
55	DOOR LOCK.....	2045
55.1	Warnings and Precautions	2047
55.2	System Overview	2048
55.3	System Circuit Diagram	2054
55.4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2056
55.5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	2072
56	DOOR.....	2092
56.1	Warnings and Precautions	2093
56.2	System Overview	2094
56.3	System Circuit Diagram	2097
56.4	Function Overview	2103
56.5	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2105
56.6	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	2113
57	ENGINE HOOD AND BACK DOOR.....	2134
57.1	Warnings and Precautions	2136
57.2	System Overview	2137
57.3	System Circuit Diagram	2142
57.4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2147
57.5	On-Vehicle Service	2164
58	BODY	2184
58.1	BODY DIMENSIONS	2185
59	BODY	2198
59.1	Information and Repair of Plastic Panel	2199
60	BODY	2201
60.1	Paint Coating	2202

INTRODUCTION

1.1	SERVICE INFORMATION	2
1	How to Use This Manual	2
2	Preparation	2
3	Service Operation	6
4	VEHICLE INFORMATION	8
5	Symbols	11
6	CIRCUIT DIAGNOSIS INFORMATION.....	12

1.1 SERVICE INFORMATION

1 How to Use This Manual

(1) General information

This manual includes all necessary procedures for service operations.

These procedures can be divided into following three categories:

- Diagnosis.
- Removal and installation, replacement, disassembly and assembly, inspection and adjustment.
- Inspection.

Following procedures are omitted from this manual. However, they must be performed.

- Use a transmission tray or lifter to perform operations.
- Clean all removed parts.
- Perform a visual check.

WARNING	This indicates that injuries to you or other people may happen.
CAUTION	This indicates that damage to repairing components may happen.
HINT	Provide additional information to help you with service operations.

(2) Service procedure

Illustrations for service procedures are used to identify components, show the assembling relevance of parts, and explain the visual check for parts. Removal and installation procedures are explained in words.

Service procedures include:

- Detailed removal and installation instruction
- Illustration
- Torque specifications
- Specifications

Sometimes, the illustrations of similar models are used. In this case, minor details may be different from actual vehicle.

(3) Diagnosis procedure

Diagnosis procedures are divided as below:

- Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC)
DTC is an important hint when troubleshooting is difficult to simulate. The malfunction can be diagnosed quickly and accurately by performing specified DTC diagnosis and check.
- Problem Symptoms Table
Malfunction locations can be determined quickly by troubleshooting in accordance with symptom type.

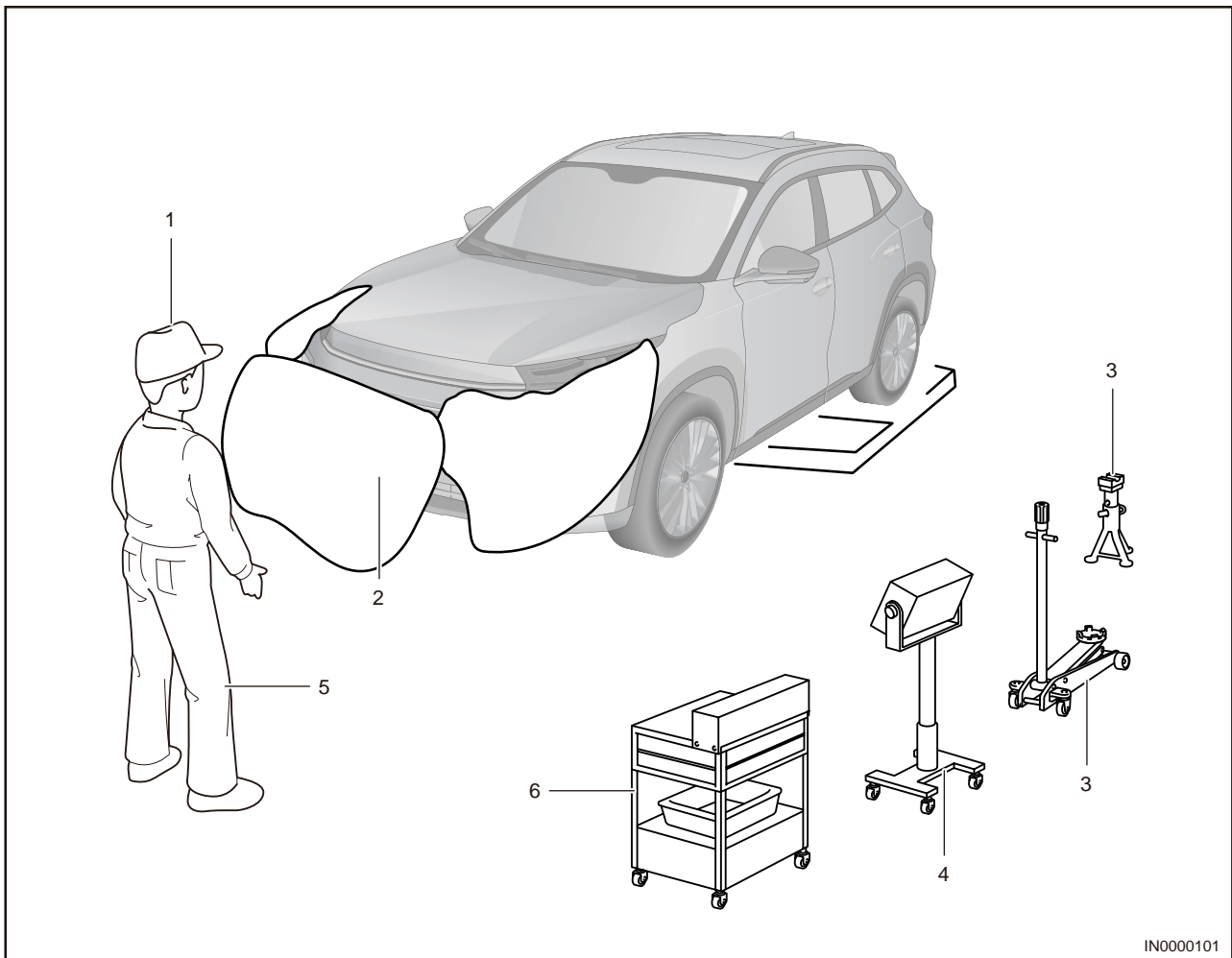
(4) Specifications

This manual categorizes specifications as below:

- Torque specifications
- Clearance specifications
- Capacity specifications

2 Preparation

(1) Preparation for vehicle service



IN0000101

1	Attire	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Always wear a clean uniform. • A hat and safety shoes must be worn.
2	Vehicle Protection	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Before starting work, prepare radiator grille cover, wing cover, seat cover and floor mat.
3	Safety Operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When working with two or more persons, be sure to check safety each other. • When working with engine running, make sure to provide ventilation for exhausting gas in the workshop. • When repairing high temperature, high pressure, rotating, moving, or vibrating parts, be sure to wear appropriate safety equipment and take extra care not to injure yourself or others. • When jacking up vehicle, be sure to support specified location with a safety stand. • Use appropriate safety equipment to lift vehicle.
4	Preparation for Tools and Measuring Gauge	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Before starting work, prepare a tool stand, special tools, gauge, oil and replacement parts.

5	Removal and Installation, Disassembly and Assembly Operations	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Diagnose after thoroughly understanding proper service procedures and reported problem. • Before removing parts, inspect general condition of assembly to check for deformation or damage. • Take notes for complicated assembly. For example, record total number of electrical connections, bolts or hoses that are removed. • Add matchmarks to ensure that each component is assembled to its original position. Temporarily mark hoses and their joints if necessary. • Clean and wash removed parts if necessary and assemble them after a thorough inspection.
6	Removed Parts	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Place removed parts in a separate box to avoid mixing them up with new parts or contaminating new parts. • For non-reusable parts (such as gaskets, O-rings, and self-locking nuts), replace them with new ones as instructed in this manual. • Retain removed parts for inspection, if requested by customers.

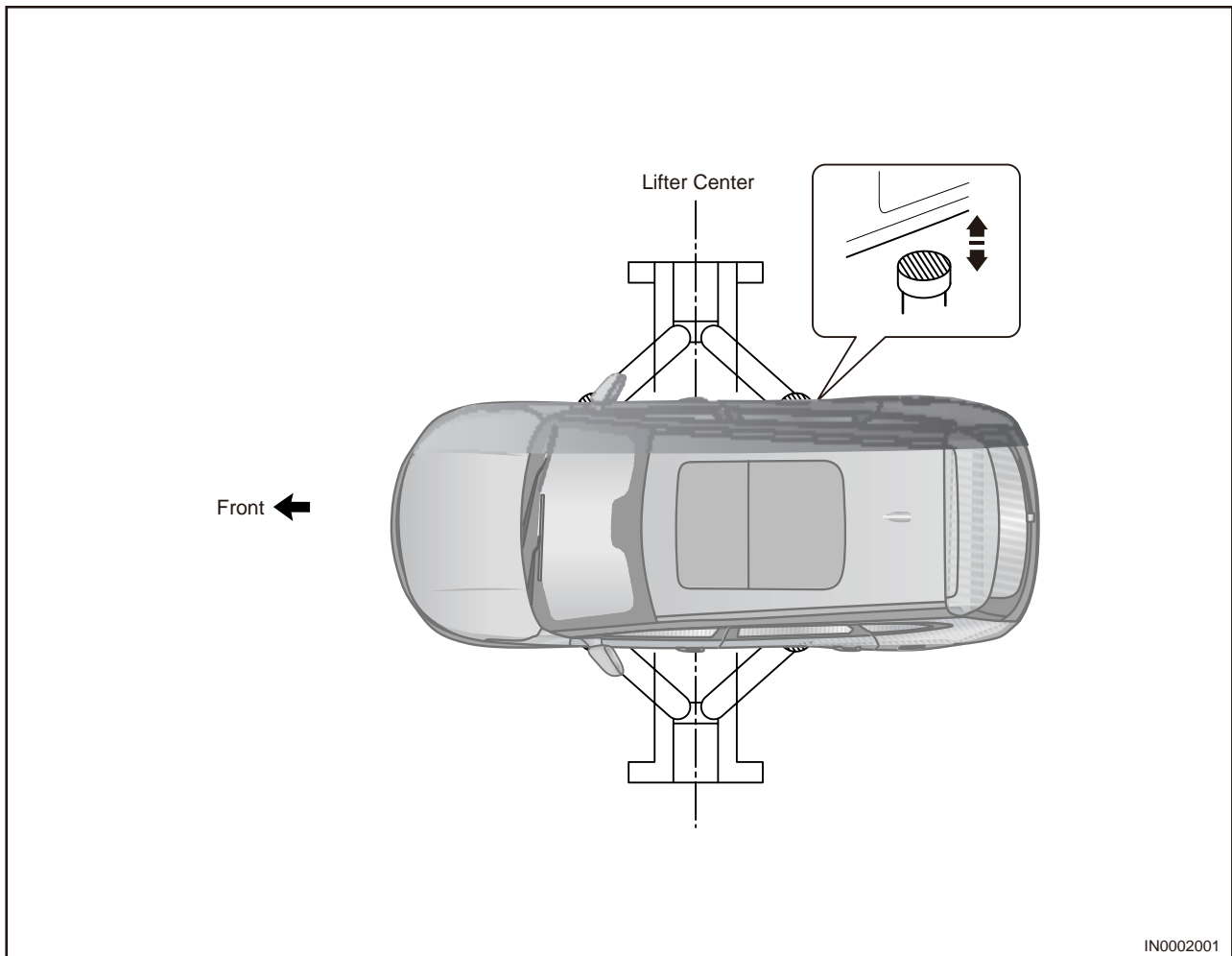
(2) Jacking up and supporting vehicle

Care must be taken when jacking up and supporting vehicle. Be sure to jack up and support vehicle at proper locations.

Sometimes, similar illustrations may be used. In this case, minor details may be different from actual vehicle.

1) Precautions for using a swing arm type lift

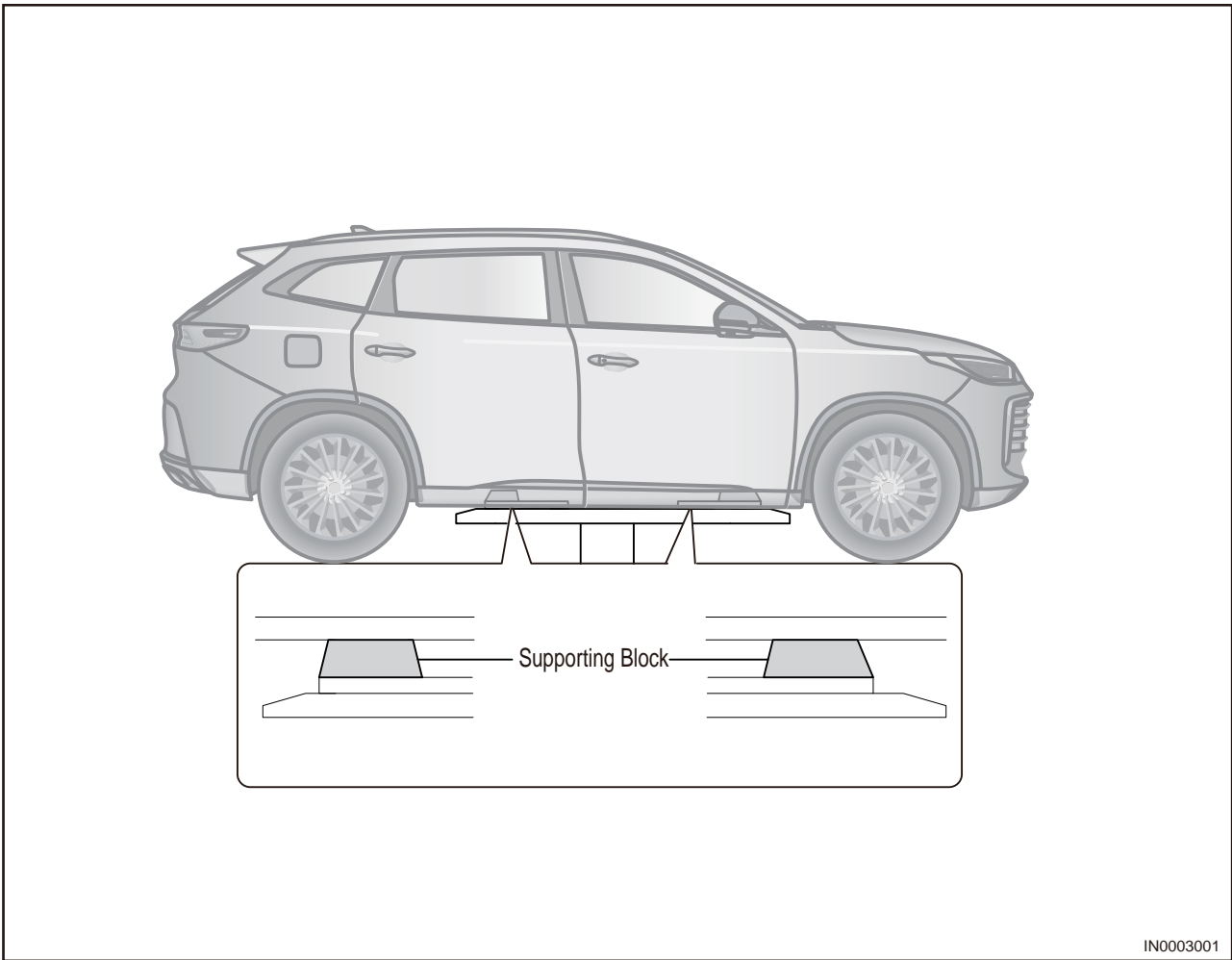
- Follow safety procedures described in the instruction manual.
- Keep vehicle stable when using a lift to prevent vehicle from tilting during operation. Stabilize vehicle by adjusting the length of lift arm and vehicle position.



IN0002001

2) Precautions for using a plate type lift

- Follow safety procedures described in the instruction manual.
- Use plate type lift attachments (rubber lifting blocks) on the plate surface.



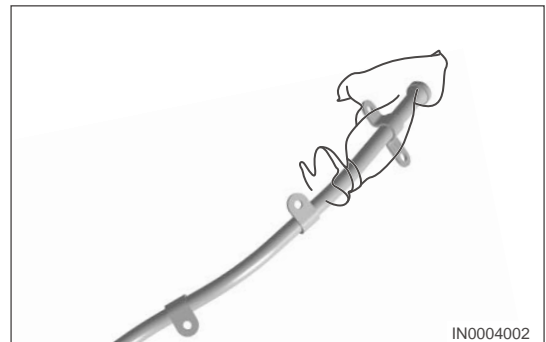
3 Service Operation

(1) How to use fasteners

- Using incorrect fasteners may cause damage to components. Injury and death may occur without observing the instructions below.
- Reference values of fasteners and torque specifications in this service manual use metric unit.
- Recycling all fasteners (nuts, bolts, etc.) during maintenance and service operation is important for assembly.

(2) Remove parts

When repairing malfunction, try to determine the cause. Before starting work, parts or sub-assemblies that have to be removed and replaced should be confirmed first. After removing parts, block all holes and ports to prevent foreign objects from entering.

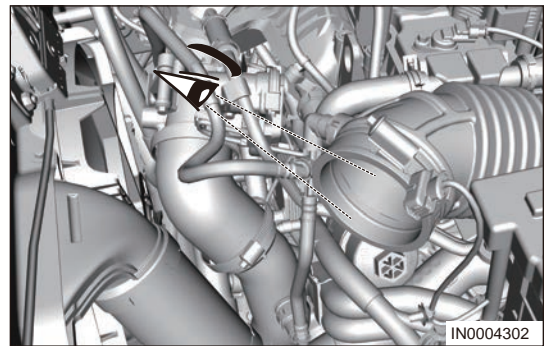


(3) Disassemble components

If disassembly procedures are complicated and multiple parts need to be disassembled, make sure that disassembly methods won't affect the performance or appearance of parts. Identify each part for assembly.

(4) Installation check

After removal, it is necessary to check if there is foreign matter that enters new or used parts when installing new part or resetting used part, preventing unnecessary damage to the vehicle.



IN0004302

(5) Check parts

After removal, check each part for deformation, damage or other problems.

(6) Arrange parts

Carefully arrange all disassembled parts to make assembly easier. Always separately arrange replaced parts and reusable parts, and make marks on them.

(7) Clean parts

Make a thorough and careful cleaning for reusable parts.

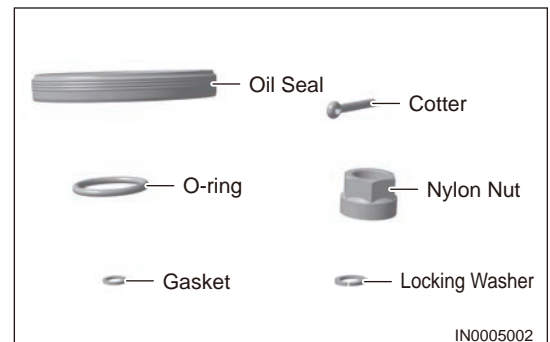
⚠ Caution

Blowing out the dirt or other particles with compressed air may hurt your eyes. Be sure to wear goggles during operation.

(8) Assemble components

When assembling parts, always strictly use standard values (-tightening torque and clearance value, etc.). If following parts need to be replaced, replace them with new ones.

- Oil seal
- Gasket
- O-ring
- Lock washer
- Cotter pin
- Nylon nut



IN0005002

(9) Lubrication and seal

Use seal gum and gasket based on position.

If seal gum is applied, install components before the seal gum dries to prevent leakage.

Apply lubricant to the movable area and friction area of components.

During assembly, apply permitted lubricant or grease to the specified area (such as oil seal).

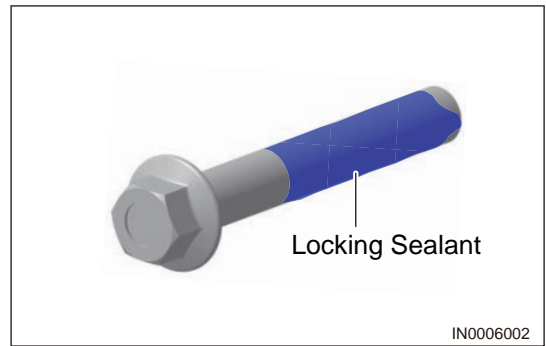
(10) Adjust

Use proper meter and tester for adjustment.

(11) Pre-coated parts

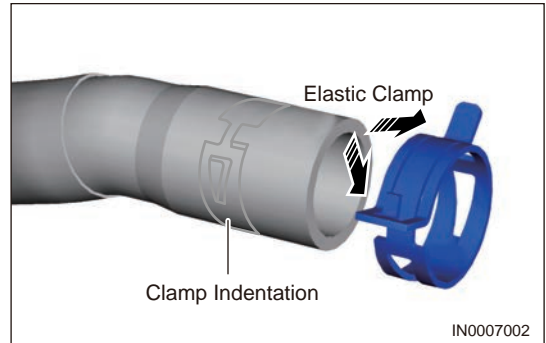
1 - INTRODUCTION

Pre-coated parts are bolts and nuts that are coated with seal lock adhesive in the factory. If a pre-coated part is retightened, loosened, or moved in any way, be sure to reapply the specified adhesive.

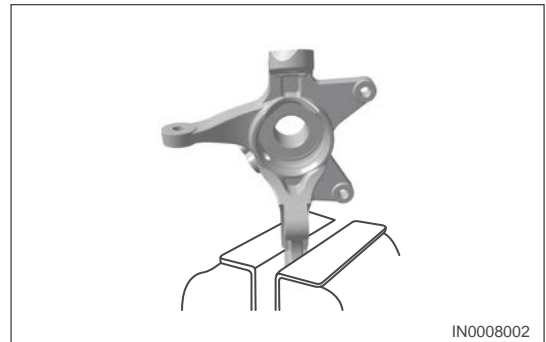


(12) Rubber parts and rubber hoses
Avoid gasoline or oil dripping on rubber parts or rubber hoses.

(13) Hose clamp
Before removing a hose, observe the position of clamp so as to reinstall it to the same position.
Replace deformed or dented clamps with new ones. When reusing a hose, fix the clamp on the clamp track portion of hose.
For elastic clamp, push tabs in direction of arrow as shown in illustration after installation to widen the tabs slightly.



(14) Vise
When using a vise, install protective plates on jaws of vise to prevent parts from being damaged.



(15) Dynamometer
When testing vehicle on dynamometer, pay attention to the following:

- Place a fan in front of vehicle. It is best to use a fan of which the power changes in proportion to vehicle speed.
- Connect an exhaust gas ventilator.

Caution

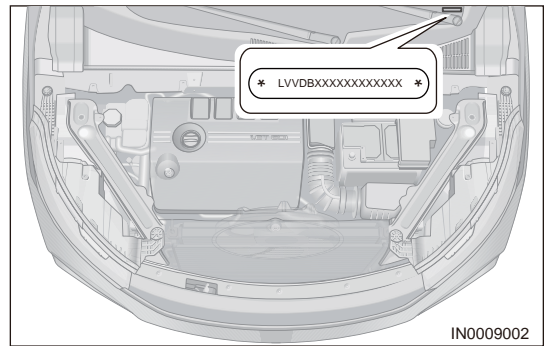
Exhaust gas may cause injury and death. There is odorless, colorless Carbon Oxide (CO) in the exhaust gas. People will faint and get poisoned after inhaling it.

- Cool the exhaust pipe with a fan.
- Keep the area around vehicle clean and tidy.
- Monitor engine coolant thermometer.

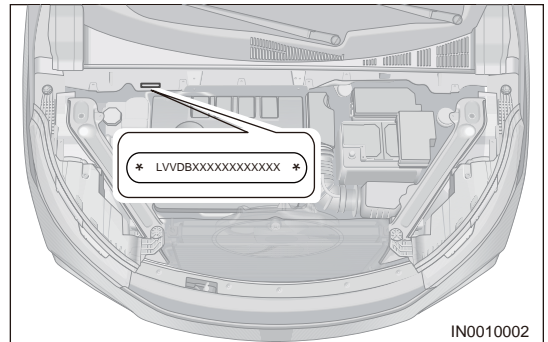
4 VEHICLE INFORMATION

(1) Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on actual vehicle

VIN is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel, and can be seen from the outside through the windshield.

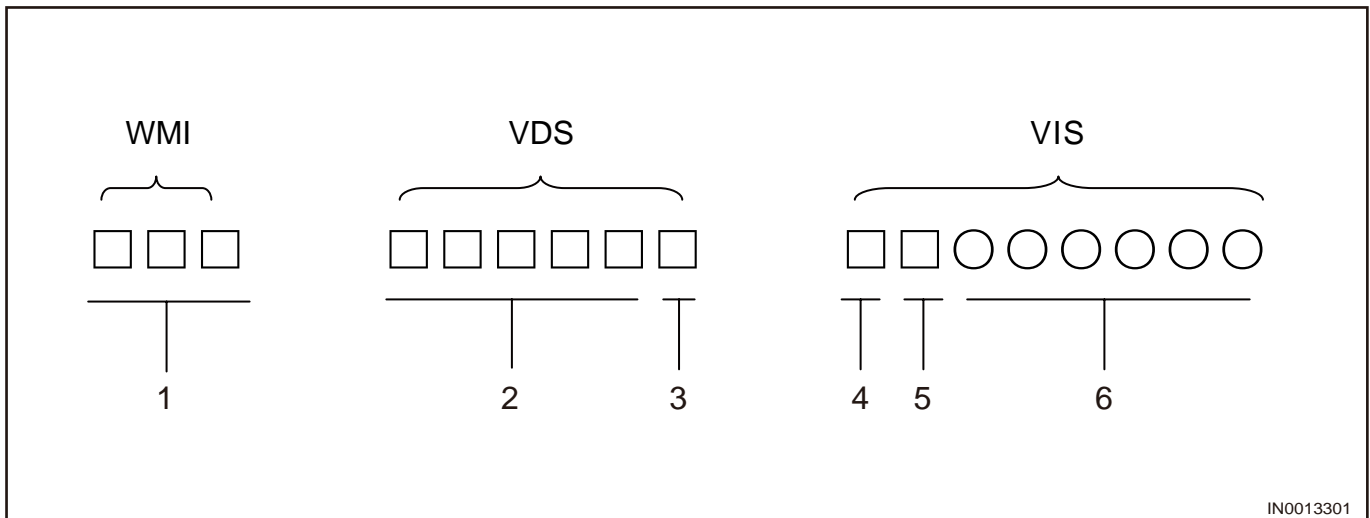


VIN is stamped on right of engine compartment drip channel garnish.



(2) Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) consists of World Manufacturer Identifier (WMI), Vehicle Descriptor Section (VDS) and Vehicle Indicator Section (VIS), with a total of 17-digit characters. Refer to the following details:



□: represents a letter or a number (letters I, O and Q cannot be used); ○: represents a number.

No.	Definition
1	World Manufacturer Identifier
2	Vehicle Features
3	Accuracy Check Digit
4	Model Year
5	Production Plant
6	Sequential Number

1 - INTRODUCTION

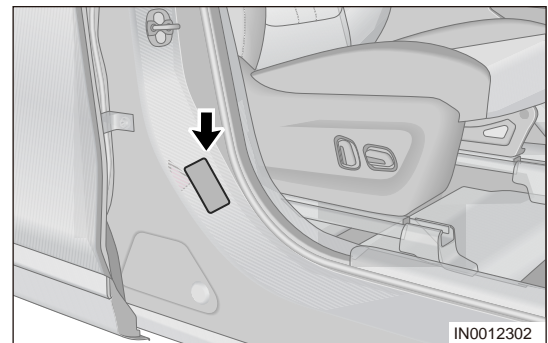
- The first three digits of VIN represent world manufacturer identifier.

No.	WMI Code	Vehicle Category
1	LVV	Category M1 (for vehicle type number started with 7)

- Fourth digit of VIN represents vehicle type.
 - Letter "D" means all vehicles in category M1.
- Fifth digit of VIN represents vehicle body type and drive type.
 - Letter "B" means 5-door 2-box 4 × 2 type.
- Sixth digit of VIN represents transmission type.
 - "1" means manual transmission.
 - "2" means automatic transmission.
- Seventh digit of VIN represents dynamic characteristics.
 - "1" means gasoline engine that is 1.5 - 2.0 L (2.0 L excluded).
- Eighth digit of VIN represents restraint system.
 - "B" means seat belt and airbag.
- Ninth digit of VIN represents check digit.
 - It is used to check the accuracy of VIN record, and made out through computation after confirming the other sixteen digits of VIN.
- Tenth digit of VIN represents model year.
 - "K" represents 2019.
- Eleventh digit of VIN represents assembly plant code.
 - "D" represents Chery Automobile Co., Ltd.
- Last six digits of VIN represent production sequence number.
 - This number means real production serial number of this model.

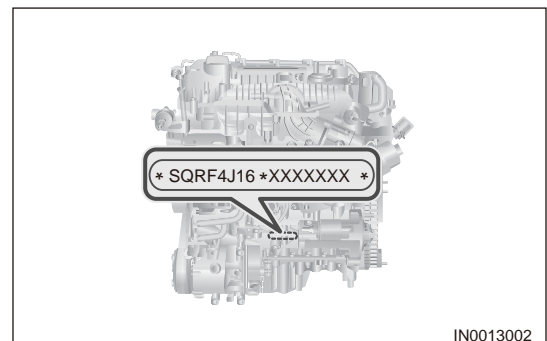
(3) Vehicle data plate

The vehicle data plate is fixed on right quarter outer panel.



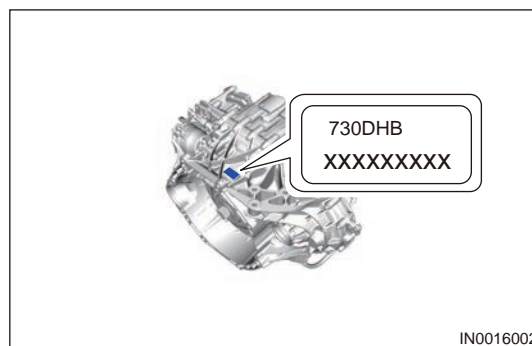
(4) Engine number

Engine number is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.



(5) Transmission number

Transmission number (for 7DCT model) is stamped on front part of transmission case.



5 Symbols

The symbols below are instrument cluster display symbols and some international standard symbols.

1	2	3	4	5	6
7	8	9	10	11	12
13	14	15	16	17	18
19	20	21	22	23	24
SPORT	EPC	ECO			
25	26	27	28	29	30

IN0013401

1	Parking Brake Indicator	16	Rear Fog Indicator
2	EPB Warning Light	17	Position Indicator
3	ABS Warning Light	18	Turn Signal Indicator

1 - INTRODUCTION

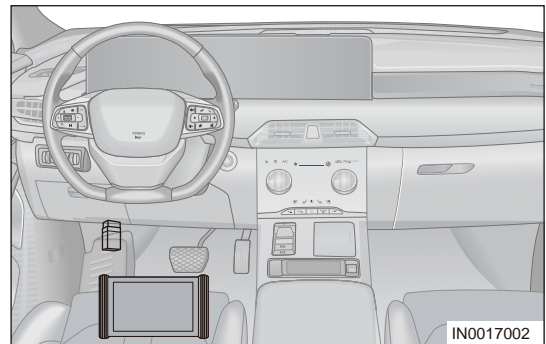
4	Brake System Warning Light	19	Transmission Malfunction Warning Light
5	Engine Oil Pressure Warning Light	20	HDC Indicator
6	Charging System Warning Light	21	Tire Pressure Malfunction Indicator
7	Engine Malfunction Indicator Light	22	Electronic Steering System Warning Light
8	High Coolant Temperature Warning Light	23	Start and Stop System Indicator
9	Low Fuel Level Warning Light	24	Cruise Indicator
10	Driver Seat Belt Reminder Light	25	SPORT Mode Indicator
11	Front Passenger Seat Belt Reminder Light	26	EPC Warning Light
12	SRS Warning Light	27	ECO Mode Indicator
13	Headlight High Beam Indicator	28	ESP OFF Indicator
14	Front Fog Indicator	29	ESP Warning Light
15	Daytime Running Indicator	30	Fatigue Driving Warning Light

6 CIRCUIT DIAGNOSIS INFORMATION

(1) How to Use Tester

Connect tester cable to DLC, turn ignition switch ON and try to use tester. If communication malfunction appears on the display, it indicates that vehicle or tester is defective.

- If communication is normal when the tester is connected to another vehicle, inspect DLC on original vehicle.
- If communication is still not possible when the tester is connected to another vehicle, the tester itself is probably defective.



(2) ECM Control System Troubleshooting

This model uses ECM control system. Most malfunction inspection procedures only involve in checking circuits of ECM control system one by one. An adequate understanding of the system and a basic knowledge of electricity are enough to perform effective troubleshooting, accurate diagnosis and necessary repairs.

(3) Diagnosis and Troubleshooting

- 1) Diagnosis basis and troubleshooting methods

Procedure Type	Detail	Troubleshooting Method
Diagnosis based on DTCs	Diagnosis based on symptoms (no DTC stored)	Use eliminating method to determine malfunctioning parts in accordance with DTC detection conditions. Inspect relevant parts with tester and eliminate possible malfunctions one by one.
Diagnosis based on symptoms (no DTC stored)	Diagnosis procedure is based on problem symptoms.	Inspect relevant parts with tester and eliminate possible malfunctions one by one.

2) Detailed troubleshooting steps

Step	Description
1	Obtain detailed information when electrical malfunction occurs.
2	Operate affected system, and perform a road test as necessary.
	Confirm malfunction parameter.
	If it is impossible to duplicate malfunction, refer to "Electrical Malfunction Simulation Test".
3	Collect proper diagnosis materials, which includes:
	Circuit Diagram
	System Schematic Diagram
	Relevant Chapter in Service Manual
	Service Bulletin
	Perform diagnosis according to system operation knowledge and customer feedback that we possess.
4	Check if there is any bonding, loose connector or damaged wire harness in the system. Determine related circuits and components, and diagnose according to circuit diagram and wire harness layout diagram.
5	Repair circuit and replace component as necessary.
6	Operate system in all modes. Confirm that system can operate normally in all conditions. Confirm that you have not inadvertently created new malfunctions during your diagnosis or repair steps.

(4) Circuit Simulation Test

Non-regular malfunctions and other malfunctions that cannot be detected through a road test can be detected by circuit simulation test. Possible vehicle malfunction can be determined efficiently by simulating condition/environment when the malfunction occurs.

Simulation test can be classified into following 7 types:

- Vehicle vibration test
- Thermosensitive test
- Freezing test
- Leakage test
- Load test
- Cold/hot start test
- Voltage drop test

Hint:

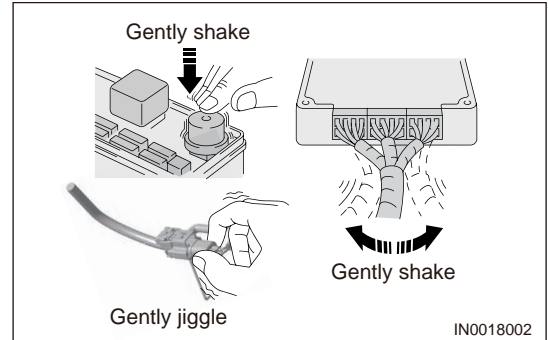
It is extremely important to listen carefully to customer's description about the malfunction for simulating the conditions when symptoms occur.

(5) Vehicle vibration test

When vehicle is running on an uneven road or engine is vibrating (A/C is on and engine is idling), malfunctions may occur. In this case, check conditions related to vibration. Check following areas on vehicle:

1) Connectors and wire harnesses

Determine connectors and wire harnesses that may affect the electrical system being inspected. When monitoring whether the system has malfunctions that are being simulated, vibrate or wiggle each connector and wire harness slightly. This test may show loose or poor electrical connections.



Hint:

When a connector is exposed to humid environment, a layer of corrosive film may be formed on its terminals. With connector connected, this condition may not be found by visual check. If an intermittent malfunction occurs, it may be caused by corrosion. It is recommended that terminals of relevant connectors in system should be checked and cleaned after disconnecting the connectors.

2) Sensors and relays

Slightly vibrate sensors and relays in system being checked. The sensors or relays that are loose or poorly installed may be found through this test.

3) Engine compartment

- There are many reasons for electrical malfunction that occurred due to vehicle vibration, and it is necessary to check following conditions:
 - Connectors are not installed correctly.
 - Wire harness is not long enough, so it is extended when engine is vibrating or shaking.
 - Wire harness hangs over brackets or movable components.
 - Ground wire is loose, dirty or corrosive.
 - Wire harness is too close to high temperature components.
- To inspect components under the engine hood, first confirm if ground connection is in perfect condition (refer to the grounding inspection described below). First confirm that system is correctly grounded. Then slightly vibrate the wire harness or components as previously instructed method to check if connection is loose. Refer to the circuit diagram to check continuity of wire harness.

4) Backside of instrument panel

- Improper wire clamping will cause wire harnesses to be entangled when installing accessories. Vibration of vehicle will cause wire harnesses near the bracket or mounting screw to wind excessively.
- When vehicle vibrates, unclamped or loose wire harness will be stuck in seat components (such as slide guide). When wire harness passes through the underside of mounting area, check if it is damaged or stuck.

(6) Thermosensitive test

In hot weather or after vehicle is parked for a short time, some users may worry about the vehicle condition. At this time, it is necessary to perform thermosensitive test. Perform test by heating components with a heat gun or equivalent.

⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT heat components to a temperature higher than 60°C (140°F).**
- **If malfunction occurs when performing heating test for components, replace or properly insulate the components as necessary.**

(7) Freezing test

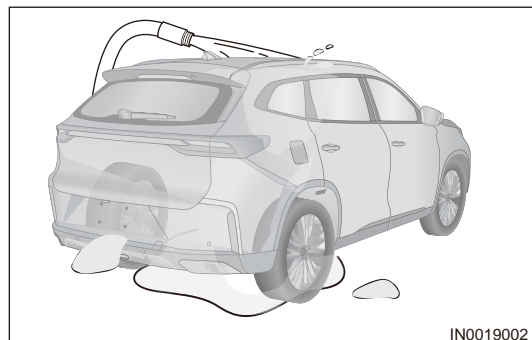
If malfunction disappears after warming up vehicle in winter, it may be caused by freeze of some parts in the wire harness/electrical system. Use following two methods to check this condition:

Method 1: Put vehicle outdoors overnight. Make sure that temperature is low enough to duplicate the malfunction. Perform a quick and thorough diagnosis for component that may be affected in the morning.

Method 2: Put suspected part in refrigerating room and wait until it is frozen. Reinstall the part to vehicle and check if malfunction reoccurs. If malfunction occurs, repair or replace the component.

(8) Leakage test

Malfunction may occur only during high humidity or in rainy or snowy weather. In this case, malfunction may occur due to the water entering electrical parts. Leakage can be checked by spraying water to vehicle (similar to car wash).



(9) Load test

Malfunction occurs only when electrical equipment is turned on. Turn on electrical equipment (A/C, rear window defogger, radio and fog lights, etc.) one by one and determine the relationship between electrical equipment and malfunction. Determine the malfunction by a load test.

(10) Cold/hot start test

Some malfunctions occur in cold start and disappear when engine warms up. In this case, park vehicle without operation for a whole night and restart it the next day. Perform test and determine the cause quickly.

(11) Voltage drop test

Generally, voltage drop test is used to find out the possible causes that affect normal function of electrical components or circuits.

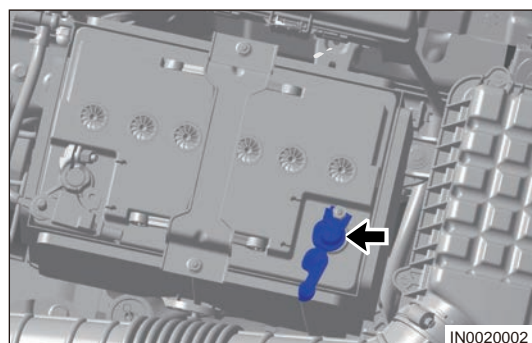
Check circuit with a digital multimeter.

If resistance of single wire harness measured by a digital multimeter is very low ($0\ \Omega$ or close to $0\ \Omega$), the wire harness or circuit is normal.

Unnecessary resistance in circuit may be caused by poor, loose grounding, corrosive switch contact and loose wire harness connector or adapter.

(12) Precautions for Control Module and Electrical Components Inspection

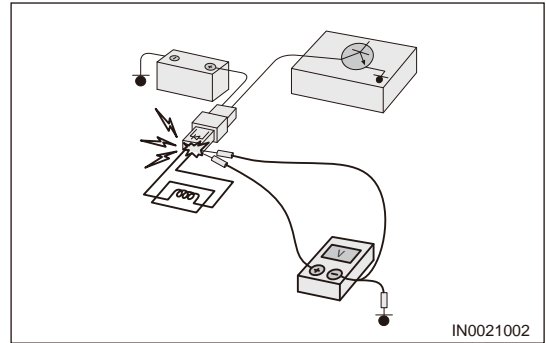
- Before performing electrical operations, turn ignition switch to LOCK and disconnect negative battery cable (- arrow), then wait for 2 minutes until backup power supply of airbag module is depleted (w/ airbag system).



- Disconnecting battery cable will delete the clock, audio and DTC records. Therefore, it is necessary to confirm these records before disconnecting the cable.
- Never connect electrodes of battery terminals reversely.
- Only install components that meet the vehicle specifications.

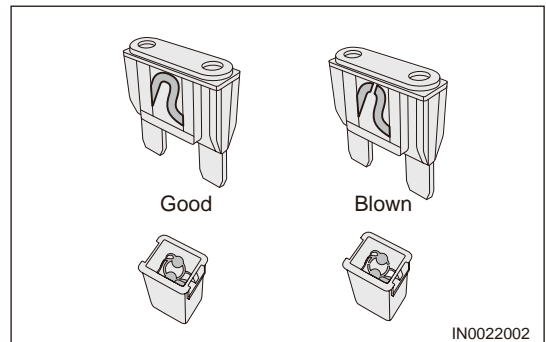
(13) Inspect input and output conditions of components and their functions before replacing control module.

- When disconnecting components:
 - Do not use excessive force when disconnecting connectors.
 - If connector is installed with a tightening bolt, loosen bolt and then disconnect the connector by hand.
- When connecting components:
 - Make sure that terminals are not bent or damaged, and then connect connectors correctly before installation.
 - Tighten bolt until painted area of connector is flush with the surface when installing connector with a tightening bolt.
- Never drop or hit control modules to prevent excessive impact.
- Avoid that condensation is formed on control modules due to extreme change of temperature, and keep them free from water drop or rain. If water is found on the control module, dry it thoroughly and then install it to vehicle.
- Be careful not to allow fluid to adhere to control module connectors.
- Avoid cleaning the control module with volatile fluid.
- When using digital multimeter, be careful not to get testing probes to contact with each other to result in a short circuit. Avoid damaging the battery due to short circuit in power transistor inside a control module.



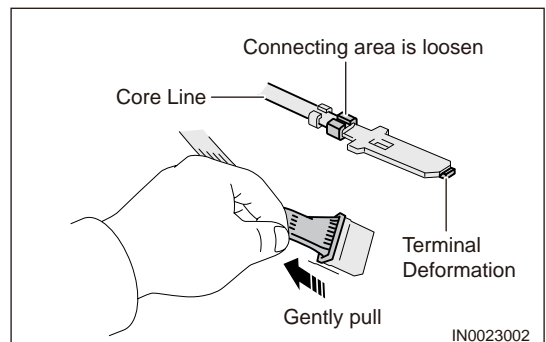
(14) Check fuse

- Check that fuse wire is connected.
- If fuse wire is blown, confirm that there is no short in circuit.
- A fuse with the same rated amperage must be used for replacing.



(15) How to check connector

- Many electrical malfunctions are caused by electrical connections or wire malfunctions, and also may be caused by the bonding of components or relays. Before determining if malfunction is caused by components or wire harness assembly, check if connection of the connectors is good.



(16) Check connector with a digital multimeter

- Damaged connectors and poor connections are caused by incorrect connector detection during circuit inspection.

- Probes of digital multimeter may be connected incorrectly with socket of connector. To detect the connector correctly, use a "T" shaped pin and follow procedures below. To obtain optimal connection, clamp the "T" shaped needle with a spring clamp.
- 1) Detect from wire harness side
 - If there is a back cover for connector, remove the back cover before detecting terminal.
 - Do not detect the water-proof connector from wire harness side. Failure to do this may damage the seal between wire harness and connector.
 - 2) Detect from terminal side
 - Female terminal : Do not insert any object that is bigger than male terminal into the female connector.
 - Male terminal : Carefully detect contact surfaces of each terminal with a "T " shaped needle. Do not bend the terminal.
- (17) Check terminal contact spring for proper tension
- Contact spring on terminal may produce intermittent signals in circuit.
 - If intermittent open circuit occurs, follow procedures below to check open wire harness and contact spring on female terminal.
 - Use a male terminal matched with female terminal.
 - Disconnect the suspected defective connector and secure terminal side upward.
 - When securing wire harness of male terminal, try to insert male terminal into female terminal.
 - Move connector and check if male terminal can be inserted easily.
- Hint:**
If male terminal can be inserted into female terminal easily, replace the female terminal.

MAINTENANCE

2.1	MAINTENANCE ITEMS	19
1	Maintenance Schedule Table.....	19
2	Lubrication System	22
3	Cooling System.....	22
4	Transmission Fluid.....	23
5	Brake System	23
6	Wheel Alignment.....	23
7	Wheel and Tire	24
2.2	INSPECTION ITEMS	25
1	Off-vehicle Inspection	25
2	On-vehicle Inspectio	25
3	Engine Compartment Inspection.....	26
4	Brake System Inspection	27
5	Chassis Inspection.....	28

2.1 MAINTENANCE ITEMS

1 Maintenance Schedule Table

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to Chery authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule. If your vehicles are always used in severe driving conditions, you should follow the maintenance requirement every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first). I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

Maintenance Item	Mont- hs	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	K- m×1,- 000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Items	Mont- hs	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	K- m×1,- 000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Meter Indicating System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Video and Entertainment System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Diagnostic Tester Inspection		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wiper System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling Effect		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning Filter		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Freezing Point of Coolant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Fluid	It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first)										
Brake Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Water Content of Brake Fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine Oil Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Transmission Fluid (730DHC/ 730DHB)	Replace every 60,000 km.										
Transfer/Differential Fluid	It is recommended to replace every 50,000 km after the warranty period.										
Power Steering Fluid (If Equipped)	Replace every 2 year or 30,000 km (whichever comes first).										
Timing Chain	Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).										

2 - MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Item	Mont- hs	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	K- m×1,- 000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Items	Mont- hs	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	K- m×1,- 000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Transmission Fluid Level											
Fuel Filter	External fuel filter: Replace every 30,000 km; Internal fuel filter: The integrated fuel pump is maintenance free type(troubleshoot the cause of failure)										
Battery Voltage											
Shock Absorber											
Propeller Shaft and Boot											
Torque of Chassis Bolt											
Steering Gear											
Steering Column											
Steering Link, Ball and Boot											
Tire Appearance											
Tire Pattern											
Tire Inflation Pressure											
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure											
Torque of Wheel Bolt											
Tire Rotation	It is recommended to rotate tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).										
Spark Plug											
Brake Plate											
Air Filter											
Drive Belt											
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolt											
Transmission Housing Body											
Related Fluid Line (such as: steering, braking and fuel etc.) and Wire Harness											
Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)	Replace every 3 years or 60,000km (whichever comes first)										

Maintenance Item	Mont- hs	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	K- m×1,- 000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Items	Mont- hs	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	K- m×1,- 000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Battery	Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).										
Throttle Valvet	It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.										
Four-wheel Alignment	Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.										
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe	It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (whichever comes first).										
Fuel Filler Hose	It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to replace the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.										

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 100,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 100,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

⚠ Caution

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives in the following areas.
 - High humidity areas.
 - Mountainous areas.
 - Extremely cold and hot areas.
 - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
 - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
 - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
 - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32°C), heavy traffic urban road.
 - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.
- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.

***Examples of severe driving conditions:**

- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs /front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs /front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs /- front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs /front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).

2 Lubrication System

Engine Model	SQRF4J16
Oil Filling Amount	4.3 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Oil Grade	SM SAE-5W-30

3 Cooling System

Engine Model	SQRF4J16
Coolant	7.6 L
Coolant Type	Full organic antifreeze(LEC-II)

4 Transmission Fluid

Transmission Type	Transmission Fuel Type	Total Capacity
730DHC/730DHB	Pentosin FFL-7A	4.25 ± 0.2 L
Transfer	Sinopec GL5 80W-90 gear oil	0.31 ± 0.03 L
Differential	Sinopec GL5 80W-90 gear oil	0.445 ± 0.03 L

Hint:

- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please go to Chery authorized service station for details.

5 Brake System

Vehicle Model		SQRF4J16
Brake	Front Wheel	Disc brake
	Rear Wheel	Disc brake
Brake Booster		Vacuum booster
Parking Brake		Electric parking brake for rear wheels
Reasonable Range of Brake Pedal Free Travel		≤ 25 mm
Reasonable Range of Use for Brake Friction Pair		Minimum thickness of brake disc: Front 26 mm, rear 8 mm Minimum thickness of brake lining: 2 mm
Brake Fluid		Fluid type: DOT-4. Add fluid to level between "MAX" and "MIN" marks

⚠ Warning


- In the case of heavy load, the brake fluid should be replaced while the brake plates are being replaced.
- When adding brake fluid, make sure it is absolutely clean. If any dirt gets into the brake system, it may result in loss of braking performance.

6 Wheel Alignment

Items		Parameters
Vehicle Model		SQRF4J16
Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	-30' ± 30'
	Kingpin Caster Angle	6°43' ± 45'
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	13°54' ± 45'
	Front Wheel Toein	+8' ± 6' (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Toein	+10' ± 6' (one side)
	Rear Wheel Camber	-1°11' ± 30'
Sideslip Value		0 ± 3 m/km

7 Wheel and Tire

Vehicle Model		SQRF4J16
Tire Model		225/65R17, 225/60R18, 225/55R19, T145/80R18 (Spare tire)
Rim Model		17×7J, 18×7J, 19×7J, 4T×18 (Spare tire)
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	R17: 220, R18 & R19: 230
	Rear Wheel	R17: 220, R18 & R19: 230
	Spare Tire	420
Tightening Torque of Wheel Bolt		130 ± 10 N·m
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		Residual unbalance of wheel tire assembly after leveling with balance block: Outside ≤ 10 g; Inside ≤ 10 g

 **Caution**

- **The tire inflation pressures listed in the table apply to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.**
- **Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tire pressure is especially important at high speeds.**
- **In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for cold tire inflation pressure.**

2.2 INSPECTION ITEMS

1 Off-vehicle Inspection

- (1) Check the wheel nut.
 - 3) Check wheel nuts for looseness or missing. Tighten if necessary.
- (2) Check the wheel and tire (spare tire included).
- (3) Rotate the tires.
 - 1) Chery recommends that you should rotate tires every 10000 km. However, the best rotation time differs depending on driving habits and road conditions.
- (4) Check wiper blade.
- (5) Check hood and doors.
 - 1) Check the hood.
 - 2) Check the front doors.
 - 3) Check the rear doors.
 - 4) Check the back door.

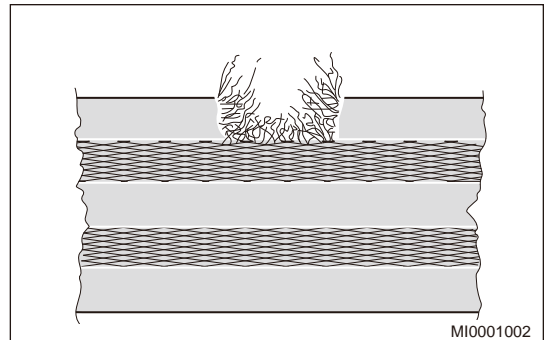
2 On-vehicle Inspectio

- (1) Check the seat belt.
 - 1) Check the seat belt buckle and retractor.
 - Pull out the seat belt quickly and repeatedly when the seat belt is static. If the seat belt retractor cannot lock the seat belt at one time during inspection, replace the seat belt assembly.
 - Engage the tab on the seat belt buckle, and pull the seat belt by hand repeatedly to check the engagement. If the buckle cannot lock the seat belt at one time, replace the seat belt assembly.

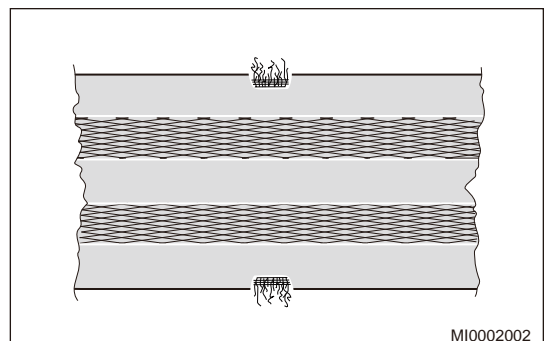
Caution

When checking impacted vehicle, be sure to check seat belt system. If there is any damage or malfunction in the seat belt system, replace it.

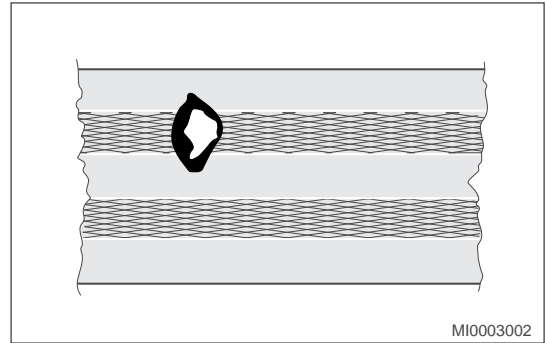
- 2) Pull out the seat belt and check the belt for oil stains or damage. Clean or replace if necessary.
- 3) Replace the seat belt as soon as possible if any of the following occurs.
 - Seat belt is broken, torn or worn.



- Edge of seat belt webbing is broken.



- There is a burnt mark of cigarette butt on the seat belt.



- (2) Check the horn.
 - Check that the horn operates.
- (3) Check the vehicle lights.
 - Check that the headlights, brake lights, taillights, turn signal lights and other vehicle lights illuminate or blink. Furthermore, check the brightness of vehicle lights.
- (4) Check the windshield.
 - Check for scratches, dents or wear.
- (5) Check the windshield wiper and washer.
 - Check that washers are properly aligned. Also, check that washer fluid hits the center of operating range of each wiper on the windshield.
 - Check whether any wiper blade is damaged. Replace the wiper blade if necessary.
- (6) Check the windshield defroster.
 - Turn on A/C defroster mode switch, check that air comes out of front defroster outlets.
 - Press the rear defroster switch for a period of time, then check that the rear windshield heats.

⚠ Caution

DO NOT touch the heated rear windshield for a long time to prevent burns.

- (7) Check the rear view mirror.
 - Check that the rear view mirrors are securely installed.
- (8) Check the sun visor.
 - Check that the sun visors are securely installed and move freely.
- (9) Check the seat.
 - Check the front seat assembly.
 - Check the rear seat assembly.
- (10) Check the clutch pedal.
- (11) Check the accelerator pedal.
 - Check that the accelerator pedal operates smoothly. Check that the pedal does not have uneven resistance or does not get stuck in certain position.

3 Engine Compartment Inspection

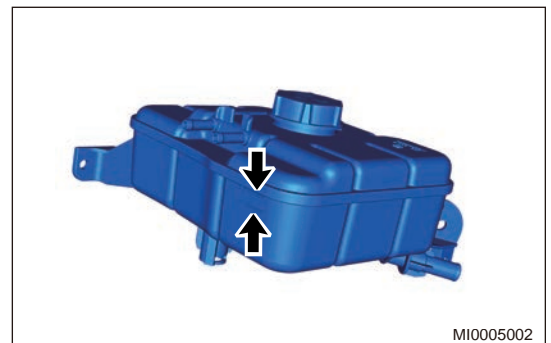
- (1) Check the engine oil level.
- (2) Check the engine drive belt.
- (3) Check the engine for oil leakage.

- 1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ignition switch, and remove the key.
 - 2) Support and raise the vehicle.
 - 3) Check crankshaft pulley for oil stains. If there are oil stains, check engine crankshaft front oil seal for leakage. If there are leaks, replace the crankshaft front oil seal.
 - 4) Check oil pan and drain plug for oil stains. Repair or replace related parts if necessary.
 - 5) Check transmission filler plug, drain plug and case for oil stains. Repair or replace related parts if necessary.
 - 6) If leakage occurs to the crankshaft front oil seal after repair, it may be caused by 3 reasons as follows:
 - Crankshaft thrust washer wears.
 - Crankcase ventilation system blocks.
 - Engine oil is excessive.
- (4) Check battery voltage
- Check the battery and battery voltage.
 - Check the charging voltage of charging system.
- (5) Check the windshield washer fluid.
- 1) If washer nozzle cannot spray washer fluid, the fluid reservoir may be empty. In this case, stop operating washer and add washer fluid to a proper level immediately.

⚠ Caution

DO NOT use water as washer fluid when ambient temperature is below 0°C, otherwise, washer may be damaged due to the frozen water.

- (6) Check the coolant level.
- 1) When engine is cold, check if the coolant level is between "MAX" and "MIN" lines. If the level is below the "MIN" line, it is necessary to add coolant to "MAX" line.



MI0005002

- (7) Check the cooling system hose.
- Check that there are no cracks, kinks, corrosion or loose connections on the cooling system hose.

4 Brake System Inspection

⚠ Caution

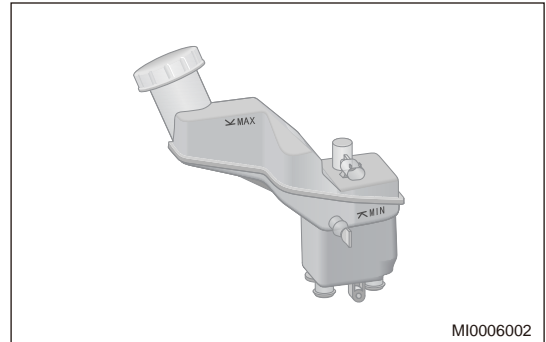
Generally, brake fluid level will change slightly because of the wear of brake pad, but it must be kept between "MIN" and "MAX" lines.

- (1) Check the brake fluid level.

Hint:

- When the brake fluid level drops near the "MIN" line, the wear of brake pad may approach its limit.
- After the brake pad is replaced, the brake fluid level should be at the upper part between "MAX" and MIN lines.

- 1) Park the vehicle on a level ground.
- 2) Make sure there is no air in the brake system and the depressing feel of brake pedal is well. Perform brake bleeding procedures if necessary.
- 3) Check if the brake fluid level is between "MAX" and "MIN" lines.
- 4) If the brake fluid level drops to the "MIN" line or below, add brake fluid and check the brake system for leakage.



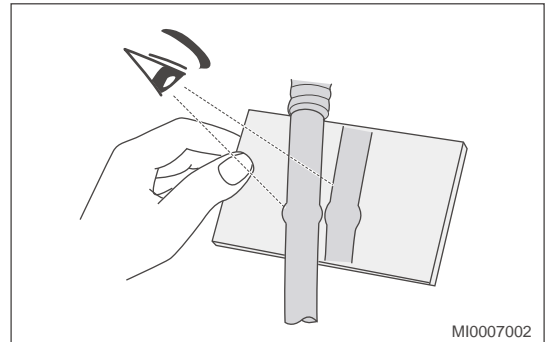
- (2) Check the brake pedal.
- (3) Check the brake lines and hoses.

Hint:

Work in a well-lighted area. Turn front wheels to the rightmost or leftmost position before inspection.

- 1) As shown in the illustration, check the entire circumferential surface of brake lines and hoses with a mirror. Check for the following conditions:

- Damage
- Wear
- Deformation
- Cracks
- Corrosion
- Leakage
- Bending
- Twists



- 2) Check all the clamps for tightness and check the connections for leakage.
- 3) Check that the hoses and lines are not near the sharp edges, moving parts or exhaust system.
- (4) Check the parking brake.
 - Check that the parking brake can hold the vehicle steadily on a slight slope.
- (5) Check the front disc brake assembly.
- (6) Check the rear disc brake assembly.

5 Chassis Inspection

- (1) Check the front axle hub.
- (2) Check the control arm and control arm ball pin.
- (3) Check the rear axle hub.
- (4) Check the stabilizer bar assembly, stabilizer bar assembly rubber supports and rubber bushing.
- (5) Check the rear coil spring assembly.
- (6) Check the rear mounting upper swing arm assembly.
- (7) Check the rear mounting lower swing arm assembly.
- (8) Check the rear trail arm assembly.
- (9) Check the exhaust pipe.

Visually check the pipes, hanger blocks and connections for serious corrosion, leakage or damage.

Final Inspection

- (1) Check the operation of body parts.

- 1) Hood.
 - Hood support rod is proper.
 - Hood locks securely when closed.
 - 2) Front and rear doors.
 - Door locks operate properly.
 - Doors close properly.
 - 3) Back door.
 - Door lock operates properly.
 - Back door closes properly.
 - 4) Seats.
 - Seats are adjusted freely and locked securely in any position.
 - Front seatback can be locked securely in any position.
 - Rear seatbacks can be locked securely after folding down.
- (2) Be sure to deliver a clean vehicle. Focus on the following items:
- Steering wheel
 - Shift lever
 - All switch knobs
 - Door handles
 - Seats

ENGINE

3.1	ENGINE ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM	31
1	Warnings and Precautions	31
1.1	Precautions	31
2	System Overview	32
2.1	System Description	32
2.2	System Schematic Diagram	32
2.3	Management Function of Engine.....	34
2.4	Control Signal: Input/Output Signal of Engine Management System.....	34
2.5	System Function Description	35
2.6	System Malfunction Diagnosis Function Introduction.....	36
2.7	System Components Description.....	42
3	System Circuit Diagram	53
3.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	53
4	Diagnosis & Testing	57
4.1	Problem Symptoms Table	57
4.2	Diagnosis Procedure.....	59
4.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	61
4.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	61
4.5	Ground Inspection	61
4.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	61
4.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	96
5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	319
5.1	Tools	319
5.2	Intake Pressure/Temperature Sensor	321
5.3	Electronic throttle	322
5.4	Knock Sensor.....	322
5.5	Coolant Temperature Sensor.....	323
5.6	Speed Sensor.....	324
5.7	Camshaft Position Sensor.....	325
5.8	VVT Control Valve	327
5.9	Fuel Rail Injector	328
5.10	High Pressure Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor	328
5.11	Canister Control Valve	329
5.12	Brake Vacuum Pressure Sensor.....	329
5.13	Engine Control Unit (ECU).....	330
5.14	Matching Learning	331

3.1 ENGINE ELECTRONIC CONTROL SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

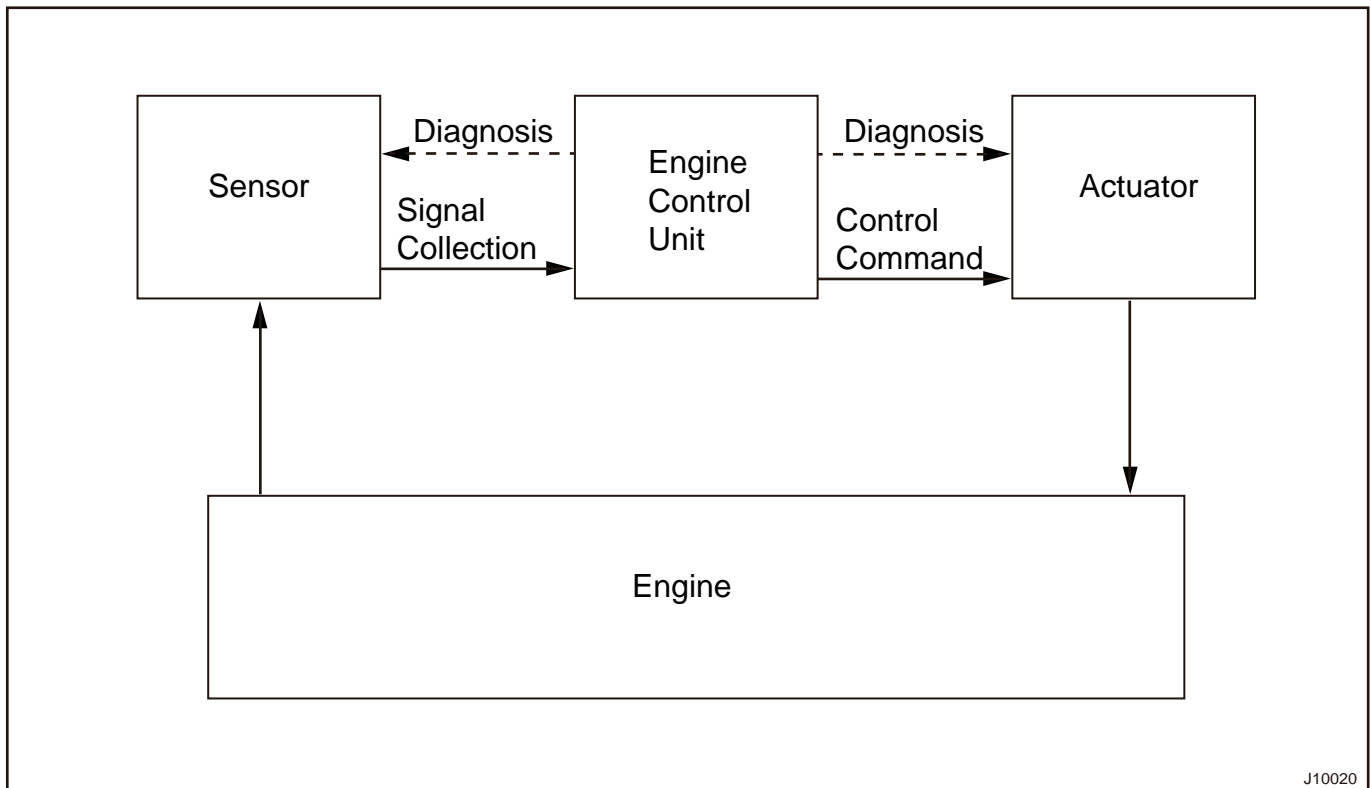
- (1) Digital multimeter can only be used to perform inspection for electronic injection system.
- (2) Use genuine components to perform service work, otherwise appropriate electronic injection system operation cannot be guaranteed.
- (3) Only use unleaded gasoline during service.
- (4) Please observe normative service and diagnostic flowchart to perform service work.
- (5) Never disassemble or remove components of electronic injection system during service.
- (6) When holding electronic elements (electronic control unit, sensor etc.), take extra care not to drop them on the ground.
- (7) Set up a consciousness of environmental protection and dispose of waste effectively that is produced during service.
- (8) Never use an needle multimeter to check electronic fuel injection system circuit.
- (9) Never use high power test light to measure when testing each pin voltage signal of sensor.
- (10) It is recommended that the measurement status when testing each pin voltage signal of sensor is on-line measurement.
- (11) It is recommended to use voltage drop method when measuring sensor, actuator connecting wire harness.
- (12) Do not causally remove any electronic injection system component or its connector from its installation position to prevent damaging accidentally, or foreign matter, such as moisture, oil from entering connectors, which will affect the normal operation of electronic injection system.
- (13) Be sure to turn ignition switch off when disconnecting and connecting connectors. Otherwise electronic elements may be damaged.
- (14) When simulating hot operating condition of malfunction and performing other service work that may cause temperature to rise, never allow temperature of electronic control unit to exceed 80°C.
- (15) As the supplying pressure of electronic injection system is high, high pressure resistant fuel pipes are adopted for all fuel lines. Fuel pressure in fuel lines is still high even when the engine is not running. Therefore, be careful not to casually remove fuel pipes during service; When it is necessary to service fuel system, discharge pressure in the fuel system before removing fuel pipes. The way to discharge pressure is as follows: After removing fuel pump controller power supply fuse, start engine and idle it until the engine stops running by itself. Removal of fuel pipes should be performed in a well-ventilated area by professional service men.
- (16) Do not energize electric fuel pump when removing it from fuel tank to prevent electric sparks, which will cause a fire.
- (17) It is not allowed to perform running test for fuel pump under dry state or in water. Otherwise service life will be reduced. In addition, do not inversely connect fuel pump positive and negative poles.
- (18) When performing inspection to ignition system, perform spark jump test only when necessary and make sure that the test time is as short as possible. Do not open the throttle during detection, otherwise a large amount of unburned gasoline will enter the exhaust pipe, thus damaging the three-way catalytic converter.
- (19) Since the adjustment of idle speed is completely completed by electronic injection system, manual adjustment is not required. Throttle limit screw of throttle body has been adjusted properly at the factory, and users are not allowed to change its original position at will.
- (20) Do not connect battery with its polarity reversed to prevent damage to electronic elements. This system adopts negative ground.
- (21) Never remove battery cable when engine is running.
- (22) The positive, negative battery cable wires and electronic control unit must be removed before performing welding on vehicle.
- (23) Do not puncture wire outer coat to detect electric signals input and output by components.

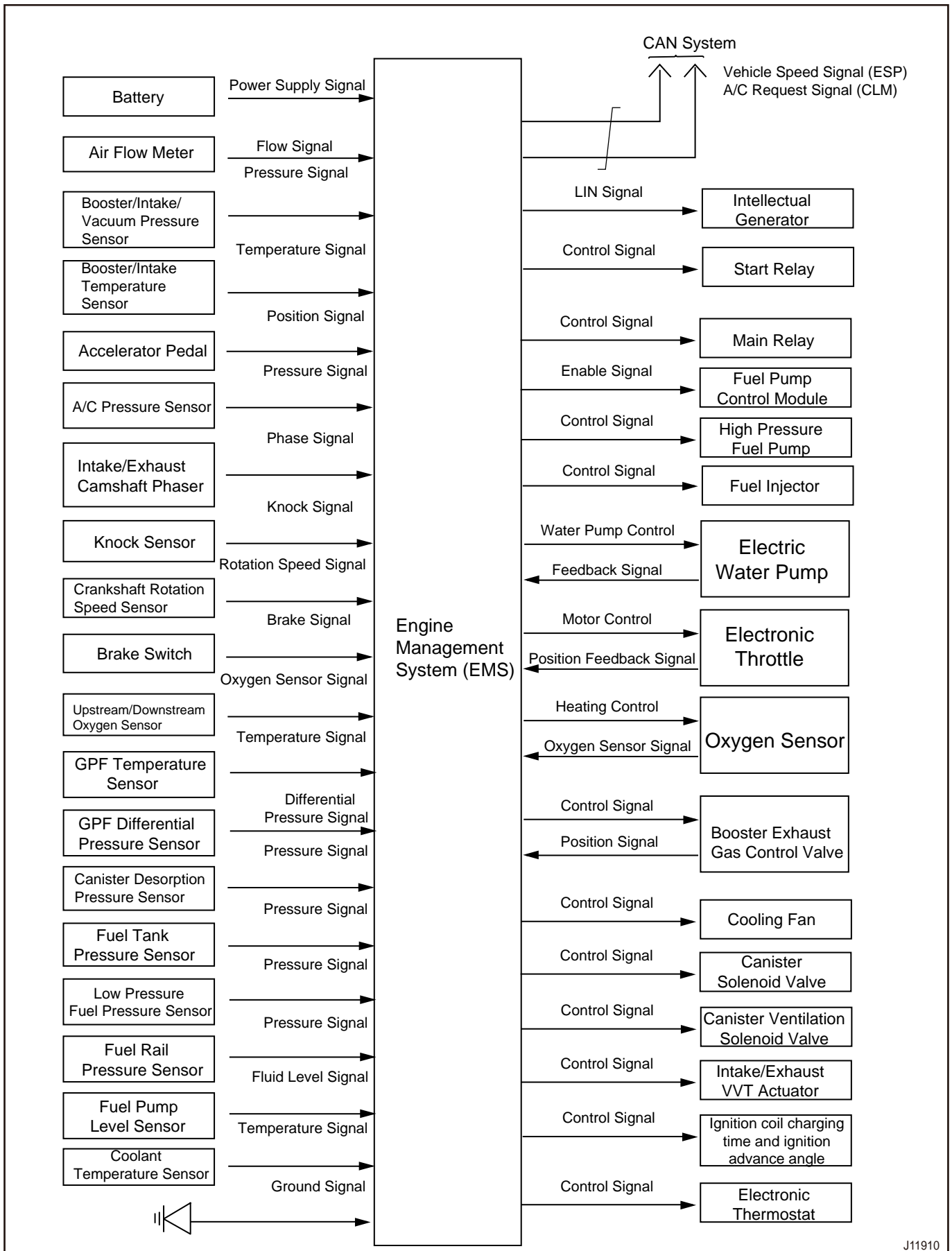
2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Engine Management System (EMS) mainly consists of Engine Control Module (ECM), sensors and actuators, which controls intake air amount, injection volume and ignition timing, etc. when engine is operating. In the engine management system, sensors are used as the input part to measure various physical signals (- temperature and pressure, etc.), and converts them into corresponding electrical signals; the function of ECM is to receive the input signals from sensors and perform calculation according to set procedure, producing corresponding control signals and outputting them to power drive circuit. The power drive circuit drives each actuator to perform various actions, thus making the engine run according to the preset program. Also, the trouble diagnosis system of ECM monitors each component and control function in this system. Once detecting and confirming a fault, it will store the trouble code. When detecting that fault has been eliminated, it will return to use normal value. The basic characteristic of engine electronic control management system is the use of torque based control strategy. The main purpose of the torque based control strategy is to associate a large number of different control objectives.

2.2 System Schematic Diagram





J11910

2.3 Management Function of Engine

■ Basic Function

- System structure based on torque.
- Cylinder load is determined by intake pressure sensor / air flow sensor.
- Improved air-fuel mixture control function in static and dynamic conditions.
- λ closed-loop control.
- Fuel is injected from each cylinder sequentially.
- Ignition timing, including cylinder-by-cylinder knock control.
- Emission control function.
- Catalytic converter heating.
- Canister control.
- Idle control.
- Limp home.

■ Additional function

- Immobilizer function.
- Communication with torque and external system (example: gear train or vehicle dynamic control).

■ Diagnosis On-line OBD

- Complete a series of OBD functions.
- Management system for diagnostic functions.

■ Torque Structure: System based on torque control

- In torque-based engine management system, all internal and external demands of engine are defined with the torque or efficiency requirements of the engine. By converting the various demands of engine into control variables for torque or efficiency, these variables are then first processed in central torque demand coordinator module. Engine management system can prioritize these conflicting requirements and execute the most important requirement. Obtain engine control parameters such as required fuel injection time and ignition timing with torque conversion module. The execution of this control variable has no effect on other variables. This is the advantage of the torque-based control system.

2.4 Control Signal: Input/Output Signal of Engine Management System

■ Main sensor input signals of ECM in engine management system consists the followings:

- Intake pressure/temperature signal.
- Vacuum pressure signal.
- Electronic throttle position signal.
- Accelerator pedal position signal.
- Coolant temperature signal.
- Intake/exhaust camshaft phase signal.
- Crankshaft rotation angle signal.
- Upstream/downstream oxygen sensor signal.
- Knock signal.
- High pressure fuel rail pressure signal.
- Canister desorption pressure signal.
- Brake switch signal.
- Vehicle speed signal.
- A/C request signal.
- A/C pressure sensor signal.

■ **Required actuator control signals which are generated via ECM from sensor input signals in engine management system:**

- Main relay control.
- Fuel pump/high pressure pump control.
- Injection timing and fuel injection duration.
- Ignition coil charging time and ignition advance angle.
- Electronic throttle motor control.
- Oxygen sensor heating control.
- High/low speed cooling fan relay control.
- Canister solenoid valve/switch water pump/electronic thermostat control.
- A/C compressor relay control.
- Engine speed output.
- Malfunction light control.
- Turbocharged exhaust gas valve/intake relief valve control.
- Electric vacuum pump relay/electric water pump control.
- Intake/exhaust VVT actuator control signal.

2.5 System Function Description

■ Start control

- (1) During starting, special calculation methods are used to control the filling, fuel injection and ignition timing. At the beginning of the process, the air in intake manifold is still, and the internal pressure of intake manifold is shown to be ambient pressure.
- (2) The specific “injection timing” is designated as the initial injection pulse in a similar process.
- (3) The fuel injection is changed according to engine temperature to promote the formation of oil film on intake manifold and cylinder wall, so the mixture should be enriched when the engine reaches a certain speed. Once the engine starts to run, the system starts to reduce the start and thicken immediately, until the start condition ends to completely cancel the start and thicken.
- (4) Ignition angle is constantly adjusted with starting conditions. It varies with engine temperature, intake air temperature and engine speed.

■ Heating control of engine warm-up and three-way catalytic converter

- (1) For a period of time after the engine has been started at low temperature, additional injections are still required to be supplied, there may be several times depending on the operating conditions, and cylinder filling amount and ignition angle are adjusted to compensate for the higher torque requirements of engine; And this process continues until temperature rises to a proper threshold.
- (2) In this stage, rapid heating of three-way catalytic converter is the most important, since rapid transition to operation of three-way catalytic converter can greatly reduce exhaust emissions. Under this operating condition, use exhaust gas to perform “three-way catalytic converter heating” by adopting methods of appropriate fuel injection mode (multiple injections) and a moderate delay in the ignition advance angle.

■ Acceleration/deceleration and motored fuel cut-off control

- (1) In fact, a small part of the fuel injected into the cylinder will not be combusted in time. Conversely, it forms a layer of oil film on the cylinder wall or piston. When the throttle opening increases, a small part of the injected fuel is absorbed by the oil film. Therefore, it is necessary to inject the corresponding fuel amount to compensate and prevent the mixture from becoming lean during acceleration. Once the load factor is reduced, the additional fuel contained in the oil film will be released again, so the corresponding injection duration must be reduced during deceleration.
- (2) Motored or traction condition indicates that the power provided by engine at the flywheel is negative. In this case, engine friction and pump air loss can be used to slow down the vehicle. When the engine is in motored or traction condition, the fuel is cut off to reduce fuel consumption and exhaust emissions, and more importantly to protect the three-way catalyst. Once the speed has been reduced to a set recovery of the fuel supply speed above idle speed, the fuel injection system is resupplied. In fact, the ECM program has a range of recovery speed. They vary according to dynamic changes of parameters such as engine temperature, gear position and engine speed, and prevent the speed from falling to the specified minimum threshold by calculation. Once the injection system is resupplied, the system begins to use the initial injection pulse to supply the fuel. After recovery of fuel injection, the torque-based control system increases the engine torque slowly and smoothly (smooth transition).

■ Idle control

- (1) Engine does not provide torque to the flywheel at idle. To ensure stable operation of the engine at as low an idle speed as possible, the closed-loop idle speed control system must maintain the balance between the generated torque and the engine power consumption. The idle speed requires a certain amount of power to meet the load requirements of all aspects. They include internal friction from the engine crankshaft and valve gear and auxiliary components such as the water pump.
- (2) Engine management system uses torque based control strategy to determine engine output torque requested by maintaining required idling speed in all working conditions according to closed loop idle control. This output torque increases as engine speed reduces, and reduces as engine speed increases. System responds to the new “interference factor” through requesting higher torque, such as turning on/off air conditioning compressor or shifting of automatic transmission. When engine temperature is low, torque is also needed to be increased to compensate higher internal friction and/or maintain higher idling speed. The sum of these required output torque will be transmitted to torque coordinator which will process, calculate and obtain corresponding volumetric density, mixture contents and ignition timing.

■ Closed-loop control

- (1) Exhaust aftertreatment in three-way catalytic converter is an effective method for reducing concentration of harmful substance in exhaust gas. Three-way catalytic converter can reduce hydrocarbon (HC), carbon monoxide (CO) and nitric oxide (NO_x) up to 98% or more, and convert them into water (H₂O), carbon dioxide (CO₂) and nitrogen (N₂). However, such high efficiency can be achieved only within small range of engine excess air coefficient $\lambda=1$, λ closed loop control is aimed to ensure mixture concentration within this range.
- (2) λ closed loop control system functions only when oxygen sensor is equipped. Oxygen sensor on side of three-way catalytic converter monitors oxygen content in exhaust gas, lean mixture ($\lambda > 1$) will generate about 100 mV sensor voltage, and rich mixture ($\lambda < 1$) will generate about 900 mV sensor voltage. When ($\lambda = 1$), sensor voltage will jump. λ closed loop control responds to input signal ($\lambda > 1 =$ lean mixture, $\lambda < 1 =$ rich mixture) to correct control variable, a correction factor is generated as a multiplier to correct the fuel injection duration.

■ Evaporative emission control

- (1) Due to external transfer of radiant heat, the fuel in fuel tank is heated and forms fuel vapor. Due to limits of evaporative emission regulations, these vapors containing a large amount of HC components are not allowed to be discharged directly into the atmosphere. In system, fuel vapor will be collected in activated carbon canister through guide pipe and enters into engine and participates in the combustion process through scour at the right moment. Flow rate of scour airflow is realized by ECM controlling canister control valve. This control operates only under closed loop working condition of λ closed loop control system.

■ Knock control

- (1) System detects characteristic vibration at moment knock occurs through knock sensor installed in proper position of engine, and converts it into electrical signal to transmit it to ECM for processing. ECM uses special processing method to detect if knock occurs in each combustion cycle in each cylinder. Once knock is detected, knock closed loop control is triggered. After knock danger is eliminated, ignition of affected cylinder will be gradually advanced to predetermined ignition advance angle.

■ High pressure oil pump control

- (1) System detects characteristic vibration at moment knock occurs through knock sensor installed in proper position of engine, and converts it into electrical signal to transmit it to ECM for processing. ECM uses special processing method to detect if knock occurs in each combustion cycle in each cylinder. Once knock is detected, knock closed loop control is triggered. After knock danger is eliminated, ignition of affected cylinder will be gradually advanced to predetermined ignition advance angle.

■ Idle start and stop (if equipped)

- (1) Idle automatic start and stop function can realize the automatic start-stop function when the vehicle stops briefly (such as red traffic light) during driving. The system can judge whether the driver has parking or driving intention according to the information of vehicle speed, engine speed, transmission chain state and vehicle body state, and automatically controls the starting and stopping of engine. So as to achieve the purposes of fuel saving and emission reduction, and fuel consumption reduction of end users.

2.6 System Malfunction Diagnosis Function Introduction

■ Malfunction information record

- (1) Electronic control unit constantly monitors sensors, actuators, related circuits, malfunction indicator light, battery voltage and so on, and even electronic control unit itself. And it performs reliability detection for

sensor output signal, actuator drive signal and internal signals (such as λ closed loop control, coolant temperature, knock control, idle speed control and battery voltage control, etc.). Once a certain step failure or untrusted signal value is found, electronic control unit will immediately set malfunction information record in RAM malfunction memory. Malfunction information record is stored in the form of trouble code and displays in the order in which malfunctions occurred.

- (2) Frequency of malfunction can be divided into “steady state malfunction” and “intermittent malfunction” (for example, due to a short break of the wire harness or poor contact of the connector).

■ Malfunction light description and its control strategy

- (1) In general, component related to emission or the indication when system failed is an indicator light (MIL) which can be displayed on instrument panel and its shape is complied with standard requirements of regulation; Activation of MIL light follows the below principles:
 - ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON (not started), and MIL remains on.
 - After the engine is started, if there is no malfunction request for turning on MIL in malfunction memory, MIL goes off.
 - There is malfunction request for turning on MIL in malfunction memory, or there is request for turning on MIL at outside of ECM, MIL will turn on.
 - When there is a MIL flashing request at outside of ECM, or there is a MIL flashing request in misfire cause, or there is malfunction request that flashes MIL as necessary in malfunction memory, MIL will flash at a frequency of 1Hz.
- (2) On vehicles equipped with an electronic throttle system, there is EPC indicator light that used to indicate engine electronic control system related faults besides MIL light. EPC indicator light is used to indicate (- electronic accelerator and electronic throttle) related faults in general; Activation of EPC indicator light follows the below principles:
 - ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON (not started), and EPC remains on.
 - After the engine is started, if there is no malfunction request for turning on EPC indicator light in malfunction memory, EPC indicator light goes off.
 - There is malfunction request for turning on EPC in malfunction memory, or there is request for turning on EPC at outside of ECM, EPC will turn on.

■ A/C control strategy

- (1) 8s after engine is started, A/C compressor is allowed to operate. Within 8s of engine starting, even if the A/C request switch is pressed, A/C compressor will not engaged.
- (2) When coolant temperature is higher than 115 degrees, A/C is powered off. A/C control will restore when temperature is below 112 degrees.
- (3) When engine speed exceeds 7000 rpm or below 560 rpm, A/C is powered off.
- (4) When the battery voltage is lower than 9.5 V, A/C is powered off, and A/C control resumes when battery voltage is higher than 11 V; When the battery voltage is higher than 16 V, A/C is powered off, and A/C control resumes when battery voltage is lower than 15 V.
- (5) Engine is in the high power operating status, and A/C system torque decreased.

■ Three-way catalytic converter protection control strategy

- (1) When engine is operating normally, if exhaust pipe model temperature exceeds 880°C, exhaust temperature concentration protection function is activated, and ECM reduces the exhaust temperature by increasing the air-fuel ratio.
- (2) When exhaust pipe temperature drops below 830°C, concentration protection stops operating and the air-fuel ratio returns to normal.
- (3) When engine is operating normally, if catalytic converter central model temperature exceeds 900°C, catalytic converter protection function is activated and ECM reduces the catalytic converter temperature by increasing the air-fuel ratio.
- (4) When catalytic converter central temperature drops below 850°C, concentration protection stops operating and air-fuel ratio returns to normal.

■ Canister solenoid valve control strategy

- (1) Canister solenoid valve opening conditions:
 - Engine coolant temperature is higher than 55°C.
 - Engine air-fuel ratio control has entered the closed loop.
 - Canister solenoid valve trouble-free.

- (2) Canister solenoid valve scour time control
 - Since canister scour and air-fuel ratio self-learning cannot be performed at the same time, Bosch system uses a software to rationally allocate the time for opening canister solenoid valve and air-fuel ratio self-learning time to ensure that the functions are normal. Canister scour and air-fuel ratio self-learning are performed alternately during normal engine operation.
- (3) Canister solenoid valve opening control
 - Openings of canister solenoid valve are different at different engine speeds and loads. ECM calculates the current opening of canister solenoid valve according to the conditions such as engine speed, load, and air-fuel ratio fluctuation.

■ Oxygen sensor heating logic

- (1) Oxygen sensor must reach a certain temperature in order to work normally, usually at 350°C to 900°C. It is not enough to heat by exhaust temperature only. Therefore, there is a fuse inside oxygen sensor for heating specially. Heating with low power before dew point and heating with high power or even full-power after the dew point. So that the oxygen sensor can reach the operating temperature as soon as possible.
- (2) Dew point mark is an important input for oxygen sensor heating, mainly to protect the oxygen sensor.
- (3) Physical background of dew point. After the engine is started and exhaust system temperature is lower for a certain period of time, water vapor may condense on exhaust system. If the oxygen sensor ceramic body exceeds a certain temperature during this period, and condensation splashes on oxygen sensor ceramic body, condensation may cause the ceramic body to break. Therefore, it is necessary to monitor oxygen sensor temperature and exhaust pipe wall temperature near the oxygen sensor in real time when engine is started. Waste water is always condensing on the exhaust pipe wall in general. When the temperature of exhaust pipe wall reaches a certain value, it will stagnate for a period of time or the rate of rise will be slower due to the condensation of water vapor and overlap of the evaporation process. Temperature at this point is called the dew point temperature. If the wall temperature continues to rise, water vapor in the exhaust will no longer condense and evaporate on exhaust pipe wall.

■ Oil pump control strategy

- (1) When the ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON for the first time, ECM controls the operation of oil pump for 5s.
- (2) When ECM detects the engine starting, it will control the operation of oil pump.
- (3) When the engine is running normally, ECM controls oil pump to work continuously.

■ Switch type water pump control strategy

- (1) When the engine water temperature is low, the control solenoid coil is turned on and the water pump stops operating. When the engine water temperature exceeds a certain value, the control solenoid coil is disconnected and the water pump starts operating.
- (2) Under the condition of cold start at normal temperature, the control mode is basically entered from the beginning: it is normally closed for most of the time and occasionally rotated. With the increase of water temperature, the normally closed time is shortened and the normally rotated time is longer and longer. After reaching a certain temperature, it is switched to the normally rotated mode.

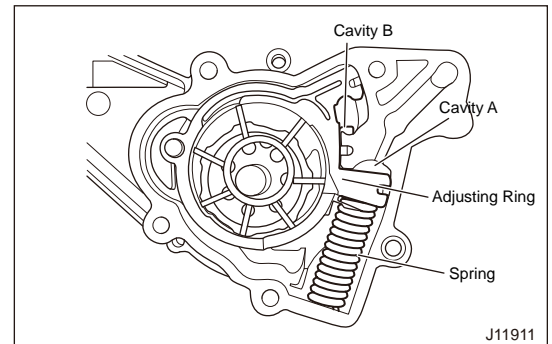
■ Electronic thermostat control strategy

- (1) Electronic thermostat technology is also a major innovation. It can calculate the target temperature according to the engine operating speed, load status, intake air temperature, coolant temperature, etc., accurately adjust and control the water temperature, and ensure that the engine always works at a reasonable temperature.
- (2) In electronic control system, operation of the electronic thermostat shall meet the following conditions at the same time:
 - Under low speed and low load, electronic thermostat starts to control opening at 105°C to improve fuel economy.
 - Under high speed and high load, electronic thermostat starts to control opening at 95°C to ensure engine safety.
 - Initial opening temperature: 100°C ± 2°C, full opening temperature: 110°C ± 2°C (Temperature is the temperature at the wax pack of the thermostat).
 - If there is fault in line, electronic thermostat can be opened mechanically.
 - Full opening stroke of thermostat: 8mm.

■ Variable displacement oil pump control strategy

- (1) Oil pump can meet the requirements of various oil components, effectively reduce the pump oil power of the pump within the full speed range, thus reducing oil consumption. Generally, at medium and low speeds, ECM controls the solenoid valve to be electrified, and the control valve is closed, so that the pump enters the low oil pressure control mode; At high speed, ECM controls the solenoid valve to de-energize, and the control valve opens under the action of return spring, making the pump enter the high oil pressure control mode.
- (2) Oil pump adopts a vane type displacement structure, and the main structure is stator and rotor. Two oil pressure chambers are respectively arranged on the outer ring of the stator to control the pressure of the stator so that it can deflect clockwise or counterclockwise around the fulcrum, thus changing the eccentricity of the vane pump and adjusting the displacement.
- (3) In electronic control system, operation of the variable displacement oil pump shall meet the following conditions at the same time:

- High pressure mode: When ECM determines that it is necessary to enter the high pressure mode, the oil pressure modulating valve is powered off and controlled and close oil path in cavity B. However, cavity A is directly connected to the oil circuit and works with the return spring to maintain the maximum eccentricity and displacement of the oil pump.
- Low pressure mode: When ECM determines that it is necessary to enter the low pressure mode, the oil pressure modulating valve is powered on and controlled and open oil path in cavity B. When the pressure overcomes the pressure of the return spring and cavity A, the stator deflects counterclockwise, reducing eccentricity and displacement.
- Initial opening temperature: $100^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 2^{\circ}\text{C}$, full opening temperature: $110^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 2^{\circ}\text{C}$ (Temperature is the temperature at the wax pack of the thermostat).
- If there is fault in line, electronic thermostat can be opened mechanically.
- Full opening stroke of thermostat: 8mm.



■ Turbocharger control strategy

- (1) Turbocharger uses the exhaust gas discharged from the engine to push the turbine impeller to rotate, and then drives the compressor impeller to pressurize the air filtered by the air filter and send it to the cylinder. As more air enters the cylinder, more fuel is allowed to be injected, thus generating more power from the engine. In addition, the turbocharger can also make the engine obtain power compensation when working at high altitude.
- (2) In electronic control system, operation of turbocharger shall meet the following conditions at the same time:
 - The required boost pressure after the engine starts is higher than the atmospheric pressure.
 - Boost pressure sensor does not report errors.
 - Boost control actuator does not report errors.
 - Maximum boost fault is not triggered.
 - Safe oil cut-off function is not triggered.

■ Relief valve control strategy

- (1) Fresh air is filtered into the compressor by the air filter, and after compression, it passes through the intercooler to reach the throttle valve, which is a component that keeps opening and closing at any time. In addition to high-speed cruise, the accelerator pedal at the driver's foot is almost always changing, which will cause a problem: when the accelerator is deeply stepped on, the turbocharger works at full speed, continuously delivering compressed air to the throttle valve; However, at the moment when the driver releases the throttle, due to a certain lag in turbine operation, the compressor is still working at full speed even though the throttle valve has been closed, thus the blocked high-pressure air may cause the

compressor blades or throttle valve to be damaged due to impact. Function of the intake relief valve is to release the high pressure at the moment when the throttle is retracted, thus protecting the compressor blades and throttle.



- (2) In electronic control system, operation of relief valve shall meet the following conditions at the same time:
- When the accelerator is released, the pedal change rate is less than a certain limit value.
 - When the accelerator is released, difference between the actual boost pressure and the target boost pressure is greater than a certain limit value.
 - The boost pressure ratio is less than a certain limit value when accelerator is in stable state.

■ VVT solenoid valve control strategy

- (1) VVT timing oil pressure solenoid valve is controlled by ECM, and the ECM control signal is duty ratio control. VVT timing oil pressure control solenoid valve can be in three different stable states through different duty ratios.
- State 1: ECM outputs a duty ratio signal of 0%, that is, VVT solenoid valve is in a power-off state and the valve core is at the rear end under spring force.
 - State 2: ECM outputs a duty ratio signal of 100%, that is, VVT solenoid valve is in a power-on state, valve core is pushed to overcome spring force, thus it moves forward and is at the front end.
 - State 3: ECM outputs a duty ratio signal of 50%, that is, VVT solenoid valve is in a semi-energized state, electromagnetic thrust is balanced with the spring force, and the valve core is in the middle.

■ GPF malfunction light illumination strategy

- (1) Since the combustion of carbon in GPF needs to meet the high temperature oxygen-rich condition, when this condition is not met for a long time, there will be too much carbon accumulated in GPF; Under the condition that oil cut-off is required but the carbon accumulation is too large at the same time, in order to protect GPF from burning, the oil cut-off will be controlled, so that the carbon accumulation will continue to deteriorate; Even more carbon accumulation will increase the engine back pressure, resulting in a decrease in power, torque and fuel economy; With the increase of driving mileage, GPF will eventually be blocked.
- (2) Malfunction light on instrument cluster shows as follows:

Malfunction Light	Color
	Green
	Yellow

Solution methods:

- 1) Malfunction light shown in green: It indicates that particulate filter is full, it is necessary to drive vehicle at a high speed to perform high-speed driving regeneration.
- 2) Malfunction light shown in yellow: It indicates that particulate filter is out of limit, it is necessary to perform GPF regeneration learning; If GPF regeneration failed, it is necessary to replace particulate filter and perform learning again.

■ Start and stop system (if equipped)

- (1) When the vehicle needs to stop at traffic lights or under other conditions, the engine start and stop function will turn off engine. When start-off request is detected, engine will start automatically. Engine start and stop function can improve the fuel economy of vehicle, reduce the exhaust emission pollutant, and also reduce idling noise while waiting.
- (2) When start and stop system operates normally, engine can be turned on or off automatically according to driver's requests and vehicle conditions, ensure fuel saving and emission reduction while also ensuring that the safety and comfort functions of vehicle are not affected (such as normal operation of A/C system, brake system, etc.).
- (3) Activation conditions of automatic engine stop function:
- There is no related faults on engine;
 - Battery power is sufficient;

- Engine start and stop system is in activated state;
 - Emergency braking is not performed;
 - It is not in high altitude area;
 - Since the last starting, the vehicle driving speed exceeds 10 km/h;
 - The steering wheel rotation angle is not excessively large and steering wheel is not in rotation;
 - Engine hood is closed;
 - Driver door is closed;
 - Driver seat belt is fastened;
 - Vehicle is stopped;
 - Starter motor is not overloaded, such as there is no starting overheating caused by multiple consecutive starts;
 - Not parked on slope;
 - For the vehicle models which are equipped hill-start assist control system, hill-start assist control system is turned off;
 - For the vehicle models which are equipped automatic emergency braking system, automatic emergency braking is not activated;
 - A/C is not turned on or although A/C is turned on, the followings are met simultaneously:
 - 1)Not in the MAX. defrosting;
 - 2)Not in the MAX. cooling/heating;
 - 3)Evaporator temperature is lower than 18°C;
 - 4)Ambient temperature is within the rang of 3~30°C;
 - 5)Difference between room temperature and required temperature is not more than 2.5°C.
 - 6)When the above conditions are met and any stopping triggering condition is met, the engine will stop automatically:
 - Brake pedal is depressed and accelerator pedal is released.
- (4) Conditions of automatic engine starting:
- Start and stop system is turned on;
 - There is no fault on engine start and stop system;
 - Engine hood is closed;
 - Driver door is closed;
 - Driver seat belt is fastened;
 - Conditions of starter motor are met;
 - Number of consecutive engine start failures is less than 3;
 - Under condition of automatic engine stopping, press start and stop system switch, turn off start and stop system and start the engine;
 - Transmission gear position is moved to D, M positions from P, N positions;
 - Transmission gear position is moved to R position;
 - When automatic parking function is turned off, if engine is stopped after depressing brake pedal at D position or M position, engine will start automatically after releasing brake pedal;
 - Depress the brake pedal when transmission gear position is in P/N position, engine will start automatically;
 - Engine will start automatically when brake system vacuum pump pressure is too low;
 - When accelerator pedal is depressed;
 - Engine will start automatically when rotating steering wheel;
 - When engine temperature is too low;
 - Engine stops automatically for more than a certain period of time;
 - When the difference between room temperature and set temperature is large;
 - When battery power is too low and battery temperature is too high;
 - Vehicle coasting;
 - When A/C is turned on and one of the following conditions is met, A/C requests to start engine.
 - 1)In the MAX. defrosting;
 - 2)In the MAX. cooling/heating;

- 3)Evaporator temperature is higher than 18°C;
- 4)Ambient temperature is not within the rang of 3~30°C;
- 5)Difference between room temperature and required temperature is more than 2.5°C.

Hint:

Under condition of automatic engine stopping, engine will not start automatically again if following conditions occur, you can only start engine manually:

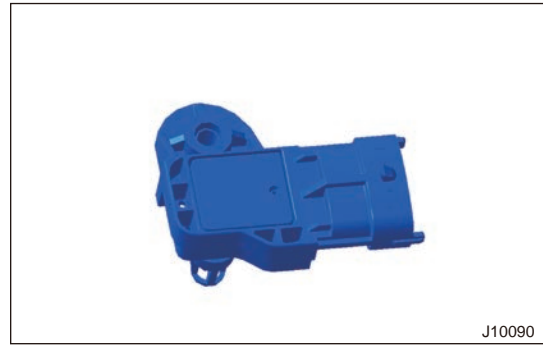
- Engine hood is opened;
- Driver door is opened;
- Driver seat belt is unfastened;

2.7 System Components Description

■ Intake pressure sensor

Intake manifold absolute pressure sensing element consists of a piece of silicon chip. Etch a piece of pressure diaphragm on silicon chip. There are 4 piezoresistors on pressure diaphragm, and the 4 piezoresistors form a Wheatstone bridge as strain element. Except for the pressure diaphragm, silicon chip is also integrated with signal processing circuit. Active surface of the silicon chip is subjected to a pressure close to zero, and its surface is subjected to the absolute pressure of the intake manifold to be measured. Thickness of silicon chip is only several micrometer, so the silicon chip will deform mechanically as intake manifold absolute pressure changes, and 4 piezoresistors will also deform, thus changing the resistance. Voltage signal linearly related to the pressure is generated after processing by signal processing circuit of silicon chip.

Intake temperature sensing element is a negative temperature coefficient (NTC) resistor, whose resistance changes with the intake temperature. This sensor transfers a voltage of intake temperature change to controller.



(1) Pressure sensor limit parameter

Parameters	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Power supply voltage	/	/	16 V
Pressure	/	/	500 kpa
Operating temperature	-40°C	/	+130°C

(2) Pressure sensor characteristic parameters

Parameters	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Pressure measurement range	10 kpa	/	300 kpa
Operating temperature	-40°C	/	130°C
Power supply voltage	4.75 V	5.0 V	5.25 V
Power supply current when $U_s = 5.0 V$	/	/	12.5 mA
Output terminal load current	-1.0 mA	/	0.5mA

Parameters		Value		
		Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Load resistance to voltage U_s or ground	Pull-up resistor	5 k Ω	/	/
	Pull-down resistor	10 k Ω	/	/
Response time $t_{10/90}$		/	/	1.0 ms
Weight		/	24 g	/

(3) Temperature sensor limit parameters

- Storage temperature: -40/+130°C;
- The maximum power at 25°C: 100 mW.

(4) Temperature sensor characteristic parameters

- Operating temperature: -40/+130°C;
- Rated voltage: Pull-up resistor (power is 1 kW) operates at 5 V or operates at a constant current of 1mA;
- Rated power at 20°C: 2.5 kW \pm 5%;

■ Electronic throttle body

Electronic throttle body is a critical part for engine intake system in EGAS system. Its main function is to control intake air volume by adjusting intake passage area according to driver's driving intention to meet intake requirements in different engine operating conditions, and send back position signals of throttle valve plate to control unit to achieve accurate control.

DVE consists of four parts: drive module, train module, executive module and feedback module, and all components are integrated into the same throttle valve housing. Throttle feedback module uses two redundant structures. When malfunction occurs, throttle valve plate will stop at the limp home position (NLP) determined by mechanical way, which is located above mechanical bottom dead center. DVE performs control only by corresponding electronic control unit or electronic test circuit. In principle, it is necessary to ensure that the throttle valve plate does not operate dynamically to the mechanical dead center.



J10130

(1) Basic performance parameters:

Test Item	Potentiometer Voltage				Response Time (ms)		Return Time (ms)
	Mechanical Bottom Dead Center (%)		Mechanical Top Dead Center (%)		Open	Close	
	IP1S	IP2S	IP1S	IP2S			
Parameter range	10 \pm 4	90 \pm 4	93 \pm 4	7 \pm 4	\leq 100	\leq 100	\leq 300

■ Knock sensor

Knock sensor is installed on cylinder block, and used to detect engine vibration caused by detonation. You can install one or more.

The sensitive element of sensor is a piezoelectric ceramic. Vibration of engine cylinder block is transferred to the piezoelectric ceramic through a mass block in the sensor. Due to the pressure generated by vibration of mass block, the piezoelectric ceramic generates a voltage at both electrode faces, and converts the vibration signal to an A/C voltage signal to output it.

Because intensity of vibration signal caused by engine knocking is far more than that of normal engine vibration signal, ECM can distinguish between knock or non-knock signals by processing these signals from knock sensor.

(1) Limit data

Quantity	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Operating temperature	-40°C	/	130°C

(2) Characteristic data (cable type)

Quantity	Value	
Sensitivity of new sensor to 7 kHz signal	23.6~35.4 mV/g	
Sensitivity of new sensor to 19kHz signal	28.3~42.4 mV/g	
Linearity between 5 and 15 kHz	±10% of 5 kHz (based on 10m/s ²)	
Main resonance frequency	> 30 kHz	
Impedance	Resistance	> 1 MΩ
	Capacitance	1150 ± 200 pF
Leakage resistance (resistance between two output terminals of sensor)	4.9 ± 20% MΩ	
Variation in sensitivity due to temperature (9 kHz)	≤ -0.04 mV/g°C	

■ Coolant temperature sensor

Temperature sensor function is used to monitor engine coolant temperature, On the one hand, it makes the electronic system judge the engine operating condition by outputting resistance signal; On the other hand, it also outputs signals to relevant instrument cluster, so that operators can directly judge the engine operating condition through visual inspection. Coolant temperature sensor encapsulates NTC thermistor in temperature sensor, its resistance varies in accordance with ambient temperature, so that the small change of outside temperature can be measured accurately and timely. Temperature of contact medium can be reflected by measuring its output resistance.

(1) Limit data

Quantity	Value
Rated voltage	Operates with ECM connected, standard operating condition is 5 V (power of pull-up resistor is 1 kW)
Rated resistance at 20°C	2.5 ± 5% kΩ
Operating temperature range	-40 ~ +130°C
Vibration level	≤ 600 m/s ²

(2) Characteristic data

Temperature (°C)	Resistance (Ω)
-40	45313
-30	26114
-20	15462
-10	9397
0	5896
10	3792
20	2500
30	1707
40	1175
50	833.9
60	595.5
70	435.7
80	322.5
90	243.2
100	186.6
110	144.2
120	112.7
130	89.30

■ Speed sensor

Speed sensor is a component of the engine management system. This sensor is installed on engine block, which used to detect crankshaft position and speed. Rotation of the signal plate causes the magnetic field at the induction point inside the speed sensor to alternate. The alternating magnetic field is induced by the differential Hall chip, and the induced alternating magnetic signal is converted into an electrical signal by the internal processing circuit of the sensor and output.

(1) Technical characteristic parameters

Parameters	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Storage temperature	-40°C	/	+80°C
Speed range	20 rpm	/	8000 rpm
Air clearance	0.2 mm	1.0 mm	1.8 mm
Phase accuracy (falling edge of 800 rpm)	-1 deg	/	+1 deg
Operating temperature (-plug area)	-40°C	/	+150°C
Operating temperature (sensor)	-40°C	/	+150°C
Power supply voltage range	4.75 V	5.0 V	16 V
Power supply current	/	4.2 mA	10 mA

Parameters	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Output signal rising time (Low - High)	/	/	25 us
Output signal falling time (- High - Low)	/	/	1 us
Output signal power supply voltage	/	/	18 V
Output current	/	/	20 mA
Output signal low voltage	/	/	0.5 V
Output signal high voltage	$U_{S,0}-0.5 V$	$U_{S,0}-0.3 V$	/
Power-on time	/	/	250 ms
n: Repeated accuracy at 800 rpm	-0.1 deg	+0.1 deg	/

■ **Camshaft position sensor**

Camshaft position sensor is a Hall type sensor. A phaser is installed on camshaft. When phaser is in high teeth, the applicable circuit outputs low voltage; when phaser is in missing teeth, the applicable circuit outputs high voltage. As a result, the crankshaft phase information is provided to Engine Control Module (ECM), so that the compression top dead center and exhaust top dead center of crankshaft can be distinguished.

■ **High pressure fuel distribution pipe assembly**

The high pressure fuel distribution pipe assembly is integrated with high pressure fuel distribution pipe (fuel rail), high pressure fuel injector and high pressure sensor. Its operation principle is to optimize design through structure of high pressure fuel distribution pipe, the accurate fuel rail pressure signal feedback can uniformly and precisely distribute fuel for engine through injector.

■ **High pressure fuel injector**

Operation principle of solenoid valve type high pressure fuel injector: When the electricity is applied, electromagnetic coil generates magnetic force, and the needle valve set is sucked up, and separated from valve seat, so that fuel is injected. When the power is off, compression spring returns and needle valve set moves downwards, so that it contacts valve seat eventually to seal the fuel.

■ **Ignition coil**

Ignition coil consists of primary winding, secondary winding, iron core and housing etc. When the ground passage of a primary winding is on, this primary winding is charged. If ECM cuts off the primary winding circuit, the charging will be suspended, and a high voltage will be induced in the secondary winding at same time, cause spark plugs to discharge.

(1) Technical Parameters

Primary current	8.5A X (1 ± 8%)
Secondary voltage	≥ 37 KV (40 pF ± 5 pF of load)
Load (Zener diode)	1000 ± 20 V
Ignition energy	≥ 90mJ

■ Upstream oxygen sensor

LSU oxygen sensor is much more advanced in functions than LSH and LSF. It is a combination of ceramic body principle and a "micro pump" for oxygen ion delivery. Sufficient oxygen is supplied to the electrode on contact side of exhaust by the pump to keep the voltage on both sides constant at about 450 mV. Electronic controller converts the electric energy consumption of the pump into the excess air coefficient, and the output current has an almost linear relationship with it, which $\lambda = 0.65 \sim \infty$, so it is also called linear oxygen sensor. Not only can determine λ is more than 1 or less than 1, but also can measure specific values of λ in lean and rich areas, so that excess air coefficient in a large range (that is, wide frequency) can be measured, and enables continuous control from $\lambda < 1$ to $\lambda > 1$.

(1) Characteristic data

Description	New	After platform test
λ signal when $\lambda = 1.7$	1.70 ± 0.077	1.70 ± 0.132
λ signal when $\lambda = 0.8$	0.80 ± 0.012	0.80 ± 0.020

(2) Sensor electrical data

Description		Value
Resistance between housing and each flat insert pieces	Room temperature, 800V DC	$\geq 10 \text{ M}\Omega$
Power supply voltage on connector	Rated voltage	6.8 V
	Continuous operating voltage	$\leq 12 \text{ V}$
	Maximum system power supply voltage	$\leq 16.5 \text{ V}$
	Short time voltage peak value within 60 ms (10 times in life cycle, ceramic temperature $\geq 20^\circ\text{C}$)	$\leq 28 \text{ V}$
	Minimum system power supply voltage	$\geq 9.8 \text{ V}$
Heating power for 6.8V of operating voltage		8.1 W

■ Downstream oxygen sensor

Sensing element of LSF oxygen sensor is a ceramic planar body with pores, and the outside of ceramic body is surrounded by engine exhaust, and the inside is ventilated. Sensing ceramic body wall is a type of solid electrolyte with heating electrodes inside. Operation of oxygen sensor is realized by converting the concentration difference of oxygen ions inside and outside the sensing ceramic body into voltage signals for output. When the temperature of sensing ceramic body reaches 350°C , it will have the characteristics of solid electrolyte. Oxygen ions can freely pass through it due to special material of ceramic body. It is precisely by taking advantage of this characteristic, it converts the concentration difference into the potential difference, thus forming the electrical signal output. If the gas mixture is rich, oxygen ion concentration difference in and out of the ceramic is high, electric potential difference is high, a large number of oxygen ions move from the inside to the outside, and the output voltage is higher (approximately 800 mV-1000 mV); If the mixture concentration is too lean, oxygen ion concentration difference in and out of the ceramic is low, electric potential difference is low, only a small amount of oxygen ion moves from the inside to the outside, and the output voltage is lower (approximately 100 mV). Signal voltage changes abruptly at about the theoretical equivalent air fuel ratio ($\lambda=1$).

(1) Characteristic data

3 - ENGINE

Description	New		After 500 hours of platform test	
Exhaust temperature when characteristic data is established	350°C	850°C	350°C	850°C
When I=0.97 (CO=1%): Sensing element voltage (mV)	800 ± 55	700 ± 55	800 ± 60	700 ± 60
When I=1.10: Sensing element voltage (mV)	50 ± 30	50 ± 30	50 ± 40	50 ± 40
Sensing element internal resistance (kΩ)	≤ 0.5	≤ 0.25	≤ 1	≤ 0.5
Response Time (ms) (600 mV to 300 mV)	< 250	< 250	< 400	< 250
Response Time (ms) (300mV to 600mV)	< 100	< 60	< 200	< 60

(2) Sensor electrical data

Description		Value
Between heating circuit and signal circuit	Room temperature, 800V DC	≥ 30
Power supply voltage on connector	Rated voltage	12 V
	Continuous operating voltage	12 to 14 V
	Operating voltage which can be maintained 1% of the total life at most (exhaust temperature ≤ 850°C)	15 V
	Operating voltage which can be maintained 75 seconds at most (-exhaust temperature ≤ 350°C)	18 V
	Test voltage	13 V
Heating power for 13 V of operating voltage, and 350°C of exhaust temperature		7 W
Short time heating current at 13 V of operating voltage and -40°C of ambient temperature		≤2.1 A

■ High Pressure Fuel Pump

High pressure fuel pump is an element specially used for direct injection engine. It functions to increase the system pressure and provide high pressure fuel for the fuel rail assembly. High pressure fuel pump supplies fuel for system as demands, thus providing a better fuel economy. It is made of stainless steel material and has a wide fuel application; also, it has the advantages of light weight, small volume, zero evaporative emission, etc. Currently widely used in the world's major vehicle assembly factory high pressure pumps use a single plunger pump design integrated with regulator, flow control valve and pressure relief valve. Its operation principle is to drive high pressure pump plunger to move up and down by cam, thus achieving oil suction and outlet. Using the pressure sensor on fuel rail, ECM controls the flow of high pressure fuel pump through flow control valve according to the set control procedure, so as to perform closed loop control of pressure in high pressure fuel rail. Regulator functions to suppress the pressure pulsation at the low pressure end and improve the stability of system. Pressure relief valve will open when high pressure fuel rail pressure exceeds the safety limit, so as to protect the system.

(1) Characteristic parameters

Items	Target Specifications
Mass	Approx. 0.83 kg
Oil outlet pressure	2-20 MPa
Maximum oil inlet pressure	9.0 bar
Relief valve opening pressure	35 MPa system: 39.9-41.4 for new parts, 36.5-42.4 MPa for durable parts
Driving voltage	10.8-16 V
Control type	Applied to ECM, which adopts current control

■ High pressure fuel rail pressure sensor

Oil pressure acts on metal diaphragm of pressure sensor to deform the diaphragm. There is a Wheatstone bridge composed of 4 metal strain gauge on diaphragm. The deformation of diaphragm causes a change in the resistance of strain gauge. After the signal processing of peripheral circuit, form the voltage signal that is linearly related to the pressure.

(1) Limit data

Parameters	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Power supply voltage (MAX. 1h)	/	/	18 V
Pressure	/	/	32 Mpa
Burst pressure	/	/	375 Mpa
Operating temperature	/	/	150°C

(2) Characteristic data

Parameters	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Pressure measurement range	0 Mpa	/	42 Mpa
Operating temperature	-40°C	/	140°C
Power supply voltage	4.75 V	5.0 V	5.25 V

Parameters	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Power supply current when $U_S = 5.0 \text{ V}$	9 mA	12 mA	15 mA
Response time $t_{10/90}$	/	/	1.0 ms

■ Electronic controller unit

Engine Control Module (ECM) is a pre-programmed microprocessor digital computer, which is used to adjust ignition timing, air-fuel ratio, emission control device, speed control, A/C compressor and idle speed etc. Engine Control Module (ECM) enables the program to suit ever-changing operation conditions.

(1) Limit data

Quantity		Value	
		Minimum	Maximum
Battery voltage	Normal operation	10.8 V	16 V
	Limit function	6.5 to 9 V	16 to 28 V
Limits and time for withstanding battery overvoltage	24 V	Keep starting some functions	60 s

■ Canister solenoid valve

Canister control valve consists of solenoid coil, armature, valve body and other parts. Air volume through canister control valve is related to the electric pulse duty ratio output from ECM to canister control valve and the pressure difference between canister control valve inlet and outlet. When there is no electric pulse, canister control valve closes.

(1) Technical characteristic parameters

Quantity	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Rated Voltage	10 V	13.5 V	16 V
Resistance at +20°C	14 Ω	16 Ω	18 Ω
Current under rated voltage	/	0.85 A	
Frequency of control pulse	5 Hz	/	30 Hz
Rate of flow when pressure difference is 700 mbar and duty ratio is 100%	6 m ³ /h	6.5 m ³ /h	7 m ³ /h
Permitted operating temperature	-40°C		140°C
Allowable pressure difference between inlet and outlet	/	/	-800 mbar

Quantity	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Permitted vibration acceleration marked on products	/	/	300 m/s ²
Leakage amount when pressure difference is 700 mbar	/	/	33 mL/min

■ Brake vacuum pressure sensor

Absolute pressure sensing element consists of a piece of silicon chip. Etch a piece of pressure diaphragm on silicon chip. There are 4 piezoresistors on pressure diaphragm, and the 4 piezoresistors form a Wheatstone bridge as strain element. Except for the pressure diaphragm, silicon chip is also integrated with signal processing circuit. Active surface of the silicon chip is subjected to a pressure close to zero, and its surface is subjected to the absolute pressure of the intake manifold to be measured. Thickness of silicon chip is only several micrometer, so the silicon chip will deform mechanically as line absolute pressure changes, and 4 piezoresistors will also deform, thus changing the resistance. Voltage signal linearly related to the pressure is generated after processing by signal processing circuit of silicon chip.

(1) Limit parameters

Parameters	Value		
	Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Power supply voltage	/	/	16 V
Pressure	/	/	500 kpa
Operating temperature	-40°C	/	+130°C

(2) Characteristic parameters

Parameters		Value		
		Minimum	Representative	Maximum
Pressure measurement range		20 kpa	/	115 kpa
Operating temperature		-40°C	/	130 °C
Power supply voltage		4.75 V	5.0 V	5.25 V
Power supply current when $U_S = 5.0 V$			/	12.5 mA
Output terminal load current		-1.0 mA	/	0.5 mA
Load resistance to voltage U_S or ground	Pull-up resistor	5 kΩ	/	/
	Pull-down resistor	10 kΩ	/	/
Response time $t_{10/90}$		/		1.0 ms
Weight		/	17 g	

■ GPF temperature sensor

The temperature sensor uses Pt200 type thermal-sensitive platinum resistor sensing element as the temperature sensing element. The outside of the sensing element is encapsulated by a stainless steel shell with high temperature resistance and corrosion resistance. The sensing element and the stainless steel shell are filled with heat conduction materials to facilitate the timely transfer of exhaust gas heat to the surface of sensing element. During operation, the sensor head is placed inside the engine exhaust pipe, and the high temperature airflow transmits heat to the sensing element, so that the temperature of the sensing element interior platinum resistor changes accordingly, and the resistance value of platinum resistor varies with the temperature. Through a specific monitoring circuit, the engine controller (ECU) monitors the resistance signal output by the sensor to calculate the corresponding exhaust gas temperature signal.

(1) Signal accuracy

Signal accuracies of sensor (new parts) are shown as follows:

Temperature Range	Signal accuracy
-40°C ~ 300°C	± 2.5°C
301°C ~ 900°C	± 1.0 % of temperature in °C
901°C ~ 950°C	± 2.0 % of temperature in °C

Signal accuracies of sensor (deteriorated parts) are shown as follows:

Temperature Range	Signal Accuracy
10 °C	± 3.8 Ω (± 5°C)
650 °C	± 8 Ω (± 13°C)

(2) Dynamic response performance

Dynamic response performance of the exhaust temperature sensor is based on the change speed of output signal when the ambient temperature changes abruptly, which should meet the requirements of the following table

Temperature Jump	Air-flow Velocity	Response Time
300°C	11 m/s	< 12 s

■ GPF differential pressure sensor

Differential pressure sensor (double membrane) unit consists of housing, two same LGA (Land Grid Array) sensing element modules, cover plate, sealing glue, connecting glue, bonding wire and other sub components. The values measured by sensor are upstream gas absolute pressure and downstream gas absolute pressure of GPF.

Differential pressure sensor (double membrane) unit consists of housing, two same LGA (Land Grid Array) sensing element modules, cover plate, sealing glue, connecting glue, bonding wire and other sub components. The values measured by sensor are upstream gas absolute pressure and downstream gas absolute pressure of GPF. Sensing element module of differential pressure sensor (LPS4-2ABS) consists of a piece of silicon chip. Etch a piece of pressure diaphragm on silicon chip. There are 4 piezoresistors on pressure diaphragm, and the 4 piezoresistors form a Wheatstone bridge as strain element. Silicon chip will deform mechanically as emission gas pressure changes, and 4 piezoresistors will also deform, thus changing the resistance. Output the information in SENT signal format to ECM after processing by signal processing circuit of silicon chip.

■ **Electronic control actuator**

Electronic control actuator is used to drive exhaust gas by-pass valve of turbocharger. Its main function is to adjust waste gate opening angle and control rotation speed of turbocharger according to driver's driving intention, so as to control intake air demand when the intake air amount meets different engine operating conditions, and feed back the position signal of waste gate to control unit to realize accurate control.

Electronic control actuator consists of four parts: drive module, train module, executive module and feedback module, and all sub components of drive module, train module and feedback module are integrated into the same housing. Feedback module contains non-contact type sensors, which can accurately feedback the valve position according to Hall principle. Electronic control actuator performs control only by corresponding electronic control unit or electronic test circuit. In principle, it is necessary to ensure that the actuator connecting rod does not operate dynamically to the mechanical dead center.

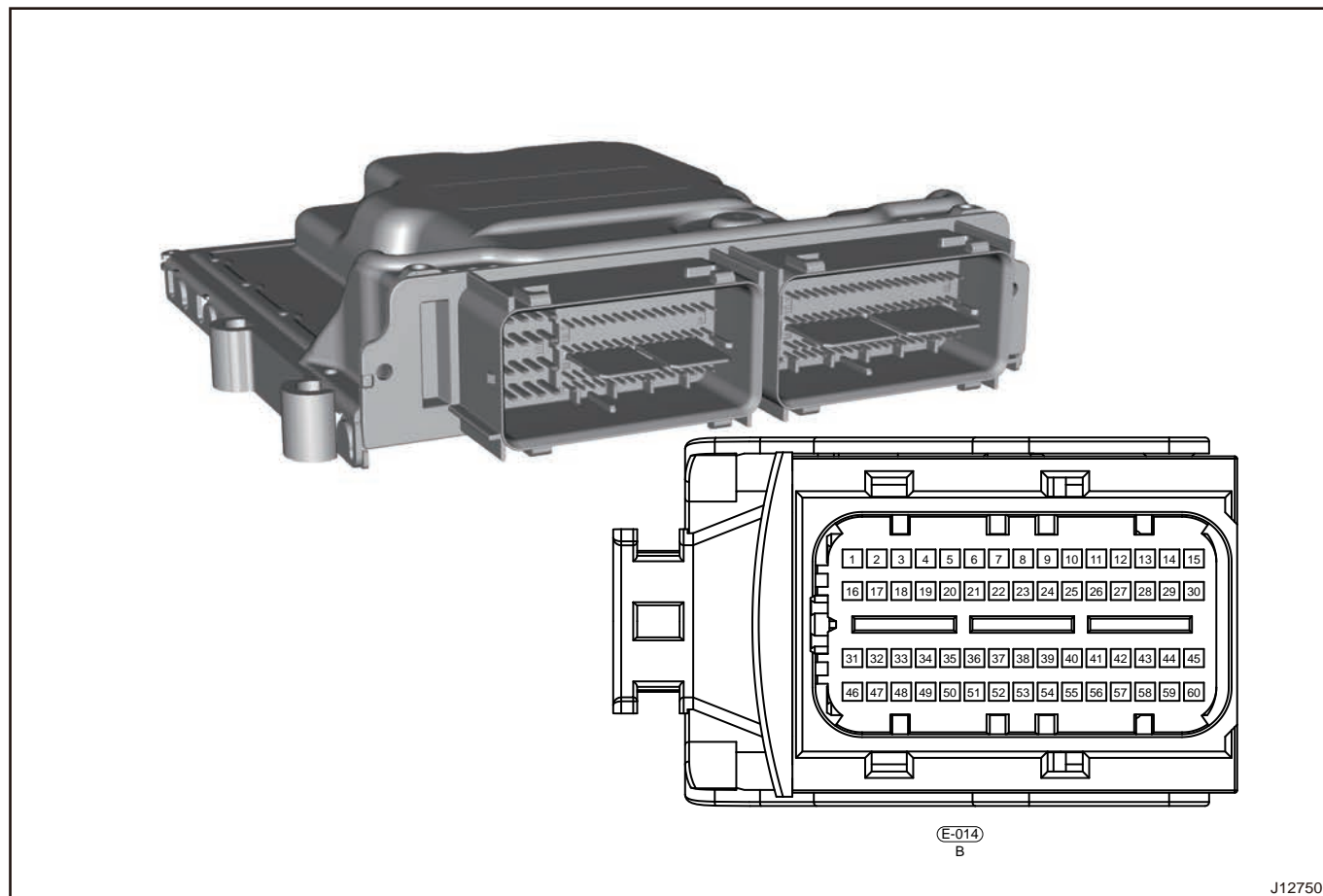
(1) Technical characteristic parameters

Test Item	Potentiometer Voltage		Response Time (ms)		Driving Torque (New Parts) (Nm)
	Mechanical Top Dead Center (%)	Mechanical Bottom Dead Center (%)	Open	Close	
Parameter range	5+/-2.2	95+/-2.2	≤ 200	≤ 200	≥ 0.8

3 System Circuit Diagram

3.1 Module Terminal Definition

Terminal A Definition

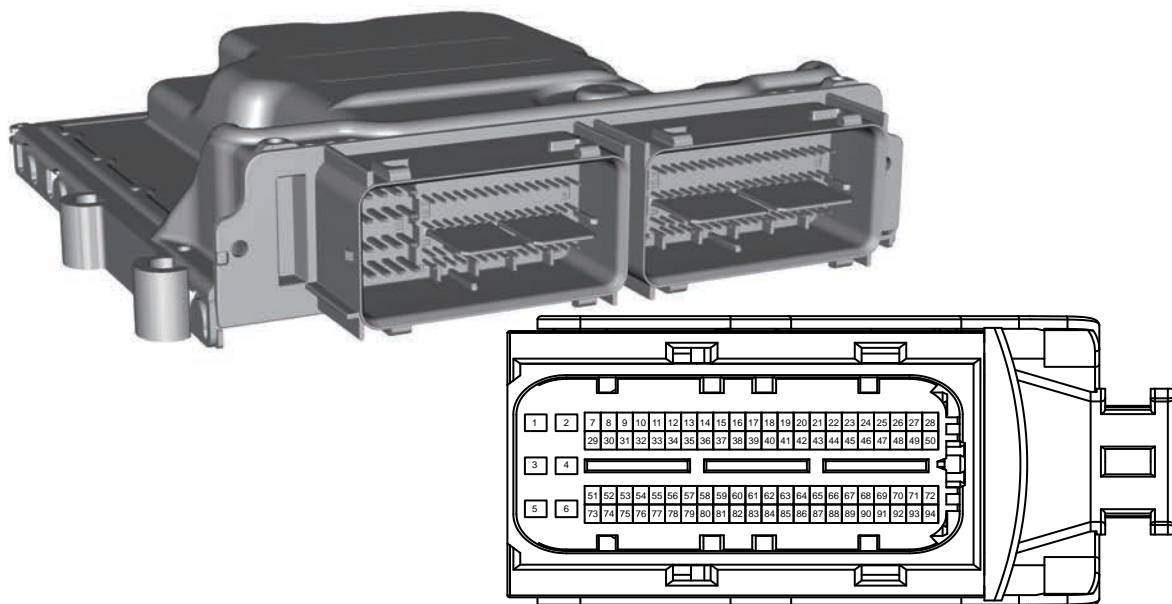


J12750

3 - ENGINE

Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
A1	Electronic Throttle Control +	A31	1st Cylinder Injection +
A2	Electronic Throttle Control -	A32	4th Cylinder Injection +
A3	Oil Pressure Control Valve -	A33	1st Cylinder Injection -
A4	Oil Pressure Control Valve +	A34	3rd Cylinder Injection -
A5	Variable Valve Timing Valve (Exhaust)	A35	Electronic Wastegate Control +
A6	ECU Shielding Ground	A36	1st GPF Pressure Sensor
A7	5V Power Supply	A37	1st Cylinder Ignition
A8	5V Power Supply	A38	3rd Cylinder Ignition
A9	Sensor Ground	A39	4th Cylinder Ignition
A10	Knock Sensor (-)	A40	2nd Cylinder Ignition
A11	-	A41	Throttle Position Sensor 2
A12	Intake Pressure Sensor	A42	-
A13	Electronic Wastegate Position Signal	A43	Coolant Temperature Sensor Ground
A14	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor	A44	5V Power Supply
A15	-	A45	-
A16	Variable Oil Pump	A46	3rd Cylinder Injection +
A17	-	A47	2nd Cylinder Injection +
A18	Canister Control Valve	A48	4th Cylinder Injection -
A19	Relief Control Valve	A49	2nd Cylinder Injection -
A20	Variable Valve Timing Valve (Intake)	A50	Electronic Wastegate Control -
A21	-	A51	Sensor Ground
A22	-	A52	5V Power Supply
A23	Engine Speed Sensor (Hall Type)	A53	Phase Sensor (Intake)
A24	Throttle Position Sensor 1	A54	Phase Sensor (Exhaust)
A25	Knock Sensor (+)	A55	-
A26	Sensor Ground	A56	Intake Air Temperature Sensor
A27	5V Power Supply	A57	Water Temperature Sensor
A28	Sensor Ground	A58	Mass Air Flow Signal (HFM7)
A29	-	A59	Sensor Ground
A30	-	A60	-

Terminal K Definition



(B-096)
B
ECU-K

J12760

Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
K1	ECU Ground 1	K48	Low Pressure Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor
K2	ECU Ground 2	K49	-
K3	Main Relay Power Supply 1	K50	A/C Compressor Relay
K4	ECU Ground 3	K51	-
K5	Main Relay Power Supply 2	K52	Pedal 2 Ground
K6	Main Relay Power Supply 3	K53	-
K7	Upstream Oxygen Heating	K54	-
K8	Electronic Water Pump Controller	K55	-
K9	-	K56	2nd GPF Differential Pressure Sensor
K10	A/C Pressure Sensor	K57	Canister Ventilation Valve
K11	Sensor Ground	K58	5V Power Supply
K12	-	K59	5V Power Supply
K13	Brake Vacuum Sensor	K60	Immobilizer Input
K14	Clutch Water Pump Solenoid Valve	K61	Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor 2
K15	Fuel Control Enabled Signal	K62	Downstream Oxygen Sensor
K16	Electronic Thermostat	K63	Boost Pressure Sensor

3 - ENGINE

Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
K17	5V Power Supply	K64	Boost Pressure Temperature Sensor
K18	-	K65	LIN Bus Interface
K19	Brake Light Switch	K66	-
K20	-	K67	-
K21	Sensor Ground	K68	-
K22	-	K69	Main Relay
K23	-	K70	Starter State Feedback
K24	Brake Switch	K71	Sensor Ground
K25	-	K72	-
K26	Brake Vacuum Pump Relay	K73	Crankshaft Ventilation Heater Relay
K27	-	K74	Canister Desorption Pressure Sensor
K28	-	K75	-
K29	Downstream Oxygen Sensor Heater	K76	Upstream Oxygen Virtual Ground Voltage
K30	Continuous Power Supply	K77	Upstream Oxygen Feedback Voltage
K31	Starter Motor Relay	K78	Upstream Oxygen Correction Resistor
K32	GPF Sensor Ground	K79	Upstream Oxygen Control Signal
K33	-	K80	Pedal 1 Ground
K34	Oxygen Sensor Ground	K81	Pedal 5V Power Supply 2
K35	-	K82	Pedal 5 V Power Supply 1
K36	GPF Front Temperature Sensor	K83	Accelerator Pedal Position Sensor 1
K37	Tank Pressure Sensor	K84	-
K38	-	K85	-
K39	Fan Relay 1 (Low Speed)	K86	-
K40	Fuel Level Sensor	K87	Ignition Switch
K41	-	K88	-
K42	Fan Relay 2 (High Speed)	K89	-
K43	-	K90	-
K44	CAN Low for Refreshing and Body	K91	-
K45	CAN High for Refreshing and Body	K92	-
K46	-	K93	-
K47	-	K94	-

4 Diagnosis & Testing

4.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Possible Cause
Engine does not crank or cranks slowly while starting	Battery
	Starter
	Wire harness or ENGINE START STOP switch
	Starter relay
	ECU, TCU
	Engine mechanical
Engine cranks normally but cannot start successfully while starting	No fuel in tank
	Fuel pump
	Fuel injector
	Crankshaft Position Sensor
	Ignition coil
	Engine immobilizer
	ECM
	Engine mechanical
Difficult to start with hot engine	Crankshaft position sensor
	Ignition coil
	Fuel pump
	Coolant temperature sensor
	Engine mechanical
	Camshaft sensor
Difficult to start with cold engine	Fuel pump
	Coolant temperature sensor
	Fuel injector
	Ignition coil
	Engine mechanical
Engine speed is normal, but it is difficult to start at anytime	Fuel quality
	Fuel pump
	Coolant temperature sensor
	Fuel injector

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Ignition coil
	Intake passage
	Ignition timing
	Spark plug
	Engine mechanical
Engine starts normally, but idles roughly at anytime	Fuel quality
	Fuel pump
	Coolant temperature sensor
	Fuel injector
	Electronic throttle body
	Intake passage
	Ignition timing
	Spark plug
	Engine mechanical
Engine starts normally, but idles roughly after warming up	Fuel quality
	Coolant temperature sensor
	Electronic throttle body
	Intake passage
	Spark plug
	Engine mechanical
Engine starts normally, but idles roughly or stalls with part load (for example, A/C is ON)	Electronic throttle
	Alternator
Engine starts normally, but idle speed is too high	Electronic throttle body
	Intake pipe air leaked
	Coolant temperature sensor
Low engine speed or stalls when accelerating	Intake pressure sensor
	Intake pipe
	Exhaust pipe
	Ignition timing
	Throttle position sensor
	Fuel injector
	Spark plug
Slow response when accelerating	Intake pressure sensor

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Intake pipe
	Exhaust pipe
	Ignition timing
	Throttle position sensor
	Fuel injector
	Spark plug
Lack of power and poor performance when accelerating	Intake pressure sensor
	Intake pipe
	Exhaust pipe
	Ignition timing
	Throttle position sensor
	Fuel injector
	Spark plug

4.2 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the control system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Examine vehicle and check basic items
----------	--

Check system power supply voltage, and check that fuse, wire harness and connector are connected normally.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG

Check and replace malfunctioning parts

OK

3	Using a diagnostic tester, read related DTC and data stream information.
----------	---

Result

Result	Go to
No DTC	A
DTC occurs	B

A Perform troubleshooting procedure without DTCs according to malfunction symptom

B

4 Troubleshoot according to DTCs troubleshooting procedure

Result

Result	Go to
Problem is not resolved	A
Problem is resolved	B

A Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

5 According to airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection and delivery, confirm that malfunction is resolved.

Result

Result	Go to
Delivery inspection is failed	A
Delivery inspection is qualified	B

A Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

6 Finished

4.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is normal before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in engine system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select Read DTC.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction. Go to inspection procedure - Step 1.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check engine system components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P049900	EVAP System Vent Valve Control Circuit High	Battery voltage > 8.5 V; Drive level is in operation status; Output voltage > (0.18~0.25) V.	Canister vent valve damaged Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace canister vent valve • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace engine compartment fuse and relay box
P049800	EVAP System Vent Valve Control Circuit Low	Battery voltage > 8.5 V; Drive level is not in operation status;	Engine compartment fuse and relay box damaged	

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		Output voltage < 2.5 V.		
P044700	EVAP System Vent Control Circuit Open	Battery voltage > 8.5 V; Drive level is in operation status; 5 V > output voltage > 2.5 V.		
P242200	EVAP System Vent Valve Stuck Closed	Tank pressure after CPV off and AAV on \leq 2599.98 Pa.		
P254029	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Positive Offset	Engine speed is 0 rpm and low pressure oil pump does not operate. After a period of time (not less than 30s), fuel rail pressure change value \leq 10 Kpa, and difference between water temperature and current oil temperature with engine stopped \geq 35°C.	DECOS oil passage pressure sensor damaged Battery damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace DECOS oil passage pressure sensor • Replace battery • Replace ECM
P016F00	DECOS Low Pressure Oil Passage PWM Control Deviation Too Large			
P137000	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Relative Pressure Too Low			
P137100	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Relative Pressure Too High			
P254028	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Negative Offset			
P254100	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit Low Voltage			
P008A00	DECOS Low Pressure Oil Passage Pressure Too Low	Ignition switch is turned ON		
P254200	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit High Voltage			
P150000	EMS Received Crash Signal	CAN network is normal, ENGINE START STOP switch ON, airbag control unit communication is normal	Battery damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace battery • Replace ECM
P150100	Airbag Communicate Message Unplausible			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P209100	"B" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit High Bank 1	Engine speed > 40 rpm, battery voltage > 9 V, ECM is power-on, and drive level is in operation status	Exhaust VVT control valve damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace exhaust VVT control valve Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P209000	"B" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Low Bank 1			
P001300	"B" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Open Bank 1			
P000B00	"B" Camshaft Position Slow Response Bank 1	Catalytic converter heating, $-10^{\circ}\text{C} \leq \text{oil temperature} \leq 120^{\circ}\text{C}$, VVT is not in reference position (-camshaft control activated)		
P005A00	"B" Camshaft Profile Control Performance/ Stuck Off Bank 1			
P053300	A/C Refrigerant Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit High	Ambient temperature > -20°C , and engine speed > 600 rpm	ECM damaged Wire harness or connector damaged A/C pressure sensor damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace ECM Replace wire harness or connector Replace A/C pressure sensor
P053200	A/C Refrigerant Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Low			
P064500	A/C Clutch Relay Control Circuit	Ignition switch is turned ON, $9\text{ V} < \text{battery voltage} \leq 16\text{ V}$	A/C compressor relay damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Battery damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace A/C compressor relay Replace wire harness or connector Replace battery Replace ECM
P064700	A/C Clutch Relay Control Circuit High			
P064600	A/C Clutch Relay Control Circuit Low			
P258D00	Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "A" High	Ignition switch is turned ON, $9\text{ V} < \text{battery voltage} \leq 16\text{ V}$	Brake vacuum pump damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Battery damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace brake vacuum pump Replace wire harness or connector Replace battery Replace ECM
P258C00	Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "A" Low			
P258A00	Vacuum Pump Control Circuit Open			
P050F00	Brake Assist Vacuum Too Low			
P057100	Brake Signal Synchronization Error	Brake switch malfunction counter > 20	Brake switch damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace brake switch

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
U015187	Lost Communication With ABM	ENGINE START STOP switch ON, power-on time > 2.5s, 8.95 V + 0.09 V < battery voltage < 16.02V +0.09 V	Wire harness or connector damaged CAN bus hardware circuit malfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair wire harness or connector • Repair CAN bus hardware circuit
U016487	Lost Communication With CLM			
U015587	Lost Communication With ICM			
U021487	Lost Communication With PEPS			
U116387	Lost Communication With Front Radar Module			
U186887	Lost Communication With MFS			
U007388	CAN Busoff Failure			
U010187	Lost Communication With TCM			
U010387	Lost Communication With EGS			
U012287	Lost Communication With ESP Module			
U012887	Lost Communication With EPB			
U014087	Lost Communication With BCM			
U021287	Lost Communication With Steering Column			
P12B100	Particulate Filter Back Pressure Too High	Catalytic converter heating activated, engine oil cut off, GPF temperature exceeds dew-point	Wire harness or connector damaged GPF sensor malfunction ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Repair wire harness or connector • Check GPF sensor • Replace ECM
P226D00	Particulate Filter Removed / Pressure Sensor / Line Abnormal Fault			
P129100	GPF Dynamic Response			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Performance of Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Non-plausible / Line Abnormal	condensation of low-temperature water vapor may affect the dynamic response of the differential pressure sensor		
P12E100	GPF Dynamic Response Performance of Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Non-plausible / Line Abnormal (Downstream)	When ambient temperature is low, condensation of low-temperature water vapor may affect the dynamic response of the differential pressure sensor		
P245500	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage High (Upstream)	ECM is power-on, 2 driving cycles, Type I test driving cycle		
P246100	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage High (Downstream)			
P245400	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage Low (Upstream)			
P246000	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage Low (Downstream)			
U060100	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage Low (Downstream)			
U060200	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Sent Communication Failure (Downstream)			
U060141	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Data Inspection			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Non-plausible (Upstream)			
U060241	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Data Inspection Non-plausible (Downstream)			
P129300	Particulate Filter Upstream Pressure Sensor Channel 1 Digital Signal Non-plausible (SENT Signal High or Low)			
P12E300	Particulate Filter Downstream Pressure Sensor Channel 1 Digital Signal Non-plausible (SENT Signal High or Low)			
P12A200	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Line Connection Error			
P12A300	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Rear Pipe Connecting Line Abnormal / Completely Blocked / Sensor Stuck	When engine does not warm up sufficiently, there will be a risk of fault error reporting caused by condensation of low-temperature water vapor in air pressure line		
P059700	Thermostat Heater Control Circuit Open	ECM is power-on, 9 V < battery voltage ≤ 16 V, shutting off path inspection is completed, drive level is in operating status, 2 driving cycles, idling	Thermostat damaged Coolant temperature sensor damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace thermostat • Replace coolant temperature sensor
P059900	Thermostat Heater Control Circuit High			
P059800	Thermostat Heater Control Circuit Low			
P012800	Coolant Thermostat (- Coolant Temperature Below Thermostat	Speed > 400 rpm, duration after vehicle power-on < 1800 s, ambient temperature ≥ -10°C, -10°C ≤ coolant temperature		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Regulating Temperature)	at initial start \leq calibration amount 58°C		
P012300	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch "A" Circuit High	12s after starting, engine speed > 1200 rpm	Throttle damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Throttle self-learning not performed ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace throttle • Replace wire harness or connector • Perform throttle self-learning • Replace ECM
P012200	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch "A" Circuit Low			
P012100	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch "A" / "B" Voltage Correlation	Engine speed > 480 rpm		
P022300	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch "B" Circuit High	12s after starting, engine speed > 1200 rpm		
P022200	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch "B" Circuit Low			
P022100	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch "A" / "B" Voltage Correlation	Engine speed > 480 rpm		
P151000	Diagnostic Fault Check Knock Control Signal Evaluation	1000 rpm < speed < 2500 rpm, gradient of velocity < 1000 rpm/s	Knock sensor damaged Speed sensor damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace knock sensor • Replace speed sensor
P019128	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Negative Offset	Running time after starting \geq 30s	Fuel rail pressure sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace fuel rail pressure sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P019129	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Positive Offset	Engine coolant temperature at last engine stopping > 90°C; Coolant temperature at start < 35°C;		
P019400	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Intermittent/Erratic Bank 1	120 rpm \leq engine speed \leq 4520 rpm		
P019300	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit High Bank 1	Turn on ignition switch		

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice		
P019200	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Low Bank 1					
P019000	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1					
P045128	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Range Performance	Vehicle speed > 30 km/h; Ambient temperature $\geq -7^{\circ}\text{C}$; $3500\text{Pa} \geq$ fuel tank pressure signal ≥ -2500 Pa; Ratio of manifold pressure to ambient pressure ≤ 0.6016	Fuel tank pressure sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace fuel tank pressure sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM 		
P04512A	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Range Performance					
P045300	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit High	Ignition switch ON				
P045200	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Low					
P128200	EVAP System Pressure Sensor/ Switch Circuit Range Performance	Engine starts				
P128300	EVAP System Pressure Sensor/ Switch Circuit Range Performance					
P045125	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Range Performance	Canister vent valve is opened; Valve canister flushing flow ≤ 0.0005 g; $30\text{ km/h} <$ vehicle speed < 70 km/h; Fuel level $< 45\%$; $45^{\circ}\text{C} \geq$ ambient temperature $\geq -7^{\circ}\text{C}$				
P155500	Throttle Actuator Electrical Malfunction	Power-on but not started, engine speed ≤ 250 rpm, engine coolant temperature $\geq 5^{\circ}\text{C}$, intake temperature $\geq 5^{\circ}\text{C}$, vehicle speed ≤ 0 km/h.			Electronic throttle malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged No self-learning ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace electronic throttle • Replace wire harness or connector • Perform self-learning • Replace ECM
P210300	Electronic Throttle Drive Level	Power-on				

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Malfunction (Short Circuit)			
P211800	Electronic Throttle Drive Level Malfunction (- Overheating or Overcurrent)			
P210600	Electronic Throttle Drive Level Malfunction (Non-plausible)			
P210000	Electronic Throttle Drive Level Malfunction (Open Circuit)			
P155400	Return Spring Check Max Error	Power-on but not started, engine speed ≤ 250 rpm, engine coolant temperature $\geq 5^{\circ}\text{C}$, intake temperature $\geq 5^{\circ}\text{C}$, vehicle speed ≤ 0 km/h.		
P156100	Not Plausible Error of DV-E Position Deviation	Power-on		
P155C00	Throttle Limphome Position Self Learning Error	Self-learning		
P155D00	Throttle PID Adjustment Max Error	DVE power driver level not faulty, direction of PID controller		
P155E00	Throttle PID Adjustment Min Error			
P155000	Throttle Self Learning Condition Not Fulfilled	Power-on but not started		
P155F00	System Voltage Cannot Meet the Electronic Throttle Self-learning Condition			
P156600	Throttle Mechanism Bottom Dead Center Relearning Error	Power-on but not started, self-learning, initialize self-learning		

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P155100	Not Plausible Error of UMA Learning			
P013300	O2 Sensor Circuit Slow Response Bank 1 Sensor 1	Upstream READY ON, catalytic converter temperature $\geq 400^{\circ}\text{C}$, 1200 rpm \leq engine speed \leq 2520 rpm, 19.992% < engine load < 100.008%	Upstream oxygen sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace upstream oxygen sensor Replace wire harness or connector
P062F42	Internal Control Module EEPROM Error	Always diagnose after power-on	Read and write failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Try again after vehicle powers off
P062F43	Internal Control Module EEPROM Error			
P208900	"A" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit High Bank 1	Engine speed > 40 rpm, battery voltage > 9 V, ECM is power-on, and drive level is in operation status	Intake VVT control valve damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace intake VVT control valve Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P208800	"A" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Low Bank 1			
P001000	"A" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Open Bank 1			
P000A00	"A" Camshaft Position Slow Response Bank 1	Catalytic converter heating, $-10^{\circ}\text{C} \leq$ oil temperature $\leq 120^{\circ}\text{C}$, VVT is not in reference position (- camshaft control activated)		
P003C00	"A" Camshaft Profile Control Performance/ Stuck Off Bank 1			
P260300	Coolant Pump "A" Control Circuit High	Ignition switch ON	Clutch water pump damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace clutch water pump Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P260200	Coolant Pump "A" Control Circuit Low			
P260000	Coolant Pump "A" Control Circuit Open			
P050B00	Cold Start Ignition Timing Performance	Catalytic converter heating activated, time after activation > 3s	Catalytic converter deteriorated Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace catalytic converter Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P050B20	Cold Start Ignition Timing Performance			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P06DC00	Engine Oil Pressure Control Circuit High	Ignition switch ON	Oil pump damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace oil pump Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P06DB00	Engine Oil Pressure Control Circuit Low			
P06DA00	Engine Oil Pressure Control Circuit Open			
P138824	Ambient Air Temperature Sensor "A" Multiple Check	Stopping time \geq 60s	Ambient Temperature Sensor Error Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace ambient temperature sensor Replace wire harness or connector
P138823	Ambient Air Temperature Sensor "A" Multiple Check			
P034100	Camshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance Bank 1 or Single Sensor	Crankshaft signal exists and reference point is confirmed; There is no the following DTCs: P0341, P0343, P0342, P0641.	Intake camshaft position sensor damaged Incorrect installation position of intake camshaft position sensor Engine mechanical malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace intake camshaft position sensor Reinstall intake camshaft position sensor Replace wire harness or connector Check for engine mechanical malfunction Replace ECM
P001676	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor A	Crankshaft signal exists and reference point is confirmed		
P034300	Camshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit High Bank 1 or Single Sensor			
P034200	Camshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit Low Bank 1 or Single Sensor			
P001678	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor A	Crankshaft signal exists and reference point is confirmed; There is no the following DTC: P0016.		
P036600	Camshaft Position Sensor "B" Circuit Range/ Performance (Bank1)	Crankshaft signal exists and reference point is confirmed; There is no the following DTCs: P0366, P0368, P0367, P0641. Camshaft Position Sensor "B" Circuit	Exhaust camshaft position sensor damaged Incorrect installation position of exhaust camshaft position sensor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace exhaust camshaft position sensor Reinstall exhaust camshaft position sensor Replace wire harness or connector Check for engine mechanical malfunction Replace ECM

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		Range/Performance (- Bank 1)		
P001776	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor B	Crankshaft signal exists and reference point is confirmed	Engine mechanical malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	
P036800	Camshaft Position Sensor "B" Circuit High (Bank1)			
P036700	Camshaft Position Sensor "B" Circuit Low (Bank1)			
P001778	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor B	Crankshaft signal exists and reference point is confirmed; There is no the following DTCs: P0366, P0368, P0367, P0641. Camshaft Position Sensor "B" Circuit Range/Performance (- Bank 1)		
P033900	Crankshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit Intermittent	Engine speed > 550 rpm, 1 km/h < vehicle speed < 25 km/h.	Speed sensor damaged Incorrect installation position of speed sensor Engine mechanical malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace speed sensor • Reinstall speed sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Check for engine mechanical malfunction • Replace ECM
P261700	Crankshaft Position Signal Output Circuit Open			
P057500	Clamping Switch of Cruise Control	Vehicle power-on	Button malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace button
P057800	Clamping Switch of Cruise Control			
P218700	System Too Lean at Idle Bank 1	Number of injection \geq 1000, coolant temperature \geq 70°C, intake temperature < 80°C, 3s after entering closed loop, upstream target air-fuel ratio is 0.98, upstream target air-fuel ratio < 1.02, fluctuation of	Oxygen sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace oxygen sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P218800	System Too Rich at Idle Bank 1			
P217700	System Too Lean Off Idle Bank 1			
P217800	System Too Rich Off Idle Bank 1			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		<p>multiplicative self-learning values ≤ 0.03, stable time of stability inspection is 10s, deviation between closed loop regulatory factor and $1.0 \leq 0.03$, fluctuation of additive self-learning value ≤ 0.984</p>		
P046300	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit High	System powers on or post operation	Fuel level sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace fuel level sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P046200	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit High			
P25B000	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Stuck	Duration when vehicle speed is $0 < 5s$, fuel level high-pass filtering $< 0.2 L$		
P128400	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit Range Performance	There is no the following DTCs: P0460, P0462, P0463, U0676		
P046129	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit Range Performance	Duration when vehicle speed is $0 < 5s$, fuel level high-pass filtering $< 0.2 L$		
P209700	Post Catalyst Fuel Trim System Too Rich Bank 1	Upstream signal ready on, no fuel cut-off, catalytic converter oxygen clearing not activated, closed loop adjustment target is 1.0, catalytic converter heating not activated	Oxygen sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace oxygen sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P209600	Post Catalyst Fuel Trim System Too Lean Bank 1			
P048371	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 1)	Vehicle power-on	Cooling fan malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check cooling fan • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P048372	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 2)			
P048373	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 3)			
P048374	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 4)			
P048013	Cooling Fan Control Circuit Open			

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P06344B	Cooling Fan Drive Chip Overheating			
P069212	Cooling Fan Control Circuit Short to Battery			
P069111	Cooling Fan Control Circuit Short to Ground			
P144200	Communication Fault of Generator	Vehicle starts, alternator target voltage ≥ 11 V, battery voltage > 10 V	Alternator damaged Battery damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace alternator • Replace battery • Replace ECM
P144100	Mechanical Fault of Generator			
P144000	Electrical Fault of Generator			
P261700	Crankshaft Position Signal Output Circuit Open	Engine speed > 550 rpm, 1 km/h $<$ vehicle speed < 25 km/h	Speed sensor malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace speed sensor • Replace wire harness or connector
P033900	Crankshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit Intermittent			
P053F22	Cold Start Fuel Pressure Performance	A period of time after starting ≥ 8 s, catalytic converter heating activated	Catalytic converter malfunction Mechanical malfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace catalytic converter • Check mechanical malfunction
P054A00	Exhaust VVT actual position deviation fault during catalytic converter heating	Catalytic converter heating activated, VVT position is not in reference position (- precondition is that VVT control has been activated)		
P053F21	Cold Start Fuel Pressure Performance	A period of time after starting ≥ 8 s, catalytic converter heating activated		
P008985	Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Performance-Pressure Too Low	A period of time after starting ≥ 8 s, catalytic converter heating not activated, relative target fuel injection volume = 9.984% , 0.2 V \leq fuel rail sensor voltage ≤ 4.8 V	Fuel pump malfunction High pressure fuel rail leaked Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check high pressure fuel rail • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace fuel pump
P008984	Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Performance-Pressure Too High			
P008800	Fuel Rail/System Pressure - Too High			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P008700	Fuel Rail/System Pressure - Too High			
P013800	O2 Sensor Circuit High Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 2	Downstream oxygen sensor heated sufficiently, downstream oxygen sensor open circuit fault is not detected in last driving cycle, downstream sensing internal resistance is reliable	Wire harness or connector damaged Downstream oxygen sensor damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace downstream oxygen sensor • Replace ECM
P013700	O2 Sensor Circuit Low Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 2	No fuel cut-off, catalytic converter oxygen clearing not activated, duration > 3s		
P223200	O2 Sensor Signal Circuit Shorted to Heater Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 2	Downstream oxygen sensor heated sufficiently, downstream oxygen sensor open circuit fault is not detected in last driving cycle, downstream sensing internal resistance is reliable		
P013600	O2 Sensor Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 2			
P005400	HO2S Heater Resistance Bank 1 Sensor 2			
P003800	HO2S Heater Control Circuit High Bank 1 Sensor 2	Key ON	Downstream oxygen sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Fuse blown ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace downstream oxygen sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace fuse • Replace ECM
P003700	HO2S Heater Control Circuit Low Bank 1 Sensor 2			
P003600	HO2S Heater Control Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 2			
P013A00	O2 Sensor Slow Response - Rich to Lean Bank 1 Sensor 2	Downstream oxygen sensor signal is reliable; 6000 rpm \geq engine speed \geq 520 rpm		
P227100	O2 Sensor Signal Biased&Stuck Rich Bank 1 Sensor 2	Downstream oxygen sensor signal is reliable; 4000 rpm \geq engine speed \geq 1000 rpm		
P227000	O2 Sensor Signal Biased&Stuck Rich Bank 1 Sensor 2			

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P010300	Mass or Volume Air Flow Sensor "A" Circuit High	Vehicle powers on, battery voltage > 11 V		
P010200	Mass or Volume Air Flow Sensor "A" Circuit High			
P010000	Mass or Volume Air Flow Sensor "A" Circuit			
P00BD00	Mass or Volume Air Flow "A" Circuit Range/ Performance - Air Flow Too High	Cumulative crankshaft rotation turns since engine starts > 150, no circuit malfunction on HFM		
P00BC00	Mass or Volume Air Flow "A" Circuit Range/ Performance - Air Flow Too Low			
P010122	Mass or Volume Air Flow "A" Circuit Range/ Performance - Air Flow Too High	Cumulative crankshaft rotation turns since engine starts > 150, no circuit malfunction on HFM, calculation condition of flow difference between post gas compressor and throttle is met, condition of model flow calculation is met, and there is no malfunction that inhibits the diagnosis of intake flow rationality	Air flow meter damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Fuse blown ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace air flow meter • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P010121	Mass or Volume Air Flow Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance - Air Flow Too Low			
P01012A	Mass or Volume Air Flow Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance	No circuit malfunction on HFM, no malfunction that inhibits the diagnosis of intake flow rationality, no throttle sensor malfunction, enters operating conditions of excessive large flow, enters operating conditions of excessive small flow		
P223100	O2 Sensor Signal Circuit Shorted to Heater Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 1	Exhaust temperature before front catalytic converter < 800°C; 20.0012 % < heating duty ratio < 79.9988 %; engine speed <	Upstream oxygen sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Fuse is damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace upstream oxygen sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace fuse • Replace ECM

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		3000 rpm; engine load < 20.25 %;		
P003200	O2 Sensor Heater Control Circuit High (Upstream of the Catalyzer)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON		
P003100	O2 Sensor Heater Control Circuit Low (Upstream of the Catalyzer)			
P241400	O2 Sensor Exhaust Sample Error Bank 1 Sensor 1			
P003000	HO2S Heater Control Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 1			
P005300	HO2S Heater Resistance Bank 1 Sensor 1	More than dew point temperature; Exhaust temperature at upstream oxygen sensor > 410°C		
P005326	HO2S Heater Resistance Bank 1 Sensor 1	More than dew point temperature; Vehicle starts normally;		
P013500	O2 Sensor Heater Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 1	O2 Sensor Heater Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 1		
P064D17	Internal Control Module O2 Sensor Processor Performance Bank 1	10.7 V ≤ system voltage ≤ 16.1 V, engine speed > 20 rpm	Upstream oxygen sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Fuse is damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace upstream oxygen sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace fuse • Replace ECM
P064D16	Internal Control Module O2 Sensor Processor Performance Bank 1			
P064D81	Internal Control Module O2 Sensor Processor Performance Bank 1			
P064D00	Internal Control Module O2 Sensor Processor Performance Bank 1			
P02CD00	Cylinder 1 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit	-30°C ≤ engine coolant temperature ≤ 120°C	Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P02D100	Cylinder 3 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit			
P02D300	Cylinder 4 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit			
P02CF00	Cylinder 2 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit			
P02CC00	Cylinder 1 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit			
P02D000	Cylinder 3 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit			
P02D200	Cylinder 4 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit			
P02CE00	Cylinder 2 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit			
P062B9A	Internal Control Module Fuel Injector Control Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure			
P062B64	Internal Control Module Fuel Injector Control Performance - Component Internal Failure			
P062B96	Internal Control Module Fuel Injector Control Performance - Component or System Operating Conditions			
P126100	Cylinder 1 Injector Circuit Range/ Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure	System voltage is normal; Engine speed > 1400 rpm; Number of ignition > 4	Ignition coil malfunction Wire harness or connector malfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check engine mechanical • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ignition coil • Replace ECM

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P126300	Cylinder 3 Injector Circuit Range/ Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure			
P126400	Cylinder 4 Injector Circuit Range/ Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure			
P126200	Cylinder 2 Injector Circuit Range/ Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure			
P035100	Ignition Coil "A" Primary Control Circuit Open			
P035300	Ignition Coil "C" Primary Control Circuit Open			
P035400	Ignition Coil "D" Primary Control Circuit Open			
P035200	Ignition Coil "B" Primary Control Circuit Open			
P230100	Ignition Coil "A" Primary Control Circuit High			
P230700	Ignition Coil "C" Primary Control Circuit High			
P231000	Ignition Coil "D" Primary Control Circuit High			
P230400	Ignition Coil "B" Primary Control Circuit High			
P230000	Ignition Coil "A" Primary Control Circuit Low			
P230600	Ignition Coil "C" Primary Control Circuit Low			
P230900	Ignition Coil "D" Primary Control Circuit Low			

Engine
mechanical
malfunction
ECM damaged

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P230300	Ignition Coil "B" Primary Control Circuit Low			
P05EC00	Cold Start Injection Timing Performance	Catalytic converter heating activated, actual number of fuel injection is not equal to target number of fuel injection	Wire harness or connector malfunction ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P026300	Cylinder 1 Contribution/ Balance	15 V ≥ normal system voltage ≥ 8 V;	Fuel injector damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace fuel injector • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P026900	Cylinder 3 Contribution/ Balance			
P026600	Cylinder 2 Contribution/ Balance			
P020100	Cylinder 1 - Injector Circuit Open			
P020300	Cylinder 3 - Injector Circuit Open			
P020400	Cylinder 4 - Injector Circuit Open			
P020200	Cylinder 2 - Injector Circuit Open			
P214800	Fuel Injector Group "A" Supply Voltage Circuit High			
P215100	Fuel Injector Group "B" Supply Voltage Circuit High			
P026200	Cylinder 1 Injector Circuit High			
P026800	Cylinder 3 Injector Circuit High			
P027100	Cylinder 4 Injector Circuit High			
P026500	Cylinder 2 Injector Circuit High			
P214700	Fuel Injector Group "A" Supply			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Voltage Circuit Low			
P215000	Fuel Injector Group "B" Supply Voltage Circuit Low			
P026100	Cylinder 1 Injector Circuit Low			
P026700	Cylinder 3 Injector Circuit Low			
P062900	Fuel Pump Module Control Circuit Low			
P062A00	Fuel Pump Module Control Circuit High			
P062A4B	Fuel Pump Module Control Circuit High	2 driving cycles, idling	Fuel pump malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace fuel pump • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P062719	Fuel Pump Module "A" Control Circuit Open			
P032600	Knock Sensor Signal Circuit Voltage Too High			
P032500	Knock Sensor Signal Circuit Voltage Too Low	Rotation speed > 2800 rpm; Coolant temperature > 40°C		
P032800	Knock/ Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit High Bank 1 or Single Sensor			
P032700	Knock/ Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit Low Bank 1 or Single Sensor	Rotation speed > 1000 rpm;	Knock sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace knock sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P032815	Knock/ Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit High Bank 1 or Single Sensor			
P032714	Knock/ Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit Low Bank 1 or Single Sensor			

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P26F000	Starter Relay "A" Stuck On	Starting request completed	Starter relay damaged Engine compartment fuse and relay box damaged Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace starter relay • Check engine compartment fuse and relay box • Replace wire harness or connector
P26F100	Starter Relay "A" or "B" Stuck Off	Starting request completed, starter operates		
P124A00	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Wastegate Control Valve Control Circuit Voltage Too High	2 driving cycles, idling	Turbocharger damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check turbocharger • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P2ABD00	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Wastegate Control Valve Control Circuit Voltage Too Low			
P024300	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Wastegate Solenoid "A"			
P023400	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Overboost Condition	Boost control activated, ambient pressure > 50 kPa, throttle fully opened		
P124B00	Electric Waste Gate (E-WG) Actuator Control Chip SPI Bus Error	2 driving cycles, idling		
P141400	Read Back Time Out Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)	Battery voltage \geq 8 V	Alternator damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check alternator • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P141500	Response Reception Time Out Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)			
P141600	Framing Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P141700	Checksum Error of LIN Bus (- Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)			
P143000	Battery Has Been Changed and Long Time No Tester Confirmation	ECM powers on	Battery damaged Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace battery • Check wire harness or connector
P143100	EBS or Battery Error			
P143200	EBS Temporary Error			
P050700	Idle Control System RPM - Higher Than Expected	Time after starting \geq 4 s, engine speed > 400 rpm, plateau correction factor > 0.734, engine coolant temperature > -10°C , intake temperature > -10°C	Coolant temperature sensor malfunction Intake temperature sensor malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM malfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace coolant temperature sensor • Replace intake temperature sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P050600	Idle Control System RPM - Lower Than Expected			
P050500	Idle Control System			
P050A22	Cold Start Idle Control System Performance	Altitude correction factor > 0.734, vehicle speed = 0 km/h, idling activated, catalytic converter activated	Catalytic converter malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check catalytic converter • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P050A21	Cold Start Idle Control System Performance			
P050D00	Cold Start Rough Idle			
P262600	O2 Sensor Pumping Current Trim Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1	More than dew point temperature, duration > 25s, $10.7\text{ V} <$ system voltage \leq 16.1 V, engine speed > 20 rpm, no fuel cut-off	Oxygen sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace oxygen sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P223700	O2 Sensor Positive Current Control Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1	Engine speed > 20 rpm, $10.7\text{ V} <$ system voltage \leq 16.1 V, gas mixture closed-loop control activated, deviation between oxygen sensor temperature and set temperature < 64.992°C , upstream electrical correction not activated,		

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		accumulated exhaust gas mass > 200 g		
P013200	O2 Sensor Circuit High Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 1	10.7 V ≤ system voltage ≤ 16.1 V, engine speed > 20 rpm		
P013100	O2 Sensor Circuit Low Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 1			
P224300	O2 Sensor Reference Voltage Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1	More than dew point temperature, duration > 25s, 10.7 V < system voltage ≤ 16.1 V, engine speed > 20 rpm		
P225100	O2 Sensor Negative Current Control Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1	More than dew point temperature, duration > 25s, 10.7 V < system voltage ≤ 16.1 V, engine speed > 20 rpm, no fuel cut-off		
P013000	O2 Sensor Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 1	Exhaust temperature of upstream oxygen sensor is 400°C, electric heating activation flag bit and ceramic body temperature is 720°C, no system fuel cut-off, 10.7 V ≤ system voltage ≤ 16 V		
P154000	Engine Torque Control Adaption at Limit	Time after starting > 10s		
P030100	Cylinder 1 Misfire Detected	ENGINE START STOP switch ON, vehicle starts	Ignition coil malfunction Fuel system malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check fuel system • Replace ignition coil • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P030300	Cylinder 3 Misfire Detected			
P030400	Cylinder 4 Misfire Detected			
P030200	Cylinder 2 Misfire Detected			
P030000	Random/Multiple Cylinder Misfire Detected			
P036300	Misfire Detected - Fueling Disabled			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P070000	Transmission Control System (MIL Request)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON, vehicle starts	Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged TCU damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM Replace TCU
P06AA00	Control Module Internal Temperature "B" Too High	Always diagnose after power-on	Wire harness or connector damaged Main relay damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace wire harness or connector Check main relay
P068A00	ECM/PCM Power Relay De-Energized Performance - Too Early			
P068600	ECM/PCM Power Relay Control Circuit Low			
P025100	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "A" (Cam/Rotor/Injector)	Ignition switch ON	ECM damaged Wire harness or connector damaged Flow control valve damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace wire harness or connector Check flow control valve Replace ECM
P025400	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "A" High (Cam/Rotor/Injector)			
P025900	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "B" High (Cam/Rotor/Injector)			
P025300	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "A" Low (Cam/Rotor/Injector)			
P025800	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "B" Low (Cam/Rotor/Injector)	System voltage is normal; Engine speed > 40 rpm		
P009000	Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Control Circuit Open			
P025A00	Fuel Pump "A" Control Circuit Open	Power-on	Relay damaged Fuel pump damaged Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace relay Replace fuel pump Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P025D00	Fuel Pump "A" Control Circuit High		ECM damaged	
P152000	Function Monitoring: Check of Predicted Air Mass Failed	Key ON	Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P153000	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU ADC - Null Load Test Pulse			
P153100	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU ADC - Test Voltage			
P157000	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU Monitoring Module Error			
P060D00	Internal Control Module Accelerator Pedal Position Performance			
P152100	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU Check of Injection Cut-off			
P152200	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU in Check of Cylinder Individual Fuel Corrections			
P061C00	Internal Control Module Engine RPM Performance			
P152300	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU or Sensor in Mixture Check			
P152700	Function Monitoring: Monitoring of ICO From Level1			
P152800	Function Monitoring: Monitoring of ICO From Level2			
P152400	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Comparison of Lambda and Operation Mode			
P152500	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU or Sensor in rl-Comparison			
P061A00	Internal Control Module Torque Performance			
P152600	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU Ignition Timing			
P157600	OverVoltage of ECU VDD5			
P157700	UnderVoltage of ECU VDD5			
P001400	"B" Camshaft Position - Timing Over-Advanced or System Performance Bank 1	Crankshaft and camshaft self-learning completed, startup completion time $\leq 2s$	Timing incorrect Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check timing Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P001100	"A" Camshaft Position - Timing Over-Advanced or System Performance Bank 1			
P021900	Engine Overspeed Condition	Engine starts	Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P157800	Diagnostic Fault Check to Report "WDA Active"	Vehicle power-on	Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P157300	Diagnostic Fault Check to Report "WDA active" Due to Errors in Query/Response Communication			
P157500	Diagnostic Fault Check to Report "WDA active" Due to Overvoltage Detection			
P055800	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit High	Vehicle power-on	Vacuum pressure sensor malfunction Vacuum leakage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check for leakage Replace vacuum pressure sensor

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P055700	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit Low		Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace wire harness or connector
P145000	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance (High)			
P145100	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance (Low)			
P14AC00	Starter Damaged or Wire Dropped	Start request sent, starter feedback signal valid, battery voltage drop > 2.8 V, number of crankshaft rotation angle signal ≤ 1		
P14AD00	Engine Block or Starter is not Engaged			
P14AE00	KL50r Wire Short Circuit to Battery	Starter operates, starter feedback signal valid	Starter malfunction Battery malfunction Wire harness or connector malfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check starter Replace battery Replace wire harness or connector
P152900	Function Monitoring: Fault of Starter Control			
P061500	Starter Relay "A" Circuit			
P061600	Starter Relay "A" Circuit Low			
P061700	Starter Relay "A" Circuit High			
P14AF00	KL50r Wire Short Circuit to Ground			
P219500	O2 Sensor Signal Biased/Stuck Lean Bank 1 Sensor 1			
P219600	O2 Sensor Signal Biased/Stuck Rich Bank 1 Sensor 1			
P120000	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance	Rotation speed > 80 rpm, t: There is no the following DTCs: P0108, P0107	Intake pressure sensor malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replace intake pressure sensor Replace wire harness or connector Replace ECM
P120100	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Circuit Range/ Performance			
P00C721	Intake Air Pressure Measurement System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 1	Engine is in incipient stage of dragging status, engine speed < 400 rpm, stopping time > 5s		
P00C722	Intake Air Pressure Measurement System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 1			
P010800	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit High	Rotation speed > 80 rpm		
P010700	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Low			
P010622	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/ Performance	Water temperature when starting > -7°C, coolant temperature > 30°C, speed > 2000 rpm		
P010621	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/ Performance			
P01062A	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/ Performance			
P046800	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit High	Engine starts	Desorption pressure sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace desorption pressure sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P046700	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit Low			
P128500	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit Range Performance			
P128600	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit Range Performance			
P222900	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit High	Vehicle power-on	Ambient pressure sensor malfunction Wire harness or connector malfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace ambient pressure sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P222800	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Low		ECM damaged	
P120200	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance			
P120300	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance			
P222722	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance			
P222721	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance			
P023800	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit High	Engine speed \geq 80 rpm	Boost pressure/ temperature sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace boost pressure/ temperature sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P023700	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Low			
P120400	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance	Engine speed \geq 80 rpm; There is no the following DTCs: P1551, P2229, P2228, P1202, P1203, P2227, P0238, P0237		
P120500	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance			
P023622	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance			
P029900	Turbocharger/ Supercharger "A" Underboost Condition			
P023621	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P226100	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Bypass Valve - Mechanical	Discharge valve control activated		
P00C600	Fuel Rail Pressure Too Low - Engine Cranking Bank 1	Vehicle ignition, -30°C < water temperature when starting < 143°C	Fuel system Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check fuel system • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P212300	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/ Switch "D" Circuit High	Power-on	Electronic accelerator pedal malfunction Battery malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace battery • Check electronic accelerator pedal • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P212800	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/ Switch "E" Circuit High			
P212200	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/ Switch "D" Circuit Low			
P212700	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/ Switch "E" Circuit Low			
P213800	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/ Switch "D" / "E" Voltage Correlation	Pedal position sensor 2 signal voltage > 0.576 V		
P064100	Sensor Reference Voltage "A" Circuit Open	Always diagnose after power-on	Battery malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace battery • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P065100	Sensor Reference Voltage "B" Circuit Open			
P063442	Control Module Internal Temperature "A" Too High			
P063443	Control Module Internal Temperature "A" Too High			
P138124	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Multiple Check Bank1	Stopping time is more than 60s	Intake temperature sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace intake temperature sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P138123	Intake Air Temperature Measurement			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 3			
P00EB00	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Circuit High Bank 1	Ignition switch is turned ON		
P00EA00	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Circuit Low Bank 1			
P00EC00	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Circuit Intermittent Bank 1	Total duration > 20s		
P138024	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Multiple Check Bank1	Stopping time is more than 60s		
P138023	Intake Air Temperature Measurement System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 2			
P009800	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit High Bank 1	Ignition switch is turned ON		
P009700	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Low Bank 1			
P009900	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Intermittent Bank 1	Total duration > 20s		
P044200	EVAP System Leak Detected (- Small Leak)	0°C < ambient temperature < 45°C, ratio of intake manifold pressure to ambient pressure < 0.6406, ambient pressure ≥ 70000 Pa, -4000 Pa < fuel tank pressure < 2000 Pa, 11 V < system voltage < 16 V, engine starting time > 700s, gas mixture is stable and there is no fault, engine idling control	Desorption pressure sensor malfunction Line leaked Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace desorption pressure sensor • Check line • Replace wire harness or connector
P045500	EVAP System Leak Detected (- Large Leak)			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		activated, vehicle speed ≤ 4 km/h, $2-0.5*1.5$ L < fuel level < $45+0.5*1.5$ L, all fuel injectors activated, air-fuel ratio closed-loop control activated, mass and flow through canister valve meet the conditions, $0^{\circ}\text{C} <$ water temperature when engine starts < 45°C , engine starting time > 150s, delay time for entering diagnosis when canister exits high load ≥ 20 s		
P04F000	EVAP System High Pressure Purge	Ignition switch ON	Canister solenoid valve damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace canister solenoid valve • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P049600	EVAP System High Purge Flow			
P049700	EVAP System Low Purge Flow			
P045900	Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve Circuit High			
P045800	Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve Circuit Low			
P044400	Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve Circuit Open			
P050C24	Cold Start Engine Coolant Temperature Performance	Stopping time > 20s	Engine coolant temperature sensor damaged Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace engine coolant temperature sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P050C23	Cold Start Engine Coolant Temperature Performance			
P011700	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Low	Ignition switch		
P011900	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Intermittent			

3 - ENGINE

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P011623	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Range/ Performance	Rotation speed ≥ 20 rpm		
P011626	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Range/ Performance	$-40^{\circ}\text{C} \leq$ water temperature when starts $\leq 75^{\circ}\text{C}$, 0 km/h \leq vehicle speed (high power stage) ≤ 60 km/h		
P007300	Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Circuit "A" High	Ignition switch	Ambient Temperature Sensor Error Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace ambient temperature sensor • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P007200	Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Circuit "A" Low			
P007000	Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Circuit "A"			
P042000	Catalyst System Efficiency Below Threshold Bank 1	Ignition switch	Three-way catalytic converter damaged Wire harness or connector damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace three-way catalytic converter • Replace wire harness or connector
P069000	ECM/PCM Power Relay Sense Circuit High	Vehicle speed > 20 rpm, time after starting $> 180\text{s}$	Wire harness or connector damaged Battery malfunction ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace battery • Replace ECM
P056300	System Voltage High			
P056200	System Voltage Low			
P056000	System Voltage Unstable			
P003500	Dump Valve Control Circuit High	Vehicle power-on	Boost discharge control valve malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check boost discharge control valve • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P003400	Dump Valve Control Circuit Low			
P003300	Dump Valve Control Circuit Open			
P256500	Turbocharger Boost Control Position Sensor "A" Circuit High			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P011800	Turbocharger/ Supercharger Bypass Valve "A" - Mechanical			
P256400	Turbocharger Boost Control Position Sensor "A" Circuit Low			
P063443	Control Module Internal Temperature "A" Too High	Always diagnose after power-on	Battery malfunction Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace battery • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM
P065900	Actuator Supply Voltage "A" Circuit High			
P121200	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance	Starting completed	Wire harness or connector damaged ABS controller damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Check ABS controller • Replace ECM
P050300	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Intermittent/ Erratic/High	10 km/ < vehicle speed < 250 km/h		
P050000	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit			
P050166	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance	Fuel cut-off, engine coolant temperature $\geq 10^{\circ}\text{C}$, 1520 rpm \leq engine speed \leq 4000 rpm		
P050165	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Range/ Performance	Engine coolant temperature $\geq 10^{\circ}\text{C}$, all intake valves are in activated states and two camshaft cycles have elapsed after fuel cutting-off, engine speed > 2000 rpm, intake load > 86.25%		
P161300	Different IMMO Configurations of ECM and Vehicle Models	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Anti-theft matching not performed Wire harness or connector damaged PEPS module damaged ECM damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Perform anti-theft matching • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace PEPS module • Replace ECM
P161400	PIN Code Entry Error			
P051300	Incorrect Immobilizer Key			
P063300	ECM not Programed (Virgin State)			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
P161000	No Response Received by ECM/PCM After Challenge Sent			
P161200	Internal Error When Writing Data to EEPROM			
P161100	ECM Status Unknown			
P024477	Turbocharger/Supercharger Wastegate Actuator "A" Range/Performance	Ignition switch is turned ON, $9V \leq$ battery voltage $\leq 16V$	Wire harness or connector damaged ECM damaged Electric water pump malfunction Battery damaged	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace wire harness or connector • Replace ECM • Replace electric water pump • Replace battery
P024437	Turbocharger/Supercharger Wastegate Actuator "A" Range/Performance			
P003A00	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Control "A" Position Exceeded Learning Limit			
P261D00	Coolant Pump "B" Control Circuit High			
P261C00	Coolant Pump "B" Control Circuit Low			
P130200	Auxiliary Water Pump Low Speed Error			
P130500	Auxiliary Water Pump High Speed Error			
P130800	Auxiliary Water Pump Stall Error			

4.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ Intake/Exhaust Phaser Operation (Slow, Stuck) Malfunctions

DTC	P049800	"A" Camshaft Profile Control Performance/Stuck Off Bank 1
DTC	P000B00	"B" Camshaft Position Slow Response Bank 1
DTC	P005A00	"B" Camshaft Profile Control Performance/Stuck Off Bank 1
DTC	P001100	"A" Camshaft Position - Timing Over-Advanced or System Performance Bank 1

DTC	P001400	"B" Camshaft Position - Timing Over-Advanced or System Performance Bank 1
DTC	P054A00	Exhaust VVT actual position deviation fault during catalytic converter heating

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check phaser solenoid valve, valve body bolt components state
----------	--

- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Remove intake/exhaust phaser solenoid valve; Check for blockage or dirty.
- Remove intake/exhaust phaser valve body bolts; Check for blockage or dirt.

NG

Clean or replace phaser solenoid valve and valve body bolts.

OK

2	Check engine maintenance condition
----------	---

- Check if engine oil level is normal, and check for oil leakage and oil seepage.
- Remove valve trim cover, and check engine lubrication and cleaning conditions, and check for wear or sludge dirty

NG

Clean and maintain the engine, replace the damaged components.

OK

3	Check engine oil pressure
----------	----------------------------------

- Remove oil pressure sensor; Connect oil pressure tester to test oil pressure.

Main oil passage pressure: Limit pressure range (0.9 - 10 bar)

NG Check or replace oil pump assembly.

OK

4 Check intake/exhaust phaser assembly

(a) Check if operating condition of cam phase regulator is normal (dirt blocked, oil leaked, stuck, etc.).

NG Replace intake/exhaust phaser assembly.

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

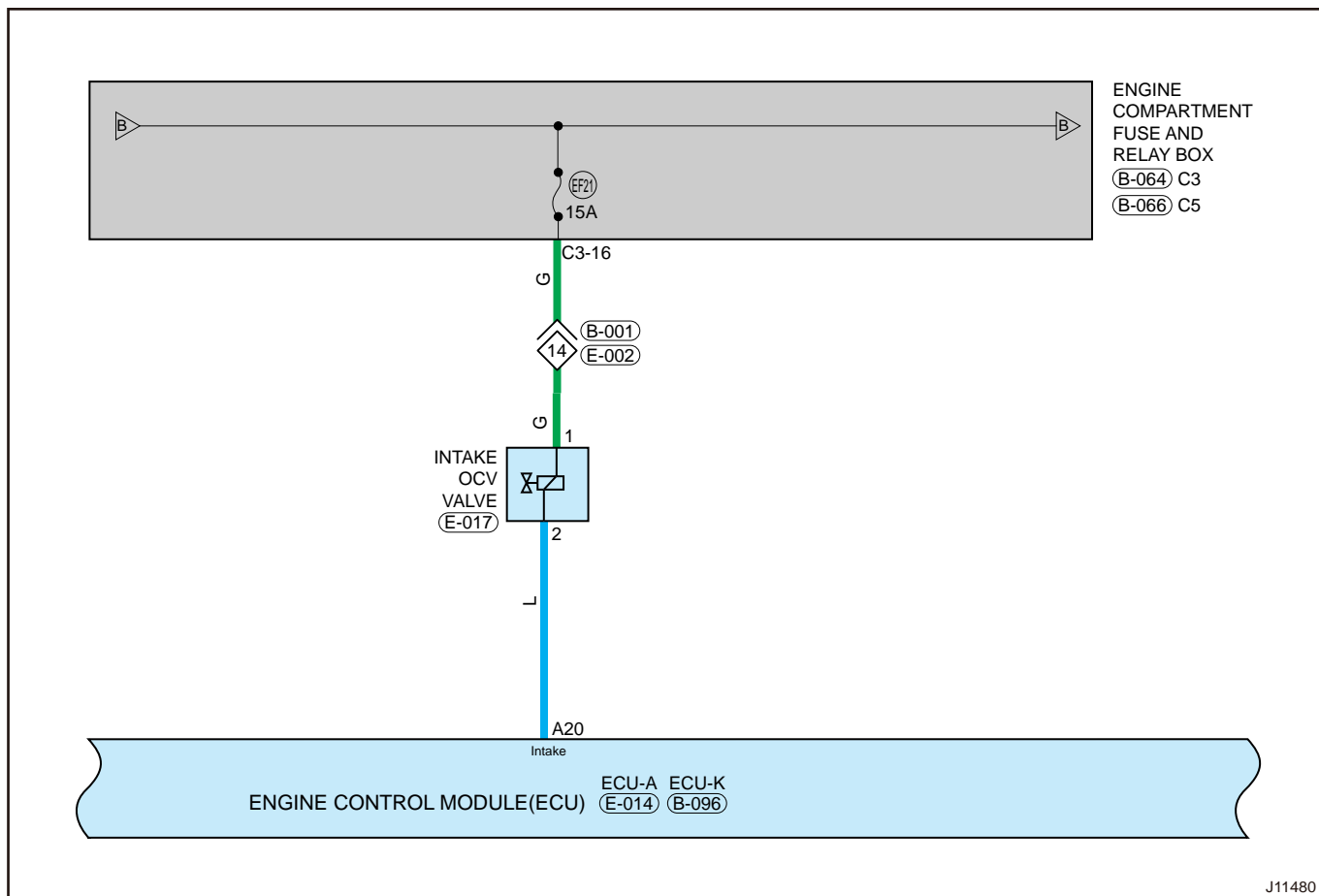
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Intake Phaser Solenoid Valve Control Circuit Open

DTC	P001000	“A” Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Open Bank 1
------------	----------------	---

Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check intake phaser solenoid valve connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Unplug intake phaser solenoid valve connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

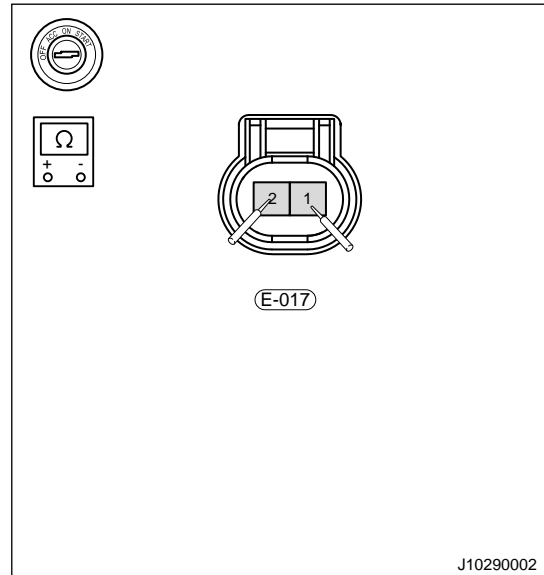
Repair connector or replace intake phaser solenoid valve.

OK

2 Check intake phaser solenoid valve internal resistance

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if internal resistances of intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (1-2) are normal with red and black probes respectively.

Resistance at ambient temperature: 6 Ω



NG Replace intake phaser solenoid valve assembly.

OK

3 Check intake phaser solenoid valve power supply fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check fuse EF21 15A in engine compartment fuse and relay box with 21 W test light.

Test light should be bright

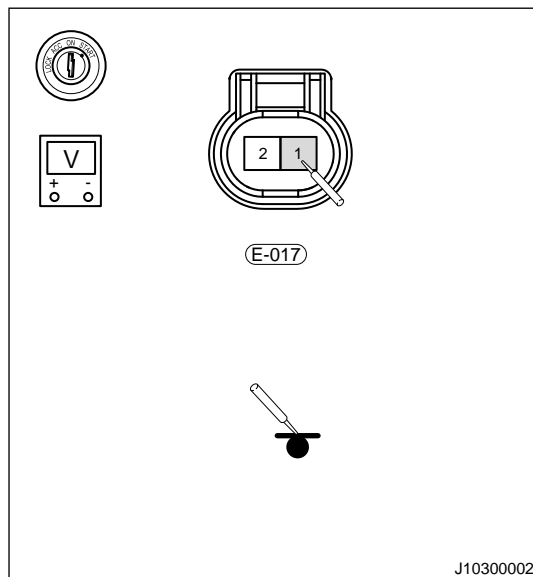
NG It indicates that there is short to ground in circuit.

OK

4 Check intake phaser solenoid valve power supply and control terminal

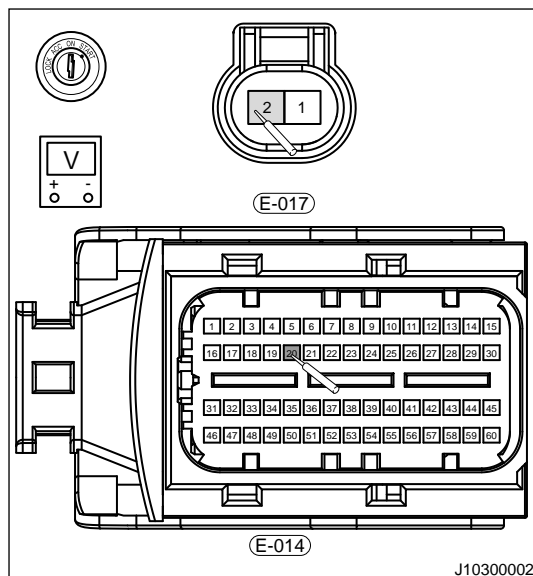
- (a) Connect intake phaser solenoid valve connector.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (1, 2) with red probe.

Test voltage is current battery voltage



- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to E-014 (20), measure voltages of intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (2) with red probe.

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair wire harness.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

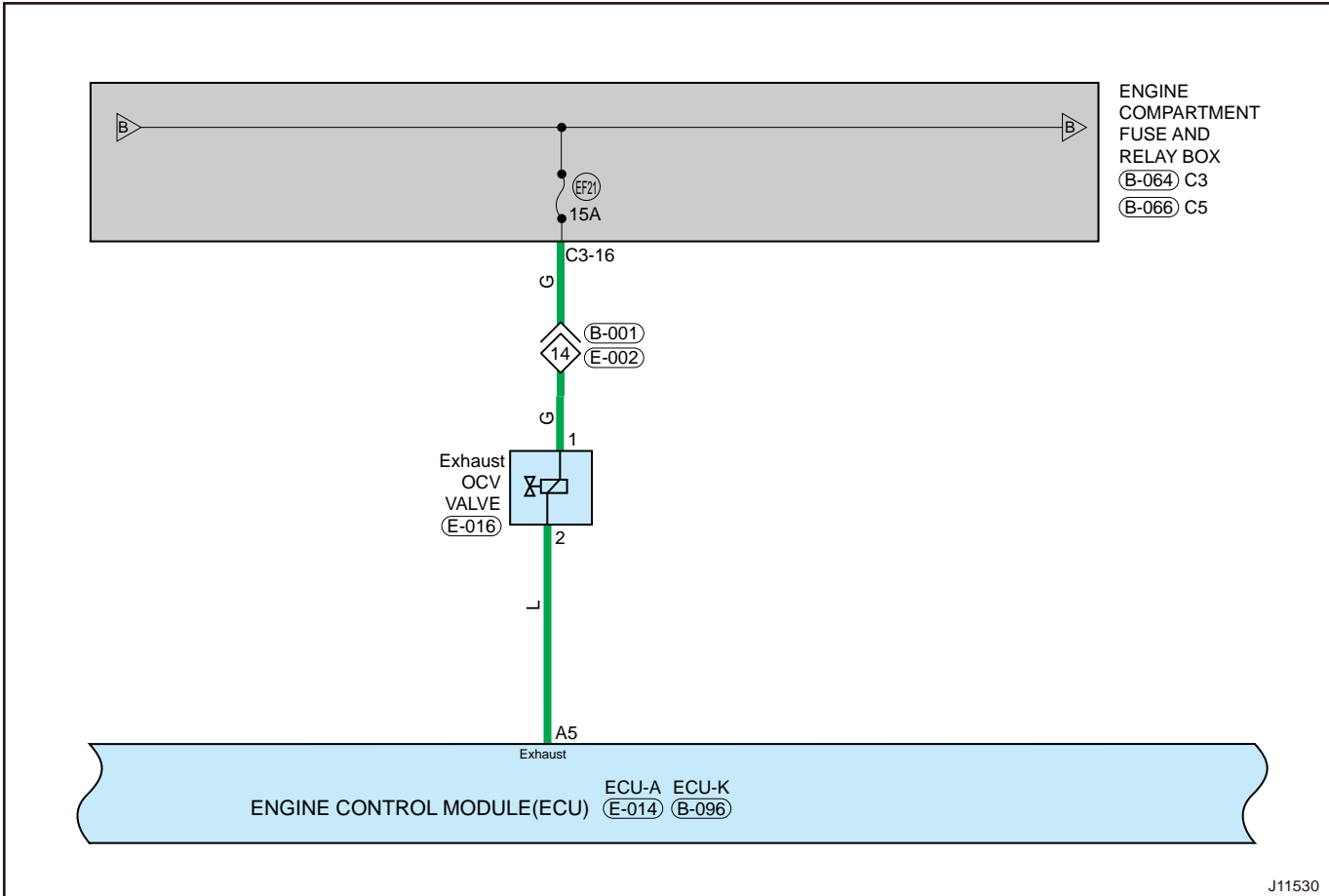
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Exhaust Phaser Solenoid Valve Control Circuit Open

DTC	P001300	“B” Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Open Bank 1
------------	----------------	---

Description
Circuit Diagram



DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check exhaust phaser solenoid valve connector
----------	--

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
 (b) Unplug exhaust phaser solenoid valve connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

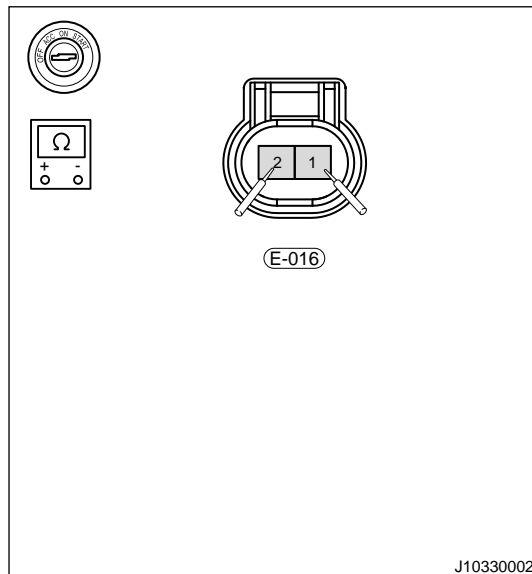
NG

Repair connector or replace exhaust phaser solenoid valve.

OK

2	Check exhaust phaser solenoid valve internal resistance
----------	--

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if internal resistances of exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (1-2) are normal with red and black probes respectively.



NG

Replace exhaust phaser solenoid valve assembly.

OK

3	Check exhaust phaser solenoid valve power supply fuse
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (b) Check fuse EF21 15A in engine compartment fuse and relay box with 21 W test light.

Test light should be bright

NG

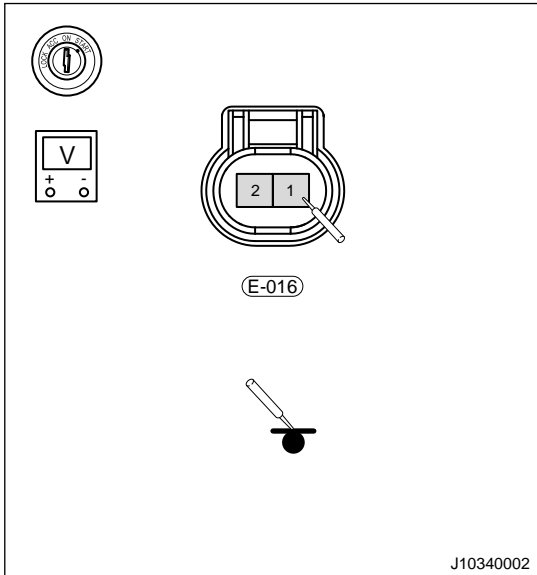
It indicates that there is short to ground in circuit.

OK

4 Check exhaust phaser solenoid valve power supply and control terminal

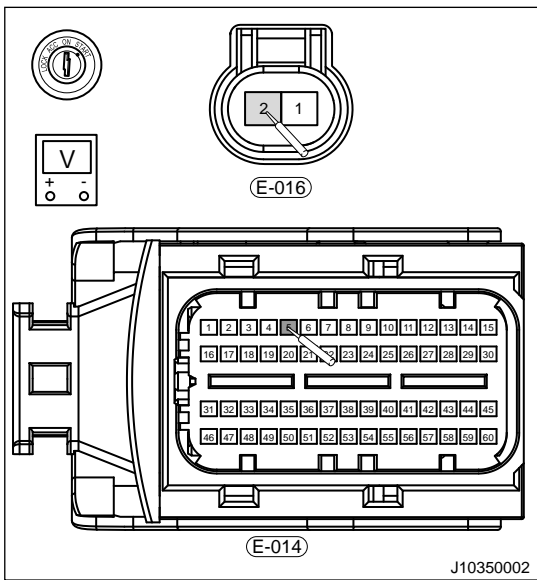
- (a) Connect exhaust phaser solenoid valve connector.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (1, 2) with red probe.

Test voltage is current battery voltage



- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM E-014 (5), measure voltages of exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (2) with red probe.

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG

Repair wire harness.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK**Repair or replace new module.****NG****6 Reconfirm DTCs**

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK**Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.****■ Crankshaft - Intake/Exhaust Camshaft Installation Position Non-plausible/Deviation Excessive Malfunction**

DTC	P001676	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor A
DTC	P001678	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor A
DTC	P001776	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor B
DTC	P001778	Crankshaft Position - Camshaft Position Correlation Bank 1 Sensor B

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check phaser solenoid valve, valve body bolt components state

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove intake/exhaust phaser solenoid valve; Check for blockage or dirty.
- (c) Remove intake/exhaust phaser valve body bolts; Check for blockage or dirt.

NG**Clean or replace phaser solenoid valve and valve body bolts.**

OK

2 Check engine maintenance condition

- (a) Check if engine oil level is normal, and check for oil leakage and oil seepage.
- (b) Remove valve trim cover, and check engine lubrication and cleaning conditions, and check for wear or sludge dirty

NG

Clean and maintain the engine, replace the damaged components.

OK

3 Check engine oil pressure

- (a) Remove oil pressure sensor; Connect oil pressure tester to test oil pressure.

Main oil passage pressure: Limit pressure range (0.9 - 10 bar)

NG

Check or replace oil pump assembly.

OK

4 Check valve mechanism timing

- (a) Check if valve mechanism timing is normal, and check timing chain for teeth skipping, misalignment, elongation, etc.
- (b) Check camshaft signal plate for misalignment, looseness, etc.

NG

Replace timing chain or camshaft assembly.

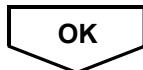
OK

5 Check intake/exhaust phaser assembly

- (a) Check if operating condition of cam phase regulator is normal (dirt blocked, oil leaked, stuck, etc.).

NG

Replace intake/exhaust phaser assembly.



6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

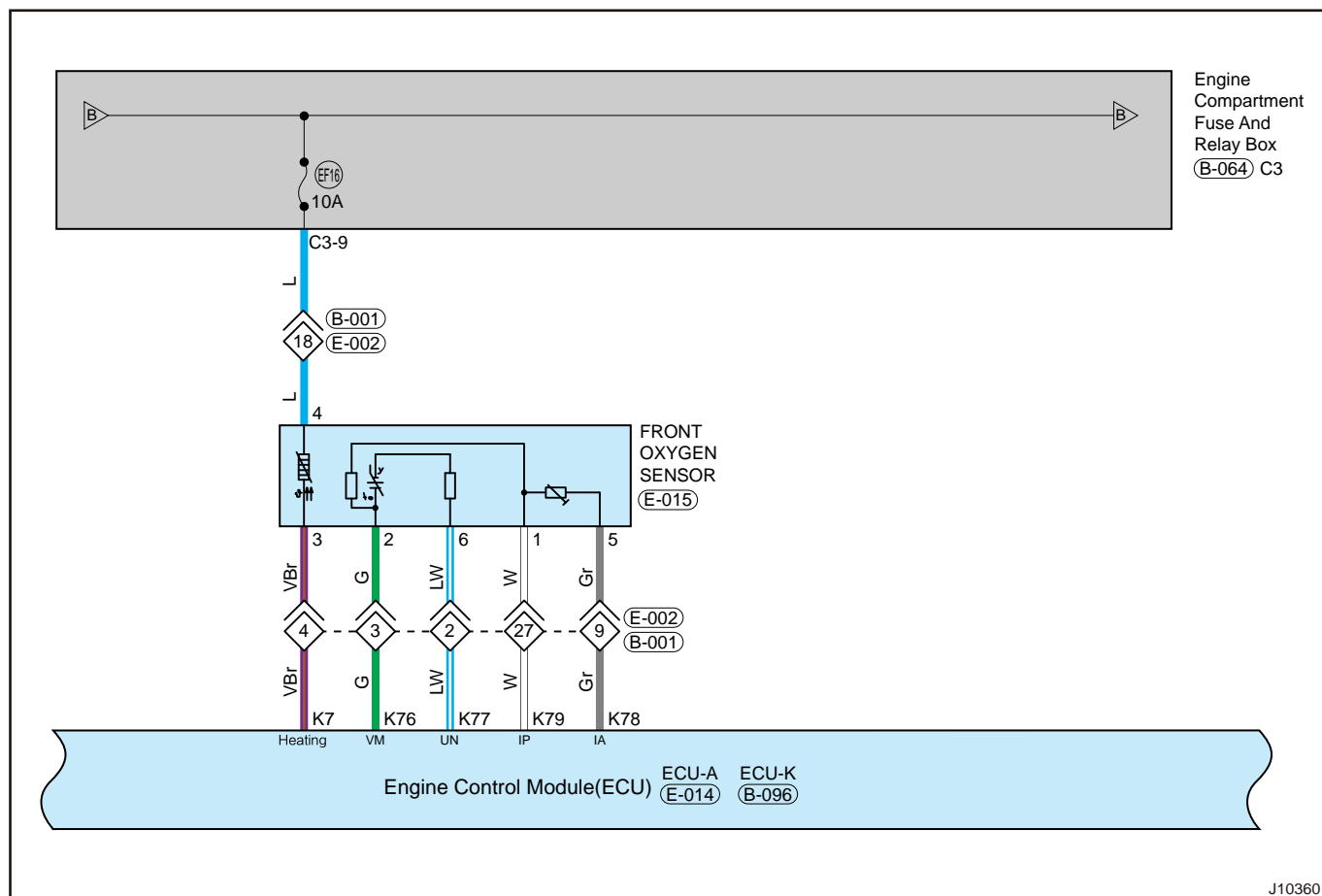
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Upstream Oxygen Sensor Heater Control Circuit Open/Low/High/Faulty

DTC	P003000	HO2S Heater Control Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P003100	O2 Sensor Heater Control Circuit Low (Upstream of the Catalyzer)
DTC	P003200	O2 Sensor Heater Control Circuit High (Upstream of the Catalyzer)
DTC	P005300	HO2S Heater Resistance Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P064D00	Internal Control Module O2 Sensor Processor Performance Bank 1

Description

Circuit Diagram



J10360

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check upstream oxygen sensor connector

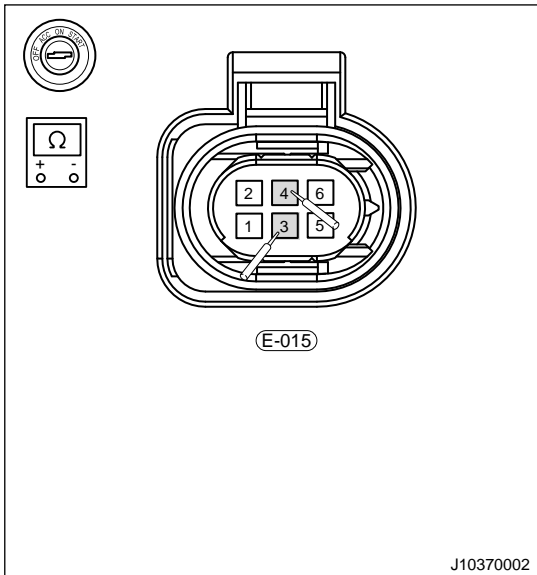
- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug upstream oxygen sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace upstream oxygen sensor.

OK

2 Check upstream oxygen sensor heater internal resistance

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if internal resistances of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (3-4) are normal with red and black probes respectively.



NG Replace upstream oxygen sensor assembly.

OK

3 Check upstream oxygen sensor heater power supply fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check fuse EF16 10A in engine compartment fuse and relay box with 21 W test light.

Test light should be bright

NG

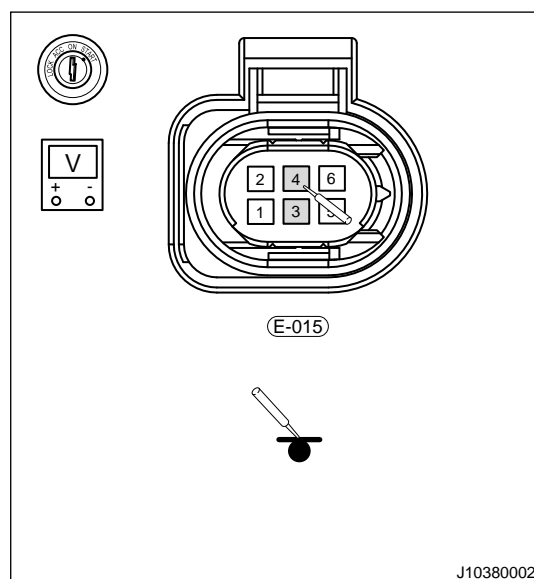
It indicates that there is short to ground in circuit.

OK

4 Check upstream oxygen sensor heater power supply and heater control terminal

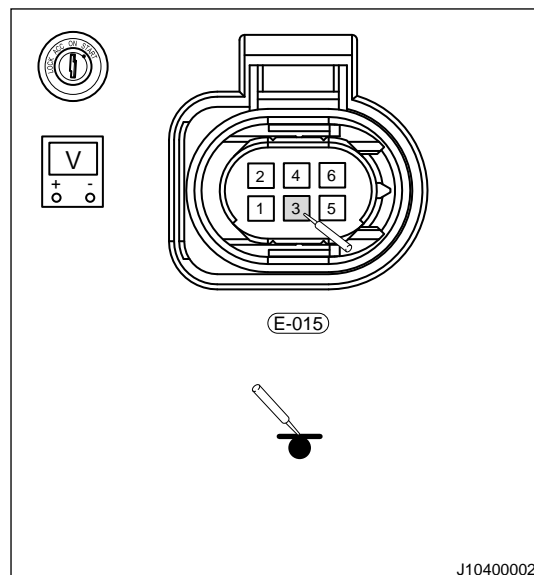
- (a) Install the upstream oxygen sensor connector.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (3, 4) with red probe.

Test voltage is current battery voltage



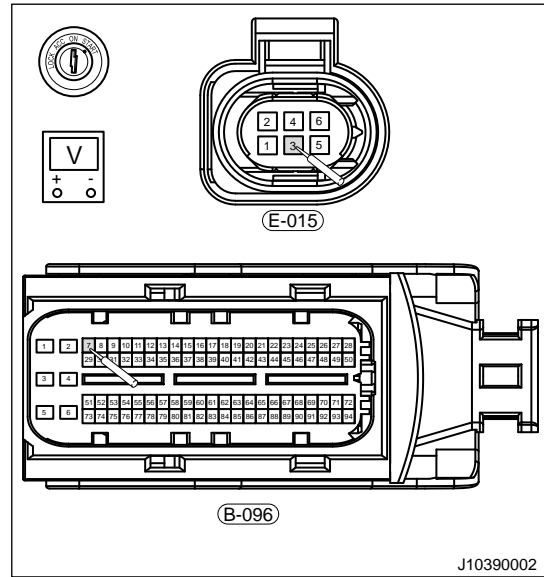
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (3) with red probe.

Control heating voltage should be within 0 V and current battery voltage



- (f) Start the engine.
- (g) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM B-096 (7), measure voltage of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (3) with red probe.

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

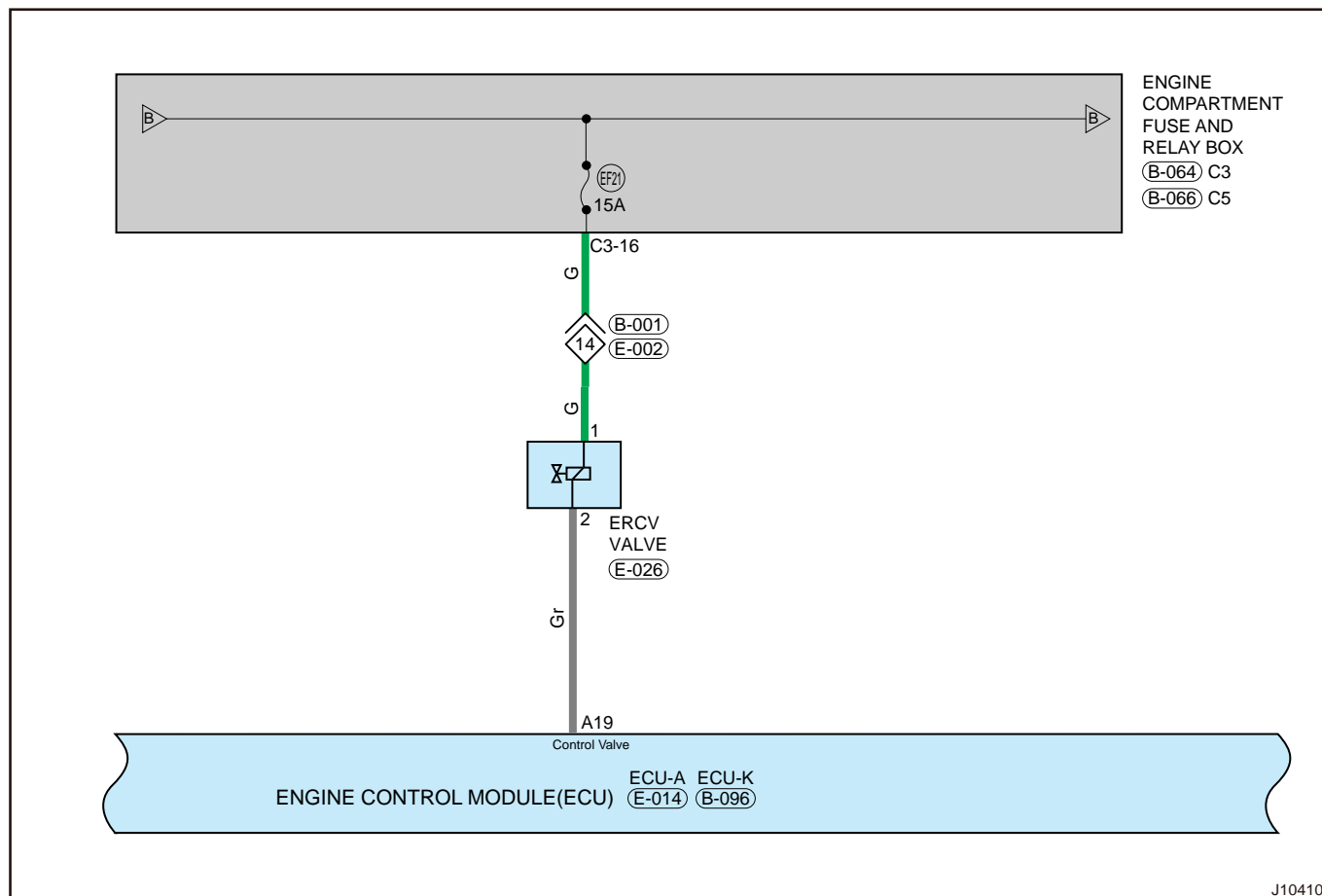
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Boost Discharge Control Valve Drive Circuit Short to Ground/Power Supply

DTC	P003500	Dump Valve Control Circuit High
DTC	P003400	Dump Valve Control Circuit Low
DTC	P003300	Dump Valve Control Circuit Open

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check boost discharge control valve connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Unplug boost discharge valve connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

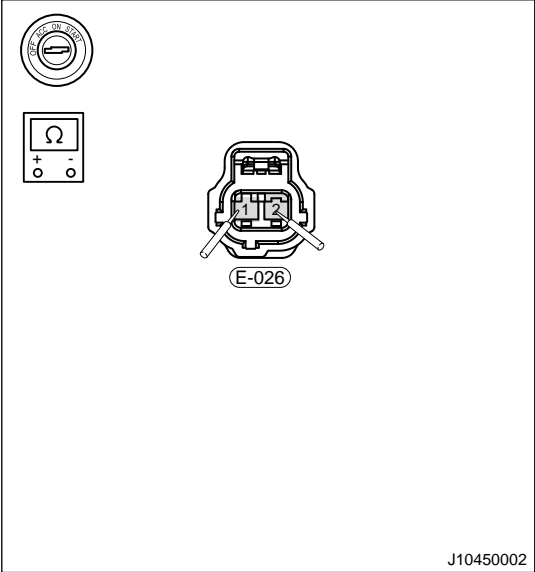
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace boost discharge valve connector.

OK

2 Check boost discharge valve internal resistance

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if internal resistances of boost discharge valve E-026 (1-2) are normal with red and black probes respectively.



NG

Replace boost discharge valve assembly.

OK

3 Check boost discharge valve power supply fuse

(a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
(b) Check fuse EF21 15A in engine compartment fuse and relay box with 21 W test light.

Test light should be bright

NG

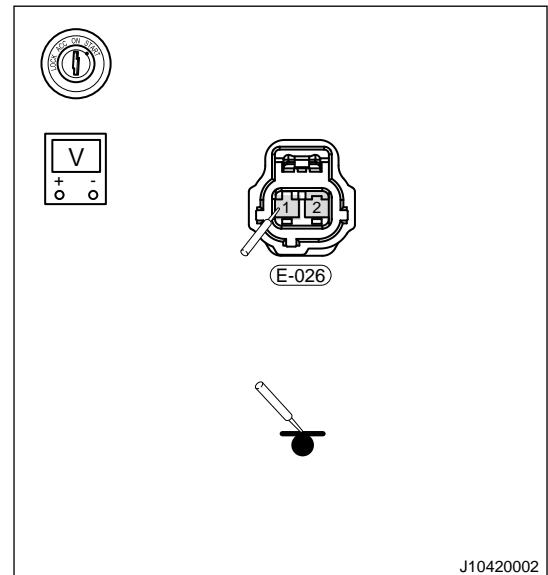
It indicates that there is short to ground in circuit.

OK

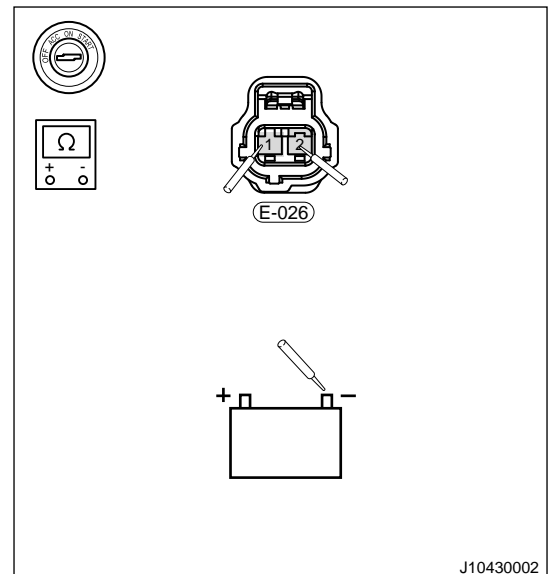
4 Check boost discharge valve power supply and heater control terminal

- (a) Connect the boost discharge valve connector.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of boost discharge valve E-026 (1, 2) with red probe.

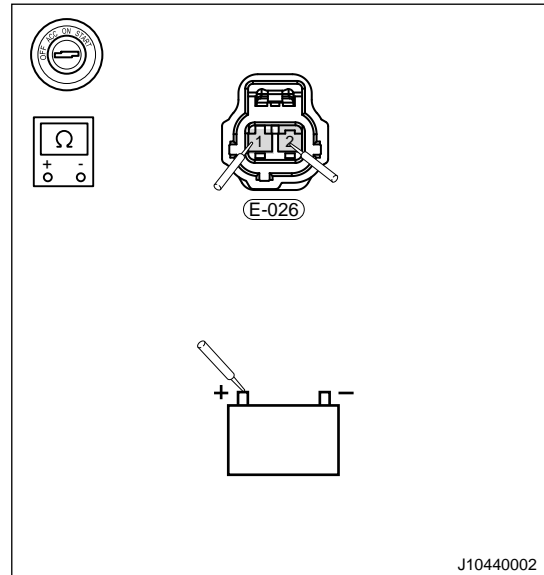
Test voltage is current battery voltage



- (d) Disconnect the boost discharge valve connector.
- (e) Disconnect engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF21 15A.
- (f) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (g) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of boost discharge valve E-026 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(h) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of boost discharge valve E-026 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

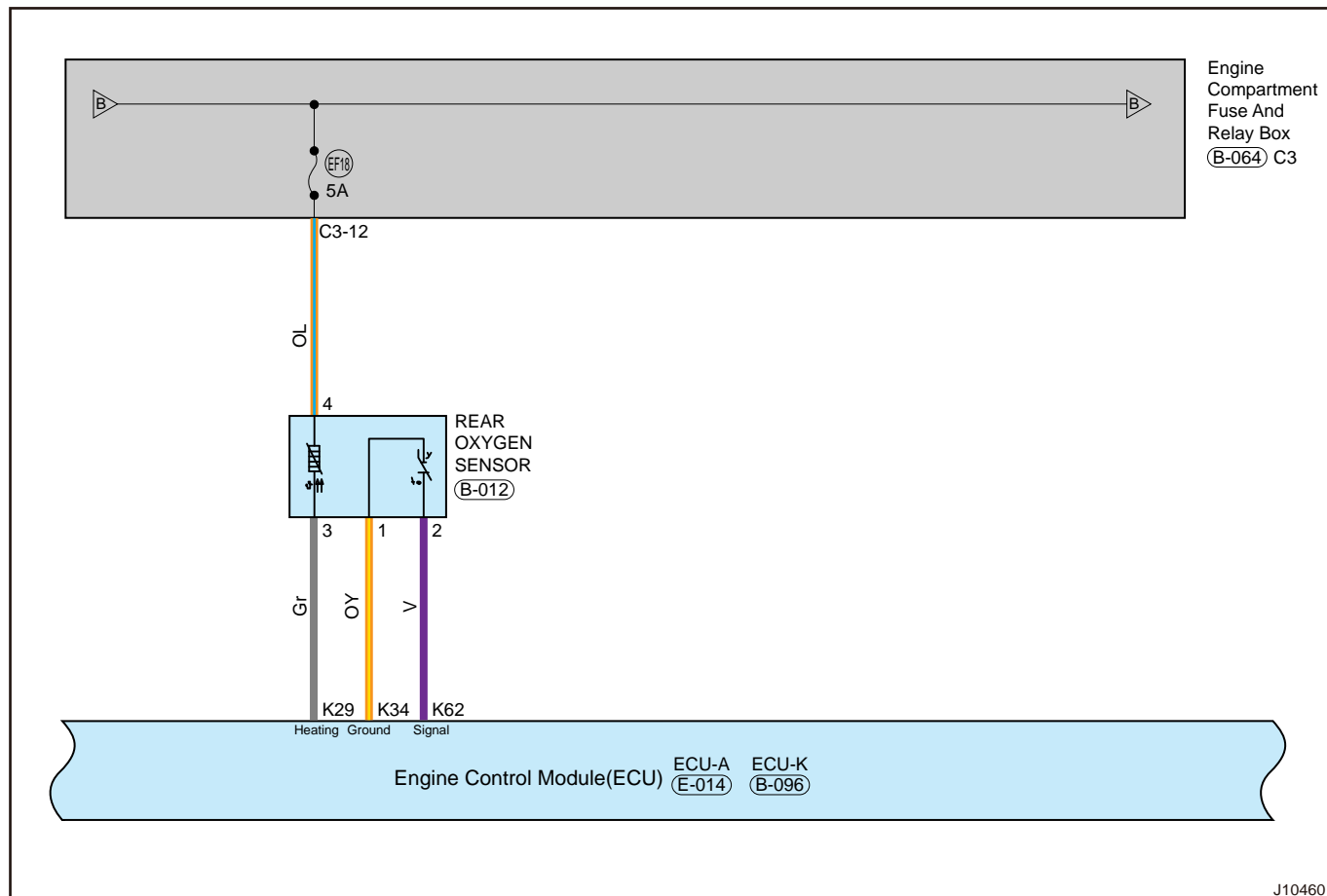
Downstream Oxygen Sensor Heater Control Circuit Open/Low/High/Heater Internal Resistance Non-plausible

DTC	P003600	HO2S Heater Control Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 2
DTC	P003700	HO2S Heater Control Circuit Low Bank 1 Sensor 2

DTC	P003800	HO2S Heater Control Circuit High Bank 1 Sensor 2
DTC	P005400	HO2S Heater Resistance Bank 1 Sensor 2
DTC	P223200	O2 Sensor Signal Circuit Shorted to Heater Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 2

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check downstream oxygen sensor connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Unplug downstream oxygen sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

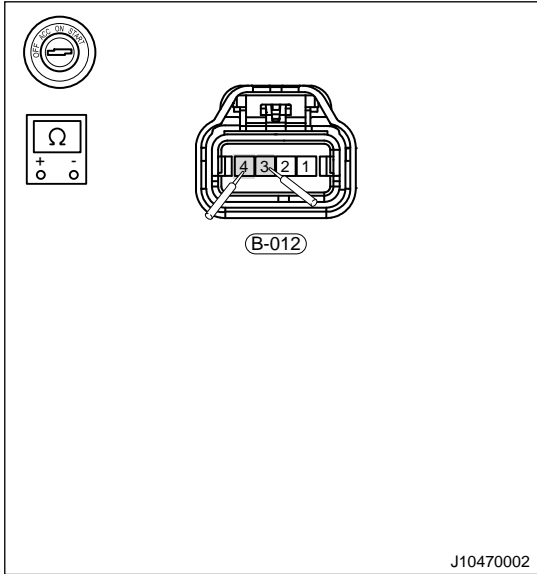
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace downstream oxygen sensor.

OK

2 Check downstream oxygen sensor heater internal resistance

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if internal resistances of downstream oxygen sensor B-012 (3-4) are normal with red and black probes respectively.



NG

Replace downstream oxygen sensor assembly.

OK

3 Check downstream oxygen sensor heater power supply fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check fuse EF18 5A in engine compartment fuse and relay box with 21 W test light.

Test light should be bright

NG

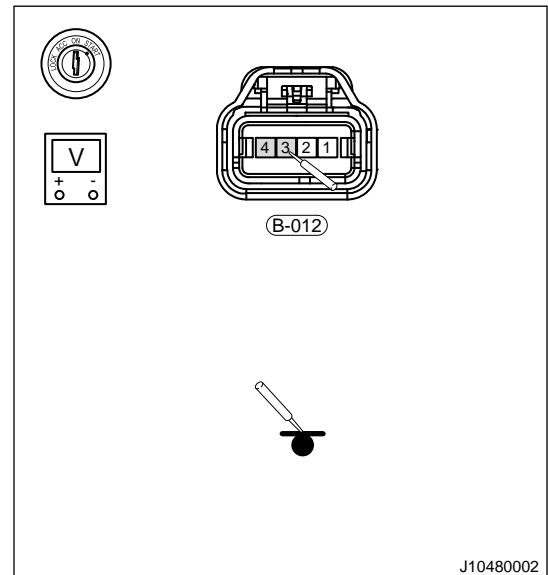
It indicates that there is short to ground in circuit.

OK

4 Check downstream oxygen sensor heater power supply and heater control terminal

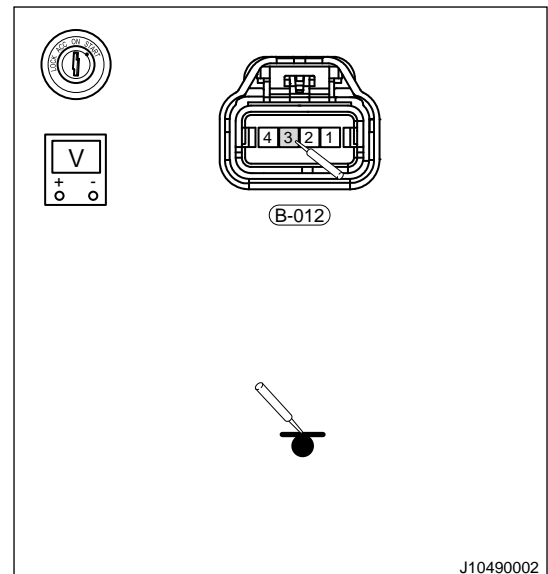
- (a) Install the upstream oxygen sensor connector.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of downstream oxygen sensor B-012 (3, 4) with red probe.

Test voltage is current battery voltage



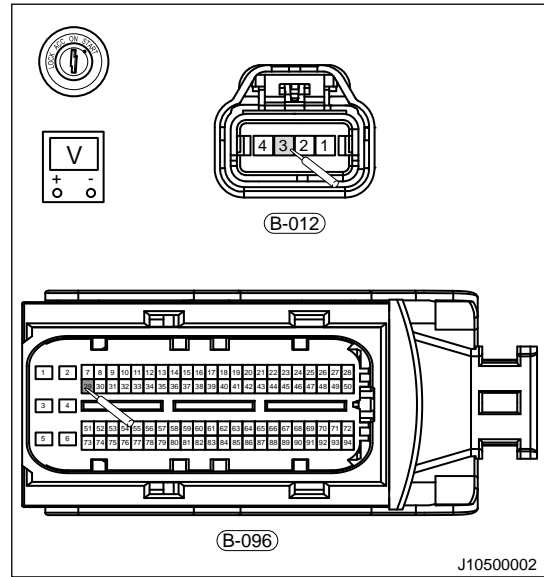
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of downstream oxygen sensor B-012 (3) with red probe.

Control heating voltage should be within 0 V and current battery voltage



- (f) Start the engine.
- (g) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM B-096 (29), measure voltage of downstream oxygen sensor B-012 (3) with red probe

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Turbocharger Wastegate Self-learning/Duty Ratio Out of Limit

DTC	P003A00	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Control "A" Position Exceeded Learning Limit
DTC	P024477	Turbocharger/Supercharger Wastegate Actuator "A" Range/Performance
DTC	P024437	Turbocharger/Supercharger Wastegate Actuator "A" Range/Performance

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check by-pass valve actuator conditions

- Check for foreign matter near turbocharger closed position.
- Check if electronic waste gate is stuck.
- Push the turbocharger to closed position manually, read position voltage to check if it is out of the range of SPEC.

NG

Clean up foreign matter or replace turbocharger assembly.

OK

2 Check by-pass valve actuator connector

- Check if connector and wire harness are deteriorated.

NG

Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

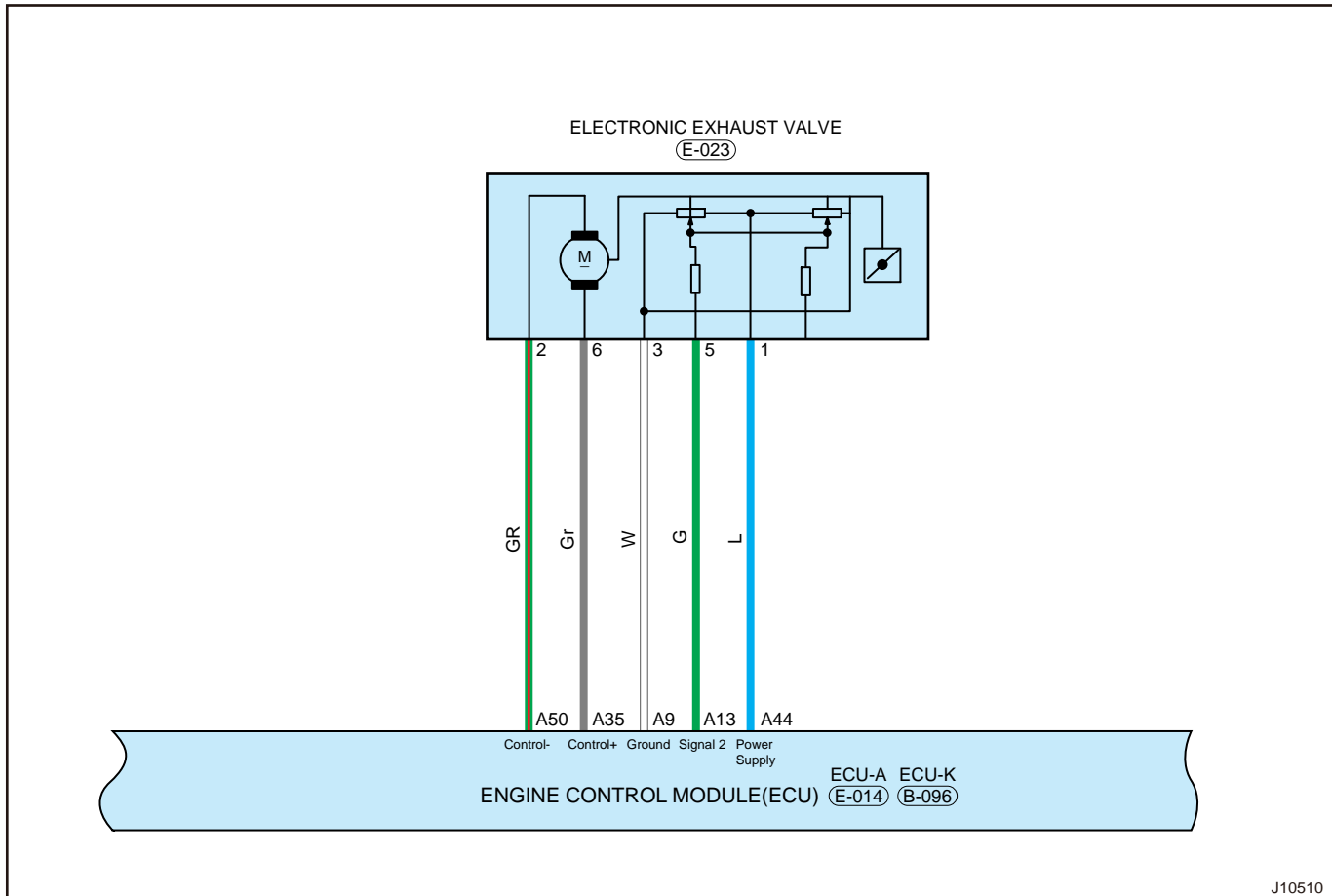
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Turbocharger Electronic Waste Gate Position Sensor Voltage Low/High

DTC	P256400	Turbocharger Boost Control Position Sensor "A" Circuit Low
DTC	P256500	Turbocharger Boost Control Position Sensor "A" Circuit High

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check electronic waste gate connector
----------	--

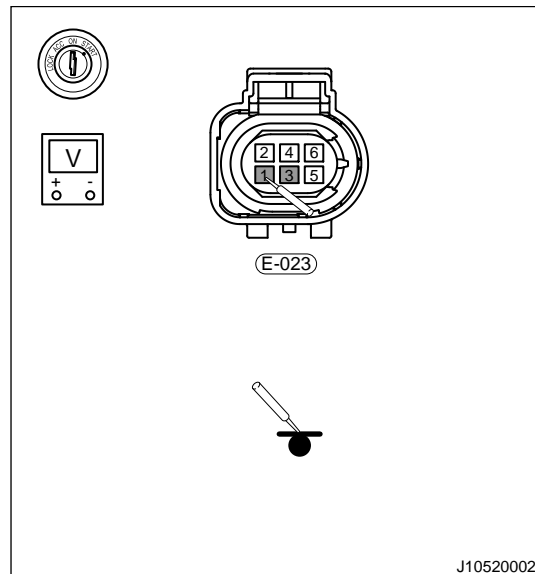
- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Disconnect the electronic waste gate connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check electronic waste gate position sensor power supply and ground

- (a) Connect electronic waste gate connector.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of electronic waste gate position sensor E-023 (1, 3) with red probe.

Reference power supply: 5 V**Ground: 0 V**

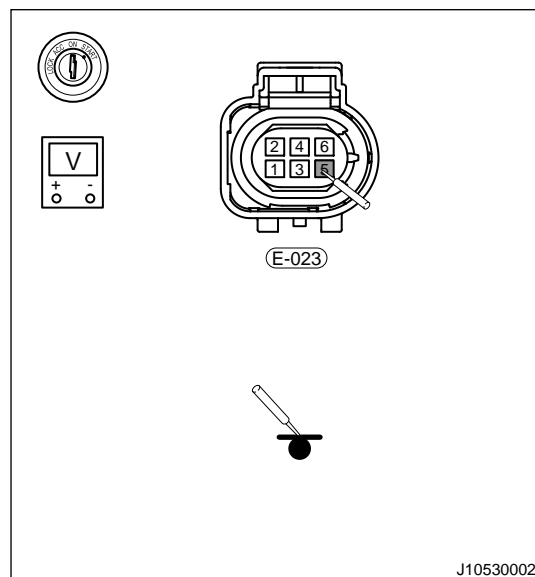
NG

Repair wire harness or replace engine control unit.

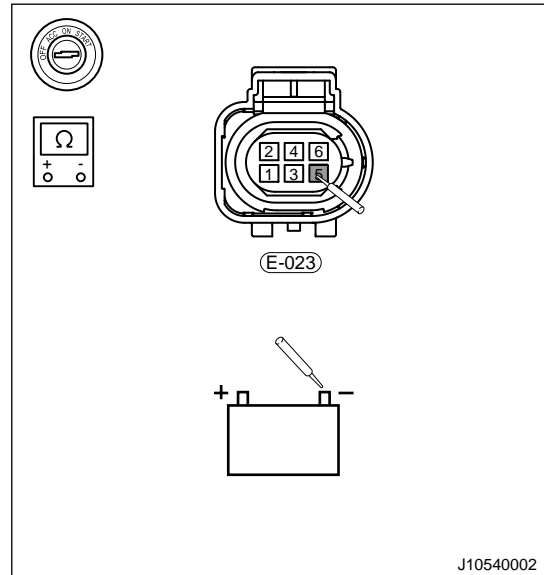
OK

3 Check electronic waste gate position sensor signal terminal

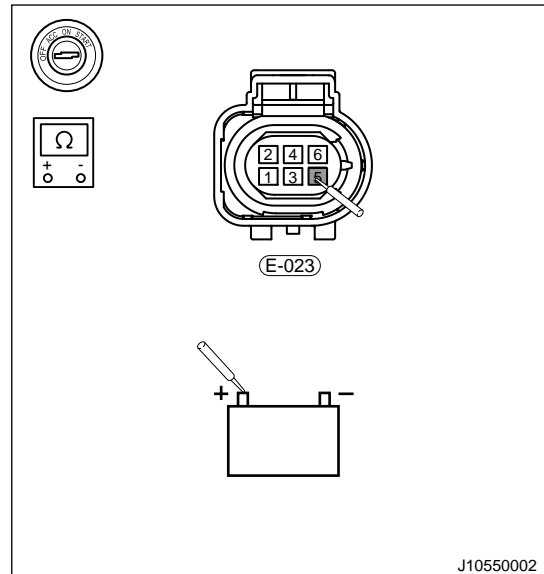
- (a) Connect the boost discharge valve connector.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure if voltage of electronic waste gate position sensor E-023 (5) varies according to opening angle with red probe.

Test voltage is current battery voltage

- (d) Disconnect the electronic waste gate connector.
- (e) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (f) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of electronic waste gate position sensor E-023 (5) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (g) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistance of electronic waste gate position sensor E-023 (5) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Repair or replace wire harness or replace turbocharger assembly.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Ambient pressure sensor malfunction

DTC	P222900	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit High
DTC	P222800	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Low
DTC	P222722	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P222721	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P120200	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P120300	Barometric Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) The built-in ambient pressure sensor in ECM fails.
 (b) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (c) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

High Pressure Fuel Supply Control Deviation Too High/Too Low/Fuel Rail Pressure Too Low/Too High

DTC	P008985	Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Performance-Pressure Too Low
DTC	P008984	Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Performance-Pressure Too High
DTC	P008700	Fuel Rail/System Pressure - Too Low
DTC	P008800	Fuel Rail/System Pressure - Too High
DTC	P053F21	Cold Start Fuel Pressure Performance
DTC	P053F22	Cold Start Fuel Pressure Performance
DTC	P00C600	Fuel Rail Pressure Too Low - Engine Cranking Bank 1

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check if fuel is insufficient

- (a) Check that fuel in fuel tank is sufficient.

NG Add the fuel.

OK

2 Check fuel connecting line for leakage

- (a) Check low pressure/high pressure fuel connecting lines for squash, leakage.

NG Replace the corresponding line.

OK

3	Check low pressure fuel pressure
----------	---

(a) Connect fuel pressure gauge to test if low pressure fuel pressure is met the standard.

NG	Replace fuel pump assembly.
-----------	------------------------------------

OK

4	Check high pressure fuel pump
----------	--------------------------------------

(a) Remove the high pressure fuel pump;
 (b) Check high pressure fuel pump for fuel leakage.
 (c) Check relief valve for blockage or abnormal operation.

NG	Replace high pressure fuel pump assembly.
-----------	--

OK

5	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

(a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

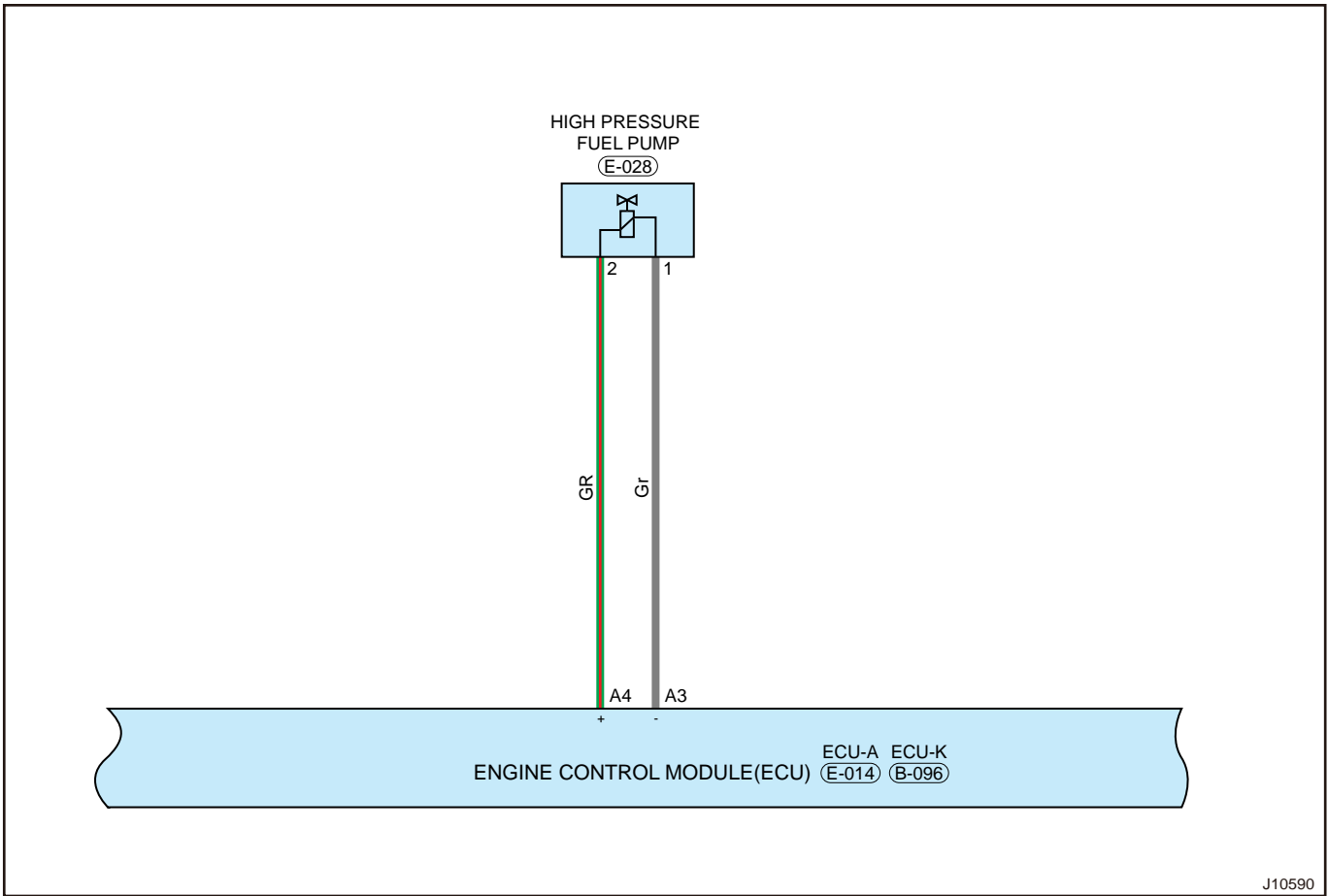
OK	Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.
-----------	--

■ **Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Control Circuit Open**

DTC	P009000	Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Control Circuit Open
------------	----------------	---

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check flow control valve connector
----------	---

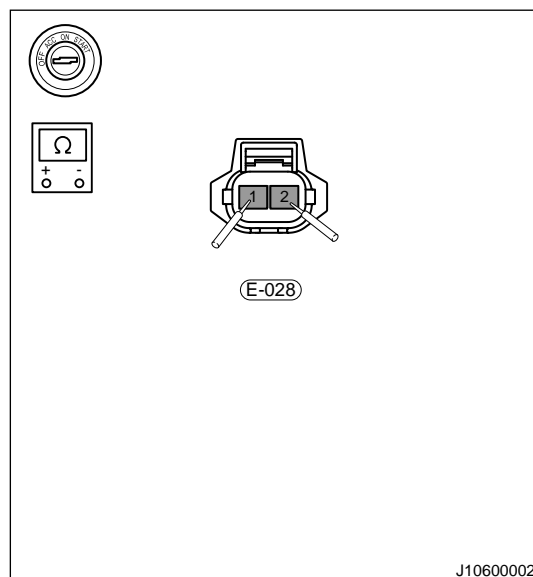
- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug flow control valve connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG	Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
-----------	--

OK

2	Check flow control valve internal resistance
----------	---

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if internal resistances of flow control valve E-028 (1-2) are normal with red and black probes respectively.



NG

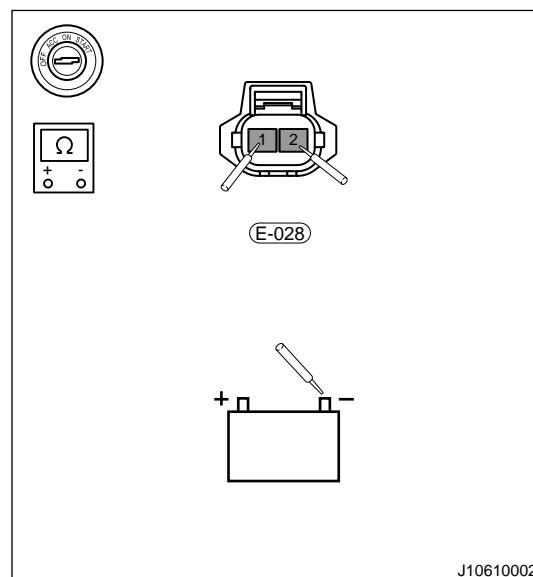
Replace high pressure fuel pump assembly.

OK

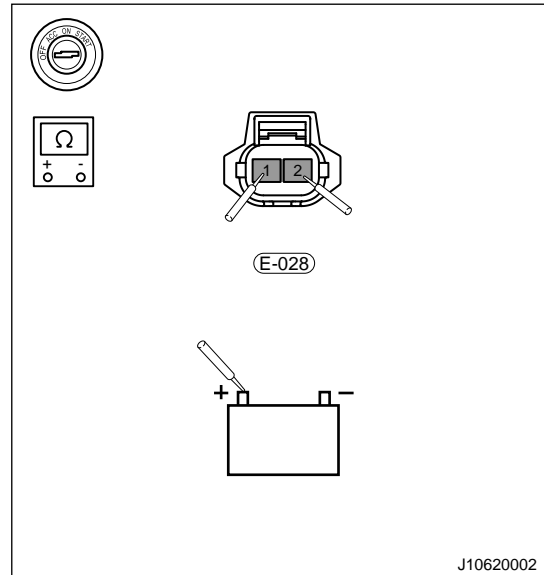
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in flow control valve control circuit

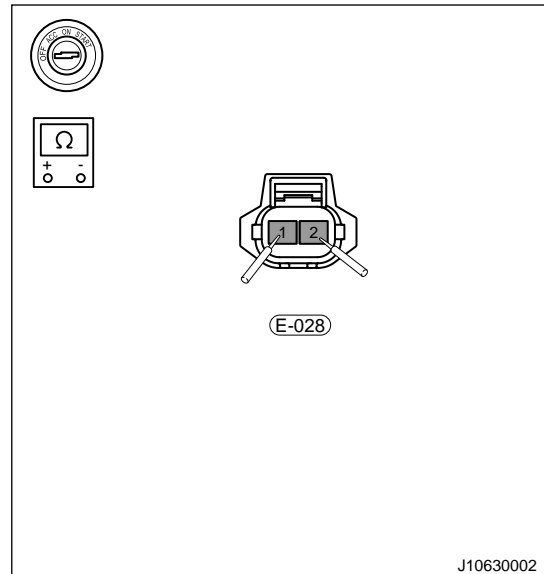
- (a) Disconnect the high pressure fuel pump connector.
 (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
 (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of high pressure fuel pump E-028 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of high pressure fuel pump E-028 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of high pressure fuel pump E-028 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively. Check if control circuits are shorted with each other.



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

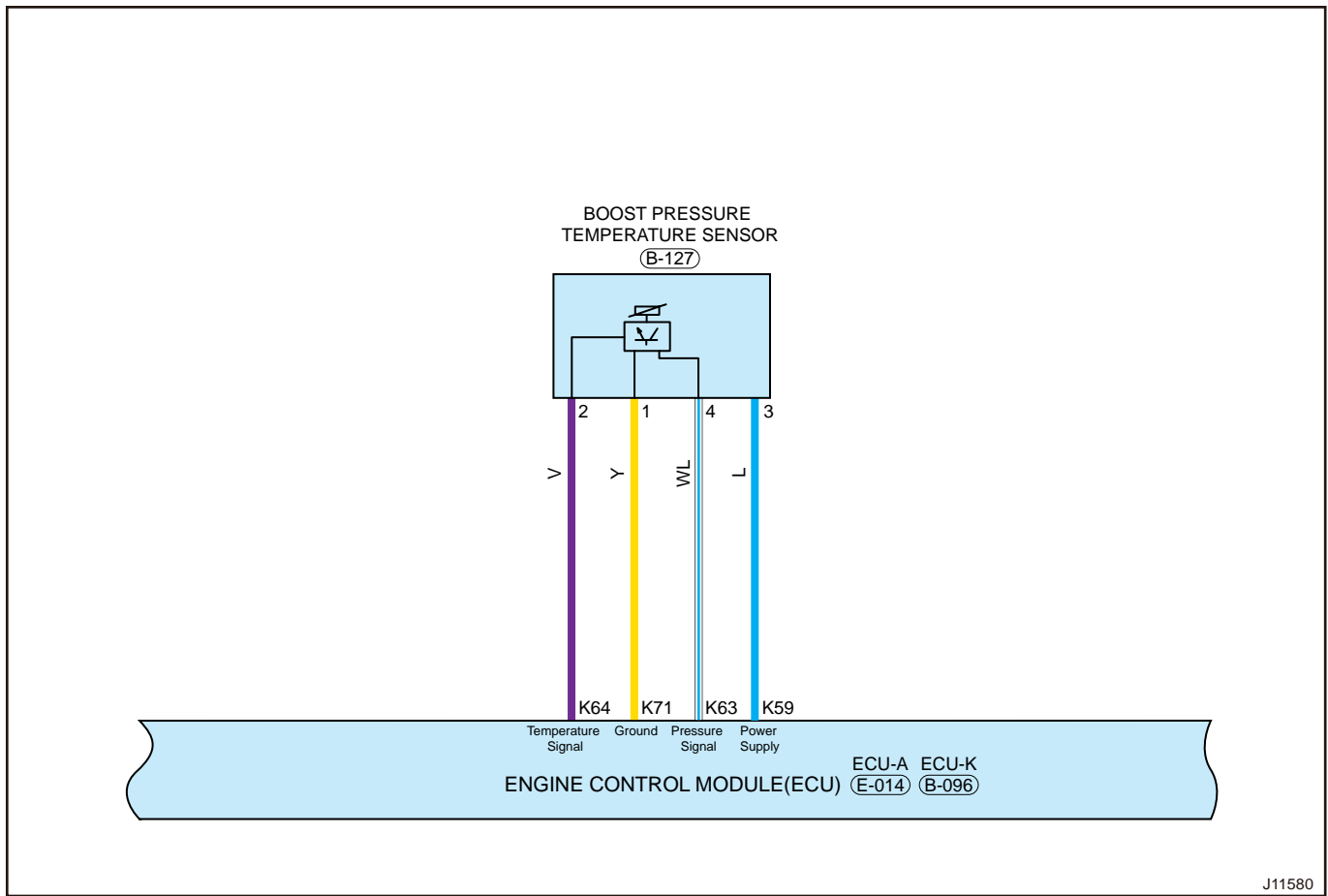
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Intake Air Sensor 2 Voltage Too High/Too Low/Signal Non-plausible

DTC	P009800	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit High Bank 1
DTC	P009700	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Low Bank 1
DTC	P009900	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Circuit Intermittent Bank 1
DTC	P138024	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 2 Multiple Check Bank1
DTC	P138023	Intake Air Temperature Measurement System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 2

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check boost pressure/temperature sensor connector

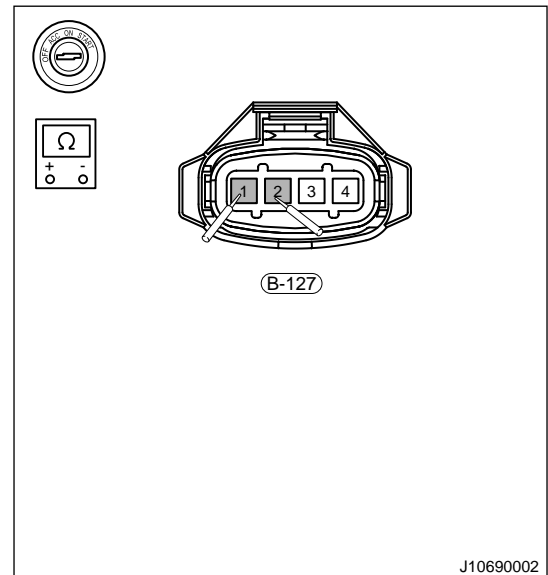
- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug boost pressure/temperature sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace boost pressure/temperature sensor.

OK

2 Check boost pressure/temperature sensor internal resistance

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if resistances of boost pressure/temperature sensor B-127 (1-2) are normal with red and black probes respectively. They should vary in accordance with intake temperature.



NG

Replace boost pressure/temperature sensor assembly.

OK

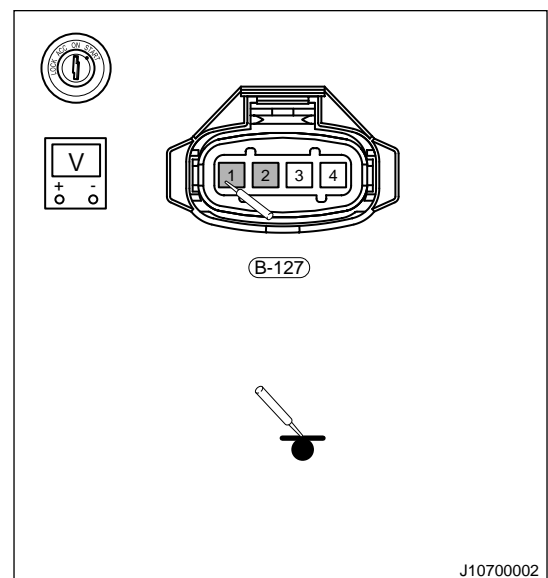
3

Check boost pressure/temperature sensor signal terminal and ground terminal

- (a) Connect boost pressure/temperature sensor connector.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of boost pressure/temperature sensor B-127 (1, 2) with red probe.

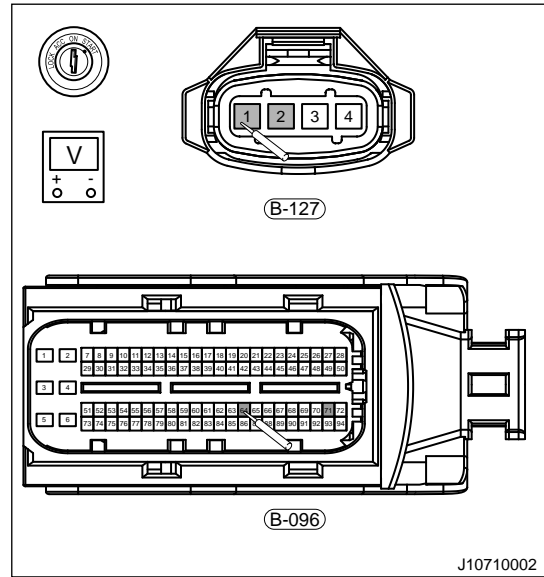
Signal terminal: Voltage signal should vary in accordance with intake temperature.

Ground terminal: Voltage < 0.2 V



- (d) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM B-096 (71, 64), measure voltages of boost pressure/temperature sensor B-127 (1, 2) with red probe

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

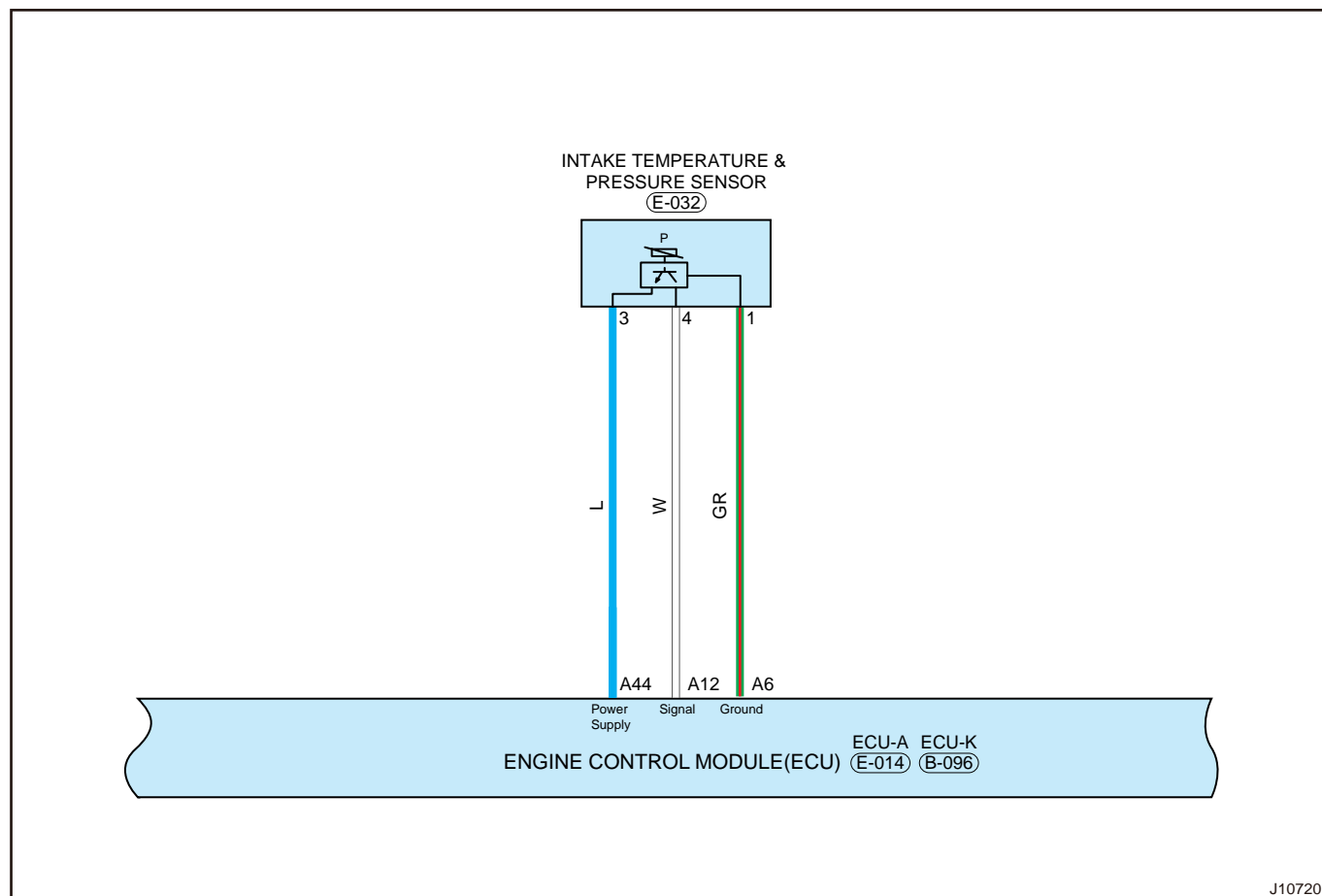
Intake Pressure/Temperature Sensor Malfunction

DTC	P120000	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P120100	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance

DTC	P00C721	Intake Air Pressure Measurement System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 1
DTC	P00C722	Intake Air Pressure Measurement System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 1
DTC	P010800	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit High
DTC	P010700	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Low
DTC	P010622	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P010621	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P01062A	Manifold Absolute Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check intake pressure/temperature sensor connector
---	---

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug intake pressure sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace intake pressure sensor.

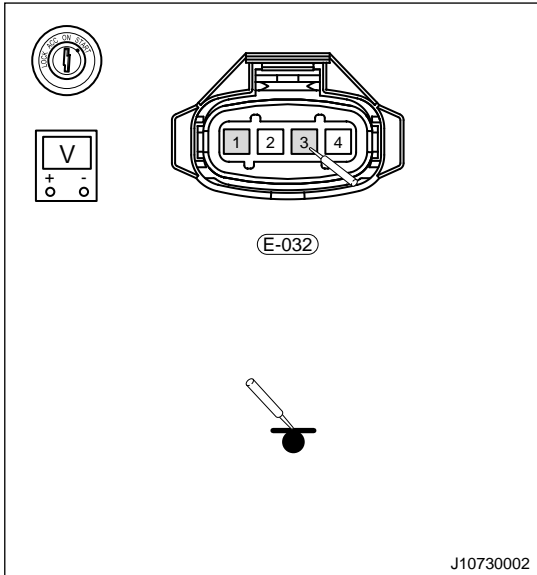
OK

2 Check intake pressure/temperature sensor power supply and ground terminals

- (a) Connect boost pressure/temperature sensor connector.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of intake pressure/temperature sensor E-032 (1, 3) with red probe.

Power supply terminal: 5 V

Ground terminal: Voltage < 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

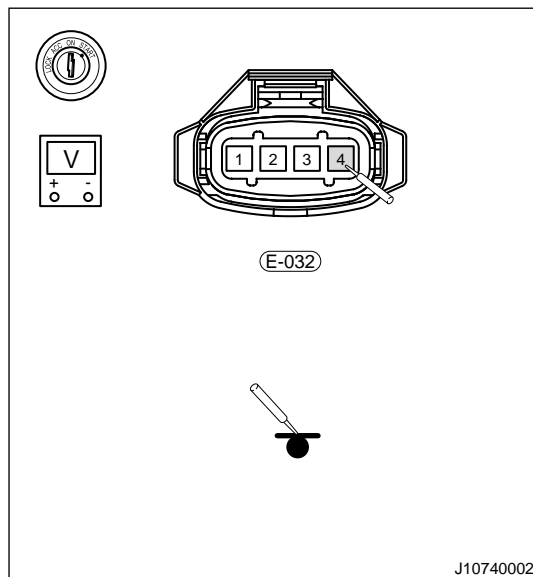
OK

3 Check intake pressure/temperature sensor signal terminal

- (a) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of intake pressure/temperature sensor E-032 (4) with red probe.

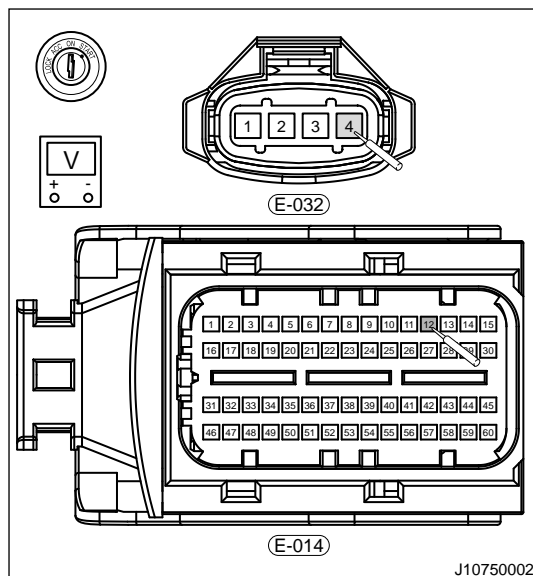
Under idling state: 1 V

When the vehicle accelerates rapidly, voltage can instantly reach 4 V, and then drop to 1.7 V



- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM E-014 (12), measure voltage of intake pressure/temperature sensor E-032 (4) with red probe.

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair and replace wire harness, or replace intake pressure/temperature sensor.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Boost Pressure Out of Range High/Low/Non-plausible

DTC	P120400	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P120500	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P023622	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P023621	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check intake line condition

- (a) Check if intake line is detached or seriously air leaked.

NG

Repair and adjust or replace related connecting lines.

OK

2 Check boost pressure/temperature sensor

- (a) Check boost pressure/temperature sensor connector for looseness or poor contact.
- (b) Check if there is any freeze, oil stain, etc. on measurement terminal of boost pressure/temperature sensor, which will affect normal measurement.

NG

Adjust connector, or replace boost pressure/
temperature sensor.

OK

3

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

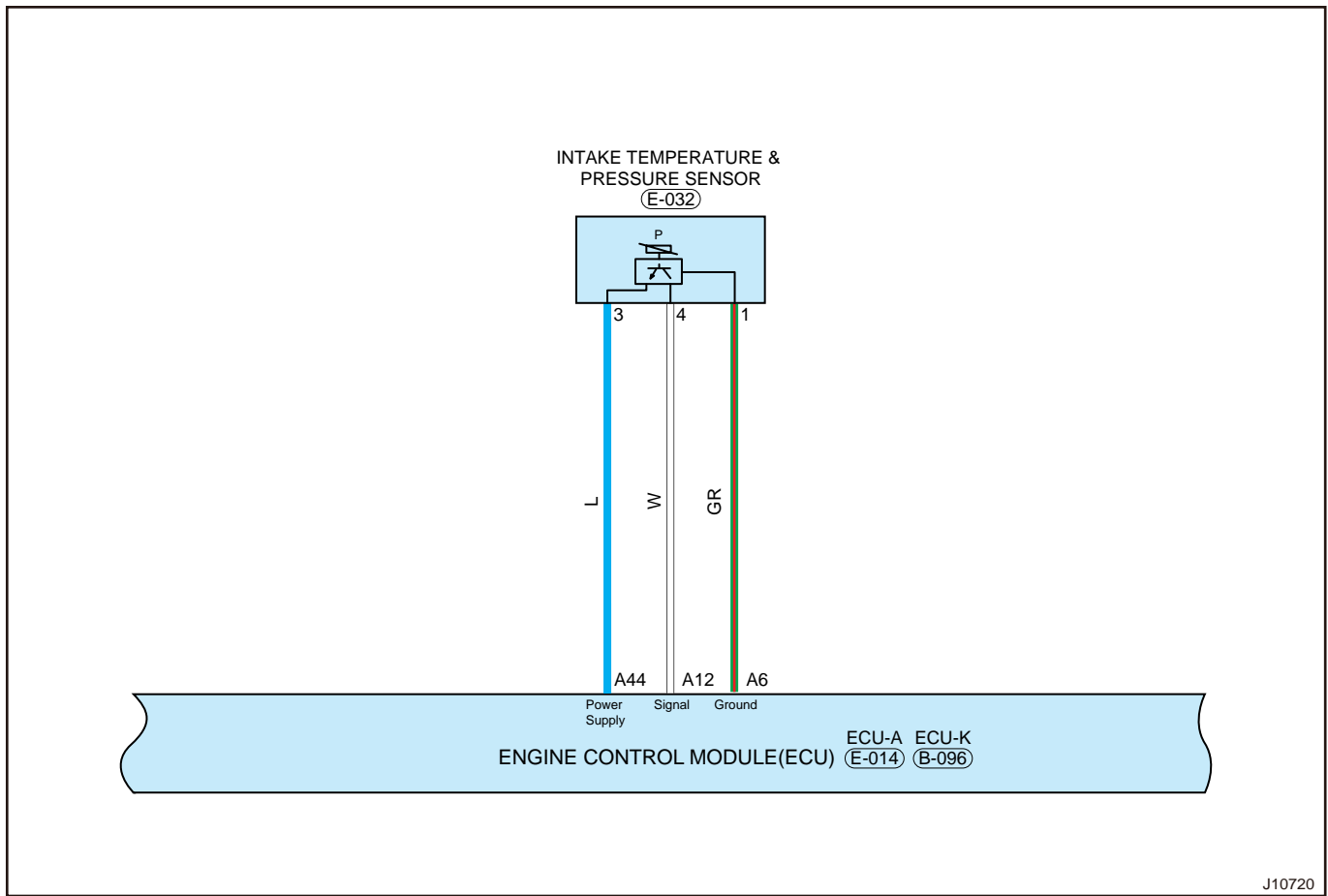
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has
been repaired.

■ Intake pressure sensor malfunction

DTC	P138124	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Multiple Check Bank1
DTC	P138123	Intake Air Temperature Measurement System - Multiple Sensor Correlation Bank 3
DTC	P00EB00	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Circuit High Bank 1
DTC	P00EA00	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Circuit Low Bank 1
DTC	P00EC00	Intake Air Temperature Sensor 3 Circuit Intermittent Bank 1

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check intake pressure/temperature sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug intake pressure/temperature sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

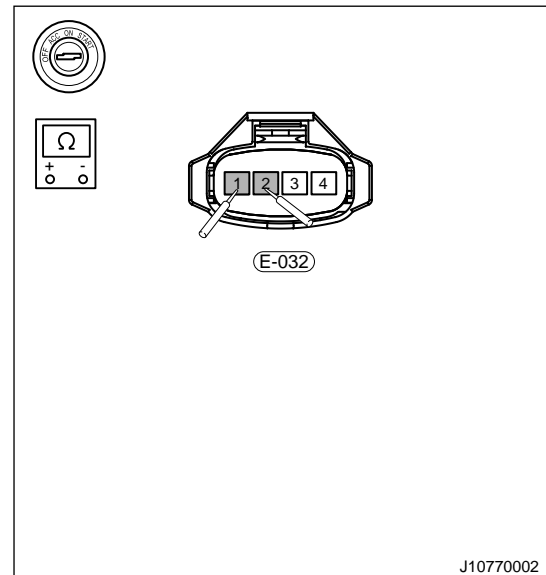
NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace intake pressure/temperature sensor.

OK

2 Check intake pressure/temperature sensor resistance

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if resistances of intake pressure/temperature sensor E-032 (1-2) are normal with red and black probes respectively.

Rated resistance at 20°C: 2.5 KΩ ± 5%



NG

Replace intake pressure/temperature sensor assembly.

OK

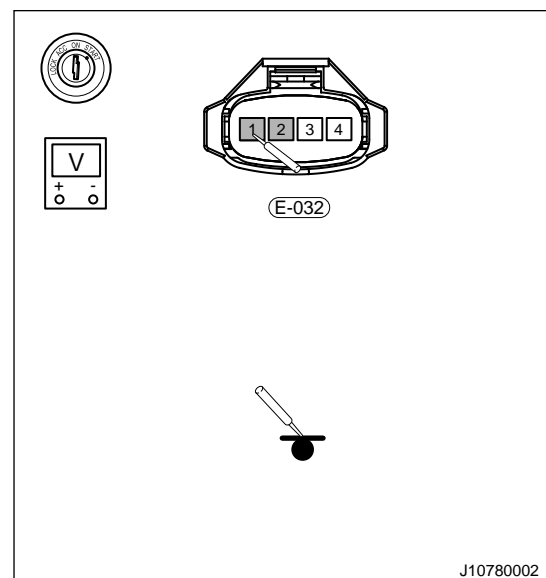
3

Check intake pressure/temperature sensor signal and ground terminals

- (a) Connect the intake pressure/temperature sensor connector.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of intake pressure/temperature sensor E-032 (1, 2) with red probe.

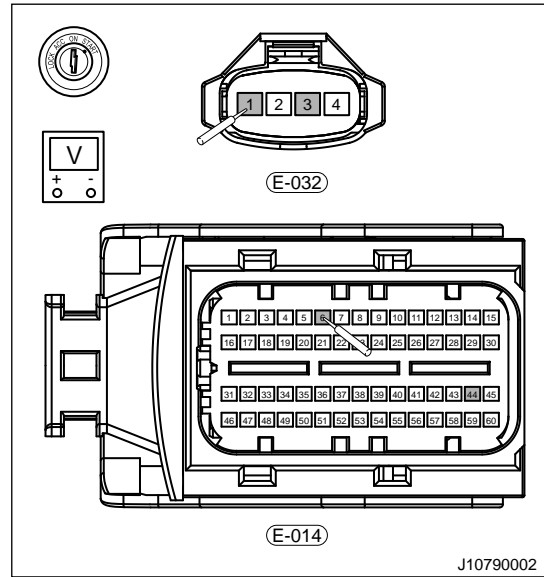
Signal terminal: Signal voltage should vary in accordance with temperature

Ground terminal: Voltage < 0.2 V



- (d) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM E-014 (6, 44), measure voltages of intake pressure/temperature sensor E-032 (1, 3) with red probe

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

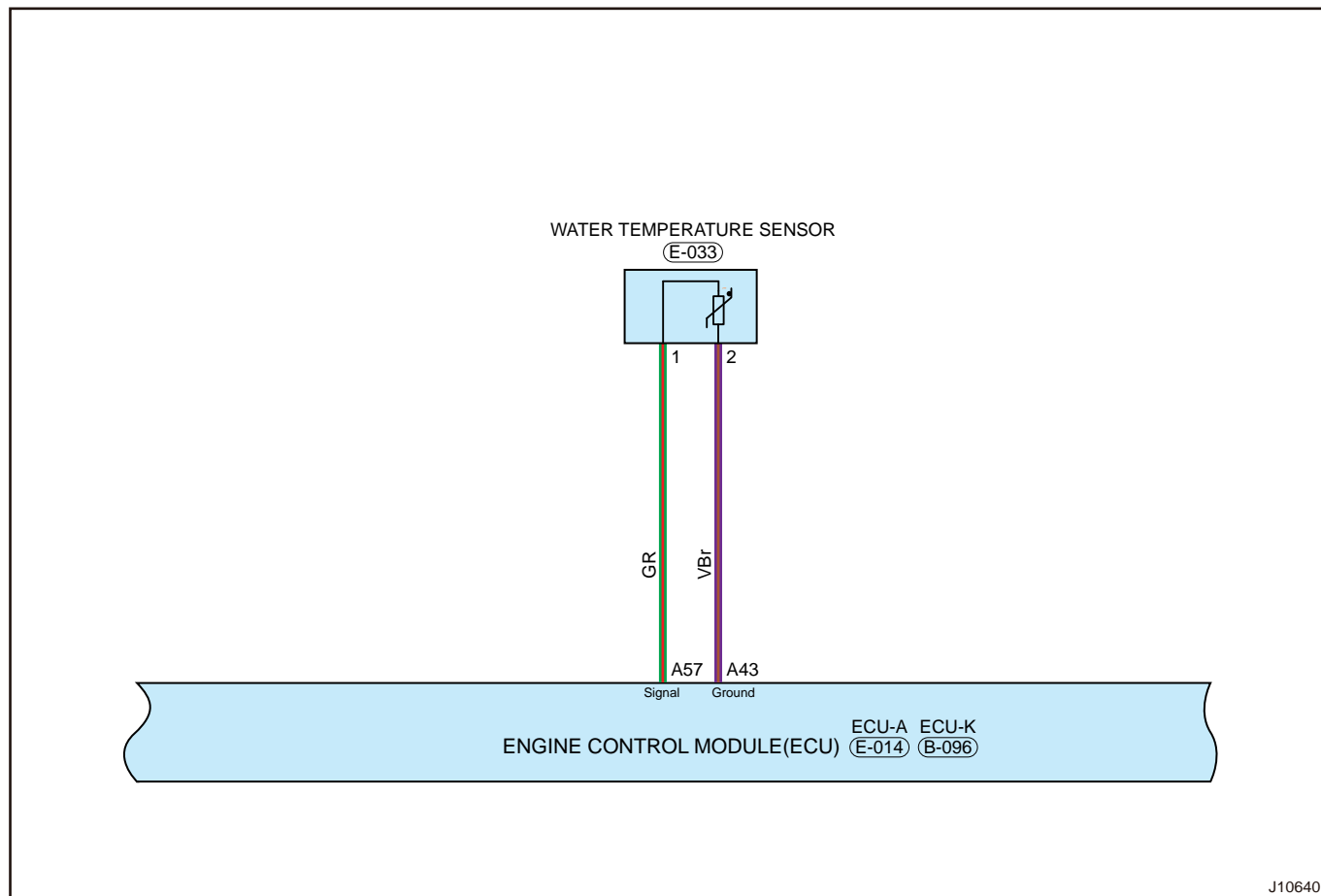
■ Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Malfunction

DTC	P011623	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P011626	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Range/Performance

DTC	P050C24	Cold Start Engine Coolant Temperature Performance
DTC	P050C23	Cold Start Engine Coolant Temperature Performance
DTC	P011700	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Low
DTC	P011800	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit High
DTC	P011900	Engine Coolant Temperature Sensor 1 Circuit Intermittent

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check coolant temperature sensor 1 connector
---	---

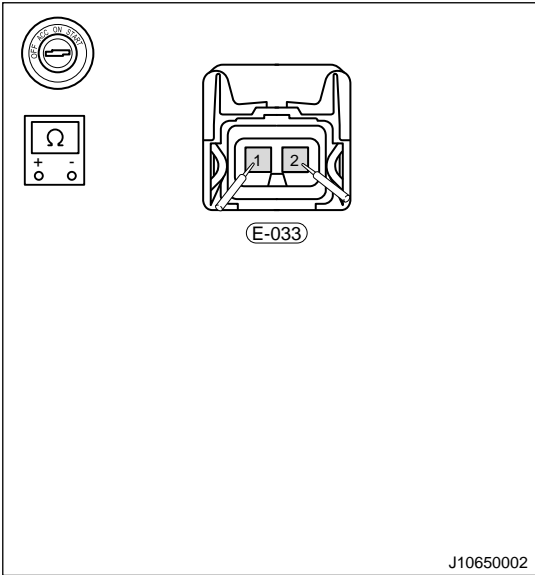
- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug coolant temperature sensor 1 connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG **Repair and adjust connector, or replace coolant temperature sensor 1.**

OK

2 Check coolant temperature sensor internal resistance

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if internal resistances of coolant temperature sensor E-033 (1, 2) are normal with red and black probes respectively. They should vary in accordance with coolant temperature.



NG **Replace coolant temperature sensor.**

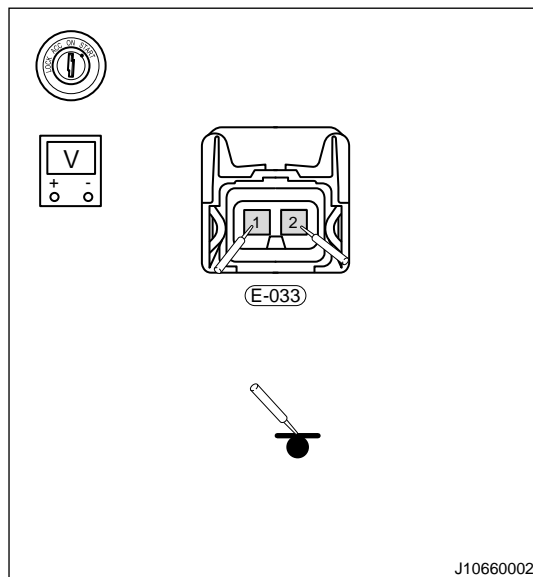
OK

3 Check coolant temperature sensor signal terminal and ground terminal

- (a) Check coolant temperature sensor 1 connector.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of coolant temperature sensor E-033 (1, 2) with red probe.

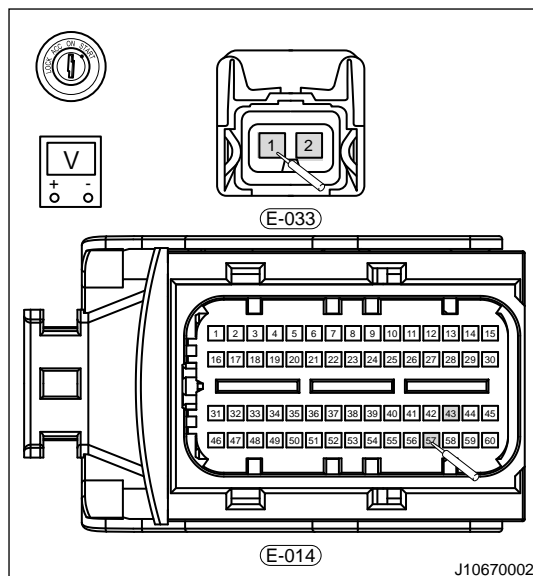
Signal terminal: Voltage signal should vary in accordance with temperature.

Ground terminal: Voltage < 0.2 V



- (d) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM E-014 (57, 43), measure voltages of coolant temperature sensor E-033 (1, 2) with red probe

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

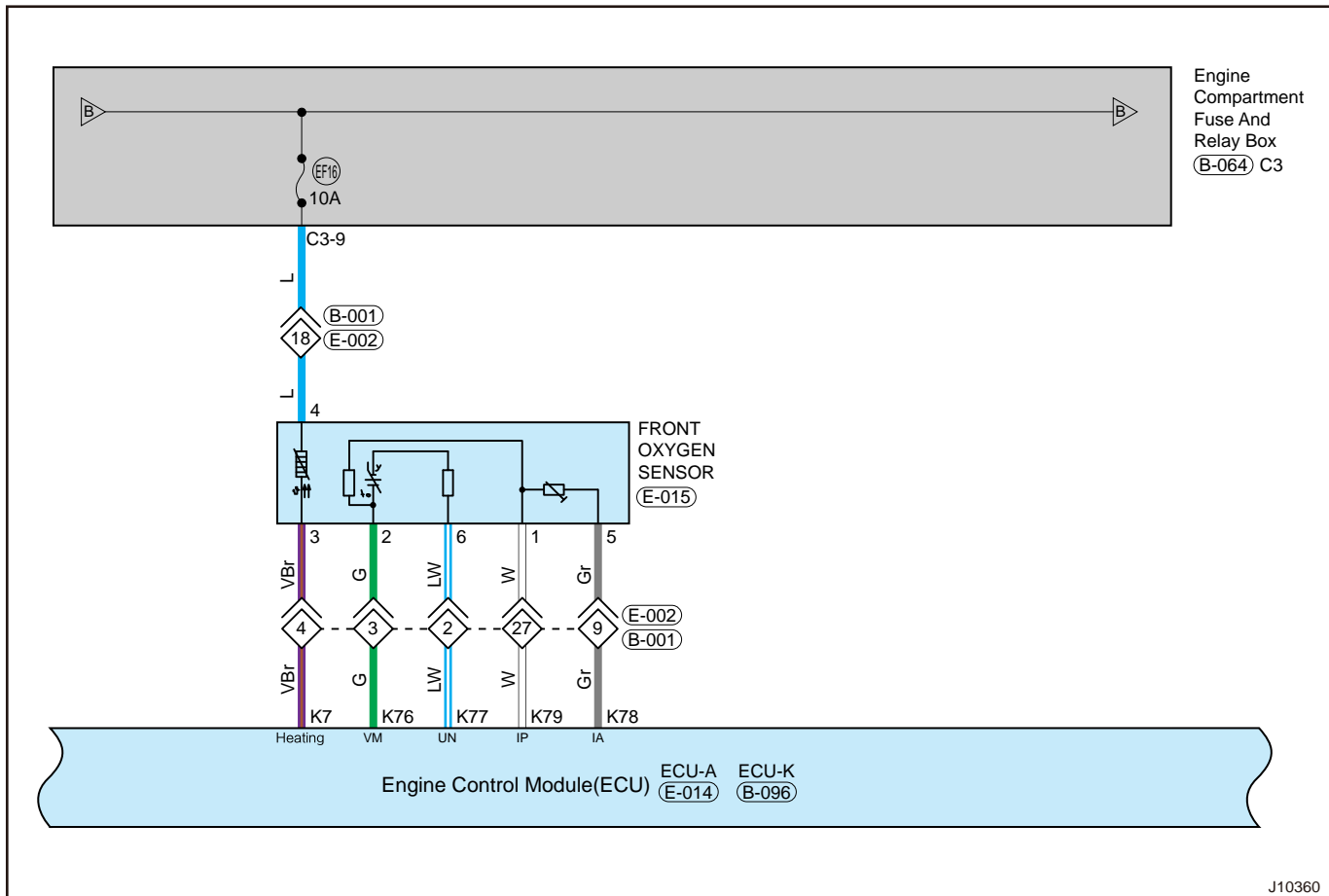
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Upstream Oxygen Sensor Signal Circuit Voltage Low/High (APE IPE RE Line Short to Ground/ Power Supply)

DTC	P013100	O2 Sensor Circuit Low Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P013200	O2 Sensor Circuit High Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P223700	O2 Sensor Positive Current Control Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1

Description
Circuit Diagram



DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check upstream oxygen sensor connector
----------	---

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Unplug upstream oxygen sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

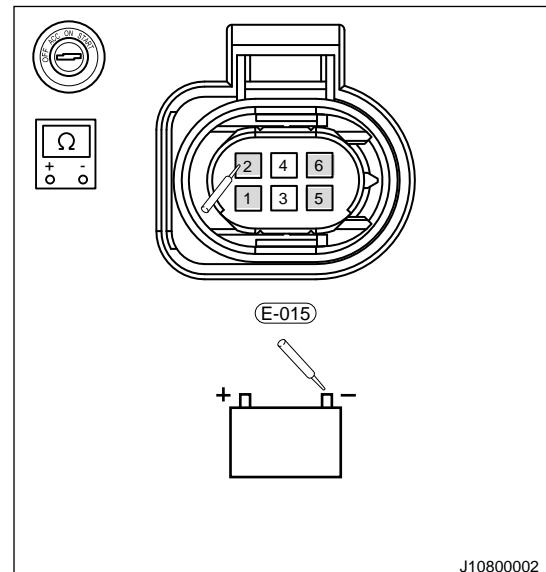
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
--

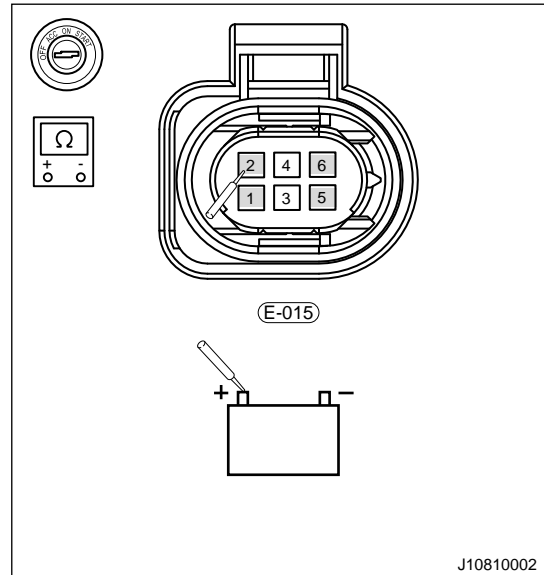
OK

2	Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in upstream oxygen sensor circuit
----------	---

- Disconnect the upstream oxygen sensor connector.
- Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (2, 6, 1, 5) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (2, 6, 1, 5) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

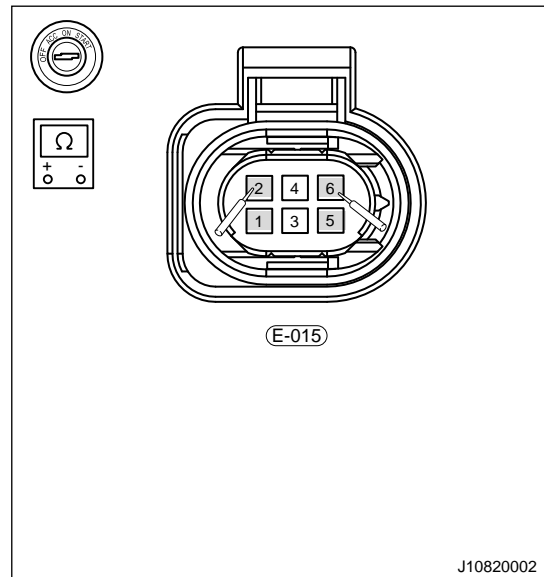


NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

3 Check if circuits of upstream oxygen sensor themselves are shorted to each other

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (2, 6, 1, 5) with red and black probes respectively. Check if internal circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Replace upstream oxygen sensor assembly.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

5	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **O2 Sensor Circuit Slow Response Bank 1 Sensor 1**

DTC

P013300

O2 Sensor Circuit Slow Response Bank 1 Sensor 1

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check intake/exhaust air for leakage
----------	---

- (a) Check intake system for air leakage.
 (b) Check exhaust system for air leakage.

NG

Repair and handle parts related to air leakage.

OK

2	Check the upstream oxygen sensor.
----------	--

- (a) Check if upstream oxygen sensor is deteriorated; Check if response speed is slow.

NG

Replace upstream oxygen sensor assembly.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

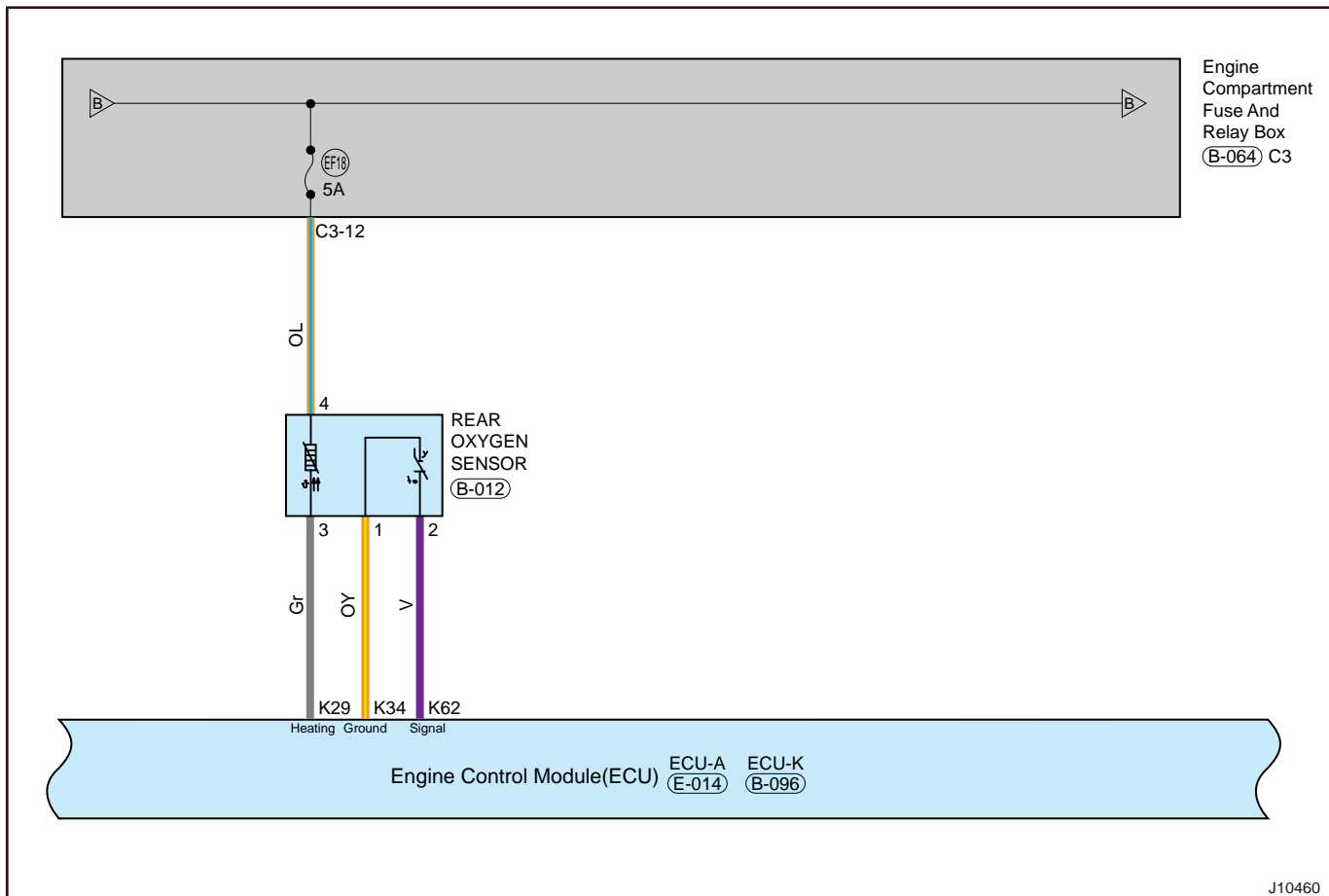
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

Downstream Oxygen Sensor Signal Improper/Signal Wire Short to Ground/Power Supply

DTC	P013600	O2 Sensor Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 2
DTC	P013700	O2 Sensor Circuit Low Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 2
DTC	P013800	O2 Sensor Circuit High Voltage Bank 1 Sensor 2

Description
Circuit Diagram



DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.

- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check downstream oxygen sensor connector
----------	---

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Unplug downstream oxygen sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

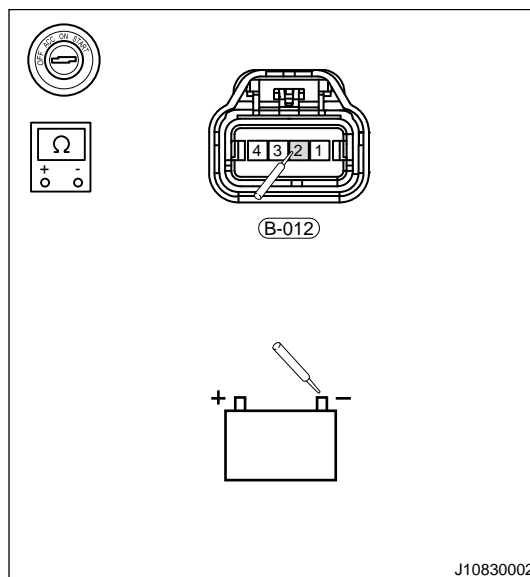
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

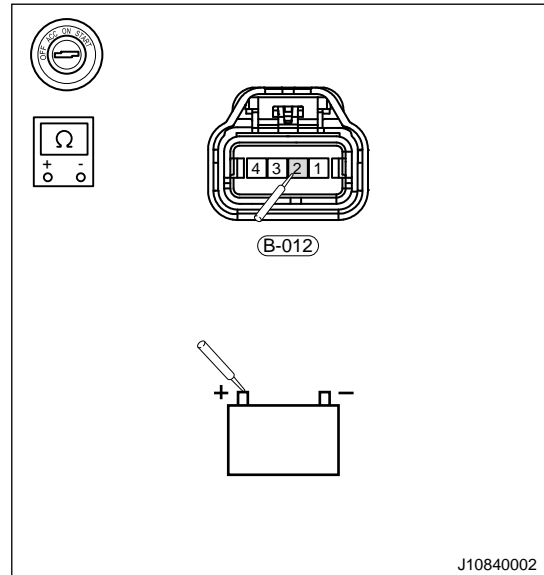
OK

2	Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in downstream oxygen sensor signal
----------	--

- Disconnect the downstream oxygen sensor connector.
- Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of downstream oxygen sensor B-012 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistance of downstream oxygen sensor B-012 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

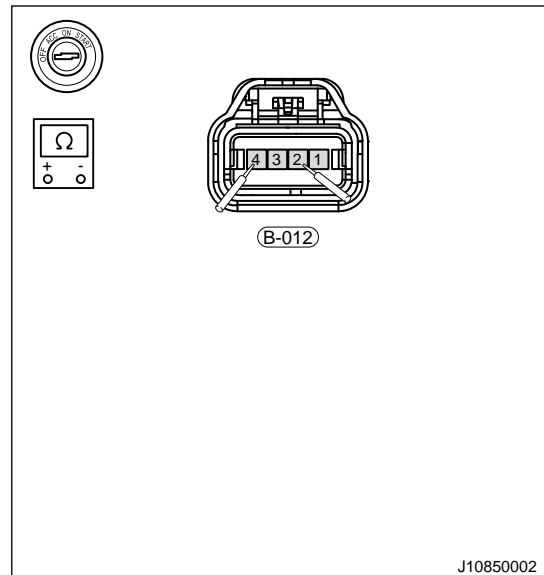


NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

3 Check if circuits of downstream oxygen sensor themselves are shorted to each other

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of upstream oxygen sensor B-012 (1, 2, 3, 4) with red and black probes respectively. Check if internal circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Replace downstream oxygen sensor assembly.

OK

4	Check Engine Control Module (ECM)
----------	--

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK	Repair or replace new module.
-----------	--------------------------------------

NG

5	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

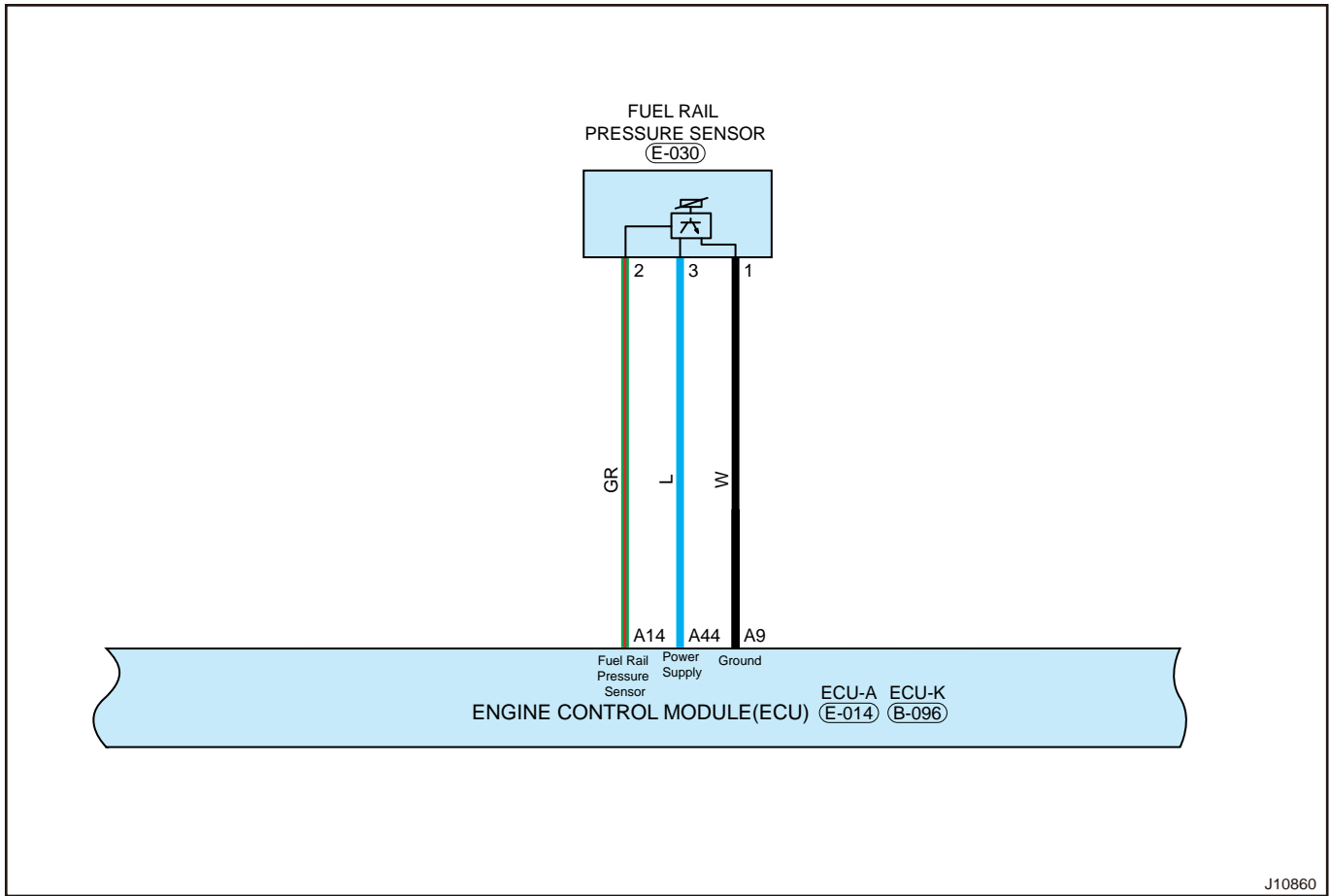
OK	Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.
-----------	--

■ Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Voltage Too High/Too Low/Signal Stuck/Signal Non-plausible

DTC	P019200	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Low Bank 1
DTC	P019300	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit High Bank 1
DTC	P019400	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Intermittent/Erratic Bank 1
DTC	P019128	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Negative Offset
DTC	P019129	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Positive Offset
DTC	P019000	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1
DTC	P254200	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit High Voltage
DTC	P254100	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit Low Voltage

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J10860

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check fuel rail pressure sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug fuel rail pressure sensor connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

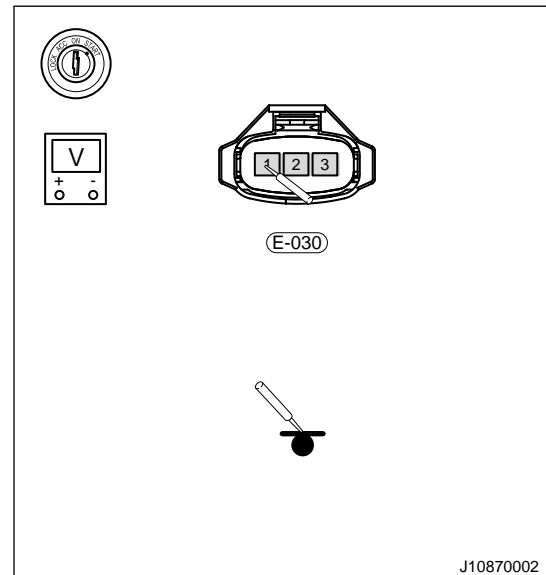
2 Check fuel rail pressure sensor circuit

- (a) Connect the fuel rail pressure sensor connector.
 (b) Ignition switch ON.
 (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of fuel rail pressure sensor E-030 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively.

Power supply: 5 V

Ground: < 0.2 V

Signal: Under atmospheric pressure (100 Kpa), signal output is 0.500 ± 0.048 V



NG

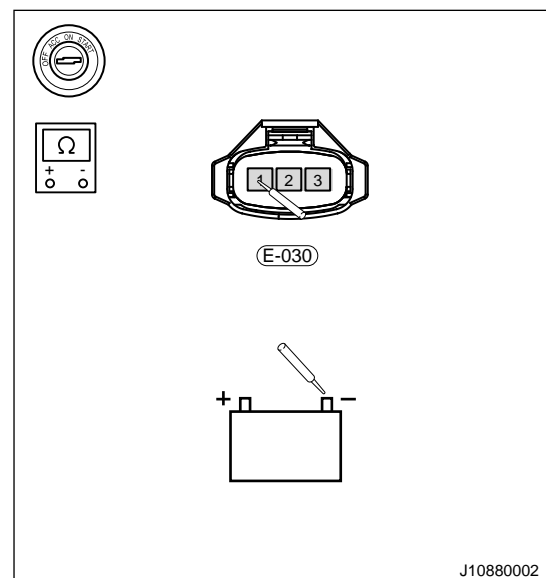
Check and repair wire harness, or replace fuel rail pressure sensor.

OK

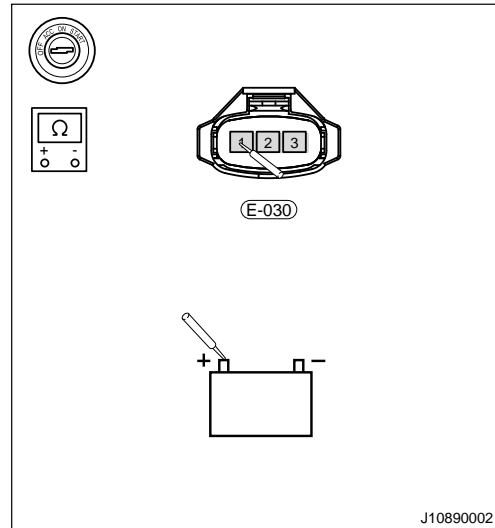
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in fuel rail pressure sensor

- (a) Disconnect the fuel rail pressure sensor connector.
 (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
 (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of fuel rail pressure sensor E-030 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of fuel rail pressure sensor E-030 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

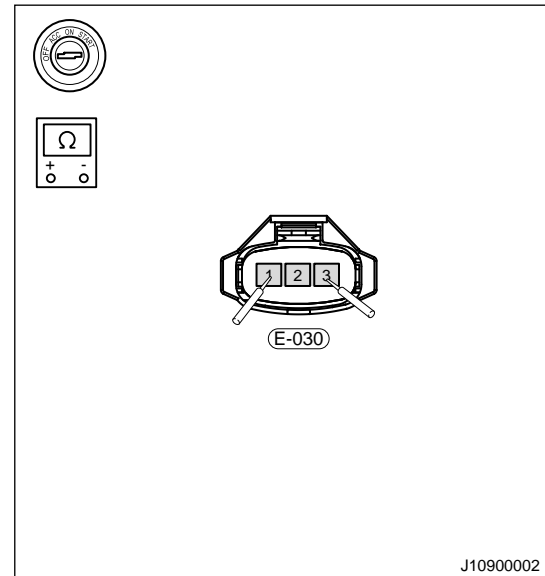


NG Check and repair wire harness.

OK

4 Check if circuits of fuel rail pressure sensor themselves are shorted to each other

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of fuel rail pressure sensor E-030 (1, 2, 3) with red and black probes respectively. Check if internal circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Replace fuel rail pressure sensor assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

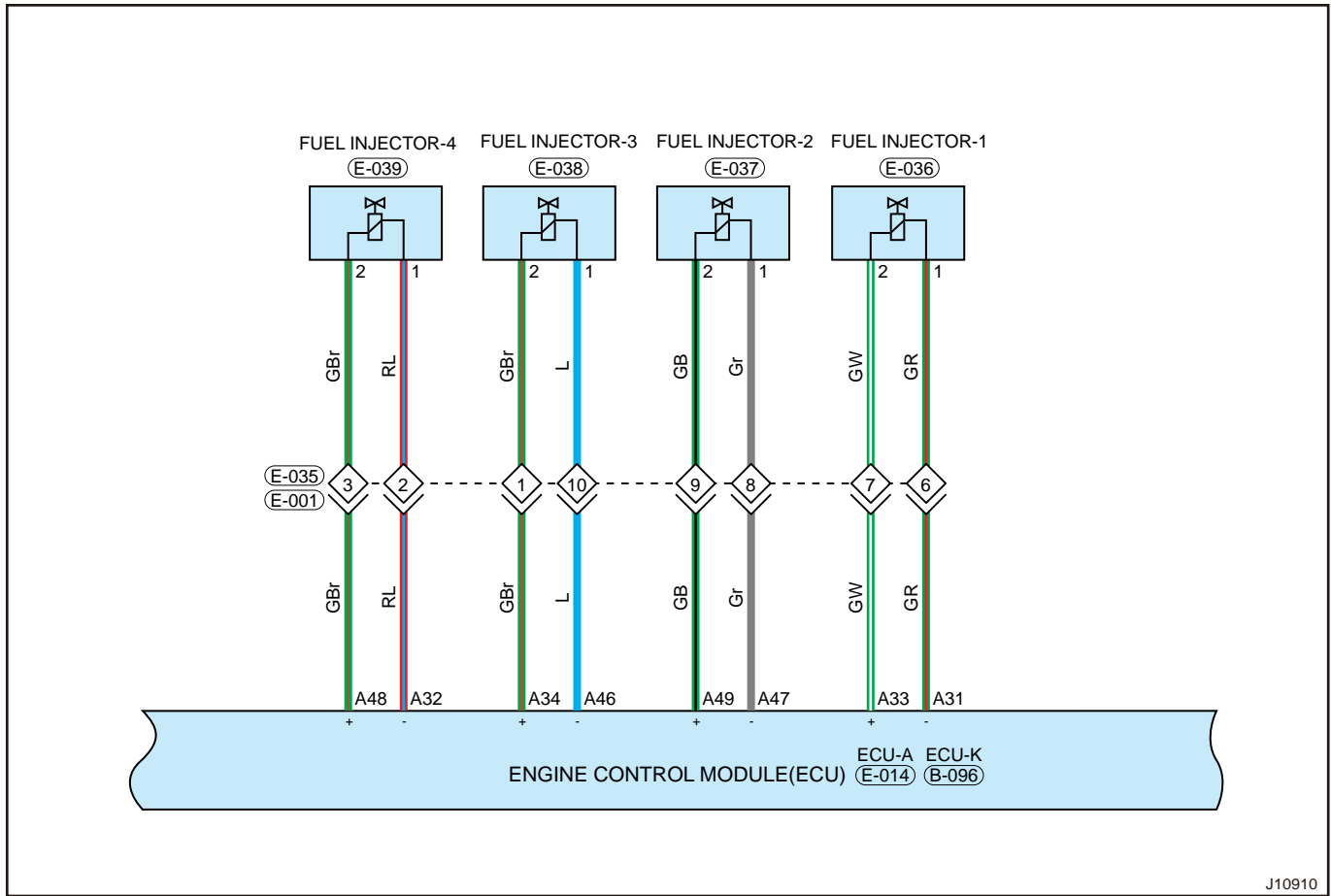
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Cylinder 1 / Cylinder 2 / Cylinder 3 / Cylinder 4 Fuel Injector Control Circuit Open

DTC	P020100	Cylinder 1 Injector "A" Circuit
DTC	P020300	Cylinder 3 Injector "A" Circuit
DTC	P020400	Cylinder 4 - Injector Circuit Open
DTC	P020200	Cylinder 2 - Injector Circuit Open

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J10910

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Take troubleshooting of cylinder 1 fuel injector as an example.

1 Check injector connector

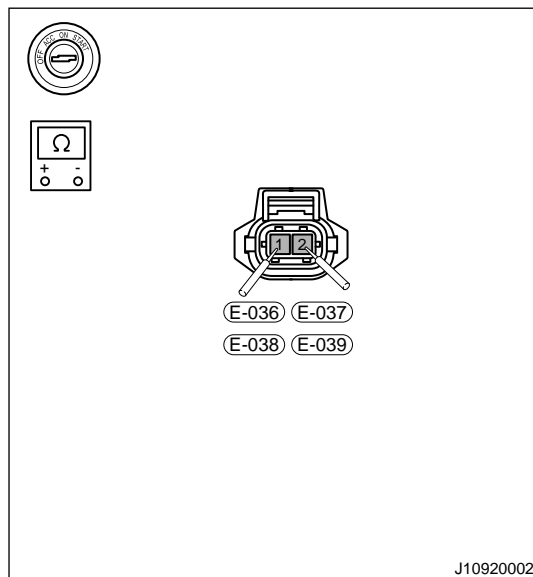
- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if fuel injector connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check internal resistance of fuel injector

- (a) Disconnect the injector connector.
- (b) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of fuel injector E-037 (1, 2), E-036 (1, 2), E-038 (1, 2), E-039 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively.

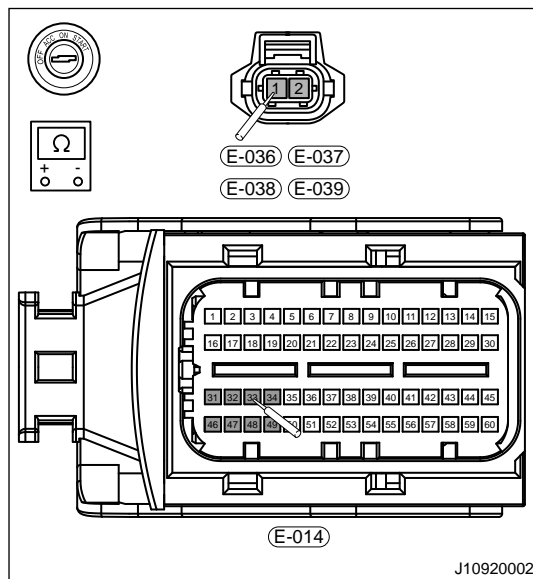


NG Replace fuel injector assembly.

OK

3 Check fuel injector control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the injector connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to ECM E-014 (49, 47), E-014 (33, 31), E-014 (34, 46), E-014 (48, 32), measure for continuity among fuel injector E-037 (1, 2), E-036 (1, 2), E-038 (1, 2), E-039 (1, 2) with red probe respectively.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

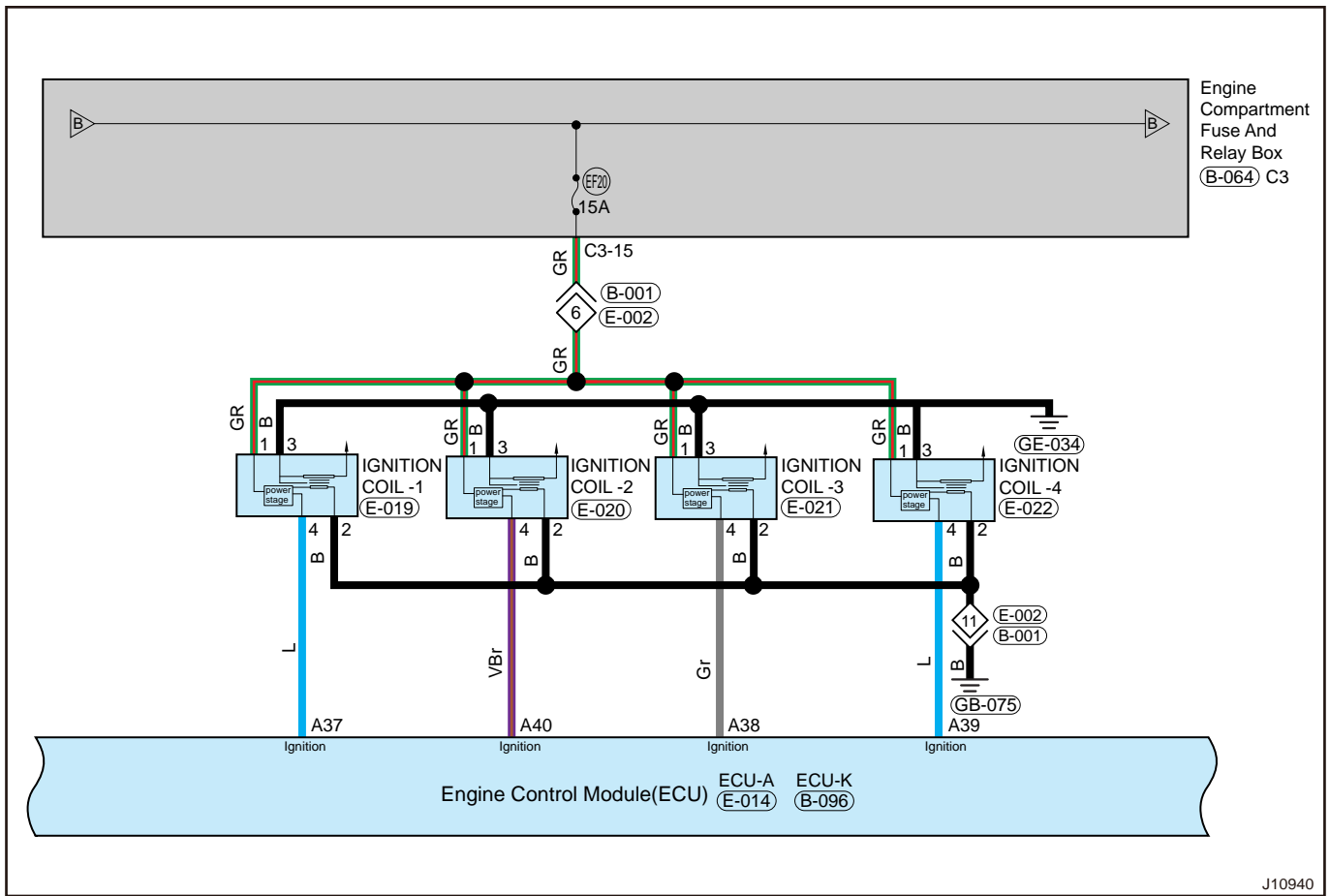
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Cylinder 1 / Cylinder 2 / Cylinder 3 / Cylinder 4 Ignition Coil Control Circuit Voltage High/Low

DTC	P230100	Ignition Coil "A" Primary Control Circuit High
DTC	P230700	Ignition Coil "C" Primary Control Circuit High
DTC	P231000	Ignition Coil "D" Primary Control Circuit High
DTC	P230400	Ignition Coil "B" Primary Control Circuit High
DTC	P230000	Ignition Coil "A" Primary Control Circuit Low
DTC	P230600	Ignition Coil "C" Primary Control Circuit Low
DTC	P230900	Ignition Coil "D" Primary Control Circuit Low
DTC	P230300	Ignition Coil "B" Primary Control Circuit Low
DTC	P035100	Ignition Coil "A" Primary Control Circuit Open
DTC	P035300	Ignition Coil "C" Primary Control Circuit Open
DTC	P035400	Ignition Coil "D" Primary Control Circuit Open
DTC	P035200	Ignition Coil "B" Primary Control Circuit Open

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Take troubleshooting of cylinder 1 ignition coil as an example.

1	Check ignition coil connector
----------	--------------------------------------

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Unplug ignition coil connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG	Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
-----------	--

OK

2	Check ignition coil power supply fuse
----------	--

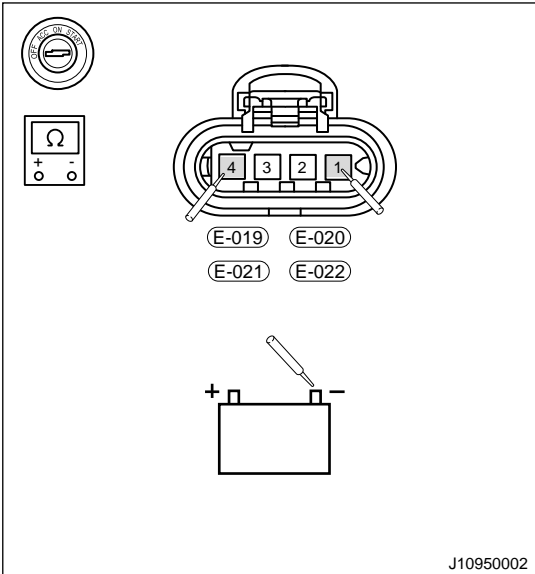
- (a) Check if fuse EF20 15A of engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

NG There is short circuit in circuit or ignition coil.

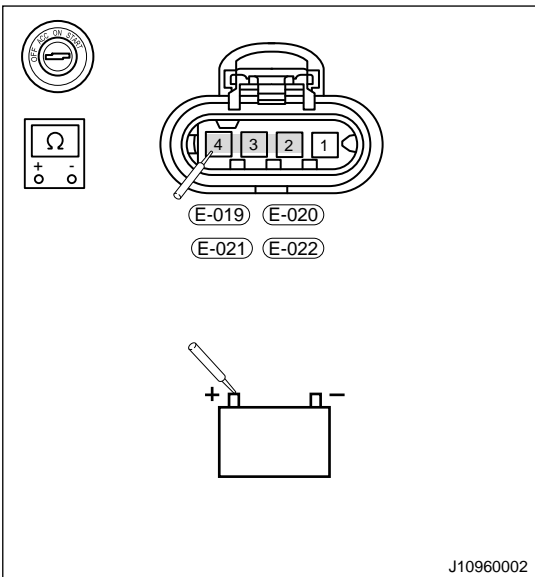
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in ignition coil circuit

- (a) Disconnect the ignition coil connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of ignition coil E-019 (1, 4), E-020 (1, 4), E-021 (1, 4), E-022 (1, 4) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of ignition coil E-019 (2, 3, 4), E-020 (2, 3, 4), E-021 (2, 3, 4), E-022 (2, 3, 4) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Check and repair wire harness.

OK

4 Check ignition coil control circuit

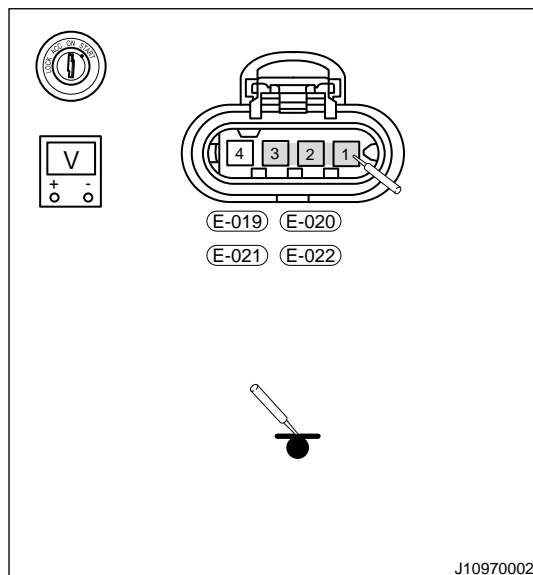
- (a) Connect the ignition coil connector.
- (b) Ignition switch ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of ignition coil E-019 (1, 2, 3), E-020 (1, 2, 3), E-021 (1, 2, 3), E-022 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively.

Power supply: 12 V

Ground: < 0.2 V

- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Using the LED test light, connect clip to battery negative terminal, measure ignition coil E-019 (4), E-020 (4), E-021 (4), E-022 (4) with another end.

Under normal conditions, test light should flash.



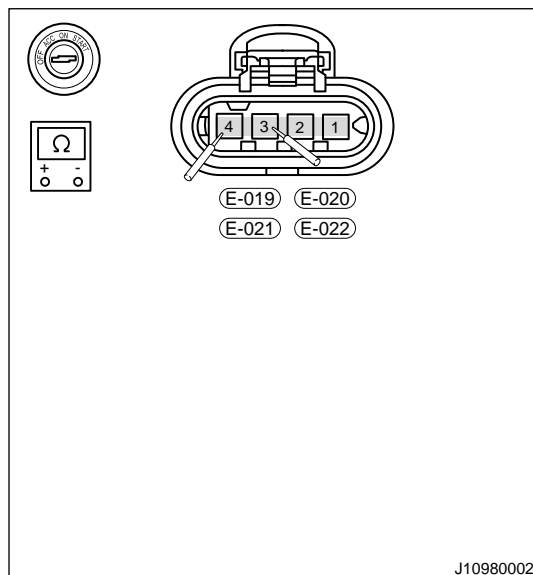
NG

Check and repair wire harness

OK

5 Check if circuits of ignition coil themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of ignition coil (1, 2, 3, 4) with red and black probes respectively. Check if internal circuits are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace ignition coil assembly.

OK

6	Check Engine Control Module (ECM)
----------	--

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK	Repair or replace new module.
-----------	--------------------------------------

NG

7	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

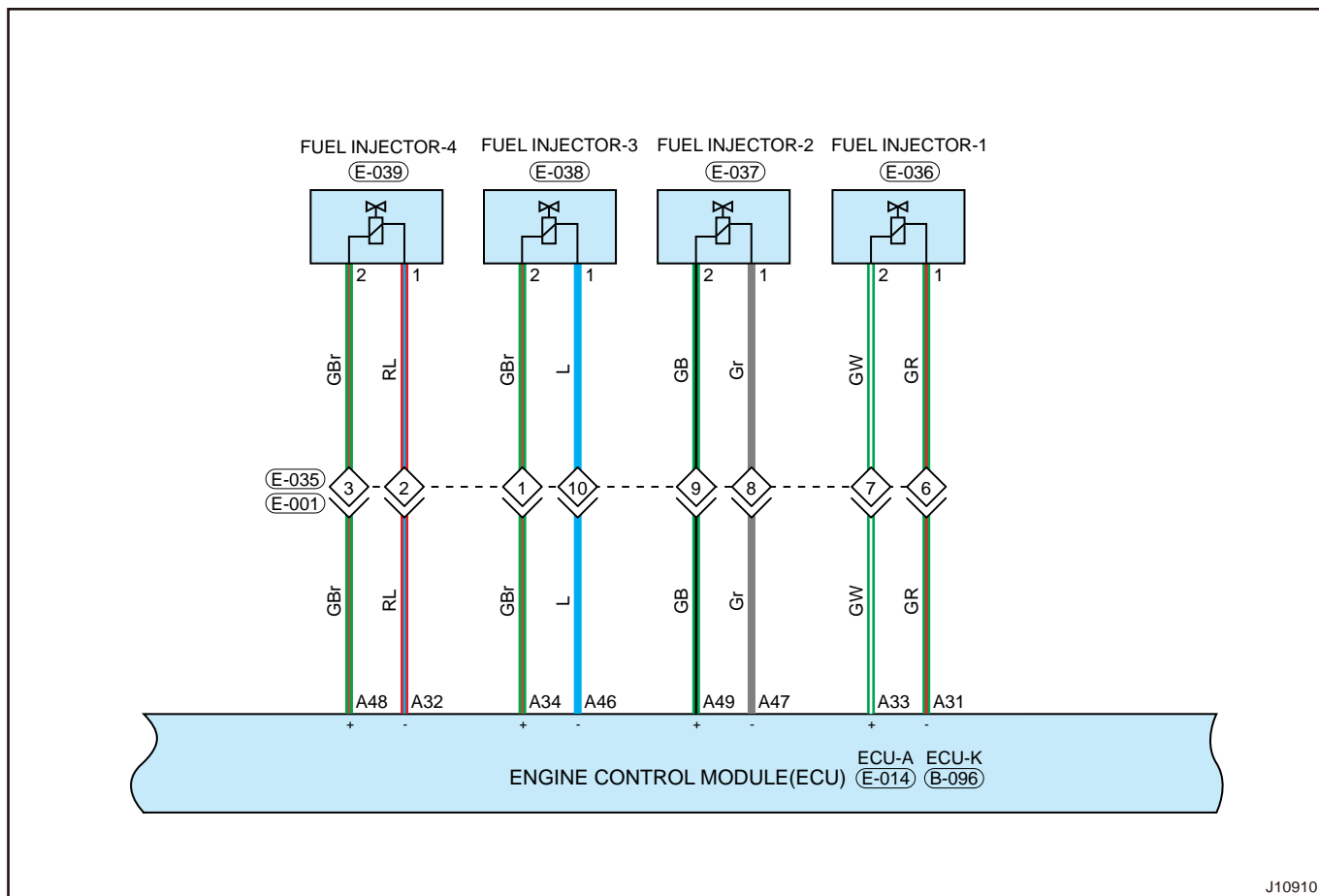
OK	Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.
-----------	--

■ Cylinder 1 / Cylinder 2 / Cylinder 3 / Cylinder 4 Fuel Injector Control Circuit Short to Power Supply

DTC	P026200	Cylinder 1 Injector Circuit High
DTC	P026800	Cylinder 3 Injector Circuit High
DTC	P027100	Cylinder 4 Injector Circuit High
DTC	P026500	Cylinder 2 Injector Circuit High

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Take troubleshooting of cylinder 1 fuel injector as an example.

1 Check injector connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if fuel injector connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

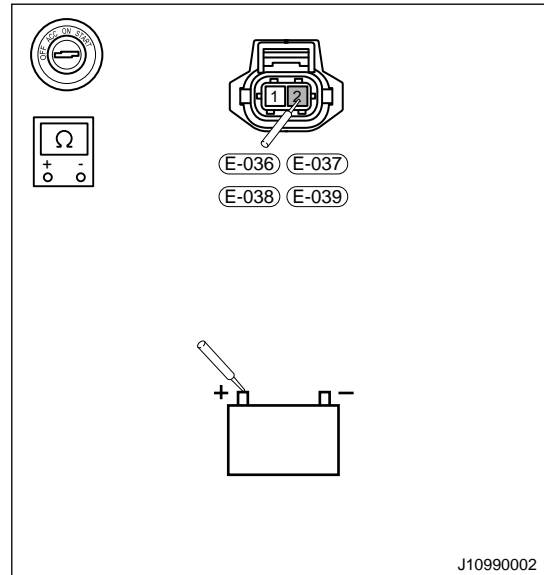
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check if fuel injector control terminal is short to power supply

- (a) Disconnect the injector connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of fuel injector E-037 (2), E-036 (2), E-038 (2), E-039 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

3 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

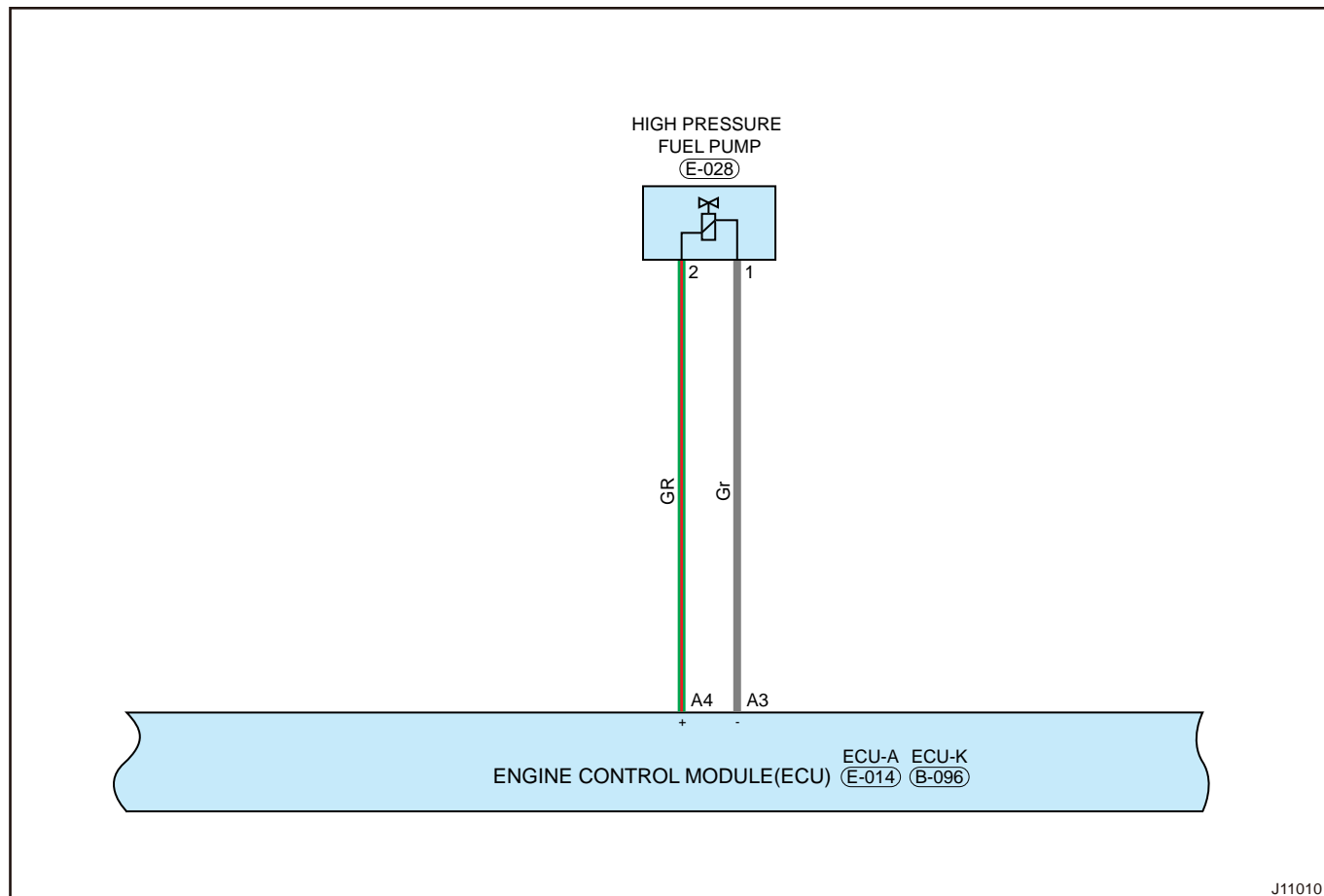
Flow Control Valve Control Circuit Open/Too High/Too Low

DTC	P025100	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "A" (Cam/Rotor/Injector)
DTC	P025400	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "A" High (Cam/Rotor/Injector)

DTC	P025900	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "B" High (Cam/Rotor/Injector)
DTC	P025300	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "A" Low (Cam/Rotor/Injector)
DTC	P025800	Injection Pump Fuel Metering Control "B" Low (Cam/Rotor/Injector)
DTC	P009000	Fuel Pressure Regulator 1 Control Circuit Open

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J11010

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check high pressure fuel pump connector
----------	--

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Unplug high pressure fuel pump connector, check if this connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

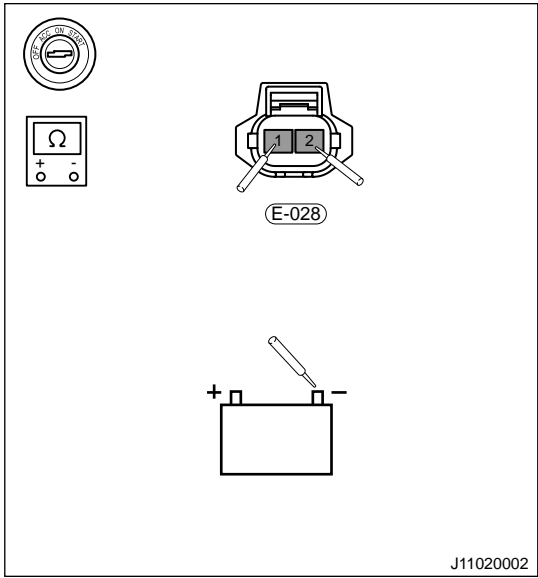
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

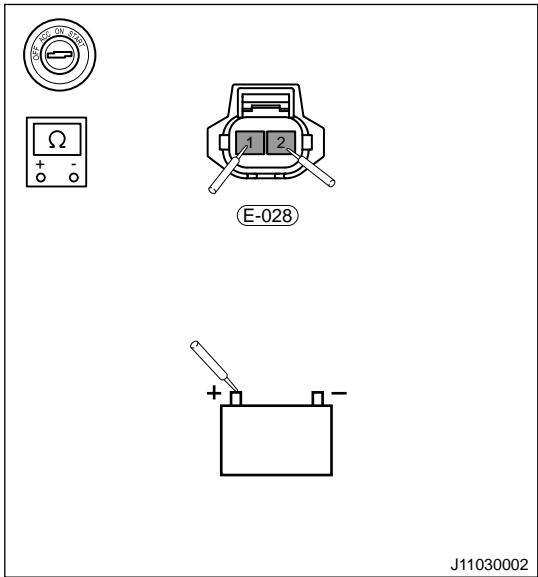
OK

2 | Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in high pressure fuel pump circuit

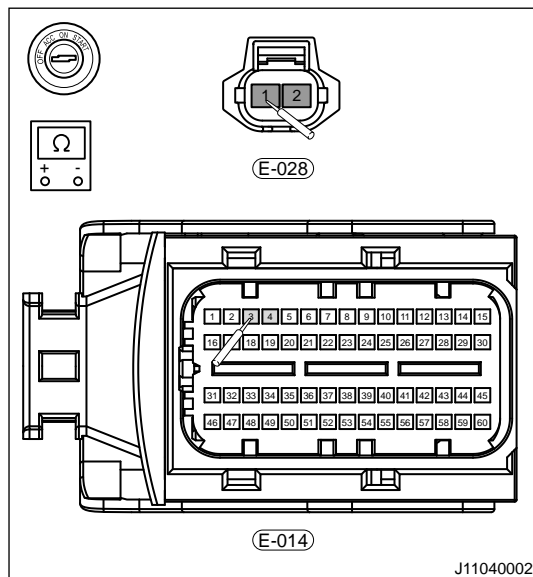
- (a) Disconnect the high pressure fuel pump connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of high pressure fuel pump E-028 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of high pressure fuel pump E-028 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to ECM E-014 (3, 4), measure for continuity between high pressure fuel pump E-028 (1, 2) with red probe respectively; Check for open circuit.

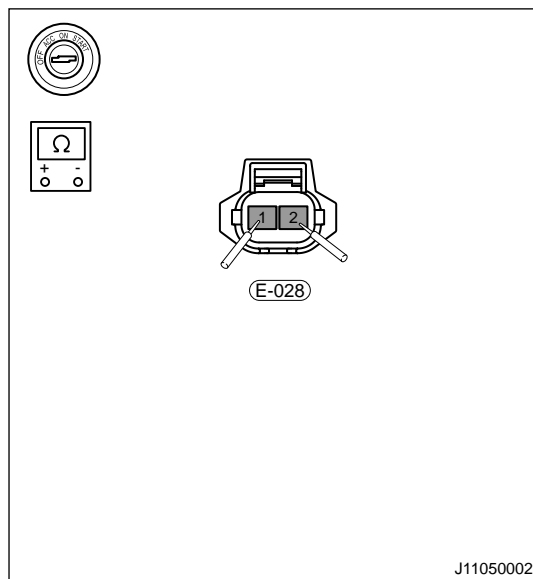


NG Check and repair wire harness.

OK

3 Check if circuits of flow control valve themselves are shorted to each other

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of high pressure fuel pump E-028 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively. Check if internal circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Replace high pressure fuel pump assembly.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Multiple Cylinder Misfire Detected

DTC	P030000	Random/Multiple Cylinder Misfire Detected
DTC	P030100	Cylinder 1 Misfire Detected
DTC	P030200	Cylinder 2 Misfire Detected
DTC	P030300	Cylinder 3 Misfire Detected
DTC	P030400	Cylinder 4 Misfire Detected
DTC	P036300	Misfire Detected - Fueling Disabled

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check fuel injector, ignition coil connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if fuel injector, ignition coil connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check if ignition coil control circuit is abnormal

- (a) Check if ignition coil control circuit is abnormal.
 (b) Under normal conditions of control circuit, replace ignition coil and perform test.

NG

Check and repair circuit, or replace ignition coil assembly.

OK

3 Check spark plug

- (a) Check spark plug insulating ceramic for cracks;
 (b) Check spark plug head electrode for corrosion, damage;
 (c) Check if clearance between spark plug head side electrode and center electrode is normal.

NG

Replace spark plug assembly.

OK

4 Check if fuel injector control circuit is abnormal

- (a) Check if fuel injector control circuit is abnormal.
 (b) Under normal conditions of control circuit, replace fuel injector and perform test.

NG

Check and repair circuit, or replace fuel injector assembly.

OK

5 Check fuel quality

- (a) Check if fuel quality is abnormal.

NG

Replace fuel.

OK

6 Check engine system for serious carbon deposition

- (a) Check if fuel injector is dirty or blocked.
- (b) Check if electronic throttle is dirty.
- (c) Check intake valve for serious carbon deposition.

NG Clean engine system.

OK

7 Test engine cylinder pressure

- (a) Test if cylinder pressure of each cylinder is met standard with the cylinder pressure gauge.

NG Repair the engine.

OK

8 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

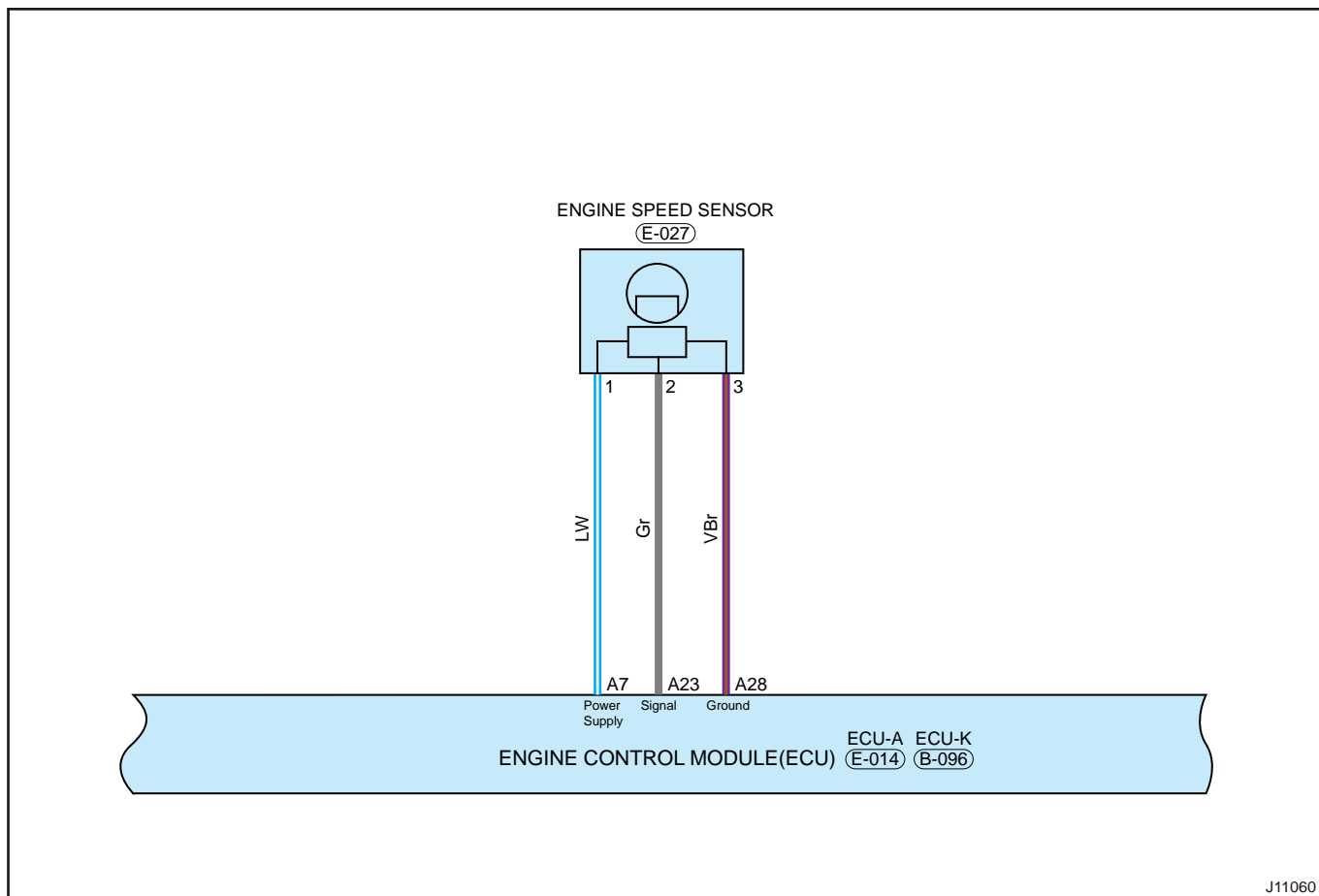
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Crankshaft Position Sensor Signal Improper/Missing

DTC	P033900	Crankshaft Position Sensor “A” Circuit Intermittent
DTC	P261700	Crankshaft Position Signal Output Circuit Open

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check speed sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if speed sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check speed sensor and signal gear ring condition

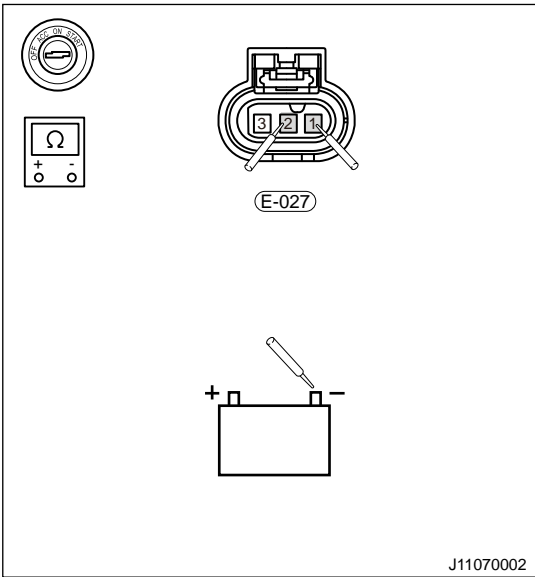
- (a) Remove the speed sensor.
- (b) Check head of speed sensor for a large amount of iron chips.
- (c) Check signal gear ring for tooth missing, damage or iron chips adhesion.

NG Clean up iron chips or replace damaged flywheel.

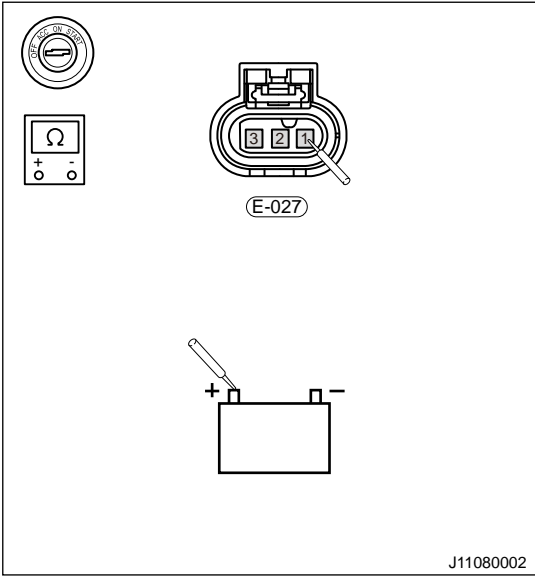
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in speed sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect the speed sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of speed sensor E-027 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of speed sensor E-027 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Check and repair wire harness.

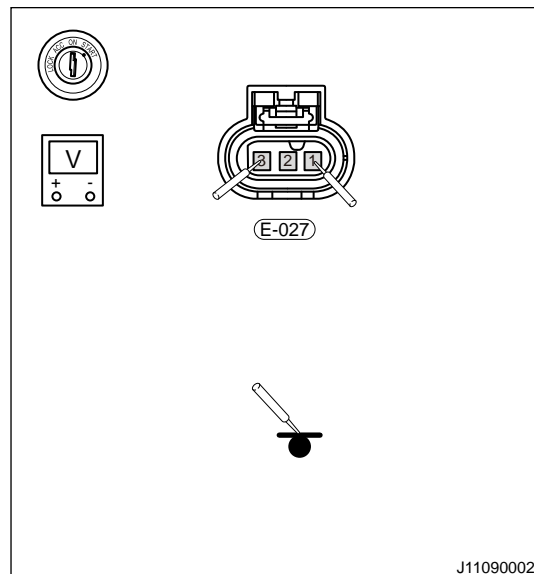
OK

4 Check speed sensor signal circuit

- (a) Connect the speed sensor connector.
 (b) Ignition switch ON.
 (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of fuel rail pressure sensor E-027 (1, 3) with red probe respectively.

Power supply: 5 V**Ground: < 0.2 V**

- (d) Start the engine.
 (e) Using the LED test light, connect clip to battery negative terminal, measure speed sensor E-027 (2) with another end.

Under normal conditions, test light should flash.

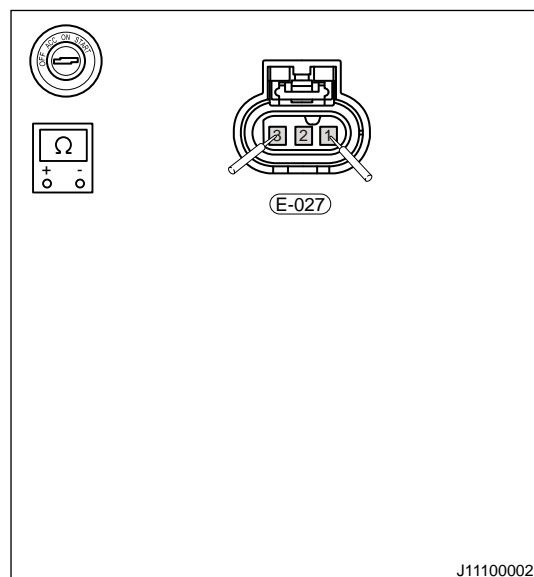
NG

Check and repair wire harness

OK

5 Check if circuits of speed sensor themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of speed sensor E-027 (1, 2, 3) with red and black probes respectively. Check if internal circuits are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace speed sensor assembly.

OK

6 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK **Repair or replace new module.**

NG

7 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

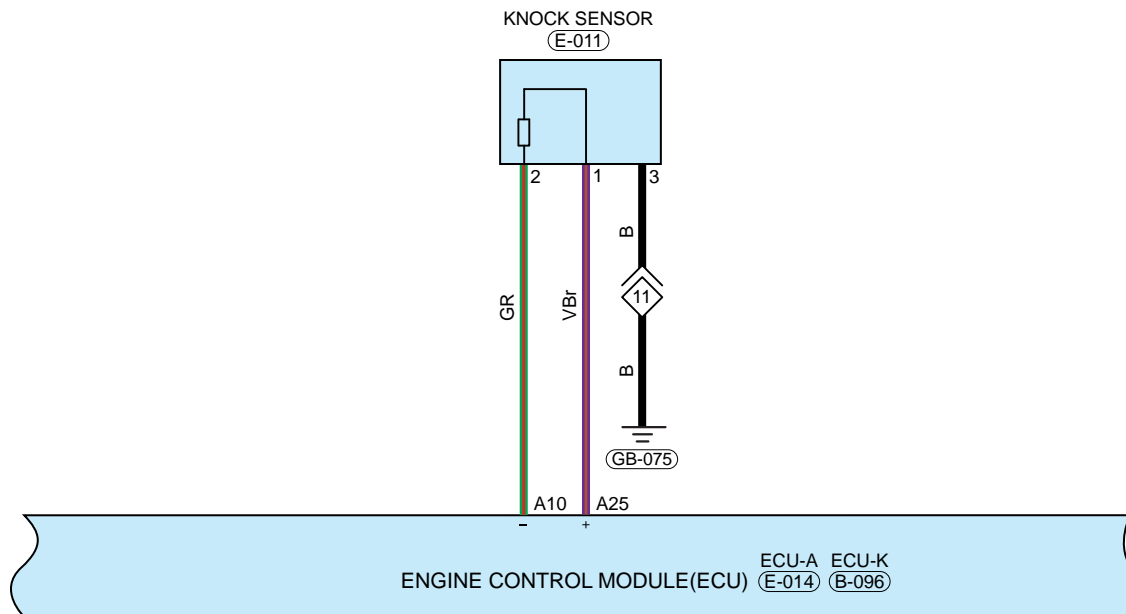
OK **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

■ Knock Sensor (Terminal A/B) Signal Short to Ground/Power Supply/Voltage Too High/Too Low

DTC	P032600	Knock Sensor Signal Circuit Voltage Too High
DTC	P032500	Knock Sensor Signal Circuit Voltage Too Low
DTC	P032800	Knock/Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit High Bank 1 or Single Sensor
DTC	P032700	Knock/Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit Low Bank 1 or Single Sensor
DTC	P032815	Knock/Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit High Bank 1 or Single Sensor
DTC	P032714	Knock/Combustion Vibration Sensor 1 Circuit Low Bank 1 or Single Sensor

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J11110

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check knock sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if knock sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check knock sensor condition

- (a) Check if knock sensor is exposed to oil, coolant, water, etc. for a long time; Avoid corrosion to sensor.
- (b) Check knock sensor fixing bolts for looseness.

Tightening torque: $20 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

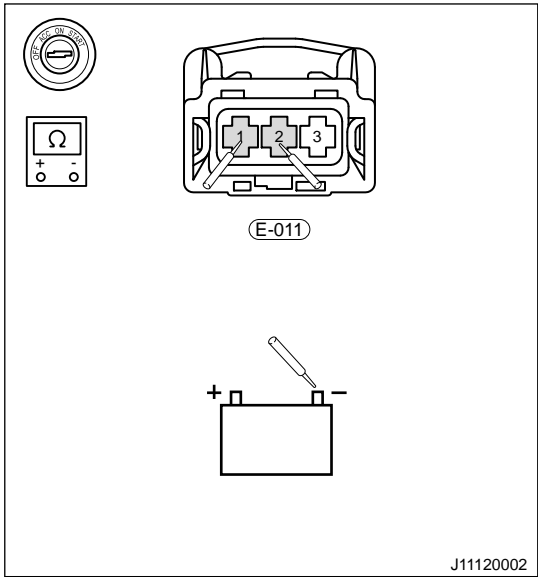


Clean and tighten fixing bolts to specified torque.

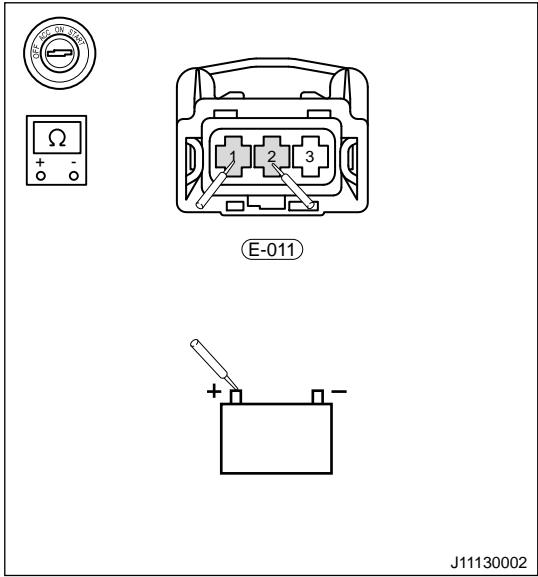


3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in knock sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect the knock sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of knock sensor E-011 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of knock sensor E-011 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

Check and repair wire harness.

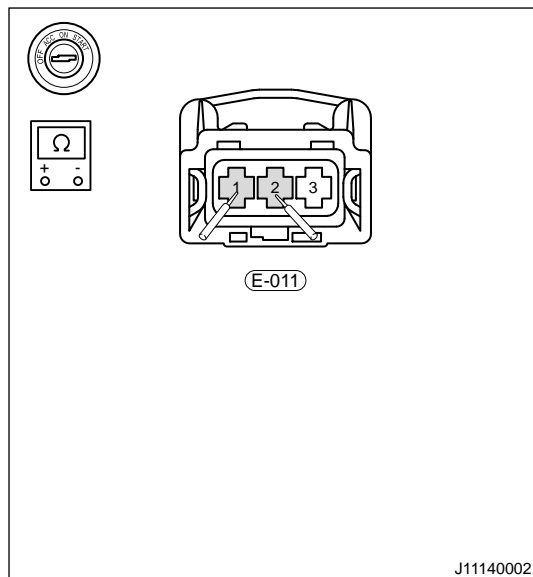
OK

4

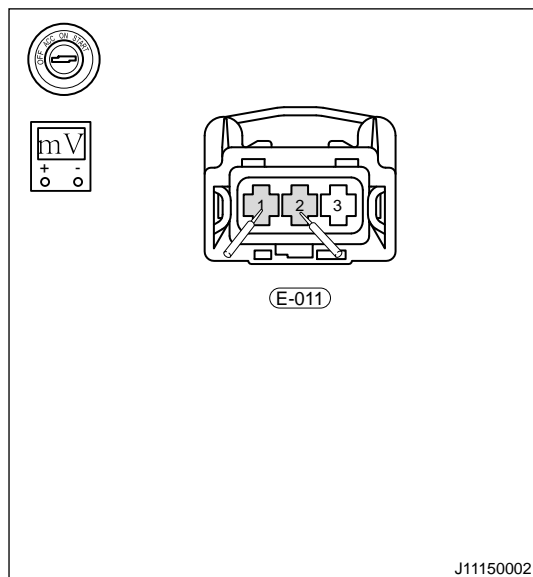
Check knock sensor itself

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of knock sensor E-011 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively.

Resistance at ambient temperature should be $4.9\text{ M}\Omega \pm 20\%$



- (b) Using mV band of multimeter, measure voltages of knock sensor E-011 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively. Using a small hammer to tap near knock sensor, there should be a voltage signal output at this time.



NG

Replace knock sensor assembly.

OK

5

Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Intake/Exhaust Camshaft Phaser Sensor Signal Improper

DTC	P034100	Camshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance Bank 1 or Single Sensor
DTC	P036600	Camshaft Position Sensor "B" Circuit Range/Performance(Bank1)

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check phaser solenoid valve, valve body bolt components state

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove intake/exhaust phaser solenoid valve; Check for blockage or dirty.
- (c) Remove intake/exhaust phaser valve body bolts; Check for blockage or dirt.

NG Clean or replace phaser solenoid valve and valve body bolts.

OK

2 Check engine maintenance condition

- (a) Check if engine oil level is normal, and check for oil leakage and oil seepage.
- (b) Remove valve trim cover, and check engine lubrication and cleaning conditions, and check for wear or sludge dirty

NG **Clean and maintain the engine, replace the damaged components.**

OK

3 Check valve mechanism timing

- (a) Check if valve mechanism timing is normal, and check timing chain for teeth skipping, misalignment, elongation, etc.
- (b) Check camshaft signal plate for misalignment, looseness, etc.

NG **Replace timing chain or camshaft assembly.**

OK

4 Check intake/exhaust phaser assembly

- (a) Check if operating condition of cam phase regulator is normal (dirt blocked, oil leaked, stuck, etc.).

NG **Replace intake/exhaust phaser assembly.**

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

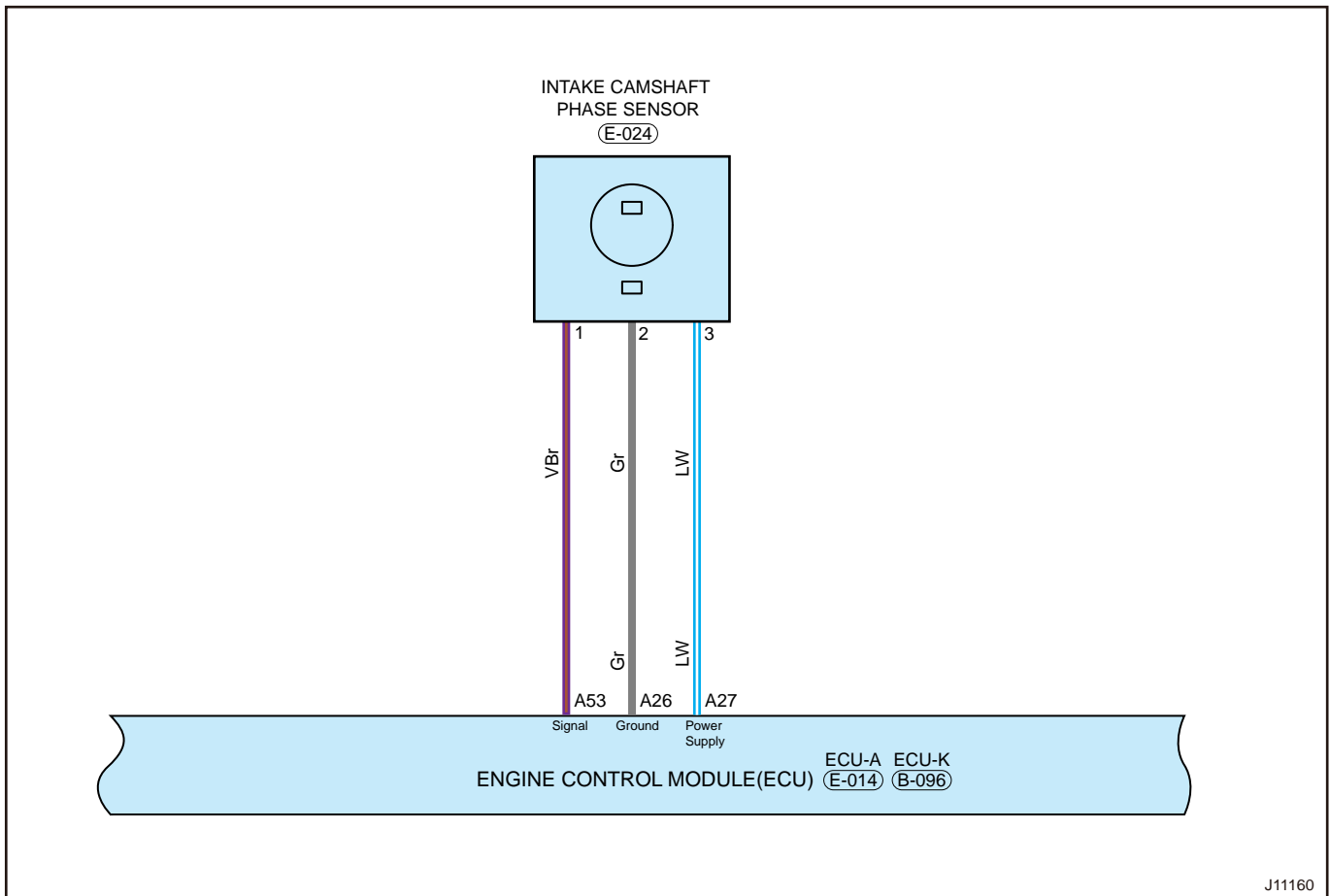
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

■ Intake Camshaft Phaser Signal Short to Ground/Power Supply

DTC	P034200	Camshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit Low Bank 1 or Single Sensor
DTC	P034300	Camshaft Position Sensor "A" Circuit High Bank 1 or Single Sensor

■ Description
Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check intake camshaft phaser sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if intake camshaft phaser sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

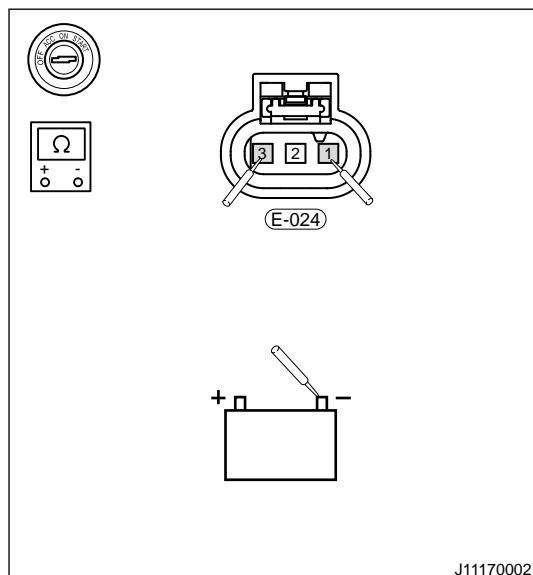
NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

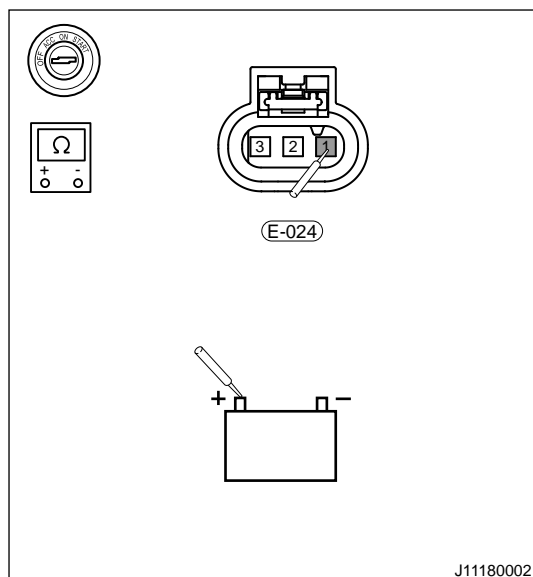
2

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in intake camshaft phaser sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect the intake camshaft phaser sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of intake camshaft phaser sensor E-024 (1, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure intake camshaft phaser sensor E-024 (1) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

Check and repair wire harness.

OK

3

Check intake camshaft phaser sensor circuit

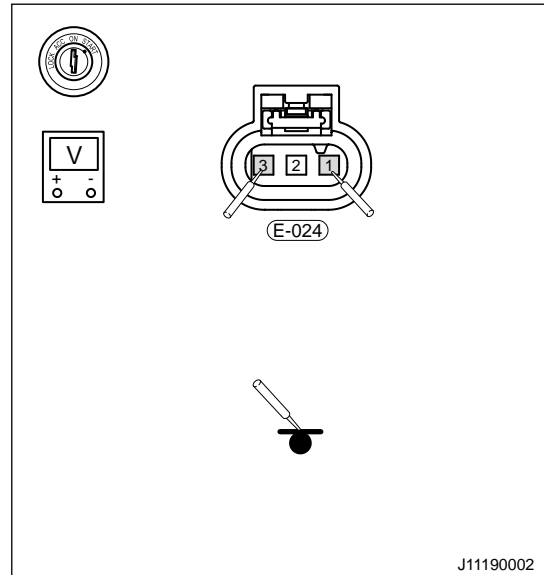
- (a) Connect the intake camshaft phaser sensor connector.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of intake camshaft phaser sensor E-024 (1, 3) with red probe respectively.

Power supply: 12 V

Ground: < 0.2 V

- (d) Using the LED test light, connect clip to battery negative terminal, measure intake camshaft phaser sensor E-024 (1) with another end.

Under normal conditions, test light should flash.



J11190002

NG Check wire harness or replace intake camshaft phaser sensor assembly.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

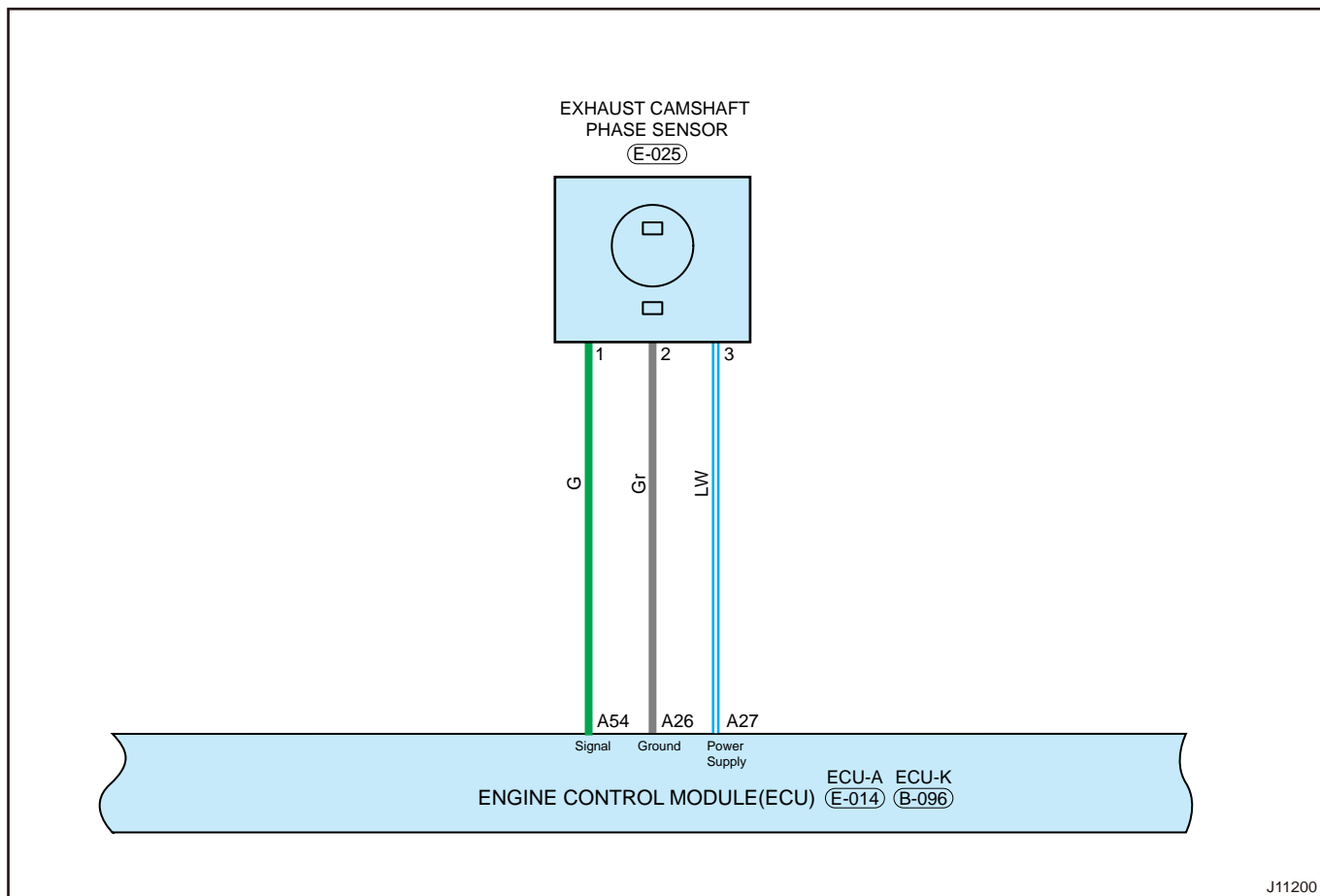
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Exhaust Camshaft Phaser Signal Circuit Voltage Low/High

DTC	P036700	Camshaft Position Sensor “B” Circuit Low (Bank1)
DTC	P036800	Camshaft Position Sensor “B” Circuit High (Bank1)

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check exhaust camshaft phaser sensor connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if exhaust camshaft phaser sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

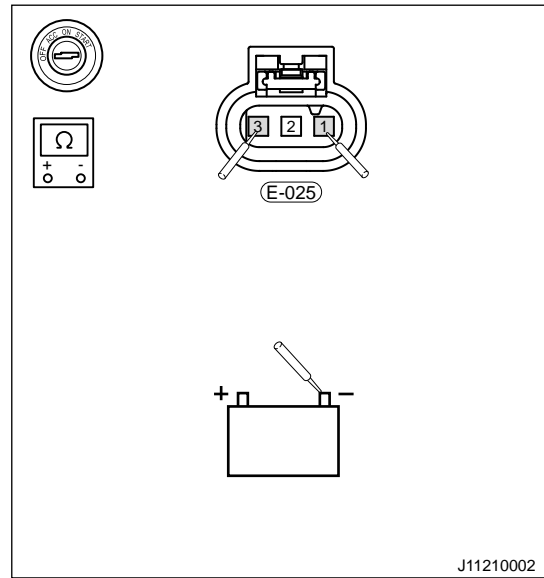
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

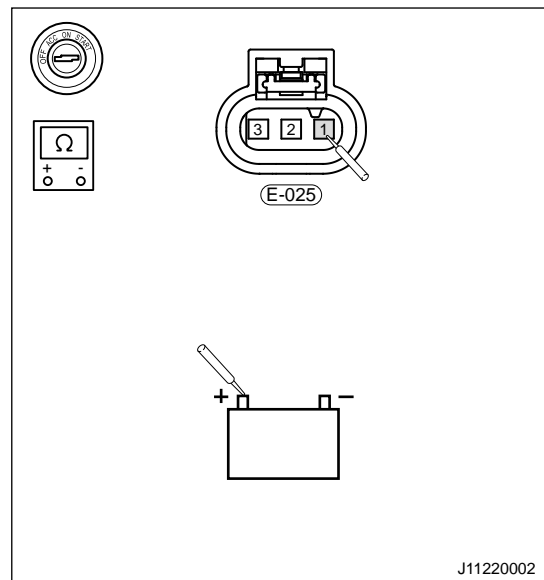
OK

2 | Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in exhaust camshaft phaser sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect the exhaust camshaft phaser sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of exhaust camshaft phaser sensor E-025 (1, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure exhaust camshaft phaser sensor E-025 (1) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Check and repair wire harness circuit.

OK

3 | Check exhaust camshaft phaser sensor circuit

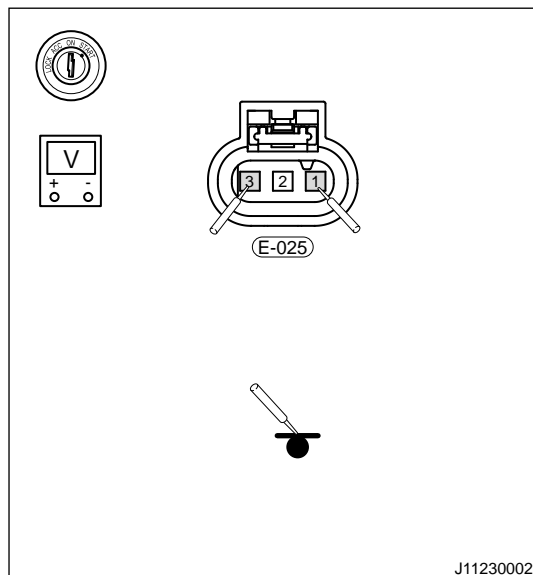
- (a) Connect the exhaust camshaft phaser sensor connector.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of exhaust camshaft phaser sensor E-025 (1, 3) with red probe respectively.

Power supply: 12 V

Ground: < 0.2 V

- (d) Using the LED test light, connect clip to battery negative terminal, measure exhaust camshaft phaser sensor E-025 (1) with another end.

Under normal conditions, test light should flash.



NG

Check wire harness or replace exhaust camshaft phaser sensor assembly.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Secondary Oil Pump Drive Circuit Open/Short to Ground/Power Supply

DTC	P06DC00	Engine Oil Pressure Control Circuit High
DTC	P06DB00	Engine Oil Pressure Control Circuit Low
DTC	P06DA00	Engine Oil Pressure Control Circuit Open

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check variable oil pump connector

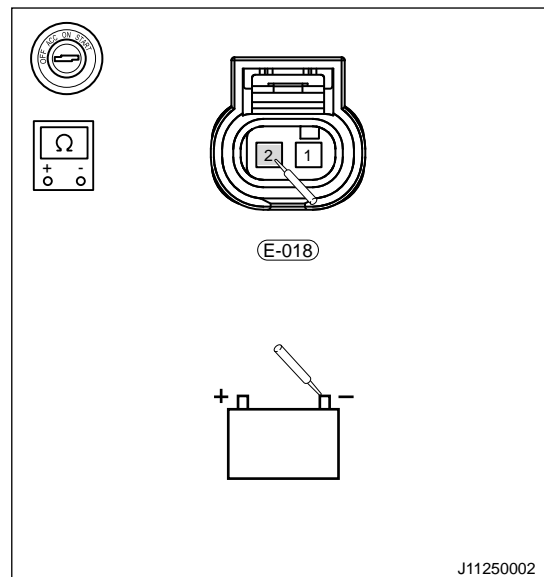
- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if variable oil pump connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

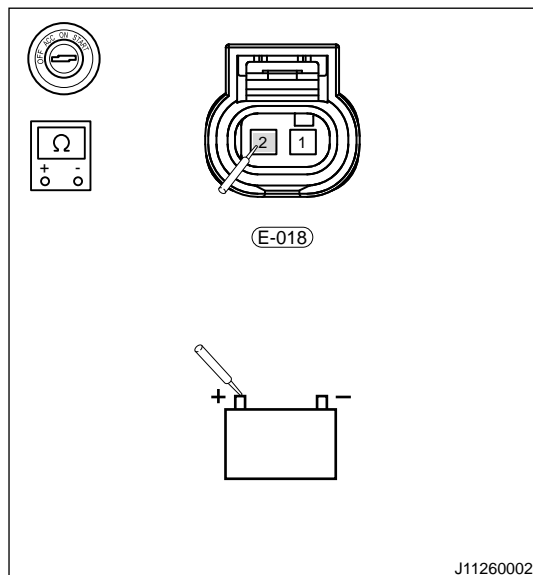
2 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in variable oil pump circuit

- (a) Disconnect the variable oil pump connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of variable oil pump E-018 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



J11250002

- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure variable oil pump E-018 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

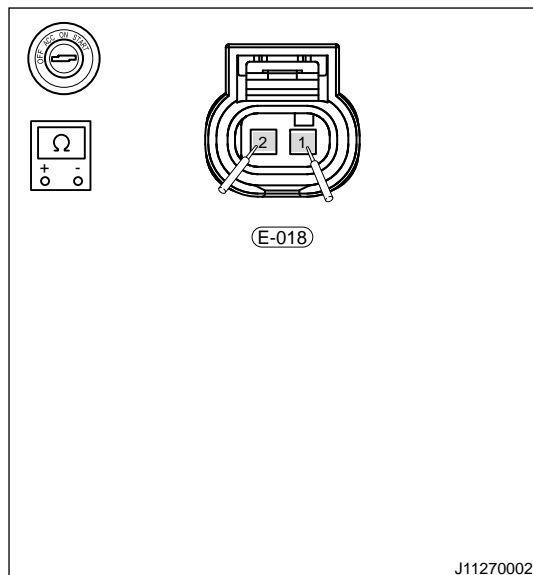
Check and repair control circuit.

OK

3

Check if circuits of variable oil pump themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of variable oil pump E-018 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace variable oil pump assembly.

OK

4

Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Catalyst System Efficiency Below Threshold Bank 1

DTC	P042000	Catalyst System Efficiency Below Threshold Bank 1
------------	----------------	--

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check pre-catalytic converter
----------	--------------------------------------

- (a) Check pre-catalytic converter for mechanical damage.
- (b) Check pre-catalytic converter for lead intoxication.

NG Replace pre-catalytic converter assembly.

OK

2	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.



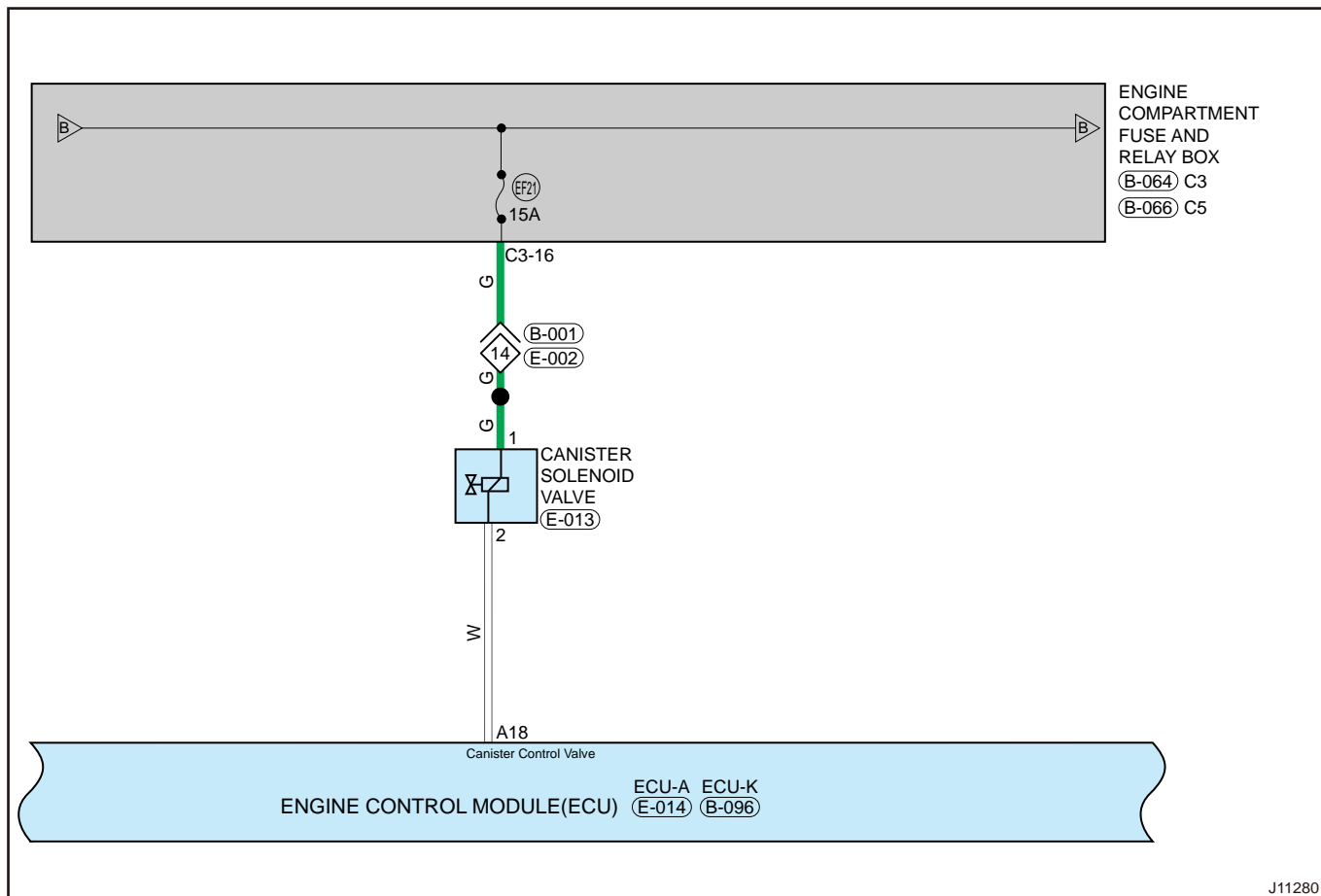
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Canister Control Valve Control Circuit Open/Low/High

DTC	P045900	Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve Circuit High
DTC	P045800	Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve Circuit Low
DTC	P044400	Evaporative Emission System Purge Control Valve Circuit Open

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J11280

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check canister solenoid valve connector
---	---

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if canister solenoid valve connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG **Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.**

OK

2 Check canister solenoid valve power supply fuse

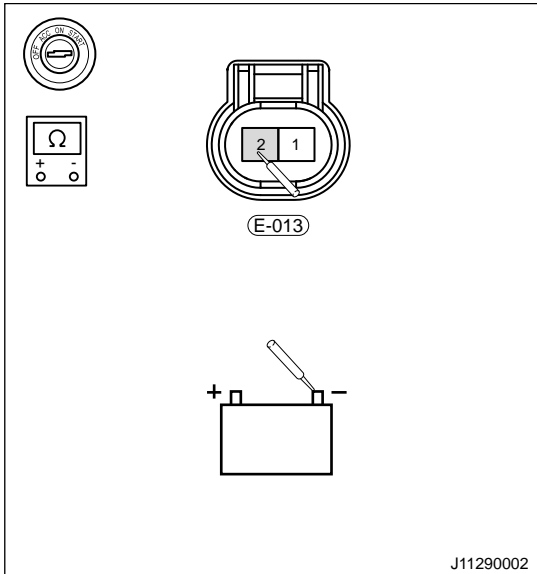
- (a) Check if engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF21 15A is damaged.

NG **Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.**

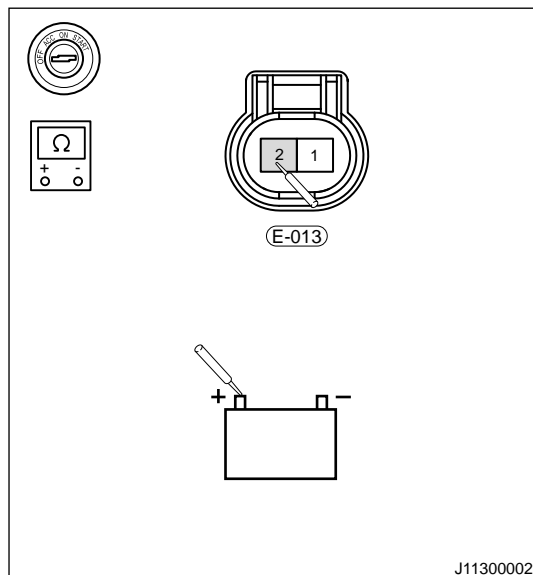
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in canister solenoid valve circuit

- (a) Disconnect the variable oil pump connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of canister solenoid valve E-013 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure canister solenoid valve E-013 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

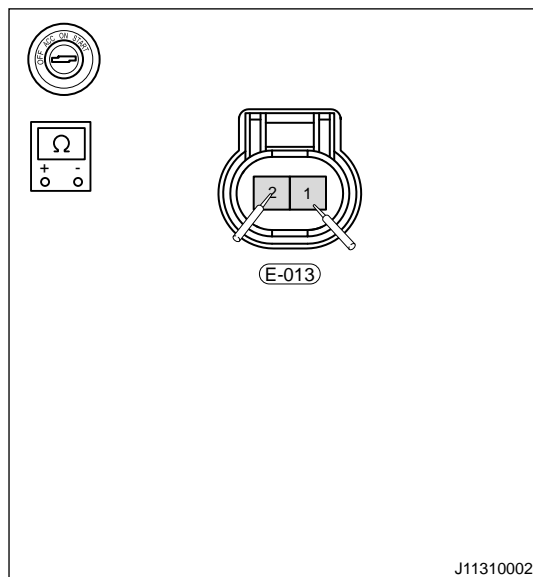
Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4

Check if circuits of canister solenoid valve themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of canister solenoid valve E-013 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace canister solenoid valve assembly.

OK

5

Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Idling Too High/Too Low

DTC	P050600	Idle Control System RPM - Lower Than Expected
DTC	P050A21	Cold Start Idle Control System Performance
DTC	P050700	Idle Control System RPM - Higher Than Expected
DTC	P050500	Idle Control System
DTC	P050A22	Cold Start Idle Control System Performance
DTC	P050D00	Cold Start Rough Idle

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check electronic throttle connector
----------	--

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if electronic throttle connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check electronic throttle condition

- (a) Check if electronic throttle is stuck.
(b) Check if electronic throttle is dirty.

NG**Clean or replace electronic throttle.****OK****3 Check intake manifold for air leakage**

- (a) Check intake manifold or connecting lines for air leakage.

NG**Replace parts related to air leakage.****OK****4 Check if fuel pressure too low**

- (a) Check if low/high pressure fuel pressure is too low.

NG**Replace parts that cause low fuel pressure****OK****5 Check injector for blockage**

- (a) Check fuel injector for blockage or leakage.

NG**Clean or replace fuel injector assembly.****OK****6 Check if exhaust back pressure is too high**

- (a) Check pre-catalytic converter for blockage.
(b) Check GPF converter for blockage.

NG**Replace blocked parts or perform regeneration function.**

OK

7 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Battery Voltage Low Malfunction

DTC	P056200	System Voltage Low
------------	----------------	---------------------------

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check battery voltage

- (a) Check that battery voltage should not be lower than 12 V.

NG

It is necessary to recharge or replace the battery assembly.

OK

2 Check generating capacity of alternator

- (a) Check if generating capacity of alternator is normal.

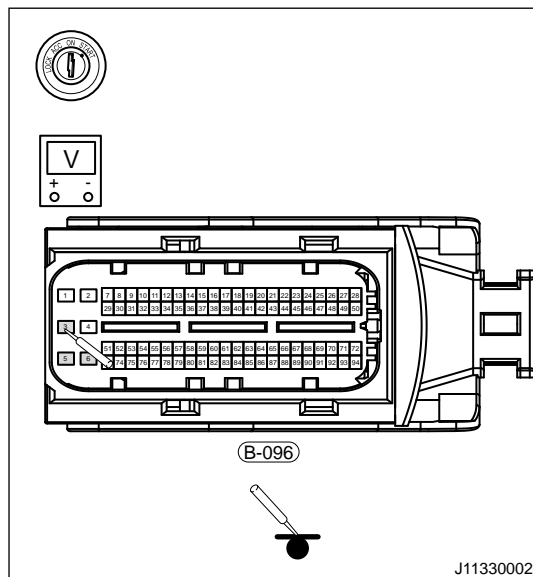
NG

Replace alternator assembly.

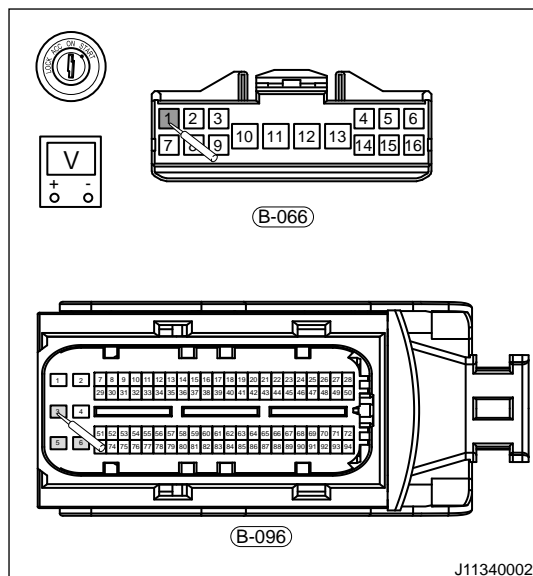
OK

3 Check ECM power supply circuit

- (a) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (b) Short the main relay switch side with wire harness.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of ECM B-096 (3, 5, 6) with red probe respectively.
- (d) Or use test light to measure ECM B-096 (3, 5, 6); Test light should be bright.



- (e) Connect the ECM (B-096) connector.
- (f) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to engine compartment fuse and relay box B-066 (1), measure ECM B-096 (3, 5, 6) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit voltage drop value is too large.



NG Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ System Battery Voltage High

DTC	P056300	System Battery Voltage High
------------	----------------	------------------------------------

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check generating capacity of alternator

- (a) Check if generating capacity of alternator is normal.

NG

Replace alternator assembly.

OK

2 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Starter Relay Control Terminal Circuit Low/High

DTC	P061500	Starter Relay "A" Circuit
DTC	P061600	Starter Relay "A" Circuit Low
DTC	P061700	Starter Relay "A" Circuit High

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Check starter relay coil terminal power supply fuse

- (a) Check if engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF23 5A is blown.

NG

Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

OK

2

Check starter relay

- (a) Replace starter relay.

NG

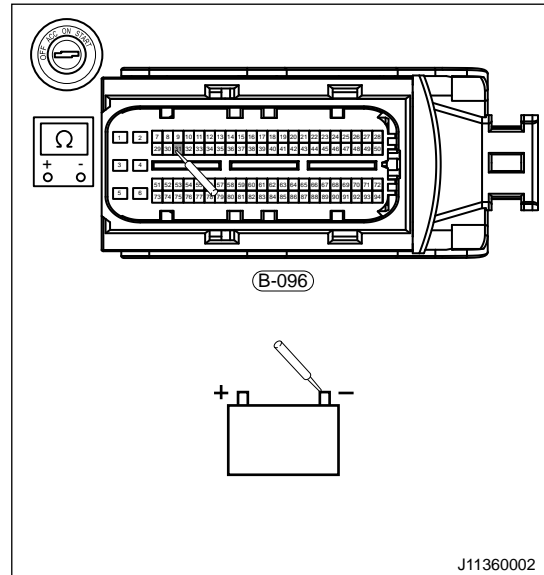
Replace starter relay.

OK

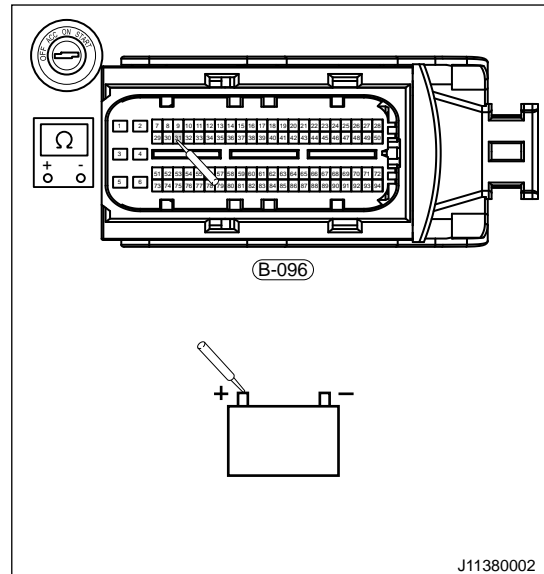
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in ECM control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the engine compartment fuse and relay box connector (B-065).
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of ECM B-096 (31) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure ECM B-096 (31) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

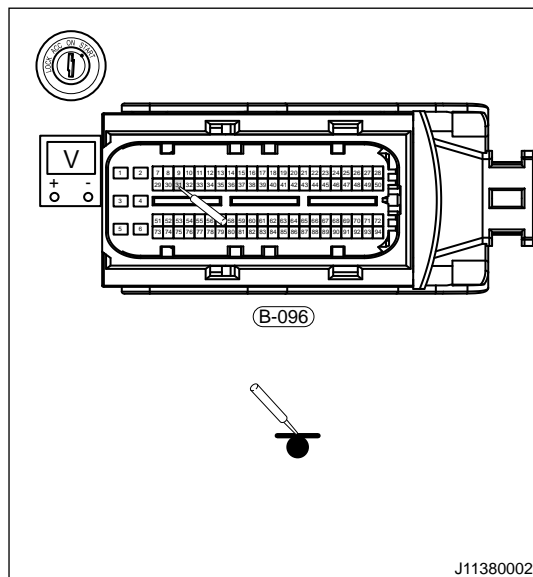


NG Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4 Check ECM control circuit

- (a) Connect the engine compartment fuse and relay box connector (B-065).
- (b) Short the main relay switch side with wire harness.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of ECM B-096 (31) with red probe respectively.
- (d) Or use test light to measure ECM B-096 (31); Test light should be bright.



NG Check and repair control circuit.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

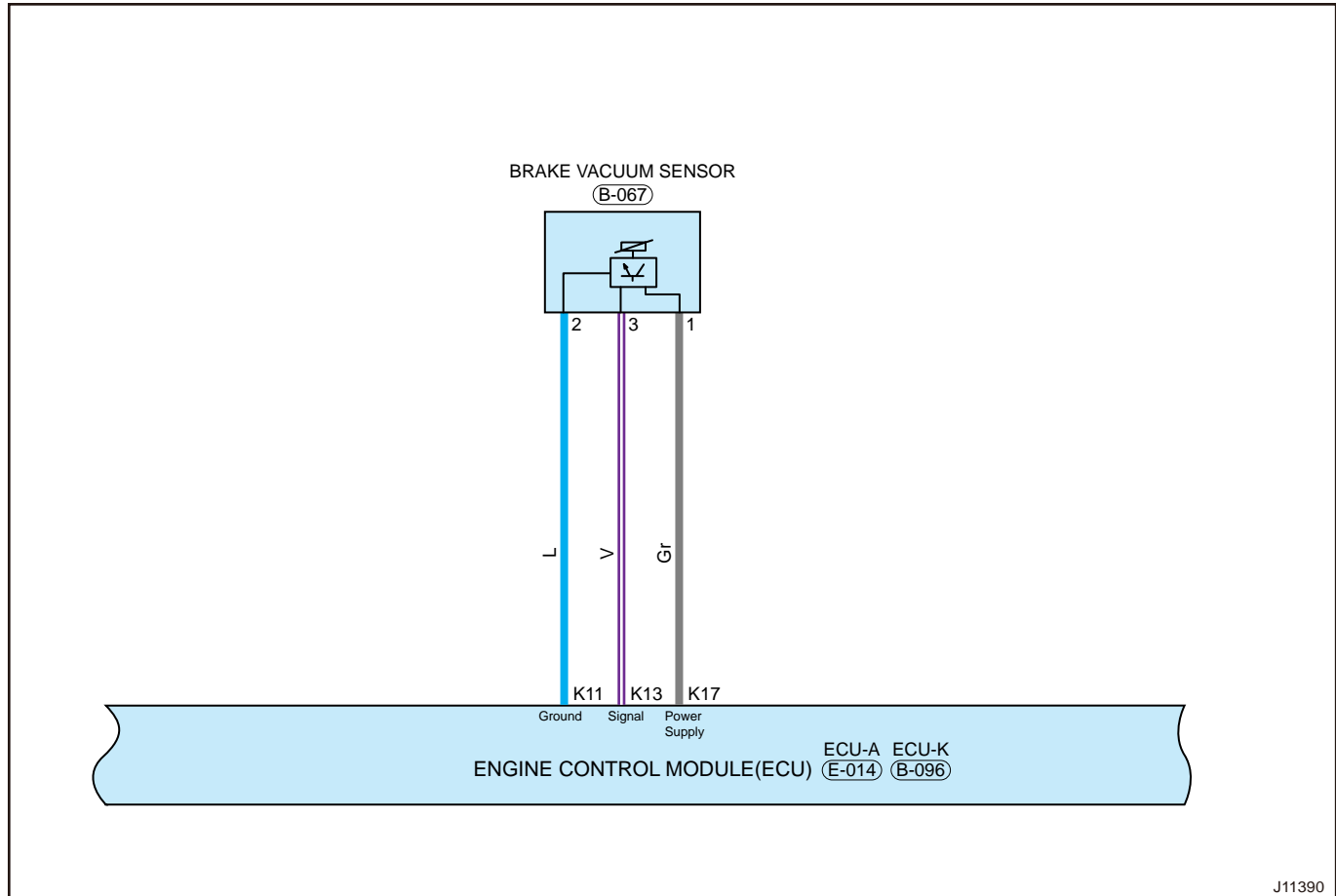
■ Brake Chamber Vacuum Pressure Sensor Voltage High/Low

DTC	P055800	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit High
DTC	P055700	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit Low

DTC	P145000	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance (High)
DTC	P145100	Brake Booster Pressure Sensor Circuit Range/Performance (Low)

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check vacuum pressure sensor connector
----------	---

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if vacuum pressure sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG	Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
-----------	--

OK

2 Check brake vacuum booster system for damage or air leakage

- (a) Check brake vacuum booster system each line for damage, or connecting pipe port for air leakage, vacuum pump for abnormal operation, etc.

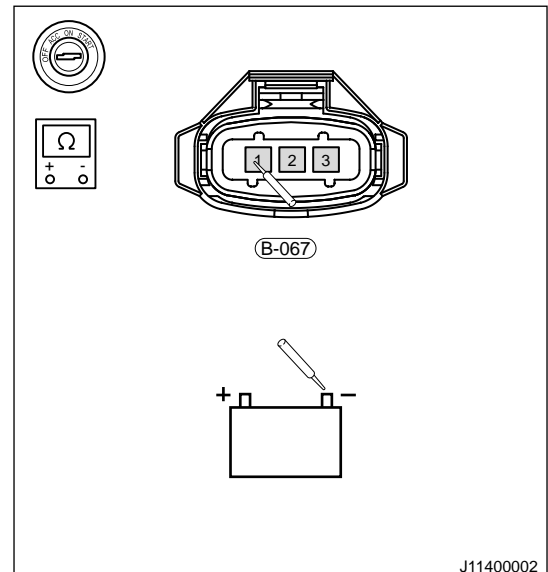
NG

Repair or replace the damaged parts related to brake booster system.

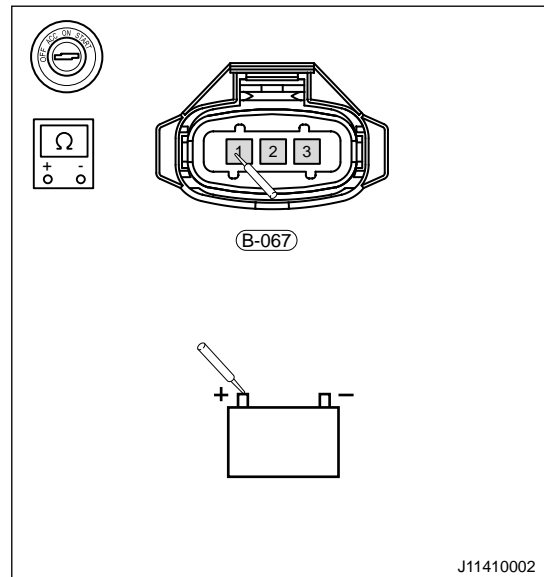
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in vacuum pressure sensor

- (a) Disconnect the vacuum pressure sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of vacuum pressure sensor B-067 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of vacuum pressure sensor B-067 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Check and repair wire harness.

OK

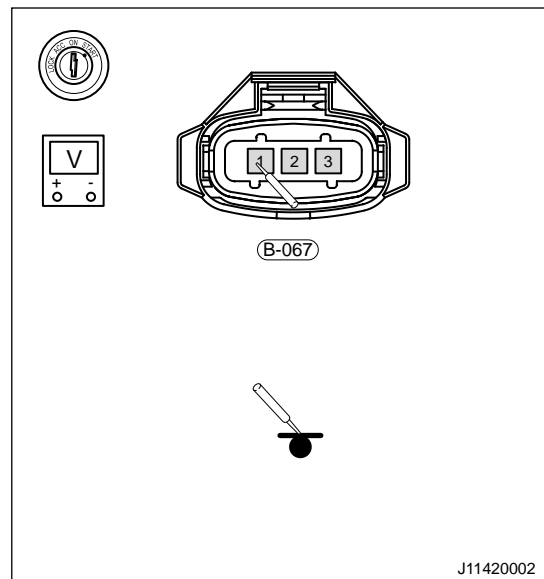
4 Check vacuum pressure sensor voltage signal

- (a) Connect vacuum pressure sensor and ECM connectors.
- (b) Ignition switch ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of vacuum pressure sensor B-067 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively.

Power supply: 5 V

Ground: < 0.2 V

Depress brake pedal consecutively; Signal voltage should vary in accordance with pressure.



NG Check and repair wire harness, or replace vacuum pressure sensor.

OK

5 Check vacuum pressure sensor itself

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistance between vacuum pressure sensor (1, 3), and resistance between (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively. Check if internal circuits are shorted to each other.

Resistance at ambient temperature: 1 K Ω ~ 2 K Ω

NG

Replace vacuum pressure sensor assembly.

OK

6 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

7 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

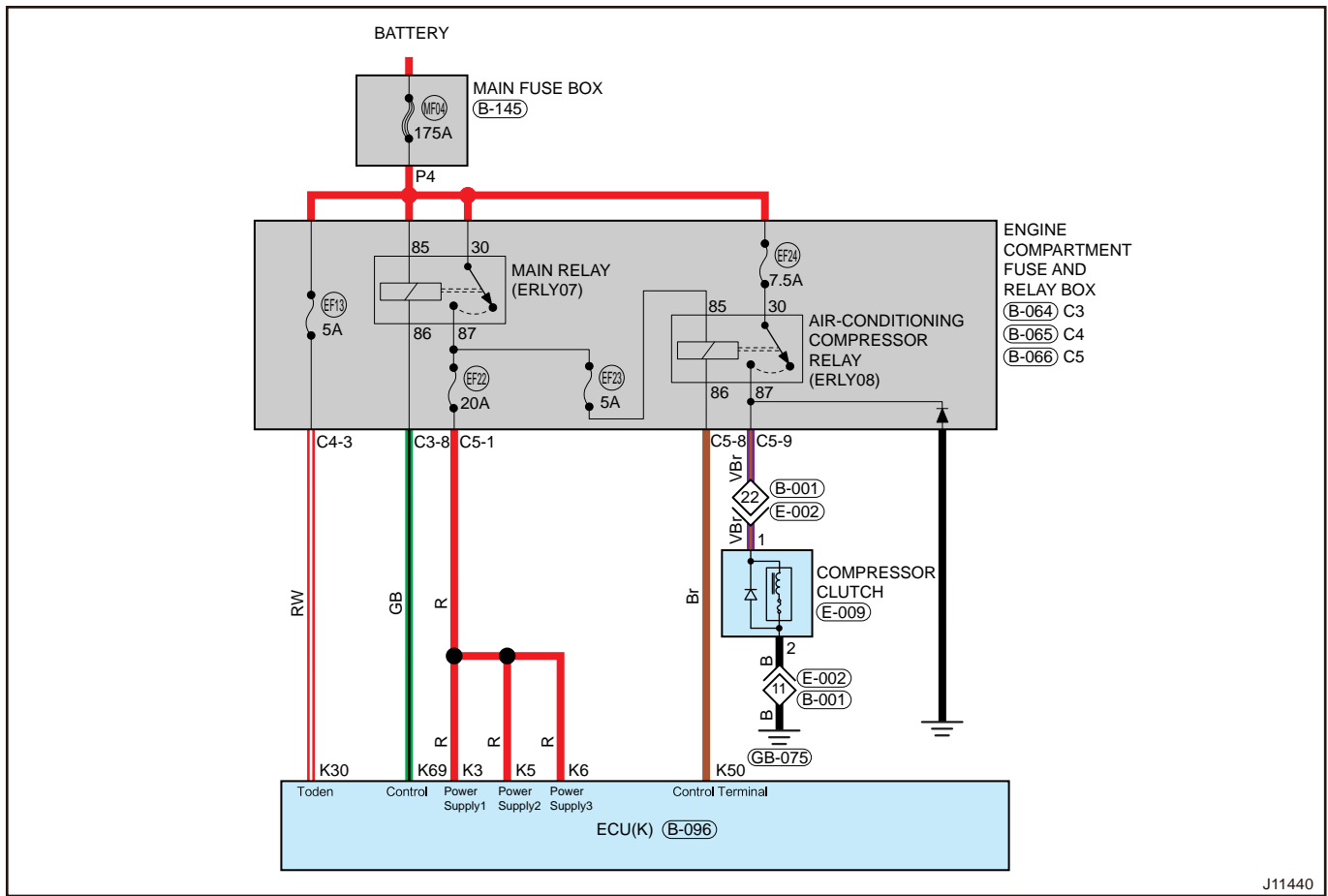
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **A/C Compressor Circuit Voltage Too Low/Too High**

DTC	P064500	A/C Clutch Relay Control Circuit
DTC	P064700	A/C Clutch Relay Control Circuit High
DTC	P064600	A/C Clutch Relay Control Circuit Low

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



J11440

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check A/C compressor relay coil terminal power supply fuse

(a) Check if engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF23 5A is blown.

NG Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

OK

2 Check A/C compressor relay

(a) Replace A/C compressor relay.

NG

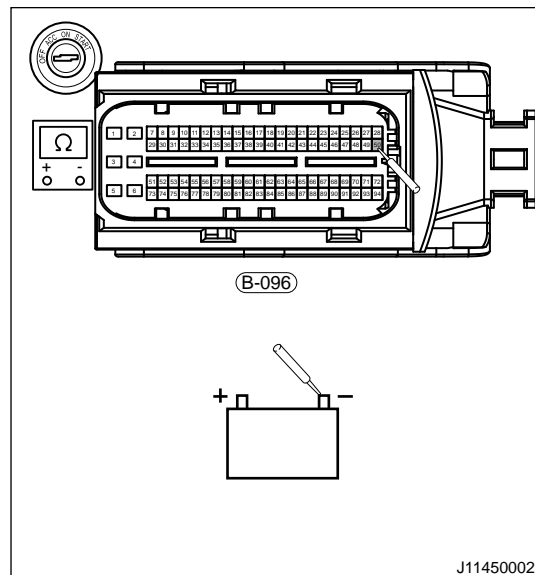
Replace A/C compressor relay.

OK

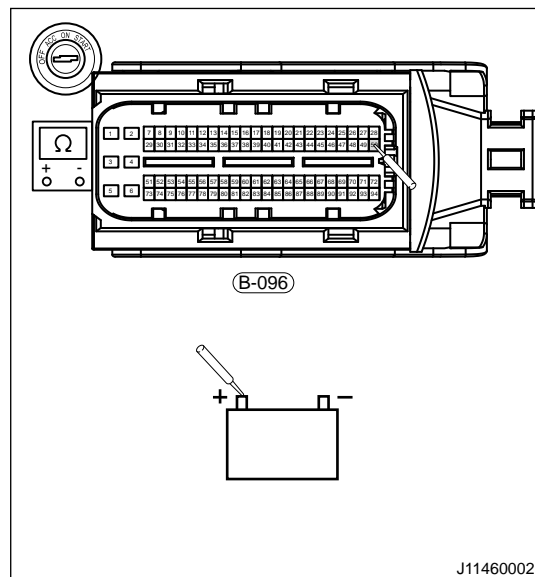
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in ECM control circuit

- (a) Unplug the A/C compressor relay.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of ECM B-096 (50) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure ECM B-096 (50) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

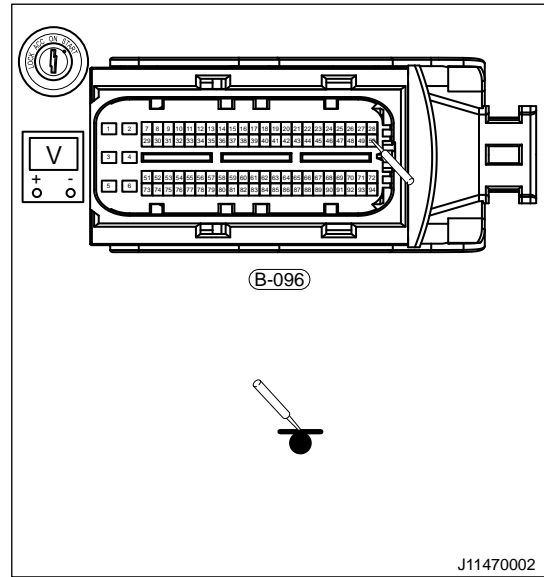
Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4

Check ECM control circuit

- (a) Connect A/C compressor relay.
- (b) Short the main relay switch side with wire harness.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of ECM B-096 (50) with red probe respectively.
- (d) Or use test light to measure ECM B-096 (50); Test light should be bright.



NG Check and repair control circuit.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

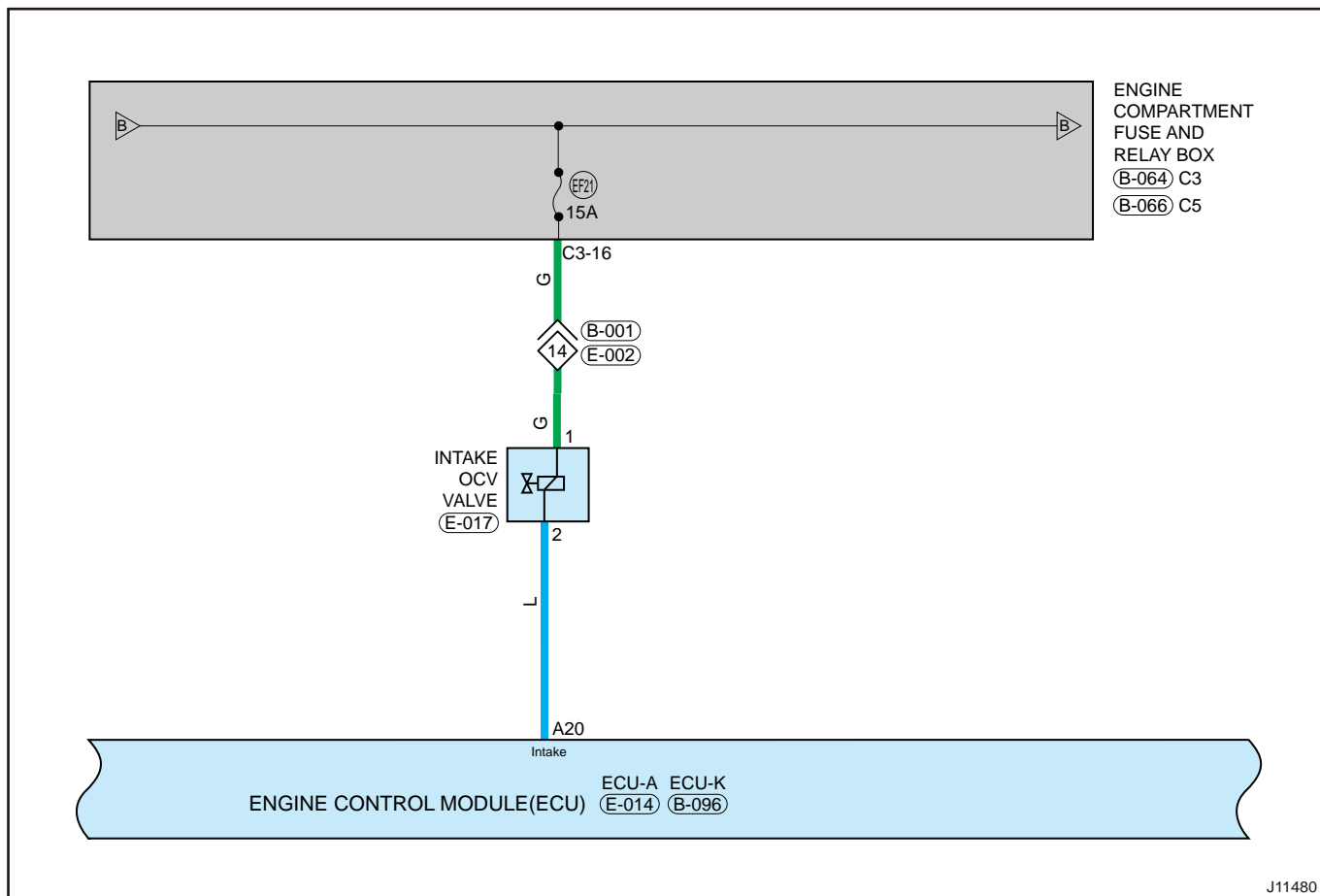
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Intake VVT Control Circuit Voltage Too Low/Too High

DTC	P208800	"A" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Low Bank 1
DTC	P208900	"A" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit High Bank 1

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check intake phaser solenoid valve connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if intake phaser solenoid valve connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check intake phaser solenoid valve power supply fuse

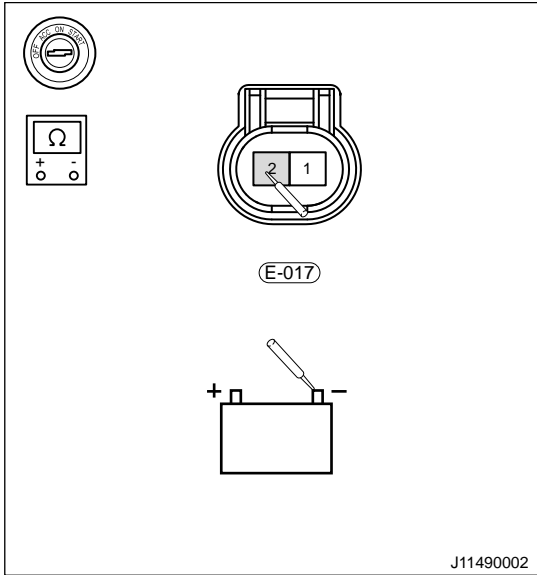
- (a) Check if engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF21 15A is blown.

NG Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

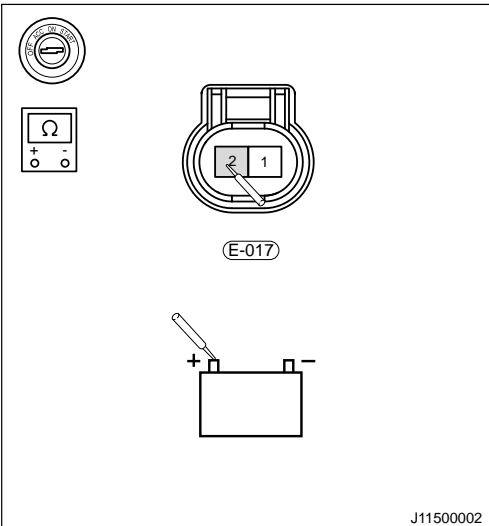
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in intake phaser solenoid valve circuit

- (a) Disconnect the intake phaser solenoid valve connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistance of intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

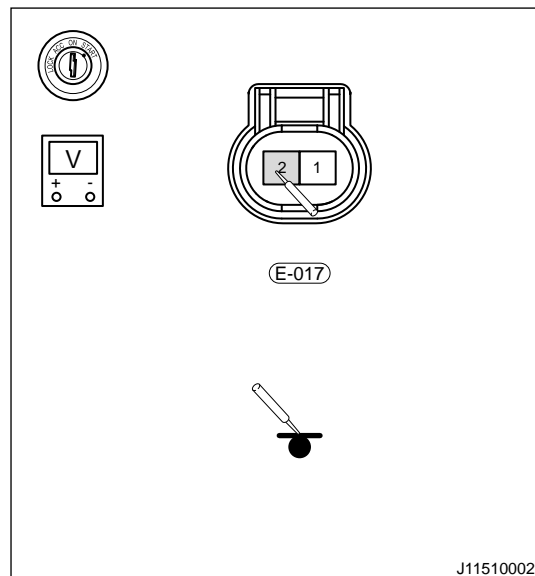


NG Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4 Check intake phaser solenoid valve control circuit

- (a) Connect the intake phaser solenoid valve connector.
- (b) Turn the ignition switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (2) with red probe.
- (d) Or use test light to measure intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (2); Test light should be bright.



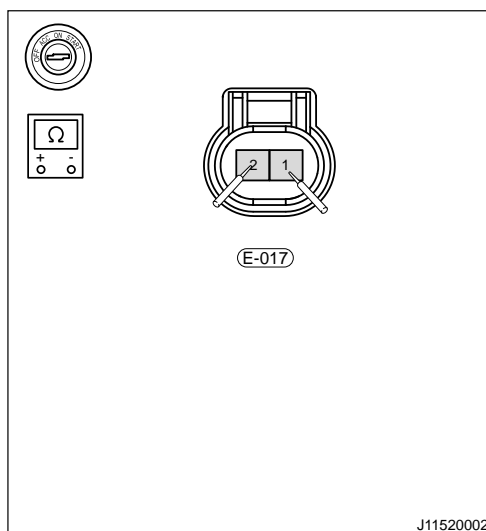
NG

Check and repair control circuit.

OK

5 Check if circuits of intake phaser solenoid valve themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of intake phaser solenoid valve E-017 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace intake phaser solenoid valve assembly.

OK

6 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK **Repair or replace new module.**

NG

7 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

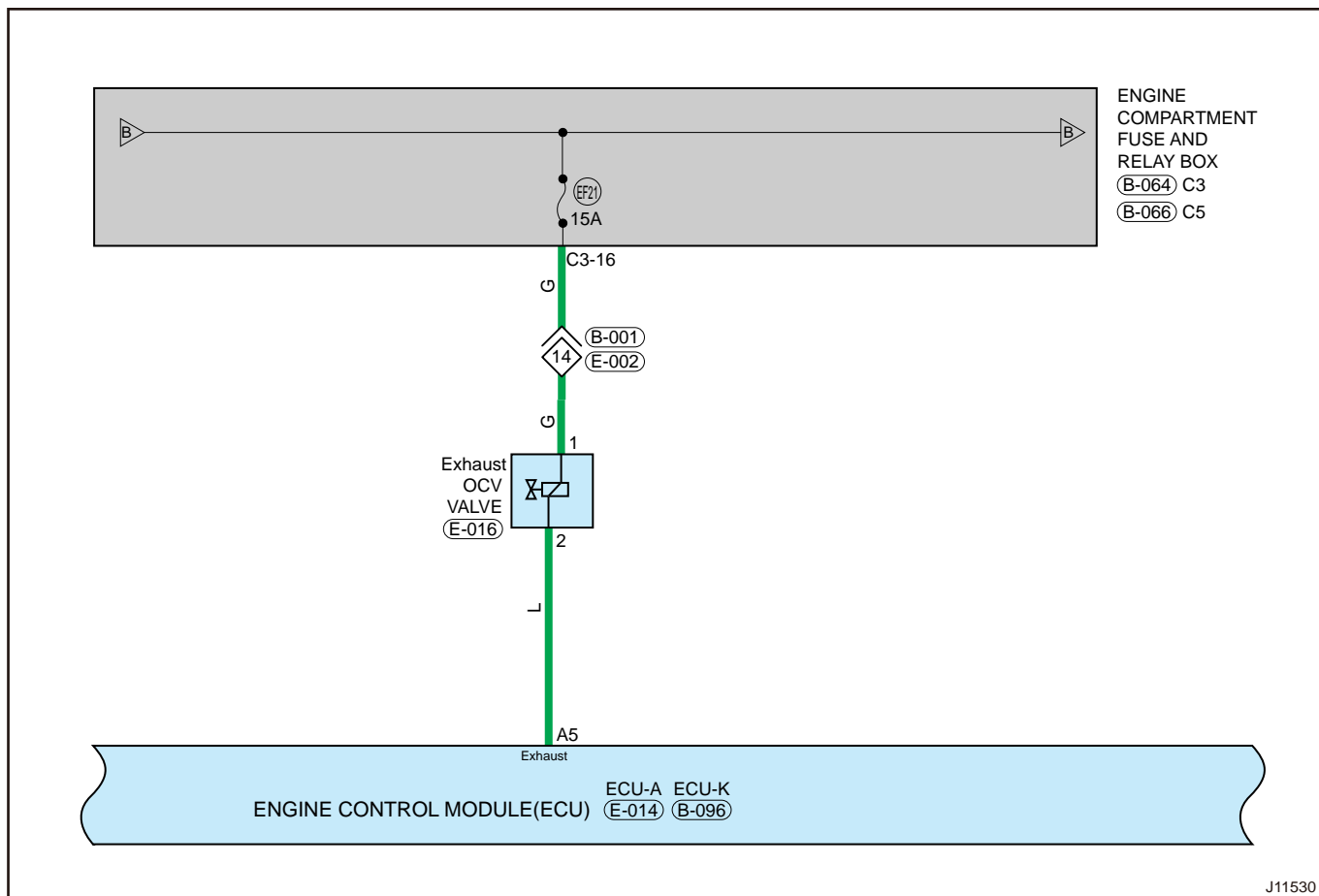
OK **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

■ Exhaust VVT Control Circuit Voltage Too Low/Too High

DTC	P209000	"B" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit Low Bank 1
DTC	P209100	"B" Camshaft Position Actuator Control Circuit High Bank 1

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check exhaust phaser solenoid valve connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if exhaust phaser solenoid valve connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check exhaust phaser solenoid valve power supply fuse

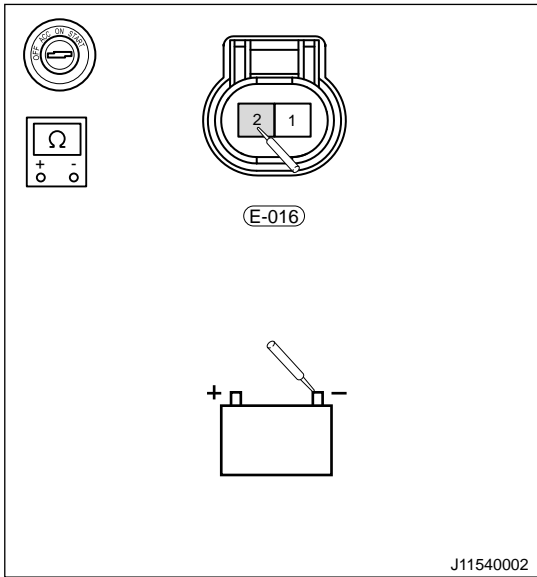
- (a) Check if engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF21 15A is blown.

NG Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

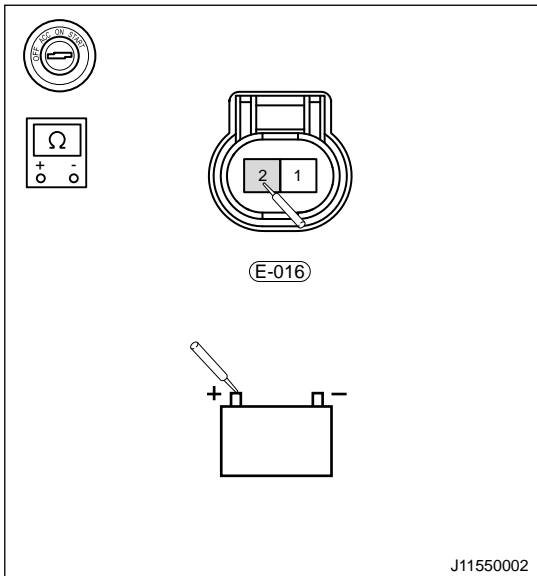
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in exhaust phaser solenoid valve circuit

- (a) Disconnect the exhaust phaser solenoid valve connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistance of exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

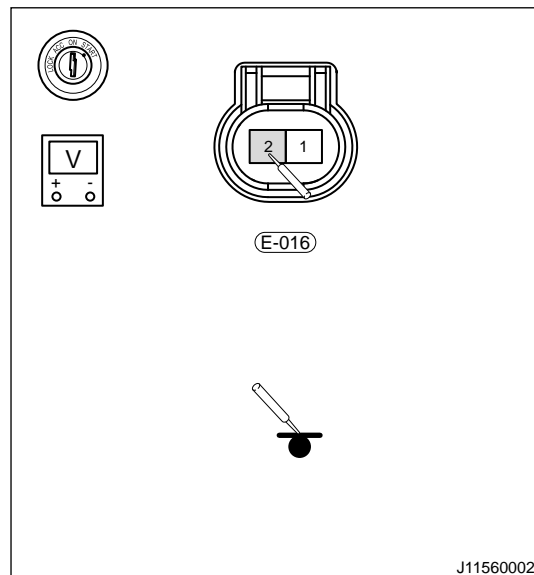


NG Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4 Check exhaust phaser solenoid valve control circuit

- (a) Connect exhaust phaser solenoid valve connector.
- (b) Turn the ignition switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (2) with red probe.
- (d) Or use test light to measure exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (2); Test light should be bright.



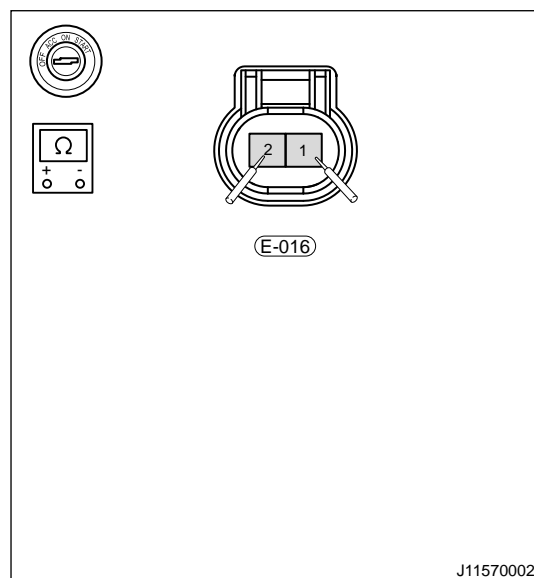
NG

Check and repair control circuit.

OK

5 Check if circuits of exhaust phaser solenoid valve themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of exhaust phaser solenoid valve E-016 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace exhaust phaser solenoid valve assembly.

OK

6 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK **Repair or replace new module.**

NG

7 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

■ Air-fuel Ratio Closed Loop Control Correction

DTC	P217700	System Too Lean Off Idle Bank 1
DTC	P217800	System Too Rich Off Idle Bank 1
DTC	P218700	System Too Lean at Idle Bank 1
DTC	P218800	System Too Lean at Idle Bank 1
DTC	P219500	O2 Sensor Signal Biased/Stuck Lean Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P219600	O2 Sensor Signal Biased/Stuck Rich Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P241400	Upstream Oxygen Sensor Output Voltage Improper
DTC	P209700	Closed Loop Correction Value Based on Downstream Over Threshold - Rich
DTC	P209600	Closed Loop Correction Value Based on Downstream Over Threshold - Lean

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check upstream oxygen sensor
----------	-------------------------------------

- (a) Depress the accelerator pedal sharply under idling condition, oxygen pump control voltage of oxygen sensor should be lower than 2.5 V at this time.
- (b) Oxygen pump control voltage of oxygen sensor should be higher than 2.5 V when releasing the accelerator pedal quickly.

NG

Replace upstream oxygen sensor assembly.

OK

2	Check intake pressure/temperature sensor
----------	---

- (a) Check intake pressure/temperature sensor (pressure signal).

Under idling state: Approximately 1 V

When the vehicle accelerates rapidly, voltage can instantly reach 4 V, and then drop to approximately 1.7 V

NG

Replace intake pressure/temperature sensor.

OK

3	Check fuel system
----------	--------------------------

- (a) Check if low/high pressure fuel pressure is within the proper range.
- (b) Check if fuel injector is dirty.

NG

Replace fuel system damaged parts or clean fuel injector.

OK

4	Check intake system
----------	----------------------------

- (a) Check intake manifold, etc. to determine each line for air leakage.

NG

Replace the leaked or damaged parts.



5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.



Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Downstream Oxygen Sensor Deteriorated

DTC	P227000	O2 Sensor Signal Biased&Stuck Lean Bank 1 Sensor 2
DTC	P227100	O2 Sensor Signal Biased&Stuck Rich Bank 1 Sensor 2
DTC	P013A00	O2 Sensor Slow Response - Rich to Lean Bank 1 Sensor 2

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check downstream oxygen sensor

- (a) Check if downstream oxygen sensor heating resistance is normal.

Resistance at ambient temperature: 7 ~ 11 Ω

- (b) Check if downstream oxygen sensor signal voltage is normal.

It is normal when signal voltage fluctuates slightly from 0.55 to 0.65 V



Replace downstream oxygen sensor assembly.



2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Turbocharger Boost Pressure Too High

DTC	P023400	Turbocharger/Supercharger Overboost Condition
------------	----------------	--

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check turbocharger relief valve

- (a) Check turbocharger relief valve connector for looseness or poor contact.
 (b) Check if turbocharger relief valve stuck.

NG

Replace turbocharger relief valve assembly.

OK

2 Check exhaust gas by-pass valve

- (a) Pull exhaust gas by-pass valve pulling rod with hand to check that it can move smoothly and there is no stuck.

NG

Replace turbocharger assembly.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.



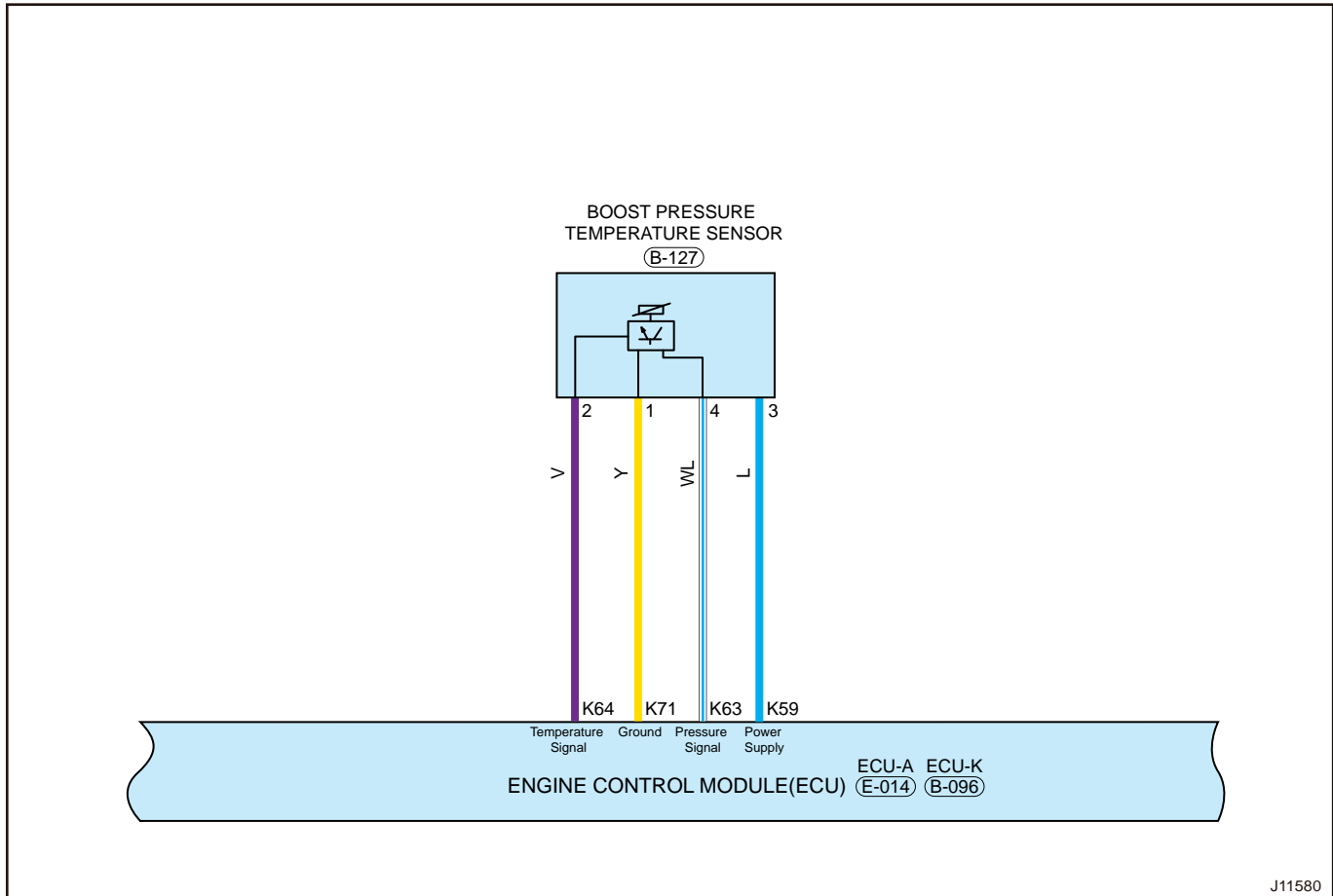
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Turbocharger Pressure Sensor Short to Ground/Power Supply

DTC	P023700	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit Low
DTC	P023800	Turbocharger/Supercharger Boost Sensor "A" Circuit High

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check boost pressure/temperature sensor connector
---	--

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if boost pressure/temperature sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

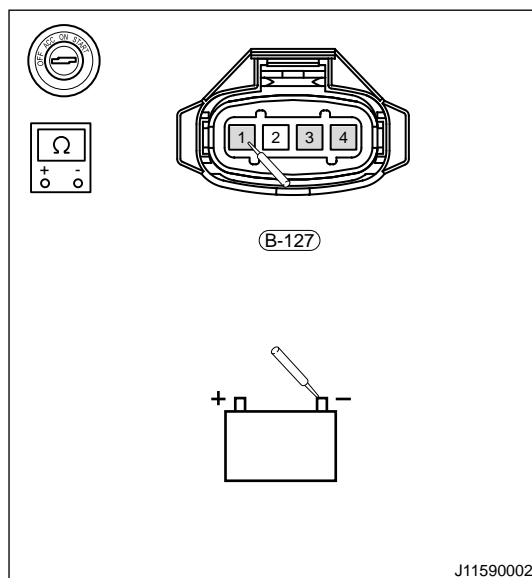
Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

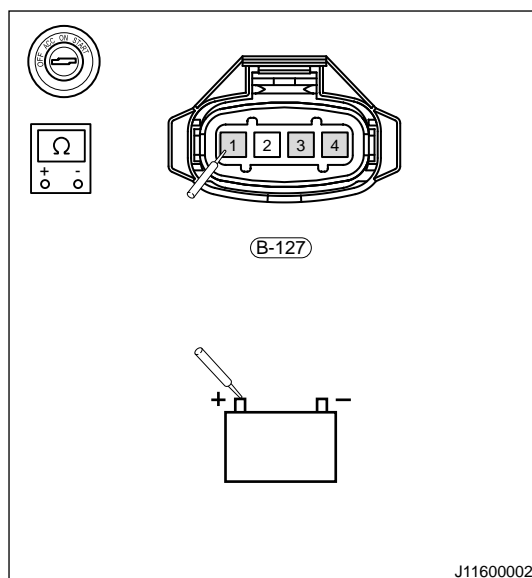
2

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in boost pressure/temperature sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect the boost pressure/temperature sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of boost pressure/temperature sensor B-127 (1, 3, 4) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of boost pressure/temperature sensor B-127 (1, 3, 4) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



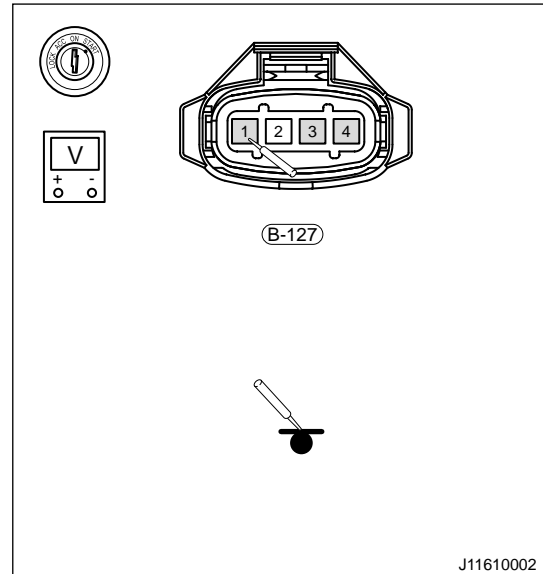
NG

Check and repair control circuit.

OK

3 Check boost pressure/temperature sensor control circuit

- (a) Connect boost pressure/temperature sensor connector.
 (b) Turn the ignition switch to ON.
 (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of boost pressure/temperature sensor B-127 (1, 3, 4) with red probe respectively.

Power supply terminal: 5 V**Ground terminal: < 0.2 V****Signal voltage varies in accordance with turbocharger line pressure**

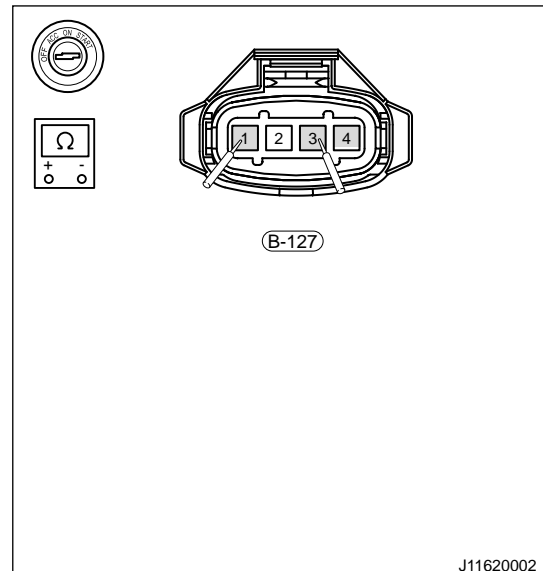
NG

Check and repair control circuit, or replace boost pressure/temperature sensor.

OK

4 Check if circuits of boost pressure/temperature sensor themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of boost pressure/temperature sensor B-127 (1, 3, 4) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace boost pressure/temperature sensor assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Turbocharger Boost Pressure Too Low

DTC	P029900	Turbocharger/Supercharger "A" Underboost Condition
------------	----------------	---

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check air filter

- (a) Check if air filter is dirty, blocked, etc.

NG

Replace the air filter assembly.

OK

2 Check each connecting line of turbocharger

- (a) Check each connecting line of turbocharger for falling off, damage or air leakage, etc.

NG Replace the damaged line.

OK

3 Check exhaust gas by-pass valve

- (a) Pull exhaust gas by-pass valve pulling rod with hand, there should be no stuck.

NG Replace turbocharger assembly.

OK

4 Check relief solenoid valve

- (a) Check that relief solenoid valve connector is not loose or does not fall off.
- (b) Check if relief solenoid valve is stuck at normally open position.

NG Replace relief solenoid valve assembly.

OK

5 Check turbocharger

- (a) Check operation parts such as turbine, impeller for damage or blade missing.

NG Replace turbocharger assembly.

OK

6 Check if exhaust back pressure is too high

- (a) Check pre-catalytic converter for blockage.
- (b) Check GPF particulate filter for blockage.

NG

Replace pre-catalytic converter assembly or perform GPF regeneration.

OK

7

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Turbocharger/Supercharger Bypass Valve "A" - Mechanical**

DTC	P226100	Turbocharger/Supercharger Bypass Valve - Mechanical
------------	----------------	--

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Check relief solenoid valve

- (a) Check that relief solenoid valve connector is not loose or does not fall off.
- (b) Check if relief solenoid valve is not stuck.

NG

Replace relief solenoid valve assembly.

OK

2

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

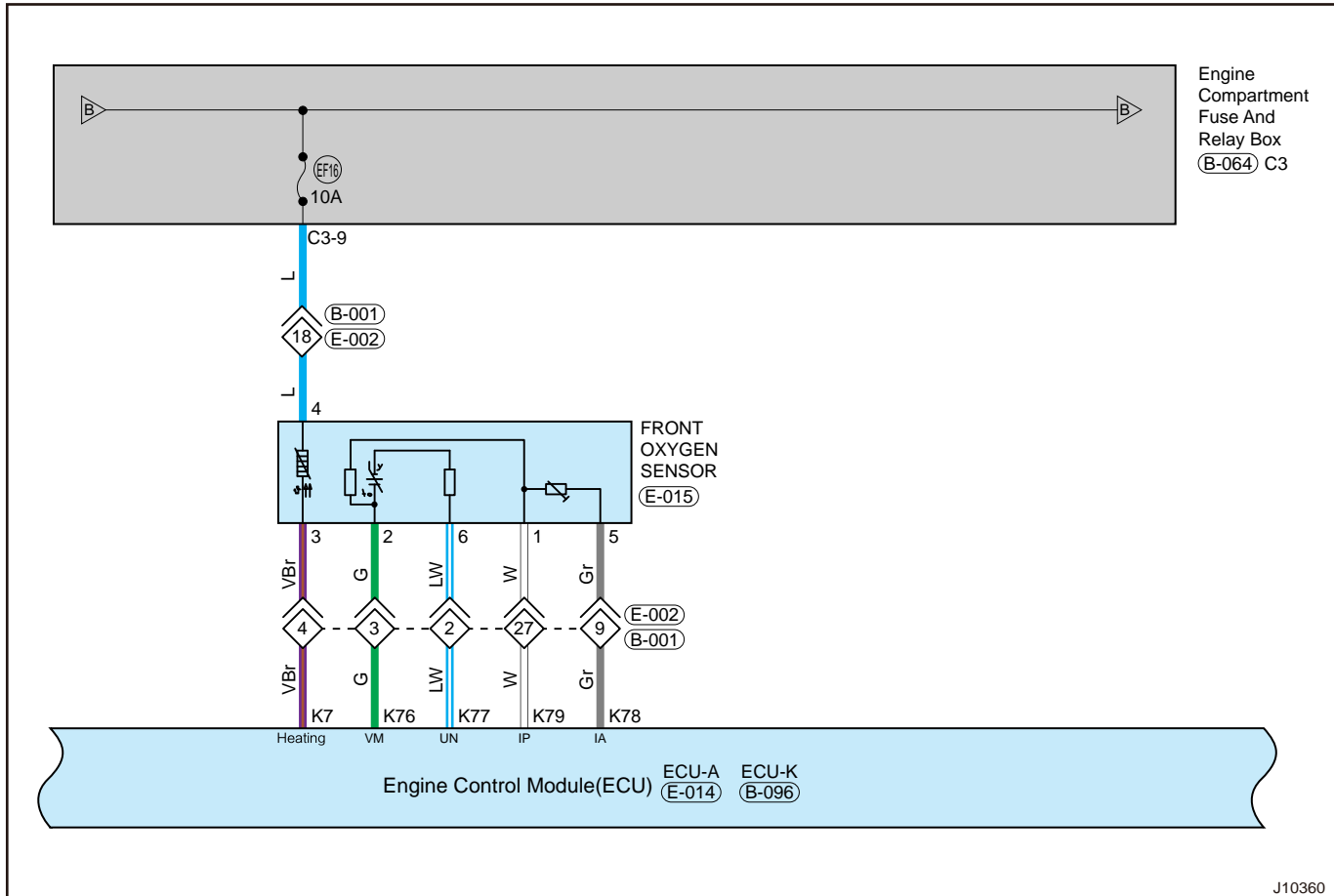
OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Upstream Oxygen Sensor RE Line, IPE Line Open

DTC	P224300	O2 Sensor Reference Voltage Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P225100	O2 Sensor Negative Current Control Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P013000	O2 Sensor Circuit Bank 1 Sensor 1
DTC	P223700	O2 Sensor Positive Current Control Circuit Open Bank 1 Sensor 1

■ Description
Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check upstream oxygen sensor connector
----------	---

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if upstream oxygen sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

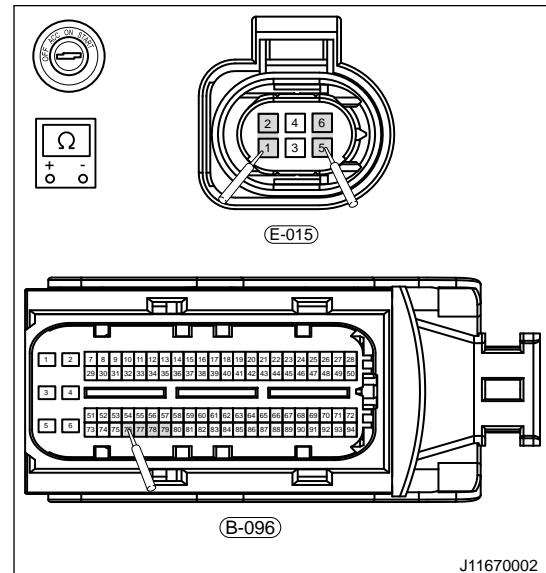
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check upstream oxygen sensor circuit for open

- (a) Disconnect the upstream oxygen sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to ECM B-096 (79, 76, 78, 77), measure resistances of upstream oxygen sensor E-015 (1, 2, 5, 6) with red probe respectively. Check the circuit for open.



NG

Check and repair control circuit.

OK

3 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Network Malfunction

DTC	U015187	Lost Communication With ABM
DTC	U016487	Lost Communication With CLM
DTC	U015587	Lost Communication With ICM
DTC	U021487	Lost Communication With PEPS
DTC	U186887	Lost Communication With MFS
DTC	U007388	Control Module Communication Bus "A" Off
DTC	U010187	Lost Communication With TCM
DTC	U010387	Lost Communication With EGS
DTC	U012287	Lost Communication With ESP Module
DTC	U012887	Lost Communication With EPB
DTC	U014087	Lost Communication With BCM
DTC	U021287	Lost Communication With Steering Column

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

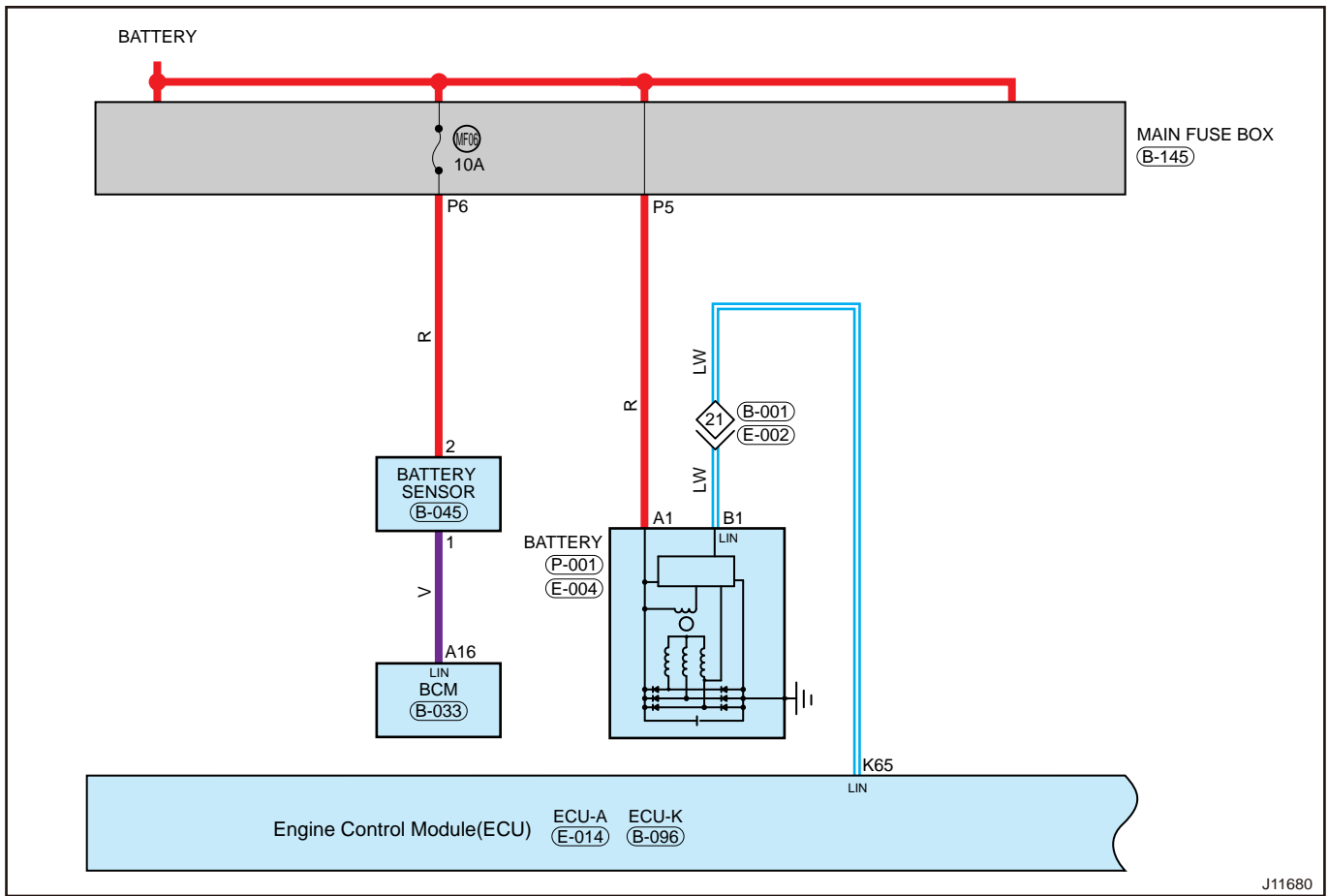
Refer to diagnosis in CAN network section.

■ Response Reception Time Out/Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)

DTC	P144200	Communication Fault of Generator
DTC	P144100	Mechanical Fault of Generator
DTC	P144000	Electrical Fault of Generator
DTC	P141400	Read Back Time Out Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)
DTC	P141500	Response Reception Time Out Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)
DTC	P141600	Framing Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)
DTC	P141700	Checksum Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J11680

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check alternator connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if alternator connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check LIN line voltage

- (a) Disconnect the alternator connector.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of alternator LIN line with red probe respectively.

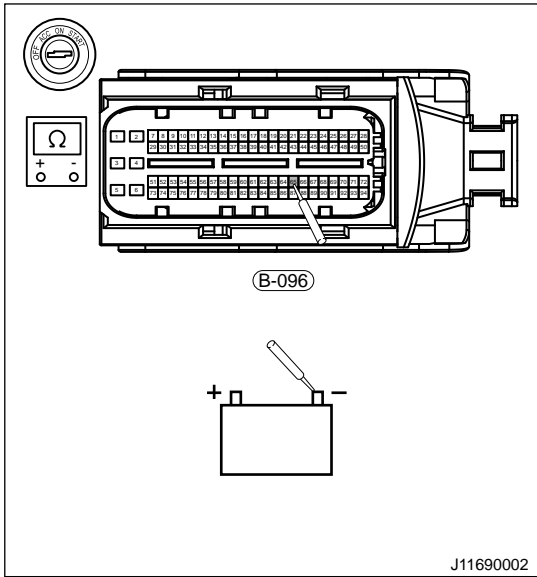
Equivalent voltage: Approximately 10 V

OK Replace alternator.

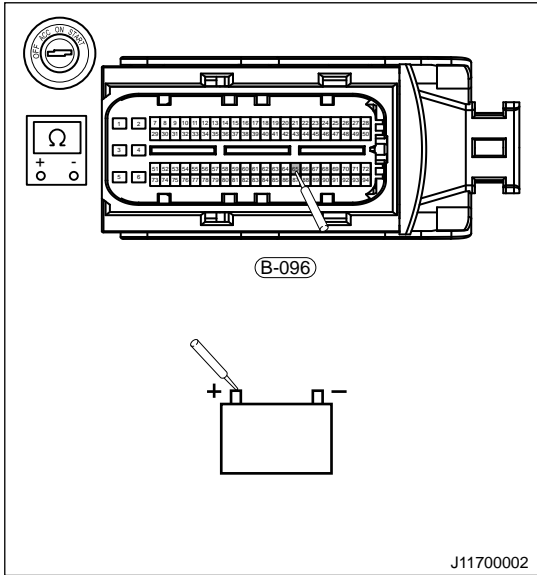
NG

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in LIN line

- (a) Disconnect the alternator connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of ECM B-096 (65) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistance of ECM B-096 (65) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Immobilizer Malfunction

DTC	P051300	Incorrect Immobilizer Key
DTC	P063300	ECM not Programed (Virgin State)
DTC	P161000	No Response Received by ECM/PCM After Challenge Sent
DTC	P161400	PIN Code Entry Error
DTC	P161200	Internal Error When Writing Data to EEPROM
DTC	P161300	Different IMMO Configurations of ECM and Vehicle Models
DTC	P161100	ECM Status Unknown

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Refer to diagnosis in immobilizer system section.

■ **Canister Vent Valve Stuck Normally Closed**

DTC	P242200	EVAP System Vent Valve Stuck Closed
------------	----------------	--

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check canister vent valve
----------	----------------------------------

- (a) Check if line or charcoal canister filter at canister vent valve is blocked.
- (b) Check if canister vent valve is stuck closed position.



Replace charcoal canister filter or canister vent valve.



2	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.



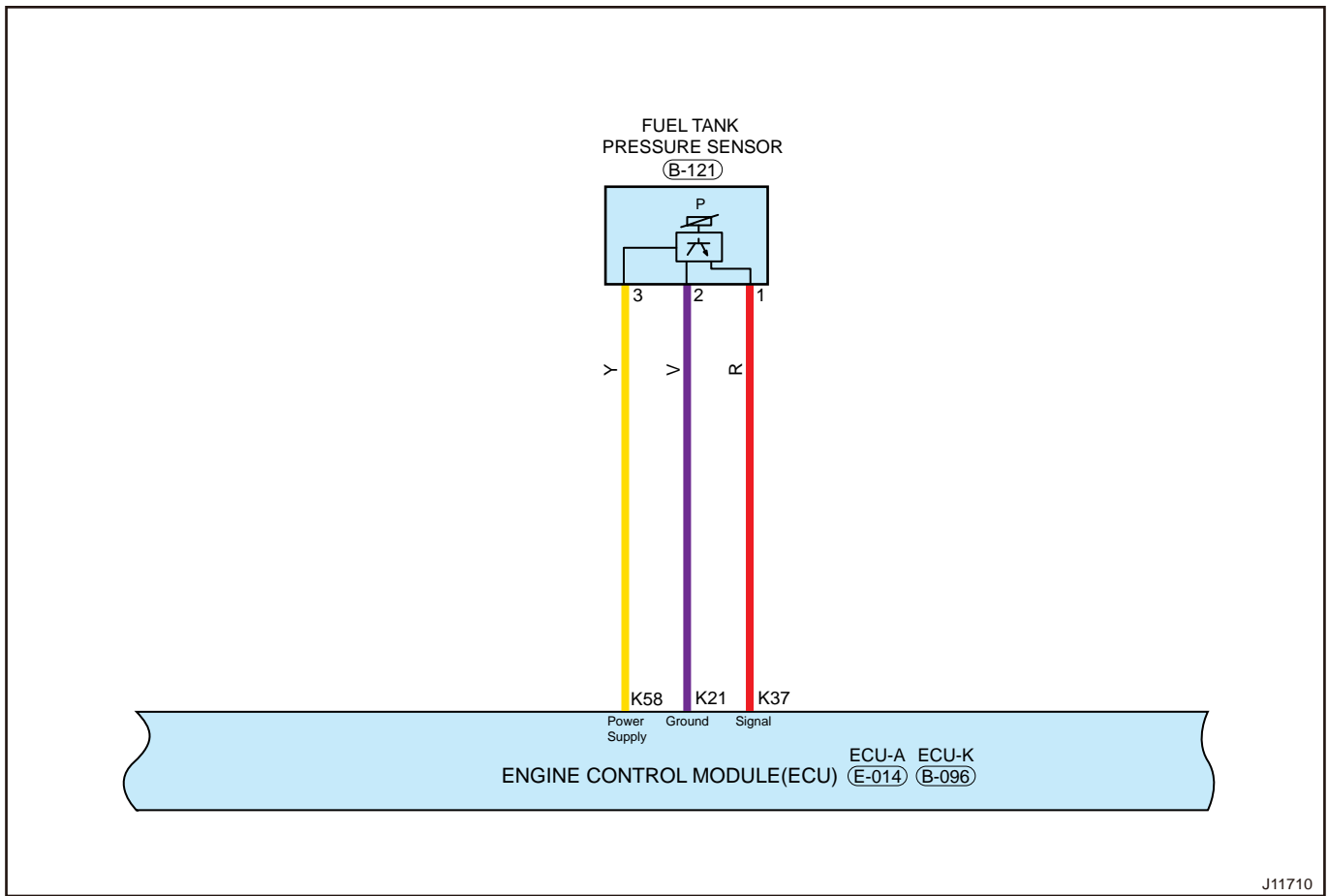
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor Malfunction**

DTC	P045128	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Range Performance
DTC	P04512A	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Range Performance
DTC	P045300	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit High
DTC	P045200	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Low
DTC	P128200	EVAP System Pressure Sensor/Switch Circuit Range Performance
DTC	P128300	EVAP System Pressure Sensor/Switch Circuit Range Performance
DTC	P045125	EVAP System Pressure Sensor&Switch Circuit Range Performance

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check fuel tank pressure sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if fuel tank pressure sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check canister vent valve

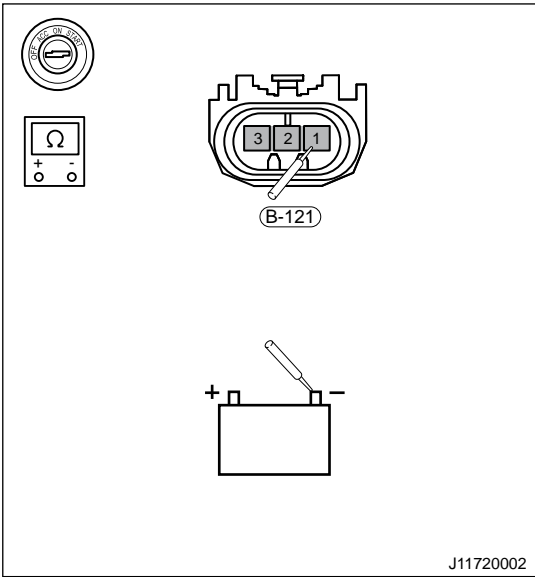
- (a) Check if line or charcoal canister filter at canister vent valve is blocked.
- (b) Check if canister vent valve is stuck closed or normally open position.

NG Replace charcoal canister filter or canister vent valve.

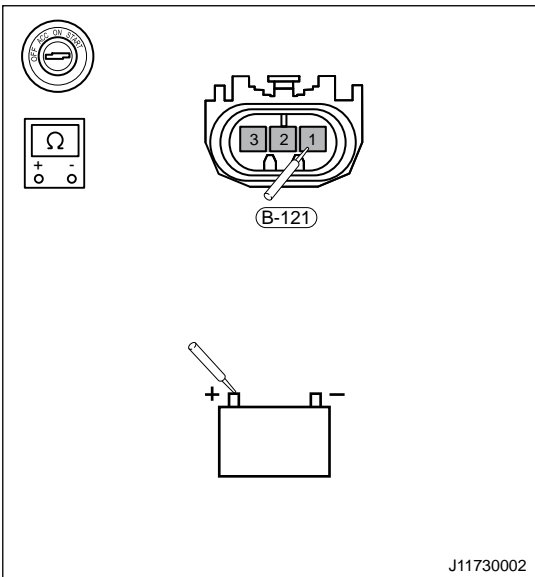
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in fuel tank pressure sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect fuel tank pressure sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of fuel tank pressure sensor B-121 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of fuel tank pressure sensor B-121 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

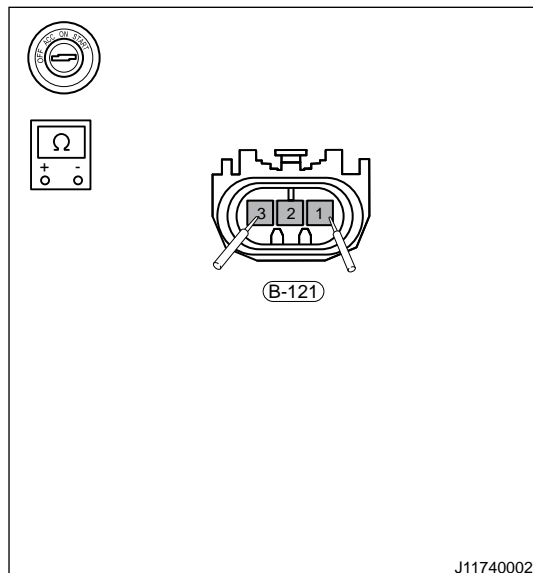


NG Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4 Check if circuits of fuel tank pressure sensor themselves are shorted to each other

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of fuel tank pressure sensor B-121 (1, 2, 3) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other.



NG

Replace fuel tank pressure sensor assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

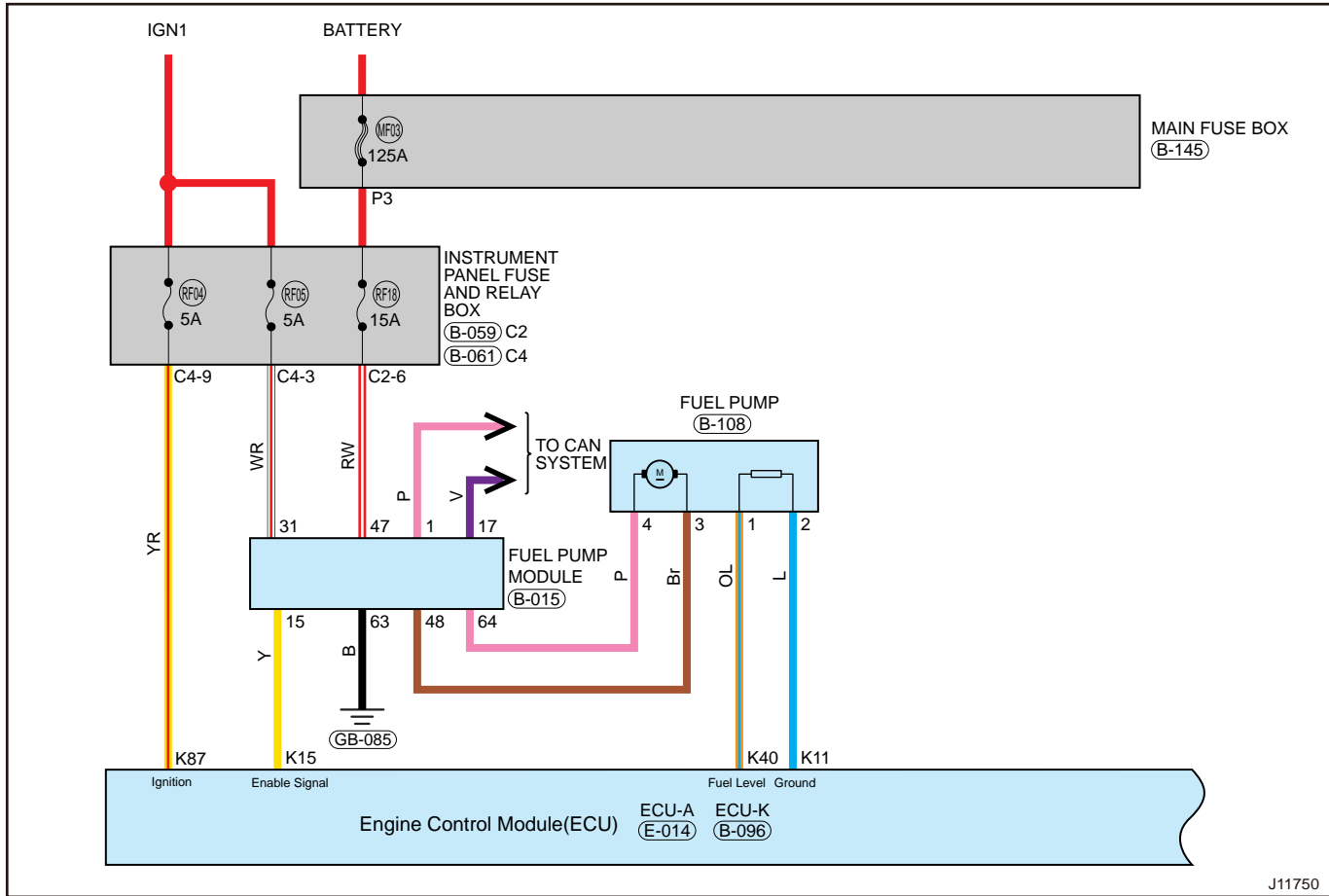
OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Fuel Level Sensor Malfunction

DTC	P046300	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit High
DTC	P046200	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit Low
DTC	P25B000	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Stuck
DTC	P128400	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit Range Performance
DTC	P046129	Fuel Level Sensor "A" Circuit Range Performance

■ Description
Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check fuel pump connector
----------	----------------------------------

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if fuel pump connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

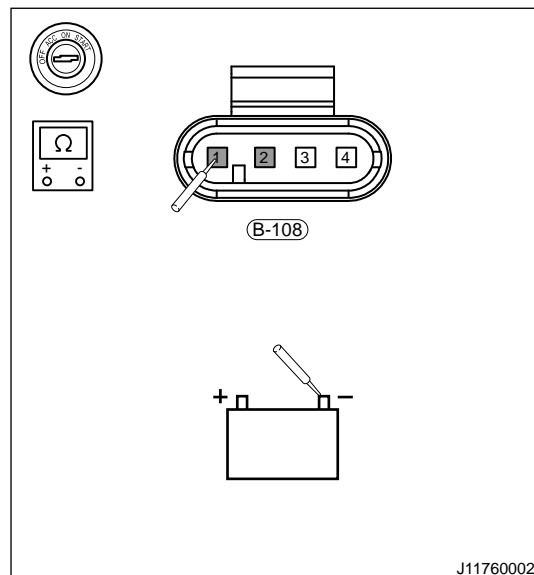
Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

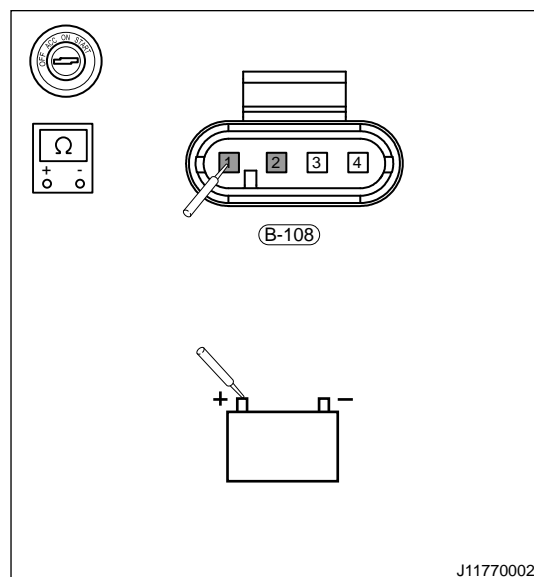
2

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in fuel level sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect the fuel level sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of fuel level sensor B-108 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of fuel level sensor B-108 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

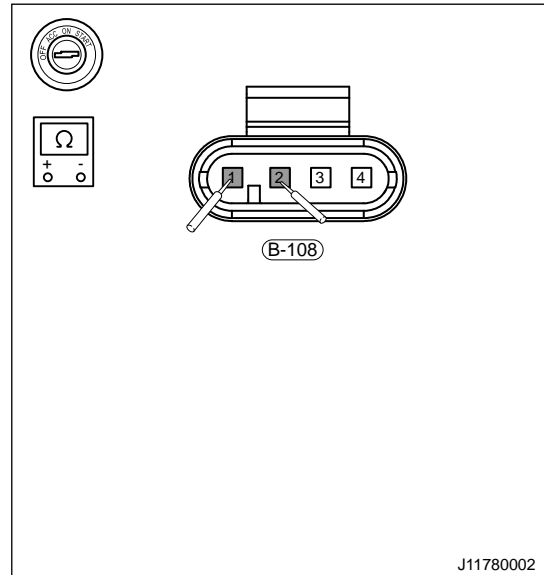
Check and repair control circuit.

OK

3

Check if circuits of fuel level sensor themselves are shorted to each other or opened

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of fuel level sensor B-108 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other or opened.



NG Replace fuel level sensor assembly.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Evaporation System Leakage Malfunction

DTC	P044200	EVAP System Leak Detected (Small Leak)
DTC	P045500	EVAP System Leak Detected (Large Leak)

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check fuel tank cap

- (a) Check if fuel tank cap is tightened, and check if internal seal ring is deformed.
- (b) Check fuel tank cap for damage or leaked port.

NG

Repair and adjust or replace fuel tank assembly.

OK

2 Check evaporation system connecting line

- (a) Check each line for damage or small hole, etc.
- (b) Check each line joint is clamped into place and check if worm clamp is tightened.

NG

Repair and adjust or replace the damaged parts.

OK

3 Check charcoal canister

- (a) Check charcoal canister for damage or small hole, etc.
- (b) Check if connecting pipe joint is clamped into place.

NG

Repair and adjust or replace charcoal canister assembly.

OK

4 Check canister vent valve

- (a) Check if canister vent valve is not closed tightly or stuck.

NG Replace canister vent valve assembly.

OK

5 Check canister solenoid valve

(a) Check if canister solenoid valve is not closed tightly or stuck.

NG Replace canister solenoid valve assembly.

OK

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

High/Low Load Desorption Pipeline Malfunction - Canister Solenoid Valve

DTC	P049700	EVAP System Low Purge Flow
DTC	P04F000	EVAP System High Pressure Purge

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check low/high load desorption pipeline

- (a) Check each connecting line for breakage, damage or small hole, etc.
- (b) Check if line check valve is damaged or inoperative.
- (c) Check connection position between intake hose and desorption pipeline for blockage.

NG Repair and adjust or replace the damaged parts.

OK

2 Check canister vent valve

(a) Check if canister vent valve is stuck closed position.

NG Replace canister vent valve assembly.

OK

3 Check canister solenoid valve

(a) Check if canister solenoid valve is stuck closed position.

NG Replace canister solenoid valve assembly.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

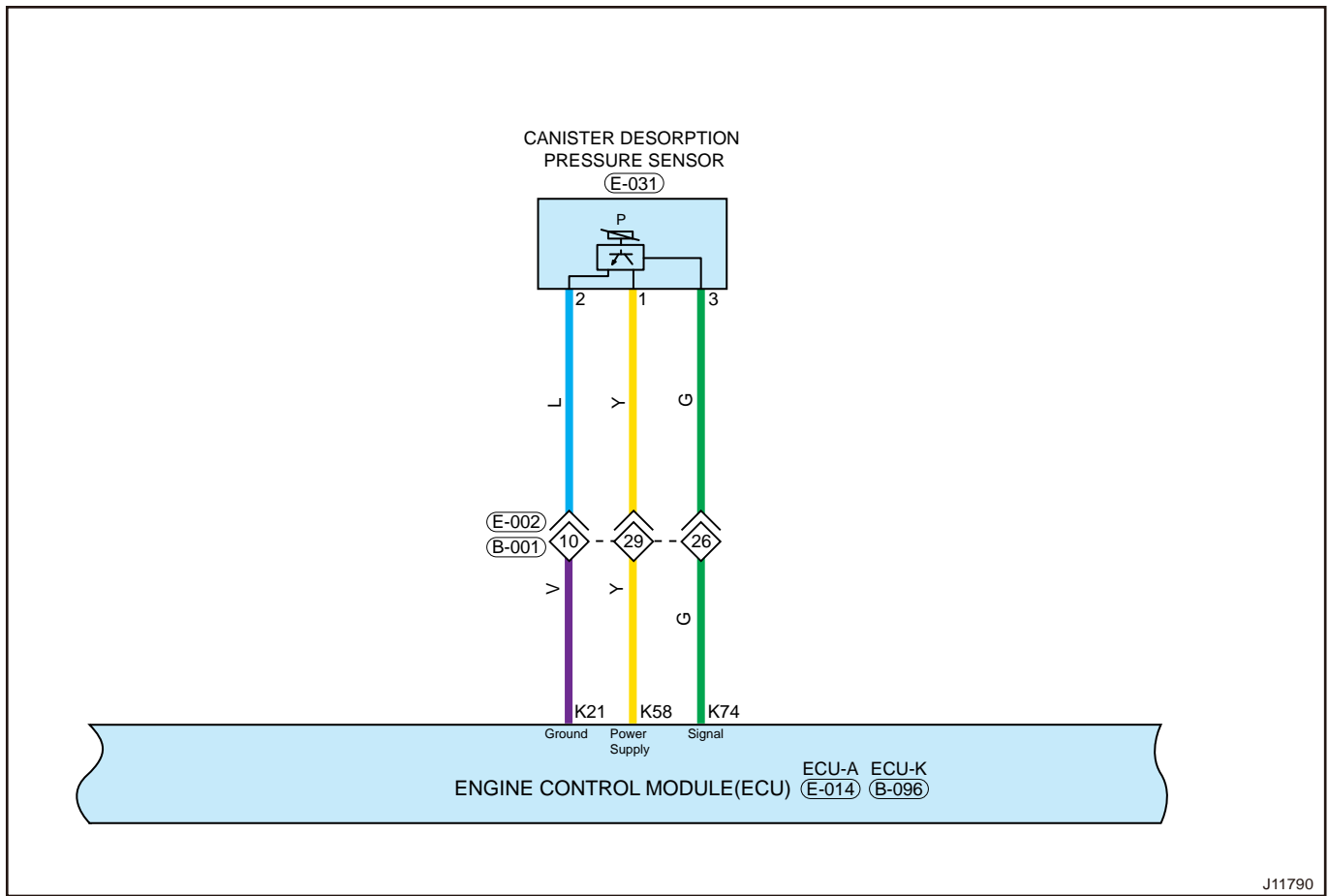
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Desorption pressure sensor malfunction**

DTC	P046800	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit High
DTC	P046700	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit Low
DTC	P128500	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit Range Performance
DTC	P128600	EVAP Purge Flow Sensor Circuit Range Performance

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



J11790

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check desorption pressure sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if desorption pressure sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check high load desorption pipeline

- (a) Check each connecting line for breakage, damage or small hole, etc.
- (b) Check if line check valve is damaged or inoperative.
- (c) Check connection position between intake hose and desorption pipeline for blockage.

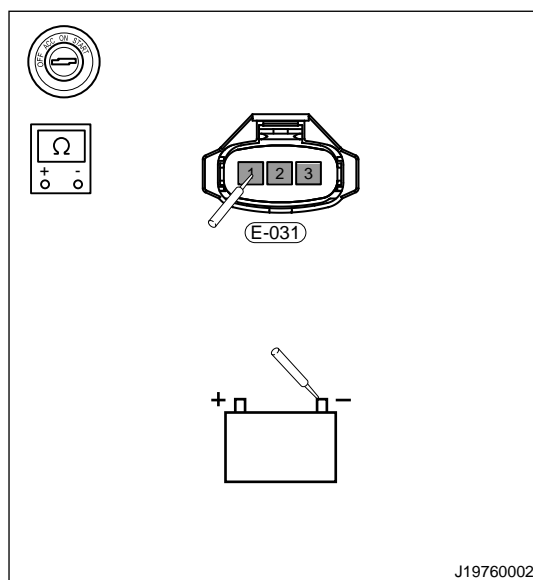
NG

Repair and adjust or replace the damaged parts.

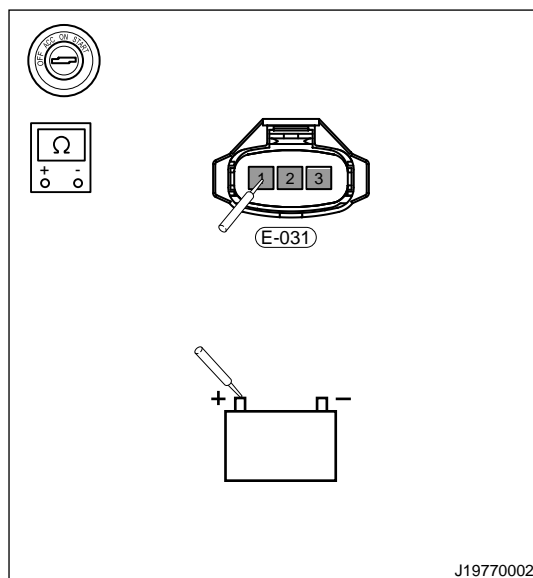
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in desorption pressure sensor circuit

- (a) Disconnect the desorption pressure sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of desorption pressure sensor E-031 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of desorption pressure sensor E-031 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

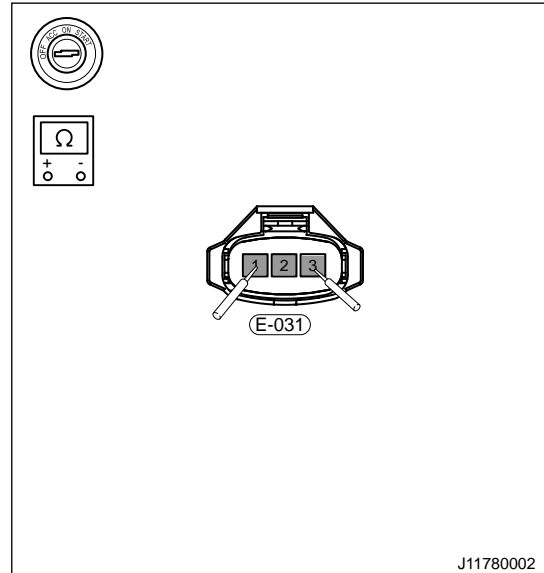
Check and repair control circuit.

OK

4

Check if circuits of desorption pressure sensor themselves are shorted to each other or opened

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of desorption pressure sensor E-031 (1, 2, 3) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other or opened.



NG

Replace desorption pressure sensor assembly.

OK

5

Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Cylinder 1 / Cylinder 2 / Cylinder 3 / Cylinder 4 CVO Self-learning Adjustment Reach Upper Limit/Lower Limit Malfunction**

DTC	P02CD00	Cylinder 1 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit
DTC	P02D100	Cylinder 3 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit
DTC	P02D300	Cylinder 4 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit
DTC	P02CF00	Cylinder 2 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Max Limit
DTC	P02CC00	Cylinder 1 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit
DTC	P02D000	Cylinder 3 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit
DTC	P02D200	Cylinder 4 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit
DTC	P02CE00	Cylinder 2 Fuel Injector Offset Learning At Min Limit
DTC	P062B9A	Internal Control Module Fuel Injector Control Performance - Component or System Operating Conditions
DTC	P062B64	Internal Control Module Fuel Injector Control Performance - Component Internal Failure
DTC	P062B96	Internal Control Module Fuel Injector Control Performance - Component or System Operating Conditions
DTC	P126100	Cylinder 1 Injector Circuit Range/Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure
DTC	P126300	Cylinder 3 Injector Circuit Range/Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure
DTC	P126400	Cylinder 4 Injector Circuit Range/Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure
DTC	P126200	Cylinder 2 Injector Circuit Range/Performance - Signal Plausibility Failure

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Check injector connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check fuel injector connector for looseness or poor contact, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 **Check injector**

- (a) Remove the fuel injector assembly.
- (b) Check fuel injector for blockage or leakage.

NG **Clean or replace fuel injector assembly.**

OK

3 **Reconfirm DTCs**

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

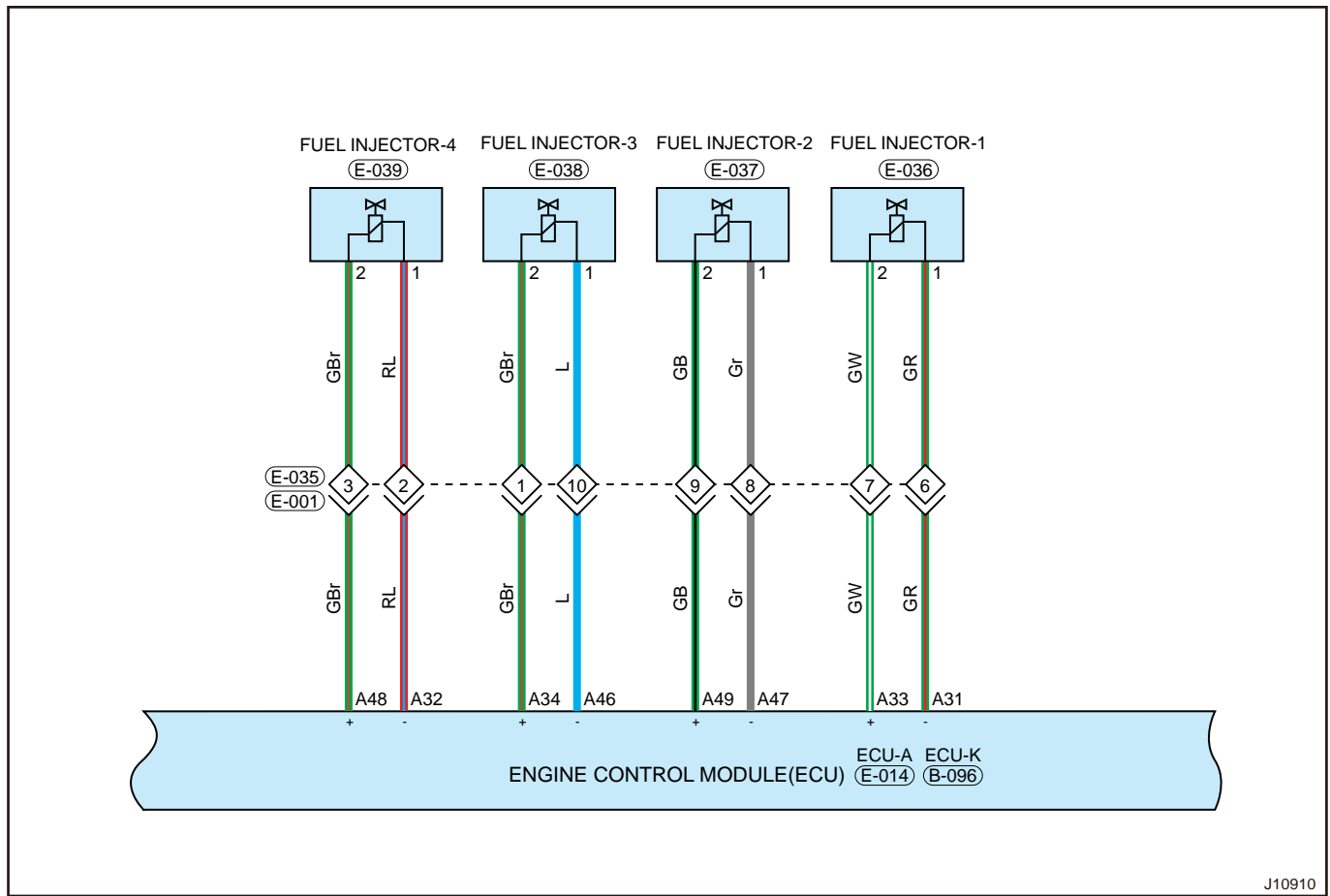
OK **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

■ **Cylinder 1 / Cylinder 2 / Cylinder 3 / Cylinder 4 Fuel Injector Control Circuit Short**

DTC	P02EE00	Cylinder 1 Injector Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P02EF00	Cylinder 2 Injector Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P02F000	Cylinder 3 Injector Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P02F100	Cylinder 4 Injector Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P214800	Fuel Injector Group "A" Supply Voltage Circuit High
DTC	P215100	Fuel Injector Group "B" Supply Voltage Circuit High

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



J10910

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Take troubleshooting of cylinder 1 fuel injector as an example.

1 Check injector connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if fuel injector connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

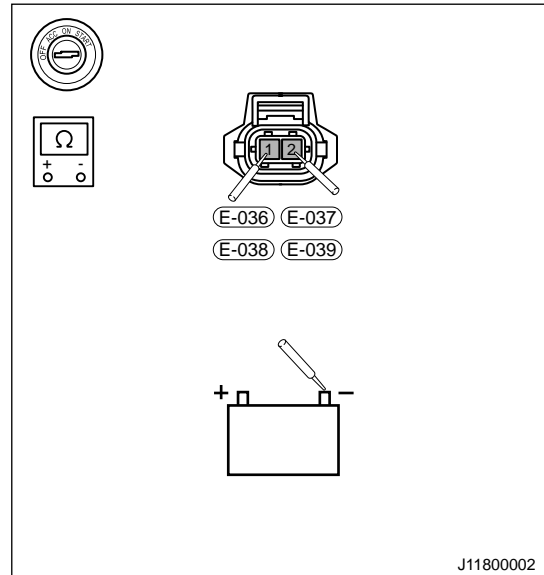
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

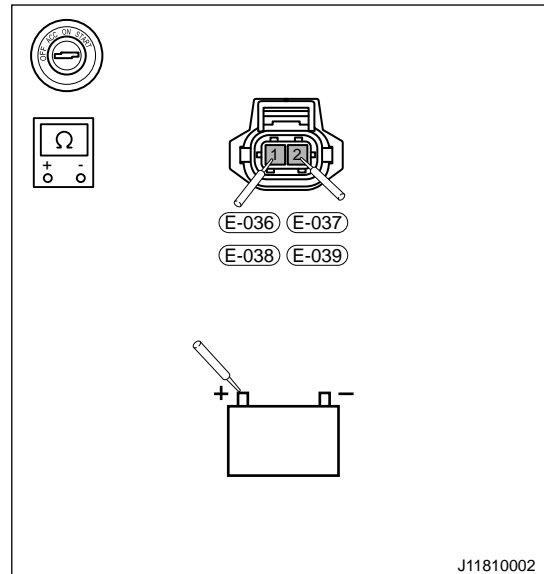
OK

2 Check if fuel injector control terminal is short to ground/power supply or short to each other

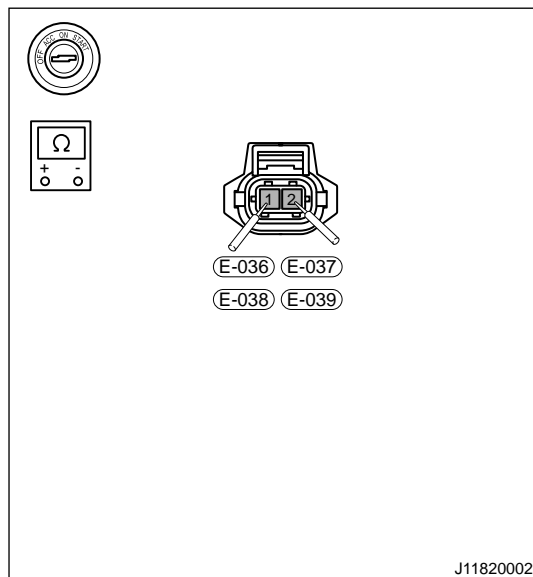
- (a) Disconnect the injector connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of fuel injector E-037 (1, 2), E-036 (1, 2), E-038 (1, 2), E-039 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of fuel injector E-037 (1, 2), E-036 (1, 2), E-038 (1, 2), E-039 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of fuel injector E-037 (1, 2), E-036 (1, 2), E-038 (1, 2), E-039 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

3 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

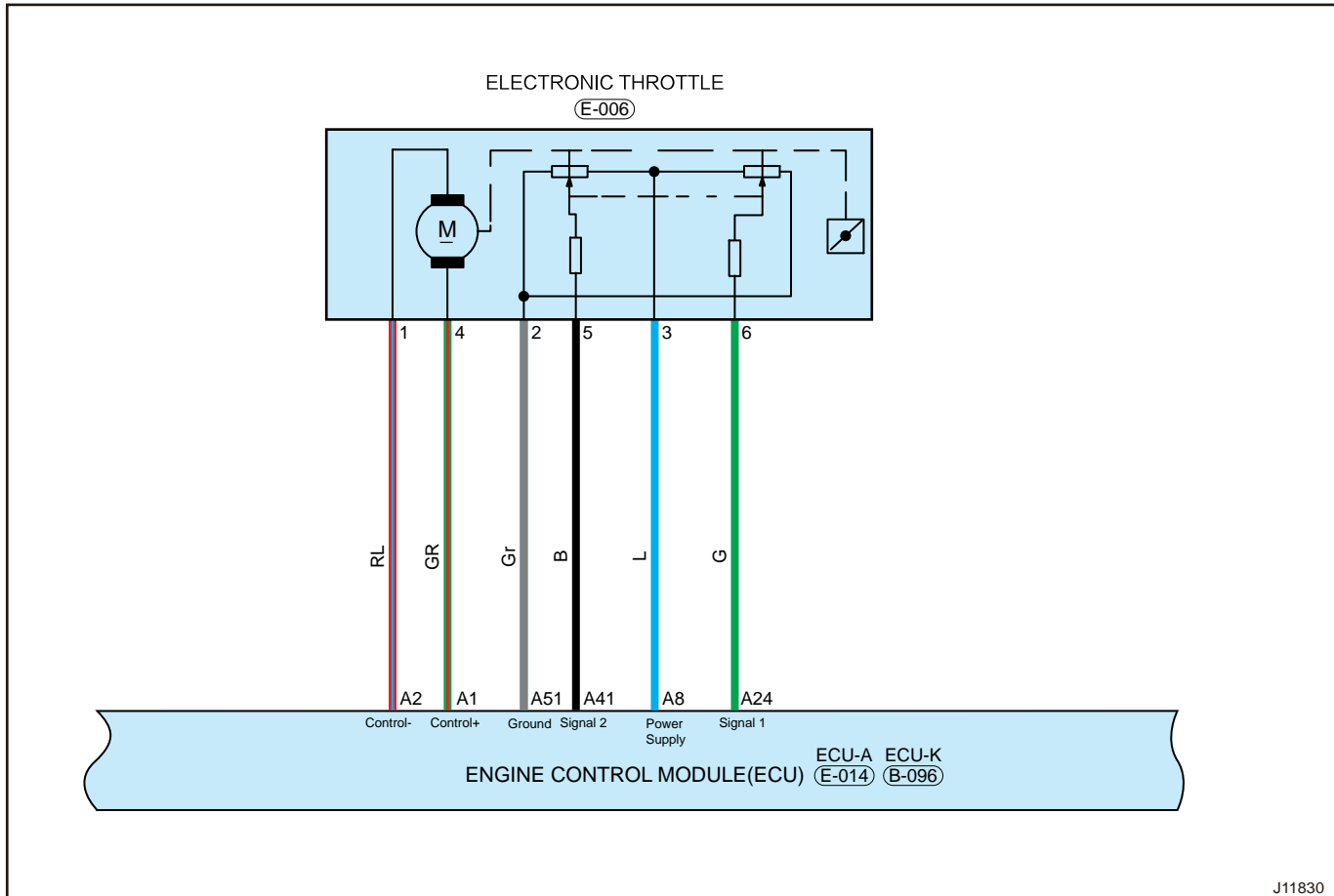
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Electronic Throttle 1st Path / 2nd Path Signal Voltage Minimum / Maximum / Improper

DTC	P012300	Electronic Throttle Position Sensor 1 Signal Circuit Voltage Too High
DTC	P012200	Electronic Throttle Position Sensor 1 Signal Circuit Voltage Too Low

DTC	P012100	Electronic Throttle Position Sensor 1 Signal Improper
DTC	P022300	Electronic Throttle Position Sensor 2 Signal Circuit Voltage Too High
DTC	P022200	Electronic Throttle Position Sensor 2 Signal Circuit Voltage Too Low
DTC	P022100	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch "A" / "B" Voltage Correlation

■ Description
Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check electronic throttle connector
----------	--

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if electronic throttle connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

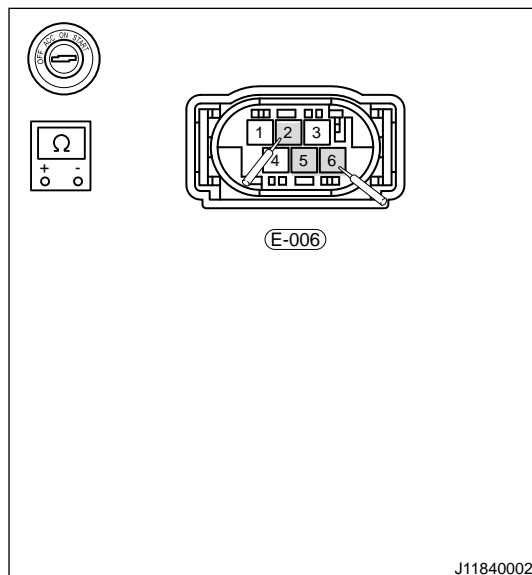
Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check electronic throttle internal resistance

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if resistances of electronic throttle E-006 (2 - 6) and (2 - 5) are normal with red and black probes respectively.

Resistance values should change continuously when the valve plate is toggled by hand



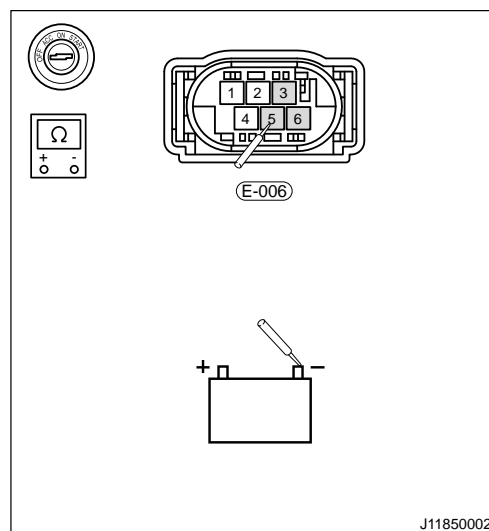
NG

Replace electronic throttle assembly.

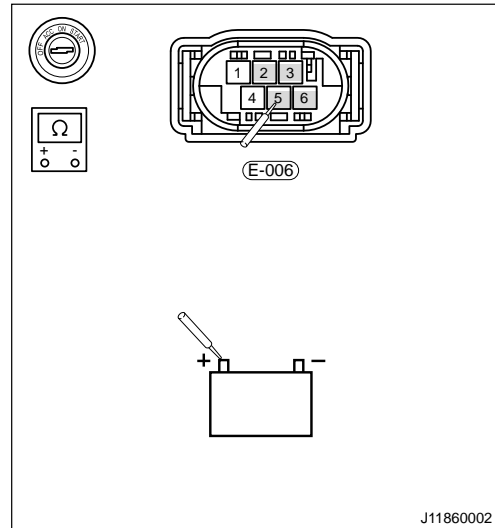
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in electronic throttle line

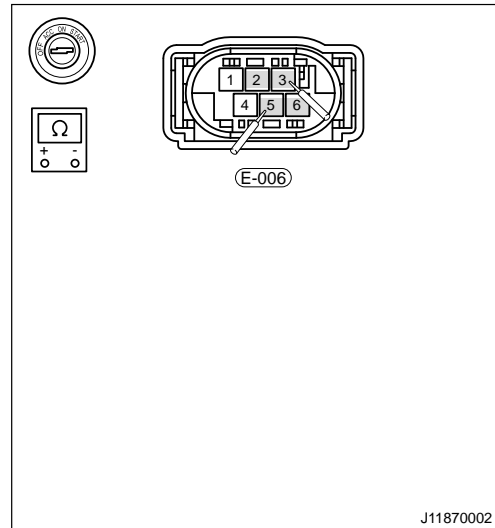
- (a) Disconnect the electronic throttle connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistances of electronic throttle E-006 (3, 5, 6) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistances of electronic throttle E-006 (2, 3, 5, 6) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of electronic throttle E-006 (2, 3, 5, 6) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

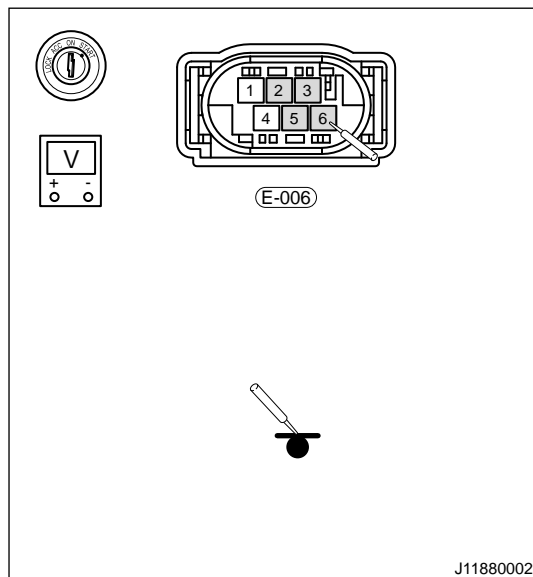
4 Check electronic throttle position sensor power supply / ground / signal

- (a) Connect electronic throttle and ECM (E-014) connectors
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure voltages of electronic throttle E-006 (2, 3, 5, 6) with red probe respectively.

Power supply terminal: 5 V

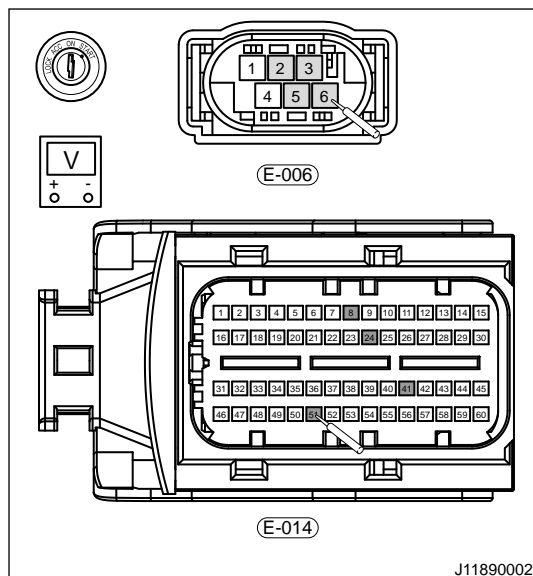
Ground terminal: < 0.2 V

The sum of signal 1 voltage and signal 2 voltage is approximately 5 V



- (d) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM E-014 (51, 8, 41, 24), measure electronic throttle E-006 (2, 3, 5, 6) with red probe.

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.



6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.



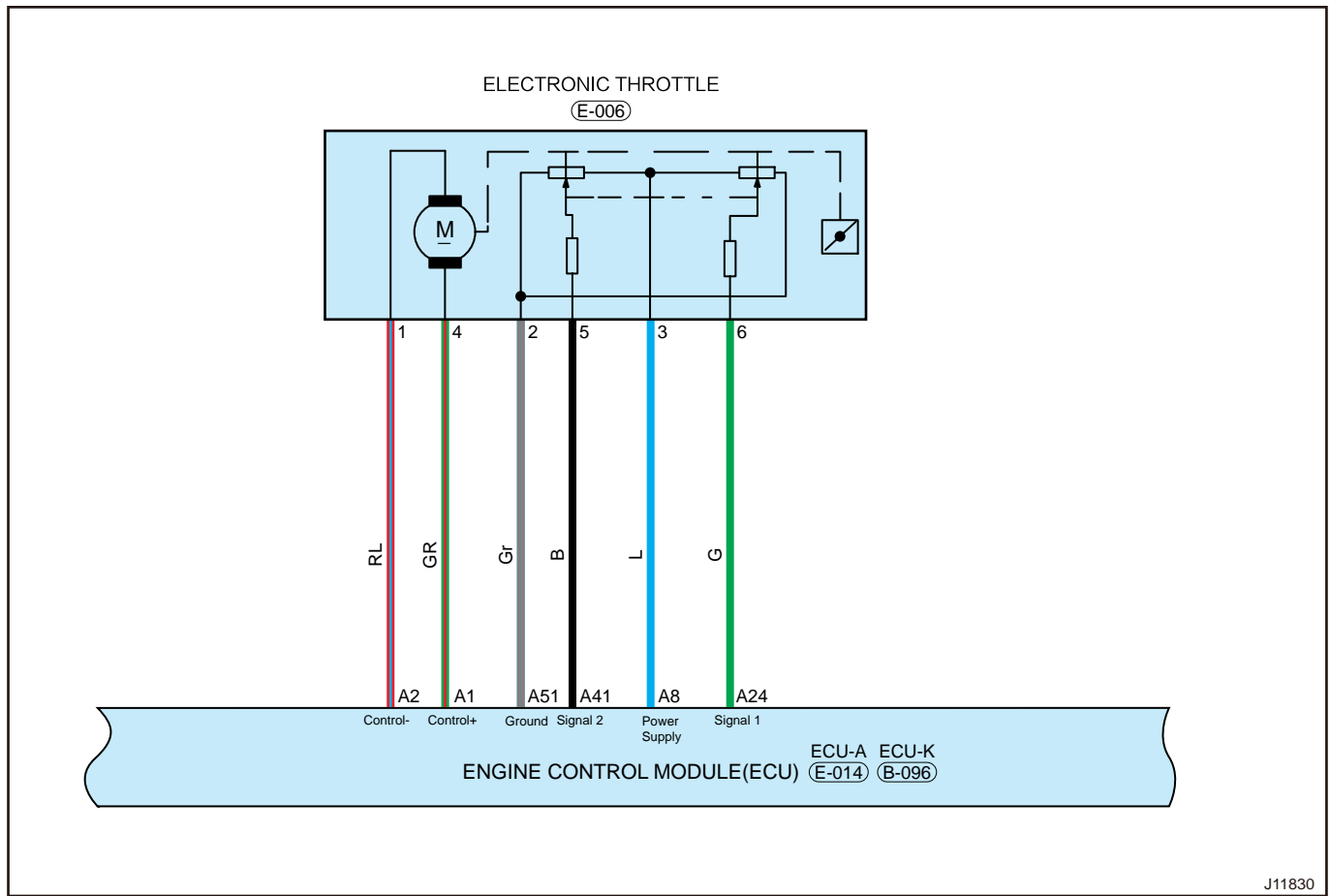
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Electronic Throttle Spring Inspection Malfunction Minimum, Maximum / Deviation Between Throttle Target Opening Angle and Actual Opening Angle / Adjustment / Drive Level Malfunction

DTC	P155400	Max Error of DV-E Return Spring Check Failure
DTC	P155500	
DTC	P156100	
DTC	P156000	Electronic Throttle PID Adjustment Malfunction
DTC	P210000	Electronic Throttle Drive Level Malfunction
DTC	P210300	
DTC	P210600	
DTC	P211800	

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check electronic throttle connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if electronic throttle connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check electronic throttle condition

- (a) Electronic throttle body valve plate is dirty or there are foreign matters, so that the valve plate resistance is large or valve plate is stuck.

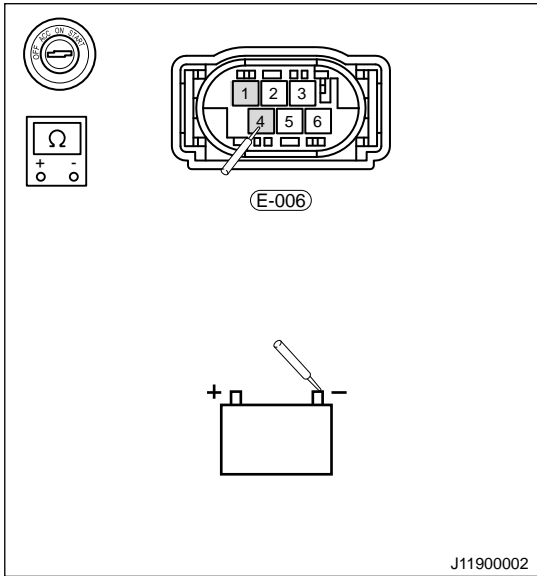
NG

Clean or replace electronic throttle assembly.

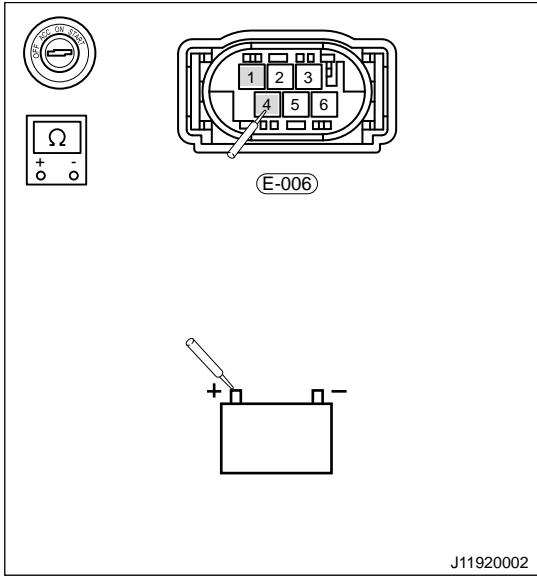
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in electronic throttle line

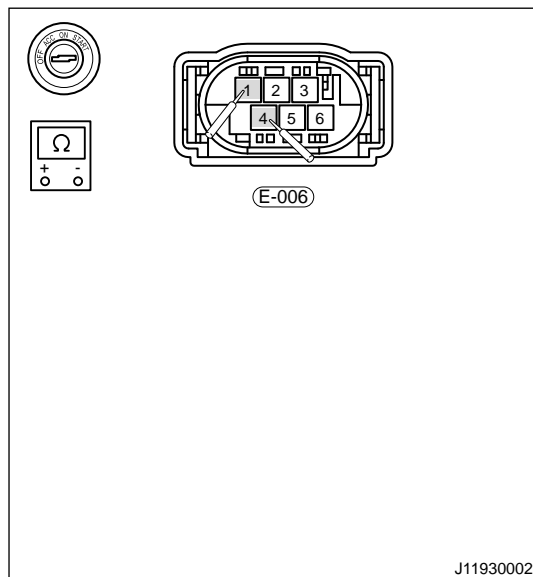
- (a) Disconnect the electronic throttle connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM (E-014) connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistances of electronic throttle E-006 (4, 1) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistances of electronic throttle E-006 (4, 1) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of electronic throttle E-006 (4, 1) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Electronic Throttle Self-learning Unable to Complete / Throttle Initial Self-learning Unable to Complete

DTC	P155000	Throttle Self Learning Condition Not Fulfilled
DTC	P155100	Not Plausible Error of UMA Learning

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check if electronic throttle self-learning condition is met

- (a) No malfunctions related to DVE or monitoring;
- (b) Rotation speed is 0;
- (c) Vehicle speed is 0;
- (d) Pedal opening angle is 0;
- (e) Battery voltage is higher than 10 V;
- (f) Engine coolant temperature is higher than 5°C;
- (g) Intake temperature is higher than 5°C;

NG

Handle the malfunctions that do not meet the self-learning conditions.

OK

2 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ ECM Internal Malfunction

DTC	P061A00	Internal Control Module Torque Performance
DTC	P060D00	Internal Control Module Accelerator Pedal Position Performance
DTC	P152000	Function Monitoring: Check of Predicted Air Mass Failed
DTC	P152100	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU Check of Injection Cut-off
DTC	P152200	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU in Check of Cylinder Individual Fuel Corrections
DTC	P152700	Function Monitoring: Monitoring of ICO From Level1
DTC	P152800	Function Monitoring: Monitoring of ICO From Level2
DTC	P061C00	Internal Control Module Engine RPM Performance
DTC	P152900	Function Monitoring: Fault of Starter Control
DTC	P153000	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU ADC - Null Load Test Pulse
DTC	P153100	Function Monitoring: Fault of ECU ADC - Test Voltage
DTC	P157300	Diagnostic Fault Check to Report "WDA active" Due to Errors in Query/Response Communication
DTC	P157500	Diagnostic Fault Check to Report "WDA active" Due to Overvoltage Detection
DTC	P064100	Sensor Reference Voltage "A" Circuit Open
DTC	P065100	Sensor Reference Voltage "B" Circuit Open

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

2 Reconfirm DTCs

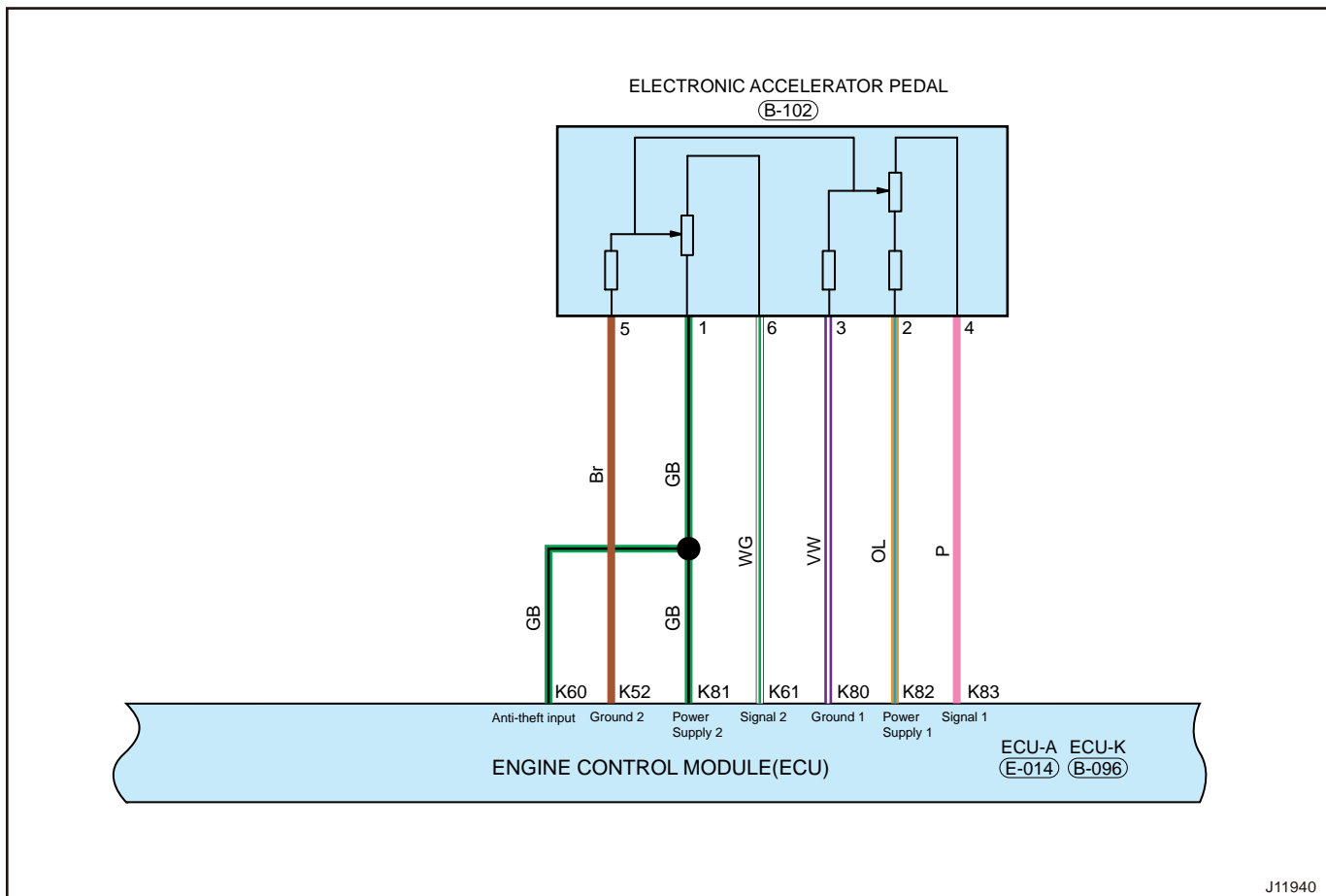
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Deviation Between Both Paths Signal of Accelerator Pedal Out of Limit/Voltage Too High/Too Low

DTC	P213800	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch “D” / “E” Voltage Correlation
DTC	P212300	Pedal Pos.Sensor 1 Circ. High Input
DTC	P212800	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch “E” Circuit High
DTC	P212200	Pedal Pos.Sensor 1 Circ. Low Input
DTC	P212700	Throttle/Pedal Position Sensor/Switch “E” Circuit Low

■ Description
Circuit Diagram



J11940

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).

- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check electronic accelerator pedal connector
----------	---

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if electronic accelerator pedal connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

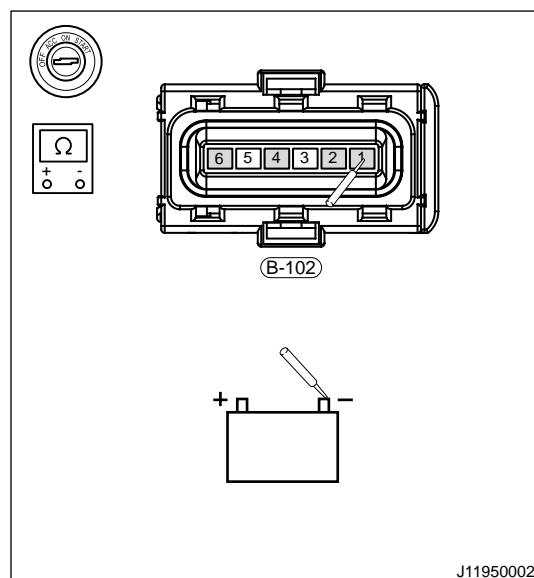
NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
--

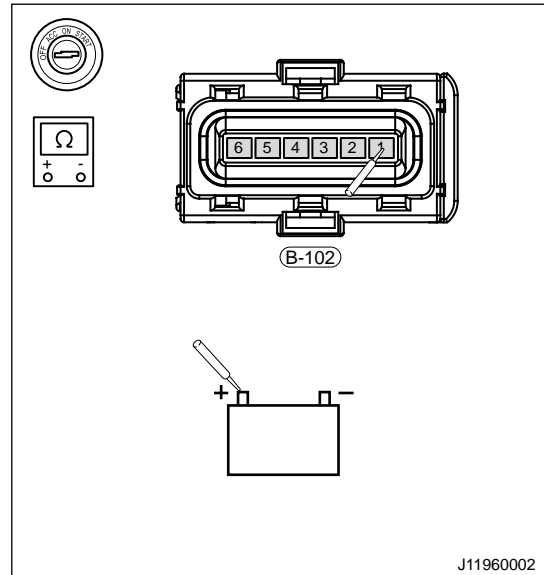
OK

2	Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in electronic accelerator pedal line
----------	---

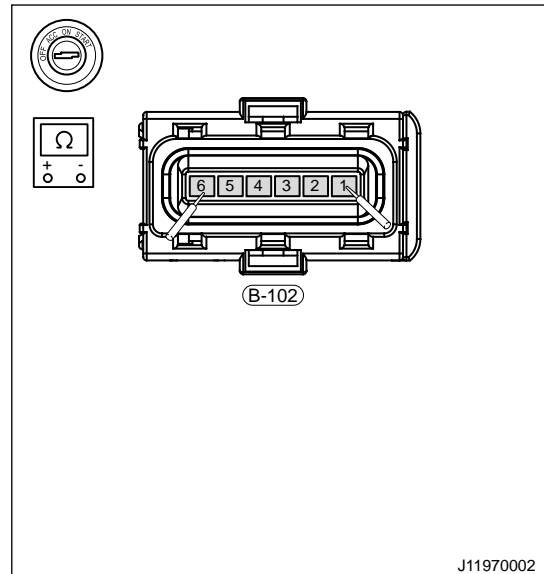
- Disconnect the electronic accelerator pedal connector.
- Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistances of electronic accelerator pedal B-102 (1, 2, 4, 6) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistances of electronic accelerator pedal B-102 (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of electronic accelerator pedal B-102 (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

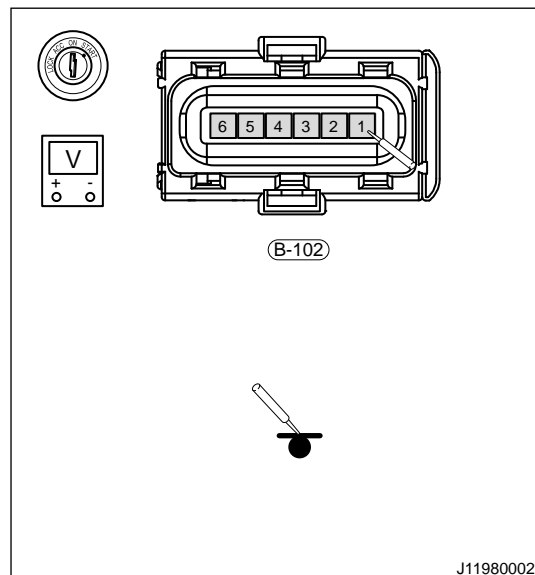
3 Check electronic accelerator pedal position sensor power supply / ground / signal

- (a) Connect electronic accelerator pedal and ECM (B-096) connectors
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure voltages of electronic accelerator pedal B-102 (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) with red probe respectively.

Power supply terminal: 5 V

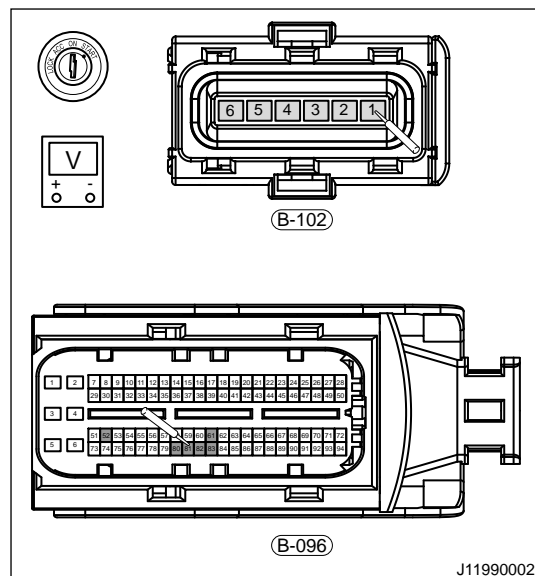
Ground terminal: < 0.2 V

Signal 1 voltage value and signal 2 voltage value maintain a voltage multiplying relationship



- (d) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM B-096 (81, 82, 80, 83, 52, 61), measure electronic accelerator pedal B-102 (1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6) with red probe.

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG

Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

4

Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

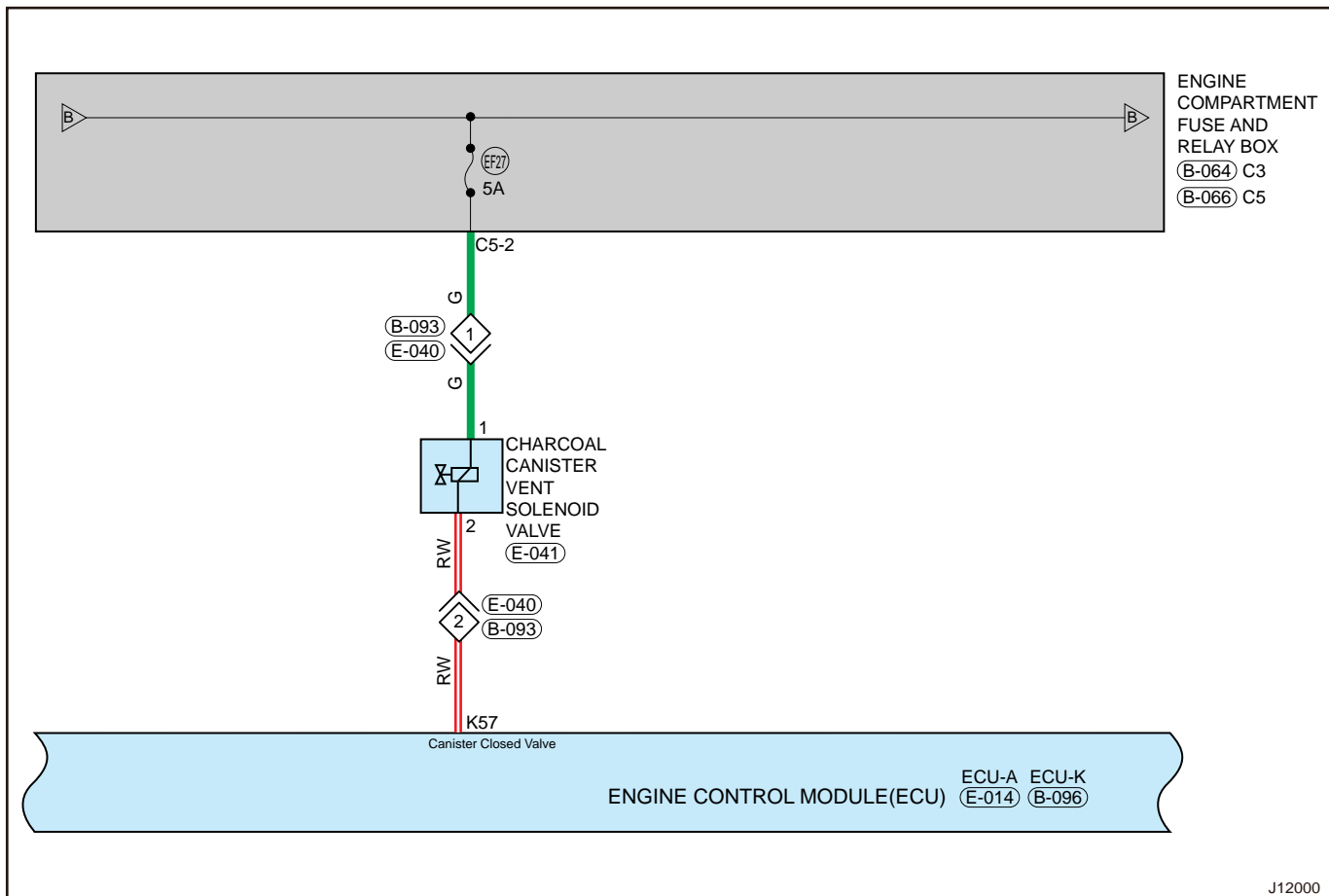
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Canister Vent Valve Control Circuit Malfunction

DTC	P049900	EVAP System Vent Valve Control Circuit High
DTC	P049800	EVAP System Vent Valve Control Circuit Low
DTC	P044700	EVAP System Vent Control Circuit Open

Description
Circuit Diagram



DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.

- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check canister vent valve connector
----------	--

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if canister vent valve connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG	Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
-----------	--

OK

2	Check canister vent valve power supply fuse
----------	--

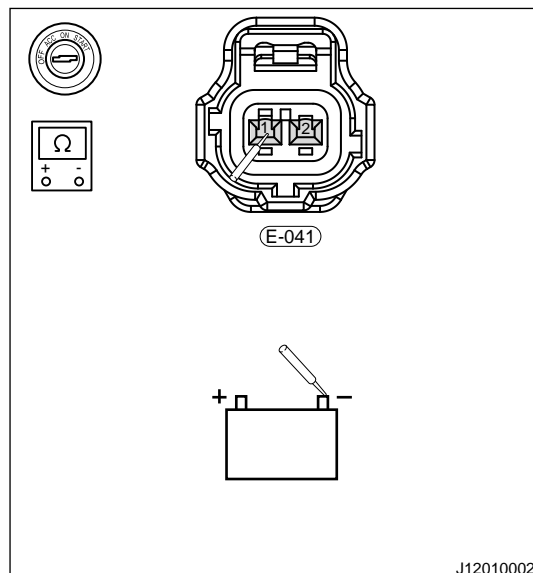
- Check if engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF27 5A is blown.

NG	Check and repair short circuit malfunction and replace fuse.
-----------	---

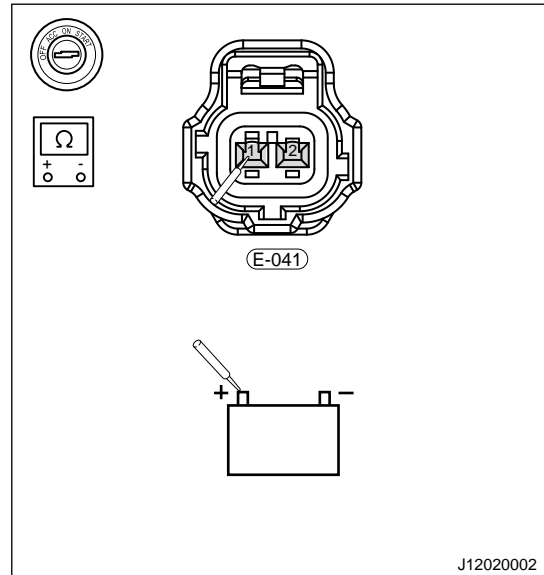
OK

3	Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in canister vent valve line
----------	--

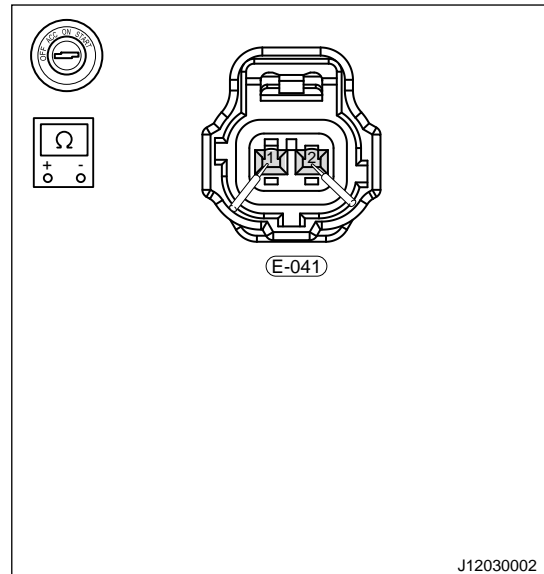
- Disconnect the canister vent valve connector.
- Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of canister vent valve E-041 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of canister vent valve E-041 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of canister vent valve E-041 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

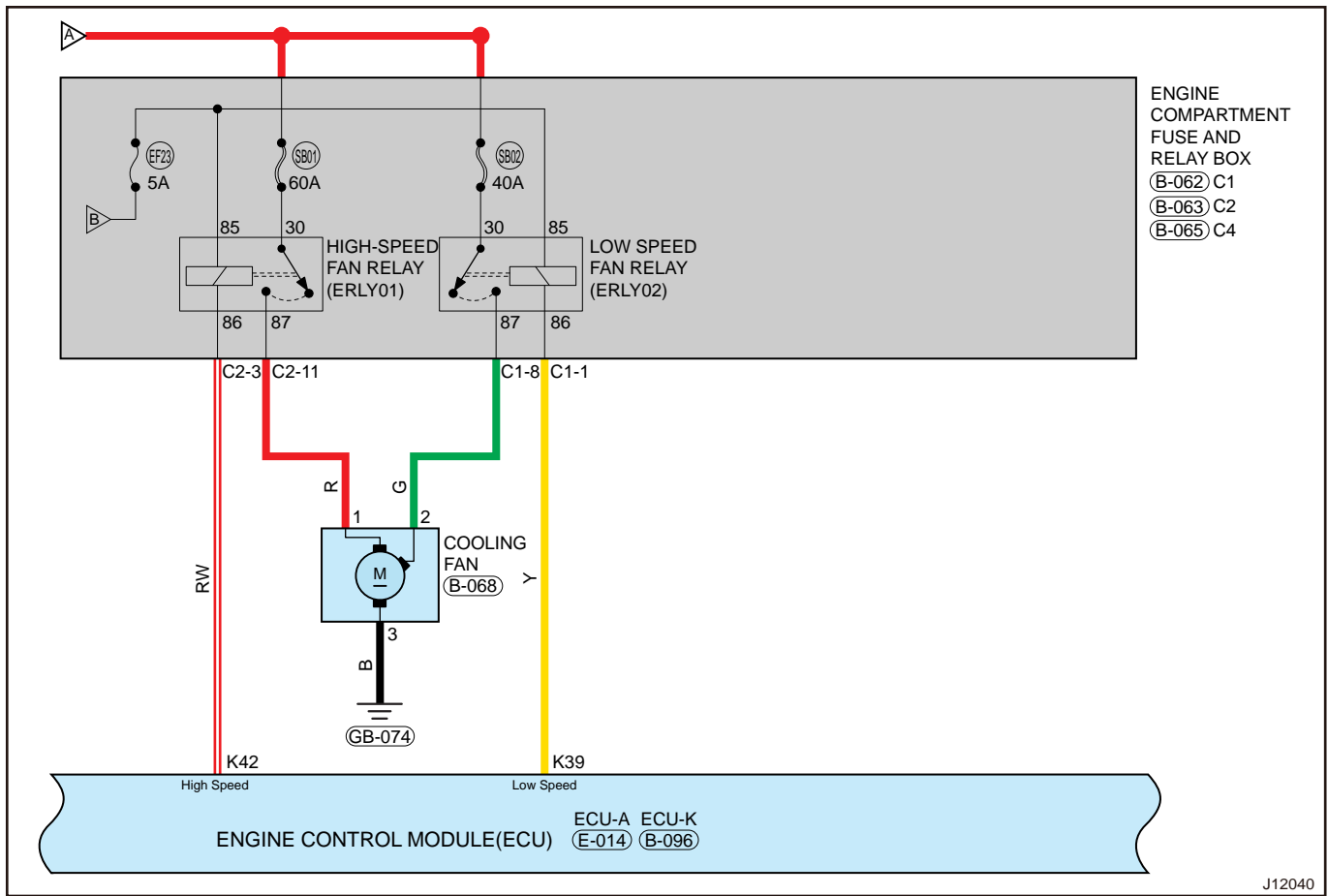
OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Cooling Fan Control Circuit Voltage Too Low/Too High

DTC	P048371	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 1)
DTC	P048372	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 2)
DTC	P048373	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 3)
DTC	P048374	Fan Rationality Check Error (Type 4)
DTC	P048013	Cooling Fan Control Circuit Open
DTC	P06344B	Cooling Fan Drive Chip Overheating
DTC	P069212	Cooling Fan Control Circuit Short to Battery
DTC	P069111	Cooling Fan Control Circuit Short to Ground

■ Description**Circuit Diagram**



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check cooling fan connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if cooling fan connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check cooling fan power supply fuse

- (a) Check if engine compartment fuse and relay box fuse EF23 5A is blown.

NG

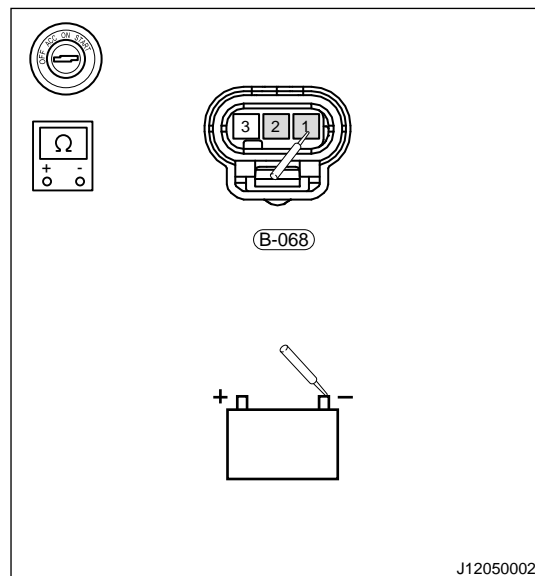
Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

OK

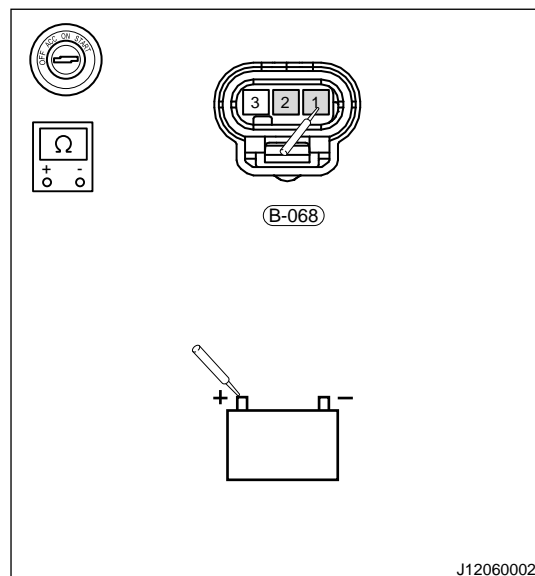
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in cooling fan control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the cooling fan connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistances of cooling fan B-068 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistances of cooling fan B-068 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



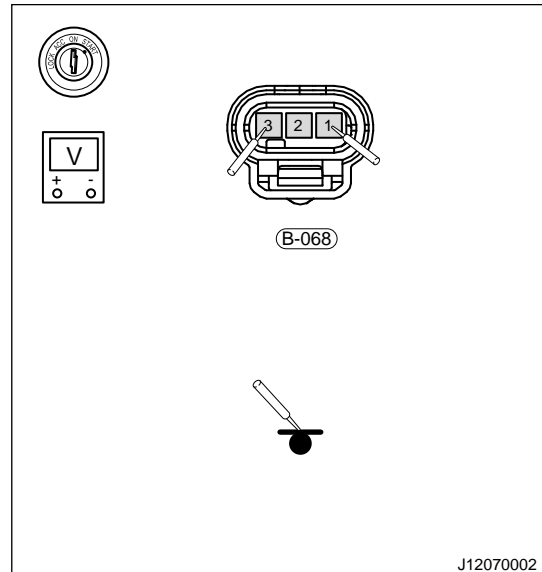
NG

Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check cooling fan power supply / ground / control signal

- (a) Connect cooling fan and ECM (B-096) connectors
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure voltages of cooling fan B-068 (1, 2, 3) with red probe.

Power supply terminal: 12 V**Ground terminal: < 0.2 V**

NG

Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ TCU Requests to Illuminate MIL Light

DTC	P070000	Transmission Control System (MIL Request)
------------	----------------	--

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Read transmission system DTCs and refer to transmission system diagnosis.

■ Vehicle Speed Sensor Performance / Improper / Input Signal Fault

DTC	P121200	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P050300	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Intermittent/Erratic/High
DTC	P050000	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit
DTC	P050166	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance
DTC	P050165	Vehicle Speed Sensor "A" Circuit Range/Performance

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Read brake control system DTCs and refer to brake control system diagnosis.

■ Ignition Angle Efficiency Monitoring During Catalytic Converter Heating

DTC	P050B00	Cold Start Ignition Timing Performance
DTC	P050B20	Cold Start Ignition Timing Performance

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check electronic throttle condition
----------	--

- (a) Check if electronic throttle is dirty or is stuck at position with a small opening angle.

NG

Clean or replace electronic throttle assembly.

OK

2 | Check ignition system

- (a) Check engine for DTCs related to ignition.
- (b) Check ignition coil and spark plug for damage.

NG

Replace the damaged parts.

OK

3 | Check intake system

- (a) Check intake manifold or each connecting line for air leakage.

NG

Replace the leaked or damaged parts.

OK

4 | Check fuel system

- (a) Check if low/high pressure fuel pressure is too low.

NG

Replace the damaged parts.

OK

5 | Check if exhaust back pressure is too high

- (a) Check pre-catalytic converter for blockage.
- (b) Check GPF particulate filter for blockage.

NG

Replace pre-catalytic converter assembly or perform GPF regeneration.

OK

6	Check boost system
----------	---------------------------

- (a) Check each connecting line of boost system for falling off.
- (b) Check if turbocharger can boost normally and each actuator can operate normally.

NG	Replace turbocharger assembly.
-----------	---------------------------------------

OK

7	Check Engine Control Module (ECM)
----------	--

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK	Repair or replace new module.
-----------	--------------------------------------

NG

8	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

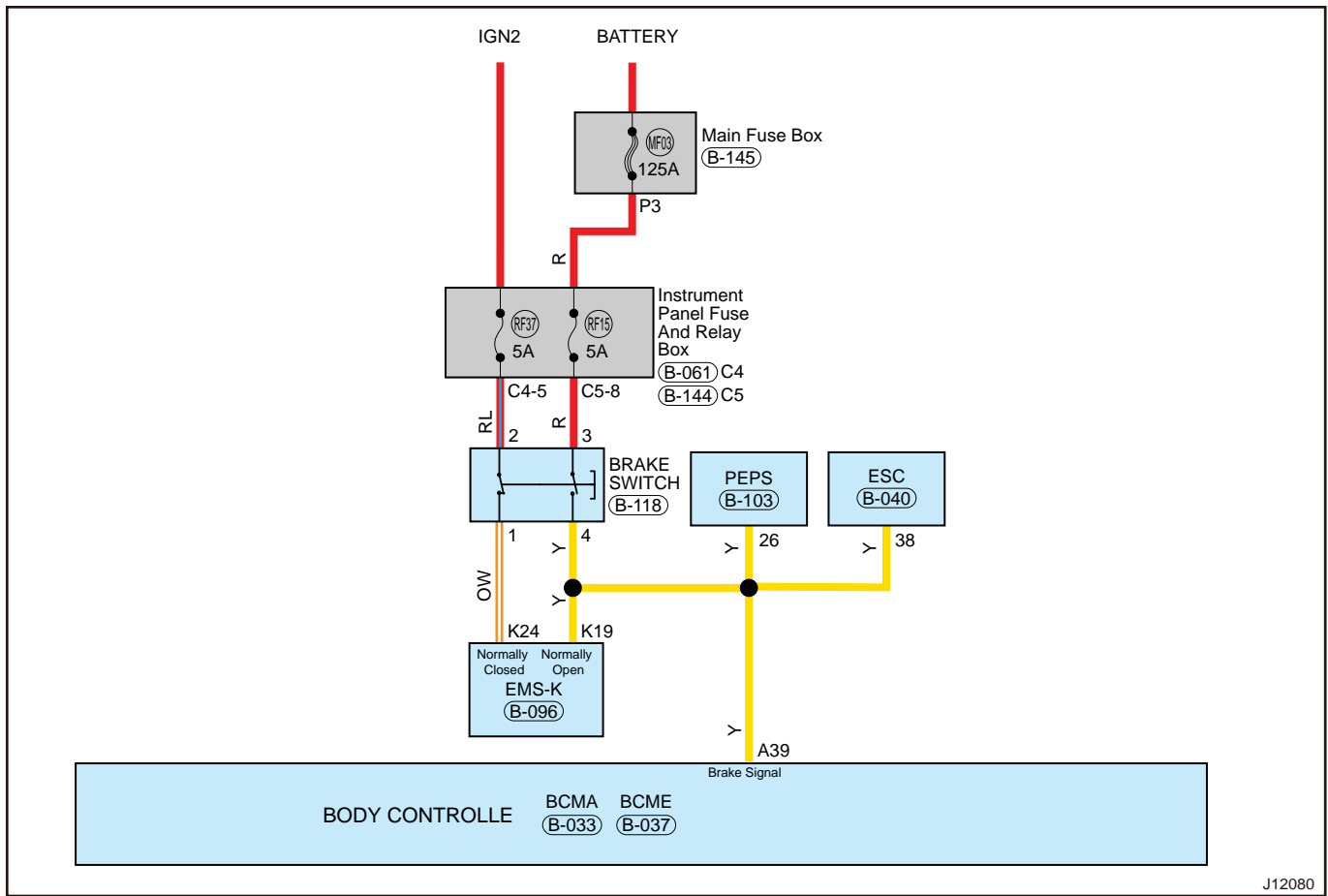
OK	Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.
-----------	--

■ Brake Pedal Signal Synchronization Malfunction

DTC	P057100	Brake Signal Synchronization Error
------------	----------------	---

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J12080

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check brake switch connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if brake switch connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check brake switch power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuse RF37 5A and fuse RF15 5A in instrument panel fuse and relay box are blown.

NG

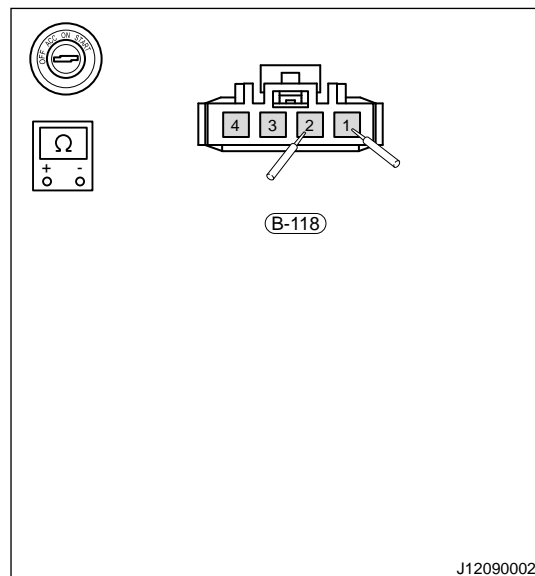
Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

OK

3

Check brake switch condition

- (a) Unplug the brake switch connector.
- (b) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure brake switch B-118 (1, 2) with red and black probes; There should be continuity without brake pedal depressed and no continuity with brake pedal depressed.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure brake switch B-118 (3, 4) with red and black probes; There should be no continuity without brake pedal depressed and there should be continuity with brake pedal depressed.



NG

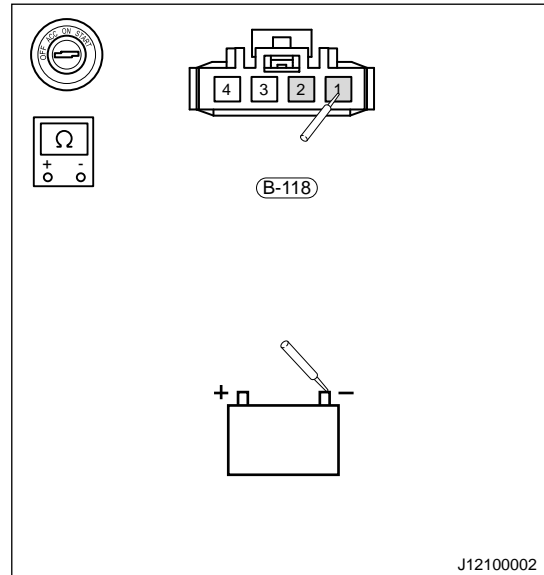
Replace brake switch assembly.

OK

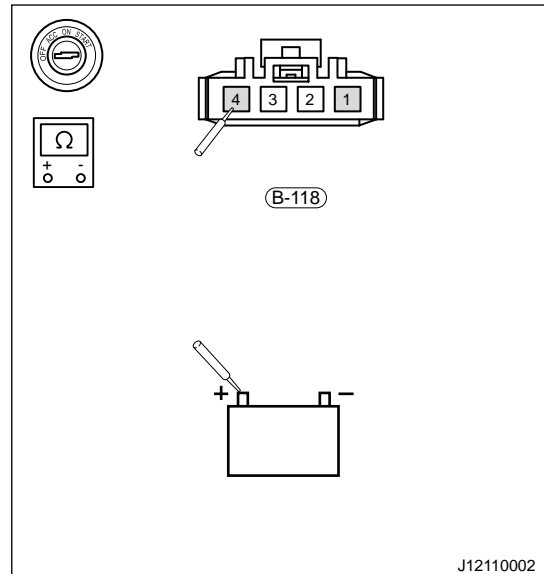
4

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in brake switch line

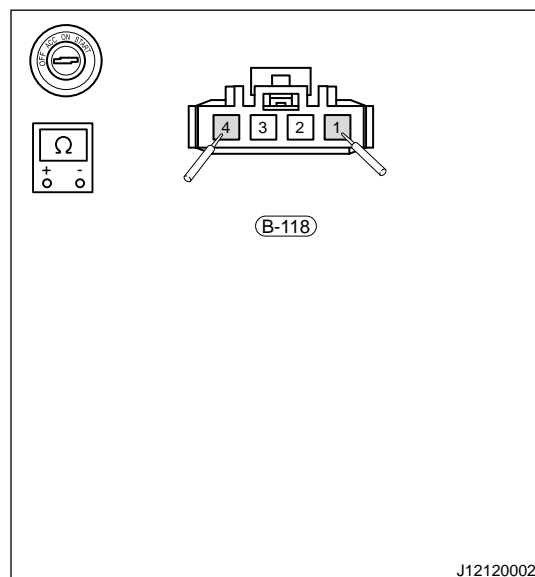
- (a) Disconnect the brake switch connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistances of brake switch B-118 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistances of brake switch B-118 (1, 4) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



- (e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of brake switch B-118 (1, 4) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG

Check and repair circuit.

OK

5

Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

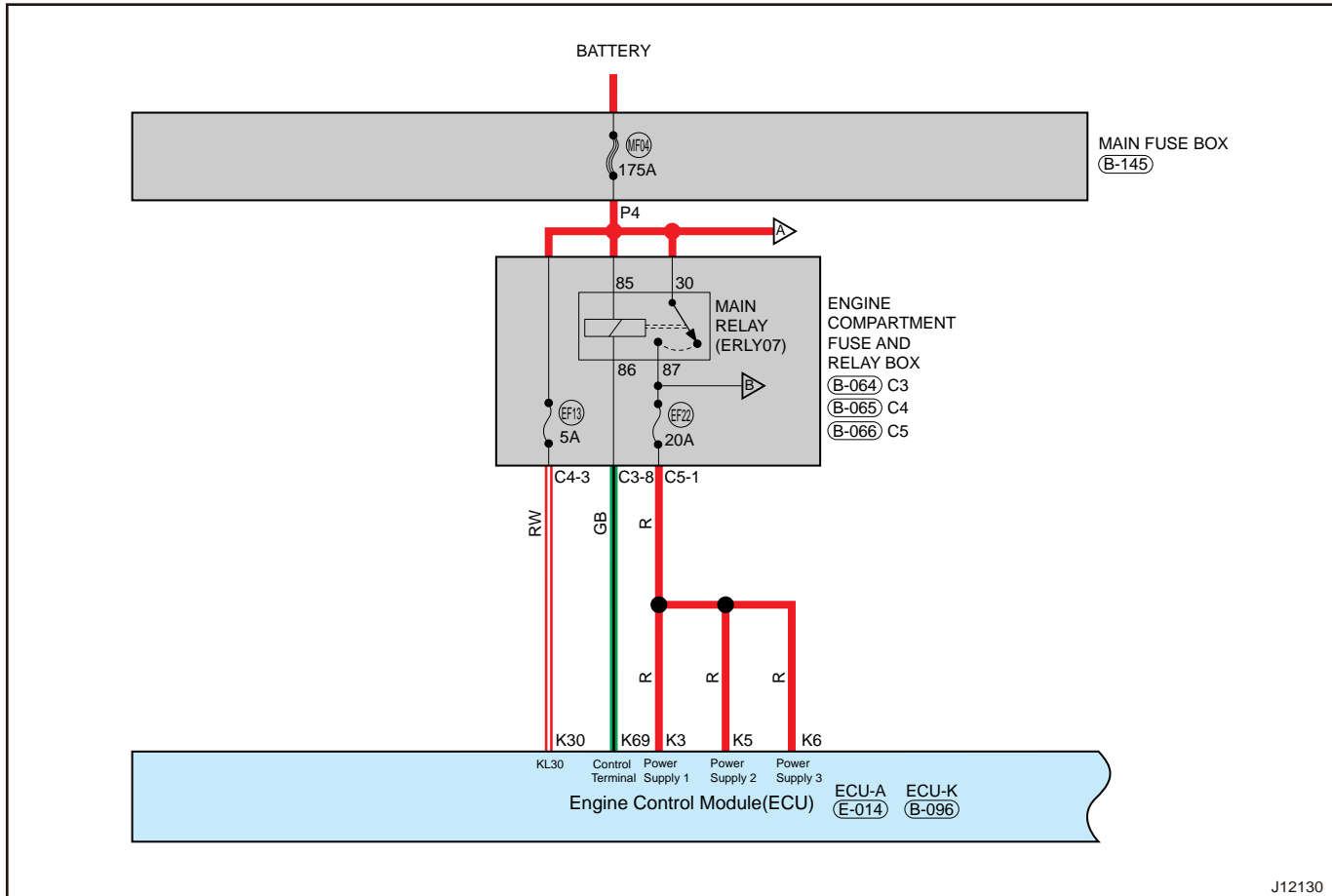
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Main Relay Open / Short to Ground / Power Supply

DTC	P06AA00	Control Module Internal Temperature "B" Too High
DTC	P068A00	ECM/PCM Power Relay De-Energized Performance - Too Early
DTC	P068600	ECM/PCM Power Relay Control Circuit Low

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J12130

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check main relay
----------	-------------------------

(a) Replace the main relay in engine compartment fuse and relay box.

NG	Replace main relay.
-----------	----------------------------

OK

2 Check main relay coil terminal power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuse MF04 175A in engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

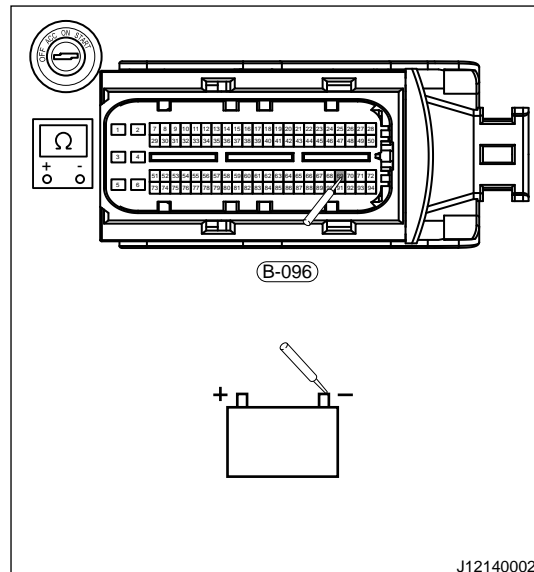
NG

Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

OK

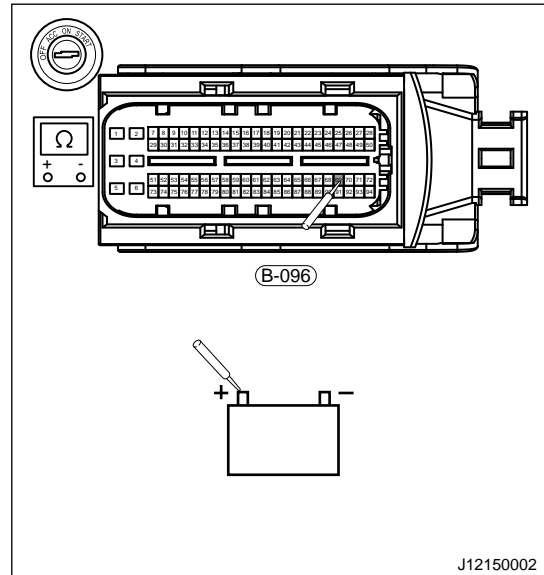
3 Check for short circuit to ground / power source in main relay control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the engine compartment fuse and relay box connector (B-064).
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of ECU B-096 (69) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



J12140002

- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistance of ECM B-096 (69) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Response Reception Time Out/Error of LIN Bus (Contact Between EMS and Intellectual Generator)

DTC	P143000	Battery Has Been Changed and Long Time No Tester Confirmation
DTC	P143100	EBS or Battery Error
DTC	P143200	EBS Temporary Error

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check battery model
----------	----------------------------

- (a) Check if battery model is in agreement with genuine battery.

NG **Use genuine battery to replace.**

OK

2	Check battery sensor connector
----------	---------------------------------------

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
 (b) Check if battery sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG **Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.**

OK

3	Check LIN line voltage
----------	-------------------------------

- (a) Disconnect the battery sensor connector.
 (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltage of battery sensor LIN line with red probe respectively.

Equivalent voltage: Approximately 10 V

NG **Check and repair LIN line.**



4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.



Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Starter Relay / Drive Chain State Relay Fault

DTC	P26F100	Starter Relay "A" or "B" Stuck Off
DTC	P26F000	Starter Relay "A" Stuck On
DTC	P14AD00	Engine Block or Starter is not Engaged
DTC	P14AF00	KL50r Wire Short Circuit to Ground
DTC	P14AE00	KL50r Wire Short Circuit to Battery
DTC	P14AC00	Starter Damaged or Wire Dropped

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check drive chain state relay

- (a) Replace the drive chain state relay in engine compartment fuse and relay box.



Replace drive chain state relay.



2 Check drive chain state relay feedback terminal power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuse in engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

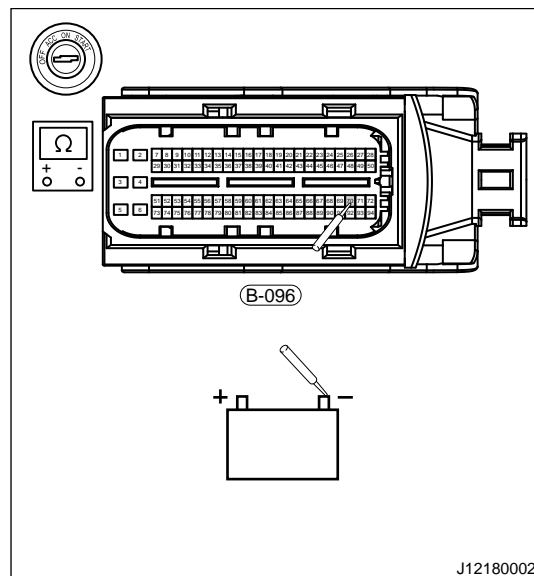


Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

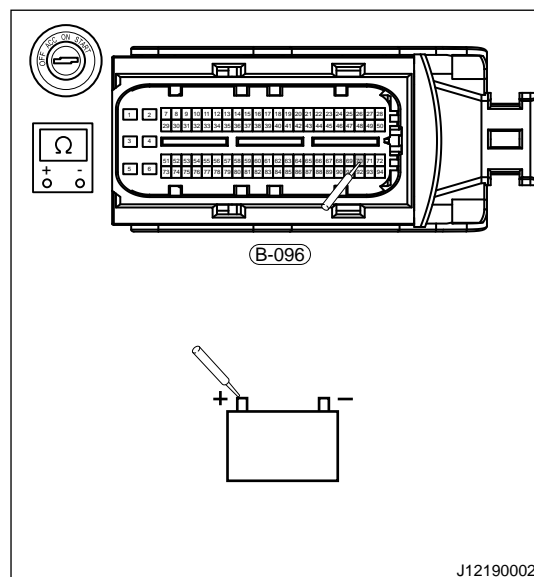
OK

3	Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in drive chain state relay feedback circuit
----------	---

- (a) Disconnect the engine compartment fuse and relay box connector (B-065).
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of ECU B-096 (70) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistance of ECM B-096 (70) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

Check and repair circuit.

OK

4	Check Engine Control Module (ECM)
----------	--

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

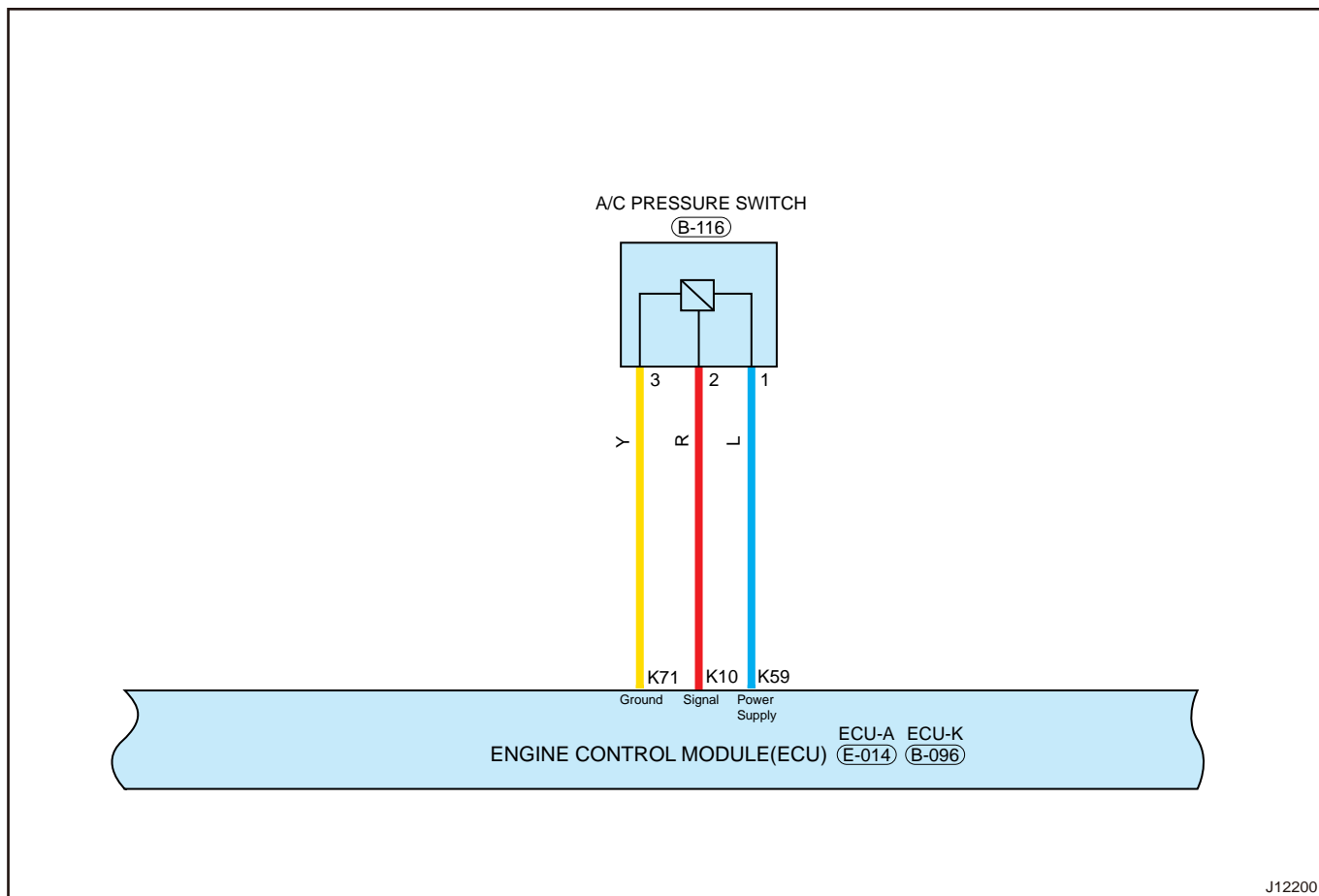
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **A/C Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage High/Low**

DTC	P053300	A/C Refrigerant Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit High
DTC	P053200	A/C Refrigerant Pressure Sensor "A" Circuit Low

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check A/C pressure sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if A/C pressure sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

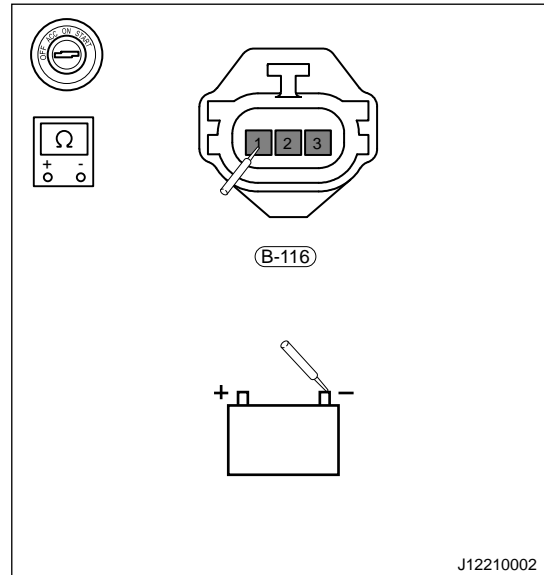
Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

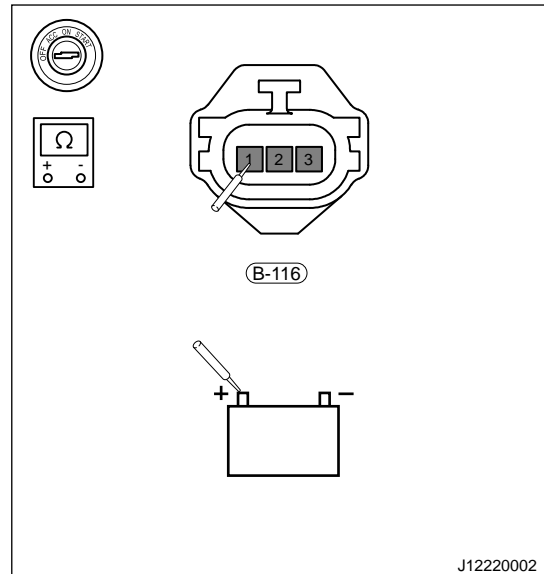
2

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in A/C pressure sensor circuit

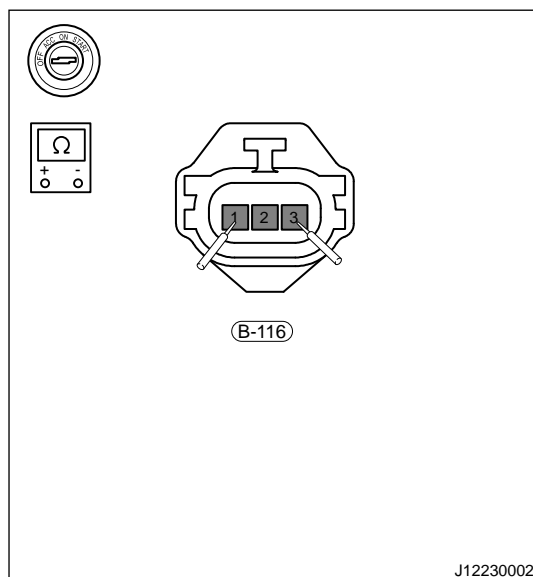
- (a) Disconnect the A/C pressure sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of A/C pressure sensor B-116 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of A/C pressure sensor B-116 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



- (e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of A/C pressure sensor B-116 (1, 2, 3) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG

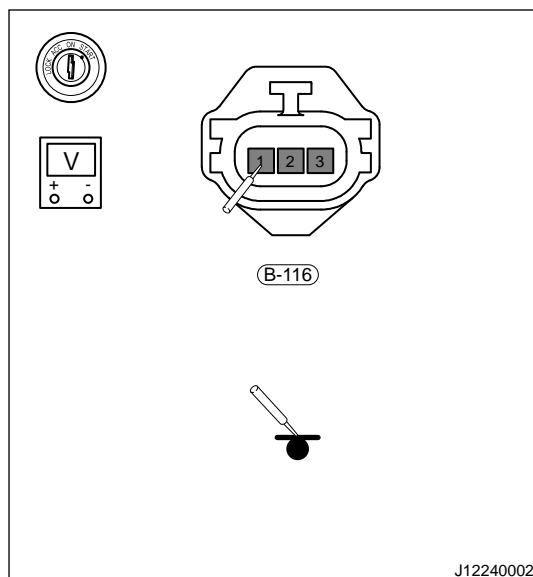
Check and repair circuit.

OK

3

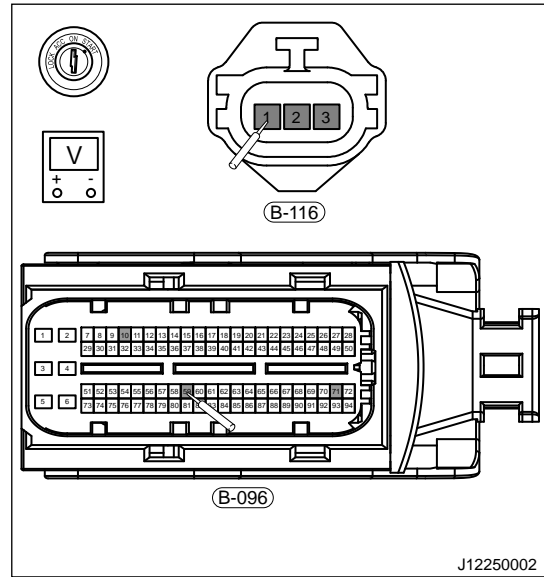
Check A/C pressure sensor power supply / ground / signal

- (a) Connect A/C pressure sensor and ECM (B-096) connectors
 (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (c) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure voltages of A/C pressure sensor B-116 (1, 2, 3) with red probe.

Power supply terminal: 5 V**Ground terminal: < 0.2 V****Voltage of signal terminal should increase as the pressure rises**

- (d) Using voltage band of multimeter (voltage drop method), connect black probe to ECM B-096 (59, 10, 71), measure A/C pressure sensor B-116 (1, 2, 3) with red probe.

Test voltage drop value should be less approximately 0.2 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

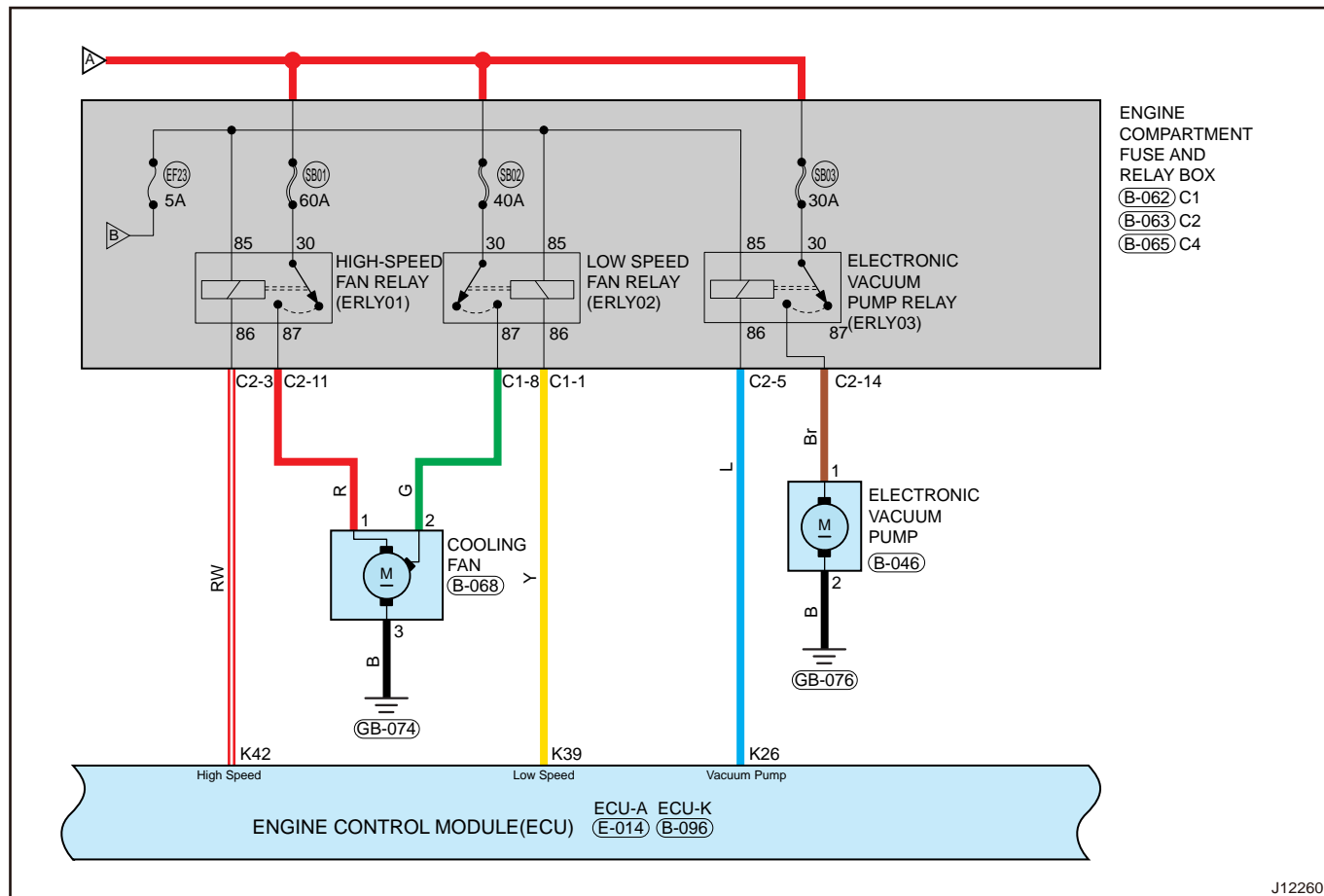
■ Brake Vacuum Pump Control Circuit Open / Voltage Too Low / Too High

DTC	P050F00	Brake Assist Vacuum Too Low
DTC	P258A00	Vacuum Pump Control Circuit Open

DTC	P258C00	Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "A" Low
DTC	P258D00	Vacuum Pump Control Circuit "A" High

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check electric vacuum pump connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if electric vacuum pump connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check electric vacuum pump relay

(a) Replace the electric vacuum pump relay in engine compartment fuse and relay box.

NG Replace electric vacuum pump relay.

OK

3 Check electric vacuum pump relay coil terminal power supply fuse

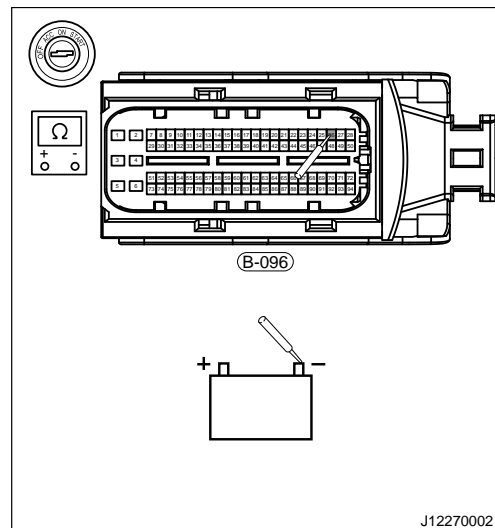
(a) Check if fuse SB03 30A in engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

NG Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

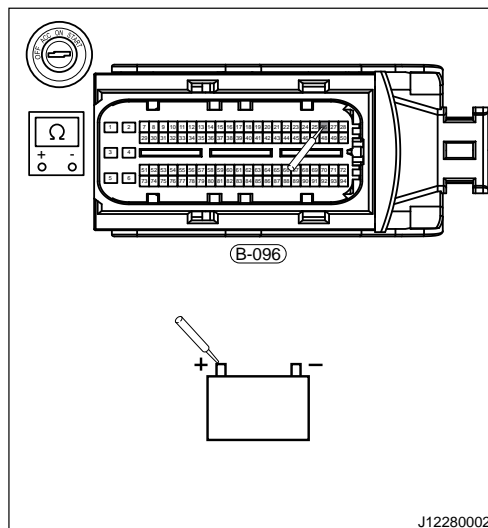
OK

4 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in electric vacuum pump relay control circuit

- (a) Unplug the electric vacuum pump relay.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of ECU B-096 (26) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistance of ECM B-096 (26) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

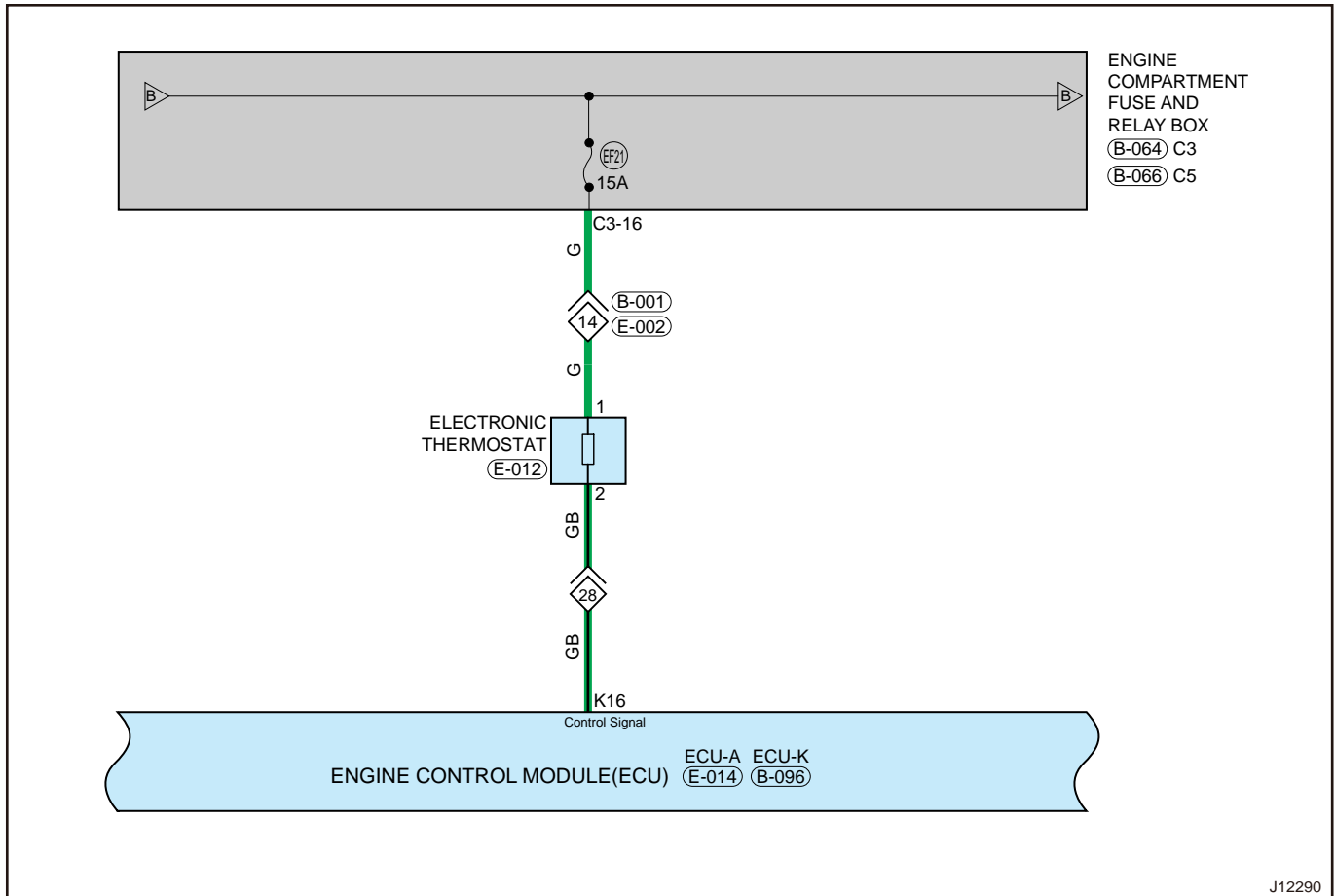
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Electronic Thermostat Control Circuit Open / Voltage Too Low / Too High

DTC	P059700	Thermostat Heater Control Circuit Open
DTC	P059800	Thermostat Heater Control Circuit Low
DTC	P059900	Thermostat Heater Control Circuit High

■ Description
Circuit Diagram



J12290

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check electronic thermostat connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if electronic thermostat connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check electronic thermostat power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuse EF21 15A in engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

NG

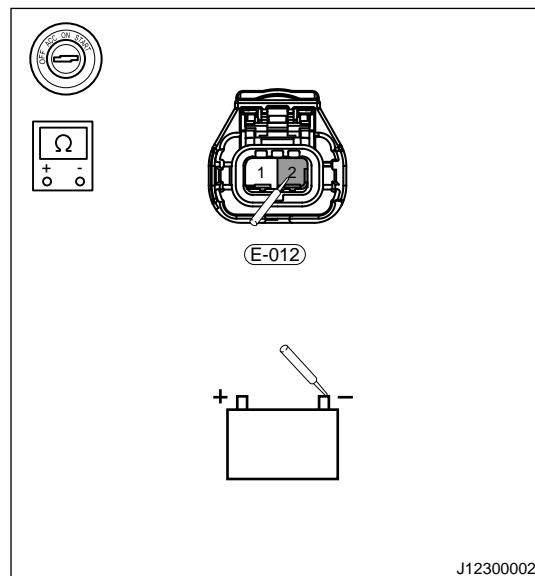
Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

OK

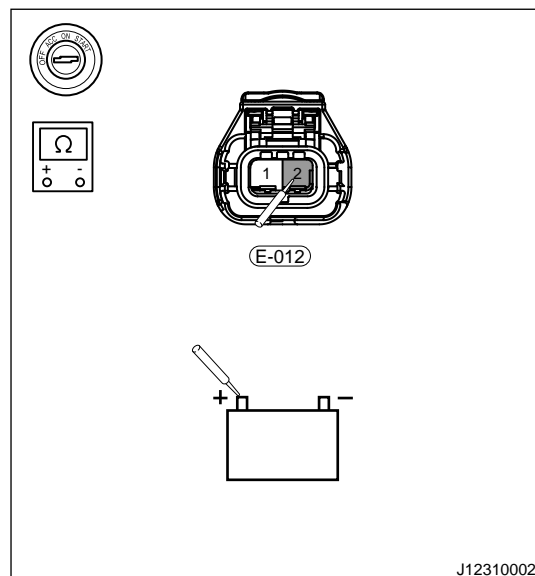
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in electronic thermostat control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the electronic thermostat connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of electronic thermostat E-012 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistance of electronic thermostat E-012 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



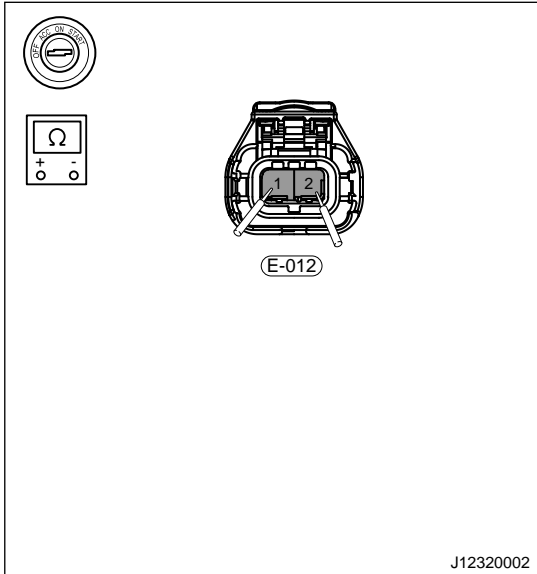
NG

Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check if circuits of electronic thermostat themselves are shorted to each other or opened

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of electronic thermostat E-012 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other or opened.



NG Replace electronic thermostat assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Ambient Temperature Sensor Circuit Voltage Too Low / Too High

DTC	P007200	Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Circuit "A" Low
DTC	P007300	Ambient Air Temperature Sensor Circuit "A" High

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

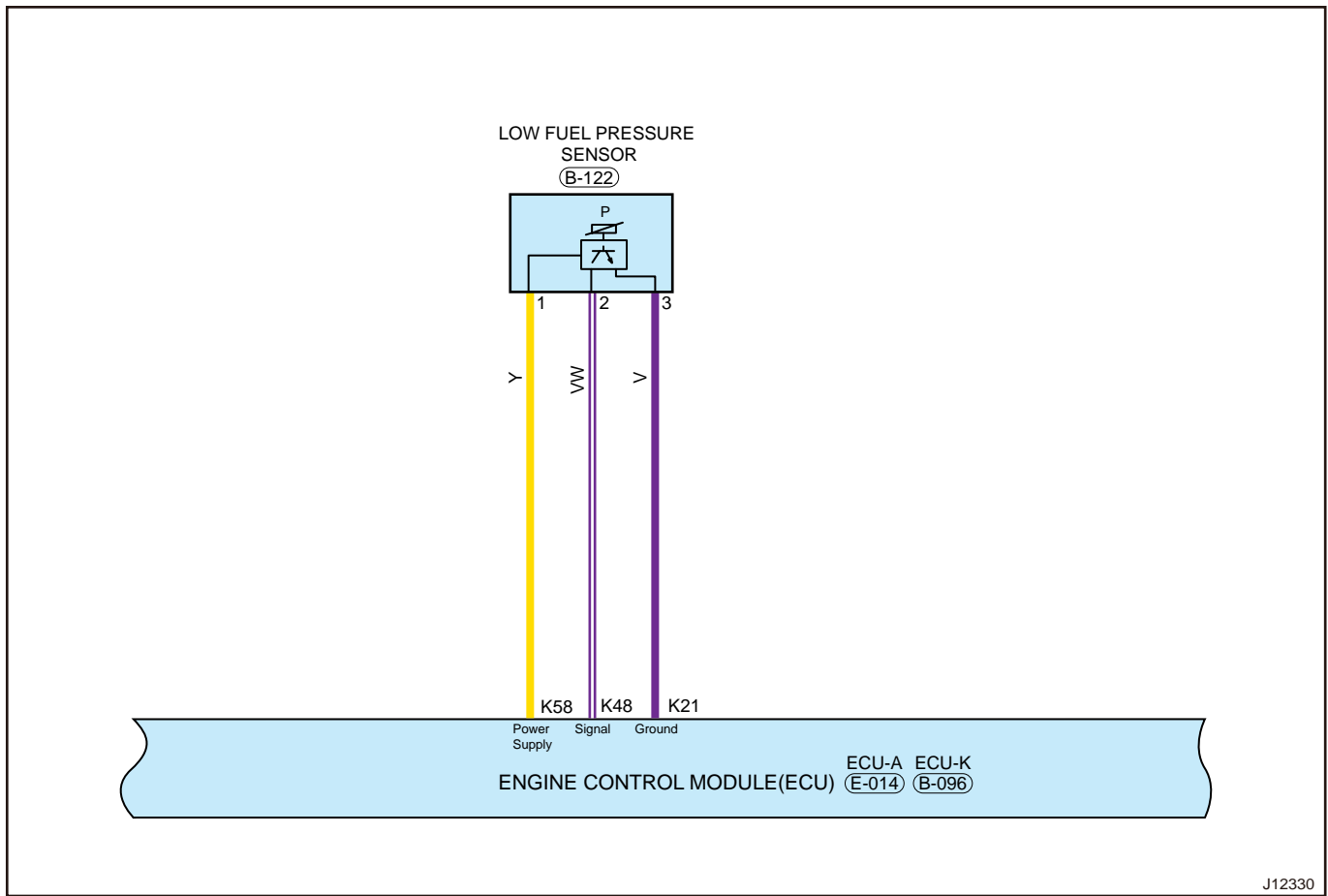
Read A/C system DTCs and refer to A/C system diagnosis.

■ Low Pressure Fuel Pressure Sensor Malfunction

DTC	P254029	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Positive Offset
DTC	P016F00	DECOS Low Pressure Oil Passage PWM Control Deviation Too Large
DTC	P137000	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Relative Pressure Too Low
DTC	P137100	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Relative Pressure Too High
DTC	P254028	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit Bank 1-Negative Offset
DTC	P254100	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage Too Low
DTC	P008A00	DECOS Low Pressure Oil Passage Pressure Too Low
DTC	P254200	DECOS Oil Passage Pressure Sensor Circuit High Voltage

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J12330

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check low pressure fuel pressure sensor connector
----------	--

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if low pressure fuel pressure sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG	Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
-----------	--

OK

2	Check low pressure end fuel pressure
----------	---

- (a) Using the fuel pressure gauge to test if low pressure end fuel pressure is met the standard.

NG

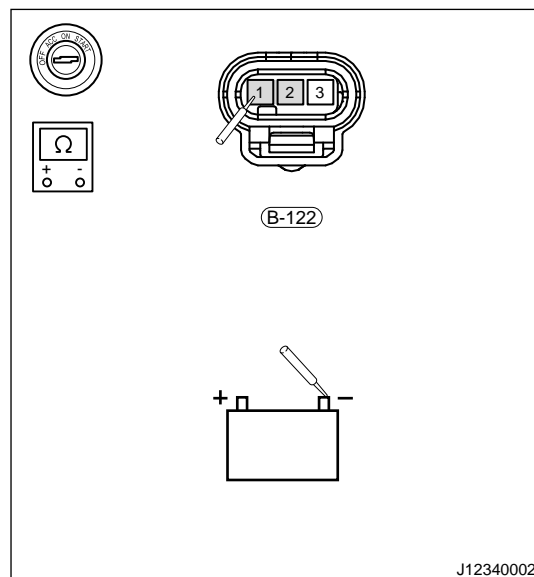
Replace electric fuel pump assembly.

OK

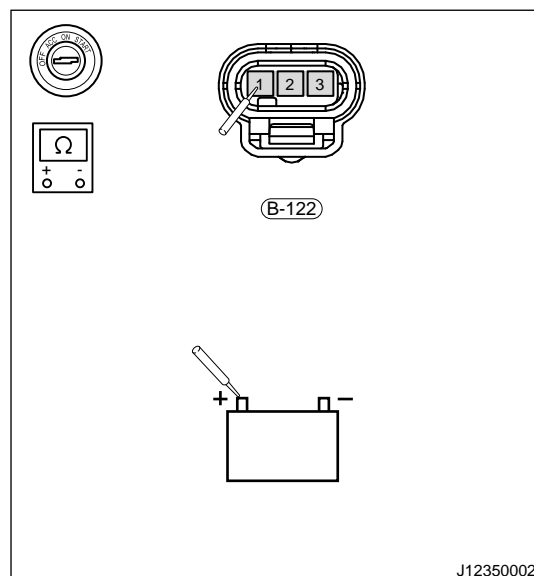
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in A/C pressure sensor circuit

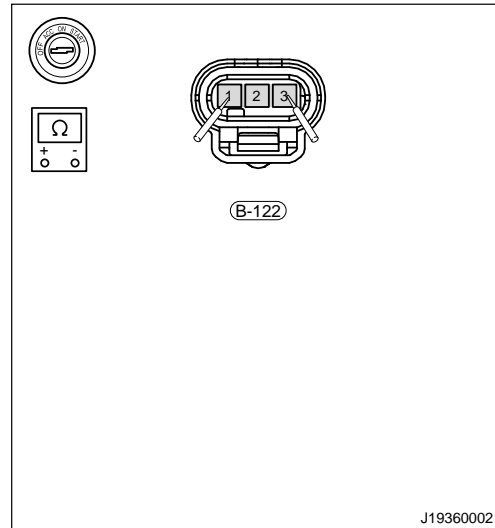
- (a) Disconnect the low pressure fuel pressure sensor connector.
 (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
 (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of low pressure fuel pressure sensor B-122 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of low pressure fuel pressure sensor B-122 (1, 2, 3) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of low pressure fuel pressure sensor B-122 (1, 2, 3) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check if circuits of low pressure fuel pressure sensor themselves are shorted to each other or opened

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of low pressure fuel pressure sensor (1, 2, 3) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other or opened.

NG Replace low pressure fuel pressure sensor assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

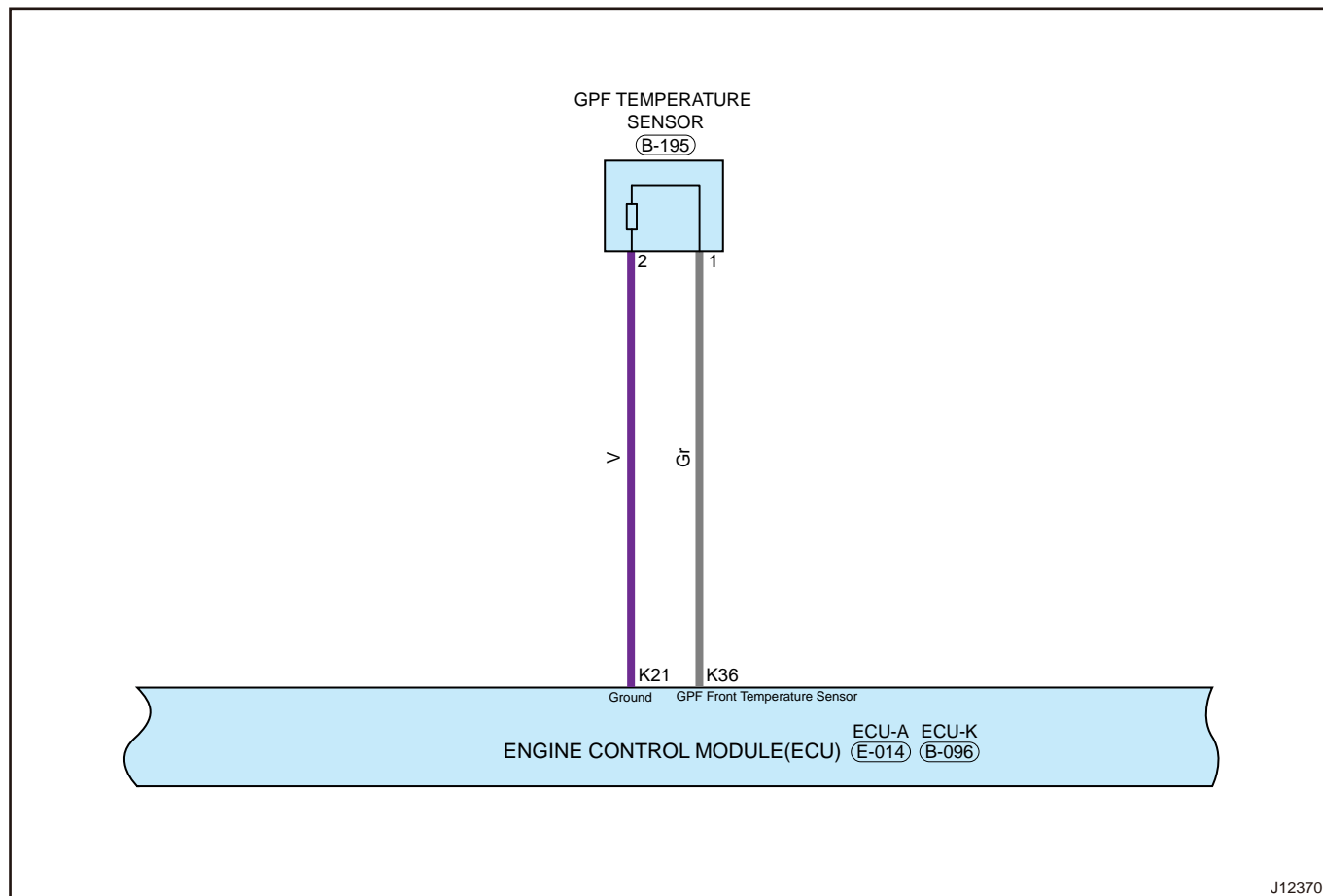
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Particulate Filter Temperature Sensor Error

DTC	P20E224	Particulate Filter Upstream Temperature Sensor Cold Start Correction Improper (Positive Deviation)
DTC	P20E223	Particulate Filter Upstream Temperature Sensor Cold Start Correction Improper (Negative Deviation)
DTC	P208062	Excessive Deviation Between Particulate Filter Upstream Temperature Sensor Signal Model and Actual
DTC	P054600	Particulate Filter Upstream Temperature Sensor Circuit Voltage High
DTC	P054500	Particulate Filter Upstream Temperature Sensor Circuit Voltage Low
DTC	P20802A	Particulate Filter Upstream Temperature Sensor Signal Stuck

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J12370

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check GPF temperature sensor connector

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if GPF temperature sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

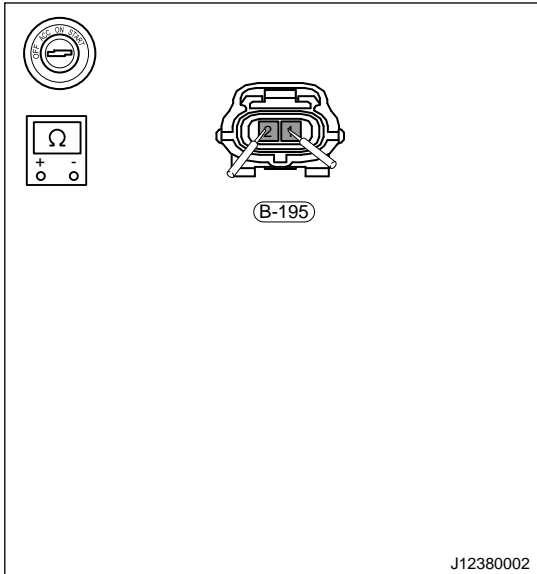
NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check GPF temperature sensor internal resistance

- (a) Disconnect the GPF temperature sensor connector
- (b) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure if resistances of GPF temperature sensor B-195 (1, 2) are normal with red and black probes respectively.

Normal resistance value at ambient temperature (10 - 30°C) should be: 200 - 230 Ω.

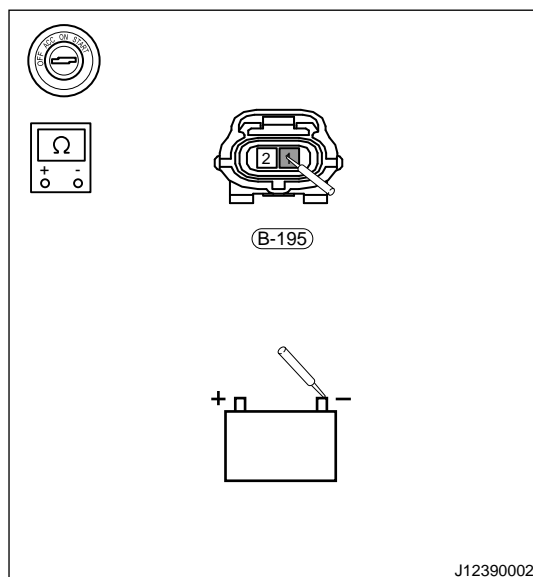


NG Replace GPF temperature sensor assembly.

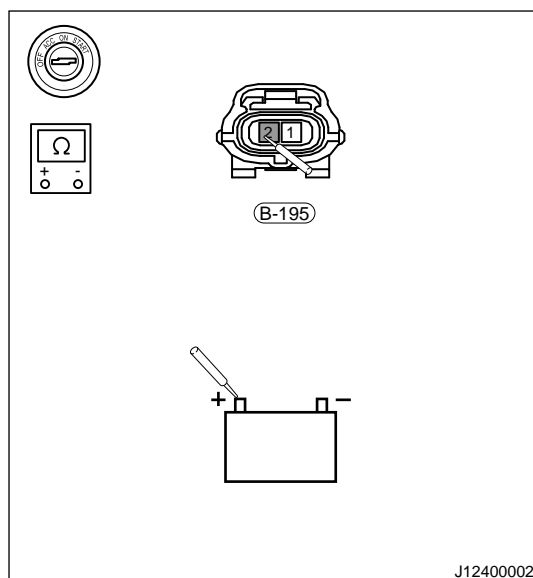
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in GPF temperature sensor circuit

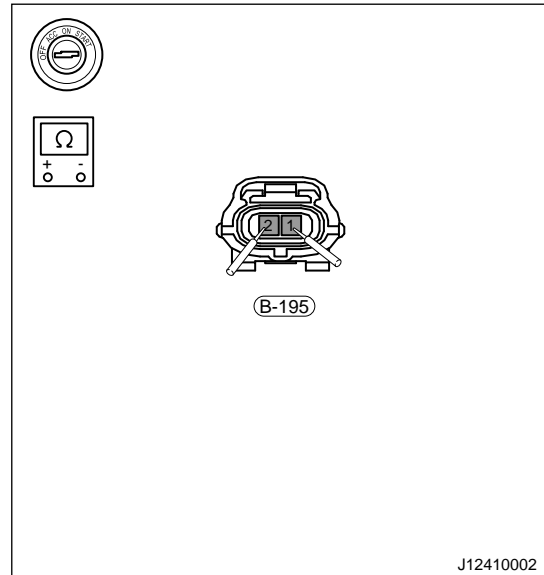
- (a) Disconnect the GPF temperature sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of GPF temperature sensor B-195 (1) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of GPF temperature sensor B-195 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of GPF temperature sensor B-195 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.



NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

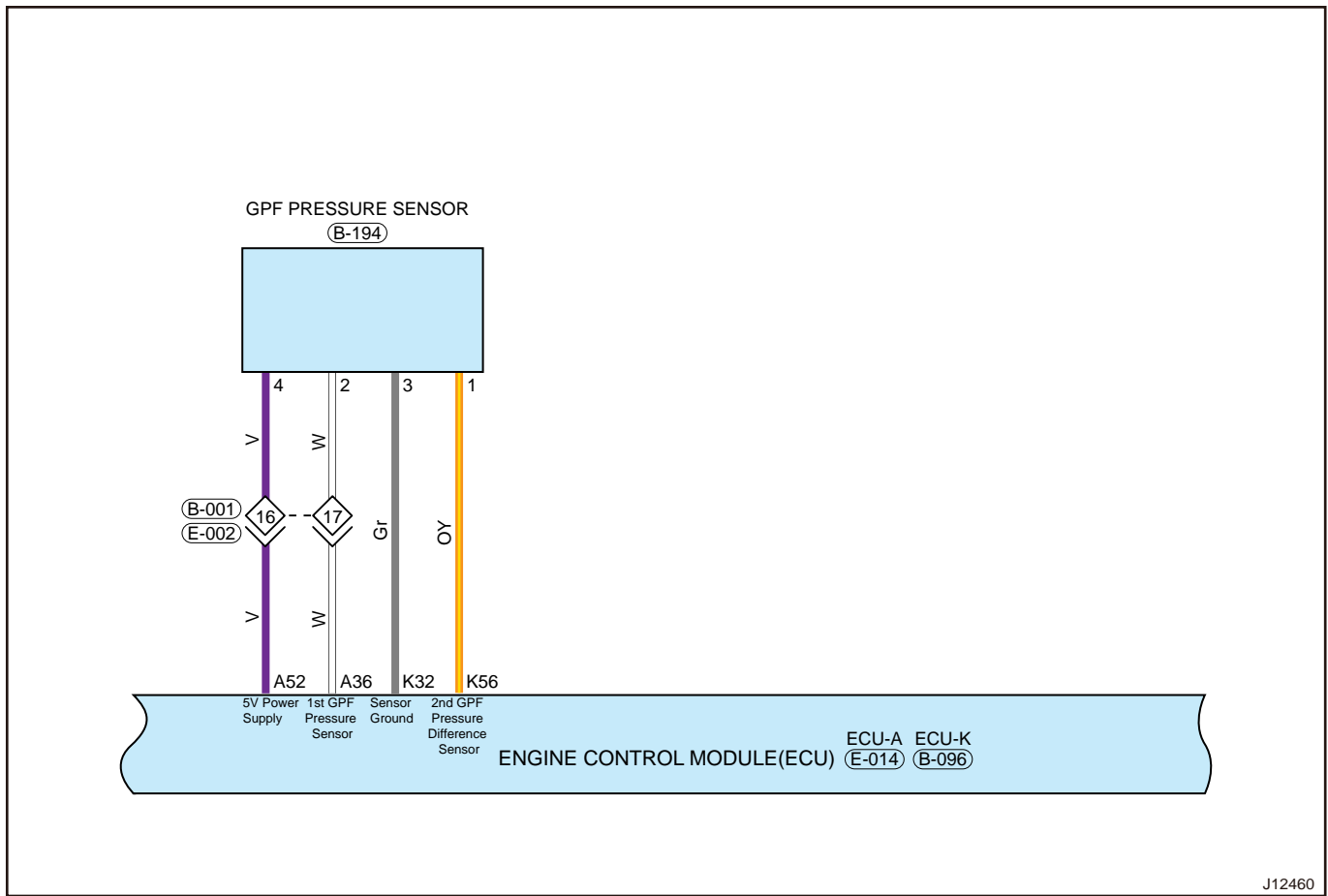
■ Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Malfunction

DTC	P12A300	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Rear Pipe Connecting Line Abnormal / Completely Blocked / Sensor Stuck
DTC	U060100	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage Low (Downstream)

DTC	U060141	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Data Inspection Non-plausible (Upstream)
DTC	P129300	Particulate Filter Upstream Pressure Sensor Channel 1 Digital Signal Non-plausible (SENT Signal High or Low)
DTC	P245500	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage High (Upstream)
DTC	P245400	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage Low (Upstream)
DTC	P129100	GPF Dynamic Response Performance of Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Non-plausible / Line Abnormal
DTC	P12E100	GPF Dynamic Response Performance of Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Non-plausible / Line Abnormal (Downstream)
DTC	P12E300	Particulate Filter Downstream Pressure Sensor Channel 1 Digital Signal Non-plausible (SENT Signal High or Low)
DTC	P12A200	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Line Connection Error
DTC	P246100	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage High (Downstream)
DTC	P246000	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Circuit Voltage Low (Downstream)
DTC	U060200	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Sent Communication Failure (Downstream)
DTC	U060241	Particulate Filter Differential Pressure Sensor Data Inspection Non-plausible (Downstream)

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J12460

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check GPF pressure sensor connector
----------	--

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if GPF pressure sensor connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG	Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.
-----------	--

OK

2	Check GPF pressure sensor connecting line
----------	--

- (a) Check if GPF pressure sensor connecting line falls off or is connected incorrectly.

NG

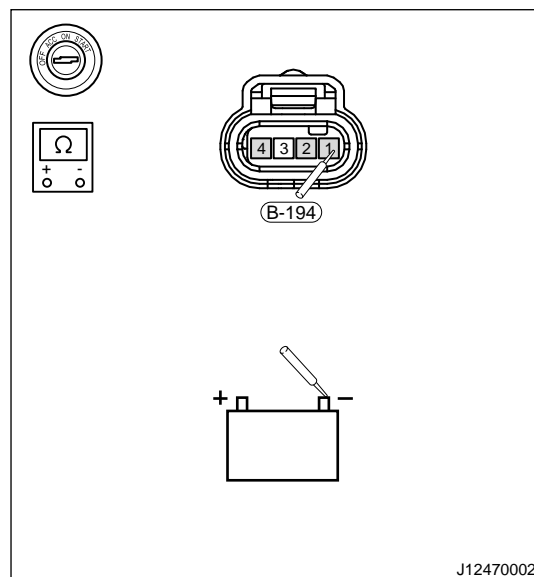
Adjust the connecting line.

OK

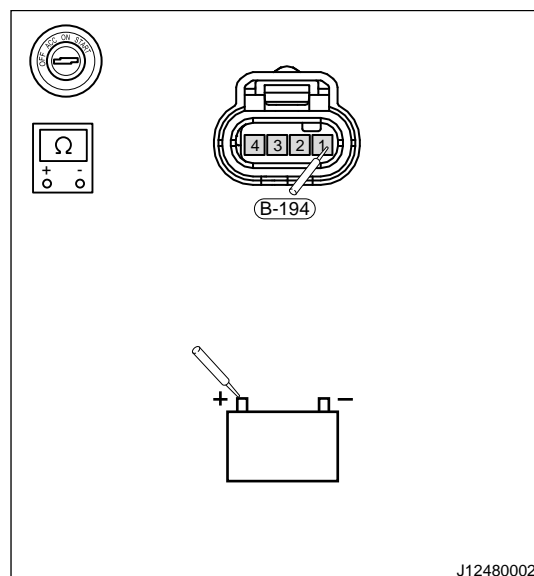
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply or short to each other in GPF pressure sensor circuit

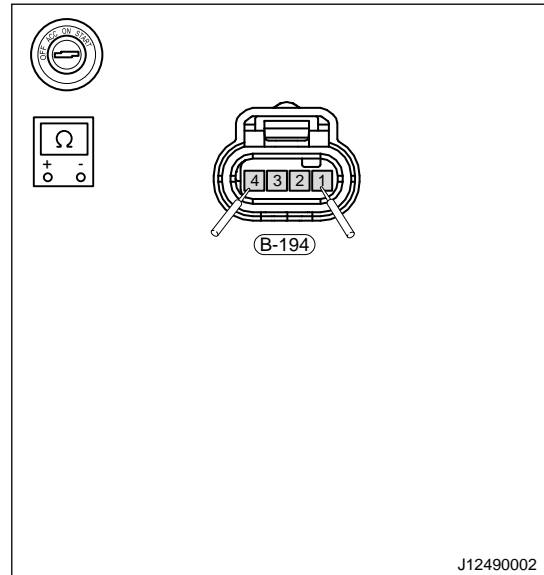
- (a) Disconnect the GPF pressure sensor connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistances of GPF pressure sensor B-194 (1, 2, 4) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistances of GPF pressure sensor B-194 (1, 2, 3, 4) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of GPF pressure sensor B-194 (1, 2, 3, 4) with red and black probes respectively. Check if circuits are shorted to each other.

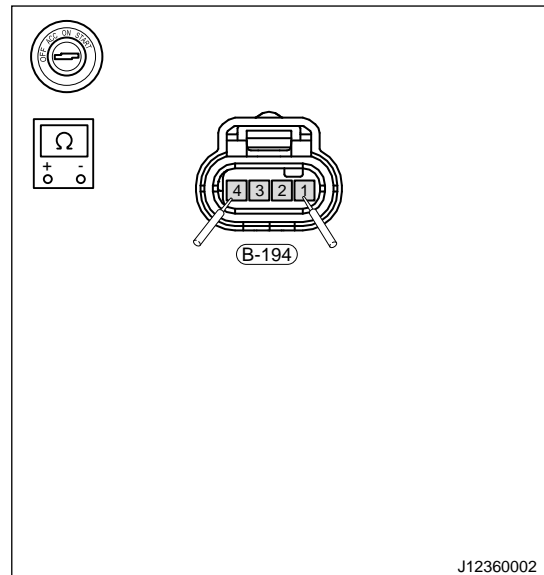


NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check if circuits of GPF pressure sensor themselves are shorted to each other

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of GPF pressure sensor B-194 (1, 2, 3, 4) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other.



NG Replace GPF pressure sensor assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Repair or replace new module.

NG

6	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Particulate Filter Removed / Pressure Sensor / Line Abnormal Fault**

DTC	P226D00	Particulate Filter Removed / Pressure Sensor / Line Abnormal Fault
------------	----------------	---

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check GPF particulate filter
----------	-------------------------------------

- (a) Check if GPF particulate filter is removed.
 (b) Check if GPF particulate filter is melted.

NG

Replace GPF particulate filter.

OK

2	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

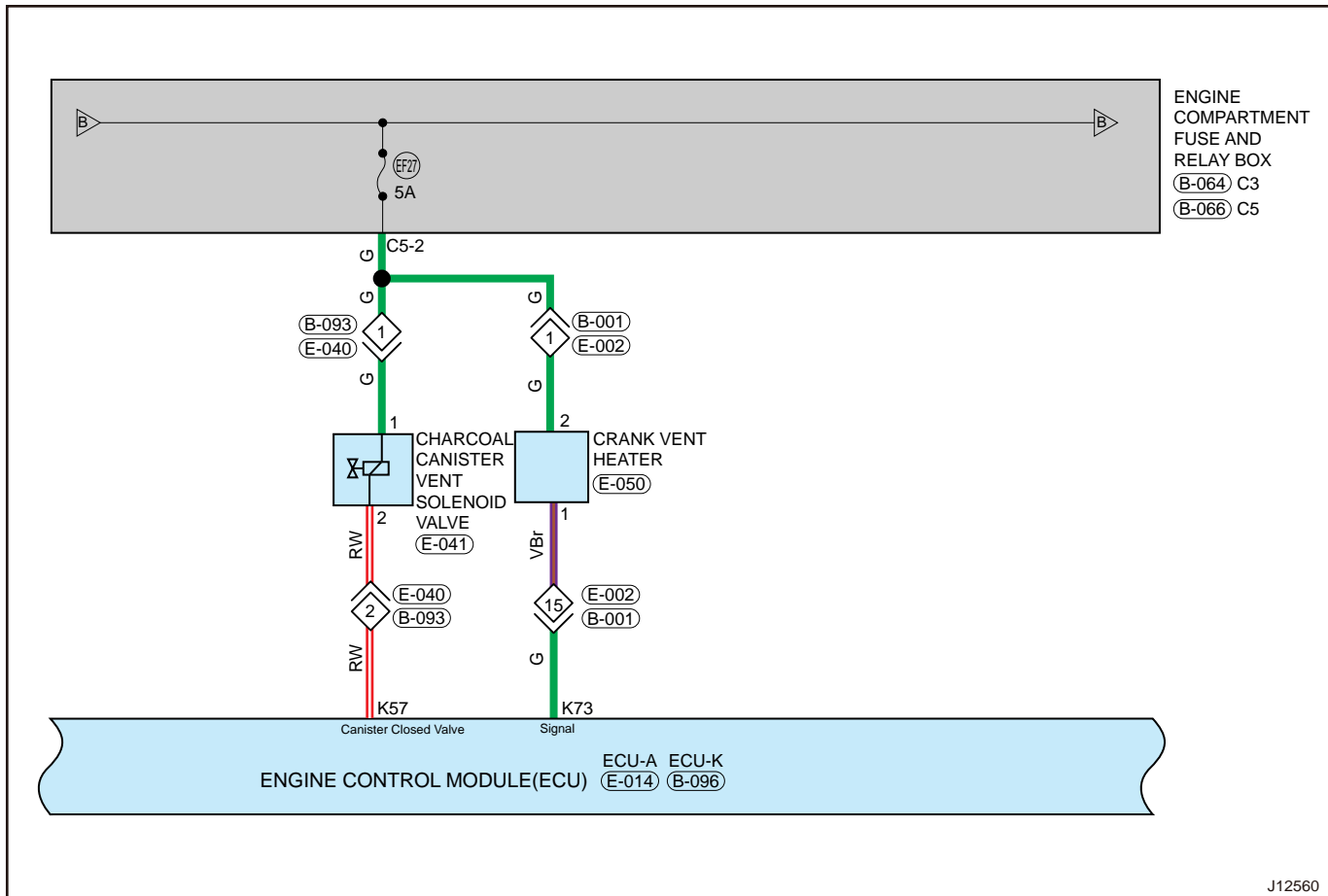
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Crankcase Heating Line Circuit Open / Voltage Too High / Too Low

DTC	P053A00	Crankcase Heating Line Circuit Open
DTC	P053C00	Crankcase Heating Line Circuit Voltage Too High
DTC	P053B00	Crankcase Heating Line Circuit Voltage Too Low

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check crankshaft heating valve connector
----------	---

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if crankshaft heating valve connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check crankshaft heating valve power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuse EF27 5A in engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

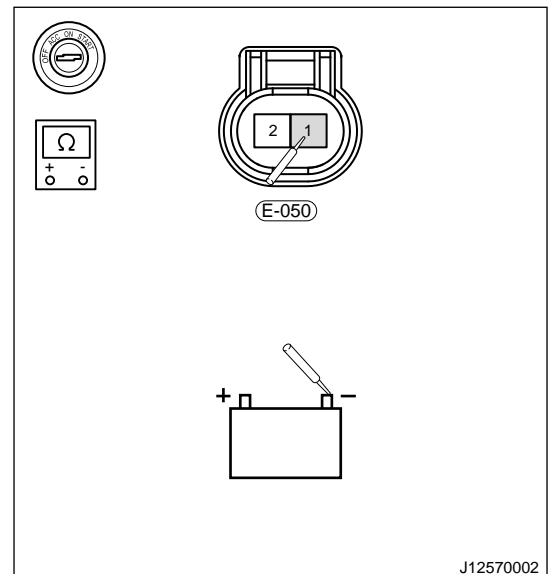
NG

Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

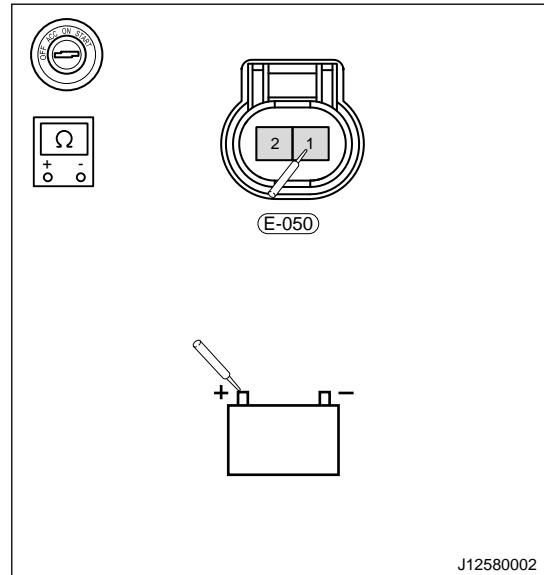
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in crankshaft heating valve control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the crankshaft heating valve connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, and measure resistance of crankshaft heating valve E-050 (1) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, and measure resistances of crankshaft heating valve E-050 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.

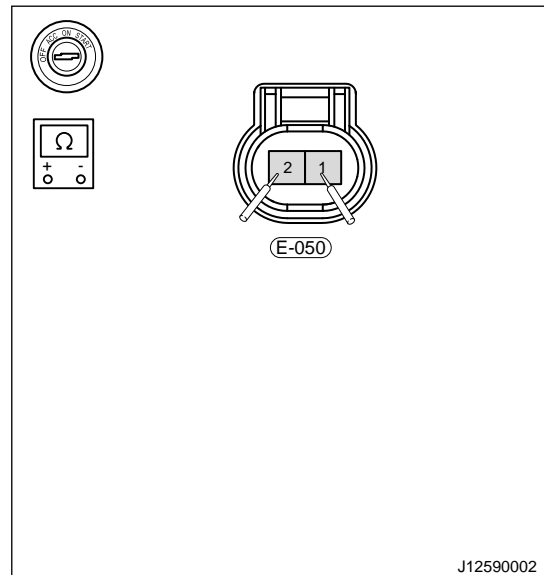


NG Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check if circuits of crankshaft heating valve themselves are shorted to each other or opened

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of crankshaft heating valve E-050 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other or opened.



NG Replace crankshaft heating valve assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

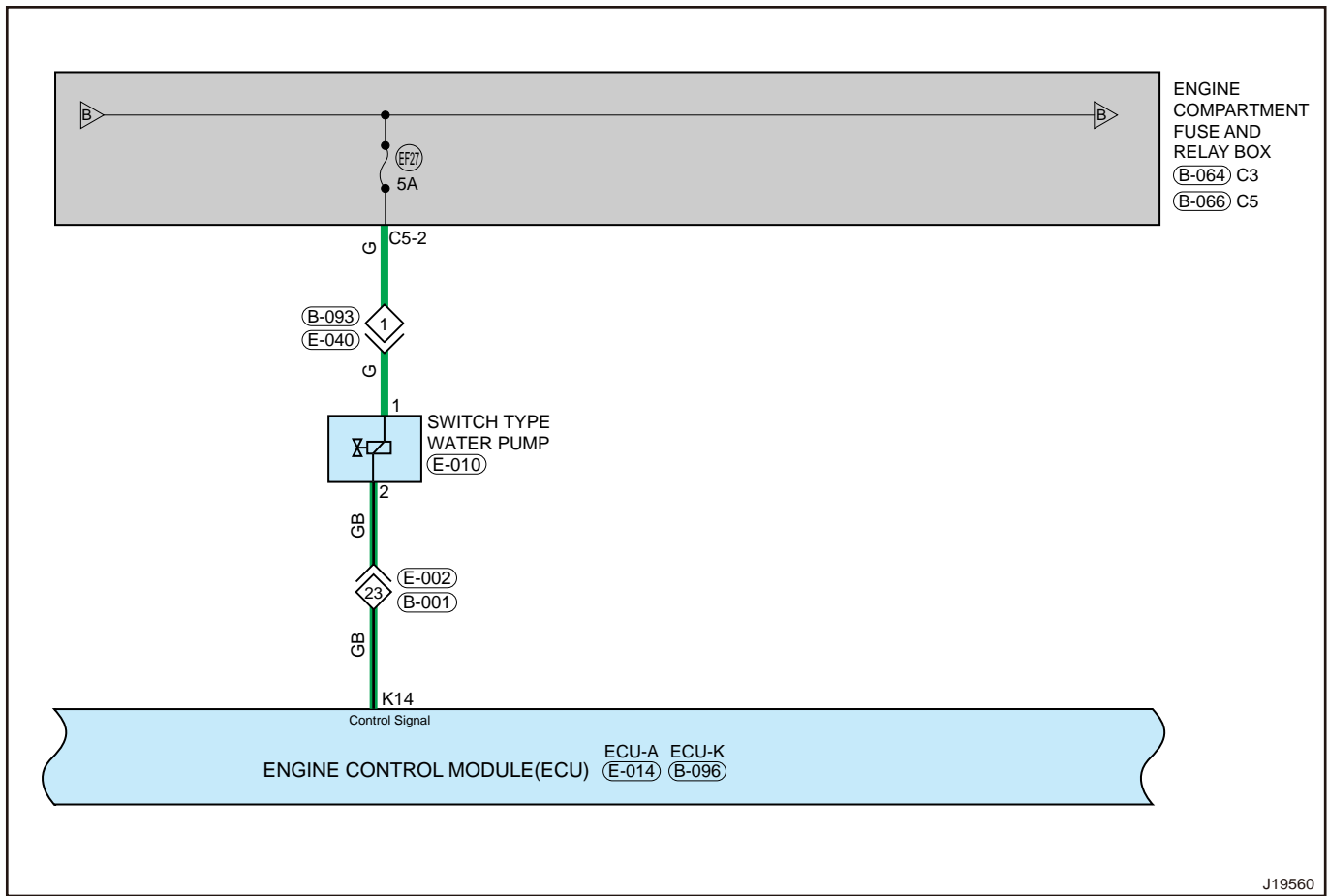
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Clutch Water Pump Control Circuit Malfunction**

DTC	P260300	Coolant Pump "A" Control Circuit High
DTC	P260200	Coolant Pump "A" Control Circuit Low
DTC	P260000	Coolant Pump "A" Control Circuit Open

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



J19560

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check water pump connector
----------	-----------------------------------

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery.
- (b) Check if water pump connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2	Check water pump power supply fuse
----------	---

- (a) Check if fuse EF21 15A in engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

NG

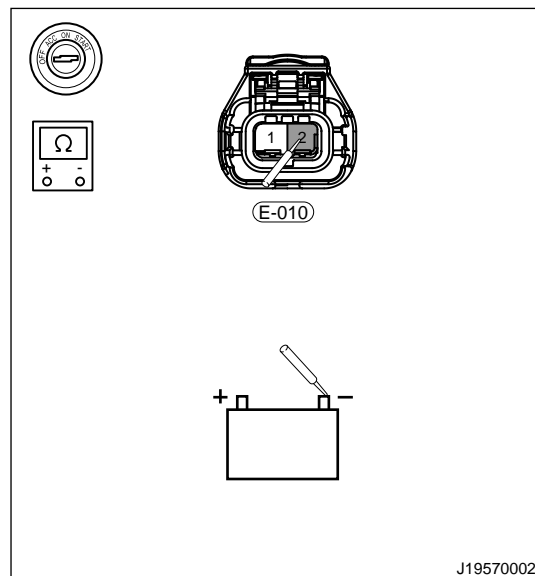
Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

OK

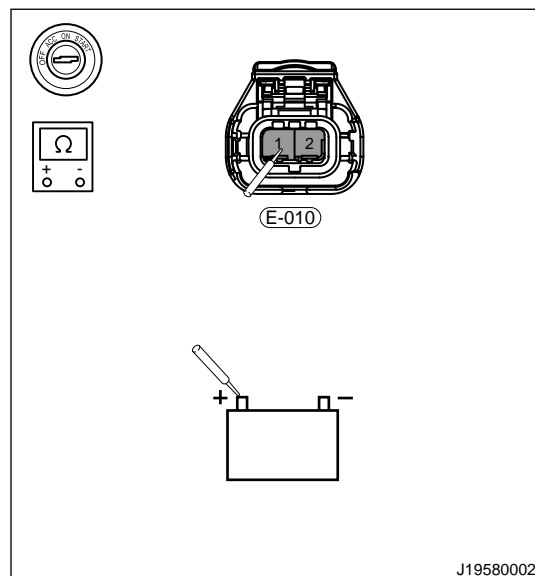
3

Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in water pump control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the water pump connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of water pump E-010 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistance of water pump E-010 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



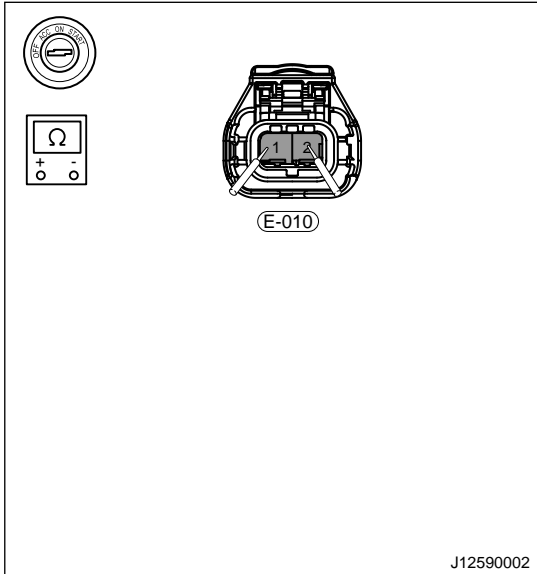
NG

Check and repair circuit.

OK

4 Check if circuits of water pump themselves are shorted to each other or opened

(a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of water pump E-010 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other or opened.



NG Replace water pump assembly.

OK

5 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

(a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
 (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6 Reconfirm DTCs

(a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

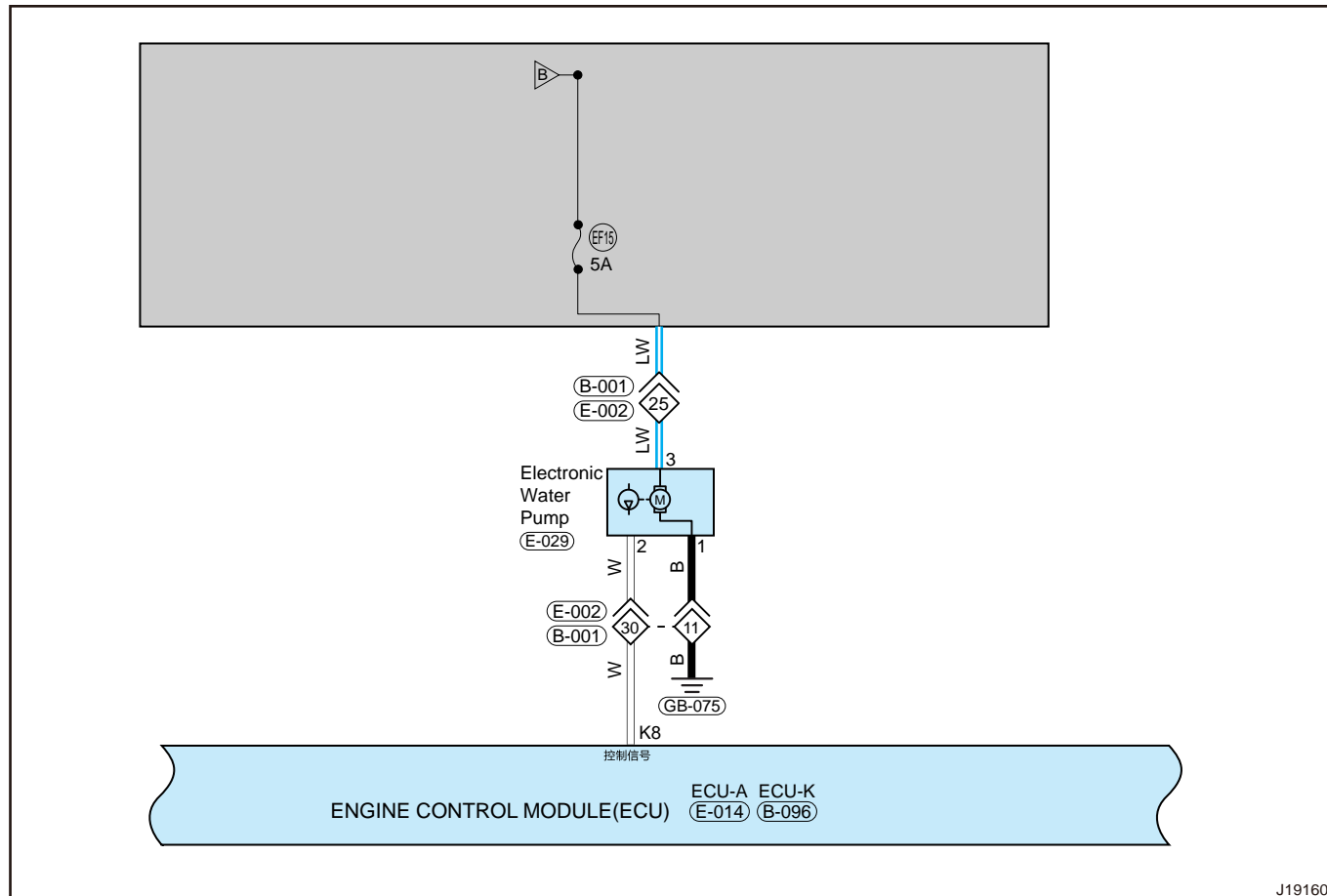
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Electric Water Pump Control Circuit Malfunction

DTC	P261D00	Coolant Pump "B" Control Circuit High
DTC	P261C00	Coolant Pump "B" Control Circuit Low

■ Description

Circuit Diagram



J19160

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Check electric water pump connector

- Disconnect the negative battery.
- Check if electric water pump connector is loose, and contact between male and female terminals is in good condition.

NG

Repair and adjust connector, or replace it.

OK

2 Check electric water pump power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuse EF15 5A in engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

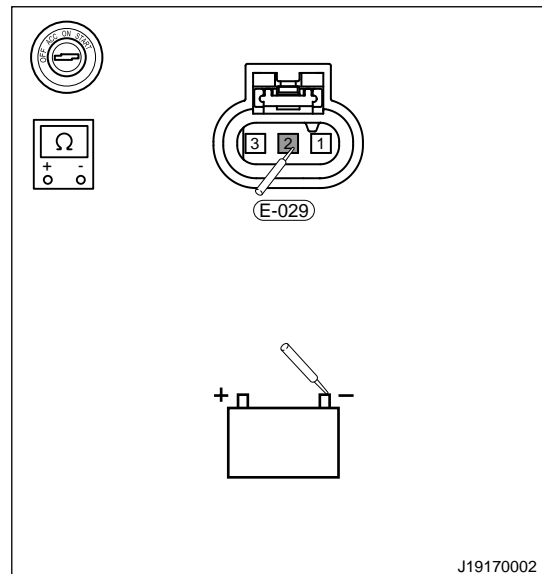
NG

Check and repair short circuit malfunction of circuit.

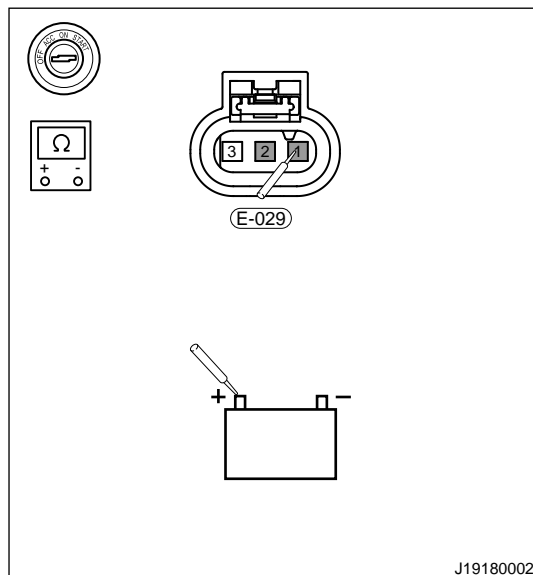
OK

3 Check for short circuit to ground / power supply in electric water pump control circuit

- (a) Disconnect the electric water pump connector.
- (b) Disconnect the ECM connector (B-096).
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal, measure resistance of electric water pump E-029 (2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to ground.



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery positive terminal, measure resistance of electric water pump E-029 (1, 2) with red probe respectively. Check if circuit is short to power supply.



NG

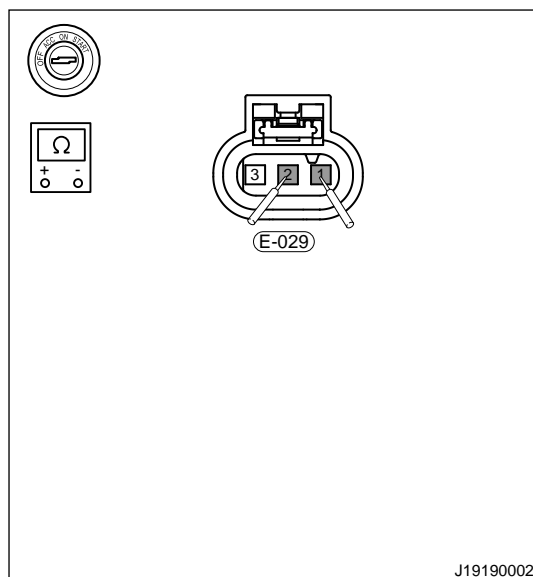
Check and repair circuit.

OK

4

Check if circuits of electric water pump themselves are shorted to each other or opened

- (a) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistances of electric water pump E-029 (1, 2) with red and black probes respectively; Check if they are shorted to each other or opened.



NG

Replace electric water pump assembly.

OK

5

Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK Repair or replace new module.

NG

6	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

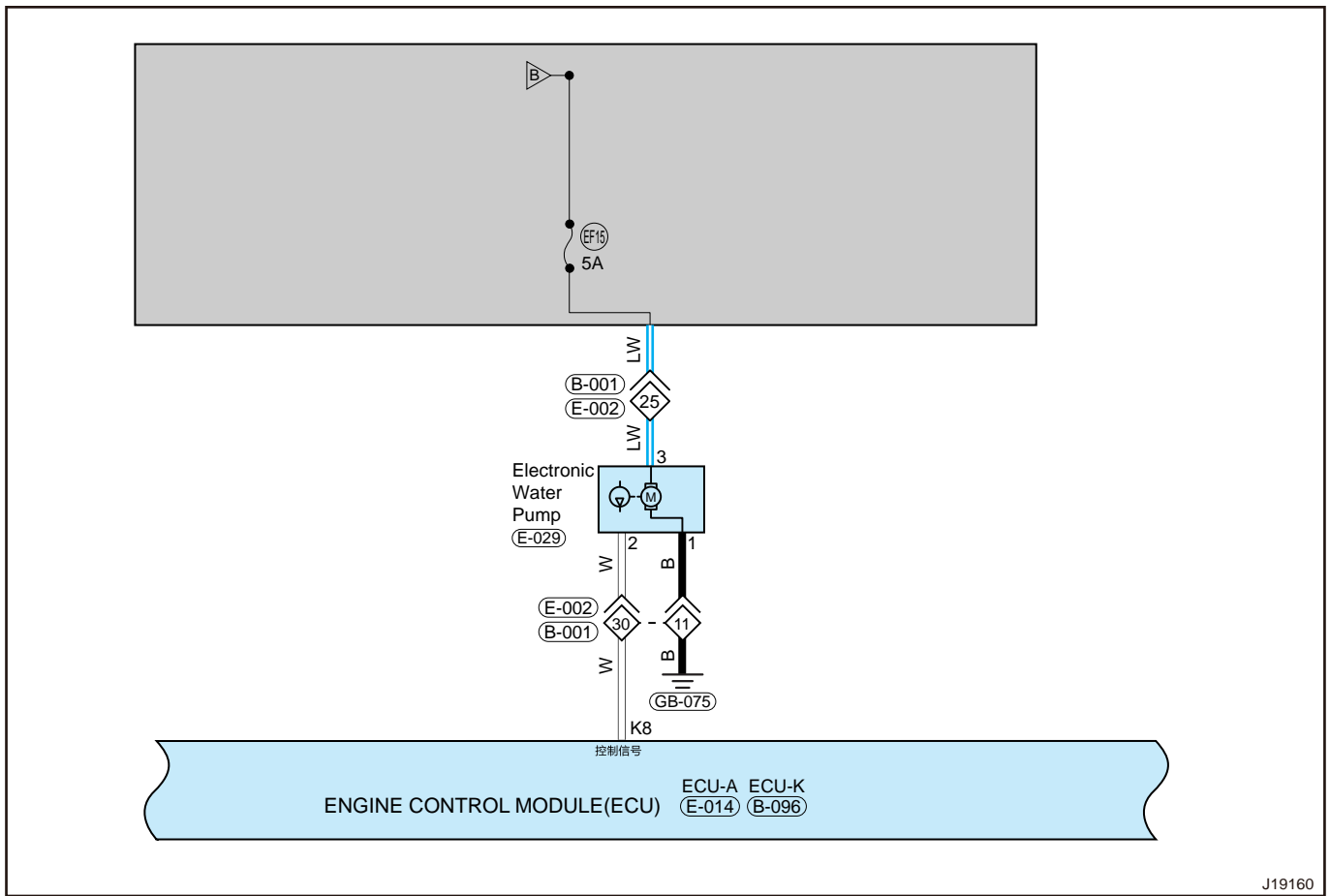
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Electric Water Pump Block / Low Speed Error**

DTC	P130200	Auxiliary Water Pump Low Speed Error
DTC	P130500	Auxiliary Water Pump Over Temperature Error
DTC	P130800	Auxiliary Water Pump Stall Error

■ **Description**

Circuit Diagram



J19160

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check coolant

- (a) Check if coolant level is within the specified range.
- (b) Check for air in the cooling system.

NG

Add the coolant to specified value and perform air bleeding.

OK

2 Check if electric water pump itself operates normally

- (a) Check if electric water pump speed is normal.
- (b) Check if electric water pump is stuck.

NG **Replace electric water pump assembly.**

OK

3 Check Engine Control Module (ECM)

- (a) Remove Engine Control Module (ECM) from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new engine control module to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK **Repair or replace new module.**

NG

4 Reconfirm DTCs

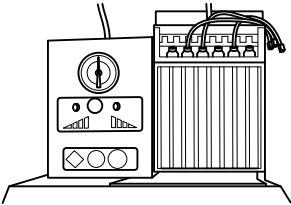
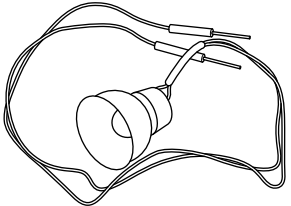
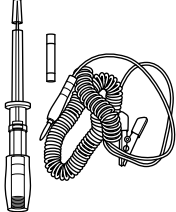
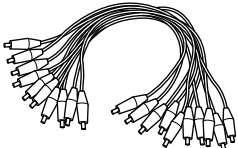
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

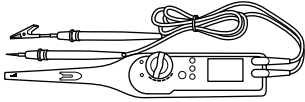
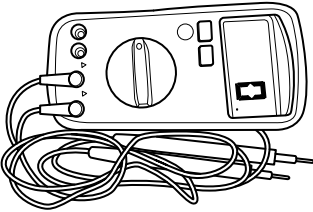
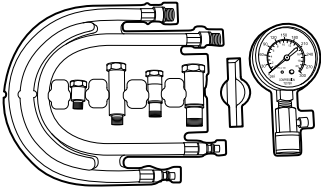
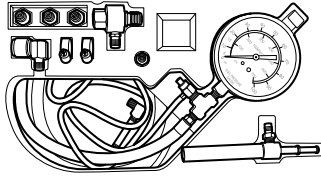
OK **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

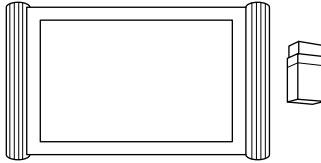
5.1 Tools

■ General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Fuel Injector Cleaning Analyzer	 <p>S00043</p>
21 W Test Light	 <p>S00061</p>
LED Test Light	 <p>S00077</p>
Jumper Wire	 <p>S00062</p>

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Diode Test Light	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00078</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Cylinder Pressure Gauge	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00033</p>
Fuel Pressure Gauge	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00035</p>

■ Special Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

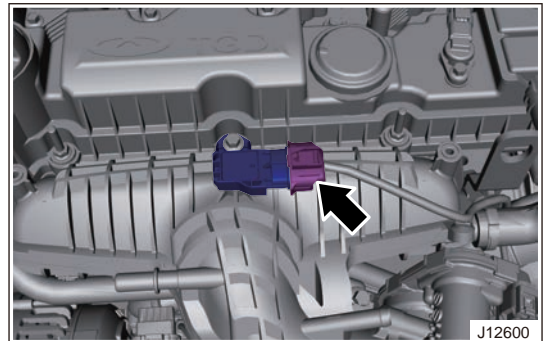
5.2 Intake Pressure/Temperature Sensor

■ Removal

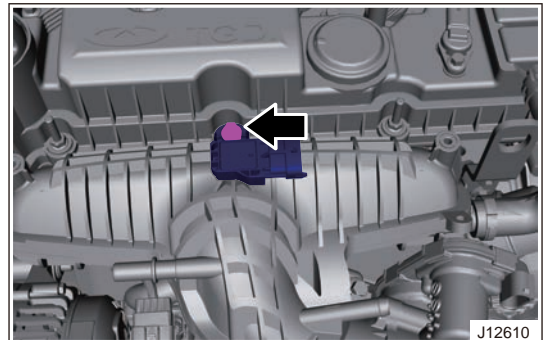
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intake pressure/temperature sensor.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing intake pressure/temperature sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Disconnect the intake pressure/temperature sensor connector.



- (5) Remove the intake pressure/temperature sensor fixing bolt and take it out carefully.



■ Inspection

- (1) Temperature sensor part: (Remove the connector) Turn digital multimeter to ohm band, connect two probes to sensor pins 1# and 2# respectively, the rated resistance is $2.5 \text{ k}\Omega \pm 5\%$ at 20°C . Measurement can also be performed by simulating. Specific operations are to send wind to the sensor with blow drier (be careful that blow drier shouldn't be too close to the sensor) and observe the changes of sensor resistance. The resistance should reduce at the moment.
- (2) Pressure sensor part: (Connect the connector) Turn digital multimeter to DC voltage band, ground the black probe, connect red probe to pins 3# and 4# respectively. Under idling status, there should be 5 V of reference voltage at pin 3#, and about 1 V of voltage at pin 4#; Under unloaded status, slowly open the throttle, the voltage of pin 4# has not changed too much; Quickly open the throttle, the voltage of pin 4# can reach about 4 V instantaneously (value changes with model), and then drops to about 1.7 V (value changes with model).

■ Installation

- (1) Install the intake pressure/temperature sensor fixing bolt.
Torque: $6 \pm 1 \text{ N m}$
- (2) Connect the intake pressure/temperature sensor connector.

5.3 Electronic throttle

■ Removal

- (1) For details about removal methods, refer to the removal steps of electronic throttle assembly in intake system.

■ Inspection

- (1) Judgment methods for specific mechanical damage: Valve plate should be in NLP position with power off and can rotate smoothly when flipping it by hand. If stuck occurs, it indicates that internal components may be damaged.
- (2) Simple measurement of internal sensors: (Disconnect the connector) Turn digital multimeter to ohm band.
 - 1) Connect two probes to pin IP1S and pin IPM respectively, flip valve plate by hand, and resistance should change continuously.
 - 2) Connect two probes to pin IP2S and pin IPM respectively, flip valve plate by hand, and resistance should change continuously.
 - 3) If there are conditions, you can fully close or fully open throttle body with constant current source [fully close throttle body with 3A current (UMA), fully open throttle body with 2A current (OMA)], connect 5 V constant voltage source to pins UIP and IPM simultaneously, measure the output voltage values of IP1S and IP2S at fully close and fully open positions.

■ Installation

- (1) For details about installation methods, refer to the installation steps of electronic throttle assembly in intake system.

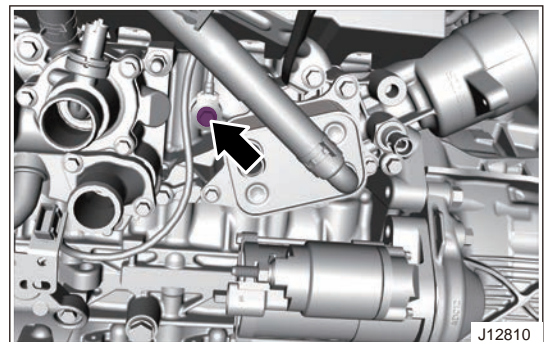
5.4 Knock Sensor

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing knock sensor.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing knock sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (5) Disconnect knock sensor connector, and remove knock sensor fixing bolt.



■ Inspection

Step	Operation	Test Value	Test Result	Subsequent Step
1	Turn digital multimeter to ohm band, measure resistance between pins 1 and 2 of knock sensor, it should be $4.9 \pm 0.5 \text{ M}\Omega$ at normal temperature	/	Yes	Next
			No	Replace knock sensor
2	digital multimeter to mV band, use a small hammer to tap near knock sensor, there should be a voltage signal	/	Yes	Check wire harness or diagnostic help
			No	Replace sensor

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be careful not to allow liquids such as oil, coolant, brake fluid and water to contact the sensor for a long periods of time.
- Do not use any type of gasket during installation. The sensor must be pressed against the cylinder block with its metal surface.
- When wiring the sensor signal cable, you should pay attention not to make the signal cable resonate, so as not to break.

(1) Install the knock sensor fixing bolt.

Torque: $20 \pm 3 \text{ N m}$

(2) Connect the knock sensor connector.

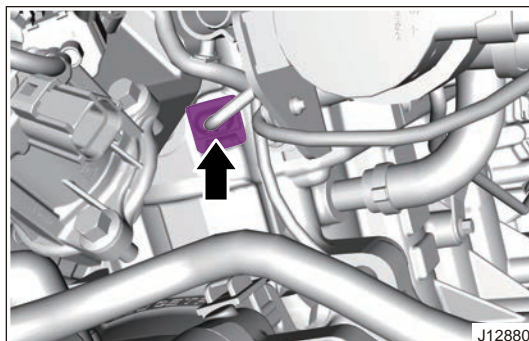
5.5 Coolant Temperature Sensor

■ Removal

⚠ Caution

- Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Disconnect coolant temperature sensor connector and remove coolant temperature sensor.



J12880

■ Inspection

Step	Operation	Test Value	Test Result	Subsequent Step
1	Remove coolant temperature sensor wire harness connector, use a multimeter to measure if resistance between two terminals of sensor is normal.	Rated resistance is $2.5\text{ k}\Omega \pm 10\%$ at 20°C .	Yes	Next
			No	Replace coolant temperature sensor
2	Connect coolant temperature sensor wire harness connector, turn ignition switch to ON, measure the voltage between two pins of coolant temperature sensor wire harness.	$5 \pm 0.5\text{ V}$	Yes	Diagnostic Help
				Check for continuity and ground of wire harness

■ Installation

- (1) Install coolant temperature sensor and connect sensor connector.

Torque: $15 \pm 1\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Install the engine trim cover.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

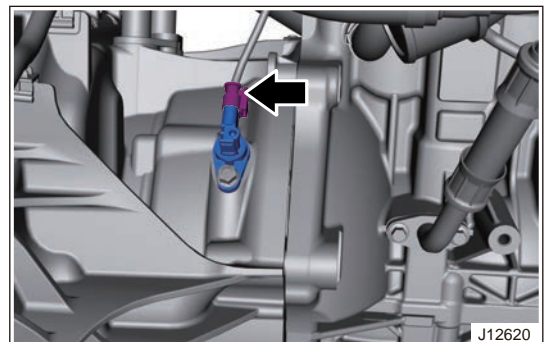
5.6 Speed Sensor

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

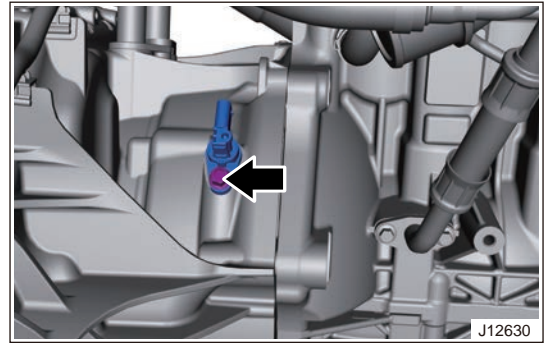
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing speed sensor.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing speed sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Disconnect the speed sensor connector.



J12620

- (5) Remove the speed sensor fixing bolt and take it out carefully.



■ Inspection

- (1) Simple measurement method: (Remove the connector) Turn LCR meter to ohm band (in-line mode, test frequency is 10 kHz), connect two probes to sensor connector terminals 1 and 3, rated resistance is $33 \Omega \pm 20\%$; Turn LCR meter to capacitance band (in-parallel mode, est frequency is 1 kHz), connect two probes to sensor connector terminals 1 and 3, rated capacitance is $100 \text{ nF} \pm 20\%$; Turn LCR meter to capacitance band (in-parallel mode, est frequency is 1 kHz), connect two probes to sensor connector terminals 2 and 3, rated capacitance is $4.7 \text{ nF} \pm 20\%$.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Ensure that the sensor is clean and the sensor is allowed to be removed from the package before it is installed in the engine or test bench. Users with cardiac pacemakers should take precautions before operation.
- The sensor is only allowed to be pressed into installation hole by press-in. It is not allowed to install the sensor with a tapping tool (such as hammer).

- (1) Install the speed sensor fixing bolt.

Torque: $8 \pm 2 \text{ N m}$

- (2) Connect the speed sensor connector.
 (3) Install the engine compartment trim cover.
 (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.7 Camshaft Position Sensor

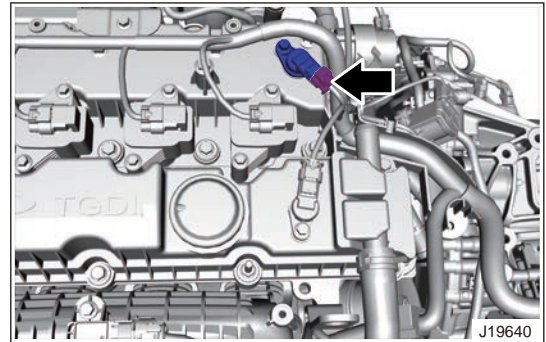
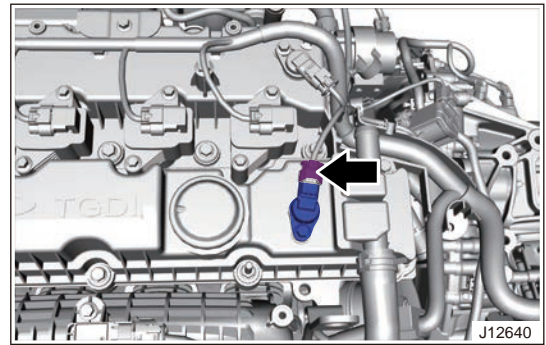
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

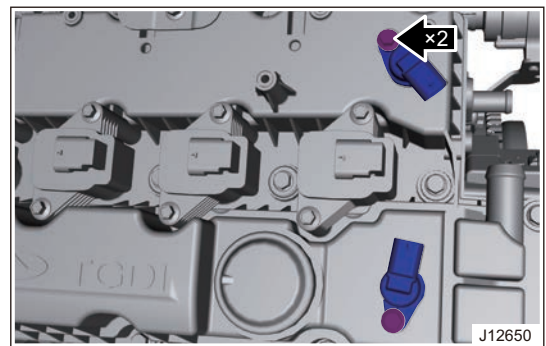
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing camshaft position sensor.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing camshaft position sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
 (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (4) Remove the engine trim cover.

- (5) Disconnect the intake/exhaust phaser sensor connector.



- (6) Remove 2 fixing bolts from intake/exhaust camshaft position sensor and take them out carefully.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- The sensor is only allowed to be pressed into installation hole by press-in. It is not allowed to install the sensor with a tapping tool (such as hammer).

- (1) Install the intake/exhaust camshaft position sensor fixing bolts.

Torque: 8 ± 3 N m

- (2) Connect the intake/exhaust camshaft position sensor connector.
(3) Install the engine trim cover.
(4) Connect the negative battery cable.

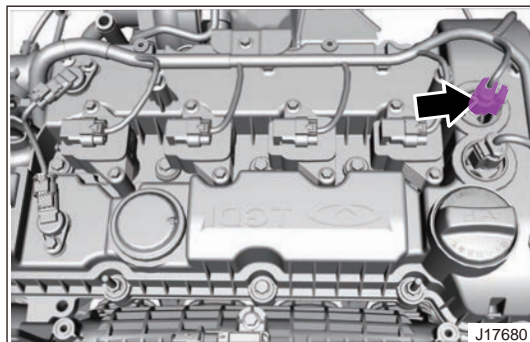
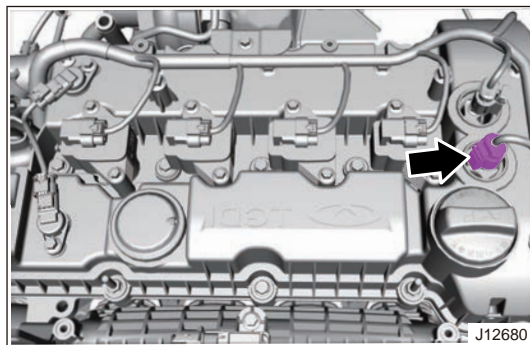
5.8 VVT Control Valve

■ Removal

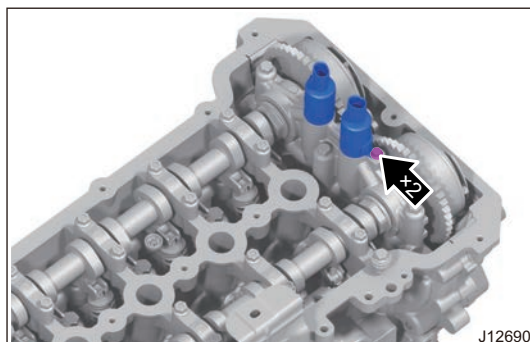
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing VVT control valve.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing VVT control valve. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Disconnect the intake/exhaust VVT control valve connector.



- (6) Remove the cylinder head cover assembly.
- (7) Remove the intake/exhaust VVT control valve fixing bolt respectively and take them out carefully.



■ Inspection

Step	Operation	Test Value	Test Result	Subsequent Step
1	Remove VVT control valve wire harness connector, use a multimeter to measure if resistance between two terminals of sensor is normal.	8.0 ± 0.5 Ω	Yes	Next
			No	Replace VVT control valve
2	Remove VVT control valve, and check for foreign matter stuck or internal leakage.	/	Yes	Replace VVT control valve
			No	Diagnostic Help

■ Installation

Caution

- **Control valve is only allowed to be pressed into installation hole by press-in. It is not allowed to install the sensor with a tapping tool (such as hammer).**

- (1) Install the intake/exhaust VVT control valve fixing bolt.

Torque: 8 ± 2 N m

- (2) Install the cylinder head cover assembly.
- (3) Connect the intake/exhaust VVT control valve connector.
- (4) Install the engine trim cover.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (6) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

5.9 Fuel Rail Injector

■ Removal

- (1) For details about removal methods, refer to removal steps of fuel rail injector assembly in fuel system.

■ Inspection

- (1) Simple measurement method: (Remove the connector) Turn digital multimeter to ohm band, connect two probes to two terminals of fuel injector respectively, the rated resistance is 1.83 Ω at 20°C.

■ Installation

- (1) For details about installation methods, refer to installation steps of fuel rail injector assembly in fuel system.

5.10 High Pressure Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor

■ Removal

- (1) For details about removal methods, refer to removal steps of high pressure fuel rail pressure sensor assembly in fuel system.

■ Inspection

- (1) Simple measurement method: Remove the sensor, connect 5 V power supply at normal temperature and atmospheric pressure, pressure signal output is 0.500 ± 0.048 V at this time.

■ Installation

- (1) For details about installation methods, refer to installation steps of high pressure fuel rail pressure sensor in fuel system.

5.11 Canister Control Valve

■ Removal

- (1) For details about removal methods, refer to removal steps of canister control valve assembly in fuel system.

■ Inspection

- (1) Simple measurement method: (Remove the connector) Turn digital multimeter to ohm band, connect two probes to two terminals of canister control valve respectively, resistance is 14~ 18 Ω at 20°C. Replace it if the resistance does not meet the specification.

■ Installation

- (1) For details about installation methods, refer to installation steps of canister control valve assembly in fuel system.

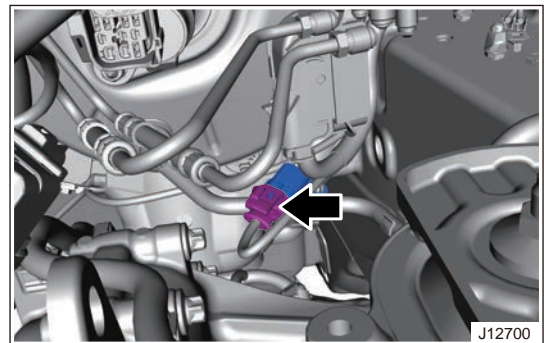
5.12 Brake Vacuum Pressure Sensor

■ Removal

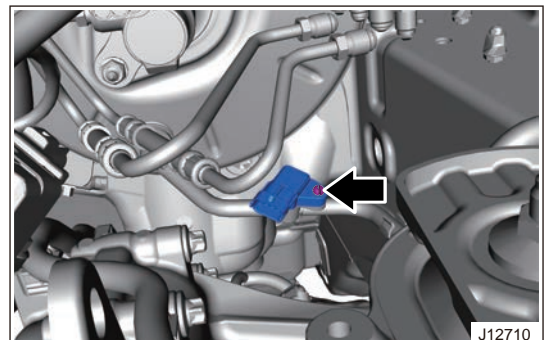
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing brake vacuum pressure sensor.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing brake vacuum pressure sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine compartment fuse and relay box main body.
- (5) Disconnect the brake vacuum pressure sensor connector.



- (6) Press brake vacuum pressure sensor fixed clamping area and take out sensor carefully.



■ Inspection

- (1) Simple measurement method: (Remove the connector) Turn digital multimeter to ohm band, you can perform the following simple measurements respectively:

- 1) Connect two probes to sensor pins 1# and 2# respectively, the resistance is 1 kΩ ~ 2 kΩ at normal temperature. There may be short or open circuit in power supply circuit if the resistance is abnormal;
- 2) Connect two probes to sensor pins 1# and 3# respectively, the resistance is 1 kΩ ~ 2 kΩ at normal temperature. There may be short or open circuit in output circuit if the resistance is abnormal.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Always make sure the O-ring is not damaged during installation. Apply a light coat of oil (such as 5W20) to O-ring surface before installation, and do not use silicon grease.
- Press sensor detecting sleeve into installation hole manually during installation, and do not install sensor with striking tool.

- (1) Insert the brake vacuum pressure sensor into installation hole carefully, and make sure that fixing clip has been fully clamped.
- (2) Connect the brake vacuum pressure sensor connector.

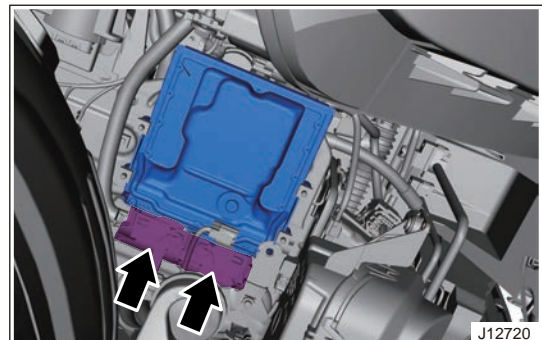
5.13 Engine Control Unit (ECU)

■ Removal

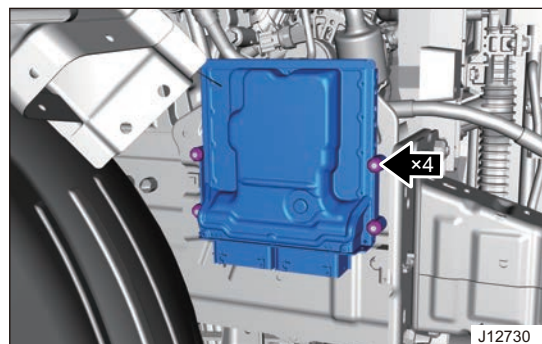
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine control unit.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing engine control unit. Be careful not to operate roughly.

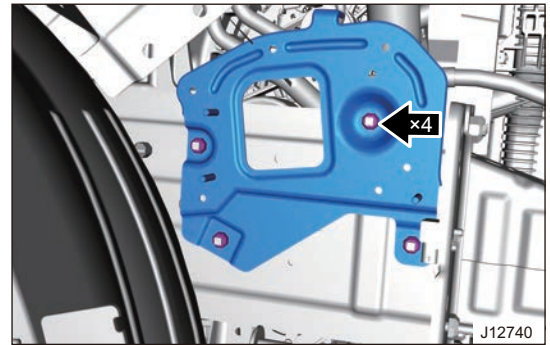
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the front right wheel.
- (5) Remove the front right wheel house protector.
- (6) Disconnect the engine control module connector.



- (7) Remove 4 fixing bolts from engine control module, and take out engine control module assembly carefully.



- (8) Remove 4 fixing bolts from engine control unit mounting bracket, and take out mounting bracket assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Simple measurement method: 1. (Connect the connector) Use engine data CAN line to read engine trouble records; 2. (Remove the connector) Check if ECU connecting wire is in good condition, focusing on if ECU power supply and ground line are normal; 3. Check if the external sensor is operating properly, output signal is reliable and its circuit is in good condition; 4. Check if the actuator is operating properly and its circuit is in good condition; 5. Finally replace ECU and perform test.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Pay attention to static electricity protection during installation; Pay attention to the protection of the connector pin.**

- (1) Install 4 fixing bolts to engine control unit mounting bracket.

Torque: 8 ± 2 N m

- (2) Install 4 fixing bolts to engine control unit.

Torque: 8 ± 2 N m

- (3) Connect the engine control unit connector.

5.14 Matching Learning

■ EMS Software Refresh

⚠ Warning

- **For the acquisition of refreshed files, contact EXCEED after-sales service department.**
- **After the refreshed files are acquired, do not modify the files.**
- **It is necessary to check vehicle battery power before perform refreshing, as the process of refreshing is long, connect the charger if necessary.**

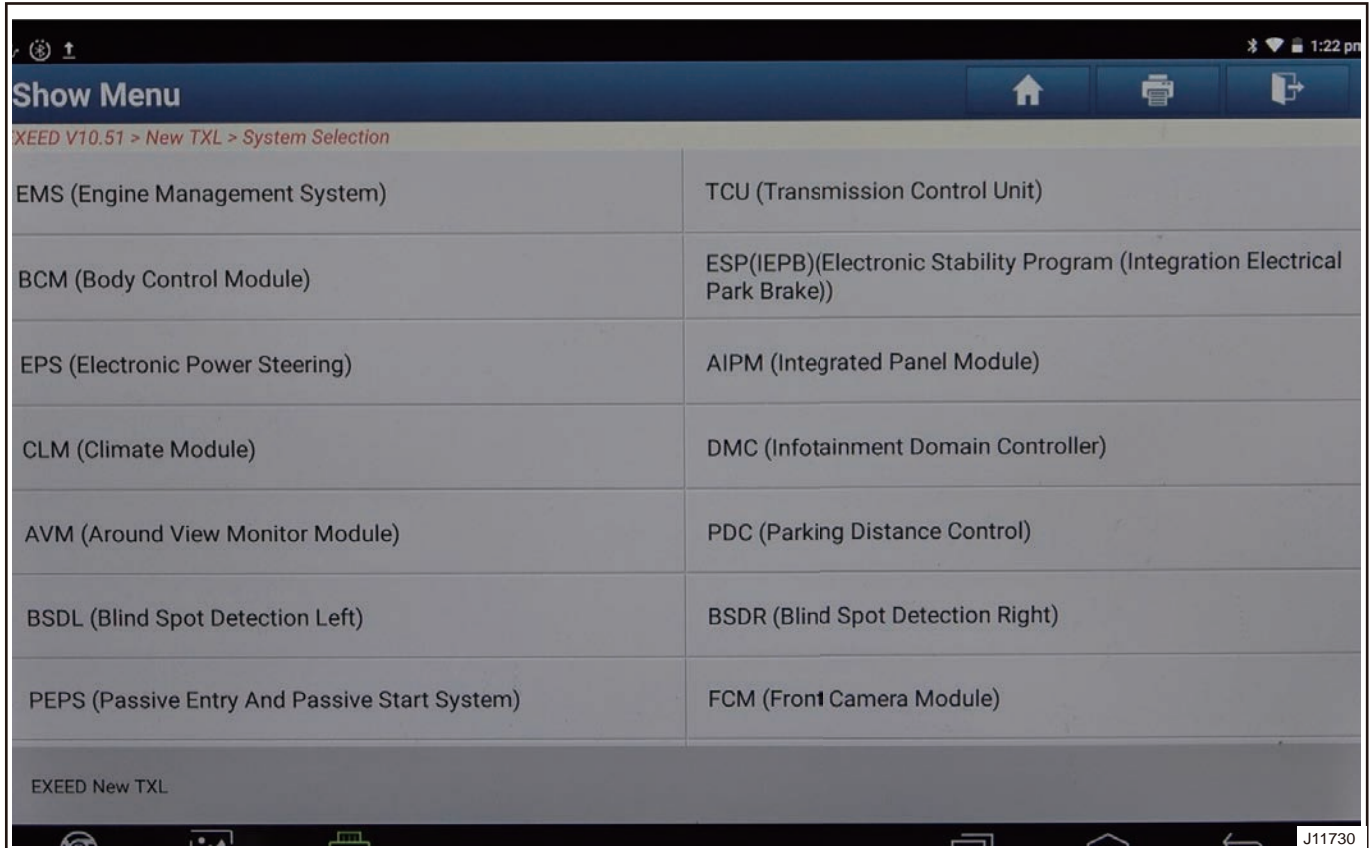
- (1) Connect the diagnostic tester and select “Comprehensive Services” .
- (2) Click “Controller Software Refresh” .
- (3) Click “TXL” vehicle model.
- (4) Click “EMS (Engine Management System)” .
- (5) Click “ECU Refresh” .
- (6) Click “ECU Application Refresh” .
- (7) Confirm and click “OK” .
- (8) Click “Select Refresh Files” , and select the corresponding files in order.
- (9) After selecting the corresponding files, click “Start to Refresh” .
- (10) After confirming the refreshed date is correct, click “Yes” , diagnostic tester will refresh automatically.
- (11) After waiting for a period of time, interface shows “ECU writing-in is successful” , click “OK” .

■ Write in Engine Management System (EMS) Configuration Data

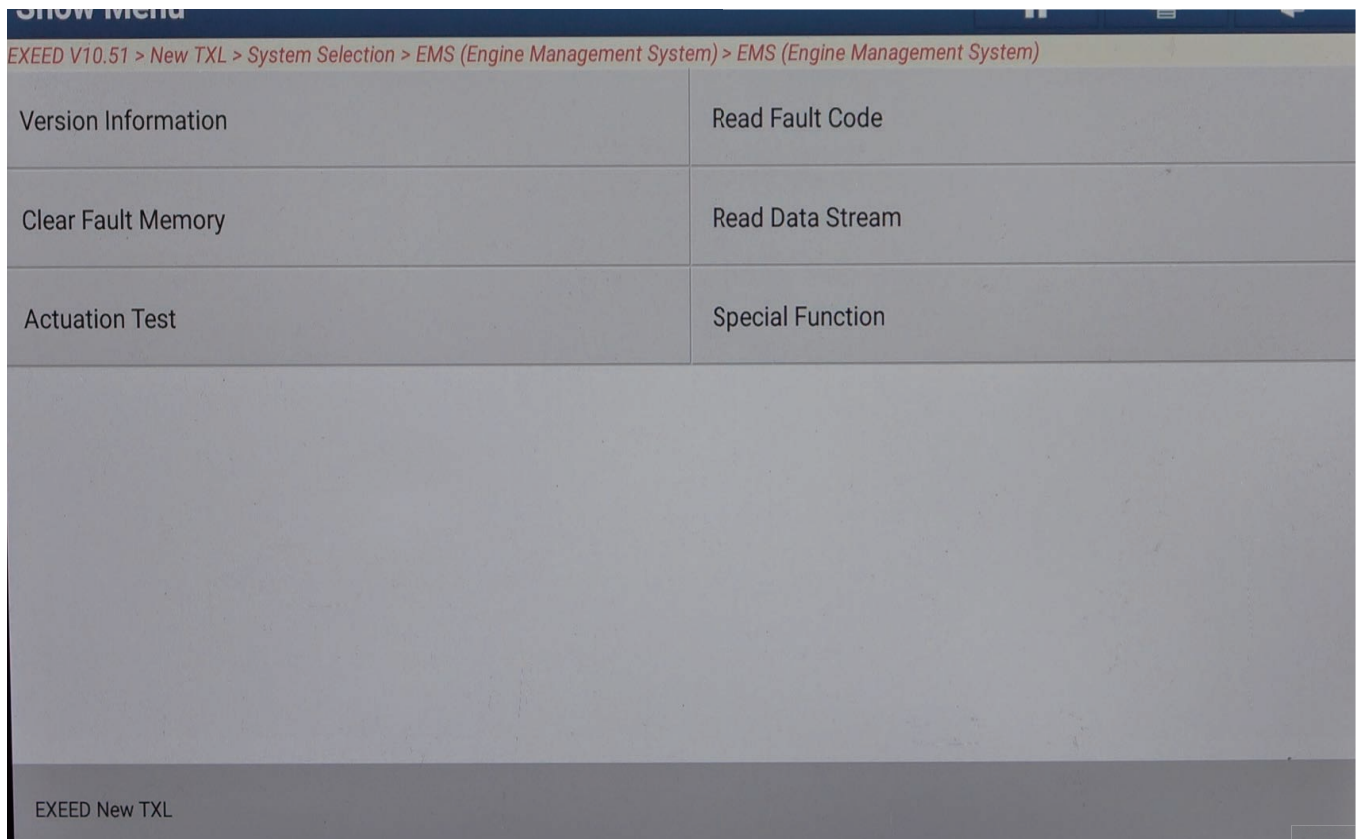
⚠ Caution

- **The first 5 digits of the 12-digit repair shop code are the dealer code, and the last 7 digits can be entered at will.**
- **You must enter correct vehicle configuration codes, or normal functions of vehicle will be affected, verify after entering codes.**

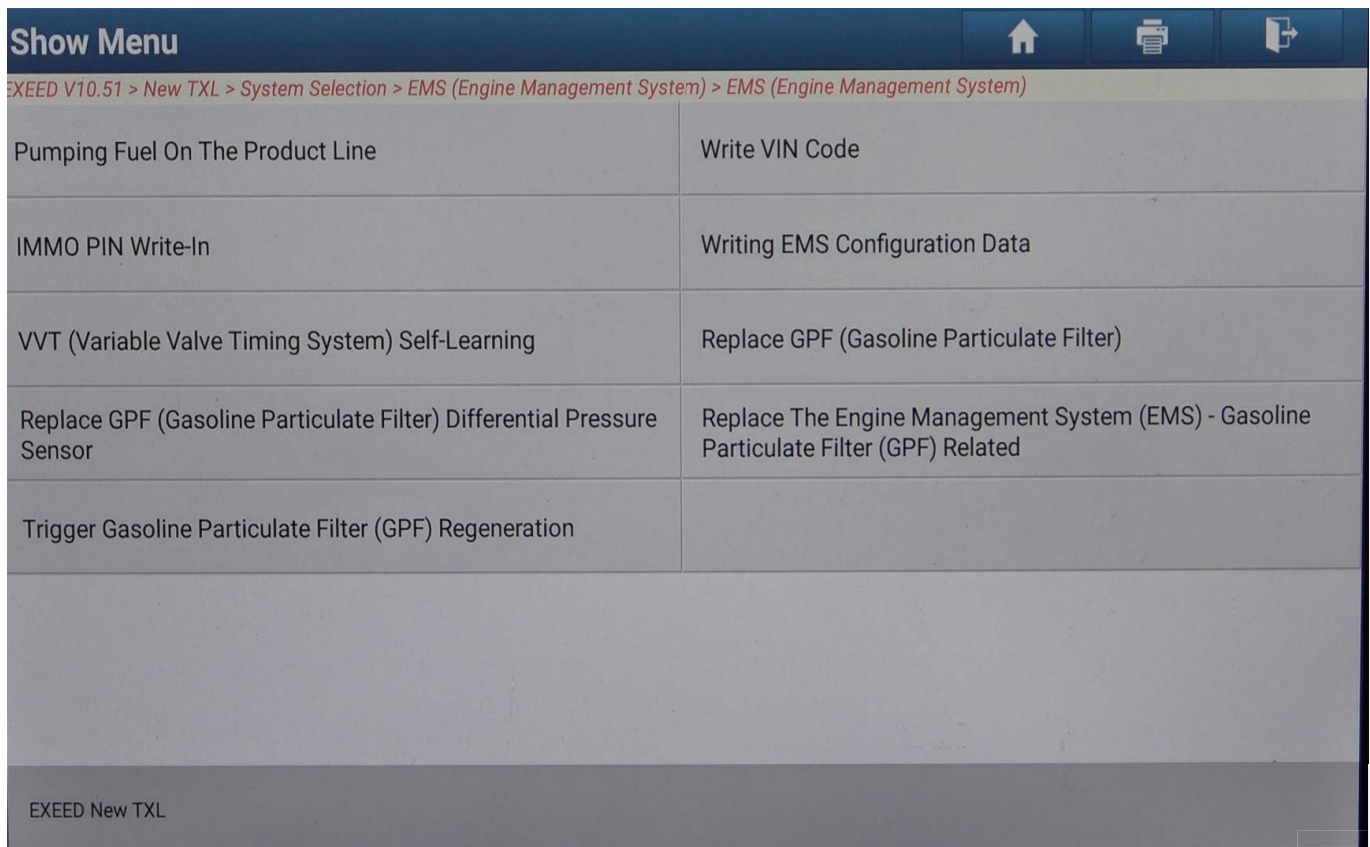
- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, and select “TXL” vehicle model.
- (2) Click “System Selection” .
- (3) Click “EMS (Engine Management System)” .



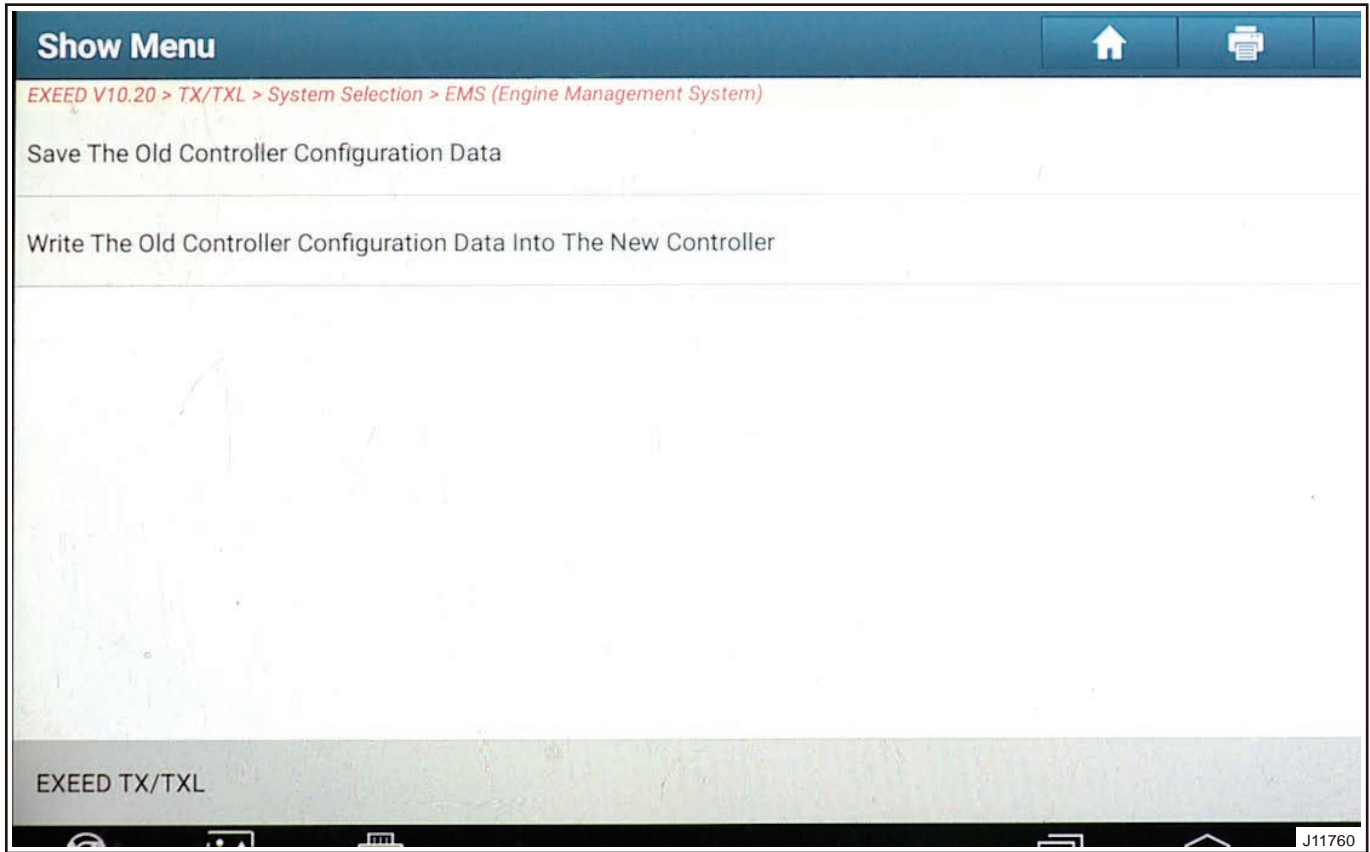
(4) Click “Special Function” .



(5) Click “Writing EMS Configuration Data” .

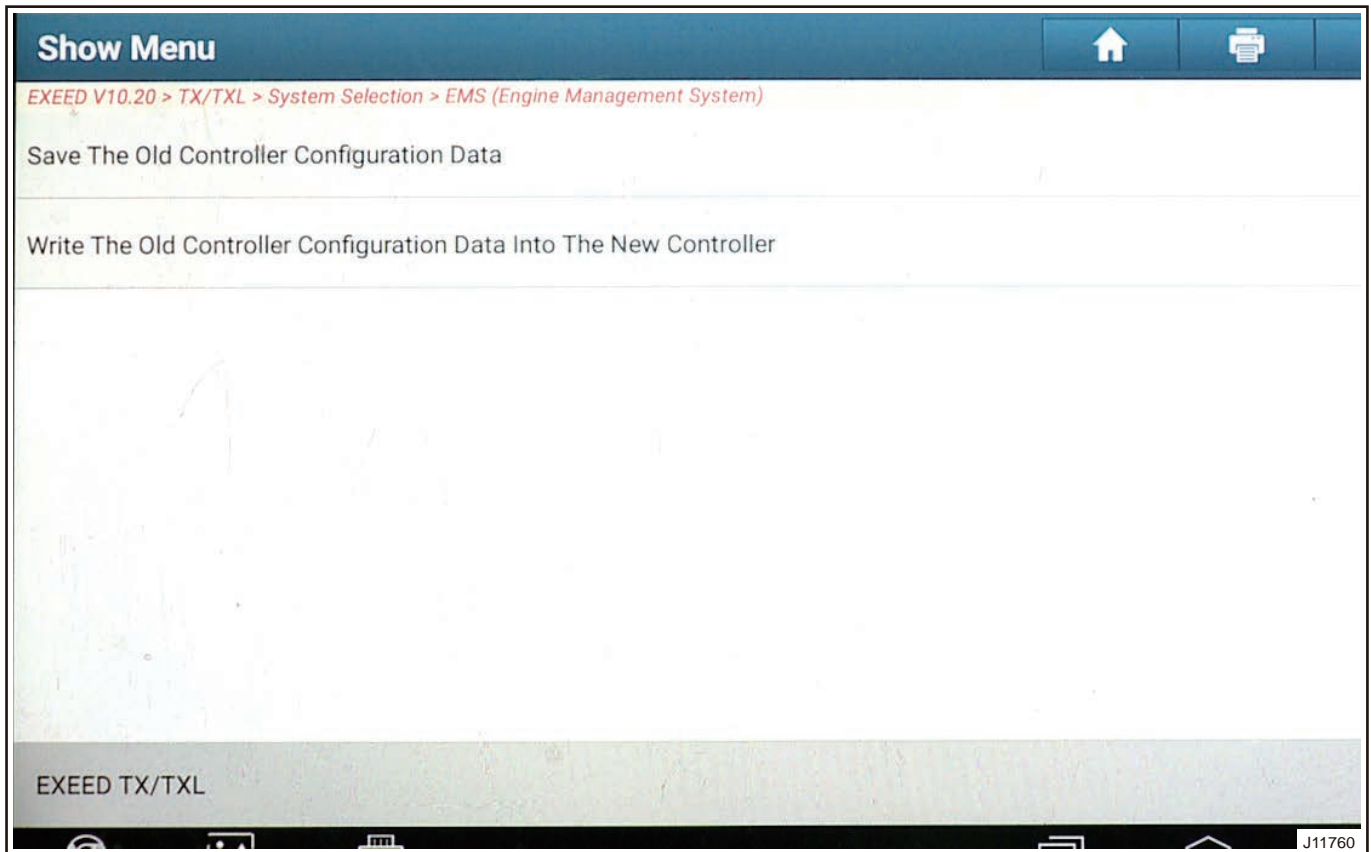


(6) Click “Save The Old Controller Configuration Data” .

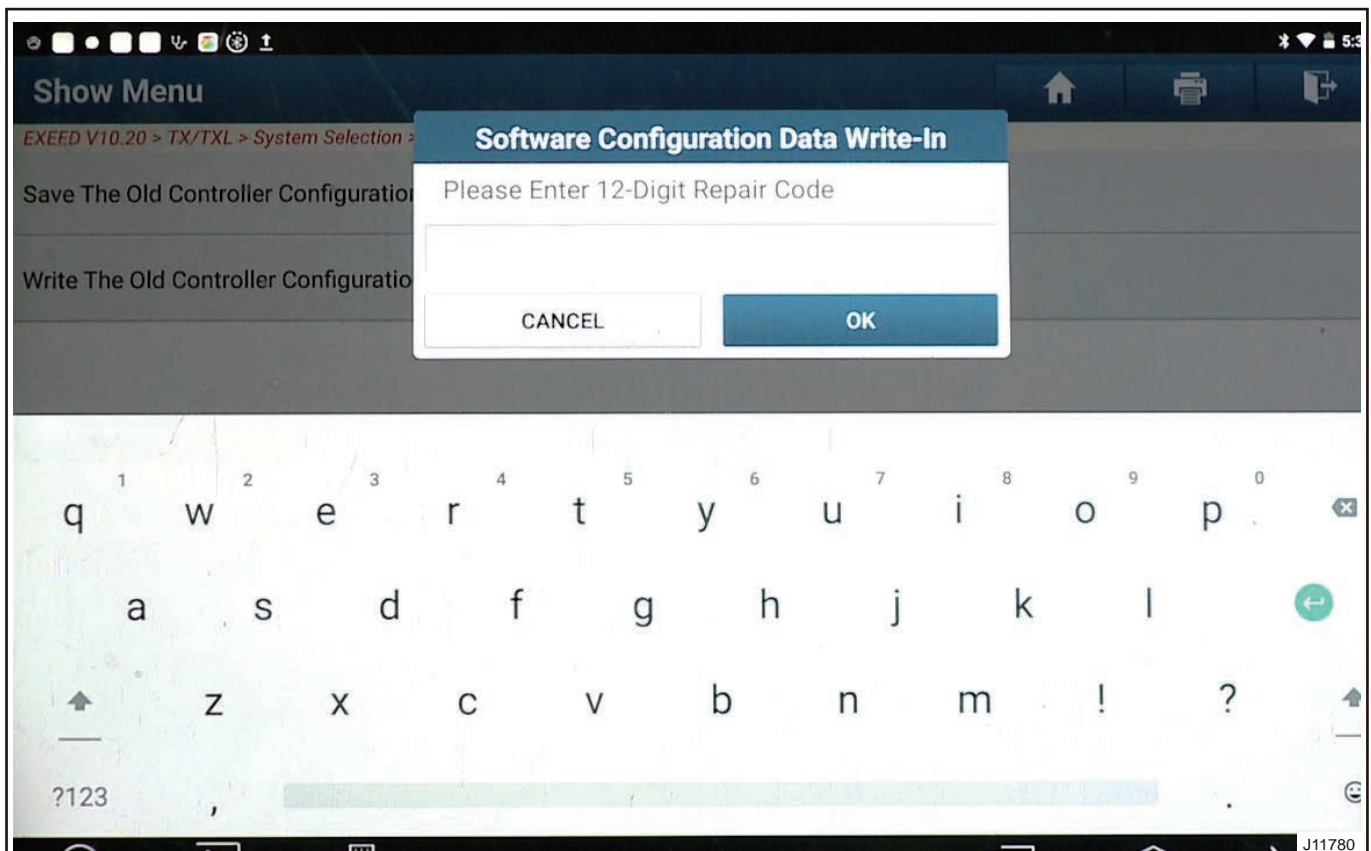


(7) Interface shows “Read and Save Vehicle Configuration Code Successfully!” . Click “OK” .

(8) Click “Write The Old Controller Configuration Data Into The New Controller” .

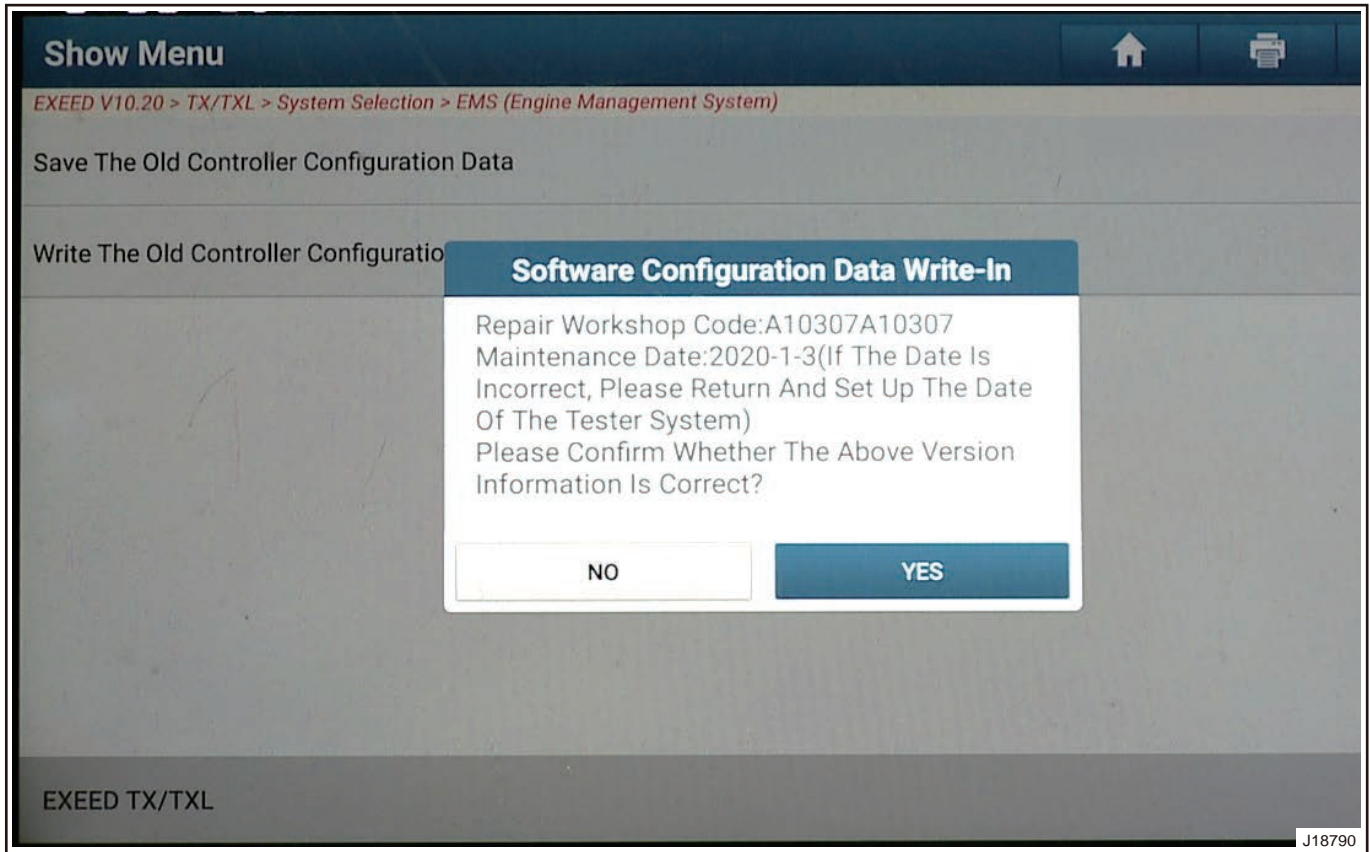


(9) Diagnostic tester interface shows “Please Enter 12-Digit Repair Code” .

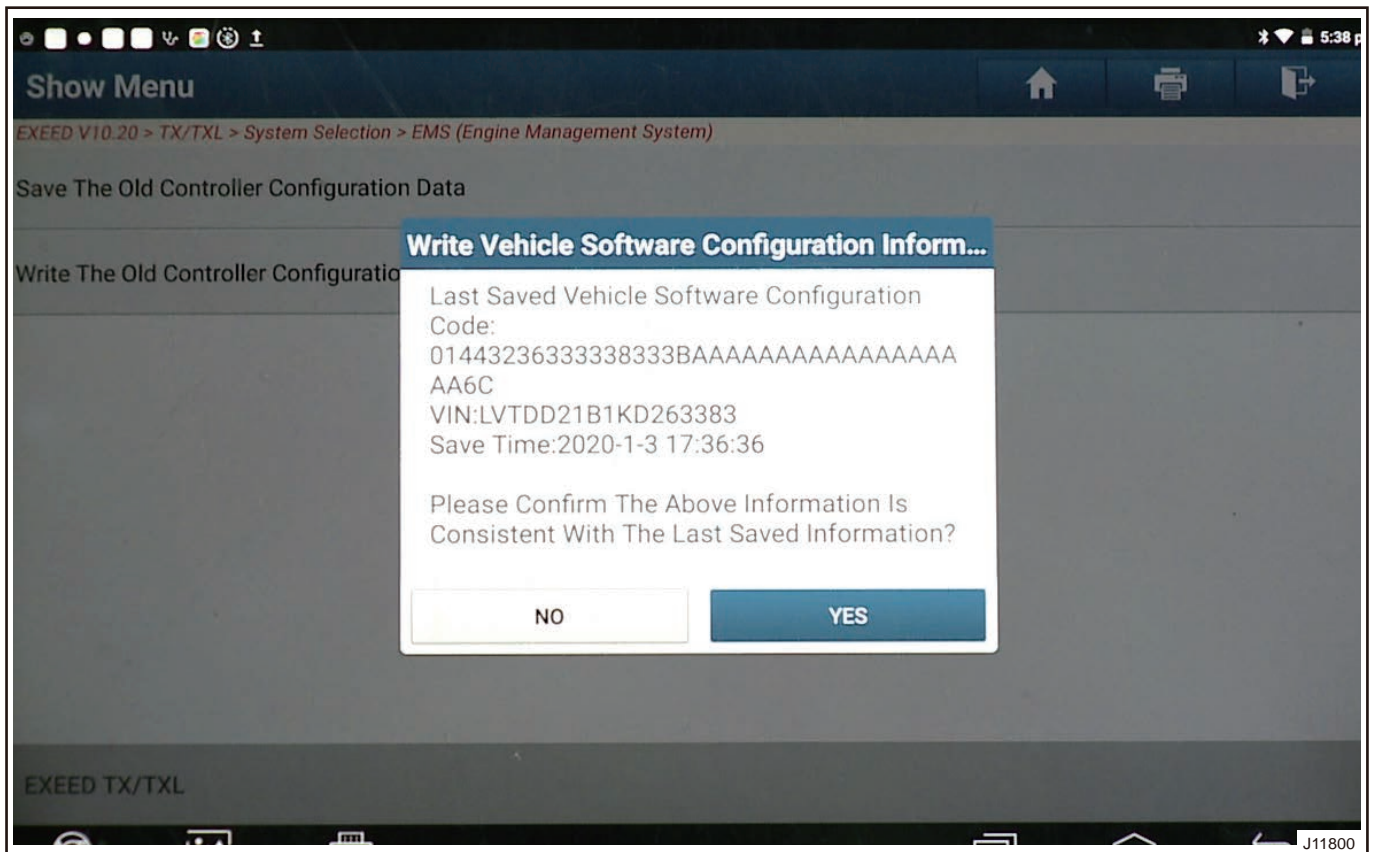


(10) After entering codes, click “OK” .

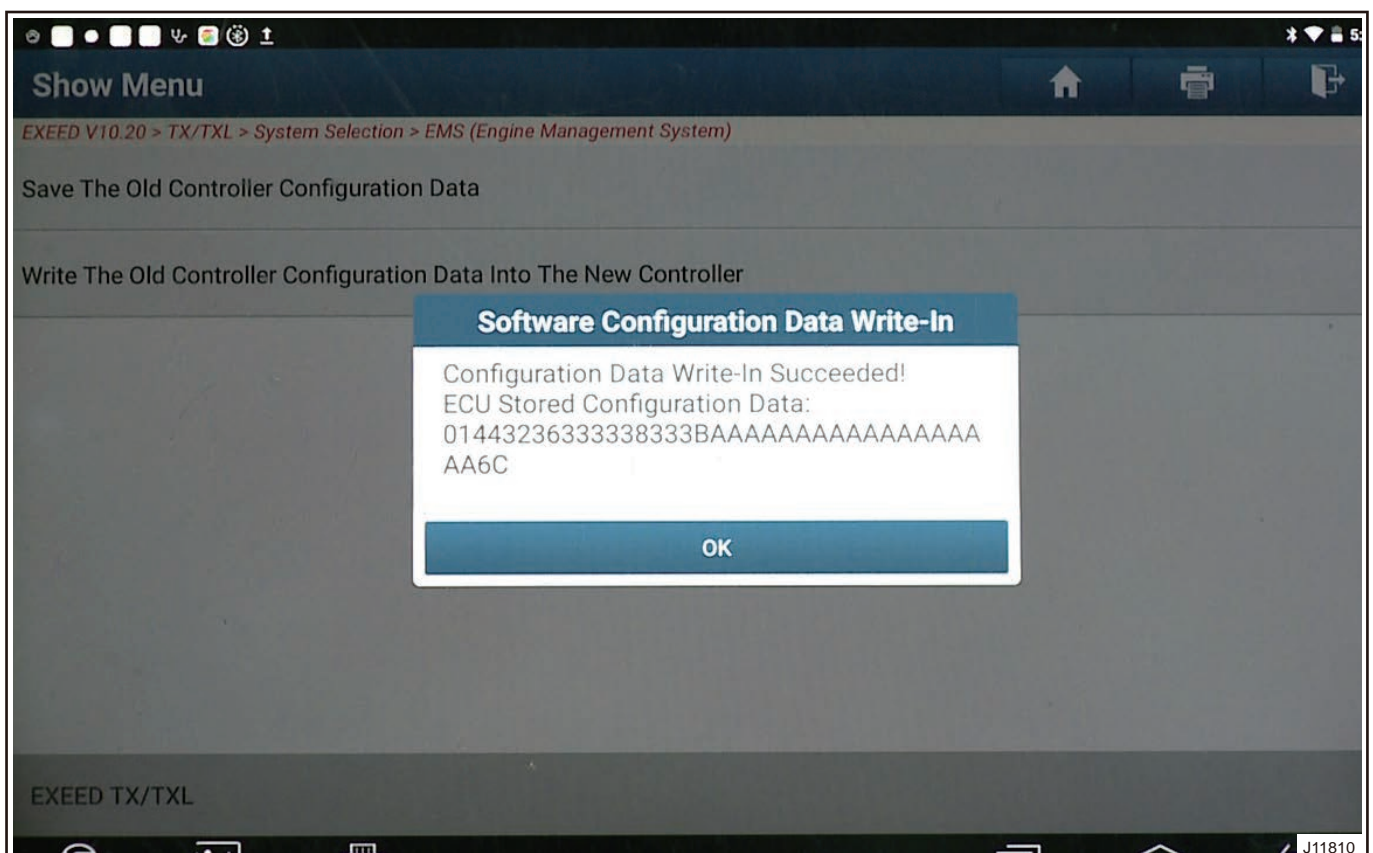
(11) After confirming information is correct again and click “Yes” .



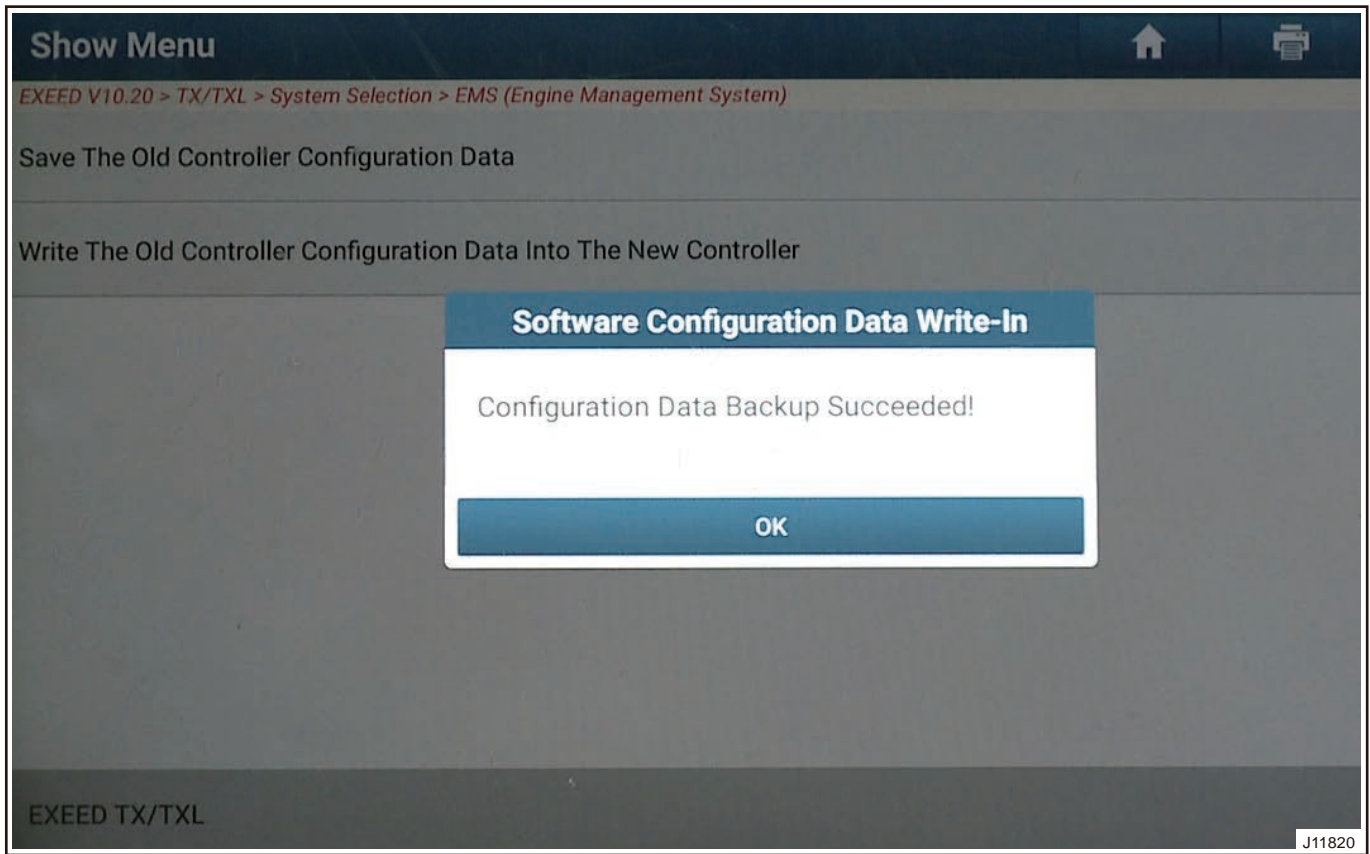
(12) Diagnostic tester shows “Saved Vehicle Configuration Code” , click “Yes” after confirming the information is consistent.



(13) Diagnostic tester interface shows “Configuration Data Write-in Succeeded” , click “OK” .



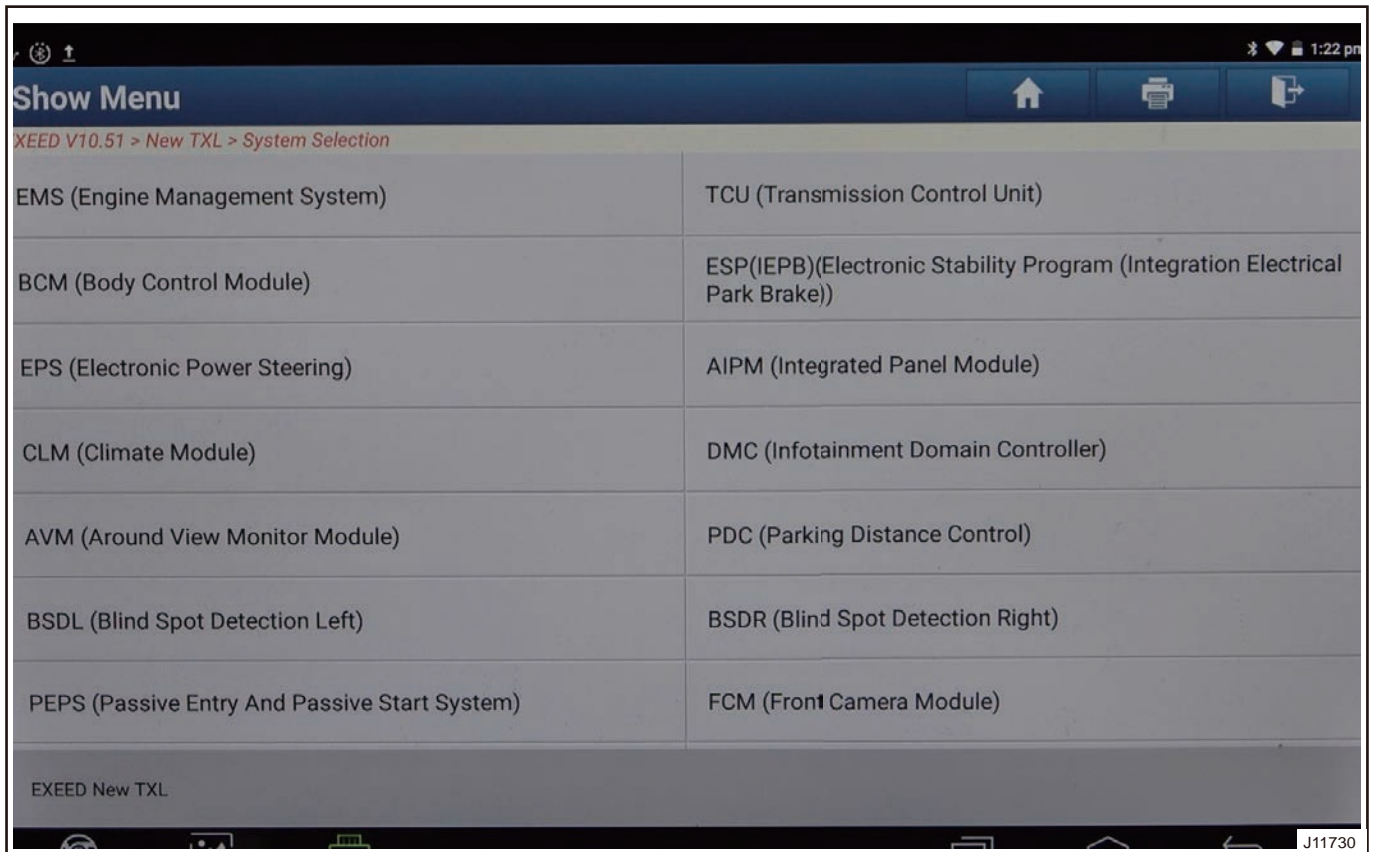
(14) Diagnostic tester interface shows “Configuration Data Backup Succeeded” , click “OK” .



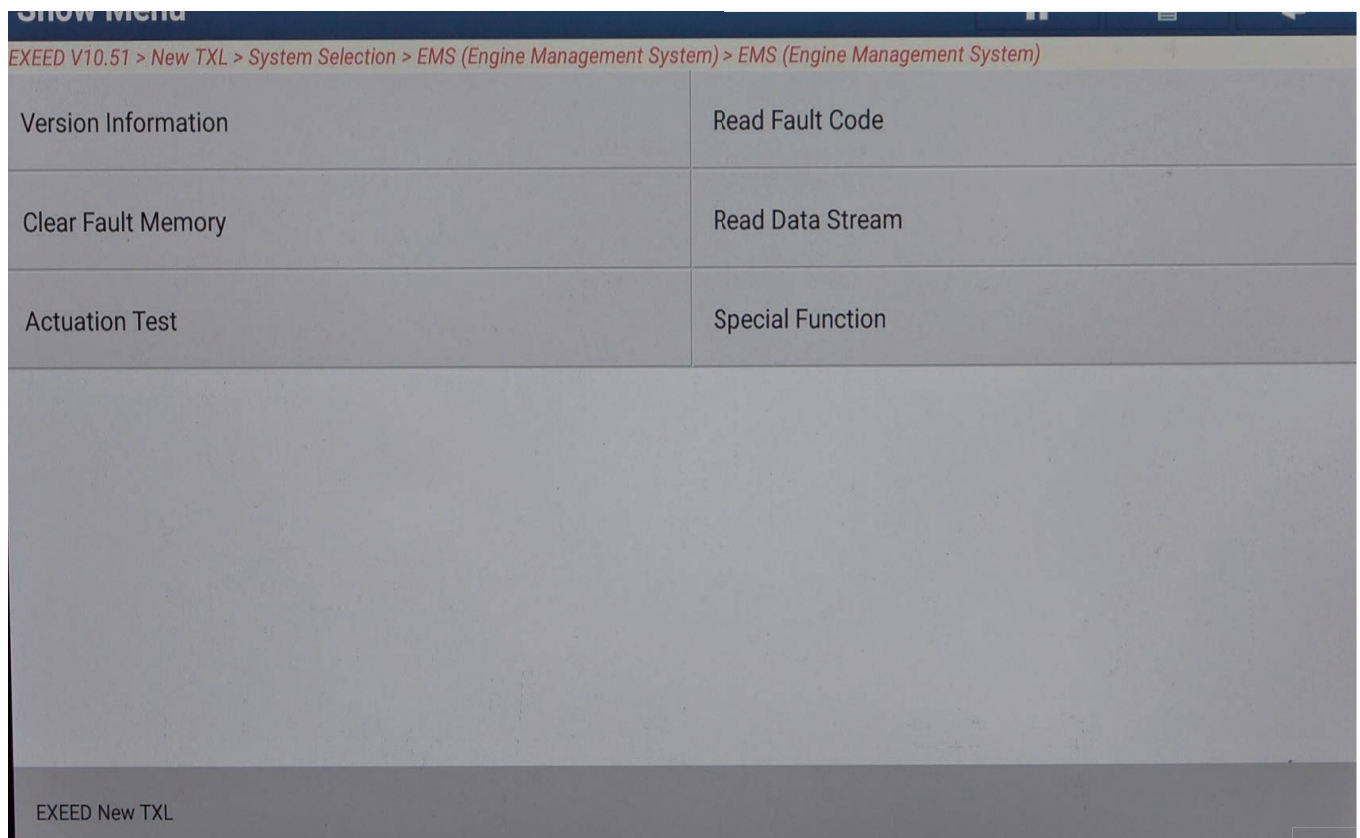
■ ESK Writing

(1) Connect diagnostic tester, and select “TXL” vehicle model.

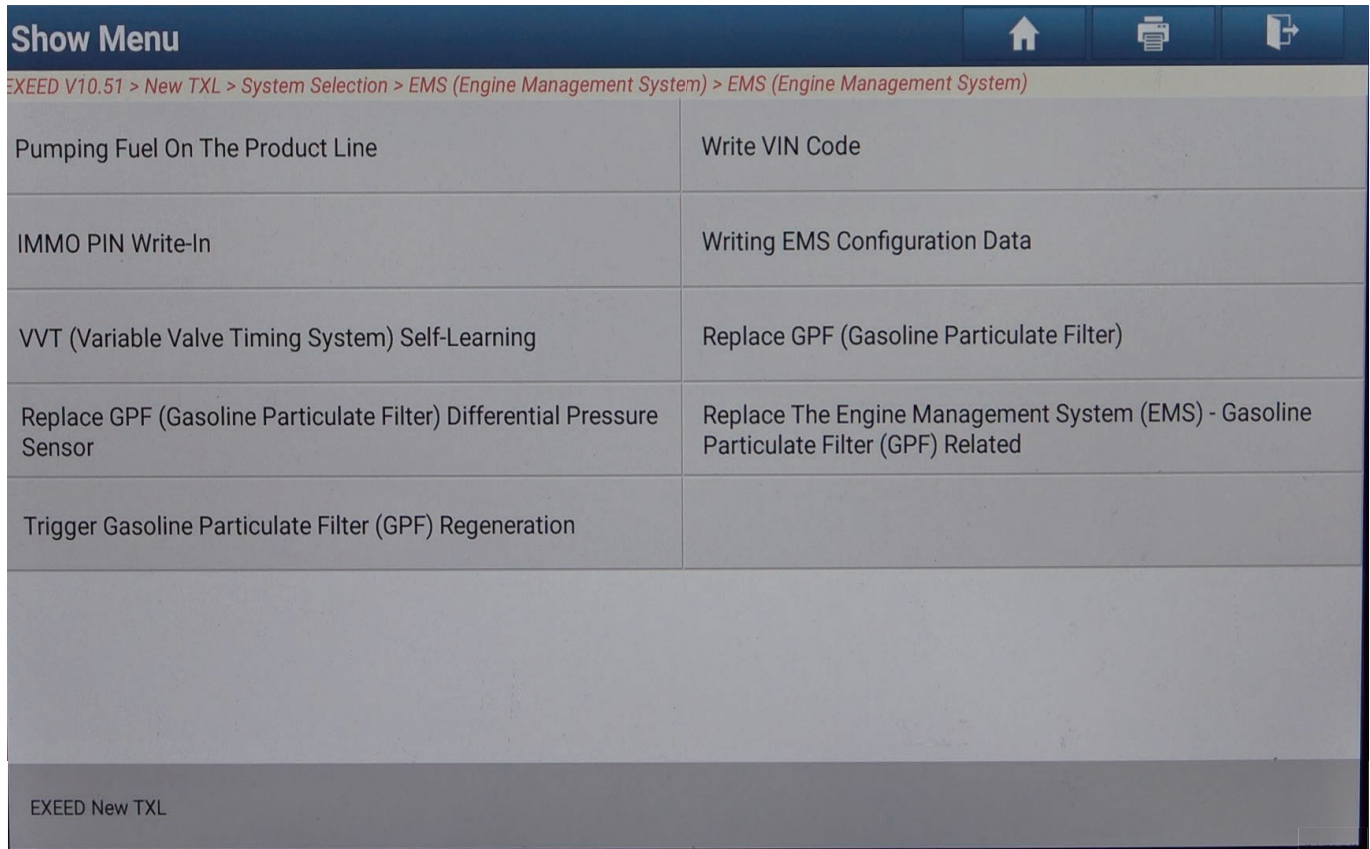
(2) Click “EMS (Engine Management System)” .



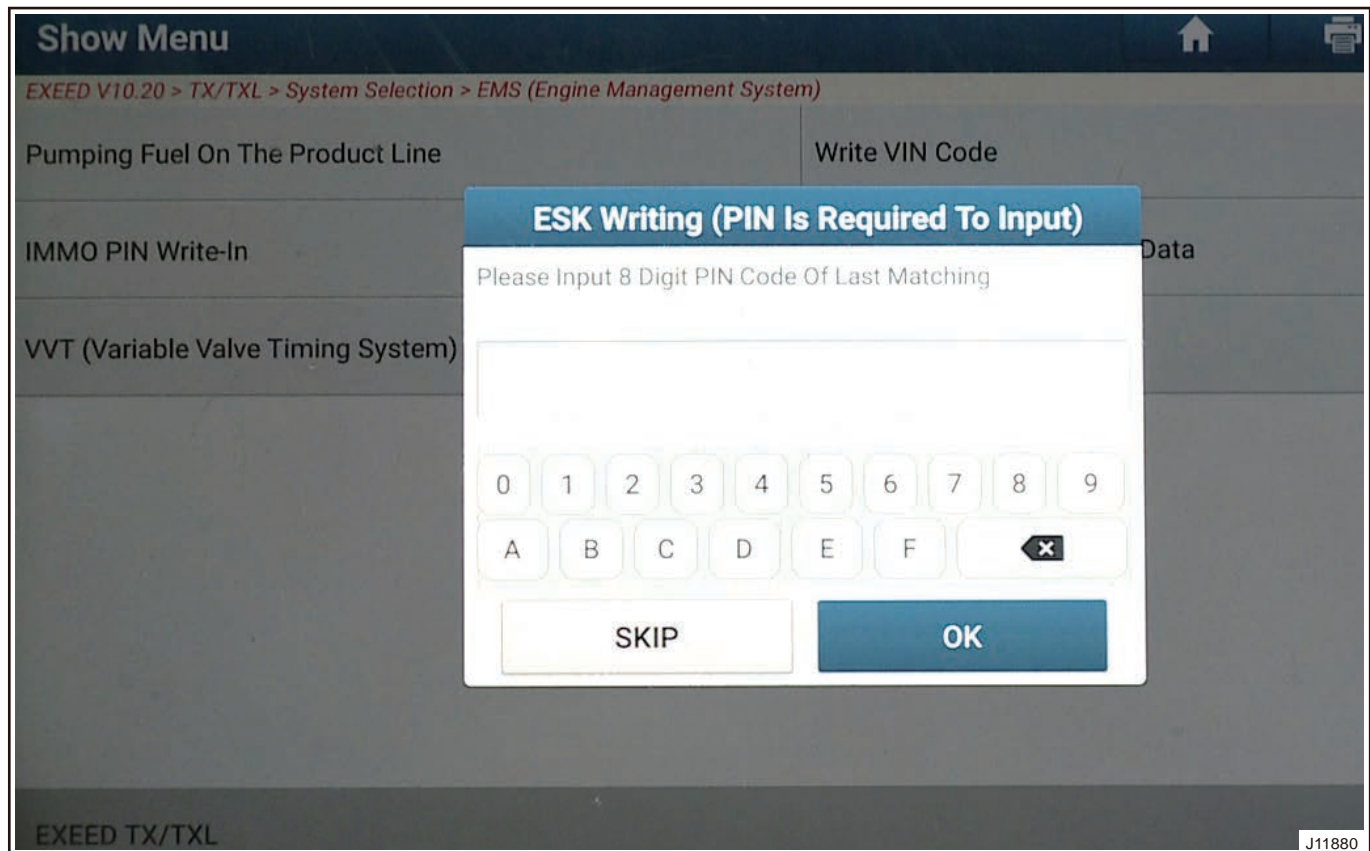
(3) Click “Special Function” .



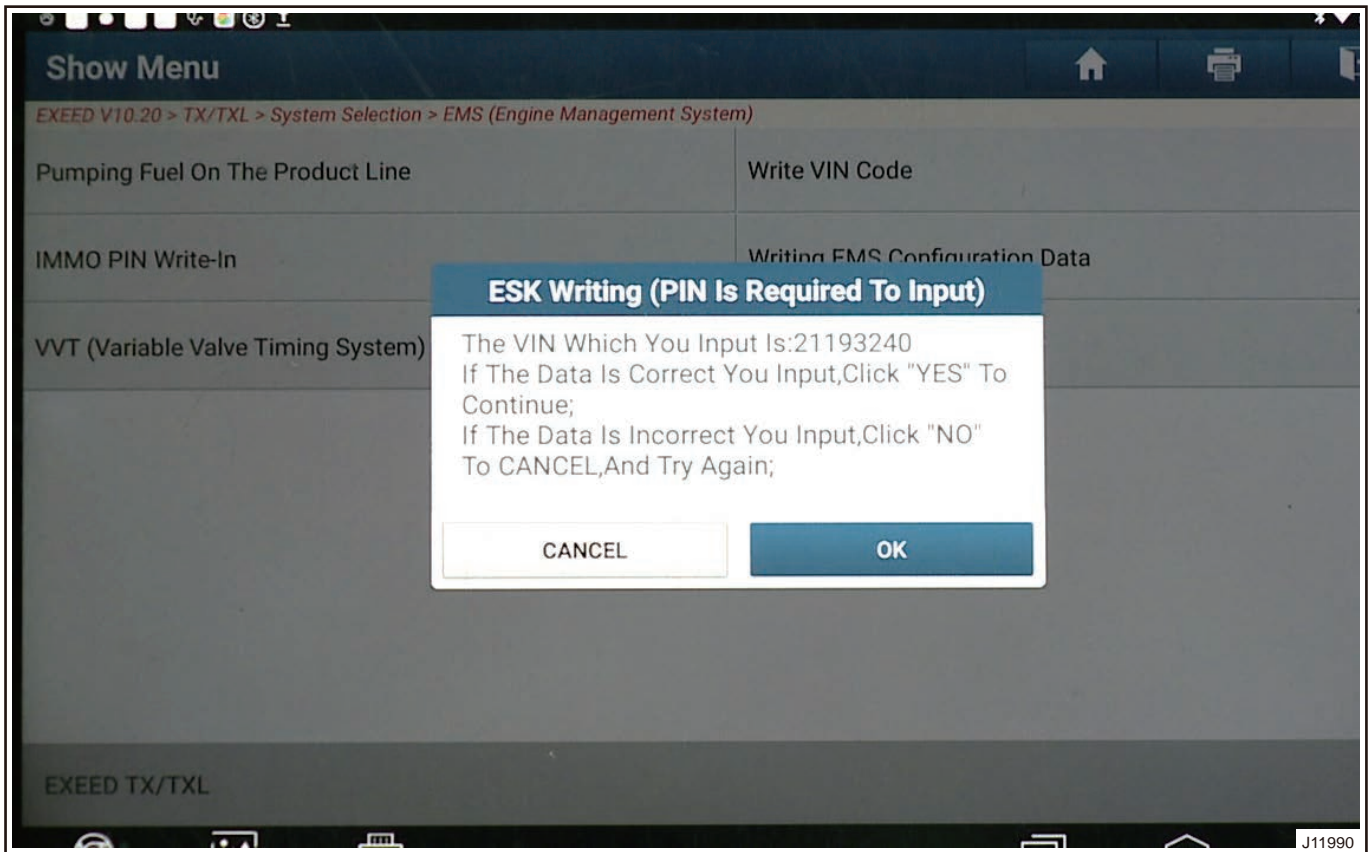
(4) Click “ESK Writing (PIN Is Required To Input)” .



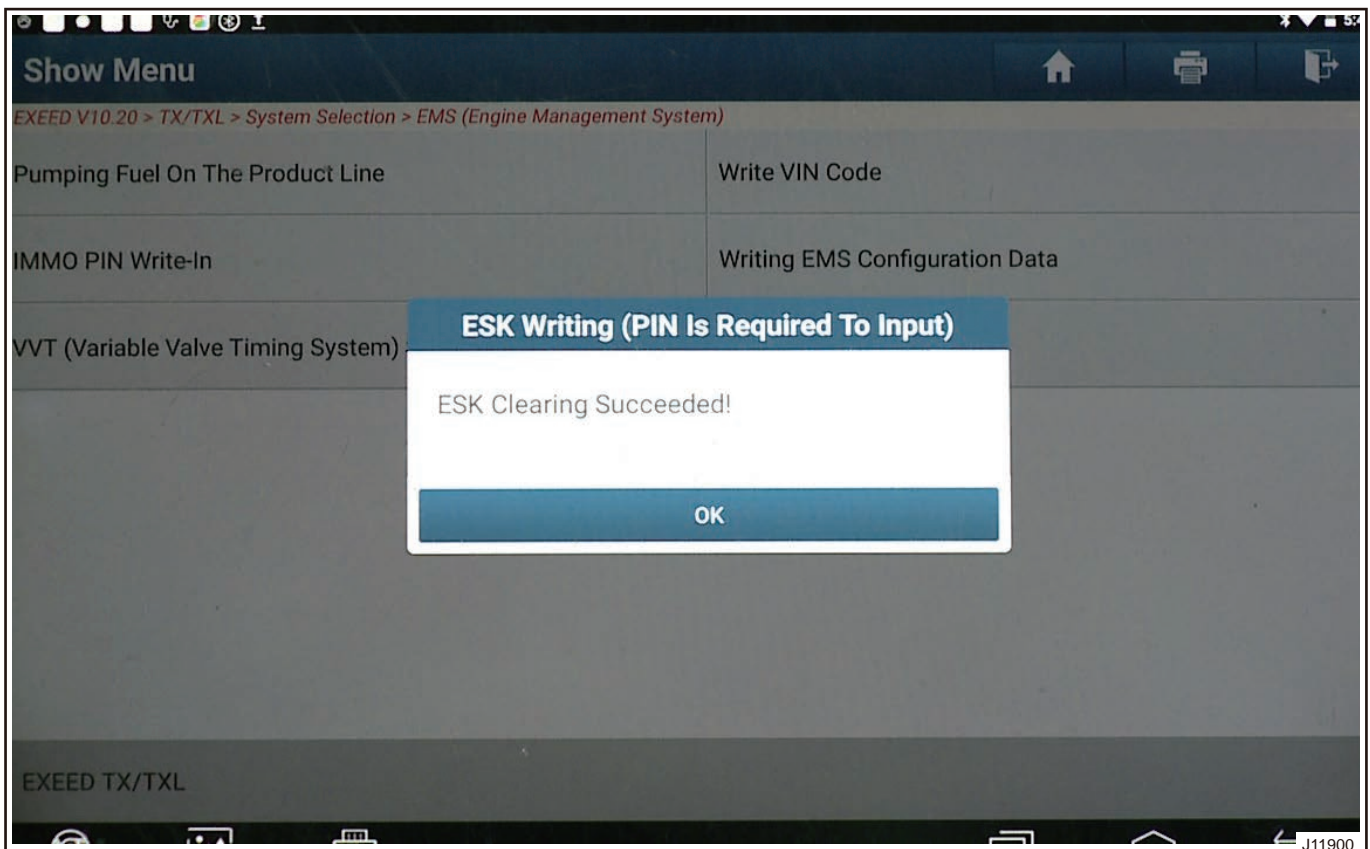
(5) After entering anti-theft security codes, click “OK” .



(6) Verify that the anti-theft security code entered is correct, confirm and click “OK” .

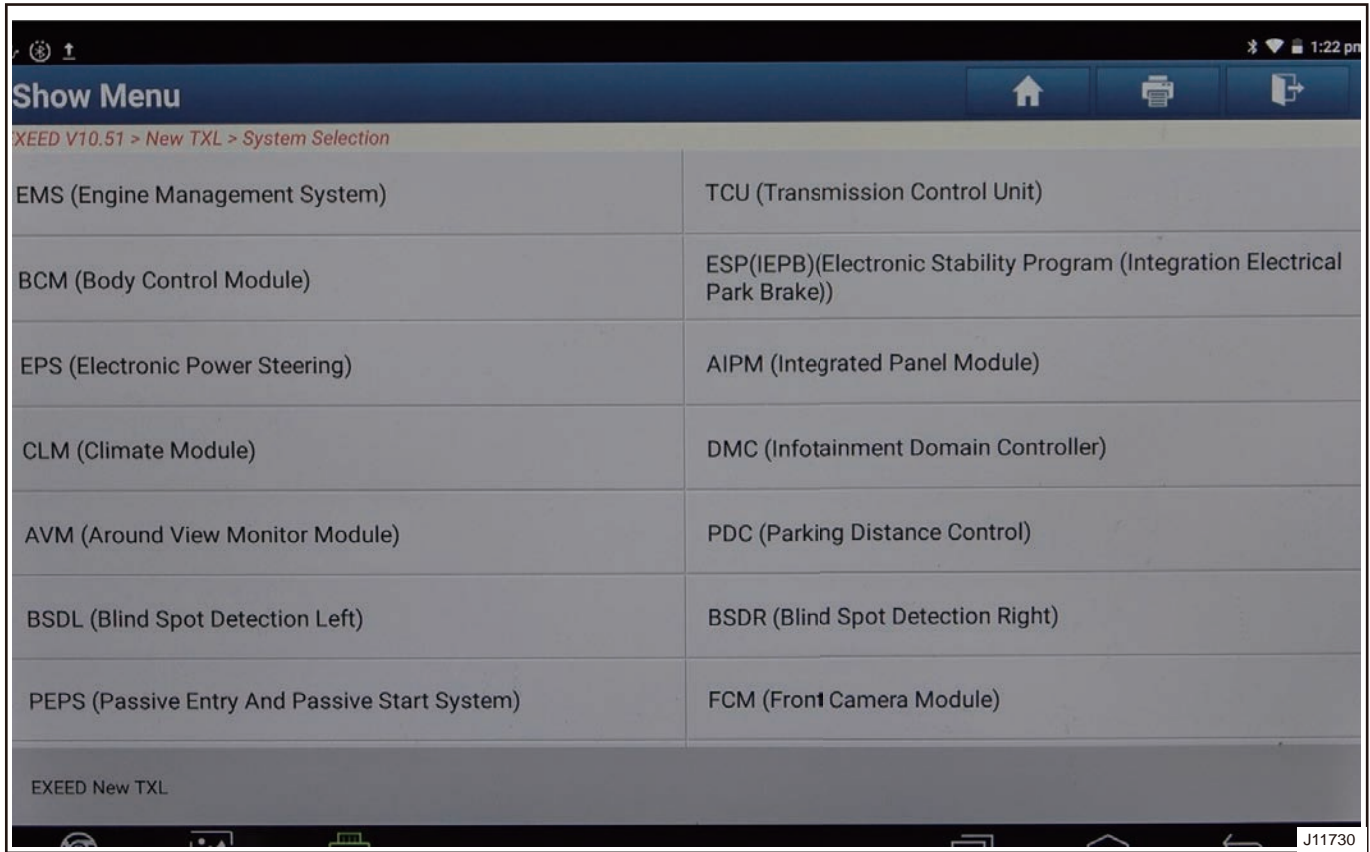


(7) Diagnostic tester interface shows “ESK Writing Succeeded” , click “OK” .

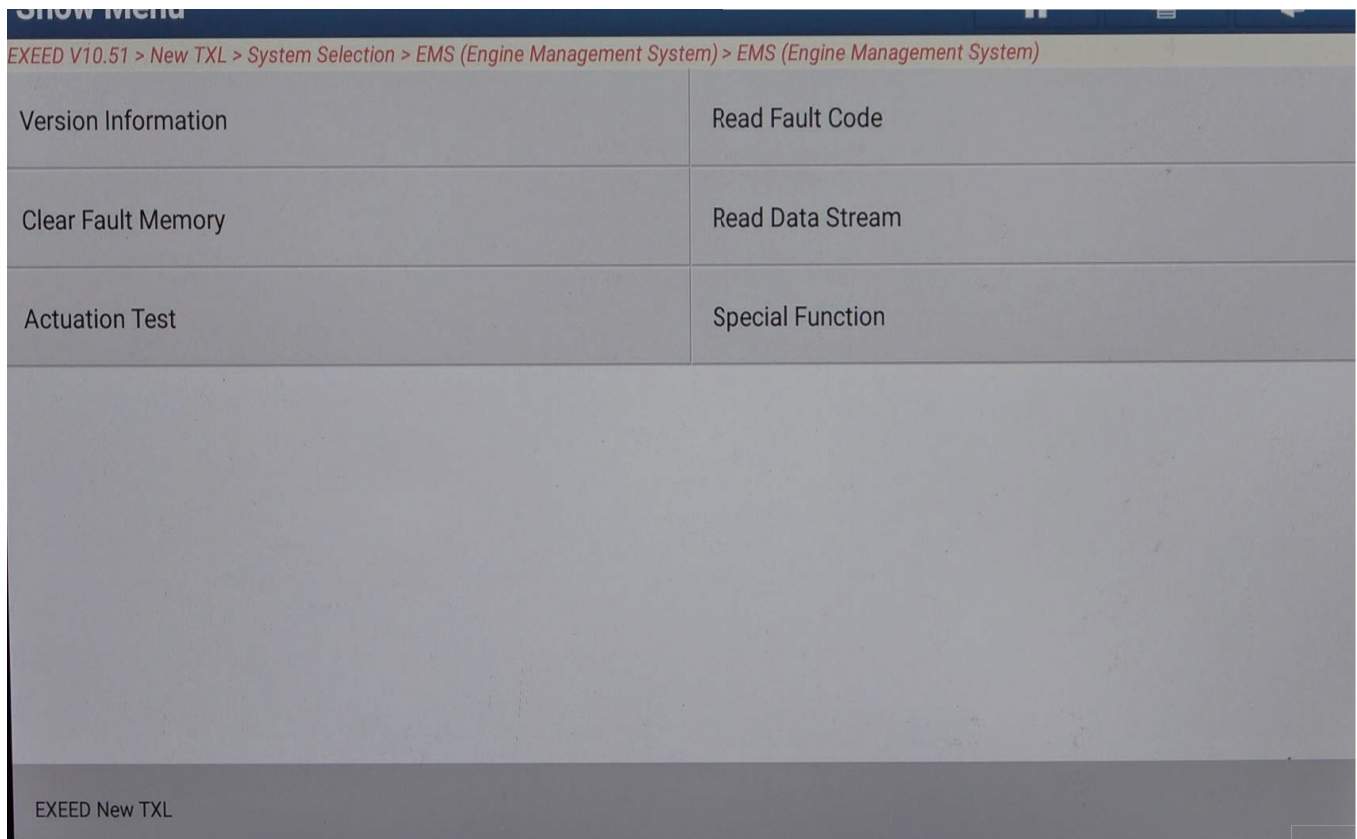


■ GPF Regeneration

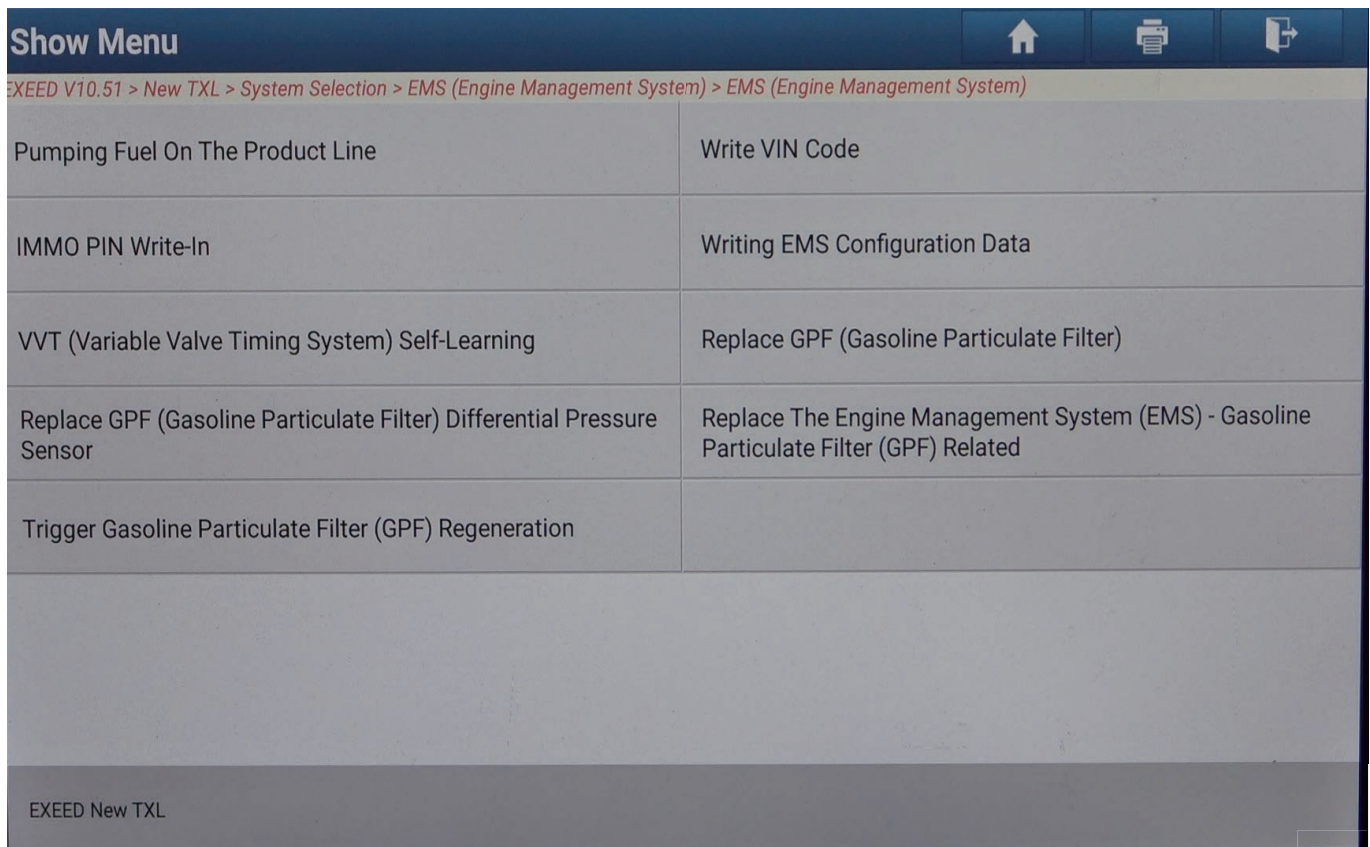
- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, and select “TXL” vehicle model.
- (2) Click “EMS (Engine Management System)” .



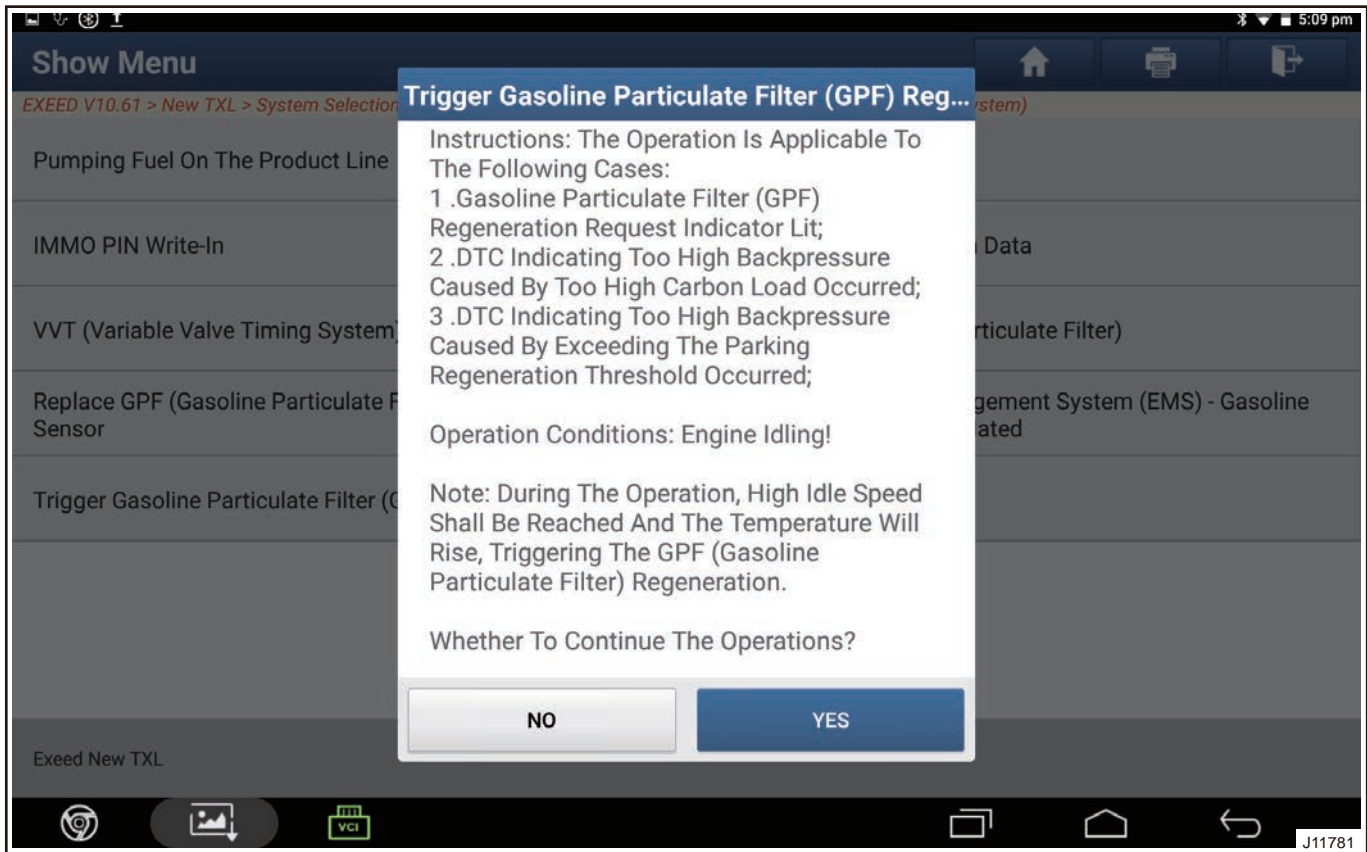
(3) Click “Special Function” .



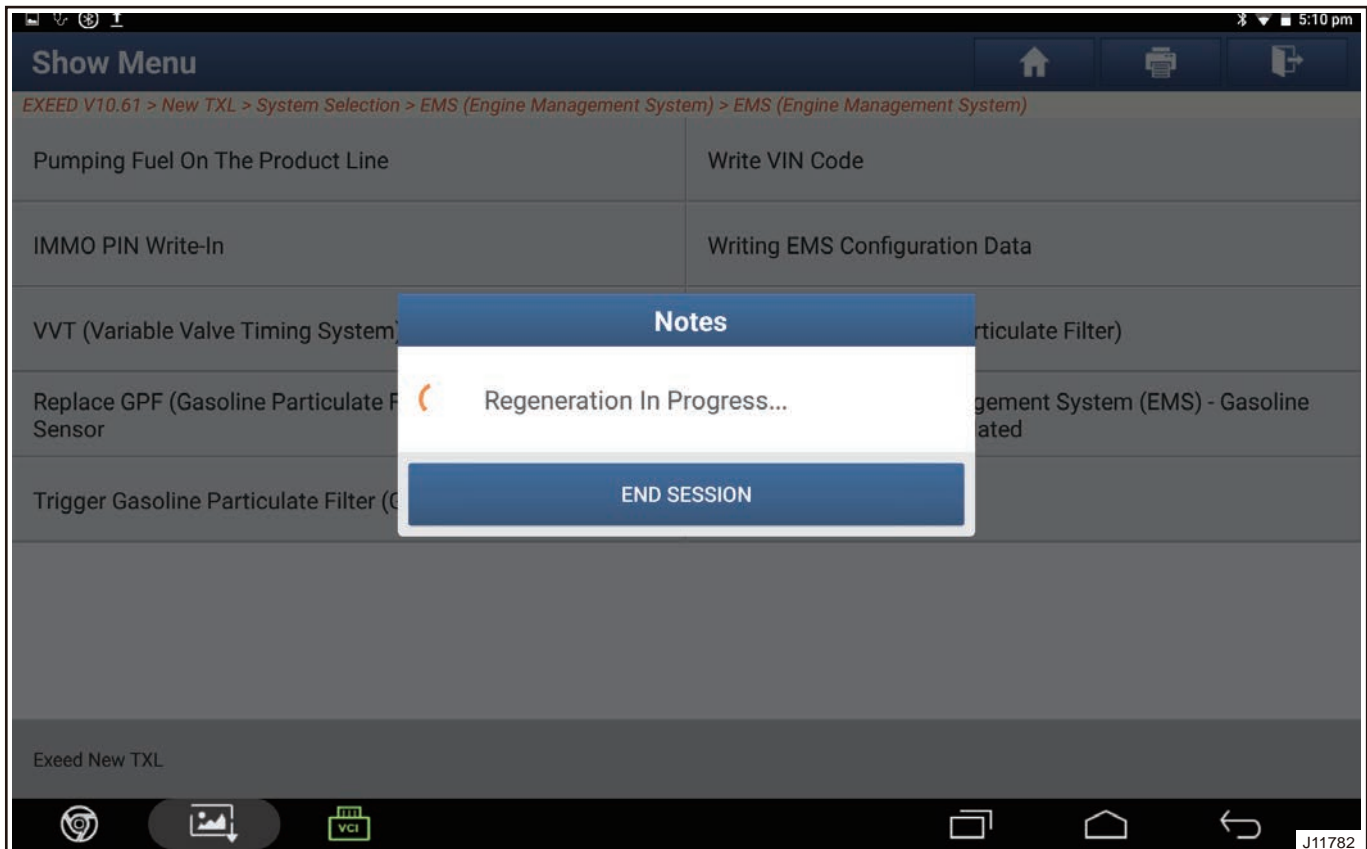
(4) Click “Trigger Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) Regeneration” .



(5) Click “Yes” .

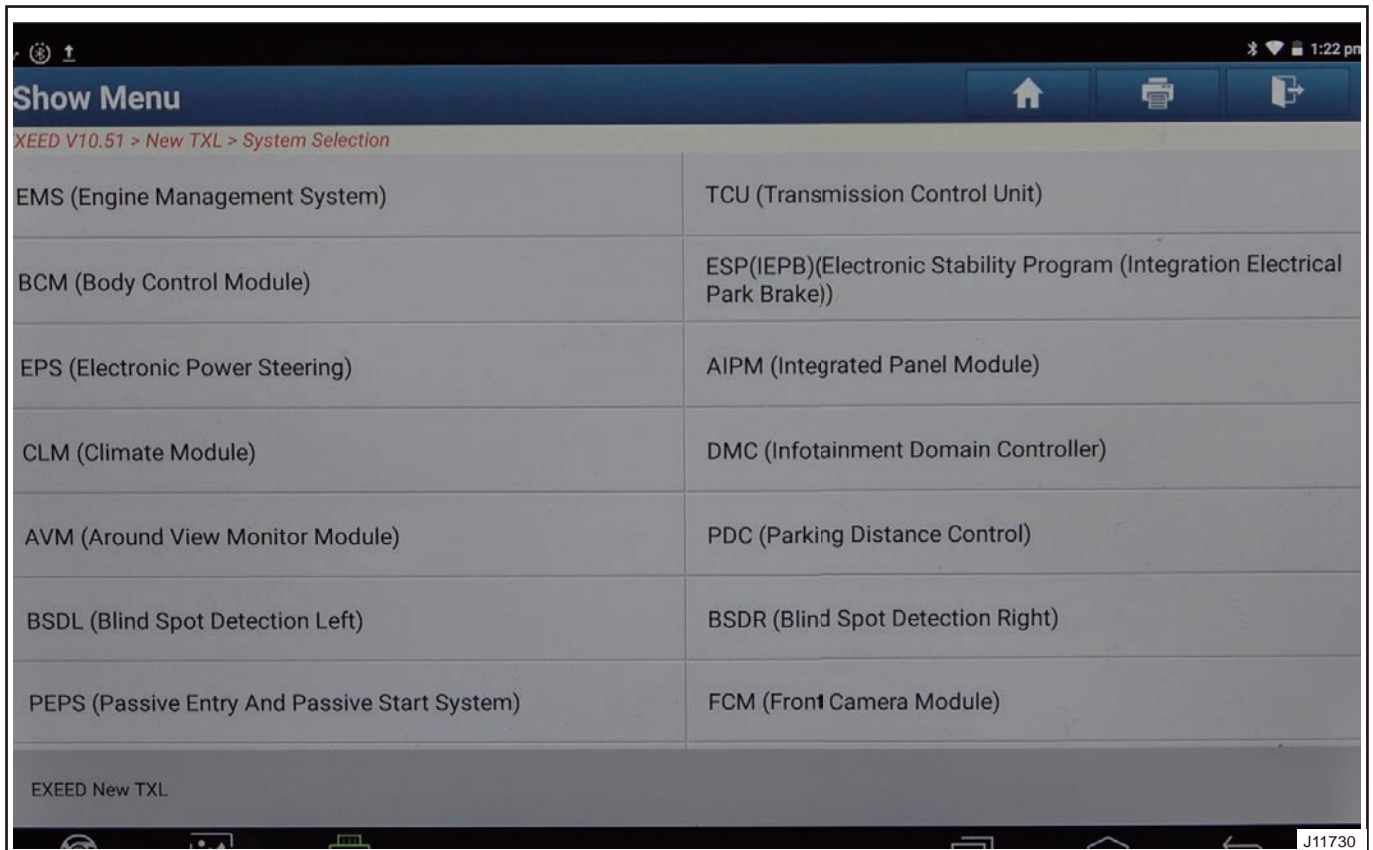


(6) Interface shows “Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) Regenerating” , click “OK” after it is completed.

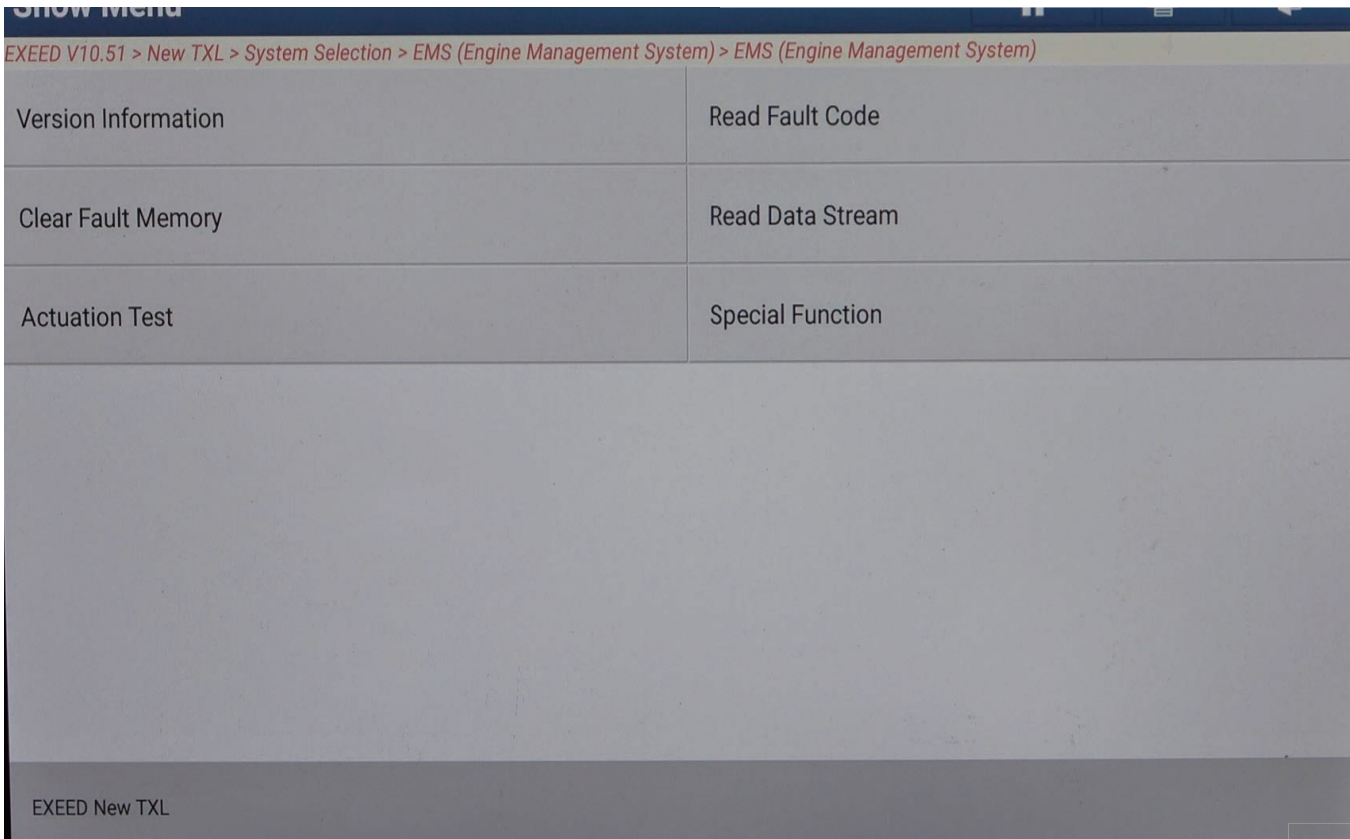


■ Replace GPF Learning

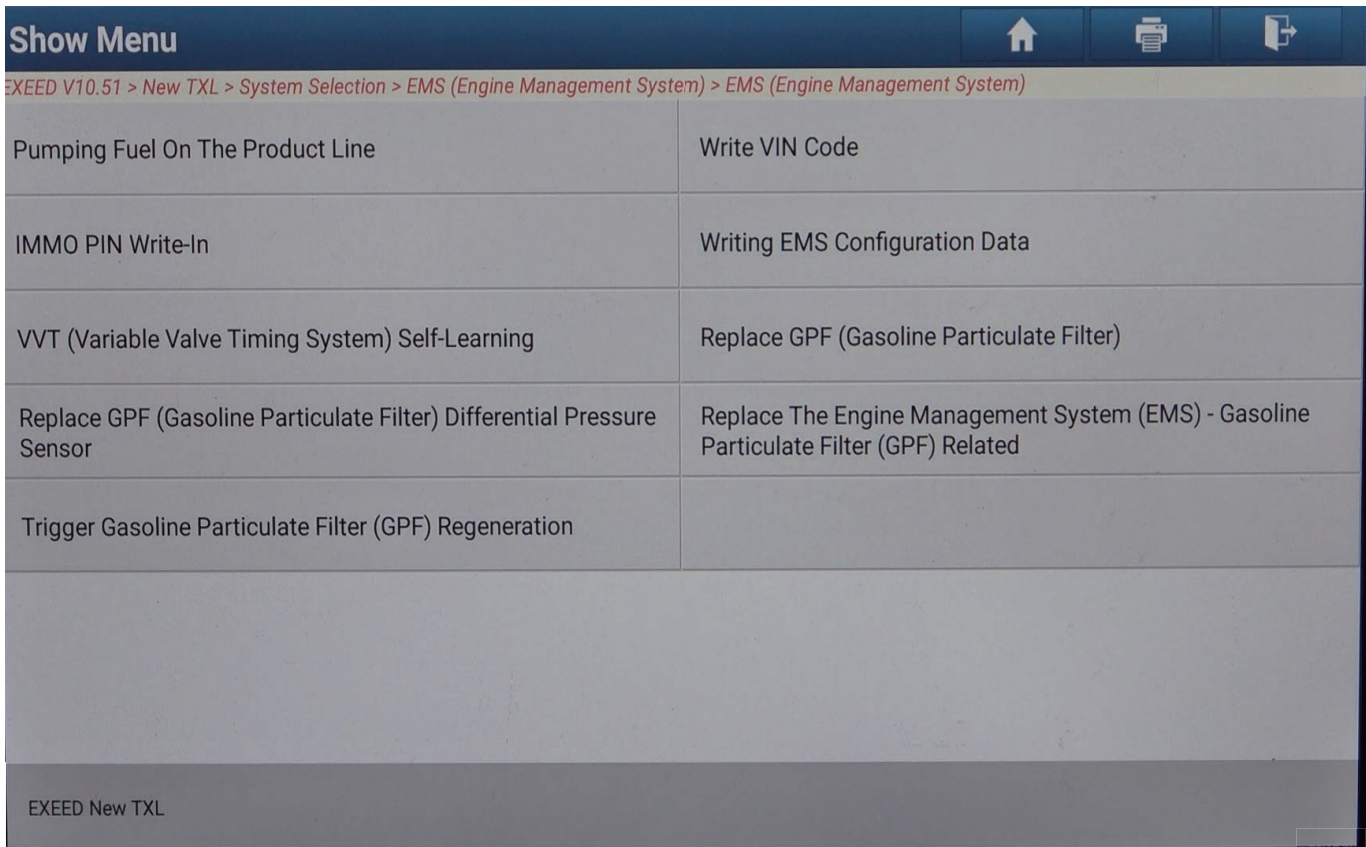
- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, and select “TXL” vehicle model.
- (2) Click “EMS (Engine Management System)” .



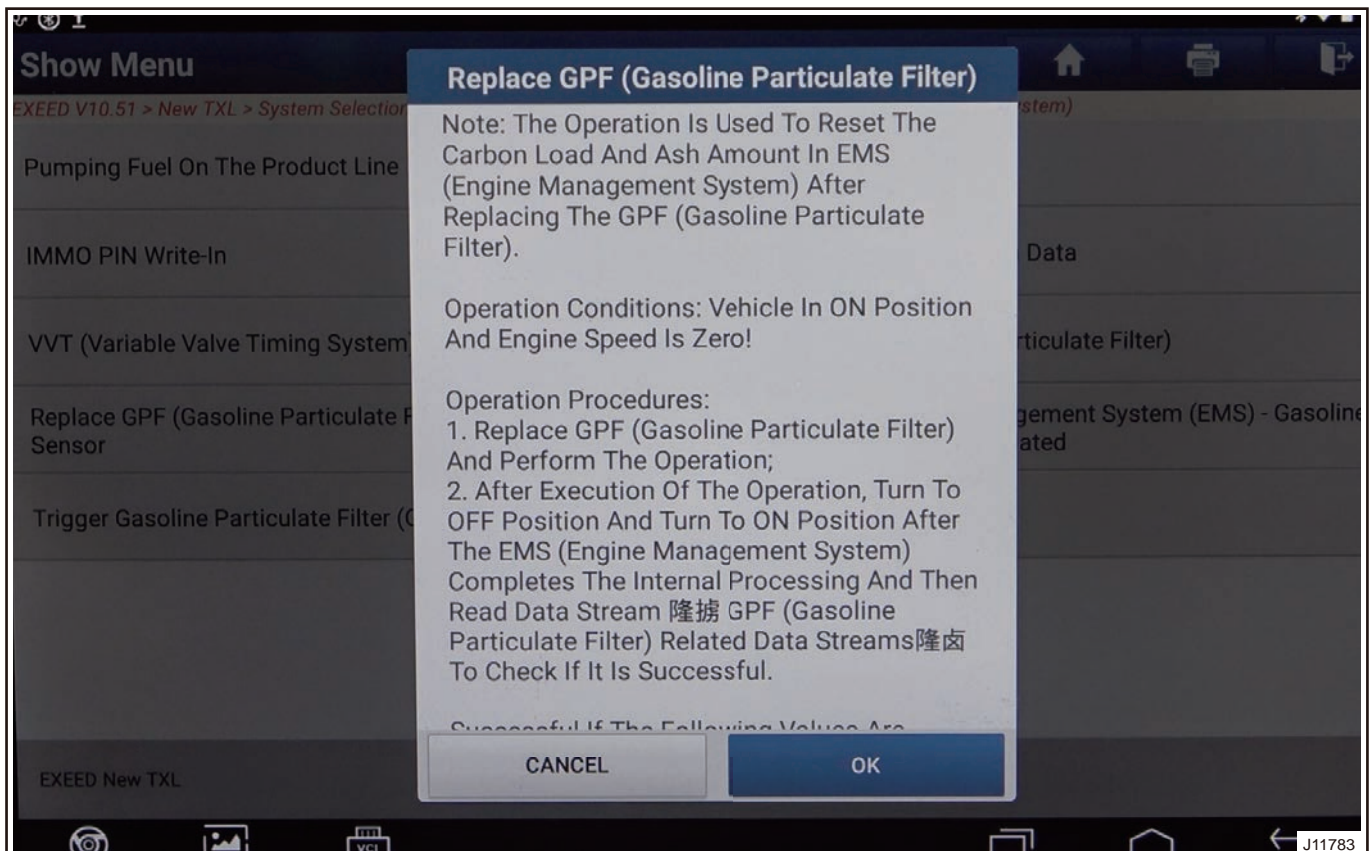
(3) Click “Special Function” .



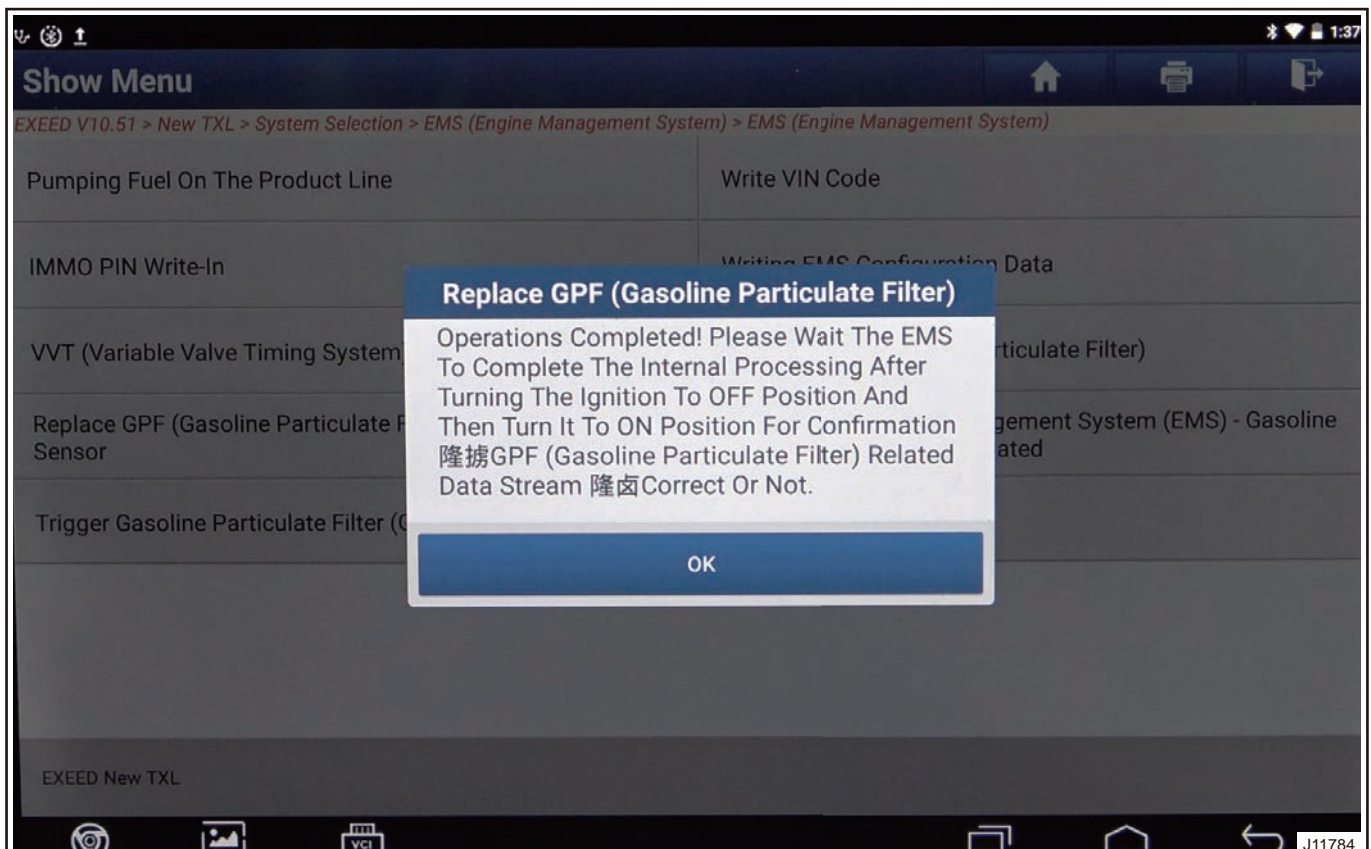
(4) Click “Replace GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter)” .



(5) Click “OK” .

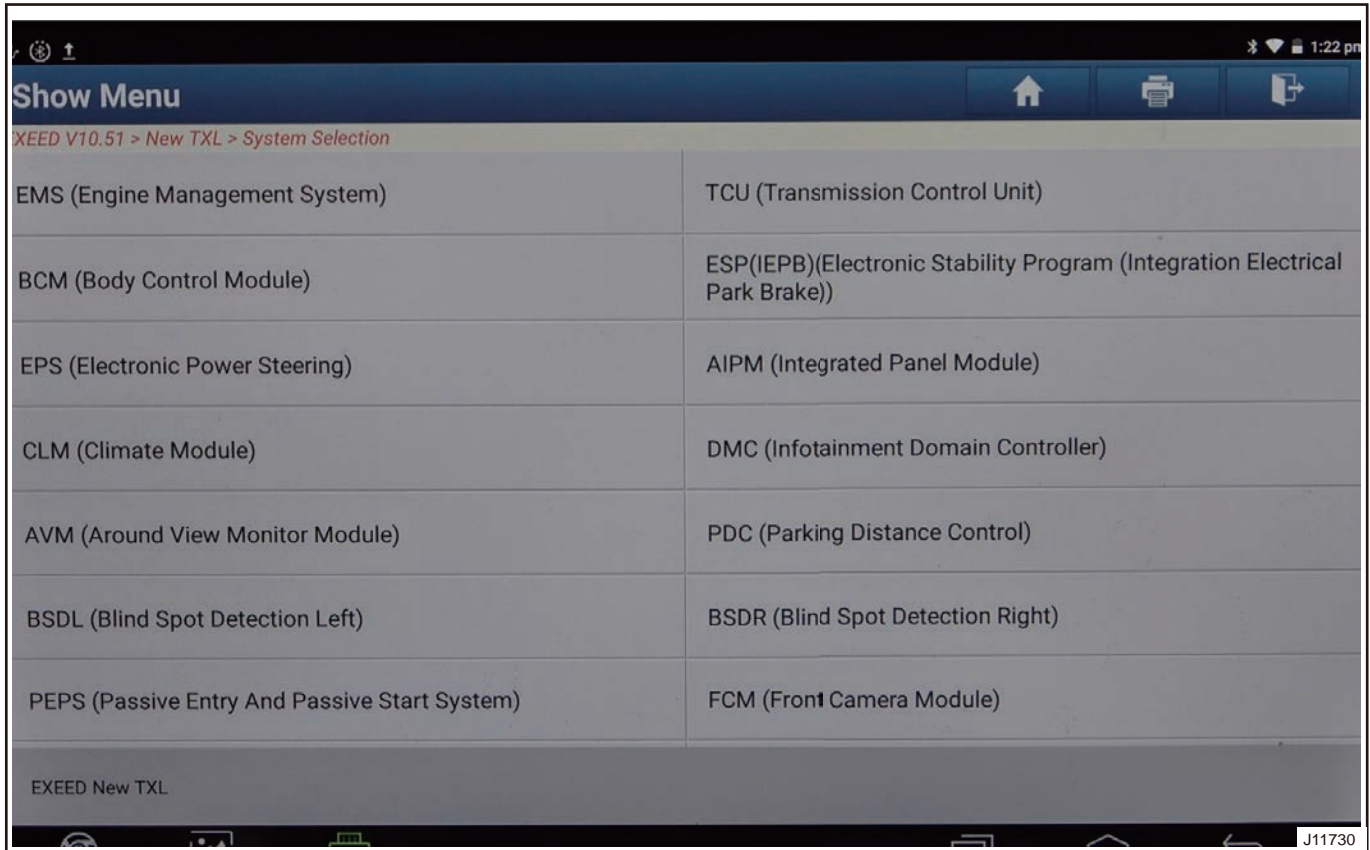


(6) Interface shows “Operation Completed” and click “OK” .

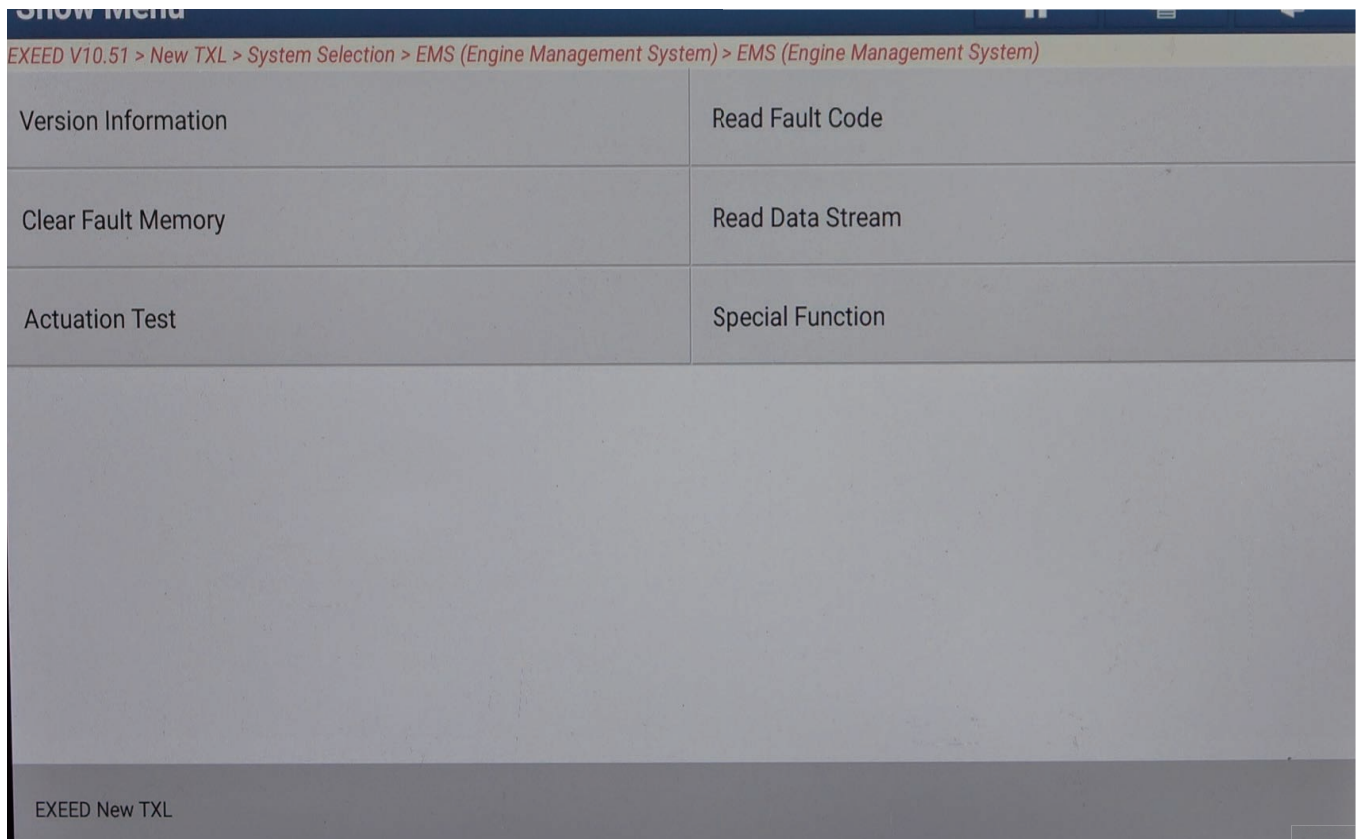


■ **Replace Differential Pressure Sensor Learning**

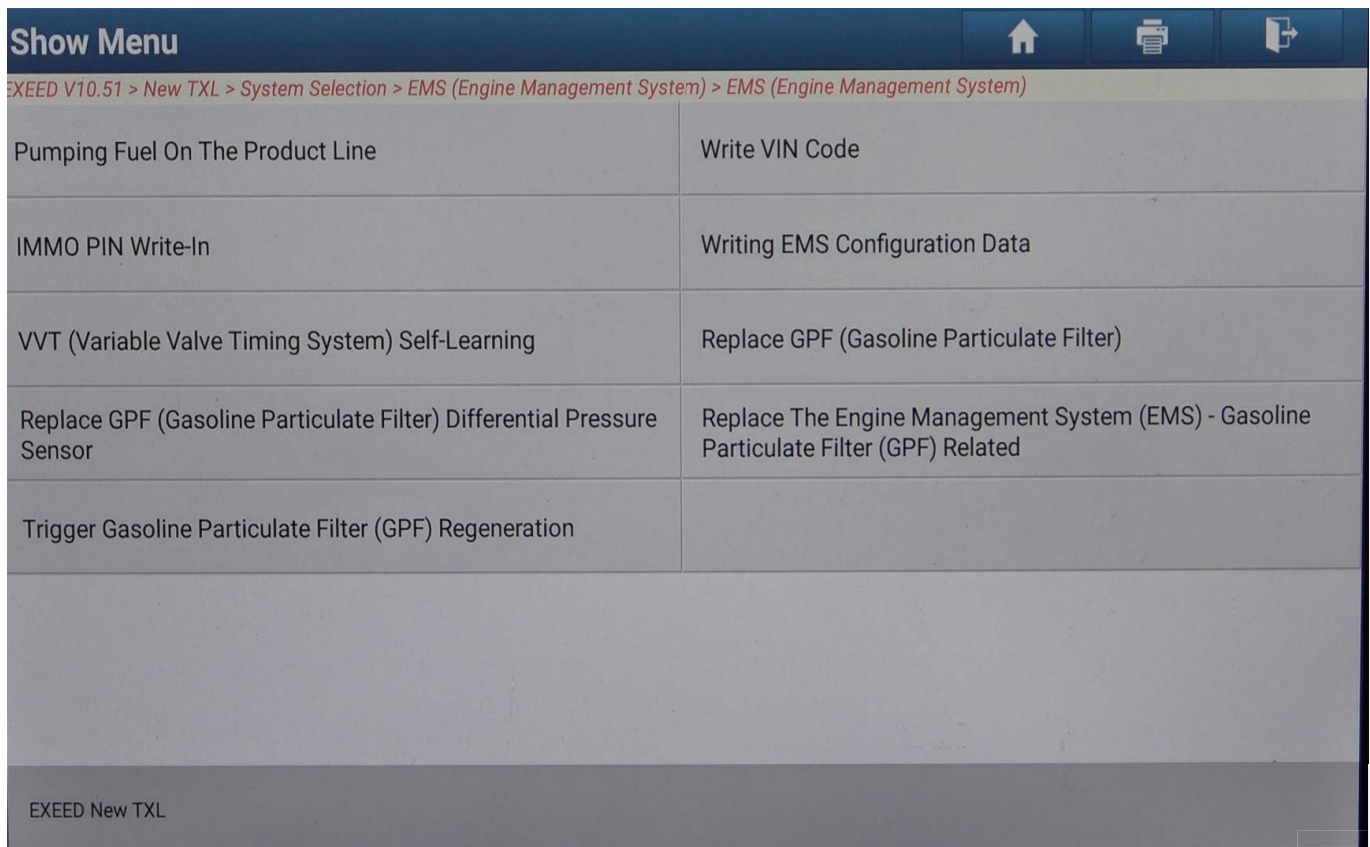
- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, and select “TXL” vehicle model.
- (2) Click “EMS (Engine Management System)” .



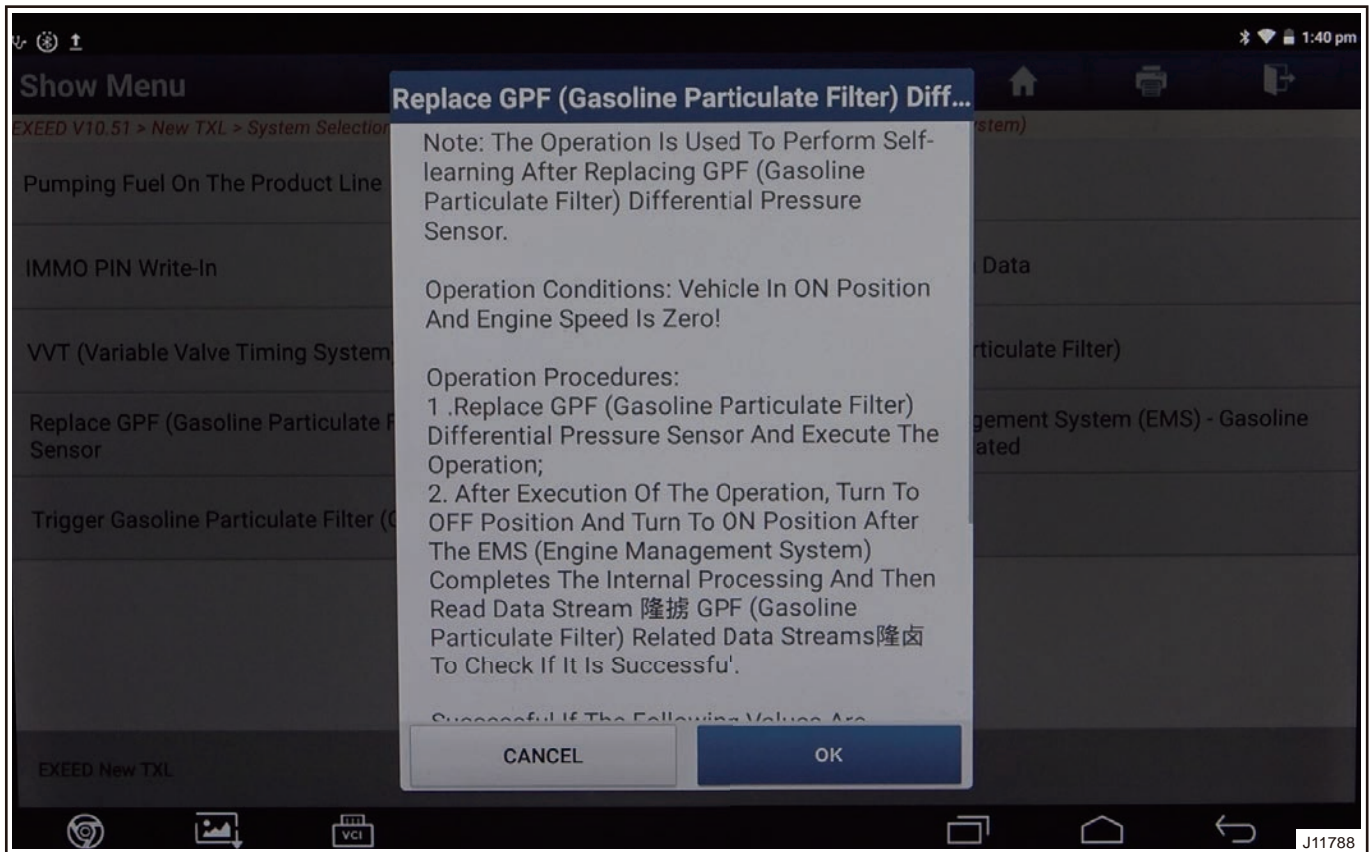
(3) Click “Special Function” .



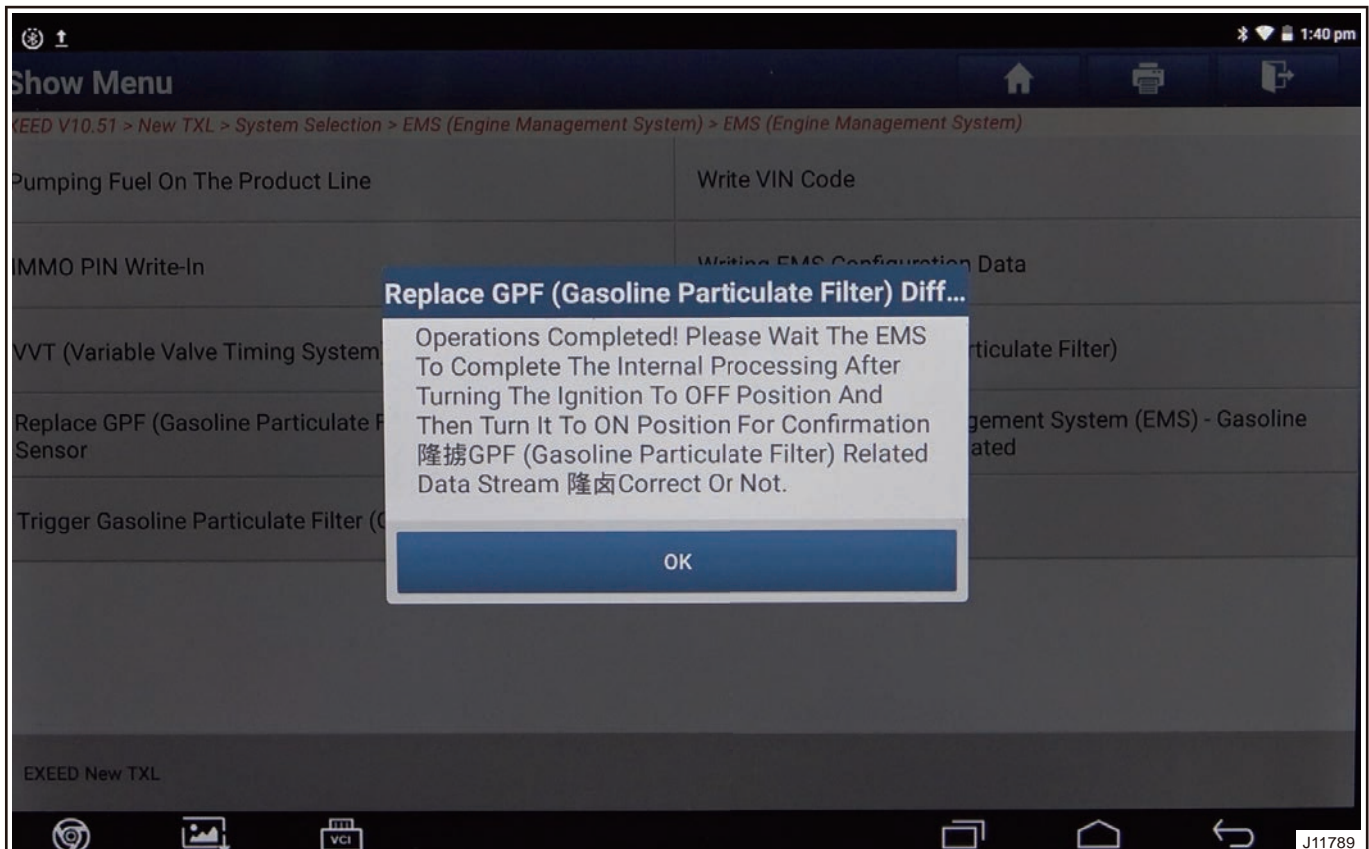
(4) Click “Replace GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) Differential Pressure Sensor” .



(5) Click “OK” .

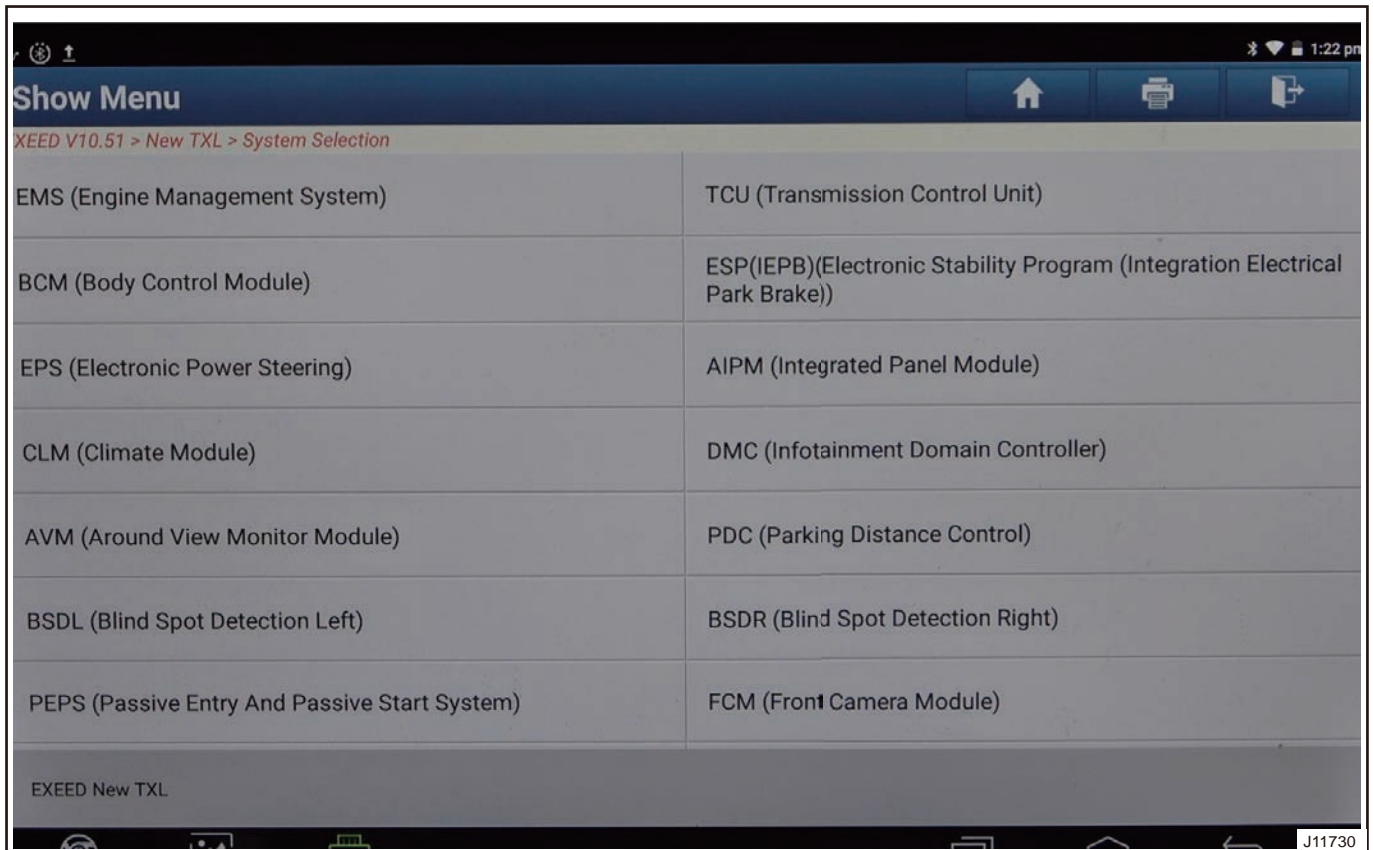


(6) Interface shows “Operation Completed” and click “OK” .

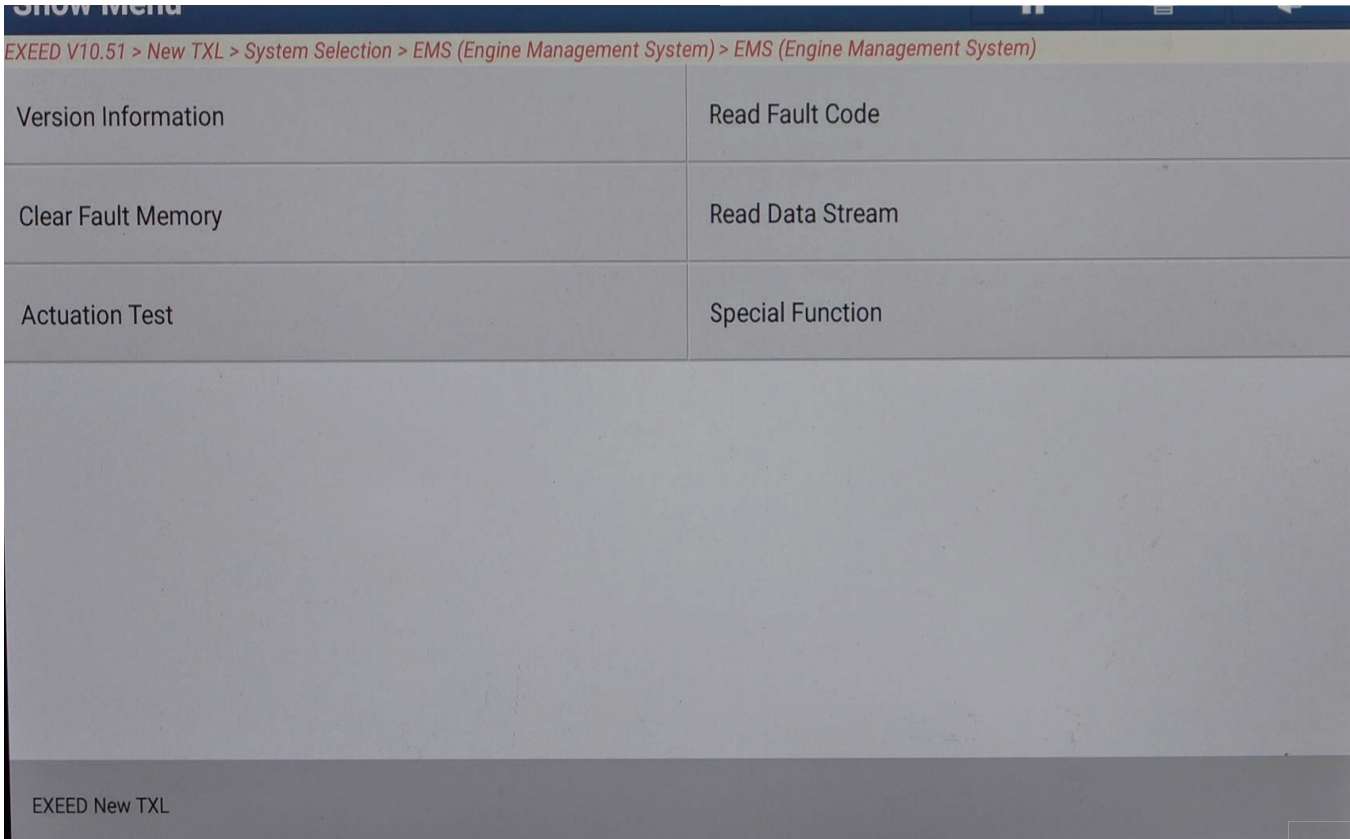


■ EMS GPF - Learning

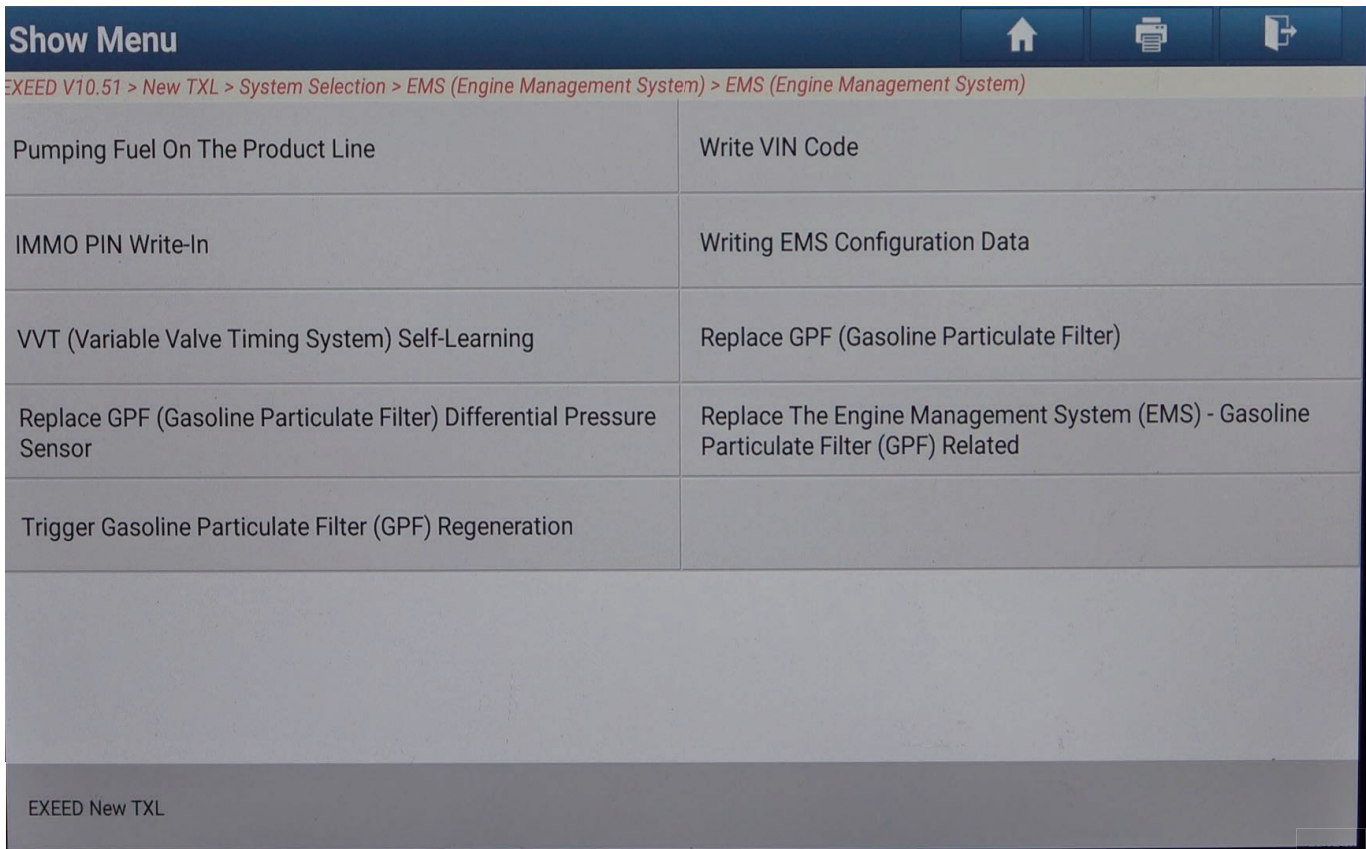
- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, and select “TXL” vehicle model.
- (2) Click “EMS (Engine Management System)” .



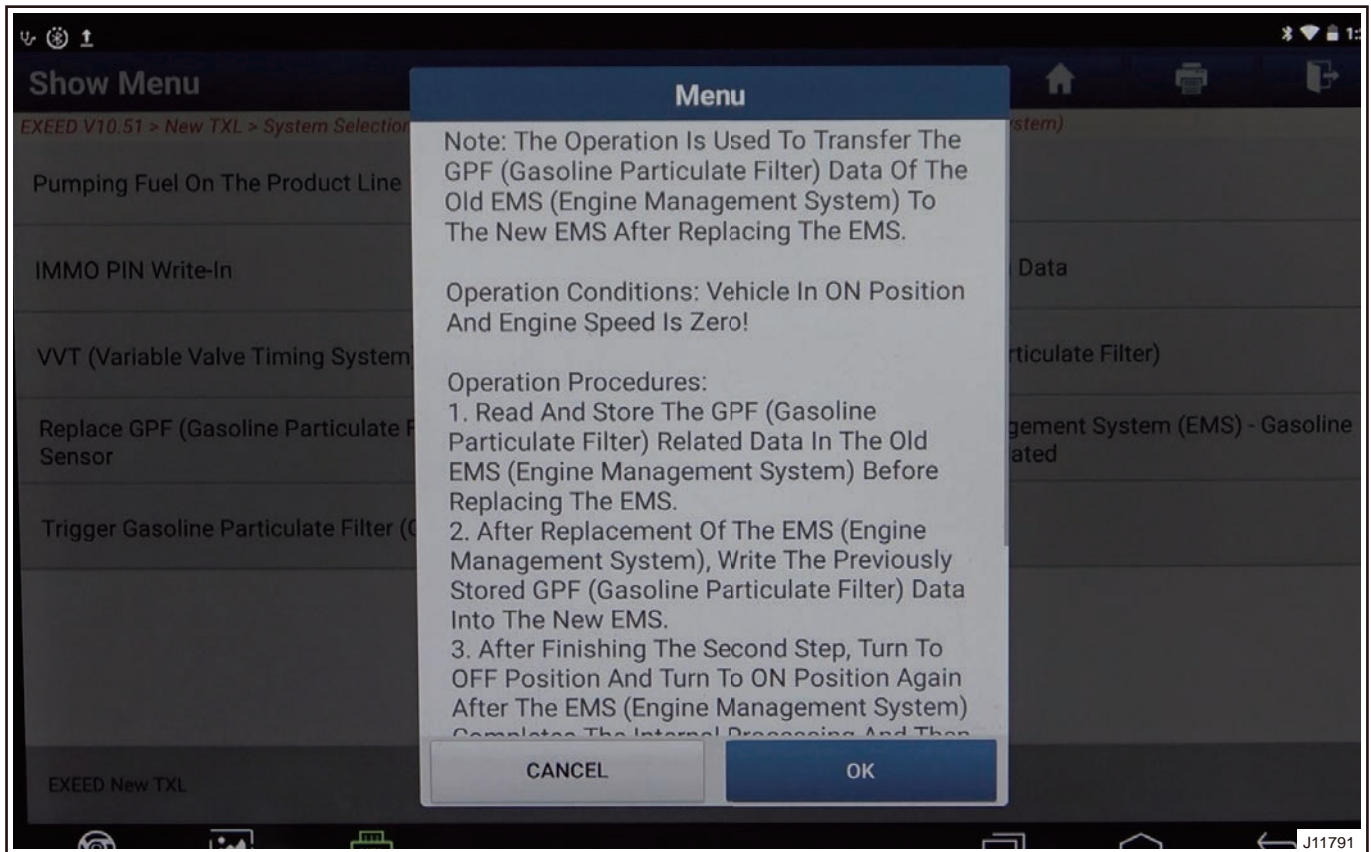
(3) Click “Special Function” .



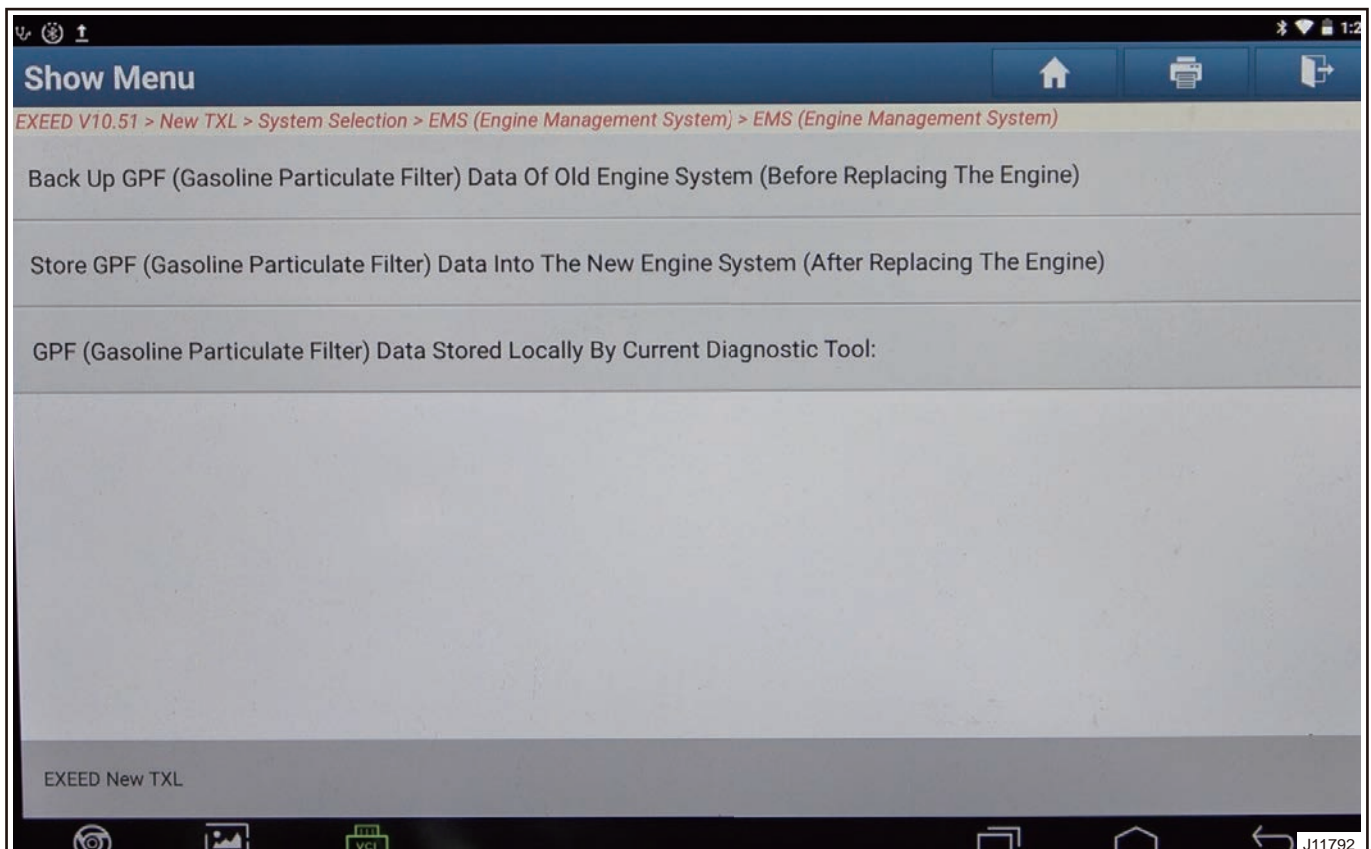
(4) Click “Replace EMS (Engine Management System) - GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) Related” .



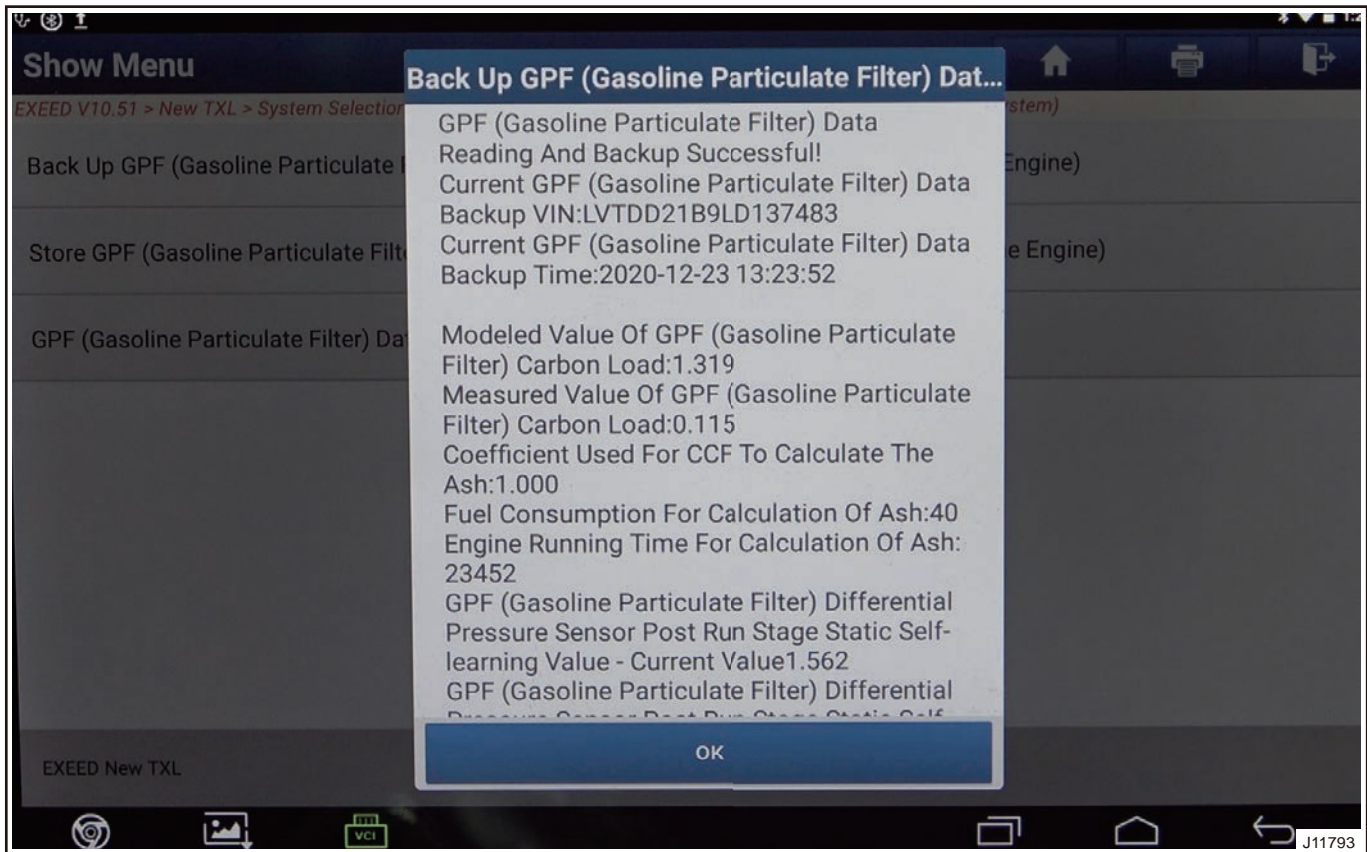
(5) Click “OK” .



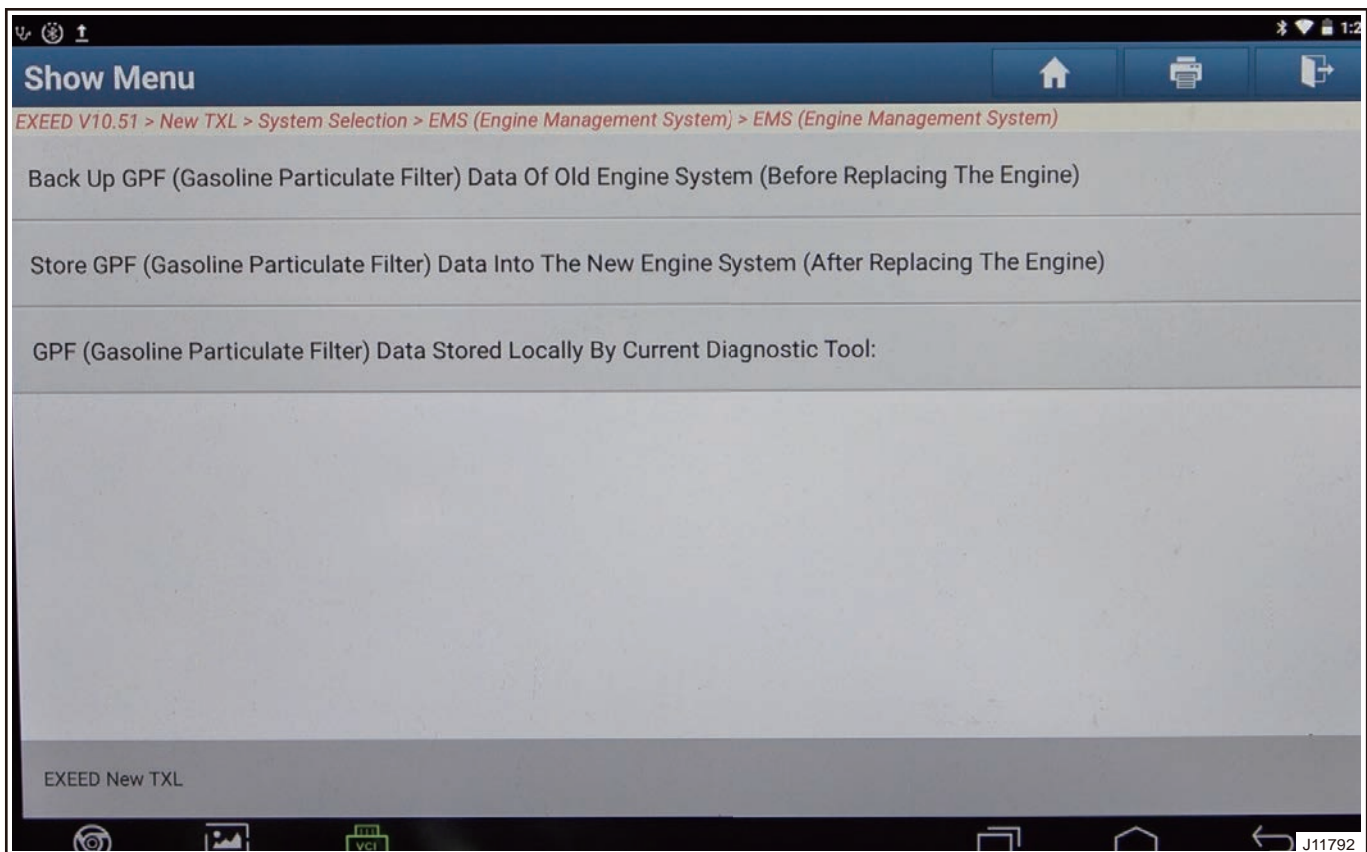
(6) Click “Back Up GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) Data (Before Replacing The Engine)” .



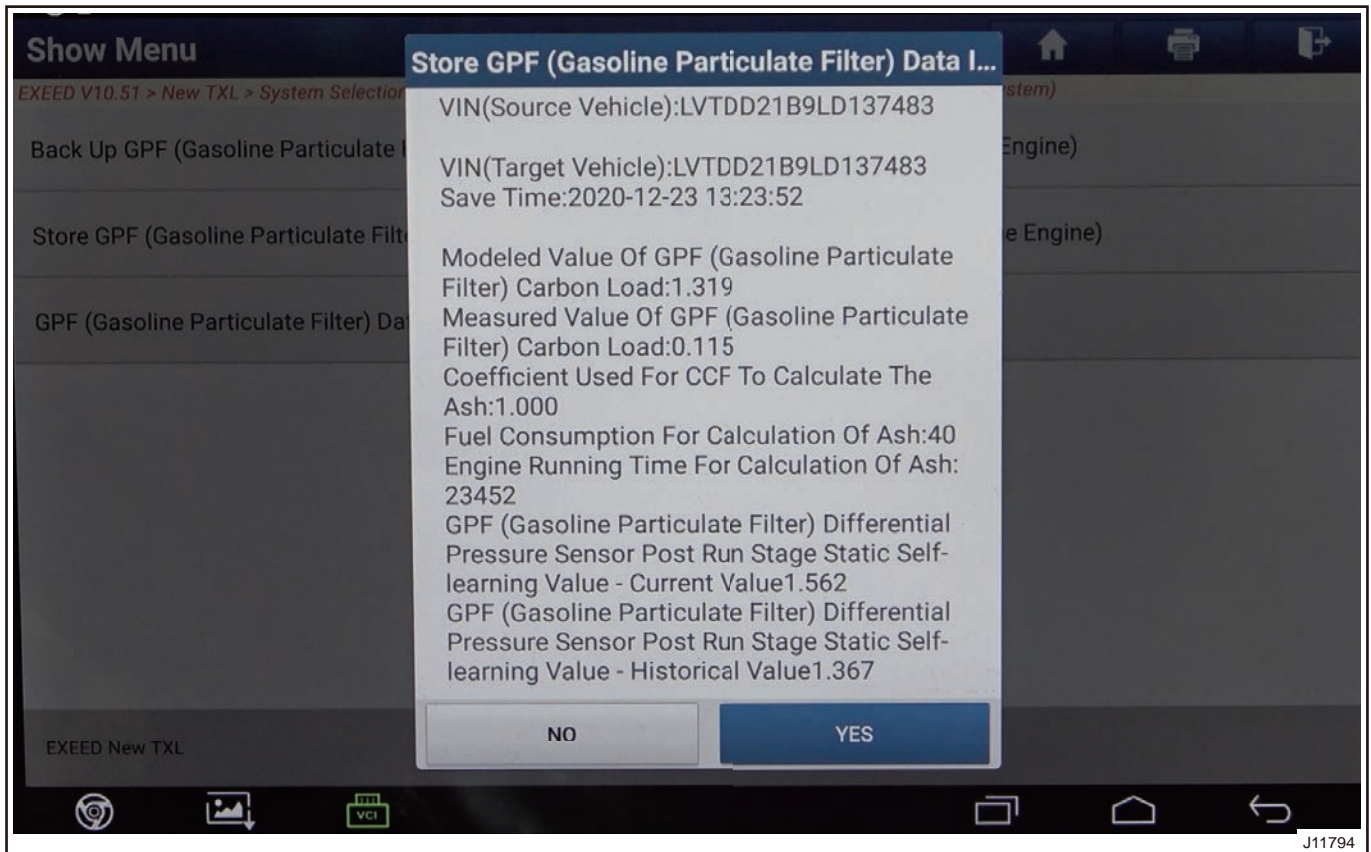
(7) Click “OK” .



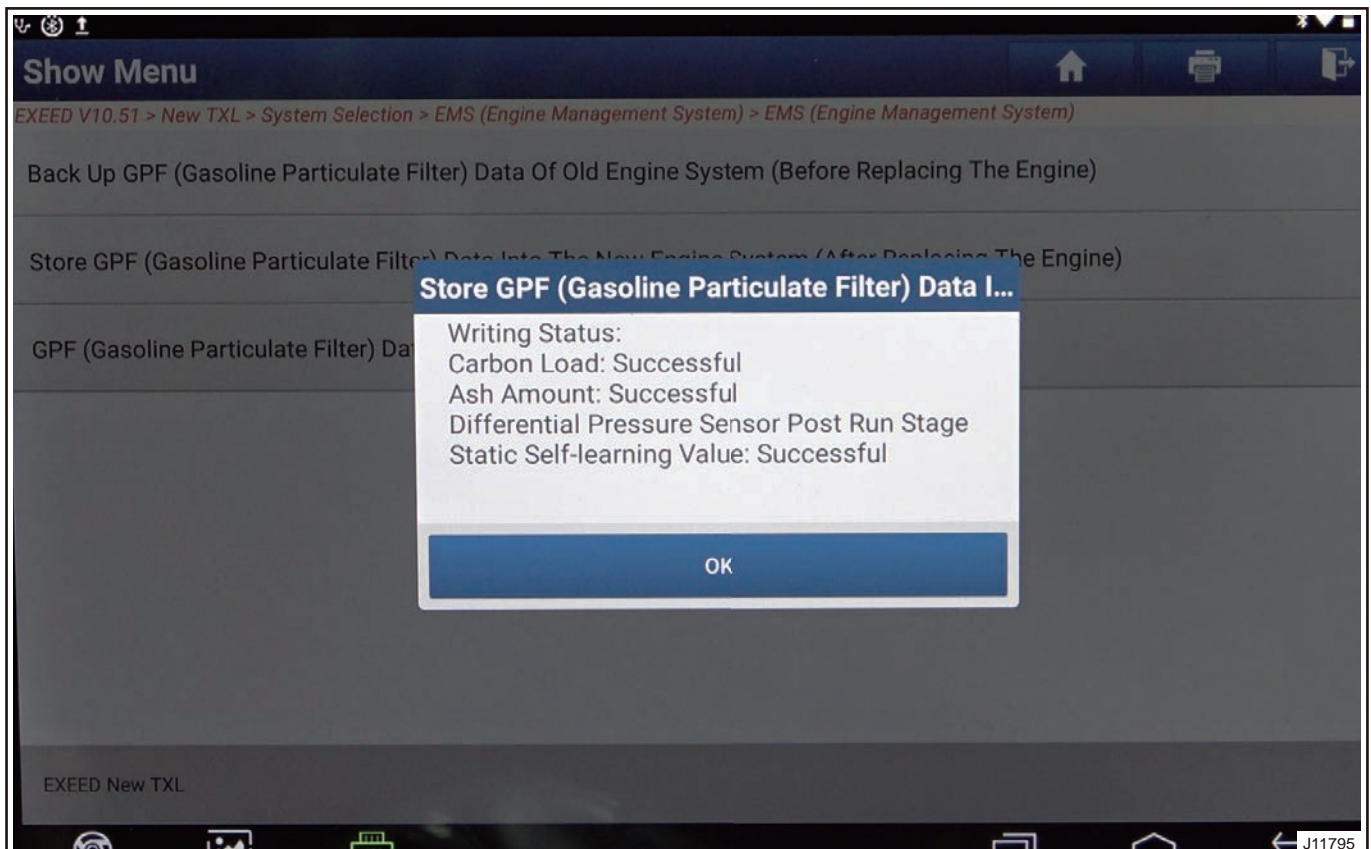
(8) Click “Store GPF (Gasoline Particulate Filter) Data Into The New Engine System (After Replacing The Engine)” .



(9) After confirming information is correct, click “Yes” .



(10) Interface shows: Write Status Is Successful, and click “OK” .



ENGINE

4.1	ENGINE MECHANICAL	357
1	Warning and Precaution	357
1.1	Warning.....	357
2	System Overview	357
2.1	Description.....	357
2.2	System Principle	357
2.3	System Components Description.....	357
3	Special Tool and Equipment.....	360
3.1	General Tools	360
3.2	Special Tools.....	364
4	Parameters.....	366
4.1	Engine Specifications	366
4.2	Tolerance Matching Between Engine Main Components	367
4.3	Valve Timing.....	367
4.4	Lubrication Area	368
4.5	Area with Seal Gum Applied.....	369
4.6	Non-reusable Part	369
5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	370
5.1	Accessory Pulley	370
5.2	Idler Pulley Assembly.....	371
5.3	Tensioner Assembly.....	372
5.4	Cylinder Head Cover	373
5.5	Crankshaft Front Oil Seal	377
5.6	Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal	378
5.7	Flywheel Assembly	379
5.8	Engine Timing Chain	380
5.9	Camshaft & Rocker Arm.....	387
5.10	Cylinder Head.....	391
5.11	Cylinder Block.....	400
5.12	Engine Mounting Assembly	417
5.13	Engine Assembly	422

4.1 ENGINE MECHANICAL

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.

2 System Overview

2.1 Description

SQRF4J16 engine has the following features

- (1) DVVT
- (2) In-line DOHC with 4 cylinders
- (3) Four valves per cylinder
- (4) Aluminum cylinder head
- (5) Aluminum cylinder block
- (6) Supercharged intercooler

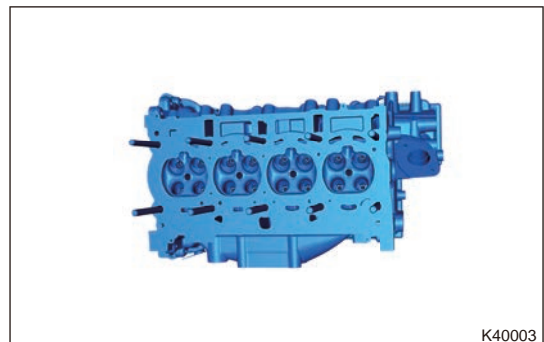
2.2 System Principle

- (1) SQRF4J16 engine adapts a design of transverse, direct injection, in-line 4-cylinder, 4-stroke, four valves per cylinder, DOHC, supercharged intercooler, VVT, electronic controlled multi-port fuel injection, the engine adapts independent ignition.
- (2) SQRF4J16 engine adapts aluminum cylinder block. Aluminum oil pan is fixed to aluminum frame with bolts. The aluminum cylinder head is secured to the block with bolts. The camshaft is installed on cylinder head. Power output from crankshaft drives camshaft by crankshaft sprocket through timing belt to rotate, thus making camshaft interact with rocker arm lifter to open and close valve. Piston assembly is an aluminum piston with cast iron connecting rod. This engine has features of reliable structure and excellent performance.

2.3 System Components Description

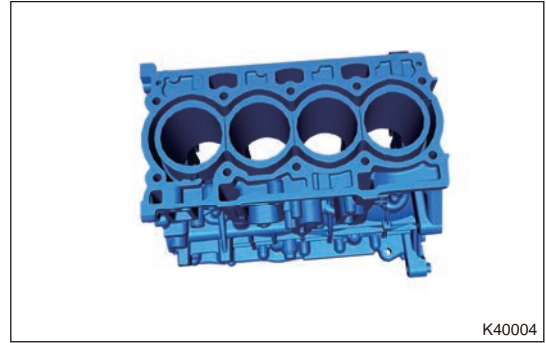
■ Cylinder Head

The upper part of the cylinder is closed to form a combustion chamber, and as the support of the camshaft, rocker arm, intake pipe and exhaust pipe. It mainly sucks air into the cylinder, the spark plug ignites the combustible gas mixture to drive the piston, and the exhaust gas is discharged from the exhaust pipe.



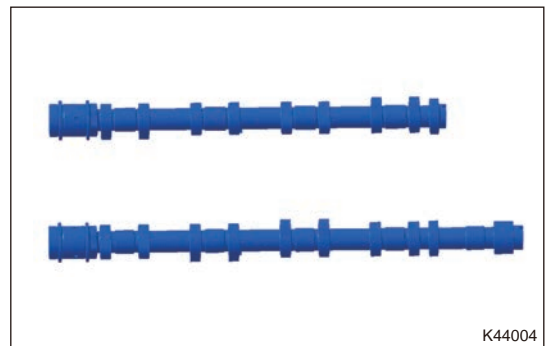
■ **Cylinder Block**

The main body of the engine, which connects each cylinder and crankcase into a whole, is the support frame for installing piston, crankshaft, other parts and accessories.



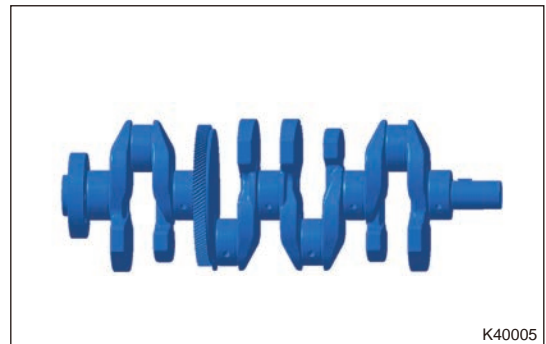
■ **Camshaft**

Camshaft is a component located inside engine, which is used to control valve opening and closing operations.



■ **Crankshaft**

Crankshaft is an important component in engine, which bears force from connecting rod and transfers it into rotation torque and outputs it through crankshaft to drives other accessories of engine.



■ **Valve**

Valve is used to allow air to flow in engine and bleed exhausted air after combustion; Intake valve is used to absorb air in engine and mix it with fuel for combustion; Exhaust valve is used to bleed exhausted air after combustion for radiation.



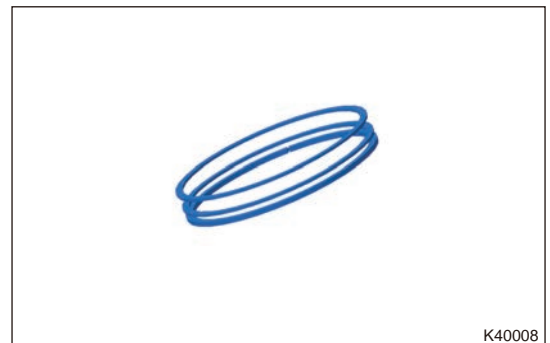
■ Piston

Piston is used to bear combustion compression from cylinder and transfer it to the crankshaft through piston pin and connecting rod.



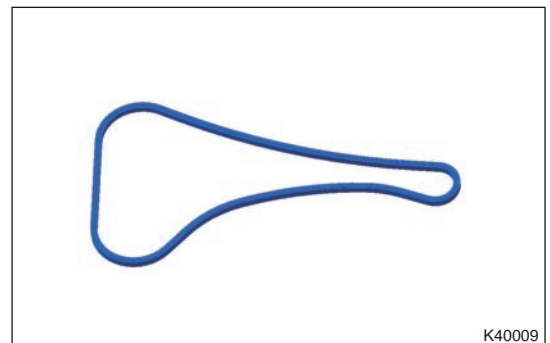
■ Piston Ring

Piston ring has two types of air ring and oil ring. Air ring is used to keep air tightness between cylinder and piston to avoid air leakage. Also it transmits most heat to cylinder wall which is carried away by coolant; Oil ring is used to apply and scrape the oil. Excessive oil can be scraped when oil ring moves downward and a layer of even oil can be applied to cylinder wall when oil ring moves upward. It not only can prevent oil entering the cylinder for combustion and also can reduce friction resistance between piston and cylinder. Furthermore, oil ring helps in air tightness.



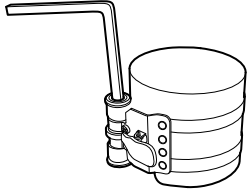
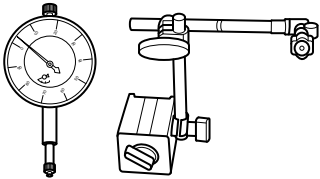
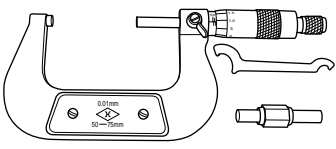
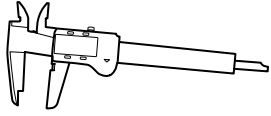
■ Engine Timing Chain

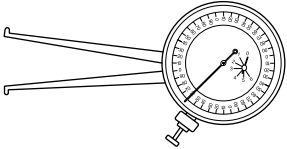
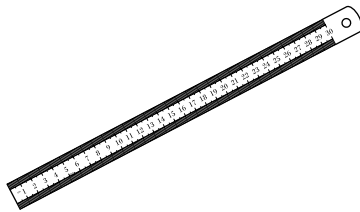
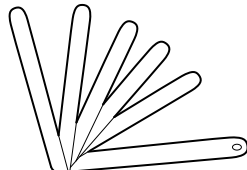
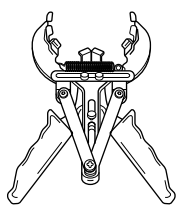
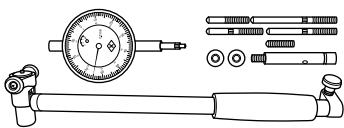
Engine timing chain is mainly used to drive valve mechanism, which allows intake valve and exhaust valve to open and close in proper time so that engine cylinder can absorb and exhaust air normally.

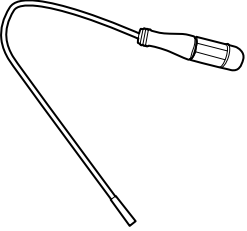
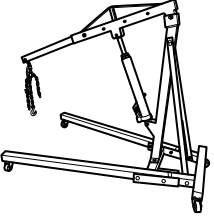
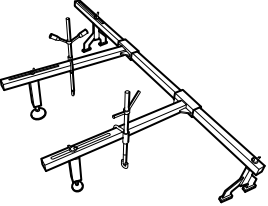
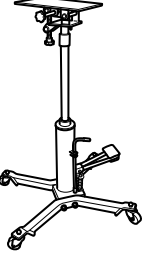
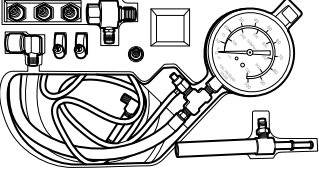


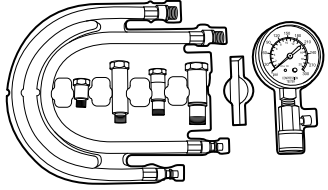
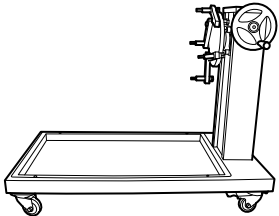
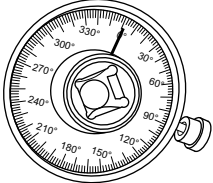
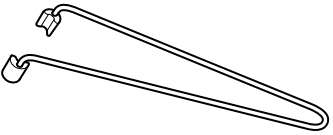
3 Special Tool and Equipment

3.1 General Tools

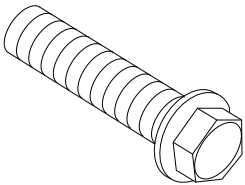
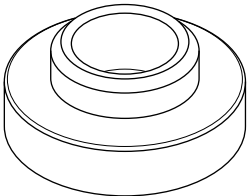
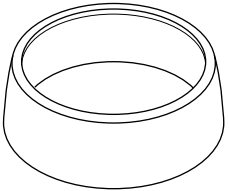
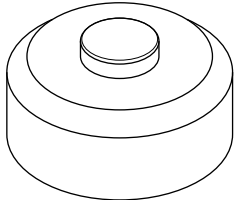
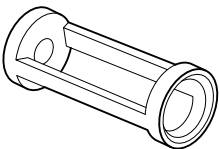
Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Piston Installer	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00030</p>
Dial Indicator and Magnetic Holder	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00018</p>
Outer Diameter Micrometer	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00045</p>
Vernier Caliper	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00051</p>

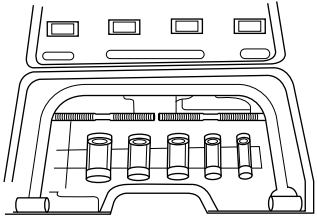
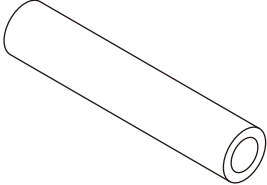
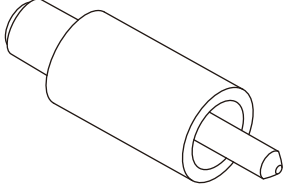
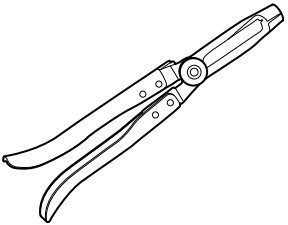
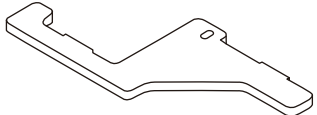
Tool Name	Tool Drawing
<p>Inner Diameter Micrometer</p>	 <p>S00049</p>
<p>Precision Straightedge</p>	 <p>S00044</p>
<p>Feeler Gauge</p>	 <p>S00041</p>
<p>Piston Ring Remover</p>	 <p>S00047</p>
<p>Cylinder Gauge</p>	 <p>S00046</p>

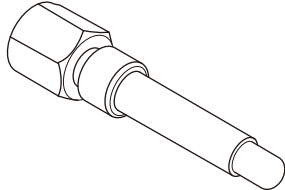
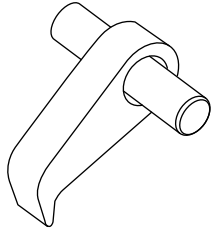
Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Flexional Magnetic Rod	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00031</p>
Engine Hoist	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00032</p>
Engine Equalizer	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00021</p>
Transmission Carrier	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00004</p>
Fuel System Pressure Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00035</p>

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
<p>Cylinder Pressure Gauge</p>	 <p>S00033</p>
<p>Engine Service Platform</p>	 <p>S00039</p>
<p>Angle Gauge</p>	 <p>S00065</p>
<p>Valve Cotter Installer</p>	 <p>S00024</p>

3.2 Special Tools

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Crankshaft Front Oil Seal Guide Tool	EPT-0004	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00088</p>
Crankshaft Front Oil Seal Installer	EPT-0005	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00089</p>
Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal Guide Tool	EPT-0007	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00091</p>
Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal Installer	EPT-0006	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00090</p>
Valve Spring Compression Adapter	EPT-0001	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00037</p>

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Valve Spring Compressor	EPT-0002	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00087</p>
Valve Oil Seal Installer	EPT-0010	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00093</p>
Valve Oil Seal Guide Sleeve	EPT-0009	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00092</p>
Valve Oil Seal Remover	EPT-0003	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00029</p>
Camshaft Timing Tool	EPT-0011	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00094</p>

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Crankshaft Timing Tool	EPT-0012	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00095</p>
Flywheel Holding Tool	EPT-0008	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00099</p>

4 Parameters

4.1 Engine Specifications

Items	Specifications
Engine Type	Vertical, direct injection, in-line 4-cylinder, water-cooled, 4-stroke, DOHC
Engine Model	SQRF4J16
Valve Number Per Cylinder	4
Cylinder Diameter (mm)	77
Piston Stroke (mm)	85.8
Displacement (ml)	1598
Compression Ratio	9.9:1
Ignition Type	Independent
Rated Power (kw)	145
Max. Torque (N·m)	290
Fuel Octane Number	Unleaded gasoline, octane number 92 or above
Oil Grade	SM SAE-5W-30
Starting Type	Electric starting
Cooling Type	Forced circulation type antifreeze cooling
Lubrication Type	Compound type (pressure, splash lubrication)
Cylinder Compression Pressure (bar) (180 - 250) r/min	7 -10

4.2 Tolerance Matching Between Engine Main Components

Series Number	Part Name	Size and Tolerance	Matching Clearance
1	Intake Side 1st Bearing Hole	$\Phi 30 (0, +0.025)$	0.050-0.091
	Intake Camshaft Assembly 1st	$\Phi 30 (-0.066, -0.050)$	
	Intake Side 2-6 Bearing Hole	$\Phi 24 (0, +0.021)$	0.040-0.074
	Intake Camshaft Assembly 2nd-6th Journals	$\Phi 24 (-0.053, -0.040)$	
2	Exhaust Side 1st Bearing Hole	$\Phi 30 (0, +0.025)$	0.050-0.091
	Exhaust Camshaft Assembly 1st Journal	$\Phi 30 (-0.066, -0.050)$	
	Exhaust Side 2-5 Bearing Hole	$\Phi 24 (0, +0.021)$	0.040-0.074
	Exhaust Camshaft Assembly 2nd-5th Journals	$\Phi 24 (-0.053, -0.040)$	
3	Cylinder Head Intake Side Camshaft Thrust Gear Width	27.8 (-0.1, 0)	0.15-0.275
	Intake Camshaft Assembly Thrust Gear Width	27.95 (0, +0.025)	
4	Cylinder Head Exhaust Side Camshaft Thrust Gear Width	27.8 (-0.1, 0)	0.15-0.275
	Exhaust Camshaft Assembly Thrust Gear Width	27.95 (0, +0.025)	
5	Hydraulic Lifter Assembly Outer Diameter	$\Phi 11.994 \pm 0.006$	0.006-0.036
	Cylinder Head Hydraulic Lifter Hole Diameter	$\Phi 12 (+0.006, +0.024)$	
6	Valve Guide Hole Diameter	$\Phi 6 (0, +0.015)$	0.013-0.042
	Intake Valve Stem Diameter	$\Phi 5.98 \pm 0.007$	
7	Valve Guide Hole Diameter	$\Phi 6 (0, +0.015)$	0.032 - 0.063
	Exhaust Valve Stem Diameter	$\Phi 5.96 \pm 0.007$	

4.3 Valve Timing

■ Intake (200° Wrapped Angle)

	Angle (°)	Valve Lift (mm)
Valve Opening 0 mm	350	0
Valve Opening 0.5mm	378	0.51
Valve Opening 1mm	385	0.98
Maximum Valve Lift	485	9.49
Valve Closed 1 mm	585	1.01
Valve Closed 0.5mm	593	0.50
Valve Closed 0mm	629	0

■ Exhaust (180.5° Wrapped Angle)

	Angle (°)	Valve Lift (mm)
Valve Opening 0 mm	124	0
Valve Opening 0.5mm	153	0.49
Valve Opening 1mm	160.5	0.99
Maximum Valve Lift	250	8.5
Valve Closed 1 mm	341	0.99
Valve Closed 0.5mm	349	0.50
Valve Closed 0mm	385.5	0

4.4 Lubrication Area

Lubrication Area	Model
Valve Guide Bottom Hole	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Intake Valve Retainer Bottom Hole	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Exhaust Valve Retainer Bottom Hole	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Valve Stem and Valve Guide Hole	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Valve Oil Seal Lip	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Hydraulic Lifter Assembly External Circular Surface and Hydraulic Lifter Hole	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Camshaft Assembly Journal and Bearing Seat Hole	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Roller Rocker Arm Assembly Bearing	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Phaser Solenoid Valve Seal Ring (O-ring)	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Upper and Lower Connecting Rod Bearing Shell and Connecting Rod Journal	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Upper and Lower Main Bearing Shell and Main Journal	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Thrust Washer (Oil Rail Side) and Crankshaft Thrust Surface	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Front and Rear Oil Seal Inner Lip and Crankshaft Oil Seal Journal	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Piston Pin Hole	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Piston Ring Groove	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Cylinder Bore Inner Wall	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Crankshaft Front and Rear Oil Seal External Circular Surface	Use same type of lubricant as engine
Timing System	Use same type of lubricant as engine

4.5 Area with Seal Gum Applied

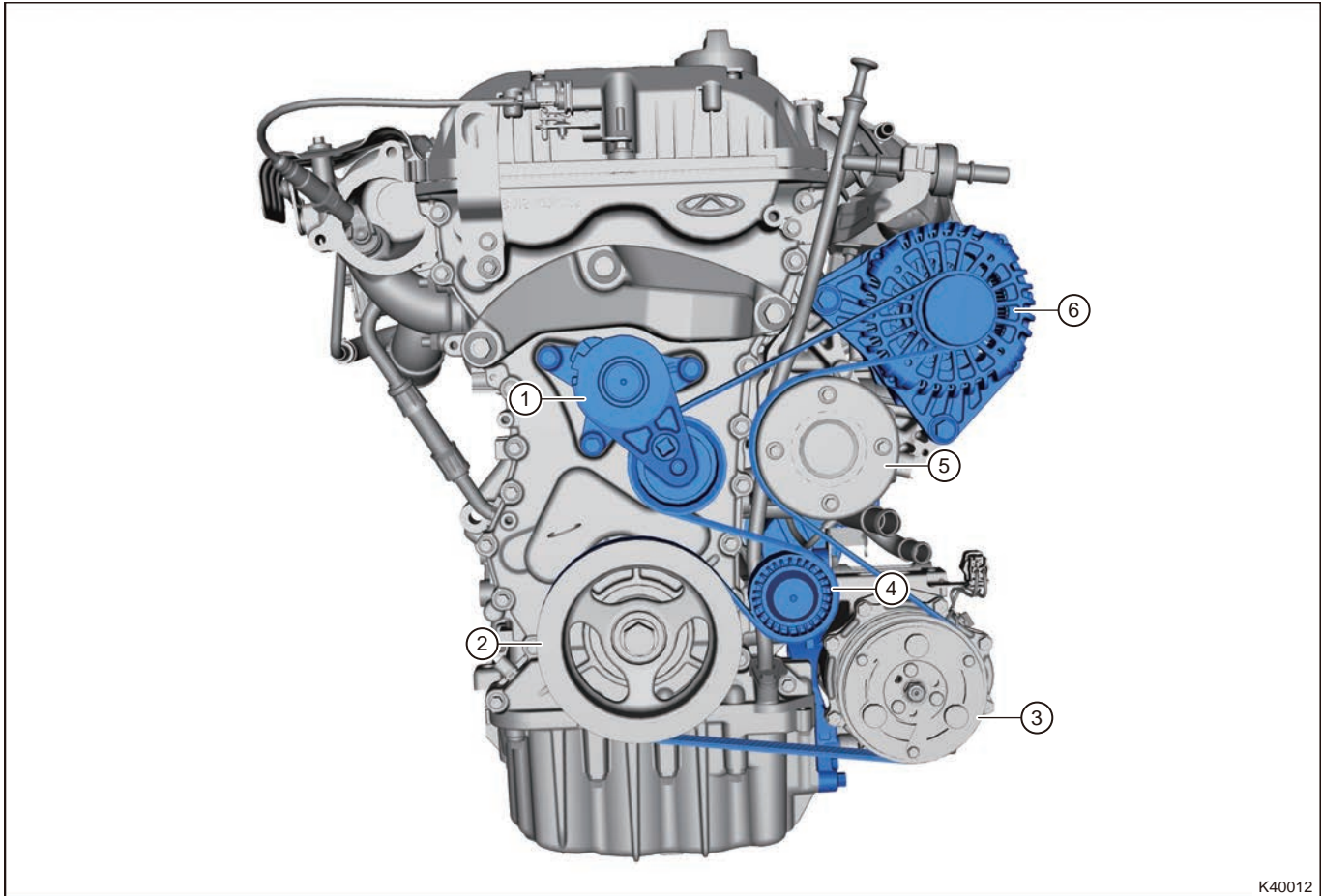
Area with Seal Gum Applied	Seal Gum Type
Bowl Plug - Front and Rear End	Loctite 11747
Bowl Plug - Exhaust Side	Loctite 121078
Top and Bottom Sides of Cylinder Head Front End (T-shaped Area)	Loctite 5900H
"T" Shaped Area Between Timing Chain Cover and Cylinder Head	Loctite 5900H
Timing Chain Cover Frame Bottom Arc Part	Loctite 5900H
Sprocket Head Cover Seal Surface	Loctite 5900H/Loctite 5900HA
Upper Guide Rail Assembly Bolt	Loctite 243

4.6 Non-reusable Part

Non-reusable Part	
Cylinder Head Fixing Bolt	Replace it
Valve Oil Seal	Replace it
Crankshaft Front Oil Seal	Replace it
Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal	Replace it
Cylinder Head Gasket	Replace it
Connecting Rod Bearing Cap Fixing Bolt	Replace it
Flywheel Fixing Bolt	Replace it
Main Bearing Cap Fixing Bolt	Replace it

5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

5.1 Accessory Pulley



K40012

1	Tensioner Assembly	4	Idler Pulley Assembly
2	Torsion Shock Absorber Assembly	5	Water Pump Pulley
3	Compressor Pulley	6	Alternator Assembly

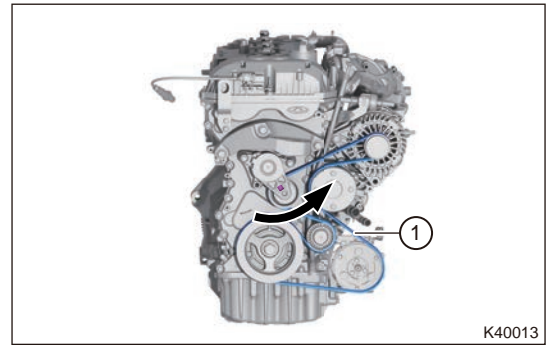
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing accessory drive belt.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing accessory drive belt. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.

- (4) Insert tool into tensioner and pull it upward in direction of arrow as shown in illustration, then remove accessory drive belt assembly (1).



⚠ Warning

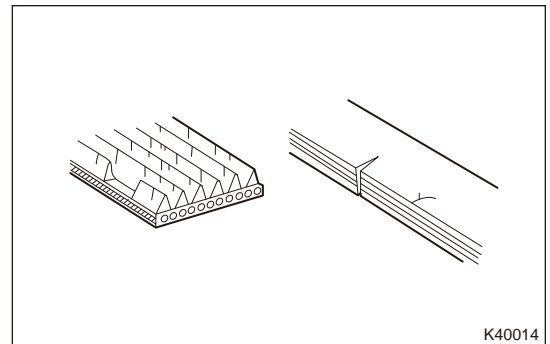
Prevent hand from contacting belt tensioner when raising it upward, so as to avoid damage.

■ Inspection

- (1) Visually check accessory drive belt for excessive wear and cords for wear, etc. If any of these defects is found, replace accessory drive belt.

Hint:

- If accessory drive belt has chunks missing from ribs, it should be replaced.
- After installing accessory drive belt, check that it fits properly in the ribbed grooves; Check that belt has not slipped out of grooves on bottom of the crankshaft pulley by hand.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Before installation, remove the dirt from accessory drive belt.**
- **After installation, check if scale on tensioner arm is almost corresponding to the middle scale of tensioner base.**
- **Check that belt fits well to grooves on bottom of pulley properly. Avoid improper installation and misalignment.**

- (1) Install the accessory drive belt properly according to its moving direction.
 (2) Install drive belt on each pulley to operate tensioner freely.

■ Adjustment

- (1) Rotate crankshaft pulley 2 turns, so that belt tension between each pulley is even.
 (2) Apply 100 N of force to center part of the belt between alternator and tensioner pulley with your thumb. Check that displacement of belt is within 5 - 6 mm. If displacement is too large or too small, adjust, check or repair.

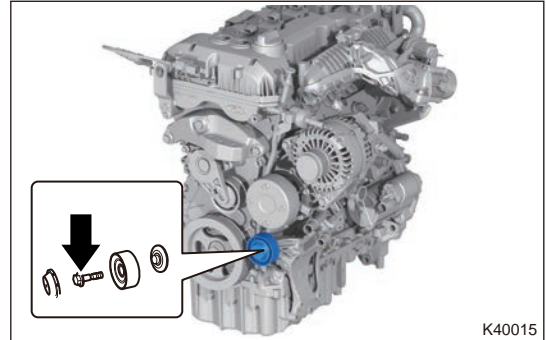
5.2 Idler Pulley Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing idler pulley assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing idler pulley assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the accessory drive belt.
- (5) Remove the idler pulley assembly dust boot.
- (6) Remove fixing bolt and idler pulley assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Rotate idler pulley by hands and check if rotation is smooth and if abnormal noise occurs.
- (2) Wiggle idler pulley in axial and radial directions to check bearing for looseness.
- (3) Check if there is damage on idler pulley assembly operating surface.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Pretighten it by 2 to 3 threads first.**
- **After installation, turn crankshaft to run accessory drive belt by several turns, and check if crankshaft turns smoothly and belt runs well. If it cannot turn smoothly, reinstall accessory drive belt.**
- **Make sure to correctly install accessory drive belt, and it does not interfere with other components.**

- (1) Install the idler pulley assembly fixing bolt.
Torque: 47 + 5 N·m
- (2) Install the idler pulley assembly dust boot.
- (3) Install the accessory drive belt.
- (4) Install the engine trim cover.
- (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

5.3 Tensioner Assembly

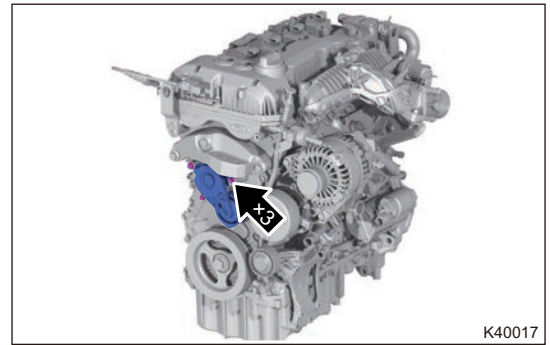
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing tensioner assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the tensioner assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the accessory drive belt.

- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts from tensioner assembly.



- (6) Remove the tensioner assembly.

■ Inspection

- (1) Rotate tensioner pulley assembly by hands and check if rotation is smooth and if abnormal noise occurs.
- (2) Wiggle tensioner pulley assembly in axial and radial directions to check for looseness.
- (3) Check if there is damage on tensioner pulley operating surface.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 3 tensioner assembly fixing bolts.
Torque: 20 + 5 N·m
- (2) Install the accessory drive belt.
- (3) Install the engine trim cover.
- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

5.4 Cylinder Head Cover

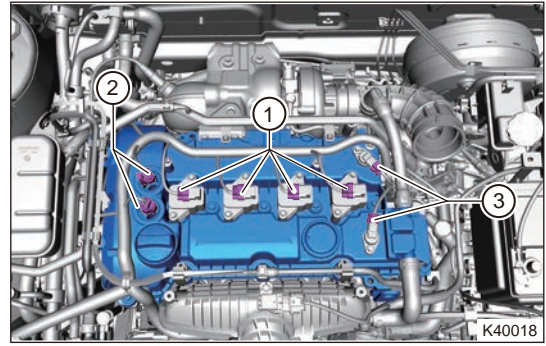
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

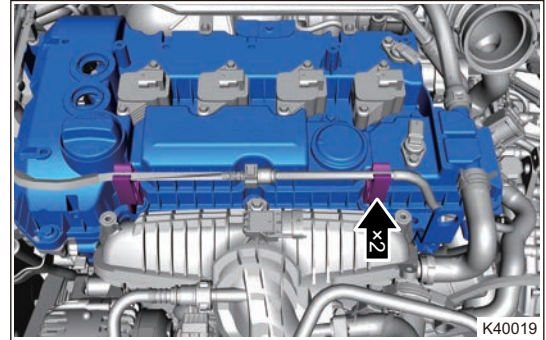
- **Blow dirt and debris away from surface of cylinder head cover with compressed air.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing cylinder head cover.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing cylinder head cover. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (5) Remove the turbocharger heat insulator bracket.
- (6) Remove the intake hose II .

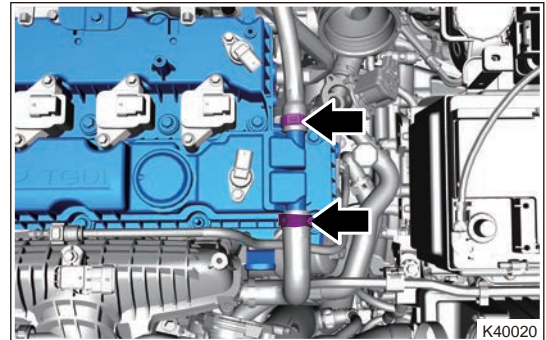
- (7) Disconnect ignition coil connector (1), VVT control valve connector (2), and camshaft position sensor connector (3).



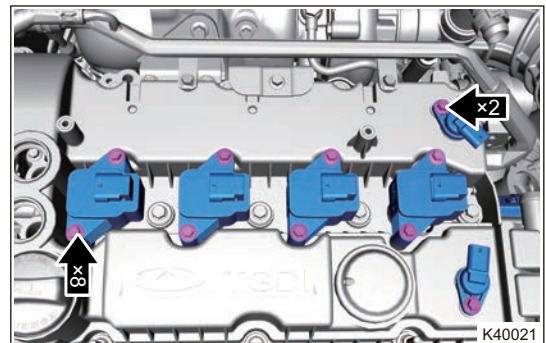
- (8) Remove 2 inlet pipe single tube clamps from cylinder head cover.



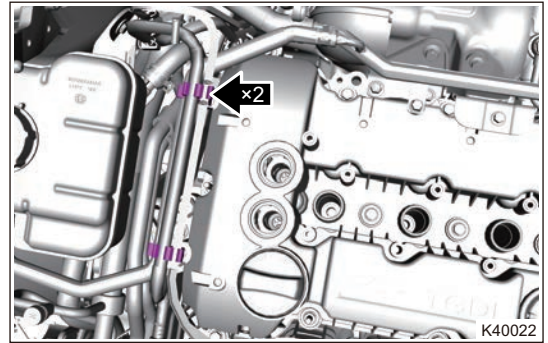
- (9) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect connection between crankcase ventilation hose and cylinder head cover.



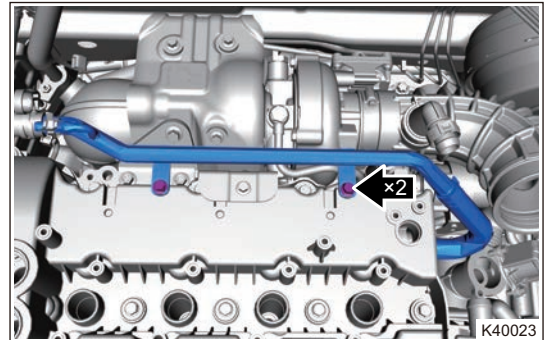
- (10) Remove 8 fixing bolts and ignition coil.
- (11) Remove 2 fixing bolts and camshaft position sensor.



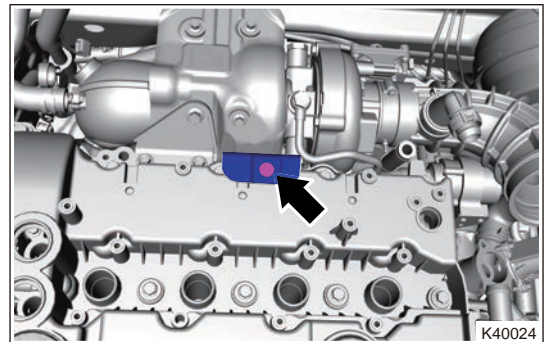
(12) Remove 2 three-tube clamp from cylinder head cover.



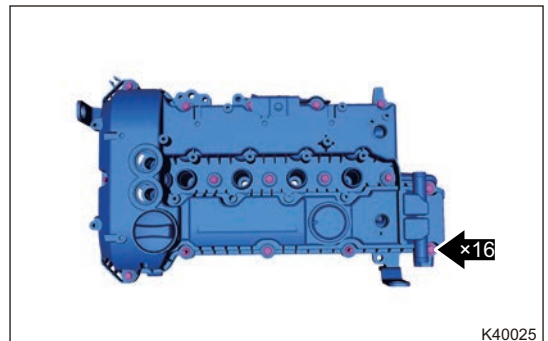
(13) Remove 2 fixing bolts from cooling pipe assembly.



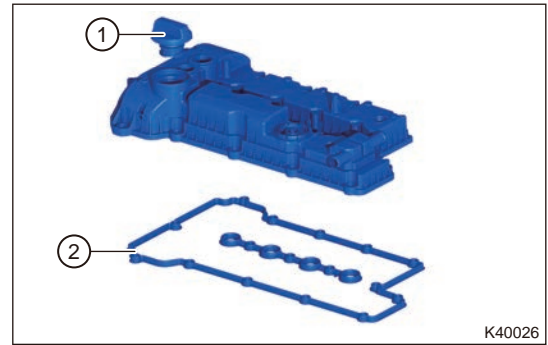
(14) Remove 1 fixing bolt from heat insulator.



(15) Remove 16 fixing bolts cylinder and cylinder head cover.



(16) Remove fuel filler cap (1) and gasket (2) from cylinder head cover assembly.



■ Inspection

(1) Check the appearance of the cylinder head cover for cracks, and replace the assembly if necessary.

■ Installation

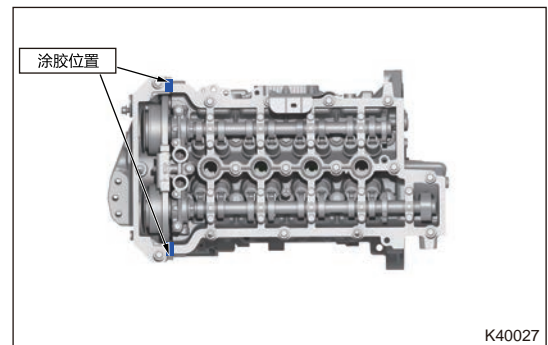
⚠ Caution

- Remove oil dirt and sealant on cylinder head cover and cylinder head before installation.
- Check if gasket is damaged or loses elasticity. If so, replace gasket.

(1) As shown in illustration, apply seal gum (Loctite 5900H) to "T" position of junction area between timing chain cover and cylinder head.

Hint:

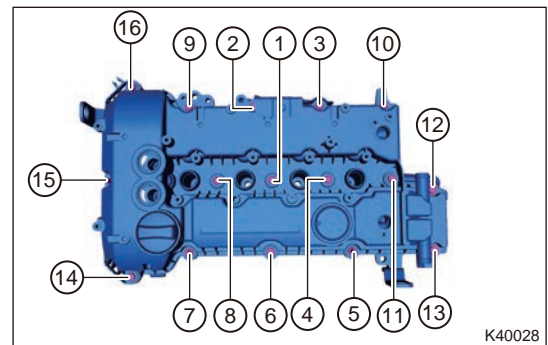
- Note that the sealant should not be too thick, to prevent excess sealant into the engine when the valve chamber cover is pressed.
- Install the cylinder head cover assembly and wait for 15 minutes to apply seal gum.



(2) Install cylinder head cover and first manually install fixing bolts by 1 to 2 threads.

(3) Tighten 16 cylinder head cover fixing bolts in order shown in illustration.

Torque: Pretighten shock absorber unit by 1 to 2 threads manually then tighten it with torque of 8 + 3 N·m.



- (4) Install fuel filler door.
- (5) Install the cooling pipe assembly.
- (6) Install the camshaft position sensor.
- (7) Install the ignition coil.
- (8) Install hose - intake hose.
- (9) Connect the wire harness connector.
- (10) Install the inlet pipe tube clamp.
- (11) Install the turbocharger heat Insulator bracket.
- (12) Install the engine trim cover.
- (13) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

5.5 Crankshaft Front Oil Seal

■ Removal

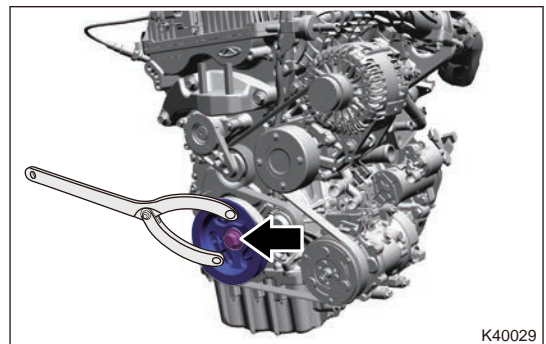
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing crankshaft front oil seal.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing crankshaft front oil seal. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Remove the accessory drive belt.
- (6) Remove fixing bolt from torsion absorber assembly.

Hint:

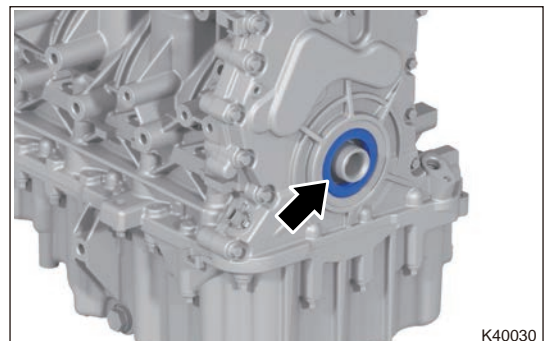
Use tool to lock torsion absorber assembly and fixing bolt.



- (7) Remove the torsion shock absorber assembly.
- (8) Carefully remove the crankshaft front oil seal with proper tool.

Hint:

Be careful not to scratch junction surface, when removing crankshaft front oil seal.



■ Installation

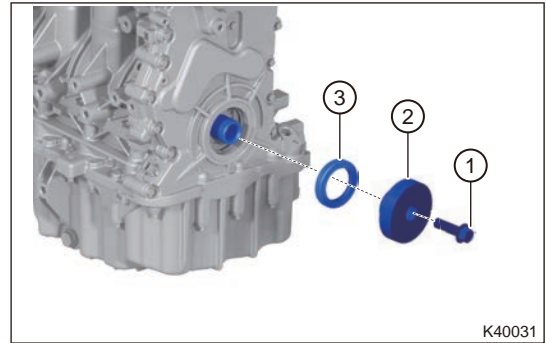
⚠ Caution

- **Apply a small amount of engine oil to the crankshaft front oil seal guide tool before installing a new oil seal.**
- **Remove dirt on junction surface and apply a small amount of engine oil to oil seal external circular surface and oil seal guide tool (except the oil seal with surface applied wax) before assembly.**
- **Be sure to prevent the lip of crankshaft front oil seal from being scratched during installation; If it is damaged, replace it immediately.**

- (1) Install crankshaft front oil seal (3) to crankshaft front oil seal installer (2), then install crankshaft front oil seal in place with crankshaft front oil seal guide tool (1).

Hint:

- Make sure oil seal surface is 0 to 0.5mm lower than end surface of timing chain cover oil seal hole.
- Never allow tilting it by more than 5°, oil seal external rubber breakage or flanges during oil seal press fitting.



K40031

- (2) Install fixing bolt of torsion shock absorber assembly.
Torque: 1st step: 180 ± 10 N·m, 2nd step: 150° ± 5°

- (3) Install the accessory drive belt.
- (4) Install the engine trim cover.
- (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

5.6 Crankshaft Rear Oil Seal

■ Removal

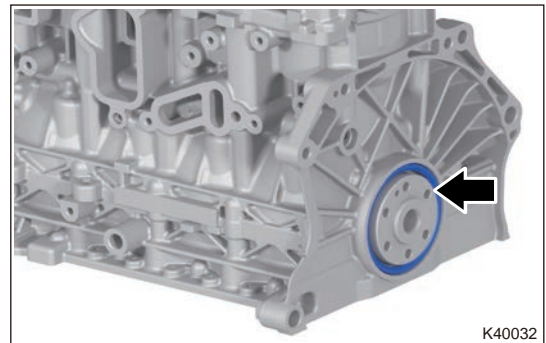
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing crankshaft rear oil seal.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing crankshaft rear oil seal. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Remove the transmission assembly.
- (6) Remove the flywheel assembly.
- (7) Remove the crankshaft rear oil seal with proper tool carefully.

Hint:

Be careful not to scratch cylinder block, when removing oil seal.



K40032

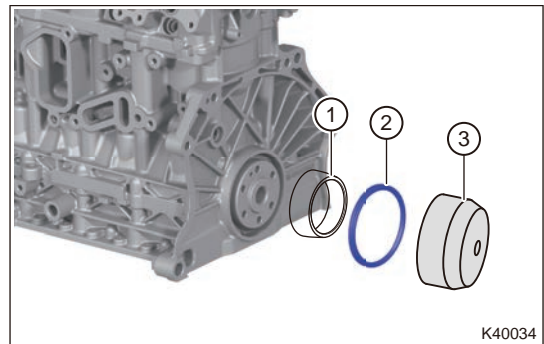
- (8) Remove the crankshaft rear oil seal.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to clean dirt around oil seal retainer and on inside wall before installation.
- Check oil seal for damage before installation. If there is any damage, replace it.
- Be sure to prevent the lip of crankshaft rear oil seal from being scratched during installation.
- Be careful not to damage oil seal retainer during installation.

- (1) Install guide tool (1) to crankshaft.
- (2) Install new oil seal (2) to crankshaft rear oil seal guide tool, then install new oil seal evenly and fully into oil seal retainer with a crankshaft rear oil seal installer (3).



⚠ Caution

- Make sure oil seal surface is 0.5 to 1 mm lower than end surface of timing chain cover oil seal hole.
- Ensure that oil seal lip has no damage during assembly.
- Never allow tilting it by more than 5°, oil seal external rubber breakage or flanges during oil seal press fitting.

- (3) Install the flywheel assembly.
- (4) Install the transmission assembly.

5.7 Flywheel Assembly

■ Removal

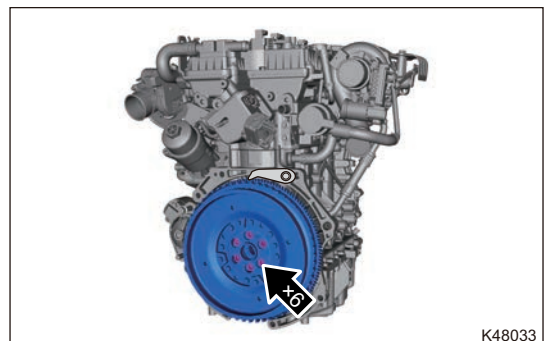
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing flywheel assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing flywheel assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the transmission assembly.
- (4) Install flywheel holding tool to lock flywheel assembly.
- (5) Remove 6 fixing bolts and flywheel assembly.

Hint:

Flywheel assembly fixing bolts must be disposed after removal. Never reuse them.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check if crankshaft position signal gear is distorted or deformed. If damaged, replace flywheel. Clean signal gear before installation.

■ Installation

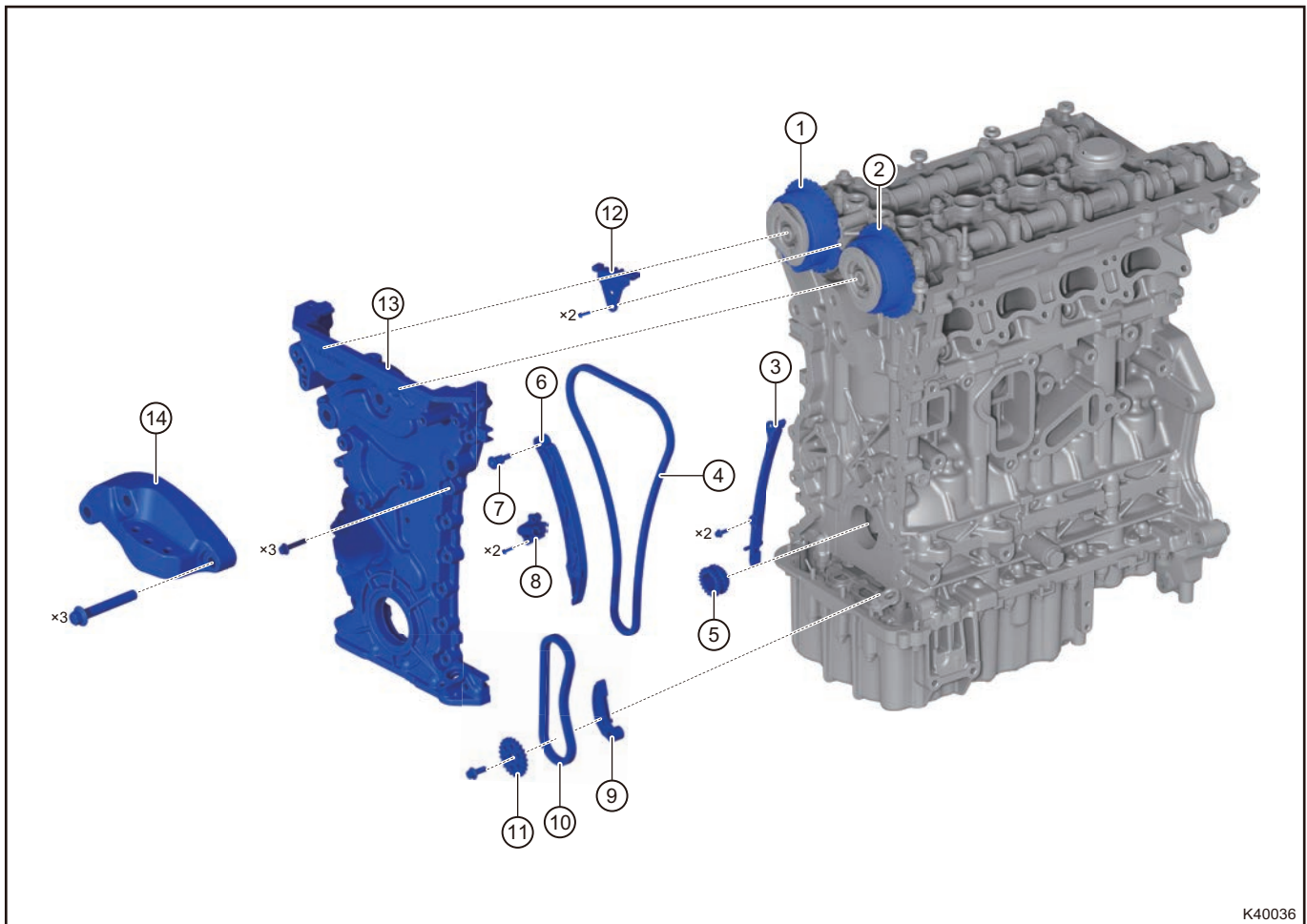
⚠ Caution

- Lightly push flywheel after alignment during assembly. Do not tap flywheel with a hammer.
- Replace flywheel fixing bolts with new ones.

- (1) Install 6 fixing bolts to flywheel assembly, and pretighten the bolts.
- (2) Installing flywheel holding tool, then tighten each flywheel bolt diagonally in order.

Torque: 1st step: 35 ± 5 N·m, 2nd step: 30° ± 5°

5.8 Engine Timing Chain



K40036

1	Exhaust Phaser Assembly	8	Hydraulic Tensioner Assembly
2	Intake Phaser Assembly	9	Oil Pump Movable Rail
3	Fixing Guide Rail Assembly	10	Oil Pump Chain Assembly
4	Timing Chain	11	Oil Pump Sprocket
5	Crankshaft Timing Sprocket	12	Upper Chain Guide Rail Assembly

6	Movable Guide Rail Assembly	13	Sprocket Head Cover
7	Movable Guide Rail Assembly Fixing Bolt	14	Engine Front End Bracket

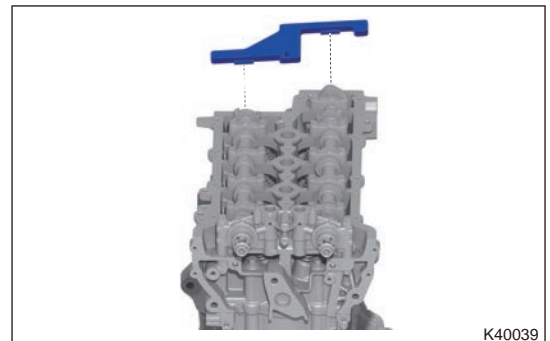
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine timing chain.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing engine timing chain. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

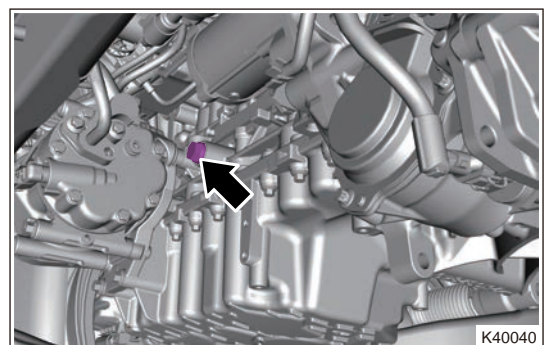
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the cylinder head cover.
- (5) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (6) Remove the accessory drive belt.
- (7) Remove the accessory drive belt tensioner assembly.
- (8) Remove the idler pulley assembly.
- (9) Remove the torsion shock absorber assembly.
- (10) Use an engine equalizer to hang engine assembly.
- (11) Remove the engine right mounting cushion assembly.

- (12) Place camshaft timing positioning special tool on the back of cylinder head upper plane, rotate intake and exhaust camshafts separately in order to clamp the special tool into slots on rear end of both camshafts.



K40039

- (13) Remove crankshaft balancer locating hole fixing bolt from engine block.

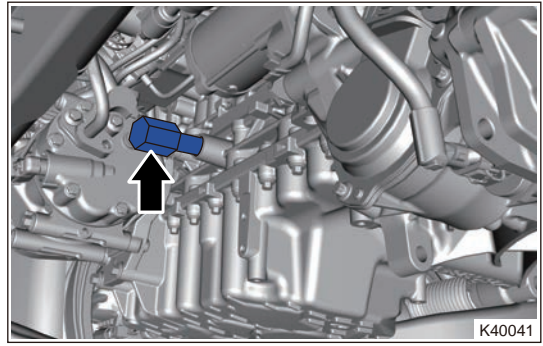


K40040

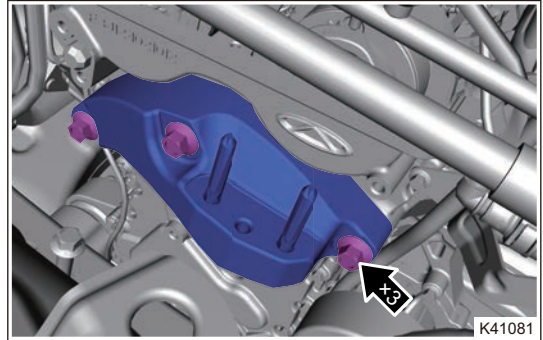
- (14) Install crankshaft timing positioning pin to cylinder block through thread hole on intake side of cylinder block, and insert front end of positioning pin into positioning hole of crankshaft balancer (each cylinder piston should be in the same plane).

Hint:

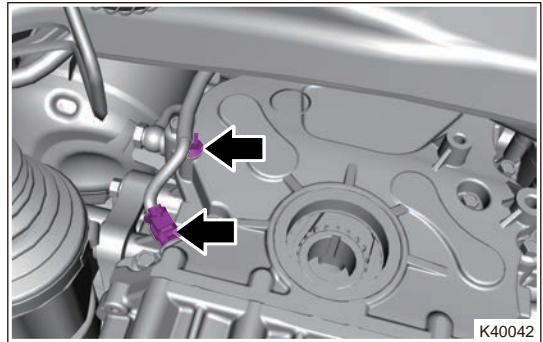
It takes patience to perform this operation and pay more attention to avoid damage to crankshaft.



- (15) Remove 3 fixing bolts between engine front end bracket and sprocket head cover.



- (16) Disconnect oil pump assembly connector and detach wire harness fixing clip.



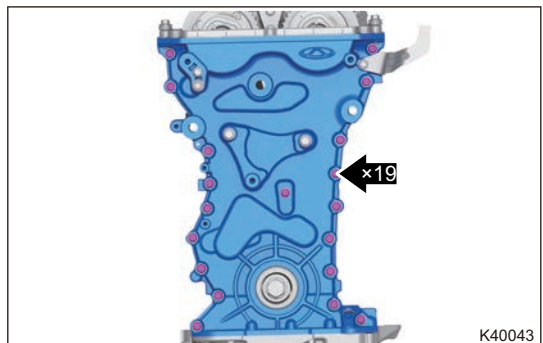
- (17) Remove the oil pan assembly.

- (18) Remove the oil dipstick and guide.

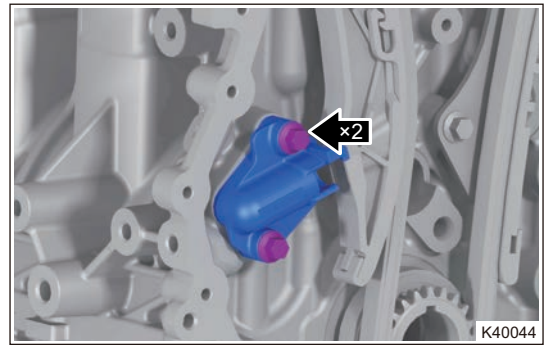
- (19) Remove 19 fixing bolts and cylinder head cover.

Hint:

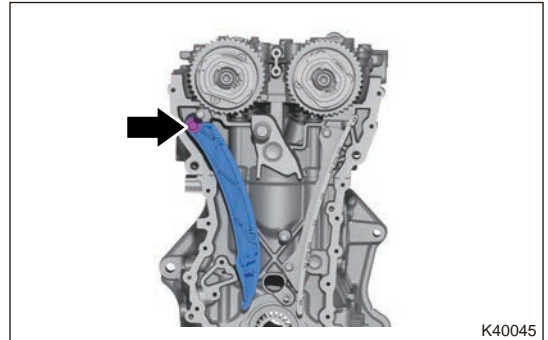
Carefully observe sprocket head cover for cracks or oil leakage; if exists, replace sprocket head cover assembly.



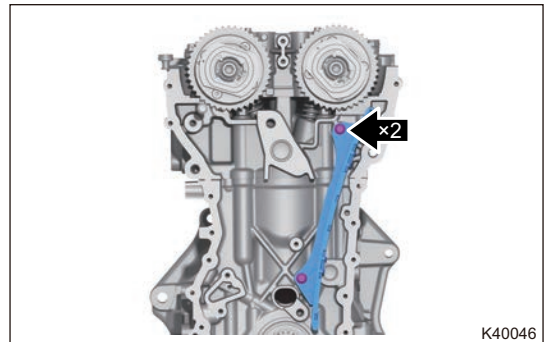
(20) Remove 2 fixing bolts and hydraulic tensioner assembly.



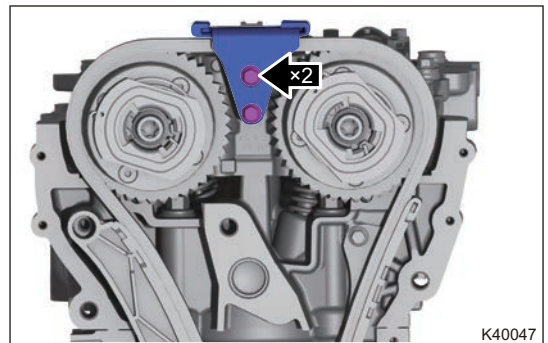
(21) Remove 1 fixing bolt and movable guide rail assembly.



(22) Remove 2 fixing bolts and fixing guide rail assembly.

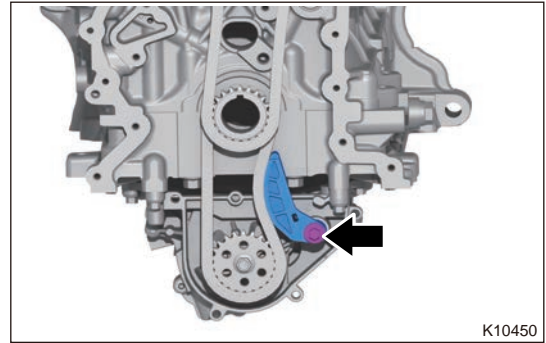


(23) Remove 2 fixing bolts and upper chain guide rail assembly.



(24) Remove the engine timing chain.

- (25) Remove 1 fixing bolt from oil pump chain movable guide rail and remove oil pump chain.

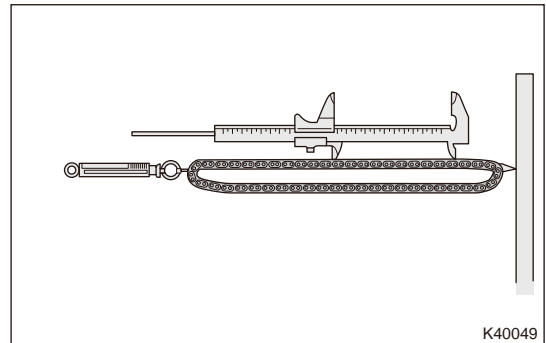


■ Inspection

- (1) Carefully check if timing chain is seriously worn or cracked. If exists, replace timing chain assembly.
- (2) Use a force of 147 N to pull the chain. Take 15 links from chain and perform measurement with a vernier caliper. Max. elongation: 120.6 mm.

Hint:

Take 3 positions for measurement. If the average value is larger than max. elongation ratio, replace timing chain assembly. If it is not as specified, replace timing chain cover assembly.



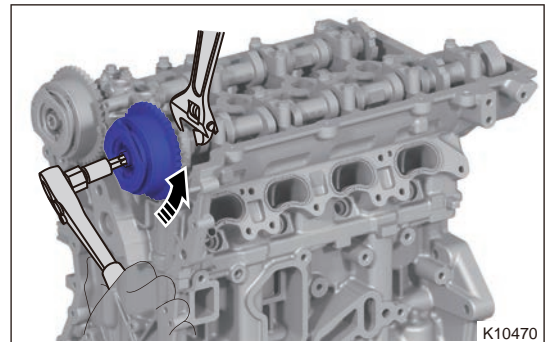
- (3) Measure depth of movable guide rail with a vernier caliper.

Hint:

If wear limit is beyond 2 mm, replace movable guide rail assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Use a proper wrench to hold intake camshaft and loosen fixing bolt from intake phaser assembly.

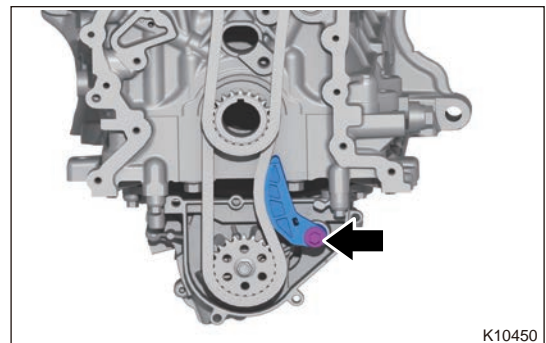


- (2) Install oil pump chain and 1 movable guide rail fixing bolt.

Torque: 12 ± 2 N·m

Hint:

The movable guide rail should rotate smoothly around the bolt after assembling and either end of spring should hook the oil pump housing.



- (3) Install 2 fixing bolts to upper chain guide rail assembly.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (4) Install 2 fixing bolts from fixing guide rail assembly.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (5) Install 1 fixing bolt to movable guide rail assembly.

Torque: 20 + 5 N·m

Hint:

The movable guide rail should rotate smoothly around the bolt after installation.

- (6) Install the timing chain.

Hint:

Ensure timing chain is set to intake and exhaust phasers and crankshaft sprocket. Make sure that timing chain and upper guide rail are in level.

- (7) Install hydraulic tensioner assembly, and tighten 2 fixing bolts.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

Hint:

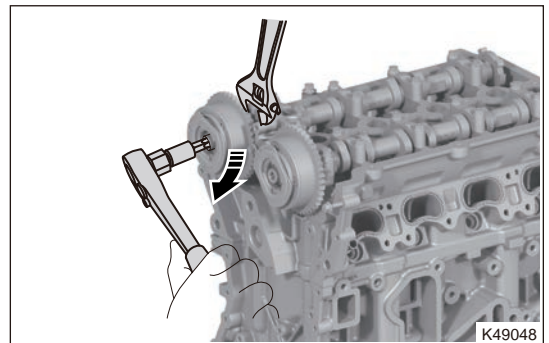
Pull up hydraulic tensioner upper steel ring pin after installation and tightening.

- (8) Use a proper wrench to hold intake camshaft and tighten fixing bolt of intake and exhaust phaser valve body.

Torque: 1st step: 60 + 3 N·m 2nd step: clockwise rotation angle $95^\circ \pm 5^\circ$

Hint:

- Tighten exhaust phase valve body bolt first, and then tighten intake phaser valve body bolt. Failure to tighten in order may cause “tooth missing” phenomenon in timing chain.



K49048

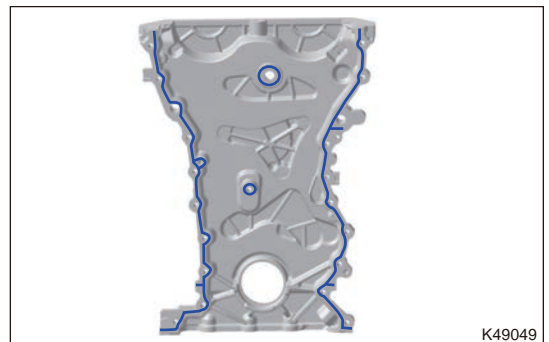
- (9) Remove crankshaft timing tool and camshaft timing tool, then rotate crankshaft clockwise 2 turns at least to check if timing system can operate normally.

⚠ Caution

- **Never rotate crankshaft counterclockwise.**

- (10) Apply seal gum to inside of timing chain cover mounting bolt hole.

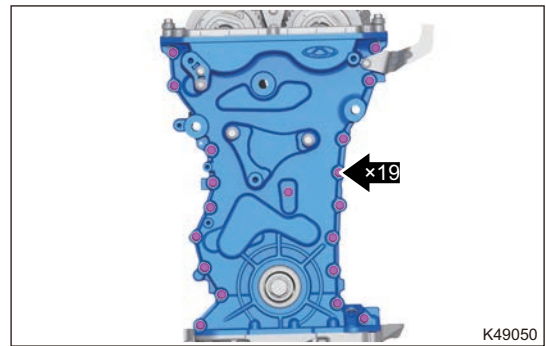
Seal gum: Loctite 5900H



K49049

- (11) Install and tighten 19 cylinder head cover fixing bolts in order shown in illustration.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

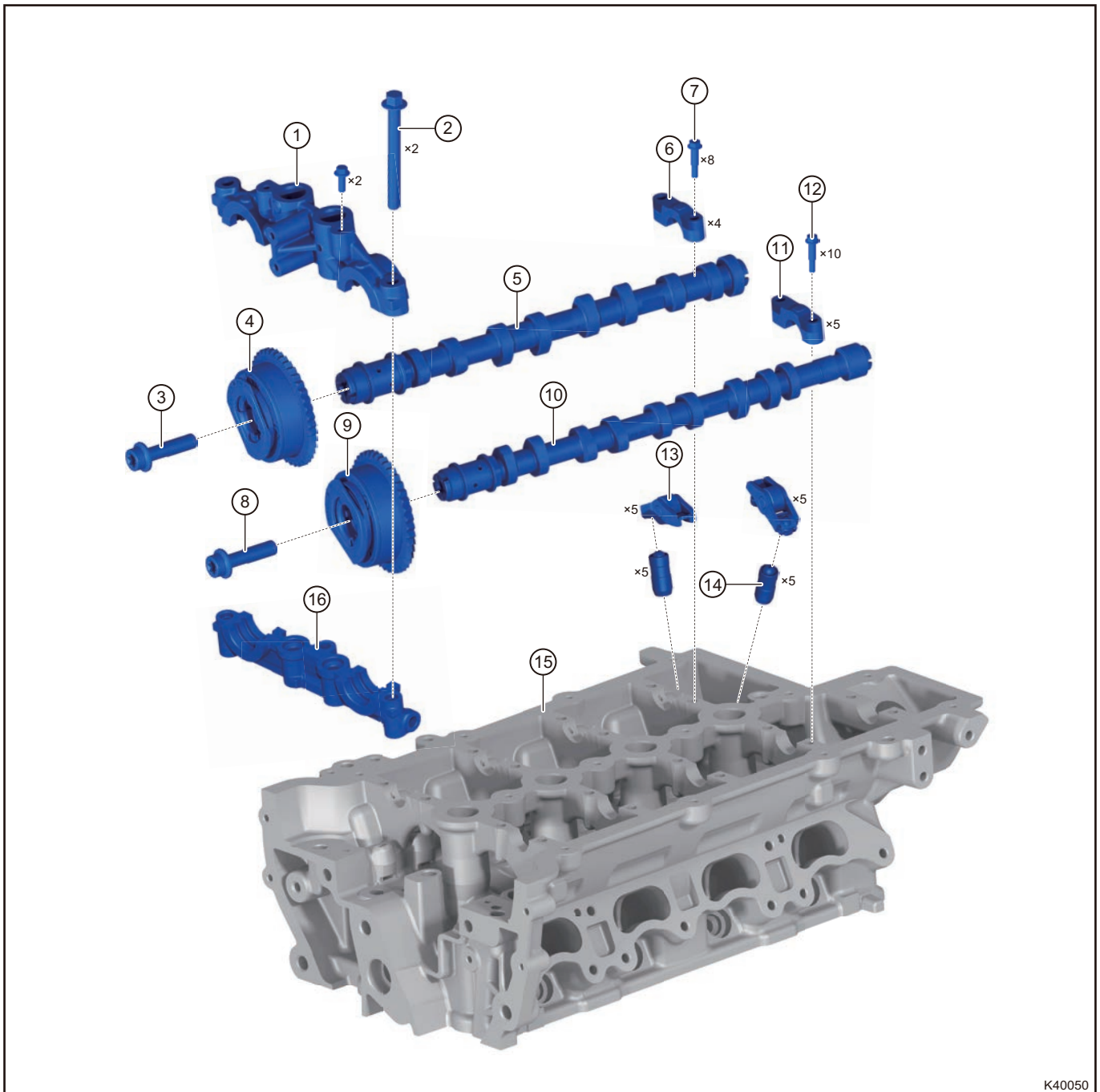


- (12) Install 3 fixing bolts to engine front end bracket.

Torque: 80 + 5 N·m

- (13) Install the oil dipstick guide.
(14) Connect variable oil pump connector and secure wire harness clip.
(15) Install the crankshaft balancer positioning hole fixing bolt.
(16) Install the torsion shock absorber.
(17) Install the idler pulley assembly.
(18) Install the tensioner assembly.
(19) Install the accessory drive belt.
(20) Install the cylinder head cover.
(21) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.
(22) Install the engine trim cover assembly.
(23) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

5.9 Camshaft & Rocker Arm



K40050

1	1st Bearing Upper Cap	9	Intake Phaser Assembly
2	1st Bearing Upper Cap Fixing Bolt	10	Intake Camshaft Assembly
3	Exhaust Phaser Fixing Bolt	11	Intake Camshaft Bearing Cap
4	Exhaust Phaser	12	Intake Camshaft Bearing Cap Fixing Bolt
5	Exhaust Camshaft Assembly	13	Rocker Arm
6	Exhaust Camshaft Bearing Cap	14	Lifter

7	Exhaust Camshaft Bearing Cap Fixing Bolt	15	Cylinder Head
8	Intake Phaser Fixing Bolt	16	1st Bearing Lower Cap

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

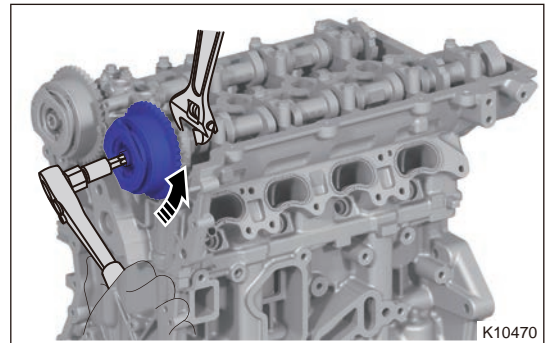
- Blow dirt and debris away from surface of cylinder head cover with compressed air.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing camshaft and rocker arm.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing camshaft and rocker arm. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the cylinder head cover.
- (5) Remove the accessory drive belt.
- (6) Remove the engine timing chain.

- (7) Use a proper wrench to hold intake camshaft, and remove fixing bolt from intake phaser in direction of arrow, remove intake phaser.

Hint:

Removal method for exhaust phaser is the same as that of intake phaser.

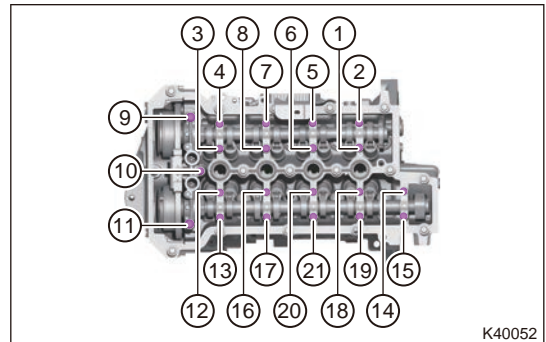


K10470

- (8) Remove intake and exhaust camshaft bearing cap fixing bolts.

Hint:

During removal, loosen fixing bolts in order shown in illustration first, and then remove bolts thoroughly in order.



K40052

- (9) Remove the camshaft bearing caps.
- (10) Remove intake and exhaust camshaft.
- (11) Remove rocker arm and hydraulic lifter component.

■ Camshaft Appearance inspection

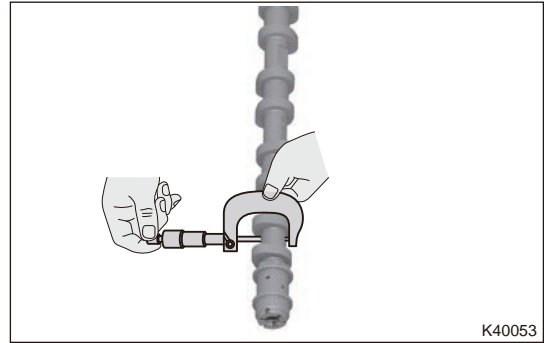
- (1) Check if there are scratches on camshaft surface. If there are scratches, replace camshaft.
- (2) Check if there are leaking holes and cracks on camshaft bearing caps. If so, replace camshaft.

■ Measure camshaft journal diameter with a micrometer

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
1st journal diameter (same for intake and exhaust sides) (mm)	$\Phi 30$ (-0.066 - 0.050)
2nd - 5th journals (same for intake and exhaust sides)	$\Phi 24$ (-0.053 - 0.040)

Hint:

If camshaft journal diameter is not within specified range, replace intake/exhaust camshaft assembly.

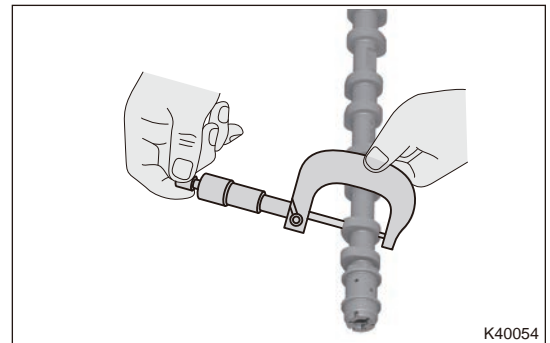


■ Measure highest point of cam with a micrometer.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Cam Height (Highest Point)	Intake: 37.07 - 37.31
	Exhaust: 36.94 - 37.18

Hint:

If cam height is not within specified range, replace intake/exhaust camshaft assembly.



■ Check the camshaft axial clearance.

- (1) Perform measurement with roller rocker arm and intake and exhaust phasers not installed.
- (2) Place dial indicator on cylinder head body. Press indicator tip on front end of camshaft, and push camshaft forward and backward. The difference between the two limit reading equals to camshaft axial clearance. It is normal if the difference is between 0.15 and 0.275mm.

■ Check the hydraulic lifter.

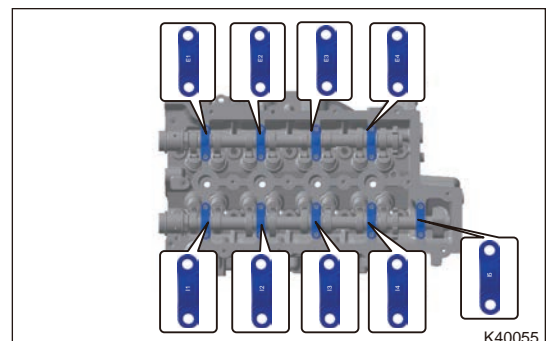
- (1) Check if end surface and cylindrical operating surface of hydraulic lifter are normal.
- (2) Check if hydraulic lifter slides smoothly in cylinder head guide hole.
- (3) Check each hydraulic lifter for weakness. If exists, remove and soak it for 24 hours, then press the hydraulic lifter plunger. If the engine block upper surface flatness is above the limit, replace the engine block.

■ Installation

- (1) Clean intake and exhaust camshafts and camshaft bearing caps.
- (2) Apply engine oil to camshaft cam surface and add a proper amount of engine oil to camshaft bearing hole.
- (3) Install intake, exhaust camshaft assemblies and intake and exhaust camshaft bearing caps.

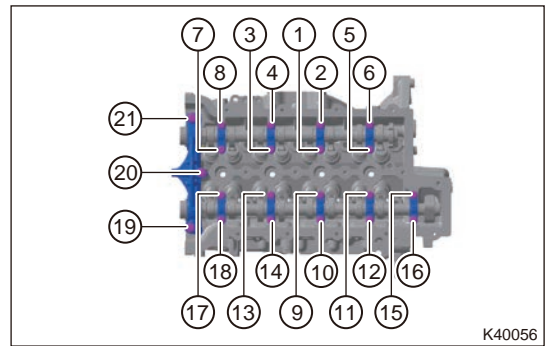
Hint:

- Install according to marks on bearing cap: "I" indicates intake camshaft bearing cap and "E" indicates exhaust camshaft bearing cap.



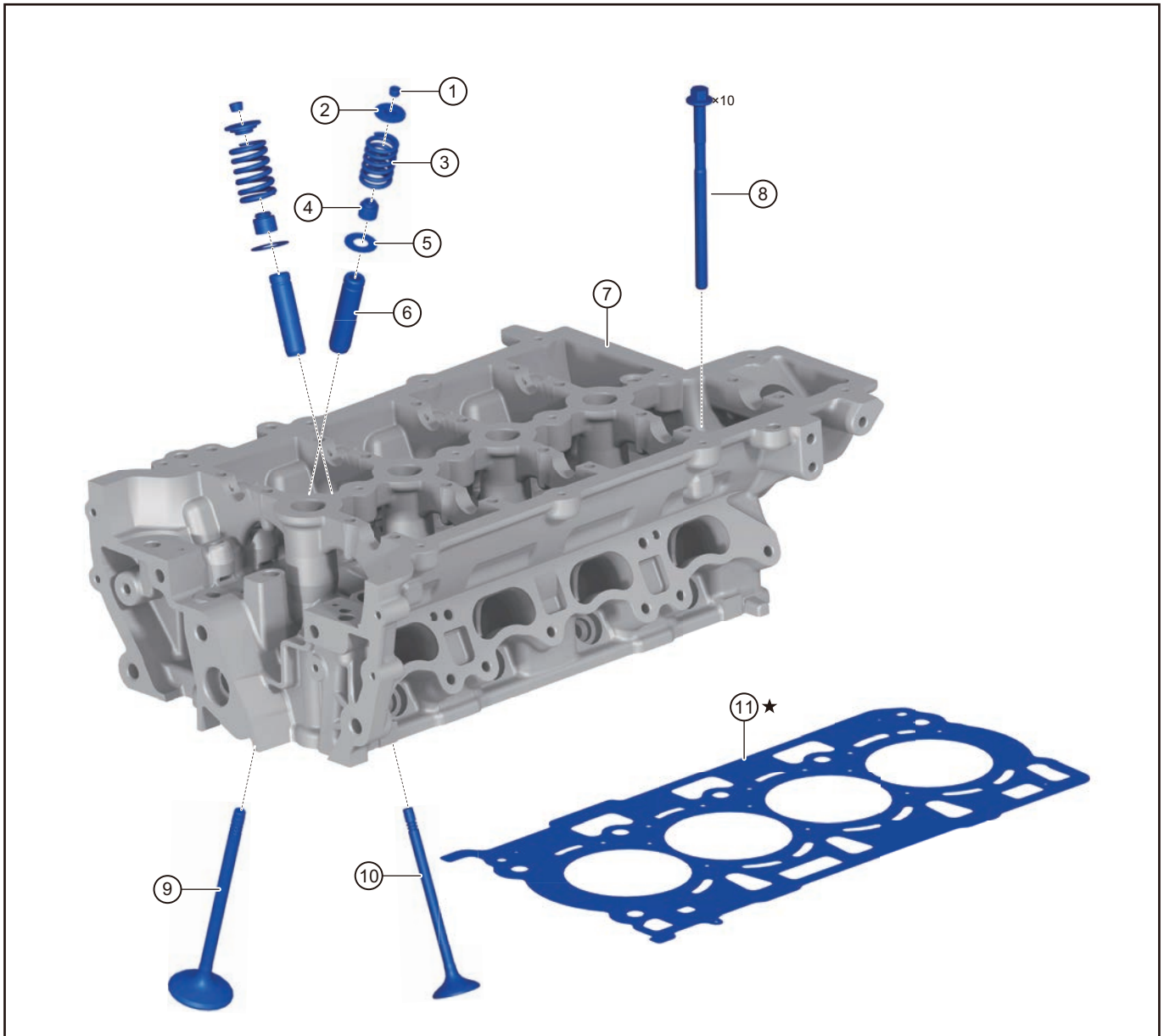
- (4) Tighten the camshaft bearing cap fixing bolt manually then tighten camshaft bearing cap fixing bolt.

Torque: For the 1st bearing cap fixing bolt 20 + 3 N·m, for bearing cap bolt 8 + 3 N·m



- (5) Install the engine timing chain.
- (6) Install the accessory drive belt.
- (7) Install the cylinder head cover.
- (8) Install the engine trim cover assembly.
- (9) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

5.10 Cylinder Head



★ : Indicates that it is a non-reusable part

K40057

1	Valve Cotter	7	Cylinder Head
2	Valve Spring Upper Seat	8	Cylinder Head Bolt
3	Valve Spring	9	Exhaust Valve
4	Valve Oil Seal	10	Intake Valve
5	Valve Spring Lower Seat	11	Cylinder Head Gasket
6	Valve Guide	★	Non-reusable Part

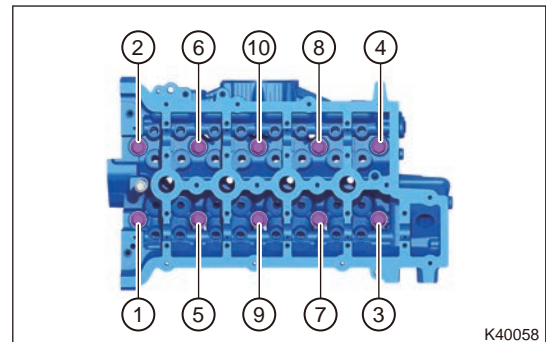
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing cylinder cover.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing cylinder cover. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (4) Drain the engine oil
- (5) Drain the coolant.
- (6) Remove the battery assembly.
- (7) Remove the battery tray assembly.
- (8) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (9) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (10) Remove the coolant pipe assembly.
- (11) Remove expansion tank inlet pipe assembly.
- (12) Remove the intake manifold assembly.
- (13) Remove the fuel rail injector assembly.
- (14) Remove the precatalytic converter assembly.
- (15) Remove the turbocharger assembly.
- (16) Remove the accessory drive belt.
- (17) Remove the tensioner assembly.
- (18) Remove the idler pulley assembly.
- (19) Remove the cylinder head cover.
- (20) Remove the timing chain cover.
- (21) Remove the engine timing chain.
- (22) Remove camshaft and rocker arm.

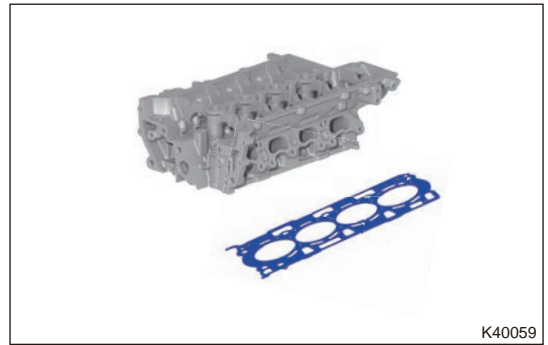
- (23) Remove 10 fixing bolts from cylinder cover in order shown in illustration.



⚠ Caution

- **When engine is in high temperature, removal and installation may cause deformation to cylinder head, so perform removal and installation at normal temperature.**
- **Failure to remove cylinder head bolts in order may cause cylinder head deformation.**
- **Make scraping marks on removed cylinder head bolt, and they cannot be reused.**

(24) Remove cylinder head assembly and cylinder head gasket.



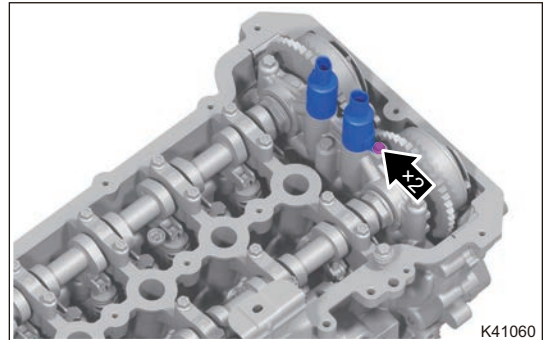
K40059

⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT** reuse the removed cylinder head gasket, and it is necessary to replace with a new one.
- **Be careful not to lose cylinder head mounting dowel pin during removal.**

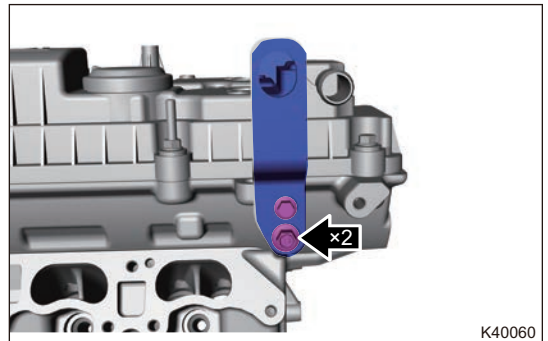
■ Disassembly

(1) Remove 2 fixing bolts and intake and exhaust phaser oil control valve.



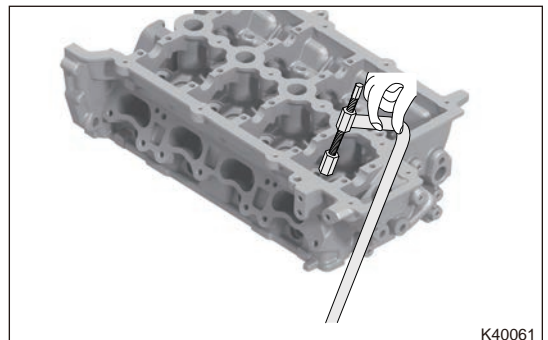
K41060

(2) Remove 2 fixing bolts and bracket.



K40060

(3) Using a valve spring compressor, compress valve spring to a position so that valve cotter can be removed.

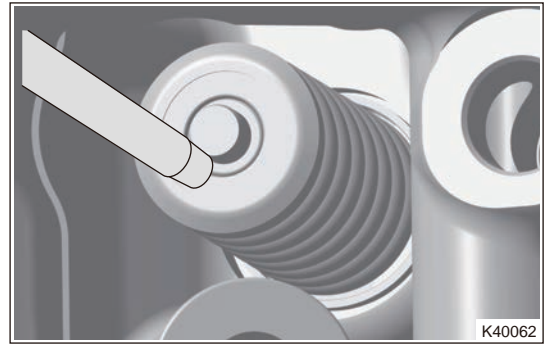


K40061

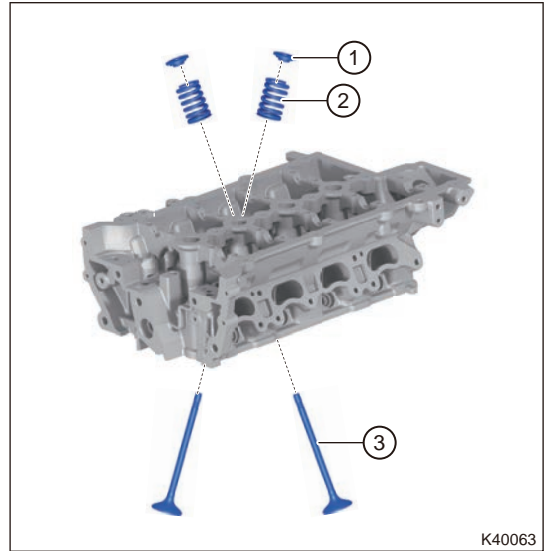
- (4) Using a magnetic rod, remove valve cotter.

Hint:

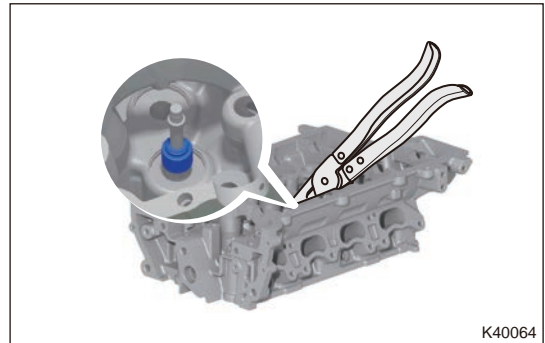
Due to the valve cotter is small, please operate carefully when operating it, so as to avoid loss.



- (5) Remove valve spring upper seat (1), valve spring (2) and intake and exhaust valve (3) from cylinder head.



- (6) Using a valve oil seal remover, remove the valve oil seal.



- (7) Using a magnetic rod, remove valve spring lower seat.

■ **Check the cylinder head**

- (1) Check the appearance.
- 1) Remove carbon deposits inside valve guides with cleaner.
 - 2) Make sure valve stem can move and rotate freely in its mounting hole.

- (2) Using a precision straightedge and feeler gauge, check cylinder head flatness.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Cylinder Head Flatness	0.04

Hint:

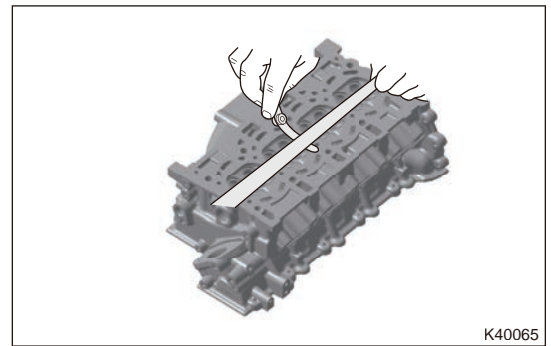
If cylinder head flatness is not within specified range, replace cylinder head assembly.

- (3) Using a precision straightedge, measure cylinder head height a.

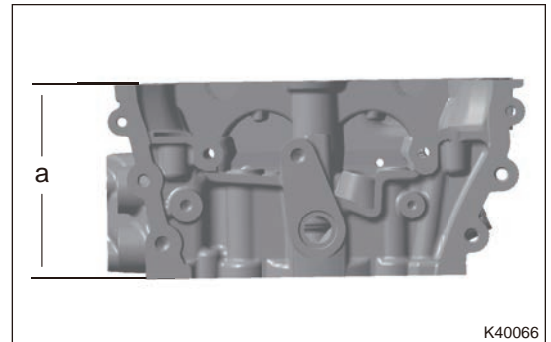
Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Cylinder Head Height	136.9

Hint:

If cylinder head height is not within specified range, replace cylinder head assembly.



K40065



K40066

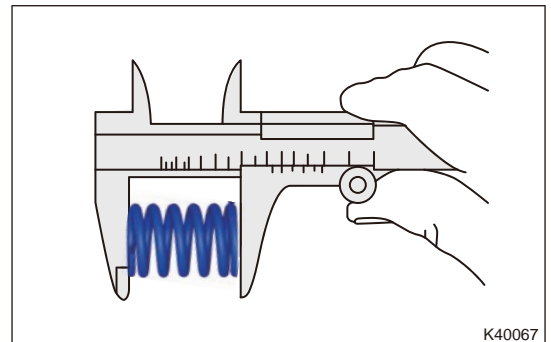
■ Check the valve spring

- (1) Using a vernier caliper, measure free length of valve spring and length of valve spring under the pre-pressure of $(230 \pm 11 \text{ N})$.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Valve Spring Free Length	47.8 ± 2
Valve Spring Length Under Pre-pressure	36.5

Hint:

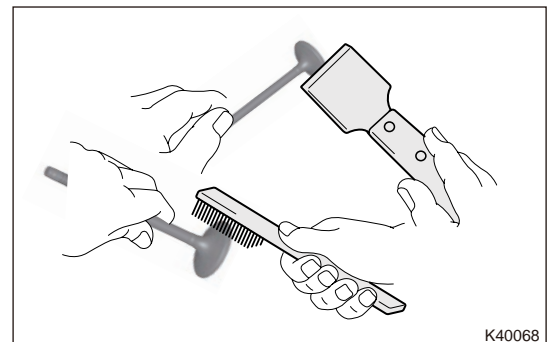
If valve spring length is not within specified range, replace valve spring.



K40067

■ Check the valve

- (1) Clean the valve.
- 1) Using a scraper, remove carbon deposited on valve head.
 - 2) Using a thin and soft wire brush, clean the valve thoroughly.



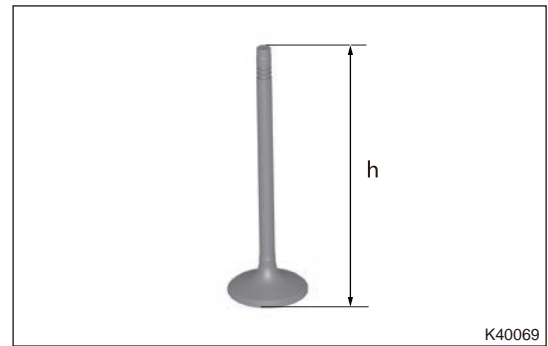
K40068

(2) Using a micrometer, measure the valve height h.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Intake Valve	106.66 ± 0.25
Exhaust Valve	107.26 ± 0.25

Hint:

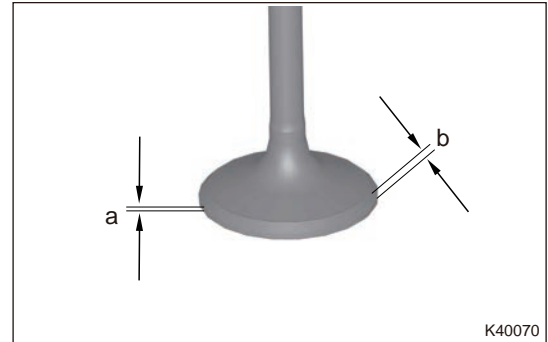
If valve height is less than specified value, replace valve.



(3) Check the valve head.

- 1) Measure margin thickness (a) of valve head.
- 2) Measure width (b) of valve face.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Valve Head Margin Thickness (Intake)	1.3 ± 0.15
Valve Head Margin Thickness (Exhaust)	1.4 ± 0.15
Valve Face Width (Intake)	2.12
Valve Face Width (Exhaust)	3.12



Hint:

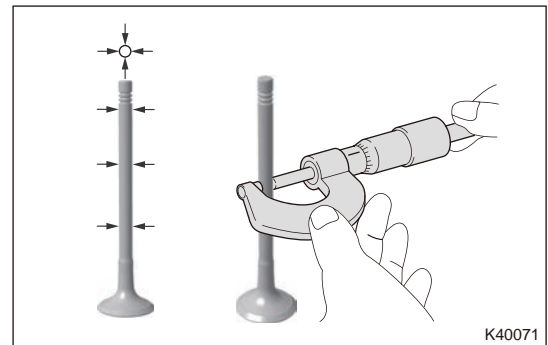
If valve head margin thickness and face width are not within specified range, replace valve.

(4) Using a micrometer, measure the valve stem diameter.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Valve Stem Diameter (Intake)	5.98 ± 0.007
Exhaust Valve Stem Diameter (Exhaust)	5.96 ± 0.007

Hint:

If valve stem diameter is not within specified range, check clearance between valve stem and valve guide.



(5) Check clearance between valve stem and valve guide.

1) Using a caliper gauge, measure inner diameter of valve guide.

Measurement Item	Size and Tolerance (mm)
Valve Guide Inner Diameter	6.0 - 6.015

2) Clearance between valve stem and valve guide =
Valve guide inner diameter - Valve stem diameter.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Clearance Between Intake Valve and Valve Guide	0.023 -0.042
Clearance Between Exhaust Valve and Valve Guide	0.033 -0.062

Hint:

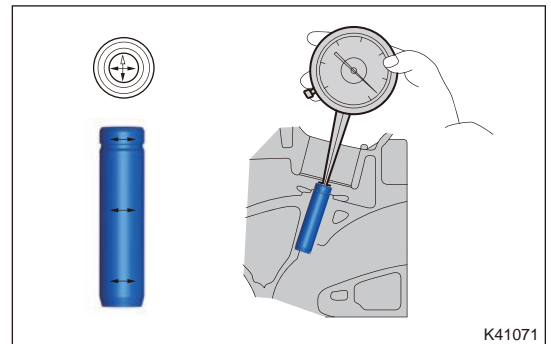
If clearance between valve and valve guide is not within specified range, replace valve or valve guide.

■ **Assembly**

⚠ Caution

- **Apply lubricant to valve oil seal lip before installing valve oil seal.**
- **Before installing valve spring, check valve spring lower seat for proper installation.**
- **Clean all components to be assembled thoroughly before assembly.**

- (1) Install valve spring lower seat to valve guide end to fit it with cylinder head.
- (2) Install valve oil seal to valve oil seal special tool and press it on valve guide. Tap the tool end with a hammer to press in oil seal.

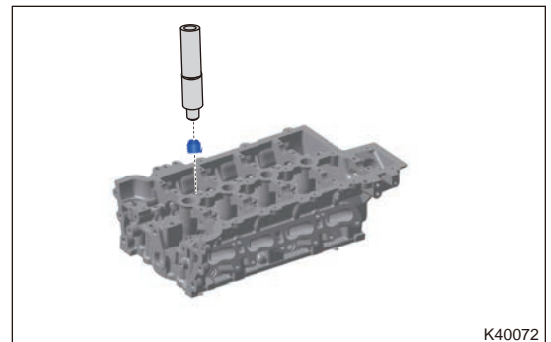


K41071

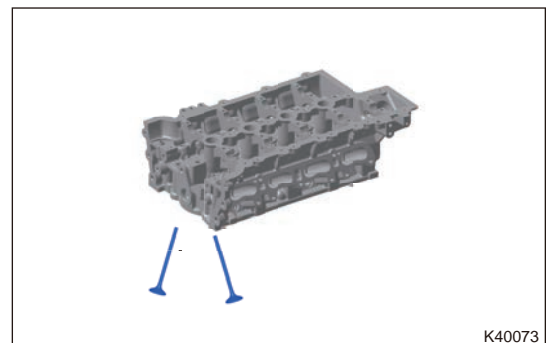
- (3) Clean valve surface, install exhaust valve into cylinder head guide hole.

Hint:

Slightly rotate valve collar until valve conical face fully contacts retainer conical face.

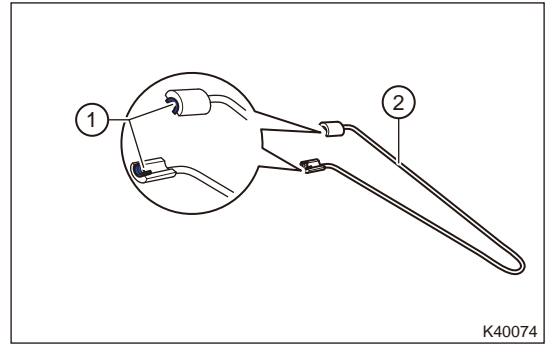


K40072

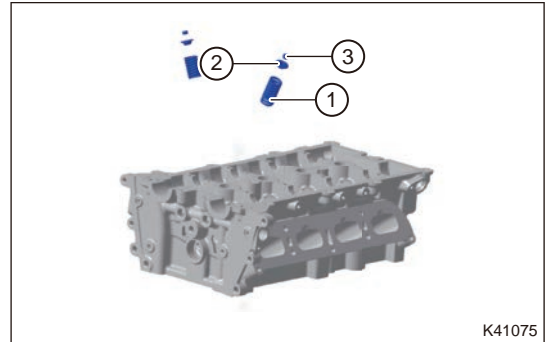


K40073

- (4) Install valve cotter (1) to valve cotter installer (2).



- (5) Install valve spring (1) and valve spring upper seat (2). Using a valve spring compressor, compress valve spring to a position so that valve cotter can be installed; Using a valve cotter installer, install valve cotter (3) in place.



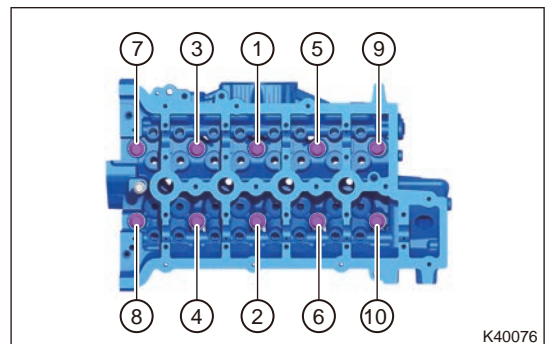
- (6) Tap tip of valve stem lightly with a rubber hammer to make sure valve cotter is installed in place after assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

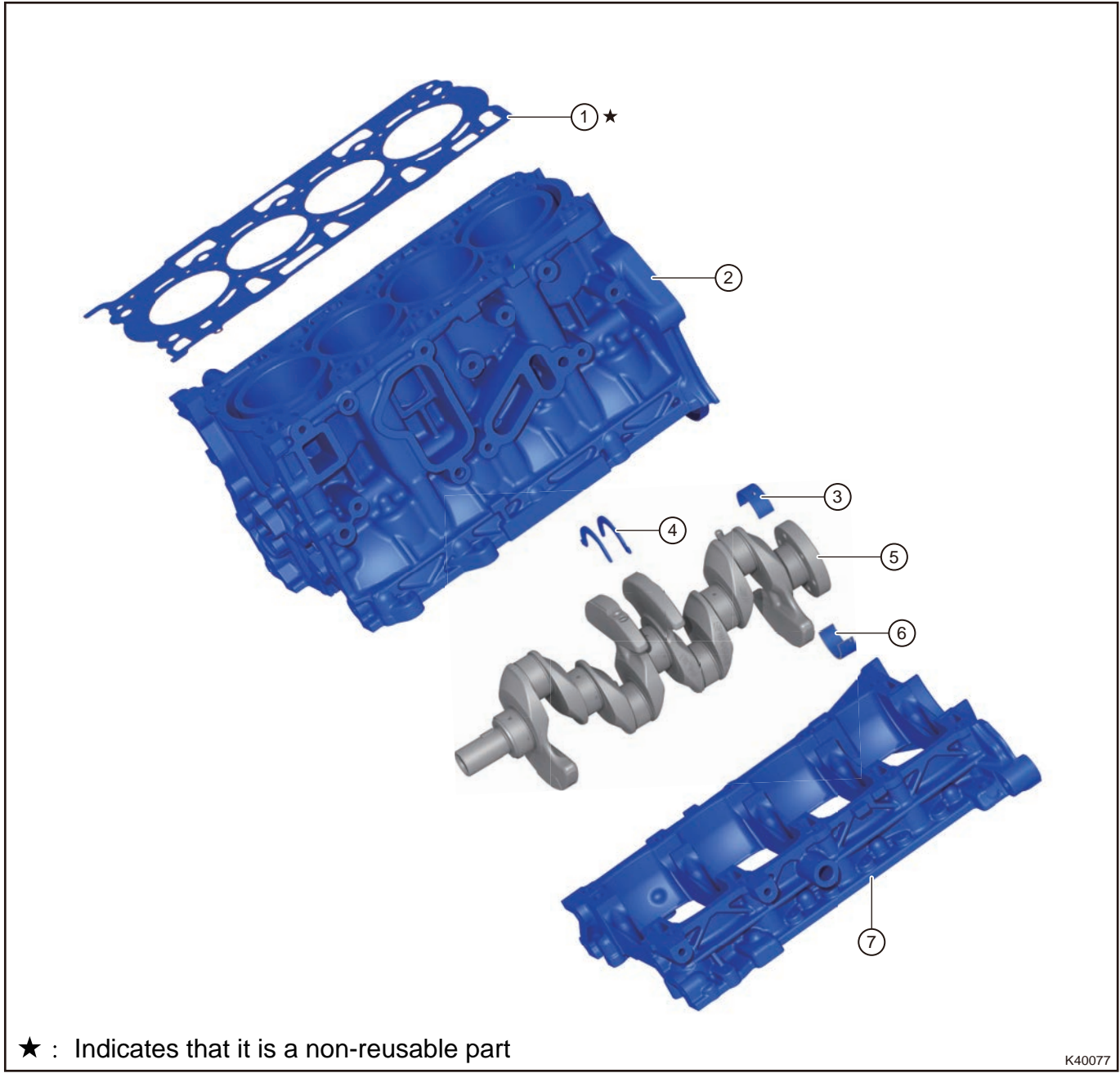
- **DO NOT damage or lose dowel pin on cylinder block.**
- **Remove residual oil on cylinder head and cylinder block.**
- **Replace cylinder head gasket with a new one.**
- **Check that cylinder head gasket is neat and clean without any chips and scratches.**
- **Clean junction surface between cylinder head and combustion chamber, and remove any accumulated oil at bottom of cylinder block thread.**
- **Replace cylinder head fixing bolt, and make scraping marks on removed cylinder head bolt.**

- (1) Tighten bolts in place by hands.
- (2) 1st step: Tighten bolts to 35 ± 5 N·m in order from (1) to (10) shown in illustration.
- (3) 2nd step: Rotate bolts clockwise by $90^\circ \pm 5^\circ$ in tightening order.
- (4) 3rd step: Rotate bolts clockwise by $90^\circ \pm 5^\circ$ in tightening order again.



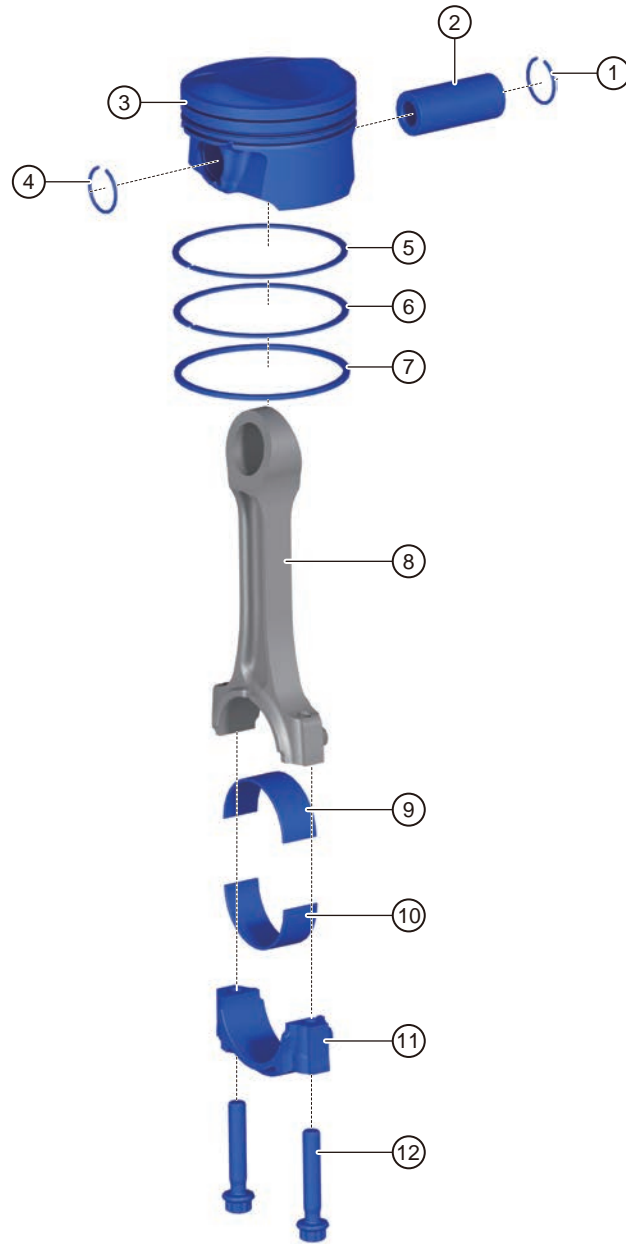
- (5) Install the camshaft and rocker arm.
- (6) Install the engine timing chain.
- (7) Install the cylinder head cover.
- (8) Install the idler pulley assembly.
- (9) Install the tensioner assembly.
- (10) Install the accessory drive belt.
- (11) Install the turbocharger assembly.
- (12) Install the precatlytic converter assembly.
- (13) Install the fuel rail injector assembly.
- (14) Install the intake manifold assembly.
- (15) Install the cooling pipe assembly.
- (16) Install the intake hose assembly.
- (17) Install the battery tray.
- (18) Install the battery assembly.
- (19) Install the air filter assembly.
- (20) Add the coolant as specified.
- (21) Add the engine oil as specified.
- (22) Install the engine trim cover assembly.
- (23) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

5.11 Cylinder Block



K40077

1	Cylinder Head Gasket	5	Crankshaft
2	Cylinder Block	6	Crankshaft Main Bearing Lower Shell
3	Crankshaft Main Bearing Upper Shell	7	Frame
4	Thrust Washer		



K40078

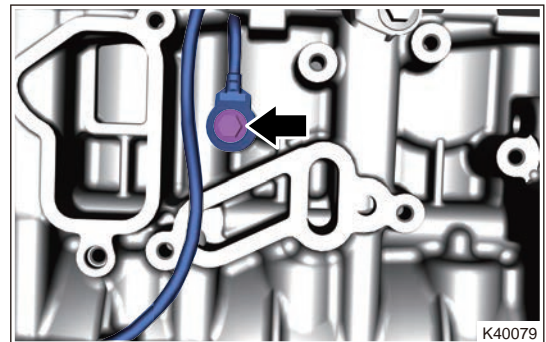
1	Elastic Circlip	7	Oil Ring Assembly
2	Piston pin	8	Connecting Rod Body
3	Piston	9	Connecting Rod Bearing Upper Shell
4	Elastic Circlip	10	Connecting Rod Bearing Lower Shell
5	First Compression Ring	11	Connecting Rod Bearing Cap
6	Second Compression Ring	12	Connecting Rod Bearing Cap Fixing Bolt

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing cylinder block.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing cylinder block. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

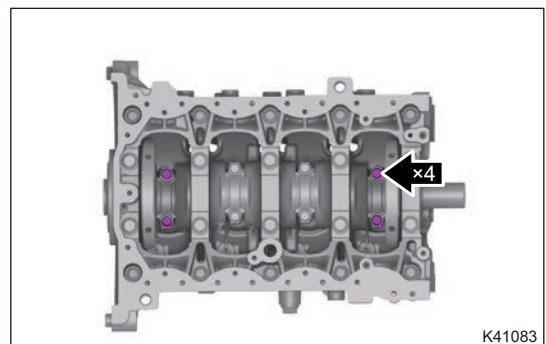
- (1) Remove engine assembly from vehicle.
 - (2) Separate transmission from engine.
 - (3) Remove the flywheel assembly.
 - (4) Remove the turbocharger assembly.
 - (5) Remove the turbocharger inlet pipe.
 - (6) Remove the turbocharger oil return pipe.
 - (7) Remove the electric water pump.
 - (8) Remove the intake manifold assembly.
 - (9) Remove the accessory drive belt.
 - (10) Remove the idler pulley assembly.
 - (11) Remove the tensioner assembly.
 - (12) Remove the torsion shock absorber.
 - (13) Remove the alternator assembly.
 - (14) Remove the water pump module assembly.
 - (15) Remove the oil filter module assembly.
 - (16) Remove the A/C compressor bracket.
 - (17) Remove the engine timing chain.
 - (18) Remove the cylinder head assembly.
 - (19) Remove the oil pan assembly.
 - (20) Remove the oil deflector.
 - (21) Remove the oil pump chain.
 - (22) Remove the variable oil pump.
- (23) Remove the knock sensor fixing bolt and remove the knock sensor.



- (24) Turn crankshaft, so that of cylinders 1 and 4 are at bottom dead center, remove fixing bolts from connecting rod bearing caps of cylinders 1 and 4, and remove connecting rod bearing caps of cylinders 1 and 4.

Hint:

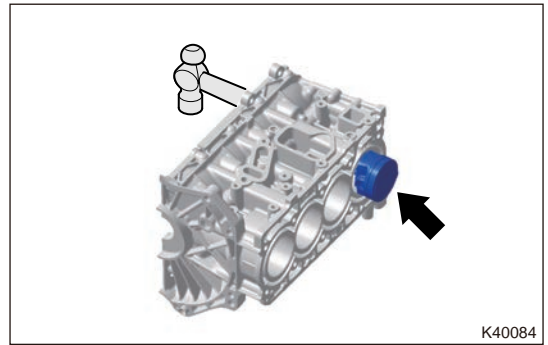
Removal procedures of cylinders 2 and 3 are the same as cylinders 1 and 4.



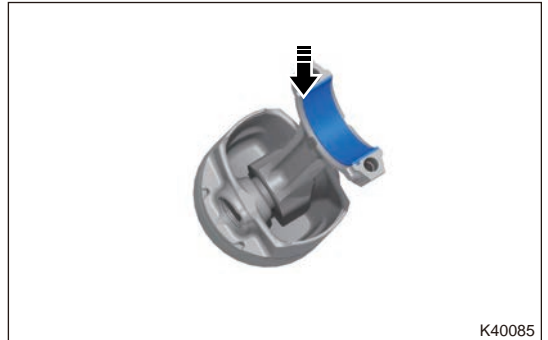
(25) Using a hammer handle, push out piston connecting rod assembly from cylinder block.

Hint:

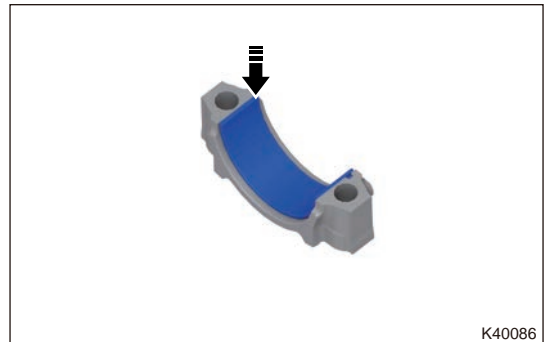
- Please operate carefully when pushing out piston, to avoid cylinder liner damage.
- Mark the removed piston connecting rod assemblies, so as to distinguish them.
- Replace with new connecting rod bearing cap bolts during assembly.



(26) Push out upper shell from connecting rod body slightly in direction of arrow to remove it.



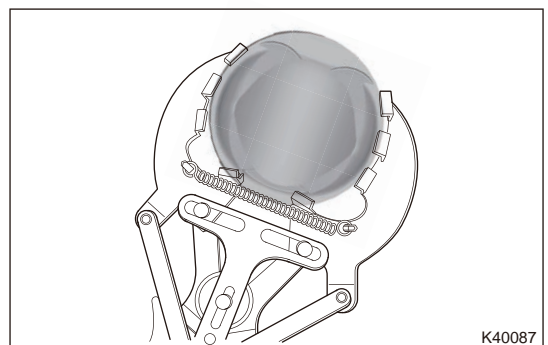
(27) Push out bearing lower shell slightly from connecting rod bearing cap in direction of arrow to remove it.



(28) Using a piston ring remover, remove first compression ring and second compression ring.

Hint:

Before removing piston ring, check piston ring side clearance; If it is necessary to be reused, be sure to mark piston ring position.

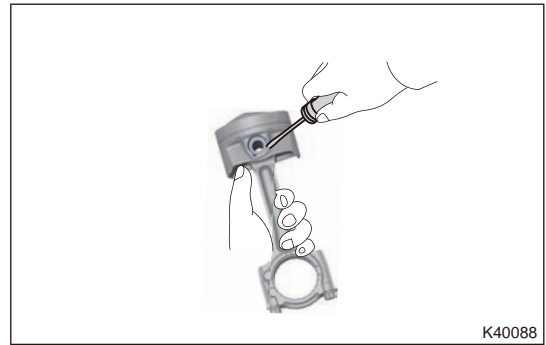


(29) Remove oil ring rail and expander.

(30) Using a flat tip screwdriver, pry out elastic circlips at both sides of piston pin carefully from notch.

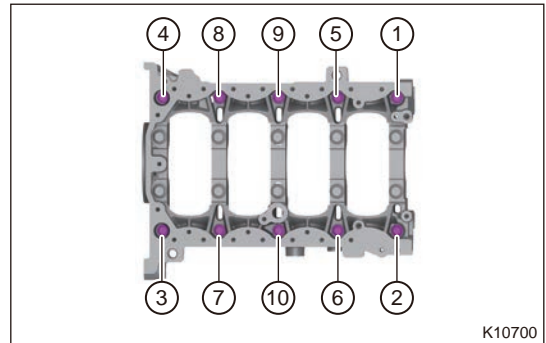
⚠ Caution

- **Elastic circlip has a large tensile force. Be careful during removal to prevent personal injury.**

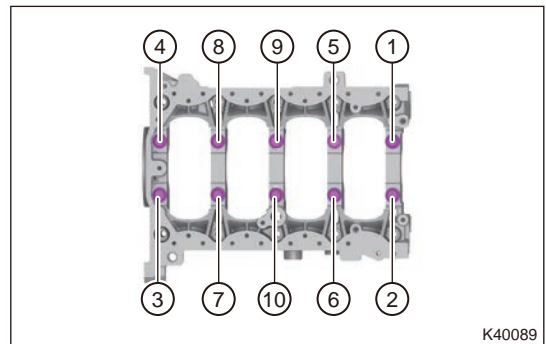


(31) Remove the piston pin assembly.

(32) Remove 10 fixing bolts from crankshaft frame in order shown in illustration.



(33) Remove 10 fixing bolts from crankshaft main bearing cap in order as shown in illustration.



(34) Remove the crankshaft frame.

Hint:

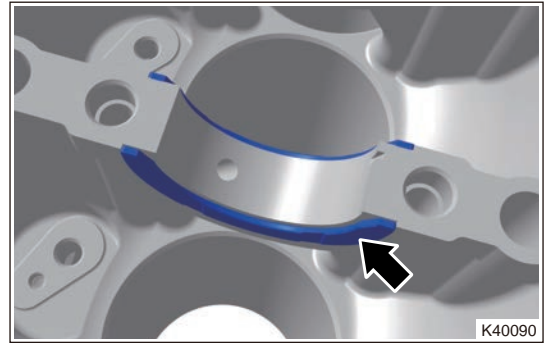
Take care when removing the crankshaft frame, be sure not to damage surrounding components.

(35) Remove the crankshaft assembly.

Hint:

Take care when removing crankshaft, ask other operators to assist when necessary. Avoid scratching contact surfaces between crankshaft and bearing shell.

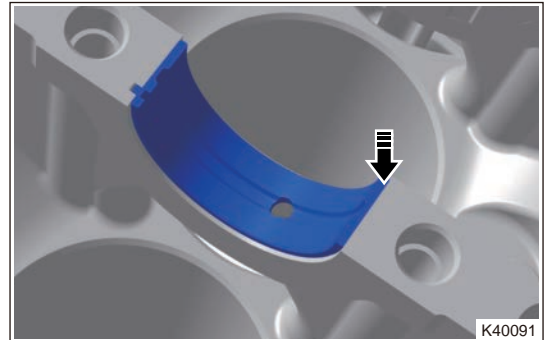
(36) Remove crankshaft thrust washers from cylinder block.



(37) Push out main bearing upper shell slightly from cylinder block in direction of arrow to remove it.

⚠ Caution

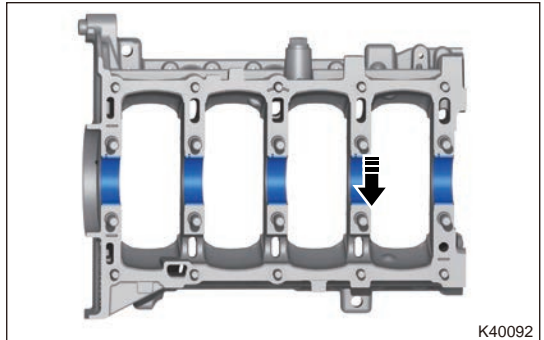
- **Pay attention to the notch position. Push out bearing shell carefully. It is difficult to push out bearing shell and parts may be damaged if pushing in opposite direction.**



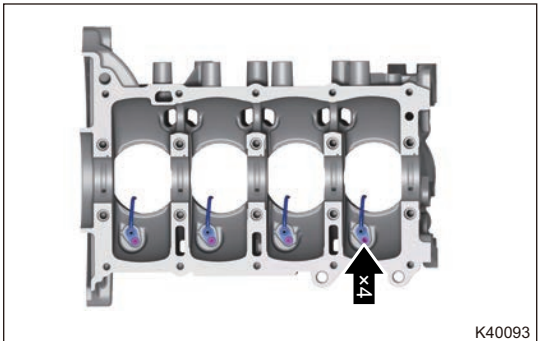
(38) Remove crankshaft main bearing lower shell from frame slightly in the direction of arrow.

⚠ Caution

- **Pay attention to the notch position. Push out bearing shell carefully. It is difficult to push out bearing shell and parts may be damaged if pushing in opposite direction.**



(39) Remove 4 fixing bolts and piston cooling nozzles.



■ Inspection

(1) Check the cylinder block appearance.

- 1) Clean engine block thoroughly and check all hole passages for leakage.
- 2) Check cylinder liner for cracks.
- 3) Check cylinder block for cracks.

Hint:

DO NOT wash cylinder at high temperature; otherwise, cylinder liner will stick out beyond cylinder block.

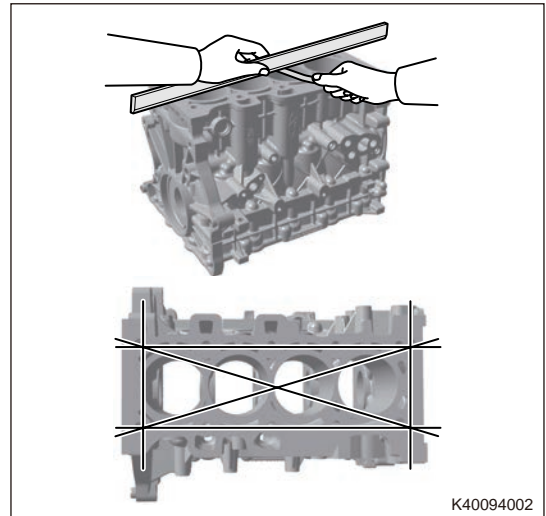
(2) Check the cylinder block upper surface flatness.

- 1) Clean the cylinder block upper surface, using precision straightedge and feeler gauge, measure cylinder block upper surface flatness.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)	Limit Value (mm)
Cylinder Block Upper Surface Flatness	0.04	0.1

Hint:

Never grind the cylinder block upper surface. If the engine block upper surface flatness is above the limit, replace the engine block.



K40094002

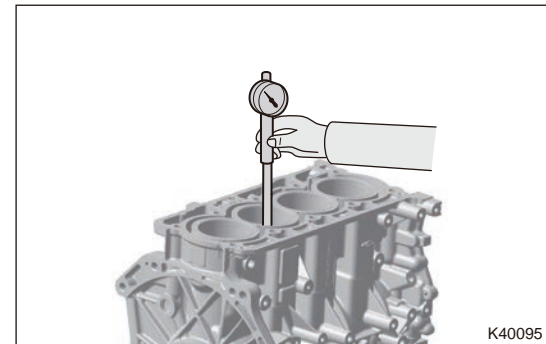
(3) Check cylinder diameter and piston clearance.

- 1) Using a cylinder gauge, measure cylinder diameter and calculate the gap between cylinder and piston.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)	Limit Value (mm)
Cylinder Diameter	77	77.105
Clearance Between Piston and Cylinder	0.045	0.063

Hint:

If the cylinder diameter is beyond the limit, replace the cylinder block. If the clearance between piston and cylinder is beyond the specified value, check cylinder diameter and piston diameter. Replace as necessary.



K40095

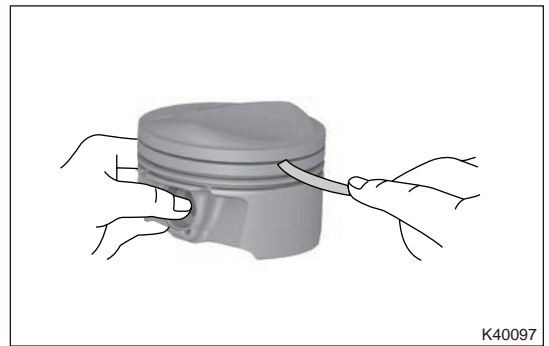
(4) Check the piston.

- 1) Using a scraper, remove carbon deposits on piston top.

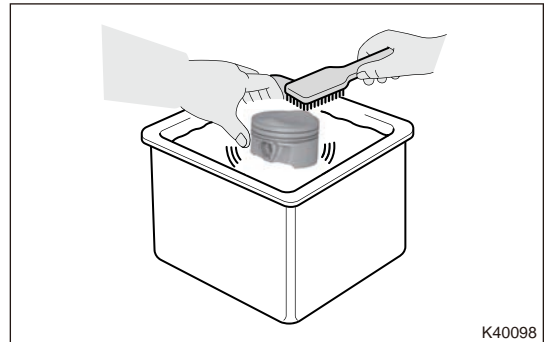


K40096

- 2) Using a piston ring, remove carbon deposits from piston ring grooves.



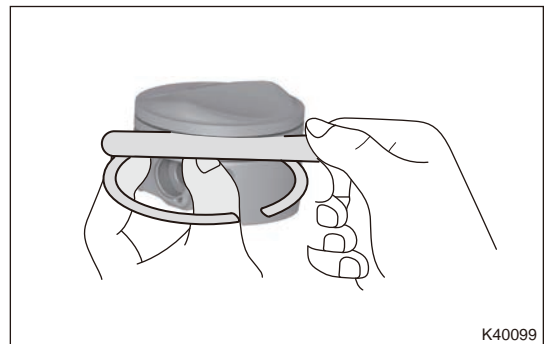
- 3) Using a brush and solvent, thoroughly clean piston.



- (5) Check the piston ring.

- 1) Using a feeler gauge, measure clearance between new piston ring and ring groove side.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)	Limit Value (mm)
First Compression Ring Groove Side Clearance	0.035 - 0.075	0.075
Second Compression Ring Groove Side Clearance	0.03 - 0.07	0.07



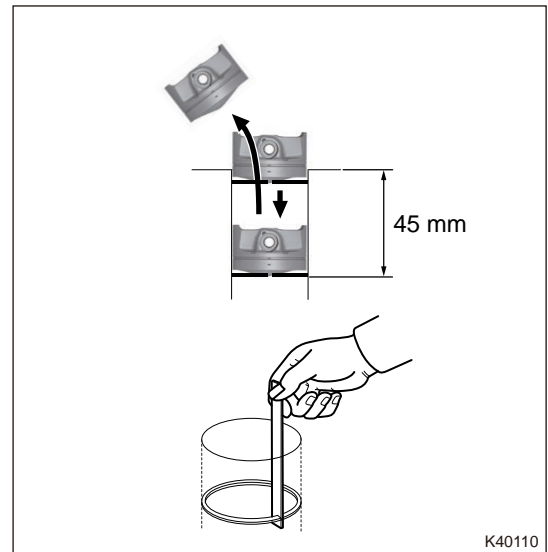
Hint:
If piston ring side clearance exceeds specified range, replace piston ring and piston assembly.

- 2) Using a piston, push piston ring from top of cylinder to bottom of cylinder bore, that is 45mm from bottom of cylinder bore. Keep the piston ring level.
- 3) Measure at the specified position, which has the minimum piston ring wear with a feeler gauge.

Measurement Item		Limit Value (mm)
Piston Ring End Gap	First Ring	0.2 - 0.3
	Second Ring	0.4 - 0.6

Hint:

- If piston ring end gap is not within specified range, replace piston ring with a new set.
- If end gap is still not within specified range after replacement, replace cylinder block assembly.



K40110

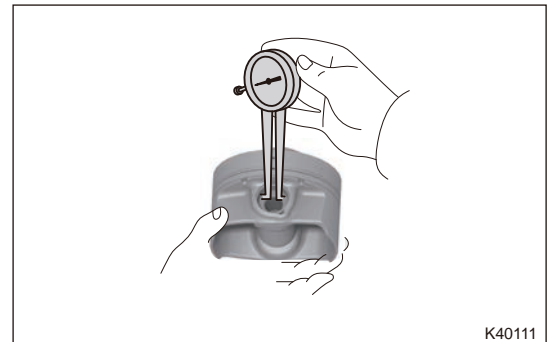
- (6) Check the piston pin.

- 1) Using a feeler gauge, measure diameter of piston pin hole.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Piston Pin Hole Diameter	20.004 - 20.009

Hint:

If piston pin hole diameter is not within specified range, replace piston.



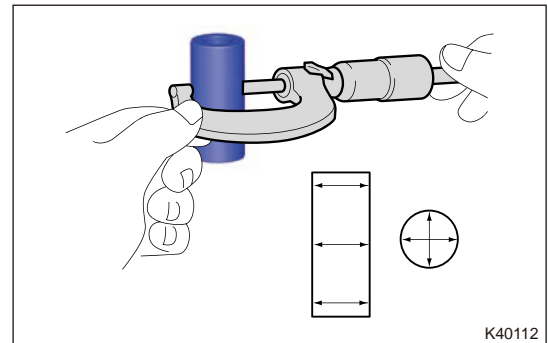
K40111

- 2) Using an external micrometer, measure diameter of piston pin.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Piston Pin Diameter	19.995 - 20

Hint:

If piston pin diameter is not within specified range, replace piston.



K40112

- (7) Check the crankshaft main journal diameter.

- 1) Measure crankshaft main bearing diameter with an external micrometer, and measure again after rotating the crankshaft 90°.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)	Limit Value (mm)
Crankshaft Main Journal Diameter	46	45.984
Taper and Out-of-roundness	0	0.008

Hint:

- If crankshaft main journal diameter is not within specified range, replace main bearing shells with new ones and check matching clearance of crankshaft main bearing.
- If matching clearance of main bearing is still not within specified range after replacing with new main bearing shells, replace crankshaft.

- (8) Check matching clearance of crankshaft main bearing.

- 1) Clean crankshaft main journals and main bearing shells.
- 2) Install the crankshaft. Place feeler (1) on crankshaft main journal, parallel to crankshaft center axis and as wide as distance covered.
- 3) Install crankshaft frame and tighten main bearing cap fixing bolts to specified torque.

Torque: 1st step: 45 ± 5 N·m, 2nd step: 180° ± 10°

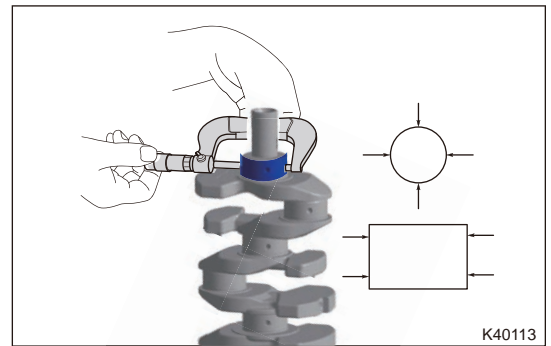
- 4) Remove the crankshaft frame; Using a feeler gauge, measure widest part of compressed feeler gauge. Measured value is matching clearance of crankshaft main bearing.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Matching Clearance of Crankshaft Main Bearing	0.013 - 0.043

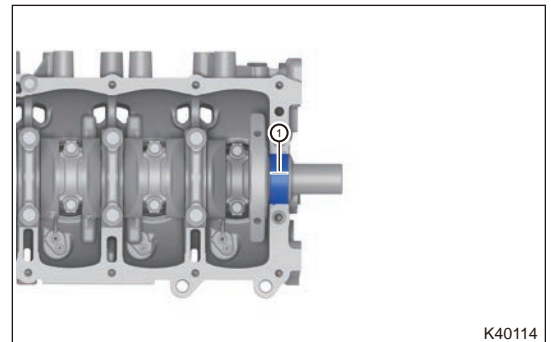
Hint:

- If matching clearance of crankshaft main bearing is not within specified range, install new main bearing shells; Replace crankshaft assembly if necessary.
- Replace bearing shells in pairs.

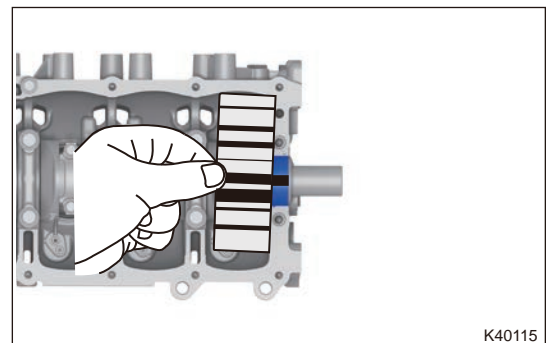
- (9) Check the crankshaft axial clearance.



K40113



K40114

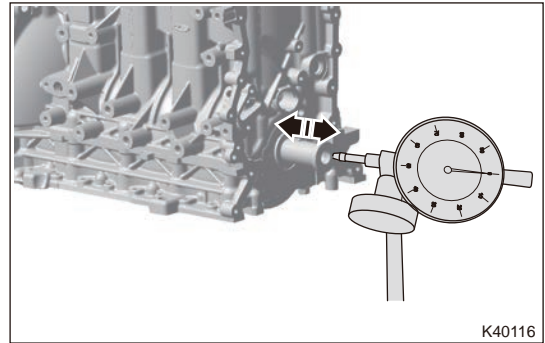


K40115

- 1) Clean crankshaft main journals and main bearing shells.
- 2) Install crankshaft frame and tighten main bearing cap fixing bolts to specified torque.

Torque: 1st step: 45 ± 5 N·m, 2nd step: $180^\circ \pm 10^\circ$

- 3) Using a flat tip screwdriver, pry crank position left and right, and read value on dial indicator.



K40116

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)	Limit Value (mm)
Crankshaft Axial Clearance	0.120 - 0.315	0.315

(10) Check the crankshaft main journal coaxiality.

- 1) Install crankshaft onto tester and keep it level.
- 2) Rotate crankshaft slowly and read maximum change value from dial indicator. (Readings on dial indicator) / 2 is the coaxiality of crankshaft main journal.



K40117

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)	Limit Value (mm)
Crankshaft Main Journal Coaxiality	0	0.05

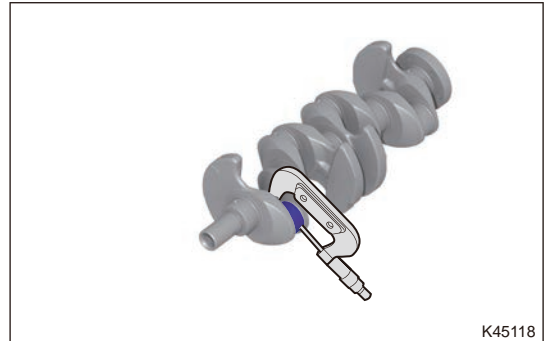
Hint:

If crankshaft main journal coaxiality is not within specified range, replace crankshaft assembly.

(11) Detect diameter of crankshaft connecting rod journal.

- 1) Using an external micrometer, measure diameter of crankshaft connecting rod journal.

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)	Limit Value (mm)
Crankshaft Connecting Rod Journal Diameter	44	43.984



K45118

Hint:

- If connecting rod journal diameter is not within specified range, replace connecting rod bearing shells with new ones, and check radial clearance of connecting rod bearing shell.
- If radial clearance of connecting rod bearing shell is still not within specified range after replacement, replace crankshaft.

(12) Check radial clearance of crankshaft connecting rod bearing shell.

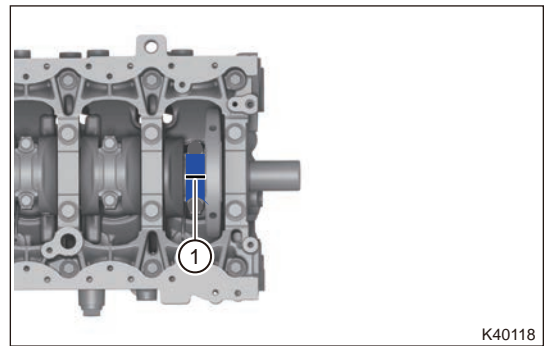
- 1) Clean connecting rod journals and connecting rod bearing shells.
- 2) Place a feeler (1) on connecting rod journal.
- 3) Install connecting rod bearing caps, and tighten connecting rod bearing cap fixing bolts to specified torque.

Torque: 1st step: 20 - 25 N·m, 2nd step: 85° ± 5°

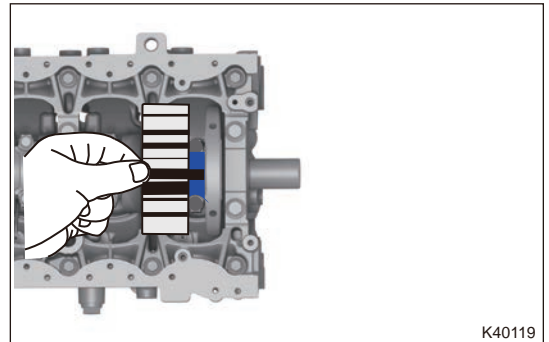
Hint:

DO NOT turn crankshaft during installation.

- 4) Remove the connecting rod bearing cap.
- 5) Using gauge scale of feeler gauge, measure the widest part of compressed feeler gauge to obtain radial clearance of connecting rod bearing shell.



K40118



K40119

Measurement Item	Specification (mm)
Connecting Rod Bearing Shell Radial Clearance	0.035 - 0.067

Hint:

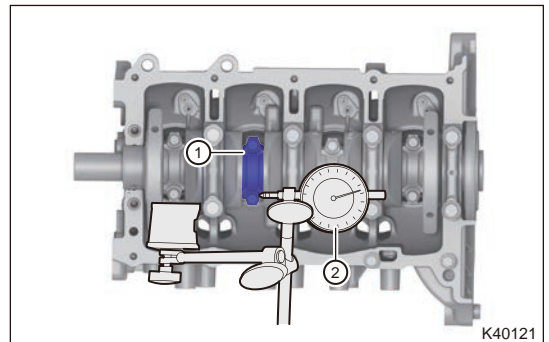
If radial clearance of connecting rod outer diameter is not within specified range, replace connecting rod bearing shells. Replace crankshaft assembly if necessary.

(13) Check axial clearance of connecting rod.

- 1) Install connecting rod bearing caps, and tighten connecting rod bearing cap fixing bolts to specified torque.

Torque: 1st step: 20 - 25 N·m, 2nd step: 85° ± 5°

- 2) Install a dial indicator (2) with its plunger contacting the side of connecting rod cap (1) Reset dial of dial indicator to zero.
- 3) Push connecting rod bearing cap forward and backward (do not move crankshaft forward and backward) and read value on dial indicator.



K40121

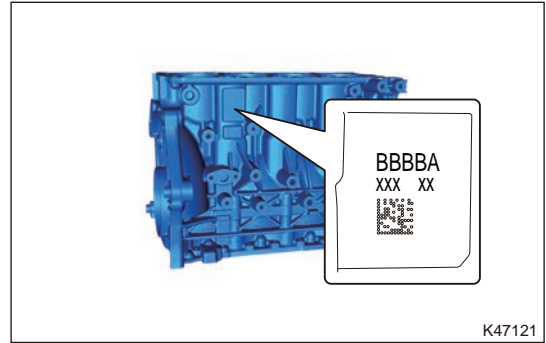
Measurement Item	Specifications
Connecting Rod Axial Clearance	0.15 - 0.40

Hint:

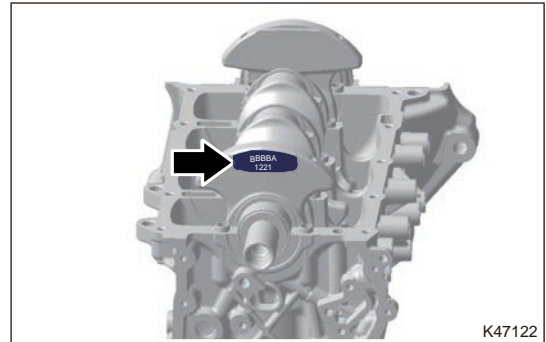
If axial clearance of connecting rod is not within specified range, replace piston connecting rod assembly. Replace crankshaft assembly if necessary.

■ Selection of Main Bearing Shell

- (1) Related letter marks are available on cylinder block (- consisting of A, B, C). Such as “BBBBA” in illustration, each letter from left to right is corresponding to the size of each cylinder block main bearing hole. First letter "B" indicates the first main bearing hole and the fifth letter "A" indicates the fifth main bearing hole.



- (2) Related letter marks are available on first balancer at front end of crankshaft (consisting of A, B, C). Such as “BBBBA” in illustration, each letter from left to right is corresponding to the size of each crankshaft main journal. First letter "B" indicates the first main journal and the fifth letter "A" indicates the fifth main journal.



(3) Crankshaft Main Bearing Shell Selection Information Table

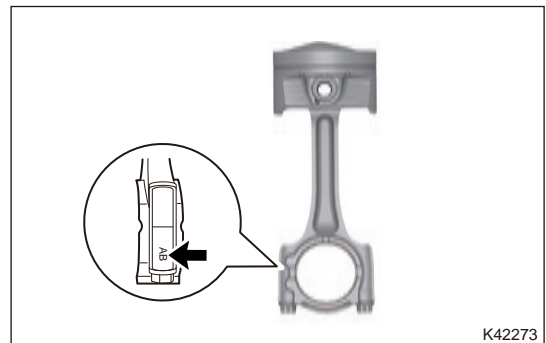
Main Journal \ Main Shaft Hole	C Yellow 45.984~45.989	B Red 45.989~45.995	A Blue 45.995~46.000
	Bearing Shell	Bearing Shell	Bearing Shell
A Blue (50.000~50.005)	Red	Red	Blue
B Red (50.005~50.011)	Yellow	Red	Blue
C Yellow (50.011~50.016)	Yellow	Yellow	Red

K41091

■ Selection of connecting rod bearing upper shell

- (1) Connecting rod bearing upper shells are divided into red shell and blue shell. Related letter marks are available on connecting rod bearing shell cap (consisting of A and B).
- (2) As shown in illustration, mark "A" on connecting rod indicates red shell, "B" indicates blue shell.

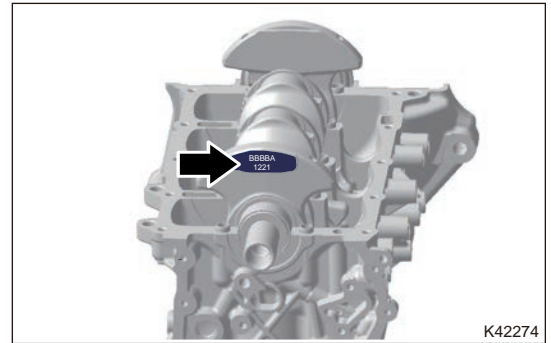
Name	Type	Letter Mark
Connecting Rod Upper Shell	Red shell	A
	Blue shell	B



■ Selection of connecting rod lower shell

- (1) Related digital marks are available on first balancer at front end of crankshaft (consisting of 1 and 2); Such as “1221” on first balancer at front end of crankshaft shown in illustration, first digit “1” is for lower shell type of cylinder 1 piston connecting rod bearing, and so on; fourth digit “1” is for lower shell type of cylinder 4 piston connecting rod bearing.

Name	Type	Letter Mark
Rod Bearing Lower Shell	Red shell	1
	Blue shell	2



K42274

Hint:

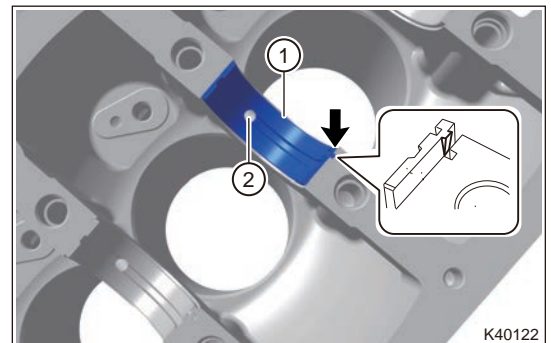
- Connecting rod upper and lower bearing shells cannot be interchanged.
- It is necessary to use a set of connecting rod bearing shells that are provided by the same manufacturer on the same engine.
- Apply a coat of engine oil to inner surface of connecting rod bearing shell before installation. Back side of bearing shell should be clean without any oil or foreign matter during assembly, and make sure that back side and inner surface are clean.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 4 fixing bolts to piston cooling nozzles.

Torque: 6 - 8 N·m

- (2) Carefully install crankshaft main bearing upper shell in direction of arrow, and notch of each main bearing upper shell should be aligned with cylinder block. Oil passage hole (2) on crankshaft main bearing upper shell should be aligned with passage hole on cylinder block after installation.



K40122

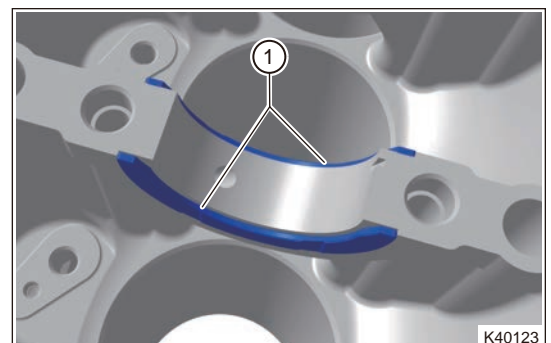
⚠ Caution

- Apply a proper amount of engine oil to inner surface of main bearing shell before installation.
- Install main bearing lower shell in the same way of crankshaft main bearing upper shell.

- (3) Install crankshaft thrust washer to front and rear thrust surfaces of 3rd main bearing seat respectively.

Hint:

The side of crankshaft thrust washers (1) without groove should face cylinder block side while the other side with groove should face crankshaft side.



K40123

- (4) Apply seal gum to installation surface of crankshaft frame.

Seal gum: Loctite 5900H

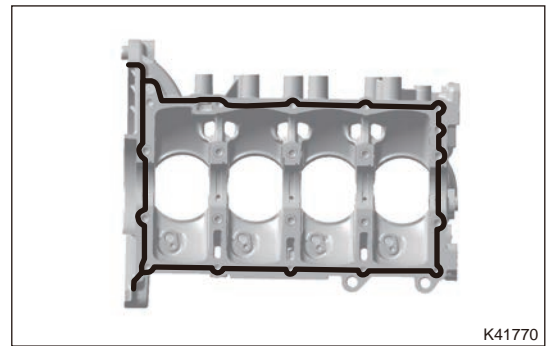
Diameter of seal gum line: 2.5 - 3.5 mm

Hint:

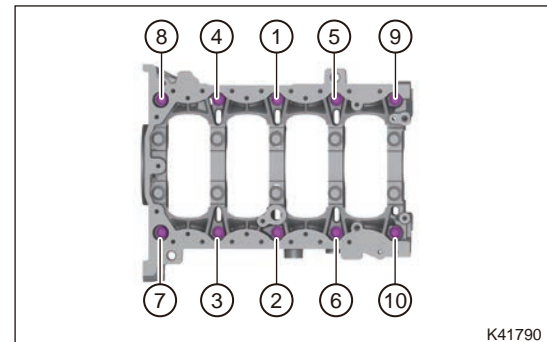
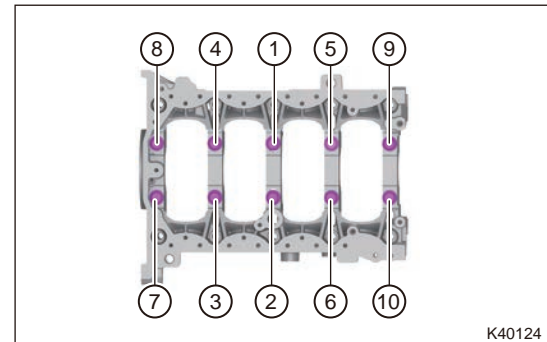
- DO NOT apply seal gum to bearing shell when applying seal gum.
- Seal gum should not be applied too thick. Avoid seal gum entering bearing shell installation area due to compression.

- (5) Place crankshaft on cylinder block carefully.
- (6) Install crankshaft main bearing cap fixing bolts in place by hands, and then tighten 10 crankshaft main bearing cap fixing bolts in order shown in illustration.

Torque: 1st step: $45 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$, 2nd step: $180^\circ \pm 10^\circ$



- (7) Evenly tighten 10 crankshaft frame fixing bolts in order shown in illustration.

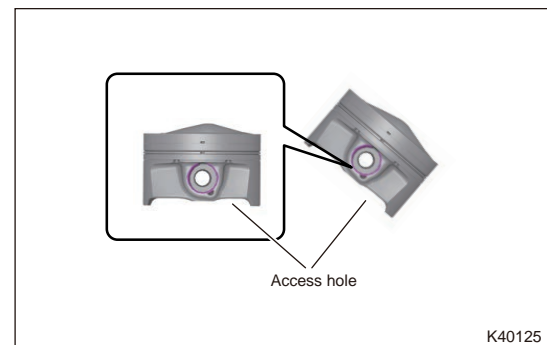


- (8) Using a small screwdriver, install new elastic circlip to one end of piston pin hole.

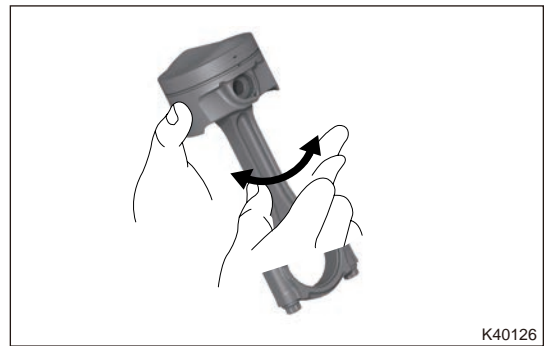
Hint:

Relative angle between elastic circlip opening and removed notch is $180^\circ \pm 40^\circ$

- (9) Align front marks on piston and connecting rod, push piston pin with thumb until it contacts with elastic circlip.

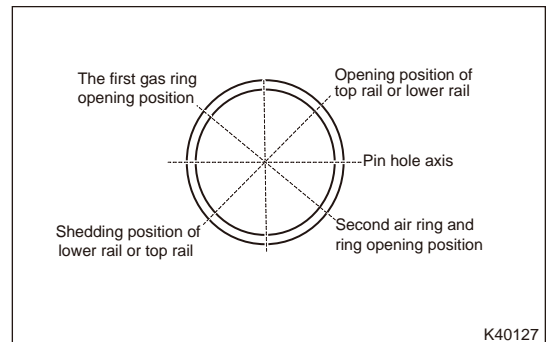


- (10) Install elastic circlip to the other end of piston pin hole, and check for free rotation between piston and connecting rod assembly.



K40126

- (11) Apply a small amount of engine oil to piston ring groove and piston. Pay attention that the sides with words of first compression ring (1) and second compression ring (2) should face upward.
- (12) When installing the oil ring, first install the expander into oil groove, then install upper and lower rails with opening staggered by 90° from the expander, and the upper and lower rails at 180°. Then install the second compression ring, and install the first compression ring finally with two compression rings staggered by 90° from upper rail opening; The piston ring should rotate in the ring groove freely without any stuck condition.
- (13) Rotate piston ring several turns after adding engine oil to piston ring groove, and note that the position of ring notch should be the same with that described above; clean crankshaft connecting rod journal and cylinder with a non-woven fabric cloth.

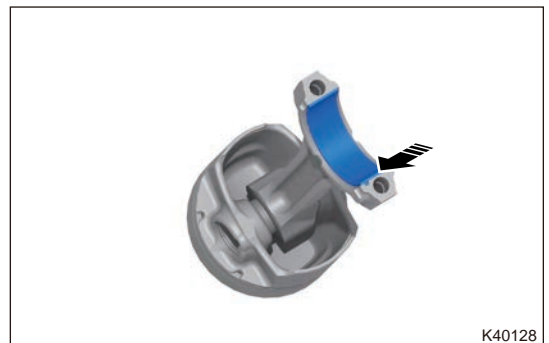


K40127

- (14) Carefully install the connecting rod bearing upper shell in direction of arrow, and keep notch of each connecting rod bearing upper shell face the cutout of connecting rod bearing cap.

Hint:

Apply a proper amount of engine oil to connecting rod bearing shell inner surface before installation.

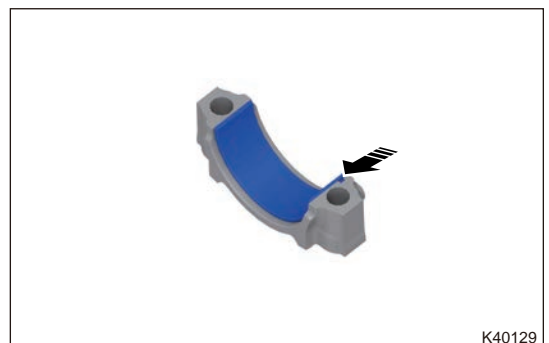


K40128

- (15) Carefully install connecting rod bearing lower shell in direction of arrow, and keep notch of each connecting rod bearing lower shell face the cutout of connecting rod bearing cap.

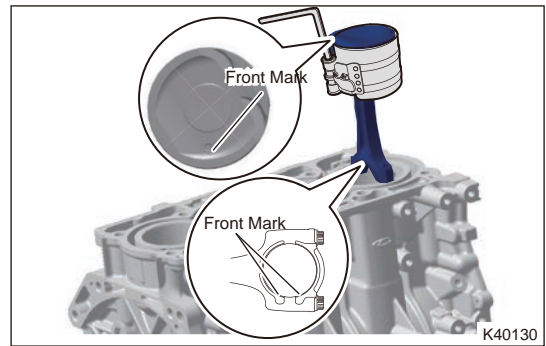
Hint:

Back side of connecting rod bearing shell should be clean without any foreign matter during assembly.



K40129

- (16) Rotate crankshaft to top dead center of cylinder 1 and cylinder 4.
- (17) Apply a coat of engine oil to piston surface and cylinder inner wall.
- (18) As shown in illustration, install piston connecting rod assembly to cylinder with piston installer; Pay attention to front marks on piston and connecting rod during assembly, without being reversed.

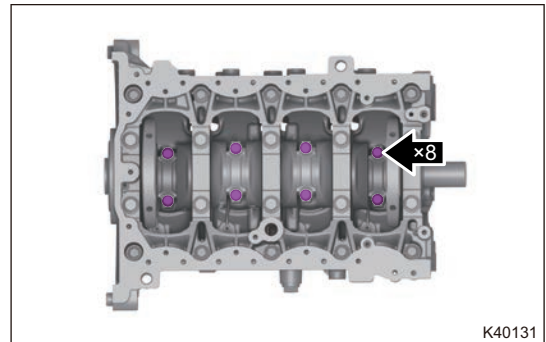


- (19) Install connecting rod bearing caps in place, install connecting rod bearing cap fixing bolts and tighten connecting rod bearing cap fixing bolts to specified torque.

Torque: 1st step: 20 - 25 N·m, 2nd step: 85° ± 5°

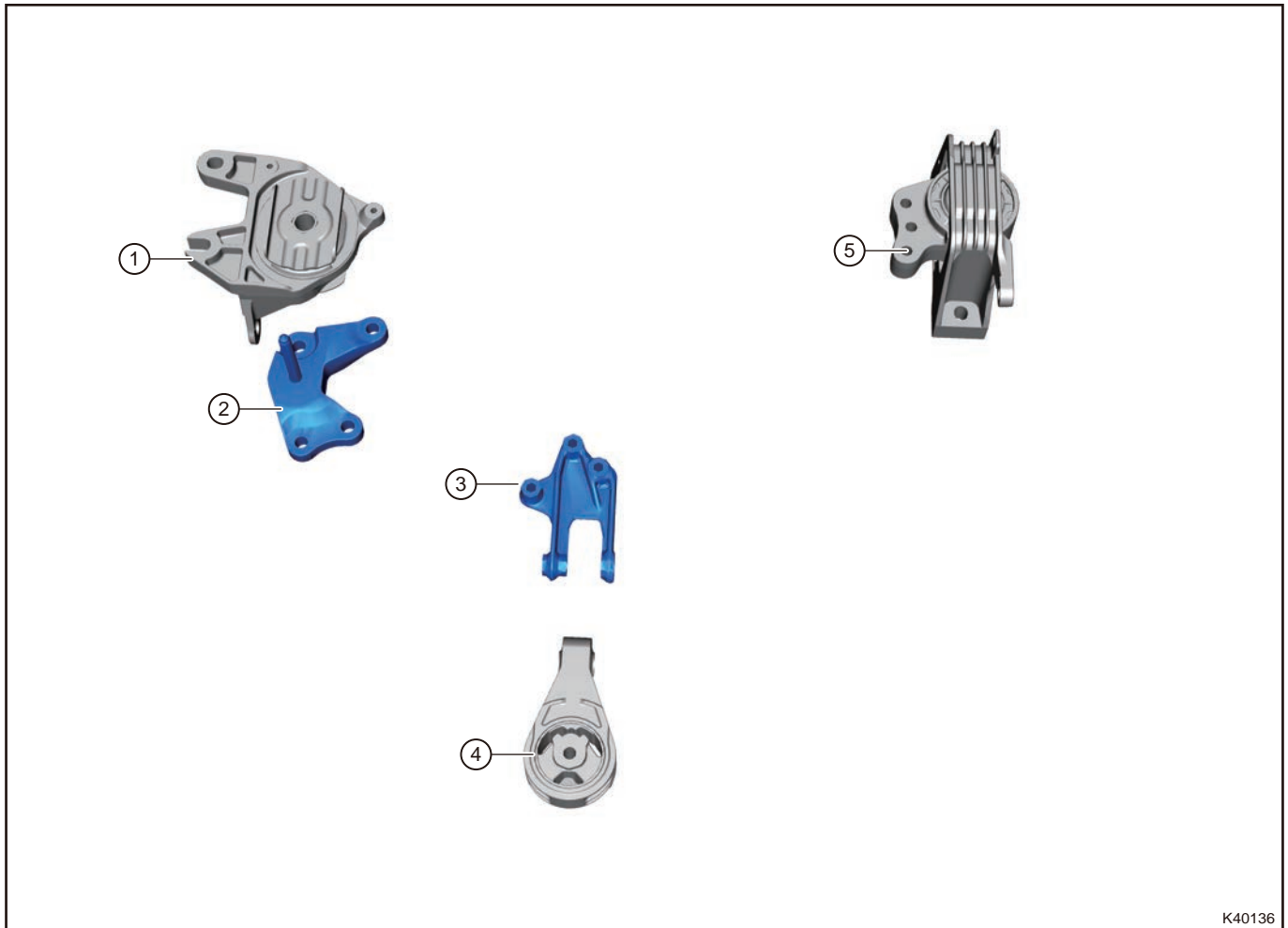
Hint:

Apply a small amount of engine lubricant to connecting rods, connecting rod bearing caps and thread joint surfaces.



- (20) Install the knock sensor.
- (21) Install the oil pump assembly.
- (22) Install the oil pump chain.
- (23) Install the oil deflector.
- (24) Install the oil pan assembly.
- (25) Install the cylinder cover assembly.
- (26) Install the engine timing chain.
- (27) Install the A/C compressor bracket and A/C compressor.
- (28) Install the oil filter module assembly.
- (29) Install the water pump module.
- (30) Install the alternator assembly.
- (31) Install the timing chain cover .
- (32) Install the torsion shock absorber.
- (33) Install the tensioner assembly.
- (34) Install the idler pulley assembly.
- (35) Install the engine accessory drive belt.
- (36) Install the intake manifold assembly.
- (37) Install the turbocharger assembly.
- (38) Install the flywheel assembly.
- (39) Install the transmission assembly.
- (40) Install the engine assembly to vehicle body.

5.12 Engine Mounting Assembly



K40136

1	Left Mounting Cushion Assembly	4	Rear Mounting Cushion Assembly
2	Left Mounting Bracket	5	Right Mounting Cushion Assembly
3	Rear Mounting Bracket		

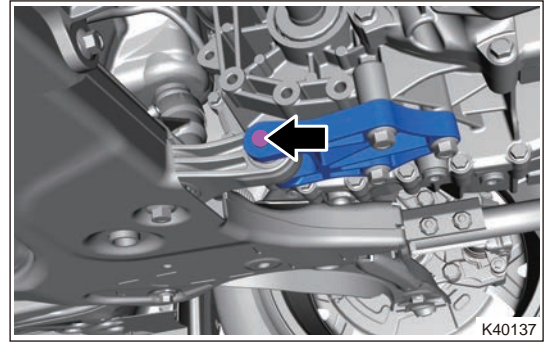
■ Remove the rear mounting assembly

⚠ Warning

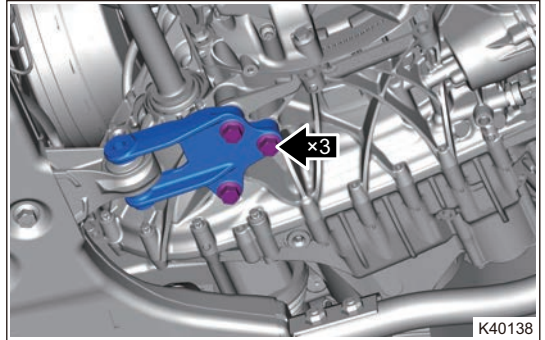
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear mounting assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear mounting assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.

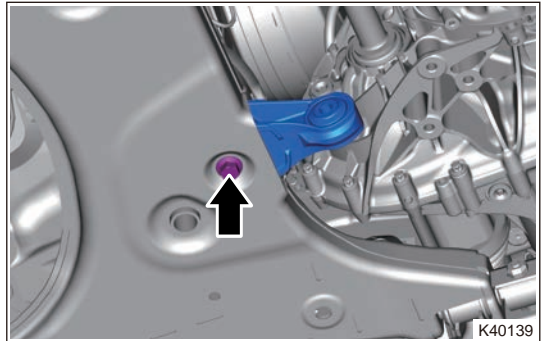
- (3) Remove 1 through bolt between rear mounting bracket and rear mounting cushion.



- (4) Remove 3 fixing bolts between rear mounting bracket and transmission assembly and remove rear mounting bracket.



- (5) Remove 1 fixing bolt between rear mounting cushion and front sub frame and remove rear mounting cushion.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check rubber part on rear mounting cushion for damage or deformation. Replace rear mounting cushion as necessary.
- (2) Check rear mounting bracket for deformation or cracks. Replace rear mounting bracket as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Pre-tighten 2 to 3 threads manually first during assembly of bolts, then pre-tighten and tighten it to specified torque with a tool.**

- (1) Install 1 fixing bolt between rear mounting cushion and front sub frame.

Torque: 200 ± 15 N·m

- (2) Install 3 fixing bolts between rear mounting bracket and transmission assembly.

Torque: 110 ± 15 N·m

- (3) Install 1 fixing bolt to rear mounting pull rod and rear mounting bracket.

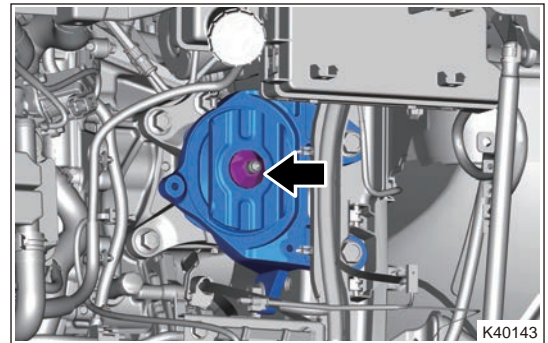
Torque: 200 ± 15 N·m

■ Remove the left mounting assembly

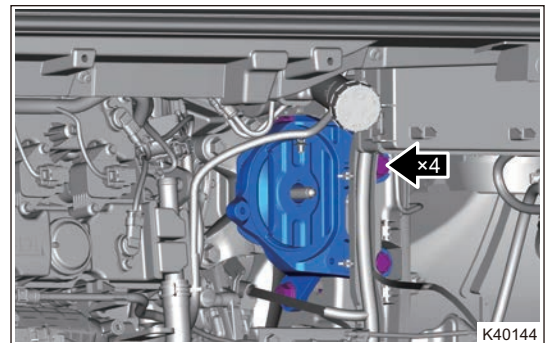
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing left mounting assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing left mounting assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

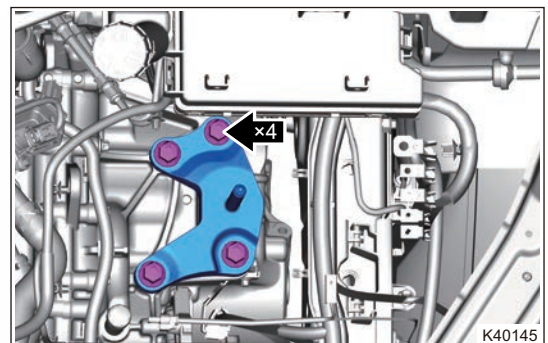
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Remove the battery assembly.
- (6) Remove the battery tray.
- (7) Remove 1 fixing nut between left mounting cushion assembly and left mounting bracket.



- (8) Remove 4 fixing bolts between left mounting cushion assembly and body and remove left mounting cushion assembly.



- (9) Remove 4 fixing bolts between left mounting bracket and transmission assembly and remove left mounting bracket.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check rubber part on left mounting cushion assembly for damage or deformation. Replace left mounting cushion as necessary.
- (2) Check left mounting bracket for deformation or cracks. Replace left mounting bracket as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Pre-tighten 2 to 3 threads manually first during assembly of bolts, then pre-tighten and tighten it to specified torque with a tool.**

(1) Install 4 fixing bolts between left mounting bracket and transmission assembly.

Torque: 110 ± 15 N·m

(2) Install 4 fixing bolts between left mounting cushion assembly and body.

Torque: 110 ± 15 N·m

(3) Install 1 fixing nut between left mounting cushion assembly and left mounting bracket.

Torque: 110 ± 15 N·m

(4) Install the battery tray.

(5) Install the battery assembly.

(6) Install the air filter assembly.

(7) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

■ Removal of Right Mounting Cushion Assembly

⚠ Warning

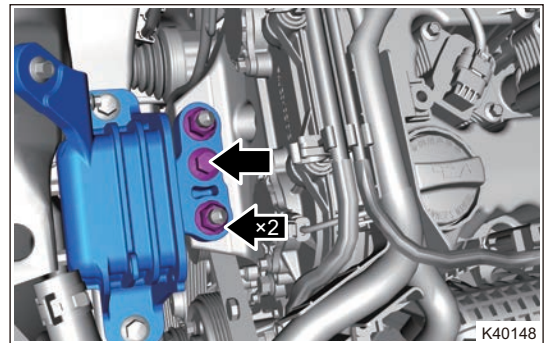
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing right mounting cushion assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing right mounting cushion assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

(1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.

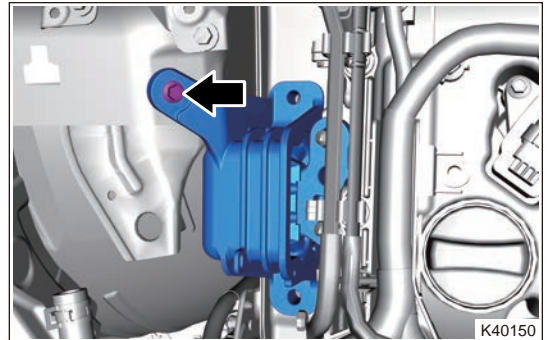
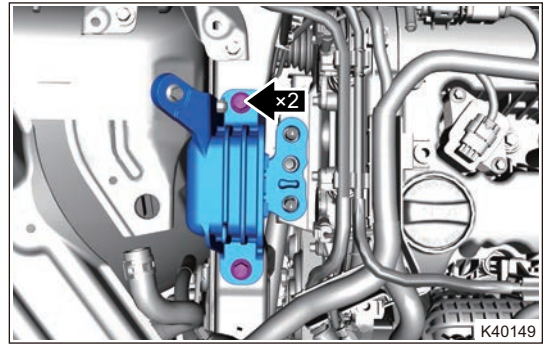
(2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

(3) Move the expansion tank to proper position.

(4) Remove 2 fixing nuts and 1 fixing bolt between right mounting cushion assembly and engine.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts between right mounting cushion assembly and right side rail.



- (6) Remove the right mounting cushion assembly.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check rubber part on right mounting cushion assembly for damage or deformation. Replace right mounting cushion as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Pre-tighten 2 to 3 threads manually first during assembly of bolts, then pre-tighten and tighten it to specified torque with a tool.**

- (1) Install 3 fixing bolts between right mounting cushion assembly and right side rail.

Torque: $110 \pm 15 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

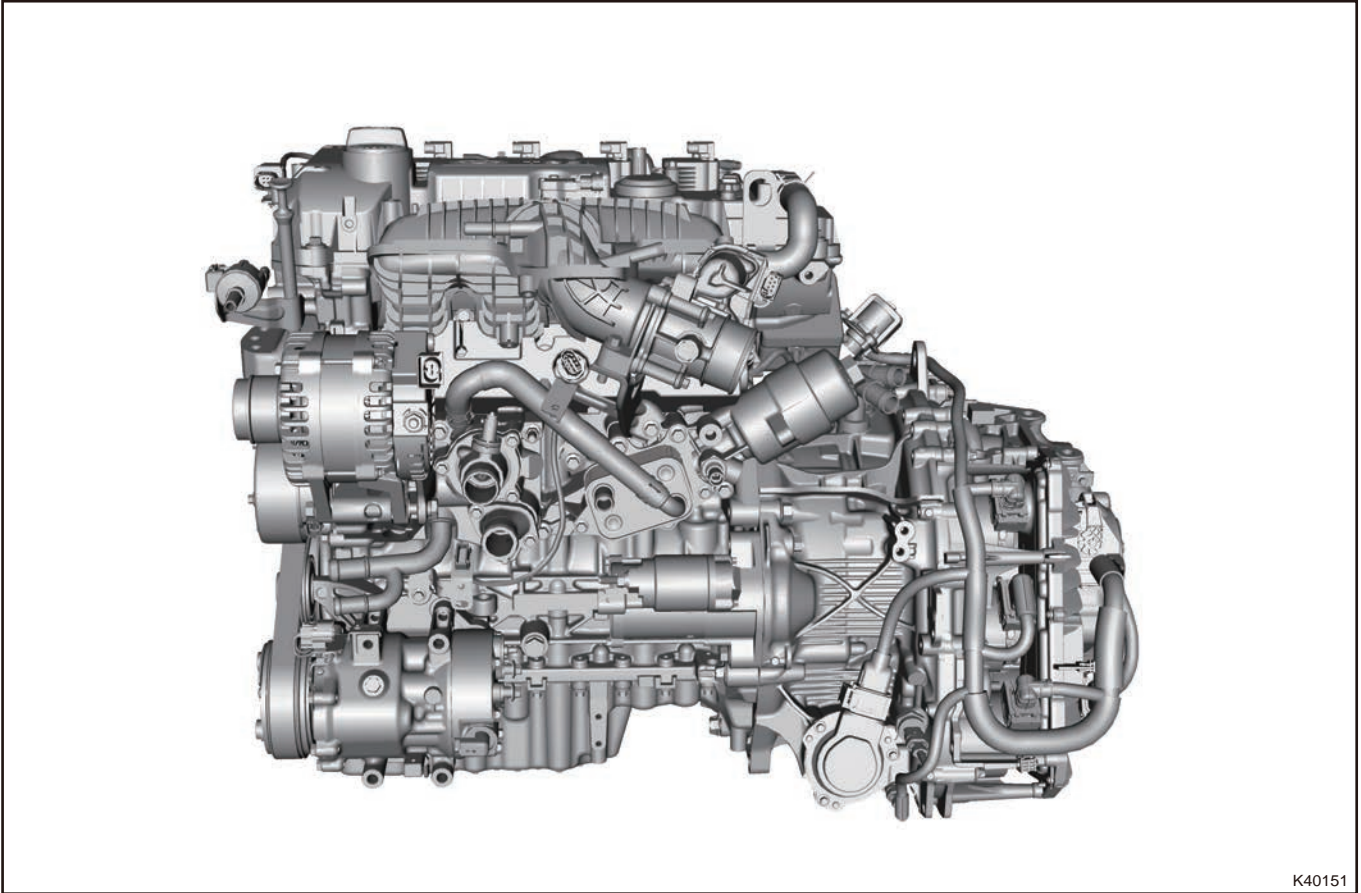
Torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Install 2 fixing nuts and 1 fixing bolt on right mounting cushion assembly and sprocket head cover assembly.

Torque: $110 \pm 15 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Install expansion tank.
 (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

5.13 Engine Assembly

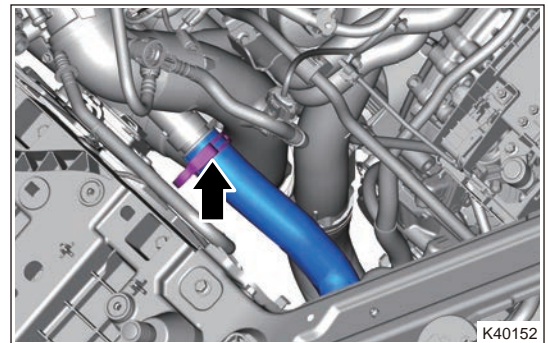


■ Removal

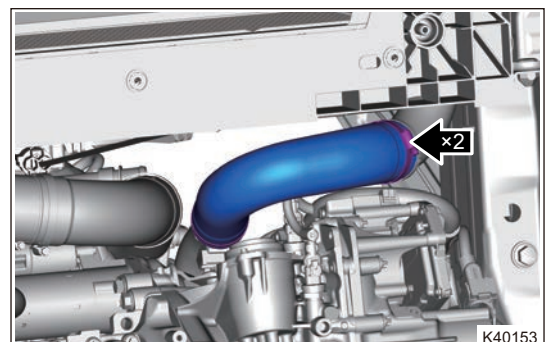
⚠ Caution

- Remove engine and transmission as an assembly.
- Install protector to prevent body from being scratched.
- Plug inlet port of intake pipe to prevent foreign matter from entering after removing intake system components. Or the foreign matter will block cylinder intake passage when starting to seriously damage the engine.

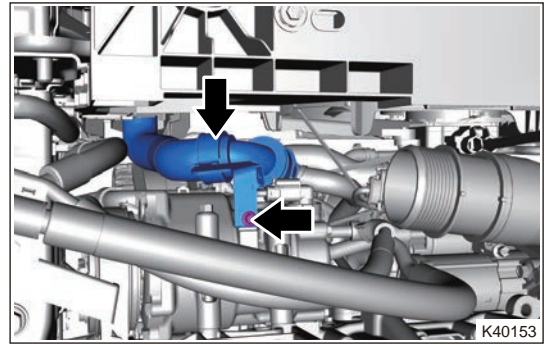
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (5) Drain the coolant.
- (6) Recover/Drain the refrigerant.
- (7) Drain the transmission oil.
- (8) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (9) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (10) Remove the battery assembly.
- (11) Remove the battery tray.
- (12) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (13) Remove the intercooler outlet pipe assembly II .
- (14) Remove the intercooler intake pipe assembly III .
- (15) Remove the front wheel tire.
- (16) Remove the left/right side rail assembly.
- (17) Remove the front left drive shaft assembly.
- (18) Remove the front right drive shaft assembly.
- (19) Remove the transfer case assembly.
- (20) Remove the precatlytic converter assembly.
- (21) Remove the front sub frame assembly.
- (22) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect engine inlet pipe connection.



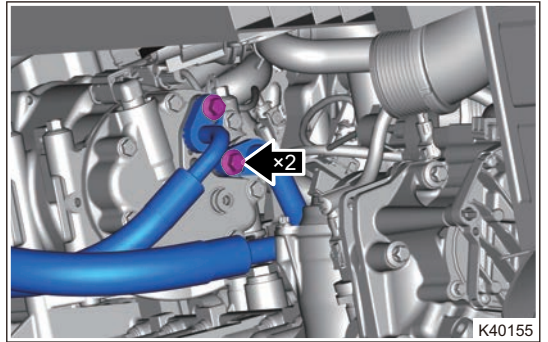
- (23) Loosen 2 elastic clamps and remove the intercooler intake pipe assembly III .



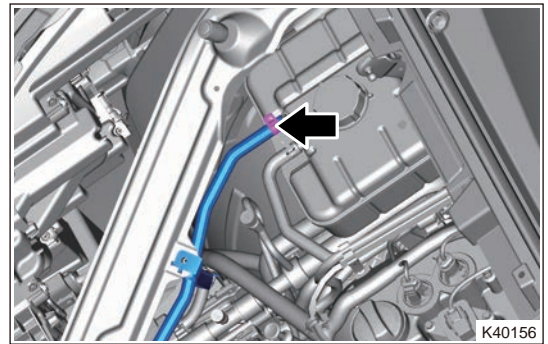
(24) Loosen elastic clamps, remove 1 bolt from fixing bracket and disconnect engine outlet pipe connection.



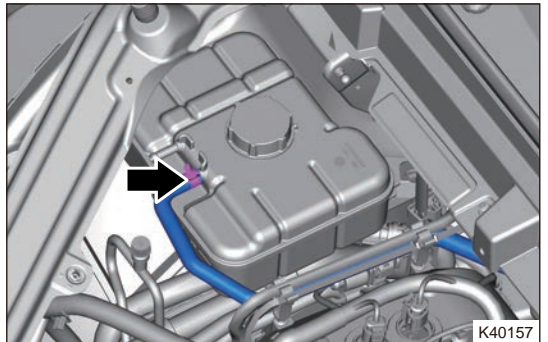
(25) Remove 2 fixing bolts from A/C pipes, disconnect the compressor.



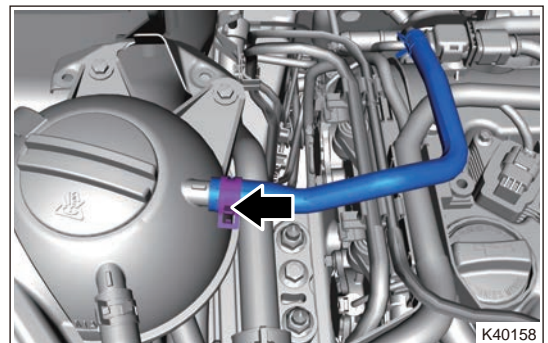
(26) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect radiator discharge pipe assembly.



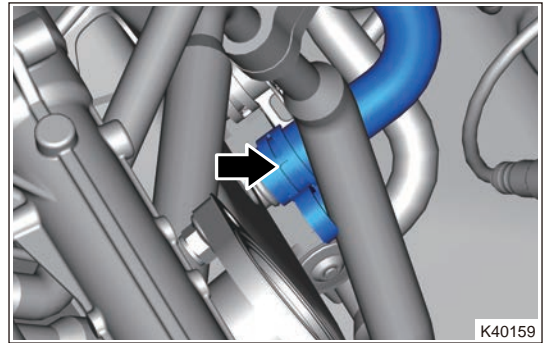
(27) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect engine discharge pipe.



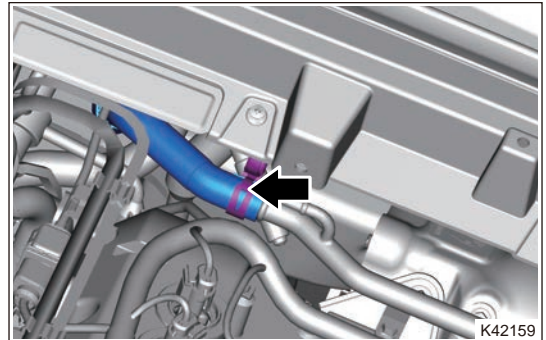
(28) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect engine discharge pipe.



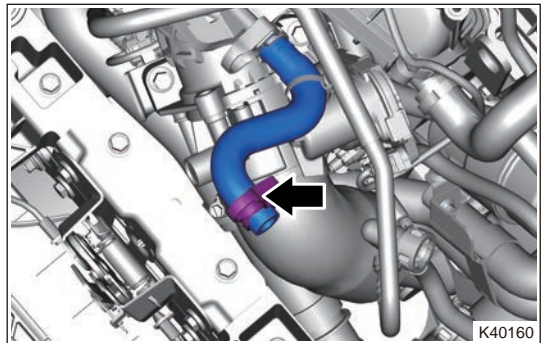
(29) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect outlet pipe.



(30) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect heater inlet pipe.

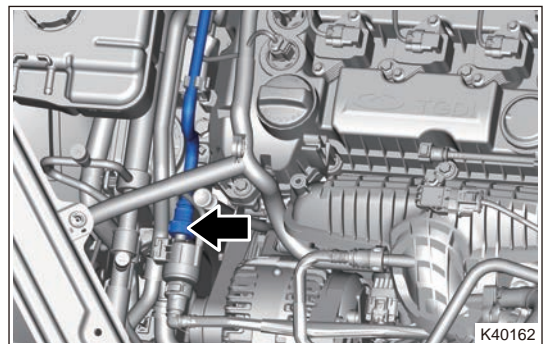


(31) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect vacuum pipe connection.

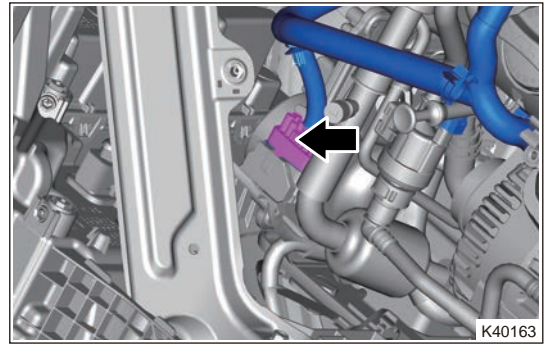


(32) Disconnect connection between engine compartment oil supply pipe and floor oil supply pipe.

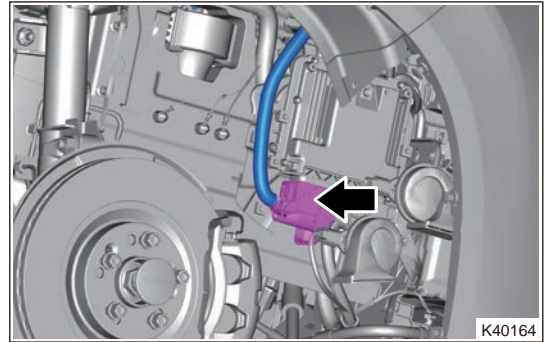
(33) Disconnect the fuel vapor pipe III connection.



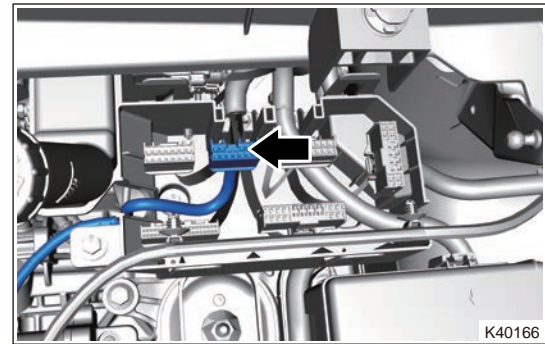
(34) Disconnect the connector between engine electronic injection wire harness and interior floor wire harness.



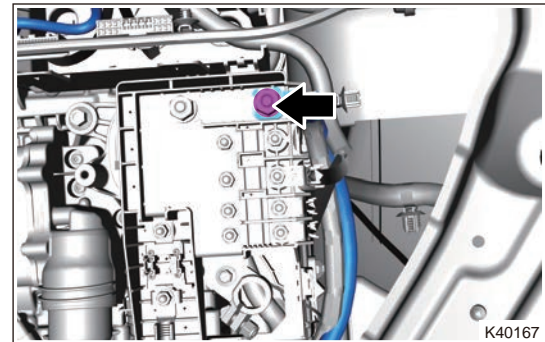
(35) Remove the front right wheel house protector body, disconnect ECU connector.



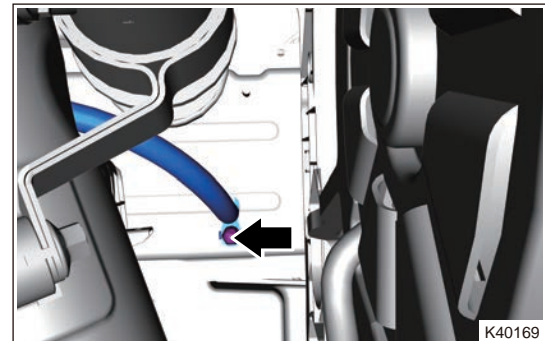
(36) Disconnect connector between engine electronic injection wire harness and engine compartment fuse and relay box.



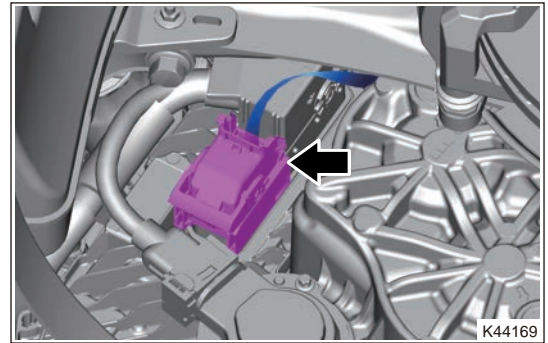
(37) Remove fixing nuts from positive battery wire harness and positive battery wire harness.



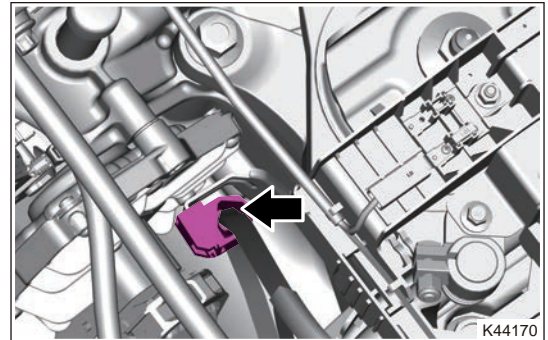
(38) Remove fixing nuts from ground wire harness and move away the ground wire.



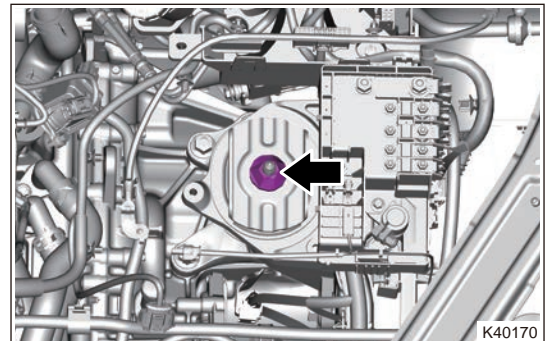
(39) Disconnect the TCU connector.



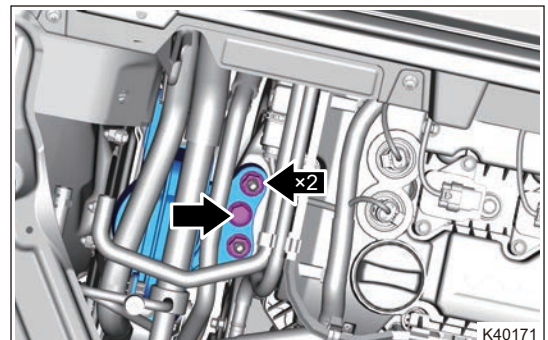
(40) Remove fixing clips from interior floor wire harness.



(41) Remove 1 fixing nut between left mounting cushion assembly.



(42) Remove 2 fixing nuts and 1 fixing bolt from right mounting cushion assembly.

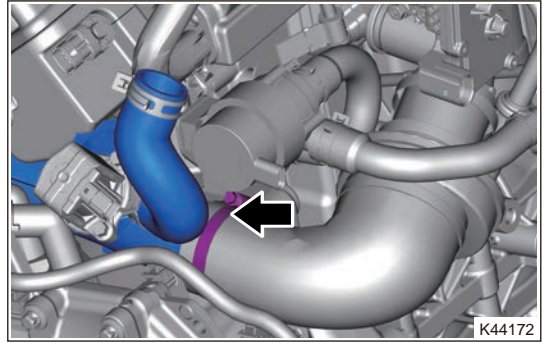


(43) Check that engine assembly is separated with external components.

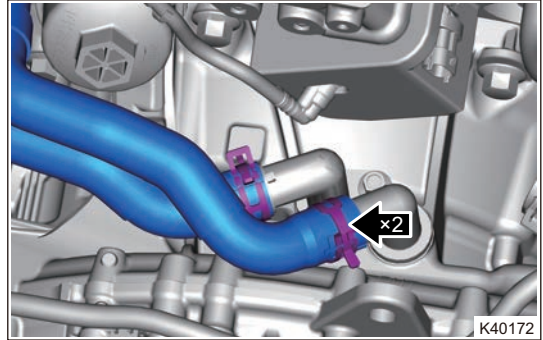
(44) Remove engine and transmission assembly.

(45) Remove engine electronic injection wire harness from engine assembly.

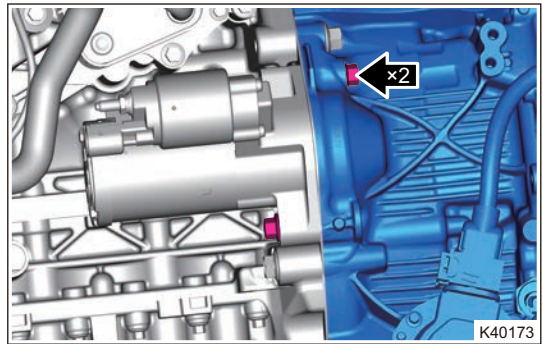
(46) Loosen worm clamp and remove the intercooler intake pipe assembly II .



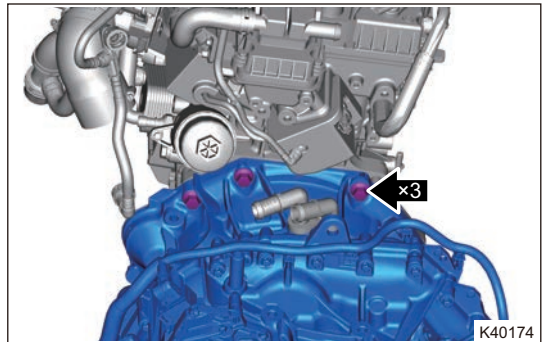
(47) Loosen 2 elastic clamps and disconnect engine inlet pipe assembly - rear connections.



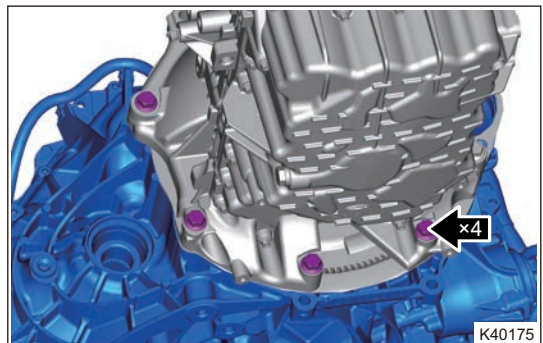
(48) Remove 2 fixing bolts and starter assembly.



(49) Remove 3 fixing bolts from upper part of transmission assembly.



(50) Remove 4 fixing bolts from lower part of transmission assembly.



- (51) Separate transmission assembly from engine assembly.
- (52) Install engine assembly to engine service platform.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the transmission assembly.
- (2) Install engine electronic injection wire harness and positive battery wire harness on the engine.
- (3) Install 2 fixing nuts and 1 fixing bolt to right mounting cushion assembly.
- (4) Install 1 fixing nut on left mounting cushion assembly.
- (5) Install fixing clips to interior floor wire harness.
- (6) Connect transmission assembly connectors.
- (7) Connect the engine ground wire harness and tighten fixing nut.
- (8) Connect the positive battery wire harness and tighten fixing nut.
- (9) Connect connector between engine electronic injection wire harness and engine compartment fuse and relay box.
- (10) Connect the ECU connector.
- (11) Connect connectors between interior floor wire harness and engine electronic injection wire harness.
- (12) Connect fuel vapor pipe III.
- (13) Connect floor oil supply pipe and engine compartment oil supply pipe.
- (14) Connect vacuum tube and install elastic clamps.
- (15) Connect heater outlet and inlet pipe and install elastic clamps.
- (16) Connect engine discharge pipe and install elastic clamps.
- (17) Connect radiator discharge pipe assembly and install elastic clamps.
- (18) Connect compressor A/C line and tighten fixing bolts.
- (19) Connect engine outlet pipe and tighten fixing bolts of bracket.
- (20) Install intercooler intake pipe assembly III
- (21) Connect engine inlet pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (22) Install front sub frame assembly.
- (23) Install the precatalytic converter assembly.
- (24) Install the transfer case assembly.
- (25) Install front left drive shaft assembly.
- (26) Install the front right drive shaft assembly.
- (27) Install the left/right side rail assembly.
- (28) Install the battery tray and battery assembly.
- (29) Install the intake hose assembly.
- (30) Install the air filter assembly.
- (31) Add transmission oil to specified position.
- (32) Add coolant to specified value.
- (33) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (34) Add refrigerant to specified value.
- (35) Install the engine trim cover assembly.
- (36) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (37) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.

ENGINE

5.1	INTAKE SYSTEM	431
1	Warning and Precaution	431
1.1	Warning.....	431
1.2	Precaution.....	431
2	System Overview	431
2.1	System Description	431
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	432
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	434
3	Component Operation Description.....	434
3.1	Intake Pressure Temperature Sensor	434
3.2	Intercooler.....	435
3.3	Intake Manifold Assembly	435
3.4	Air Filter Assembly.....	435
3.5	Electronic Throttle	435
3.6	Electronic Accelerator Pedal	436
4	Special Tool and Equipment.....	436
4.1	Special Tool.....	436
5	Fasteners Torque List	436
5.1	Torque Specifications	436
6	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	437
6.1	Problem Symptoms Table	437
7	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	437
7.1	Air Filter Element	437
7.2	Air Filter Assembly.....	439
7.3	Intake Hose Assembly.....	441
7.4	Electronic Throttle	442
7.5	Intake Manifold Assembly	446
7.6	Electronic Accelerator Pedal	449
7.7	Intercooler Assembly	450
7.8	Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly I.....	452
7.9	Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly II	453
7.10	Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly III.....	455
7.11	Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly I	456
7.12	Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly II	457
7.13	Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly III.....	458

5.1 INTAKE SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

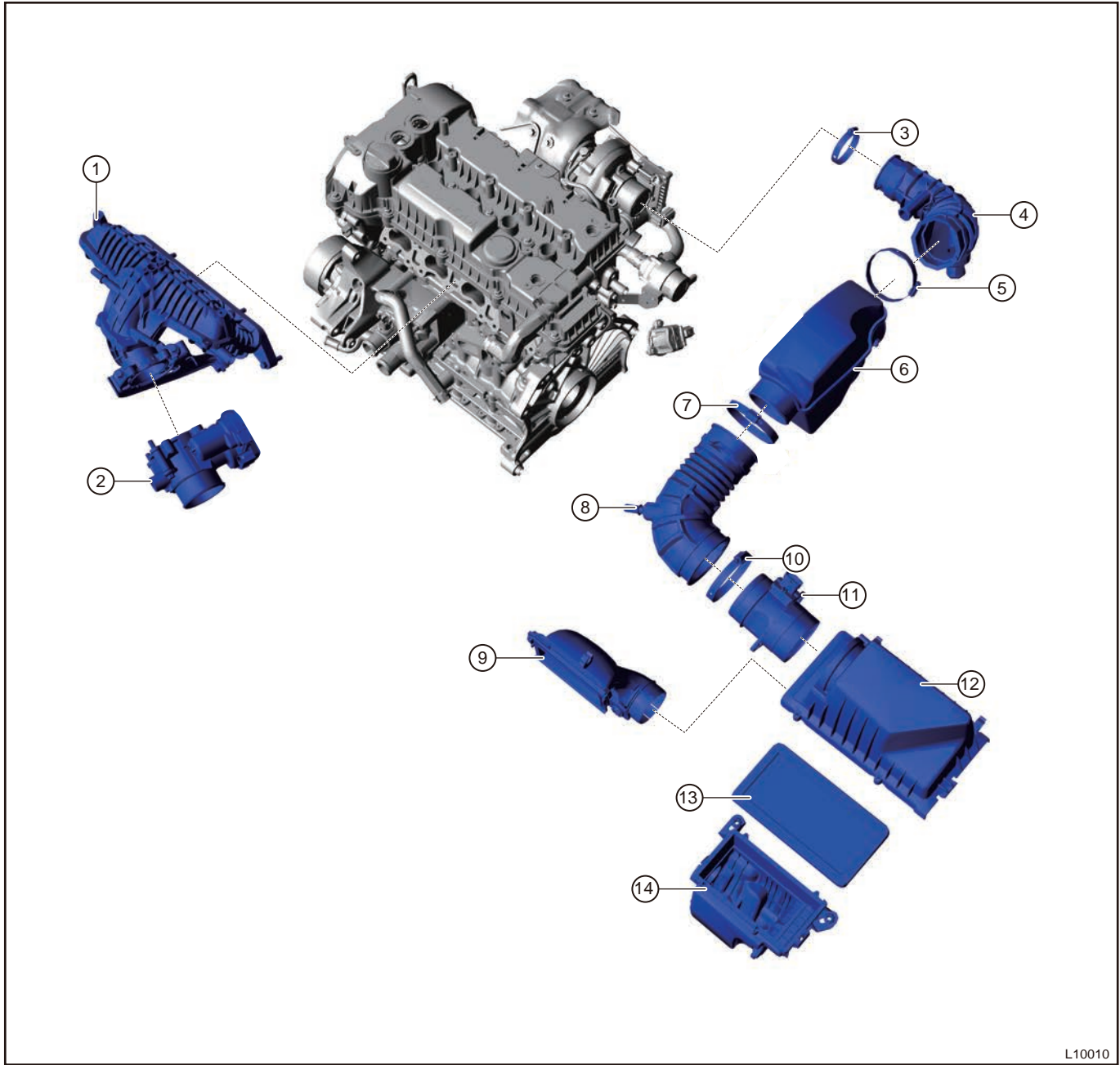
- (1) Wasted air filter element should be handled by the specialized department according to local laws and regulations. Never discard it at will.
- (2) Check for foreign matter in air filter and hose when installing. Avoid inhaling foreign matter after engine running, causing damage to the components.
- (3) After removing electronic throttle, block intake manifold intake port with suitable blocking pieces to prevent foreign matter from entering, causing damage to the components.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

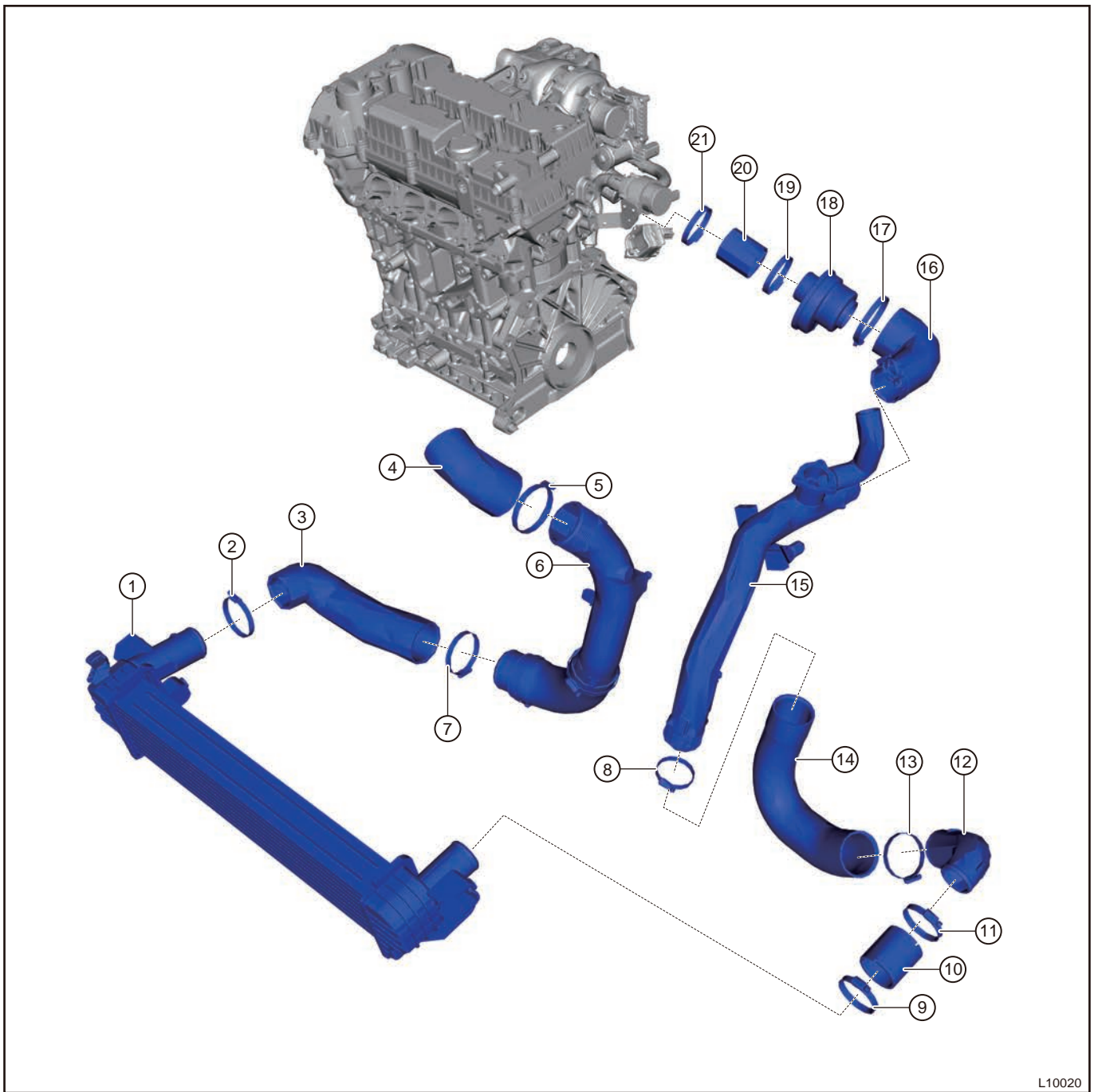
Intake system uses air filter to remove particulates and dust in the air, the air is pressurized by the turbocharger and cooled by the intercooler, then flows into the intake manifold assembly through the electronic throttle assembly, and the cooled fresh air is evenly delivered to each cylinder by the intake manifold to cooperate with the engine.

2.2 System Components Diagram



L10010

1	Intake Manifold Assembly	8	Intake Hose I
2	Electronic Throttle	9	Air Direct Pipe Assembly
3	Worm Clamp	10	Worm Clamp
4	Intake Hose III	11	Air Flow Meter
5	Worm Clamp	12	Air Filter Upper Housing
6	Intake Hose II	13	Air Filter Element Assembly
7	Worm Clamp	14	Air Filter Lower Housing

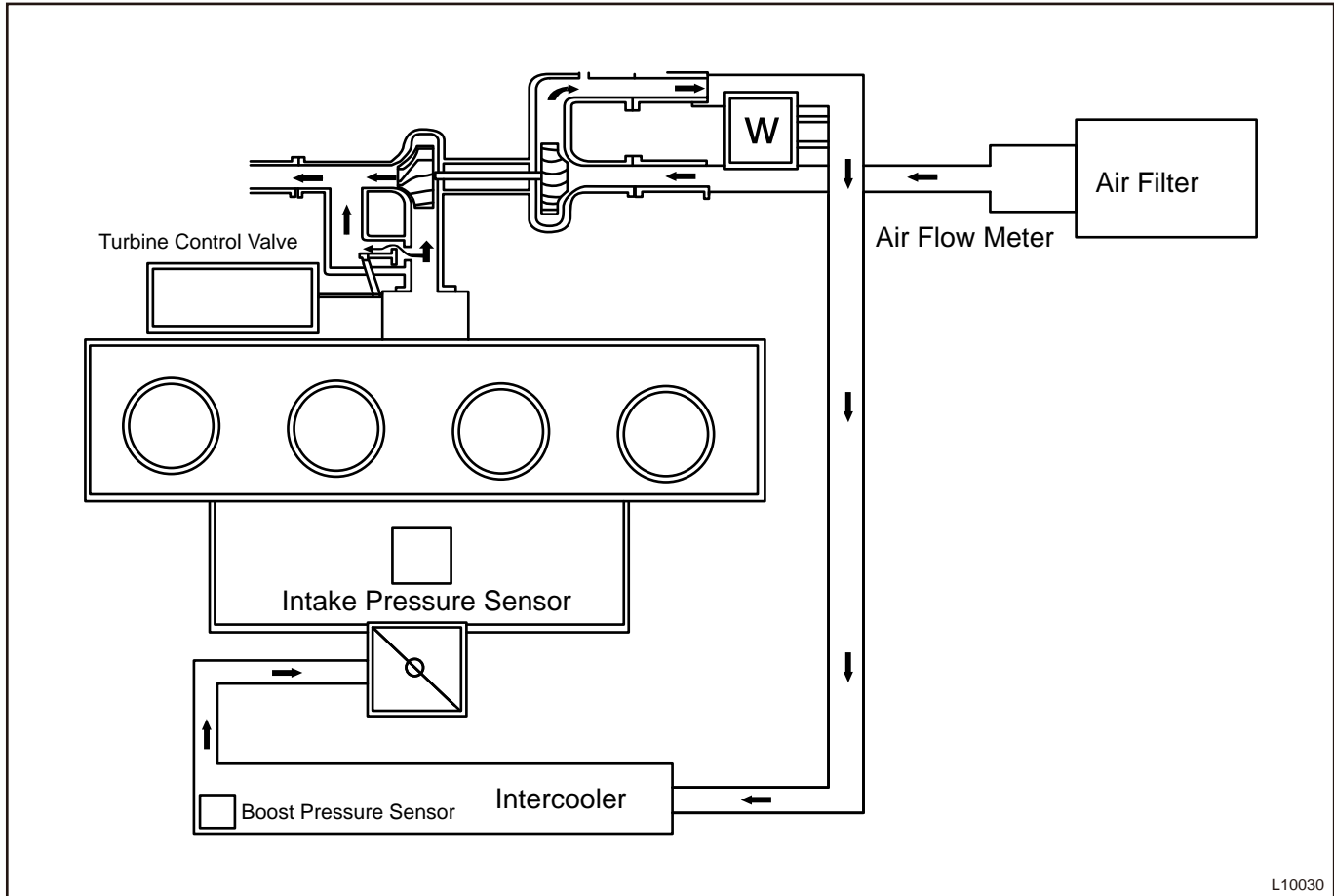


L10020

1	Intercooler Assembly	12	Intercooler Intake Pipe
2	Worm Clamp	13	Worm Clamp
3	Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly I	14	Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly III
4	Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly III	15	Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly II
5	Worm Clamp	16	Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly I
6	Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly II	17	Worm Clamp
7	Worm Clamp	18	Intercooler Intake Pipe Muffler
8	Worm Clamp	19	Worm Clamp

9	Worm Clamp	20	Muffler Hose
10	Intercooler Connecting Pipe	21	Worm Clamp
11	Worm Clamp		

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



L10030

3 Component Operation Description

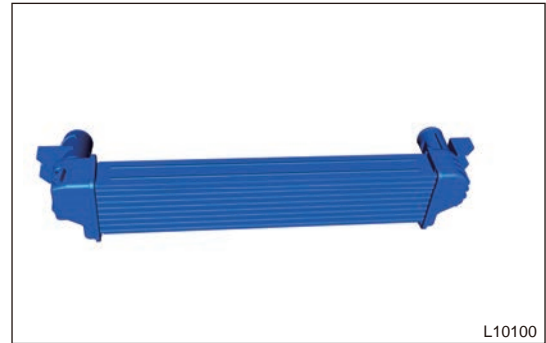
3.1 Intake Pressure Temperature Sensor

Intake pressure sensor: monitor absolute pressure changes of the intake manifold, send reference signal to ECU for calculating the duration of fuel injection.

Intake temperature sensor: monitor intake temperature, provide it to ECU as the basis for calculating air density.

3.2 Intercooler

Its function is to reduce the high temperature air temperature after supercharging, so as to reduce the heat load of engine, increase the intake air volume, and then increase the engine power; For the engine, intercooler is an important component of supercharging system.



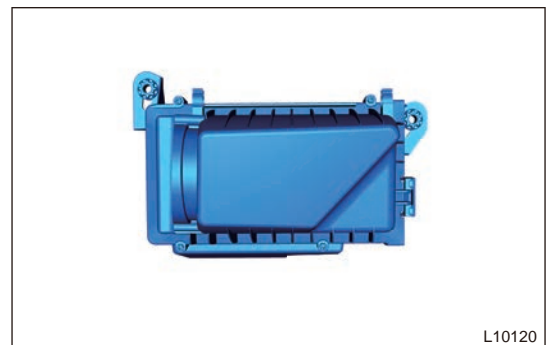
3.3 Intake Manifold Assembly

Distribute the fresh air cooled by intercooler to each cylinder.



3.4 Air Filter Assembly

The air filter is mainly used to remove particulate impurities in the air.



3.5 Electronic Throttle

It consist of four parts: drive module, train module, executive module and feedback module, and all components are integrated into the same throttle valve housing. Throttle feedback module uses two redundant structures. When malfunction occurs, throttle valve plate will stop at the limp home position (above mechanical bottom dead center) determined by mechanical way. Electronic throttle performs control only by corresponding electronic control unit or electronic test circuit. In principle, it is necessary to ensure that the throttle valve plate does not operate dynamically to the mechanical dead center.



3.6 Electronic Accelerator Pedal

There are two identical potentiometer type sensors in the electronic accelerator pedal, which provide the driving demand signal of driver to the ECU. This process is exactly the same as the current mechanical pedal in operation to adapt to the driver's driving habits for many years. Two identical sensors provide accelerator signals to ECU respectively, thus ensuring the safety and reliability of this system.



4 Special Tool and Equipment

4.1 Special Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Diagnostic Tester	<p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

5 Fasteners Torque List

5.1 Torque Specifications

Description	Torque (N·m)
Coupling Screw Between Air Filter Upper Housing and Lower Housing	1.3 ± 0.2
Air Filter Assembly Fixing Bolt	7 ± 1
Air Direct Pipe Assembly Fixing Bolt	7 ± 1
Intake Hose Fixing Clamp	3.5 ± 0.5
Intercooler Intake Pipe Fixing Clamp	5 ± 1
Intercooler Outlet Pipe Fixing Clamp	5 ± 1
Coupling Bolt Between Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly II and Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly II	5 ± 1
Fixing Bolt Between Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly II and Transmission	9 ± 1.5

6 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

6.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Intake system

Symptom	Possible Cause
Engine idles roughly	Electronic throttle assembly (dirty)
	Intake manifold assembly (broken, leaked)
	Activated charcoal canister solenoid valve (remains on)
	Intake pressure sensor
	Electronic throttle assembly gasket (damaged)
	Fuel rail injector assembly (installed incorrectly)

7 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

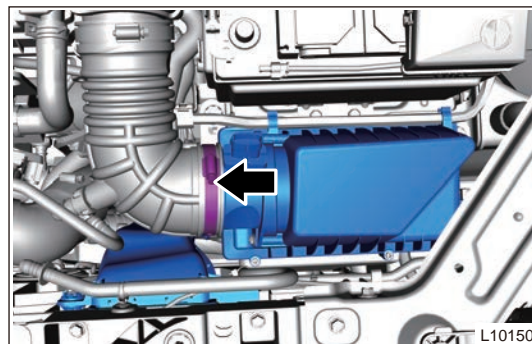
7.1 Air Filter Element

■ Removal

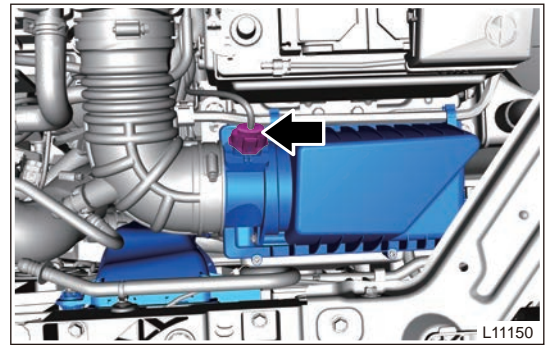
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing air filter element.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing air filter element. Be careful not to operate roughly.

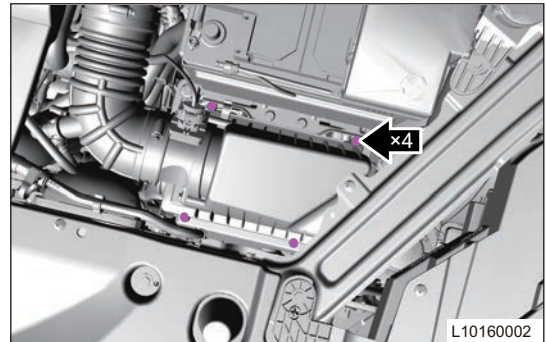
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the negative battery cable.
- (4) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect intake hose.



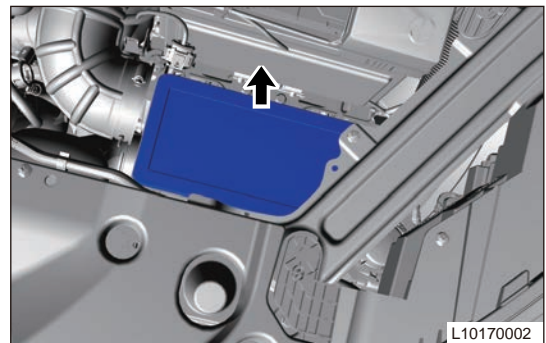
- (5) Disconnect the air flow meter connector.



- (6) Remove 4 coupling screws between air filter upper housing and lower housing, and remove upper housing carefully.



- (7) Remove the air filter element in the direction of arrow.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check if air filter is dirty, if it is dirty severely, it is required to replace new air filter.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Clean the air filter upper housing and lower housing.
- Wasted air filter element should be handled by the specialized department according to local laws and regulations. Never discard it at will.

- (1) Install 4 fixing screws between air filter upper housing and lower housing.

Torque: 1.3 ± 0.2 N·m

- (2) Connect intake hose, and tighten worm clamp.

Torque: 3 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Connect the air flow meter connector.

- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

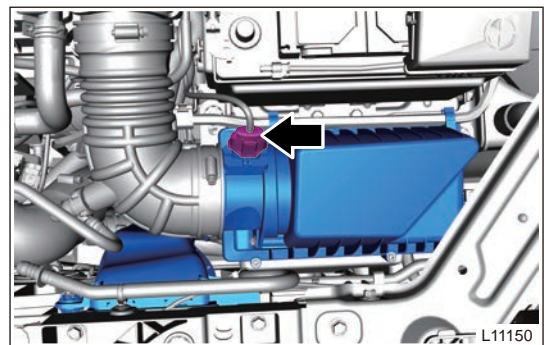
7.2 Air Filter Assembly

■ Removal

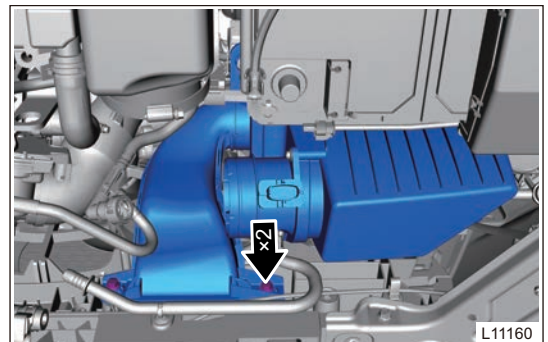
⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing air filter assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing air filter assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

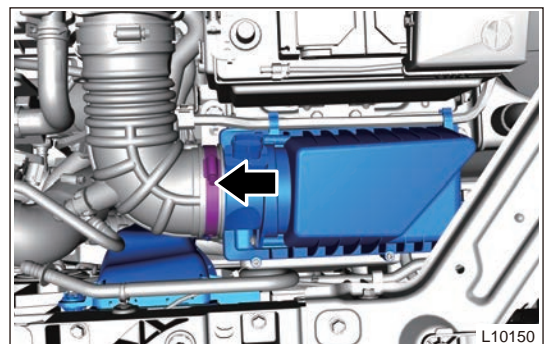
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Disconnect the air flow meter connector.



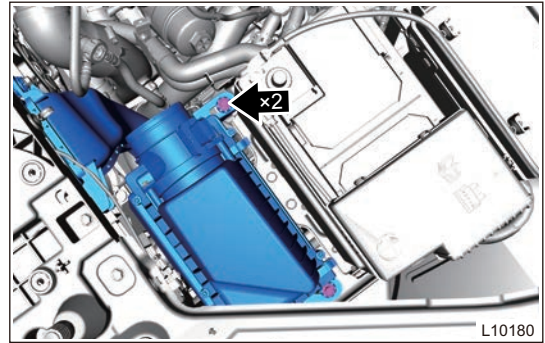
- (5) Remove 2 fixing bolts from air direct pipe assembly.



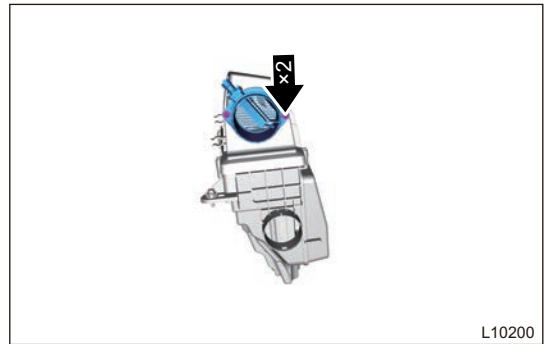
- (6) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect intake hose.



- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts from air filter assembly.



- (8) Disconnect the positive battery wire harness from air filter with air direct pipe assembly and remove air filter with air direct pipe assembly.
- (9) Remove 2 fixing screws between air flow meter and air filter assembly.



- (10) Separate air direct pipe and air filter assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Check for foreign matter in air filter and hose when installing. Avoid inhaling foreign matter after engine running, causing damage to the components.**

- (1) Install air flow meter to air filter assembly.
- (2) Insert air direct pipe into air filter assembly, and install 2 fixing bolts to air filter assembly.
Torque: $7 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Connect intake hose, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: $3 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Connect the air flow meter connector.
- (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

7.3 Intake Hose Assembly

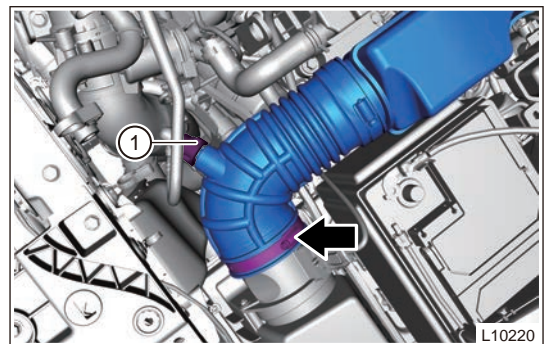
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

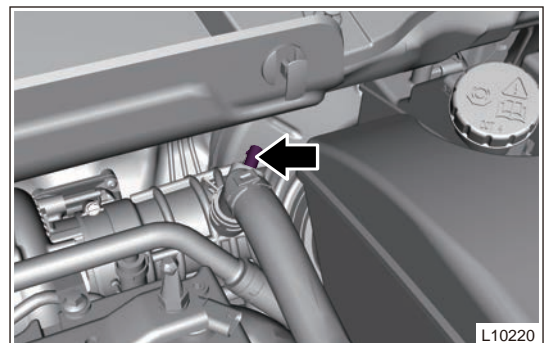
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intake hose assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing intake hose assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched during removal of intake hose assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the battery assembly.

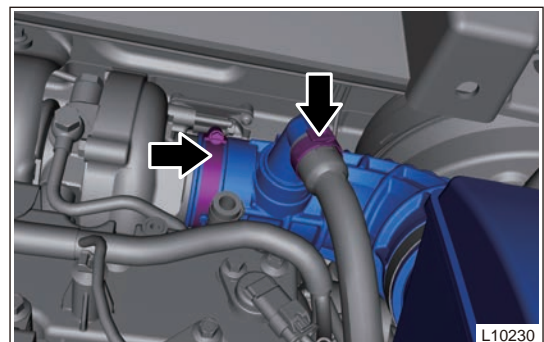
- (5) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between air flow meter and intake hose assembly.
- (6) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe (1) and intake hose assembly.



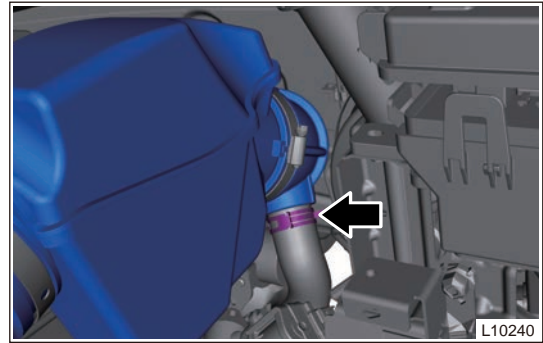
- (7) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between air flow meter and intake hose assembly.
- (8) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe (1) and intake hose assembly.



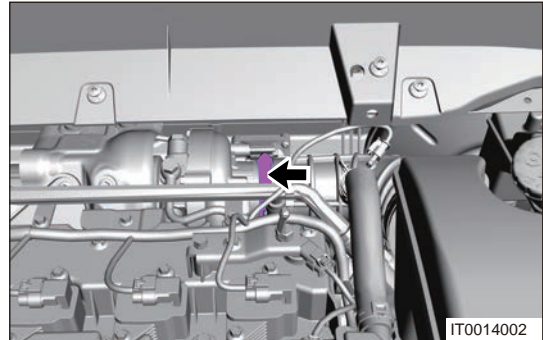
- (9) Loosen clamp and disconnect the connection between hose and intake hose.
- (10) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intake hose assembly and turbocharger .



- (11) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler inlet hose and inlet hose assembly.



- (12) Loosen clamp (arrow) and disconnect the connection between intake hose III and turbocharger .



- (13) Remove the intake hose assembly.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check intake hose assembly for damage and blockage.

■ Installation

- (1) Connect intercooler intake pipe hose.
- (2) Connect intake hose assembly, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: $4 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Connect the charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe.
- (4) Connect the air flow meter connector.
- (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

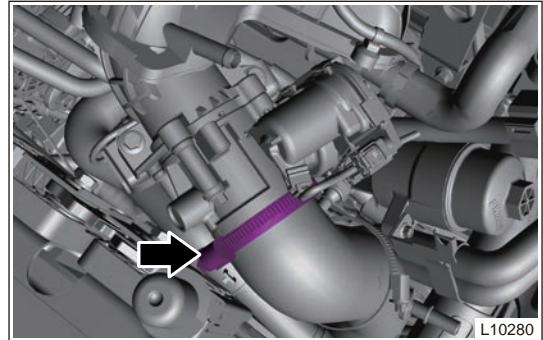
7.4 Electronic Throttle

■ Removal

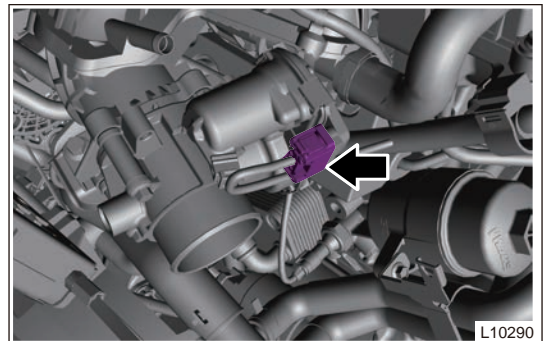
⚠ Warning

- **Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing electronic throttle.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing electronic throttle. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

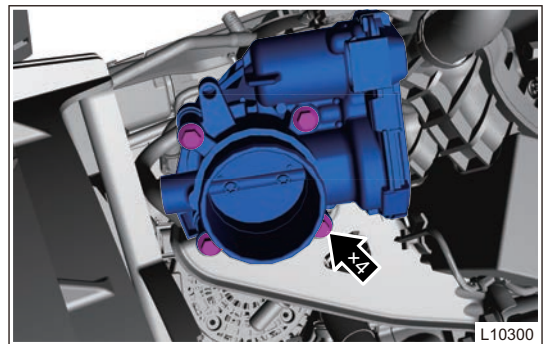
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between electronic throttle and intercooler outlet pipe II .



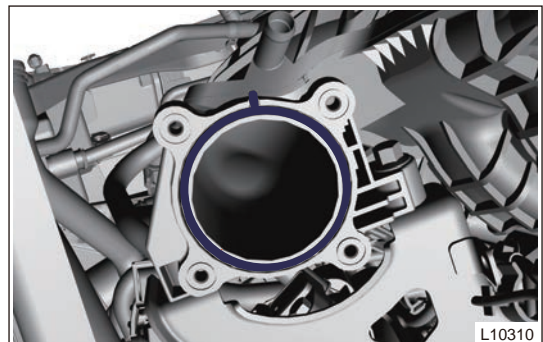
- (5) Disconnect the electronic throttle connector.



- (6) Remove 4 fixing bolts from electronic throttle.



- (7) Remove the electronic throttle assembly.
- (8) Remove electronic throttle gasket from intake manifold.



⚠ Caution

- **After removing electronic throttle, block intake manifold intake port with suitable blocking pieces to prevent foreign matter from entering, causing damage to the components.**

■ Throttle Cleaning

(1) Cleaning Tool

- Thin stick: Used to support throttle valve plate for cleaning the carbon deposited on contact wall between valve plate and throttle. Please use plastic, wooden or bamboo thin stick. Do not use metal thin stick to avoid scratching or deforming the valve plate.
- Clean cloth or paper towel.

■ Cleaning Process

- (1) Remove electronic throttle assembly, and make the valve plate face upward in free condition. Avoid cleaner flowing into electronic element through valve plate shaft, resulting in functional failure.
- (2) Apply appropriate amount of cleaner to the inner wall of throttle valve body, and wipe off the carbon with clean cloth.
- (3) Support the throttle valve plate with a thin stick, and clean the carbon on valve plate and throttle valve body inner wall.



- (4) Turn over the throttle 90°, and clean with the same procedures as above. Repeat several times until it is clean.
- (5) Push the valve plate by hand, and check if it rotates smoothly. If it is stuck, clean again according to the cleaning procedures.
- (6) After cleaning, wipe off the cleaner in throttle valve body with absorbent paper.

⚠ Warning

- **Cleaner is a kind of flammable and corrosive fluid. Follow safety cautions to prevent accidents, and avoid skin contacting with cleaner.**
- **Pay attention to that the amount of cleaner should not be too much, so as to overflows into sensor and motor, resulting in functional failure.**

■ Check electronic throttle

- (1) Judgment methods for specific mechanical damage
 - Valve plate should be in default position with power off and can rotate smoothly when flipping it by hand. If catching occurs, it indicates that internal components may be damaged.
- (2) Perform the simple measurement for throttle internal sensor in following steps:

Step	Operation	Test Value	Test Result	Subsequent Step
1	Apply 5V direct current to terminal 3 (+) and 2 (-), close valve plate to full close manually, and measure voltages between terminals 5 and 2, and between terminals 6 and 2 with voltage band of multimeter. Voltage between terminals 6 and 2 is within 0.25 V and 0.75 V, voltage between terminals 5 and 2 is within 4.25 V and 4.75 V, and the sum of both voltages is about 5 V.	/	Yes	Next
		/	No	Replace throttle body
2	Apply 5V direct current to terminal 3 (+) and 2 (-), turn valve plate to full open manually, and measure voltages between terminals 5 and 2, and between terminals 6 and 2 with voltage band of multimeter. Voltage between terminals 6 and 2 is within 4.4V and 4.9V, voltage between terminals 5 and 2 is within 0.1V and 0.6V, and the sum of both voltages is about 5 V.	/	Yes	Next
		/	No	Replace throttle body
3	Turn the digital multimeter to ohm band, directly measure resistance of copper windings on DC motor between terminals 1 and 4. It is usually between 1.5 and 3.0 Ω at normal temperature, this value does not change with the valve plate opening.	/	Yes	Check wire harness or diagnostic help
		/	No	Replace throttle body

■ Electronic Throttle Learning Method

- (1) Perform throttle body self-learning once after installing electronic throttle body (turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and then to OFF after waiting for 30 seconds, and then perform ignition normally). Start vehicle and observe if it operates normally after self-learning is finished.

■ Installation

Caution

- Clean fitting surface of electronic throttle.
- Check if O-ring in the manifold fitting surface groove is in good condition has no damage.
- Perform electronic throttle self-learning procedures after installation.
- After self-learning is completed, start the vehicle and check for proper operation.

- (1) Install 4 fixing bolts to electronic throttle. Tighten in diagonally installation order.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (2) Connect intercooler outlet pipe, and tighten worm clamp.

Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Connect electronic throttle assembly connector.
- (4) Install the engine trim cover.
- (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

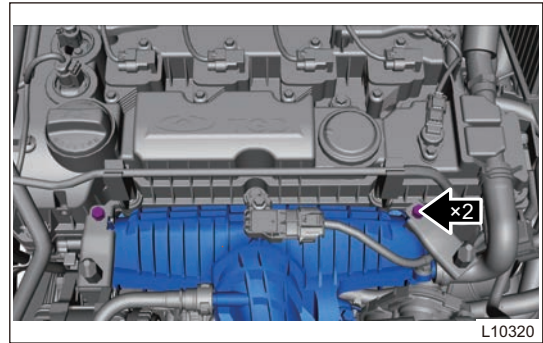
7.5 Intake Manifold Assembly

■ Removal

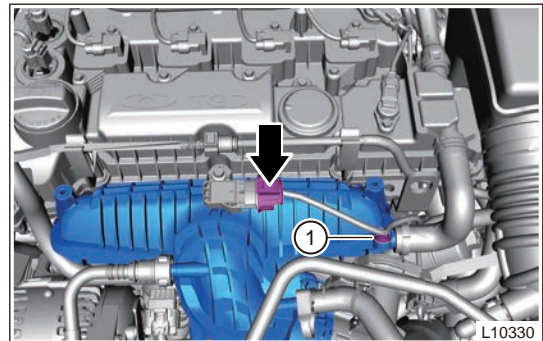
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intake manifold assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing intake manifold assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

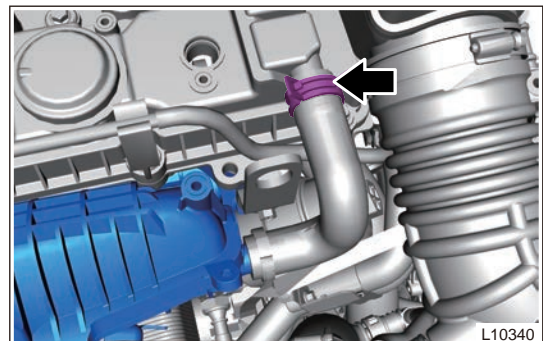
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (6) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts and engine hood cover bracket.



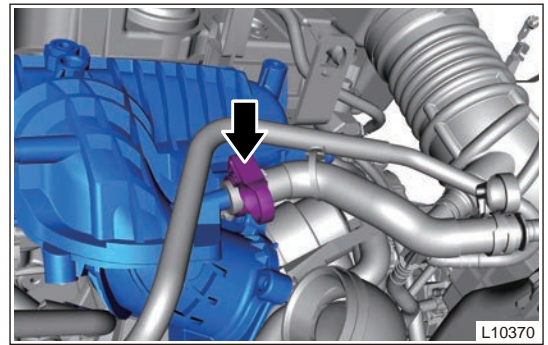
- (8) Disconnect the intake pressure sensor connector and disengage wire harness fixing clip (1).



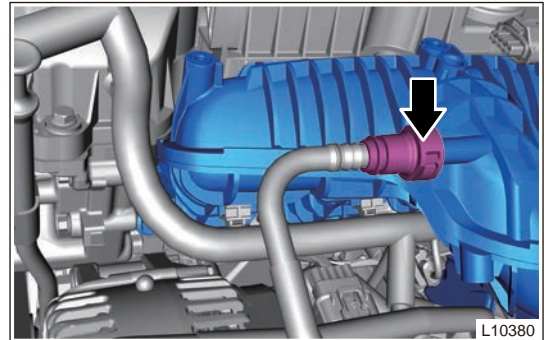
- (9) Remove the electronic throttle assembly.
- (10) Loosen the elastic clamp and disconnect connection between hose and cylinder head cover.



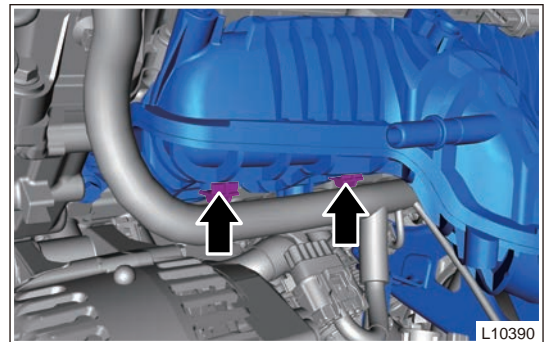
- (11) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between vacuum pipe and intake manifold assembly.



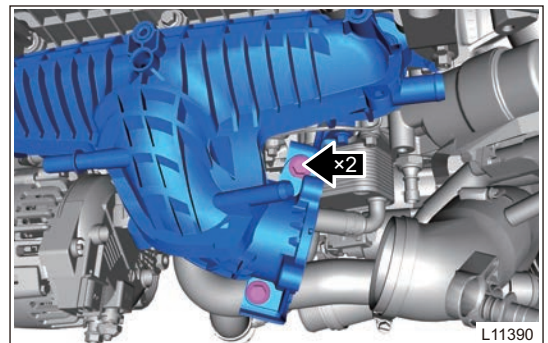
- (12) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe and intake manifold assembly.



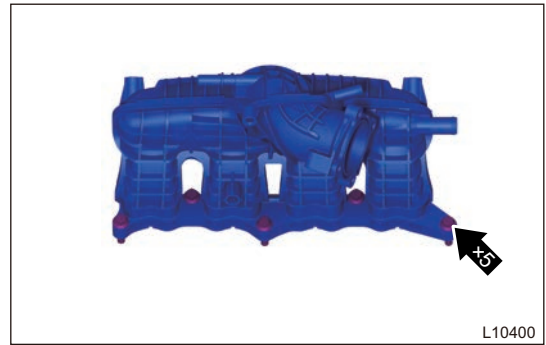
- (13) Disconnect fixing clip from engine electronic injection wire harness.



- (14) Remove 2 fixing bolts from intake manifold assembly and mounting bracket.



(15) Remove 5 fixing bolts from intake manifold assembly.



(16) Remove the intake manifold assembly.

■ **Inspection**

- (1) Clean and check contact surface between intake manifold assembly and cylinder head. If warpage on surface is greater than 0.8 mm, replace intake manifold assembly.
- (2) Check the appearance of intake manifold assembly for damage and cracks.
- (3) Check the intake manifold gasket, and replace if it is deteriorated or damaged.

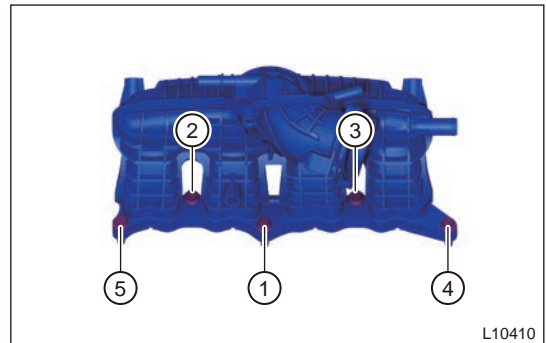
■ **Installation**

⚠ Caution

- **Before assembly, visually check that intake manifold surface is free of collision, and the sealing rings on the flange surface of the intake manifold are free of mistakes, omissions, damages, lodging etc.**

- (1) Install and tighten 5 fixing bolts on intake manifold assembly in order shown in illustration.

Torque: 20 + 5 N·m



- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts on intake manifold bracket.

Torque: 20 + 5 N·m

- (3) Install the engine electronic injection wire harness fixing clip.
- (4) Connect the charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe.
- (5) Connect the vacuum tube.
- (6) Connect the hose and cylinder head cover.
- (7) Install intake pressure sensor.
- (8) Connect the intake pressure sensor connector.
- (9) Install 2 fixing bolts to engine hood cover bracket.

Torque: 9 ± 1.5 N·m

7.6 Electronic Accelerator Pedal

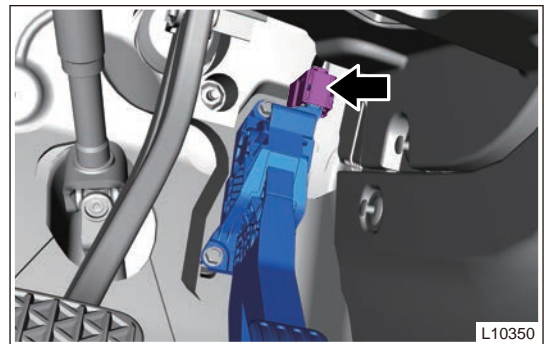
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

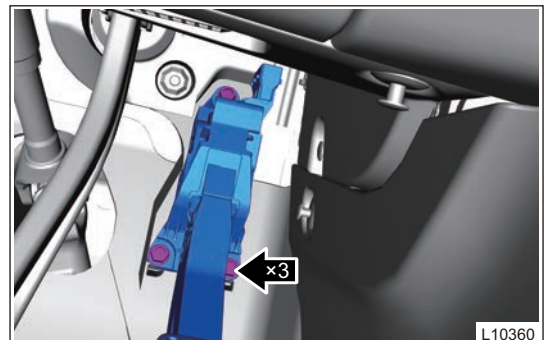
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing electronic accelerator pedal.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing electronic accelerator pedal. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior from being scratched during removal and installation.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

- (3) Disconnect the electronic accelerator pedal connector.



- (4) Remove of 3 fixing bolts from electronic accelerator pedal.



- (5) Remove the electronic accelerator pedal.

■ Inspection

- (1) Press the electronic accelerator pedal by hand, If it is stuck, it indicates that internal components may be damaged.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 3 fixing bolts on electronic accelerator pedal.
Torque: 3.5 ± 0.5 N·m
- (2) Connect the electronic accelerator pedal connector.

7.7 Intercooler Assembly

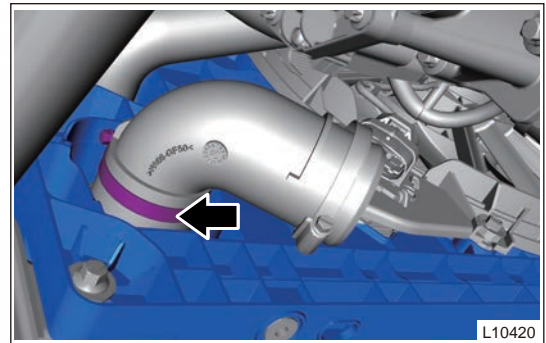
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

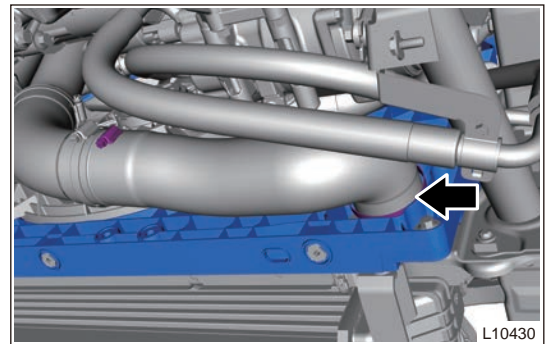
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intercooler assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the intercooler assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Remove the air deflector assembly.

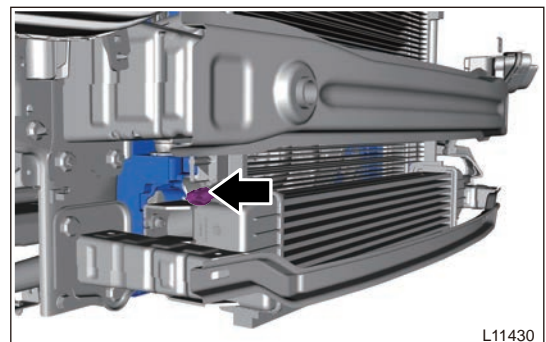
- (6) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler intake pipe and intercooler.



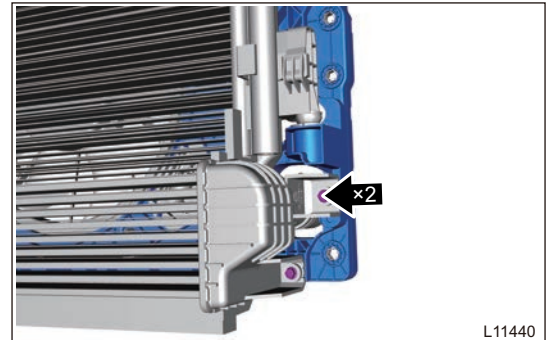
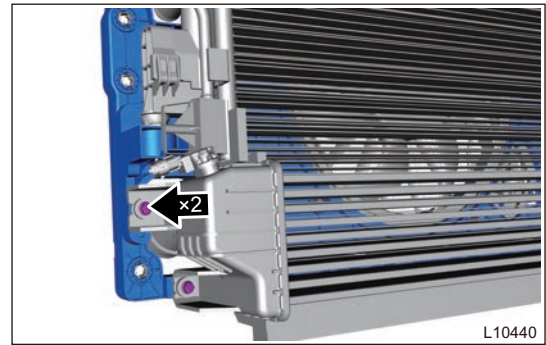
- (7) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler outlet pipe and intercooler.



- (8) Disconnect the boost pressure sensor connector.



(9) Remove 4 fixing bolts from intercooler assembly.



(10) Carefully remove the intercooler assembly.

■ Cleaning

- (1) Exterior cleaning: Use a water gun with a low pressure to spray water from top to bottom and from left to right at an angle perpendicular to the intercooler plane. Never flush the intercooler at an angle, it will damage the intercooler.
- (2) Interior cleaning: Fill the intercooler with water solution containing 2% soda ash at 80 °C. After waiting for half an hour, check for leaks. Replace intercooler as necessary. If not, shake it back and forth several times, and then pour out the sewage. Then fill with water solution containing 2% soda ash again until it is washed out. Increase water temperature to 90 °C properly at the last washing. Wash out with same method and water solution.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts on intercooler assembly.
- (2) Connect intercooler intake pipe, and tighten worm clamp after aligned and connected.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (3) Connect intercooler outlet pipe 1, and tighten worm clamp after aligned and connected.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

⚠ Caution

- The connection clearing between rubber pipe and plastic should not exceed 3 mm.

- (4) Install air deflector assembly.
- (5) Install front bumper assembly.
- (6) Install front compartment lower protector assembly.

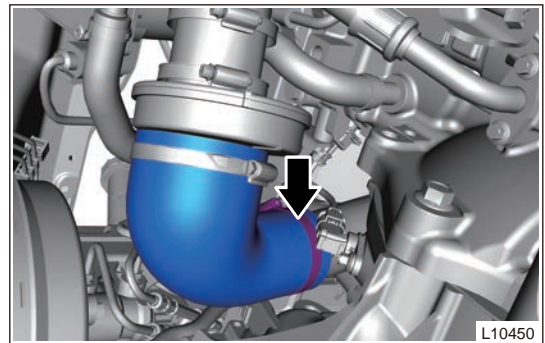
7.8 Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly I

■ Removal

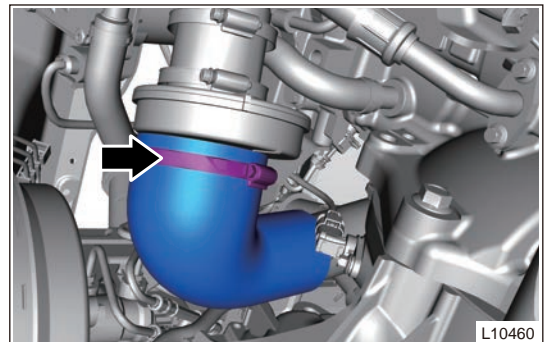
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intercooler intake pipe assembly I .**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the intercooler intake pipe assembly I . Be careful not to operate roughly.**

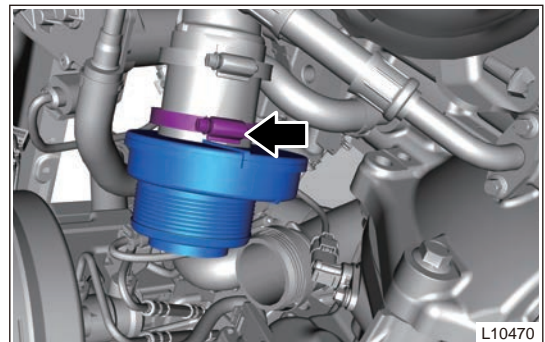
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (4) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (5) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler intake pipe assembly II and intercooler intake pipe assembly I.



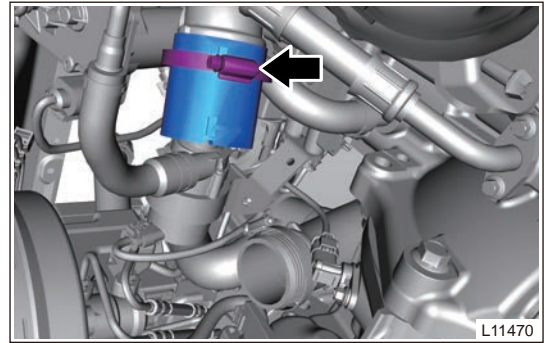
- (6) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler intake pipe assembly I and muffler, and remove intercooler intake pipe assembly I .



- (7) Loosen worm clamp, disconnect the connection between muffler and muffler hose, and remove muffler.



- (8) Loosen worm clamp, disconnect the connection between muffler hose, and remove muffler hose.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check the appearance of intercooler intake pipe assembly I for damage.
- (2) Check if the inner of intercooler intake pipe assembly I is dirty.

■ Installation

- (1) Connect muffler hose, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (2) Install muffler hose, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (3) Connect intercooler intake pipe assembly I, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (5) Install the engine trim cover.

7.9 Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly II

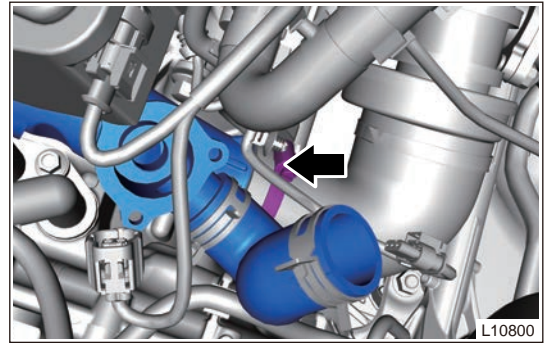
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

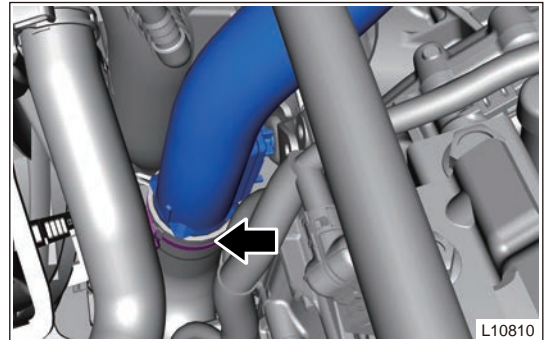
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intercooler intake pipe assembly II.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the intercooler intake pipe assembly II. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Remove the battery assembly.
- (4) Remove the battery tray assembly.
- (5) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (6) Remove the air filter assembly.

- (7) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler intake pipe assembly II and intercooler intake pipe assembly I.

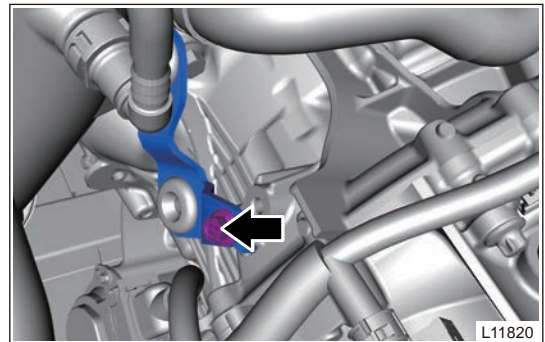


- (8) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler intake pipe assembly II and intercooler intake pipe assembly III.



- (9) Remove relief solenoid valve, and remove the intercooler intake pipe assembly II from bracket.

- (10) Remove 1 fixing bolt from intercooler intake pipe mounting bracket and remove intercooler intake pipe mounting bracket.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check the appearance of intercooler intake pipe II assembly for damage.
- (2) Check if the inner of intercooler intake pipe II assembly is dirty.

■ Installation

- (1) Install intercooler intake pipe bracket, tighten fixing bolt.
Torque: 20 ± 2 N·m
- (2) Install the intercooler intake pipe assembly II into proper position.
- (3) Connect intercooler intake pipe assembly I, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (4) Connect intercooler intake pipe assembly III , and tighten worm clamp.

Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (5) Install the battery tray assembly.
- (6) Install the battery assembly.
- (7) Install the intake hose assembly.
- (8) Install the air filter assembly.
- (9) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

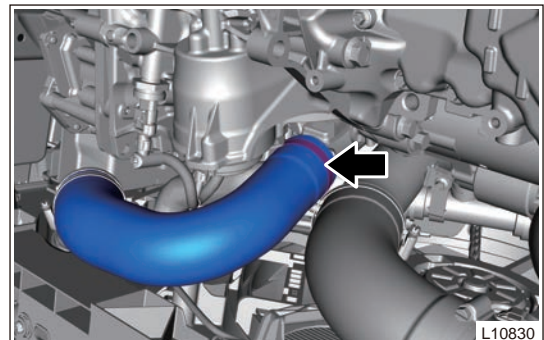
7.10 Intercooler Intake Pipe Assembly III

■ Removal

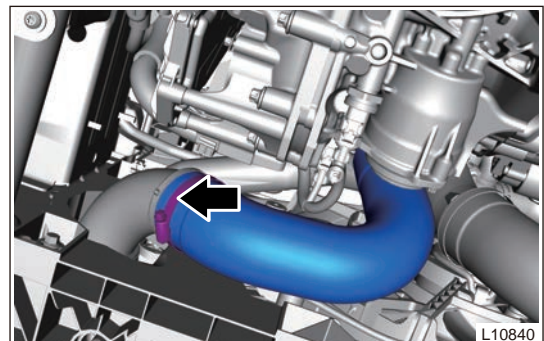
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intercooler intake pipe assembly III .**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the intercooler intake pipe assembly III . Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (3) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler intake pipe II and intercooler intake pipe III .



- (4) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler intake pipe assembly III and intercooler intake pipe.



- (5) Remove the intercooler intake pipe assembly III carefully.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the appearance of intercooler intake pipe assembly III for damage.
- (2) Check if the inner of intercooler intake pipe assembly III is dirty.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Connect intercooler intake pipe assembly III and intercooler intake pipe assembly II , and tighten worm clamp.

Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (2) Connect intercooler intake pipe and intercooler intake pipe assembly III , and tighten worm clamp.

Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.

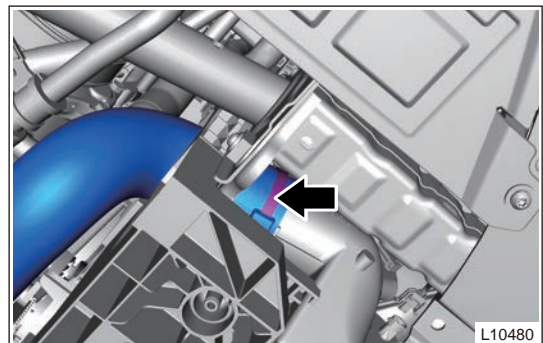
7.11 Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly I

■ **Removal**

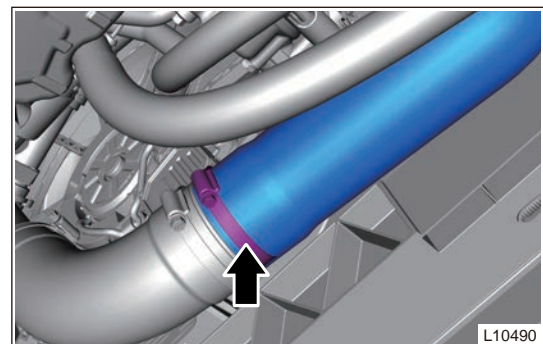
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intercooler outlet pipe assembly I .**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the intercooler outlet pipe assembly I . Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (3) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler outlet pipe assembly I and intercooler assembly.



- (4) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler outlet pipe assembly I and intercooler outlet pipe assembly II .



- (5) Remove the intercooler outlet pipe assembly I carefully.

■ **Installation**

- (1) After aligning and connecting intercooler outlet pipe assembly I and intercooler assembly, tighten worm clamp.

Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (2) After aligning and connecting intercooler outlet pipe assembly I and intercooler outlet pipe assembly II, tighten worm clamp.

Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.

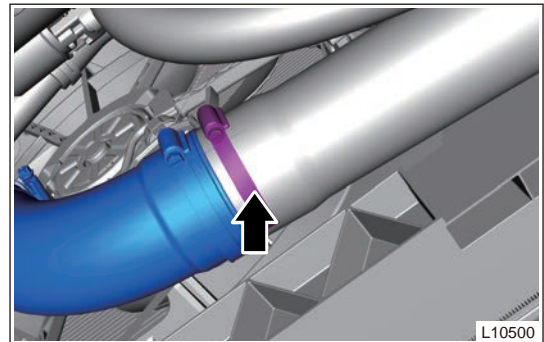
7.12 Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly II

■ Removal

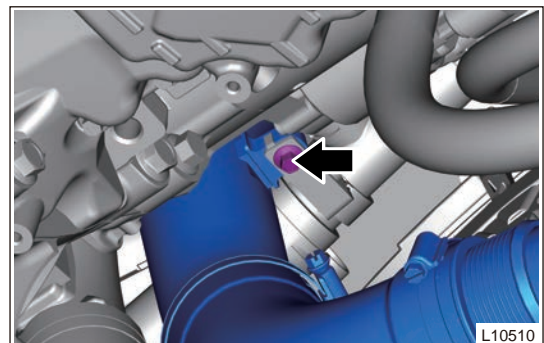
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intercooler outlet pipe assembly II.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the intercooler outlet pipe assembly II. Be careful not to operate roughly.

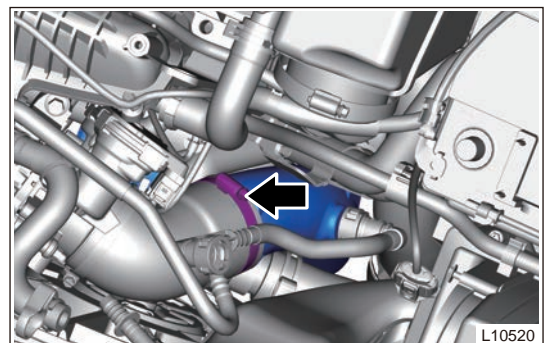
- (1) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (3) Remove the intake hose I assembly.
- (4) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler outlet pipe assembly II and intercooler outlet pipe assembly I.



- (5) Remove 1 fixing bolt from connecting bracket.



- (6) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler outlet pipe assembly II and intercooler outlet pipe assembly III.



■ Installation

- (1) Connect intercooler outlet pipe assembly II and intercooler outlet pipe assembly III, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (2) Connect intercooler outlet pipe assembly II and intercooler outlet pipe assembly I, and tighten worm clamp.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install 1 fixing bolt on connection bracket.
Torque: $20 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.

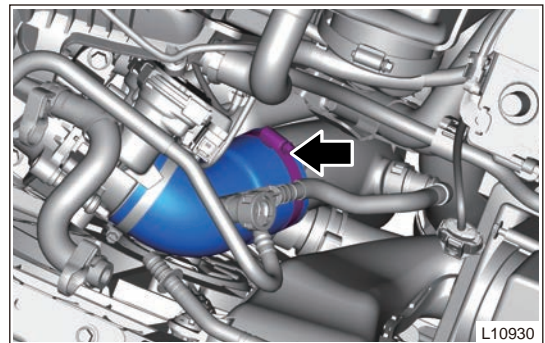
7.13 Intercooler Outlet Pipe Assembly III

■ Removal

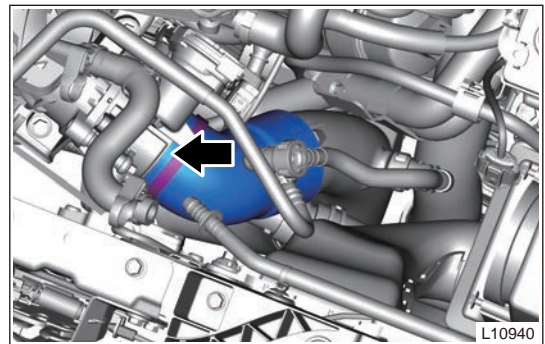
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing intercooler outlet pipe assembly III.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the intercooler outlet pipe assembly III. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (2) Remove the intake hose I assembly.
- (3) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect the connection between intercooler outlet pipe assembly II and intercooler outlet pipe assembly III.



- (4) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect connection between intercooler outlet pipe assembly III and electronic throttle.



■ Installation

- (1) Connect intercooler outlet pipe assembly III and electronic throttle, and tighten worm clamp.

Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (2) Connect intercooler outlet pipe assembly II and intercooler outlet pipe assembly III, and tighten worm clamp.

Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Install the intake hose I assembly.

- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

ENGINE

6.1	EXHASUST SYSTEM	461
1	Warning and Precaution	461
1.1	Warning.....	461
1.2	Precaution.....	461
2	System Overview	461
2.1	System Description	461
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	461
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	463
3	Component Operation Description	463
3.1	Turbocharger	463
3.2	Catalytic Converter	464
3.3	Muffler	464
4	Special Tool and Equipment	464
4.1	General Tool.....	464
5	Fasteners Torque List	464
5.1	Torque Specifications	464
6	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING	464
6.1	Problem Symptoms Table	464
7	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	465
7.1	Turbocharger Heat Insulator	465
7.2	Turbocharger Assembly.....	466
7.3	Relief Control Solenoid Valve.....	471
7.4	Precatalytic Converter Assembly	472
7.5	Main Catalytic Converter and Front Muffler.....	475
7.6	Rear Muffler Assembly	477
7.7	Center Passage Heat Insulator	478
7.8	Rear Side Exhaust Pipe Heat Insulator	479

6.1 EXHASUST SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Before repairing the exhaust system, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

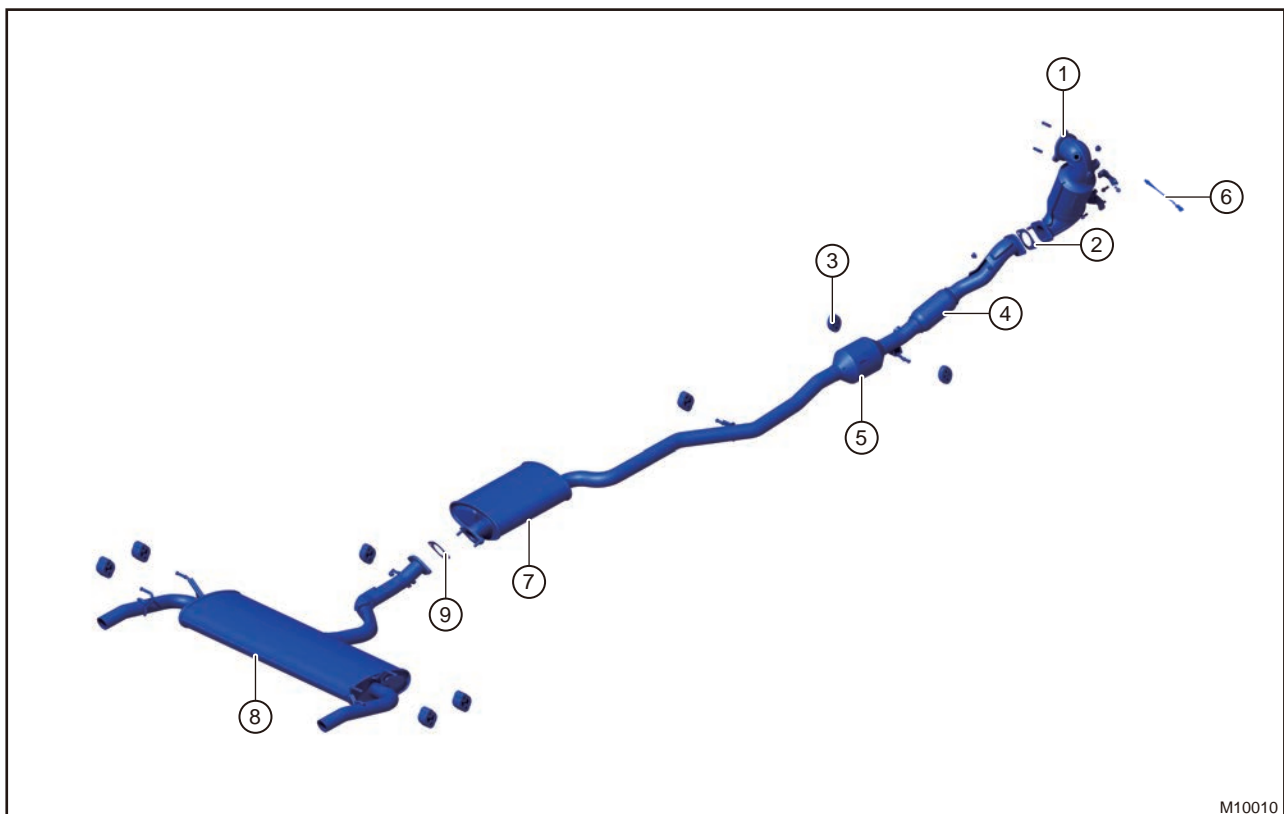
- (1) If exhaust gasket is damaged, replace it, and remove foreign matters on joints and threads.
- (2) Check exhaust gas for leakage. If gas leaks, tighten malfunctioning part to prevent leakage. Replace damaged parts as necessary.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Exhaust system controls engine exhaust, reducing vehicle emissions by precatalytic converter and main catalytic converter, and eliminating exhaust noise by muffler. When exhaust system discharges exhaust gas, oxygen sensor monitors oxygen content in exhaust gas. Engine control module adjusts air-fuel ratio of combustible gas mixture to control vehicle emissions and achieve optimal fuel economy and satisfy the emissions standard of regulation according to feedback signals of oxygen sensor and combining with other sensor signals.

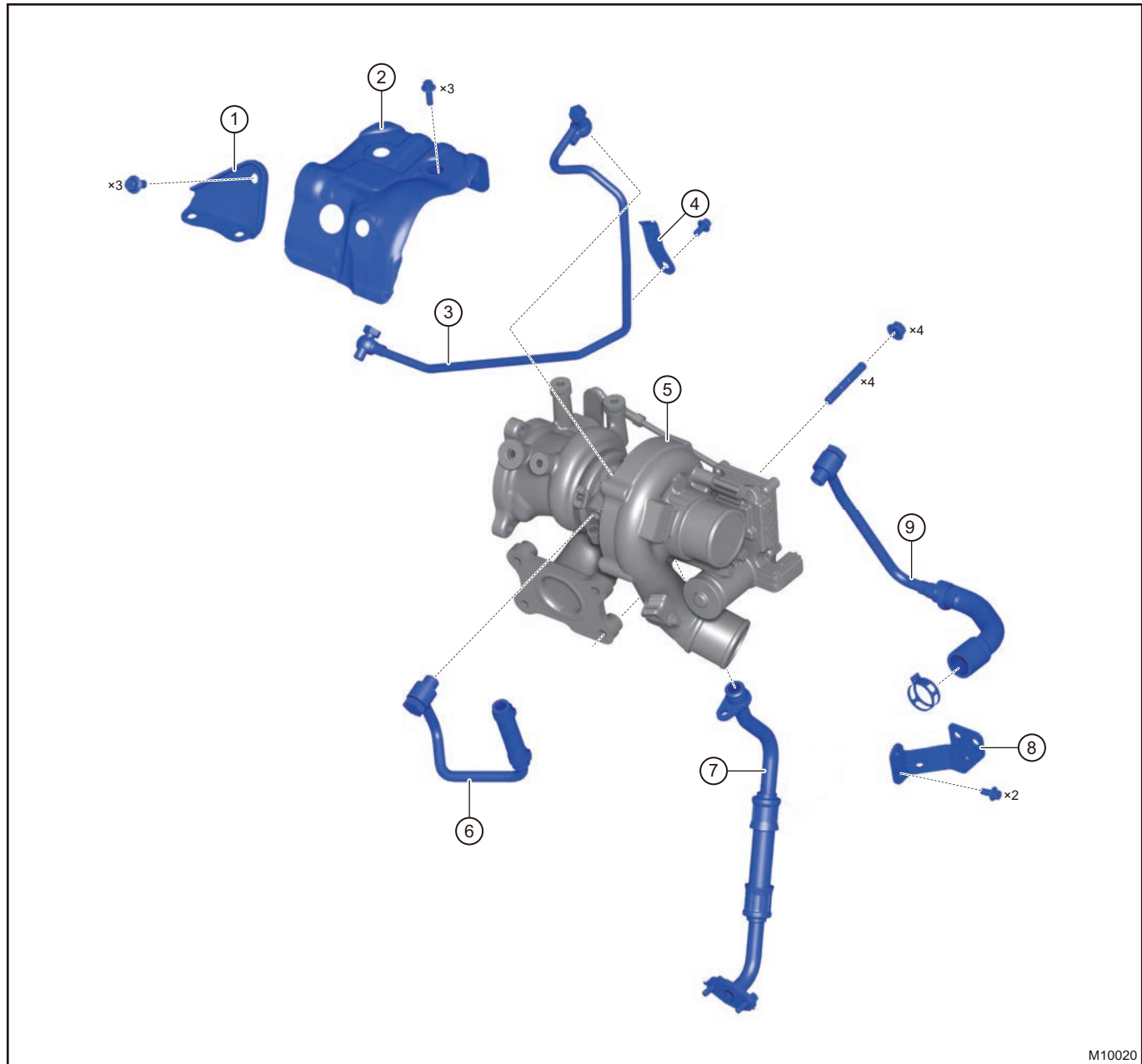
2.2 System Components Diagram



M10010

6 - ENGINE

1	Precatalytic Converter Assembly	6	Downstream Oxygen Sensor
2	Precatalytic Converter Mounting Gasket	7	Front Muffler Assembly
3	Diamond Shaped Hanger Block	8	Rear Muffler Assembly
4	Front Exhaust Pipe Assembly	9	Diamond Shaped Hanger Block
5	Main Catalytic Converter Assembly		

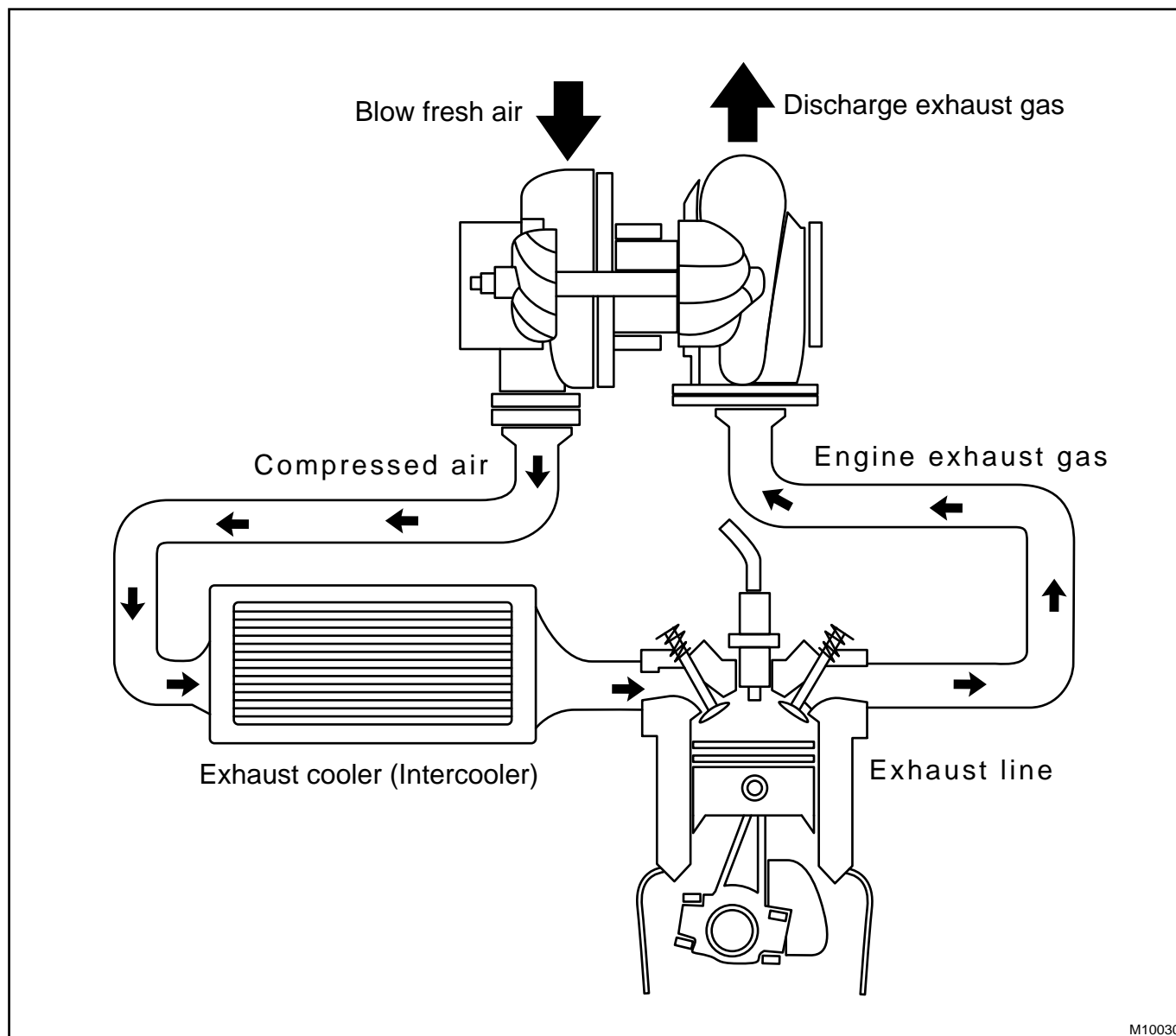


M10020

1	Turbocharger Bracket	6	Turbocharger Water Outlet Pipe Assembly
2	Turbocharger Heat Insulator	7	Turbocharger Oil Return Pipe Assembly
3	Turbocharger Oil Inlet Pipe Assembly	8	Electric Water Pump Bracket

4	Oil Inlet Pipe Bracket Assembly	9	Water Inlet Pipe Assembly
5	Turbocharger		

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



The fresh air filtered by the air filter enters the intercooler after being pressed by the turbocharger, and then enters the cylinder after being cooled by the intercooler. The exhaust gas drives turbo impeller to rotate, and then drives compressor impeller to press the inlet fresh air.

3 Component Operation Description

3.1 Turbocharger

Turbocharger uses the exhaust gas discharged from the engine to push the turbine impeller to rotate, and then drives the compressor impeller to pressurize the air filtered by the air filter and send it to the cylinder. As more air enters the cylinder, more fuel is allowed to be injected, thus generating more power from the engine. In addition, the turbocharger can also make the engine obtain power compensation when working at high altitude.

3.2 Catalytic Converter

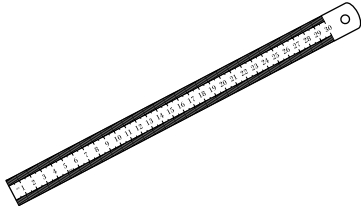
Catalytic converter is the most important external purification device fixed in vehicle exhaust system, which can convert harmful gases such as carbon monoxide, hydrocarbons and nitrogen oxides from exhaust gas into carbon dioxide, water and nitrogen by oxidation and reduction.

3.3 Muffler

Reduce the exhaust noise of the engine, and make high temperature exhaust gas can be safely and effectively discharged.

4 Special Tool and Equipment

4.1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Precision Straightedge	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00044</p>

5 Fasteners Torque List

5.1 Torque Specifications

Item	Tightening torque
Precatalytic Converter Assembly Fixing Bracket Bolt	$25 \pm 3.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Coupling Nut Between Precatalytic Converter Assembly and Turbocharger	$20 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Coupling Nut Between Precatalytic Converter Assembly and Main Catalytic Converter Assembly	$45 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Coupling Nut Between Main Catalytic Converter Assembly and Muffler Assembly	$45 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Turbocharger Heat Insulator Fixing Bolt	$8 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} + 3^\circ$
Turbocharger Heat Insulator II Fixing Bolt	$8 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} + 3^\circ$
Turbocharger Fixing Nut	$33 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Hollow Bolt	$25 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m} \pm 5$

6 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

6.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Exhaust System

Symptom	Possible Cause
Excessive exhaust noise	Exhaust pipe (loose connection)
	Turbocharger (damaged)
	Muffler assembly (damaged or leaked)
	Main catalytic converter assembly (damaged or leaked)
	Exhaust pipe gasket (damaged)
Excessive exhaust temperature	Inadequate gas mixture combustion
	Main catalytic converter assembly (blocked)
	Precatalytic converter assembly (blocked)
	Turbocharger housing (blocked)
Exhaust pipe leakage	Main catalytic converter assembly (damaged or leaked)
	Muffler assembly (damaged or leaked)
	Precatalytic converter assembly (damaged or leaked)

7 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

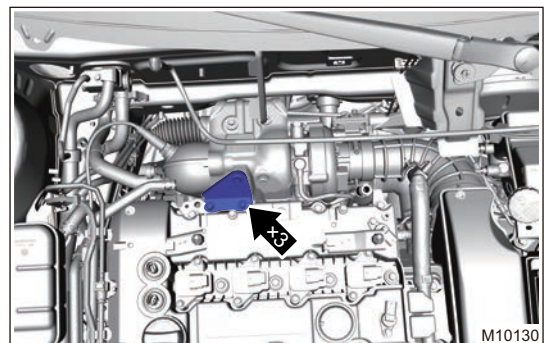
7.1 Turbocharger Heat Insulator

■ Removal

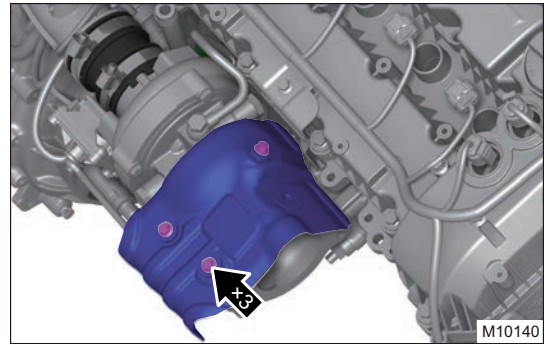
⚠ Warning

- Before removing turbocharger heat insulator assembly, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing turbocharger heat insulator assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the turbocharger heat insulator assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts and turbocharger bracket.



- (6) Remove 3 fixing bolts and turbocharger bracket.



- (7) Remove turbocharger heat insulator assembly carefully.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 3 fixing bolts on turbocharger heat insulator assembly.

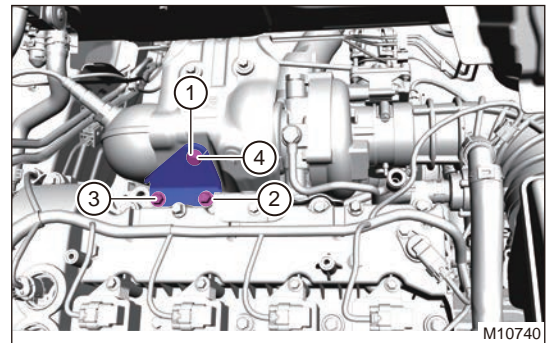
Torque: 8 N·m + 3°

- (2) Install 3 fixing bolts to turbocharger bracket.

Torque: 30 ± 5 N·m (Pre-tightening torque: 6 ± 2 N·m)

Hint:

- Pre-tighten the bolts in the order of 1, 2, and 3 shown in illustration, and then tighten them to specified torque the order of 1, 2, 3 and 4.
- The high temperature bolt at position 1 must be tightened first, and then tighten the bolts at positions 2 and 3, 4 is the retightening of the high temperature bolt.



- (3) Install the engine trim cover.
- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

7.2 Turbocharger Assembly

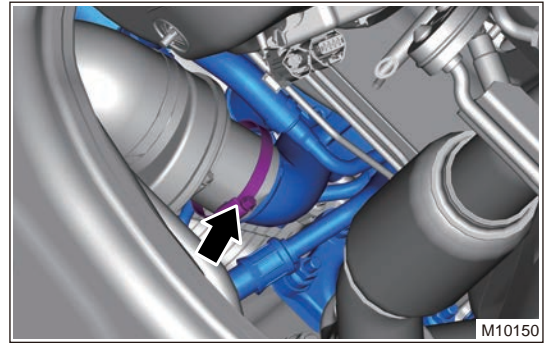
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

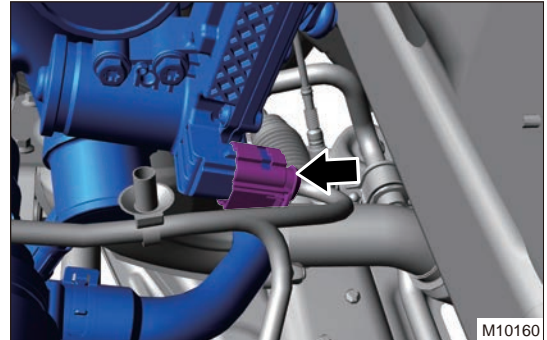
- **Before removing turbocharger assembly, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing turbocharger assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing turbocharger assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (6) Remove the coolant pipe assembly.
- (7) Remove the precatlytic converter assembly.

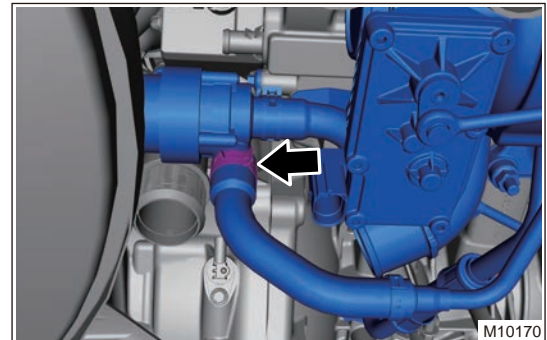
- (8) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect connection between intercooler intake pipe 1 and turbocharger assembly.



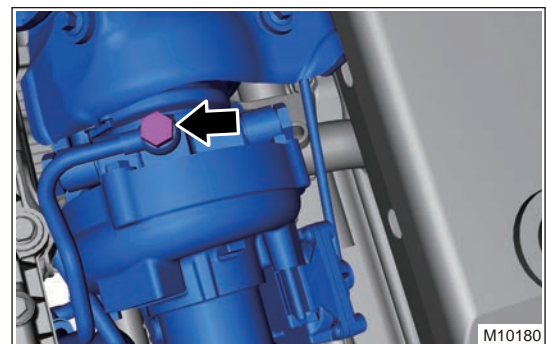
- (9) Disconnect turbocharger exhaust valve connector.



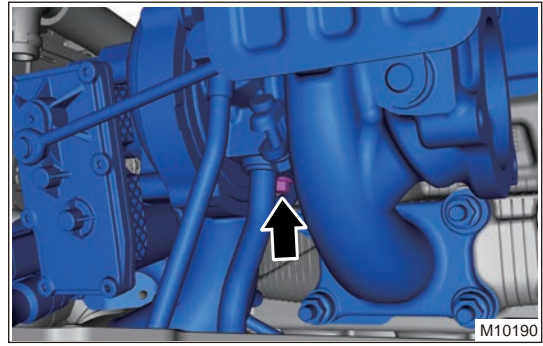
- (10) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect connection between water inlet hose and electric water pump.



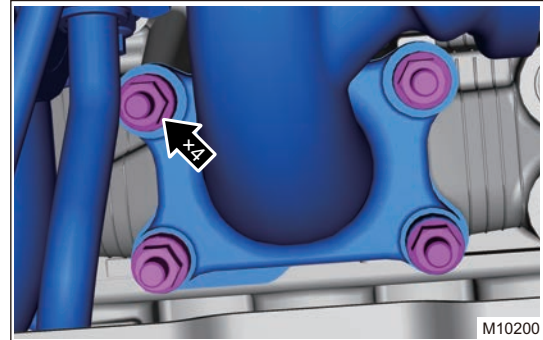
- (11) Remove 1 fixing bolt between oil inlet pipe assembly and turbocharger assembly, and remove gasket carefully.



(12) Remove 1 fixing bolt between oil return pipe assembly and turbocharger assembly, and remove gasket carefully.

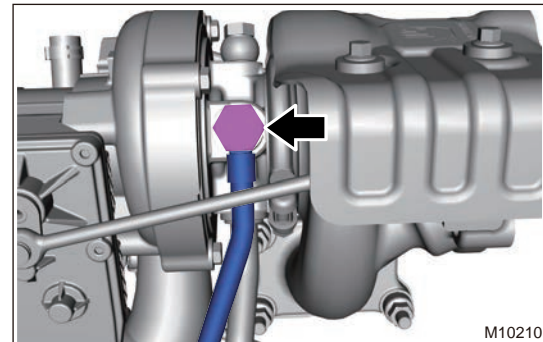


(13) Remove 4 high temperature nuts from turbocharger assembly.

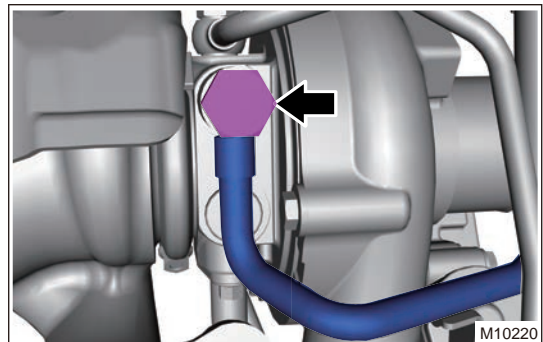


(14) Remove the turbocharger assembly carefully. And remove gasket from cylinder head flange.

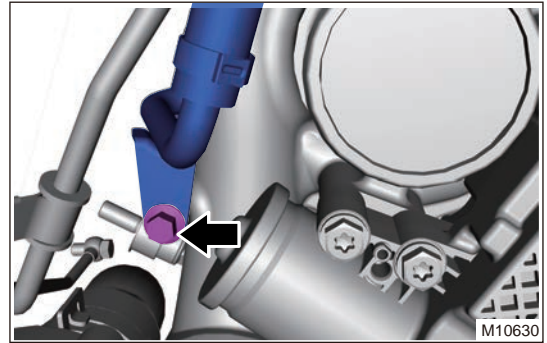
(15) Remove the hollow bolt of turbocharger water inlet pipe and remove turbocharger water inlet pipe.



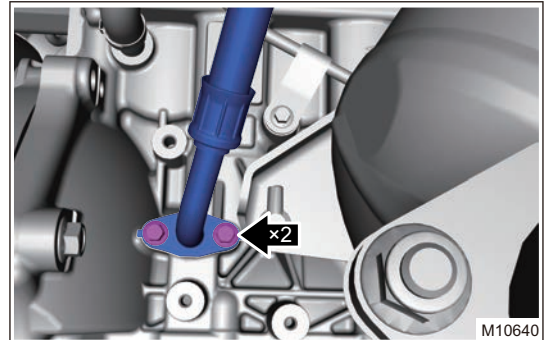
(16) Remove turbocharger water outlet pipe hollow bolt.



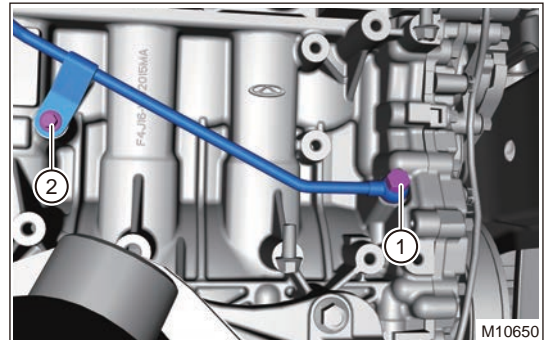
- (17) Remove the fixing bolt from turbocharger water outlet pipe bracket and remove turbocharger water outlet pipe.



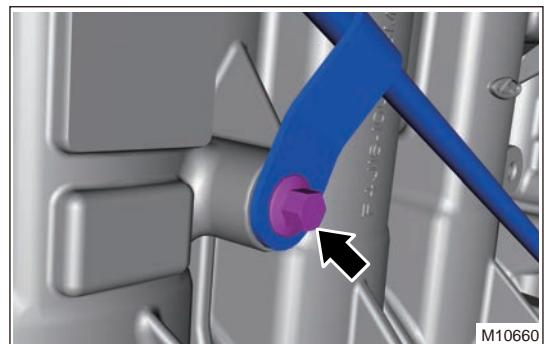
- (18) Remove 2 fixing bolts and turbocharger oil return pipe.



- (19) Remove the hollow bolt (1) and bracket fixing bolt (2) from turbocharger oil inlet pipe.



- (20) Remove the fixing bolt from turbocharger oil inlet pipe bracket and remove turbocharger oil inlet pipe.



■ Daily inspection of turbocharger

- (1) Check the sealing and tightness of connecting lines between air filter and turbocharger, turbocharger and engine intake/exhaust pipe.
- (2) Check if turbocharger oil inlet pipe and return pipe are damaged or throttling, and if the connecting bolts of joints are loose.
- (3) Check the air filter and clean or replace the element regularly.

- (4) Check if engine crankcase blow-by gas is too large, breather is smooth, ensure crankcase pressure is normal.

■ Other requirements of turbocharger

- (1) Avoid low engine idle for long time (maximum should not exceed 20 minutes).
- (2) Never use the operation with "Accelerate - Stall - Neutral coasting", before the engine lubricating oil pressure is established, the engine must be kept in idling condition (3 - 5 minutes).
- (3) Before stopping the engine, let it gradually decrease its temperature and speed from maximum value (3 - 5 minutes).

■ Firstly perform basic inspection to turbocharger system when DTC indicating too high or too low boost pressure occurs or when power decreases.

- (1) Check there are no cracks causing by overheating, biting, deformation or other damage on exhaust turbocharger turbo housing, otherwise, replace exhaust turbocharger.
- (2) Check there are no deposition and blocking on turbo oil hole.
- (3) Check there are no blockage, squash, deformation or other damage on oil inlet and return pipes of exhaust turbocharger.
- (4) Check there is no sticking in actuator mechanism, and if actuator connector is connected normally.
- (5) Check there is no obvious deformation in turbocharger impeller, and the rotation is normal without blocking.
- (6) Check if each actuator connector is connected reliably (intake relief valve and exhaust gas bypass electric valve) and check for no damage of appearance.

■ Installation

Caution

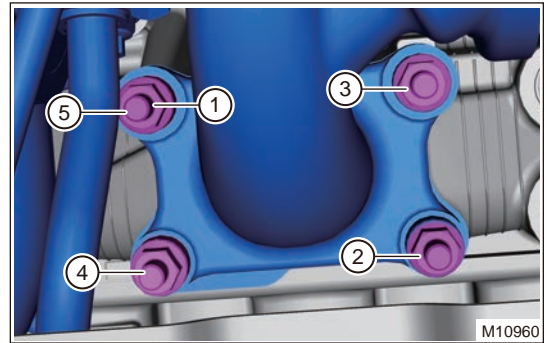
- **Do not pull the turbocharger actuator rod by hand, and avoid impacting the turbocharger during assembly.**
- **Check for foreign matter in turbocharger and line when installing. Avoid inhaling foreign matter after turbocharger running, causing damage to the components.**

- (1) Install the hollow bolts of turbocharger inlet pipe.
Torque: 20 N·m + 5°
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts on turbocharger inlet pipe bracket.
Torque: 8 N·m + 3°
- (3) Install 2 fixing bolts on turbocharger oil return pipe.
Torque: 8 N·m + 3°
- (4) Install fixing bolts on turbocharger outlet pipe bracket.
Torque: 8 N·m + 3°
- (5) Install the hollow bolts on turbocharger outlet pipe.
Torque: 40 ± 2 N·m
- (6) Install the hollow bolts on turbocharger inlet pipe.
Torque: 40 ± 2 N·m

- (7) Install 4 high temperature nuts on turbocharger assembly.

Hint:

Tighten 4 high temperature nuts diagonally and crosswise in the order of (1) (2) (3) (4) and (5), and serial number (5) is to re-tighten the position (1) once.



- (8) Connect inlet hose to electric water pump, install elastic clamp.
 (9) Connect turbocharger exhaust valve connector.
 (10) Connect intercooler inlet pipe 1 to turbocharger, and tighten worm clamp.
 (11) Install the precatalytic converter assembly.
 (12) Install the cooling pipe assembly.
 (13) Install the intake hose assembly.
 (14) Install the air filter assembly.
 (15) Install the engine trim cover.
 (16) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

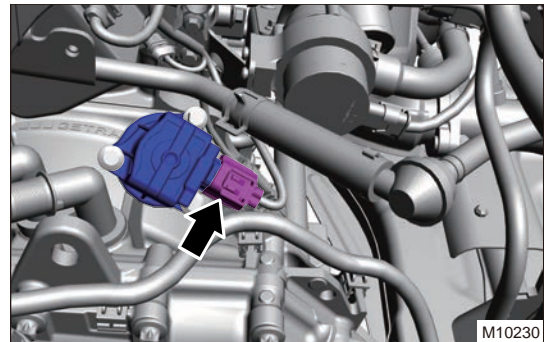
7.3 Relief Control Solenoid Valve

■ Removal

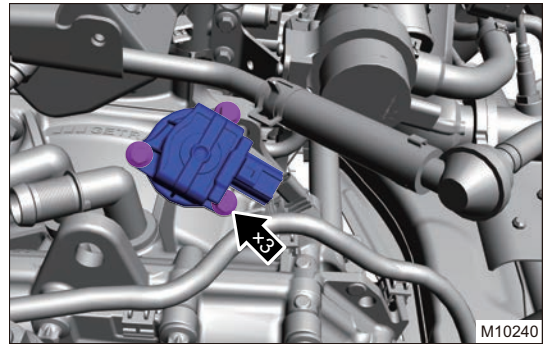
⚠ Warning

- **Before removal of pressure discharge control solenoid valve assembly, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing relief control solenoid valve assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing relief control solenoid valve assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (4) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (5) Disconnect the relief control solenoid valve connector.



- (6) Remove 3 fixing bolts from relief control solenoid valve.



- (7) Remove the relief solenoid valve assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install relief control solenoid valve and tighten 3 fixing bolts.
Torque: 8 N·m + 3°
- (2) Connect the relief control solenoid valve connector.
- (3) Install the intake hose assembly.
- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

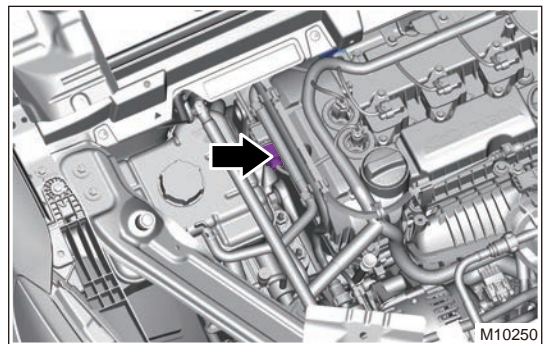
7.4 Precatalytic Converter Assembly

■ Removal

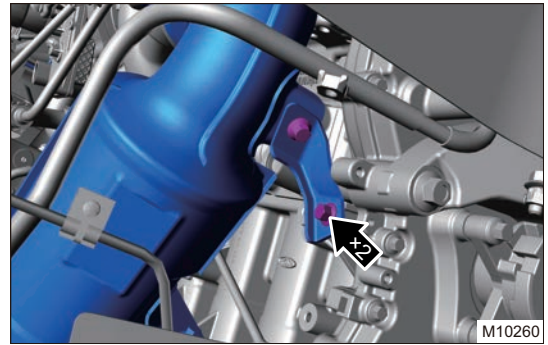
⚠ Warning

- Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing precatalytic converter assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the precatalytic converter assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

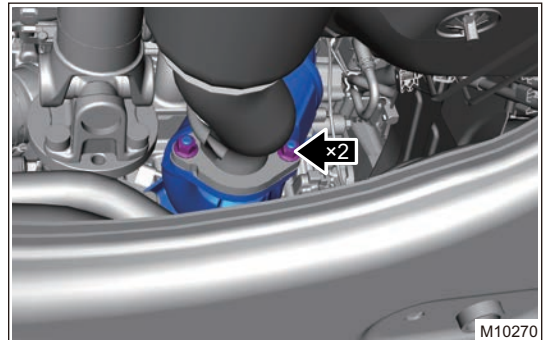
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Removal turbocharger heat insulator assembly.
- (6) Disconnect the upstream oxygen sensor connector.



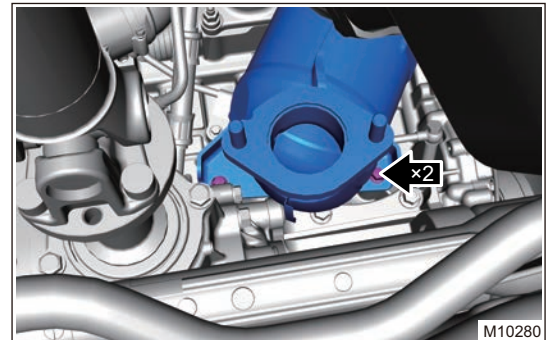
- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts and precatalytic converter bracket.



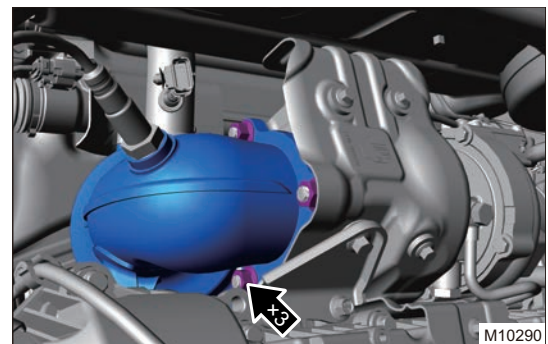
- (8) Remove 2 fixing nuts between precatalytic converter and main catalytic converter.



- (9) Remove 2 fixing bolts between precatalytic converter bracket and cylinder block.



- (10) Remove 3 fixing nuts between precatalytic converter and turbocharger assembly.

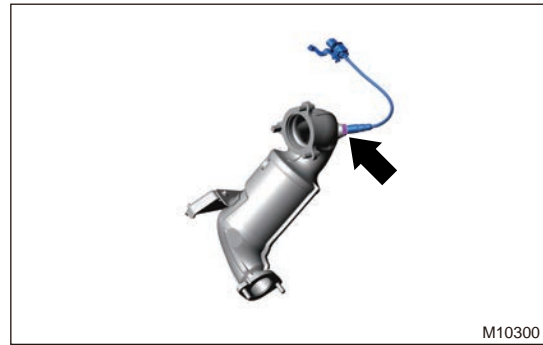


- (11) Remove the precatalytic converter assembly carefully and slowly, and remove the washer of precatalytic converter.

- (12) Remove the upstream oxygen sensor from precatalytic converter.

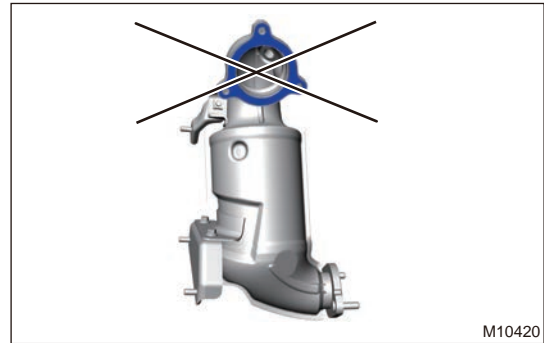
Hint:

Remove it by using special tool of oxygen sensor.



■ **Inspect warpage on precatalytic converter connection surface**

- (1) Using a precision straightedge and feeler gauge, measure the connection surface between precatalytic converter body and turbocharger, replace it if the surface warpage is above 0.5mm.
- (2) Check precatalytic converter internal carrier for cracked, blocked, etc. If so, replace precatalytic converter assembly.



■ **Installation**

- (1) Install precatalytic converter washer.
- (2) Install 2 fixing nuts (non-reusable part) between precatalytic converter and main catalytic converter.
Torque: 45 ± 5 N·m
- (3) Install 2 bolts between precatalytic converter bracket and cylinder block.
Torque: 25 ± 3.5 N·m
- (4) Install 2 fixing bolts to precatalytic converter bracket.
Torque: 25 ± 3.5 N·m
- (5) Install 3 fixing bolts between precatalytic converter and turbocharger.
Torque: 45 ± 5 N·m
- (6) Install the upstream oxygen sensor connector.
- (7) Install turbocharger heat insulator assembly.
- (8) Install the engine trim cover.

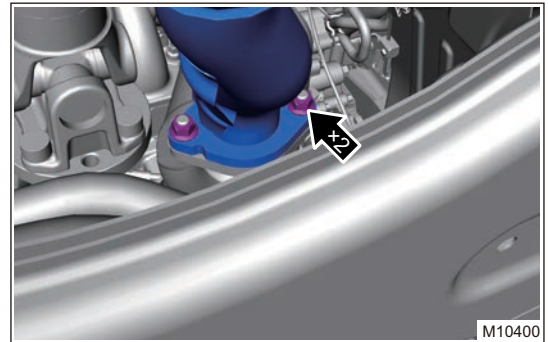
7.5 Main Catalytic Converter and Front Muffler

■ Removal

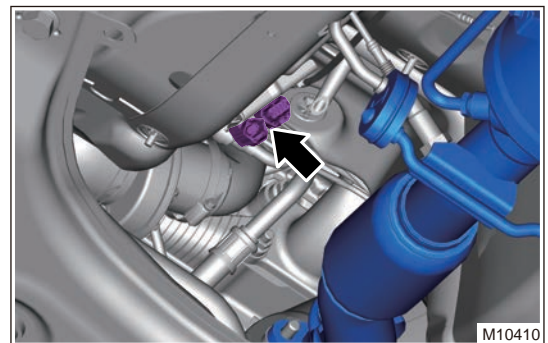
⚠ Warning

- Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing main catalytic converter and front muffler.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the main catalytic converter and front muffler. Be careful not to operate roughly.

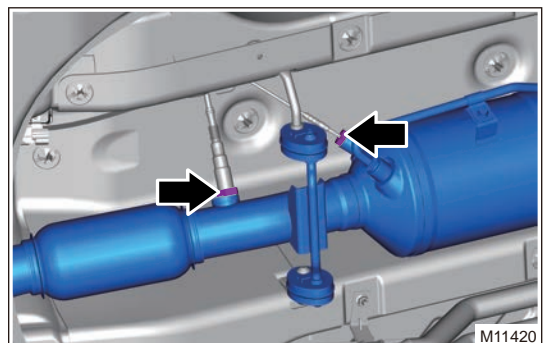
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (4) Remove 2 fixing nuts from precatalytic converter assembly.



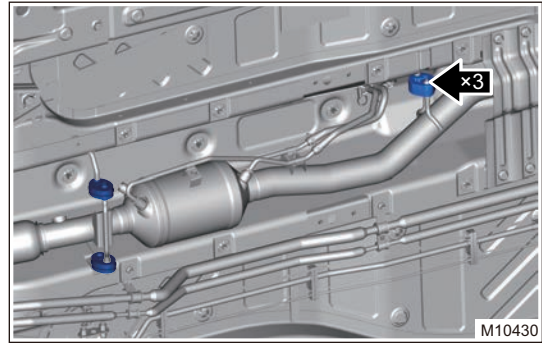
- (5) Disconnect the downstream oxygen sensor connector.
- (6) Disconnect the exhaust temperature sensor connector.



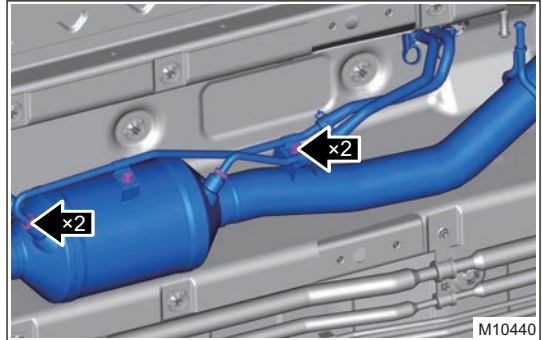
- (7) Remove rear oxygen sensor and exhaust temperature sensor.



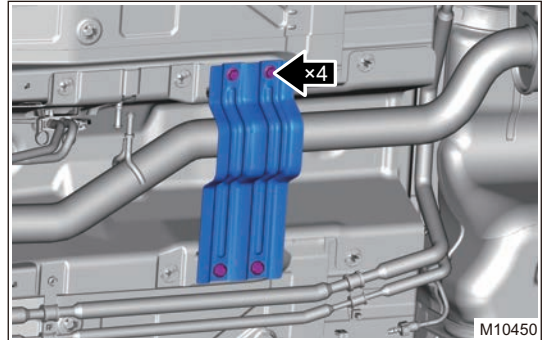
- (8) Disengage 3 hanger blocks from main catalytic converter and muffler.



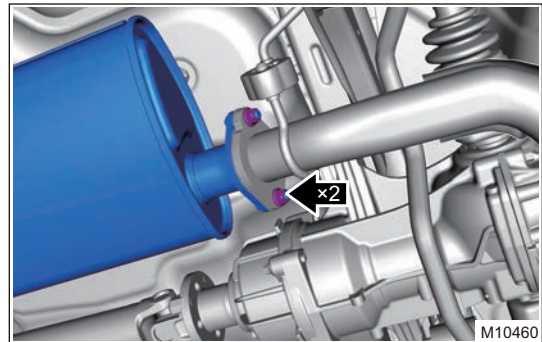
- (9) Remove 2 fixing bolts from pipe for measuring pressure difference, separate pipe joint and main catalytic converter.



- (10) Remove 4 fixing bolts from rear passage rear mounting board.



- (11) Remove 2 fixing nuts from rear muffler assembly.



- (12) Remove the main catalytic converter and muffler carefully.

■ **Inspection**

- (1) Check main catalytic converter internal absorber for damage, and replace the assembly if necessary.
- (2) Check the appearance of the main catalytic converter and muffler for deformation and cracks condition and, and replace the assembly if necessary.

■ Installation

- (1) Install downstream oxygen sensor.

Torque: $45 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Install the exhaust temperature sensor.
- (3) Install 2 fixing nuts from rear muffler assembly.

Torque: $45 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (4) Install 4 fixing bolts on center passage rear mounting board.
- (5) Install 2 fixing bolts on pressure difference pipe, and connect pipe joint and main catalytic converter in place.
- (6) Install 2 fixing nuts on the precatalytic converter assembly.

Torque: $45 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

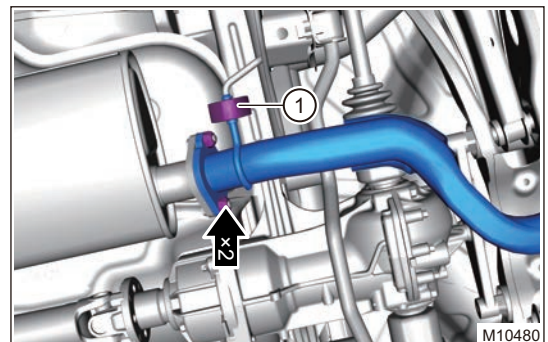
7.6 Rear Muffler Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear muffler assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the rear muffler assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Disengage fixing hanger block (1).
- (4) Remove 2 fixing nuts between rear muffler assembly, main catalytic converter and front muffler assembly.



- (5) Disengage the 4 fixing hanger block from muffler assembly.



- (6) Carefully remove the rear muffler assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the 5 fixing hanger blocks on rear muffler assembly.
- (2) Tighten 2 fixing nuts between rear muffler and main catalytic converter and front muffler assembly.

Torque: 45 ± 5 N·m

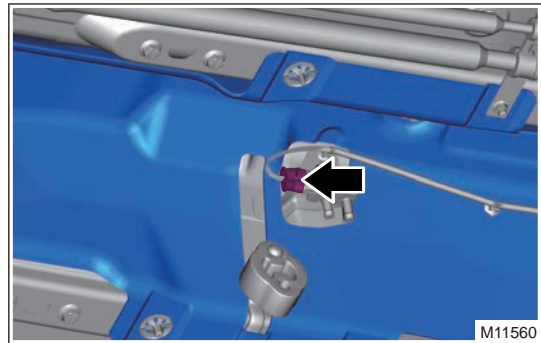
7.7 Center Passage Heat Insulator

■ Removal

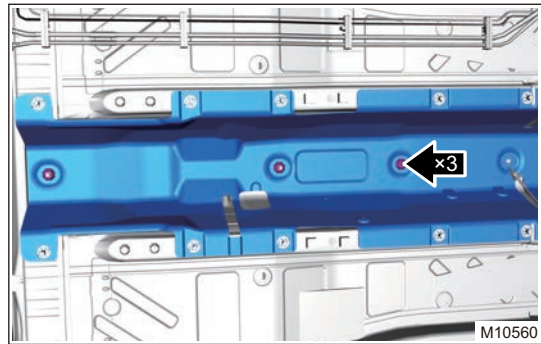
⚠ Warning

- **Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing center passage heat insulator assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the center passage heat insulator assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

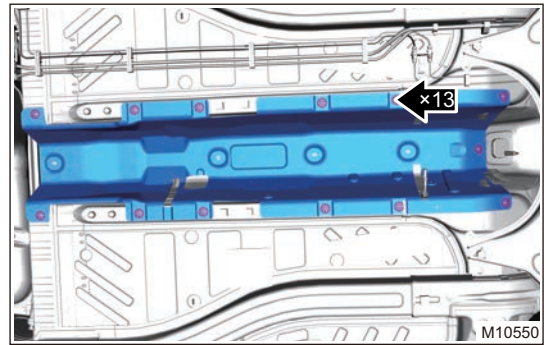
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the main catalytic converter and front muffler assembly.
- (4) Remove the propeller intermediate shaft assembly.
- (5) Disconnect the differential pressure sensor.



- (6) Remove 3 fixing nuts from center passage heat insulator.



- (7) Remove 13 clamping washers from center passage heat insulator.



- (8) Remove center passage heat insulator carefully.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 13 clamping washers to tighten center passage heat insulator.
- (2) Install 3 fixing nuts on center passage heat insulator.
- (3) Connect the differential difference sensor connector.
- (4) Install the propeller intermediate shaft assembly.
- (5) Install the main catalytic converter and front muffler assembly.

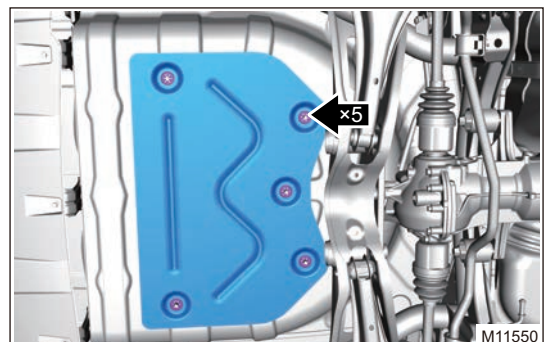
7.8 Rear Side Exhaust Pipe Heat Insulator

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear side exhaust pipe heat insulator.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear side exhaust pipe heat insulator. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear muffler assembly.
- (4) Remove 5 clamping washers from rear side exhaust pipe heat insulator.



- (5) Remove the rear side exhaust pipe heat insulator carefully.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install 5 clamping washers to tighten rear side exhaust pipe heat insulator.
- (2) Install the rear muffler assembly

ENGINE

7.1	IGNITION SYSTEM	482
1	Warning and Precaution.....	482
1.1	Warning.....	482
1.2	Precaution.....	482
2	System Overview	482
2.1	System Description.....	482
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	483
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	484
3	Component Operation Description.....	484
3.1	Ignition Coil.....	484
3.2	Spark Plug.....	484
4	Special Tool and Equipment.....	485
4.1	General Tool.....	485
5	Fasteners Torque List	485
5.1	Torque Specifications	485
6	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	485
6.1	Problem Symptoms Table	485
6.2	Spark Plug Common Problems	486
7	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE.....	487
7.1	Ignition Coil Assembly.....	487
7.2	Spark Plug Assembly	489

7.1 IGNITION SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) It is prohibited to use short circuit spark test to test ignition function during repair, otherwise it may damage the module.
- (2) During using, do not remove ignition coil from spark plug with bare hands with power on, and do not contact the metal part and rubber guide rod directly, to avoid electric shock.
- (3) Make sure that ground wire of ignition coil assembly is short to the nearest GND separately from ECU and other electrical device to reduce signal interfere as possible.
- (4) Ensure that connector or wire harness has no damage; the wire harness connector is connected correctly. Ensure that wire harness and connector have no short circuit or poor contact.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

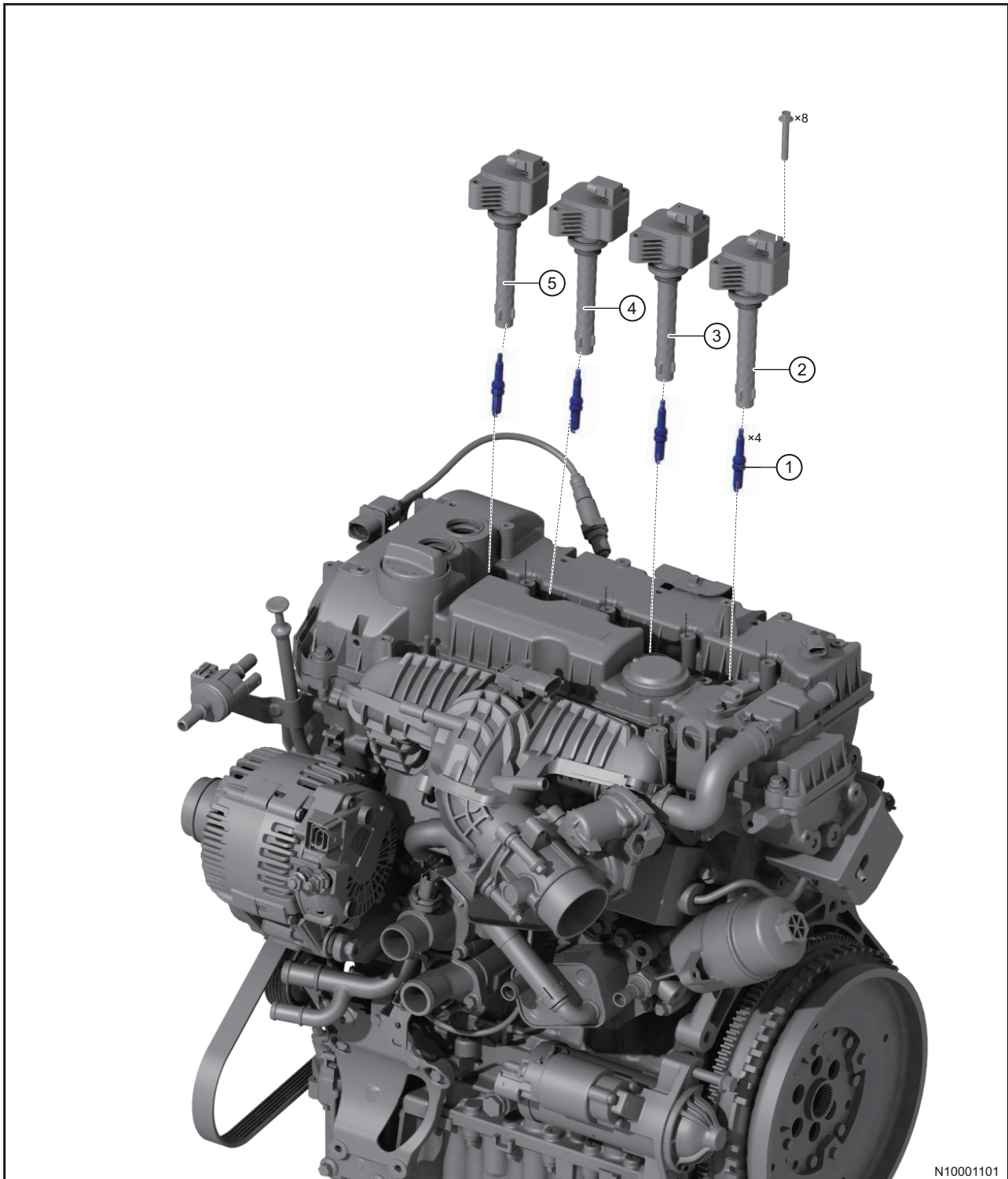
- (1) DO NOT remove the spark plugs when engine is hot; failure to do this may cause damage to the spark plug thread holes on cylinder head.
- (2) When installing spark plug and ignition coil, check if there is impurities in cylinder head mounting holes, and if the inner wall is smooth.
- (3) Do not make paint mark on spark plug assembly ceramic body. If there is paint or other organic mark, it is necessary to clean. Never apply grease such as lubricant and anti-rust oil etc. on spark plug assembly. If so, it is required to clean it.
- (4) Before removal, remove the dirt and foreign matter around ignition coil and ignition coil mounting hole to prevent them from dropping into cylinders.
- (5) After removing or when replacing ignition coil, do not place ignition coil on the ground or other dusty places, otherwise, dust or foreign matter may enter rubber guide and lead to ignition coil failure.
- (6) When replacing spark plug, remove and install ignition coil carefully. Do not rotate ignition coil (avoid scratching rubber guide).
- (7) Do not separate ignition coil rubber guide and ignition coil body. If so, it may cause the decrease of seal performance and fuel gas enter and corrode inner structure when reinstalling.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

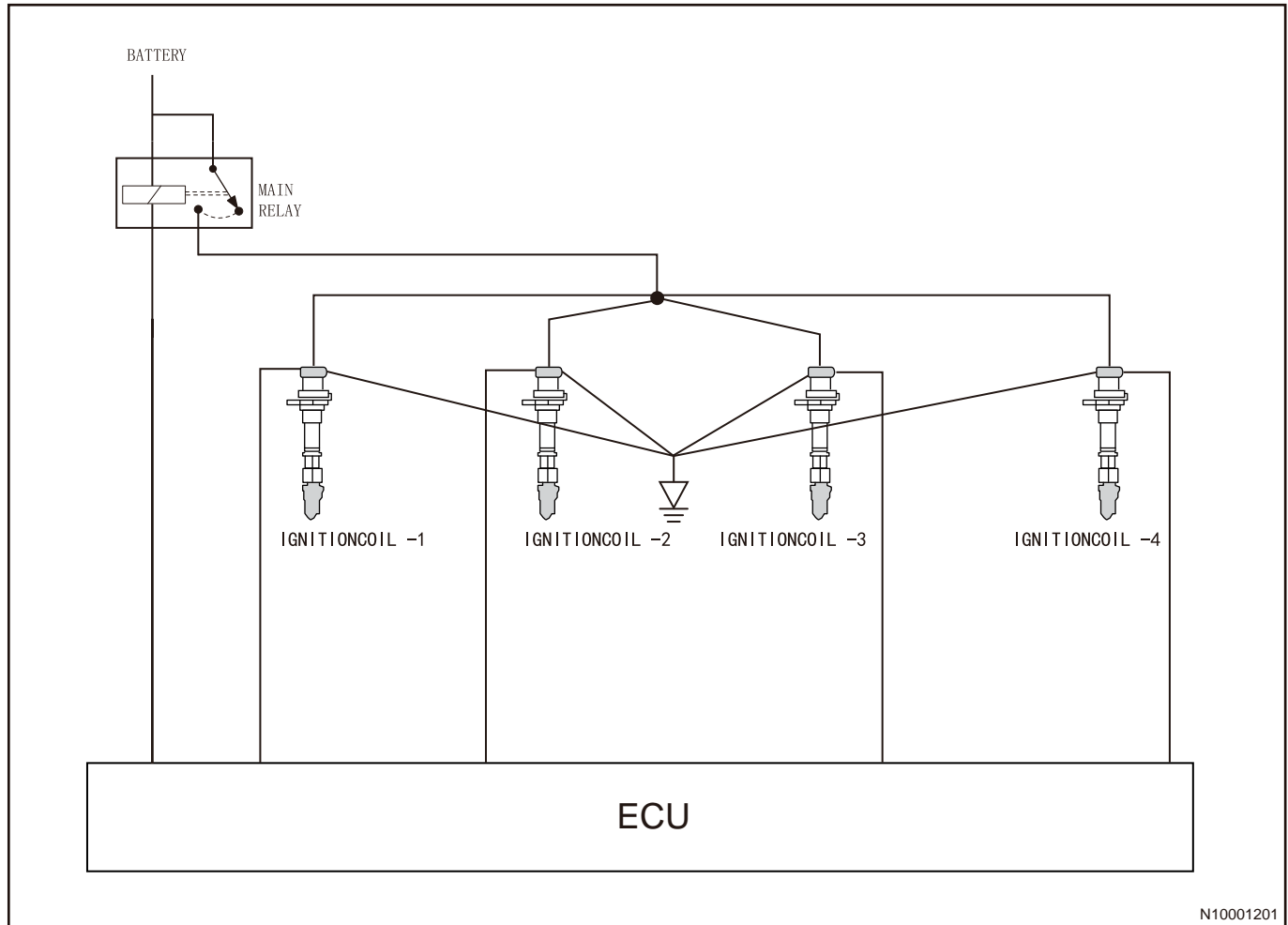
Ignition system mainly consists of sensors, engine control module, ignition coils (integrated drive module can not be disassembled), spark plugs, etc. Ignition coil integrated drive module uses 4-line coil-on-plug system, and has over current and overtime protection function. The secondary (secondary high-voltage terminal) of each ignition coil is connected to spark plugs in engine cylinder respectively via high-voltage damping anti-interference rubber connecting rod. Ignition coil primary (original low-voltage terminal) is controlled by the internal integrated drive module via the pulse signal command issued by the engine control module (working state: power on, power off). Engine control module receives the top dead center position of each cylinder piston via camshaft position sensor, and uses the speed sensor signal to issue pulse drive command; correct ignition advance angle according to knock sensor signal; make ignition system operate normally.

2.2 System Components Diagram



1	Spark Plug	4	Cylinder 2 Ignition Coil Assembly
2	Cylinder 4 Ignition Coil Assembly	5	Cylinder 1 Ignition Coil Assembly
3	Cylinder 3 Ignition Coil Assembly		

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



3 Component Operation Description

3.1 Ignition Coil

■ Main Function

Ignition coil consists of primary winding, secondary winding, integrated module, iron core and housing etc. When the ground circuit of a primary winding is on, this primary winding starts charging (magnetizing). When ECU cut off pulse signal (high level to low level) circuit, charging (magnetizing) is terminated. At this time, high voltage will be induced in the secondary winding by the magnetic field coupling. In the process of passing the spark plug circuit, the spark plug will discharge (ignition).

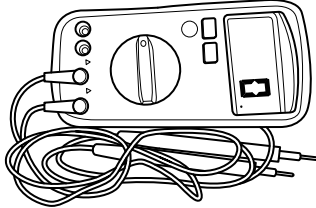
3.2 Spark Plug

■ Main Function

Spark plug consists of wired nut, insulator ceramic body, wired screw, central electrode, side electrode (the side electrode is weld to case) and case. The high-voltage current passes through the center electrode of the spark plug to the side electrode, which forms a circuit. In this process, the high-voltage current break through the air to produce sparks, that is, ignite the combustible mixture in the cylinder.

4 Special Tool and Equipment

4.1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	

5 Fasteners Torque List

5.1 Torque Specifications

Description	Torque (N·m)
Spark Plug	20 ± 3
Ignition Coil Fixing Bolt	8 ± 3

6 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

6.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Ignition System

Symptom	Possible Cause
Stall	Ignition coil
	Camshaft position sensor
	Spark plug
	Intake camshaft phaser control valve
	Exhaust camshaft phaser control valve
	Wire harness
	ECU
Knock	Ignition coil
	Knock sensor
	ECU
Difficult to start	Battery
	Ignition coil
	Spark plug

Symptom	Possible Cause
Engine hesitation, power drop, unstable performance	Engine speed sensor
	Ignition coil
	Intake camshaft phaser control valve
	Exhaust camshaft phaser control valve
	Engine speed sensor
	Spark plug
	Camshaft position sensor
ECU	

6.2 Spark Plug Common Problems

■ Normal

Spark plug porcelain small end is between white and yellowish, gray or brownish. Air-fuel ratio and ignition time are normal, there is no misfire, and cold-start enriching function is normal.

■ Carbon Accumulation

A layer of velvety black charcoal smoke attaches on the insulator small end, electrode and spark plug body		
Cause	Result	Treatment
Mixture is excessively rich due to improper adjustment of air fuel mixture.	Poor starting ability	Check air filter and adjust air-fuel ratio and cold starting system.
Traveling distance of vehicle is too short, engine temperature is low, and combustion is incomplete.		
Fuel quality is poor or fuel deteriorates, fuel is abnormal.		
Spark plug type is incorrect.		

■ Oil Dirt

A layer of black oily charcoal smoke and dirt attach on the insulator small end, electrode and spark plug body		
Cause	Result	Treatment
Piston ring has bad elasticity or is worn excessively, and oil breaks into combustion chamber.	Difficult to start	Check and repair engine, or replace spark plug.
Excessive matching clearance between piston skirt and cylinder wall causes oil breaking and air leakage.		
Air leakage occurs due to incorrect installation of piston ring in direction of inside and outside tangent angle, causing oil breaking into combustion chamber.		
Excessive clearance occurs between valve stem and valve guide due to excessive wear, or valve guide oil seal fails, causing oil leakage.		

A layer of black oily charcoal smoke and dirt attach on the insulator small end, electrode and spark plug body

Oil level is too high and oil breaks into combustion chamber.

■ Lead Deposits

Brownish yellow enamels or greenish deposits exist on the insulator small end

Cause	Result	Treatment
The fuel additive contains lead, when engine runs under high load conditions with throttle partially opened for a long time, enamel is formed.	Causing misfire	Replace spark plug.

■ Red Deposits

There are severe red brown deposits on insulator skirt and electrodes, and clear radial discharge traces can be seen on the surface of insulator small end

Cause	Result	Treatment
In the unleaded gasoline, Mn-based anti-riot agent MMT is used instead of lead tetraethyl, the oxide of Mn after combustion adheres on the surface of insulator and electrode.	At high temperature, these deposits are easily conductive, resulting in flashover on insulator skirt surface, unstable combustion, high engine speed, and jitter under heavy load conditions.	Use qualified fuel, replace spark plug.

7 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

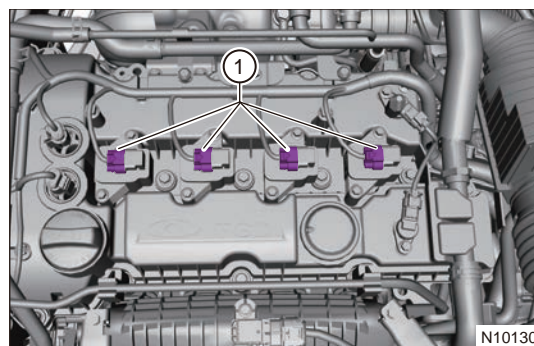
7.1 Ignition Coil Assembly

■ Removal

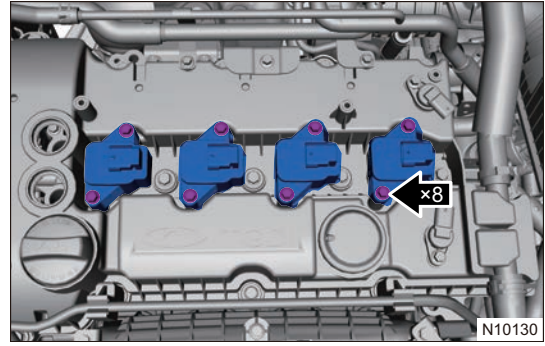
⚠ Warning

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing ignition coil assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **It is prohibited to use short circuit spark test to test ignition function during repair, otherwise it may damage the module.**
- **During using, do not remove ignition coil from spark plug with bare hands with power on, and do not contact the metal part and rubber guide rod directly, to avoid electric shock.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Disconnect the ignition coil connectors (1), and move away the wire harness from ignition coil.



(6) Remove 8 fixing bolts from ignition coil assembly.



(7) Remove the ignition coil assembly.

⚠ Caution

- After removing ignition coil, do not place ignition coil on the ground or other dusty places, otherwise, dust or foreign matter may enter rubber guide and torsion ignition coil failure.
- Remove ignition coil carefully. Do not rotate ignition coil (avoid scratching rubber guide).
- Do not separate ignition coil rubber guide and ignition coil body. If so, it may cause the decrease of seal performance and air oil enter and corrode inner structure when reinstalling.

■ Inspection

⚠ Caution

- It is prohibited to use short circuit spark test to test ignition coil performance, otherwise it may cause damage to electronic controller.
- During inspection, do not remove ignition coil from spark plug with bare hands with power on, and do not contact the metal part and rubber guide rod directly, to avoid electric shock.

Terminal	Terminal Definition
1	Power supply
2	Ground
3	Ground
4	Pulse drive signal

- (1) Use a digital multimeter to measure if ignition coil power supply/ground is normal.
- (2) Use LED test light to measure the pulse drive signal of ignition coil and observe if LED test light flashes.
- (3) The ignition coil assembly can be exchanged for each cylinder to judge if the ignition coil assembly is in good condition.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Make sure that ground wire of ignition coil assembly is short to the nearest GND separately from ECU and other electrical device to reduce signal interfere as possible.
- Ignition coil assembly rubber guide rod end is applied with specified grease of its self, which can help in assembly of ignition coil assembly and spark plug assembly. Do not remove it arbitrarily.
- Make sure that the connection of ignition coil high-voltage output terminal and spark plug is reliable, or it may cause high-voltage leakage, resulting in poor ignition.
- Before installation, check the mounting hole of cylinder head spark plug, and no impurities can be brought in during assembly.
- Install the ignition coil into cylinder head cover mounting hole and press it to close to mounting boss on cylinder head cover. Never turn ignition coil to left/right after pressing and do not tap ignition coil with a hammer etc.
- To prevent accidental scratches to ignition coil assembly, do not allow sharp edge to contact with rubber guide rod under ignition coil assembly during installation.

- (1) Install 8 fixing bolts on ignition coil assembly.

Torque: $8 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Connect the ignition coil assembly connector.
- (3) Install the engine trim cover.
- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

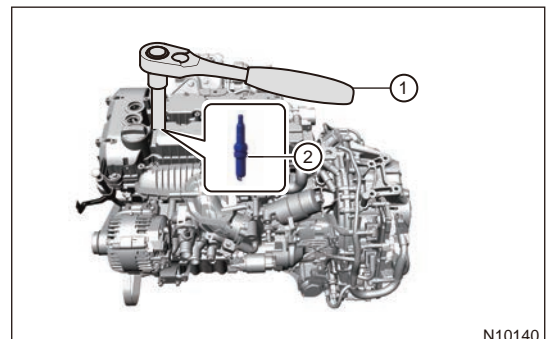
7.2 Spark Plug Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing spark plug.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing spark plug. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- DO NOT remove the spark plugs when engine is hot; failure to do this may cause damage to the spark plug thread holes on cylinder head.
- Before removal, remove the dirt and foreign matter around spark plug holes to prevent them from dropping into cylinders.

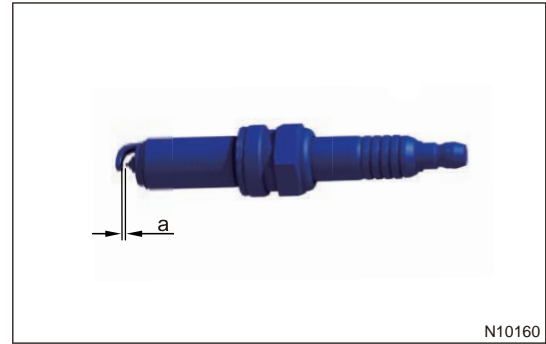
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Remove the ignition coil assembly.
- (6) Using a special spark plug socket ratchet wrench (1), loosen the spark plug.
- (7) Remove the spark plug (2).



N10140

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the spark plug gap a: 0.7 - 0.8 mm
 - It is not necessary to adjust the gap.



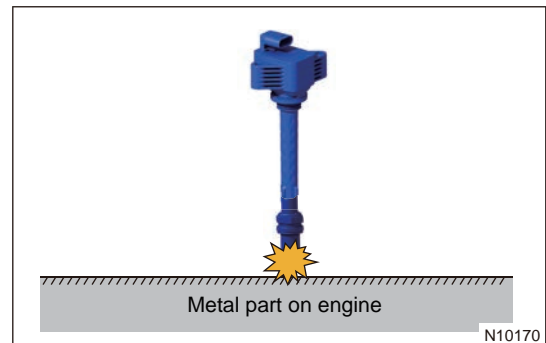
■ Spark Jump Test Method

- (1) Remove the spark plug from engine and connect it to ignition coil, put the spark plug case 5 - 7 mm away from engine body and start vehicle to check the spark jump.

⚠ Warning

- **Always disconnect the injector circuit before test to avoid injection during spark jump test.**

- (2) If there is a thick spark with blue-white color and popping occurs between spark plug and engine body and also spark generated between center electrode and side electrode, that indicates ignition system is normal.



- (3) If the spark is red and short or there is no spark, check ignition coil wire and ECU.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Check the spark plug type to confirm if it is suitable.**
- **Check if there is impurities in cylinder head mounting holes, the inner wall is smooth.**
- **Do not make paint mark on spark plug assembly ceramic body. If there is paint or other organic mark, it is necessary to clean. Never apply grease such as lubricant and anti-rust oil on spark plug assembly. If so, it is required to clean it.**
- **Please install spark plug with a special spark plug socket, and never damage the normal spark plug gap.**
- **Avoid to install the spark plug from higher position from mounting hole during installation to prevent spark plug side electrode gap from damaging, resulting in poor ignition.**
- **Always tighten the spark plug according to specified torque using a torque wrench when installing it.**

- (1) Install 4 spark plugs respectively into the cylinder head mounting holes for pre-tightening tighten, and then retighten the spark plugs with a torque wrench.

Torque: $20 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Install the ignition coil assembly.
- (3) Install the engine trim cover.
- (4) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

ENGINE

8.1	EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM	493
1	Warning and Precaution	493
1.1	Warning	493
1.2	Precaution	493
2	System Overview	493
2.1	System Description	493
2.2	System Components Diagram	494
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	495
2.4	System Components Description	496
3	Special Tool And Equipment	498
3.1	General Tool	498
4	Fasteners Torque List	498
4.1	Torque Specifications	498
5	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING	498
5.1	Problem Symptoms Table	498
6	Removal & Installation	499
6.1	Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve	499
6.2	Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve Outlet Pipe Assembly	500
6.3	Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve Outlet Pipe II Assembly	502
6.4	Upstream Oxygen Sensor	503
6.5	Downstream Oxygen Sensor	505
6.6	Activated Charcoal Canister Assembly	507
6.7	Dust Filter	508
6.8	Activated Charcoal Canister Breather Pipe Assembly	509
6.9	Exhaust Temperature Sensor (If Equipped)	510
6.10	Pressure Difference Sensor (If Equipped)	512
6.11	Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor	513

8.1 EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- (2) Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) Specified grease must be used and use of other grease will lead to oxygen sensor poisoning. New parts has been applied with grease and grease must be applied on mounting threads during assembling.
- (2) Unneeded activated charcoal canister assembly should be handled by the specialized department according to local laws and regulations. Never discard it at will.
- (3) If the oxygen sensor falls, never pick it up to install and it needs to return to factory for testing.

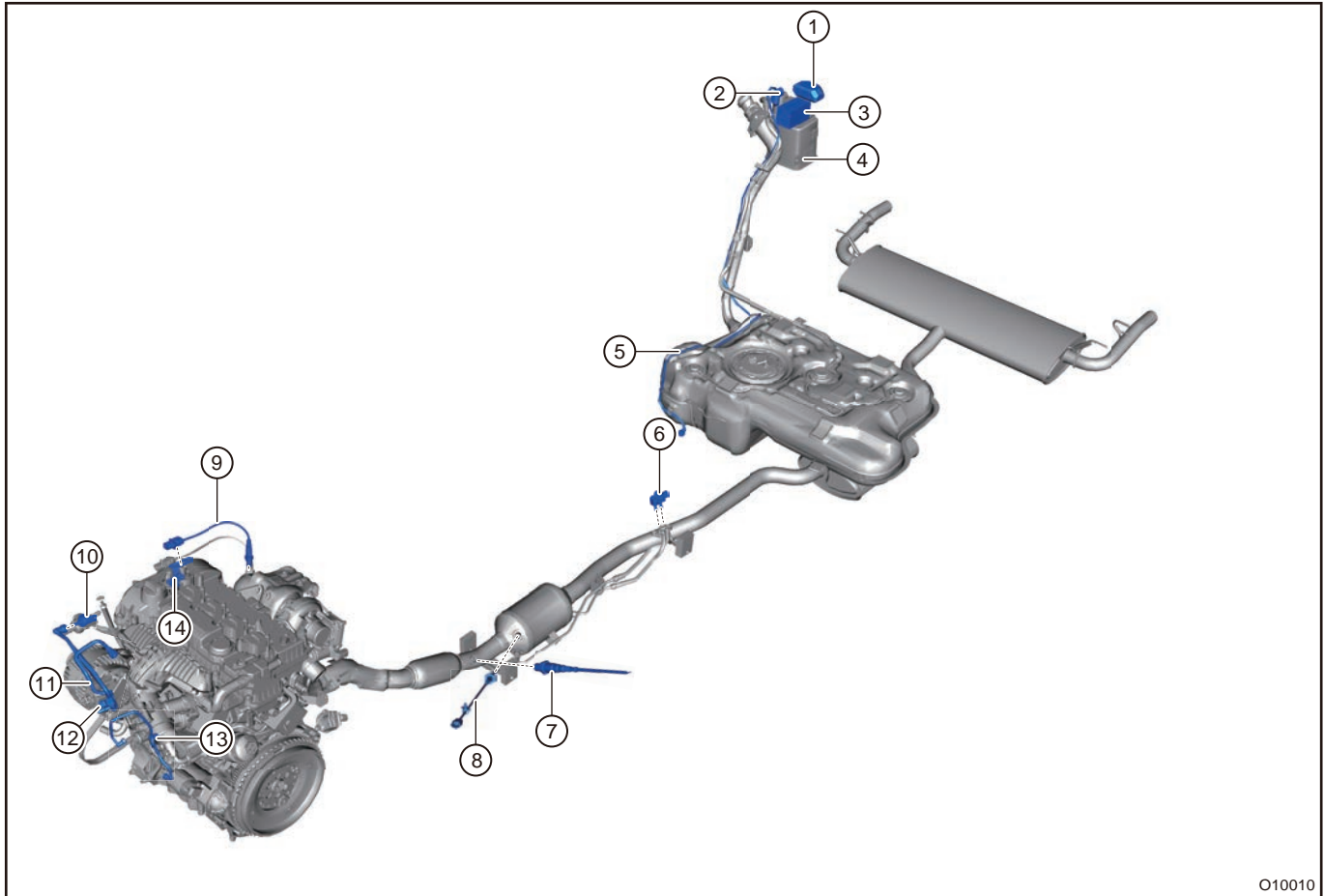
2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Emission control system includes: Fuel vapor recovery/leakage diagnosis system, exhaust emission conversion system, Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) system and crankcase forced ventilation system.

- (1) The function of fuel vapor recovery/leakage diagnosis system: Fuel vapor (HC) is recovered and inhaled into engine cylinder for combustion, which can reduce emission and improve fuel economy. According to National VI regulation, fuel vapor recovery system adds leakage diagnosis function, the generated fuel vapor is not allowed to leak into atmosphere in the process of recovery, desorption and refilling etc. The system judge whether it leaks according to leakage diagnosis test. Once leakage occurs, the system will turn on malfunction light to warn and avoid polluting environment.
- (2) The function of exhaust emission conversion system: Through front and rear oxygen sensors determine whether oxygen is excess (namely oxygen content) in exhaust gas after engine combustion, convert oxygen content into voltage signal and transmit to alternator computer, then engine can realize closed-loop control which aims at excess air coefficient. Make sure three-way catalytic converter can convert harmful gases such as CO, HC and NOX from exhaust gas into harmless carbon dioxide, water and nitrogen by oxidation and reduction. Avoid polluting environment.
- (3) The function of Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) system: According to National VI regulation, GPF is added in order to avoid the emission of gasoline particulates, which can reduce the particulates leaked into the air and avoid polluting environment.
- (4) The function of crankcase forced ventilation system: The air in cylinder leaks into crankshaft space during normal engine operation. The leaked air contains unburned fuel and all exhaust air contents, which will cause the deterioration of lubricant and increase of crankshaft pressure and temperature. In order to avoid this, the gas leaked into crankshaft is inhaled into cylinder for combustion and recover HC, which reduces the air pollution.

2.2 System Components Diagram

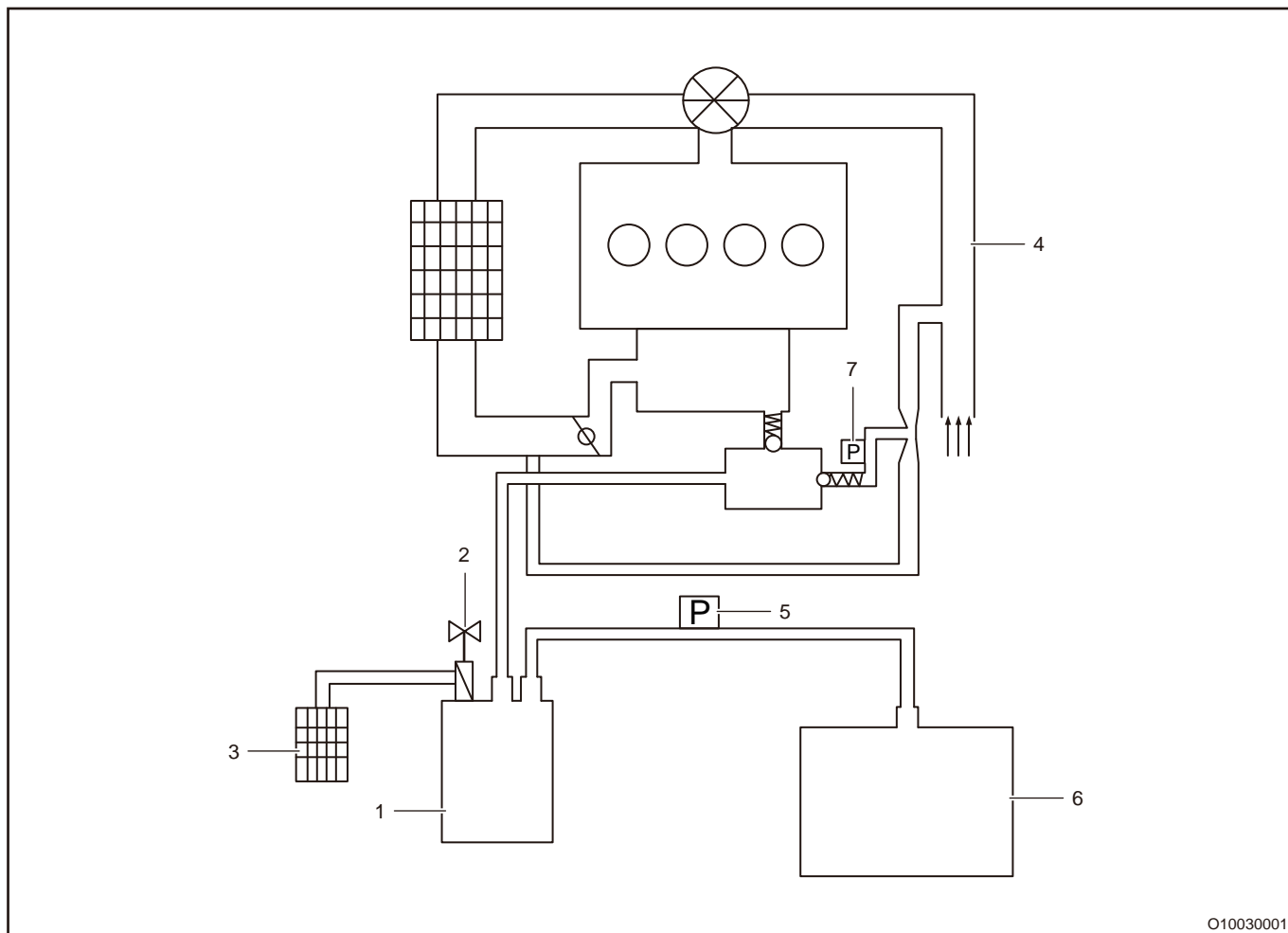


O10010

1	Charcoal Canister Breather Pipe	8	Exhaust Temperature Sensor
2	Charcoal Canister Cut-off Valve	9	Upstream Oxygen Sensor
3	Dust Filter	10	Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve
4	Activated Charcoal Canister Assembly	11	Charcoal Canister Outlet Pipe Assembly
5	Charcoal Canister Desorption Pipe	12	Charcoal Canister Desorption Pressure Sensor
6	Pressure Difference Sensor	13	Charcoal Canister Outlet Pipe II Assembly
7	Downstream Oxygen Sensor	14	Upstream Oxygen Sensor Bracket

2.3 System Schematic Diagram

■ Fuel Vapor Recovery/Leakage Diagnosis System

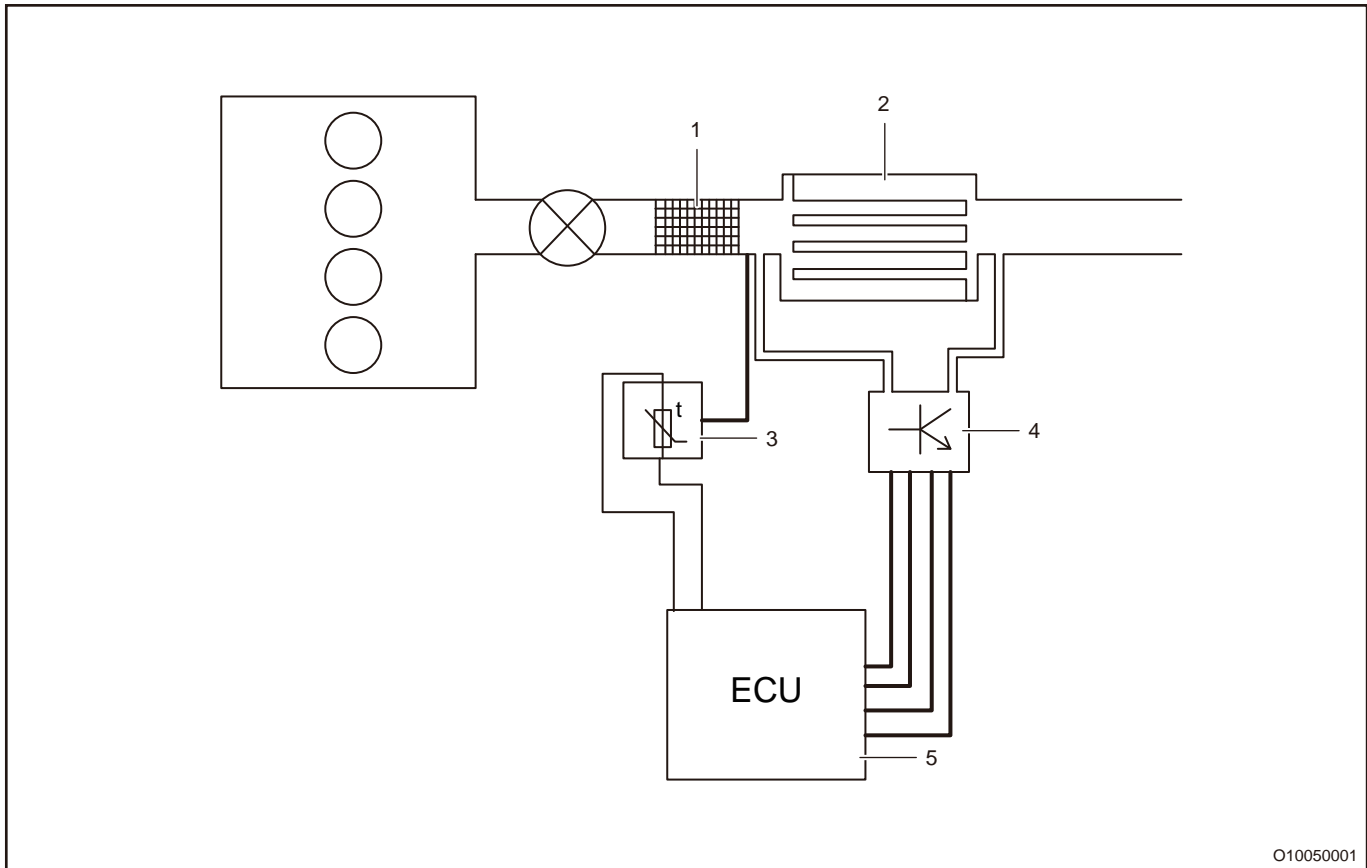


O10030001

1	Activated Charcoal Canister Assembly	5	Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor
2	Activated Charcoal Canister Cut-off Valve	6	Fuel Tank Assembly
3	Dust Filter	7	Charcoal Canister Desorption Pressure Sensor
4	Intake Hose Assembly		

Two desorption pipelines are equipped in fuel vapor recovery system. One desorption pipeline is connected to intake manifold through charcoal canister solenoid valve, which is low load desorption pipeline. Another desorption pipeline is connected to intake hose through charcoal canister solenoid valve pipeline (venturi tube), which is high load desorption pipeline. Principle of fuel vapor leakage diagnosis: After closing the charcoal canister ventilation valve, pump the fuel tank into a certain negative pressure through the intake manifold vacuum degree. If the negative pressure cannot be established, it is considered that there is a large leakage, i.e. a coarse leakage. Then close the charcoal canister solenoid valve, and form a closed space between charcoal canister solenoid valve rear pipe and fuel tank. When there are holes and no holes, the attenuation gradient of vacuum degree in this closed space is different, so it can be judged whether there is leakage.

■ Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) System



O10050001

1	Precatalytic Converter Assembly	4	Pressure Difference Sensor
2	Gasoline Particulate Filter	5	Engine Control Unit
3	Exhaust Temperature Sensor		

GPF is a ceramic filter installed in gasoline engine emission system, which can capture gasoline particulates before they enter the atmosphere. Although GPF can capture the gasoline particulates in exhaust gas effectively, with the increase of captured gasoline particulates, exhaust back pressure will increase, which will effect the vehicle power and economy. When particulates in GPF are accumulated to a certain extent, particulates in GPF will be oxidized and burned by adjusting engine operation condition (such as fuel cut-off, delayed ignition angle), ECU controls the regeneration of GPF and remove particulates in GPF, and finally realize positive cycle of “capture-regeneration-capture” .

2.4 System Components Description

■ Charcoal Canister Desorption Pressure Sensor

As a varistor type, the sensor mainly detects whether the pressure (negative pressure) in high load desorption pipeline meets charcoal canister desorption requirement. Thereby complete high load desorption.

■ Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor

As a varistor type, the sensor mainly detects the pressure change in fuel tank, then judges whether the absorbed fuel vapor in charcoal canister is saturated and whether there is leakage in fuel vapor system.

■ Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve Outlet Pipe (Venturi Tube)

Venturi effect is adopted in the venturi tube. The principle of venturi tube is to change the air flow from coarse to fine, so as to speed up the air flow rate and form a "vacuum area" at the rear side of venturi tube outlet; this vacuum area will produce certain adsorption to the outside, thereby complete high load desorption.

■ Pressure Difference Sensor (If Equipped)

The sensor is a dual-mode differential pressure sensor, and the output dual-mode signals are digital signals, which mainly detects pressure difference between the two ends of GPF, so as to indirectly judges the amount of captured particulates. Realize the “regeneration” condition.

■ Exhaust Temperature Sensor (If Equipped)

The sensor is a positive temperature coefficient thermistor (PTC) whose resistance value becomes larger as the temperature increases and becomes smaller as the temperature decreases. It mainly detects GPF inlet temperature and make sure GPF can regenerate safely.

■ Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve

Charcoal canister solenoid valve consists of solenoid coil, armature, valve body and other parts, and it is controlled by ECU by means of duty ratio control.

■ Activated Charcoal Canister Assembly

The inside of charcoal canister is filled with active carbon with strong adsorption. The excess fuel vapor in fuel tank is no longer discharged into the atmosphere, but introduced into the charcoal canister by hose. The active carbon absorbs the fuel vapor. When it meets engine desorption conditions, the charcoal canister solenoid valve is opened, and the absorbed fuel vapor is poured into the intake manifold for combustion, so as to achieve the purpose of fuel saving and environmental protection.

■ Activated Charcoal Canister Cut-off Valve

As a normal open valve, when power is on and when fuel vapor leakage diagnosis is performed, it performs closing action which cuts off the vent of charcoal canister to the atmosphere.

■ Upstream Oxygen Sensor

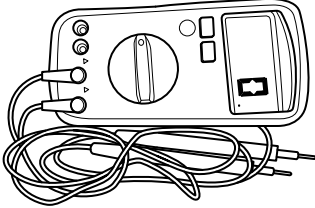
The upstream oxygen sensor is a ceramic body and is integrated with a micro pump for oxygen ion transportation. The pump supplies enough oxygen to the electrode on the exhaust gas contact side to keep the voltage on both sides constant, about 450 mV. The electronic controller converts the power consumption of pump into excess air coefficient. The output current is almost linearly related to λ , and $\lambda = 0.65 \sim \infty$, so it is also called a linear oxygen sensor. It can not only determine whether λ is greater than 1 or less than 1. Moreover, the specific value of λ can be measured in the lean and rich regions, so that the excess air coefficient in a larger range (i.e. broadband) can be measured, and continuous control of $\lambda < 1$ to $\lambda > 1$ can be realized.

■ Downstream Oxygen Sensor

The sensing element of downstream oxygen sensor is a ceramic flat body with pores. The outer side of ceramic is surrounded by engine exhaust, and the inner side is open to atmosphere. The sensing ceramic body wall is a kind of solid electrolyte, which has a heating electrode inside. The work of oxygen sensor is realized by converting the difference of oxygen ion concentration inside and outside the sensing ceramic body into voltage signal. When the temperature of sensing ceramic body reaches 350 °C, it has the characteristic of solid electrolyte. Because of its special material, oxygen ions can freely pass through the ceramic body. It is precisely by taking advantage of this characteristic, it converts the concentration difference into the potential difference, thus forming the electrical signal output. If the mixed gas is rich, the concentration difference of oxygen ions inside and outside of ceramics body is higher, potential difference is higher, a large amount of oxygen ions move from inside to outside, and the output voltage is higher (- approximately 800 mV - 1000 mV); If the gas mixture is lean, the concentration difference of oxygen ions inside and outside of ceramics body is lower, potential difference is lower, only a few oxygen ions move from inside to outside, and the output voltage is lower (approximately 100 mV). Signal voltage changes suddenly when near the theoretical equivalent air-fuel ratio ($\lambda = 1$).

3 Special Tool And Equipment

3.1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">S00002</p>

4 Fasteners Torque List

4.1 Torque Specifications

Description	Torque (N·m)
Charcoal Canister Desorption Pressure Sensor	7 ± 1
Upstream Oxygen Sensor	45 ± 5
Downstream Oxygen Sensor	45 ± 5

5 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

5.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Emission Control System

Symptom	Possible Cause
Fuel tank flat	Charcoal canister closed valve (damaged)
	Activated charcoal canister (blocked)
	Activated charcoal canister filter (blocked)
Lean mixture	Intake pressure sensor
	Oxygen sensor invalid
	Low fuel pressure in electric fuel pump
	Fuel injector blocked
Rich mixture	Fuel injector leakage
	Air filter blocked
	Oxygen sensor invalid
Lack of power	Oxygen sensor invalid
	Air flow meter malfunction

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Fuel pressure too low
	Cylinder compression pressure drop

6 Removal & Installation

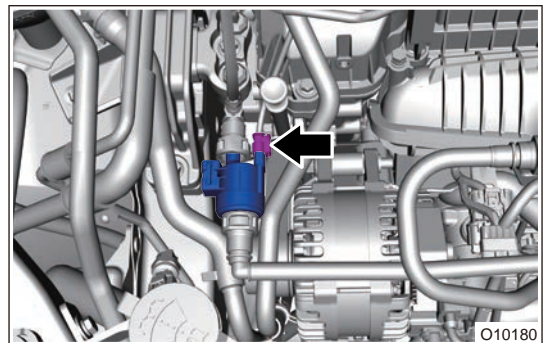
6.1 Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve

■ Removal

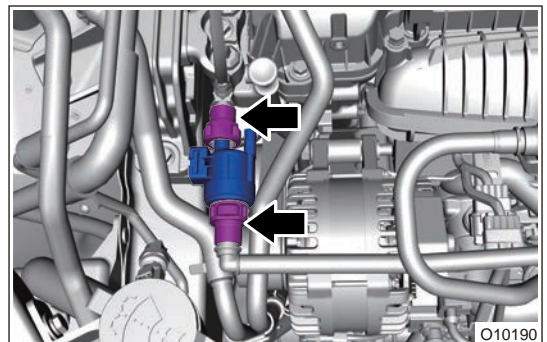
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing charcoal canister solenoid valve.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing charcoal canister solenoid valve. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the negative battery cable.
- (4) Disconnect the charcoal canister solenoid valve connector.



- (5) Disconnect charcoal canister solenoid valve inlet pipe and charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly.



- (6) Remove the charcoal canister solenoid valve assembly.

■ Inspection

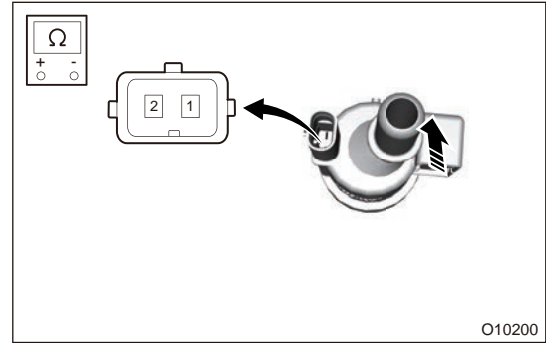
- (1) Measure the resistance of charcoal canister solenoid valve with a digital multimeter.

Measurement Temperature	Specification (Ω)
20 °C	16 \pm 2

Hint:

If resistance is not as specified, replace the charcoal canister solenoid valve assembly.

- (2) Connect the positive battery to charcoal canister solenoid valve No. 1 pin and connect the negative battery to charcoal canister solenoid valve No. 2 pin. Check if the charcoal canister solenoid valve opens. After it opened, bleed air to direction of charcoal canister solenoid valve (arrow), and air flows easily.



■ Installation

- (1) Install charcoal canister solenoid valve, and connect charcoal canister solenoid valve inlet pipe and charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe to both ends of charcoal canister solenoid valve.
- (2) Connect the charcoal canister solenoid valve connector.
- (3) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

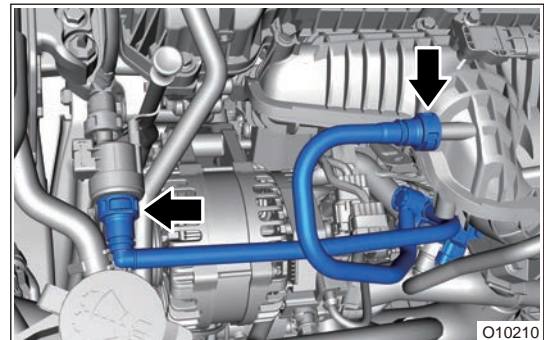
6.2 Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve Outlet Pipe Assembly

■ Removal

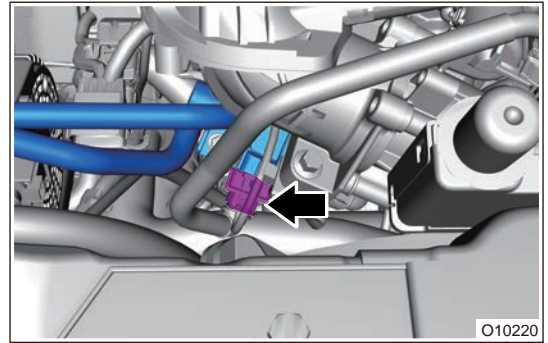
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

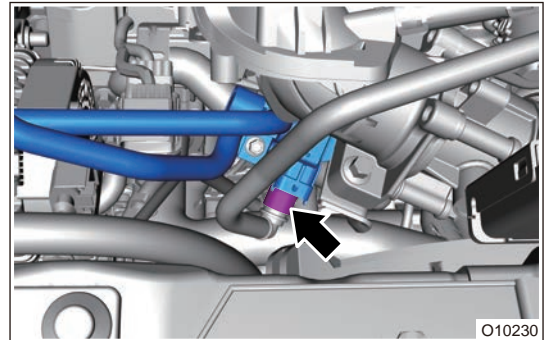
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly and charcoal canister solenoid valve.
- (5) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly and intake manifold assembly.



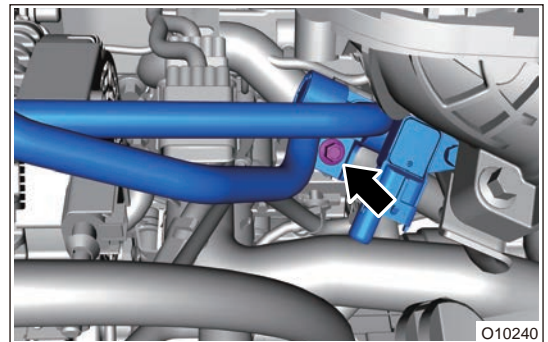
- (6) Disconnect the charcoal canister desorption pressure sensor connector.



- (7) Disconnect the charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly.



- (8) Remove 1 fixing bolt and charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly.



- (9) Remove 1 fixing bolt from charcoal canister desorption pressure sensor, separate charcoal canister desorption pressure sensor from charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly.



■ Installation

- (1) Install charcoal canister desorption pressure sensor and fix 1 bolt.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (2) Install 1 fixing bolt to charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly.

Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Connect charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly.
- (4) Connect the charcoal canister desorption pressure sensor connector.
- (5) Install the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly and intake manifold assembly.
- (6) Install the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly and charcoal canister solenoid valve.
- (7) Install the engine trim cover.
- (8) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.3 Charcoal Canister Solenoid Valve Outlet Pipe II Assembly

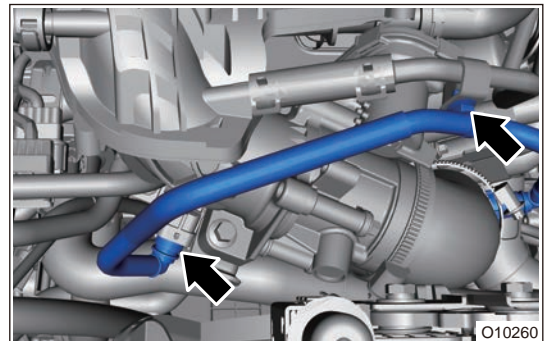
■ Removal

⚠ Caution

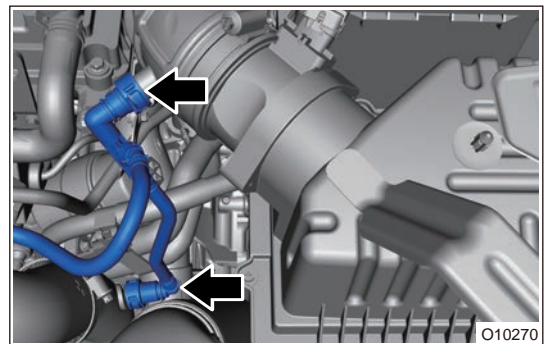
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

- (3) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly and charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly.
- (4) Disconnect 1 fixing clip from charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly.



- (5) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly and intercooler outlet pipe assembly II.
- (6) Disconnect the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly and intake hose assembly.



- (7) Remove charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly.
- (2) Install the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly and intake hose assembly.
- (3) Install the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly and intercooler outlet pipe assembly II .
- (4) Install 1 fixing clip to charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly.
- (5) Install the connection between charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe II assembly and charcoal canister solenoid valve outlet pipe assembly.
- (6) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

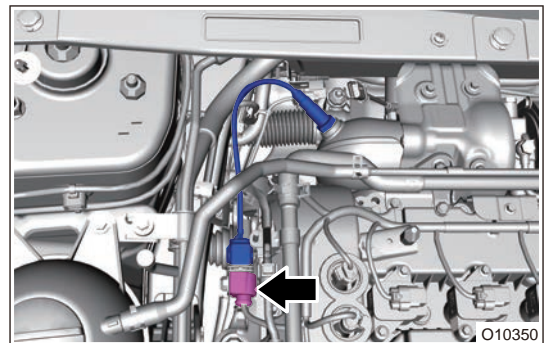
6.4 Upstream Oxygen Sensor

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing upstream oxygen sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched when removing upstream oxygen sensor.**

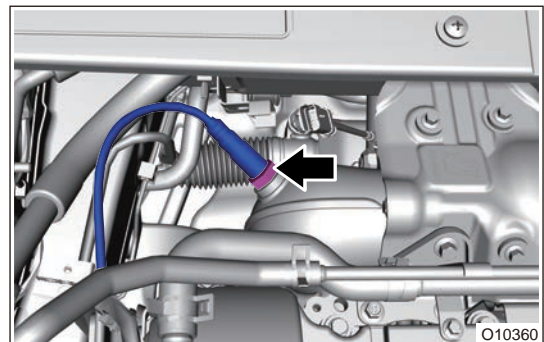
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Take off and disconnect upstream oxygen sensor connector from bracket.



- (6) Remove the upstream oxygen sensor from front part of precatlytic converter assembly.

Hint:

Remove it with special oxygen sensor socket.



■ Inspection

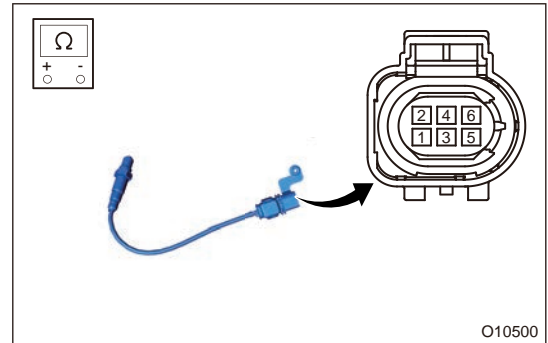
- (1) Measure the resistance of upstream oxygen sensor with a digital multimeter.

Multimeter Connection	Terminal Definition
Terminal 1	Controlled by oxygen pump
Terminal 2	(Reference ground) Analog ground
Terminal 3	Heater power supply
Terminal 4	Heater control
Terminal 5	Correction resistance
Terminal 6	Reference signal

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
Terminal 3 - Terminal 4	Normal Temperature	4 - 5 Ω
Terminal 1 - Terminal 5	Normal Temperature	114 Ω

Hint:

If result is not as specified, replace the upstream oxygen sensor.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- The specified grease must be used. Use of other grease will lead to oxygen sensor poisoning. The new sensor has been applied with grease and the grease must be applied to the mounting threads when reassembling.

Material No.: 5964080112 (120 g/pot) or 5964080145 (450 g/pot)

⚠ Warning

- If oxygen sensor falls, never install it directly.

- (1) Install upstream oxygen sensor with special oxygen sensor socket.

Torque: 45 ± 5 N·m

- (2) Install the upstream oxygen sensor connector.
- (3) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.5 Downstream Oxygen Sensor

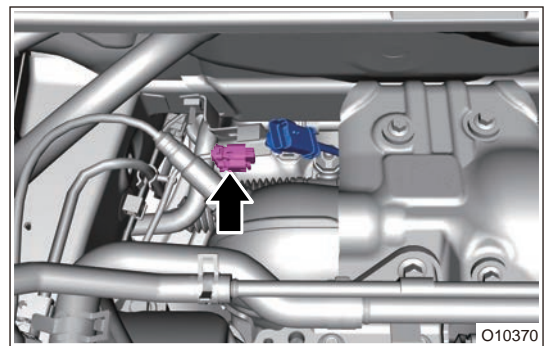
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing downstream oxygen sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched when removing downstream oxygen sensor.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.

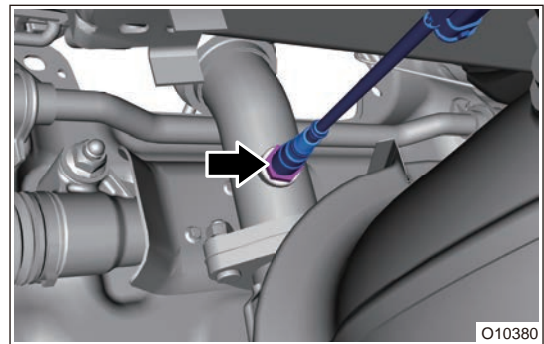
- (4) Disconnect the downstream oxygen sensor connector.



- (5) Remove the downstream oxygen sensor.

Hint:

Remove it with special oxygen sensor socket.

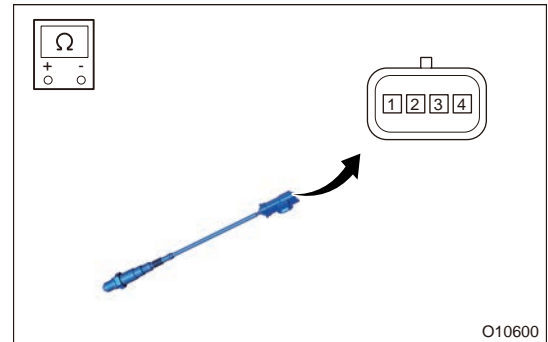


■ Inspection

- (1) Measure the resistance of upstream oxygen sensor with a digital multimeter.

Multimeter Connection	Terminal Definition
Terminal 1	Ground
Terminal 2	Signal
Terminal 3	Heat control
Terminal 4	Heater power supply

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
Terminal 3 - Terminal 4	Normal Temperature	5 - 22 Ω
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	Always	No continuity
Terminal 1 - Terminal 4		
Terminal 2 - Terminal 3		
Terminal 2 - Terminal 4		



Hint:

If result is not as specified, replace the downstream oxygen sensor.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- The specified grease must be used. Use of other grease will lead to oxygen sensor poisoning. The new sensor has been applied with grease and the grease must be applied to the mounting threads when reassembling.

Material No.: 5964080112 (120 g/pot) or 5964080145 (450 g/pot)

⚠ Warning

- If oxygen sensor falls, never install it directly.

- (1) Install downstream oxygen sensor with special oxygen sensor socket.

Torque: 45 ± 5 N·m

- (2) Install the downstream oxygen sensor connector.

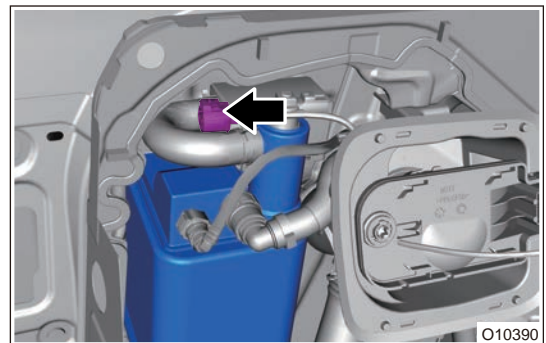
6.6 Activated Charcoal Canister Assembly

■ Removal

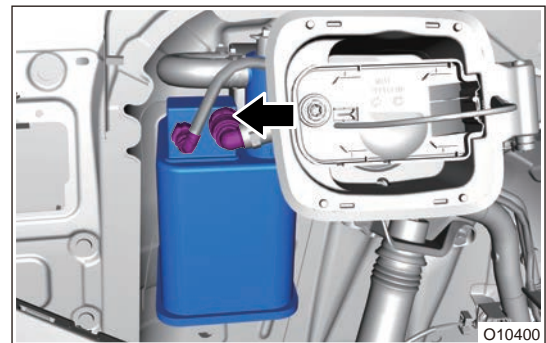
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when removing activated charcoal canister assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing activated charcoal canister assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

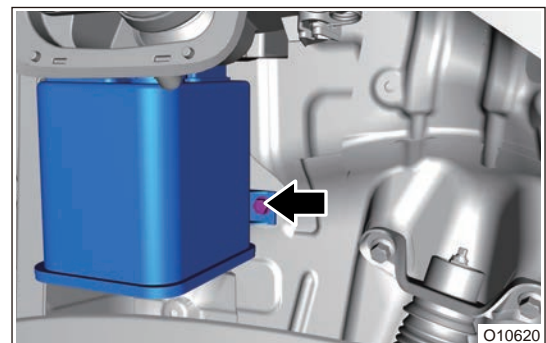
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the rear right wheel.
- (5) Remove the rear right wheel house protector assembly.
- (6) Disconnect the activated charcoal canister cut-off valve connector.



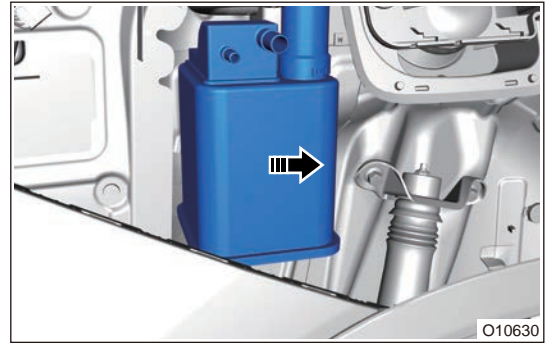
- (7) Disconnect the charcoal canister desorption pipeline and fuel breather pipe from activated charcoal canister.



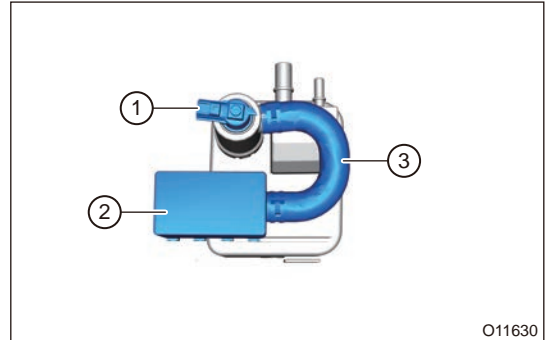
- (8) Remove 1 fixing bolt from activated charcoal canister assembly.



- (9) Remove the activated charcoal canister assembly in direction of arrow.



- (10) Remove charcoal canister cut-off valve (1), dust filter (2) and charcoal canister breather pipe (3) from activated charcoal canister assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Make sure solenoid valve can move freely and it is not stuck.

■ Installation

- (1) Install charcoal canister cut-off valve, dust filter and charcoal canister breather pipe to activated charcoal canister assembly.
 (2) Install activated charcoal canister assembly to body and tighten 1 fixing bolt.

Torque: $19 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Connect charcoal canister desorption pipe to activated charcoal canister assembly.
 (4) Connect fuel tank breather pipe to activated charcoal canister assembly.
 (5) Connect the activated charcoal canister cut-off valve connector.
 (6) Install rear right wheel house protector assembly.
 (7) Install the rear right wheel.
 (8) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.7 Dust Filter

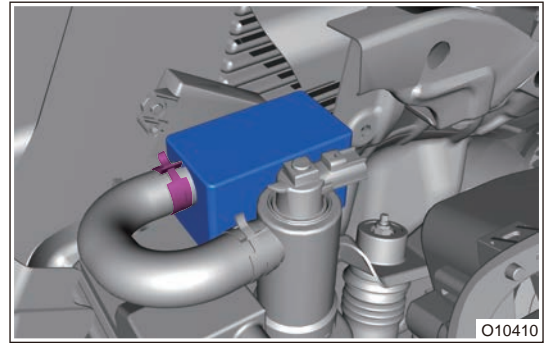
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

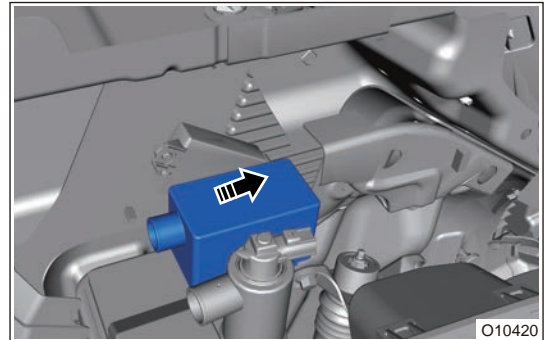
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when removing dust filter.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing dust filter. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (3) Remove the rear right wheel.
 (4) Remove the rear right wheel house protector.

- (5) Loosen elastic clamp, and disconnect connection of activated charcoal canister breather pipe and dust filter.



- (6) Remove dust filter in direction of arrow.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check dust filter for blockage, damage.

■ Installation

- (1) Install dust filter to activated charcoal canister assembly.
- (2) Connect activated charcoal canister breather pipe to dust filter.
- (3) Install rear right wheel house protector.
- (4) Install the rear right wheel.

6.8 Activated Charcoal Canister Breather Pipe Assembly

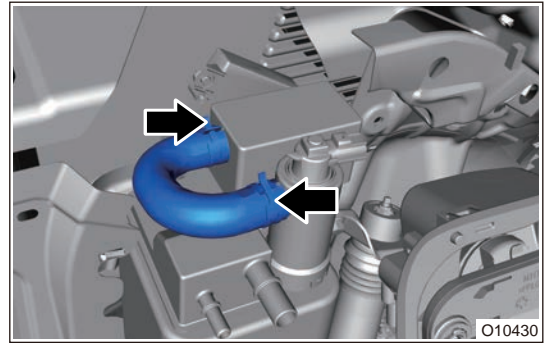
■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when removing activated charcoal canister breather pipe assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing activated charcoal canister breather pipe assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear right wheel.
- (4) Remove the rear right wheel house protector.

- (5) Loosen elastic clamp, and disconnect connection of activated charcoal canister breather pipe and activated charcoal canister cut-off valve.
- (6) Loosen elastic clamp, and disconnect connection of activated charcoal canister breather pipe and dust filter.



- (7) Remove activated charcoal canister breather pipe assembly.

■ **Inspection**

- (1) Check activated charcoal canister breather pipe for blockage, damage.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Connect activated charcoal canister breather pipe to activated charcoal canister cut-off valve and install elastic clamp.
- (2) Connect activated charcoal canister breather pipe to dust filter and install elastic clamp.
- (3) Install rear right wheel house protector.
- (4) Install the rear right wheel.

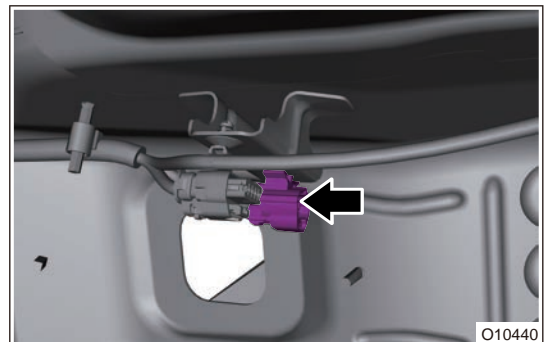
6.9 Exhaust Temperature Sensor (If Equipped)

■ **Removal**

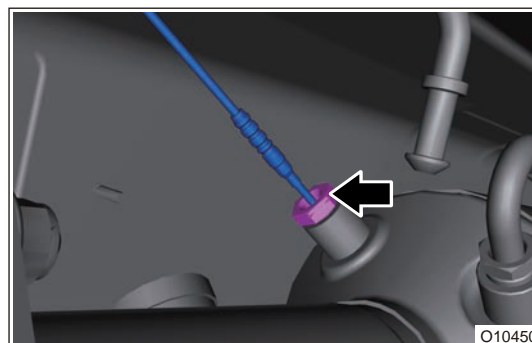
⚠ Warning

- **Temperature of exhaust system is very high when engine is running. Before removal, make sure that engine has stopped running and exhaust system has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing exhaust temperature sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (4) Disconnect the exhaust temperature sensor connector.



- (5) Remove exhaust temperature sensor from the front end of GPF.



■ Cleaning

- (1) Heating the front end of sensor, measure resistance with multimeter ohm band. The resistance should change in accordance with temperature.
- (2) Turn digital multimeter to ohm band, connect two probes to two terminals (no polarity) respectively, the normal resistance should be 200 ~ 230 Ω at normal temperature (0 ~ 40 $^{\circ}\text{C}$). If the resistance is abnormal (out of range), the performance is invalid. Abnormal conditions usually include open (- resistance is ∞) or short (resistance is 0).

Temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$)	Resistance (Ω)
-40	170.68
0	201.50
10	209.15
50	239.49
100	276.90
150	313.72
200	349.96
250	385.61
300	420.68
350	455.16
400	489.06
450	522.37
500	555.10
550	587.24
600	618.80
650	649.77
700	680.16
750	709.96
800	739.18
850	767.81
900	795.86

■ Installation

- (1) Install the exhaust temperature sensor.

Torque: 35 ± 5 N·m

- (2) Connect the exhaust temperature sensor connector.

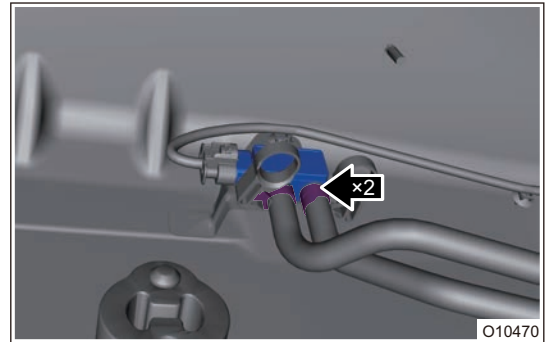
6.10 Pressure Difference Sensor (If Equipped)

■ Removal

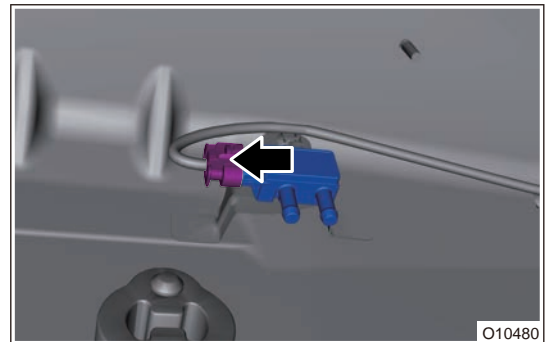
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing pressure difference sensor.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing pressure difference sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

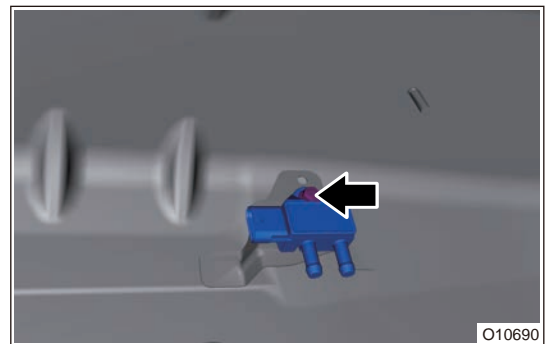
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (4) Loosen 2 elastic clamps and disconnect the connection between hose and pressure difference sensor.



- (5) Disconnect the pressure difference sensor connector.



- (6) Remove 1 fixing bolt from pressure difference sensor.



- (7) Remove the pressure difference sensor assembly carefully.

■ Inspection

- (1) Turn digital multimeter to ohm band, ground the black probe 3#, connect red probe to pins 1# and 2# respectively. It is normal that resistance is greater than 2.5 MΩ.
- (2) Connect pin 4# VDD of sensor to 5V power supply, pin 3# GND to ground, and connect output pins 1# and 2# through SENT signal collector (oscilloscope). At normal temperature ($30 \pm 10^\circ$) and normal pressure (101 kpa \pm 5 kpa), the output value in decimal number 1184 ~ 1423 is normal.

Hint:

SENT is the abbreviation of Single Edge Nibble Transmission. As a point-to-point and one-way transmission scheme launched by Society of Automotive Engineers (SAE), it is used to transmit HD sensor data between vehicle sensor and electronic control unit (ECU). Sensor data is transmitted through a series of pulse sequence between two falling periods. SENT provides a reference calibration pulse at the beginning of signal and provides a check bit at the end. The length of message varies with half bit value. As a new interface standard of vehicle sensor, compared with analog output and PWM output, SENT (SAE J2716) has a good EMC performance with low cost which saves wire harness and pin connector, and it can transmit DTC, so that sensor system has an excellent malfunction diagnosis ability.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 1 fixing bolt to pressure difference sensor.
Torque: 9 ± 1.5 N·m
- (2) Connect the differential difference sensor connector.
- (3) Connect hose to pressure difference sensor and install elastic clamp.

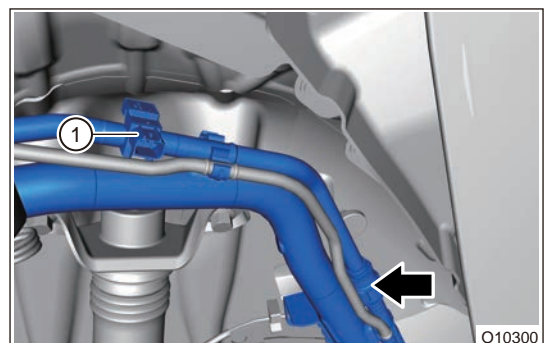
6.11 Fuel Tank Pressure Sensor

■ Removal

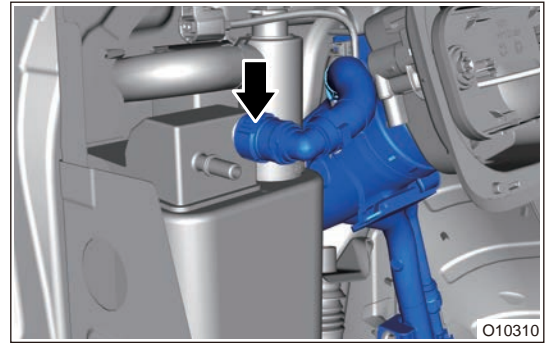
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing fuel tank pressure sensor.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing fuel tank pressure sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear right wheel.
- (4) Remove the rear right wheel house protector.
- (5) Disconnect the fuel tank pressure sensor connector (1).
- (6) Disconnect the pipeline.



(7) Disconnect the activated charcoal canister assembly.



(8) Remove fuel tank pressure sensor.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Before connecting the hose, check if there is any damage or foreign matter on the hose or joint.**
- **When pipe is connected using quick connector, pay attention to the fitting size and direction of the connector. During assembly, install the male connector into place along the axis direction of quick connector until it is bounced into mechanically and a "click" sound is heard. In order to check if the installation is in good condition, pull it forcibly in reverse direction.**

- (1) Connect each pipeline in place.
- (2) Connect the fuel tank pressure sensor connector.
- (3) Install rear right wheel house protector.
- (4) Install the rear right wheel.

ENGINE

9.1	COOLING SYSTEM.....	516
1	Warning and Precaution.....	516
1.1	Warning.....	516
1.2	Precaution.....	516
2	System Overview	516
2.1	System Description.....	516
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	517
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	518
3	System Components Description.....	519
3.1	Expansion Tank.....	519
3.2	Radiator Assembly.....	519
3.3	Cooling Fan Assembly	519
3.4	Water Pump Assembly	520
3.5	Electronic Thermostat.....	520
3.6	Coolant Temperature Sensor.....	520
4	Special Tool and Equipment.....	521
4.1	General Tool.....	521
5	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	521
5.1	Problem Symptoms Table	521
6	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE.....	522
6.1	Cooling System Leakage Test	522
6.2	Coolant Freezing Point Test	523
6.3	Draining and Adding Coolant	524
6.4	Expansion Tank Body	525
6.5	Expansion Tank Inlet Pipe	528
6.6	Cooler Upper Bracket Assembly	529
6.7	Front Plastic End Assembly	531
6.8	Radiator Assembly.....	536
6.9	Cooling Fan Assembly	538
6.10	Water Pump Module Assembly.....	539
6.11	Water Pump Assembly	541
6.12	Electronic Thermostat Assembly	542
6.13	Coolant Temperature Sensor.....	544
6.14	Electric Water Pump and Bracket.....	545

9.1 COOLING SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.
- (2) If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

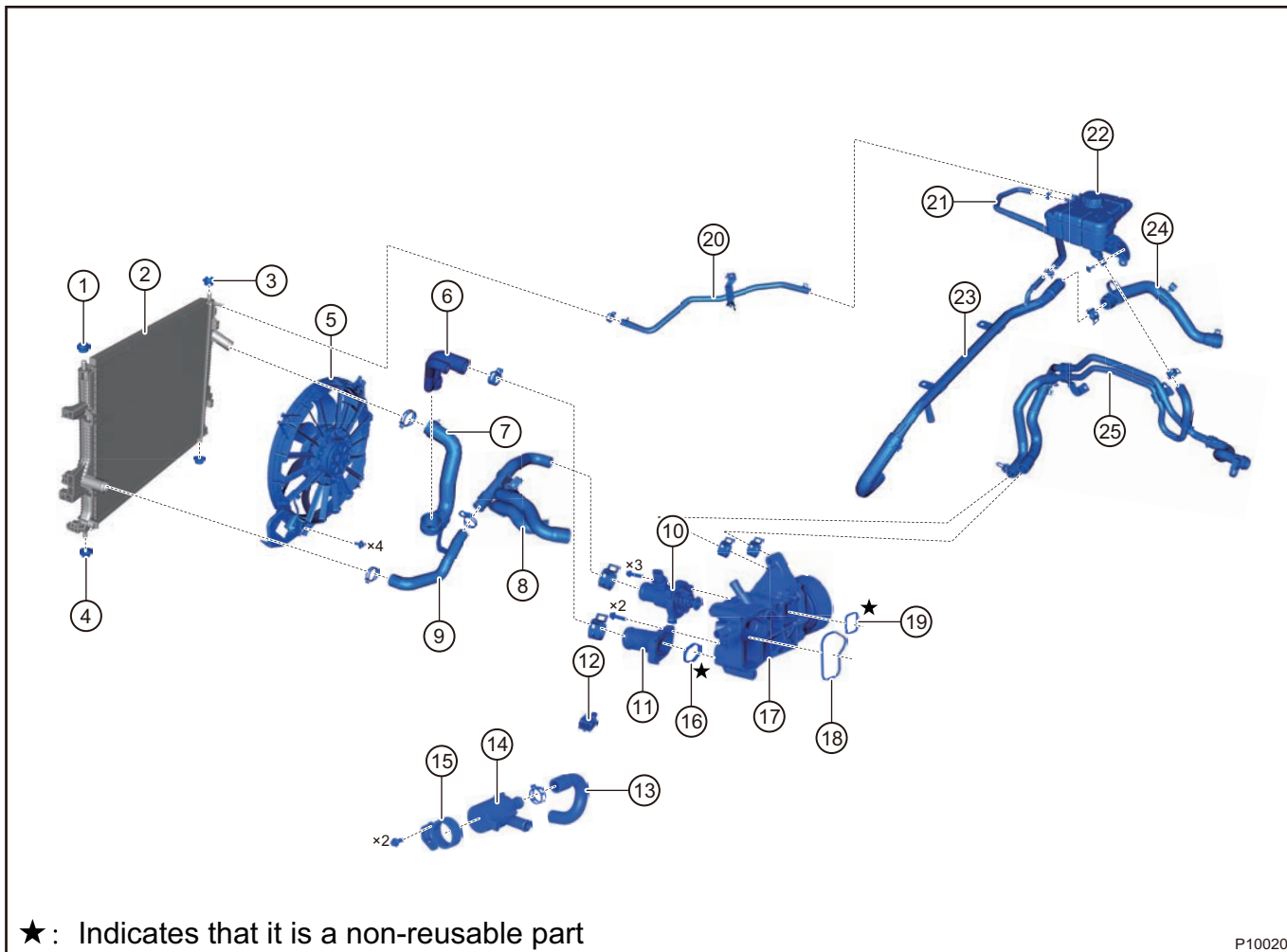
- (1) When testing cooling system, please pressurize the system to specified pressure. Otherwise, system components may be damaged.
- (2) DO NOT mix different colors or types of coolant.
- (3) Please select coolant which is suitable for local climate in different areas.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Engine cooling system adjusts engine operating temperature by the flow of coolant and makes engine operate normally under various operating conditions. And effectively improve the service life and fuel economy of the engine.

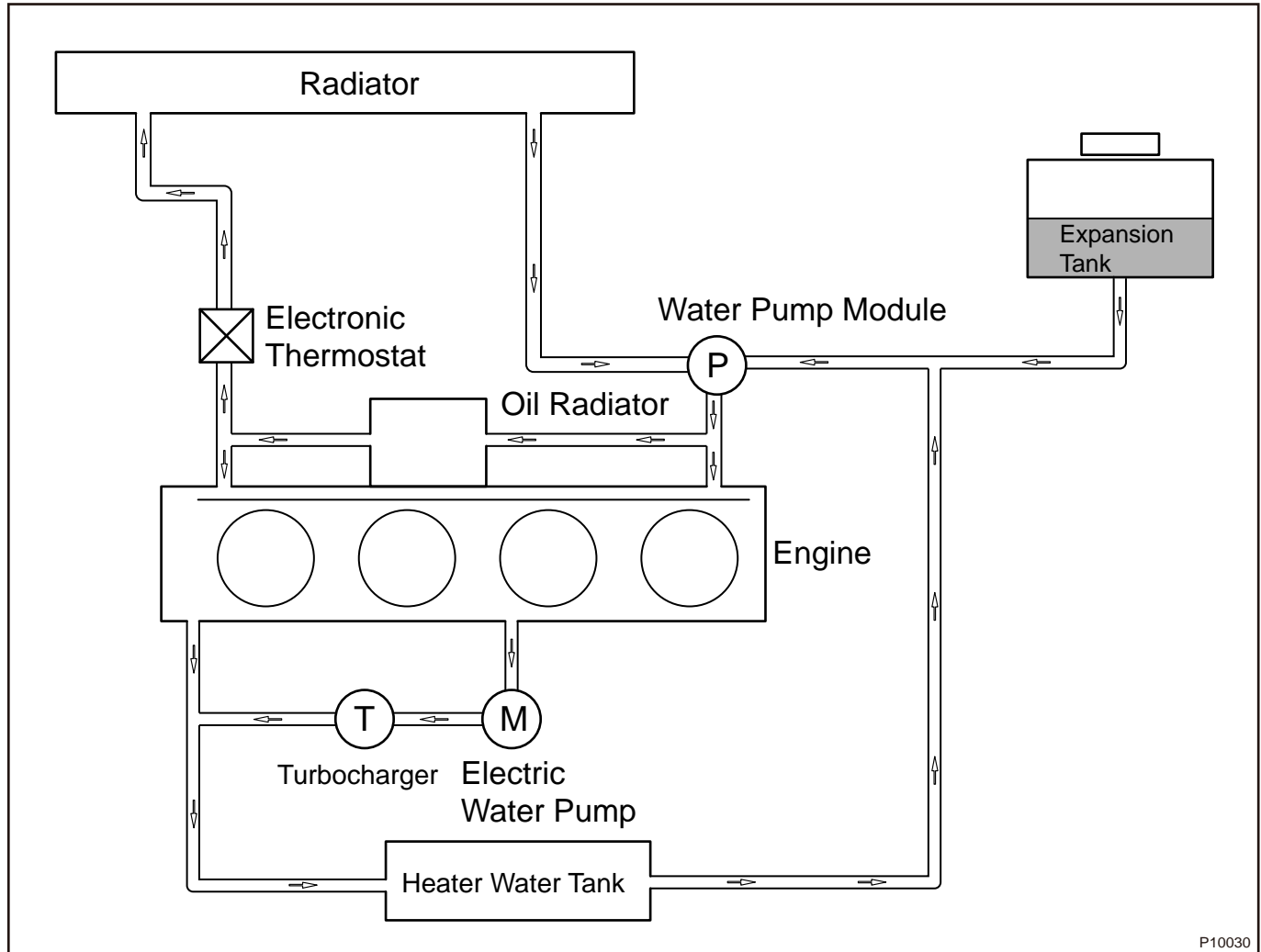
2.2 System Components Diagram



P10020

1	Rubber Bushing	14	Electric Water Pump
2	Radiator Assembly	15	Electric Water Pump Bracket
3	Rubber Bushing	16	Seal Ring
4	Rubber Cushion	17	Water Pump Module
5	Cooling Fan Assembly	18	Seal Ring
6	Engine Outlet Pipe Assembly - Rear	19	Seal Ring
7	Engine Outlet Pipe Assembly - Front	20	Radiator Outlet Pipe Assembly
8	Engine Inlet Pipe Assembly - Rear	21	Engine Discharge Pipe
9	Engine Inlet Pipe Assembly- Front	22	Expansion Tank
10	Electronic Thermostat	23	Cooling Pipe Assembly
11	Engine Outlet Port Cover	24	Heating Inlet Pipe
12	Coolant Temperature Sensor	25	Expansion Tank Inlet Pipe
13	Inlet Hose - Electric Water Pump		

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



P10030

After engine operates, the water pump starts operating. Coolant begins to flow circularly. Displacement of water pump depends on engine speed. The higher the speed, the larger the displacement, and vice versa. When the coolant temperature does not reach the opening temperature of electronic thermostat, the engine coolant circulates in cylinder block, the cylinder head, turbocharger and warm air water tank under the operation of water pump, and the coolant does not radiate through the radiator. When coolant temperature reaches the opening temperature of electronic thermostat, coolant flowing out of cylinder block enters radiator for radiating. It then returns to cylinder block for circulation by water pump. Due to radiating in radiator, engine coolant temperature decreases quickly to prevent engine from overheating.

3 System Components Description

3.1 Expansion Tank

■ Main Function

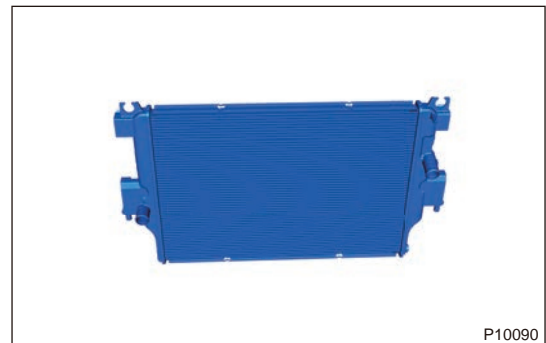
The expansion tank is an integral part of the vehicle cooling system. When the engine is running, the coolant will circulate continuously in the cooling water channel, and will flow through the expansion tank at halfway. If the pressure is too high or the coolant is too much, the excess gas and coolant will flow out of the bypass water channel of the expansion tank to avoid the high pressure of the cooling system.



3.2 Radiator Assembly

■ Main Function

The radiator is composed of three parts: Inlet chamber, outlet chamber and radiator core. The coolant flows in the radiator core and the air flows outside the radiator core. The hot coolant cools down because radiating heat to air, and the cold air heats up because absorbing the heat from the coolant, so the radiator is a heat exchanger.



3.3 Cooling Fan Assembly

■ Main Function

The rotation of radiator fan helps to radiate the radiator. Fan speed is controlled by ECU according to coolant temperature.



3.4 Water Pump Assembly

■ Main Function

Pressurize coolant to ensure it can circulate in cooling system. Its displacement varies with engine speed.



P10110

3.5 Electronic Thermostat

■ Main Function

The electronic thermostat can calculate the target temperature according to engine running speed, load state, intake air temperature, coolant temperature, etc., accurately regulate the coolant temperature to ensure that the engine always works at a reasonable temperature. According to the calculated value of the sensor signal, ECU provides the signal working voltage to heating resistance element in electronic thermostat, which makes the paraffin expand and displace. Through this displacement, the temperature regulating unit mechanically adjusts the large circulation and small circulation of water temperature.

The operation of electronic thermostat shall meet the following conditions at the same time:

- (1) Under low speed and low load, electronic thermostat controls to open at 105 °C to improve fuel economy.
- (2) Under high speed and high load, electronic thermostat controls to open at 90 °C to ensure engine safety.
- (3) If there is fault in line, electronic thermostat can be opened mechanically. Initially opening temperature: 100 °C ± 2 °C, fully opening temperature: 110 °C ± 2 °C.
- (4) Opening stroke of thermostat: 8mm.



P10120

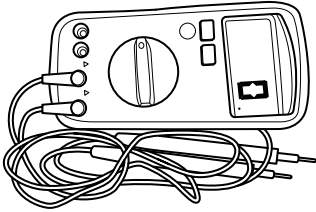
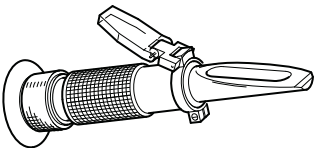
3.6 Coolant Temperature Sensor

■ Main Function

NTC thermistor packaged inside temperature sensor is used for coolant temperature sensor, its resistance changes in accordance with ambient temperature, thus accurately reflecting the small changes in coolant temperature. The temperature of contact medium can be reflected by measuring its output resistance, and the signals from both terminals of resistor are output to ECM. Engine coolant temperature can be obtained by ECU according to output signal of the sensor, thus judging the engine operating condition.

4 Special Tool and Equipment

4.1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Freezing Point Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00005</p>

5 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

5.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Cooling System

Symptom	Possible Cause
Insufficient coolant	Coolant pipe (deteriorated and leaks)
	Expansion tank (leakage)
	Radiator assembly (leakage)
	Heater core (leakage)
	Electronic thermostat improperly sealed
	Water pump (improperly sealed)
	Engine cylinder head gasket (damaged)
	Engine cylinder head (cracked and Leakage)
Engine overheating	Engine cylinder block (water jacket leaks and cylinder block cracked)
	Low coolant level
	Air resistance exists in cooling pipe

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Expansion luggage cap damaged
	ECU fault
	Cooling fan assembly
	Electronic thermostat
	Radiator assembly
	Coolant temperature sensor
Engine overcooling	Electronic thermostat
	Cooling fan
Unable to reach normal engine temperature	Cooling fan (constantly operating)
	Electronic thermostat
Cooling fan does not operate or operate abnormally	Cooling fan
	Cooling fan controller
	Fan controller wire harness
	ECU fault

6 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

6.1 Cooling System Leakage Test

■ Test Procedures

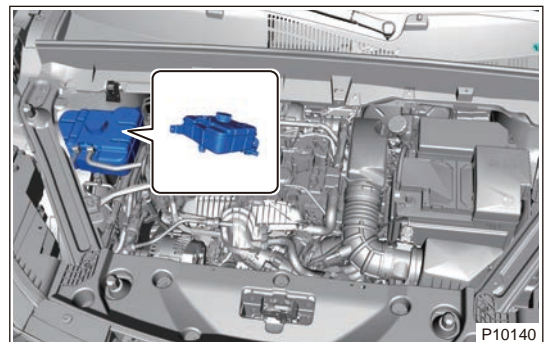
Warning

- Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.

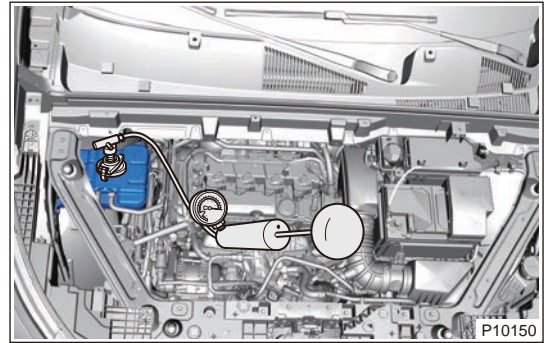
Caution

- When testing cooling system, please pressurize the system to specified pressure. Otherwise, system components may be damaged.
- Before testing cooling system, do not perform operation until coolant temperature drops to normal level. Otherwise, it may cause scald.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Check if coolant level is between "MAX" and "MIN" lines. If coolant level is below "MIN" line, add coolant.



- (3) Connect cooling system pressure tester to coolant pressure release cap opening (expansion tank body cap opening) and tighten it slowly.



⚠ Caution

- **Make sure there is no leakage in connecting part of coolant system pressure tester, in order to avoid pressure leakage during test.**

- (4) Pressurize cooling system to 1.2 bar with the cooling system pressure tester, and then observe the pressure changes. If system pressure does not drop within 2 minutes, it indicates there is no leakage in system. If pressure changes greatly, it indicates that there is a leakage in system; find the leaking area and perform troubleshooting.

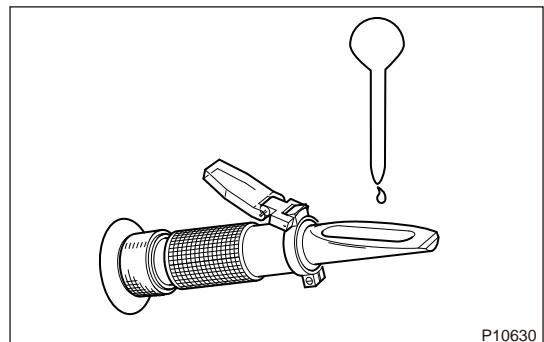
6.2 Coolant Freezing Point Test

■ Test Procedures

⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT mix different colors or types of coolant.**
- **Please select coolant which is suitable for local climate in different areas.**
- **Please read measured value at the scale line. In order to distinguish the scale line more clearly, drip a drop of water on the glass of freezing point tester with a pipette, then the scale line can be clearly distinguished via a "waterline" .**

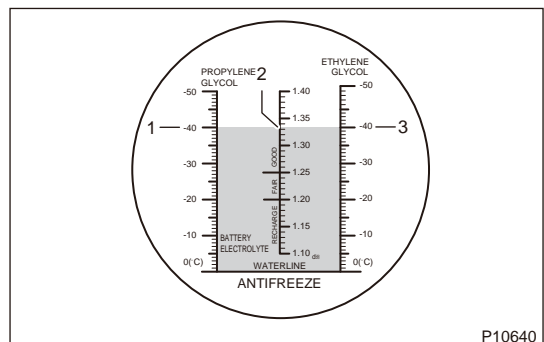
- (1) As shown in illustration, drip a drop of coolant on the glass of freezing point tester with a pipette, and then observe freezing point value of coolant.



- (2) As shown in illustration, observe scale 3 of freezing point tester to read ethylene glycol coolant freezing point value. The freezing point value must be kept at -40°C (value varies with geography, climate or freezing point).

Hint:

Scale 1 is used to measure the freezing point value of propylene glycol coolant, and scale 2 is used to measure the battery electrolyte concentration.



- (3) If freezing point is beyond the specified value, replace the coolant.

6.3 Draining and Adding Coolant

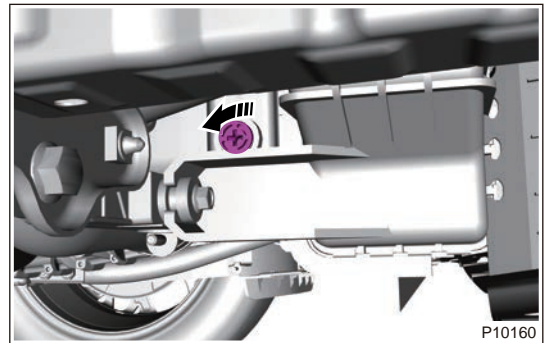
■ Draining Coolant

⚠ Warning

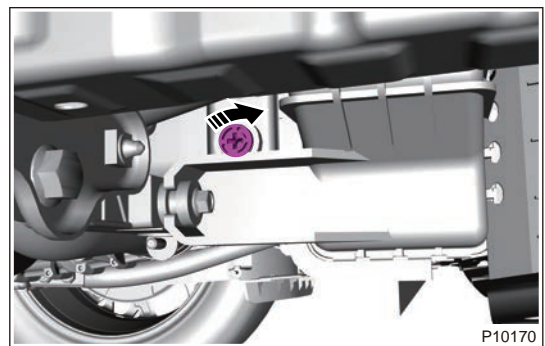
- **Never open expansion tank cap when engine is operating or temperature is high. Otherwise, it may cause scald.**
- **Be careful when opening expansion tank cap, the high-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.**
- **Wait until the engine has cooled down, and then cover the expansion tank cap with a piece of damp cloth and turn it one turn slowly (counterclockwise). Step back when releasing cooling system pressure. After confirming that all pressure has been released, turn the pressure release cap with cloth covered and remove it.**
- **Violating above descriptions may cause serious personal injury.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the expansion tank cap when engine temperature is low.
- (4) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.

- (5) Put a coolant collector under the vehicle, rotate the radiator drain cock plug counterclockwise as shown in figure and drain the coolant in radiator and expansion tank.



- (6) After coolant stops flowing, re-tighten the radiator drain cock plug.



⚠ Caution

- **Tighten drain cock plug to prevent leakage.**
- **Wasted coolant should be handled by the specialized department according to local laws and regulations. Never discard it at will.**

■ Adding Coolant

Warning

- If it is necessary to add coolant when engine is hot, loosen expansion tank cap slightly first to release internal pressure and loosen the cap completely after waiting for a while, and then add coolant.
- If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.

■ Coolant Capacity

Description	Capacity (L)
Coolant	7.95

- (1) Open expansion tank body cap until add coolant until coolant level reaches the “MAX” line.
- (2) Tighten expansion tank body cap, start and run engine. Maintain engine speed between 2000 and 2500 rpm to warm up the engine until cooling fan operates.

Caution

- If there is no coolant in expansion tank body after engine just starts, perform the followings: Stop the engine; wait until coolant cools down; add coolant to "MAX" line on expansion tank; run the engine at 2500 rpm until coolant level becomes stable.

- (3) Stop engine and wait until coolant temperature drops to the ambient temperature. Check that coolant level is between “MAX” and “MIN” lines. If coolant level is below the “MIN” line, repeat all the above procedures. Keep the coolant level between “MAX” and “MIN” lines.
- (4) Check each pipe for leaks, lack of antifreeze, if so, handle it.

Caution

- Do not open the expansion tank cap at high engine temperature to prevent burns.

6.4 Expansion Tank Body

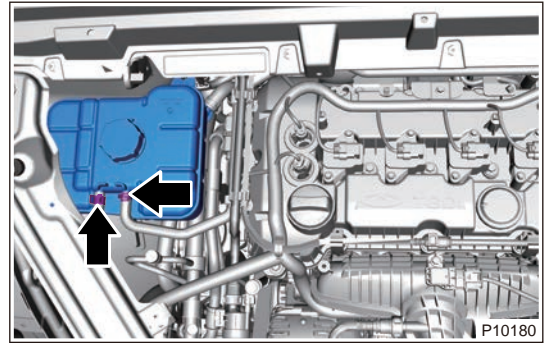
■ Removal

Warning

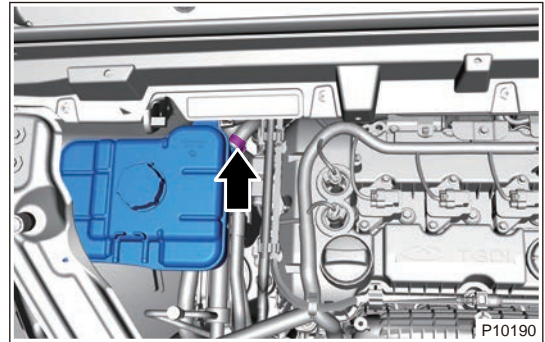
- Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank body cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.
- If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Drain the coolant.

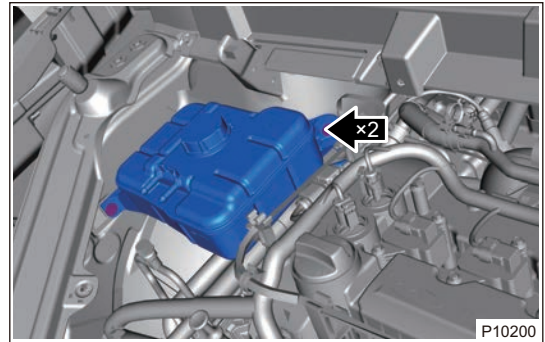
- (5) Loosen the elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between radiator discharge pipe and expansion tank.
- (6) Loosen the elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between engine discharge pipe and expansion tank.



- (7) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between inlet pipe and expansion tank.



- (8) Remove 2 fixing bolts from expansion tank.



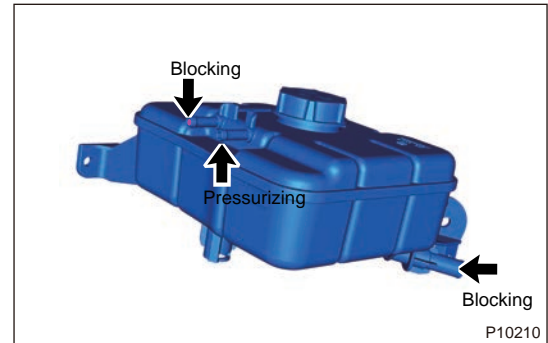
- (9) Remove the expansion tank assembly carefully.

■ **Inspect the expansion tank**

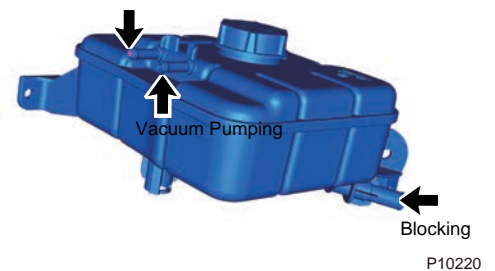
- (1) Check that the expansion tank is welded firmly, and there are no defects such as fractures and cracks at the weld.
- (2) The expansion tank should be colorless and transparent. During use of vehicle, expansion tank assembly is not allowed to have discoloration that affects the appearance and function, and scale line should be clearly visible.

■ Inspect the expansion tank

- (1) Block two holes of expansion tank and pressurize one of them. When pressure reaches the opening pressure of relief valve (120 - 150 kpa), the pressure in expansion tank should be maintained at the relief valve opening pressure value.



- (2) Block two holes of expansion tank and vacuumize one of them. When vacuum pressure reaches the opening pressure of vacuum valve (-2 - 10 kpa), vacuum pressure in expansion tank should be maintained at the vacuum valve opening pressure value.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- When connecting engine discharge pipe and expansion tank body, align the “±” mark on pipe port with boss, and align center position of elastic clamp tabs with “I” position of “±” mark, align the edge of elastic clamp with lower edge of “=” position of “±” mark.
- When connecting engine inlet pipe and expansion tank body, align the “±” mark on pipe port with boss, and align center position of elastic clamp tab with “I” position of “±” mark, align the edge of elastic clamp with lower edge of “=” position of “±” mark.
- When connecting radiator discharge pipe | and expansion tank body, align the “⊥” mark on pipe port with boss, and align center position of elastic clamp tabs with “I” position of “⊥” mark, align the edge of elastic clamp with lower edge of “=” position of “⊥” mark.
- Check that coolant has been added to the specified level after installation.

- (1) Install fixing bolts to expansion tank assembly.

Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Connect expansion tank inlet pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (3) Connect radiator discharge pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (4) Connect radiator to expansion tank water pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (5) Add the coolant.
- (6) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.5 Expansion Tank Inlet Pipe

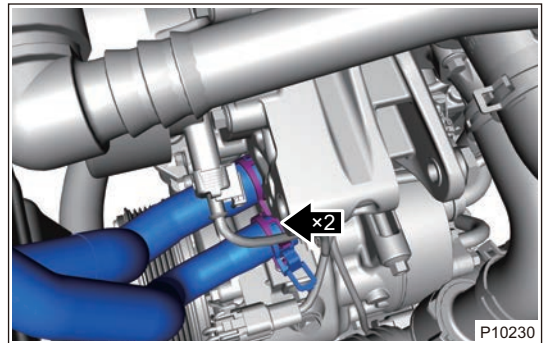
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

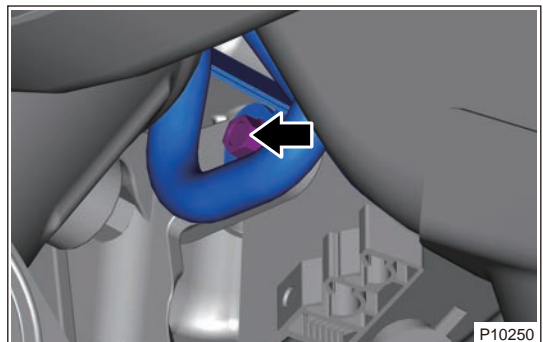
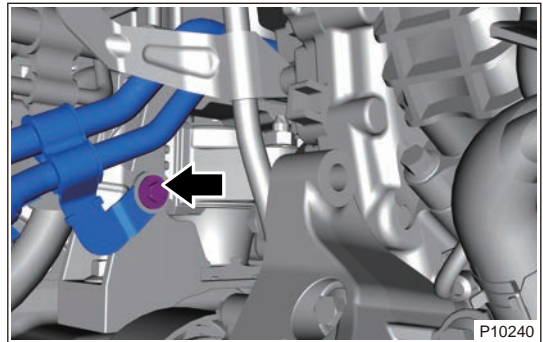
- Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.
- If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Drain the coolant.

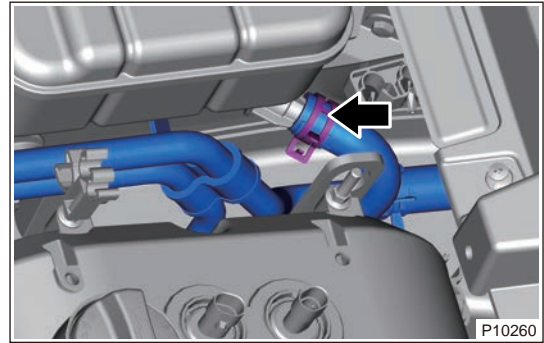
- (4) Loosen 2 elastic clamps and disconnect the connection between expansion tank inlet pipe and water pump module.



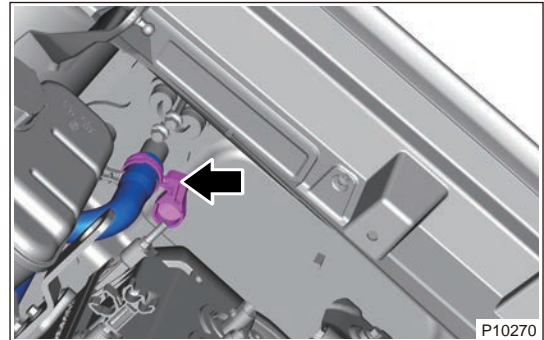
- (5) Remove 2 fixing bolts and expansion tank inlet pipe.



- (6) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between expansion tank inlet pipe and expansion tank assembly.



- (7) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect connection between expansion tank inlet pipe and warm air water tank.



- (8) Remove expansion tank inlet pipe.

■ Inspection

Check expansion tank inlet pipe for damage or crack, and replace it as necessary.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts to expansion tank inlet pipe.

Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m

- (2) Connect expansion tank inlet pipe and warm air water tank, install elastic clamp.
 (3) Connect expansion tank inlet pipe and expansion tank assembly, install elastic clamp.
 (4) Connect expansion tank inlet pipe and water pump module, install 2 elastic clamps.
 (5) Add the coolant.
 (6) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

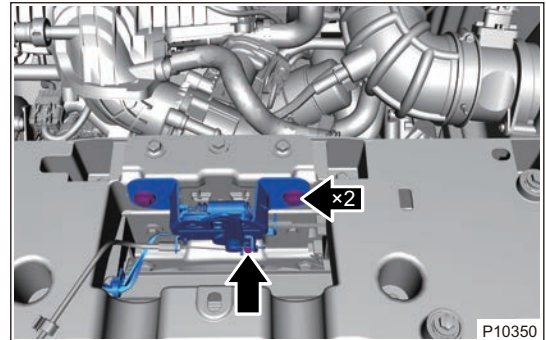
6.6 Cooler Upper Bracket Assembly

■ Removal

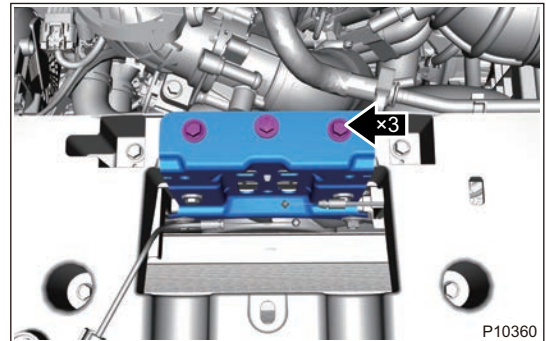
⚠ Warning

- Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing the front plastic end.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing the front plastic end. Be careful not to operate roughly.

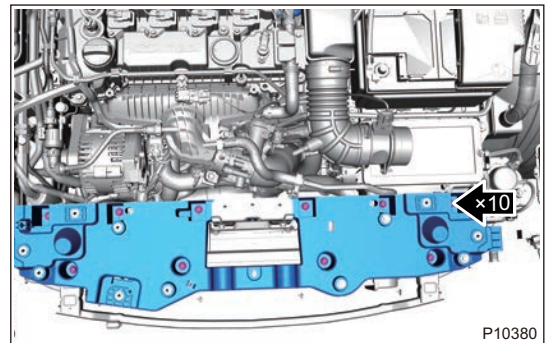
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (6) Remove the right headlight assembly.
- (7) Remove the left headlight assembly.
- (8) Remove the right headlight crossmember assembly.
- (9) Remove the left headlight crossmember assembly.
- (10) Remove 2 fixing bolts from engine hood lock assembly and disengage cable.



- (11) Remove 3 fixing bolts from engine hood lock bracket.



- (12) Remove 10 fixing bolts from cooler upper bracket.



- (13) Remove cooler upper bracket assembly carefully.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 10 fixing bolts to cooler upper bracket.
- (2) Install 3 fixing bolts to engine hood lock bracket.
- (3) Install 2 fixing bolts to engine hood lock assembly and secure cable in place.

- (4) Install the left and right headlight crossmember assembly.
- (5) Install the left and right headlight assembly.
- (6) Install front bumper assembly.
- (7) Install the air filter assembly.
- (8) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.7 Front Plastic End Assembly

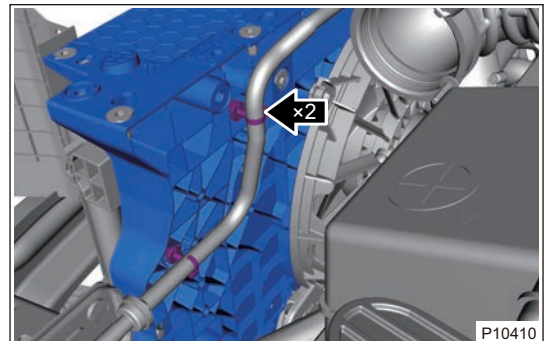
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

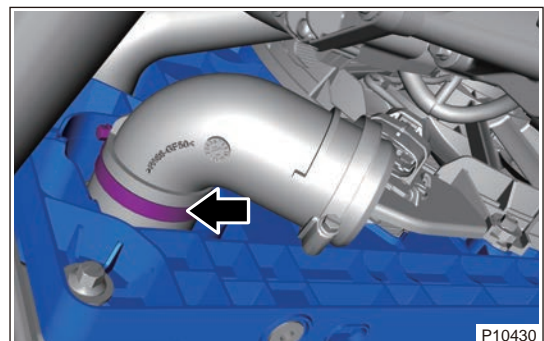
- Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing the front plastic end.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing the front plastic end. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (6) Remove the right headlight assembly.
- (7) Remove the left headlight assembly.
- (8) Remove the right headlight crossmember assembly.
- (9) Remove the left headlight crossmember assembly.
- (10) Remove cooler upper bracket assembly.
- (11) Drain the coolant.
- (12) Recover the refrigerant.

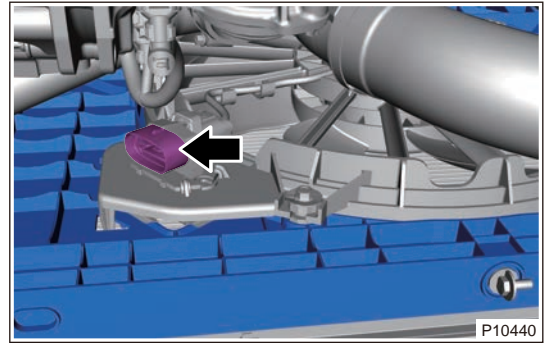
- (13) Disengage 2 fixing clips from vacuum brake pipe and front plastic end.



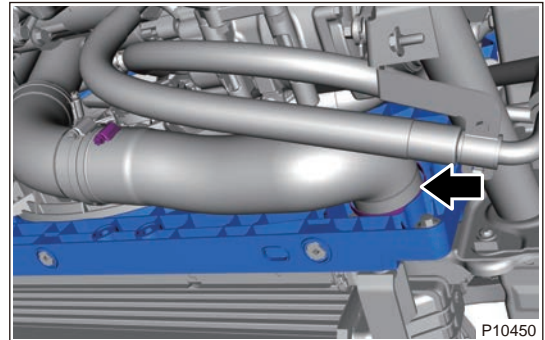
- (14) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect intercooler intake pipe.



(15) Disconnect the cooling fan assembly.

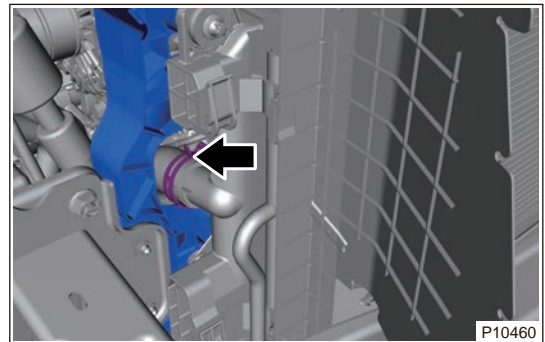


(16) Loosen worm clamp and disconnect intercooler outlet pipe assembly I.

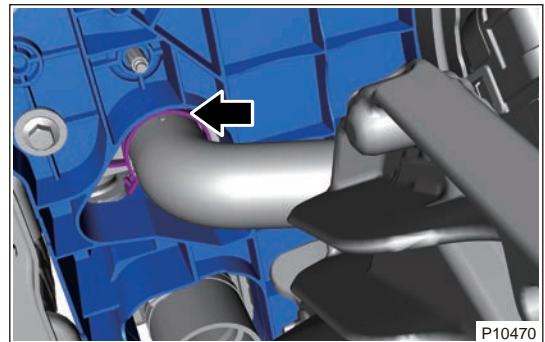


(17) Disconnect the condenser pipeline.

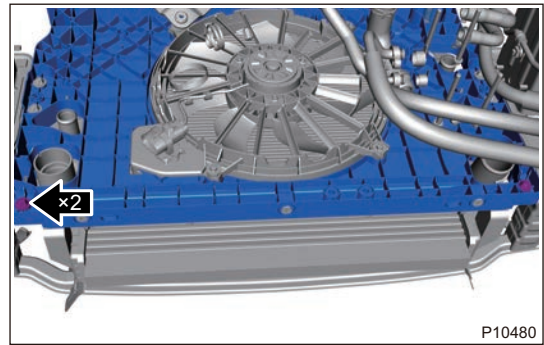
(18) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect engine outlet pipe connection.



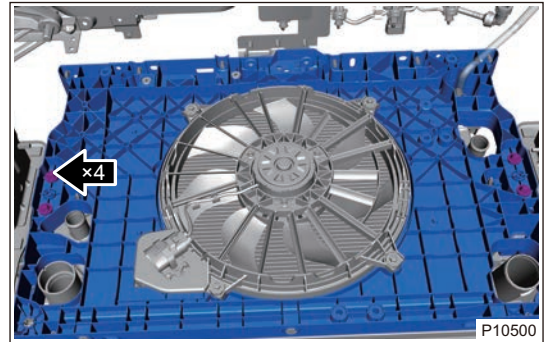
(19) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect engine inlet pipe connection.



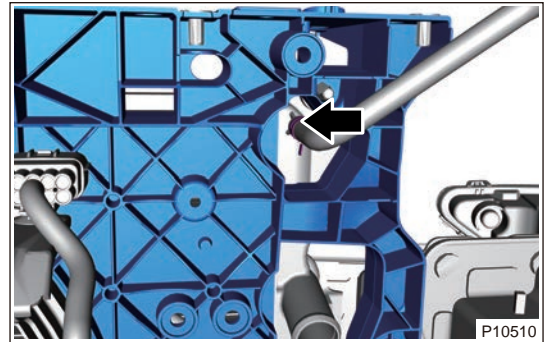
(20) Remove 2 fixing bolts from lower support beam and front plastic end.



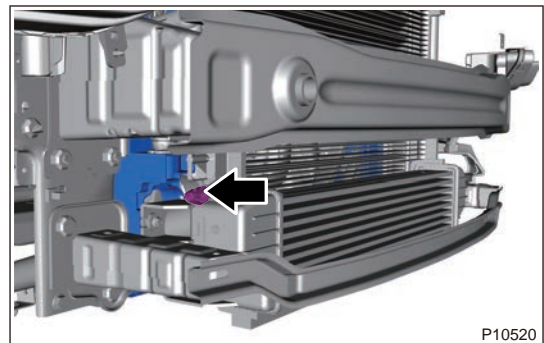
(21) Remove 4 fixing bolts from front upper impact beam assembly.



(22) Loosen the elastic clamp and disconnect the radiator discharge pipe.



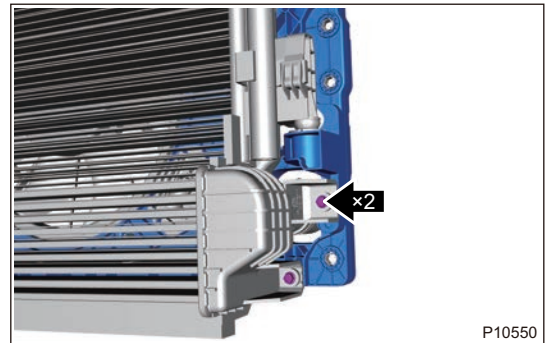
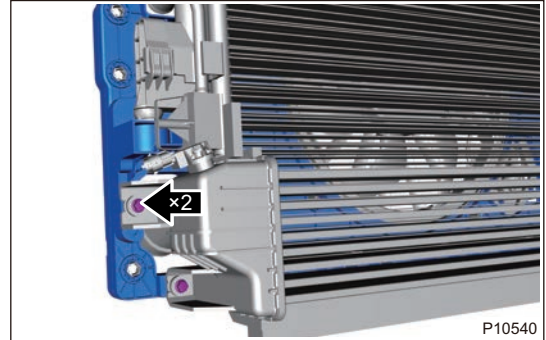
(23) Disconnect the boost pressure sensor connector.



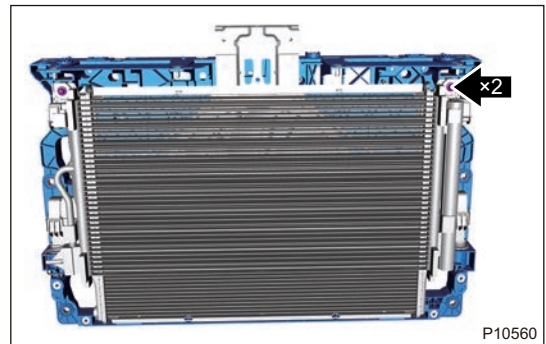
(24) Remove front plastic end and cooling module assembly.



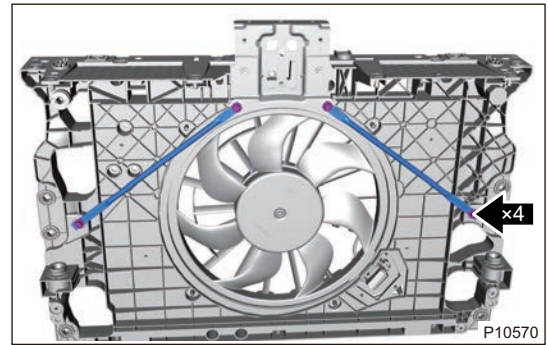
(25) Remove 4 fixing bolts from front plastic end and intercooler assembly.



(26) Remove 2 hexagon flange bolts and cooling module assembly carefully.



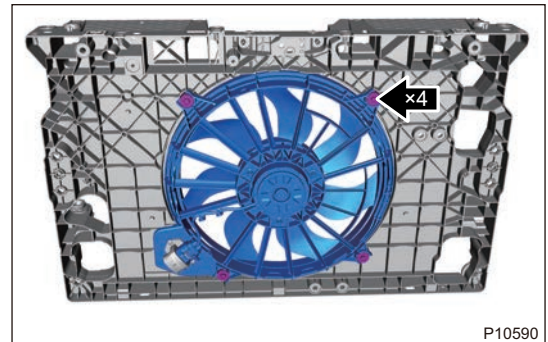
- (27) Remove 4 fixing bolts from front end bracket reinforcement lever and front plastic end, and remove front end bracket reinforcement lever.



- (28) Remove 2 fixing bolts from engine hood lock bracket and remove engine hood lock bracket.



- (29) Remove 4 fixing bolts and cooling fan assembly.



■ Installation

- (1) Install cooling fan assembly to front plastic end and tighten 4 fixing bolts.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts to engine hood lock bracket.
- (3) Install front end bracket reinforcement lever and tighten 4 fixing bolts.
- (4) Install cooling module to front plastic end, and tighten 2 fixing bolts.
- (5) Install Intercooler assembly to front plastic end and tighten 4 fixing bolts.
- (6) Install and tighten 4 fixing bolts to upper impact beam.
- (7) Install and tighten 2 fixing bolts to lower support beam.
- (8) Connect boost pressure sensor.
- (9) Connect intercooler pipeline.
- (10) Connect condenser pipeline.
- (11) Connect radiator pipeline.
- (12) Connect the cooling fan connector.
- (13) Install cooler upper bracket assembly.
- (14) Install the left and right headlight crossmember assembly separately.
- (15) Install the left and right headlight assembly separately.
- (16) Install front bumper assembly.
- (17) Install the A/C filter assembly.
- (18) Add the coolant.
- (19) Vacuum pumping/refrigerant recharging
- (20) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.8 Radiator Assembly

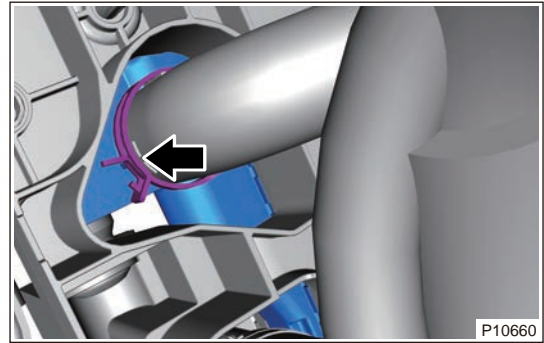
■ Removal

Warning

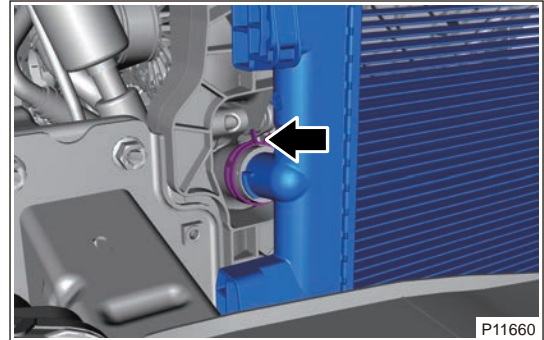
- **Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing radiator assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the radiator assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (6) Remove the right headlight assembly.
- (7) Remove the left headlight assembly.
- (8) Remove the right headlight crossmember assembly.
- (9) Remove the left headlight crossmember assembly.
- (10) Remove cooler upper bracket assembly.
- (11) Drain the coolant.
- (12) Recover the refrigerant.
- (13) Remove the condenser assembly.

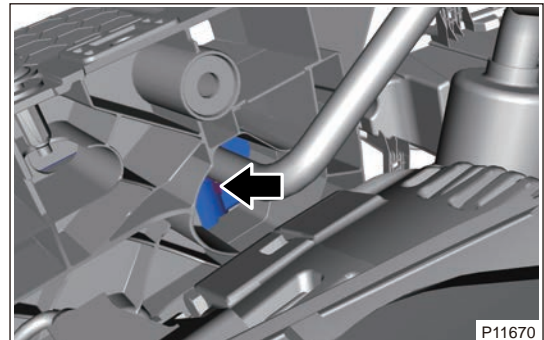
- (14) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect engine inlet pipe connection.



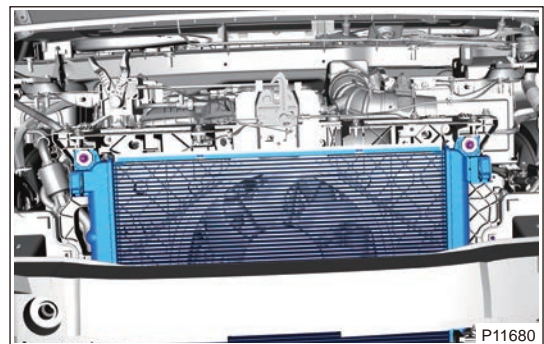
- (15) Loosen elastic clamps and disconnect engine outlet pipe connection.



- (16) Loosen the elastic clamp and disconnect the radiator discharge pipe.



- (17) Remove 2 fixing bolts and radiator assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Appearance inspection: Radiator is not allowed to be impacted and damaged, the fins are not allowed to be lodged and deformed. No residue is allowed inside the assembly and its section should smooth and flat.
- (2) Sealing inspection: Block water inlet and water outlet with expansion rubber plug, inject 30 - 80 KP compressed air to radiator. Soak radiator assembly into water tank, if there are bubbles, it indicates there is leakage in radiator assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Remove 2 fixing bolts to cooling fan assembly.
- (2) Connect radiator discharge pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (3) Connect engine inlet pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (4) Connect engine outlet pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (5) Install condenser assembly.
- (6) Install cooler upper bracket assembly.
- (7) Install the left headlight crossmember assembly.
- (8) Install the right headlight crossmember assembly.
- (9) Install the left headlight assembly.
- (10) Install the right headlight assembly.
- (11) Install front bumper assembly.
- (12) Install the air filter assembly.
- (13) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (14) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

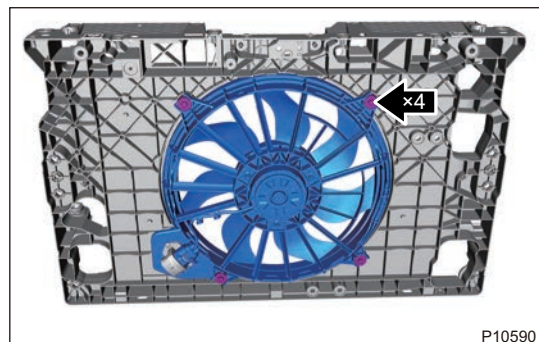
6.9 Cooling Fan Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Temperature in engine compartment is very high when engine is running. Before removal, you must make sure that engine has shut off, and engine compartment has cooled down sufficiently, otherwise, there is a risk of scald injury.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing cooling fan assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing cooling fan assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (6) Remove the right headlight assembly.
- (7) Remove the left headlight assembly.
- (8) Remove the right headlight crossmember assembly.
- (9) Remove the left headlight crossmember assembly.
- (10) Remove cooler upper bracket assembly.
- (11) Drain the coolant.
- (12) Recover the refrigerant.
- (13) Remove front plastic end and cooling module assembly.
- (14) Remove 4 fixing bolts from cooling fan assembly and front plastic end, and remove cooling fan assembly.



P10590

■ Installation

- (1) Remove 4 fixing bolts to cooling fan assembly.
- (2) Install front plastic end and cooling module assembly.
- (3) Install cooler upper bracket assembly.
- (4) Install the left and right headlight crossmember assembly separately.
- (5) Install the left and right headlight assembly separately.
- (6) Install front bumper assembly.
- (7) Install the A/C filter assembly.
- (8) Add the coolant.
- (9) Vacuum pumping/refrigerant recharging
- (10) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.10 Water Pump Module Assembly

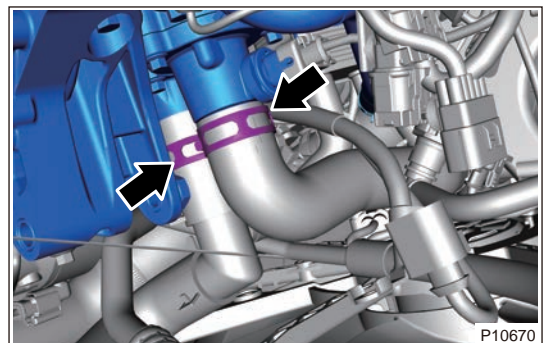
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

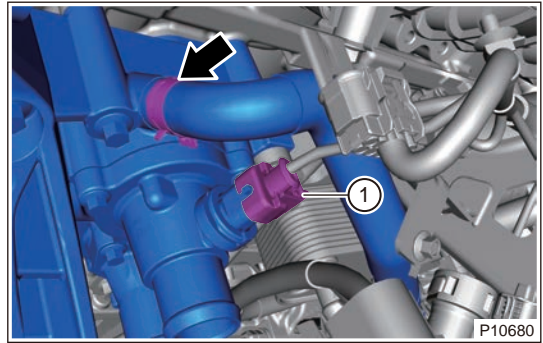
- **Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.**
- **If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.**
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing water pump module.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing water pump module. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (5) Remove the engine accessory belt.
- (6) Drain the coolant.
- (7) Remove the alternator assembly.

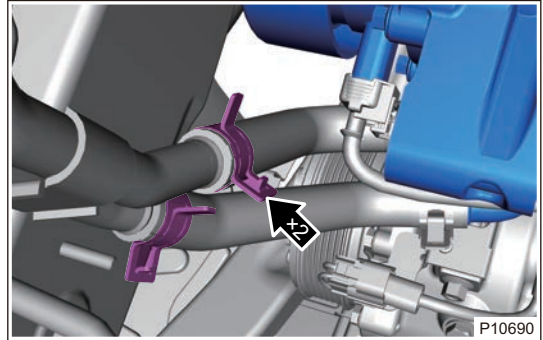
- (8) Loosen the elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between water pump module assembly and engine inlet pipe.
- (9) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect connection between water pump module assembly and engine outlet pipe.



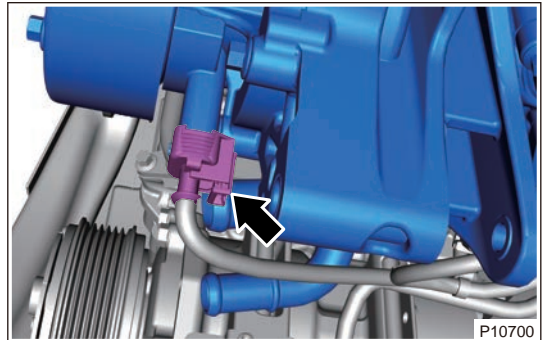
- (10) Disconnect the electronic thermostat connector (1), loosen elastic clamp and disconnect cooling pipe.



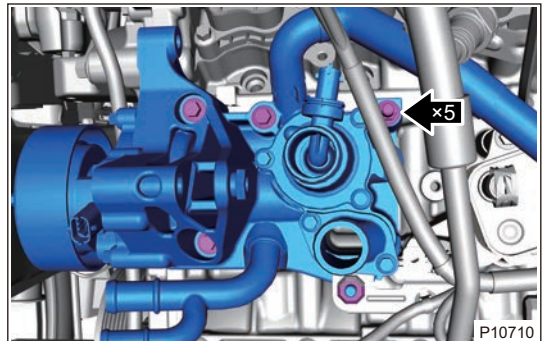
- (11) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect connection between expansion tank and water supply pipe.



- (12) Disconnect the switch type water pump connector.



- (13) Remove 5 fixing bolts from water pump module.



- (14) Remove water pump module assembly carefully.

■ **Inspection**

- (1) Inspect water pump module gasket for wear or deterioration. If there is wear or deterioration, replace gasket.

■ Installation

- (1) Installation 5 fixing bolts to water pump module.

Torque: 20 + 5 N·m

- (2) Connect the switch type water pump connector.
- (3) Connect expansion tank inlet pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (4) Connect cooling pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (5) Connect the electronic thermostat connector.
- (6) Connect engine inlet pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (7) Connect engine outlet pipe and install elastic clamp.
- (8) Install the alternator assembly.
- (9) Install the engine accessory belt.
- (10) Add the coolant.
- (11) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.
- (12) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

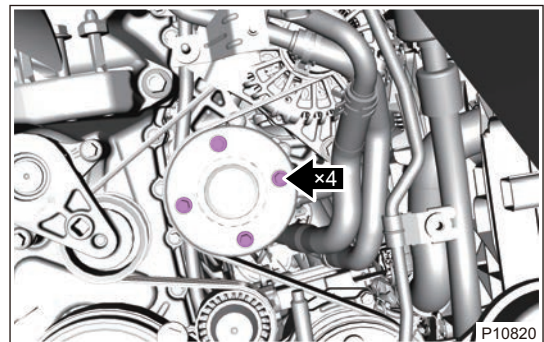
6.11 Water Pump Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

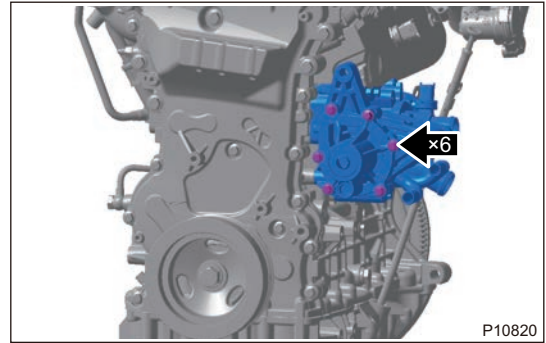
- **Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.**
- **If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing water pump assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing water pump assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Drain the coolant.
- (5) Loosen 4 fixing bolts from water pump pulley.



- (6) Remove fixing bolt and water pump pulley after engine accessory belt is removed.

- (7) Remove 6 fixing bolts from water pump assembly.



- (8) Remove the water pump assembly.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check if water pump bearing is excessive looseness; If there is excessive looseness, replace water pump assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 6 fixing bolts to water pump assembly.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (2) Install water pump pulley.
- (3) Install the engine accessory belt.
- (4) Add the coolant.

6.12 Electronic Thermostat Assembly

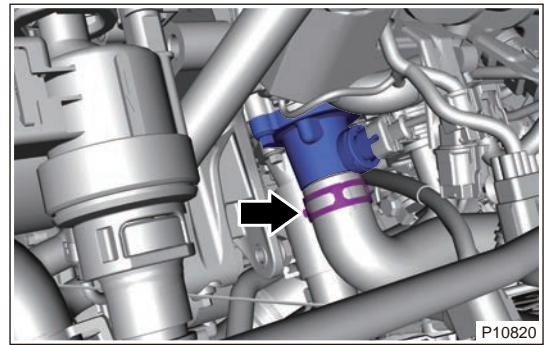
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

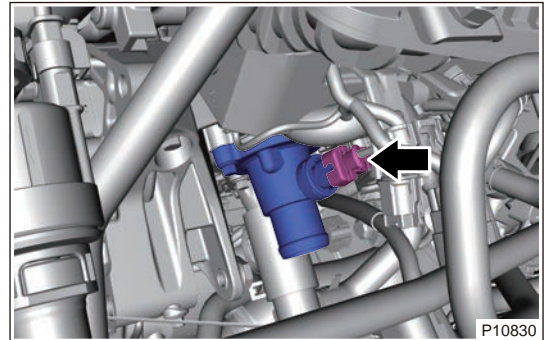
- **Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.**
- **If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.**
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing water pump module.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing water pump module. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Drain the coolant.
- (5) Remove the alternator assembly.

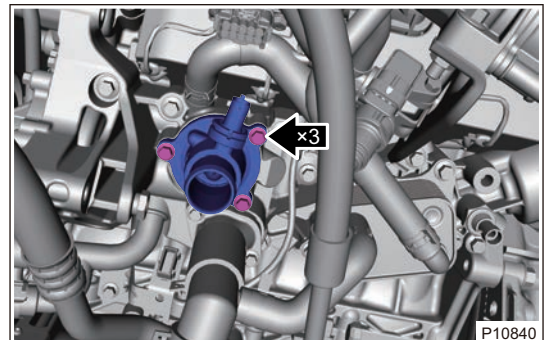
- (6) Loosen the elastic clamp and disconnect the connection between water pump module assembly and engine inlet pipe.



- (7) Disconnect the electronic thermostat connector.



- (8) Remove 3 bolts from electronic thermostat.



- (9) Remove the electronic thermostat.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check electronic thermostat grommet for damage.
- (2) As shown in illustration, check the electronic thermostat heating resistance with ohm band of multimeter.

Multimeter Connection	Specified value (Ω)
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	15.3



⚠ Caution

- **If resistance is not as specified, replace the electronic thermostat.**

■ Installation

- (1) Install 3 fixing bolts to electronic thermostat.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (2) Connect the engine inlet pipe to water pump module, and install elastic clamp.
- (3) Connect the electronic thermostat connector.
- (4) Install the alternator assembly.
- (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (6) Add the coolant.

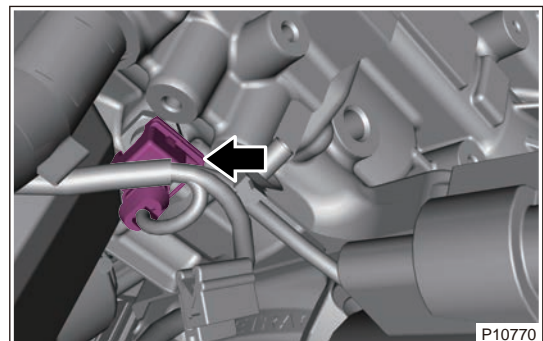
6.13 Coolant Temperature Sensor

■ Removal

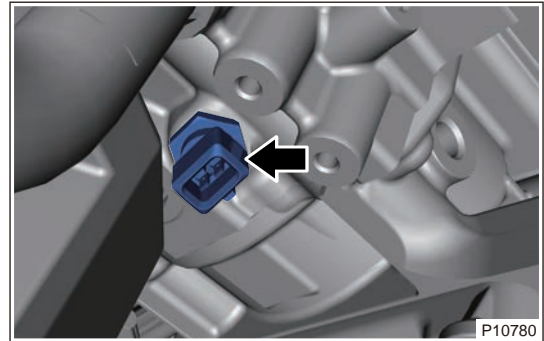
⚠ Warning

- **Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.**
- **If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.**
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing coolant sensor.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing coolant temperature sensor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (5) Remove inter-cooling intake pipe II .
- (6) Disconnect the coolant temperature sensor connector.



- (7) Remove the coolant temperature sensor.



■ Inspection

- (1) The rated resistance measured by multimeter ohm band should be $2.5\text{ K}\Omega \pm 5\%$ at normal temperature, blow air to sensor with a hair dryer (be careful not to get too close), observe the changes of resistance, it should decrease with the increase of temperature.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the coolant temperature sensor.

Torque: $15 \pm 1\text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

Seal gum: Loctite 577

- (2) Connect the coolant sensor connector.
 (3) Install intercooler intake pipe II .
 (4) Install the intake hose assembly.
 (5) Add the coolant.
 (6) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.14 Electric Water Pump and Bracket

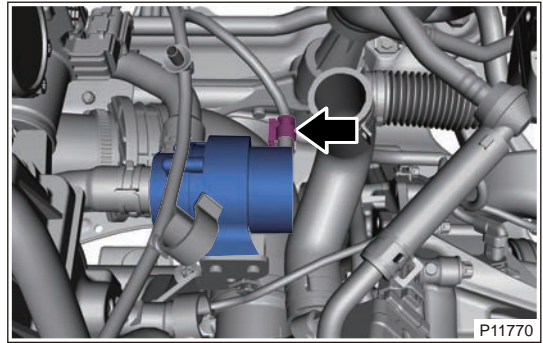
■ Removal

Warning

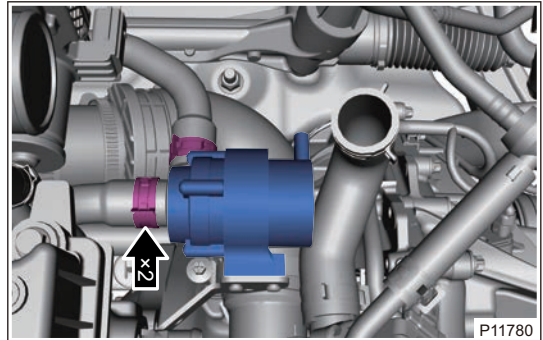
- **Always make sure engine is cold before operating cooling system. Never open expansion tank cap or remove drain cock plug, when engine is operating or cooling system temperature is high. High-pressurized hot engine coolant and steam may flow out and cause serious burns.**
- **If your body contacts coolant accidentally, clean it with water immediately. If it is serious, please go to hospital.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing electric water pump and bracket.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing electric water pump and bracket. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
 (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (4) Drain the coolant.
 (5) Remove the intake hose assembly.

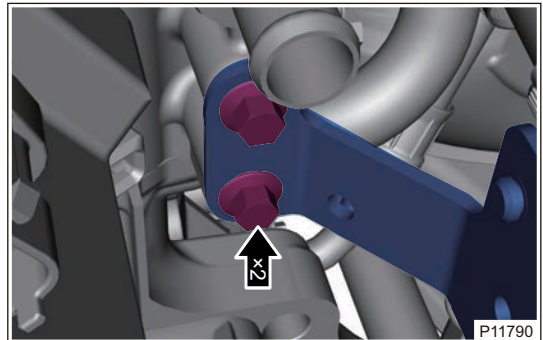
- (6) Disconnect the electric water pump connector.



- (7) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect connection between water pipe and electric water pump



- (8) Remove 2 fixing bolts from electric water pump bracket and remove electric water pump and bracket.



■ Installation

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts to electric water pump bracket.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (2) Install connection between water pipe and electric water pump, and install elastic clamp.
(3) Connect the electric water pump connector.
(4) Install the intake hose assembly.
(5) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
(6) Add the coolant.

ENGINE

10.1	LUBRICATION SYSTEM.....	548
1	Warning and Precaution.....	548
1.1	Warning.....	548
1.2	Precaution.....	548
2	System Overview	548
2.1	System Description.....	548
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	549
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	550
3	Component Operation Description.....	551
3.1	Oil Pump Assembly.....	551
3.2	Oil Cooler Assembly	551
3.3	Oil Pressure Switch.....	551
3.4	Oil Filter	552
3.5	Oil Collector	552
4	Special Tool and Equipment.....	552
4.1	General Tool.....	552
4.2	Special Tool.....	553
5	Fasteners Torque List	553
5.1	Torque Specifications	553
6	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	553
6.1	Problem Symptoms Table	553
6.2	Lubrication Areas on Engine.....	554
7	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE.....	555
7.1	Engine Oil Draining, Adding and Inspection.....	555
7.2	Oil Filter	557
7.3	Oil Pressure Switch.....	559
7.4	Oil Filter Module Assembly	560
7.5	Oil Pan Assembly.....	562
7.6	Oil Collector	564
7.7	Oil Pump Assembly.....	565
7.8	Oil Dipstick Tube (Dipstick) Assembly	567
7.9	Oil Deflector	568

10.1 LUBRICATION SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will result in the removal of natural oils from skin, leading to dryness, irritation and dermatitis. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer.
- (2) Wear protective clothing and gloves.
- (3) Wash your skin thoroughly with soap and water, or use waterless hand cleaner to remove any used engine oil.
- (4) Never use gasoline, thinners or solvents.
- (5) Before performing the operation. Wait for the engine to cool down completely.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

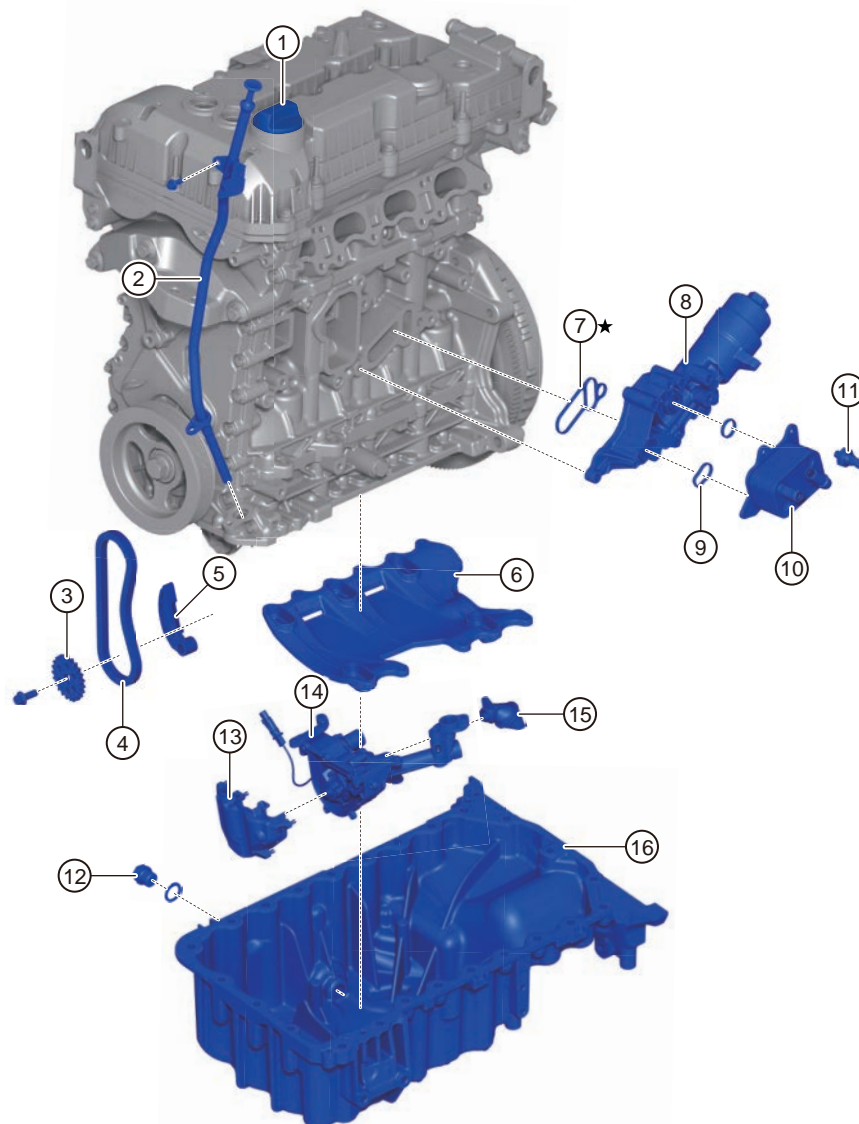
- (1) Wasted engine oil should be handled by specialized department according to local laws and regulations. Never discard it at will.
- (2) DO NOT use inferior engine oil.
- (3) DO NOT mix different types of engine oil.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

When engine is operating, an oil pump driven by crankshaft, sucks oil from oil pan and pumps it at pressure through an oil filter. This filtered oil then flows through oil passages, to moving surfaces of all engine drive parts and forms oil films between moving surfaces to reduce friction and finally returns to the oil pan, thus reducing friction resistance between drive parts, power consumption and increasing reliability and durability of engine operation. Oil pump of SQR4J16 engine is installed in oil pan. Crankshaft transmits power to it through chain; Oil pump is a two-stage variable displacement pump, and its displacement is controlled by ECU through oil pressure regulating solenoid valve; Two-stage variable displacement oil pump lubrication system is composed of two-stage variable displacement oil pump, solenoid valve, variable displacement oil pump control module in vehicle ECU and feedback oil passage, etc.

2.2 System Components Diagram

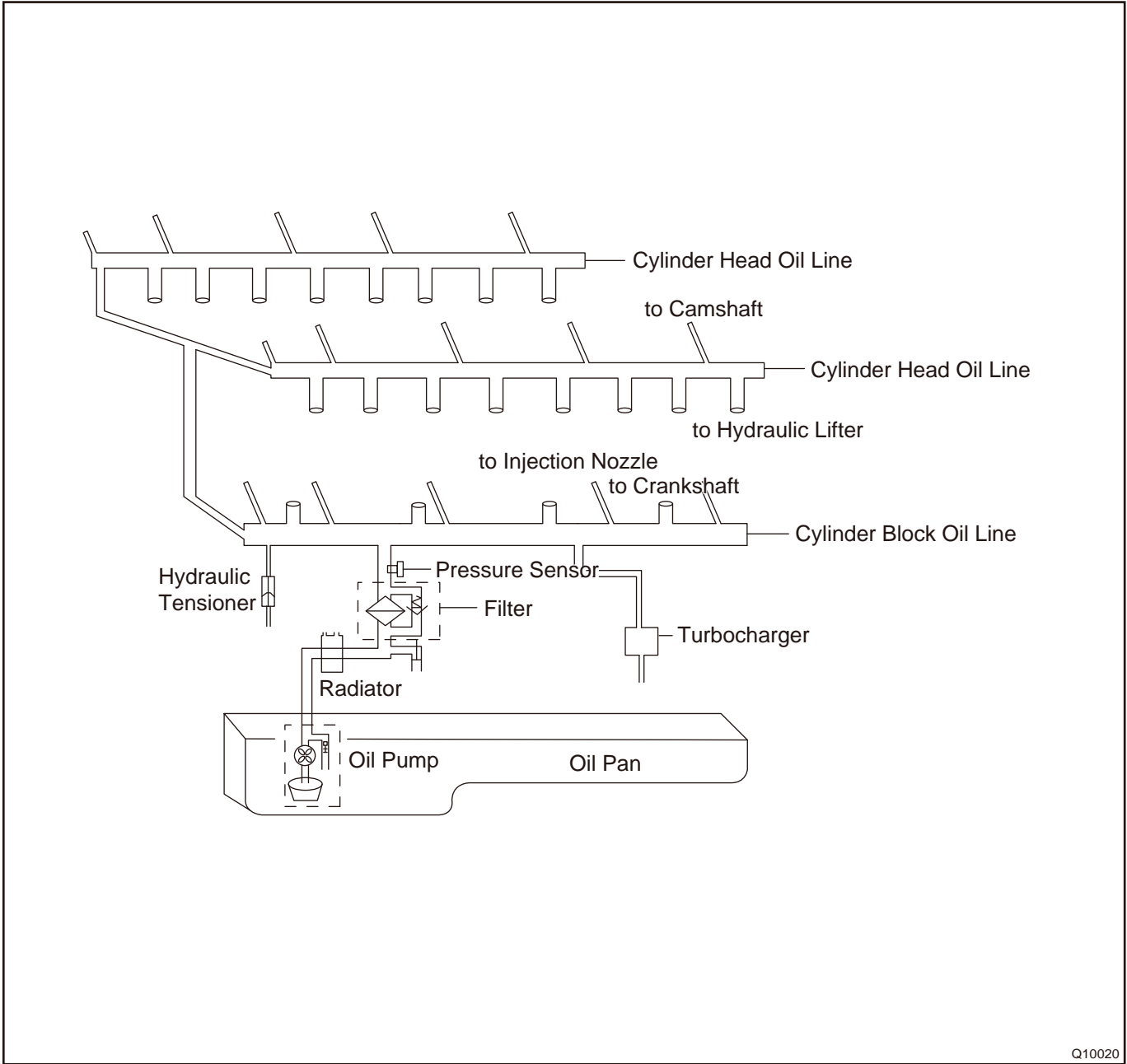


★: Indicates that it is a non-reusable part

Q10010

1	Oil Filler Cap	9	Oil Cooler Seal Ring
2	Oil Dipstick Tube & Oil Dipstick	10	Oil Cooler Assembly
3	Oil Pump Sprocket	11	Oil Pressure Switch
4	Oil Pump Chain	12	Drain Plug
5	Movable Rail for Oil Pump Chain	13	Oil Pump Sprocket Cover
6	Oil Deflector	14	Oil Pump Assembly
7	Oil Filter Module Assembly Seal Ring	15	Oil Collector
8	Oil Filter Module Assembly	16	Oil Pan Assembly

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



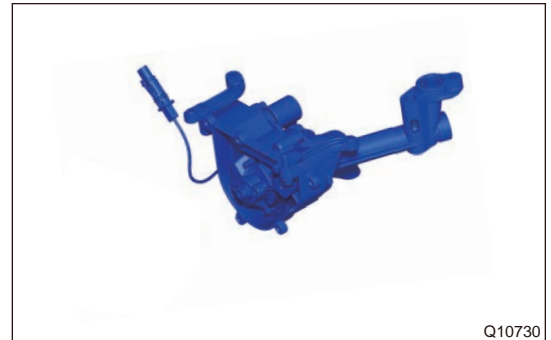
Crankshaft drives oil pump to suck oil from oil pan. The oil is filtered by oil filter and delivered to crankshaft connecting rod mechanism and cam valve mechanism, including some accessories such as turbocharger through main oil passage.

3 Component Operation Description

3.1 Oil Pump Assembly

■ Main Function

Oil pump of SQRF4J16 engine is installed in oil pan. Crankshaft transmits power to it through chain. Oil pump is a two-stage variable displacement pump, and its displacement is controlled by ECU through oil pressure regulating solenoid valve. Oil pump adopts vane type variable displacement structure, and main structure is stator and rotor; There are two oil pressure chambers on the outer ring of stator to apply pressure control to the stator, so that it can deflect clockwise or counterclockwise around the fulcrum, changing the eccentricity ratio of vane pump and adjusting displacement.



Q10730

3.2 Oil Cooler Assembly

■ Main Function

Oil cooler is on the circulation oil passage of lubrication system. During engine running, as oil viscosity becomes lean with temperature increasing, lubricating ability is reduced. Oil cooler is used to cool the lubricant, keep the oil temperature within normal operating range, reduce oil temperature and maintain a certain viscosity of lubricant.



Q10750

3.3 Oil Pressure Switch

■ Main Function

Oil pressure switch is installed on the main oil passage of engine block and used to detect the value of engine oil pressure. When the value is lower than the specified value, oil pressure warning light is turned on.



Q10760

3.4 Oil Filter

■ **Main Function**

It is used to filter impurities in oil to protect the engine.



3.5 Oil Collector

■ **Main Function**

In order to make oil pump work well, filter large particle impurities in lubricant before entering oil pump.




4 Special Tool and Equipment

4.1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	<p>S00002</p>
Oil Pressure Tester	<p>S00035</p>

4.2 Special Tool

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Oil Pan Remover	EPT-0016	 S00160

5 Fasteners Torque List

5.1 Torque Specifications

Item	Torque
Drain Plug	35 ± 3 N·m
Oil Filter Cover	20 + 5 N·m
Oil Pressure Switch	12 - 15 N·m
Oil Pan Fixing Bolt	8 + 3 N·m
Oil Deflector Fixing Bolt	8 + 3 N·m
Oil Collector Fixing Bolt	8 + 3 N·m
Oil Filter Module Assembly Fixing Bolt	20 + 5 N·m
Oil Pump Assembly Fixing Bolt	8 + 3 N·m
Oil Dipstick Tube Fixing Bolt	8 + 3 N·m

6 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

6.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Lubrication System

Symptom	Possible Cause
Low pressure in lubrication system	Oil pan (dirty, leaky)
	Oil collector (mesh dirty, blocked)
	Spark plug
	Line blocked
High pressure in lubrication system	Oil with high viscosity
	Oil passage blocked
	Oil pump (non-variable displacement)

Symptom	Possible Cause
Mix oil with water	Oil filter module assembly internal leakage
	Cylinder head gasket improperly sealed
	Cylinder block cracks
High oil consumption	Engine oil (excessive filling capacity)
	Oil filter module assembly (leaky)
	Crankshaft front oil seal (damaged)
	Crankshaft rear oil seal (damaged)
	Oil pressure switch (leaky)
	Oil drain plug (leaky)
	Oil pan (leaked)
	Cylinder head gasket (damaged)
	Piston ring (damaged)
	Each engine seal surface leakage
Oil pressure warning light comes on	Engine oil (insufficient oil, low oil viscosity)
	Oil filter element (blocked)
	Oil strainer (blocked)
	Crankshaft front oil seal (damaged)
	Crankshaft rear oil seal (damaged)
	Oil pressure switch (damaged)
	Instrument cluster (oil pressure warning light)
	Cylinder block (cracks occur in water jacket, resulting in coolant leaking into oil pan, which will cause oil dilution)
Line (blocked)	

6.2 Lubrication Areas on Engine

No.	Lubrication Area	Lubricant Type	Note
1	Oil Collector O-ring	Same type as engine oil	/
2	Oil Filter Cover O-ring	Same type as engine oil	Operation during maintenance
3	2 O-rings on Element Assembly and By-pass Valve Mounting Hole	Same type as engine oil	Operation during maintenance
4	Dipstick Tube O-ring	Same type as engine oil	/
5	Dipstick Handle O-ring	Same type as engine oil	/

No.	Lubrication Area	Lubricant Type	Note
6	Oil Pump Rotor Cavity	Same type as engine oil	5 mL is recommended
7	Oil Filter Module Inlet Port of Cylinder Block	Same type as engine oil	50 mL is recommended

7 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

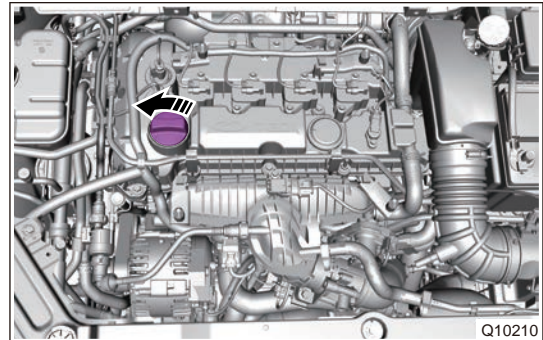
7.1 Engine Oil Draining, Adding and Inspection

■ Engine Oil Draining

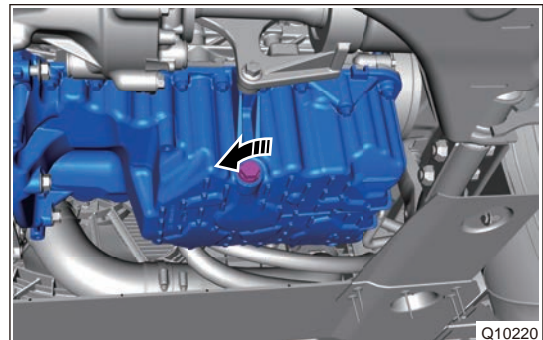
Warning

- **Wait for the engine cool down completely before operation.**
- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will result in the removal of natural oils from skin, leading to dryness, irritation and dermatitis. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service. Be sure to take appropriate skin protection measures.**

- (1) Connect the battery tester to battery.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Turn the oil filler door counterclockwise to open.



- (5) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (6) Remove drain plug and drain the oil into a container.



⚠ Caution

- Apply a certain pushing force to drain plug while loosening the plug by hand, and have the drain plug attached to thread tightly to prevent oil from overflowing in advance. Move away your hand quickly to prevent burn by oil with a certain temperature.
- Wasted engine oil should be handled by specialized department according to local laws and regulations. Never discard it at will.

(7) Wipe off the drain plug and tighten it.

Torque: 35 ± 3 N•m

⚠ Caution

- The drain plug gasket must be replaced each time the drain plug is removed.

■ Engine Oil Adding

⚠ Caution

- DO NOT use inferior engine oil.
- DO NOT mix different types of engine oil.
- Be careful not to spill engine oil on any part of the engine when adding engine oil.

(1) It is recommended to add lubricant to upper center of dipstick, there are several situations:

	Engine Status	Recommended Value
Charging Capacity	Status without oil (apply to the first adding after assembling such as engine production and major maintenance)	4.8 ± 0.2
	Replace oil filter assembly and lubricant at same time	4.3 ± 0.2
	Do not replace oil filter assembly, only replace lubricant	4.0 ± 0.2
Oil Type	Ambient temperature is not less than -30 °C	SM 5W-30 or 0W-30 above SM grade
	Ambient temperature is less than -30°C	0W-30 above SM grade

(2) Start engine, and check the vehicle for leakage after replacing oil.

■ Inspection Method of Lubricant Level

- (1) Park the vehicle in a relatively horizontal position.
- (2) Keep engine running at least 2 minutes and leave is stopped for 3 ~ 5 minutes.
- (3) Pull out the dipstick, wipe off the measurement part and insert it into dipstick tube, then leave it for 3 ~ 5 s.
- (4) Pull out the dipstick steady and place the measurement part horizontally. Visually check that oil level of measurement part is within upper mark and lower mark, it indicates oil level is normal.

⚠ Caution

- Do not start the engine during the measurement.

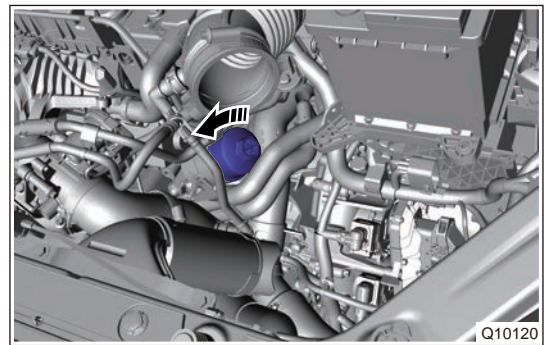
7.2 Oil Filter

■ Removal

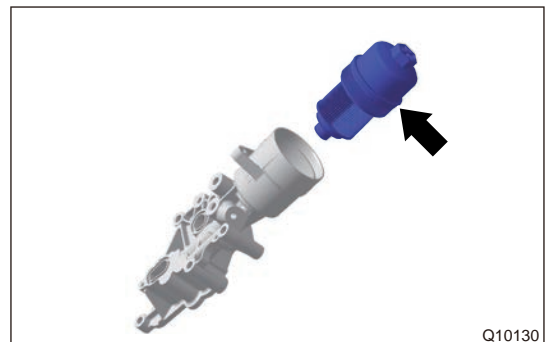
⚠ Warning

- **DO NOT** remove oil filter until engine cools down, avoiding being burned by high temperature lubricant and parts.
- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Drain engine oil.
- (5) Using special tool, loosen oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly until O-ring is exposed from mounting port edge of oil filter module for 2 - 3 mm (- approximately loosen 4 turns), leave it for 2 - 3 minutes and wait for used oil in element assembly flows back to crankcase.



- (6) Continue to loosen the oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly until it is removed completely.



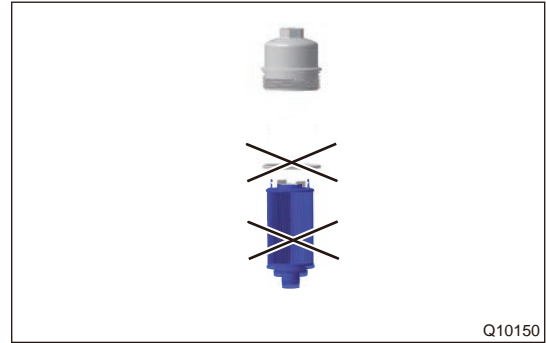
- (7) Pull out the element assembly from the clip in oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly firmly in direction of arrow.



- (8) Remove oil filter cover O-ring from oil filter cover assembly, dispose of used oil filter cover O-ring and element assembly in an environmentally friendly way.

Hint:

Oil filter cover O-ring should be replaced during normal maintenance.

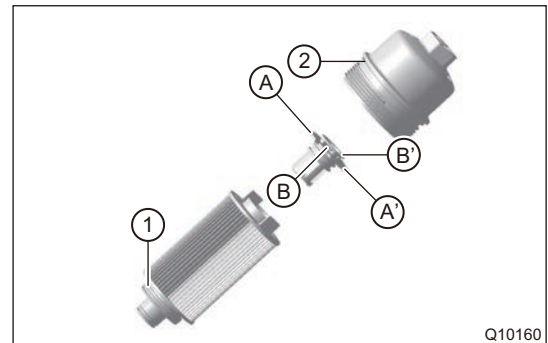


■ Installation

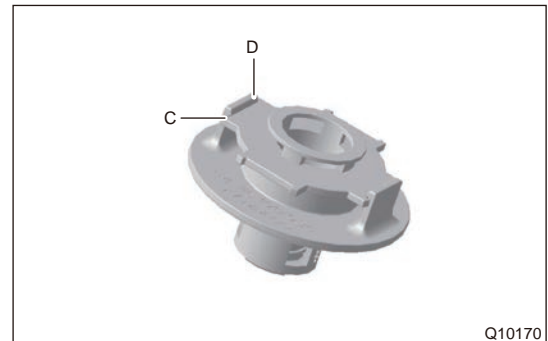
⚠ Caution

- **Check oil filter seal ring for defect or foreign matter. When assembling, seal ring needs to be lubricated.**

- (1) Evenly apply a circle of lubricant with small amount to 2 O-rings (1) and (2) and oil filter cover O-ring of new element assembly. Clamp 2 buckles into by-pass valve clip of oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly, 2 opposite sides A-A, B-B can be selected at will.



- (2) Before installing new element assembly, it is necessary to check four clips side C and D of by-pass valve in oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly for damage. If there is damage, clip on this side can not be reused, clip on another opposite side should be selected. If clips on both opposite sides are damaged, oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly should be replaced with a new one.



- (3) Apply lubricant to new oil filter cover O-ring, and then put it in the seal ring groove of oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly. Screw the oil filter by-pass valve and filter cover assembly, element assembly and element cover O-ring set in oil filter module assembly in the opposite direction of removal, and tighten them in place with special wrench tool.



- (4) Add engine oil, start the engine and check oil filter cover for oil leakage.

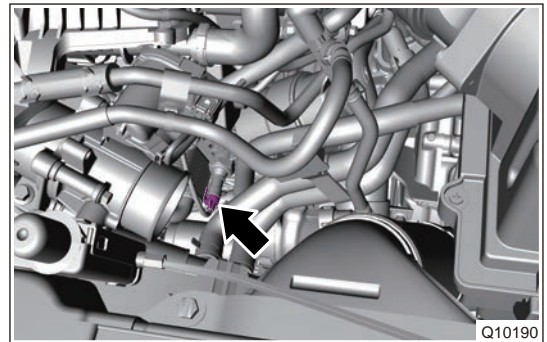
7.3 Oil Pressure Switch

■ Removal

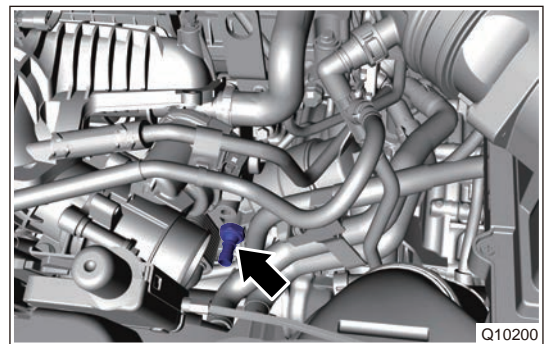
⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT** remove oil pressure switch until engine cools down, avoiding being burnt by high temperature lubricant and parts.
- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Disconnect the connection between intercooler outlet pipe assembly II and electronic throttle.
- (5) Disconnect the oil pressure switch connector.



- (6) Remove the oil pressure switch.

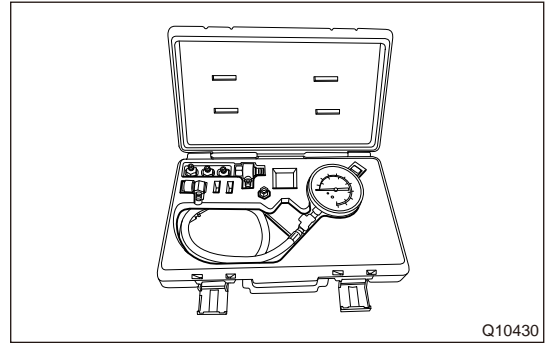


■ Inspection

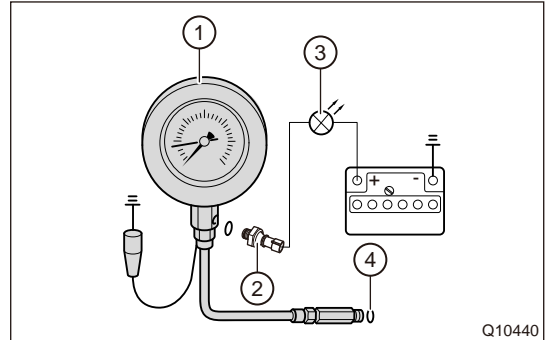
⚠ Caution

- **Before inspecting oil pressure switch, please make sure that oil level is proper and coolant temperature is above 90°C, and that oil filter is used within 5000 Km.**

- (1) Use an oil pressure gauge as shown in the illustration.



- (2) Install the oil pressure gauge into the threaded hole (4) of oil pressure switch as shown in the illustration.
- (3) Install the oil pressure switch (2) to the gauge (1), and connect the LED light (3).
- (4) When engine is not started, observe the pressure reading on gauge. Oil pressure alarm value is 30 - 50 kPa.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Apply seal gum (Loctite 577) to threads when assembling oil pressure switch.**

- (1) Install the oil pressure switch.

Torque: 12 - 15 N·m

- (2) Connect the oil pressure switch connector.
- (3) Connect intercooler outlet pipe assembly II to electronic throttle and tighten worm clamp.

7.4 Oil Filter Module Assembly

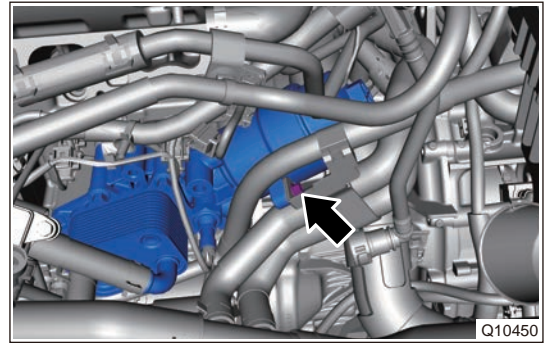
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

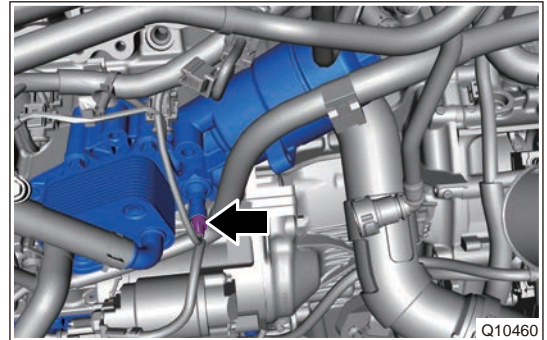
- **DO NOT drain oil and remove oil pan until engine cools down.**
- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Remove the intake manifold assembly.
- (6) Drain the engine oil.
- (7) Drain the coolant.

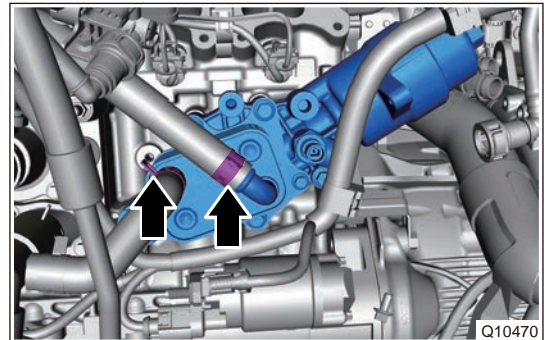
(8) Remove 1 fixing bolt from wire harness bracket.



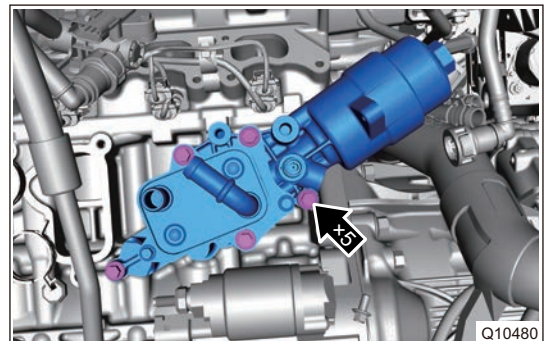
(9) Disconnect the oil pressure switch connector.



(10) Loosen elastic clamp and disconnect connection between cooling pipe and oil filter module assembly.



(11) Remove 5 fixing bolts from oil filter module assembly.



(12) Remove the oil filter module assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Clean installation surface of oil filter module assembly.
- Seal ring is a disposable part, it needs to be replaced.

- (1) Install 5 fixing bolts to oil filter module assembly.

Torque: 20 N·m + 5°

- (2) Connect cooling pipe to oil filter module assembly.
- (3) Connect the oil pressure switch connector.
- (4) Install 1 fixing bolt to wire harness bracket.
- (5) Install the intake manifold assembly.
- (6) Install the air filter assembly.
- (7) Add engine oil.
- (8) Add the coolant.
- (9) Install the engine trim cover assembly.

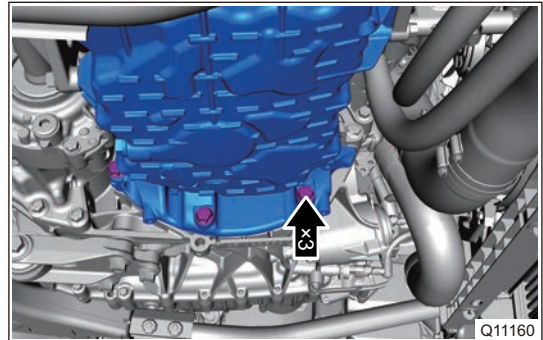
7.5 Oil Pan Assembly

■ Removal

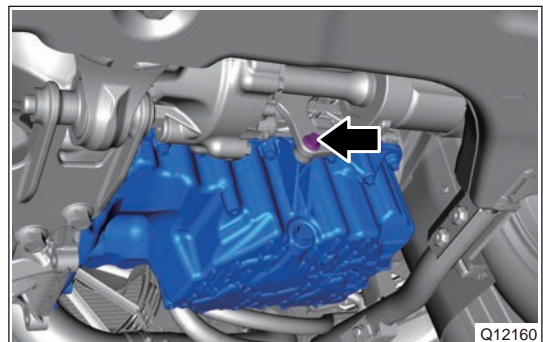
Warning

- **DO NOT drain oil and remove oil pan until engine cools down.**
- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

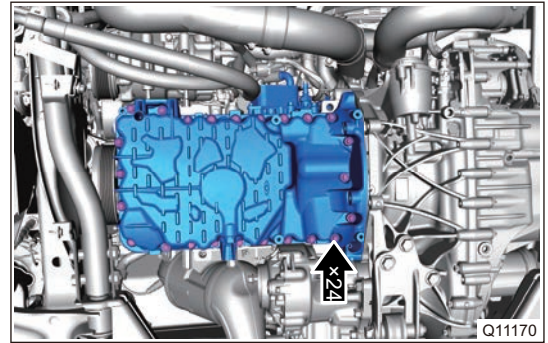
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Drain engine oil.
- (4) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (5) Remove the engine accessory belt.
- (6) Remove fixing bolts from the compressor assembly, and move compressor assembly to a proper position.
- (7) Remove 3 fixing bolts between oil pan and transmission assembly.



- (8) Remove 1 fixing bolt from oil pan and drive shaft bracket.



(9) Remove 24 fixing bolts from oil pan.



(10) Clamp the oil pan special tool into joint, and tap all around oil pan slightly with a rubber hammer to remove oil pan assembly.

⚠ Caution

- **Because the seal gum is sealed between oil pan and cylinder block, never use hard objects, such as a hammer, to tap it during removal, but it can be tapped slowly from left and right with a rubber hammer.**
- **A transmission carrier can be used to support the oil pan during removal, to prevent personal injury from sudden dropping of oil pan.**
- **DO NOT damage or miss dowel pin when removing oil pan.**

(11) Remove the residual seal gum on oil pan and engine frame with flat scraper.

⚠ Caution

- **Remove residue of seal gum on installation surface between oil pan and engine frame. Threaded hole can be cleaned with cleaner properly.**

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the appearance of oil pan assembly for damage.
- (2) Check if the oil pan installation surface is within the specified range.

■ Installation

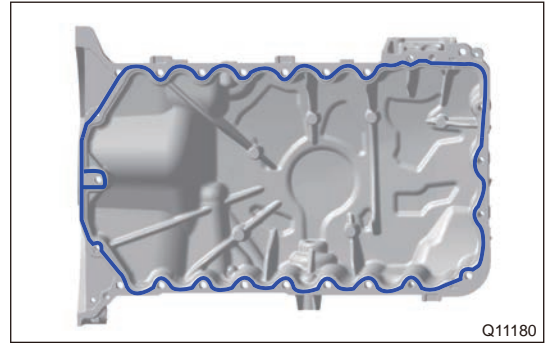
⚠ Caution

- **When applying seal gum, check the type and expiration date of seal gum.**
- **Check installation surface for impact or damage.**
- **Remove impurities, iron chips and residue of seal gum on oil pan.**
- **Remove oil stain and residue of seal gum on the threaded hole of cylinder block and oil pan.**
- **Seal gum should not be applied too thick; otherwise it will overflow into oil pan due to squeezing, which will block the oil collector.**
- **Add engine oil until seal gum solidifies after installing oil pan.**

- (1) As shown in illustration, apply seal gum to inside of oil pan installation bolt hole evenly.

Recommended seal gum: Loctite 5900H

Seal gum line diameter: 2 - 3 mm



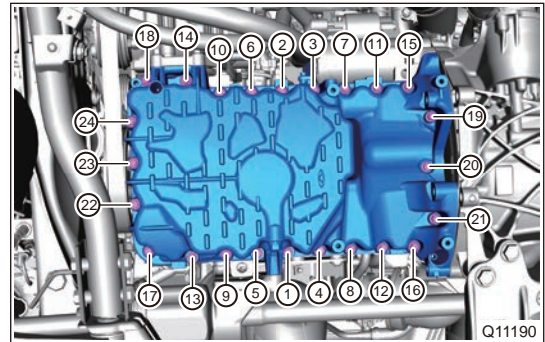
⚠ Caution

- **The applied gum line should be continuous without broken.**
- **The assembly of oil pan must be finished within 10 minutes after applying gum.**

- (2) Align oil pan with frame dowel pin, assemble oil pan and tap it slightly to fit it with frame closely.

- (3) As shown in illustration, pre-tighten oil pan fixing bolts until oil pan is pressed tightly. Then tighten bolts in order.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m



- (4) Install 1 fixing bolt to oil pan and drive shaft bracket.
- (5) Install 3 fixing bolts between oil pan and transmission assembly.
- (6) Install compressor assembly and compressor fixing bracket.
- (7) Install the accessory drive belt.
- (8) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.
- (9) Add engine oil to specified value.

7.6 Oil Collector

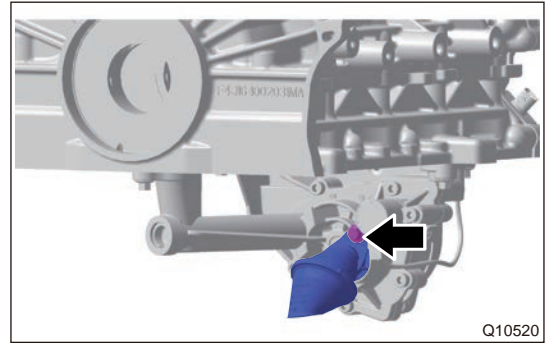
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **DO NOT drain oil and remove oil pan until engine cools down.**
- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Drain engine oil.
- (4) Remove the oil pan assembly.

- (5) Remove 1 fixing bolt from oil collector.



- (6) Remove the oil collector carefully.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check collector O-ring for damage or cracks.
- (2) Check oil collector for dirty or blockage, and clean or replace it as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Add a certain amount of lubricant to oil collector mounting hole of oil pump before installing, so that oil pump rotor cavity can be lubricated. Recommended adding amount is: 5 mL.**

- (1) Apply a small amount of lubricant to O-ring surface of the oil collector.
- (2) Install oil collector to oil pump mounting hole, and align the fixing bolt hole.
- (3) Install 1 fixing bolt to oil collector.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (4) Install the oil pan assembly.
- (5) Add engine engine oil to specified value.

7.7 Oil Pump Assembly

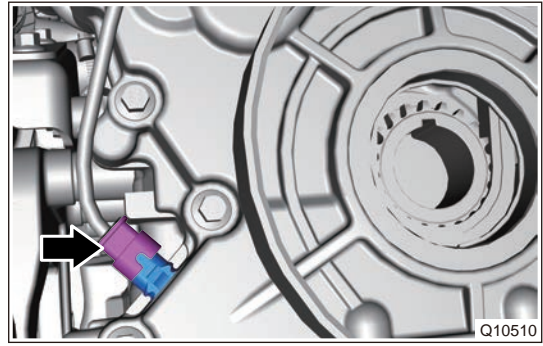
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **DO NOT drain oil and remove oil pan until engine cools down.**
- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

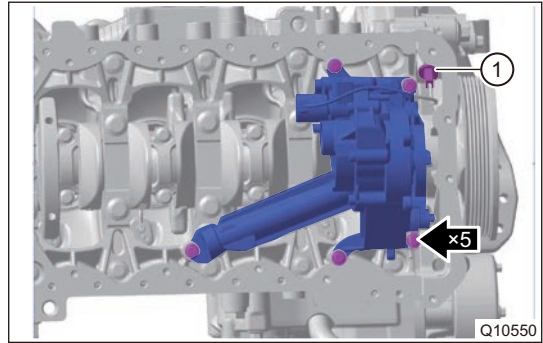
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Drain engine oil.
- (4) Remove the oil pan assembly.
- (5) Remove the oil collector assembly.

- (6) Disconnect the oil pump solenoid valve connector.



- (7) Remove 5 fixing clips and oil pump sprocket cover.

- (8) Remove 5 fixing bolts from oil pump assembly, and remove oil pump solenoid valve connector (1).



- (9) Push chain movable rail, move away chain from oil pump assembly, remove oil pump assembly carefully.

■ Inspection

- (1) Rotate oil pump shaft, check if rotation of oil pump is smooth.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

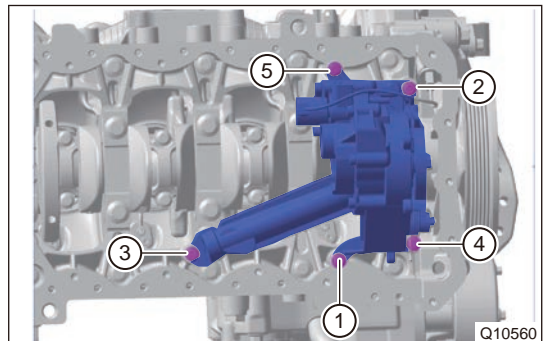
- Wasted engine oil pump assembly should be handled by specialized department according to local laws and regulations. Never discard it at will.

- (1) Apply seal gum to fixing bolt threads after installing oil pump. Ensure application amount for (3 - 5) teeth.

Recommended lock adhesive: Loctite 243

- (2) Tighten 5 fixing bolts of oil pump assembly in order as shown in illustration.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m



- (3) Install oil collector.
- (4) Install the oil pan assembly.
- (5) Connect the oil pump solenoid valve connector.
- (6) Add engine engine oil to specified value.

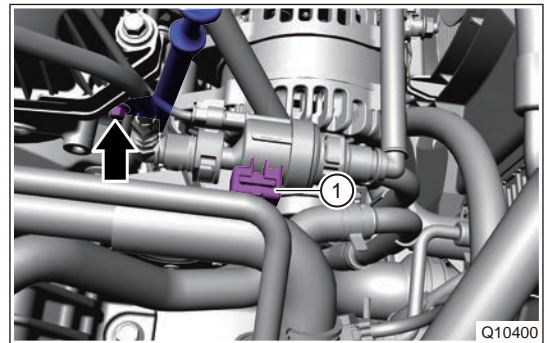
7.8 Oil Dipstick Tube (Dipstick) Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (5) Remove canister solenoid valve (1) from bracket, and remove 1 fixing bolt between oil dipstick tube and timing chain cover.



- (6) Remove 1 fixing bolt between oil dipstick tube and frame mounting hole.



- (7) Remove the oil dipstick tube assembly carefully.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Check O-ring before assembly to make sure it is not damaged, otherwise replace with a new one.**
- **Apply a small amount of lubricant to dipstick tube and dipstick handle O-ring before assembly.**
- **When inserting dipstick tube into timing chain cover mounting hole, insert lower end as far as possible along shaft line direction. If it tilts, it may be difficult to assemble O-ring, even damage O-ring.**

- (1) Install 1 fixing bolt between oil dipstick tube and frame mounting hole.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (2) Install 1 fixing bolt between oil dipstick and timing chain cover.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m

- (3) Install the charcoal canister solenoid valve to the bracket.
- (4) Install the engine trim cover assembly.
- (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

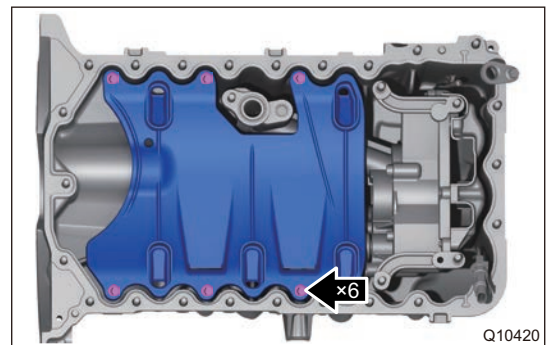
7.9 Oil Deflector

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Prolonged and repeated contact with engine oil will be harmful to your skin. If engine oil spills on your skin, wash it off immediately with water. In addition, the used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants, which may cause skin cancer. Therefore, always take proper skin protection measures when performing vehicle service.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Drain engine oil.
- (5) Remove the oil pan.
- (6) Remove 6 fixing bolts from oil deflector.



- (7) Remove the oil deflector carefully.

■ Inspection

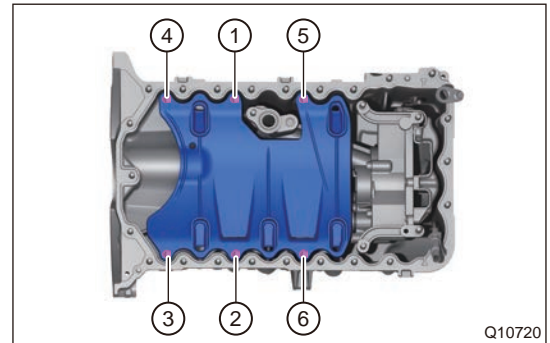
Check deflector appearance for cracks, and check bushing for missing or misalignment.

■ Installation

- (1) Place oil deflector on the frame with bolt hole roughly aligned.
- (2) Apply a circle of lock adhesive to bolt threads head evenly. Ensure application amount for (3 - 5) teeth.

- (3) Install and tighten 6 fixing bolts of oil deflector in order as shown in illustration.

Torque: 8 + 3 N·m



- (4) Install the oil pan assembly.
(5) Add engine engine oil to specified value.

ENGINE

11.1	STARTING AND CHARGING SYSTEM.....	571
1	Warning and Precaution.....	571
1.1	Warning.....	571
1.2	Precaution.....	571
2	System Overview	571
2.1	System Description	571
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	572
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	573
3	Component Operation Description.....	574
3.1	Battery Assembly	574
3.2	Alternator Assembly	574
3.3	Starter Assembly.....	575
4	Special Tool and Equipment.....	575
4.1	General Tool.....	575
4.2	Special Tool.....	575
5	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	575
5.1	Problem Symptoms Table	575
5.2	Common Trouble Diagnosis.....	576
6	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	578
6.1	Battery Assembly	578
6.2	Battery Tray.....	582
6.3	Alternator Assembly	584
6.4	ENGINE START STOP Switch	585
6.5	Starter Assembly.....	587

11.1 STARTING AND CHARGING SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Battery acid is highly corrosive, so it is necessary to wear protective gloves and goggles when working.
- (2) Do not dump the battery, because acid may spill from vent hole.
- (3) Never throw the used battery into household garbage. There is risk of explosion.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

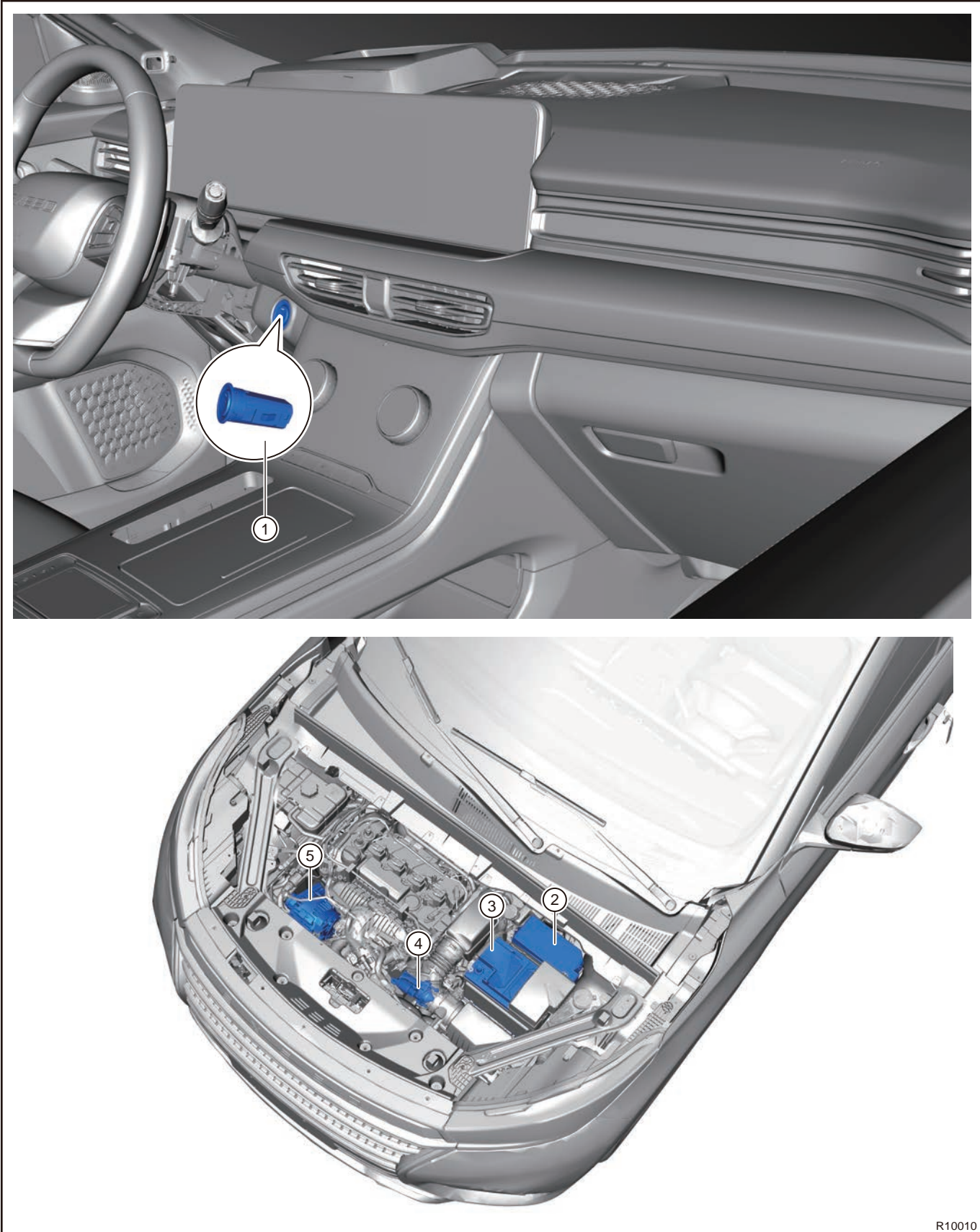
- (1) Deliver the used battery to designated recycling site.
- (2) Never allow the children approaching acid and battery.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Starting system consists of battery, starting switch and starter, etc. Starting system converts electrical energy from battery into mechanical energy, allowing engine to crank initially, and disconnects power transmission between starter and engine when engine starts successfully. Charging system is consist of battery, alternator and charging state indicator device. Alternator is the main power supply component while vehicle is operating. It is used to supply power to all the electric equipment (except for the starting system) and charge the battery. Since alternator is rotated through drive belt which is driven by the engine, voltage will changes depending on engine speed. To meet electric device power supply and battery charging requirements, voltage regulator is equipped in charging system (inside alternator). The voltage regulator maintains voltage output stability of alternator by adjusting exciting current in alternator while engine speed and load is changing. Charging state indicator is used to show the charging system operation and indicate whether the battery is in a charging or discharging state.

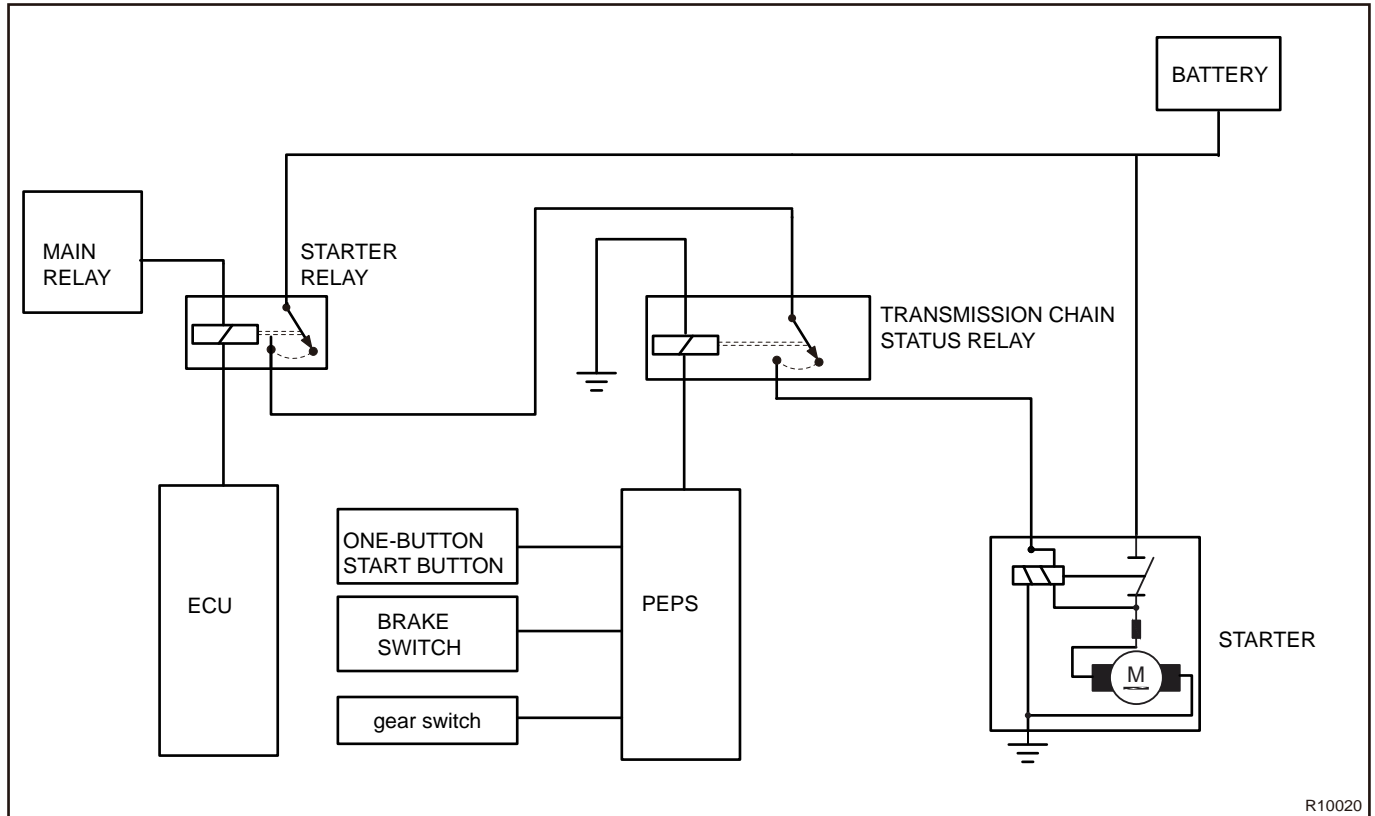
2.2 System Components Diagram



R10010

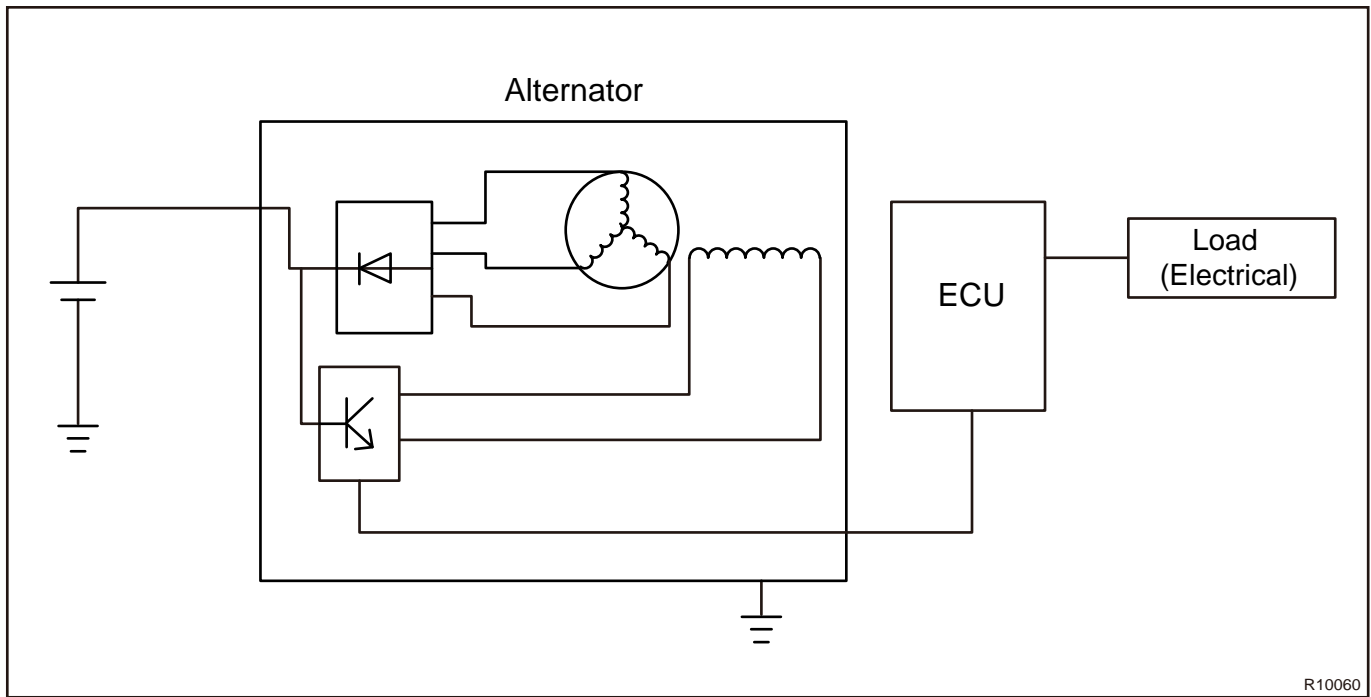
1	ENGINE START STOP Switch	4	Starter Assembly
2	Engine Compartment Fuse and Relay Box	5	Alternator Assembly
3	Battery Assembly		

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



R10020

When battery voltage is normal starting voltage and transmission is in P position, press ENGINE START STOP switch while depressing brake pedal. When PEPS receives signal, it controls the starter relay to engage, then the starter runs normally.



Three-phase alternating current generated by alternator is converted to direct current from alternating current by rectifier, and direct current is transmitted to the vehicle electrical system and battery.

3 Component Operation Description

3.1 Battery Assembly

■ Main Function

When starting the engine, it is responsible for providing the working current required by the starter; When engine is running, it can help alternator to supply power to electric device; When engine is stationary, it can supply power to electric device separately; Moreover, battery is a large capacity capacitor which protects vehicle electrical device.

■ Specifications

Description	Specifications
Battery	12V 70Ah

3.2 Alternator Assembly

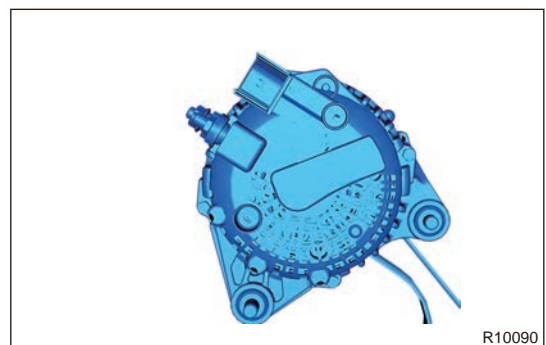
■ Main Function

Alternator is a silicon rectifying alternator, which mainly consists of rotor, stator and rectifier.

When excitation direct current flows to rotor winding, rotor winding establishes a magnetic field and magnetizes the rotor claw poles, forming the corresponding poles.

The three-phase stator coil is installed on the outside of rotor, which is secured together with the front and rear end covers of alternator.

When the rotor of the generator is rotated by the drive belt, the magnetic pole lines cut the stator winding, causing a change in the magnetic flux in the stator winding, and an alternating induced electromotive force is generated in the stator winding, thereby generating alternating current. The generated three-phase alternating current is converted to direct current by rectifier, and direct current is transmitted to the vehicle electrical system and battery by further adjusting by regulator.



3.3 Starter Assembly

■ Main Function

Starter consists of three parts: control mechanism, drive train mechanism and DC motor.

Control mechanism (solenoid switch): Controls engagement and disengagement between starter drive gear and engine flywheel gear and switches on/off the DC circuit.

Drive train mechanism: When engine starts, it engages starter drive gear with flywheel gear ring and transmits starter torque to the engine crankshaft; after engine starts, drive gear will automatically disengage from the flywheel gear, so that engine cannot drive starter at high speed, avoiding damage to the starter.

DC motor: Converts electrical energy from battery into electromagnetic moment.



R10100

4 Special Tool and Equipment

4.1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	<p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>

4.2 Special Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Battery Tester	<p style="text-align: right;">S00064</p>

5 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

5.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Starting and Charging system

Symptom	Possible Cause
Housing is cracked	Housing cracked is the most serious and destructive malfunction. When vehicle is subjected to strong vibration, lead acid battery overheating, too high pressure or electrolyte frozen expansion, the housing of lead acid battery will be damaged. For such malfunction, replacing battery is the sole way for treatment.
Electrode is loose	The cause of loosen electrode is that excessive force is applied during removal and installation of wire harness and inspection of contact. It is necessary to replace the battery assembly.
Connecting part of electrode is corroded or burnt	Check if the generated electricity is normal and if the charging voltage is too high.
Battery swells	The causes are that battery is aging and resistance is excessively high. It is necessary to replace the battery.

5.2 Common Trouble Diagnosis

Operation Content	Operation Description
Appearance inspection: Confirm if there is any washer fluid, coolant, oil, sludge and other foreign matters adhered.	If the washer fluid, coolant, oil enters rotor slip ring, brush holder, it will cause oxidization to alternator rotor slip ring and poor contact to brush, resulting in charging light remaining on or flashing.
Turn over the center of alternator belt by hand and observe if the max. turning angle is over 90°.	Loose belt will cause low alternator speed, resulting in low electric energy production or failing to generate energy; if the angle is over 90°, check the belt tension.
Measure battery voltage with a multimeter.	Confirm if the battery is depleted (more than 12 V). If so, unplug the generator excitation coil connector and retest the battery voltage (more than 12 V). If such condition still exists, charge the battery.
Confirm if there is any looseness, short circuit, dirt on alternator B+, excitation end, battery pile line and ground line and also confirm if the connectors are connected firmly.	Confirm if the wire harness is connected normally. Poor contact will cause that the alternator voltage is high, the indicator light doesn't come on, remains on or flashes. If there is any looseness, please tighten it firmly.

Charging indicator light remains on (do not generate electricity or power is low, vehicle cannot start, etc.)

Operation Content	Operation Description
Unplug the alternator connector, start the engine and depress the accelerator (engine speed is above 1500rpm), turn off the vehicle load, measure B+ voltage to ground with multimeter and observe 2-3 minutes.	If B+ voltage is about 13.8 V, the alternator is normal. If B+ voltage is the battery voltage, it indicates alternator malfunction. Replace the alternator.
If the alternator operates normally, reconnect the alternator connector, start the engine and keep it idling, turn on some electrical load on vehicle, such as A/C, headlight, etc. Meanwhile, depress the accelerator pedal or decelerate the vehicle. Measure B+ voltage to ground with multimeter and observe 2 - 3 minutes.	When vehicle load or speed changes, the alternator normal voltage should change within 10.6 - 16 V. If the charging indicator remains on, check if communication is normal with an oscilloscope or other test software.

Charging indicator (unstable electricity generation)	
Operation Content	Operation Description
Start the engine and keep it idling, remove alternator excitation coil and observe if the meter indicator flashes.	If the light flashes, it indicates that some excitation coil has outer leakage and intermittently ground. Check the circuit malfunction.
Indicator does not come on during self-check	
Operation Content	Operation Description
Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "ON" position, remove the engine excitation coil and measure the alternator excitation coil terminal voltage to ground with multimeter.	If the light flashes, it indicates that some excitation coil has outer leakage and intermittently ground. Check the circuit malfunction.
Adjusting voltage is high (headlight and other electrical appliances used on vehicle are burnt out)	
Operation Content	Operation Description
Start the engine and keep it idling, measure B+ voltage to ground with multimeter and observe 2 - 3 minutes to check if the max. value exceeds 16 V.	If so, it indicates that the regulator in alternator is damaged which causes voltage out of control. Replace the alternator.
Instrument indicator or headlight dims and then goes off during vehicle driving (fail to generate energy, low electric energy production)	
Operation Content	Operation Description
Start the engine and keep it idling for 5 minutes (turn off the electrical appliances with large power, test with light load as possible), measure the alternator B+ voltage.	If the measured voltage is 13 V - 14.8 V, the alternator is normal; if not, the alternator is abnormal. Replace the alternator.
Abnormal noise occurs in alternator	
Operation Content	Operation Description
Check if the alternator mounting bolt is installed in place and tightened with specified torque.	Improper installation of bolt will cause pulley jumps as alternator operate, resulting in abnormal noise. Tighten the bolt.
Remove the alternator belt, rotate the pulley by hand. Listen and observe near the motor if there is any abnormal noise during alternator rotation.	Excessive belt tension or dirt in alternator will cause alternator bearing failure or poor rotor dynamic balance which causing abnormal noise. Replace the alternator.

6 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

6.1 Battery Assembly

■ Check Charging System Voltage

⚠ Warning

- Following the related specifications on appliances connected with battery, in repair manual and owner's manual.
- Battery acid is highly corrosive, so it is necessary to wear protective gloves and goggles when working.
- Keep away from open fire, spark, light devices without protective measures and no smoking. Never generate any sparks when operating cable/wire and electrical devices. Avoid short circuit in battery.
- Wear eye protective mask/glasses.
- Never allow the children approaching acid and battery.
- Deliver the used battery to designated recycling site. Never throw the used battery into household garbage.

- (1) Leave vehicle under no load test condition and idle the engine. Measure battery voltage with a digital multimeter.

Standard voltage: 13.5 V - 14.8 V

Hint:

If result is not as specified, replace the alternator.

- (2) Leave vehicle under load test condition and idle the engine. Measure battery voltage with a digital multimeter.

- 1) Set headlight to high beam.
- 2) Turn on blower and adjust blower speed to the highest.
- 3) Turn on the "A/C" switch.

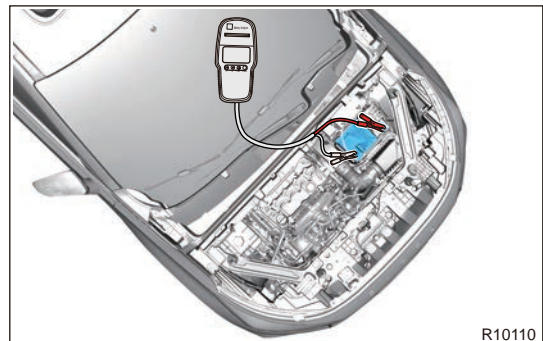
Standard voltage: 13.2 V - 14.8 V

■ Usage of Battery Tester

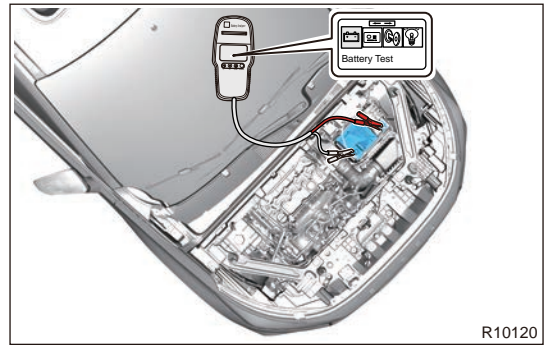
- (1) Connect the battery tester to battery.

Hint:

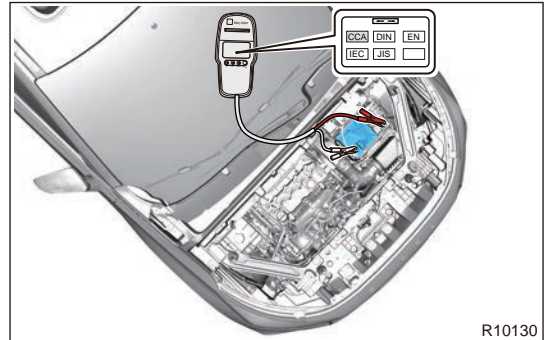
Connect red tube clamp to battery positive terminal while black tube clamp to battery negative terminal.



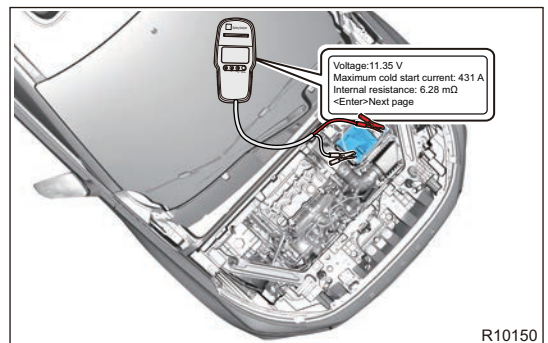
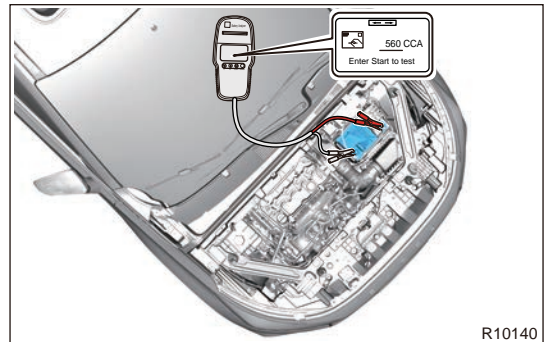
- (2) Operate tester to select “Battery Test” and click “Enter” .



- (3) Select “CCA” and click “Enter” .



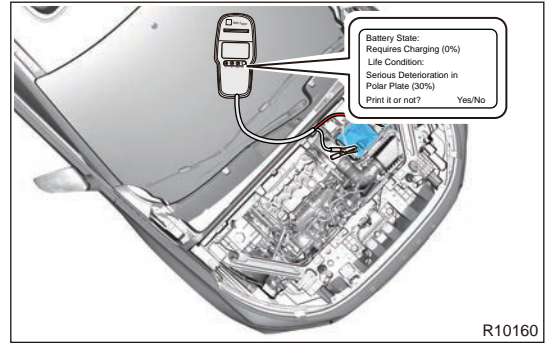
- (4) Operate “L and R” on tester to adjust and set the battery capacity (such as 560CCA, this value indicates the battery low temperature starting performance) and click “Enter” .



- (5) The battery condition is displayed on tester.

Hint:

Recharge or replace battery according to the tested data.

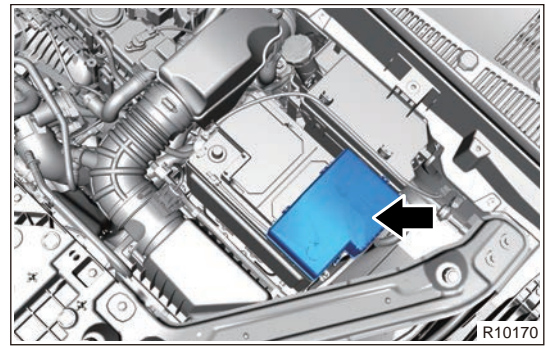


■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing battery assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing battery assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

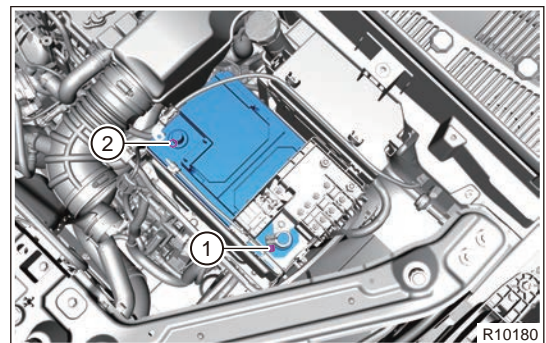
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove engine compartment fuse and relay box upper cover.



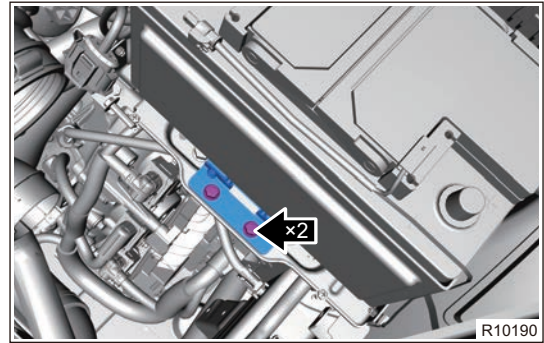
- (4) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (5) Loosen the locking nuts of positive and negative battery terminals, and remove the positive and negative battery cables (1) (2).

Hint:

When removing the battery positive and negative battery terminals, remove negative terminal before positive terminal.



- (6) Remove 2 fixing bolts and battery pressure plate.



- (7) Remove the battery assembly from protective cover carefully.

⚠ Caution

- When removing battery, be careful to prevent metal tools from contacting both electrodes of battery at the same time or touching the positive electrode and vehicle body.

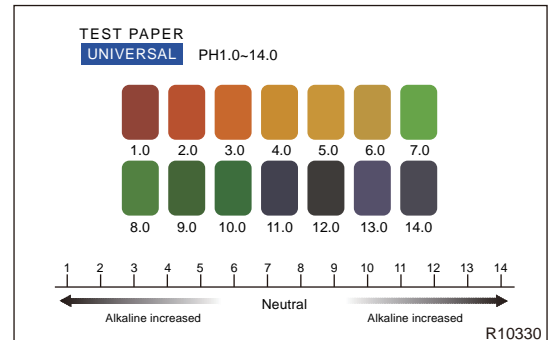
■ Battery Fluid Leakage Test

- (1) PH test paper is used for judgment.

Hint:

Test paper model: PH 1 - 14.

- (2) Take a piece of PH test paper (never allow it contacting with other fluid before test) to wipe the leaking area, so as to make the fluid adhere on the PH test paper. Then compare it with the color bar to judge the PH value.
- (3) If the PH value is less than 7, it is an acidic liquid, which indicates battery leakage.
- (4) If the PH value is 7 or higher, it is non-acidic liquid (- neutral or alkaline) which indicates “Petroleum jelly” fluid or other fluids leakage on battery surface.



■ Battery (Off-Vehicle) Charging

- (1) Because the battery has the characteristic of self-discharging, even if the battery is not in use, it is necessary to perform regular charging maintenance. When the discharging ratio for battery capacity is lower than 50%, the capacity cannot restore to 100% if charging with small current while the battery temperature increases and the plate active material will fall off easily if charging with large current, affecting the performance and life of battery.
- Charging with constant voltage: Voltage is limited at 14.40 V. During charging, make sure the charger is connected to the maximum charging current so as to get the preset voltage value (14.40 V) according to the current battery status and temperature. After the voltage reaches the limiting value, the charging current will drop gradually until it closes to 0 A (maintain the condition charging current).

■ Battery (On-vehicle) External Power Supply Charging

- (1) If battery external power supply charging is necessary, it's important to keep external charger is properly connected. If charging process is not correct, the sensor cannot recognize the charging current, and SOC value cannot be calculated correctly. Positive clamp of external charging device must clamp positive terminal of battery, and negative clamp must be ground instead of negative terminal of battery. Battery sensor only properly balances the charge when there is a continuous current through it.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Replace battery with a new one which conforms to the specifications.
- During installation, make sure the directions of positive and negative terminals are correct.
- Used battery contains sulfuric acid and lead, so never discard it at will. Please dispose of it at a qualified local waste treatment station.
- When installing the battery positive and negative battery terminals, install negative terminal before positive terminal.

- (1) Place the battery into battery tray carefully.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts to battery pressure plate.
Torque: 10 ± 1 N·m
- (3) Install and tighten battery positive and negative battery terminals.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (4) Install the air filter assembly.
- (5) Install engine compartment fuse and relay box upper cover.
- (6) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

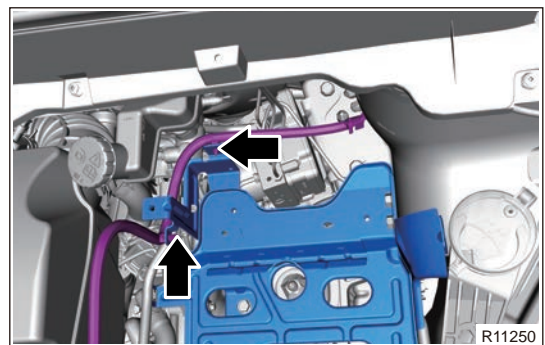
6.2 Battery Tray

■ Removal

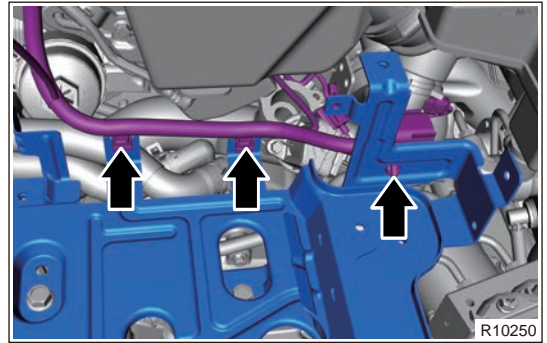
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing battery tray.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing battery tray. Be careful not to operate roughly.

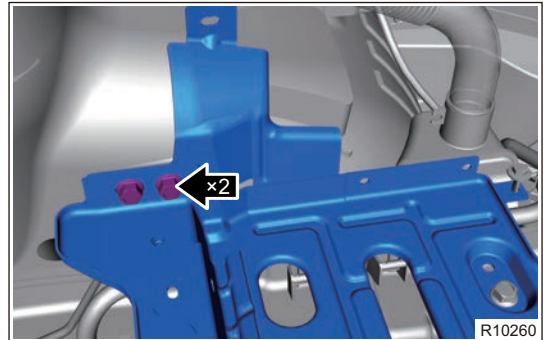
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the battery assembly.
- (5) Remove engine compartment fuse and relay box assembly.
- (6) Disconnect fixing clip from negative battery wire harness.



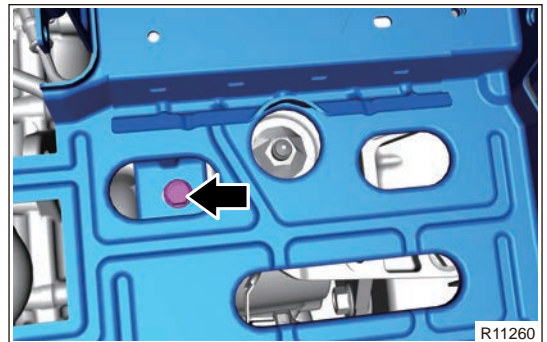
- (7) Disconnect fixing clip from engine electronic injection wire harness.



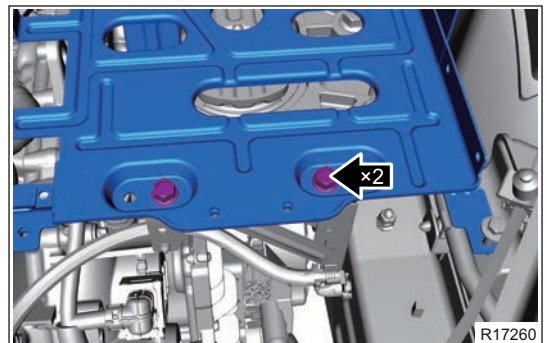
- (8) Remove 2 fixing bolts between battery tray and body.



- (9) Remove 1 fixing bolt between battery tray and left mounting cushion assembly.

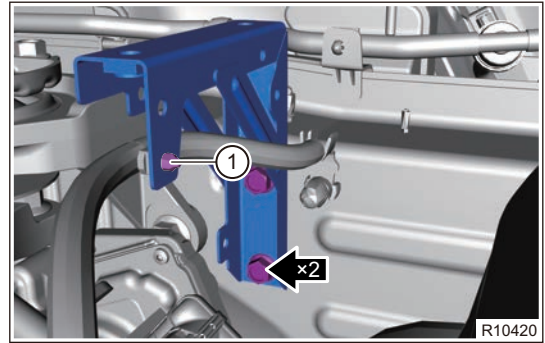


- (10) Remove 2 fixing bolts between battery tray and battery tray bracket.



- (11) Remove the battery tray assembly.

- (12) Remove 2 fixing bolts from battery tray mounting bracket and detach wire harness fixing clip (1).



- (13) Remove the battery tray mounting bracket.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts to battery tray bracket.
Torque: 20 ± 2 N·m
- (2) Install 5 fixing bolts to battery tray.
Torque: 20 ± 2 N·m
- (3) Secure engine electronic injection wire harness.
- (4) Secure the negative battery cable.
- (5) Install engine compartment fuse and relay box assembly.
- (6) Install the battery assembly.
- (7) Install the air filter assembly.
- (8) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

6.3 Alternator Assembly

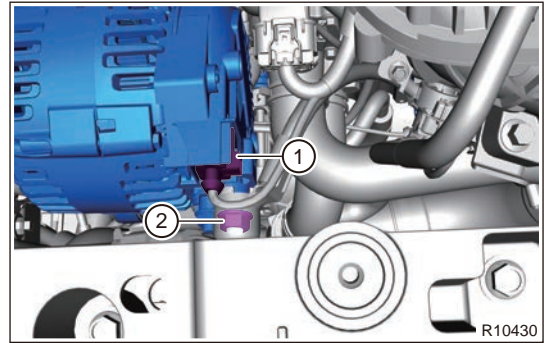
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

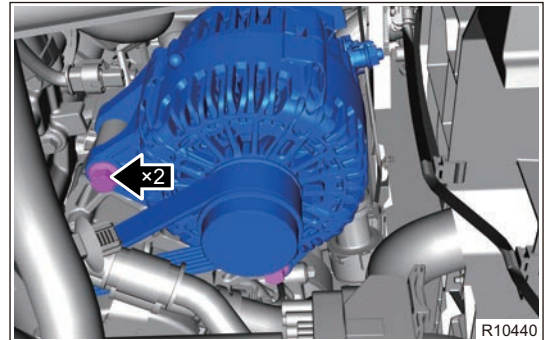
- **When removing alternator assembly, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing alternator assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the engine trim cover.
- (5) Remove the engine accessory belt.

- (6) Disconnect the alternator assembly connector (1) and remove alternator positive cable harness fixing nut (2).



- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts from alternator assembly.



- (8) Remove the alternator assembly carefully.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts to alternator assembly.
Torque: 40 + 5 N·m

⚠ Caution

- **After alternator bolt is tightened, visually check for clearance between two sliding sleeves as well as between module sliding sleeve and the module. If clearance exists, it meets the installation requirement.**

- (2) Install alternator positive wire harness port and secure the nut.
Torque: 13 ± 2 N·m

- (3) Connect alternator assembly connector.
 (4) Install the alternator accessory belt.
 (5) Install the engine compartment trim cover.

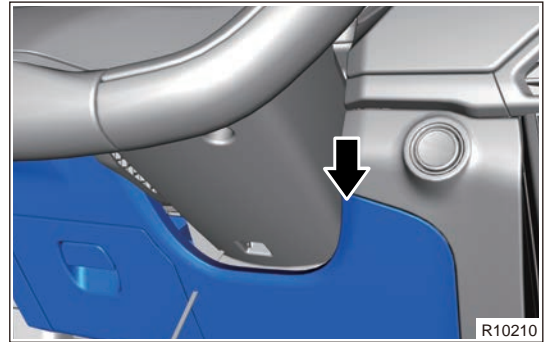
6.4 ENGINE START STOP Switch

■ Removal

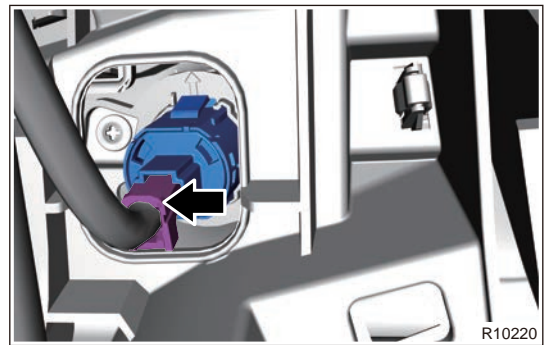
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing ENGINE START STOP switch.**
- **Try to prevent interior protector from being scratched during removal and installation.**

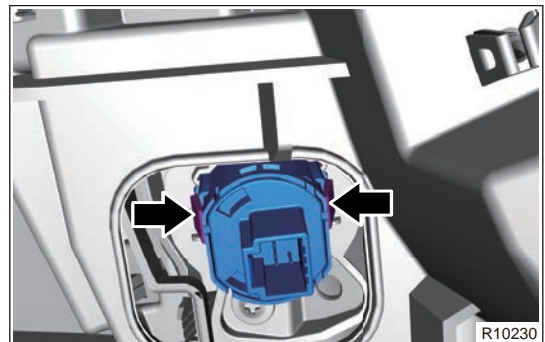
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, remove the lower left protector body assembly.



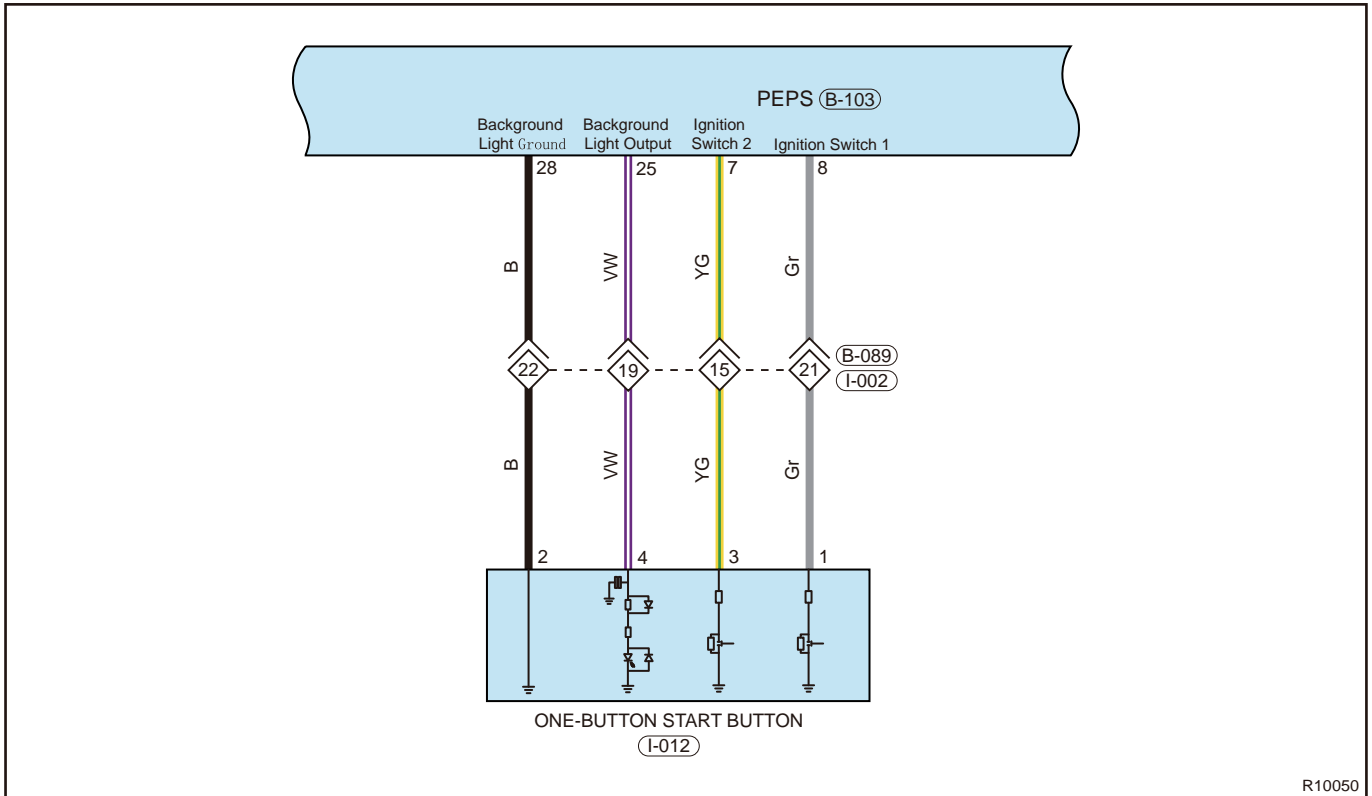
- (4) Disconnect ENGINE START STOP switch connector.



- (5) Press/Push fixing clips on both sides of ENGINE START STOP switch and remove ENGINE START STOP switch assembly.



■ Inspection



R10050

- (1) Using a digital multimeter, check the continuity of ENGINE START STOP switch according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Switch Condition	Specified Condition
Terminal 6 - Terminal 8	Not pressed	No continuity
Terminal 4 - Terminal 8	Not pressed	No continuity
Terminal 6 - Terminal 8	Pushed	Continuity
Terminal 4 - Terminal 8	Pushed	Continuity

⚠ Caution

- If measure result is not as specified, replace the ENGINE START STOP switch assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install ENGINE START STOP switch to lower center protector body.
- (2) Connect ENGINE START STOP switch connector.
- (3) Install the lower left protector body assembly.

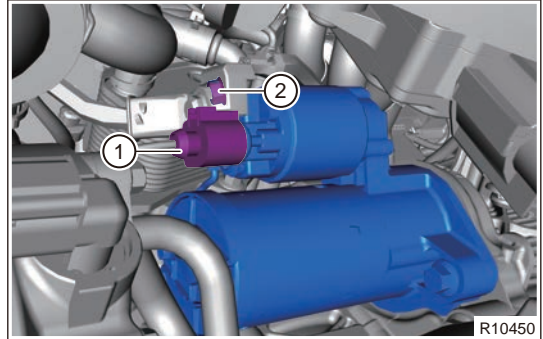
6.5 Starter Assembly

■ Removal

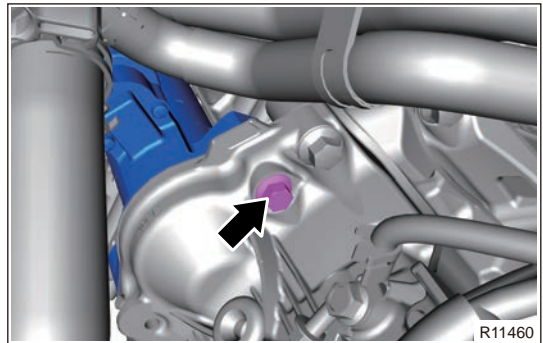
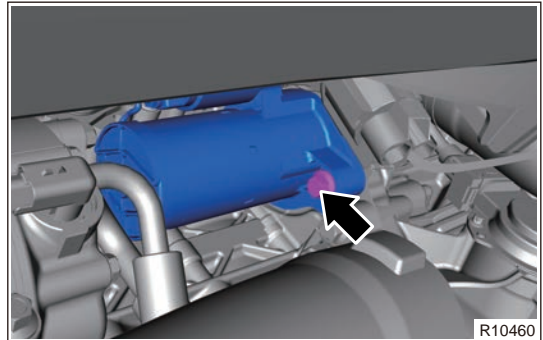
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing starter assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing starter assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the intercooler inlet pipe II assembly.
- (5) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (6) Remove the intercooler outlet pipe II assembly.
- (7) Disconnect the starter assembly connector (1) and remove positive cable fixing nut (2).



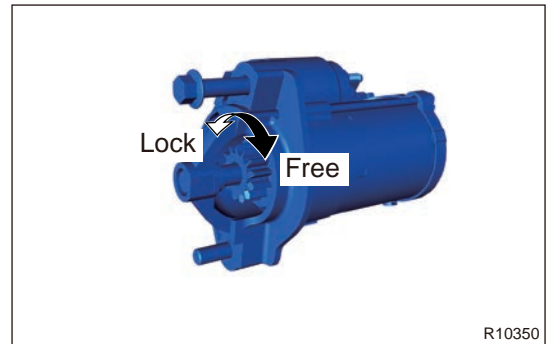
- (8) Remove 2 set bolts between starter assembly and transmission case.



- (9) Remove the starter assembly carefully.

■ Check the starter clutch

- (1) Rotate the clutch pinion gear clockwise to check that it rotates freely. Rotate the clutch pinion gear counterclockwise to check that it locks. If result is not as specified, replace the starter.

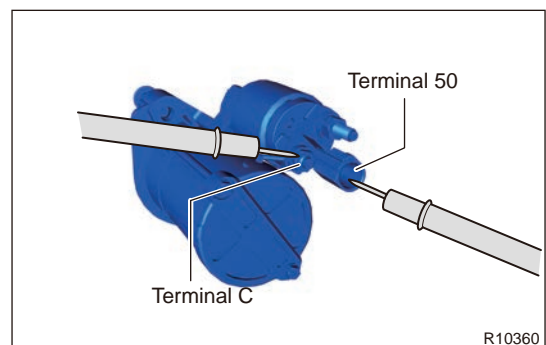


■ Check the pull-in coil

- (1) Measure the resistance between terminal 50 and terminal C.

Hint:

Standard resistance should be below 2Ω . If the resistance is abnormal, replace the starter assembly.



■ Check the starter assembly

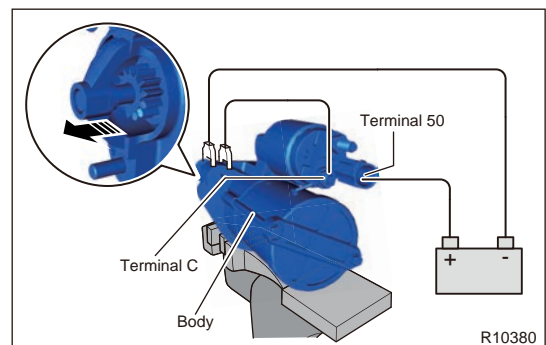
⚠ Caution

- These measurements must be performed within 3 to 5 seconds to avoid coil burnout.
- Place the starter assembly onto a vise. The jaws of vise should be covered by aluminum sheet or brass plate; otherwise, the starter assembly will be easily damaged when clamping it.

- (1) Perform pull-in test.
- Remove the nut and disconnect the field coil lead from terminal C.
 - As shown in illustration, connect battery to solenoid switch, and check that starter clutch pinion sticks out normally.

Hint:

If starter clutch pinion does not move, replace the starter assembly.

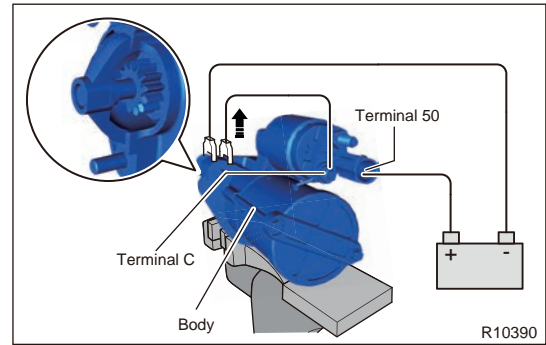


(2) Perform pull-in test.

- Keep the starter clutch pinion sticking out and the connection condition of battery mentioned above, and disconnect the negative battery cable from terminal C.
- Check if starter clutch pinion keeps sticking out.

Hint:

If starter clutch pinion moves inward, replace the starter assembly.

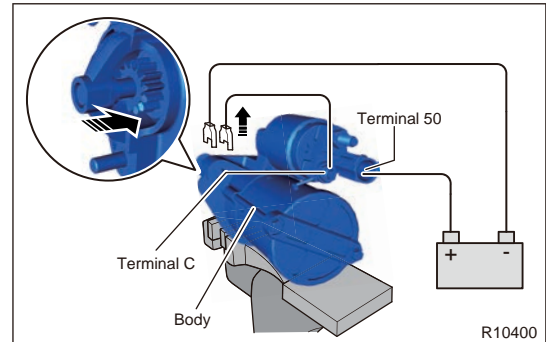


(3) Check if starter clutch pinion returns back.

- Disconnect negative battery cable from starter body and check that starter clutch pinion returns back.

Hint:

If starter clutch pinion moves inward, replace the starter assembly.

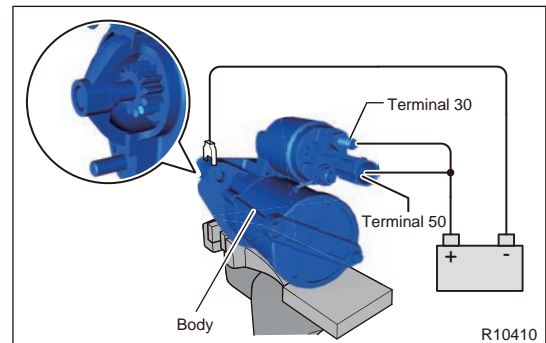


(4) Check if starter rotates smoothly.

- Connect the field coil lead to terminal C, and tighten it with a nut.
- As shown in illustration, connect battery to starter; And check that starter rotates smoothly when the starter clutch pinion moves outward.

Hint:

The lead to be connected should avoid the pinion side to prevent lead stuck as pinion rotates. If result is not as specified, replace the starter assembly.



■ **Installation**

- (1) Align starter with the corresponding holes on transmission, install 2 bolts and tighten it in order after pre-tightening 2-3 teeth with hand.

Torque: 40 + 5 N·m

- (2) Install positive wire harness port and secure the nut.

Torque: 13 ± 2 N·m

- (3) Connect starter assembly connector.
 (4) Install intercooler intake pipe II assembly.
 (5) Install the air filter assembly.
 (6) Install engine lower protector assembly.
 (7) Install intercooler outlet pipe II assembly.

ENGINE

12.1	FUEL SYSTEM	592
1	Warning and Precaution.....	592
1.1	Warning.....	592
1.2	Precaution.....	592
2	System Overview	592
2.1	System Description.....	592
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	593
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	594
2.4	System Components Description.....	594
3	Special Tool and Equipment.....	595
3.1	General Tool.....	595
3.2	Special Tool.....	596
4	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	596
4.1	Problem Symptoms Table	596
5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	597
5.1	Fuel Rail Injector Assembly.....	597
5.2	High Pressure Fuel Pump Assembly	599
5.3	High Pressure Fuel Pipe.....	602
5.4	Fuel Filler Cap Body Assembly	603
5.5	Electric Fuel Pump Assembly	604
5.6	Fuel Tank Assembly	606
5.7	Fuel Pump Control Module.....	609
5.8	Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor	610
5.9	Low Pressure Fuel Pressure Sensor	611

12.1 FUEL SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) As the pressure of high pressure fuel system is high, the pressure must be released before removal.
- (2) During removal, make sure the areas near stored parts are clean and free of dirt.
- (3) Perform removal after engine cools down.
- (4) Operation staff should wear protective glasses and rubber gloves during repair and avoid inhaling much fuel gas.

1.2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

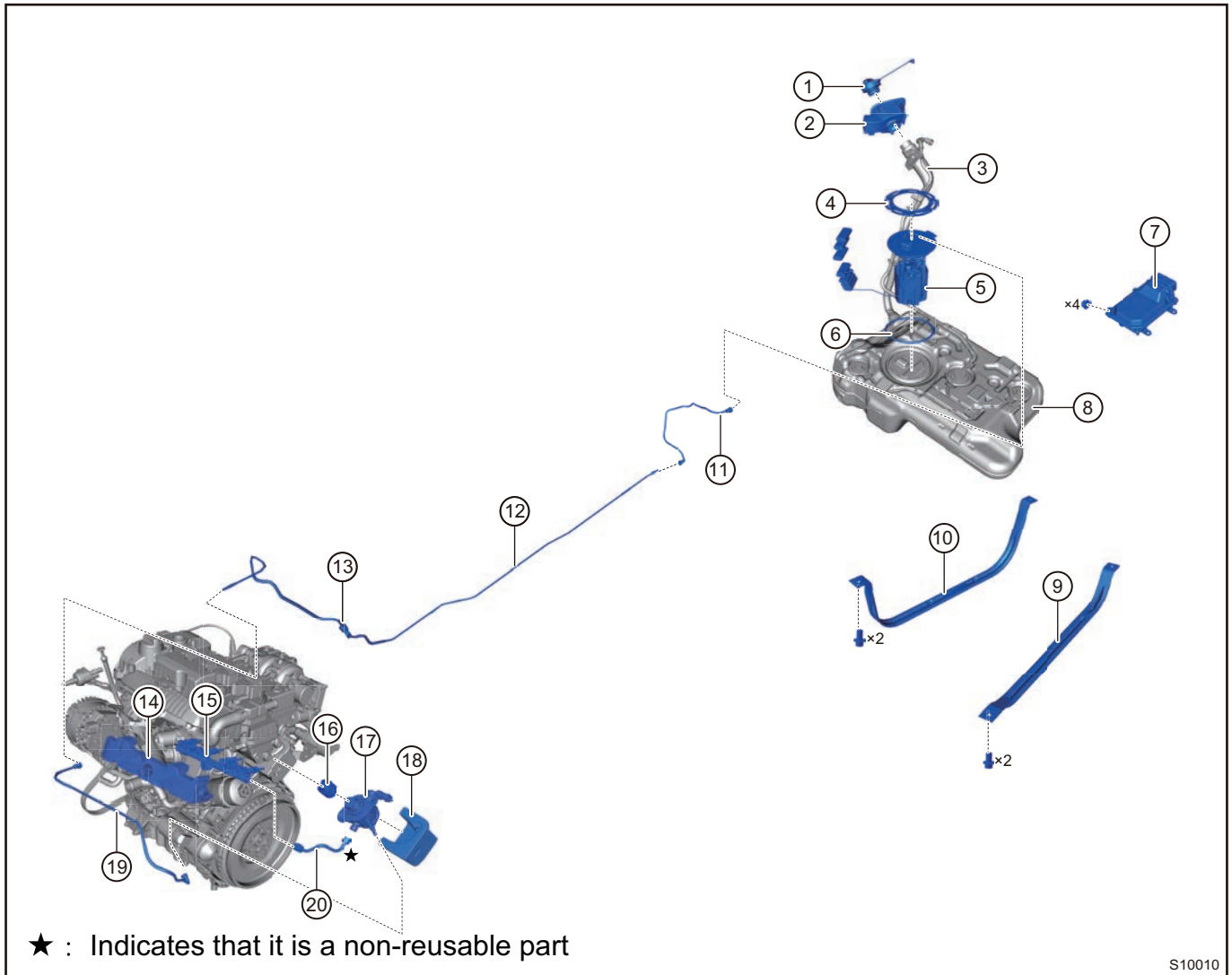
- (1) If fuel leakage occurs when operating the fuel supply system, please handle the leaked fuel in time.
- (2) When operating the fuel supply system, work area should be in good ventilation and keep fire sources or open flames away from the work area, in which fire extinguisher should be equipped.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

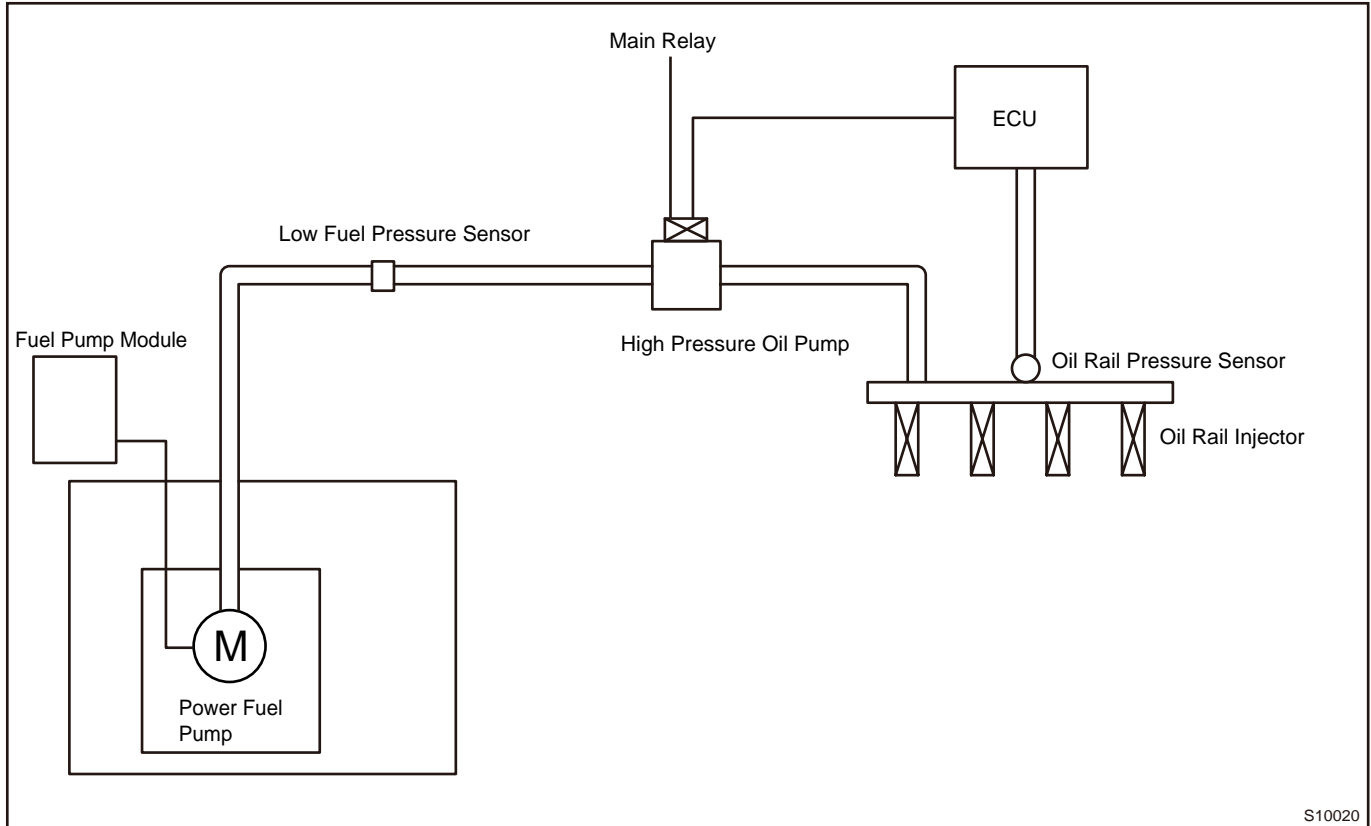
Fuel supply system of SQR4J16 engine uses direct injection in cylinder. The high pressure fuel pump is driven by square cam on intake camshaft, thus sucking fuel from the low-pressure end for compression and boosting, and the pressure can be raised up to 200 bar. ECU monitors fuel rail pressure through oil pressure sensor. Fuel is sent to fuel rail after further adjustment by the fuel pressure regulator. The vehicle adopts a direct injection system with Bosch 4-hole nozzle and a side nozzle layout; According to the control signal of ECU, fuel is injected into the combustion chamber and mixed with gas for combustion. In low pressure fuel system, fuel pump is controlled by individual fuel pump control module by means of duty ratio control, and monitors the low-pressure end pressure through low pressure fuel pressure sensor realizing closed-loop control.

2.2 System Components Diagram



1	Fuel Filler Cap	11	Fuel Pump Outlet Pipe
2	Fuel Tank Cap Assembly	12	Floor Fuel Supply Pipe
3	Fuel Filler Pipe Assembly	13	Low Pressure Fuel Pressure Sensor
4	Fuel Pump Locking Ring	14	Fuel Rail Injector Sound Insulator
5	Fuel Pump Assembly	15	Fuel Rail Injector Assembly
6	Fuel Tank Seal Ring	16	Roller Tappet
7	Fuel Pump Control Module	17	High Pressure Fuel Pump
8	Fuel Tank Assembly	18	High Pressure Fuel Pump Sound Insulator
9	Fuel Tank Fixing Strap Assembly I	19	Engine Compartment Fuel Supply Pipe
10	Fuel Tank Fixing Strap Assembly II	20	High Pressure Fuel Pipe (Fuel Pump - Fuel Rail)

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



S10020

2.4 System Components Description

■ Electric Fuel Pump

Electric fuel pump consists of pump body, DC motor and housing. Its basic operation principle is that DC motor drives the rotor in pump housing to rotate at high speed after it is energized. The section at lower end of rotor shaft combines with the section at the inner hole of impeller, so that rotor shaft drives impeller to rotate as rotor rotates. During high speed rotation of impeller, the low pressure vacuum is created at the inlet part, and then the filtered fuel is sucked from the inlet of pump cover. The sucked fuel enters the pump housing after being pressurized by fuel pump impeller and then it is pushed out of outlet to provide fuel with a certain pressure for the fuel system.



S10090

High Pressure Fuel Pump

High pressure fuel pump is an element specially used for direct injection engine. It functions to increase the system pressure and provide high pressure fuel for the fuel rail assembly. High pressure fuel pump supplies fuel for system as demands, thus providing a better fuel economy. It is made of stainless steel material and has a wide fuel application; also, it has the advantages of light weight, small volume, zero evaporative emission, etc. The high pressure fuel pump uses a single plunger pump design integrated with regulator, flow control valve and pressure relief valve. Its operation principle is to drive high pressure pump plunger to move up and down by cam, thus achieving oil suction and outlet. Using the pressure sensor on fuel rail, ECU controls the flow of high pressure fuel pump through flow control valve according to the set control procedure, so as to perform closed loop control of pressure in high pressure fuel rail. Regulator functions to suppress the pressure pulsation at the low pressure end and improve the stability of system. Pressure relief valve will open when high pressure fuel rail pressure exceeds the safety limit, so as to protect the system.



High Pressure Fuel Pipe

High pressure fuel pipe connects the high pressure fuel pump with the fuel rail injector assembly and delivers high pressure fuel to fuel rail injector assembly.

Fuel Rail Injector

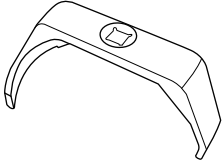
The high pressure fuel distribution pipe assembly is integrated with high pressure fuel distribution pipe (fuel rail), high pressure fuel injector and high pressure sensor. Its operation is to optimize design through structure of high pressure fuel distribution pipe, the accurate fuel rail pressure signal feedback can uniformly and precisely distribute fuel for engine through injector.

3 Special Tool and Equipment

3.1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	

3.2 Special Tool

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	ECH-0006	 <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">S00083</p>

4 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

4.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Fuel System

Symptom	Possible Cause
Fuel pressure in fuel supply system is too low	Electric fuel pump assembly (strainer blocked or fuel pressure regulator damaged)
	Low fuel level
Fuel pressure in fuel supply system is too high	Fuel injector (clogged)
	Electric fuel pump assembly (fuel pressure regulator damaged)
Electric fuel pump assembly has loud noise or a delay in operating	Low fuel level
	Electric fuel pump assembly
Fuel injector is clogged or leaks	Fuel injector
	Poor fuel quality
	Excessive impurities in fuel tank
Fuel injector does not work	Fuel supply system line (broken)
	Fuel injector (short in coil)
	Electric fuel pump assembly (damaged)
	Wire harness

■ Lubrication Areas During Assembly

Lubrication Area	Note
High Pressure Fuel Pump O-ring	Engine Oil

■ Non-reusable Part

Non-reusable Part	Note
High Pressure Fuel Pipe	Replace it
Teflon Grommet of Fuel Injector	Replace it

■ High Pressure Fuel System Pressure Release

- (1) Method 1: Stop vehicle for 8 hours or more.
- (2) Method 2: Unplug high pressure fuel pump connector, and idle the engine for 10 seconds. In this case, the malfunction light on instrument cluster of vehicle will come on. After repair, connect high pressure fuel pump connector and operate it again for a period of time, then the fault will disappear.

■ Low Pressure Fuel System Pressure Release

- (1) Method 1: Turn ENGINE START STOP switch OFF and leave vehicle for 30 minutes.
- (2) Method 2: Turn ENGINE START STOP switch OFF, remove fuel pump control module power supply fuse, start engine and make it stop automatically in Idling condition, then start engine twice or three times again, and release pressure residuals from fuel pipe by starting injection.

5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

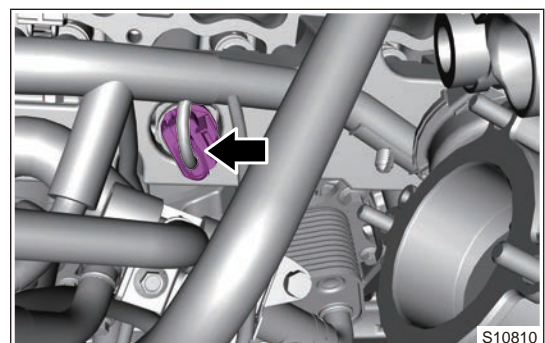
5.1 Fuel Rail Injector Assembly

■ Removal

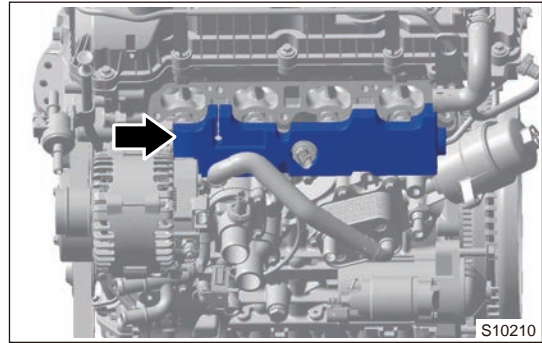
⚠ Warning

- As the pressure of high pressure fuel system is high, the pressure must be released before removal.
- During removal, make sure the areas near stored parts are clean and free of dirt.
- Teflon grommet at injector head cannot be reused after fuel rail injector is removal, and it must be replaced with a new one during installation, therefore, be sure to confirm if removal is necessary before removal.
- Perform removal after engine cools down.

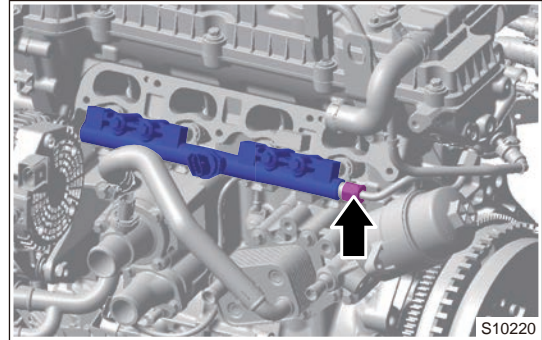
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Remove the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the intake manifold assembly.
- (5) Disconnect the fuel rail pressure sensor connector.



- (6) Remove the fuel rail injector sound insulator.



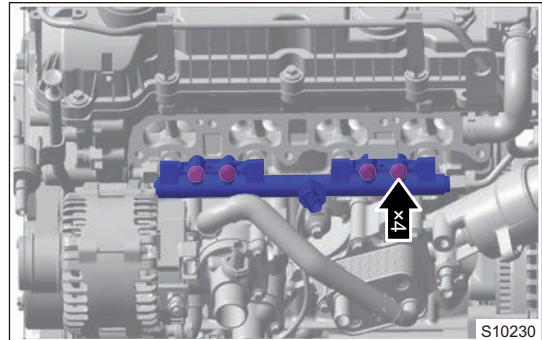
- (7) Loosen coupling nut between high pressure fuel pipe and fuel rail injector pipe joint.



- (8) Remove 4 fixing bolts from fuel rail injector and remove fuel rail injector assembly.

Hint:

The removal sequence of bolts is 1-4-2-3 (From cylinder 1 of engine, bolts are arranged in order of 1, 2, 3, 4).



■ **Inspection**

- (1) Check if wire harness connector of fuel rail injector assembly is abnormal.
- (2) Check connecting area between fuel rail and fuel injector for fuel leakage, and check mounting hole of fuel injector for air leakage or fuel leakage.
- (3) Use ohm band of multimeter to measure resistance between both pins of injector.

Normal value: $1.5\Omega \pm 5\%$ (23°C)

■ Installation

Caution

- If it is necessary to reassemble injector, assemble it after Teflon grommet at injector head is replaced.
- Make sure that engine cylinder head fuel injector mounting holes are clean and no foreign matter.
- Do not lubricate the sealing ring at head of fuel injector.
- During installation, align injector with mounting hole on cylinder head, and press it into mounting hole in axis direction of injector at a constant speed. If a press-fitting device is used, keep the force balance when pressing to prevent system from being damaged due to the unbalanced stress. The maximum pressing force should not be greater than 800N. After fuel rail is pressed into place, loosen the press-fitting device and insert bolt into the mounting hole on fuel rail injector, and screw 3-5 teeth into the screw hole on cylinder head.
- If no press-fitting device is available and fuel rail cannot be pressed into place, it is allowed to use a fuel rail bolt to bring it in, and tighten it several times in sequence of 3-2-4-1. It is not allowed to tighten an individual bolt directly. Tighten until fuel rail and cylinder head fit, then loosen all fuel rail bolts, and tighten fuel rail fixing bolts after fuel pipe is installed and tightened.
- It is necessary to perform self-learning of fuel injector after fuel rail injector is removed and replaced.

(1) Install 4 fixing bolts to fuel rail and loosen all fuel rail bolts after fuel rail and cylinder head fit.

Caution

- **Tightening sequence of bolts: 3-2-4-1.**

(2) Tighten high pressure fuel pipe nuts.

Torque: $30 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(3) Tighten fuel rail fixing bolts several times in sequence of 3-2-4-1.

Torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(4) Tighten high pressure fuel pipe nuts again.

Torque: $30 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(5) Install fuel rail injector sound insulator.

(6) Connect the fuel rail pressure sensor connector.

(7) Install the intake manifold assembly.

(8) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.

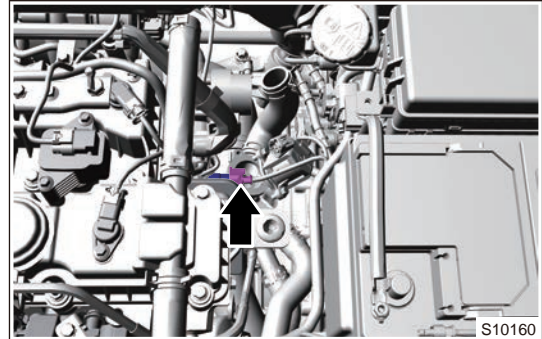
5.2 High Pressure Fuel Pump Assembly

■ Removal

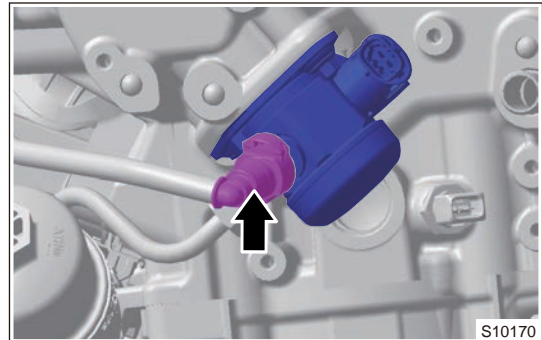
Warning

- As the pressure of high pressure fuel system is high, the pressure must be released before removal.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.
- During removal, make sure the areas near stored parts are clean and free of dirt.
- There is residual fuel in high pressure fuel pump. Please pay attention to the leakage of fuel during removal to avoid fire.
- Perform removal after engine cools down.

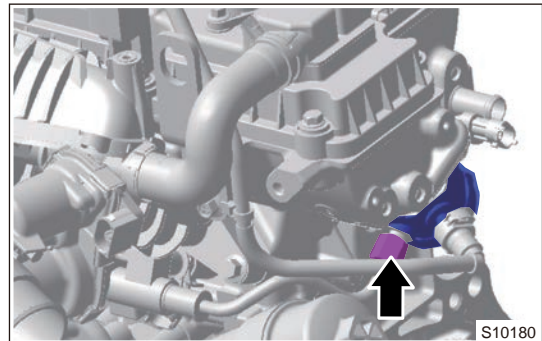
- (1) Release high pressure fuel system pressure.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (5) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (6) Disconnect the high pressure fuel pump (fuel pressure regulating solenoid valve) connector.
- (7) Remove high pressure fuel pump sound insulator carefully.



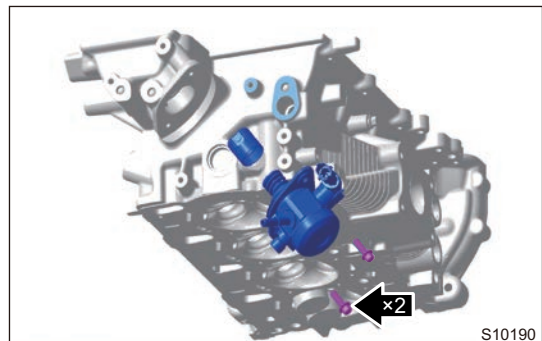
- (8) Disconnect connection between engine compartment fuel supply pipe and high pressure fuel pump.



- (9) Loosen high pressure fuel pipe joint, and disconnect connection between high pressure fuel pipe and high pressure fuel pump.



- (10) Remove 2 fixing bolts from high pressure fuel pump.



⚠ Caution

- **During removal, loosen fixing bolts in turn, and then remove bolts completely. Never remove a bolt completely in one time.**

(11) Rotate high pressure fuel pump gently and pull it outwards. Never swing high pressure fuel pump in radial direction.

⚠ Caution

- **When pulling out high pressure fuel pump, the roller tappet may fall naturally. In order to prevent damage in falling, hold it by hand when pulling out the high pressure fuel pump.**

■ Check the high pressure fuel pump

- (1) Check if high pressure fuel pump connector is abnormal.
- (2) Check resistance between both pins of high pressure fuel pump connector.
- (3) Measure resistance of high pressure fuel pump (fuel pressure regulating solenoid valve) coil.

Measurement Temperature (°C)	Coil Resistance (0 mileage) (Ω)		Coil Resistance (after driving) (Ω)	
	Minimum	Maximum	Minimum	Maximum
- 40	0.379	0.417	0.372	0.426
20	0.495	0.545	0.485	0.556
160	0.765	0.843	0.750	0.859

■ Check the roller tappet

- (1) Check if appearance of roller tappet is complete, if wear is serious, and if roller bearing can rotate smoothly.
- (2) Check if roller tappet diameter is obviously out of tolerance. If it is out of tolerance, replacement is recommended. Diameter: 26mm (-0.020, 0.055)

Hint:

If above problems occur, replacing with a new roller tappet is recommended.

■ Installation**⚠ Caution**

- **Before installation, make sure the part model of high pressure fuel pump is correct and available.**
- **Before installation, make sure sealing caps of high pressure fuel pump joint are complete. Never use high pressure fuel pump without sealing cap.**
- **High pressure fuel pump O-ring must be lubricated with lubricating oil before installation.**
- **During installation of high pressure fuel pump, never tighten a bolt firmly in one time, and they must be tightened in turn.**

- (1) Apply a coat of oil to O-ring of high pressure fuel pump, install roller tappet and high pressure fuel pump and then place them into mounting hole. When replacing, be sure to align anti-rotating pin of roller tappet with anti-rotating groove in mounting hole.
- (2) Pre-tighten fixing bolts of high pressure fuel pump several turns in order, and never tighten a bolt completely in one time. Do not use sharp tools or tap components during installation to avoid damaging high pressure fuel pipe.

Torque: 13 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Do not allow skin to contact the roller tappet directly during installation. During the operation, it is necessary to wear cleaning gloves to prevent roller tappet surface from being contaminated by sweat and foreign matters.

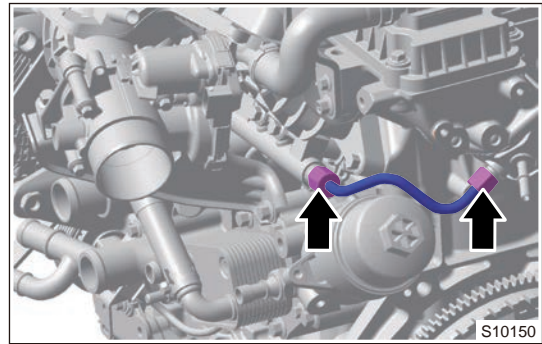
5.3 High Pressure Fuel Pipe

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- As the pressure of high pressure fuel system is high, the pressure must be released before removal.
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.
- During removal, make sure the areas near stored parts are clean and free of dirt.
- Perform removal after engine cools down.

- (1) Release the high pressure fuel system pressure.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Remove the intake hose assembly.
- (4) Remove the high pressure fuel pump sound insulator.
- (5) After pressure of high pressure fuel system is released completely, use a wrench to remove nuts on both sides of high pressure fuel pipe completely.



- (6) Remove high pressure fuel pipe.

⚠ Caution

- The removed high pressure fuel pipe should be marked with scraping marks and cannot be reused.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- High pressure fuel pipe is a non-reusable part, never reassemble it for a secondary use.
- Before installing high pressure fuel pipe, make sure that the part model is correct, the sealing caps on both ends of high pressure fuel pipe are intact. Never use any high pressure fuel pipe without sealing cap.
- Do not use sharp tools during installation to avoid scratching high pressure fuel pipe joint.
- During installation of high pressure fuel pipe, pay attention to avoid collision with the fuel rail injector joint and end of high pressure fuel pump joint.
- Before installing high pressure fuel pipe, confirm if fixing bolts of fuel rail injector are tightened. If they are tightened completely, loosen all of them and then install the high pressure fuel pipe.

- (1) Unplug protective cap of high pressure fuel pipe, and pre-tighten both ends of high pressure fuel pipe to high pressure fuel pump and fuel rail joint respectively in correct direction.

Torque: 20 + 2 N·m

- (2) Tighten fuel rail fixing bolts several times in sequence of 3-2-4-1.

Torque: 25 ± 3 N·m

⚠ Caution

- **Tightening sequence of bolts: 3-2-4-1.**

(3) Tighten high pressure fuel pipe nuts again.

Torque: 30 ± 2 N·m

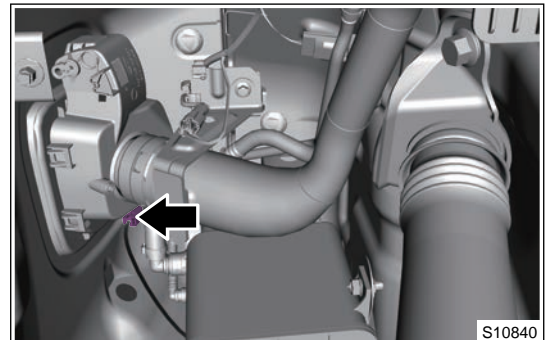
5.4 Fuel Filler Cap Body Assembly

■ Removal

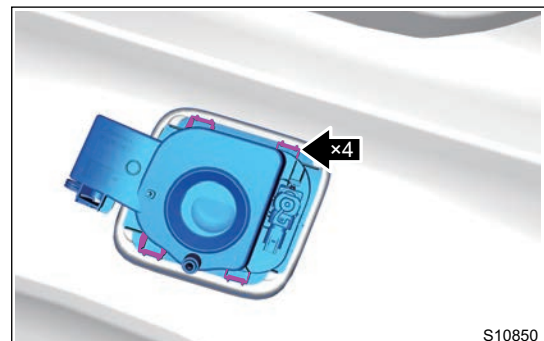
⚠ Warning

- **Before operating the fuel supply system, please touch the vehicle body to discharge static electricity; failure to do so will cause a fire, even result in an explosion.**
- **When operating the fuel supply system, work area should be in good ventilation and keep fire sources or open flames away from the work area, in which fire extinguisher should be equipped.**
- **If fuel leakage occurs when operating the fuel supply system, please handle the leaked fuel in time.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear right wheel.
- (4) Remove the rear right wheel house protector assembly.
- (5) Disconnect fuel filler cap body actuator connector.



- (6) Insert hand into and press 4 fixing clips of electric fuel filler cap assembly from interior, push them out and remove fuel filler cap body assembly.



■ Installation

- (1) Install fuel filler cap assembly, press fuel filler cap assembly to secure the clips in place.
- (2) Connect fuel filler cap body actuator connector.
- (3) Install rear right wheel house protector assembly.
- (4) Install the rear right wheel.

5.5 Electric Fuel Pump Assembly

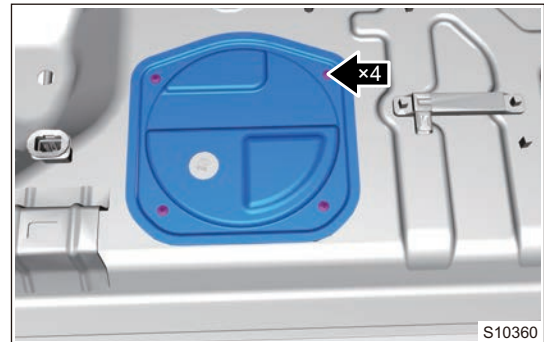
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

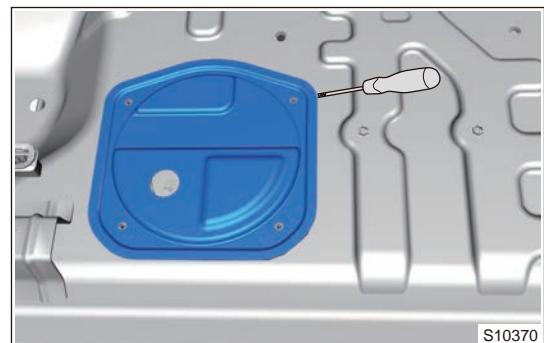
- Before operating the fuel supply system, please touch the vehicle body to discharge static electricity; failure to do so will cause a fire, even result in an explosion.
- When operating the fuel supply system, work area should be in good ventilation and keep fire sources or open flames away from the work area, in which fire extinguisher should be equipped.
- If fuel leakage occurs when operating the fuel supply system, please handle the leaked fuel in time.
- Operation staff should wear protective glasses and rubber gloves during repair and avoid inhaling much fuel gas.
- Only use parts approved by Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. to replace the electric fuel pump assembly.
- Keep electric fuel pump assembly and work area clean when replacing electric fuel pump assembly; otherwise the electric fuel pump assembly element will be clogged.
- DO NOT damage the disconnected fuel system line or connectors. Cover the line joints or connectors with plastic bags or equivalent, preventing foreign matter from entering.
- Keep fuel tank and line clean.

- (1) Release the low pressure fuel system pressure.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the rear seat cushion assembly.

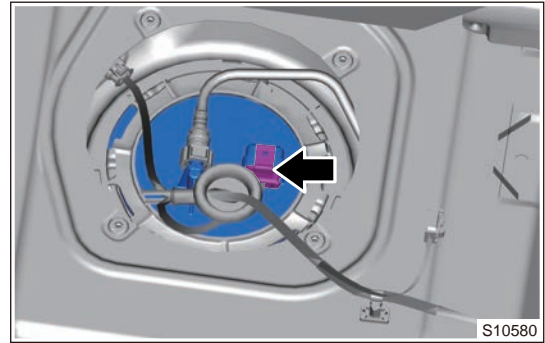
- (5) Remove 4 fixing screws from tank view window cover with a cross screwdriver.



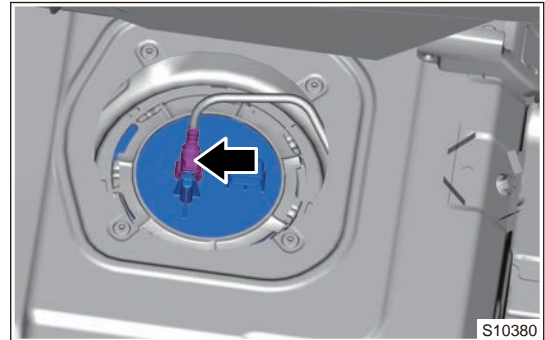
- (6) Remove tank view window cover with a flat tip screwdriver.



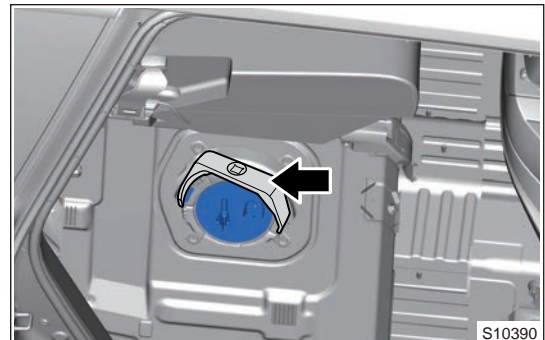
- (7) Disconnect the electric fuel pump assembly connector.



- (8) Disconnect connection between fuel pipe and electric fuel pump assembly.



- (9) Using a fuel tank pressure cap special tool, remove fuel tank pressure cap.



- (10) Remove electric fuel pump assembly from fuel tank, and dispose of fuel in electric fuel pump assembly.

⚠ Caution

- Operate carefully when taking the electric fuel pump assembly out of fuel tank, preventing damaging lines and floats.
- Cover the electric fuel pump assembly completely with a plastic bag or equivalent to prevent foreign matter from entering.
- Electric fuel pump assembly can be put into a container and taken out of the cabin, thus preventing fuel in the pump from dropping into the cabin.
- It is not allowed to perform running test for electric fuel pump assembly under dry state or in water. Otherwise service life will be reduced. In addition, do not inversely connect electric fuel pump assembly positive and negative poles.

■ Installation

Caution

- **Replace fuel tank seal ring with a new one when installing electric fuel pump assembly, align it with installation position of fuel tank and do not run the electric fuel pump assembly with no fuel in fuel tank, preventing damaging electric fuel pump assembly.**
- **Before connecting the hose, check if there is any damage or foreign matter on the hose or joint.**
- **During installation, push in fuel pipe connector until a click sound is heard, then check that fuel pipe joint clip is on the collar of fuel pipe joint. After installing the pipe joint clip, check that fuel pipe joint cannot be pulled out. Be careful not to damage joint. If clip is damaged, replace it.**
- **Turn ignition switch to ON (without starting engine) to apply fuel pressure to fuel supply system, and then check connections for leakage.**

- (1) Using a fuel tank pressure cap special tool, install fuel tank pressure cap.

Torque: 400 N·m.

- (2) Connect inlet pipe.
- (3) Connect the electric fuel pump assembly connector.
- (4) Install the rear seat cushion assembly.

5.6 Fuel Tank Assembly

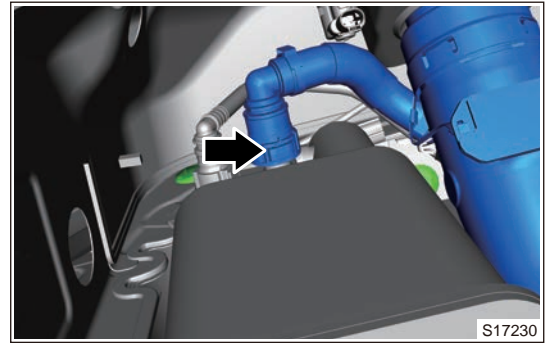
■ Removal

Warning

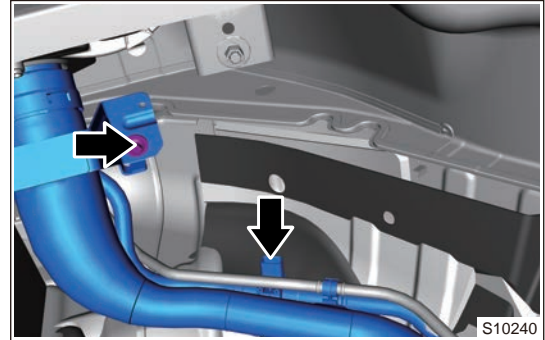
- **Before operating the fuel supply system, please touch the vehicle body to discharge static electricity; failure to do so will cause a fire, even result in an explosion.**
- **When operating the fuel supply system, work area should be in good ventilation and keep fire sources or open flames away from the work area, in which fire extinguisher should be equipped.**
- **If fuel leakage occurs when operating the fuel supply system, please handle the leaked fuel in time.**
- **Operation staff should wear protective glasses and rubber gloves during repair and avoid inhaling much fuel gas.**
- **DO NOT damage the disconnected fuel system line or connectors. Cover the line joints or connectors with plastic bags or equivalent, preventing foreign matter from entering.**
- **Keep fuel tank and line clean.**

- (1) Release the low pressure fuel system pressure.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the intermediate propeller shaft.
- (5) Remove torque manager.
- (6) Remove the main catalytic converter and front muffler assembly.
- (7) Remove the rear right wheel.
- (8) Remove the rear right wheel house protector.
- (9) Disconnect the electric fuel pump assembly connector.

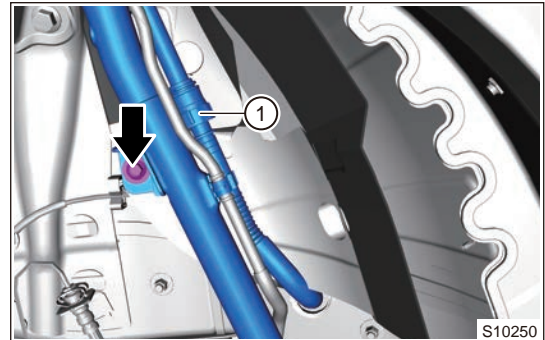
- (10) Disconnect connection between fuel filler pipe assembly and activated charcoal canister assembly.



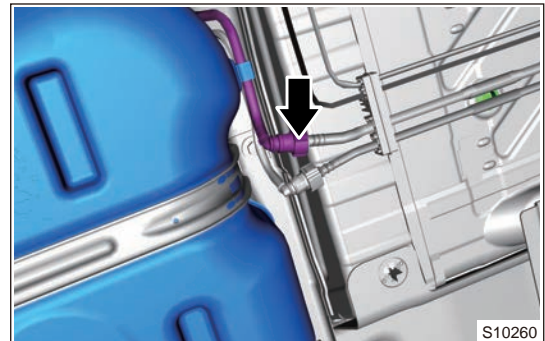
- (11) Disconnect fuel tank pressure sensor connector.
(12) Remove 1 fixing bolt from upper part of fuel filler pipe assembly.



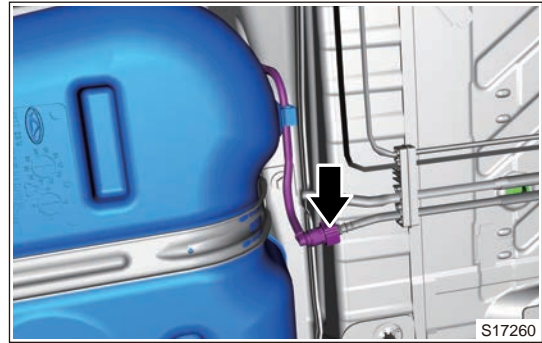
- (13) Disconnect the pipeline (1).
(14) Remove 1 fixing bolt from lower part of fuel filler pipe assembly.



- (15) Disconnect the canister desorption pipeline.



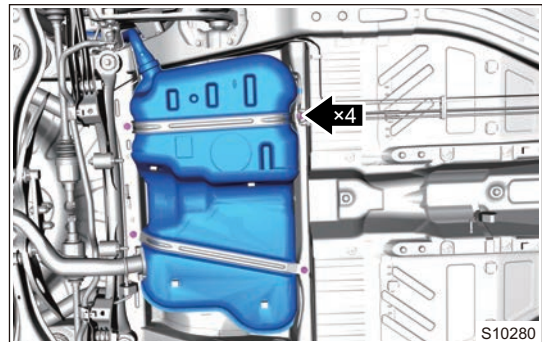
(16) Disconnect fuel pump outlet pipe.



(17) Support fuel tank assembly with a transmission carrier.



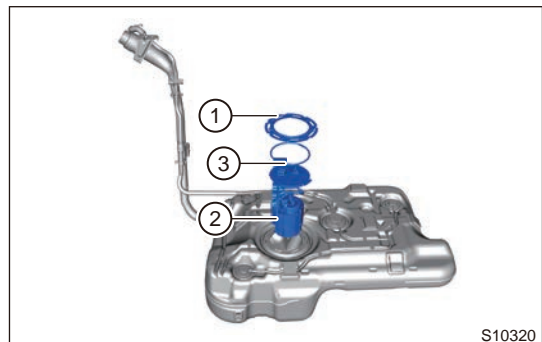
(18) Remove 4 fixing bolts between fuel tank assembly fixing straps and body connection.



(19) Lower lift to a proper position slowly, and remove fuel tank assembly carefully.

(20) Using a special tool, remove electric fuel pump pressure cap (1).

(21) Remove electric fuel pump assembly (2) and seal ring (3) from fuel tank assembly.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Before connecting the hose, check if there is any damage or foreign matter on the hose or joint.
- During installation, push in fuel pipe connector until a click sound is heard, then check that fuel pipe joint clip is on the collar of fuel pipe joint. After installing the pipe joint clip, check that fuel pipe joint cannot be pulled out. Be careful not to damage joint. If clip is damaged, replace it.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON (without starting engine) to apply fuel pressure to fuel supply system, and then check connections for leakage.

- (1) Install electric fuel pump assembly and tighten fuel tank pressure cap.

Torque: 400 N·m.

- (2) Connect the electric fuel pump assembly connector.
- (3) Install 4 fixing bolts to fuel tank assembly fixing strap.

Torque: 23 ± 2.5 N·m

- (4) Connect the canister desorption pipeline.
- (5) Connect fuel pump outlet pipe.
- (6) Install 2 fixing bolts to fuel filler pipe assembly.
- (7) Connect the fuel tank pressure sensor connector.
- (8) Connect each pipeline to corresponding joint.
- (9) Install rear right wheel house protector.
- (10) Install the rear right wheel.
- (11) Install torque manager.
- (12) Install the intermediate propeller shaft.
- (13) Install the main catalytic converter and front muffler assembly.

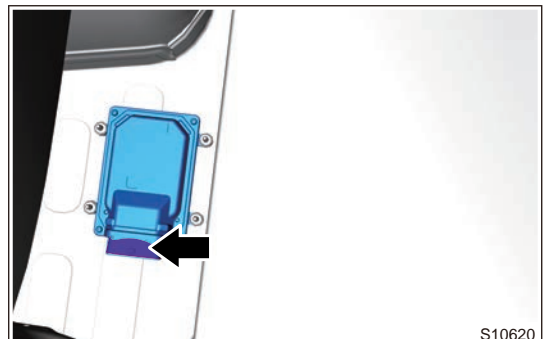
5.7 Fuel Pump Control Module

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

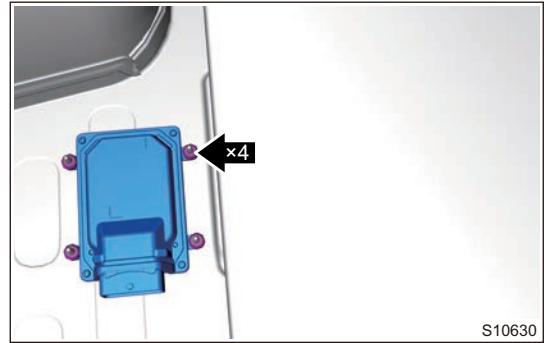
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.
- Try to prevent body interior from being scratched during removal and installation.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left luggage compartment protector.
- (4) Disconnect the fuel pump control module connector.



S10620

- (5) Remove 4 fixing nuts from fuel pump control module.



- (6) Remove the fuel pump control module.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 4 fixing nuts to fuel pump control module.

Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m

- (2) Connect the fuel pump control module connector.
 (3) Install the left luggage compartment protector.

5.8 Fuel Rail Pressure Sensor

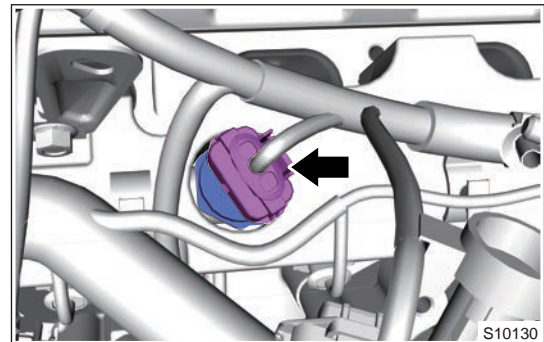
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Before operating the fuel supply system, please touch the vehicle body to discharge static electricity; failure to do so will cause a fire, even result in an explosion.**
- **When operating the fuel supply system, work area should be in good ventilation and keep fire sources or open flames away from the work area, in which fire extinguisher should be equipped.**

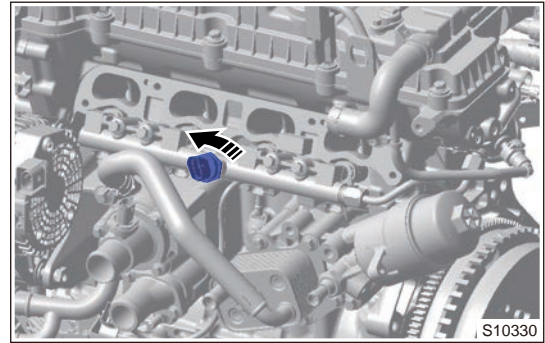
- (1) Release the high pressure fuel system pressure.
 (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (4) Remove the intake manifold assembly.

- (5) Disconnect the fuel rail pressure sensor connector.



- (6) Remove the fuel rail injector sound insulator.

- (7) Remove fuel rail pressure sensor counterclockwise in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



■ Inspection

Use ohm band of multimeter to measure resistance among 3 pins of fuel rail pressure sensor (pay attention to the positive and negative orders).

Sensor Pin (corresponding to positive and negative poles of multimeter in front-and-rear sequence)	Normal Value
1 - 2	$301 \pm 100 \text{ k}\Omega$
1 - 3	$24 \pm 1 \text{ k}\Omega$
2 - 1	∞
2 - 3	∞
3 - 1	$24 \pm 1 \text{ k}\Omega$
3 - 2	$301 \pm 100 \text{ k}\Omega$

■ Installation

- (1) Install fuel rail pressure sensor.
- (2) Install fuel rail injector sound insulator.
- (3) Install the intake manifold assembly.

5.9 Low Pressure Fuel Pressure Sensor

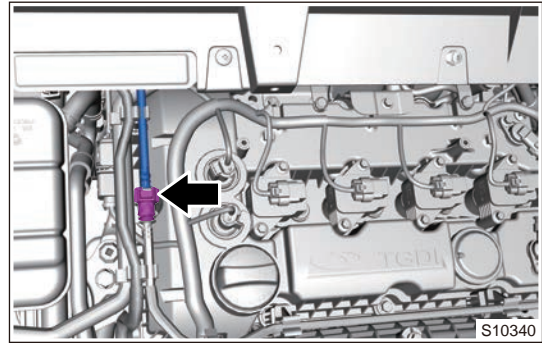
■ Removal

Warning

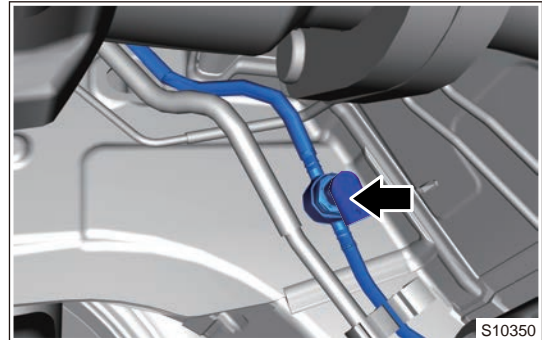
- **Before operating the fuel supply system, please touch the vehicle body to discharge static electricity; failure to do so will cause a fire, even result in an explosion.**
- **When operating the fuel supply system, work area should be in good ventilation and keep fire sources or open flames away from the work area, in which fire extinguisher should be equipped.**

- (1) Release the low pressure fuel system pressure.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

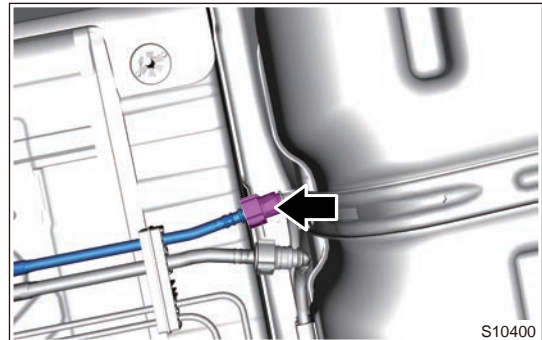
- (4) Disconnect the connection between floor fuel supply pipe and engine compartment fuel supply pipe.



- (5) Disconnect the low pressure fuel pressure sensor connector.



- (6) Disconnect the connection between floor fuel supply pipe and fuel pump outlet pipe.



- (7) Remove floor fuel supply pipe assembly from double groove pipe clamp carefully.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Fix floor fuel supply pipe to double groove pipe clamp.
- (2) Connect the low pressure fuel pressure sensor connector.
- (3) Connect pipe joints to fuel pump outlet pipe and engine compartment fuel supply pipe.

TRANSMISSION

13.1	TRANSMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM.....	614
1	Warnings and Precautions	614
1.1	Warning.....	614
1.2	Precautions	614
2	System Overview	614
2.1	Description.....	614
2.2	System Component Diagram	615
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	616
2.4	Usage Method of Shift Paddle	616
3	System Circuit Diagram	617
3.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	617
3.2	Circuit Diagram	624
4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	628
4.1	Diagnostic Tester Menu.....	628
4.2	DTC Confirmation Procedure	631
4.3	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.....	631
4.4	Ground Inspection	632
4.5	System Diagnosis Procedure.....	632
4.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	633
4.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	662
5	On-vehicle Service	697
5.1	Tools	697
5.2	Replacement of Transmission Control Unit.....	698

13.1 TRANSMISSION CONTROL SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Warning

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Be sure to read precautions for SRS airbag before removing steering wheel.

1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, always follow the instructions below before repair.

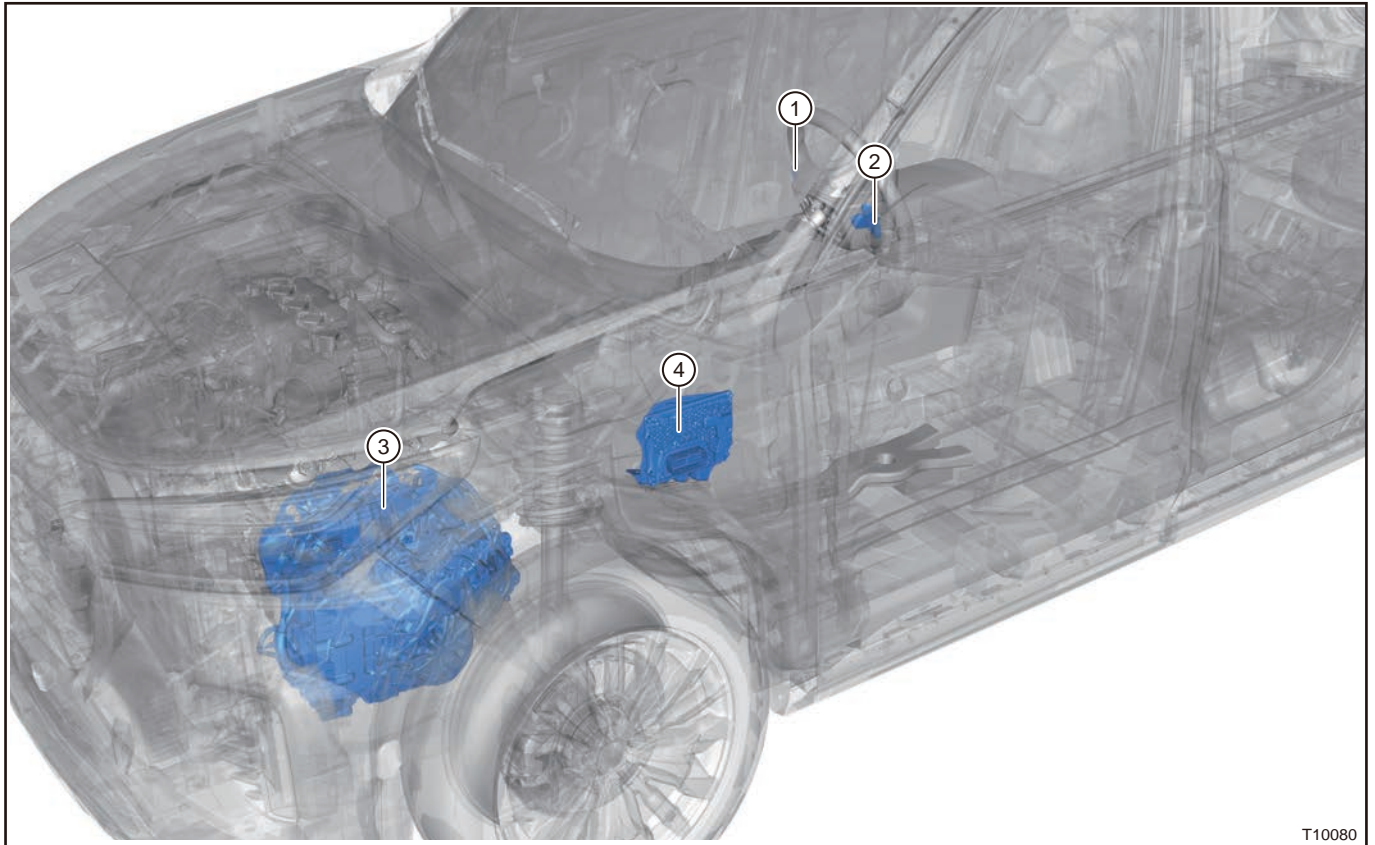
- (4) TCU bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.
- (5) TCU bolts are pre-coated parts. Residual sealant should be cleaned from threaded hole of housing before assembly.
- (6) If TCU is replaced with a new one, fresh correct TCU software with diagnostic tester.
- (7) During disassembly and assembly of TCU, antistatic equipment should be worn to avoid damage to electronic components in TCU.

2 System Overview

2.1 Description

The transmission control system (Dual Clutch Transmission (DCT)) is composed of Transmission Control Module (TCU), shift motor and button-type electronic shift module, etc. The connection between button-type electronic shift module and transmission adopts a safer and faster electronic control mode, other than a traditional mechanical way, which eliminates the traditional mechanical shift mode and adopts electronic signals. Its advantage is that the driver's wrong shift operation will be judged by the computer to see if it will cause damage to the transmission, so as to better protect the transmission and correct the bad shift habits. However, if there is a fault or short circuit, the electronic shifting mechanism will be unable to release the current gear, we can only rely on the trailer and rescue.

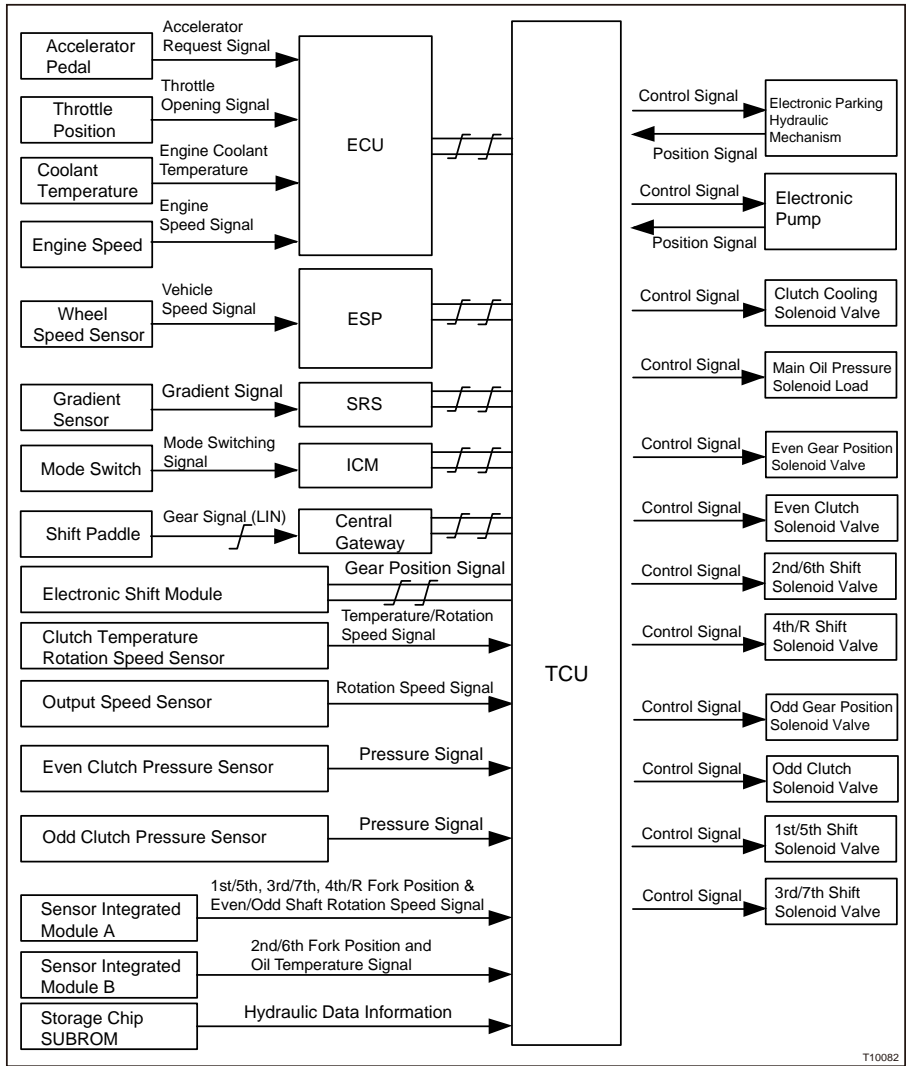
2.2 System Component Diagram



T10080

1	Right Shift Paddle	3	Transmission Assembly
2	Left Shift Paddle	4	Transmission Control Module

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



- The transmission control module collects signals from ECU (accelerator pedal, throttle opening, engine temperature, speed and other signals), ESP (wheel speed signal, etc.), SRS (gradient signal, etc.), button-type electronic shift module (gear position) through CAN network, TCU collects input signals from sensors and other devices to operate transmission.
 - The upshift/downshift signal of shift paddle is transmitted to central gateway module through CAN network signal and multi-function steering wheel connector, and then the central gateway module transmits the signal to TCU module through CAN network signal.

2.4 Usage Method of Shift Paddle

Using gear shift paddle of steering wheel can switch gear quickly with both hands on steering wheel.

- (1) Manual mode: When the shift lever is in D position, push it to the left to enter manual mode.
 - 1) Downshift: Reduce one gear each time toggling.
 - 2) Upshift: Raise one gear each time toggling.

⚠ Caution

- **Within the allowable range of engine speed, the transmission will be locked in one gear which can be selected manually. When the vehicle is driving on a long downhill road, it is recommended to manually select a lower gear to better control the vehicle speed and reduce the braking force loss caused by frequent or prolonged depressing on brake pedal.**
- **It is recommended to manually select the lower gear position when the vehicle is out of trap or crossing wading pavement to obtain more wheel driving force and avoid water entering the exhaust line.**

(2) Temporary manual mode: Enter the temporary manual mode by toggling shift paddle once.

1) Downshift: In temporary manual mode, reduce one gear each time toggling.

2) Upshift: In temporary manual mode, raise one gear each time toggling.

Hint:

- If the shift is not performed by shift paddle within a certain period of time (15 s) and the shift lever is in D position, the system will switch to automatic mode again.
- Press shift paddle “+” and “-” simultaneously to exit temporary manual mode.

⚠ Caution

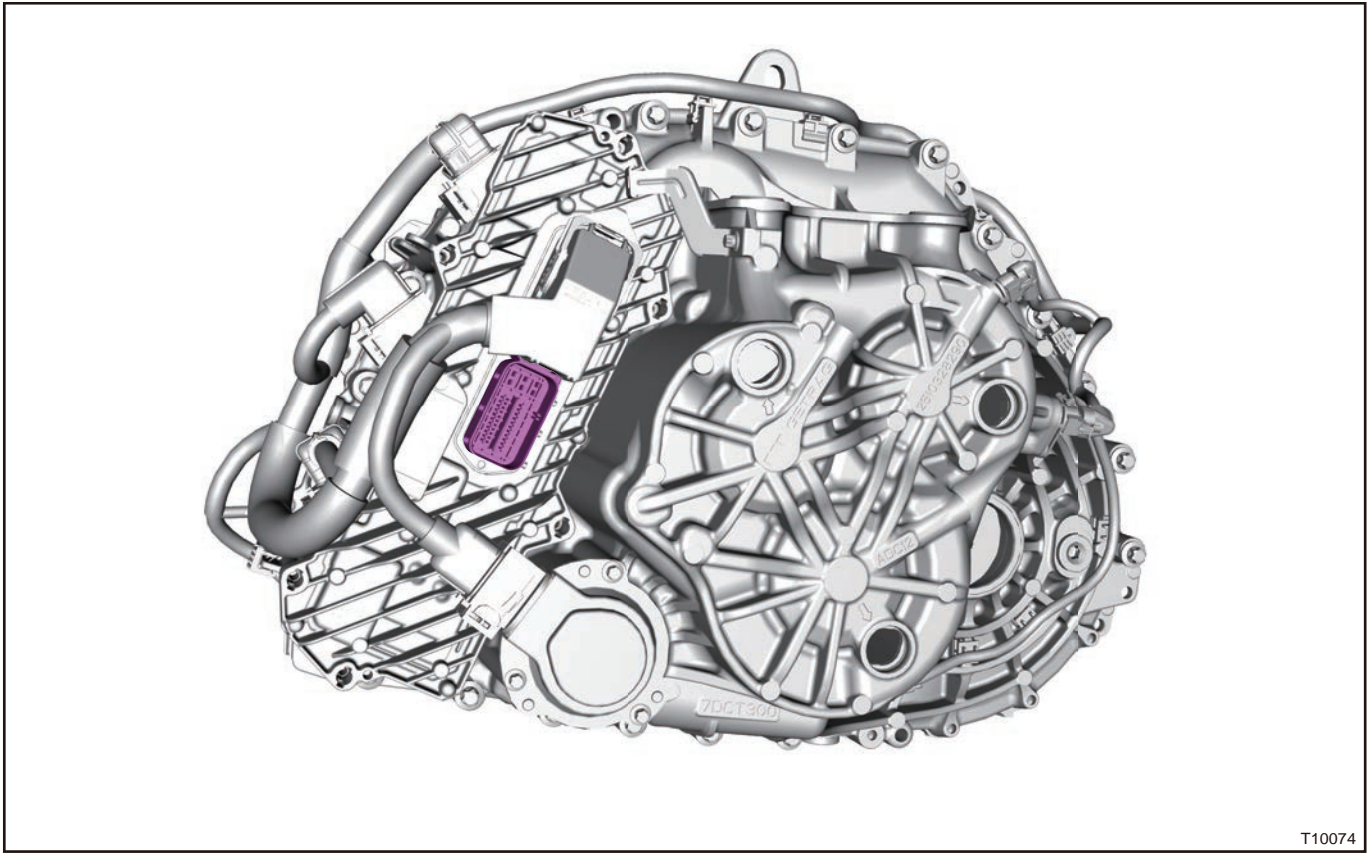
- **When shifting in temporary manual mode, the system will automatically calculate. Only when engine speed and vehicle speed are appropriate, the upshifting or downshifting operation can be performed.**
- **When performing shifting by shift paddle on steering wheel in auto mode, the system will be switched to temporary manual mode.**

3 System Circuit Diagram

3.1 Module Terminal Definition

■ TCU Connector Terminal Definition

TCU Connector A



T10074

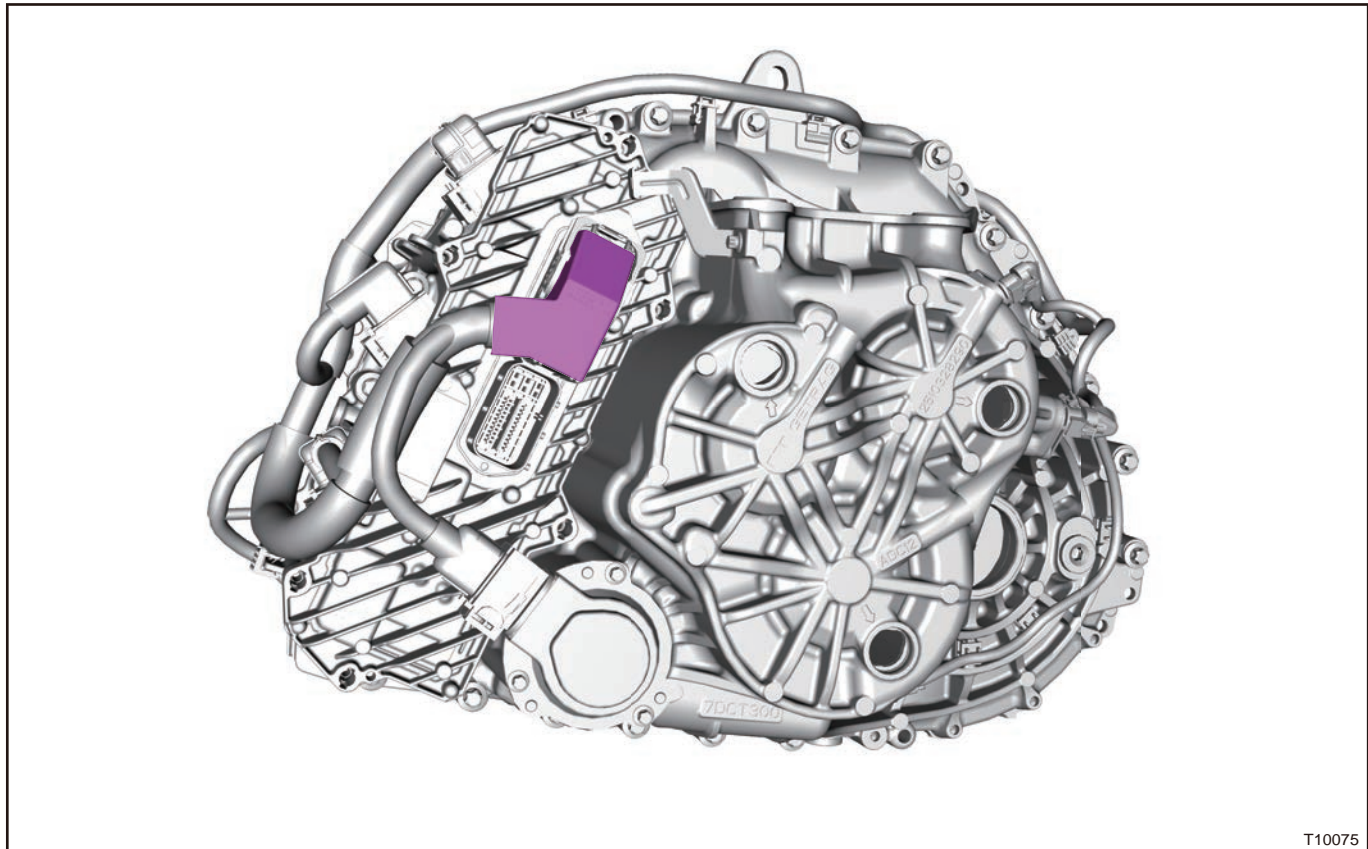
Terminal Inspection		Pin Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
A1	Body ground	KL30 power supply	Power ON	12V
A2	Body ground	Ground	Power ON	0V
A3	Body ground	KL30 power supply	Power ON	12V
A4	Body ground	Ground	Power ON	0V
A5	Body ground	KL30 power supply	Power ON	12V
A6	Body ground	Ground	Power ON	0V
A7	/	/	/	/
A8	/	/	/	/
A9	/	/	/	/
A10	/	/	/	/
A11	/	/	/	/
A12	/	/	/	/
A13	/	/	/	/
A14	/	/	/	/
A15	/	/	/	/
A16	/	/	/	/
A17	/	/	/	/

A18	Body ground	KL30 power supply	Power ON	12V
A19	/	/	/	/
A20	/	/	/	/
A21	Body ground	CAN-H	Power ON	2.7V
A22	Body ground	CAN-L	Power ON	2.3V
A23	/	/	/	/
A24	/	/	/	/
A25	/	/	/	/
A26	/	/	/	/
A27	/	/	/	/
A28	/	/	/	/
A29	/	/	/	/
A30	/	/	/	/
A31	Body ground	KL15 power supply	Power ON	12V
A32	/	/	/	/
A33	/	/	/	/
A34	Body ground	CAN-H	Power ON	2.7V
A35	Body ground	CAN-L	Power ON	2.3V
A36	/	/	/	/
A37	/	/	/	/
A38	/	/	/	/
A39	/	/	/	/
A40	/	/	/	/
A41	/	/	/	/
A42	/	/	/	/
A43	/	/	/	/
A44	/	/	/	/
A45	/	/	/	/
A46	/	/	/	/
A47	/	/	/	/
A48	/	/	/	/
A49	/	/	/	/
A50	/	/	/	/
A51	/	/	/	/
A52	/	/	/	/
A53	/	/	/	/

13 - TRANSMISSION

A54	/	/	/	/
A55	/	/	/	/
A56	/	/	/	/
A57	/	/	/	/
A58	/	/	/	/

TCU Connector B



T10075

Terminal Inspection		Pin Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
B1	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 phase U	Power ON	0.3V
B2	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 phase V	Power ON	0.3V
B3	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 phase W	Power ON	0.3V
B4	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 phase U	Power ON	0.3V
B5	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 phase V	Power ON	0.3V
B6	Body ground	Shift motor 1 phase U	Power ON	9V
B7	Body ground	Shift motor 1 phase V	Power ON	9V

B8	Body ground	Shift motor 1 phase W	Power ON	9V
B9	Body ground	Shift motor 2 phase U	Power ON	9V
B10	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 phase W	Power ON	0.3V
B11	Body ground	Cooling motor phase U	Power ON	0V
B12	Body ground	Cooling motor phase V	Power ON	0V
B13	Body ground	Cooling motor phase W	Power ON	0V
B14	Body ground	Shift motor 2 phase V	Power ON	9V
B15	Body ground	Shift motor 2 phase W	Power ON	9V
B16	Body ground	Cooling motor Hall sensor 1 signal	Power ON	0.5V
B17	Body ground	Shift motor 2 Hall sensor 1 signal	Power ON	5 V
B18	Body ground	Shift motor 1 Hall sensor 1 signal	Power ON	0.5V
B19	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 Hall sensor 1 signal	Power ON	2.8V
B20	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 Hall sensor 1 signal	Power ON	2.8V
B21	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 Hall sensor power supply	Power ON	5 V
B22	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 position signal	Power ON	-
B23	Body ground	Temperature sensor signal	Power ON	0V
B24	Body ground	Pressure sensor 2 signal	Power ON	0V
B25	Body ground	Pressure sensor 1 signal	Power ON	0V
B26	Body ground	Output shaft speed sensor signal	Power ON	-
B27	Body ground	Input shaft speed sensor 2 signal	Power ON	9V
B28	Body ground	Input shaft speed sensor 1 signal	Power ON	9V
B29	Body ground	Cooling motor Hall sensor 2 signal	Power ON	5 V

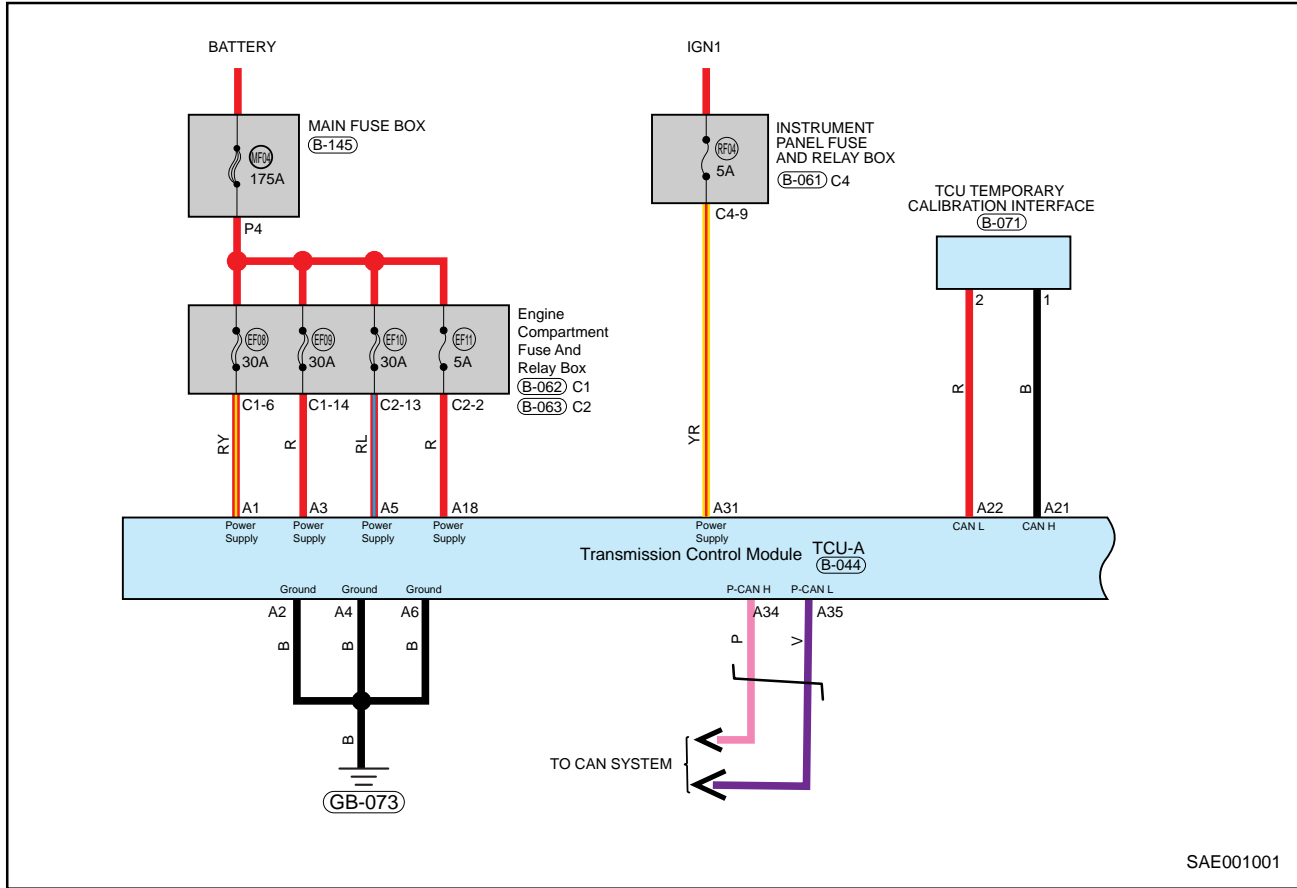
13 - TRANSMISSION

B30	Body ground	Shift motor 2 Hall sensor 2 signal	Power ON	0V
B31	Body ground	Shift motor 1 Hall sensor 2 signal	Power ON	0V
B32	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 Hall sensor 2 signal	Power ON	0V
B33	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 Hall sensor 2 signal	Power ON	0V
B34	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 sensor power supply	Power ON	5 V
B35	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 position signal	Power ON	-
B36	Body ground	Temperature sensor ground	Power ON	0V
B37	Body ground	Pressure sensor 2 ground	Power ON	0V
B38	Body ground	Pressure sensor 1 ground	Power ON	0V
B39	Body ground	Output shaft speed sensor power supply	Power ON	-
B40	Body ground	Input shaft speed sensor 2 power supply	Power ON	0V
B41	Body ground	Input shaft speed sensor 1 power supply	Power ON	9V
B42	Body ground	Cooling motor Hall sensor 3 signal	Power ON	0.5V
B43	Body ground	Shift motor 2 Hall sensor 3 signal	Power ON	0.5V
B44	Body ground	Shift motor 1 Hall sensor 3 signal	Power ON	0.5V
B45	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 Hall sensor 3 signal	Power ON	2.8V
B46	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 Hall sensor 3 signal	Power ON	5 V
B47	Body ground	Shift motor 1 Hall sensor power supply	Power ON	0V
B48	Body ground	Shift motor 1 position signal	Power ON	0V
B49	Body ground	Shift motor 2 Hall sensor 3 signal	Power ON	5 V
B50	Body ground	Pressure sensor 2 power supply	Power ON	5 V

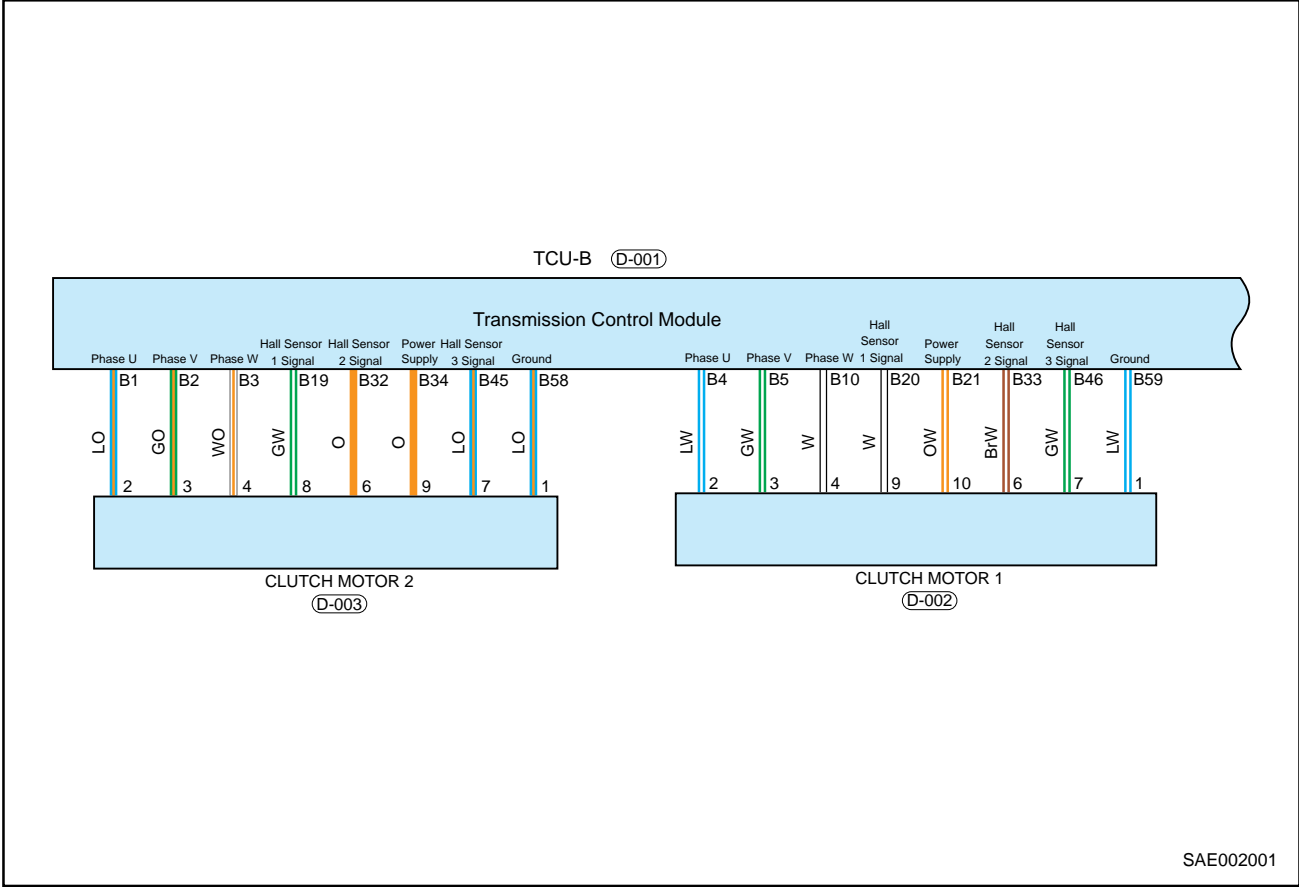
B51	Body ground	Pressure sensor 1 power supply	Power ON	5 V
B52	Body ground	Electromagnetic shield	Power ON	-
B53	Body ground	Range sensor power supply	Power ON	-
B54	Body ground	Range sensor signal 1	Power ON	-
B55	Body ground	Cooling motor sensor ground	Power ON	0V
B56	Body ground	Shift motor 2 Hall sensor signal ground	Power ON	0V
B57	Body ground	Shift motor 1 Hall sensor signal ground	Power ON	0V
B58	Body ground	Clutch motor 2 Hall sensor signal ground	Power ON	0V
B59	Body ground	Clutch motor 1 Hall sensor signal ground	Power ON	0V
B60	Body ground	Cooling motor sensor power supply	Power ON	0V
B61	Body ground	Shift motor 2 position signal	Power ON	2V
B62	/	/	/	/
B63	/	/	/	/
B64	/	/	/	/
B65	Body ground	Electromagnetic shield	Power ON	-
B66	Body ground	Range sensor ground	Power ON	-
B67	Body ground	Range sensor 2 signal	Power ON	-

3.2 Circuit Diagram

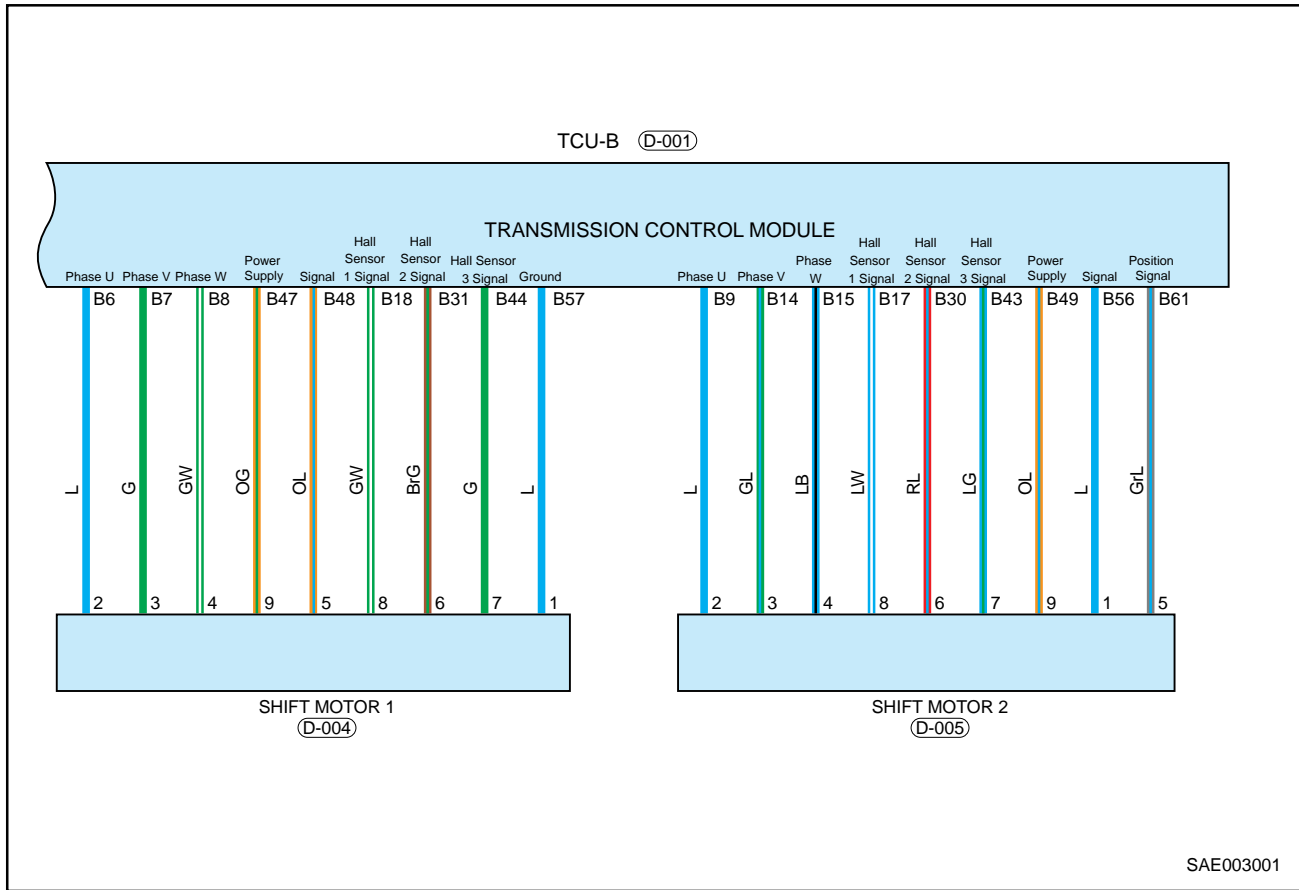
Transmission Management System (Page 1 of 5)



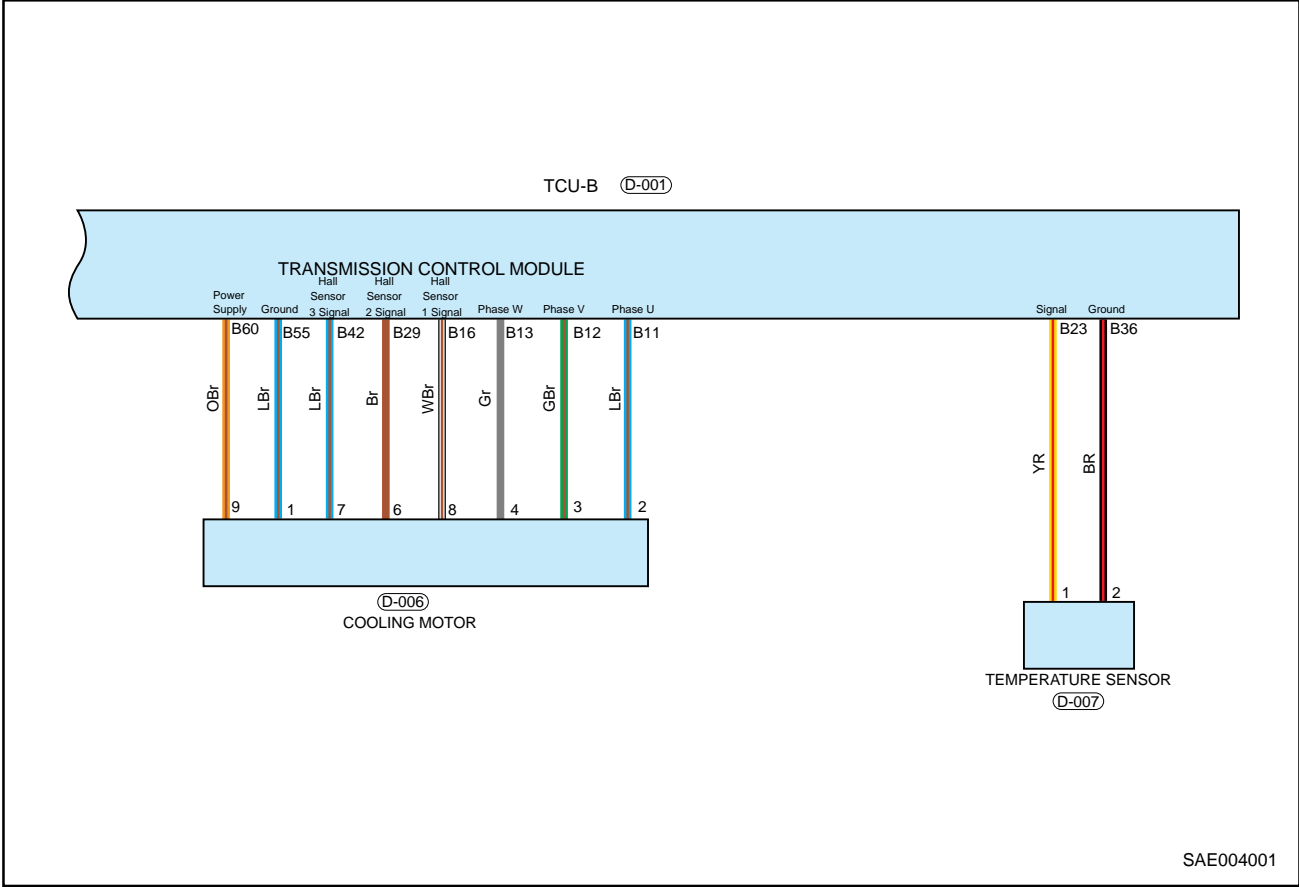
Transmission Management System (Page 2 of 5)



Transmission Management System (Page 3 of 5)

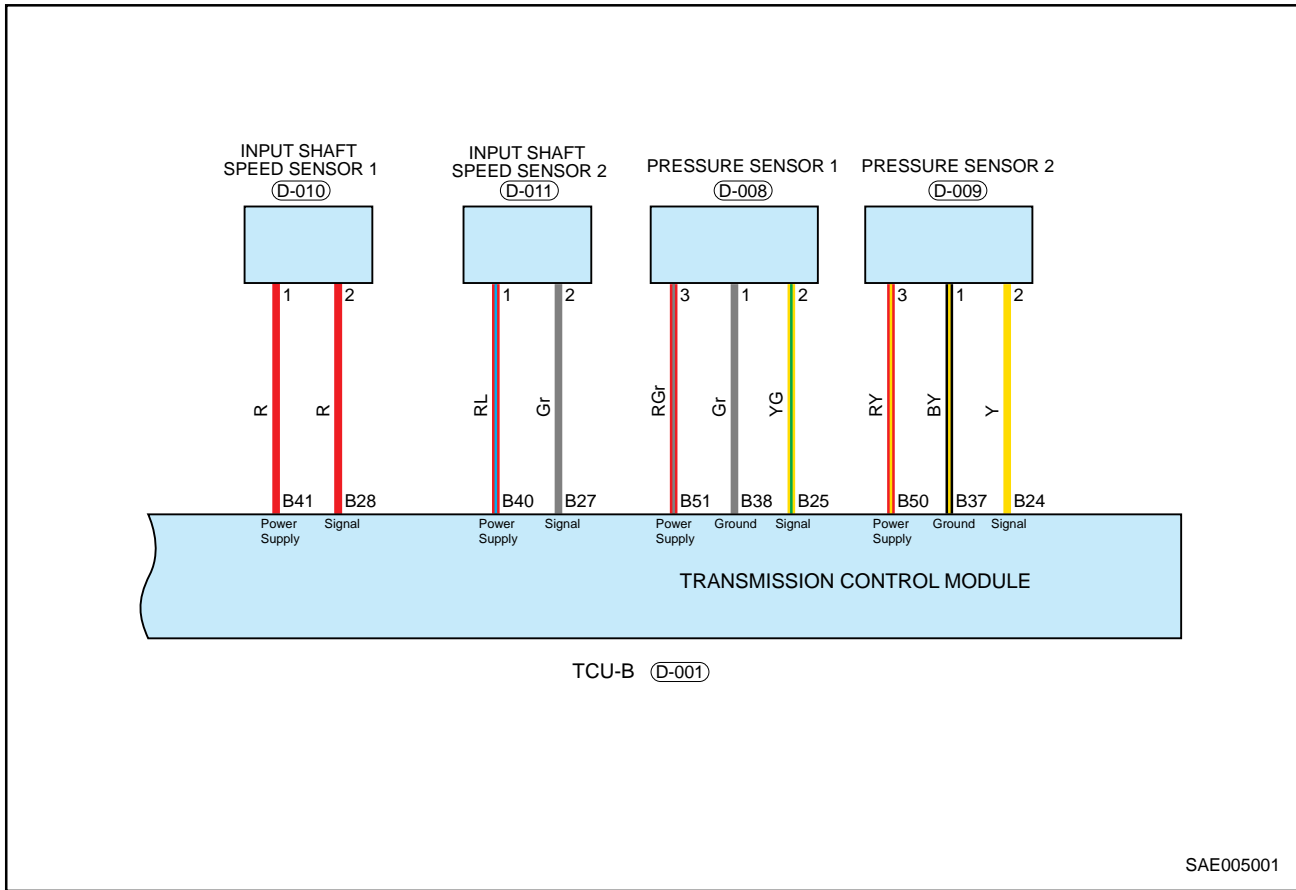


Transmission Management System (Page 4 of 5)



SAE004001

Transmission Management System (Page 5 of 5)



4 Diagnostic Information and Steps

4.1 Diagnostic Tester Menu

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester and click "EXCEED" .
- (2) Click model "New TXL".

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Show Menu" with a blue header bar containing a home icon, a printer icon, and a refresh icon. Below the header, a yellow bar displays the text "EXEED V10.61 > Diagnostic Program". The main content area is a table with three rows:

TX/TXL	LX
VX	New TXL
TX(2021)	Generic Service

At the bottom of the interface, a grey bar contains the text "Exeed" on the left and "SAE050001" on the right.

(3) Click "System Selection" .

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Show Menu" with a blue header bar containing a home icon, a printer icon, and a refresh icon. Below the header, a yellow bar displays the text "EXEED V10.61 > New TXL". The main content area is a list of three menu items:

- Health Report
- System Selection
- ECU Online Programming

At the bottom of the interface, a grey bar contains the text "Exeed New TXL" on the left and "SAE051001" on the right.

(4) Click "Transmission Control Unit" .

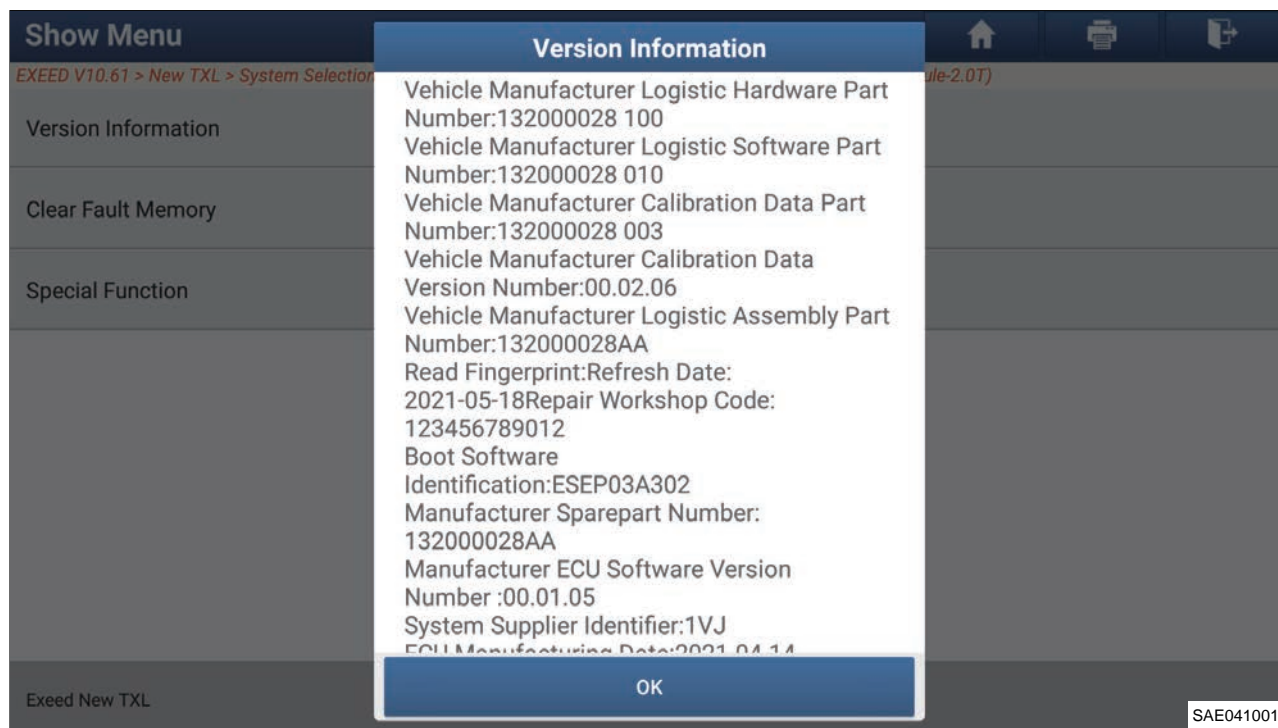
Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection	
EMS (Engine Management System)	TCU (Transmission Control Unit)
BCM (Body Control Module)	ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	AIPM (Integrated Panel Module)
CLM (Climate Module)	DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)
AVM (Around View Monitor Module)	PDC (Parking Distance Control)
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
Exeed New TXL	
SAE052001	

(5) Enter the next screen of Transmission Control Unit.

- 1) “Read Current DTC” screen.
- 2) “Read History DTC” screen.
- 3) “Clear DTC” screen.

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > TCU (Transmission Control Unit) > TCU (Transmission Control Module-2.0T)	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Special Function	
Exeed New TXL	
SAE040001	

(6) Click “Version Information” to read basic version information.



4.2 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is 12V or more before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If DTC cannot be cleared, malfunction is current.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

4.3 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect sensors and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Use data recorder and/or oscilloscope to help diagnose intermittent malfunctions.
- Remove the Transmission Control Unit (TCU) from malfunctioning vehicle and install it to a new vehicle to perform a test. If DTC cannot be cleared, TCU is malfunctioning. If DTC can be cleared, reinstall TCU to original vehicle.

4.4 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.5 System Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

- Use following procedures to troubleshoot the transmission system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.
 Standard condition
 Standard voltage: Not less than 12V.

NG	Replace battery.
-----------	-------------------------

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Next

4	Read DTCs
----------	------------------

NG	Repair according to Problem Symptoms Table.
-----------	--

OK

5	Read DTCs (current DTC and history DTC)
----------	--

NG	Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTC fault flow.
-----------	---

OK

6 Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) chart.

Next

7 Adjust, repair or replace

Next

8 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End.

4.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

Transmission Control System

Hint:

- History trouble code cannot be reported, otherwise it will affect the use by customer.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180803h	PWM Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Pulse Width Failure	Detected longer or shorter pulses are invalid		
P181812h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Bat	Detected signal voltage is higher than threshold		
P180814h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Ground or Open Circuit	Detected signal voltage is lower than threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check whether battery input voltage, current consumption and appearance of TCU are stable • Check sensor • Check TCU
P18081Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Detected power supply voltage is higher than threshold		
P18081Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Detected power supply voltage is lower than threshold		
P180837h	Frequency Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Frequency Failure	Signal frequency is too high	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure 	

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180894h	Jump Detection ISS Odd Transmission Path	First jump time is less than first timer threshold; If the timer is not currently running and the speed jump is detected, the start time value is stored. Input signal value must jump above calibration value, and maintain the new value for at least 20 ms or higher/lower than the first jump. It cannot effectively detect the peak of single signal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TCU power supply voltage failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	
P180829h	Speed Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path	Wheel speed sensor and input shaft speed are unreasonable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180903h	PWM Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Pulse Width Failure	Detected longer or shorter pulses are invalid	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check whether battery input voltage, current consumption and appearance of TCU are stable • Check for sensor failure • Check TCU
P180911h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Ground or Open Circuit	Detected signal voltage is lower than threshold		
P180912h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Short to Bat	Detected signal voltage is higher than threshold		
P18091Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Detected power supply voltage is higher than threshold		
P18091Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Detected power supply voltage is lower than threshold		
P181912h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path:	Detected power supply voltage is		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
	Electrical Signal Short to Bat	higher than threshold		
P180914h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short To Ground Or Open Circuit	Detected power supply voltage is lower than threshold		
P180937h	Frequency Monitoring ISS Even Path: Frequency Failure	Signal frequency is too high		
P180994h	Jump Detection ISS Even Transmission Path	First jump time is less than first timer threshold; If the timer is not currently running and the speed jump is detected, the start time value is stored. Input signal value must jump above calibration value, and maintain the new value for at least 20 ms or higher/lower than the first jump. It cannot effectively detect the peak of single signal		
P180929h	Speed Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path	Wheel speed sensor and input shaft speed are unreasonable	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Mechanical installation failure • Wheel speed sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check installation of sensor • Check wheel speed sensor • Check TCU
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180013h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Open Circuit	Clutch motor threshold is lower than lower limit		
P180012h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Short to Bat	Clutch motor threshold is higher than upper limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor • Check TCU
P180015h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Short to Battery or Open Circuit	Clutch motor threshold is higher than upper limit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180011h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Short to Ground	Clutch motor threshold is lower than lower limit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180113h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2: Open Circuit	Clutch motor threshold is higher than upper limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Clutch motor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check clutch motor Check TCU
P180115h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2: Short to Battery or Open Circuit	Clutch motor threshold is lower than lower limit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180213h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Open Circuit	Clutch motor threshold is lower than lower limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Shift motor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check shift motor Check TCU
P180292h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Performance or Incorrect Operation	Power level driver reports that there is internal failure or regular power level has been turned off.		
P180212h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Short to Bat	Clutch motor threshold is higher than upper limit		
P180215h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Short to Battery or Open Circuit	Phase 1, phase 2 or phase 3 ground, phase voltage L3 is above 250 mV		
P180211h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Short to Ground	<p>1. Depends on motor position: L1_PWM, L2_GND, L3_OFF: $10\% < L1 < 100\%$, phase voltage $L1 < \text{threshold}$; 2. Depends on motor position: L2_PWM, L3_GND, L1_OFF: $10\% < L2 < 100\%$, phase voltage $L2 < \text{threshold}$; 3. L3_PWM, L1_GND, L2_OFF, $10\% < L3 < 100\%$ phase voltage $L3 < \text{threshold}$; 4. In three-state mode: phase voltage $L3 < 0.25\text{ V}$</p>		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182B62h	Clutch 1 Torque Too Low (GETRAG)	Slip rate of estimated clutch 1 torque - actual engine torque is beyond upper limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Clutch slips 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check clutch system
P182C62h	Clutch 2 Torque Too Low (GETRAG)	Slip rate of estimated clutch 2 torque - actual engine torque is beyond upper limit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181C2Ah	Pressure Sensor 1 Output Stuck at Certain Value	Pressure gradient of filtered clutch 1 s less than detected gradient threshold jammed by tps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure Transmission assembly failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU Check transmission
P181C92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 1, Pressure too High	Current clutch pressure > temperature and desired pressure related pressure deviation threshold high and desired pressure dynamic related offset (- Deviation is calculated by pressure rate and delay factor)		
P181D92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 1, Pressure too Low	Current clutch pressure < temperature and desired pressure related pressure deviation threshold high and desired pressure dynamic related offset (- Deviation is calculated by pressure rate and delay factor)		
P181C28h	Pressure Sensor 1 Offset too High	Clutch 1 pressure > clutch pressure offset maximum threshold or clutch 1 pressure < clutch pressure offset minimum threshold		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181C27h	Pressure Sensor 1 Inplausible High Gradient	Clutch 1 pressure - clutch 1 original pressure > within the duration of clutch pressure failure gradient, the threshold of clutch pressure failure gradient is greater than clutch pressure failure gradient		
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181E92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 2, Pressure too High	Pressure gradient of filtered clutch 2 s less than detected gradient threshold jammed by tps	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check pressure sensor • Check TCU
P181E2Ah	Pressure Sensor 2 Output Stuck at Certain Value	Current clutch pressure > and desired pressure related pressure deviation threshold high and desired pressure dynamic related offset (- Deviation is calculated by pressure rate and delay factor)		
P181F92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 2, Pressure too Low	Current clutch pressure < temperature and desired pressure related pressure deviation threshold high and desired pressure dynamic related offset (- Deviation is calculated by pressure rate and delay factor)		
P181E28h	Pressure Sensor 2 Offset too High	Clutch 2 pressure > clutch pressure offset maximum threshold or clutch 1 pressure < clutch pressure offset minimum threshold		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181E27h	Pressure Sensor 2 Inplausible High Gradient	Clutch 2 pressure - clutch 1 original pressure > within the duration of clutch pressure failure gradient, the threshold of clutch pressure failure gradient is greater than clutch pressure failure gradient		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180411h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Short to Ground	Case 1, case 2: Depends on motor position: L1_PWM, L2_GND, L3_OFF: 10% < L1_PWM < 100% and phase voltage L1 < threshold or L2_PWM, L3_GND, L1_OFF: 10% < L2_PWM < 100% and phase voltage L2 < threshold or L3_PWM, L1_GND, L2_OFF: 10% < L3_PWM < 100% and phase voltage L3 < threshold. For case 1, it depends on the position of irrotational motor, whether the fault can be detected. Case 3 (three-state mode): phase voltage L3 < 0.25 V; Case 4 (-power level test): phase voltage L3 < 0.25 V	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Cooling pump failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check cooling pump • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180412h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Short to Bat	Case 1, case 2: It depends on motor position: L1_PWM, L2_GND, L3_OFF: (0% < L1_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L1 > threshold) or phase voltage L2 > threshold or L2_PWM, L3_GND, L1_OFF: (0% < L2_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L2 > threshold) or phase voltage L3 > threshold or L3_PWM, L1_GND, L2_OFF: (0% < L3_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L3 > threshold) or phase voltage L1 > threshold. For case 1, it depends on the position of irrotional motor, whether the fault can be detected. Case 3: IPT PWM = 0 and motor current > 10 A during test		
P180413h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Open Circuit	Divert shunt resistor voltage < PWM threshold voltage		
P1805F0h	Clutch Cooling Pump Motor Speed Check (too High)	Difference between actual pump speed and expected pump speed > cooling pump speed difference threshold and expected pump speed * cooling pump speed factor		
P1805F1h	Clutch Cooling Pump Motor Speed Check (too Low)	Difference between actual pump speed and expected pump speed < - (cooling pump speed difference threshold and expected pump speed * cooling pump speed factor)		
P1805F2h	Clutch Cooling Pump Motor Speed	Actual pump speed <= minimum pump speed threshold		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
	Check (Unexpected Zero or Negative)			
P18054Bh	Temperature Monitoring Cooling Actuator Powerstage (Overtemperature)	Cooling water pump heat load index \geq cooling water pump heat load threshold		
P180E11h	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Clutch Cooling Motor: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Ground	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, and the power supply voltage level is lower than maximum threshold of sensor power regulator, and the sensor power supply voltage is lower than SG threshold		
P180E1Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Clutch Cooling Motor: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Power supply voltage $>$ motor power supply voltage upper limit threshold		
P180E1Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Clutch Cooling Motor: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Power supply voltage $<$ motor power supply voltage lower limit threshold		
P180415h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Short to Battery or Open Circuit	Phase 1, phase 2 or phase 3 ground and phase voltage L3 is above 250 mV		
P180492h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Performance or Incorrect Operation	Power level driver reports that there is internal failure or general power level has been turned off		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed FL Invalid	Corresponding signal == 0xFFFF (-invalid) or corresponding sensor status signal == 0x1 (invalid)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor • Check TCU
U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed FR Invalid			
U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed RL Invalid			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed RR Invalid			
U040186h	Brake Pedal (CAN) Signal Invalid			
U040186h	Engine Idling (CAN) Signal Invalid			
U041786h	Clutch Cooling Cooling Pump Motor Powerstage (Overtemperature)			
U040186h	Accelerator Pedal (CAN) Signal Invalid			
U042386h	Environment Temperature (CAN) Signal Invalid			
U040186h	Driver Torque Request (CAN) Signal Invalid			
U040186h	Engine Min. Torque (CAN) Signal Invalid			
U040186h	Engine Max. Torque (CAN) Signal Invalid			
U040186h	Engine Temperature (CAN) Signal Invalid			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181415h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Signal Short-to-Battery or Open Load	Signal voltage > temperature sensor Scb threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check TCU
P181411h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Signal Short-to-GND	Signal voltage < temperature sensor scg threshold		
P181311h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Short to Ground	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, and the power supply voltage level is lower than maximum threshold of sensor power regulator, and the sensor power supply voltage is	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Oil temperature sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check oil temperature sensor Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
		lower than SG threshold.		
P181312h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Short to Battery	Power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is higher than SB threshold.		
P181317h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Power supply voltage > temperature sensor power supply voltage upper limit		
P181316h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Power supply voltage < Temperature sensor power supply voltage lower limit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180092h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Performance or Incorrect Operation	Power level driver reports that there is internal failure or general power level has been turned off	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Clutch actuator failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check clutch actuator • Check TCU
P180111h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2: Short to Ground	Case 1, case 2: It depends on motor position: L1_PWM, L2_GND, L3_OFF: $10\% < L1_PWM < 100\%$; phase voltage L1 < threshold or L2_PWM, L3_GND, L1_OFF: $10\% < L2_PWM < 100\%$; phase voltage L2 < threshold or L3_PWM, L1_GND, L2_OFF: $10\% < L3_PWM < 100\%$; phase voltage L3 < threshold. For case 1, it depends on the position of irrotional motor, whether the fault can be detected. Case 3 (three-state mode):	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Clutch motor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check clutch motor • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
		phase voltage L3 < 0.25 V. Case 4 (-power level test): phase voltage L3 < 0.25 V		
P180112h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2: Short Circuit to Battery	Case 1, case 2: It depends on motor position: L1_PWM, L2_GND, L3_OFF: (0% < L1_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L1 > threshold) or phase voltage L2 > threshold or L2_PWM, L3_GND, L1_OFF: (0% < L2_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L2 > threshold) or phase voltage L3 > threshold or L3_PWM, L1_GND, L2_OFF: (0% < L3_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L3 > threshold) or phase voltage L1 > threshold. For case 1, it depends on the position of irrotional motor, whether the fault can be detected. Case 3: IPT PWM = 0 and motor current > 10 A during test		
P180192h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2: Performance or Incorrect Operation	Power level driver reports that there is internal failure or general power level has been turned off		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180229h	Shift Actuator 1 Motor Speed Check	Drum speed > drum speed threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check TCU
P18024Bh	Temperature Monitoring Shift Actuator 1 Powerstage (Overtemperature)	Shift motor 1 heat load index >= Shift motor 1 heat load threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180262h	Signal Level Correlation Monitoring Shift Actuator 1	Incremental position signal calculated from Hall sensor - PWM position signal from absolute sensor > position difference error		
P180311h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Short to Ground	Case 1, case 2: It depends on motor position: L1_PWM, L2_GND, L3_OFF: $10\% < L1_PWM < 100\%$ and phase voltage $L1 < \text{threshold}$ or L2_PWM, L3_GND, L1_OFF: $10\% < L2_PWM < 100\%$ and phase voltage $L2 < \text{threshold}$ or L3_PWM, L1_GND, L2_OFF: $10\% < L3_PWM < 100\%$ and phase voltage $L3 < \text{threshold}$. For case 1, it depends on the position of irrotational motor, whether the fault can be detected. Case 3 (three-state mode): phase voltage $L3 < 0.25\text{ V}$ Case 4 (- power level test): phase voltage $L3 < 0.25\text{ V}$	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • TCU failure • Shift motor failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check shift motor • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180313h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Open Circuit	Motor threshold is lower than lower limit		
P180315h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Short to Battery or Open Circuit	Phase 1, phase 2 or phase 3 ground and phase voltage L3 is above 250 mV	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • TCU failure • Shift motor failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check shift motor • Check TCU
P180329h	Shift Actuator 2 Motor Speed Check	Drum speed > drum speed threshold		
P18034Bh	Temperature Monitoring Shift Actuator 2 Powerstage (Overtemperature)	Shift motor 2 heat load index \geq Shift motor 2 heat load threshold		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180362h	Signal Level Correlation Monitoring Shift Actuator 2	Incremental position signal calculated from Hall sensor - PWM position signal from absolute sensor > position difference error		
P180392h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Performance or Incorrect Operation	Power level driver reports that there is internal failure or regular power level has been turned off		
P180312h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Short to Bat	Case 1, case 2: It depends on motor position: L1_PWM, L2_GND, L3_OFF: (0% < L1_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L1 > threshold) or phase voltage L2 > threshold or L2_PWM, L3_GND, L1_OFF: (0% < L2_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L2 > threshold) or phase voltage L3 > threshold or L3_PWM, L1_GND, L2_OFF: (0% < L3_PWM < 90% and phase voltage L3 > threshold) or phase voltage L1 > threshold. For case 1, it depends on the position of irrotional motor, whether the fault can be detected. Case 3: IPT PWM = 0 and motor current > 10 A during test		
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P18064Bh	Temperature Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1 Powerstage (Overtemperature)	Motor heat load index >= Heat load threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Clutch motor 2 failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check clutch motor 2 • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P1806F1h	Clutch 1 Motor Speed Check (too Low)	(Pressure sensor status is invalid and clutch 1 brake actual speed < clutch 1 theoretical brake minimum speed) or (pressure sensor status is valid and clutch 1 brake actual speed = 0 and theoretical brake speed is required speed torque/ pressure for starting > clutch pump speed threshold)		
P18074Bh	Temperature Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2 Powerstage (Overtemperature)	Clutch 2 heat load index >= Clutch 2 heat load threshold		
P1807F1h	Clutch 2 Motor Speed Check (too Low)	(Pressure sensor status is invalid and clutch 1 brake actual speed < clutch 1 theoretical brake minimum speed) or (pressure sensor status is valid and clutch 1 brake actual speed = 0 and theoretical brake speed is required speed torque/ pressure for starting > clutch pump speed threshold)		
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180811h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Short to Ground	Power supply voltage < threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector
P180812h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Short to Bat	Power supply voltage > threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ISS sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check ISS sensor • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180A11h	Voltage Level Monitoring of Actuator Sensor Clutch 2: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Ground	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is lower than SG threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Clutch motor 2 failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check clutch motor 2 • Check TCU
P180A12h	Voltage Level Monitoring Actuator Sensor Clutch 2: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Battery	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is higher than SB threshold		
P180A1Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Actuator Sensor Clutch 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Power supply voltage > upper limit		
P180A1Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Actuator Sensor Clutch 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Power supply voltage < upper limit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180B11h	Voltage Level Monitoring of Actuator Sensor Clutch 1: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Ground	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is lower than SG threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Clutch motor 1 failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check clutch motor • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180B12h	Voltage Level Monitoring of Actuator Sensor Clutch 1: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Battery	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is higher than SB threshold		
P180B1Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring of Actuator Sensor Clutch 1: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Power supply voltage > upper limit		
P180B1Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring of Actuator Sensor Clutch 1: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Power supply voltage < upper limit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180C11h	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 1: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Ground	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is lower than SG threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor • Check TCU
P180F11h	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 1: Supply Voltage Short to Ground			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180C12h	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 1: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Battery	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is higher than SB threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor • Check TCU
P180E12h	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Clutch Cooling Motor: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Battery			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180F12h	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 1: Supply Voltage Short to Battery			
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180C1Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 1: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Power supply voltage > upper limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU
P180F1Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range High			
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180C1Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 1: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Power supply voltage < upper limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU
P18111Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low			
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180D11h	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 2: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Ground	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is lower than SG threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU
P181111	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Supply Voltage Short to Ground			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180D12h	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 2: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Battery	The timer is zero when power supply is abnormal, power supply voltage level of sensor power regulator is lower than maximum threshold and the sensor power voltage is higher than SB threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU
P181112	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Supply Voltage Short to Ground			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180D1Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range High	Power supply voltage > upper limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU
P18111Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range High			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P180D1Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Shift Motor 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low	Power supply voltage < upper limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU
P18111Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181011h	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 1: Signal Short to Ground	Pressure sensor signal voltage < signal SCG percentage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Sensor failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check sensor Check TCU
P181211h	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Signal Short to Ground			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181015h	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 1: Signal Short to Battery or Open Circuit	Pressure sensor signal voltage > TPS1 signal SCG percentage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor • Check TCU
P181215h	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Signal Short to Battery or Open Circuit			
P18101Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 1: Signal Out of Range High	Pressure sensor signal >= TPS signal upper limit or threshold		
P18121Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Signal Out of Range High			
P18101Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 1: Signal Out of Range Low	Pressure sensor signal <= TPS signal upper limit or threshold		
P18121Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Pressure Sensor 2: Signal Out of Range Low			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181516h	Voltage Level Monitoring Temperature Sensor 1: Circuit Voltage Below Threshold	Signal voltage < sensor lower limit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor • Check TCU
P181616h	Voltage Level Monitoring Temperature Sensor 2: Circuit Voltage Below Threshold			
P181716h	Voltage Level Monitoring Temperature Sensor 3: Circuit Voltage Below Threshold			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181517h	Voltage Level Monitoring Temperature Sensor 1: Circuit Voltage Above Threshold	Signal voltage < sensor upper limit		
P181617h	Voltage Level Monitoring Temperature Sensor 2: Circuit Voltage Above Threshold			
P181717h	Voltage Level Monitoring Temperature Sensor 3: Circuit Voltage Above Threshold			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181892h	Target Position Not Reached in a Defined Time, Changed Position to N or P	During transmission in P, the driver requests transmission in R or N or D or M, or during transmission in R or N or D or M, the driver requests transmission in P, and this gear is not used after waiting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Shift module failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check shift module • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181992h	Clutch 1 Position Signal	Check valid Hall mode: Hall mode is 0 or 7 or Hall mode has sequence error	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Motor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check motor • Check TCU
P181A92h	Clutch 2 Position Signal			
P182092h	Hall Plausi Shift Actuator 1			
P182192h	Hall Plausi Shift Actuator 2			
P182292h	Hall Plausi Cooling Actuator	Check valid Hall mode: Hall mode is 000 or 111 or Hall mode has sequence error		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P181B22h	Jump Detection of Oil Temperature Value	Temperature gradient of oil pan > temperature gradient threshold of oil pan is greater than temperature gradient value of oil pan	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Transmission oil loss • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check transmission oil • Check TCU
P181B2Ah	Oil Temperature Value is Stuck	Comparison of actual oil temperature and oil temperature < minimum change of oil temperature is longer than the observation time of D45		
P181B64h	Offset Detection of Oil Temperature Value	Oil pan temperature - ambient temperature > D45 temperature offset error		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182035h	PWM Duty Monitoring Shift Actuator 1 Out of Range High	Signal duty ratio < minimum duty ratio of motor position sensor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Motor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check shift module • Check TCU
P182135	PWM Duty Monitoring Shift Actuator 2 Out of Range High			
P182034h	PWM Duty Monitoring Shift Actuator 1 Out of Range Low	Signal duty ratio > maximum duty ratio of motor position sensor		
P182134	PWM Duty Monitoring Shift Actuator 2 Out of Range Low			
P182037h	Carrier Frequency Monitoring Shift Actuator 1 Out of Range High	Signal carrier cycle time < minimum value of motor position sensor		
P182137h	Carrier Frequency Monitoring Shift Actuator 2 Out of Range High			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182036h	Carrier Frequency Monitoring Shift Actuator 1 Out of Range Low	Signal carrier cycle time > maximum value of motor position sensor		
P182136h	Carrier Frequency Monitoring Shift Actuator 2 Out of Range Low			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182372h	Engagement Failure Detection Odd Transmission Path	Timeout detection: The different stages of the participation process (until reaching the participating position) should be completed within the specified participation time (- different time for each stage). Or block detection: At different stages of the engagement (- brake movement should be expected), the shift drum position should be monitored. If the position difference (10 ms) between two task calls is lower than the position difference threshold, the block debounce time should be used to eliminate the error. Number of meshing attempts > Meshing retry threshold (- depending on gear)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Shift drum motor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check shift drum motor • Check TCU
P182373h	Disengagement Failure Detection Odd Transmission Path			
P182472h	Engagement Failure Detection Even Transmission Path			
P182473h	Disengagement Failure Detection Even Transmission Path			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182394h	Gear Jump Detection Odd Transmission Path	ISS odd path-OSS * gear ratio of meshing gear > calibrated output speed difference 1 or (ISS odd path-OSS * gear ratio of meshing gear > calibrated output speed difference 2 and OSS > calibrated output speed) and exceeded single detection time or (-nominal gear cannot be reached, and the controller has been turned off (the gear mesh window has been reached) and the position difference exceeds the threshold (-depending on gear)), and the number of gear jumps > gear jump threshold (-depending on gear)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • ISS1 sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check ISS1 sensor • Check TCU
P182494h	Gear Jump Detection Even Transmission Path	ISS2 even path-OSS * gear ratio of meshing gear > calibrated output speed difference 1 or (ISS odd path-OSS * gear ratio of meshing gear > calibrated output speed difference 2 and OSS > calibrated output speed) and exceeded single detection time or (-nominal gear cannot be reached, and the controller has been turned off (the gear mesh window has been reached) and the position difference exceeds the threshold (-depending on gear)), and the number of gear jumps > gear jump threshold (-depending on gear)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • ISS2 sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check ISS2 sensor • Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182577h	Shiftdrum 1 Movement Monitoring (- Unexpected Shiftdrum 1 Standstill)	Drum displacement is not detected (The ratio between theoretical displacement drum position change rate and actual displacement drum position change rate < minimum position ratio or > maximum position ratio) Note: The displacement drum position should be calculated from the position model	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check TCU
P182677h	Shiftdrum 2 Movement Monitoring (- Unexpected Shiftdrum 2 Standstill)			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182707h	Synchronization Failure Odd Transmission Path	Shift drum position > Pos threshold (- depending on gear) and ABS (input shaft speed - target input shaft speed) > speed threshold (- depending on gear) and number of gear meshing attempts > meshing retry threshold (- depending on gear)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check sensor • Check TCU
P182807h	Synchronization Failure Even Transmission Path			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182929h	Continuous Monitoring of Mechanical End Stop Shift Drum 1	Position difference between learned shift drum block and measured shift drum mechanical end > mechanical end	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Shift drum failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check shift drum • Check TCU
P182A29h	Continuous Monitoring of Mechanical End Stop Shift Drum 2			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182D98h	Temperature Monitoring Clutch 1	Normalized clutch stress level \geq (- clutch stress level threshold + clutch stress level hyst)	/	/
P182E98h	Temperature Monitoring Clutch 2			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P182F98h	Temperature Monitoring Sump Oil Temperature	Oil pan pressure >= (oil pan pressure level + oil pan pressure + oil pan pressure)		
P183098h	Temperature Monitoring Clutch1, Clutch2 and Sump Oil Temperature for 1st Warning Level / Functional Degradation Level	Clutch protection warning level 1 is set according to clutch temperature, oil temperature, vehicle speed, depressing pedal or not.	/	/
P183198h	Temperature Monitoring Clutch1, Clutch2 and Sump Oil Temperature for 2nd Warning Level / Functional Degradation Level	Clutch protection warning level 2 is set according to clutch temperature, oil temperature, vehicle speed, depressing pedal or not.		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P183277h	Monitoring Park Lock Position	Unreasonable position monitoring	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Range sensor failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness or connector • Check range sensor • Check TCU
P183307h	Clutch 1 Drag Torque Detection	The odd path of input shaft speed is more than the engine speed, and the calculated torque is more than the resistance tq threshold ins gt eng, the odd path of input shaft speed is less than the engine speed ,and the calculated torque is more than the resistance tq threshold ins lt eng	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlearned clutch • Clutch failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check clutch self-learning • Check clutch • Check TCU
P183407h	Clutch 2 Drag Torque Detection			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P183592h	Shift Drum 1 Teach-in Failure	The actuator cannot be moved; Because the actuator is in the wrong direction, the measured shift drum length is outside the specified window, the shift drum signal is invalid or the learning was suspended 3 times as the power level was turned off.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector failure • Transmission range sensor failure • TCU failure • Shift drum motor failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for wire harness or connector failure • Check transmission range sensor • Check TCU • Check shift drum motor
P183692h	Shift Drum 2 Teach-in Failure			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P183796h	Welding Fracture Monitoring	(Drive shaft speed / non-drive shaft > standardized shaft speed difference). (The gradient of driven shaft speed < speed gradient threshold) and (the sum of gears meshed on two gears of transmission (- external clutch torque > (depending on tq offset of gear combination + maximum (engine static torque, torque required by driver) + tq factor depending on gear combination * max (engine static torque, torque required by driver))) and (internal clutch torque < internal clutch torque = one third))	Clutch failure	Check clutch

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P183816h	Voltage Level Monitoring High Power Supply Undervoltage 1st Threshold	High power battery voltage \leq vbatt under voltage threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Battery failure • Alternator failure • Wire harness or connector failure • TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check battery • Check for alternator failure • Check wire harness or connector • Check TCU
P183916h	Voltage Level Monitoring High Power Supply Undervoltage 2nd Threshold	Low power battery voltage > (vperm over voltage threshold + vperm over voltage lag)		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P183817h	Voltage Level Monitoring High Power Supply Overvoltage 1st Threshold	High power battery voltage \geq (vbatt over voltage threshold + vperm over voltage lag)		
P183A16h	Voltage Level Monitoring Low Power Supply Undervoltage	Low power battery voltage \leq vperm under voltage threshold		
P183917h	Voltage Level Monitoring High Power Supply Overvoltage 2nd Threshold	High power battery voltage \geq (vbatt over voltage threshold 2 + vbatt over voltage lag 2)		
P183A17h	Voltage Level Monitoring Low Power Supply Overvoltage	Low power battery voltage $>$ (vperm over voltage threshold + vperm over voltage lag)		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P183B4Bh	Temperature Monitoring TCU (Overtemperature)	Temperature exceeds the maximum temperature of PCB.	TCU temperature is abnormal	Check TCU

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P183C47	Base SW Test Result of the Initial Cut off Test	The IPT status of Mot A is abnormal, the IPT status of Mot B is abnormal, the IPT status of Mot C is abnormal, the IPT status of Mot D is abnormal or the IPT status of Mot E is abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure TCU failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check TCU
P183D42h	Analyse EEPROM Values	The EEPROM check will be performed on the hardware supplier side. Handling procedure for EEPROM reports an error		
P330047h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ1: Unwanted Engine Torque Increase	Reset SZ1 mark to TRUE and reset SZ1 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330147h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ2: Unwanted	Reset SZ2 mark to TRUE and reset SZ2	/	/

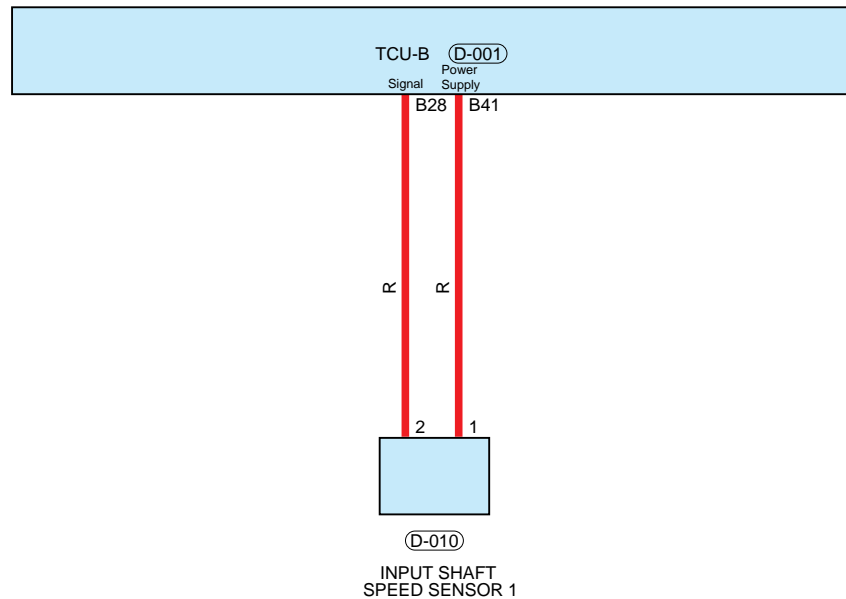
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
	Launch in Wrong Direction	mark complement to FALSE		
P330247h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ3: Unwanted Shifting to R While Driving	Reset SZ3 mark to TRUE and reset SZ3 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330447h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ6a: Unwanted Downshift (Inside Allowed Input Shaft Speed Range)	Reset SZ6 mark to TRUE and reset SZ6 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330547h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ6b: Unwanted Downshift (Outside Allowed Input Shaft Speed Range)	Reset SZ6b mark to TRUE and reset SZ6b mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330647h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ7: Clutch Tie-up	Reset SZ2 mark to TRUE and reset SZ2 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330747h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ8: Clutch Overspeed	Reset SZ2 mark to TRUE and reset SZ2 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330847h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ13: Unwanted Disengaging P	Reset SZ13 mark to TRUE and reset SZ13 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330947h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ14: P Not Engaging	Reset SZ14 mark to TRUE and reset SZ14 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330A47h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ16: Unwanted Engaging of P	Reset SZ16 mark to TRUE and reset SZ16 mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330B47h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ19a: Wrong Display Position P	Reset SZ19a mark to TRUE and reset SZ19a mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330C47h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ19b: Wrong Display Position D/R	Reset SZ19b mark to TRUE and reset SZ19b mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P330D47h	Level 2 Safety Goal SZ19c: Wrong	Reset SZ19c mark to TRUE and reset SZ19c mark	/	/

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
	Display Position N/P	complement to FALSE		
P331047h	level 2 Safety Goal Memory Protection	Reset MEMPROT_ERR mark to TRUE and reset MEMPROT_ERR mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P331147h	level 2 Safety Goal Calibration Pointer Protection	Reset CALPTR_ERR mark to TRUE and reset CALPTR_ERR mark complement to FALSE	/	/
P332047h	Level 3 Safety Function Has Become Active	Reset reason information > 0 and (reset reason information < 11 or reset reason information > 11)	/	/

4.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	P180803h	PWM Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Pulse Width Failure
DTC	P181812h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Bat
DTC	P180814h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Ground or Open Circuit
DTC	P18081Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range High
DTC	P18081Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low
DTC	P180837h	Frequency Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path: Frequency Failure
DTC	P180894h	Jump Detection ISS Odd Transmission Path
DTC	P180829h	Speed Monitoring ISS Odd Transmission Path

Circuit Diagram



SAE006001

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (4) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (5) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (6) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (7) Visually check the related wire harness.
- (8) Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.
- (9) If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

⚠ Caution

- **When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.**

1

Check battery

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Using a multimeter, measure voltage between positive and negative battery terminals.

NG

Replace battery.

OK

2 Check alternator

(a) Check generating capacity of alternator.

NG Replace alternator.

OK

3 Check odd input shaft speed sensor connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect odd input shaft speed sensor connector D-010 and TCU connector D-001.
- (d) Check connector for poor connection or contact.

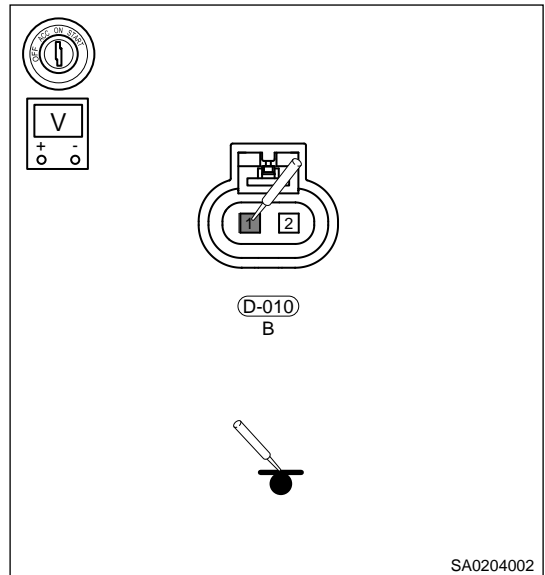
NG Reinstall or repair, replace connector.

OK

4 Check odd input shaft speed sensor power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) (Online detection) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage of terminal 1 of odd input shaft speed sensor connector D-010.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-010 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V



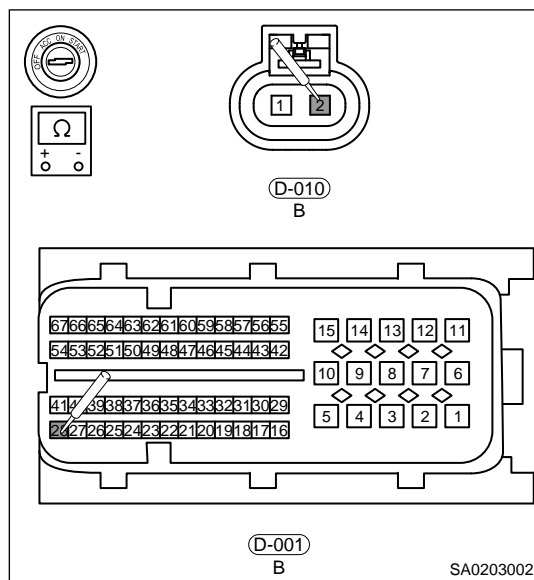
NG Check and repair wire harness between D-010 (1) and TCU.

OK

5 Check odd input shaft speed sensor signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the TCU connector D-001.
- (c) Check wire harness between input shaft speed sensor and ECU terminal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-001 (28) - D-010 (2)	Always	Resistance $\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Replace or repair wire harness or connector (- Input shaft sensor - TCU).

OK

6 Check odd input shaft speed sensor

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Check if resistance between two terminals of input shaft speed sensor is normal.

NG Replace odd input shaft speed sensor.

OK

7 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are output.

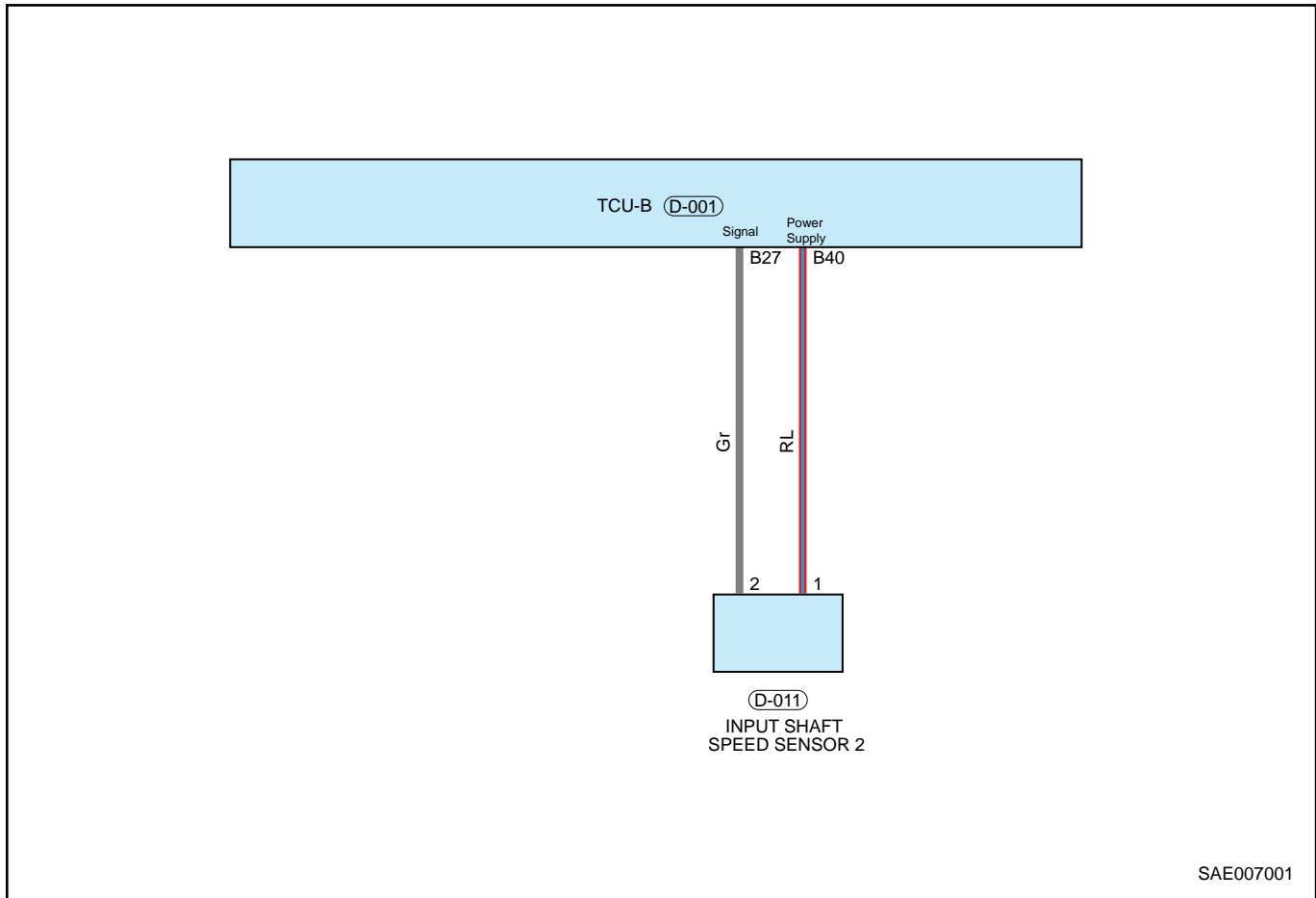
OK System operates normally.

NG Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P180903h	PWM Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Pulse Width Failure
DTC	P180911h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Ground or Open Circuit
DTC	P180912h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Short to Bat

DTC	P18091Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range High
DTC	P18091Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low
DTC	P181912h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Bat
DTC	P180914h	Voltage Level Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path: Electrical Signal Short to Ground or Open Circuit
DTC	P180994h	Jump Detection ISS Even Transmission Path
DTC	P180929h	Speed Monitoring ISS Even Transmission Path

Circuit Diagram



SAE007001

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (4) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (5) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (6) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (7) Visually check the related wire harness.
- (8) Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.

- (9) If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

⚠ Caution

- **When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.**

1 Check battery

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Using a multimeter, measure voltage between positive and negative battery terminals.

NG

Replace battery.

OK

2 Check alternator

- (a) Check generating capacity of alternator.

NG

Replace alternator.

OK

3 Check even input shaft speed sensor connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Disconnect even input shaft speed sensor connector D-011 and TCU connector D-001.
 (d) Check connector for poor connection or contact.

NG

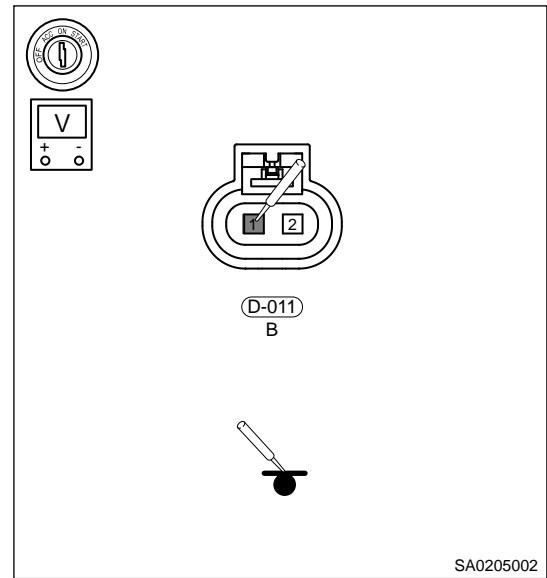
Reinstall or repair, replace connector.

OK

4 Check power supply voltage of even input shaft speed sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) (Online detection) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage of terminal 1 of even input shaft speed sensor connector D-011.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-011 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V



NG

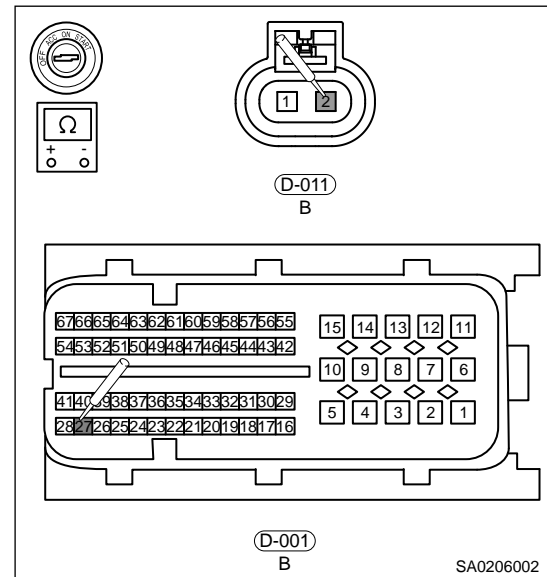
Check and repair wire harness between D-011 (1) and TCU.

OK

5 Check even input shaft speed sensor signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the TCU connector D-001.
- (c) Check wire harness between input shaft speed sensor and TCU terminal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-001 (27) - D-011 (2)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω



NG

Replace wire harness or connector (Input shaft sensor - TCU).

OK

6 Check even input shaft speed sensor

- (a) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Check if resistance between two terminals of input shaft speed sensor is normal.

NG Replace even input shaft speed sensor.

OK

7 Reconfirm DTCs

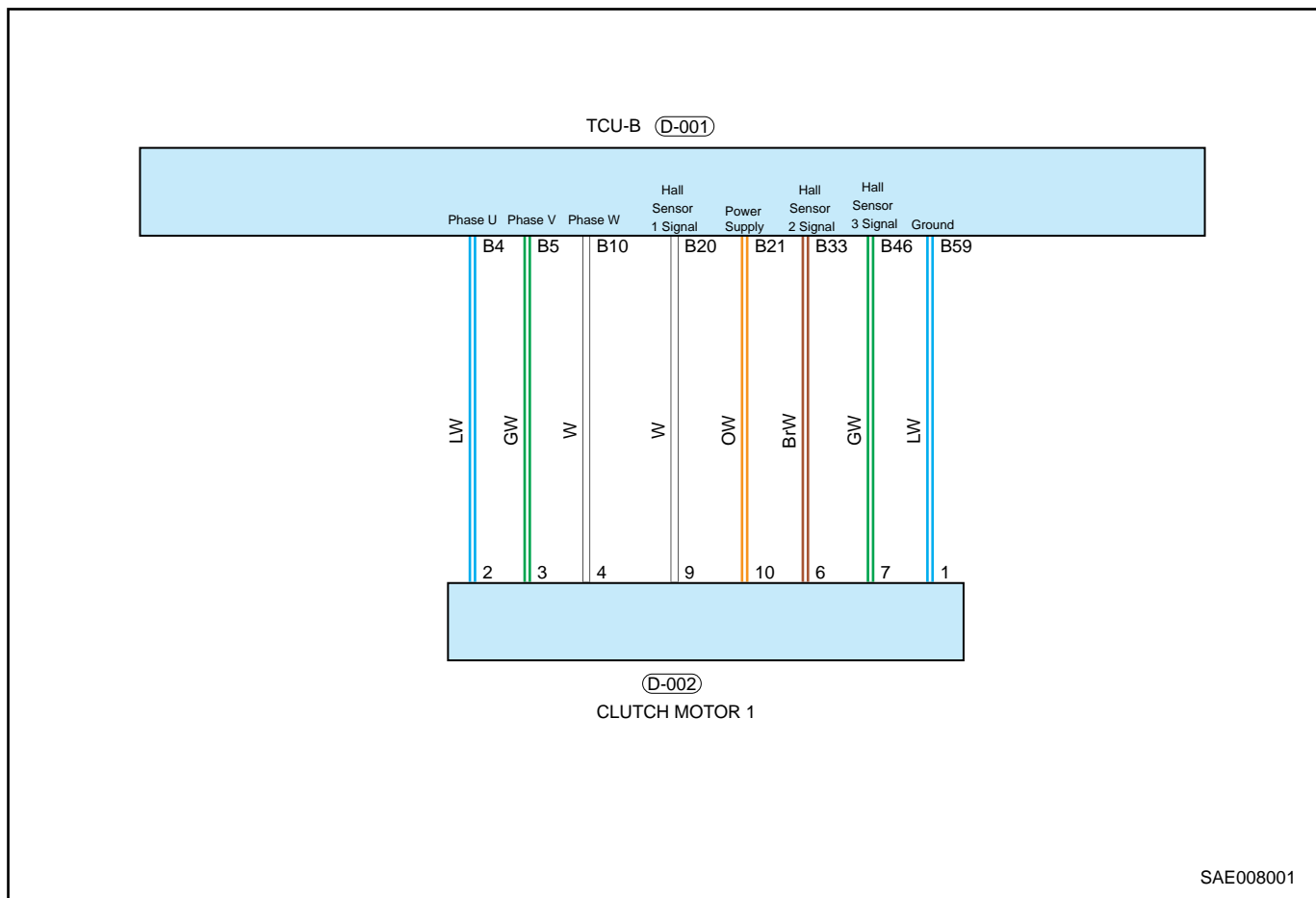
- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK System operates normally.

NG Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P180013h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Open Circuit
DTC	P180012h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Short to Bat
DTC	P180011h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 1: Short to Ground

Circuit Diagram



Confirmation Procedure
 Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

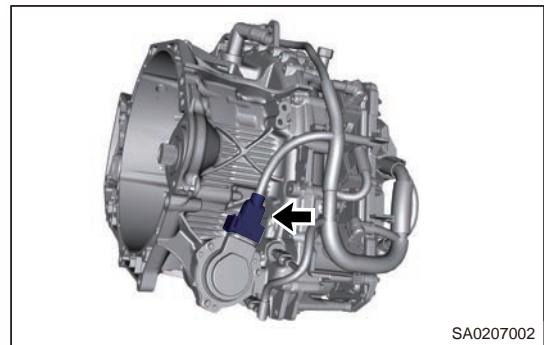
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (4) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (5) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (6) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (7) Visually check the related wire harness.
- (8) Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.
- (9) If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

⚠ Caution

- **When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.**

1 Check clutch actuator motor 1 connector

(a) Check if clutch actuator motor 1 connector D-002 (arrow) is connected infirmly, damaged or cracked.



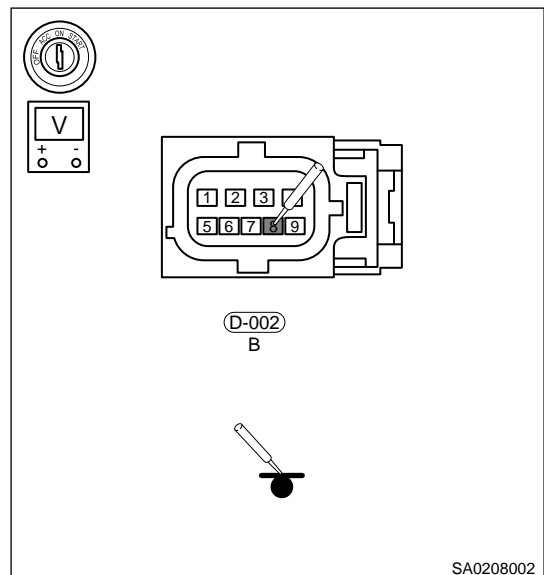
NG **Repair or replace connector.**

OK

2 Check clutch actuator motor 1 power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check the voltage between clutch actuator motor 1 connector terminal (8) and ground.
Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-002 (8) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	5 V



NG

Repair or replace power supply wire harness between clutch actuator motor 1 and TCU.

OK

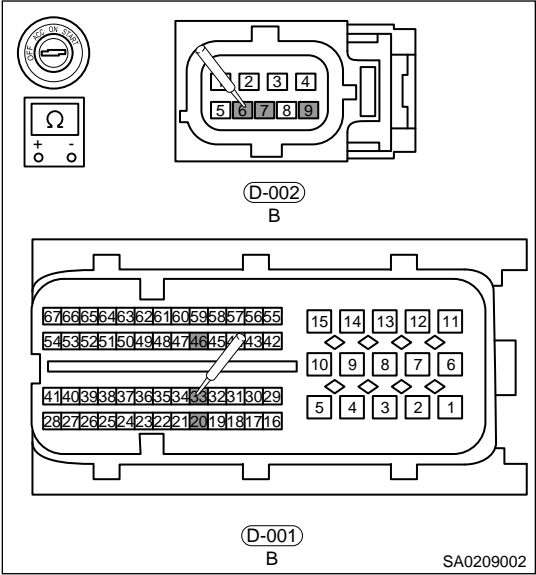
3 Check clutch actuator motor 1 circuit

- (a) Disconnect the TCU connector D-001.
 - (b) Check wire harness between clutch actuator motor 1 connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.
- Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-002 (6) - D-001 (33)	Always	Resistance $\leq 1 \Omega$
d-002(7) - D-001(46)	Always	Resistance $\leq 1 \Omega$
D-002 (9) - D-001 (20)	Always	Resistance $\leq 1 \Omega$

Check for Short

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-002 (6, 7, 9) or D-001 (33, 46, 20) - Body ground	Always	Resistance ∞
D-002 (6, 7, 9) or D-001 (33, 46, 20) - Body ground	Always	Resistance ∞



NG

Repair or replace wire harness or connector (- Clutch actuator motor 1 - TCU)

OK

4 Check clutch actuator motor 1

- (a) Check the clutch actuator motor 1.

NG

Replace clutch actuator motor 1.

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
- (c) Perform self-learning of clutch motor.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK

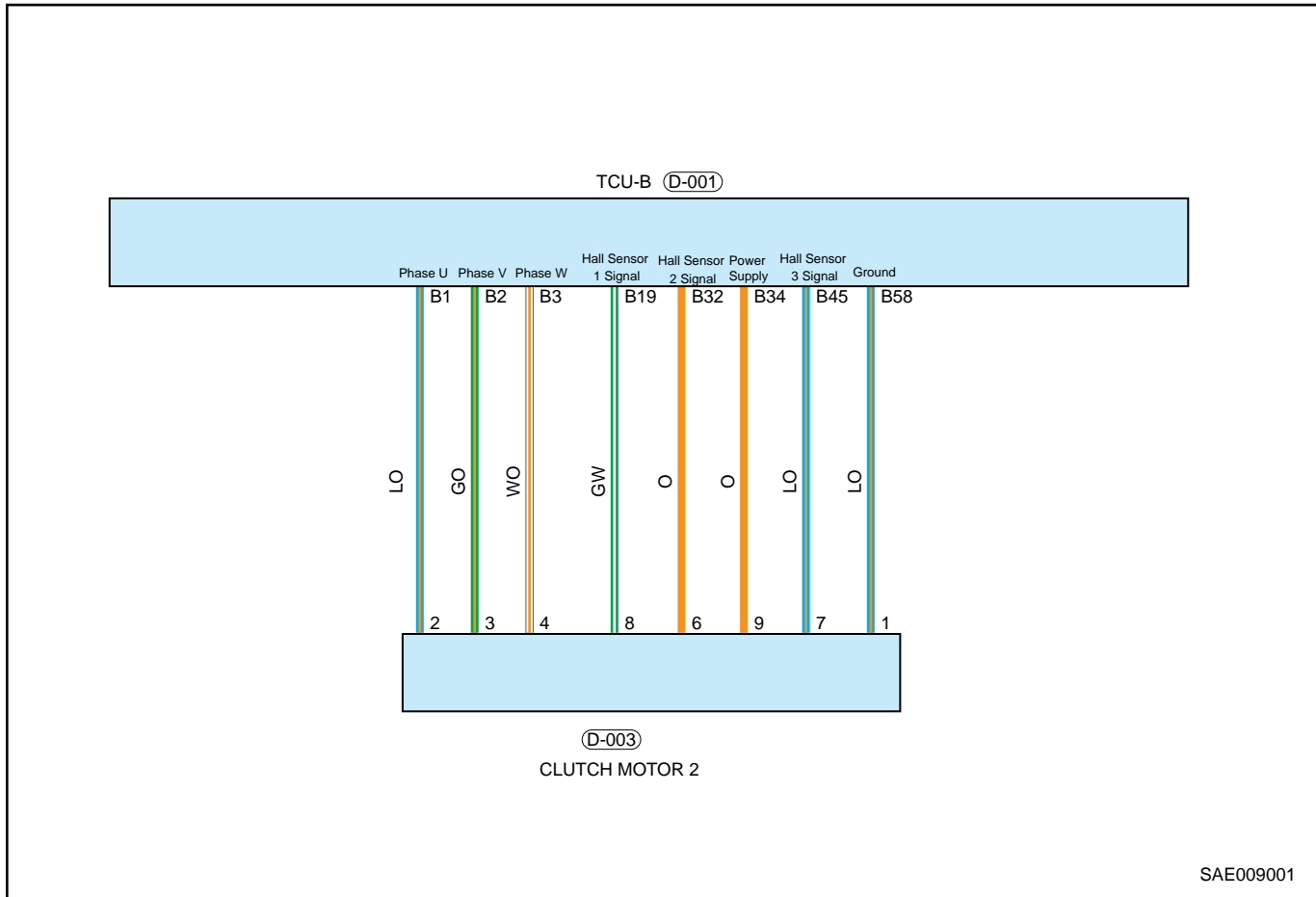
System operates normally.



Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P180113h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2: Open Circuit
DTC	P180115h	Phases Monitoring Clutch Actuator 2: Short to Battery or Open Circuit

Circuit Diagram



Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

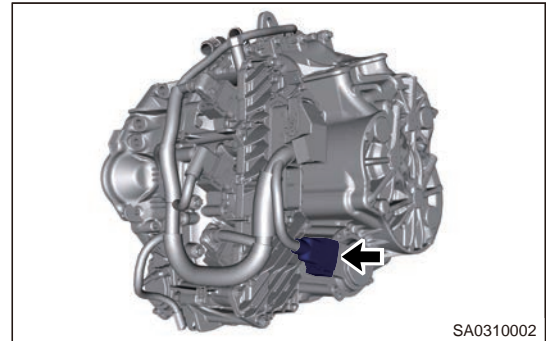
- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (4) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (5) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (6) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (7) Visually check the related wire harness.
- (8) Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.
- (9) If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

⚠ Caution

- When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check clutch actuator motor 2 connector

- (a) Check if clutch actuator motor 2 connector D - 003 (arrow) is connected infirmly, damaged or cracked.



NG

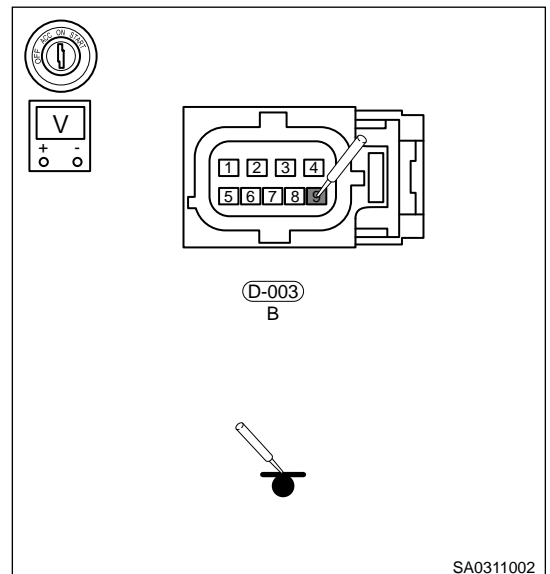
Repair or replace connector.

OK

2 Check clutch actuator motor 2 power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (b) Check the voltage between clutch actuator motor 2 connector terminal (1) and ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-003 (9) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	5 V



NG

Repair or replace power supply wire harness between clutch actuator motor 2 and TCU.

OK

3 Check clutch actuator motor 2 circuit

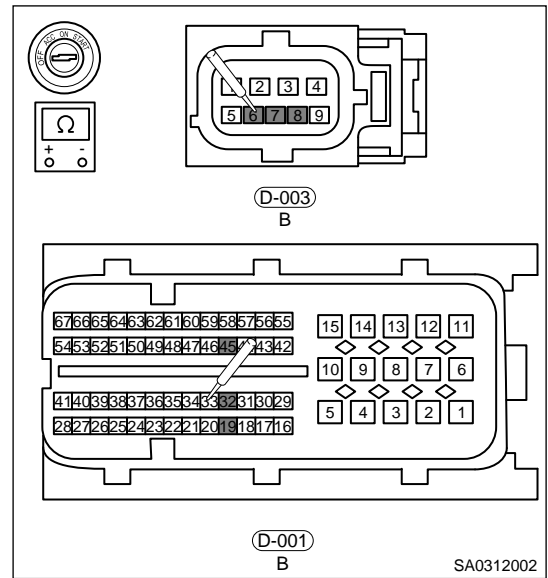
13 - TRANSMISSION

- (a) Disconnect the TCU connector D-001.
- (b) Check wire harness between clutch actuator motor 2 connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.
Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-003 (6) - D-001 (32)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-003 (7) - D-001 (45)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-003(8) - B-D-001(19)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω

Check for Short

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-003 (6, 7, 8) or D-001 (19, 45, 32) - Body ground	Always	Resistance ∞
D-003 (2, 3, 4) or D-001 (19, 45, 32) - Battery positive	Always	Resistance ∞



NG Repair or replace wire harness or connector (- Clutch actuator motor 2 - TCU).

OK

4 Check clutch actuator motor 2

- (a) Check the clutch actuator motor 2.

NG Replace clutch actuator motor 2.

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

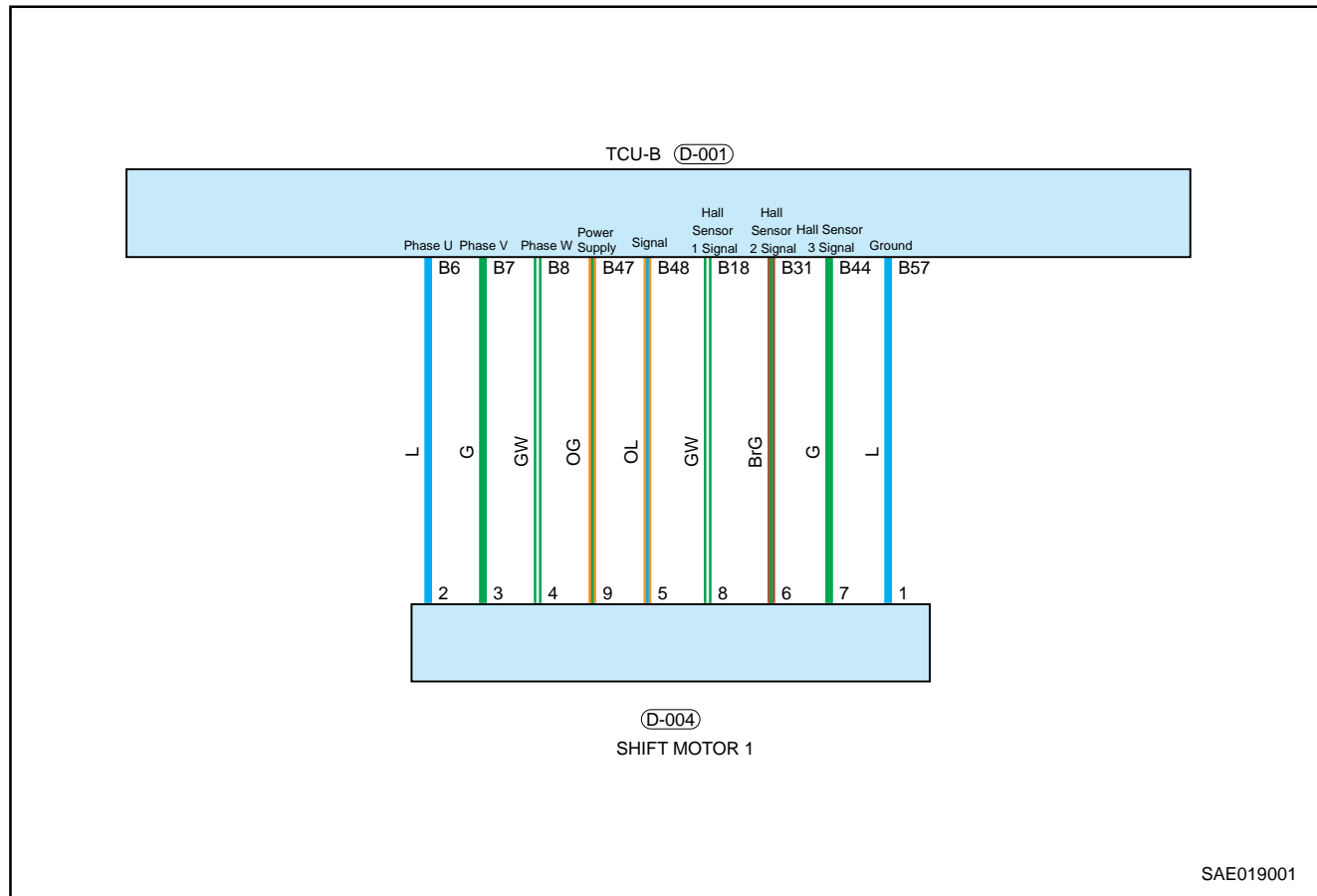
- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
- (c) Perform self-learning of clutch motor.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK System operates normally.

NG Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P180213h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Open Circuit
DTC	P180292h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Performance or Incorrect Operation
DTC	P180212h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Short to Bat
DTC	P180215h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Short to Battery or Open Circuit
DTC	P180211h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 1: Short to Ground

Circuit Diagram



⚠ Caution

- **When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.**

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (4) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (5) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (6) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (7) Visually check the related wire harness.

13 - TRANSMISSION

- (8) Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.
- (9) If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

⚠ Caution

- When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check shift motor 1 connector

(a) Check if shift motor 1 connector D-004 is connected in firmly, damaged or cracked.

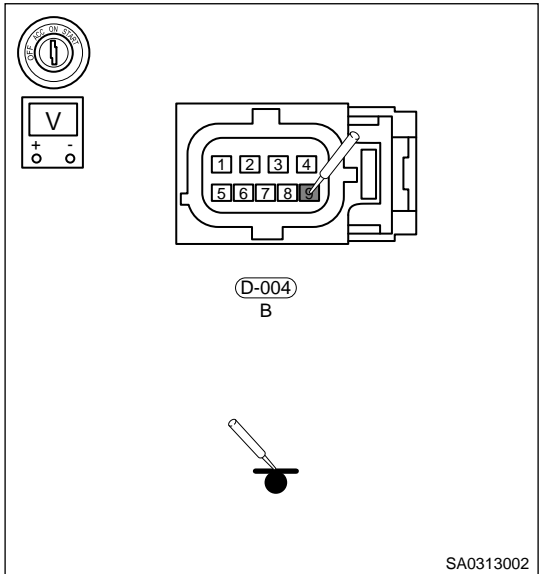
NG Repair or replace connector.

OK

2 Check shift motor 1 power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check voltage between shift motor 1 connector terminal (9) and ground.
Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-004 (9) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	5 V



NG Repair or replace power supply wire harness between shift motor 1 and TCU.

OK

3 Check shift motor 1 circuit

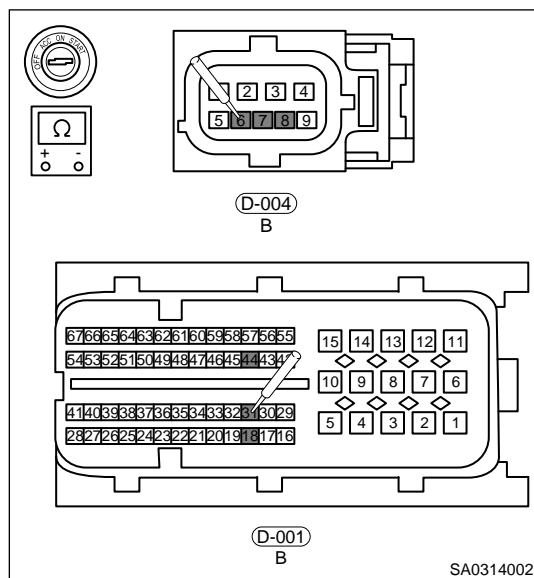
- (a) Disconnect the TCU connector D-001.
- (b) Check wire harness between shift motor 1 connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.

Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-004(6) - D-001(31)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-004(7) - D-001(44)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-004(8) - D-001(18)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω

Check for Short

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-004 (6, 7, 8) or D-001 (31, 44, 18) - Body ground	Always	Resistance ∞



NG

Repair or replace wire harness or connector (- Shift motor 1 - TCU).

OK

4 Check shift motor 1

- (a) Check the shift motor 1.

NG

Replace shift motor 1.

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
- (c) Perform self-learning of clutch motor.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK

System operates normally.

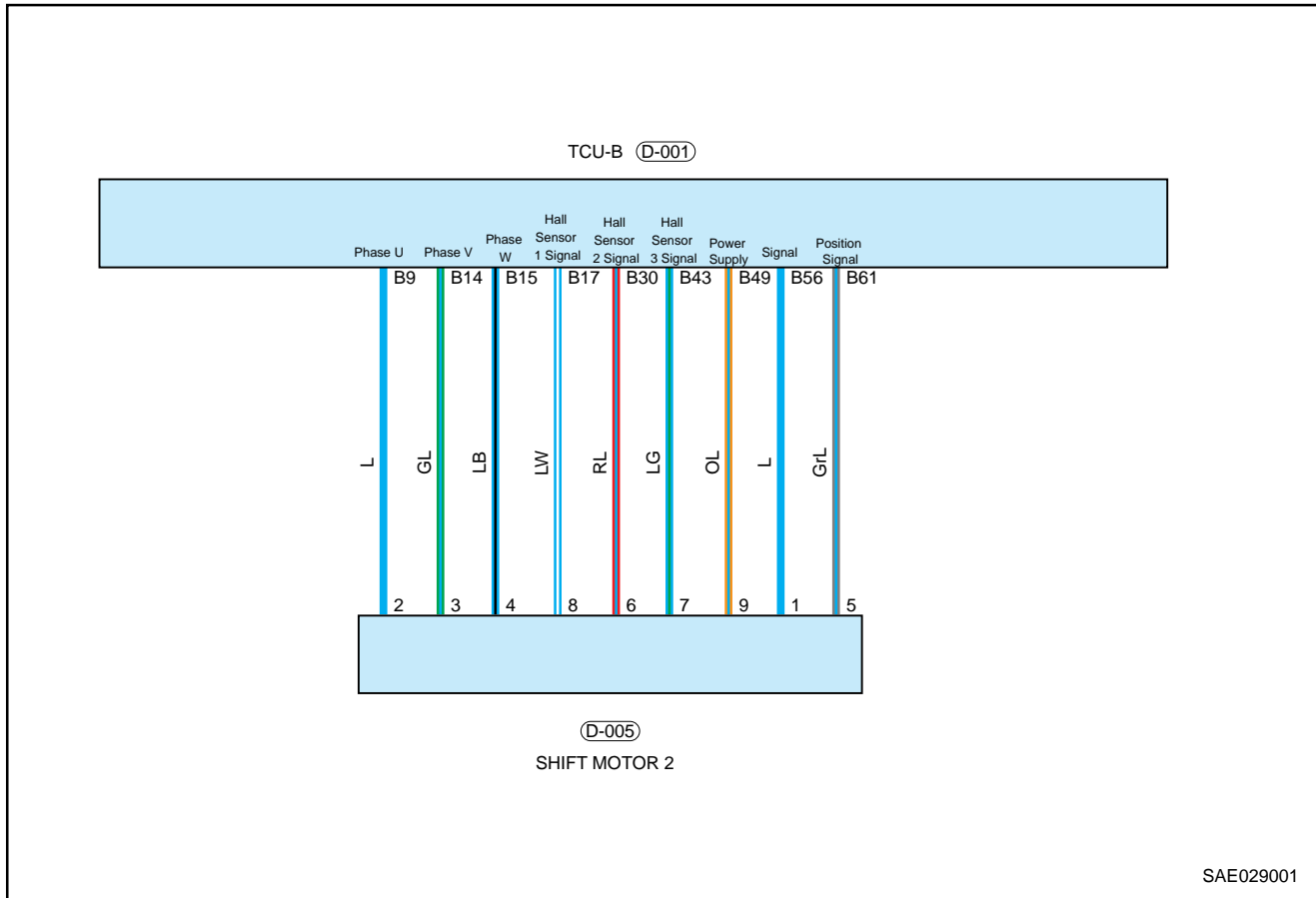
NG

Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P180313h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Open Circuit
DTC	P180392h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Performance or Incorrect Operation
DTC	P180312h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Short to Bat

DTC	P180315h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Short to Battery or Open Circuit
DTC	P180311h	Phases Monitoring Shift Actuator 2: Short to Ground
DTC	P180329h	Shift Actuator 2 Motor Speed Check

Circuit Diagram



SAE029001

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

⚠ Caution

- When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check shift motor 2 connector

(a) Check if shift motor 2 connector D-005 is connected infirmly, damaged or cracked.

NG

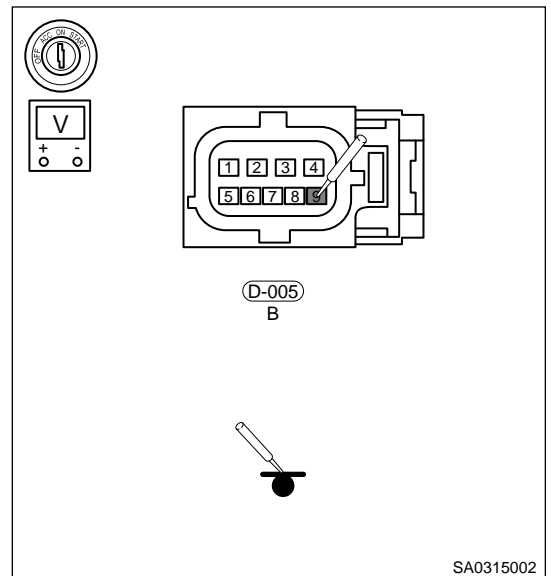
Repair or replace connector.

OK

2 Check shift motor 2 power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (b) Check voltage between shift motor 2 connector terminal (9) and ground.
 Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-005 (9) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	5 V



NG

Repair or replace power supply wire harness between shift motor 2 and TCU.

OK

3 Check shift motor 2 circuit

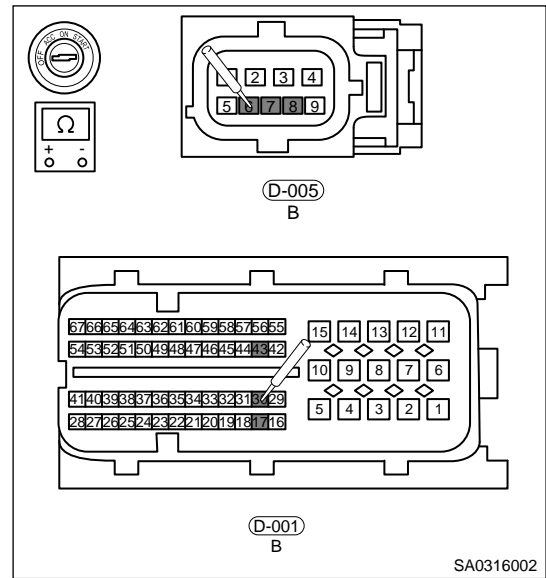
13 - TRANSMISSION

- (a) Disconnect the TCU connector D-001.
- (b) Check wire harness between shift motor 2 connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.
Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-005 (6) - D-001 (30)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-005 (7) - D-001 (43)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-005 (8) - D-001 (17)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω

Check for Short

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-005 (6, 7, 8) or D-001 (30, 43, 17) - Body ground	Always	Resistance ∞



NG Repair or replace wire harness or connector (- Shift motor 2 - TCU).

OK

4 | Check shift motor 2

- (a) Check the shift motor 2.

NG Replace shift motor 2

OK

5 | Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
- (c) Perform self-learning of clutch motor.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK System operates normally.

NG Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P182B62h	Clutch 1 Torque Too Low (GETRAG)
DTC	P182C62h	Clutch 2 Torque Too Low (GETRAG)

⚠ Caution

- **When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.**

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (4) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (5) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (6) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (7) Visually check the related wire harness.
- (8) Check and clean all Transmission Control Unit (TCU) ground related to latest DTC.
- (9) If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

⚠ Caution

- **When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.**

1

Check clutch system

(a) Check the clutch system.

NG

Replace clutch system.

OK

2

Reconfirm DTCs

(a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

(b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.

(c) Start the engine.

(d) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK

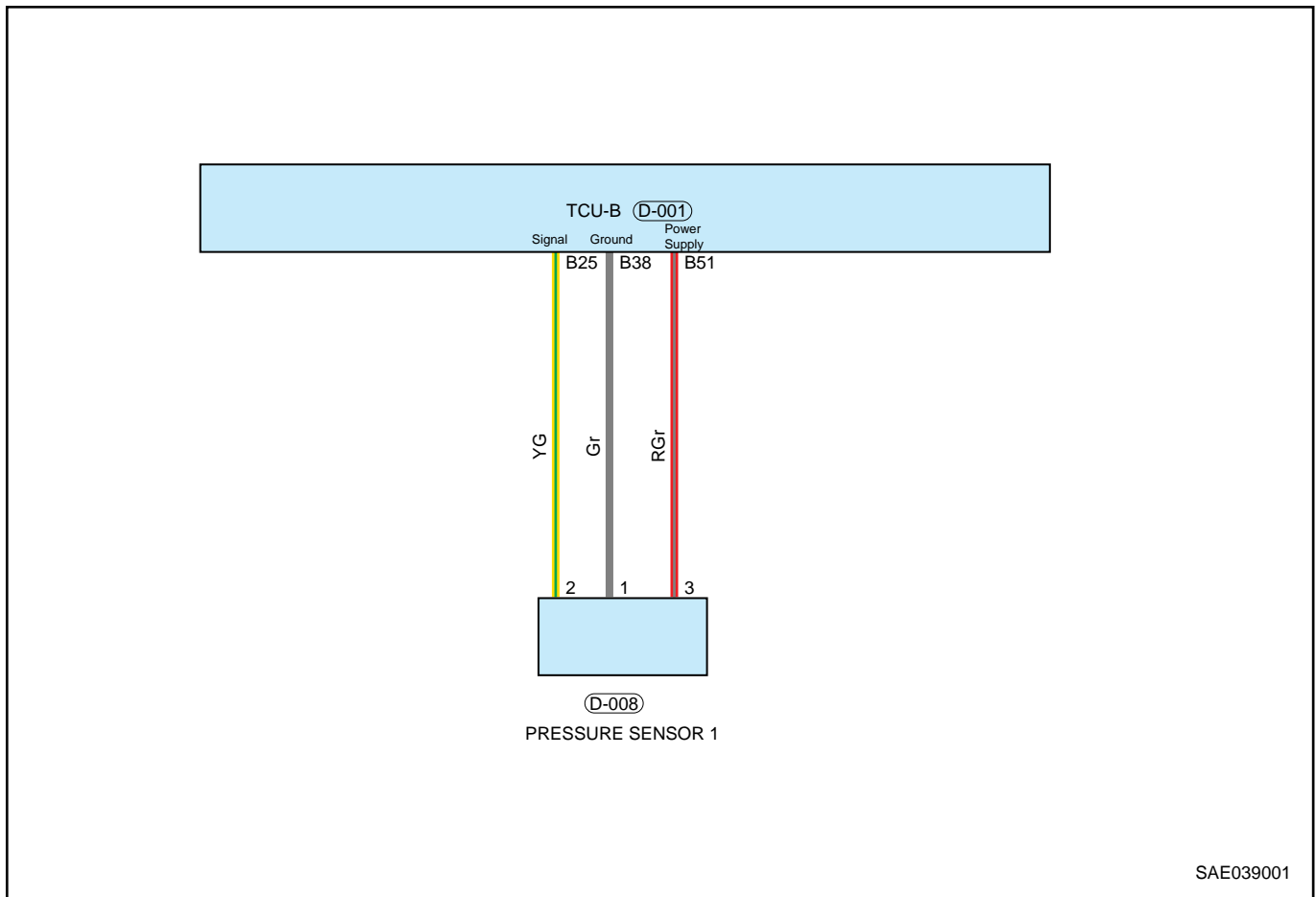
System operates normally.

NG

Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P181C2Ah	Pressure Sensor 1 Output Stuck at Certain Value
DTC	P181C92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 1, Pressure too High
DTC	P181D92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 1, Pressure too Low
DTC	P181C28h	Pressure Sensor 1 Offset too High
DTC	P181C27h	Pressure Sensor 1 Implausible High Gradient

Circuit Diagram



SAE039001

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Using a diagnostic tester, record and clear DTCs.
- (5) Start engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature, and then select Read DTC.
- (6) Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- (7) If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

⚠ Caution

- **When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.**

1 Check pressure sensor 1 connector

(a) Check A/C pressure sensor 1 connector D-008 for poor contact or looseness.

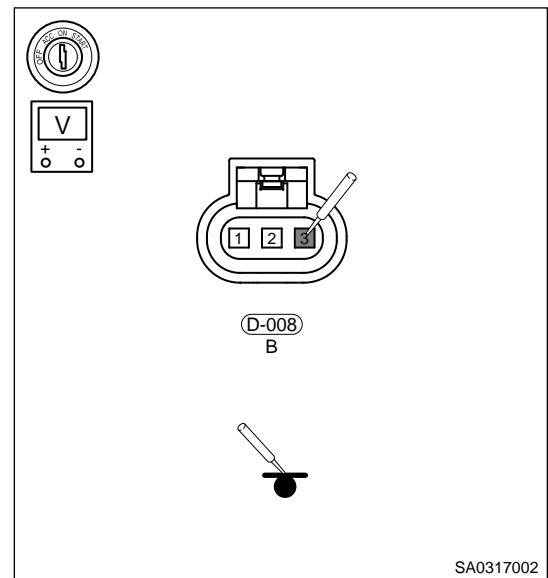
NG Reinstall or repair, replace connector.

OK

2 Check pressure sensor 1 power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) (Online detection) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage of terminal 3 of pressure sensor 1 connector D-008.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-008 (3) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V



NG

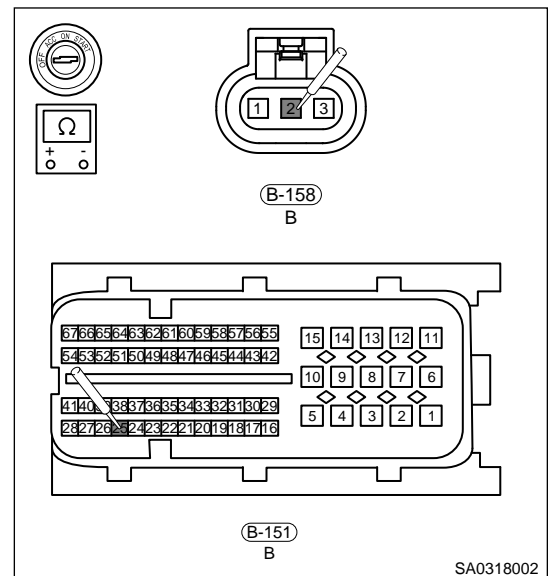
Replace or repair pressure sensor power supply wire harness.

OK

3 Check pressure sensor 1 signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the pressure sensor 1 and TCU connectors.
- (c) Check wire harness between pressure sensor 1 connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-008 (2) - D-001 (25)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω



NG

Replace wire harness or connector (Pressure sensor 1 - TCU).

OK

4 Check pressure sensor 1

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check sensor connection part for debris, ice, oil and damage.

NG Replace pressure sensor 1.

OK

5	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

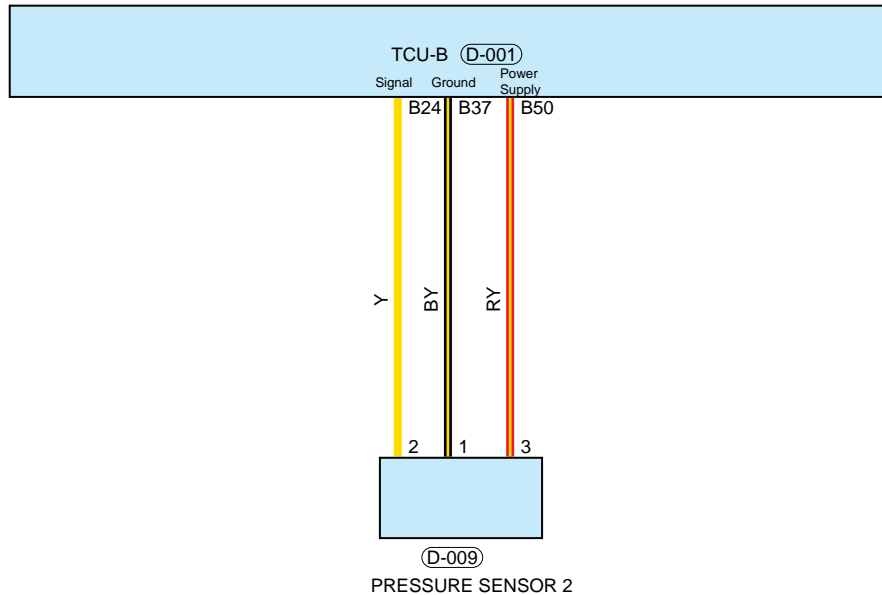
- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using a diagnostic tester, read ECU DTC.
- (d) Check if DTC still exists.

OK System operates normally.

NG Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P181E92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 2, Pressure too High
DTC	P181E2Ah	Pressure Sensor 2 Output Stuck at Certain Value
DTC	P181F92h	Comparison Target to Current Pressure Sensor 2, Pressure too Low
DTC	P181E28h	Pressure Sensor 2 Offset too High
DTC	P181E27h	Pressure Sensor 2 Implausible High Gradient

Circuit Diagram



SAE049001

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Using a diagnostic tester, record and clear DTCs.
- (5) Start engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature, and then select Read DTC.
- (6) Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- (7) If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

⚠ Caution

- When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check pressure sensor 2 connector

(a) Check pressure sensor 2 connector D-009 for poor contact or looseness.

NG

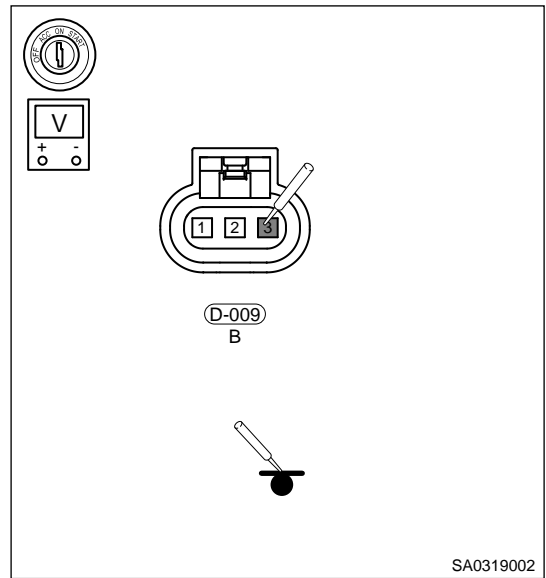
Reinstall or repair, replace connector.

OK

2 Check pressure sensor 2 power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) (Online detection) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage of terminal 3 of pressure sensor 2 connector D-009.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-009 (3) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V



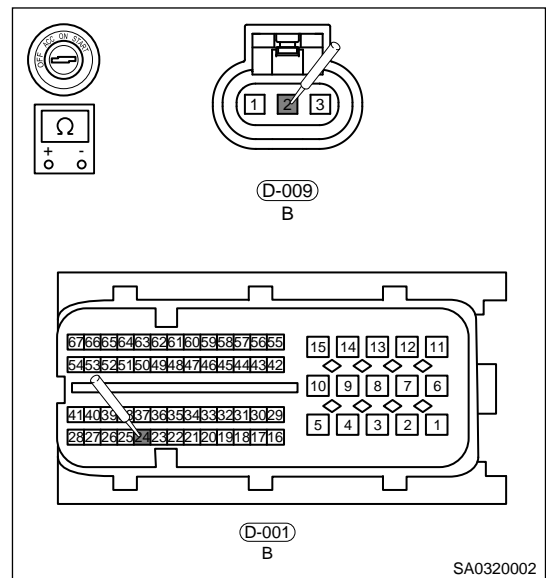
NG Replace or repair pressure sensor power supply wire harness.

OK

3 Check pressure sensor 2 signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the pressure sensor 2 and TCU connectors.
- (c) Check wire harness between pressure sensor 2 connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-009 (2) - Body ground	Always	Resistance $\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Replace wire harness or connector (Pressure sensor 2 - TCU).

OK

4 Check pressure sensor 2

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Check sensor connection part for debris, ice, oil and damage.

NG

Replace pressure sensor 2.

OK

5

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
 (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (c) Using a diagnostic tester, read ECU DTC.
 (d) Check if DTC still exists.

OK

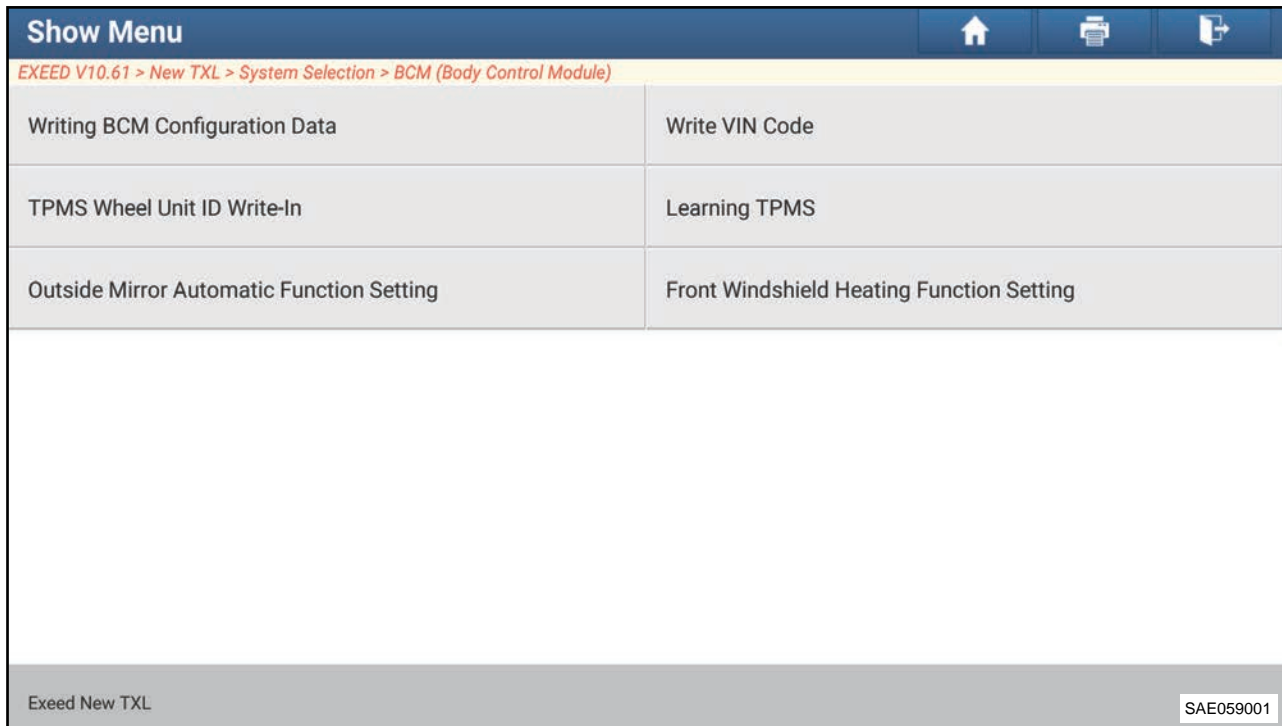
System operates normally.

NG

Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	P180411h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Short to Ground
DTC	P180412h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Short to Bat
DTC	P180413h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Open Circuit
DTC	P1805F0h	Clutch Cooling Pump Motor Speed Check (too High)
DTC	P1805F1h	Clutch Cooling Pump Motor Speed Check (too Low)
DTC	P1805F2h	Clutch Cooling Pump Motor Speed Check (Unexpected Zero or Negative)
DTC	P18054Bh	Temperature Monitoring Cooling Actuator Powerstage (Overtemperature)
DTC	P180E11h	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Clutch Cooling Motor: Supply Voltage Short Circuit to Ground
DTC	P180E1Ch	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Clutch Cooling Motor: Supply Voltage Out of Range High
DTC	P180E1Dh	Voltage Level Monitoring Sensor Clutch Cooling Motor: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low
DTC	P180415h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Short to Battery or Open Circuit
DTC	P180492h	Phases Monitoring Cooling Actuator: Performance or Incorrect Operation

Circuit Diagram



Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Using a diagnostic tester, record and clear DTCs.
- (5) Start engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature, and then select Read DTC.
- (6) Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- (7) If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

⚠ Caution

- **When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.**

1 Check cooling motor connector

(a) Check if cooling motor connector D-006 is connected infirmly, damaged or cracked.

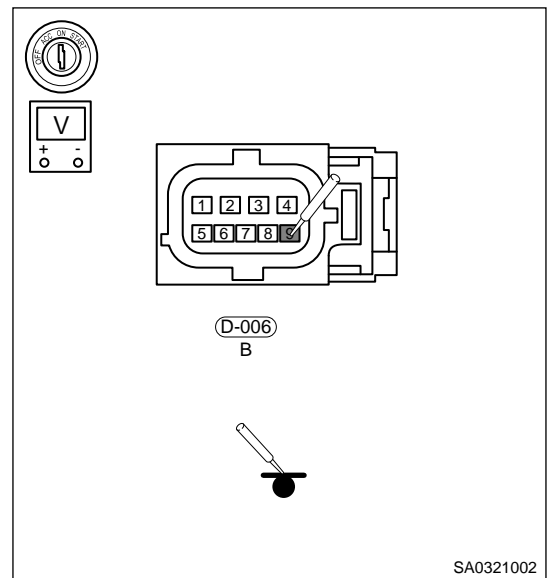
NG **Repair or replace connector.**

OK

2 Check cooling motor power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check voltage between cooling motor connector terminal D-006 (9) and ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-006 (9) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	5 V



NG Repair or replace power supply wire harness between cooling motor and TCU.

OK

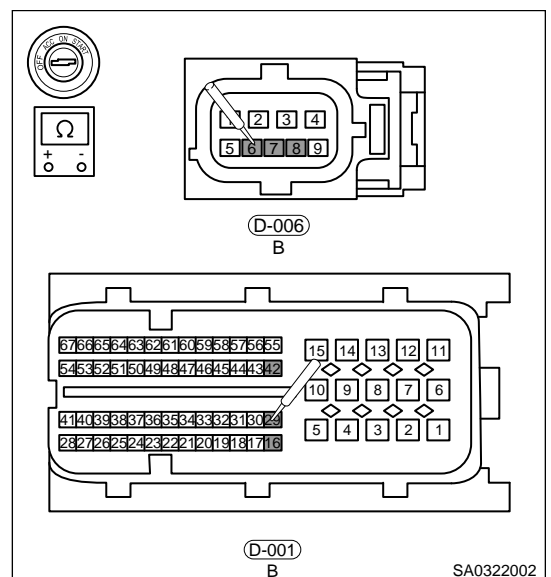
3 Check cooling motor signal circuit

- (a) Disconnect the TCU connector D-001.
- (b) Check wire harness between cooling motor connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.
Check for Open

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-006 (6) - D-001 (29)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-006 (7) - D-001 (42)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω
D-006 (8) - D-001 (16)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω

Check for Short

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-006 (6, 7, 8) or D-001 (29, 42, 16) - Body ground	Always	Resistance ∞



NG Repair or replace wire harness or connector (- Cooling motor - TCU).

OK

4 Check cooling motor

(a) Check the cooling motor.

NG Replace cooling motor.



5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
- (c) Perform self-learning of clutch motor.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK System operates normally.

NG Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed FL Invalid
DTC	U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed FR Invalid
DTC	U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed RL Invalid
DTC	U041686h	Speed Monitoring (CAN) Wheel Speed RR Invalid
DTC	U040186h	Brake Pedal (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U040186h	Engine Idling (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U041786h	Hand Brake (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U040186h	Accelerator Pedal (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U042386h	Environment Temperature (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U040186h	Driver Torque Request (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U040186h	Engine Min. Torque (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U040186h	Engine Max. Torque (CAN) Signal Invalid
DTC	U040186h	Engine Temperature (CAN) Signal Invalid

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Using a diagnostic tester, record and clear DTCs.
- (5) Start engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature, and then select Read DTC.
- (6) Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- (7) If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

⚠ Caution

- When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Read DTCs

- (a) Connect the DTC decoding tester.
 (b) Read all DTCs.

NG

Check the fault causes indicated by DTCs and repair faulty area.

OK**2 Check TCU ground point**

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Check the TCU ground point GB-073.

NG

Repair or replace ground wire harness or ground point.

OK**3 Check TCU wire harness connector**

- (a) Disconnect the TCU wire harness connector.
 (b) Check the TCU wire harness connector.

NG

Repair or replace connector.

OK**4 Reconfirm DTCs**

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
 (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTC.
 (c) Start the engine.
 (d) Check if the same DTCs are output.

OK

If system operates normally, replace TCU and perform self-learning.

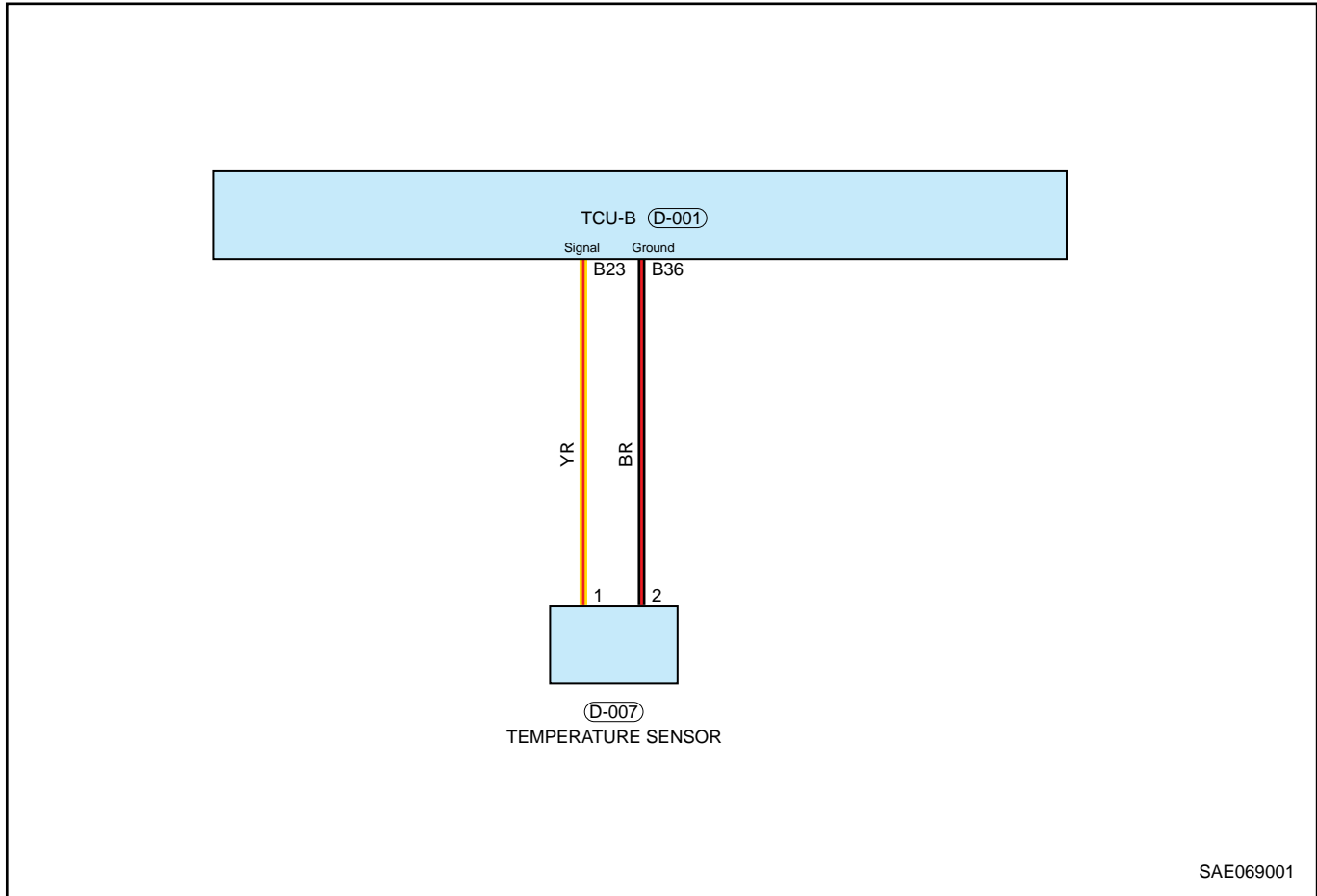
NG

If DTC still exists, replace transmission and perform self-learning.

DTC	P181415h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Signal Short-to-Battery or Open Load
DTC	P181411h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Signal Short-to-GND
DTC	P181311h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Short to Ground
DTC	P181312h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Short to Battery

DTC	P181317h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Out of Range High
DTC	P181316h	Voltage Level Monitoring Oil Temperature Sensor: Supply Voltage Out of Range Low

Circuit Diagram



SAE069001

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Using a diagnostic tester, record and clear DTCs.
- (5) Start engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature, and then select Read DTC.
- (6) Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- (7) If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

⚠ Caution

- When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check oil temperature sensor connector

(a) Check oil temperature sensor connector D-007 for poor contact or looseness.

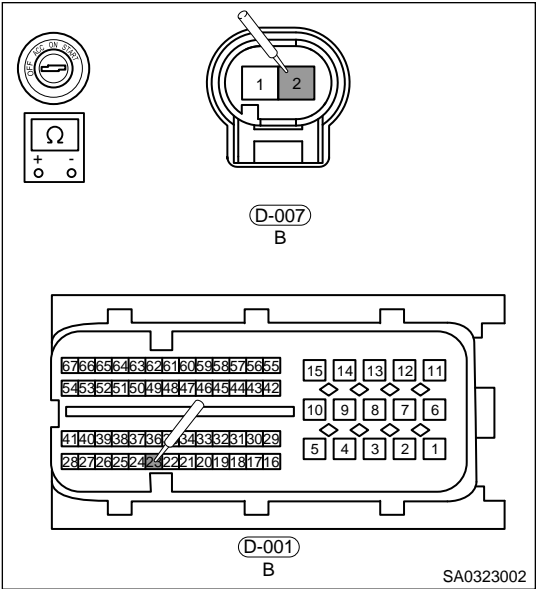
NG → **Reinstall or repair, replace connector.**

OK

2 Check oil temperature sensor signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect oil temperature sensor connector and TCU connector.
- (c) Check wire harness between oil temperature sensor connector terminal and TCU connector terminal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
D-007(2) - D-001(23)	Always	Resistance \leq 1 Ω



NG

Replace wire harness or connector (Oil temperature sensor - TCU)

OK

3 Check oil temperature sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check oil sensor connection part for debris, ice, oil and damage.

NG

Replace oil temperature sensor.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using a diagnostic tester, read ECU DTC.
- (d) Check if DTC still exists.

OK

System operates normally.

NG

Replace TCU control module assembly and perform self-learning.

DTC	U010000h	Engine Node 1 (EMS_1/2/3/4/5/7/9 Included) Lost
DTC	U040182h	Engine Node 1 (EMS_1/2/3/4/5/7/9 Included) alivecounter Authentication Fails
DTC	U040183h	Engine Node 1 (EMS_1/2/3/4/5/7/9 Included) CRC Authentication Fails
DTC	U015100h	Brake System Node 1 (ACM_1/2 Included) Lost
DTC	U011400h	AWD_1 Lost
DTC	U014000h	BCM_1 Lost
DTC	U042282h	BCM_1 Alive Counter Authentication Fails
DTC	U042283h	BCM_1 CRC Authentication Fails
DTC	U012800h	EPB_1 Lost
DTC	U041782h	EPB_1 Alive Counter Authentication Fails
DTC	U041783h	EPB_1 CRC Authentication Fails
DTC	U012200h	ESC_2 Lost
DTC	U041682h	Brake System Node 5 (ESC_2/3/4/6/7 Included) Alive Counter Authentication Fails
DTC	U041683h	Brake System Node 5 (ESC_2/3/4/6/7 Included) CRC Authentication Fails
DTC	U015500h	Instrument Cluster Node 1 (IPC_3/5/7 Included) CAN Lost
DTC	U024800h	Instrument Cluster Node 2 (PEPS_4 Included) CAN Lost
DTC	U010300h	EGS_1 Lost
DTC	U040482h	EGS_1 Alive Counter Authentication Fails
DTC	U040483h	EGS_1 CRC Authentication Fails
DTC	U240500h	MFS_2 Lost
DTC	U240582h	MFS_2 Alive Counter Authentication Fails
DTC	U240583h	MFS_2 CRC Authentication Fails
DTC	U021200h	SCM_1 Lost

Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Using a diagnostic tester, record and clear DTCs.
- (5) Start engine and warm it up to normal operating temperature, and then select Read DTC.
- (6) Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- (7) If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

1	(Refer to CAN system)
---	-----------------------

DTC	P1E01-00	Battery Voltage Below Threshold
DTC	P1E02-00	Battery Voltage Above Threshold

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in lighting system.
- (5) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- (6) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, select "Read DTC" .
- (7) If DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is current.
- (8) If DTC is not detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is intermittent.

⚠ Caution

- **When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.**

Diagnosis Procedure

1 | Check battery voltage

- (a) Check if battery voltage is normal.
- (b) Check battery voltage with multimeter voltage band.

NG Check and repair battery.

OK

2 | Check fuse RF12

- (a) Check if fuse RF12 is blown or no power.

NG Replace or repair fuse.

OK

3 | Check supply circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the electronic shift module connector I-043.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for open between connectors B-144 and I-043 according to table below.

Standard Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-144(15) - I-043(5)	Always	≤ 1 Ω

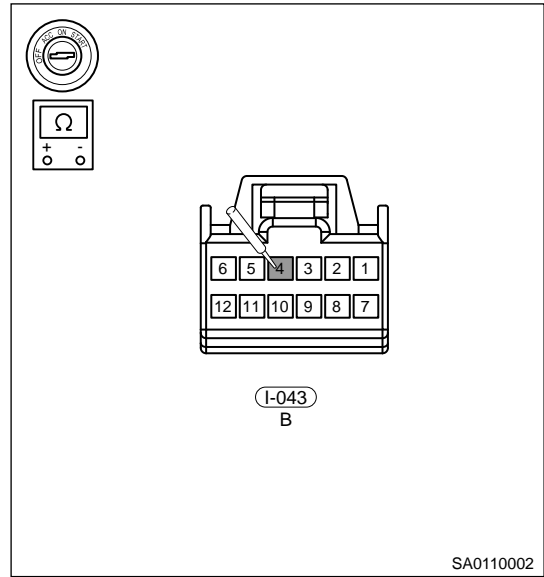
NG Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

4 | **Inspect ground**

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the electronic shift module connector I-043.
- (c) Check continuity between I-043 (4) and body ground with multimeter ohm band.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-043 (4) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG | **Repair and replace ground point.**

OK

5 | **Reconfirm DTCs**

- (a) Connect all connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Check if DTC exists.

OK | **System operates normally.**

NG | **Replace EGS control module assembly.**

DTC	U0100-00	Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U0101-00	Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U0122-00	Lost Communicate with ESC
DTC	U0140-00	Lost Communication with BCM
DTC	U0155-00	Lost Communicate with IPC
DTC	U0248-00	Lost Communicate with PEPS
DTC	U0401-81	Invalid DLC Received from EMS
DTC	U0401-86	Invalid Data Received from EMS
DTC	U0402-81	Invalid DLC Received from TCU
DTC	U0402-82	Invalid Count Received from TCU
DTC	U0402-83	Invalid CRC Received from TCU
DTC	U0402-86	Invalid Data Received from TCU

DTC	U0416-81	Invalid DLC Received from ESC
DTC	U0416-86	Invalid Data Received from ESC
DTC	U0422-81	Invalid DLC Received from BCM
DTC	U0422-86	Invalid Data Received from BCM
DTC	U0423-81	Invalid DLC Received from IPC
DTC	U0423-86	Invalid Data Received from IPC
DTC	U0426-81	Invalid DLC Received from PEPS
DTC	U0426-86	Invalid Data Received from PEPS

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to data link connector.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in lighting system.
- (5) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- (6) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, select "Read DTC" .
- (7) If DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is current.
- (8) If DTC is not detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is intermittent.

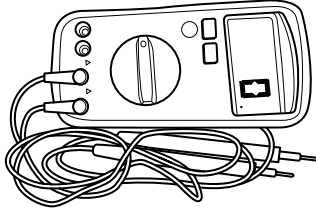
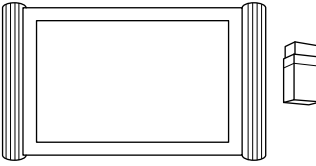
Diagnosis

1

(Refer to CAN system)

5 On-vehicle Service

5.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Diagnostic tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

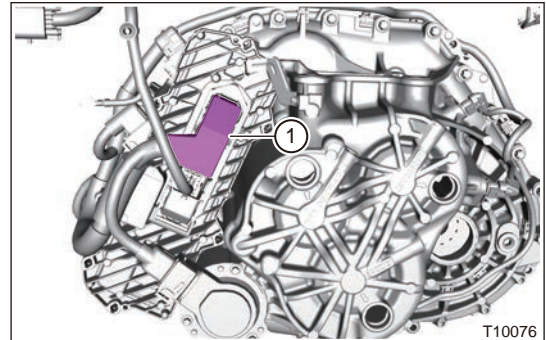
5.2 Replacement of Transmission Control Unit

■ Removal

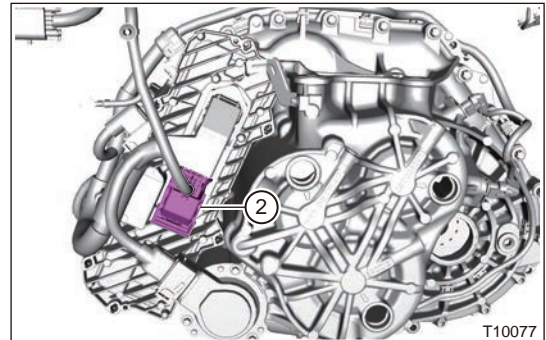
⚠ Warning

- During removal and installation of TCU, antistatic equipment should be worn to avoid damage to electronic components in TCU.

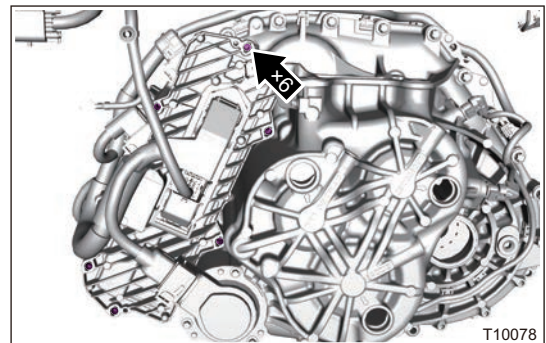
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the transmission control unit connector (1).



- (5) Disconnect the transmission control unit connector (2).



- (6) Remove 6 fixing bolts from transmission control unit.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- TCU bolts are pre-coated parts. Residual sealant should be cleaned from threaded hole of housing before assembly.
- TCU bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.
- If TCU is replaced with a new one, fresh correct TCU software with diagnostic tester.

- (1) Install 6 fixing bolts to transmission control unit.

Tightening torque: 8.5- 9.5 N·m

- (2) Connect the transmission control unit connector (1).
- (3) Connect the transmission control unit connector (2).
- (4) Install the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (6) Connect diagnostic tester, read and clear DTCs.

■ TCU Transmission Replacement Self-Learning

- (1) The self-learning trigger conditions shall meet the followings: Vehicle is powered on; engine shuts down; shift lever is in P; brake pedal is depressed; vehicle is stationary; clutch is disengaged; battery voltage is sufficient (at least over 10 V).
- (2) When P position is lost, vehicle is powered off abnormally, transmission software (large software version span) updates, it is necessary to perform shift drum learning. Self-learning process: Generally speaking, after transmission software is written, keep vehicle in power on status and depress brake pedal to complete the shift drum self-learning automatically. In addition, the self-learning process can also be completed by using transmission shift drum self-learning in diagnostic tester and depressing and holding brake pedal.

■ Transmission Self-Learning

If battery is disconnected immediately after ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to OFF mode, the gear may be lost after connecting the battery. At this time, it is necessary to perform self-learning of shift drum and clutch position until the vehicle can run normally.

Transmission self-learning operation steps:

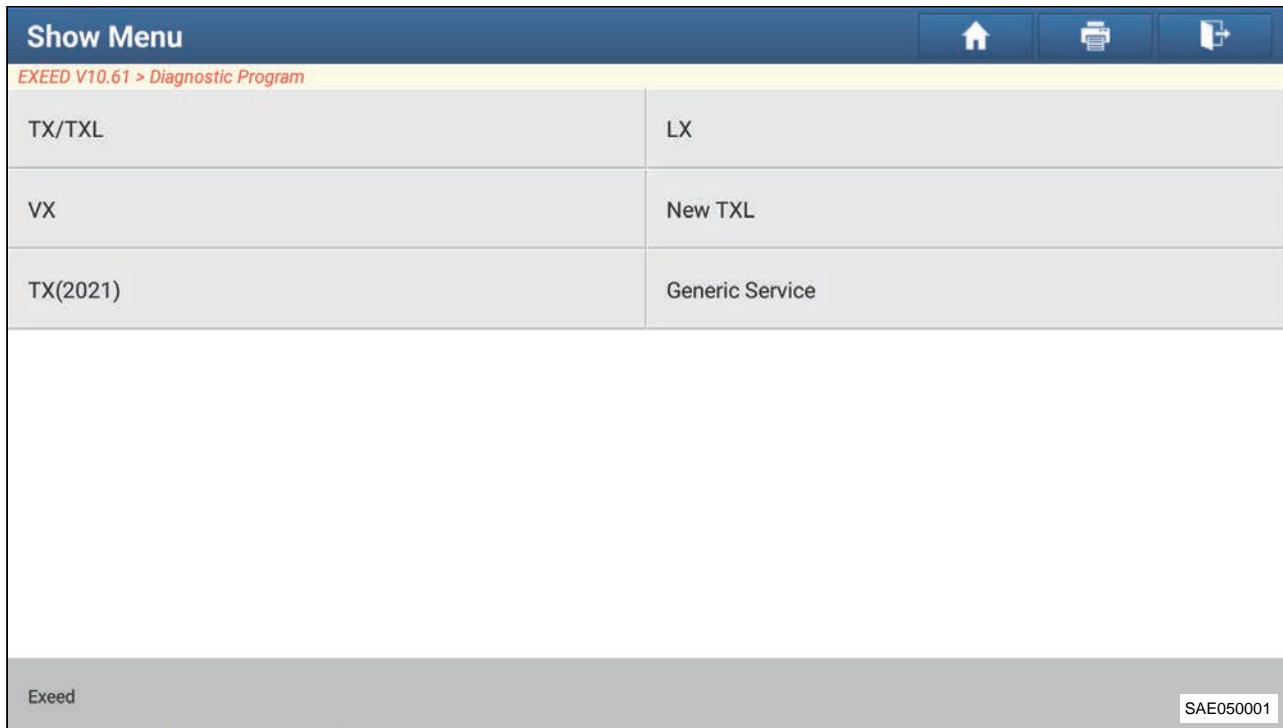
- (1) Connect battery, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON mode.
- (2) Press the brake pedal firmly and keep it for more than 30 seconds until the instrument cluster shows the P gear. At this time, the transmission will complete the self-learning operation.
- (3) If P gear is not displayed, disconnect the negative battery cable, repeat operation steps 1 and 2 until the instrument cluster shows the P gear.

If it still cannot drive normally after carrying out above operations continuously, it is necessary to confirm if the vehicle self-learning meets the following conditions:

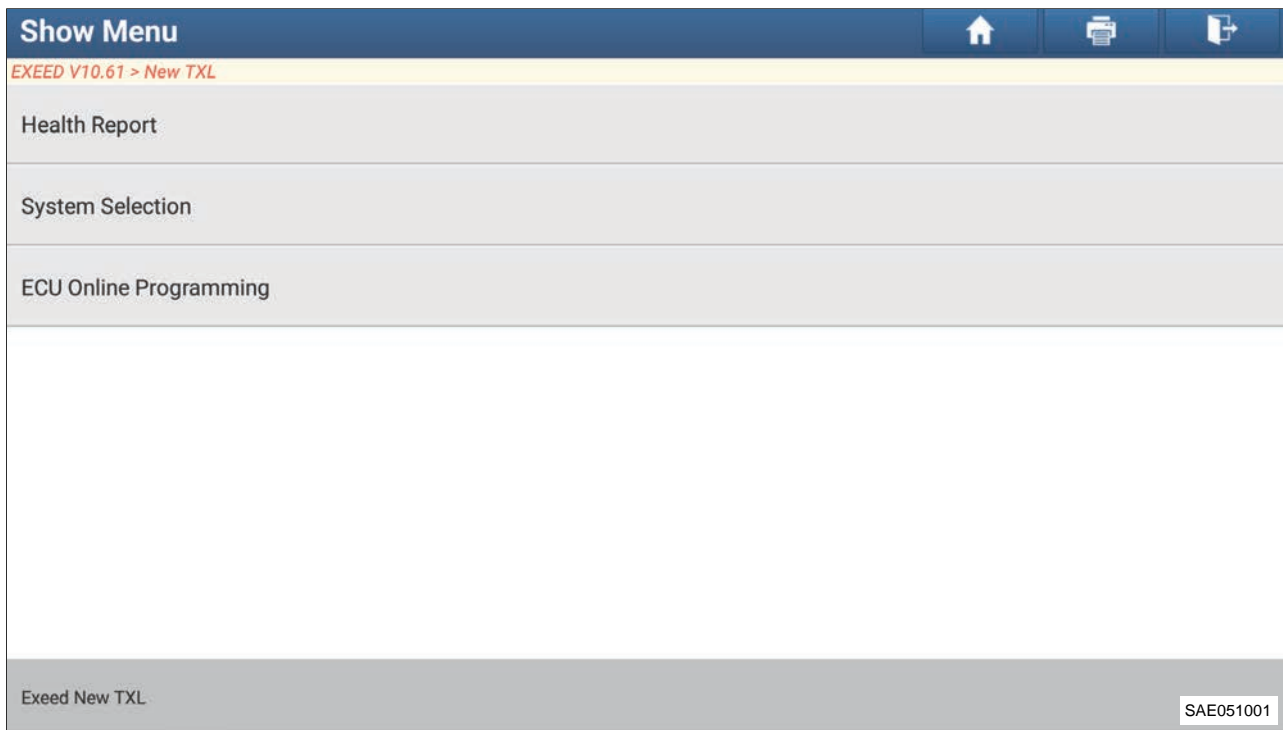
- (1) Battery voltage is higher than 10 V;
- (2) Four wheel speed sensors are normal without any fault;
- (3) Brakes pedal is normal without any fault;
- (4) Transmission power supply is normal, transmission wire harness and sensor and actuator are connected properly.

■ Writing VIN Code

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Select the model "New TXL" .



(3) Enter next interface and click “System Selection” .




(4) Enter next interface and click “TCU (Transmission Control Unit)” .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection	
EMS (Engine Management System)	TCU (Transmission Control Unit)
BCM (Body Control Module)	ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	AIPM (Integrated Panel Module)
CLM (Climate Module)	DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)
AVM (Around View Monitor Module)	PDC (Parking Distance Control)
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
Exeed New TXL	
SAE052001	

(5) Enter next interface and click “Special function” .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > TCU (Transmission Control Unit) > TCU (Transmission Control Module-2.0T)	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Special Function	
Exeed New TXL	
SAE053001	

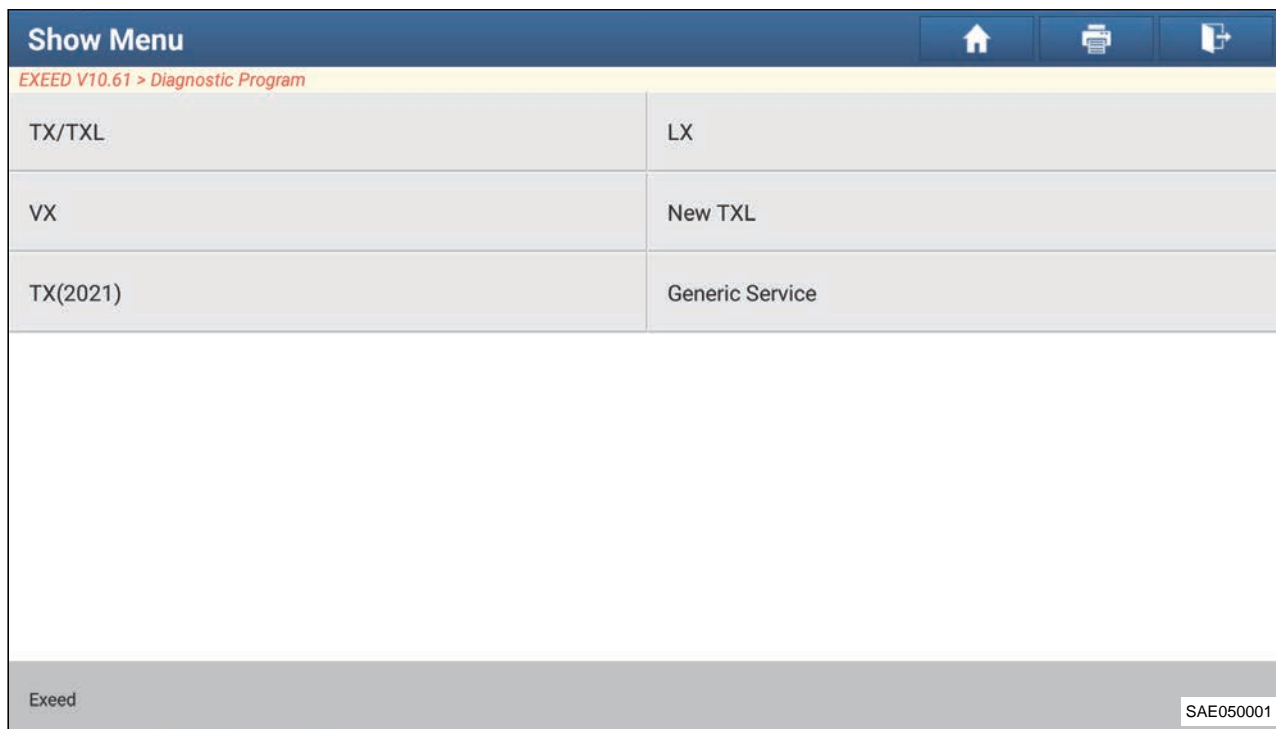
(6) Enter next interface and click “Writing VIN Code” .

Show Menu				
<i>EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > TCU (Transmission Control Unit) > TCU (Transmission Control Module-2.0T)</i>				
VIN Data Write-In	Solenoid Wash			
Fork Position Selflearning	Cluth TouchPoint SelfLearning			
Clutch Perk Curve SelfLearning	Reset EEPROM			
Read SubRom				
Exeed New TXL				
SAE054001				

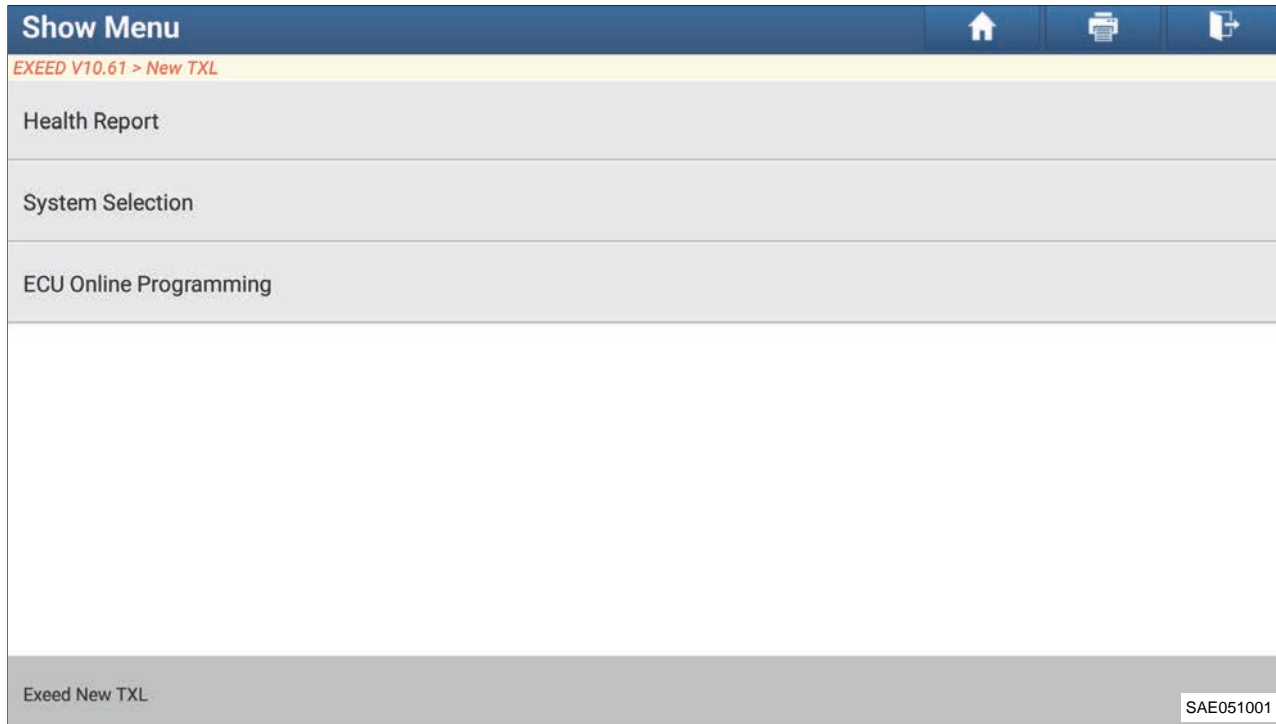
- (7) Note that "TCU (automatic transmission control unit) VIN code can only be written once and cannot be cleared, please operate carefully!" .
- (8) Input 17-digit VIN code.

■ Fork Position Self-learning

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Select the model "New TXL" .



- (3) Enter next interface and click "System Selection" .



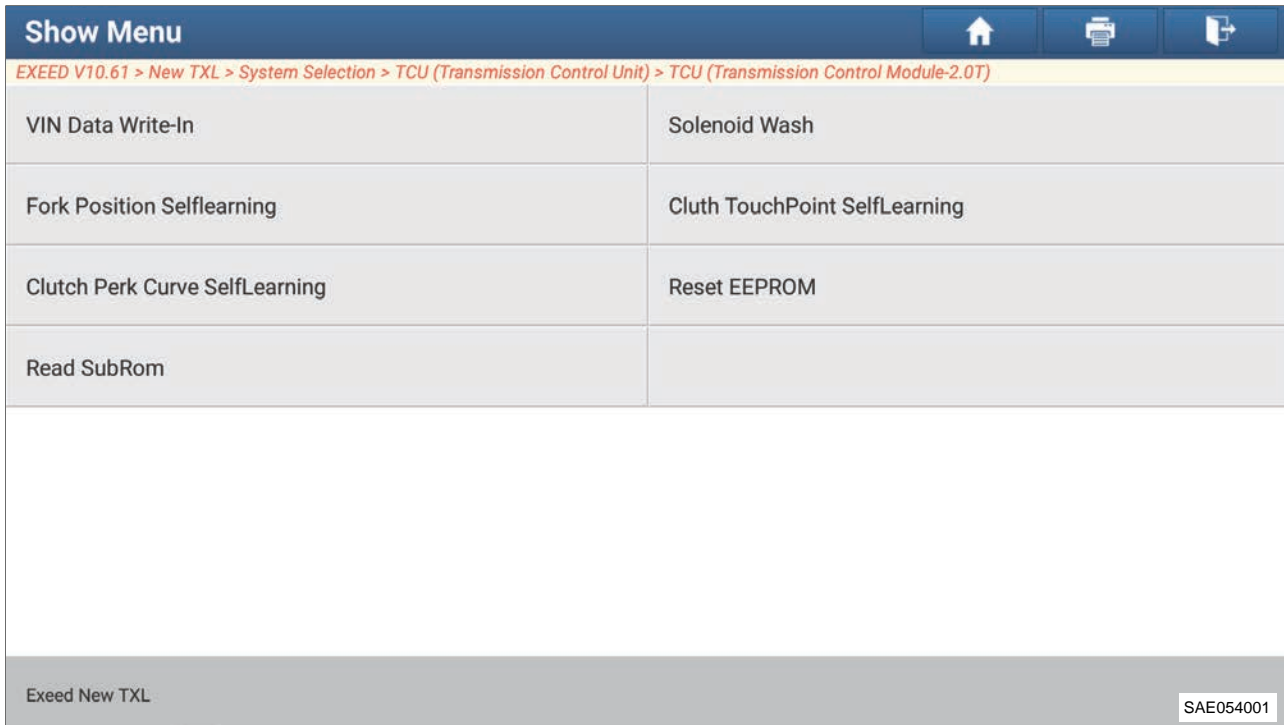
- (4) Enter next interface and click "TCU (Transmission Control Unit)" .

Show Menu	
<i>EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection</i>	
EMS (Engine Management System)	TCU (Transmission Control Unit)
BCM (Body Control Module)	ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	AIPM (Integrated Panel Module)
CLM (Climate Module)	DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)
AVM (Around View Monitor Module)	PDC (Parking Distance Control)
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
Exeed New TXL	
SAE052001	

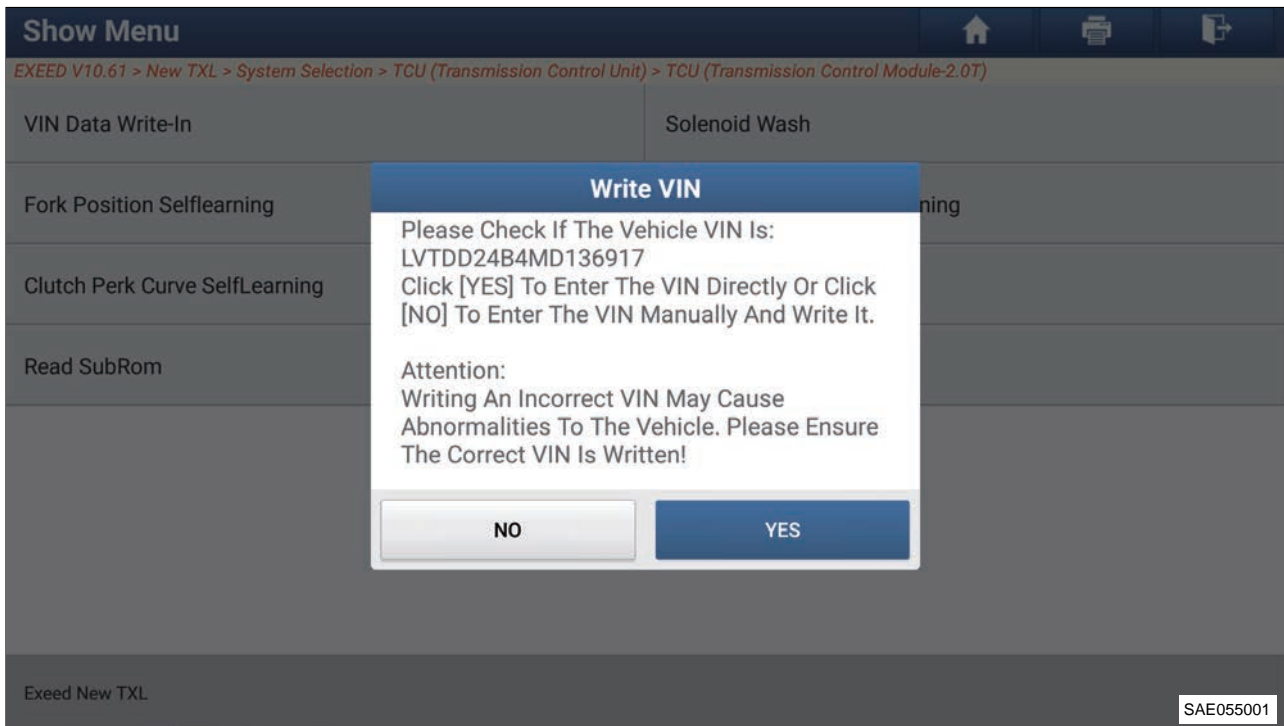
(5) Enter next interface and click “Special function” .

Show Menu	
<i>EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > TCU (Transmission Control Unit) > TCU (Transmission Control Module-2.0T)</i>	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Special Function	
Exeed New TXL	
SAE053001	

(6) Enter next interface and click “Fork Position Self-learning” .



(7) Learning condition.



(8) Click “OK” to perform fork position self-learning.

■ Clutch PC Curve Self-learning

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Select the model "New TXL" .

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Show Menu" with a blue header bar containing navigation icons (home, print, share). Below the header, a yellow bar displays the breadcrumb "EXEED V10.61 > Diagnostic Program". The main content area is a table with three rows:

TX/TXL	LX
VX	New TXL
TX(2021)	Generic Service

The bottom of the interface features a grey footer bar with the text "Exeed" on the left and "SAE050001" on the right.

(3) Enter next interface and click "System Selection" .

The screenshot shows a software interface titled "Show Menu" with a blue header bar containing navigation icons (home, print, share). Below the header, a yellow bar displays the breadcrumb "EXEED V10.61 > New TXL". The main content area is a list of menu items:

- Health Report
- System Selection
- ECU Online Programming

The bottom of the interface features a grey footer bar with the text "Exeed New TXL" on the left and "SAE051001" on the right.

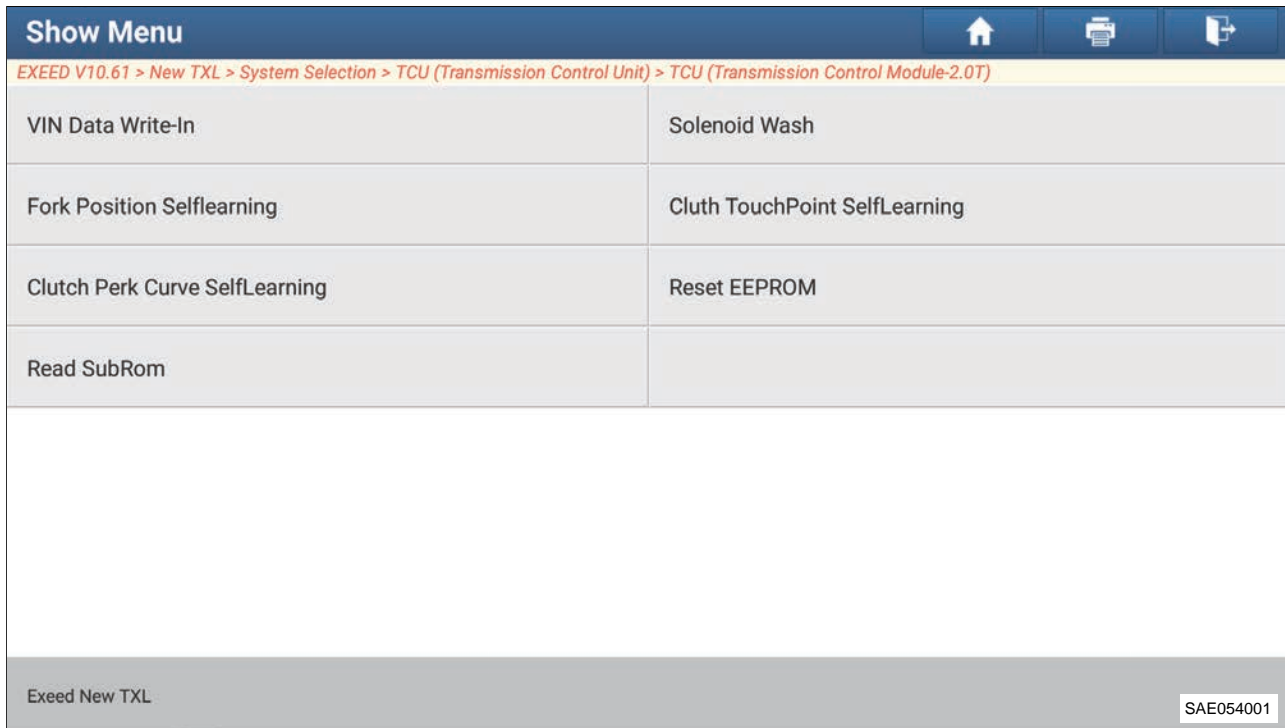
(4) Enter next interface and click "TCU (Transmission Control Unit)" .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection	
EMS (Engine Management System)	TCU (Transmission Control Unit)
BCM (Body Control Module)	ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	AIPM (Integrated Panel Module)
CLM (Climate Module)	DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)
AVM (Around View Monitor Module)	PDC (Parking Distance Control)
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
Exeed New TXL	
SAE052001	

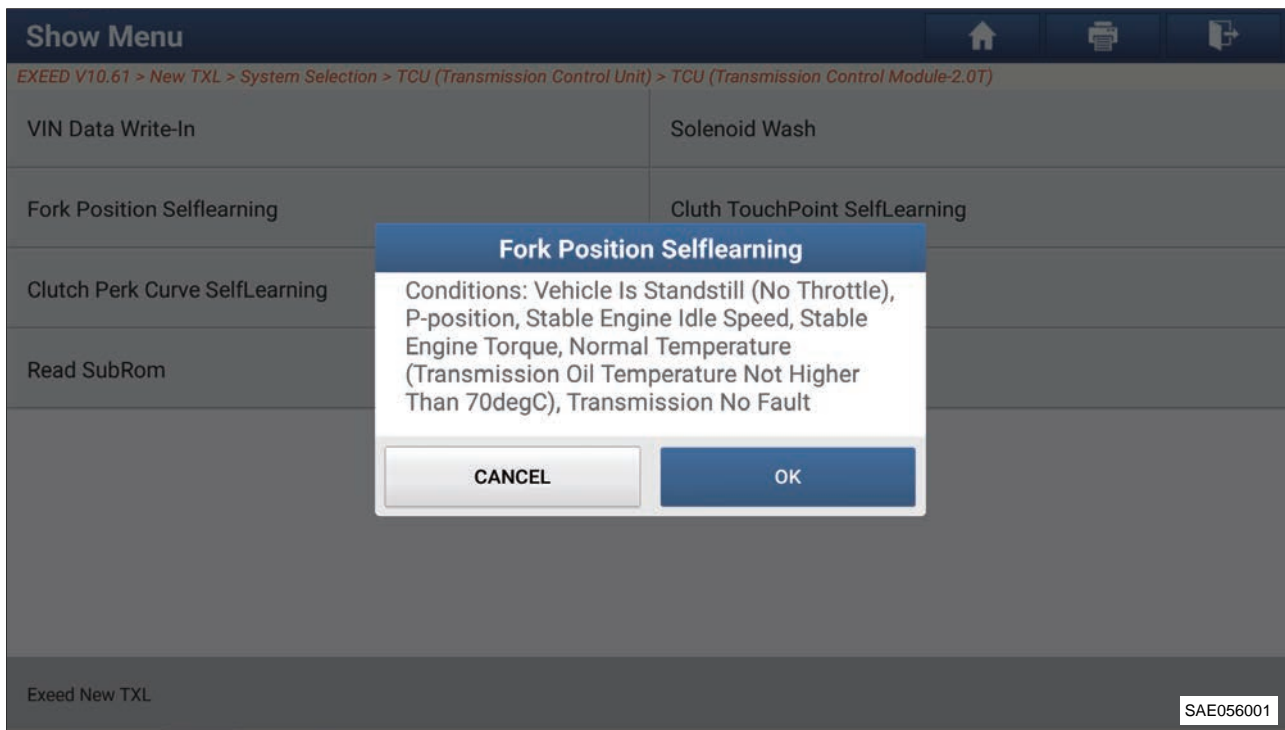
(5) Enter next interface and click “Special function” .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > TCU (Transmission Control Unit) > TCU (Transmission Control Module-2.0T)	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Special Function	
Exeed New TXL	
SAE053001	

(6) Enter next interface and click “Clutch PC Curve Self-learning” .



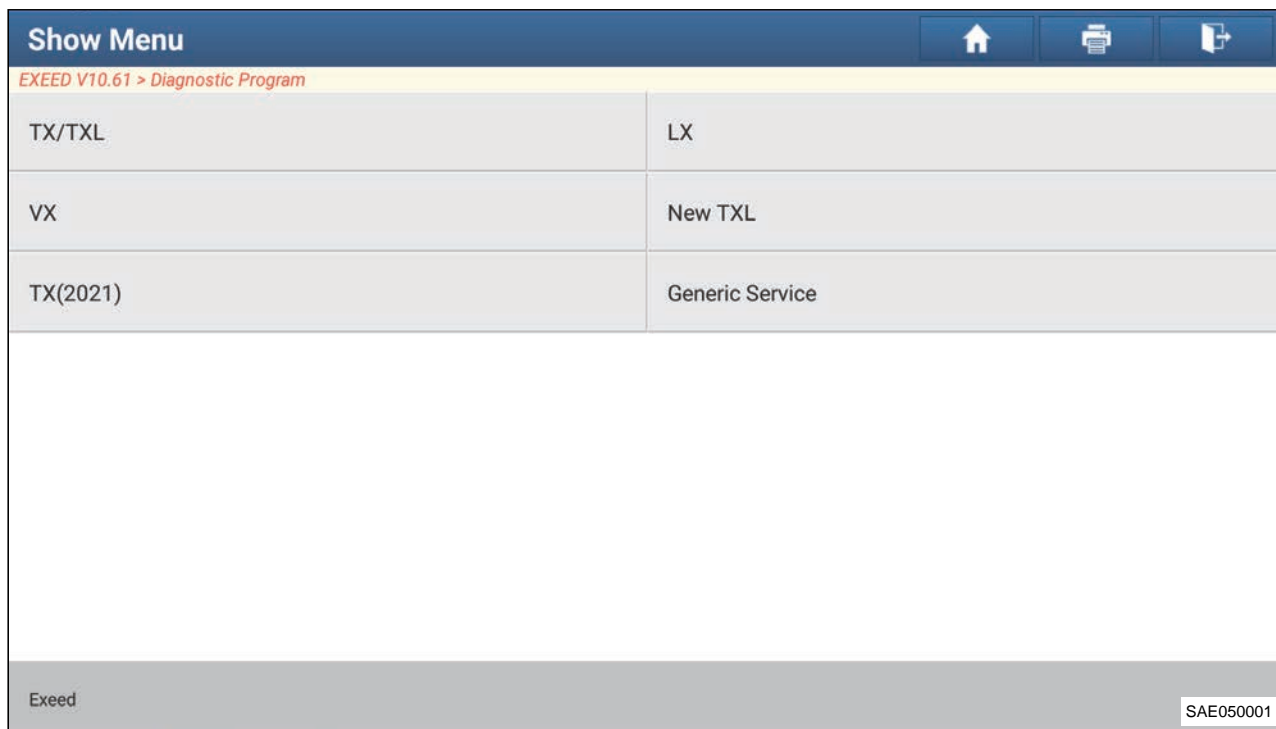
(7) Learning condition.



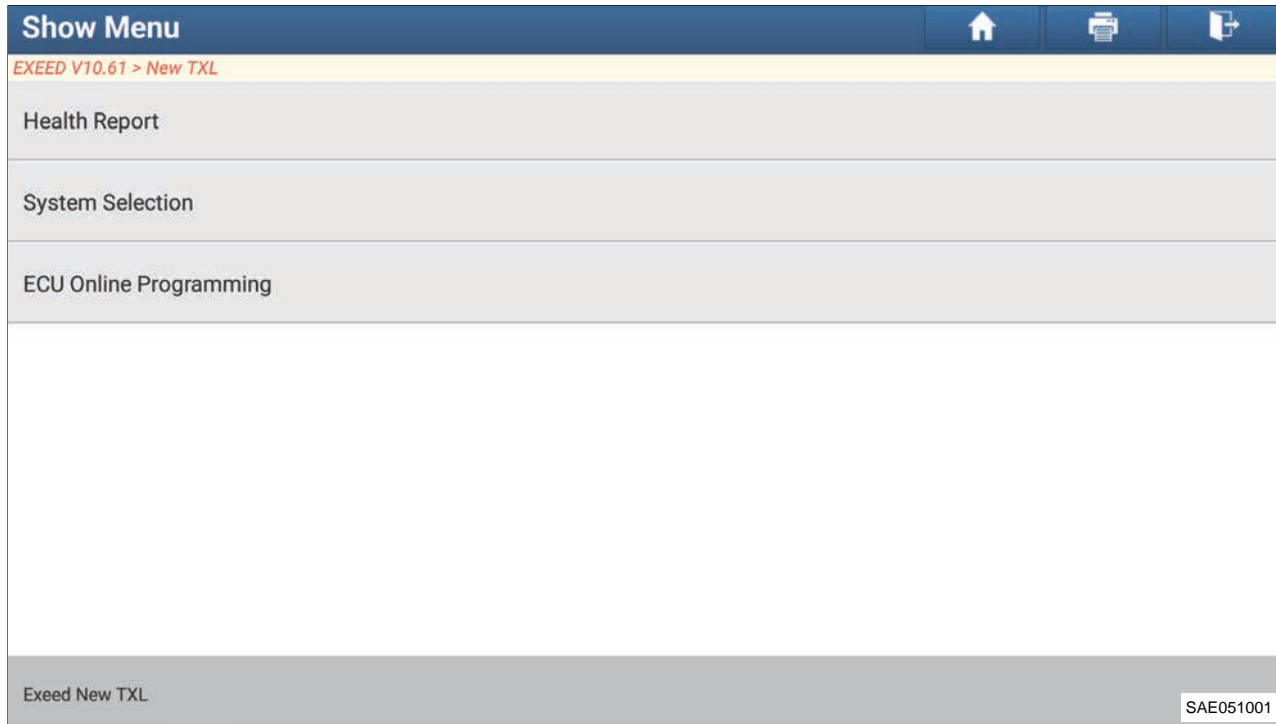
(8) Click "OK" to perform clutch PC curve self-learning.

■ Clutch TP Point Self-learning

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Select the model "New TXL" .



- (3) Enter next interface and click "System Selection" .



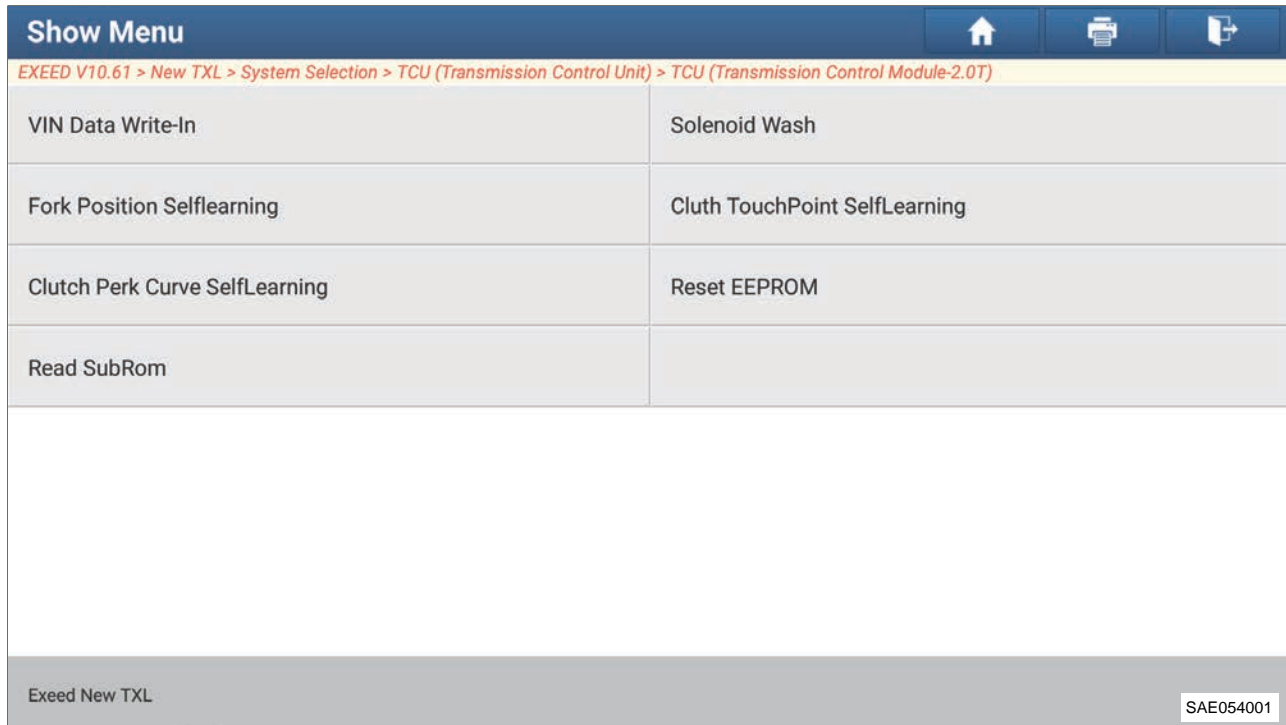
- (4) Enter next interface and click "TCU (Transmission Control Unit)" .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection	
EMS (Engine Management System)	TCU (Transmission Control Unit)
BCM (Body Control Module)	ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	AIPM (Integrated Panel Module)
CLM (Climate Module)	DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)
AVM (Around View Monitor Module)	PDC (Parking Distance Control)
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
Exeed New TXL	
SAE052001	

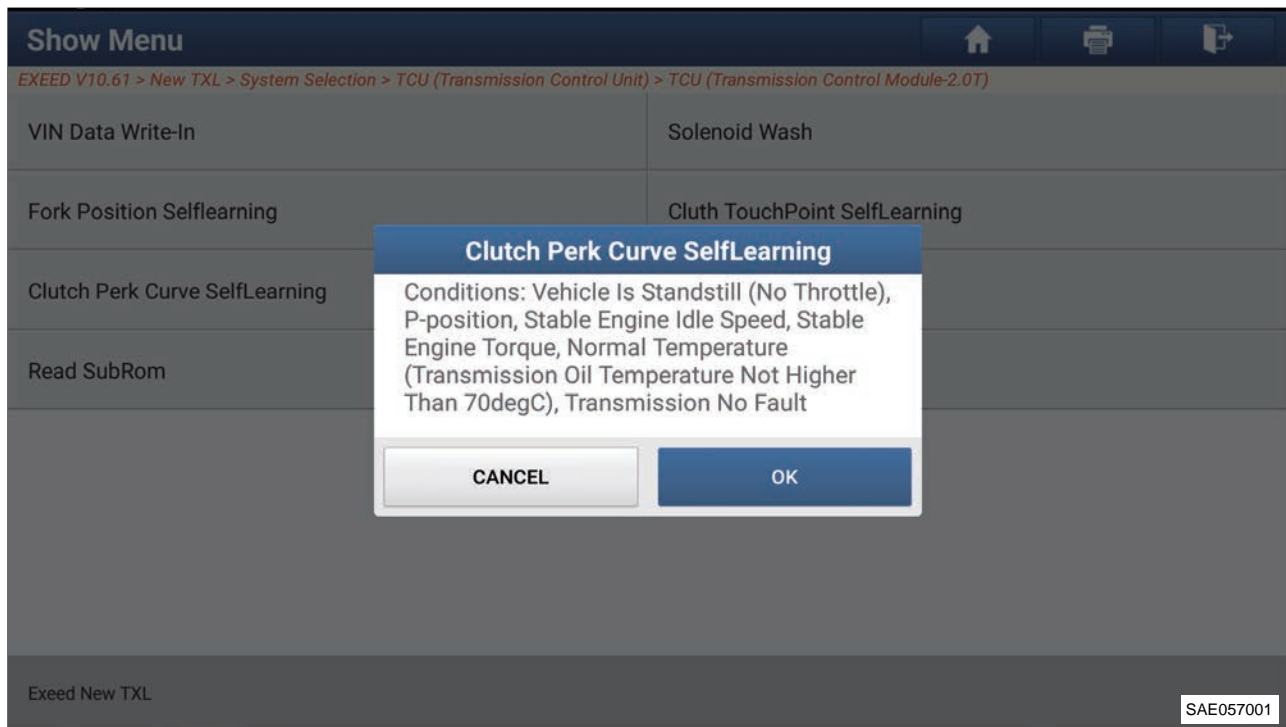
(5) Enter next interface and click “Special function” .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > TCU (Transmission Control Unit) > TCU (Transmission Control Module-2.0T)	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Special Function	
Exeed New TXL	
SAE053001	

(6) Enter next interface and click “Clutch TP Point Self-learning” .



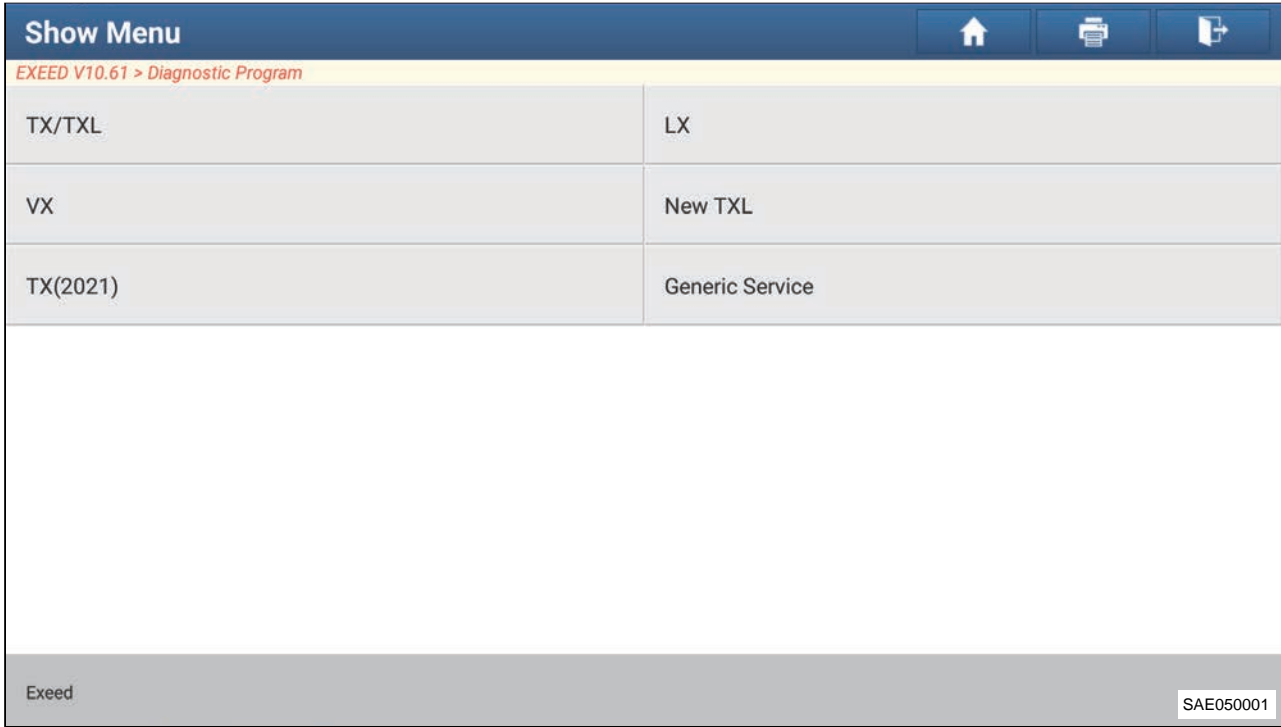
(7) Learning condition.



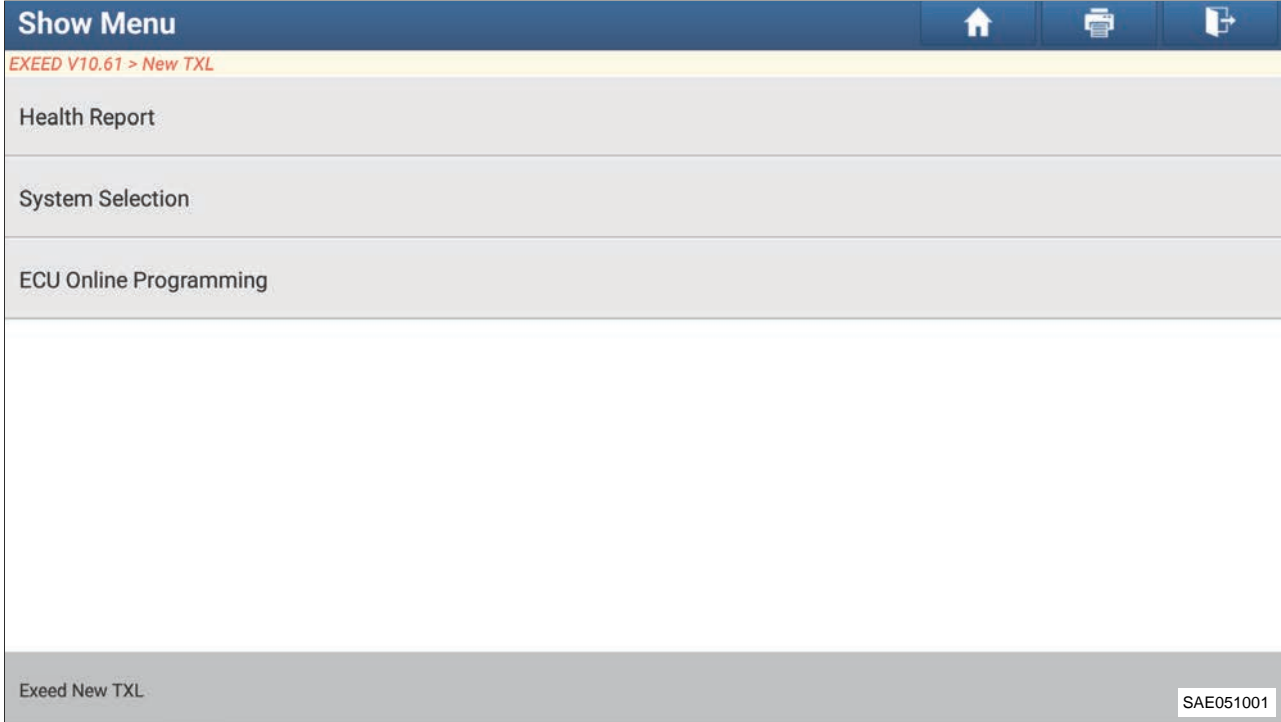
(8) Click “OK” to perform clutch TP point self-learning.

■ Clutch Solenoid Valve Scour

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Select the model "New TXL" .



- (3) Enter next interface and click "System Selection" .



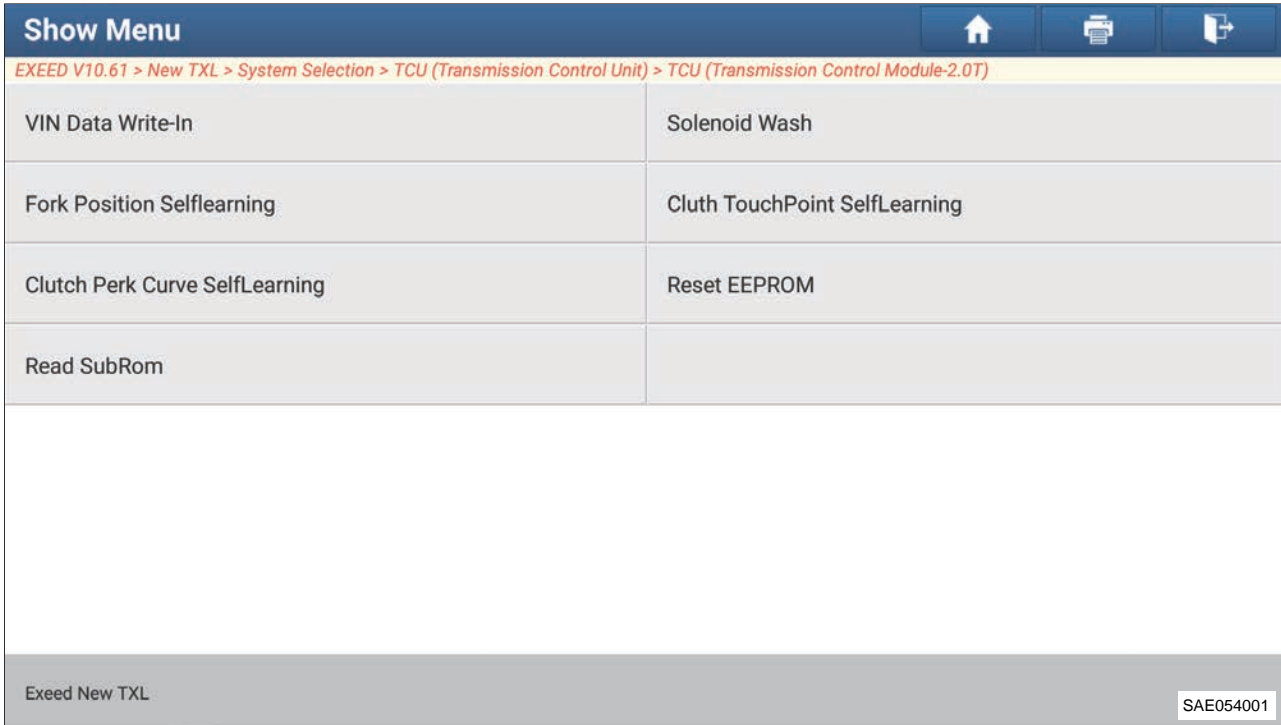
- (4) Enter next interface and click "TCU (Transmission Control Unit)" .

Show Menu	
<i>EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection</i>	
EMS (Engine Management System)	TCU (Transmission Control Unit)
BCM (Body Control Module)	ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	AIPM (Integrated Panel Module)
CLM (Climate Module)	DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)
AVM (Around View Monitor Module)	PDC (Parking Distance Control)
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
Exeed New TXL	
SAE052001	

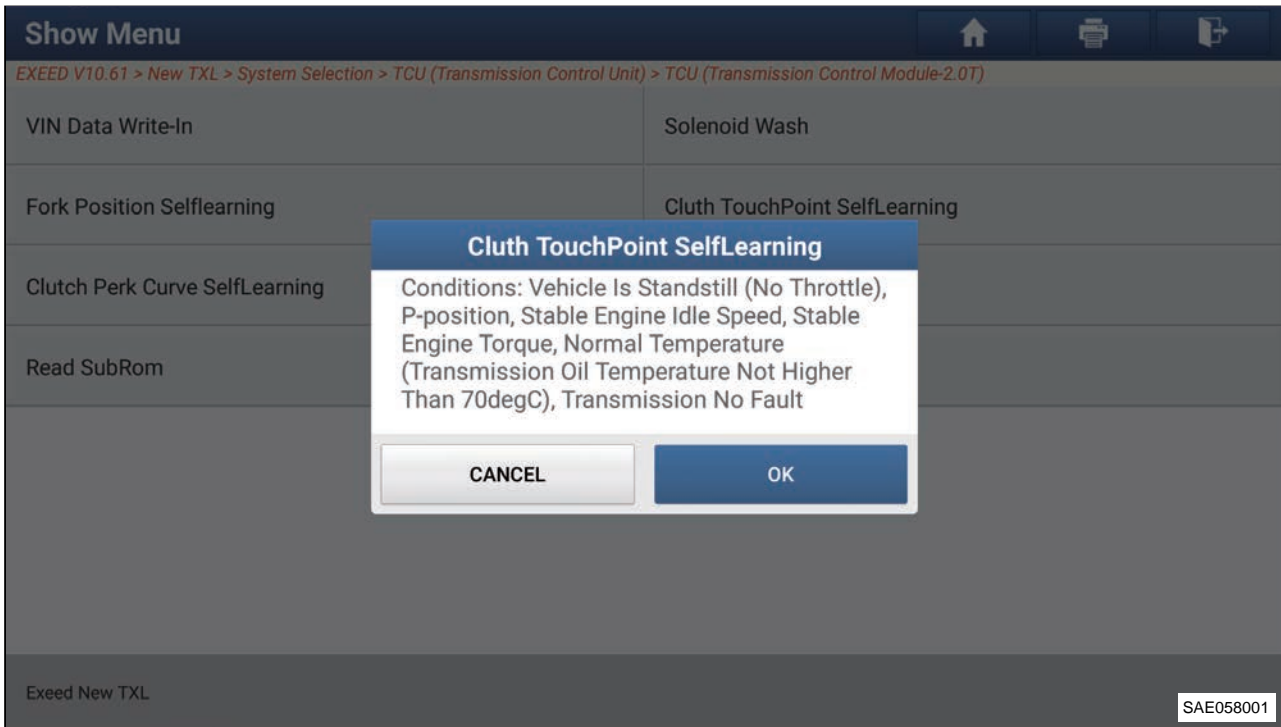
(5) Enter next interface and click “Special function” .

Show Menu	
<i>EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > TCU (Transmission Control Unit) > TCU (Transmission Control Module-2.0T)</i>	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Special Function	
Exeed New TXL	
SAE053001	

(6) Enter next interface and click “Clutch Solenoid Valve Scour” .



(7) Learning condition.



(8) Click “OK” and perform clutch solenoid valve scour.

TRANSMISSION

14.1	TRANSMISSION ASSEMBLY	716
1	Warnings and Precautions	716
1.1	Warning.....	716
1.2	Precautions	716
2	System Overview	716
2.1	System Description	716
2.2	System Component Diagram	717
2.3	Parameters.....	720
2.4	Specifications	720
2.5	Repairable List.....	721
3	On-vehicle Service	721
3.1	Tools	721
3.2	Replacement of Transmission Oil.....	723
3.3	Transmission Assembly.....	724
3.4	Replacement of Transmission Breather Cap	731
3.5	Replacement of Transmission Wire Harness Assembly	732
3.6	Replacement of Shift Motor.....	732
3.7	Replacement of Cooling Motor.....	734
3.8	Replacement of Temperature Sensor	735
3.9	Replacement of Pressure Sensor.....	735
3.10	Replacement of Input Speed Sensor 1	736
3.11	Replacement of Input Speed Sensor 2	737
3.12	Replacement of Drive Shaft Oil Seal.....	738
3.13	Replacement of Coolant Connecting Pipe Assembly (Inlet and Outlet Pipes)	740
3.14	Replacement of Clutch Motor 1	741
3.15	Replacement of Clutch Motor 2	743
3.16	Replacement of Clutch	744
3.17	Replacement of Clutch Actuator Pump 1.....	751
3.18	Replacement of Clutch Actuator Pump 2.....	752
3.19	Replacement of Clutch Cooling Pump.....	754

14.1 TRANSMISSION ASSEMBLY

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Warning

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when removing and repairing.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied when removing transmission. Be careful not to operate roughly.

1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, always follow the instructions below before repair.

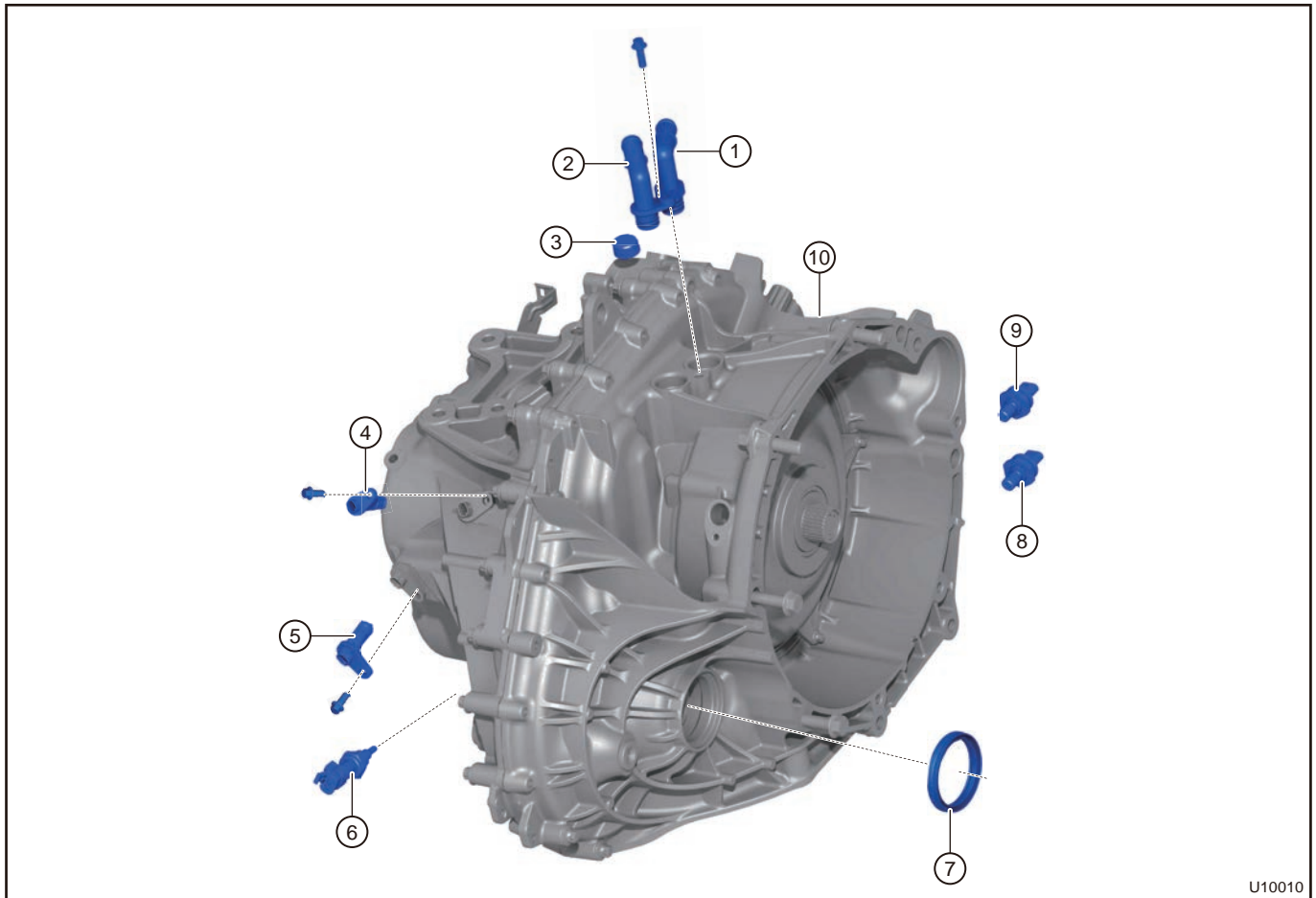
- (1) Drain bolt and oil inspection bolt are both non-reusable parts, and replace them with new ones after removal.
- (2) Transmission oil FFL-7A has a service life of 60000 km.
- (3) The vehicle must be kept level during refilling.
- (4) To avoid oil contamination, the container used to store transmission oil must be a special container for FFL-7A oil (the container must not be used to store other liquids or items), and the container must be kept clean.
- (5) In case of oil spillage, the transmission oil needs to be added depends on the actual situation, but it must be ensured that the filled oil can make the position of oil in transmission higher than that of oil inspection bolt before adjusting oil level.
- (6) Transmission oil FFL-7A should be stored under $20^{\circ}\text{C} \pm 10^{\circ}\text{C}$.
- (7) The oil is a part of 7DCT300 transmission system. It must be sent back to manufacturer together with transmission for further analysis if required.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

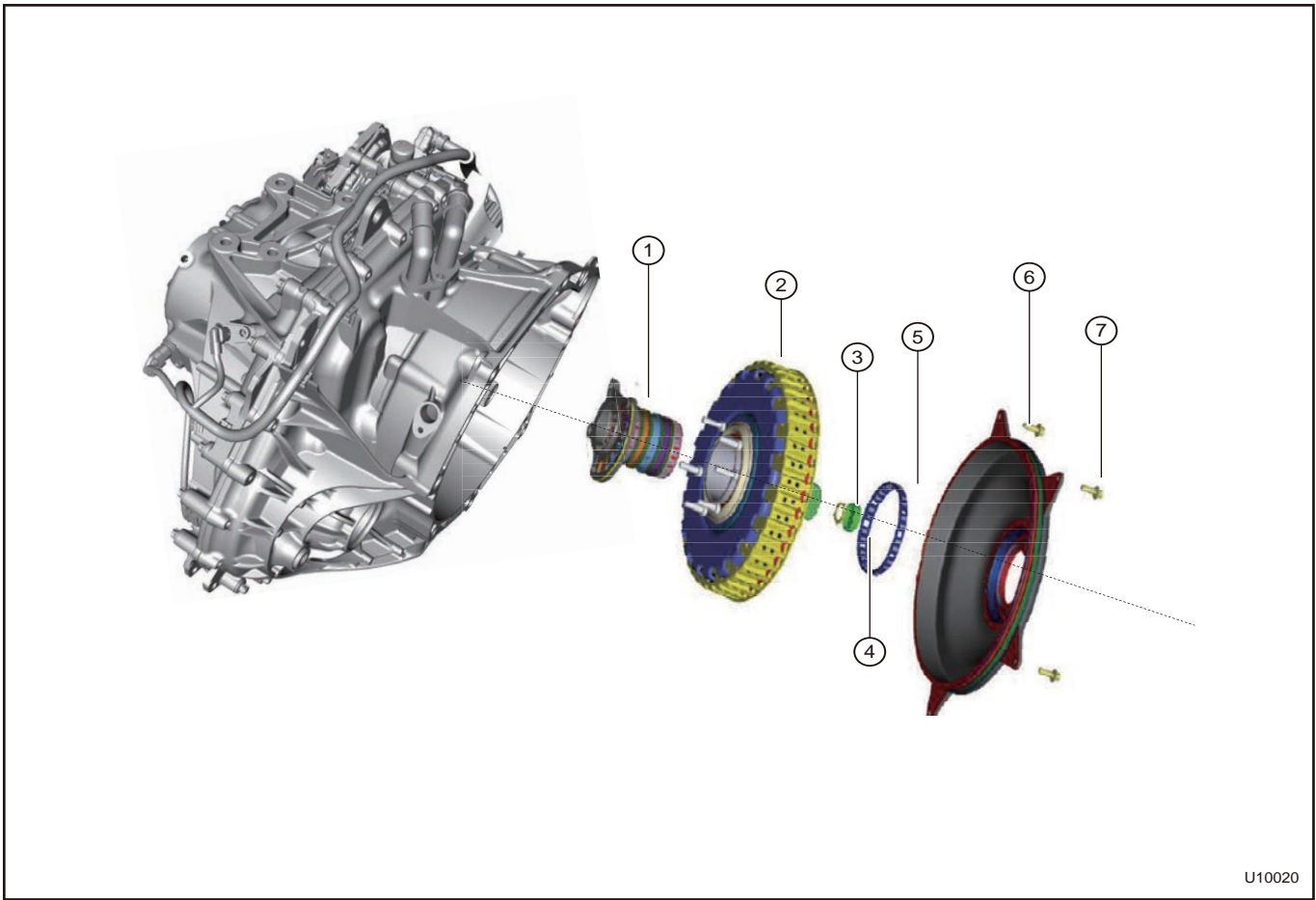
The automatic transmission system is composed of transmission control module, shift motor, electronic shift lever and shift paddle etc. Electronic shift lever and transmission are not connected in a traditional mechanical way, but a safer and faster electronic control mode, eliminating the traditional mechanical shift mode, and all using electronic signals for substitution. Its advantage is that the driver's wrong shift operation will be judged by the computer to see if it will cause damage to the transmission, so as to better protect the transmission and correct the bad shift habits. However, if there is a fault or short circuit, the electronic shifting mechanism will be unable to release the current gear, we can only rely on the trailer and rescue.

2.2 System Component Diagram



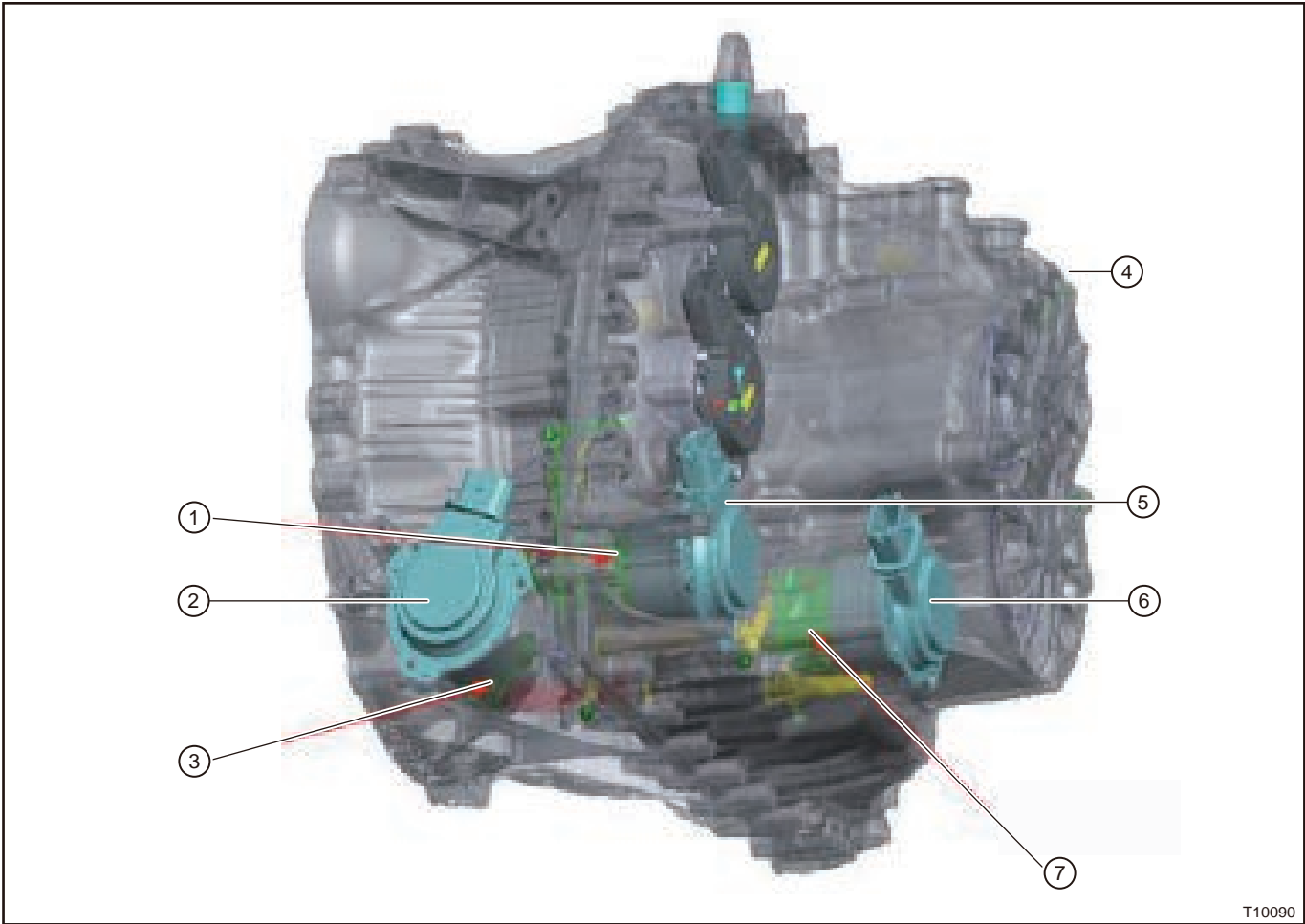
U10010

1	Transmission Outlet Pipe Joint	6	Temperature Sensor
2	Transmission Inlet Pipe Joint	7	Drive Shaft Oil Seal
3	Transmission Breather Cap	8	Pressure Sensor 1
4	Input Shaft Speed Sensor 1	9	Pressure Sensor 2
5	Input Shaft Speed Sensor 2	10	Transmission Assembly



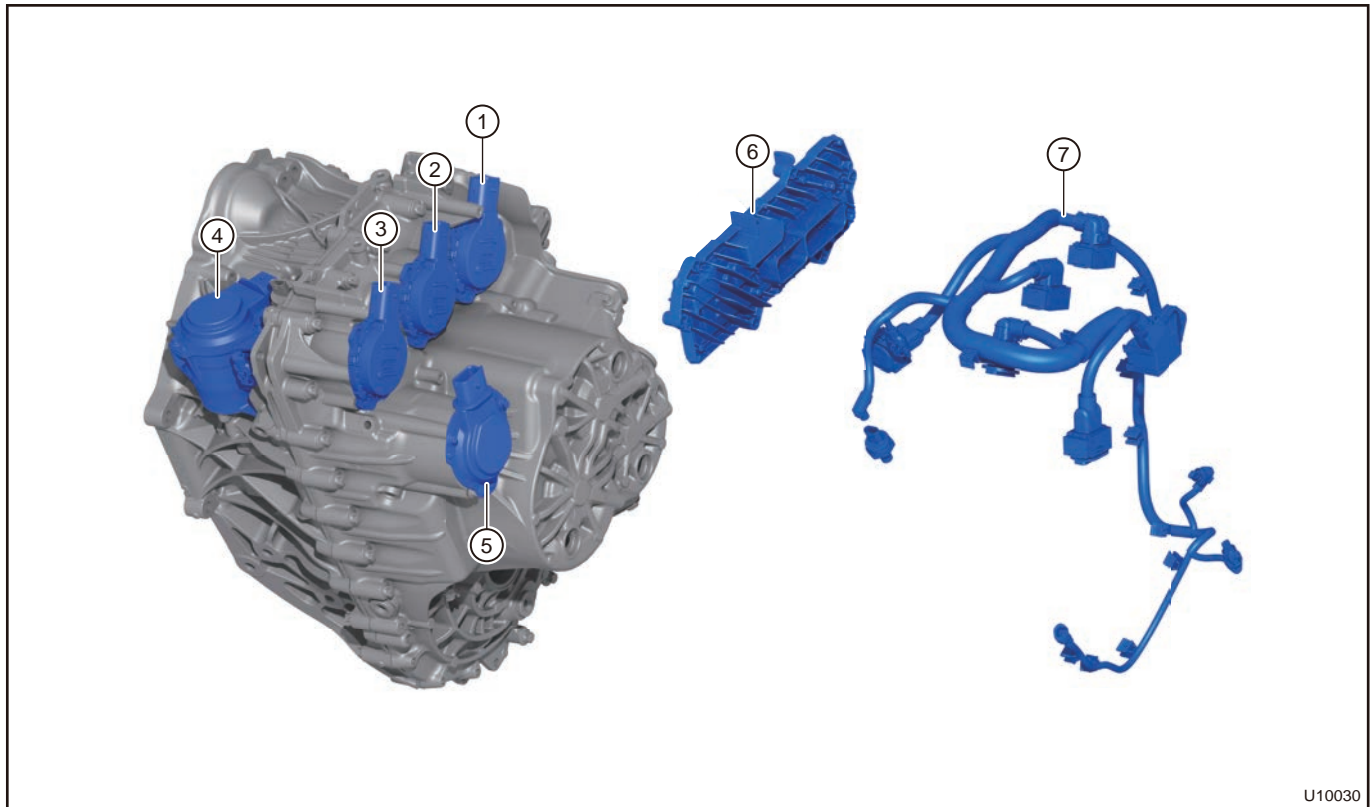
U10020

1	Clutch Support Set	5	Clutch Cover Cylindrical Roller Bearing
2	Wet Dual Clutch Assembly	6	Clutch Cover O-ring
3	Clutch Snap Ring	7	Clutch Cover Assembly
4	Seal Cover		



T10090

1	Clutch Actuator Pump 2 (CAP2)	5	Clutch Motor 2
2	Clutch Motor 1	6	Clutch Cooling Motor
3	Clutch Actuator Pump 1 (CAP1)	7	Clutch Cooling Pump (CCP)
4	Transmission Assembly		



U10030

1	Shift Motor 2	5	Cooling Motor
2	Shift Motor 1	6	Transmission Control Module
3	Clutch Motor 2	7	Transmission Wire Harness
4	Clutch Motor 1		

2.3 Parameters

Type		730DHB	730DHC
Gear Position	1st	4.462	
	2nd	2.824	
	3rd	1.594	
	4th	1.114	
	5th	0.851	
	6th	0.771	
	7th	0.638	
	Reverse	3.869	
	Final Drive Ratio 1	3.789	
	Final Drive Ratio 2	4.235	

2.4 Specifications

Torque specifications

Description	Torque (N·m)
Transmission Drain Plug	39 - 47
Fixing Screw Between Shift Paddle and Steering Wheel	0.8 ± 0.25
Transmission Control Unit Fixing Bolt	8.5 - 9.5
Fixing Bolt Between Upper of Transmission and Engine	95 ± 5
Fixing Bolt Between Lower of Transmission and Engine	50 ± 5
Fixing Bolt Between Transfer Case and Transmission	120 ± 10

2.5 Repairable List

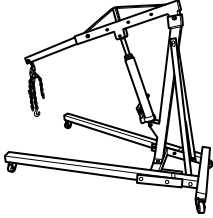
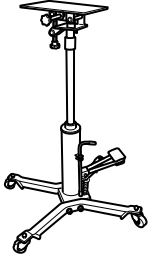
Transmission Control Unit	Transmission control unit fixing bolt is a non-reusable part, which must be replaced after each removal
Drive Shaft Oil Seal	Drive shaft oil seal is a non-reusable part, which must be replaced after each removal
Transmission Oil	Drain bolt and filler bolt are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal
Shift Motor	O-ring and shift motor are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal
Sensors (Pressure Sensor 1, Pressure Sensor 2, Temperature Sensor, Input Speed Sensor 1 and Input Speed Sensor 2)	Sensor and its bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal
Wire harness	If wire harness clip, wire harness connector and wire harness itself are not damaged, the wire harness can be reused
Differential Inner Oil Seal	Differential inner oil seal is a non-reusable part, which must be replaced after each removal

3 On-vehicle Service




3.1 Tools

General Tool

14 - TRANSMISSION

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Engine Hoist	-	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0043006</p>
Transmission Carrier	-	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0005006</p>

Special Tools

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Differential Oil Seal Assembly Fixture	EPT-0013	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0083006</p>
4WD Clutch Case Side Outer Oil Seal Assembly Fixture	EPT-0014	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0084006</p>
4WD Clutch Case Inner Oil Seal Assembly Fixture	EPT-0015	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0085006</p>

3.2 Replacement of Transmission Oil

■ Draining/Refilling

⚠ Warning

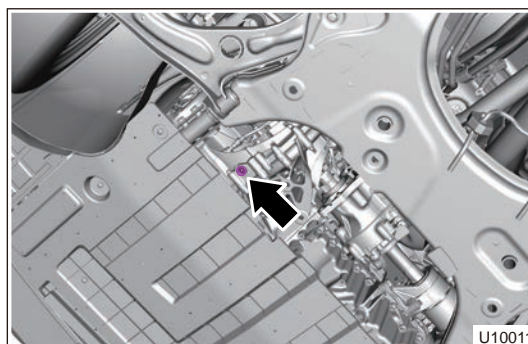
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.
- Check if safety lock of lift is locked when repairing or inspecting the lifted vehicle.

(1) The oil draining will begin within 5 minutes after the engine is shut down.

⚠ Caution

- Transmission oil temperature 20 - 50 °C formula can be put oil, to prevent burns.

- (2) Raise vehicle with a lift.
 (3) Remove the transmission drain plug.



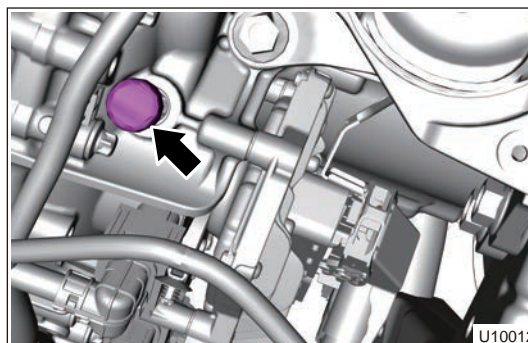
⚠ Caution

- Drain plug and bolt washer are non-reusable components, and replace them after removal.

- (4) Drain the transmission oil.
 (5) Replace drain bolt with a new one and tighten it again.

Tightening torque: 39 - 47 N·m

- (6) Remove the air filter assembly.
 (7) Remove the battery tray assembly.
 (8) Pull out transmission breather cap and fill new transmission oil FFL - 7A from breather plug guide.



- (9) After waiting for 30 minutes, unscrew oil inspection bolt near differential on clutch case side and adjust oil level until no oil is spilled from oil inspection port.
 (10) Replace oil inspection bolts with new ones.

Tightening torque: 39 - 47 N·m

⚠ Caution

- Drain bolt and oil inspection bolt are both non-reusable parts, and replace them with new ones after removal.
- Transmission oil FFL-7A has a service life of 60000 km.
- The vehicle must be kept level during refilling.
- To avoid oil contamination, the container used to store transmission oil must be a special container for FFL-7A oil (the container must not be used to store other liquids or items), and the container must be kept clean.
- In case of oil spillage, the transmission oil needs to be added depends on the actual situation, but it must be ensured that the filled oil can make the position of oil in transmission higher than that of oil inspection bolt before adjusting oil level.
- Transmission oil FFL-7A should be stored under 20 °C ± 10 °C.
- The oil, a part of 7DCT300 transmission system, must be sent back to manufacturer together with transmission for further analysis if required.

Transmission oil capacity and type are shown in the table below

Type	Oil Type	Total Capacity (After-sales Maintenance Oil Capacity)
730 DHB	PentosinFFL - 7A	4.25 ± 0.2 L

3.3 Transmission Assembly

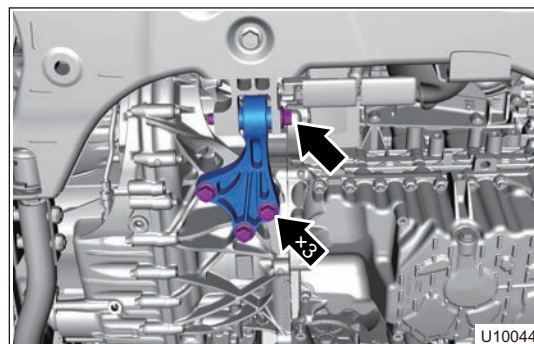
■ Removal

⚠ Caution

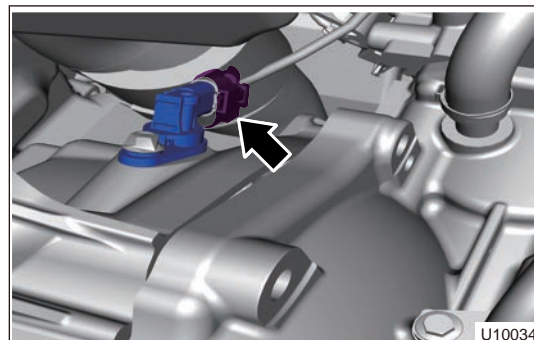
- Before removal of power assembly, first drain transmission oil.
- During separation of engine and transmission, pay attention not to damage the peripheral accessories of transmission, such as cooling hose, pressure sensor, etc. If there is any damage, it is necessary to replace it according to requirements.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the right engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (5) Remove the engine trim cover assembly.
- (6) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (7) Drain the coolant.
- (8) Drain the transmission oil.
- (9) Remove the battery.
- (10) Remove the battery tray.
- (11) Remove the front left wheel.
- (12) Remove the front right wheel.
- (13) Remove the front left drive shaft assembly.
- (14) Remove the front right drive shaft with bearing bracket assembly.
- (15) Remove the front sub frame welding assembly.

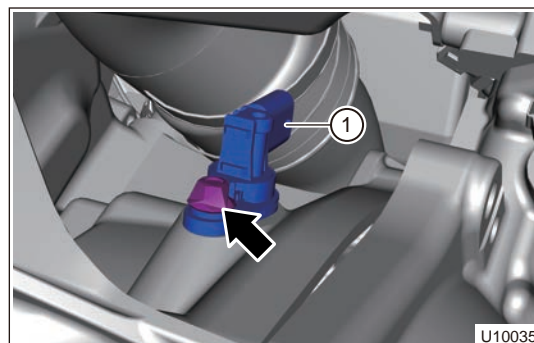
(16) Remove 4 fixing bolts from rear mounting upper body.



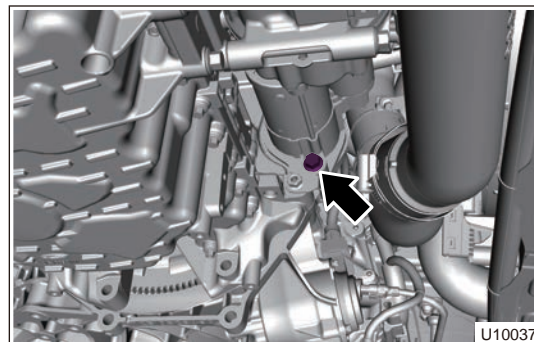
(17) Disconnect the engine speed sensor wire harness connector.



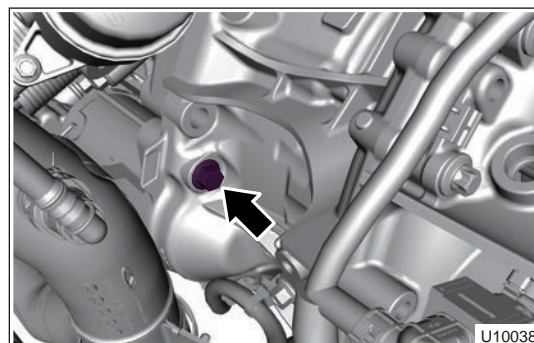
(18) Remove 1 fixing bolt from engine speed sensor, and remove the engine speed sensor 1.



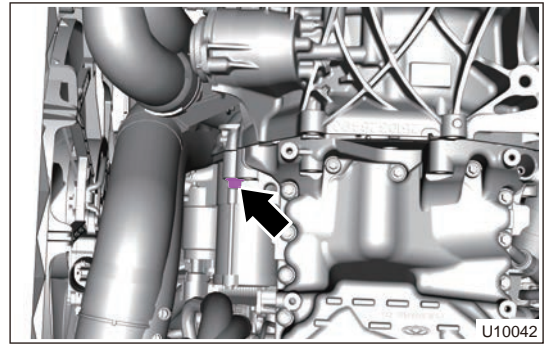
(19) Remove 1 fixing bolt from starter.



(20) Remove 1 fixing bolt from starter.

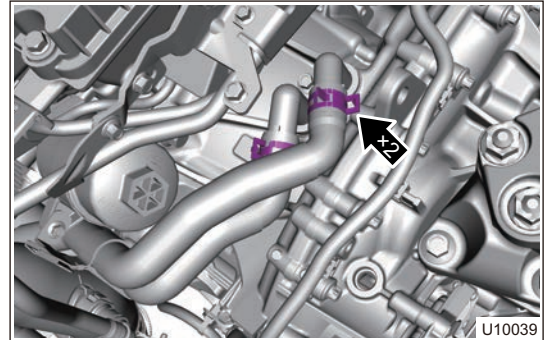


(21) Remove the transmission ground wire fixing bolt.

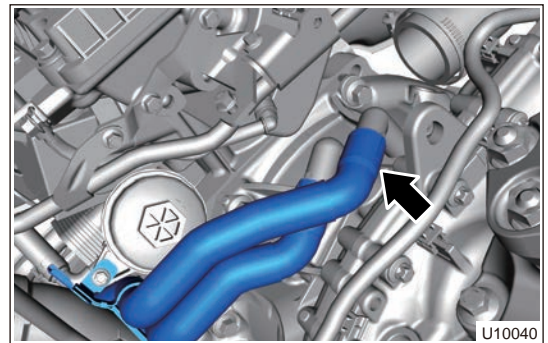


(22) Remove the intercooler inlet pipe assembly II .

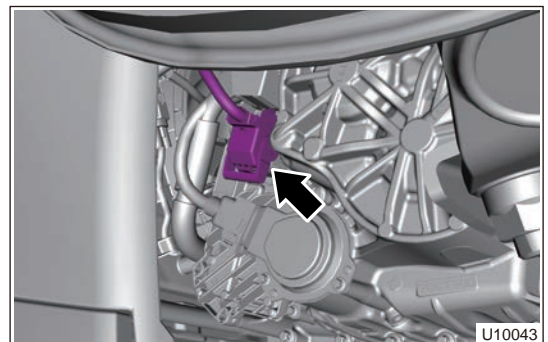
(23) Remove clamps from engine inlet pipe.



(24) Disengage the engine inlet pipe.



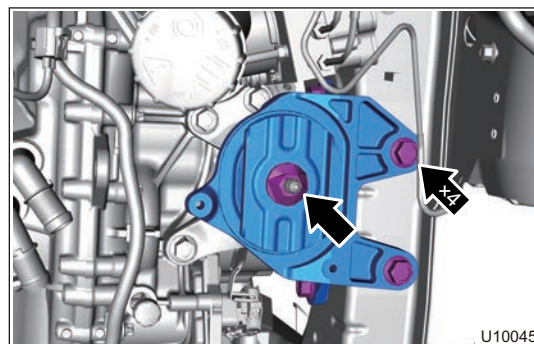
(25) Disconnect the transmission control unit connector.



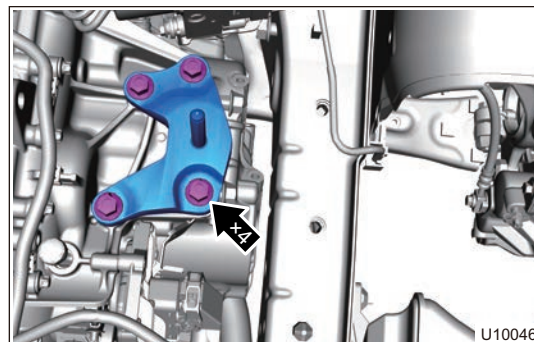
(26) Install the engine hoist.

(27) Install the transmission carrier.

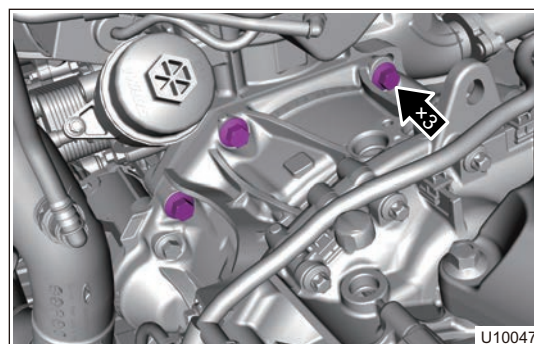
(28) Remove 1 fixing nut from left mounting cushion assembly.



(29) Remove 4 fixing bolts from left mounting bracket.



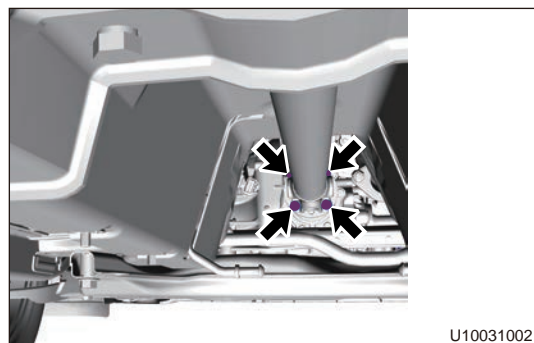
(30) Remove 3 fixing bolts between upper part of transmission and engine.



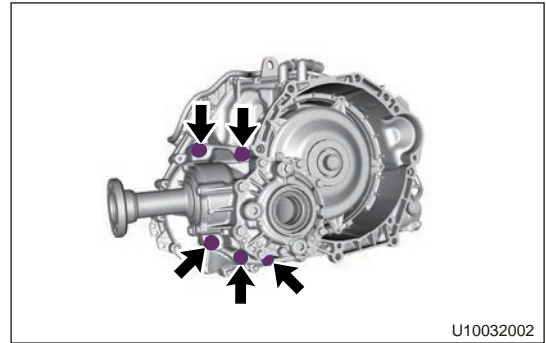
(31) Remove the pre-catalytic converter assembly (4WD).

(32) Remove the transfer assembly (4WD).

- 1) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between propeller shaft and PTU output flange surface.



- 2) Remove 5 fixing bolts (arrow) between transfer and transmission.

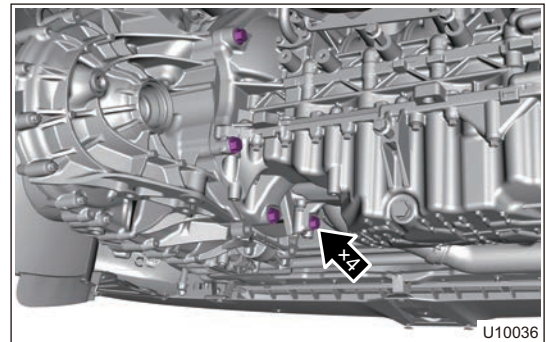


- 3) Remove the transfer assembly.

⚠ Warning

- **When handling the transfer, please pay attention to the flange surface connected with intermediate shaft and spline connected with transmission differential. Please pay attention to whether O-ring is intact and whether the oil seal is intact to avoid touching the lip of oil seal. Please handle the transfer case with care during whole operation, and do not move the transfer case upside down.**

- (33) Remove 4 fixing bolts between lower part of transmission and engine.



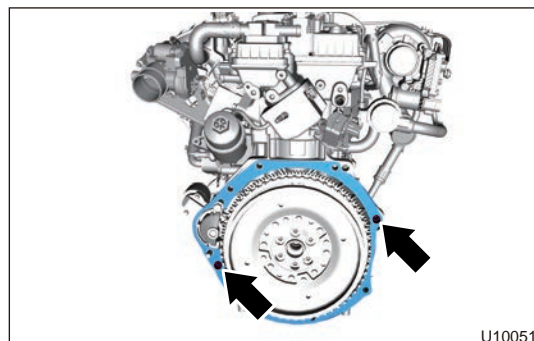
- (34) Use tool to separate transmission and engine assembly, and remove transmission assembly.

■ Installation

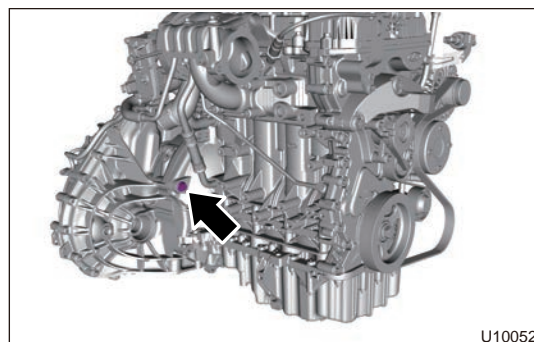
⚠ Caution

- **Before assembly, the engine cannot be missed to install or sealing plate cannot be bent.**
- **When assembling transmission and engine, the joint surfaces between transmission and engine must be fully contacted before installing coupling bolts between transmission and engine, and then tighten them diagonally and alternately, otherwise it is easy to loose thread of bolt hole on the transmission clutch case.**
- **Teeth-to-teeth (dual clutch spline teeth and dual mass flywheel spline teeth) will occur when transmission and engine are assembled. It can not install assembling bolts or manually press to assemble forcibly. The transmission must be completely disengaged and re-assembled, otherwise it will easily cause the clutch adjusting spring position to deviate, clutch half-clutch point value does not match the joint point value stored in the transmission control unit, and also, vehicle is moved when shifting to driving position, vehicle does not move when depressing accelerator pedal, vehicle jitter will occur when reversing or engine stall will occur when releasing brake pedal in reverse gear.**

- (1) As shown in the illustration below, install sealing plate to engine and ensure that dowel pin holes on engine are inserted into the corresponding holes of the sealing plate.



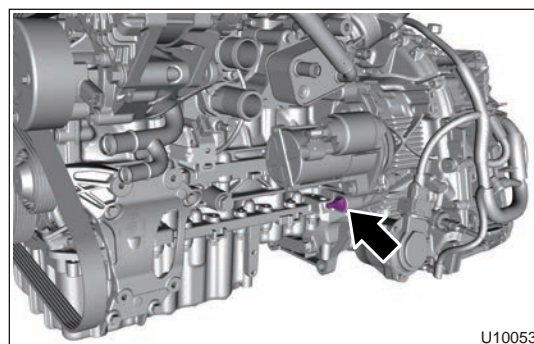
U10051



U10052

- (2) Align the dowel pin hole of transmission with the dowel pin hole of engine, push the transmission so that the joint surfaces between engine and transmission can be contacted well, and install 2 coupling bolts to engine side as shown in the illustration.

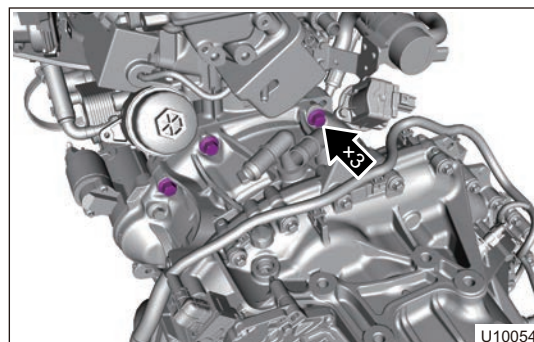
Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m



U10053

- (3) Install 3 coupling bolts to transmission side.

Tightening torque: 95 ± 5 N·m



U10054

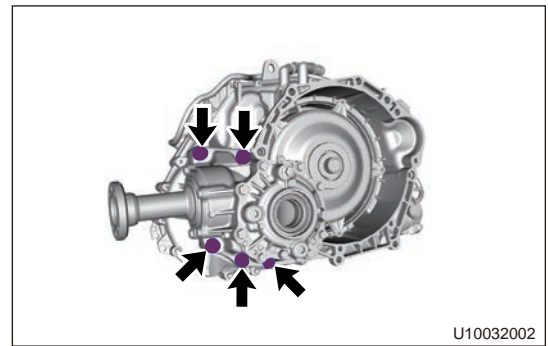
- (4) Install the transfer assembly (4WD).

⚠ Warning

- Install transfer spline to differential by turning it left and right, and align the transfer case dowel pin with positioning hole of differential case simultaneously.
- When installing 5 tightening bolts between transfer and transmission, follow the order of up, down, left and right and tighten diagonally.

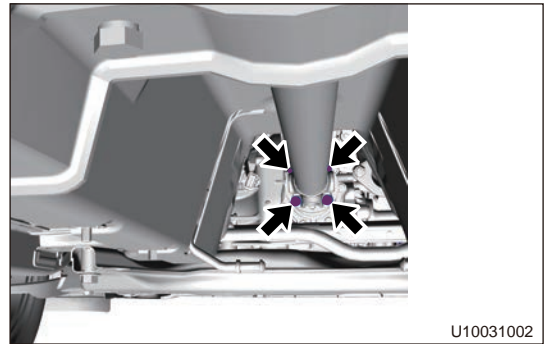
- 1) Install 5 fixing bolts between transfer and transmission.

Tightening torque: 120 ± 10 N·m



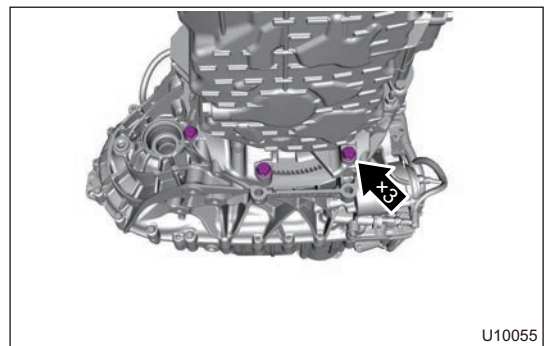
- 2) Install 4 fixing bolts between propeller shaft and PTU output flange.

Tightening torque: 33 ± 3 N·m



- (5) Install the precatalytic converter assembly (4WD).
- (6) Install 3 coupling bolts to lower part of transmission.

Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m



- (7) Install 4 fixing bolts to left mounting bracket.
Tightening torque: 110 ± 15 N·m
- (8) Install 1 fixing nut to left mounting cushion assembly.
Tightening torque: 110 ± 15 N·m
- (9) Install 4 fixing bolts to left mounting bracket.
Tightening torque: 110 ± 15 N·m
- (10) Connect the transmission control unit connector.
- (11) Install 2 fixing bolts to bracket.
Tightening torque: 9 ± 1 N·m
- Tightening torque: 5 ± 1 N·m**
- (12) Install the engine inlet pipe.
- (13) Install clamps to engine inlet pipe.
- (14) Install the intercooler inlet pipe assembly II.
- (15) Install the transmission ground wire fixing bolt.
- (16) Install 1 fixing bolt to starter.
- (17) Install 1 fixing bolt to starter.
- (18) Install engine speed sensor and 1 fixing bolt.
- (19) Connect the engine speed sensor wire harness connector.
- (20) Install 4 fixing bolts to rear mounting upper body.
- (21) Install the front sub frame welding assembly.
- (22) Install the front right drive shaft with bearing bracket assembly.
- (23) Install the front left drive shaft assembly.
- (24) Install the front right wheel.
- (25) Install the front left wheel.
- (26) Fill the transmission oil.
- (27) Install the battery tray.
- (28) Install the battery.
- (29) Install the air filter assembly.
- (30) Add the coolant.
- (31) Install the engine trim cover assembly.
- (32) Install the left and right engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (33) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.4 Replacement of Transmission Breather Cap

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched during removal.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the transmission breather cap.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install breather cap to a proper position on transmission.
- (2) Install the air filter assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

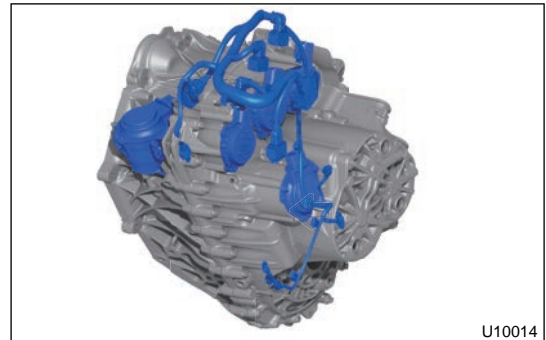
3.5 Replacement of Transmission Wire Harness Assembly

■ **Removal**

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the battery.
- (5) Remove the battery tray.
- (6) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (7) Disconnect each connector and clip from transmission wire harness, and remove transmission wire harness assembly.



U10014

⚠ Caution

- **When removing the clip, be careful not to use too much force to cause the clip to be deformed and not to be tightened.**

■ **Installation**

⚠ Caution

- **If wire harness clip, wire harness connector and wire harness itself are not damaged, the wire harness can be reused.**

- (1) Connect each connector and clip to transmission wire harness, and install transmission wire harness assembly.
- (2) Install the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (3) Install the battery tray.
- (4) Install the battery.
- (5) Install the air filter assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

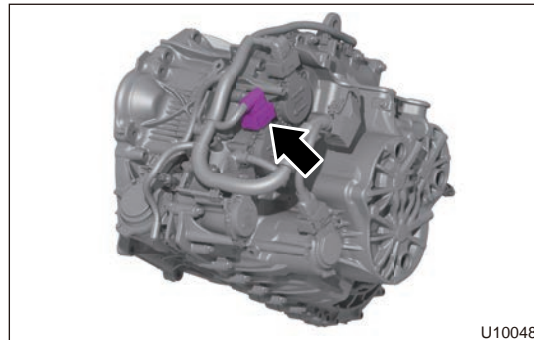
3.6 Replacement of Shift Motor

■ **Removal**

⚠ Warning

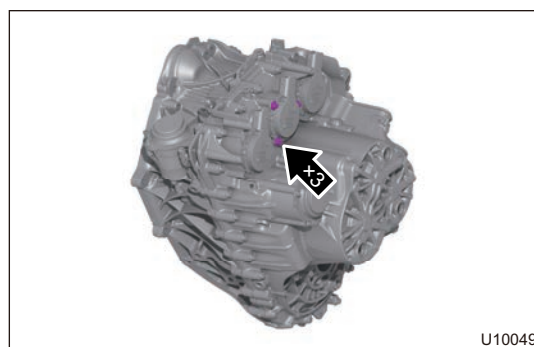
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement of shift motor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Drain the transmission oil.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the transmission control unit.
- (5) Disconnect the shift motor wire harness connector.



U10048

- (6) Remove 3 fixing screws from shift motor.



U10049

- (7) Remove the shift motor.

■ Installation

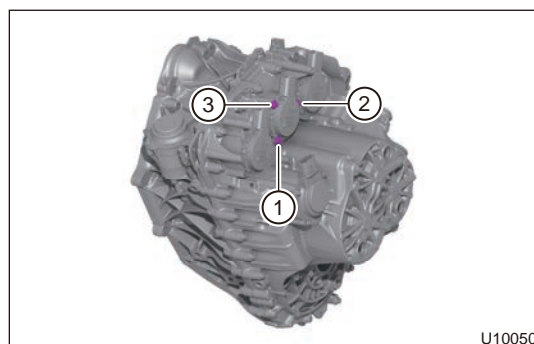
⚠ Caution

- O-ring and shift motor bolts are both non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.
- It is necessary to remove TCU before shift motor is replaced (drain bolt, oil inspection bolt and TCU bolt must be replaced after removal).

- (1) Install O-ring into grooves of shift motor housing.
- (2) Install shift motor to a proper position on transmission. Shift motor needs to be installed from transmission case side. When installing, it is necessary to ensure that motor spline shaft is inserted vertically into gear.
- (3) Tighten 3 bolts on shift motor in sequence ①②③ as shown in the illustration below.

First torque: 1.5 - 2 N·m

Second torque: 5 - 6 N·m



U10050

- (4) Connect the shift motor wire harness connector.
- (5) Install the transmission control unit.
- (6) Install the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (7) Fill the transmission oil.

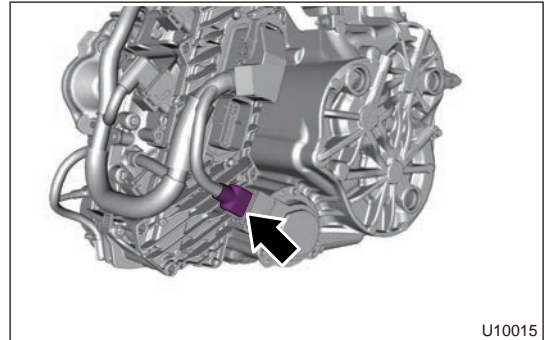
3.7 Replacement of Cooling Motor

■ Removal

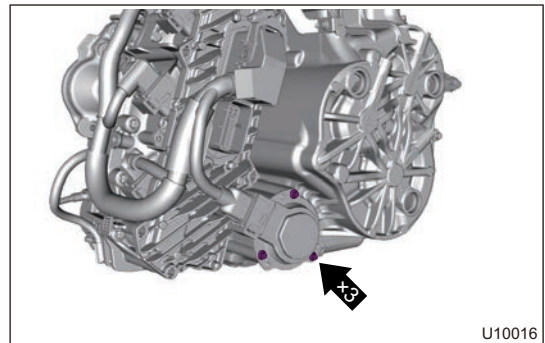
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement of cooling motor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Drain the transmission oil.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the cooling motor wire harness connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing screws from cooling motor.



- (6) Remove the cooling motor.

■ Installation

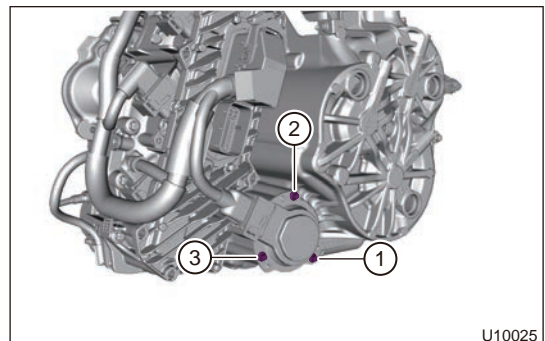
⚠ Caution

- **O-ring and cooling motor bolts are both non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.**

- (1) Install O-ring into grooves of cooling motor housing.
- (2) Install cooling motor to a proper position on transmission. Cooling motor needs to be installed from transmission case side. When installing, it is necessary to ensure that motor spline shaft is inserted vertically into gear.
- (3) Tighten 3 bolts on shift motor in sequence ①②③ as shown in the illustration below.

First torque: 1.5 - 2 N·m

Second torque: 5 - 6 N·m



- (4) Connect the cooling motor wire harness connector.
- (5) Install the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (6) Fill the transmission oil.

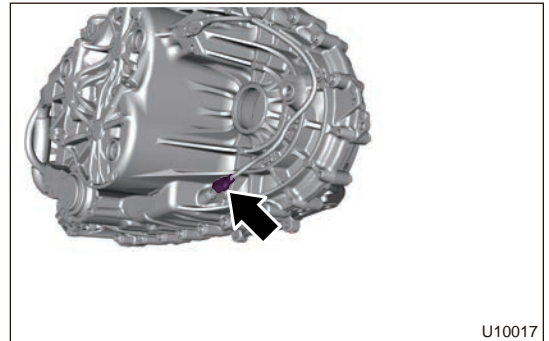
3.8 Replacement of Temperature Sensor

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement of sensor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Drain the transmission oil.
- (4) Disconnect the temperature sensor connector.



U10017

- (5) Remove temperature sensor from housing with a torque wrench.

■ Installation

Caution

- **Sensor and its bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.**
- **Drain the transmission oil and remove wire harness before replacing the sensor (drain bolt and oil inspection bolt must be replaced).**

- (1) Install temperature sensor to a proper position on transmission.

Tightening torque: 14.5 - 16 N·m

- (2) Connect the temperature sensor connector.
- (3) Add the specified transmission oil.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.9 Replacement of Pressure Sensor

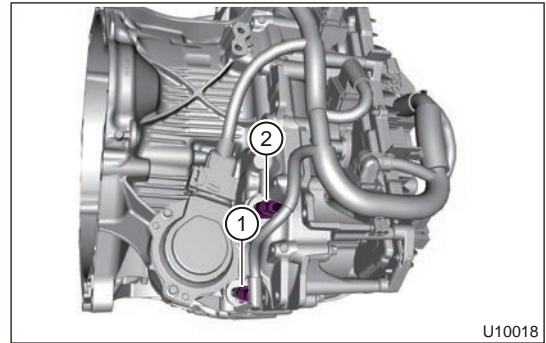
■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement of sensor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- (4) Drain the transmission oil.

- (5) Disconnect the pressure sensor connector.



- (6) Remove pressure sensor 1 and pressure sensor 2 from housing with a torque wrench.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Sensor and its bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.**
- **Drain the transmission oil and remove wire harness before replacing the sensor (drain bolt and oil inspection bolt must be replaced).**

- (1) Install pressure sensor to a proper position on transmission.

Tightening torque: 20 - 24 N·m

- (2) Connect the pressure sensor connector.
 (3) Add the specified transmission oil.
 (4) Install the engine compartment lower protector assembly.
 (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

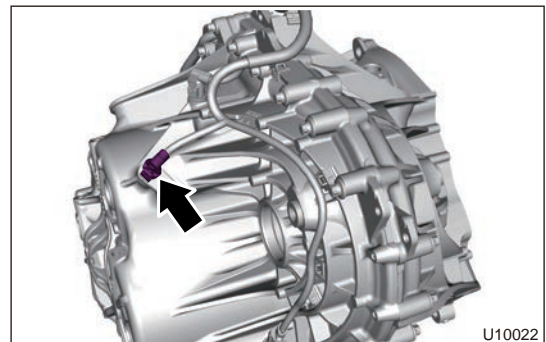
3.10 Replacement of Input Speed Sensor 1

■ Removal

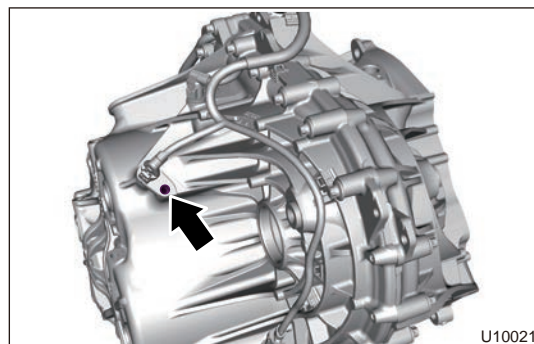
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement of sensor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
 (4) Remove the battery.
 (5) Remove the battery tray.
 (6) Drain the transmission oil.
 (7) Disconnect the input speed sensor 1 connector.



- (8) Remove fixing bolt from input speed sensor 1.



- (9) Remove the input speed sensor 1.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Sensor and its bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.**
- **Drain the transmission oil and remove wire harness before replacing the sensor (drain bolt and oil inspection bolt must be replaced).**

- (1) Install input speed sensor 1 to a proper position on transmission.
- (2) Install fixing bolt to input speed sensor 1.

Tightening torque: 9 - 11 N·m

- (3) Connect the input speed sensor 1 connector.
- (4) Fill the transmission oil.
- (5) Install the battery tray.
- (6) Install the battery.
- (7) Install the air filter assembly.
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.11 Replacement of Input Speed Sensor 2

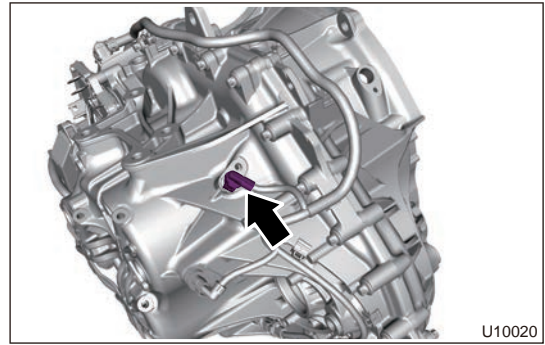
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

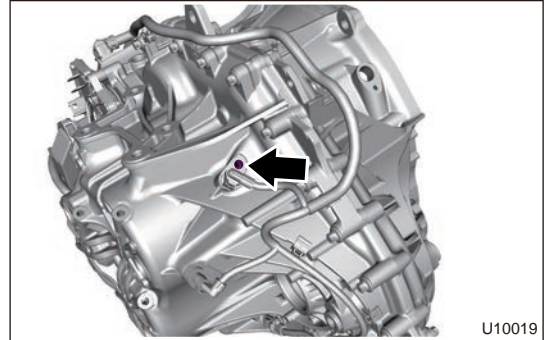
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement of sensor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the battery.
- (5) Remove the battery tray.
- (6) Drain the transmission oil.

(7) Disconnect the input speed sensor 2 connector.



(8) Remove fixing bolt from input speed sensor 2.



(9) Remove the input speed sensor 2.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Sensor and its bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.**
- **Drain the transmission oil and remove wire harness before replacing the sensor (drain bolt and oil inspection bolt must be replaced).**

- (1) Install input speed sensor 2 to a proper position on transmission.
- (2) Install fixing bolt to input speed sensor 2.

Tightening torque: 9 - 11 N·m

- (3) Connect the input speed sensor 2 connector.
- (4) Fill the transmission oil.
- (5) Install the battery tray.
- (6) Install the battery.
- (7) Install the air filter assembly.
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.12 Replacement of Drive Shaft Oil Seal

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched during removal.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the battery.
- (5) Remove the battery tray.
- (6) Drain the transmission oil.
- (7) Remove the front left wheel.
- (8) Remove the front left drive shaft assembly.
- (9) Remove left drive shaft oil seal from transmission assembly.



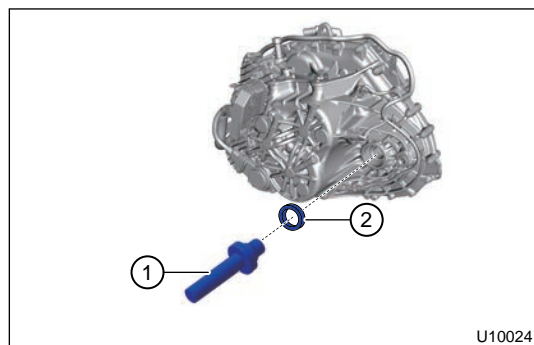
U10023

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Ensure that the transmission oil has been drained before removing oil seal.
- Be sure to avoid scratching the mating surface between transmission case and clutch housing during removal of drive shaft oil seal.
- Drive shaft oil seal is a non-reusable part, which must be replaced after each removal.

- (1) Using a special tool (1), install drive shaft oil seal (2) into place.



U10024

⚠ Caution

- Apply a proper amount of MP grease to new oil seal lip.
- Do not damage oil seal lip during installation.

- (2) Install the front left drive shaft assembly.
- (3) Install the front left wheel.
- (4) Fill the transmission oil.
- (5) Install the battery tray.
- (6) Install the battery.
- (7) Install the air filter assembly.
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

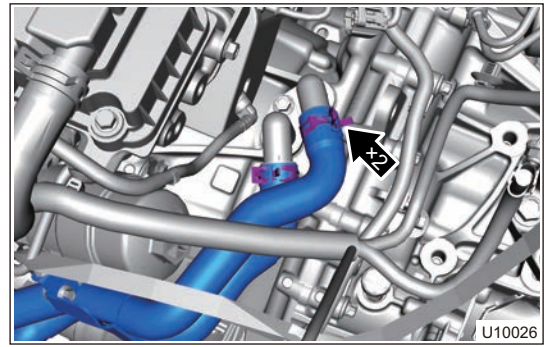
3.13 Replacement of Coolant Connecting Pipe Assembly (Inlet and Outlet Pipes)

■ Removal

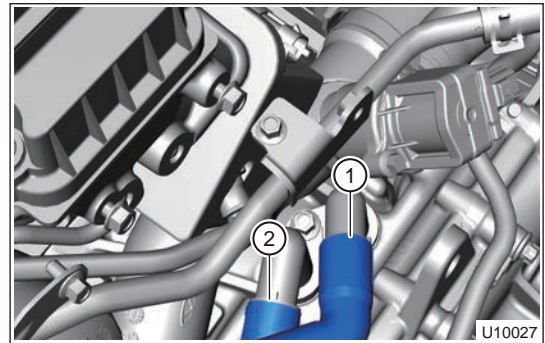
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **When removing coolant pipe from coolant connecting pipe assembly, be careful not to splash the coolant on electronic parts and the inside of transmission to contaminate transmission oil.**

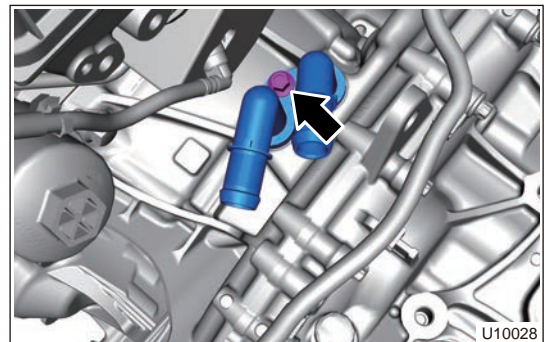
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the battery.
- (5) Remove the battery tray.
- (6) Remove the intercooler inlet pipe assembly II .
- (7) Drain the coolant.
- (8) Remove clamps from engine inlet pipe.



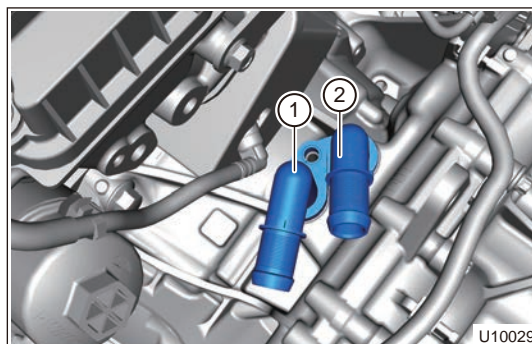
- (9) Disengage the engine inlet pipes ①②.



- (10) Remove fixing bolt from coolant connecting pipe assembly.



- (11) Remove inlet pipe ① and outlet pipe ② from coolant connecting pipe.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Bolts are non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.**

- (1) Install coolant connecting pipe into hole, align bolt holes of coolant connecting pipe, and tighten bolts.

Tightening torque: 18 - 20 N·m

- (2) Install the engine inlet pipes ①②.
 (3) Install clamps to engine inlet pipe.
 (4) Add the coolant.
 (5) Install the intercooler inlet pipe assembly II.
 (6) Install the battery tray.
 (7) Install the battery.
 (8) Install the air filter assembly.
 (9) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.14 Replacement of Clutch Motor 1

■ Removal

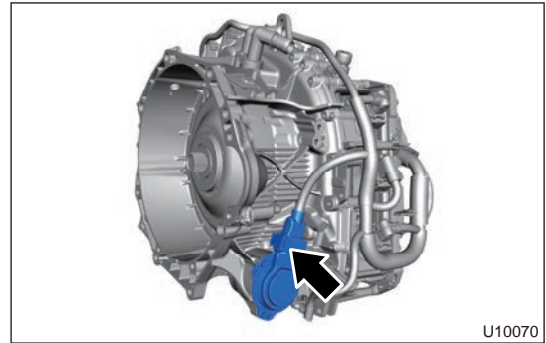
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **During replacement of sensor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.**
- **When replacing parts, it must be performed in the clean environment.**
- **It can be only use original parts when it is necessary to replace parts.**

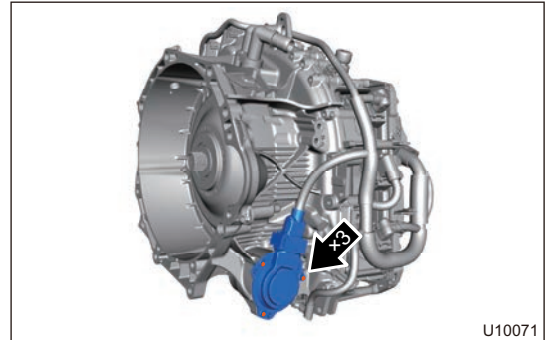
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (2) Lift the vehicle and thoroughly clean the outside of transmission, especially the area around clutch motor 1. Remove loose particles in these areas and clean them with dust-free cloth and cleaner to prevent dirt from entering the transmission.
 (3) Remove drain plug to drain transmission oil (approximately 3.25 L), and contain it in a clean and dry container for reuse.
 (4) Retighten the new drain plug.

Tightening torque: 43 ± 4 N·m

- (5) Disconnect the clutch motor 1 wire harness connector.



- (6) Remove 3 fixing bolts from clutch motor 1.



- (7) Remove motor from housing gently.

■ Installation

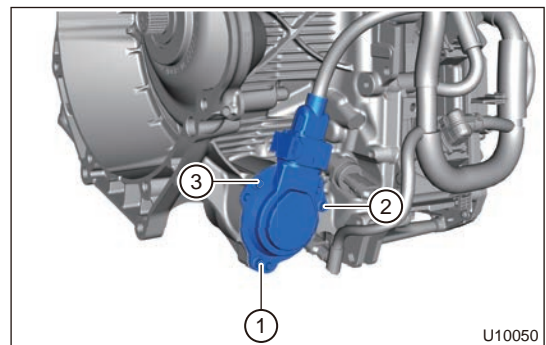
⚠ Caution

- O-ring and motor bolts are both non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.
- Carefully remove remaining oil in motor cavity to avoid oil leakage after replacing motor with a new one.
- Install new O-ring to new motor. Make sure that the O-ring is installed at the bottom of motor wall and there is no distortion.

- (1) Clean the wall of housing motor cavity with a dust-free cloth, and gently install new motor into housing clutch motor cavity, ensuring that the motor spline shaft is installed in place.
- (2) Tighten 3 bolts on shift motor in sequence ①②③ as shown in the illustration below.

First torque: 1.5 - 2 N·m

Second torque: 5 - 6 N·m



- (3) Connect the shift motor wire harness connector.
- (4) Install the transmission control unit.
- (5) Fill transmission oil (oil judging standard: unscrew the filler plug next to differential, and leave it for 30 minutes after filling until the oil overflows).
- (6) Install the engine compartment lower protector assembly.

■ Test

Driving performance test: Drive the vehicle for 10 minutes, raise the temperature of transmission, and then test the following items.

- (1) When moving slowing, the accelerator pedal opening is less than 5%, and the vehicle has no jitter.

- (2) When driving, depress and hold brake pedal and the vehicle has no jitter.
- (3) Check forward and reverse gear conditions.

■ Clutch Self-learning

Refer to clutch self-learning method for clutch self-learning.

3.15 Replacement of Clutch Motor 2

■ Removal

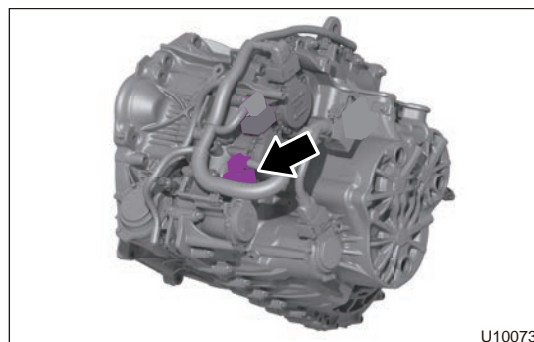
Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.
- During replacement of shift motor, it is necessary to wear anti-static equipment.
- When replacing parts, it must be performed in the clean environment.
- It can be only use original parts when it is necessary to replace parts.

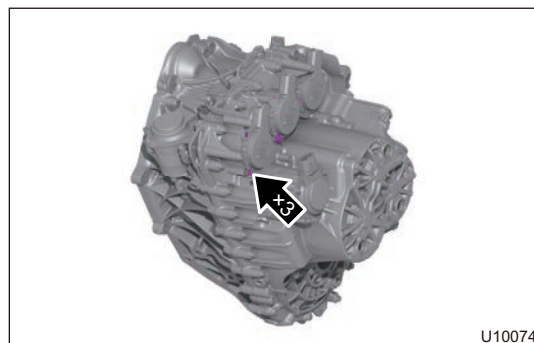
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Lift the vehicle and thoroughly clean the periphery of transmission, especially the area around clutch motor 2. In these areas, remove loose particles and clean them with dust-free cloth and cleaner to prevent dirt from entering the transmission.
- (3) Remove drain plug to drain transmission oil (approximately 3.25 L), and contain it in a clean and dry container for reuse.
- (4) Retighten the new drain plug.

Tightening torque: 43 ± 4 N·m

- (5) Remove the transmission control unit.
- (6) Disconnect the clutch motor 2 wire harness connector.



- (7) Remove 3 fixing bolts from clutch motor 2.



- (8) Remove motor from housing gently.

■ Installation

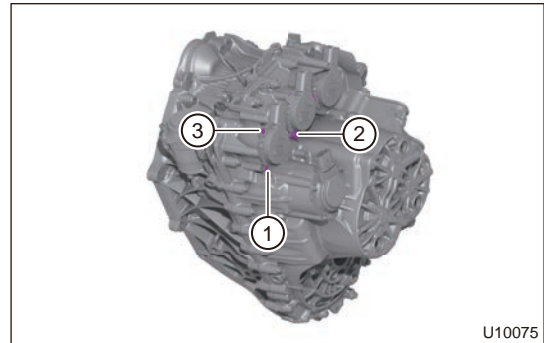
⚠ Caution

- **O-ring and motor bolts are both non-reusable parts, which must be replaced after each removal.**
- **Carefully remove remaining oil in motor cavity to avoid oil leakage after replacing motor with a new one.**
- **Install new O-ring to new motor. Make sure that the O-ring is installed at the bottom of motor wall and there is no distortion.**

- (1) Clean the wall of housing motor cavity with a dust-free cloth, and gently install new motor into housing clutch motor cavity, ensuring that the motor spline shaft is installed in place.
- (2) Tighten 3 bolts on shift motor in sequence ①②③ as shown in the illustration below.

First torque: 1.5 - 2 N·m

Second torque: 5 - 6 N·m



- (3) Connect the shift motor wire harness connector.
- (4) Install the transmission control unit.
- (5) Fill transmission oil (oil judging standard: unscrew the filler plug next to differential, and leave it for 30 minutes after filling until the oil overflows).
- (6) Install the engine compartment lower protector assembly.

■ Test

Driving performance test: Drive the vehicle for 10 minutes, raise the temperature of transmission, and then test the following items.

- (1) When moving slowing, the accelerator pedal opening is less than 5%, and the vehicle has no jitter.
- (2) When driving, depress and hold brake pedal and the vehicle has no jitter.
- (3) Check forward and reverse gear conditions.

■ Clutch Self-learning

Refer to clutch self-learning method for clutch self-learning.

3.16 Replacement of Clutch

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

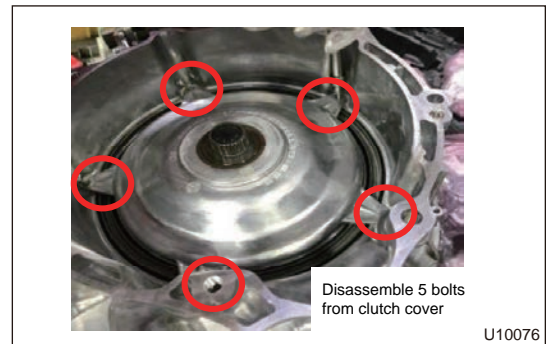
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **When replacing parts, it must be performed in the clean environment.**
- **It can be only use original parts when it is necessary to replace parts.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove drain plug to drain transmission oil (approximately 4 L), and contain it in a clean and dry container for reuse.
- (3) Retighten the new drain plug.

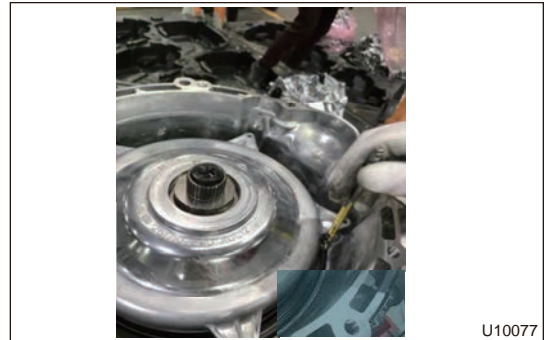
Tightening torque: 43 ± 4 N·m

- (4) Remove transmission assembly from vehicle.

- (5) Use TORX socket B8 to disassemble 5 bolts on clutch cover and dispose them.

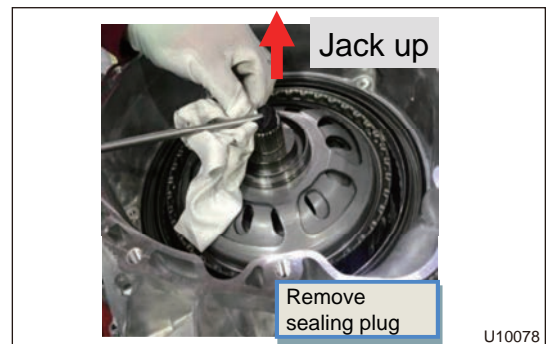


- (6) Use 5mm inner hexagon wrench, gradually pry off it around connection blocks of 5 bolts for clutch cover to remove clutch cover. Make sure that clutch cover and clutch cover oil seal are not damaged or twisted, and dispose them if so.



■ Disassembly

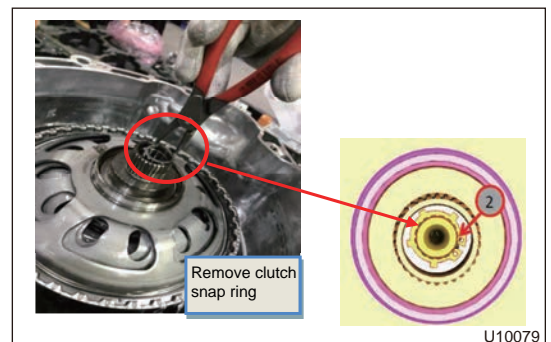
- (1) Disassemble the sealing plug (quick-wear part, it must be disposed if removed), insert screw into upward hole in the middle, and then remove sealing plug.



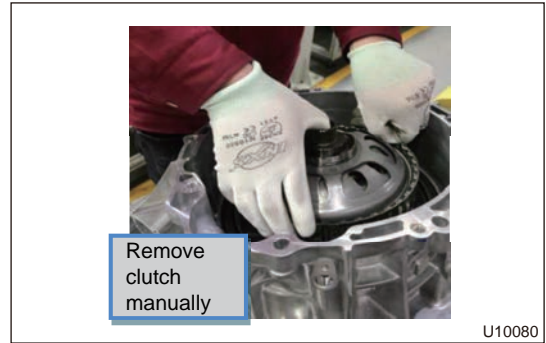
⚠ Caution

- Please use a dust-free cloth to prevent screw from scratching inner hole and contact end surface.

- (2) Disassemble snap ring ② with straight outer snap ring plier for shaft.

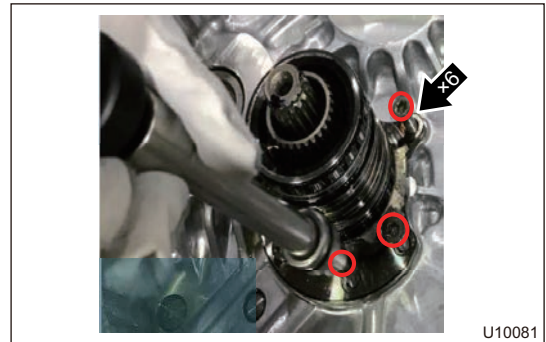


- (3) Remove the clutch manually.



■ Disassembly of Clutch Support

- (1) Use inner TORX screws T30 to disassemble 6 bolts on support and dispose them.



⚠ Caution

- Prevent screws from falling into the case during removal and installation.

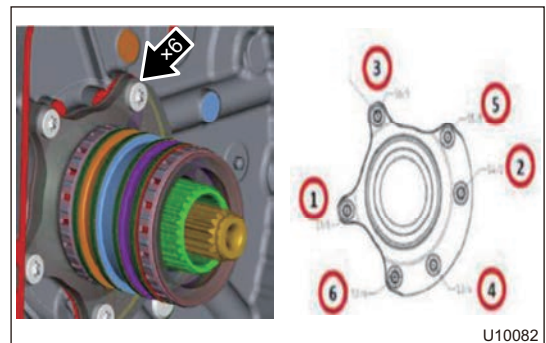
■ Installation

Installation of Support

- (1) Tighten 6 bolts on support in sequence 1 - 6 as shown in the illustration below.

First torque: 5 N·m

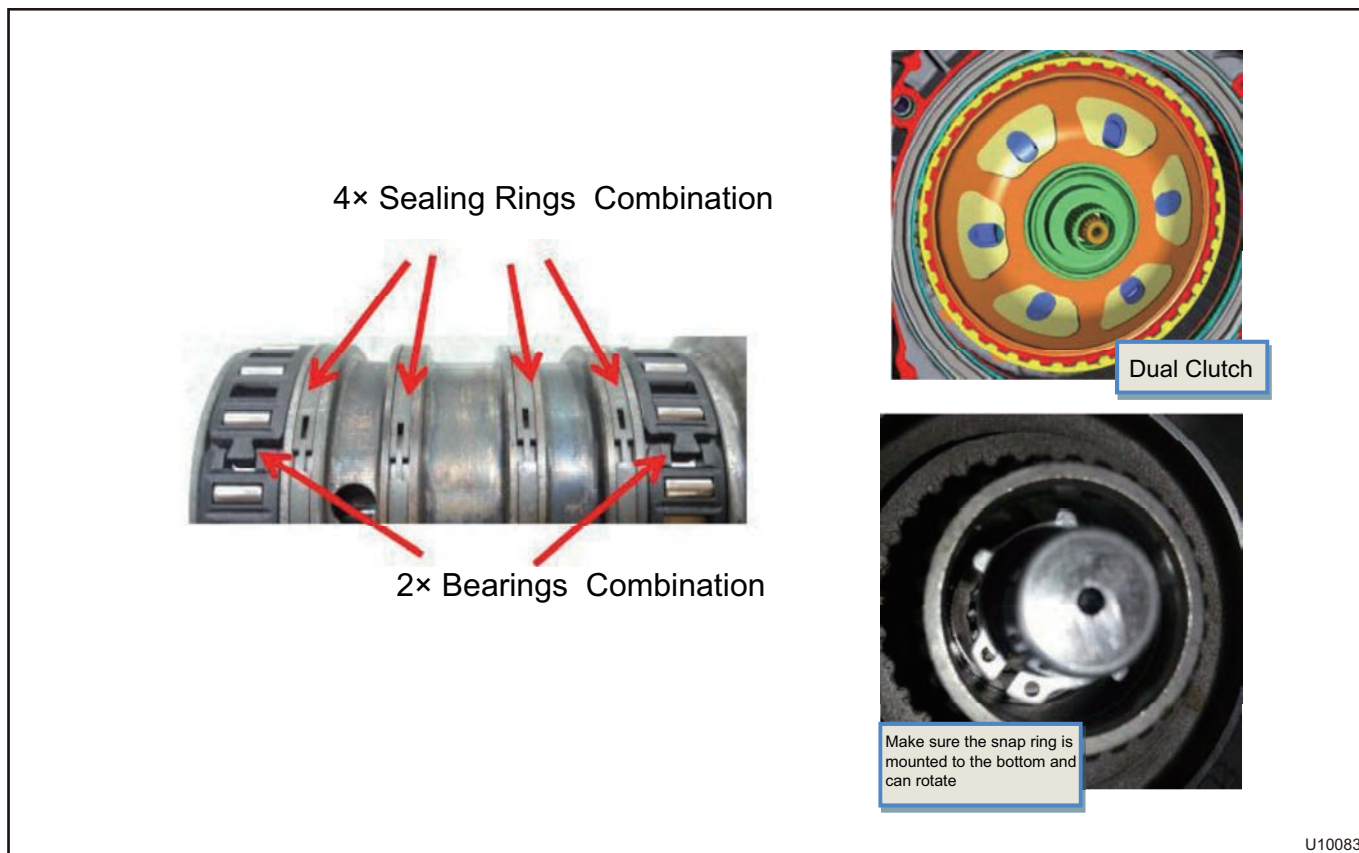
Second torque: 11 ± 0.5 N·m



- (2)

Installation of Dual Clutch

- (1) Before installing clutch on support, please check as follows: ensure that bearing and sealing ring are not damaged.



(2) When installing clutch, gently rotate it.

(3) Using snap spring calipers, install snap ring to shaft groove.

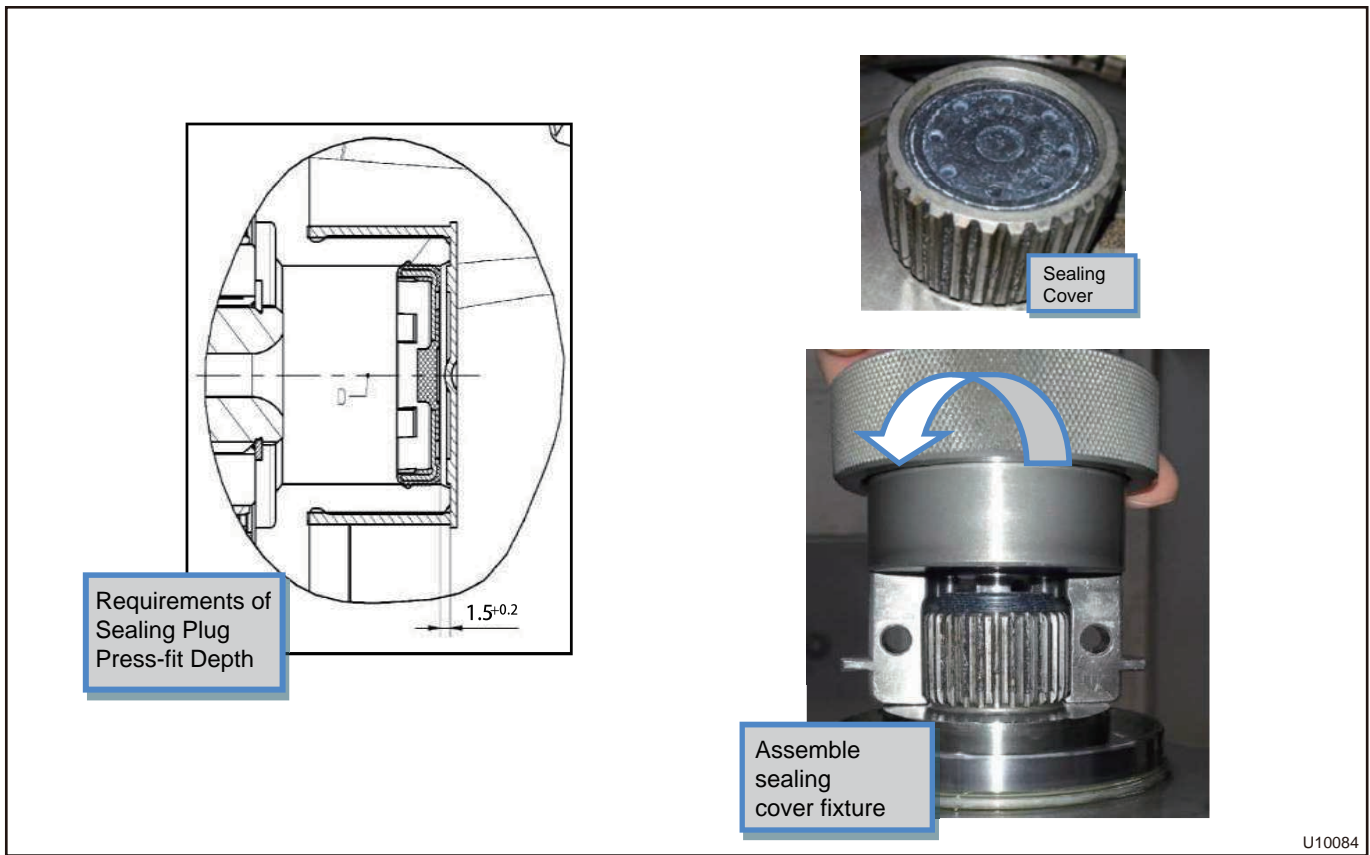
⚠ Caution

- **Check whether the snap ring is installed in place, flip snap ring to confirm whether it can be rotated, if not, it means that the snap ring is not installed in place.**

Installation of Clutch Cover

(1) Replace the clutch cover O-ring.

- Use clutch shaft sealing cover assembly fixture DCT300TP922-45 to install new sealing plug.
Pressing depth: 1.5 ~ 1.7 mm



U10084

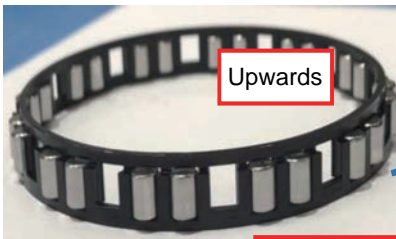
- (2) Apply grease MJ-setral-M3 to drive disc or manually turn bearing rolling body to the center of cage, prevent bearing rolling body from damage when clutch cover is pressed.

⚠ Caution

- **Bearing orientation.**



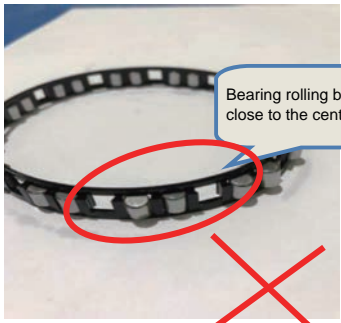
Apply grease to drive disc



Upwards

Keep the side with the larger outside diameter of cage facing down when assembling

The side with the larger outside diameter of cage faces down



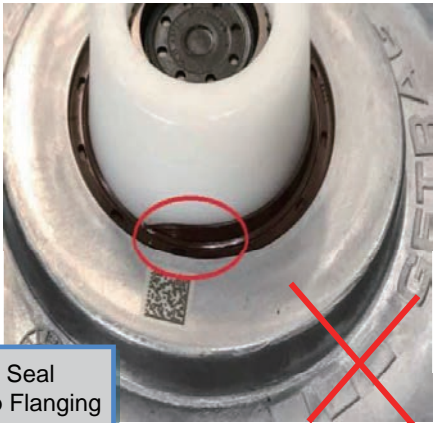
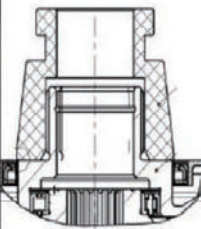
Bearing rolling body is not close to the center

U10085

(3) Insert oil seal protective sleeve fixture DCT300-TP-922-43 into drive plate to prevent oil seal lip from flanging.



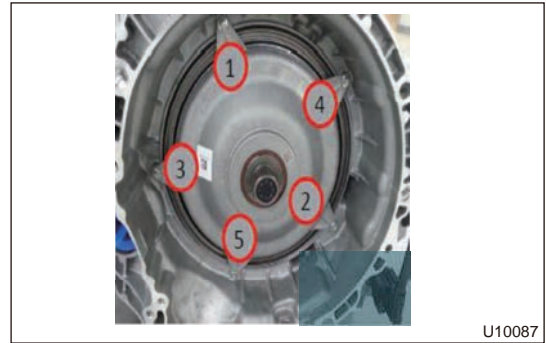
Oil Seal Installation Protective Sleeve



Oil Seal Lip Flanging

U10086

(4) Replace the clutch cover O-ring.



U10087

⚠ Caution

- In the process of tightening, pay attention to ensure that clutch cover is in horizontal direction to avoid crushing inner needle bearing due to imbalanced bolt tightening force.
- Pay attention to whether the process of tightening bolts is not smooth due to the interference of roller bearings.

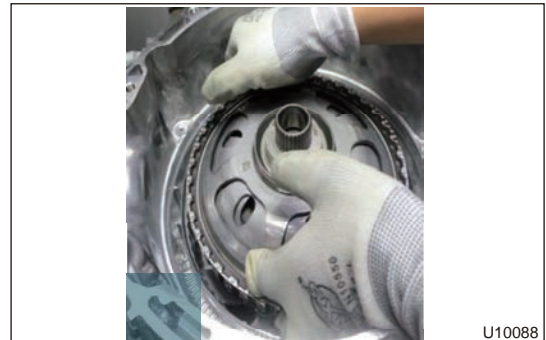
⚠ Warning

- During and after the installation of clutch cover, ensure that the oil seal lip is not flanged. If the oil seal lip is damaged, it will definitely cause oil leakage.
- Ensure that the O-ring is not damaged, otherwise, it may cause oil leakage.

■ Test

Test Function After Assembly

- (1) Manually rotate the clutch drive disc shaft to ensure smooth rotation.



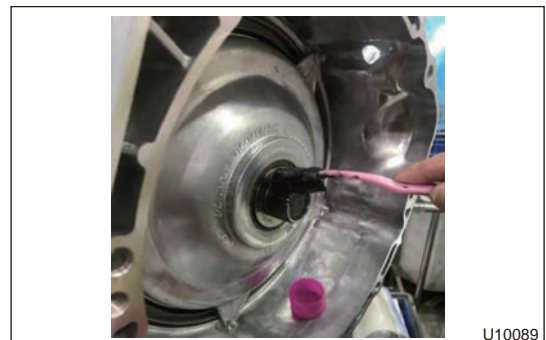
U10088

Inspection of Differential Oil Seal

- (1) After the clutch is installed, please check the differential oil seal carefully. When disassembling clutch from vehicle, if any damage is found, please replace oil seal with differential oil seal assembly fixture.

Applying Grease to Shaft Spline

- (1) Apply M- setra1-43N grease to drive disc spline.



U10089

■ Clutch Self-learning

Refer to clutch self-learning method for clutch self-learning.

⚠ Caution

- During clutch self-learning, the transmission oil temperature is 40 - 60 °C.

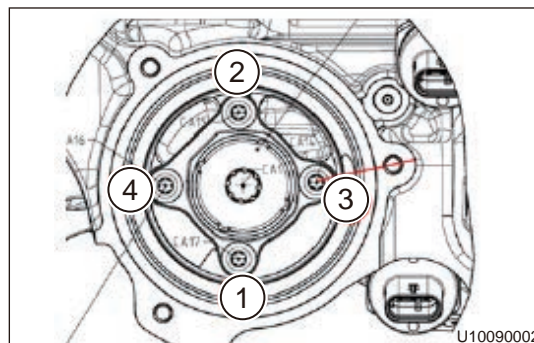
3.17 Replacement of Clutch Actuator Pump 1

⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.
- When replacing parts, it must be performed in the clean environment to prevent any liquid or foreign matters from entering the transmission.
- It can be only use original parts when it is necessary to replace parts.

■ Removal

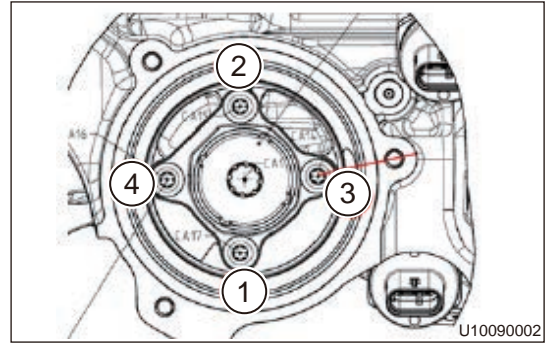
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Thoroughly clean the outside of transmission, especially filler plug and drain plug areas. Remove loose particles in these areas and clean them with dust-free cloth and cleaner.
- (3) Remove drain plug to drain transmission oil (approximately 4 L), and contain it in a clean and dry container for reuse.
- (4) Retighten the new drain plug.
- (5) Remove the clutch motor 1.
- (6) Disassemble 4 bolts from actuator pump 1 and remove pump, washer and bolts.



Installation

- (1) Connect actuator pump 1 and washer with 4 bolts in series (washer hole is aligned with pump hole), and then install them to transmission. Tightening sequence of bolts is as follows:

Step	Bolt No.	Torque (N·m)	Note
1	1	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
2	2	5 - 6	Final tightening
3	1	5 - 6	Final tightening
4	3	5 - 6	Final tightening
5	4	5 - 6	Final tightening



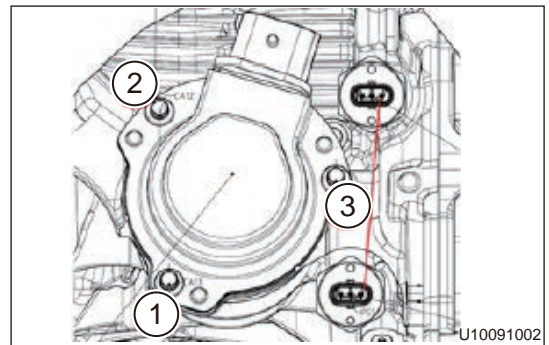
U10090002

Caution

- No. 3 bolt on right side of pump is close to motor bolt.

- (2) Install the clutch motor 1. Tightening sequence of motor 1 bolts is as follows:

Step	Bolt No.	Torque (N·m)	Note
1	1	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
2	2	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
3	3	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
4	1	5 - 6	Final tightening
5	2	5 - 6	Final tightening
6	3	5 - 6	Final tightening



U10091002

Caution

- No. 3 motor bolt is between two pressure sensors.

- (3) After installation, perform test in different oil temperature as required.

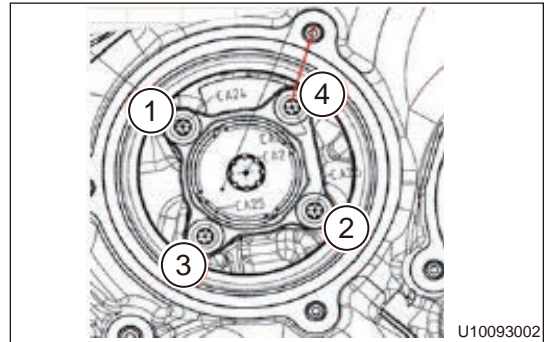
3.18 Replacement of Clutch Actuator Pump 2

Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.
- When replacing parts, it must be performed in the clean environment to prevent any liquid or foreign matters from entering the transmission.
- It can be only use original parts when it is necessary to replace parts.

■ Removal

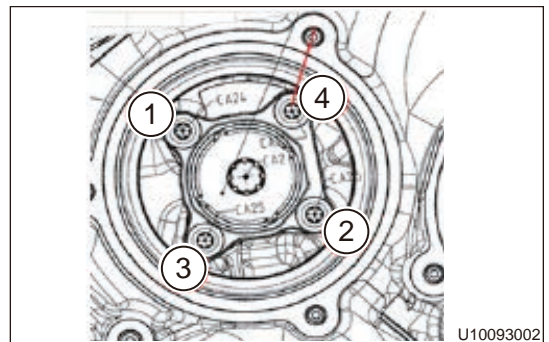
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Thoroughly clean the outside of transmission, especially filler plug and drain plug areas. Remove loose particles in these areas and clean them with dust-free cloth and cleaner.
- (3) Remove drain plug to drain transmission oil (approximately 4 L), and contain it in a clean and dry container for reuse.
- (4) Retighten the new drain plug.
- (5) Remove the clutch motor 2.
- (6) Disassemble 4 bolts from actuator pump 1 and remove pump, washer and bolts.



■ Installation

- (1) Connect actuator pump 1 and washer with 4 bolts in series (washer hole is aligned with pump hole), and then install them to transmission. Tightening sequence of bolts is as follows:

Step	Bolt No.	Torque (N·m)	Note
1	1	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
2	2	5 - 6	Final tightening
3	1	5 - 6	Final tightening
4	3	5 - 6	Final tightening
5	4	5 - 6	Final tightening

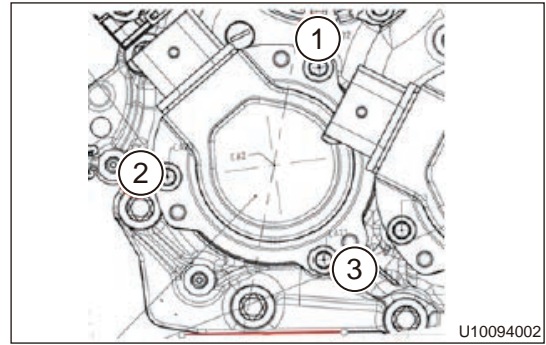


⚠ Caution

- No. 4 bolt on right side of pump is close to motor bolt.

(2) Install the clutch motor 2. Tightening sequence of motor 2 bolts is as follows:

Step	Bolt No.	Torque (N·m)	Note
1	1	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
2	2	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
3	3	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
4	1	5 - 6	Final tightening
5	2	5 - 6	Final tightening
6	3	5 - 6	Final tightening



(3) After installation, perform test in different oil temperature as required.

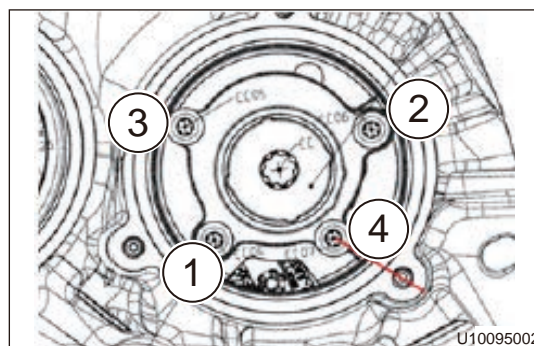
3.19 Replacement of Clutch Cooling Pump

<p>⚠ Warning</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing. • When replacing parts, it must be performed in the clean environment to prevent any liquid or foreign matters from entering the transmission. • It can be only use original parts when it is necessary to replace parts.
--

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Thoroughly clean the outside of transmission, especially filler plug and drain plug areas. Remove loose particles in these areas and clean them with dust-free cloth and cleaner.
- (3) Remove drain plug to drain transmission oil (approximately 4 L), and contain it in a clean and dry container for reuse.
- (4) Retighten the new drain plug.
- (5) Remove the clutch cooling motor.

- (6) Disassemble 4 bolts from actuator pump 1 and remove pump, washer and bolts.



U10095002

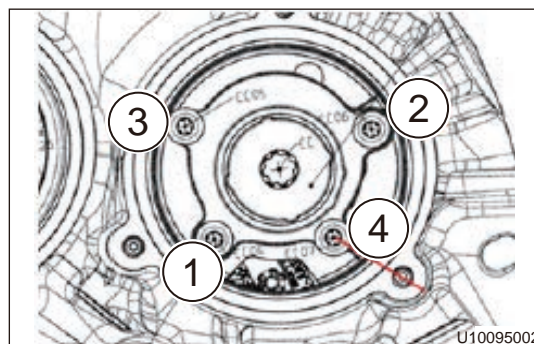


U10096002

Installation

- (1) Connect cooling pump with 4 bolts in series, and then install it to transmission. Tightening sequence of bolts is as follows:

Step	Bolt No.	Torque (N·m)	Note
1	1	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
2	2	5 - 6	Final tightening
3	1	5 - 6	Final tightening
4	3	5 - 6	Final tightening
5	4	5 - 6	Final tightening



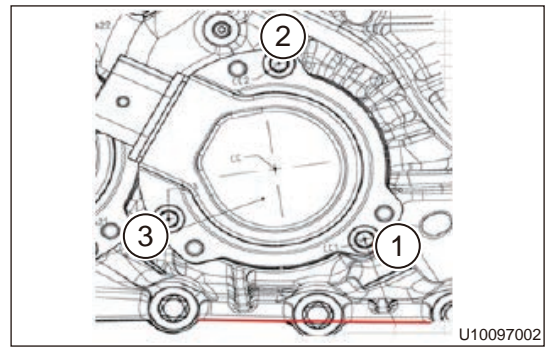
U10095002

Caution

- Align No. 4 bolt on right lower side of cooling pump with motor bolt.

(2) Install the cooling motor. Tightening sequence of motor bolts is as follows:

Step	Bolt No.	Torque (N·m)	Note
1	1	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
2	2	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
3	3	1.5 - 2	Pre-tightening
4	1	5 - 6	Final tightening
5	2	5 - 6	Final tightening
6	3	5 - 6	Final tightening



(3) After installation, perform test in different oil temperature as required.

7DCT

15.1	ELECTRONIC SHIFT	758
1	Warning and Precaution.....	758
1.1	Warning.....	758
1.2	Precautions.....	758
2	System Overview	758
2.1	System Description.....	758
2.2	System Component Diagram	759
3	System Circuit Diagram	760
3.1	EGS Connector Terminal Definition.....	760
3.2	Circuit Diagram	762
4	DTC Diagnosis	762
4.1	Diagnosis Procedure.....	762
4.2	DTC Confirmation Procedure	763
4.3	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.....	764
4.4	Ground Inspection	764
4.5	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	764
4.6	DTC Trouble Diagnosis	766
5	Diagnosis Procedure.....	769
5.1	Diagnostic Tester Menu.....	769
6	On-vehicle Service	774
6.1	Tool	774
6.2	Electronic Shift Module	774
6.3	Shift Paddle.....	775

15.1 ELECTRONIC SHIFT

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) When removing button-type electronic shift module assembly, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.

1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing upper cover plate body. Be careful not to operate roughly.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

The connection between Button-type Electronic Shift Module (EGS) and transmission adopts a safer and faster electronic control mode, other than a traditional mechanical way, which eliminates the traditional mechanical shift mode and adopts electronic signals. Its advantage is that the driver's wrong shift operation will be judged by the computer to see if it will cause damage to the transmission, so as to better protect the transmission and correct the bad shift habits. As a luxurious, high-technology configuration, electronic shift lever eliminates the traditional mechanical shifting mechanism and provides us with a more convenient operation. However, if there is a fault or short circuit, the electronic shifting mechanism is unable to release the current gear, we can only rely on the trailer and rescue.

2.2 System Component Diagram

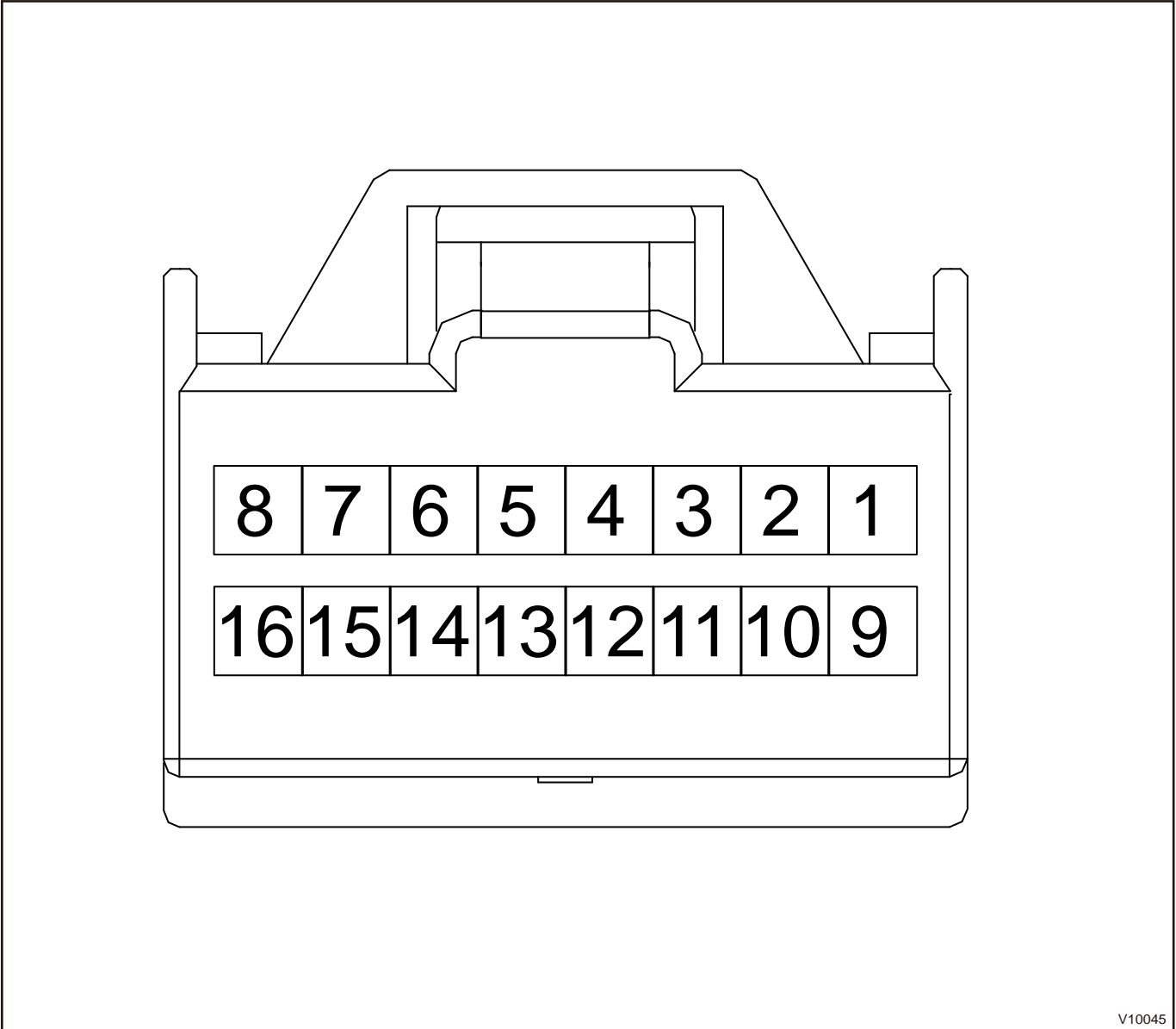


1	Automatic Transmission Assembly	2	Electronic Shift Module (EGS)
---	---------------------------------	---	-------------------------------

Electronic shift module collects vehicle speed and other signals through CAN network and transmits gear signal to TCU. TCU collects signals input from sensors and other devices to shift gear.

3 System Circuit Diagram

3.1 EGS Connector Terminal Definition

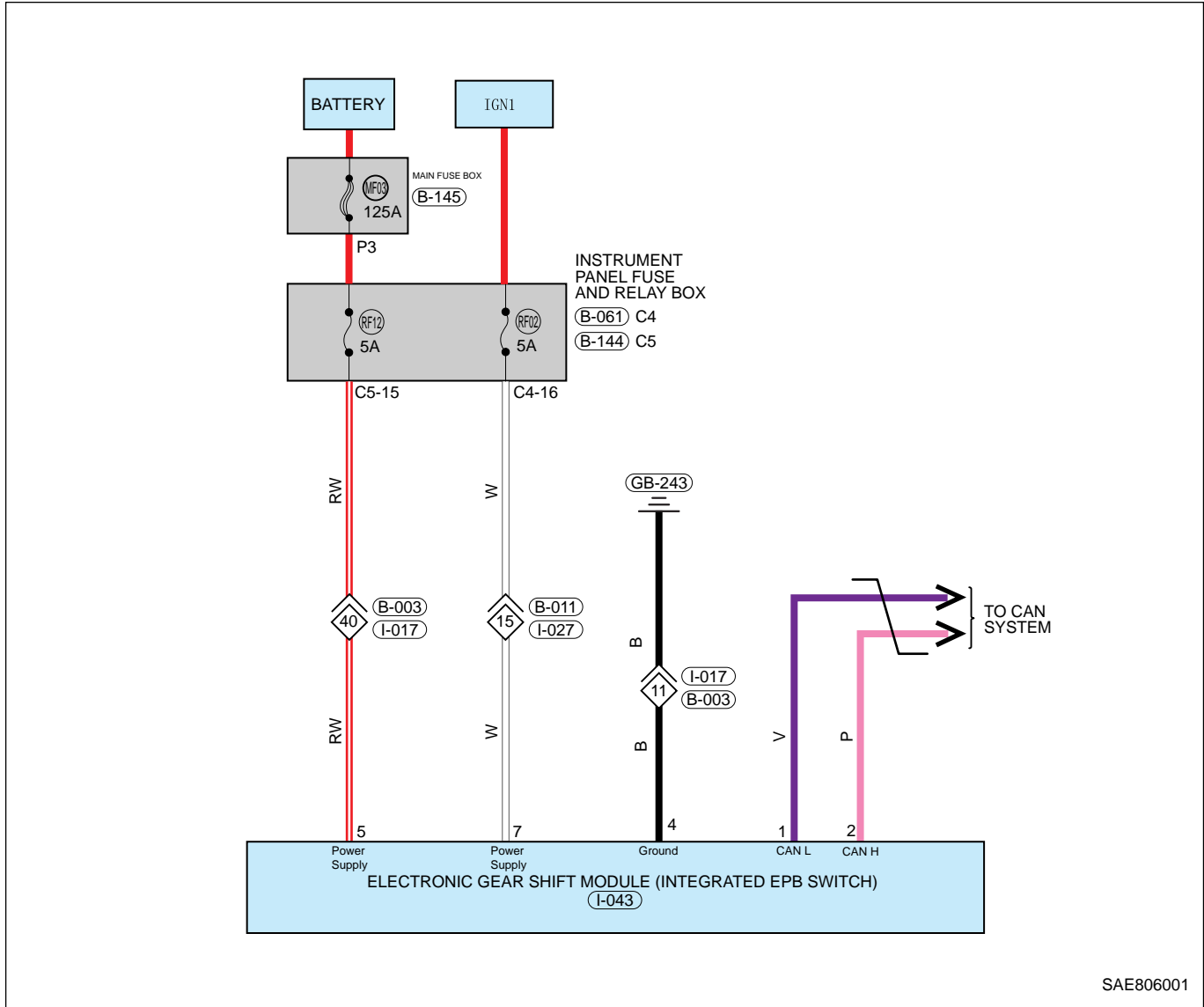


V10045

Terminal Inspection		Pin Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
1	Body ground	CAN-L	Power ON	2.3V
2	Body ground	CAN-H	Power ON	2.7V
3	Body ground	/	/	/
4	Body ground	Ground	Power ON	0V
5	Body ground	Power supply	Power ON	12V
6	Body ground	/	/	/
7	Body ground	Ignition signal	Start moment	12V

8	Body ground	/	/	/
9	Body ground	/	/	/
10	Body ground	SW6	Power ON	3.35V without pulling up; 0V with pulling up
11	Body ground	AUTOHOLD switch operation indicator drives	Power ON	10.82V during illumination
12	Body ground	AUTOHOLD switch signal outputs	Power ON	9.21V
13	Body ground	SW4	Power ON	3.32V
14	Body ground	SW3	Power ON	3.37V
15	Body ground	EPB switch operation indicator drives	Power ON	0.137V
16	Body ground	SW1	Power ON	3.356V

3.2 Circuit Diagram



4 DTC Diagnosis

4.1 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

- Use following procedures to troubleshoot the transmission system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
---	-----------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
---	-----------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

Standard Condition

Standard voltage: Not less than 12V.

NG

Replace battery.

OK

3 Customer problem analysis

Next

4 Read DTCs

NG

Repair according to Problem Symptoms Table.

OK

5 Read DTCs (current DTC and history DTC)

NG

Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTC fault flow.

OK

6 Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) chart

Next

7 Adjust, repair or replace

Next

8 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End.

4.2 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12V before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait several seconds.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check DTCs in the system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4.3 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check electronic shift system components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4.4 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.5 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

Electronic Shift System

Hint:

- History trouble code cannot be reported, otherwise it will affect the use by customer.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
C1950-16	Battery Voltage Below Threshold	The voltage is less than 6.5V for 5s, which is stored as current fault.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Battery; • Wire harness or connector is damaged; • EGS. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check for generating capacity of battery and alternator; • Check if wire harness or connectors is damaged; • Check EGS.
C1951-17	Battery Voltage Above Threshold	The voltage is less than 16.5V for 5s, which is stored as current fault.		
C1952-00	FW/TIP+ Button Stuck	FW/TIP+ button is pressed for 60s.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Button-type Electronic Shift Module (EGS) is damaged; 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if Button-type Electronic Shift Module

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
C1953-00	BW/TIP- Button Stuck	BW/TIP- button is pressed for 60s.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector is damaged; Switch stuck. 	(EGS) is damaged; <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if circuit is connected normally; Check switch for stuck.
C195C-92	Park Button Stuck	Park button is pressed for 60s.		
C1969-71	M/D Switch Stuck	M/D switch is pressed for 60s.		
C196A-00	M/D Switch Circuit Fault	M/D switch circuit open, short to ground or short to power supply for 3s.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Button Electronic Shift Module (EGS) is damaged; Wire harness or connector is damaged. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if Button-type Electronic Shift Module (EGS) is damaged; Check if circuit is connected normally.
C1962-00	FW/TIP+ Button Circuit Fault	FW/TIP+ button circuit open, short to ground or short to power supply for 3s.		
C1963-00	BW/TIP- Button Circuit Fault	BW/TIP- button circuit open, short to ground or short to power supply for 3s.		
C1959-00	Park Button Circuit Fault	Park button circuit open, short to ground or short to power supply for 3s.		
C1964-14	P Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open	P position indicator circuit short to ground or open for 1s.		
C1965-14	R Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open	R position indicator circuit short to ground or open for 1s.		
C1966-14	N Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open	N position indicator circuit short to ground or open for 1s.		
C1967-14	D Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open	D position indicator circuit short to ground or open for 1s.		
C1968-14	M Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open	M position indicator circuit short to ground or open for 1s.		
U128F88	CAN Bus Off	1) After ignition on T diagstart (Tdiagstart defined in network DTC strategy specification); 2) After system resets Tdiagstart; 3) After power supply		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
		voltage is normal from abnormal voltage Tdiagstart.		
U012287	Lost Communication With ESC	1) After ignition on T diagstart (Tdiastart defined in network DTC strategy specification); 2) After system resets Tdiagstart; 3) After power supply voltage recovers from abnormal voltage Tdiagstart; 4) Tdiagstart after CAN bus off and fault disappears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Corresponding module node failure; • CAN bus connection failure; • EGS module failure. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if corresponding module node sends messages in correct cycle. • Check CAN bus connection between EGS and each module for damage/ problem. • Check the EGS module.
U010187	Lost Communication With TCU			
U024887	Lost Communication With PEPS			
U015587	Lost Communication With IPC			
U014087	Lost Communication With BCM			
U042281	Invalid Data Received From BCM	1) Normal communication (- messages received from each module); 2) After ignition on T diagstart (Tdiastart defined in network DTC strategy specification); 3) After system resets Tdiagstart; 4) After power supply voltage recovers from abnormal voltage Tdiagstart; 5) Tdiagstart after CAN bus off and fault disappears.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Each module to EGS wire harness node failure. • EGS module failure. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check if each module node is sending a message with correct valid signal. • Check the EGS module.
U041681	Invalid Data Received From ESC			
U042381	Invalid Data Received From IPC			
U040281	Invalid Data Received From TCU			

4.6 DTC Trouble Diagnosis

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C1950-16	Battery Voltage Below Threshold
C1951-17	Battery Voltage Above Threshold

⚠ Caution

- **When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.**

1	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

- (a) Check if battery voltage is normal.
- (b) Check battery voltage with multimeter voltage band.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12V.

NG Check and repair battery

OK

2 Check fuse

(a) Check if fuses RF02 and RF12 are blown.

NG Replace fuse

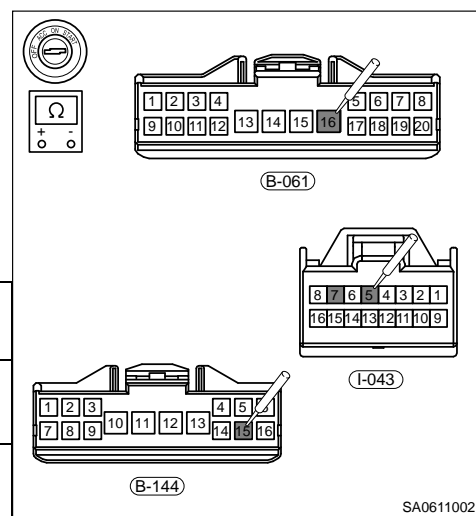
OK

3 Check supply circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the button-type electronic shift module connector I-043.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for open circuit among connectors I-043, B-144 and B-061 according to table below.

OK

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-043 (5) - B-144 (15)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
I-043 (7) - B-061 (16)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



SA0611002

NG Repair or replace related wire harness

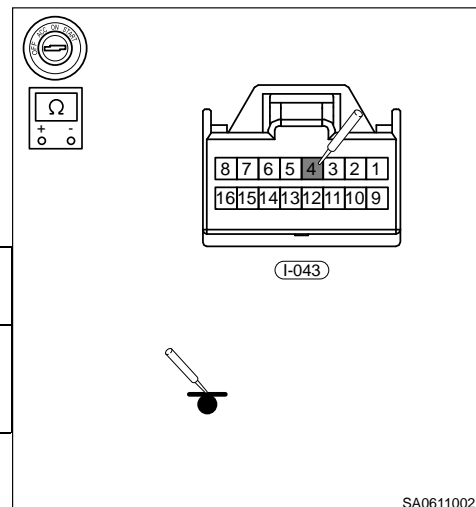
OK

4 Inspect ground

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the button-type electronic shift module connector I-043.
- (c) Check for continuity between I-043 (4) and body ground with ohm band of multimeter.

OK

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-043 (4) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



SA0611002

NG Repair ground point

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect all connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Check if DTC exists.

OK Conduct test and confirm vehicle function system operates normally

NG Replace EGS shift module assembly

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C1952-00	FW/TIP+ Button Stuck	ENGINE START STOP switch is in ON and engine is running	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Damaged wire harness or connector Button-type Electronic Shift Module (EGS) is damaged
C1953-00	BW/TIP- Button Stuck		
C195C-92	Park Button Stuck		
C1969-71	M/D Switch Stuck		
C196A-00	M/D Switch Circuit Fault		
C1962-00	FW/TIP+ Button Circuit Fault		
C1963-00	BW/TIP- Button Circuit Fault		
C1959-00	Park Button Circuit Fault		
C1964-14	P Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open		
C1965-14	R Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open		
C1966-14	N Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open		
C1967-14	D Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open		
C1968-14	M Position Indicator Circuit Short to Ground or Open		

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

Diagnosis Procedure

1 Check shift module connector

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the connector I-043.
- (d) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (e) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.


 NG

Repair or replace related connector or wire harness
--


 OK

2	Inspect ground circuit
----------	-------------------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Inspect the electronic shifter ground point GB-243.


 NG

Repair ground circuit


 OK

3	Check shift module
----------	---------------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Replace electronic shift knob with a new one and confirm if the fault still exists.


 NG

Replace shift module assembly


 OK

4	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect all connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Check if same DTCs or same problem symptoms are output.


 OK

Conduct test and confirm vehicle function system operates normally

5 Diagnosis Procedure

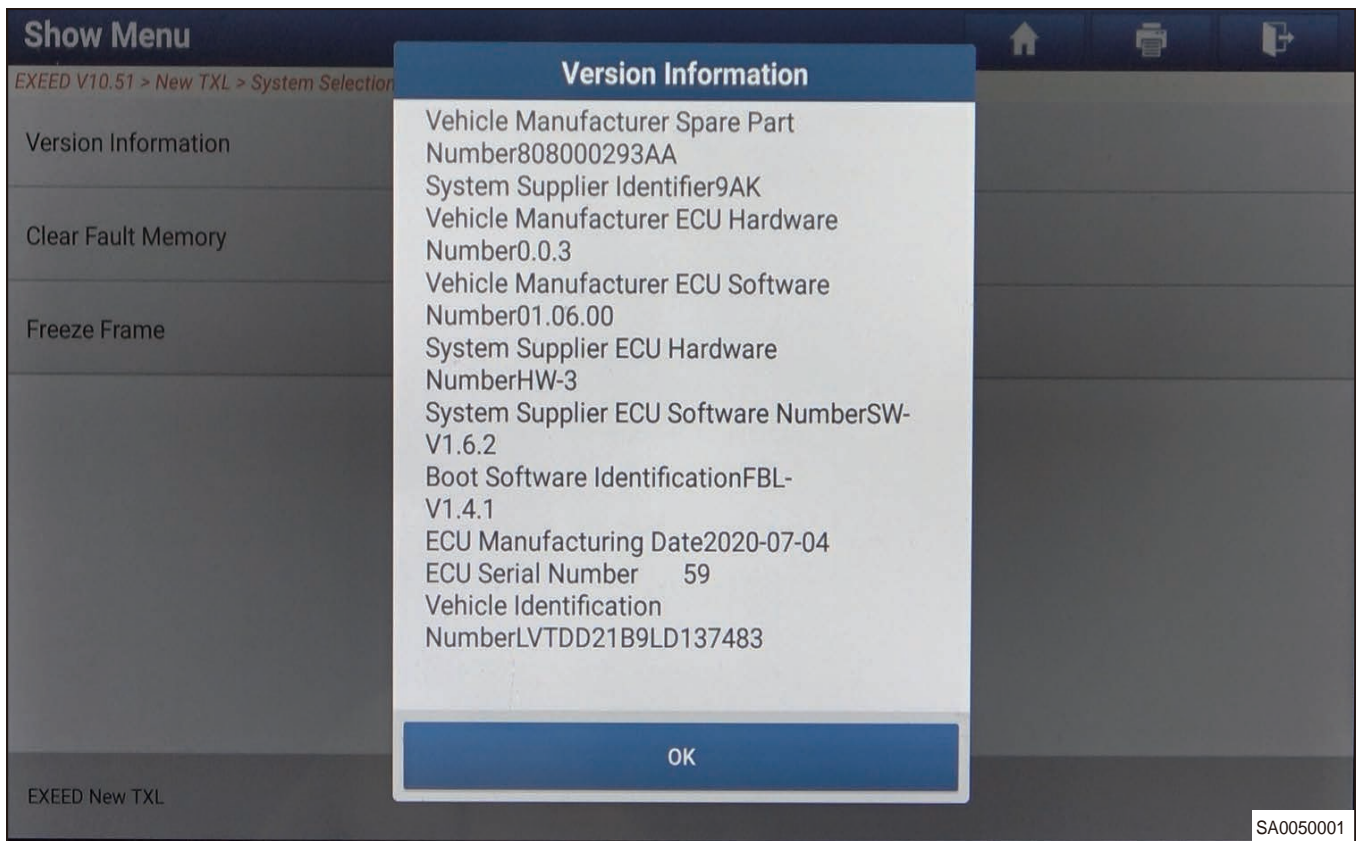
5.1 Diagnostic Tester Menu

- (1) Read data stream.
 - 1) Connect the diagnostic tester. Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 - 2) Select the model "New TXL" .
- (2) Enter next screen, and click "Button-type Electronic Shift Module" .

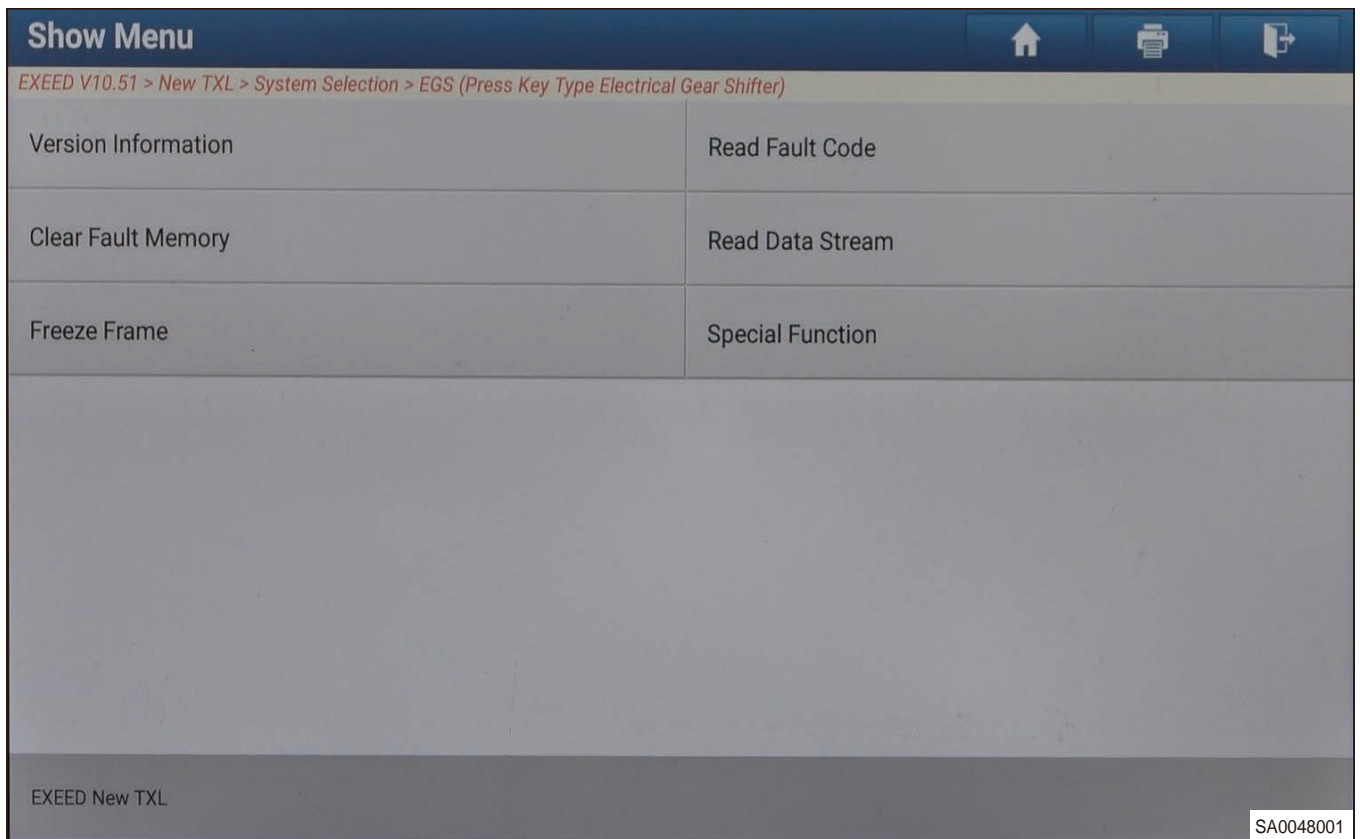
Show Menu	
EXEED V10.51 > New TXL > System Selection	
FRM (Front Radar Module)	FPC (Fuel Pump Control)
EGS (Press Key Type Electrical Gear Shifter)	TGW (Telematics Gateway)
VGW (Vehicle Gateway)	PLG (Power Lift Gate)
CWC (Cellphone Wireless Charger)	ACP (Audio Control Panel)
DVR (Driving Video Recorder)	SCU (Seat Control Unit)
ACM (Airbag Control Module)	AWD (All Wheel Drive)
SCM (Steering Column Module)	RLS (Rain Light Sensor)
EXEED New TXL	
SA0047001	

(3) Enter next screen and click "Version Information" .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.51 > New TXL > System Selection > EGS (Press Key Type Electrical Gear Shifter)	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Freeze Frame	Special Function
EXEED New TXL	
SA0048001	



- (4) Read the DTC screen.
- (5) Enter "Clear DTC" screen and click "Yes" to clear DTCs.
- (6) As shown in illustration, click "Read Data Stream" on diagnostic tester.



Name	Value	English	Metric
System Position	System Position: POS_ZERO (Z)		
Park Button Status	Park Button Status: No Request		
Battery voltage	11.5	V	

(1 / 1)

EXEED New TXL Graph Report Record Help

SA0053001

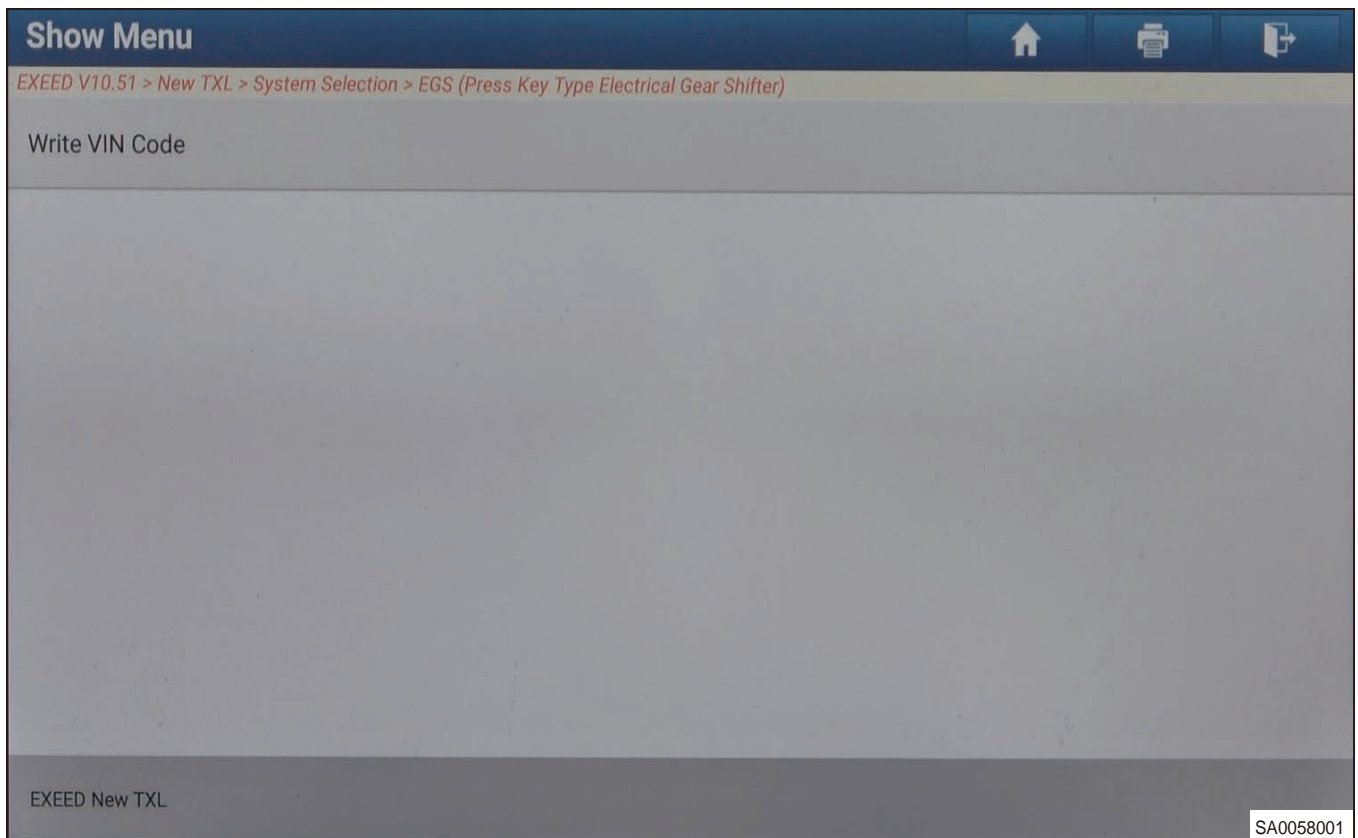
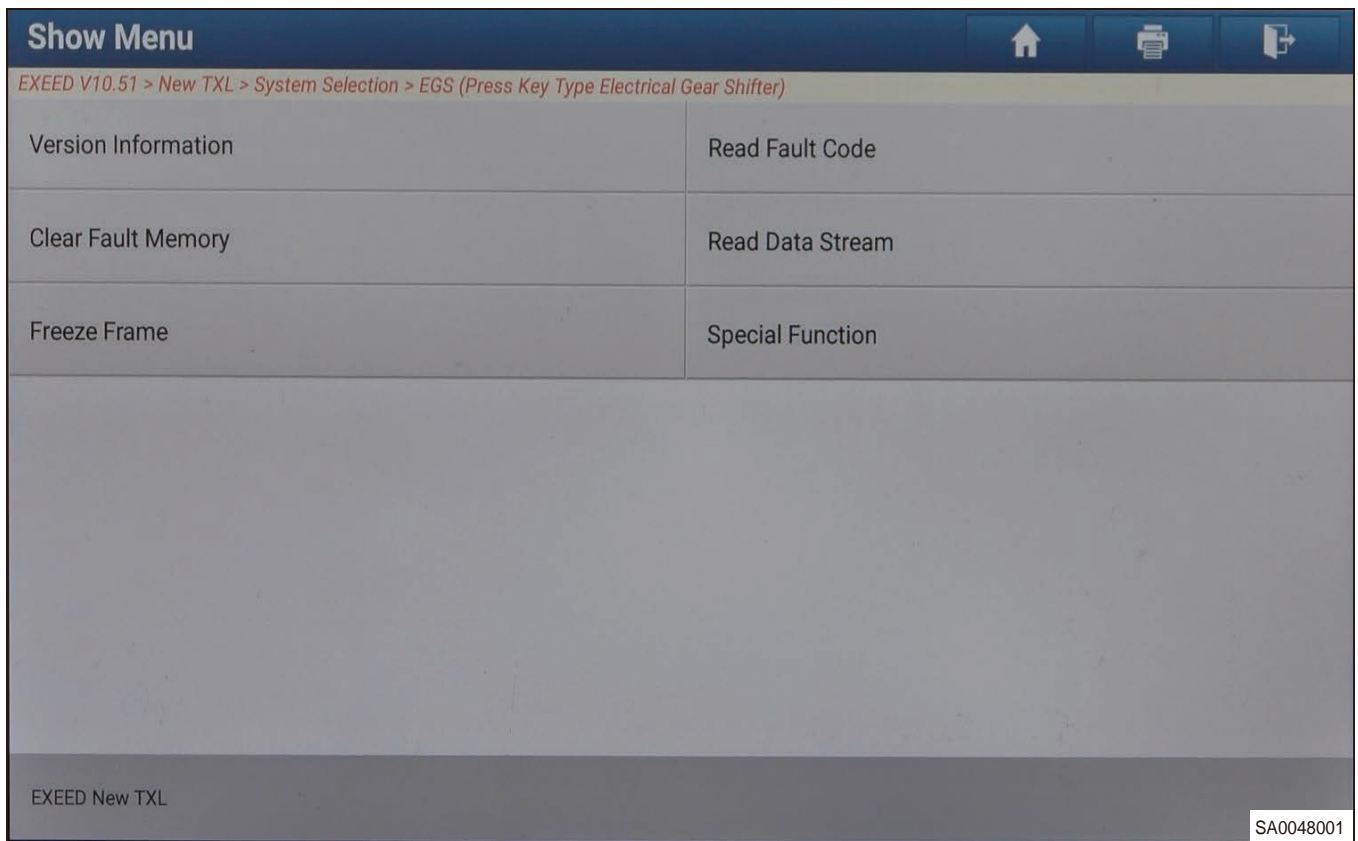
(7) As shown in illustration, click “Active Test” on diagnostic tester.

Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Freeze Frame	Special Function

EXEED New TXL

SA0048001

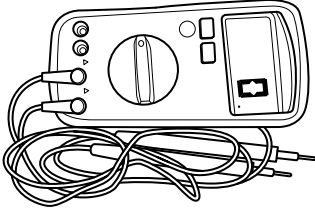
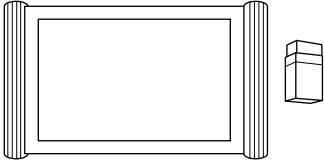
(8) As shown in illustration, click “Special Function” on diagnostic tester.



Shift lever calibration: Shift lever position failure. Push shift lever to corresponding required learning position and hold. Click corresponding position calibration of diagnostic tester screen and learning is successful according to diagnostic tester prompts.

6 On-vehicle Service

6.1 Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

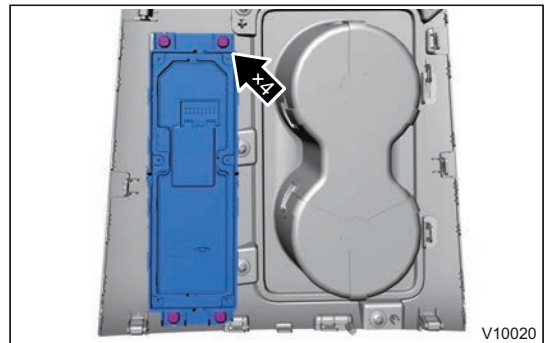
6.2 Electronic Shift Module

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- **When removing button-type electronic shift module, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing button-type electronic shift module. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the auto A/C control panel assembly.
- (4) Pry off upper cover plate body carefully with an interior crow plate.
- (5) Remove 4 fixing screws and button-type electronic shift module (1).



■ Installation

- (1) Install button-type electronic shift module to a proper position of upper cover plate body.
- (2) Install 4 fixing screws to button-type electronic shift module.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Install auto A/C control panel assembly and connect connector.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (5) Connect diagnostic tester, read and clear DTCs.

Caution

- **After replacing button-type electronic shift module, pull up and press down electronic parking switch once. After EPB malfunction light on instrument cluster turns off, clear history DTCs of EMS (Engine Control System), DCT (Transmission Control System), ESP (Electronic Stability System), BCM (Body Control Module) and ICM (Instrument Cluster Module).**

■ Matching Learning

Caution

- **It is necessary to write module VIN code with a diagnostic tester when replacing a new EGS module.**

- (1) Connect the diagnostic tester. Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Select the model “TX” .
- (3) Enter next interface and click “System Selection” .
- (4) Enter next screen, and click “EGS (Button-type Electronic Shift Module)” .
- (5) Enter next interface and click “Special function” .
- (6) The screen displays “Write VIN Code” .
- (7) The screen displays “Please enter 17-digit VIN code, VIN code can be seen on front windshield or name plate of vehicle, and input content (0-9, AZ), such as LVTDB11B8JD000113” .

6.3 Shift Paddle

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to read precautions for SRS airbag before removing steering wheel.**

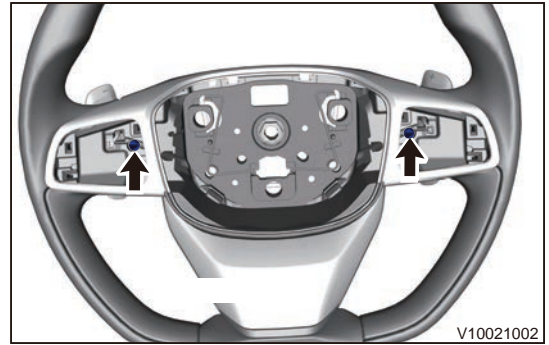
- (1) Set the steering wheel to straight-ahead position.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

Caution

- **Wait at least 90 seconds after disconnecting the negative battery cable to prevent airbag and belt pretensioner from being activated.**

- (4) Remove the driver airbag assembly.
- (5) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (6) Remove the multi-function switch assembly.
- (7) Remove the shift paddle.

- 1) Remove 2 fixing screws from shift paddle and steering wheel.



- 2) Remove the shift paddle assembly.

■ Inspection

- (1) Way to check shift paddle is as follow:

- 1) Using a multimeter, check value of resistance between connector PIN1 and PIN2. The value during pressing shift paddle is: $228 \Omega \leq R \leq 252 \Omega$. During releasing: $R \geq 10 M\Omega$

■ Installation

- (1) Install the shift paddle assembly.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws between shift paddle and steering wheel.

Tightening torque: $0.8 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Install the multi-function switch assembly.
- (4) Install the steering wheel assembly.
- (5) Install the driver airbag assembly.
- (6) Install the negative battery cable.

TRANSFER CASE

16.1	TRANSFER CASE	778
1	Warning and Precaution.....	778
1.1	Warning.....	778
1.2	Precautions.....	778
2	Overview.....	778
2.1	Description.....	778
2.2	System Component Diagram.....	778
2.3	Specifications.....	779
2.4	Transfer Maintenance.....	779
3	On-vehicle Service.....	779
3.1	Transfer Assembly.....	779

16.1 TRANSFER CASE

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

- (1) It is not recommended to use non-original replacement parts, because they can be damage some units and affect vehicle safety.
- (2) Take extra care when operating locking plate and spring load retaining equipment. For personal safety, it is recommended to wear safety glasses that meet industrial strength in process of working in vehicle or part assembly area of vehicle.

1.2 Precautions

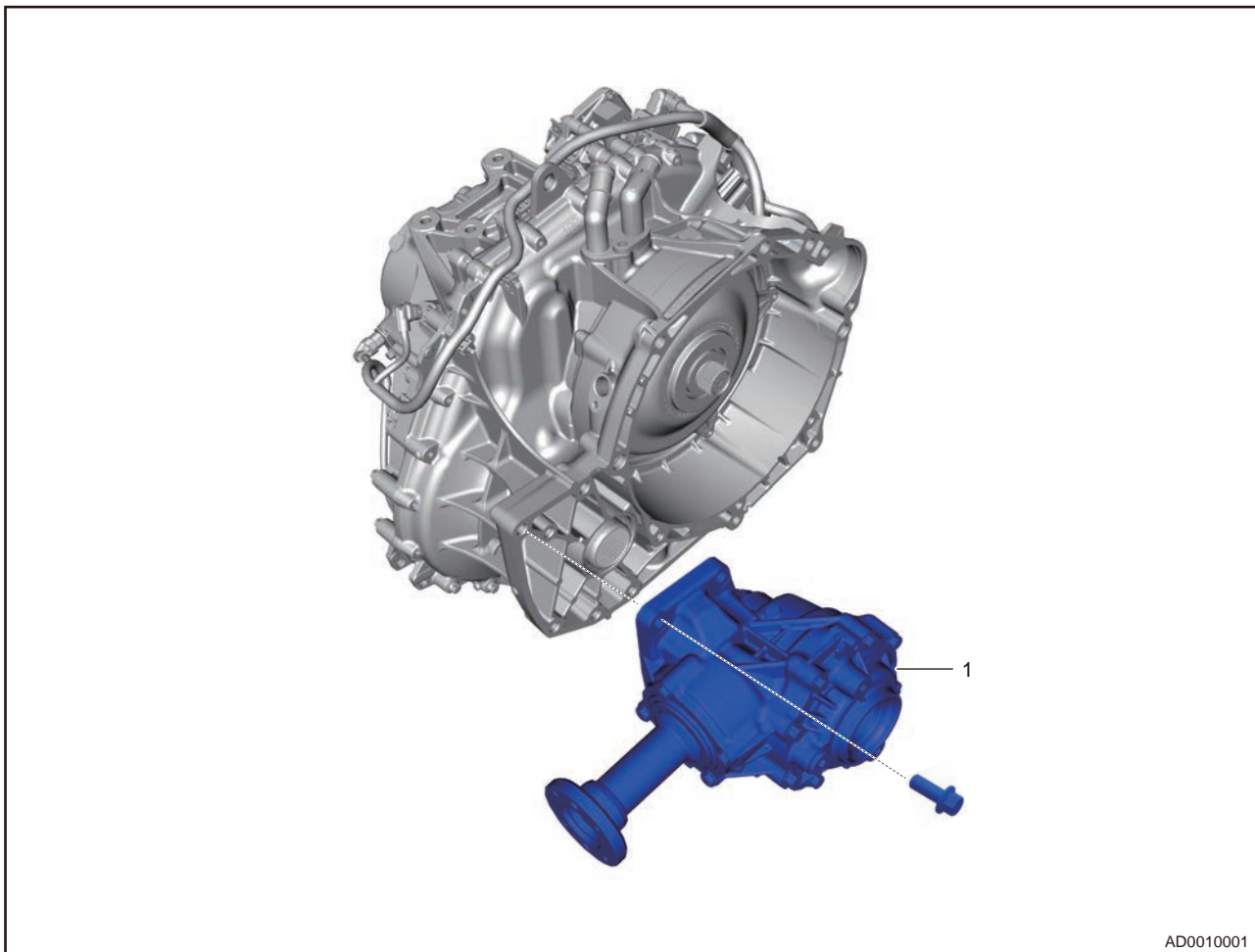
- (1) In order to ensure safe and reliable operation of vehicle and drive shaft, the correct repair and maintenance is very important. Some of these operations need to use some special designed tools, and these tools can only be used in the corresponding repair and maintenance operations.

2 Overview

2.1 Description

Transfer case function is to distribute power output from transmission to each drive axle and further increase torque.

2.2 System Component Diagram



AD0010001

1	Transfer Case Assembly		
---	------------------------	--	--

Transfer case is a device that distributes engine power, which can output power to rear axle.

2.3 Specifications

Torque Specifications

Description	Torque (N·m)
5 Fixing Bolts Between Transfer Case and Transmission	120 ± 10
1 Fixing Bolt Between Transfer Case and Transmission	70 ± 10
Baffle Plate Fixing Bolt	3.7 - 5

2.4 Transfer Maintenance

Transfer oil is recommended to be replaced every 50,000 km after warranty period. Oil standard:

Oil Type	Total Capacity (After-sales Maintenance Oil Capacity)
Sinopec GL5 80W-90 Gear Oil	0.31 ± 0.03 L

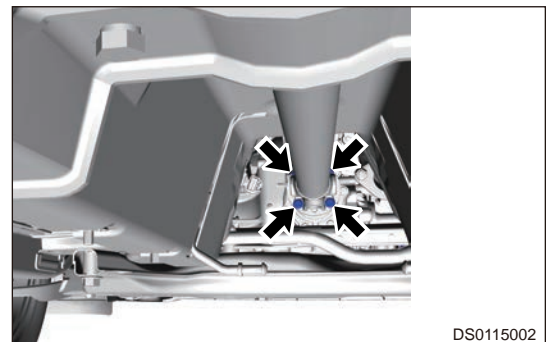
3 On-vehicle Service

3.1 Transfer Assembly

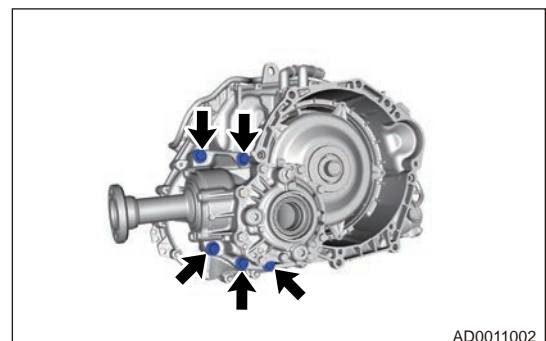
■ Removal

- (1) Remove the front right wheel.
- (2) Remove the front right drive shaft assembly (4WD).
- (3)
- (4) Remove the precatalytic converter assembly.
- (5) Remove the transfer case assembly.

- 1) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between propeller shaft and PTU output flange.



- 2) Remove 5 fixing bolts (arrow) between transfer and transmission.



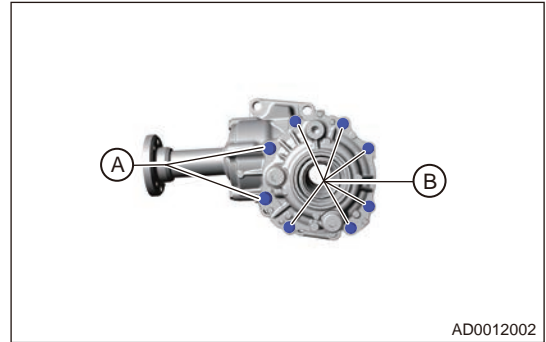
- 3) Remove the transfer assembly.

⚠ Warning

- When handling the transfer, please pay attention to the flange connected with intermediate shaft and spline connected with transmission differential. Please pay attention to whether O-ring is intact and whether the oil seal is intact to avoid touching the lip of oil seal. Please handle the transfer case with care during whole operation, and do not move the transfer case upside down.

■ Disassembly

- (1) Remove the output shaft oil seal
 - 1) Remove 8 fixing bolts (A and B) from transfer cover.



AD0012002

- 2) Slightly tap the edge of cover with a rubber hammer, and remove cover.
- 3) Remove O-ring from cover.

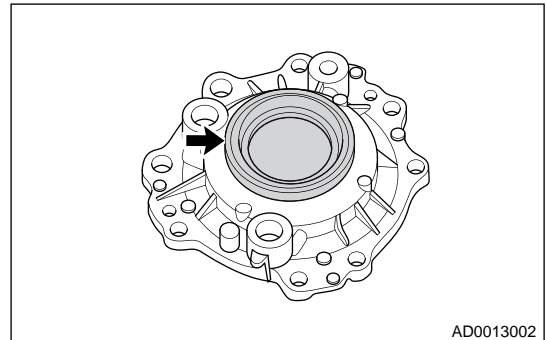
⚠ Warning

- Do not use tools or damage cover.

- 4) Slightly tap the metal part of oil seal from inside to remove oil seal.

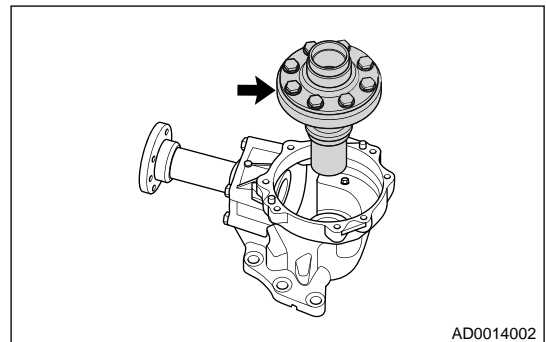
⚠ Warning

- Do not take it out with a tool during removal.



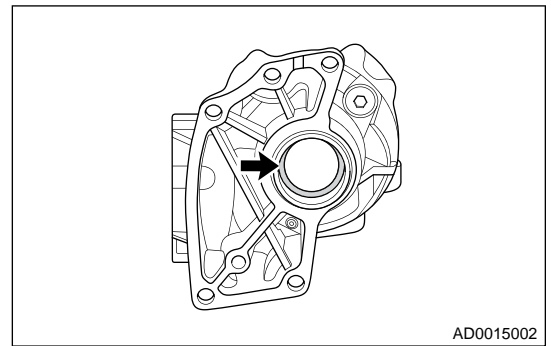
AD0013002

- 5) Remove the main shaft.



AD0014002

6) Slightly tap the oil seal, and then remove it.

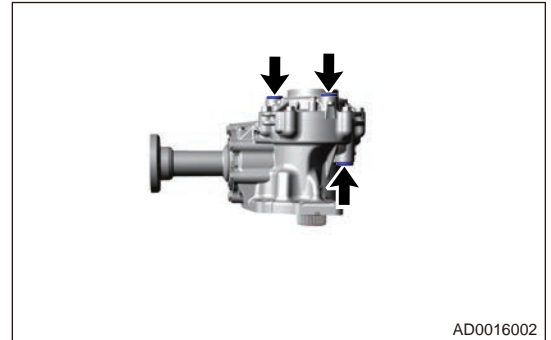


(2) Remove the oil plugs.

1) Remove the oil plugs (arrow).

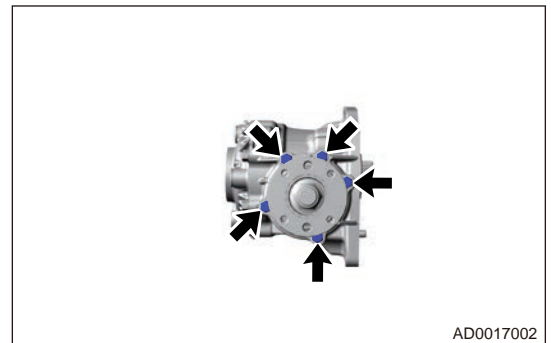
Warning

- The used gasket cannot be reused.

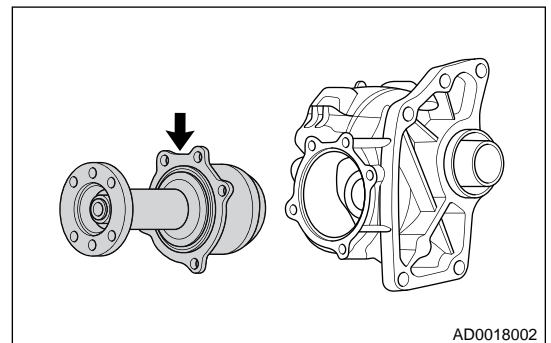


(3) Remove the O-ring.

1) Remove 5 fixing bolts (arrow) from main gear assembly.



2) Remove the main gear assembly (arrow).

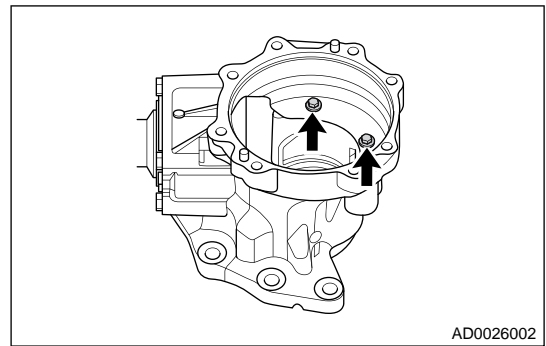


3) Remove the O-ring.

(4) Remove the baffle plate.

1) Remove the main shaft assembly.

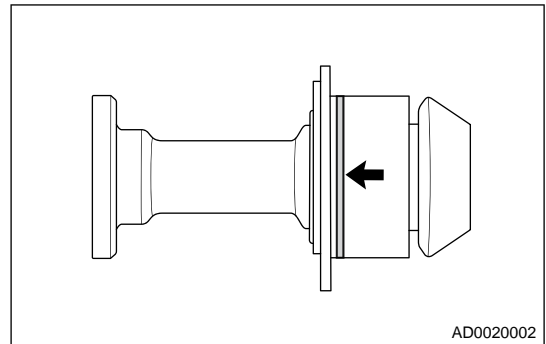
- 2) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) from baffle plate.



- 3) Remove the baffle plate.

■ Reassembly

- (1) Install the baffle plate.
 - 1) Install 2 fixing bolts to baffle plate.
Tightening torque: 3.7 - 5 N·m
 - 2) Install the main shaft assembly.
- (2) Install the O-ring.
 - 1) Replace O-ring, and apply vaseline oil to O-ring and outer diameter of bearing.



- 2) Install main gear and tighten 5 fixing bolts with specified torque.
Tightening torque: 45 - 50 N·m
- (3) Install the oil plug.
Tightening torque: 30 - 39 N·m
 - 1) Loosen 2 to 3 teeth of pre-locking oil hole, tighten oil plug to torque range of 30 - 39 nm with a torque wrench and paint the oil plug, indicating that torque is within specified range.
- (4) Install the output shaft oil seal.
 - 1) Put main shaft into case, turn the flange slightly, confirm that main shaft assembly is placed in place, replace O-ring with a new one and install O-ring.

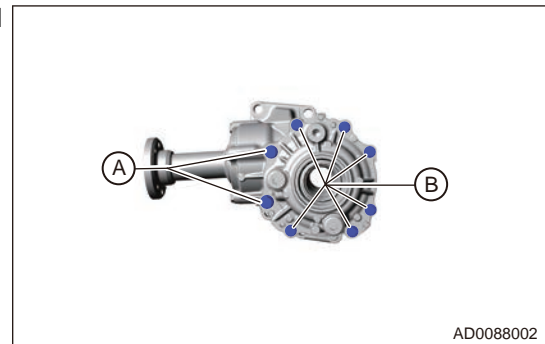
⚠ Warning

- After installing O-ring, apply vaseline oil.

- 2) Install transfer cover and tighten 8 fixing bolts (A and B) with specified torque.

Tightening torque A: 45.5 - 50.5 N·m

Tightening torque B: 28 - 31.5 N·m

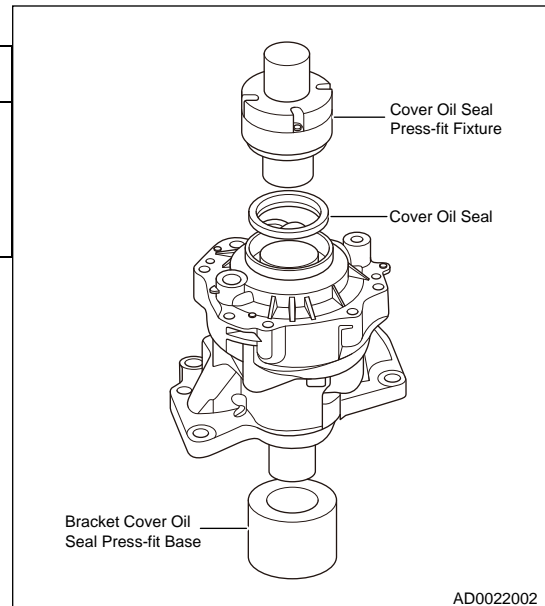


AD0088002

- 3) Install oil seal with oil seal press-fit fixture.

Warning

- **Apply vaseline oil to cover before assembly, 100% visually check if oil seal lip is turned over after tapping. Otherwise, the oil seal must be removed and installed again.**



AD0022002

Installation

Warning

- **Install transfer spline to differential by turning it left and right, and align the transfer case dowel pin with positioning hole of differential case simultaneously.**
- **When installing 5 tightening bolts between transfer and transmission, follow the order of up, down, left and right and tighten diagonally.**

- (1) Install the transfer assembly.
- (2) Install 5 fixing bolts between transfer and transmission.

Tightening torque: 120 ± 10 N·m

- (3) Install 4 fixing bolts between propeller shaft and PTU output flange.

Tightening torque: 33 ± 3 N·m

- (4) Install the precatalytic converter assembly.
- (5) Install the front right drive shaft assembly (4WD).
- (6) Fill the transfer oil.
- (7) Install the front right wheel.

REAR FINAL DRIVE

17.1	REAR FINAL DRIVE	785
1	Warning and Precaution	785
1.1	Warning.....	785
1.2	Precautions.....	785
2	Overview	785
2.1	Description.....	785
2.2	System Component Diagram.....	785
2.3	Specifications.....	786
3	System Circuit Diagram	787
3.1	AWD Control System Circuit Diagram.....	787
3.2	AWD Control Module Assembly Terminal List.....	787
4	Diagnosis Contents	788
4.1	Problem Symptoms Table.....	788
4.2	Diagnosis Procedure.....	788
4.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure.....	789
4.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.....	789
4.5	Body Ground Inspection.....	789
4.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart.....	790
5	On-vehicle Service	797
5.1	Final Drive Maintenance.....	797
5.2	Replacement of Rear Final Drive Oil.....	798
5.3	Rear Final Drive Assembly.....	799
5.4	Torque Manager Control Unit.....	801
5.5	Drive Shaft Oil Seal (Final Drive Side).....	802

17.1 REAR FINAL DRIVE

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

- (1) It is not recommended to use non-original replacement parts, because they can be damage some units and affect vehicle safety.
- (2) Do not use non-standard final drive oil to avoid damaging final drive.

1.2 Precautions

In order to ensure safe and reliable operation of vehicle and drive shaft, the correct repair and maintenance is very important. Some of these operations need to use some special designed tools, and these tools can only be used in the corresponding repair and maintenance operations.

2 Overview

2.1 Description

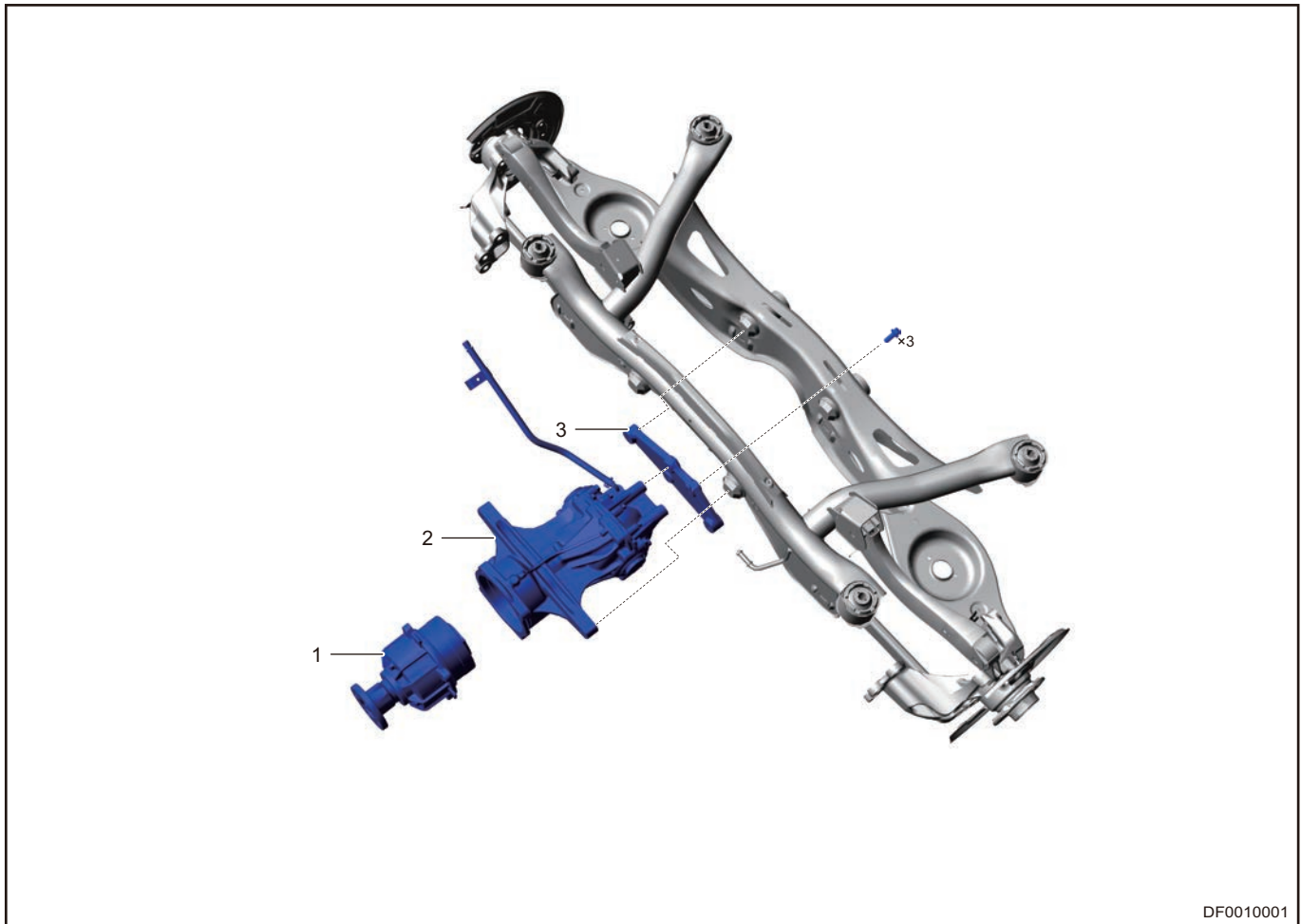
Dana Spicer M150 single speed rear axle is an integral rear final drive, which adopts a hypoid gear design. The center axis of drive gear is located below the center axis of driven gear. Drive gear and driven gear consist of a ring gear with a diameter of 150 mm and a driven gear matched with it. Drive gear is positioned between driven gear and internal drive gear conical bearing with selectable gaskets, and supported by two conical rolling shafts. Drive gear bearing is adjusted by drive gear nut and gasket during pre-installation. The whole rear axle housing is composed of bracket and rear cover. The connecting part of rear cover is sealed with RTV sealant.

Differential case is an integral unit with two openings for the assembly of internal components and flow of lubricant. The differential shaft is fixed by fixing pin. Differential assembly is placed in the bracket housing. Differential adjusts the clearance through adjusting shim between outer rolling bearing cup and bracket, and is fixed by movable bearing cap and bracket.

The rear axle drive gear obtains power from engine through transmission and propeller shaft. Drive gear rotates the differential by engaging with driven gear, which is fixed on outer edge of differential case with bolts. Differential side gear is connected to drive shaft of vehicle. Drive shaft is connected to tires. During steering, differential gear system applies torque separately to drive shafts, so that they rotate at different speeds. In differential case, two drive gears are placed on differential shaft fixed to case. These drive gears engage with differential side gear. When differential case rotates, drive shaft and wheels also rotate. When one wheel and axle shaft need to be rotated faster than the other one (such as when steering), the differential gear on the faster side will make drive gear to rotate on differential side gear with low speed, so that the axle shafts on both sides to rotate at different speeds. When driving straight ahead, the differential drive gear will not rotate on the drive gear matching shaft. This is because the torque input by drive gear acts equally on both side gears, and drive gear rotates together with drive gear matching shaft, rather than rotating around it.

2.2 System Component Diagram

Rear Final Drive Assembly



DF0010001

1	Torque Manager	2	Rear Final Drive
3	Rear Final Drive Bracket		

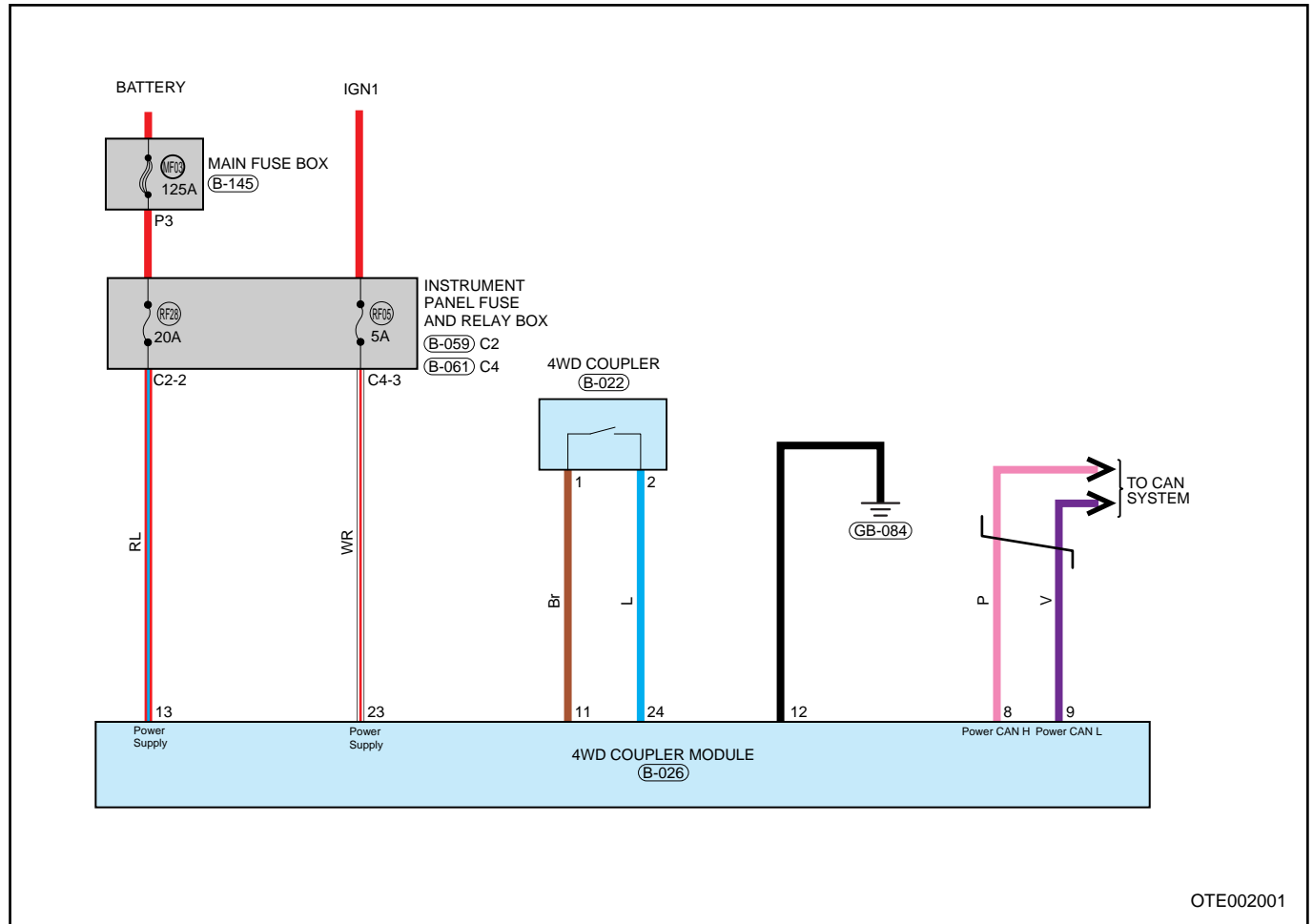
2.3 Specifications

Torque Specification

Description	Torque (N·m)
Torque Manager Control Unit Fixing Bolt	8 ± 1
Rear Final Drive Bracket Fixing Bolt	110 - 130
Rear Final Drive Filler Plug/Drain Plug	24 - 34

3 System Circuit Diagram

3.1 AWD Control System Circuit Diagram



OTE002001

3.2 AWD Control Module Assembly Terminal List

Terminal No.	Terminal Definition	Terminal No.	Terminal Definition
1	—	14	—
2	—	15	—
3	—	16	—
4	—	17	—
5	—	18	—
6	—	19	—
7	—	20	—
8	CAN-H	21	—
9	CAN-L	22	—
10	—	23	Ignition Switch Input
11	Solenoid Coil Output	24	Solenoid Coil Return

Terminal No.	Terminal Definition	Terminal No.	Terminal Definition
12	Power Supply Negative	25	Power Supply Negative
13	Power Supply Positive	26	Power Supply Positive

4 Diagnosis Contents

4.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

- Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
AWD malfunction indicator ON	Torque manager damage
	AWD module damage
	Abnormal control circuit
	Abnormal vehicle speed signal

4.2 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

- Use following procedures to troubleshoot the final drive control system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

NG	Replace battery.
-----------	-------------------------

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Next

4	Read DTCs
----------	------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

NG	Repair according to Problem Symptoms Table.
-----------	--

OK

5	Read DTCs (current DTC and history DTC)
----------	--

Check if battery voltage is normal.

NG

Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTC fault flow.

OK

6

Repair according to DTC

Next

7

Adjust, repair or replace

Next

8

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Check if battery voltage is normal.

Next

End.

4.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is normal before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Using diagnostic tester, record and clear DTCs stored in AWD control module assembly.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- Using the diagnostic tester, select Read DTCs.
- If DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is current. Go to DTC chart, and perform troubleshooting.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is intermittent. Please refer to Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.

4.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and body ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common body ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4.5 Body Ground Inspection

Body ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Body ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance.

This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper body ground. A loose or corroded body ground can affect the control circuit. Check the body ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove body ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall body ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if there are add-on accessories that interfere with body ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one body ground terminal, check for proper crimps. Make sure all wire harnesses are clean, securely fastened with providing a good body ground path.

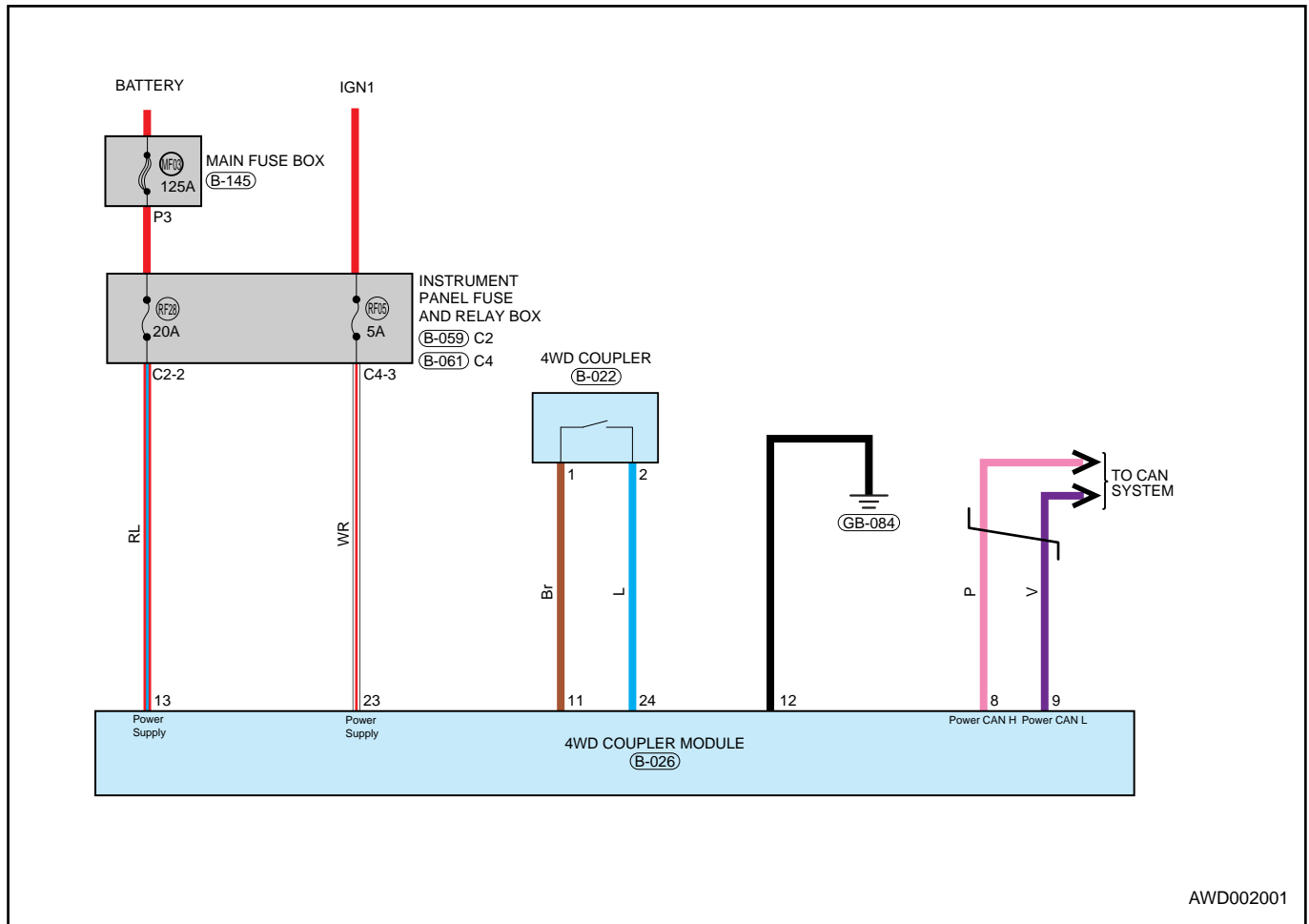
4.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
P172813	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Open Circuit
P172912	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Circuit Short to Power Supply
P173011	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Circuit Short to Ground
P177198	Electromagnetic Coupler Overheating
P177398	Electromagnetic Coupler Close to Overheating
P30031C	System Voltage Out of Range
U000188	Bus Off
U010000	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
U010100	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
U012200	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ESC
U012800	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EPB
U015100	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ACM
U015500	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with IPC
U021200	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with SCM
U024800	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with PEPS
U040181	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from EMS
U040186	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EMS
U040281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from TCU
U040286	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from TCU
U041681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from ESC
U041686	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from ESC
U041781	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from EPB
U041786	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EPB
U042381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from IPC
U042386	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from IPC
U042681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from PEPS

DTC	DTC Definition
U042686	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from PEPS
U042981	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from SCM
U042986	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SCM
U045281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from ACM
U045286	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SACM

DTC	P30031C	System Voltage Out of Range
-----	---------	-----------------------------

Circuit Diagram



AWD002001

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P30031C	System Voltage Out of Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure 4WD coupler module failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check for 4WD coupler module failure

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

Confirmation procedure:
 Confirm that battery voltage is 9 to 16 V under starting state before performing following procedures.

1 Check fuse

(a) Check if the fuses RF28 20A, RF05 5A in instrument panel fuse box are blown.

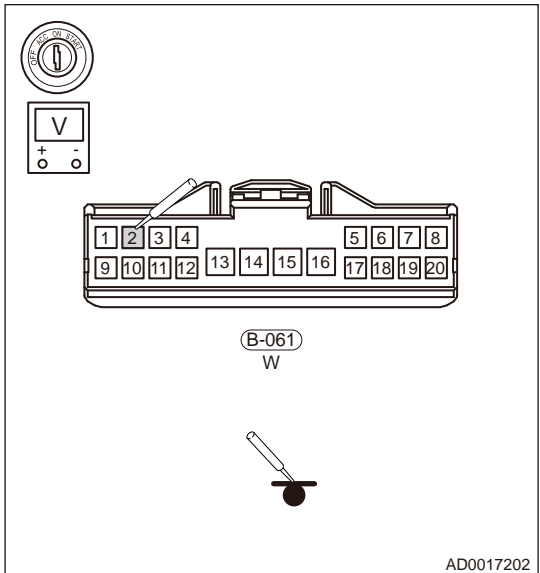
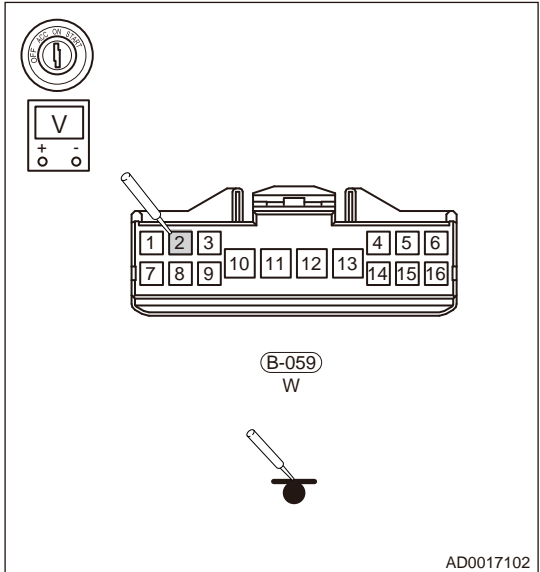
NG → **Replace fuse.**

OK

2 Check instrument panel fuse box output voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Measure voltage between instrument panel fuse box B-059 terminal 2, B-061 terminal 2 and body ground (using a digital multimeter).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-059 (2) - Body ground	ON	12V
B-061 (2) - Body ground	ON	12V



NG

Replace instrument panel fuse box assembly.

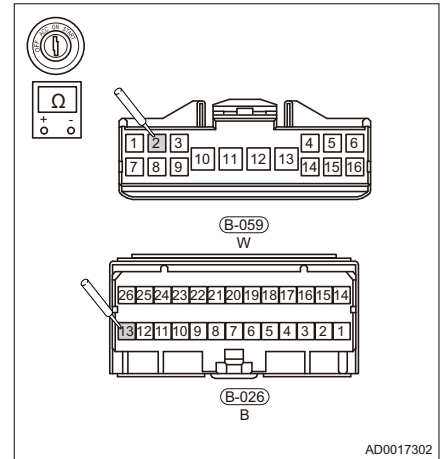
OK

3 Check wire harness for open

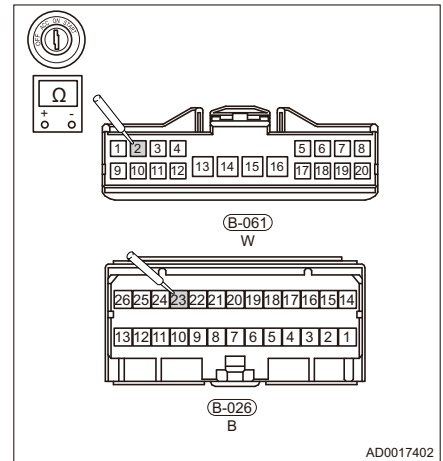
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect 4WD coupler module connector B-026, instrument panel fuse box connectors B-059 and B-061.
- (d) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure if resistance between B-059 (2) - B-026 (13) and B-061 (2) - B-026 (23) is normal to check wire harness for open.

OK

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-059 (2) - B-026 (13)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-061 (2) - B-026 (23)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



AD0017302



AD0017402

OK

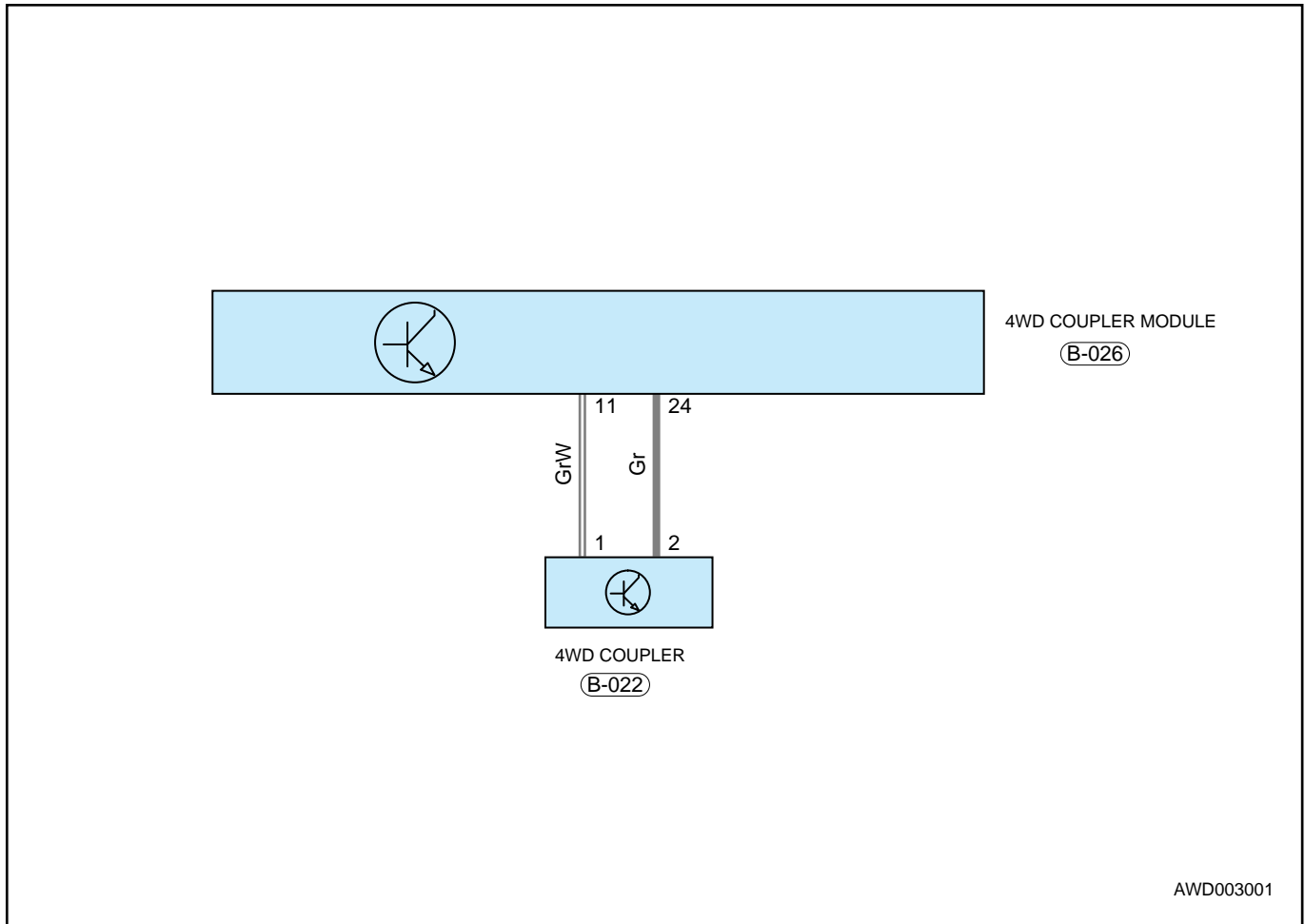
Replace 4WD coupler module assembly.

NG

Handle and repair related wire harness.

DTC	P172813	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Open Circuit
DTC	P172912	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	P173011	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Circuit Short to Ground

Circuit Diagram



Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause	Repair Advice
P172813	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Open Circuit	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector failure Electromagnetic coupler failure 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness or connector Check electromagnetic coupler
P172912	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Circuit Short to Power Supply		
P173011	Electromagnetic Coupling Coil Circuit Short to Ground		

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

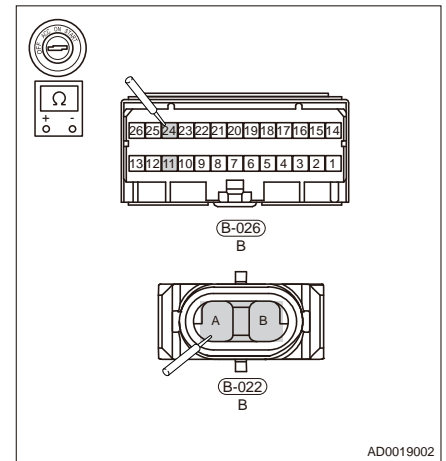
1 Check wire harness for open or short

- (a) Disconnect electromagnetic coupler connector B-022 and 4WD coupler module connector B-026.
- (b) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (c) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (d) Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

(e) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure resistance of connecting wire harness between B-022 (1) - B-026 (11) and B-022 (2) - B-026 (24) to check wire harness for open.

OK

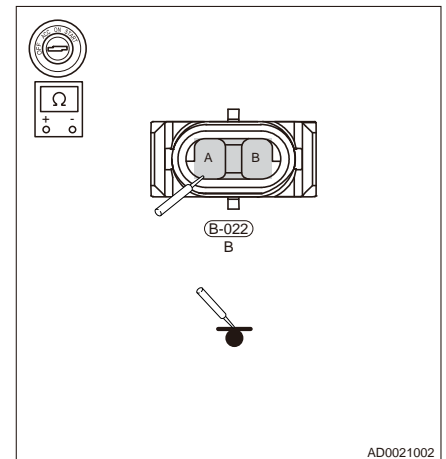
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-026 (11) - B-022 (A)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-026 (24) - B-022 (B)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(f) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure resistance between terminals 1 and 2 of connector B-022 and body ground respectively to check wire harness for short to body ground.

OK

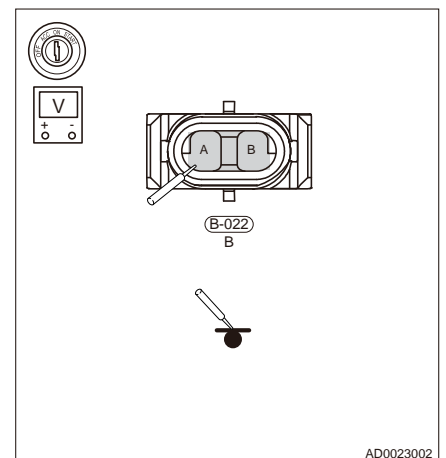
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-022 (A) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-022 (B) - Body ground	Always	∞



(g) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, (confirm that connectors B-026 and B-022 are disconnected). Using voltage band of digital multimeter, measure voltage between terminal A and B of connector B-022 and body ground respectively to check wire harness for short to power supply.

OK

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-022 (A) - Body ground	Always	0V
B-022 (B) - Body ground	Always	0V



OK	Replace electromagnetic coupler assembly.
NG	Repair or replace wire harness.

DTC	U000188	Bus Off
DTC	U010000	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U010100	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U012200	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ESC

DTC	U012800	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EPB
DTC	U015100	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ACM
DTC	U015500	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with IPC
DTC	U021200	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with SCM
DTC	U024800	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with PEPS
DTC	U040181	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from EMS
DTC	U040186	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EMS
DTC	U040281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from TCU
DTC	U040286	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from TCU
DTC	U041681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from ESC
DTC	U041686	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from ESC
DTC	U041781	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from EPB
DTC	U041786	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EPB
DTC	U042381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from IPC
DTC	U042386	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from IPC
DTC	U042681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from PEPS
DTC	U042686	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from PEPS
DTC	U042981	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from SCM
DTC	U042986	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SCM
DTC	U045281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from ACM
DTC	U045286	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SACM

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
U000188	Bus Off
U010000	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
U010100	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
U012200	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ESC
U012800	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EPB
U015100	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ACM

DTC	DTC Definition
U015500	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with IPC
U021200	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with SCM
U024800	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with PEPS
U040181	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from EMS
U040186	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EMS
U040281	Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from TCU
U040286	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from TCU
U041681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from ESC
U041686	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from ESC
U041781	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from EPB
U041786	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EPB
U042381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from IPC
U042386	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from IPC
U042681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from PEPS
U042686	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from PEPS
U042981	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from SCM
U042986	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SCM
U045281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Length Received from ACM
U045286	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SACM

1

Refer to "CAN Network System" for troubleshooting

5 On-vehicle Service

5.1 Final Drive Maintenance

Final drive oil is recommended to be replaced every 50,000 km after warranty period. Oil standard:

Oil Type	Total Capacity (After-sales Maintenance Oil Capacity)
Sinopec GL5 80W-90 Gear Oil	0.445 ± 0.03 L

5.2 Replacement of Rear Final Drive Oil

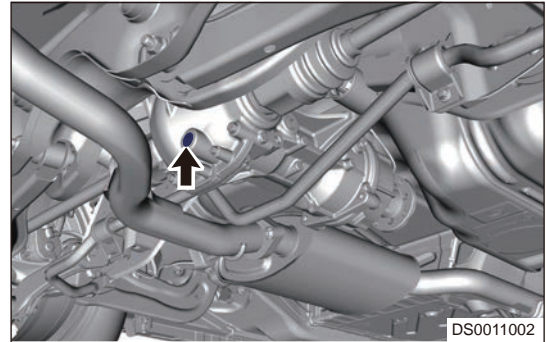
⚠ Caution

- Replace rear final drive oil only when engine stops and rear final drive cools down.
- Used filler plug and drain plug are non-reusable.

■ Rear Final Drive Oil Draining

- (1) Park vehicle on a level ground.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Raise the vehicle to a proper height.
- (4) Put a recovering container under transmission drain hole.
- (5) Remove drain plug (with magnet) (arrow) with a tool.

Tightening torque: 24 - 34 N·m



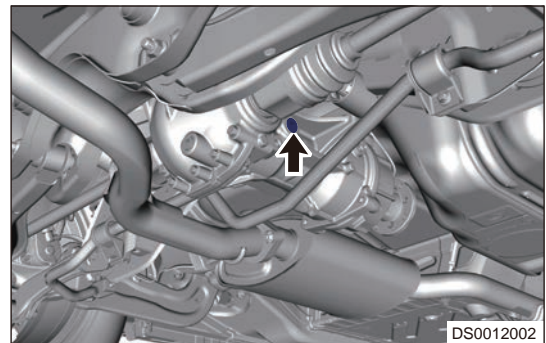
■ Rear Final Drive Oil Filling

⚠ Caution

- Gear oil type: Sinopec GL5 80W-90 gear oil, oil capacity: 445 ml ± 30 ml.

- (1) Make sure that rear final drive drain plug is tightened in place.
- (2) Remove filler plug (with magnet) (arrow) with a tool.

Tightening torque: 24 - 34 N·m



- (3) Fill rear final drive oil from fill plug.
- (4) Replace filler plug with a new one after filling, and tighten it in place according to torque.

5.3 Rear Final Drive Assembly

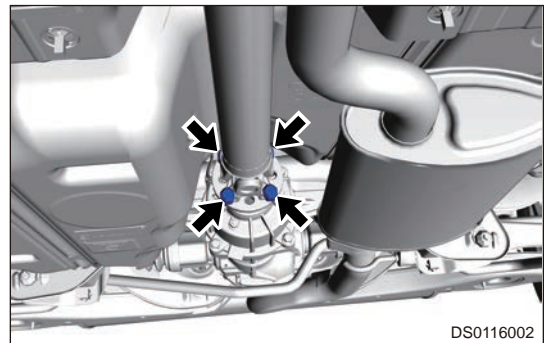
■ Removal

⚠ Caution

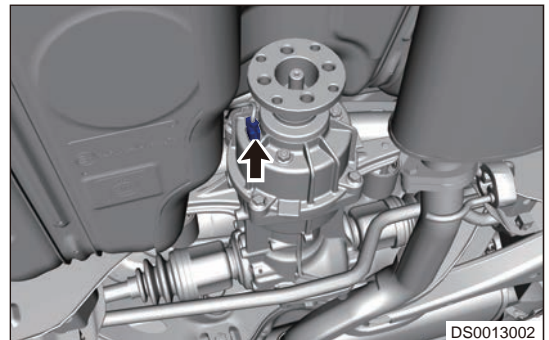
- If gear loaded housing is submerged in water, especially if it exceeds the breather valve, it is recommended to drain gear lubricant daily and check internal components for any damage and/or contamination caused by water.
- Clean, test and replace damaged parts before assembly and refilling of specified gear lubricant.

- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Drain the final drive oil.
- (3) Remove the rear left drive shaft assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear right drive shaft assembly.
- (5) Remove the rear final drive assembly.
 - 1) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between propeller shaft and torque manager flange.

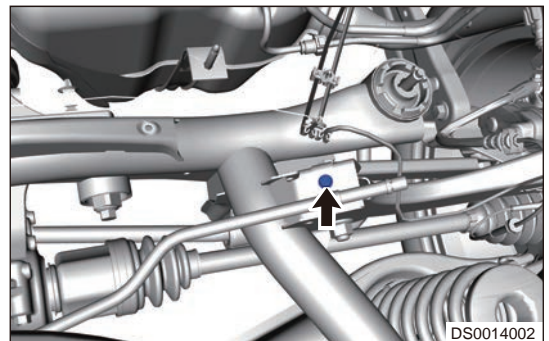
Tightening torque: $71.5 \pm 6.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 2) Disconnect the torque manager connector (arrow).

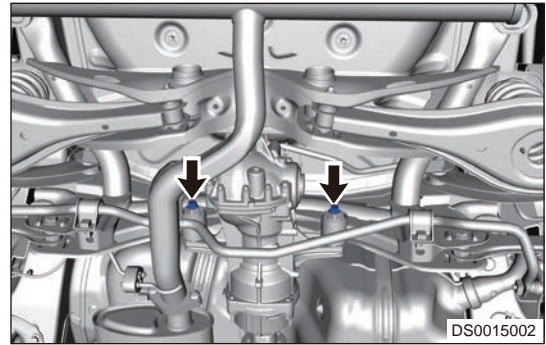


- 3) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between rear final drive breather pipe and rear sub frame.

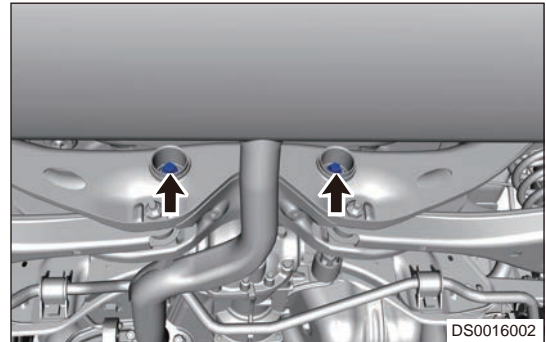


- 4) Place jack firmly in a proper position under rear final drive assembly.

- 5) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) between rear final drive and front part of rear sub frame.



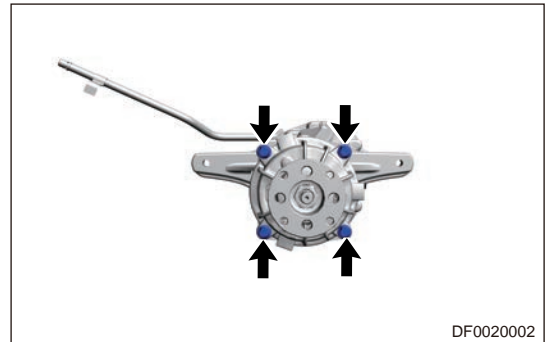
- 6) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) between rear final drive and rear part of rear sub frame.



- 7) Remove the rear final drive assembly.

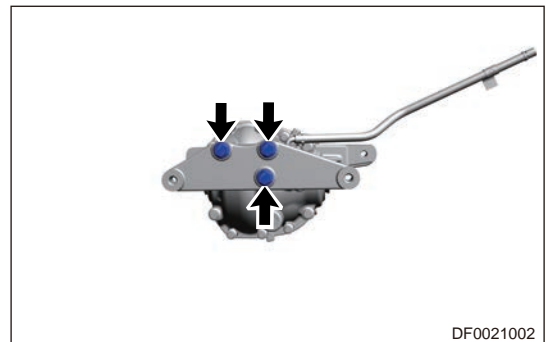
■ Disassembly

- (1) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between torque manager and rear final drive.



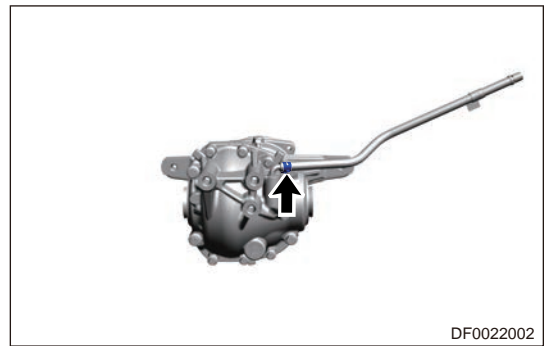
- (2) Remove the torque manager.
- (3) Remove 3 fixing bolts (arrow) between rear final drive bracket and rear final drive.

Tightening torque: 110 - 130 N·m



- (4) Remove the rear final drive bracket.

- (5) Remove clamp (arrow) and breather pipe.



■ Reassembly

- (1) Install breather pipe and clamp.
- (2) Install the rear final drive bracket.
- (3) Install 3 fixing bolts between rear final drive bracket and rear final drive.

Tightening torque: 110 - 130 N·m

- (4) Install the torque manager.
- (5) Install 4 fixing bolts between torque manager and rear final drive.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the rear final drive assembly.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts (arrow) between rear final drive and rear part of rear sub frame.

Tightening torque: 120 ± 10 N·m

- (3) Install 2 fixing bolts (arrow) between rear final drive and front part of rear sub frame.

Tightening torque: 120 ± 10 N·m

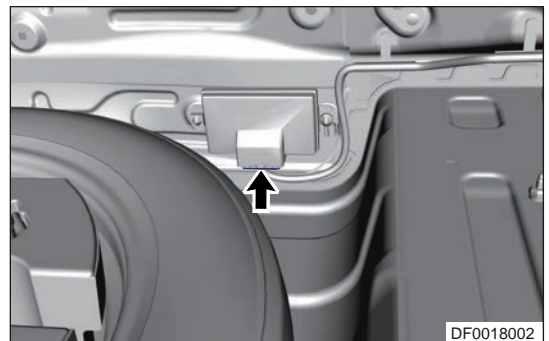
- (4) Install fixing bolt between rear final drive breather pipe and rear sub frame.
- (5) Install the torque manager connector.
- (6) Install 4 fixing bolts between propeller shaft and torque manager flange.

Tightening torque: 71.5 ± 6.5 N·m

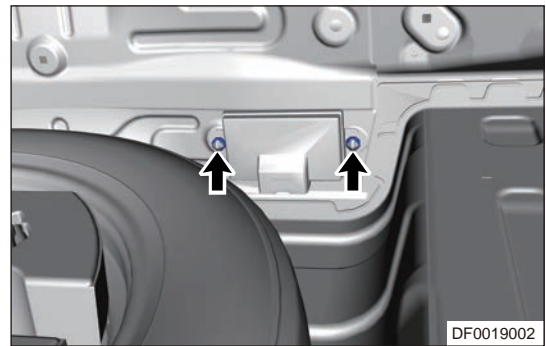
5.4 Torque Manager Control Unit

■ Removal

- (1) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (2) Remove the torque manager control unit.
 - 1) Disconnect the torque manager control unit connector (arrow).



- 2) Remove 2 fixing nuts (arrow) from torque manager control unit.



- 3) Remove the torque manager control unit.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the torque manager control unit.
- (2) Install 2 fixing nuts to torque manager control unit.

Tightening torque: 8 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Install the torque manager control unit connector.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.5 Drive Shaft Oil Seal (Final Drive Side)

■ Replacement

⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Make sure that safety lock of lifter has been locked, when removing and installing chassis parts.**

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
 - Procedures listed below are for left side.
- (1) Remove the rear left wheel.
 - (2) Drain the final drive oil.
 - (3) Remove the rear left drive shaft.
 - (4) Remove the drive shaft oil seal.
 - 1) Using a screwdriver with the tip wrapped with protective tape, remove drive shaft oil seal.

⚠ Caution

- **Ensure that the transmission oil has been drained before removal.**
- **Oil seal is a non-reusable part, which must be replaced after each removal.**

- (5) Install the drive shaft oil seal.
 - 1) Install new drive shaft oil seal in position with a tool.
- (6) Install the rear left drive shaft.
- (7) Fill the final drive oil.
- (8) Install the rear left wheel.

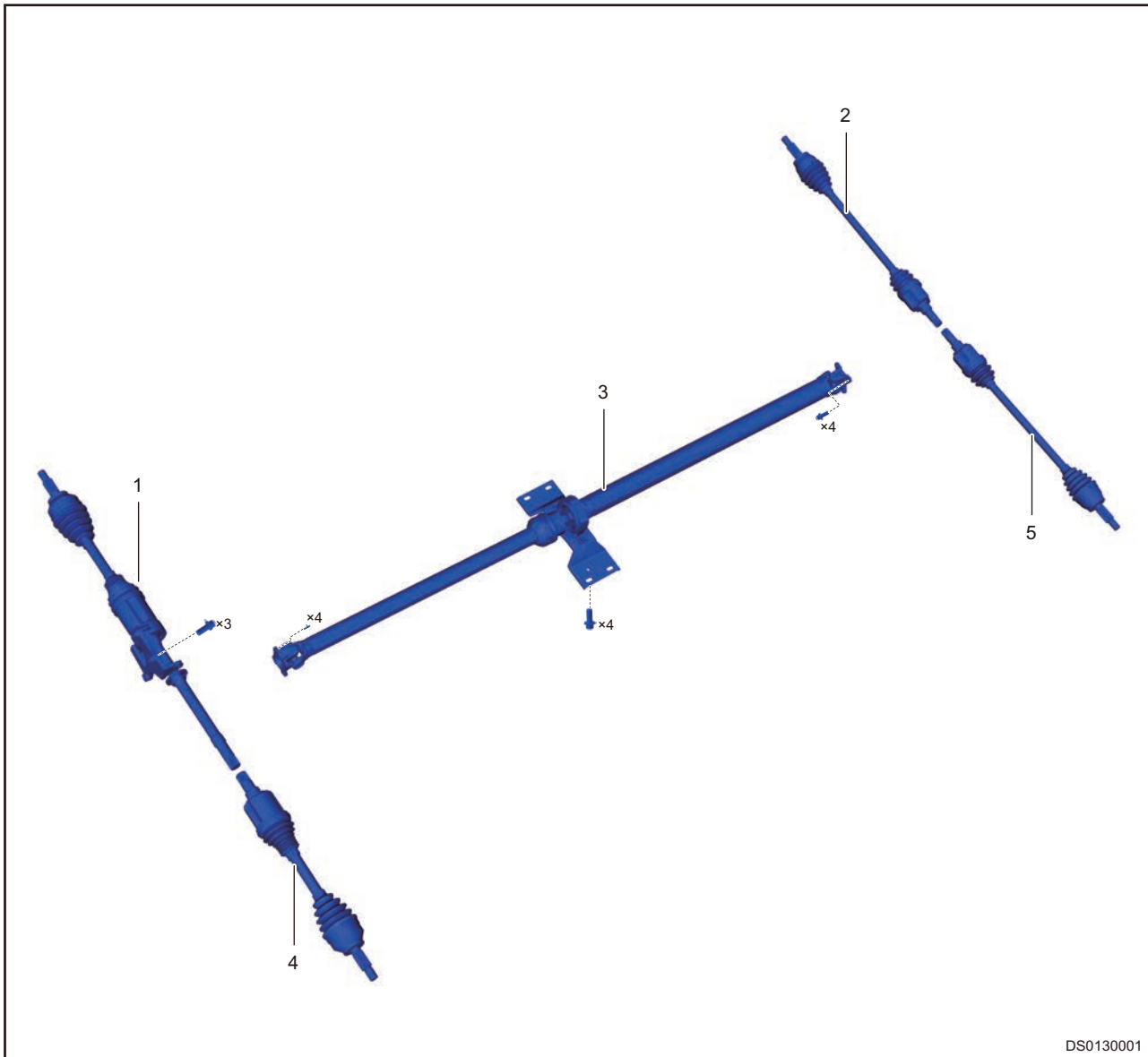
DRIVE SHAFT

18.1	DRIVE SHAFT	804
1	Overview	804
1.1	Description.....	804
1.2	Specifications	804
2	Removal and Installation.....	805
2.1	Front Drive Shaft Assembly (2WD).....	805
2.2	Front Drive Shaft Assembly (4WD).....	806
2.3	Rear Drive Shaft Assembly (4WD).....	809
2.4	Propeller Intermediate Shaft Assembly (4WD).....	811

18.1 DRIVE SHAFT

1 Overview

1.1 Description



1	Front Right Drive Shaft Assembly	2	Rear Right Drive Shaft Assembly
3	Propeller Intermediate Shaft Assembly	4	Front Left Drive Shaft Assembly
5	Rear Left Drive Shaft Assembly		

Drive shaft, which is a solid shaft, transmits torque between differential and drive wheels. Generally, the inner end of drive shaft is connected with drive shaft gear by spline, and the outer end is connected with wheel hub. Drive shaft transmits torque from differential to wheels, thus rotating the wheels to run vehicle.

Propeller intermediate shaft is the shaft which transmits rotation of transmission to main final drive.

1.2 Specifications

Torque Specification

Description	Torque (N·m)
Tightening Bolt Between Propeller Intermediate Shaft Bracket and Body	71.5 ± 6.5
Tightening Bolt Between Propeller Intermediate Shaft and Torque Manager	71.5 ± 6.5
Tightening Bolt Between Propeller Intermediate Shaft and PTU	33 ± 3
Fixing Bolt Between Front Right Drive Shaft Bracket and Engine	70 ± 10

2 Removal and Installation

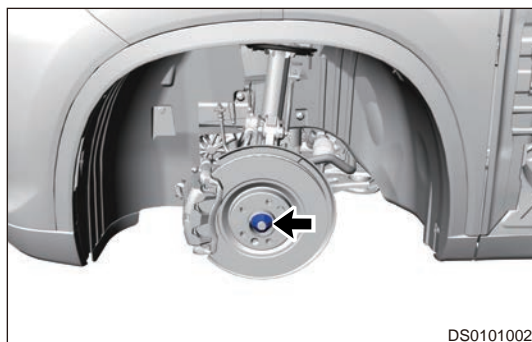
2.1 Front Drive Shaft Assembly (2WD)

■ Removal

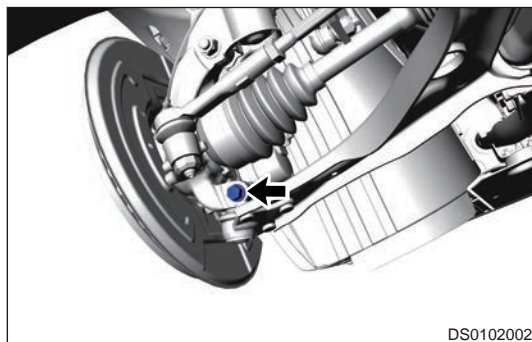
Caution

- Use same removal and installation procedures for left drive shaft and right drive shaft assembly.
- Removal procedures listed below are for left drive shaft.

- (1) Remove the front left wheel.
- (2) Drain the transmission oil.
- (3) Remove the front left drive shaft assembly.
 - 1) Remove fixing nut (arrow) from front left drive shaft.

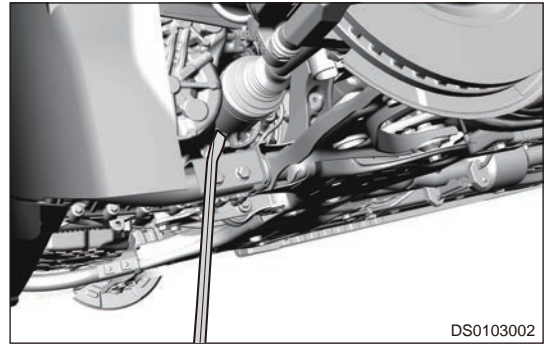


- 2) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between front left lower control arm and steering knuckle.



- 3) Disconnect the connection between front left lower control arm and steering knuckle.

- 4) Use crowbar to pry out inner ball cage spline inserted into transmission end.



- 5) Remove the front left drive shaft.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install the front left drive shaft.
 - 1) Raise the left drive shaft first until drive shaft spline end axis centering is flush with transmission differential hole center.
 - 2) Insert oil seal protection fixture into transmission output shaft oil seal.
 - 3) Push drive shaft into fixture, and remove fixture after drive shaft spline passes through fixture.
 - 4) Finally, push the drive shaft to bottom.
- (2) Install the connection between front left lower control arm and steering knuckle.
- (3) Install fixing bolt between front left lower control arm and steering knuckle.

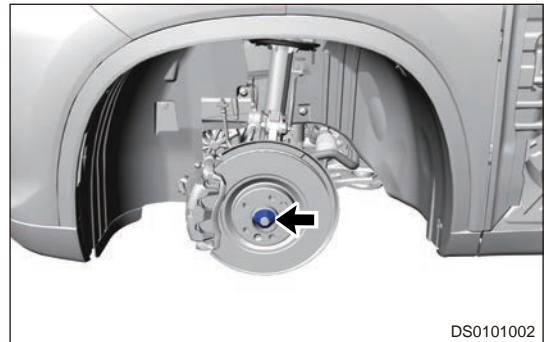
Tightening torque: $95 \pm 7.3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (4) Install fixing nut to front left drive shaft.
- (5) Fill the transmission oil.
- (6) Install the front left wheel.

2.2 Front Drive Shaft Assembly (4WD)

■ **Removal**

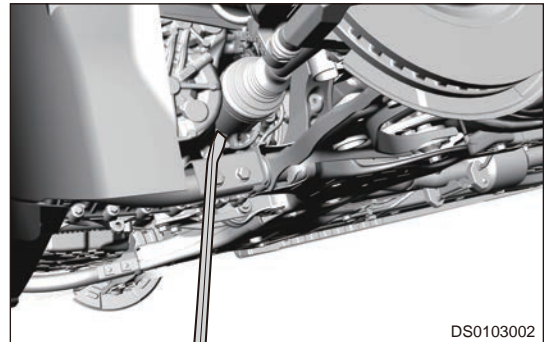
- (1) Remove the front left wheel.
- (2) Remove the right left wheel.
- (3) Drain the transmission oil.
- (4) Remove the front left drive shaft assembly.
 - 1) Remove fixing nut (arrow) from front left drive shaft.



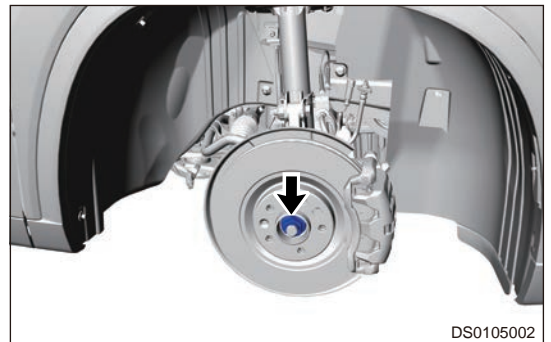
- 2) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between front left lower control arm and steering knuckle.



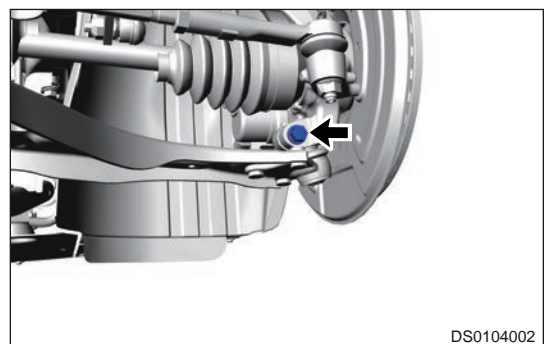
- 3) Disconnect the connection between front left lower control arm and steering knuckle.
4) Use crowbar to pry out inner ball cage spline inserted into transmission end.



- 5) Remove the front left drive shaft.
(5) Remove the front right drive shaft assembly.
1) Remove fixing nut (arrow) from front right drive shaft.

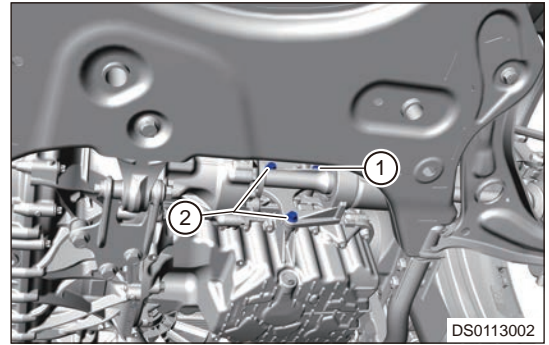


- 2) Remove fixing nut (arrow) from front right drive shaft.

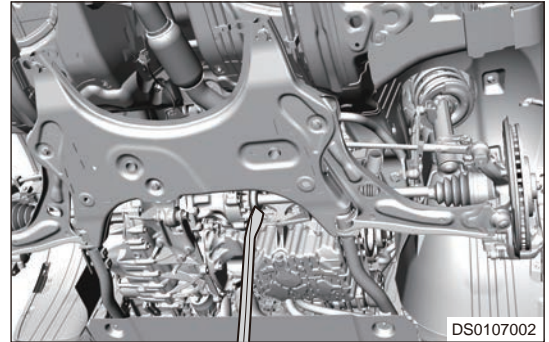


- 3) Disconnect the connection between front right lower control arm and steering knuckle.

- 4) Remove 3 fixing bolts (1) and (2) from front right drive shaft bracket.



- 5) Use crowbar to pry out inner ball cage spline inserted into transfer case.



- 6) Remove the front right drive shaft assembly.

Installation

- (1) Install the front right drive shaft.

⚠ Caution

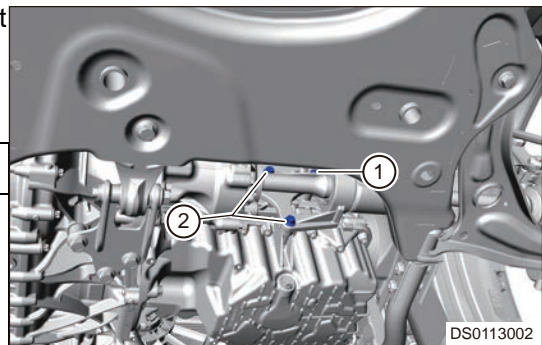
- It is necessary to use oil seal mounting fixture to ensure that transmission output shaft oil seal is not scratched during installation. Remove fixture after drive shaft spline is passed through fixture, and do not remove it forcibly.
- It is necessary to align drive shaft spline with spline hole when assembling drive shaft. Drive shaft can be pushed firmly and smoothly only drive shaft spline is aligned with spline hole.
- Install drive shaft bracket in the order above.

- 1) Raise the front right shaft first until drive shaft spline end axis centering is flush with transmission differential hole center.
- 2) Insert oil seal protection fixture into transmission output shaft oil seal.
- 3) Push drive shaft into fixture, and remove fixture after drive shaft spline passes through fixture.
- 4) Finally, push the drive shaft to bottom.
- 5) Install 3 fixing bolts (arrow) from front right drive shaft bracket.

Tightening torque: 70 ± 10 N·m

⚠ Caution

- Put a bolt into bolt mounting hole at position (1) firstly and pre-tighten it. Put the other 2 bolts to mounting holes (2) respectively and pre-tighten them.
- Tighten them to specified torque.



- (2) Install the connection between front right lower control arm and steering knuckle.

Tightening torque: $95 \pm 7.3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Install fixing nut to front right drive shaft.
 (4) Install the front right wheel.
 (5) Install the front left drive shaft.

⚠ Caution

- **It is necessary to use oil seal mounting fixture to ensure that transmission output shaft oil seal is not scratched during installation. Remove fixture after drive shaft spline is passed through fixture, and do not remove it forcibly.**
- **It is necessary to align drive shaft spline with spline hole when assembling drive shaft. Drive shaft can be pushed firmly and smoothly only drive shaft spline is aligned with spline hole.**
- **Install drive shaft bracket in the order above.**

- 1) Raise the left shaft first until drive shaft spline end axis centering is flush with transmission differential hole center.
 - 2) Insert oil seal protection fixture into transmission output shaft oil seal.
 - 3) Push drive shaft into fixture, and remove fixture after drive shaft spline passes through fixture.
 - 4) Finally, push the drive shaft to bottom.
- (6) Install the connection between front left lower control arm and steering knuckle.

Tightening torque: $95 \pm 7.3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (7) Install fixing nut to front left drive shaft.
 (8) Install the front left wheel.
 (9) Fill the transmission oil.

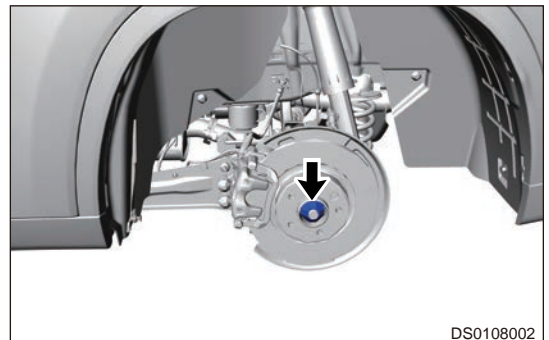
2.3 Rear Drive Shaft Assembly (4WD)

■ Removal

⚠ Caution

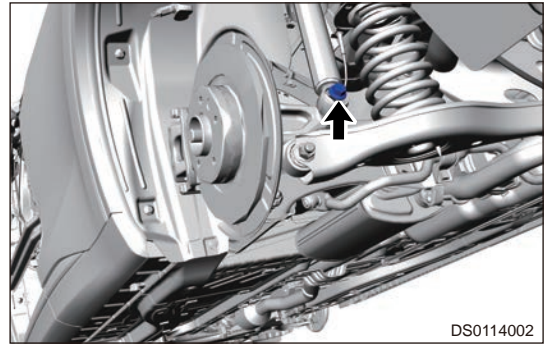
- **Use same removal and installation procedures for left drive shaft and right drive shaft assembly.**
- **Removal procedures listed below are for left drive shaft.**

- (1) Remove the rear left wheel.
- (2) Drain the final drive oil.
- (3) Remove the rear left drive shaft assembly.
 - 1) Remove fixing nut (arrow) from rear left drive shaft.

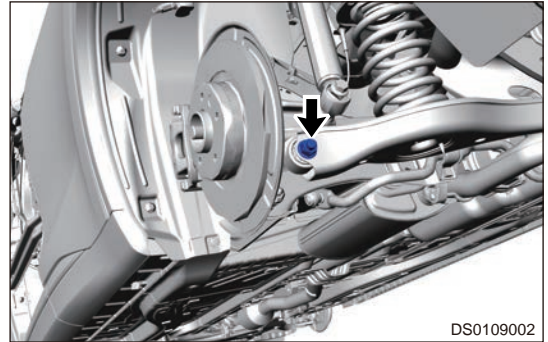


DS0108002

- 2) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between rear left shock absorber and steering knuckle.

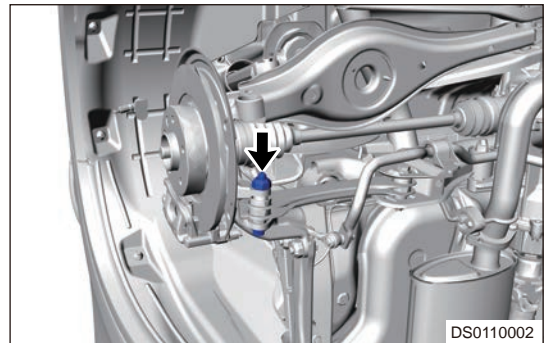


- 3) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between rear left lower control arm and steering knuckle.

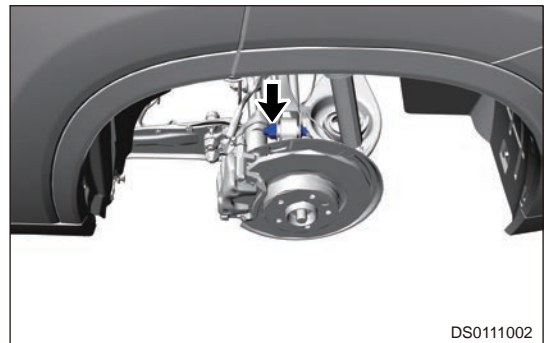


- 4) Disconnect the connection between rear left lower control arm and steering knuckle, and remove coil spring.

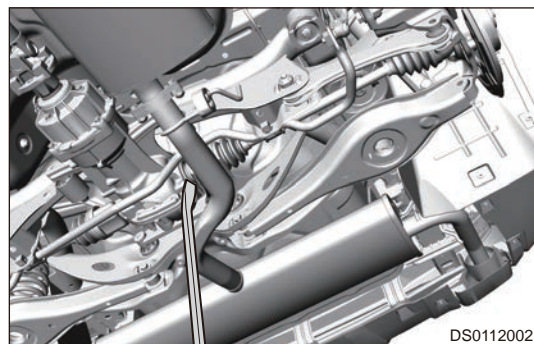
- 5) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between left tie rod and steering knuckle.



- 6) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between upper left control arm and steering knuckle.



- 7) Use crowbar to pry out the rear left drive shaft assembly.



DS0112002

- 8) Remove the rear left drive shaft assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Use same installation procedures for left drive shaft and right drive shaft assembly.
- Installation procedures listed below are for left drive shaft.

- (1) Install the rear left drive shaft assembly.
- (2) Install fixing bolt between upper left control arm and steering knuckle.
- (3) Install fixing bolt between left tie rod and steering knuckle.
- (4) Install fixing bolt between rear left shock absorber and steering knuckle.

Tightening torque: 160 ± 12 N·m

- (5) Install fixing nut to rear left drive shaft.
- (6) Install the rear left drive shaft assembly.
- (7) Install the rear left wheel.
- (8) Use same installation procedures for right drive shaft and left drive shaft assembly.
- (9) Fill the final drive oil.

⚠ Caution

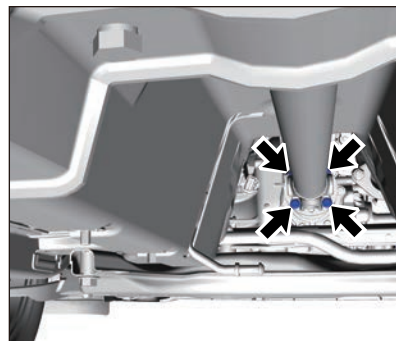
- Check wheel alignment after installation. Adjust wheel alignment to the standard range as necessary.

2.4 Propeller Intermediate Shaft Assembly (4WD)

■ Removal

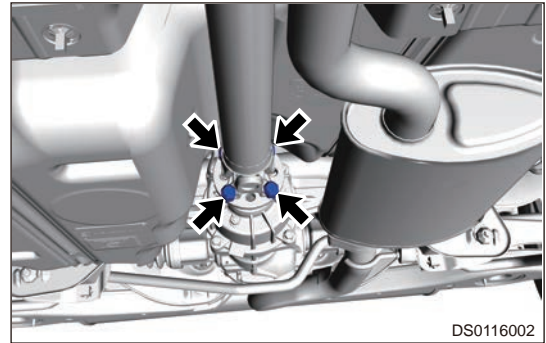
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front muffler assembly.
- (4) Remove the propeller intermediate shaft assembly.

- 1) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between propeller shaft and PTU output flange.

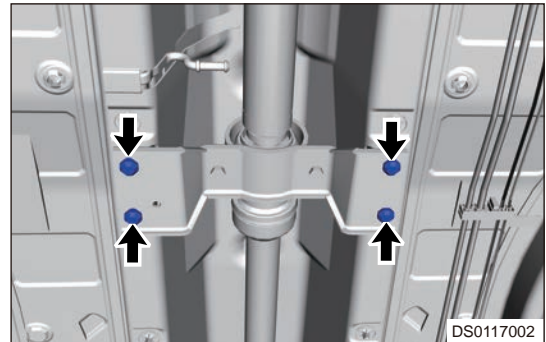


DS0115002

- 2) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between propeller shaft and torque manager flange.



- 3) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between intermediate bracket and lower body.



- 4) Remove the propeller intermediate shaft assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Remove the propeller intermediate shaft assembly.
 (2) Install 4 fixing bolts between intermediate bracket and lower body.

Tightening torque: 71.5 ± 6.5 N·m

- (3) Install 4 fixing bolts between propeller shaft and torque manager flange.

Tightening torque: 71.5 ± 6.5 N·m

- (4) Install 4 fixing bolts between propeller shaft and PTU output flange.

Tightening torque: 33 ± 3 N·m

- (5) Install the front muffler assembly.
 (6) Install the negative battery cable.

⚠ Caution

- **Raise the propeller shaft to installation height with a lifter, fit front end cross fork flange with PTU output shaft flange, align 4 bolt holes separately and tighten them with bolts. Installation of bolt should follow the principle of diagonal tightening.**
- **Fit rear end cross fork flange with torque manager flange, align 4 bolt holes separately and tighten them with bolts. Installation of bolt should follow the principle of diagonal tightening.**

CHASSIS

19.1	SUSPENSION SYSTEM	814
1	Warning and Precaution.....	814
1.1	Warning.....	814
1.2	Precautions.....	814
2	General Information	814
2.1	Description.....	814
3	Specifications	816
3.1	Torque Specification	816
4	Tool	817
4.1	General Tool.....	817
4.2	Special Tool.....	818
5	Diagnosis & Testing	818
5.1	Problem Symptoms Table	818
6	On-vehicle Service	820
6.1	Front Shock Absorber Assembly	820
6.2	Front Control Arm Assembly.....	827
6.3	Replacement of Left Side Rail Assembly.....	829
6.4	Replacement of Right Side Rail Assembly	830
6.5	Replacement of Front Connecting Rod Assembly.....	831
6.6	Replacement of Front Stabilizer Bar Assembly	832
6.7	Replacement of Front Steering Knuckle.....	834
6.8	Replacement of Front Sub Frame Welding Assembly	838
6.9	Rear Shock Absorber Assembly	842
6.10	Replacement of Rear Coil Spring	846
6.11	Replacement of Rear Upper Control Arm Assembly.....	847
6.12	Replacement of Rear Lower Control Arm Assembly	849
6.13	Replacement of Rear Trailing Arm Assembly	850
6.14	Replacement of Rear Pull Rod Assembly	853
6.15	Replacement of Rear Stabilizer Bar Assembly	854
6.16	Replacement of Rear Connecting Rod Assembly.....	856
6.17	Replacement of Rear Hub Bearing Assembly.....	857
6.18	Replacement of Rear Steering Knuckle.....	858
6.19	Replacement of Rear Sub Frame Welding Assembly.....	860

19.1 SUSPENSION SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.
- (2) Make sure that safety lock of lifter has been locked, when removing and installing chassis parts.
- (3) It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.

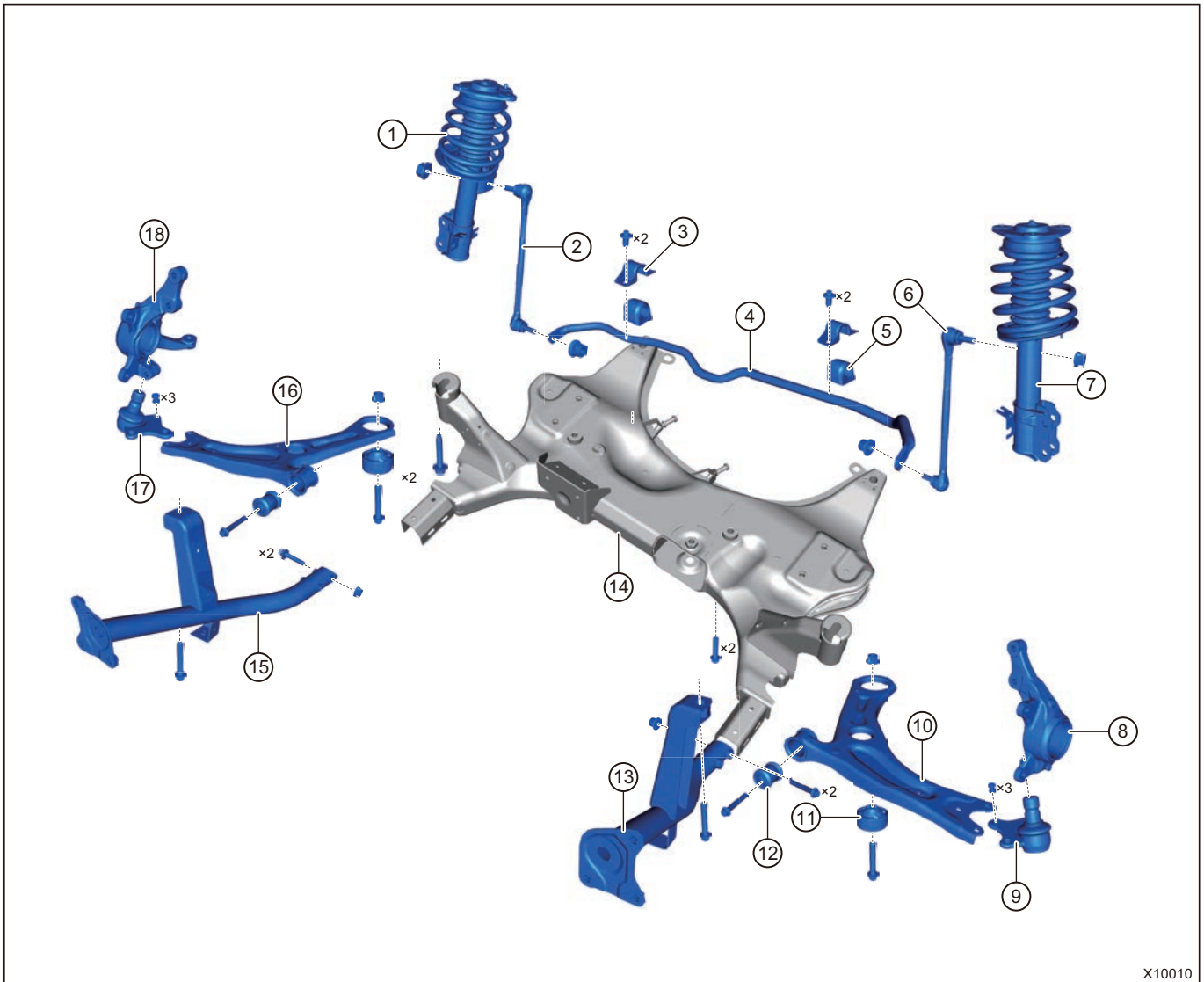
1.2 Precautions

- (1) When removing and installing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.
- (2) Operate carefully when removing and installing coil spring, to prevent spring from jumping out and causing personal injury.

2 General Information

2.1 Description

■ Front Suspension

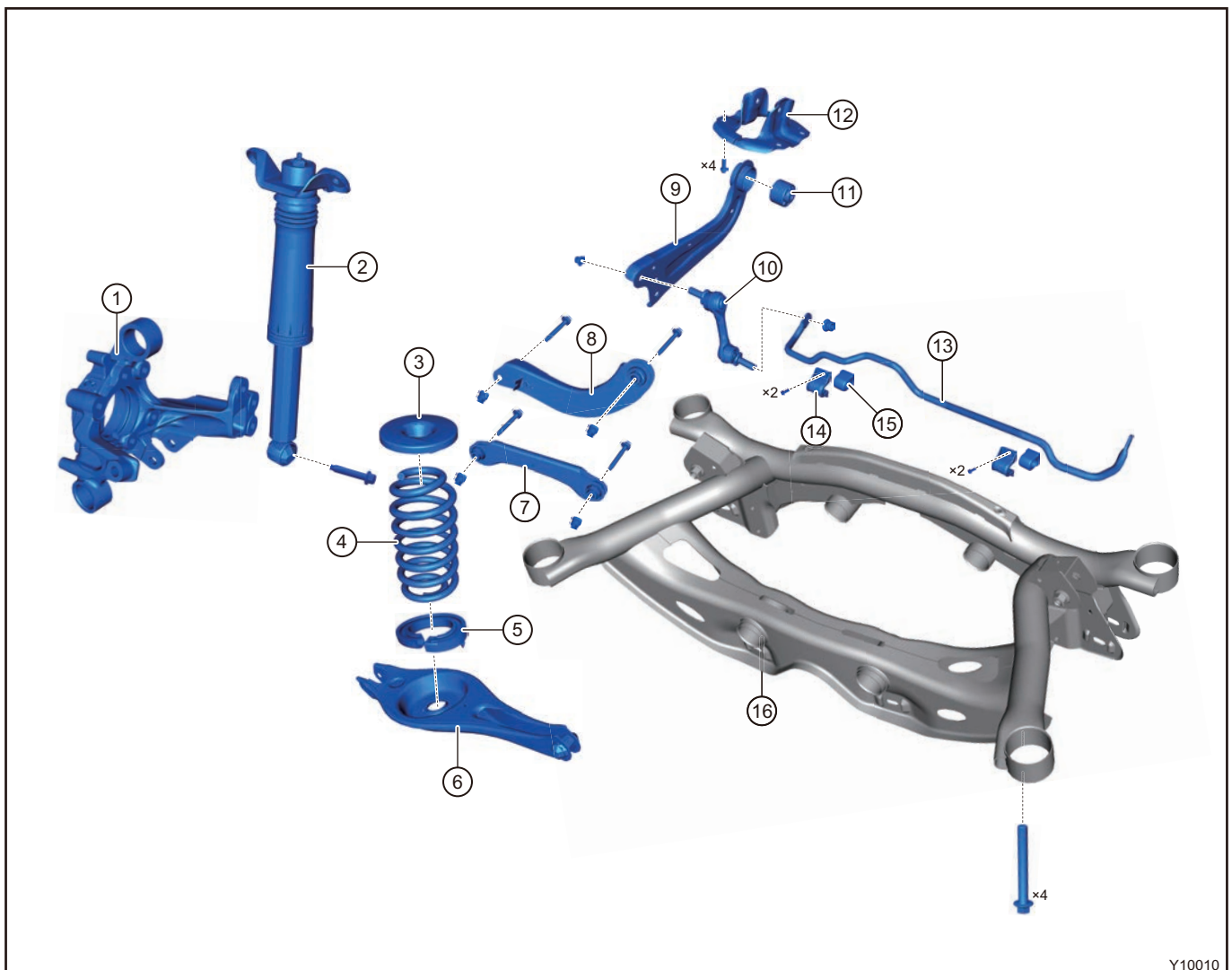


X10010

1	Front Right Strut Assembly	10	Front Left Control Arm Assembly
2	Front Right Connecting Rod Assembly	11	Front Control Arm Rear Rubber Bushing Assembly
3	Front Right Stabilizer Bar Clamp	12	Front Control Arm Front Rubber Bushing Assembly
4	Front Stabilizer Bar	13	Left Side Rail Assembly
5	Front Stabilizer Bar Bushing	14	Front Sub Frame Assembly
6	Front Left Connecting Rod Assembly	15	Right Side Rail Assembly
7	Front Left Strut Assembly	16	Front Right Control Arm Assembly
8	Front Left Steering Knuckle	17	Front Right Control Arm Assembly Ball Pin
9	Front Left Control Arm Assembly Ball Pin	18	Front Right Steering Knuckle

Front suspension of this model uses Macpherson independent suspension (height is non-adjustable), which is equipped with cylindrical coil spring, double action telescopic shock absorber and lateral stabilizer. Front suspension has driving and steering functions. Upper end of suspension connects with body, and lower end with front steering knuckle. Sub frame is connected with body by bolts, thus improving driving stability and safety.

■ Rear Suspension



Y10010

1	Rear Left Steering Knuckle	9	Rear Right Trailing Arm Welding Assembly
2	Rear Shock Absorber Device	10	Rear Connecting Rod Assembly
3	Upper Coil Spring Cushion Assembly	11	Trailing Arm Bushing Assembly
4	Rear Coil Spring Assembly	12	Trailing Arm Mounting Bracket Assembly
5	Lower Coil Spring Cushion Assembly	13	Rear Stabilizer Bar
6	Rear Lower Control Arm Welding Assembly	14	Rear Stabilizer Bar Clamp
7	Pull Rod Welding Assembly	15	Stabilizer Bar Bushing
8	Rear Upper Control Arm Welding Assembly	16	Rear Sub Frame Assembly

Rear suspension of this model uses torsion beam semi-independent suspension (height is non-adjustable), which is equipped with cylindrical coil spring and double action telescopic shock absorber, and lateral stabilizer is not equipped. Upper end of suspension is connected with body, and lower end is connected with rear shaft assembly, thus improving driving stability and safety.

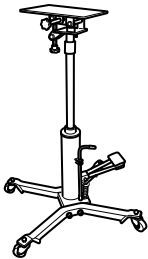
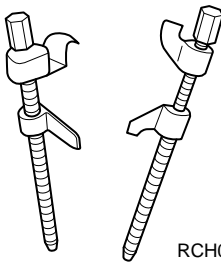
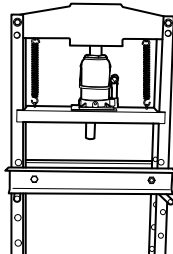
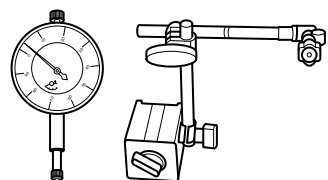
3 Specifications

3.1 Torque Specification

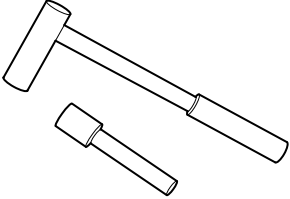
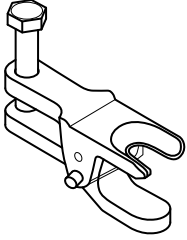
Description	Torque (N·m)
Coupling Nut Between Front Connecting Rod Assembly and Front Shock Absorber Assembly	46 ± 2.5
Fixing Bolt Between Front Shock Absorber Assembly and Body	85 ± 6
Coupling Bolt Between Front Control Arm Assembly Ball Pin and Front Steering Knuckle Assembly	95 ± 7.3
Fixing Bolt Between Front Collision Lever Front Point and Body	30 ± 4.5
Fixing Bolt Between Front Collision Lever Rear Point and Body	110 ± 8
Fixing Bolt Between Front Collision Lever and Front Sub Frame	55 ± 8.3
Fixing Bolt Between Front Stabilizer Bar Bracket and Front Sub Frame	80 ± 6
Fixing Bolt Between Front Control Arm Bushing and Front Sub Frame	180 ± 12.6
Fixing Bolt Between Front Control Arm Bushing and Front Sub Frame	90 ± 3 90° + 10°
Fixing Nut Between Front Stabilizer Bar and Connecting Rod	58 ± 4
Coupling Bolt Between Upper Part of Rear Shock Absorber Assembly and Body	95 ± 6.7
Coupling Bolt Between Lower Part of Rear Shock Absorber Assembly and Rear Steering Knuckle	160 ± 12
Coupling Bolt Between Rear Lower Control Arm and Rear Steering Knuckle	165 ± 12.4

4 Tool

4.1 General Tool

Name	Tool Drawing
Transmission Carrier	 <p>RCH0005006</p>
Spring Compressor	 <p>RCH0021006</p>
Hydraulic Press	 <p>S00010</p>
Dial Indicator and Magnetic Holder	 <p>S00018</p>

4.2 Special Tool

Name	Tool Drawing
Shock Absorber Nut Remover	 <p>RCH0000022</p>
Tie Rod Ball Remover	 <p>S00019</p>

5 Diagnosis & Testing

5.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

■ **Front Suspension**

Symptom	Suspected Area
Vehicle pulls	Front tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Control arm ball pin assembly (loose)
	Steering tie rod (loose or worn)
	Front hub bearing (excessively worn)
	Front suspension components (excessively worn or deformed)
Droop	Vehicle (overloaded)
	Front coil spring (too soft)
	Front shock absorber assembly (worn or damaged)
	Front suspension components (excessively worn or deformed)
	Front tire (improperly inflated)
	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)

Symptom	Suspected Area
Sways/pitches	Front tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Front stabilizer bar assembly (bent or broken)
	Front shock absorber assembly (worn or damaged)
Wheel shimmy	Front tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Front wheel (out of balance)
	Front shock absorber assembly (worn or damaged)
	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Control arm ball pin assembly (loose)
	Front hub bearing (excessively worn)
	Steering gear (misaligned or damaged)
Abnormal tire wear	Front tire (improperly inflated)
	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Front shock absorber assembly (worn or deformed)
	Front suspension components (worn or deformed)

■ Rear Suspension

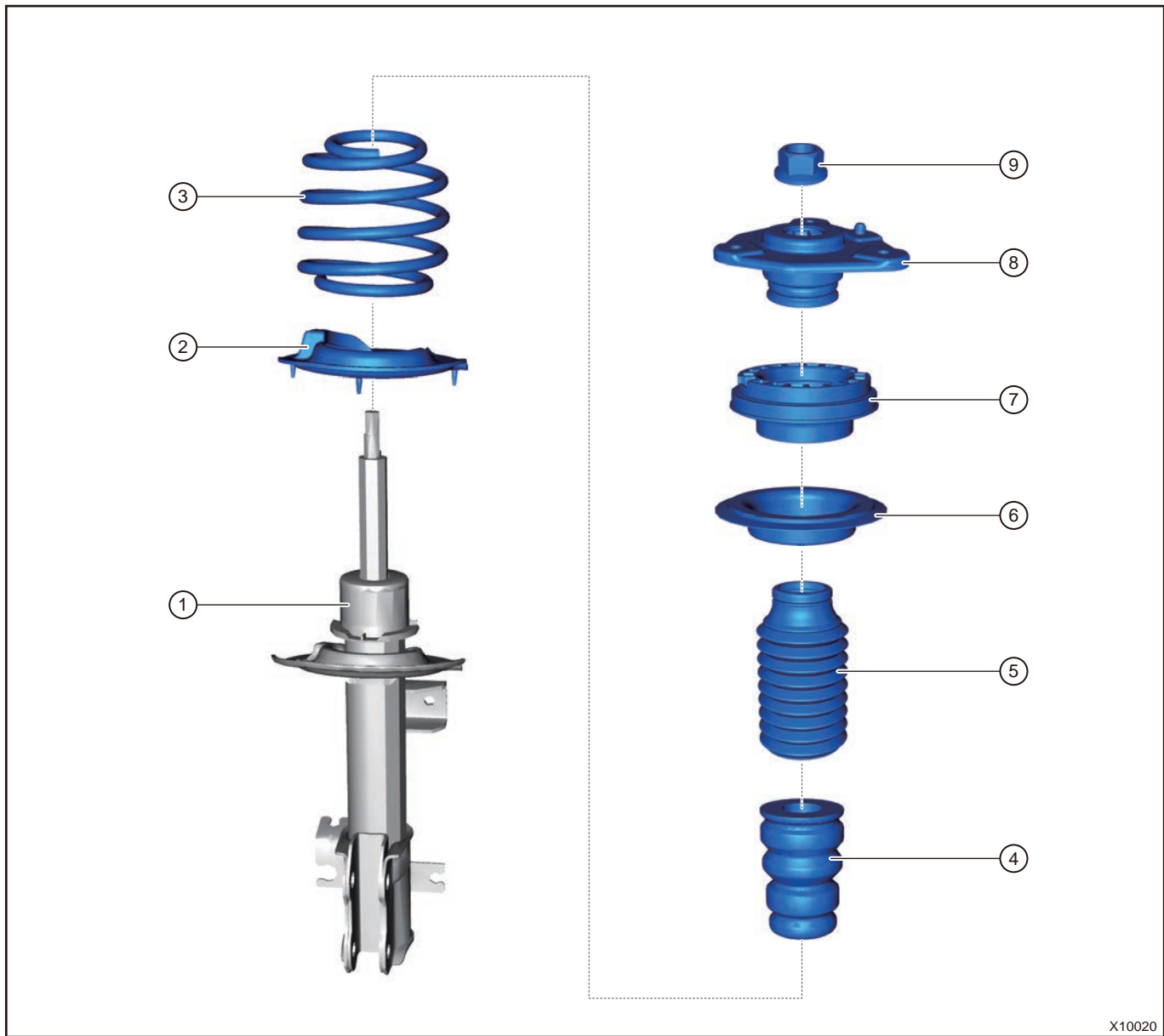
Symptom	Suspected Area
Vehicle pulls	Rear tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear hub bearing (excessively worn)
	Rear suspension components (worn or deformed)
Droop	Vehicle (overloaded)
	Rear coil spring (too soft)
	Rear shock absorber assembly (worn or damaged)
	Rear suspension components (excessively worn or deformed)
Sways/pitches	Rear tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Rear stabilizer bar assembly (bent or broken)
	Rear shock absorber assembly (worn or deformed)
Wheel shimmy	Rear tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Rear wheel (out of balance)
	Rear shock absorber assembly (worn or damaged)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear hub bearing (worn)

Symptom	Suspected Area
Abnormal tire wear	Rear tire (improperly inflated)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear shock absorber assembly (worn or deformed)
	Rear suspension components (worn or deformed)

6 On-vehicle Service

6.1 Front Shock Absorber Assembly

■ Description



X10020

1	Front Shock Absorber Assembly	6	Upper Spring Cushion
2	Lower Spring Cushion	7	Bearing Assembly
3	Front Coil Spring	8	Upper Connecting Plate Assembly

4	Front Buffer Block	9	Hexagon Flange Nut
5	Front Dust Boot		

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the front shock absorber assembly.
 - 1) Park vehicle on level ground, and bounce vehicle up and down, then check if vehicle shakes up and down when body bounds. If vehicle shakes up and down consecutively, shock absorber assembly may be damaged and should be replaced.
- (2) Check front shock absorber assembly for leakage.
 - 1) As shock absorber assembly operates frequently during vehicle driving, oil gas is formed due to temperature rise of shock absorber, which then adheres to dust boot. This is a normal phenomenon, and it is not necessary to replace the shock absorber assembly.
 - 2) If following conditions occur:
 - Oil traces in circumferential direction are uneven.
 - Oil traces reach lower connecting positions.

Above conditions indicate that there may be a leakage in shock absorber assembly, and it is necessary to replace the shock absorber assembly.
 - 3) If it is difficult to accurately judge if shock absorber assembly has leakage from appearance. Perform road test after wiping off oil on the surface of malfunctioning shock absorber. Under normal road conditions, drive vehicle for 5 to 10 minutes and perform inspection. If there are oil traces on the surface of shock absorber assembly, it indicates that oil leakage exists, and it is necessary to replace the shock absorber assembly.

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Make sure that safety lock of lifter has been locked, when removing and installing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing and installing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**
- **Operate carefully when removing and installing coil spring, to prevent spring from jumping out and causing personal injury.**

Hint:

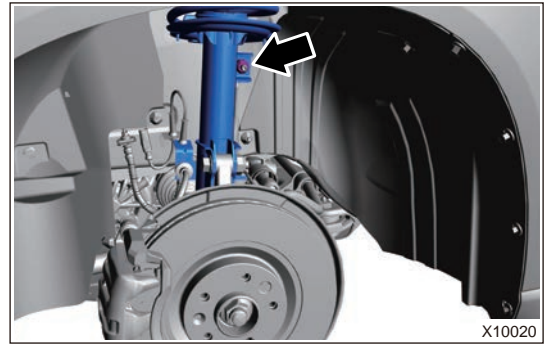
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

Warning

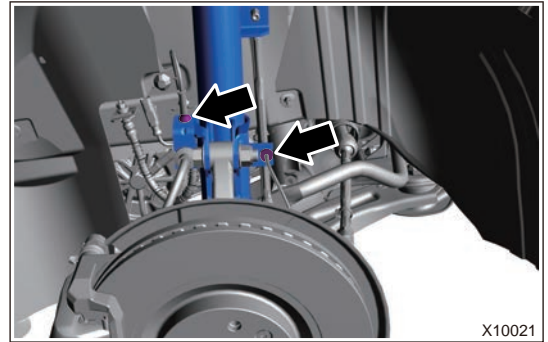
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Make sure that safety lock of lifter has been locked, when removing and installing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing and installing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**
- **Operate carefully when removing and installing coil spring, to prevent spring from jumping out and causing personal injury.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left wheel.
- (4) Remove the front left shock absorber assembly.

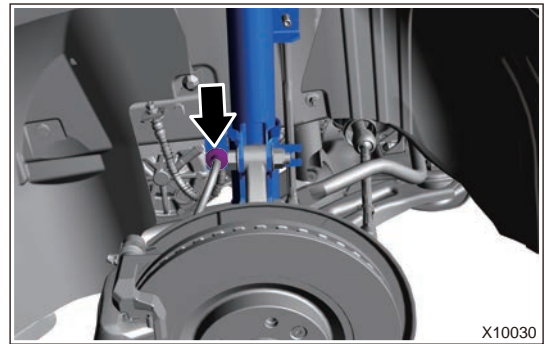
- 1) Remove coupling nut (arrow) between front left connecting rod assembly and front left shock absorber assembly.



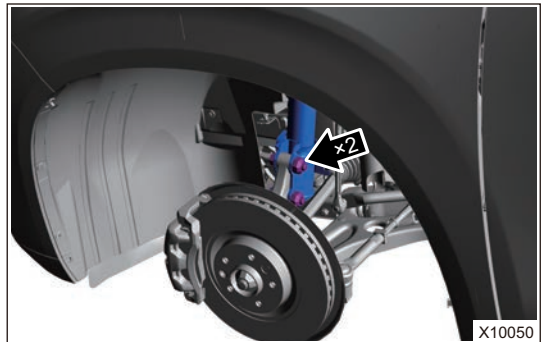
- 2) Disengage front left wheel speed sensor wire harness (arrow) from front left shock absorber assembly.



- 3) Disengage front left brake hose assembly (arrow) from front left shock absorber assembly.



- 4) Remove 2 coupling bolts and nuts (arrow) between front left shock absorber assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.



- 5) Remove the front windshield lower support assembly.

- 6) Remove 3 coupling nuts (arrow) between front left shock absorber assembly and vehicle body.



X10060

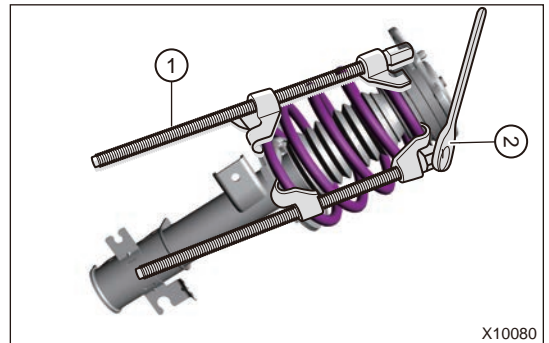
- 7) Remove the front left shock absorber assembly with front coil spring.

■ Disassembly

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
 - Procedures listed below are for left side.
- (1) Remove locking nut from front shock absorber assembly.

- 1) Using spring compressor (1) and wrench (2), tighten the end lever of spring compressor to compress the front coil spring.

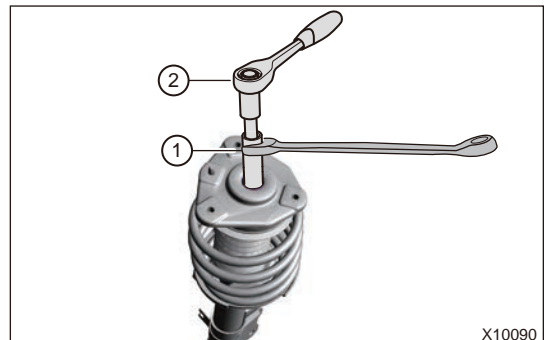


X10080

⚠ Warning

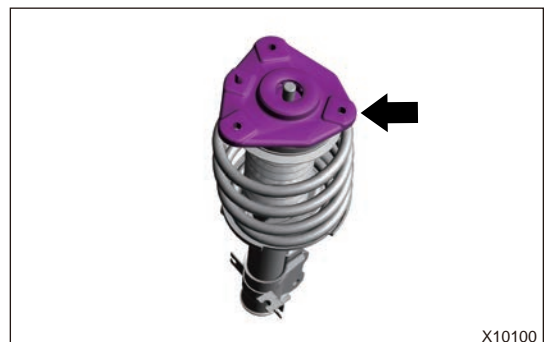
- **When removing front coil spring, compress spring until locking nut can be rotated. DO NOT compress spring more than necessary, avoid damaging spring and personal injury.**

- 2) Hold the end of front left shock absorber assembly lever with shock absorber nut remover (1), and then remove locking nut from front left shock absorber assembly with wrench (2).



X10090

- (2) Remove front strut upper connecting plate assembly (w/ insulator) (arrow) from upper part of front left shock absorber assembly.

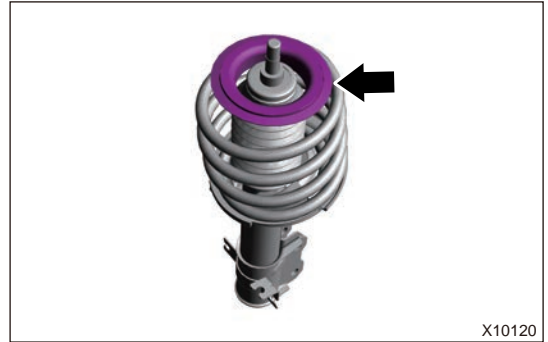


X10100

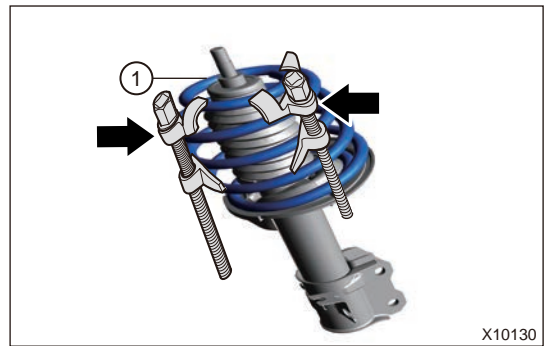
- (3) Remove bearing assembly (arrow) from upper part of front left shock absorber assembly.



- (4) Remove front spring upper cushion (arrow) from upper part of front left shock absorber assembly.



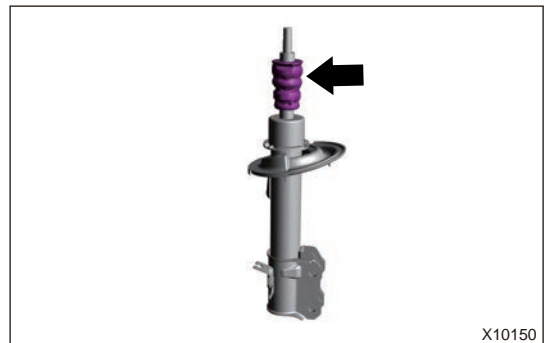
- (5) Remove front coil spring (1) with spring compressor (- arrow) from front left shock absorber assembly.



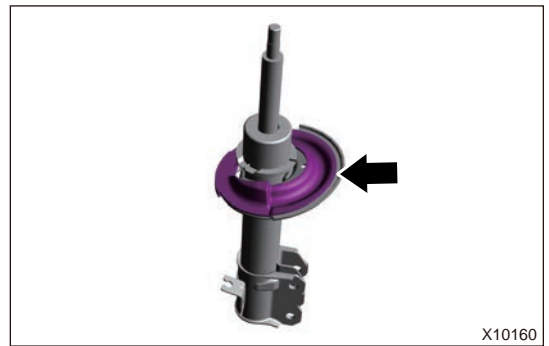
- (6) Remove front dust boot (arrow) from upper part of front left shock absorber assembly.



- (7) Detach front buffer block (arrow) from front left shock absorber assembly, and remove it.



- (8) Remove front spring lower cushion (arrow) from lower end of front left shock absorber assembly strut.

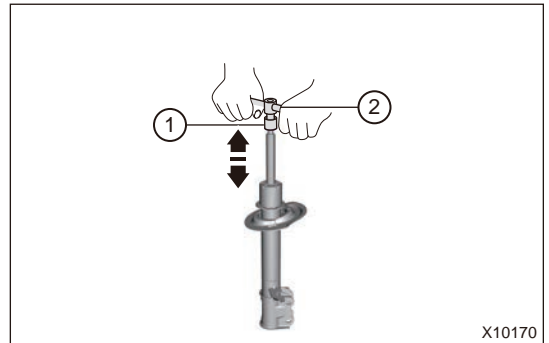


■ Inspection

- (1) Check the front shock absorber assembly.

Manual inspection

- 1) Install the locking nut (1) to the upper end of front shock absorber assembly strut, and then install the T-wrench (2) or equivalent.



- 2) Compress and extend the front shock absorber assembly strut several times by hands in direction of arrow as shown in illustration. Check that there is no abnormal resistance or unusual sound during operation. If there is any abnormality, replace the front shock absorber assembly with a new one.
- (2) Check the other components of front shock absorber assembly.
- 1) Check front shock absorber cover cap, front spring upper cushion, front dust boot, front buffer block and front spring lower cushion for cracks, wear or deformation. Replace it as necessary.
- 2) Check front strut upper connecting plate assembly (w/ insulator) and bearing assembly for damage. Replace as necessary.
- 3) Check front coil spring for wear, cracks or deformation. Replace it as necessary.

■ Assembly

- (1) Install the front spring lower cushion.
- (2) Install the front buffer block.
- (3) Install the front dust boot.
- (4) Install the front coil spring.
- (5) Using spring compressor (1) and wrench (2), tighten the end lever of spring compressor to compress the front coil spring.
- (6) Install the front spring upper cushion.
- (7) Install the bearing assembly.
- (8) Install the front strut upper connecting plate assembly (w/ insulator).
- (9) Hold the end of front left shock absorber assembly lever with shock absorber nut remover (1), and then tighten locking nut to front left shock absorber assembly with wrench (2).

Torque: 70 ± 3 N m

- (10) Remove the spring compressor.

■ Installation

- (1) Install front left shock absorber assembly to a proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 3 coupling bolts between front left shock absorber assembly and vehicle body.

Torque: 85 ± 6 N m

- (3) Install 2 coupling bolts and nuts between front left shock absorber assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 200 ± 16 N m

- (4) Install front left brake hose assembly to clip of front left shock absorber assembly.
- (5) Install front left wheel speed sensor wire harness to clip of front left shock absorber assembly.
- (6) Install coupling nut between front left connecting rod assembly and front left shock absorber assembly

Torque: 46 ± 2.5 N·m

- (7) Install the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (8) Install the front left wheel.
- (9) Connect the negative battery cable.

⚠ Caution

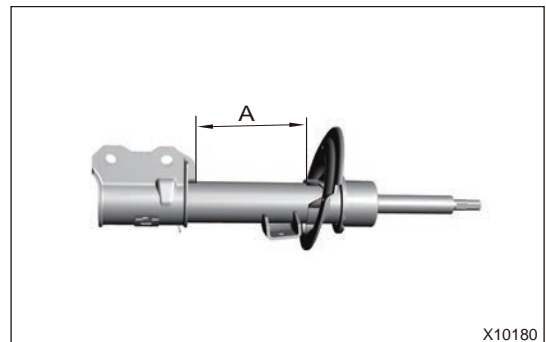
- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torque.**
- **Align dowel pin of top end connecting plate with body positioning hole when installing front left shock absorber assembly.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

■ Disposal

⚠ Warning

- **Do not drill at high temperature and heat, and be sure to pay attention to safety!**
- **Shock absorber assembly contains nitrogen and oil, which are under high pressure. As hydraulic oil is explosive easily when exposed to heat, the surface is wet with water first before drilling or cutting.**
- **Be careful when drilling or cutting, because mental chips may fly about. Always perform operations with proper safety equipment to avoid personal injury.**
- **Before handling, be sure to wear goggles and release pressure inside shock absorber assembly to avoid personal injury.**

- (1) Extend the front shock absorber assembly strut fully, and clamp it in a vise at an angle.
- (2) Using a drill or equivalent, make a hole slowly at area A shown in the illustration, to discharge gas and hydraulic oil in the front shock absorber assembly.



X10180

- (3) Handle front shock absorber assembly properly after discharging gas and hydraulic oil.

Hint:

Recycle disposed front shock absorber assembly according to local environmental regulations.

6.2 Front Control Arm Assembly

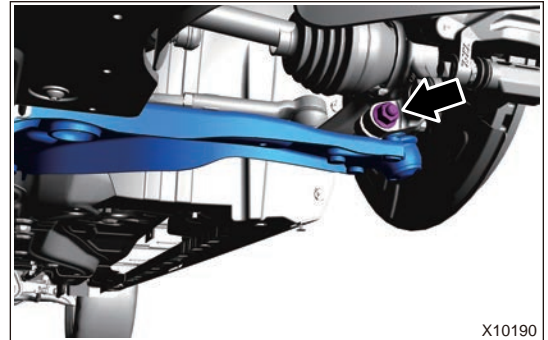
■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.
- Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.
- It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.
- When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.

Hint:

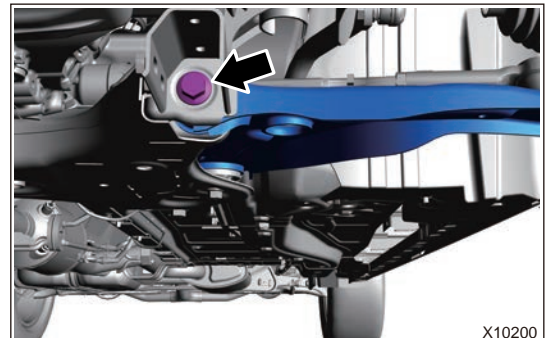
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
 - Procedures listed below are for left side.
- (1) Remove the front left wheel.
 - (2) Remove the engine lower protector assembly .
 - (3) Remove the left side rail welding assembly.
 - (4) Remove the front left control arm assembly.
 - 1) Remove opening pin (1) and coupling nut (arrow) between front left control arm ball pin assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.



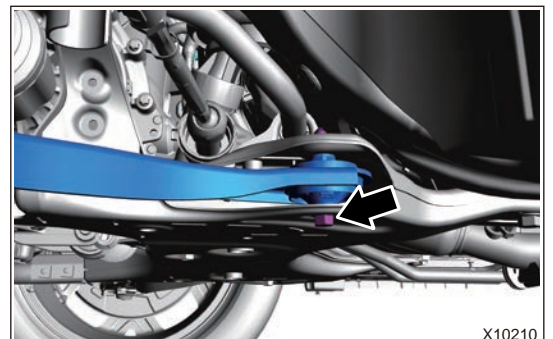
Hint:

If it is difficult to remove control arm ball pin end from steering knuckle, detach ball pin by striking the end of steering knuckle uniformly and slightly with a hammer or equivalent.

- 2) Remove coupling bolt (arrow) between front part of front left control arm assembly and front sub frame welding assembly.

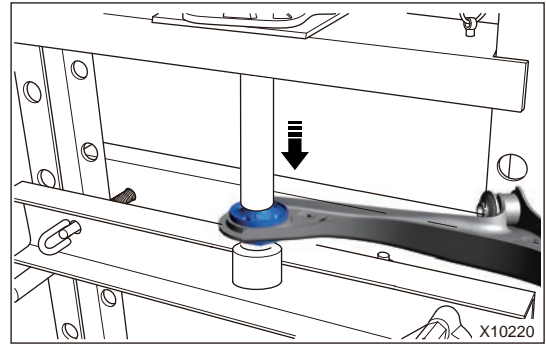


- 3) Remove coupling bolt (arrow) between rear part of front left control arm assembly and front sub frame welding assembly.



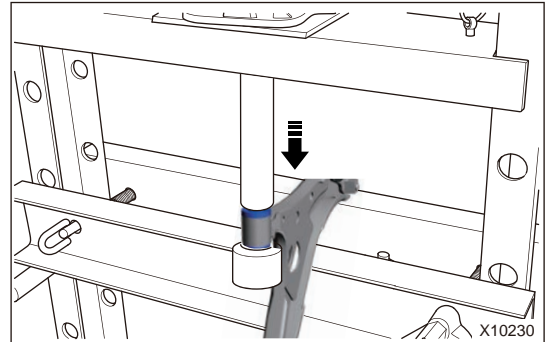
- (5) Remove the front control arm front rubber bushing assembly.

- 1) Place the front control arm assembly on a hydraulic press, install front control arm remover and adapter, and press out and remove front control arm rear rubber bushing assembly with hydraulic press.



- (6) Remove the front control arm rear rubber bushing assembly.

- 1) Place the front control arm assembly on a hydraulic press, install front control arm remover and adapter, and press out and remove front control arm front rubber bushing assembly with hydraulic press.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Make sure that ball pin assembly rotates smoothly and there is no sticking after installation.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Place the front control arm assembly on a hydraulic press, and install front control arm rear rubber bushing assembly with hydraulic press.

⚠ Caution

Before pressing in, apply grease on the outside of front control arm assembly rubber bushing to prevent control arm assembly rubber bushing from being damaged.

- (2) Install coupling bolt between rear part of front left control arm assembly and front sub frame welding assembly.

Tightening torque: 90 ± 90 N·m

- (3) Install coupling bolt between front part of front left control arm assembly and front sub frame welding assembly.

Tightening torque: 180 ± 12.6 N m

- (4) Install coupling bolt and nut between front left control arm ball pin and front left steering knuckle.

Tightening torque: 95 ± 7.3 N m

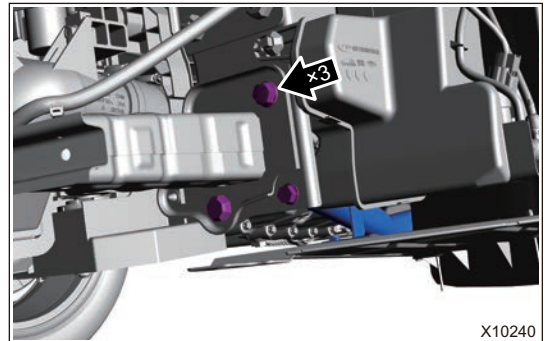
6.3 Replacement of Left Side Rail Assembly

■ Removal

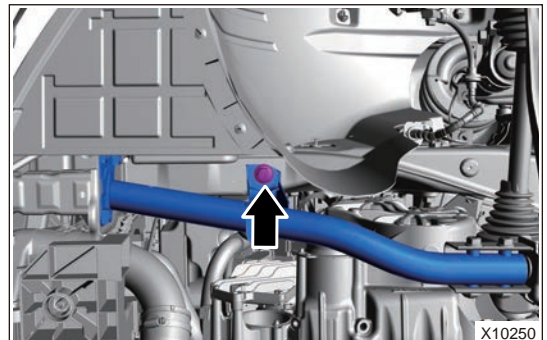
⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.
- Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.
- It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.
- When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts from front end of left side rail assembly.



- (6) Remove 1 fixing bolt from upper end of left side rail assembly and body.



- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts between left side rail assembly and front sub frame assembly.



- (8) Remove the left welding side rail assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts between left side rail assembly and front sub frame assembly.

Torque: 55 ± 8.25 N m

- (2) Install 1 fixing bolt between upper end of left side rail assembly and body.

Torque: 110 ± 8 N m

- (3) Install 3 fixing bolts to front end of left side rail assembly.

Torque: 30 ± 4.5 N m

- (4) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Install the engine lower protector assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.4 Replacement of Right Side Rail Assembly

■ Removal

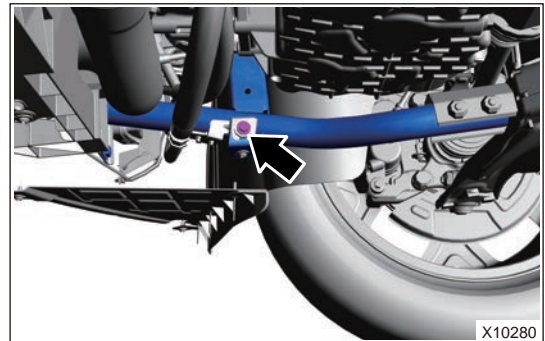
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

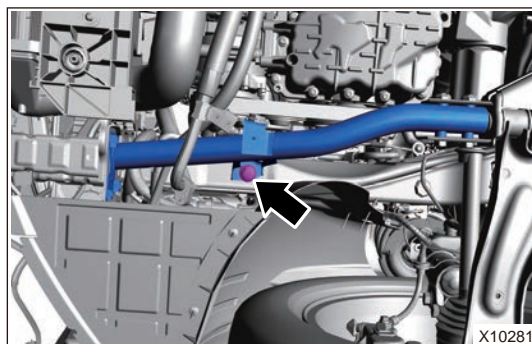
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts from front end of right side rail assembly.



- (6) Remove 1 fixing bolt from evaporator to compressor line assembly.



- (7) Remove 1 fixing bolt between upper end of right side rail assembly and body.



- (8) Remove 2 fixing bolts and nuts between right side rail assembly and front sub frame assembly.



- (9) Remove the left welding side rail assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts and nuts between right side rail assembly and front sub frame assembly.

Torque: 55 ± 8.25 N m

- (2) Install 1 fixing bolt between upper end of right side rail assembly and body.

Torque: 110 ± 8 N m

- (3) Install 1 fixing bolt to evaporator to compressor line assembly.

- (4) Install 3 fixing bolts to front end of right side rail assembly.

Torque: 30 ± 4.5 N m

- (5) Install the front bumper assembly.

- (6) Install the engine lower protector assembly.

- (7) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.5 Replacement of Front Connecting Rod Assembly

■ Removal

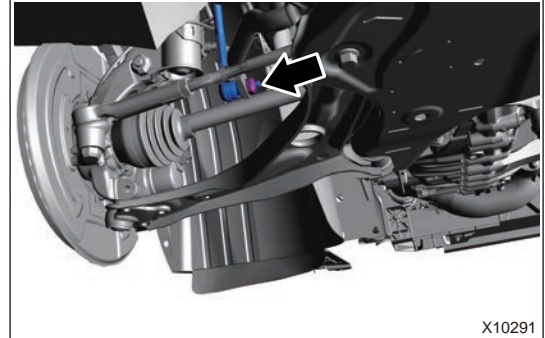
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

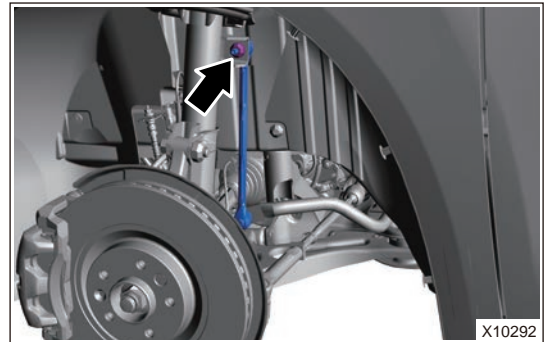
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left wheel.
- (4) Remove coupling nut between front left stabilizer bar assembly and lower part of front left connecting rod assembly.



- (5) Remove coupling nut between front left connecting rod assembly and upper part of front left shock absorber assembly, and remove front left connecting rod assembly.



■ **Inspection**

- (1) Check front connecting rod assembly bush for wear, cracks, deformation, damage or grease leakage. Replace it as necessary.
- (2) Check if end of front connecting rod assembly rotates smoothly. Replace it as necessary.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install coupling nut between front left connecting rod assembly and lower part of front left shock absorber assembly.

Torque: 46 ± 4 N m

- (2) Install coupling nut between front left stabilizer bar assembly and upper part of front left connecting rod assembly.

Torque: 58 ± 2.5 N m

- (3) Install the front left wheel.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

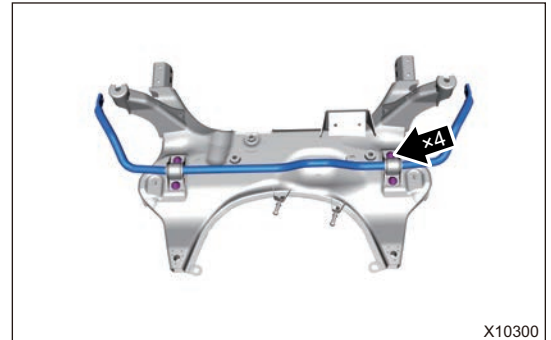
6.6 Replacement of Front Stabilizer Bar Assembly

■ **Removal**

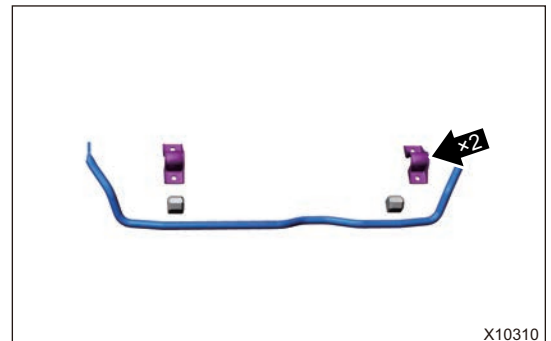
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

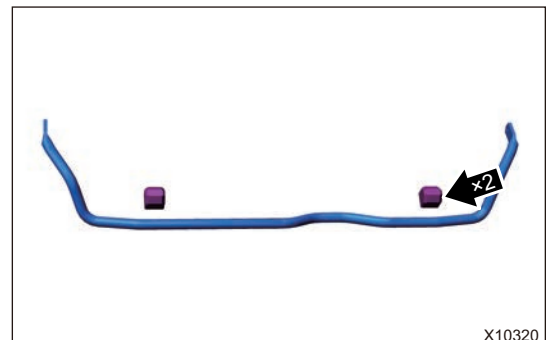
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove the front left wheel.
- (5) Remove the front right wheel.
- (6) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (7) Remove the left side rail assembly.
- (8) Remove the right side rail assembly.
- (9) Remove the front sub frame welding assembly.
- (10) Remove 4 fixing bolts between front stabilizer bar and sub frame.



- (11) Detach left and right fixing clamps from front stabilizer bar assembly.



- (12) Detach left and right rubber supports from front stabilizer bar assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check front stabilizer bar assembly fixing clamps for wear, cracks, deformation or damage. Replace as necessary.
- (2) Check front stabilizer bar assembly rubber supports for dirt, wear, cracks, deformation or damage. Replace as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.
- Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.

- (1) Install left and right rubber supports to front stabilizer bar assembly.
- (2) Install 2 fixing clamps between front stabilizer bar assembly and front sub frame assembly.
- (3) Install 4 fixing bolts between front stabilizer bar and sub frame.

Torque: 80 ± 6 N m

- (4) Install the front sub frame welding assembly.
- (5) Install the right side rail assembly.
- (6) Install the left side rail assembly.
- (7) Install the engine lower protector assembly.
- (8) Install the front wheels.
- (9) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.7 Replacement of Front Steering Knuckle

■ Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left wheel.
- (4) Remove fixing nut from front left drive shaft.

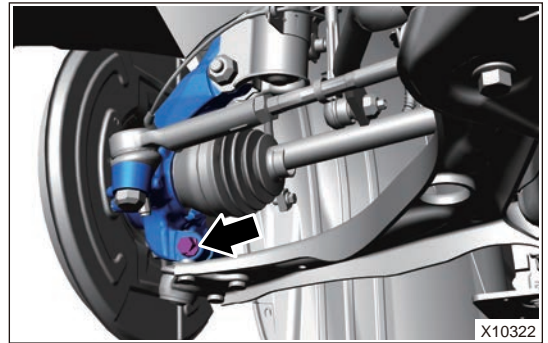


Caution

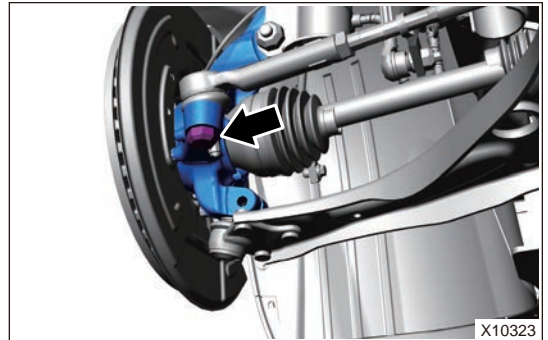
- **Loosen staked part of nut completely, otherwise it will damage threads of drive shaft assembly.**

- (5) Remove the front left brake caliper assembly.

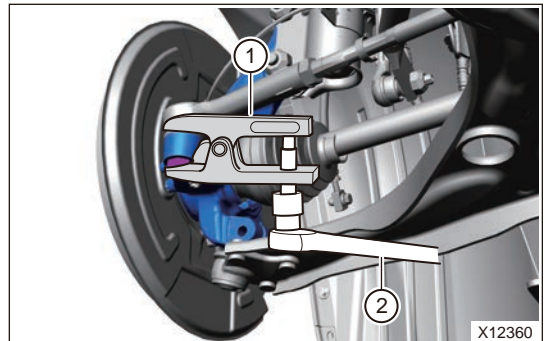
- (6) Remove fixing bolt and nut between front left control arm assembly ball pin and front left steering knuckle assembly.



- (7) Remove fixing nut between left steering tie rod outer ball pin assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.



- (8) Install ball pin separator (1), and tighten ball pin separator bolt with wrench (2) to separate steering tie rod ball pin from steering knuckle assembly.



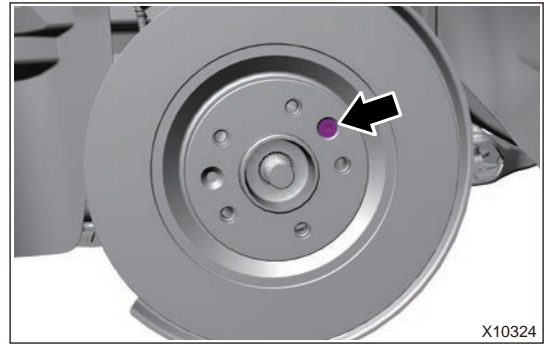
- (9) Remove fixing bolt between front left wheel speed sensor and front left steering knuckle assembly, and disengage the front left wheel speed sensor carefully.



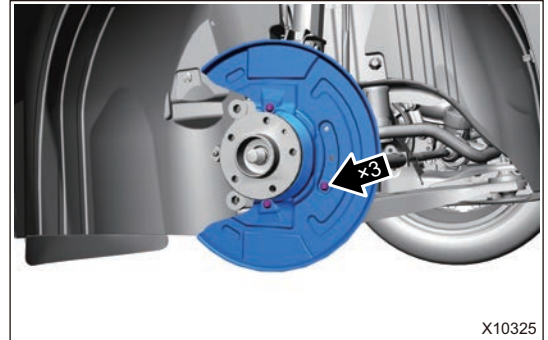
⚠ Caution

Keep head and installation hole of sensor free of foreign matter.

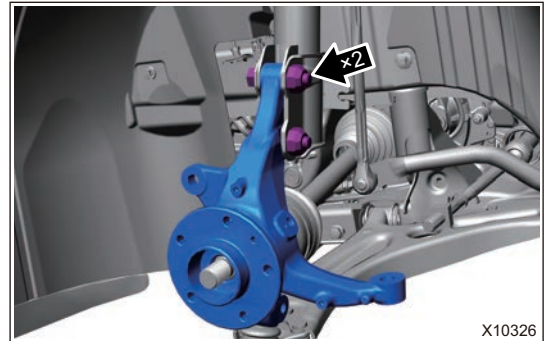
(10) Remove 1 fixing screw and front left brake disc.



(11) Remove 3 fixing bolts between front left dust guard and front left steering knuckle assembly, and remove the front left dust guard.



(12) Remove 2 coupling bolts and nuts between front left shock absorber assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.



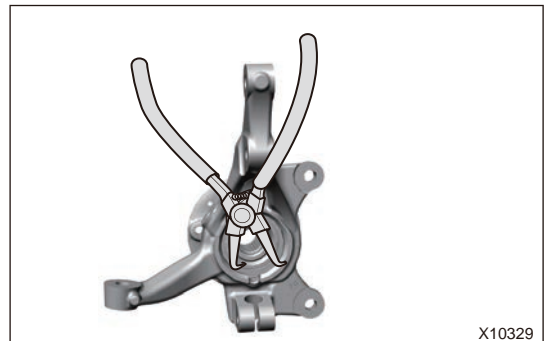
(13) Disengage the left drive shaft and remove the front left steering knuckle assembly.

■ Disassembly

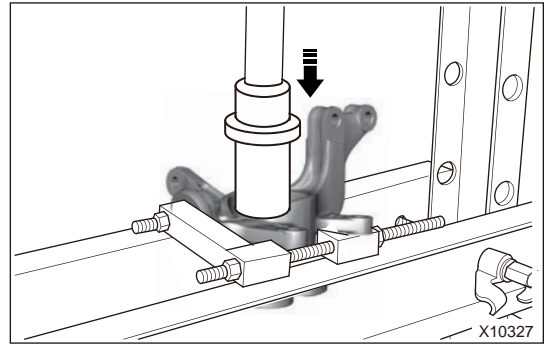
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when disassembling the front steering knuckle assembly, front hub, front hub bearing.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when disassembling front steering knuckle assembly, front hub, front hub bearing. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

(1) Remove the front hub bearing retainer.



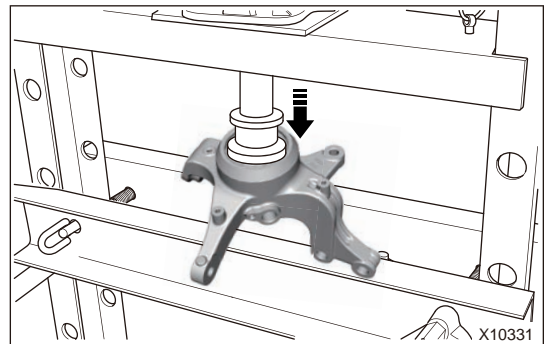
- (2) Place front steering knuckle assembly on a hydraulic press, install bearing remover and adapter, and press out front hub with hydraulic press.



- (3) Remove the front hub carefully.



- (4) Place steering knuckle assembly on a hydraulic press, install bearing remover and adapter, and press out front hub bearing with hydraulic press.



- (5) Remove the front hub bearing carefully.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check front steering knuckle for wear, cracks, deformation or damage. Replace as necessary.
- (2) Check dust guard for dirt, wear, cracks, deformation or damage. Replace as necessary.

■ Assembly

- (1) Place steering knuckle assembly on a hydraulic press, install bearing remover and adapter, and carefully press front hub bearing into steering knuckle with hydraulic press.
- (2) Install the front hub bearing retainer.
- (3) Place steering knuckle assembly on a hydraulic press, install bearing remover and adapter, and carefully press front hub into steering knuckle with hydraulic press.

■ Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Check that hub assembly rotates smoothly and there is no sticking after installation.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to the standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Align drive shaft accurately into front hub bearing of steering knuckle.
- (2) Install coupling nut between front left connecting rod assembly and lower part of front left shock absorber assembly.

Torque: 46 ± 2.5 N·m

- (3) Install 3 fixing bolts between front left dust guard and front left steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 7.5 ± 1 N m

- (4) Install front left brake disc, and install 1 fixing screw.

Torque: 7.5 ± 1 N m

- (5) Install fixing bolt between front left wheel speed sensor and front left steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 8 ± 1.2 N m

- (6) Install fixing bolt and nut between front left control arm assembly ball pin and front left steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 95 ± 7.3 N·m

- (7) Install fixing nut between left steering tie rod outer ball pin assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 60 ± 5 N·m

- (8) Install the front left brake caliper assembly.

- (9) Install fixing nut to front left drive shaft.

Torque: 286 ± 23 N·m

- (10) Install the front left wheel.

- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

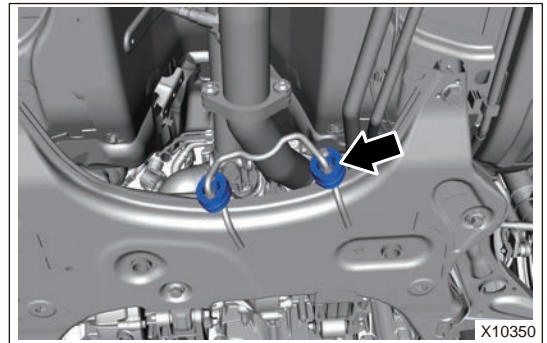
6.8 Replacement of Front Sub Frame Welding Assembly

■ Removal

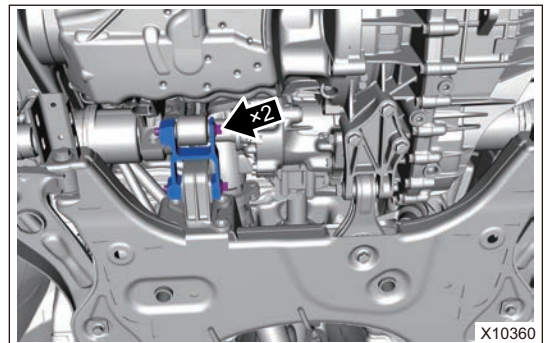
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**
- **When removing front sub frame welding assembly, it is necessary to securely support engine and transmission assembly with engine equalizer to avoid damage.**

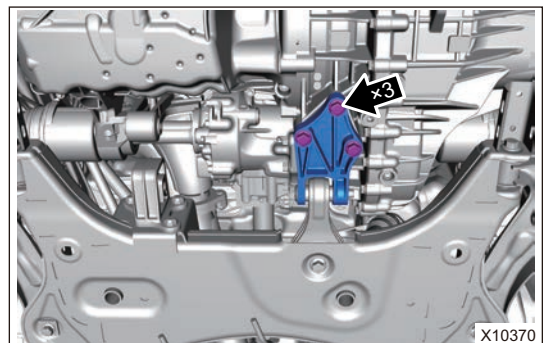
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front wheel.
- (4) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (5) Remove the left side rail assembly.
- (6) Remove the right side rail assembly.
- (7) Remove the front left control arm assembly.
- (8) Remove the front right control arm assembly.
- (9) Using an engine equalizer, support engine and transmission assembly securely.
- (10) Detach the precatalytic converter hanger block.



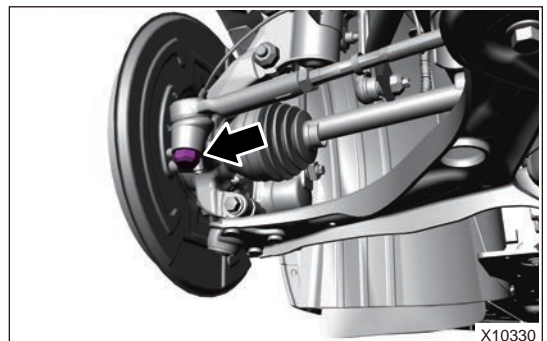
- (11) Remove 2 coupling bolts from rear right mounting.



- (12) Remove 3 fixing bolts from rear mounting.



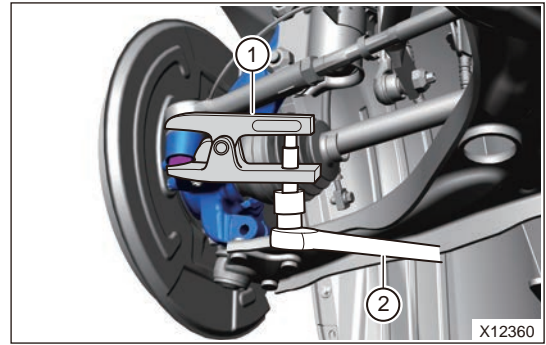
- (13) Remove fixing nut between left steering tie rod outer ball pin assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.



- (14) Install ball pin separator (1), and tighten ball pin separator bolt with wrench (2) to separate steering tie rod outer ball pin from steering knuckle assembly. The removal method of right tie rod outer ball pin is the same as that of left side.

Hint:

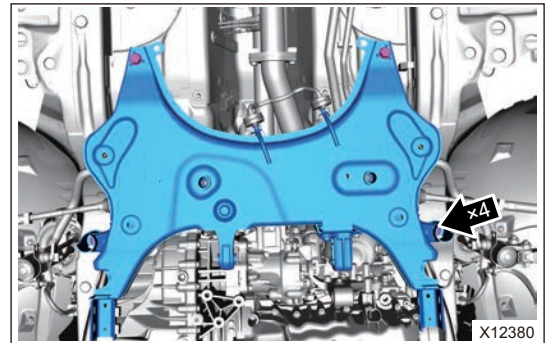
If it is difficult to remove tie rod outer ball pin end from steering knuckle, detach ball pin by striking the end of steering knuckle uniformly and slightly with a hammer or equivalent.



- (15) Remove coupling bolt between steering column assembly and steering gear, separate steering column from steering gear.



- (16) Remove 4 fixing bolts between front sub frame and vehicle body.



- (17) Slowly lower the sub frame welding assembly with stabilizer bar.
 (18) Remove the steering gear assembly.
 (19) Remove the stabilizer bar assembly.
 (20) Remove the front sub frame assembly.

■ **Installation**

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Install stabilizer bar assembly to front sub frame.
- (2) Install steering gear assembly to front sub frame.
- (3) Install sub frame welding assembly with stabilizer bar to transmission carrier, and raise it to a proper position.
- (4) Install 2 fixing bolts between right side of front sub frame and vehicle body.

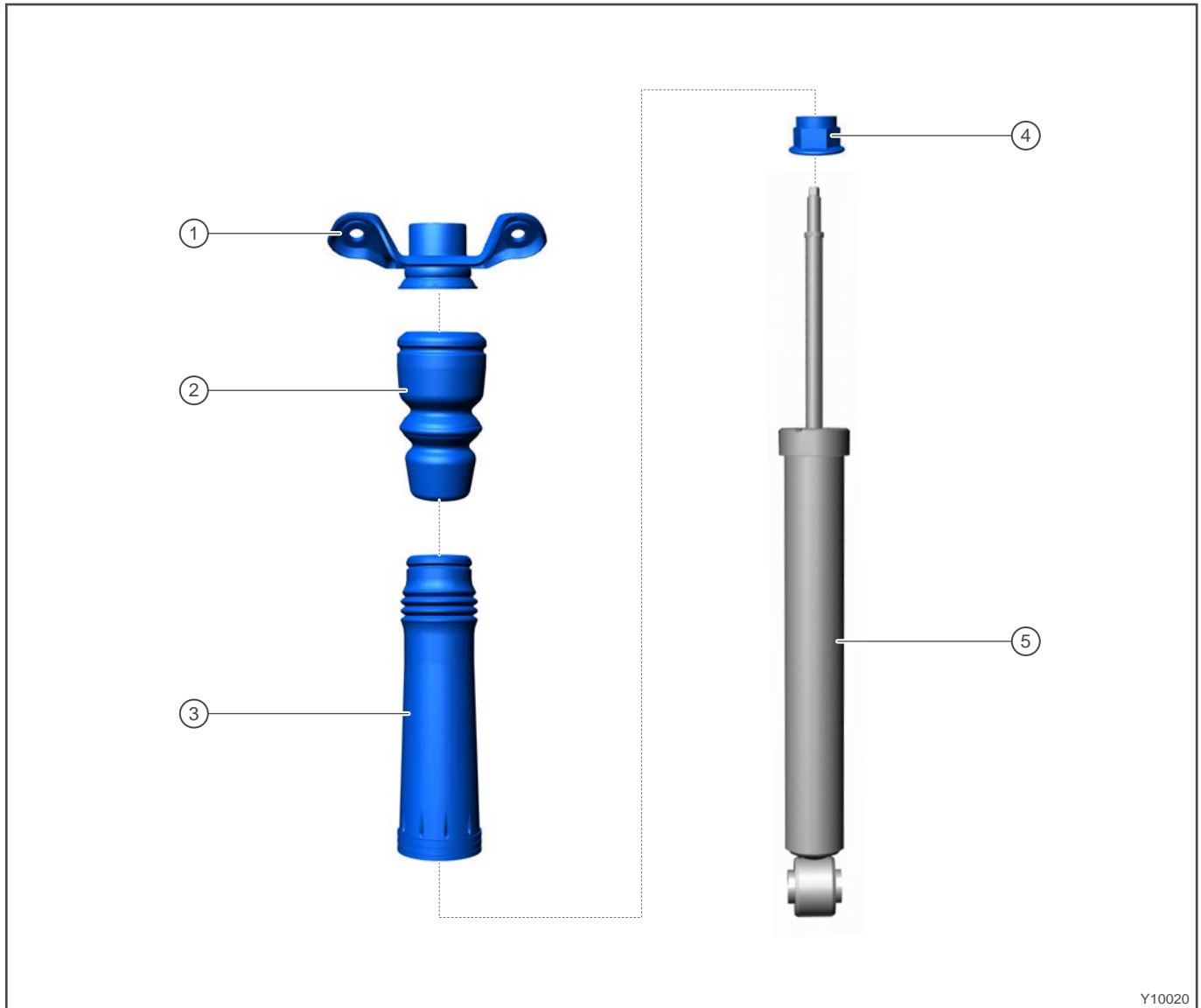
Front mounting bolt torque between sub frame and body: 110 ± 8 N·m

Rear mounting bolt torque between sub frame and body: 200 ± 18 N·m

-
- (5) Install 2 fixing bolts between left side of front sub frame and vehicle body.
Front mounting bolt torque between sub frame and body: $110 \pm 8 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Rear mounting bolt torque between sub frame and body: $200 \pm 18 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (6) Install coupling bolt between steering column assembly and steering gear.
Torque: $40 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (7) Install fixing nut between left steering tie rod outer ball pin assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly.
Torque: $60 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (8) Install the rear mounting assembly.
- (9) Install the rear right mounting assembly.
- (10) Install the precatalytic converter hanger block.
- (11) Install the front right control arm assembly.
- (12) Install the front left control arm assembly.
- (13) Install the left side rail assembly.
- (14) Install the right side rail assembly.
- (15) Install the engine lower protector assembly.
- (16) Install the front wheel.
- (17) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.9 Rear Shock Absorber Assembly

■ Description



Y10020

1	Rear Shock Absorber Upper Connecting Plate Assembly	4	Hexagon Flange Nut
2	Rear Buffer Block Assembly	5	Rear Shock Absorber Assembly
3	Rear Shock Absorber Dust Boot		

■ On-vehicle Inspection

Rear Shock Absorber Assembly Inspection

- (1) Park vehicle on level ground, and bounce vehicle up and down, then check if vehicle shakes up and down when body bounds. If vehicle shakes up and down consecutively, shock absorber assembly may be damaged and should be replaced.
- (1) As shock absorber assembly operates frequently during vehicle driving, oil gas is formed due to temperature rise of shock absorber, which then adheres to dust boot. This is a normal phenomenon, and it is not necessary to replace the shock absorber assembly.
- (2) If following conditions occur:
 - Oil traces in circumferential direction are uneven;

- Oil traces reach lower connecting positions.

Above conditions indicate that there may be a leakage in shock absorber assembly, and it is necessary to replace the shock absorber assembly.

- (3) If it is difficult to accurately judge if shock absorber assembly has leakage from appearance. Perform road test after wiping off oil on the surface of malfunctioning shock absorber. Under normal road conditions, drive vehicle for 5 to 10 minutes and perform inspection. If there are oil traces on the surface of shock absorber assembly, it indicates that oil leakage exists, and it is necessary to replace the shock absorber assembly.

■ Removal

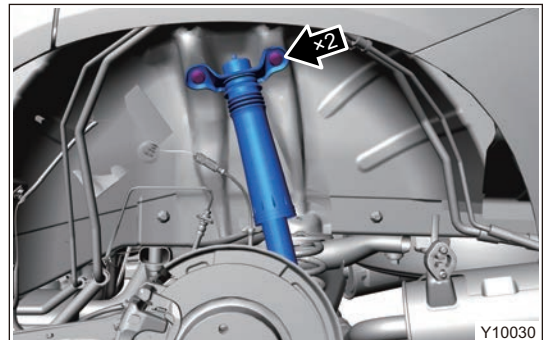
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

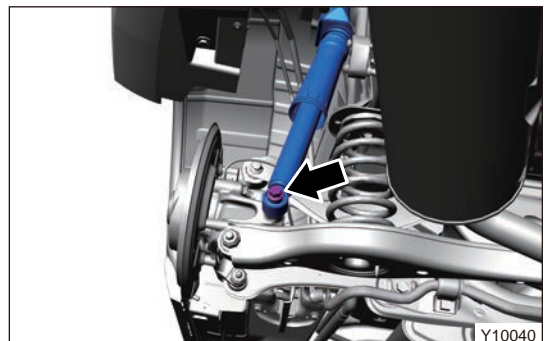
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Make sure that safety lock of lifter has been locked, when removing and installing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing and installing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left wheel.
- (4) Remove the rear left wheel house protector.
- (5) Remove 2 coupling bolts between upper part of rear left shock absorber assembly and body.



- (6) Remove coupling bolt between lower part of rear left shock absorber assembly and rear left steering knuckle assembly.



- (7) Remove the rear left shock absorber assembly.

■ Disassembly

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

- (1) Remove fixing nut from rear left shock absorber assembly.



- (2) Remove the rear left shock absorber upper connecting plate assembly.



- (3) Remove the rear dust boot.



- (4) Remove the rear buffer block.



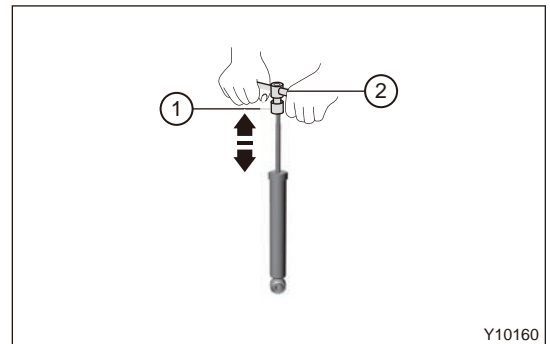
■ Assembly

- (1) Install the rear buffer block.
- (2) Install the rear dust cover.
- (3) Install the rear left shock absorber upper connecting plate assembly.
- (4) Install fixing nut to rear left shock absorber assembly.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the rear shock absorber assembly.
Manual inspection

- 1) Install locking nut (1) to upper end of rear shock absorber assembly strut, and then install the T-wrench (2) or equivalent.



- 2) Compress and extend the rear shock absorber assembly strut several times by hands in direction of arrow as shown in illustration. Check that there is no abnormal resistance or unusual sound during operation. If there is any abnormality, replace rear shock absorber assembly with a new one.
- (2) Check the other components of rear shock absorber assembly
 - 1) Check rear shock absorber cover cap, front spring upper cushion, front dust boot, front buffer block and front spring lower cushion for cracks, wear or deformation. Replace it as necessary.
 - 2) Check rear coil spring for wear, cracks or deformation. Replace it as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torque.**
- **Bounce vehicle up and down several times to stabilize rear suspension after installation.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Install coupling bolt between lower part of rear left shock absorber assembly and rear left steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 160 ± 12 N m

- (2) Install 2 coupling bolts between upper part of rear left shock absorber assembly and body.

Torque: 95 ± 6.7 N m

- (3) Install the rear left wheel house protector.
- (4) Install the rear left wheel.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

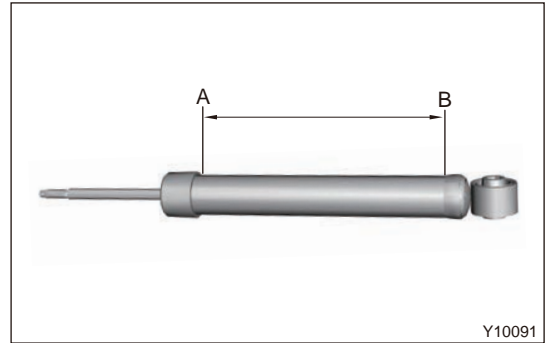
■ Disposal

⚠ Warning

- **Do not drill at high temperature and heat, and be sure to pay attention to safety!**
- **Shock absorber assembly contains nitrogen and oil, which are under high pressure. As hydraulic oil is explosive easily when exposed to heat, the surface is wet with water first before drilling or cutting.**
- **Be careful when drilling or cutting, because metal chips may fly about. Always perform operations with proper safety equipment to avoid personal injury.**
- **Before handling, be sure to wear goggles and release pressure inside shock absorber assembly to avoid personal injury.**

- (1) Extend the rear shock absorber assembly strut fully.

- (2) Using a drill, make a hole between A and B in the strut as shown in the illustration, to discharge gas from rear shock absorber assembly and hydraulic oil.



- (3) After discharging gas and hydraulic oil from rear shock absorber assembly, handle the rear shock absorber assembly properly.

Hint:

Recycle disposed rear shock absorber assembly according to local environmental regulations.

6.10 Replacement of Rear Coil Spring

■ **Removal**

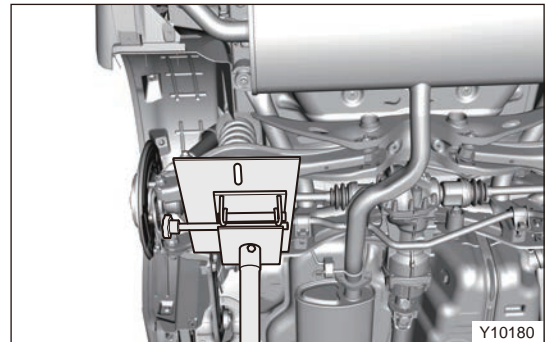
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

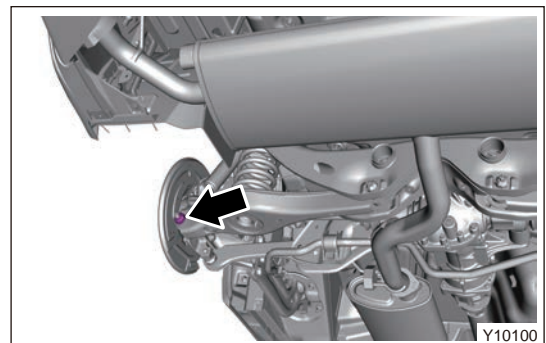
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

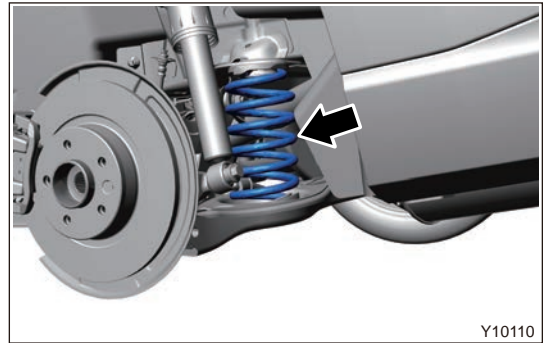
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear wheel.
- (4) Support the rear lower control arm assembly with a transmission carrier securely.



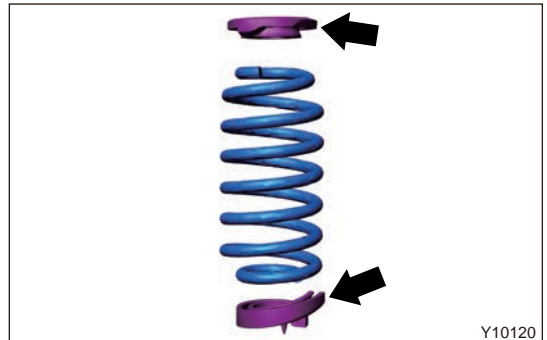
- (5) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear lower control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.



- (6) Lower the transmission carrier slowly to an appropriate height and remove the rear coil spring carefully.



- (7) Remove the rear coil spring upper and lower cushions.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check rear coil spring for wear, cracks or permanent deformation due to excessive use. Replace it as necessary.
- (2) Check rear coil spring upper cushion and lower cushion for dirty, wear, cracks, deformation or damage. Replace it as necessary.
- (3) Check the free length of rear coil spring.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Align the protrusion of rear coil spring lower cushion with the positioning hole of rear lower control arm during installation.**
- **After installation, lower vehicle and bounce vehicle up and down several times to stabilize rear suspension.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Install the rear coil spring upper and lower cushions.
- (2) Install coil spring and use transmission carrier to lift rear lower control arm to a proper height.
- (3) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear lower control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 165 ± 12.4 N m

- (4) Slowly lower the transmission carrier and remove it.
- (5) Install the rear wheel.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.11 Replacement of Rear Upper Control Arm Assembly

■ Removal

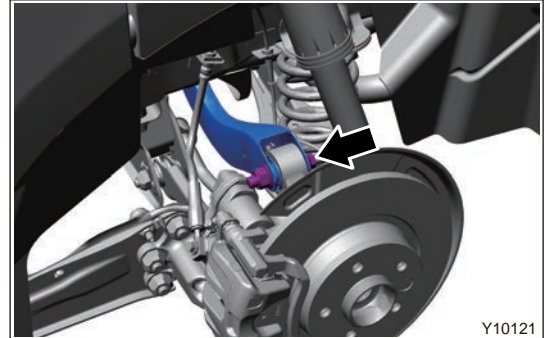
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

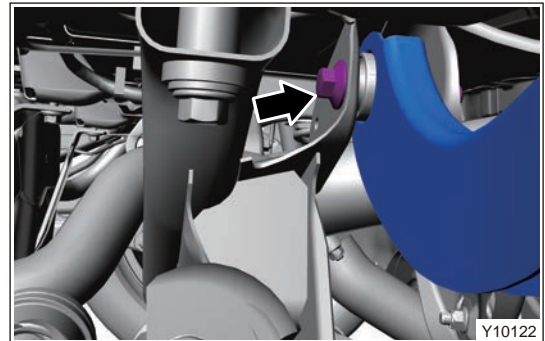
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

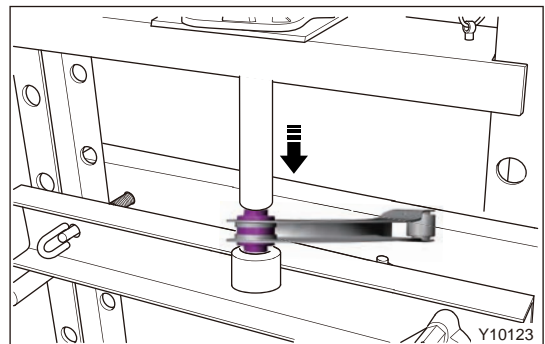
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear wheel.
- (4) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear upper control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.



- (5) Remove coupling bolt between rear upper control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly.



- (6) Remove the rear upper control arm assembly.
- (7) Place the rear upper control arm assembly on a hydraulic press, cooperate with tools, and press out rear upper control arm assembly rubber bushing with hydraulic press.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Place the rear upper control arm assembly on a hydraulic press, cooperate with tools, and press control arm assembly rubber bushing into rear upper control arm with hydraulic press.

⚠ Caution

Before pressing in, apply grease on the outside of control arm assembly rubber bushing to prevent control arm assembly rubber bushing from being damaged.

- (2) Install coupling bolt between rear upper control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly.
Torque: 160 ± 12 N m
- (3) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear upper control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.
Torque: 160 ± 12 N m
- (4) Install the rear wheel.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.12 Replacement of Rear Lower Control Arm Assembly

■ Removal

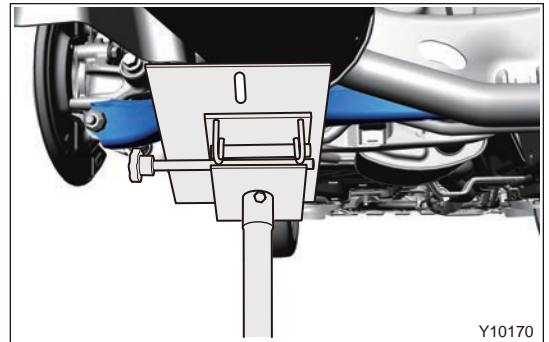
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

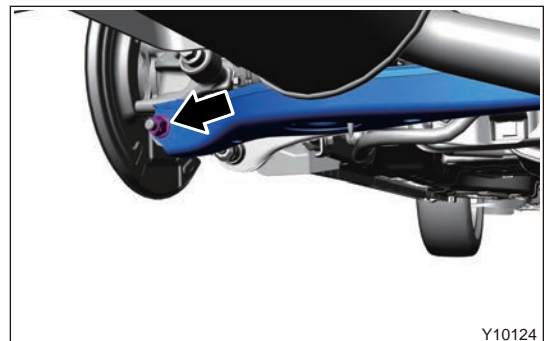
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear wheel.
- (4) Support the rear lower control arm assembly with a transmission carrier securely.

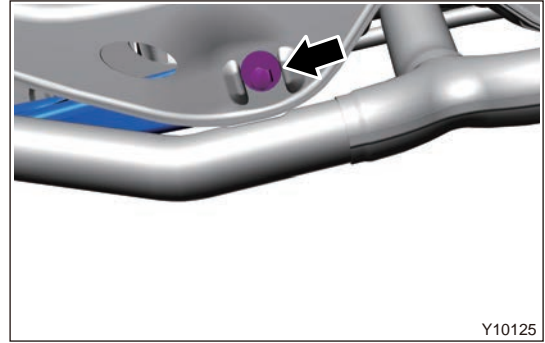


- (5) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear lower control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.



- (6) Lower the transmission carrier slowly to a proper height and remove rear coil spring, rear coil spring upper cushion and rear coil spring lower cushion carefully.

- (7) Remove coupling bolt, nut and adjusting shim between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly.



Y10125

- (8) Remove the rear lower control arm assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Install coupling bolt, nut and adjusting shim between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly.

Torque: 130 ± 13.5 N m

- (2) Install rear coil spring, rear coil spring upper and lower cushions and use transmission carrier to lift rear lower control arm to a proper height.
- (3) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear lower control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 165 ± 12.4 N m

- (4) Slowly lower the transmission carrier.
- (5) Install the rear wheel.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.13 Replacement of Rear Trailing Arm Assembly

■ Removal

Hint:

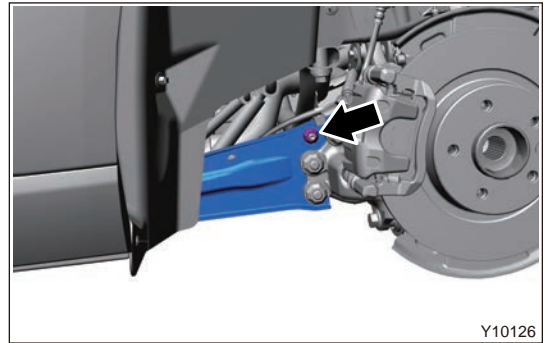
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Warning

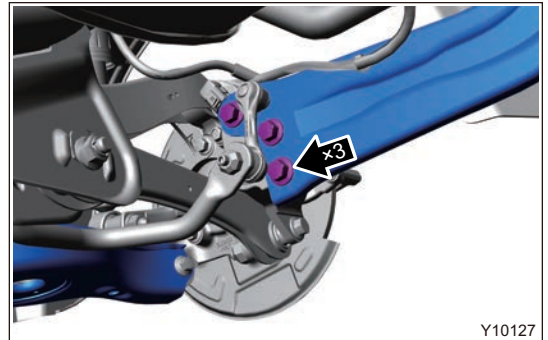
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear wheel.

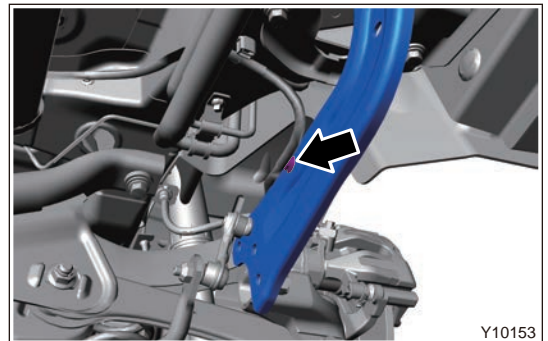
- (4) Remove coupling nut between rear connecting rod assembly and rear trailing arm assembly, and disengage rear connecting rod assembly.



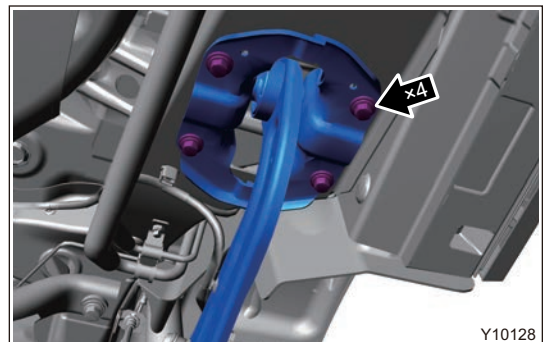
- (5) Remove 3 coupling bolts between rear steering knuckle assembly and rear trailing arm assembly.



- (6) Remove the wire harness clip.



- (7) Remove 4 coupling bolts between rear trailing arm assembly mounting bracket and body.



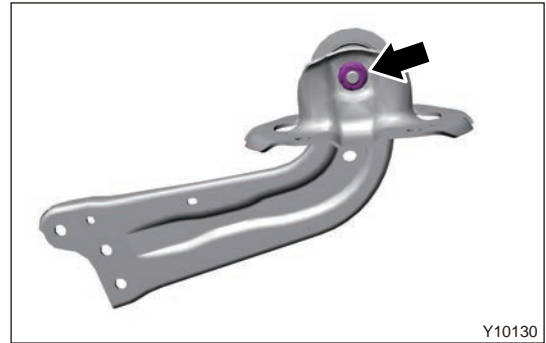
- (8) Remove the rear trailing arm assembly (w/ mounting bracket).

■ Disassembly

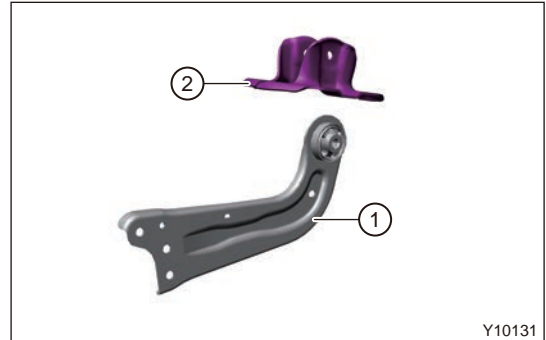
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

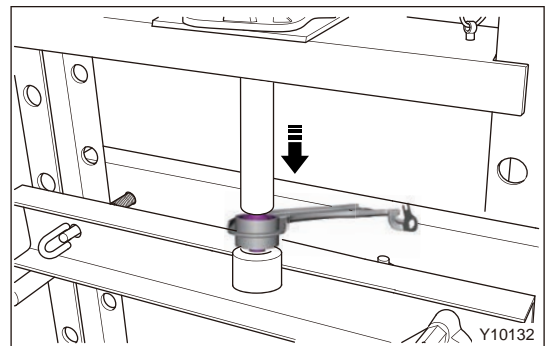
- (1) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear trailing arm assembly and mounting bracket.



- (2) Separate rear trailing arm assembly (1) from mounting bracket (2).



- (3) Place the rear trailing arm assembly on a hydraulic press, and press out rear trailing arm assembly rubber boot with hydraulic press.



■ Assembly

- (1) Place the rear trailing arm assembly on a hydraulic press, cooperate with tools, and press rear trailing arm assembly rubber sleeve into rear trailing arm assembly with hydraulic press.

⚠ Caution

Before pressing in, apply grease on the outside of trailing arm assembly rubber boot to prevent it from damage.

- (2) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear trailing arm assembly and mounting bracket.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Install 4 coupling bolts between rear trailing arm assembly mounting bracket and body.

Torque: 65 ± 5.5 N m

- (2) Install the wire harness clip.
- (3) Install 3 coupling bolts between rear steering knuckle assembly and rear trailing arm assembly.

Torque: 200 ± 15 N m

- (4) Install coupling nut between rear connecting rod assembly and rear trailing arm assembly.

Torque: 55 ± 4.1 N m

- (5) Install the rear wheel.
 (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.14 Replacement of Rear Pull Rod Assembly

■ Removal

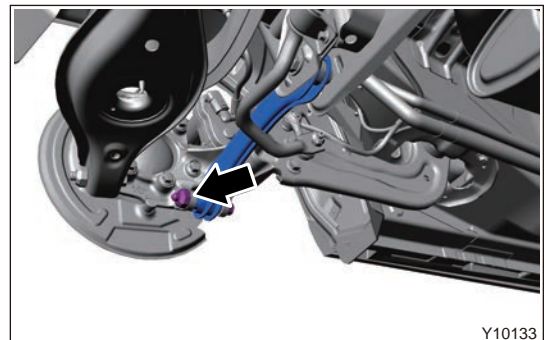
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

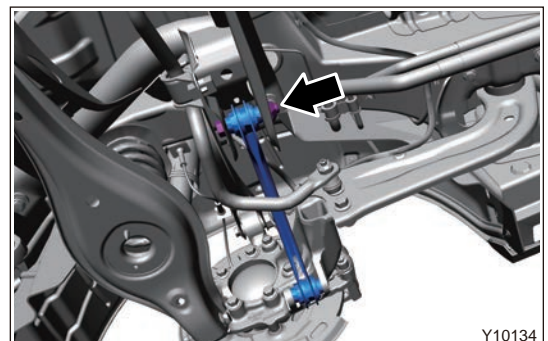
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (3) Remove the rear wheel.
 (4) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear pull rod assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.

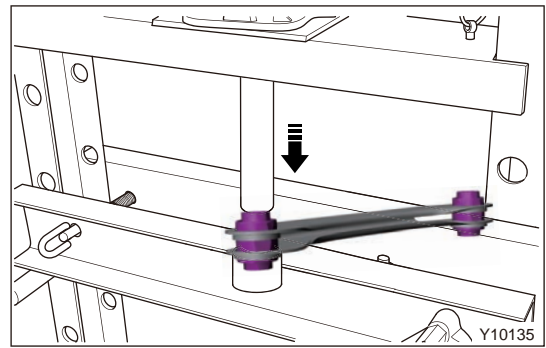


- (5) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear pull rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly.



- (6) Remove the rear pull rod assembly.

- (7) Place the rear pull rod assembly on a hydraulic press, and press out rear pull rod assembly rubber boot with hydraulic press.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**

- (1) Place the rear pull rod assembly on a hydraulic press, cooperate with tools, and press rear pull rod assembly rubber boot into rear pull rod assembly with hydraulic press.

⚠ Caution

Before pressing in, apply grease on the outside of rear pull rod assembly rubber boot to prevent it from damage.

- (2) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear pull rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly.
- (3) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear pull rod assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.
- (4) Install the rear wheel.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

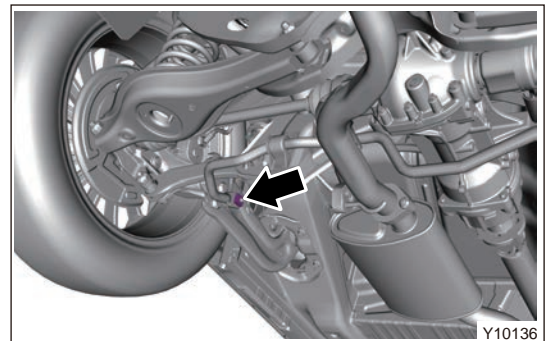
6.15 Replacement of Rear Stabilizer Bar Assembly

■ Removal

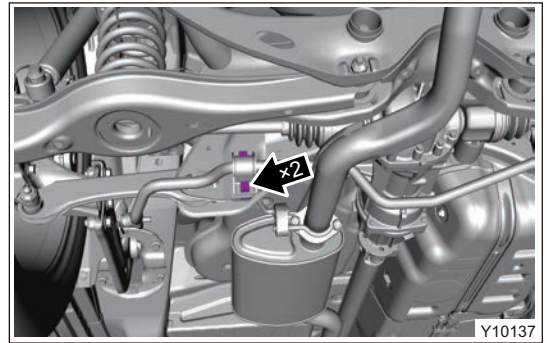
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

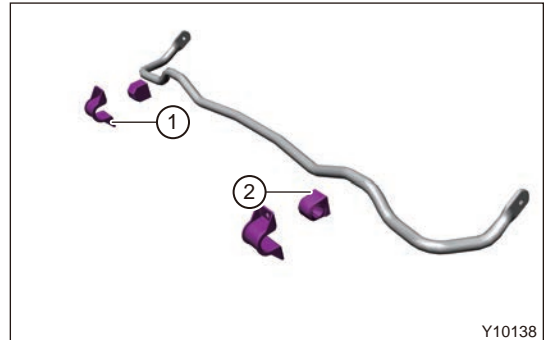
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove coupling nut between rear left connecting rod assembly and rear stabilizer bar assembly. Use same removal procedure for right side.



- (4) Remove 2 coupling bolts between rear stabilizer bar assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly. Use same removal procedure for right side.



- (5) Remove the rear stabilizer bar assembly.
 (6) Remove rear stabilizer bar fixing clamp (1) and rear stabilizer bar rubber support (2) from rear stabilizer bar assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check rear stabilizer bar assembly fixing clamps for wear, cracks, deformation or damage. Replace it as necessary.
 (2) Check rear stabilizer bar assembly rubber supports for dirt, wear, cracks, deformation or damage. Replace it as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.
- Check wheel alignment after installation. Adjust wheel alignment to the standard range as necessary.

- (1) Install rear stabilizer bar fixing clamp (1) and rear stabilizer bar rubber support (2).
 (2) Install 2 coupling bolts between rear stabilizer bar assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly. Use same installation procedure for right side.

⚠ Caution

Due to rubber bushing deformation, tightened bolt will exit false torque, so it is necessary to retighten the tightened bolt.

Torque: 45 ± 4 N m

- (3) Place rear connecting rod shield on rear connecting rod, install coupling nut between rear left connecting rod assembly and rear stabilizer bar assembly. Use same installation procedure for right side.

Torque: 55 ± 4.1 N m

- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.16 Replacement of Rear Connecting Rod Assembly

■ Removal

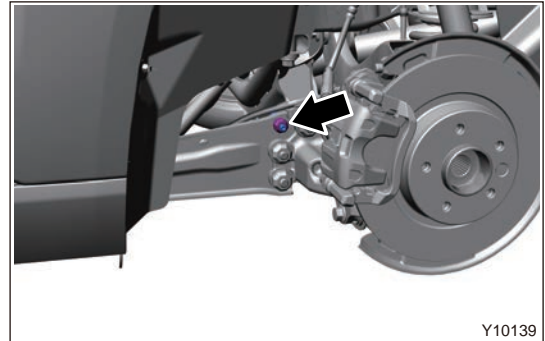
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

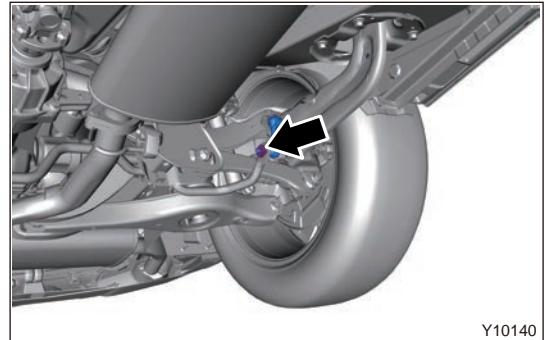
⚠ Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove coupling nut between rear connecting rod assembly and rear trailing arm assembly, and disengage rear connecting rod assembly.



- (4) Remove coupling nut between rear connecting rod assembly and rear stabilizer bar assembly, and remove rear connecting rod assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check rear connecting rod assembly bush for wear, cracks, deformation, damage or grease leakage. Replace it as necessary.
- (2) Check if end of rear connecting rod assembly rotates smoothly. Replace it as necessary.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Make sure that end of rear connecting rod assembly rotates smoothly and there is no sticking after installation.**

- (1) Install coupling nut between rear connecting rod assembly and rear stabilizer bar assembly.

Torque: 55 ± 4.1 N m

- (2) Install coupling nut between rear connecting rod assembly and rear trailing arm assembly.

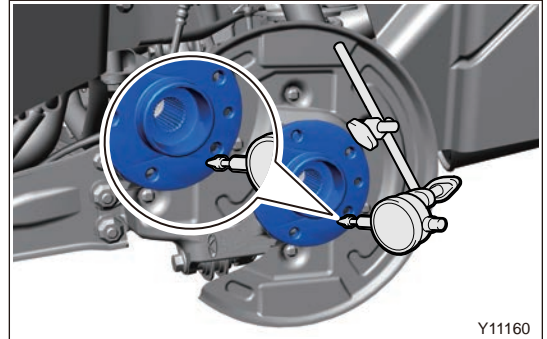
Torque: 55 ± 4.1 N m

- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.17 Replacement of Rear Hub Bearing Assembly

■ On-vehicle Inspection

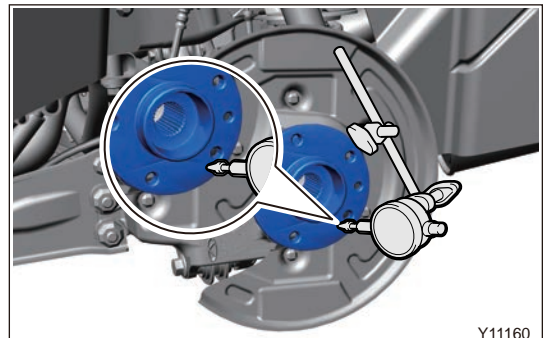
- (1) Remove the rear wheel.
- (2) Remove the rear brake caliper assembly.
- (3) Remove the rear brake disc.
- (4) Check the rear hub bearing looseness.
 - 1) Check looseness near center of the rear hub bearing with a dial indicator.



⚠ Caution

- Ensure that dial indicator is perpendicular to measurement surface.
- If looseness exceeds maximum value, replace the rear hub bearing assembly.

- (5) Check the rear hub bearing runout.
 - 1) Check runout of the rear hub bearing assembly surface with a dial indicator.



⚠ Caution

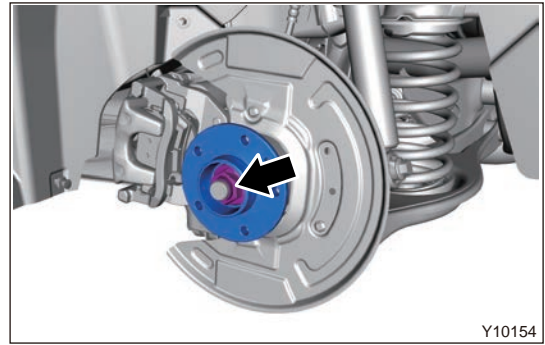
- Ensure that dial indicator is perpendicular to measurement surface.
- If looseness exceeds maximum value, replace the rear hub bearing assembly.

■ Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
 - Procedures listed below are for left side.
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
 - (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 - (3) Remove the rear left wheel.
 - (4) Remove the rear left brake caliper assembly.
 - (5) Remove the rear left brake disc.

- (6) Remove locking nut from rear left drive shaft.



Y10154

- (7) Remove the rear hub bearing.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.
- Check wheel alignment after installation. Adjust wheel alignment to the standard range as necessary.

- (1) Install locking nut to rear left drive shaft.

Torque: 286 ± 23 N m

- (2) Install the rear left brake disc.
- (3) Install the rear brake caliper assembly.
- (4) Install the rear left wheel.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.18 Replacement of Rear Steering Knuckle

■ Removal

Hint:

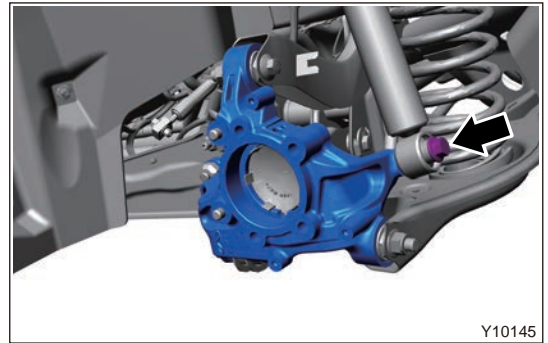
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.
- Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.
- It is not allowed to weld or modify suspension bearing parts and guide parts.
- When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear wheel.
- (4) Remove the rear brake caliper assembly.
- (5) Remove the rear brake disc.
- (6) Remove the rear dust guard.
- (7) Remove the rear wheel speed sensor.
- (8) Remove the rear hub bearing.

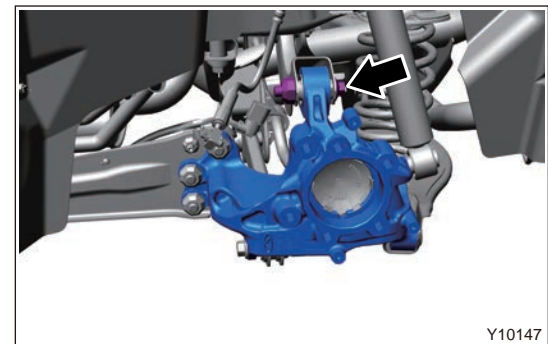
- (9) Remove coupling bolt between rear shock absorber assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.



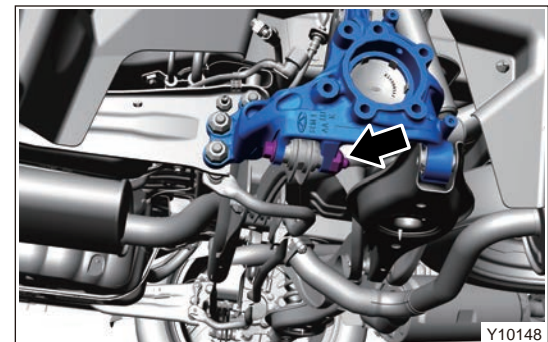
- (10) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear lower control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.



- (11) Remove coupling bolt and nut between rear upper control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.



- (12) Remove coupling bolt and nut between pull rod assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.



- (13) Remove 3 coupling bolts between rear steering knuckle assembly and rear trailing arm assembly.



(14) Remove the rear steering knuckle assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to tighten bolt to specified torque.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation. Adjust wheel alignment to the standard range as necessary.**

(1) Install 3 coupling bolts between rear steering knuckle assembly and rear trailing arm assembly.

Torque: 200 ± 15 N m

(2) Install coupling bolt and nut between pull rod assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.

(3) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear upper control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 160 ± 12 N m

(4) Install coupling bolt and nut between rear lower control arm assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 165 ± 12.4 N m

(5) Install coupling bolt between rear shock absorber assembly and rear steering knuckle assembly.

Torque: 95 ± 7.3 N·m

(6) Install the rear hub bearing.

(7) Install the rear wheel speed sensor.

(8) Install the rear dust guard.

(9) Install the rear brake disc.

(10) Install the rear brake caliper assembly.

(11) Install the rear wheel.

(12) Connect the negative battery cable.

6.19 Replacement of Rear Sub Frame Welding Assembly

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Check if safety lock of lifter is locked when repairing chassis parts.**
- **It is not permitted to weld or modify bearing parts of wheel suspension and guide parts of wheel.**
- **When removing chassis parts, replace self-locking nuts and rusted nuts for safety.**

(1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.

(2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

(3) Remove the rear wheel.

(4) Remove the rear brake caliper assembly.

(5) Remove the rear brake disc.

(6) Remove the rear hub shaft assembly.

(7) Remove the rear steering knuckle assembly.

(8) Remove the rear lower control arm assembly.

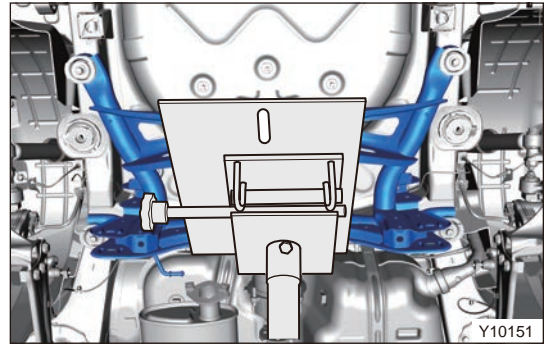
(9) Remove the rear pull rod assembly.

(10) Remove the rear stabilizer bar assembly.

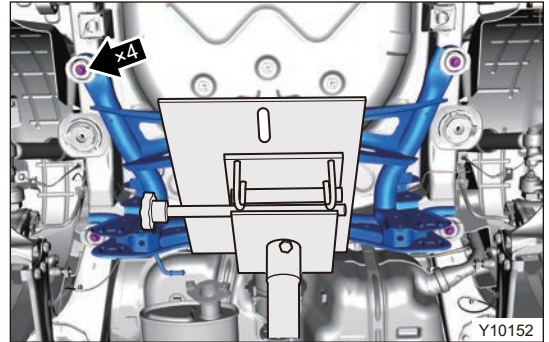
(11) Remove the rear drive shaft assembly.

(12) Remove the rear final drive assembly.

(13) Install transmission carrier to support rear sub frame assembly.



(14) Remove 4 coupling bolts between rear sub frame assembly and body.



(15) Remove the rear sub frame assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torques.**
- **Bounce vehicle up and down several times to stabilize rear suspension after installation.**
- **Check wheel alignment after installation is completed. Adjust wheel alignment to standard range as necessary.**

- (1) Install transmission carrier to lift rear sub frame to a proper height.
- (2) Install 4 coupling bolts between rear sub frame assembly and body.

Torque: 95 ± 7.1 N m

- (3) Install the rear stabilizer bar assembly.
- (4) Install the rear pull rod assembly.
- (5) Install the rear lower control arm assembly.
- (6) Install the rear steering knuckle assembly.
- (7) Install the rear hub shaft assembly.
- (8) Install the rear brake disc.
- (9) Install the rear brake caliper assembly.
- (10) Install the rear wheel.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT

20.1	FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT	863
1	Warning and Precaution	863
1.1	Precautions	863
2	System Overview	863
2.1	System Description	863
3	Parameter Operation Description	863
3.1	System Function Introduction	863
3.2	Kingpin Caster	863
3.3	Kingpin Inclination	863
3.4	Front Wheel Camber	864
3.5	Front Wheel Toe-in	864
4	Specifications (Parameters Standard for Four-wheel Alignment).....	864
5	Diagnostic Information and Steps	864
5.1	Problem Symptoms Table	864
6	On-vehicle Service	865
6.1	Inspection before Wheel Alignment	865
6.2	Front Wheel Camber	865
6.3	Front Wheel Toe-in	865
6.4	Kingpin Caster & Kingpin Inclination	867
6.5	Rear Wheel Camber.....	867
6.6	Rear Wheel Toe-in	868

20.1 FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Be sure to perform wheel alignment procedures according to operating instructions of four-wheel alignment device.
- (2) Periodic maintenance and service for four-wheel alignment device should be performed.
- (3) After four-wheel alignment is completed, the center position calibration needs to be recalibrated.
- (4) After four-wheel alignment is completed, it is necessary to perform SAM steering angle zero point calibration and motor position sensor calibration inside EPS module.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

As the installation among four wheels, steering mechanism and front and rear axles should have a certain relative position, which is the standard value formulated by manufacturer. Adjusting and restoring the installation in this position is wheel alignment.

In general, wheel alignment has the following 6 parameters:

- (1) Check front wheel camber.
- (2) Check front wheel toe-in.
- (3) Check kingpin caster.
- (4) Check kingpin inclination.
- (5) Check rear wheel camber.
- (6) Check rear wheel toe-in.

3 Parameter Operation Description

3.1 System Function Introduction

Front wheel alignment includes kingpin caster, kingpin inclination, front wheel camber and front wheel toe-in. Rear wheel alignment includes wheel camber and each rear wheel toe-in. In this way, front wheel alignment and rear wheel alignment are called wheel alignment, which is often called four-wheel alignment. The role of wheel alignment is to keep vehicle in stable straight line and light steering, and reduce wear of tires and steering gear parts during driving.

3.2 Kingpin Caster

When looking at wheel from side, steering kingpin (the center of rotation when the wheel turns) tilts backward, which is called kingpin caster. After setting kingpin caster, there is a distance (called kingpin caster distance, which is the same principle that the front wheel cross beam of bicycle tilts backward) between ground point of kingpin center line and ground projection point of wheel center. The ground point of wheel is located at rear end of extension line of steering kingpin, and wheel is pulled back by rolling resistance during driving, so that the direction of wheel is naturally toward driving direction. Setting a large kingpin caster can improve straight line driving performance, and kingpin caster distance is also increased. If kingpin caster distance is too large, steering wheel will be heavy and wheel bumps will be increased due to road interference.

3.3 Kingpin Inclination

When looking at the tire from front and rear direction of vehicle, kingpin is inclined toward the inside of vehicle body. This angle is called kingpin inclination. When wheel revolves around kingpin, the lowest point of wheel will sink below road surface, but in fact, the lower edge of wheel cannot sink below road surface. Instead, steering wheel and entire front of vehicle are lifted up to a corresponding height. The gravity of vehicle has effect of returning steering wheels to original middle position, so steering wheel is easy to reset.

In addition, kingpin inclination also reduces the distance between intersection of kingpin and road to intersection of wheel center plane and ground, thereby reducing driver's force on steering wheel during

steering, making steering easier and reducing the impact force transmitted from steering vehicle wheel to steering wheel. However, kingpin inclination should not be too large, otherwise it will accelerate tire wear.

3.4 Front Wheel Camber

When looking at wheel from front and rear direction, tires are not installed vertically, but slightly tilted to show an "\/" shape, which is called negative camber, and when it is tilted in opposite direction, it is called positive camber. In heyday of using bias tires, camber was set to be relatively large because it made it easier to operate the steering wheel by tilting the tires to the ground. Vehicle generally sets camber to be very small, close to vertical. The use of flat radial tires for automobiles continues to grow in popularity. Due to characteristics of radial tires (large rigid tire tread pattern and wide outer tread), setting a large camber will cause tire to wear out and reduce tire friction. Also, due to continuous use of power steering mechanism, camber has been continuously reduced. Nevertheless, setting a small camber can apply appropriate lateral thrust to wheel bearings on axle.

3.5 Front Wheel Toe-in

Four-wheel alignment toe value

Toe-in, the so-called "pigeon toe", refers to the front left and front right wheels being pointed inward respectively. The purpose of adopting this structure is to correct outward rotation of wheel caused by front wheel camber. As mentioned above, due to camber, the steering wheel operation becomes more easy. On the other hand, due to the tilt of wheels, front left and front right wheels rotate to outside respectively. To correct this problem, the left and right wheels have an inward angle, thus left and right wheels can keep moving in a straight line and reducing tire wear.

4 Specifications (Parameters Standard for Four-wheel Alignment)

Items		Specified Value
Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	$-30' \pm 30'$
	Kingpin Caster	$6^{\circ}43' \pm 45'$
	Kingpin Inclination	$13^{\circ}54' \pm 45'$
	Front Wheel Toe-in	$8' \pm 6'$ (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Toe-in	$10' \pm 6'$ (one side)
	Rear Wheel Camber	$-1^{\circ}11' \pm 30'$

5 Diagnostic Information and Steps

5.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair or adjust faulty components, or replace as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Vehicle pulls	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)
Wheel shimmy	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)
Abnormal tire wear	Tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)

6 On-vehicle Service

6.1 Inspection before Wheel Alignment

If following components have been removed, installed or replaced, check and perform wheel alignment procedures:

- Front control arm assembly
- Front control arm ball pin assembly
- Front steering knuckle
- Front shock absorber assembly
- Steering gear and steering tie rod
- Drive shaft
- Front sub frame welding assembly
- Rear torsion beam welding assembly

- (1) Vehicle is in unloaded state.
- (2) Use a lift to support and raise vehicle to a proper height.
- (3) Check hub bearing for excessive clearance, and replace hub bearing as necessary.
- (4) Check suspension components, steering tie rod and ball pin for wear, deformation or damage. Replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.
- (5) Check shock absorber assembly for proper operation.
- (6) Check if tire pressure is within specified range and adjust it to specified pressure as necessary.

Items	Front Wheel	Rear Wheel	Spare Tire
Tire Pressure (kPa) (Unloaded)	220 (Unloaded 17 inch) 230 (Unloaded 18/19 inch)	220 (Unloaded 17 inch) 230 (Unloaded 18/19 inch)	420

- (7) Check rim and tire.
 - 1)Visually check rim and tire for scratches, wear or damage.
 - 2)Perform wheel dynamic balance procedures.

6.2 Front Wheel Camber

- (1) Incorrect front wheel camber will cause abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust front wheel camber as necessary.
In normal conditions, it is not necessary to adjust camber after assembling independent suspension and wheel steering knuckle. If wheel camber is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust through the coupling bolt between independent suspension and steering knuckle.

Specified Value for Front Wheel Camber:

Items	Parameter
Front Wheel Camber	-30' ± 30'

■ Inspection

- (1) Visually check driving system components for deformation and damage before adjustment. Replace deformed or damaged components as necessary.
- (2) Install wheel alignment device onto front wheel, and perform inspection procedures according to operating instructions for wheel alignment device.

6.3 Front Wheel Toe-in

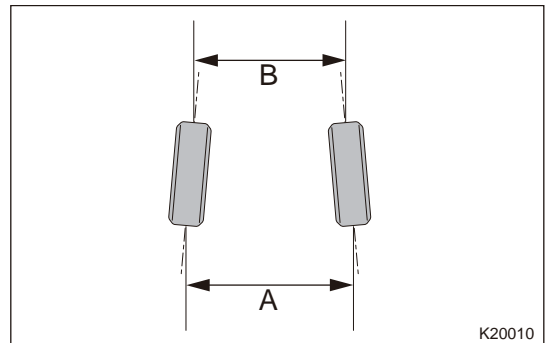
- (1) Incorrect front wheel toe-in will cause wheel pull and abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust front wheel toe-in as necessary.
If front wheel toe-in is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust the length of steering tie rod to return the toe-in to specified value.

Specified Value for Front Wheel Toe-in:

Items	Parameter
Front Wheel Toe-in	8' ± 6' (one side)

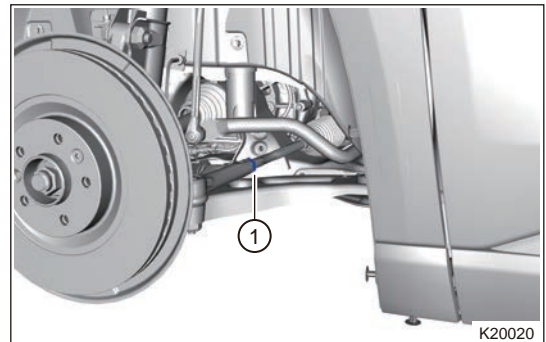
■ Inspection

- (1) Perform inspection with four-wheel alignment device (perform inspection procedures referring to operating instructions for four-wheel alignment device).
- (2) Manual check:
 - 1) Park vehicle on level ground, check if front tire pressure is within the specified range and adjust it to specified value as necessary.
 - 2) Place marks on center position in front of front wheels, and measure distance A between marks with a tape measure.
 - 3) Push vehicle to rotate wheels 180°, and measure distance B between marks with a tape measure when marks are turned to rear of wheels.
- 4) Calculation method: Front wheel toe-in = $A - B \leq 1$ mm.



■ Adjustment

- (1) Make adjusting preparation for wheel alignment according to requirement of tester.
- (2) Loosen the locking nut (1) of steering tie rod, and turn the tie rod to adjust the length as required until front wheel toe-in reaches the specified value.



- (3) Tighten the steering tie rod locking nut (23# dual-purpose wrench) and reinstall the elastic jacket snap ring. Check if locking nut is tightened in place and if jacket position is correct.
Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m

⚠ Caution

- **If elasticity of elastic jacket snap ring is not enough, replace it.**

- (4) After adjusting front wheel toe-in, check steering wheel for eccentricity. If necessary, loosen the steering wheel locking nut and adjust the steering wheel to horizontal position, and then tighten the steering wheel locking nut (22# socket wrench) to specified torque.
Tightening torque: 48 ± 4 N·m

6.4 Kingpin Caster & Kingpin Inclination

- (1) Kingpin caster and kingpin inclination can only be checked by using four-wheel alignment device.

Kingpin caster and kingpin inclination are assured by design structure and cannot be adjusted.

If measured value is not within the specified range, check if other components that connect to steering knuckle are deformed or damaged. In addition, check the connecting part of steering knuckle for deformed or damaged.

If so, replace corresponding components.

Specified Value for Kingpin Caster & Kingpin Inclination:

Items	Parameter
Kingpin Caster	$6^{\circ}43' \pm 45'$
Kingpin Inclination	$13^{\circ}54' \pm 45'$

6.5 Rear Wheel Camber

- (1) Incorrect rear wheel camber will cause wheel pull and abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust rear wheel camber as necessary.

If rear wheel camber is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust eccentric adjusting bolt and eccentric adjusting shim between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to return the camber to specified value.

If rear wheel camber is not as specified, check rear suspension and wheels for damage or deformation. Replace damaged or deformed components as necessary.

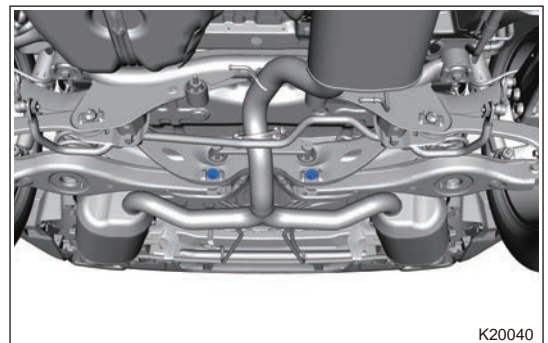
Specified Value for Rear Wheel Camber:

Items	Parameter
Rear Wheel Camber	$-1^{\circ}11' \pm 30'$

■ Adjustment

- (1) Make adjusting preparation for wheel alignment according to requirement of tester.

- (2) Loosen the coupling bolts (18# socket wrench) between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly, be careful that eccentric adjusting shim does not detach from groove.



- (3) Rotate the eccentric adjusting shim and eccentric adjusting bolt to adjust rear wheel camber to specified value.

- (4) Tighten the coupling bolts (18# socket wrench) between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to specified torque after adjustment (adjusting method of left and right wheels is the same).

Tightening torque: $100 \pm 7.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

6.6 Rear Wheel Toe-in

- (1) Incorrect rear wheel toe-in will cause wheel pull and abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust rear wheel toe-in as necessary.

If rear wheel toe-in is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust eccentric adjusting bolt and eccentric adjusting shim between tie rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to return the toe-in to specified value.

If rear wheel toe-in is not as specified, check rear suspension and wheels for damage or deformation. Replace damaged or deformed components as necessary.

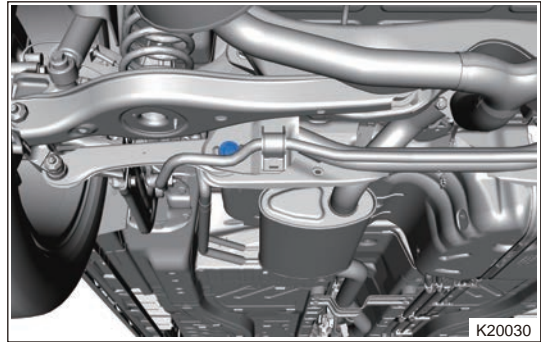
Specified Value for Rear Wheel Toe-in:

Items	Parameter
Rear Wheel Toe-in	10' ±6' (one side)

■ Adjustment

- (1) Make adjusting preparation for wheel alignment according to requirement of tester.

- (2) Loosen the coupling bolts (21# socket wrench) between tie rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly, be careful that eccentric adjusting shim does not detach from groove.



- (3) Rotate the eccentric adjusting bolt and eccentric adjusting sleeve to adjust rear wheel toe-in to specified value.

- (4) Tighten the coupling bolts (21# socket wrench) between tie rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to specified torque after adjustment (adjusting method of left and right wheels is the same). Tightening torque: 130 ± 10 N·m

SUSPENSION SYSTEM

21.1	TIRE AND WHEEL	870
1	Warning and Precaution.....	870
1.1	Warning.....	870
1.2	Precautions.....	870
2	System Overview	870
2.1	System Description.....	870
2.2	System Component Diagram	871
2.3	Component Operation Description.....	872
3	Diagnosis & Testing	872
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	872
4	Removal and Installation.....	873
4.1	Tool	873
4.2	Wheel Replacement	873
4.3	Tire Rotation	878

21.1 TIRE AND WHEEL

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) Use tire pressure gauge when inflating, and never use the tire pressure indication on meter to inflate. If inflating tires using pressure values displayed from tire pressure monitoring system, inflation pressure may be higher than tire standard value, resulting in a risk of accident.
- (2) The tire pressure is too low, please resume it to normal pressure as soon as possible. Too low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and tire wear. And seriously worn tire will cause an accident such as flat tire.
- (3) Speed level of new replaced tire must meet the specified values for safe operation; otherwise the tire may blow out.

1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) Be sure to refer to the instruction when installing non-standard tires and rims.
- (2) Use tires with standard specification and type.
- (3) Avoid scratching tires and rims when removing and installing tires.
- (4) Spare tire is not equipped with tire pressure sensor, so there will be malfunction in tire pressure monitoring system when spare tire is replaced in vehicle equipped with tire pressure monitoring system.
- (5) Before assembling the tire, apply glycerin or soapy water to the rim area of tire.
- (6) The four driving tires mounted on the same vehicle must be from the same manufacturer and are not allowed to be mixed.
- (7) Always use torque wrench when installing tire pressure sensor, with a torque of $5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$.
- (8) Use tires only with the standard specification and type, because they have excellent reliability and skid resistance. Using a non-standard tire may lead to vehicle malfunction, which may cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.
- (9) Contact surface between rim and tire should be cleaned before installing a new tire.
- (10) When installing wheel bolts, firstly, pre-tighten the bolts by hand, and then tighten them to the specified torque with a torque wrench.
- (11) Do not apply grease to the wheel bolts.
- (12) Some bad driving habits may shorten the tire life:
 - 1) Rapid acceleration;
 - 2) Depressing brake pedal suddenly and firmly;
 - 3) High-speed driving;
 - 4) Turning at excessive speed;
 - 5) Striking curbs or other obstacles;
 - 6) Tire pressure is too high or too low when driving vehicle.
- (13) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

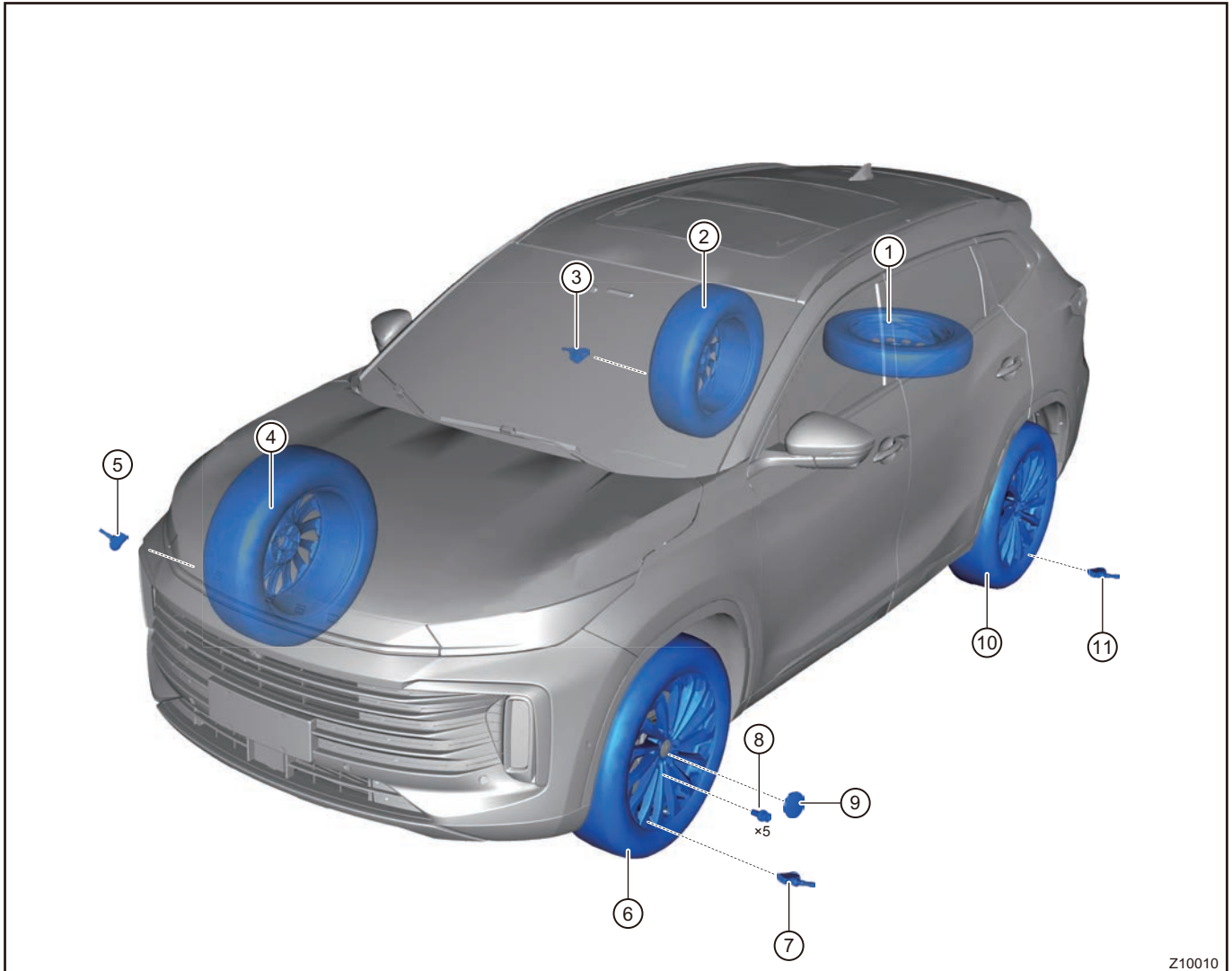
2.1 System Description

Wheel is a rotating component that bears load between tire and axle. It is usually composed of two main components, rim and spoke. Rim is a component for mounting and supporting tire on wheel, and spoke is a

supporting component between axle and rim on wheel. Wheels sometimes contain hubs in addition to above components.

Tire is a rolling toroidal elastic rubber equipment assembled to vehicle on the ground. It is usually installed on metal rim, it can support vehicle body to cushion outside impact, realize contact with road surface and ensure driving performance of vehicle. Tire is often used in complex and harsh conditions, it is under a variety of deformation, load, force and high and low temperature when driving, so it must have high load-bearing performance, traction performance, buffer performance.

2.2 System Component Diagram



Z10010

1	Spare Tire Assembly	7	Front Left Wheel Tire Pressure Sensor
2	Rear Right Wheel	8	Wheel Bolt
3	Rear Right Wheel Tire Pressure Sensor	9	Trim Cover
4	Front Right Wheel	10	Rear Left Wheel
5	Front Right Wheel Tire Pressure Sensor	11	Rear Left Wheel Tire Pressure Sensor
6	Front Left Wheel		

2.3 Component Operation Description

■ Tire

Tire is one of important parts of vehicle. It directly contacts with road surface and works with vehicle suspension to cushion impact of vehicle while driving. Ensure that the vehicle has good seating and riding comforts and good adhesion between wheels and road surface to improve vehicle traction, braking and trafficability and bear weight of vehicle.



Z10020

■ Tire Identification

Letter and number code of tire type, size, load index and speed level are stamped on the side wall of tire as shown in the illustration.

This model is equipped with 3 sizes of tires (225/65R17, 225/60R18, 225/55R19), and different sizes are equipped with different rim shapes, which should be subject to actual vehicle.



Z10030

3 Diagnosis & Testing

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

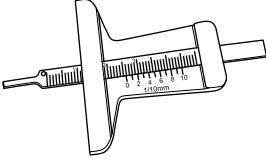
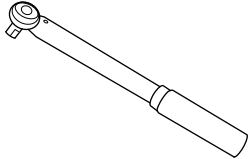
Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Possible Cause
Wear on one side of tire	Wheel alignment (incorrect)
Wear on both sides of tire	Tire pressure (insufficient)
Tire center wear	Tire pressure (excessive)
Serrated wear	Wheel alignment (incorrect)
Severe wear on partial area of tire	Braking (too hard)
Scratches on side wall of tire	Sharp objects on road (scratched)
Excessive tire noise	Tire pressure (incorrect)
	Tire (worn)

4 Removal and Installation

4.1 Tool

■ General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Tire Depth Gauge	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00068</p>
5 - 25 N·m Torque Wrench	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00079</p>

4.2 Wheel Replacement

■ Precautions Before Tire Replacement

Caution

Spare tire is not equipped with tire pressure sensor, so there will be malfunction in tire pressure monitoring system when spare tire is replaced in vehicle equipped with tire pressure monitoring system.

Warning

Speed level of new replaced tire must meet the specified values for safe operation; otherwise the tire may blow out.

- (1) Remove the wheel.
- (2) Use a tire remover to remove tires according to the instructions.

⚠ Caution

- When removing and installing tire with tire pressure sensor, be sure to strictly refer to the Tire Pressure Monitoring section.
- Always use torque wrench when installing tire pressure sensor, with a torque of $5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$.
- When installing wheel assembly with TPMS, align dynamic balance testing mark (light point) on tire with valve core (TPMS) position on rim.
- Before installing air valve, check if air valve hole of wheel is smooth without any burrs, and apply glycerin to air valve rubber surface or soak air valve into glycerin fluid, and then pull or press the locating ring of air valve by force to pass it through the air valve hole and install it into place (it is possible to use soapy water instead of glycerin).
- The four driving tires mounted on the same vehicle must be from the same manufacturer and are not allowed to be mixed.
- Before assembling the tire, apply glycerin or soapy water to the rim area of tire.
- When there is "dark point" mark on rim, align the dynamic balance testing mark on tire with "dark point" mark on rim.
- When there is no "dark point" mark on rim, align the dynamic balance testing mark on tire with the air valve.

(3) Adjust tire pressure to specified value.

⚠ Caution

- Before performing four wheel alignment, check the four tires pressure and adjust the pressure: it is recommended to adjust tire pressure to recommended tire pressure on door frame label.
- The rated inflation pressure of T-type spare tire assembly is 420 kPa, and store spare tire in isolation from 4 loaded wheels.
- Please replace the tires only with standard specification and type.

(4) Check contact surface among air valve, tire and rim for leakage.

(5) Using a dynamic balancer, adjust the wheel balance.

(6) Install the wheel.

Torque: $130 \pm 10 \text{ N m}$

⚠ Caution

- Avoid scratching tires and rims when removing tires.
- Contact surface between tire and rim should be cleaned when installing tires.

■ Tire Inspection**⚠ Caution**

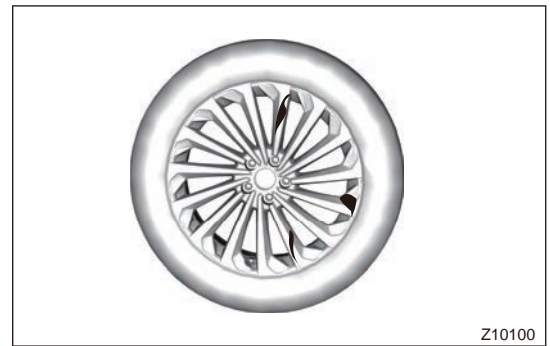
- Be sure to refer to the instruction when installing non-standard tires and rims.
- Use tires with standard specification and type.

(1) Check if tires are scratched or damaged as shown in the illustration.

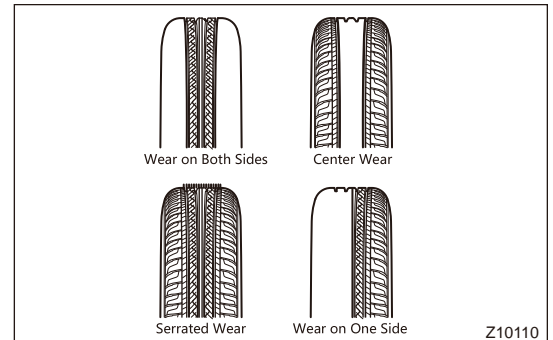


Z10090

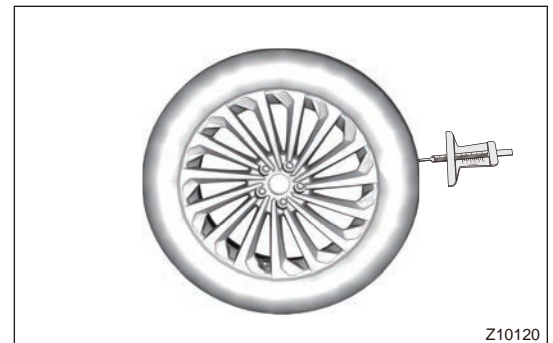
- (2) Check if rims are scratched or damaged as shown in the illustration.



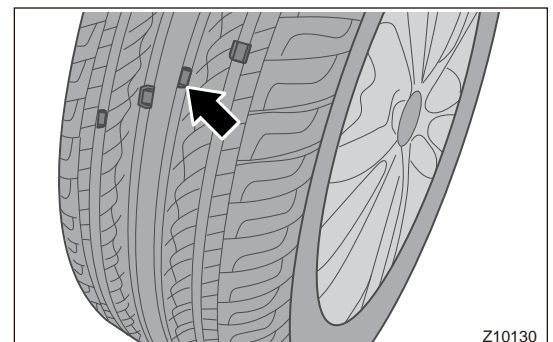
- (3) Check if tires are worn abnormally as shown in the illustration.



- (4) Measure the tread pattern depth with a tire depth gauge. When the depth is less than 1.6 mm, the tire should be replaced.



- (5) Check the tread wear indicators. When tires are worn to the indicating mark, replace them.



- (6) Use tire pressure gauge to check if pressures of all tires (including spare tire) are normal. Inflate tires to specified tire pressure as necessary.

Warning

- Use tire pressure gauge when inflating, and never use the tire pressure indication on meter to inflate. If inflating tires using pressure values displayed from tire pressure monitoring system, inflation pressure may be higher than tire standard value, resulting in a risk of accident.
- The tire pressure is too low, please resume it to normal pressure as soon as possible. Too low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and tire wear. And seriously worn tire will cause an accident such as flat tire.

- (7) Check air valve for leakage.



■ Removal

- (1) Stop vehicle at a level surface and apply parking brake.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Using a tire wrench, loosen the wheel mounting bolts.
- (5) Firmly support and raise the vehicle to a proper height.
- (6) Using a tire wrench, remove 5 wheel mounting bolts (17# socket wrench).



- (7) Remove the wheel.

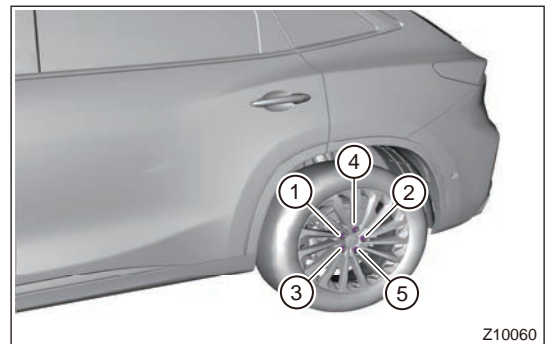
⚠ Caution

When removing and installing the wheel with tire pressure sensor, the tire pressure monitoring section must be strictly referred to.

■ Installation

- (1) Anti-corrosion and anti-rust treatment is conducted on the contact surface between wheel and brake disc.
- (2) Install the wheel and pre-tighten the wheel mounting bolts by hand.
- (3) Using a torque wrench, tighten the wheel mounting bolts evenly to the specified torque in the order shown in the illustration (17# socket wrench).

Torque: 130 ± 10 N m



- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

■ Tire Inflation

- Do not inflate tires with high tire temperature, which will cause serious damage to the tire, even blowouts, resulting in accidents.

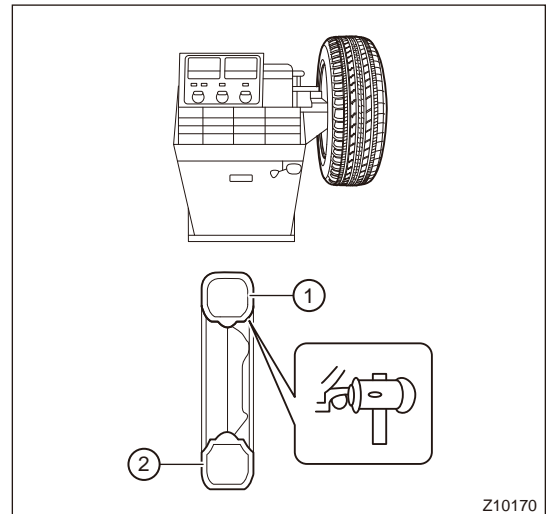
- Do not inflate tires depending on values displayed from tire pressure monitoring system. Tire pressure monitoring system can monitor tire pressure and temperature in real time only when vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h. If inflating tires using pressure values displayed from tire pressure monitoring system, inflation value may be higher than tire standard value, which will cause accidents.
- When vehicle is driving normally, heat is generated in the tire due to friction, which will cause tire pressure to increase. Exposure of tires to the sunlight may also cause an increase in air pressure, resulting in a change in tire pressure. For every 10°C increase in tire temperature, tire pressure will increase by about 0.1 bar.

■ Wheel Balance

⚠ Caution

- **Dynamic balancer must be calibrated before adjusting wheel balance.**
- **Remove impurities inside tread pattern and original balance blocks to ensure wheel balance.**

- (1) Remove the wheel.
- (2) Adjust tire pressure to specified value.
- (3) Install wheel with balance block removed to balancer. Install the balance shaft with mounting surface of wheel facing inward, choose a suitable taper body, and firmly lock the wheels using a locking device (- align the taper body with center hole, otherwise data may be incorrect).
- (4) Turn on the power source of balancer, and input parameters such as the measured distance from rim to balancer, rim width and rim diameter.
- (5) Put down the wheel protector, and proceed to balance test procedure automatically (start button should be pushed for some balancers). When measurement is completed, the unbalanced weight for both sides of tire will be displayed on the balancer automatically, and the wheel brakes automatically until it stops. Do not open the protector before stopping. Failure to do this may lead to an accident.
- (6) According to the measurement result, corresponding balance blocks should be installed on the outside (1) and inside (2) of rim edge as shown in the illustration.



Z10170

- (7) Perform test again after assembly is completed, until the balancer displays 0.
- (8) After dynamic balance is completed, remove the wheel.

⚠ Caution

- Balance block must be installed on aluminum rim.
- Ambient temperature should be higher than 25°C when installing balance block. If temperature cannot be guaranteed, heat the balance block so that the temperature is between 25°C and 38°C when installing it.
- Install balance block properly, weight difference between balance blocks should be 5g.
- DO NOT reuse the balance block.
- Both inside and outside of balance block are paste type.
- Requirement for residual imbalance: Outside \leq 10 g; inside \leq 10 g.
- Max. outside balance block weight: 110 g.
- Max. inside balance block weight: 110 g.

4.3 Tire Rotation

■ Description

Front and rear tires operate at different loads and perform different steering, driving and braking functions. For these reasons, different wear rate is formed, causing irregular wear patterns. These effects can be reduced by rotating tires at regular time.

Advantages of tire rotation:

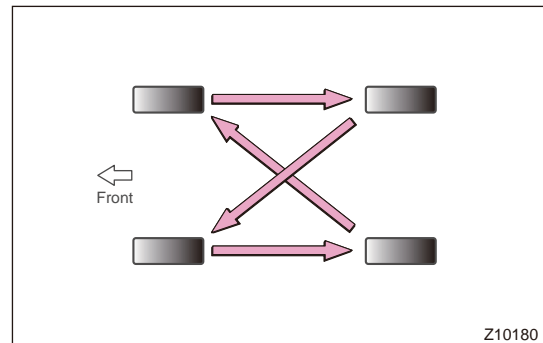
- Improving tread life;
- Maintaining traction levels;
- Maintaining a smooth and quiet driveability.

⚠ Caution

Chery recommends that you should rotate tires every 10000 km (Optimal tire rotation mileage is 5000 - 7000 km). However, the best suitable time for tire rotation differs depending on driver's driving habits and road conditions.

■ Rotation Method

- (1) Perform tire rotation as shown in the illustration.



SUSPENSION SYSTEM

22.1	TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM.....	880
1	Warning and Precaution.....	880
1.1	Warning.....	880
1.2	Precautions.....	880
2	System Overview	881
2.1	System Component Diagram	881
2.2	System Schematic Diagram	882
2.3	Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Alarm Information	883
2.4	Precautions for Maintaining Tire Pressure Monitoring System	884
2.5	Component Operation Description.....	885
3	Diagnosis & Testing	886
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	886
3.2	Diagnosis Tools	887
3.3	Diagnostic Help.....	888
3.4	DTC Confirmation Procedure	888
3.5	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.....	888
3.6	Tire Pressure Sensor Learning.....	888
3.7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	894
3.8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	895
4	On-vehicle Service	904
4.1	Tool	904
4.2	Replacement of Tire Pressure Sensor	905

22.1 TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.
- (2) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing tire pressure sensor.
- (3) The tire pressure is too low, please resume it to normal pressure as soon as possible. Too low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and tire wear. And seriously worn tire will cause an accident such as flat tire.
- (4) When a high temperature alarm occurs, stop vehicle to cool the tire naturally, otherwise there is a danger of accident. When tire temperature is too high, never cool the tire by pouring cold water, otherwise, tire may be damaged, resulting in an accident.
- (5) Always use torque wrench when installing tire pressure sensor, common wrench cannot guarantee a torque of $8 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$. If the torque is relatively low, air leakage may occur, resulting in a risk of danger; if the torque is relatively high, tire pressure sensor or related components may be damaged, resulting in a risk of danger.

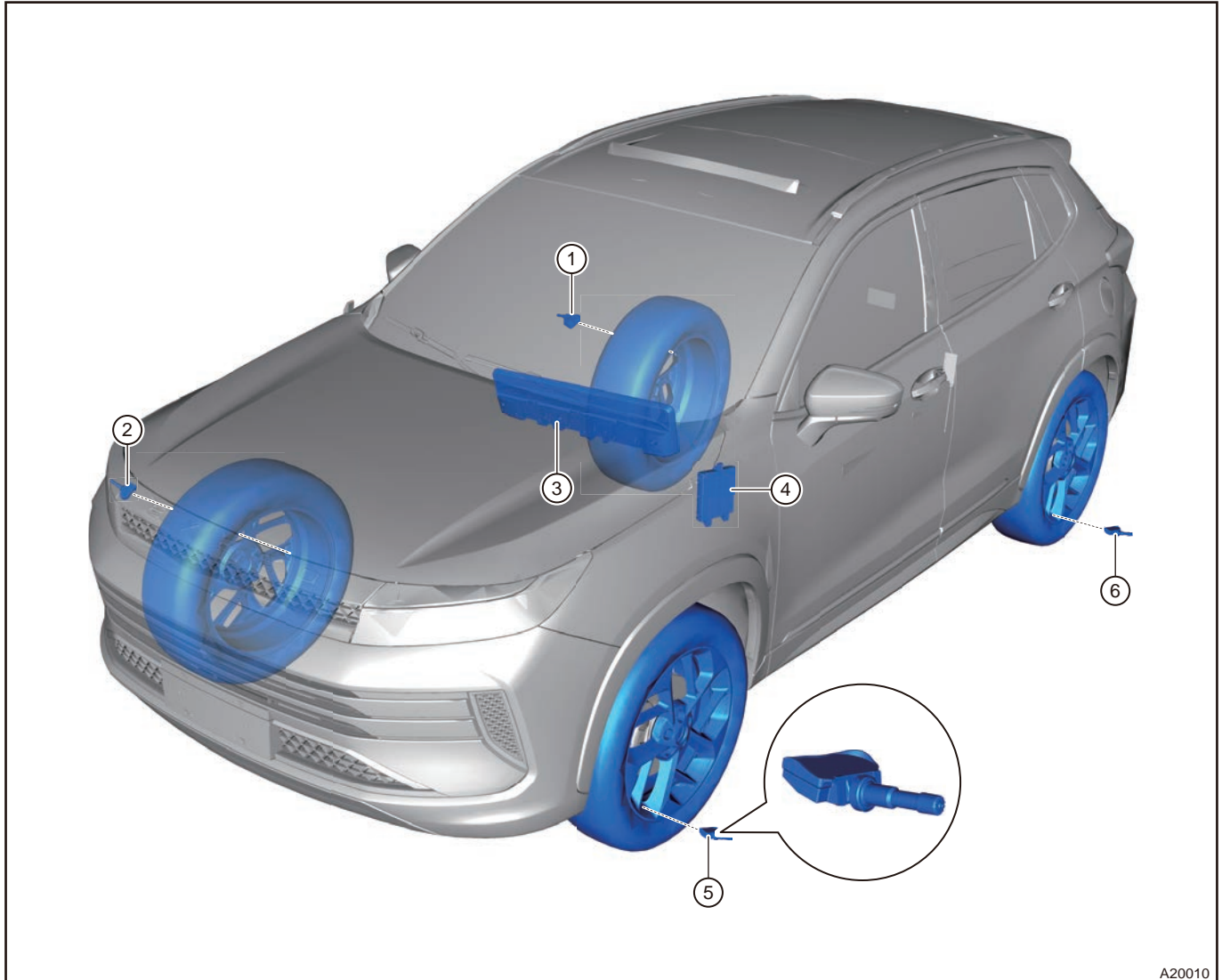
1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) Operate carefully to avoid damaging tire pressure sensor, when removing tire pressure sensor.
- (2) Avoid dropping the sensor. If tire pressure sensor is dropped from a place 1 m high to the ground, it is interpreted as fault in tire pressure sensor.
- (3) Tire pressure sensor must be installed on clean and dry hub.
- (4) Valve cap must be on the valve, except inflation, deflation, air pressure inspection, etc.
- (5) During installation, do not contact the tire pressure sensor with used tools, to avoid damage to the tire pressure sensor.
- (6) Sensor air pressure inlet cannot be covered partially or completely by lubricant or other materials.
- (7) Tightening speed : $\leq 30 \text{ rpm}$; Installation torque: $8 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$ when installing tire pressure sensor.
- (8) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Component Diagram

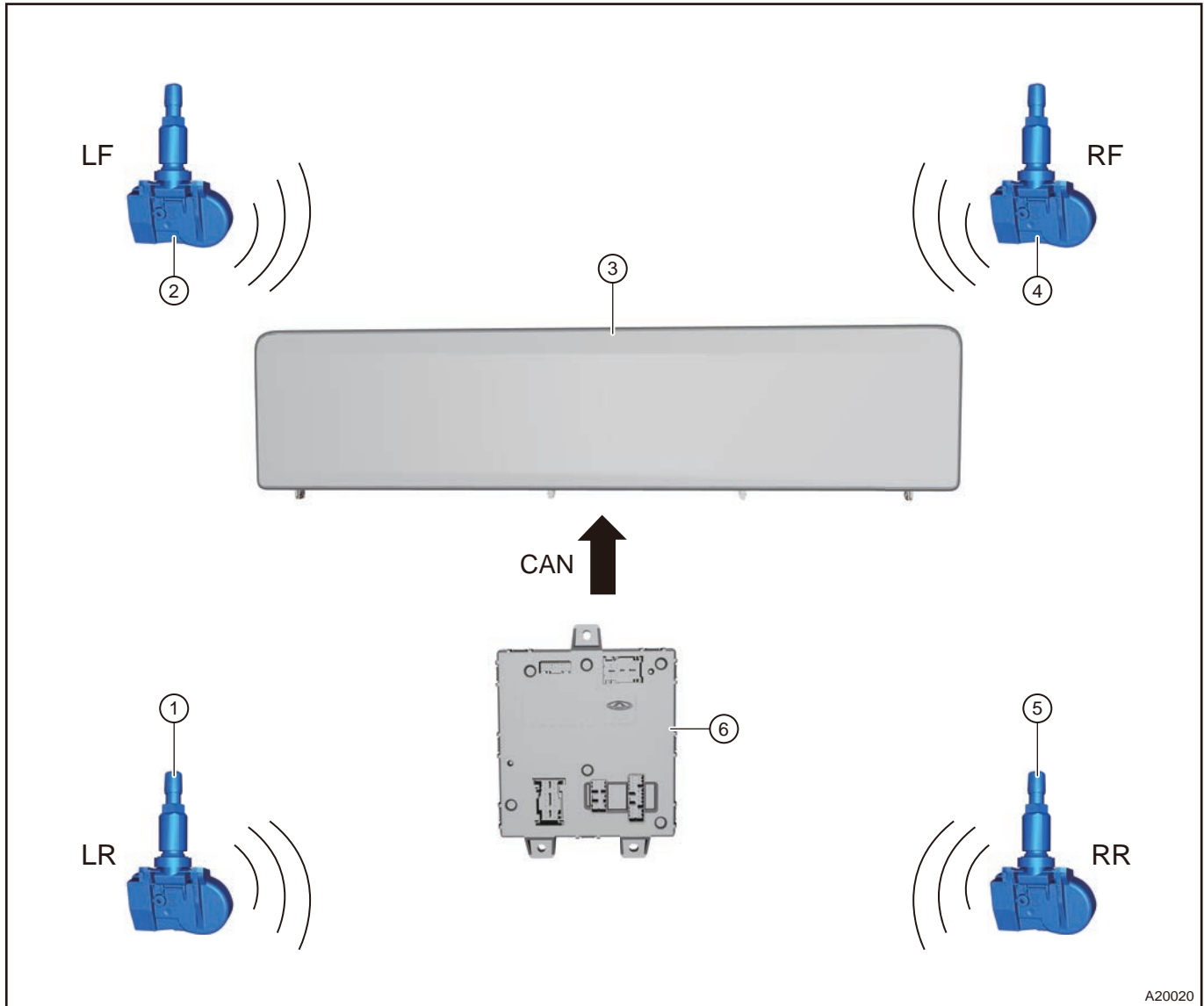


A20010

1	Rear Right Tire Pressure Sensor	4	Body Control Module
2	Front Right Tire Pressure Sensor	5	Front Left Tire Pressure Sensor
3	Dual LCD	6	Rear Left Tire Pressure Sensor

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) is an active safety device, which can monitor tire pressure and temperature in real time and display on dual LCD. When tire pressure and temperature are abnormal, tire pressure monitoring system will warn the driver of driving danger.

2.2 System Schematic Diagram



A20020

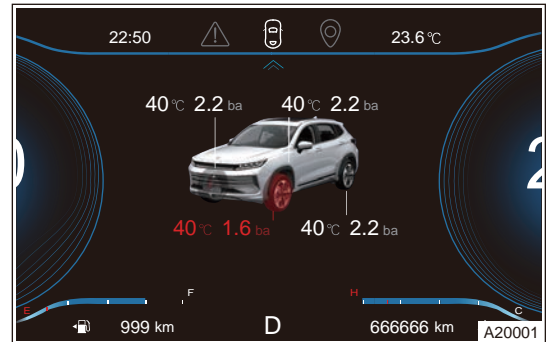
1	Rear Left Tire Pressure Sensor	4	Front Right Tire Pressure Sensor
2	Front Left Tire Pressure Sensor	5	Rear Right Tire Pressure Sensor
3	Dual LCD	6	Body Control Module

Tire pressure sensor is the transmitting terminal of tire information, body control module is the receiving terminal of tire information, meter is the display terminal of tire information, and tire pressure sensor is the core of tire pressure monitoring system. Tire pressure sensor is installed on rim, which collects data such as pressure, temperature inside tire, and sends these data to body control module as radio-frequency signal. The wireless communication frequency between tire pressure sensor and body control module is 433 MHZ. The body control module receives radio-frequency signal sent from tire pressure sensor and processes these data. Body control module processes data of tire pressure sensor, then sends them to meter via CAN bus signal. Tire pressure value and temperature value are displayed on meter via CAN bus signal. When tire pressure is too high or too low, or temperature is too high, it informs driver of abnormal tire.

2.3 Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) Alarm Information

■ Low Pressure Alarm

When vehicle tire pressure is less than 1.72 bar, and the vehicle is continuously driving for more than 45 s with a speed higher than 25 Km/h, the system will send a low pressure alarm. With ENGINE START STOP switch turned from OFF to ON position, the system will also send a low pressure alarm if tire pressure displayed on meter is less than 1.72 bar. When there is a low pressure alarm, the warning light remains on and normal screen switches into tire pressure screen directly: The tire with low pressure (e.g., front left tire) symbol turns red and its tire pressure and temperature will be displayed.



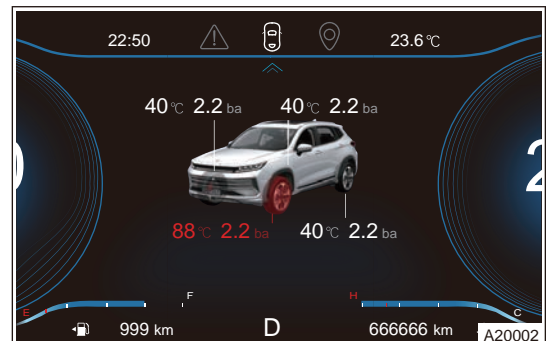
⚠ Caution

- **The tire pressure is too low, please resume it to normal pressure as soon as possible. Too low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and tire wear. And seriously worn tire will cause an accident such as flat tire.**

When tire pressure is high or low, please resume the tire pressure to error range between 2.0 bar and 2.4 bar. When the vehicle tire pressure resumes to error range 2.0 bar and 2.4 bar and vehicle is continuously driving with a speed higher than 25 Km/h, the system will deactivate the low pressure alarm automatically within 45 minutes.

■ High Temperature Alarm

Take front left wheel as an example, when temperature of front left wheel reaches 75°C, which is higher than high temperature alarm threshold (75 °C), the system will send high temperature alarm, front left wheel symbol will be red, the tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed and tire pressure warning light remains on. When there is a high temperature alarm, the warning light remains on and normal screen switches to tire pressure screen directly: The tire with high temperature (e.g., front right tire) symbol will be red and its tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed.



⚠ Caution

- **When a high temperature alarm occurs, stop vehicle to cool the tire naturally, otherwise there is a danger of accident. When tire temperature is too high, never cool the tire by pouring cold water, otherwise, tire may be damaged, resulting in an accident.**

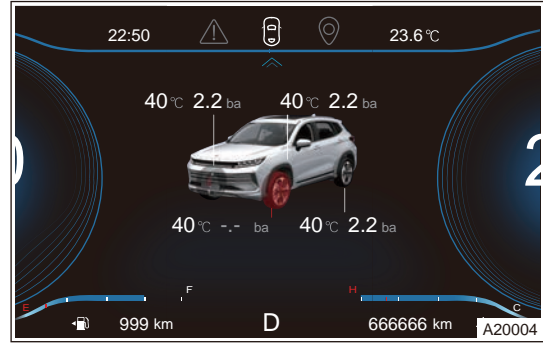
When the vehicle wheel temperature is lower than 75°C and the vehicle is continuously driving with a speed higher than 25 Km/h, the system will deactivate high temperature alarm automatically within 45 minutes. The system stores the history DTCs.

■ System Malfunction

When the vehicle speed is higher than 25 Km/h, if the tire pressure monitoring system fails to receive radio frequency signal from one or more sensors within 45 minutes, it will send a system malfunction alarm, the meter will display "Tire Pressure Monitoring System Malfunction", and the indication symbol will remain on after flashing for 75 seconds. The meter system will also switch to tire pressure monitoring system display screen automatically.

High Pressure Display

If the tire pressure is higher than 3.40 bar, the tire pressure will be displayed as –; but the temperature will be displayed normally. If the tire pressure is less than 3.20 bar, it will resume normal display within 45 minutes.



Hint:

If the alarm is caused high tire pressure, just resume it to range between 2.0 bar and 2.4 bar.

Automatic Positioning

This model has automatic tire pressure positioning function: If tires are exchanged, or sensor is replaced due to damage, and the vehicle stops for more than 20 minutes, when vehicle is continuously driving with a speed higher than 25 Km/h within 45 minutes, system can automatically learn tire pressure and match it to corresponding position.

⚠ Caution

- If two or more sensors are replaced, tire pressure position displayed on meter may be inconsistent with actual position within 10 minutes during driving. And it will be updated to correct position after successful positioning within 10 minutes.
- During automatic positioning, ID stored in receiver defaults to previous ID and corresponding position. If tire rotation is performed, pressure and temperature display position and low/high temperature alarm position of meter may be inconsistent with actual position. And it will be updated to correct position after successful positioning.

2.4 Precautions for Maintaining Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Active Condition for Tire Pressure Monitoring System

No.	Conditions to Be Met
1	IGN-ON
2	Vehicle continuously drives with a speed higher than 25 km/h for more than 45 seconds.

When the ENGINE START STOP switch is in IGN-ON and the vehicle is driving continuously with a speed more than 25 km/h for more than 45 seconds, the tire pressure monitoring system can start normally. When the ENGINE START STOP switch is not in IGN-ON, body control module cannot receive radio frequency signal from tire pressure sensor; when the vehicle speed fails to reach 25 km/h or driving period is very short, tire pressure sensor will not send a radio frequency signal.

- With vehicle stopped, the meter does not display tire pressure and temperature information when the ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to IGN-ON from IGN-OFF.
- When the ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to IGN-ON and the vehicle is driving continuously with a speed higher than 25 km/h for more than 45 seconds, tire pressure information for 4 wheels will be displayed.
- Tire pressure sensor and BCM communicates with each other via radio frequency signal. If there are strong electromagnetic interference or other electrical devices are added on the vehicle, tire pressure signal reception may be affected, resulting in tire pressure monitoring system alarm. It is not recommended to add electrical products personally.
- If there is large variation in tire pressure, tire pressure sensor will send a radio frequency signal suddenly. If the ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to IGN-ON, tire pressure monitoring system will process the signal sent from tire pressure sensor immediately.

■ Tire Inflation

- Do not inflate tires depending on values displayed from tire pressure monitoring system. Tire pressure monitoring system can monitor tire pressure and temperature in real time only when vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h. If inflating tires using pressure values displayed from tire pressure monitoring system, inflation value may be higher than tire standard value, which will cause accidents. Do not inflate tires with high tire temperature, which will cause serious damage to the tire, even blowouts, resulting in accidents.

■ Tire Pressure Sensor

- When system is faulty or disabled, check tire pressure sensor and judge if it is the tire pressure sensor of automobile manufacturer. If tire pressure sensor of other manufacturers is used by customer, configuration and learning for tire pressure sensor cannot be performed and system is abnormal or disabled.
- Tire pressure sensor is integrated with functions of common air valve, and inflating/deflating operation is the same as common air valve. Use genuine sensor fittings, without replacing components inside of sensor. After maintenance, install genuine waterproof cap of tire pressure sensor correctly. Do not reuse disposed tire pressure sensor components, otherwise air leakage may be caused, resulting in a possibility of danger. When performing inflation/deflation and tire removal operations, it is not necessary to remove nut from the sensor. If the tire pressure sensor nut is removed with tire pressure higher than atmosphere pressure, there is possibility of danger.
- Tire pressure sensor should be installed from inside of rim, sensor should be installed firmly to rim and check carefully; Use 11 mm socket to install sensor nuts with a torque of $5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$.

■ Increased Tire Pressure Value

- When vehicle is driving normally, heat is generated in the tire due to friction, which will cause tire pressure to increase. For every 10°C increase in tire temperature, tire pressure will increase by about 0.1 bar.

■ Tires Replacement

- If replacing tires with tire pressure monitoring system with ones without tire pressure monitoring system, system malfunction alarm will occur. If replacing with tire equipped with tire pressure sensor, system malfunction alarm still will occur without performing configuration and learning. Spare tire is not equipped with tire pressure sensor, so tire pressure monitoring system is still malfunctioning when spare tire is used in vehicle with tire pressure monitoring system.
- When replacing tire, perform operations following assembly specification of tire pressure, to avoid damaging tire pressure sensor during replacement. For installation and removal of tire, refer to Installation and Removal of Tire Pressure Sensor sections. Never allow tire bead breaker and tire tread to squeeze the sensor.

2.5 Component Operation Description

■ Tire Pressure Sensor

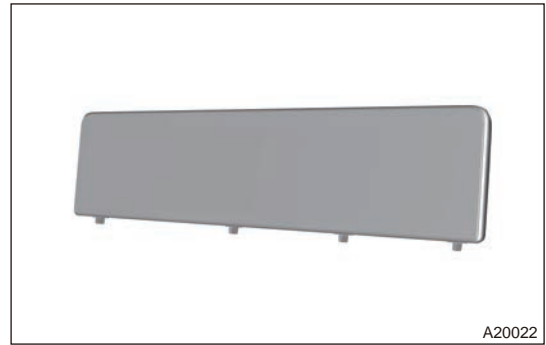
Tire pressure sensor can monitor tire pressure and temperature, and send tire pressure and temperature information to body control module. When tire pressure is too high or too low and temperature is too high, instrument cluster will inform driver of abnormal tire.



A20023

■ Dual LCD

Body control module processes data of tire pressure sensor, then sends them to dual LCD via CAN bus. Tire pressure value and temperature value are displayed on dual LCD via CAN bus signal. When tire pressure is too high or too low, or temperature is too high, it informs driver of abnormal tire.



A20022

■ Body Control Module

Body control module receives radio-frequency signal sent from tire pressure sensor, processes these data and sends them to dual LCD via CAN bus.



A20021

3 Diagnosis & Testing

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area	Troubleshooting
Low pressure alarm (warning light remains on, malfunctioning wheel symbol turns red)	Tire pressure is less than 1.72 bar	Check and charge tire pressure to 2.2 bar (with an error limit of 0.1 bar)
	Tire pressure sensor function is disabled	Replace, perform configuration and learning
	Body Control Module (BCM) damage	Replace body control module and perform sensor learning
	Tire pressure system set	Check and repair
High temperature alarm (warning light remains on, wheel symbol turns red)	Tire temperature is higher than 75 °C	Cool down naturally
	Tire pressure sensor function is disabled	Replace, perform configuration and learning
	Body Control Module (BCM) damage	Replace body control module and perform sensor learning
	Tire pressure system set	Check and repair
System malfunction alarm (warning light remains on after flashing for 75 seconds)	Tire pressure sensor function is disabled	Replace, perform configuration and learning

Symptom	Suspected Area	Troubleshooting
	Incorrect sensor configuration and learning when replacing with new wheel (spare tire included)	Perform configuration and learning
	Electromagnetic interference/shield	Eliminate shielded objects outside of tire/strong electromagnetic radio interference
	Body Control Module (BCM) damage	Replace
	Tire pressure system set	Check and repair
All tire pressure information cannot be displayed (all tire pressure information for four wheels display as “-”)	Display status cannot be reached	Vehicle speed is more than 30 Km/h for 45 seconds
	Replaced tire pressure sensor is not configured correctly, sensor is not learned	Perform configuration and learning
	Body Control Module (BCM) damage	Replace body control module and perform sensor learning
	Electromagnetic interference/shield	Eliminate shielded objects outside of tire/strong electromagnetic radio interference
	Four sensors are not installed or all of them are damaged (very rare)	Reinstall or replace
Certain tire pressure information cannot be displayed (certain tire pressure information displays as “-”)	Tire pressure sensor function is disabled	Replace, perform configuration and learning
	Incorrect sensor configuration and learning when replacing with new wheel (spare tire included)	Perform configuration and learning
	Electromagnetic interference/shield	Eliminate shielded objects outside of tire/strong electromagnetic radio interference
	Body Control Module (BCM) damage	Replace body control module and perform sensor learning
	Tire pressure system set	Check and repair

3.2 Diagnosis Tools

■ Diagnostic Tester

When using diagnostic tester:

- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface for communication with vehicle.
- Diagnostic interface is located at driver side instrument panel crossmember.
- Diagnostic interface uses a trapezoidal design which can hold 16 terminals.

■ Digital Multimeter

When using digital multimeter:

- Troubleshoot electrical malfunctions and wire harness system.
- Look for basic malfunction.
- Measure voltage, current and resistance.

3.3 Diagnostic Help

- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface, and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If DTC cannot be cleared, malfunction is current.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.4 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in tire pressure monitoring system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait several seconds.
- Start engine, drive vehicle at 30 km/h or more and perform road test with diagnostic tester connected to diagnostic interface.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and check DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is intermittent. Please refer to Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.

3.5 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check tire pressure sensors and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.6 Tire Pressure Sensor Learning

■ Air Bleeding

Hint:

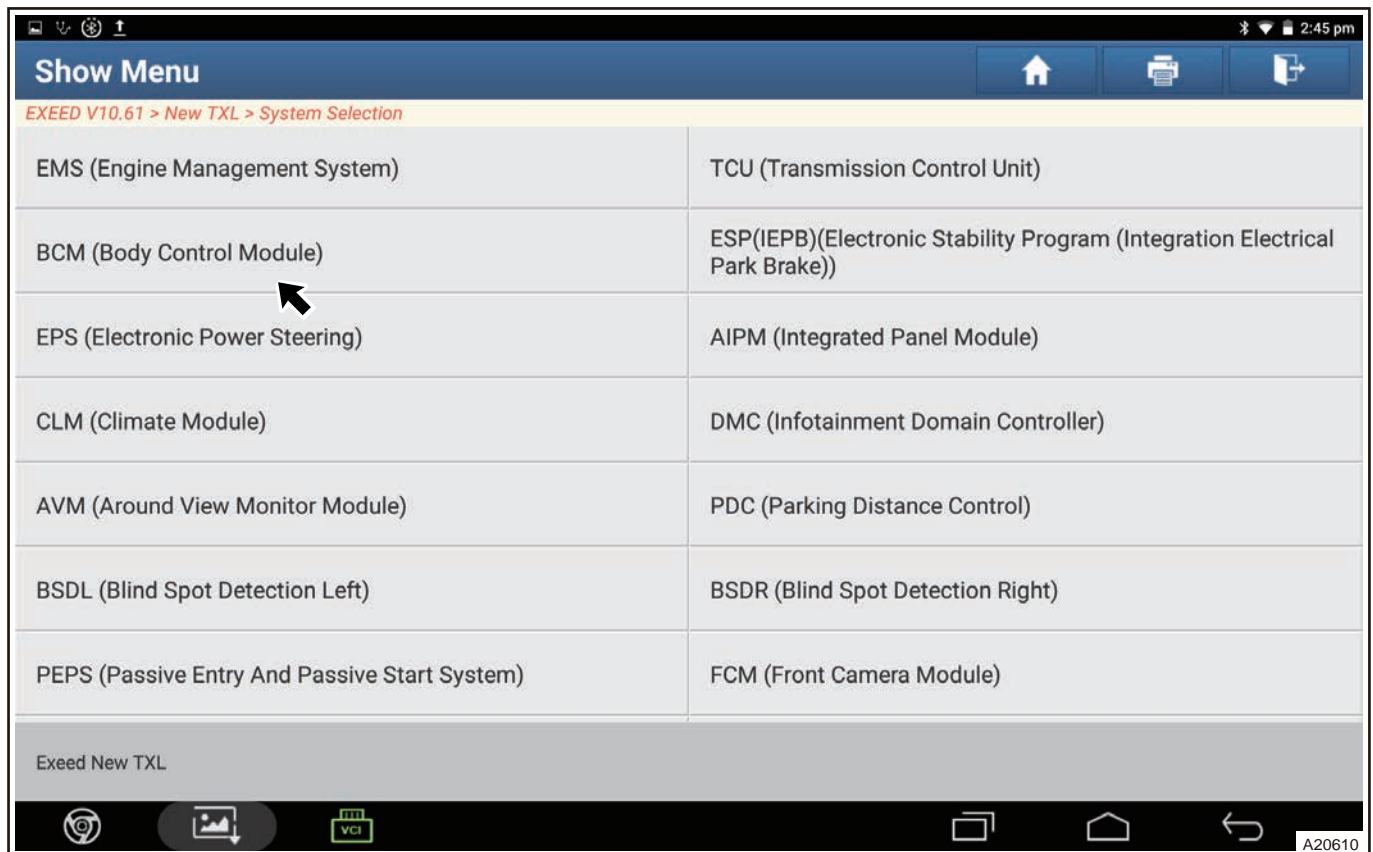
- Perform tire pressure learning when rotating tire and replacing tire pressure sensor. And perform each tire sensor learning with diagnostic tester.
- Tire pressure monitoring function is turned on after BCM is replaced, then it is necessary to perform learning of tire pressure sensor again.

Precautions	Description
Avoid error learning of tire	Learned tire must be matched with bleeding tire

Precautions	Description
	Only operate one tire every time, and do not bleed (or inflate) other tires at this time
	Keep away from other vehicles with tire pressure sensor, avoiding error learning or interference

- If tire learned in system does not matched with bleeding tire, system will recognize an error, resulting in tire information displayed in instrument cluster not corresponding to actual tire information.
- When learning a tire, please do not inflate or bleed other tires. Bleeding or inflating the tire will cause error tire learning.
- When learning tire pressure monitoring system, please do not approach other vehicles equipped with tire pressure sensor and with tire pressure sensor in activated state, otherwise it may lead to error learning or failure to learn.
- After completing learning, please confirm whether four tire pressure sensor ID of actual vehicle is consistent with tire pressure sensor ID recorded by BCM.

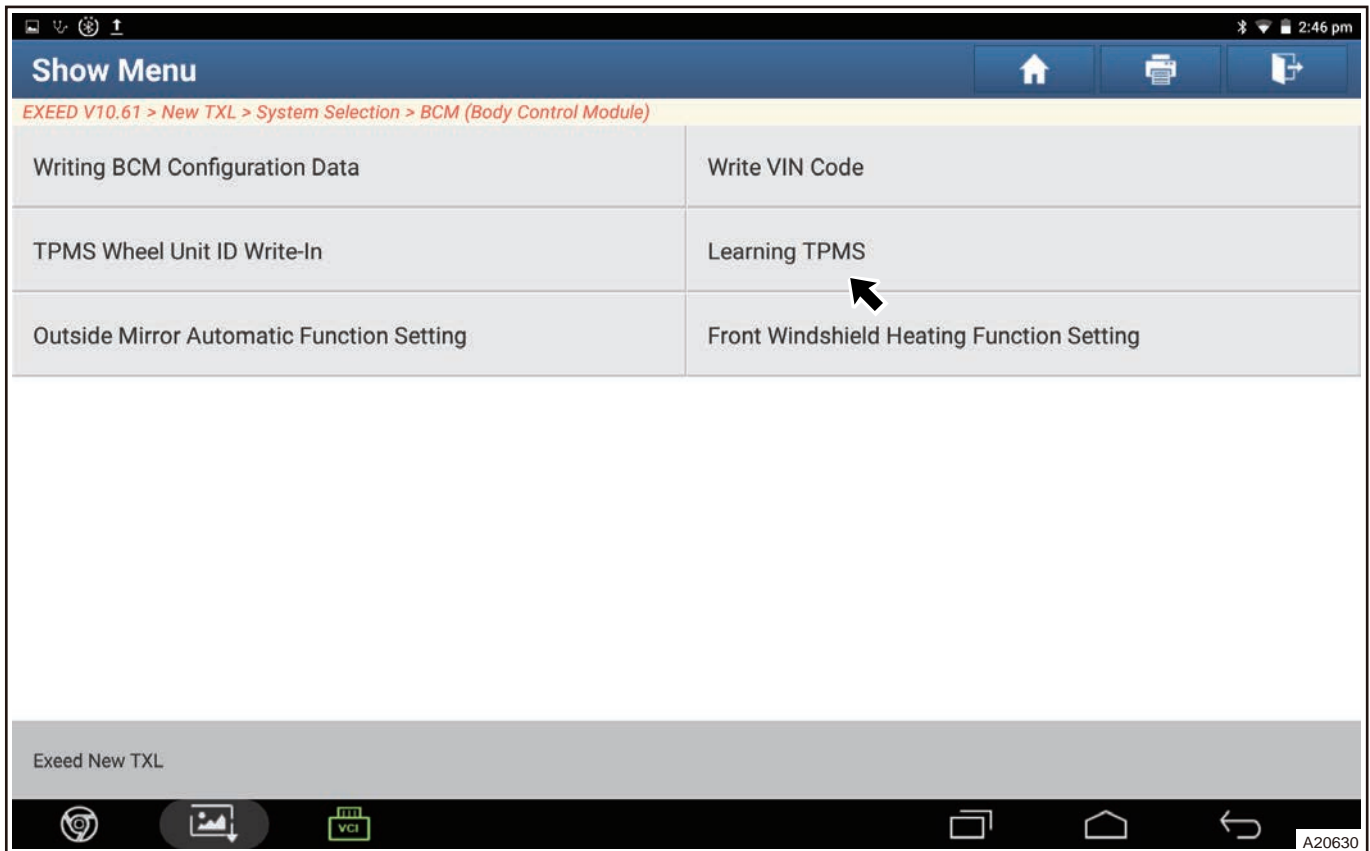
- (1) Connect diagnostic tester and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (2) Click “BCM(Body Control Module)” .



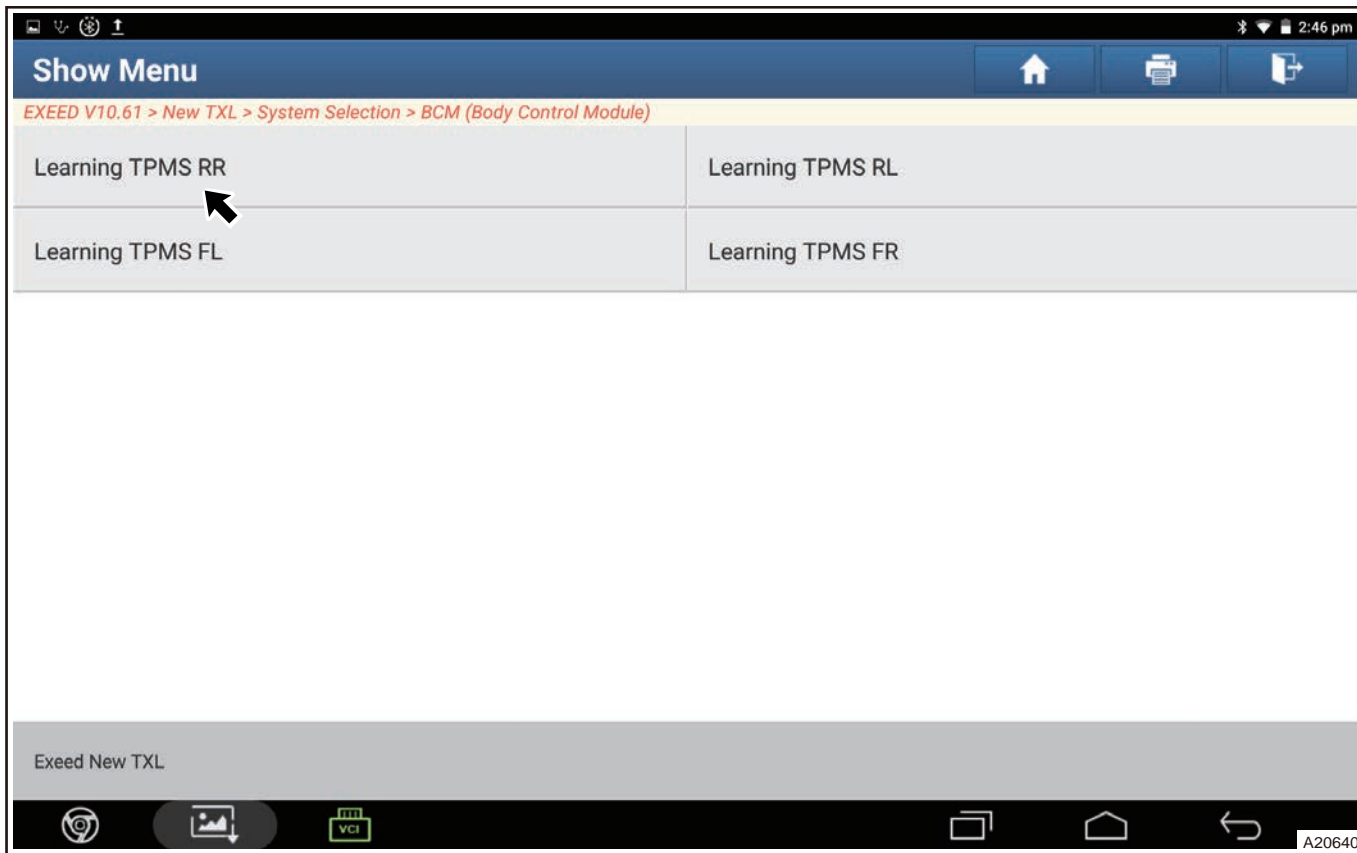
- (3) Click “Special Function” .



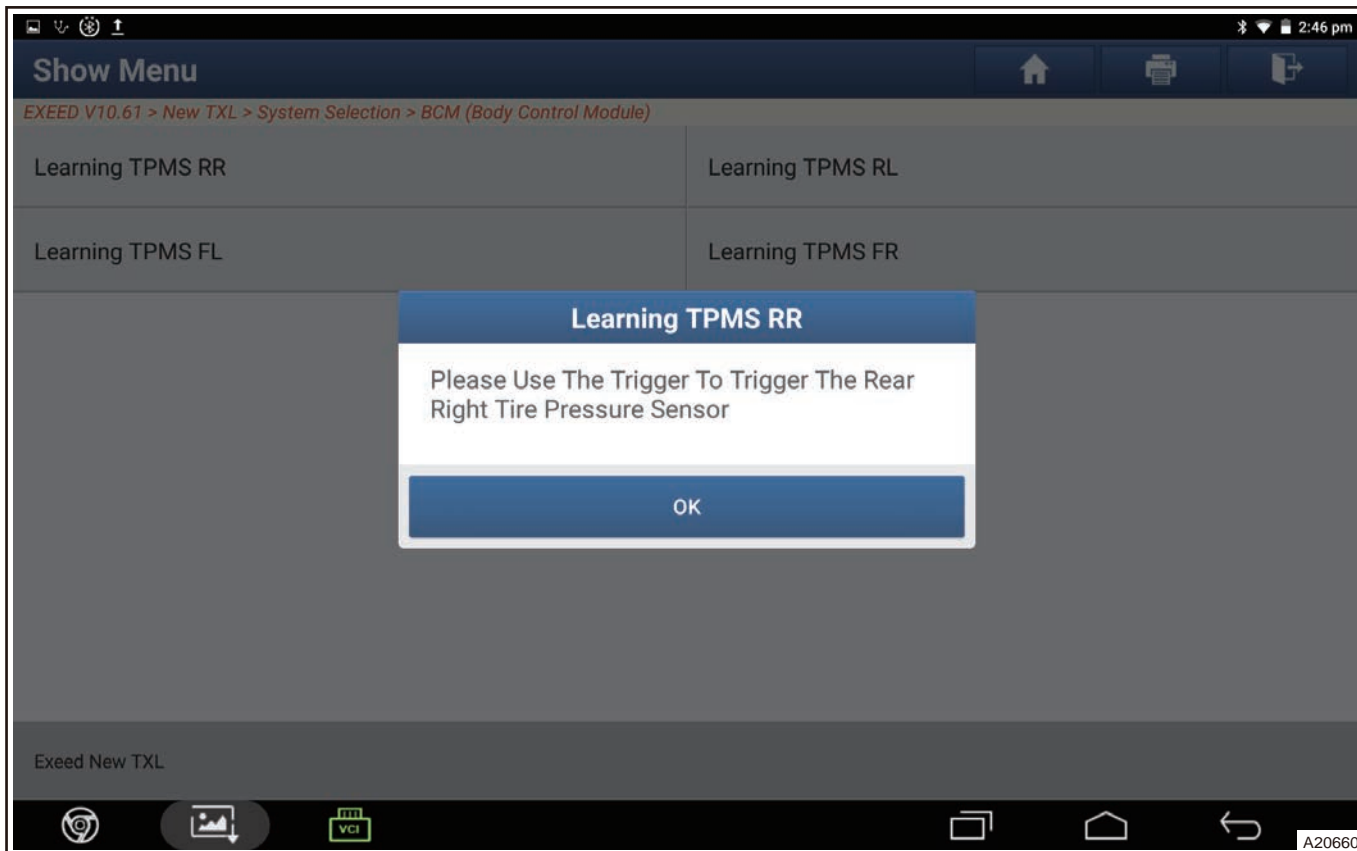
(4) Click "Learning TPMS" .



(5) Click "Learning TPMS RR" .



(6) Operates according to prompt on diagnostic tester.

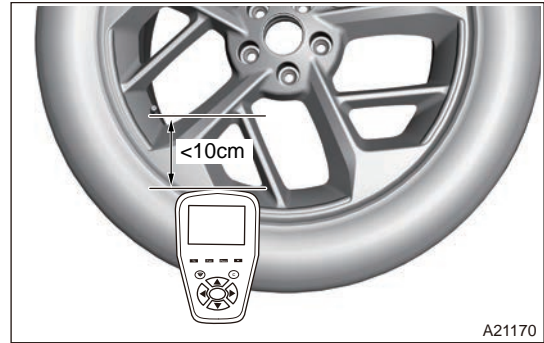


- (7) When clicking “OK” button on diagnostic tester, tire pressure learning screen is displayed on meter and tire pressure warning light flashes. Perform tire pressure sensor learning when tire pressure monitoring system enters sensor learning status.
- (8) Perform bleeding operation for front left wheel. After front left tire pressure sensor learning is successful, tire pressure malfunction indicator on meter goes off, front left tire pressure value is displayed and “Procedure has completed” is displayed on diagnostic tester which indicates that front left tire pressure sensor learning has been finished.

■ Tire Pressure Learning Method for Low-Frequency Trigger

There is enough pressure in tire (full loaded pressure is recommended), BCM turns on tire pressure monitoring function.

- If the malfunction is suspected in tire pressure sensor, use the low-frequency trigger to perform test.
- Distance between low-frequency trigger and tire pressure sensor is less than 10 cm. Place the antenna of low-frequency trigger near the rubber tire with tire pressure sensor on the wheel, and then press triggering button on low-frequency trigger. After the low-frequency trigger is successfully triggered, relative information about learned tire such as tire ID, pressure and temperature will be displayed.



1	Start		Next
2	ENGINE START STOP switch is in ON; but do not start vehicle		Next
3	Switch conventional screen to tire pressure screen on meter; Operate diagnostic tester and select "TPMS Self-learning" menu in "Special Operation"		Next
4	Select tire to be learned with diagnostic tester		Next
5	Enter tire pressure learning status, left and right turn signal lights start blinking		Next
6	Trigger wheel sensor to be learned using low-frequency trigger		Next
7	Tire pressure sensor ID, temperature and pressure values are displayed on low-frequency trigger		

Next

8

Left and right turn signal lights stop blinking, the tire pressure data can be displayed on meter, it indicates that tire pressure learning of this tire is completed, click "OK" button on diagnostic tester to exit learning status

Next

9

Check if other tire sensors are also learned

Yes

Step 4

No

10

Rode test: Vehicle speed is more than 30 Km/h for 45 seconds

Next

11

Select tire to be learned with diagnostic tester

No

Step 2

Yes

12

End

■ Meter Screen Display for Successful Tire Pressure Sensor Learning

- (1) Left and right turn signal lights stop blinking, and tire pressure data is displayed on meter, indicating that tire pressure learning is completed, such as left front wheel.

The displayed tire pressure is 2.4 bar and the temperature is 40 °C for front left wheel, which indicate that the front left wheel is learned successfully.



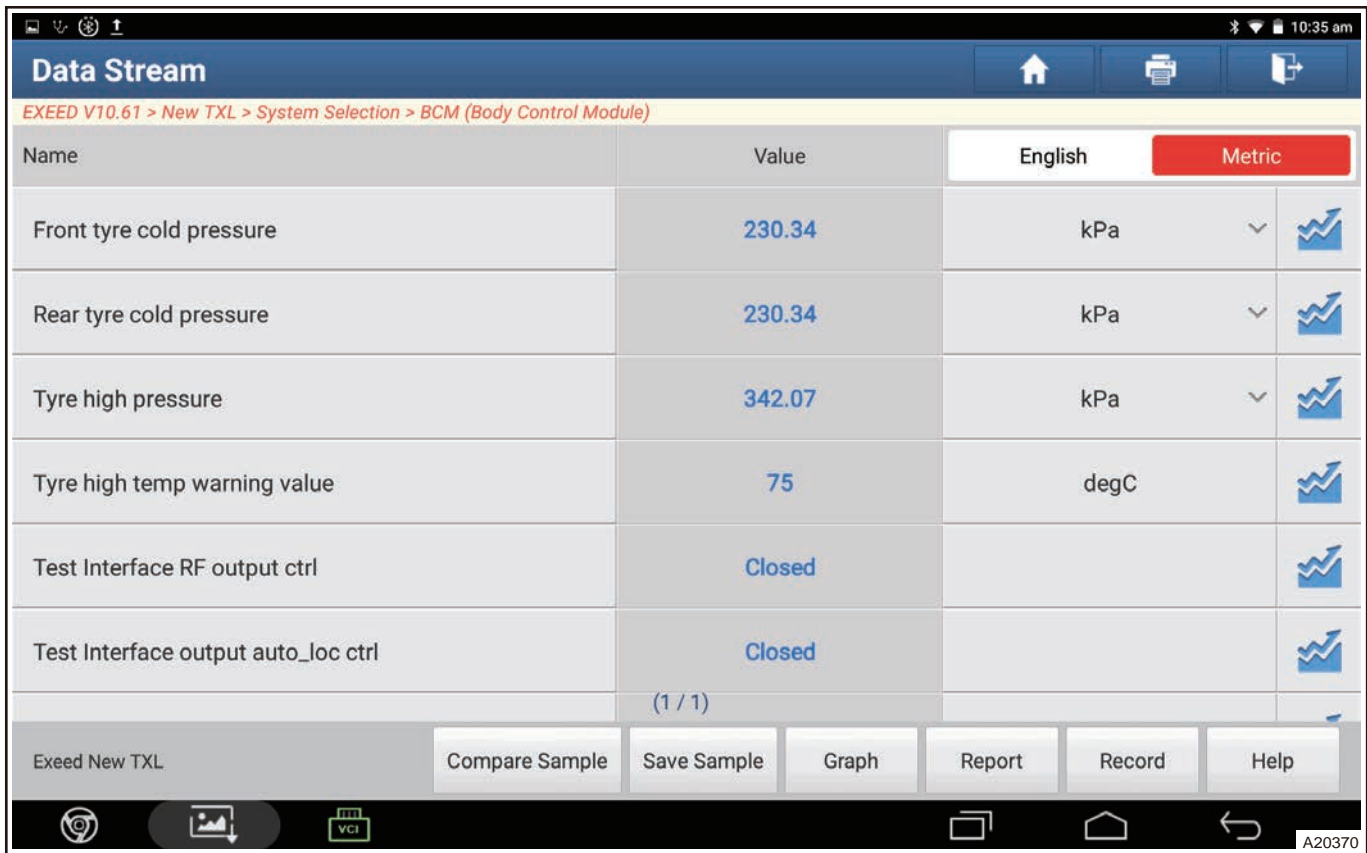
⚠ Caution

- Only after learn is successful, click "OK", otherwise learning will not be successful.

■ Inspection of Tire Pressure Monitoring System Learning Status

After repairing or reconfiguring tire pressure monitoring system, perform inspection of tire pressure monitoring system learning status. Select Read Data Stream to check learning status of tire pressure system.

- (1) Click sensor learning status to check sensor learning status and whether learning is successful. If learning is not successful, unsuccessful learning will be displayed.



Automatic Positioning Learning Method

There is automatic tire pressure positioning function:

If tires are exchanged, or sensor is replaced due to damage, and the vehicle stops for more than 20 minutes, when vehicle is continuously driving with a speed higher than 25 Km/h within 45 minutes, system can automatically learn tire pressure and match it to corresponding position.

Caution

- If two or more sensors are replaced, tire pressure position displayed on meter may be inconsistent with actual position within 10 minutes during driving. And it will be updated to correct position after successful positioning within 10 minutes.
- During automatic positioning, ID stored in receiver defaults to previous ID and corresponding position. If tire rotation is performed, pressure and temperature display position and low/high temperature alarm position of meter may be inconsistent with actual position. And it will be updated to correct position after successful positioning.

3.7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
C1020-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure FL
C1021-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure FR
C1022-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure RL
C1023-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure RR
C1050-00	Low Tire Pressure FL
C1051-00	Low Tire Pressure FR
C1052-00	Low Tire Pressure RL

DTC	DTC Definition
C1053-00	Low Tire Pressure RR
C1054-00	High Tire pressure FL
C1055-00	High Tire pressure FR
C1056-00	High Tire pressure RR
C1057-00	High Tire pressure RL
C1058-00	High Tire Temp FL
C1059-00	High Tire Temp FR
C105A-00	High Tire Temp RL
C105B-00	High Tire Temp RR
C105C-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low FL
C105D-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low FR
C105E-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low RL
C105F-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low RR
C1060-00	Wheel-Sensor Not Matched
C1061-00	Invalid Wheel Tick Number Received
C1062-00	Wheel Tick Number Not Received
C1603-00	Wheel-Sensor Not All learned

3.8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ Wheel Sensor Mute Failure

DTC	C1020-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure FL
DTC	C1021-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure FR
DTC	C1022-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure RL
DTC	C1023-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure RR

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C1020-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure FL	Vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h for 45 seconds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tire pressure sensor fails to send RF signal or the sent signal is too weak. The reception effect of body control module is poor, and no RF signal is received.
C1021-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure FR		
C1022-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure RL		
C1023-87	Wheel-Sensor Mute Failure RR		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

1 | Check power supply voltage of body control module

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between power supply terminal of body control module and ground.
- (b) Power supply voltage should be not less than 12 V.

NG **Check and repair battery and power supply system.**

OK

2 | Check body control module ground circuit

- (a) Check if the body control module ground is loose or corroded.

NG **Tighten or replace body control module ground circuit.**

OK

3 | Check configuration of tire pressure monitoring system

- (a) After configuration is finished, drive vehicle with a speed higher than 25 km/h for a period of time.

NG **Reconfigure tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.**

OK

4 | Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

- (a) After replacement, perform configuration and test.

NG **Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.**

OK

5 | Check Body Control Module (BCM)

- (a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK **System detection is normal.**

NG **Repair or replace Body Control Module (BCM).**

■ Low Tire Pressure

DTC	C1050-00	Low Tire Pressure FL
DTC	C1051-00	Low Tire Pressure FR

DTC	C1052-00	Low Tire Pressure RL	
DTC	C1053-00	Low Tire Pressure RR	
DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C1050-00	Low Tire Pressure FL	Vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h for 45 seconds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Perform BCM function configuration, learning function is not finished.
C1051-00	Low Tire Pressure FR		
C1052-00	Low Tire Pressure RL		
C1053-00	Low Tire Pressure RR		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

1 Check power supply voltage of body control module

(a) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between power supply terminal of body control module and ground.

(b) Power supply voltage should be not less than 12 V.

NG

Check and repair battery and power supply system.

OK

2 Check body control module ground circuit

(a) Check if the body control module ground is loose or corroded.

NG

Tighten or replace body control module ground circuit.

OK

3 Check configuration of tire pressure monitoring system

(a) After configuration is finished, drive vehicle with a speed higher than 25 km/h for a period of time.

NG

Reconfigure tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

OK

4 Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK

System detection is normal.

NG Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

■ High Tire Pressure

DTC	C1054-00	High Tire pressure FL
DTC	C1055-00	High Tire pressure FR
DTC	C1056-00	High Tire pressure RR
DTC	C1057-00	High Tire pressure RL

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C1054-00	High Tire pressure FL	Vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h for 45 seconds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sensor operates abnormally, and RF data sent shows a malfunction in sensor.
C1055-00	High Tire pressure FR		
C1056-00	High Tire pressure RR		
C1057-00	High Tire pressure RL		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

1 Check power supply voltage of body control module

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between power supply terminal of body control module and ground.
 (b) Power supply voltage should be not less than 12 V.

NG Check and repair battery and power supply system.

OK

2 Check body control module ground circuit

- (a) Check if the body control module ground is loose or corroded.

NG Tighten or replace body control module ground circuit.

OK

3 Check configuration of tire pressure monitoring system

- (a) After configuration is finished, drive vehicle with a speed higher than 25 km/h for a period of time.

NG Reconfigure tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.



4 Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK	System detection is normal.
NG	Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

5 Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK	System detection is normal.
NG	Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

6 Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK	System detection is normal.
NG	Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

High Tire Temp

DTC	C1058-00	High Tire Temp FL
DTC	C1059-00	High Tire Temp FR
DTC	C105A-00	High Tire Temp RL
DTC	C105B-00	High Tire Temp RR

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C1058-00	High Tire Temp FL	Vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h for 45 seconds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Sensor operates abnormally, and RF data sent shows a malfunction in sensor.
C1059-00	High Tire Temp FR		
C105A-00	High Tire Temp RL		
C105B-00	High Tire Temp RR		

DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

1 Check power supply voltage of body control module

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between power supply terminal of body control module and ground.
- (b) Power supply voltage should be not less than 12 V.

NG Check and repair battery and power supply system.

OK

2 | Check body control module ground circuit

- (a) Check if the body control module ground is loose or corroded.

NG Tighten or replace body control module ground circuit.

OK

3 | Check configuration of tire pressure monitoring system

- (a) When the temperature of one or more tires is higher than 75 °C and the vehicle is continuously driving with a speed higher than 25 km/h for certain period of time, the system will send a high temperature alarm.
- (b) When a high temperature alarm occurs, stop vehicle to cool the tire naturally, otherwise there is a danger of accident.
- (c) When tire temperature is too high, never cool the tire by pouring cold water, otherwise, tire may be damaged, resulting in an accident.
- (d) When the vehicle is continuously driving with a speed higher than 25 km/h for certain period of time and tire temperature is less than 75 °C, the high temperature alarm can be deactivated automatically.

NG Reconfigure tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

OK

4 | Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

- (a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK System detection is normal.

NG Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

5 | Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

- (a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK System detection is normal.

NG Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

6 | Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK

System detection is normal.

NG

Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

■ Wheel Sensor Battery Low

DTC	C105C-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low FL
DTC	C105D-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low FR
DTC	C105E-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low RL
DTC	C105F-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low RR

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C105C-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low FL	Vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h for 45 seconds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Battery is depleted.
C105D-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low FR		
C105E-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low RR		
C105F-00	Wheel-Sensor Battery Low RL		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

1 Check power supply voltage of body control module

(a) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between power supply terminal of body control module and ground.

(b) Power supply voltage should be not less than 12 V.

NG

Check and repair battery and power supply system.

OK

2 Check body control module ground circuit

(a) Check if the body control module ground is loose or corroded.

NG

Tighten or replace body control module ground circuit.

OK

3 Check configuration of tire pressure monitoring system

(a) If tire pressure information of malfunctioning wheel is still not displayed, it is necessary to replace tire pressure sensor.

NG Reconfigure tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

OK

4 Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, perform configuration and test.

OK System detection is normal.

NG Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

5 Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK System detection is normal.

NG Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

6 Check tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel

(a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK System detection is normal.

NG Replace tire pressure sensor of malfunctioning wheel.

Wheel-Sensor Not Matched

DTC	C1060-00	Wheel-Sensor Not Matched
DTC	C1061-00	Invalid Wheel Tick Number Received
DTC	C1062-00	Wheel Tick Number Not Received
DTC	C1063-00	Wheel-Sensor Not All learned

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C1060-00	Wheel-Sensor Not Matched	Vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h for 45 seconds	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor failure. • Sensor signal interference. • BCM failure. • Wheel speed sensor failure. • Manual learning is not performed.
C1061-00	Invalid Wheel Tick Number Received		
C1062-00	Wheel Tick Number Not Received		
C1063-00	Wheel-Sensor Not All learned		

DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).

- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

1	Check power supply voltage of body control module
----------	--

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between power supply terminal of body control module and ground.
- (b) Power supply voltage should be not less than 12 V.

NG

Check and repair battery and power supply system.

OK

2	Check body control module ground circuit
----------	---

- (a) Check if the body control module ground is loose or corroded.

NG

Tighten or replace body control module ground circuit.

OK

3	Calibrate tire pressure sensor manually
----------	--

- (a) Calibrate the tire pressure sensor manually.

NG

Calibrate sensor manually.

OK

4	Check wheel speed sensor, signal interference
----------	--

- (a) If manual calibration of tire pressure sensor still fails to solve the problem, check wheel speed sensor and whether there is signal interference around the wheel (snow chain, etc.).

OK

Replace wheel speed sensor, remove signal interference.

OK

5	Check tire pressure sensor
----------	-----------------------------------

- (a) Check the tire pressure sensor.

NG

Replace tire pressure sensor.

OK

6	Check body control module
----------	----------------------------------

- (a) After replacement, perform configuration and test.



System detection is normal.

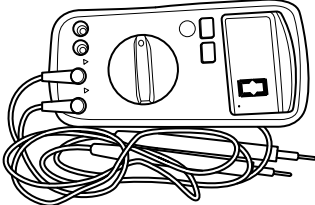
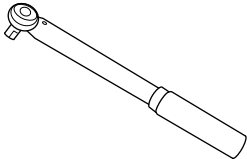
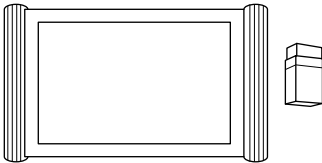


Replace body control module.

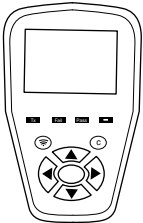
4 On-vehicle Service

4.1 Tool

■ **General Tool**

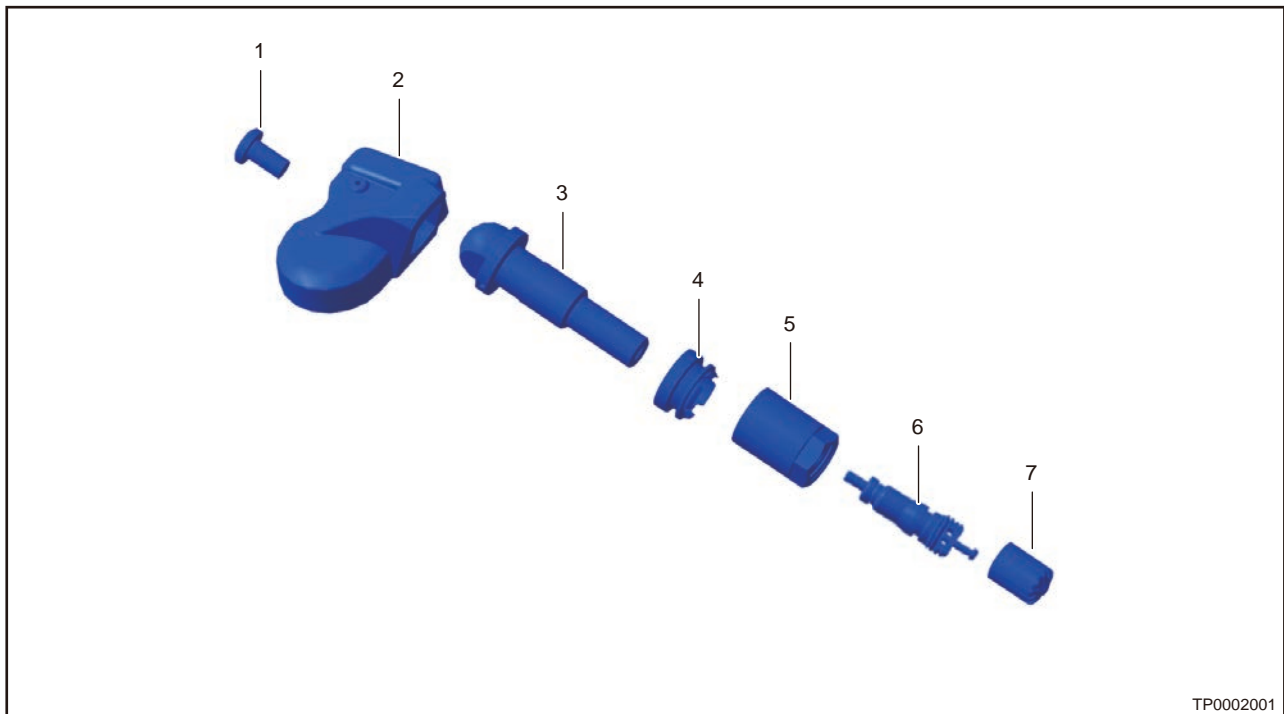
Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
5 - 25 N·m Torque Wrench	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00079</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

■ **Special Tool**

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Low Frequency Trigger	/	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00069</p>

4.2 Replacement of Tire Pressure Sensor

■ Description



TP0002001

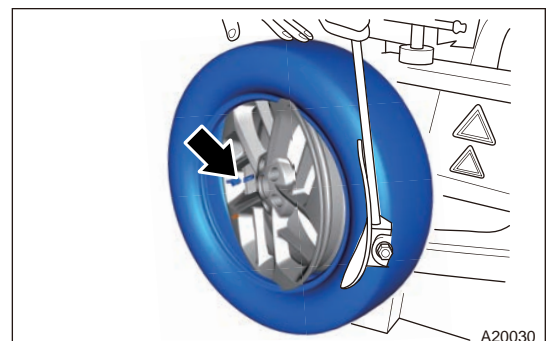
1	Screw	5	Valve Stem Cover
2	Sensor	6	Valve Core
3	Valve Stem	7	Valve Cap
4	Seal Washer and Seal Ring Assembly		

■ Removal

⚠ Caution

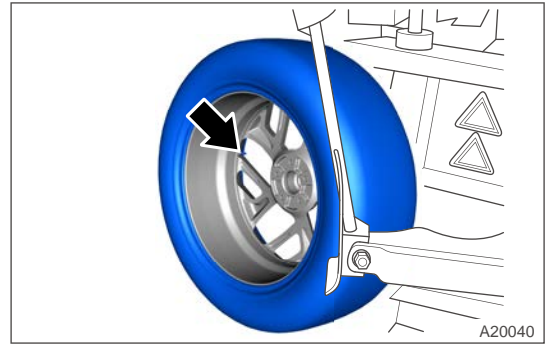
- **Avoid dropping the sensor. If tire pressure sensor is dropped from a place 1 m high to the ground, it is interpreted as fault in tire pressure sensor.**
- **Valve cap must be on the valve, except inflation, deflation, air pressure inspection, etc.**
- **During removal, do not contact the tire pressure sensor tools used, to avoid damage to the tire pressure sensor.**
- **Sensor air pressure inlet cannot be covered partially or completely by lubricant or other materials.**
- **During tire bead breaking, follow the operation specification, never damage the tire pressure sensor.**
- **Both crowbar and tire cannot contact with sensor!**

- (1) Remove wheel from vehicle and deflate tire completely.
- (2) Keep one side with tire pressure sensor 30 cm away from separation shovel, and put shovel block between rim and tire, then depress the pedal to separate rim and tire.

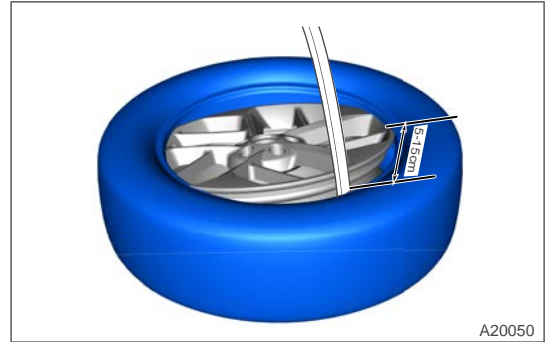


A20030

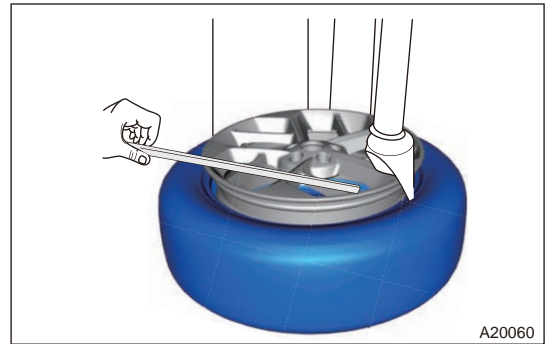
- (3) Turn over tire to keep one side with tire pressure sensor 30 cm away from separation shovel, and put shovel block between rim and tire, then depress the pedal to separate rim and tire.



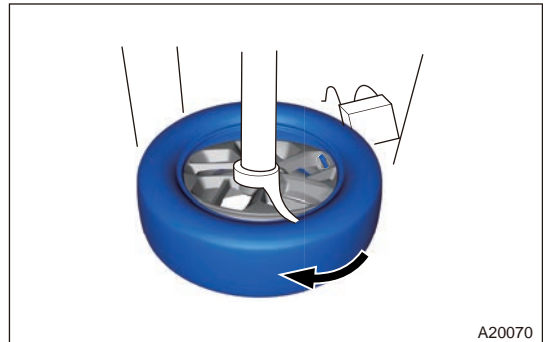
- (4) Lock tire on wheel, lower replacer head and keep it 5 - 15 cm away from sensor.



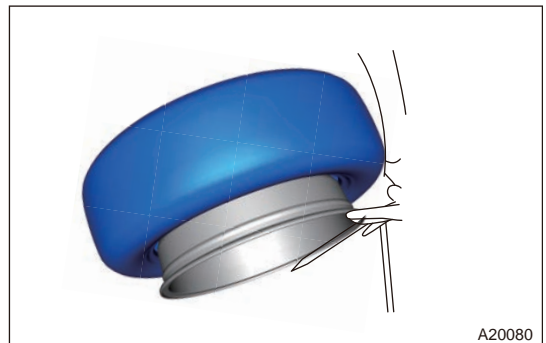
- (5) Use crowbar to pry out outside tire, and sleeve it to replacer head, then take away crowbar.



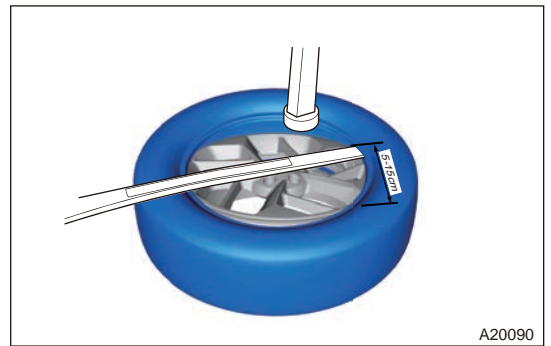
- (6) Rotate wheel, and the movable direction of wheel should be the direction that replacer head is gradually kept away from tire pressure sensor, then remove upper part of tire.



- (7) Lift tire and pry out lower part of tire using crowbar.



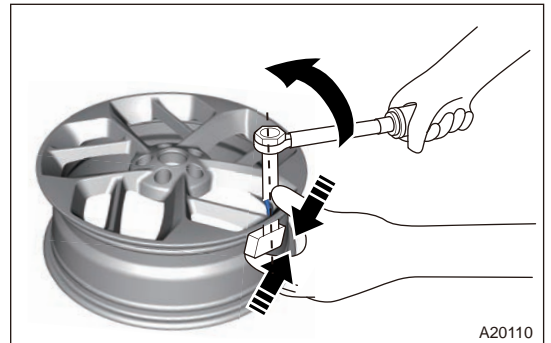
- (8) Lower replacer head and pry out lower side tire tread using crowbar, then sleeve it on replacer head and keep it 5 - 15 cm away from sensor.



- (9) Rotate wheel, and the movable direction of wheel should be the direction that replacer head is gradually kept away from tire pressure sensor, then pry out tire completely.



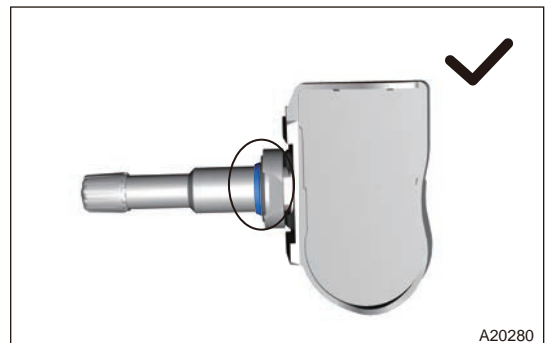
- (10) Using an appropriate tool, rotate nut counterclockwise until it separates from tire pressure sensor completely.



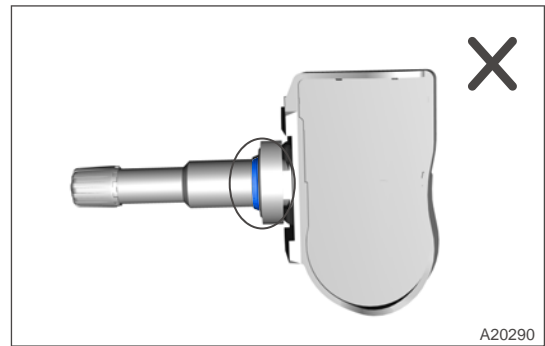
- (11) Remove tire pressure sensor from wheel hub.

■ Inspection

- (1) When removing sensor body, first check if seal washer cutout plane is parallel with the polyester plane. If they are not parallel and there is an angle between two planes, turn seal washer to make seal washer cutout plane parallel with polyester plane.
- (2) If seal washer cutout plane is parallel with polyester plane, it indicates that assembly is qualified.

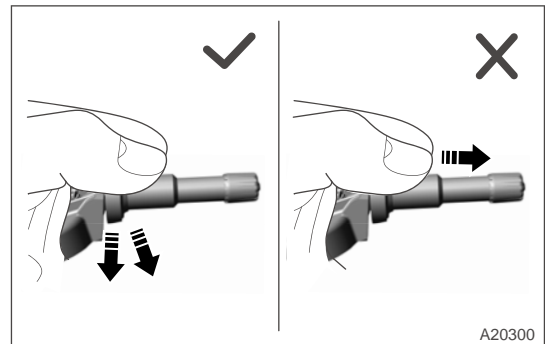


- (3) If seal washer cutout plane is not parallel with polyester plane and there is a large angle between two planes, it indicates that assembly is not qualified.

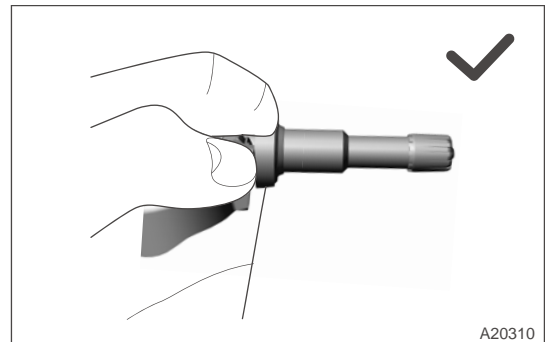


■ Adjustment

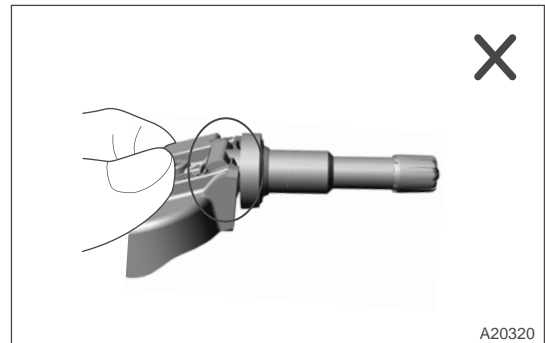
- (1) Press root of valve stem using middle part of your thumb with a downward force in groove direction, so that root of valve stem can be seated in the groove fully; then, keep middle part of thumb pressed against valve stem and tip part of thumb pressed against the seal washer with a vertical downward force applied along seal washer, so that the valve stem can bend to maximum angle. It is not allowed to apply horizontal force along the seal washer.



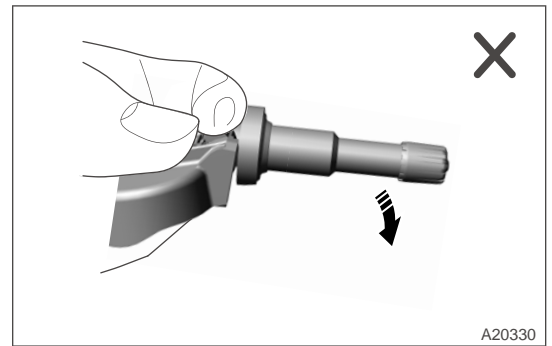
- (2) If root of valve stem enters groove completely and valve stem bends to limit, it indicates that assembly is qualified.



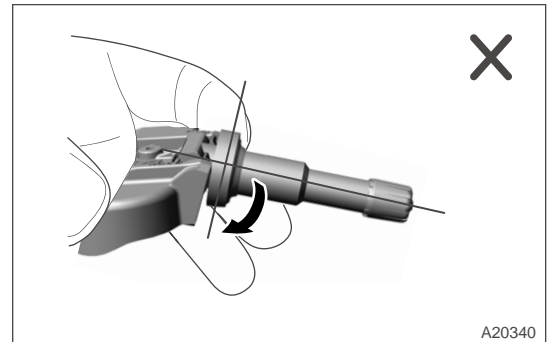
- (3) If root of valve stem dose not enter groove fully and valve stem dose not bend to limit, it indicates that assembly is not qualified.



- (4) If valve stem does not bend to limit, it indicates that assembly is not qualified.



- (5) If seal washer plane is not perpendicular to valve stem after a horizontal force is applied along the seal washer, it indicates that assembly is not qualified.

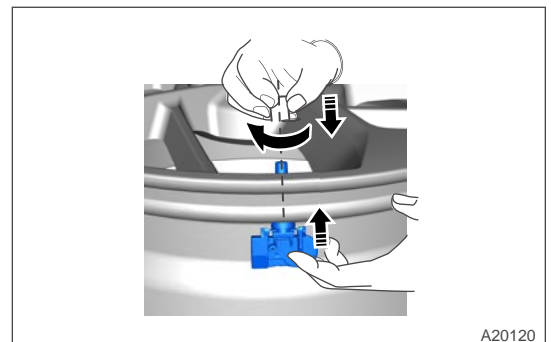


■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Avoid dropping the sensor. If tire pressure sensor is dropped from a place 1 m high to the ground, it is interpreted as fault in tire pressure sensor.**
- **Tire pressure sensor must be installed on clean and dry hub.**
- **Valve cap must be on the valve, except inflation, deflation, air pressure inspection, etc.**
- **During installation, do not contact the tire pressure sensor with used tools, to avoid damage to the tire pressure sensor.**
- **Sensor air pressure inlet cannot be covered partially or completely by lubricant or other materials.**
- **Always use torque wrench when installing tire pressure sensor, common wrench cannot guarantee a torque of 8 ± 1 N·m. If the torque is relatively low, air leakage may occur, resulting in a risk of danger; if the torque is relatively high, tire pressure sensor or related components may be damaged, resulting in a risk of danger.**
- **Required tightening speed: ≤ 30 rpm; Assembly torque: 8 ± 1 N·m.**

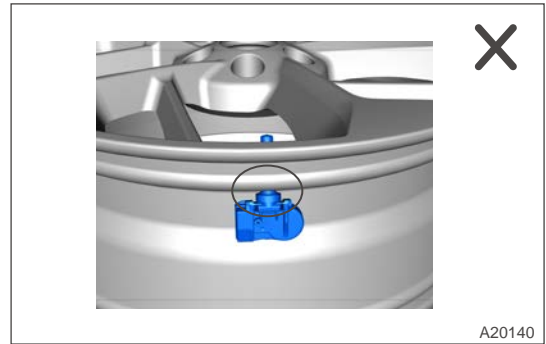
- (1) Hold the tire pressure sensor vertically with four fingers of the left hand in upward direction, never apply inward component force in horizontal direction; hold the outer edge of rim with left thumb, and apply a downward force to press both sides of sensor housing firmly against the rim. Pass the valve stem into rim along valve hole center axis, and insertion direction is from inward to outward of tire assembly. Tighten the nut with right hand in clockwise direction until the tire pressure sensor is fixed without any movement.



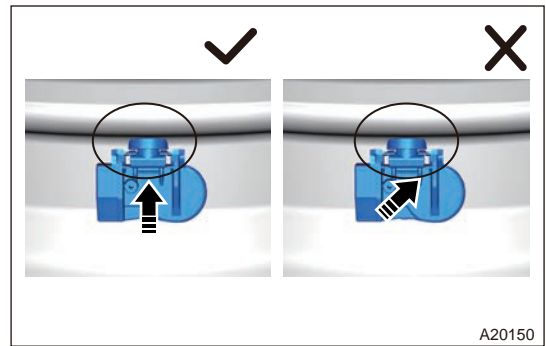
- (2) If valve stem is fully seated into the groove, sensor is fully fixed without any movement and sensor housing is pressed against rim firmly, it indicates that assembly is qualified.



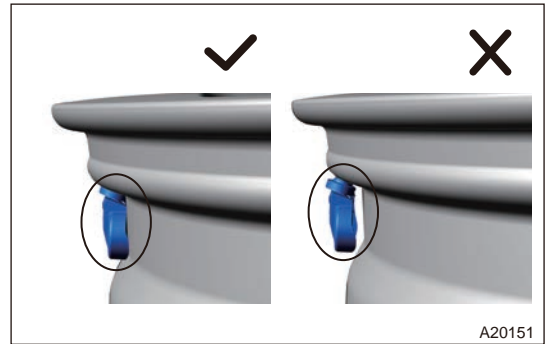
- (3) If the pretightened nut is not tightened into place with too much valve stem screw exposed and sensor is not fixed, it indicates that assembly is unqualified.



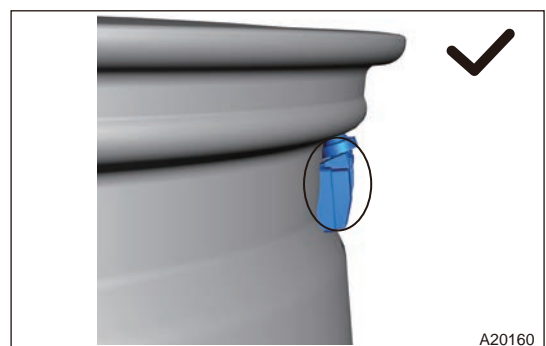
- (4) If the sensor valve stem slides out form metal groove after a horizontal inward component force is applied, it indicates that assembly is unqualified.



- (5) If right side of sensor is not pressed against the rim firmly, it indicates that assembly is unqualified.



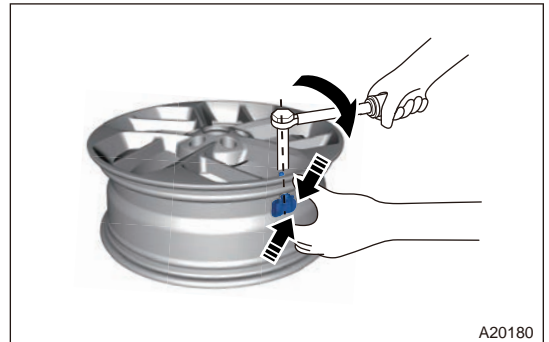
- (6) If left side of sensor is pressed against the rim firmly, it indicates that assembly is qualified.



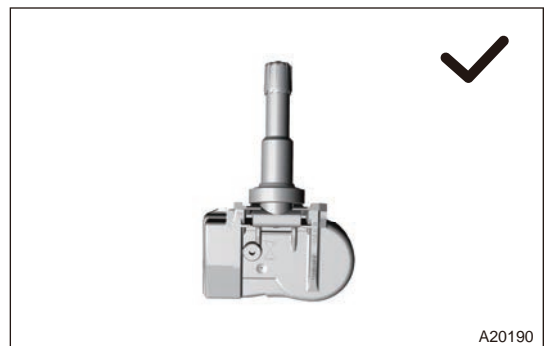
- (7) If left side of sensor is not pressed against the rim firmly, it indicates that assembly is unqualified.



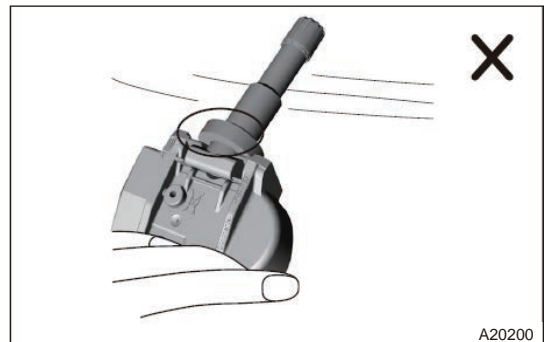
- (8) Hold bottom part of the sensor using four fingers of left hand with an upward force. Hold the rim edge with left thumb with a downward force. Press the tire pressure sensor against the rim firmly, and keep the sensor position fixed during tightening process. The axis of manual torque wrench sleeve should be overlapped with that of valve stem without any angle. Start the fitting button to tighten the nut in clockwise direction, and the tightening process is finished after torque reaches 8 ± 1 N·m. Do not tighten the nut again after it is tightened.



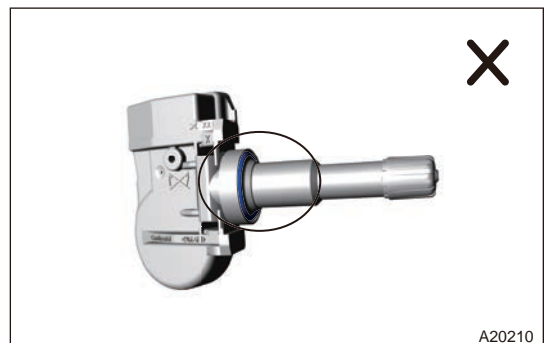
- (9) If valve stem is fully seated in metal groove, sensor is fully fixed without any movement and both sides of the sensor housing are pressed against rim firmly, it indicates that assembly is qualified.



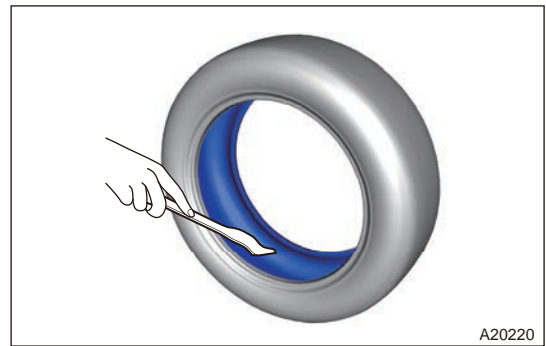
- (10) If valve stem slides out of metal groove, it indicates that assembly is unqualified.



- (11) If seal washer and seal ring are deformed or damaged due to excessive torque, it indicates that assembly is unqualified.



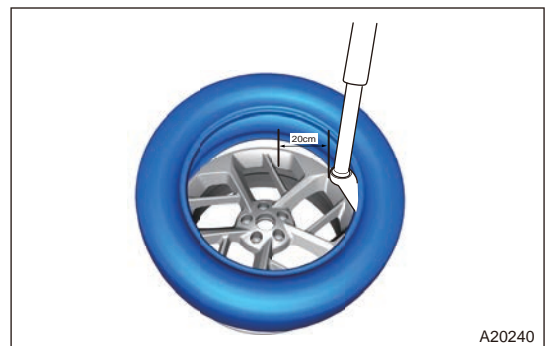
(12) Installation is the same as common tire. Before loading tire, apply soapy water or glycerin to tire bead along inner circle.



(13) Put tire on hub and keep intersection between hub and tire edge 15 - 20 cm away from valve stem.



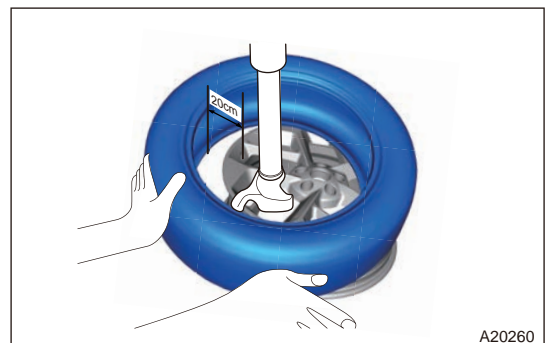
(14) Install bottom tire to make sure the distance between intersection and valve stem is about 20 cm.



(15) Rotate wheel to install one side of tire into hub. Rotation direction of wheel should be the direction that makes replacer head get farther and farther away from sensor.



(16) Put another side of tire in place, so that intersection between tire edge and hub is 20 cm away from valve stem.



(17) Rotate wheel to install another side of tire into hub.



A20270

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to observe the operation regulation to prevent tire pressure sensor from being damaged.**
- **Both crowbar and tire cannot contact with sensor.**
- **Confirm that distance between intersection and valve stem is proper.**

BRAKE SYSTEM

23.1	FRONT BRAKE	915
1	Warning and Precaution.....	915
1.1	Precaution.....	915
2	System Overview	915
2.1	System Components Diagram.....	915
2.2	Brake Disc Specifications	916
3	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	916
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	916
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	918
4.1	Tools	918
4.2	Brake Bleeding.....	919
4.3	Replace Front Disc Brake Assembly	922

23.1 FRONT BRAKE

1 Warning and Precaution

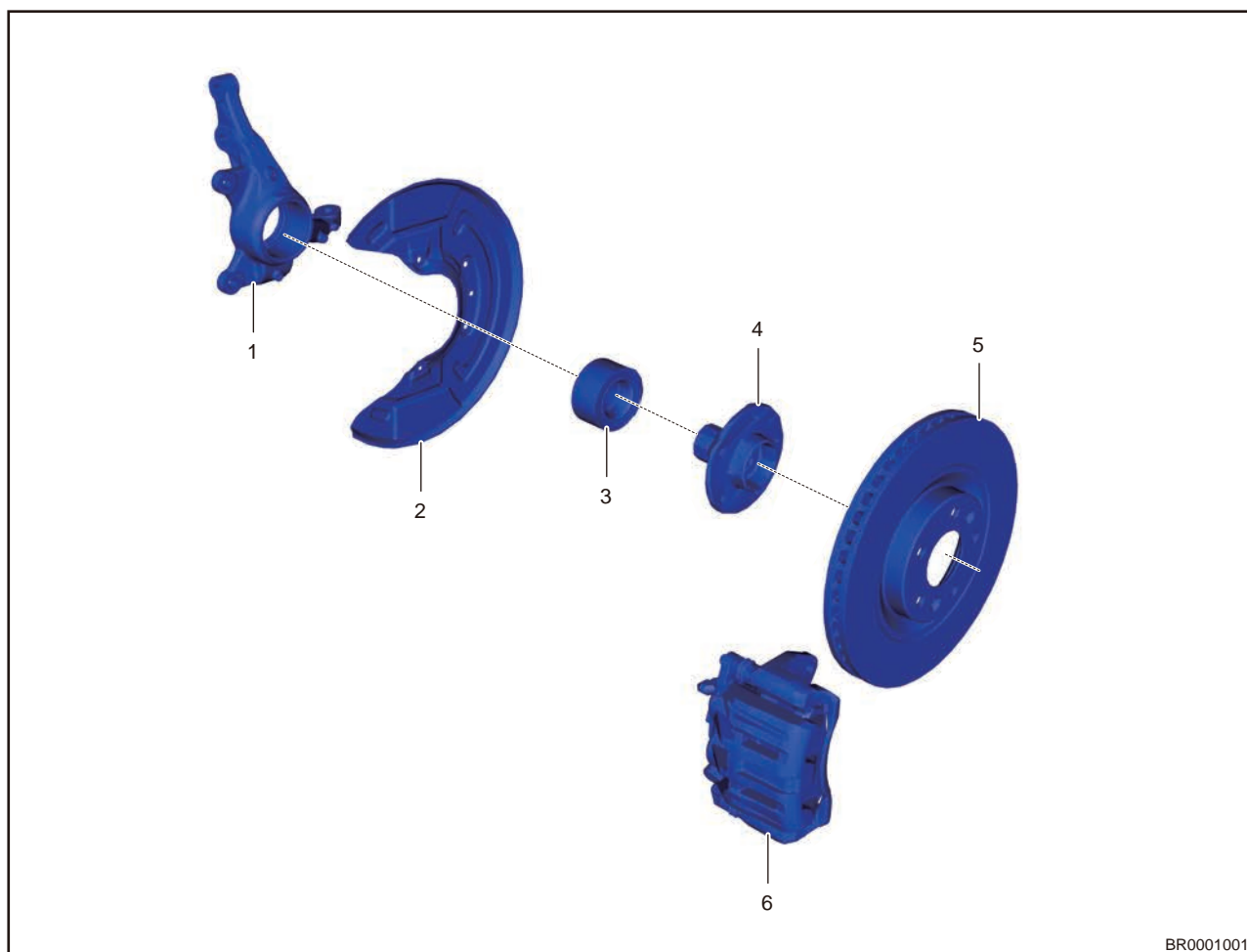
1.1 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) DO NOT machine the brake disc, because it may make brake disc thickness less than the minimum thickness.
- (2) After removing front brake caliper assembly, it is strictly forbidden to depress brake pedal, otherwise the brake caliper piston will rush out of cylinder hole and the brake fluid will come out and pollute brake disc and other parts.
- (3) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

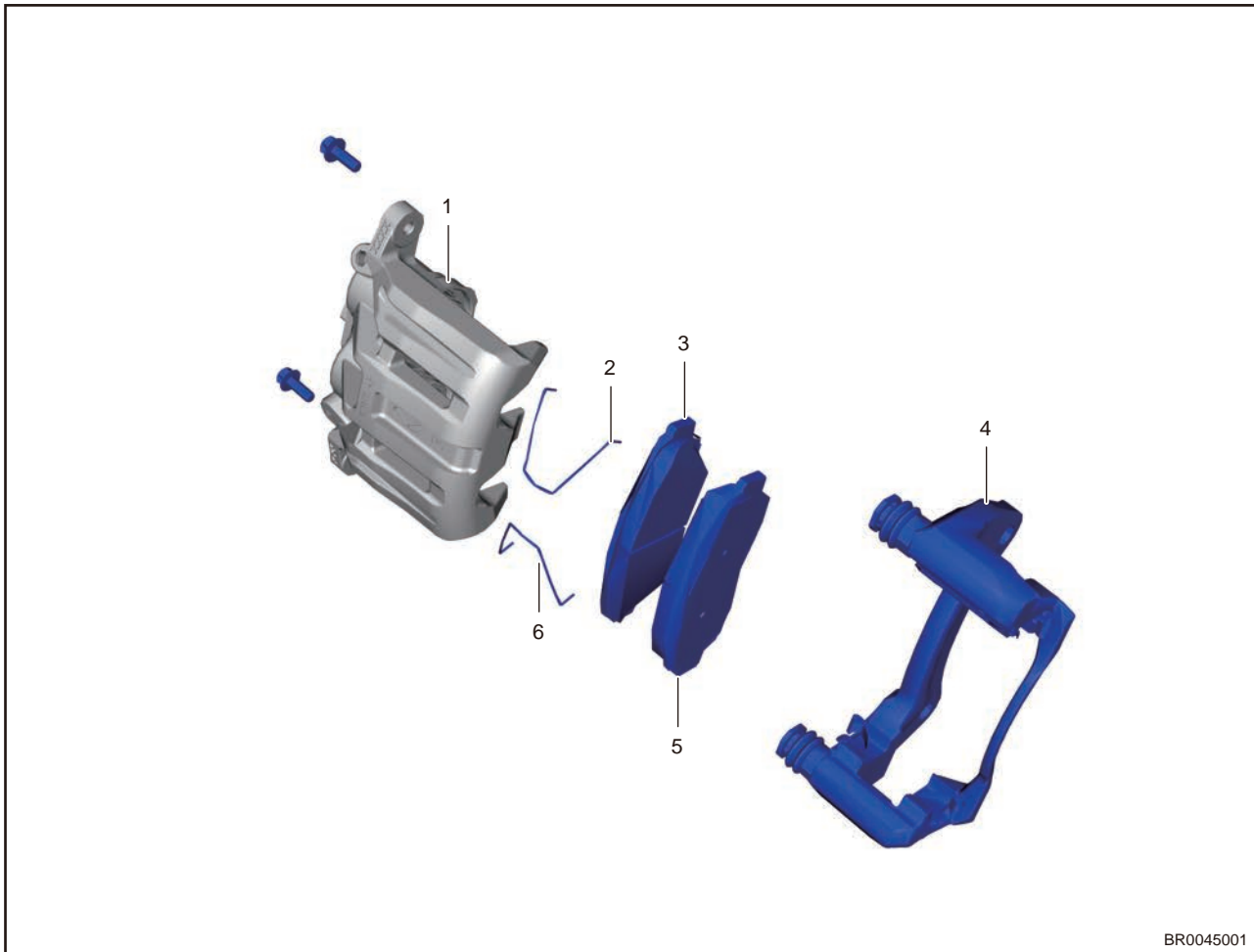
2 System Overview

2.1 System Components Diagram



BR0001001

1	Front Left Steering Knuckle	4	Front Hub
2	Front Left Dust Guard	5	Front Left Brake Disc
3	Front Hub Bearing Assembly	6	Front Left Brake Caliper



1	Front Left Brake Caliper	4	Front Left Brake Caliper Bracket
2	Spring Plate	5	Front Left Outer Brake Lining
3	Front Left Inner Brake Lining	6	Spring Plate

2.2 Brake Disc Specifications

■ Front Disc Brake

Description	Minimum Thickness (mm)
Front Brake Disc	26
Front Brake Lining	2

3 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

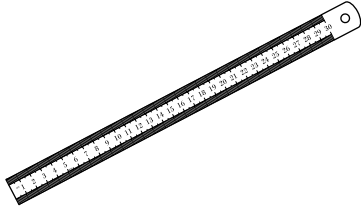
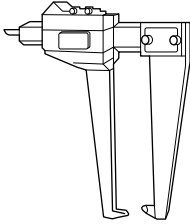
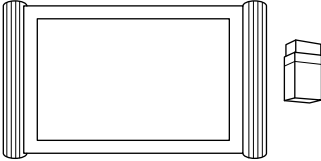
Symptom	Suspected Area
Brake shakes	Brake disc thickness is out of limit thickness
	Hub bearing is damaged or worn

Symptom	Suspected Area
	Brake assembly bolt becomes loose
	Steering/suspension part is loose or worn
	Tire dynamic balance is incorrect
	Four-wheel alignment is incorrect
	ABS operates abnormally
Abnormal noise occurs on bumpy road	Spring plate is worn or deformed
	Brake assembly bolt becomes loose
	Abnormal noise is caused by slight axial movement of brake caliper on bumpy road
	Steering/suspension part becomes loose or shock absorber is worn
Wheel dragging	Residual pressure in brake system
	Bearing is damaged
	Large sliding resistance of brake caliper
	Guide pin is deformed
	Guide pin is not installed in place
	Guide pin dust boot is damaged
	Linings are not installed correctly
	Chassis interference part
Brake noise	Metal scratching occurs during braking
	Continuous “squeak” sound occurs for a longer time during braking
	A clear “click” sound occurs at the beginning of braking
	Relevant bolts are loose
	Relevant parts are damaged

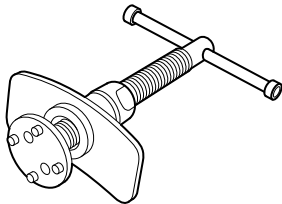
4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

■ General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Caliper	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00044</p>
Thickness Measurement Caliper	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00082</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

■ Special Tool

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Brake Cylinder Release Tool	ECH-0005	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00076</p>

4.2 Brake Bleeding

Hint:

- Be sure to perform brake bleeding after replacing hydraulic parts related to brake.
- An assistant will be required to assist when bleeding brake system.
- There are 2 methods for brake bleeding, and specific operation procedures are as follows:

■ Manual Bleeding

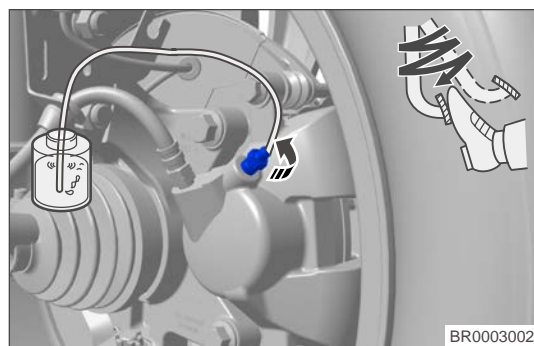
⚠ Caution

- When performing bleeding procedures for brake system, wear safety glasses.
- Be careful when bleeding air, as brake fluid at high pressure may spray out from bleeder screw.

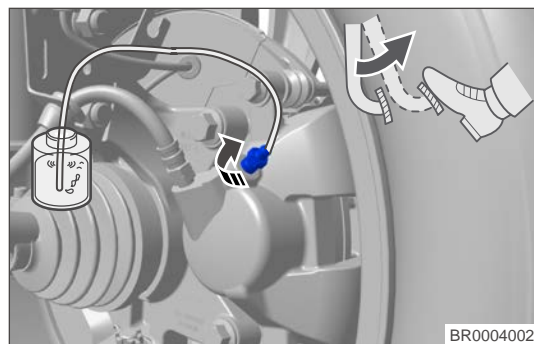
⚠ Warning

- Before removing brake fluid reservoir, wipe off any dust and other foreign matters on brake fluid reservoir to prevent them from entering.
- Use fresh, clear and well-sealed brake fluid with specified type.
- DO NOT allow the brake fluid to adhere to any paint surface, such as vehicle body. If brake fluid leaks onto any paint surface, immediately wash it off.
- During bleeding, do not depress brake pedal repeatedly at any time with bleeder screw opened. Otherwise, air amount in the system will increase to make an extra bleeding.
- DO NOT drain the brake fluid in brake fluid reservoir while bleeding brake system.

- (1) Fill brake fluid reservoir with brake fluid to a proper level.
- (2) Loosen bleeder screw cap and connect a clear plastic hose to bleeder screw. Submerge the end of hose into container.
- (3) Have an assistant depress brake pedal 3 to 4 times repeatedly; and depress and hold it at a lower position, then loosen the bleeder screw.



- (4) Tighten bleeder screw every time brake pedal goes down quickly, then release the brake pedal.

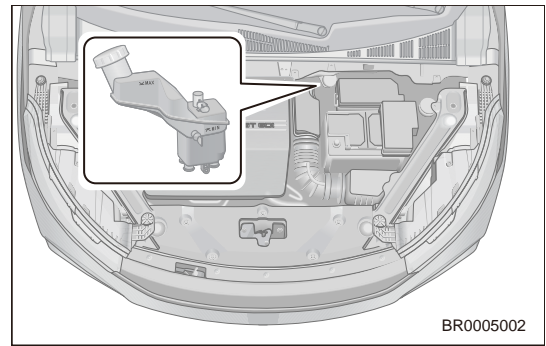


- (5) Repeat above steps, and use the same procedures to bleed brake line of each wheel in order of rear left wheel, front left wheel, front right wheel and rear right wheel, until no air exists in brake system.

Empty sign: A stream of fresh brake fluid flows into clear container without bubbles.

Hint:

During bleeding of brake system, make sure brake fluid level in brake fluid reservoir is always near “MAX” mark. Check brake fluid level at all times during bleeding. Add brake fluid as necessary.



- (6) Check and adjust the brake fluid level to “MAX” mark.
- (7) Check the brake pedal braking effect. If braking effect is poor or pedal is spongy, air may still exist in system. Perform bleeding procedures for brake system again as necessary.
- (8) Test vehicle to confirm that brakes operate properly with good depressing feel.

■ **Bleeding brake using diagnostic tester**

Hint:

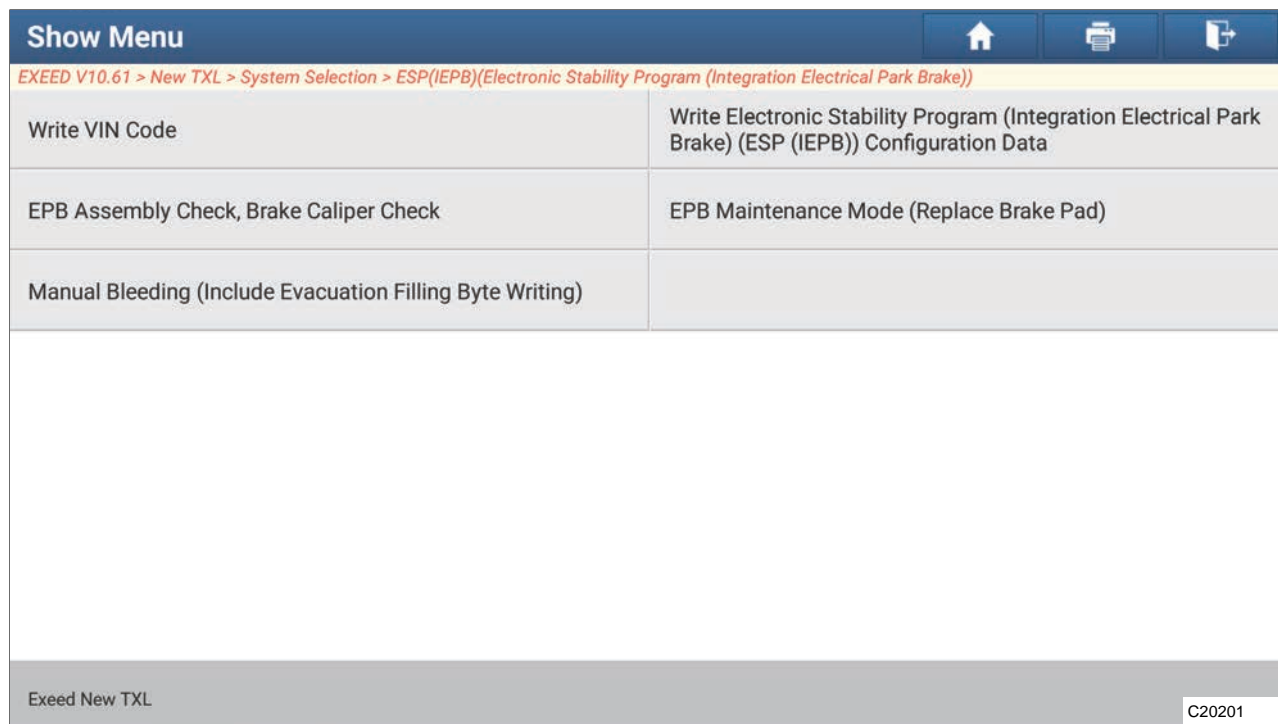
To reach sufficient pressure in hydraulic regulator, brake pedal needs to be depressed repeatedly during whole process.

Warning

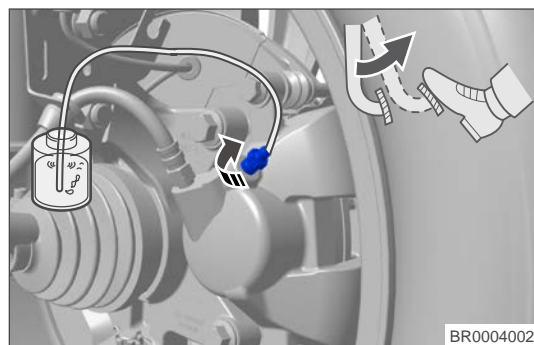
- **Check that battery voltage should not be less than 12 V.**
- **Bleeding order must be rear left/front left/front right/rear right.**
- **If it is necessary to repeat part or whole bleeding procedure, be sure to wait for 5 minutes to cool solenoid valve down, otherwise solenoid valve may be damaged due to overheat.**
- **During bleeding, do not depress brake pedal repeatedly at any time with bleeder screw opened. Otherwise, air amount in the system will increase to make an extra bleeding.**
- **Depress brake pedal repeatedly with a frequency of 0.5 times per second in the whole bleeding process.**

- (1) Fill brake fluid reservoir with brake fluid to a proper level.
- (2) Depress brake pedal more than 20 times with engine stopped.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “ON” , and connect the diagnostic tester.
 - 1) Click “ESP (iEPB) Electronic Stability Control Module (Integration Electric Parking Brake)” .
 - 2) Click “Special Function” .

- 3) Click “Manual Bleeding” .



- 4) Click OK, please select [Phase 1: Bleed the wheel rear left] on Diagnostic program screen, then perform bleeding operation for rear left wheel.
- (4) Tighten bleeder screw every time brake pedal goes down quickly, then release the brake pedal.

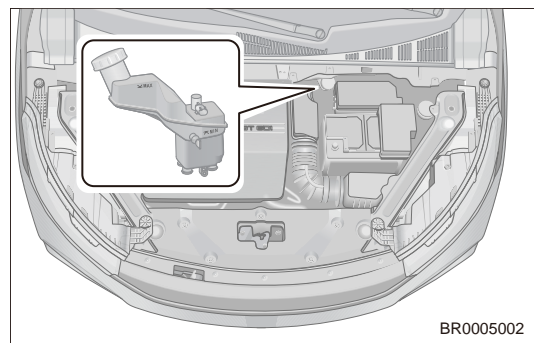


- (5) Repeat above steps, and use the same procedures to bleed brake line of each wheel in order of rear left wheel, front left wheel, front right wheel and rear right wheel, until no air exists in brake system.

Empty sign: A stream of fresh brake fluid flows into clear container without bubbles.

Hint:

During bleeding of brake system, make sure brake fluid level in brake fluid reservoir is always near “MAX” mark. Check brake fluid level at all times during bleeding. Add brake fluid as necessary.



- (6) Check and adjust the brake fluid level to “MAX” mark.
- (7) Check the brake pedal braking effect. If braking effect is poor or pedal is spongy, air may still exist in system. Perform bleeding procedures for brake system again as necessary.
- (8) Test vehicle to confirm that brakes operate properly with good depressing feel.

4.3 Replace Front Disc Brake Assembly

■ On-vehicle Inspection

Caution

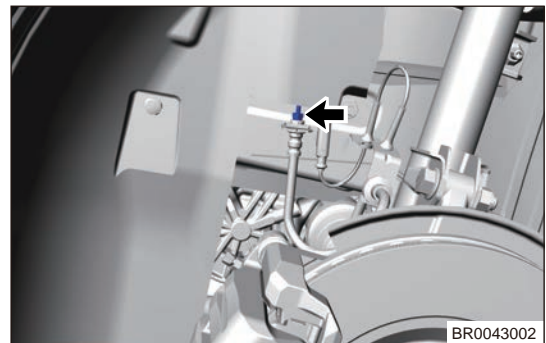
- Use well-sealed DOT4 brake fluid specified by EXEED. DO NOT use oily solution, otherwise brake system seal may be damaged.
- Brake fluid may damage paint surface. If brake fluid spills on paint surface, wash it off immediately with water.
- DO NOT use gasoline, kerosene, alcohol, engine oil, transmission oil or any other fluid that contains mineral oil to clean the system components. These kinds of fluid will damage the rubber cover and seal.
- During servicing, be sure to clean the grease or other foreign matter on the outer surface of brake caliper assembly, brake lining, brake disc and wheel hub.
- When operating brake disc and brake caliper, be careful not to damage brake disc and brake caliper and scratch or cut brake shoe linings.

- (1) Check conditions of tires and wheels. Damaged or worn wheels and tires can cause a pull, shudder, vibration and a condition similar to sudden braking.
- (2) If noise occurs while braking, check suspension components. Bounce the vehicle up and down several times and check suspension or steering components for any looseness, wear or damage.
- (3) Check brake fluid level and condition.
 - If brake fluid level is low, check ESP (iEPB) control unit assembly, brake caliper, brake line, brake master cylinder assembly and brake fluid reservoir, etc. for leakage.
 - If brake fluid is contaminated, drain a certain amount of fluid for inspection. Replace with new fluid as necessary.

■ Removal

Hint:

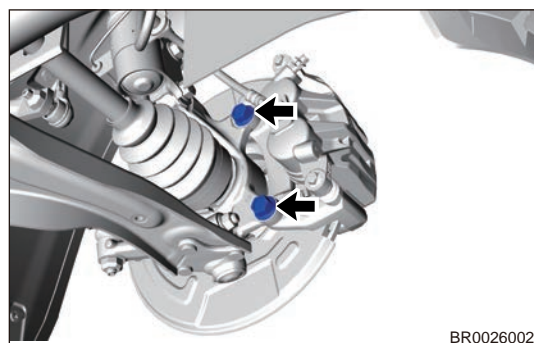
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
 - Procedures listed below are for left side.
- (1) Remove the front left wheel.
 - (2) Loosen coupling nut (arrow) between front left brake hose assembly and front left brake pipe.



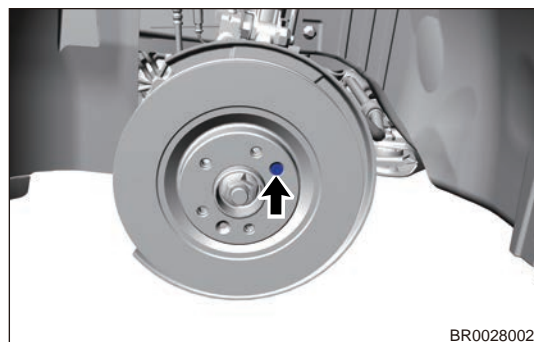
Caution

- DO NOT allow any foreign matter such as dirt and dust to enter brake pipe from joint parts.
- After removing brake line, perform sealing treatment to prevent foreign matter from entering.

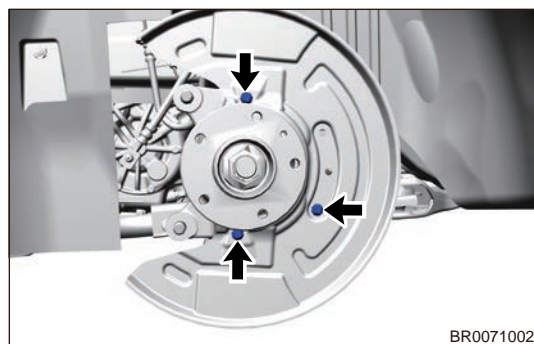
- (3) Remove 2 coupling bolts (arrow) between front left brake caliper assembly and front left steering knuckle.



- (4) Remove the fixing screws (arrow) from front left brake disc, and remove front left brake disc.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts (arrow) between front left brake disc baffle plate and steering knuckle.



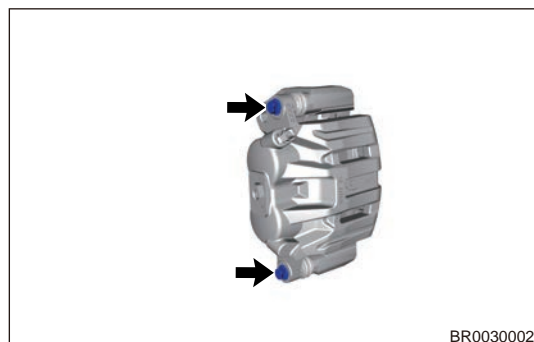
- (6) Remove the front left brake baffle plate.

■ Disassembly

Hint:

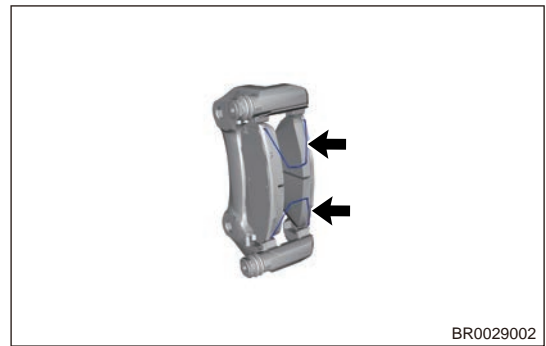
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

- (1) Remove 2 guide bolts (arrow) between brake caliper fixing bracket and brake cylinder assembly.

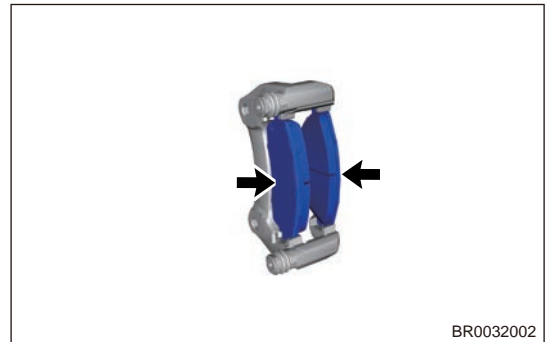


- (2) Separate brake cylinder assembly from brake caliper fixing bracket.

- (3) Remove 2 spring plate (arrow) from brake lining.



- (4) Remove inner and outer brake linings (arrow) from brake caliper fixing bracket.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check brake caliper fixing bracket and brake caliper guide pin set.
 - Clean the contact surfaces of brake caliper fixing bracket and brake lining support shims with brake cleaner. Check for deformation, cracks, rust and foreign matter which is difficult to remove.
 - Check brake caliper guide pin rubber dust boot for deformation, cracks, wear and foreign matter which is difficult to remove.
 - Install the brake caliper guide pin and its rubber dust boot to brake caliper fixing bracket. Brake caliper guide pin set should move smoothly without sticking when pushing it with hand; otherwise replace it.
 - After installing the brake lining, check if it is easy to drop (due to insufficient elasticity of support shim). Replace as necessary.
- (2) Check the brake lining.
 - Visually check the brake lining for flatness, and also check for excessive wear. If the condition of lining cannot be confirmed accurately only by visual inspection, perform physical inspection as necessary.
 - Measure the minimum brake lining thickness. When the minimum thickness of brake lining is 2mm or less, replace the brake linings.
 - When replacing the excessively worn brake linings (inner and outer), it is also necessary to replace the linings on opposite side of vehicle as well as unchecked linings to maintain proper braking performance. If it is unnecessary to replace brake linings, be sure to reinstall brake linings to original positions.
- (3) Check the brake disc.
 - Minor scratch or wear on brake disc surface is acceptable. If severe scratch or deformation exists, the brake disc must be replaced.
 - Excessive wear of brake disc may cause poor contact between brake lining and surface of brake disc. If protrusion on the disc is not removed before installing new brake lining, it will cause abnormal wear of brake disc.
 - It is normal that the surface of brake disc is worn when replacing brake lining. If cracks or burned spots exist, the brake disc must be replaced.
- (4) Check the brake disc thickness.
 - Check the brake disc thickness.

- Minimum thickness: 26 mm
- If it is less than the minimum thickness due to wear, replace brake disc.

⚠ Caution

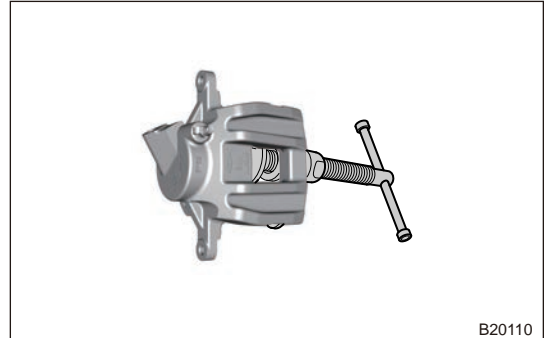
- **DO NOT machine the brake disc, because it may make brake disc thickness less than the minimum thickness.**

■ Assembly

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torques during assembly.**

- (1) Using brake cylinder release tool, slightly retract brake caliper piston.



B20110

- (2) Install inner and outer brake linings.
- (3) Install 2 front spring plates.
- (4) Install 2 guide bolts between brake caliper fixing bracket and brake cylinder assembly.

Torque: 30 - 35 N·m

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torque.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**

- (1) Install the front left brake baffle plate to a proper position.
- (2) Install 3 fixing bolts between front left brake disc baffle plate and steering knuckle.
- (3) Install the front left brake disc to a proper position.
- (4) Install the fixing screws on the front left brake disc.

Torque: 7- 9 N·m

- (5) Install the front left brake caliper assembly to a proper position.
- (6) Install 2 coupling bolts between front left brake caliper assembly and front left steering knuckle.

Torque: 81 - 93 N·m

- (7) Install the coupling nut between front left brake hose assembly and front left brake pipe.

Torque: 18 ± 2 N·m

- (8) Install the front left wheel.
- (9) Connect the negative battery cable.

BRAKE SYSTEM

24.1	REAR BRAKE	927
1	Warning and Precaution.....	927
1.1	Precaution.....	927
2	System Overview	927
2.1	System Components Diagram.....	927
2.2	Brake Disc Specifications	928
3	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	928
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	928
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	930
4.1	Tools	930
4.2	Brake Bleeding.....	931
4.3	Replace Rear Disc Brake Assembly	934

24.1 REAR BRAKE

1 Warning and Precaution

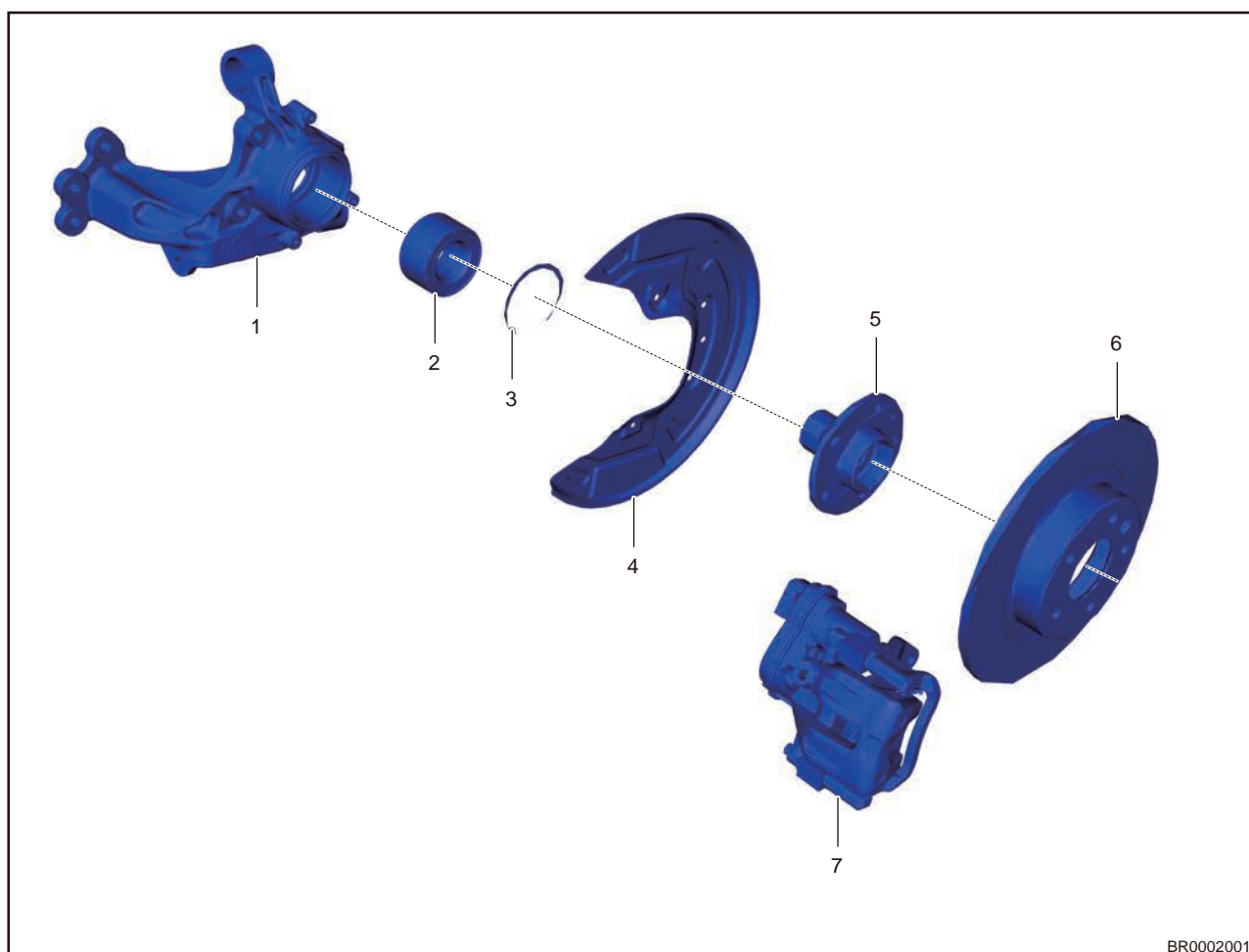
1.1 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) DO NOT machine the brake disc, because it may make brake disc thickness less than the minimum thickness.
- (2) After removing front brake caliper assembly, it is strictly forbidden to depress brake pedal, otherwise the brake caliper piston will rush out of cylinder hole and the brake fluid will come out and pollute brake disc and other parts.
- (3) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

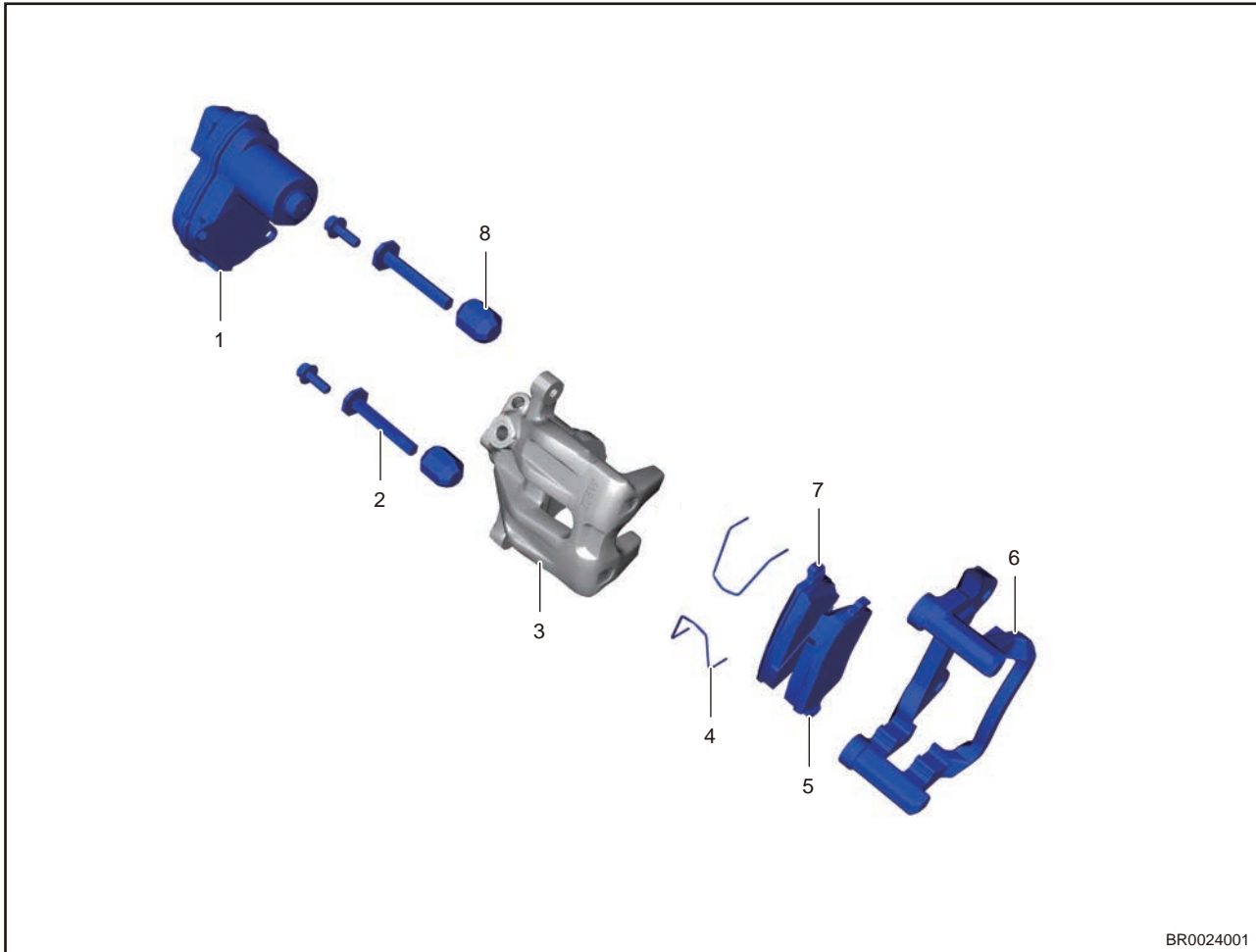
2.1 System Components Diagram



BR0002001

1	Rear Left Steering Knuckle Assembly	5	Rear Left Wheel Hub
2	Rear Left Wheel Hub Bearing Assembly	6	Rear Left Brake Disc

3	Elastic Circlip	7	Rear Left Brake Caliper Assembly
4	Rear Left Dust Guard		



BR0024001

1	Electronic Control Execution Unit	5	Rear Left Brake Caliper Outer Brake Lining
2	Guide Pin	6	Rear Left Brake Caliper Bracket
3	Rear Left Brake Caliper	7	Rear Left Brake Caliper Inner Brake Lining
4	Rear Slanted Spring	8	Guide Pin Dust Boot

2.2 Brake Disc Specifications

■ Rear Disc Brake

Description	Minimum Thickness (mm)
Rear Brake Disc	8
Rear Brake Lining	2

3 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

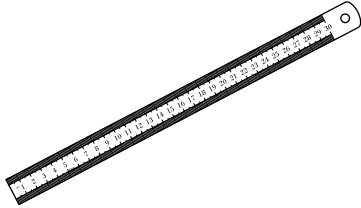
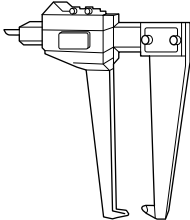
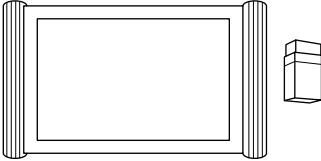
Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Brake shakes	Brake disc thickness is out of limit thickness
	Hub bearing is damaged or worn
	Brake assembly bolt becomes loose
	Steering/suspension part is loose or worn
	Tire dynamic balance is incorrect
	Four-wheel alignment is incorrect
	ABS operates abnormally
Abnormal noise occurs on bumpy road	Spring plate is worn or deformed
	Brake assembly bolt becomes loose
	Abnormal noise is caused by slight axial movement of brake caliper on bumpy road
	Steering/suspension part becomes loose or shock absorber is worn
Wheel dragging	Residual pressure in brake system
	Bearing is damaged
	Large sliding resistance of brake caliper
	Guide pin is deformed
	Guide pin is not installed in place
	Guide pin dust boot is damaged
	Linings are not installed correctly
	Chassis interference part
Brake noise	Metal scratching occurs during braking
	Continuous "squeak" sound occurs for a longer time during braking
	A clear "click" sound occurs at the beginning of braking
	Relevant bolts are loose
	Relevant parts are damaged

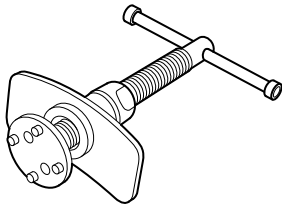
4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

■ General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Caliper	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00044</p>
Thickness Measurement Caliper	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00082</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

■ Special Tool

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Brake Cylinder Release Tool	ECH-0005	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00076</p>

4.2 Brake Bleeding

Hint:

- Be sure to perform brake bleeding after replacing hydraulic parts related to brake.
- An assistant will be required to assist when bleeding brake system.
- There are 2 methods for brake bleeding, and specific operation procedures are as follows:

■ Manual Bleeding

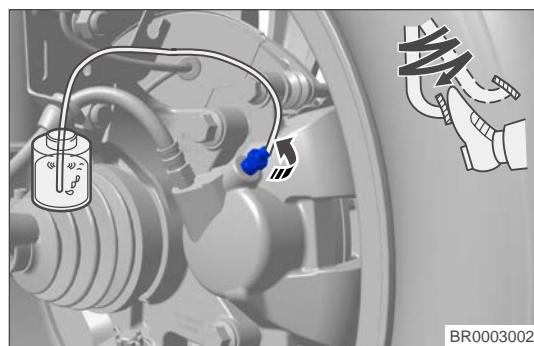
⚠ Caution

- When performing bleeding procedures for brake system, wear safety glasses.
- Be careful when bleeding air, as brake fluid at high pressure may spray out from bleeder screw.

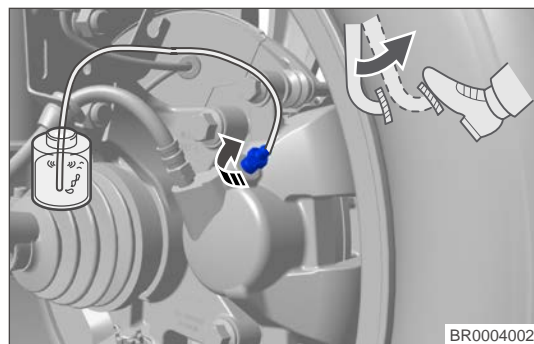
⚠ Warning

- Before removing brake fluid reservoir, wipe off any dust and other foreign matters on brake fluid reservoir to prevent them from entering.
- Use fresh, clear and well-sealed brake fluid with specified type.
- DO NOT allow the brake fluid to adhere to any paint surface, such as vehicle body. If brake fluid leaks onto any paint surface, immediately wash it off.
- During bleeding, do not depress brake pedal repeatedly at any time with bleeder screw opened. Otherwise, air amount in the system will increase to make an extra bleeding.
- DO NOT drain the brake fluid in brake fluid reservoir while bleeding brake system.

- (1) Fill brake fluid reservoir with brake fluid to a proper level.
- (2) Loosen bleeder screw cap and connect a clear plastic hose to bleeder screw. Submerge the end of hose into container.
- (3) Have an assistant depress brake pedal 3 to 4 times repeatedly; and depress and hold it at a lower position, then loosen the bleeder screw.



- (4) Tighten bleeder screw every time brake pedal goes down quickly, then release the brake pedal.



- (5) Repeat above steps, and use the same procedures to bleed brake line of each wheel in order of rear left wheel, front left wheel, front right wheel and rear right wheel, until no air exists in brake system.

Empty sign: A stream of fresh brake fluid flows into clear container without bubbles.

Hint:

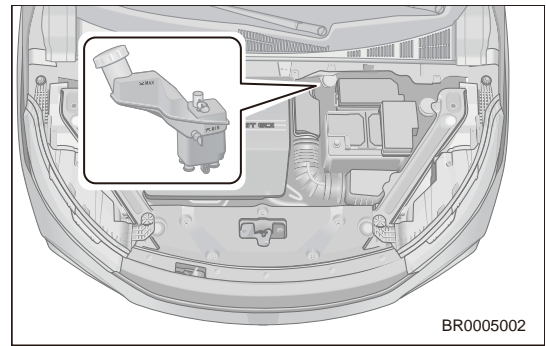
During bleeding of brake system, make sure brake fluid level in brake fluid reservoir is always near “MAX” mark. Check brake fluid level at all times during bleeding. Add brake fluid as necessary.

- (6) Check and adjust the brake fluid level to “MAX” mark.
- (7) Check the brake pedal braking effect. If braking effect is poor or pedal is spongy, air may still exist in system. Perform bleeding procedures for brake system again as necessary.
- (8) Test vehicle to confirm that brakes operate properly with good depressing feel.

■ **Bleeding brake using diagnostic tester**

Hint:

To reach sufficient pressure in hydraulic regulator, brake pedal needs to be depressed repeatedly during whole process.

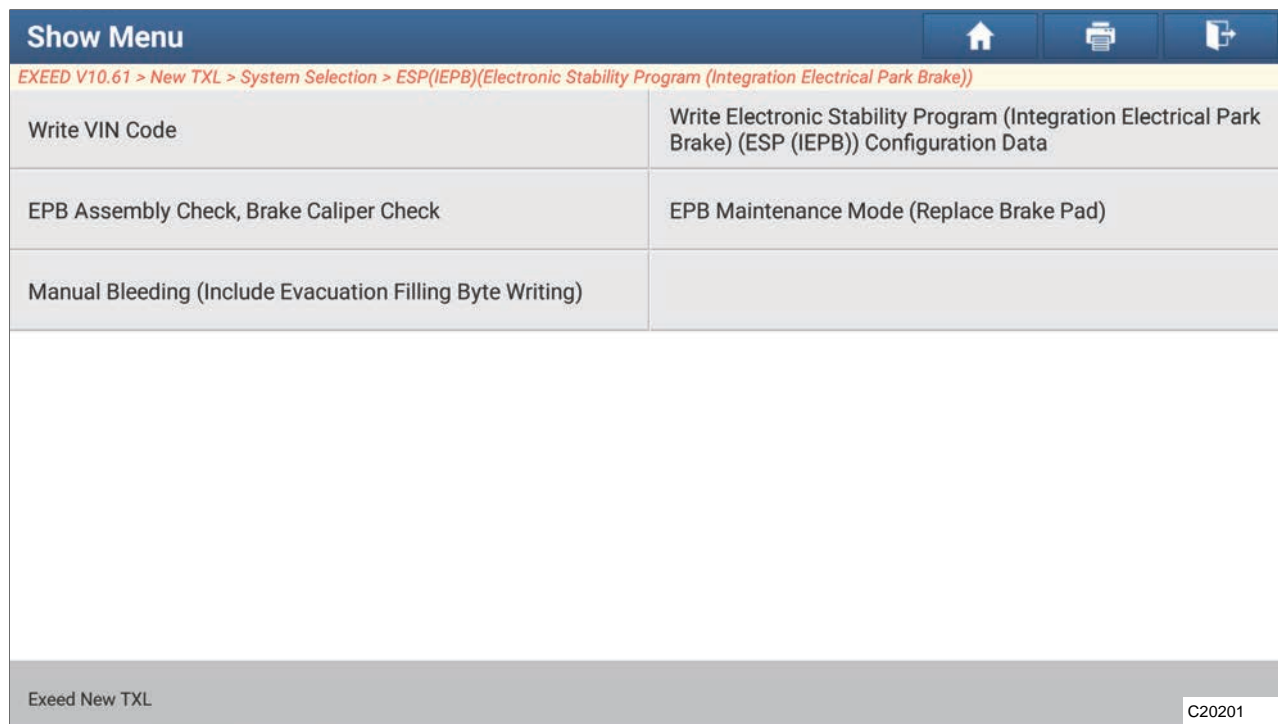


Warning

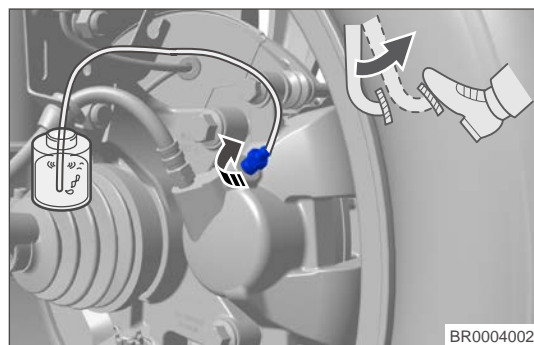
- **Check that battery voltage should not be less than 12 V.**
- **Bleeding order must be rear left/front left/front right/rear right.**
- **If it is necessary to repeat part or whole bleeding procedure, be sure to wait for 5 minutes to cool solenoid valve down, otherwise solenoid valve may be damaged due to overheat.**
- **During bleeding, do not depress brake pedal repeatedly at any time with bleeder screw opened. Otherwise, air amount in the system will increase to make an extra bleeding.**
- **Depress brake pedal repeatedly with a frequency of 0.5 times per second in the whole bleeding process.**

- (1) Fill brake fluid reservoir with brake fluid to a proper level.
- (2) Depress brake pedal more than 20 times with engine stopped.
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “ON” , and connect the diagnostic tester.
- 1) Click “ESP (iEPB) Electronic Stability Control Module (Integration Electric Parking Brake)” .
 - 2) Click “Special Function” .

- 3) Click “Manual Bleeding” .



- 4) Click OK, please select [Phase 1: Bleed the wheel rear left] on Diagnostic program screen, then perform bleeding operation for rear left wheel.
- (4) Tighten bleeder screw every time brake pedal goes down quickly, then release the brake pedal.

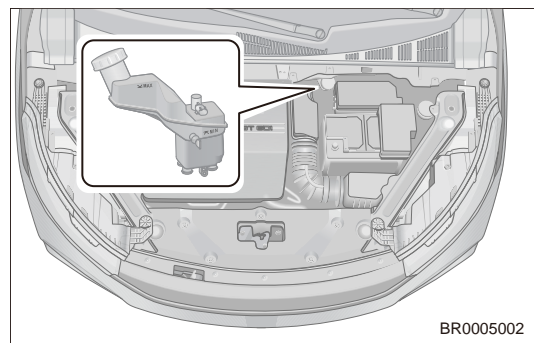


- (5) Repeat above steps, and use the same procedures to bleed brake line of each wheel in order of rear left wheel, front left wheel, front right wheel and rear right wheel, until no air exists in brake system.

Empty sign: A stream of fresh brake fluid flows into clear container without bubbles.

Hint:

During bleeding of brake system, make sure brake fluid level in brake fluid reservoir is always near “MAX” mark. Check brake fluid level at all times during bleeding. Add brake fluid as necessary.



- (6) Check and adjust the brake fluid level to “MAX” mark.
- (7) Check the brake pedal braking effect. If braking effect is poor or pedal is spongy, air may still exist in system. Perform bleeding procedures for brake system again as necessary.
- (8) Test vehicle to confirm that brakes operate properly with good depressing feel.

4.3 Replace Rear Disc Brake Assembly

■ On-vehicle Inspection

⚠ Caution

- Use well-sealed DOT4 brake fluid specified by EXEED. DO NOT use oily solution, otherwise brake system seal may be damaged.
- Brake fluid may damage paint surface. If brake fluid spills on paint surface, wash it off immediately with water.
- DO NOT use gasoline, kerosene, alcohol, engine oil, transmission oil or any other fluid that contains mineral oil to clean the system components. These kinds of fluid will damage the rubber cover and seal.
- During servicing, be sure to clean the grease or other foreign matter on the outer surface of brake caliper assembly, brake lining, brake disc and wheel hub.
- When operating brake disc and brake caliper, be careful not to damage brake disc and brake caliper and scratch or cut brake shoe linings.

- (1) Check conditions of tires and wheels. Damaged or worn wheels and tires can cause a pull, shudder, vibration and a condition similar to sudden braking.
- (2) If noise occurs while braking, check suspension components. Bounce the vehicle up and down several times and check suspension or steering components for any looseness, wear or damage.

■ Removal

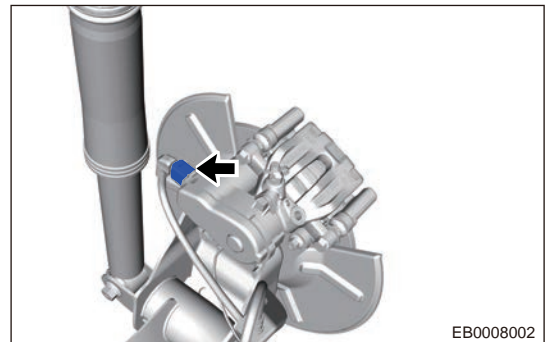
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

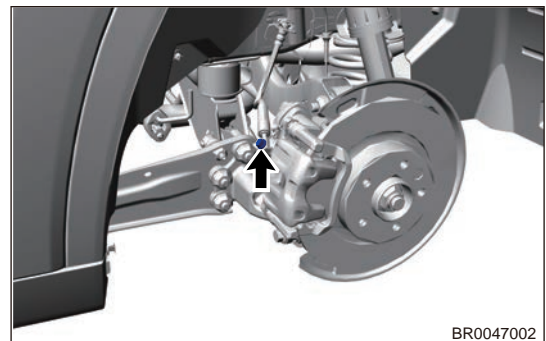
⚠ Caution

Before removing rear disc brake assembly, return brake calipers on both sides fully using diagnostic tester. Enter the diagnostic tester, select EPB (electronic parking brake system), click special function and then click brake calipers on both sides to make them return fully. After that, operate according prompts displayed on the diagnostic tester.

- (1) Remove the rear left wheel.
- (2) Disconnect the integrated caliper motor wire harness connector plug (arrow).



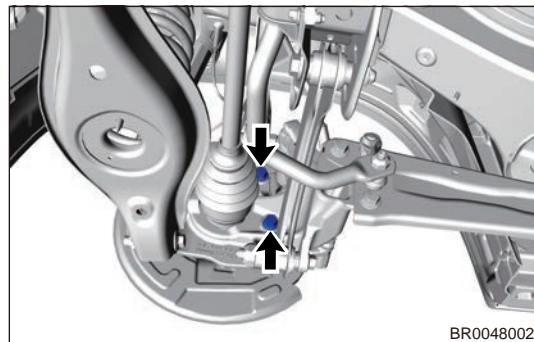
- (3) Remove coupling bolt (arrow) between rear left brake caliper assembly and rear left brake hose assembly.



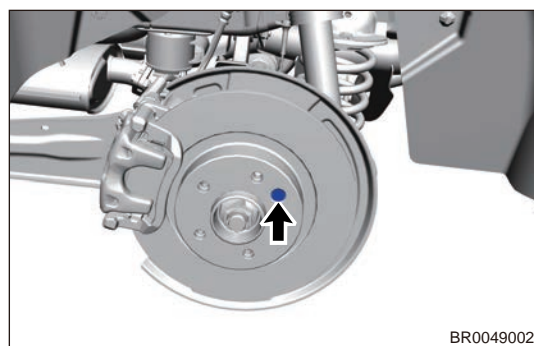
⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT allow brake fluid to be sprayed on your clothes or skin when removing brake hose, as brake fluid is corrosive.**

- (4) Remove coupling bolts (arrow) between rear left brake caliper assembly and left brake caliper mounting panel assembly.



- (5) Remove the rear left brake caliper assembly.
 (6) Remove fixing screw (arrow) on the rear left brake disc and remove rear left brake disc.



■ Disassembly

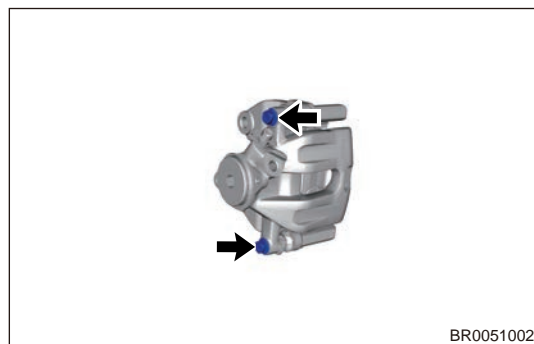
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

- (1) Remove 2 parking actuator fixing screws.



- (2) Remove the parking actuator.
 (3) Loosen 2 guide bolts (arrow) between brake caliper fixing bracket and brake cylinder assembly.

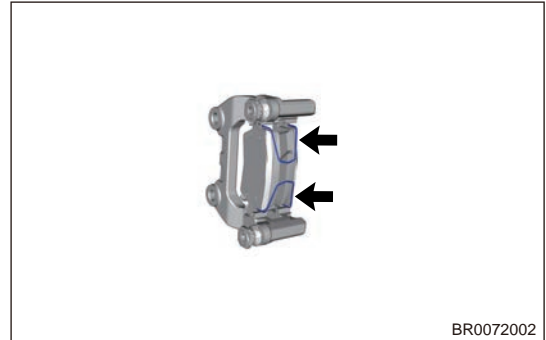


(4) Separate brake cylinder assembly from brake caliper fixing bracket.

⚠ Warning

- **Slowly operate when performing this procedure using caliper with slanted spring, brake lining may be popped out by spring, be careful not to injuring your feet.**

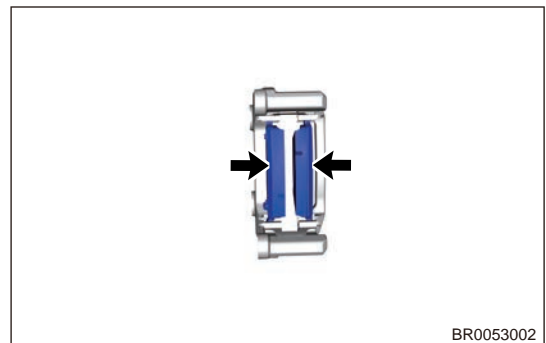
(5) Remove 2 slanted springs (arrow) from lining.



(6) Remove 2 brake caliper guide bolt guide pins (with dust boot) (arrow) from brake caliper fixing bracket.



(7) Remove inner and outer brake lining (arrow) from brake caliper fixing bracket.



■ Inspection

(1) Check brake caliper fixing bracket and brake caliper guide pin set

- Clean the contact surfaces of brake caliper fixing bracket and brake lining support shims with brake cleaner. Check for deformation, cracks, rust and foreign matter which is difficult to remove.
- Check brake caliper guide pin rubber dust boot for deformation, cracks, wear and foreign matter which is difficult to remove.
- Install the brake caliper guide pin and its rubber dust boot to brake caliper fixing bracket. Brake caliper guide pin set should move smoothly without sticking when pushing it with hand; otherwise replace it.
- After installing the brake lining, check if it is easy to drop (due to insufficient elasticity of support shim). Replace as necessary.

(2) Check the brake lining.

- Visually check the brake lining for flatness, and also check for excessive wear. If the condition of lining cannot be confirmed accurately only by visual inspection, perform physical inspection as necessary.

- Measure the minimum brake lining thickness. When the minimum thickness of brake lining is 2mm or less, replace the brake linings.
 - When replacing the excessively worn brake linings (inner and outer), it is also necessary to replace the linings on opposite side of vehicle as well as unchecked linings to maintain proper braking performance. If it is unnecessary to replace brake linings, be sure to reinstall brake linings to original positions.
- (3) Check the brake disc.
- Minor scratch or wear on brake disc surface is acceptable. If severe scratch or deformation exists, the brake disc must be replaced.
 - Excessive wear of brake disc may cause poor contact between brake lining and surface of brake disc. If protrusion on the brake disc is not removed before installing new brake lining, it will cause abnormal wear of brake disc.
 - It is normal that the surface of brake disc is worn when replacing brake lining. If cracks or burned spots exist, the brake disc must be replaced.
- (4) Check the brake disc thickness.
- Check the brake disc thickness.
 - Minimum thickness: 6 mm
 - If it is less than the minimum thickness due to wear, replace brake disc.

⚠ Caution

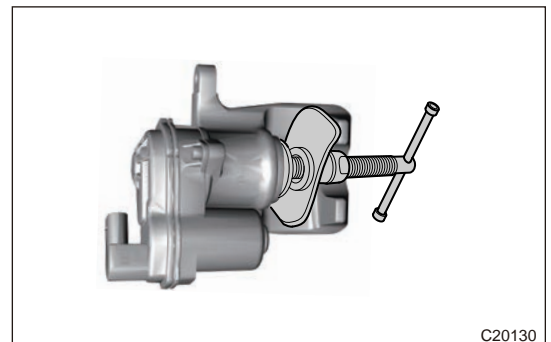
DO NOT machine the brake disc, because it may make brake disc thickness less than the minimum thickness.

■ Assembly

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torques during assembly.**

- (1) Using brake cylinder release tool, slightly retract brake caliper piston.



C20130

- (2) Install inner and outer brake linings.
- (3) Install the rear brake caliper guide bolt guide pin.
- (4) Install the slanted spring.
- (5) Install the brake cylinder assembly to a proper position.
- (6) Install 2 guide bolts between brake caliper fixing bracket and brake cylinder assembly.

Torque: 30 - 35 N·m

- (7) Install the parking actuator to a proper position.
- (8) Install 2 parking actuator fixing screws.

Torque: 7.5 - 8.5 N·m

■ Installation

 Caution

- **Be sure to tighten coupling bolts and nuts to specified torque.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**

- (1) Install the rear left brake disc to a proper position.
- (2) Install the fixing screws to rear left brake disc.

Torque: 7 - 9 N·m

- (3) Install the rear left brake caliper assembly to a proper position.
- (4) Install coupling bolts between rear left brake caliper assembly and left brake caliper mounting panel assembly.

Torque: 30 - 35 N·m

- (5) Install coupling bolt (arrow) between rear left brake caliper assembly and rear left brake hose assembly.

Torque: 18 ± 2 N·m

- (6) Connect the integrated caliper motor wire harness connector plug.
- (7) Install the rear left wheel.
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

BRAKE SYSTEM

25.1	HYDRAULIC BRAKE	940
1	Warning and Precaution	940
1.1	Precaution	940
2	System Overview	940
2.1	System Components Diagram	940
2.2	System Schematic Diagram	942
2.3	Components Operation Description	942
3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	943
3.1	Tools	943
3.2	Brake Bleeding	943
3.3	Replacement of Brake Fluid	944
3.4	Replace Vacuum Booster with Brake Master Cylinder Assembly	944
3.5	Replace Brake Pedal Assembly	948
3.6	Replace Front Brake Hose Assembly	951
3.7	Replace Rear Brake Hose Assembly	952
3.8	Replace Vacuum Pump Assembly	954
3.9	Replace Vacuum Brake Hose Assembly	955
3.10	Replace Front Left Pipe Assembly	956
3.11	Replace Front Right Pipe Assembly	958
3.12	Replace Pump Front Pipe II Assembly	959
3.13	Replace Pump Front Pipe I Assembly	960
3.14	Replace Rear Left Pipe I Assembly	961
3.15	Replace Rear Right Pipe I Assembly	962
3.16	Replace Rear Left Pipe II Assembly	964
3.17	Replace Rear Right Pipe II Assembly	965

25.1 HYDRAULIC BRAKE

1 Warning and Precaution

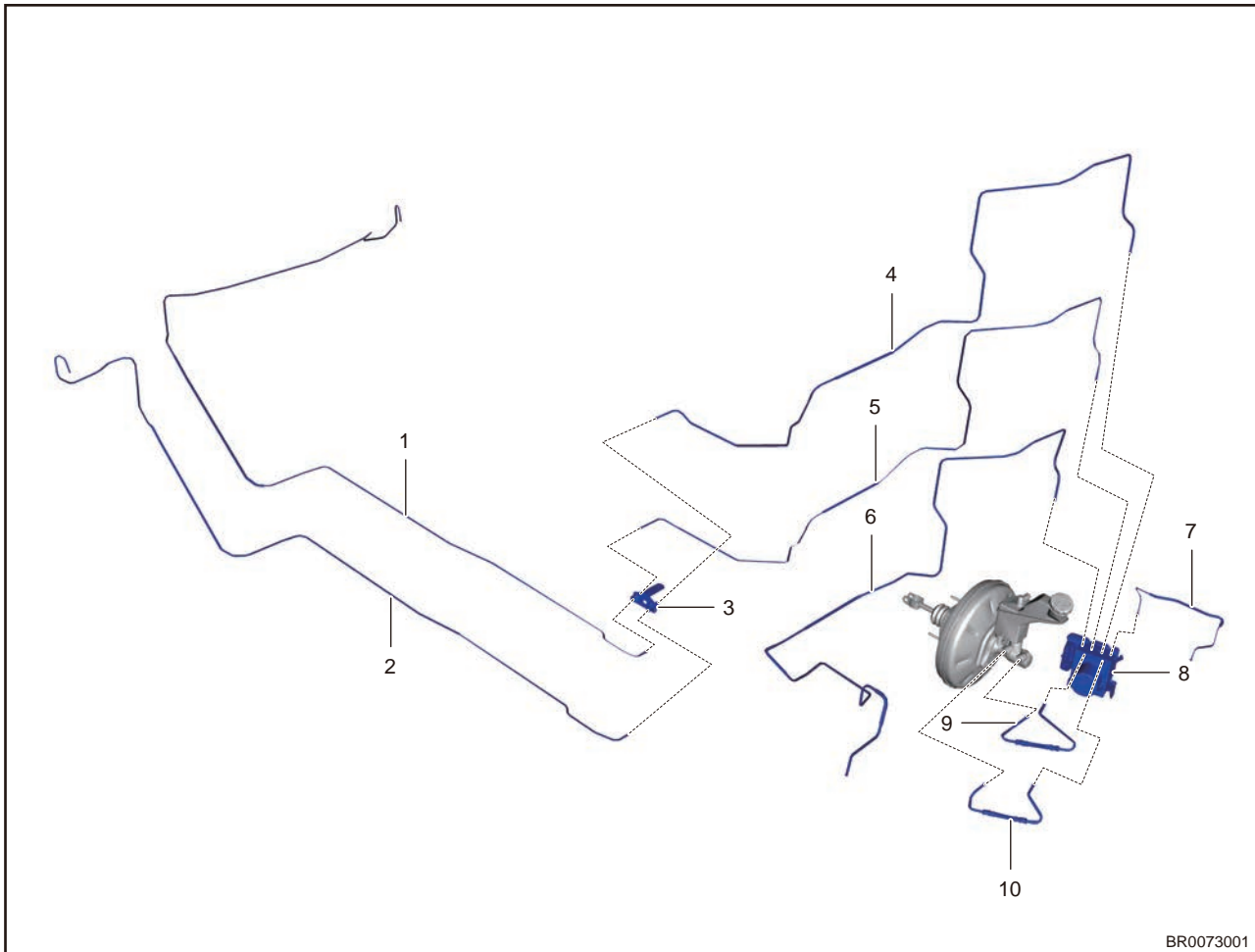
1.1 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair:

- (1) After removing brake line, perform sealing treatment to prevent foreign matter from entering.
- (2) DO NOT allow any foreign matter such as dirt and dust to enter brake line from joint parts.
- (3) DO NOT allow brake fluid to be sprayed on your clothes or skin when removing brake hose assembly, as brake fluid is corrosive.
- (4) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Components Diagram



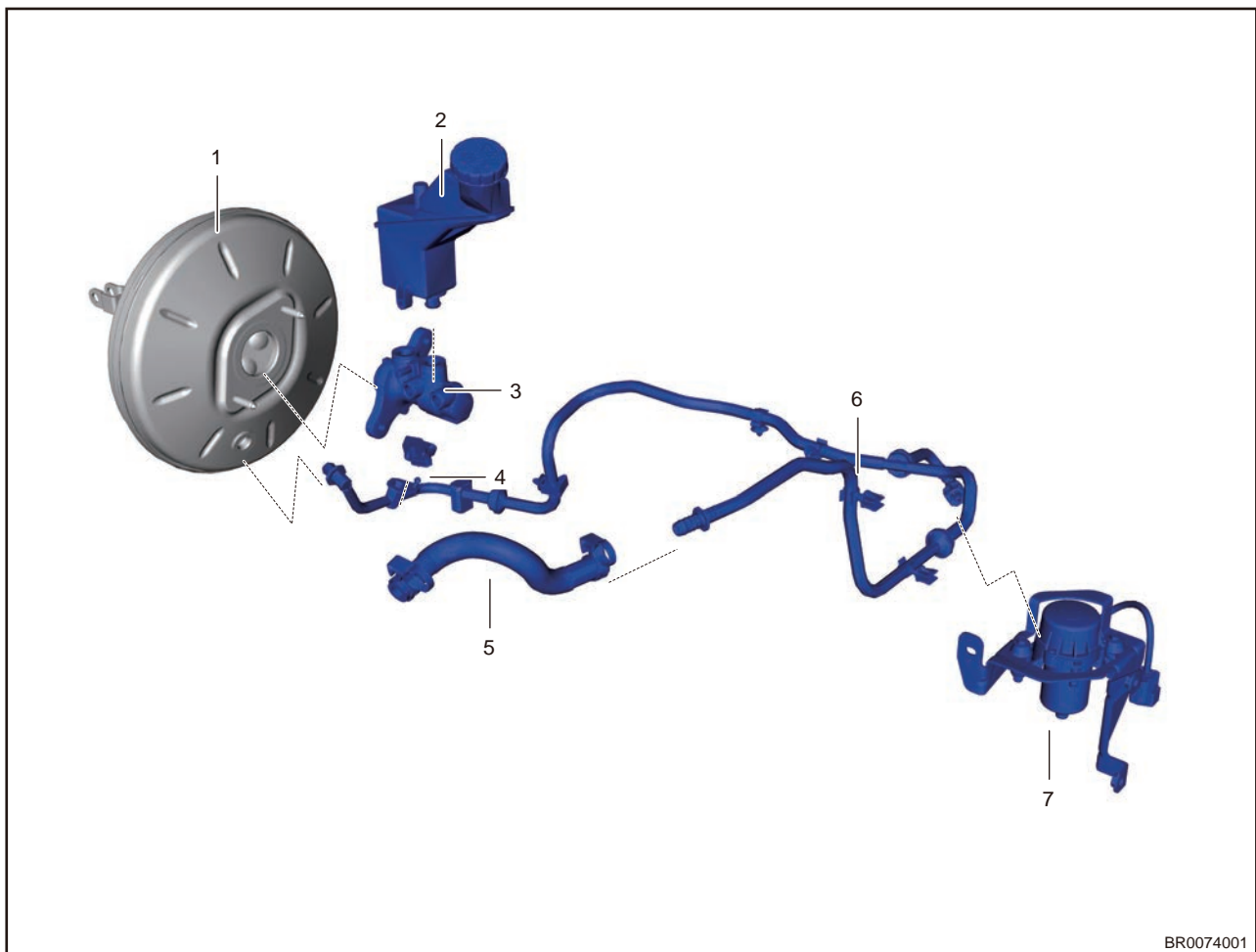
1	Rear Left Pipe II Assembly	6	Front Right Pipe Assembly
2	Rear Right Pipe II Assembly	7	Front Left Pipe II Assembly
3	Pipeline Connector	8	ESP (iEPB) Controller with Bracket Assembly

4	Rear Right Pipe I Assembly	9	Pump Front Pipe I Assembly
5	Rear Left Pipe I Assembly	10	Pump Front Pipe II Assembly

Brake system adopts hydraulic transmission device, mainly consists of ESP controller assembly, vacuum booster with master cylinder assembly, brake master cylinder assembly, brake reservoir assembly, hydraulic line (brake hose, brake pipe), brake caliper assembly, vacuum pump assembly, etc.

When brake pedal assembly is depressed, brake master cylinder assembly piston is pushed forward, and brake fluid pressure in brake master cylinder assembly is increased. Brake fluid enters brake caliper assembly of each wheel through hydraulic line, and brake caliper assembly piston is pushed outward to allow the force of depressing brake pedal to be transmitted to wheel brake caliper assembly, and push wheel brake caliper assembly to brake.

When brake pedal assembly is released, brake master cylinder assembly piston will return under the action of oil pressure and return spring, brake caliper assembly piston and wheel brake caliper assembly will return to release the brake on wheel.



BR0074001

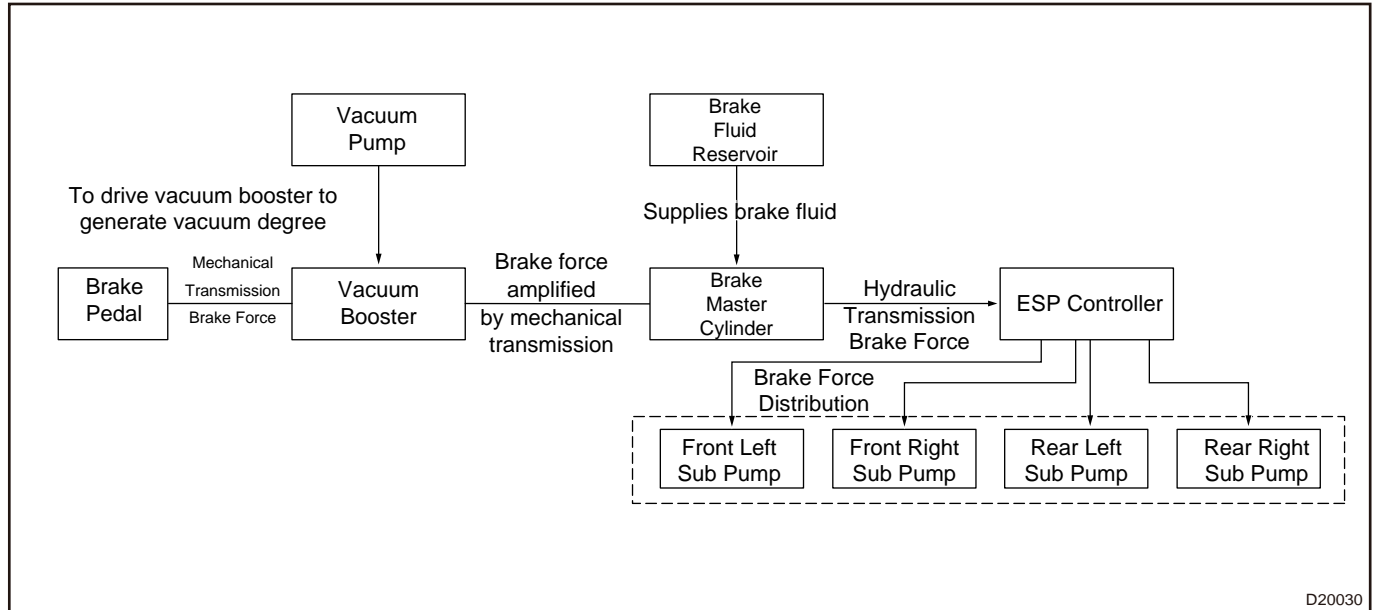
1	Vacuum Booster	5	Vacuum Pipe
2	Brake Reservoir Assembly	6	Vacuum Brake Hose Assembly
3	Brake Master Cylinder Assembly	7	Electronic Vacuum Pump with Bracket Assembly
4	Vacuum Pipeline Pressure Sensor Assembly	8	

Vacuum booster system is mainly composed of vacuum booster assembly, brake master cylinder assembly, brake reservoir assembly, vacuum pump assembly, atmospheric pressure sensor, etc.

Vacuum booster is a component that uses vacuum (negative pressure) to increase force applied by driver to brake pedal assembly.

Vacuum booster is generally located between brake pedal assembly and brake master cylinder assembly. For easy installation, it is usually combined with master cylinder as a set, and part of master cylinder is penetrated into vacuum booster housing.

2.2 System Schematic Diagram



When vacuum booster can not obtain vacuum or obtained vacuum is insufficient (at high altitude, low temperature, etc.), it will lead to poor assistance of brake system. Vacuum booster system monitors vacuum changes in vacuum booster through atmospheric pressure sensor, judges operating time of vacuum pump through logic and provides appropriate auxiliary power for brake system. Thereby ensuring that it can provide driver with sufficient braking assistance effect under various working conditions.

2.3 Components Operation Description

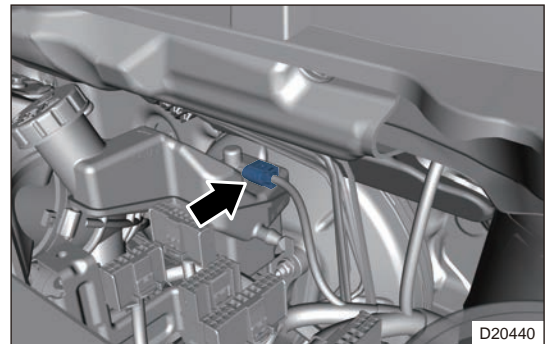
■ Brake Fluid Level Sensor

The float in brake reservoir rises/falls according to brake fluid level.

When brake fluid level is on "MAX (maximum)" mark on brake reservoir, the float in brake reservoir rises.

When brake fluid level is on "MIN (minimum)" mark on brake reservoir, the float in brake reservoir falls.

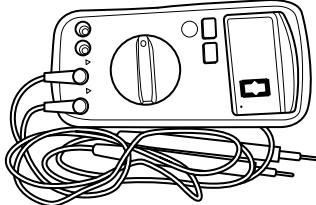
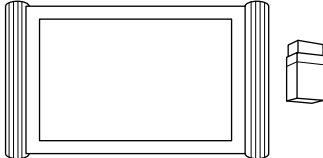
When brake fluid level is below "MIN (minimum)" mark on brake reservoir, brake system malfunction indicator on instrument cluster will come on.



3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

3.1 Tools

■ General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

3.2 Brake Bleeding

Hint:

- Be sure to perform brake bleeding after replacing hydraulic parts related to brake.
- An assistant will be required to assist when bleeding brake system.
- There are 2 methods for brake bleeding, and specific operation procedures are as follows:

■ Manual Bleeding

Caution

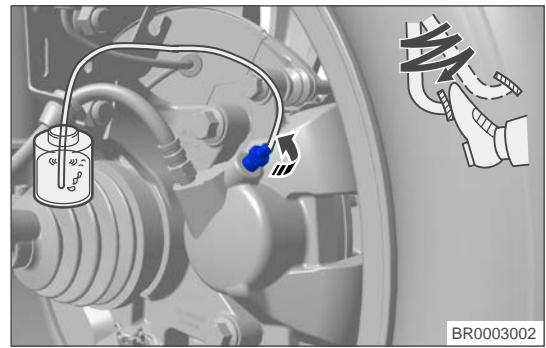
- **When performing bleeding procedures for brake system, wear safety glasses.**
- **Be careful when bleeding air, as brake fluid at high pressure may spray out from bleeder screw.**

Warning

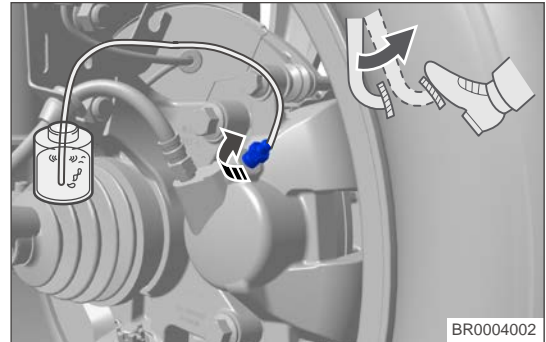
- **Before removing brake fluid reservoir, wipe off any dust and other foreign matters on brake fluid reservoir to prevent them from entering.**
- **Use fresh, clear and well-sealed brake fluid with specified type.**
- **DO NOT allow the brake fluid to adhere to any paint surface, such as vehicle body. If brake fluid leaks onto any paint surface, immediately wash it off.**
- **During bleeding, do not depress brake pedal repeatedly at any time with bleeder screw opened. Otherwise, air amount in the system will increase to make an extra bleeding.**
- **DO NOT drain the brake fluid in brake fluid reservoir while bleeding brake system.**

- (1) Fill brake fluid reservoir with brake fluid to a proper level.
- (2) Loosen bleeder screw cap and connect a clear plastic hose to bleeder screw. Submerge the end of hose into container.

- (3) Have an assistant depress brake pedal 3 to 4 times repeatedly; and depress and hold it at a lower position, then loosen the bleeder screw.



- (4) Tighten bleeder screw every time brake pedal goes down quickly, then release the brake pedal.



- (5) Repeat above steps, and use the same procedures to bleed brake line of each wheel in order of rear left wheel, front left wheel, front right wheel and rear right wheel, until no air exists in brake system.
Empty sign: A stream of fresh brake fluid flows into clear container without bubbles.

Hint:

During bleeding of brake system, make sure brake fluid level in brake fluid reservoir is always near “MAX” mark. Check brake fluid level at all times during bleeding. Add brake fluid as necessary.

- (6) Check and adjust the brake fluid level to “MAX” mark.
- (7) Check the brake pedal braking effect. If braking effect is poor or pedal is spongy, air may still exist in system. Perform bleeding procedures for brake system again as necessary.
- (8) Test vehicle to confirm that brakes operate properly with good depressing feel.

3.3 Replacement of Brake Fluid

■ Operation Procedures

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.
 - 1) Start engine and keep it idling.
 - 2) Screw off filler cap of brake fluid reservoir assembly. Loosen bleeder screw cap and connect a clear plastic hose to bleeder screw. Submerge the end of hose into container.
 - 3) Loosen bleeder screw, and depress brake pedal continuously until no brake fluid comes out.
- (2) Add brake fluid.
 - 1) Tighten bleeder screw after confirming that brake fluid has been drained. Fill brake fluid reservoir with new brake fluid to a proper level.
- (3) Perform bleeding procedures.
 - 1) After replacing with new brake fluid, be sure to bleed the brake system for normal operation.

3.4 Replace Vacuum Booster with Brake Master Cylinder Assembly

■ On-vehicle Inspection

- (1) Air tightness inspection.
 - 1) Start engine and stop it after 1 or 2 minutes, then disconnect negative battery cable. Slowly depress the brake pedal several times.
 - 2) Make sure that booster is airtight. Check that every pedal depression amount becomes less than the previous one.

- 3) Start the engine. Depress and hold pedal, and then stop engine.
 - 4) Make sure that booster is airtight. Depress and hold pedal for 30 seconds, and check that pedal reserve distance does not change.
- (2) Operation inspection.
- 1) Stop engine and disconnect negative battery cable.
 - 2) Depress the pedal several times and check that pedal reserve distance does not change.
 - 3) Depress and hold the pedal, and then start engine. Check that the pedal can only be depressed slightly.

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

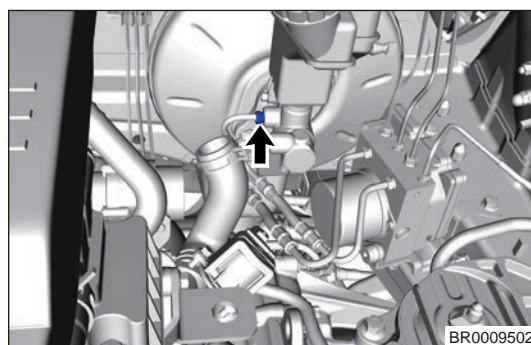
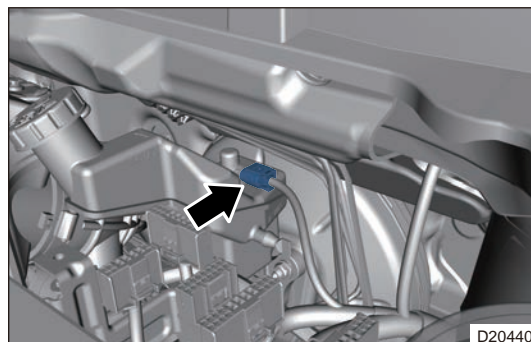
Hint:

- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

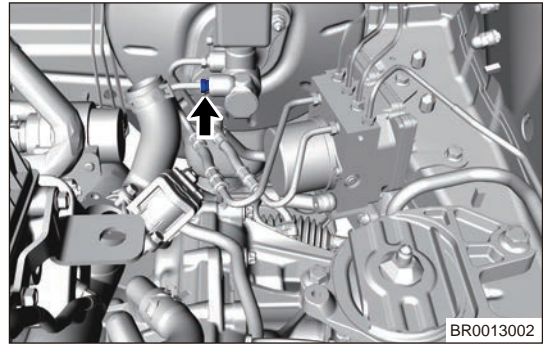
⚠ Caution

- Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.

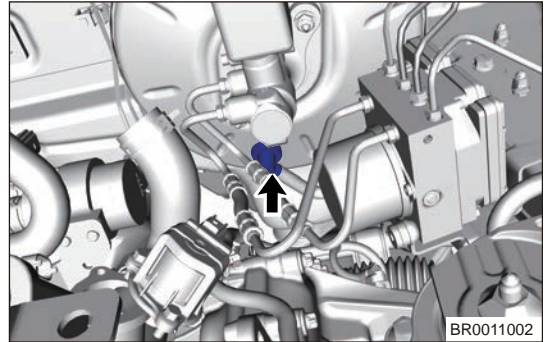
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 - (3) Remove the battery.
 - (4) Remove the battery tray.
 - (5) Remove the ESP control module.
 - (6) Remove the left lower muffler plate assembly.
 - (7) Disconnect the brake fluid level sensor connector (arrow).
-
- (8) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between pump front pipe II assembly and brake cylinder, and disconnect pump front pipe II assembly.



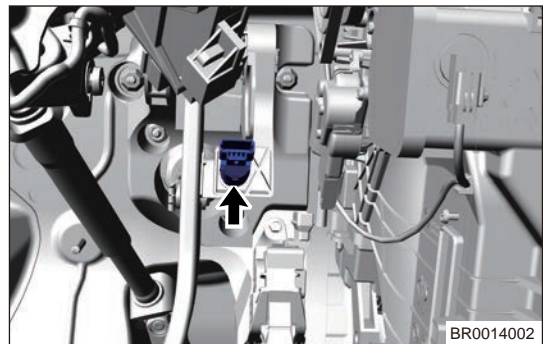
- (9) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between pump front pipe I assembly and brake cylinder, and disconnect pump front pipe I assembly.



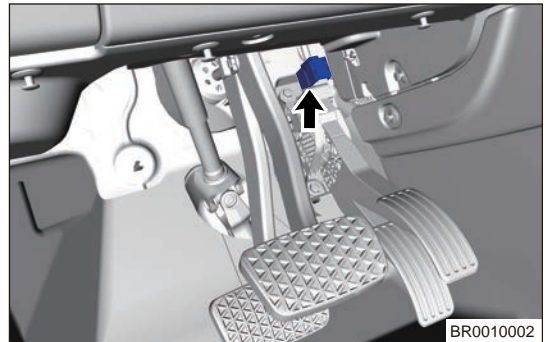
- (10) Disconnect connection (arrow) between vacuum pipe and vacuum booster.



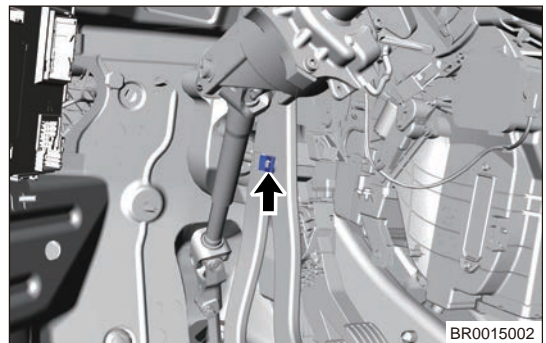
- (11) Remove the brake switch (arrow).



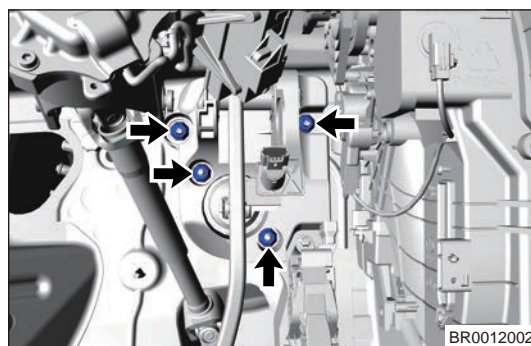
- (12) Disconnect the accelerator pedal connector (arrow).



- (13) Remove lock pin (arrow) between vacuum booster assembly and brake pedal, and remove lock shaft.



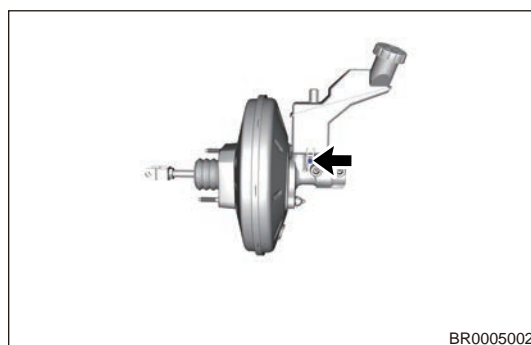
- (14) Remove 4 fixing nuts (arrow) from accelerator brake pedal assembly.



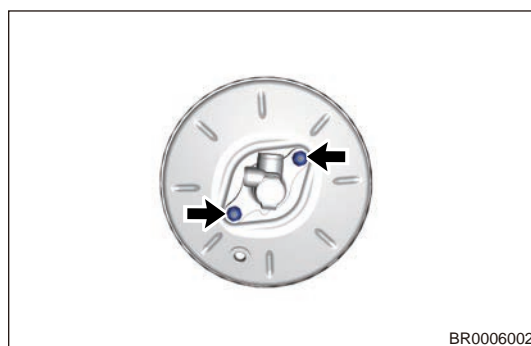
- (15) Remove the accelerator brake pedal assembly.
 (16) Remove the vacuum booster with brake master cylinder assembly.

■ Disassembly

- (1) Remove fixing pin (arrow) between brake fluid reservoir and brake master cylinder.



- (2) Remove the brake fluid reservoir.
 (3) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) between brake master cylinder and vacuum booster.



- (4) Remove the brake master cylinder assembly.

■ Assembly

- (1) Install the brake master cylinder assembly to a proper position.
 (2) Install 2 fixing bolts between brake master cylinder and vacuum booster.

Torque: 25 ± 4 N·m

- (3) Install the brake fluid reservoir assembly to a proper position.
 (4) Install fixing pin between brake fluid reservoir and brake master cylinder.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Check that brake light operates normally after installation.**
- **Check if brake pedal free travel is within normal range after installing brake pedal.**
Normal range: <25 mm

- (1) Install the vacuum booster with brake master cylinder assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Install the accelerator brake pedal assembly to a proper position.
- (3) Install 4 fixing nuts on the accelerator brake pedal assembly.

Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m

- (4) Install the lock pin between vacuum booster assembly and brake pedal.
- (5) Connect accelerator pedal connector.
- (6) Install the brake switch.

⚠ Caution

- **Align clamping port of mounting bracket, do not depress the brake pedal before rotating and fixing to ensure that the brake pedal is in its natural state.**
- **Under the natural state of the brake pedal, check if "housing" and "movable bushing" of brake switch are flush. If flush, it indicates that the state is normal. Otherwise, perform operation according to procedures again and check.**

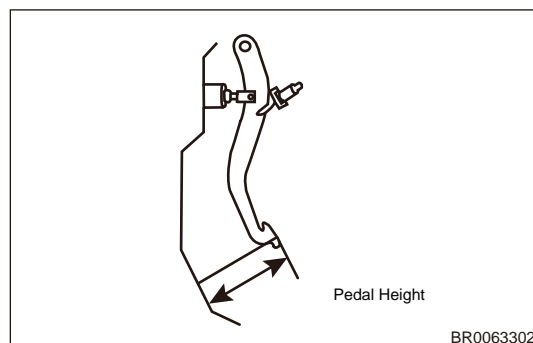
- (7) Connect vacuum pipe and vacuum booster.
- (8) Connect pump front pipe I assembly and install the fixing nut between pump front pipe I assembly and brake cylinder.
- (9) Connect pump front pipe II assembly and install the fixing nut between pump front pipe II assembly and brake cylinder.
- (10) Connect the brake fluid level sensor connector.
- (11) Left lower muffler plate assembly.
- (12) Install the ESP control module.
- (13) Install the battery tray.
- (14) Install the battery.
- (15) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.5 Replace Brake Pedal Assembly

■ On-vehicle Inspection

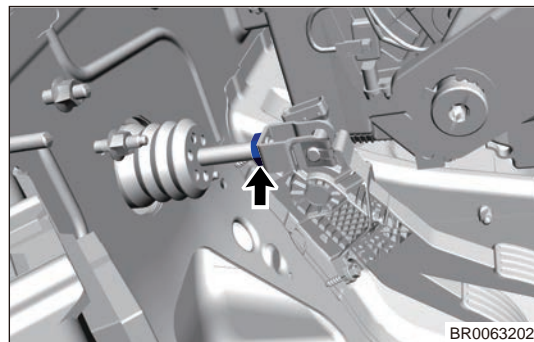
- (1) Check the brake pedal free travel.
 - 1) Stop engine. Depress brake pedal several times until there is no vacuum in the vacuum booster, and then release the brake pedal.
 - 2) Depress the brake pedal until the resistance is felt.
- (2) Check the brake pedal height.

- 1) As shown in illustration, remove carpet and measure brake pedal height between center of brake pedal and front cowl.



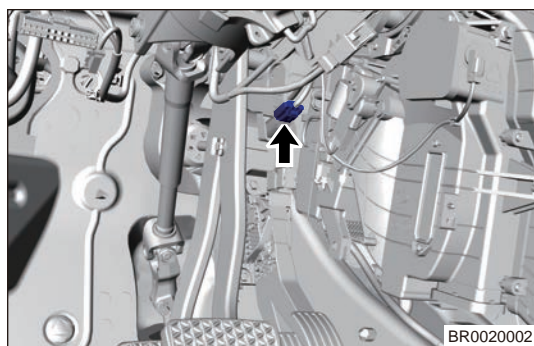
- (3) Adjust the brake pedal height.

- 1) As shown in illustration, loosen lock nut (arrow) from vacuum booster push rod, and then turn vacuum booster push rod counterclockwise or clockwise to adjust brake pedal height until its height meets standard value. Brake pedal free travel reasonable range: < 25 mm.

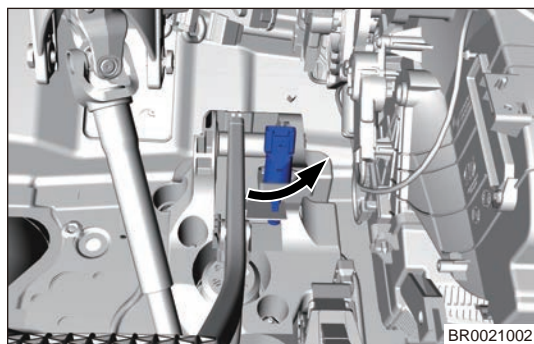


■ Removal

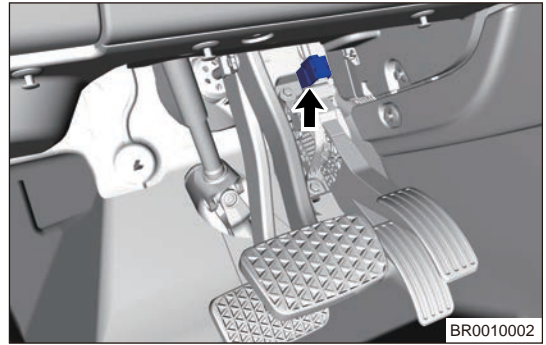
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left lower muffler plate assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the brake switch assembly wire harness connector (arrow).



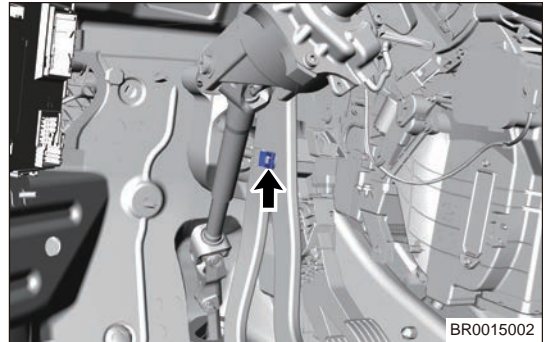
- (5) Press switch with hand and turn it by 90° counterclockwise to remove brake switch assembly.



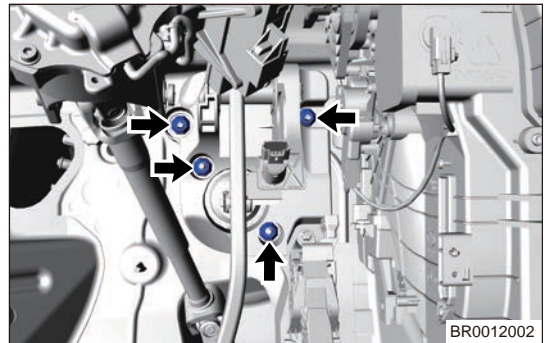
- (6) Disconnect the accelerator pedal connector (arrow).



- (7) Remove lock pin (arrow) between vacuum booster assembly and brake pedal, and remove lock shaft.



- (8) Remove 4 fixing nuts (arrow) from accelerator brake pedal assembly.



- (9) Remove the accelerator brake pedal assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Check that brake light operates normally after installation.**
- **Check if brake pedal free travel is within normal range after installing brake pedal.**
Normal range: <25 mm

- (1) Install the accelerator brake pedal assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Install 4 fixing nuts on the accelerator brake pedal assembly.

Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m

- (3) Install the lock pin between vacuum booster assembly and brake pedal.
- (4) Connect accelerator pedal connector.

- (5) Install the brake switch.

⚠ Caution

- **Align clamping port of mounting bracket, do not depress the brake pedal before rotating and fixing to ensure that the brake pedal is in its natural state.**
- **Under the natural state of the brake pedal, check if "housing" and "movable bushing" of brake switch are flush. If flush, it indicates that the state is normal. Otherwise, perform operation according to procedures again and check.**

- (6) Connect the brake switch assembly wire harness connector.
 (7) Install left lower muffler plate assembly.
 (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.6 Replace Front Brake Hose Assembly

■ Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched during removal and installation.**

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

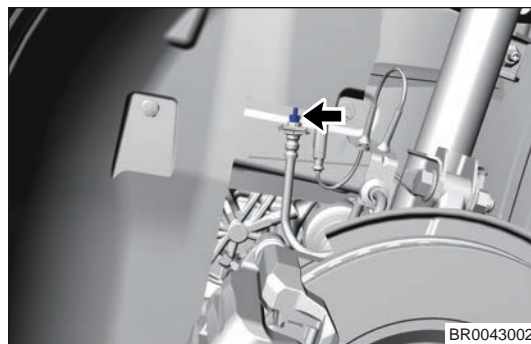
Hint:

- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Caution

- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

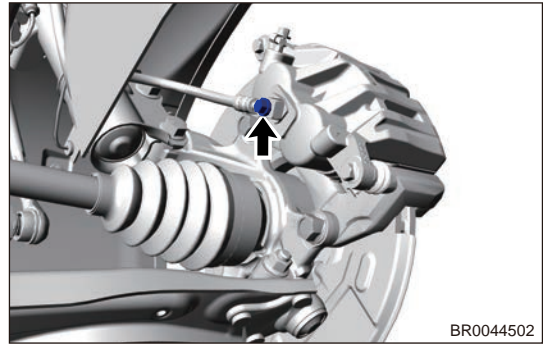
- (2) Remove the front left wheel.
 (3) Loosen coupling nut (arrow) between front left brake hose assembly and front left brake pipe.



⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT allow any foreign matter such as dirt and dust to enter brake pipe from joint parts.**
- **After removing brake line, perform sealing treatment to prevent foreign matter from entering.**

- (4) Remove coupling plug (arrow) between front left brake caliper assembly and front left brake hose assembly.



⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT allow brake fluid to be sprayed on your clothes or skin when removing brake hose, as brake fluid is corrosive.**

- (5) Remove the front left brake hose assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the front left brake hose to a proper position.
- (2) Install coupling plug between front left brake caliper assembly and front left brake hose assembly.
- (3) Install the coupling nut between front left brake hose assembly and front left brake pipe.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (4) Install the front left wheel.

3.7 Replace Rear Brake Hose Assembly

■ Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched during removal and installation.**

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

Hint:

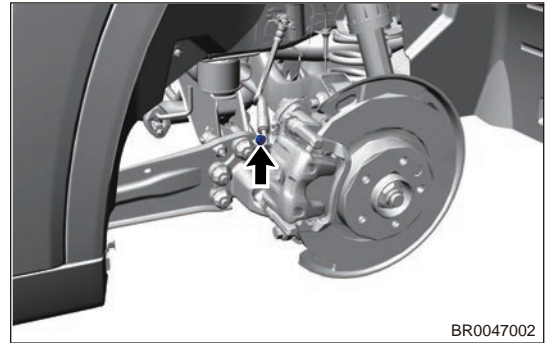
- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Caution

- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the rear left wheel.

- (3) Remove coupling nut (arrow) between rear left brake caliper assembly and rear left brake hose assembly.

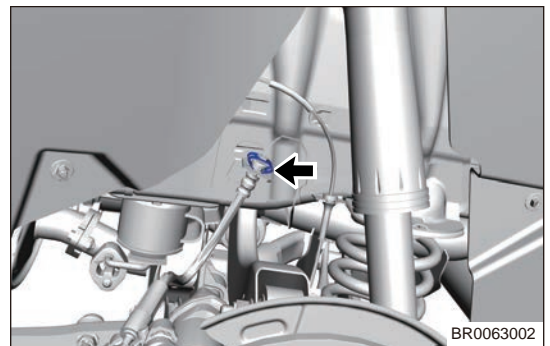


BR0047002

⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT allow brake fluid to be sprayed on your clothes or skin when removing brake hose, as brake fluid is corrosive.**

- (4) Remove holding reed (arrow), and then loosen coupling plug between rear left brake hose assembly and rear brake pipe.



BR0063002

⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT allow any foreign matter such as dirt and dust to enter brake pipe from joint parts.**
- **After removing brake line, perform sealing treatment to prevent foreign matter from entering.**

- (5) Remove the rear left brake hose assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the rear left brake hose to a proper position.
- (2) Install the holding reed, and then tighten coupling plug between rear left brake hose assembly and rear brake pipe.
- (3) Install the coupling nut between rear left brake caliper assembly and rear left brake hose assembly.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (4) Install the rear left wheel.

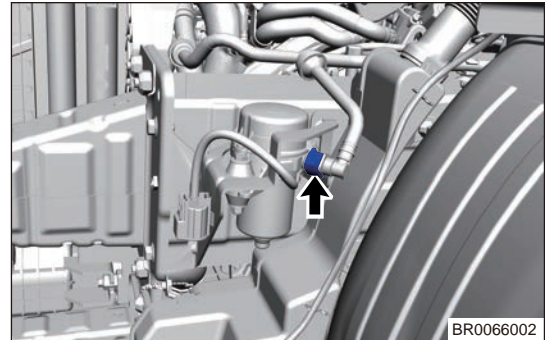
3.8 Replace Vacuum Pump Assembly

■ Removal

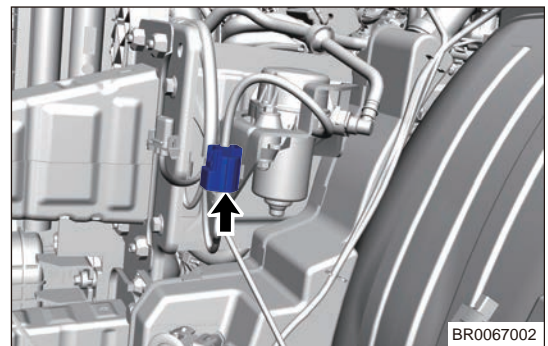
⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched during removal and installation.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Disconnect connection (arrow) between vacuum pump and vacuum pipe.



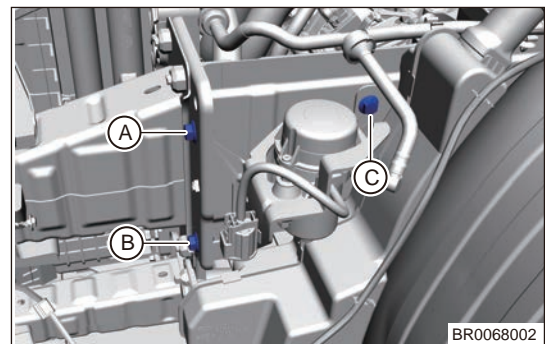
- (5) Disconnect the vacuum pump connector (arrow).



- (6) Remove 3 fixing bolts (A-B-C) from vacuum pump assembly.

⚠ Caution

- When installing, install and tighten in order of A-B-C.



- (7) Remove the vacuum pump assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.
- Be sure to check if vacuum pipe is clamped in place after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.

- (1) Install the vacuum pump assembly to a proper position.

- (2) Install 3 fixing bolts to vacuum pump assembly.

Torque: $19 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Connect the vacuum pump connector.
- (4) Connect vacuum pump and vacuum pipe.
- (5) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

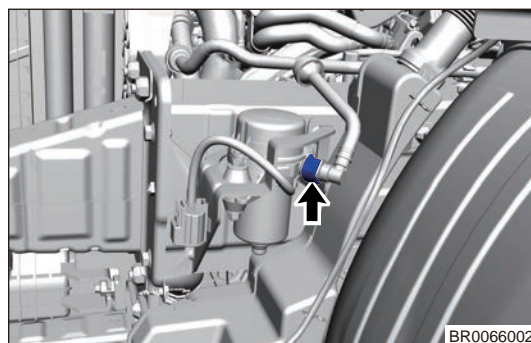
3.9 Replace Vacuum Brake Hose Assembly

■ Removal

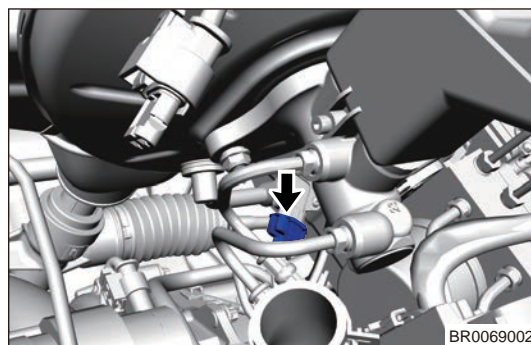
Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents when repairing.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched during removal and installation.**

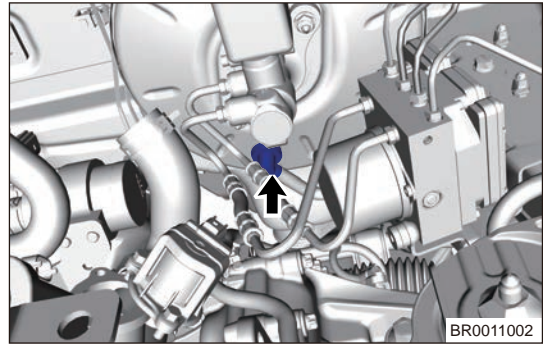
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (4) Remove the battery.
- (5) Remove the battery tray.
- (6) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (7) Disconnect connection (arrow) between vacuum pump and vacuum pipe.



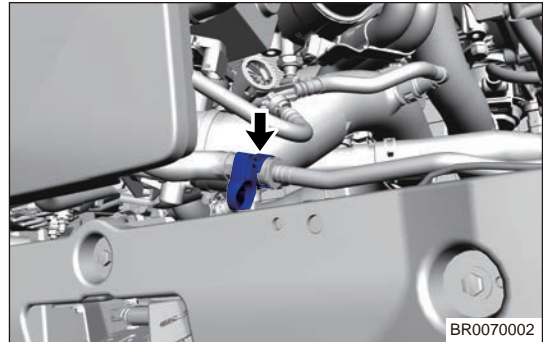
- (8) Disconnect vacuum pipe pressure sensor connector (arrow).



- (9) Disconnect connection (arrow) between vacuum pipe and vacuum booster.



- (10) Disconnect connector (arrow) between brake hose assembly and vacuum pipe.



- (11) Remove the vacuum brake hose assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to check if vacuum pipe is clamped in place after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**

- (1) Install the vacuum brake hose assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Connect brake hose assembly and vacuum pipe.
- (3) Connect vacuum pipe and vacuum booster.
- (4) Connect vacuum pipe pressure sensor connector.
- (5) Connect vacuum pump and vacuum pipe.
- (6) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (7) Install the battery tray.
- (8) Install the battery.
- (9) Install the air filter assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.10 Replace Front Left Pipe Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

Hint:

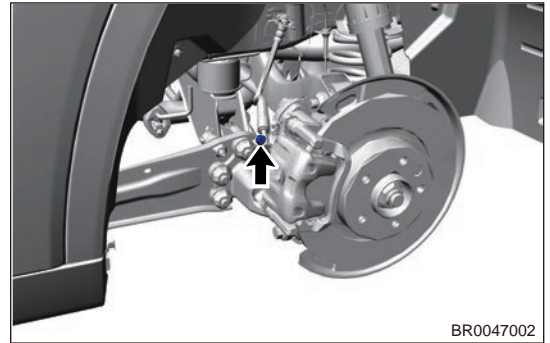
- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Caution

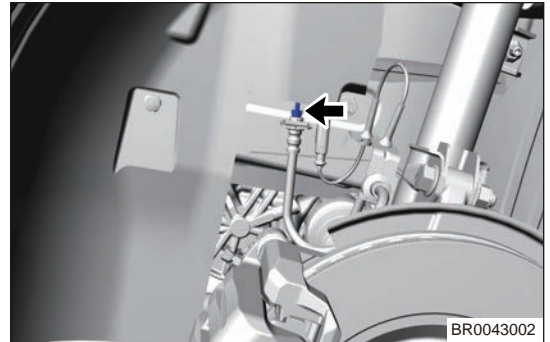
- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (3) Remove the battery.
- (4) Remove the battery tray.

- (5) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between front left pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port, and disconnect connection between front left pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port.



- (6) Loosen coupling nut (arrow) between front left brake hose assembly and front left brake pipe.



⚠ Caution

- **When installing and tightening, hold pipeline by hand to prevent it from rotating. Visually check to make sure the second straight segment when connect ESP (iEPB) keeps at an angle of about 5 degrees.**
- **After removing brake line, perform sealing treatment to prevent foreign matter from entering.**

- (7) Remove the front left pipe assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the front left pipe assembly to a proper position.
 (2) Install the coupling nut between front left brake hose assembly and front left brake pipe.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (3) Connect front left pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port, and tighten fixing nut between front left pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (4) Install the battery tray.
 (5) Install the battery.
 (6) Install the air filter assembly.

3.11 Replace Front Right Pipe Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

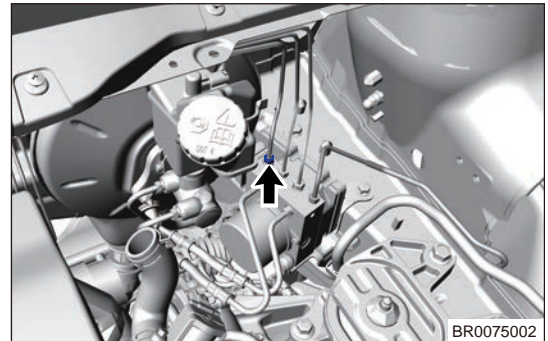
Hint:

- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Caution

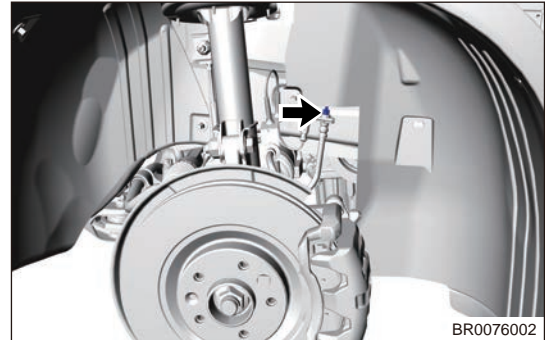
- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (3) Remove the battery.
- (4) Remove the battery tray.
- (5) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between front right pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port, and disconnect connection between front right pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port.



BR0075002

- (6) Loosen coupling nut (arrow) between front right brake hose assembly and front right brake pipe.



BR0076002

⚠ Caution

- **DO NOT allow any foreign matter such as dirt and dust to enter brake pipe from joint parts.**
- **After removing brake line, perform sealing treatment to prevent foreign matter from entering.**

- (7) Remove the front right pipe assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the front right pipe assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Install the coupling nut between front right brake hose assembly and front right brake pipe.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (3) Connect front right pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port, and tighten fixing nut between front right pipe assembly and ESP (iEPB) control module inlet port.

Torque: $17 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (4) Install the battery tray.
- (5) Install the battery.
- (6) Install the air filter assembly.

3.12 Replace Pump Front Pipe II Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

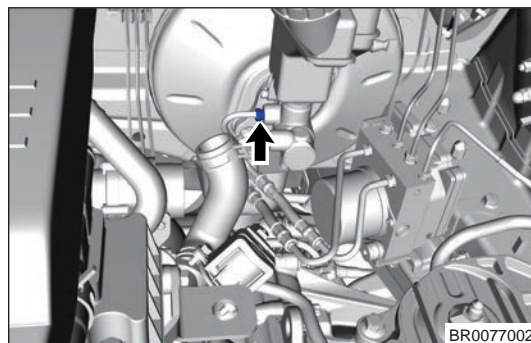
Hint:

- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

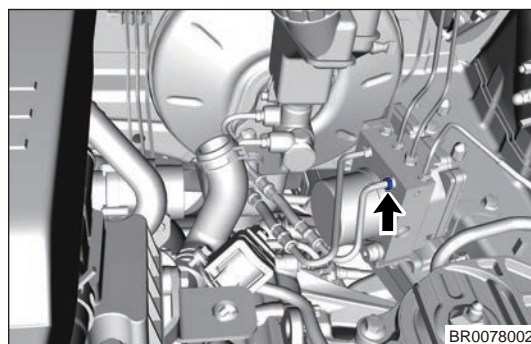
⚠ Caution

- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (3) Remove the battery.
- (4) Remove the battery tray.
- (5) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between pump front pipe II assembly and brake cylinder, and disconnect pump front pipe II assembly.



- (6) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between pump front pipe II assembly and ESP (iEPB) inlet port.



⚠ Caution

- **When installing and tightening, hold pipeline by hand to prevent it from rotating. Visually check to make sure the second straight segment when connect ESP (iEPB) keeps at an angle of about 5 degrees.**

- (7) Remove the pump front pipe II assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.
- Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.
- Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.
- Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.

(1) Install the pump front pipe II assembly to a proper position.

(2) Remove fixing nut between pump front pipe II assembly and ESP (iEPB) inlet port.

Torque: $17 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(3) Connect pump front pipe II assembly and tighten the fixing nut between pump front pipe I assembly and brake cylinder.

Torque: $17 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(4) Install the battery tray.

(5) Install the battery.

(6) Install the air filter assembly.

3.13 Replace Pump Front Pipe I Assembly

■ Removal

(1) Drain the brake fluid.

Hint:

- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Caution

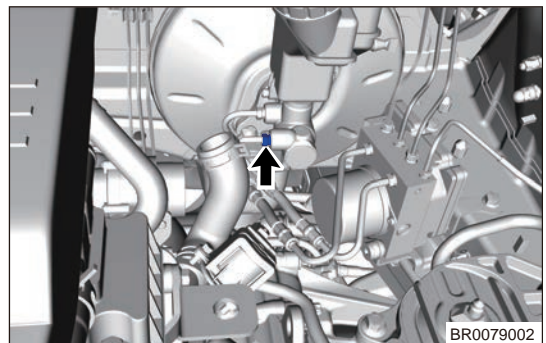
- Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.

(2) Remove the air filter assembly.

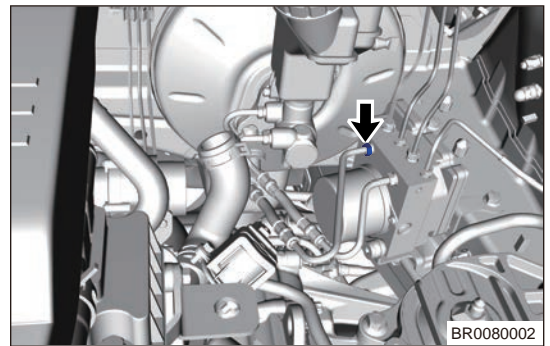
(3) Remove the battery.

(4) Remove the battery tray.

(5) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between pump front pipe I assembly and brake cylinder, and disconnect pump front pipe II assembly.



- (6) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between pump front pipe I assembly and ESP (iEPB) inlet port.



⚠ Caution

- **When installing and tightening, hold pipeline by hand to prevent it from rotating. Visually check to make sure the second straight segment when connect ESP (iEPB) is level.**

- (7) Remove the pump front pipe I assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the pump front pipe I assembly to a proper position.
 (2) Install fixing nut between pump front pipe I assembly and ESP (iEPB) inlet port.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (3) Connect pump front pipe I assembly and tighten the fixing nut between pump front pipe I assembly and brake cylinder.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (4) Install the battery tray.
 (5) Install the battery.
 (6) Install the air filter assembly.

3.14 Replace Rear Left Pipe I Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

Hint:

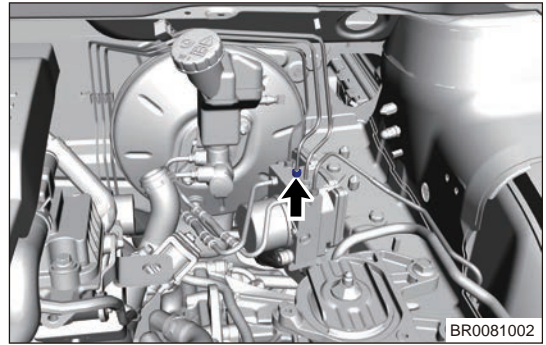
- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Caution

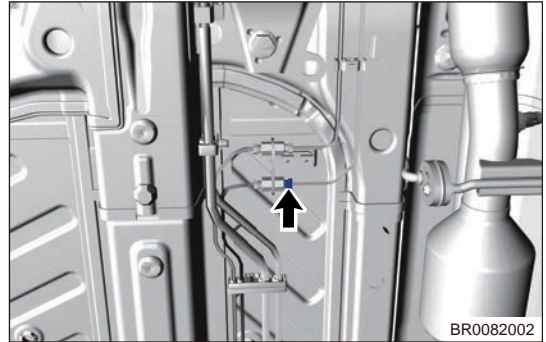
- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the air filter assembly.
 (3) Remove the battery.
 (4) Remove the battery tray.

- (5) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between rear left pipe I assembly and ESP (iEPB) controller, and disconnect connection between rear left pipe I assembly and ESP (iEPB).



- (6) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between rear left pipe I and pipeline connector.



- (7) Remove the rear left pipe I assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the rear left pipe I assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Install the fixing bolt between rear left pipe I assembly and pipeline connector.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (3) Connect rear left pipe I assembly and tighten the fixing nut between rear left pipe I assembly and ESP (-iEPB) controller.

Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (4) Install the battery tray.
- (5) Install the battery.
- (6) Install the air filter assembly.

3.15 Replace Rear Right Pipe I Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

Hint:

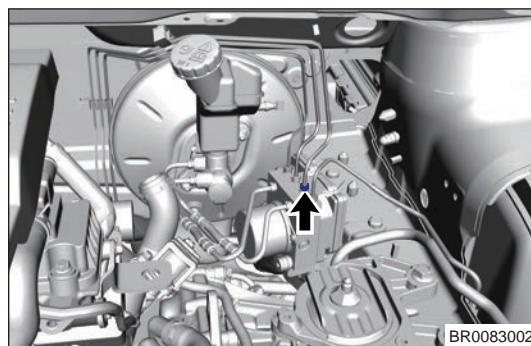
- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Caution

- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the air filter assembly.

- (3) Remove the battery.
- (4) Remove the battery tray.
- (5) Remove fixing nut (arrow) between rear right pipe I assembly and ESP (iEPB) controller, and disconnect connection between rear right pipe I assembly and ESP (iEPB).



- (6) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between rear right pipe I and pipeline connector.



- (7) Remove the rear right pipe I assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the rear right pipe I assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Install the fixing bolt between rear right pipe I assembly and pipeline connector.
Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m
- (3) Connect rear right pipe I assembly and tighten the fixing nut between rear right pipe I assembly and ESP (iEPB) controller.
Torque: 17 ± 3 N·m
- (4) Install the battery tray.
- (5) Install the battery.
- (6) Install the air filter assembly.

3.16 Replace Rear Left Pipe II Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

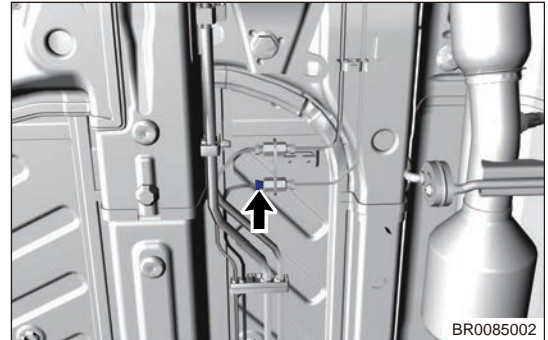
Hint:

- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

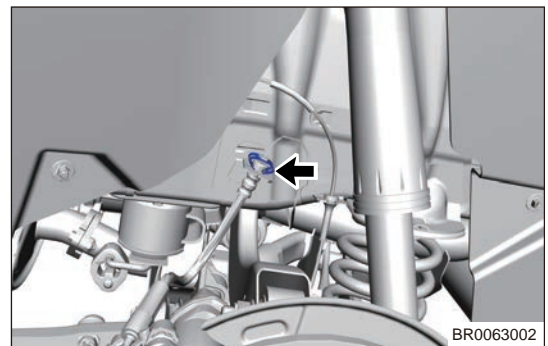
⚠ Caution

- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the rear sub frame assembly.
- (3) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between rear left pipe II and pipeline connector.



- (4) Remove holding reed (arrow), and then loosen coupling plug between rear left brake hose assembly and rear brake pipe.



- (5) Remove the rear left pipe II assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the rear left pipe II assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Install the holding reed, and then tighten coupling plug between rear left brake hose assembly and rear brake pipe.
- (3) Install the fixing bolt between rear left pipe II and pipeline connector.
- (4) Install the rear sub frame assembly.

3.17 Replace Rear Right Pipe II Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Drain the brake fluid.

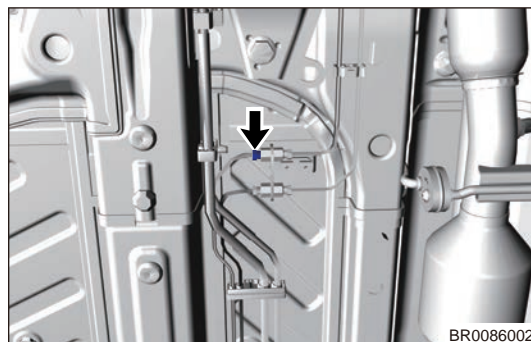
Hint:

- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

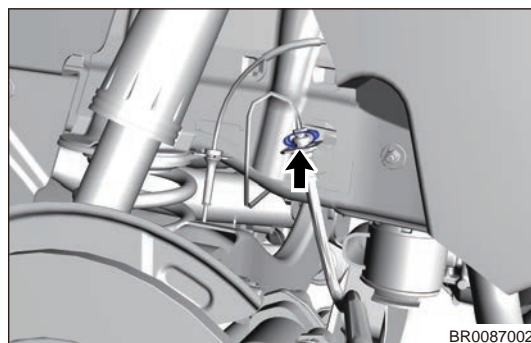
⚠ Caution

- **Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.**

- (2) Remove the rear sub frame assembly.
- (3) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between rear right pipe II and pipeline connector.



- (4) Remove holding reed (arrow), and then loosen coupling plug between rear right brake hose assembly and rear brake pipe.



- (5) Remove the rear right pipe II assembly.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing plug and nut to specified torque during installation.**
- **Be sure to check brake system for leakage after installation. Repair or replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.**
- **Be sure to perform bleeding procedures for brake system after installation.**
- **Be sure to add brake fluid to a proper level after installation.**

- (1) Install the rear right pipe II assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Install the holding reed, and then tighten coupling plug between rear right brake hose assembly and rear brake pipe.
- (3) Install the fixing bolt between rear right pipe II assembly and pipeline connector.
- (4) Install the rear sub frame assembly.

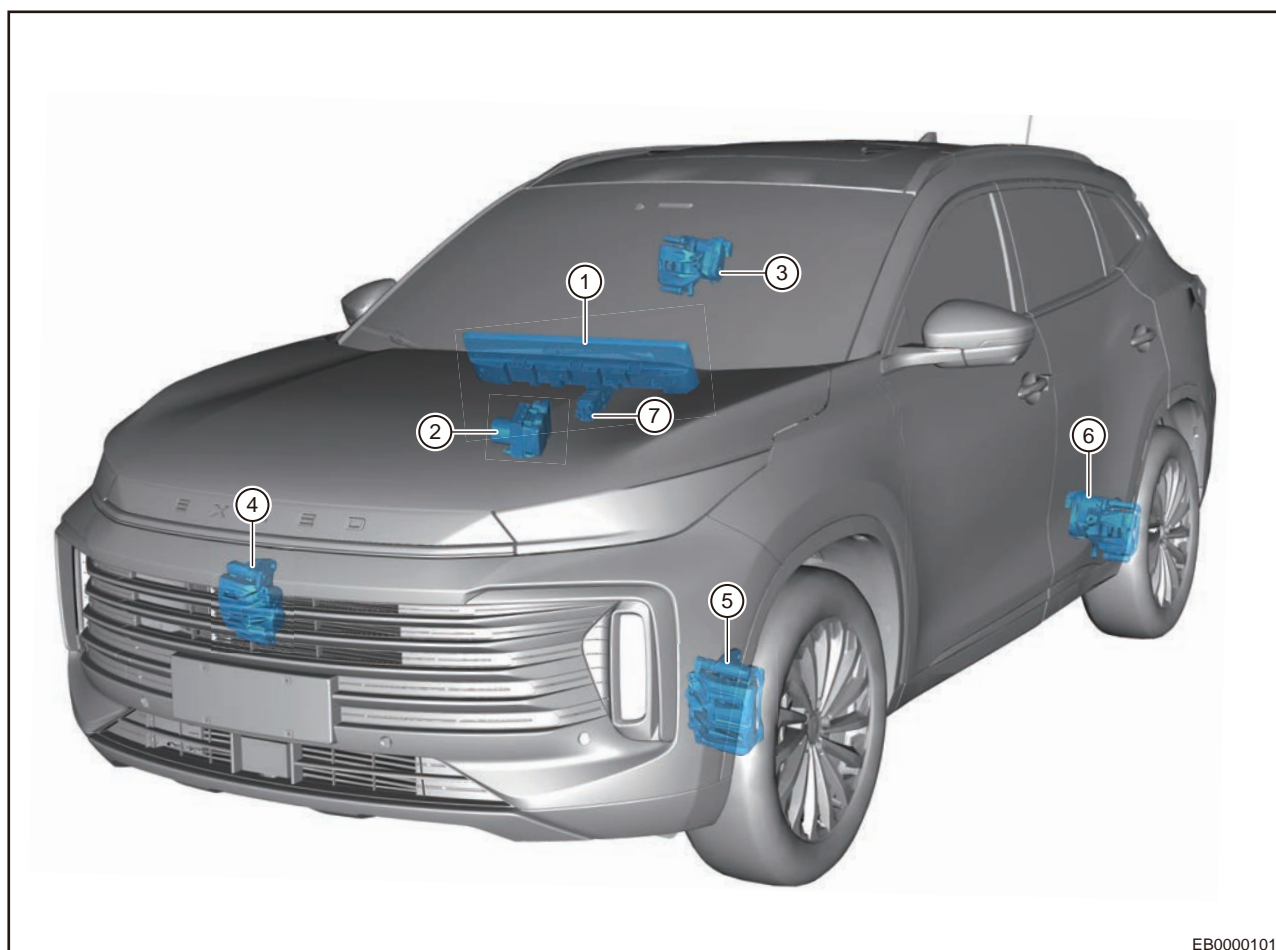
BRAKE

26.1	ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE SYSTEM	967
1	GENERAL INFORMATION	967
1.1	Description.....	967
2	FUNCTION PRINCIPLE	967
2.1	System Function Introduction	967
3	SPECIFICATIONS	968
3.1	Torque Specifications	968
4	System Circuit Diagram	969
4.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	969
4.2	Circuit Diagram	970
5	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	971
5.1	Problem Symptoms Table	971
5.2	Diagnostic Help.....	972
5.3	Intermittent Troubleshooting.....	972
5.4	Ground Inspection	972
5.5	DTC Confirmation Procedure	972
5.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	973
6	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	994
6.1	Tools	994
6.2	EPB System	995
6.3	Integrated Caliper Motor.....	995
6.4	Rear Brake Lining.....	997
6.5	EPB Switch	1003

26.1 ELECTRONIC PARKING BRAKE SYSTEM

1 GENERAL INFORMATION

1.1 Description



EB0000101

1	Instrument Cluster	5	Front Left Brake Caliper Assembly
2	ESC Control Module EPB	6	Rear Left Integrated Caliper Assembly
3	Rear Right Integrated Caliper Assembly	7	Electrical Parking Brake Switch
4	Front Right Brake Caliper Assembly		

Electronic parking brake system consists of ESC control module, brake caliper, electronic parking controller and electronic parking switch, etc. Electronic parking brake system can apply parking brake and emergency brake by electronic control, and electronic parking brake button is a substitute of traditional parking brake operation.

2 FUNCTION PRINCIPLE

2.1 System Function Introduction

■ Basic Function

- (1) Manual releasing: Release EPB by detecting signals of EPB switch and accelerator/brake pedal.
- (2) Automatic releasing: Release EPB by detecting signals of accelerator pedal, engine speed, engine torque, gear position and gradient, etc.
- (3) Manual parking: EPB applies parking brake by detecting EPB switch signal.

- (4) Stall parking: With vehicle stationary, EPB applies parking brake automatically after ignition switch is turned off.
- (5) Auto Hold: EPB applies parking brake together with ESP by detecting information of brake pedal and deceleration process.
- (6) Reclamping at high temperature: Monitor the brake disc temperature, engine and vehicle status. Reclamp when temperature exceeds the limit to prevent vehicle from slipping downward.
- (7) Slipping downward reclamping: EPB reclamps with the maximum clamping force if slipping downward is determined by monitoring wheel speed signal after vehicle is parked.
- (8) Switch reclamping: If parking request from EPB switch exceeds 3 seconds after parking, EPB reclamps with the maximum clamping force.
- (9) ESP-linked: Detects the brake request of EPB switch, sends deceleration request to ESP via CAN, and apply brake by ESP.
- (10) RWU braking: When ESP fails, it controls EPB by the EPB switch operation during driving, to perform the rear wheel anti-lock brake.
- (11) Degraded braking: When wheel speed fails, it applies rear wheel brake with a constant small clamping force.
- (12) Press and hold EPB switch while stalling the engine, EPB will not operate, achieving stalling without parking.

■ Assist Function

- (1) Rotating hub detection: It recognizes the rotating hub detection mode automatically. Pull up EPB switch to realize the parking force detection, and parking force increases in stages when pulling EPB switch.
- (2) Clearance adjustment: When parking and releasing operations are not performed and a certain mileage has been accumulated continuously, perform self-check to adjust the clearance change.
- (3) Network wake-up: In sleep status, EPB can be woken up via CAN network message.
- (4) Switch wake-up: In sleep status, EPB can be woken up through the switch, and parking vehicle can be completed by switch.
- (5) Service releasing: Release EPB to the installation position by a specific operation of EPB switch. It provides convenience for the replacement of EPB mechanical parts.
- (6) External request: Responds to the EPB parking and releasing commands sent by external system via CAN.

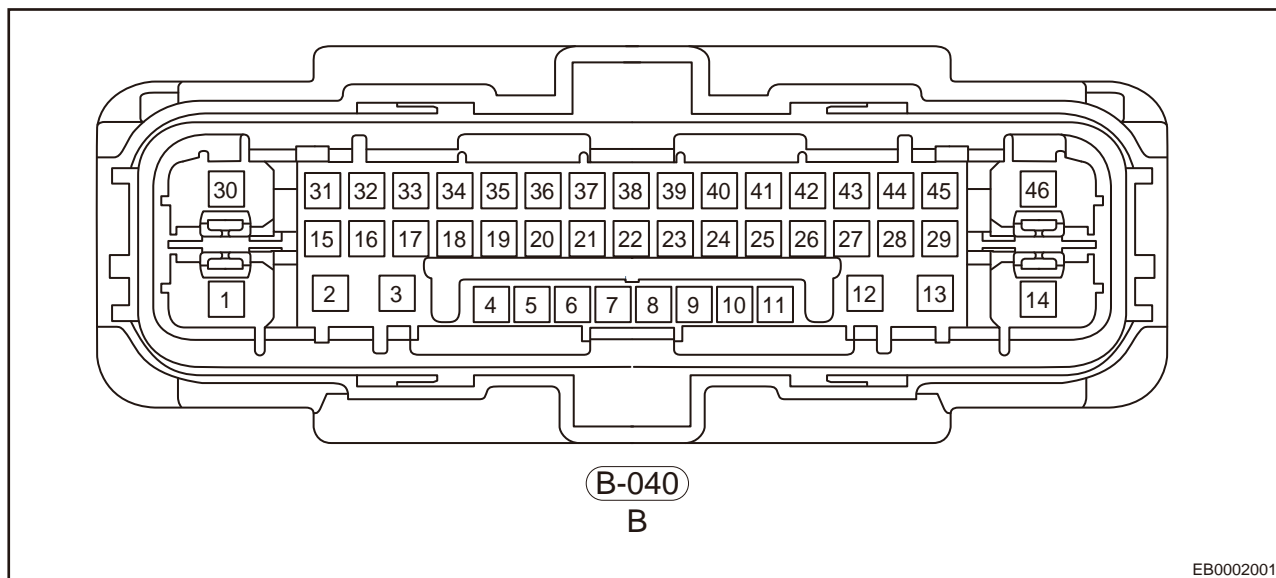
3 SPECIFICATIONS

3.1 Torque Specifications

Description	Torque (N·m)
Guide Pin Fixing Bolt	22 - 32

4 System Circuit Diagram

4.1 Module Terminal Definition

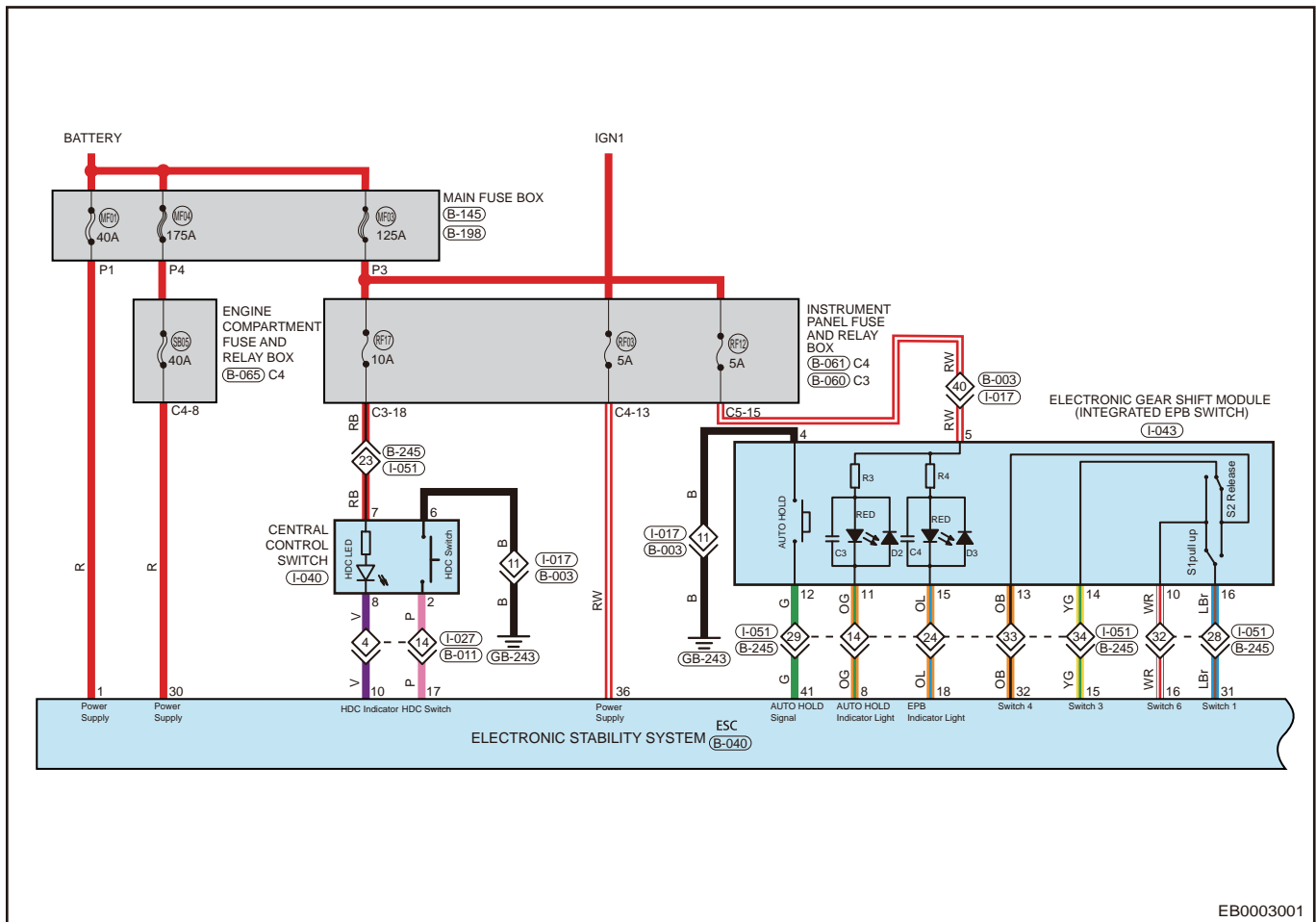


Terminal No.	Terminal Definition	Terminal No.	Terminal Definition
1	KL30 Power Supply	24	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply
2	Right EPB Motor Power Supply	25	CHA Low
3	Right EPB Motor Ground	26	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal
4	Reserved	27	Reserved
5	CHA High	28	Reserved
6	Reserved	29	Reserved
7	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal	30	KL30 Power Supply
8	AUTO HOLD Indicator	31	Switch 1
9	Reserved	32	Switch 4
10	HDC Switch Indicator	33	Reserved
11	CHA High	34	Reserved
12	Left EPB Motor Ground	35	Reserved
13	Left EPB Motor Power Supply	36	ING1 Power Supply
14	Ground	37	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal
15	Switch 3	38	Brake Switch Signal
16	Switch 2	39	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply
17	HDC Switch Signal	40	Reserved
18	EPB Indicator	41	AUTO HOLD Switch Signal

Terminal No.	Terminal Definition	Terminal No.	Terminal Definition
19	CHA Low	42	Reserved
20	Reserved	43	ESP OFF
21	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply	44	Reserved
22	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply	45	Reserved
23	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal	46	Ground

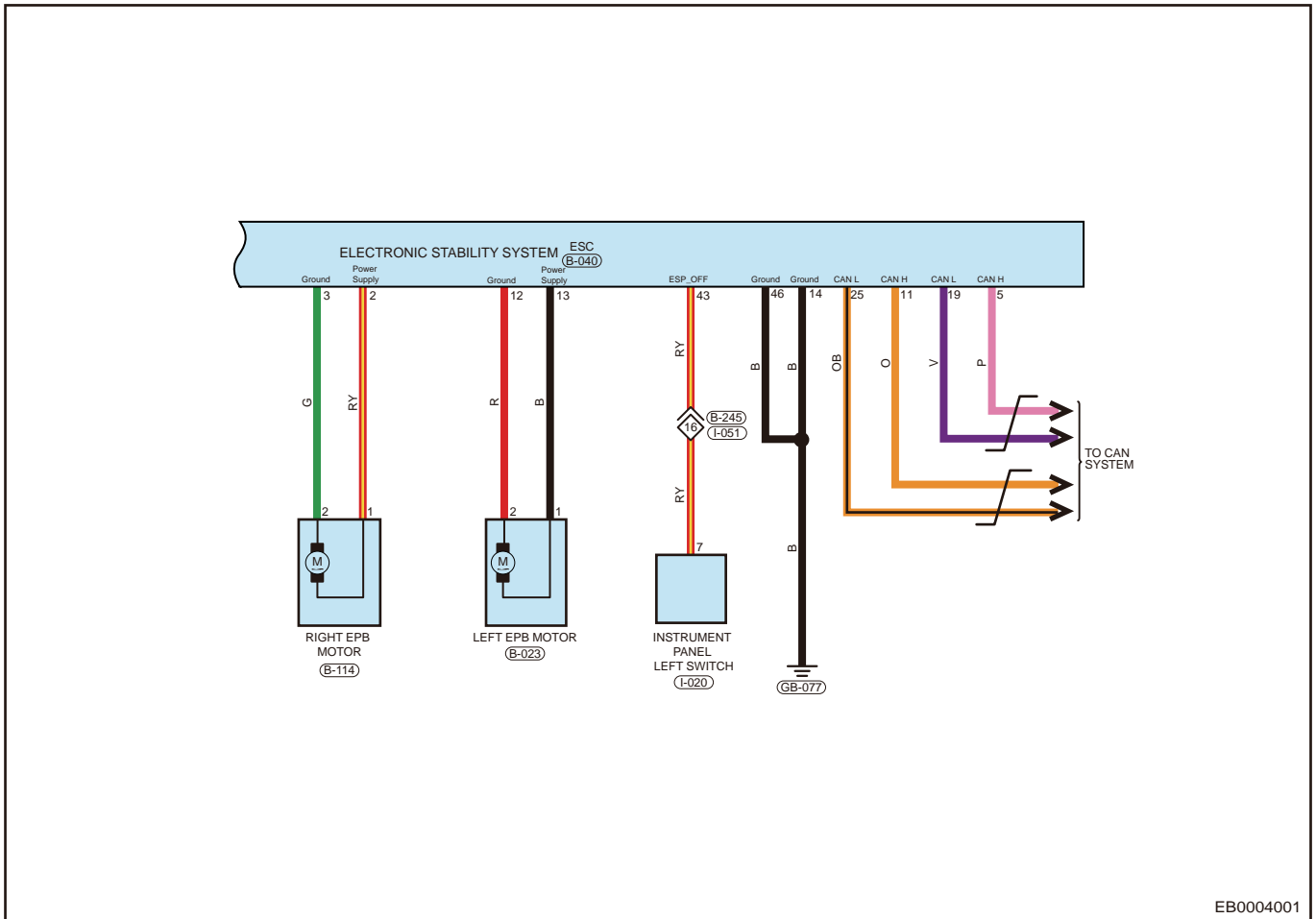
4.2 Circuit Diagram

■ Electronic Parking Brake System 1



EB0003001

■ Electronic Parking Brake System 2



EB0004001

5 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

5.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
When ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON, EPB warning light does not come on	Fuse
	Wire harness or connector
	EPB control module assembly
	Instrument cluster
EPB warning light remains on	Fuse
	Wire harness or connector
	EPB control module assembly
	Instrument cluster
EPB does not operate normally	Brake caliper motor
	Brake lining (excessive wear)

Symptom	Suspected Area
	Wire harness or connector
	Brake fluid (leaked)
	EPB control module assembly
Unable to communicate with ESC control module	Fuse
	Wire harness or connector
	ESC control module assembly

5.2 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic connector, and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of brake control system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

5.3 Intermittent Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- (1) Check if connector is loose.
- (2) Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (3) Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- (4) If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- (5) Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- (6) Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (7) Inspect the mounting areas of brake control system, wire harness or wire harness connector and so on for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- (8) Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- (9) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

5.4 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to normal work of circuit, and they are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

5.5 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures:

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic connector, and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in EPB system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, select “Read DTC” .
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction indicated by DTC is intermittent.

5.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
C230016	Communication Under Voltage
C230017	Communication Over Voltage
C230060	Voltage Out of Actuator Spec Range
C230116	IGN Line (Short to Ground or Open)
C230604	ECU Hardware Fault ECU (Sub)
C230640	ECU Hardware Fault ECU (AD Module)
C230642	ECU Hardware Fault (EEPROM)
C230644	ECU Hardware Fault (RAM)
C230645	ECU Fault ECU (Failure of Stack)
C230646	ECU Hardware Fault (Flash/ROM)
C23064C	ECU Hardware Fault (Interprocessor Communication Error)
C230654	ECU Hardware Fault (Not Calibrated Correctly)
C230655	ECU Hardware Fault (Not Configed)
C23067C	ECU Hardware Fault (Sub ECU Control Fault)
C230686	ECU Hardware Fault (Invalid Data)
C230860	Switch Broken (Failure of Line)
C230862	Switch Broken (Switch State Not Agree)
C230A11	Left Actuator Fault (Control Circuit Fault)
C230A13	Left Actuator Fault (Open)
C230A15	Left Actuator Fault (Motor Short)
C230A54	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Calibration)
C230A63	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Transistor)
C230A70	Left Actuator Fault (Actuator Broken)
C230A7C	Left Actuator Fault (Operates for Too Long)
C230A7D	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Relay)

DTC	DTC Definition
C230A7E	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Mosfet)
C231329	G Sensor (Signal Invalid)
C231396	G Sensor (Self Test Fail)
C231654	EOL Calibration Fault (EOL Calibration Not Completed)
C231655	Variant Code Configuration Not Correct (Vehicle Type Config is Wrong)
C231D12	EPB Status Lamp Line (Short to Battery)
C231D14	EPB Status Lamp Line (Short to Ground or Open)
C23352A	Switch Broken (Switch Apply Stuck)
C23362A	Switch Broken (Switch Release Stuck)
C233800	Switch Broken
C233861	Switch Broken (Switch Not Stable)
C233A11	Right Actuator Fault (Control Circuit Fault)
C233A13	Right Actuator Fault (Open)
C233A15	Right Actuator Fault (Motor Short)
C233A54	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Calibration)
C233A63	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Transistor)
C233A70	Right Actuator Fault (Actuator Broken)
C233A7C	Right Actuator Fault (Operates for Too Long)
C233A7D	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Relay)
C233A7E	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Mosfet)
C234A18	Actuator Error or Incoherent
C234A77	Actuator Error or Incoherent
U007388	Controller Bus Off
U010087	Lost Communication with EMS
U010187	Lost Communication with TCU
U012187	Lost Communication with ABS
U012287	Lost Communication with ESC
U014187	Lost Communication with BCM
U040086	Invalid Data from EMS
U040186	Invalid Data from TCU
U042186	Invalid Data from ABS
U042286	Invalid Data from ESC
U044186	Invalid Data from BCM

DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	C230016	Communication Under Voltage
DTC	C230017	Communication Over Voltage

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C230016	Communication Under Voltage	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Battery fault • Wire harness or connector fault • Charging system fault • EPB control module fault
C230017	Communication Over Voltage		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between positive battery terminal and negative battery terminal, which is not less than 12 V.

NG

Replace battery

OK

2	Check charging system
----------	------------------------------

- (a) Start engine and use a digital multimeter to measure if system voltage is between 13.5 V and 14.8 V.

NG

Repair or replace alternator or related wire harness

OK

3	Check EPB fuse
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (b) Check if fuses MF03 125A, MF04 175A and MF01 40A in main fuse box B-145 are blown.
 (c) Check if fuse RF03 5A in instrument panel fuse box B-061 and fuse SB05 40A in engine compartment fuse and relay box B-065 are blown.

NG

Replace fuse

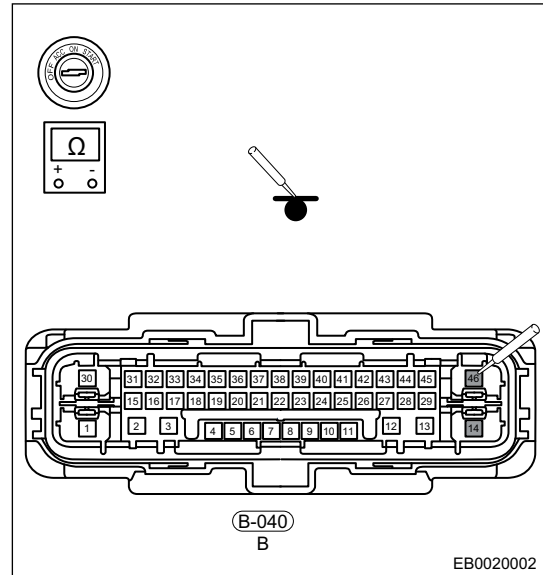
OK

4 Check EPB controller ground and power supply wire harness connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect EPB module connector, and check if it is bent, deformed or loose.
- (c) Using a multimeter, check for continuity between EPB controller B-040 (14, 46) and ground circuit.

Standard Resistance

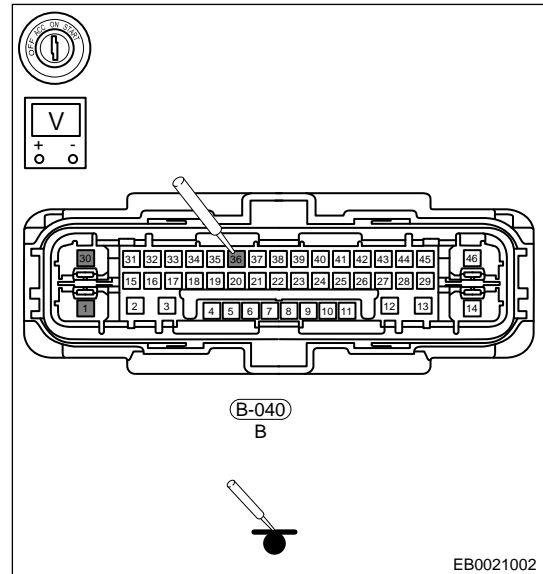
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (46) - Body ground	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (14) - Body ground	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Using a multimeter, measure voltage between terminals 1, 30 and 36 of EPB controller B-040 and body ground.

Standard Voltage

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (1) - Body ground	Always	Not less than 12 V
B-040 (30) - Body ground	Always	Not less than 12 V
B-040 (36) - Body ground	Always	Not less than 12 V



NG Replace or repair wire harness or connector

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK System operates normally

NG Replace EPB control module assembly

DTC	C230A11	Left Actuator Fault (Control Circuit Fault)
DTC	C230A13	Left Actuator Fault (Open)
DTC	C230A15	Left Actuator Fault (Motor Short)
DTC	C230A54	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Calibration)
DTC	C230A63	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Transistor)
DTC	C230A70	Left Actuator Fault (Actuator Broken)
DTC	C230A7C	Left Actuator Fault (Operates for Too Long)
DTC	C230A7D	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Relay)
DTC	C230A7E	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Mosfet)
DTC	C230060	Voltage Out of Actuator Spec Range

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C230A11	Left Actuator Fault (- Control Circuit Fault)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector fault Left parking brake actuator fault EPB module fault
C230A13	Left Actuator Fault (Open)		
C230A15	Left Actuator Fault (Motor Short)		
C230A54	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Calibration)		
C230A63	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Transistor)		
C230A70	Left Actuator Fault (- Actuator Broken)		
C230A7C	Left Actuator Fault (- Operates for Too Long)		
C230A7D	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Relay)		
C230A7E	Left Actuator Fault (Failure of Mosfet)		
C230060	Voltage Out of Actuator Spec Range		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check left actuator wire harness or connector
---	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (d) Check wire harness, connector and terminal for deformation, bend or damage.

NG

Repair or replace wire harness or connector

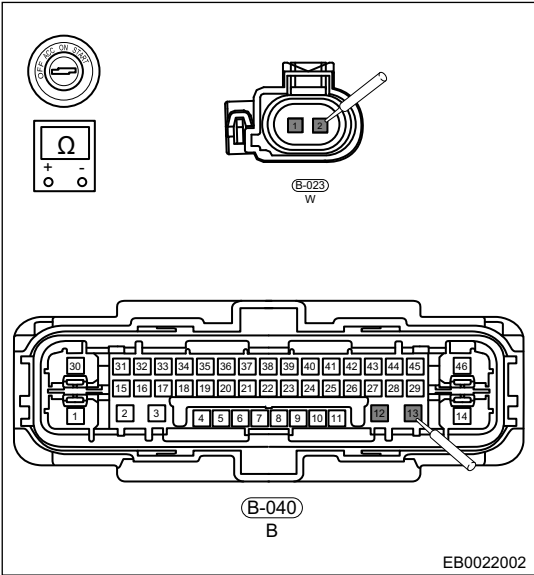
OK

2 Check circuit of left actuator wire harness or connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect connector B-040 and left actuator connector B-023.
- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between terminals 12 and 13 of B-040 and terminals 1 and 2 of B-023.

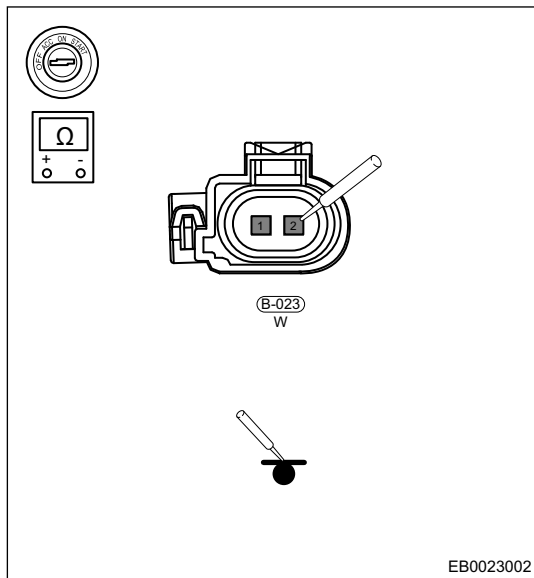
Standard Resistance

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (13) - B- 023 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (12) - B- 023 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



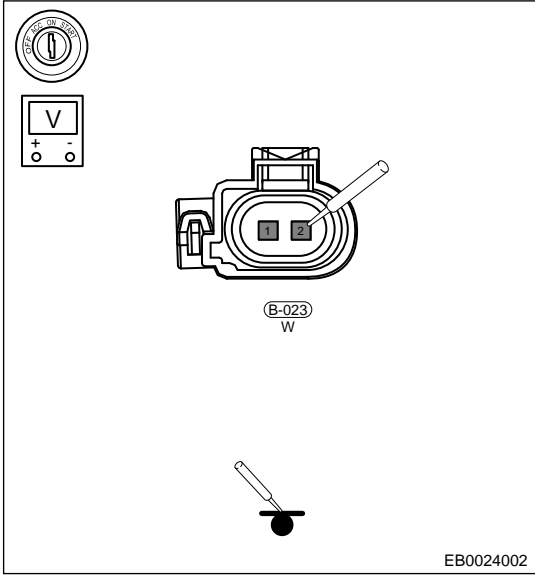
- (e) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminal of left actuator connector B-023 and body ground according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-023 (2) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-023 (1) - Body ground	Always	∞



- (f) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (g) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (h) Using a digital multimeter, check if left actuator connector is short to power source according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-023 (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V
B-023 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness and connector between left caliper motor connector and EPB control module assembly

OK

3 Test left actuator

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (c) Disconnect the left actuator wire harness connector B-023.
- (d) Measure internal resistance of left actuator.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-023 (1) - B-023 (2)	Always	0.4 Ω - 0.9 Ω

Hint:
The multimeter error should be subtracted from the measurement result when measuring internal resistance of actuator.

NG Replace left actuator

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK System operates normally

NG Replace EPB control module assembly

DTC	C233A11	Right Actuator Fault (Control Circuit Fault)
DTC	C233A13	Right Actuator Fault (Open)
DTC	C233A15	Right Actuator Fault (Motor Short)
DTC	C233A54	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Calibration)
DTC	C233A63	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Transistor)
DTC	C233A70	Right Actuator Fault (Actuator Broken)
DTC	C233A7C	Right Actuator Fault (Operates for Too Long)
DTC	C233A7D	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Relay)
DTC	C233A7E	Right Actuator Fault (Failure of Mosfet)
DTC	C234A18	Actuator Error or Incoherent
DTC	C234A77	Actuator Error or Incoherent

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C233A11	Right Actuator Fault (- Control Circuit Fault)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector fault • EPB right actuator fault • EPB module fault
C233A13	Right Actuator Fault (Open)		
C233A15	Right Actuator Fault (- Motor Short)		
C233A54	Right Actuator Fault (- Failure of Calibration)		
C233A63	Right Actuator Fault (- Failure of Transistor)		
C233A70	Right Actuator Fault (- Actuator Broken)		
C233A7C	Right Actuator Fault (- Operates for Too Long)		
C233A7D	Right Actuator Fault (- Failure of Relay)		
C233A7E	Right Actuator Fault (- Failure of Mosfet)		
C234A18	Actuator Error or Incoherent		
C234A77	Actuator Error or Incoherent		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the right actuator wire harness and connector.
- (d) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (e) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (f) Check if terminal contact pins of related connectors are in good condition.

NG Repair or replace related wire harness and connector

OK

2 Check right caliper motor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the right actuator connector, replace actuator and test.

NG Replace right parking brake actuator

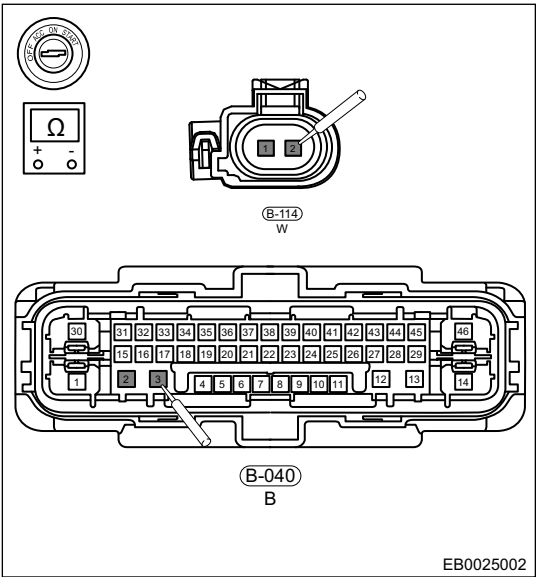
OK

3 Check wire harness and connector for continuity

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between terminals 2, 3 of EPB module connector B-040 and terminals 1, 2 of left actuator connector B-114.

Standard Resistance

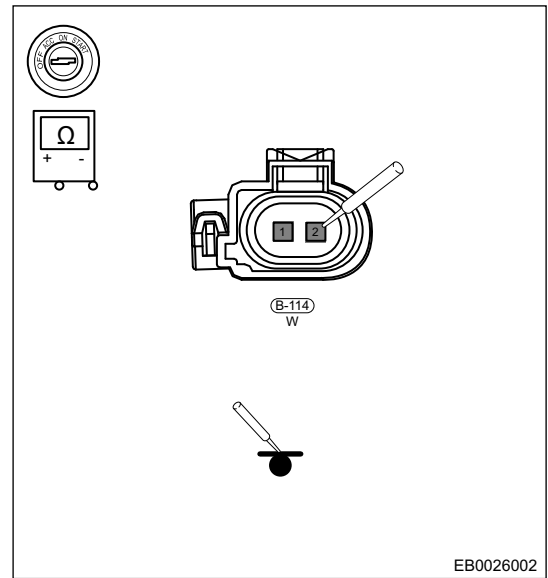
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (2) - B-114 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (3) - B-114 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(d) Using a digital multimeter, check if left caliper motor connector is short to ground according to table below.

Standard Resistance

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-114 (2) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-114 (1) - Body ground	Always	∞



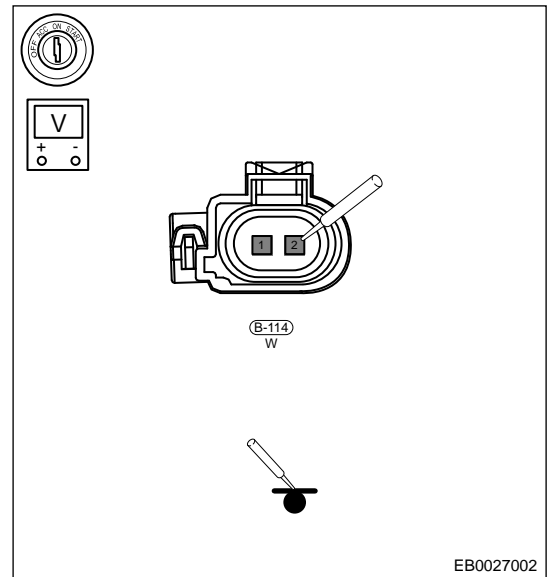
(e) Connect the negative battery cable.

(f) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

(g) Using a digital multimeter, check if right caliper motor connector is short to power source according to table below.

Standard Voltage

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-114 (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V
B-128 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V



NG Repair or replace wire harness and connector

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

(a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.

(b) Start the engine.

(c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, read EPB/ESP control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.

(d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK System operates normally

NG Replace right parking brake actuator

DTC	C230860	Switch Broken (Failure of Line)
DTC	C230862	Switch Broken (Switch State Not Agree)
DTC	C23352A	Switch Broken (Switch Apply Stuck)
DTC	C23362A	Switch Broken (Switch Release Stuck)
DTC	C233800	Switch Broken
DTC	C233861	Switch Broken (Switch Not Stable)

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C230860	Switch Broken (Failure of Line)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector fault • EPB switch fault • EPB control module fault
C230862	Switch Broken (Switch State Not Agree)		
C23352A	Switch Broken (Switch Apply Stuck)		
C23362A	Switch Broken (Switch Release Stuck)		
C233800	Switch Broken		
C233861	Switch Broken (Switch Not Stable)		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check EPB switch

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect EPB switch connector, remove switch assembly, and check appearance of EPB switch for damage, dirt, sticking.
- Check EPB switch pin for deformation, broken, loose.



Repair or replace EPB switch



2 Check EPB switch wire harness and connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect EPB switch connector, check if wire harness is broken or damaged.

NG

Repair or replace wire harness or connector

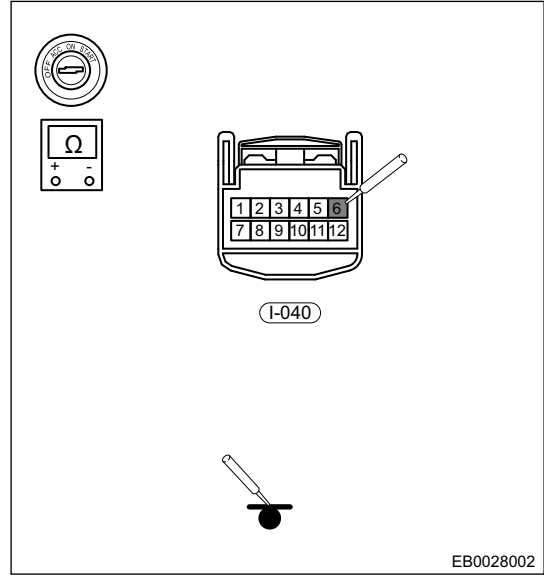
OK

3 Check EPB switch ground and wire harness for continuity

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Using a multimeter, check for continuity between EPB switch I-040 (6) and body ground.

Standard Resistance

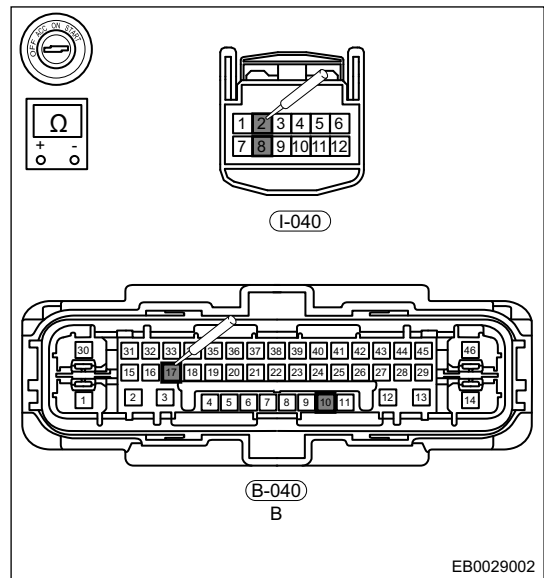
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-040 (6) - Body ground	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



EB0028002

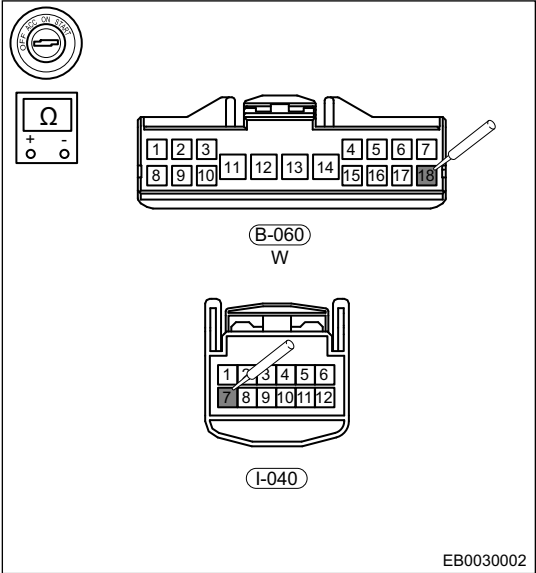
- (d) Disconnect EPB switch connector I-040, and disconnect EPB control module connector B-040.
- (e) Using a multimeter, check for continuity of wire harness between EPB control module connector B-040 and EPB switch connector I-040 according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (10) - I-040 (8)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (17) - I-040 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$

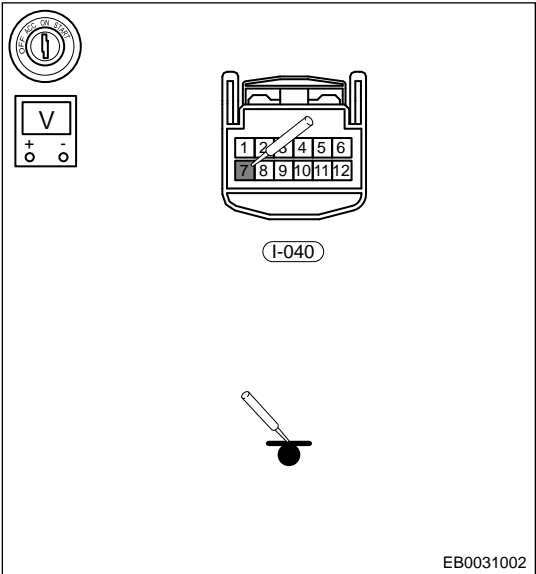


EB0029002

- (f) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (g) Check if fuse RF17 10A in instrument panel fuse and relay box B-060 is blown.
- (h) Check for continuity between instrument panel fuse and relay box wire harness B-060 C3 (18) and EPB switch I-040 (7).



- (i) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (j) Check for 12 V voltage in electronic parking switch wire harness connector I-040 (7).



NG → **Repair or replace wire harness and connector**

→ **OK**

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK → **System operates normally**

NG → **Replace EPB control module**

DTC	C230604	ECU Hardware Fault ECU (Sub)
DTC	C230640	ECU Hardware Fault ECU (AD Module)

DTC	C230644	ECU Hardware Fault (RAM)
DTC	C230645	ECU Fault ECU (Failure of Stack)
DTC	C230655	ECU Hardware Fault (Not Configed)
DTC	C23067C	ECU Hardware Fault (Sub ECU Control Fault)
DTC	C230686	ECU Hardware Fault (Invalid Data)
DTC	C230642	ECU Hardware Fault (EEPROM)
DTC	C230646	ECU Hardware Fault (Flash/ROM)
DTC	C23064C	ECU Hardware Fault (Interprocessor Communication Error)
DTC	C230654	ECU Hardware Fault (Not Calibrated Correctly)
DTC	C231329	G Sensor (Signal Invalid)
DTC	C231396	G Sensor (Self Test Fail)

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C230604	ECU Hardware Fault ECU (Sub)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness or connector fault • CAN network fault • EPB control module fault
C230640	ECU Hardware Fault ECU (AD Module)		
C230644	ECU Hardware Fault (RAM)		
C230645	ECU Fault ECU (Failure of Stack)		
C230655	ECU Hardware Fault (Not Configed)		
C23067C	ECU Hardware Fault (Sub ECU Control Fault)		
C230686	ECU Hardware Fault (- Invalid Data)		
C230642	ECU Hardware Fault (EEPROM)		
C230646	ECU Hardware Fault (Flash/ROM)		
C23064C	ECU Hardware Fault (- Interprocessor Communication Error)		
C230654	ECU Hardware Fault (Not Calibrated Correctly)		
C231329	G Sensor (Signal Invalid)		
C231396	G Sensor (Self Test Fail)		

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.

- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check EPB control module wire harness and connector
----------	--

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the EPB control module connector B-040.
- Check if EPB control module wire harness is damaged, pierced, pinched or broken.
- Check EPB module connector for bending, broken terminals.
- Check EPB module pin for bending, breakage, corrosion.

NG

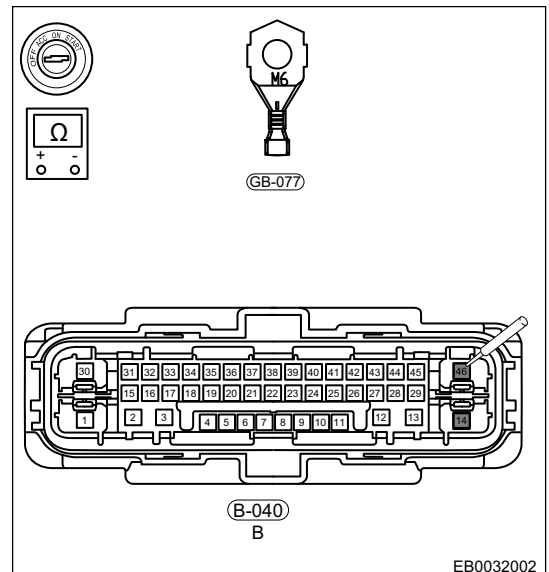
Repair or replace related wire harness and connector

OK

2	Check for continuity in EPB module ground
----------	--

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Using a multimeter, check for continuity between EPB control model GB-040 (46) and ground GB-077.
- Using a multimeter, check for continuity between EPB control model GB-040 (14) and ground GB-077.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (46) - GB-077	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (14) - GB-077	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

Repair or replace related wire harness and connector

OK

3	Check EPB control module fuse
----------	--------------------------------------

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Check if fuse MF03 125A in main fuse box B-145 is blown.
- Check if fuse SB05 40A in engine compartment fuse and relay box B-065 and fuse RF03 5A in instrument panel fuse box B-061 are blown.

NG

Replace fuse

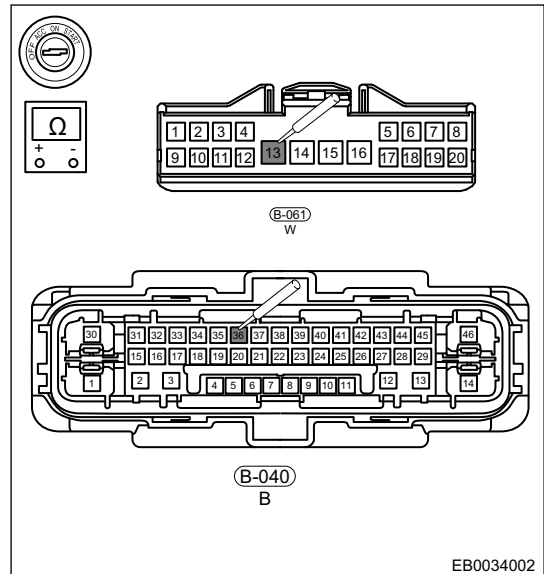
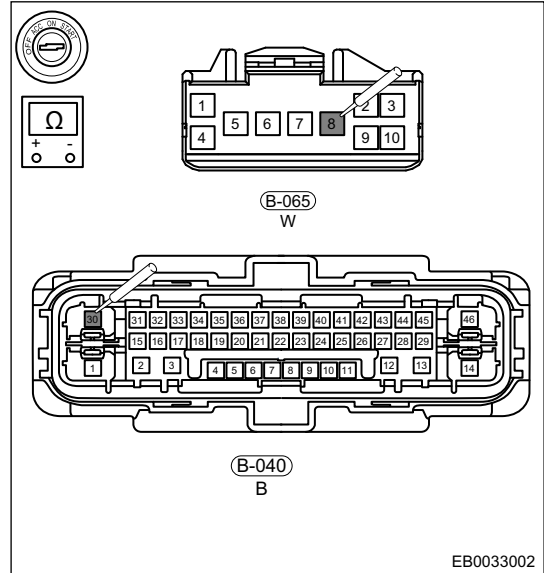
OK

4 Check power supply circuit of EPB control module

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the EPB control module connector B-040.
- (c) Using a multimeter, check for continuity in EPB control module power supply circuit.

Standard Resistance

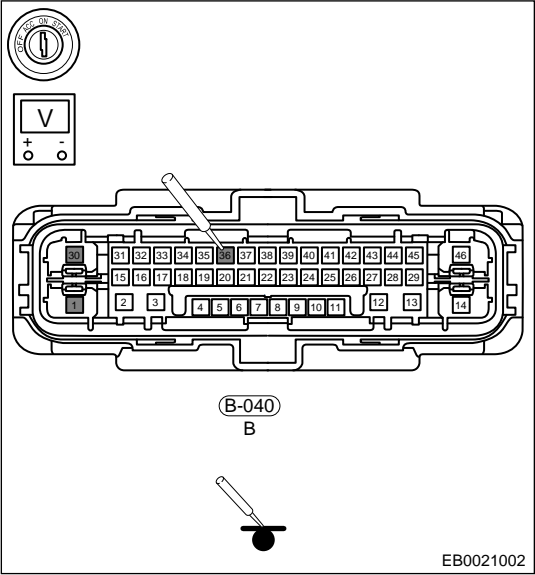
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (30) - B-065 (C4-8)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (36) - B-061 (C4-13)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Using a multimeter, check for 12 V voltage in EPB controller wire harness connector terminals B-040 (1), (30), (36).

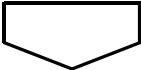
Standard Voltage

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V
B-040 (30) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V
B-040 (36) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V



NG

Repair or replace wire harness or connector

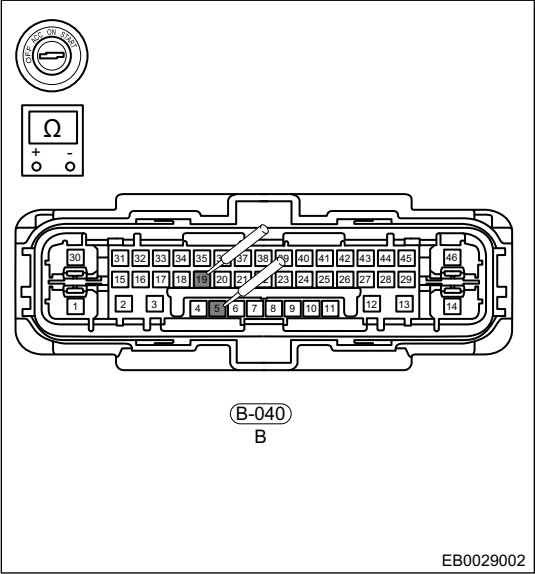


5 | Check CAN network

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the EPB module connector B-040.
- (d) Using a multimeter, measure if CAN resistance between EPB module connectors B-040 (5) and B-040 (19) is 60 Ω.

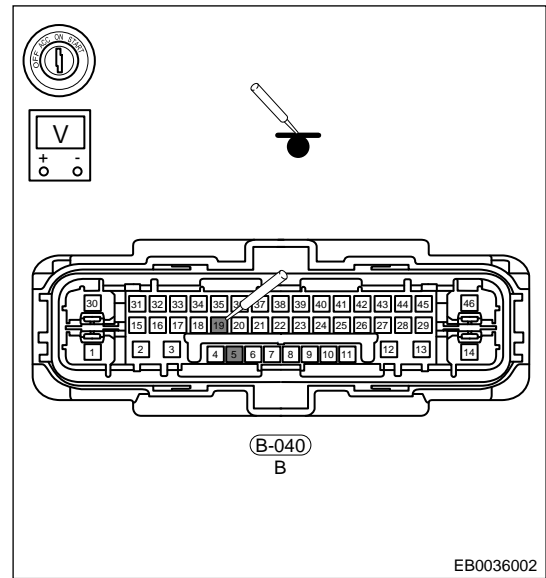
Standard Resistance

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (5) - B-040 (19)	Always	Approximately 60 Ω



- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a multimeter, measure voltage of CAN network.
Standard Voltage

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (5) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Between 2.5 V and 3.5 V
B-040 (19) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Between 1.5 V and 2.5 V



NG Repair or replace CAN network wire harness

OK

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK System operates normally

NG Replace EPB control module assembly

DTC	U010087	Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U010187	Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U012187	Lost Communication with ABS
DTC	U012287	Lost Communication with ESC
DTC	U014187	Lost Communication with BCM
DTC	U040086	Invalid Data from EMS
DTC	U040186	Invalid Data from TCU
DTC	U042186	Invalid Data from ABS
DTC	U042286	Invalid Data from ESC
DTC	U044186	Invalid Data from BCM

For communication fault, refer to CAN communication system.

DTC	U007388	Controller BUS OFF
-----	---------	--------------------

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
U007388	Controller BUS OFF	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wire harness or connector fault EPB control module fault

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check EPB control module wire harness and connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the EPB control module connector B-040.
- Check if EPB control module wire harness is damaged, pierced, pinched or broken.
- Check EPB module connector for bending, broken terminals.
- Check EPB module pin for bending, breakage, corrosion.

NG

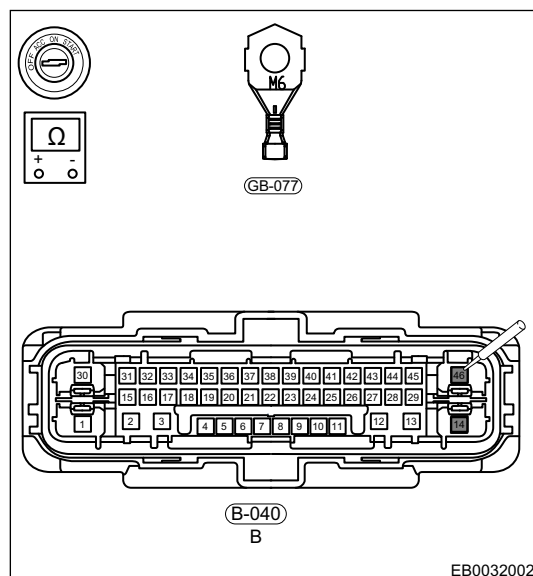
Repair or replace related wire harness and connector

OK

2 Check EPB control module ground circuit

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Using a multimeter, check for continuity between EPB control module B-040 (46) and ground GB-077, B-040 (14) and ground GB-040.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (46) - GB-077	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (14) - GB-077	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

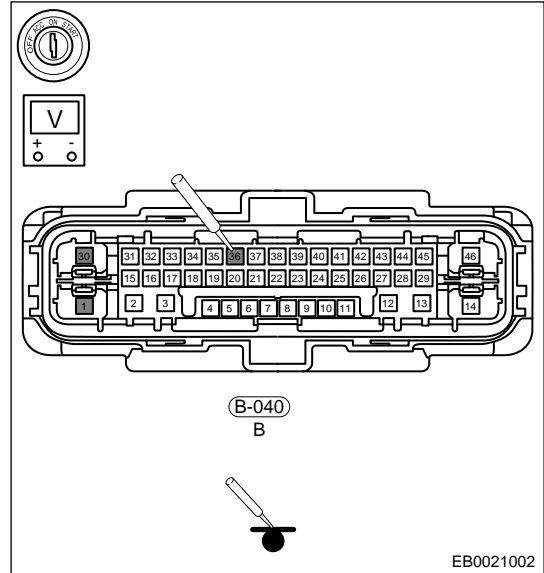
Repair or replace wire harness or connector

OK

3 Check power supply circuit of EPB control module

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Using a multimeter, measure power supply voltage of EPB control module.
- (c) Check for 12 V voltage in EPB control module connectors B-040 (1), (30), (36) separately.
Standard Voltage

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V
B-040 (30) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V
B-040 (36) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V



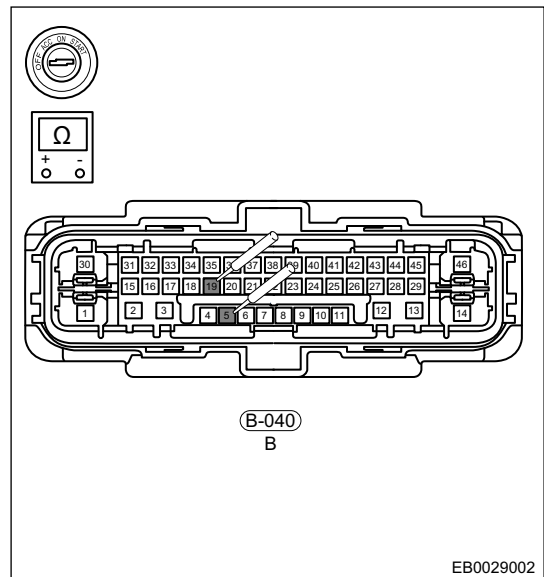
NG Repair or replace related wire harness and connector

OK

4 Check CAN network

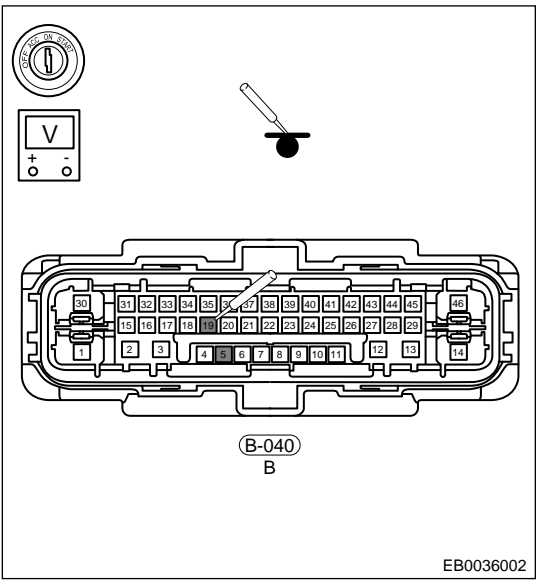
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the EPB module connector B-040.
- (d) Using a multimeter, measure if CAN resistance between EPB module connectors B-040 (5) and B-040 (19) is 60 Ω.
Standard Resistance

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (5) - B-040 (19)	Always	Approximately 60 Ω



- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a multimeter, measure voltage of CAN network.
Standard Voltage

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (5) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Between 2.5 V and 3.5 V
B-040 (19) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Between 1.5 V and 2.5 V



NG → **Repair or replace CAN network wire harness**

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK → **Same DTC is not output**

NG → **Replace EPB control module assembly**

DTC	C231655	Variant Code Configuration Not Correct (Vehicle Type Config is Wrong)
DTC	C231654	EOL Calibration Fault (EOL Calibration Not Completed)

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C231655	Variant Code Configuration Not Correct (Vehicle Type Config is Wrong)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • EPB module fault
C231654	EOL Calibration Fault (EOL Calibration Not Completed)		

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check EPB configuration information and calibration result with diagnostic tester.

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Connect the diagnostic tester and enter EPB electronic parking system, read EPB configuration information, and record the configuration information contents.
- (c) Use diagnostic tester to check the off-line calibration result, and check if calibration method is correct.
- (d) Rewrite the correct configuration information with diagnostic tester.
- (e) Perform off-line calibration on EPB system again, and perform off-line calibration in steps and order according to the prompt on diagnostic tester.

NG **Repair or replace EPB module**

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

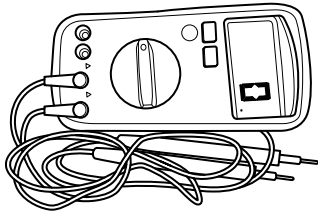
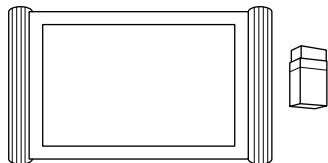
OK **Same DTC is not output**

NG **Replace EPB control module assembly**

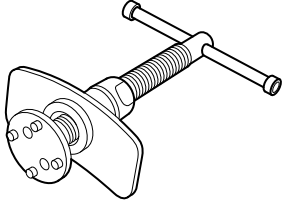
6 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

6.1 Tools

General Tools

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	-	 <p>RCH000206</p>
Diagnostic Tester	-	 <p>S00001</p>

■ Special Tool

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Brake Cylinder Release Tool	ECH-0005	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00076</p>

6.2 EPB System

■ On-vehicle Inspection

⚠ Caution

- **EPB system must be repaired by professional technicians who have trained and mastered maintenance skills and only use original parts for replacement.**
- **Before perform a fault diagnosis of EPB system, it is necessary to confirm that vehicle CAN interface can be connected properly.**
- **Note following when connecting EPB wire harness: Turn ENGINE START STOP switch off before disconnecting wire harness connector, make sure that connector is dry and clean and avoid any foreign material entering; Wire harness must be installed in place horizontally and vertically in order to avoid damaging connector.**
- **If EPB motor fuse need to be replaced, make sure that it is exactly the same with original model, including shape and parameters, and ensure that connection is fully in place.**

- (1) Inspect friction material thickness of brake discs on both sides visually, replace it when minimum value is less than 2 mm.
- (2) When brake disc is worn to limit state, there will be mechanical alarm, and the brake disc should be replaced.
- (3) It is necessary to replace 4 brake linings of left and right brake calipers when replacing brake linings.
- (4) If removed brake lining can be reused, it must be installed at original position when it is reinstalled.
- (5) During warranty period of brake lining, it is not possible to replace brake lining with different wear thickness. If friction material thickness is less than 2mm in warranty period, brake lining should be replaced, and check brake caliper for dragging at the same time.
- (6) Check EPB wire harness for aging or damage, replace as necessary.

6.3 Integrated Caliper Motor

■ Removal

Hint:

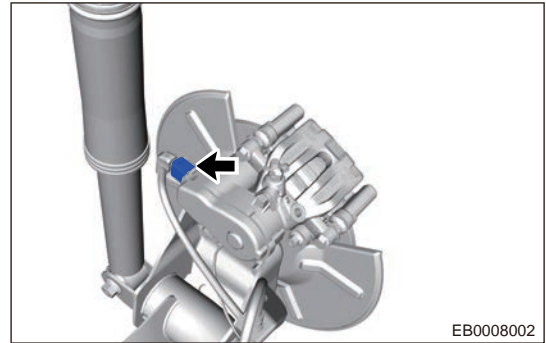
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

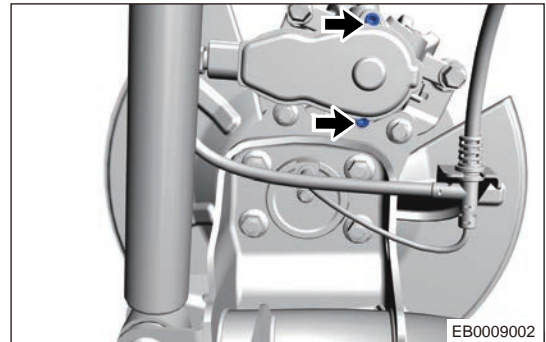
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing integrated caliper motor.**
- **Remove integrated caliper motor without damaging motor seal ring and replace it when necessary.**
- **When removing integrated caliper motor, do not allow foreign matter enter into motor.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear tires.
- (4) Remove the integrated caliper motor.

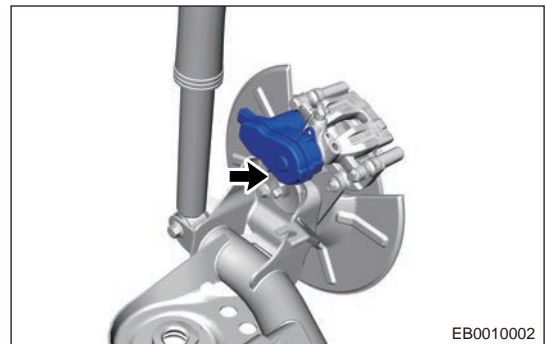
- 1) Disconnect the integrated caliper motor wire harness connector (arrow).



- 2) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrows) from left integrated caliper motor.



- 3) Remove the integrated caliper motor (arrow).



⚠ Caution

- Save the removed parking actuator properly to avoid dust or water polluting grease and seal rings.

■ EPB Brake Caliper Emergency Release

Hint:

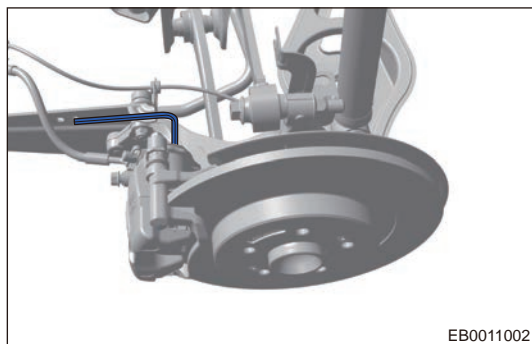
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- If parking brake cannot be released by parking brake switch manually or automatically due to unexpected circumstances (such as battery does not output voltage, parking brake system failure, etc.) during using EPB system, you need to enable parking emergency releasing function to release parking brake, please follow the following steps for specific methods.
- If this malfunction occurs on a slope, please try to tow vehicle to a level road or place obstacles such as rocks in front of or rear of front wheels respectively to prevent wheel rolling, avoiding coasting accident after releasing rear wheel brake urgently.
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when EPB brake caliper emergency releasing.

- (1) Remove the rear tires.
- (2) Remove the integrated caliper motor.

- (3) Align inner hexagon 6# with spline in EPB caliper, rotate 2-3 cycles clockwise (when operator faces spline) or stop until brake disc can rotate freely (it is normal that a large rotation force is needed due to vehicle parking brake condition).



EB0011002

- (4) The vehicle only loses parking function and does not affect normal braking function after releasing parking brake.

⚠ Caution

- **Emergency release is highly specialized, it is recommend to perform by Chery 4S shop professionals.**

■ Installation

- (1) Install rear left integrated caliper motor and tighten 2 fixing bolts.

Tightening torque: $10 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Connect the rear left integrated caliper motor wire harness connector.
 (3) Install the rear left tire.
 (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing integrated caliper motor.**
- **When installing integrated caliper motor, remove sediment, dust and other foreign objects that are on matching surface of parking actuator and on head of parking caliper.**
- **When installing integrated caliper motor, check whether the o-ring of parking caliper head is invalid or abnormal. Please replace it in time.**
- **When installing integrated caliper motor, parking caliper head and actuator motor must be tightly coupled, tighten fixing bolts to specified torque.**
- **When installing integrated caliper motor, check whether the o-ring seal is extruded between parking actuator and parking caliper, if it is extruded, should be reinstalled.**
- **When installing integrated caliper motor, manual parking clamp and release must be performed to confirm if parking function is normal.**

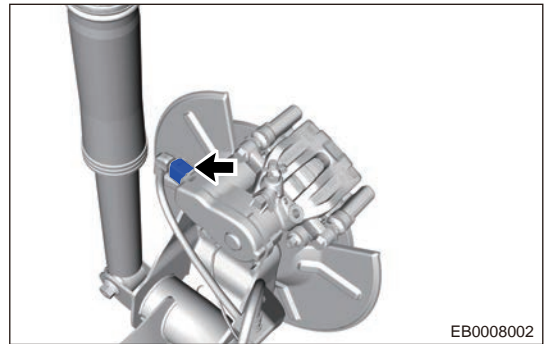
6.4 Rear Brake Lining

■ Removal

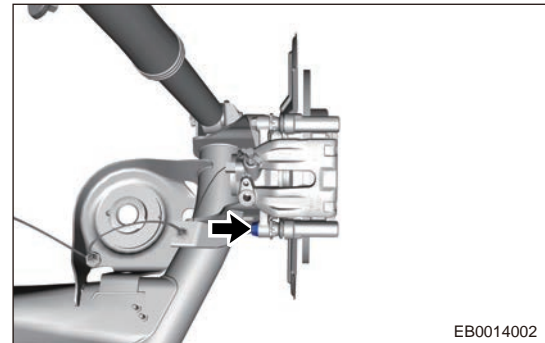
⚠ Caution

- **When worn minimum value of brake lining is 2 mm, replace 4 brake linings of left and right brake calipers.**
- **DO NOT perform “Exit Maintenance Mode” using diagnostic tester during vehicle maintenance.**
- **After removing EPB caliper set, it is strictly forbidden to depress brake pedal, otherwise the piston will rush out of cylinder hole and the brake fluid will come out and pollute brake disc and other parts.**
- **After completing replacing new brake lining, make sure to perform “Exit Parking Brake Maintenance Mode” with diagnostic tester.**
- **When installing integrated caliper motor, check whether the o-ring seal is extruded between parking actuator and parking caliper, if it is extruded, should be reinstalled.**
- **When installing integrated caliper motor, manual parking clamp and release must be performed to confirm if parking function is normal.**

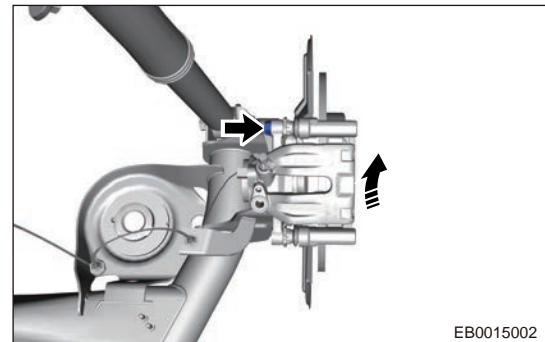
- (1) Use diagnostic tester to enter parking brake maintenance mode.
- (2) Remove the rear wheel brake lining.
 - 1) Disconnect the integrated caliper motor wire harness connector (arrow).



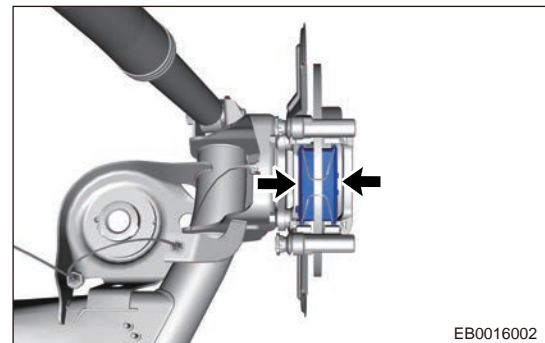
- 2) Remove the lower fixing bolt (arrow) from single guide pin.



- 3) Flip the parking caliper around another guide pin (- arrow) and use hook to lift the caliper.



- 4) Remove the brake lining (arrow) that needs to be replaced.



⚠ Caution

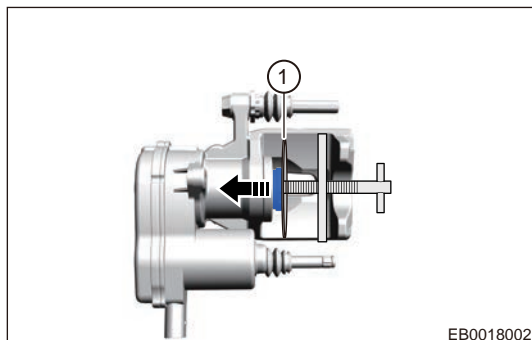
- After removing EPB caliper set, it is strictly forbidden to depress brake pedal, otherwise the piston will rush out of cylinder hole and the brake fluid will come out and pollute brake disc and other parts.
- Move caliper equipped with spring diaphragm slowly during this process, spring may flick the brake lining and drop on the foot.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing rear brake linings.**

- (1) Install the rear wheel brake lining.
 - 1) A thin sheet of steel (1) or old brake lining is added to the piston end to prevent damaging anti-rotating tooth of end surface.
 - 2) Use special tool to press piston along the direction of hand as shown in figure to push piston back to bottom of cylinder hole.



- 3) Install new brake lining.
 - 4) Install brake caliper bolt in place.
- (2) Connect EPB connector and install wheel.
 - (3) Perform “Exit Maintenance Mode” using diagnostic tester.

⚠ Caution

- **When replacing brake lining, check whether piston dust boot and guide pin dust boot is broken, and whether the spring plate is deformed or damaged, replace it when necessary.**
- **After completing replacing new brake lining, make sure to perform “Exit Parking Brake Maintenance Mode” with diagnostic tester.**
- **After installing rear brake linings, two manual parking and release are carried out to make the brake lining fully in contact with the brake disc.**

■ Test

- (1) Rear brake calipers release and clamp test
 - 1) Turn ENGINE START switch to ON.
 - 2) Connect the diagnostic tester.




3) Click diagnostic tester to enter "ESP (iEPB) (Electronic Stability Control Module (Integrated Electronic Parking Brake))".

Show Menu	
<i>EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection</i>	
EMS (Engine Management System)	TCU (Transmission Control Unit)
BCM (Body Control Module)	ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))
EPS (Electronic Power Steering)	AIPM (Integrated Panel Module)
CLM (Climate Module)	DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)
AVM (Around View Monitor Module)	PDC (Parking Distance Control)
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
Exeed New TXL EB0018501	

4) Click "Special Function" .

Show Menu	
<i>EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))</i>	
Version Information	Read Fault Code
Clear Fault Memory	Read Data Stream
Special Function	
Exeed New TXL EB0018601	

5) Click “Left Caliper Clamp” .




Show Menu   

EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))

Assembly Check	Tighten Left Brake Caliper
Release Left Brake Caliper	Tighten Right Brake Caliper
Release Right Brake Caliper	

Exeed New TXL EB0018701

6) Click “Left Caliper Clamp Release” .

Show Menu   

EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))

Assembly Check	Tighten Left Brake Caliper
Release Left Brake Caliper	Tighten Right Brake Caliper
Release Right Brake Caliper	

Exeed New TXL EB0018701

7) Click “Right Caliper Clamp” .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))	
Assembly Check	Tighten Left Brake Caliper
Release Left Brake Caliper	Tighten Right Brake Caliper
Release Right Brake Caliper	
Exeed New TXL	
EB0018701	

8) Click “Right Caliper Release” .

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.61 > New TXL > System Selection > ESP(IEPB)(Electronic Stability Program (Integration Electrical Park Brake))	
Assembly Check	Tighten Left Brake Caliper
Release Left Brake Caliper	Tighten Right Brake Caliper
Release Right Brake Caliper	
Exeed New TXL	
EB0018701	

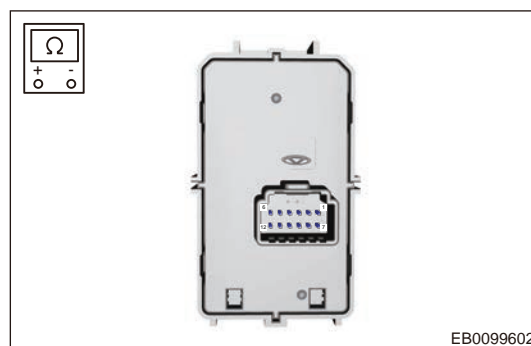
⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing rear brake linings.
- When replacing brake lining, check whether piston dust boot and guide pin dust boot is broken, and whether the spring plate is deformed or damaged, replace it when necessary.
- After completing replacing new brake lining, make sure to perform “Exit Parking Brake Maintenance Mode” with diagnostic tester.
- After installing rear brake linings, two manual parking and release are carried out to make the brake lining fully in contact with the brake disc.
- All actions of the EPB action test should be in line with the actual operation, otherwise the EPB system should be overhauled.

6.5 EPB Switch

■ Inspection

- (1) According to circuit diagram, internal resistance of EPB switch is measured using digital multimeter ohm gear. If it does not match with measured value of following table, replace the EPB switch.



Multimeter Connection	Manual Parking Switch State	Specified Condition
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	No action	$\leq 1 \Omega$
Terminal 3 - Terminal 4	No action	$\leq 1 \Omega$
Terminal 1 - Terminal 3 - Terminal 4	Parking brake pulled up	$\leq 1 \Omega$
Terminal 3 - Terminal 2 - Terminal 1	Parking brake released	$\leq 1 \Omega$

Multimeter Connection	Automatic Parking Switch State	Specified Condition
Terminal 6 - Terminal 8	Not pressed	∞
Terminal 6 - Terminal 8	Pressed	$\leq 1 \Omega$

Multimeter Connection	Manual Parking Switch State	Specified Condition
Terminal 12 - Terminal 5	Manual parking switch indicator	2.2 k Ω
Terminal 12 - Terminal 9	Automatic parking switch indicator	2.2 k Ω

SUSPENSION SYSTEM

27.1	BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM.....	1005
1	Warnings and Precautions	1005
1.1	Precautions	1005
2	System Overview	1006
2.1	System Components Diagram.....	1006
2.2	System Schematic Diagram	1007
2.3	System Function Description	1008
2.4	Component Operation Description.....	1008
3	System Circuit Diagram	1009
3.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	1009
3.2	Circuit Diagram	1010
4	DIAGNOSTIC INFORMATION AND STEPS	1011
4.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1011
4.2	Primary Inspection	1012
4.3	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1013
4.4	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1016
5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1066
5.1	Tools	1066
5.2	ESP (IEPB)/ESP Control Module Assembly	1067
5.3	Brake System Bleeding	1068
5.4	Front Wheel Speed Sensor (Take Front Left Wheel as Example)	1069
5.5	Rear Wheel Speed Sensor (Take Rear Left Wheel as Example)	1071
5.6	Combination Switch Assembly	1074

27.1 BRAKE CONTROL SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.
- When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to cut off vehicle power supply.
- ESP is a safety related component. Therefore, in addition to general safety and precautionary measures, the following diagnostic precautions must also be observed when performing maintenance and diagnosis on it.

- (1) ESP system must be repaired by professional technicians who have trained and mastered maintenance skills and only use original parts for replacement.
- (2) Before diagnosing ESP system, if basic brake system is malfunctioning, troubleshoot it first, such as:
 - Brake system noise.
 - Hard brake pedal.
 - During normal braking, brake pedal or vehicle vibrates.
 - Vehicle brake pulls.
 - Parking brake system malfunction.
- (3) ESP assembly (refers to ESP electronic control unit and hydraulic regulator assembly, excluding some accessory device such as brake line, sensor, etc.) can only be replaced as a whole, and cannot be disassembled or partially replaced/exchanged. The company does not provide separate spare parts, and ESP assembly being disassembled is not covered under warranty. The company cannot accept any liability for adverse effect caused by disassembling or partially replacing/exchanging ESP hydraulic regulator.
- (4) Both the followings indicate that a malfunction is detected in ESP system:
 - After ignition switch is turned to ON and system performs self-check, the warning light remains on.
 - The warning light remains on during driving.

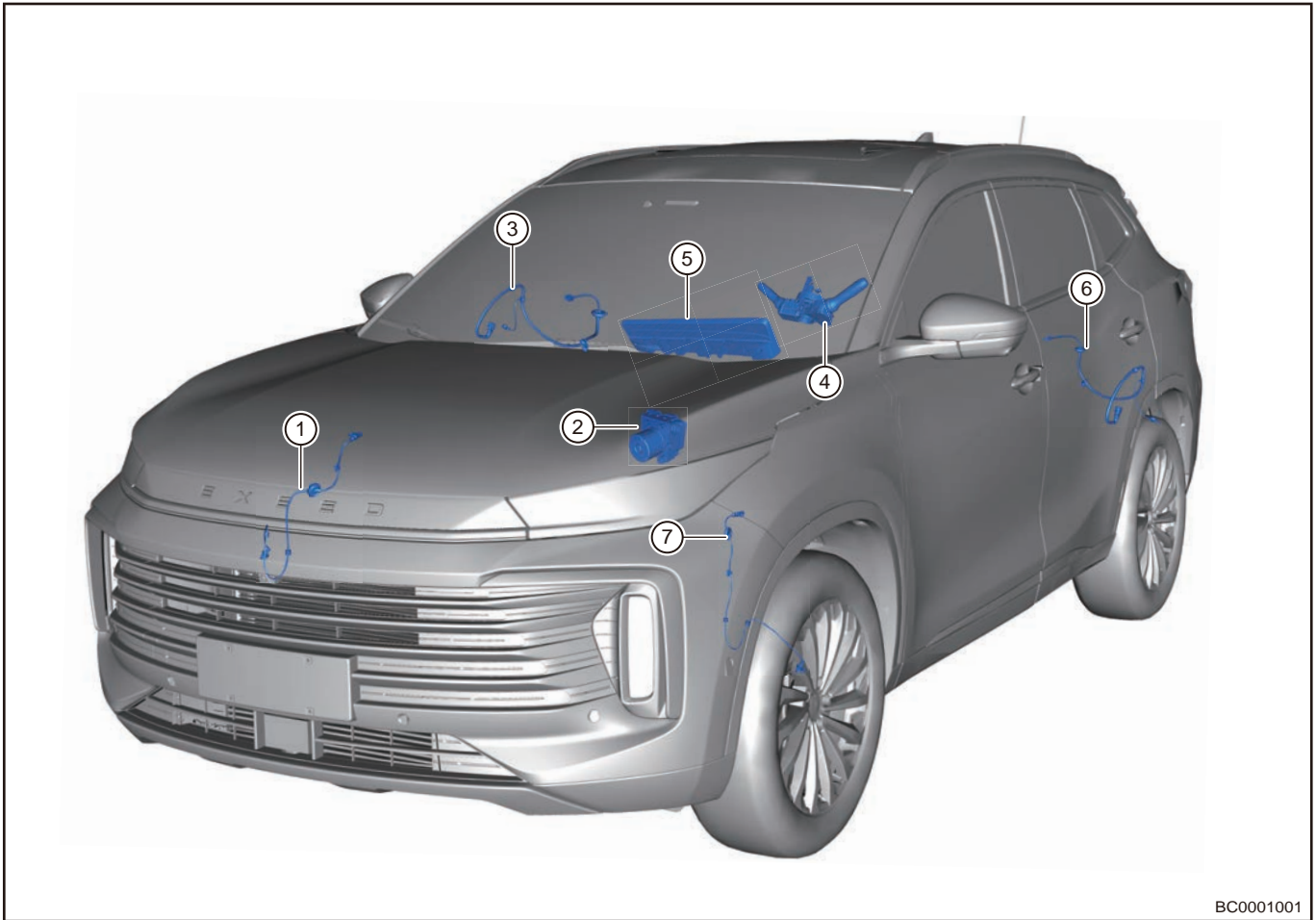
At this time, driver can perform regular brake, but the applied brake force should be reduced as much as possible to prevent wheels from being locked. After the warning light comes on, drive carefully and go to the service station for inspection and repair immediately to prevent more faults, which may lead to traffic accidents.

- (5) Pay attention to the followings when connecting ESP and sensor wire harness:
 - Before unplugging ESP wire harness and sensor wire harness, the ignition switch must be turned off.
 - Ensure that connector is dry and clean, and avoid any foreign matter entering.
 - ESP wire harness connector must be installed in place in horizontal and vertical directions, to avoid damage to the connector.
- (6) When connecting ESP brake line, it must be connected properly. ESP ECU cannot be used to determine if brake line is connected properly. Incorrect connection may cause serious accidents. When connecting brake line, be sure to follow the markings on ESP assembly:
 - MC1: Brake line 1 connected to brake master cylinder;
 - MC2: Brake line 2 connected to brake master cylinder;
 - FL: Brake line connected to brake wheel cylinder of front left wheel;
 - FR: Brake line connected to brake wheel cylinder of front right wheel;
 - RL: Brake line connected to brake wheel cylinder of rear left wheel;
 - RR: Brake line connected to brake wheel cylinder of rear right wheel.
- (7) ESP generates noise in following situations:

- After engine is started, short “buzz” sound may be heard when vehicle is accelerated to more than 40km/h. This is a normal sound from ESP self-check.
- Sound may be heard when ESP is operating properly, and it is mainly reflected in the following aspects:
 - 1) Operating sound from motor, solenoid valve and return pump in ESP hydraulic unit.
 - 2) Sound caused by brake pedal rebound.
 - 3) Bumping sound between suspension and vehicle body caused by sudden braking.

2 System Overview

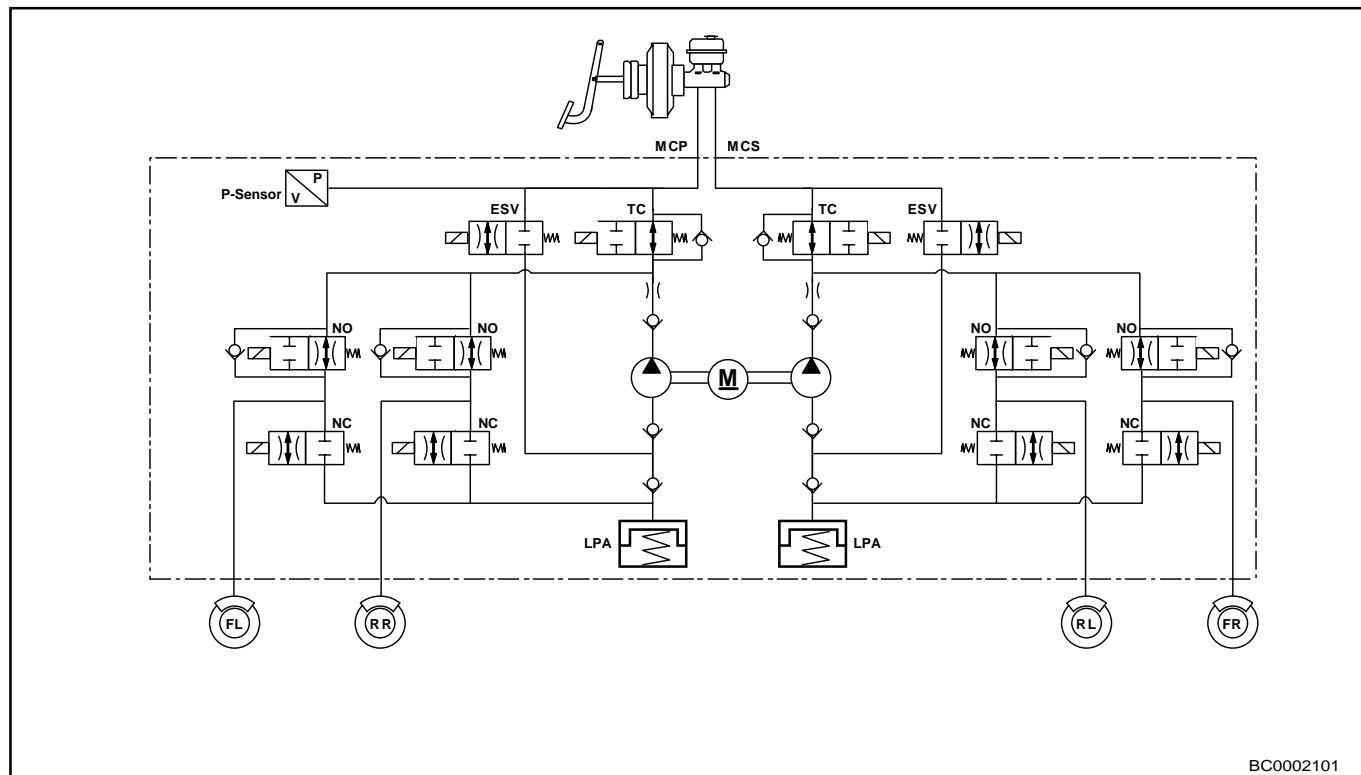
2.1 System Components Diagram



BC0001001

1	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor	2	ESP Control Module Assembly
3	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor	4	Combination Switch Steering Angle Sensor
5	Instrument Cluster	6	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor
7	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor		

2.2 System Schematic Diagram



BC0002101

Description	Definition	Description	Definition
MCP	Brake Master Cylinder Circuit 1	NC	Normal Close Valve
MCA	Brake Master Cylinder Circuit 2	LPA	Low Pressure Accumulator
M	Motor	FL	Front Left Wheel
P-Sensor	Pressure Sensor	RR	Rear Right Wheel
TC	Traction Control Valve	RL	Rear Left Wheel
ESV	Electronic Shift Valve	FR	Front Right Wheel
NO	Normal Open Valve		

■ Conventional Brake Operating Condition

When driver does not apply enough pressure to brake pedal to lock wheels, oil pressure generated by brake master cylinder enters brake caliper assembly of each wheel through input valve (EV), producing regular braking effect. If driver reduces pressure to brake pedal, brake fluid of each wheel returns to brake master cylinder assembly, and brake pressure decreases.

Solenoid Valve	Powered Condition	Solenoid Valve Condition
Input Valve (EV)	OFF	Normally open
Output Valve (EV)	OFF	Normally closed

■ ESP Operating Condition (Relief)

When driver applies pressure to brake pedal excessively, friction coefficient between wheels and road will decrease, and wheels will be decelerated earlier than vehicle. When wheel locking is about to occur, oil passage of input valve (EV) is cut off, and oil passage of output valve (AV) is opened to reduce wheel brake caliper assembly pressure. Brake fluid of wheel brake caliper assembly is temporarily stored in low pressure accumulator through output valve (AV).

Solenoid Valve	Powered Condition	Solenoid Valve Condition
Input Valve (EV)	ON	Normally closed
Output Valve (EV)	ON	Normally open

■ ESP Operating Condition (Maintaining)

When appropriate pressure is applied to wheel brake caliper assembly by relieving or boosting, pressure will be maintained. Oil passage of input valve (EV) and output valve (AV) will be cut off to maintain pressure of wheel brake caliper assembly unchanged.

Solenoid Valve	Powered Condition	Solenoid Valve Condition
Input Valve (EV)	ON	Normally closed
Output Valve (EV)	OFF	Normally closed

■ ESP Operating Condition (Boost)

When ESP operating condition (relief) is performed, friction coefficient between wheels and road increases, it needs to increase each wheel pressure. Oil passage of input valve (EV) is opened, oil passage of output valve (AV) is cut off, brake fluid stored in low pressure accumulator becomes oil source for next boost, and enters wheel brake caliper assembly through return pump (sRP) and input valve (EV).

Solenoid Valve	Powered Condition	Solenoid Valve Condition
Input Valve (EV)	OFF	Normally open
Output Valve (EV)	OFF	Normally closed

2.3 System Function Description

■ Electronic Stability Program System (ESP)

ESP is an active safety control system. It uses system sensor to monitor vehicle driving condition. In case of oversteering or understeering, it adopts power system and brake system intervention to help prevent tendency deviating from an ideal path, so that, it provides better driving safety.

■ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

ABS can prevent wheel from being locked in the event of sudden braking or braking on slippery road. When ABS detects that one or more wheels are going to lock, ESP control module will apply or release hydraulic pressure quickly.

■ Traction Control System (TCS)

When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a kind of wheel slip symptom) using system sensor, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel no longer slips.

■ Hill Descent Control System (HDC)

When driving down steep inclines after Hill Descent Control System (HDC) is turned on, the vehicle with automatic transmission can control the speed within a range of 10 to 35 km/h; If initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will be controlled at the minimum speed by default; Current controlling speed can be increased or decreased within the given speed range by depressing accelerator pedal or brake pedal.

With ENGINE START STOP switch in ON mode, press HDC switch to turn on hill descent control function. If vehicle speed is more than 35 km/h, hill descent control system is in standby status, and white indicator in instrument cluster comes on; If vehicle speed is no more than 35 km/h, system is activated, and green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

With hill descent control system ON, press HDC switch to turn off hill descent control system, and green indicator/white indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

When vehicle speed is more than 60 km/h, hill descent control system turns off.

2.4 Component Operation Description

■ ESP Control Module Assembly

During driving, combination switch assembly (steering angle sensor) monitors driver's turning direction and angle, wheel speed sensor monitors vehicle speed, pressure sensor monitors brake force, while lateral acceleration sensor and yaw rate sensor monitor vehicle's yaw and tilt speed. According to these information, ESP control module judges difference between normal and safety driving and driver's operation intention after

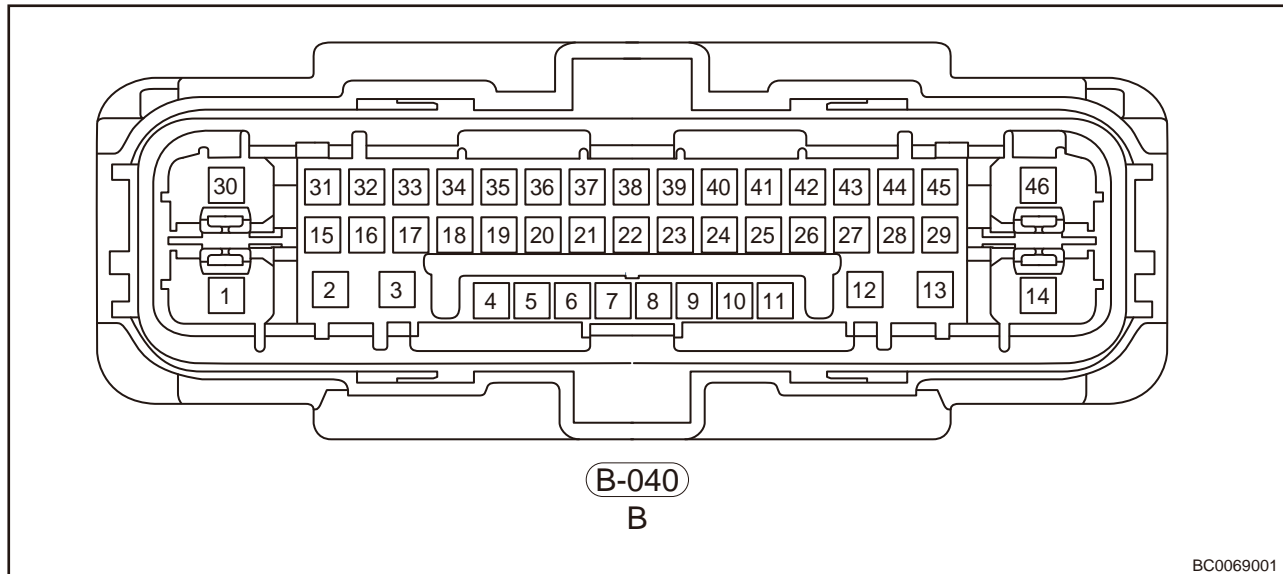
calculation, adjusts engine speed and wheel brake force. If actual movement track deviates from expected movement track, ESP control module automatically controls and applies brake to a wheel, thus correcting understeer and oversteer of vehicle, to avoid vehicle slipping, understeer, oversteer and locking, ensuring vehicle driving safety.

■ Wheel Speed Sensor

Wheel speed sensor is mainly used to test wheel speed. It has become an indispensable speed information reflecting equipment for modern vehicle. Vehicle's ESP, ABS and automatic transmission control system all need speed information.

3 System Circuit Diagram

3.1 Module Terminal Definition

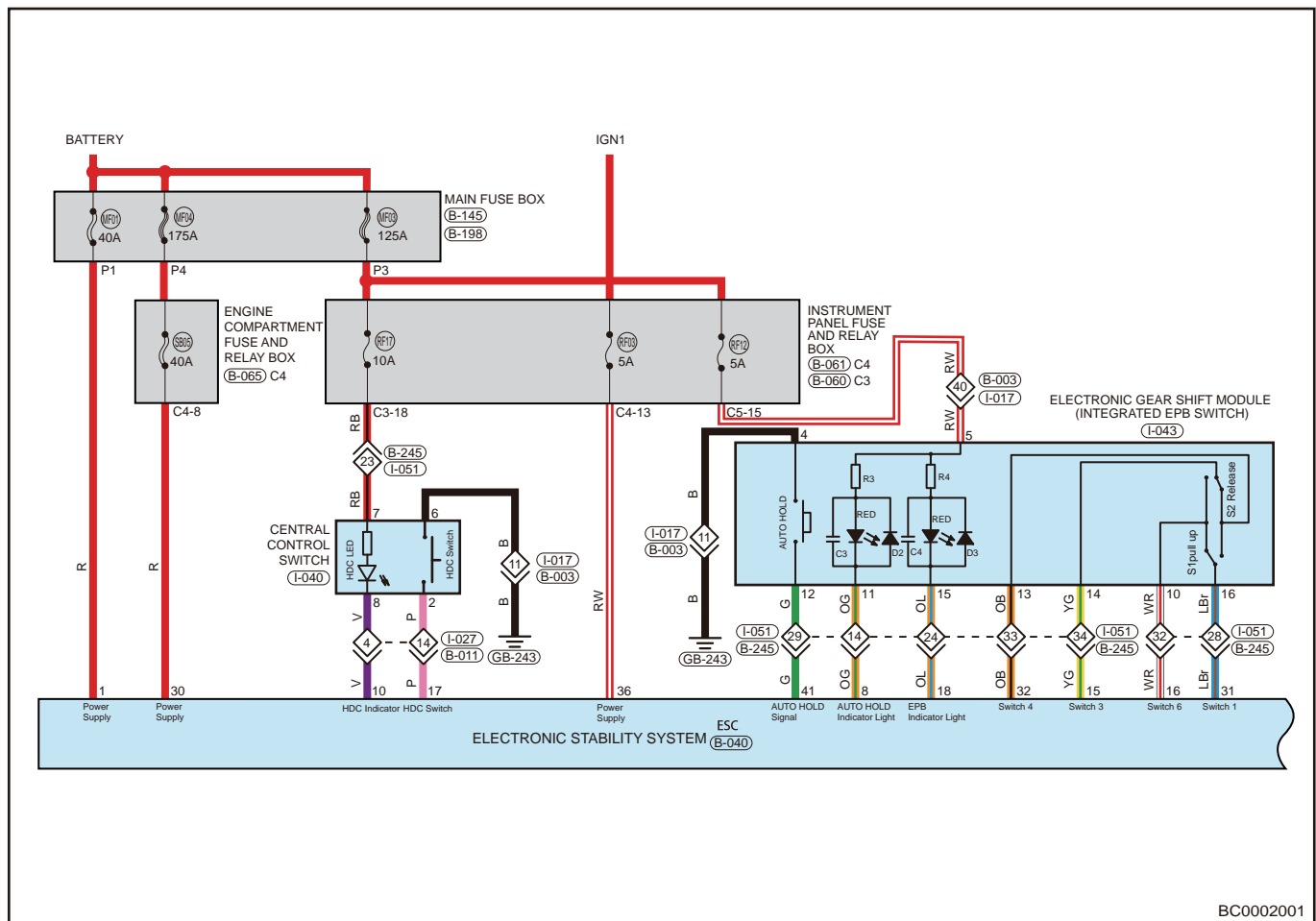


Terminal No.	Terminal Definition	Terminal No.	Terminal Definition
1	KL30 Power Supply	24	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply
2	Right EPB Motor Power Supply	25	CHA Low
3	Right EPB Motor Ground	26	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal
4	Reserved	27	Reserved
5	CHA High	28	Reserved
6	Reserved	29	Reserved
7	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal	30	KL30 Power Supply
8	AUTO HOLD Indicator	31	Switch 1
9	Reserved	32	Switch 4
10	HDC Switch Indicator	33	Reserved
11	CHA High	34	Reserved
12	Left EPB Motor Ground	35	Reserved
13	Left EPB Motor Power Supply	36	ING1 Power Supply
14	Ground	37	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal

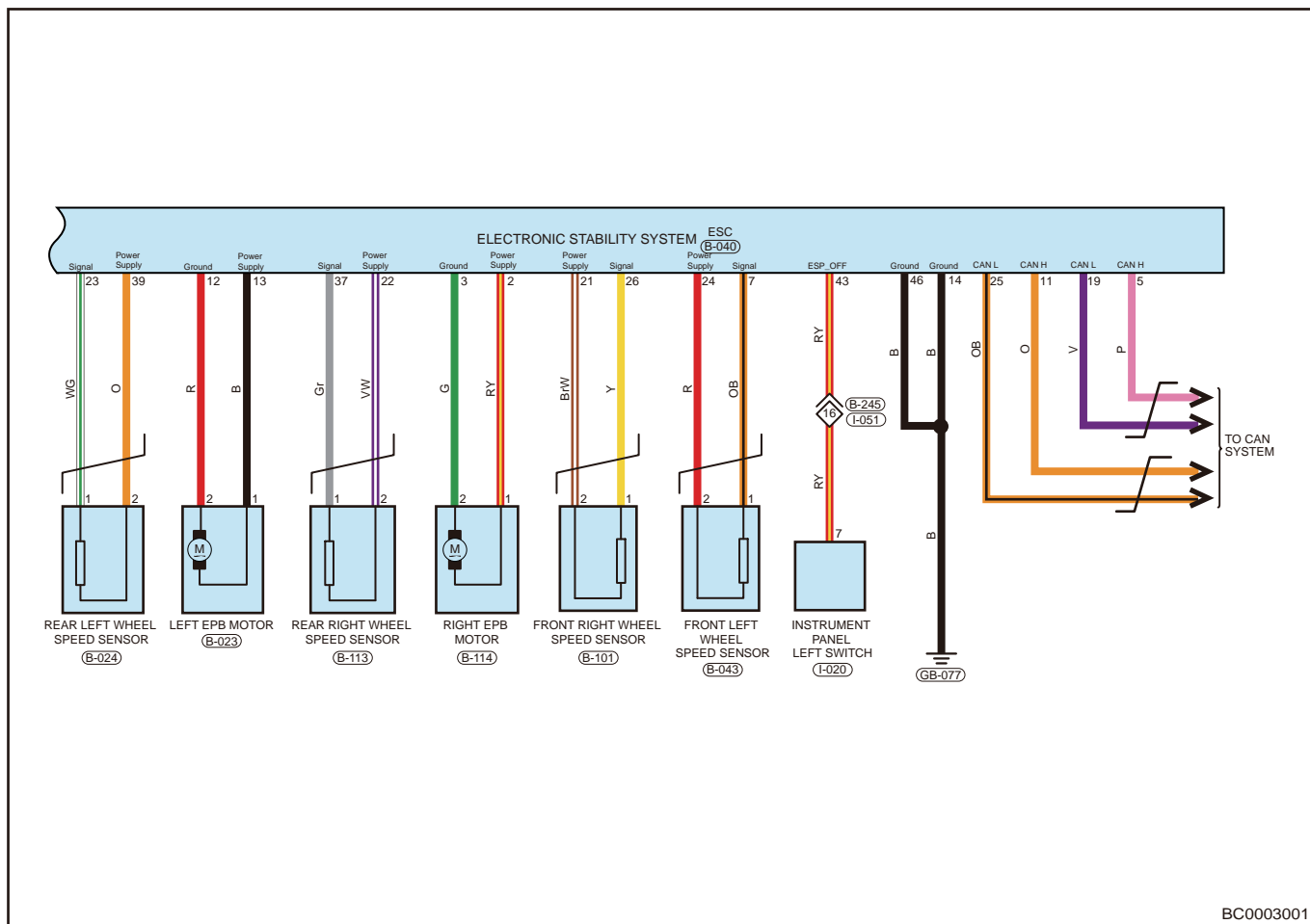
Terminal No.	Terminal Definition	Terminal No.	Terminal Definition
15	Switch 3	38	Brake Switch Signal
16	Switch 2	39	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply
17	HDC Switch Signal	40	Reserved
18	EPB Indicator	41	AUTO HOLD Switch Signal
19	CHA Low	42	Reserved
20	Reserved	43	ESP OFF
21	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply	44	Reserved
22	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Power Supply	45	Reserved
23	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal	46	Ground

3.2 Circuit Diagram

■ Brake Control System 1



■ Brake Control System 2



BC0003001

4 DIAGNOSTIC INFORMATION AND STEPS

4.1 Problem Symptoms Table

HINT:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Brake Control System:

Symptom	Possible Cause
ABS/ESP malfunction light comes on	Fuse
	Wire harness fault
	ESP control module assembly
ABS/ESP operation is abnormal	Wire harness fault
	Wheel speed sensor assembly
	ESP controller assembly
	Improper installation for hub bearing
	Brake line (blocked or leaked)
CAN network is faulty	Fuse

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Wire harness fault
	CGW controller assembly
	ESP controller assembly

4.2 Primary Inspection

Before performing diagnosis on ESP (IEPB) system, first check the easily accessible components that may cause ESP (IEPB) system fault. Visual inspection and appearance inspection procedures can quickly determine the fault, so that no further diagnosis is required.

- 1) Make sure that only the recommended size of tire and hub are installed on the vehicle. The pattern style and depth of coaxial tires must be the same.
- 2) Check ESP (IEPB) hydraulic regulator, brake line and connections for leakage.
- 3) Check the fuse of ESP (IEPB) system to make sure that the fuse is not blown and the type is correct. ESP (IEPB) system has two fuses: Pump motor fuse (40 A) and solenoid valve fuse (40 A).
- 4) Check battery voltage and check if battery post is corroded or loose. The normal operating voltage range of ESP (IEPB) system is 9 V to 16 V.
- 5) Check if grounding point of ESP (IEPB) ground wire is loose and if grounding position is changed.
- 6) ESP (IEPB) grounding wire must have good airtightness to prevent water and moisture from penetrating into the connector of ESP (IEPB) ECU through the holes in wire harness under the action of capillary (-siphon) effect, which may cause function failure. Measures: Apply sealant to the exposed end of wire harness and use heat shrinkable tube sleeve.
- 7) Perform visual inspection and appearance inspection on the following electrical components.
 - a. If wire harness and connector of ESP (IEPB) system related components are properly connected, pinched or cut.
 - b. If wire harness is routed too close to high voltage or large current devices, such as high voltage electrical components, alternator/starter, and after-sales added stereo amplifiers, etc.

Caution

- **High voltage or large current devices may cause induced noise in the circuit, interfering with the normal operation of circuit.**

- c. ESP (IEPB) components are sensitive to electromagnetic interference (EMI). If a intermittent malfunction is suspected, check if after-sales added anti-theft device, light or mobile phone is installed correctly.

8) ESP (IEPB) is an active safety system. Its main function makes optimal use of ground adhesion and maintains the maneuverability and driving stability of vehicle. However, ESP (IEPB) cannot prevent vehicle slippage absolutely when it exceeds physical limits or driving on slippery road at high speed.

9) If excessive noise is heard from ESP (IEPB), it may be caused by the following reasons:

- a. Connection between ESP (IEPB) assembly and ESP (IEPB) bracket becomes loose.
 - b. Connection between ESP (IEPB) bracket and vehicle body becomes loose.
 - c. Plastic gasket on ESP (IEPB) bracket is missing or damaged.
 - d. Brake line is deformed, impacted, or interfered.
 - e. Clip of brake line bracket is damaged.

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

■ Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

■ Ground Inspection

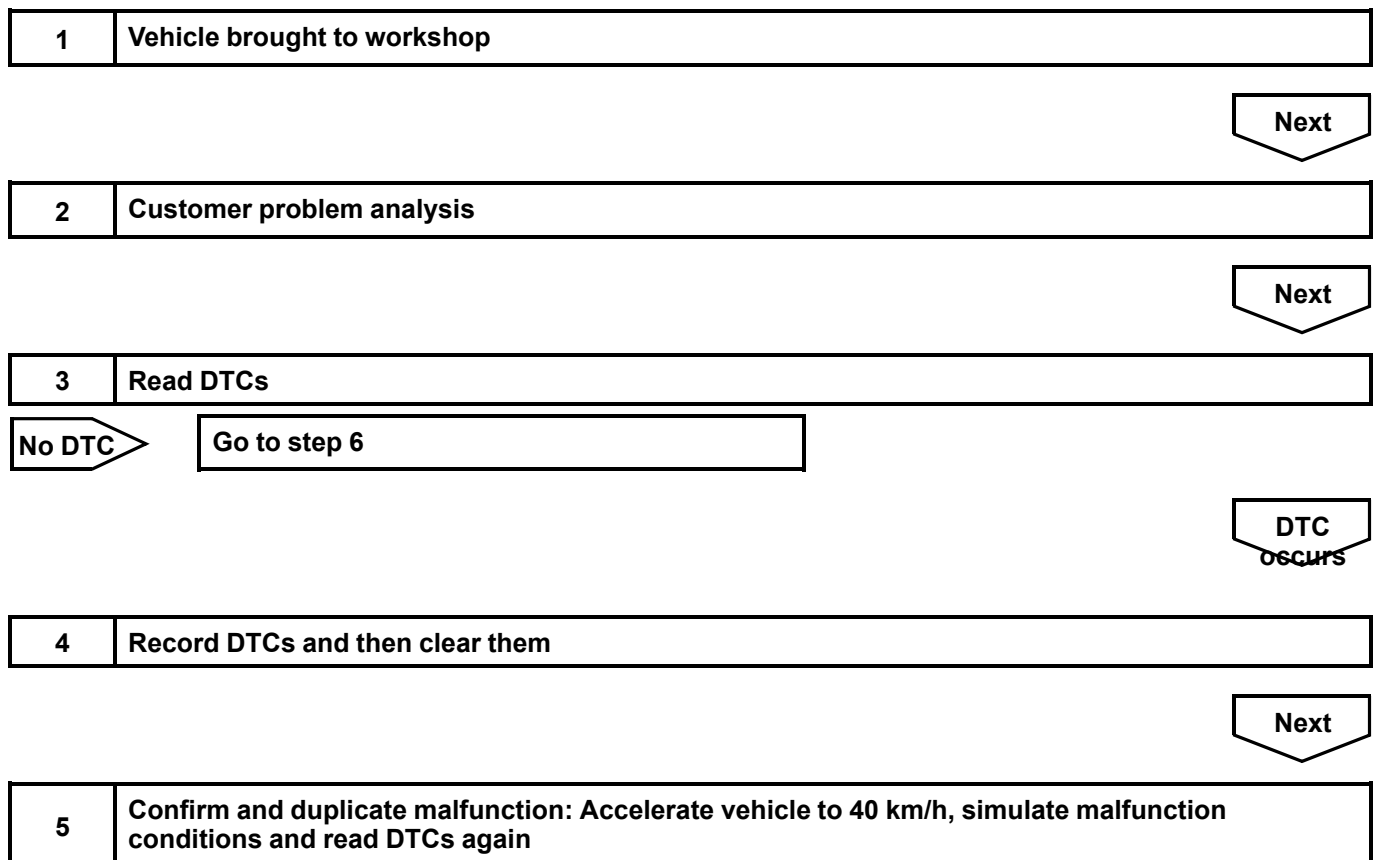
Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

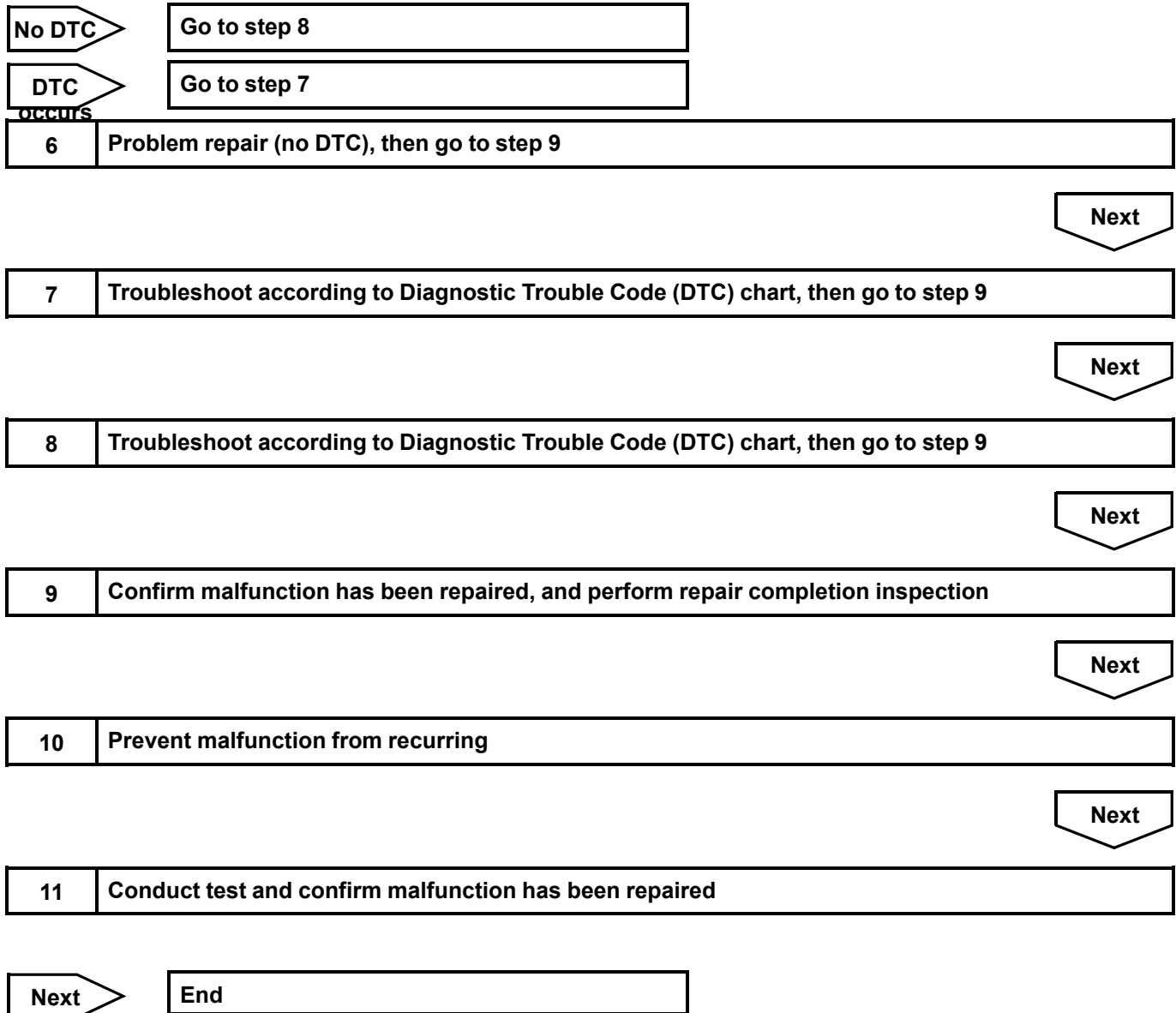
- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.3 Diagnosis Procedure

HINT:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the system.





■ **Problem Repair (No DTC)**

If there is a problem in brake system, but no DTC is stored in ESP, this problem is called a problem without DTC. A problem without DTC is caused by basic brake system malfunction. For example:

- Brake fluid leakage (it may result in weak braking, brake pedal over-travel or even ineffective braking).
- Using inferior brake fluid (it can result in corrosion of brake line and ESP hydraulic regulating module internal elements, or even ineffective braking).
- Air in brake line (it may result in weak braking or even ineffective braking).
- Brake line blockage (it may result in hard braking, braking deviation or even ineffective braking).
- Excessive wear of brake disc (it may result in weak braking, brake pedal over-travel).
- Brake booster malfunction (it may result in weak or hard braking, brake pedal over-travel or even ineffective braking).
- Incorrect brake line connection (it may result in ABS/ESP performance decreasing, drift, long braking distance etc. For the correct installation method, please refer to the marks near oil hole on ESP hydraulic regulating module: MC1 represents No. 1 master cylinder oil pipe; MC2 represents No. 2 master cylinder oil pipe; FL represents front left wheel cylinder oil pipe; FR represents front right wheel cylinder oil pipe; RL represents rear left wheel cylinder oil pipe; RR represents rear right wheel cylinder oil pipe).

⚠ Caution

- **No power supply to ESP or abnormally interrupted power supply will cause brake warning light, ABS warning light and ESP multi-functional warning light remaining on without storing any DTC.**

Hint:

Troubleshooting recommendation: Check corresponding components according to problem symptom, and troubleshoot by following the vehicle repair manual.

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

■ Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

In electronic system, there may be instantaneous poor contact problem in electrical circuit and a point that inputs and outputs signals, resulting in intermittent problem. Sometimes, the problem will disappear by itself, so it is not easy to find the source that problem occurs. When an intermittent problem occurs, simulate the problem in the following way to check if problem occurs again.

No.	Possible Cause	Problem Simulation	Note
1	When vibration may be the main cause	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Gently shake ESP ECU connector up and down, left and right • Gently shake ESP wire harness up and down, left and right • Gently shake sensor up and down, left and right • Gently shake other moving parts (such as wheel bearing) 	<p>If wire harness is twisted or broken due to tight pulling, new parts must be replaced.</p> <p>When vehicle is moving, short open/short circuit may occur in wheel speed sensor wire harness as the suspension system moves up and down. Therefore, a actual vehicle driving test must be carried out when checking sensor wire harness.</p>
2	When excessive electrical load may be the main cause	Turn on all electrical switches, including headlights and wipers, so as to make the power supply of vehicle work under high load.	/

Hint:

If problem does not occur again at this time, perform diagnosis and repair only when the next time the problem occurs. Generally, intermittent problem will gradually evolve into reproducible problem, which will not disappear by itself.

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

■ Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.4 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0001-04	TCS Control Channel Changeover Valve 1 (ESP Only)	1. Current through valve coil is more than 4 - 6.5 A. 2. Measured valve resistance is out of range. 3. Leaked current through the valve is more than 0.1 A. 4. Valve is overheated. 5. General problem occurs in valve driver/hardware.	1. Valve is overheated. 2. General problem occurs in valve driver/hardware.	Wait for 120 seconds, and perform the following operations: a. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF; b. Clear DTC service. C. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, then drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds. If DTC still exists, please replace ABS/ESP (-IEPB) hardware.
C0002-04	TCS Control Channel Changeover Valve 2 (ESP Only)			
C0003-04	TCS Control Channel High Pressure Switch Valve 1 (ESP Only)			
C0004-04	TCS Control Channel High Pressure Switch Valve 2 (ESP Only)			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		occurs in valve driver/hardware.		
C0010-04	Front Left Input Control	1. Current through valve coil is more than 4 - 6.5 A. 2. Measured valve resistance is out of range. 3. Leaked current through the valve is more than 0.1 A. 4. Valve is overheated. 5. General problem occurs in valve driver/hardware.		
C0011-04	Front Left Input Control			
C0014-04	Front Right Input Control			
C0015-04	Front Right Input Control			
C0018-04	Rear Left Input Control			
C0019-04	Rear Left Input Control			
C001C-04	Rear Right Input Control			
C001D-04	Rear Right Input Control			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C002001	Return Pump Power Supply Motor Relay Fault	1. Power supply voltage of motor relay connector is lower than the specified threshold; 2. Fuse of motor relay power supply circuit is damaged.	1. Intermittent fault; 2. Internal module fault.	1. Check power supply circuit of return pump motor. 2. Perform the following operations: a. Turn the ignition switch to ON; b. Clear DTCs; c. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, then drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds.
C002004	Return Pump Fault	1. Motor relay fault is detected; 2. Open or short occurs in the complete UMGEn measurement path; 3. Open, short or defective component exists in the follow current path; 4. Motor relay overload is detected; 5. Motor is disconnected.	Pump motor hardware problem	1. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF; 2. Clear DTC. 3. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, then drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds. If DTC still exists, please replace ABS/ESP (IEPB) hardware.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0031-00	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If sensor power supply circuit voltage or ECU power supply circuit voltage when ECU starts is lower than the specified threshold, the problem will be set to less than 8.3 V Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	1. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0031-09	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> If incorrect type of sensor is installed according to the sensor protocol, the problem will be set. Lack of stop pulse. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Check for incorrect clearance between rotating wheel and sensor. Check if incorrect type of wheel speed sensor is installed. If DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0031-11	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground	Short to GND or open in sensor circuit (sensor or power supply circuit)	Circuit fault	1. Check sensor circuit or power supply circuit; 2. If DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0031-12	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply	Short to UBATT in signal/power supply circuit		
C0031-13	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Open	1. Signal circuit is shorted to GND or circuit is open.		
C0031-29	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid	1. Unreasonable high frequency is received. 2. It is suspected that the wheel speed sensor is faulty. 3. Use the normal filtration time to monitor the interference and signal interference of one or two wheels, and monitor three or more wheels in a	1. Wheel speed sensor is faulty. 2. Interference and signal interference occurs. 3. Circuit is faulty. 4. It is not fixed firmly. 5. Fall off from bracket. 6. Teeth is worn or missing. 7. Input amplifier in ECU is faulty.	1. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		<p>short filtration time. 4. Circuit is open. 5. Short to UZ in circuit. 6. Short to GND in circuit. 7. Connector is in poor contact. 8. It is not fixed firmly. 9. Fall off from bracket. 10. Teeth is worn or missing. 11. Input amplifier in ECU is faulty.</p>		<p>still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.</p>
C0031-37	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range	<p>1. If the maximum wheel speed is reached. 2. If wheel speed is higher than the specified threshold, the problem will be set. 3. If incorrect type of sensor is installed. 4. WSS signal is subject to electrical or mechanical interference. 5. WSS sensor is defective.</p>		<p>1. Check and eliminate any electrical or mechanical interference to the sensor. 2. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 3. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 4. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds.</p>
C003208	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction	<p>1. At least one wheel speed sensor is installed in the wrong direction. 2. At least one incorrect wheel speed sensor is installed. 3. At least one wheel speed sensor is connected incorrectly.</p>	<p>1. Wheel speed sensor is installed incorrectly. 2. Wheel speed sensor is not correct.</p>	<p>1. Make sure to use the correct type of WSS. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF. 4. Clear DTC. 5. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, then drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds.</p>

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0034-00	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If sensor power supply circuit voltage or ECU power supply circuit voltage when ECU starts is lower than the specified threshold, the problem will be set to less than 8.3 V Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	1. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0034-09	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> If incorrect type of sensor is installed according to the sensor protocol, the problem will be set. Lack of stop pulse. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Check for incorrect clearance between rotating wheel and sensor. Check if incorrect type of wheel speed sensor is installed. If DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0034-11	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground	Short to GND or open in sensor circuit (sensor or power supply circuit)	Circuit fault	1. Check sensor circuit or power supply circuit; 2. If DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0034-12	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply	Short to UBATT in signal/power supply circuit		
C0034-13	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Open	Signal circuit is shorted to GND or circuit is open		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0034-29	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid	<p>1. Unreasonable high frequency is received. 2. It is suspected that the wheel speed sensor is faulty. 3. Use the normal filtration time to monitor the interference and signal interference of one or two wheels, and monitor three or more wheels in a short filtration time. 4. Circuit is open. 5. Short to UZ in circuit. 6. Short to GND in circuit. 7. Connector is in poor contact. 8. It is not fixed firmly. 9. Fall off from bracket. 10. Teeth is worn or missing. 11. Input amplifier in ECU is faulty.</p>	<p>1. Wheel speed sensor is faulty. 2. Interference and signal interference occurs. 3. Circuit is faulty. 4. It is not fixed firmly. 5. Fall off from bracket. 6. Teeth is worn or missing. 7. Input amplifier in ECU is faulty.</p>	<p>1. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.</p>
C0034-37	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range	<p>1. If the maximum wheel speed is reached. 2. If wheel speed is higher than the specified threshold, the problem will be set. 3. If incorrect type of sensor is installed. 4. WSS signal is subject to electrical or mechanical interference. 5. WSS sensor is defective.</p>		<p>1. Check and eliminate any electrical or mechanical interference to the sensor. 2. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 3. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 4. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds.</p>

C003508	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction	1. At least one wheel speed sensor is installed in the wrong direction. 2. At least one incorrect wheel speed sensor is installed. 3. At least one wheel speed sensor is connected incorrectly.	1. Wheel speed sensor is installed incorrectly. 2. Wheel speed sensor is not correct.	1. Make sure to use the correct type of WSS. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF. 4. Clear DTC. 5. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, then drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds.
---------	---	---	---	---

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0037-00	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If sensor power supply circuit voltage or ECU power supply circuit voltage when ECU starts is lower than the specified threshold, the problem will be set to less than 8.3 V Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	1. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0037-09	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If incorrect type of sensor is installed according to the sensor protocol, the problem will be set Lack of stop pulse 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction 	1. Check for incorrect clearance between rotating wheel and sensor. 2. Check if incorrect type of wheel speed sensor is installed. 3. If DTC still exists/ problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0037-11	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground	Short to GND or open in sensor circuit (sensor or power supply circuit)	Circuit fault	1. Check sensor circuit or power supply circuit; 2. If DTC still exists/ problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C0037-12	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply	Short to UBATT in signal/power supply circuit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0037-13	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Open	Signal circuit is shorted to GND or circuit is open		
C0037-29	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid	<p>1. Unreasonable high frequency is received. 2. It is suspected that the wheel speed sensor is faulty. 3. Use the normal filtration time to monitor the interference and signal interference of one or two wheels, and monitor three or more wheels in a short filtration time. 4. Circuit is open. 5. Short to UZ in circuit. 6. Short to GND in circuit. 7. Connector is in poor contact. 8. It is not fixed firmly. 9. Fall off from bracket. 10. Teeth is worn or missing. 11. Input amplifier in ECU is faulty.</p>	<p>1. Wheel speed sensor is faulty. 2. Interference and signal interference occurs. 3. Circuit is faulty. 4. It is not fixed firmly. 5. Fall off from bracket. 6. Teeth is worn or missing. 7. Input amplifier in ECU is faulty.</p>	<p>1. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.</p>
C0037-37	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range	<p>1. If the maximum wheel speed is reached. 2. If wheel speed is higher than the specified threshold, the problem will be set. 3. If incorrect type of sensor is installed. 4. WSS signal is subject to electrical or mechanical interference. 5. WSS sensor is defective.</p>		<p>1. Check and eliminate any electrical or mechanical interference to the sensor. 2. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 3. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 4. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds.</p>

C003808	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction	1. At least one wheel speed sensor is installed in the wrong direction. 2. At least one incorrect wheel speed sensor is installed. 3. At least one wheel speed sensor is connected incorrectly.	1. Wheel speed sensor is installed incorrectly. 2. Wheel speed sensor is not correct.	1. Make sure to use the correct type of WSS. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF. 4. Clear DTC. 5. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, then drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds.
---------	---	---	---	---

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C003A-00	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If sensor power supply circuit voltage or ECU power supply circuit voltage when ECU starts is lower than the specified threshold, the problem will be set to less than 8.3 V Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction The sensor is shorted to another sensor 	1. Make sure to use the correct type of sensor. 2. Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position. 3. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists/problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C003A-09	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> If incorrect type of sensor is installed according to the sensor protocol, the problem will be set Lack of stop pulse 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor fault Sensor is connected incorrectly or installed in the wrong direction 	1. Check for incorrect clearance between rotating wheel and sensor. 2. Check if incorrect type of wheel speed sensor is installed. 3. If DTC still exists/ problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C003A-11	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground	Short to GND or open in sensor circuit (sensor or power supply circuit)	Circuit fault	1. Check sensor circuit or power supply circuit; 2. If DTC still exists/ problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor.
C003A-12	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply	Short to UBATT in signal/power supply circuit		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C003A-13	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Open	Signal circuit is shorted to GND or circuit is open		
C003A-29	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid	<p>1. Unreasonable high frequency is received. 2. It is suspected that the wheel speed sensor is faulty. 3. Use the normal filtration time to monitor the interference and signal interference of one or two wheels, and monitor three or more wheels in a short filtration time. 4. Circuit is open. 5. Short to UZ in circuit. 6. Short to GND in circuit. 7. Connector is in poor contact. 8. It is not fixed firmly. 9. Fall off from bracket. 10. Teeth is worn or missing. 11. Input amplifier in ECU is faulty.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wheel speed sensor is faulty. • Interference and signal interference occurs. • Circuit is faulty. • It is not fixed firmly. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Make sure to use the correct type of sensor • Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position • Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists/ problem is not resolved, please replace wheel speed sensor
C003A-37	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range	<p>1. If the maximum wheel speed is reached. 2. If wheel speed is higher than the specified threshold, the problem will be set. 3. If incorrect type of sensor is installed. 4. WSS signal is subject to electrical or mechanical interference. 5. WSS sensor is defective.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fall off from bracket. • Teeth is worn or missing. • Input amplifier in ECU is faulty. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check and eliminate any electrical or mechanical interference to the sensor • Make sure to use the correct type of sensor • Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position • Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF, clear DTC, wait for 10 seconds, and then drive at 50 kph for 30 seconds

C003B08	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction	1. At least one wheel speed sensor is installed in the wrong direction. 2. At least one incorrect wheel speed sensor is installed. 3. At least one wheel speed sensor is connected incorrectly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Wheel speed sensor is installed incorrectly Wheel speed sensor is not correct 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Make sure to use the correct type of WSS Check if wheel speed sensor is installed at the correct position Ignition switch Clear DTCs Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, then drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds
---------	--	---	--	---

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C004064	Brake Switch Malfunction: Unreliable	1. There is a mechanical defect in BLS. 2. BLS is adjusted incorrectly. 3. BLS is installed incorrectly.	Brake switch is faulty.	Replace BLS switch properly. Perform the following operations: 1. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF. 2. Clear DTC. 3. Perform ECU reset service.
C004401	Pressure Sensor Fault (Circuit)	1. Open or short to ground in pressure signal circuit or open in sensor power supply; 2. Short to sensor ground or open in pressure signal circuit.	Sensor circuit fault	1. Check for ground to sensor signal circuit. 2. Otherwise, sensor signal circuit is disconnected/ open.
C004428	Pressure Sensor Fault (Signal)	1. Pressure sensor of brake master cylinder has mechanical or electrical defects. 2. Contact resistance in pressure sensor circuit. 3. Open in test pulse signal circuit.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Intermittent fault Internal module fault 	1. Drive vehicle for a period of time and apply brake for more than 5 seconds during this period. 2. Replace the ABS/ESP (IEPB) hardware.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0051-29	Steering Wheel Angle Sensor Signal Invalid (ESP Only)	Steering wheel angle sensor signal invalid (ESP only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Angle sensor is not calibrated Angle sensor circuit is short or open Angle sensor is damaged 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Calibrate the angle sensor. Check for short or open in angle sensor circuit. Replace the angle sensor.
C0051-54	Steering Wheel Angle Sensor Uncalibrated (ESP Only)	Steering wheel angle sensor uncalibrated (ESP only)	Angle sensor is not calibrated	Recalibrate the angle sensor.
C0051-64	Steering Wheel Angle Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)	<p>1. Yaw rate is more than 10 (deg / s * m / s). 2. After the effective long-term compensation, if offset exceeds the limit, problem will be set immediately. 3. SAS scope is monitored. 4. SAS slope is monitored. 5. Perform comparison between SAS authenticity and yaw rate. 6. When vehicle speed is higher than 20 m/s, compare the measured yaw rate with the model yaw rate calculated based on steering angle. 7. Compare the measured yaw rate calculated based on steering angle with the yaw rate calculated based on wheel speed sensors of two axles. It is determined as a fault.</p>	<p>1. Yaw rate sensor is installed incorrectly. 2. Yaw rate sensor is faulty. 3. Yaw rate sensor is not calibrated.</p>	<p>1. Check the installation of SAS sensor. 2. Check if steering mechanism is installed incorrectly. 3. Check if SAS sensor is faulty. 4. Ensure that steering angle sensor calibration is successfully completed and drive vehicle smoothly at a speed of 60 kph for 30 seconds in left and right curves. After troubleshooting, clear DTCs immediately.</p>

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0061-64	Lateral Acceleration Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)	<p>1. If the absolute value of lateral acceleration is greater than 20 m/s². 2. The lateral acceleration sensor signal and yaw rate signal or SAS signal are unreasonable.</p>	<p>1. Inertial sensor is not installed correctly or not aligned. 2. Inertial sensor is not calibrated. 3. General electrical problem occurs in yaw rate sensor.</p>	<p>1. Check if inertial sensor is installed incorrectly or not aligned. 2. Check the inertial sensor calibration.</p>

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C0062-64	Longitudinal Acceleration Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)	1. Compare longitudinal acceleration with acceleration value calculated based on the vehicle speed, and sensor value exceeds the limit of 20 m/s ² . 2. Uncertainty fault occurs in longitudinal acceleration sensor.		
C0063-64	Yaw Rate Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)	1. If Yrs deviation exceeds 5.25 deg/s. 2. When vehicle is stationary, the absolute value of yaw rate sensor signal exceeds 30 deg/s. 3. The absolute value of yaw rate sensor (YRS) signal is more than 180 94.75 deg/s. 4. Unreasonable inputs of yaw rate and other sensors (WSS, SAS, Ay) are measured. 5. Initial value for YawRate (-detection time is 100 ms). 6. Redundant error of lateral acceleration sensor is detected (-minimum detection time is 20 ms).		
C0063-01	Yaw Rate Sensor General Electrical Fault	Yaw rate sensor general electrical fault		
C0063-54	Yaw Rate Sensor Uncalibrated	Yaw rate sensor uncalibrated		
DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C008904	Switch Fault (ESP (-IEPB) OFF Switch or AVH Switch Long Pressed)	The pressing time for AVH/PATA button exceeds the specified time	1. Switch is pressed and held for a long time. 2. Switch is stuck.	Make sure button is not pressed for a long time

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C1000-16	ECU Voltage Too Low	The power supply voltage of ECU is lower than 9.6 V for 1 second	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power supply fault Circuit fault 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check fuse Measure battery voltage Check charging system Check wire harness or connector Check ESP control module
C1000-17	ECU Voltage Too High	The power supply of ECU is higher than 16.5 V for 1 second		
C1001-04	ECU Fault (General Software Problem)	Incorrect software configuration occurs	Internal fault in ECU system	Replace ECU SW
C220249	CAN Hardware Fault	Hardware is damaged or switched	Hardware fault	Replace ECU module
C220304	Valve Relay Fault	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> If a short to ground in ASIC is set, a fault will be set. The electrical resistivity of valve path supply line is higher than the specified threshold. The valve relay cannot be closed. The valve relay cannot be opened. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Intermittent fault Hardware fault 	Perform the following operations: a. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF. b. Clear DTC. c. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds. If DTC still exists, please replace ABS/ESP (-IEPB) hardware.
C220400	General Valve Fault (Overheat Protection, Signal Invalid, Hardware Fault)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> If the leaked current is higher than the specified threshold, a fault will be set. If the valve relay cannot be closed by the redundant safety switch, a fault will be set. If the internal current source of driver ASIC used for valve coil resistance measurement is not equal to the required source current, a fault will be set. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> System overheat protection Signal invalid Hardware fault 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> Wait for 120 seconds to 300 seconds to cool valve and pump motor. Check if DTC has been restored. Perform the following operations: a. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF. b. Clear DTC (SID14h). c. Perform ECU reset service (SID 11h) and wait for 10 seconds. If DTC still exists, please replace ABS/ESP (-IEPB) hardware.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C220800	Wheel Speed Sensor General Fault (Interchanged Sensor Installation, Multiple Sensor Error)	1. At least one wheel speed sensor is installed in the wrong direction. 2. At least one incorrect wheel speed sensor is installed. 3. At least one wheel speed sensor is connected incorrectly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Position installation error Circuit fault 	1. Check if current wheel speed sensor configuration is correct. 2. Check if WSS power supply circuit is undervoltage.
C1009-00	ECU Hardware Related Fault	1. uC fault is reported by an incorrect signal module. 2. CPU is abnormal and normal program flow stops. 3. Microcontroller RAM is faulty. 4. Internal system stack or timing error occurs. 5. SPI fault, EEPROM error and ECU ADC conversion fault occur. 6. Lack of charge pump buffer capacitor or charge pump performance. 7 Open or short occurs in the complete UMGEn measurement path. 8. Open, short or defective component exists in the follow current path. 9. Motor relay or gate driver is defective/ overloaded. 10. Fuse is damaged or power supply wire is missing. 11. ASIC internal fault occurs in the load dump detection logic part.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Intermittent fault ECU hardware fault 	Turn the ignition switch to OFF and then to ON, wait for 5 to 20 seconds, then perform the following operations: 1. Turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF; 2. Clear DTC. 3. Perform ECU reset service and wait for 10 seconds, if DTC still exists, please replace ABS/ESP (- IEPB) hardware.

■ TCS Control Channel Changeover Valve Fault

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C0001-04	TCS Control Channel Changeover Valve 1 (ESP Only)
C0002-04	TCS Control Channel Changeover Valve 2 (ESP Only)
C0003-04	TCS Control Channel High Pressure Switch Valve 1 (ESP Only)

DTC	DTC Definition
C0004-04	TCS Control Channel High Pressure Switch Valve 2 (ESP Only)
C0010-04	Front Left Input Control
C0011-04	Front Left Input Control
C0014-04	Front Right Input Control
C0015-04	Front Right Input Control
C0018-04	Rear Left Input Control
C0019-04	Rear Left Input Control
C001C-04	Rear Right Input Control
C001D-04	Rear Right Input Control

1 Check intermittent fault

- (a) Wait for 120 seconds, turn the ignition switch to ON and then to OFF.
 (b) Clear DTC service again.

OK

Drive vehicle at 50 kph for 30 seconds, if DTC still exists, please replace ABS/ESP (IEPB) hardware

NG

2 Check fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Remove SB05 (40A) and main relay box MF01 (40A) from engine compartment fuse box.
 (d) Check if fuse is blown.

NG

Check and repair or replace corresponding fuse

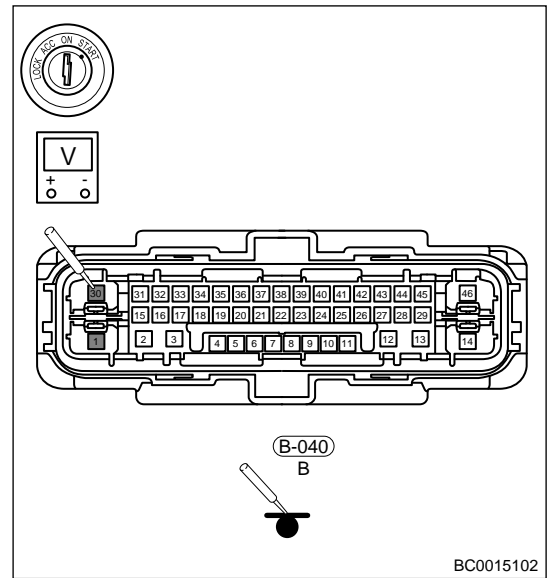
OK

3 Check related wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP module assembly connector B-040.
- (d) Check if related wire harnesses are worn, pinched or broken.
- (e) Check if related connector terminals are loose, broken, bent or corroded.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, measure if voltage between ESP module assembly connector B-040 (1, 30) and body ground is normal according to table below.

Standard Voltage

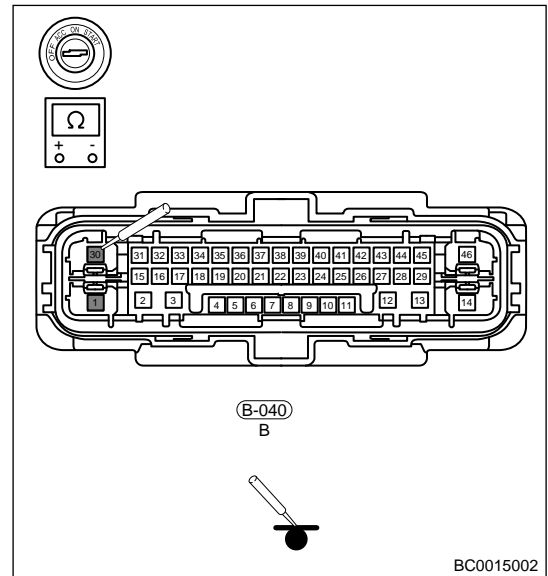
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (1, 30) - Body ground	Always	$\geq 12\text{ V}$



- (g) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between ESP module assembly connector B-040 (1, 30) and body ground according to table below.

Normal Resistance

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (1) - Body ground	Always	$\leq 1\ \Omega$
B-047 (30) - Body ground	Always	$\leq 1\ \Omega$



NG Check and repair wire harness or connector

OK

4 Check control module ESP (IEPB)

- (a) After replacement, it is necessary to perform configuration.

OK System is normal and there is no fault

NG Check and repair or replace controller ESP (-IEPB) assembly

Return Pump Fault

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C002004	Return Pump Fault
C002001	Return Pump Power Supply Motor Relay Fault 1

⚠ Caution

- **When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.**

1 Check for DTCs

- (a) Leave vehicle for 5 minutes to make it cool down, clear and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
- (b) Refer to "DTC confirmation procedure".
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG

Problem indicated by DTC is intermittent (- system overheat protection)

OK

2 Check fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Remove MF-01 (40 A) from main fuse box.
- (d) Check if fuse is blown.

NG

Replace fuse MF-01

OK

3 Check wire harness and connector

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform following procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP(IEPB) control module connector B -040.
- (d) Check wire harness between terminal P1 of main fuse box connector B-145 and terminal 1 of ESP (IEPB) control module assembly.
- (e) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (f) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (g) Using a multimeter, check for continuity in wiring harness between main fuse box P1 and ESP (IEPB) controller.

NG

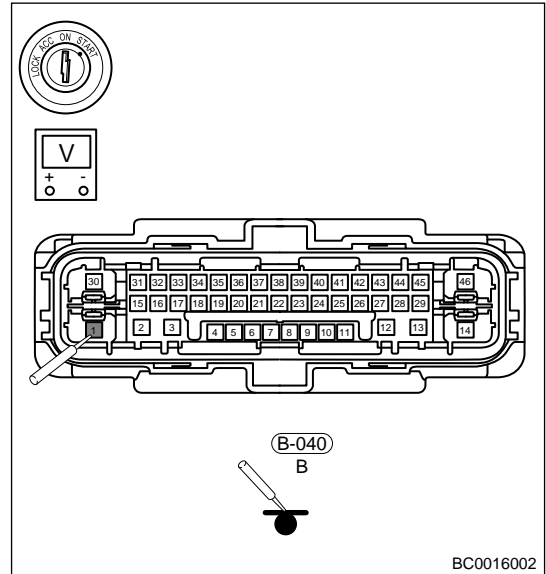
Repair or replace body wire harness and connector

OK

4 Check power supply circuit of ESP (IEPB) control module

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module connector B-040.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between terminal 1 of ESP (IEPB) control module assembly and body ground to check if power supply circuit of system is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (1) - Body ground (digital multimeter)	Always	Not less than 12 V
B-040 (1) - Body ground (test light 21 W)	Always	On



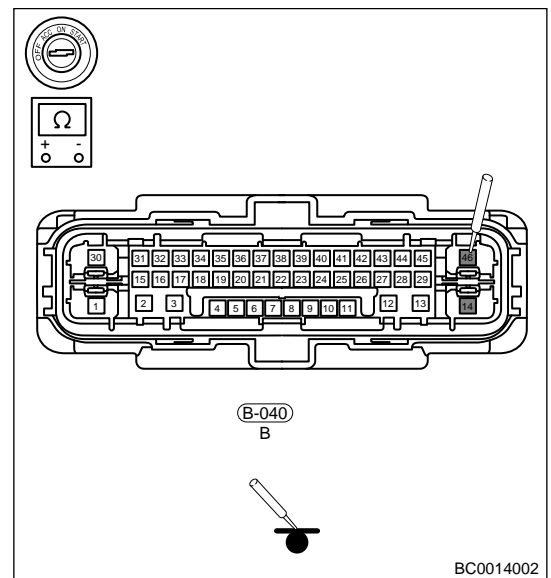
NG Repair or replace body wire harness and connector

OK

5 Check ground circuit of ESP (IEPB) control module

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module connector B-040.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals 14, 46 of ESP (IEPB) control module assembly and body ground to check if ground circuit of system is normal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (14) - Body ground	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (46) - Body ground	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Repair or replace body wire harness and connector

OK

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
 (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally

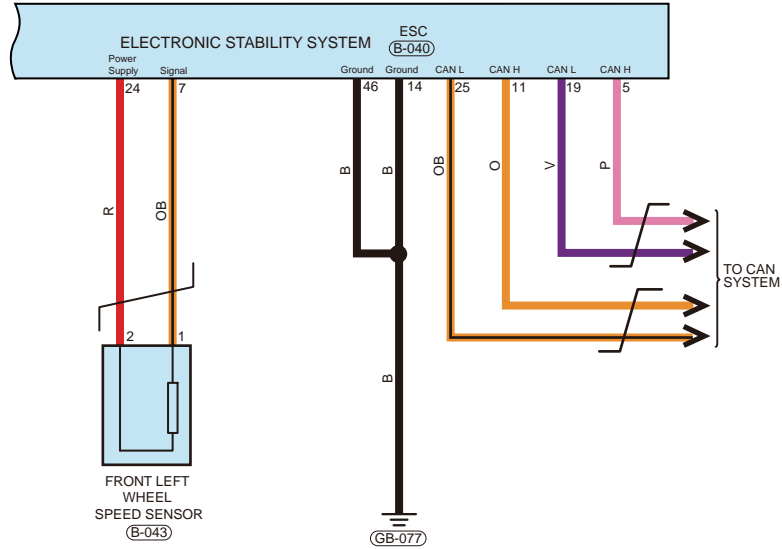
NG

Replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

■ Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Fault**Description**

DTC	DTC Definition
C0031-00	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Fault
C0031-09	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault
C0031-11	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground
C0031-12	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply
C0031-13	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Open
C0031-29	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid
C0031-37	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range
C0032-08	Front Left Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction

Circuit Diagram



BC0005001

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1 Check front left wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the front left wheel speed sensor connector B-043.
- Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

NG Repair or replace front left wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

OK

2 Check installation of front left wheel speed sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check front left wheel speed sensor mounting bolt for looseness.
- (d) Check if mounting clearance between front left wheel speed sensor and front left hub bearing is too large or too small.
- (e) Check installation position of front left wheel speed sensor for dirt.

NG

Tighten mounting bolt properly, clean or replace front left wheel speed sensor

OK

3

Check front left wheel speed sensor

- (a) Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- (b) Drive vehicle straight ahead, and read datastream of front left wheel speed sensor with diagnostic tester.
- (c) Check if data change of front left wheel speed sensor matches that of other wheel speed sensors, and if it is correct.

NG

Replace front left wheel speed sensor

OK

4

Check front left hub bearing

- (a) Check front left hub bearing for excessive clearance.
- (b) Check front left hub bearing magnetic strip for foreign matter, defect or damage.

NG

Replace front left hub bearing

OK

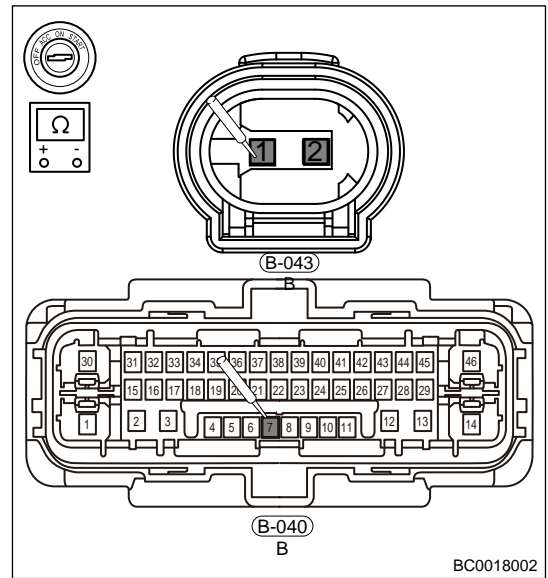
5

Check wire harness and connector (front left wheel speed sensor - ESP (IEPB) control module)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module connector B-040.
- (d) Disconnect the front left wheel speed sensor connector B-043.

(e) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals of connector B-040 and connector B-043 to check if there is an open in the wire harness and connector according to table below.

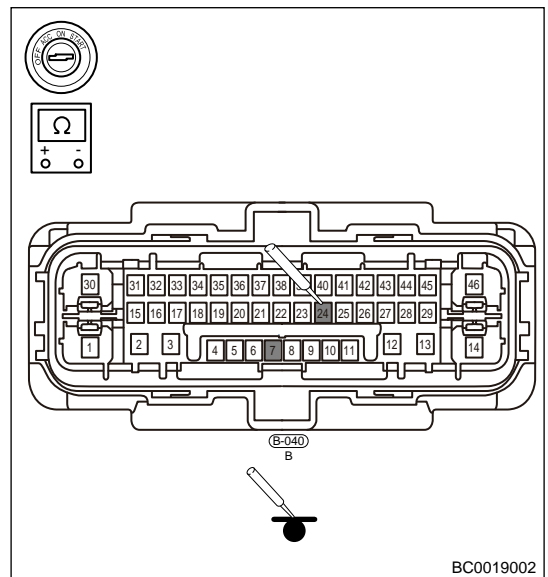
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (7) - B-043 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (24) - B-043 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (7) - B-043 (2)	Always	∞
B-040 (24) - B-043 (1)	Always	∞



BC0018002

(f) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between connector B-040 and body ground to check if front left wheel speed sensor is short to ground.

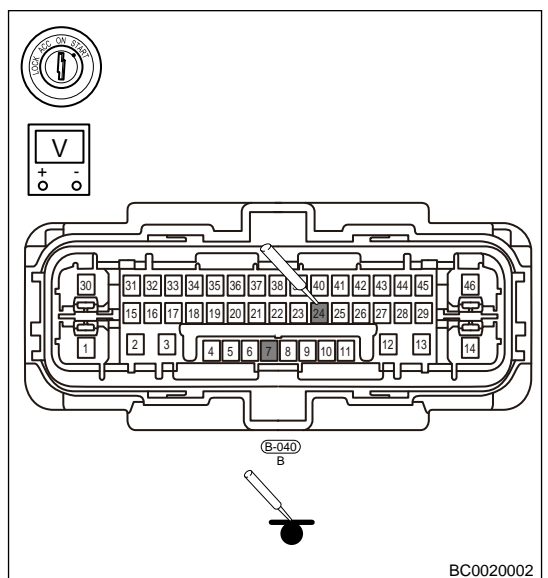
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (7) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-040 (24) - Body ground	Always	∞



BC0019002

(g) Connect the negative battery cable.
 (h) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (i) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, measure voltage between connector B-040 and body ground to check if front left wheel speed sensor is short to power supply according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (7) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V
B-040 (24) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V



BC0020002

NG

Repair or replace wire harness and connector between front left wheel speed sensor and ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

OK

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
 (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally

NG

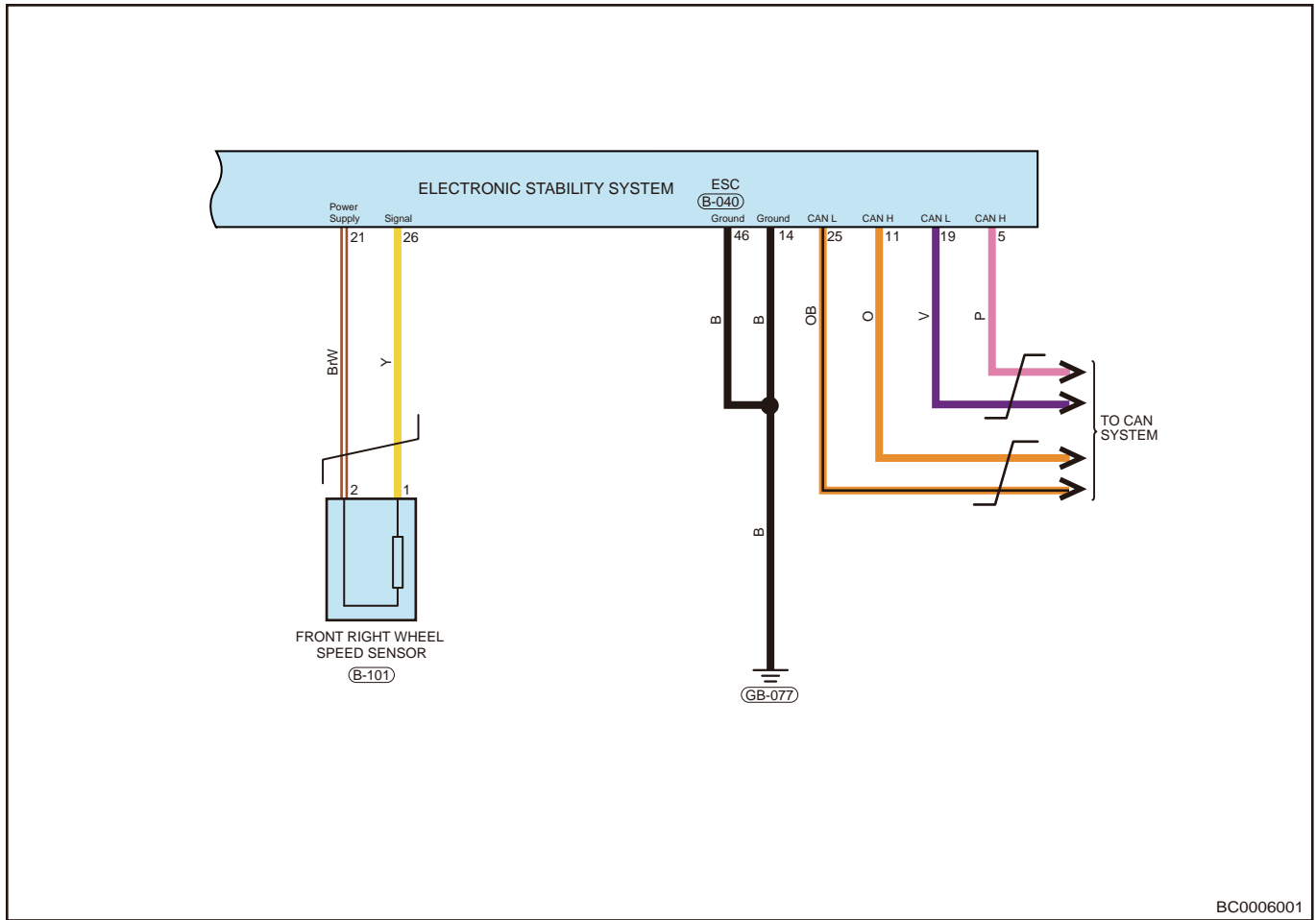
Replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

■ **Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Fault**

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C0034-00	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Fault
C0034-09	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault
C0034-11	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground
C0034-12	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply
C0034-13	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Open
C0034-29	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid
C0034-37	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range
C0035-08	Front Right Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction

Circuit Diagram



BC0006001

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1 Check front right wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the front right wheel speed sensor connector B-101.
- Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

NG Repair or replace front right wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

OK

2 Check installation of front right wheel speed sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check front right wheel speed sensor mounting bolt for looseness.
- (d) Check if mounting clearance between front right wheel speed sensor and front right hub bearing is too large or too small.
- (e) Check installation position of front right wheel speed sensor for dirt.

NG

Tighten mounting bolt properly, clean or replace front right wheel speed sensor

OK

3

Check front right wheel speed sensor

- (a) Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- (b) Drive vehicle straight ahead, and read datastream of front right wheel speed sensor with diagnostic tester.
- (c) Check if data change of front right wheel speed sensor matches that of other wheel speed sensors, and if it is correct.

NG

Replace front right wheel speed sensor

OK

4

Check front right hub bearing

- (a) Check front right hub bearing for excessive clearance.
- (b) Check front right hub bearing magnetic strip for foreign matter, defect or damage.

NG

Replace front right hub bearing

OK

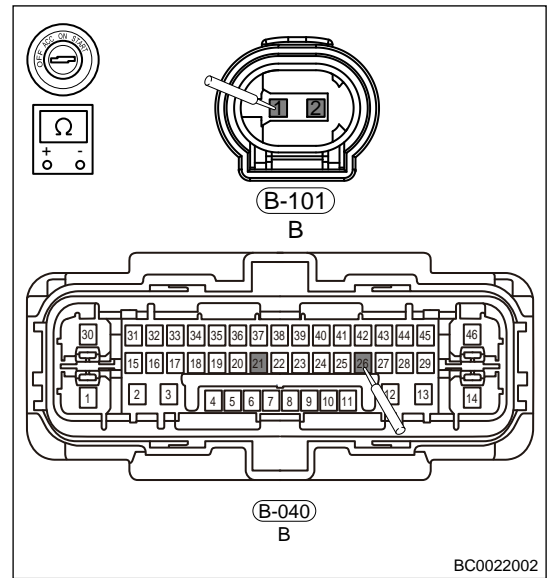
5

Check wire harness and connector (Front right wheel speed sensor - ESP (IEPB) control module)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module connector B-040.
- (d) Disconnect the front right wheel speed sensor connector B-101.

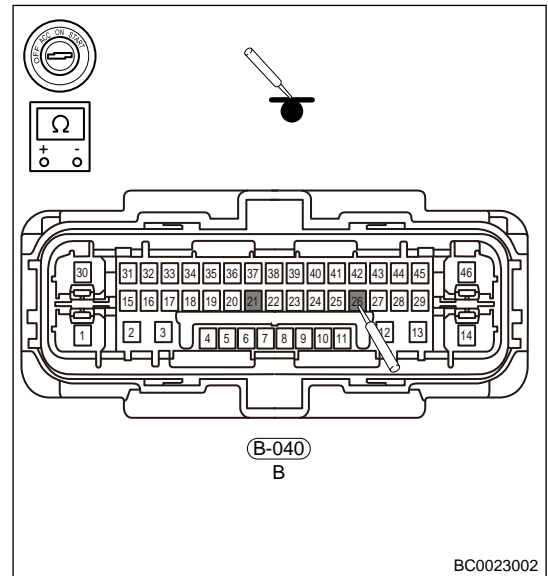
(e) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals of connector B-040 and connector B-101 to check if there is an open in the wire harness and connector according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (26) - B-101 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (21) - B-101 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (21) - B-101 (2)	Always	∞
B-040 (26) - B-101 (1)	Always	∞



(f) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between connector B-040 and body ground to check if front right wheel speed sensor is short to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (21) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-040 (26) - Body ground	Always	∞

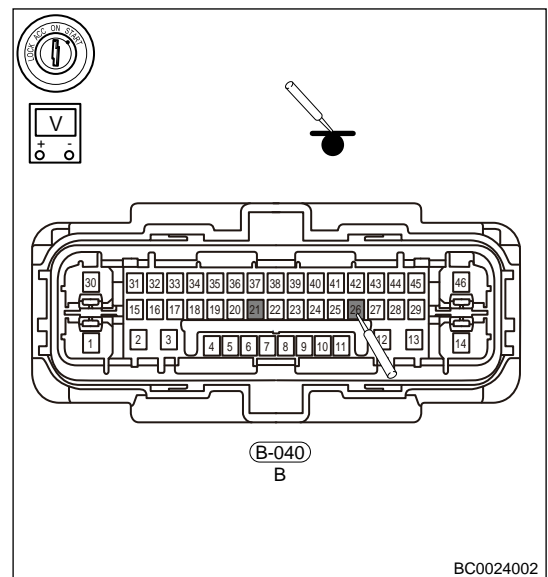


(g) Connect the negative battery cable.

(h) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

(i) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between connector B-040 and body ground to check if front right wheel speed sensor is short to power supply according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (21) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V
B-040 (26) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V



NG

Repair or replace wire harness and connector between front right wheel speed sensor and ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

OK

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
 (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally

NG

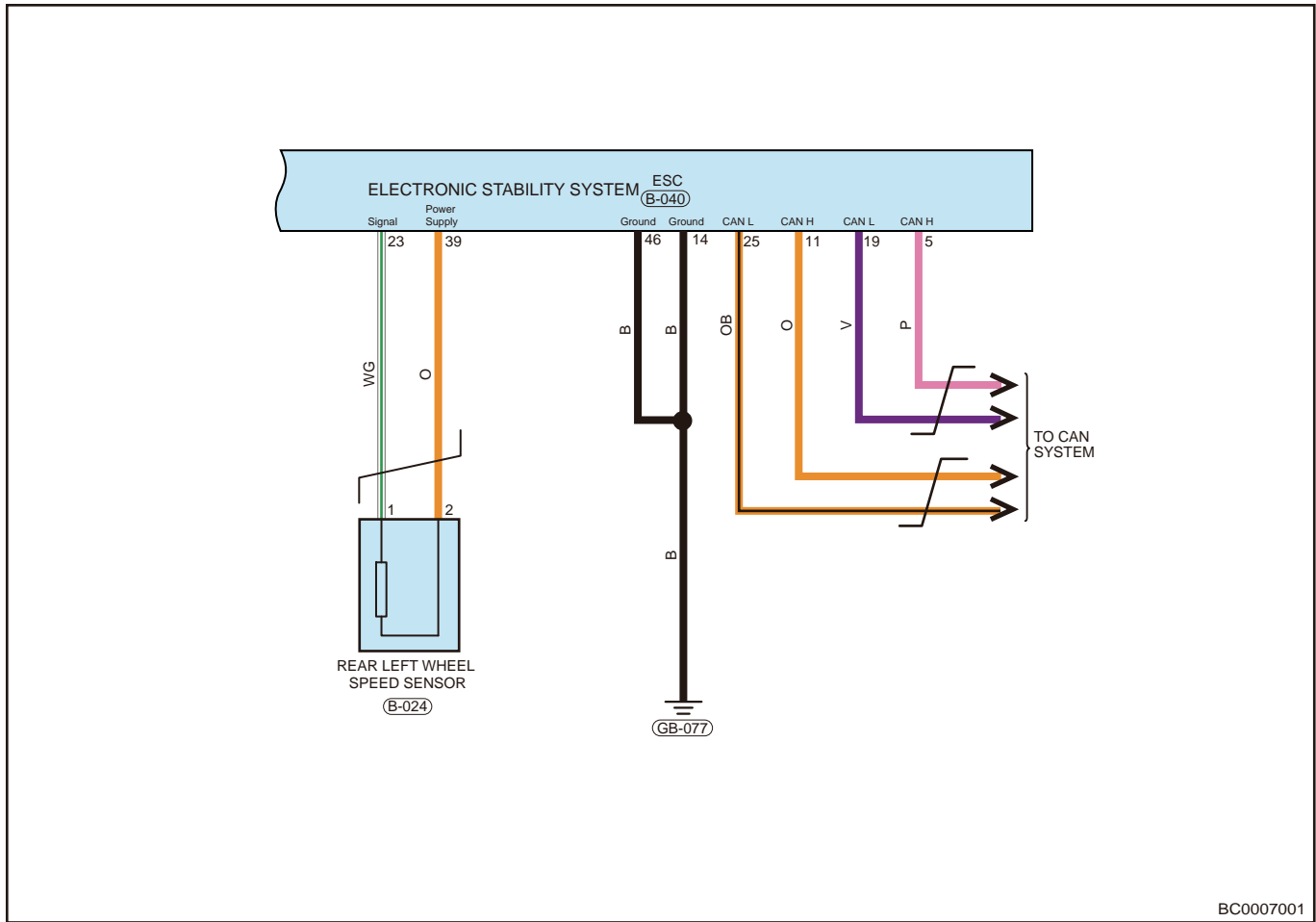
Replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

■ **Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Fault**

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C0037-00	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Air Gap Fault
C0037-09	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault
C0037-11	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground
C0037-12	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply
C0037-13	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Open
C0037-29	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid
C0037-37	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range
C0038-08	Rear Left Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction

Circuit Diagram



BC0007001

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1 Check rear left wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the rear left wheel speed sensor connector B-024.
- Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

NG Repair or replace rear left wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

OK

2 Check installation of rear left wheel speed sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check rear left wheel speed sensor mounting bolt for looseness.
- (d) Check if mounting clearance between rear left wheel speed sensor and rear left steering knuckle is too large or too small.
- (e) Check installation position of rear left wheel speed sensor for dirt.

NG

Tighten mounting bolt properly, clean or replace rear left wheel speed sensor

OK

3

Check rear left wheel speed sensor

- (a) Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- (b) Drive vehicle straight ahead, and read datastream of rear left wheel speed sensor with diagnostic tester.
- (c) Check if data change of rear left wheel speed sensor matches that of other wheel speed sensors, and if it is correct.

NG

Replace rear left wheel speed sensor

OK

4

Check rear left hub bearing

- (a) Check rear left hub bearing for excessive clearance.
- (b) Check rear left hub bearing magnetic strip for foreign matter, defect or damage.

NG

Replace rear left hub bearing assembly

OK

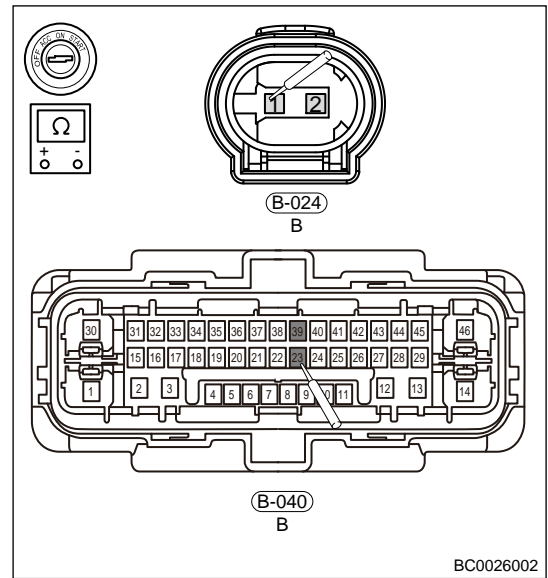
5

Check wire harness and connector (rear left wheel speed sensor - ESP (IEPB) control module)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module connector B-040.
- (d) Disconnect the rear left wheel speed sensor connector B-024.

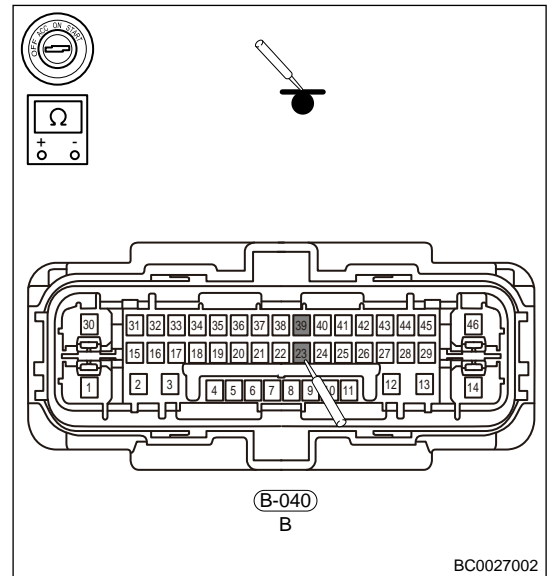
(e) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals of connector B-040 and connector B-024 to check if there is an open in the wire harness and connector according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (23) - B-024 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (39) - B-024 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (39) - B-024 (2)	Always	∞
B-040 (23) - B-024 (1)	Always	∞



(f) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between connector B-040 and body ground to check if rear left wheel speed sensor is short to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (23) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-040 (39) - Body ground	Always	∞

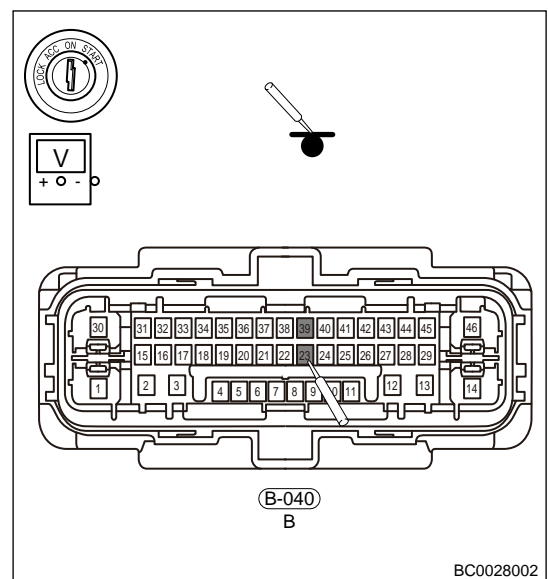


(g) Connect the negative battery cable.

(h) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

(i) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between connector B-040 and body ground to check if rear left wheel speed sensor is short to power supply according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (23) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V
B-040 (39) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V



NG

Repair or replace wire harness and connector between rear left wheel speed sensor and ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

OK

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
 (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally

NG

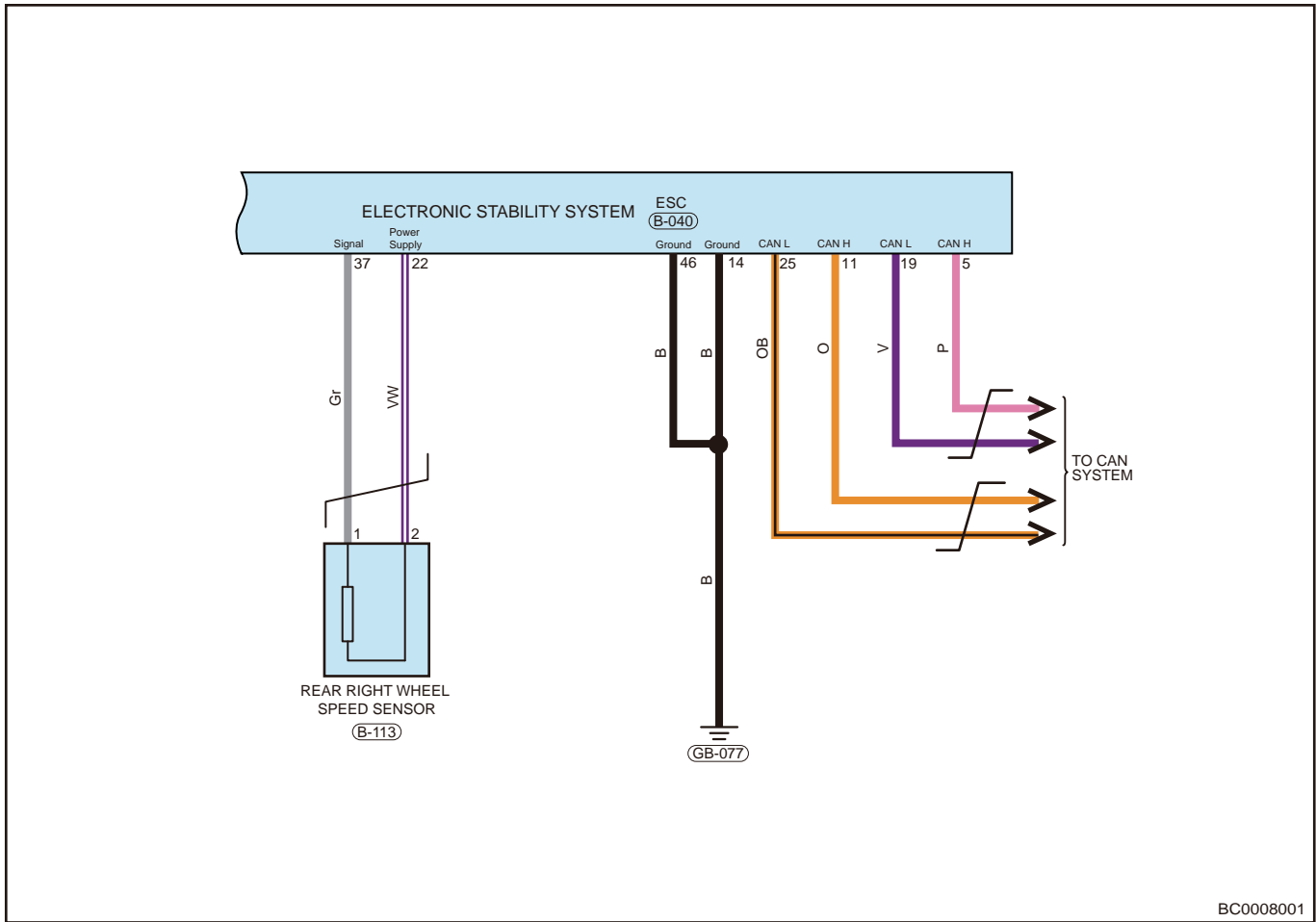
Replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

■ **Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Fault**

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C003A-00	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Fault
C003A-09	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Component Fault
C003A-11	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Ground
C003A-12	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Short to Power Supply
C003A-13	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Open
C003A-29	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Invalid
C003A-37	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor Signal Out of Range
C003B-08	Rear Right Wheel Speed Sensor: Wrong Direction

Circuit Diagram



⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1 Check rear right wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the rear right wheel speed sensor connector B-113.
- (d) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (e) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (f) Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

NG Repair or replace rear right wheel speed sensor wire harness and connector

OK

2 Check installation of rear right wheel speed sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check rear right wheel speed sensor mounting bolt for looseness.
- (d) Check if mounting clearance between rear right wheel speed sensor and rear right steering knuckle is too large or too small.
- (e) Check installation position of rear right wheel speed sensor for dirt.

NG

Tighten mounting bolt properly, clean or replace rear right wheel speed sensor

OK

3 Check rear right wheel speed sensor

- (a) Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- (b) Drive vehicle straight ahead, and read datastream of rear right wheel speed sensor with diagnostic tester.
- (c) Check if data change of rear right wheel speed sensor matches that of other wheel speed sensors, and if it is correct.

NG

Replace rear right wheel speed sensor

OK

4 Check rear right hub bearing

- (a) Check rear right hub bearing for excessive clearance.
- (b) Check rear right hub bearing magnetic strip for foreign matter, defect or damage.

NG

Replace rear right hub bearing assembly

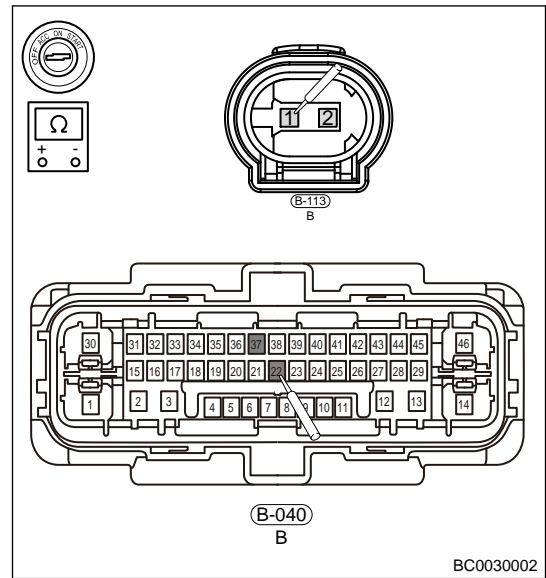
OK

5 Check wire harness and connector (rear right wheel speed sensor - ESP (IEPB) control module)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module connector B-040.
- (d) Disconnect the rear right wheel speed sensor connector B-113.

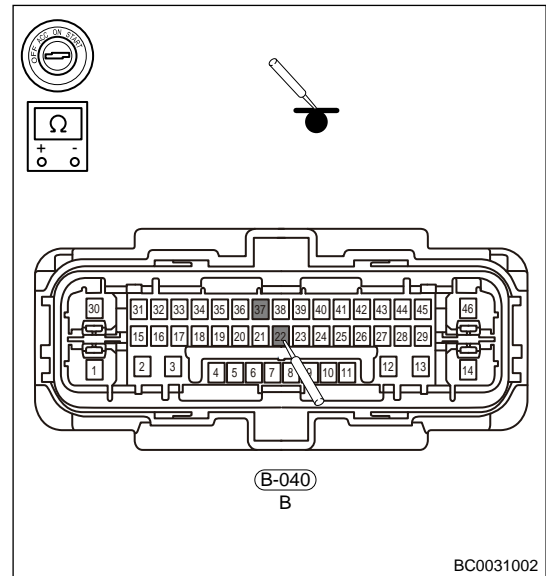
(e) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals of connector B-040 and connector B-113 to check if there is an open in the wire harness and connector according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B040 (37) - B113 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B040 (22) - B113 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B040 (22) - B113 (2)	Always	∞
B040 (37) - B113 (1)	Always	∞



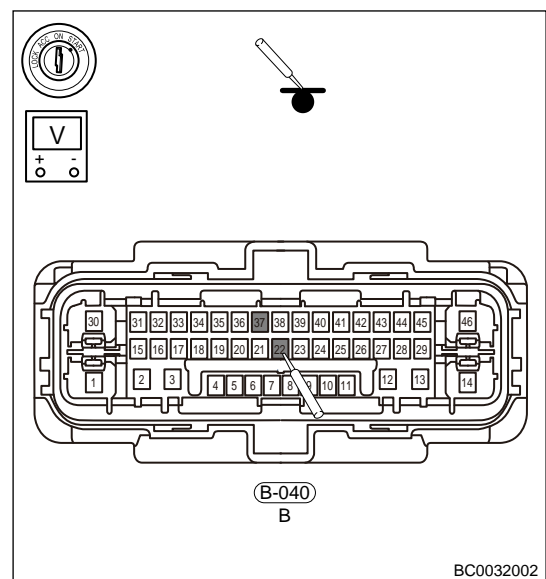
(f) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between connector B-040 and body ground to check if rear right wheel speed sensor is short to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B040 (37) - Body ground	Always	∞
B040 (22) - Body ground	Always	∞



(g) Connect the negative battery cable.
 (h) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (i) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between connector B-040 and body ground to check if rear right wheel speed sensor is short to power supply according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B040 (22) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V
B040 (37) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Approx. 0 V



NG

Repair or replace wire harness and connector between front right wheel speed sensor and ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

OK

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally

NG

Replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

■ **Brake Switch Fault**

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C004064	Brake Switch Malfunction: Unreliable

Circuit Diagram

1

Perform basic inspection on brake switch

- (a) Make sure to use the correct brake switch.
- (b) Check if brake switch is installed at the correct position.
- (c) Check if there is an incorrect clearance between brake switches.
- (d) Check and eliminate any electrical or mechanical interference to the brake switch.

OK

After driving for a period of time and clearing DTC, perform test again. If DTC still exists, please replace brake switch

NG

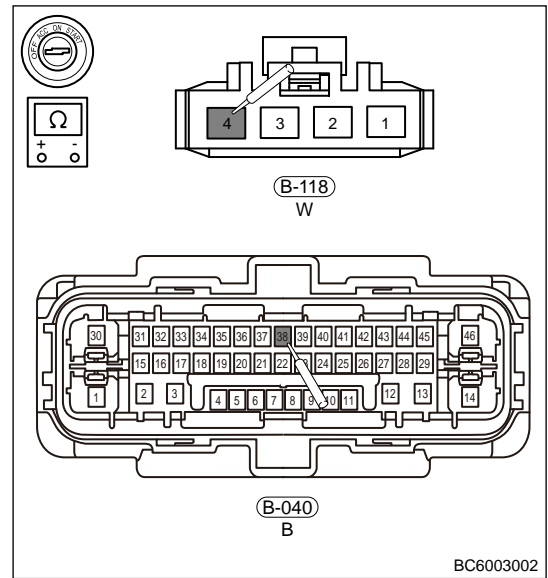
2

Check related wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) module assembly connector B-040.
- (d) Disconnect the brake switch connector B-118.
- (e) Check if related wire harnesses are worn, pinched or broken.
- (f) Check if related connector terminals are loose, broken, bent or corroded.
- (g) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between ESP (IEPB) module assembly connector B-040 (38) and brake switch connector B-118 (4) according to table below.

OK

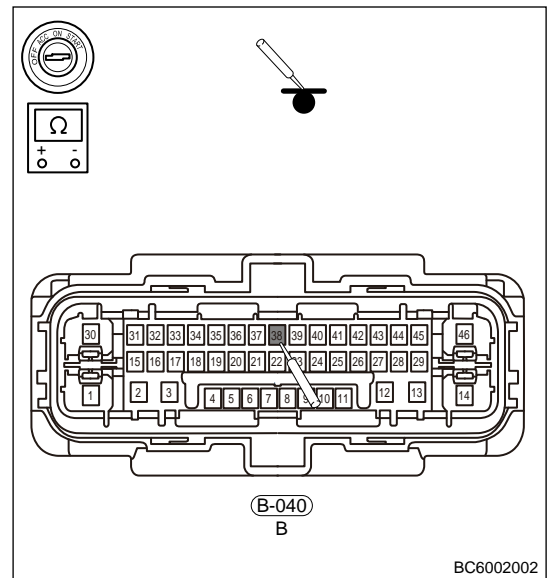
Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B-040 (38) - B-118 (4)	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(h) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between ESP (IEPB) module assembly connector B-040 (38) and body ground according to table below.

OK

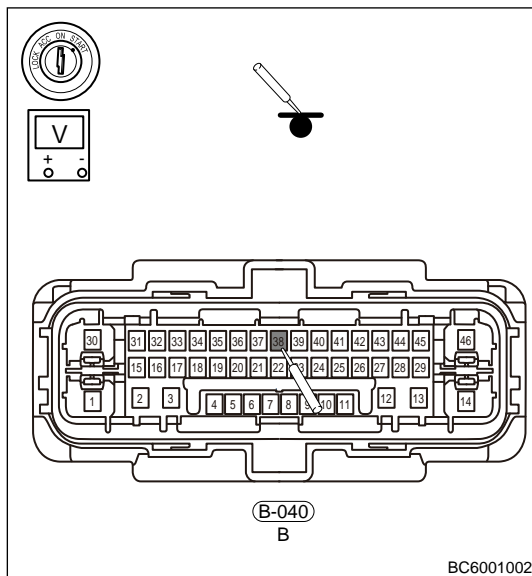
Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B-040 (38) - Body ground	∞



- (i) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (j) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (k) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

OK

Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B-040 (38) - Body ground	0 V



NG Repair/replace related wire harness and connector

OK

3 Check ESP (IEPB) control module

OK System operates normally

NG Replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

■ Pressure Sensor Fault

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C004428	Pressure Sensor Fault (Signal)
C004401	Pressure Sensor Fault (Circuit)

1 Check intermittent fault

(a) After clearing DTC, drive vehicle for a period of time and apply brake for more than 5 seconds during this period.

OK After driving for a period of time and clearing DTC, perform test again. If DTC still exists, please replace ESP (IEPB) module

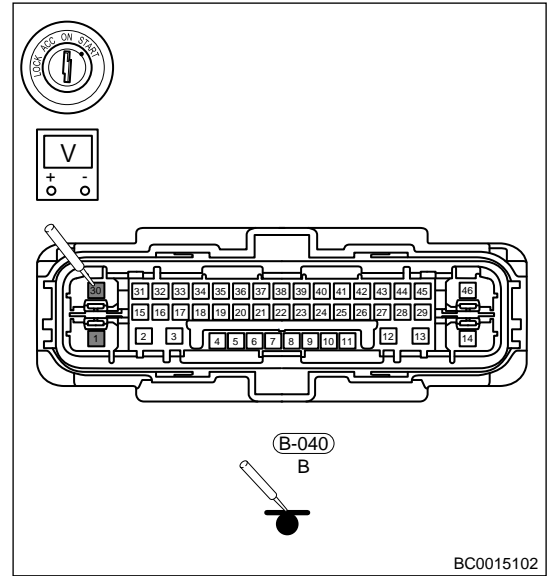
NG

2 Check related wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) module assembly connector B-040.
- (d) Check if related connector terminals are loose, broken, bent or corroded.
- (e) Using a digital multimeter, measure if voltage between ESP (IEPB) module assembly connector B-040 (1, 30) and body ground is normal according to table below.

OK

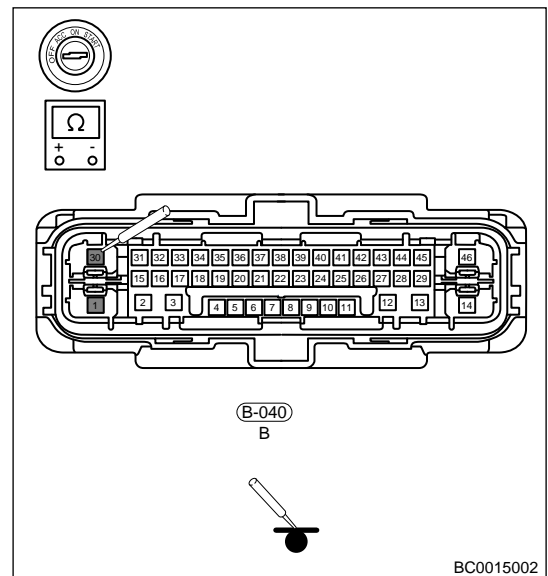
Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B-040 (1, 30) - Body ground	$\geq 12\text{ V}$



- (f) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between ESP (IEPB) module assembly connector B-040 (1, 30) and body ground according to table below.

OK

Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B-040 (1) - Body ground	$\leq 1\ \Omega$
B-040 (30) - Body ground	$\leq 1\ \Omega$



NG Repair/replace related wire harness and connector

OK

3	Check ESP (IEPB) control module
----------	--

OK

System operates normally

NG

Replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly

■ Steering Wheel Angle Sensor Fault

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C0051-29	Steering Wheel Angle Sensor Signal Invalid (ESP Only)
C0051-64	Steering Wheel Angle Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)
C0051-54	Steering Wheel Angle Sensor Uncalibrated (ESP Only)

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1

Check steering angle sensor calibration

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- Calibrate the steering angle sensor according to instruction of diagnostic tester.
- Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- Start the engine.
- Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
- Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG

Steering angle sensor is not calibrated

OK

2

Check fuse

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Check if fuse RF16 5A in instrument panel fuse and relay box B-144 is blown.

NG

Replace fuse RF16

OK

3

Check wire harness and connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the steering angle sensor connector I-004.
- Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

NG

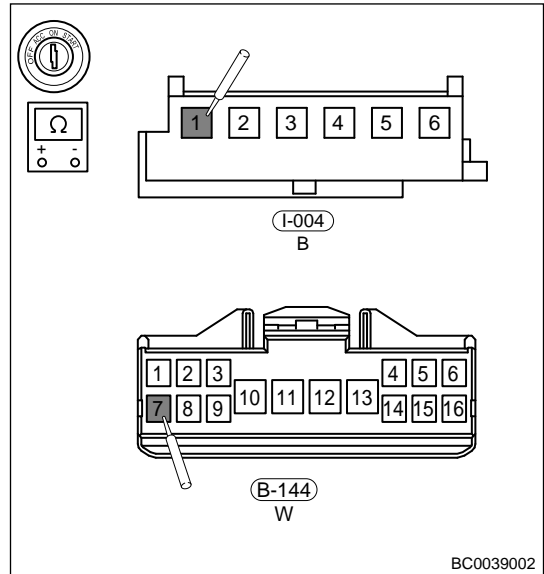
Repair or replace instrument panel wire harness and connector

OK

4 Check steering angle sensor power supply and instrument panel fuse and relay box B-144

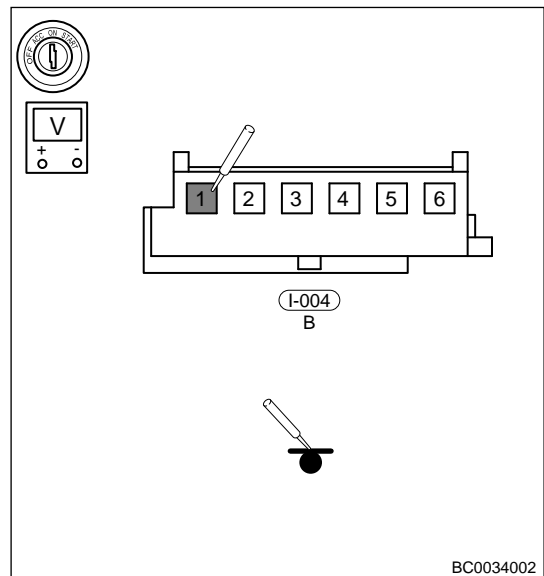
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the instrument panel fuse box connector B-144.
- (c) Check if terminal of instrument panel fuse box connector is deformed, bent or loose.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check for continuity between wire harness terminal C4-4 of instrument panel fuse box B-144 and terminal A1 of steering angle sensor connector I-004.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-004 (A1) - B-144 (C5-7)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



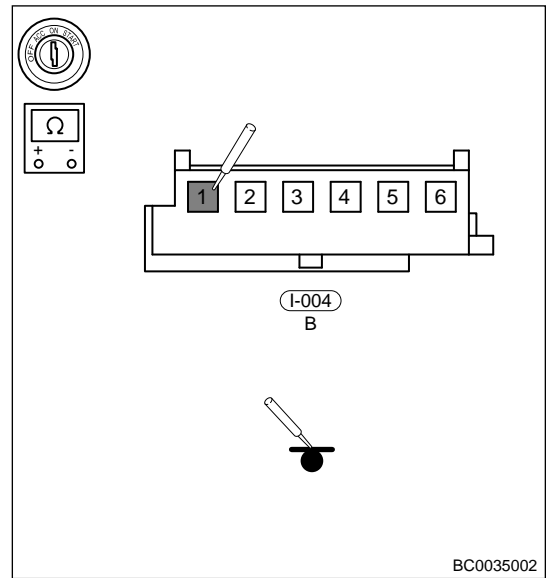
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a multimeter, measure if there is 12 V power supply voltage for connector terminal I-004 (A1) of steering angle sensor.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-004 (A1) - Body ground (digital multimeter)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V
I-004 (A1) - Body ground (test light 21 W)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	On



(g) Using a multimeter, check for continuity between steering angle sensor connector I-004 (A1) and ground to check if it is short to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-004 (A1) - Body ground	Always	∞



NG

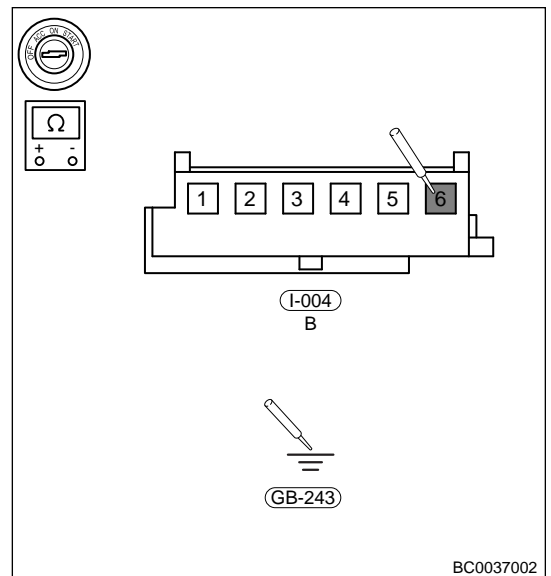
Repair or replace instrument panel wire harness or replace instrument panel fuse box

OK

5 Check ground wire harness and CAN wire of steering angle sensor

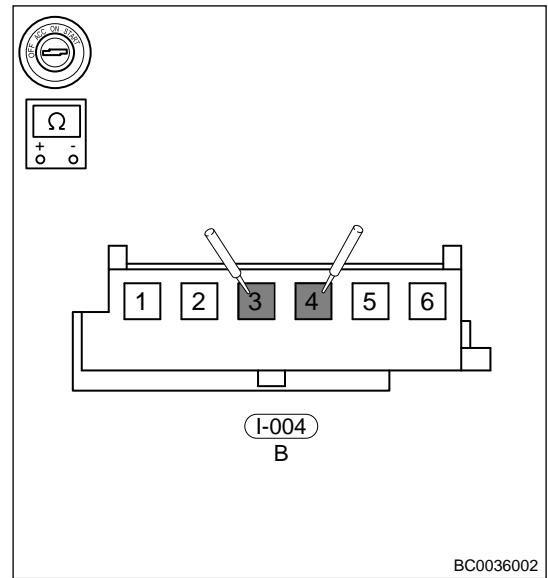
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the steering angle sensor connector I-004.
- (c) Using a multimeter, check for continuity between wire harness connector I-004 (A6) of steering angle sensor and ground point GB-243.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-004 (A6) - GB-243	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



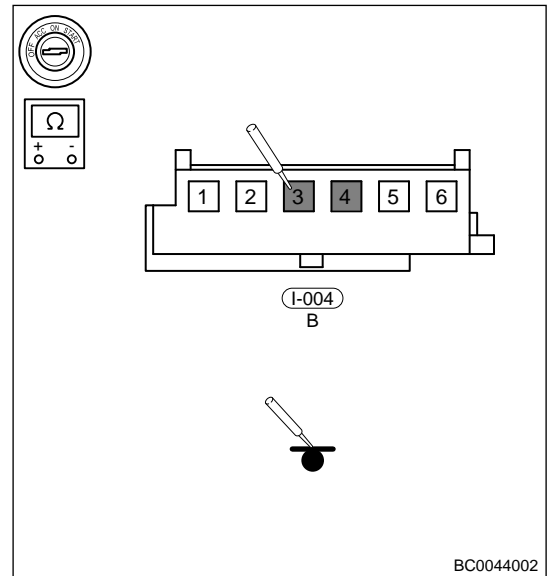
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Using a digital multimeter, check if connection between steering angle sensor and CAN communication line is normal according to table below (measure terminal resistance from CAN node).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-004 (3) - I-004 (4)	Always	≈ 60 Ω



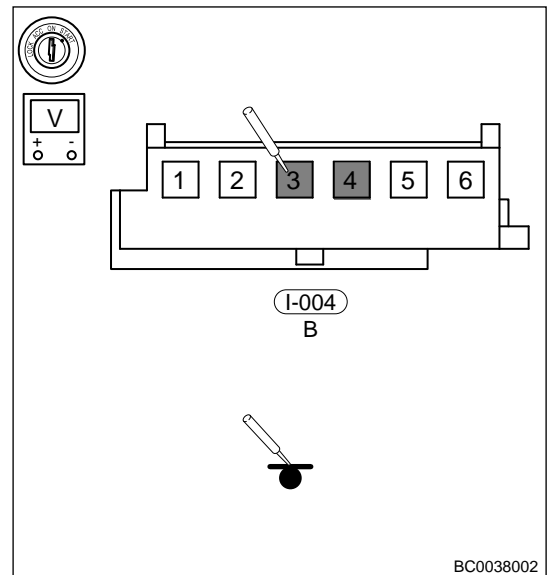
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, check if CAN circuit connected to steering angle sensor is short to body ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-004 (3) - Body ground	Always	∞
I-004 (4) - Body ground	Always	∞



- (g) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (h) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (i) Using a digital multimeter, check if voltage of steering angle sensor I-004 CAN (3) (4) wire harness is normal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-040 (3) - Body ground	Always	1.5 - 2.5 V
I-040 (4) - Body ground	Always	2.5 - 3.5 V



OK

System operates normally

NG

Repair or replace ground wire harness or replace CAN network wire harness

■ Acceleration & Yaw Rate Sensor Fault

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C0061-64	Lateral Acceleration Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)
C0062-64	Longitudinal Acceleration Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)
C0063-64	Yaw Rate Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)
C0063-01	Yaw Rate Sensor General Electrical Fault
C0063-54	Yaw Rate Sensor Uncalibrated

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1

Check sensor calibration

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- Calibrate the steering angle sensor according to instruction of diagnostic tester.
- Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- Start the engine.
- Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
- Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG

Lateral acceleration/yaw rate sensor is not calibrated

OK

2

Check installation position of yaw rate sensor

⚠ Caution

- Yaw rate sensor is integrated in the Airbag Control Module (ACM).

- Check ACM control module fixing bolt for looseness.
- Check pin connector of ACM controller for bending or looseness or wire harness for damage.
- Adjust installation position of yaw rate sensor (always keep sensor level on vehicle body).

NG

Replace ACM module assembly

OK

3

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) After replacing ACM module, calibrate yaw rate sensor with a diagnostic tester.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK	System operates normally
NG	Replace ESP (IEPB) control module

■ Switch fault

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C008904	Switch Fault (ESP (IEPB) OFF Switch or AVH Switch Long Pressed)

⚠ Caution

- **When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.**

1	Check ESP (IEPB) switch
----------	--------------------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check if ESP (IEPB) switch is stuck or pushed in by other objects.

NG	Replace ESP (IEPB) switch
-----------	----------------------------------

OK

2	Check fuse
----------	-------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Remove RF17 (10A) from instrument panel fuse box.
- (d) Check if fuse is blown.

NG	Replace related fuse
-----------	-----------------------------

OK

3	Check wire harness and connector
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (d) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (e) Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

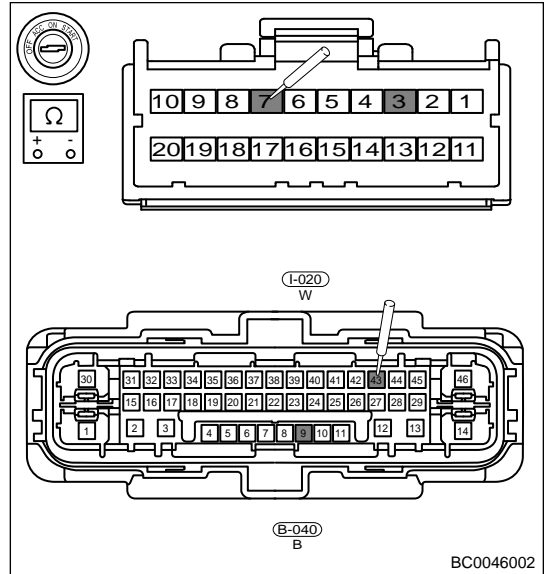
NG	Repair or replace body/instrument panel wire harness and connector
-----------	---

OK

4 Check wire harness and connector (ESP (IEPB) switch - ESP (IEPB) control module)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module assembly connector B-040.
- (d) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) switch connector I-020.
- (e) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals of connector B-040 and connector I-020 to check if there is an open circuit in wire harness.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (43) - I-020 (7)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (9) - I-020 (3) (low configuration)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

Repair or replace body/instrument panel wire harness

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally


NG

Replace ESP (IEPB) control module

■ **ABS/ESP Unreasonable Control Fault**

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C006B-00	ABS/ESP Unreasonable Control (Control Time Too Long, Etc.)

 Caution
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1	Check related wire harness and connector
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect all wheel speed sensor and angle sensor connectors.
- (d) Check if related connector terminals are loose, broken, bent or corroded.

NG	Repair/replace related wire harness and connector
-----------	--

OK

2	Check installation of wheel speed sensor
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check wheel speed sensor fixing bolt for looseness.
- (d) Check for excessive clearance between installation position of wheel speed sensor and front steering knuckle.
- (e) Check installation position of rear right wheel speed sensor for dirt.

NG	Tighten fixing bolt properly, clean or replace wheel speed sensor
-----------	--

OK

3	Check hub gear ring and drive shaft upper gear ring
----------	--

- (a) Check hub gear ring and drive shaft upper gear ring for foreign matter, missing teeth or damage.

NG	Replace hub bearing assembly or outer ball cage assembly
-----------	---

OK

4	Check wheel speed sensor
----------	---------------------------------

- (a) Drive vehicle straight ahead, and read datastream of wheel speed sensor with diagnostic tester.
- (b) Check if data change of wheel speed sensor matches that of other wheel speed sensors.

NG	Replace corresponding wheel speed sensor assembly
-----------	--

OK

5	Check installation of angle sensor
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Check if angle sensor connector is connected securely.
 (d) Check if angle sensor is installed in place.
 (e) Check if angle sensor connector position is dirty.

NG

Clean or replace Steering Column Module (SCM)

OK

6

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
 (b) Start the engine.
 (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, read "ABS/ESP (Anti-lock Brake System/Electronic Stability Program)" system DTC again with diagnostic tester.
 (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally

NG

Replace ESP (IEPB) module assembly

■ **ECU Power Supply and Hardware Fault**

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C1000-16	ECU Voltage Too Low
C1001-04	ECU Fault (General Software Problem)
C2202-49	CAN Hardware Fault
C1000-17	ECU Voltage Too High

⚠ Caution

- **When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.**

1

Check fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Check fuses MF01 40A and MF04 175A in main fuse and relay box B-145 and fuse SB05 30A in engine compartment fuse box B-065.
 (d) Check if fuse is blown.

NG

Replace fuse

OK

2

Check battery voltage

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between positive battery terminal and negative battery terminal.
- (b) Battery voltage should be higher than 12 V.

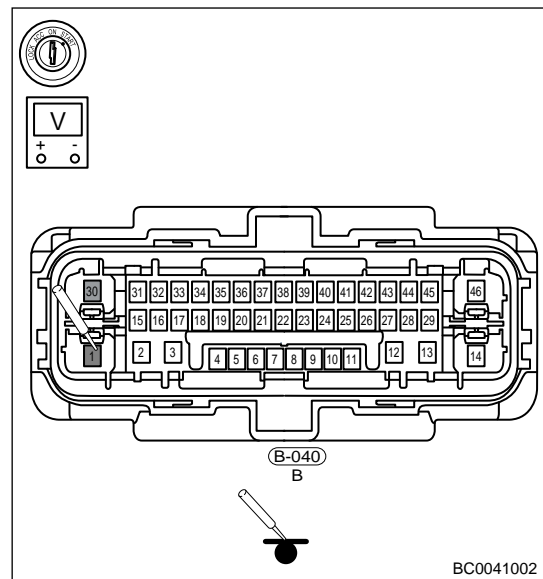
NG Replace battery

OK

3 Check wire harness and connector (ESP (IEPB) control module assembly - power supply)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module assembly connector B-040.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, measure power supply voltage between ESP (IEPB) control module assembly connector B-040 and body ground to check if power supply circuit is normal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B040 (1) - Body ground (digital multimeter)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V
B040 (1) - Body ground (test light 21 W)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	On
B040 (30) - Body ground (digital multimeter)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V
B040 (30) - Body ground (test light 21 W)	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	On



NG Repair or replace related wire harness and connector

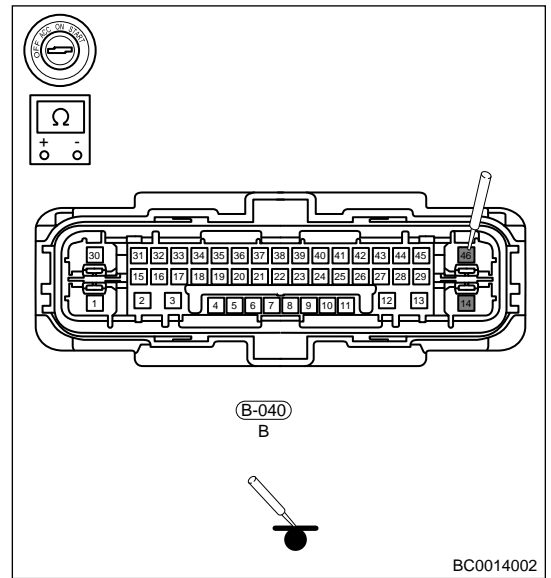
OK

4 Check wire harness and connector (ESP (IEPB) control module assembly - body ground)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the ESP (IEPB) control module assembly connector B-040.

(d) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between ESP (-IEPB) module connector B-040 (46) (14) and ground GB-077 to check if ground circuit is normal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-040 (46) - GB-077	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-040 (14) - GB-077	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

Repair or replace ESP (IEPB) control module assembly wire harness and connector

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Drive vehicle at 40 km/h or above, and read ESP (IEPB) control module assembly DTC again with diagnostic tester.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

System operates normally

NG

Replace ESP (IEPB) control module

■ Internal Motor Fault

Description

DTC	DTC Definition
C220304	Valve Relay Fault
C220400	General Valve Fault (Overheat Protection, Signal Invalid, Hardware Fault)
C220800	Wheel Speed Sensor General Fault (Interchanged Sensor Installation, Multiple Sensor Error)
C1009-00	ECU Hardware Related Fault
C0061-64	Lateral Acceleration Sensor Signal Abnormal (ESP Only)

⚠ Caution

- When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1 Perform basic fault inspection

(a) Perform hardware appearance inspection.

NG Eliminate hardware appearance interference

OK

2 Check module for intermittent fault

(a) Clear DTC, drive vehicle for a period of time, and test again.

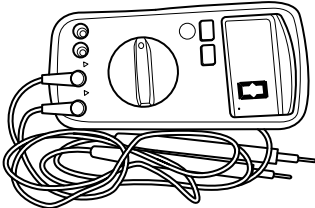
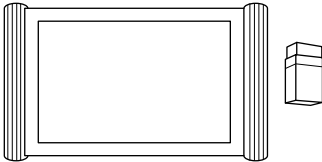
NG Replace module

OK

3 Refer to inspection method for intermittent fault

5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

5.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

5.2 ESP (IEPB)/ESP Control Module Assembly

■ Removal

Warning/Caution/Hint

- When repairing ESP (IEPB)/ESP system, first release the pressure of high pressure brake fluid in accumulator, to prevent high pressure brake fluid from spraying out and causing personal injury.
- Operation step: First turn ENGINE START STOP switch off, then depress and release brake pedal repeatedly, until brake pedal becomes hard.
- In addition, never turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON before ESP (IEPB)/ESP system is installed completely to prevent hydraulic pump from energizing and running.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Drain the brake fluid.

Hint:

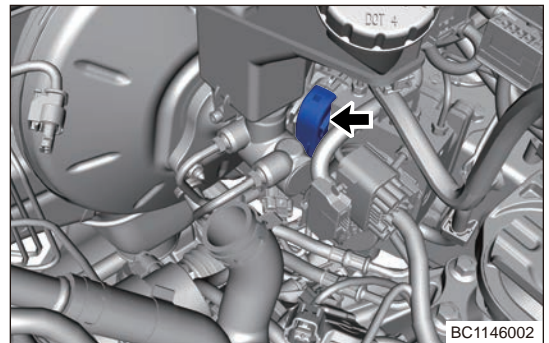
- Drained brake fluid should be well kept in a container. Never discard it at will.

⚠ Warning

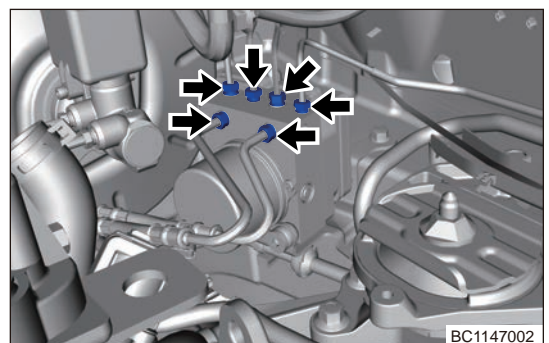
- Wash off brake fluid immediately if it comes in contact with any paint surface.

- (4) Remove the engine compartment left trim cover assembly.
- (5) Remove the air filter assembly.
- (6) Remove the battery.
- (7) Remove the battery tray assembly.
- (8) Remove the ESP (IEPB)/ESP control module assembly.

a. Disconnect the ESP (IEPB)/ESP control module assembly connector (arrow).



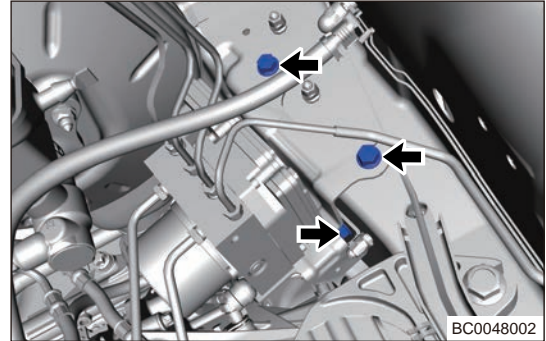
b. Using a fixing wrench, carefully disconnect 6 brake pipe coupling bolts (arrow).



Warning

- When removing brake line, prevent foreign matter from entering ESP (IEPB)/ESP control module assembly threaded holes.
- After disconnecting brake line, sealing measure should be taken to prevent foreign matter from entering.

c. Remove 3 fixing bolts (arrow) between ESP (IEPB)/ESP control module assembly and mounting bracket.



BC0048002

Warning

- When installing, pre-tighten bolt at upper opening first and then align mounting hole of ESP module with bracket and mounting hole of body left side member.
- Tighten upper mounting bolts one by one and then tighten lower mounting bolts one by one.

Installation

- (1) Install 3 fixing bolts between ESP (IEPB)/ESP control module assembly and mounting bracket.

Tightening torque: 23 ± 3.5 N·m

- (2) Install 6 coupling bolts to brake pipe.

Tightening torque: 17 ± 3 N·m

- (3) Connect the ESP (IEPB)/ESP control module assembly connector.
- (4) Install the battery tray assembly.
- (5) Install the battery.
- (6) Install the air filter assembly.
- (7) Fill brake fluid and drain air.
- (8) Install the engine compartment left trim cover assembly.

Caution

- When installing fixing bolts and screws, be sure to tighten them to specified torque.
- Perform ESP (IEPB)/ESP bleeding procedures for brake system after completing installation.
- Using diagnostic tester, enter brake control system, record and clear trouble code, then drive vehicle to perform a road test, confirming that ESP (IEPB)/ESP system operates normally and brake pedal feel is good.

5.3 Brake System Bleeding**Warning**

- When bleeding brake system, wear safety glasses. If brake fluid gets on your eyes or skin, wash off with water completely.
- Brake fluid has a corrosive on body paint surface. Do not drop brake fluid on body paint surface.

 **Caution**

- Brake fluid should meet the specified type. **DO NOT** mix brake fluid with other types of brake fluid.
- Brake fluid has strong water absorbability, be sure to place it in the original sealed container.
- To prevent dust and other foreign matter from entering reservoir, wipe it off before removing reservoir cap.

5.4 Front Wheel Speed Sensor (Take Front Left Wheel as Example)

■ Removal

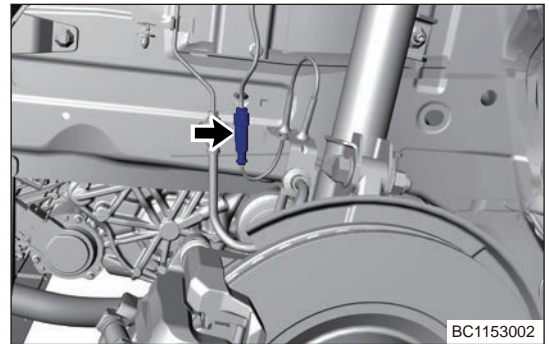
 **Warning**

- Keep wheel speed sensor away from oil or other foreign matter. Otherwise speed signal generated by wheel speed sensor may be inaccurate, and system may even fail to operate normally.

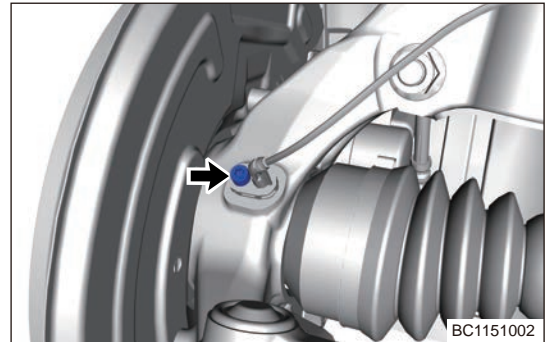
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
 - Procedures listed below are for left side.
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 - (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 - (3) Remove the front left wheel.
 - (4) Remove the front left wheel speed sensor.

a. Disconnect the front left wheel speed sensor wire harness connector (arrow).



b. Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between front left wheel speed sensor and front left steering knuckle assembly, and disengage front left wheel speed sensor carefully.



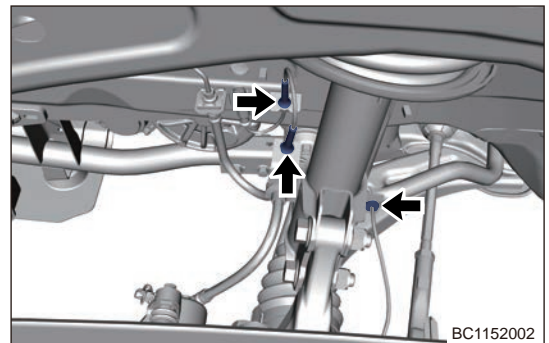
⚠ Caution

- Keep head and installation hole of sensor free of foreign matter.

c. Detach attachment parts (arrow) of front left wheel speed sensor wire harness.

Hint:

- Observe winding direction of sensor wire harness to prevent incorrect installation.



d. Remove the front left wheel speed sensor.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the front wheel speed sensor.
 - 1) Check front wheel speed sensor surface for breakage, dents or notch.
 - 2) Check front wheel speed sensor connector or wire harness for scratches, breakage or damage.
 - 3) If any of above conditions occurs, replace front wheel speed sensor with a new one.
 - 4) Check wheel speed sensor for proper installation.

■ Installation

- (1) Install front left wheel speed sensor and tighten fixing bolt between front left wheel speed sensor and front left steering knuckle assembly.
- (2) Install attachment parts of front left wheel speed sensor wire harness.
- (3) Connect the front left wheel speed sensor wire harness connector.
- (4) Install the front left wheel.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

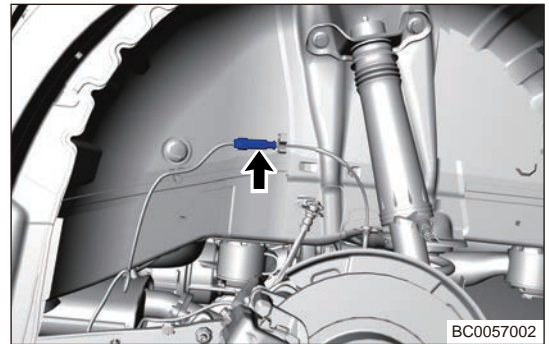
5.5 Rear Wheel Speed Sensor (Take Rear Left Wheel as Example)**■ Removal**** Warning**

- **Keep wheel speed sensor away from oil or other foreign matter. Otherwise speed signal generated by wheel speed sensor may be inaccurate, and system may even fail to operate normally.**

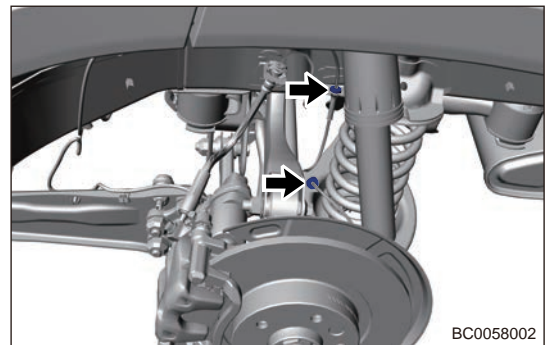
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
 - Procedures listed below are for left side.
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 - (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 - (3) Remove the rear left wheel.
 - (4) Remove the rear left wheel speed sensor.

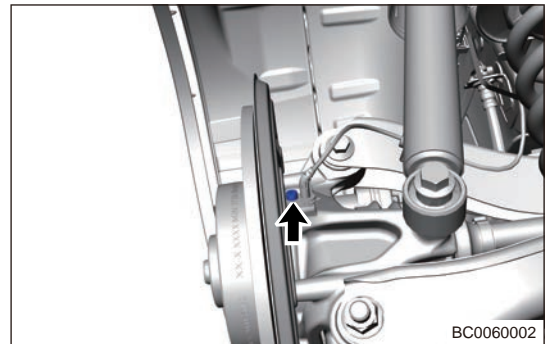
a. Remove the rear left wheel speed sensor connector (arrow).



b. Detach attachment parts (arrow) of rear wheel speed sensor from fixing bracket.



c. Remove fixing bolt (arrow) from rear left wheel speed sensor, and disengage wheel speed sensor carefully.



⚠ Caution

- **Keep head and installation hole of sensor free of foreign matter.**

d. Remove the rear left wheel speed sensor.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the rear left wheel speed sensor.
 - 1) Check rear wheel speed sensor surface for breakage, dents or notch.
 - 2) Check rear wheel speed sensor connector or wire harness for scratches, breakage or damage.
 - 3) If any of above conditions occurs, replace rear wheel speed sensor with a new one.
 - 4) Check wheel speed sensor for proper installation.

■ Installation

- (1) Install rear left wheel speed sensor and tighten fixing bolt.
- (2) Install attachment parts between fixing bracket and rear wheel speed sensor.
- (3) Connect the rear left wheel speed sensor connector.
- (4) Install the rear left wheel.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

 Caution

- **When installing coupling bolts, be sure to tighten them to specified torque.**

5.6 Combination Switch Assembly

■ Removal

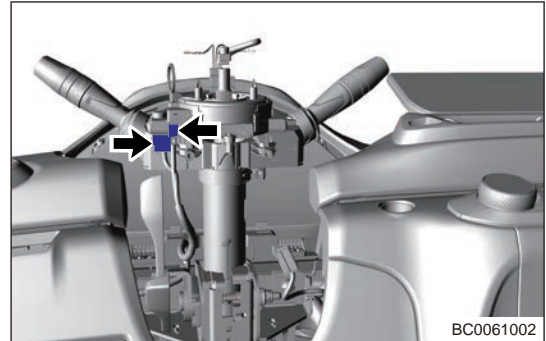
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

⚠ Caution

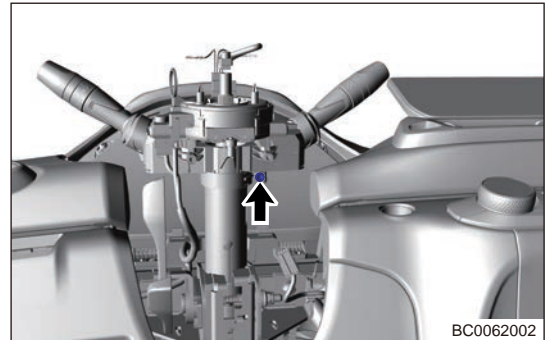
- **After disconnecting the negative battery cable, wait for at least 90 seconds.**

- (3) Position the front wheels straight ahead.
- (4) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (5) Remove the steering column cover.
- (6) Remove the combination switch assembly.

a. Disconnect 2 connectors (arrow) from spiral cable wire harness.



b. Loosen fixing bolt (arrow) between combination switch assembly and steering column.



c. Remove the combination switch assembly.

⚠ Caution

- **As zero position of spiral cable is very important to (steering column control module) SCM, before installing steering wheel, do not remove zero pin to avoid losing zero position.**
- **When removing steering wheel, fixed tape shall be prepared. Once steering wheel is removed, fix zero position of spiral cable with tape immediately, to avoid losing zero position.**
- **When repairing steering switch, remove steering wheel first. As it is necessary to operate on main airbag, always disconnect the negative battery cable first to ensure the removing safety of airbag.**

■ Installation

- (1) Install combination switch assembly and tighten fixing bolt between combination switch assembly and steering column.
- (2) Connect 2 spiral cable wire harness connectors.
- (3) Install the steering column cover.
- (4) Install the steering wheel assembly.

ELECTRONIC POWER STEERING CONTROL SYSTEM

28.1	ELECTRONIC POWER STEERING CONTROL SYSTEM	1076
1	Warnings and Precautions	1076
1.1	Precautions	1076
2	System Overview	1076
2.1	System Description	1076
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1077
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	1078
2.4	Component Operation Description.....	1078
3	System Circuit Diagram	1078
3.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	1078
3.2	Circuit Diagram	1079
4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	1079
4.1	Diagnostic Help.....	1079
4.2	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1080
4.3	Ground Inspection	1080
4.4	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1080
28.2	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1098
1	Tools	1098
2	Replacement of Combination Switch Cover Assembly	1098
2.1	Removal.....	1098
3	Replacement of Steering Column with Intermediate Shaft Assembly.....	1099
3.1	Removal.....	1099
3.2	Replacement and Matching Overview	1102
3.3	Calibration of Steering Angle	1102

28.1 ELECTRONIC POWER STEERING CONTROL SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

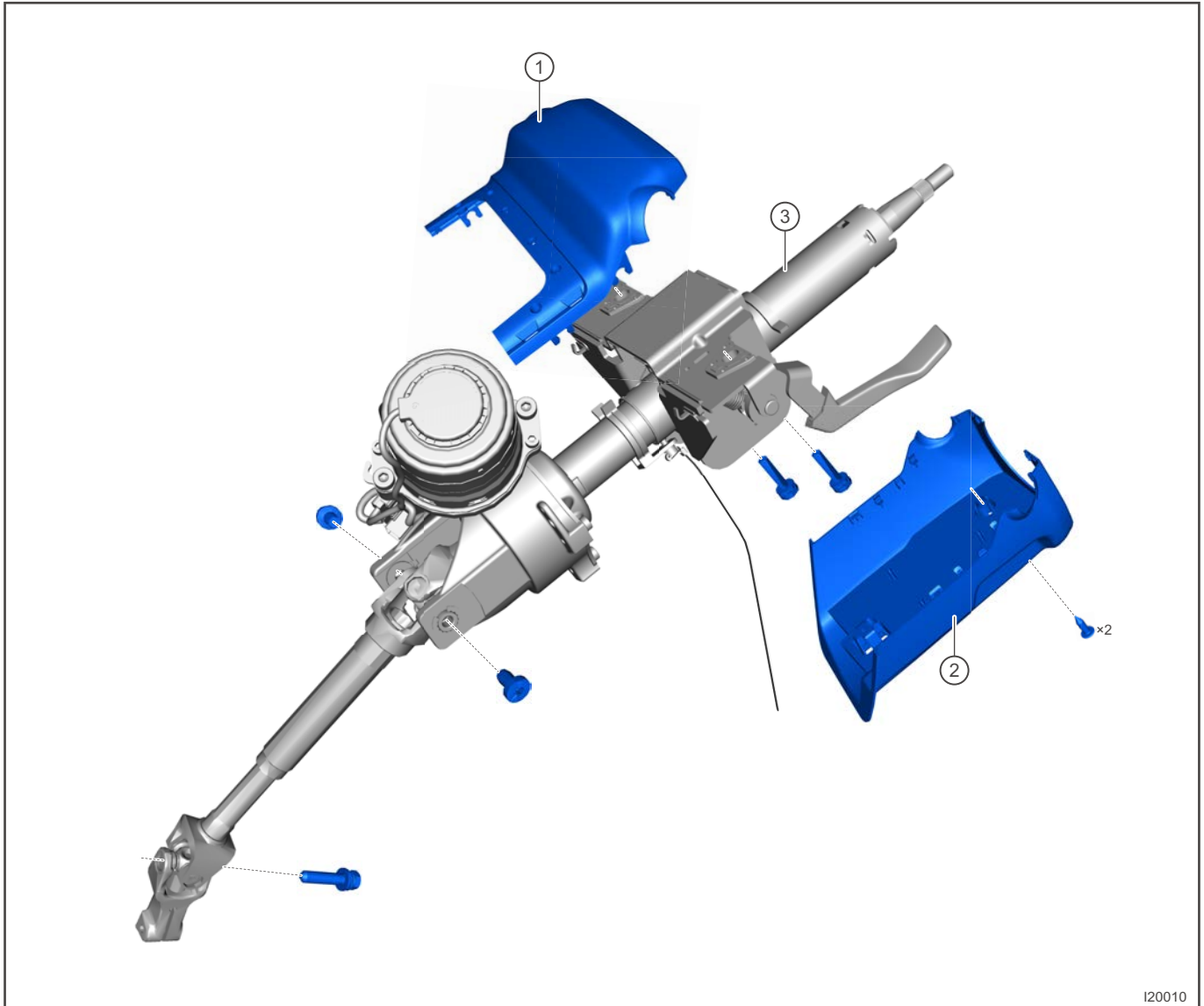
- (1) Calibration requirements: Keep vehicle stationary and steering wheel centered to ensure that the left and right errors are within 10°.
- (2) Battery voltage is higher than 10 V and lower than 16 V.
- (3) When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.
- (4) It is necessary to perform steering angle calibration after replacing electronic power steering column assembly, steering gear, four-wheel alignment etc.
- (5) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Steering column is an element of the steering system that connects steering wheel and steering gear. Driver transmits torque to steering gear through steering column, driving steering gear to achieve steering.

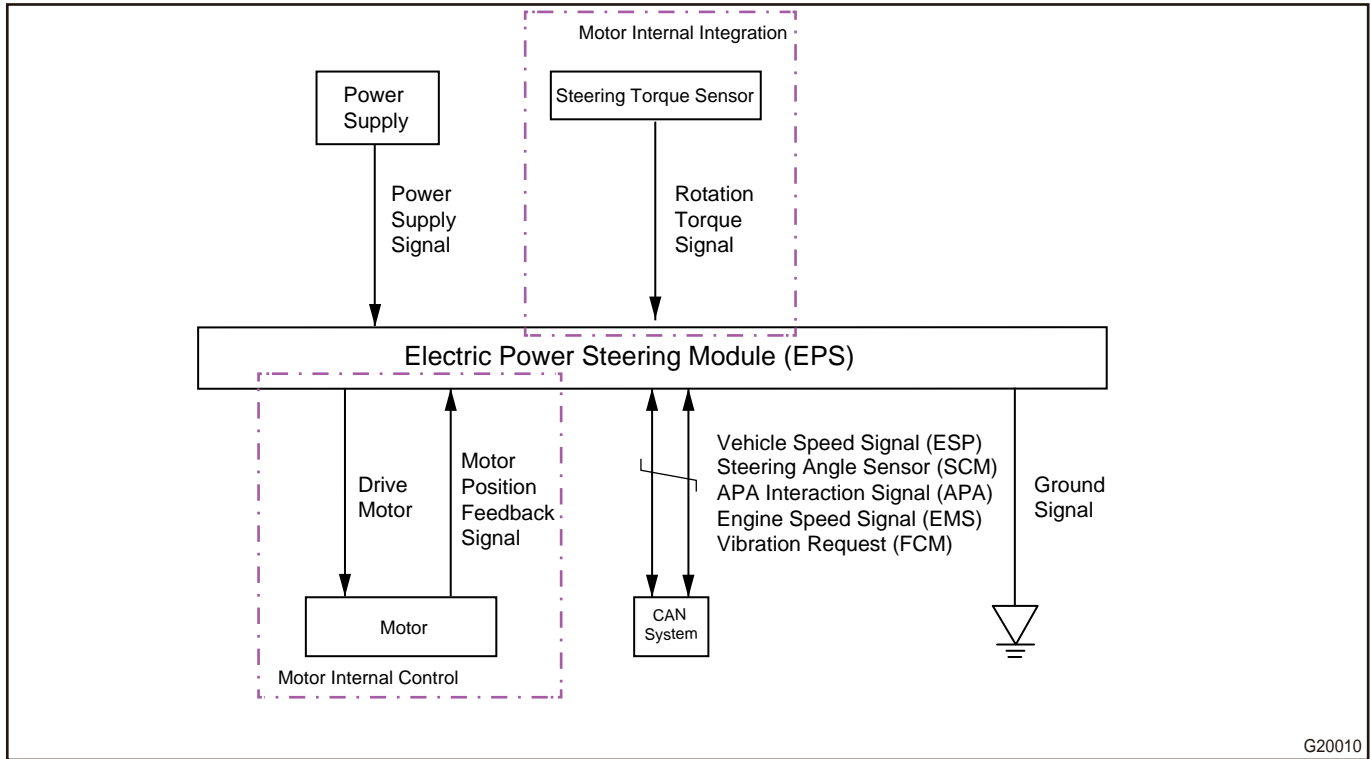
2.2 System Components Diagram



I20010

1	Combination Switch Upper Cover	3	Electronic Steering Column with Intermediate Shaft Assembly
2	Combination Switch Lower Cover		

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



Electronic power steering module is integrated into steering column.

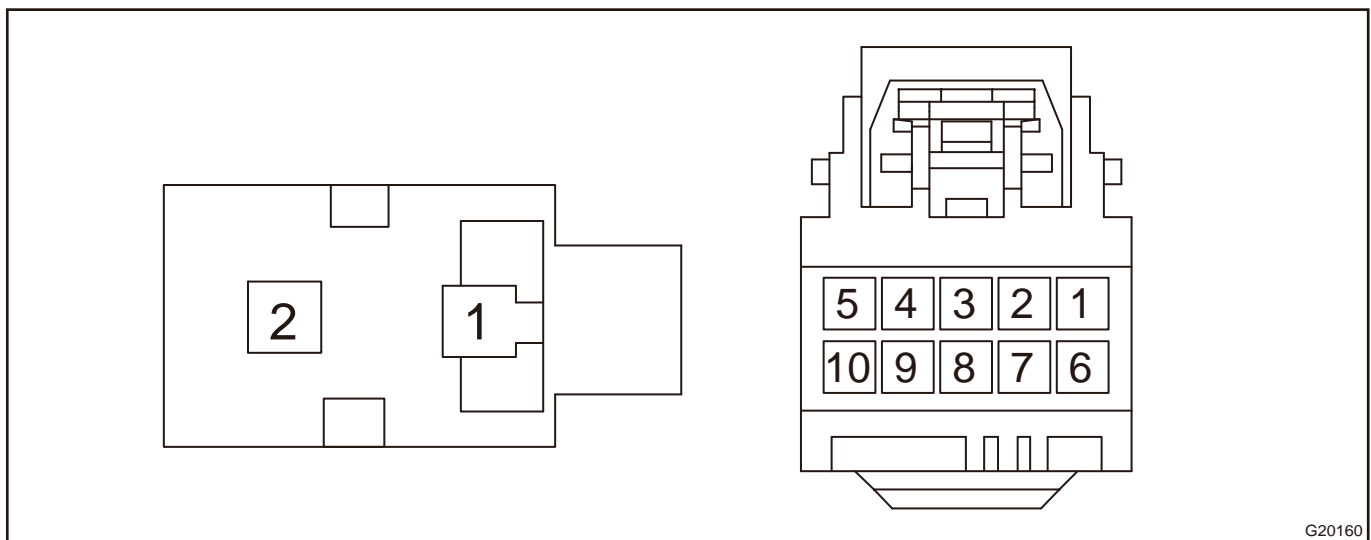
2.4 Component Operation Description

■ Steering Angle Sensor

The steering angle sensor of vehicle is used to detect rotation angle and direction of steering wheel. Turning steering wheel to left and right will be detected by steering angle sensor, so as to make electronic control unit of vehicle send correct steering command. Rotation angle of steering wheel provides basis for steering extent of vehicle, so that the vehicle drives according to driver's steering intention.

3 System Circuit Diagram

3.1 Module Terminal Definition



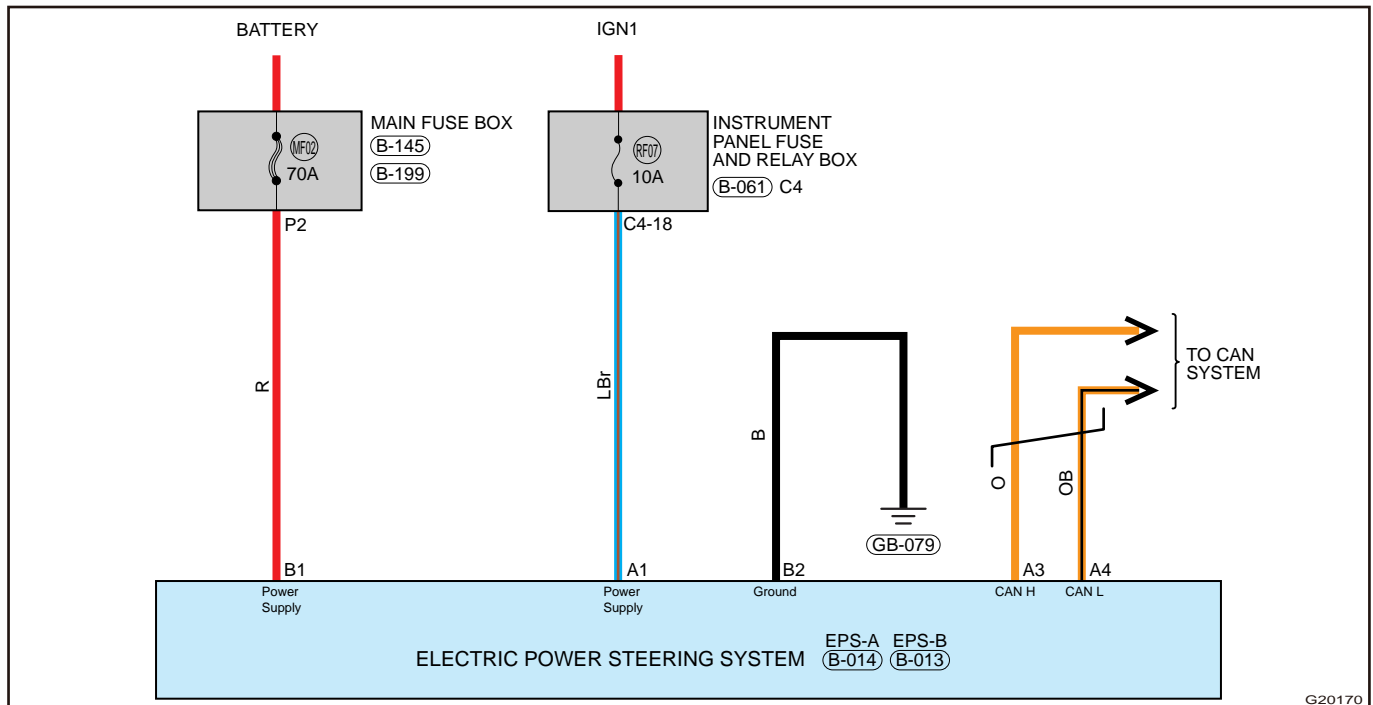
Vehicle power supply: Controller power supply connector (connector A)

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
B1	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply in "ON" status	12 V
B2	Body ground	Ground	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V

Vehicle signal: Controller signal connector (connector B)

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive of Digital Multimeter	Negative of Digital Multimeter			
A1	Body ground	Ignition signal	Power supply in "ON" status	12 V
A2	Body ground	C CAN-H	Power supply in "ON" status	2.78 V
A3	Body ground	CAN-H	Power supply in "ON" status	Real vehicle pin not connected
A4	Body ground	C CAN-L	Power supply in "ON" status	2.28 V
A5	Body ground	CAN-L	Power supply in "ON" status	Real vehicle pin not connected

3.2 Circuit Diagram



4 Diagnostic Information and Steps

4.1 Diagnostic Help

- Connect diagnostic tester and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.

- If DTC cannot be deleted, malfunction is current.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that applied to the malfunction.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean Electronic Power Steering controller (EPS controller) ground related to latest DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

4.2 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the following:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect sensors and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4.3 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.4 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

■ **SCM Power Supply DTC**

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
C120500	External Function Fault - Invalid LKA Torque	Lane keeping assist torque is high	Intermittent fault	1. Reset ECU; 2. Reduce lane keeping assist torque to less than 3 Nm
C200100	EPS Internal Software Error - Dataflash Operation Error	1. Nv Ram reading failure (or) 2. Nv Ram writing failure	EPS module failure	Step 1: Clear error and reset ECU; Step 2: If problem is not solved, refresh the software; Step 3: If error still exists, replace EPS
C200200	EPS Internal Software Error - Dataflash Verify Error	1. Incorrect NvRam configuration or initialization; 2. Incorrect software		

		label in NvRam; 3. Incorrect data in NvShare		
C200300	EPS Internal Hardware Error - ECU Hardware Error	1. SPI communication timeout; 2. Watchdog enabled/disabled failure; 3. ASIC start failure; 4. ADC operation failure; 5. Error in RAM; 6. Measured voltage plausibility; 7. Build-in software test failure; 8. Different outputs for incorrect pin; 9. Registration read back failure; 10. Error in singlechip SGA; 11. Improper reset.		Replace EPS module
C200400	EPS Internal Software Error - ECU Reset	Improper reset of ECU		
C200500	EPS Internal Software Error - ECU Software Monitor Error	1. OS Monitoring routine for OS error detection; 2. Design problem or timing problem (load when running) or unauthorized interrupt latch; 3. Comparison failure in level1 of comparator; 4. Comparison failure in level2 of comparator; 5. Rotor position angle error; 6. Software default branch failure; 7. Error handling process monitoring failure; 8. Code flash implausibility; 9. Problem in error event reaction component; 10. Different applied torque and calculated torque.		Step 1: Clear error and reset ECU; Step 2: If problem is not solved, refresh the software; Step 3: If error still exists, replace EPS
C200600	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Flash Code Verify Error	Code flash corrupted		Replace EPS module
C200700	EPS Steering Column Error - High Friction	Steering friction too high	Steering column stuck	Check and replace mechanical

				component that causes high friction
C200800	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Index Sensor Error	Index sensor failure.	EPS module failure	Replace EPS module
C200900	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Output Stage Error	1. SPI communication failure due to flag inconsistency or error frame response; 2. Output stage failure; 3. Output stage drive failure; 4. Measured output stage PWM error	EPS module failure	Replace EPS module
C200A00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Phase Current Error	1. Motor phase current out of range; 2. Motor phase current offset out of range		
C200B00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - RPS Error	1. RPS radius error; 2. DRPS sensor plausibility		
C200C00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Steering Oscillation Error	Reduction of assistance is within 0 - 40% due to steering oscillation. Note: 100 % = Full assistance	Mechanical components loose	Check and replace mechanical component that causes steering oscillation
C200D00	EPS Internal Software Error - Steering Angle Implausible Error	1. Arrangement plausible; 2. iLWS implausibility; 3. Different iLWS and steering wheel speed angle	Configuration error; EPS failure	Step 1: Clear error and reset ECU; Step 2: If problem is not solved, refresh the software; Step 3: If error still exists, replace EPS
C200E00	EPS Internal Software Error - Steering Angle Not Initialized Error	iLWS not initialized	Steering angle not calibrated; Software version low; EPS failure	Step 1: Initialize steering angle - fully rotate steering wheel from one side to the other side or drive vehicle straight at more than 5 kph; Step 2: Clear error and reset ECU; Step 3: If problem is not solved, refresh the software; Step 4: If error still exists, replace EPS
C200F00	EPS Internal Software Error - Steering Angle Not Calibrated Error	iLWS not calibrated		Step 1: Recalibrate steering angle; Step 2: Clear error and reset ECU; Step 3: If problem is not

				solved, refresh the software; Step 4: If error still exists, replace EPS
C201100	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Steer Ang Sens Self Test Error	Internal steering angle sensor self test failure	EPS module failure	Replace EPS module
C201200	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage Abnormal at Start	Battery voltage less than 8.3 or more than 18 V at start	1: Battery voltage; 2: Wire harness and connector; 3: ECU intermittent failure; 4: EPS failure	Voltage should be maintained in normal operating range of ECU. Step 1: Check battery voltage; Step 2: Check wire harness and connector; Step 3: Clear error and reset ECU; Step 4: If error still exists, replace EPS
C201300	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too High Warn	When battery voltage is higher than 16 V for at least 1.5 s		
C201400	Voltage Out of Range - Reduction Due to High Power Supply Voltage	Battery voltage is within 16 - 18 V and assistance reduces to 0 - 40%		
C201500	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too High OFF	When battery voltage is higher than 18 V for at least 20 ms		
C201600	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too Low Warn	When battery voltage is lower than 10 V for at least 9 s		
C201700	Voltage Out of Range - Reduction Due to Low Power Supply Voltage	When battery voltage is within 6.5 - 10 V and reduction of assistance is within 0 - 60%. Note: 100 % = Full assistance		
C201800	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too Low OFF	When battery voltage is lower than 6.5 V for at least 20 ms		
C201900	Temperature Error - Over Temperature Reduction	1. When PCB temperature is higher than 85°C and the reduction of assistance is within 0 - 40%; 2. When FET temperature is higher than 100°C and the reduction of assistance is within 0 - 60%; 3. Motor temperature is higher than 150°C and the reduction of assistance is within		

		0 - 40%; Note:100 % = Full assistance		
C201A00	Temperature Error - Temperature Out of Range	1. PCB temperature is out of range; 2. Temperature difference between NTC1 and NTC2 is within -24 to 27°C for at least 2 s		
C201B00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Torque Sensor Error	1. Torque sensor passage is not available, power supply of sensor is undervoltage and torque difference between A and B is too large; 2. SENT driver protocol is faulty	1. Torque sensor; 2. EPS	Step 1: Recheck torque sensor connection and reset ECU. Step 2: If error still exists, replace EPS
C201C00	EPS Internal Software Error - Flash Memory Changed via XCP	When it does not flash properly via XCP, this will be detected if the CRC fails while part of flashing is adjusted.	1. Intermittent failure; 2. Software version low; 3. EPS	Step 1: Clear error and reset ECU; Step 2: If problem is not solved, refresh the software; Step 3: If error still exists, replace EPS
C201D00	EPS Internal Software Error - ECU Software Info Error	1. OEM task running fails; 2. Floating point overflows/ underflows; Software is corrupted		
C201E46	EPS Internal Software Error - Vehicle Configuration Not Programmed	Vehicle configuration data is not programmed	Configuration writing is not performed or configuration is lost	Set vehicle configuration and reset ECU

DTC	C120500	External Function Fault - Invalid LKA Torque
------------	----------------	---

1	Reduce lane keeping assist torque to less than 3 Nm and reset ECU
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Reduce lane keeping assist torque to less than 3 Nm.
- (c) Reset the ECU.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

NG Replace EPS controller assembly

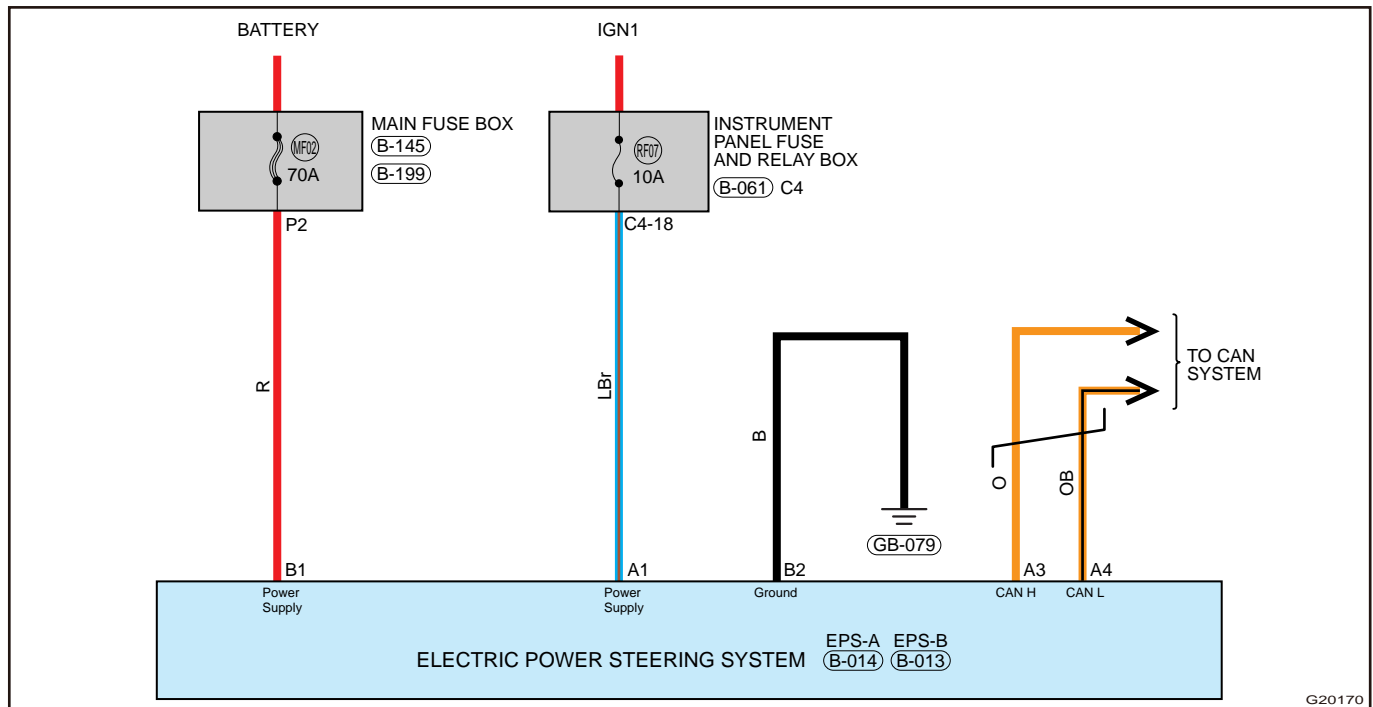
■ Description

DTC	DTC Definition	DTC Detection Condition	Possible Cause
C201200	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage Abnormal at Start	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF" , engine is not running	Circuit voltage below threshold; Circuit voltage above threshold; Component internal fault
C201300	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too High Warn		
C201400	Voltage Out of Range - Reduction Due to High Power Supply Voltage		
C201500	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too High OFF		
C201600	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too Low Warn		
C201700	Voltage Out of Range - Reduction Due to Low Power Supply Voltage		
C201800	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too Low OFF		

 **Caution**

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

DTC	C201200	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage Abnormal at Start
DTC	C201300	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too High Warn
DTC	C201400	Voltage Out of Range - Reduction Due to High Power Supply Voltage
DTC	C201500	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too High OFF
DTC	C201600	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too Low Warn
DTC	C201700	Voltage Out of Range - Reduction Due to Low Power Supply Voltage
DTC	C201800	Voltage Out of Range - Power Supply Voltage too Low OFF



1 Check battery voltage

- (a) Check if battery voltage is normal.
- (b) Check battery voltage with voltage band of multimeter.

OK
Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

NG Check and repair battery

OK

2 Check fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Remove fuses MF02 (70 A) and RF07 (10 A) from engine compartment fuse and relay box.
- (d) Check if fuse is blown.

OK
Fuse is not blown.

NG Replace fuse

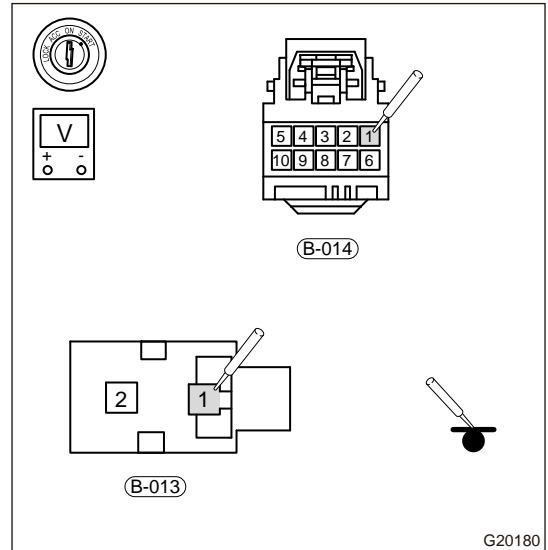
OK

3 Check power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect electronic power steering module connectors B-013 and B-014.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Check voltage between B-013 (1) and body ground with voltage band of multimeter, and check if 21 W test light comes on. Check voltage between B-014 (1) and body ground with voltage band of multimeter, and check if 21 W test light comes on.

OK
Power supply voltage is normal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
B-013 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
B-014 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	On



Result

NG Repair and replace power supply wire harness

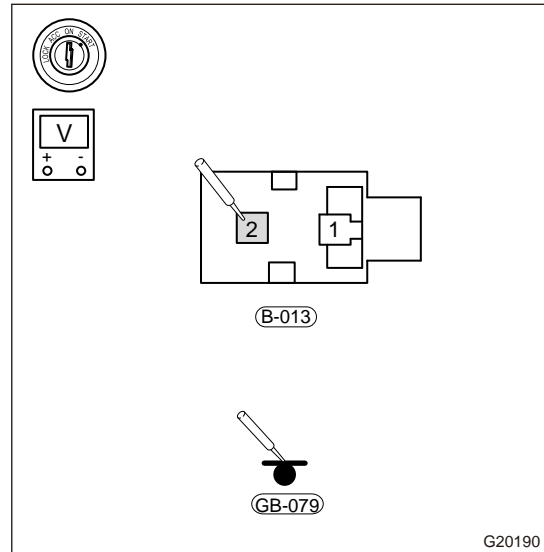
OK

4 Check ground

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the electronic power steering module connector B-013.

(c) Check for continuity between B-013 (2) and body ground GB-079 with ohm band of multimeter.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
B-013 (2) - Body ground GB-079	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



Result

NG → **Repair or replace ground point**

OK

5 Check wire harness and connector

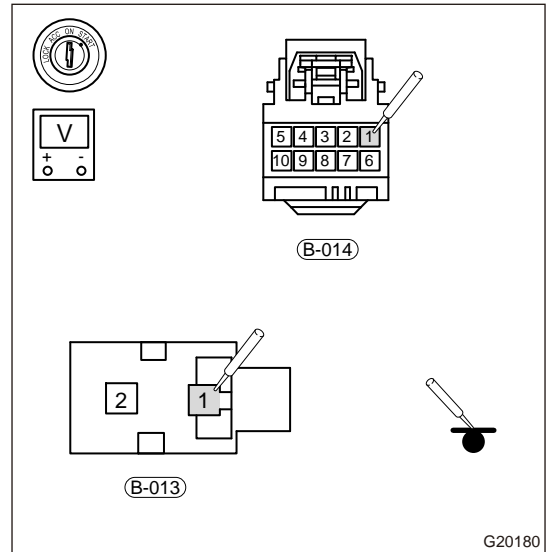
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect electronic power steering module connectors B-013 and B-014.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-014(1) and instrument panel fuse and relay box RF07.
- (d) Check for continuity between B-013 (1) and main fuse box B-145 with ohm band of multimeter.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
B-014(1) - Instrument panel fuse and relay box RF07	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-013 (1) - B-145	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$

(e) Check for continuity between B-013 (1) and body ground, B-014 (1) and body ground with ohm band of multimeter.

Check for Short

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
B-013 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
B-014 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



G20180

OK

Wire harness and connector are normal.

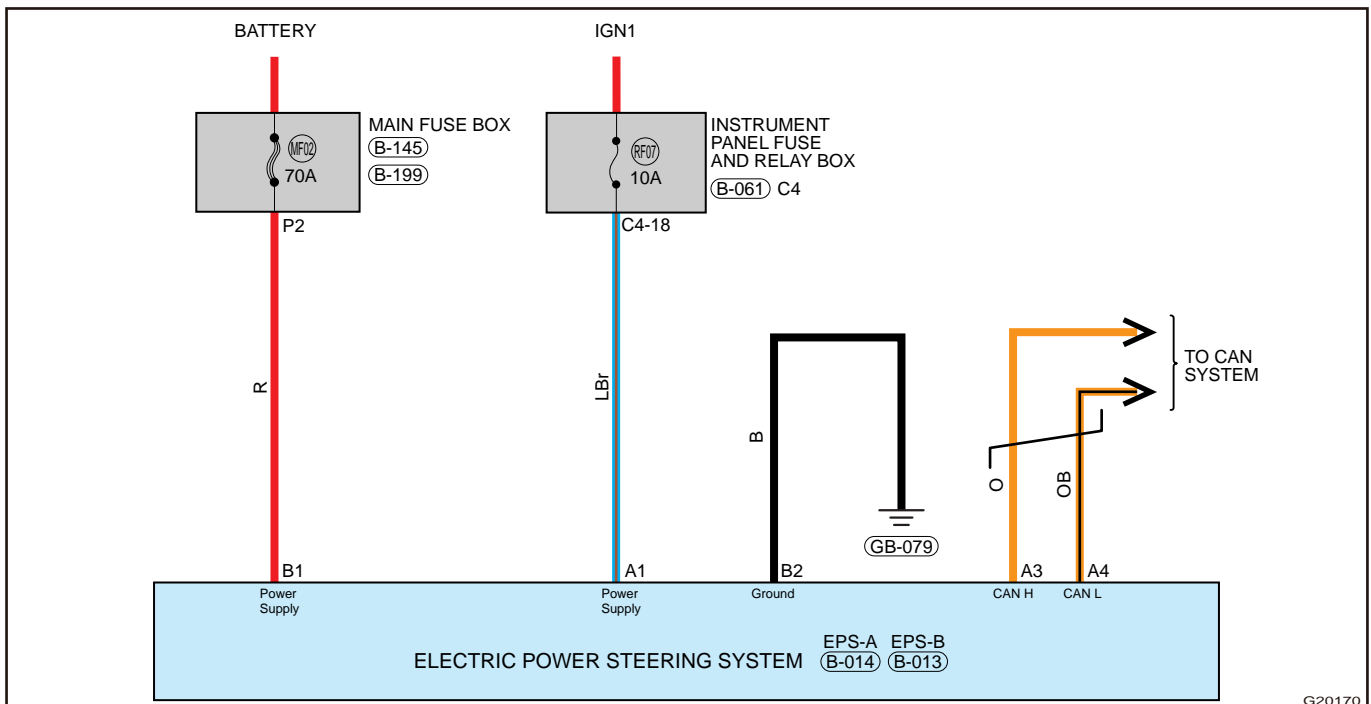
Result

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

NG Repair or replace control circuit wire harness and connector

■ Description

DTC	C200300	EPS Internal Hardware Error - ECU Hardware Error
-----	---------	--



G20170

⚠ Caution
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check EPS fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check if MF02 70A fuse of engine compartment main fuse box B-145 is blown.
- (c) Check if RF07 10A fuse in instrument panel fuse box B-061 is blown.

Result

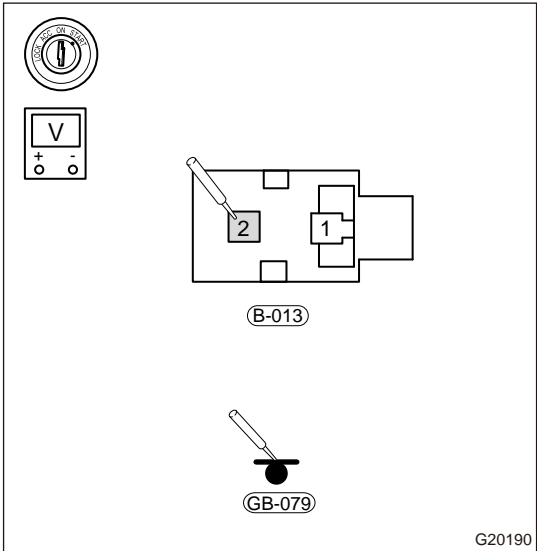
NG → **Replace fuse**

OK

2 Inspect EPS power supply and ground circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the EPS steering module connector B-013.
- (c) Using a multimeter, check for continuity between terminal 2 of EPS connector B-013 and ground point GB-079.

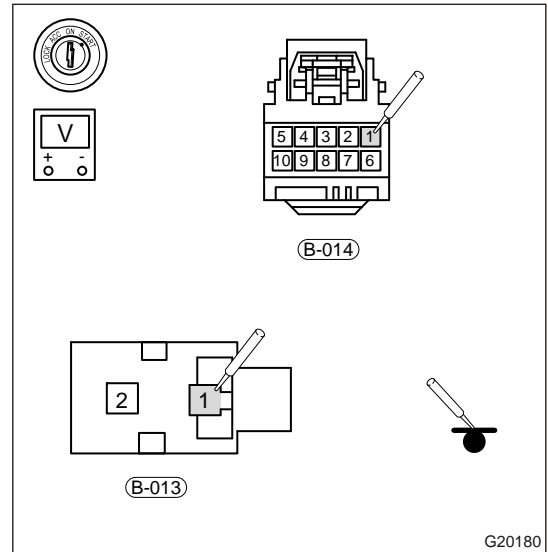
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
B-013 (2) - Ground point GB-079	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

(e) Check voltage between B-014 (1) and body ground with voltage band of multimeter, and check if 21 W test light comes on. Check voltage between B-013 (1) and body ground with voltage band of multimeter, and check if 21 W test light comes on.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
B-014 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
B-013 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



Result

NG → **Repair or replace power supply and ground wire harness**

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the EPS controller connector.
- (c) Check EPS controller terminals for bending, deformation or displacement.
- (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read EPS system DTC again.

Result

OK → **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired**

NG → **Replace EPS controller assembly**

DTC	C200100	EPS Internal Software Error - Dataflash Operation Error
DTC	C200200	EPS Internal Hardware Error - ECU Hardware Error
DTC	C200300	EPS Internal Software Error - Dataflash Verify Error
DTC	C200500	EPS Internal Software Error - ECU Software Monitor Error
DTC	C200600	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Flash Code Verify Error
DTC	C200800	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Index Sensor Error

DTC	C200900	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Output Stage Error
DTC	C200A00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Phase Current Error
DTC	C200B00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - RPS Error
DTC	C200C00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Steering Oscillation Error
DTC	C200D00	EPS Internal Software Error - Steering Angle Implausible Error
DTC	C200E00	EPS Internal Software Error - Steering Angle Not Initialized Error
DTC	C200F00	EPS Internal Software Error - Steering Angle Not Calibrated Error
DTC	C201100	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Steer Ang Sens Self Test Error

1	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

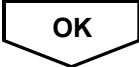
- (a) Connect negative battery terminal cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON to make engine run normally.
 - (b) Check battery voltage with voltage band of multimeter.
- Specified Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
Battery (+) - Battery (-)	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V

OK
Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V

Result

NG	Check and repair battery
-----------	---------------------------------



2	Check ground
----------	---------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect negative battery cable, and check EPS ground point.

OK
Ground point is well.

Result

OK	End
-----------	------------

NG	Replace electronic power steering module
-----------	---

DTC	C200700	EPS Steering Column Error - High Friction
1	Check tire pressure	

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check tire for wear.
- (c) Use tire pressure gauge to check tire pressure, and standard pressure value is required.

Result

NG **Replace tires**

OK

2	Check mechanical steering gear and chassis system	
----------	--	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check if mechanical steering gear runs smoothly or is stuck.
- (c) Check if chassis area is damaged.

Result

NG **Replace steering gear or chassis components**

OK

3	Check EPS motor and universal joint	
----------	--	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check if mechanical universal joint is damaged.
- (c) Check if electronic steering column motor is damaged.

Result

NG **Replace electronic steering column or universal joint**

OK

4	Reconfirm DTCs	
----------	-----------------------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in EPS system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read EPS system DTC again.

Result

OK	Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired
NG	Replace Electronic Power Steering (EPS) assembly

■ Description

DTC	C201E46	EPS Internal Software Error - Vehicle Configuration Not Programmed
1	Check configuration code of EPS controller	

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read configuration code in EPS system.
- (c) Check if configuration code is written and correct.

Result

NG	Rewrite correct configuration code
-----------	---

OK

2	Check EPS motor calibration
----------	------------------------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Keep battery voltage sufficient.
- (c) Park vehicle on a level ground and keep it straight ahead.
- (d) Connect diagnostic tester, and recalibrate EPS motor according to prompted requirements.

Result

NG	Recalibrate it several times if necessary
-----------	--

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in EPS system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read EPS system DTC again.

Result**OK****Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired****NG****Replace EPS controller assembly****■ Description**

DTC	C201900	Temperature Error - Over Temperature Reduction
DTC	C201A00	Temperature Error - Temperature Out of Range

1 Decrease ambient temperature, and avoid strong steering movement

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Avoid the strong steering movement.
- (c) Park vehicle on a level ground and cool it for a while.
- (d) Connect diagnostic tester and read DTCs again.

Result**NG****Read DTCs again****OK****2 Check if EPS is assembled correctly and tire pressure is sufficient**

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check steering column for mechanical friction or interference.
- (c) Check steering gear for mechanical friction or interference or damage.
- (d) Check if tire pressure is sufficient.

Result**NG****Readjust assembly**

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in EPS system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read EPS system DTC again.

Result

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

NG Replace EPS controller assembly

■ Description

DTC	C201B00	EPS Internal Hardware Error - Torque Sensor Error
DTC	C201C00	EPS Internal Software Error - Flash Memory Changed via XCP
DTC	C201D00	EPS Internal Software Error - ECU Software Info Error

1 Recheck torque sensor connection and reset ECU

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Recheck the torque sensor connection.
- (c) Reset the ECU.

Result

NG Replace torque sensor

OK

2 Refresh software

- (a) Refresh the software.

Result

NG Refresh software

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in EPS system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read EPS system DTC again.

Result

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

NG

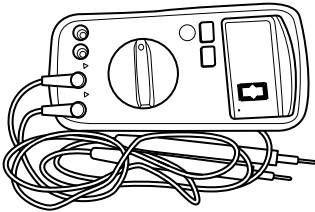
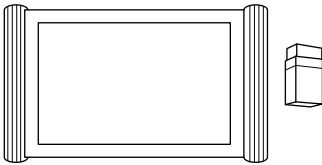
Replace EPS controller assembly

DTC	U000188	High Speed CAN Communication Bus
DTC	U010087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U010187	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U012287	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ESC
DTC	U015587	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with IPC
DTC	U015987	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with PDC_APA
DTC	U023987	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with FCM
DTC	U024887	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with PEPS
DTC	U040181	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from EMS
DTC	U040281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from TCU
DTC	U041681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from ESC
DTC	U042381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from IPC
DTC	U042681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from PEPS
DTC	U053A81	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from FCM
DTC	U200281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from PDC_APA

Refer to 9.16 CAN Network Malfunction Diagnosis.

28.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

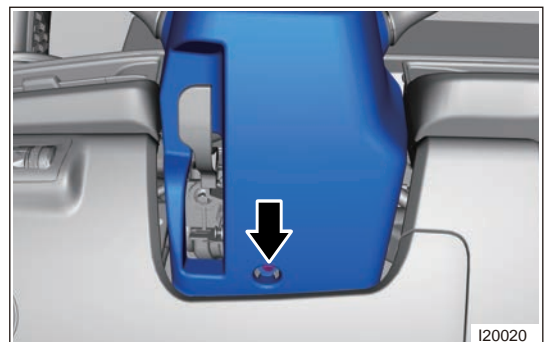
1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>

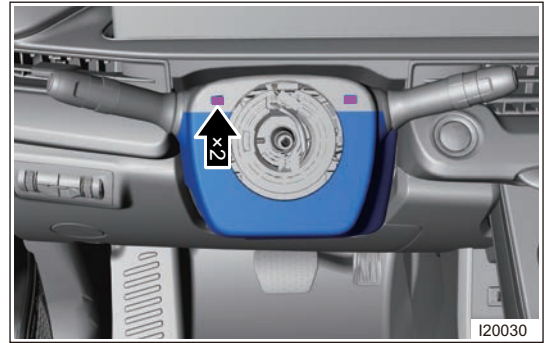
2 Replacement of Combination Switch Cover Assembly

2.1 Removal

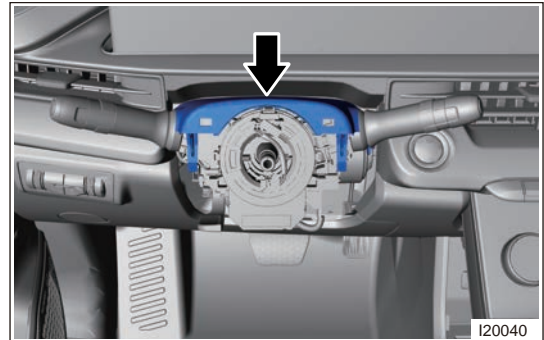
- (1) Set the steering wheel to straight-ahead position.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the driver airbag assembly.
- (5) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (6) Remove the combination switch lower cover fixing screw.



- (7) Disengage connecting clips between upper cover and lower cover, and separate upper cover and lower cover, then remove lower cover.



- (8) Disengage combination switch upper cover from DVD trim panel, and remove upper cover.



⚠ Caution

Operate carefully to prevent damage to components during removal.

Hint:

- Check combination switch upper and lower covers for damage or deformation. Replace upper and lower covers if necessary.
- Check if upper and lower cover clips are normal. Replace upper and lower covers if necessary.

■ Installation

- (1) Loosen steering wheel adjusting handle, and adjust steering column assembly to uppermost position, then tighten adjusting handle to uppermost position.
- (2) Insert steering column lower cover from right side of combination switch at an angle, and then install adjusting handle into cover hole.
- (3) After adjusting lower cover, install upper cover and fix upper and lower cover clips in place.
- (4) Install fixing screw to combination switch lower cover.

⚠ Caution

- **Tighten fixing screw in place.**
- **Operate carefully to prevent damage to components during installation.**

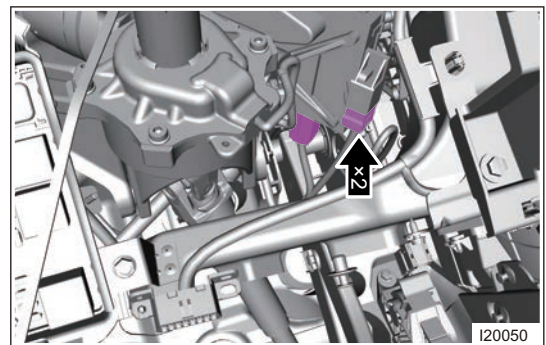
- (5) Install the steering wheel assembly.
- (6) Install the driver airbag assembly.
- (7) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (8) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

3 Replacement of Steering Column with Intermediate Shaft Assembly

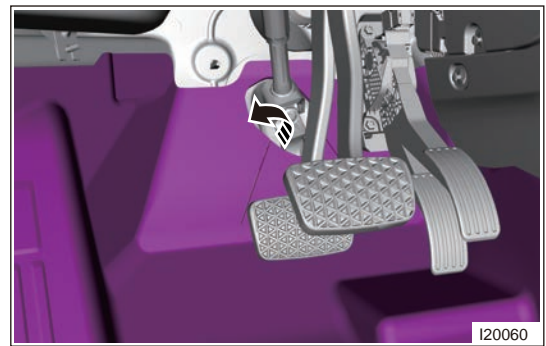
3.1 Removal

Procedures listed below are removal procedures for electronic steering column.

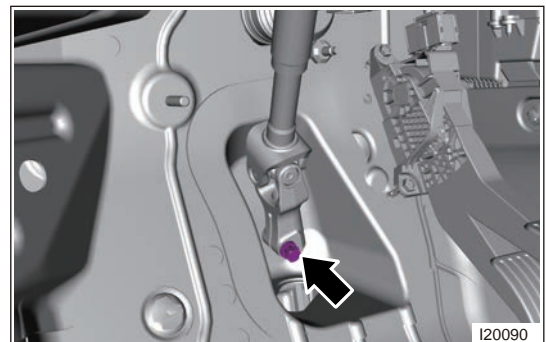
- (1) Set the steering wheel to straight-ahead position.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the driver airbag assembly.
- (5) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (6) Remove the combination switch cover.
- (7) Remove the spiral cable.
- (8) Remove the combination light switch assembly.
- (9) Disconnect 2 connectors from EPS controller.



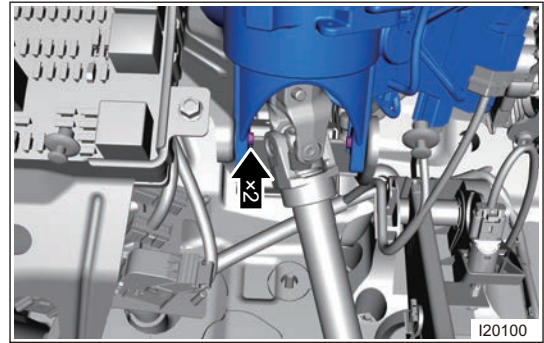
- (10) Turn over carpet under driver seat in the direction of arrow.



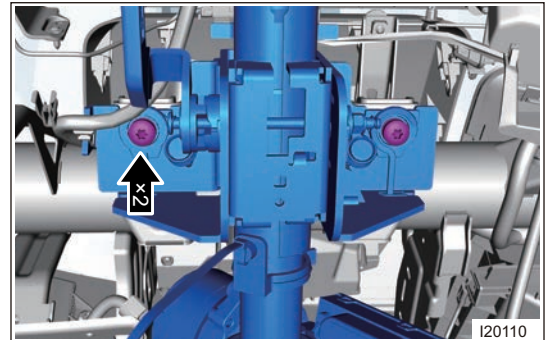
- (11) Remove coupling bolt between steering column with intermediate shaft assembly and steering gear input shaft.



- (12) Remove 2 fixing bolts from steering column lower bracket.



- (13) Remove 2 fixing bolts from steering column upper bracket.



- (14) Remove the steering column with intermediate shaft assembly.

Hint:

- Check steering column assembly for wear, crack or deformation. As welding or correction is not allowed, replace steering column assembly if necessary.
- Check steering column bearing for looseness, wear or sticking. Replace steering column assembly if necessary.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the steering column with intermediate shaft assembly.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts to steering column upper bracket.
Torque: 25 ± 2 N·m
- (3) Install 2 fixing bolts to steering column lower bracket.
Torque: 25 ± 2 N·m
- (4) Install coupling bolt between steering column with intermediate shaft assembly and steering gear input shaft.
Torque: 40 ± 3 N·m
- (5) Place the carpet under the driver in a proper position.
- (6) Connect 2 connectors to EPS controller.
- (7) Install the combination light switch assembly.
- (8) Install the spiral cable.
- (9) Install the combination switch cover.
- (10) Install the steering wheel assembly.
- (11) Install the driver airbag assembly.
- (12) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (13) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.
- (14) Connect EXEED dedicated diagnostic tester, read and clear DTCs.

3.2 Replacement and Matching Overview

Hint:

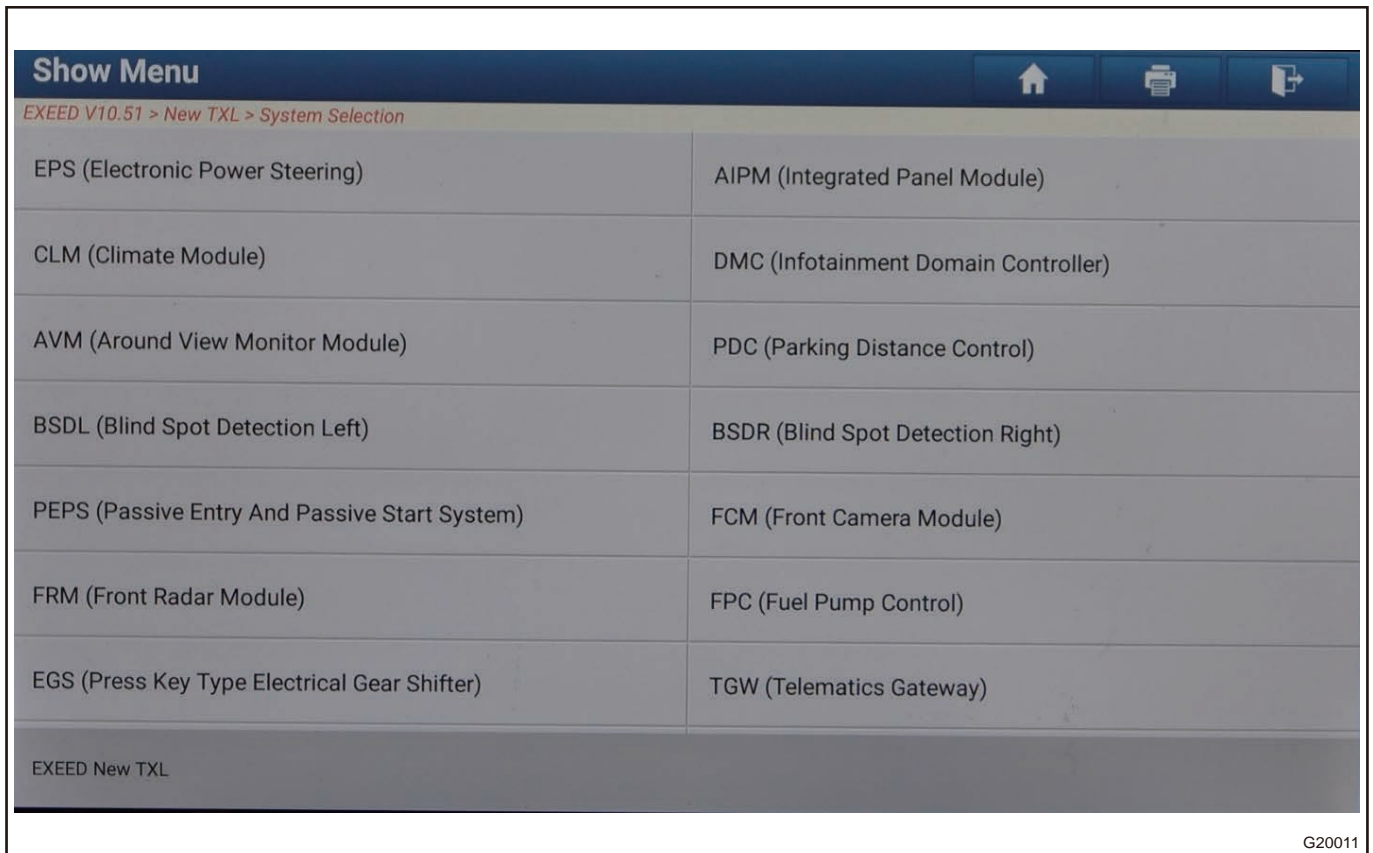
Before performing matching and learning of vehicle module, be sure to carefully read the related precautions and perform the operation strictly according to standard working procedures.

For details of matching and learning of Electronic Power Steering (EPS) system performed under different situations, see table below:

Items	Applicable Situations	Actions Required by Diagnostic Tester	Note
Module replacement	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Module damage • Module failure 	Writing VIN code	Relearning steering angle calibration is not necessary when writing VIN code, they are not affected each other.
		Software configuration information writing	
		Steering angle calibration	
Software upgrading	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low software version • Software error 	Controller software refreshing	/
Calibration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replacement of steering wheel • Replacement of EPS motor assembly • Steering gear • Four-wheel alignment 	Steering angle calibration	When recalibrating steering angle, it is necessary to clear calibrated data
Configuration writing	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replacement of module • Modification of configuration 	Software configuration information writing	If configuration code cannot be read in the original module, try to get it from same configuration model or EXEED after-sales service department.

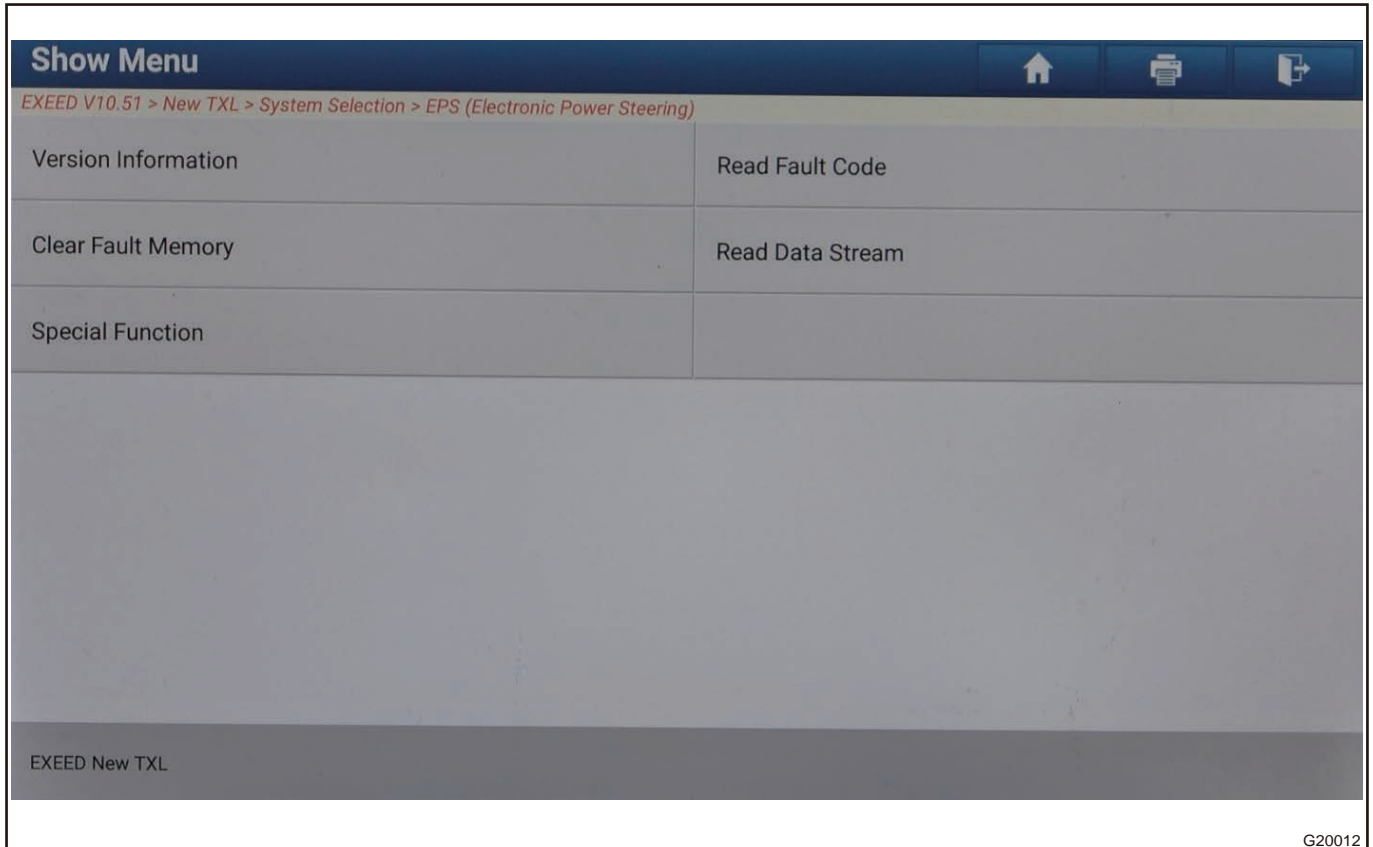
3.3 Calibration of Steering Angle

(1) Enter “EPS (Electronic Power Steering)” .



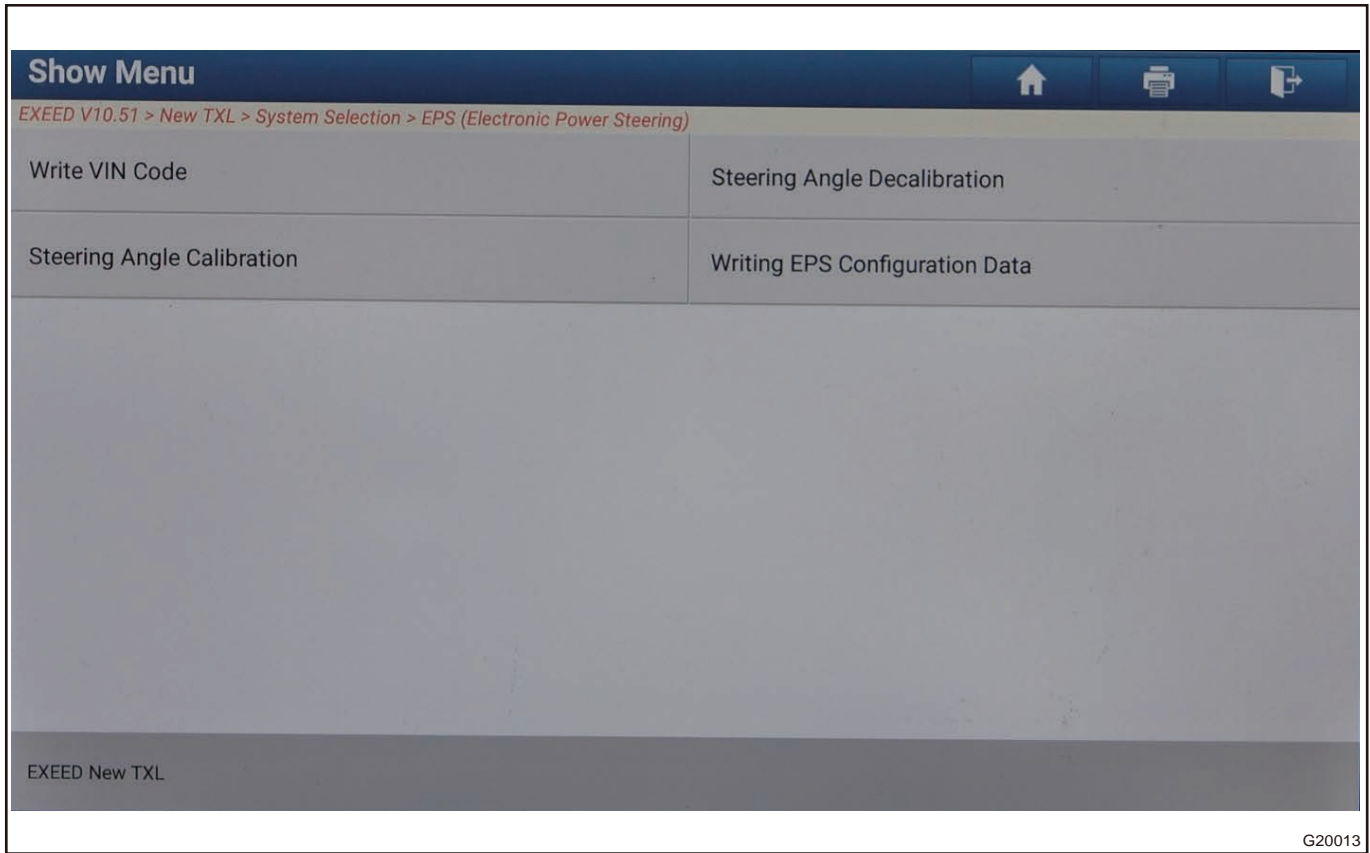
G20011

(2) Click “Special Function” .

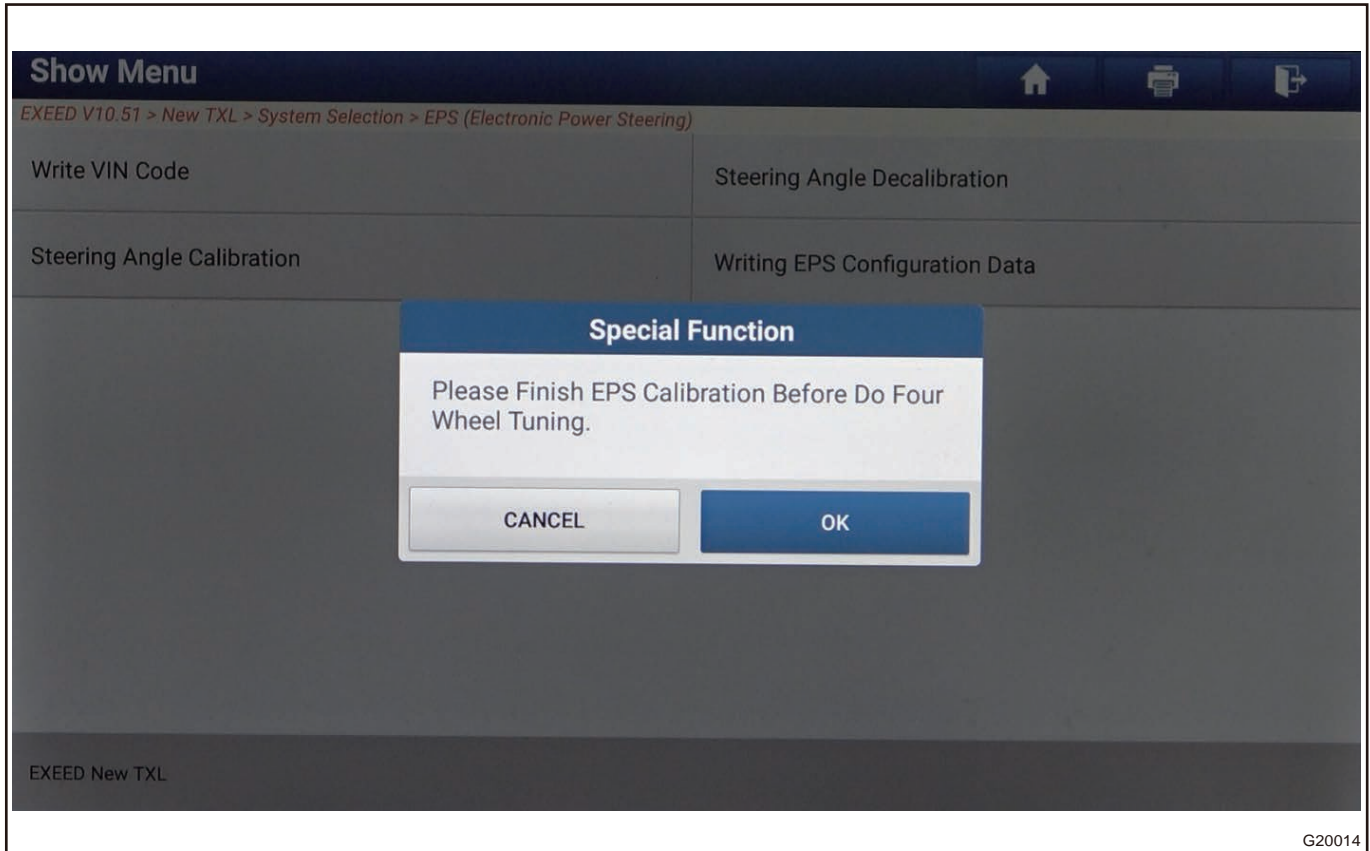


G20012

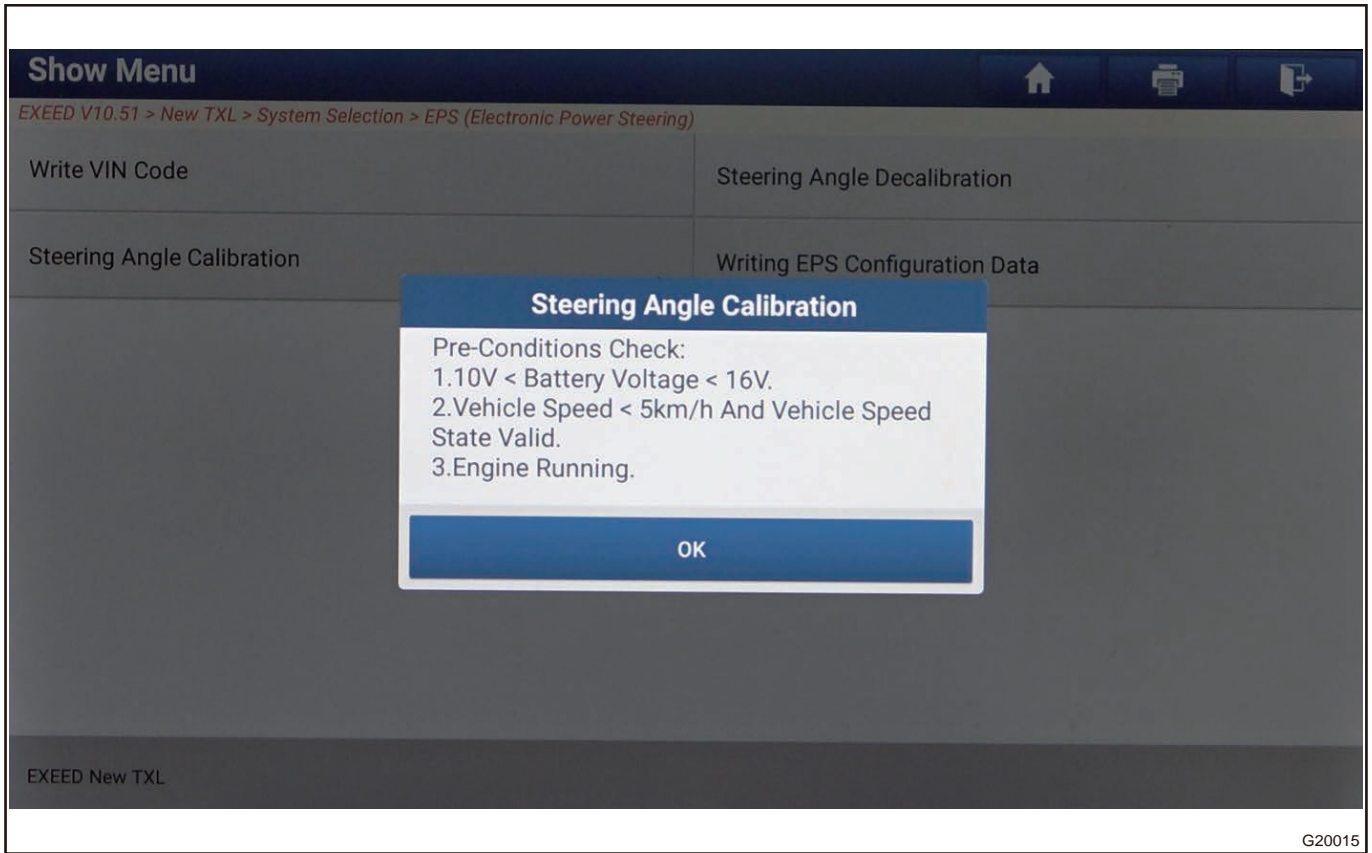
(3) Enter next interface and click “Steering Angle Calibration” .



(4) "Please Finish EPS Calibration Before Do Four Wheel Tuning." is prompted, then click "OK" .



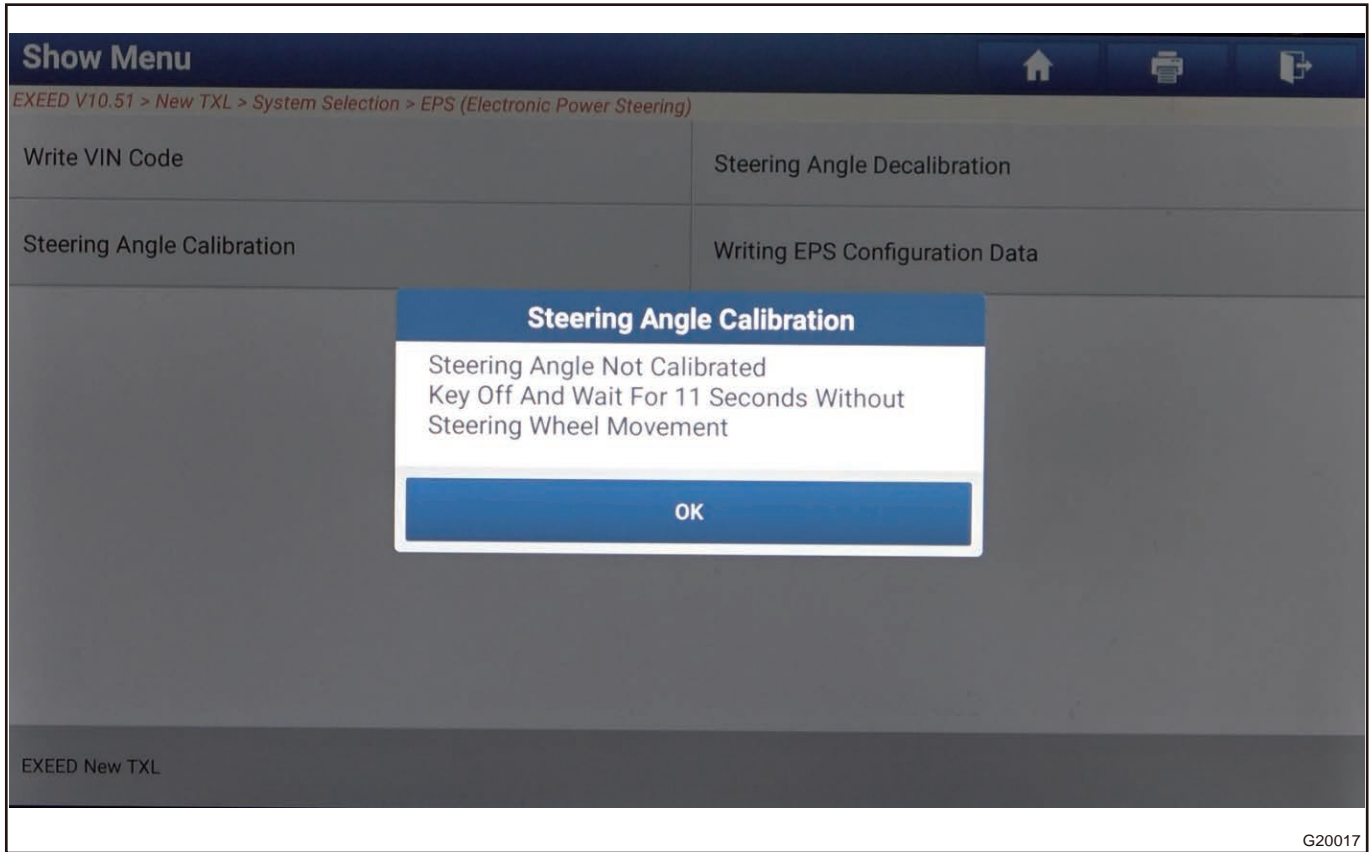
(5) "Calibration Condition Inspection Contents" is prompted, then click "OK" .



- (6) "Steer +/-25 Deg Around The Center Position Forth And Back,Slowly(<200 Deg/S),Then Fix Steering Wheel At Center Position!" is prompted, then click "OK" .



- (7) "Steering Angle Not Calibrated Key Off And Wait For 11 Seconds Without Steering Wheel Movement" is prompted, then click "OK" .



STEERING WHEEL

29.1	STEERING WHEEL	1108
1	Warnings and Precautions	1108
1.1	Warnings	1108
1.2	Precautions	1108
2	System Overview	1108
2.1	System Description	1108
2.2	System Components Diagram	1109
29.2	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1110
1	Tool	1110
2	Steering Wheel Assembly	1110
2.1	Removal	1110
2.2	Inspection	1111
2.3	Installation	1111
3	Steering Wheel Multi-function Switch	1112
3.1	Removal	1112
3.2	Installation	1113

29.1 STEERING WHEEL

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Warnings

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Be sure to read precautions for SRS airbag before removing steering wheel.
- (2) Be sure to read precautions for SRS airbag before removing multi-function switch.
- (3) Be sure to read precautions for SRS airbag before removing shift fork.

1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

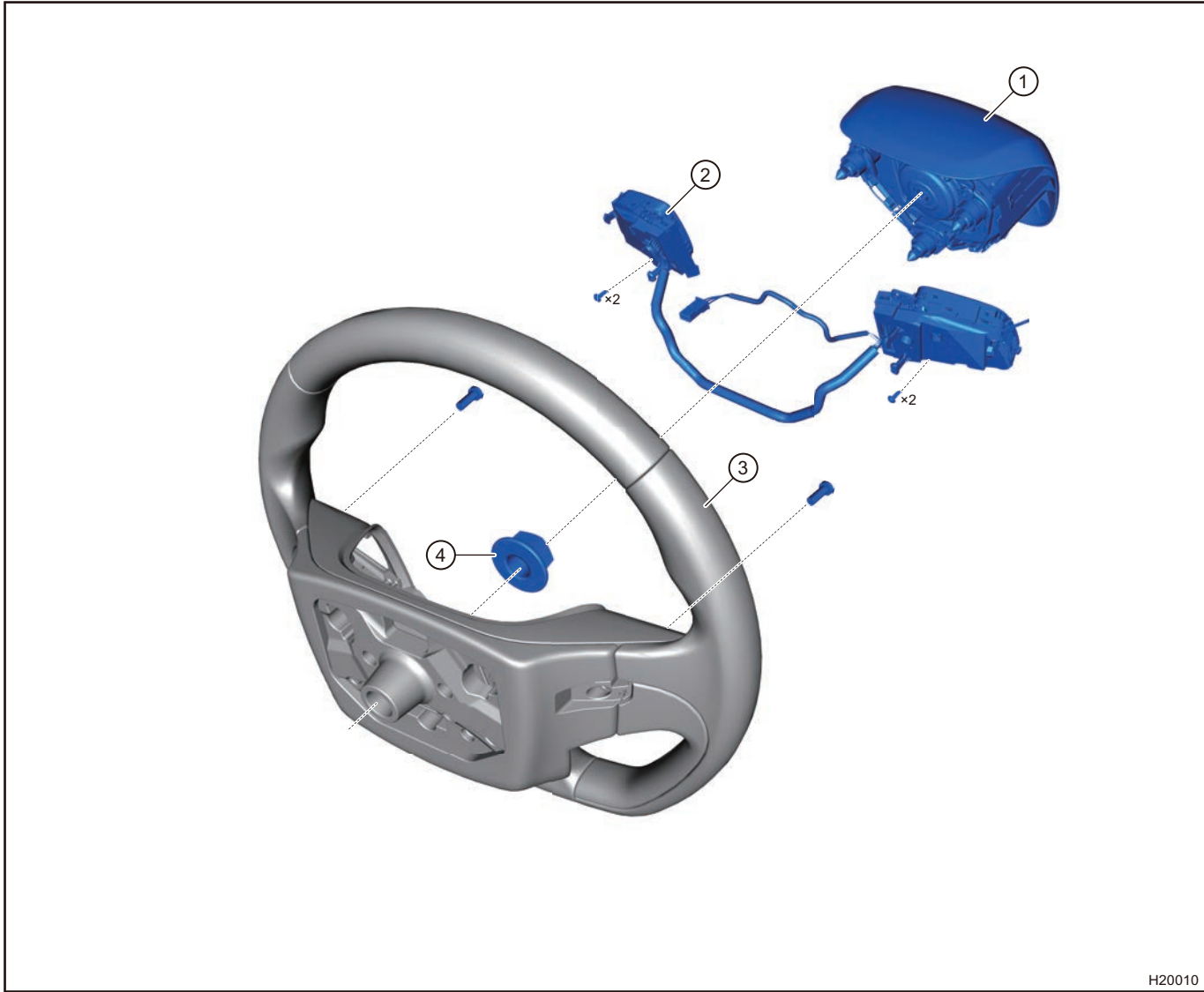
- (1) Wait at least 90 seconds after disconnecting the negative battery cable to prevent airbag and belt pretensioner from being activated.
- (2) SAM angle sensor of vehicle provides angle signal for related controller such as ESP; Motor position sensor inside EPS module provides steering angle signal for EPS; Therefore, it is necessary to perform SAM steering angle zero point calibration and motor position sensor calibration inside EPS module after replacing electronic steering column assembly, steering gear and four-wheel alignment.
- (3) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Steering wheel is the device that driver controls the driving direction. Through the steering mechanism, steering wheel controls wheels to left and right to change driving direction or keep vehicle driving straight.

2.2 System Components Diagram



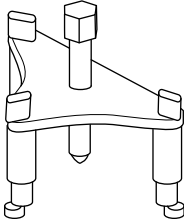
H20010

1	Driver Airbag	3	Steering Wheel Body
2	Steering Wheel Multi-function Switch	4	Steering Wheel Locking Nut

29.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tool

■ Special Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Steering Wheel Remover	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00085</p>

2 Steering Wheel Assembly

2.1 Removal

⚠ Caution
After removing steering wheel, install spiral cable stopper pin fixing combination switch.

- (1) Adjust steering wheel to the centered position (visually check tire is straight-ahead).
- (2) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

⚠ Caution
Wait at least 90 seconds after disconnecting the negative battery cable to prevent airbag and belt pretensioner from being activated.

- (4) Remove the driver airbag assembly.
- (5) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
 - 1) Disconnect the steering wheel quick button connector (arrow).



- 2) Remove the steering wheel locking nut.



- 3) Use steering wheel remover to remove steering wheel.



- 4) Install spiral cable stopper pin fixing combination switch.

2.2 Inspection

Hint:

Steering wheel centering or steering performance are affected by manufacturing error, requirements for four wheels alignment toe-in and steering wheel centering are as following:

- (1) Confirm the left and right strokes of steering wheel after it is assembled.
- (2) Before performing four-wheel alignment, first rotate steering wheel to left and right to determine rotation angle of one side is not less than 45°, then returns to horizontal position.
- (3) Fix the steering wheel horizontally.
- (4) Use calibration device to complete center position calibration of steering wheel rotation angle (for calibration methods, refer to EPS steering angle calibration).
- (5) When adjusting front wheel toe-in, it is necessary to adjust steering gear left and right tie rods. Loosen locking nut of steering gear tie rod when adjusting, use wrench to rotate inner lever at hexagonal position of outer lever, until toe-in value reaches specified value, then tighten locking nut. If threads exposed outside on left and right levers are greatly not equal (difference between threads exposed outside on left and right levers are more than 3 threads), please recheck if steering wheel is centered. It is necessary to hold the flat and square position of outer lever with wrench while tightening. Tightening torque for nut is $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$.
- (6) After four-wheel alignment is completed and vehicle drives from four-wheel alignment station, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position (make sure steering wheel has hit the limit position) without vehicle moving and return it to the center position, then turn off the vehicle.

2.3 Installation

Hint:

The scale marks on steering wheel and steering column can only assist in assembly, and cannot be used on final position, it is necessary to perform toe-in and steering wheel rotation angle adjustment.

- (1) Pull out the spiral cable stopper pin.
- (2) Visually check tire is straight-ahead (adjust steering wheel to the centered position).

(3) Install the steering wheel.

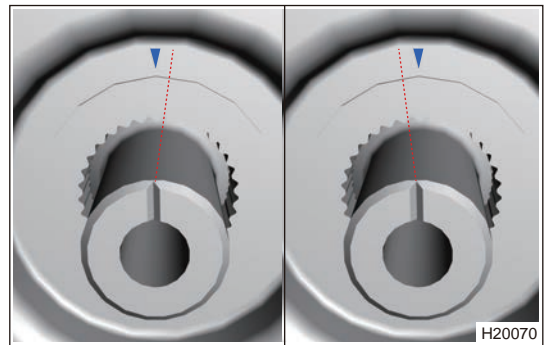
1) Align scale marks on steering wheel and steering column to assemble.



2) Turn steering wheel left and right to the limit position, and check steering wheel rotation angle.



3) Visually check steering wheel rotation angle, and ensure the angle deviation on both sides is no more than 10°. If the deviation is more than 10°, check after adjusting one gear tooth.



(4) Install the steering wheel locking nut.
Tightening torque: 48 ± 4 N·m

(5) Connect the steering wheel multi-function switch connector.

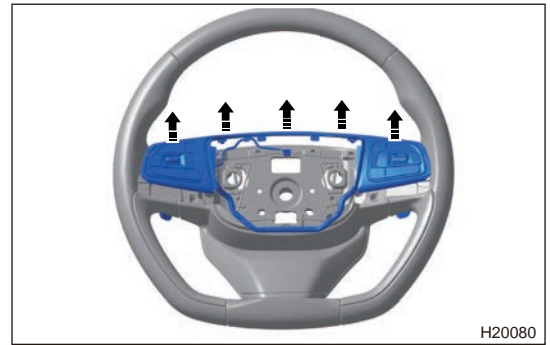
(6) Install the driver airbag.

3 Steering Wheel Multi-function Switch

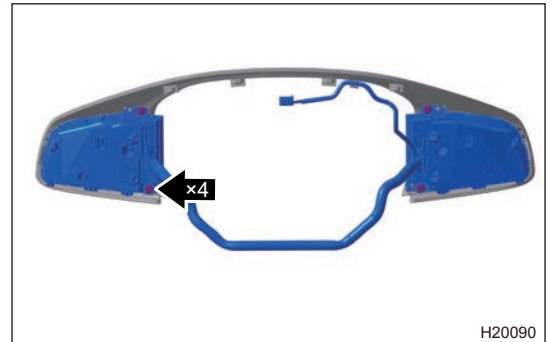
3.1 Removal

(1) Remove the driver airbag.

- (2) Squeeze mounting board clips and steering wheel multi-function switch to push it out.



- (3) Remove 4 fixing screws between steering wheel multi-function switch and mounting board.



- (4) Remove the steering wheel multi-function switch.

3.2 Installation

- (1) Install the steering wheel multi-function switch.
- (2) Install 4 fixing screws between steering wheel multi-function switch and mounting board.
- (3) Install steering wheel multi-function switch and mounting board to steering wheel, press steering wheel multi-function switch firmly, and clip steering wheel with clips.
- (4) Install the driver airbag.

STEERING COLUMN MODULE (SCM)

30.1	STEERING COLUMN MODULE (SCM)	1115
1	Warnings and Precautions	1115
1.1	Precautions	1115
1.2	Precautions	1115
2	System Overview	1115
2.1	System Description	1115
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1116
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	1117
2.4	Component Operation Description.....	1117
3	System Circuit Diagram	1118
3.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	1118
3.2	Circuit Diagram	1121
4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	1121
4.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1121
4.2	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1122
4.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1123
4.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1123
4.5	Ground Inspection	1123
4.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1124
30.2	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1131
1	Tool	1131
2	Replacement of Steering Column with Intermediate Shaft Assembly.....	1131
2.1	Removal	1131
3	Steering Column Module.....	1133
3.1	Removal	1133
3.2	Steering Angle Sensor Zero Point Calibration.....	1134

30.1 STEERING COLUMN MODULE (SCM)

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) Wear glove during assembling steering column with intermediate shaft assembly, prevent hands are contacted with steering column, which may cause rust.
- (2) DO NOT hold steering column handle position, but steering column position; do not bump, strike steering column when taking, carrying or assembling it, prevent steering column from collapse.
- (3) Adjustment handle is in locking state after steering column is assembled, do not transfer to next station, prevent handle is knocked during operation, which may cause person damage or handle breakage.
- (4) DO NOT touch interior ornaments when removing steering column with intermediate shaft assembly to avoid scratching interior ornaments.
- (5) The zero point calibration of steering angle sensor must be carried out on four-wheel alignment station, otherwise the zero point calibration of steering angle sensor is not accurate, which will bring the risk of ESP alarm.
- (6) After installing steering column, perform software configuration and center calibration.
- (7) When removing and installing steering column, it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.
- (8) It is necessary to perform steering angle sensor zero point calibration after replacing steering column.

1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

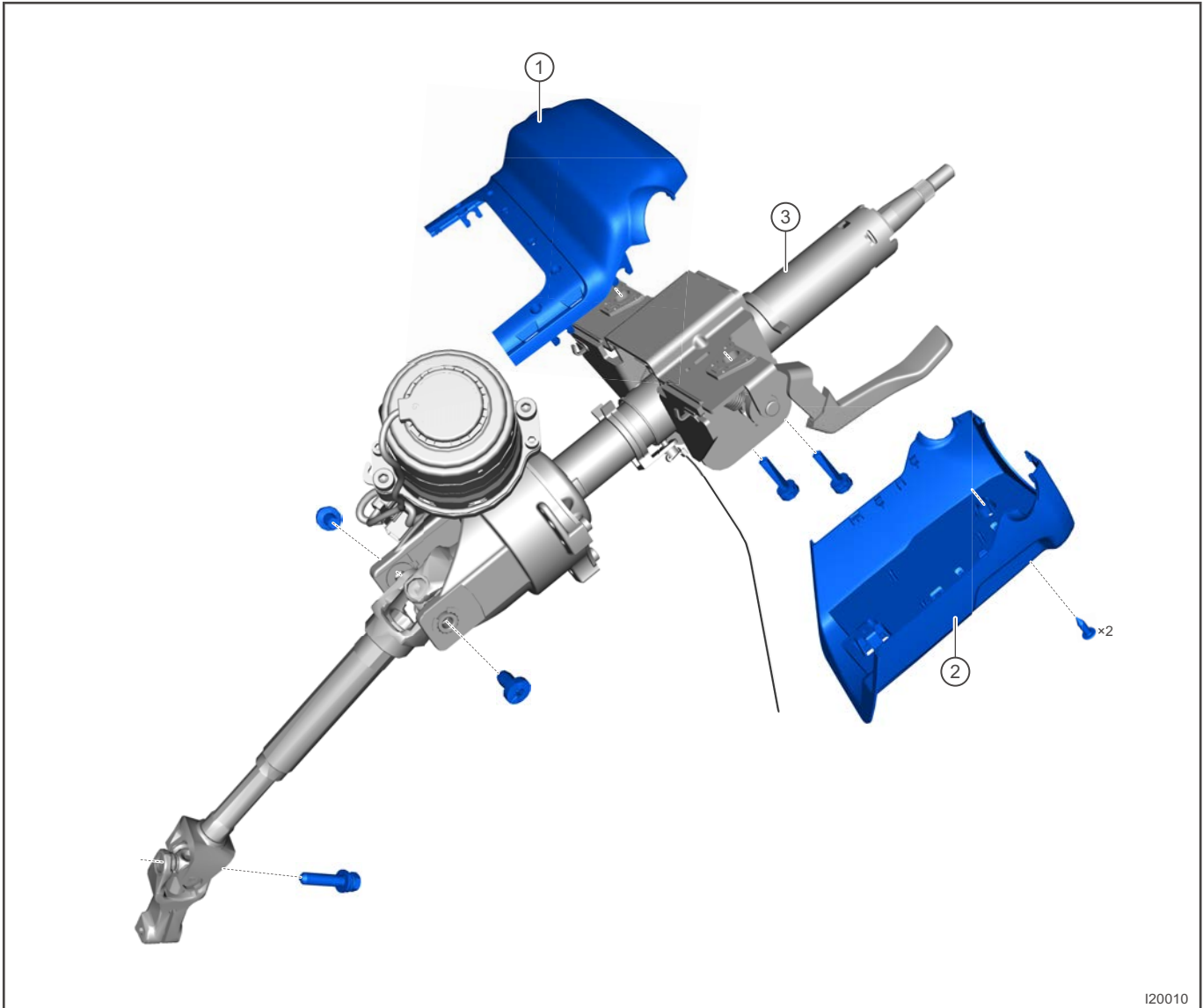
- (1) Wait at least 90 seconds after disconnecting the negative battery cable to prevent airbag and belt pretensioner from being activated.
- (2) Vehicle SAM angle sensor provides angle signal to ESP and other related controllers; Motor position sensor in EPS module provides steering angle signal for EPS; Therefore, after replacing electric steering column assembly, steering gear and performing four-wheel alignment, it is necessary to calibrate zero point of SAM steering angle and motor position sensor in EPS module.
- (3) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

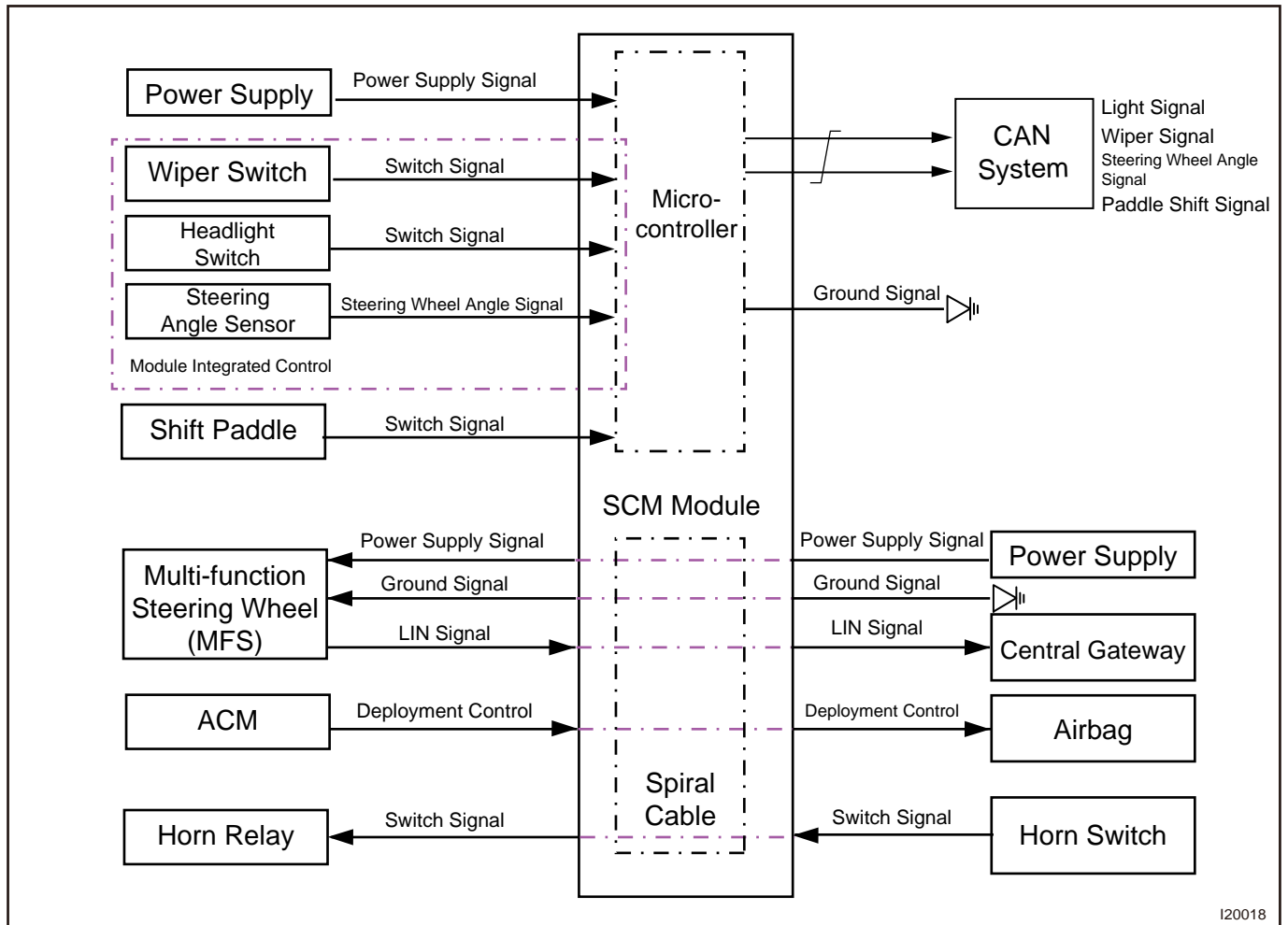
The steering column is the component of the steering system that connects the steering wheel and the steering gear. Through the steering column, the driver transfers torque to the steering gear, which drives the steering gear to achieve steering.

2.2 System Components Diagram



1	Combination Switch Upper Cover	3	Electric Steering Column with Intermediate Shaft Assembly
2	Combination Switch Lower Cover		

2.3 System Schematic Diagram



The steering column module is integrated inside the combination switch.

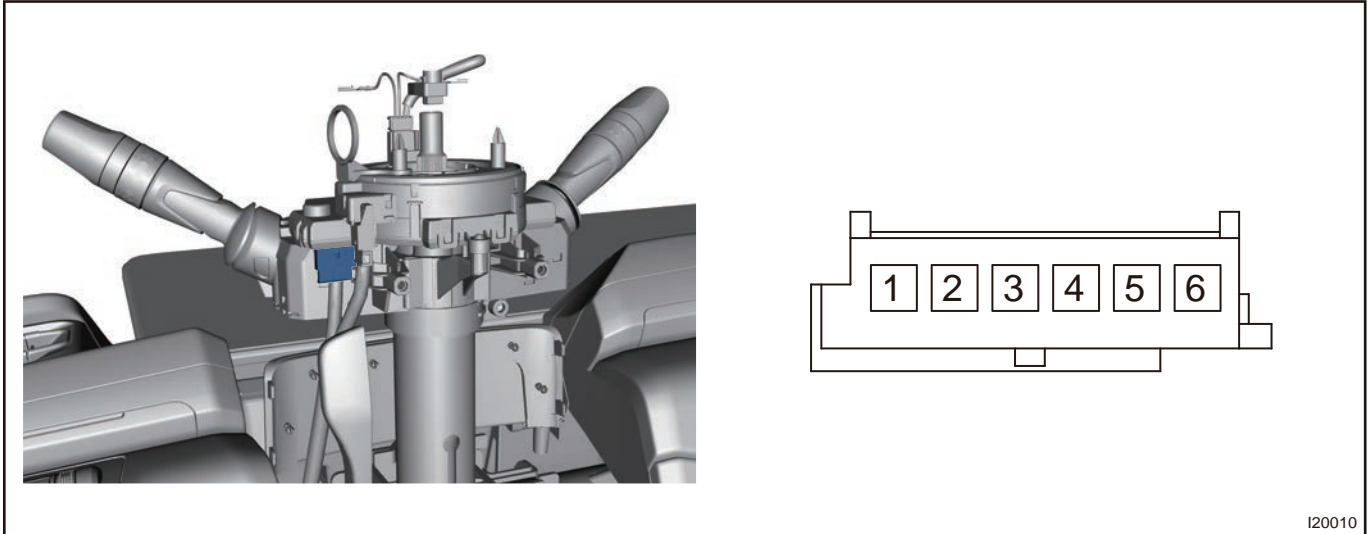
2.4 Component Operation Description

■ Steering angle sensor

The steering angle sensor is used to detect the rotation angle and the steering direction of the steering wheel. Turning the steering wheel to the left or right will be detected by the steering angle sensor, so that the vehicle electronic control unit will send out correct steering command. The rotation angle of the steering wheel provides a basis for vehicle to achieve steering range, so that the vehicle can drive according to driver's steering intention.

3 System Circuit Diagram

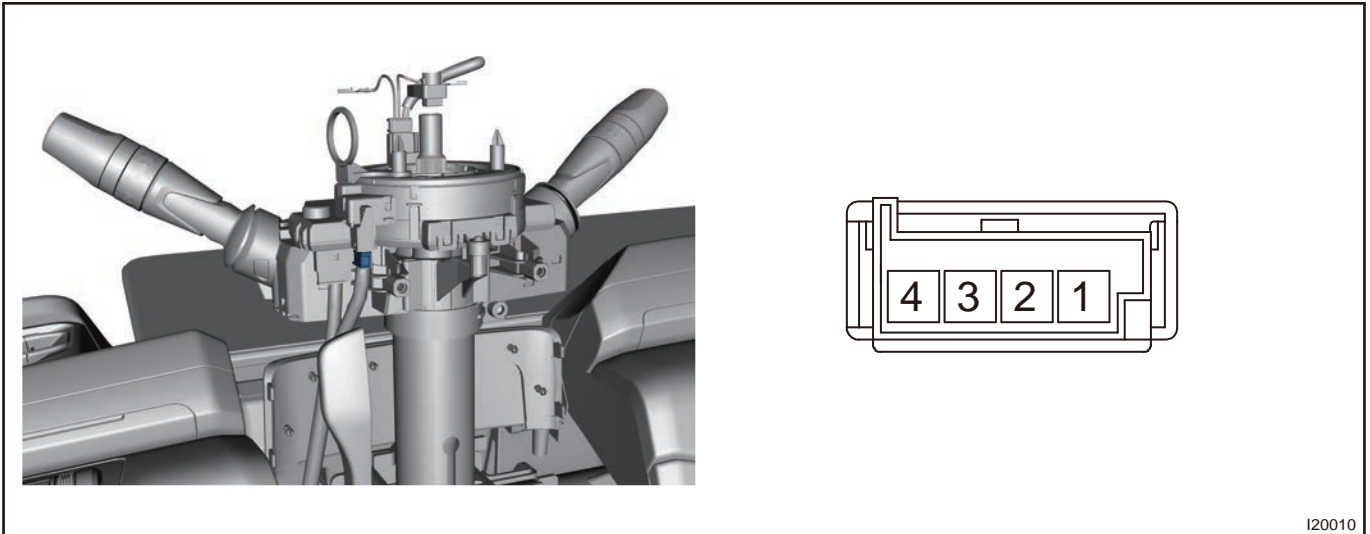
3.1 Module Terminal Definition



I20010

Steering column module lower connector (6 PIN)

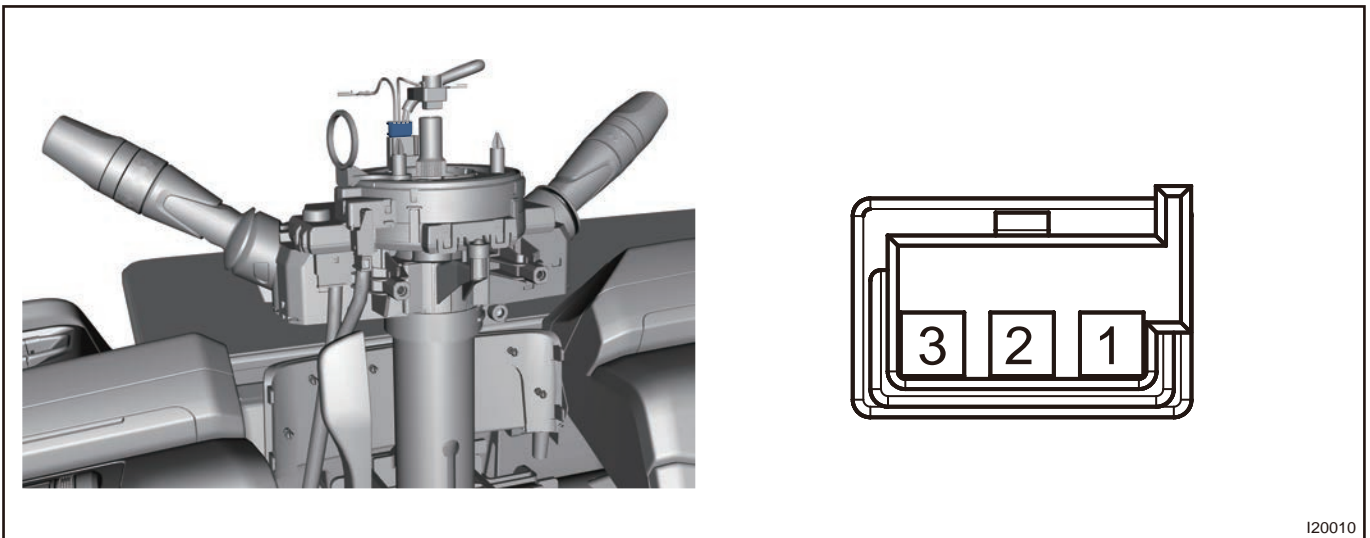
Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
1	Body ground	Battery +	Power supply "ON"	12 V
2	/	/	/	/
3	Body ground	CAN L	Power supply "ON"	2.3 V
4	Body ground	CAN H	Power supply "ON"	2.7 V
5	Body ground	Multi-function switch LIN	Power supply "ON"	7.7 V
6	Body ground	GND	Power supply "ON"	0 V



I20010

Steering column module lower connector (4 PIN)

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
1	Body ground	Horn switch ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
2	Body ground	Horn switch	Power supply "ON"	Do not press 12 V, press 0 V
3	/	Airbag -	/	/
4	/	Airbag +	/	/



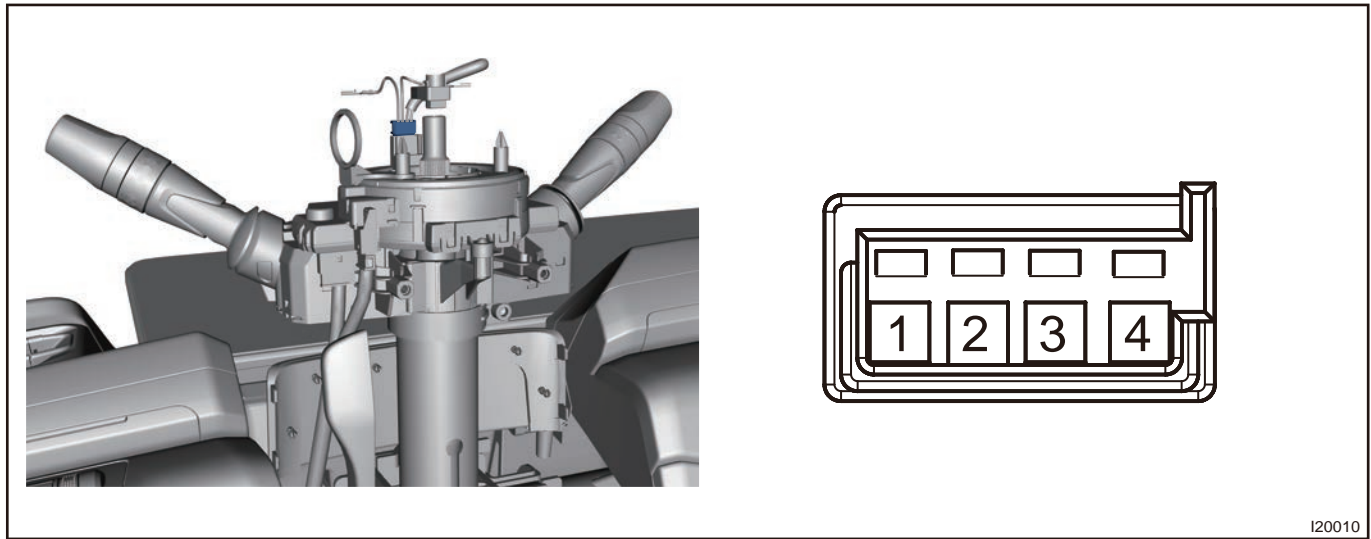
I20010

Steering column module upper connector (3 PIN)

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
1	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply "ON"	12 V

30 - STEERING COLUMN MODULE (SCM)

2	Body ground	LIN	Power supply "ON"	7.7 V
3	Body ground	GND	Power supply "ON"	0 V

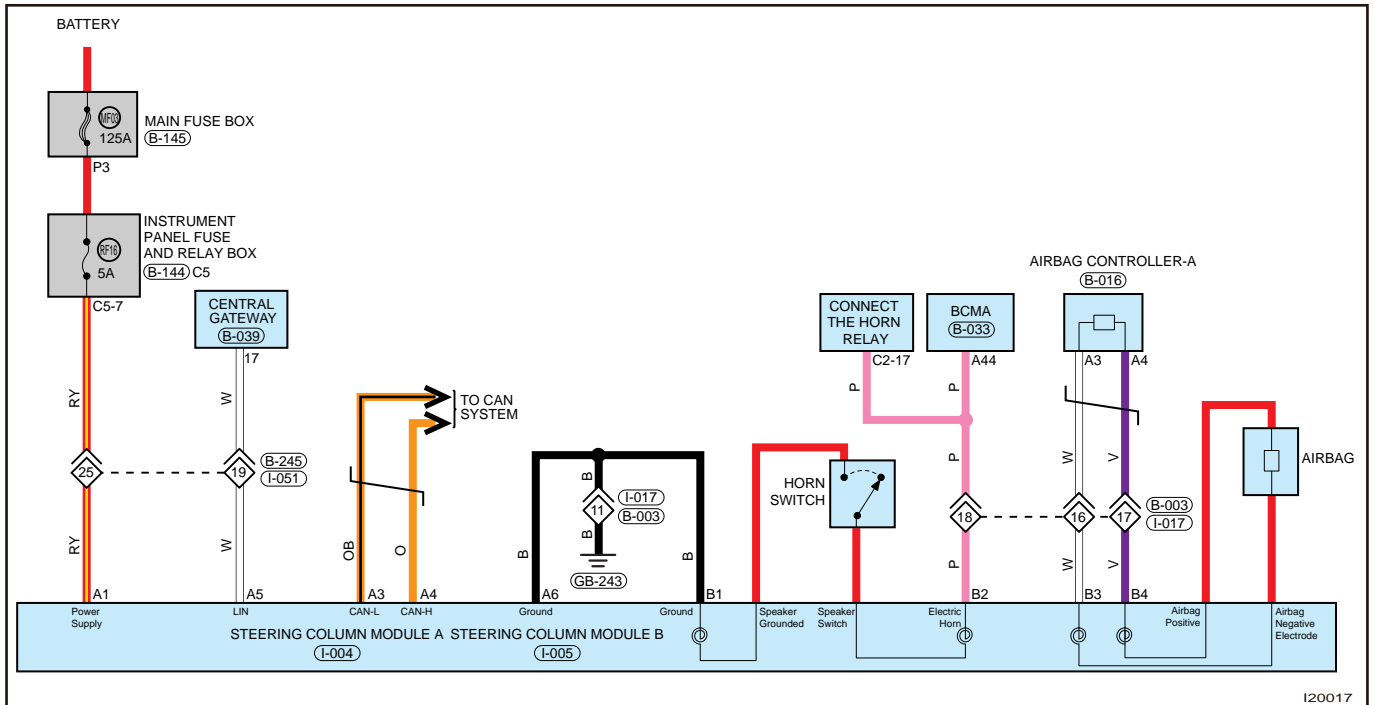


I20010

Steering column module upper connector (4 PIN)

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
1	Body ground	Horn switch ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
2	Body ground	Horn switch	Power supply "ON"	Do not press 12 V, press 0 V
3	/	Airbag -	/	/
4	/	Airbag +	/	/

3.2 Circuit Diagram



4 Diagnostic Information and Steps

4.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.
Brake control system:

Symptom	Possible Cause
Steering wheel free play is too large	Suspension or steering parts (loose or worn)
	Front hub bearing (worn or loose)
	Steering gear bracket (loose)
	Gear clearance (improper)
	Steering shaft (worn or loose)
Sideslip	Tire pressure
	Brake lag
	Wheel alignment (wrong)
	Steering column (worn or damaged)
	Steering or suspension parts (loose or worn)
Running deviation	Tire pressure (too high or too low)
	Different tire wear (diameter difference occurs)
	Wheel alignment (wrong)

4.2 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot steering column module (SCM).

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

NG	Replace battery
-----------	------------------------

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Next

4	Read DTCs
----------	------------------

No DTC	Perform repair according to Problem Symptoms Table
---------------	---

DTC is output

5	Read DTCs (current DTC and history DTC)
----------	--

No DTC	Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTCs malfunction procedures
---------------	---

DTC is output

6	Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart
----------	--

Next

7	Adjust, repair or replace
---	----------------------------------

Next

8	Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired
---	---

Next

End

4.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

■ SCM Power Supply Part DTC

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B12A017	ECU Power Supply Voltage Above Threshold	1. Microcontroller is not in calibration state. 2. SCM is awake.	1. Power system voltage is too high; 2. Wiring harness connector failure; 3. SCM failure.	1. Check whether power supply voltage is in effective range (9 - 16 V). 2. Check wire harness. 3. Clear DTC and test again. If DTC still exists, replace SCM.
B12A116	ECU Power Supply Voltage Below Threshold	1. Ignition signal state is not in "start" state. 2. Microcontroller is not in calibration state. 3. SCM is awake	1. Power system voltage is too low; 2. Wiring harness connector failure; 3. SCM failure.	

■ SCM Light Part DTC

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B12A214	Turn Light Switch Short to GND	1. Voltage condition is in valid range (9 - 16 V). 2. Microcontroller is not in calibration state. 3. SCM is awake	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. SCM failure.	1. Check whether power supply voltage is in effective range. 2. Check wire harness. 3. Clear DTC and test again. If DTC still exists, replace SCM.
B12A215	Turn Light Switch Short to BAT or Open			
B12A21C	Turn Light Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid			
B12A314	HighBeam/FlashLight Switch Short to GND			
B12A315	HighBeam/FlashLight Switch Short to BAT or Open			
B12A31C	HighBeam/FlashLight Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid			
B12A514	Master Light Switch Short to GND			
B12A515	Master Light Switch Short to BAT or Open			
B12A51C	Master Light Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid			

■ SCM Wiper Part DTC

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B12A614	Front Wiper Switch Short to GND	1. Voltage condition is in valid range (9 - 16 V). 2. Microcontroller is not in calibration state. 3. SCM is awake	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. SCM failure.	1. Check whether power supply voltage is in effective range. 2. Check wire harness. 3. Clear DTC and test again. If DTC still exists, replace SCM.
B12A615	Front Wiper Switch Short to BAT or Open			
B12A61C	Front Wiper Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid			
B12A714	Front Wiper Interval Switch Short to GND			
B12A715	Front Wiper Interval Switch Short to BAT or Open			
B12A71C	Front Wiper Interval Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid			
B12A814	FrontFog/RearFog Switch Short to GND			
B12A815	FrontFog/RearFog Switch Short to BAT or Open			
B12A81C	FrontFog/RearFog Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid			
B12AA14	RearWiper/RearWasher Switch Short to GND			
B12AA15	RearWiper/RearWasher Switch Short to BAT or Open			
B12AA1C	RearWiper/RearWasher Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid			

■ SCM Steering Angle Part DTC

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B12B049	Steering Angle Sensor System Internal Failures	1. Voltage condition is in valid range (9 - 16 V). 2. Microcontroller is not in calibration state. 3. SCM is awake	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. SCM failure.	1. Check whether power supply voltage is in effective range. 2. Check wire harness. 3. Clear DTC and test again. If DTC still exists, replace SCM.
B12B061	Steering Angle Sensor Algorithm Based Failures			
B12B185	Steering Angle Sensor Overflow			

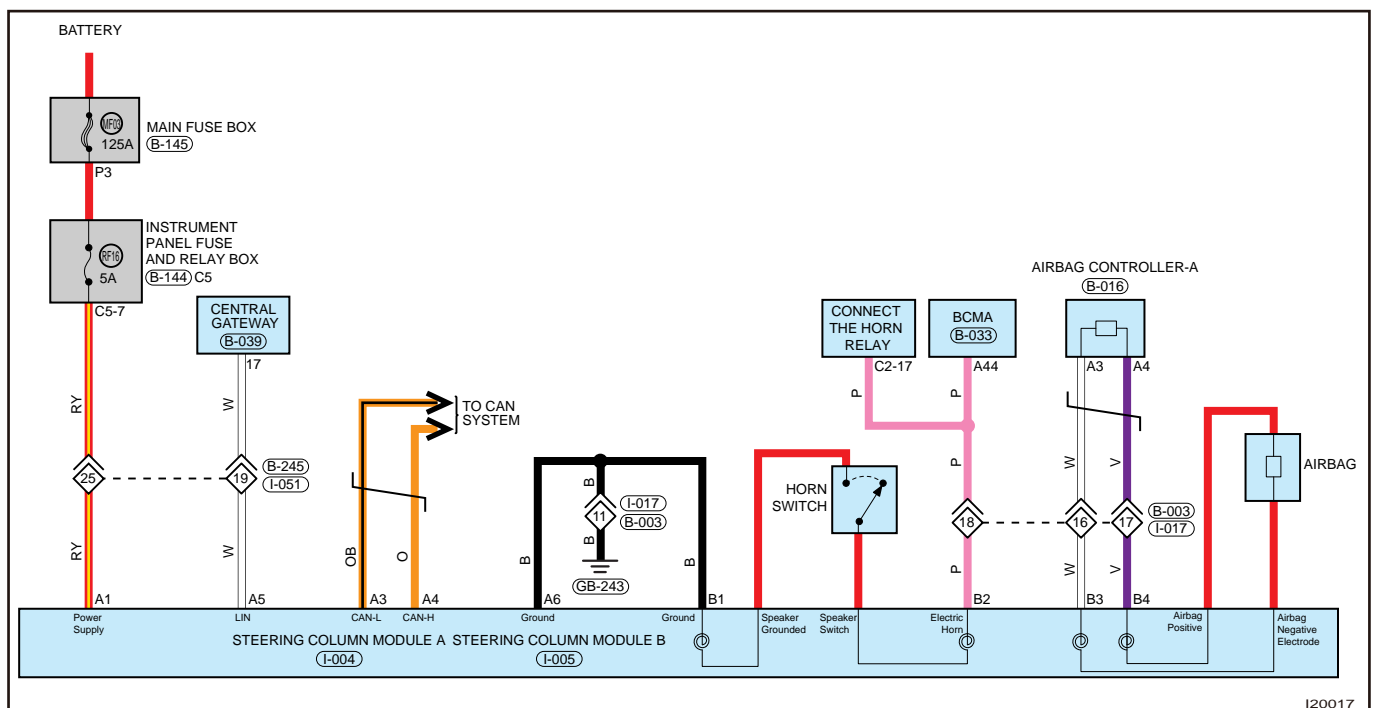
■ **SCM Control Part DTC**

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B12B292	Control Module Program Memory Failure	1. Voltage condition is in valid range (9 - 16 V). 2. Microcontroller is not in calibration state. 3. SCM is awake	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. SCM failure.	1. Check whether power supply voltage is in effective range. 2. Check wire harness. 3. Clear DTC and test again. If DTC still exists, replace SCM.
B12B3A3	Control Module Data Memory Failure			
B12B4A0	Calibration Parameter Memory Failure			
B12B5B8	SCM Zero Calibration			1. Check whether power supply is in effective range. 2. Check wire harness. 3. Clear DTCs, perform zero point calibration.

DTC	B12A017	ECU Power Supply Voltage Above Threshold
DTC	B12A116	ECU Power Supply Voltage Below Threshold
DTC	B12A214	Turn Light Switch Short to GND
DTC	B12A215	Turn Light Switch Short to BAT or Open
DTC	B12A21C	Turn Light Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid
DTC	B12A314	HighBeam/FlashLight Switch Short to GND
DTC	B12A315	HighBeam/FlashLight Switch Short to BAT or Open
DTC	B12A31C	HighBeam/FlashLight Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid
DTC	B12A514	Master Light Switch Short to GND
DTC	B12A515	Master Light Switch Short to BAT or Open
DTC	B12A51C	Master Light Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid
DTC	B12A614	Front Wiper Switch Short to GND
DTC	B12A615	Front Wiper Switch Short to BAT or Open
DTC	B12A61C	Front Wiper Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid
DTC	B12A714	Front Wiper Interval Switch Short to GND
DTC	B12A715	Front Wiper Interval Switch Short to BAT or Open
DTC	B12A71C	Front Wiper Interval Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid
DTC	B12A814	FrontFog/RearFog Switch Short to GND
DTC	B12A815	FrontFog/RearFog Switch Short to BAT or Open
DTC	B12A81C	FrontFog/RearFog Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid
DTC	B12AA14	RearWiper/RearWasher Switch Short to GND

DTC	B12AA15	RearWiper/RearWasher Switch Short to BAT or Open
DTC	B12AA1C	RearWiper/RearWasher Switch Circuit Voltage Invalid
DTC	B12B049	Steering Angle Sensor System Internal Failures
DTC	B12B061	Steering Angle Sensor Algorithm Based Failures
DTC	B12B185	Steering Angle Sensor Overflow
DTC	B12B292	Control Module Program Memory Failure
DTC	B12B3A3	Control Module Data Memory Failure
DTC	B12B4A0	Calibration Parameter Memory Failure
DTC	B12B5B8	SCM Zero Calibration

■ Circuit Diagram



■ Description

Caution

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

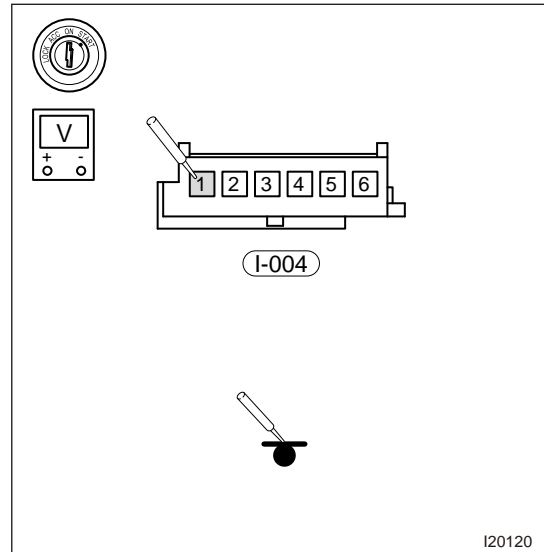
- 1 Inspect power supply voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect steering column module connector I-004.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

(d) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, measure voltage between I-004 (1) and body ground.

Standard Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
I-004 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	9 - 16 V



Result

Result	Go to
OK	A
NG	B

B Repair or replace power supply wire harness

A

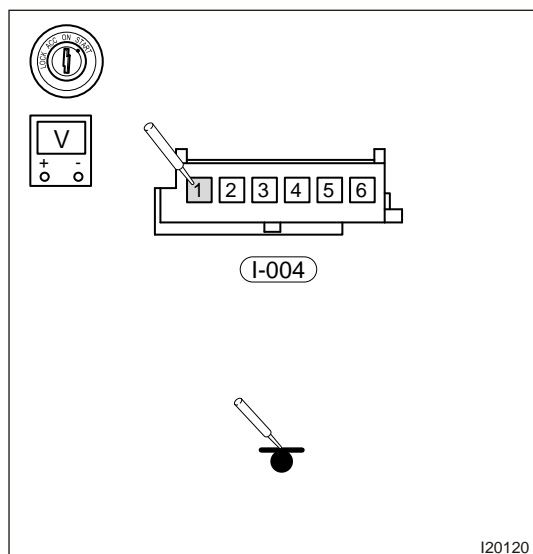
2 Check wire harness

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect steering column module connector I-004.

(c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between I-004 (1) and ground.

Check for short

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Normal Condition
I-004 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



Result

Result	Go to
OK	A
NG	B

B Repair or replace faulty wire harness

A

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the SCM module connector.
- (c) Check whether SCM module terminal is bent, deformed or out of position.
- (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in SCM system.

Result

Go to
OK
NG

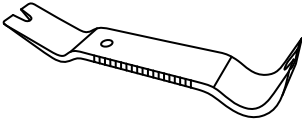
OK System operates normally



Replace SCM module

30.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tool

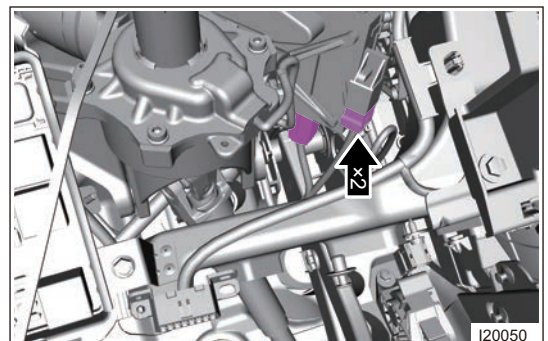
Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p>S00020</p>

2 Replacement of Steering Column with Intermediate Shaft Assembly

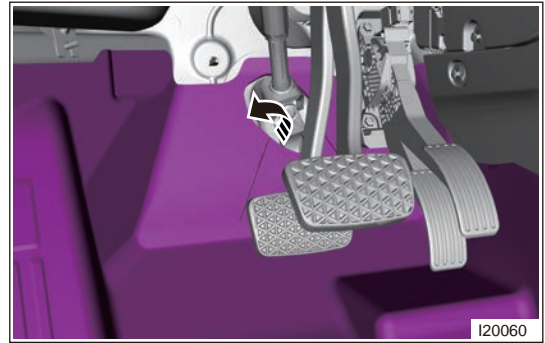
2.1 Removal

Procedures listed below are removal procedures for electronic steering column.

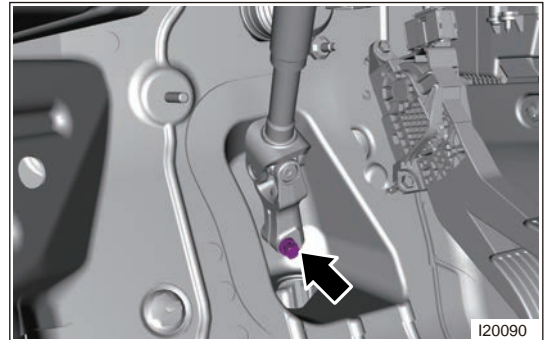
- (1) Set the steering wheel to straight-ahead position.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the driver airbag assembly.
- (5) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (6) Remove the combination switch cover.
- (7) Remove the spiral cable.
- (8) Remove the light combination switch assembly.
- (9) Disconnect 2 connectors from EPS controller.



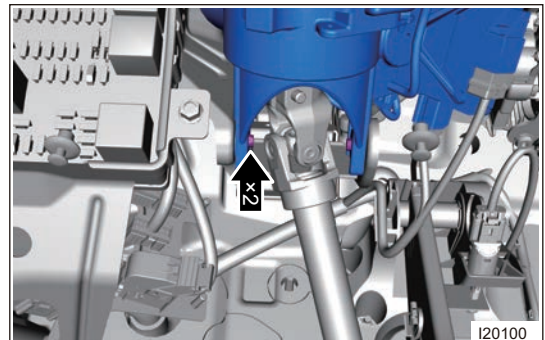
- (10) Turn over carpet under driver seat in the direction of arrow.



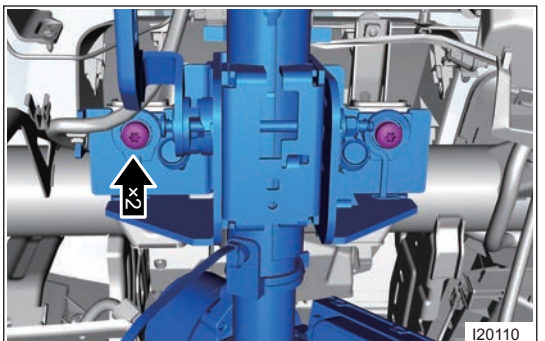
- (11) Remove coupling bolt between steering column with intermediate shaft assembly and steering gear input shaft.



- (12) Remove 2 fixing bolts from steering column lower bracket.



- (13) Remove 2 fixing bolts from steering column upper bracket.



- (14) Remove the steering column with intermediate shaft assembly.

Hint:

- Check steering column assembly for wear, cracks or deformation. As welding or correction is not allowed, replace steering column assembly if necessary.
- Check steering column bearing for looseness, wear or sticking. Replace steering column assembly if necessary.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the steering column with intermediate shaft assembly.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts to steering column upper bracket.
Torque: 25 ± 2 N·m
- (3) Install 2 fixing bolts to steering column lower bracket.
Torque: 25 ± 2 N·m
- (4) Install coupling bolt between steering column with intermediate shaft assembly and steering gear input shaft.
Torque: 40 ± 3 N·m
- (5) Place the carpet under driver seat in a suitable position.
- (6) Connect 2 connectors of EPS controller.
- (7) Install the light combination switch assembly.
- (8) Install the spiral cable.
- (9) Install the combination switch cover.
- (10) Install the steering wheel assembly.
- (11) Install the driver airbag assembly.
- (12) Install the negative battery cable.
- (13) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.
- (14) Connect EXEED special diagnostic tester, read and clear DTCs.

3 Steering Column Module

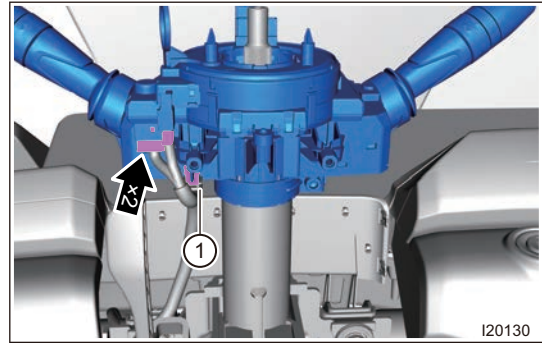
3.1 Removal

Caution

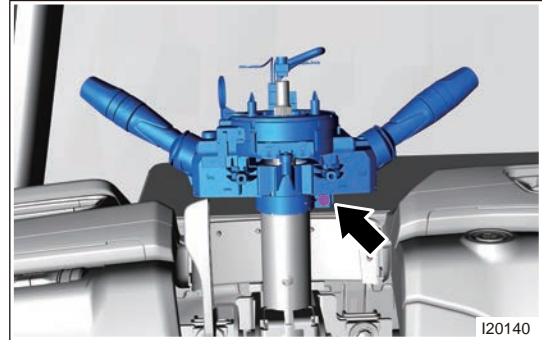
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing steering column module.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing steering column module. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched when removing steering column module.**
- **Disconnect the negative battery cable for more than 90 s when removing airbag.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the combination switch lower cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the combination switch lower cover assembly.
- (5) Remove the driver airbag.
- (6) Remove the steering wheel assembly.

- (7) Disconnect 2 connectors from steering column module and disengage wire harness clip (1).



- (8) Remove 1 fixing screw from steering column module.



■ Inspection

⚠ Caution

- Check the appearance of steering column module for cracks and damages and corrosion of pins.

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Always operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when installing steering column module.
- Install connector in place when installing steering column module.
- Check switch for proper operation, after installing steering column module.

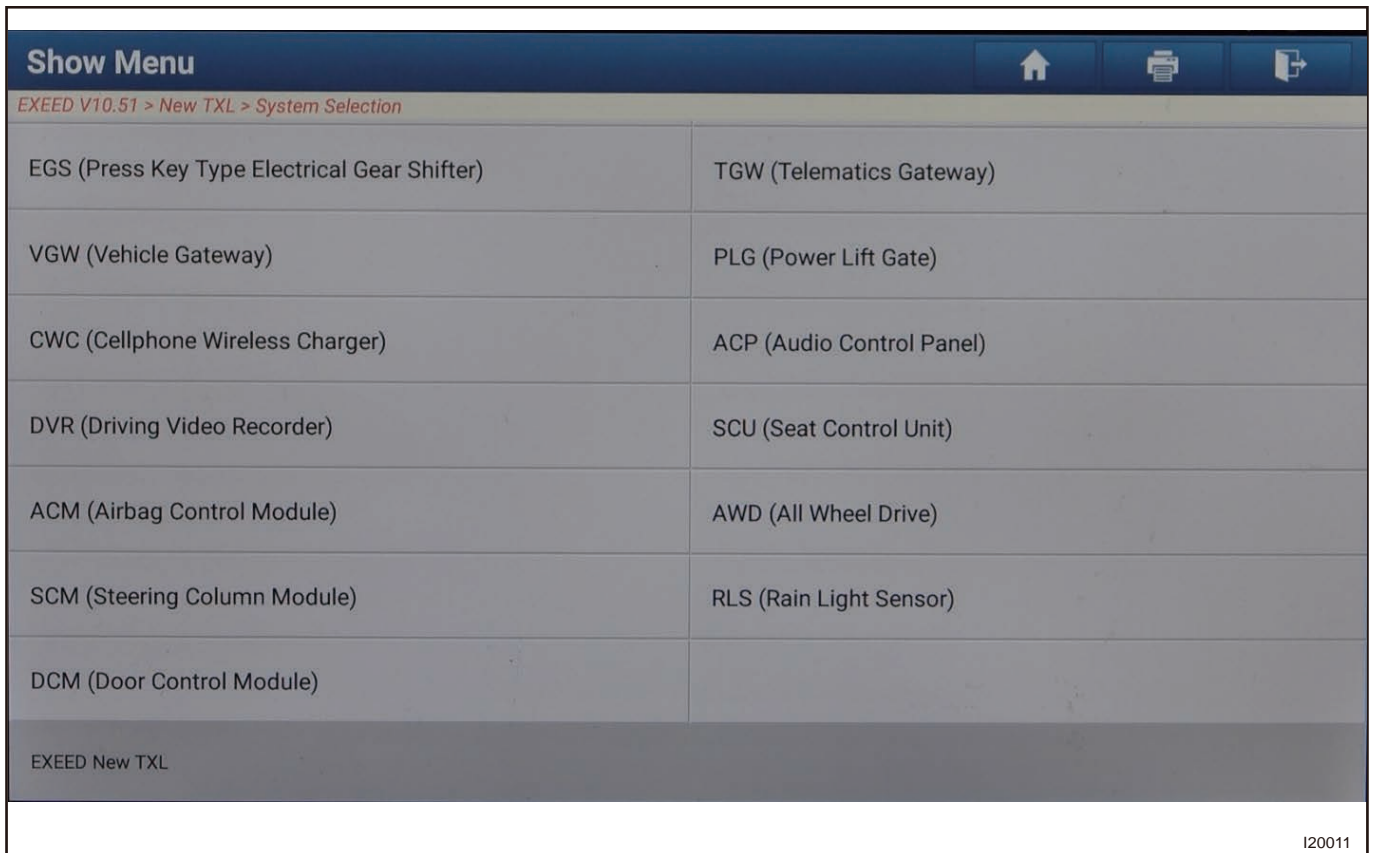
- (1) Install 1 fixing screw to steering column module.
- (2) Install connector to steering column module.
- (3) Install the combination switch lower cover assembly.
- (4) Install the steering wheel assembly.
- (5) Install the driver airbag.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

3.2 Steering Angle Sensor Zero Point Calibration

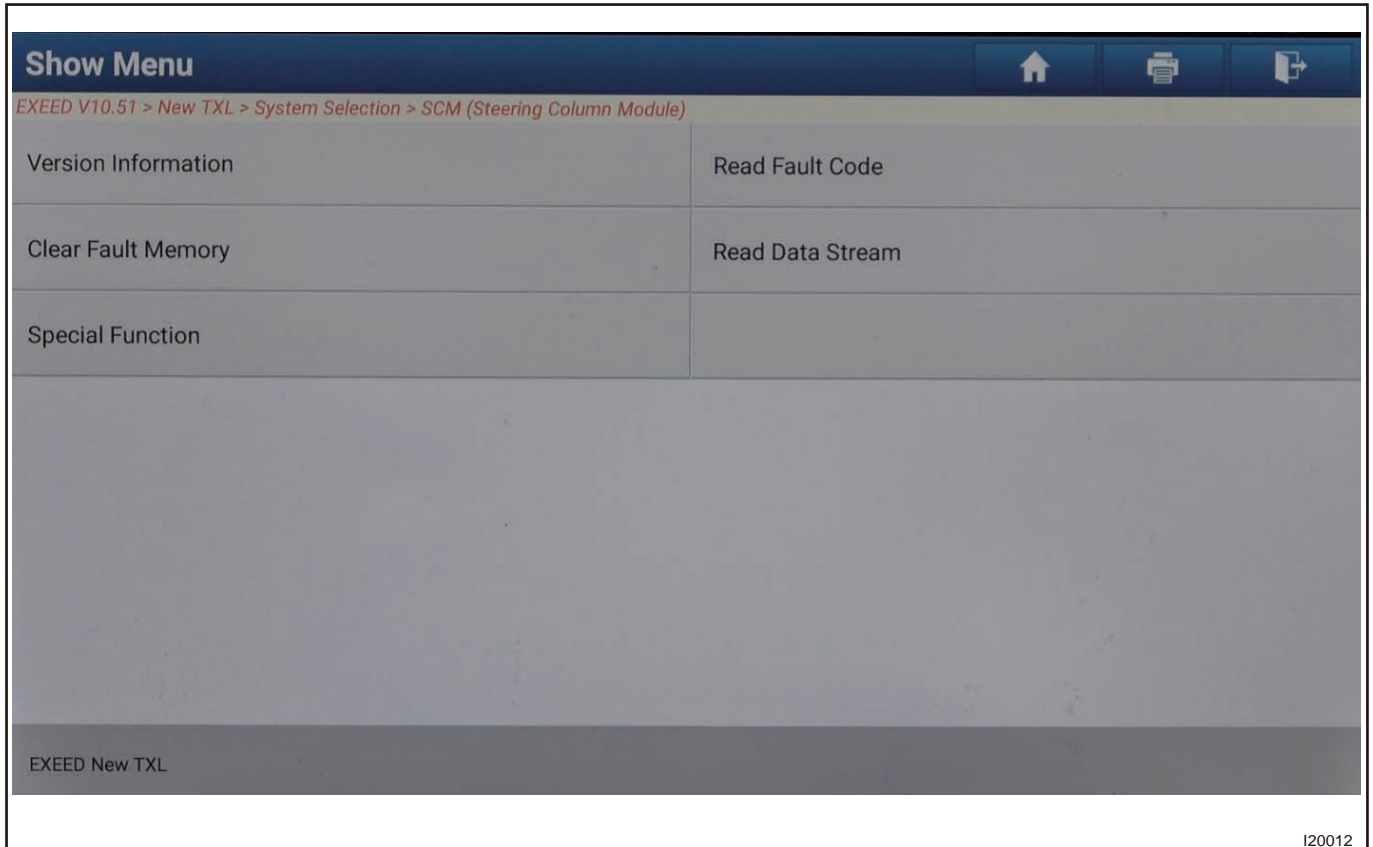
⚠ Caution

The zero point calibration of steering angle sensor must be carried out on four-wheel alignment station, otherwise the zero point calibration of steering angle sensor is not accurate, which will bring the risk of ESP alarm.

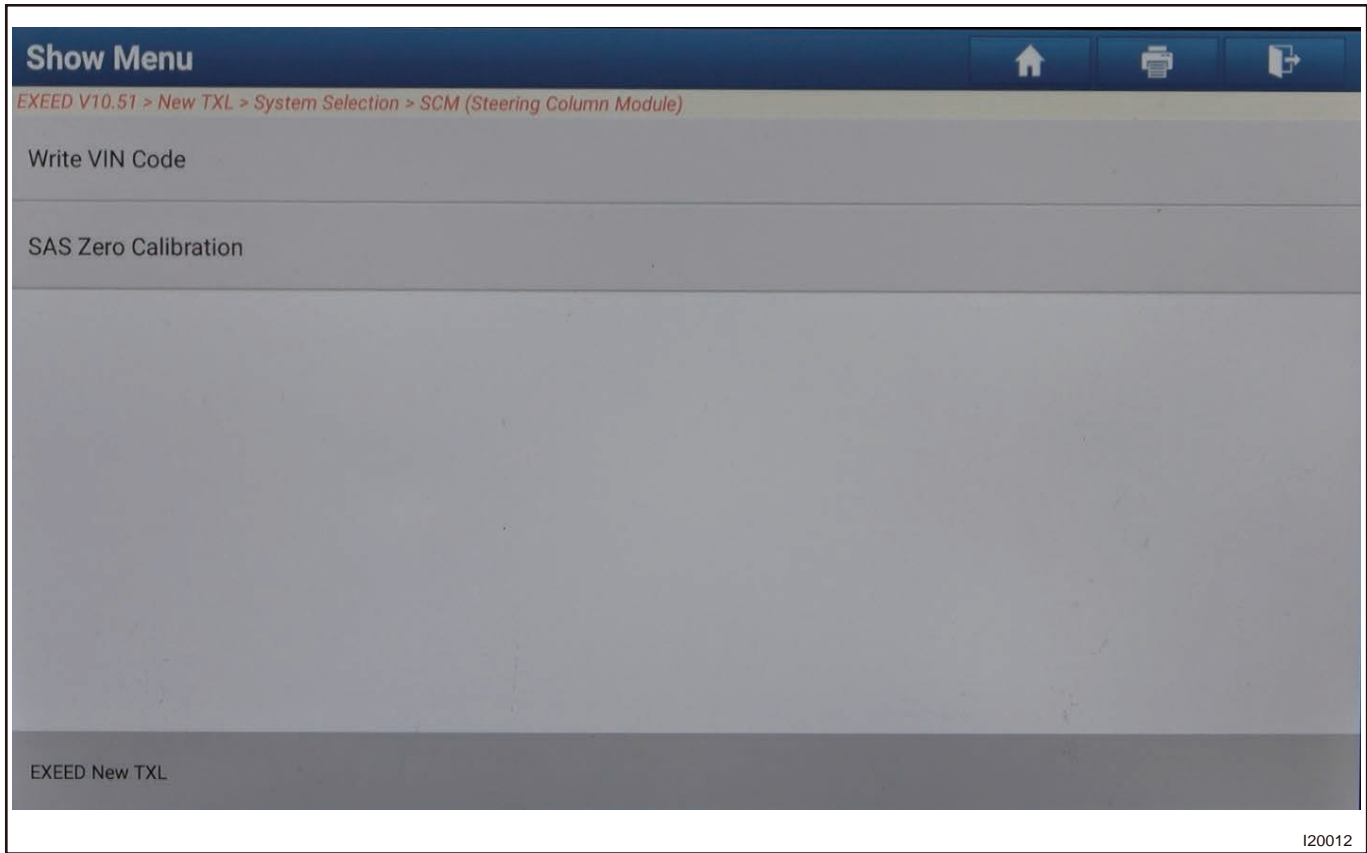
- (1) Enter “SCM (Steering Column Module)” .



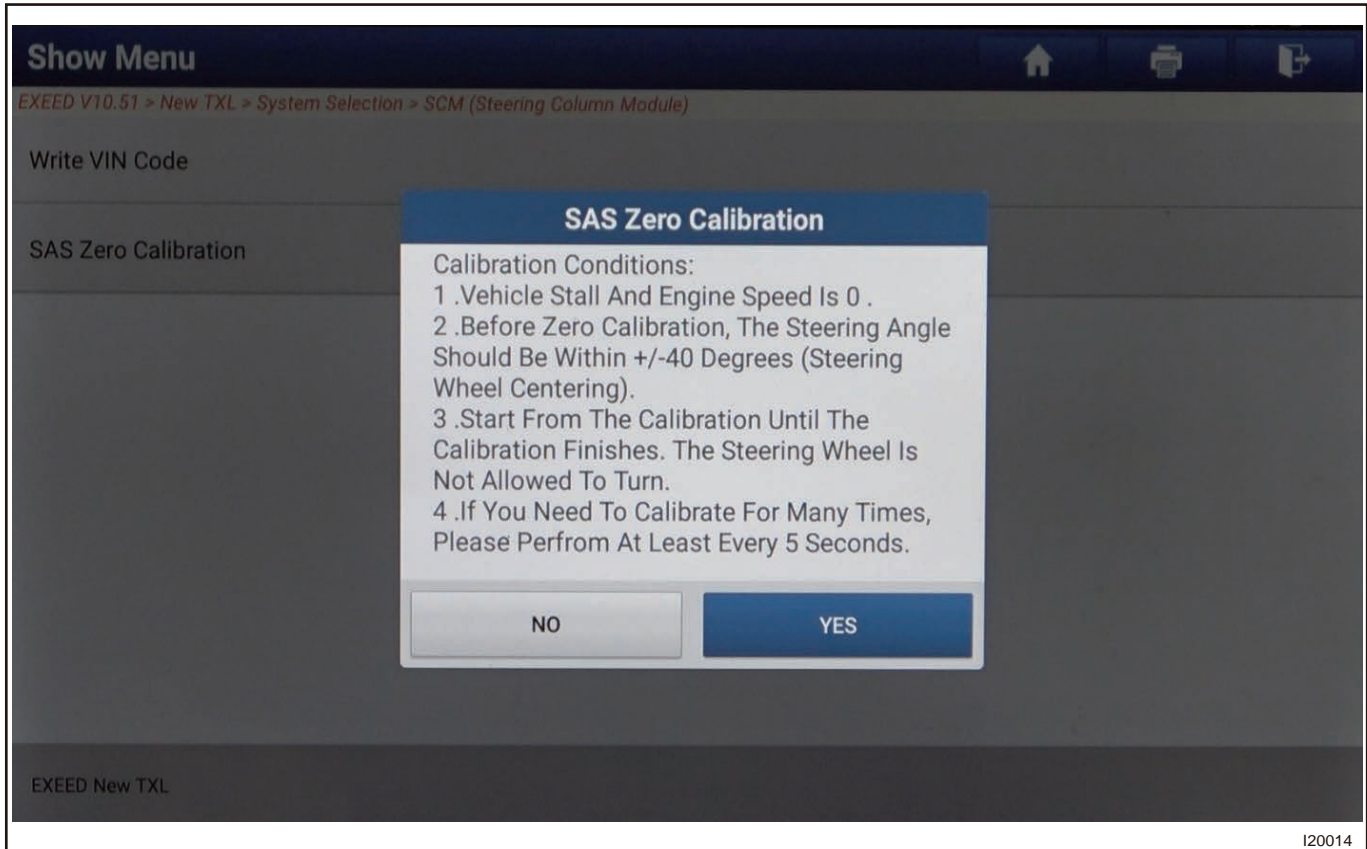
(2) Click "Special Function" .



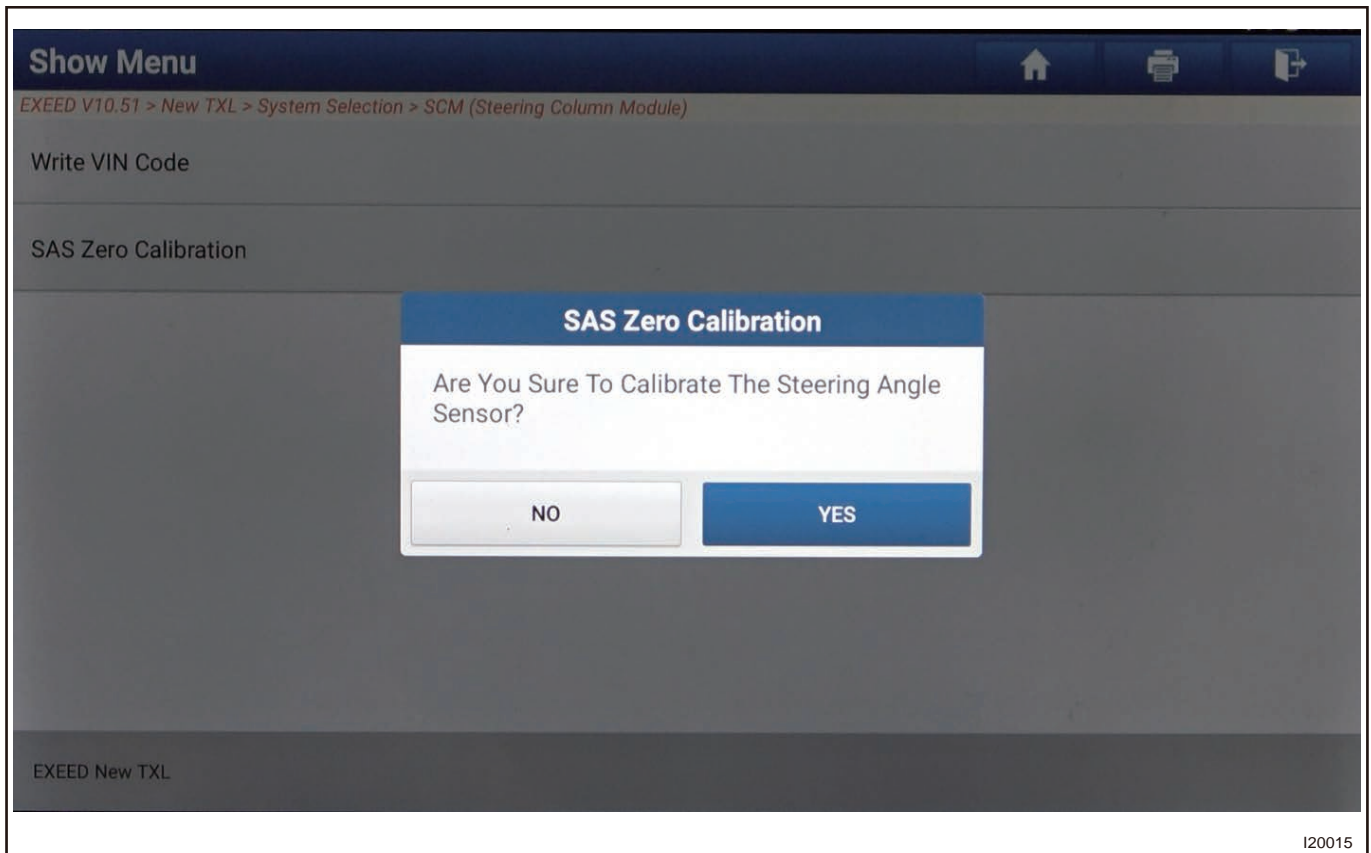
(3) Enter next interface and click "SAS Zero Calibration" .



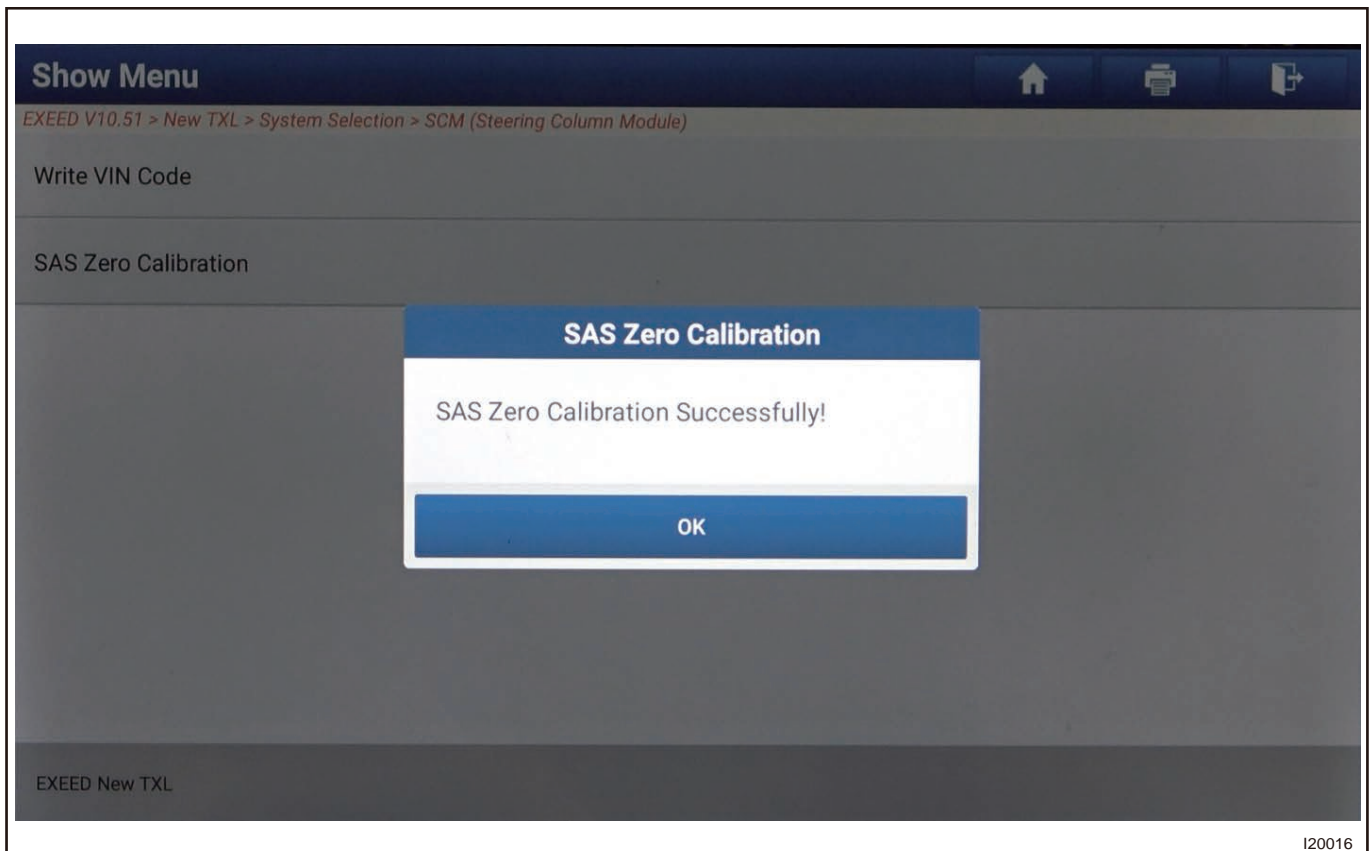
(4) It shows: “Calibration Conditions” . Then click “YES” .



(5) It shows: “Are You Sure To Calibrate The Steering Angle Sensor?” . Then click “YES” .



(6) It shows: "SAS Zero Calibration Successfully!" . Then click "OK" .



STEERING GEAR

31.1	STEERING GEAR.....	1139
1	Warnings and Precautions	1139
1.1	Precautions	1139
2	System Overview	1139
2.1	System Description	1139
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1139
31.2	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1141
1	General Tool.....	1141
2	Special Tool.....	1141
3	Replacement of Steering Gear Assembly	1141
3.1	Removal	1141

31.1 STEERING GEAR

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

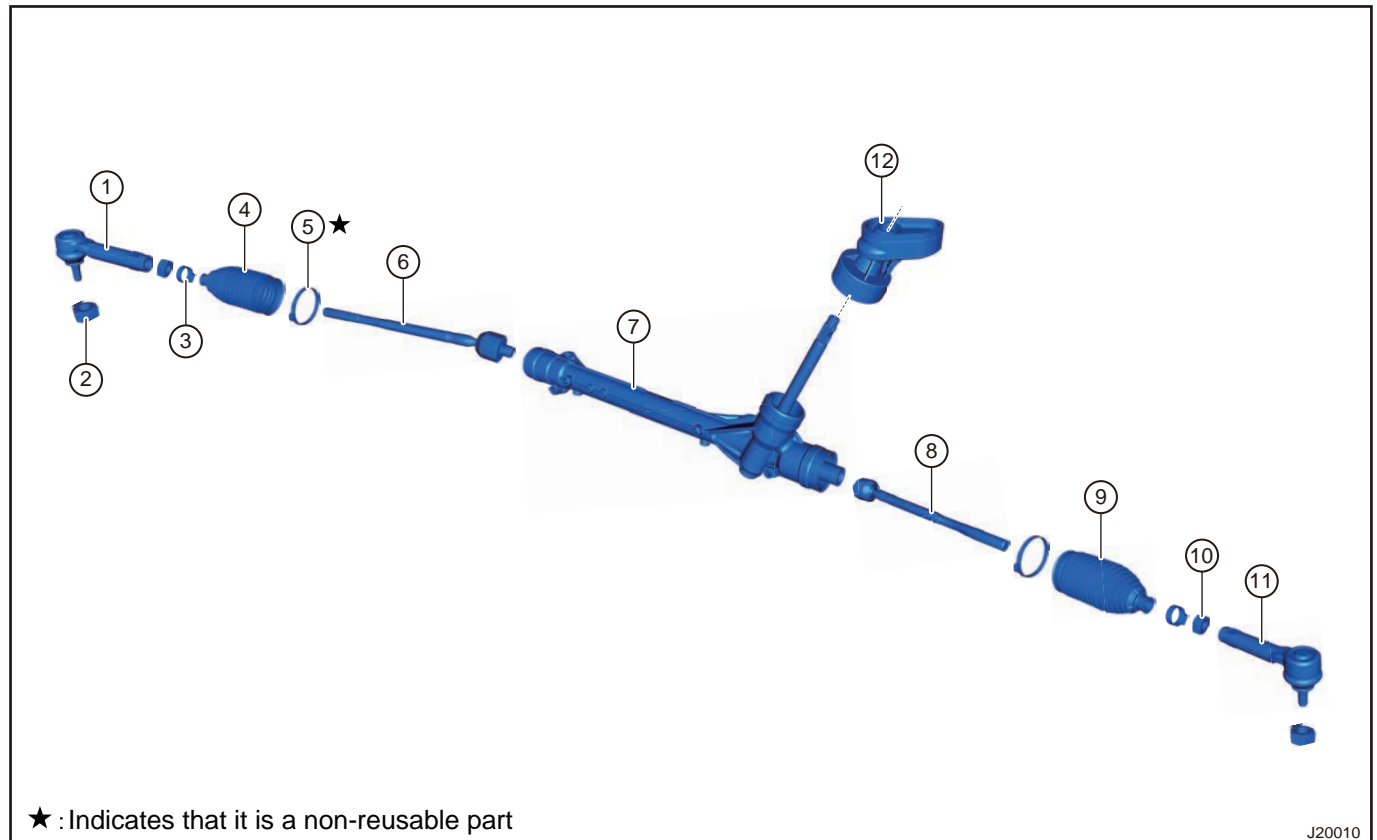
- (1) To replace steering gear, it is necessary to perform four-wheel alignment and center calibration.
- (2) After four-wheel alignment, it is necessary to perform center calibration again.
- (3) When removing and installing steering gear, it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.
- (4) It is necessary to perform steering angle sensor zero point calibration after replacing steering gear.
- (5) When removing and installing steering system, suspension system, brake, tire, etc., it is necessary to turn off power supply of EPS (vehicle power supply is turned off), so as to avoid reverse impact, resulting in EPS internal protection circuit breakdown.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

This vehicle adopts the electronic power steering system, which can reduce the workload when driver operates the steering wheel, thus improving operation convenience and driving safety.

2.2 System Components Diagram



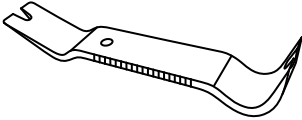
1	Right Steering Tie Rod Ball Pin	7	Steering Gear Body
2	Steering Tie Rod Ball Pin Locking Nut	8	Left Steering Tie Rod Assembly

31 - STEERING GEAR

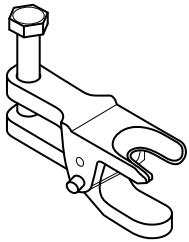
3	Steel Belt Clamp	9	Left Steering Tie Rod Boot
4	Right Steering Tie Rod Boot	10	Steering Tie Rod Fixing Nut
5	Steel Belt Elastic Clamp	11	Left Steering Tie Rod Ball Pin
6	Right Steering Tie Rod Assembly	12	Boot Assembly

31.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

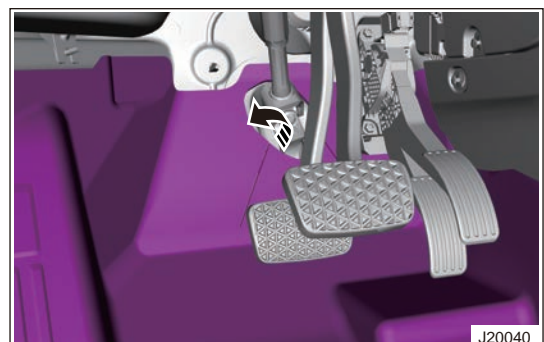
2 Special Tool

Tool Name	Part No.	Tool Drawing
Ball Separator	ECH-0003	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00019</p>

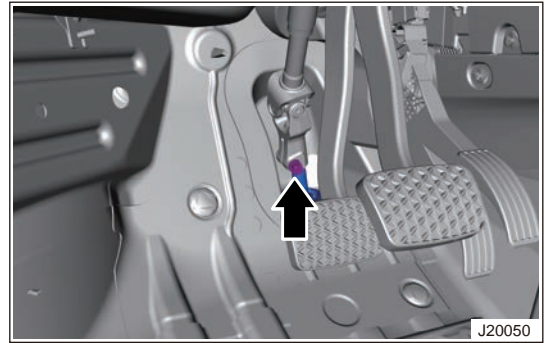
3 Replacement of Steering Gear Assembly

3.1 Removal

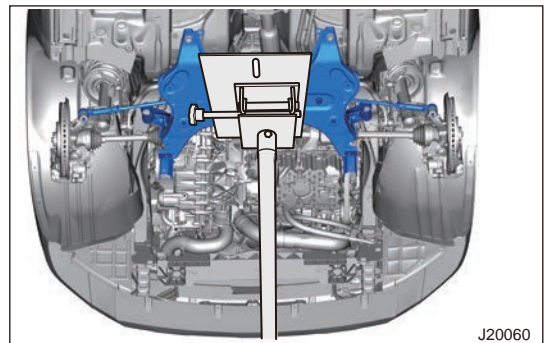
- (1) Set the steering wheel to straight-ahead position.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Turn over carpet under driver seat in the direction of arrow.



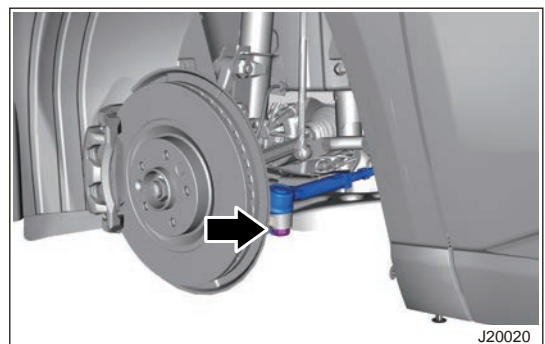
- (5) Remove coupling bolt between steering column with intermediate shaft assembly and steering gear input shaft.



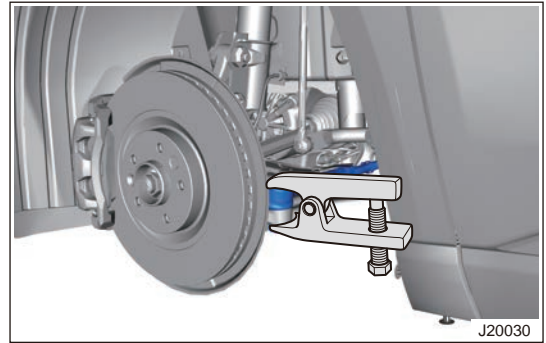
- (6) Remove front left and front right wheels.
- (7) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (8) Remove left and right side rail assembly.
- (9) Remove front left and front right control arm assemblies.
- (10) Remove the rear mounting cushion assembly.
- (11) Using a transmission carrier, support front sub frame welding assembly.



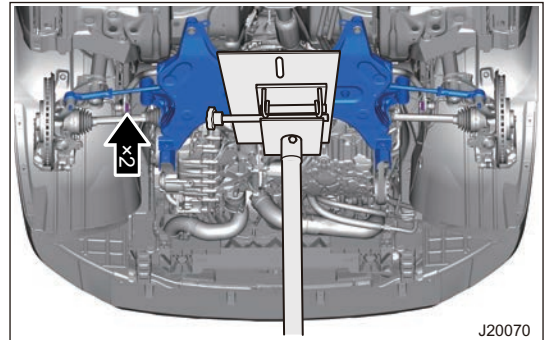
- (12) Remove locking nut between left steering tie rod ball pin assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly (the right side is same as left side).



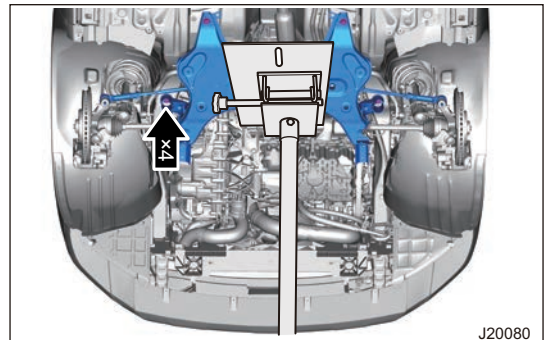
- (13) Install ball pin separator, and separate steering tie rod ball pin from steering knuckle assembly.



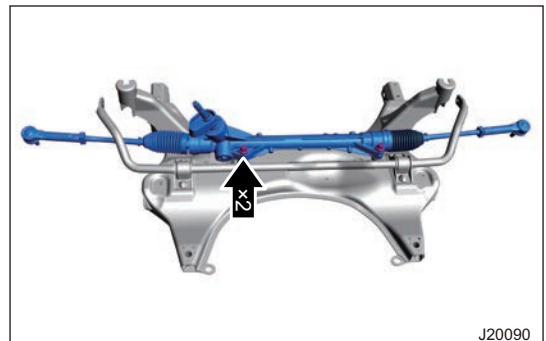
- (14) Remove 2 locking nuts between front connecting rod and front stabilizer bar.



- (15) Remove 4 fixing bolts between front sub frame and vehicle body, and lower front sub frame slowly.



- (16) Remove 2 fixing bolts fixing steering gear with tie rod assembly from sub frame, and remove steering gear with tie rod assembly.



Hint:

- Check if steering gear dust boot is damaged, clamp is loosen. Replace them if necessary to prevent water and micro dust from entering and causing parts failure prematurely.
- Check if steering gear is damaged. Replace the steering gear assembly if necessary.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install steering gear with tie rod assembly to sub frame.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts fixing steering gear with tie rod assembly to sub frame.
Torque: 180 ± 18 N·m
- (3) Slowly raise sub frame to a proper position and install 2 fixing bolts between sub frame and vehicle body.
Torque: 110 ± 8 N·m
- (4) Install 2 fixing bolts connecting left and right bracket and front sub frame welding assembly.
Torque: 200 ± 18 N·m
- (5) Separate transmission carrier from front sub frame welding assembly.
- (6) Install 2 hanger blocks to front sub frame assembly.
- (7) Install steering tie rod ball pin to steering knuckle assembly.
- (8) Install locking nut between left steering tie rod ball pin assembly and front left steering knuckle assembly (the right side is same as left side).
Torque: 60 ± 5 N·m
- (9) Install the rear mounting lower body.
- (10) Install front left and front right control arm assembly.
- (11) Install left and right side rail welding assembly.
- (12) Install the front compartment lower protector assembly.
- (13) Install front left and front right wheels.
- (14) Install coupling bolt between steering column with intermediate shaft assembly and steering gear input shaft.
Torque: 40 ± 3 N·m
- (15) Place the carpet under driver seat in a suitable position.
- (16) Install the negative battery cable.
- (17) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT

32.1	FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT	1146
1	Warning and Precaution.....	1146
1.1	Precautions.....	1146
2	System Overview	1146
2.1	System Description.....	1146
3	Parameter Operation Description.....	1146
3.1	System Function Introduction.....	1146
3.2	Kingpin Caster	1146
3.3	Kingpin Inclination	1146
3.4	Front Wheel Camber	1147
3.5	Front Wheel Toe-in	1147
4	Specifications (parameters standard for four-wheel alignment).....	1147
5	Diagnostic Information and Steps	1147
5.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1147
32.2	On-Vehicle Inspection.....	1148
1	Four-wheel alignment.....	1148
1.1	Inspection before Wheel Alignment	1148
1.2	Front Wheel Camber	1148
1.3	Front Wheel Toe-in	1148
1.4	Kingpin Caster & Kingpin Inclination	1150
1.5	Rear Wheel Camber.....	1150
1.6	Rear Wheel Toe-in	1151

32.1 FOUR-WHEEL ALIGNMENT

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) Be sure to perform wheel alignment procedures according to operating instructions of four-wheel alignment device.
- (2) Periodic maintenance and service for four-wheel alignment device should be performed.
- (3) After four-wheel alignment, it is necessary to recalibrate center calibration.
- (4) After four-wheel alignment, it is necessary to calibrate the zero point of SAM steering angle and the motor position sensor inside EPS module.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

As installation of four wheels, steering mechanism, front and rear axles should have a certain relative position, this relative position is the standard value set by manufacturer. This mounting position is adjusted and restored by wheel alignment.

In general, wheel alignment has the following 6 parameters:

- (1) Check front wheel camber.
- (2) Check front wheel toe-in.
- (3) Check kingpin caster.
- (4) Check kingpin inclination.
- (5) Check rear wheel camber.
- (6) Check rear wheel toe-in.

3 Parameter Operation Description

3.1 System Function Introduction

Front wheel alignment includes kingpin caster, kingpin inclination, front wheel camber and front wheel toe-in. Rear wheel alignment includes wheel camber and rear wheel toe-in. In this way, front wheel alignment and rear wheel alignment are called wheel alignment, which is often called four-wheel alignment. The role of wheel alignment is to keep vehicle running in a straight line stably and steering light, and reduce the wear of tires and steering gear parts.

3.2 Kingpin Caster

Looking at wheel from side, steering kingpin (the center of rotation when the wheel turns) tilts backward, which is called kingpin caster. After setting kingpin caster, there will be a distance (called kingpin longitudinal tilt distance, which is the same as the principle of backward tilt of front wheel fork beam of bicycle) between ground point of kingpin center line and ground projection point of wheel center. The ground point of wheel is located at rear end of steering kingpin extension line, and wheel is pulled back by rolling resistance during driving, so that the direction of wheel is naturally toward the travel direction. Setting a large kingpin caster can improve straight line driving performance, and kingpin longitudinal tilt distance is also increased. If kingpin longitudinal tilt distance is too large, steering wheel will be heavy and intensify the wheel bumps due to road interference.

3.3 Kingpin Inclination

When looking at the tire from front and rear direction of vehicle, kingpin is inclined toward the inside of vehicle body. This angle is called kingpin inclination. When wheel turns around kingpin, the lowest point of wheel will fall below road surface, but in fact, the lower edge of wheel cannot fall below road surface. Instead, the steering vehicle wheel and entire front of vehicle are lifted up to a corresponding height. The gravity of vehicle has effect of returning steering vehicle wheels to original middle position, so steering wheel is easy to reset.

In addition, kingpin inclination also reduces the distance between intersection of kingpin and road to intersection of wheel center plane and ground, thereby reducing driver's force on steering wheel during steering, making steering easier and reducing the impact force transmitted from steering vehicle wheel to steering wheel. However, kingpin inclination should not be too large, otherwise it will accelerate tire wear.

3.4 Front Wheel Camber

When looking at wheel from front and rear direction, tires are not installed vertically, but slightly tilted to show an "八" shape, which is called negative camber, and when it is tilted in opposite direction, it is called positive camber. In heyday of using bias tires, camber was set to be relatively large because it made it easier to operate the steering wheel by tilting the tires to the ground. Vehicle generally sets camber to be very small, close to vertical. The use of flat radial tires for automobiles continues to grow in popularity. Due to characteristics of radial tires (large rigid tire tread pattern and wide outer tread), setting a large camber will cause tire to wear out and reduce tire friction. Also, due to continuous use of power steering mechanism, camber has been continuously reduced. Nevertheless, setting a small camber can apply appropriate lateral thrust to wheel bearings on axle.

3.5 Front Wheel Toe-in

Four-wheel alignment toe value

Toe-in, the so-called "pigeon toe", refers to the front left and front right wheels being pointed inward respectively. The purpose of adopting this structure is to correct outward rotation of wheel caused by front wheel camber. As mentioned above, due to camber, the steering wheel operation becomes more easy. On the other hand, due to the tilt of wheels, front left and front right wheels rotate to outside respectively. To correct this problem, the left and right wheels have an inward angle, thus left and right wheels can keep moving in a straight line and reducing tire wear.

4 Specifications (parameters standard for four-wheel alignment)

Items		Specified Value
Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	$-30' \pm 30'$
	Kingpin Caster	$6^{\circ}43' \pm 45'$
	Kingpin Inclination	$13^{\circ}54' \pm 45'$
	Front Wheel Toe-in	$8' \pm 6'$ (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Toe-in	$10' \pm 6'$ (one side)
	Rear Wheel Camber	$-1^{\circ}11' \pm 30'$

5 Diagnostic Information and Steps

5.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair or adjust faulty components, or replace as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Vehicle pulls	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)
Wheel shimmy	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)
Abnormal tire wear	Tire (worn or improperly inflated)
	Front wheel alignment (incorrect)
	Rear wheel alignment (incorrect)

32.2 On-Vehicle Inspection

1 Four-wheel alignment

1.1 Inspection before Wheel Alignment

If following components have been removed, installed or replaced, check and perform wheel alignment procedures:

- Front control arm assembly
- Front control arm ball pin assembly
- Front steering knuckle
- Front shock absorber assembly
- Steering gear and steering tie rod
- Drive shaft
- Front sub frame welding assembly
- Rear torsion beam welding assembly

- (1) Vehicle is in unloaded state.
- (2) Use a lift to support and raise vehicle to a proper height.
- (3) Check hub bearing for excessive clearance, and replace hub bearing as necessary.
- (4) Check suspension components, steering tie rod and ball pin for wear, deformation or damage. Replace malfunctioning parts as necessary.
- (5) Check shock absorber assembly for proper operation.
- (6) Check if tire pressure is within specified range and adjust it to specified pressure as necessary.

Items	Front Wheel	Rear Wheel	Spare Tire
Tire Pressure (kPa) (Unloaded)	220 (Unloaded 17 inch) 230 (Unloaded 18/19 inch)	220 (Unloaded 17 inch) 230 (Unloaded 18/19 inch)	420

- (7) Check the rim and tire.
 - 1) Visually check rim and tire for scratches, wear or damage.
 - 2) Perform wheel dynamic balance procedures.

1.2 Front Wheel Camber

- (1) Incorrect front wheel camber will cause abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust front wheel camber as necessary.
In normal conditions, it is not necessary to adjust camber after assembling the independent suspension and wheel steering knuckle. If wheel camber is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust through the coupling bolt between independent suspension and steering knuckle.

Specified Value for Front Wheel Camber:

Items	Parameter
Front Wheel Camber	-30' ± 30'

■ Inspection

- (1) Visually check driving system components for deformation and damage before adjustment. Replace deformed or damaged components as necessary.
- (2) Install wheel alignment device onto front wheel, and perform inspection procedures according to operating instructions for wheel alignment device.

1.3 Front Wheel Toe-in

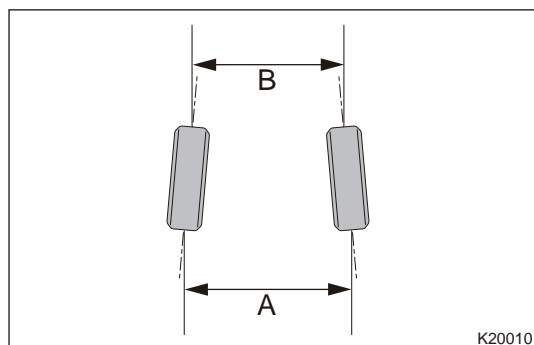
- (1) Incorrect front wheel toe-in will cause wheel pull and abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust front wheel toe-in as necessary.
If front wheel toe-in is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust the length of steering tie rod to return the toe-in to specified value.

Specified Value for Front Wheel Toe-in:

Items	Parameter
Front Wheel Toe-in	$8' \pm 6'$ (one side)

■ Inspection

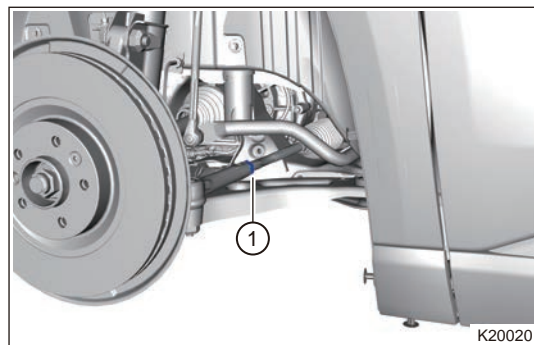
- (1) Perform inspection with four-wheel alignment device (perform inspection procedures referring to operating instructions for four-wheel alignment device).
- (2) Manual check:
 - 1) Park vehicle on level ground, check if front tire pressure is within the specified range and adjust it to specified value as necessary.
 - 2) Place marks on center position in front of front wheels, and measure distance A between marks with a tape measure.
 - 3) Push vehicle to rotate wheels 180°, and measure distance B between marks with a tape measure when marks are turned to rear of wheels.
- 4) Calculation method: Front wheel toe-in = $A - B \leq 1$ mm



K20010

■ Adjustment

- (1) Make adjusting preparation for wheel alignment according to requirement of tester.
- (2) Loosen the locking nut (1) of steering tie rod, and turn the tie rod to adjust the length as required until front wheel toe-in reaches the specified value.



K20020

- (3) Tighten the steering tie rod locking nut (23# dual-purpose wrench) and reinstall the elastic jacket snap ring. Check if locking nut is tightened in place and if jacket position is correct.
Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m

⚠ Caution

- If elasticity of elastic jacket snap ring is not enough, replace it.

- (4) After adjusting front wheel toe-in, check steering wheel for eccentricity. If necessary, loosen the steering wheel locking nut and adjust the steering wheel to horizontal position, and then tighten the steering wheel locking nut (22# socket wrench) to specified torque.
Tightening torque: $48 \pm 4 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

1.4 Kingpin Caster & Kingpin Inclination

- (1) Kingpin caster and kingpin inclination can only be checked by using four-wheel alignment device. Kingpin caster and kingpin inclination are assured by design structure and cannot be adjusted. If measured value is not within the specified range, check if other components that connect to steering knuckle are deformed or damaged. In addition, check the connecting part of steering knuckle for deformed or damaged. If so, replace corresponding components.
Specified Value for Kingpin Caster & Kingpin Inclination:

Items	Parameter
Kingpin Caster	$6^{\circ}43' \pm 45'$
Kingpin Inclination	$13^{\circ}54' \pm 45'$

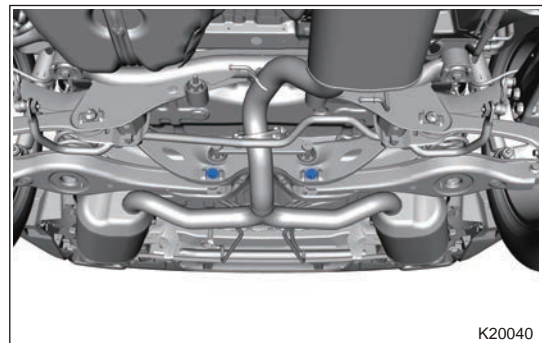
1.5 Rear Wheel Camber

- (1) Incorrect rear wheel camber will cause wheel pull and abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust rear wheel camber as necessary. If rear wheel camber is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust eccentric adjusting bolt and eccentric adjusting shim between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to return the camber to specified value. If rear wheel camber is not as specified, check rear suspension and wheels for damage or deformation. Replace damaged or deformed components as necessary.
Specified Value for Rear Wheel Camber:

Items	Parameter
Rear Wheel Camber	$-1^{\circ}11' \pm 30'$

■ Adjustment

- (1) Make adjusting preparation for wheel alignment according to requirement of tester.
- (2) Loosen the coupling bolts (18# socket wrench) between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly, be careful that eccentric adjusting shim does not detach from groove.



- (3) Rotate the eccentric adjusting shim and eccentric adjusting bolt to adjust rear wheel camber to specified value.
- (4) Tighten the coupling bolts (18# socket wrench) between rear lower control arm assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to specified torque after adjustment (adjusting method of left and right wheels is the same).
Tightening torque: $100 \pm 7.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

1.6 Rear Wheel Toe-in

- (1) Incorrect rear wheel toe-in will cause wheel pull and abnormal tire wear. Check and adjust rear wheel toe-in as necessary.

If rear wheel toe-in is not within the tolerance due to other reasons, adjust eccentric adjusting bolt and eccentric adjusting shim between tie rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to return the toe-in to specified value.

If rear wheel toe-in is not as specified, check rear suspension and wheels for damage or deformation. Replace damaged or deformed components as necessary.

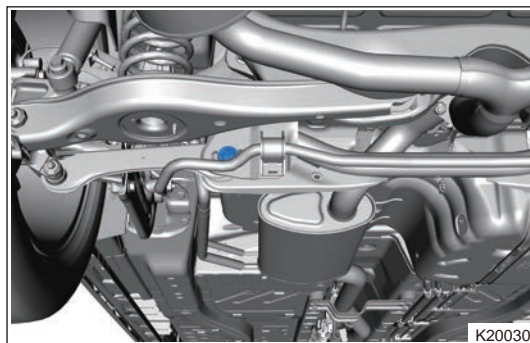
Specified Value for Rear Wheel Toe-in:

Items	Parameter
Rear Wheel Toe-in	10' ±6' (one side)

■ Adjustment

- (1) Make adjusting preparation for wheel alignment according to requirement of tester.

- (2) Loosen the coupling bolts (21# socket wrench) between tie rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly, be careful that eccentric adjusting shim does not detach from groove.



- (3) Rotate the eccentric adjusting bolt and eccentric adjusting sleeve to adjust rear wheel toe-in to specified value.
- (4) Tighten the coupling bolts (21# socket wrench) between tie rod assembly and rear sub frame welding assembly to specified torque after adjustment (adjusting method of left and right wheels is the same). Tightening torque: 130 ± 10 N·m

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

33.1	Air Conditioning Control System	1154
1	Warnings and Precautions	1154
1.1	Precautions	1154
2	General Information	1154
2.1	2.1 System Description	1154
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1155
3	Functional Principle	1159
3.1	System Function Description	1160
3.2	System Components Description.....	1186
4	Specifications	1190
4.1	Torque Specifications	1190
4.2	Fluid Specifications	1191
5	System Circuit Diagram	1191
5.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	1191
5.2	Circuit Diagram	1198
6	DIAGNOSIS & TEST.....	1200
6.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1200
6.2	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1202
6.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1203
6.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1204
6.5	Ground Inspection	1204
6.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1204
6.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1212
7	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1250
7.1	On-Vehicle Inspection	1250
7.2	Compressor Assembly Noise Inspection	1251
7.3	Refrigerant Leakage Inspection	1252
7.4	Refrigerant Recovering, Vacuum Pumping and Recharging.....	1252
7.5	Refrigerant Oil Recovering and Charging.....	1254
7.6	A/C Control Panel Assembly	1255
7.7	A/C Element	1257
7.8	Removal and Installation of Blower Assembly	1257
7.9	Blower Speed Regulation Module	1258
7.10	Inner/Outer Circulation Damper Servo Motor	1259
7.11	Mode Damper Motor	1259
7.12	Left Mix Damper Motor	1260
7.13	Right Mix Damper Motor.....	1260
7.14	Automatic A/C Control Module (If Equipped).....	1261
7.15	Air Quality Sensor (If Equipped).....	1262
7.16	Inside PM2.5 Sensor (If Equipped).....	1262
7.17	Outside PM2.5 Sensor (If Equipped).....	1262
7.18	Anion Generator (If Equipped).....	1263
7.19	Outside Temperature Sensor.....	1263
7.20	HVAC Assembly	1264

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

7.21	A/C Coaxial Line Assembly	1275
7.22	Compressor to Condenser Line Assembly.....	1277
7.23	Compressor Assembly.....	1278
7.24	A/C Pressure Switch	1279
7.25	Condenser Assembly (w/ Receiver Drier).....	1280

33.1 Air Conditioning Control System

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

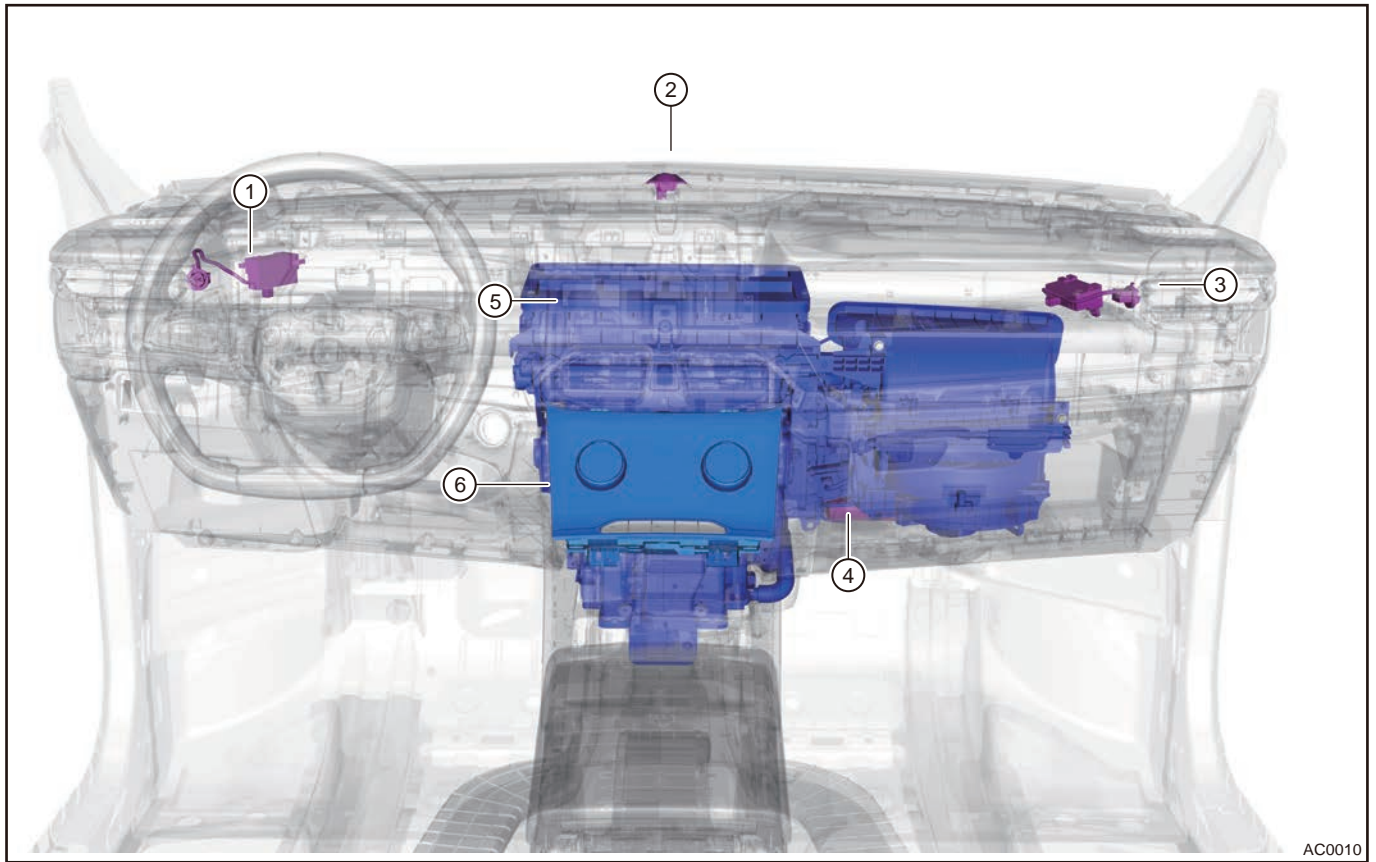
- (1) The connector of negative ion generator must be disconnected when cleaning the air conditioning line after sale to avoid fire.
- (2) To prevent battery is depleted, turn off A/C system after engine stopping if it is not necessary.
- (3) Do not insert or stick anything to each vent, or use the spray around vents; Otherwise, these objects may cause system can not operate normally.
- (4) When you find that the air volume or speed at the air outlet is obviously reduced, please check whether the A/C element is dirty or blocked. If so, please clean or replace the air conditioning element in time; It is recommended to check or replace A/C element every 5000 km.
- (5) When you find that the refrigeration effect is obviously reduced, check whether the refrigerant in A/C system is sufficient, and check whether there is dirt blockage on the windward side of the condenser. If so, please add refrigerant or clean the dirt on the condenser surface.
- (6) When the air quality outside vehicle is poor (during dusty or air pollution), it is recommended to use the inner air circulation mode of air conditioning (when the button character shows blue, the mode is in inner air circulation mode; when the character shows white, the mode is in outer air circulation mode).
- (7) When the air conditioning system is not in use for a long time, it is recommended to start air conditioning once every month and operate it for about 5 minutes. The purpose is to ensure the good sealing of main shaft of A/C compressor. At the same time, it can also avoid electrolytic corrosion of compressor internal parts, resulting in poor refrigeration effect of A/C system.
- (8) During assembly of line, it is necessary to confirm that O-ring is installed into groove first, if there is wear on O-ring during assembly, it is necessary to replace O-ring.
- (9) Before refrigerant filling, nitrogen leakage detection, pressure keeping and vacuum pre-pumping must be performed through nitrogen vacuum pre-pumping equipment.
- (10) After the completion of nitrogen leakage detection and pressure keeping process, screw on the A/C pipe filler cap in time to avoid touching the valve core in filler by mis-operation, so that A/C system can be communicated with atmosphere.
- (11) When filling refrigerant, the filling gun should be vertically installed on the filler. Do not shake filling gun left and right to avoid touching the valve core in filler after install it into place.

2 General Information

2.1 System Description

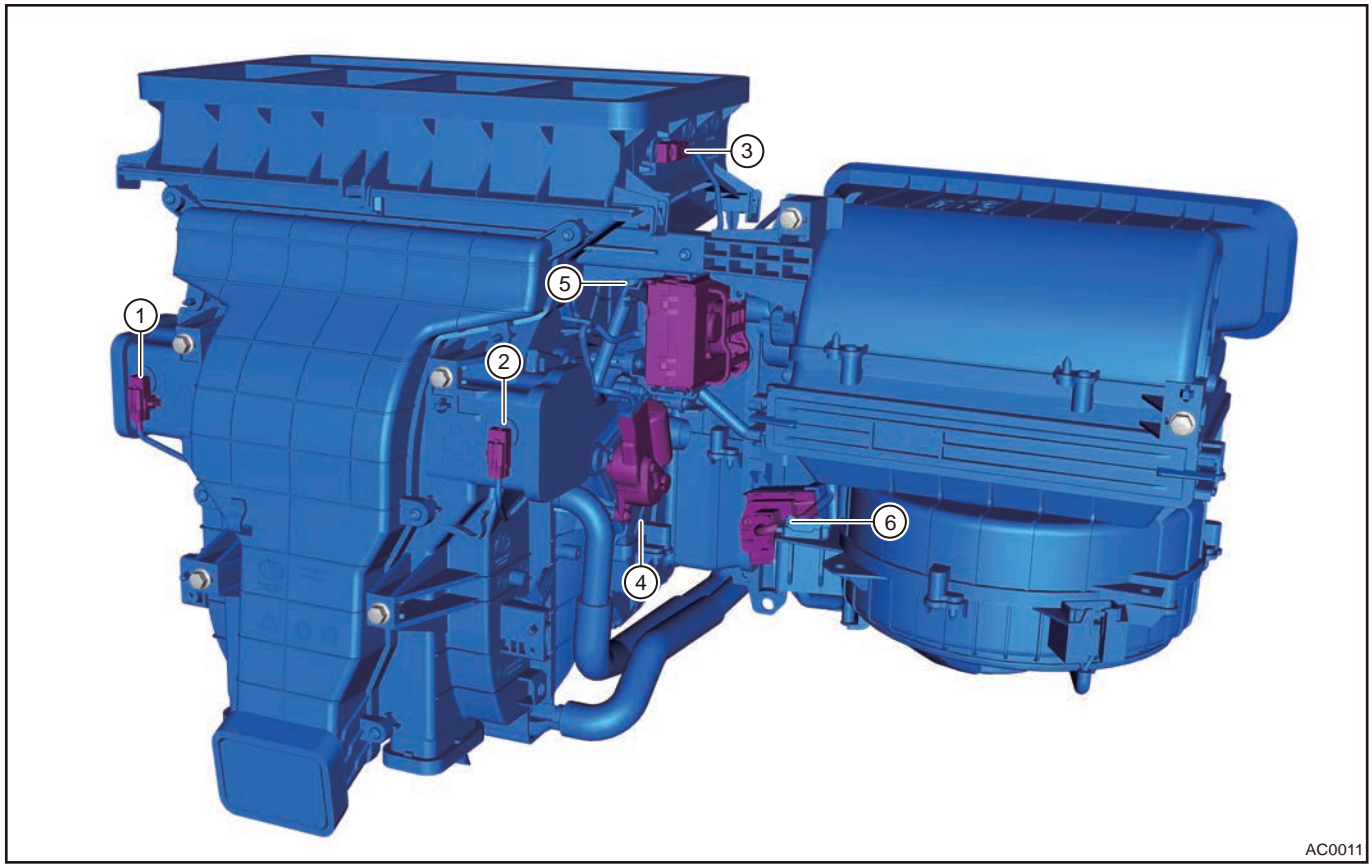
Automobile A/C system is a device which can refrigerate, heat, exchange air and purify air in the cabin. It can provide comfortable riding environment for passengers, reduce fatigue intensity of driver and improve driving safety. Air conditioning system is a micro-motor driven, constant displacement, multiple function, integrated heating and cooling, single-zone system. Use environmentally friendly refrigerant R134a. The system consists of five basic components: constant displacement compressor, cooling condenser, electric HVAC assembly, line (including expansion valve) and electric control panel assembly. It also includes other accessories (such as pressure switch, O-ring).

2.2 System Components Diagram



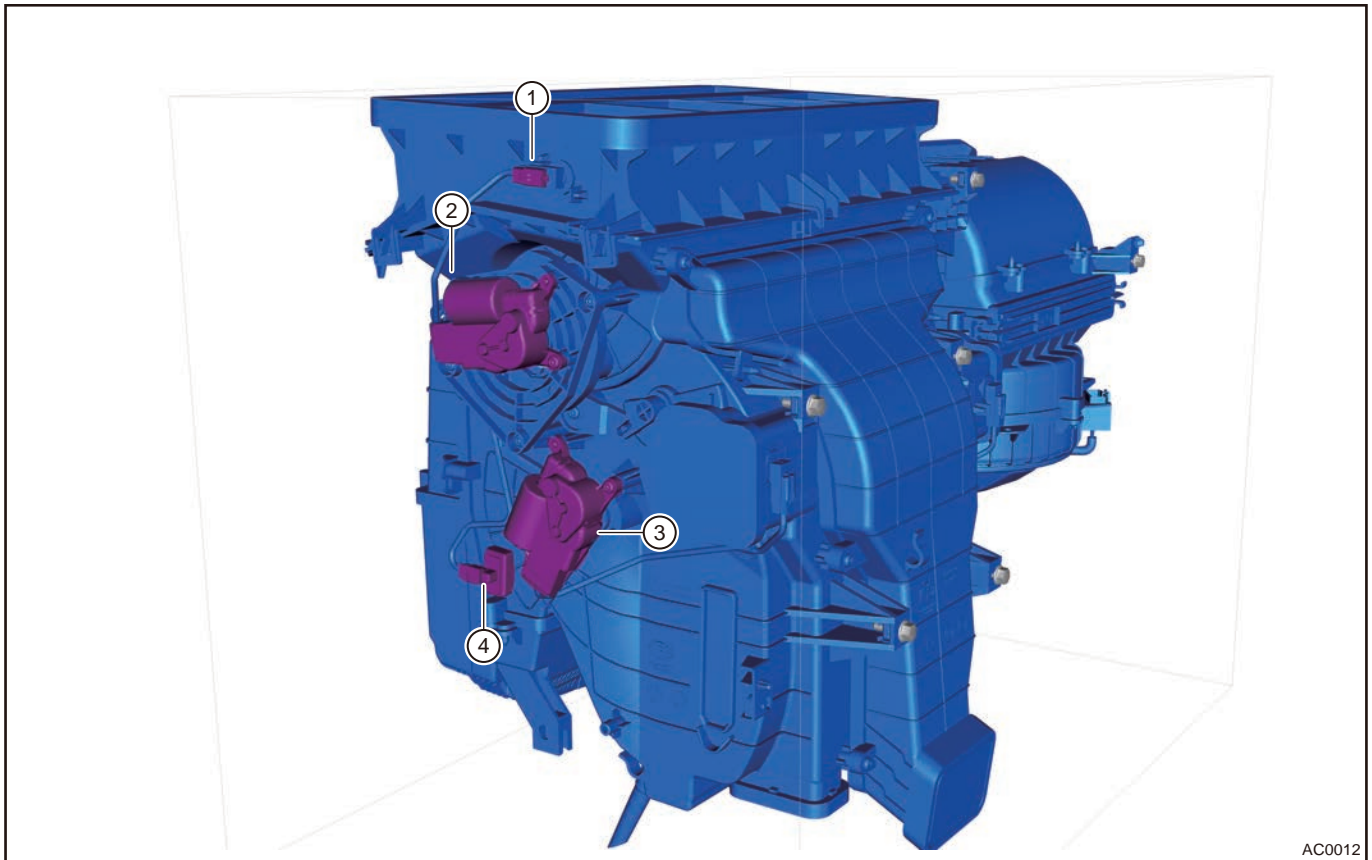
AC0010

1	Left Anion Generator	4	A/C Control Module
2	Solar Sensor	5	HVAC Assembly
3	Right Anion Generator	6	A/C Control Panel



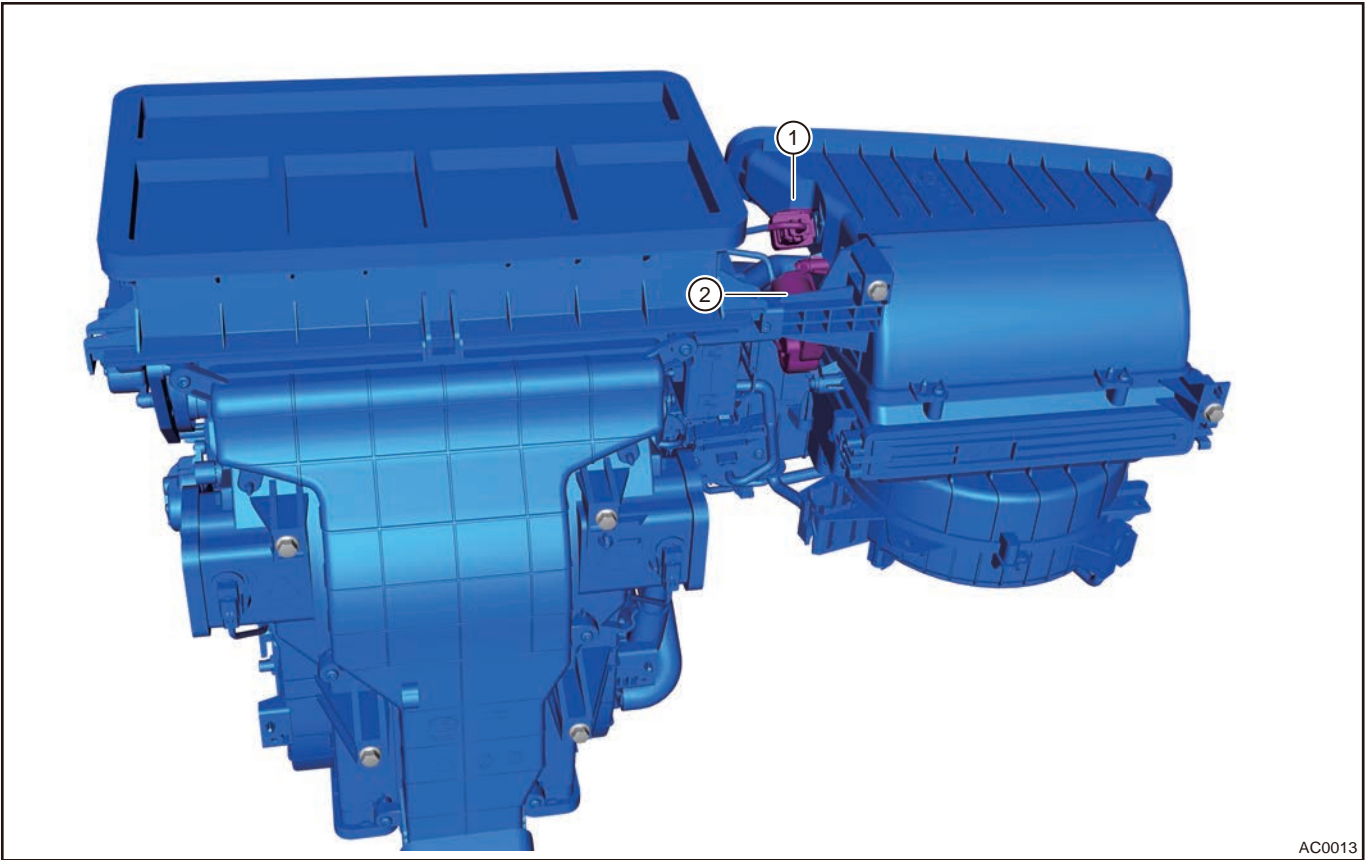
AC0011

1	Left Foot Temperature Sensor	4	Right Temperature Damper Servo Motor
2	Right Foot Temperature Sensor	5	PM2.5 Sensor
3	Right Face Temperature Sensor	6	Blower Speed Regulation Module



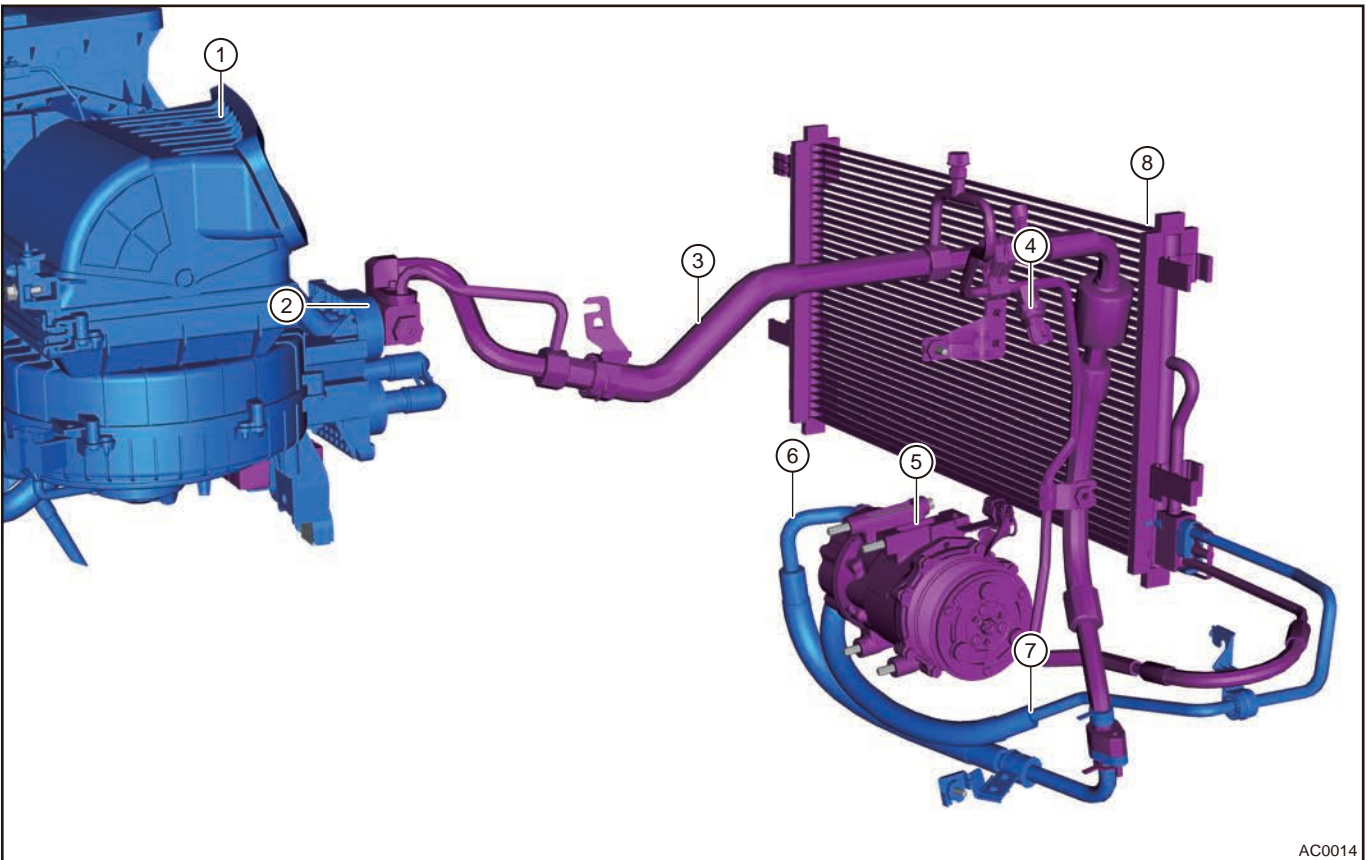
AC0012

1	Left Face Temperature Sensor	3	Left Temperature Damper Servo Motor
2	Left Mode Damper Servo Motor	4	Evaporator Tank Temperature Sensor



AC0013

1	Air Quality Sensor	2	Inner/Outer Circulation Damper Servo Motor
---	--------------------	---	--

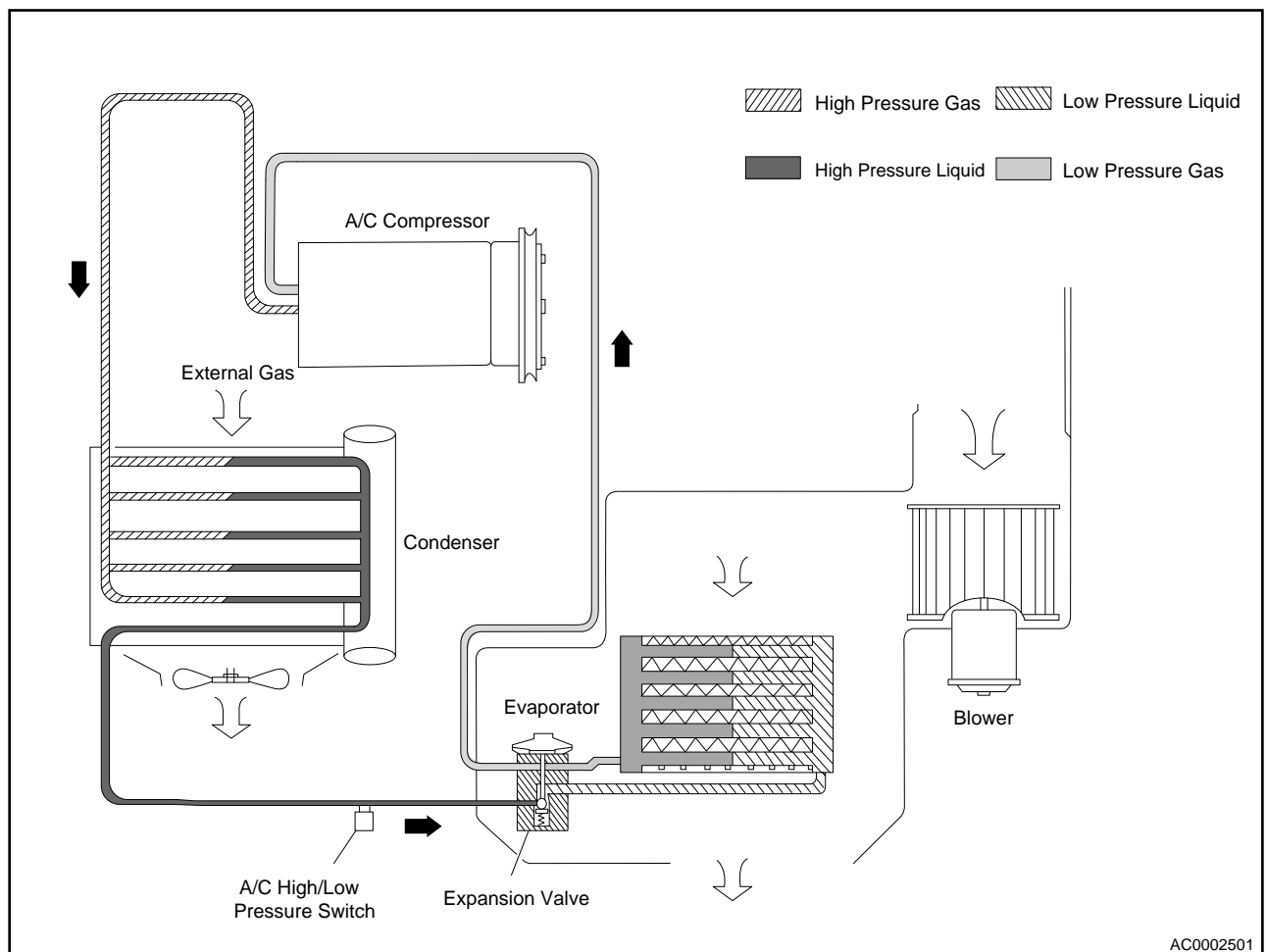


AC0014

1	HVAC	5	Compressor Assembly
2	Expansion Valve	6	A/C Coaxial Line - Compressor Line Assembly
3	A/C Coaxial Line Assembly	7	Condenser - Compressor Line Assembly
4	A/C Pressure Sensor	8	Condenser Assembly (w/ Receiver Drier)

- Air conditioning and distribution system: Air mixing and distributor part of HVAC, inner/outer circulation inlet, outlet and air filter.
- Control system: Central control integration panel assembly, inner/outer circulation damper servo motor, blower, blower speed regulation module, A/C pressure sensor, evaporator temperature sensor and outside temperature sensor. Automatic air conditioning is also equipped with internal and external PM2.5 sensors, air quality sensor and anion generator.
- Heating system: Heater core assembly, heating inlet hose, heating outlet hose and engine cooling circulation system.
- Refrigerating system: Compressor assembly, condenser assembly (w/ receiver drier), expansion valve (H type), evaporator core assembly and A/C high/low pressure line.

3 Functional Principle

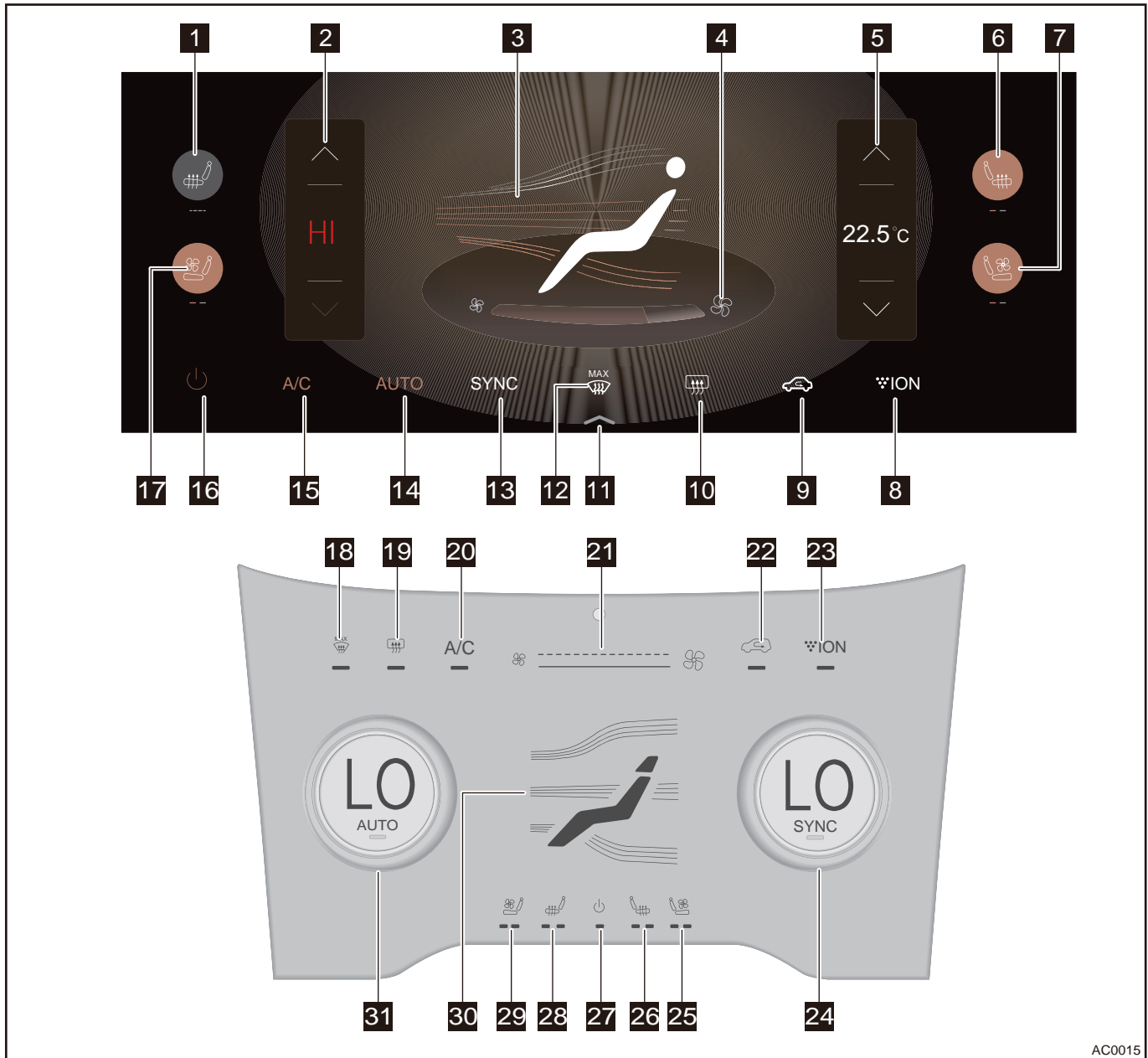


- Outside fresh air enters air inlet filter assembly through cowl top opening at the right side of windshield base. Fresh air flows through evaporator core and heater core, and then enters vehicle through outlets on instrument panel and floor.
- Temperature can be adjusted by air volume adjustment button on A/C control panel.

- Turn on the compressor assembly by pressing A/C switch. Refrigerant is compressed by compressor assembly and converted into high temperature/pressure gas, which is then condensed into high pressure liquid in the condenser. Then the liquid is filtered and dried by receiver drier and delivered to expansion valve and becomes low-pressure liquid through throttling and depressurization. Finally the liquid enters evaporator in vehicle and absorbs heat and evaporates, thus refrigeration is achieved.
- A/C heating is realized by engine coolant circulation system. Heater core is a main component of heating system. With engine running, engine coolant flows from engine water pump to heater core, and the heater core transmits the heat from engine coolant to the air that flows through heater core. At this time, A/C switch is off. The air flowing through heater core becomes hot wind through heat exchanging, thus providing heating. Temperature adjustment control mechanism can be controlled by rotating temperature adjustment knob. Mix damper closes when temperature adjustment button is rotated counterclockwise to MAX COOL position. If airflow does not flow through heater core, the heat transmission will not occur.

3.1 System Function Description

■ A/C Usage Method (Front Control Panel)



AC0015

No.	Definition	No.	Definition	No.	Definition
1	Driver seat heater soft button	12	Front windshield maximum defrosting and defogging soft button	23	Air purification button
2	Driver temperature adjustment soft button	13	Air conditioning synchronous control soft button	24	Front passenger temperature adjustment knob/Air conditioning synchronous control button
3	Mode status adjustment soft button	14	AUTO soft button	25	Front passenger seat ventilation button
4	Airflow volume adjustment soft button	15	A/C soft button	26	Front passenger seat heater button
5	Front passenger temperature adjustment soft button	16	A/C switch soft button	27	A/C switch button
6	Front passenger seat heater soft button	17	Driver seat ventilation soft button	28	Driver seat heater button
7	Front passenger seat heater button	18	Front windshield maximum defrosting and defogging button	29	Driver seat ventilation button
8	Air purification soft button	19	Rear defrosting button	30	Mode status adjustment button
9	Inner/outer circulation mode soft button	20	A/C button	31	Driver side temperature adjustment knob/AUTO button
10	Rear defrosting soft button	21	Airflow volume adjustment button	32	/
11	Air conditioning screen hidden soft button	22	Inner/outer circulation mode button	33	/

No.	Function	Usage Method	Note
1	Temperature adjustment	There are two methods to adjust temperature: Operate the temperature bar on air conditioning panel display or operate the button on panel. When adjusting temperature, the corresponding temperature value will be displayed on the panel display.	
2	Airflow volume adjustment	There are two methods to adjust airflow volume: Operate the airflow volume bar on air conditioning panel display or operate the airflow volume button on panel. When adjusting airflow volume, the corresponding airflow volume level will be displayed on the panel display. There are 7 airflow volume levels. Select proper level according to actual situation. Airflow volume can be adjusted by the knob.	/
3	Mode adjustment	Operate different positions to achieve different blow mode. Face mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center and face outlets on both sides. Hints: The face airflow direction can be adjusted by adjusting grilles of face outlet. Face/foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from center outlet, face outlets on both sides and foot outlet. Foot mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet.	/

No.	Function	Usage Method	Note
		Foot/defrosting mode: It can adjust airflow blowing out from foot outlet and defrosting outlet.	
4	Maximum front defrosting button	Most of the airflow blows to front windshield, a small amount of airflow blows to side windshield. In order to defog rapidly, when the maximum front defrost button is operated, airflow volume will be forced to level 4 (if the airflow volume is lower than level 4 before the button is operated, it will be switched to level 4; if the airflow volume is higher than level 4 before the button is operated, it will be maintain the current state), compressor and outer circulation mode will turn on. When the maximum front defrosting function is operating, the button character is orange, when it is not operating, the button character is white.	/
5	A/C button	Select the inner circulation mode. The inner circulation indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning is in inner circulation mode, heating or cooling the inner air according to selected function. Select the outer circulation (fresh air) mode. The outer circulation indicator comes on, indicating that air conditioning is in outer circulation mode, heating or cooling the outside air entering the vehicle according to selected function. Hints: The inner/outer circulation mode is distinguished by the color of button character. The character is blue in inner circulation mode, and the character is white in outer circulation mode.	/
6	Dual-zone mode button	This button can turn on and off the dual-zone mode of air conditioning. Press this button or adjust the front passenger temperature, air conditioning will enter dual-zone mode automatically. The button character is white in dual-zone mode, and the temperature of driver and front passenger can be set separately. Press the button again to exit dual-zone mode and enter single-zone mode, the character color is blue.	/
7	One-button purification button	The button can trigger one-button purification function of air conditioning: The color of button character is orange during performing one-button purification function, the color of button character is white when one-button purification function ends. For the air conditioning with anion, when operating the button to turn on air purification function, the anion can be turned on synchronously, and then anion can be individually controlled on and off.	/
8	Rear A/C switch	This button is rear air conditioning switch. After pressing this button, the button character is blue, rear air conditioning is turned on at this time. Press this button again, the button character will be white, rear air conditioning will be turned off.	This function is applicable to the model equipped with rear air conditioning function
9	AUTO button	Press AUTO button, the button character turns blue, indicating that the mode is switched to automatic mode, the button character turns white, indicating that the mode is switched to manual mode.	/

No.	Function	Usage Method	Note
10	ON/OFF button	Press the button, the button character turns blue, indicating that the head unit is ON, the button character turns white, indicating that the head unit is OFF.	/
11	A/C setting button	After operating the button, A/C setting screen pops up. The setting screen is as shown in the figure below. After the setting screen is opened, personalized setting for A/C system can be set based on the user's usage habits.	/

Hint:

For detailed operation method, please refer to Owner's Manual.

■ Signal Interaction

When system is operating, the indicators and backlights of related functions should operate correspondingly, the brightness and flash should meet the requirements.

Front Panel Button Input			
No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Maximum defrosting button	Receive a request - maximum defrosting - 1 and the signal is valid, CLM performs the maximum defrosting function, meanwhile, update STAT maximum defrosting on the front panel display	
2	A/C button	Receive a request for A/C compressor and the signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function, meanwhile, update A/C operating status signal STAT-AC compressor request to the bus	
3	PM2.5 button	Receive a request for APM2.5 - 1 and the signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function, meanwhile, update STAT-PM2.5 - 1, AQS-Sts	PM2.5 and AQS are turned on and off at the same time
4	REAR button	Receive a request for _rear temperature adjustment and the signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function, meanwhile, update STAT rear temperature KeyOnOff	This function is applicable to the model equipped with rear air conditioning function
5	Circulation button	Receive a request for - inner circulation mode - 1 and the signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function, meanwhile, update STAT inner/outer circulation	
6	ON/OFF button	Receive a request for _front A/C temperature control OnOff and the signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function, meanwhile, update STAT-Front A/C control OnOff	

Front Panel Button Input			
No.	Function	Function Description	Note
7	Mode button	Receive request - face, request - foot, request-defrost and the signals are valid, CLM performs the mode switching function, for the specific switching method, please refer to the function description in mode control chapter, meanwhile, update STAT-FInterAirDistribution	
8	Auto button	Receive a request - Auto and the signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function, meanwhile, update STAT-Front A/C control Auto	
9	SYNC button	Receive a request - SYNC and the signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function, meanwhile, update STAT-Front A/C control SYNC	
10	Airflow volume level adjustment button	<p>Receive request - blower speed increase/decrease, request - blower speed, request - blower speed increase, request - blower speed decrease and signals are valid, CLM performs the following functions:</p> <p>When A/C controller receives a request signal about blower speed increase, the speed increases from low speed to high speed, the speed range is level 1 to level 7.</p> <p>When A/C controller receives a request signal about blower speed decrease, the speed decreases from high speed to low speed, the speed range is level 1 to level 7.</p> <p>Note: Airflow volume slider cannot turn on the air conditioning.</p> <p>If the request - blower speed increase is valid, CLM airflow volume level is increased by 1 level;</p> <p>If the request - blower speed decrease is valid, CLM airflow volume level is decreased by 1 level;</p> <p>Note: Airflow volume button request_blower speed increase can turn on the air conditioning.</p> <p>Meanwhile, update STAT blower speed.</p> <p>Long-press button function:</p> <p>If received request - blower speed increase is 1, perform the function once and start timing. After the time reaches 1s (to be determined), it is regarded as a long-press, and then the airflow volume will increase by one level every 0.6s (to be determined).</p> <p>If received request - blower speed decrease is 1, perform the function once and start timing. After the time reaches 1s (to be determined), it is regarded as a long-press, and then the airflow volume will decrease by one level every 0.6s (to be determined).</p>	Long-press button function is added
11	Left temperature adjustment button	<p>Receive request - left zone temperature increase/decrease, request - left zone temperature adjustment step and signals are valid, CLM performs the following functions:</p> <p>If request - left zone temperature increase/decrease is increase, CLM left zone temperature increases;</p> <p>If request - left zone temperature increase/decrease is decrease, CLM left zone temperature decreases;</p> <p>Meanwhile, update SetFrontCelsTempLeftZone, SetFrontFahrTempLeftZone</p>	
12	Right temperature adjustment button	<p>Receive request - right zone temperature increase/decrease, request - TempAdjustStepRightZone and signals are valid, CLM performs the following functions:</p> <p>If request - right zone temperature increase/decrease is increase, CLM right zone temperature increases;</p> <p>If request - right zone temperature increase/decrease is decrease, CLM right zone temperature decreases, and request_TempAdjustStepRightZone;</p> <p>Meanwhile, update front centigrade temperature left zone setting and front centigrade temperature right zone setting</p>	

Front Panel Button Input			
No.	Function	Function Description	Note
13	Self-learning	Receive a request - self-learning and CLM signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function	
14	Self-diagnostic	Receive a request - self-diagnostic and CLM signal is valid, CLM performs the corresponding function and sends the message to network	
Voice Control			
No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Voice control function is the same as the button press effect	Each control signal function is the same as button function	
2	Voice - A/C control OnOff	Receive voice - A/C control OnOff and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - A/C control OnOff is 0, there is no response If voice - A/C control OnOff is 1, request air conditioning to turn on If voice - A/C control OnOff is 2, request air conditioning to turn off	
3	Voice - A/C control Auto	Receive voice - A/C control Auto and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - A/C control Auto is 0, there is no response If voice - A/C control Auto is 1, request to enter AUTO If voice - A/C control Auto is 2, request to exit AUTO (the signal is reserved, IHU will not send out the signal)	PM2.5 and AQS are turned on and off at the same time
4	Voice - blower status	Receive voice - blower status and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - blower status is 0, turn off A/C; If voice - blower status is 1 to 7, set airflow volume of blower to level 1 to 7	
5	Voice - mode adjustment	Receive voice - mode adjustment and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - mode adjustment is 1 to 6, set mode motor to the corresponding position	
6	Voice - maximum defrosting	Receive voice - maximum defrosting and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - maximum defrosting is 0, turn off the maximum defrosting function If voice - maximum defrosting is 1, turn on the maximum defrosting function	
7	Voice - inner/outer circulation	Receive voice - inner/outer circulation and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - inner/outer circulation is 0, the mode is outer circulation If voice - inner/outer circulation is 1, the mode is inner circulation	
8	Voice - AC status	Receive voice - AC status and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - AC status is 0, turn off AC; If voice - AC status is 1, turn on AC;	
9	Voice - PM2.5	Receive voice - PM2.5 and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions:	

Voice Control			
No.	Function	Function Description	Note
		If voice - PM2.5 is 0, turn off PM2.5 and AQS functions; If voice - PM2.5 is 1, turn on PM2.5 and AQS functions	
10	Voice - right zone temperature 1	Receive voice - right zone temperature 1 and signal is valid, CLM adjusts the right temperature to the corresponding temperature	Long-press button function is added
11	Voice - A/C control Sync	Receive voice - A/C control Sync and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice - A/C control Sync is 0, CLM exits SYNC mode and enters three-zone mode If voice - A/C control Sync is 1, CLM enters SYNC mode	
12	Voice - left zone temperature 1	Receive voice - left zone temperature 1 and signal is valid, CLM adjusts the left temperature to the corresponding temperature Adjust left temperature, and right and rear temperature change according to SYNC status	
13	Voice - rear zone temperature	Receive voice - rear zone temperature and signal is valid, CLM adjusts the rear temperature to the corresponding temperature	If equipped
14	Voice - rear mode adjustment	Receive voice - rear mode adjustment and signal is valid, CLM performs the following functions: If voice-mode adjustment is 0 to 2, set mode motor to the corresponding position	If equipped

■ Default Setting

If CCU is initialized by battery KL30, set CCU operating state to default setting.

Auto air conditioning fault code and corresponding fault content			
No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Initial battery power-on state	1. Initial state of front A/C after battery is powered on is: Set temperature 22°C, airflow volume level 0, blower OFF, A/C OFF, SYNC, AUTO, temperature motor is corrected to macro definition position (max cool), mode is corrected to macro definition position (foot), and inner/outer circulation is corrected to outer circulation. Initial state of rear A/C is: Set temperature 22°C, airflow volume level 0, blower OFF, A/C OFF, AUTO, temperature motor is corrected to max cool, mode is corrected foot. 2. When powered-on for the first time and IGN ON, after pressing ON button, front A/C status is: Set temperature 22°C, airflow volume, AC, circulation, mode in auto control status, SYNC, AUTO. Rear A/C state: Set temperature 22°C, airflow volume, AC, mode in auto control status, AUTO.	Rear A/C control is applicable to models equipped with rear A/C.
2.	IGN OFF → ON	Restore the state before IGN OFF, PM2.5 function is turned off by default	

■ Automatic A/C Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	AUTO button operation	When A/C control module receives front AUTO button or rear AUTO button pressing signal, both front CLM and rear CLM enter AUTO mode. (When exiting, the front and rear CLM exit respectively, that is, when operating the front CLM button, front CLM enters non-AUTO state; when operating the rear CLM button, rear CLM enters non-AUTO state).	Rear A/C control is applicable to models equipped with rear A/C.
2	Circulation state	In AUTO state, as committed to comfort, CLM automatically controls circulation motor position.	
3	Mode state	In AUTO state, as committed to comfort, CLM automatically controls mode motor position.	
4	Blower state	In AUTO state, as committed to comfort, CLM automatically controls blower output percentage.	
5	Compressor state	Select AUTO function and activate compressor request at the same time (indicator is displayed according to ambient temperature status. When ambient temperature is higher than -1.5°C , AC indicator light comes on, and when it is below -3°C , the indicator turns off).	If equipped with the rear CLM, the status of the AC indicator will follow the front row when the CLM is turned on.
6	Temperature damper position	In AUTO state, as committed to comfort, CLM automatically controls temperature motor position.	
7	Other state	The set temperature and SYNC state maintain the previous state when entering AUTO. It can be manually modified during AUTO and does not affect the operating status of PM2.5 and AQS.	

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
9	Automatically switching to semi-automatic state	<p>In AUTO state, when the following signals are received, it enters semi-automatic mode, and AUTO message state becomes non-AUTO:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Mode button: The mode will exit automatic control and enter selected mode, but other actuators or functions will maintain automatic control; 2. Airflow volume increasing or decreasing: The airflow volume will exit automatic control, but other actuators or functions will maintain automatic control; 3. Front or rear A/C button: Front and rear AC indicators turn on or off according to the previous state. But other actuators or functions will maintain automatic control; 4. Circulation: Exit the full automatic mode, circulation damper will be controlled manually, and other actuators will maintain automatic control. 5. Maximum defrosting: Exit the automatic mode and enter the maximum defrosting mode. 6. Power button: Turn off A/C. 7. When actuator is only in AUTO state and turning driver temperature knob to left to LO (or turning driver temperature knob to right to HI), the corresponding actuator exits AUTO state and enters the maximum cooling/heating mode. 8. In AUTO state, if pressing AUTO, SYNC (change the temperature zone synchronization state), PM2.5 button and temperature knob (change the set temperature, except for LO and HI), the AUTO state will not exit. 	
10	Rear AUTO state	When AC, rear airflow volume and mode are in automatic control, rear AUTO indicator comes on.	Rear A/C control is applicable to models equipped with rear A/C.

■ Multi-zone Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Enter three-zone state	<p>With A/C ON in single zone status, perform following operation to enter the three-zone status:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Rotate the right temperature knob; 2. Operate the rear temperature button; 3. Press SYNC button. 	Rear A/C control is applicable to models equipped with rear A/C.
2.	Three-zone state	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. SYNC indicator turns off, left, right and rear set temperatures are individually set; 2. The status of damper, blower and compressor is affected by respective set temperature; 3. The right and rear temperatures are adjusted from the left temperature value; 4. In three-zone state, the left, right and rear set temperatures do not affect each other. 	Rear A/C control is applicable to models equipped with rear A/C.

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
3.	Enter SYNC state	With A/C ON, perform following operation to enter SYNC status: 1. Press SYNC button in non-SYNC status.	
4.	SYNC state	SYNC indicator comes on, right and rear set temperatures follow the left set temperature in real time.	

■ Temperature Adjustment Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note														
1.	Temperature motor control	According to the set temperature, the system automatically adjusts the temperature damper position. When the temperature mode is in LO, temperature damper position is max cool; when the temperature mode is in HI, temperature damper position is max hot.															
2.	Temperature display	Set the temperature from 18 to 32 at a interval of 0.5 seconds. LO is maximum cooling, HI is maximum heating. The automatic control logic considers stable control to each set temperature, sunlight, circulations and increases/decreases temperature.															
3.	Correspondence between Celsius and Fahrenheit	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Celsius</th> <th>Fahrenheit</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>LO</td> <td>LO</td> </tr> <tr> <td>18</td> <td>65</td> </tr> <tr> <td>18.5 - 31</td> <td>66 - 91</td> </tr> <tr> <td>31.5</td> <td>92</td> </tr> <tr> <td>32</td> <td>93</td> </tr> <tr> <td>HI</td> <td>HI</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Celsius	Fahrenheit	LO	LO	18	65	18.5 - 31	66 - 91	31.5	92	32	93	HI	HI	
Celsius	Fahrenheit																
LO	LO																
18	65																
18.5 - 31	66 - 91																
31.5	92																
32	93																
HI	HI																
4.	Switching temperature unit	Switch between °C and °F according to the bus temperature unit switching signal (Set_TempUnit)															
5.	AUTO indicator status in max hot mode	After entering max hot in AUTO state, AUTO indicator will turn off. At this time, if operating AUTO button, AUTO indicator will come on and enter automatic control.															
6.	Limitation of Tcool and Ta to temperature motor	When Tcool is less than 30°C and Ta is less than -15°C, the temperature motor is controlled at the coldest end, after 300s or when Tcool is more than 30°C or Ta is more than -15°C, exit the control.															
7.	Temperature motor priority	Tcool and Ta limit the temperature motor maximum heating/colding > cold start/purification															

■ Maximum Heating Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Maximum heating	User can select the maximum heating operation by adjusting driver controller temperature to HI. This adjustment automatically leads to the following settings: Fan speed is set to level 7 (turn on all fan indicators); Temperature motor is set to panel control position (max hot); Intake air volume is set to fresh air mode (turn off intake air volume indicator); Compressor is turned off (turn off A/C indicator).	
2	Exiting maximum heating	Maximum heating function will be exited when operating the following buttons or knobs and enter other functions: Enter the previous settings. If the setting was manually operated previously, please continue to use it; The maximum defrosting request will enter the maximum defrosting function, and the set temperature will not change; Press ON/OFF button to enter OFF function; Press automatic button and CCU will enter automatic mode.	

■ Maximum Cooling Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Maximum cooling function	User can select the maximum cooling operation by adjusting driver controller temperature to LO. This adjustment automatically leads to the following settings: Maximum fan speed; Temperature damper position is set to 0% (max cool); Inner circulation air is activated; Compressor is activated.	
2	Exiting maximum cooling	CCU will exit the maximum cooling function when operating the following buttons or knobs and enter other functions: When control temperature setting is not in LO, CLM will enter the previous settings. If the setting was manually operated previously, the previous setting will resume; When sending the maximum defrosting request, CCU will enter the maximum defrosting function and the set temperature will not change; Press ON/OFF button, CCU will enter OFF function; Press automatic button and CCU will enter automatic mode.	

■ Blower Control Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Blower ON	A/C OFF: 1. Power button; 2. AUTO button; 3. Right airflow volume knob (the same as Power button); 4. Maximum defrosting button.	
2	Blower relay	If airflow volume is not 0, the relay is turned on; if airflow volume is 0, the relay is turned off.	

3	Blower speed control	Manual mode: Receive airflow volume level information, adjust blower speed, the adjustment range is level 1 to 7; The voltage of each level in manual mode is as follows, and the voltage error is $\pm 0.3 V$:																									
		<table border="1"> <tr> <td>Level</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> <td>5</td> <td>6</td> <td>7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Voltage value/V</td> <td>3.60</td> <td>4.20</td> <td>5.20</td> <td>6.20</td> <td>7.30</td> <td>8.80</td> <td>11.5-0</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PW-M</td> <td>24</td> <td>29</td> <td>35</td> <td>42</td> <td>49</td> <td>59</td> <td>78</td> </tr> </table>	Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	Voltage value/V	3.60	4.20	5.20	6.20	7.30	8.80	11.5-0	PW-M	24	29	35	42	49	59	78	
		Level	1	2	3	4	5	6	7																		
		Voltage value/V	3.60	4.20	5.20	6.20	7.30	8.80	11.5-0																		
PW-M	24	29	35	42	49	59	78																				
In automatic mode: Perform automatic control according to automatic A/C algorithm, airflow volume uses stepless speed regulation.																											
4	Airflow volume level	User can adjust the blower level from 1 to 7 using the knob. Turn the knob clockwise to set the airflow volume level increasing by 1 level; turn the knob counterclockwise to set airflow volume level decreasing by 1 level.																									
5	Impact of Loadshed restrictions and transportation mode restrictions on airflow volume and indicator lights	When Loadshed level and transportation mode limit the airflow volume output, airflow volume indicator shows the actual status of airflow volume. When the limitation conditions disappear, actual blower airflow volume and indicator status maintain normal status.																									
6	Keep defrosting airflow volume	1. When airflow volume state is switched from automatic or manual to the maximum defrosting state, airflow volume maintains automatic or manual airflow volume value for a period of time, and airflow volume starts to slowly increase to level 7.																									
7	Rear controller LO/HI	When the rear airflow volume is in automatic control state, the set temperature is LO or HI, and rear airflow volume is level 7.	If equipped with rear A/C																								

■ Blow Mode Control Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Mode damper motor position	There are 7 positions from face to front defrosting: Face, face and foot, full blowing, foot, maximum heating (Mix-1), foot and window (Mix-2), window.	
2	Manual operation control	When A/C is turned on, switch in 5 modes by pressing the up/middle/down blow mode buttons: face, face and foot, foot, foot and window (Mix-2), and window.	
3	Auto control	Mode damper is in automatic control status, damper position control follows the automatic control strategy.	

■ Maximum Defrosting Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	The maximum defrost mode is associated with the state	<p>Only front A/C is equipped with the maximum defrosting function. When pressing the maximum defrosting button, enter the maximum defrosting state.</p> <p>Maximum defrosting state correlation:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The mode is window, mode status sends Defrost; 2. A/C request ON; 3. Outer circulation; 4. Max airflow volume; 5. Others are not affected, and rear A/C function is not affected. 	
2	Switching maximum defrosting mode	<p>In maximum defrosting mode:</p> <p>If entering the maximum defrosting from LO/HI, operate the mode button, the mode enters manual mode, only the mode enters the modified position, and the rest maintains the previous state.</p> <p>If entering the maximum defrosting from automatic/manual, operate the mode button, mode, airflow volume, REC, AC enter manual mode, the mode enters the modified position, compressor, blower and circulation motor maintain the previous state;</p> <p>If entering the maximum defrosting from LO/HI, change the airflow volume, airflow volume enters manual mode, airflow volume is modified to the changed gear, and the rest maintains the previous state; if entering the maximum defrosting from automatic/manual, change the airflow volume, airflow volume is modified to the changed gear, compressor, mode motor and circulating motor maintain the previous state;</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 3. Press the maximum defrosting button again to exit the maximum defrosting and enter the previous state (A/C, airflow volume, circulation, mode), if the previous state is in OFF, it will return to AUTO; 4. Press Auto button to exit maximum defrosting and enter Auto state; 5. Press Power button to exit the maximum defrosting and enter OFF mode (if pressing Power button/operating airflow volume + button again, it will return to the previous non-maximum defrosting state); 7. Press A/C, the maximum defrosting will not exit, all maintain the previous state; 8. Perform circulation, the maximum defrosting will not exit, all maintain the previous state; 9. The set temperature, SYNC, PM2.5 can operate normally without affecting the maximum defrosting state. 	
3	Impact of IGN to maximum defrosting	IGN ON→OFF→ON, the maximum defrosting is memorized at this time.	

■ Inner and Outer Circulation Control Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Manual operation control	In manual control status, there are only two states (inner circulation and outer circulation); In Auto state, when pressing circulation button, it switches according to the current circulation state; In maximum cooling state, when pressing circulation button, it enters outer circulation; In maximum heating state, when pressing circulation button, it enters inner circulation.	
2	Auto control	In automatic control, the circulation indicator is displayed according to the real-time status of the message, damper can stay at any position according to the algorithm.	
3	Timed ventilation	1. When left zone set temperature is LO, there is no timed ventilation function; 2. If circulation motor is in the inner circulation position and the duration exceeds 20 minutes (calibration amount), switch to partial circulation, circulation motor will go to the 70% position, and return to the inner circulation after 1 minutes (calibration amount), and so on;	
4	Part inner circulation	1. In order to meet the cooling demand in winter, in automatic control, it enters part internal circulation control according to factors such as airflow volume, vehicle speed, air outlet temperature, interior temperature, setting temperature. Damper is at 20% position; 2. When the following conditions are met at the same time, it enters a part circulation: 1. External temperature is no more than -10°C (reference value, calibration amount) 2. Water temperature is no more than 55°C (reference value, calibration amount) 3. DT (target temperature and Ti) is 2°C (reference value, calibration amount) 4. Automatically control inner and outer circulation.	
5	IGN OFF logic	When IGN OFF changes from ON to OFF: 1. If circulation motor position is greater than 50%, when the ambient temperature is lower than 5°C, the target of circulation motor is the outer circulation position, otherwise, it is the 50% motor position; 2. If circulation motor position is less than 50%, the current position is maintained.	
6	Defogging mode	When adjusting mode to window or foot and window mode manually, the outer circulation is forced to turn on.	

■ AC Control Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	AC request status	When AC requests to turn on, STAT_AC compressor request is set to 1, and whether compressor is turned on needs to be judged according to actual state. When PM2.5 is enabled, if the current ambient temperature is higher than -1.5°C, the associated AC requests to turn on. When manual adjustment mode is window or foot and window mode, the associated AC requests to turn on.	
2.	AC actual operating status (the status of requesting compressor ON/OFF)	Send REQ_AC compressor Activation to EMS according to the actual status, representing the actual compressor request. That is the actual compressor request after performing some limitations such as current protection, allowable turning on conditions.	
3.	Actual compressor allowable turning on conditions	1. Compressor is only allowed to turn on when engine is operating. 2. Only with IGN ON, compressor is allowed to turn on. 3. Any request for front and rear airflow volume is not level 0. The above three conditions should be met at the same time, and are not affected by the minimum ON/OFF time.	

■ Compressor External Control Valve Control

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Output enable control	When compressor output is enabled, ECV- pin output is controlled to decrease.	
2.	Output quantity control	Adjust PWM duty ratio of 400Hz output on ECV+, control the current through solenoid valve, the maximum current is 750MA (calibration amount).	
3.	External control valve control	1. On the premise of AC request output ON, and EMS message signal ACState is ON (CLM requests compressor to turn on, sends the request signal to EMS, and EMS feedback that CLM only outputs current when ACState is ON), according to airflow volume, temperature level and mode position, etc. adjust solenoid valve current in a real-time to control compressor displacement. 2. When compressor is requested to turn off, it is not affected by ACState.	
4.	Calculating torque information with compressor ON	1. According to the torque information table, torque on compressor terminal is sent to bus. 2. There are three conditions that affect torque: Compressor pressure, compressor speed (converted by engine speed), solenoid valve feedback current. 3. Speed ratio: 1.6T engine is standard for the whole series, 2.0T reserved, 1.6T engine speed ratio is 1.364. 4. When compressor feedback state ACState is off, the torque is 0.	
5.	External temperature protection	1. When the temperature drops, the protection starts at -1°C (calibration amount), and it is fully protection at -3°C (-calibration amount). When the temperature value is in the middle value, the protection percentage is obtained according to the linear difference. 2. When the temperature rises, the fully protected will exit at -1.5°C (calibration amount), the protection will exit at 0°C	

No.	Function	Function Description	Note																
		(calibration amount). When the temperature value is the middle value, the protection percentage will be obtained according to the linear difference (if it rises to -1.5°C or higher, but it has not reached 0°C, at this time the temperature drops to -1.5°C or lower, it will enter full protection).																	
6.	Evaporator temperature protection	<p>1. When the temperature drops, the protection starts at 1.5°C (calibration amount), and it is fully protection at 0°C (-calibration amount). When the temperature value is the middle value, the protection percentage is obtained according to the linear difference.</p> <p>2. When the temperature rises, the fully protection will exit at 1.5°C (calibration amount), and the protection will exit at 2.5°C (calibration amount). When the temperature value is the middle value, the protection percentage is obtained according to the linear difference. (If it rises to 1.5°C or higher but has not reached 2.5°C, then the temperature drops to 1.5°C or lower, it will enter full protection).</p>																	
7.	Water temperature protection	<p>1. When the temperature rises, the protection starts at 112.5°C (calibration amount), and it is fully protection at 115°C (calibration amount). When the temperature value is the middle value, the protection percentage is obtained according to the linear difference.</p> <p>2. When the temperature drops, the fully protected will exit at 112.5°C (calibration amount), the protection will exit at 110°C (calibration amount). When the temperature value is the middle value, the protection percentage will be obtained according to the linear difference (if it drops to 112.5°C or lower but has not reached 110°C, then the temperature rises to 112.5°C or higher, it will enter full protection).</p>																	
8.	Compressor pressure protection	<p>Compressor is protected according to ACPressure value of bus signal, and compressor is limited to turn on.</p> <table border="1"> <tbody> <tr> <td>Compressor pressure (hPa)</td> <td>5000</td> <td>100-00</td> <td>150-00</td> <td>200-00</td> <td>250-00</td> <td>300-00</td> <td>310-00</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Solenoid valve current (mA)</td> <td>750</td> <td>750</td> <td>750</td> <td>750</td> <td>700</td> <td>550</td> <td>0</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Compressor pressure (hPa)	5000	100-00	150-00	200-00	250-00	300-00	310-00	Solenoid valve current (mA)	750	750	750	750	700	550	0	
Compressor pressure (hPa)	5000	100-00	150-00	200-00	250-00	300-00	310-00												
Solenoid valve current (mA)	750	750	750	750	700	550	0												

9.	Request to reduce torque signal	According to the value of bus signal REQ_CCUTorqueReduce, the solenoid valve current is limited. When it is 0, there is no limit; when it is 1, if accelerator pedal signal exceeds 95% (calibration value) and the current solenoid valve current is greater than the minimum current, the output minimum current value (calibration value) will be limited.	
10	Current Ramp function	1. In order to protect compressor and reduce NVH, current Ramp function is available when the compressor is ON and OFF; 2. With compressor OFF, the current will gradually Ramp to 350 (calibration value), and then to turn off; when IGN is OFF/impact/engine speed does not meet the conditions, etc., the current Ramp is also required when compressor is turned off.	

■ ON/OFF Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note																														
1.	Entering OFF state	1. Power-on initialization is in OFF mode. 2. When A/C is turned on, A/C will enter OFF mode when the A/C switch button is pressed. 3. When entering OFF mode, the current status (airflow volume, circulation, mode, AC, temperature, AUTO, SYNC) will be memorized. 4. When front and rear A/C are turned on, operate front A/C POWER button to turn off front and rear A/C; after operating the A/C OFF button, rear A/C is turned off separately; or when rear A/C is to be turned off separately on front A/C, REAR button comes on, and then press POWER button on the front A/C.																															
2	In OFF state	<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th> <th>Load Position</th> <th>Can it be operated</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>Front blower</td> <td>OFF</td> <td>Y, A/C exits OFF before turning clockwise</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Front mode</td> <td>Maintain (- initialization is in foot mode)</td> <td>N</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Front temperature</td> <td>Max cool (- calibration value)</td> <td>N</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Front circulation</td> <td>Position maintaining</td> <td>Y, maintain manual operation</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Front AC</td> <td>OFF</td> <td>Y, front A/C exits OFF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Front AUTO</td> <td>-</td> <td>Y, front A/C exits OFF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>SYNC</td> <td>-</td> <td>N</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Max defrost</td> <td>-</td> <td>Y, front A/C exits OFF</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PM2.5</td> <td>-</td> <td>Y, front A/C exits OFF</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Name	Load Position	Can it be operated	Front blower	OFF	Y, A/C exits OFF before turning clockwise	Front mode	Maintain (- initialization is in foot mode)	N	Front temperature	Max cool (- calibration value)	N	Front circulation	Position maintaining	Y, maintain manual operation	Front AC	OFF	Y, front A/C exits OFF	Front AUTO	-	Y, front A/C exits OFF	SYNC	-	N	Max defrost	-	Y, front A/C exits OFF	PM2.5	-	Y, front A/C exits OFF	
Name	Load Position	Can it be operated																															
Front blower	OFF	Y, A/C exits OFF before turning clockwise																															
Front mode	Maintain (- initialization is in foot mode)	N																															
Front temperature	Max cool (- calibration value)	N																															
Front circulation	Position maintaining	Y, maintain manual operation																															
Front AC	OFF	Y, front A/C exits OFF																															
Front AUTO	-	Y, front A/C exits OFF																															
SYNC	-	N																															
Max defrost	-	Y, front A/C exits OFF																															
PM2.5	-	Y, front A/C exits OFF																															

3	Exit OFF mode	<p>Front CLM is in OFF mode:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operate airflow volume + button, the system will be awakened and return to the previous non-defrosting state (- that is, if it was defrosting before OFF, it will return to the previous state before defrosting); operate airflow volume - button, the system will maintain the previous state. 2. Press the maximum defrosting button, the system will be awakened and enter the maximum defrosting mode, the set temperature will maintain the previous state before OFF. Press the maximum defrosting button again, CLM returns to automatic state. 3. Press front and rear AUTO buttons, front and rear systems will enter AUTO state, the set temperature will maintain the previous state before OFF. 4. Press Power button, the system will be awakened and return to the previous non-defrosting state (that is if it was defrosting before OFF, it will return to the previous state before defrosting). 5. Press AC button, the system will be awakened and AC indicator will come on, AC will enter manual control state, the rest will return to the previous non-defrosting state. 6. Other button signals do not exit OFF. <p>Rear CLM is in OFF mode:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Operate airflow volume button (+), the system will be awakened and return to the previous state before OFF; 2. Press Power button, the system will be awakened and return to the previous state before OFF; 3. Operate rear AUTO button, front and rear systems will enter AUTO state, the set temperature will maintain the previous state before OFF; 4. Operate rear AC button, front and rear systems will be awakened and front and rear AC indicators will come on, AC will enter manual control state, front seat will return to previous non-defrosting state. Except for the AC entering manual control, the rear returns to state before rear CLM shuts down. 	If equipped with rear A/C function
---	---------------	--	------------------------------------

■ KL15 - OFF Memory Function

CLM should be stored or store last setting of user before KL15 is turned off, and it can be returned when CLM can operate or operate again. Save or not save the display as shown below:

No.	Request	Function Description	
1	Last setting state for A/C	CLM should be stored or store last setting of user before KL15 is turned off, and it can be returned when CLM can operate or operate again. Save or not save the display as shown below:	
2		Temperature setting	Yes
3		Air adjustment	Yes
4		Inner/outer circulation	Yes
5		Blower	Yes
6		Seat heating	No
7		Rear defroster	No
8		A/C request	Yes
9		Dual-zone request	Yes
10		Maximum defrosting	Yes

No.	Request	Function Description	
11		Auto	Yes
12		OFF	Yes
13		PM2.5	No

■ Parking Brake Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Parking mode	Parking mode is divided into normal operating condition parking and cold operating condition parking: 1. When the stall time exceeds 11 minutes (- calibration amount), if the external temperature is lower than 5°C (calibration amount), it is cold operating condition parking, otherwise it is normal operating condition parking;	
2	Normal operating condition parking	Motor goes to the specified position: the data of mode damper (50%), heating and cooling damper (0% position), and circulation damper (100%) can be calibrated.	
3	Cold operating condition parking	Motor goes to the specified position: the data of mode damper (100%), heating and cooling damper (0%), and circulation damper (100%) can be calibrated.	

■ Anti-condensation Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Anti-condensation mark position	Determine that compressor solenoid valve current is greater than or equal to the minimum current for 60 minutes (calibration amount), IGN turns from ON to OFF for 10 minutes (calibration amount), and at this time, the vehicle lock signal is 1 and fortifying/deactivation signal is 0, blower is turned on to level 2 (calibration amount), lasting 30 seconds (calibration amount).	
2	Clearing anti-condensation mark	1. Immediately clear with IGN not OFF; 2. The time will be cleared after timing is more than 30 seconds (calibration amount).	Testing can not be concerned

■ Vehicle Pre-collision Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Collision signal	When received CAN bus feedback "STAT-vehicle collision" collision signal is valid, if the signal is lost, the previous value will be maintained;	
2	Compressor and blower OFF function when collision occurs	When received CAN bus feedback "STAT-VehicleCrashed" collision signal is valid, turn off front blower, rear blower, compressor and compressor requests to turn off.	Testing can not be concerned

■ Engine Start and Stop Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Enabling condition	The following conditions should be met at the same time: 1. IGN ON; 2. Non-transportation mode; 3. Non-collision state; 4. ESS function in the FD00 optional information is turned on; 5. Enabling switch is ON; 6. A/C is turned on.	
2.	Maximum defrosting request	When ESS starts automatically, if the maximum defrosting is enabled, send 0x1 to limit engine to stop; When ESS starts automatically, if the non-maximum defrosting is enabled, send 0x0 No action; When ESS stops automatically, if the maximum defrosting is enabled, send 0x2 request to engine start.	
3.	Maximum cooling request	When ESS starts automatically, if the maximum cooling is enabled, send 0x1 to limit engine to stop; When ESS starts automatically, if the non-maximum cooling is enabled, send 0x0 No action; When ESS stops automatically, if the maximum cooling is enabled, send 0x2 request to engine start	
4.	Maximum heating request	When ESS starts automatically, if the maximum heating is enabled, send 0x1 to limit engine stop; When ESS starts automatically, if the non-maximum heating is enabled, send 0x0 No action; When ESS stops automatically, if the maximum heating is enabled, send 0x2 request of engine start	
5.	Evaporator temperature request	In AC auto control, when evaporator temperature is higher than 18degC (calibrated, reference value) and compressor actually has a ON request, if ESS starts automatically (StartStopState=0x5 Operation), send 0x1 to limit engine stop; if ESS stops automatically (StartStopState= 0x2 Stopped), send 0x2 request of engine start	
6.	Comfort request	When ESS starts automatically, if the absolute value of temperature difference between inside vehicle temperature and actual setting temperature calculated by CTC does not exceed 2.5 degC (-calibrated), send 0x0 No action, otherwise send 0x1 to limit engine stop; When ESS stops automatically, if the absolute value of temperature difference between inside vehicle temperature and actual setting temperature calculated by CTC is higher than or equal to 2.5 degC (calibrated) and compressor requests to start, send 0x2 request of engine start.	
7.	External temperature request	When ESS starts automatically, if the external temperature is within the calibration range (meeting the upper and lower limits at the same time, such as 3 degC ~ 30 degC, 2 degC reference value,	

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
		calibrated), send 0x0 No action, otherwise send 0x1 to limit engine stop; When ESS stops automatically, if the external temperature is not within the aforementioned calibration range, send 0x2 request of engine start	
8.	Minimum ON time	If ESS starts automatically, if there is any of the above requests, CLM sends signal to limit engine stop. If ESS stops automatically, when it runs again, CLM sends a limit engine stop signal for at least 20 seconds (calibrated), and the time interval between auto stopped again is at least 20 seconds (calibrated)	
9.	Priority	Only when all the conditions are not met, finally send 0x0 No action, otherwise, according to the actual calculation result, send 0x1 inhibit motor stop or 0x2 request motor start.	

■ Voice Control Function

1. Each control signal function is the same as button function;2. The control signal AUTO OFF is a reserved item, and IHU will not send this signal;3. Voice - blower status is 0, turn off A/C;4. Adjust left temperature, and right and rear temperature change according to SYNC status5. The blowing mode, mode and indicator position change6. When the vehicle IGN is not in OFF, voice control function is effective.

■ PM2.5 Detection Control Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note										
1	Precondition	IGN OFF, detection is not performed.											
2	PM2.5 concentration collection	<p>Collect PM2.5 Sensor signal on ICD and convert it into PM2.5 concentration level. The relationship between duty ratio and ug/m3 is: 0.1%—1 ug/m3, and PMW from 0.3% to 80% can represent PM2. 5 concentration (3 ug/m3 to 800 ug/m3), and PWM accuracy is ± 1 ug/m3.</p> <table border="1"> <tr> <td>PM2.5 concentration percentage</td> <td>0.1~16-%</td> <td>17~26-%</td> <td>27~37-%</td> <td>38~84-%</td> </tr> <tr> <td>PM2.5 level</td> <td>1</td> <td>2</td> <td>3</td> <td>4</td> </tr> </table>	PM2.5 concentration percentage	0.1~16-%	17~26-%	27~37-%	38~84-%	PM2.5 level	1	2	3	4	
PM2.5 concentration percentage	0.1~16-%	17~26-%	27~37-%	38~84-%									
PM2.5 level	1	2	3	4									

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
3	Enabling PM2.5 detection	PM2.5 detection function is directly enabled after IGN ON. PM2.5 button signal is used to turn on PM2.5 purification related functions. Such as control of airflow volume and circulation mode. If PM2.5 sensor fails or the concentration exceeds the range, the collected PM2.5 concentration is 10% concentration percentage by default.	
4	PM2.5 control strategy	After PM2.5 function is turned on (pressing PM2.5 button), PM2.5 concentration controls circulation and airflow volume: 1. If PM2.5 concentration is greater than or equal to 15% (calibration amount), turn on the inner circulation and compensate airflow volume according to PM2.5 concentration; 2. The level is restored. When PM2.5 function is turned off or PM2.5 concentration is less than 15% (calibration amount), the limitation for circulation and airflow volume will exit.	

■ AQS Control Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Precondition	IGN OFF, detection is not performed.	
2.	Air quality collect	1. Collect AQS Sensor signal on ICD, and 5%-75% PWM duty ratio is effective. 2. The relationship between PWM and air quality level is divided into 6 levels: Fresh air level (5~15%), Level 1 (25%~34%), Level 2 (35%~44%), Level 3 (45%~54%), Level 4 (55%~64%), Level 5 (65%~74%). The concentration percentage between two levels keeps the last concentration level.	The installation location is outside the vehicle. Due to filtering time during the test, it is necessary to wait for about 30 seconds before performing the concentration level test. The default value of DBC is sent after the first powered-on.
3	Enabling AQS detection	With IGN ON, AQS starts to detect directly; If AQS sensor fails or the concentration exceeds the range, the collected AQS concentration is 10% concentration percentage by default.	
4	AQS automatically controls inner/outer circulation logic	In automatic circulation control state, when AQS concentration is high, inner circulation is forced to turn on, and when concentration drops to a low level, the forced inner circulation is exited (when automatic circulation control is outer circulation and inner circulation is forced to turn on by AQS, circulation indicator status does not change. Maintain the outer circulation).	

■ Battery Voltage Monitoring Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Voltage mode	A: 9 V - 16 V, all A/C related loads can operate normally. B: If the voltage is lower than 8.5 V or higher than 16.5 V, all outputs are turned off.	
2.	Can communication	CAN communication is not affected by voltage mode. If CAN hardware can operate, CAN communication is supported.	

■ Transportation Mode Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Limited transportation mode function	1. Turn off the solenoid valve load; 2. Front and rear airflow volume is limited to less than 50%. The other actuators function is normal and the communication is normal; 3. Perform a judgment according to the corresponding signal state of BCM.	

■ Load Limit Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Energy management level limits load output	CLM limits load output according to energy management level of bus (Load shed Level) Level 0: Normal, unlimited Level 1: The maximum outputs of front and rear blowers are 71%, and PTC can be turned on up to level 2 Level 2: The maximum outputs of front and rear blowers are 50%, and PTC can be turned on up to level 1 Level 3: The maximum outputs of front and rear blowers are 25%, and PTC is turned off	
2	CCU load state	With A/C ON, CLM keeps sending out activation signals.	

■ Remote Start Function

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Remote control condition	When IGN is ON, the STAT-remote signal is valid and STAT-remote control is in remote mode, A/C controller can enter the selected operation according to TGW-maximum defrosting request, TGWPM2.5 request, TGW-TempAdjust request 1, and then remote control St exits the remote mode and enter the normal mode. A/C controller still keeps running.	
2.	Remote control status	1. After receiving Remote-REQ-Temp-Adjust, CLM enters a single zone, the temperature is the current remote setting temperature. 2. After receiving Remote-REQ-PM2.5, CLM turns on/off PM2.5 function 3. After receiving Remote-REQ_maximum defrosting, CLM enters the maximum defrosting	

■ Self-diagnostic Function of A/C Panel

- (1) Enter the self-diagnostic button definition: Press AC + inner/outer circulation buttons simultaneously for more than 5 seconds;
- (2) The module enters diagnostic program, A/C system automatically runs each actuator and sends fault information to panel display. If there are multiple faults, each fault detected will send a DTC to the panel, the panel will store it and display all DTCs after receiving them. It will exit self-diagnostic state after displaying for 5 seconds and return to the state before entering self-diagnostic. Perform the self-test function after the self-diagnostic is completed.

Note: For A/C panel equipped with segment screen, the diagnostic display information is completed by DVD.

No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1.	Function triggering	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Receive bus REQ-SelfDiag-FrontCLM self-diagnostic request valid signal. During self-diagnostic, it receives the self-diagnostic request signal again and does not respond. 2. When pressing combination button on front panel, a single button is effective and the corresponding function can be performed normally. Normal performing refers to the state after a single button has effectively performed the corresponding function. 	
2.	Function procedure	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Panel enters self-test procedure, and the message "SelfDiagFlag-FrontCLM= Active" sends historical DTC information via CAN communication (S SelfDiagInfoLeft-FrontCLM, SelfDiagInfoRight-FrontCLM). 2. If there is no fault, the left and right DTCs will sent 00, and the self-test mode will be automatically exited after 1 second; if there are multiple group of DTCs, they will be sent in order, switching once every 2 seconds, and self-test mode will be automatically exited after sending. The message is SelfDiagFlag-FrontCLM-Not active. 3. It does not respond A/C function during self-test procedure. 	
3.	Function exiting	During self-test procedure, self-test can be exited immediately upon when pressing on-off button, IGN OFF or CLM power-off, and self-test will not exit after receiving other buttons and knob operations. Indicator status, blower airflow volume, temperature damper, mode damper, inner and outer circulation and AC enter the normal state after exiting the self-test.	Function is not memorized

When detecting the fault content and the corresponding screen display content, the corresponding function is optional and not supported, the corresponding DTC will not be generated:

Components	Self-diagnostic Left	Self-diagnostic Right	Problem
Left solar sensor	1	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Right solar sensor	2	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Micro light sensor	3	1	Short to ground

Components	Self-diagnostic Left	Self-diagnostic Right	Problem
		2	Short to power supply or open
NATS internal temperature sensor	4	1	Problem
Evaporator	5	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Left foot air outlet temperature sensor	6	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Right foot air outlet temperature sensor	7	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Left face air outlet temperature sensor	8	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Right face air outlet temperature sensor	9	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
PM2.5 sensor	10	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
PM2.5 sensor enabling	11	1	Short to power supply
		2	Short to ground or open
AQS sensor	12	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Mode motor drive	13	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply
		3	Open circuit
		4	Blocking
		5	FB feedback short to power supply
		6	FB feedback short to ground or open
Left temperature motor drive	14	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply
		3	Open circuit
		4	Blocking
		5	FB feedback short to power supply
		6	FB feedback short to ground or open
Right temperature motor drive	15	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply

Components	Self-diagnostic Left	Self-diagnostic Right	Problem
		3	Open circuit
		4	Blocking
		5	FB feedback short to power supply
		6	FB feedback short to ground or open
Circulation motor drive	16	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply
		3	Open circuit
		4	Blocking
		5	FB feedback short to power supply
		6	FB feedback short to ground or open
Blower control	17	1	Negative end short to ground
		2	Adjustment error
Blower relay control	18	1	Open or short to ground
		2	Short to power supply
Sensor 12 V power supply	19	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply
Outer control valve	20	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
PTC1 (reserved)	21	1	Short to ground or open
		2	Short to power supply
PTC2 (reserved)	22	1	Short to ground or open
		2	Short to power supply
PTC3 (reserved)	23	1	Short to ground or open
		2	Short to power supply
Ambient temperature sensor	24	1	Short to ground
		2	Short to power supply or open
Battery Voltage	25	1	Power supply voltage is lower than 8.5 V or higher than 16.5 V (B mode)
Humidity sensor (FD00 is optional, NO by default)	26	1	Humidity sensor failure
CAN	27	1	Problem
Control module lost	28	1	Control module signal lost
Rear panel invalid	29	1	Rear panel invalid

Components	Self-diagnostic Left	Self-diagnostic Right	Problem
Front panel lost	30	1	Front panel lost
PEPS lost	31	1	PEPS node lost

■ Wiper Correlation

This function is enabled by calibration amount; When turning on automatic defogging function, in automatic mode, when wiper detection (corresponding signal FrontWiperSwitch = 2 or 3 is turned on) signal is continuously turned on for 1 minutes (recognizing rain conditions), AC needs to increase compression displacement in Auto control (the target evaporator temperature is the calibrated value at this time), the mode is window; it is not processed under non-rainy conditions; Note: (The function is calibrated function. When the calibration amount is enabled, the function is valid. The function has been installed at present).

■ Cold Start and Purification

1	Cold start	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. With IGN ON, if the external temperature is lower than 13° C (calibration amount), the water temperature is lower than 5742° C (calibration amount) and A/C is turned on, the cold start mark is set (the test is not concerned); 2. During the cold start triggers, the water temperature is no less than 45 to 60° C or the external temperature is higher than 15° C, cold start exits; 3. The external temperature is obtained from the sensor original value ExternalTemperatureRaw-C. When the external temperature is invalid, the external temperature conditions are met by default; 4. After the cold start conditions is met, when engine water temperature is lower than 30° C, the maximum limited airflow volume is level 1 (25%); when it is higher than 30° C, the maximum limited airflow volume is level 3 (35%), and the temperature damper is at full heating position (100%), the model damper blows window (100%); 5. In the cold start state, the rear airflow volume is limited to 0 in the automatic state until the engine water temperature rises to 55° C or higher; during this period, the rear airflow volume is displayed as level 1. 	
2	Purification	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. After power-on (KL30) or waking up from sleep, if compressor requests to turn on when IGN is ON and evaporator temperature is higher than 30° C (calibration amount), the purification mark is set and maintained for 6 seconds (calibration amount); 2. It is judged only once when the power-on or waking up from sleep. If the condition is not met, no judgment will be made. If the condition is met, the purification mark will be cleared after 6 seconds (calibration amount); 3. When evaporator temperature is invalid, the default is that evaporator temperature conditions are met; 4. After the purification conditions are met, limited airflow volume is level 1 (25%), the temperature damper is in the fully cold position (0%), and the mode damper blows the window (100%). 	

3.2 System Components Description

Dual-zone solar sensor

Solar sensor is installed on instrument panel and used to detect light intensity in the area where the vehicle is located and control the automatic mode of air conditioning. The sensor is a photoresistor (including left solar sensor and right solar sensor), which is connected to the sensor power supply via a 4.7K pull-up resistor to calculate the solar intensity.



Name	Description	Note
Operating voltage range	0.07 ~ 2.19 V	
Measurement range	80 ~ 2000 W	
Accuracy	1 W	
Fault diagnosis	Short to power supply/open: Collecting voltage is 4.9 V	
Invalid default	0W/m2	

Air duct temperature sensor

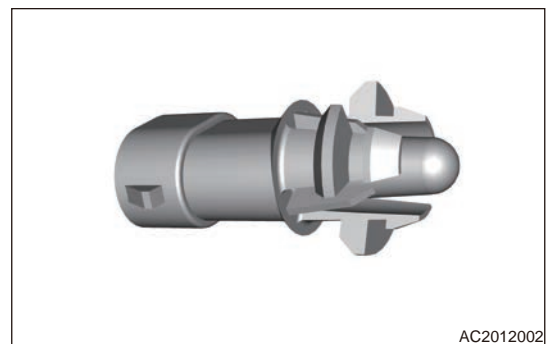
The sensor is NTC resistance (including right face air outlet temperature sensor, left face air outlet temperature sensor, right foot air outlet temperature sensor, left foot air outlet temperature sensor, ambient temperature sensor and evaporator sensor), which is connected to the sensor power supply via the pull-up resistor. Different temperatures will result in different resistance values. Different voltage values are generated by NTC resistor and pull-up resistor at the sensor terminal and input it to MCU to calculate the temperature.



No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Left and right face and foot air outlet temperature collecting (air duct temperature sensor)	Collect the local air duct sensor signal and convert it into a temperature signal via RT meter.	
2	Air duct temperature signal abnormal handling	22°C	

Outside temperature sensor

Outside temperature sensor is installed at lower left of front impact beam and used to detect the outside temperature and control the automatic mode of air conditioning. The sensor sends signal to automatic A/C module. The resistance of outside temperature sensor changes with the change of ambient temperature. Resistance increases as temperature decreases. Resistance decreases as temperature increases.



No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	Outside temperature collecting	Obtain the bus temperature value according to RT table, and obtain the actual outside temperature after updating bus outside temperature value (filtered value of outside temperature)	
2	Outside temperature signal abnormal handling	(1) When PowerMode is OFF, the outside temperature maintains the previous value; (2) When the outside temperature diagnosis status is not valid, the outside temperature maintains the previous value. When the outside temperature diagnosis status is valid, the software outside temperature continues to update normally at a maximum of 2°C every 5 seconds.	
3	Read outside temperature value	The ambient temperature signal is the collected value of outside temperature The ambient temperature signal is the filtered value of outside temperature	The maximum outside temperature is $86 \pm 1^\circ\text{C}$
4	Initial value of outside temperature	When power-on or waking up for the first time, if the power mode is not in OFF and the outside temperature is valid, the software outside temperature is immediately updated according to bus outside temperature resistance value; otherwise, the outside temperature filtered value uses the default value of 22°C , after the power mode is not in OFF and the outside temperature is valid, it will be updated to the current outside temperature filtered value immediately according to the outside temperature resistance value.	
5	The format of outside temperature diagnostic signal is ambient temperature diagnostic		
5	Signal sending	When power-on for the first time, the outside temperature will first send the initial value of 1 second (86°C), then send a frame of default value (22°C), and then update to the current sensor temperature; after waking up from sleep, the outside temperature will first send the initial value of 1 second (86°C), then update to the current sensor temperature.	

Evaporator temperature sensor

Name	Description	Note
Component property	Thermistor	
Quantity	One	
Operating voltage range	1 ~ 4 V	
Measurement range	$-20 \sim 75^\circ\text{C}$	
Nominal resistance	$R_{0^\circ\text{C}} = 6.194 \text{ K}\Omega \pm 1\%$	
Accuracy	0.1°C	

Error	± 1°C	
Fault diagnosis	Short to power supply/open: Collecting voltage is 4.9 V; Short to ground: Collecting voltage is lower than 0.1 V	
Invalid default	-1°C	

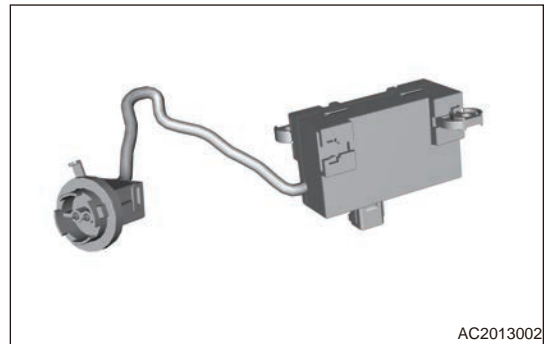
No.	Function	Function Description
1	Evaporator temperature signal collecting	Collect the local evaporator signal and convert it into a temperature signal via RT meter
2	Invalid default	-2°C

Anion generator

Anion generator is installed on air duct on left side of instrument panel. The anion generator boosts the low voltage into positive high voltage and negative high voltage by booster circuit, and ionizes the air under the action of positive high voltage electric field and negative high voltage electric field to generate a large number of positive and negative ions.

Hint:

The connector of negative ion generator must be disconnected when cleaning the air conditioning line after sale to avoid fire.



AQS sensor

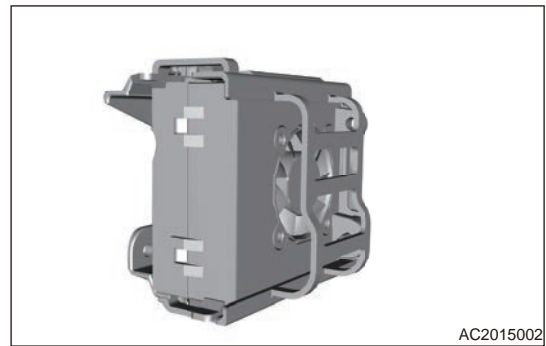
For OC output type, AQS PWM signal is connected to VPP-sleep power supply via a pull-up resistor. After transistor arrives at MCU capture port, the signal is transmitted in the opposite direction. MCU judges the air quality by duty ratio of signal.



No.	Function	Function Description	Note
1	PM2.5 air quality sensor signal collecting	Collect the corresponding duty ratio of local input and convert it into the corresponding S sensor value.	

PM2.5 sensor

PM2.5 sensor is also called dust sensor or dust sensor, which can be used to detect the concentration of dust in the air around people, that is, the value of PM2.5. Develop based on the principle of light scattering, particles and molecules will scatter light under the irradiation of light, and at the same time, they also absorb part of the irradiated light energy. When a beam of parallel monochromatic light is incident on the particle field under test, it will be affected by the scattering and absorption around the particle, and the light intensity will be attenuated. In this way, the relative attenuation rate of incident light passing through the concentration field to be measured can be obtained. The relative attenuation rate can basically linearly reflect the relative concentration of dust in the field to be measured. The intensity of light is proportional to the intensity of the electrical signal converted by photoelectricity. The relative attenuation rate can be obtained by measuring the electrical signal, and then the concentration of dust in the field to be measured can be determined.



AC2015002

Name	Description	Note
Component property	Laser type, equipped with fan	
Quantity	One	
Operating voltage range	9 ~ 16 V	
Operating current	< 150 mA	
Frequency	1 Hz	
Measurement range	Max: 1~999 μ g/m ³ converted to Pwm recognition Low pulse time/detection period*1000 = dust concentration (μ g/m ³)	
Resolution	1 μ g/m ³	
Fault diagnosis	Short to ground (0%) Short to power supply or open (100%)	Pwm of component and Pwm sampled by MCU are inverse
Invalid default	0 μ g/m ³ d	

4 Specifications

4.1 Torque Specifications

Part No.	Name	Torque (N·m)
FQ18408110TF36	Hexagon Flange Bolt	23 ± 4
Q1840616F31	Hexagon Head Bolt Flat Washer Set	9 ± 1
Q32406F38	Hexagon Flange Nut	9 ± 1
FQ218D0540T1F61	Inner Hexagon Bolt	5 ± 1
Q1840825TF6	Hexagon Flange Bolt	23 ± 2

Part No.	Name	Torque (N·m)
Q140B0625F36	Hexagon Flange Bolt	9 ± 1
AQ1400820TF2	Hexagon Flange Bolt	10 ± 1

4.2 Fluid Specifications

Name	Type	Charging Capacity
Refrigerant	R134a	650 ± 20g
Refrigerant Oil	PAG56	75ml

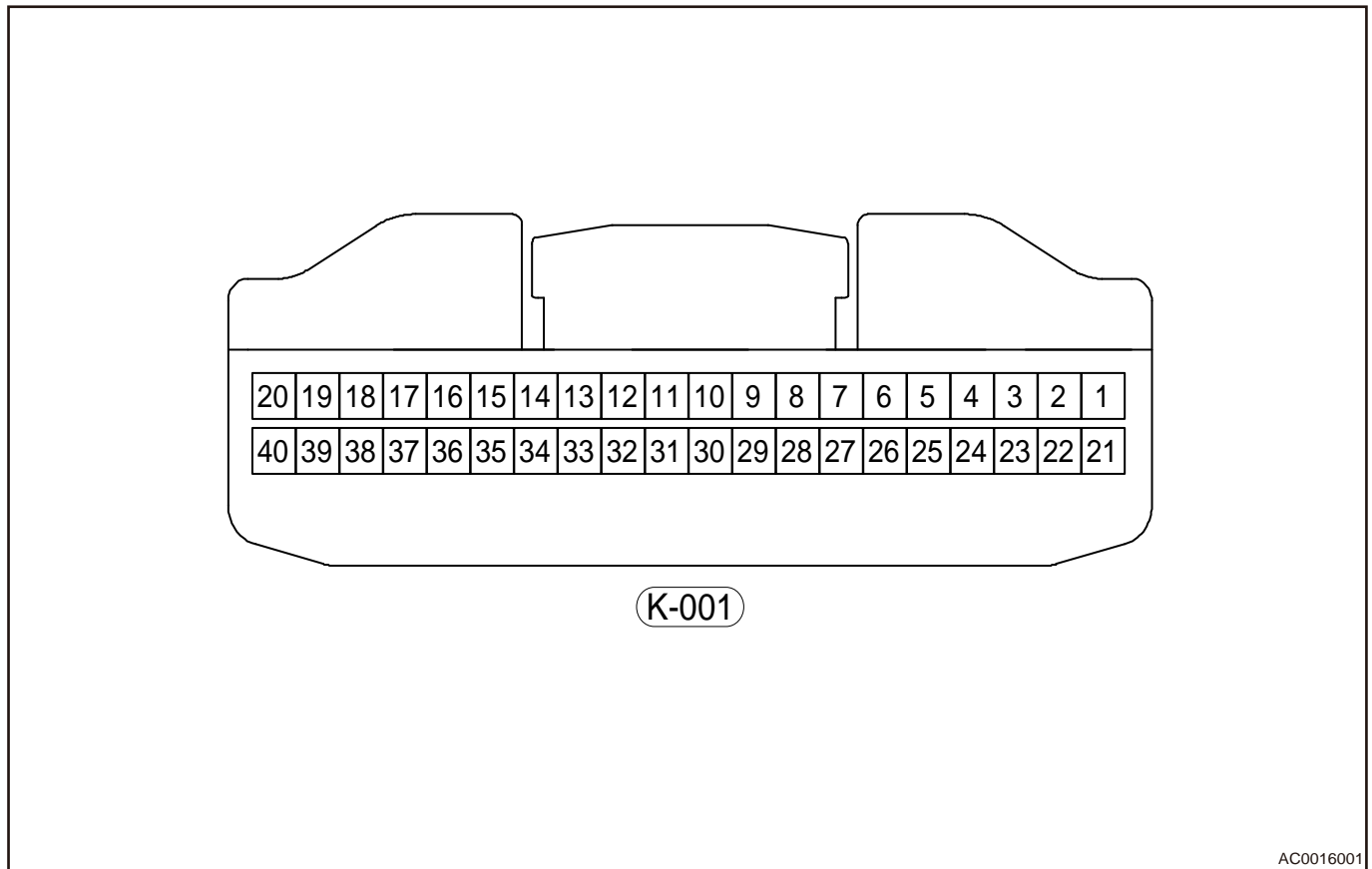
Hint:

- Newly installed air conditioning system refrigeration oil does not need to be refilled. Refill when repairing a part or after driving a certain distance.
- The reference quantity of oil to be added when replacing parts: Evaporator, condenser: 10ml each; Line: 5ml/piece, Compressor: Pour out all the oil inside newly replaced compressor, add oil according to the replaced actual oil amount in the compressor (required to turn the compressor pulley in the manual suction state to pour out as much lubricating oil as possible).

5 System Circuit Diagram

5.1 Module Terminal Definition

Automatic A/C Module (CLM) - A

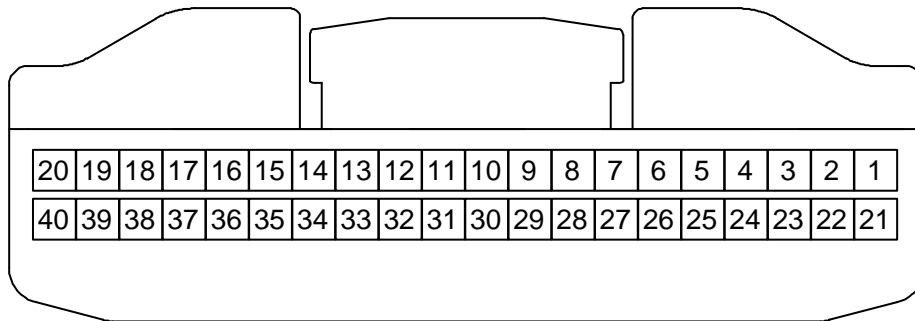


Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
1	Body ground	CAN-L	Power supply "ON"	2.4 V
2	Body ground	Circulation damper motor drive +	Power supply "ACC"	Constant voltage is 11 V; when inner circulation turns to outer circulation, voltage becomes 0 V and then rises to 11 V
3	Body ground	Mode damper motor drive -	Power supply "ON"	Voltage is 11 V when not operating; Voltage is 0 V when operating
4	Body ground	Right temperature damper motor drive +	Power supply "ON"	Constant voltage is 11 V; when right temperature is adjusted to "LO" position, voltage becomes 0 V and then rises to 11 V
5	Body ground	Mode damper motor drive +	Power supply "ON"	11 V
6	Body ground	Left temperature damper motor drive -	Power supply "ON"	Constant voltage is 11 V; when left temperature is adjusted to "LO" position, voltage becomes 0 V and then rises to 11 V
7	Body ground	Left temperature damper motor drive +	Power supply "ON"	Voltage is 11 V when A/C switch is not turned on, after A/C switch is turned on, instantaneous voltage is 0 V and then to 11 V
8	Body ground	Right temperature damper motor drive -	Power supply "ON"	Constant voltage is 11 V; when right temperature is adjusted to other position from "LO" position, voltage becomes 0 V and then rises to 11 V
9	Body ground	Circulation damper motor drive -	Power supply "ON"	Constant voltage is 11 V; when outer circulation turns to inner circulation, voltage becomes 0 V and then rises to 11 V

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
10	/	/	/	/
11	Body ground	IGN	Power supply "ON"	12 V
12	Body ground	Damper motor position sensor total power supply	Power supply "ON"	5 V
13	Body ground	Circulation damper motor position information feedback	Power supply "ON"	Voltage is 1.5 V and turns to 3.5 V when inner circulation is turned on
14	Body ground	Mode damper motor position information feedback	Power supply "ON"	Foot 2.5 V; Face 4 V; Front defrosting 1 V; Face and foot 3.3 V; Defrosting and foot 1.6 V.
15	Body ground	Left temperature damper motor position information feedback	Power supply "ON"	"LO" 3.5 V; Others 1.5 V
16	Body ground	Right temperature damper motor position information feedback	Power supply "ON"	"LO" 1.5V; Others 3.5V
17	Body ground	Ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
18	Body ground	Ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
19	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply "ON"	12 V
20	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply "ON"	12 V
21	Body ground	CAN_H	Power supply "ON"	2.7 V
22	/	/	/	/
23	/	/	/	/
24	Body ground	Evaporator temperature sensor	Power supply "ON"	8 °C 1.7 V
25	Body ground	Ambient temperature sensor	Power supply "ON"	8 °C 3.2 V
26	/	/	/	/
27	Body ground	PM2.5 Sensor Signal	Power supply "ON"	8 °C 0.4 V
28	/	/	/	/
29	/	/	/	/

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
30	/	/	/	/
31	/	/	/	/
32	Body ground	Blower positive terminal voltage feedback	Power supply "ON"	OFF: 0 V; ON: 12 V
33	/	/	/	/
34	Body ground	Blower speed control signal	Power supply "ON"	OFF: 8.9 V; level 1: 3.6 V; level 2: 4 V; level 3: 5 V; level 4: 6 V; level 5: 7.5 V; level 6: 9 V; level 7: 11 V; others 11.5 V. (Measured value in real vehicle) the voltage is 0 V with OFF, when it is in other levels, the voltage value is uncertain (it will fluctuate according to power supply voltage).
35	Body ground	Blower negative terminal voltage feedback	Power supply "ON"	OFF: 0 V
36	Body ground	Damper motor position sensor ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
37	Body ground	Temperature sensor ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
38	Body ground	PM2.5 AQS sensor power supply	Power supply "ON"	12 V
39	Body ground	Compressor solenoid valve drive +	Power supply "ON"	0 V
40	Body ground	Compressor solenoid valve drive -	Power supply "ON"	0 V

Automatic A/C Module (CLM) - B



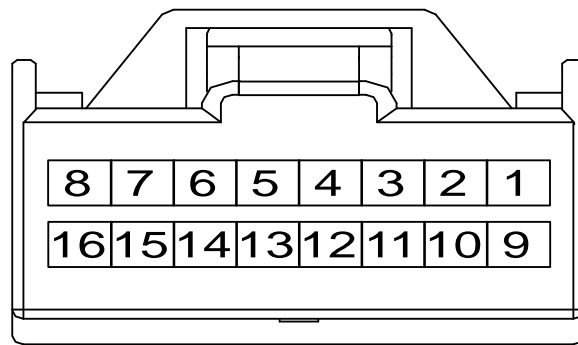
(K-002)

AC0017001

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter positive	Multimeter negative			
1	Body ground	PM2.5 sensor switch (enabling)	Power supply "ON"	0.2 V
2	Body ground	AQS sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	2.1 V
3	/	/	/	/
4	/	/	/	/
5	/	/	/	/
6	/	/	/	/
7	/	/	/	/
8	/	/	/	/
9	/	/	/	/
10	/	/	/	/
11	/	/	/	/
12	/	/	/	/
13	/	/	/	/
14	/	/	/	/
15	/	/	/	/

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter positive	Multimeter negative			
16	/	/	/	/
17	/	/	/	/
18	/	/	/	/
19	/	/	/	/
20	/	/	/	/
21	/	/	/	/
22	/	/	/	/
23	/	/	/	/
24	Body ground	Left face temperature sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	8°C: 3 V
25	Body ground	Right face temperature sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	8°C: 3 V
26	Body ground	Left foot temperature sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	8°C: 3 V
27	Body ground	Right foot temperature sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	8°C: 3 V
28	/	/	/	/
29	Body ground	Micro light sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	5 V
30	Body ground	Left solar sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	5 V
31	Body ground	Right solar sensor signal	Power supply "ON"	5 V
32	/	/	/	/
33	/	/	/	/
34	Body ground	Blower relay control signal	Power supply "ON"	OFF: 12 V; Blower ON: 0.2 V
35	/	/	/	/
36	/	/	/	/
37	/	/	/	/
38	/	/	/	/
39	/	/	/	/
40	/	/	/	/

■ Front Control Panel



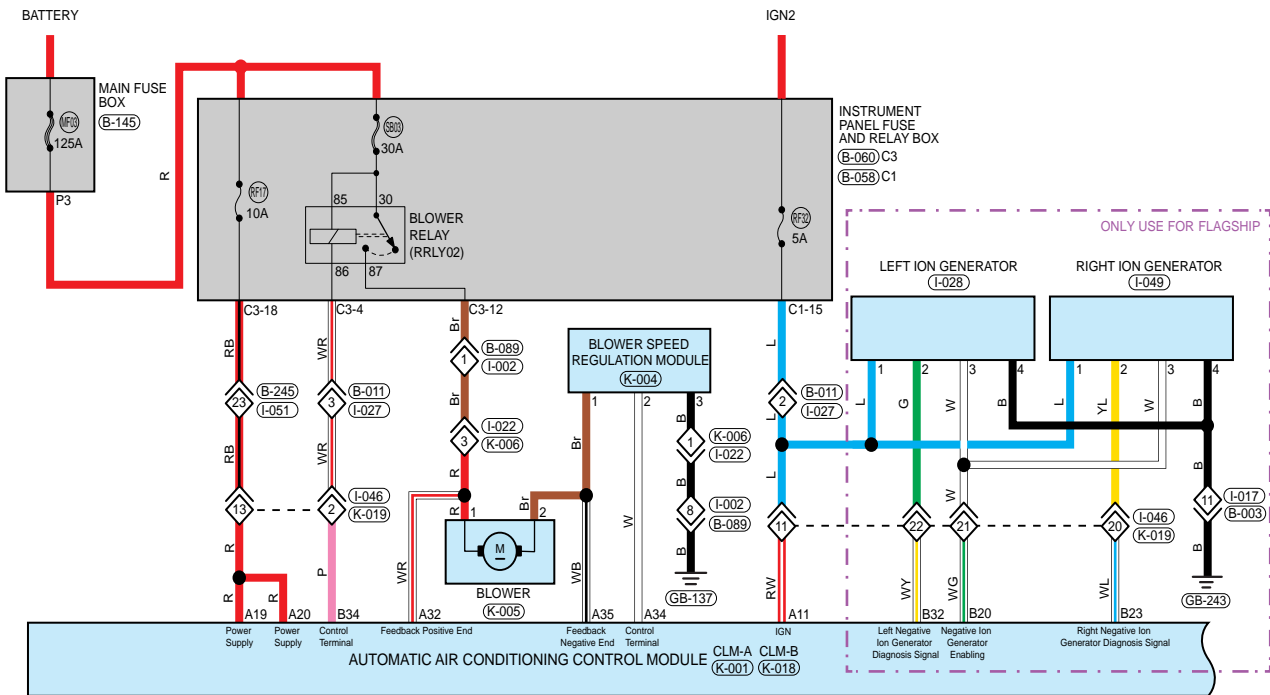
I-011

AC0018001

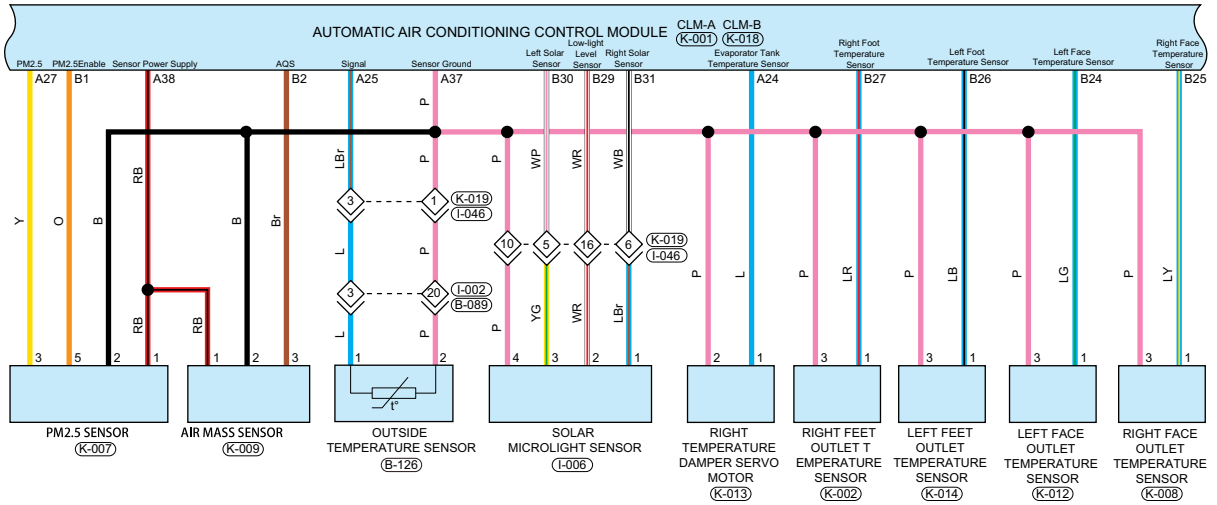
Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter positive	Multimeter negative			
1	\	\	\	\
2	\	\	\	\
3	\	\	\	\
4	Body ground	CAN-H	Power supply "ON"	2.6 V
5	Body ground	CAN-L	Power supply "ON"	2.4 V
6	\	\	\	\
7	Body ground	GND	Power supply "ON"	0 V
8	Body ground	\	Power supply "ON"	-
9	Body ground	\	Power supply "ON"	-
10	\	\	\	\
11	\	\	\	\
12	\	\	\	\
13	\	\	\	\
14	\	\	\	\

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter positive	Multimeter negative			
15	\	\	\	\
16	Body ground	BATTERY	Power supply "ON"	12 V

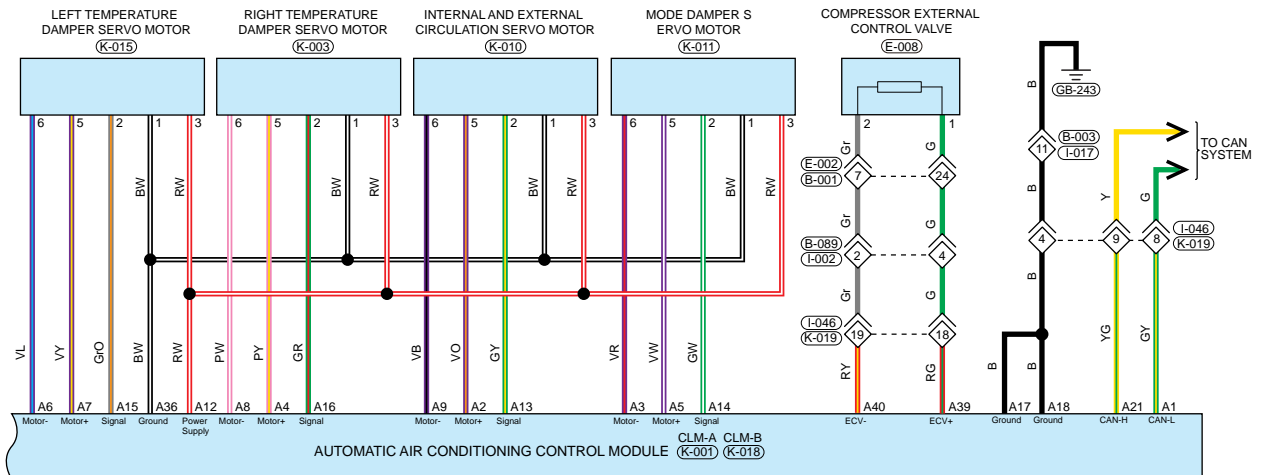
5.2 Circuit Diagram
Circuit diagram



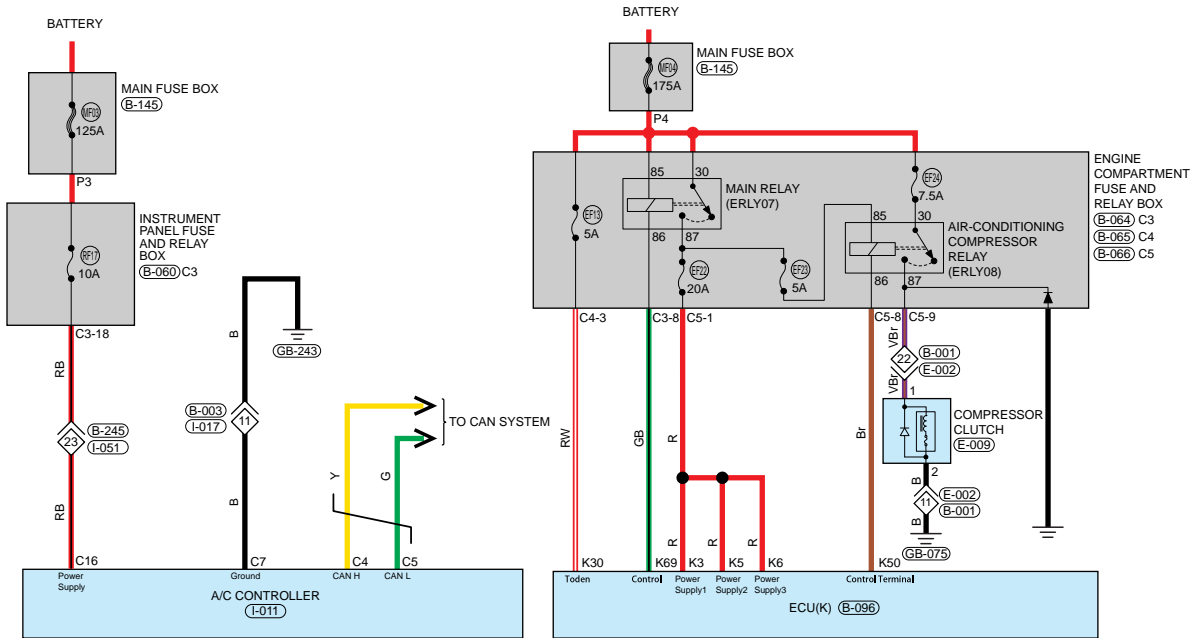
ACE019001



ACE020001



ACE021001



ACE022001

6 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

6.1 Problem Symptoms Table

<p>⚠ Caution</p> <p>Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.</p>	
Symptom	Possible Cause
A/C no heating	Blower fuse (damaged)
	Blower relay (damaged)
	Blower speed regulation switch (damaged)
	Blower motor (damaged)
	Mix damper control mechanism (stuck or damaged)
	Mix damper control knob (stuck or damaged)
	Heating pipe (blocked or damaged)
	Heater core assembly (blocked or damaged)
Wire harness or connector (open or short)	
A/C no cooling	Leak in system
	Refrigerant (overcharged)
	A/C pressure sensor (damaged)
	Evaporator temperature sensor (damaged)
	A/C switch (damaged)
Compressor assembly fuse (damaged)	

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Compressor assembly relay (damaged)
	Compressor assembly belt (loose)
	Compressor assembly (damaged)
	Condenser assembly (blocked or damaged)
	Expansion valve (blocked or frosted)
	Evaporator core assembly (blocked or damaged)
	Wire harness or connector (open or short)
A/C intermittent cooling	Moisture in system
	Refrigerant (overcharged)
A/C insufficient cooling	Leak in system
	Refrigerant (insufficient)
	Refrigerant (overcharged)
	Air in refrigerant
	Moisture in refrigerant
	Condenser (dirty or blocked)
	Expansion valve (dirty or blocked)
	Condenser core (dirty or blocked)
	A/C high/low pressure line (dirty or blocked)
	Blower speed regulation switch (damaged)
	Blower motor (damaged)
	Compressor assembly belt (loose)
Too much noise in system	Compressor assembly belt (slip)
	Compressor assembly clutch bearing (worn or excessive clearance)
	Compressor assembly solenoid coil (faulty or loose connector)
	Compressor assembly belt (over tightened)
	Compressor assembly mounting bolt (loose)
	Cooling fan blade (distorted)
	Refrigerant oil (insufficient)
During operation, pressure on low pressure side switches between normal and vacuum	Moisture in refrigerant (excessive)
Pressure is too low for low pressure side and high pressure side, cooling performance is insufficient	A/C system (leaked)
	Refrigerant (insufficient)

Symptom	Possible Cause
Pressures at low pressure side and high pressure side are low, frost exists on line from condenser to A/C unit	Condenser (dirty or blocked)
Vacuum occurs at low pressure side, and pressure at high pressure side is too low, frost exists on lines on both sides of condenser or expansion valve	Moisture in refrigerant (excessive)
	Expansion valve (dirty or blocked)
	A/C line (leaked)
	Condenser (dirty or blocked)
Pressure at low pressure side and pressure at high pressure side is too high	Expansion valve (faulty)
	Refrigerant oil (excessive)
Pressure at low pressure side is normal or slightly low, and pressure at high pressure side is too high	Condenser surface (dirty)
	Cooling fan (not operating)
	Refrigerant (overcharged)
	Air in refrigerant
	Engine (overheating)
Pressure at low pressure side is too high, and pressure at high pressure side is too low	Compressor assembly belt (slip)
	Compressor assembly (faulty)
Pressure at low pressure side is too low, and pressure at high pressure side is too high	A/C high pressure line (blocked)
	Expansion valve (faulty)

6.2 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the control system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Examine vehicle and check basic items
----------	--

Check system power supply voltage, and check that fuse, wire harness and connector are connected normally.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG Check and replace malfunctioning parts

OK

3	Using a diagnostic tester, read related DTC and data stream information.
----------	---

Result

Result	Go to
No DTC	A
DTC is output	B

A

Perform troubleshooting procedure without DTCs according to malfunction symptom

B

4

Troubleshoot according to DTCs troubleshooting procedure

Result

Result	Go to
Problem is not resolved	A
Problem is resolved	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

5

According to airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection and delivery, confirm that malfunction is resolved.

Result

Result	Go to
Delivery inspection is failed	A
Delivery inspection is qualified	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

6

Finished

6.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is normal before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

- Use diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in supplemental restraint system.
- Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select Read DTC.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction. Go to inspection procedure - Step 1.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

6.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

6.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

6.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B14E011	Left Solar Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if left solar sensor signal is short to ground; 2. Replace solar sensor.
B14E015	Left Solar Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if solar sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if left solar sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace solar sensor.
B14E111	Right Solar Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if right solar sensor signal is short to ground; 2. Replace solar sensor.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.		
B14E115	Right Solar Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if solar sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if right solar sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace solar sensor.
B14E211	Micro Light Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if micro light sensor signal is short to ground; 2. Replace solar sensor.
B14E215	Micro Light Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if solar sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if micro light sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace solar sensor.
B14E329	Internal Temperature Sensor Signal Invalid	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that inside temperature signal from AIPM has an invalid value.	Inside temperature sensor on AIPM is abnormal	1. Check if inside temperature sensor on AIPM is abnormal (open or short); 2. Replace AIPM.
B14E411	Evaporator Temperature Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if evaporator temperature sensor wire harness is short to ground; 2. Replace evaporator temperature sensor.
B14E415	Evaporator Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if evaporator temperature sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if evaporator temperature sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace evaporator temperature sensor.
B14E511	Left Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if left foot air outlet temperature sensor wire harness is short to ground; 2. Replace left foot air outlet temperature sensor.
B14E515	Left Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if left foot air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if left foot air outlet temperature sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace left foot

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
				air outlet temperature sensor.
B14E611	Right Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if right foot air outlet temperature sensor wire harness is short to ground; 2. Replace right foot air outlet temperature sensor.
B14E615	Right Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if right foot air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if right foot air outlet temperature sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace right foot air outlet temperature sensor.
B14E911	PM2.5 Sensor Short to Ground (Pulse Width Modulation = 0%)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. Meet PM2.5 sensor normal operating condition, turn on PM2.5 function after power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that PWM input of PM2.5 is 0% for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged, wire harness is short or PWM frequency is abnormal	1. Check if PM2.5 sensor signal circuit is short to ground; 2. Replace PM2.5 sensor.
B14E915	PM2.5 Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open (- Pulse Width Modulation = 0%)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. Meet PM2.5 sensor normal operating condition, turn on PM2.5 function after power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that PWM input of PM2.5 is 100% for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged, wire harness is short or PWM frequency is abnormal	1. Check if PM2.5 sensor wire harness or lead falls off; 2. Check if PM2.5 sensor signal circuit is short to power supply; 3. Replace PM2.5 sensor.
B14EA12	PM2.5 Enable Short To Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when CLM output is low level, it is detected that the feedback voltage exceeds 1.0 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged, wire harness is short or PWM frequency is abnormal	1. Check if PM2.5 enable signal is short to power supply; 2. Replace PM2.5 sensor.
B14EA14	PM2.5 Enable Short To Ground or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when CLM output is high level, it is detected that the feedback voltage is lower than 0.5 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged, wire harness is open, short or PWM frequency is abnormal	1. Check if PM2.5 sensor wire harness or lead falls off; 2. Check if PM2.5 enable signal circuit is short to ground; 3. Replace PM2.5 sensor.
B14EB11	Air Quality Sensor Short to Ground (Pulse Width Modulation = 0%)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that AQS input PWM signal is 0 for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged, wire harness is short or PWM frequency is abnormal	1. Check if AQS signal is short to ground; 2. Replace AQS sensor.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B14EB15	Air Quality Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open (Pulse Width Modulation = 100%)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that AQS input PWM signal is 100% for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged, wire harness is open, short or PWM frequency is abnormal	1. Check if AQS sensor wire harness or lead falls off; 2. Check if AQS sensor signal circuit is short to ground; 3. Replace AQS sensor.
B14EC10	Mode Motor Blocked (Except Calibration Procedure)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, the motor has no open fault. At this time, there is a demand for mode damper adjustment, but within continuous 2 seconds, motor feedback voltage change rate cannot reach 100 mV/100 ms.	Foreign matter will block motor, damage motor, and damage CLM drive circuit	1. Check if motor is blocked by foreign matter; 2. Replace mode damper motor; 3. Replace CLM.
B14EC11	Mode Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when mode motor drive output of CLM is high level, an overcurrent signal is detected for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if mode motor drive circuit is short to ground; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace mode motor.
B14EC12	Mode Motor Control Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when mode motor drive output of CLM is low level, an overcurrent signal is detected for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if mode motor drive circuit is short to power supply; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace mode motor.
B14EC13	Mode Motor Control Circuit Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when mode motor drive is available, drive current is too small for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, drive chip is damaged or drive circuit is open	1. Check if mode motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace mode motor.
B14ED12	Mode Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that mode motor feedback voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or motor is damaged	1. Check if mode motor feedback wire harness is short to power supply; 2. Replace mode motor; 3. Replace CLM.
B14ED14	Mode Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that mode motor feedback voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, short or motor is damaged	1. Check if mode motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if mode motor feedback wire harness is short to ground; 3. Replace mode motor; 4. Replace CLM.
B14EE10	Left Temperature Motor Blocked (- Except Calibration Procedure)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, the motor has no open fault. At this time, there is a demand for left temperature damper	Foreign matter will block motor, damage motor, and damage CLM drive circuit	1. Check if motor is blocked by foreign matter; 2. Replace left temperature damper motor; 3. Replace CLM.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		adjustment, but within continuous 2 seconds, motor feedback voltage change rate cannot reach 100 mV/100 ms.		
B14EE11	Left Temperature Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when left temperature motor drive output of CLM is high level, an overcurrent signal is detected for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if left temperature motor drive circuit is short to ground; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace left temperature motor.
B14EE12	Left Temperature Motor Control Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when left temperature motor drive output of CLM is low level, an overcurrent signal is detected for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if left temperature motor drive circuit is short to power supply; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace left temperature motor.
B14EE13	Left Temperature Motor Control Circuit Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when left temperature motor drive is available, drive current is too small for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, drive chip is damaged or drive circuit is open	1. Check if left temperature motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace left temperature motor.
B14EF12	Left Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that left temperature motor feedback voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or motor is damaged	1. Check if left temperature motor feedback wire harness is short to power supply; 2. Replace left temperature motor; 3. Replace CLM.
B14EF14	Left Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that left temperature motor feedback voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, short or motor is damaged	1. Check if left temperature motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if left temperature motor feedback wire harness is short to ground; 3. Replace left temperature motor; 4. Replace CLM.
B14F010	Right Temperature Motor Blocked (- Except Calibration Procedure)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, the motor has no open fault. At this time, there is a demand for right temperature damper adjustment, but within continuous 2 seconds, motor feedback voltage change rate cannot reach 100 mV/100 ms.	Foreign matter will block motor, damage motor, and damage CLM drive circuit	1. Check if motor is blocked by foreign matter; 2. Replace right temperature damper motor; 3. Replace CLM

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B14F011	Right Temperature Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when right temperature motor drive output of CLM is high level, an overcurrent signal is detected for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if right temperature motor drive circuit is short to ground; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace right temperature motor.
B14F012	Right Temperature Motor Control Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when right temperature motor drive output of CLM is low level, an overcurrent signal is detected for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if right temperature motor drive circuit is short to power supply; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace right temperature motor.
B14F013	Right Temperature Motor Control Circuit Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when right temperature motor drive is available, drive current is too small for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, drive chip is damaged or drive circuit is open	1. Check if right temperature motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace right temperature motor.
B14F112	Right Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that right temperature motor feedback voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or motor is damaged	1. Check if right temperature motor feedback wire harness is short to power supply; 2. Replace right temperature motor; 3. Replace CLM.
B14F114	Right Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that right temperature motor feedback voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, short or motor is damaged	1. Check if right temperature motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if right temperature motor feedback wire harness is short to ground; 3. Replace right temperature motor; 4. Replace CLM.
B14F210	Intake Motor Blocked (Except Calibration Procedure)	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, the motor has no open fault. At this time, there is a demand for circulation damper adjustment, but within continuous 2 seconds, motor feedback voltage change rate cannot reach 100 mV/100 ms.	Foreign matter will block motor, damage motor, and damage CLM drive circuit	1. Check if motor is blocked by foreign matter; 2. Replace circulation damper motor; 3. Replace CLM.
B14F211	Intake Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when circulation motor drive output of CLM is high level, an overcurrent signal is	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if circulation motor drive circuit is short to ground; 2. Replace CLM.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		detected for more than 2 seconds.		
B14F212	Intake Motor Control Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when circulation motor drive output of CLM is low level, an overcurrent signal is detected for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or drive chip is damaged	1. Check if circulation motor drive circuit is short to power supply; 2. Replace CLM.
B14F213	Intake Motor Control Circuit Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, and when circulation motor drive is available, drive current is too small for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, drive chip is damaged or drive circuit is open	1. Check if circulation motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Replace CLM.
B14F312	Intake Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that circulation motor feedback voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or motor is damaged	1. Check if circulation motor feedback wire harness is short to power supply; 2. Replace circulation motor; 3. Replace CLM.
B14F314	Intake Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that circulation motor feedback voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is open, short or motor is damaged	1. Check if circulation motor wire harness connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if circulation motor feedback wire harness is short to ground; 3. Replace circulation motor; 4. Replace CLM.
B14F412	Blower Relay Output Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, relay control output is low level, but it is detected that feedback voltage is high level for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or relay is short	1. Check if relay control circuit wire harness is short to power supply; 2. Replace blower relay.
B14F414	Blower Relay Output Short to Ground or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, relay control output is high level, but it is detected that feedback voltage is high level or has open fault for more than 2 seconds.	Relay fuse is damaged, wire harness is open, short, relay is damaged	1. Check if relay fuse is damaged; 2. Check if relay control circuit wire harness is open or short to ground; 3. Replace blower relay.
B14F529	Blower Signal Invalid Control Failed	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, blower is turned on, feedback voltage is higher than 2 V, but it cannot change with gear change for more than 2 seconds.	Wire harness is short or speed regulation module is damaged	1. Check if blower control signal is short; 2. Check if blower negative terminal circuit is short; 3. Replace blower speed regulation module
B14F531	Blower Control Failed	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for	Wire harness is short or speed	1. Check if blower control signal is short; 2. Check if

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		3 seconds, when blower is in the range of 1 to 5, blower negative terminal feedback voltage is lower than 2 V	regulation module is damaged	blower negative terminal circuit is short; 3. Replace blower speed regulation module
B14F611	Sensor PM2.5, AQS + 12 V Output Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, turn on 12 V power supply output, IS pin feedback voltage of 5180 chip is higher than 4.9 V	Wire harness is short, sensor is short, and 5180 chip of CLM is damaged	1. Check if 12 V sensor supply circuit is short to ground; 2. Check if AQS and PM2.5 is short; 3. Replace CLM
B14F612	Sensor PM2.5, AQS + 12 V Output Short to Power Supply	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, turn off 12 V power supply output, IS pin feedback voltage of 5180 chip is higher than 4.9 V	Wire harness is short, 5180 chip of CLM is damaged	1. Check if 12 V sensor supply circuit is a short to power supply; 2. Replace CLM
B14F711	ECV Control Circuit Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, turn on external control valve and it is detected that IS pin feedback voltage of 5180 chip is higher than 4.9 V (- short or over current)	Wire harness is short, 5180 chip of CLM is damaged	1. Check if positive drive wire harness of external control valve is short to ground; 2. Replace CLM;
B14F715	ECV Control Circuit Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, turn on external control valve and it is detected that IS pin feedback voltage of 5180 chip is higher than 4.9 V (- short or over current). Turn on external control valve, it is detected that the IS pin feedback voltage of 5180 chip is lower than 0.1 V (open)	Wire harness is short, 5180 chip of CLM is damaged	1. Check if external control valve wire harness connector or lead falls off, check external control valve wire harness from CLM to HVAC for continuity; 2. Replace CLM; 3. Replace compressor external control valve.
B14FB11	External Temperature Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if ambient temperature sensor wire harness is short to ground; 2. Replace ambient temperature sensor.
B14FB15	External Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if ambient temperature sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if ambient temperature sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace ambient temperature sensor
B14FC1C	Abnormal Power Supply Voltage	Network is waked up, IG is powered on, CLM can operate, it is detected that	Battery or alternator malfunction	1. Check if battery is normal; 2. Check if alternator is normal.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		battery voltage is 8.5 V or higher than 16.5 V		
B14E711	Left Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if left face air outlet temperature sensor wire harness is short to ground; 2. Replace left face air outlet temperature sensor.
B14E715	Left Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if left face air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if left face air outlet temperature sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace left face air outlet temperature sensor.
B14E811	Right Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is lower than 0.1 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if right face air outlet temperature sensor wire harness is short to ground; 2. Replace right face air outlet temperature sensor.
B14E815	Right Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open	Meet CLM normal operating condition. After power-on for 3 seconds, it is detected that the signal input voltage is higher than 4.9 V for more than 2 seconds.	Sensor is not connected, sensor is damaged or wire harness is short	1. Check if right face air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off; 2. Check if right face air outlet temperature sensor signal is short to power supply; 3. Replace right face air outlet temperature sensor.
B14FD10	Humidity Sensor Failure	Received humidity value signal from BCM node is error	Received humidity value from BCM node is invalid; Received humidity value from BCM node is lost;	1. Check that received humidity signal value from BCM is valid; 2. Check if BCM node loses the signal.

6.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ **Inside Temperature Sensor Fault**

DTC	B14E329	Internal Temperature Sensor Signal Invalid
-----	---------	--

■ **Description**

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check AIPM
----------	-------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Remove AIPM from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (c) Install a new AIPM to malfunctioning vehicle.

OK

Replace AIPM with a new one.

NG

2	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

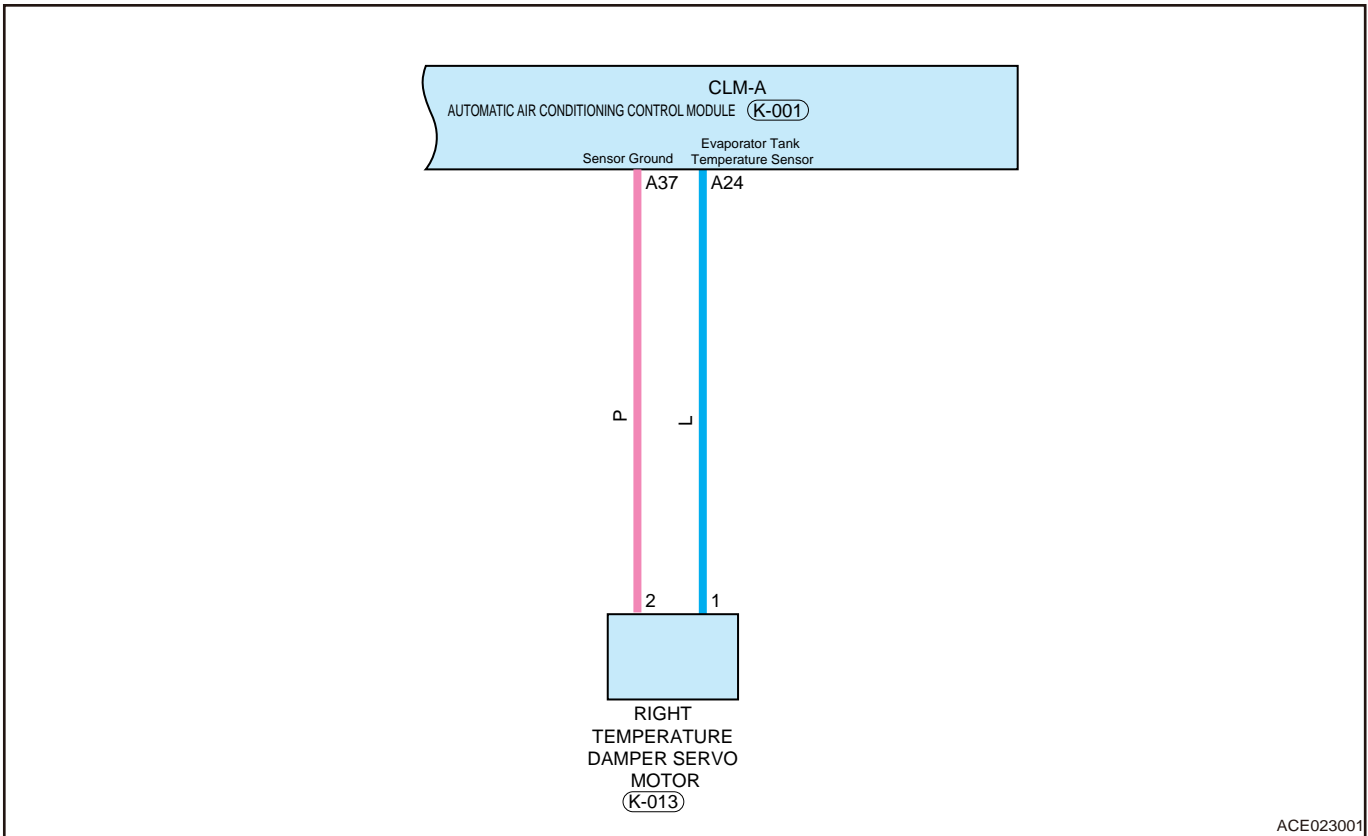
OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.
--

DTC	B14E411	Evaporator Temperature Sensor Short to Ground
------------	----------------	--

■ **Description**

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

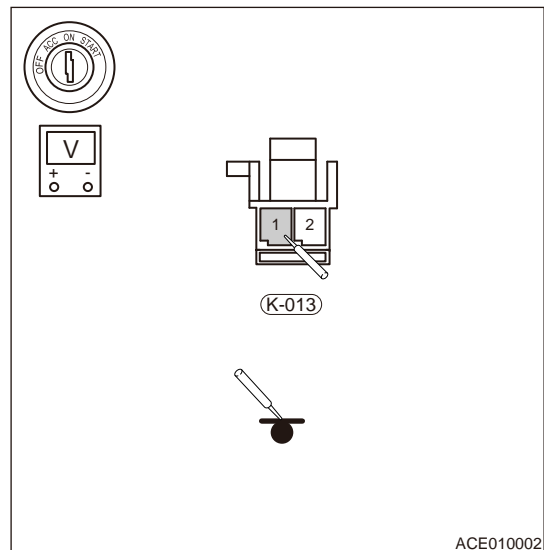
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check the evaporator temperature sensor signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of evaporator temperature sensor signal K-013 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



NG

Check if evaporator temperature sensor wire harness or replace evaporator temperature sensor.

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

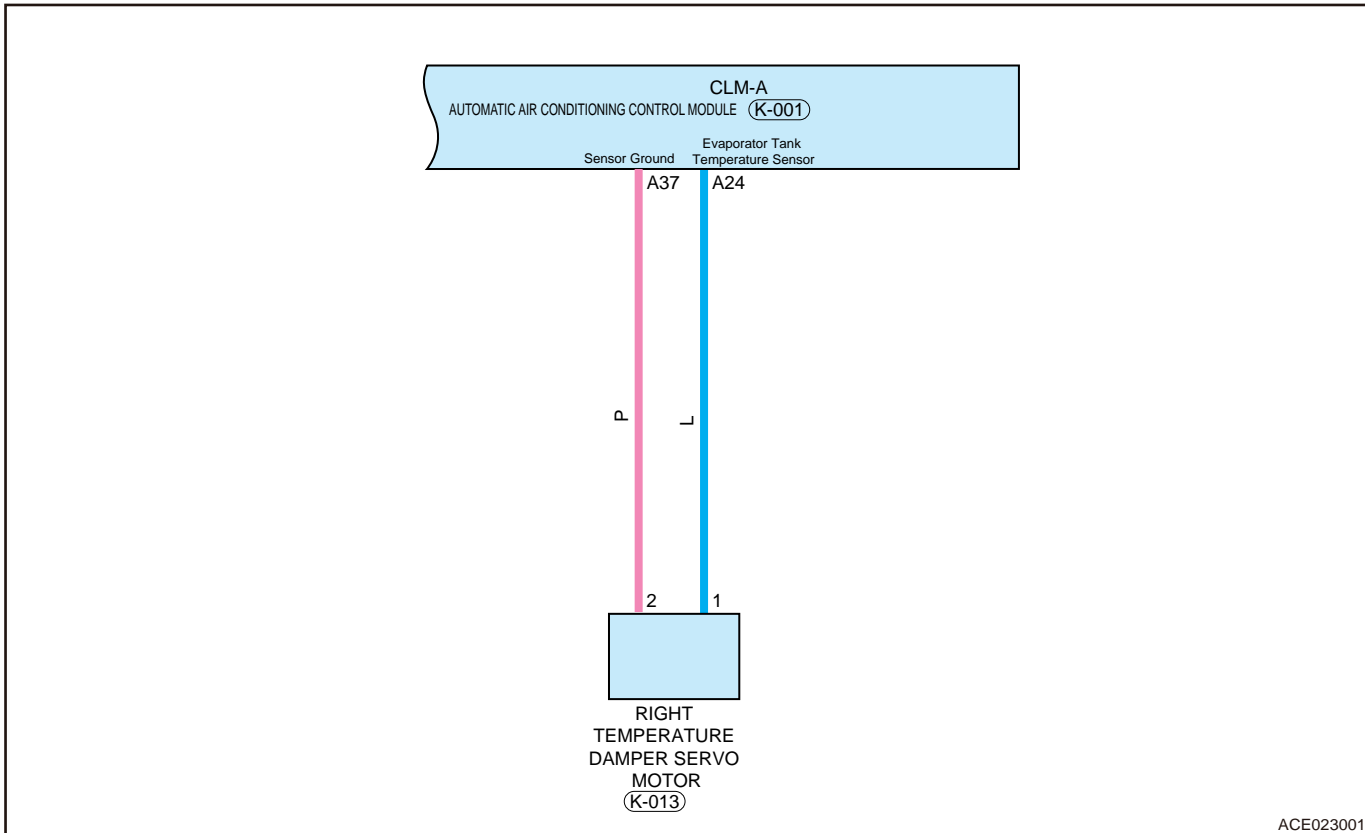
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Evaporator Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply Malfunction

DTC	B14E415	Evaporator Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open
-----	---------	---

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



ACE023001

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).

- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness connector

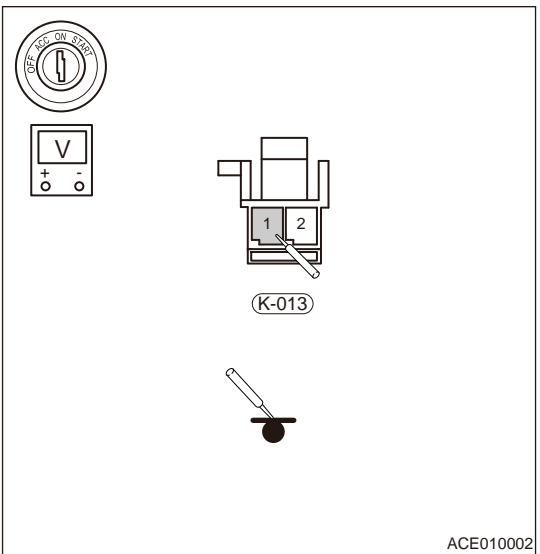
- (a) Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (c) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check the evaporator temperature sensor signal voltage

- (a) Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:
 - (i) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
 - (ii) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of evaporator temperature sensor signal K-013 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



NG Check if evaporator temperature sensor wire harness or replace evaporator temperature sensor.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

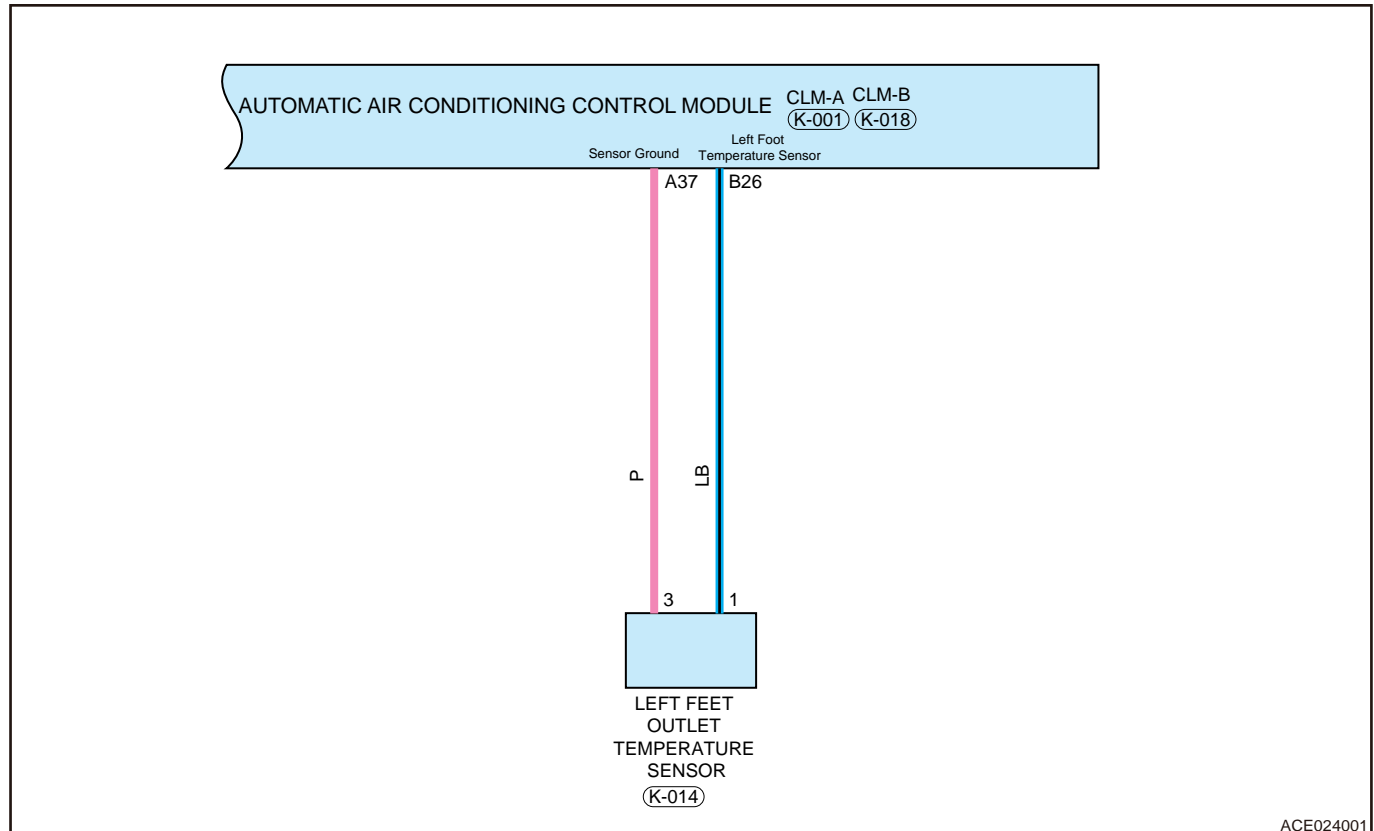
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Left Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground Malfunction

DTC	B14E511	Left Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground
-----	---------	---

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

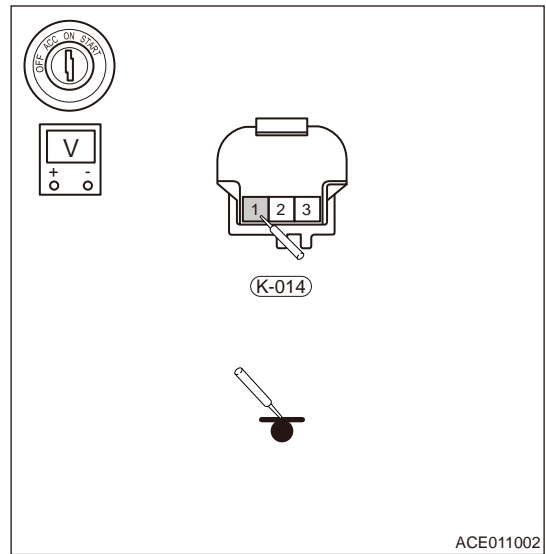
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check left foot air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage
---	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of left foot air outlet temperature sensor signal K-014 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



NG Check if left foot air outlet temperature sensor wire harness or replace left foot air outlet temperature sensor.

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

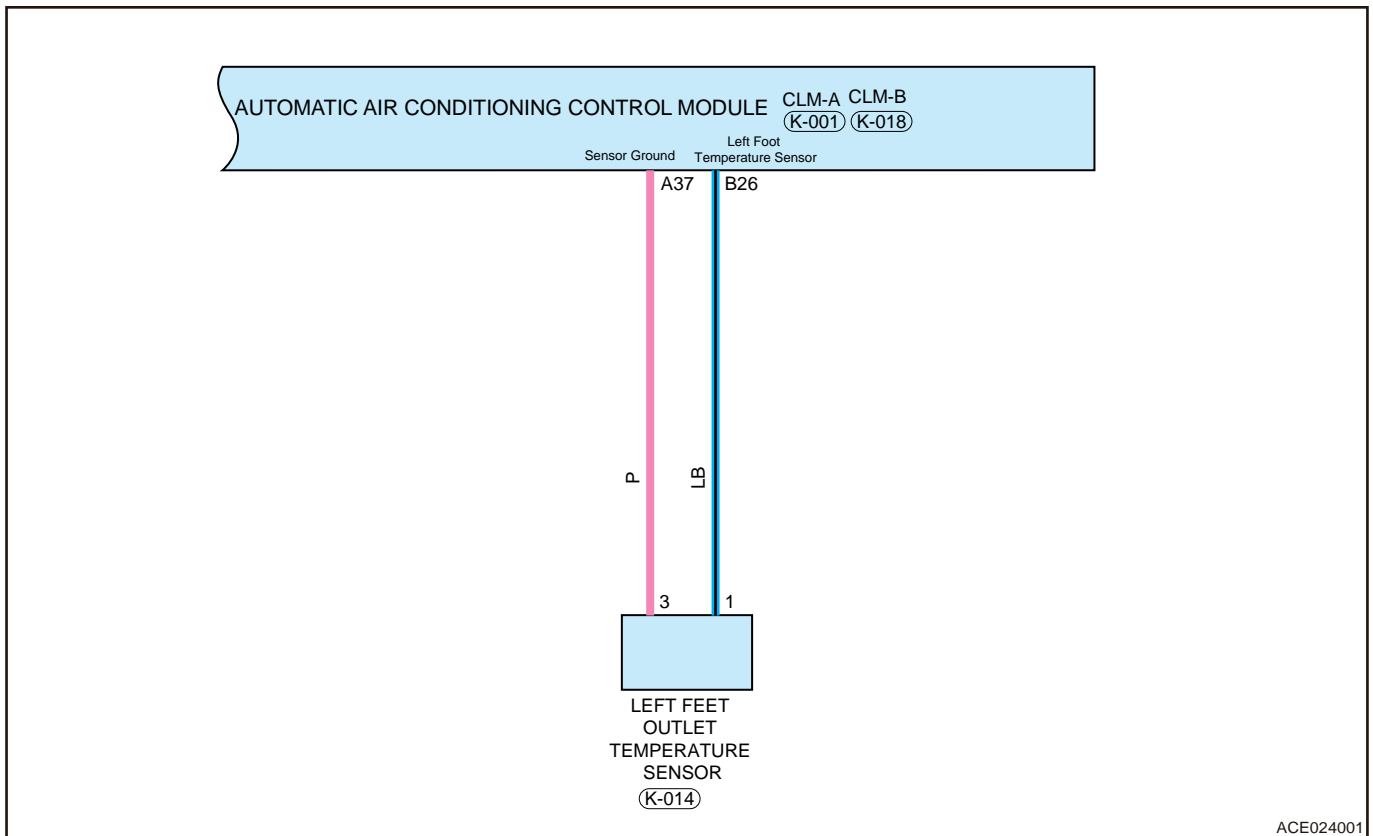
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Left Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open Malfunction

DTC	B14E515	Left Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open
-----	---------	---

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check if left foot air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.

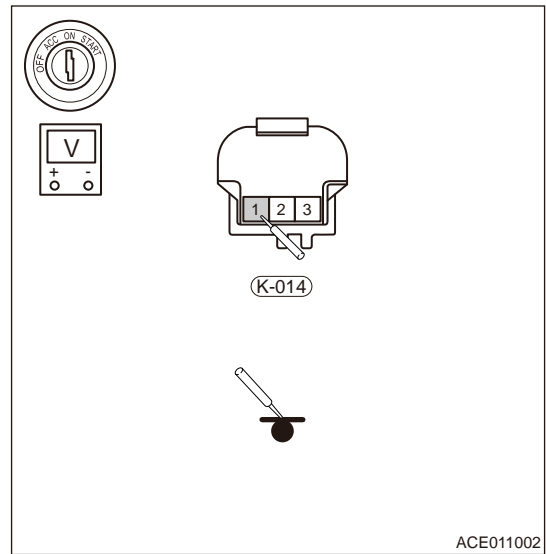
NG

Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check left foot air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage.

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of left foot air outlet temperature sensor signal K-014 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



NG Check if left foot air outlet temperature sensor wire harness or replace left foot air outlet temperature sensor.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

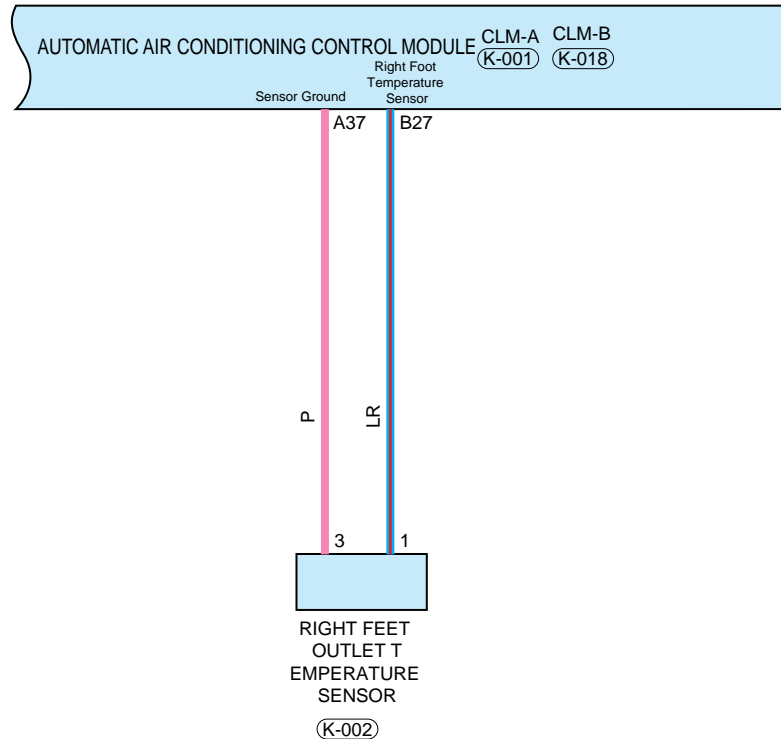
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Right Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground

DTC	B14E611	Right Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground
-----	---------	--

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



ACE025001

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

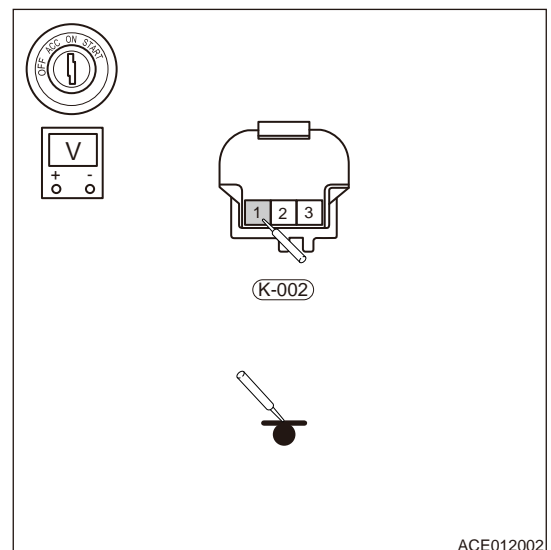
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check right foot air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of right foot air outlet temperature sensor signal K-002 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



ACE012002

NG Check if right foot air outlet temperature sensor wire harness or replace right foot air outlet temperature sensor.

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

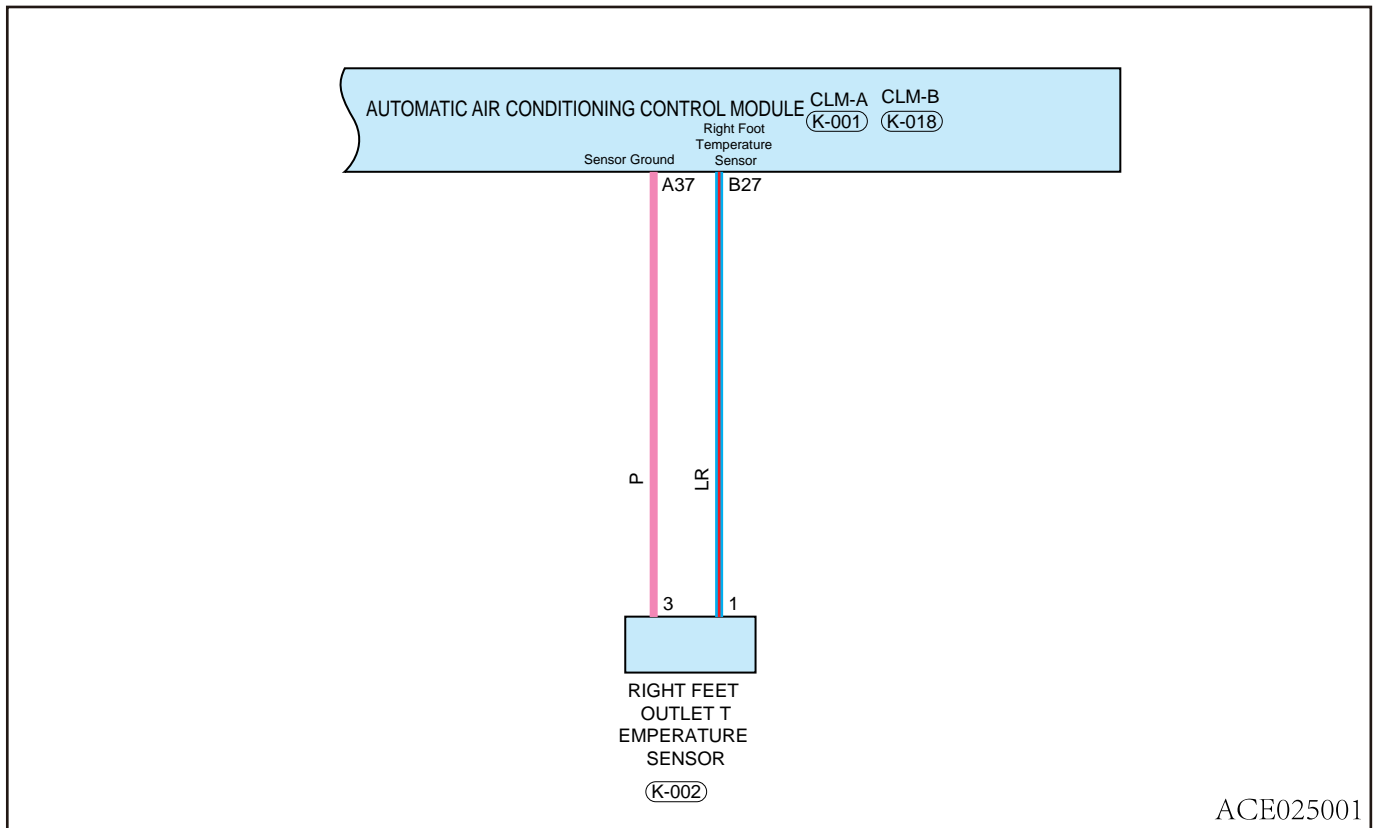
NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B14E615	Right Foot Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open
------------	----------------	---

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



ACE025001

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).

- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check if right foot air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.

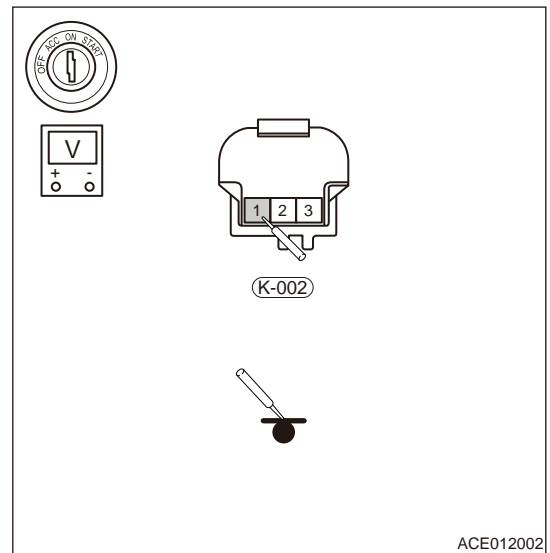
NG

Repair or replace wire harness connector.

OK

2	Check right foot air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
 (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of right foot air outlet temperature sensor signal K-002 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



NG

Check if right foot air outlet temperature sensor wire harness or replace right foot air outlet temperature sensor.

OK

3	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

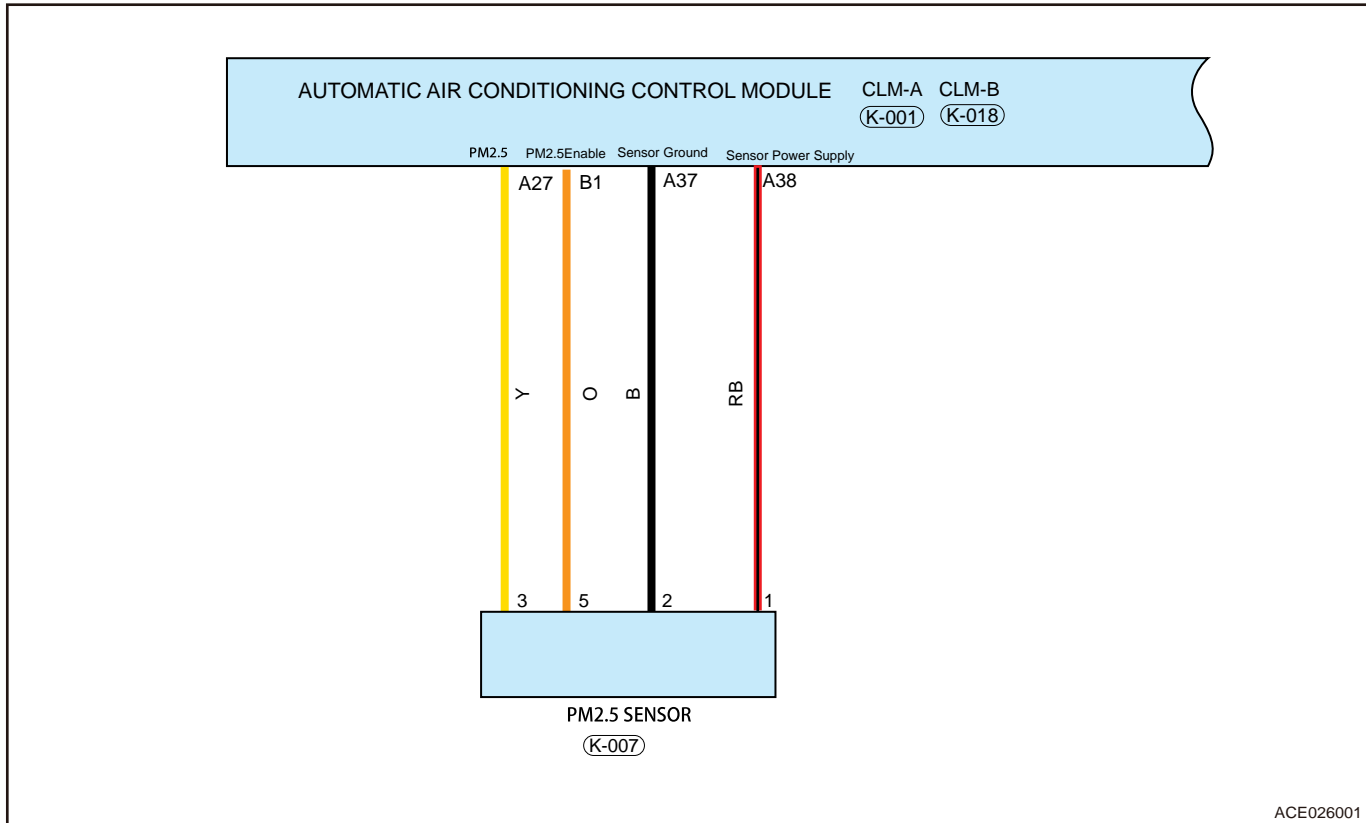
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ PM2.5 Sensor Failure

DTC	B14E911	PM2.5 Sensor Short to Ground (Pulse Width Modulation = 0%)
DTC	B14E915	PM2.5 Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open (Pulse Width Modulation = 0%)
DTC	B14EA12	PM2.5 Enable Short To Power Supply
DTC	B14EA14	PM2.5 Enable Short To Ground Or Open

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



ACE026001

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- Disconnect PM2.5 sensor K-007 and automatic A/C module connector K-001.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check PM2.5 sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Remove PM2.5 sensor from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (c) Install new PM2.5 sensor to malfunctioning vehicle.
- (d) Check if DTC exists.

OK

Repair or replace PM2.5 sensor ground wire harness

NG

3 Check wire harness (automatic A/C control module - PM2.5 sensor)

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect PM2.5 sensor connector K-007 and automatic A/C module connector K-001.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, measure the wire harness between PM2.5 sensor connector K-007 and automatic A/C module connector K-001 according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Normal Condition
K-007 (1) - K-001 (38)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω
K-007 (2) - K-001 (37)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω
K-007 (5) - K-018 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω
K-007 (3) - K-001 (27)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω

NG

Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.



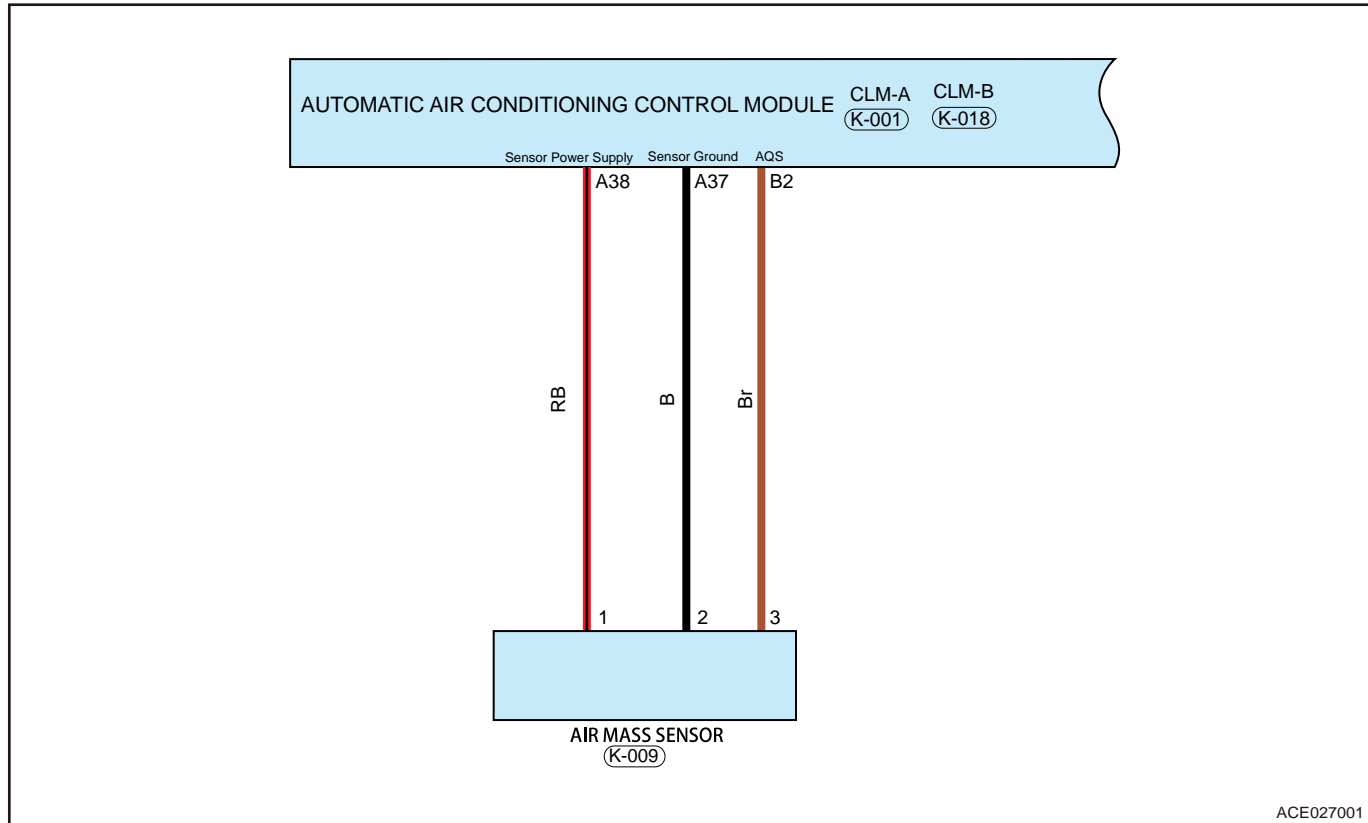
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Air Quality Sensor Malfunction

DTC	B14EB11	Air Quality Sensor Short to Ground (Pulse Width Modulation = 0%)
DTC	B14EB15	Air Quality Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open (Pulse Width Modulation = 100%)

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- Disconnect air quality sensor K-009 and automatic A/C module connectors K-001, K-018.



Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check air quality sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Remove air quality sensor from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (c) Install new air quality sensor to malfunctioning vehicle.
- (d) Check if DTC exists.

OK

Repair or replace air quality sensor ground wire harness.

NG

3 Check wire harness (automatic A/C control module - air quality sensor)

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect air quality sensor connector K-009 and automatic A/C module connector K-001.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, measure the wire harness between air quality sensor connector K-009 and automatic A/C module connector K-001 according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Normal Condition
K-009 (1) - K-001 (38)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω
K-009 (2) - K-001 (37)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω
K-009 (3) - K-018 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω

NG

Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

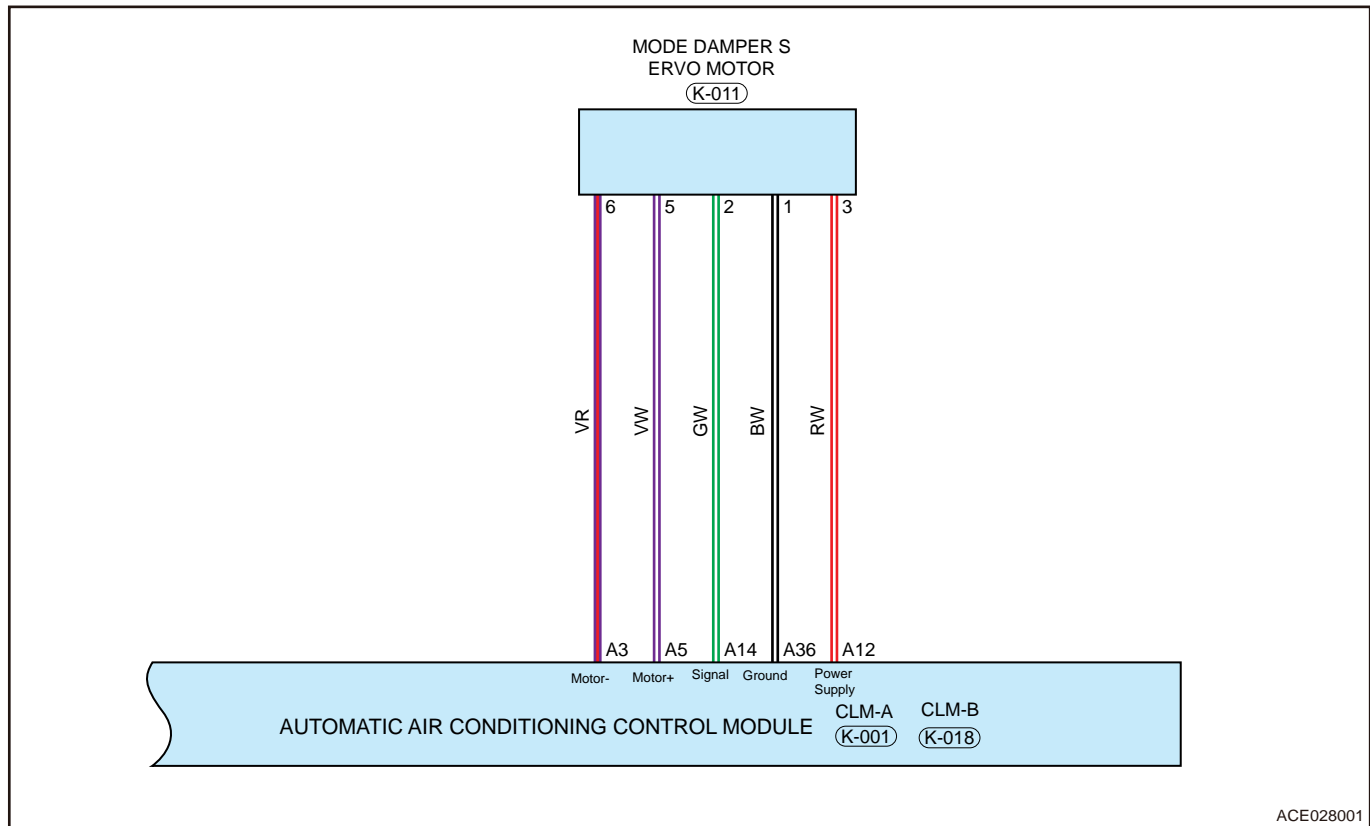
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Mode Motor Error

DTC	B14EC10	Mode Motor Blocked (Except Calibration Procedure)
DTC	B14EC11	Mode Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B14EC12	Mode Motor Control Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	B14EC13	Mode Motor Control Circuit Open
DTC	B14ED12	Mode Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	B14ED14	Mode Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check wire harness and connector.
----------	--

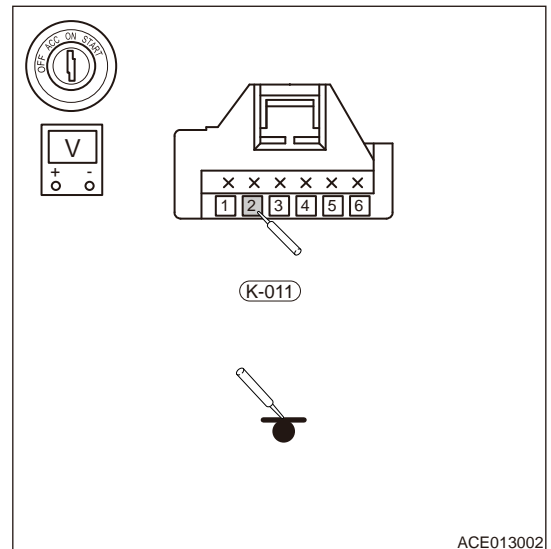
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Disconnect mode damper motor connector K-011 and automatic A/C control module connector K-001.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check mode damper motor operating signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of mode damper motor signal K-011 (2). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C mode adjustment



NG Check mode damper motor wire harness or replace mode damper motor.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

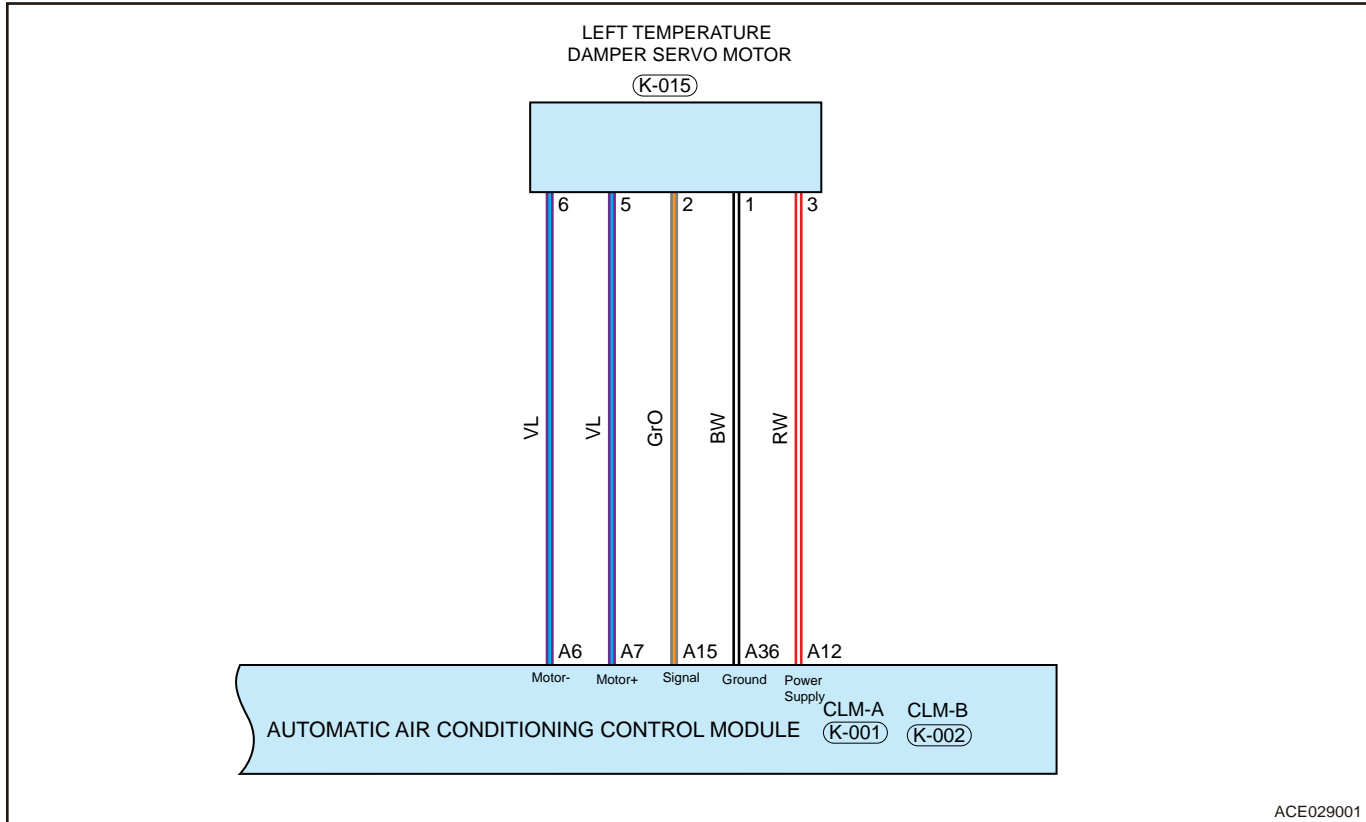
■ Left Temperature Motor Malfunction

DTC	B14EE10	Left Temperature Motor Blocked (Except Calibration Procedure)
DTC	B14EE11	Left Temperature Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B14EE12	Left Temperature Motor Control Circuit Short to Power Supply

DTC	B14EE13	Left Temperature Motor Control Circuit Open
DTC	B14EF12	Left Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	B14EF14	Left Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

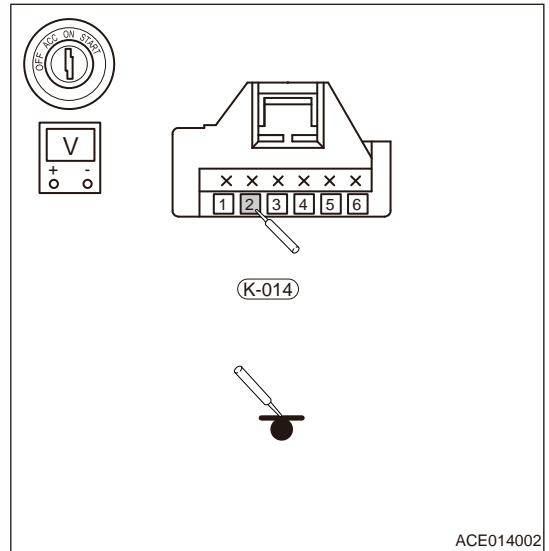
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Disconnect left temperature adjustment motor connector K-015 and automatic A/C control module connector K-001.

NG **Repair or replace wire harness.**

OK

2 Check temperature adjustment motor (left) operating signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of temperature adjustment motor (left) signal K-015 (2). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C left temperature adjustment



NG

Check temperature adjustment motor (left) wire harness or replace temperature adjustment motor (left).

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

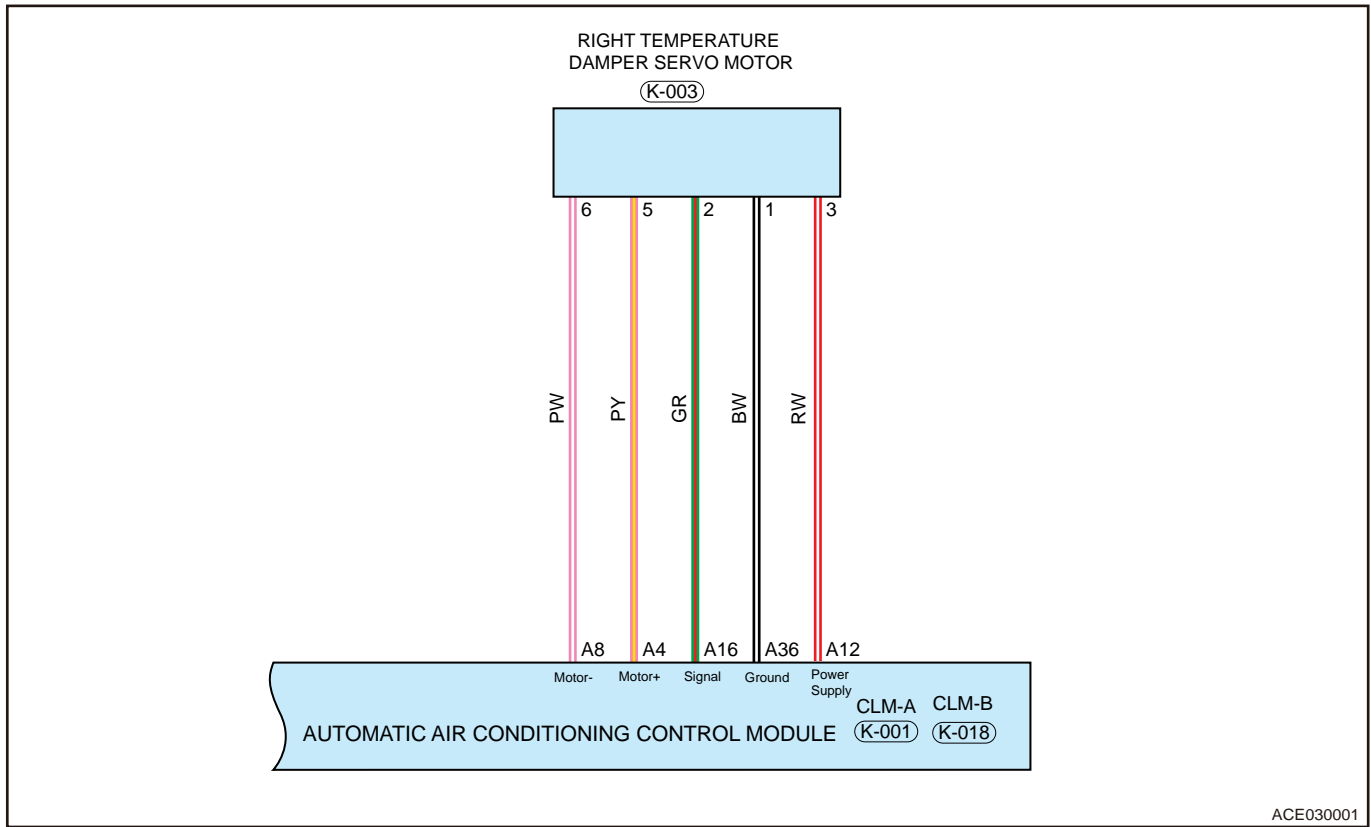
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Right Temperature Motor Malfunction

DTC	B14F010	Right Temperature Motor Blocked (Except Calibration Procedure)
DTC	B14F011	Right Temperature Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B14F013	Right Temperature Motor Control Circuit Open
DTC	B14F013	Right Temperature Motor Control Circuit Open
DTC	B14F112	Right Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	B14F114	Right Temperature Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

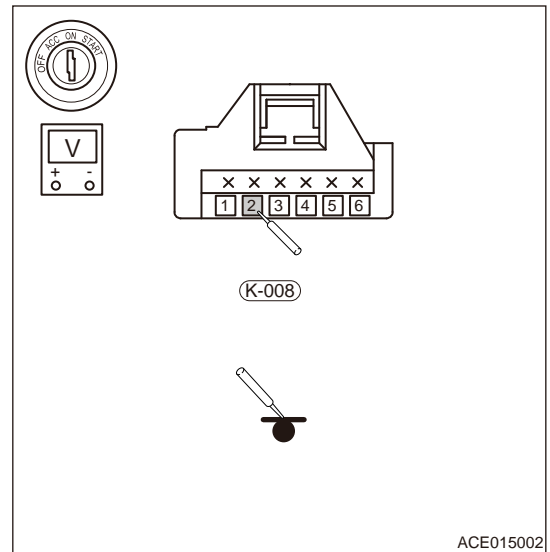
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Disconnect right temperature adjustment motor connector K-003 and automatic A/C control module connector K-001.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check temperature adjustment motor (right) operating signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of temperature adjustment motor (right) signal K-003 (2). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C right temperature adjustment



NG Check temperature adjustment motor (right) wire harness or replace temperature adjustment motor (right).

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

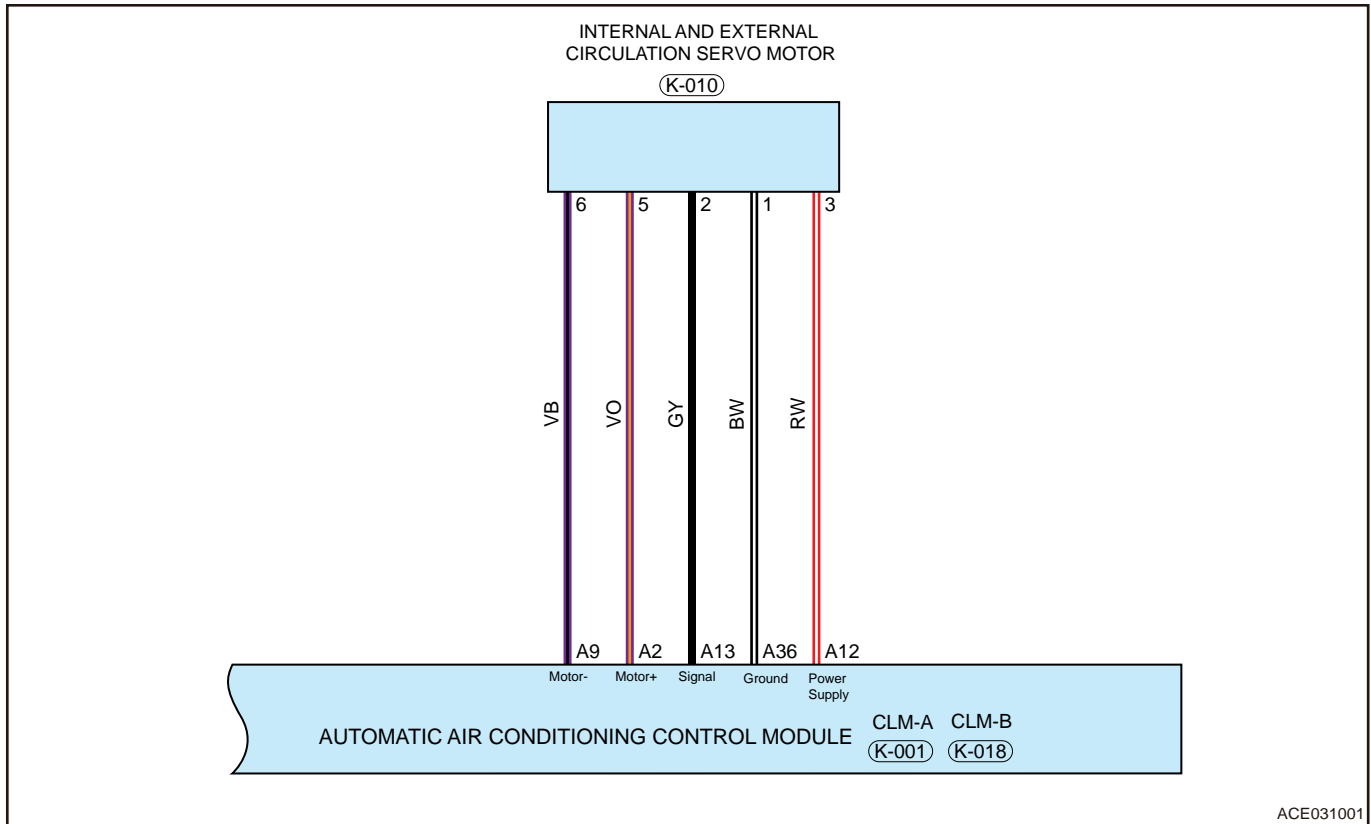
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Intake Motor Malfunction

DTC	B14F210	Intake Motor Blocked (Except Calibration Procedure)
DTC	B14F211	Intake Motor Control Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B14F212	Intake Motor Control Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	B14F213	Intake Motor Control Circuit Open
DTC	B14F312	Intake Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	B14F314	Intake Motor Control Feedback Circuit Short to Ground or Open

Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

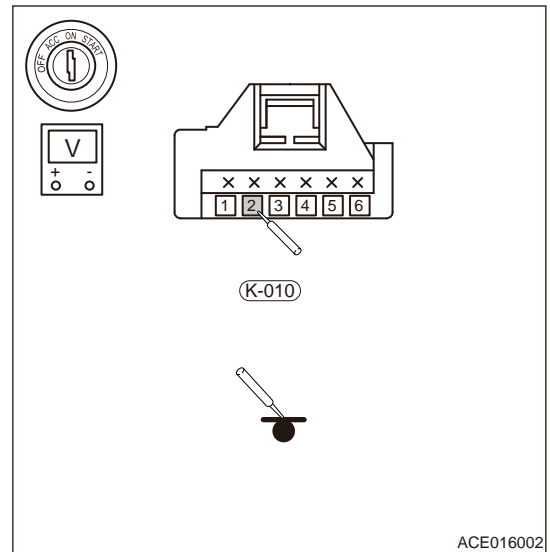
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Disconnect inner/outer circulation motor connector K-010 and automatic A/C control module connector K-001.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check inner/outer circulation motor operating signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of inner/outer circulation motor signal K-010 (2). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C inner/outer circulation adjustment



NG

Check inner/outer circulation motor wire harness or replace inner/outer circulation motor.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

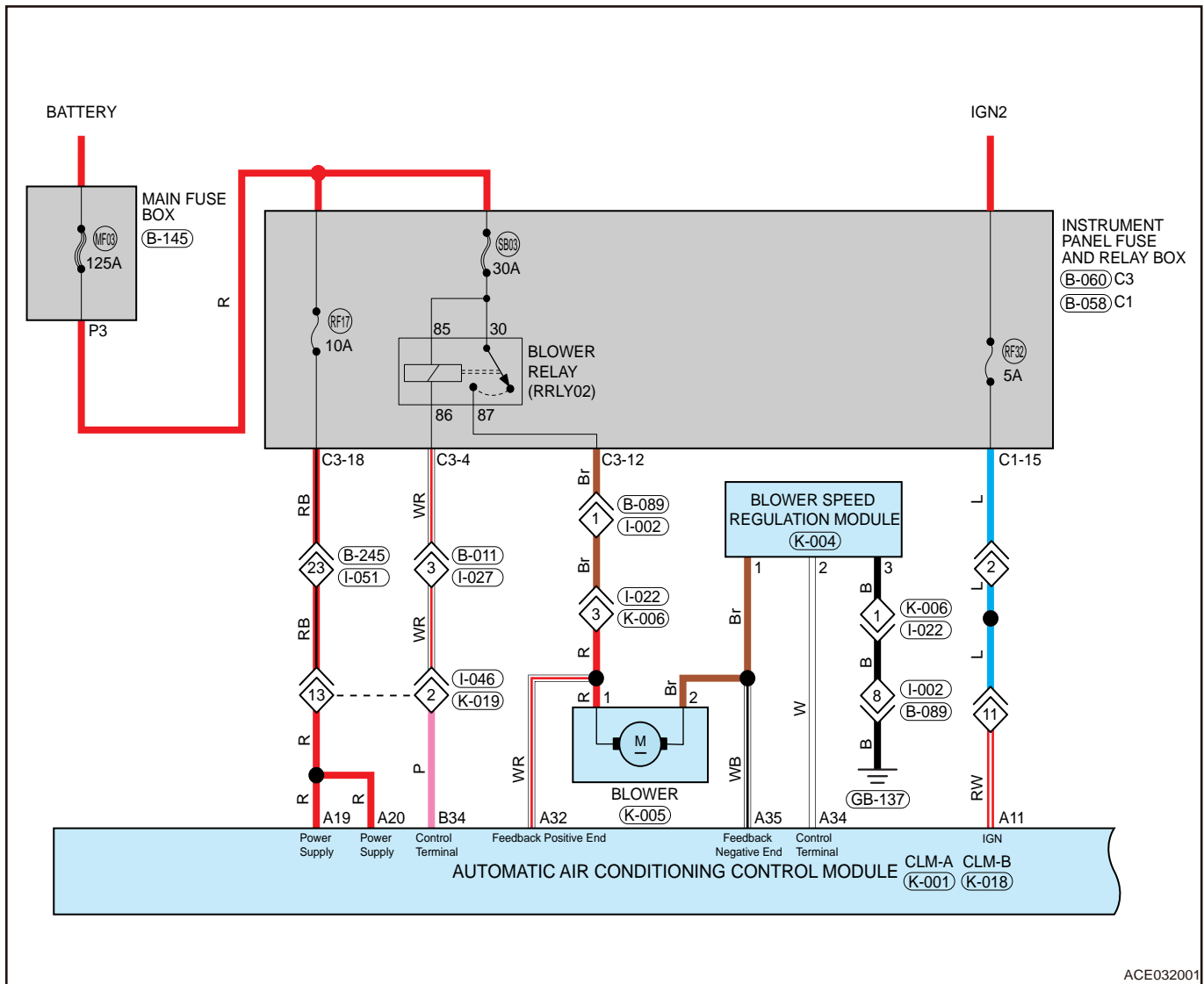
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Blower Fault

DTC	B14F412	Blower Relay Output Short to Power Supply
DTC	B14F414	Blower Relay Output Short to Ground or Open
DTC	B14F529	Blower Signal Invalid Control Failed
DTC	B14F531	Blower Control Failed

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



ACE032001

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Disconnect blower connector K-005 and blower speed regulation module connector K-004.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check blower

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Remove the blower from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (c) Install a new blower to malfunctioning vehicle.
- (d) Check if DTC exists.

OK

Replace the blower.

NG

3 Check wire harness connector

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect blower connector K-005 and speed regulation module connector K-004.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, measure the wire harness between speed regulation module connector K-004 and blower connector K-005 according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Normal Condition
K-004 (1) - K-005 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω
K-005 (1) - B-060 (C3-12)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω

- (e) Using a digital multimeter, measure the wire harness between blower connector K-004 and automatic A/C control module connector K-001 according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Normal Condition
K-004 (1) - K-001 (32)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω
K-004 (2) - K-001 (35)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω

NG

Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

4 Check blower speed regulation module circuit

- (a) Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:
- (b) Using a digital multimeter, measure the wire harness between blower speed regulation module connector K-004 and automatic A/C module according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Normal Condition
K-004 (2) - K-001 (34)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω

- (c) Using a digital multimeter, measure the wire harness between blower speed regulation module connector K-004 and body ground according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Normal Condition
K-004 (3) - GB-137	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω

NG Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

5 | Check power circuit of blower

- (a) Connect all connectors and disconnect A/C speed regulation module connector.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, measure the voltage between terminal 1 of blower connector K-005 and body ground according to value(s) in table below.

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Normal Condition
K-005 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V

NG Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

6 | Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

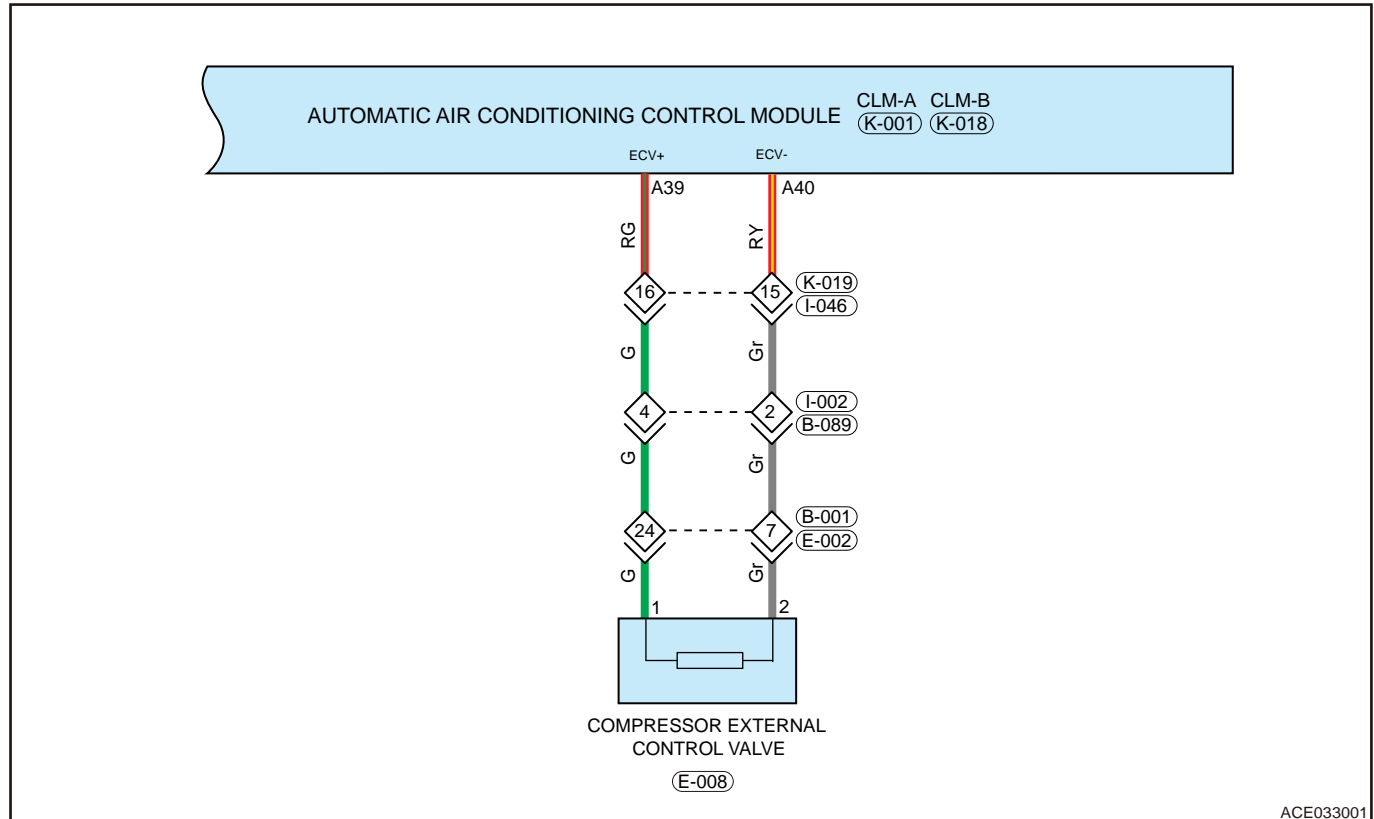
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Compressor External Control Valve Malfunction

DTC	B14F711	ECV Control Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B14F715	ECV Control Circuit Short to Power Supply or Open

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- Disconnect external control compressor solenoid valve connector E-008 and automatic A/C control module connector K-001.

NG

Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check external control compressor solenoid valve operating signal

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using an oscilloscope, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the external control compressor solenoid valve K-001 (40). Duty ratio signal is output normally according to compressor operation.

NG Check external control compressor solenoid valve wire harness or replace external control compressor solenoid valve.

NG

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

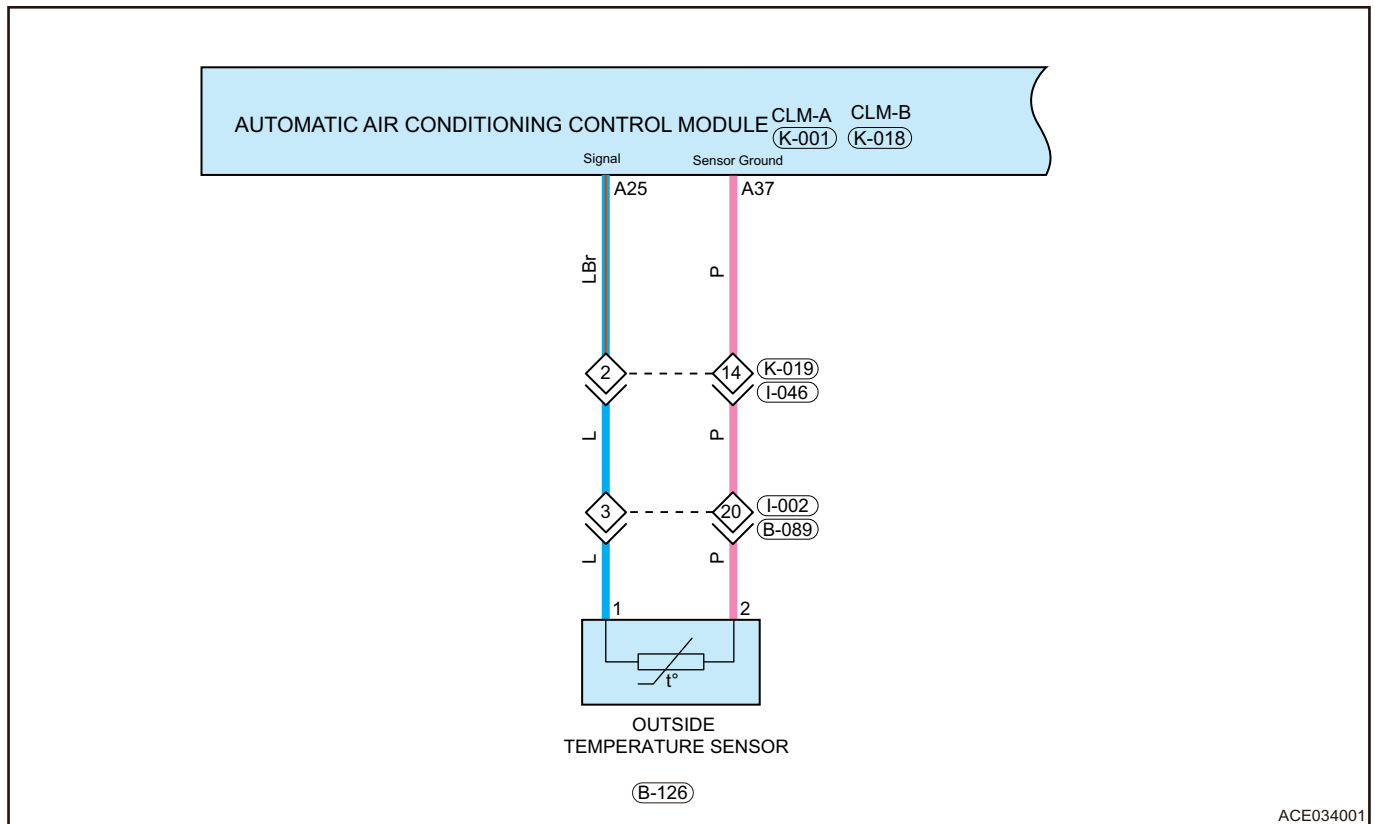
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ External Temperature Sensor Fault

DTC	B14FB11	External Temperature Sensor Short to Ground
DTC	B14FB15	External Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness connector.

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Check if ambient temperature sensor connector or lead falls off.

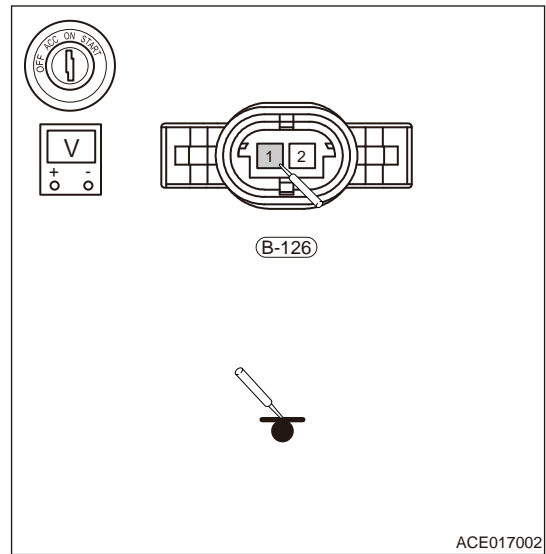
NG

Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check ambient temperature sensor signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of ambient temperature sensor signal B-126 (1). Turn on blower to blow ambient temperature sensor, and the voltage normally changes with air temperature.



NG Check if ambient temperature sensor wire harness or replace ambient temperature sensor.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

Power Supply Voltage Abnormal Malfunction

DTC	B14FC1C	Abnormal Power Supply Voltage
DTC	B15461C	Abnormal Power Supply Voltage

Description

Control schematic diagram

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Check if wire harness between battery to alternator is aging or are connected poorly.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check battery voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle.
- (b) Measure battery voltage with multimeter voltage band. Under unloaded status, the normal voltage of the vehicle battery is about 13 V, and the normal load voltage is no less than 11 V. If the voltage is lower than 11 V, it may be difficult to start the next time. After starting, because alternator starts to generate electricity, the normal voltage of the vehicle battery should be between 13.5 V - 14.5 V.

NG Replace battery.

OK

3 Check alternator

- (a) Remove alternator from malfunctioning vehicle.
- (b) Install a new alternator to malfunctioning vehicle.
- (c) System operates normally.

NG Repair or replace the corresponding components.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

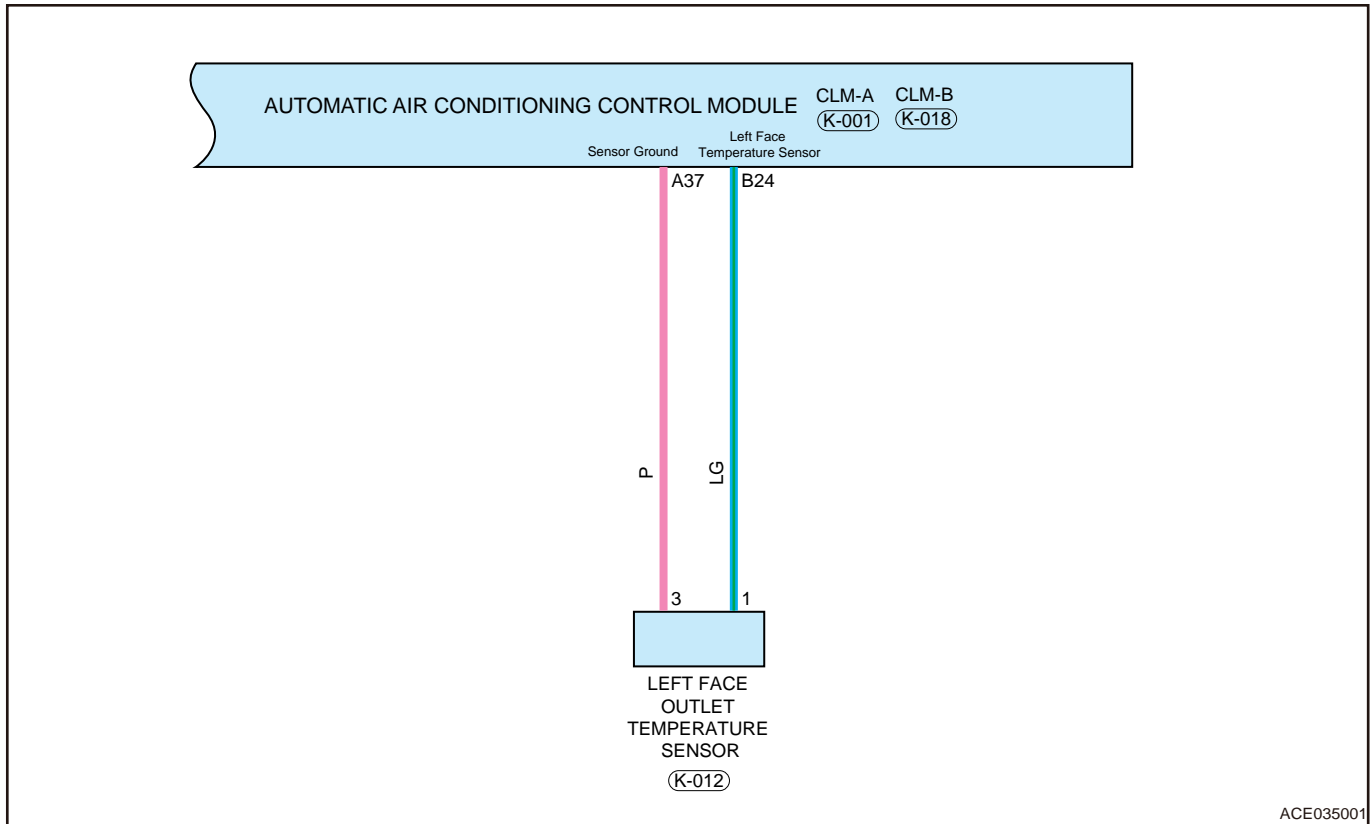
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ **Left Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground Malfunction**

DTC	B14E711	Left Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground
-----	---------	---

■ **Description**

Control schematic diagram



ACE035001

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

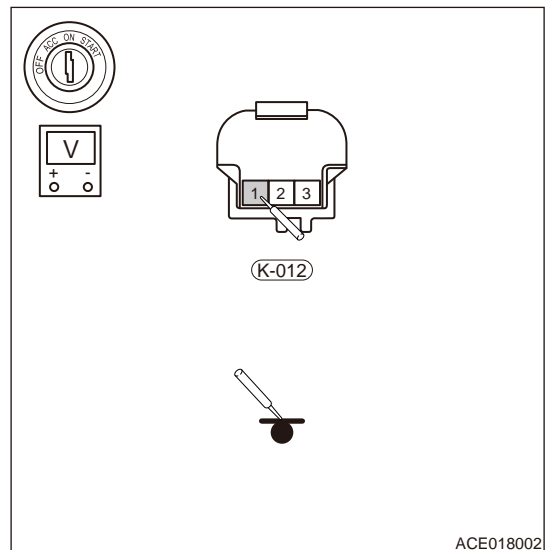
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check left face air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of left face air outlet temperature sensor signal K-012 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



ACE018002

NG

Check if left face air outlet temperature sensor wire harness or replace left face air outlet temperature sensor.

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK

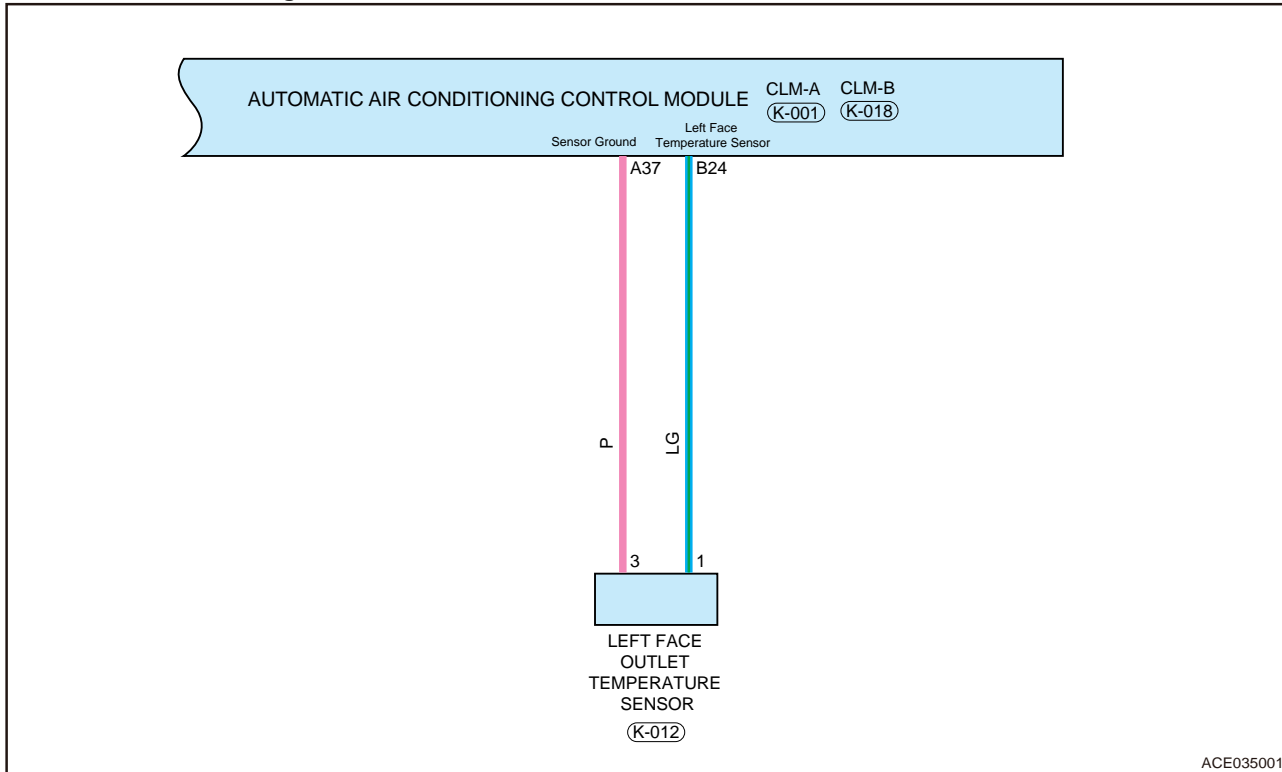
Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Check left face air outlet temperature sensor wire harness or replace left face air outlet temperature sensor.

DTC	B14E715	Left Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open
-----	---------	---

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



ACE035001

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.

- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

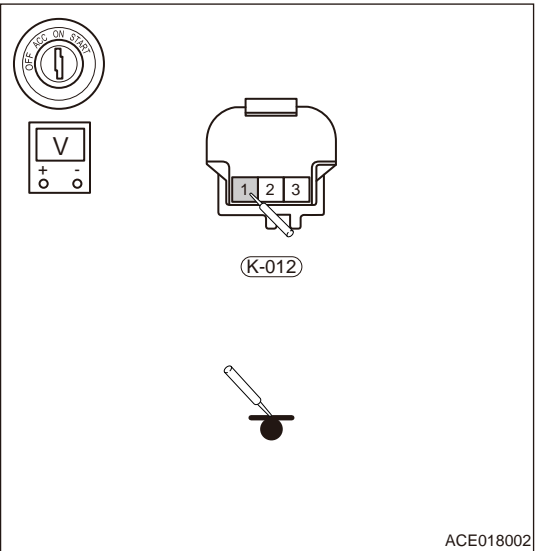
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Check if left face air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off.

NG Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check left face air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of left face air outlet temperature sensor signal K-012 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



OK Check if left face air outlet temperature sensor signal is short to power supply or replace left face air outlet temperature sensor.

NG

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

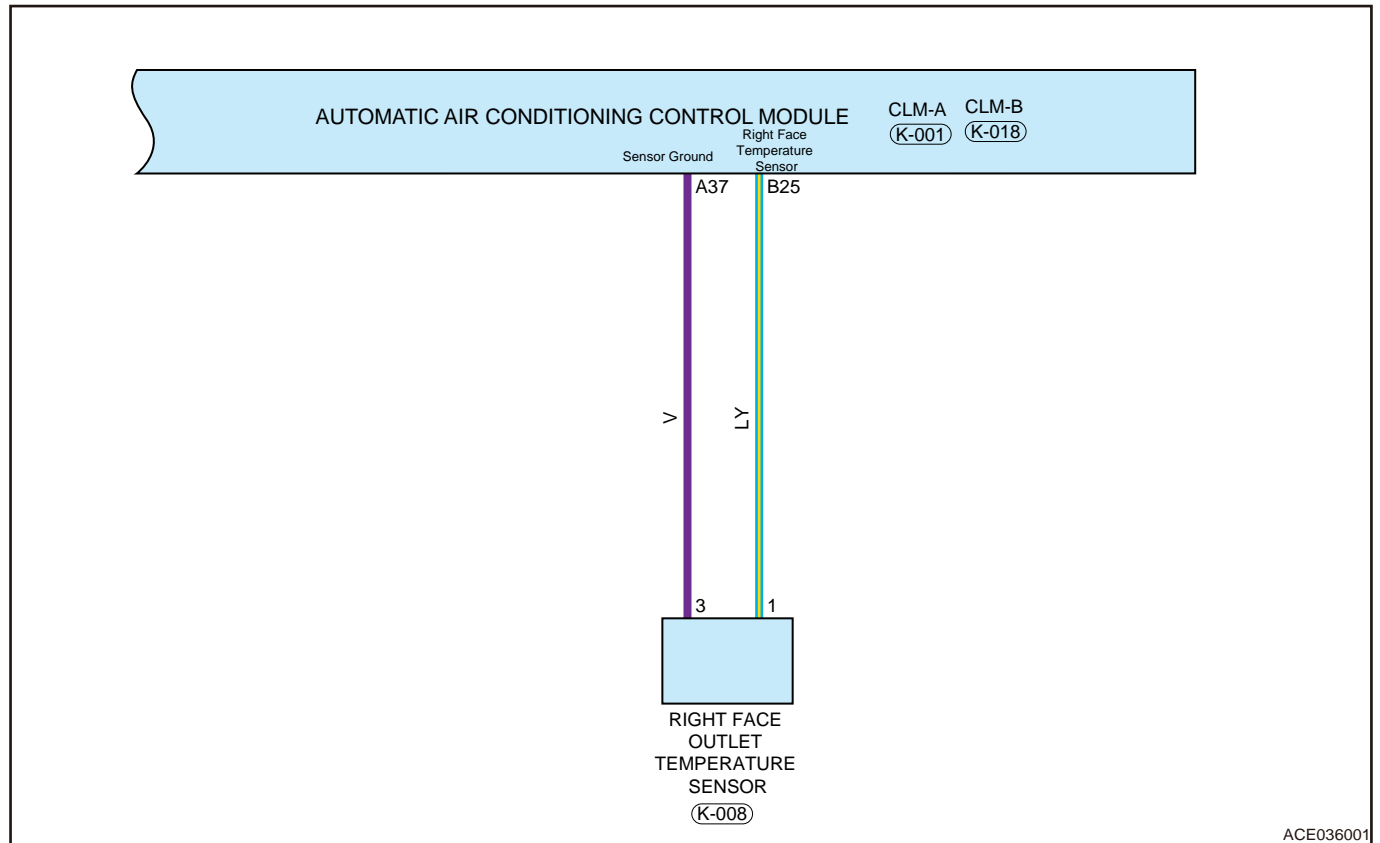
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Right Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground

DTC	B14E811	Right Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Ground
-----	---------	--

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

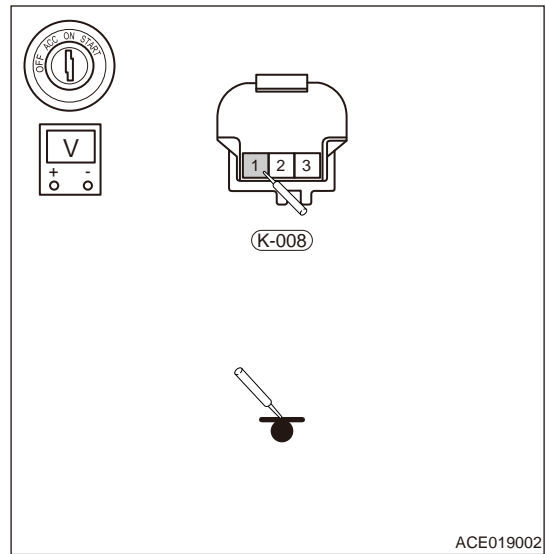
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check right face air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage.
---	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle and turn on A/C.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of right face temperature sensor signal K-008 (1). Signal voltage also changes with A/C temperature.



ACE019002

NG Repair wire harness or replace right face temperature sensor.

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

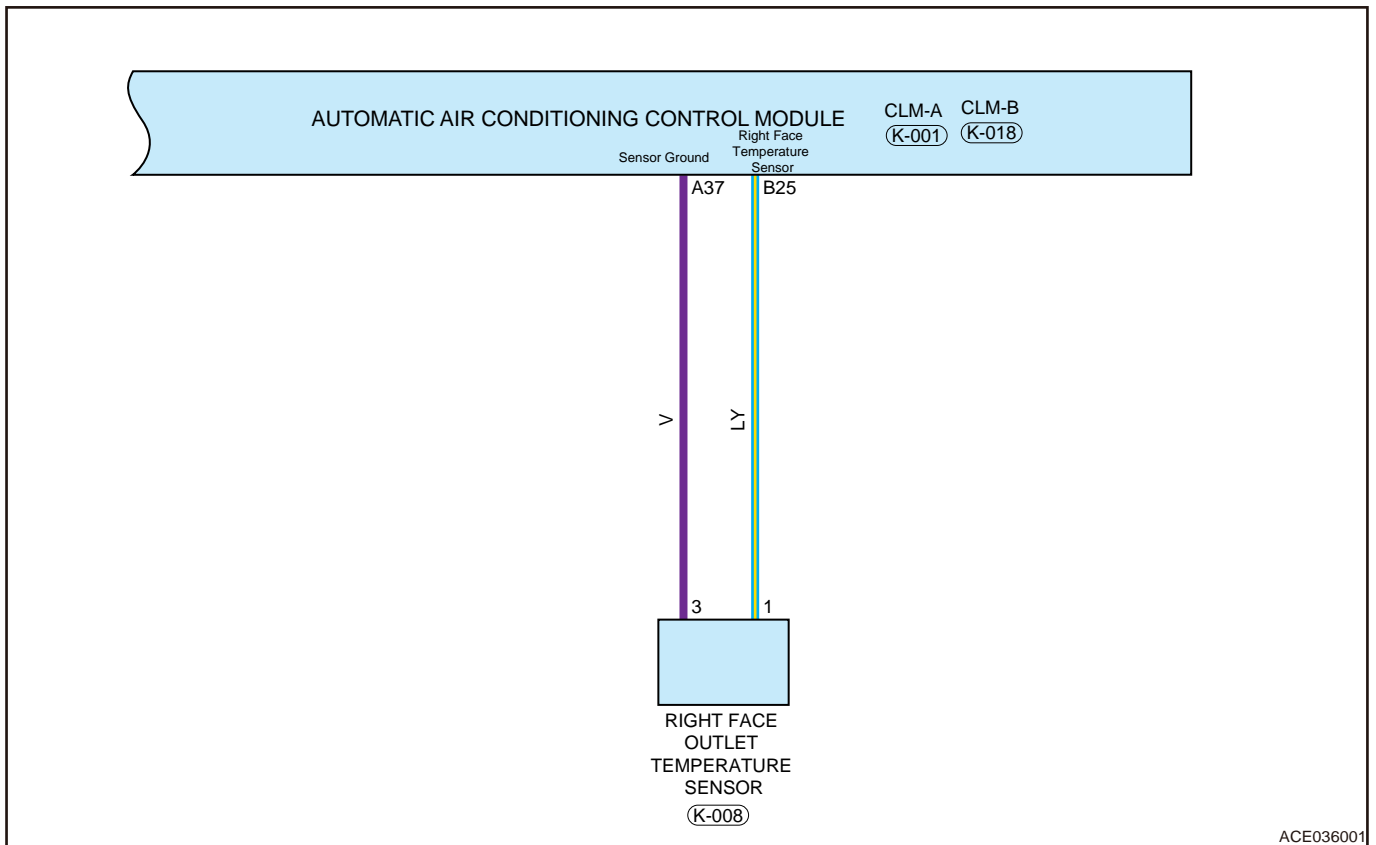
OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

■ Right Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open

DTC	B14E815	Right Face Air Outlet Temperature Sensor Short to Power Supply or Open
-----	---------	--

■ Description

Control schematic diagram



■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector.

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check connector terminals for abdicated, bend or poor connection, etc.
- (c) Check if right face air outlet temperature sensor connector or lead falls off.

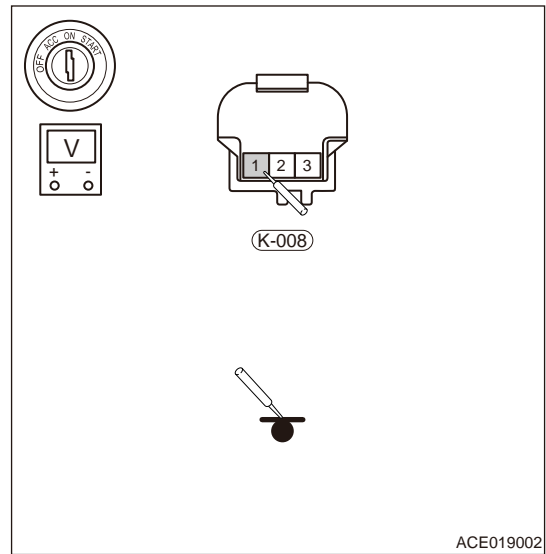
NG

Repair or replace wire harness.

OK

2 Check right face air outlet temperature sensor signal voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, start the vehicle.
- (b) Using voltage band of multimeter, connect black probe to battery negative terminal (or body ground) and use red probe to measure the voltage of right face air outlet temperature sensor signal K-008 (1). Normal signal voltage changes with A/C temperature.



NG Check if right face temperature sensor signal is short to power supply or replace right face temperature sensor.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace with a new ECM to check if fault reoccurs.

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

7 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

7.1 On-Vehicle Inspection

Hint:

A/C refrigerant lines and hoses are used to transfer refrigerant among A/C system components. Any twist or bend in refrigerant lines and hoses will reduce performance of A/C system and refrigerant flow in system. There remains high pressure in refrigerant when A/C compressor assembly is operating. It is necessary to ensure that each connecting part in A/C system is sealed well. Check all system lines at least once a year to ensure that they are in good condition and properly routed. Refrigerant lines and hoses cannot be repaired and must be replaced if leakage or damage exists.

- (1) General inspection
 - 1) Check if there exists any oil or dust in each joint of A/C line. If this occurs, there may exist leak.
 - 2) Check if condenser surface is dirty and if fins are deformed.
 - 3) Check if there are harsh noises while compressor assembly is operating normally.

- 4) Temperature difference should be noticeable by touching intake line and exhaust line of compressor assembly with hand. Normally, temperature of low pressure line is relatively low and that of high pressure line is relatively hot. Feel the temperature difference between condenser inlet pipe and outlet pipe, under normal conditions, temperature of inlet pipe is higher than that of outlet pipe. If you feel the temperature difference between expansion valve inlet and outlet line with hand, under normal conditions, temperature of expansion valve inlet line is relatively hot and that of outlet line is relatively cool, and the temperature difference between them is noticeable.
- (2) Using pressure gauge set, check the refrigerant pressure.
- Connect the manifold pressure gauge set. After following conditions are met, read pressure values on pressure gauge. Measurement Condition:
- Inner/outer circulation switch is in outer circulation position.
 - Engine runs at approximately 2,000 rpm.
 - Adjust temperature knob to Max. Cool.
 - Set blower speed control switch to highest band.
 - Turn on A/C switch.
- Observe the pressure value on the pressure gauge.

7.2 Compressor Assembly Noise Inspection

When checking noise related to A/C system, you must first know the conditions under which the noise occurs. These conditions include: Weather, vehicle speed, engine speed, engine temperature and any other special conditions. Loud noises during A/C operation can often mislead someone. For example, some sounds, like a failed bearing, may be caused by loose bolts, mounting brackets or a loose compressor assembly.

Warning

- **A/C compressor assembly must be replaced if any abnormal noise is heard from compressor assembly.**
- **Noise may occur from drive belt at different engine speeds, and you may mistake it for a noise from A/C compressor assembly.**

- (1) Select a quiet place for testing.
- (2) Duplicate customer's feedback information as much as possible.
- (3) Turn on and off A/C several times to identify compressor assembly noise clearly.
- (4) Check the condition of compressor assembly belt.
- (5) Check the hub, pulley, bearing assembly of compressor assembly. Make sure that hub and pulley are aligned correctly, and pulley bearing is securely installed to A/C compressor assembly.
- (6) Check if refrigerant line routes incorrectly, and if it is damaged or has an interference that could result in an abnormal noise. Also, check the refrigerant line for twist or bend, otherwise the refrigerant will be limited to flow, which will cause a noise.
- (7) Loosen all compressor assembly tightening bolts and retighten them.
- (8) If noise occurs when liquid refrigerant in A/C suction line is under a slugging condition, replace the condenser and check refrigerant oil level and charging condition for refrigerant.
- (9) If the slugging condition still exists after replacing condenser, replace the A/C compressor assembly.

Caution

DO NOT race engine when vacuum pump operates or vacuum exists in A/C system. Otherwise, A/C compressor assembly will be damaged seriously.

7.3 Refrigerant Leakage Inspection

⚠ Warning

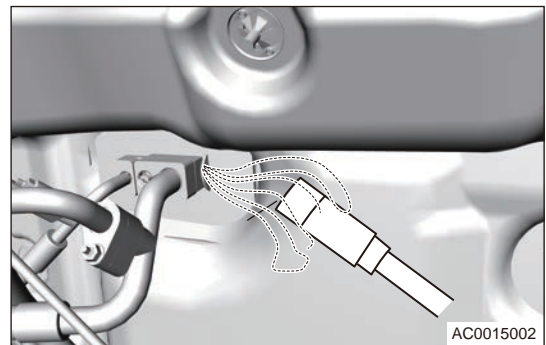
- **DO NOT perform pressure test or leakage test to R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant service device or vehicle A/C system with compressed air. Mixture of air and R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant is inflammable under high pressure. This mixture has potential danger, and it may cause a fire or explosion, resulting in vehicle damage, personal injury or death.**
- **Avoid inhaling vapor or moisture from the A/C refrigerant and refrigerant oil.**
- **Only use special service device to discharge R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant system. If system discharges unexpectedly, ventilate work place before servicing.**
- **If A/C refrigerant filling amount is empty or low, A/C system may have leak. Check all A/C lines, joints and parts for remaining oil. The remaining oil is indication mark of A/C system leaking position.**

(1) Check refrigerant for leakage

1) After recharging refrigerant, use gas leak detector to check refrigerant gas for leakage.

2) Perform operations under following conditions:

- Stop engine.
- Ensure the ventilation is well (gas leak detector may react to volatile gases which are not from refrigerant, such as gasoline vapor or exhaust gas).
- Repeat the test for 2 or 3 times.
- Make sure that there is some refrigerant remaining in the refrigeration system.



3) Place gas leak detector near the joint of A/C line, and check the A/C line for leakage. If gas leak detector makes a sound, it indicates that a leakage exists. Repair or replace the leakage A/C line as necessary.

4) Disconnect A/C pressure switch connector, and use same procedures to check A/C pressure switch for leakage. Replace the A/C pressure switch as necessary.

5) Insert gas leak detector into evaporator tank assembly, and use same procedures to check evaporator for leakage. Clean or replace the evaporator core assembly as necessary.

6) Use same procedures to check condenser for leakage. Clean or replace the condenser assembly as necessary.

7.4 Refrigerant Recovering, Vacuum Pumping and Recharging

■ Refrigerant Recovering/Draining

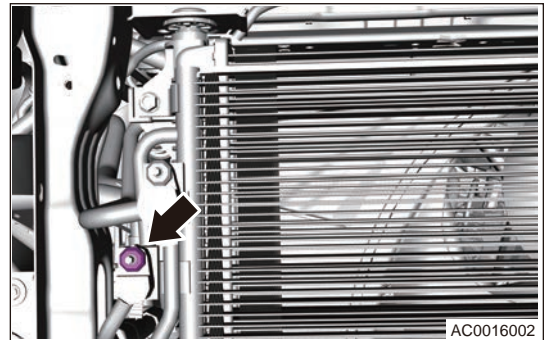
⚠ Warning

- **Take extra care when servicing A/C system under high pressure.**
- **Because there is refrigerant under high pressure in A/C system. It must be serviced by professional technician. Otherwise, a wrong service procedure may cause a serious danger or fatal injury.**
- **If A/C system pressure is released unexpectedly, ventilate work area before servicing. In a closed work place, if a large amount of refrigerant is discharged, it may cause oxygen reduction and result in smothering, causing a serious or fatal injury.**
- **Never drain refrigerant in A/C system into the atmosphere directly, and avoid environmental contamination.**

⚠ Caution

- **R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant special recycling device must be used to recover refrigerant.**
- **DO NOT work near open flames.**
- **Always dispose of recovered refrigerant as specified.**
- **Never charge R-12 to refrigerant system which is designed to use R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant. This refrigerant is incompatible, which could damage the A/C system.**
- **DO NOT race engine when vacuum pump operates or vacuum exists in A/C system. Otherwise, A/C compressor assembly will be damaged seriously.**

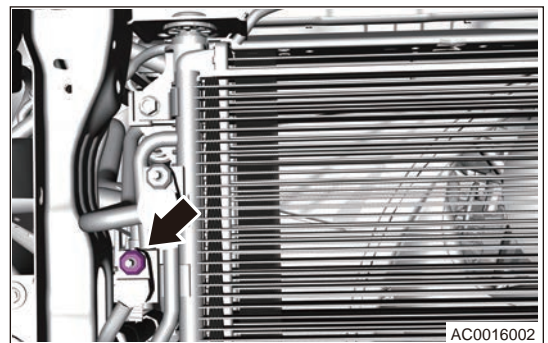
- (1) Open the engine hood and loosen the joint cover of A/C high/low pressure line.
- (2) Connect the refrigerant recycling machine to A/C high/low pressure line joint.
 - 1) Connect the blue connector to A/C low pressure line joint (1).
 - 2) Connect the red connector to A/C high pressure line joint (2).



- (3) Open the high pressure valve and low pressure valve of refrigerant recycling machine.
- (4) Choose "recovering" item on machine and make it start to operate.
- (5) Check the low pressure value on pressure gauge to ensure that recycling is completed, and then turn off machine.
- (6) Disconnect the connection between refrigerant recycling machine and A/C line joint.
- (7) Reinstall the cover onto refrigerant line joint.

■ Vacuum Pumping

- (1) Open the engine hood and loosen the joint cover of A/C high/low pressure line.
- (2) Connect the refrigerant recycling machine to A/C high/low pressure line joint.
 - 1) Connect the blue connector to A/C low pressure line joint (1).
 - 2) Connect the red connector to A/C high pressure line joint (2).



- (3) Open the high pressure valve and low pressure valve of refrigerant recycling machine.
- (4) Choose "vacuum pumping" item on machine and the time setting is 15 minutes, then choose OK and make it start to operate.
- (5) Wait for 10 minutes after completing operation, check if there is any change in A/C system vacuum. If there is any change, the A/C system leakage may exist, you should check and repair the A/C system. If there is no change, proceed to perform refrigerant charging procedures.

■ Refrigerant Recharging

⚠ Caution

- **A small amount of refrigerant oil in A/C system will be discharged when recovering and draining refrigerant. When filling A/C system, be sure to supplement refrigerant oil, as some amount of refrigerant oil are lost during recovering.**
- **DO NOT fill excessive refrigerant. Otherwise, it will cause excessive pressure to compressor assembly, resulting in compressor assembly noise and A/C system failure.**
- **Always perform vacuum pumping before recharging refrigerant.**

- (1) Perform vacuum pumping with a vacuum pump.
- (2) Add refrigerant oil after checking that there is no leakage in A/C system.
- (3) Perform vacuum pumping for 3 minutes again after adding refrigerant oil, then charge refrigerant.
- (4) Choose "charging" item on machine and set the amount of charging to specified value, then choose "OK" and make it start to operate.
- (5) Open the suction valve and close the discharging valve, and then open the charging valve to allow refrigerant to flow into the system.
- (6) When the delivery of refrigerant has stopped, close the charging valve.
- (7) If charged refrigerant is not delivered to specified position, start the engine to operate the A/C compressor assembly.
- (8) Open the charging valve to deliver the remaining refrigerant to A/C system.

⚠ Warning

At this time, do not open exhaust (high pressure) valve. Failure to do so may result in personal injury or even death.

- (9) Perform A/C system pressure test after charging.
- (10) Remove the connecting pipe for refrigerant charging after the test is completed.
- (11) Reinstall the cover onto A/C line joint.

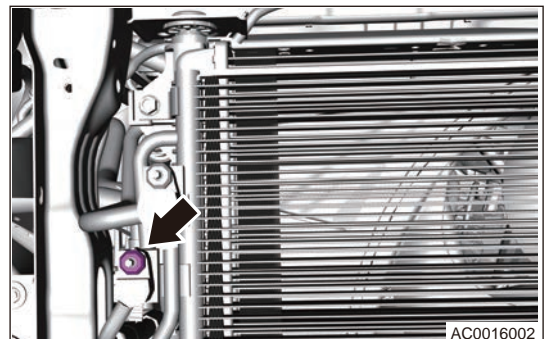
7.5 Refrigerant Oil Recovering and Charging

■ Refrigerant Oil Recovering

⚠ Caution

- **Special service device for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant must be used.**
- **Always keep work area in good ventilation, because A/C system is easy to leak.**
- **Always dispose of recovered refrigerant as specified.**
- **Refrigerant oil must be charged after replacing A/C system components or recovering refrigerant.**

- (1) Open the engine hood and loosen the joint cover of A/C high/low pressure line.
- (2) Connect the refrigerant recycling machine to A/C high/low pressure line joint.
 - 1) Connect the blue connector to A/C low pressure line joint (1).
 - 2) Connect the red connector to A/C high pressure line joint (2).



AC0016002

- (3) Open the high pressure valve and low pressure valve of refrigerant recycling machine.

- (4) Recover refrigerant oil according to instructions on the machine.
- (5) Record amount of recovered refrigerant oil.
- (6) Disconnect the connection between refrigerant recycling machine and A/C line joint.
- (7) Reinstall the joint cover onto refrigerant line joint.

■ Refrigerant Oil Charging

- (1) Perform vacuum pumping with a vacuum pump. Wait for 10 minutes after completing operation, check if there is any change in A/C system pressure. If there is any change, the A/C system leakage may exist, you should check and repair the A/C system. If there is no change, proceed to perform refrigerant oil charging procedures.
- (2) Open the suction valve and close the exhaust valve, and then open the charging valve to allow refrigerant oil to flow into the system.
- (3) Close the charging valve after refrigerant oil charging is completed.
- (4) Perform vacuum pumping again for 3 minutes.
- (5) Continue to perform refrigerant charging procedures after operation is completed.

Items	A/C Compressor Assembly Replacement	Condenser Replacement	Evaporator Tank Replacement	Line Replacement
Refrigerant Oil Charging Amount	Supplement according to actual pouring amount	20ml	20ml	10ml

7.6 A/C Control Panel Assembly

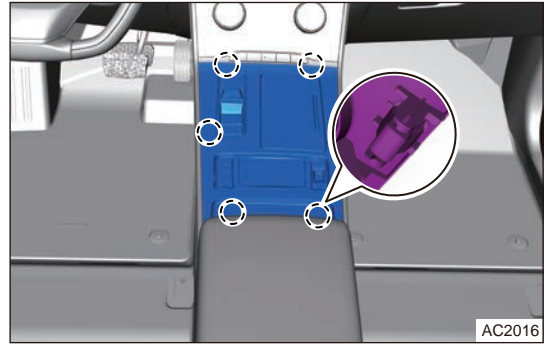
■ Removal

Caution

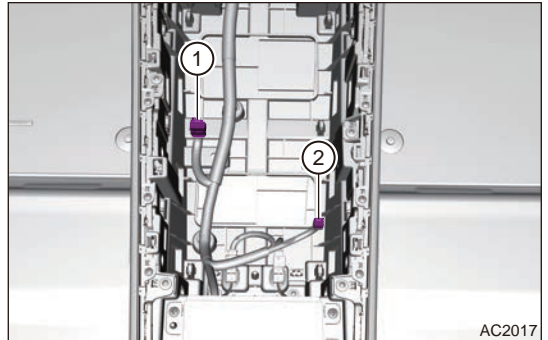
- Be careful not to scratch instrument cluster surface when removing central control panel cover and A/C panel.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Remove the A/C control panel assembly.

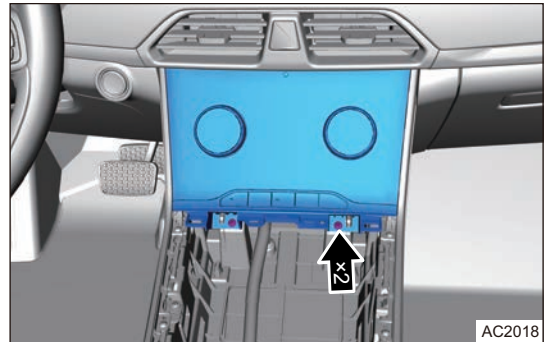
- 1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off auxiliary fascia console trim panel assembly carefully (interior crow plate).



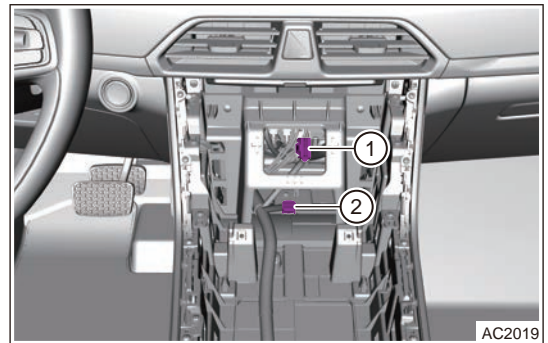
- 2) Disconnect the electronic shift switch connector (1), and audio control panel connector (2).



- 3) Remove 2 fixing screws from A/C control panel assembly (cross screwdriver).



- 4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off A/C control panel assembly carefully, disconnect A/C control panel assembly connector (1) and center console switch assembly connector (2), and remove A/C control panel assembly.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

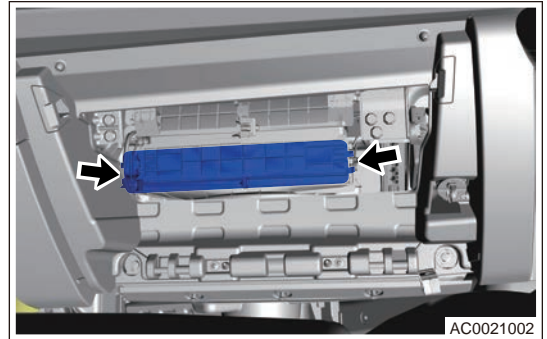
- Be careful not to scratch the panel and instrument panel parts during installation.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.7 A/C Element

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the glove box assembly.
- (4) Remove the A/C element.
 - 1) Detach 2 clips (arrow) from A/C element protector cover, and remove A/C element protector cover.
 - 2) Remove the A/C element assembly.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

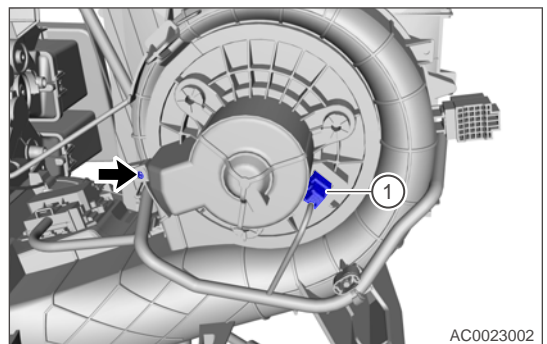
- If A/C element is too dirty or damaged, replace it with a new one.
- When installing A/C element, make arrow mark on the element face downward.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.8 Removal and Installation of Blower Assembly

■ Removal

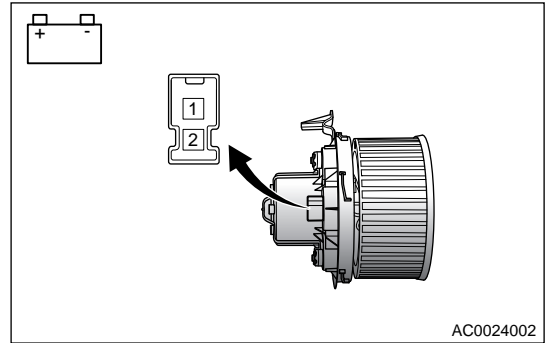
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the blower assembly.
 - 1) Disconnect the blower assembly connector (2), remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from blower and detach clip (1).



■ Inspection

- (1) Remove the blower assembly.

- 1) Connect the positive (+) battery lead to terminal 1 and negative (-) battery lead to terminal 2. Check that the blower motor operates smoothly.



■ **Installation**

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

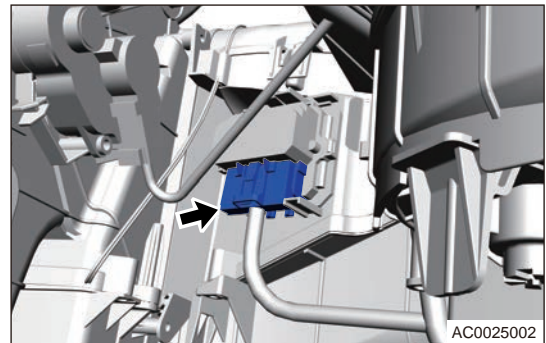
7.9 Blower Speed Regulation Module

■ **Removal**

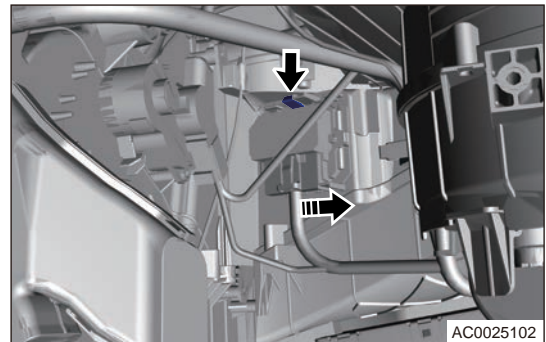
⚠ Warning

- **During normal operation, blower speed regulation module may be very hot. Turn off blower and wait for a few minutes to cool it before diagnosing or servicing, in order to avoid burns.**
- **DO NOT operate blower assembly when removing the blower speed regulation module from vehicle. Failure to do so may result in damage to the blower assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the glove box assembly.
- (4) Remove the blower speed regulation module.
 - 1) Disconnect the blower speed regulation module connector (1).



- 2) Detach blower speed regulation module fixing claw (- arrow), and move blower speed regulation module to right side.



- 3) Remove the blower speed regulation module.

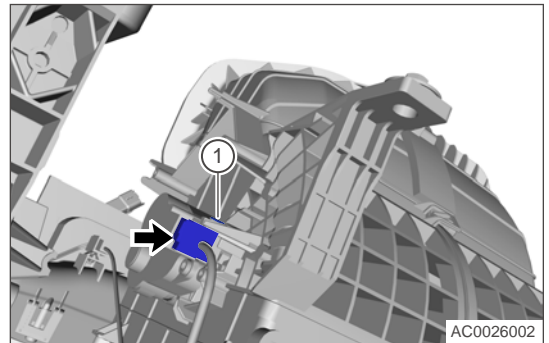
■ **Installation**

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.10 Inner/Outer Circulation Damper Servo Motor

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the glove box assembly.
- (4) Remove the inner/outer circulation damper servo motor.
 - 1) Disconnect the inner/outer circulation damper servo motor connector (arrow).
 - 2) Detach the fixing clip (1) from inner/outer circulation motor.
 - 3) Rotate counterclockwise to remove the inner/outer circulation damper motor.



■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

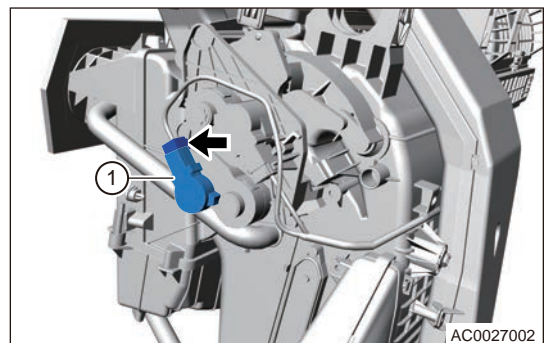
⚠ Caution

- When installing, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the inner/outer circulation damper motor lever and the inner/outer circulation damper set to ensure the motor operates smoothly.

7.11 Mode Damper Motor

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel left lower protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the mode damper motor.
 - 1) Disconnect the mode damper motor connector (arrow).
 - 2) Detach the fixing clip (1) from mode damper motor.
 - 3) Rotate counterclockwise to remove the mode damper motor.



■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

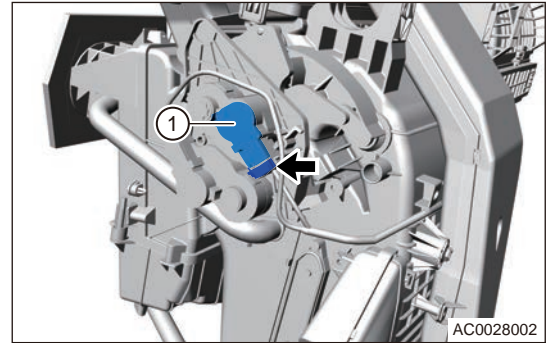
⚠ Caution

- When installing, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the mode damper motor lever and the mode damper set to ensure the motor operates smoothly.

7.12 Left Mix Damper Motor

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel left lower protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the left mix damper motor.
 - 1) Disconnect the left mix damper motor connector (arrow).
 - 2) Detach the mix damper motor fixing clip.
 - 3) Rotate counterclockwise to remove left mix damper motor (1).



■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

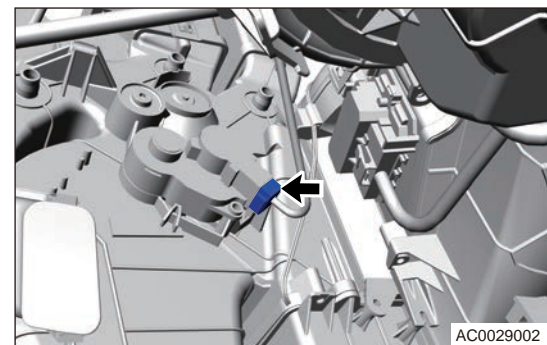
⚠ Caution

- When installing, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the left mix damper motor lever and the mix damper set to ensure the motor operates smoothly.

7.13 Right Mix Damper Motor

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the glove box assembly.
- (4) Remove the right mix damper motor.
 - 1) Disconnect the right mix damper motor connector (arrow).
 - 2) Detach the mix damper motor fixing clip.
 - 3) Rotate counterclockwise to remove right mix damper motor.



■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

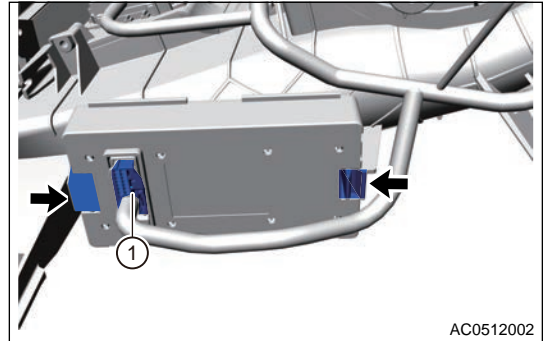
⚠ Caution

- When installing, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the right mix damper motor lever and the mix damper set to ensure the motor operates smoothly.

7.14 Automatic A/C Control Module (If Equipped)

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the automatic A/C control module.
 - 1) Disconnect the automatic A/C control module connector (1).
 - 2) Loosen 2 fixing clips (arrow) and remove automatic A/C control module.



■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

■ Write Automatic A/C Module (CLM) Configuration Data

- (1) Store the configuration data.
- (2) Connect the diagnostic tester, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and select “EXEED New TXL” model.
- (3) Click “CLM (Automatic A/C Module)” .
- (4) Click “Special Function” .
- (5) Click “Write Automatic A/C Module (CLM) Configuration Data” .
- (6) Click “Save and Paste (Transfer Configuration Data in Old Controller To New One Quickly)” .
- (7) Click “Store Old Configuration Data in Controller” .
- (8) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Read and Store Vehicle Configuration Code Successfully” . Click to “OK” and return.

⚠ Caution

If module is damaged, the configuration code of module can be applied to the company by DMS system when it can not be read out with diagnostic tester.

- (9) Write automatic A/C module (CLM) configuration data.
- (10) Click “CLM (Automatic A/C Module)” .
- (11) Click “Special Function” .
- (12) Click “Write Automatic A/C Module (CLM) Configuration Data” .
- (13) Click “Save and Paste (Transfer Configuration Data in Old Controller To New One Quickly)” .
- (14) Click “Write configuration data in new controller from old controller” .
- (15) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Enter 12-digit Repair Shop Code” .Click “OK” after input is completed.
- (16) After confirming that the repair shop code is correct, click "Yes".
- (17) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Last Saved Vehicle Configuration Code”, click "Yes" after confirming.
- (18) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Configuration Data Written is Successfully”.Click “OK” .
- (19) Click “OK” when the diagnostic tester interface shows “Configuration Data Back Up is Successfully”.
- (20) Click “OK” when the diagnostic tester interface shows “Configuration data Check is Valid”.

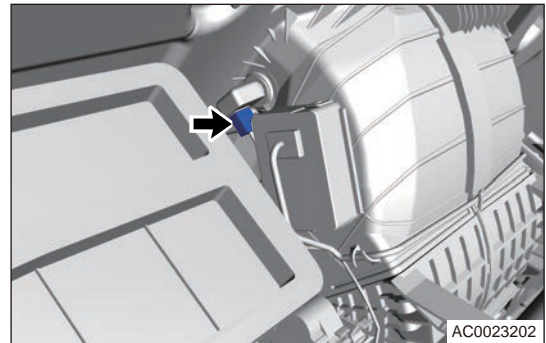
⚠ Caution

- The first 5 digits of repair shop code are the dealer code (ERP), and the last 7 digits can be entered at will.
- The correct vehicle configuration code must be entered, otherwise the normal functions of the vehicle will be affected, so please check again after entering it.

7.15 Air Quality Sensor (If Equipped)

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel assembly.
- (4) Remove the air quality sensor.
 - 1) Disconnect air quality sensor connector (arrow), and rotate counterclockwise to remove air quality sensor.



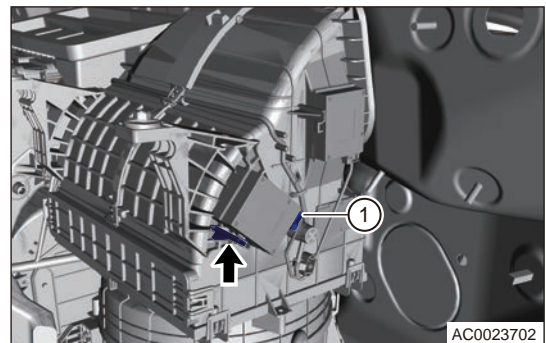
■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.16 Inside PM2.5 Sensor (If Equipped)

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel assembly.
- (4) Remove the inside PM2.5 sensor.
 - 1) Disconnect the inside PM2.5 sensor (1).
 - 2) Detach inside PM2.5 sensor fixing claw (arrow) and move inside PM2.5 sensor upward.
 - 3) Remove the inside PM2.5 sensor.



■ Installation

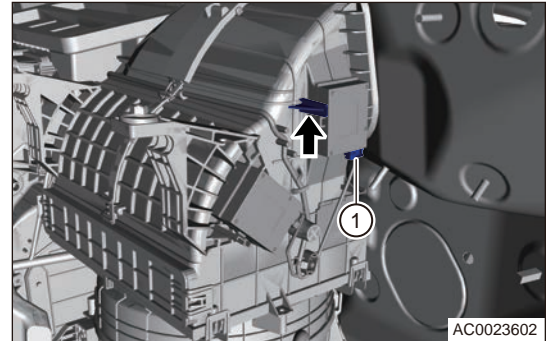
- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.17 Outside PM2.5 Sensor (If Equipped)

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.

- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel assembly.
- (4) Remove the outside PM2.5 sensor.
 - 1) Disconnect the outside PM2.5 sensor (1).
 - 2) Detach outside PM2.5 sensor fixing claw (arrow) and move outside PM2.5 sensor upward.
 - 3) Remove the outside PM2.5 sensor.



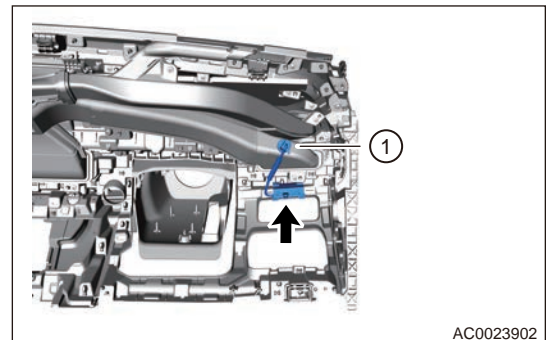
■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.18 Anion Generator (If Equipped)

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel assembly.
- (4) Remove the anion generator.
 - 1) Disconnect the anion emitter wire harness fixing clip.
 - 2) Rotate and remove anion emitter (1).
 - 3) Remove 2 fixing screws (arrow) and anion generator.



■ Inspection

- (1) Use air ion concentration tester to measure the concentration directly in front of the anion generator.
- (2) Take a transparent container with a cover, put smoke dust into it, and then put the anion generator into it, the dust will disappear after working for 1-8 seconds.

■ Installation

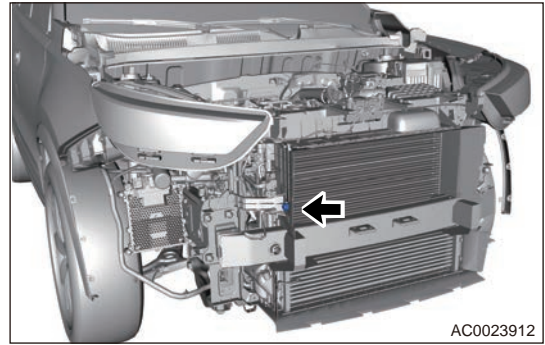
- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.19 Outside Temperature Sensor

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove the outside temperature sensor.

- 1) Pinch clip of outside temperature sensor and push it outward in direction of arrow to remove outside temperature sensor from air deflector.
- 2) Remove the wire harness connector.
- 3) Remove the outside temperature sensor.



■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.20 HVAC Assembly

■ Removal

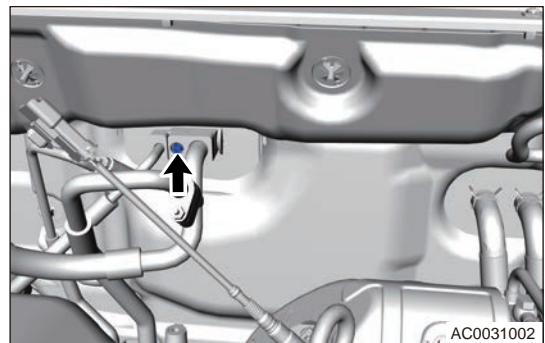
⚠ Caution

- **Special service device for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant must be used to recover/charge refrigerant.**
- **Be careful not to damage hoses during removal and installation.**
- **Always keep work area in good ventilation.**
- **Disconnected A/C line and connecting part should be sealed to prevent foreign matter from entering.**

- (1) Recover the refrigerant from A/C system (For details, refer to replacement of refrigerant).
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the driver airbag. (For details, refer to removal and installation of driver airbag).
- (5) Remove the steering wheel assembly (For details, refer to removal and installation of steering wheel assembly).
- (6) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly (For details, refer to removal and installation of auxiliary fascia console body assembly).
- (7) Remove the instrument panel body assembly (For details, refer to removal and installation of instrument panel body assembly).
- (8) Remove the instrument panel crossmember assembly (For details, refer to removal and installation of instrument panel crossmember).
- (9) Remove the HVAC assembly.

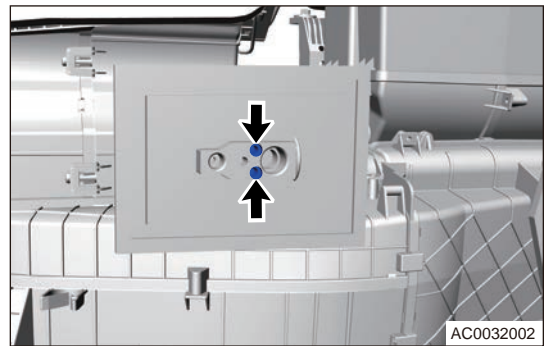
- 1) Remove the A/C high/low pressure line fixing bolt (arrow).

Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

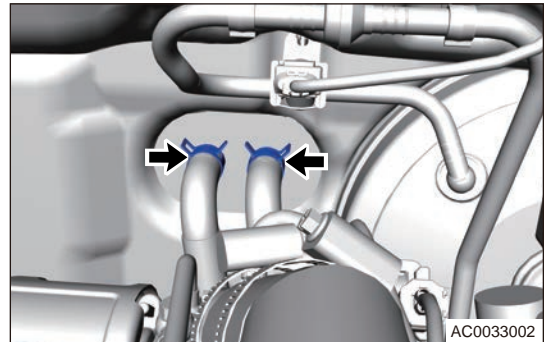


- 2) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) from expansion valve and remove expansion valve assembly.

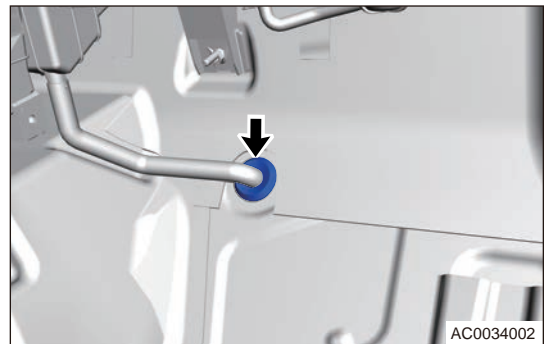
Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 3) Using snap spring pliers, disengage the fixing clamp (arrow) from heating inlet and outlet hoses to detach the inlet and outlet hoses.

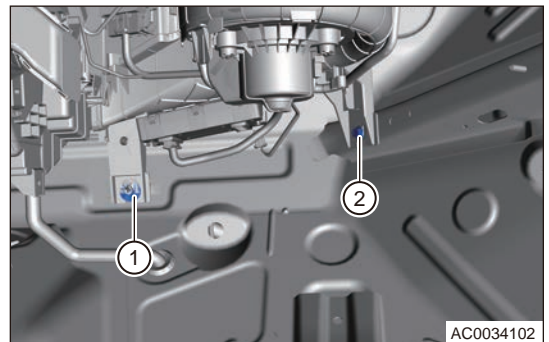


- 4) Disengage the outlet hose of HVAC and fixing bush rubber (arrow) of body.



- 5) Remove HVAC fixing nut (1) and fixing bolt (2).

Tightening torque: $7 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

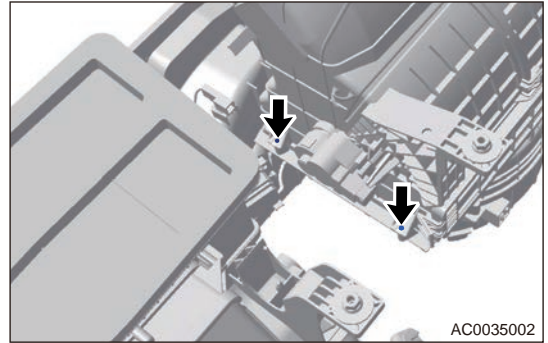


- 6) Carefully remove HVAC assembly from cabin.

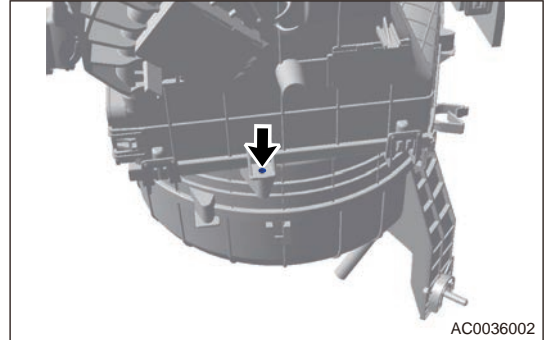
■ Disassembly

- (1) Remove the blower assembly.
- (2) Remove the blower speed regulation module.
- (3) Remove the inner/outer circulation damper motor.
- (4) Remove the left mix damper servo motor.
- (5) Remove the mode damper motor.
- (6) Remove the right mix damper motor (automatic A/C).
- (7) Remove the A/C element assembly.

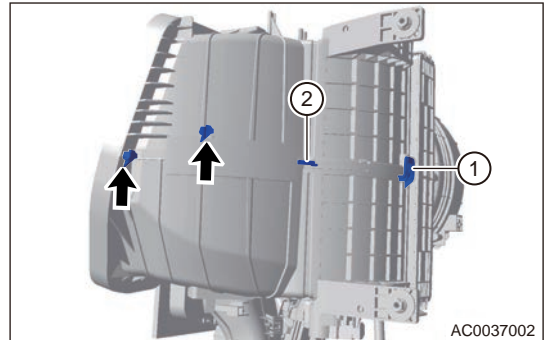
- (8) Remove the inner/outer damper set.
 - 7) Remove 2 fixing screws (arrow) from inlet air duct assembly.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



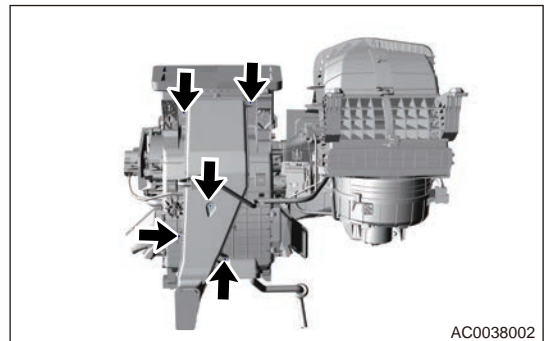
- 8) Remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from inlet air duct assembly.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



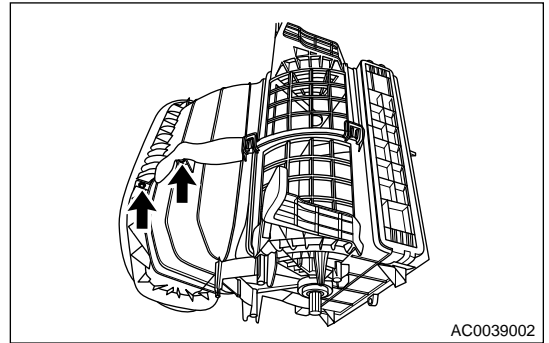
- 9) Remove the inlet air duct assembly.
 - 10) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) from inner/outer damper set, and disengage 2 fixing clips.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- (9) Remove the A/C wire harness assembly.
 - 1) Remove 5 fixing screws (arrow) from rear duct.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



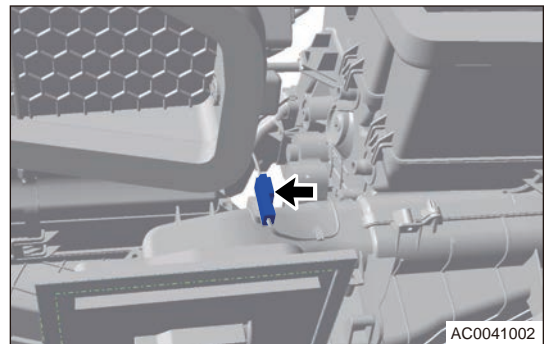
2) Disengage 2 wire harness fixing clips (arrow).



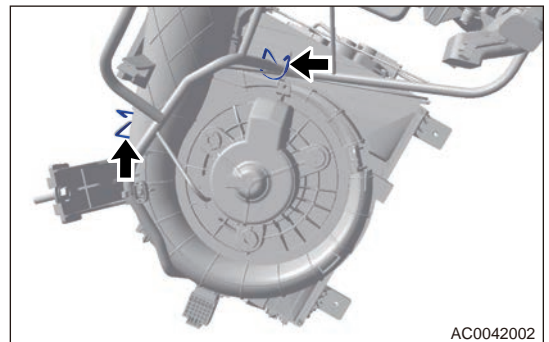
3) Disengage 1 wire harness fixing clip (arrow).



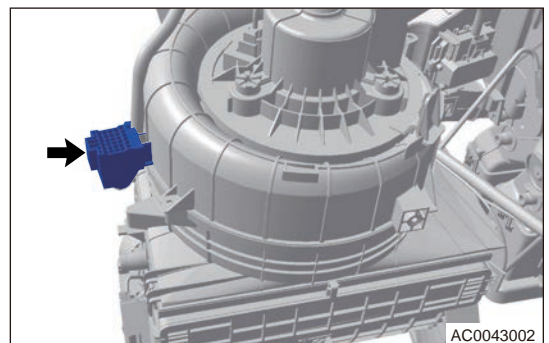
4) Disconnect the evaporator tank temperature sensor (arrow).



5) Disengage 2 fixing clips (arrow) of A/C wire harness from HVAC.



6) Disengage the A/C wire harness connector (arrow) from HVAC.

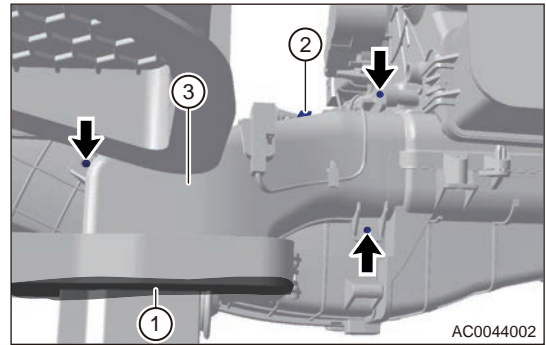


7) Remove the electric A/C wire harness.

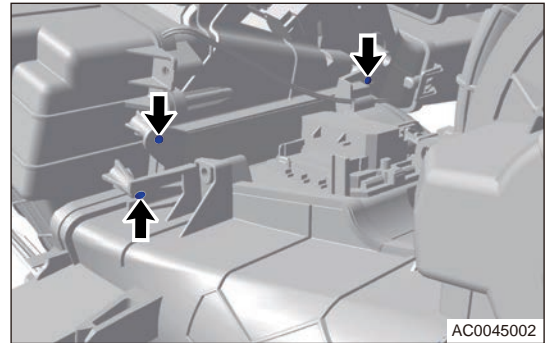
(10) Remove the blower volute assembly.

1) Disengage fixing clip from evaporator tank temperature sensor. Remove the sponge (1) and 3 fixing screws (arrow), disengage fixing clip (2) and open case (3).

Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

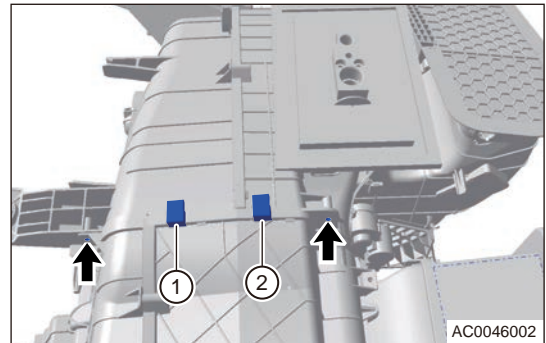


2) Remove 3 fixing screws (arrow).



3) Remove 2 fixing screws (arrow), disengage 2 fixing clips (1) and (2).

Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

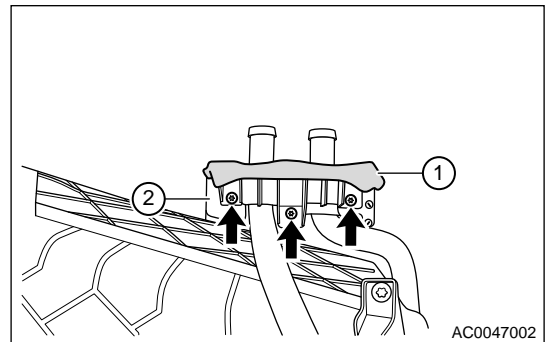


4) Remove the blower volute assembly.

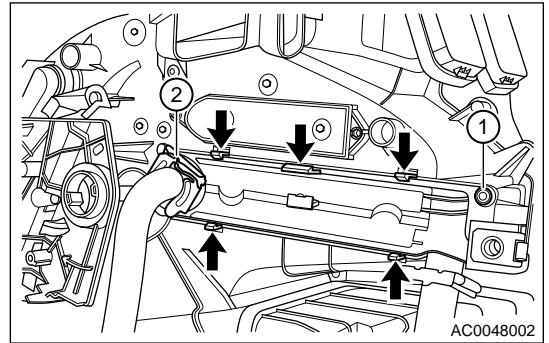
(11) Remove the heater core assembly

1) Remove 3 fixing screws (arrow), disengage sponge (1) and open pressing plate (2).

Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

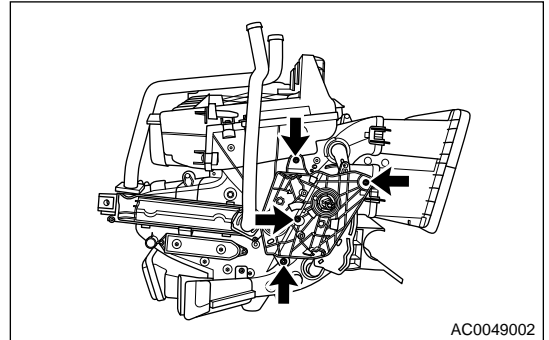


- 2) Remove 2 screws (1) and (2) from heater core fixing panel, disengage 5 clips (arrow) from heater core fixing panel.



- 3) Remove 4 fixing screws (arrow) and damper set pressing plate.

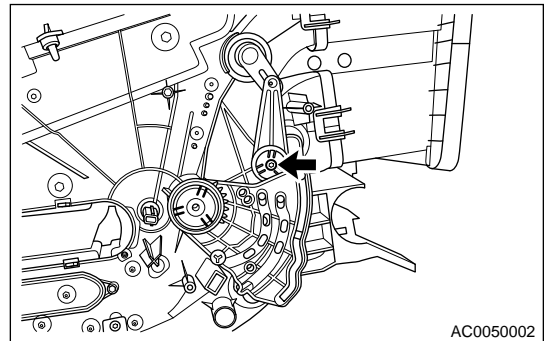
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



(12) Remove the damper drive set

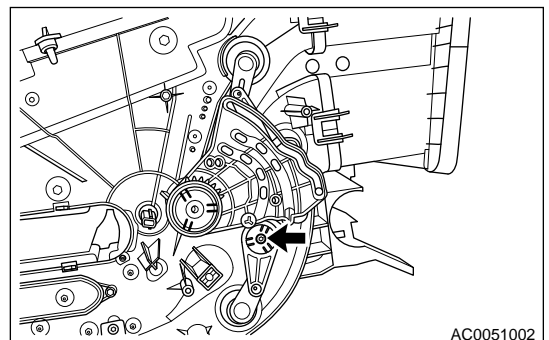
- 1) Remove the fixing screw (arrow) from damper drive set.

Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 2) Remove the fixing bolt (arrow) from damper drive set.

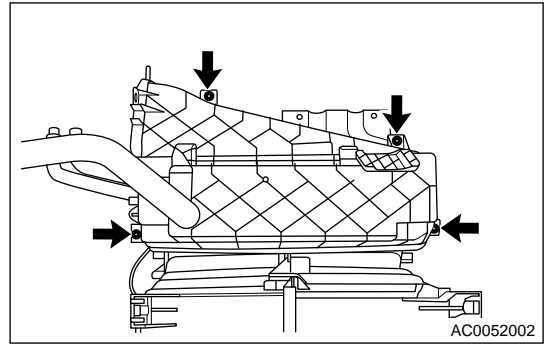
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



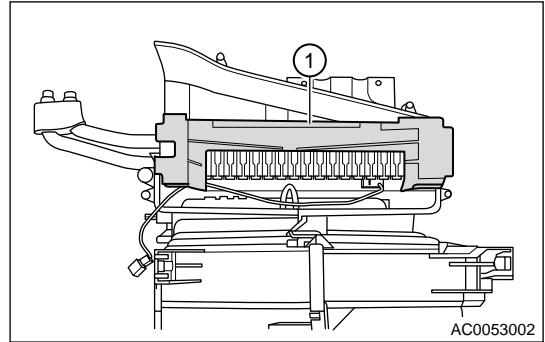
(13) Remove the evaporator assembly

- 1) Remove 4 fixing screws (arrow) between evaporator housing and evaporator case.

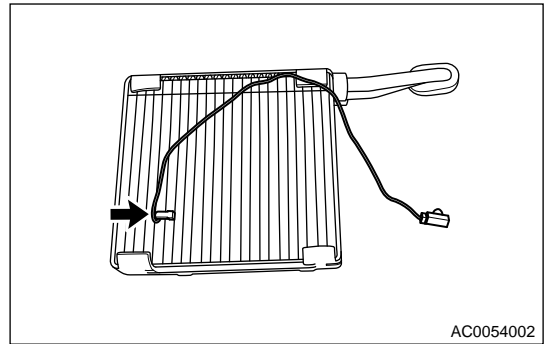
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 2) Remove evaporator assembly (1) from evaporator tank.

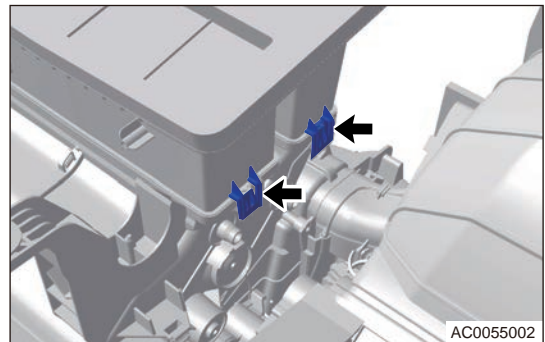


- 3) Remove the evaporator tank temperature sensor (- arrow) from evaporator assembly.

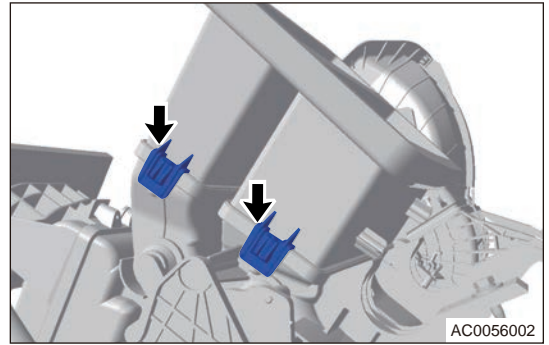


(14) Remove the damper set

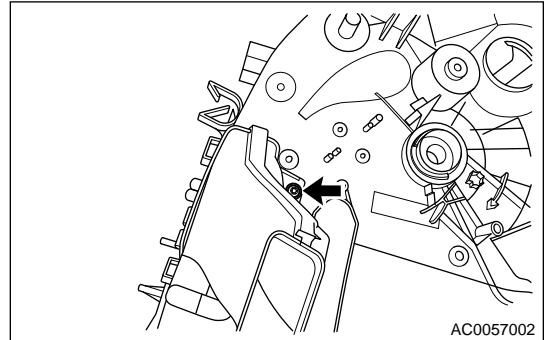
- 1) Disengage 2 fixing clips (arrow) from outlet shield.



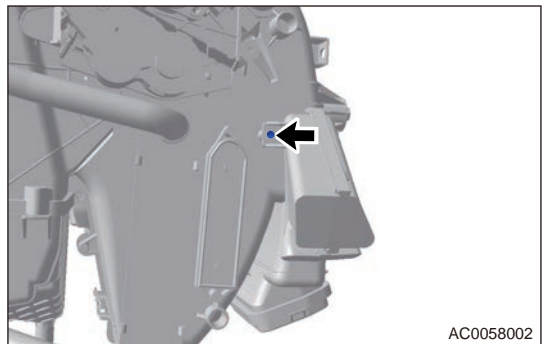
2) Disengage 2 fixing clips (arrow) from outlet shield.



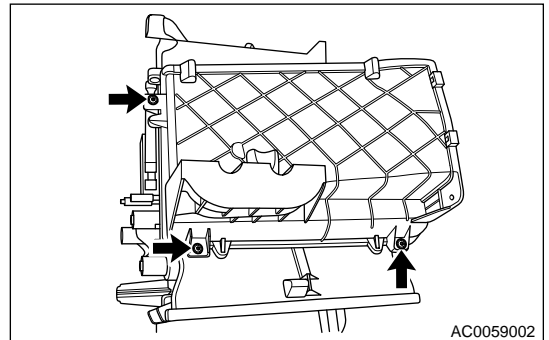
3) Remove 1 fixing screw (arrow) and rear right outlet.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



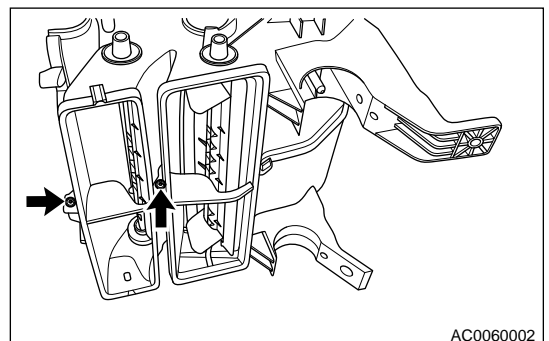
4) Remove 1 fixing screw (arrow) and rear left outlet.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



5) Remove 3 fixing screws (arrow) from evaporator case.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

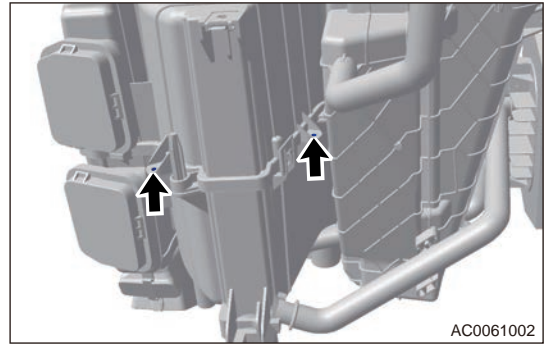


6) Remove 2 fixing screws (arrow) from damper set housing.
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

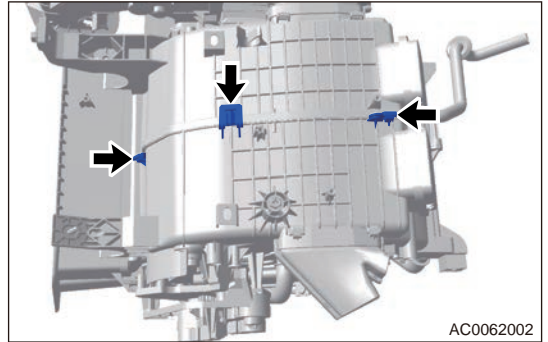


- 7) Remove 2 fixing screws (arrow) from damper set housing.

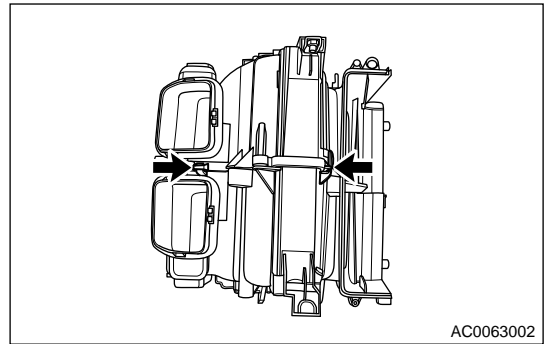
Tightening torque: $1.2 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



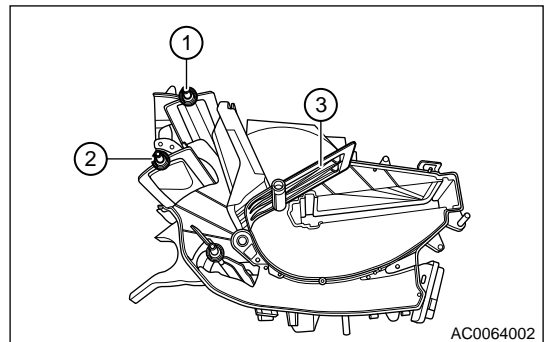
- 8) Remove 3 fixing clips (arrow) from damper set housing.



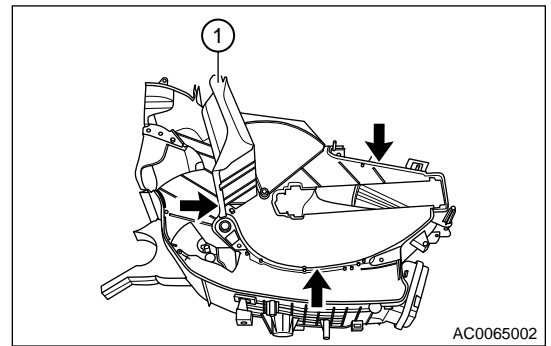
- 9) Remove 2 fixing clips (arrow) from damper set housing.



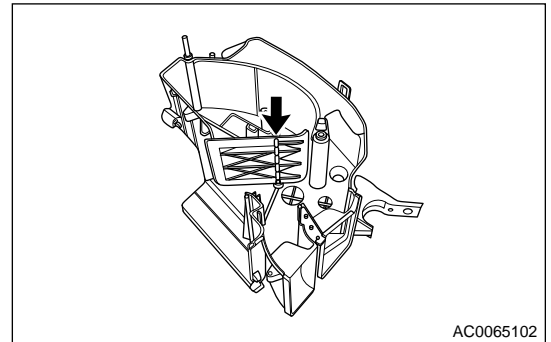
- 10) Disengage the damper set housing.
- 11) Remove defroster damper set (1), face damper set (2) and right inner damper set (3).



12) Remove 3 locating plates (arrow) and air deflector (1) from damper housing.

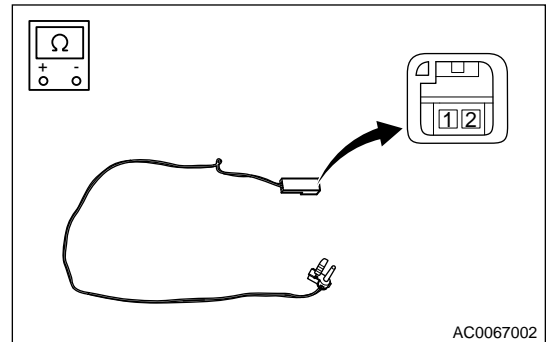


13) Remove the right inner damper set (arrow).



■ Inspection

- (1) Check the evaporator temperature sensor.
 - 1) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure the resistance of evaporator temperature sensor according to the table below.



Multimeter Connection	Temperature (°C)	Standard Resistance (Ω)
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	-5	7790
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	0	6194
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	5	4963
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	10	4001
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	15	3245
Terminal 1 - Terminal 2	20	2648

Hint:

- Resistance decreases as temperature increases.
- If result is not as specified, replace evaporator temperature sensor.

⚠ Caution

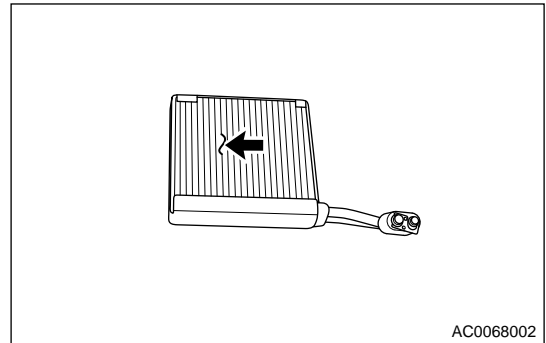
- Resistance value may change even if sensor is touched slightly. Make sure that connector of sensor is held firmly.
- During measurement, sensor temperature must be almost the same as the ambient temperature.

(2) Check the evaporator core assembly

- 1) Check if evaporator core assembly is cracked, damaged and leaked. If any problem is found, replace the evaporator core assembly.
- 2) Check fin for bends.

Hint:

If any fin is bent, carefully straighten it with a screwdriver or pliers.

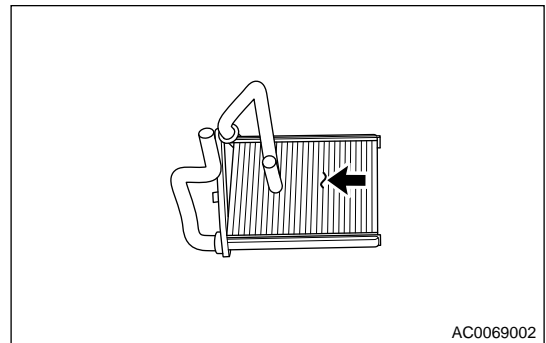


(3) Check the heater core assembly

- 1) Check if heater core assembly is cracked, damaged or leaked. Check if heater core assembly is cracked, damaged or leaked.
- 2) Check fin for bends.

Hint:

If any fin is bent, carefully straighten it with a screwdriver or pliers.



(4) Check damper control mechanism assembly

- 1) Check if inner/outer circulation damper adjustment mechanism is stuck, deformed, damaged or if it has fallen out. Replace as necessary.
- 2) Check if mode damper adjustment mechanism is stuck, deformed, damaged or if it has fallen out. Replace as necessary.
- 3) Check if face/defrost damper set is stuck, deformed, damaged or if it has fallen out. Replace as necessary.

■ **Assembly**

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

⚠ Caution

- (1) If evaporator core is reused, do not insert evaporator temperature sensor into its original position. Insert it to a location that is 1 fin to the right or left of its previous location.
- (2) During installation, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the inner/outer circulation damper adjustment mechanism to ensure that it can operate smoothly.
- (3) During installation, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the mix damper adjustment mechanism set to ensure that it can operate smoothly.
- (4) During installation, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the face damper adjustment mechanism to ensure that it can operate smoothly.
- (5) During installation, apply a small amount of grease to contact surface of the defrost damper adjustment mechanism to ensure that it can operate smoothly.
- (6) Always check that inner/outer circulation damper mechanism assembly operates normally after installation.
- (7) Always check that mix damper mechanism assembly operates normally after installation.
- (8) Always check that face damper mechanism assembly operates normally after installation.
- (9) Always check that defrost damper mechanism assembly operates normally after installation.
- (10) Tighten fixing bolts and nuts to specified torques.
- (11) It is necessary to replace refrigerant line O-ring seal when installing refrigerant line. Failure to do so may result in refrigerant leaks.
- (12) It is necessary to replace refrigerant line O-ring seal when installing refrigerant line. Failure to do so may result in refrigerant leaks.
- (13) Only use specified O-ring, as it is made of special materials for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant system.
- (14) Only use recommended refrigerant oil which is applicable to A/C compressor assembly on vehicle.
- (15) Be sure to recharge refrigerant and check for refrigerant leakage after installation.
- (16) Be sure to recharge engine cooling system and check for coolant leakage after installation.

■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.21 A/C Coaxial Line Assembly**■ Removal****⚠ Warning**

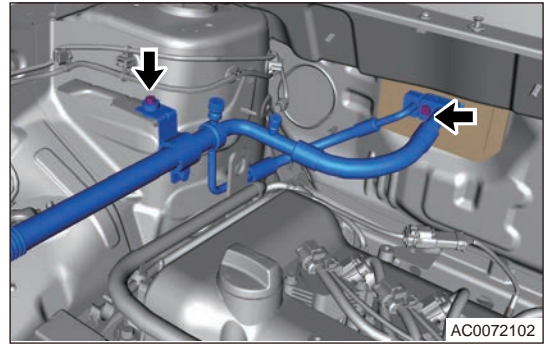
- Special service device for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant must be used to recover/charge refrigerant.
- Always keep work area in good ventilation.
- Disconnected A/C line and connecting part should be sealed to prevent foreign matter from entering.

- (1) Recover the refrigerant from A/C system (For details, refer to replacement of refrigerant).
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Remove the A/C coaxial line assembly.

- 1) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) between A/C coaxial line and expansion valve, and disengage A/C coaxial line.

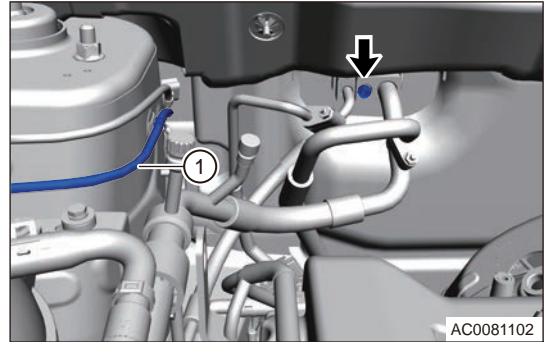
Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- 2) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) from A/C coaxial line.



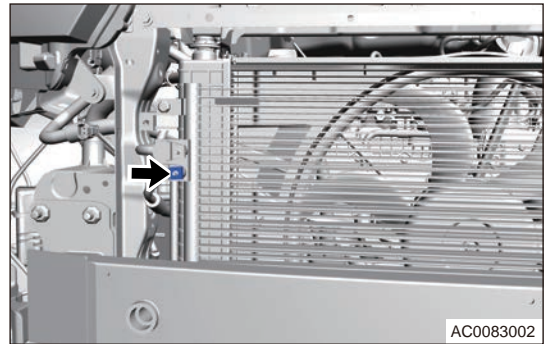
- 3) Disconnect the A/C pressure switch connector (1), and remove the coupling bolt (arrow) between A/C high pressure line fixing bracket and body.

Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



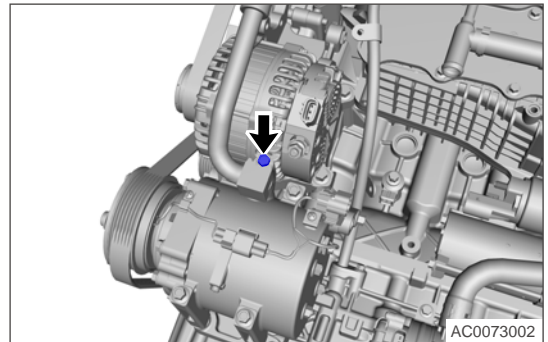
- 4) Remove 1 fixing nut (arrow) between A/C coaxial line assembly and condenser assembly.

Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 5) Remove 1 fixing nut (arrow) between A/C coaxial line assembly and A/C compressor assembly.

Tightening torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Tighten fixing bolts and nuts to specified torques.
- It is necessary to replace refrigerant line O-ring seal when installing refrigerant line. Failure to do so may result in refrigerant leaks.
- Lubricate new rubber O-ring with clean refrigerant oil and install it to refrigerant line joint.
- Only use specified O-ring, as it is made of special materials for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant system.
- Only use recommended refrigerant oil which is applicable to A/C compressor assembly on vehicle.
- Perform recharging for A/C system and check for refrigerant leakage.

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.22 Compressor to Condenser Line Assembly

■ Removal

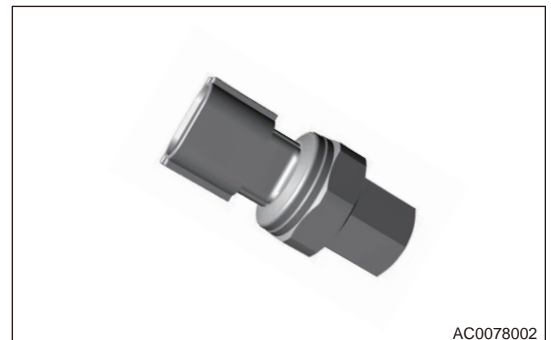
⚠ Warning

- Special service device for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant must be used to recover/charge refrigerant.
- Always keep work area in good ventilation.
- Disconnected A/C line and connecting part should be sealed to prevent foreign matter from entering.

- (1) Recover the refrigerant from A/C system (For details, refer to replacement of refrigerant).
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Remove the compressor to condenser line assembly.

- 1) Remove the fixing nut (arrow) from compressor to condenser line assembly.

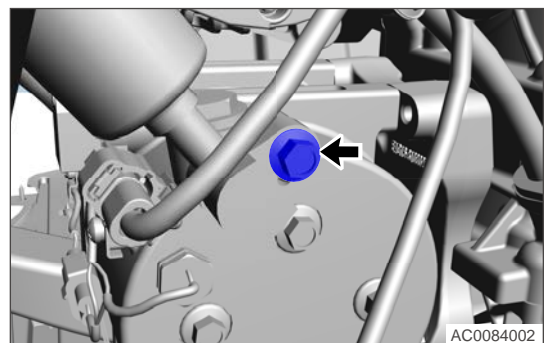
Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 2) Remove the fixing bolt (arrow) between compressor to condenser line assembly and compressor assembly, and disengage the compressor to condenser line assembly from compressor assembly.

Tightening torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- 3) Remove the compressor to condenser line assembly.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Tighten fixing bolts and nuts to specified torques.
- It is necessary to replace refrigerant line O-ring seal when installing refrigerant line. Failure to do so may result in refrigerant leaks.
- Lubricate new rubber O-ring with clean refrigerant oil and install it to refrigerant line joint.
- Only use specified O-ring, as it is made of special materials for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant system.
- Only use recommended refrigerant oil which is applicable to A/C compressor assembly on vehicle.
- Perform recharging for A/C system and check for refrigerant leakage.

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

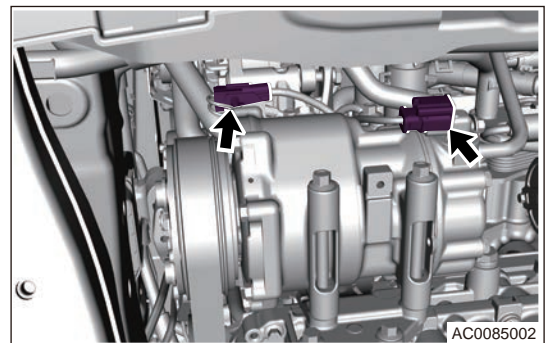
7.23 Compressor Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Caution

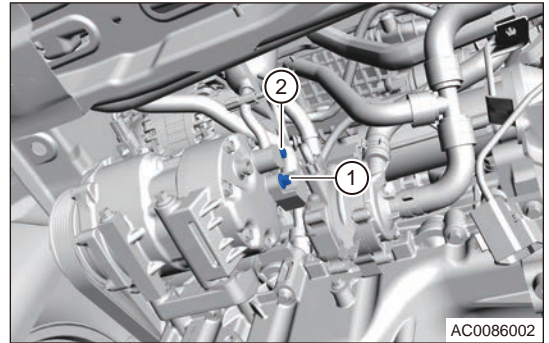
- Special service device for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant must be used to recover/charge refrigerant.
- Always keep work area in good ventilation.
- Disconnected A/C line and connecting part should be sealed to prevent foreign matter from entering.
- If A/C compressor assembly has an internal malfunction, it is necessary to replace the A/C fluid line. Failure to do so may result in serious damage to A/C compressor assembly after replacing.
- When replacing compressor assembly, it is necessary to measure the refrigerant oil amount removed from new A/C compressor assembly.

- (1) Recover the refrigerant from A/C system (For details, refer to replacement of refrigerant).
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the accessory drive belt.
- (5) Remove the engine lower protector assembly.
- (6) Remove the compressor assembly.
 - 1) Disconnect the compressor assembly wire harness connector (arrow).



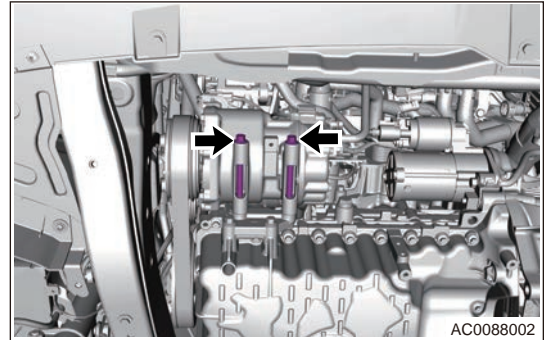
- 2) Remove the high/low pressure line connecting bolts (arrow) from A/C compressor respectively, and disengage high/low pressure line.

Tightening torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 3) Remove 4 fixing bolts (arrow) between compressor assembly and mounting bracket, remove A/C compressor assembly.

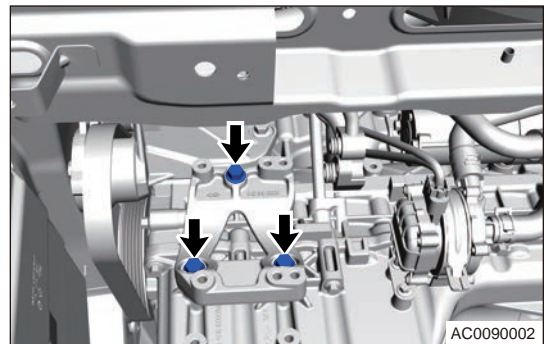
Tightening torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 4) Remove 3 fixing bolts (arrow) between A/C compressor mounting bracket and engine.

Tightening torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- 5) Remove the A/C compressor mounting bracket assembly.



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Tighten fixing bolts and nuts to specified torques.
- It is necessary to replace refrigerant line O-ring seal when installing refrigerant line. Failure to do so may result in refrigerant leaks.
- Lubricate new rubber O-ring with clean refrigerant oil and install it to refrigerant line joint.
- Only use specified O-ring, as it is made of special materials for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant system.
- Only use recommended refrigerant oil which is applicable to A/C compressor assembly on vehicle.
- Perform recharging for A/C system and check for refrigerant leakage.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

7.24 A/C Pressure Switch

■ Removal

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, unplug the wire harness connector of pressure switch.
- (2) Remove the pressure switch with tools. (There is a small amount of refrigerant leakage, pay attention to make protective measures.)

Tightening torque: $10 \sim 12 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

■ Installation

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

⚠ Caution

- Tighten fixing bolts to specified torques.
- It is necessary to replace refrigerant line O-ring seal when installing refrigerant line. Failure to do so may result in refrigerant leaks.
- Lubricate new rubber O-ring with clean refrigerant oil and install it to refrigerant line joint.
- Only use specified O-ring, as it is made of special materials for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant system.
- Only use recommended refrigerant oil which is applicable to A/C compressor assembly on vehicle.
- When installing a new compressor assembly, always remove a certain amount of refrigerant oil from new A/C compressor assembly as specified.
- Perform recharging for A/C system and check for refrigerant leakage.

7.25 Condenser Assembly (w/ Receiver Drier)

■ Removal

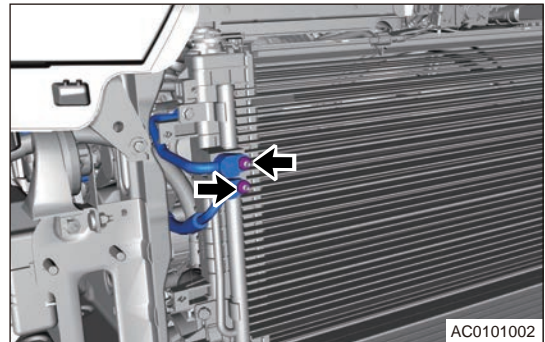
⚠ Warning

- Special service device for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant must be used to recover/charge refrigerant.
- Always keep work area in good ventilation.
- Disconnected A/C line and connecting part should be sealed to prevent foreign matter from entering.

- (1) Recover the refrigerant from A/C system (For details, refer to replacement of refrigerant).
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the front bumper assembly (For details, refer to removal and installation of front bumper).
- (5) Remove the condenser assembly (w/ receiver drier).

- 1) Remove the fixing bolts (1) and (2) between high/low pressure line and condenser (right), and disengage the high/low pressure line, and remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) from condenser.

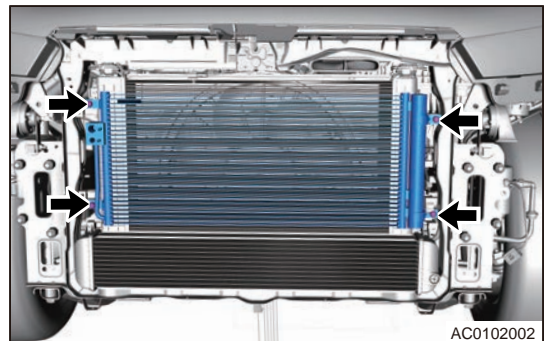
Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



AC0101002

- 2) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) between radiator assembly and condenser assembly (left).

Tightening torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



AC0102002

- 3) Carefully remove the condenser assembly (w/ receiver drier) from below.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the condenser fins.
 - 1) If condenser fins are dirty, wash with water. And then dry fins with compressed air.
 - 2) If any condenser fin is bent, straighten it with the screwdriver or pliers.

Caution

DO NOT damage condenser fins.

■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

Caution

- Tighten fixing bolts to specified torques.
- It is necessary to replace refrigerant line O-ring seal when installing refrigerant line. Failure to do so may result in refrigerant leaks.
- Lubricate new rubber O-ring with clean refrigerant oil and install it to refrigerant line joint.
- Only use specified O-ring, as it is made of special materials for R134a\R1234yf (European Union) Refrigerant system.
- Only use recommended refrigerant oil which is applicable to A/C compressor assembly on vehicle.
- When installing a new compressor assembly, always remove a certain amount of refrigerant oil from new A/C compressor assembly as specified.
- Perform recharging for A/C system and check for refrigerant leakage.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Restraint System

■ Description

This vehicle adopts the occupant restraint system, which includes active and supplemental types. Active restraint system requires occupants to take some actions, such as fastening seat belt; while supplemental restraint system requires no actions from occupants.

■ Active Restraint System

- (1) Driver seat belt and front passenger seat belt.
- (2) Rear seat belt.

■ Supplemental Restraint System

- (1) Airbag system

■ Operation

Supplemental restraint system can improve the safety of occupants only when used in combination with seat belts. Occupants must fasten their seat belts in order to gain full protection from supplemental restraint system. Supplemental restraint system circuit is continuously monitored and controlled by SRS control module assembly. Airbag indicator on instrument cluster illuminates for approximately 6 seconds for a test each time ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to "ON". Airbag indicator goes off after the test is completed. If indicator comes on at any time other than test time, it indicates that there is a problem in supplemental restraint system circuit. Whether airbag deploys or not depends on the angle and severity of an impact. When vehicle is subjected to a severe collision, microprocessor of airbag module in supplemental restraint system sends signals to corresponding inflator units of airbags to deploy the airbags quickly, thus protecting occupants.

Caution

- **Never expose airbag components directly to hot air or open flames.**
- **Never attempt to disassemble or repair airbag components.**
- **Removed airbags should be kept properly. Never put other objects on them. If triggered accidentally, it may cause personal injury.**
- **As a disposable component, the airbag must be replaced after deployment and avoid reusing it.**
- **Always dispose of vehicle together with airbags, or the airbags may be triggered accidentally to cause personal injury.**

Warning

- **Before removing airbag system components, disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for at least 90 seconds. Before servicing steering system, remove the driver airbag and spiral cable for safekeeping.**
- **If vehicle has been involved in a minor collision but the airbags do not deploy, always inspect airbag components.**
- **If airbags may be touched during servicing, remove the airbags as necessary and keep it properly before servicing.**
- **Never use airbag components from another vehicle. When replacing the airbag components, replace with new ones.**
- **If an airbag component is dropped or if there are any cracks, dents or other defects in the case, bracket or connector, replace the airbag component with a new one.**
- **Information labels are attached to the periphery of airbag components. Always follow the cautions and instructions on labels.**

■ Configuration and Learning

Hint:

Perform ACM configuration data learning when replacing with a new module.

Use diagnostic tester to perform ACM configuration learning. For working flow, refer to diagnostic tester menu function and datastream of supplemental restraint system.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Caution

- Write VIN code before writing in ACM configuration data.
- Be sure to switch EOL mode to normal mode before writing in ACM configuration data.

■ IMU Off-line Calibration

Hint:

Perform off-line calibration when replacing with a new module or IMU uncalibrated fault occurs. Use diagnostic tester to perform IMU off-line calibration. For working flow, refer to diagnostic tester menu function and datastream of supplemental restraint system.

Caution

- Be sure to switch EOL mode to normal mode before performing IMU off-line calibration.
- Be sure to exit EOL mode after calibration is completed. Otherwise, it may affect collision judgment and airbag cannot deploy even when collision occurs.

■ Writing VIN Code

Hint:

- It is necessary to write VIN code after replacing with a new module.
- Use diagnostic tester to perform VIN code writing. For working flow, refer to diagnostic tester menu function and datastream of supplemental restraint system.

■ EOL Mode Switching

Hint:

- EOL mode switching is used to assist IMU and configuration; After both learnings are finished, be sure to switch EOL mode to normal mode; Using diagnostic tester to perform EOL mode switching.

Caution

- Be sure to exit EOL mode after calibration is completed. Otherwise, it may affect collision judgment and airbag cannot deploy even when collision occurs.

■ Precautions During Usage

Airbag is passive safety system component. In order to actually protect the passengers in collision with airbag, users should follow the precautions related to airbag usage:

- Driver and passengers should use belt correctly. Correct belt usage can protect human body and reduce the personal injury in accidents.
- DO NOT add any additional units without permission that may interfere or damage belt pretensioner or airbag.
- DO NOT place any objects on steering wheel and front passenger side instrument panel, or these objects may cut into the inflated airbag or become trajectory to injure human body.
- DO NOT add or reversely place seat cover for seats with side airbag.
- Children that are under twelve are not allowed to sit in front seat. For vehicles equipped with passenger airbag, backward facing child seat is not allowed to use on front passenger seat.
- It's only allowed to install genuine spare parts.
- Only authorized personnel can remove the controller, wire harness and connector from SRS system.
- If airbag and belt pretensioner are deployed in accident, airbag controller and all wire harness with airbag connectors must be replaced together with airbag and belt.
- SRS system in all vehicles have been matched and verified and it's forbidden to change vehicle structure and SRS system. Random addition and modification of SRS system and wire harness will make SRS system operate abnormally, leading to airbag fault deployment and undeployment, which results in personal injury.
- Airbag manufacturer suggests that the airbag should be replaced after 10 years.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Post-accident Repair and Inspection

(1) Post-accident components replacement of deployed airbag

- 1) SRS system components should be replaced immediately in accordance with the provisions in this manual after the airbag is deployed in an accident. After the airbag is deployed, there may be powder particles on airbag surface, which are primarily composed of chemical reaction product.

(2) Post-accident components replacement of seat belt

- 1) Some seat belts need to be replaced or recommended to be replaced if airbag is deployed in an accident:

Seat Belt	Replace or Not
Used limiting type belt in the event of an accident	It is necessary to replace it
Seat belt with pretensioner that must be exploded or has been exploded	It is necessary to replace it
Used common emergency lock type belt in the event of an accident	It is necessary to replace it
Height adjuster (the seat belt had been used in the event of an accident)	It is necessary to replace it

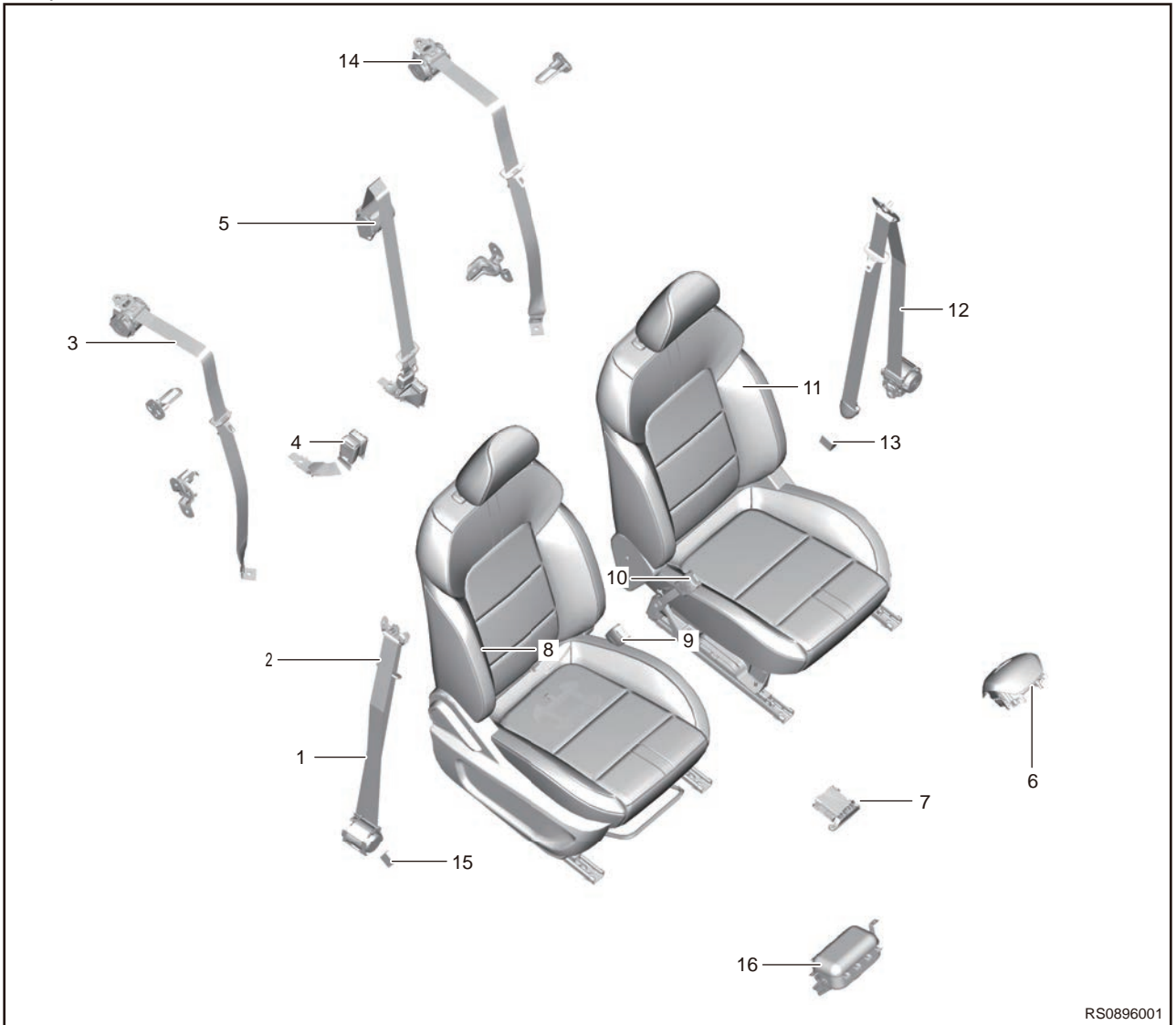
(3) Post-accident inspection of other components

- 1) No matter whether the airbag is deployed or not, specific inspection must be carried out after any collision. The steering column must be measured for dimension. Check the instrument panel and steering column cover for cracks or other damage, check the instrument panel support for deformation, bending, cracks or other damage and check the seat belt and installation fixing point.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Restraint System Components and Configuration Difference

Restraint system mainly consists of airbag system and seat belt. The schematic diagram for main components is as follows:



RS0896001

No.	Part Name	No.	Part Name
1	Front Right Seat Belt Assembly	9	Front Right Seat Belt Buckle
2	Height Adjuster	10	Front Left Seat Belt Buckle
3	Rear Right Seat Belt Assembly	11	Driver Side Seat Airbag Assembly
4	Seat Belt Buckle Assembly	12	Left Seat Belt Assembly
5	Rear Center Seat Belt Assembly	13	Front Left Collision Sensor
6	Driver Airbag Assembly	14	Rear Left Airbag Assembly

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

No.	Part Name	No.	Part Name
7	Airbag Controller Assembly	15	Right Side Collision Sensor
8	Front Passenger Side Seat Airbag Assembly	16	Front Passenger Airbag Assembly

■ Restraint System Function Introduction

Airbag: The controller controls ignition circuit and ignites airbag (and belt pretensioner) reasonably to keep occupants at proper position in the cabin when accident occurs, thus protecting occupants.

- (1) Driver airbag/front passenger airbag
It' s helpful to protect head and chest of driver and front passenger from being struck by components in vehicles.
- (2) Front airbag (if equipped)
It' s helpful to protect chest and hip of front passenger.
- (3) Curtain shield airbag (if equipped)
It' s helpful to protect head of passenger.
- (4) In M31T/M32T, the following types of belts are equipped together with common emergency lock type belt.

Emergency lock type belt.

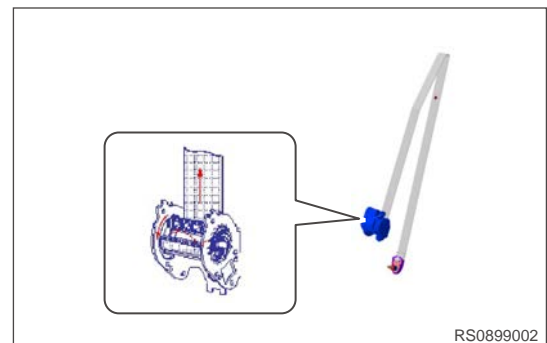
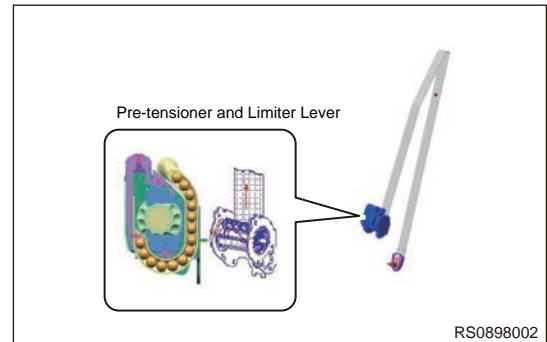
Reduce the pressure of belt on passengers, protect the occupants and prevent second collision.

Limiting type belt

Besides common emergency lock type belt, limiter lever is added. Reduce the pressure of belt on passengers, protect the occupants and prevent second collision.

Limiting type belt with pretensioner.

Besides common emergency lock type belt, pretensioner and limiter lever are added, which tightens the belt, reduces the pressure of belt on passengers, protects the occupants and prevents second collision during deployment.



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Airbag Control System Operation

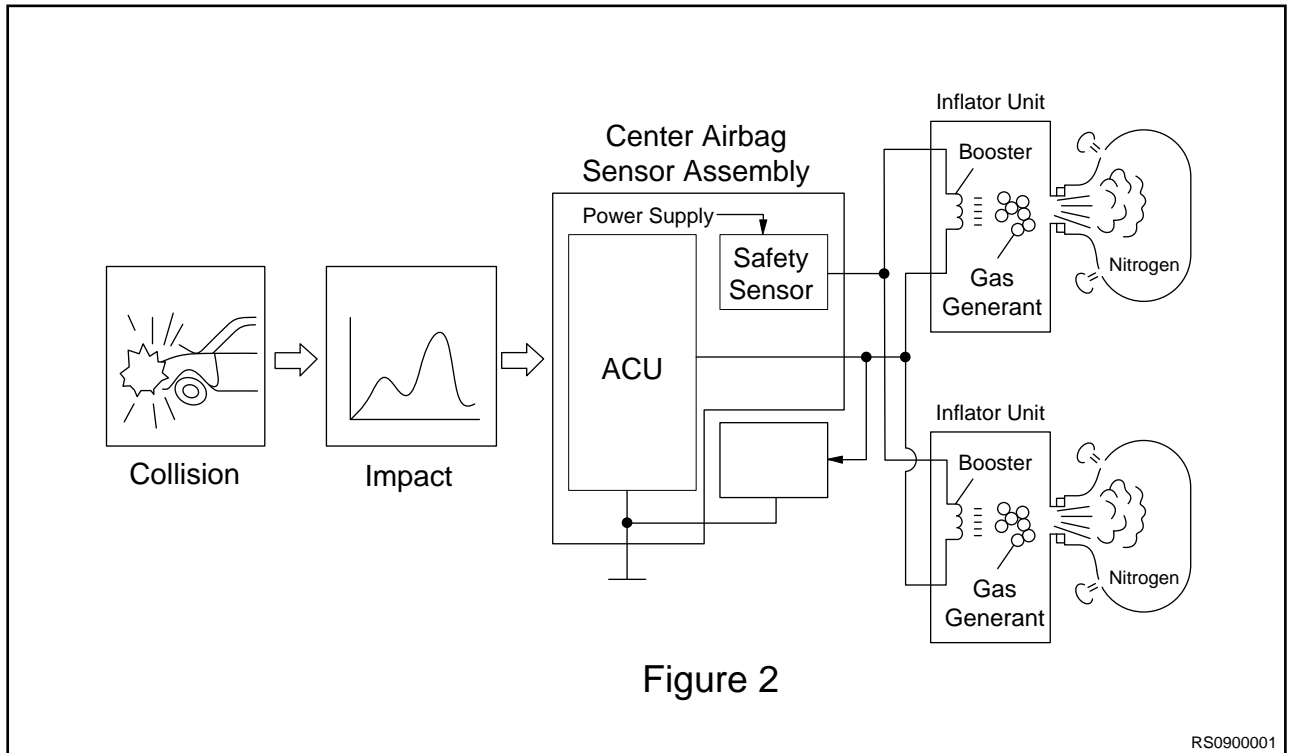
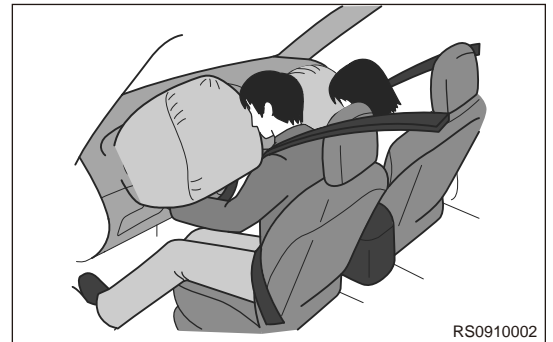


Figure 2

Operating Conditions

Front collision

- Front collision is detected by the sensor in controller.
- Front collision ignition deployment circuit: driver and passenger front airbags, all seat belt with pretensioners.

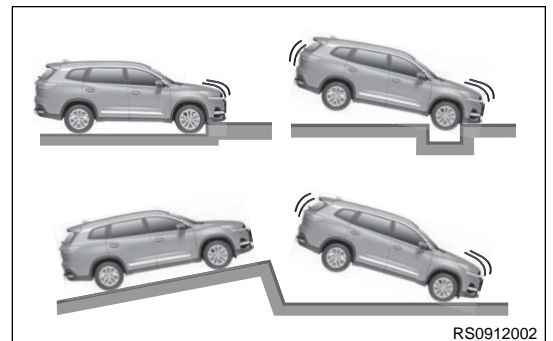


Side

- Side collision is detected by the side collision sensor in B-pillar and the Sensor in controller.
- Side collision ignition deployment circuit: Curtain shield airbag, seat airbag and seat belt with pretensioner on collision side.

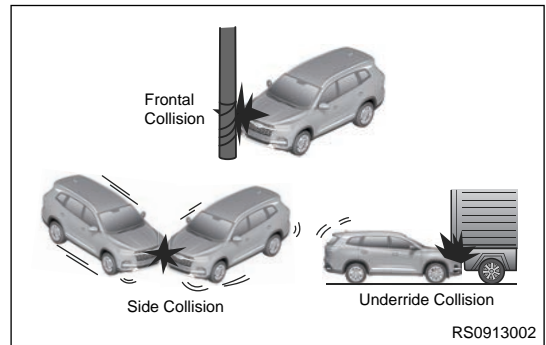
Other collisions

- If the bottom of vehicle is subjected to a severe impact, the driver airbag and front passenger airbag may also deploy as shown in illustration.

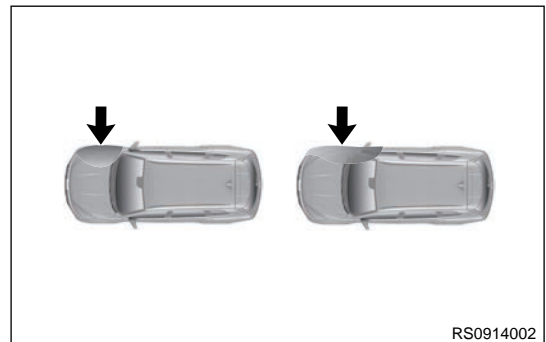


SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

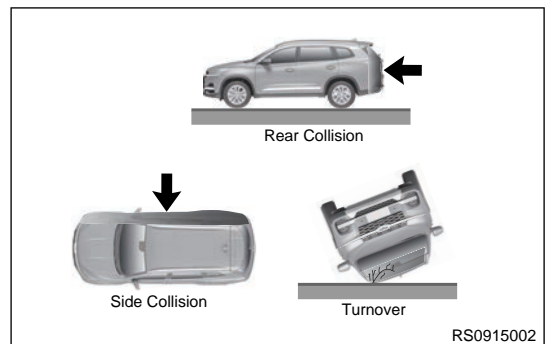
- As shown in illustration, if the vehicle goes under the bottom of truck etc. or involved in side collision, the driver airbag and front passenger airbag may not deploy.



- As shown in illustration, if a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment, or the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, the front side airbag and curtain shield airbag may not deploy.



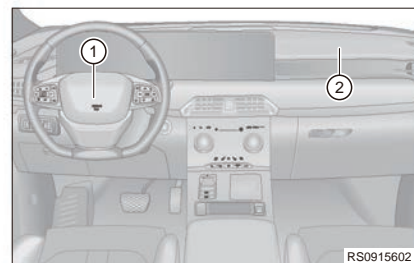
- The side airbag and curtain shield airbag will not generally deploy if the vehicle is involved in a front collision, rear collision or roll over.



■ Driver Front Airbag and Passenger Front Airbag

Driver front airbag is located on the steering wheel and integrated with the horn switch. Passenger front airbag is located above the glove box and inside the instrument panel upper body. As shown in illustration:

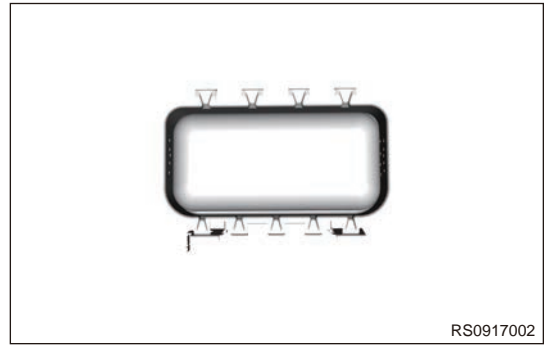
- Position of driver front airbag.
- Position of driver front airbag.



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Passenger front airbag

Resistance value: $2.0 \pm 0.3 \Omega$, it's strictly forbidden to measure resistance with multimeter!



Driver front airbag

Resistance value: $2.0 \pm 0.3 \Omega$, it's strictly forbidden to measure resistance with multimeter!



■ Side Collision Sensor and Front Seat Belt Pretensioner

Seat belt pretensioner and side collision sensor is located under the B-pillar.

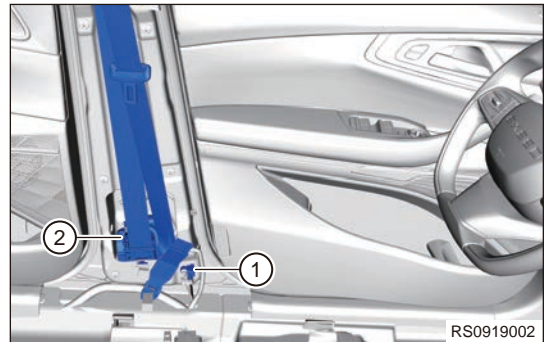
⚠ Caution

Seat belt pretensioner and side collision sensor positions on both sides are the same.

As shown in illustration:

- (1) Side collision sensor (1)
- (2) Seat belt pretensioner (2)

Resistance value is $2.0 \pm 0.3\Omega$, it's strictly forbidden to measure resistance with multimeter!



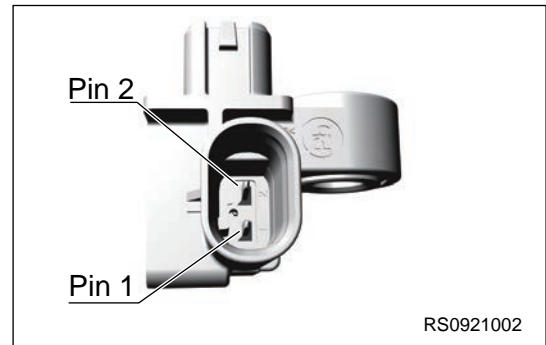
- (3) Side collision sensor is used to detect the vehicle side collision signal.



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

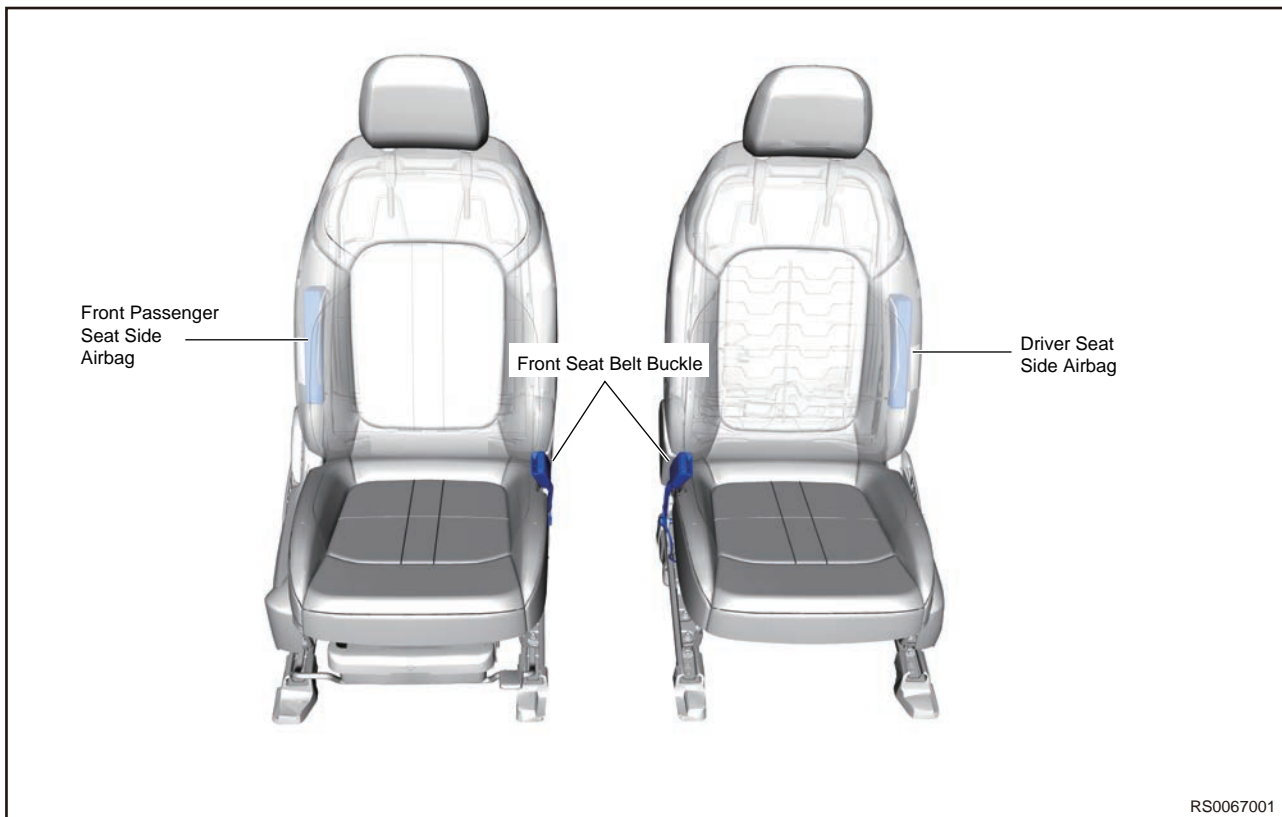
Terminal list

- (1) Signal
- (2) Ground



RS0921002

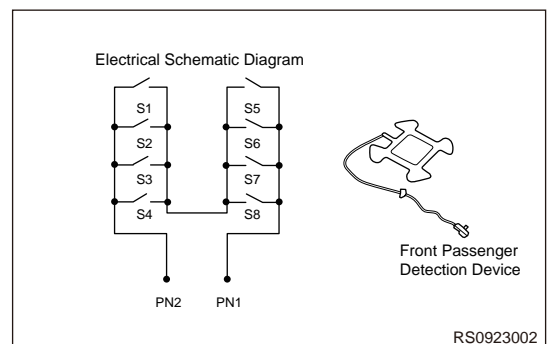
■ Front Passenger Side Airbag and Front Passenger Seat Belt Buckle



RS0067001

Airbag resistance on seat: $2.0 + 0.5 / -0.3\Omega$, it's strictly forbidden to measure resistance with multimeter!

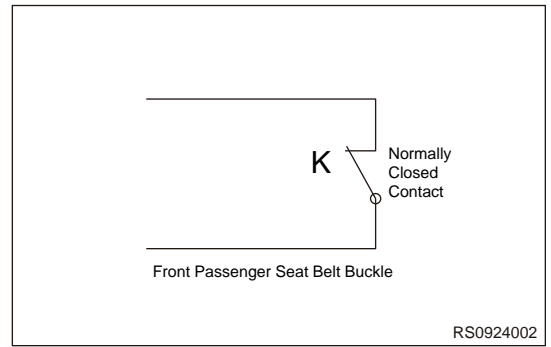
- Front passenger detection device schematic diagram as shown in illustration: Passenger loading status: When detected external resistance is lower than 100Ω , it's judged that there is passenger. When resistance is higher than 400Ω , it's judged that there is no passenger.



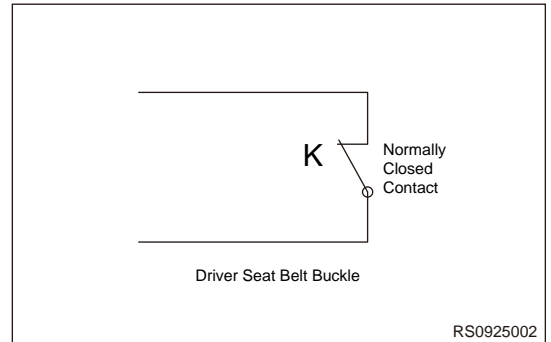
RS0923002

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

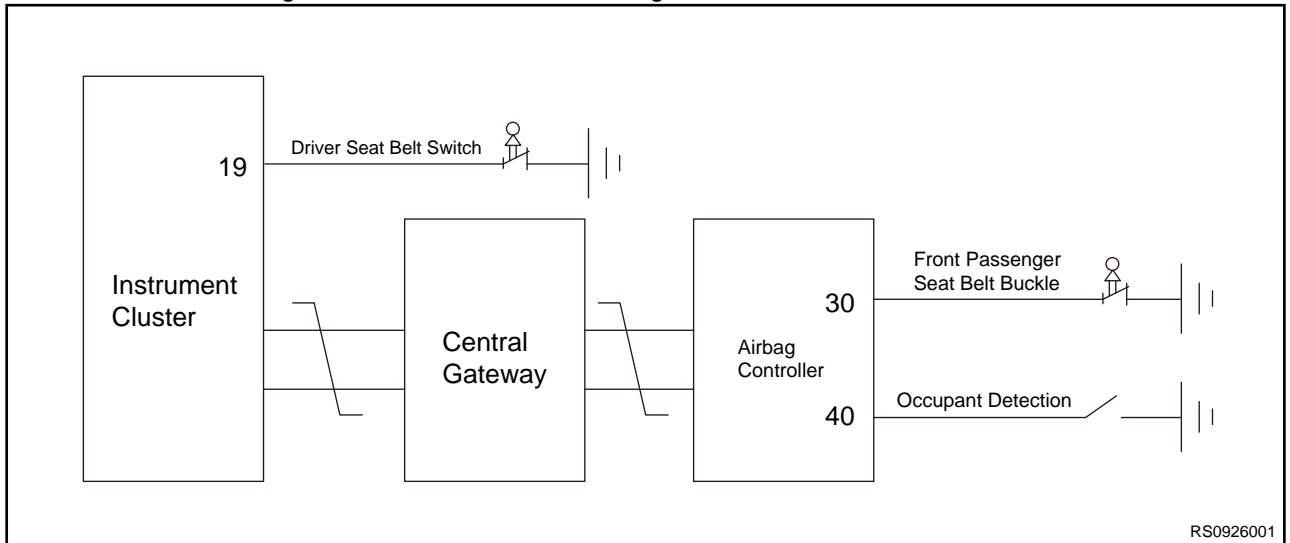
- Front passenger seat belt buckle schematic diagram is as shown in illustration. Front passenger seat belt buckle status: When detected external resistance is lower than $400\ \Omega$, it's judged that the seat belt is not fastened. When resistance is higher than $900\ \Omega$, it's judged that the seat belt is fastened.



- Driver seat belt buckle schematic diagram is as shown in illustration. The buckle is connected to the 19# terminal of instrument cluster. When ENGINE START STOP switch is ON, if the 19# terminal is high level / suspending, the driver seat belt warning in instrument cluster does not alarm; if the 19# terminal is low level, it will alarm.



Electrical schematic diagram related to seat belt warning is as follows:



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Warning strategy is as follows

When ENGINE START STOP switch is in ON position:

If the driver wears the seat belt, the driver seat belt warning light goes off; If the seat belt is not fastened, the driver seat belt warning symbol flashes, and the buzzer will sound when vehicle speed is ≥ 25 km/h, to remind the driver to wear the seat belt;

When ENGINE START STOP switch is in ON position:

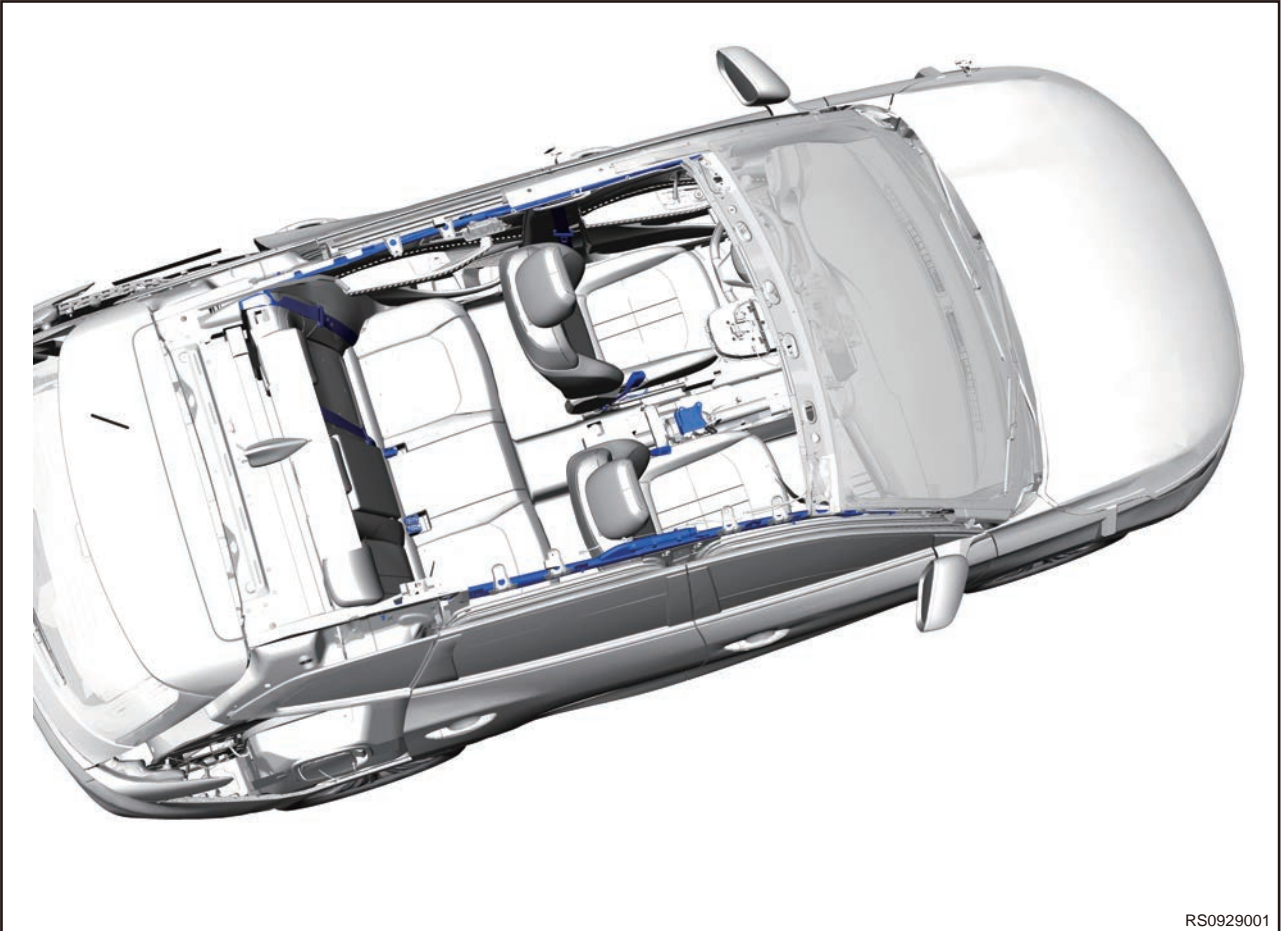
The passenger seat belt buckle switch detection and passenger detection device operate together to confirm the logic of front passenger seat belt reminder warning light.

If there is an adult on the seat (signal of the detection device), and the seat belt is not fastened, the passenger seat belt warning symbol flashes, and the buzzer will sound when vehicle speed is 25 km/h or more, to remind the passenger to wear the seat belt. If the seat belt is fastened, the alarm will stop.

When seat belt warning is operating:

If the seat belt is fastened, the alarm will stop.

Shift to R position or warning for 100 seconds has finished, the buzzer stops sounding and indication warning continues.



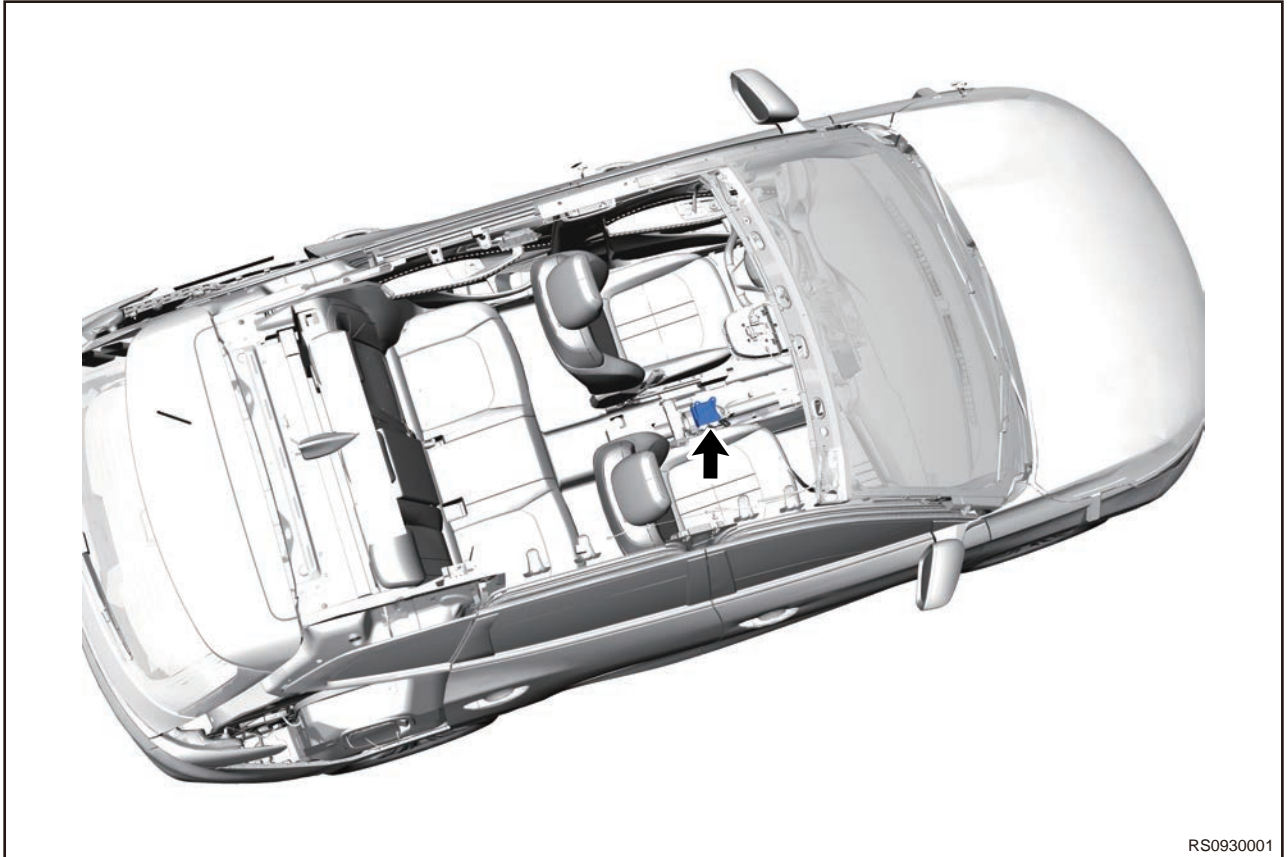
RS0929001

Curtain shield airbag is mainly used to protect the head of passengers during side collision. The curtain shield airbag is installed in the inner side of roof and body quarter sheet metal, usually run through the front and rear, and it is controlled by the lateral acceleration sensor in the body. It will deploy when the lateral acceleration is greater than the calibrated threshold. Resistance value: $2.0 \pm 0.3 \Omega$, it's strictly forbidden to measure resistance with multimeter!

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Airbag System Controller

In general, airbag control module is installed in the center passage of vehicle.



- (1) Repair or replacement of damaged airbag control module must be performed by an authorized worker.
- (2) During the life of the airbag control module, the same airbag control module must always be installed on the vehicle where it was originally installed and not allowed to be used in other vehicles.
- (3) Airbag control module must be replaced after the airbag deploys.
- (4) The airbag control module and peripheral sensors have a high-precision structure, be sure to handle these components carefully. The components must be disposed if they fall to the ground.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Rear Seat Belts



RS0931001

⚠ Caution

- If the rear left seat belt assembly is preload limiting type belt, the resistance value is $2.15 \pm 0.35 \Omega$, it's strictly forbidden to measure resistance with multimeter!
- If the webbings on both sides of rear seat cannot be pulled out, it is necessary to make a preliminary judgment on the seat belt. If the seat belt is locked due to the sensitivity function of seat belt.
- Judgment method: Slowly contract the webbing for 10-15 mm, and then pull out it slowly. If the seat belt can be pulled out normally and there are no other problems, the seat belt is normal. If the webbing can not be pulled out, further testing of seat belt is required.

■ Supplemental Restraint System Composition

⚠ Caution

Supplemental restraint system consists of driver airbag, front passenger airbag, front side airbag (if equipped), curtain shield airbag (if equipped), SRS control module assembly, spiral cable, airbag malfunction indicator and wire harness etc.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Driver Airbag

- (1) Driver airbag is installed in the steering wheel, which will inflate to protect driver in the event of a severe collision.

Driver airbag resistance value: $2.0 \pm 0.2 \Omega$

■ Front Passenger Airbag

- (1) Front passenger airbag is installed in the upper right side of instrument panel, which will inflate to protect front passenger in the event of a severe collision.

Front passenger airbag resistance value: $2.1 \pm 0.4 \Omega$

■ Front Side Airbag (If Equipped)

- (1) Front side airbag is installed in both sides of front seat, which will mitigate injury caused by side impact, and prevent the direct contact between torso and door panel, thus protecting front passenger safety effectively. It can protect the safety of front passenger effectively.

Front side airbag resistance value: $2.0 + 0.5 / - 0.3 \Omega$

■ Curtain Shield Airbag (If Equipped)

- (1) Curtain shield airbags are installed on both sides of roof, which will inflate to protect passenger in the event of a severe collision.

Curtain shield airbag resistance value: $2.0 \pm 0.3 \Omega$

■ SRS Control Module Assembly

- (1) SRS control module assembly has a built-in collision sensor, which is installed on the body floor of auxiliary fascia console assembly. It controls the inflation of airbag so as to protect driver and other occupants in the event of a severe collision.

■ Spiral Cable

- (1) It is used to connect driver airbag while ensuring that steering wheel has enough steering angle.

■ Airbag Malfunction Indicator

- (1) After ENGINE START STOP switch is turned to ON, if malfunction indicator goes off after coming on for approximately 6 seconds, it means that supplemental restraint system operates normally. If malfunction indicator does not come on, remains on or flashes, it means that supplemental restraint system has a problem and it is necessary to perform tests and repairs.

■ Left Side Collision Sensor (If Equipped)

- (1) The sensor transmits collision signals from left side to SRS module to control the airbag to inflate quickly, thus protecting people in vehicle.

Left side collision sensor resistance value: $2.0 \pm 0.3 \Omega$

■ Right Side Collision Sensor (If Equipped)

- (1) The sensor transmits collision signals from right side to SRS module to control the airbag to inflate quickly, thus protecting people in vehicle.

Right side collision sensor resistance value: $2.0 \pm 0.3 \Omega$

■ Wire Harness

- (1) It is yellow and used to connect elements of supplemental restraint system. The connector has a safety mechanism.

■ Airbag System Function

- (1) Airbag must work together with seat belt. It is not a substitute for seat belt. Driver and passengers should always fasten their seat belts when driving, and adjust the belts to a proper position according to their size.
- (2) Minor collision will not activate the airbag system. Airbags will quickly inflate to protect driver and front passenger only when severe collision occurs.

■ Seat Belt Pretensioner Compositions

- (1) Driver seat belt pretensioner

- 1) Driver seat belt pretensioner is located on driver seat belt retractor, which will retract driver seat belt to protect driver in the event of a severe collision.

- (2) Front passenger seat belt pretensioner

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- 1) Front passenger seat belt pretensioner is located on front passenger seat belt retractor, which will retract front passenger seat belt to protect front passenger in the event of a severe collision.
- (3) Seat belt pretensioner function
 - 1) At the moment of collision, the pretensioner retracts seat belt before occupant moves forward, and immediately restrains occupant onto the seat tightly, then locks seat belt to prevent occupant from leaning forward, thus protecting occupant safety.
 - 2) Seat belt pretensioner works with airbag. Once a frontal collision impact higher than specified value is detected, the seat belt with pretensioner will work together with airbag system to protect occupant safety.

■ Operating Conditions

The controller will send an ignition signal when sensor signal received by the controller exceeds the set value in an accident, the ignition circuit will explode.

- (1) Front collision
 - 1) Front collision is detected by the sensor in controller;
 - 2) Front collision ignition deployment circuit: driver and passenger front airbags, all seat belt with pretensioners;
- (2) Side collision
 - 1) Side collision is detected by the side collision sensor in B-pillar and the Sensor in controller.
 - 2) Side collision ignition deployment circuit: curtain shield airbag, seat airbag and seat belt with pretensioner on collision side;
- (3) Other collisions
 - 1) If the bottom of vehicle is subjected to a severe impact, the driver airbag and front passenger airbag may also deploy.
 - 2) If the vehicle goes under the bottom of truck etc. or involved in side collision, the driver airbag and front passenger airbag may not deploy.
 - 3) If a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment, or the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, the front side airbag and curtain shield airbag may not deploy.
 - 4) The side airbag and curtain shield airbag will not generally deploy if the vehicle is involved in a front collision, rear collision or roll over.

■ Specifications

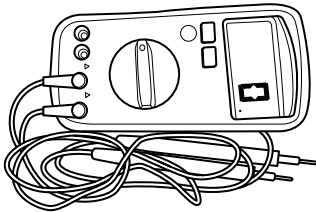
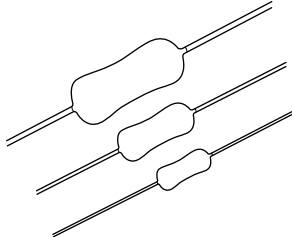
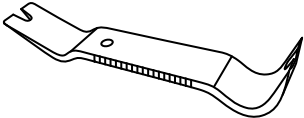
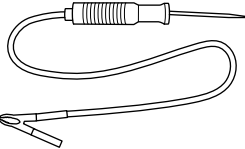
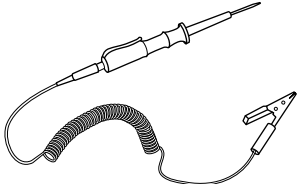
Torque Specification

Description	Torque (N·m)
Coupling Bolt Between Front Passenger Airbag Assembly and Instrument Panel Crossmember Assembly	23 ± 2
Coupling Bolt Between Curtain Shield Airbag Assembly and Body	10 ± 1
Coupling Bolt Between SRS Control Module Assembly and Body	8 ± 1.2

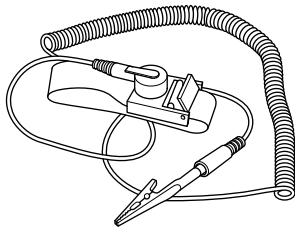
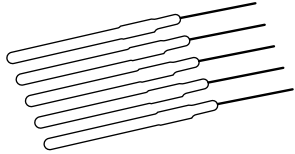
■ Operation

General Tools

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p>A digital multimeter with a LCD display, a rotary selector dial, and several input ports. It is connected to two test leads with alligator clips.</p> <p>RCH000206</p>
Resistor (2 Ω)	 <p>Three resistors of varying sizes, each with two leads extending from its ends.</p> <p>RCH010006</p>
Interior & Exterior Remover	 <p>A long, thin, curved metal tool with a hook-like end and a textured surface along its length.</p> <p>RCH002506</p>
Bulb Test Light	 <p>A test light with a coiled handle, a long probe wire, and a pair of alligator clips at the end.</p> <p>RCH010106</p>
Diode Test Light	 <p>A test light with a coiled handle, a long probe wire, and a pair of alligator clips at the end.</p> <p>RCH010206</p>

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Static-proof Wrist Strap	 <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;">RCH010406</p>
Wire Harness Terminal Service Tool	 <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 5px;">RCH010506</p>

■ Diagnostic Tester Menu Function and Datastream

Airbag system

- (1) Enter “ACM (Airbag Control Module)” .
- (2) Click “Version Information” .
- (3) Click “Read Datastream” .
 - 1) Click “IMU Off-line Calibration Status” .
 - 2) Click “EOL Mode” .
 - 3) Click “ACM Configuration Data” .
- (4) Click “Special Operation” .
 - 1) Click “IMU (Inertial Sensor) Calibration” .
 - 2) Click “Write ACM Configuration Data” .
 - i. Click “Save the Paste (Transfer Configuration Data in Old Controller to New Controller Quickly)” .
 - Click “Save Configuration Data in Old Controller” .
 - Click “Write Configuration Data from Old Controller into New Controller” .
 - 3) Click “Manual Writing” .

■ Diagnosis Contents

Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Airbag system indicator remains on	Battery voltage is too low or too high
	Airbag module internal fault
	Instrument cluster airbag indicator fault

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

	Poor contact in instrument cluster connector
	Airbag module power supply fuse open or poor contact
	Poor contact in airbag module connector
	Airbag circuit fault
Airbag assembly (resistance is too high or too low)	Airbag itself fault
	Connection fault between airbag and airbag module
	Airbag module fault

■ Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the brake control system.

1 | **Vehicle brought to workshop**

Next

2 | **Check battery voltage**

Check if battery voltage is normal.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A
NG	B

B → **Replace battery**

A

3 | **Customer problem analysis**

Next

4 | **Read DTCs**

Result

Result	Go to
DTC is output	A
No DTC	B

B → **Perform repair according to Problem Symptoms Table**

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

A

5 Read DTCs (current DTC and history DTC)

Result

Result	Go to
Current DTC	A
History DTC	B

B

Troubleshoot according to Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting procedure

A

6 Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

Next

7 Adjust, repair or replace

Next

8 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is normal before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in supplemental restraint system.
- Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select Read DTC.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

■ Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

■ Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

■ Preparations before Dealing with Airbag System Wire Harness Malfunction

- (1) Read and record the system DTC
- (2) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable for at least 1 minute so that the airbag controller has enough time to discharge.
- (3) Prevent electric static discharge, such as static-proof wrist strap.
- (4) To prevent the ignition element from igniting accidentally during wire harness measurement, it is necessary to disengage all elements connected to wire harness, such as airbag, module, sensor etc. before measuring.

■ Airbag System Malfunction Repair Completion Inspection

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable (if is the connected);
- (2) Connect each wire harness connector of airbag system;
- (3) Connect negative battery cable;
- (4) Start the vehicle, operate the electrical system, turn on the electrical equipment as much as possible (- blower, rear defroster, headlight, audio, etc.). If all the following requirements are met, the airbag system is normal, otherwise it should be checked and repaired again:
 - 1) ENGINE START STOP switch is ON, system performs self-check, airbag warning light comes on. Warning light goes off when self-check is completed.
 - 2) Connect the diagnostic tester, read the DTC and observe the datastream. Use the simulation method if necessary. Test the vehicle in the malfunction conditions described by customer, check if the malfunction is no longer duplicate and no other DTCs are produced.
 - 3) If equipped with front passenger detection device, the front passenger seat belt warning light should operate normally; (Check method: A person sits on the front passenger seat and does not wear the seat belt, the light comes on and goes off after the seat belt is fastened.)
 - 4) Clear history DTC (if exists)

■ Disposal of Airbag

Airbag deploys (in vehicle).

- (1) It is necessary to deploy the airbag before disposing. If the vehicle is scrapped and disassembled, the airbag may deploy in vehicle.
 - 1) Preventive procedure of airbag deployment

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Caution

To prevent injury when deploying the airbag in vehicle, please refer to following prevention methods:

- Remove all movable objects or loose parts within airbag deployment range before the airbag is deployed.
- The airbag is deployed only in the reserved airbag deployment area with door closed and side window opened.
- The airbag is deployed only in the reserved airbag deployment area (site), the technicians must stand at least 10 meters in front of the vehicle.
- Do not load voltage before all preparations have been completed.
- Cool down the airbag at least 30 minutes before handling the deployed airbag.
- Please wear gloves and safety glasses during disposal process.
- If airbag deployment is failed, wait at least 5 minutes after disconnecting the voltage, and then you can approach the vehicle.

2) Prevention methods of deployment procedure

i. Inside deployment prevention methods

- Disconnect the negative and positive battery cables and move the battery 10 meters away from the vehicle.
- Prepare two additional wire harnesses at least 10 meters long for each one and special connector for connecting the spiral cable (clock spring). Peel off the 13 mm insulation coat at the end of wire harness. Connect the connector at one end and another end to twist as shown in illustration.
- Place the twisted end next to the battery for airbag deployment, but do not connect it to battery at this time.
- Remove driver side lower instrument panel from steering column. When connecting the lower part of steering column to SRS wire harness connector of spiral cable, connect the connector in figure 10.
- Clean the site.
- Disengage the twisted end of the wire harness next to the battery for airbag deployment.
- One wire harness contacts with negative battery and another one contacts with positive battery, the airbag will deploy at this time.
- Deploy the passenger side airbag module using the same procedure.
- Handle the deployed airbag with correct prevention methods. Refer to “Handling Procedure for Deployed Airbag” in this manual.

ii. Outside deployment prevention methods

- Install the airbag set to the tire with rim with airbag front surface faced up, and the space for wire and connector is reserved to prevent the deployment from being destroyed.
- Prepare two additional wire harnesses at least 10 meters long for each one and special connector for connecting airbag set. Peel off the 13 mm insulation coat at the end of wire harness. Connect the connector at one end as shown in illustration.
- Place the twisted end next to the battery for airbag deployment, but do not connect it to battery at this time.
- Stack 4 old tires without rims on the wheel installed with airbag set, and secure all the tires in 4 different positions with rope.
- Clean the site.
- Disengage the twisted end of the wire harness next to the battery for airbag deployment.
- One wire harness contacts with negative battery and another one contacts with positive battery, the airbag will deploy at this time.
- Deploy the passenger side airbag module using the same procedure.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- Handle the deployed airbag with correct prevention methods. Refer to “Handling Procedure for Deployed Airbag Set” in this manual.

Handling procedure for deployed airbag set

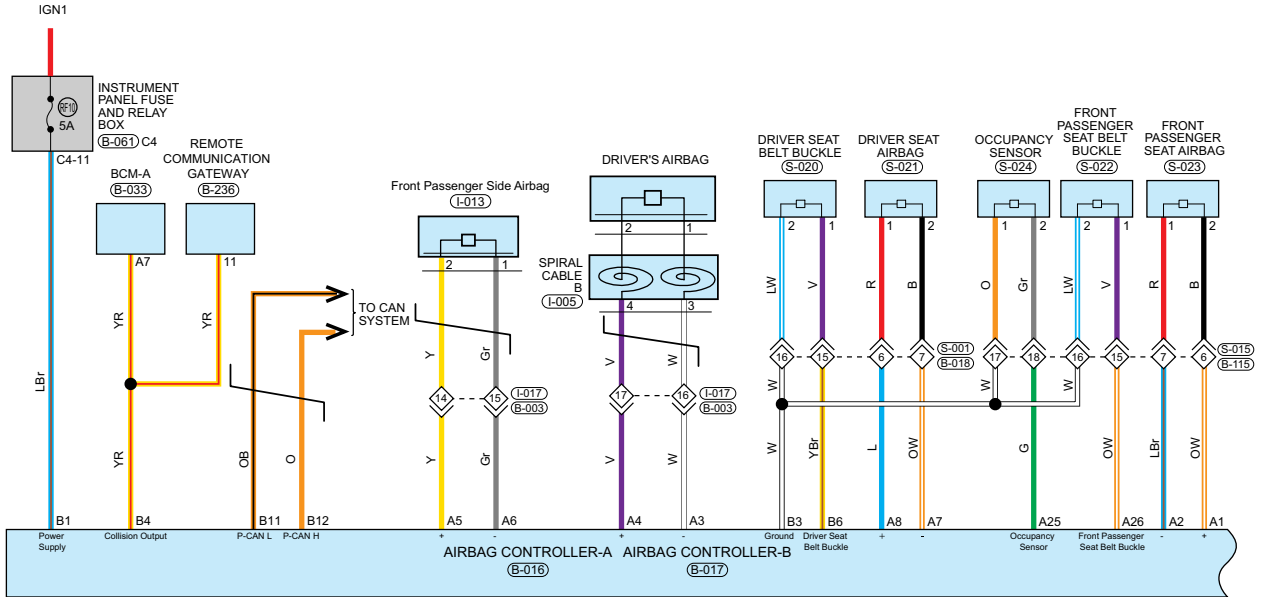
- (2) Place the deployed airbag in a solid plastic bag.
- (3) Be sure to seal the plastic bag tightly.
- (4) Wash both hands carefully after handling the deployed airbag.
- (5) Although above protection measures are taken, if the irritant substance attaches to the eyes or skin, flush it with a large amount of water immediately.

Caution

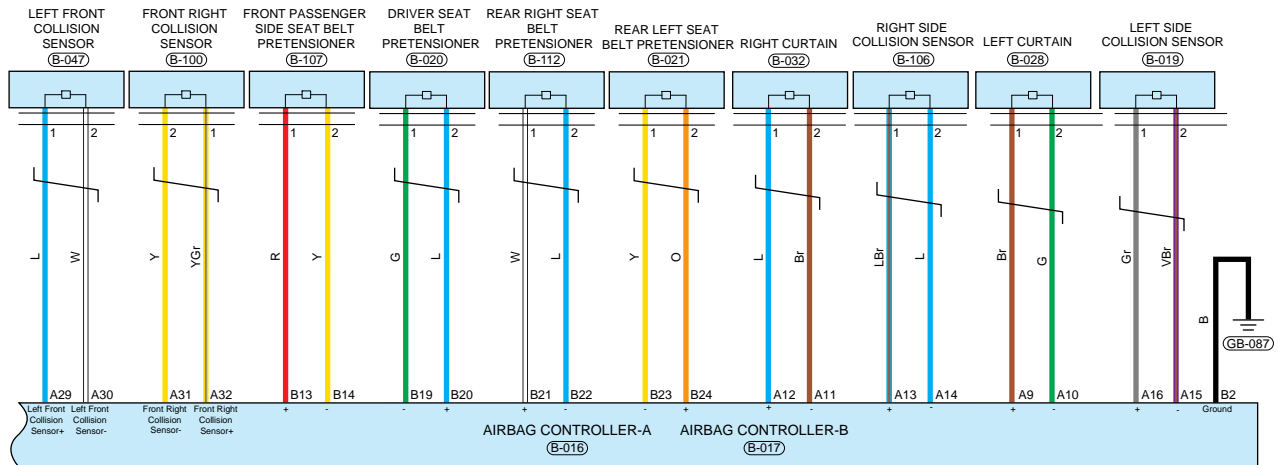
- **There may be powder particles on airbag surface, which is primarily composed of chemical reaction product (used to lubricate bag when inflating).**
- **There may be substance which can irritate eyes or skin attached to the deployed airbag, so please wear gloves and safety glasses during disposal process.**
- **After the airbag deploys, the temperature on airbag module metal surface is very high. To avoid any injury or fire, please keep the deployed airbag module far away from any combustible materials,**
- **Do not pour water or oil on the airbag after the airbag deploys and handle it after cooling for 30 minutes.**

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Airbag Circuit Diagram



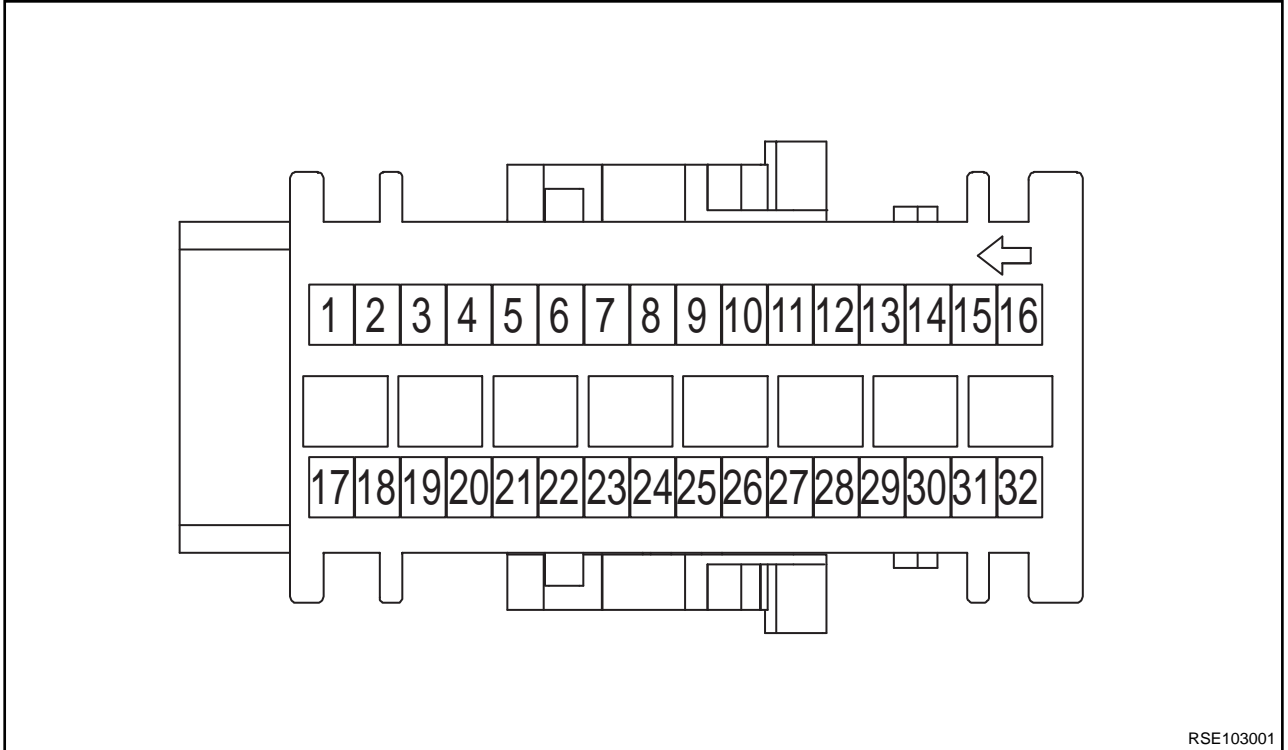
RSE101001



RSE102001

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ SRS Control Module Assembly Terminal List

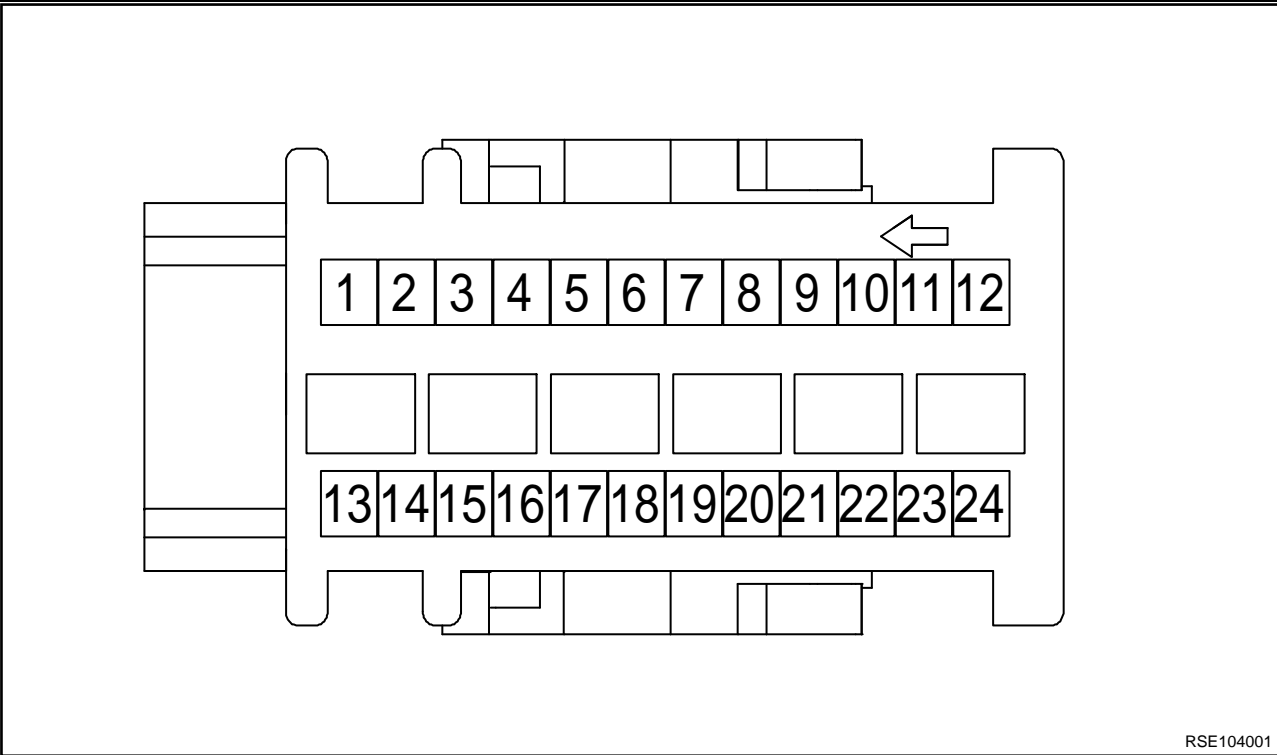


RSE103001

Terminal No.	Description	Terminal No.	Description
A1	Front Right Side Airbag (+)	A17	—
A2	Front Right Side Airbag (-)	A18	—
A3	Driver Airbag (One Stage) (-)	A19	—
A4	Driver Airbag (One Stage) (+)	A20	—
A5	Front Passenger Airbag (One Stage) (+)	A21	—
A6	Front Passenger Airbag (One Stage) (-)	A22	Rear Right Lock Striker
A7	Front Left Airbag (-)	A23	Rear Middle Lock Striker
A8	Front Left Airbag (+)	A24	Rear Left Lock Striker
A9	Left (Front + Rear) Side Curtain Shield Airbag (+)	A25	Front Passenger Seat Occupancy Sensor
A10	Left (Front + Rear) Side Curtain Shield Airbag (-)	A26	Front Passenger Buckle
A11	Right (Front + Rear) Side Curtain Shield Airbag (-)	A27	—
A12	Right (Front + Rear) Side Curtain Shield Airbag (+)	A28	—
A13	Right Side Collision Sensor (+)	A29	Front Left Collision Sensor (+)

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Terminal No.	Description	Terminal No.	Description
A14	Right Side Collision Sensor (-)	A30	Front Left Collision Sensor (-)
A15	Left Side Collision Sensor (-)	A31	Front Right Collision Sensor (-)
A16	Left Side Collision Sensor (+)	A32	Front Right Collision Sensor (+)



RSE104001

Terminal No.	Description	Terminal No.	Description
B1	Ignition	B13	Passenger Pretensioner (+)
B2	Ground	B14	Passenger Pretensioner (-)
B3	Ground (DCS)	B15	—
B4	Collision Output	B16	—
B5	—	B17	—
B6	Driver Seat Belt Buckle	B18	—
B7	—	B19	Driver Pretensioner (-)
B8	—	B20	Driver Pretensioner (+)
B9	—	B21	2nd Row Right Pretensioner (+)
B10	—	B22	2nd Row Right Pretensioner (-)
B11	CAN-L	B23	2nd Row Left Pretensioner (-)
B12	CAN-H	B24	2nd Row Left Pretensioner (+)

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ DTC Diagnosis

■ Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B000111	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Short to GND
B000112	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
B000113	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib High Resistance
B000119	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Cross-connect
B00011A	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Low Resistance
B000195	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Configured Fault
B001011	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Short to GND
B001012	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
B001013	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib High Resistance
B001019	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Cross-connect
B00101A	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Low Resistance
B001095	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Configured Fault
B002011	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Short to GND
B002012	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
B002013	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib High Resistance
B002019	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Cross-connect
B00201A	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Low Resistance
B002095	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Configured Fault
B002111	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Short to GND
B002112	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
B002113	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib High Resistance
B002119	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Cross-connect
B00211A	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Low Resistance
B002195	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Configured Fault
B002811	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Short to GND
B002812	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
B002813	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib High Resistance
B002819	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Cross-connect Fault
B00281A	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Low Resistance
B002895	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Configured Fault

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	DTC Definition
B002911	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Short to GND
B002912	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
B002913	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib High Resistance
B002919	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Cross-connect
B00291A	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Low Resistance
B002995	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Configured Fault
B005011	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Short to Ground
B005012	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Short to Power Line
B005013	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Open Circuit
B00501D	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Meas High/Meas Low/Bad Sensor
B005212	Front Passenger Seatbelt Buckle Short to Power Line
B005312	Second Row Left Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line
B005412	Second Row Center Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line
B005512	Second Row Right Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line
B007011	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Short to GND
B007012	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line
B007013	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib High Resistance
B007019	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect
B00701A	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance
B007095	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault
B007211	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Short to GND
B007212	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line
B007213	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib High Resistance
B007219	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect Fault
B00721A	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance
B007295	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault
B007311	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to GND
B007312	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line
B007313	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib High Resistance
B007319	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect
B00731A	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance
B007395	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	DTC Definition
B007511	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to GND
B007512	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line
B007513	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib High Resistance
B007519	2nd row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect
B00751A	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance
B007595	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault
B009011	Front Left Impact Sensor Short to GND
B009013	Front Left Impact Sensor Open
B009049	Front Left Impact Sensor Internal Fault
B009055	Front Left Impact Sensor Configured Fault
B009087	Front Left Impact Sensor Communication Fault
B009111	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Short to GND
B009113	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Open
B009149	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Internal Fault
B009155	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Configured Fault
B009187	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Communication Fault
B009511	Front Right Impact Sensor Short to GND
B009513	Front Right Impact sensor Open
B009549	Front Right Impact Sensor Internal Fault
B009555	Front Right Impact Sensor Configured Fault
B009587	Front Right Impact Sensor communication Fault
B009611	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Short to GND
B009613	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Open
B009649	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Internal Error
B009655	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Configured Error
B009687	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Communication Error
B00C012	Front Passenger Occupant Sensor Short to Power Line
B00D2F0	Module is in Supplier Manufacturing Mode
B127017	ECU Supply Voltage High
B127116	ECU Supply Voltage Low
B12E049	ACM Internal Error
B12E196	Airbag or Pretenioner Deployed When Front Crash Detect

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	DTC Definition
B12E296	Airbag or Pretenioner Deployed When Side Crash Detect
B12E396	Airbag or Pretenioner Deployed When Rear Crash Detect
B12E500	Disposal Command Record - Performed Scrap Deployment
B12E654	IMU Calibration Missing
B12E692	IMU Calibration Fail
B12E795	Configuration Parameters Missing
B12E895	ECU in Configuration Mode
U010000	Lost Communication with EMS
U010100	Lost Communication with TCU
U012200	Lost Communication with ESC
U014000	Lost Communication with BCM
U015500	Lost Communication with IPC
U021200	Lost Communication with SCM
U024800	Lost Communication with PEPS
U040181	Invalid DLC Received from EMS
U040186	Invalid Data Received from EMS
U040281	Invalid DLC Received from TCU
U040286	Invalid Data Received from TCU
U041681	Invalid DLC Received from ESC
U041686	Invalid Data Received from ESC
U042281	Invalid DLC Received from BCM
U042286	Invalid Data Received from BCM
U042381	Invalid DLC Received from IPC
U042386	Invalid Data Received from IPC
U042681	Invalid DLC Received from PEPS
U042686	Invalid Data Received from PEPS
U042981	Invalid DLC Received from SCM
U042986	Invalid Data Received from SCM
U127288	CAN Bus Off

DTC	B127017	ECU Supply Voltage High
------------	----------------	--------------------------------

DTC	B127116	ECU Supply Voltage Low
------------	----------------	-------------------------------

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B127017	Power Supply Voltage	Malfunction indicator ON	Excessive low vehicle power supply voltage
B127116			Excessive high vehicle power supply voltage

- Possible cause for “High Voltage” malfunction: unstable power supply, sudden invalid load;
- Possible cause for “Low Voltage” malfunction: unstable power supply, poor contact;

Caution

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check system voltage.

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Start engine, and use voltage band of multimeter to check if battery voltage is normal. (Rated voltage: Not less than 12 V)
Operating voltage

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Operating Voltage
Battery (+) - Battery (-)	ENGINE START STOP switch “ON”	Not less than 12 V

OK

System voltage is normal

Next 

For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .

2 Check fuse

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Check for continuity of fuse RF10 (5A) in instrument panel fuse and relay box with a multimeter.

OK

Fuse is not blown.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A
NG	B

B 

Replace fuse

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

A

3 Check airbag module power supply

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of power supply. If the voltage is as required, make tests with test lamp made of vehicle bulbs. Bright test lamp indicates that power supply is sufficient, and dim test lamp indicates that power supply is insufficient and poor contact of wire harness may occur.

Specified Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-017 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V

Result

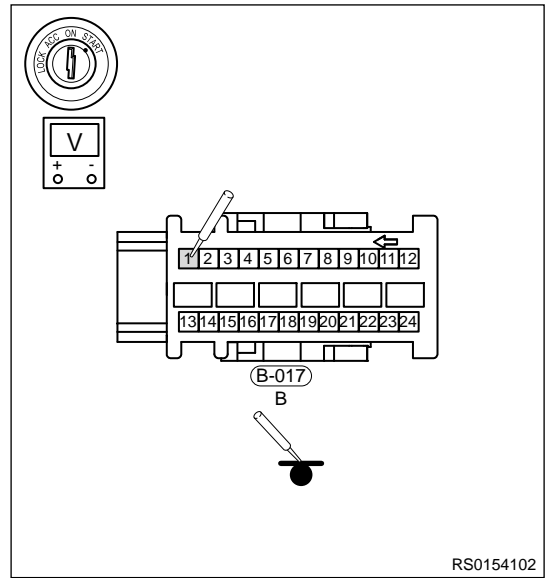
Go to
OK
NG

OK

Airbag power supply is normal

Next

Check airbag module power supply



RS0154102

Next

4 Check airbag module ground

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the component connectors (measurement value is incorrect with power on, and power off is necessary)
- (c) Use ohm band of multimeter to check for continuity between B-017(2) and ground.

Specified Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-017 (2) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch “OFF”	$\leq 1 \Omega$

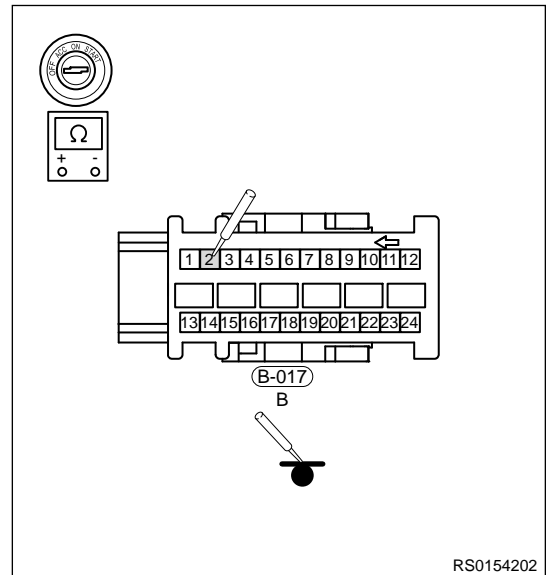
OK

Airbag module ground is normal

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A
NG	B

A	Airbag module ground is normal
B	Check or repair airbag module ground



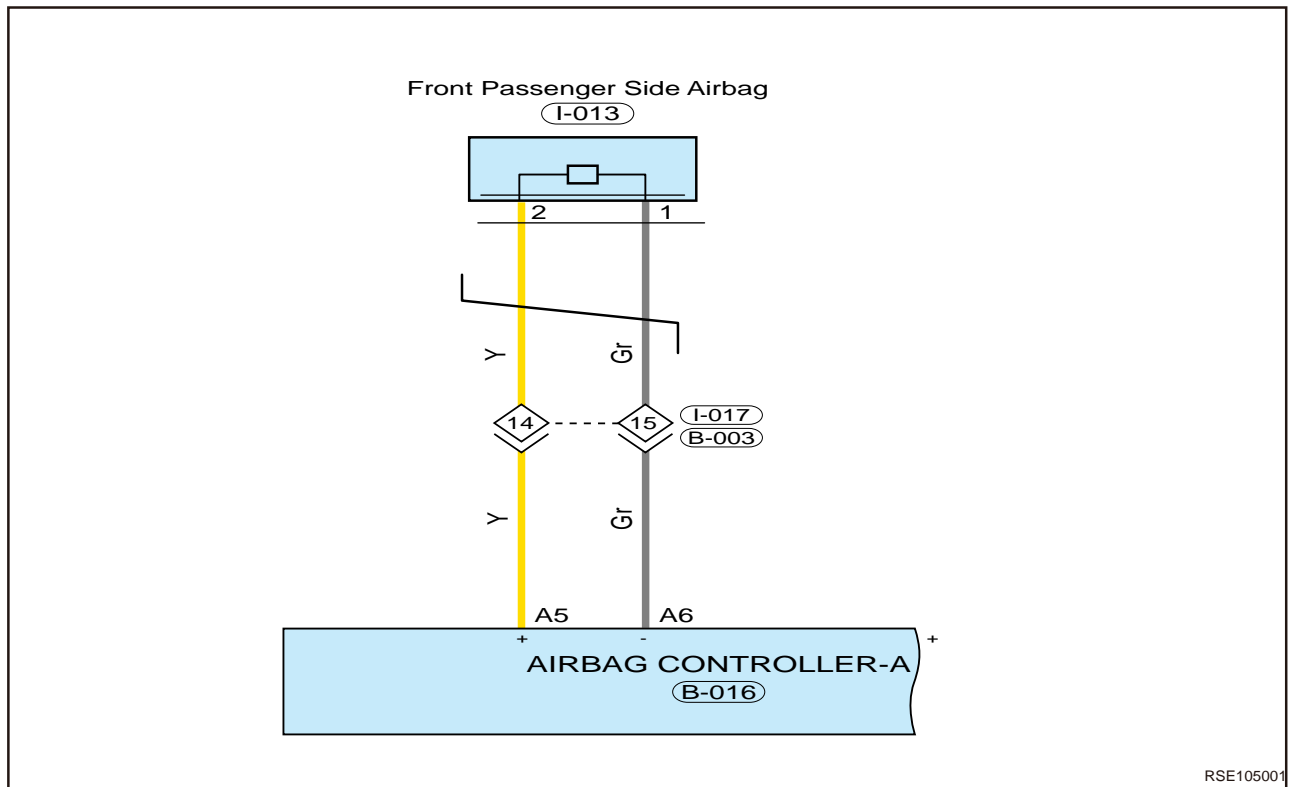
RS0154202

DTC	B000112	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B001012	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B002012	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B002112	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B002812	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B002912	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B005012	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Short to Power Line
DTC	B005013	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Open Circuit
DTC	B00501D	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Meas High/Meas Low/Bad Sensor
DTC	B005212	Front Passenger Seatbelt Buckle Short to Power Line

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	B005312	Second Row Left Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line
DTC	B005412	Second Row Center Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line
DTC	B005512	Second Row Right Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line
DTC	B007012	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B007212	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B007312	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line
DTC	B007512	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line

■ Circuit Diagram



■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B000112	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Short to Power Line	Malfunction indicator ON	It' s generally a short to voltage or power supply in wire harness
B001011	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Short to Power Line		
B002012	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Short to Power Line		

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B002112	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Short to Power Line		
B002812	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Short to Power Line		
B002912	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Short to Power Line		
B005012	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Short to Power Line		
B005013	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Open Circuit		
B00501D	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Meas High/ Meas Low/Bad Sensor		
B005212	Front Passenger Seatbelt Buckle Short to Power Line		
B005312	Second Row Left Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line		
B005412	Second Row Center Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line		
B005512	Second Row Right Seatbelt Sensor Short to Power Line		
B007012	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line		
B007212	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line		
B007312	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line		
B007512	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to Power Line		

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .

⚠ Caution

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

⚠ Warning

For similar malfunctions of other modules in airbag system, it's also allowable to refer to “Passenger Airbag Short to Power Supply” for troubleshooting.

- An activation prevention mechanism is built in airbag system connector. When connector is disconnected, this mechanism cuts off circuit by bringing short spring plate into contact with terminals, thus insulating the circuit from external power sources to prevent accidental airbag activation.
- To release activation prevention mechanism, insert a piece of paper with the same thickness as male terminal between terminals and short spring plate to disconnect the connection.

1	Check for short to power supply in passenger airbag
---	--

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

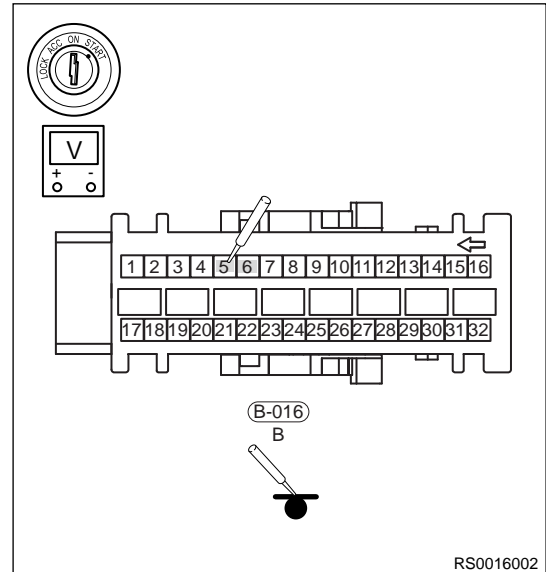
- Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, displacement and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- Check for continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for at least 90 seconds.
- Disconnect airbag module connector and passenger airbag connector.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and make all accessories operate.
- Using voltage band of multimeter, detect B-016 (5) - ground and B-016 (6) - ground separately.

Specified Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-016 (5) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	0 V
B-016 (6) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	0 V

Result

Go to
OK
NG



RS0016002

OK	refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .
NG	Repair or replace wire harness shorted to power supply or voltage.

DTC	B000111	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Short to GND
DTC	B001011	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Short to GND
DTC	B002011	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Short to GND
DTC	B002111	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Short to GND
DTC	B002811	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Short to GND
DTC	B002911	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Short to GND
DTC	B005011	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Short to Ground
DTC	B007011	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Short to GND

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	B007211	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Short to GND
DTC	B007311	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to GND
DTC	B007511	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to GND
DTC	B009011	Front Left Impact Sensor Short to GND
DTC	B009111	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Short to GND
DTC	B009511	Front Right Impact Sensor Short to GND
DTC	B009611	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Short to GND

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B000111	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Short to GND	Malfunction indicator ON	It' s generally a short to ground in circuit
B001011	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Short to GND		
B002011	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Short to GND		
B002111	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Short to GND		
B002811	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Short to GND		
B002911	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Short to GND		
B005011	Driver Seatbelt Buckle Short to Ground		
B007011	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Short to GND		
B007211	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Short to GND		
B007311	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to GND		
B007511	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Short to GND		
B009011	Front Left Impact Sensor Short to GND		
B009111	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Short to GND		
B009511	Front Right Impact Sensor Short to GND		

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B009611	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Short to GND		

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .

⚠ Caution

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

⚠ Warning

For similar malfunctions of other modules in airbag system, it's also allowable to refer to “Passenger Airbag Short to Ground Malfunction” for troubleshooting.

Hint:

- An activation prevention mechanism is built in airbag system connector. When connector is disconnected, this mechanism cuts off circuit by bringing short spring plate into contact with terminals, thus insulating the circuit from external power sources to prevent accidental airbag activation.
- To release activation prevention mechanism, insert a piece of paper with the same thickness as male terminal between terminals and short spring plate to disconnect the connection.

1 Check for short to ground in passenger airbag

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for at least 90 seconds.
- Disconnect airbag module connector and driver frontal airbag connector.
- Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-016 (5) and ground, and B-016 (6) and ground separately.

Specified Condition

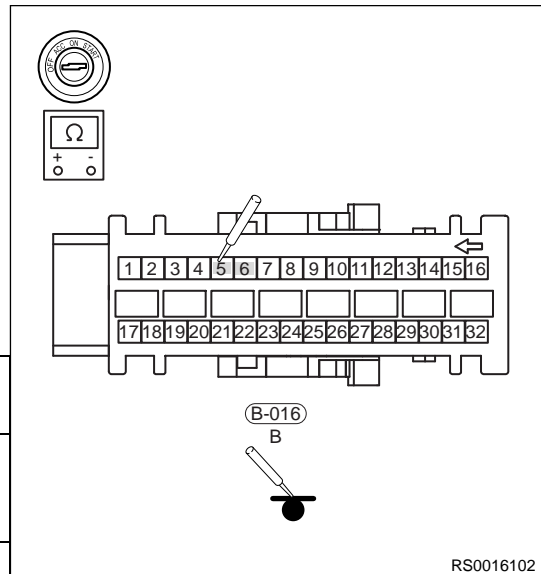
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-016 (5) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch “OFF”	∞
B-016 (6) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch “OFF”	∞

Result

Go to
OK
NG

OK

refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .



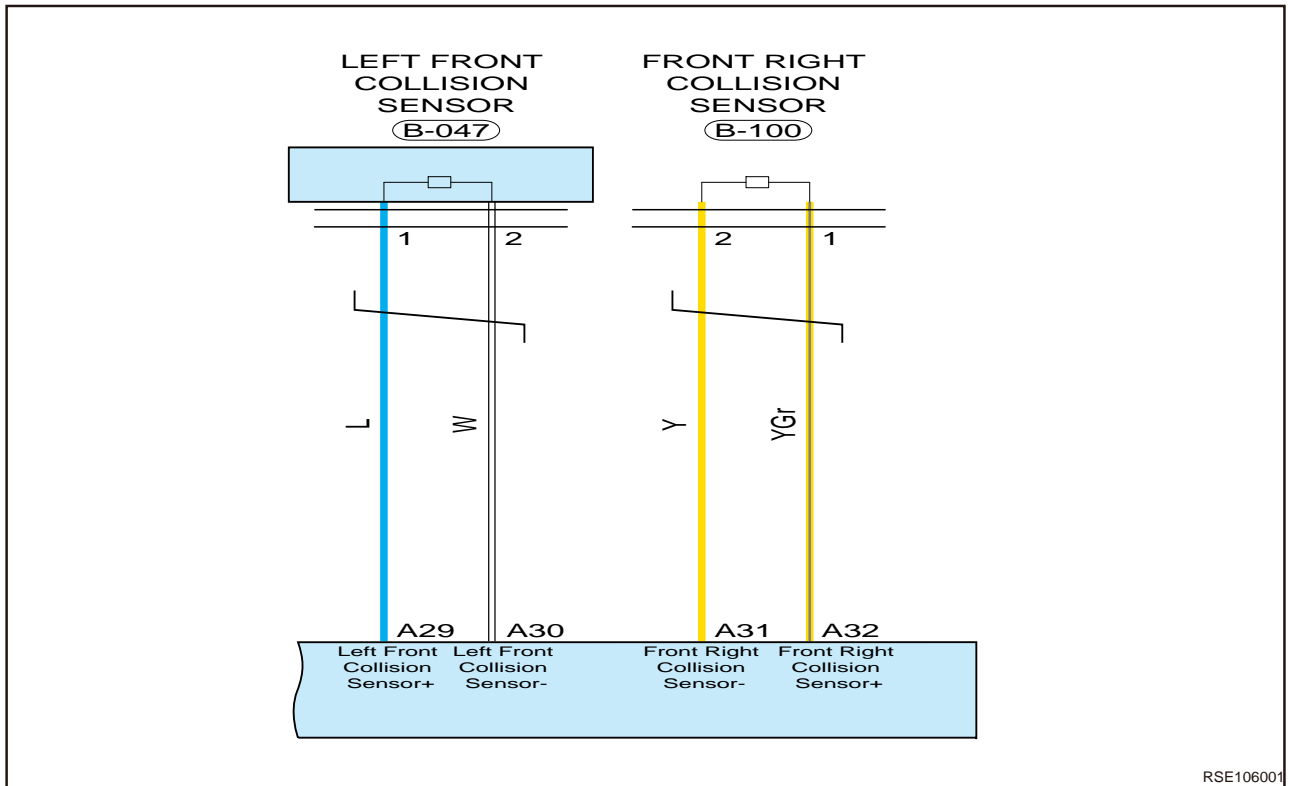
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

NG

Repair or replace wire harness or connector of passenger airbag that is short to ground

DTC	B009013	Front Left Impact Sensor Open
DTC	B009113	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Open
DTC	B009513	Front Right Impact sensor Open
DTC	B009613	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Open

■ Circuit Diagram



■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B009013	Front Left Impact Sensor Open	Malfunction indicator ON	It' s generally a open or poor contact in wire harness
B009113	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Open		
B009513	Front Right Impact sensor Open		
B009613	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Open		

For preparations, refer to "Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction" .

⚠ Caution

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

⚠ Warning

For similar malfunctions of other modules in airbag system, it's also allowable to refer to "Right B-pillar Collision Sensor Open" for troubleshooting.

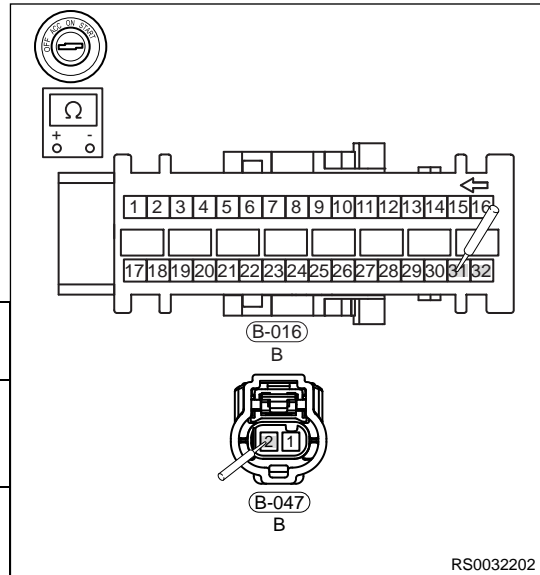
1 Left side collision sensor circuit is open

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for at least 90 seconds.
- Disconnect airbag module connector and left side collision sensor connector.
- Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-016 (31) and B-100 (2), B-016 (32) and B-100 (1) separately.

Specified Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-016 (31) - B-100 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-016 (32) - B-100 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



Result

Go to
OK
NG

OK → For inspection, refer to "Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection" and replace the sensor if wire harness is not malfunctioning

→ Repair or replace opened wire harness or connector

DTC	B00011A	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00101A	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00201A	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00211A	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00281A	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Low Resistance

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	B00291A	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00701A	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00721A	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00731A	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance
DTC	B00751A	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance

■ **Description**

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B00011A	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Low Resistance	Malfunction indicator ON	It' s generally damage to ignition element or short to wire harness
B00101A	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Low Resistance		
B00201A	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Low Resistance		
B00211A	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Low Resistance		
B00281A	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Low Resistance		
B00291A	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Low Resistance		
B00701A	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance		
B00721A	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance		
B00731A	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance		
B00751A	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Low Resistance		

Caution

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information. Hint:

Hint:

For similar malfunctions of other modules in airbag system, it' s also allowable to refer to “Low Passenger Airbag Resistance Value” for troubleshooting.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Hint:

- An activation prevention mechanism is built in airbag system connector. When connector is disconnected, this mechanism cuts off circuit by bringing short spring plate into contact with terminals, thus insulating the circuit from external power sources to prevent accidental airbag activation.
- To release activation prevention mechanism, insert a piece of paper with the same thickness as male terminal between terminals and short spring plate to disconnect the connection.
-

1 Check airbag itself for damage

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Disconnect the airbag connector.
- (b) Connect the battery and turn on diagnostic tester to check if original DTC turns to “high resistance” .

Result

Go to
OK
NG

OK

Replace damaged airbag assembly

NG

2 Check both cables for short to each other.

Hint:

- An activation prevention mechanism is built in airbag system connector. When connector is disconnected, this mechanism cuts off circuit by bringing short spring plate into contact with terminals, thus insulating the circuit from external power sources to prevent accidental airbag activation.
- To release activation prevention mechanism, insert a piece of paper with the same thickness as male terminal between terminals and short spring plate to disconnect the connection.

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for at least 90 seconds.
- (b) Disconnect the airbag module connector.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-016 (5) and B-017 (6).

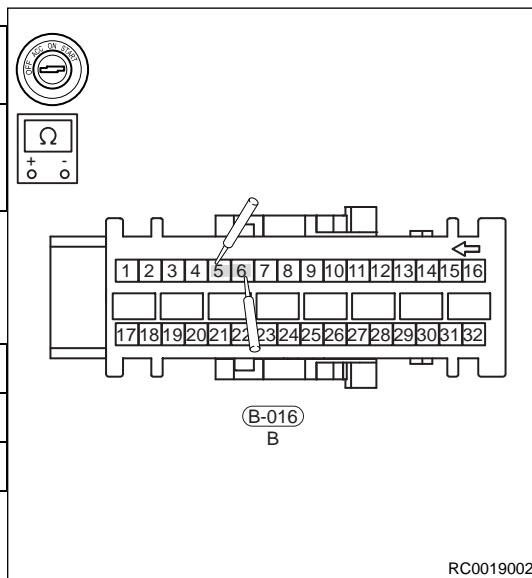
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

Standard Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Standard Condition
B-016 (5) - B-016 (6)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞

OK
For inspection, refer to "Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection".
Result

Go to
OK
NG



OK	For inspection, refer to "Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection".
NG	Repair or replace wire harness and connector.

DTC	B000113	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib High Resistance
DTC	B001013	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib High Resistance
DTC	B002013	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib High Resistance
DTC	B002113	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib High Resistance
DTC	B002813	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib High Resistance
DTC	B002913	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib High Resistance
DTC	B007013	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib High Resistance
DTC	B007213	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib High Resistance
DTC	B007313	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib High Resistance
DTC	B007513	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib High Resistance

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B000113	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib High Resistance	Malfunction indicator ON	It' s generally damage to ignition element or open in wire harness
B001013	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib High Resistance		
B002013	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib High Resistance		
B002113	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib High Resistance		
B002813	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib High Resistance		
B002913	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib High Resistance		
B007013	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib High Resistance		
B007213	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib High Resistance		
B007313	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib High Resistance		
B007513	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib High Resistance		

Caution

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

Hint:

For similar malfunctions of other modules in airbag system, it' s also allowable to refer to “High Passenger Airbag Resistance Value” for troubleshooting.

- An activation prevention mechanism is built in airbag system connector. When connector is disconnected, this mechanism cuts off circuit by bringing short spring plate into contact with terminals, thus insulating the circuit from external power sources to prevent accidental airbag activation.
- To release activation prevention mechanism, insert a piece of paper with the same thickness as male terminal between terminals and short spring plate to disconnect the connection.

1	Check if ignition element is damaged
----------	---

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Use 2 Ω resistance or bulb about 55 W to substitute airbag or tensioner indicated by DTC.
- (b) Connect wire harness connector on the end of airbag module.
- (c) Connect the battery and diagnostic tester and read the previous DTC.

⚠ Warning

It's normal for other DTC occurrence currently as other airbag or sensor is not connected.

OK

Airbag is damaged and needs to be replaced.

Result

Go to

OK

NG

OK 

Replace damaged airbag

NG 

2

Check connecting wire for open circuit

Hint:

- An activation prevention mechanism is built in airbag system connector. When connector is disconnected, this mechanism cuts off circuit by bringing short spring plate into contact with terminals, thus insulating the circuit from external power sources to prevent accidental airbag activation.
- To release activation prevention mechanism, insert a piece of paper with the same thickness as male terminal between terminals and short spring plate to disconnect the connection.

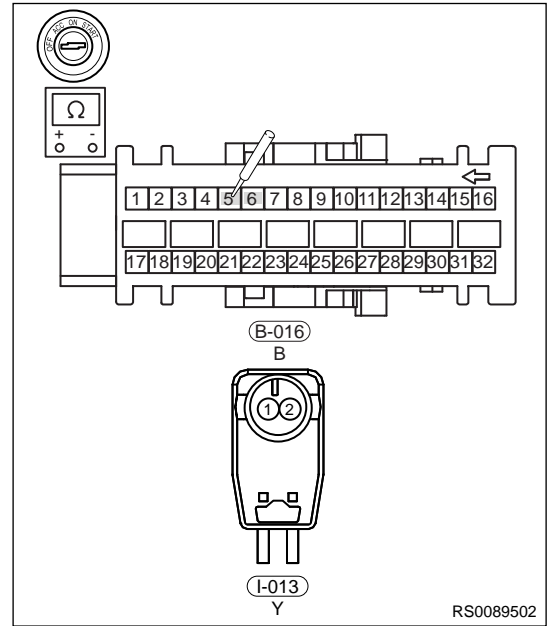
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for at least 90 seconds.
- Disconnect airbag module connector and passenger airbag connector.
- Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-016 (5) and I-013 (1), and B-016 (6) and I-013 (2) separately.

Standard Condition

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Standard Condition
B-016 (5) - I-013 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch “OFF”	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-016 (11) - I-013 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch “OFF”	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK

For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .

Result

Go to
OK
NG

OK	For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .
NG	Repair or replace opened wire harness or connector

DTC	B12E196	Airbag or Pretensioner Deployed When Front Crash Detect
DTC	B12E296	Airbag or Pretensioner Deployed When Side Crash Detect
DTC	B12E396	Airbag or Pretensioner Deployed When Rear Crash Detect
DTC	B12E500	Disposal Command Record - Performed Scrap Deployment

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B12E196	Airbag or Pretensioner Deployed When Front Crash Detect	Malfunction indicator ON	Collision occurs and signals exceed door threshold and the controller ignites ignition device
B12E296	Airbag or Pretensioner Deployed When Side Crash Detect		
B12E396	Airbag or Pretensioner Deployed When Rear Crash Detect		

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B12E500	Disposal Command Record - Performed Scrap Deployment		

Hint:

- For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
- When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

⚠ Caution

- **When DTCs above occur, it' s necessary to replace the controller, deployed airbag or tensioner and collision sensor on collision side. For disposed airbag treatment, please refer to airbag disposal section.**

DTC	B000195	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B001095	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B002095	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B002195	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B002895	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B002995	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B007095	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B007295	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B007395	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B007595	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault
DTC	B009055	Front Left Impact Sensor Configured Fault
DTC	B009155	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Configured Fault
DTC	B009555	Front Right Impact Sensor Configured Fault
DTC	B009655	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Configured Error

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B000195	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Configured Fault	Malfunction indicator ON	Configuration error or element damaged

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B001095	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Configured Fault		
B002095	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Configured Fault		
B002195	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Configured Fault		
B002895	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Configured Fault		
B002995	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Configured Fault		
B007095	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault		
B007295	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault		
B007395	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault		
B007595	2nd Row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Configured Fault		
B009055	Front Left Impact Sensor Configured Fault		
B009155	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Configured Fault		
B009555	Front Right Impact Sensor Configured Fault		
B009655	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Configured Error		

⚠ Warning

Trouble cause: Configuration error or element is damaged.

1	Check configuration data
----------	---------------------------------

- For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
- Perform configuration learning again or replace it with correct element.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A



For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection”

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	B009049	Front Left Impact Sensor Internal Fault
DTC	B009087	Front Left Impact Sensor Communication Fault
DTC	B009149	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Internal Fault
DTC	B009187	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Communication Fault
DTC	B009549	Front Right Impact Sensor Internal Fault
DTC	B009587	Front Right Impact Sensor communication Fault
DTC	B009649	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Internal Error
DTC	B009687	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Communication Error

■ **Description**

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B009049	Front Left Impact Sensor Internal Fault	Malfunction indicator ON	Acceleration sensor type is wrong or the element is damaged
B009087	Front Left Impact Sensor Communication Fault		
B009149	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Internal Fault		
B009187	Left B-pillar Impact Sensor Communication Fault		
B009549	Front Right Impact Sensor Internal Fault		
B009587	Front Right Impact Sensor communication Fault		
B009649	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Internal Error		
B009687	Right B-pillar Impact Sensor Communication Error		

Warning

Trouble cause: Acceleration sensor type is wrong or the element is damaged.

1	Check side collision sensor
---	-----------------------------

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

(a) For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .

(b) Replace it with element of correct function and type.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A

A	For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection”
----------	--

DTC	B12E049	ACM Internal Error
------------	----------------	---------------------------

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B12E049	ACM Internal Error	Malfunction indicator ON	Controller is damaged

⚠ Warning	
Possible cause for malfunction: Controller is damaged	

1	Check controller
----------	-------------------------

(a) For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .

(b) Replace the controller.

⚠ Warning
Prevent electric static discharge, such as static-proof wrist strap.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A

A	For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection”
----------	--

DTC	B000119	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Cross-connect
------------	----------------	---

DTC	B001019	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Cross-connect
------------	----------------	---

DTC	B002019	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Cross-connect
------------	----------------	--

DTC	B002119	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Cross-connect
------------	----------------	---

DTC	B002819	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Cross-connect Fault
------------	----------------	--

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

DTC	B002919	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Cross-connect
DTC	B007019	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect
DTC	B007219	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect Fault
DTC	B007319	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect
DTC	B007519	2nd row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect

■ **Description**

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B000119	Driver/Left Front Airbag Squib Cross-connect	Malfunction indicator ON	Connector is damaged or open
B001019	Passenger/Right Front Airbag Squib Cross-connect		
B002019	Driver/Left Side Airbag Squib Cross-connect		
B002119	Driver/Left Curtain Airbag Squib Cross-connect		
B002819	Passenger/Right Side Airbag Squib Cross-connect Fault		
B002919	Passenger/Right Curtain Airbag Squib Cross-connect		
B007019	Driver/Left Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect		
B007219	Passenger/Right Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect Fault		
B007319	2nd Row Passenger/Left Rear Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect		
B007519	2nd row Passenger/Right Rear Pretensioner Squib Cross-connect		

Warning

Possible cause for malfunction: Connector is damaged or open circuit

1	Check for connector state or open in circuit
---	--

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- (a) For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
- (b) Check state of corresponding connector. There should be no damage, poor connection or open circuit, etc.; Measure and check if there is open circuit, misalign etc. between airbag module connector and element connector.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A

A	For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .
----------	---

DTC	B00D2F0	Module is in Supplier Manufacturing Mode
------------	----------------	---

DTC	B12E895	ECU in Configuration Mode
------------	----------------	----------------------------------

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B00D2F0	Module is in Supplier Manufacturing Mode	Malfunction indicator ON	Module does not change to normal mode
B12E895	ECU in Configuration Mode		

⚠ Warning
Possible cause for malfunction: Module does not change to normal mode

1	Module changes to normal mode
----------	--------------------------------------

- (a) For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
- (b) Change module to normal mode with diagnostic tester.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A

A	For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .
----------	---

DTC	B12E654	IMU Calibration Missing
------------	----------------	--------------------------------

DTC	B12E692	IMU Calibration Fail
------------	----------------	-----------------------------

DTC	B12E795	Configuration Parameters Missing
------------	----------------	---

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Description

DTC No.	DTC Definition	DTC Set Condition	Possible Cause
B12E654	IMU Calibration Missing	Malfunction indicator ON	EOL calibration is not performed or calibration conditions are not met
B12E692	IMU Calibration Fail		
B12E795	Configuration Parameters Missing		

Warning

Possible cause for malfunction: EOL calibration is not performed or calibration conditions are not met.

1 Static calibration condition

- (a) Error in module installation angle is $\leq \pm 5^\circ$;
- (b) Maximum tilting angle in longitudinal and lateral directions is $\pm 0.57^\circ$ (1%) for the tester used for IMU off-line calibration;
- (c) Vehicle speed is less than 5 kph;
- (d) Vehicle needs to be supported with tires of proper pressure;
- (e) Steering wheel should be in straight ahead position;
- (f) Vehicle load is normal;
- (g) Only driver sits on the driver position;
- (h) Low fuel in tank;
- (i) Keep vehicle at constant speed;
- (j) No acceleration during the procedure;
- (k) Power supply mode shall be in ON instead of start position.
 - (i) For preparations, refer to “Preparations before dealing with airbag system wire harness malfunction” .
 - (ii) Using diagnostic tester to perform EOL calibration.

Result

Result	Go to
OK	A

A

For inspection, refer to “Airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection” .

DTC	U010000	Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U010100	Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U012200	Lost Communication with ESC
DTC	U014000	Lost Communication with BCM
DTC	U015500	Lost Communication with IPC
DTC	U021200	Lost Communication with SCM
DTC	U024800	Lost Communication with PEPS

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Description

⚠ Warning

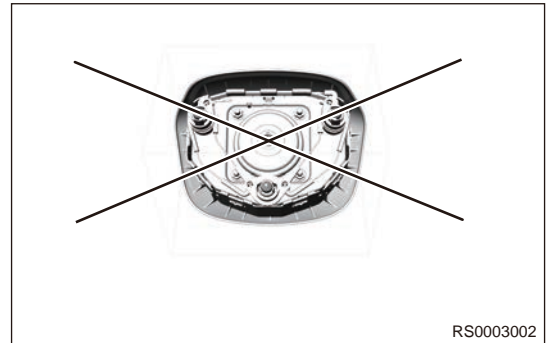
Possible cause for malfunction: CAN bus or controller indicated by DTC is faulty. Diagnostic method: Refer to CAN Malfunction Diagnosis

■ Driver Airbag Assembly

■ On-vehicle Inspection

Hint:

Be sure to follow correct procedures to remove and install driver airbag assembly.



Hint:

If driver airbag assembly contact plate is deformed, never repair it. Always replace it with a new one. There should not be any contact between driver airbag assembly and steering wheel, and keep an uniform clearance all around, when installing new driver airbag assembly onto the steering wheel.

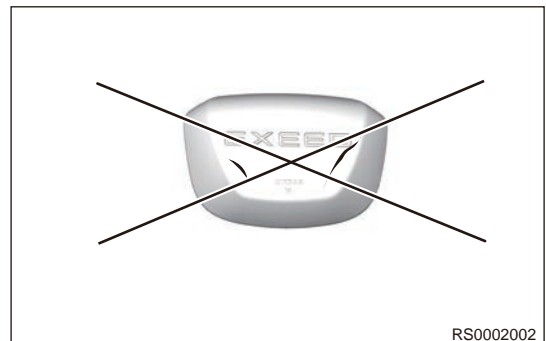
⚠ Caution

- **Handle airbag assembly and airbag control module assembly carefully, and never tap or strike them fiercely.**
- **Removal, inspection and installation of airbag system must meet relevant requirements and specifications, and never perform operation casually.**
- **Removed airbag should be kept properly with facing up. Store the airbag in a place with enough spare space to prevent accidental airbag deployment.**

- (1) Check the driver airbag assembly (vehicle is not involved in a collision and airbag is not deployed).
 - 1) Perform the diagnosis system inspection.
 - 2) Perform visual inspection with the driver airbag assembly installed on vehicle:
Check for cuts, cracks or discoloration on the outer surface and grooved portion of driver airbag assembly.
If any defect above is found, replace the driver airbag assembly with a new one.
- (2) Check the driver airbag assembly (vehicle is involved in a collision and airbag is not deployed).
 - 1) Perform the diagnosis system inspection.
 - 2) Perform visual inspection with the driver airbag assembly removed from vehicle.

Check wire harnesses for cuts and cracks, and if connectors are chipped.

Check steering wheel for deformation.



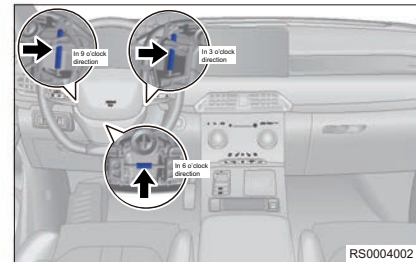
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

- Wait at least 90 seconds after disconnecting the negative battery cable to disable supplementary restraint system.
- DO NOT damage the airbag wire harness when handling airbag assembly wire harness connector.
- DO NOT pull the airbag wire harness when removing driver airbag assembly.
- DAB installation and repairing must be performed with power off, and it's strictly forbidden to install, remove and rework DAB on any production line with power on. DAB replacement and repairing must be performed with power off. Within 30s of vehicle stalling or fused removed (refer to Technology Instruction for Wire Harness System Assembly), sufficient power to deploy airbag is still remained inside airbag controller, so it's necessary to perform repairing after 30s since the power of airbag controller is cut off.
- In order to avoid DTC, never energize airbag system before connecting all airbag system components (-including DAB) and performing diagnostic inspection;
- Keep space in area for storing DAB to prevent accidental deployment of DAB. If there is no deployment space, accidental deployment of DAB may injure human body or damage the vehicle.
- If DAB falls down from a position higher than 1 m, please do not reuse it and insulate it.
- Handle DAB carefully, and never tap or strike it fiercely.
- Assembly, detection and removal of DAB must meet relevant requirements and specifications, and never perform operation casually.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the driver airbag assembly.
 - 1) Position the front wheels straight ahead.
 - 2) Using a slotted screwdriver, remove DAB in sequence through 3 removal holes in locations of 3 o'clock, 9 o'clock and 6 o'clock on steering wheel. Insert the screwdriver into removal hole of 3 o'clock position on steering wheel in removal direction and push it further lightly when reaching to snap spring until a "click" sound is heard, which means that the clip is detached, and the corresponding side of airbag will be bounced up. Then perform removal in 9 o'clock direction with the same method as above. Finally perform removal in 6 o'clock direction, and then take up the whole DAB module from steering wheel lightly with both hands.
 - 3) Disconnect the airbag connectors (arrow).
 - 4) Remove the airbag assembly.



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Confirm that label part number in DAB and configuration card part number in vehicle matches before assembly.
- Then check DAB cover plate surface for trimming, residual, air vent, scratches, galling etc.; it's also forbidden for defects such as inclusion and dents etc. Peel off a bar code after inspection and attach it to record card in vehicle.

Install the DAB after completing the steering wheel;

- Make sure that the ignition key cylinder is in OFF state during installation and never install it with power on;
- Make sure that all connectors are securely connected and the wire harness is fixed in the set slot before pressing DAB into steering wheel;
- After installing the DAB, airbag light is normal after the power is turned on, ensure that the horn pressing function is normal;
- Press periphery and center part of DAB cover with palms to make sure that the pressing operation is smooth without sluggish.

■ Front Passenger Airbag Assembly

■ On-vehicle Inspection

⚠ Warning

- Be sure to follow correct procedures to remove and install front passenger airbag assembly.

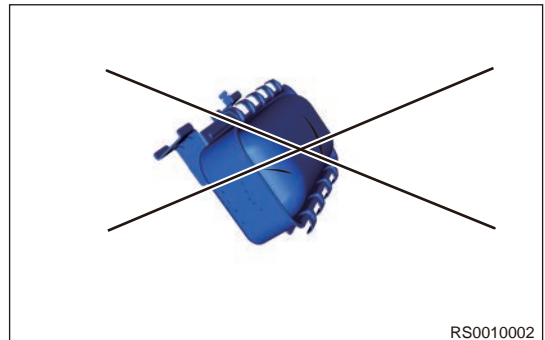
(1) Check the front passenger airbag assembly (vehicle is involved in a collision, but airbag is not deployed).

- 1) Perform the diagnosis system inspection.
- 2) Perform visual inspection with front passenger airbag assembly removed from vehicle.

Check for cuts, cracks or wear on front passenger airbag assembly.

Check for cracks or other damage on connector.

Check instrument panel or instrument panel crossmember assembly for deformation or damage. If any defect above is found, replace front passenger airbag assembly with a new one.



RS0010002

■ Removal

⚠ Warning

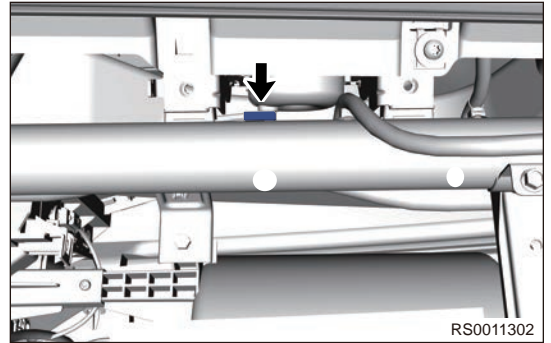
- Handle airbag assembly and airbag control module assembly carefully, and never tap or strike them fiercely.
- Removal, inspection and installation of airbag system must meet relevant requirements and specifications, and never perform operation casually.
- Removed airbag should be kept properly with face up. Store the airbag in a place with enough spare space to prevent accidental airbag deployment.

⚠ Caution

- Wait at least 90 seconds after disconnecting the negative battery cable to disable supplementary restraint system.

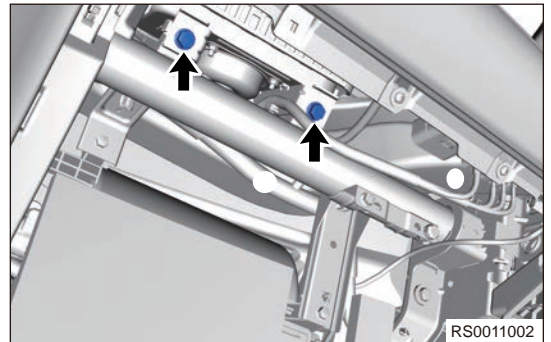
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel assembly.
- (4) Remove the front passenger airbag assembly.
 - 1) Remove the front passenger airbag assembly wire harness connector assembly (arrow).

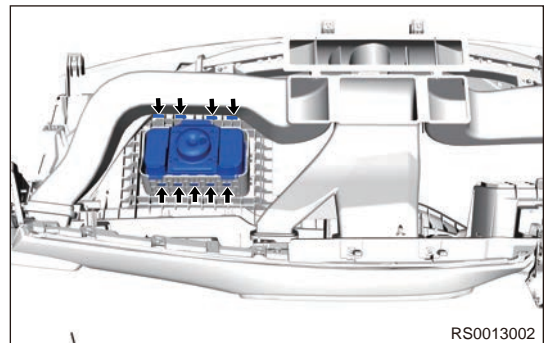


- 2) Remove 2 coupling bolts (arrow) between front passenger airbag assembly and instrument panel crossmember assembly.

Tightening torque: 23 ± 2 N·m



- 3) Using a flat tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, slightly pry fixing claws (arrow) around front passenger airbag assembly mounting bracket to separate it from instrument panel body assembly.



- 4) Remove the front passenger airbag assembly.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

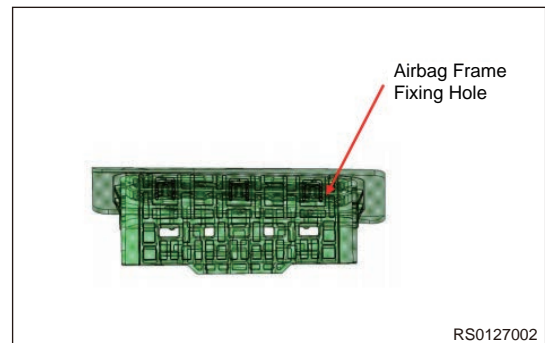
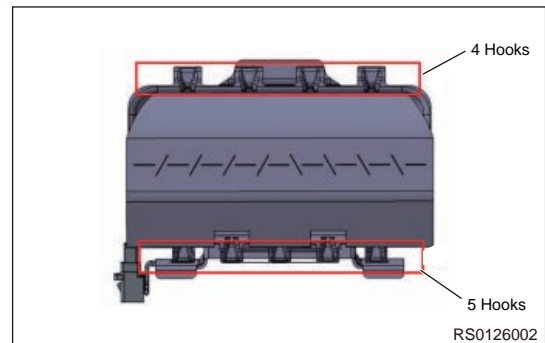
■ Installation

⚠ Warning

- Before installing tightening bolts, always make sure that airbag wire harness is not held down or stuck. Adjust if necessary and install it in place.
- Make sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque during installation.
- When installing front passenger airbag assembly, first slide the hook on one side into locating hole in airbag box, and then press in hook on the other side firmly, making sure that hooks on both sides enter the corresponding locating holes correctly.
- Always keep vehicle power off during installation. It is forbidden to install the front passenger airbag assembly with vehicle power on.
- Check SRS warning light after installation, and make sure that supplemental restraint system operates normally.

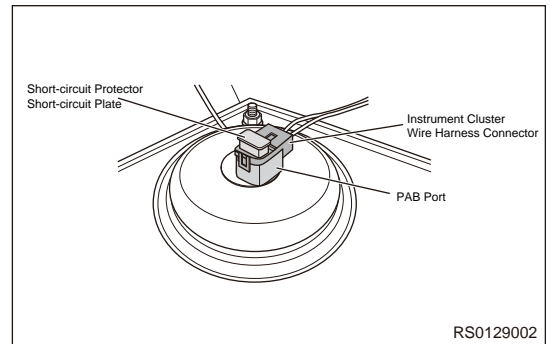
Detailed description and technology requirements during assembly

- (1) Inspect and confirm that parts surface should be free of chips and damages and labels and bar codes should be intact and clear before assembly; Peel off one bar code after inspection and attach it to record card in vehicle;
- (2) PAB should be installed firstly to instrument panel upper body. Place PAB entirely into airbag bracket on back side of instrument panel upper body. First hang 4 hooks into fixing holes in airbag frame, then press 5 hooks on the other side firmly into bracket holes and make sure that hooks on both sides have been put into the corresponding fixing holes.



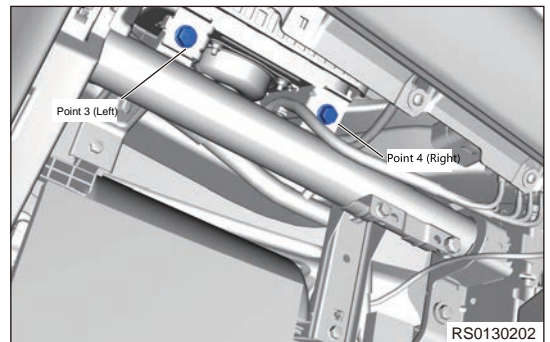
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- (3) After putting instrument panel body into packing machine, insert instrument cluster wire harness connector into PAB generator port while keeping the connector fitting flatly with the generator. And press down short-circuit plate to keep its upper surface be flush with connector surface on wire harness end, which indicates that it is installed in place. PAB port has failure-proof function and it's forbidden to connect forcibly;



- (4) After installing instrument panel body, pre-tighten 2 bolts of PAB to CCB bracket in glove box port. Tighten point 3 on left side, then tighten point 4 on right side and finally tightens bolts with installing tools according to set torque value.

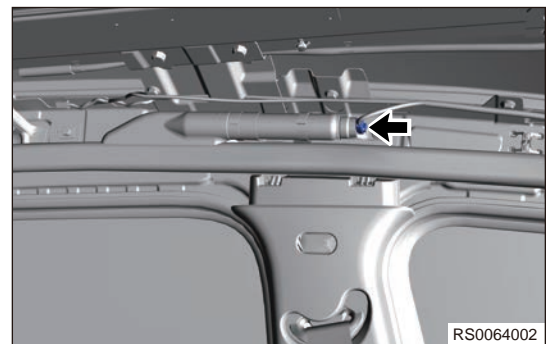
Tightening torque: 23 ± 2 N·m



■ Removal and Installation of Side Curtain Shield Airbag (CAB) (Use same removal/installation procedures for left and right sides)

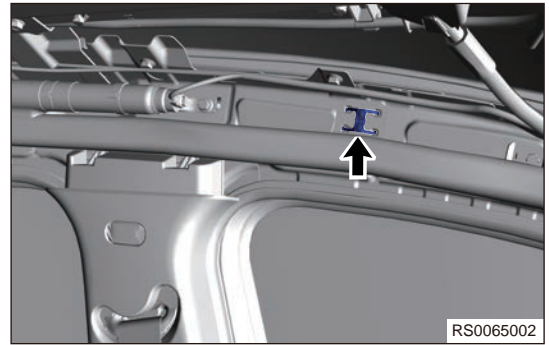
Removal (Take left side as an example)

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for 90 seconds.
- (3) Remove the roof.
- (4) Remove the left curtain shield airbag. (Using same procedure for left and right sides)
 - 1) Unplug the curtain shield airbag connector (arrow).



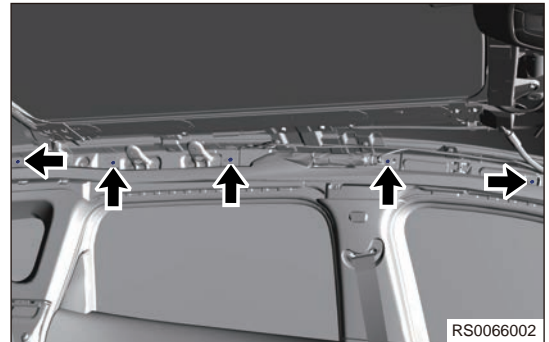
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

2) Using a flat screwdriver, pry out clip (arrow).

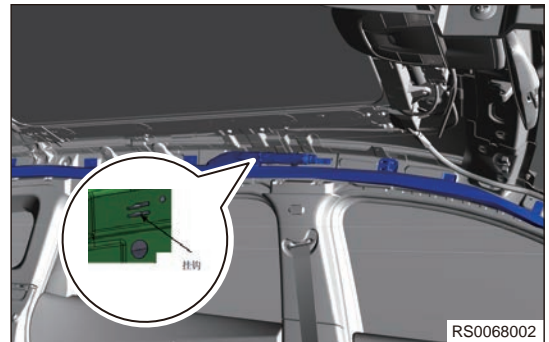


3) Remove 5 fixing bolts (arrows) from curtain shield airbag.

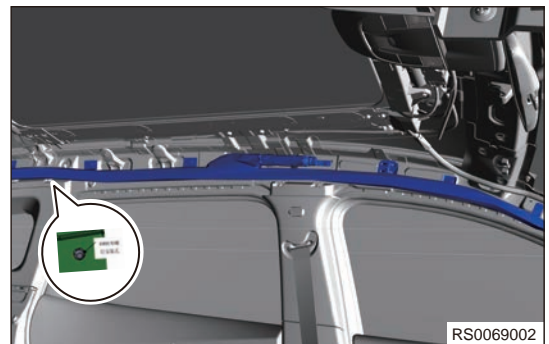
Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1\text{N}\cdot\text{m}$



4) Pull out generator mounting bracket hook from mounting hole of vehicle body.



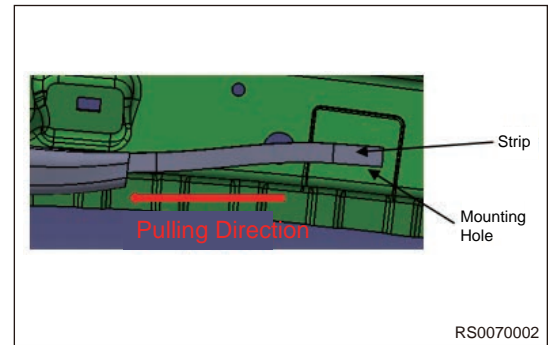
5) Detach the screw.



6) Remove the fixing clip.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

7) Remove end of strap from sheet metal hole.



8) Remove the left curtain shield airbag assembly.

■ Installation (Use same procedures for left and right sides)

⚠ Caution

- It is essential to check if protecting bag stitching of air bag is in lower part of air bag during assembly.
- Air bag on each armrest installation bracket should be in lower part of armrest bracket. If air bag covers armrest installation bracket, it's necessary to adjust air bag to lower part of the bracket with hands.
- Always keep vehicle power off during installation. It is forbidden to install the airbag controller assembly with vehicle power on.
- Air bag on C pillar guide bracket should be in upper part of guide bracket. After assembling air bag clip, it's necessary to adjust air bag to upper part of C pillar guide bracket with hands.
- During assembly, insert locating pin of the sensor into waist-shaped locating hole.
- Check that airbag components surface should be free of damages before assembly and labels and bar codes should be intact and clear; it's also necessary to check that CAB installation area on vehicle body should be free of rags, sharp corners, welding spatters etc.
- Be sure to follow correct procedures to remove and install side curtain shield airbag.
- Check that airbag components surface should be free of damages before assembly and labels and bar codes should be intact and clear; it's also necessary to check that CAB installation area on vehicle body should be free of rags, sharp corners, welding spatters etc.; peel off one bar code after the checking and attach it to record card in vehicle.

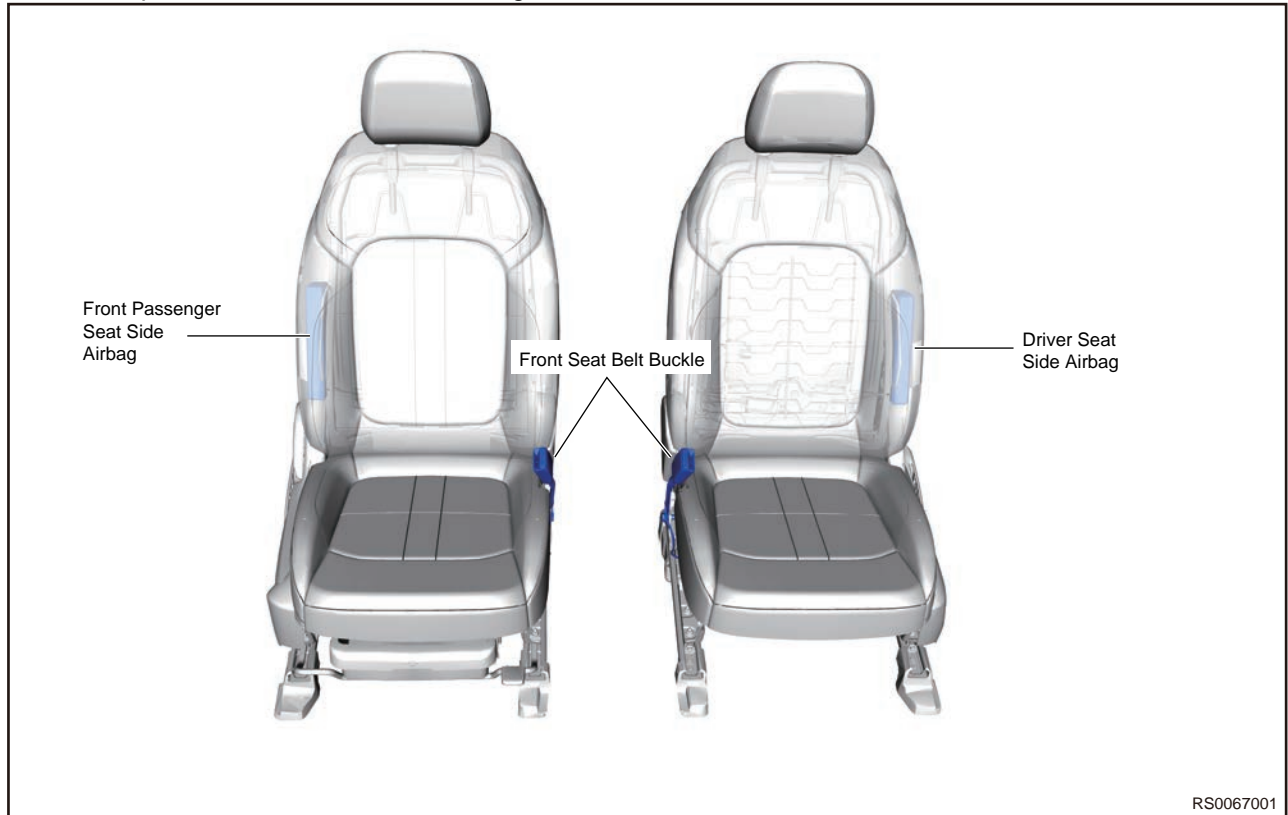
Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Front Seat Side Airbag

■ Description

Installation positions of front seat side airbag, front seat belt buckle



⚠ Caution

- Resistance of seat airbag: $2.0 + 0.5 / -0.3 \Omega$, it's strictly forbidden to measure resistance with multimeter.
- Front passenger side airbag is non-removable and must be removed together with seat assembly.
- Passenger loading status: When detected external resistance is lower than 100Ω , it's judged that there is passenger. When resistance is higher than 400Ω , it's judged that there is no passenger.

■ Spiral Cable (Integrated in SCM Module)

■ Removal

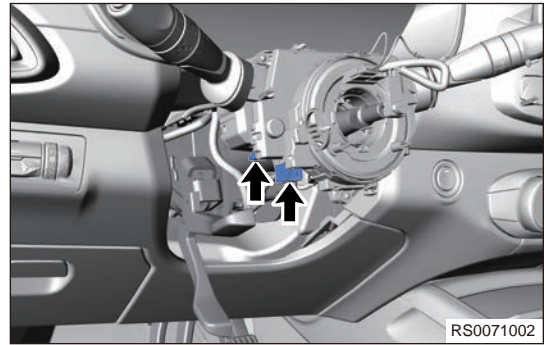
⚠ Caution

- Wait at least 90 seconds after disconnecting the negative battery cable to disable supplementary restraint system.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Position the front wheels straight ahead.
- (4) Remove the driver airbag.
- (5) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (6) Remove the combination switch cover assembly.
- (7) Remove the spiral cable.

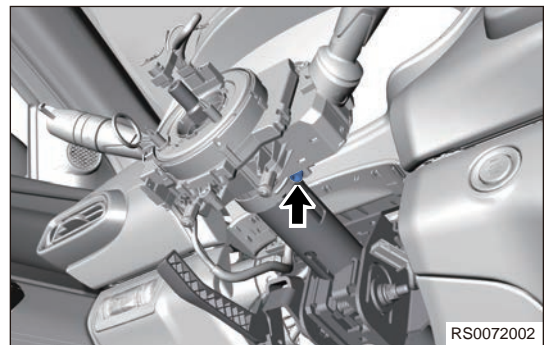
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- 1) Disconnect the steering column connectors (arrow).

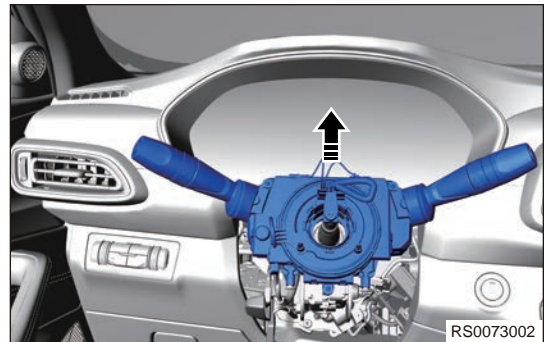


- 2) Release fixing screw (arrow) of spiral cable fixing snap spring.

Tightening torque: $6 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 3) Remove spiral cable from steering column in direction of arrow.



■ Inspection

Hint:

- An activation prevention mechanism is built in airbag system connector. When connector is disconnected, this mechanism cuts off circuit by bringing short spring plate into contact with terminals, thus insulating the circuit from external power sources to prevent accidental airbag activation.
- To release activation prevention mechanism, insert a piece of paper with the same thickness as male terminal between terminals and short spring plate to disconnect the connection.

■ Installation

Hint:

Always install spiral cable correctly according to matchmarks on spiral cable and steering column (fully turn spiral cable in a direction slowly, then turn it in the opposite direction until yellow ball appears in transparent neutral window and arrow marks align with each other), otherwise the spiral cable may be damaged.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

⚠ Caution

- Always install spiral cable correctly according to specified operating instructions.
- **DO NOT** rotate the spiral cable over specified turns to prevent it from breaking.
- Be sure to install fixing claws in place when installing spiral cable.
- Check that horn operates normally after installation.
- Check SRS warning light after installation, and make sure that supplemental restraint system operates normally.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

■ Airbag System Controller

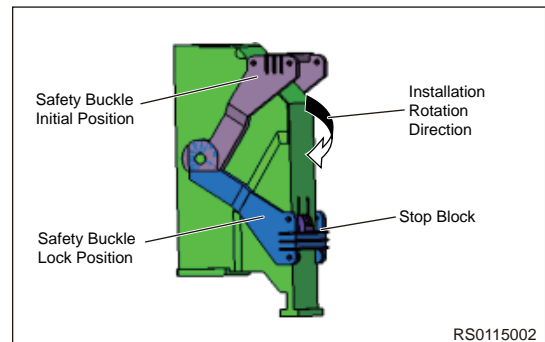
■ Removal

Warning/Caution/Hint

⚠ Warning

- Be sure to follow correct procedures to remove and install airbag system controller.
- Inspect and confirm that part number in ACU label matches with configuration card part number in vehicle; parts surface should be free of chips and labels and bar codes should be intact and clear before assembly; Peel off one bar code after inspection and attach it to record card in vehicle;
- Aligning 3 installation holes of ACU with vehicle body projection welding nut hole. Pre-tighten the bolts and tighten 3 bolts to specified torque with a tool;

- Insert wire harness connector into ACU port:
Rotate fuse clip from initial position to final lock position following installation rotation direction and make sure that fuse clip goes over stop block. Generally a “click” sound will be heard, which indicates that fuse clip has been clamped into place. Make sure that fuse clip is in initial position before installation. ACU port has failure-proof function, which causes impossible inserting with incorrect configuration, so never assemble it forcibly.

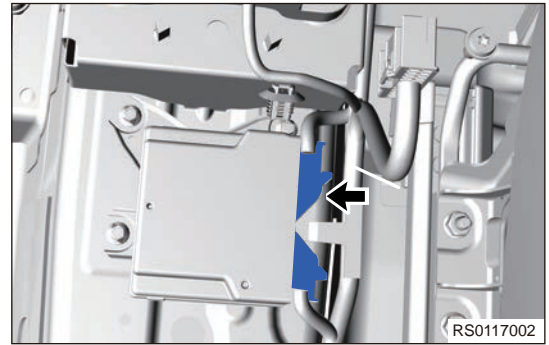


- Peel off the entire bar code and attach it to record card in vehicle for relevant information tracing.
- Handle ACU carefully and it's strictly forbidden to tap and crash it fiercely.
- There should be no other objects between ACU installation plane and ACU and ACU must be installed directly on body panel.
- When installing and tightening bolts of ACU, make sure that start button is in OFF and it's forbidden to install it with power on.

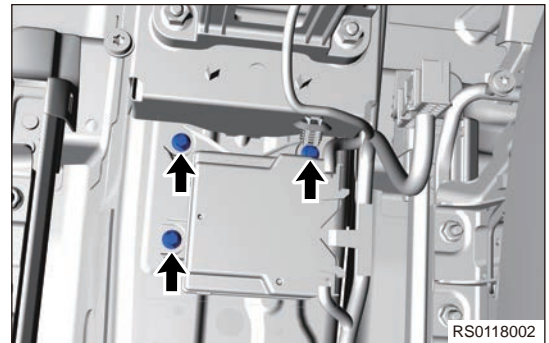
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for 90 seconds.
- (3) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (4) Remove the airbag controller assembly.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

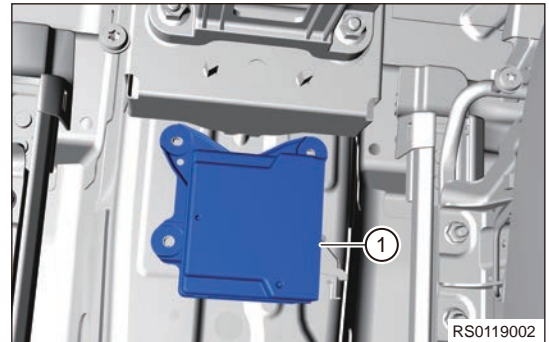
- 1) Disconnect the airbag controller wire harness connector (arrow).



- 2) Remove 3 fixing bolts (arrow) from airbag controller.
Tightening torque: 8 ± 1.2 N·m



- 3) Remove the airbag controller assembly (1).



■ Installation

Warning

- Before installing tightening bolts, always make sure that airbag wire harness is not held down or stuck. Adjust if necessary and install it in place.
- Make sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque during installation.
- Always keep vehicle power off during installation. It is forbidden to install the airbag controller assembly with vehicle power on.
- Check SRS warning light after installation, and make sure that supplemental restraint system operates normally.
- Always perform yaw rate sensor calibration when replacing airbag control module or there is related malfunction on airbag.
- Perform IMU off-line calibration when replacing airbag control module with a new one or malfunction of no IMU calibration occurs.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

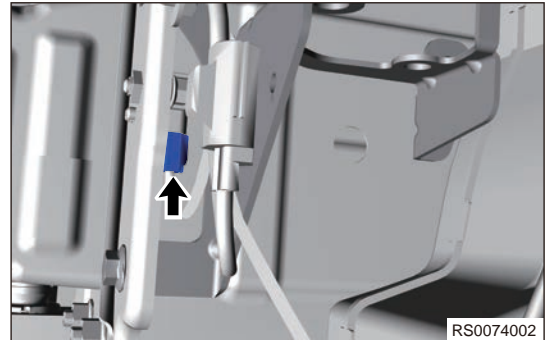
SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Removal and Installation of Frontal Collision Sensor (Use same installation procedures for left and right sides)

■ Removal (Take left side as an example)

Warning/Caution/Hint

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for 90 seconds.
- (3) Remove the front wheel house protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the frontal collision sensor.
 - 1) Disconnect the frontal collision sensor connector (arrow).

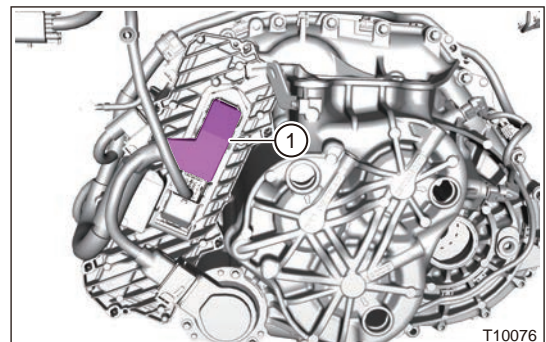


- 2) Remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from frontal collision sensor.

Tightening torque: $8 \pm 1.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 3) Remove the frontal collision sensor (1).



■ Installation

⚠ Warning

- Before installing tightening bolts, always make sure that airbag wire harness is not held down or stuck. Adjust if necessary and install it in place.
- Make sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque during installation.
- Always keep vehicle power off during installation. It is forbidden to install the airbag controller assembly with vehicle power on.
- Check SRS warning light after installation, and make sure that supplemental restraint system operates normally.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

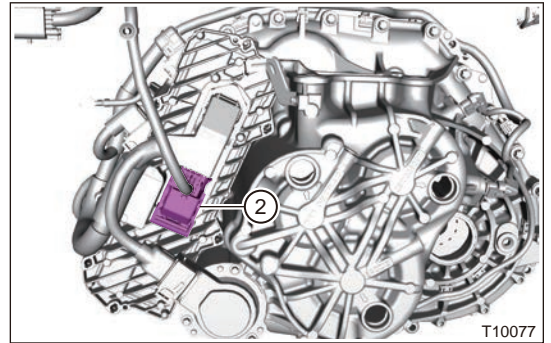
Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

■ **Removal and Installation of Side Collision Sensor (Use same installation procedures for left and right sides)**

■ **Removal (Take left side as an example)**

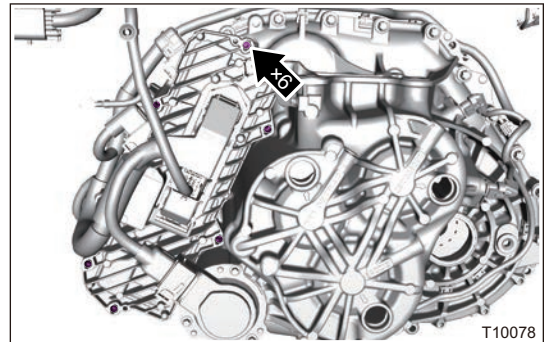
Warning/Caution/Hint

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for 90 seconds.
- (3) Remove the B-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the side collision sensor.
 - 1) Disconnect the side collision sensor connector (arrow).

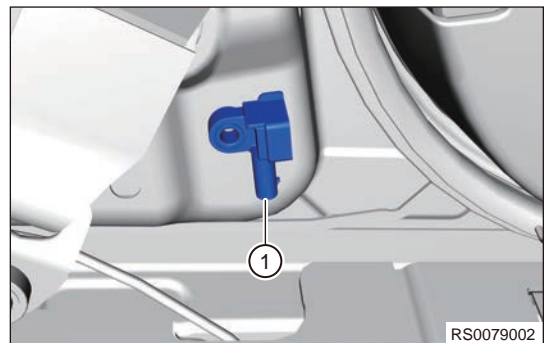


- 2) Remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from side collision sensor.

Tightening torque: 9 ± 1 N·m



- 3) Remove the side collision sensor (1).



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Installation

⚠ Warning

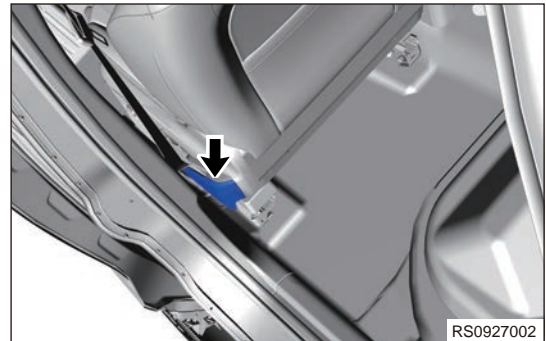
- Before installing tightening bolts, always make sure that airbag wire harness is not held down or stuck. Adjust if necessary and install it in place.
- Make sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque during installation.
- Always keep vehicle power off during installation. It is forbidden to install the airbag controller assembly with vehicle power on.
- Check SRS warning light after installation, and make sure that supplemental restraint system operates normally.

Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

■ Front Seat Belt Assembly

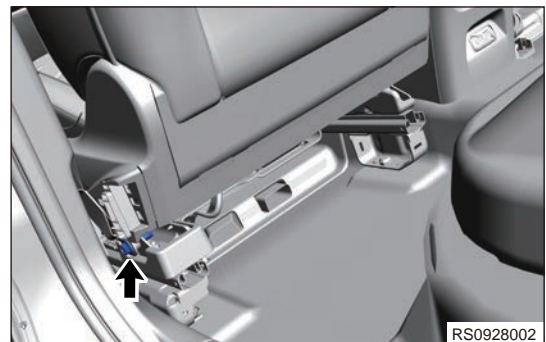
■ Removal

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front seat belt assembly.
 - Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front seat belt assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
 - Try to prevent interior from being scratched, when removing front seat belt assembly.
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 - (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 - (3) Remove the front doorsill light.
 - (4) Remove the front doorsill pressure plate assembly.
 - (5) Remove the front left door opening weatherstrip.
 - (6) Remove the rear doorsill pressure plate assembly.
 - (7) Remove the rear left door opening weatherstrip.
 - (8) Remove the front left seat belt assembly.
 - 1) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off side panel trim cover (arrow) near lower left part of seat.



- 2) Remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from seat belt lower end plate.

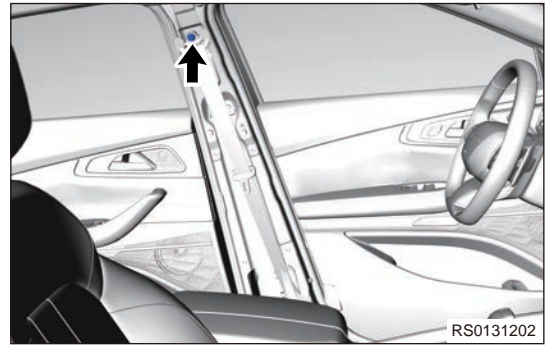
Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m



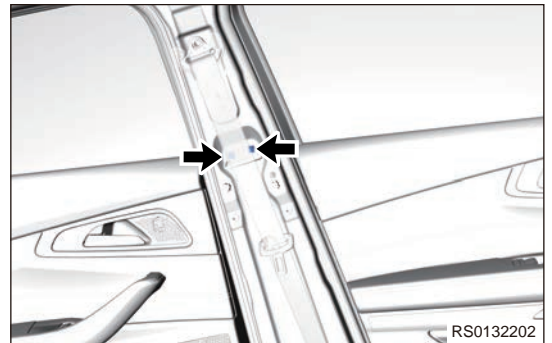
- 3) Remove the B-pillar lower protector.
- 4) Remove the B-pillar upper protector

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

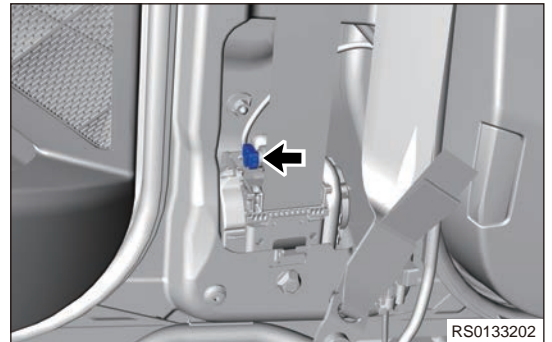
- 5) Remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from guide ring.
Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m



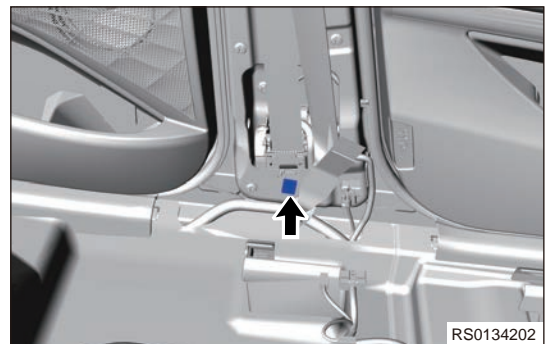
- 6) Remove 2 fixing screws (arrow) from fork bracket.
Tightening torque: 8 ± 1 N·m



- 7) Disconnect the retractor connector (arrow).

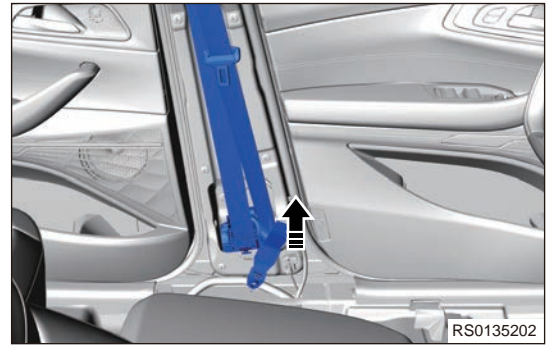


- 8) Remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from retractor.
Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- 9) Disengage T type hook of retractor from slot on retractor mounting board of B pillar metal sheet in direction of arrow.



- 10) Remove the front left seat belt assembly.

■ Rear Seat Belt Assembly

■ Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

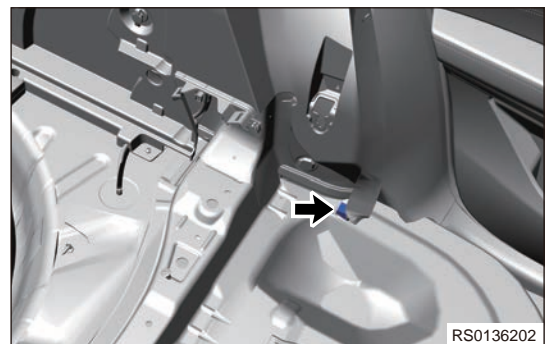
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear seat belt assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the rear seat belt assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior from being scratched, when removing rear seat belt assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ignition switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear seat cushion assembly.
- (4) Remove the covering curtain assembly.
- (5) Remove the luggage compartment carpet assembly.
- (6) Remove the spare tire cover plate assembly.
- (7) Remove the luggage compartment protector assembly.
- (8) Remove the back doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (9) Remove the rear seat belt assembly.

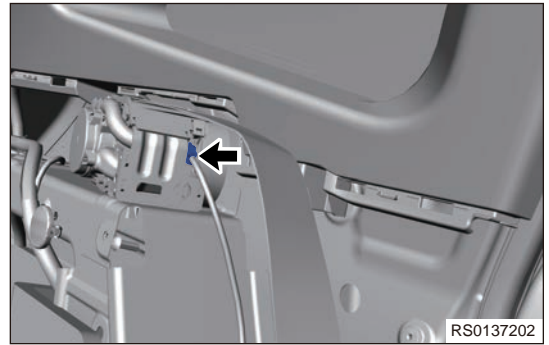
- 1) Remove fixing bolt (arrow) from rear left seat belt lower end plate.

Tightening torque: 50 ± 5 N·m

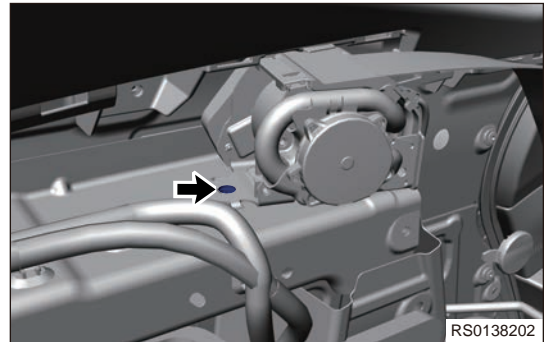


SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

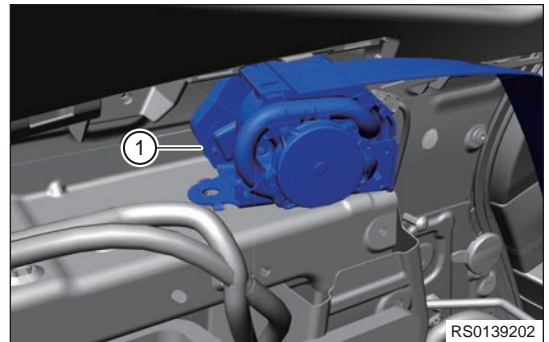
2) Disconnect the retractor connector (arrow).



3) Remove 1 fixing bolt (arrow) from retractor.
Tightening torque: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



4) Disengage T type hook on retractor from groove of C-pillar mounting board, and remove rear seat belt assembly (1).



■ Installation

⚠ Caution

- Keep seat belt assembly clean without oil attached and check seat belt assembly for damage, when installing rear seat belt assembly.
- Be sure to tighten all fixing bolts and fixing screws according to specified torque, when installing rear seat belt assembly.
- Be sure to perform assembly of vehicle in accordance with BOM strictly. It is not allowed to replace the parts assembly without permission.
- During assembly of vehicle, tighten parts with specified torque in list strictly.
- It is not allowed to replace the components of parts assembly without permission, such as bolt, washer etc.
- If the parts assembly is accidentally dropped during handling and installation, please check the plastic parts of parts assembly (such as retractor) for cracks. If there is crack, insulate and dispose it after packaging and marking to prevent accidental injury.
- It is necessary to check whether the seat belt is in good condition before installing it; Pull the webbing and lock the buckle after assembling to ensure that the webbing can be extended and retracted smoothly, the buckle can be locked and unlocked normally. Make sure that there are no objects (such as tools, etc.) can scratch the webbing during assembly of seat belt.

SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

■ Front Seat Belt Buckle Assembly

■ Removal

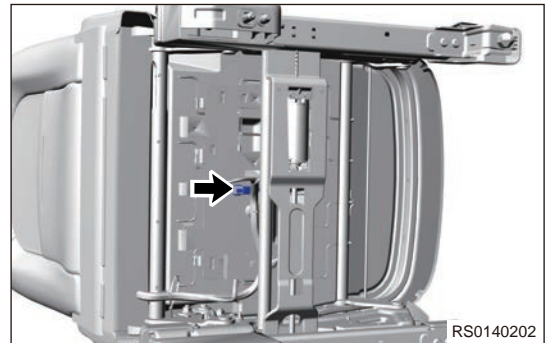
Hint:

- Use same procedures for front passenger seat belt buckle assembly and driver seat belt buckle assembly.
- Procedures listed below are for driver seat belt buckle assembly.

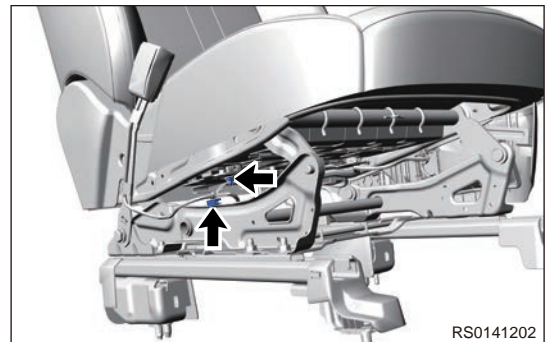
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front seat belt buckle assembly.**
- **Try to prevent interior from being scratched, when removing front seat belt buckle assembly.**
- **Try to prevent wire harness and connector from being damaged, when removing front seat belt buckle assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ignition switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front seat assembly.
- (4) Remove the driver seat belt buckle assembly.
 - 1) Disengage the seat belt buckle wire harness connector (arrow) from bottom part of seat.

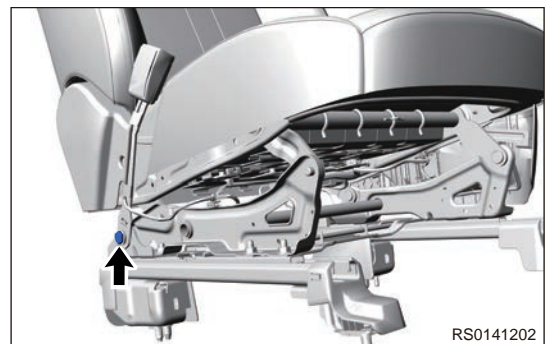


- 2) Disengage the seat belt wire harness clips (arrow) from bottom part of seat.



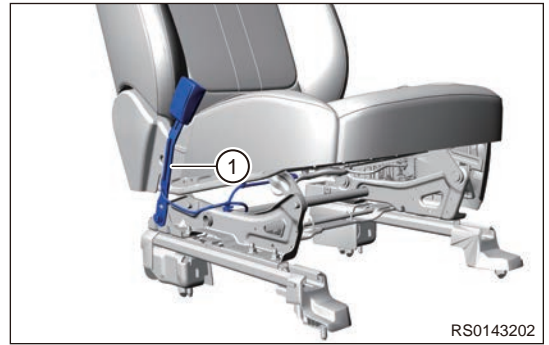
- 3) Remove fixing bolt from seat belt buckle (arrow).

Tightening torque: 45 ± 5 N·m



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- 4) Remove the driver seat belt buckle assembly (1).



■ Installation

⚠ Warning

- (1) Be sure to tighten all fixing bolts according to specified torque, when installing front seat belt buckle assembly.
- (2) Install connectors in place, when installing front seat belt buckle assembly.

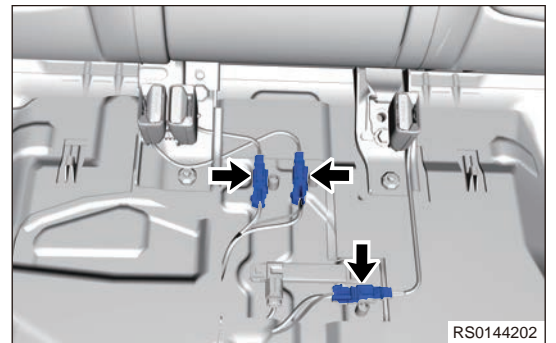
■ Single-buckle and Double-buckle Assembly

■ Removal

⚠ Caution

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing single-buckle and double-buckle assembly.
- (2) Try to prevent interior from being scratched, when removing single-buckle and double-buckle assembly.

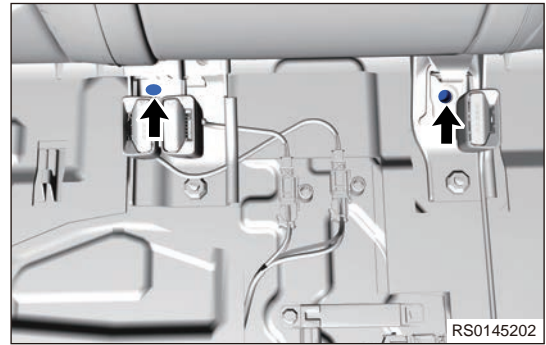
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ignition switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear seat cushion assembly.
- (4) Remove the single-buckle and double-buckle assembly.
 - 1) Disconnect single-buckle and double-buckle assembly connectors (arrow).



SUPPLEMENTAL RESTRAINT SYSTEM

- 2) Remove 2 fixing bolts (arrow) from single-buckle and double-buckle.

Tightening torque: $60 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 3) Remove the single-buckle and double-buckle assembly.

■ Installation

Warning

- **Be sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque, when installing single-buckle and double-buckle assembly.**
- **Pay attention to the installation positions of double-buckle assembly and rear small buckle lock assembly during assembly. For details, refer to installation illustration. Installation position must be correct.**

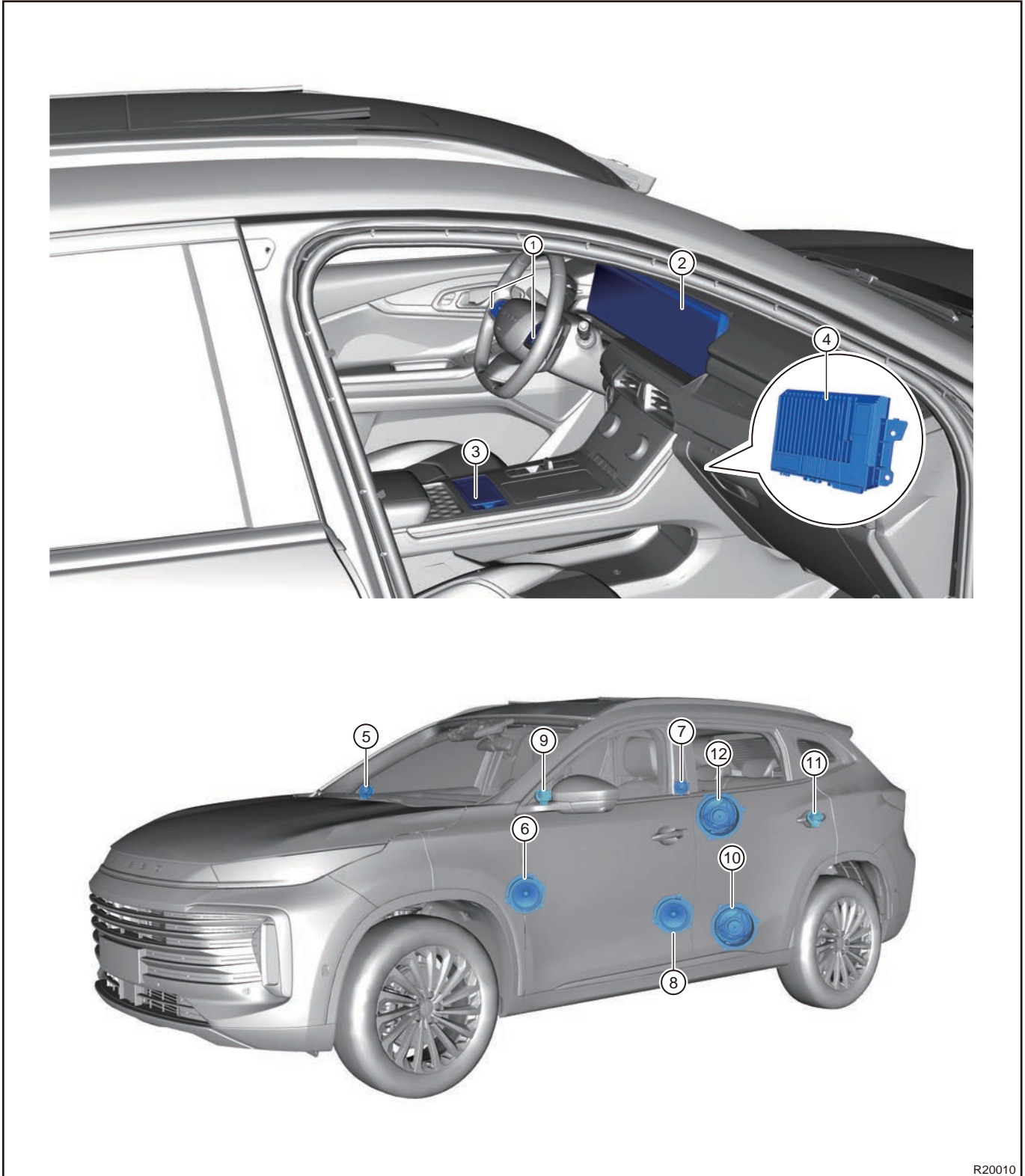
BODY ELECTRICAL

35.1	AUDIO/VISUAL SYSTEM	1356
1	SYSTEM OVERVIEW	1356
1.1	System Components Diagram.....	1356
1.2	System Principle	1357
2	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	1358
2.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	1358
2.2	Problem Symptoms Table	1361
2.3	Diagnostic Help.....	1363
2.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1363
2.5	Ground Inspection	1363
2.6	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1364
2.7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1365
2.8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1366
3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1375
3.1	Tools	1375
3.2	Domain Controller.....	1375
3.3	Front Left Tweeter	1376
3.4	Front Left Woofer	1377
3.5	Rear Left Tweeter	1378
3.6	Rear Left Woofer	1378
3.7	Face Recognition Camera	1379
3.8	Combined Antenna	1379

35.1 AUDIO/VISUAL SYSTEM

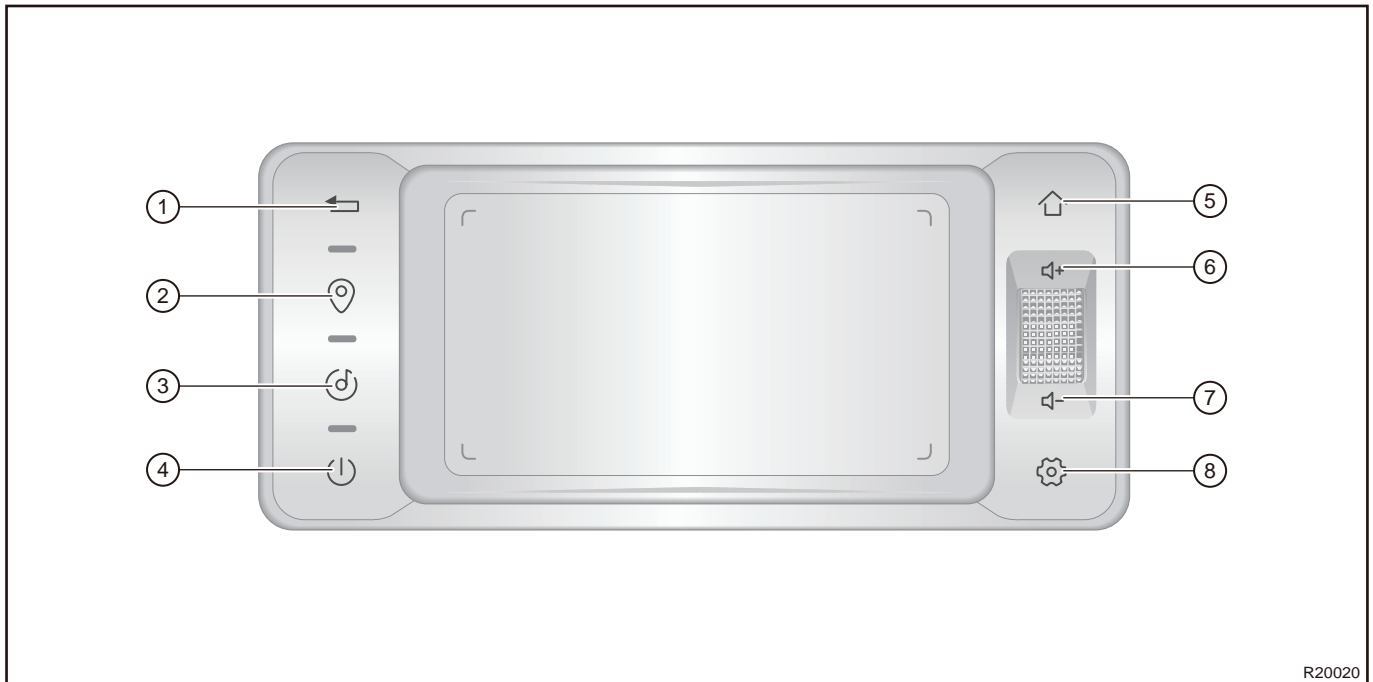
1 SYSTEM OVERVIEW

1.1 System Components Diagram



R20010

1	Steering Wheel Quick Button	7	Rear Right Tweeter
2	Dual-screen	8	Rear Right Woofer
3	Audio Control Panel	9	Front Right Tweeter
4	Domain Controller	10	Front Left Woofer
5	Front Right Tweeter	11	Rear Left Tweeter
6	Front Right Woofer	12	Rear Left Woofer



R20020

1	Back	8	Home Page
2	Navigation	9	Volume +
3	Music	10	Volume -
4	POWER	11	Setting

1.2 System Principle

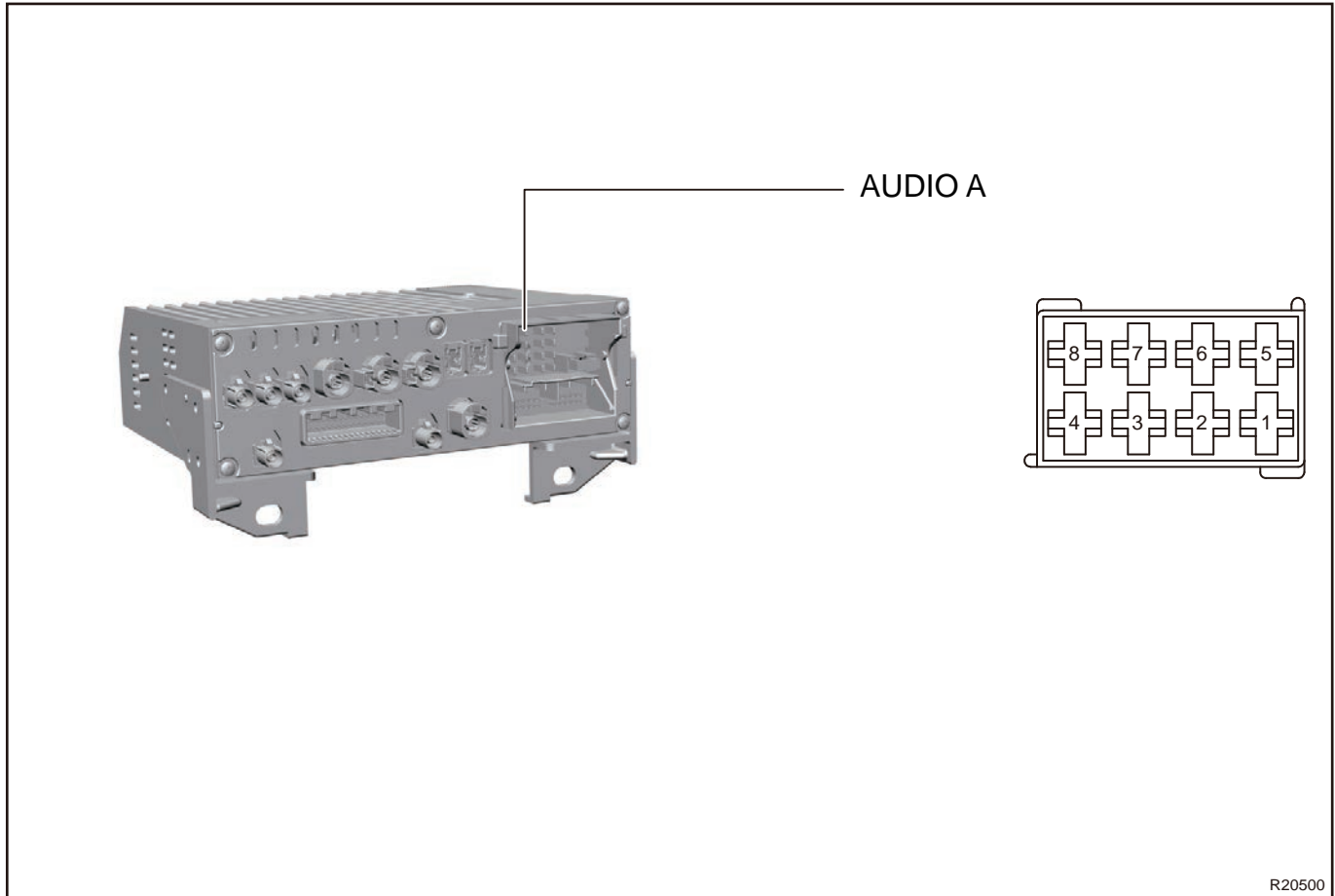
- A domain controller indicates that at least one server is responsible for the verification of each computer and user connected to the network in "domain" mode, which is equivalent to the guard of a unit, called "- Domain Controller (abbreviated for DCM)". In T1D model, the domain controller integrates the instrument cluster module (ICM) and the audio head unit module (RRM) into one module, but both the modules still operate independently by their independent ECU.
- The domain controller (audio head unit) part still maintains the traditional audio head unit function.
- Audio control panel controls the domain controller (audio head unit) by transmitting information via CAN line network.
- The multi-function steering wheel controls the domain controller (audio head unit) by transmitting signal to the central gateway module (CGW) via LIN line, and then transmitting information via CAN line network.
- The multi-function steering wheel (standard type) controls the domain controller (audio head unit) by transmitting information directly via ordinary dedicated line.
- The radio/AVM video/face recognition camera/AR navigation is transmitted to the domain controller (audio head unit) via digital signals.
- The data between domain controller (audio head unit) and USB1/USB2/TBOX is transmitted via universal serial bus (USB).

- The data between domain controller (audio head unit) and instrument cluster display is transmitted via low voltage differential signal (LDVS).
- The voice signal of microphone 1 is transmitted to the domain controller (audio head unit) via TBOX, and the voice signal of microphone 2 is directly transmitted to the domain controller (audio head unit).
- The standard reversing image transmits signal from ordinary camera to the domain controller (audio head unit) via a dedicated line.

2 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

2.1 Module Terminal Definition

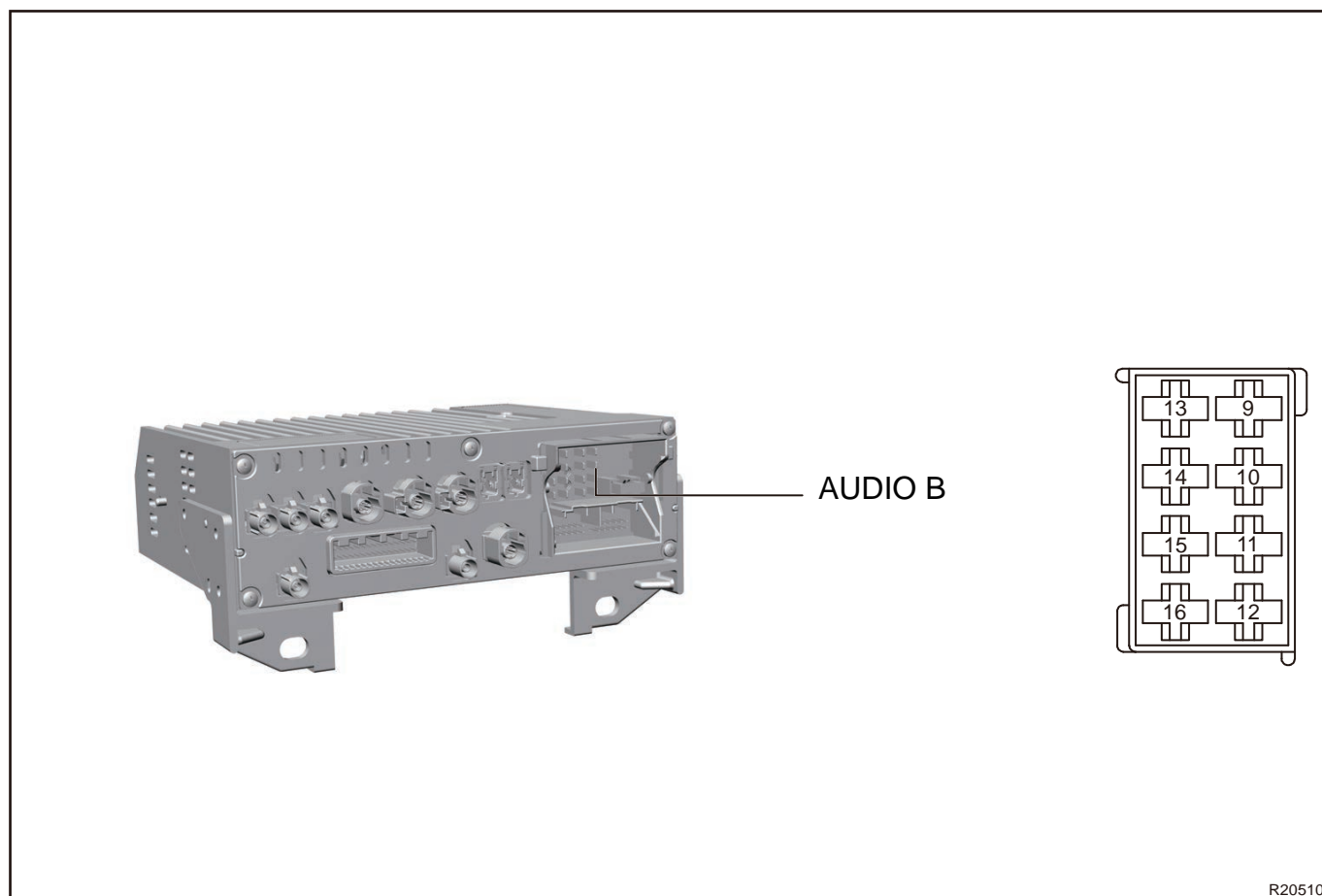
■ Terminal Definition of Domain Controller (Audio Unit A)



R20500

Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
1	Rear Right Speaker +	5	Rear Right Speaker -
2	Front Right Speaker +	6	Front Right Speaker -
3	Front Left Speaker +	7	Front Left Speaker -
4	Rear Left Speaker +	8	Rear Left Speaker -

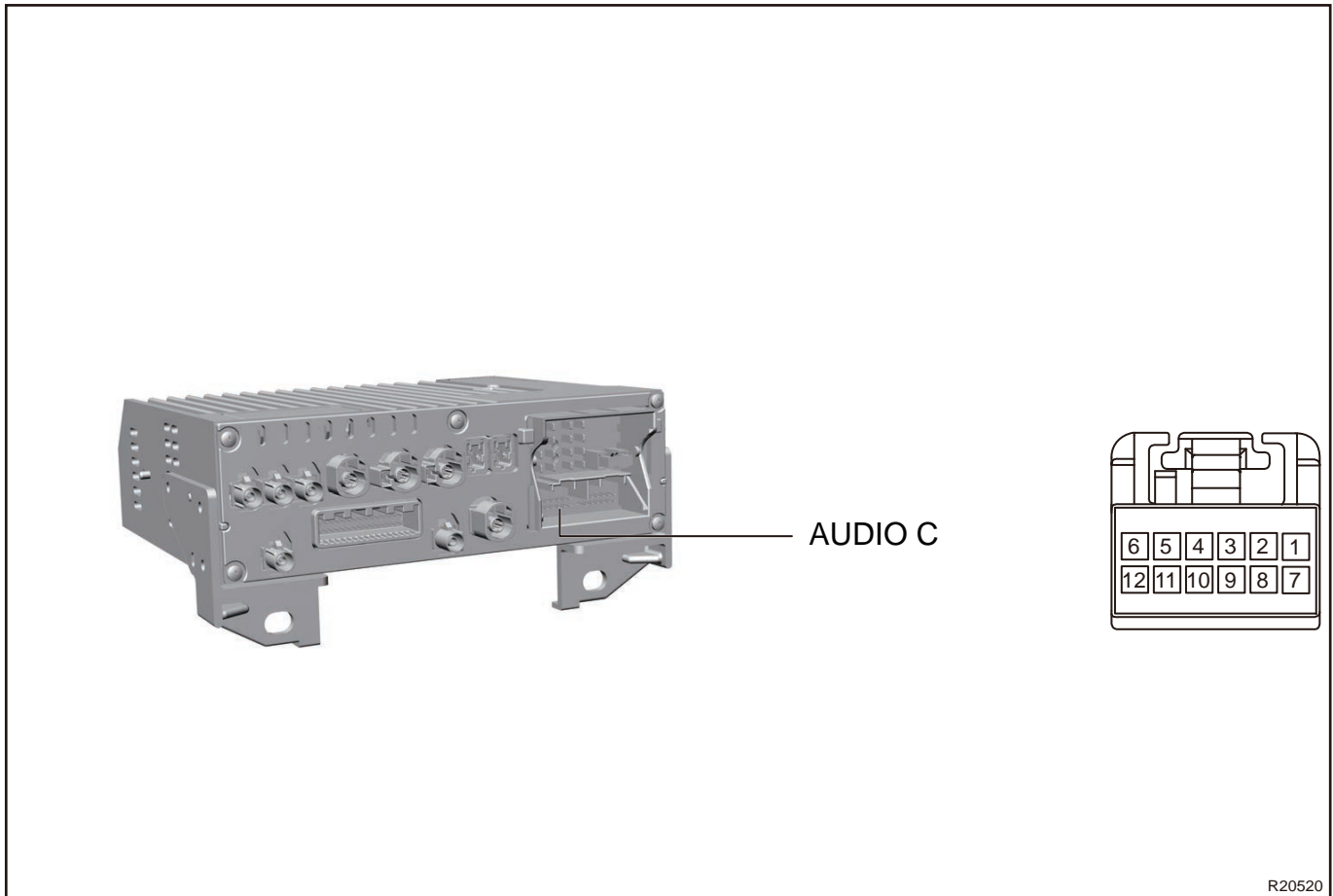
■ Terminal Definition of Domain Controller (Audio Unit B)



R20510

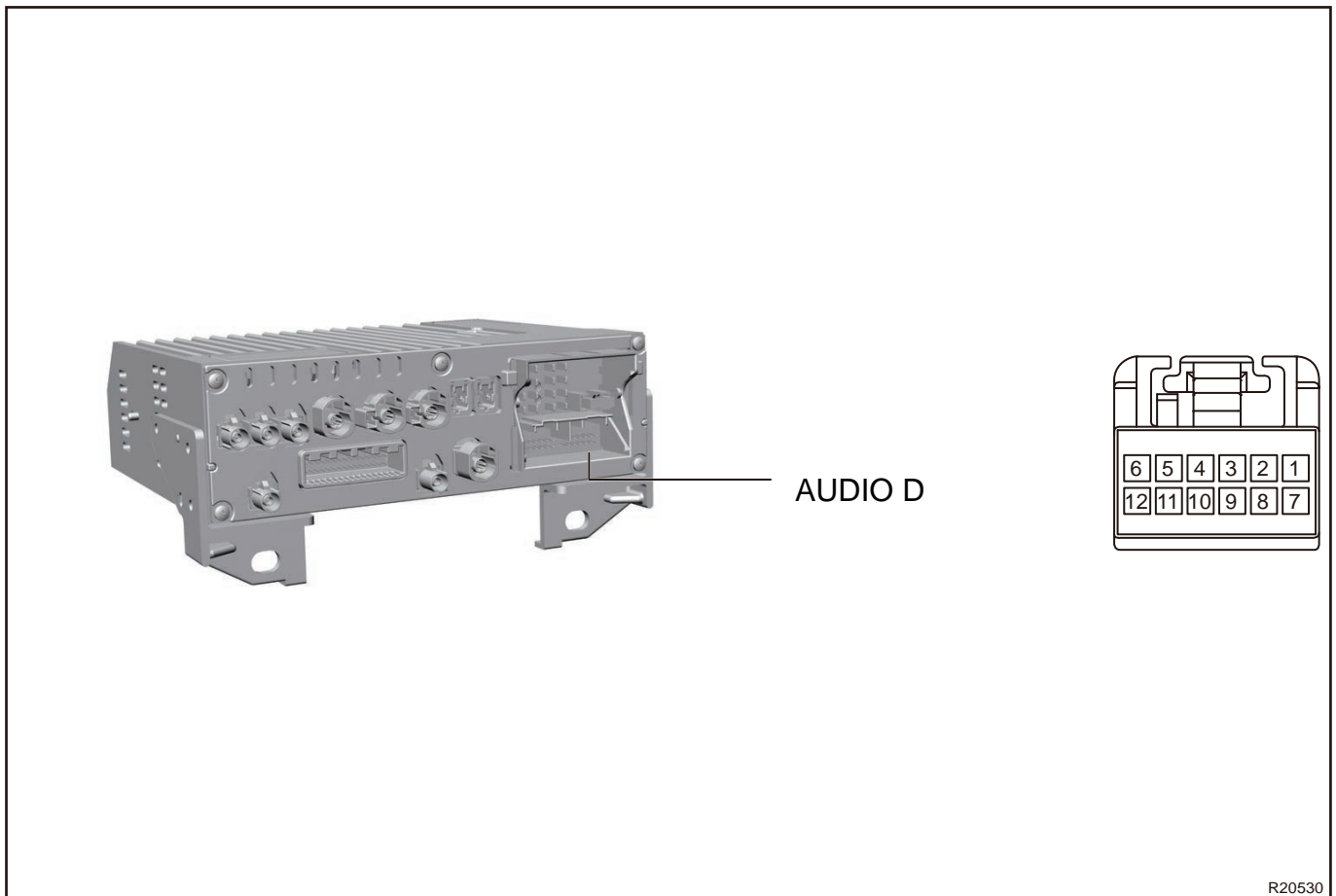
Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
9	-	13	ACC
10	-	14	-
11	-	15	Power Supply
12	Ground	16	-

■ Terminal Definition of Domain Controller (Audio Unit C)



Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
1	Entertainment Information CAN H	7	Entertainment Information CAN L
2	Ignition Signal	8	-
3	Left MIC - Signal	9	Left MIC+ Signal
4	Right MIC+ Signal	10	Right MIC- Signal
5	-	11	-
6	-	12	-

■ Terminal Definition of Domain Controller (Audio Unit D)



R20530

Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
1	T-BOX Audio Right Channel	7	T-BOX Audio Left Channel
2	T-BOX Audio Public Terminal Ground	8	-
3	T-BOX Mute Line Input	9	-
4	-	10	-
5	-	11	-
6	-	12	-

2.2 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Current Status	Symptom	Possible Cause and Solution
General condition	Head unit operates, but has no sound or sound is very low	Turn up the volume. Check setting of front and rear, left and right balance for horn

Current Status	Symptom	Possible Cause and Solution
	Navigation volume cannot be adjusted	Stop vehicle, and adjust volume on navigation screen or volume setting screen
	Head unit screen cannot be operated	In some states, operations of screen are not available. End current state, long press the Power button for 10S to restart the system and try to operate the screen again. Or click the [SET] button to restore factory setting in the system setting
	Some functions in air conditioning and setting are not available	Some functions related to the vehicle are available only when ENGINE START STOP switch is in ON
Radio playback	Poor reception	Check if antenna is fully deployed, connection is correct (whether negative is grounded). The required radio signal is too weak, please use manual search
	Automatic search cannot search a available station	When there are multiple available stations in current range and favorite station is 0, only 40 stations with the strongest signal can be searched. If you have other favorite ones, please manually search and store them
USB file playback	There are unplayable files	The system cannot support all formats files. There are many audio and video formats nowadays. Even file formats supported by audio video descriptions may not be supported due to the different encoding formats. Please refer to audio video descriptions, download supported formats and try
	Volume fluctuates up and down during playback	Volume fluctuates up and down during playback, because there is no uniform standard, the volume cannot be handled uniformly, please adjust the volume knob by yourself
	Knocking / noise	It may be caused when the original file is being recorded or caused by noise, please confirm if it is a native problem with other players
	USB audio, video, pictures cannot be played normally and no prompt is given	Due to large number of USB manufacturers, the file system, supported protocols, etc. are very different, the system cannot support all of them. Please try another USB.

Current Status	Symptom	Possible Cause and Solution
Music playback	Bluetooth music name is showed as unknown	The model shows name in accordance with Bluetooth standard, if phone does not comply with the standard, it will be shown as unknown. Please change your phone and try again
Speech recognition	Inaccurate speech recognition	Say out voice command words provided by voice recognition system as much as possible and use Mandarin; Try to keep the vehicle quiet, and use voice recognition function in low noise surroundings; Microphone is located at dome light position, so if noise is unavoidable, say command out as close to the microphone as possible

Hint:

If fault still cannot be troubleshooted, please drive vehicle to a Chery authorized after-sales service center or 4S shop for inspection and repair. Never disassemble the head unit without authorization and repair it by yourself.

2.3 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all CD system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

2.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

2.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation

may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

2.6 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the control system.

1 Vehicle brought to workshop

Next

2 Examine vehicle and check basic items

Check system power supply voltage, and check that fuse, wire harness and connector are connected normally.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG Check and replace malfunctioning parts

OK

3 Using a diagnostic tester, read related DTC and data stream information

Result

Result	Go to
No DTC	A
DTC is output	B

A Perform troubleshooting procedure without DTCs according to malfunction symptom

B

4 Troubleshoot according to DTCs troubleshooting procedure

Result

Result	Go to
Problem is not resolved	A
Problem is resolved	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

5

According to malfunction repair completion inspection and delivery, confirm if malfunction is resolved

Result

Result	Go to
Delivery inspection is failed	A
Delivery inspection is qualified	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

6

Finished

2.7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B0101	System Power Supply Voltage Low
B1B0201	System Power Supply Voltage High
B1B0301	Steering Wheel Button Fault
B1B0302	Steering Wheel Power Supply Voltage Abnormal
B1B0202	Speakers Connected Amplifier Failure
B1B0602	Tuner Antenna Abnormal
B1B0403	Amplifier Control Failure
B1B0503	Tuner/DSP Circuit Control Failure
B1B0703	Communication Failure Between MCU and Main Processor
B1B030A	MMI Over Temperature
B1B0129	USB1 Current Above Threshold
B1B0229	USB2 Current Above Threshold

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B0103	Communication Fault with IHU Screen
B1B0203	Communication Fault with IPC Screen
B1B0133	RVC Communication Fault
B1B0143	Communication Fault with AR/DVR Camera
B1B0243	Communication Fault with Face Recognition Camera
B1B0501	WiFi Function Fault
B1B0502	Inertial Navigation Function Fault
B1B0603	MIC Fault
B1B0401	Software Configuration Error
B1B0402	EEPROM Checksum Error
B1B60-16	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Below Threshold
B1B6017	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Above Threshold
U250088	CAN Bus Off
U014087	Lost Communication with BCM
U024587	Lost Communication with IHU
U042281	Invalid Data Received from BCM

2.8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B1B0101	System Power Supply Voltage Low
DTC	B1B0201	System Power Supply Voltage High

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B1B0101	System Power Supply Voltage Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Fuse • Charging system • Wire harness connector • Domain controller
B1B0201	System Power Supply Voltage High	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Start engine, and use voltage band of multimeter to check if battery voltage is normal. (Rated voltage: Not less than 12 V)

NG

Check or replace charging system or battery

OK

2 Check fuse

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check if fuses RF62 (20A), RF32 (5A), RF41 (5A), MF03 (125A) are normal.

NG

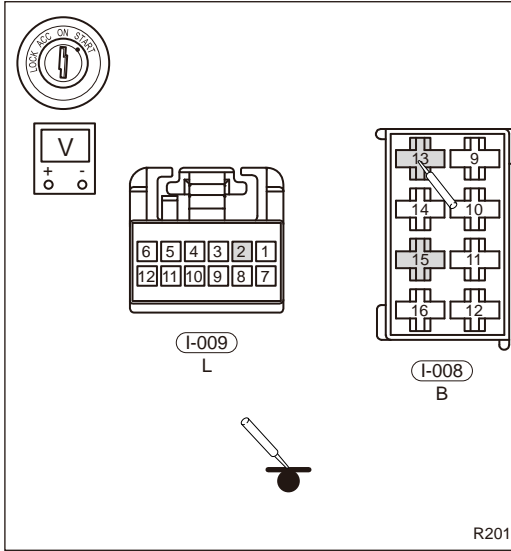
Replace fuse

OK

3 Check wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the domain controller connectors I-008 and I-009.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between domain controller connectors I-008 and I-009 and body, and detect it with a 21 W test lamp according to table below.

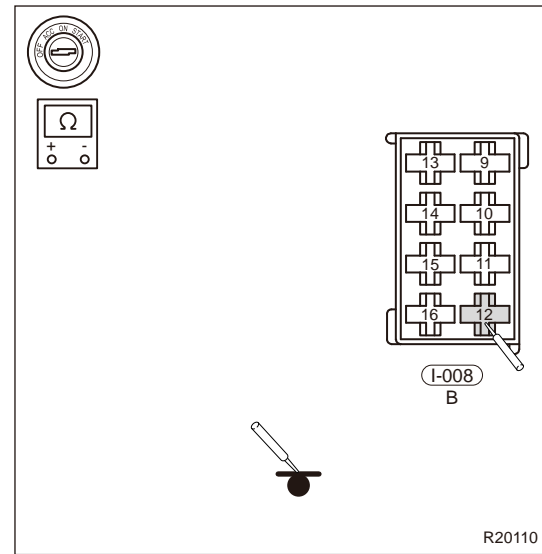
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-008 (13) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
I-008 (15) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V
I-009 (2) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V



R2010

(g) Using a digital multimeter, measure ground resistance between domain controller connector I-008 and body according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-008 (12) - Body ground	Ignition switch OFF	Less than 1 Ω



NG Repair or replace wire harness or connector

OK

4 Confirm DTCs again

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK Confirm that system is normal

NG Replace domain controller

DTC	B1B0202	Speakers Connected Amplifier Failure
DTC	B1B0403	Amplifier Control Failure

DTC	Description	Possible Causes
B1B0202	Speakers Connected Amplifier Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Speaker • Wire harness connector
B1B0403	Amplifier Control Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Domain controller

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

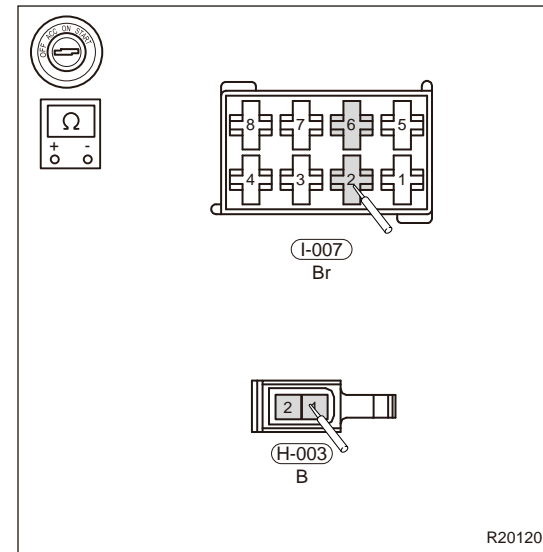
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check horn of vehicle

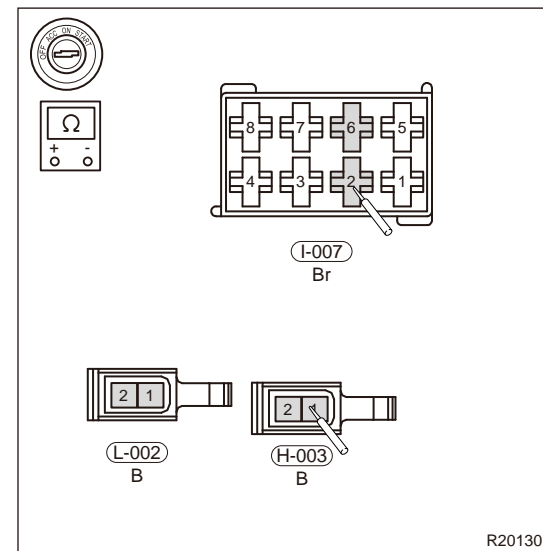
- (a) Play music to check for speakers failing to operate on vehicle.
- (b) Take the front right tweeter failing to operate as an example.
- (c) Turn ignition switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect front right tweeter connector H-003 and domain controller connector I-007.
- (e) Check for continuity between front right tweeter connector H-003 and domain controller connector I-007.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-003 (2) - I-007 (6)	Ignition switch OFF	Less than 1 Ω
H-003 (1) - I-007 (2)		



- (f) Take front right tweeter and front right woofer failing to operate as an example.
- (g) Disconnect front right tweeter connector H-003, front right woofer connector H-002 and domain controller connector I-007.
- (h) Check for continuity between front right tweeter connector H-003, front right woofer connector H-002 and domain controller connector I-007.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-003 (2) - I-007 (6)	Ignition switch OFF	Less than 1 Ω
H-003 (1) - I-007 (2)		
H-002 (2) - I-007 (6)		
H-002 (1) - I-007 (2)		



NG

Repair or replace wire harness

OK

2 Check front right tweeter and woofer

- (a) Using a replacement method, remove front left tweeter and woofer and install them to the front right position.
- (b) Check if front right tweeter and woofer operate properly.

OK	Replace tweeter and woofer
NG	Replace domain controller

DTC	B1B0602	Tuner Antenna Abnormal
DTC	B1B0503	Tuner/DSP Circuit Control Failure

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B1B0602	Tuner Antenna Abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Tuner antenna Wire harness connector Domain controller
B1B0503	Radio/DSP Circuit Control Failure	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check tuner antenna
----------	----------------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove tuner antenna from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test.

OK	Replace tuner antenna
-----------	------------------------------

NG

2	Check wire harness connector connected to tuner antenna
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the tuner antenna connectors B-239 and I-032.
- (c) Check for continuity between tuner antenna connectors B-239 and I-032.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-239 (1) - I-032 (1)	Ignition switch OFF	Less than 1 Ω

NG	Repair or replace wire harness connector
-----------	---

OK

3	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

Confirm that system is normal

NG

Replace domain controller

DTC	B1B0703	Communication Failure Between MCU and Main Processor
DTC	B1B030A	MMI Over Temperature
DTC	B1B0129	USB1 Current Above Threshold
DTC	B1B0229	USB2 Current Above Threshold

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B1B0703	Communication Failure Between MCU and Main Processor	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Domain controller
B1B030A	MMI Over Temperature	
B1B0129	USB1 Current Above Threshold	
B1B0229	USB2 Current Above Threshold	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check domain controller
----------	--------------------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove domain controller from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test.
- (c) Check for system DTC.

OK

Replace domain controller

NG

System is normal

DTC	B1B0103	Communication Fault with IHU Screen
DTC	B1B0203	Communication Fault with IPC Screen

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B1B0103	Communication Fault with IHU Screen	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness connector • Domain controller
B1B0203	Communication Fault with IPC Screen	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Power off test

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Wait for 2 minutes, and then connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON to check if the fault occurs again.

OK System is normal

NG

2 Check dual-screen and connecting wire harness between dual-screen and domain controller

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove dual-screen and connecting wire harness between dual-screen and domain controller from malfunctioning vehicle, then install them to a new vehicle and perform a test.

OK Repair or replace dual-screen and connecting wire harness

NG

3 Confirm DTCs again

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK Confirm that system is normal

NG Replace domain controller

DTC	B1B0243	Communication Fault with Face Recognition Camera
-----	---------	--

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B1B0243	Communication Fault with Face Recognition Camera	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Face recognition camera • Wire harness connector • Domain controller

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Power off test

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Wait for 2 minutes, and then connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON to check if the fault occurs again.

OK

System is normal

NG

2 Check face recognition camera

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove face recognition camera from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test.

OK

Replace face recognition camera

NG

3 Check domain controller

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove domain controller from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test.

OK

Replace domain controller

NG

4 Confirm DTCs again

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK	Confirm that system is normal
NG	Replace or repair instrument panel wire harness

DTC	B1B0401	Software Configuration Error
DTC	Description	Possible Causes
B1B0401	Software Configuration Error	Software is not configured

Hint:
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Reconfigure it
----------	-----------------------

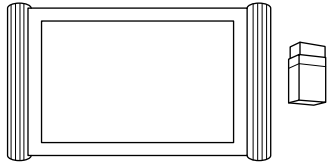
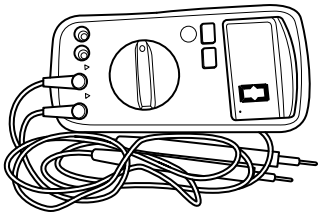
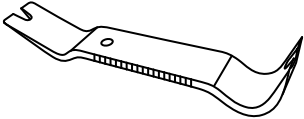
DTC	B1B0501	WiFi Function Fault
DTC	B1B0502	Inertial Navigation Function Fault
DTC	B1B0603	MIC Fault
DTC	Description	Possible Causes
B1B0501	WiFi Function Fault	Audio head unit fault
B1B0502	Inertial Navigation Function Fault	
B1B0603	MIC Fault	

Hint:
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Replace audio head unit assembly
----------	---

3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

3.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p>RCH0001006</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p>RCH000206</p>
Interior Crow Plate	 <p>RCH002506</p>

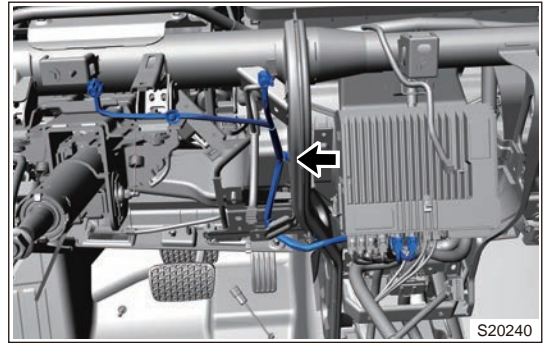
3.2 Domain Controller

■ Removal

Hint:

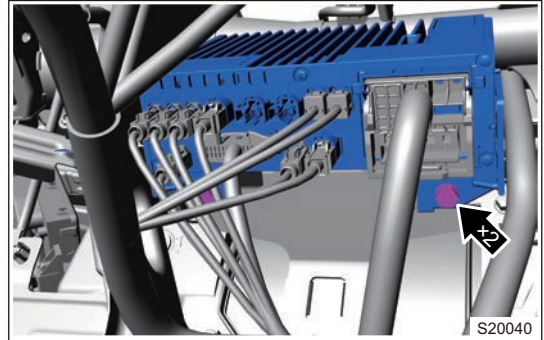
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing domain controller.
 - Appropriate force should be applied when removing domain controller. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 - (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 - (3) Remove the instrument panel assembly.

- (4) Disconnect connecting wire harness from domain controller display.



- (5) Disconnect domain controller connector, and remove 2 fixing bolts from domain controller.

Tightening torque
 $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



■ Installation

Caution
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tighten fixing bolts to specified torque, when installing domain controller. • Connect connectors in place, when installing domain controller. • Check audio system for proper operation, after installing domain controller.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.3 Front Left Tweeter

■ Removal

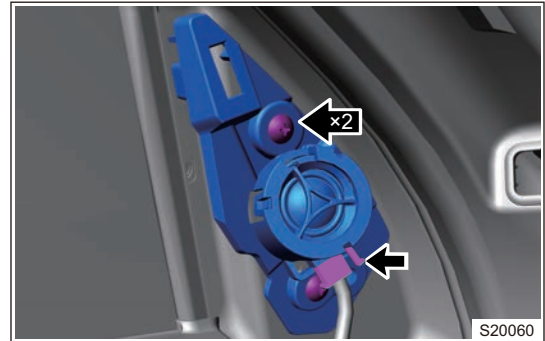
Hint:
 Use same procedures for right and left sides (take left side as an example).

Caution
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front left tweeter. • Appropriate force should be applied when removing front left tweeter. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door protector assembly.

- (4) Disconnect connector from front left tweeter, remove 2 fixing screws from front left tweeter, detach clip from front left tweeter to remove tweeter.

Tightening torque
 $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



■ Installation

Caution

- Be sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque, when installing front left tweeter.
- Check front left tweeter for proper operation, after installing front left tweeter.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.4 Front Left Woofer

■ Removal

Hint:

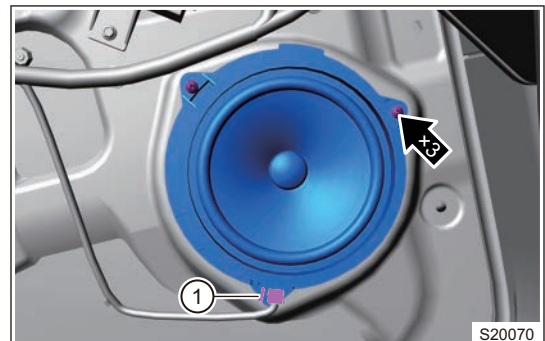
Use same procedures for right and left sides (take left side as an example).

Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front left woofer.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing front left woofer. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door protector.
- (4) Disconnect front left woofer (1), remove 3 fixing screws from front left tweeter, and remove front left woofer.

Tightening torque
 $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



■ Installation

Caution

- Be sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque, when installing front left woofer.
- Check front left woofer for proper operation, after installing front left woofer.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.5 Rear Left Tweeter

■ Removal

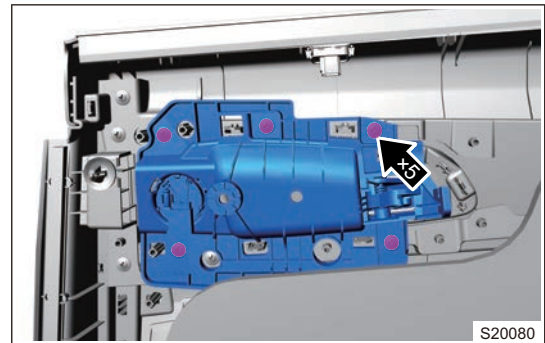
Hint:

Use same procedures for right and left sides (take left side as an example).

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear left tweeter.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear left tweeter. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door inner trim panel assembly.
- (4) Remove 5 fixing screws of rear left door inside handle assembly from rear left door protector and detach 3 fixing clips from rear left tweeter to remove tweeter.



■ Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque, when installing rear left tweeter.**
- **Check rear left tweeter for proper operation, after installing rear left tweeter.**

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.6 Rear Left Woofer

■ Removal

Hint:

Use same procedures for right and left sides (take left side as an example).

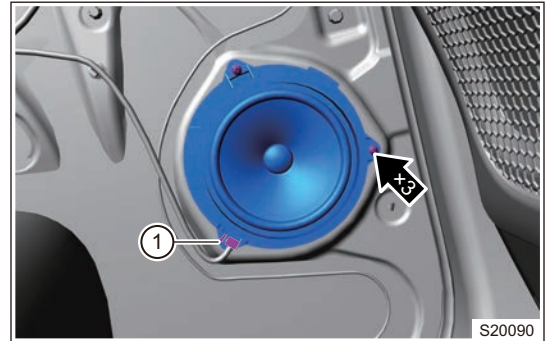
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear left woofer.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear left woofer. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door protector assembly.

- (4) Disconnect rear left woofer connector (1), remove 3 fixing screws and rear left woofer.

Tightening torque
 $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



■ Installation

Caution

- Be sure to tighten fixing bolts to specified torque, when installing rear left woofer.
- Check rear left tweeter for proper operation, after installing rear left woofer.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.7 Face Recognition Camera

■ Removal

Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing face recognition camera.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing face recognition camera. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (4) Remove face recognition camera from left A-pillar upper protector.

■ Installation

Caution

Tighten fixing screws to specified torque, when installing face recognition camera.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.8 Combined Antenna

■ Removal

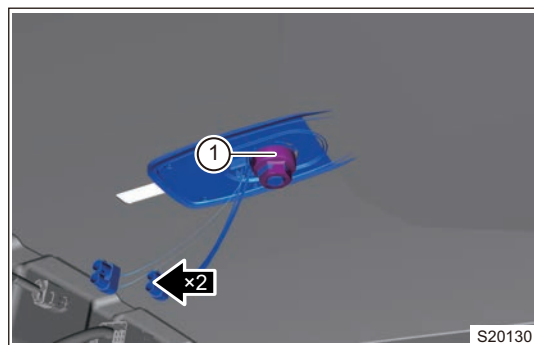
Hint:

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing combined antenna.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing combined antenna. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear part of interior ceiling.

- (4) Disconnect combined antenna connector, and remove fixing nut (1) from combined antenna.

Tightening torque
 $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



■ **Installation**

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

BODY ELECTRICAL

36.1	INSTRUMENT CLUSTER SYSTEM.....	1382
1	Warnings and Precautions	1382
1.1	Precautions	1382
2	SYSTEM OVERVIEW	1382
2.1	Instrument Cluster	1382
2.2	System Principle	1382
2.3	Operation/Malfunction Indicator.....	1383
2.4	Maintenance Indicator Clearing.....	1388
3	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	1391
3.1	1391
3.2	Problem Symptoms Table	1392
3.3	Diagnostic Help.....	1394
3.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1394
3.5	Ground Inspection	1394
3.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1395
3.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1395
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1397
4.1	Tools	1397
4.2	Dual Liquid Crystal Display	1397

36.1 INSTRUMENT CLUSTER SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

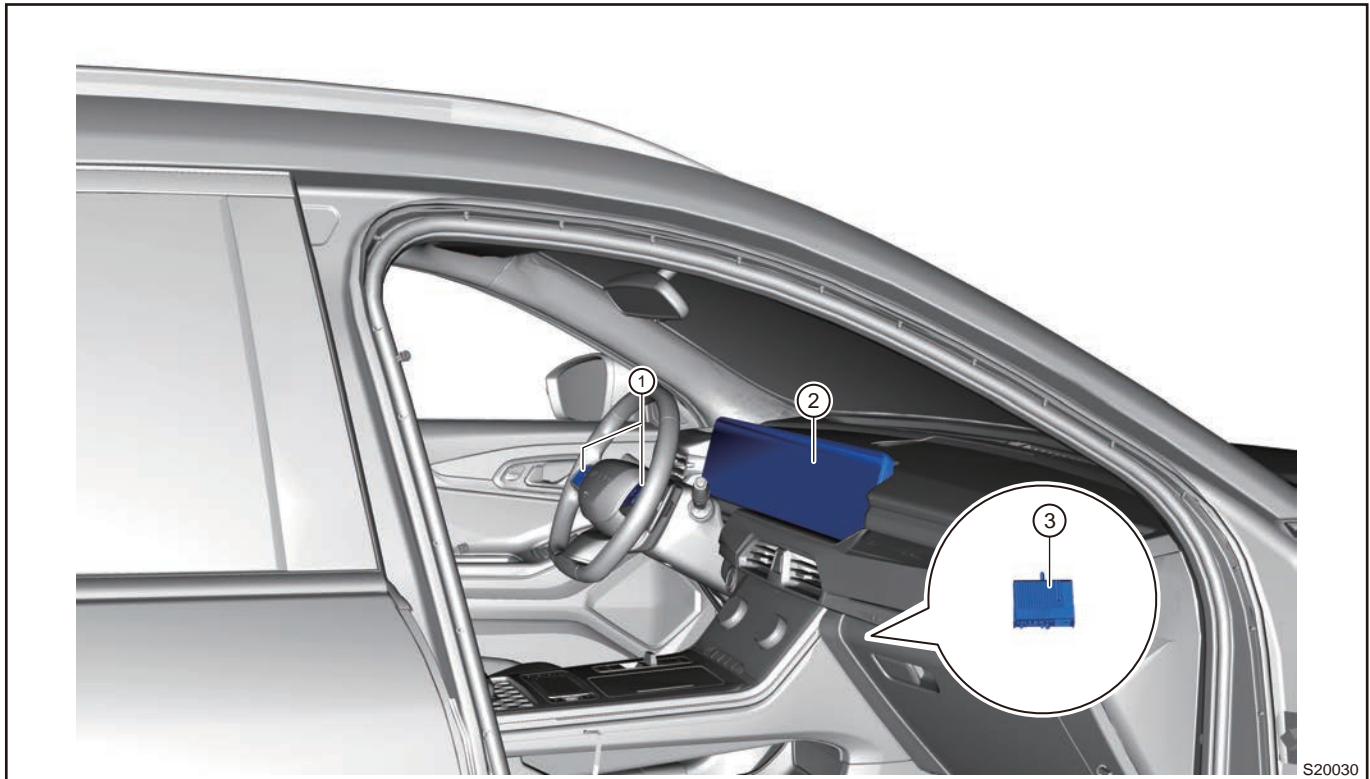
1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Try to prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing instrument cluster.
- (2) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing instrument cluster.
- (3) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing instrument cluster. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (4) When removing the instrument cluster, handle it with care, so as to avoid bump caused by meter needle and dial looseness or deviation to initial position.

2 SYSTEM OVERVIEW

2.1 Instrument Cluster



1	Steering Wheel Quick Button	2	Dual-screen
3	Domain Controller		



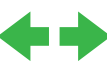





2.2 System Principle












- (1) A domain controller indicates that at least one server is responsible for the verification of each computer and user connected to the network in "domain" mode, which is equivalent to the guard of a unit, called "- Domain Controller (abbreviated for DCM)". In T1D model, the domain controller integrates the instrument cluster module (ICM) and the audio head unit module (RRM) into one module, but both the modules still operate independently by their independent ECU.
- (2) The domain controller (instrument cluster) part still maintains the traditional instrument cluster function.










- (3) ESP function has a setting item on instrument cluster. Customer can set it to ON or OFF by themselves. The instrument cluster sends out the state set by customer, and ESP module receives the state and sends out the actual state signal. The setting item of instrument cluster is displayed according to the feedback signal of ESP module.
- (4) The data between domain controller (instrument cluster) and instrument cluster display is transmitted via low voltage differential signal (LDVS).
- (5) The multi-function steering wheel controls the domain controller (instrument cluster) by transmitting signal to the central gateway module (CGW) via LIN line, and then transmitting information via CAN line network.
- (6) The multi-function steering wheel (standard type) controls the domain controller (instrument cluster) by transmitting information directly via ordinary dedicated line.
- (7) The oil pressure switch/driver seat belt switch/fuel pump and sensor/brake fluid level are transmitted to the domain controller (instrument cluster) via ordinary dedicated line.
- (8) Central console switch (driving mode) is transmitted to the domain controller (instrument cluster) via ordinary dedicated line.
- (9) Central console switch (audio power supply switch (standard and comfort models)/LDW/LKA (luxury and honourable models) is transmitted to the domain controller (instrument cluster) via ordinary dedicated line.










2.3 Operation/Malfunction Indicator








Operation indicator is used to prompt the driver that some system on vehicle is operating and corresponding operation indicator will come on. Malfunction indicator is used to warn the driver that some system on vehicle is operating and corresponding malfunction indicator will come on or flash.




Daytime Running Indicator		When engine is started, daytime running indicator comes on.
Position Indicator		When position light is turned on, the indicator comes on.
Turn Light Indicator		When left turn signal light or right turn signal light is turned on, the corresponding turn signal indicator will also flash together. When hazard warning light switch is turned on, the left and right turn signal indicators will flash at the same time.
High Beam Indicator		When high beam light is turned on or high beam light flashes, the indicator comes on.
Automatic Headlight Operating Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate the current operating status of automatic headlight.
Automatic Headlight Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate the current malfunction status of automatic headlight. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front Fog Indicator		When front fog light is turned on, the rear fog indicator comes on.
Rear Fog Indicator		When rear fog light is turned on, the rear fog indicator comes on.

<p>Front Seat Belt Indicator</p>		<p>When ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to ON mode, if driver and front passenger seat belts are not fastened or not fastened in place, the indicator remains on. When vehicle speed is 25 km/h or more, the indicator flashes to remind driver to fasten the seat belt. For detailed information, please refer to "2-7. Seat Belt" .</p>
<p>Rear Seat Belt Indicator</p>		<p>When ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to ON mode, if rear seat belt is not fastened or not fastened in place, the indicator remains on in red (the indicator comes on in green after the rear seat belt is fastened) to remind the rear occupants to fasten their seat belts. For detailed information, please refer to "2-7. Seat Belt".</p>
<p>Road Ice Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator is used to remind driver that the road is easy to freeze, please drive with caution.</p>
<p>Door Opening Reminder Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator is used to remind driver the opening and closing statuses of door.</p>
<p>ECO Mode Indicator</p>		<p>When ECO mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.</p>
<p>NORMAL Mode Indicator</p>		<p>When NORMAL mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.</p>
<p>SPORT Mode Indicator</p>		<p>When SPORT mode is turned on, the indicator comes on.</p>
<p>Pre-collision System Operating Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator is used to indicate the operating status of pre-collision system.</p>
<p>Pre-collision System Malfunction Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator is used to indicate the malfunction status of pre-collision system. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>
<p>Electrical Parking Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator is used to indicate the current operating status of electrical parking of vehicle. For detailed information, please refer to "3-4. Brake System".</p>
<p>ESC OFF Indicator</p>		<p>After ESC function is turned off, ESC OFF indicator comes on, indicating that electronic body stability system (ESC) is in the shielding status.</p>

ESC Indicator		The indicator flashes to indicate the current operating status of vehicle ESC. The indicator remains on to remind the driver that there is a malfunction in ESC. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible. When ESC malfunction indicator comes on, and the vehicle still has conventional braking capability (without ESC), please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible. Drive with caution and avoid high speed driving.
Fatigue Driving Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that it is necessary to take a break.
EPS Malfunction Indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the electronic power steering system is malfunctioning.
4WD Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that there is a malfunction in 4WD. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKA) Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate that there is a malfunction in Lane Keeping Assist (LKA). Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate that there is a malfunction in Lane Departure Warning System (LDW). Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Idle Start and Stop System Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate that the idle start and stop system is in malfunction status. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Blind Spot Detection (BSD) Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate that the Blind Spot Detection (BSD) system is in malfunction status. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Maintenance Reminder Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that vehicle needs to be maintained. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Automatic Parking System Operating Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate the operating status that vehicle is in automatic parking.
Following Operating Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that adaptive cruise system detects a vehicle ahead, please drive carefully.
Steering Angle Initialization Uncompleted Indicator		The indicator remains on to indicate that the electronic power steering system is not initialized or not calibrated currently.
HDC Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate that the hill descent function of vehicle is in operating status.
HDC Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate that the hill descent control of vehicle is in malfunction status. Please fo to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
ABS Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that ABS is malfunctioning. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible. When ABS malfunction indicator comes on, and the vehicle still has conventional braking capability (without ABS), please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible. Drive with caution and avoid high speed driving.
Charging System Indicator		The indicator is used to indicate the operating status of charging system. If the indicator does not come on when ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to ON mode or the indicator comes on after starting, please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Hight Coolant Temperature Warning Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that engine coolant temperature is too high, drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, turn off ENGINE START STOP switch after idling for several minutes, then contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Low Fuel Level Warning Light		The indicator is used to remind driver that the fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

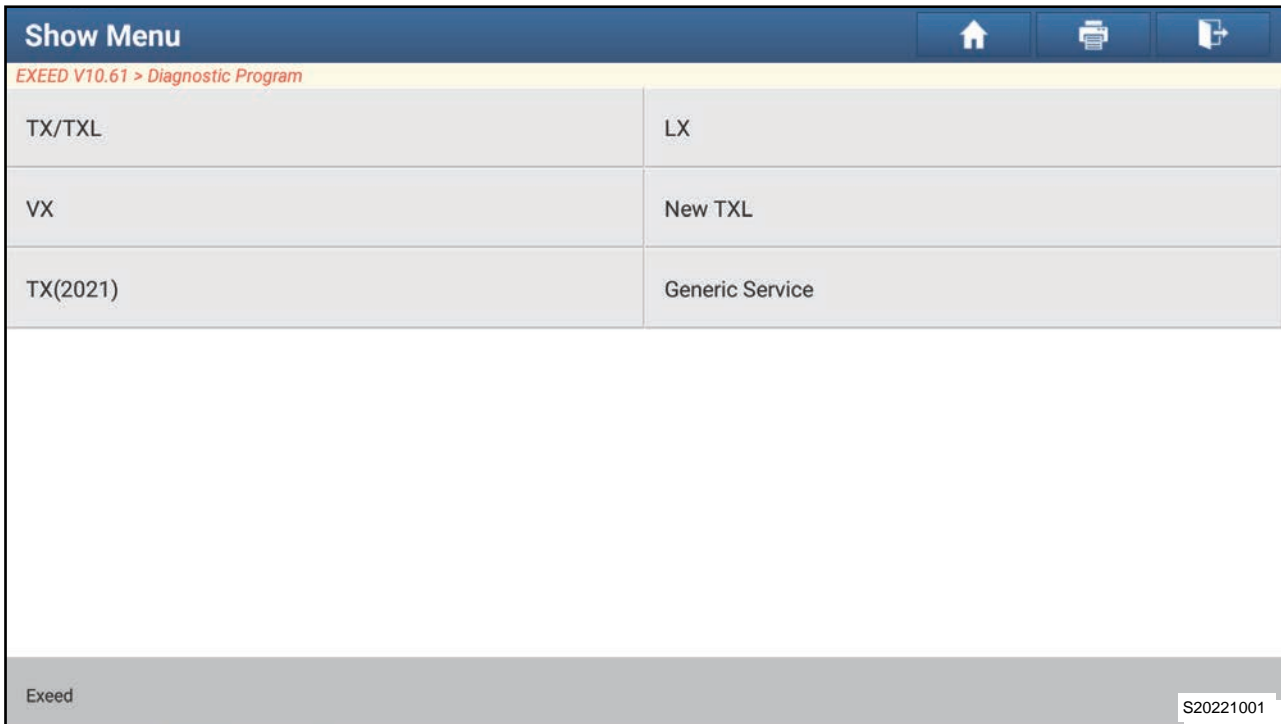
Airbag Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that airbag system is malfunctioning. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Tire Pressure Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that tire pressure is malfunctioning. Please check if tire pressure is too low or too high. If tire pressure is normal, please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Brake System Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that brake fluid level is too low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Low Oil Pressure Warning Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that engine oil pressure is low. Please drive vehicle to a safe area and stop it, then contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Engine Malfunction Indicator		The indicator is used to remind driver that engine is malfunctioning. Please contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Security Indicator		The indicator comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in a certain system of vehicle. Please go to EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) Indicator		When the indicator comes on and “Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is full, please increase vehicle speed and clean it” is displayed by flashing and then disappears, in order to make particles in GPF oxidize and burn completely, the driver needs to take the following actions: Drive at high speed (at speed of 80 km/h or more for up to 1 hour or at speed of more than 50 km/h for up to 2 hours) as much as possible if road conditions permit until particles are cleared and GPF indicator goes off automatically. Finally, please subject to the light off. If the indicator still comes on, please contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

<p>Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) Malfunction Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator comes on to indicate that Gasoline Particulate Filter (GPF) is full, (particles are too much). In order to make particles in GPF oxidize and burn completely, the driver needs to take the following actions: Drive at high speed (at speed of 80 km/h or more for up to 1 hour or at speed of more than 50 km/ h for up to 2 hours) as much as possible if road conditions permit until particles are cleared and GPF indicator goes off automatically. Finally, please subject to the light off. If the indicator still comes on, please contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.</p>
<p>Transmission Malfunction Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator is used to remind driver that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair immediately.</p>
<p>Transmission P Position Malfunction Indicator</p>		<p>The indicator is used to indicate that transmission P position is malfunctioning. Please contact EXEED service station for inspection and repair immediately.</p>

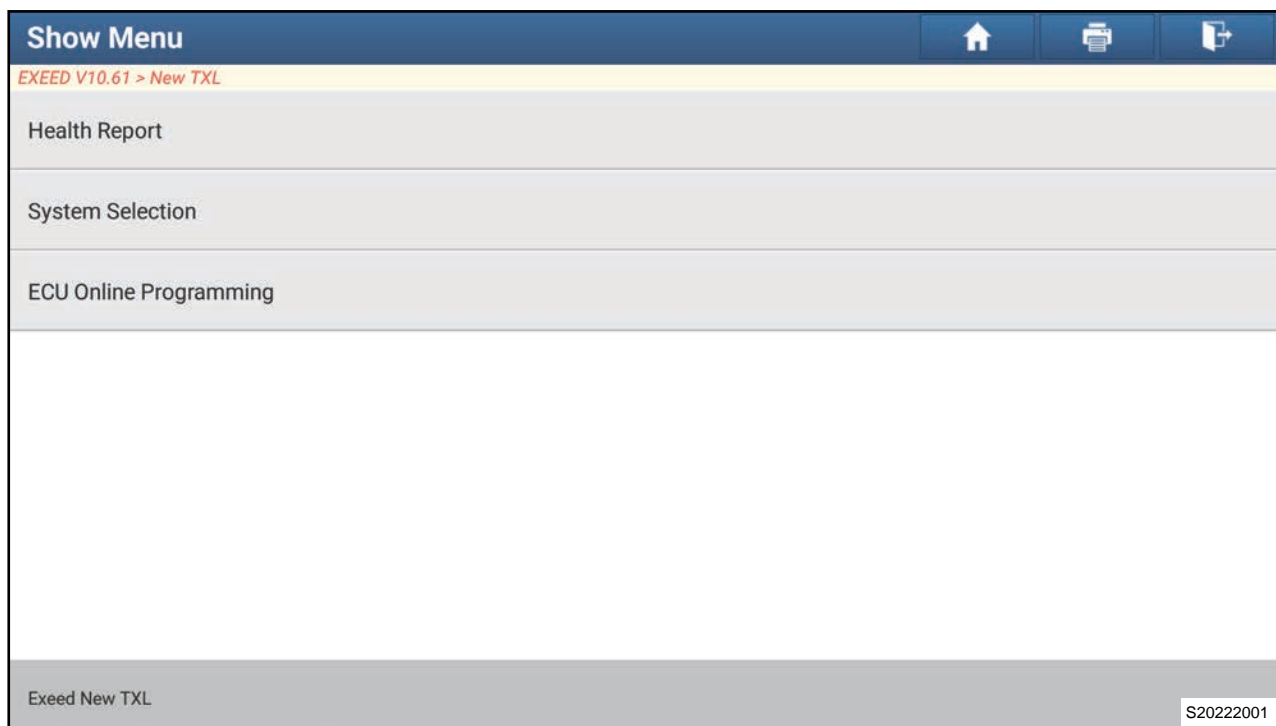
2.4 Maintenance Indicator Clearing

■ Diagnostic tester clearing

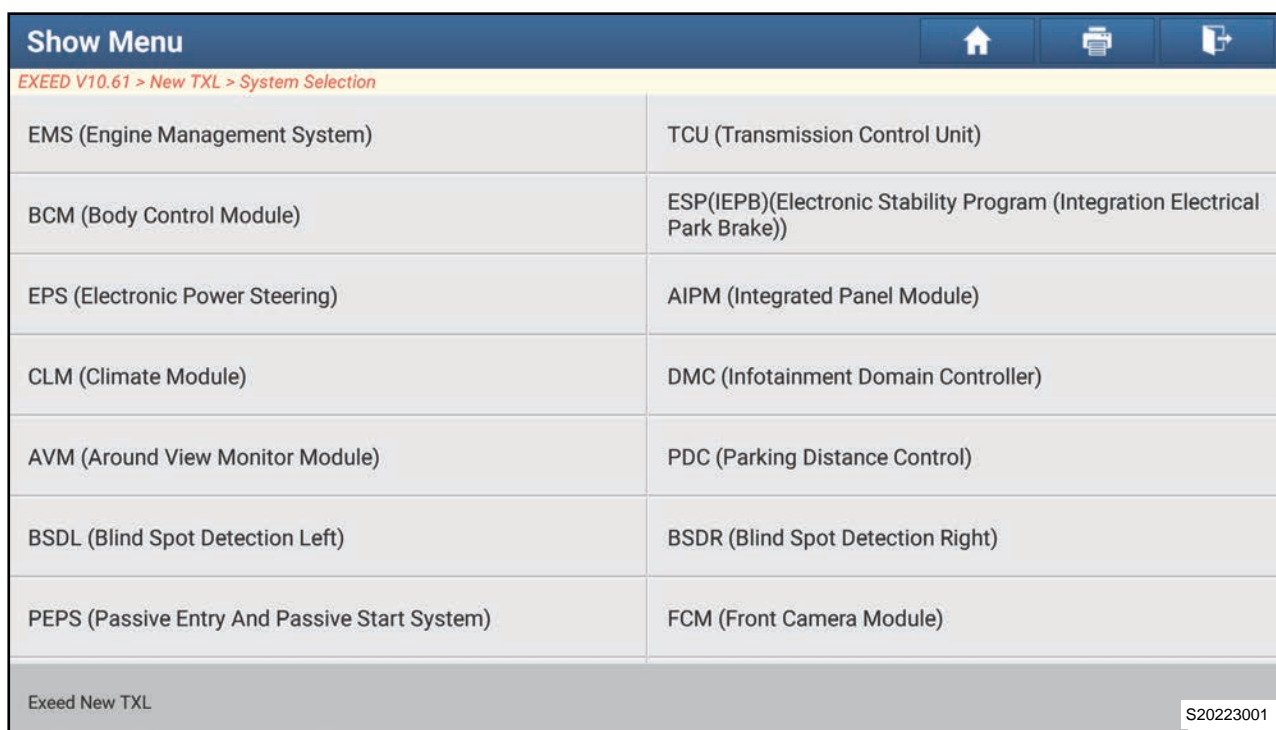
(1) Click "New TXL" to enter "Show Menu".



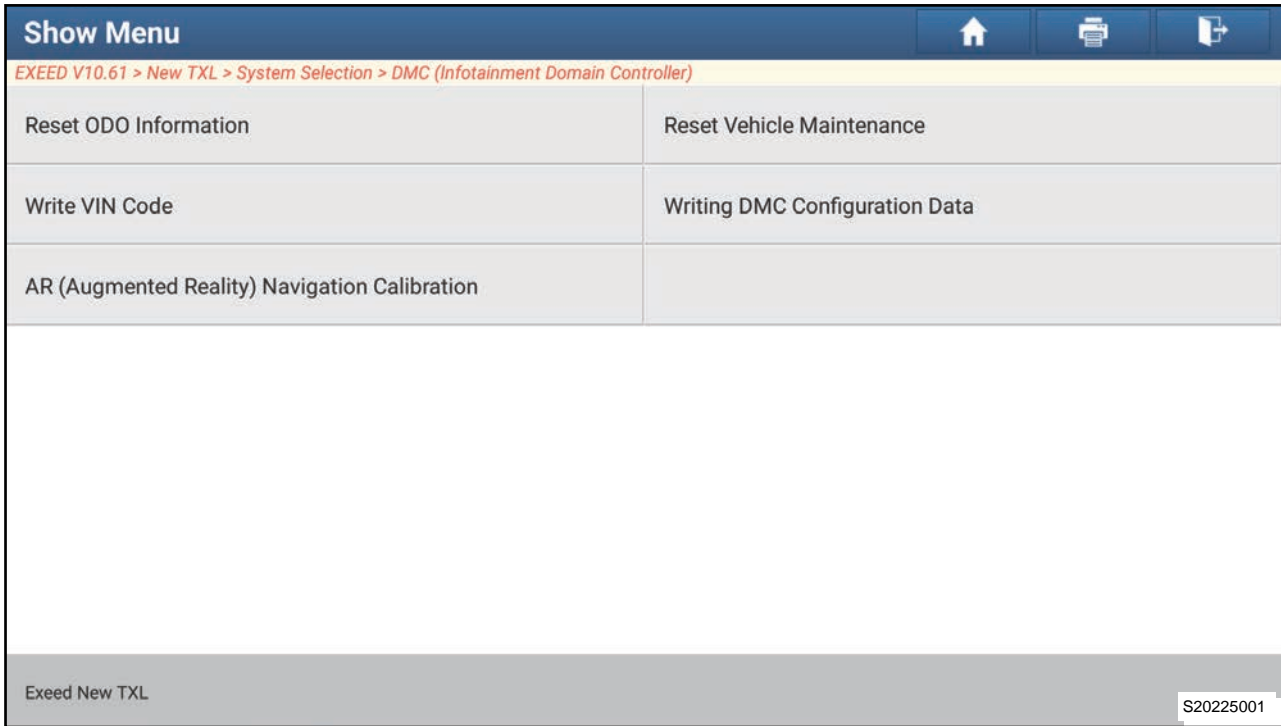
(2) Click "System Selection" .



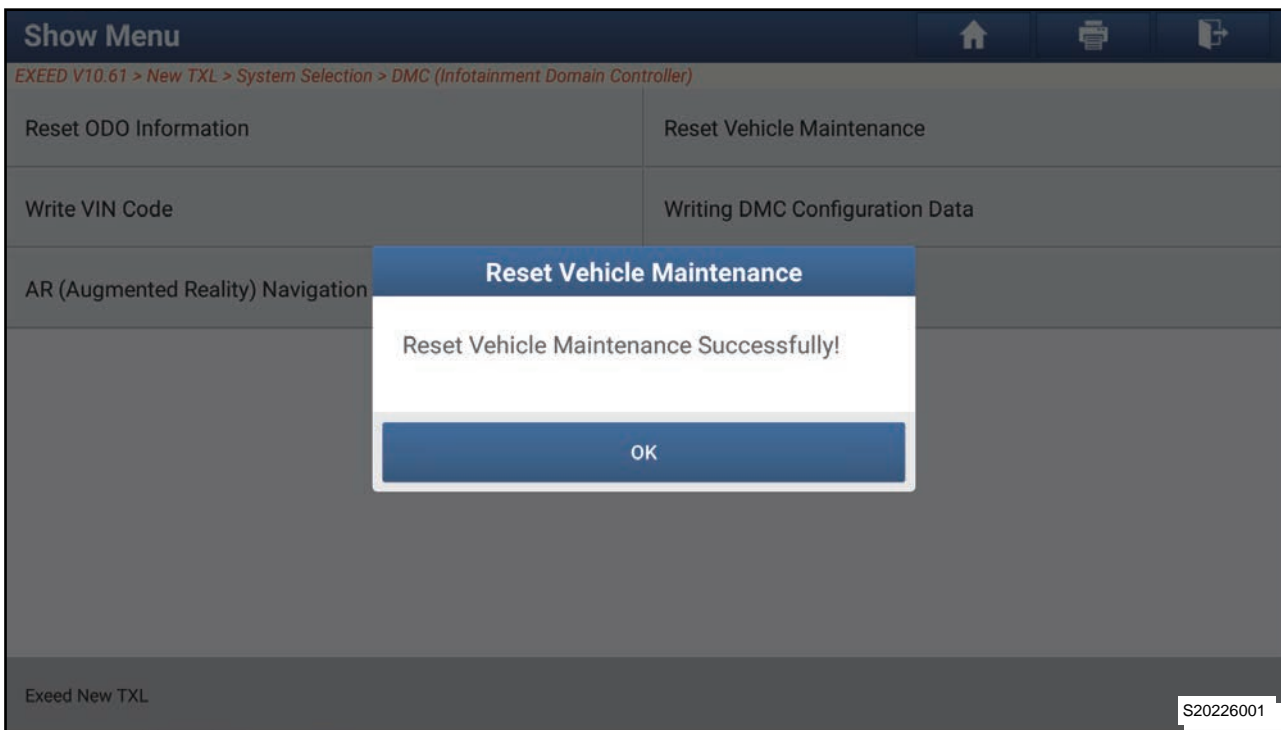
(3) Click “DMC (Infotainment Domain Controller)”



(4) Click “Reset Vehicle Maintenance”

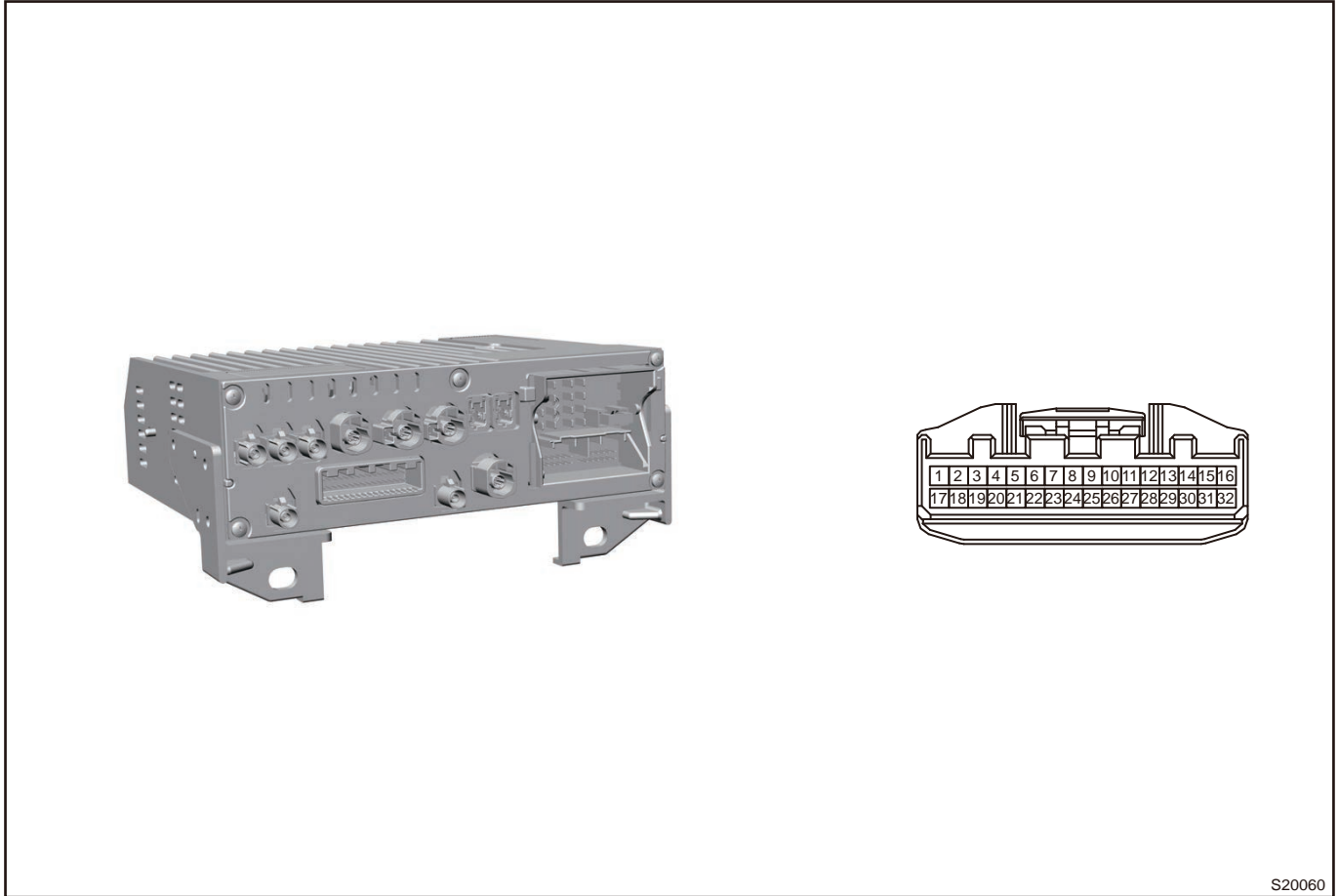


(5) Reset Vehicle Maintenance Successfully



3 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

3.1



S20060

Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
1	-	17	-
2	-	18	-
3	-	19	-
4	Driving Mode Signal	20	-
5	-	21	-
6	-	22	-
7	-	23	-
8	-	24	-
9	Oil Pressure Signal	25	-
10	-	26	Brake Fluid Level Signal
11	-	27	-
12	-	28	-

Pin	Definition	Pin	Definition
13	-	29	CAN-L
14	-	30	CAN-H
15	-	31	-
16	-	32	-

3.2 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Entire instrument cluster does not operate	Fuse
	Domain controller
	Wire harness or connector
Vehicle speed displays abnormally	Wheel speed sensor
	Wire harness or connector
	Domain controller
Tachometer is abnormal	Engine speed sensor
	Domain controller
	Wire harness or connector
	Engine Control Module (ECM)
Fuel gauge is abnormal	Fuel level sensor
	Domain controller
	Wire harness or connector
Position indicator is abnormal	Position light switch (combination light switch assembly)
	Wire harness or connector
	Domain controller
	Body Control Module (BCM)
Turn signal indicator is abnormal	Turn signal light switch (combination light switch assembly)
	Body Control Module (BCM)
	Domain controller
	Wire harness or connector
High beam indicator is abnormal	High beam switch (combination light switch assembly)
	Body Control Module (BCM)
	Domain controller
	Wire harness or connector
Rear fog indicator is abnormal	Rear fog light switch (combination light switch assembly)

Symptom	Suspected Area
	Body Control Module (BCM)
	Domain controller
	Wire harness or connector
Charging system warning light is abnormal	Alternator
	Domain controller
	Wire harness or connector
Low engine oil pressure warning light is abnormal	Engine oil level
	Engine oil pressure switch
	Wire harness or connector
	Domain controller
ABS warning light is abnormal	ABS control unit assembly
	CAN line or connector
	Domain controller
Coolant temperature warning light is abnormal	Coolant level
	Extremely high engine coolant temperature
	Coolant Temperature Sensor
	Wire harness or connector
	Domain controller
	Body Control Module (BCM)
Engine malfunction warning light is abnormal	CAN line or connector
	Engine Control Module (ECM)
	Domain controller
SRS warning light is abnormal	CAN line or connector
	Airbag control module (SRS)
	Domain controller
Driver seat belt reminder light is abnormal	Driver seat belt buckle switch
	Wire harness or connector
	Domain controller
Front passenger seat belt reminder light is abnormal (if equipped)	Front passenger seat belt buckle switch
	Wire harness or connector
	Domain controller
Brake system warning light is abnormal	Low brake fluid level
	Parking brake switch
	Domain controller
Cruise Indicator is abnormal	Cruise switch (multi-function switch)

Symptom	Suspected Area
	Wire harness or connector
	Domain controller
Transmission malfunction warning light is abnormal	Transmission Control Unit (TCU)
	CAN line or connector
	Domain controller
Low tire pressure warning light is abnormal	Low or high tire pressure (tire pressure is not within specified range)
	Domain controller

3.3 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all CD system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.

- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B1104-41	Instrument Cluster EEPROM Data Checksum Error
U0073-88	BD CAN Busoff
U1010-88	IFT CAN Busoff
U0140-87	Lost Communication with Body Control Module
U0214-87	Lost Communication with Passive Entry Passive Start (PEPS)
U0164-87	Lost Communication with A/C Controller
U0141-87	Lost Communication with Reversing Radar
U0142-87	Lost Communication with Around View Monitor Module
U0230-87	Lost Communication with PLG-Missing Message
U0100-87	Lost Communication with EMS-Missing Message
U0129-87	Lost Communication With Brake System Module
U0101-87	Lost Communication with TCU
U0151-87	Lost Communication with ABM
U1157-87	Lost Communication with Blind Spot Detection
U0131-87	Lost Communication with Electronic Power Steering Module
U1162-87	Lost Communication with Front Camera Module
U1163-87	Lost Communication With FRM-Missing Message
U1193-87	Lost Communication with Electric Shifting Controller
U1189-87	Lost Communication with MFS-Missing Message
U0126-87	Lost Communication with SAM
U1300-55	Software Configuration Error

3.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B1104-41	Instrument Cluster EEPROM Data Checksum Error
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B1104-41	Instrument Cluster EEPROM Data Checksum Error	Instrument cluster internal fault

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Power off test
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable and wait for 3 minutes to check if it recovers.

NG	Clear DTCs
-----------	-------------------

OK

2	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG	Replace domain controller
-----------	----------------------------------

OK	Conduct test and confirm that malfunction has been repaired
-----------	--

DTC	U0073-88	BD CAN Busoff
DTC	U1010-88	IFT CAN Busoff
DTC	U0140-87	Lost Communication with Body Control Module
DTC	U0214-87	Lost Communication with Passive Entry Passive Start (PEPS)
DTC	U0164-87	Lost Communication with A/C Controller
DTC	U0141-87	Lost Communication with Reversing Radar
DTC	U0142-87	Lost Communication with Around View Monitor Module
DTC	U0230-87	Lost Communication with PLG-Missing Message
DTC	U0100-87	Lost Communication with EMS-Missing Message
DTC	U0129-87	Lost Communication With Brake System Module
DTC	U0101-87	Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U0151-87	Lost Communication with ABM
DTC	U1157-87	Lost Communication with Blind Spot Detection
DTC	U0131-87	Lost Communication with Electronic Power Steering Module
DTC	U1162-87	Lost Communication with Front Camera Module
DTC	U1163-87	Lost Communication With FRM-Missing Message
DTC	U1193-87	Lost Communication with Electric Shifting Controller
DTC	U1189-87	Lost Communication with MFS-Missing Message

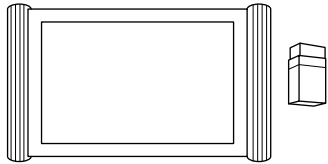
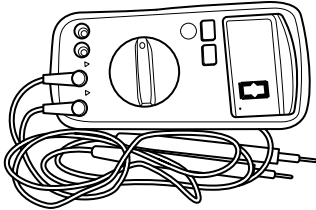
DTC	U0126-87	Lost Communication with SAM
DTC	U1300-55	Software Configuration Error

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Refer to CAN communication system

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p>RCH0001006</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p>RCH000206</p>

4.2 Dual Liquid Crystal Display

■ **Removal**

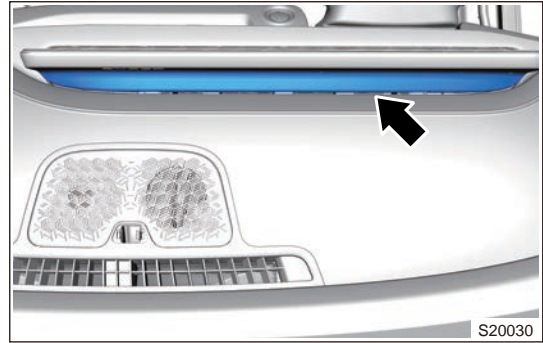
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing instrument cluster.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing instrument cluster. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **When removing the instrument cluster, handle it with care, so as to avoid bump caused by meter needle and dial looseness or deviation to initial position.**

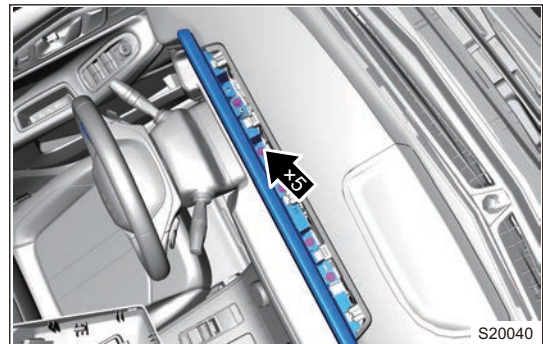
(1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.

(2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

(3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off screw block cover.



(4) Remove 5 fixing bolts from dual liquid crystal display.



(5) Disconnect dual liquid crystal display connector, and remove dual liquid crystal display.

■ Installation

Caution

- Tighten fixing nut to specified torque, when installing dual liquid crystal display.
- Install connector into place, when installing dual liquid crystal display.
- Check audio system for proper operation, after installing dual liquid crystal display.

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

BODY ELECTRICAL

37.1	Driving Assist System	1400
1	Warning and Precaution.....	1400
1.1	Precaution.....	1400
2	System Overview	1401
2.1	System Components Diagram.....	1401
2.2	System Introduction.....	1401
2.3	System Principle	1403
3	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	1417
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1417
3.2	Diagnostic Help.....	1418
3.3	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1418
3.4	Ground Inspection	1418
3.5	Front Camera Module (FCM) DTC Chart	1418
3.6	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1420
3.7	Front Radar Module (FRM) DTC Chart	1425
3.8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1427
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1436
4.1	Tools	1436
4.2	Microwave Radar.....	1436
4.3	Multi-function Front Camera	1444

37.1 Driving Assist System

1 Warning and Precaution

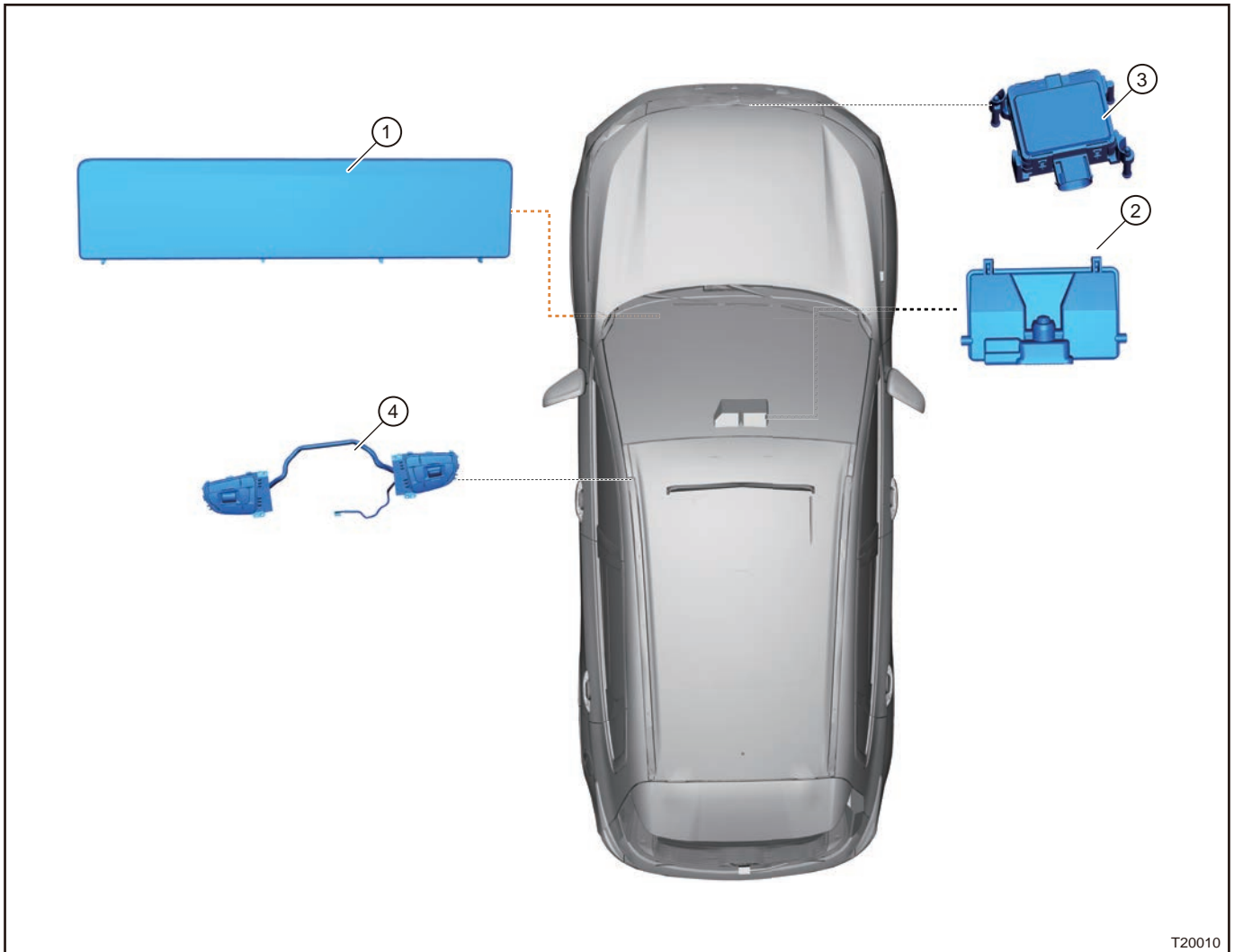
1.1 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing multi-function front camera.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied when removing multi-function front camera. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) Remove multi-function front camera to perform matching calibration.
- (4) Be sure to tighten fixing screws to specified torques when installing multi-function front camera.
- (5) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front bumper assembly.
- (6) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (7) Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front bumper assembly.
- (8) Avoid breaking claws, when disassembling front bumper assembly.
- (9) Avoid damage when detaching fixing clip of microwave radar.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Components Diagram



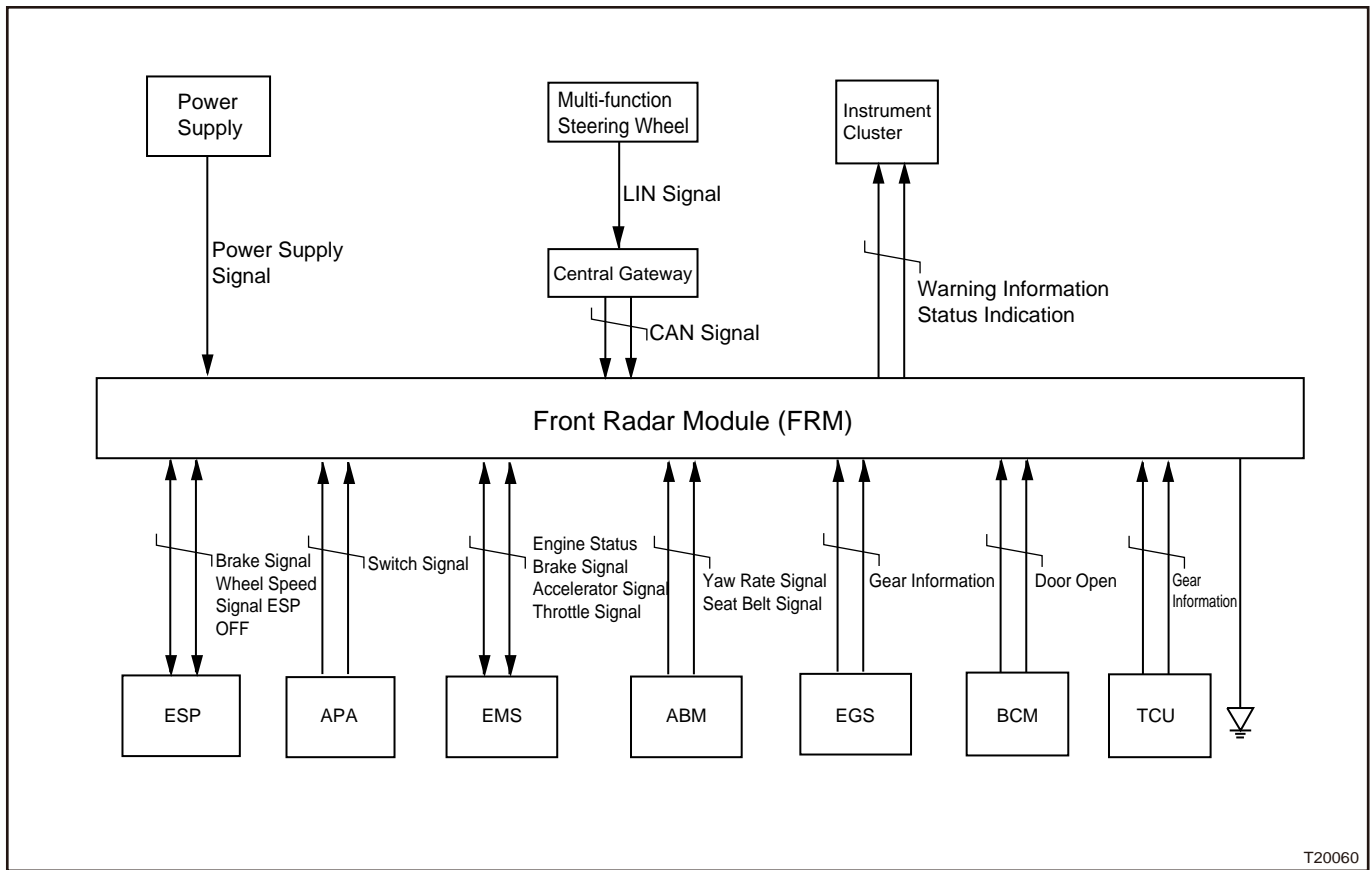
T20010

1	Hyperscreen	2	Multi-function Front Camera
3	Microwave Radar Module	4	Multi-function Steering Wheel Button

2.2 System Introduction

■ Adaptive Cruise

Introduction



T20060

Adaptive cruise system is a comfort function which assists driver to keep certain distance between own vehicle and preceding vehicle according to the set speed while driving. Adaptive cruise system uses microwave radar and front camera to detect relative speed and angle with preceding vehicle. Vehicle will be controlled at target speed set by driver while no vehicle is in the front. Follow the vehicle at the set distance if there is a vehicle in front, and stop automatically while preceding vehicle stops. If preceding vehicle starts to drive within 3s, your own car will also start automatically, however, you need to start the automatic following function manually if preceding vehicle starts to drive after 3s. It automatically reduces vehicle to a responding speed according to condition of curve when the vehicle enters curve. By deeply depressing acceleration pedal, driver can operate vehicle to a speed more than target speed while ACC is active. The set target speed will be restored automatically after acceleration pedal is released.

ACC Function ON/OFF/Function Setting

Function	Operation
ACC Function ON	Enable ACC function by pressing ACC main switch button on steering wheel when ACC is OFF.
ACC Function ON	Set the current speed to target vehicle speed by pressing set button on steering wheel when target speed has not been set or ACC is ON. If current speed is less than 30 km/h, it will set 30km/h as target speed (-target speed set range: 30km/h~150km/h).
Increase Target Speed	When ACC function is active, short press RES button on steering wheel once to increase target speed by 1 km/h, and long press RES button to increase it by 5 km/h.
Decrease Target Speed	When ACC function is active, short press SET button on steering wheel once to decrease target speed by 1 km/h, and long press SET button to decrease it by 5 km/h.

Function	Operation
Following Distance Setting	When ACC function is ON, short press distance adjusting button on steering wheel to set the distance from the preceding vehicle to far, middle and near in cycle. The default is the middle distance.
Cancel ACC Function	Press ACC Cancel button on steering wheel to cancel ACC function; ACC function can also be canceled by depressing the brake pedal or by restraint condition.
Resume ACC Function	When ACC is standby or canceled, ACC function can be resumed by pressing RES button, and set speed will be used as target speed (If ACC has not been activated before standby, it will not resume by pressing RES).
ACC Function OFF	ACC function can be disabled by pressing ACC main switch button on steering wheel when ACC is ON.

ACC System Function Control

2.3 System Principle

■ Constant Speed Cruise

■ Description

Turn on the constant speed cruise control switch after vehicle reaches a certain speed, and the set vehicle speed can be maintained by constant speed cruise control, without accelerator depressed. Main cruise control system consists of the following components:

- Constant speed cruise control switch (multi-function switch).
- Instrument Cluster Meter (ICM).
- Engine Control Module (ECM).
- Transmission Control Unit (TCU).
- ABS/ESP control module.
- Accelerator pedal.
- Brake switch.
- Clutch switch.

Caution

Do not use cruise control in the following situations. Otherwise, it may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- **In traffic congestion areas.**
- **On roads with sharp bends.**
- **On winding roads.**
- **On wet and slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.**
- **On steep hills. Vehicle speed may be higher (or lower) than the set speed. It will cause that engine speed rises sharply and briefly to increase the vehicle speed to the set speed range.**

■ Operation

Engine Control Module (ECM) receives button signal from constant speed cruise control switch (multi-function switch), and then Engine Control Module (ECM) turns on the indicator on the meter via CAN net. According to speed signal, brake signal, acceleration and deceleration signal and current working conditions, ECM determines whether to enter or cancel cruise state. After entering state, ECM controls throttle opening angle to stabilize the vehicle within the set vehicle speed range.

■ Function Description

(1) Cruise control mode inspection

- With ignition switch is ON, when the cruise main switch is pressed, cruise indicator on the meter illuminates and blinks (pre-cruise state, normal condition).

- When vehicle is driving at speed range of 40 km/h ~ 150 km/h, for example, press SET/- button of cruise when vehicle speed is 45 km/h, vehicle will drive at constant cruise speed of 45 km/h (the speed when SET/- button is pressed). Meanwhile, cruise indicator on the meter is always on without blinking. If the meter is color screen, it will be displayed on upper left corner of the screen.
- (2) Cruise setting
- Under the cruise state, depress the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to increase or decrease vehicle speed. Press SET/- button of cruise system while release the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, vehicle is cruising at new vehicle speed, and indicator on the meter remains on. If the meter is color screen, the new set speed will be displayed on the screen.
- (3) Cruise short/long press to acceleration
- In the cruise state, short press RES/+ button once (over 0.02 seconds) to increase vehicle speed by 2km/h. Cruise indicator on the meter remains on. If the meter is color screen, the target cruise speed displayed on left bottom will increase by 1km/h.
 - Under the cruise state, long press the RES/+ button (over 0.4 second) to accelerates vehicle continuously. Release the RES/+ button to stop acceleration, and vehicle is cruising under the speed while the RES/+ button is released. Cruise indicator on the meter remains on. If the meter is color screen, the target cruise speed displayed on left bottom changes simultaneously with actual speed.
- (4) Cruise short/long press to deceleration
- In the cruise state, short press SET/- button once (over 0.02 seconds) to decrease vehicle speed by 2km/h. Cruise indicator on the meter remains on. If the meter is color screen, the target cruise speed displayed on left bottom will decrease by 1km/h.
 - ; Under the cruise state, long press the SET/- button (over 0.4 second) to decelerate vehicle continuously. Release the SET/- button to stop deceleration, and vehicle is cruising at speed when the SET/- button is released. Cruise indicator on the meter remains on. If the meter is color screen, the target cruise speed displayed on left bottom changes simultaneously with actual speed.
- (5) Cruise resume
- In the cruise state, depress the brake pedal to flash the cruise indicator on the meter (pre-cruise state, normal condition), and the vehicle speed decreases.
 - 1) When vehicle speed is over 40 km/h, release the brake pedal and press RES/+ button, then the vehicle accelerates until the cruise state before depressing the brake pedal is returned. Cruise indicator on the meter remains on.
 - 2) When vehicle speed is below 40 km/h, release the brake pedal and press RES+ button, the vehicle can not return to the cruise state before depressing the brake pedal. However, further depress the accelerator until vehicle speed is over 40km/h, release the brake pedal and press RES+ button, the vehicle accelerates until the cruise state before depressing the brake pedal is returned. Cruise indicator on the meter remains on.
- (6) Cruise cancellation
- In the cruise state (for example, 45km/h):
 - 1) Press the cruise main switch to cancel the cruise state and indicator on the meter turns off;
 - 2) Press the CANCEL button to cancel the cruise state and cruise indicator on the meter blinks (- enters the pre-cruise state). If the meter is color screen, it will be displayed on upper left corner of the screen;
 - 3) When pull up the EPB button, depress brake pedal, engine speed exceeds set range (600~6240), gear shift exceeds set range (1~6), and vehicle speed exceeds set range (35~155), the cruise state is canceled, and indicator on the cruise indicator blinks. If the meter is color screen, it will be displayed on upper left corner of the screen.

■ Adaptive Cruise

■ Description

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) can keep vehicle driving at the speed set by the driver. When it detects a preceding vehicle and its speed is lower than the speed set by own vehicle, the system will keep the vehicle to drive with the set safety distance to preceding vehicle. The stop-and-go adaptive cruise control system can also follow the preceding vehicle to decelerate until vehicle stops. It can also start vehicle and follow the preceding vehicle automatically, or start driving according to driver's command.

CAUTION

Do not use adaptive cruise control in the following situations. Otherwise, it may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- In traffic congestion areas.
- On roads with sharp bends.
- On winding roads.
- On wet and slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow.
- On steep hills. Vehicle speed may be higher (or lower) than the set speed. It will cause that engine speed rises sharply and briefly to increase the vehicle speed to the set speed range.

■ **Adaptive Cruise Function Instruction**

Adaptive Cruise System (ACC), Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) and Front Collision Warning System (FCW) share a radar and camera sensor.

CAUTION

- ACC system can not violate the laws full screwdriver with a flat physics and there are some limitations, driver must always control the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- ACC system can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crossing vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles, and animals.
- ACC system can only realize limited braking, if the vehicle ahead applies emergency braking suddenly, another vehicle cuts in front of the vehicle quickly, ACC system may not be able to respond or respond too slowly, in this case, driver should take over control of the vehicle in time.
- The driver must adjust the appropriate distance between the vehicle and the vehicle ahead according to traffic and weather conditions, and is responsible for the safe vehicle stopping. In severe weather such as rain, snow, fog, etc., ACC system may not be able to recognize vehicle ahead. In this case, ACC system should be turned off.
- ACC system is suitable for highways and roads in good condition, and is not recommended for urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If ACC system is used on curve, it may cause the loss of vehicle ahead target or delay of target selection due to the limitation of sensor detection range. In these cases, ACC system will control the vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
- If the vehicle is too close to a vehicle in adjacent lane, ACC system may select the vehicle as a front tracking target to respond.
- When following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC system may not recognize the end of vehicle but the lower or upper part of vehicle (for example, rear axle of truck with a higher chassis, upper part of a lower flat trailer). In these cases, system will not be able to guarantee a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, the driver must be alert and take over control of vehicle at any time during this process.
- When ACC system controls the vehicle to stop for a short time, driver must ensure that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants, such as pedestrians, bicycles, animals, etc. in front of the vehicle.
- When the ACC system controls the vehicle, do not inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, ACC system will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should be ready to brake actively at any time to ensure safety.
- Two sensors, radar and camera, are mounted on the front area of vehicle and behind the windshield. It should be noted that the field of vision of sensor should not be blocked by pollutants, and there should be no modification or license plate decoration frame in the front or surrounding areas, especially when the snow completely covers the sensor, the ACC system function will exit. The sensor may also be affected by vibration or collision, resulting in system performance degradation or no function. In this case, recalibrate the sensor.
- When ACC system function fails, yellow warning light on instrument cluster turns on, the ACC will not function at this time and need to be repaired.
- All the above precautions do not cover all the situations that may affect normal operation of system function. The system function may not bring expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take responsibility for the vehicle control.

- (1) Turn on the adaptive cruise
 - 1) Start the engine and press ACC ON/OFF button on steering wheel, then ACC system is ON and enters stand-by status. Gray icon on instrument cluster turns on. If a preceding vehicle is identified, gray icon on instrument cluster displays and it will not display without target.
- (2) System activation
 - 1) When activation condition is met after ACC system is ON, press SET- button while driving to enable ACC function; With vehicle stopped and brake pedal depressed by driver, press SET- button and release brake pedal within 3 seconds (slightly depress acceleration pedal after 3 seconds) to enable ACC function. ACC icon turns to green after activation and default vehicle speed is 30 km/h.
 - 2) ACC system can be activated when the following conditions are met simultaneously:
 - Gear position is in forward range;
 - Brake pedal is not depressed (when driving);
 - Anti-lock brake system is not activated;
 - Hill descent system is off;
 - Electronic stability system is on;
 - Electronic stability system is not activated;
 - Driver door is closed;
 - Driver seat belt is fastened;
 - Vehicle is not in parking status;
 - 3) When parking brake is applied, that is electronic parking brake system (EPB) or automatic parking (AVH) is in activated state, after SET- button is pressed to enable ACC system, there is a prompt “Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise system” on instrument cluster, driver will depress accelerator pedal lightly to activate adaptive cruise system according to the prompt.
- (3) Cruise speed setting
 - 1) Set to increase vehicle speed
 - After ACC function is enabled, press RES+ button to increase set speed. Short press it once to increase speed by 1 km/h and long press it once to increase speed by 5 km/h. The speed can be increased to 150 km/h. When set speed is over 80 km/h, long press it once to increase speed by 10 km/h.
 - 2) Set to decrease vehicle speed
 - After ACC function is enabled, for example, current set speed is more than 30 km/h, press SET- button to reduce set speed. Short press it once to decrease the speed by 1 km/h and long press it once to decrease the speed by 5 km/h. The speed can be decreased to 30 km/h. When set speed value is over 80 km/h, long press it once to reduce speed by 10 km/h.
 - 3) There are no vehicles ahead in the same lane of this vehicle, or there are vehicles ahead in the same lane and driving speed is higher than set speed, the vehicle will drive at set speed.
 - 4) There are vehicles ahead in the same lane and driving speed is not higher than set speed of the vehicle, ACC system will control the vehicle to follow the vehicles ahead.
 - 5) When driving uphill, speed will be slightly lower than set speed, and when driving downhill, speed will be slightly higher than set speed.
- (4) Following distance adjustment
 - 1) Press following distance adjustment button to adjust following distance, the distance is divided into three grades (“maximum distance” , “standard distance” and “minimum distance”). Grade is changed once when the button is pressed once. The instrument cluster synchronously shows the current grade. Following distance adjustment and memory function can be set on DVD head unit. Setting method is as follows: Enter “Vehicle Setting” → “Assist Driving Setting” , and set options of “Adaptive Cruise System” . When memory function is not set, system default following distance is “standard distance” .
 - 2) Though following distance is in the same grade, distance between own vehicle and preceding vehicle changes according to vehicle speed of own vehicle. The distance increases with increase of speed.
 - 3) If the following distance is “minimum distance” , the distance from vehicle ahead is very small when following the vehicle ahead at low speed. In view of safety considerations, the maximum distance should be selected when following on slippery road.
- (5) Function exiting

- 1) During normal operation of ACC system, if one or more of the following situations occur, ACC system functions will exit, and ACC icon on instrument cluster will change from green to gray.
 - Depress brake pedal pedal;
 - Pull up electronic parking button;
 - Change shift lever to position other than forward position;
 - Press the pause button;
 - Turn off the electronic stability system;
 - Electronic stability system is activated;
 - Anti-lock brake system is activated;
 - Hill descent system is on;
 - Driver door is open;
 - Driver seat belt is unfastened;
 - Acceleration pedal is depressed for more 15 minutes by driver;
 - Automatic emergency braking system is activated.
- (6) Function restore
 - 1) After the above conditions that cause function to exit are restored, press RES+ button, ACC system function is activated again and restore the state before exiting.
- (7) Exceeding set speed
 - 1) During normal operation of ACC system, driver can depress acceleration pedal to override ACC control. After acceleration pedal is released, ACC returns to previous control state. During exceeding set speed, if the distance from vehicle ahead is too small, the instrument cluster will pop up “Ask the driver to take over vehicle” , accompanied by rapid alarm sound to remind driver to take a avoidance measures.
- (8) Curve speed control
 - 1) When the vehicle controlled by ACC system is driving into a curve , driving speed will be decreased appropriately to assist the driver to safely pass through the curve.
 - 2) This function can assist driving only in certain level. Driver should operate vehicle at all time and decreases vehicle speed while vehicle is driving into a curve.
 - 3) When driving into a curve, due to the limitation of radar sensor in detecting the target, the system may not be possible to detect the vehicle ahead of the same driving track in time, in this case, the driver should be ready to take over control of the vehicle at any time.
- (9) Stop-and-go function
 - 1) During driving following the vehicle ahead with stop-and-go ACC system, if the vehicle ahead decreases speed to stop, the vehicle also decreases speed to stop, after stopping:
 - Vehicle ahead starts to drive away within 3 seconds and the vehicle starts automatically to follow vehicle ahead.
 - If the vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds, and starts to drive away within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver needs to depress acceleration pedal lightly to activate ACC system.
 - During 10 minutes of parking, when driver unfastens seat belt or opens driver door, Electrical Parking Brake (EPB) system will activate automatically for parking.
 - If parking for more than 10 minutes, ACC system exits and Electrical Parking Brake (EPB) system will activate automatically for parking.
 - Electronic stability system continues to brake during decreasing speed following the vehicle ahead, motor rotation can generate operating sound, this is normal.
 - When driving following the vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether ACC icon is in green filled state. If it is in non-filled state, it means that the target ahead of ACC system has been lost, and the vehicle will accelerate according to set speed.
- (10) Power adaption mode
 - 1) Power system has ECO and SPORT modes. ACC system will match different control strategies according to the power mode selected by the driver. In the ECO mode, ACC system has a soft acceleration, and it has a fast acceleration in the SPORT mode.
- (11) Turn off the adaptive cruise system

- 1) With ACC system ON, press ACC ON/OFF button on steering wheel to turn off ACC system.

■ Front Collision Warning System (FCW)

■ Description

Caution

- **Pre-collision system will not sound an alarm when the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h. For static target ahead, the system will not sound an alarm when the vehicle speed is higher than 85 km/h.**
- **FCW and AEB share a same sensor, and detectable target is the same as AEB system. See the description of AEB system below for details.**
- **When FCW sounds an alarm continuously, if the driver actively depresses brake pedal, it should be depressed with a large force to trigger emergency brake assist function, achieving the best braking effect.**
- **System does not work if seat belt is not fastened and doors are not closed.**
- **System does not work if electronic stability system and FCW are not in ON.**
- **If yellow alarm symbol on instrument cluster comes on, please go to the Chery service station for inspection and repair.**

For front collision warning system (FCW), when FCW system detects that there is a dangerous situation ahead, it will firstly trigger pre-alarm function. If driver does not brake or steer to avoid, the dangerous situation will continue to deteriorate, and FCW system will trigger emergency alarm function. In some sudden situations (such as fast cut in or strong braking of vehicle ahead), both alarms may be triggered at the same time.

■ Usage Description

(1) Alarm Type

- 1) FCW is ON by default when the vehicle is powered on, if user does not turn off this function and the speed is higher than 30 km/h, when system judges that there is potential collision risk, pre-alarm function will be triggered, an alarm symbol and warning text "Front Collision Warning System ON" pop up on instrument cluster accompanied by rapid alarm sound to remind driver to take avoidance measures.
- 2) If collision risk continues to deteriorate and upgrade, the emergency alarm function will be activated, and a alarm symbol and warning text "Front Collision Warning System ON" also pop up on instrument cluster. At the same time, the system will adopt short brake to remind driver to take avoidance measures.
- 3) When vehicle speed exceeds 65 km/h and is close to the vehicle ahead for a long time, a safety distance alarm message "Attention, vehicle/pedestrian approaches" pops up on instrument cluster to remind driver to adjust following distance properly.

(2) System OFF

- 1) FCW system and safe distance alarm can be turned on or off through DVD head unit, After setting FCW system, it will still return to ON state at next ignition. After setting safe distance alarm, the previous setting options will be memorized.

(3) Sensitivity Setting

- 1) Alarm trigger time can be set on the DVD unit head. When the next ignition is performed after completing setting, system will memorize the last setting options and the setting options are divided into three distance levels: "Long", "Standard" and "Short". Distance level represents the different distance between the vehicle and the potential collision target when alarm function is triggered. If the setting is "Long", the alarm will be triggered earlier.

■ Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)

■ Description

For automatic emergency braking system (AEB) function is activated (there is no FCW alarm when speed is lower than 30 km/h), if driver does not take measures, collision risk will continue to deteriorate, and system will start AEB automatically when the conditions are met, trying to avoid possible collision or reduce the speed during collision and reduce the loss caused by collision.

■ Usage Description

AEB is ON by default when the vehicle is powered on. It can be turned off on DVD head unit as necessary, but it will still be ON by default at the next ignition. Setting method are as follows: Enter "Vehicle Setting" → "- Assist Driving Setting" to set options of "Automatic Emergency Braking System".

Caution

- **System does not work if seat belt is not fastened and doors are not closed.**
- **System does not work if electronic stability system and AEB are not in ON.**
- **After vehicle is automatically braked to stop, vehicle will not remain stationary and driver needs to take over the vehicle.**
- **During the activation of AEB, if driver turns steering wheel quickly or depresses accelerator pedal firmly, AEB function will exit.**
- **AEB activation speed is higher than 4 km/h, the collision can not be avoided completely if the speed is higher than 40 km/h.**
- **For stationary vehicle, operating speed range of AEB is 4 km/h to 53 km/h. For pedestrians and cyclists, operating speed range of AEB is 4 km/h to 64 km/h.**
- **If yellow alarm symbol on instrument cluster turns on, system will not work, please go to the Chery service station for inspection and repair.**

■ Detection Target

(1) Vehicle target

- 1) Targets can be detected by the system include passenger vehicles, buses and trucks. There are certain limitations in the detection of some restructured vehicles, such as cement tankers, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis, etc.

(2) Bicycle target

- 1) System can works best when it detects the contours of body and bicycle, as well as movements of normal ride. System does not regard an oncoming cyclist as a target.

(3) Pedestrian target

- 1) Only when the system detects that people's head, arm and leg swings conform to the characteristics of normal walking can it play its best role. Pedestrians crossing the lane of the vehicle will be regarded as targets. Pedestrians walking vertically in this lane, walking in curves and blocked by other objects may not be regarded as targets by the system.

Caution

- System can not violate the laws of physics and there are some limitations, driver must always control the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- Driver should control speed and the distance between the vehicle ahead and the vehicle according to weather, road surface and traffic conditions.
- System does not respond to animals or crossing vehicles, as well as oncoming vehicles, bicycles or pedestrians.
- Under some special circumstances, the system may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as crossing the railroad track, entering the turning of the underground parking lot, etc. Some conditions will affect and weaken sensor detection, such as tunnel, the light of oncoming vehicle, the reflection of wet road surface, etc, affecting related functions of system.
- System performance will be greatly limited to the target that quickly cuts into the lane, the target that is detected after the vehicle changes the lane, and the target in the curve.
- All passengers on the vehicle must fasten their seat belts and secure the loaded objects to avoid danger when AEB system is triggered.
- Two sensors, radar and camera, are mounted on the front area of vehicle and behind the windshield. It should be noted that the field of vision of sensor should not be blocked by pollutants, and there should be no modification or license plate decoration frame in the front or surrounding areas, especially when the snow completely covers the sensor, the system function will exit. The sensor may also be affected by vibration or collision, resulting in system performance degradation or no function. In this case, recalibrate the sensor.
- When system function fails, yellow warning light on instrument cluster turns on, the system will not function at this time and need to be repaired.
- When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended to turn off FCW and AEB systems and replace original full size tire in time.
- All the above precautions do not cover all the situations that may affect normal operation of system function. The system function may not bring expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take responsibility for the vehicle control.

■ Lane Departure Warning System LDW**■ Description**

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) can help drivers reduce traffic accidents caused by lane departure and improve driving safety by providing alarm. When lane departure warning system is ON, camera will detect lane marking all the time and obtain the position parameters of the vehicle in the current lane through image processing. When it detects vehicle deviates from the lane, sensor will collect data and operation condition of driver, and then controller sends alarm message to remind immediately. If driver turns on turn signal light (- active lane departure) and drive the vehicle to another lane, lane departure system will not make any alarm.

- System allows instrument cluster to send alarm signal (acoustic, visual), including two alarm methods.
- Support white solid line, continuous long white line, yellow solid line and continuous long yellow line lane detection. When one side of the lane line is missing or undetectable, a substituted virtual line and warning line on the virtual line side will be marked automatically (default width between two lanes is 3.75 m).

■ Function ON

(1) Lane departure warning system will be turned on when following conditions are met at the same time:

- 1) Camera initialization is completed.
- 2) Driver turns on LDW function by hard switch or software, or it was turned on in the previous ignition cycle.
- 3) LDW does not detect trouble code.
- 4) LDW is turned on through vehicle configuration code.

CAUTION

- Drive the vehicle carefully, even though the vehicle is equipped with lane departure warning system.
- During the whole operation, you are responsible for controlling vehicle, monitoring management system, and intervening as necessary.
- If sensor is interfered, system will not function.
- Sensor may be misled by temporary construction markings line on the road, etc., resulting in false and incorrect alarms.
- In the cold or bad weather, system may not operate. Rain, snow, fog or intensive illumination can affect the sensor.
- If sensor can not trace road lines on the ground, system will not operate.
- The system may not operate in the road construction area.
- The system may not operate at sharp curve or narrow road.
- If suspension components of the vehicle are not approval by us, the system may not operate normally.
- Make sure the left and right cameras are free of foreign objects, such as bird dung, insect and ice etc.
- The system may not operate on the cement roads and other non-standard lanes.
- The system may not operate when there is only a single lane line or lane line is damaged.
- The system operates only when vehicle speed is more than 65 Km/h, and stops operating when vehicle speed decreases to 60 Km/m or less.

■ Function OFF

- (1) LDW will be deactivated if all of the following conditions are met.
- 1) Driver turns off LDW function by switch or soft switch, or function was turned off in the previous ignition cycle;
 - 2) When LDW detects a permanent malfunction, driver needs to turn on the function again after malfunction is cleared.

HINT**Permanent malfunction**

- Power voltage is more than 20.5 V.
- Power voltage is lower than 4.5 V.
- Camera permanent lighting failure (more than 45 minutes).
- Temperature is high, outside sensor temperature is more than 100 °C.

■ Threshold speed and switch

Threshold ON speed is 65 km/h, threshold OFF speed is 60 km/h.

- (1) Vehicle has physical switch configuration
- 1) LDW and LKA shares one hard switch which connects to instrument cluster and can be selected to operate detailed function; The signal is sent to central gateway through instrument cluster to indicate which function is selected by customer. System runs the previous option selected by customer in each ignition cycle. MPC2 memorizes customer option. IGN ON, after instrument cluster sends signal "LDWLKA_LaneAssitTypeReq=0X0" , and receives feedback signal "LDWLKA_LaneAssitTypefeedback" feedback value from MPC2, it synchronizes with MPC2.
- (2) Vehicle has no physical switch configuration
- 1) LDW switch is soft switch on audio unit. System runs the previous option selected by customer in each ignition cycle. MPC2 memorizes the option. IGN ON, after IHU sends signal "LDWonoffReq=0x2 default" and receives signal "LDWonoffsts" from MPC2, IHU synchronizes with MPC2. LDW function will be turned on by default next time.

■ Detection requirement

Identification of Lane Line Types

No.	Road Type	Performance Requirements
1	Applicable road curvature radius	More than 250m (class II highway standard)
2	Effective lane width	(2.5 m, 5.2 m)
3	Effective lane marker line width	(8 cm, 60 cm)
4	Visible range of lane line	Influenced by environmental factors, the farthest visible range of lane line is 60-100 m
5	Lane line definition	Visible to the naked eye
6	Judging accuracy of distance between vehicle and lane line	The error is less than 4cm
7	Lane line types	Double line, solid line, virtual solid line, dotted line
8	Lane line colors	White, yellow, orange, blue
9	Road geometry	Straight, curve
10	Road conditions	Asphalt, cement

■ Alarm threshold

- Furthest warning line position from vehicle lane: After departure, 0.3 m away from inner edge of lane.
- Unconditional warning ending position: After departure, 0.75 m from inner edge of lane.
- Lateral departure speed variable threshold is supported. Detailed logic is shown as follows:

Warning Line Position (m)	Low Sensitivity	High Sensitivity
/	Wheels are 0 m from inner edge of lane	Wheels are 0.1 m from inner edge of lane

■ Function strategy

- (1) System performs self-check. MPC sends signal to instrument cluster. Instrument cluster turns LDW system icon to green. After 3 seconds, MPC sends LDW-LKA-status to meter according to speed value.
- (2) The sensitivity can be adjusted through audio head unit. High and low options are available, and default value is low.
- (3) When vehicle speed is more than 65 km/h, WLDW function operates. LDW starts to alarm if lane departure is detected and the turn signal switch on the appropriate side is not operated.
- (4) When vehicle speed is more than 65 m/h, LDW function operates. LDW will not alarm under following conditions if there is no other restraint conditions.
 - 1) When vehicle passes curve and drives over the marking line at speed of more than 65 km/h, system will virtually move lane edge to inner side of lane by 10 cm as warning line, in order to avoid alarms that disturb the driver.
 - 2) In the case of lane merging, the own lane narrows down gradually. If no departure occurs and vehicle drives over the marking line, LDW will not alarm.
 - 3) If lane is too narrow (less than 2.5 m), system will virtually expand the left and right lane lines by 10cm as the warning lines to delay the alarm.
 - 4) If there is only one marking line on the road, LDW only alarms for the side where lane marking line exists.

■ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKA)

■ Description

Lane keeping assist system is a assist system which can be used to assist driver, however, it can not replace the driver in driving. When selecting the lane keeping assist system, the driver has to always concentrate all his attention and hold the steering wheel. Get ready to correct the steering wheel or take over the vehicle at any time, otherwise it may cause an accident and personal injury. The lane keeping assist system is not able

to recognize the lane line all the time. Sometimes it may mistake poor quality road surfaces, certain road structures or objects for the lane line. In this situation, be sure to turn off the lane assist system immediately. The lane keeping assist system detects lane line through front camera. When the lane lines on the left and right sides are identified by the system, the system applies corrective steering intervention to make the vehicle always drive in the middle of the lane. Driver can correct steering wheel at any time. When function is ON, it intervenes when the speed is higher than 60 km/h and exits when the speed is lower than 55 km/h.

■ Lane Keeping Assist System Setting

The lane keeping assist system switch is located on the central control fascia console. When the switch is pressed, the instrument cluster will have a corresponding display, which can switch between off, lane departure warning and lane keeping assist system. The lane keeping assist system can be turned on when lane keeping assist system is selected. When the lane keeping assist system is turned on, the indicator is illuminated in gray; When the function is turned on and activated, the indicator light is illuminated in green; When the function is off, the indicator light is not illuminated; When the module is faulty and the lane keeping assist system cannot operate normally, the system indicator is illuminated in yellow.

(1) Though the lane keeping assist system is turned on, but the function will exit or cannot be activated under the following conditions:

- 1) System recognizes that the driver has not operated the steering wheel for a period of time;
- 2) The driver controls the steering wheel when system applies corrective steering control;
- 3) When camera can not detect lane marking line target due to coverage or weather;
- 4) When the lane line is too thin, broken, blurred.
- 5) When driving on a curve with a small turning radius;
- 6) Road is too narrow;
- 7) Driving on a road without lane marking line;
- 8) The vehicle has just entered the road with road lanes;
- 9) Vehicle is changing lanes;
- 10)The vehicle swings too fast in lateral direction;
- 11)Vehicle speed is lower than 55 km/h or higher than 180 km/h;
- 12)Driver turns on the turn signal light;
- 13)Driver turns on the hazard warning light.
- 14)Driver rapidly depresses accelerator pedal or deeply depresses brake pedal.

(2) It is recommended to turn off the lane keeping assist system in the following situations:

- 1) Drive the car in sport mode;
- 2) Under bad weather, such as rain, snow, heavy fog;
- 3) At night or surrounding light is dark;
- 4) When driving on road with bad conditions;
- 5) When driving on paved road;
- 6) When driving on road with multiple curves.

CAUTION

- **When lane is added or merged, driver needs to take active control.**
- **When driving in complex traffic environment (such as road crossing, traffic congestion), driver needs to take active control.**
- **When driving on a sharp curve, driver needs to take active control.**

■ Speed limit marking recognition function

■ Description

Speed limit marking recognition function detects speed limit traffic mark on the road and displays the detected speed limit value on the instrument cluster. The displayed sign will disappear after driving for a certain distance or time. If a new sign is detected when it displays, the speed limit value displayed on the instrument cluster will be updated. If current speed is more than displayed value, instrument cluster will zoom in the icon or make a sound alarm.

Function ON and OFF




TSR function can be turned on and off in the instrument setting menu. After function is turned on, user can select options between visual warning and visual warning + audio warning. Vehicle will record setting value in the previous ignition cycle.



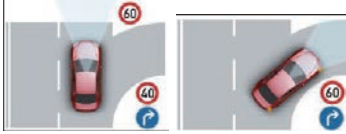
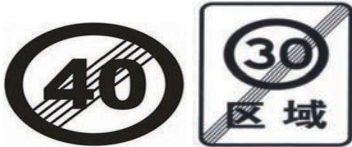
System state instrument cluster display




When the setting is image display only, if the speed limit sign is detected, the instrument cluster will display correspondingly. The displayed speed limit sign will disappear after driving for a period of time or distance. If there is a new speed limit sign, the display will be updated. When the vehicle speed is greater than the detected vehicle speed by 5 km/h, instrument cluster will zoom in the icon to alert the driver that vehicle is over speed. When the setting is imagine display + audio alert, if the speed limit sign is detected, the instrument cluster will display correspondingly. The displayed speed limit sign will disappear after driving for a period of time or distance. If there is a new speed limit sign, the display will be updated. When the vehicle speed is greater than the detected vehicle speed by 5 km/h, instrument cluster zoom in the icon to alert the driver that vehicle is over speed.

Recognizable traffic sign categories

Icons of recognizable speed limit sign:

Operation figure	Operation description
<p>Condition I : Common speed limit sign</p>  <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">T20500</p>	<p>System can detect common speed limit sign and send speed limit command to driver;</p>
<p>Condition II : Variable speed limit sign</p>  <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">T20510</p>	<p>System can detect variable speed limit sign and send speed limit command to driver;</p>
<p>Condition III : Area speed limit sign</p>  <p style="text-align: right; margin-right: 20px;">T20520</p>	<p>System can detect area speed limit sign and send speed limit command to driver;</p>
<p>Condition IV : Divided lane speed limit</p>	<p>The system should only correspond to the speed limit sign of the lane;</p>

Operation figure	Operation description
 <p style="text-align: center;">T20530</p>	
<p>Condition V : Divided model speed limit</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">T20540</p>	<p>The system should only display the highest limit speed among multiple speed limits;</p>
<p>Condition VI : Ramp</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">T20550</p>	<p>When vehicle has not driven into the ramp, vehicle should display original speed limit information instead of the freeway off-ramp speed limit information; When vehicle drives into the ramp, system should display freeway off-ramp speed limit information; When navigation has route plan, ramp information will be sent 100 m before vehicle enters the ramp until it drives to ramp exit. After vehicle drives into ramp, it sends speed limit alarm and speed limit information;</p>
<p>Condition VII: Deactivating speed limit sign</p>  <p style="text-align: center;">T20560</p>	<p>System can detect speed limit deactivating sign and send speed limit deactivating command to driver;</p>
<p>Condition VIII: Deactivating speed limit sign and speed limit sign are shown at the same time</p>	<p>When deactivating speed limit sign and speed limit sign are shown at the same time, speed limit information has a higher priority than deactivating speed limit information, camera will recognize speed limit information and send it to the driver;</p>

Operation figure	Operation description
 <p style="text-align: right;">T20570</p>	
<p>Condition IX : Height limit, width limit, weight limit sign</p>  <p style="text-align: right;">T20580</p>	<p>Height limit, width limit and weight limit signs are not allowed to be recognized by mistake. If the sign is recognized by mistake due to coverage, correct the speed limit information after coverage is removed;</p>
<p>Condition X : Deactivating no overtaking sign</p>  <p style="text-align: right;">T20590</p>	<p>Deactivating no overtaking sign is not allowed to be recognized as deactivating speed limit information.</p>

■ Traffic Jam Assist (TJA) and Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

■ System introduction

- (1) For traffic jam assist system and integrated cruise assist system (TJA and ICA), TJA and ICA can reduce workload of drivers and provide driving assist function in monotonous driving environment or traffic jam. The function mainly relies on multi-function camera on the front windshield to detect lane lines for both vertical and horizontal control of vehicle.
- (2) It is called TJA when speed range is below 60 km/h, and vehicle will be kept running near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle will follow the vehicle ahead as a target. If lane line and vehicle target are not detected, the function will be cancelled.
- (3) It is called ICA when speed range is 60 km/h - 150 km/h, and vehicle will be kept running near lane center. If no lane line is detected, no matter whether there is a target vehicle ahead, the function will be cancelled.

■ System activation

Just like the method for activating ACC, when all ACC activation conditions are met, press "SET-" button to activate ACC function first. Meanwhile, camera determines if there is a lane line or a vehicle ahead as a target. When activation conditions are met, green operating indicator on instrument cluster turns on, and cruising speed and following distance will be adjusted as ACC system.

■ Function exiting

During normal operation of TJA/ICA system, if one or more of the following situations occur, system functions will exit, and icon on instrument cluster will change from green to gray.

- (1) Any one of conditions for exiting ACC function;
- (2) Lanes are too wide or too narrow;
- (3) Curving radius of lane is too small;
- (4) Lane lines are not detected;
- (5) Driver actively turns steering wheel;
- (6) Steering wheel is out of hands;
- (7) Turn on turn signal light;
- (8) Turn on hazard warning light;
- (9) Vehicle speed is lower than 1 km/h.

Caution

Be sure to carefully read the following precautions when using TJA/ICA system:

- TJA/ICA is a driving assist system and can not violate the laws of physics, there are some limitations, driver must always control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- The vertical control of TJA/ICA system is carried out by ACC system, and horizontal control is carried out by Lane Keeping System (LKA). All precautions of ACC and LKA systems are also applicable to this system.
- This system does not provide automatic driving function and does not allow off-hand driving. Under such conditions as turning, crossing, merging and cutting in of vehicles ahead, driver should control the vehicle at all times to ensure the safety of vehicle.
- System performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line clarity. For example, under the conditions of backlight, sunset, night, snow and ice on the road surface and unclear lane lines due to road wear, the performance will be significantly reduced or even lost.
- When system fails, yellow warning light on instrument cluster turns on, TJA/ICA will not function at this time and contact CHERY service station to check and repair.
- All the above precautions do not cover all the situations that may affect normal operation of system function. The system function may not bring expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take responsibility for the vehicle control.

3 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

■ Constant Speed Cruise/Adaptive Cruise

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Vehicle speed can not be set (Meter indicator does not illuminate)	Wire harness or connector
	Instrument cluster
	Engine Control Module (ECM)
Vehicle speed can not be set (Meter indicator comes on normally)	Constant speed cruise control switch
	Brake switch
	ESP and EPB
	Wire harness or connector
	Body Control Module (BCM)
	Engine Control Module (ECM)

3.2 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.3 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.4 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.5 Front Camera Module (FCM) DTC Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
U007388	CAN communication error - Communication Bus Off Error (Public CAN)
U12A188	CAN Communication Error - Communication Bus Off Error (Private CAN)
U012987	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BSM
U014087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BCM

DTC	DTC Definition
U014687	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with CGW
U010087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
U013187	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EPS
U015587	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ICM
U024587	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with IHU
U012687	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with SAM
U012387	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with YAS
U12E187	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with FRM
U041881	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from Brake System Control Module
U042281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from BCM
U044781	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from Gateway "A"
U040181	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from EMS
U042081	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from EPS
U042381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from ICM
U054681	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from IHU
U042881	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SAM
U051381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from YAS
U051382	CAN communication error - Invalid Data from Cruise Control Front Distance Range Sensor
U051383	Control Module-Not Programmed
C190016	Supply Voltage Error - Low Voltage
C190017	Supply Voltage Error - High Voltage
C190116	Circuit Voltage Error - Below Threshold
C190117	Circuit Voltage Error - Above Threshold
C190244	Parameter Error - Dataset Error
C190354	Parameter Error - Initial Calibration Data Missing
C190346	Parameter Error - Initial Calibration Data Out of Range
C190446	Parameter Error - Online Calibration Data Out of Range
C190594	Process Error - Initial Calibration Timeout

DTC	DTC Definition
C19064B	Temperature Error - ECU Temperature Out of Range
C190797	Electronic Error - Camera Blindness
C190749	Electronic Error - Internal Electronic Failure Temporary
C190709	Electronic Error - Internal Electronic Failure Permanent

3.6 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	C190244	Parameter Error - Dataset Error
DTC	C190749	Electronic Error - Internal Electronic Failure Temporary
DTC	C190709	Electronic Error - Internal Electronic Failure Permanent

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
C190244	Parameter Error - Dataset Error	Front camera module is damaged
C190749	Electronic Error - Internal Electronic Failure Temporary	
C190709	Electronic Error - Internal Electronic Failure Permanent	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check for DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front camera control system DTCs again.
- Check if DTCs occur again.

OK System is normal

NG

2 Check if front camera operates normally

NG Replace front camera module assembly

OK Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again

DTC	C190116	Circuit Voltage Error - Below Threshold
DTC	C190117	Circuit Voltage Error - Above Threshold
DTC	C190016	Supply Voltage Error - Low Voltage
DTC	C190017	Supply Voltage Error - High Voltage

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
C190116	Circuit Voltage Error - Below Threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness • Front camera module is damaged
C190117	Circuit Voltage Error - Above Threshold	
C190016	Supply Voltage Error - Low Voltage	
C190017	Supply Voltage Error - High Voltage	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

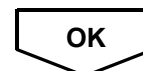
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check fuse
----------	-------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Check if fuse RF08 5A of engine compartment fuse and relay box is blown.

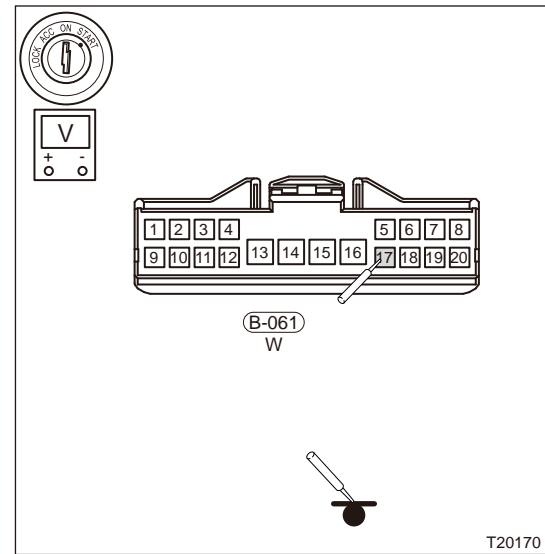
NG	Replace fuse
-----------	---------------------



2	Check instrument panel fuse box output voltage
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Measure voltage between front compartment fuse and relay box B-061 terminal 17 and ground (using a digital multimeter).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-061 (17) - Body ground	ON	9 - 16 V



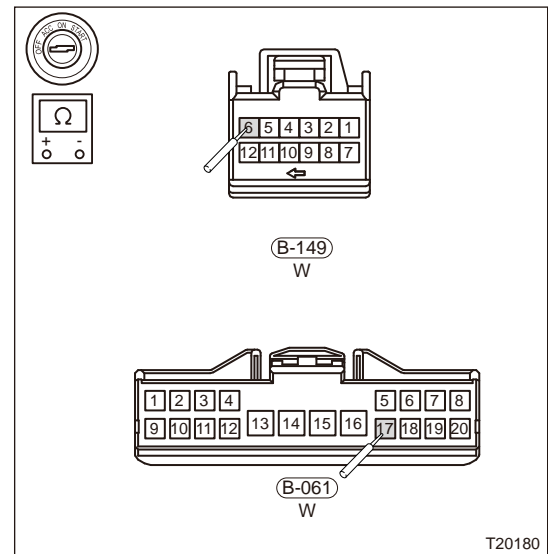
NG Replace the instrument panel fuse box assembly

OK

3 Check wire harness for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect front camera module connector B-149 and engine compartment fuse and relay box connector B-061.
- (c) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure if resistance between connector B-061 (17) and connector B-149 (6) is normal to check wire harness for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-061 (17) - B-149 (6)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	< 1 Ω



NG Handle and repair related wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace front camera module assembly

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	C190797	Electronic Error - Camera Blindness
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
C190797	Electronic Error - Camera Blindness	Front camera module is damaged

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Check for DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front camera control system DTCs again.
- Check if DTCs occur again.

OK

System is normal

NG

2

Check if front camera is covered by foreign objects and clean dirt from front camera surface

NG

Replace front camera module assembly

OK

Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again

DTC	C19064B	Temperature Error - ECU Temperature Out of Range
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
C19064B	Temperature Error - ECU Temperature Out of Range	Overheating protection

1

Clear DTC to relieve overheat protection

DTC	C190346	Parameter Error - Initial Calibration Data Out of Range
DTC	C190354	Parameter Error - Initial Calibration Data Missing

DTC	C1905-94	Process Error - Initial Calibration Timeout
DTC	C1904-46	Parameter Error - Online Calibration Data Out of Range

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
C190346	Parameter Error - Initial Calibration Data Out of Range	Recalibration
C190354	Parameter Error - Initial Calibration Data Missing	
C1905-94	Process Error - Initial Calibration Timeout	
C1904-46	Parameter Error - Online Calibration Data Out of Range	

Hint:

Possible cause of malfunction: Front camera calibration is not performed or corresponding calibration conditions are not met.

1	Refer to front camera calibration method and perform calibration again
----------	---

DTC	U130055	Control Module-Not Programmed
------------	----------------	--------------------------------------

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
U130055	Control Module-Not Programmed	Rewrite configuration data

Hint:

Possible cause of malfunction: Configuration data is not written into module.

1	Rewrite configuration data
----------	-----------------------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Using diagnostic tester, enter system “Special operation” to perform configuration data writing.

OK	Perform running test after clearing DTCs
-----------	---

DTC	U007388	CAN communication error - Communication Bus Off Error (Public CAN)
DTC	U12A188	CAN Communication Error - Communication Bus Off Error (Private CAN)
DTC	U012987	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BSM
DTC	U014087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BCM
DTC	U014687	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with CGW
DTC	U010087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U013187	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EPS
DTC	U015587	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ICM
DTC	U024587	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with IHU
DTC	U024588	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with SAM

DTC	U024589	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with YAS
DTC	U024590	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with FRM
DTC	U024591	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from Brake System Control Module
DTC	U024592	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from BCM
DTC	U024593	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from Gateway "A"
DTC	U024594	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from EMS
DTC	U024595	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from EPS
DTC	U024596	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from ICM
DTC	U024597	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from IHU
DTC	U024598	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SAM
DTC	U024599	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from YAS
DTC	U0245100	CAN communication error - Invalid Data from Cruise Control Front Distance Range Sensor

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Refer to CAN communication system

3.7 Front Radar Module (FRM) DTC Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
U007388	CAN communication error - Communication Bus Off Error (Public CAN)
U003888	CAN Communication Error - Communication Bus Off Error (Private CAN)
U012687	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with SAM
U012987	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BSM
U015587	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ICM
U014087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BCM
U010087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
U010187	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
U014287	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
U12E087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with FCM
U042881	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SAM
U041881	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from Brake System Control Module

DTC	DTC Definition
U042381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from ICM
U042281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from BCM
U040181	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EMS
U044781	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from CGW
U014687	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with CGW
U040281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC Received from TCU
U044381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid DLC received from TCU
U12E086	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from FCM
C106017	Supply Voltage Too High
C106016	Supply Voltage Too Low
C193009	Communication Failure
C193102	Radar Signal Interference
C19324B	Temperature Too High
C193317	Radar Internal Voltage Too Low
C193405	Radar Hardware and Software Mismatch
C193604	Steering Angle and Wheel Tire Angle Offset
C193707	Tire Size Incorrect
C193804	Radar Modulation Abnormal
C193978	Radar Horizontal Angle Misaligned
C193A78	Radar Vertical Angle Misaligned
C193B76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object
C193C09	Radar Digital Signal Processor Power Abnormal
C193D04	Radar Hardware Failure
C193E78	Radar Calibration Incomplete
C193F53	DTC Production Mode Active
C193C76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object
C193E76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object
C193F76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object

DTC	DTC Definition
C193D76	Radar Waveform Disturbed
C193076	Radar Unavailable
U300051	Data Not Programmed
530104	Radar Hardware Failure
530204	Radar Reference Speed Unavailable
530709	Vehicle Transmission Device Activated
530801	Vehicle Voltage Failure
531210	Radar Heater Unavailable
53134B	Temporary Failure
531476	Radar Position Failure
982700	Code Incomplete

3.8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	C106017	Supply Voltage Too High
DTC	C106016	Supply Voltage Too Low
DTC	C193317	Radar Internal Voltage Too Low
DTC	530801	Vehicle Voltage Failure

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
C106017	Supply Voltage Too High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Battery • Wire harness • Front radar module
C106016	Supply Voltage Too Low	
C193317	Radar Internal Voltage Too Low	
530801	Vehicle Voltage Failure	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check voltage
----------	----------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check battery voltage (not less than 12 V) with a digital multimeter.

NG Replace battery

OK

2 Check charging system

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check positive and negative battery cables for broken or damage.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if voltage of positive and negative battery is normal with a digital multimeter (13.5 V - 14.8 V).

NG Repair or replace positive and negative battery cables and alternator

OK

3 Check fuse

- (a) Check if fuse RF29 5A is blown.

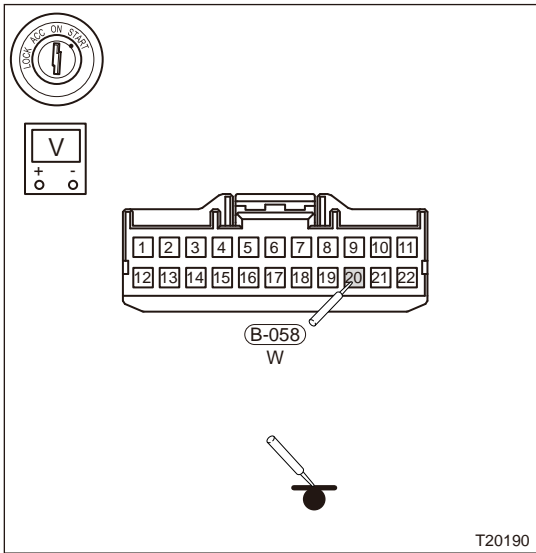
NG Replace fuse

OK

4 Check engine compartment fuse and relay box output voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check the voltage between fuse box terminal B-058 terminal 20 and ground. (When using digital multimeter).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-058 (20) - Body ground	ON	9 - 16 V



T20190

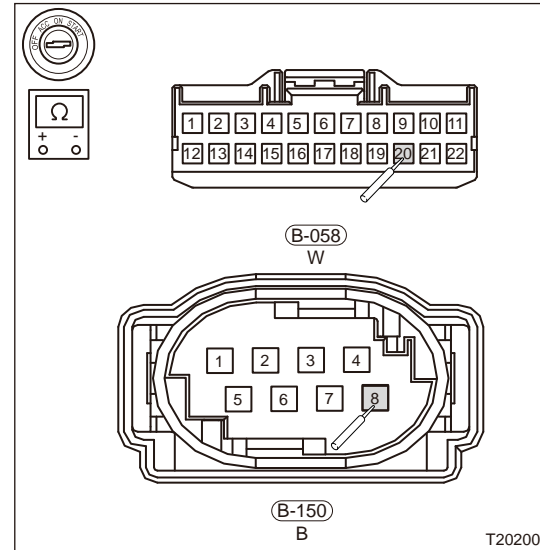
NG Replace the instrument panel fuse box assembly

OK

5 Check wire harness for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect front radar connector B-150 and fuse box connector B-058.
- (d) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure if resistance between connector B-058 (20) and connector B-150 (8) is normal to check wire harness for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-058 (20) - B-150 (8)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Handle and repair related wire harness

OK

6 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace front radar module assembly

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	C193604	Steering Angle and Wheel Tire Angle Offset
-----	---------	--

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C193604	Steering Angle and Wheel Tire Angle Offset	Steering angle position is not calibrated

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check for DTCs

- (a) Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front radar control system DTCs again.
- (b) Check if DTCs occur again.

OK System is normal

NG

2 Check steering angle position

NG Refer to calibrated steering angle position of steering system

OK Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again

DTC	C193707	Tire Size Incorrect
------------	----------------	----------------------------

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C193707	Tire Size Incorrect	Different tire type

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check for DTCs

- (a) Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front radar control system DTCs again.
- (b) Check if DTCs occur again.

OK System is normal

NG

2 Check if the tire size is the same as original tire size

NG Replace tire of same type

OK Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again

DTC	C193102	Radar Signal Interference
DTC	C193D76	Radar Waveform Disturbed

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C193102	Radar Signal Interference	The vehicle may be equipped with other interference components
C193D76	Radar Waveform Disturbed	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check for DTCs

(a) Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front radar control system DTCs again.

(b) Check if DTCs occur again.

OK System is normal

NG

2 Check if the vehicle is equipped with other interference components

NG Remove add-on components and test function

OK Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again

DTC	C193B76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object
DTC	C193C76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object
DTC	C193E76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object
DTC	C193F76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C193B76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Front radar module assembly • There is dirt on radar surface
C193C76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object	
C193E76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object	
C193F76	Radar Surface Contaminated or Covered with Foreign Object	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check for DTCs
----------	-----------------------

(a) Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front radar control system DTCs again.

(b) Check if DTCs occur again.

OK	System is normal
-----------	-------------------------

NG

2	Check if front radar is covered by foreign matters and clean dirt on the surface of front radar
----------	--

NG	Replace front radar module assembly
-----------	--

OK	Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again
-----------	--

DTC	C19324B	Temperature Too High
------------	----------------	-----------------------------

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C19324B	Temperature Too High	Overheating protection

1	Clear DTC to relieve overheat protection
----------	---

DTC	C193804	Radar Modulation Abnormal
DTC	C193978	Radar Horizontal Angle Misaligned
DTC	C193A78	Radar Vertical Angle Misaligned
DTC	C193E78	Radar Calibration Incomplete

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C193804	Radar Modulation Abnormal	Recalibration
C193978	Radar Horizontal Angle Misaligned	
C193A78	Radar Vertical Angle Misaligned	
C193E78	Radar Calibration Incomplete	

Hint:

Possible cause of malfunction: Front radar calibration is not performed or corresponding calibration conditions are not met.

1	Refer to front radar calibration method and perform calibration again
----------	--

DTC	982700	Code Incomplete
DTC	U300051	Data Not Programmed

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
982700	Code Incomplete	Configuration data is not written into module
U300051	Data Not Programmed	

Hint:

Possible cause of malfunction: Configuration data is not written into module.

1	Rewrite configuration data
----------	-----------------------------------

- (a) Using diagnostic tester, enter system "Special operation" to perform configuration data writing.

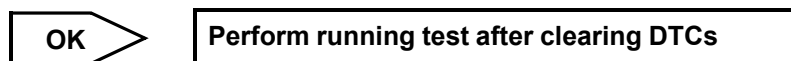


DTC	C193F53	DTC Production Mode Active
------------	----------------	-----------------------------------

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C193F53	DTC Production Mode Active	Production mode turns on

1	Turn production mode off
----------	---------------------------------

- (a) Use diagnostic tester, enter system "Special Operation" to turn off production mode.



DTC	C193009	Communication Failure
DTC	C193405	Radar Hardware and Software Mismatch
DTC	C193804	Radar Modulation Abnormal
DTC	C193C09	Radar Digital Signal Processor Power Abnormal
DTC	530204	Radar Reference Speed Unavailable
DTC	53134B	Temporary Failure
DTC	531210	Radar Heater Unavailable

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
C193009	Communication Failure	PEPS control module or interior wire harness is damaged
C193405	Radar Hardware and Software Mismatch	
C193804	Radar Modulation Abnormal	
C193C09	Radar Digital Signal Processor Power Abnormal	
530204	Radar Reference Speed Unavailable	

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
53134B	Temporary Failure	
531210	Radar Heater Unavailable	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check for DTCs

- (a) Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front radar control system DTCs again.
 (b) Check if DTCs occur again.

OK System is normal

NG

2 Check if front radar operates normally

NG Replace front radar module assembly

OK Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again

DTC	530104	Radar Hardware Failure
DTC	C193076	Radar Unavailable
DTC	C193D04	Radar Hardware Failure

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
530104	Radar Hardware Failure	Front Radar Module
C193076	Radar Unavailable	
C193D04	Radar Hardware Failure	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check for DTCs
----------	-----------------------

- (a) Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read front radar control system DTCs again.
 (b) Check if DTCs occur again.



System is normal



2	Replace front radar module
----------	-----------------------------------

- (a) Replace the front radar module.
 (b) Perform running test after clearing DTCs.



Replace front radar module assembly
--

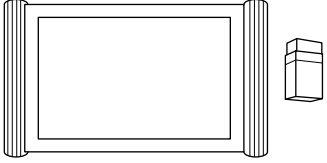
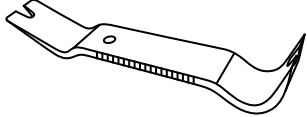
DTC	U007388	CAN communication error - Communication Bus Off Error (Public CAN)
DTC	U003888	CAN Communication Error - Communication Bus Off Error (Private CAN)
DTC	U012687	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with SAM
DTC	U012987	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BSM
DTC	U015587	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with ICM
DTC	U014087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with BCM
DTC	U010087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U010187	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U014287	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U12E087	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with FCM
DTC	U0428-81	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from SAM
DTC	U041881	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from Brake System Control Module
DTC	U042381	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from ICM
DTC	U042281	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data from BCM
DTC	U040181	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from EMS
DTC	U044781	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from CGW
DTC	U040281	CAN Communication ERROR - Invalid Data Received from TCU
DTC	U044381	CAN Communication ERROR - Invalid Data Received from TCU
DTC	U12E086	CAN Communication Error - Invalid Data Received from FCM
DTC	U014687	CAN Communication Error - Lost Communication with CGW

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Refer to CAN communication system

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p>S00001</p>
Interior Crow Plate	 <p>S00020</p>

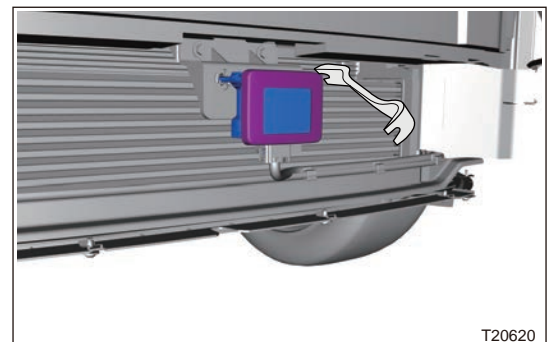
4.2 Microwave Radar

■ Removal

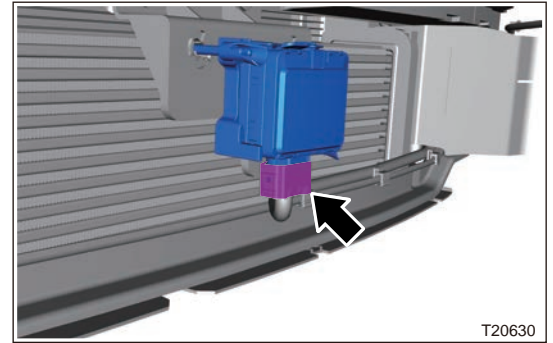
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front bumper assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front bumper assembly.**
- **Avoid breaking claws, when disassembling front bumper assembly.**
- **Avoid damage when detaching fixing clip of microwave radar.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Use an interior crow plate to pry off microwave radar cover.



- (5) Disconnect the microwave radar connector.



- (6) Detach 3 fixing clips from top and bottom sides of microwave radar.



- (7) Remove the front microwave radar module.

■ Installation

Caution

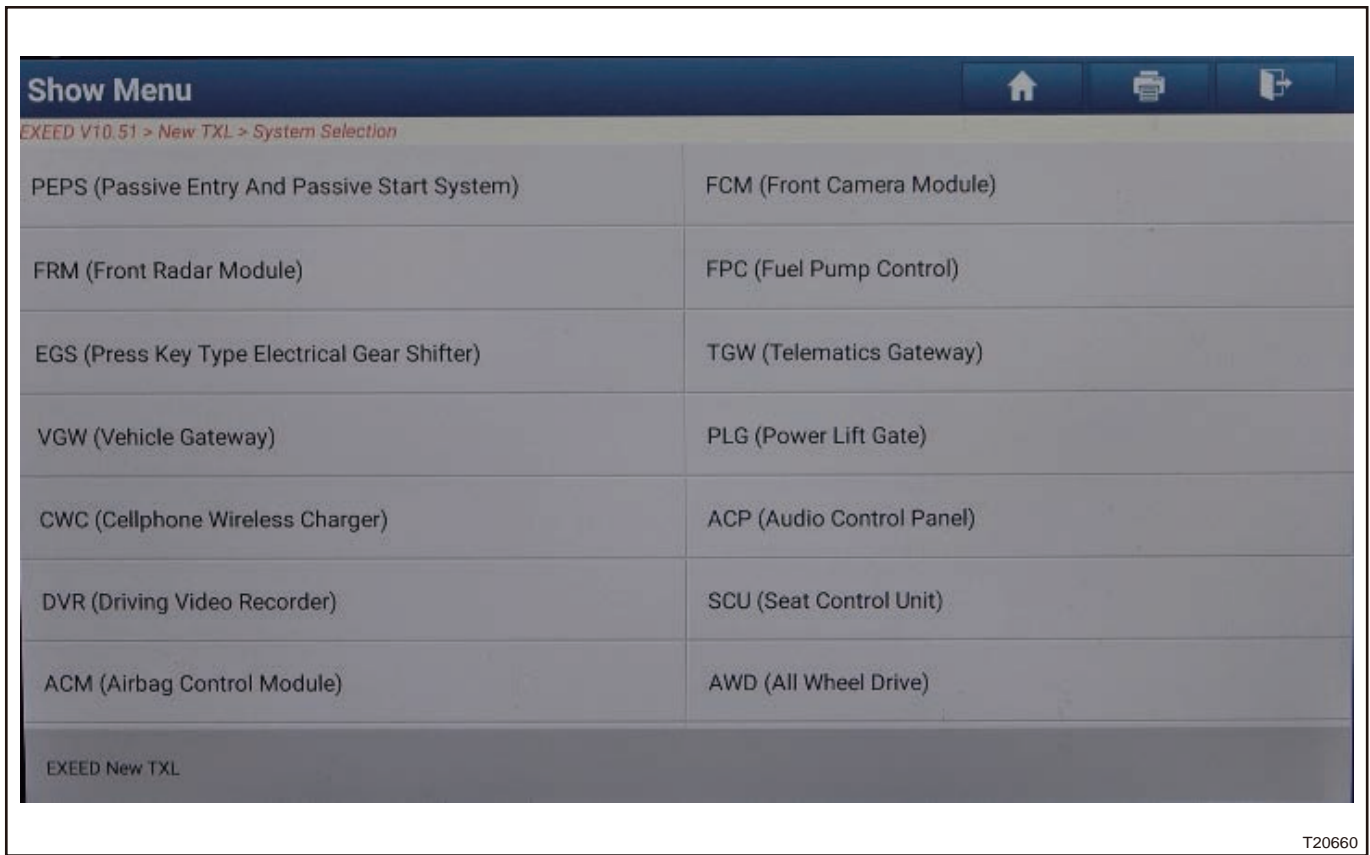
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front bumper assembly.
- Make sure that front bumper is installed correctly and fitting clearance between front bumper and body is appropriate, when installing front bumper assembly.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

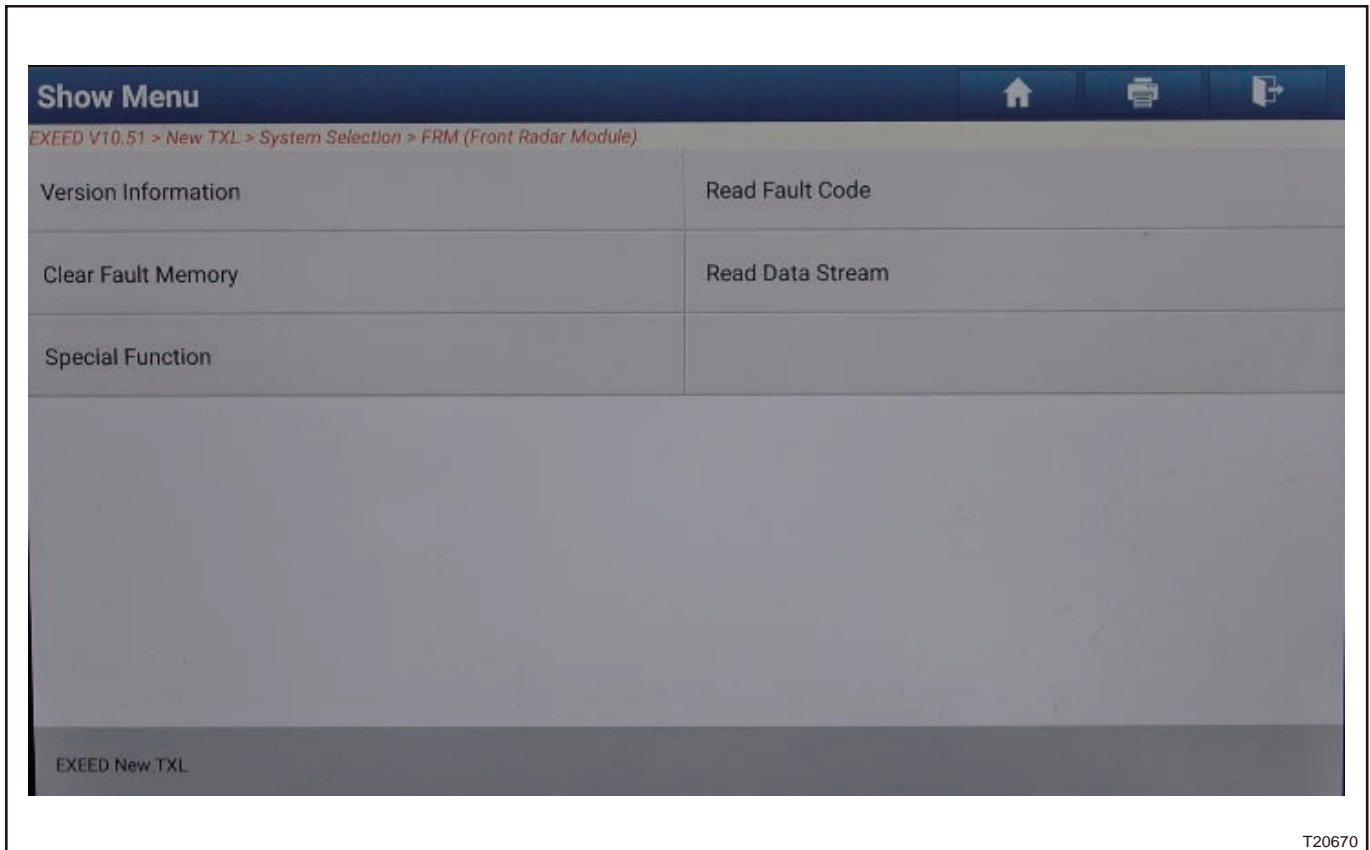
■ Matching Learning

■ Write VIN Code

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester, enter the system, select model and click special operation.

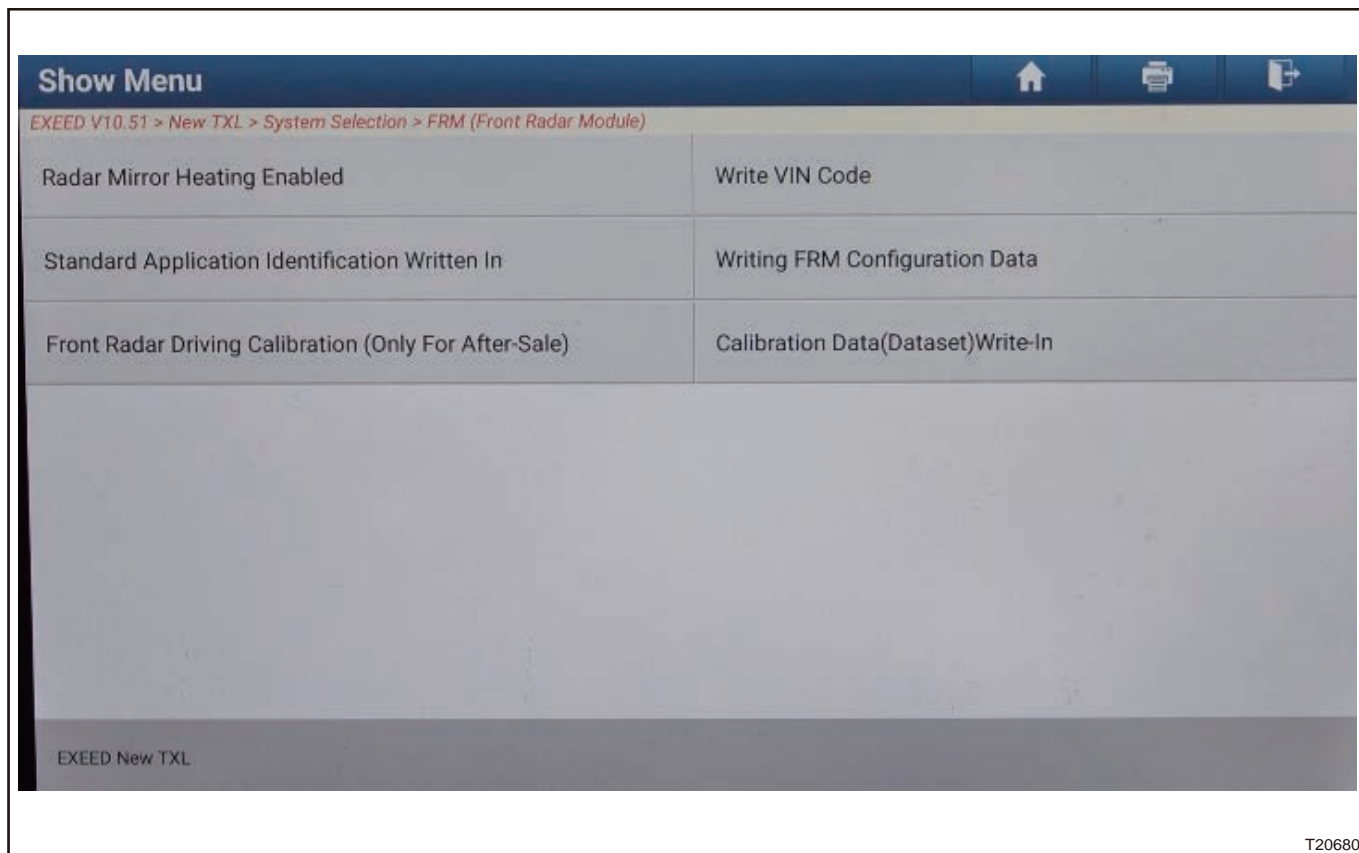


T20660



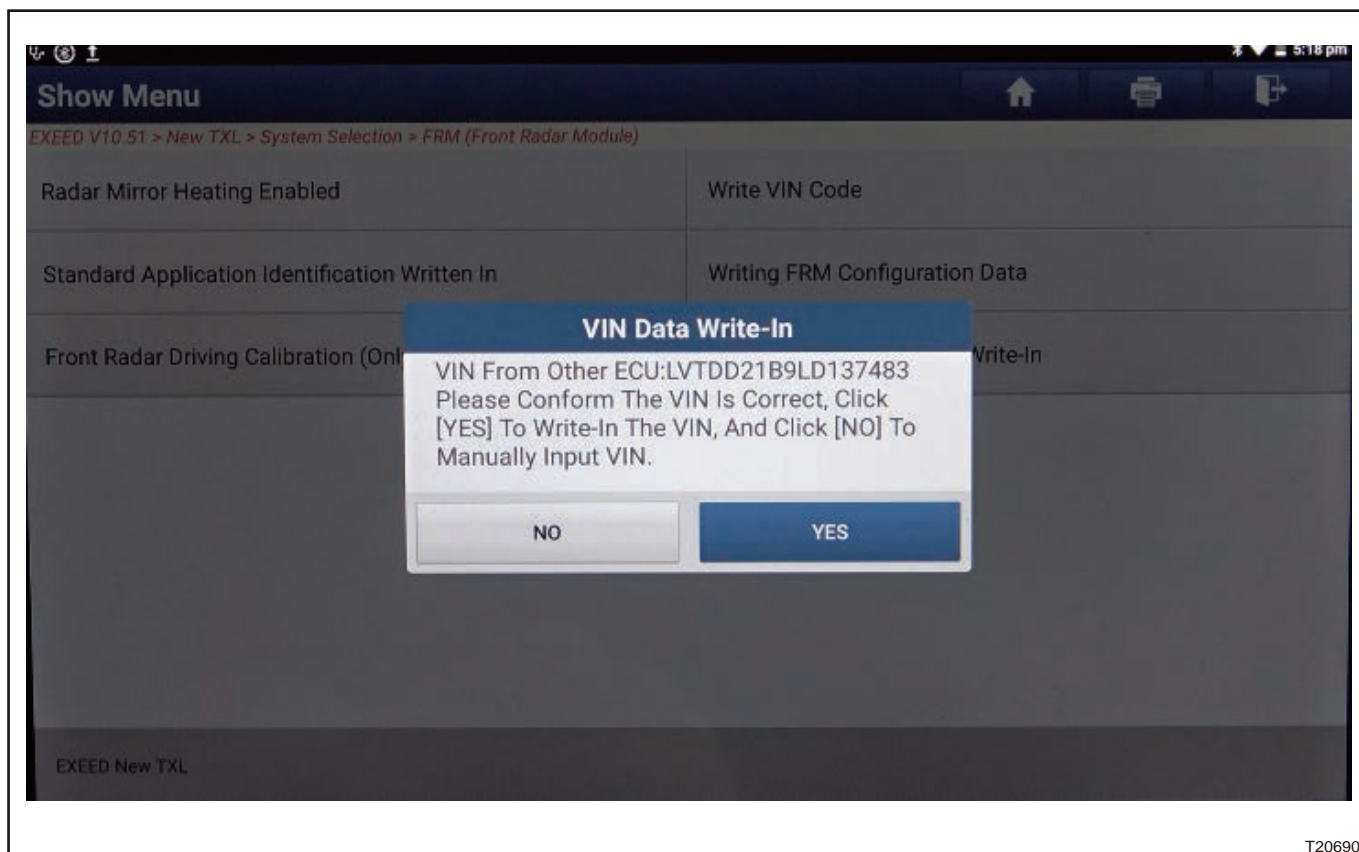
T20670

(2) Click "Write VIN Code" .



T20680

- (3) Compare VIN code displayed on screen with vehicle. If the code is same, click "Yes" , otherwise click "No" and input it manually.



T20690

- (4) Input corresponding VIN code and click "OK" .

■ Front Radar After-sales Driving Calibration

Use a spirit level to calibrate the vertical direction of radar. The requirements for calibration are as follows:

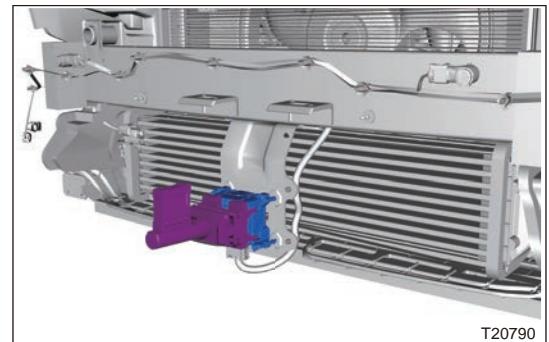
- Calibration site for parking vehicle must be horizontal, with an inclination of $-0.3 \sim 0.3^\circ$, or inclination of calibration site can be measured.
- Keep the radar surface clean, especially ensure the positioning accuracy of three installation positioning points of the spirit level.
- Use SDA to calibrate the horizontal direction of radar. Environmental requirements for calibration are as follows:
 - Keep the radar surface clean and free of snow, soil and other objects.
- Avoid calibration in rainy and snowy weather.
- There should be stationary metal targets on both sides of road, such as lampposts, signboards, etc. Highway or elevated road with metal railings are recommended. When driving calibration is started, the vehicle must drive under certain conditions to gradually increase the progress bar of driving calibration to 100% and complete the driving calibration process. The driving conditions of calibration are as follows:

Limitations	Threshold	Out of Limit Hint
Minimum speed	40 km/h	Speed is too low
Maximum speed	120 km/h	Speed is too high
Minimum longitudinal acceleration	-0.5 m/s ²	Longitudinal acceleration is too low
Maximum longitudinal acceleration	1.0 m/s ²	Longitudinal acceleration is too high
Maximum lateral acceleration	2.0 m/s ²	Lateral acceleration is too high
Maximum steering qulv	0.001 /m	Curvature is too large
ABS, ASR, ESP, MSR trigger		Vehicle dynamic condition interference (ABS, ASR, ESP, MSR, etc. trigger)

After sales calibration of medium distance radar is performed by combining level calibration and driving calibration. Use a spirit level to calibrate the vertical direction firstly, then use driving calibration service to calibrate the horizontal direction, and finally make the deviation between driving axis and radar axis within a certain range. Radar calibration is required when:

- When replacing radar assembly with a new one, for example, replace radar or radar bracket.
- When the driving axis of the vehicle changes, for example, four-wheel alignment was performed again, etc.
- When the radar reports an error and reads the error code as "Front Radar not Calibrated" by diagnostic equipment.

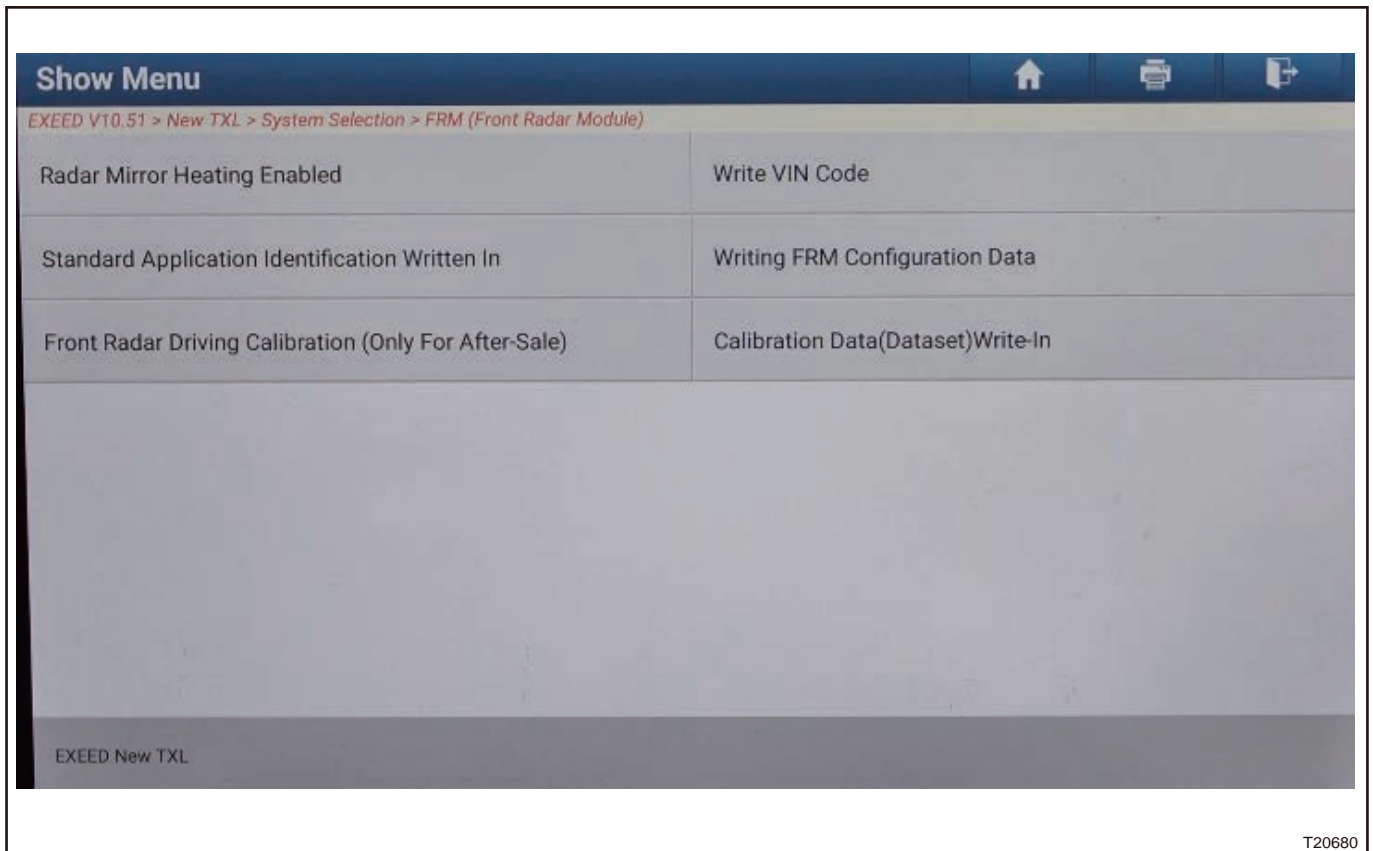
- (1) Park the vehicle in a horizontal area, remove components around radar, front bumper and front radar cover, install front collision warning tool correctly, observe data showed on display of front collision warning tool. Adjust calibration bolt (right lower bolt) vertically so that data showed on display is close to 0°.



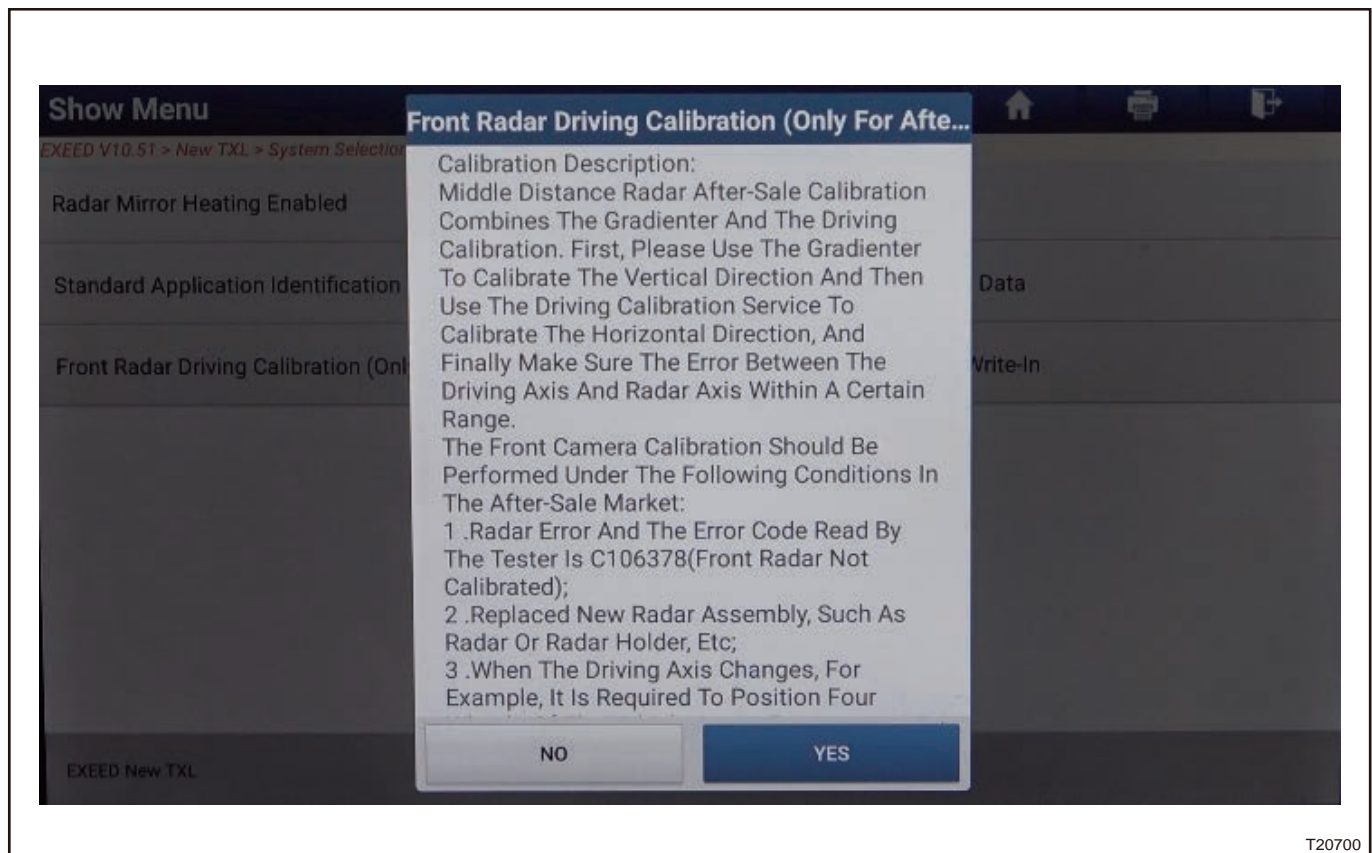
WARNING

Turn off factory mode before calibrating.

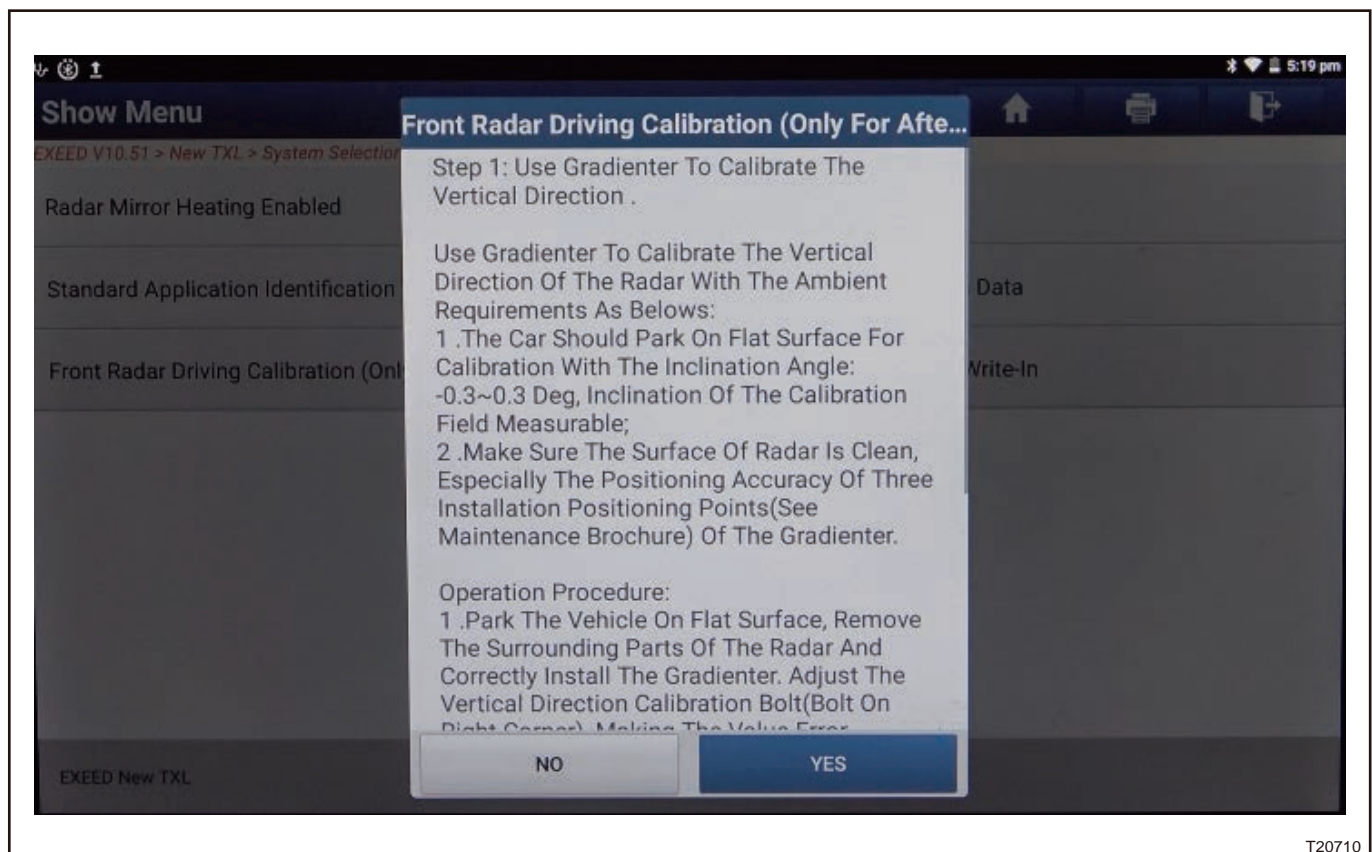
- (1) Click “Front Radar After-sales Driving Calibration” .



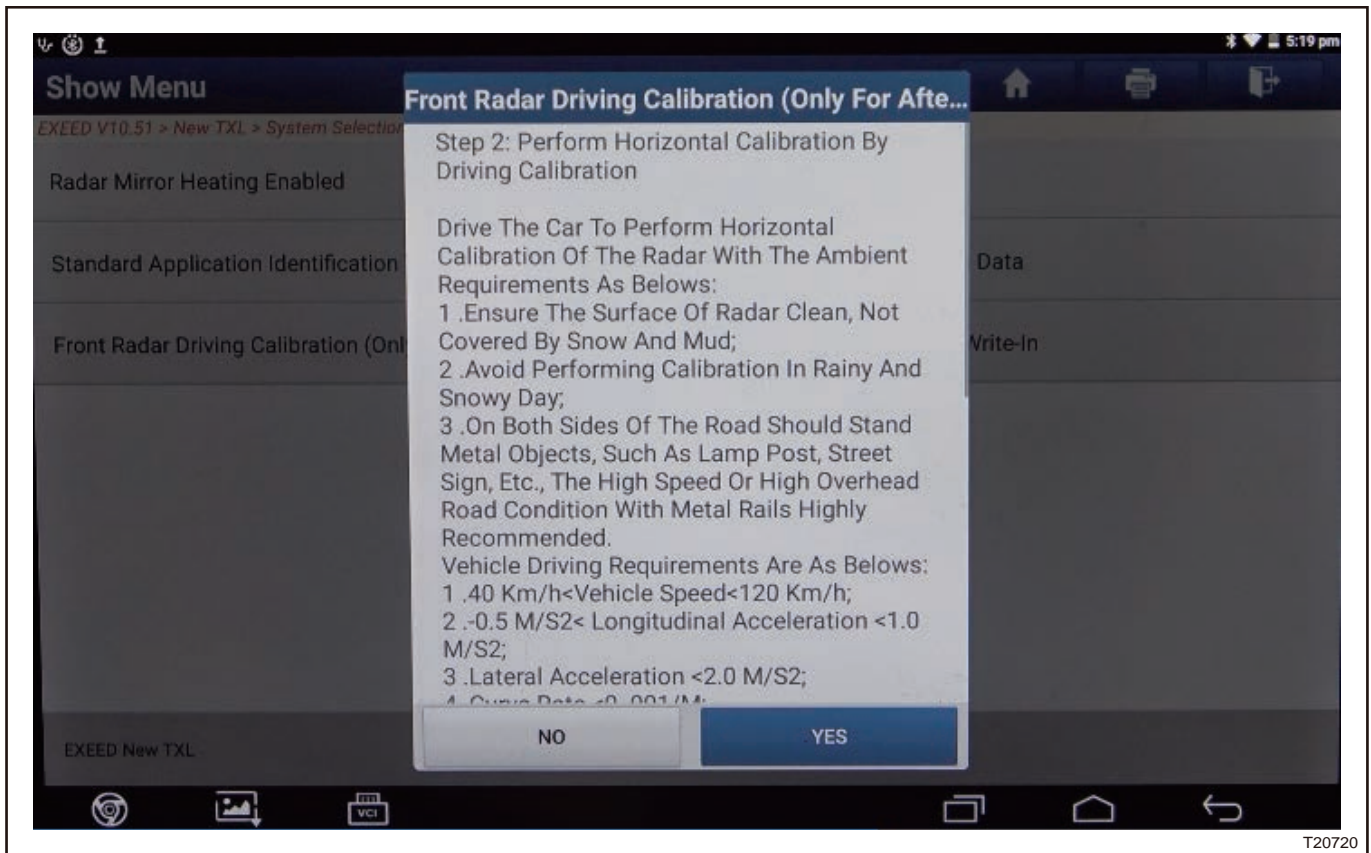
- (2) Turn off factory mode before calibration.
- (3) Read precautions, confirm and click “Yes” .



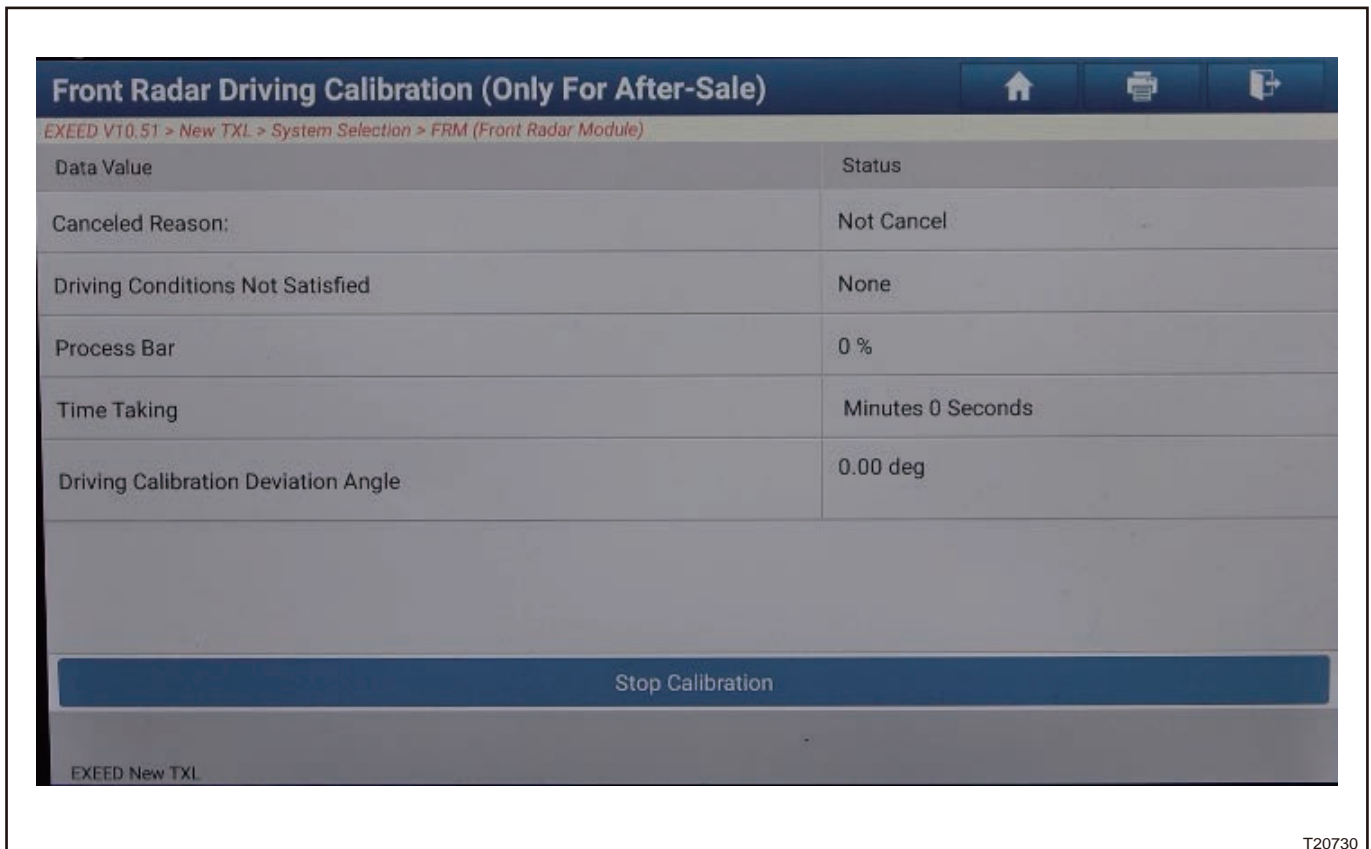
- (4) Use front collision warning tool to calibrate vertical direction, and click "Yes" after completing items prompted by diagnostic tester.



- (5) Calibrate horizontal direction with driving calibration, and click "Yes" .



- (6) Start driving calibration and drive according to driving conditions until the calibration progress bar reaches 100%.



WARNING

- The calibration progress bar of 100% usually takes less than 20 minutes, which depends on road conditions and target quantity.
- If calibration still is not completed after more than 45 minutes, it is necessary to check whether calibration environment, driving conditions, installation position etc. are correct, and whether the driving calibration requirements are followed; after confirmation, repeat the above steps.

HINT

Adjust horizontal calibration bolt according to requirements of calibration result; If the result exceeds threshold once, after adjusting calibration bolt, perform driving calibration again to ensure the calibration is completed.

Caution

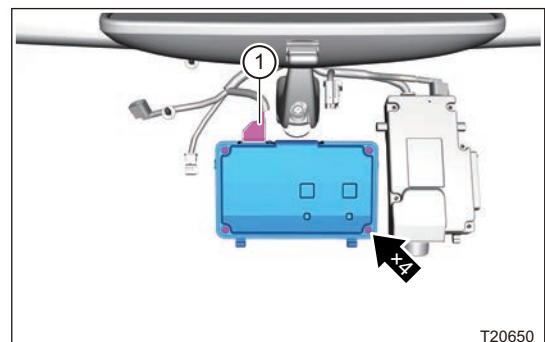
Calibration may fail if following conditions occur:

- Driving conditions always do not meet requirements: Surrounding references, road conditions.
- Communication between diagnostic tester and body is interrupted during calibration.
- Installation deviation of radar is too large.

4.3 Multi-function Front Camera**WARNING**

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing multi-function front camera.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing multi-function front camera. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Remove multi-function front camera to perform matching calibration.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the inside rear view mirror right protective cover.
- (4) Remove the inside rear view mirror left protective cover.
- (5) Disconnect multi-function front camera connector (1) and remove 4 fixing screws from multi-function front camera.



■ Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to tighten fixing screws to specified torques when installing multi-function front camera.**

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

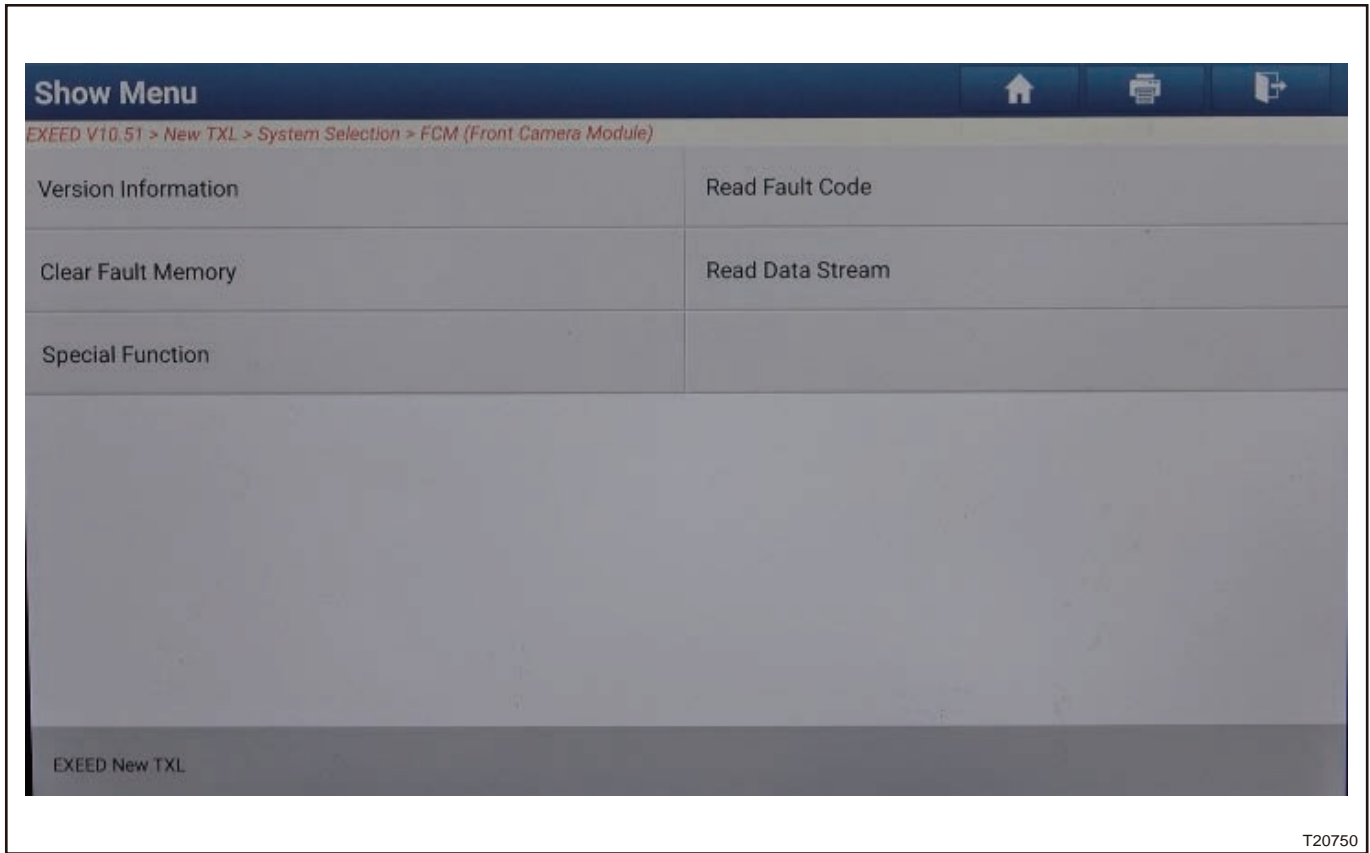
■ Matching Learning

■ Write VIN Code

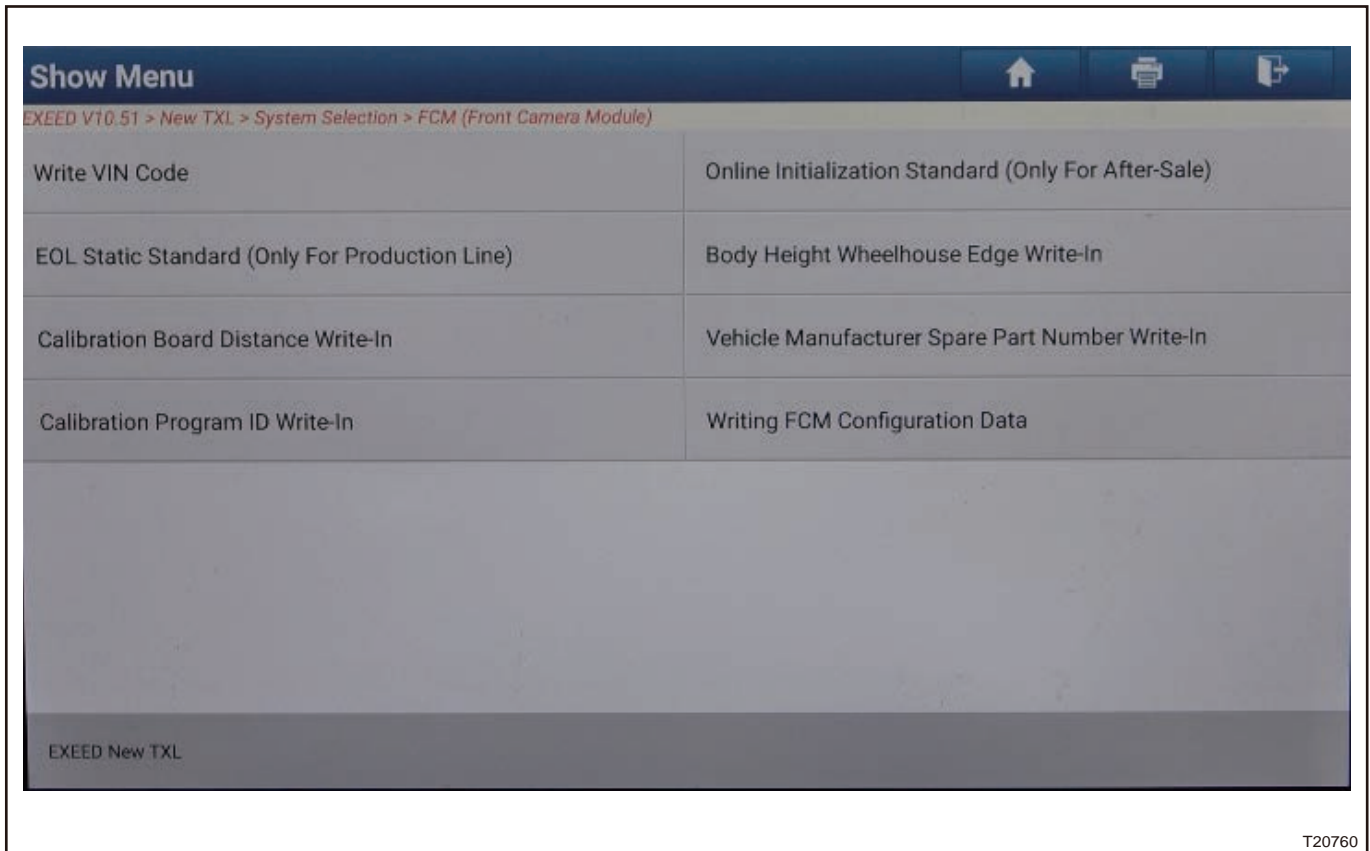
(1) Connect diagnostic tester, enter the system, select model and click special operation.

Show Menu	
EXEED V10.51 > New TXL > System Selection	
BSDL (Blind Spot Detection Left)	BSDR (Blind Spot Detection Right)
PEPS (Passive Entry And Passive Start System)	FCM (Front Camera Module)
FRM (Front Radar Module)	FPC (Fuel Pump Control)
EGS (Press Key Type Electrical Gear Shifter)	TGW (Telematics Gateway)
VGW (Vehicle Gateway)	PLG (Power Lift Gate)
CWC (Cellphone Wireless Charger)	ACP (Audio Control Panel)
DVR (Driving Video Recorder)	SCU (Seat Control Unit)
EXEED New TXL	

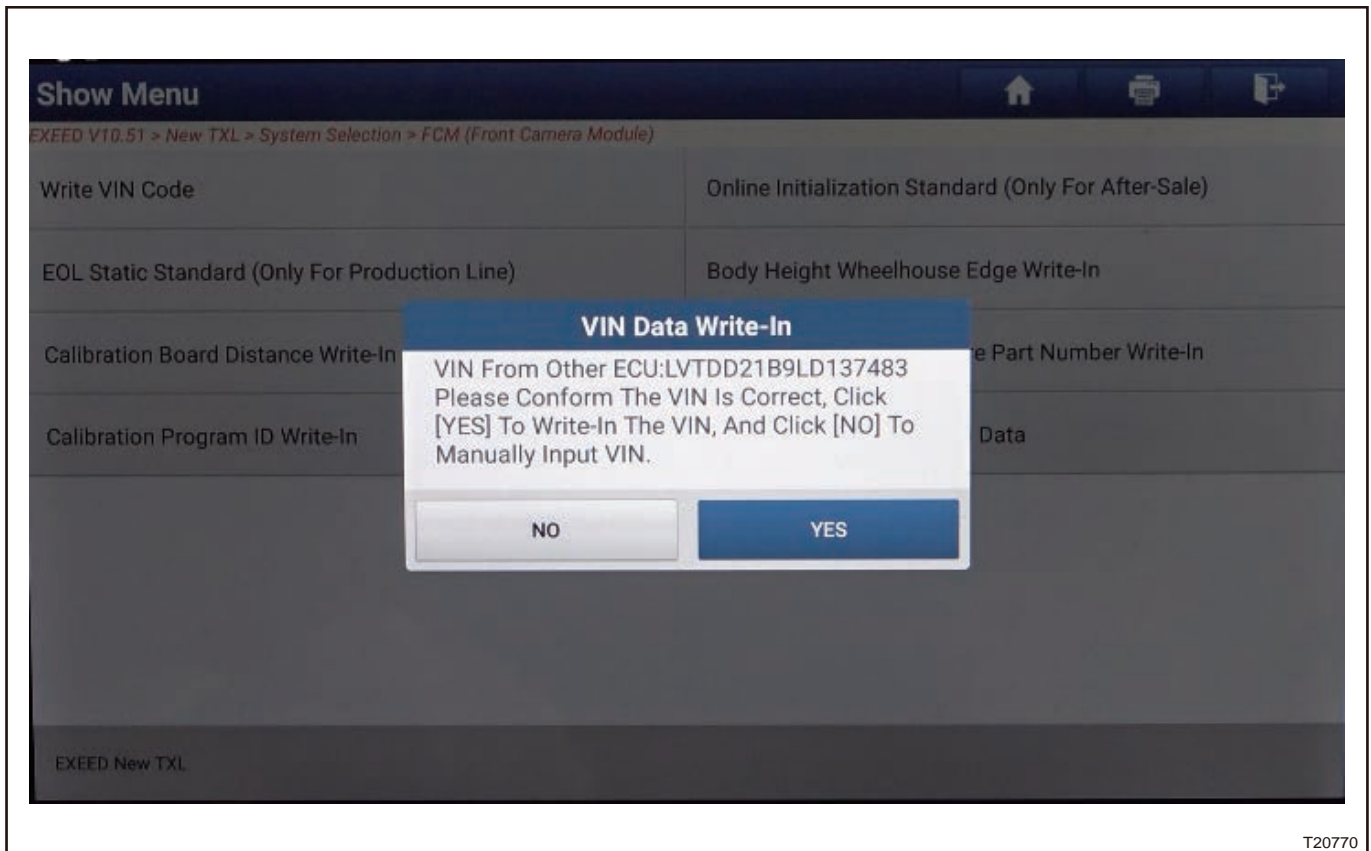
T20740



(2) Click "Write VIN Code" .



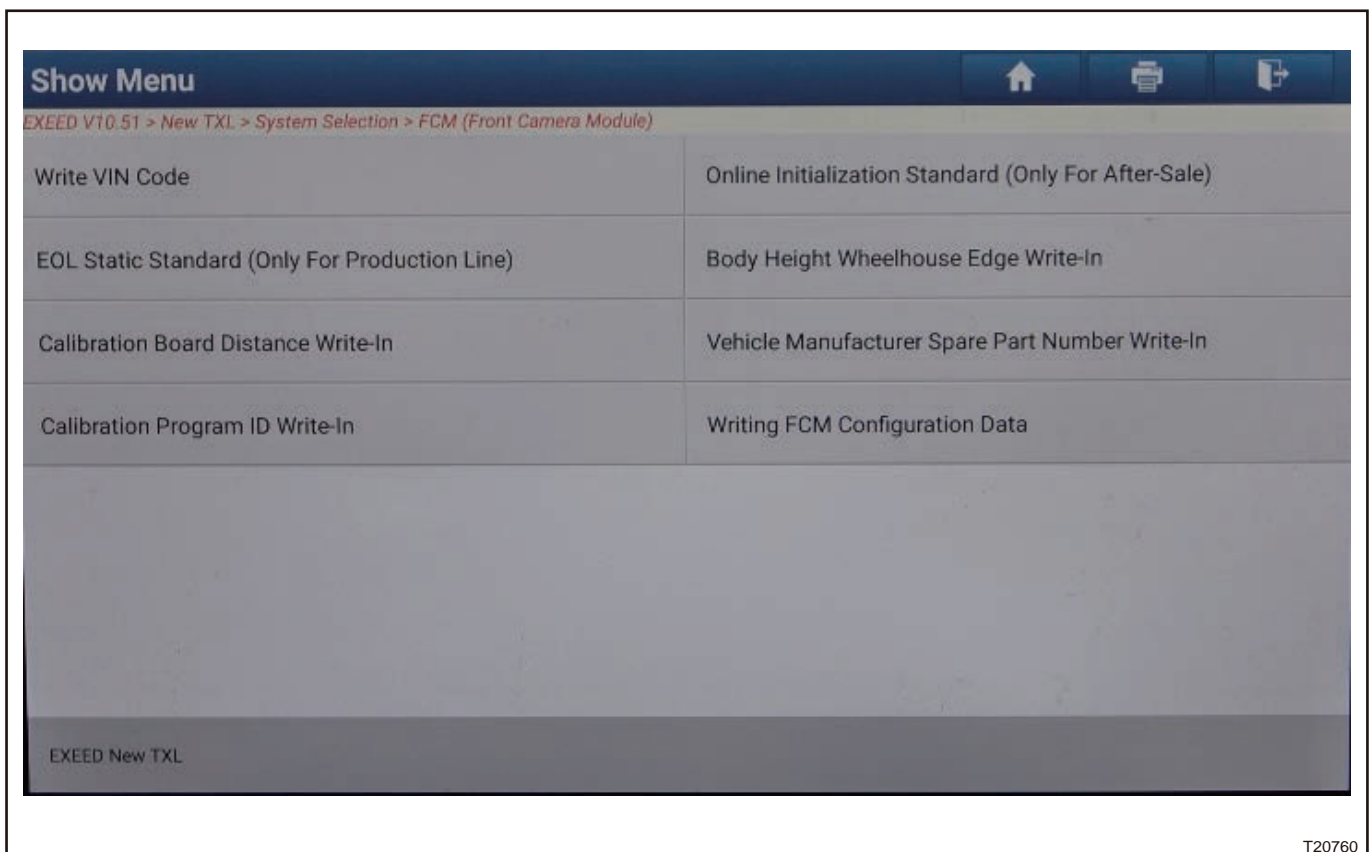
(3) Compare VIN code displayed on screen with vehicle. If the code is same, click "Yes" , otherwise click "No" and input it manually.



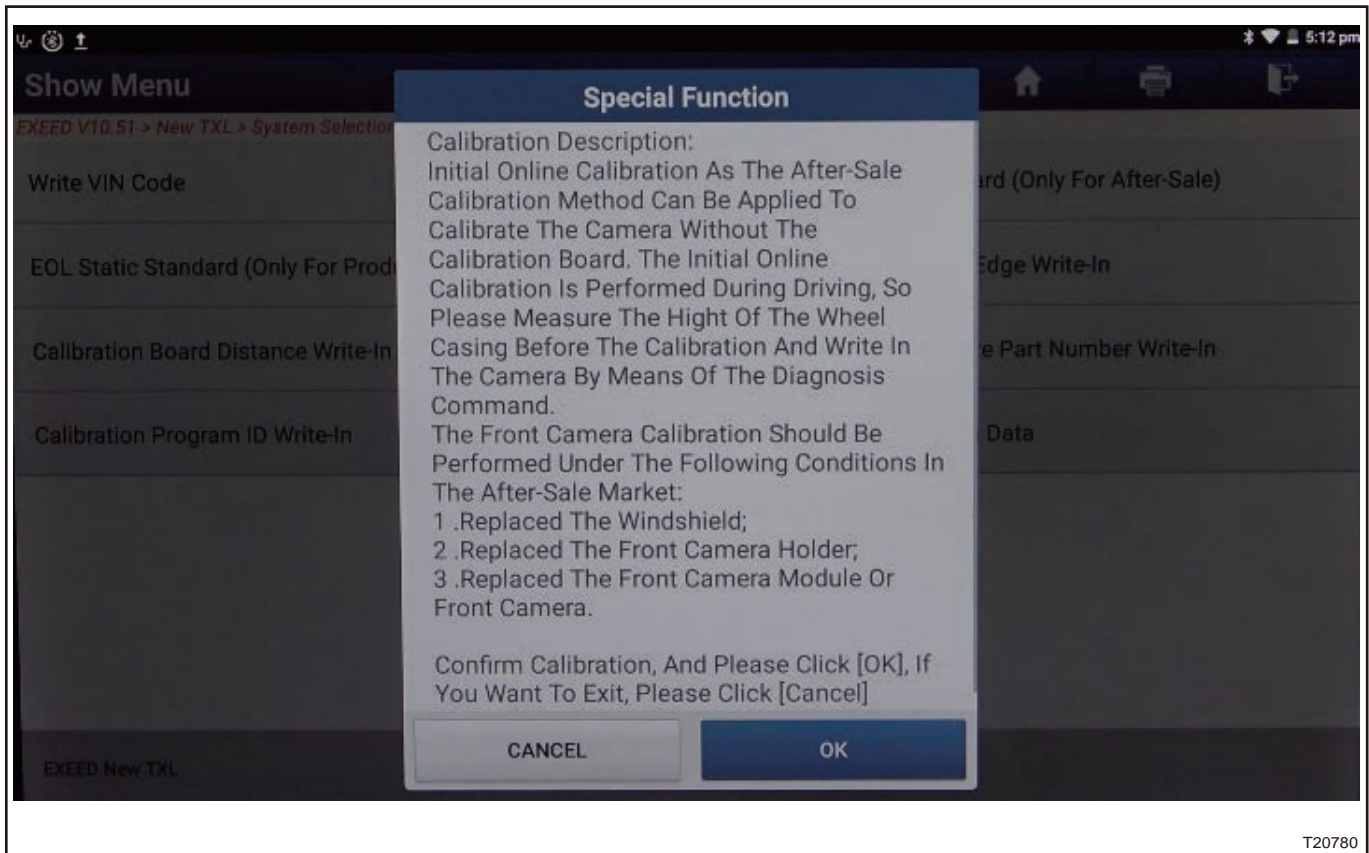
(4) Input corresponding VIN code and click “OK” .

■ **Online Initialization Calibration**

(1) Click “Online Initialization Calibration (Only for After-Sales)” .



(2) Carefully read calibration precautions, confirm and click “Yes” .



- (3) According to the information, drive the vehicle for 6 minutes.
- (4) Calibration is finished.

BODY ELECTRICAL

38.1	Blind Spot Monitoring System	1450
1	System Overview	1450
1.1	System Description	1450
1.2	Description	1451
1.3	System Principle	1451
1.4	System Function	1451
1.5	Component Operation Description	1454
2	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING	1455
2.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1455
2.2	Blind Spot Detection Module Terminal Definition	1456
2.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1457
2.4	Diagnostic Help	1457
2.5	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1458
2.6	Ground Inspection	1458
2.7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1458
2.8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1459
3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1464
3.1	Tools	1464
3.2	Blind Spot Detection Module	1464

38.1 Blind Spot Monitoring System

1 System Overview

1.1 System Description

During actual driving, due to the blind spots on both sides of the vehicle, the driver may not pay attention to or fail to observe the situation in the side lane when changing lanes and overtaking, which may cause an accident. The blind spot detection system assists the driver to drive safely, which does not belong to vehicle driving safety system and cannot replace driver's control. It is only used to supplement the deficiencies of inside and outside rear view mirrors, and cannot replace the inside and outside rear view mirrors.

- The Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) consists of 2 24G millimeter wave radar sensors, 2 millimeter wave radar sensor shields, 2 millimeter wave radar sensor brackets and 2 warning lights.
- The millimeter wave radar sensor is responsible for the alarm strategy and sends out an alarm signal. The shield of millimeter wave radar sensor absorbs the clutter signal reflected from multipath.
- The millimeter wave radar sensor bracket is used to install the sensor and must meet the installation specifications.
- The warning light is used to prompt the driver for warning information of blind spots.

■ System Self-check

The radar system malfunction warning function means that the system will perform self-check every time it is powered on. When the radar system controller detects that the system is faulty, it will send out the visual and audible warning to notify the driver, and record the corresponding diagnostic trouble code.

■ Detection Target

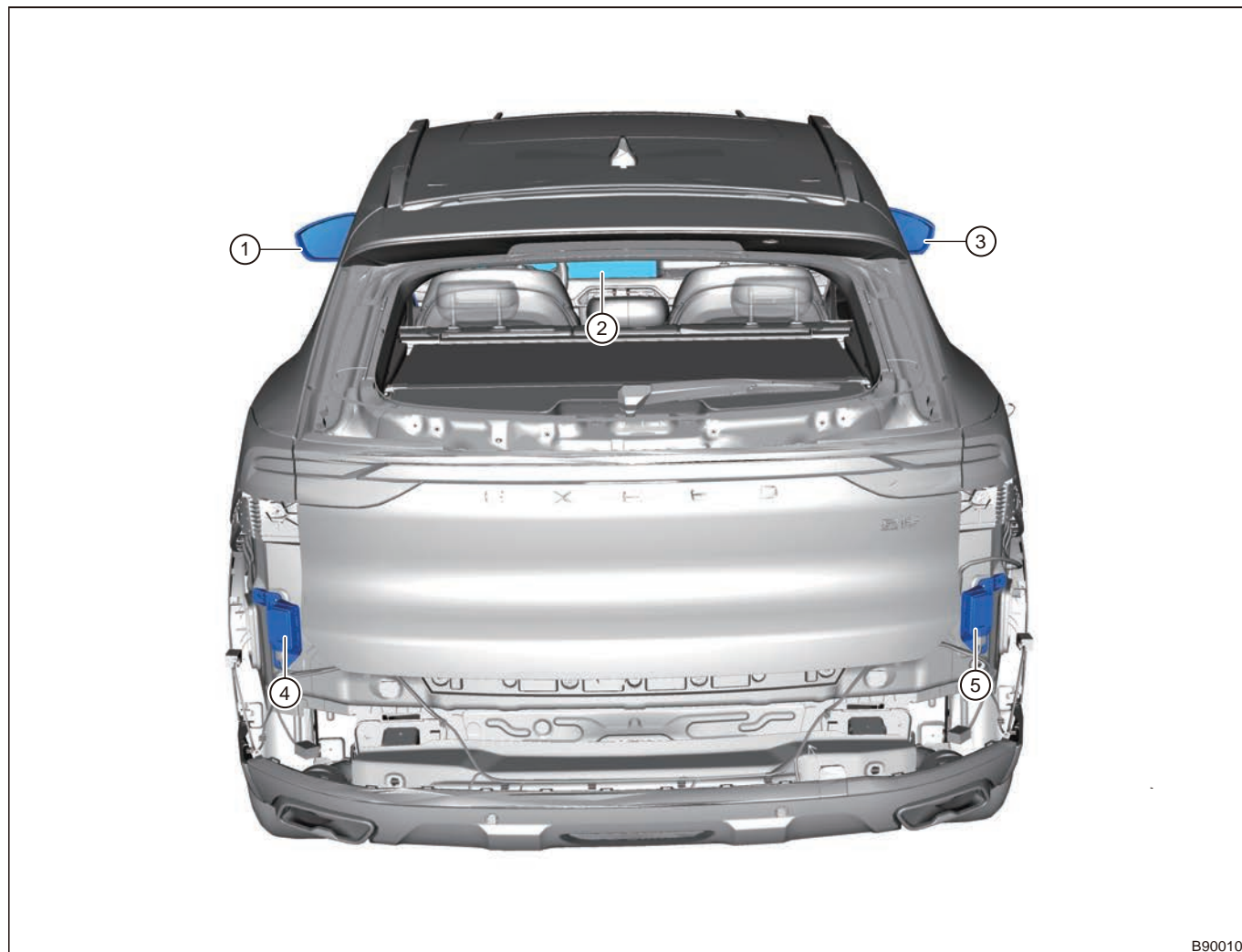
Detection target: Car, truck, motorcycle, bicycle. Because the reflection cross-sectional areas of motorcycle and bicycle are relatively small, the detection distance will be shorter than that of car and truck. The blind spot detection system does not alarm for stationary objects, and the minimum detection speed is 5 km/h. The blind spot detection function does not give an alarm to the stationary target in the alarm area. Such as stopped vehicles, vegetation, guardrails, tunnels, etc.

■ System Alert Level

When the alarm conditions are met, the blind spot detection system prompts the alarm through visual and sound methods. The alarm level is divided into two levels:

- Level 1, the measured target meets the alarm conditions, the first level alarm, the warning light remains ON to reminding the driver to drive carefully.
- Level 2, the measured target meets the alarm conditions, the driver turns on the corresponding side turn signal light, the second level alarm, to remind the driver of the risk of lane change with flashing and warning sound.

1.2 Description



B90010

1	Left LED Light	2	Hyperscreen
3	Right LED Light	4	Master Blind Spot Detection Module
5	Sub Blind Spot Detection Module		

1.3 System Principle

The control module is integrated inside the radar sensor. The radar communicates with the vehicle network through CAN bus. The communication between left radar sensor and right radar sensor is carried out through private CAN. BSDL receives vehicle speed signal, ignition switch status signal, turn signal light switch, yaw rate sensor data, steering wheel position signal, background light status, light intensity, wheel speed signal (- four wheels), gear position signal through CAN, and transmit the warning information to instrument cluster through CAN network. BSDR receives vehicle speed signal, ignition switch status signal, turn signal light switch, yaw rate sensor data, steering wheel position signal, background light status, light intensity, wheel speed signal (four wheels), gear position signal through CAN, and transmit the warning information and warning stop information to instrument cluster through CAN network.

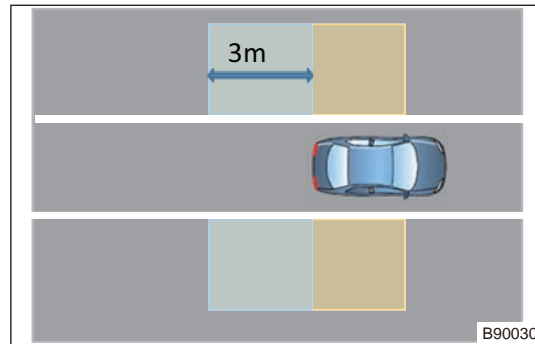
1.4 System Function

Blind spot radar needs to implement the following functions: Blind Spot Detection (BSD), Lane Change Assist (LCA), Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA), Door Opening Warning (DOW), Close Vehicle Warning (CVW) when moving forward, Rear Collision Warning (RCW) when reversing. Lane change assist function, blind spot

detection function, front door opening warning function, reversing lateral warning function, and reversing rear collision warning function share warning lights and buzzers. The rear door opening warning function enables the LED lights on rear door, and the rear collision warning uses the turn signal light to alert target vehicle driver when moving forward.

■ Blind Spot Detection (BSD)

Blind spot detection function: If there is a moving vehicle in the driver's blind spot area, the system will provide warning information. The blind spot detection function is designed to assist driver to drive safely, which does not belong to vehicle driving safety system. Therefore, it only used to supplement the deficiencies of inside and outside rear view mirrors, not to replace the inside and outside rear view mirrors. The blind spot detection function is auxiliary function and cannot replace the driver's control.



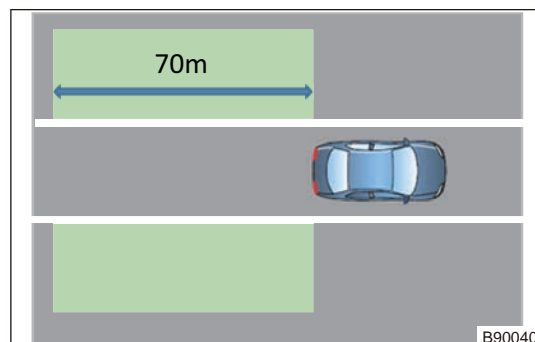
- Blind spot detection function is activated: the vehicle is activated in forward gear or neutral gear, and the vehicle speed is higher than or equal to 5 km/h.

The blind spot detection areas are as follows:

- When the vehicle overtakes the target vehicle, the target vehicle will enter from the front of alarm area, and there will be an alarm suppression time of 2 seconds, that is, the target vehicle stays in the alarm area monitored by the blind spot for more than 2 seconds, and the driver does not turn on the turn signal light, then the corresponding side warning light is come on; if the driver turns on the turn signal light at this time, the corresponding side warning light flashes.
- When the target vehicle overtaking this vehicle, the target vehicle will enter from behind of the warning area. When the vehicle enters the warning area, and the driver does not turn on the turn signal light, the corresponding side warning light will come on; if the driver turns on the turn signal light at this time, the corresponding side warning light will flash and sound. (At this time, it is no relationship with relative speed)

■ Lane Change Assist (LCA)

Lane change assist function: When the rear vehicle is approaching quickly from the adjacent lane, according to the collision time, the radar will alert the dangerous vehicle in blind spot. The maximum alarm distance can up to 70 m. Lane change assist is designed to supplement the blind spots that cannot be eliminated by the vehicle inside and outside rear view mirrors (but cannot replace the rear view mirrors). It uses two radars at the rear of vehicle to detect the sides back and sides of the vehicle at all times. Evaluate the lane change situation when the vehicle wants to change lanes, and give early warning of possible collisions when there are moving vehicles in the blind spot area of the driver and approaching the vehicle quickly, so as to ensure the safety of the driver when changing lanes and greatly reduce traffic accidents.



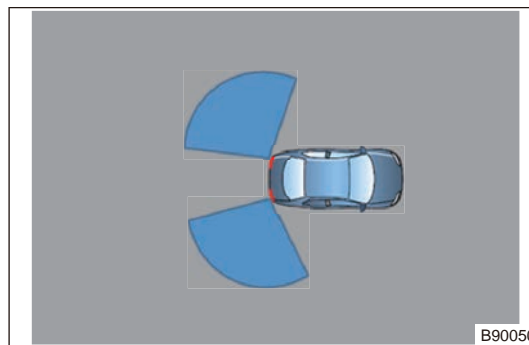
- Lane change assist function is activated: the vehicle is activated in forward gear or neutral gear, and the vehicle speed is higher than or equal to 5 km/h.

The detection area of lane change assist is as follows:

- The lane change assist alarm evaluation algorithm is: An alarm will be sound when the Time to Collision (TTC) between the rear fast approaching vehicle and this vehicle is less than the alarm threshold of 3.5s. The driver does not turn on the turn signal light, the corresponding side warning light will come on; if the driver turns on the turn signal light at this time, the corresponding side warning light will flash and sound.
- The lane change assist area is not fixed, but changes with the shape of the road. The road shape can be calculated using yaw rate, steering wheel angle and vehicle speed. In order to ensure the function of the system, the turning radius of the road is greater than 500 m. According to the state of the turn signal light, LCA provides two different levels of alarm, including the light remains on and flashing, as well as sound alarm.

■ Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

Reversing assist function: When the driver is reversing from parking area, especially in a very narrow and crowded parking area, because the sights on both sides of the vehicle are blocked by nearby vehicles, the driver cannot observe whether there are oncoming vehicles on both sides of the rear of the vehicle. An alarm is provided to the driver if a moving vehicle running behind crosses the route of the vehicle. This function is effective when reversing in a crowded area and the driver's view is blocked by buildings, vegetation or other parked vehicles. The reversing assist system is a comfort system that reminds the driver when the driver's reversing view is affected.



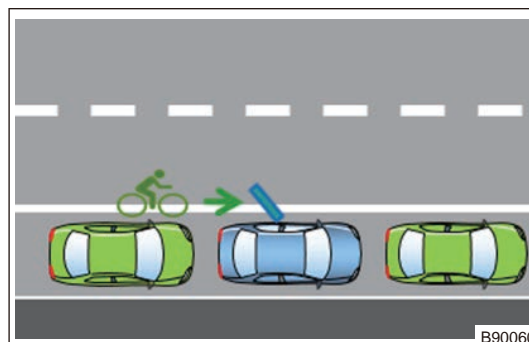
- Reversing assist function is activated: The vehicle is in reverse gear and the reverse speed is lower than 10 km/h.

The detection area of reversing assist is as follows:

- When the vehicle is reversing, an alarm will be sound when there is a possibility of collision between this vehicle and the vehicle in detection area and the Time to Collision (TTC) is less than the alarm threshold of 2 seconds. The corresponding side warning light flashes.

■ Door Opening Warning (DOW)

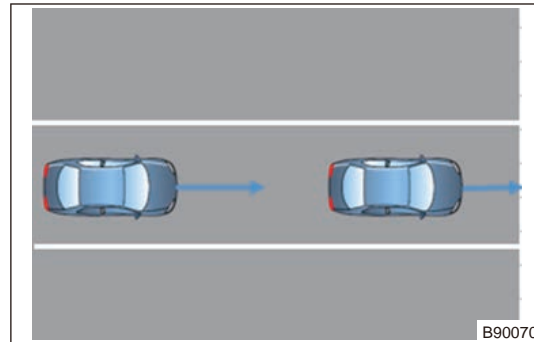
The door opening warning function detects the approaching vehicles and bicycles in the rear of the adjacent lanes through sensors, and gives an alarm when there is a risk of the door opening, so as to prompt the driver not to open the door at this time.



- Function activation condition: Any gear, vehicle speed is between 0 and 3 km/h.
- The target driving direction is toward the crash box of this vehicle (width is 1.5 m, length is 3 m). The radius of sector area is 48 meters. When the target vehicle enters the detection area, an alarm is generated when TTC is less than 3 seconds, and when driver opens the door, the alarm will be upgraded to level 2. LED flashes with sound alarm.

■ Close Vehicle Warning (CVW) When Moving Forward

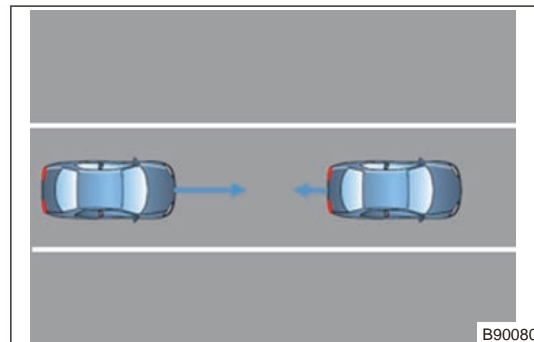
Close Vehicle Warning (CVW) when moving forward function: When this vehicle is moving forward or stationary in the lane. The target vehicle quickly approaches this vehicle in the same lane. At this time, the target vehicle is at risk of collision with this vehicle. The target vehicle will be warned by flashing turn signal light.



- Activation condition: When the vehicle is in forward gear or neutral gear, the vehicle speed is higher than or equal to 0 km/h, then CVW function will be activated.
- Warning condition: When the driving direction of target vehicle is towards this vehicle, and the vehicle speed is lower than 30 km/h, TTC is lower than the relative speed $\times 30/2.4s$, this vehicle will flash the turn signal light to warn the target vehicle, when the speed of this vehicle is higher than 30 km/h, TTC is lower than 2.4 seconds, the vehicle will flash the turn signal light to warn the target vehicle.

■ Rear Collision Warning (RCW) When Reversing

Rear collision warning function when reversing: When this vehicle is reversing or stationary in the lane. The target vehicle quickly approaches this vehicle in the same lane. At this time, the target vehicle is at risk of collision with this vehicle. Flashing LED lights and sound alarm to warn the driver to stop reversing or driving forward instead.



- Activation condition: When this vehicle is in reverse gear, and vehicle speed is lower than 8 km/h, the RCW function is activated.
- Warning condition: When the target vehicle is driving towards this vehicle and the relative speed is 5~63 km/h, and when the pre-collision time between the target vehicle and this vehicle is less than 2.2 seconds or the target vehicle enters the mandatory alarm area (8.5 m behind the vehicle).

1.5 Component Operation Description

■ Blind Spot Detection Radar (24G Millimeter Wave Radar Sensor)

The blind spot detection module uses the principle of ultrasonic reflection to detect. It sends out ultrasonic and receive back wave from obstacle, controller calculates obstacle position and distance according to ultrasonic distance measuring principle, and sends data to display terminal to remind.

■ Blind Spot Detection Module Cover Plate

It absorbs the clutter signal reflected from multipath.

■ Blind Spot Detection Module Bracket

It is used to install the sensor and must meet the installation specifications.

■ Warning Light

It is used to prompt the driver that the warning information of blind spots.

2 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

2.1 Problem Symptoms Table

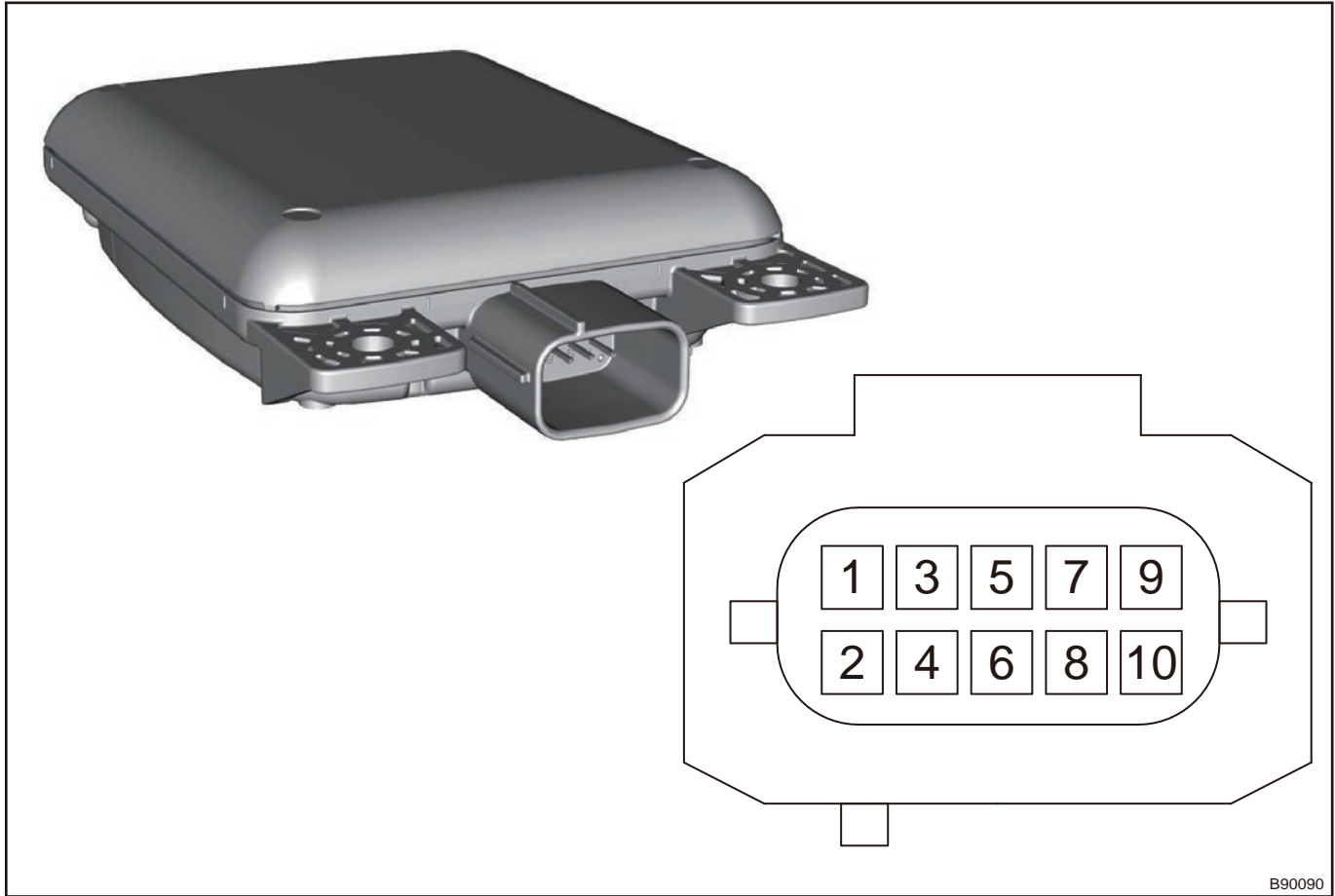
Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Possible Cause
Blind spot detection does not operate	Add-on components leads to shielding or system interference
	Add-on components leads to shielding or system interference, or blind spot detection function off
	Module power supply ground fails
	Module itself fails
Blind spot detection abnormal	System voltage is abnormal
	Module installation location is improper
	Module fails
LED warning indicator abnormal	Rear view mirror is damaged
	Connection wiring is abnormal
	Module fails

2.2 Blind Spot Detection Module Terminal Definition

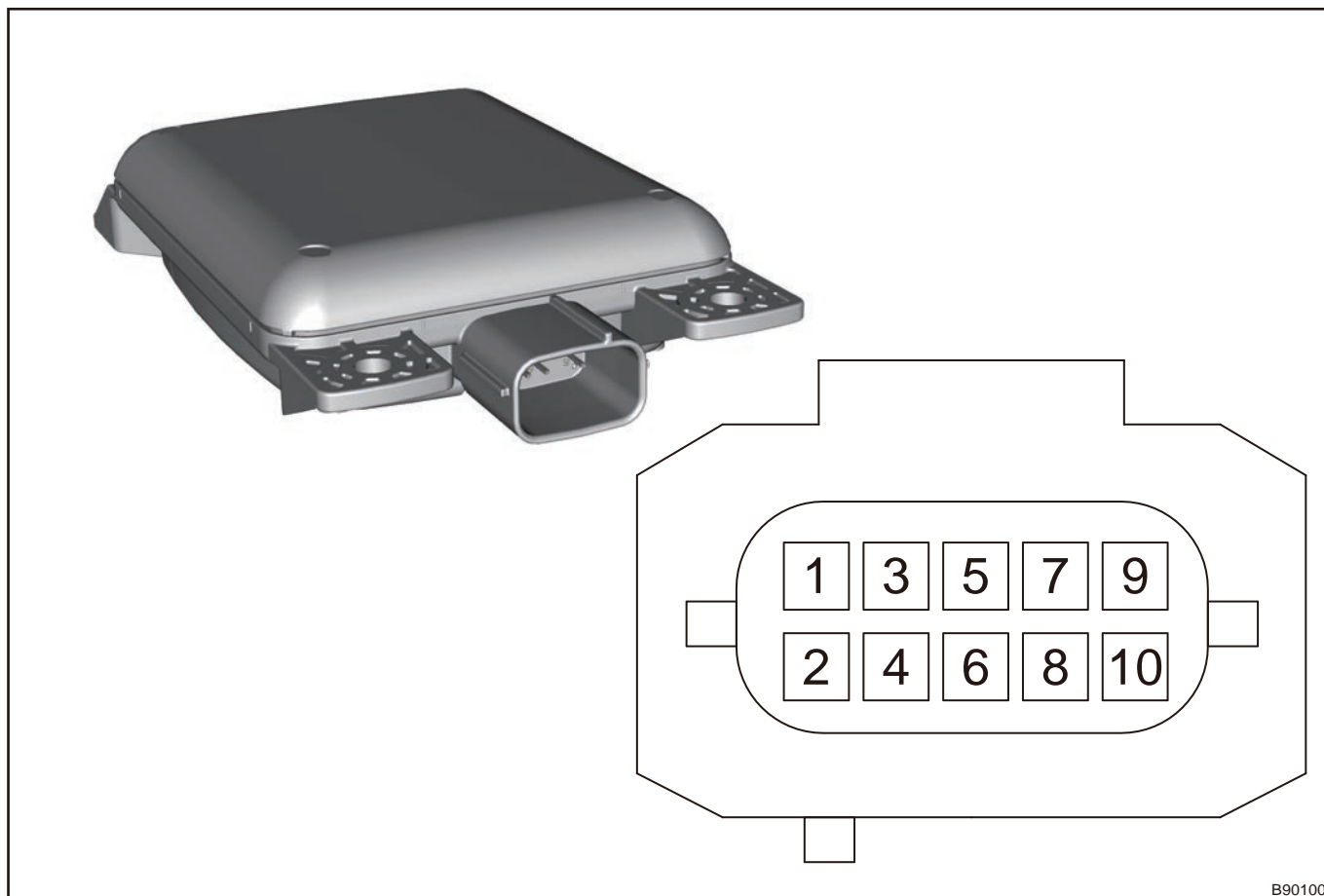
■ Left Blind Spot Detection Module Terminal Definition



B90090

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
1	\	6	\
2	\	7	CCAN-H
3	CCAN-L	8	HMI driver
4	Special CAN-H	9	Ground
5	Power supply	10	Special CAN-L

Right Blind Spot Detection Module Terminal Definition



B90100

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
1	\	6	\
2	\	7	CAN-H
3	CAN-L	8	HMI driver
4	Special CAN-H	9	Ground
5	Power supply	10	Special CAN-L

2.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- (3) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- (4) Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the blind spot detection system.
- (5) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK and wait for a few seconds.
- (6) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select read DTC.
- (7) If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction. Go to inspection procedure - Step 1.
- (8) If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

2.4 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.

- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

2.5 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

2.6 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

2.7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B124011	Power Supply Voltage Out Of Range
B124015	Warning LED Open Circuit / Short to Battery
B12411C	Power Supply Voltage Out Of Range
B124243	Non Volatile Memory Failure (EEPROM Error)
B124244	Data Integrity Fault in Volatile Memory (RAM)
B124245	Program Memory Failure (Code Flash Error)
B124246	Local Configuration Parameters (LCP) Invalid

DTC	DTC Definition
B124257	Incompatible Software Component
B124296	BSD Internal Failure
B124378	BSD Misalignment Error
B124555	Car Configuration Not Done
B124397	BSD Blockage
B1244F0	Other BSD Defected
U124188	Private CAN Bus off

2.8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B124243	Non Volatile Memory Failure (EEPROM Error)
DTC	B124244	Data Integrity Fault in Volatile Memory (RAM)
DTC	B124245	Program Memory Failure (Code Flash Error)
DTC	B124246	Local Configuration Parameters (LCP) Invalid
DTC	B124257	Incompatible Software Component
DTC	B124296	BSD Internal Failure
DTC	B124378	BSD Misalignment Error
DTC	B124397	BSD Blockage
DTC	B1244F0	Other BSD Defected

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
B124243	Non Volatile Memory Failure (EEPROM Error)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> There are sand or foreign objects on the inner and outer surfaces of the rear bumper. Blind spot detection module
B124244	Data Integrity Fault in Volatile Memory (RAM)	
B124245	Program Memory Failure (- Code Flash Error)	
B124246	Local Configuration Parameters (LCP) Invalid	
B124257	Incompatible Software Component	
B124296	BSD Internal Failure	
B124378	BSD Misalignment Error	
B124397	BSD Blockage	
B1244F0	Other BSD Defected	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.

- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 | Check for DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Using diagnostic tester, clear DTCs and read blind spot detection control module system DTCs again.
- (b) Check if DTCs occur again.

OK → **System is normal**

NG

2 | Check if the inner and outer surfaces of the rear bumper have mud and sand or foreign objects

- (a) Check if the surface of the rear bumper radar and inner and outer of rear bumper have mud and sand or foreign objects.

NG → **Clean the mud and sand or foreign objects**

OK

3 | Check if the vehicle blind spot detection control function is normal

OK → **Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again**

NG → **Replace blind spot detection module**

DTC	B12411C	Power Supply Voltage Out Of Range
------------	----------------	--

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
B12411C	Power Supply Voltage Out Of Range	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Module assembly

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 | Reconfirm DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in blind spot detection system.

OK

System is normal

NG

Replace module assembly

DTC	B124011	Warning LED Short to Ground
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
B124011	Warning LED Short to Ground	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness is damaged • Rear view mirror lens

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

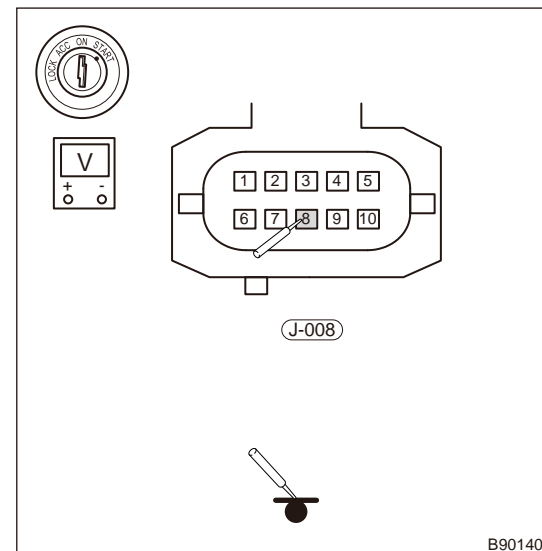
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Check module output

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use a digital multimeter to check the voltage of left blind spot detection module connector J-008 (8) to ground, and it should not be lower than 1 V.



B90140

OK

Exchange the warning LED test. (rear view mirror lens)

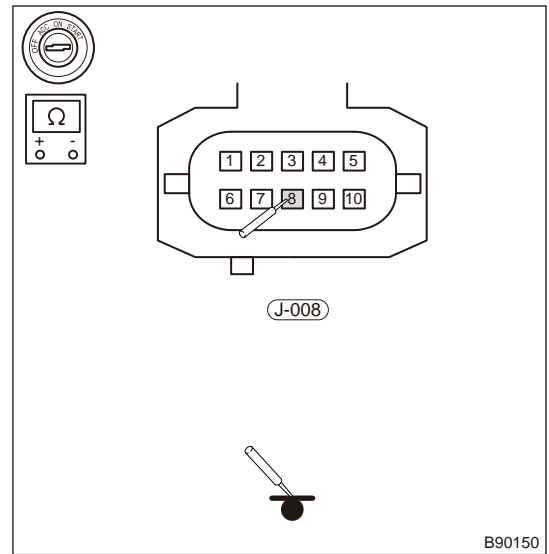
NG

2

Check the connection line

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect left blind spot detection module connector J-008 and left outside rear view mirror connector F-003.
- (c) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure the resistance value of J-008 (8) to ground.

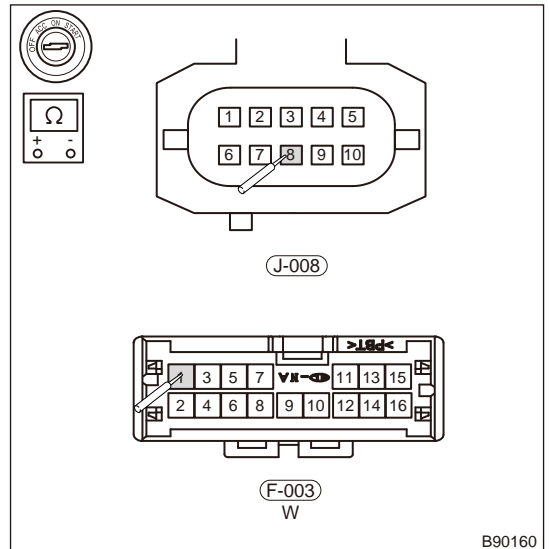
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-008 (8) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch OFF	∞



B90150

- (d) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure the resistance value between cables J-008 (8) and F-003 (1).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-008(8) - F-003(1)	ENGINE START STOP switch OFF	$\leq 1 \Omega$



B90160

NG	Repair or replace faulty wire harness
OK	Replace warning LED. (rear view mirror lens)

DTC	B124015	Warning LED Open Circuit / Short to Battery
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
B124015	Warning LED Open Circuit / Short to Battery	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness is damaged • Rear view mirror lens

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

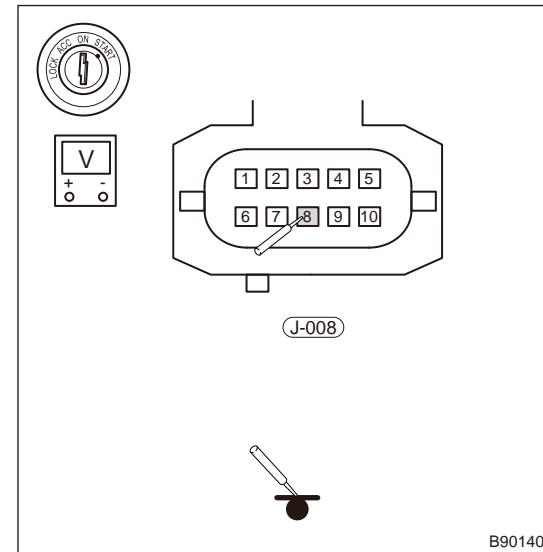
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check module output
----------	----------------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

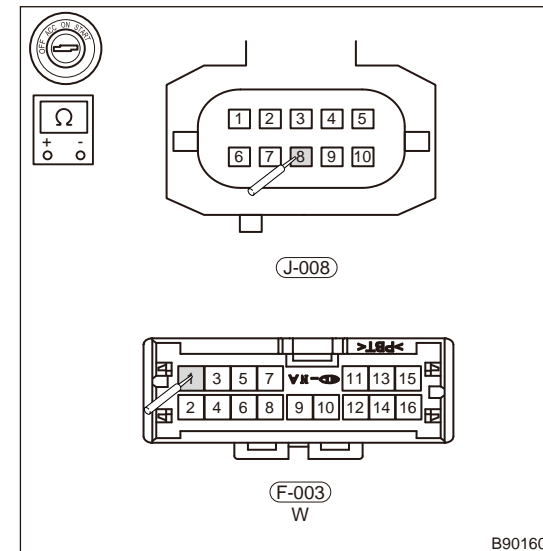
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Disconnect left blind spot detection module connector J-008 and left outside rear view mirror connector F-003.
- (c) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, measure the voltage value of J-008 (8) to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-008 (8) - Body ground	ON	0V



- (d) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure the resistance value between cables J-008 (8) and F-003 (1).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-008(8) - F-003(1)	OFF	$\leq 1 \Omega$



- | | |
|-----------|---|
| OK | Replace warning LED (rear view mirror lens). |
| NG | Handle and repair related wire harness. |

DTC	B124555	Car Configuration Not Done
------------	----------------	-----------------------------------

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
B124555	Car Configuration Not Done	• Car Configuration Not Done

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Reconfiguration
----------	------------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

(a) Use the diagnostic tester to perform module configuration.

OK	Perform running test after clearing DTCs
-----------	---

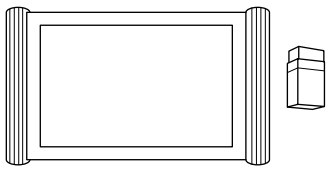
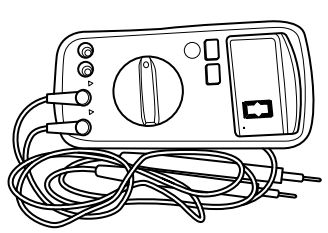
DTC	U124188	Private CAN Bus off
------------	----------------	----------------------------

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Malfunction Reason
U124188	Private CAN Bus off	/

1	Refer to “CAN COMMUNICATION” for troubleshooting
----------	---

3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

3.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 RCH0001006
Digital Multimeter	 RCH000206

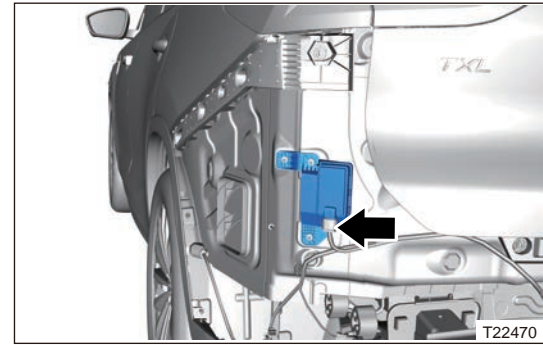
3.2 Blind Spot Detection Module

■ Removal

Warning
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing blind spot detection module. • Operate carefully to prevent damage to blind spot detection module, when removing blind spot detection module.

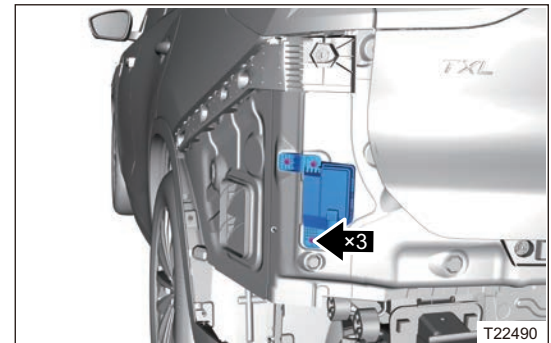
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable for more than 1 minute

- (3) Remove the rear bumper assembly
- (4) Disconnect the left blind spot detection radar module connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing screws from left blind spot detection radar module and remove the left blind spot detection radar module assembly.

Tightening torque
 $2 \pm 0.5 \text{ N m}$



■ Installation

Caution

- Install connector in place when installing blind spot detection module.
- Check blind spot detection module system for proper operation after installing blind spot detection module.
- When sheet metal paint operation is performed on the rear bumper, there should not be a sudden change in the thickness of rear bumper. Dielectric constant of paint < 100: Thickness of paint is less than 15um, weight of metal component is about 7%) dielectric constant of paint < 50 (Thickness of paint is less than 45um)

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

.1 Precaution

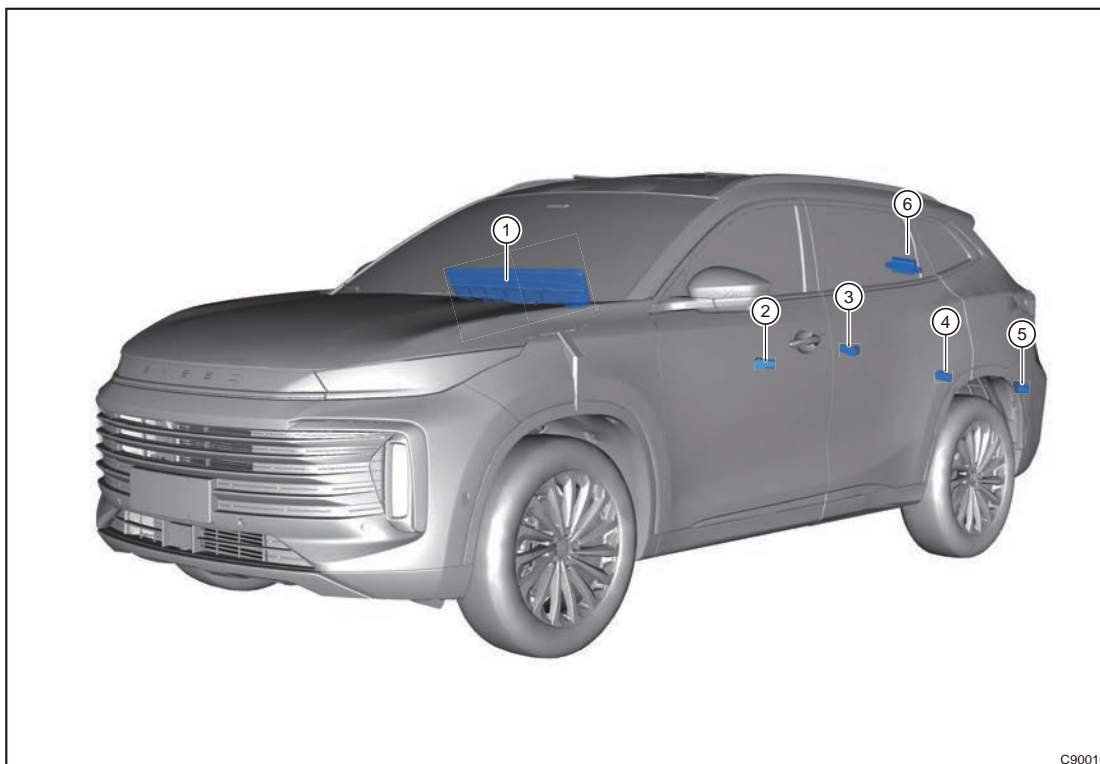
In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing reversing radar sensors.
- (2) Operate carefully to avoid damaging reversing radar sensors, when removing reversing radar sensors.
- (3) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front radar sensor.
- (4) Operate carefully to avoid damaging reversing radar sensor, when removing front radar sensor.
- (5) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear camera assembly.
- (6) Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear camera assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (7) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front camera assembly.
- (8) Appropriate force should be applied when removing front camera assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (9) As side camera is installed inside the outside rear view mirror assembly, it must be replaced together with outside rear view mirror assembly when damaged.
- (10) Install connector in place and tighten fixing nuts to the specified torque, when installing the outside rear view mirror assembly.
- (11) Make sure the outside rear view mirror assembly can move smoothly, flexibly and reliably after installing.
- (12) After installing outside rear view mirror assembly, it is necessary to perform panoramic image calibration.
- (13) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing reversing radar control module assembly.
- (14) Appropriate force should be applied when removing reversing radar control module assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (15) Tighten fixing bolts to the specified torque, when installing reversing radar control module assembly.
- (16) Install connector in place when installing reversing radar control module assembly.
- (17) Check reversing radar system for proper operation, after installing reversing radar control module assembly.
- (18) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing panoramic control system module assembly.
- (19) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing panoramic control system module assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (20) Tighten fixing bolts to the specified torque, when installing panoramic control system module assembly.
- (21) Install connector in place when installing panoramic control system module assembly.
- (22) Check reversing radar system for proper operation, after installing panoramic control system module assembly.

1 System Overview

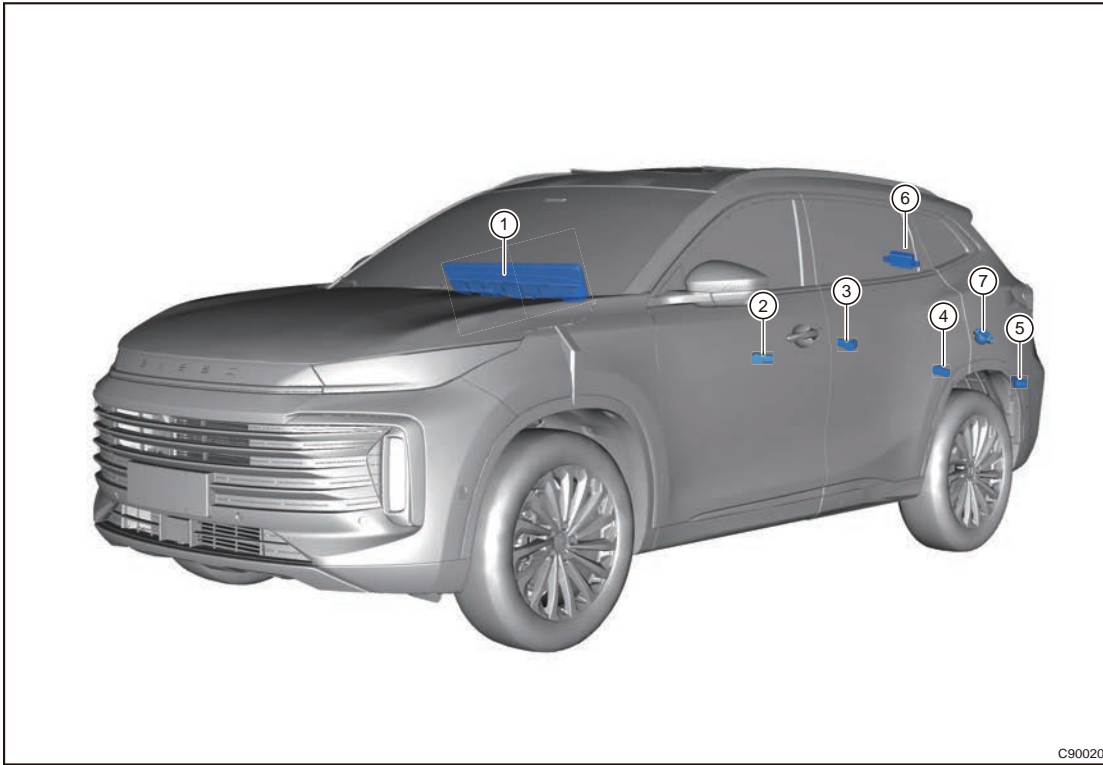
1.1 System Components Diagram

■ REVERSE RADAR SYSTEM



1	Hyperscreen	2	Rear Right Radar Sensor
3	Rear Right Center Radar Sensor	4	Rear Left Center Radar Sensor
5	Rear Left Radar Sensor	6	Reversing Radar Module

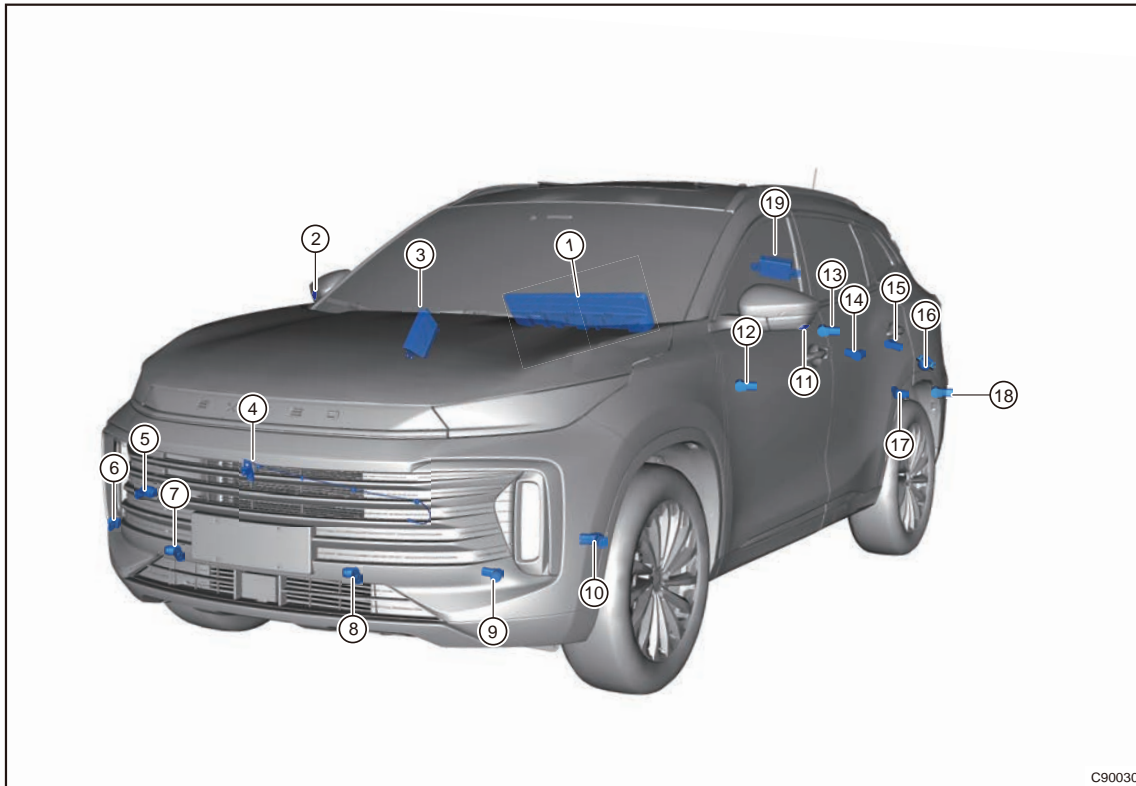
■ Dynamic Track HD Visual Parking Assist System



C90020

1	Hyperscreen	2	Rear Right Radar Sensor
3	Rear Right Center Radar Sensor	4	Rear Left Center Radar Sensor
5	Rear Left Radar Sensor	6	Reversing Radar Module
7	Rear Camera Assembly		

■ 360 Panoramic View Monitor System



1	Hyperscreen	2	Right Camera Assembly
3	Panoramic Control System Module (AVM)	4	Front Camera Assembly
5	Front Right Side Radar Sensor	6	Front Right Center Radar Sensor
7	Front Center Radar Sensor	8	Front Center Radar Sensor
9	Front Left Center Radar Sensor	10	Front Left Side Radar Sensor
11	Left Camera Assembly	12	Rear Right Side Radar Sensor
13	Rear Right Center Radar Sensor	14	Rear Center Radar Sensor
15	Rear Center Radar Sensor	16	Rear Camera Assembly
17	Rear Left Center Radar Sensor	18	Rear Left Side Radar Sensor
19	Reversing Radar Module		

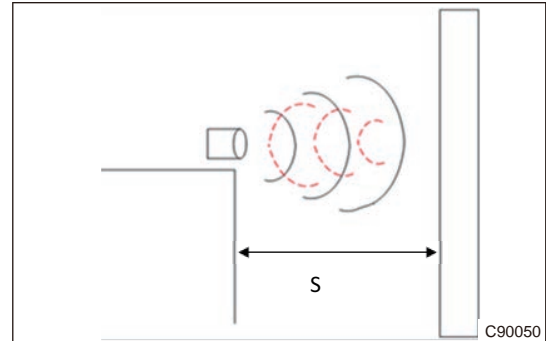
1.2 REVERSE RADAR SYSTEM

■ System Schematic Diagram

Parking radar auxiliary system uses digital sensors and ultrasonic technology to measure distance, which can remind the driver of the distance between the rear of vehicle and other objects, and give sound prompts and image display to reduce personnel injury or vehicle damage caused by reversing.

■ Operating Principle

Parking radar system uses ultrasonic reflection principle to detect distance. After parking radar sensors send out ultrasonic and receive back wave from obstacle, control module calculates obstacle distance ($S = t \times 340 \div 2$) according to ultrasonic distance measuring principle, and sends data to display terminal to display and alarm.



■ System Composition

Reversing radar system consists of instrument cluster, 1 radar control module and 4 sensors (digital ultrasonic sensors) or 8 sensors. Sensors adopt separated structure. Sensor bodies are same, but installation angles are different. Parts related to system consist of ENGINE START STOP switch, reverse switch, instrument cluster or DVD, PAS switch and vehicle speed (8 sensors system). ENGINE START STOP switch provides operating power for system; Reverse switch provides operation activation signal for system; Instrument cluster or DVD is end terminal of the system and provides sound alarm prompt and distance display function for driver. The PAS switch is only related with the 8 sensors system.

■ Reversing Radar Normal Alarm Display

When ENGINE START STOP switch is turned on, shift lever is moved to R and vehicle is reversing at a speed below 8 km/h, reversing radar is activated. The corresponding measured message will be displayed on multi-information display and alarms with buzzer in instrument cluster. The response way of reversing radar system is buzzer sounding. The table below shows the correspondence between buzzer response frequency and actual obstacle distance:

Alarm Type	1st Section	2nd Section	3rd Section	4th Section	5th Section
Displayed Area	Safe area	Pre-warning area	Amble area	Park area	Park area
Alarm Distance Range (cm)	> 150	95 - 150	65 - 90	40 - 60	≤ 35
Buzzer Sound Frequency	No sound (OFF)	1Hz (ON 500 ms / OFF 500 ms)	2Hz (ON 250ms / OFF 250 ms)	4Hz (ON 125 ms / OFF 125 ms)	Continuous sound

Hint

- When ignition switch is ON and shift lever is in R, small vehicle screen is displayed on instrument cluster. If no obstacle information is detected (obstacle distance is more than 150 cm), only small vehicle is displayed on instrument cluster, while arc is not displayed.
- If multiple sensors have detected an obstacle, instrument cluster will display distances between each sensor and obstacle, sound alarm will be sound from nearest obstacle, and processed based on signal from radar.

1.3 Dynamic Track HD Visual Parking Assist System

■ Operation

Consists of: Instrument cluster, navigation, camera, 4 rear radar sensors and radar module. Reversing view monitor system consists of radar sensor (sensor), camera, control module and display alarm device etc. After starting vehicle, reversing radar system functions when shifting to reverse gear. When the radars detects an

obstacle, multi-information display in instrument cluster will display distance information and buzzer sounds. Navigation system displays color image behind vehicle in real time and provides static or dynamic guidelines for driver reference. By this way, the system can help driver to eliminate blind areas and blurred vision, improving driving safety.

■ Reversing View Display

Caution

In the panoramic view monitor system, rear camera of high configuration model is connected to panoramic view monitor system controller, and rear camera of medium configuration model is connected to navigation system.

(1) Description

- High and medium configuration models are fitted with reversing camera. The camera captures the views behind the vehicle which will be presented to driver by navigation system. Also, navigation system provides static guidelines or dynamic guidelines that move as turning of steering wheel so as to estimate the vehicle's reversing track lines.

(2) Dynamic back guidelines and local view of rear area

- After entering surrounding + rear view screen by shifting to reverse gear, static/dynamic back guidelines and local view of rear area will be displayed on rear view image.

(3) Definition of static back guidelines

- Red guidelines indicate about 0.5 m away from bumper;
- Yellow guidelines indicate about 1 m away from bumper;
- The closer green guidelines indicate about 2 m away from bumper;
- The far green guidelines indicate about 3 m away from bumper.

(4) Dynamic track lines

- Dynamic track lines are used for prejudging the vehicle's traveling trace, which varies as the wheel rotation.

1.4 360 Panoramic View Monitor System

■ Function

Composition: Panoramic view monitor system consists of four HD (100W) cameras (front camera, rear camera, left camera and right camera), controller, AVM system switch, LVDS video transmission line and connecting wire harness. Controller and head unit are connected by shielded wire. Function description: Panoramic view monitor system consists of a controller, four ultra wide angle cameras and LVDS video transmission lines, etc. It captures images from four directions (front, rear, left and right) and splices them into an aerial view around the vehicle using image processing algorithms, then displays it on the navigation display. Panoramic view monitor system provides surrounding view + single side view, three-dimensional surrounding view roaming, three-dimensional left/right side view, and dynamic/static reversing track. Side camera is integrated into the outside rear view mirror assembly. Panoramic control system module is located inside the glove box on front passenger side and shares a bracket with central gateway; front camera is located on the middle grille of front bumper and installed on the front bumper; rear camera is located under the back door and installed on the back door open switch assembly.

Function	Description
Single side and birds-eye view	Single side view of front, rear, left and right, and splicing view. Single side view can be switched
3D view and birds-eye view	Click on the birds-eye view to switch the corresponding 3D view, and the 3D view can be switched to any viewpoint by sliding
Wide-angle view	Combine the front view/rear view into a triplet wide-angle view through distortion correction
Panoramic startup animation	When AVM is starting, surround the vehicle all around
Turn signal light activating panoramic	When the turn signal light switch is turned on, the 3D view of rear left or rear right side of vehicle is displayed

Function	Description
Steering wheel steering angle activating panoramic	When steering wheel angle is higher than 180°, the 3D view of rear left or rear right side of vehicle is displayed
Enlarging view	Click on the enlarging view button to display the front/rear enlarged view. When the auto enlarge setting option is turned on, it will receive the ultrasonic radar information, and automatically switch to the front/rear enlarged view when it is less than 30 cm
Virtual door opening view	Receive door signal, engine hood signal and sliding roof signal, and display the corresponding view on the birds-eye view and 3D view when the four doors, engine hood, back door and sliding roof are opened
Vehicle guideline	Click on to select the opening and closing of the vehicle guideline
Visual radar	Ultrasonic radar transmits the distance information to the panoramic controller, and displays the distance or alarm prompt information on the panoramic screen
License plate number setting	Receive the license plate number sent by audio head unit and display it in 3D vehicle icon
3D view switch button	Click the button around the vehicle to switch the corresponding view of 3D view
Front wheel steering	Receive the steering wheel angle signal and accurately display the steering angle of front wheels in 3D view
Real-time wheel speed	Receive the wheel speed signal and accurately display the wheel speed in 3D view
Real-time turn signal light display	Real-time display of turn signal light information when switch the turn signal light switch
RCTA warning information	Integrate BSD radar information, and display warning information in the view when RCTA alarms
Obstacles activating panoramic	Activate the panoramic view monitor after receiving the parking radar information

■ System activation and exiting mode

Caution

- Panoramic view monitor system has professionally calibrated before leaving factory. Any removal and installation behaviors without permission that cause changes in installation position and angle of camera may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- Panoramic view monitor system functions to provide driving assist, however, object in image does not indicate the actual size and distance from it. There is a slight delay and blind spot in image relative to the actual condition, so this function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. During on, off and use of the function, driver should pay attention to the surroundings to ensure safe driving.
- Never use panoramic view monitor when outside rear view mirrors are folded. Make sure to close back door securely when operating vehicle using panoramic view monitor.
- Distance from object seen from panoramic view monitor is different from the actual distance.
- Cameras are installed on front grille, outside rear view mirrors and above the rear license plate. Do not put anything on the camera.
- Do not spray water around the camera when washing vehicle with high pressure water. Otherwise, water drop may enter camera and condense on the lens, causing malfunction, fire or electric shock.
- Do not tap the cameras. They are precision instruments. Failure to do so may cause malfunction or damage, leading to fire or electric shock.

Hint

- Be careful not to scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the surface of camera.
- Use the displayed route and aerial view as reference. Displayed route and aerial view are greatly affected by numbers of passenger in vehicle, fuel amount, vehicle location, road surface condition and road surface grade.

Activation Condition		System Activation	Exit Condition	
Preconditions	Trigger Conditions		Corresponding Exit Condition	Priority Exit Condition
Vehicle speed < 20 km/h	Shift to R	R is activated	Exit R position, the duration is longer than 15 seconds, and there is no effective operation within the duration	Vehicle speed > 30 km/h
	AVM switch is pressed	AVM switch is activated	Press AVM switch again	
			Operate other high priority switches	
	Turn on the turn signal light	Turn signal light is activated	Turn off the turn signal light and there is no effective operation within 500 ms	
Operate other high priority switches				
	Steering wheel angle > 190°	Steering wheel angle is activated	Steering wheel angle is less than 180° and the duration is longer than 1 seconds, and there is no effective	

Activation Condition		System Activation	Exit Condition	
Preconditions	Trigger Conditions		Corresponding Exit Condition	Priority Exit Condition
			operation within the duration time	
			Operate other high priority switches	
D	Parking radar obstacle distance signal is received	Obstacles is activated	Exit after 15 seconds after obstacle-free distance information	Press the AVM switch, operate other high-priority switches, N or P, press the exit button
			N or P	
Vehicle speed = 0KM/h, remote start mode	Remote AVM request to turn on	Remote AVM is activated	Remote AVM request to turn off	Remote start mode is exited

1.5 Automatic Parking Assist System (APA)

■ System Principle

The Automatic Parking Assist System (APA) can assist the driver to park the vehicle in or out of the parking space identified by the system. The system can help the driver search and confirm the target parking space. The driver can also choose a parking space through the central control display. After the target parking space is confirmed, the system will realize the automatic parking function under the driver's supervision. The types of parking spaces supported by the system include parallel parking space, vertical parking space, inclined parking spaces, parallel boundary parking space and vertical boundary parking space. When the vehicle moving out from parallel boundary parking space, the driver can use the automatic moving out function. Under the supervision of the driver, the system will control the vehicle to travel to a position that is easy to move out to complete the moving out assistance.

■ Automatic Parking In

Operation Step

- (1) Keep the vehicle driving normally.
- (2) When the vehicle speed is lower than 25 km/h, and the lateral distance between driving path and available parking space is about 0.5 m-1.9 m, press the central control APA switch to turn on the automatic parking function.
- (3) User controls the vehicle to keep driving. The vehicle searches for the surrounding parking spaces while driving. The system searches for the right parking space by default. The left turn signal light can be turned on to search for the left parking space. Each time a parking space is found, the central control display will display the parking information at the corresponding position, then depress the brake pedal to brake the vehicle. If there are multiple alternative parking spaces, you can click on the parking space through the central control display.
- (4) After confirming the parking space to be parked, press the central control APA switch and release the brake pedal to start parking. Do not touch the steering wheel and shift lever during parking, pay close attention to the surrounding environment, and be ready to brake the vehicle at any time.
- (5) After the vehicle is parked in the target parking space, the system will prompt the user the parking is finished, and the system will automatically switch the gear into P position and apply the park brake to complete the automatic parking.

■ Self-selected Parking Space Parking In

Operation Step

- (1) Brake the driving vehicle to stop and depress the brake pedal, press the central control APA switch, and click the self-selected parking spaces. The APA system provides vertical parking spaces, horizontal parking spaces, and oblique parking spaces for selection.
- (2) After clicking the parking space type, you can fine tune the target parking space posture through the large screen interface of the central control and click OK button.

- (3) After confirming the parking space to be parked, follow the prompts on the display interface to start the automatic parking procedure. During automatic parking in, the driver does not need to perform vehicle operations, but needs to pay attention to the surroundings at all times. Be ready to brake vehicle at any time to ensure that the vehicle can be controlled in dangerous situations.
- (4) After the vehicle is parked in the target parking space, the system will prompt the user the parking is finished, and the system will automatically switch the gear into P position and apply the park brake to complete the automatic parking.

■ Automatic Moving Out

Operation Step

- (1) With the vehicle is stationary, start the engine and turn on the central control display.
- (2) Press the parking switch button of center console, wait for the switch indicator to come on, the central control screen displays the parking operation interface, click "Automatically Moving Out" to enter the automatic moving out interface.
- (3) The driver can confirm the moving out direction by turning the turn signal light lever.
- (4) Follow the instructions on display interface to start the automatic moving out program.
- (5) After the parking operation is completed, the system will automatically apply the electronic park brake and shift to P position. At this time the driver takes over the operation of the vehicle.

Hint

The automatic parking assist system may exit the program under the following conditions:

- The vehicle speed is higher than 25km/h when looking for a parking space;
- Associated system controller malfunction;
- Turn off the Electronic Stability System (ESP);
- During parking, driver did not fasten the seat belt as required or did not close the door, etc. within 30 seconds;
- During parking, driver actively controls the steering wheel;
- During parking, driver actively operates the shift lever;
- During parking, driver actively depress the accelerator pedal;
- During parking, driver actively turns on the Electronic Parking Brake System (EPB);
- During parking, driver presses the automatic parking assist system switch again;
- During parking, there are fixed obstacles around the vehicle, and the vehicle cannot avoid it;
- The system whose arbitration logic is higher than automatic parking assist system s activated;
- The parking trajectory exceeds the planning.

Hint

- When the vehicle speed is lower than 25 km/h, the system has the function of searching parking spaces in the background, but the longest memory distance is not more than 15 m. In order to improve the recognition rate, it is advisable to control the vehicle speed at about 10 km/h.
- When searching for a parking space, the distance between vehicle and obstacles that make up the parking space should be 0.5 m - 1.9 m. The parking space may not be found if exceeds the range.
- When searching for a parking space, try to keep the vehicle passing through the parking space in a straight line, thus to achieve a better parking space detection effect.
- When selecting a parking space, the vehicle must be kept in a stopped state.
- The rattling sound during parking is the normal operating noise of brake system, and it is no need to worry about it.
- During parking, the steering, braking, accelerator pedal and gear position are controlled by the system. The driver can operate the brake pedal to control vehicle speed or stop the vehicle. The vehicle can continue to park after release the brake pedal.
- When parking on uneven road, fluctuation may occur in parking speed, and the vehicle may bump. Try to avoid using this system on uneven road.
- The system only supports the moving out function of parallel parking spaces. Appropriate adjustment space is required in front and rear of vehicle body. The moving out function may not be available when there is abnormal change in the parking space.

Caution

- To ensure safety, before activating the automatic parking assist system, make sure that the driver's seat belt is fastened and the doors, engine hood and back door are all closed;
- The system does not consider the changes in recognized target parking space, which may cause parking failure.
- When using automatic parking assist system, the vehicle may cross or hit the curbs during steering. Therefore, the driver must ensure that the brake intervention can be performed at any time, otherwise it may cause wheel or vehicle damage.
- Target recognition is restricted by the ultrasonic measurement physical laws and camera vision algorithms. The ability to recognize person, animals and various obstacles around the vehicle is limited. In addition, external sound sources or light and shadow may cause interference to the system, resulting in missing recognition or misrecognition of system. Therefore, before confirming the target parking space, the driver is responsible for paying attention to the surroundings of vehicle and confirming the availability of target parking space.

Caution**Some cases that may not be recognized**

- Trailer towing bar and towing hook;
- Slender or wedge-shaped objects;
- Objects that are high and protruding, such as wall projections or loads;
- Objects with corners and sharp edges;
- Objects with fine surfaces or structures, such as fences;
- Barbed wire fence, fluffy snow, potholes in the ground;
- Object that above the detection range and the sensor cannot detect accurately;
- Certain objects whose surfaces do not reflect detection signals and persons wearing clothing of such materials;
- Other situations that affect target recognition.

Warning

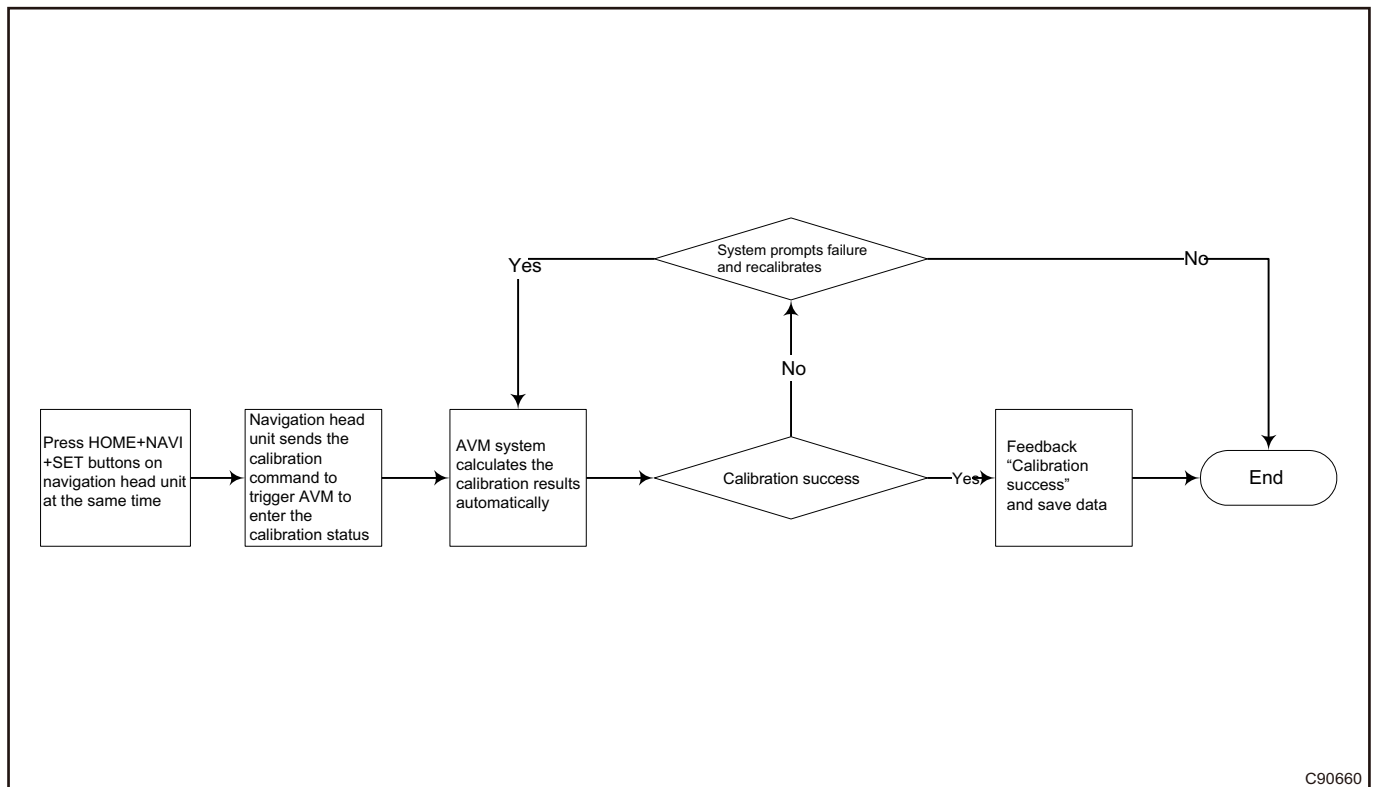
- When using the automatic parking assist system, the driver must comply with the Road Traffic Safety Law of the People's Republic of China.
- The automatic parking assist system only provides assistance to the driver, and cannot operate normally under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic or road conditions.
- When using the system, the driver has responsibility to control the vehicle, monitor the system operation and intervene when necessary to avoid danger.

Caution**The use of the system is prohibited in the following cases:**

- Severe weather such as rain, snow, heavy fog, etc.;
- There are three-wheeled or two-wheeled non-motorized vehicles, low obstacles (such as parking lines, ground locks, stones, etc.) or vehicles with no continuous physical form of the lower body (such as large trucks, oil tankers, trailer, etc.) near the alternative parking spaces;
- Potholes on the road near the alternative parking spaces, or there are sidewalks or parking spaces with elevation difference on the road and cliffs (danger);
- The wheel size is different from the original wheel size. For example: installing non-original size wheels, spare wheels, snow chains or tires with non-standard tire pressure;
- Vehicle modification causes the size of vehicle to change or there is an extended load outside the vehicle during parking.

1.6 Panoramic View Monitor System Calibration

■ Calibration Procedure



■ Calibration Steps

Status confirmation before calibration In order to ensure the success rate and effect of the calibration, the following status should be confirmed before calibration:

- (1) All components on vehicle have been installed (including: spare tires, on-board tools, etc.), and all liquids have been filled to the state of leaving the factory (such as: brake fluid, coolant, washer fluid, gasoline, etc.);
- (2) The vehicle has completed the calibration of steering system and four-wheel alignment, and has passed the inspection;
- (3) The grid of calibration site are not obviously damaged/dirty, the guide rails are not loose or poorly fixed, and the lights above the site have been turned on;
- (4) There are no people, vehicles or other obstacles in the area of the calibration site;
- (5) There is no malfunction prompt of panoramic view monitor or camera in the vehicle instrument cluster;
- (6) Four cameras (front/rear/left/right) lens surface is not covered by plastic protective film or has been removed;
- (7) During the calibration process, please make sure that there is no other person on the vehicle, and only the driver is allowed to perform calibration operations on driver seat.

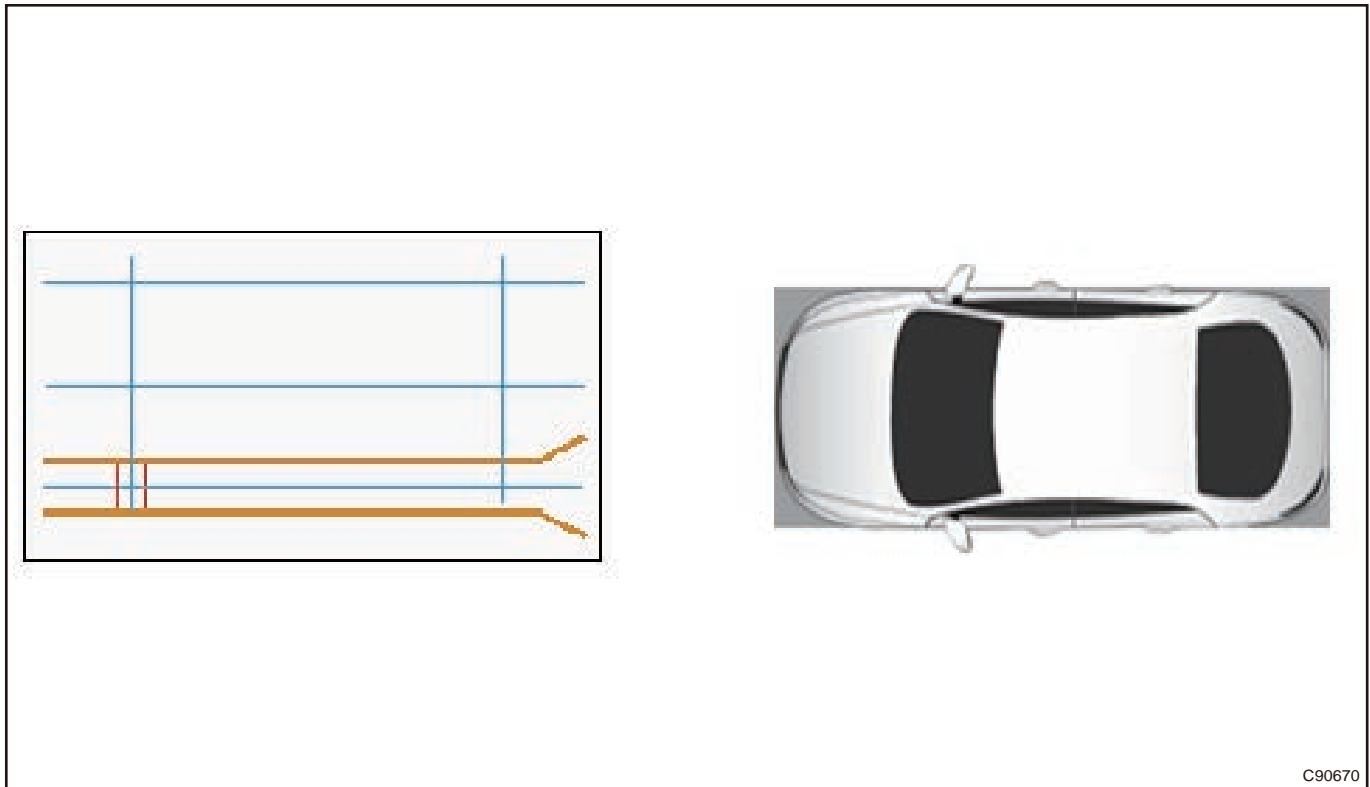
Caution

When parts are supplied, in order to avoid accidental wear on the surface of panoramic view monitor system camera lens, a plastic protective film is usually attached to the lens. Please confirm whether it has been removed before calibration? If it is not removed, please remove the protective film before performing the calibration operation.

■ Calibration step 1 (vehicle enters the calibration station)

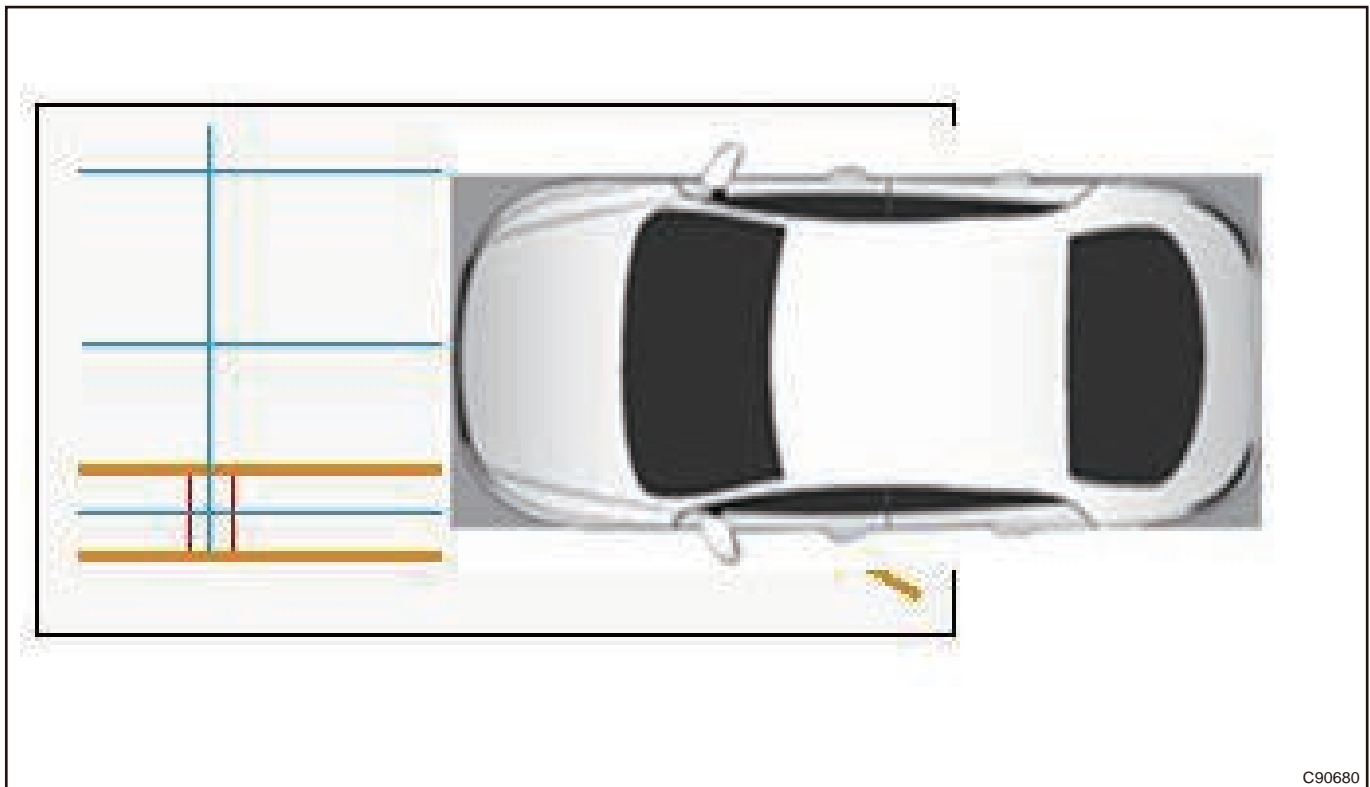
When the vehicle to be calibrated enters the calibration station, the steps are as follows:

- (1) After coming out from last station, adjust the position of the vehicle so that the front and rear center of the vehicle is consistent with the center line of the guide rail, as shown in the illustration:



C90670

- (2) Driving the vehicle forward, slightly adjust the steering wheel and make the front wheels enter the guide rails, as shown in the illustration:



C90680

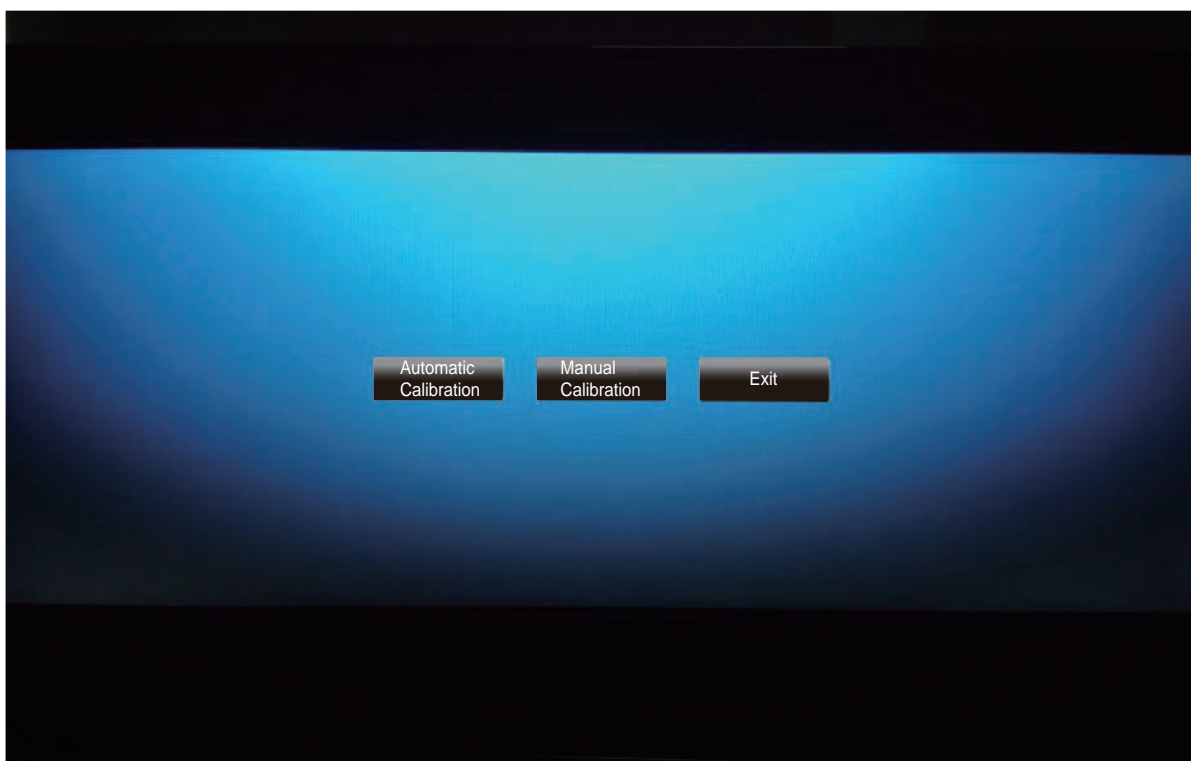
- (3) Continues to drive along the guide rail, stops after front wheel enters the position, so that the two front wheels naturally enter the slot, and confirm that the front wheel axis is consistent with the center position of slot, as shown in the following illustration:



C90690

■ Calibration step 2 (calibration function activated)

In the IGN-ON or Start state, press and release the three buttons "HOME + NAVI + SET" on the central console panel at the same time; if the operation is valid, the following interface will appear on the audio display. For the calibration operation on production line, please select the "Automatic Calibration" button. The "Manual Calibration" function is mainly used for after-sales calibration.



C90700

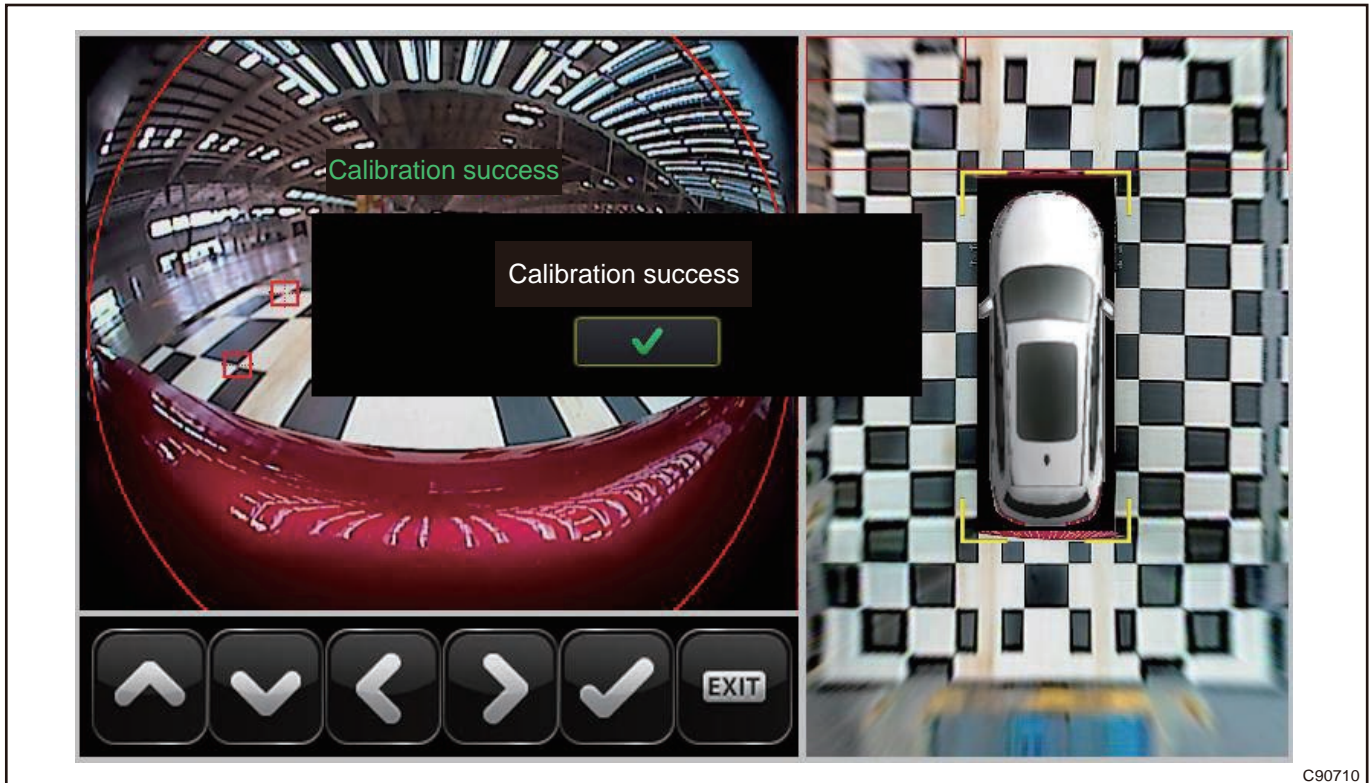
Caution

The command is valid only when three buttons are pressed at the same time and then released. If there is no response on the audio display after one operation, repeat the operation several times until prompt appears.

■ **Calibration step 3 (automatic calibration process)**

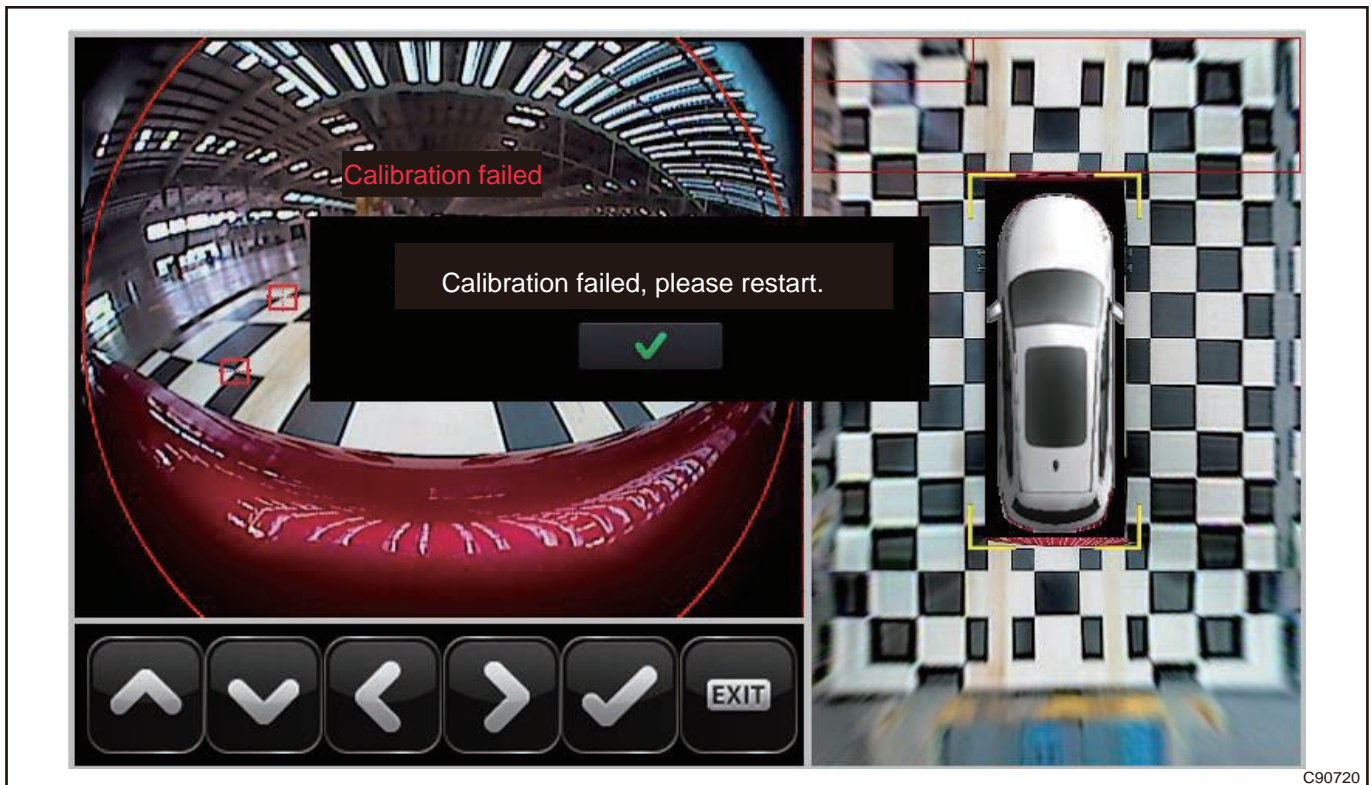
After step 2, the panoramic view monitor system will restart and automatically start the calibration action. After about 10 seconds, the audio display will prompt the calibration result.

- (1) Calibration successful: prompt "Calibration success", click "✓" to confirm, the system restarts and calibration is completed, then drive the vehicle out of calibration station.



C90710

- (2) Calibration failed: prompt "Calibration failed, please restart", after clicking "✓", the system restarts and the calibration ends. If you need to re-calibrate, please re-adjust the vehicle and repeat the calibration step 1 to step 3 again.



Caution

- During the automatic calibration, the panoramic view monitor system restarts twice, during which a brief blue screen or blurry screen may appear on the audio display; this state is normal and will automatically return to normal after the panoramic view monitor system restarts.
- After the calibration fails, please exit the system directly and do not save the data;
- If the vehicle is not at the calibration station, do not perform calibration operations.

■ Introduction of Automatic Calibration and Determination Scheme

■ Main Content

The automatic calibration of panoramic view monitor system needs to automatically identify the preset calibration points in image, and calculate the relevant camera parameters by combining the image coordinates and physical coordinates of the calibration points to complete the calibration work. The time from when the system starts to enter the calibration state to its completion should be within 10 seconds. The automatic calibration result evaluation mainly completes the following two tasks:

- (1) Determine whether the calibration point identification is accurate, and whether the calibration point can be correctly identified directly determines whether the calibration work can be successfully completed.
- (2) Calibration effect evaluation: In the actual use environment, due to various deviation factors, even if the calibration point can be accurately identified, the calibration result will have a certain deviation. The deviation in mosaic image is mainly reflected in the image distortion, mosaic dislocation.

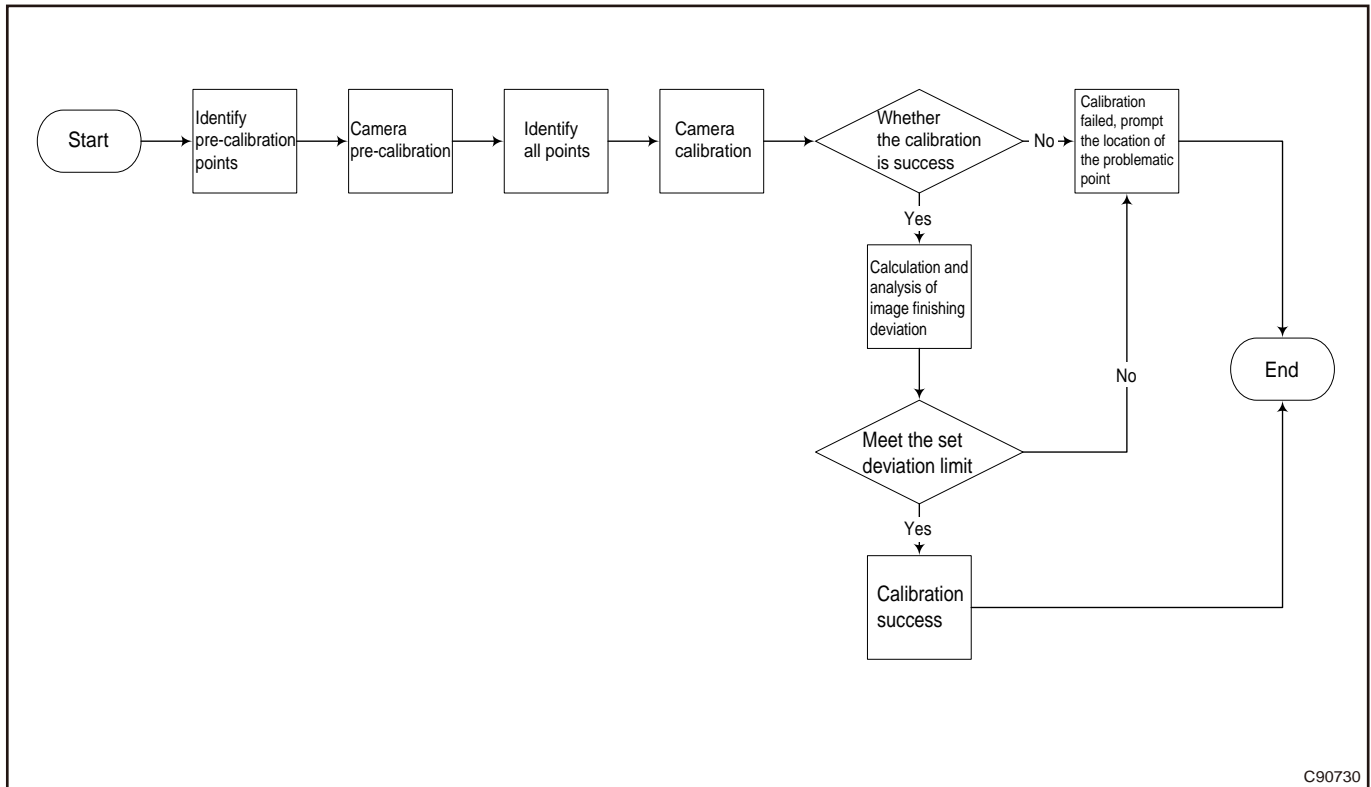
■ Solution Method

- At present, automatic calibration adopts a redundant calibration point. In addition to the image points that must be used for calibration, automatic calibration will also identify some auxiliary calibration points at the same time. It mainly use the necessary points to complete the calibration, and then use some auxiliary calibration points to verify whether the calibration point recognition is successful.
- By using the calibration data to calculate the physical coordinates corresponding to the auxiliary calibration points in the image, the deviation between calculated physical coordinates and real physical coordinates will fluctuate within a relatively small range, and the calibration can be determined to be successful if the deviation is within a certain threshold; Otherwise, the calibration fails.

■ Judgment Principle

- After calibration is completed, the physical point coordinate P_{phy} corresponding to any point coordinate P_{img} in the camera image can be obtained through calculation. Ideally, the calculated physical coordinate P_{phy} and its corresponding real physical coordinate P_{PHY} should be exactly the same. In the actual case, there will be a certain deviation $E_{pos} = P_{phy} - P_{PHY}$.
- Calculate the mean square deviation $S (S=(1/n*\Sigma(E_{pos}_i^2))^{(1/2)})$ between physical coordinates and real physical coordinates of all auxiliary points.
- The splicing effect is evaluated by the mean square deviation between calculated physical coordinates and the real physical coordinates of the calibration points in the splicing area.

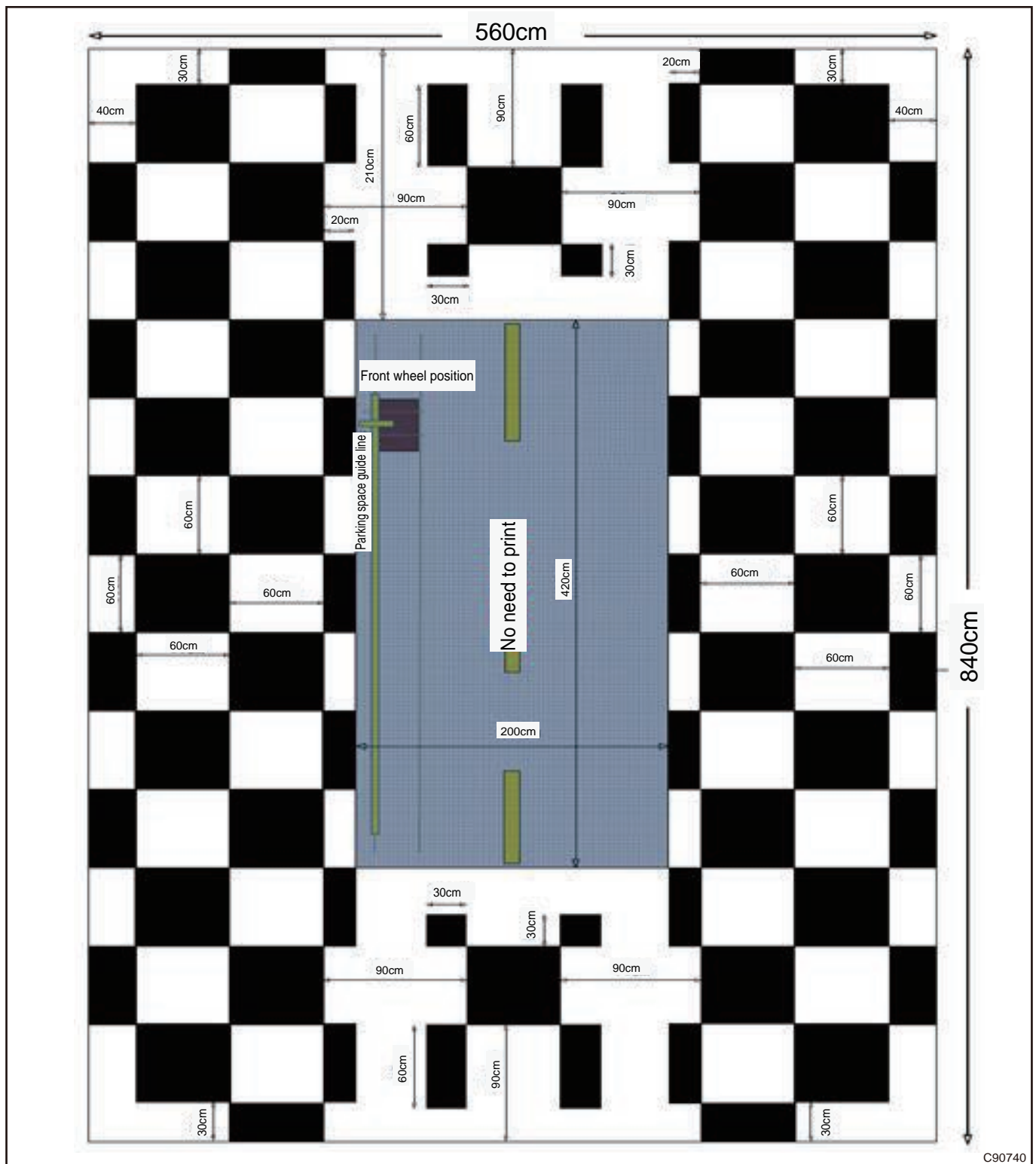
■ Calibration Procedure



■ Calibration Environment Requirement and Condition Layout

■ Site Requirement

Calibration site size: about 5.6 meters wide and about 8.4 meters long. The black blocks in picture are 60 cm*60 cm, 30 cm*30 cm, 20 cm*60 cm, 30 cm*60 cm, 40 cm*60 cm, and the accuracy is controlled within +/-5 mm. Make sure the black block is on the corresponding straight line with the deviation within 5mm on one side of the line. The vertical and vertical extension lines of any black square intersect at 90° with an deviation of ± 0.5°. Please refer to the illustration below for detailed dimensions.

**Caution**

The calibration site can be adapted to the vehicle with length of 4.4 m to 4.95 m and width of shorter than 2 m.

■ Ground Flatness Requirement

In order to ensure the calibration effect, the flatness of the ground after laying is required to be high, the flatness deviation is required to be within the maximum deviation of ± 10 mm for any 2 meters length. If the construction conditions permit, it is recommended to be controlled within ± 5 mm.

■ Light Condition

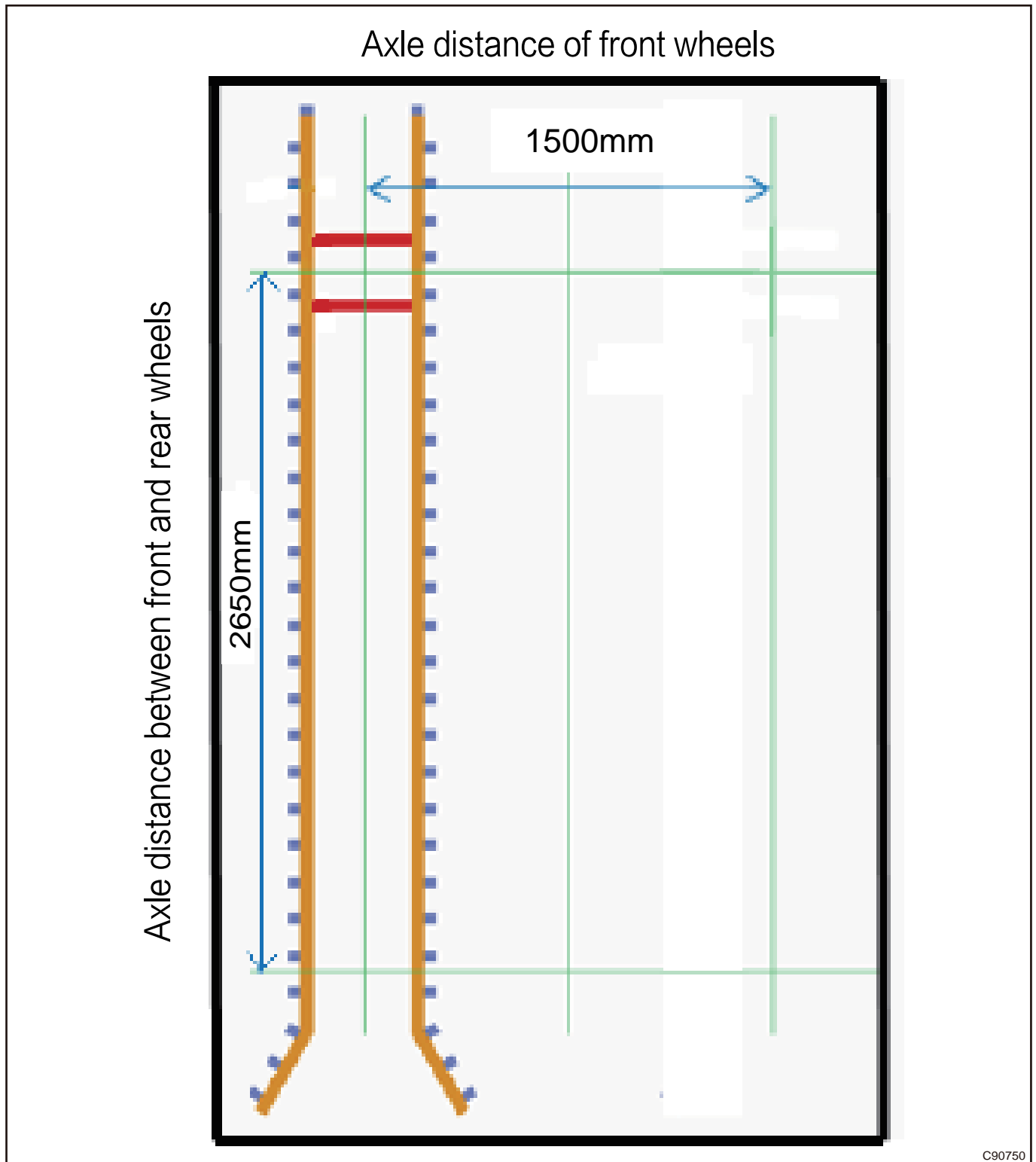
The ambient lighting requirements of the calibration site are mainly diffuse light, LED lighting (LED tube specification: 1.2 meters long, 6500 K color temperature, power above 16 W), using LED tube vertical lighting, requiring ambient brightness between 300 lux and 1000 lux (It is recommended to use at least three rows of LED tubes, and at least 7 LED tubes in each row). The lighting LED tubes should be installed at a height of 3 to 5 meters directly above the calibration field. In order to prevent sunlight from entering the calibration field through doors and windows, it is required the doors and windows around the field are covered with thick white cloth or shading plates.

■ Floor Materials Requirements

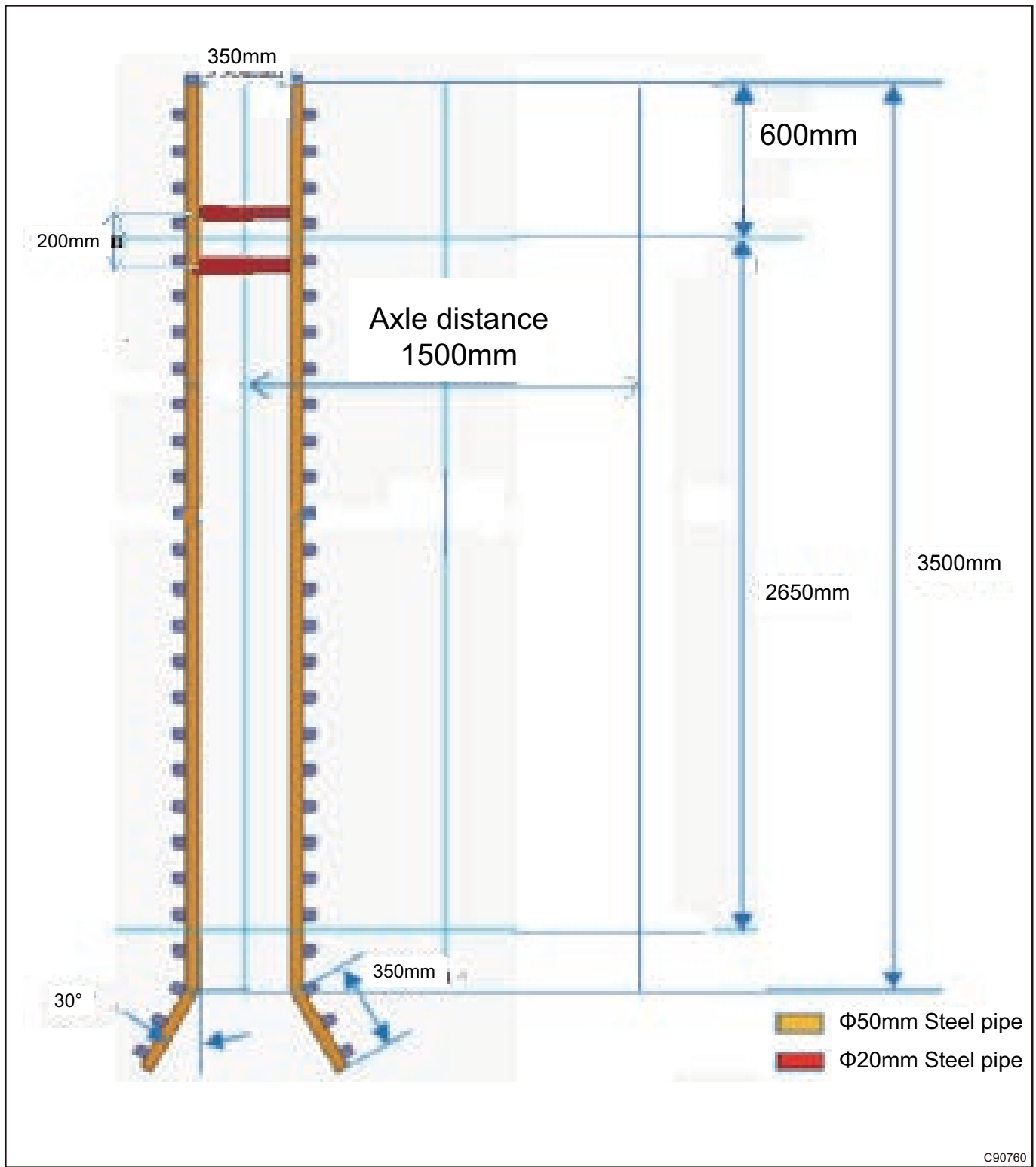
It is recommended to use black and white acrylic matt outdoor paint (for example: Nadis acrylic outdoor paint) for the calibration of the site. When it comes to wear resistance and matt performance, a better matt paint specification can be selected according to the actual situation to achieve better wear resistance requirements. The checkerboard burr must be within ± 1 mm, and no spots larger than 2 mm are allowed inside the grid.

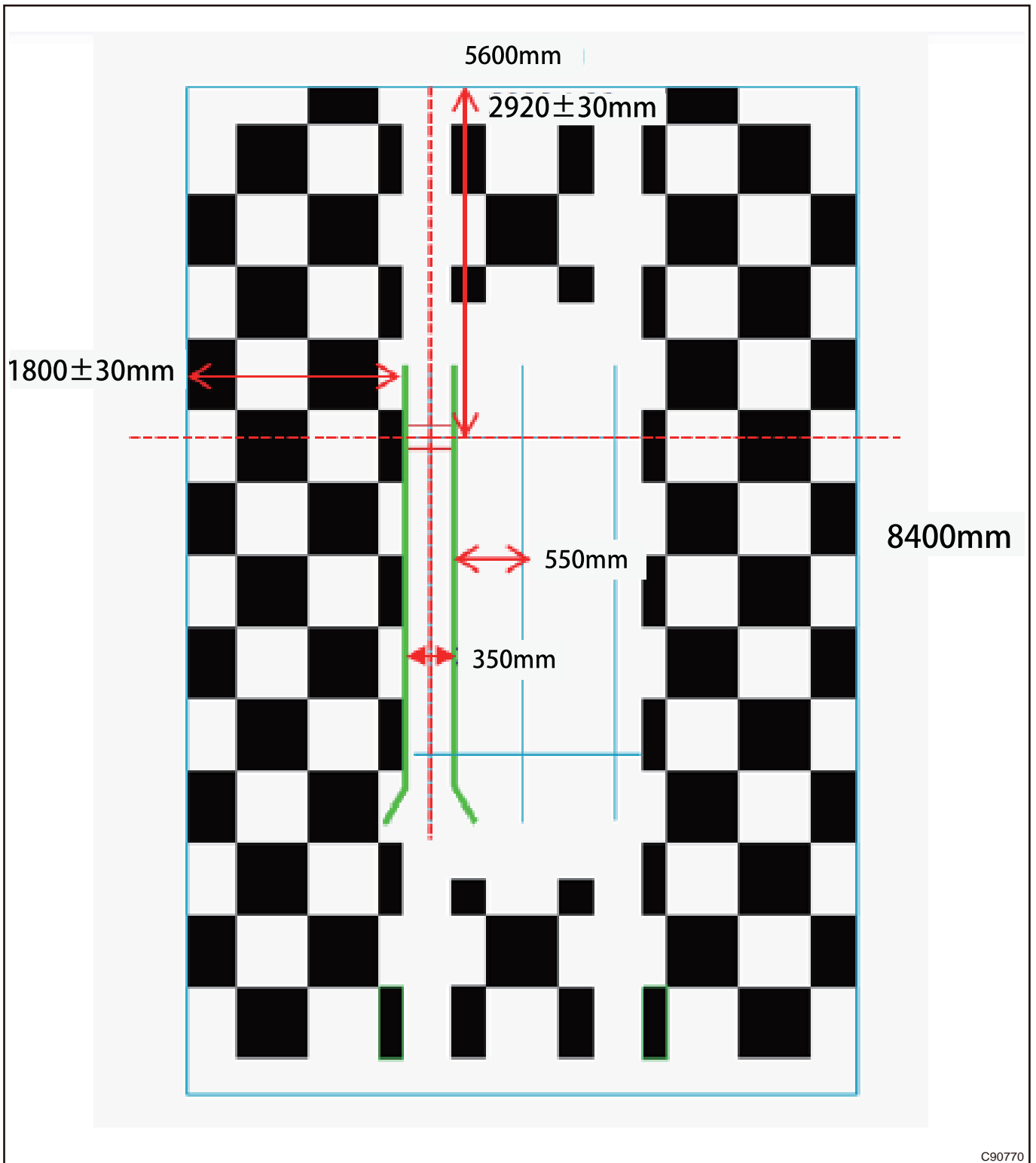
■ Design Requirements for Vehicle Body Area

- (1) Ground construction and laying: The cement floor is used to ensure that the cement floor and the surrounding floors are laid on the same plane, and treat the cement surface with a matte.
- (2) Vehicle positioning device: The vehicle positioning adopts a single-sided and dual-rail positioning method, and the card position accuracy is required to be controlled within ± 5 cm, as shown in illustration.



- (3) The type and design requirements of the guide rail: It is recommended to use steel pipes as the material for the guide rail used in calibration site. The type and size requirements are shown in illustration below.





C90770

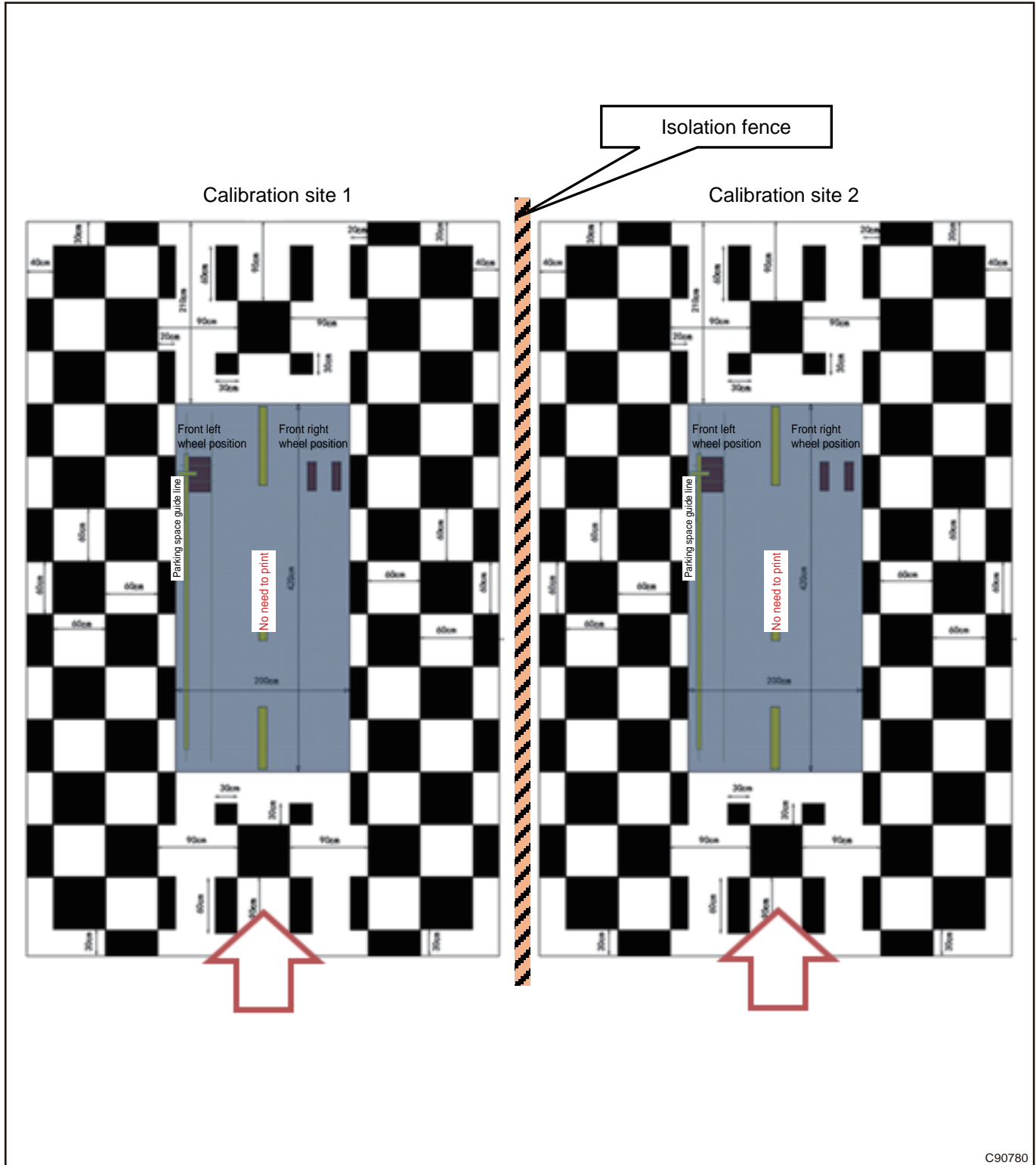
Caution

The calibration site can be adapted to the vehicle range: 4.4 m ~ 4.95 m of length and shorter than 2 m of width.

(4) Fixation requirements of the guide rail and ground:

- 1) Use expansion screws to fix it on the cement floor with ears around guide rail;
- 2) The thickness of the fixed ears is recommended to choose a material of 5 mm ~ 10 mm;

- 3) The fixed point arrangement needs to be on the same horizontal line as the center point of each grid side line (Note: When the fixed point is on the outer side, it needs to be performed according to this, if it is on the inner side, it can be implemented according to the actual situation).
- 5) Isolation requirements between two sites: If two calibration sites are together (as shown in illustration below), they need to be isolated or shielded in the middle of the sites to avoid mutual interference during the calibration (recommended isolation fence height is higher than 1.2 meters, length is longer than 8.4 meters, the surface material is recommended to be white matte material).



C90780

■ Personnel Requirements

Operators who perform the calibration of the panoramic view monitor system need to undergo calibration training, and a dedicated person is recommended.

■ Maintenance and Repair of Site

In order to ensure the service life of calibration site and the calibration effect of panoramic view monitor, it is recommended that a dedicated person be responsible for the daily repair and maintenance of calibration site. Precautions as follows:

- (1) Daily cleaning is recommended once a day; deep cleaning is recommended once a month; annual site inspection is recommended once a year; if the calibration chart is obviously dirty, damaged, or the calibration success rate is significantly reduced, immediate repair and maintenance are required;
- (2) The site needs to be equipped with special and clean cleaning tools, such as mops or clothes, etc., and cannot be mixed with tools at other stations to avoid contamination with oil and ground reflections;
- (3) In the calibration site area, it is necessary to avoid the entry, exit, stepping, etc. of irrelevant personnel, vehicles, etc., to avoid damage to the site.

2 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

2.1 Problem Symptoms Table

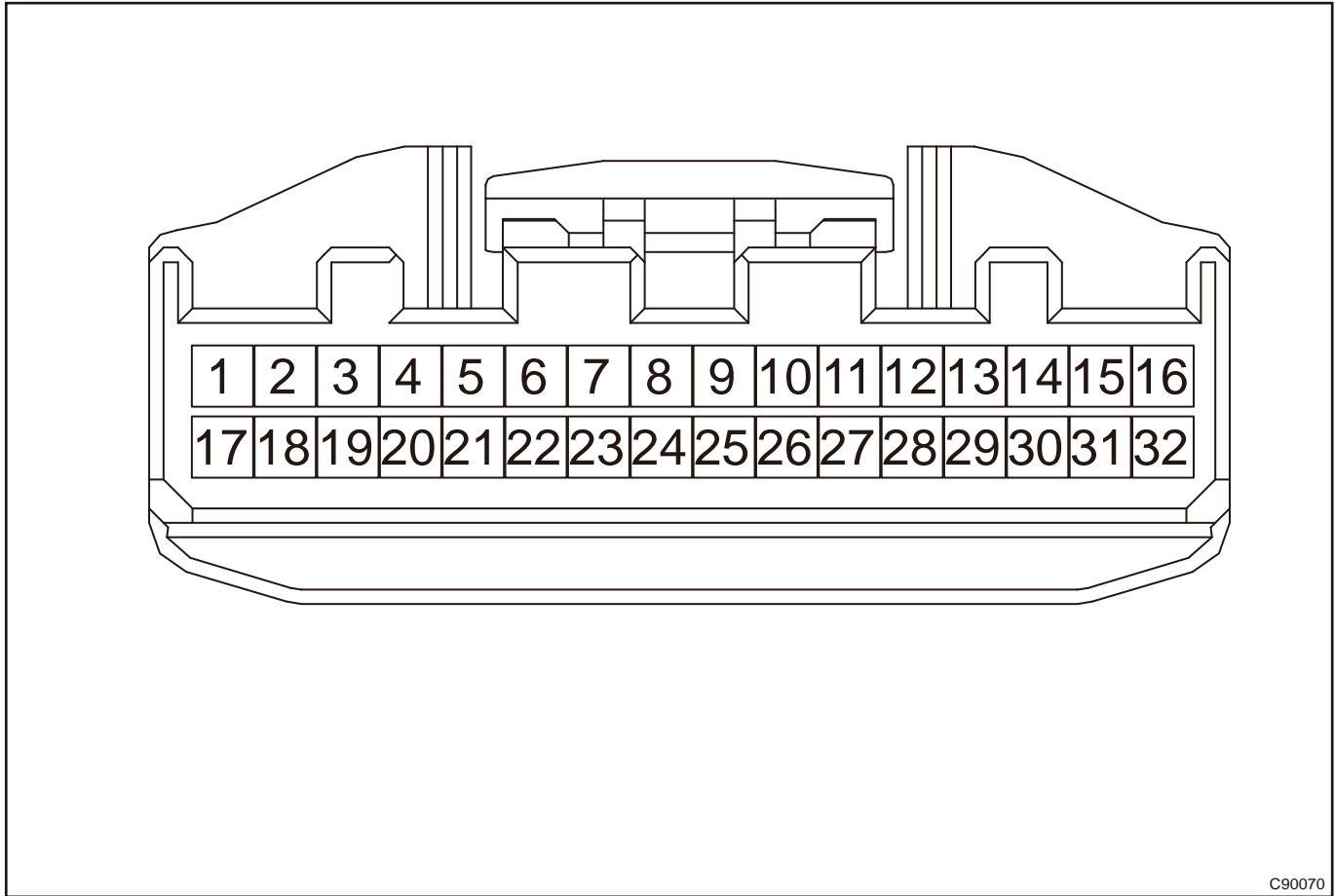
Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
After reverse gear is engaged, there is no reversing view monitor and the meter does not display the reverse distance	Observe whether the back-up light is come on: If it is come on, check the reverse signal input of DVD/navigation system and BCM. If it is not come on, check the back-up light switch and line
After reverse gear is engaged, there is no reversing view monitor and the meter display the reverse distance	Check the reverse signal input of DVD/navigation system, camera and line.
After reverse gear is engaged, there is reversing view monitor (if equipped with reversing view monitor) but the meter does not display the reverse distance	Check the reverse signal input of BCM, the LIN of BCM and reversing radar controller, and check the reversing radar controller
Sensor failure, and instrument cluster send an alarm	Check whether there is dirt on reversing radar sensor. If so, remove the dirt on the sensor and check whether the sensor is damaged. If necessary, replace the inspection sensor wire harness

2.2 Module Terminal List

■ Panoramic Control System (AVM) (With APA) Terminal List

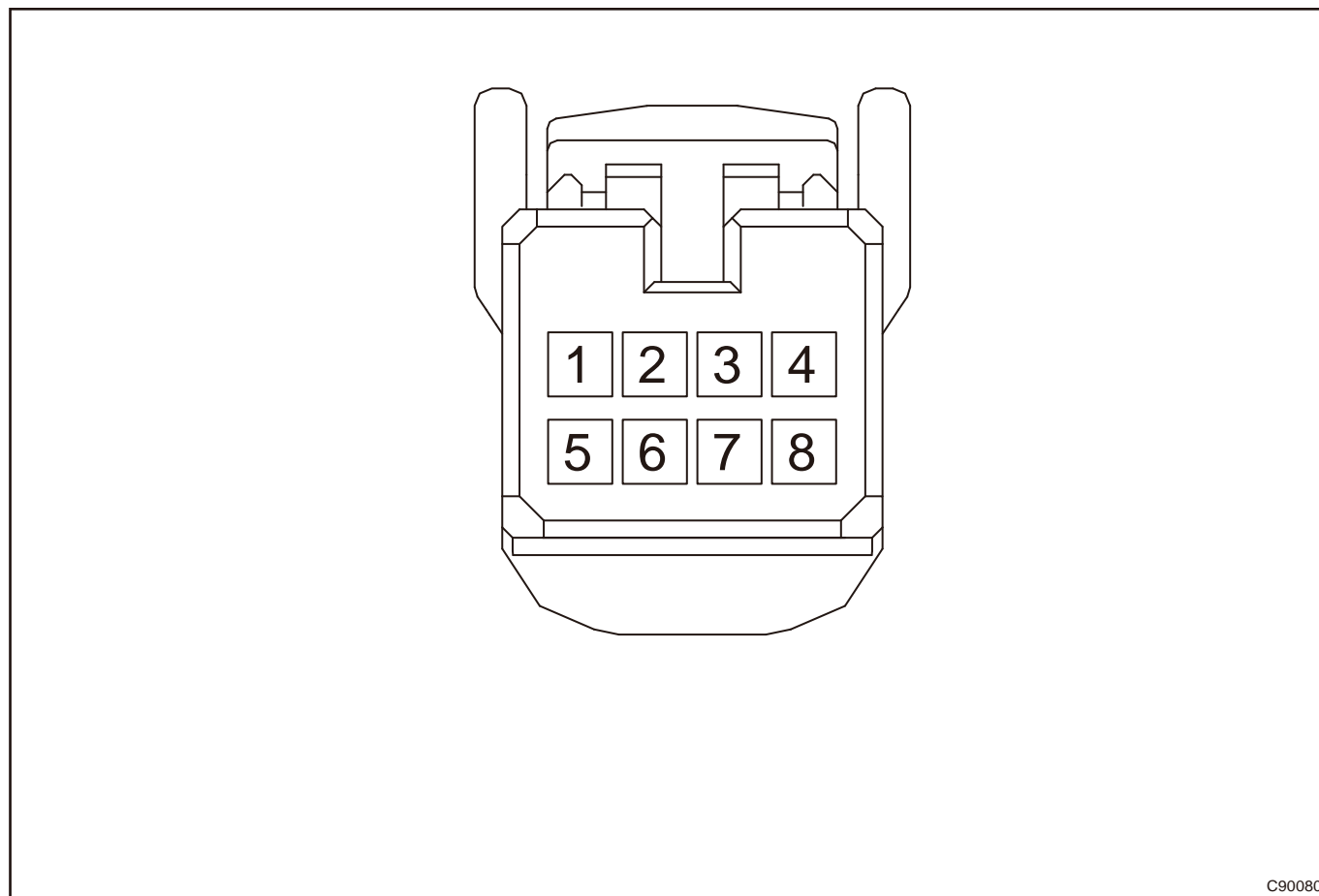


C90070

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
1	APA-LED	17	APA switch signal (low level)
2	PDC-LED	18	PDC switch signal (low level)
3	Signal ground (rear)	19	Signal power supply (rear)
4	Signal (rear right)	20	Signal (rear left)
5	Signal (rear left)	21	Signal (rear left center)
6	Signal (rear right center)	22	Signal (rear right)
7	Signal ground (front)	23	Signal power supply (front)
8	Signal (front right)	24	Signal (front left)
9	Signal (front left)	25	Signal (center left)
10	Signal (center right)	26	Signal (front right)
11	-	27	AVM switch signal (low level)

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
12	-	28	-
13	-	29	-
14	Chassis - CAN_L	30	Chassis - CAN_L
15	-	31	Power supply
16	Ground	32	Power supply

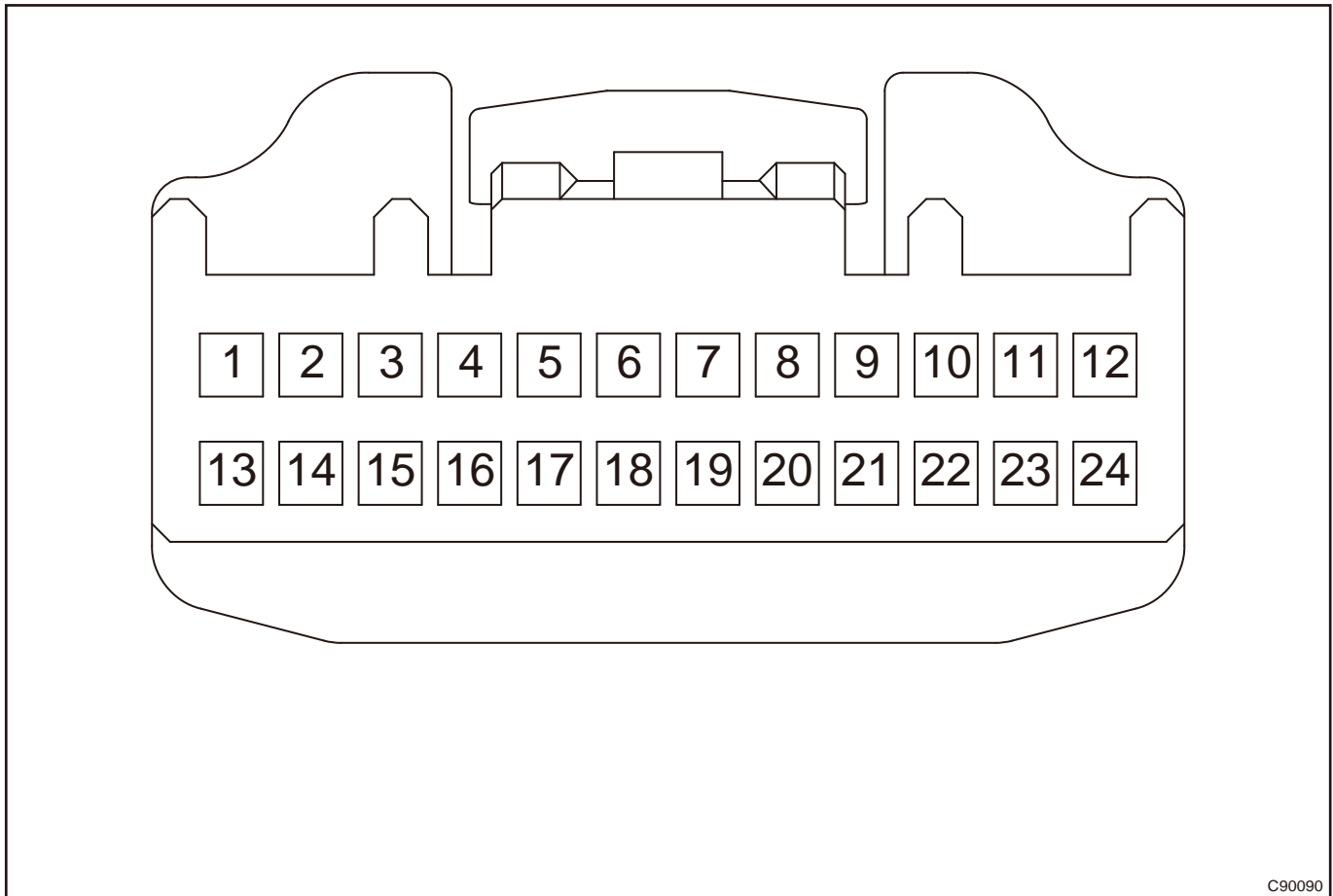
■ Panoramic Controller (Without APA) - A Terminal Definition



C90080

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
1	-	5	-
2	CAN H	6	CAN L
3	Ignition Signal	7	Switch signal
4	Ground	8	Power supply

■ Reverse Distance Assist System (PDC) Terminal List



C90090

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
1	-	13	-
2	-	14	-
3	Power supply	15	Right reversing radar sensor signal
4	Center right reversing radar sensor signal	16	Ground
5	CAN-H	17	Left parking assist radar sensor signal
6	CAN-L	18	Center left parking radar sensor signal
7	Left reversing radar sensor signal	19	Center right parking radar sensor signal
8	Center left reversing radar sensor signal	20	Right parking radar sensor signal
9	-	21	-
10	-	22	PDC warning sound off indicator

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
11	Center left reversing radar sensor power supply	23	PDC warning sound off
12	Right reversing radar sensor ground	24	-

2.3 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

2.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

2.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

2.6 Diagnosis Procedure

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the parking assist system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
---	-----------------------------

Next

2 Check battery voltage

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V

NG Replace battery

OK

3 Customer problem analysis

Next

4 Read DTCs

History DTC Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTC malfunction procedures

Current DTC

5 Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

Next

6 Adjust, repair or replace

Next

7 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next End

2.7 Reversing Radar System Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B16000C	PDC ECU Failure
B160117	Supply Voltage Error - High Voltage
B165616	Supply Voltage Error - Low Voltage
B161004	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer No Signal / No Communication
B161106	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
B161209	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground

DTC	DTC Definition
B16130C	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Defect
B161404	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner No Signal / No Communication
B161506	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
B161609	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground
B16170C	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Defect
B161804	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner No Signal / No Communication
B161906	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
B162009	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground
B16210C	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Defect
B162204	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer No Signal / No Communication
B162306	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
B162409	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground
B16250C	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Defect
B162604	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer No Signal / No Communication
B162706	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
B162809	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground
B16290C	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Defect
B163004	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner No Signal / No Communication
B163106	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
B163209	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground
B16330C	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Defect
B163404	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner No Signal / No Communication
B163506	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
B163609	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground
B16370C	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Defect
B163804	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer No Signal / No Communication
B163906	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat

DTC	DTC Definition
B164009	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground
B16410C	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Defect
B165006	PDC Beepoff Switch Indicator Short to Ubat
B165107	PDC Beepoff Switch Indicator Short to Ground
B165407	PDC Beep Off Switch Short to Ground
B16B800	Configuration Error - Not Coded

2.8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B16000C	PDC ECU Failure
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B16000C	PDC ECU Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Controller is damaged

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check controller
----------	-------------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Using a diagnostic tester to clear DTCs, perform running test to check if malfunction occurs again.

NG	Replace the controller
OK	System is normal

DTC	B160117	Supply Voltage Error - High Voltage
DTC	B165616	Supply Voltage Error - Low Voltage

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B160117	Supply Voltage Error - High Voltage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power supply system malfunction Wire harness connector malfunction
B165616	Supply Voltage Error - Low Voltage	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).

- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check system voltage

Start engine, and use voltage band of multimeter to check if battery voltage is normal (minimum voltage is not less than 12 V).

NG **Repair or replace battery/alternator**

OK

2 Check fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check continuity of fuse RF35 in instrument panel fuse box with a digital multimeter.

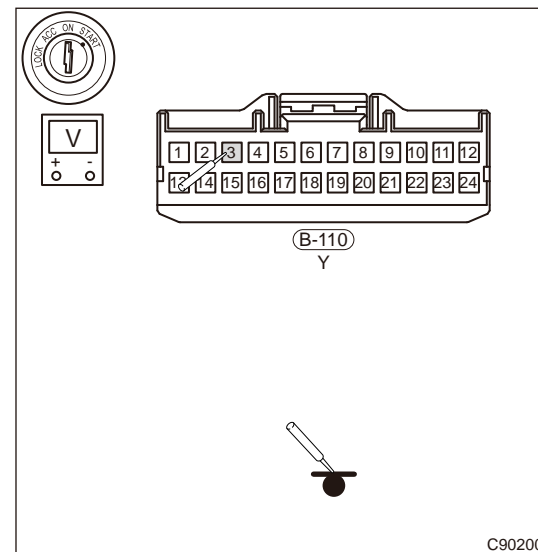
NG **Replace fuse**

OK

3 Check module power supply

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of power. If the voltage is as required, make tests with a 21 W bulb. Bright test lamp indicates that power supply is sufficient, and dim test lamp indicates that power supply is insufficient and poor contact of wire harness may occur.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-110 (3) - ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



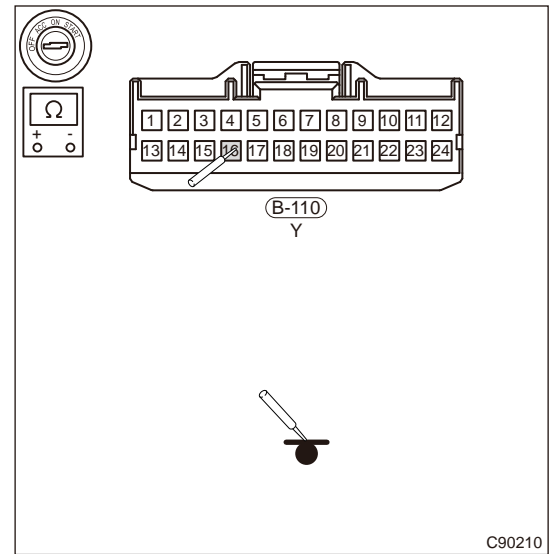
NG **Repair wire harness**

OK

4 Check the module ground

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the component connector.
- (c) Use ohm band of digital multimeter to detect the continuity between B-110 (16) and ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-110 (16) - ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK	Replace module assembly
NG	Check or repair the module ground

DTC	B161106	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B161506	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B161906	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B162306	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B162706	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B163106	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B163506	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B163906	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B165006	PDC Beepoff Switch Indicator Short to Ubat

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B161106	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor failure • Wire harness connector malfunction
B161506	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat	
B161906	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat	
B162306	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat	
B162706	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat	
B163106	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat	
B163506	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat	

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B163906	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat	
B165006	PDC Beepoff Switch Indicator Short to Ubat	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

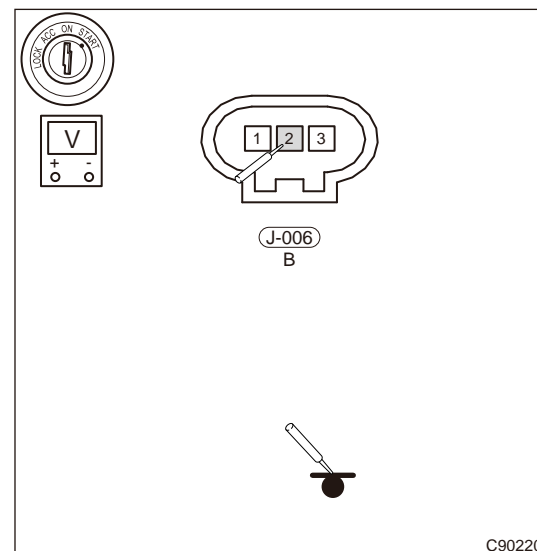
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check the malfunction of sensor for PDC rear left outer Open circuit or short circuit to ground

- Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, displacement and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- Check the continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF", disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the parking radar controller connector (B-110) and rear left radar sensor connector (J-006).
- Use ohm band of digital multimeter to detect the voltage between J-006(2) and body ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-006(2) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0V



C90220

OK

Clear DTCs

NG

Repair or replace wire harness / connector

DTC	B161209	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B161609	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B162009	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B162409	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B162809	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B163209	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B163609	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Short Circuit to Ubat
DTC	B164009	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Short Circuit to Ubat

DTC	B165107	PDC Beepoff Switch Indicator Short to Ubat
DTC	B165407	PDC Beep Off Switch Short to Ground

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B161209	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor failure • Wire harness connector malfunction
B161609	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	
B162009	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	
B162409	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	
B162809	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	
B163209	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	
B163609	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	
B164009	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Open Circuit or Short Circuit to Ground	
B165107	PDC Beepoff Switch Indicator Short to Ground	
B165407	PDC Beep Off Switch Short to Ground	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

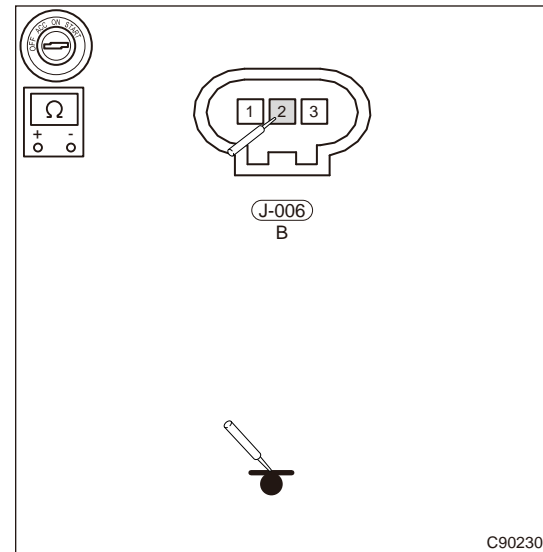
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check the malfunction of sensor for PDC rear left open circuit or short circuit to ground
----------	--

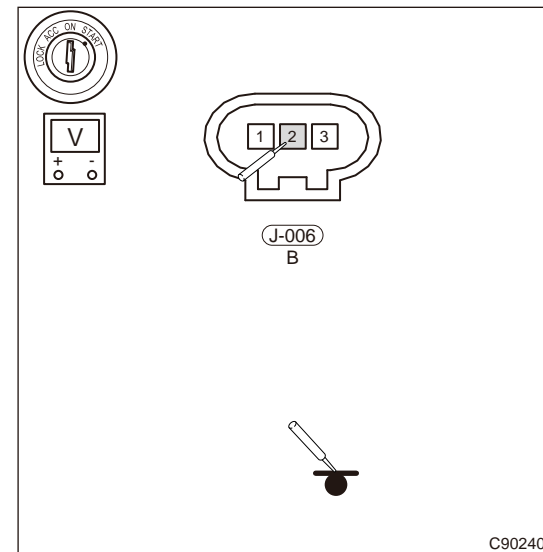
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “OFF” , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the parking radar controller connector (B-110) and rear left radar sensor connector (J-006).
- (c) Check for continuity between J-006 (2) and body ground with ohm band of digital multimeter.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-006(2) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch “ON”	∞



- (d) Check for continuity between J-006 (2) and body ground with ohm band of digital multimeter.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-110(12) - J- 006 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK	Clear DTCs
NG	Repair or replace wire harness / connector

DTC	B16B800	Configuration Error - Not Coded
DTC	DTC Definition	
Possible Cause		
B16B800	Configuration Error - Not Coded	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Not Coded

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Use the diagnostic tester to perform writing configuration data
----------	--

DTC	B161404	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner No Signal / No Communication
DTC	B16170C	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Defect

DTC	B161804	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner No Signal / No Communication
DTC	B16210C	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Defect
DTC	B162204	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer No Signal / No Communication
DTC	B16250C	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Defect
DTC	B162604	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer No Signal / No Communication
DTC	B16290C	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Defect
DTC	B163004	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner No Signal / No Communication
DTC	B16330C	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Defect
DTC	B163404	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner No Signal / No Communication
DTC	B16370C	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Defect
DTC	B163804	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer No Signal / No Communication
DTC	B16410C	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Defect

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B161004	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer No Signal / No Communication	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sensor failure • Wire harness connector malfunction
B16130C	Sensor for PDC Front Left Outer Defect	
B161404	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner No Signal / No Communication	
B16170C	Sensor for PDC Front Left Inner Defect	
B161804	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner No Signal / No Communication	
B16210C	Sensor for PDC Front Right Inner Defect	
B162204	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer No Signal / No Communication	
B16250C	Sensor for PDC Front Right Outer Defect	
B162604	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer No Signal / No Communication	
B16290C	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Outer Defect	
B163004	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner No Signal / No Communication	
B16330C	Sensor for PDC Rear Left Inner Defect	
B163404	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner No Signal / No Communication	
B16370C	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Inner Defect	

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B163804	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer No Signal / No Communication	
B16410C	Sensor for PDC Rear Right Outer Defect	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check the status of radar sensor and connector line

- (a) Check the appearance of radar sensor body without scratches, breakage or damage, etc.
- (b) Check the status of corresponding connector, and there should be no damage and open circuit, etc.; measure and check the reversing radar module connector and component connector without open circuit or misalignment, etc.

OK

Clear DTCs

2.9 Panoramic Control System (AVM) Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B172117	Control Module Battery Voltage is High
B172216	Control Module Battery Voltage is Low
B170013	AVM Front Camera LVDS Cable Open
B170011	AVM Front Camera Power Short to Ground
B170012	AVM Front Camera Power Short to Battery
B170113	AVM Left Camera LVDS Cable Open
B170111	AVM Left Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground
B170112	AVM Left Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery
B170213	AVM Right Camera LVDS Cable Open
B170211	AVM Right Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground
B170212	AVM Right Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery
B170313	AVM Rear Camera LVDS Cable Open
B170311	AVM Rear Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground
B170312	AVM Rear Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery

DTC	DTC Definition
B170571	AVM ON/OFF Switch Mechanical Adhesion
B17061C	APA Function Indicator Light Circuit Failure
B170671	APA ON/OFF Switch Mechanical Adhesion
B17071C	PDC Function Indicator Light Circuit Failure
B170771	PDC ON/OFF Switch Mechanical Adhesion
B170C54	AVM No Calibration
B171204	AVM Controller Malfunction
B171309	Rear Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171396	Rear Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault
B171409	Rear Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171496	Rear Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171509	Rear Right Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171596	Rear Right Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171609	Rear Left Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171696	Rear Left Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171709	Rear Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171796	Rear Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171809	Rear Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171896	Rear Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault
B171909	Front Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171996	Front Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault
B171A09	Front Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171A96	Front Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171B09	Front Right Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171B96	Front Right Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171C09	Front Left Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171C96	Front Left Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171D09	Front Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171D96	Front Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
B171E09	Front Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
B171E96	Front Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault
B172055	Not Coded

2.10 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B172117	Control Module Battery Voltage is High
DTC	B172216	Control Module Battery Voltage is Low

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B172117	Control Module Battery Voltage is High	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Battery • AVM module • Wire harness and connector
B172216	Control Module Battery Voltage is Low	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check battery voltage

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Check battery voltage (Not less than 12 V) with a digital multimeter.

NG

Replace battery

OK

2 Check charging system

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check positive and negative battery cables for broken or damage.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Start the engine.
- (e) Check if voltage of positive and negative battery is normal with a digital multimeter (13.5 V - 14.8 V).

NG

Repair or replace positive and negative battery cables and alternator

OK

3 Check AVM module power supply fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check if AVM module power supply fuses RF35 and RF19 are blown.

NG **Replace power supply fuse**

OK

4 Check engine compartment fuse and relay box

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the engine compartment fuse and relay box connector.
- (c) Using digital multimeter, check for continuity between fuse RF35 and Pin C1-14 of engine compartment fuse and relay box.
- (d) Using digital multimeter, check for continuity between fuse RF19 and Pin C3-17 of engine compartment fuse and relay box.

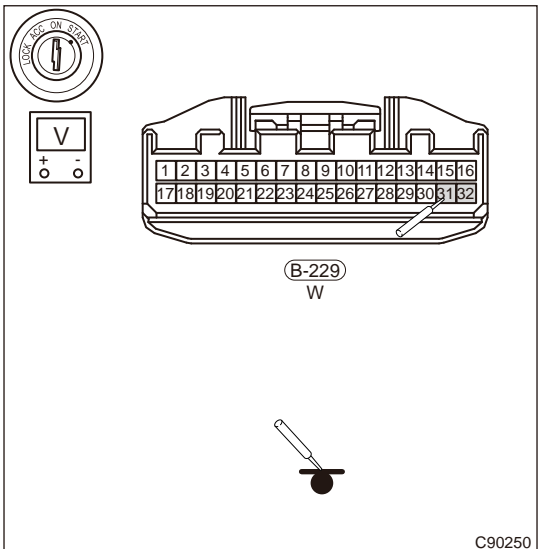
NG **Replace engine compartment fuse and relay box**

OK

5 Check AVM module power supply wire harness

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the AVM connector B-229.
- (c) Using a digital multimeter, check if the voltage between terminal B-229 (32), (31) and body ground is normal.

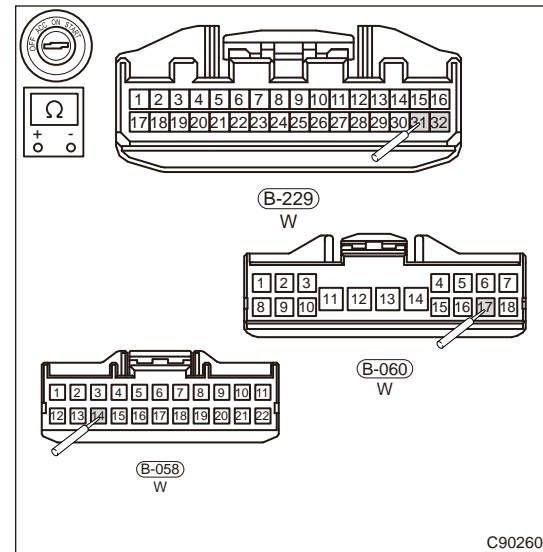
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-229 (31) - Body ground	Always	Not less than 12 V
B-229 (32) - Body ground	Always	Not less than 12 V



C90250

(d) Using digital multimeter, check for continuity between AVM module connector B-229 (31) - engine compartment fuse and relay box terminal B - 058 (14) and terminal B-229 (32) - B-060 (17) to check power supply wire harness for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-229 (31) - B-058 (14)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-229 (32) - B-060 (17)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



C90260

NG

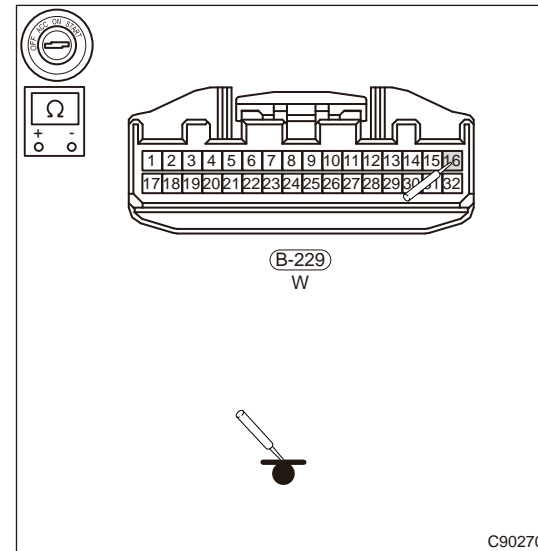
Repair or replace wire harness

OK

6 Check AVM module ground circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect AVM module connector.
- (c) Using digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals (16) of B -229 and ground wire harness connector GB-136 to check ground wire harness for open.

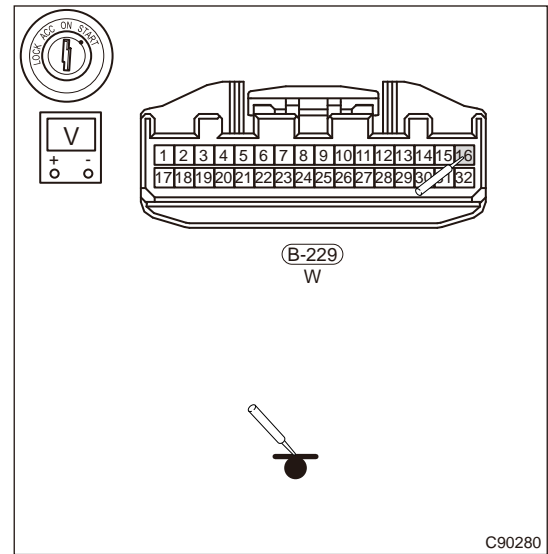
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-229 (16) - GB-136	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



C90270

(d) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, measure voltage between B-229 (16) and body ground to check for short to power supply.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-229 (16) - GB-136	Always	0V



NG Repair or replace wire harness

OK

7 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace AVM module

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B170013	AVM Front Camera LVDS Cable Open
DTC	B170011	AVM Front Camera Power Short to Ground
DTC	B170012	AVM Front Camera Power Short to Battery

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B170013	AVM Front Camera LVDS Cable Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camera • Wire harness • AVM module
B170011	AVM Front Camera Power Short to Ground	
B170012	AVM Front Camera Power Short to Battery	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Replace camera with a new one
----------	--------------------------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Replace front camera with a new one, connect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON. Start panoramic view monitor system and observe if the camera is working properly.

OK	Replace front camera
-----------	-----------------------------

NG

2	Check wire harness and connector
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect panoramic view monitor control module connector B-226 and front camera connector Q-019.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-226 (1) and Q-019 (1).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-226 (1) - Q-019 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$

- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-226 (2) and Q-019 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-226 (2) - Q-019 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG	Repair or replace wire harness and connector
-----------	---

OK

3	Check for short to ground in wire harness or connector.
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect panoramic view monitor control module connector B-226 and front camera connector Q-019.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-226 (1) and ground, B-226 (2) and ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-226 (1) - Body ground	Always	No continuity
B-226 (2) - Body ground	Always	No continuity

NG Repair or replace connector or wire harness that is shorted to ground

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace AVM module

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B170113	AVM Left Camera LVDS Cable Open
DTC	B170111	AVM Left Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground
DTC	B170112	AVM Left Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B170113	AVM Left Camera LVDS Cable Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camera • Wire harness • AVM module
B170111	AVM Left Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground	
B170112	AVM Left Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Replace camera with a new one

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Replace left camera with a new one, connect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON. Start panoramic view monitor system and observe if the camera is working properly.

OK

Replace left camera

NG

2 Check wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect panoramic view monitor control module connector B-225 and left rear view mirror camera connector F-015.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-225 (1) and F-015 (1), B-225 (2) and F-015 (2) separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-225 (1) - F-015 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-225 (2) - F-015 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG

Repair or replace wire harness and connector

OK

3 Check for short to ground in wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the panoramic view monitor control module connector B-225.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-225 (1) and ground, B-225 (2) and ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-225 (1) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-225 (2) - Body ground	Always	∞

NG

Repair or replace connector or wire harness that is shorted to ground



4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG Replace AVM module

OK Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B170213	AVM Right Camera LVDS Cable Open
DTC	B170211	AVM Right Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground
DTC	B170212	AVM Right Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B170213	AVM Right Camera LVDS Cable Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camera • Wire harness • AVM module
B170211	AVM Right Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground	
B170212	AVM Right Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Replace camera with a new one

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “OFF” , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Replace right camera with a new one, connect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON. Start panoramic view monitor system and observe if the camera is working properly.

OK Replace right camera



2 Check for open in wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect panoramic view monitor control module connector B-224 and right rear view mirror camera connector H-012.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-224 (1) and H-012 (1), B-224 (2) and H-012 (2) separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-224 (1) - H-012 (1)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-224 (2) - H-012 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG

Repair or replace wire harness and connector

OK

3

Check for short to ground in wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the panoramic view monitor control module connector B-224.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-224 (1) and ground, B-224 (2) and ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-224 (1) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-224 (2) - Body ground	Always	∞

NG

Repair or replace connector or wire harness that is shorted to ground

OK

4

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace AVM module

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B170313	AVM Rear Camera LVDS Cable Open
DTC	B170311	AVM Rear Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground
DTC	B170312	AVM Rear Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B170313	AVM Rear Camera LVDS Cable Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Camera • Wire harness • AVM module
B170311	AVM Rear Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Ground	
B170312	AVM Rear Camera Power Supply Short Circuit to Battery	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Replace camera with a new one

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “OFF” , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Replace rear camera with a new one, connect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON. Start panoramic view monitor system and observe if the camera is working properly.

OK

Replace rear camera

NG

2 Check wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect panoramic view monitor control module connector B-223 and rear camera connector T-009.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-223 (1) and T-009 (1), B - 223 (2) and T - 009 (2) separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-223 (1) - T-009 (1)	Always	≤ 1 Ω
B-223 (2) - T-009 (2)	Always	≤ 1 Ω

NG

Repair or replace wire harness and connector

OK

3 Check for short to ground in wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the panoramic view monitor control module connector B-223.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-223 (1) and body ground, B-223 (2) and body ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-223 (1) - Body ground	Always	∞
B-223 (2) - Body ground	Always	∞

NG

Repair or replace connector or wire harness that is shorted to ground

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace AVM module

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B170571	AVM ON/OFF Switch Mechanical Adhesion
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B170571	AVM ON/OFF switch mechanical adhesion	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AVM switch • Wire harness • AVM module

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Enter AVM system and read related data stream

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Connect the diagnostic tester.
- (b) Read data stream "input status" .
- (c) Press the switch to check the transition of data stream state to check if switch input is normal.

OK Turn off vehicle power supply (disconnect the negative battery cable), then clear DTC again

NG

2 Replace AVM switch with a new one

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Remove the old AVM switch.
- (c) Install new switch and perform running test.

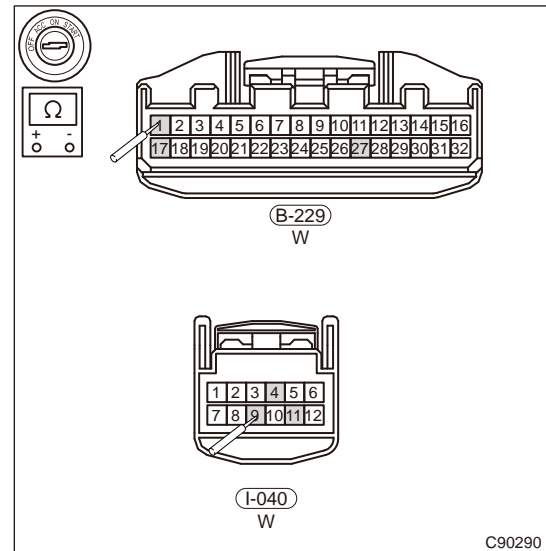
OK Replace AVM switch

NG

3 Check wire harness for open or short

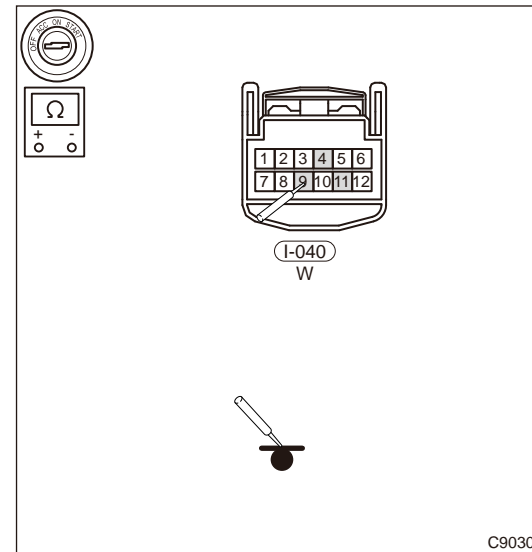
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect central console switch connector I-040 and AVM module connector B-229.
- (d) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (e) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (f) Check if related connector pins are in good condition.
- (g) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, check for continuity between I-040 (9) and B-229 (1), I-040 (4) and B-229 (17), I-040 (11) and B -229 (27) to check circuit for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-040 (9) - B-229 (1)	Always	≤ 1 Ω
I-040 (4) - B-229 (17)	Always	≤ 1 Ω
I-040 (11) - B-229 (27)	Always	≤ 1 Ω



(h) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals (9), (4) and (11) of connector I-040 and body ground to check instrument panel wire harness for short to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-040 (9) - Body ground	Always	No continuity
I-040 (4) - Body ground	Always	No continuity
I-040 (11) - Body ground	Always	No continuity



NG

Repair or replace connector or wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace AVM module

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B17071C	PDC Function Indicator Light Circuit Failure
DTC	B170771	PDC ON/OFF Switch Mechanical Adhesion

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B17071C	PDC Function Indicator Light Circuit Failure	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PDC Switch • Wire harness • AVM module
B170771	PDC ON/OFF Switch Mechanical Adhesion	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Replace PDC switch with a new one

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Remove the old PDC switch
- (c) Install new switch and perform running test.

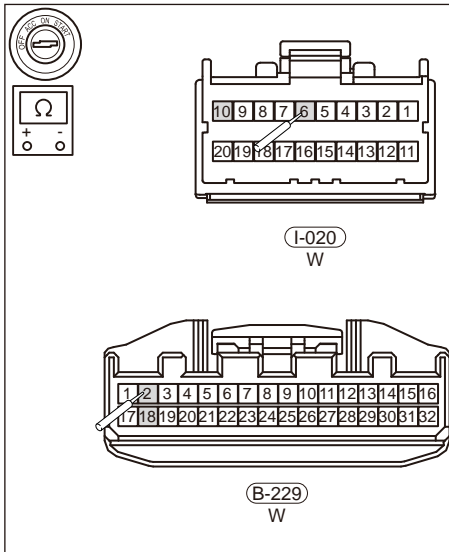
OK Replace PDC switch

NG

2 Check wire harness for open or short

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect PDC switch connector I-020 and AVM module connector B-229.
- (d) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (e) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (f) Check if related connector pins are in good condition.
- (g) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, check for continuity between I-020 (10) and B- 229 (18), I-020 (6) and B-229 (2) to check circuit for open.

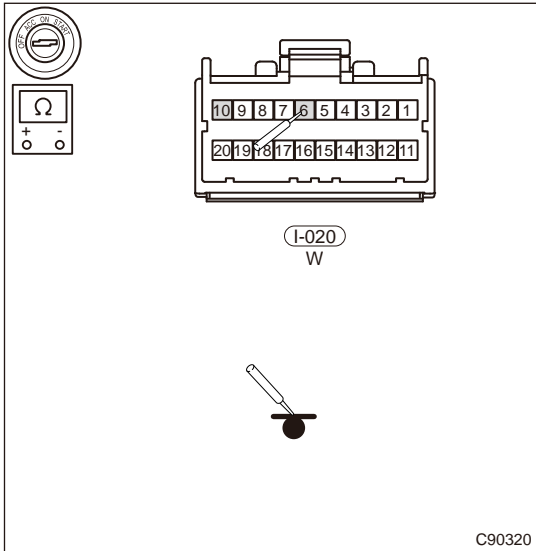
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-020 (10) - B-229 (18)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
I-020 (6) - B-229 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



C90310

- (h) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals (6), (10) of connector I-020 and body ground to check instrument panel wire harness for shortly ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-020 (6) - Body ground	Always	No continuity
I-020 (10) - Body ground	Always	No continuity



C90320

NG Replace wire harness

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
 (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
 (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG

Replace AVM module

OK

Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

DTC	B170C54	AVM No Calibration
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B170C54	AVM No Calibration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AVM No Calibration

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Recalibration

DTC	B171204	AVM Controller Malfunction
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B171204	AVM Controller Malfunction	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> AVM Controller Malfunction

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Replace AVM controller

OK

Clear DTCs

DTC	B171309	Rear Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171396	Rear Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault
DTC	B171409	Rear Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171496	Rear Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171509	Rear Right Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171596	Rear Right Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171609	Rear Left Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171696	Rear Left Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171709	Rear Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171796	Rear Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171809	Rear Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171896	Rear Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault
DTC	B171909	Front Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171996	Front Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault
DTC	B171A09	Front Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171A96	Front Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171B09	Front Right Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171B96	Front Right Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171C09	Front Left Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171C96	Front Left Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171D09	Front Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171D96	Front Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed
DTC	B171E09	Front Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault
DTC	B171E96	Front Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B171309	Rear Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ultrasonic sensor • Wire harness • AVM module
B171396	Rear Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault	
B171409	Rear Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171496	Rear Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	
B171509	Rear Right Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171596	Rear Right Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B171609	Rear Left Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171696	Rear Left Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	
B171709	Rear Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171796	Rear Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	
B171809	Rear Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171896	Rear Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault	
B171909	Front Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171996	Front Right Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault	
B171A09	Front Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171A96	Front Right Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	
B171B09	Front Right Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171B96	Front Right Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	
B171C09	Front Left Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171C96	Front Left Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	
B171D09	Front Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171D96	Front Left Lateral Ultrasonic Sensor Detection Failed	
B171E09	Front Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Hardware Fault	
B171E96	Front Left Long Distance Ultrasonic Sensor Fault	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Caution

The following detection takes the front left long distance ultrasonic sensor as an example.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check the front left long distance ultrasonic sensor

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Remove the old front left long distance ultrasonic sensor.
- (c) Install new front left long distance ultrasonic sensor and perform running test.

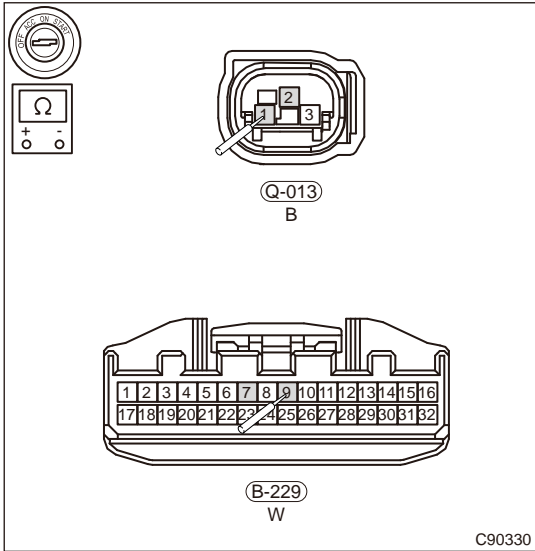
OK → **Replace the front left long distance ultrasonic sensor**

NG

2 Check wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect AVM module connector B-229 and front left long distance ultrasonic sensor connector Q-013.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between front left long distance ultrasonic sensor and AVM controller separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-229 (9) - Q-013 (1)	Always	≤ 1 Ω
B-229 (7) - Q-013 (2)	Always	≤ 1 Ω



NG → **Replace wire harness and connector**

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the fault information and confirm that the fault has been solved.

NG → **Replace AVM module**

OK → **Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired.**

DTC	B172055	Not Coded
-----	---------	-----------

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B172055	Not Coded	• Not Coded

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

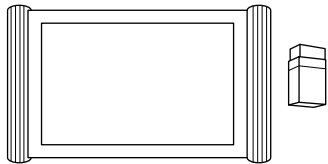
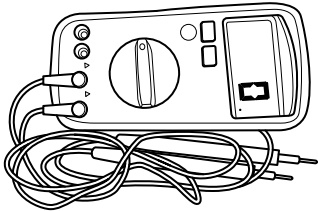
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Reconfiguration
---	------------------------

3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

3.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0001006</p>
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH000206</p>

3.2 Reverse Radar Sensor

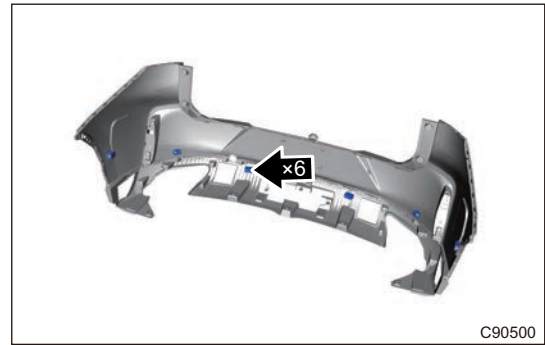
■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing reversing radar sensors.**
- **Operate carefully to avoid damaging reversing radar sensors, when removing reversing radar sensors.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the rear bumper

- (4) Disconnect the reversing radar sensor connector
- (5) Remove reversing radar sensor from slot of rear bumper assembly



C90500

■ Installation

Warning

When installing reversing radar sensor, align the boss at end of reversing radar sensor with the slot on rear bumper assembly, and then firmly install reversing radar sensor.

Caution

- Install connectors in place when installing reversing radar sensors.
- Check reversing radar system for proper operation, after installing reversing radar sensors.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

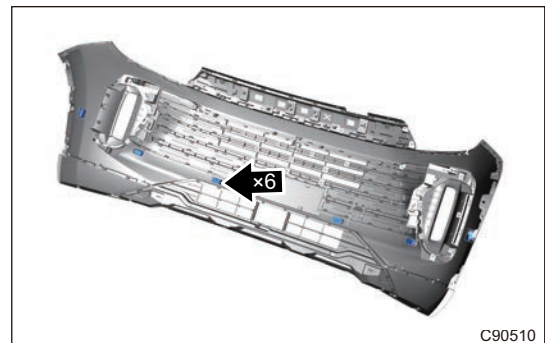
3.3 Front Radar Sensor (If Equipped)

■ Removal

Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front radar sensor.
- Operate carefully to avoid damaging reversing radar sensor, when removing front radar sensor.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly
- (4) Disconnect the front radar sensor connector
- (5) Remove front radar sensor from slot of rear bumper assembly



C90510

■ Installation

Caution

- Install connectors in place when installing front radar sensor.
- Check front radar system for proper operation, after installing front radar sensor.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

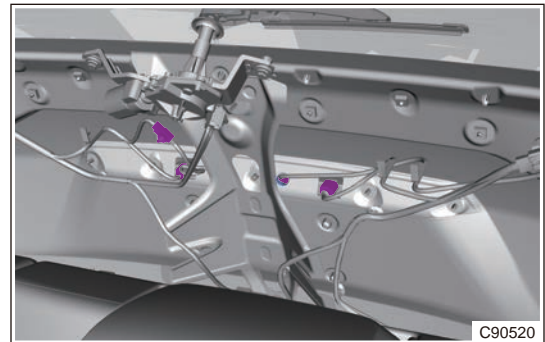
3.4 Rear Camera Assembly (If Equipped)

■ Removal

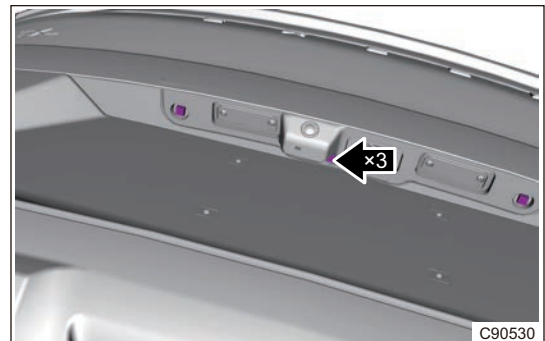
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear camera assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear camera assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

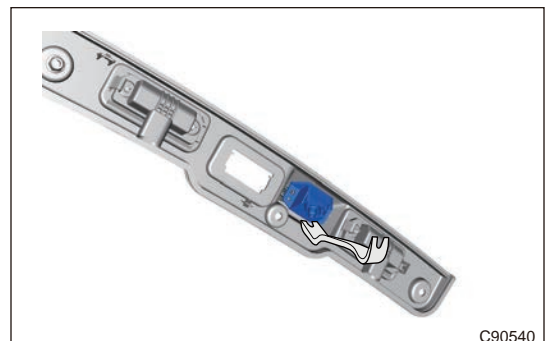
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the back door lower protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the license light connector, back door switch connector and rear camera connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing nuts from license plate light protector.



- (6) Remove the license plate light protector.
- (7) Remove the rear camera assembly with interior crow plate.



■ **Installation**

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

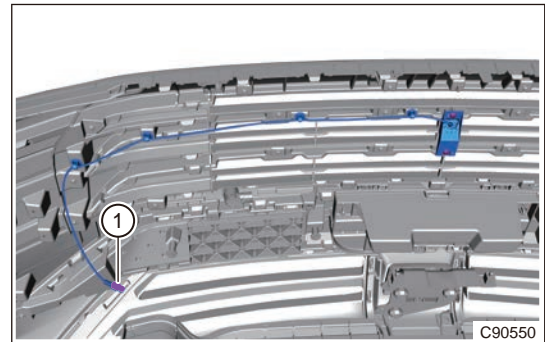
3.5 Front Camera Assembly (If Equipped)

■ **Removal**

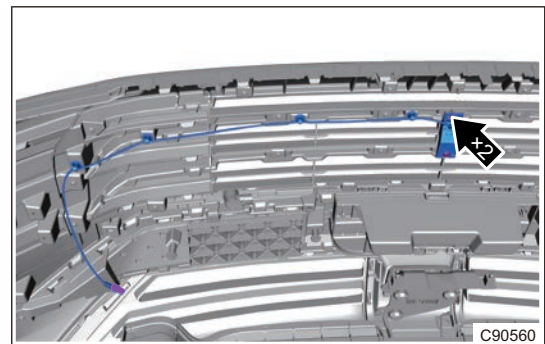
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front camera assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front camera assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove connector (1) from front camera.



(5) Using a cross screwdriver, remove the bumper.



(6) Remove the front camera assembly.

■ **Installation**

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.6 Side Camera Assembly (Both Sides) (If Equipped)

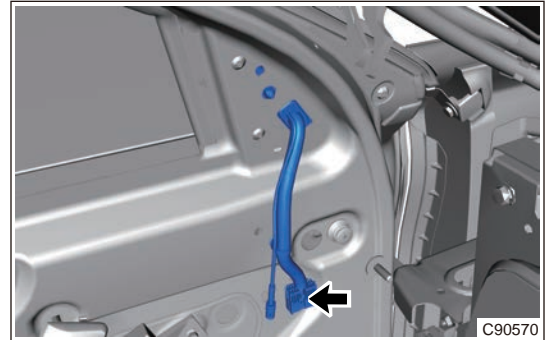
■ **Removal (Take left side as an example)**

Warning

As side camera is installed inside the outside rear view mirror assembly, it must be replaced together with outside rear view mirror assembly when damaged.

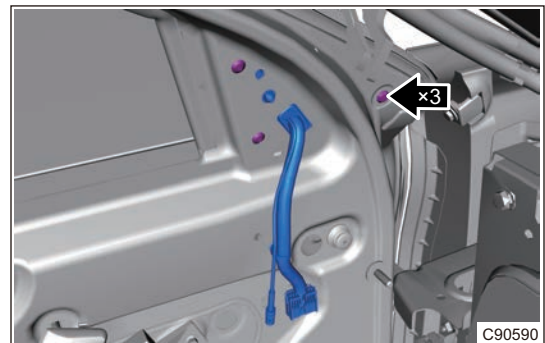
(1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch

- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the front left door protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the left outside rear view mirror connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts from left outside rear view mirror.

Tightening torque
 $7 \pm 1 \text{ N m}$



- (6) Remove the left outside rear view mirror assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

- Install connector in place and tighten fixing nuts to the specified torque, when installing the outside rear view mirror assembly.
- Make sure the outside rear view mirror assembly can move smoothly, flexibly and reliably after installing.
- After installing outside rear view mirror assembly, it is necessary to perform panoramic image calibration.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.7 Reversing Radar Control Module Assembly

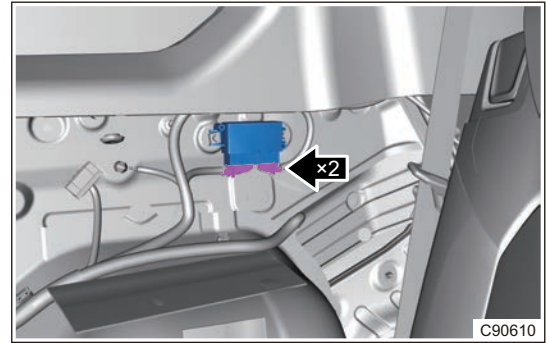
■ Removal

Warning

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing reversing radar control module assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing reversing radar control module assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

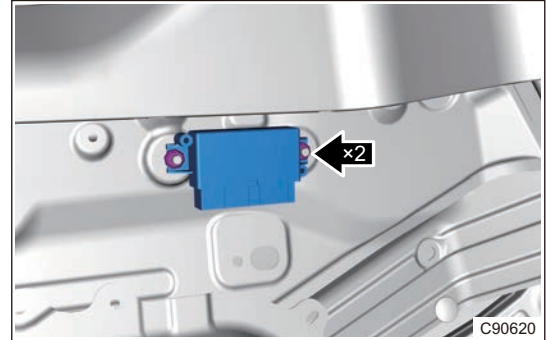
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the luggage compartment left wheel house assembly

- (4) Disconnect the reversing radar control module assembly connector



- (5) Remove 2 fixing bolts between reversing radar control module assembly and vehicle body

Tightening torque
 $3.5 \pm 0.5\text{N m}$



- (6) Remove the reversing radar control module assembly

■ **Installation**

Warning

- Tighten fixing bolts to the specified torque, when installing reversing radar control module assembly.
- Install connector in place when installing reversing radar control module assembly.
- Check reversing radar system for proper operation, after installing reversing radar control module assembly.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.8 Panoramic Control System Module (If Equipped)

■ **Removal**

Caution

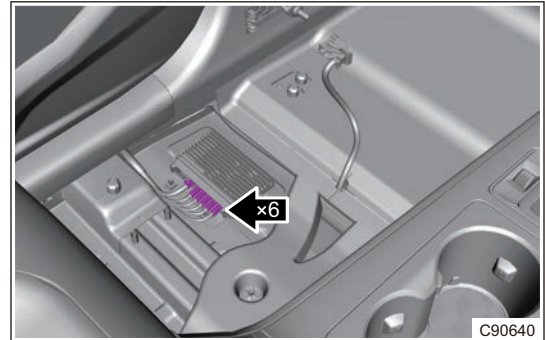
- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing panoramic control system module assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing panoramic control system module assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the front passenger seat assembly.

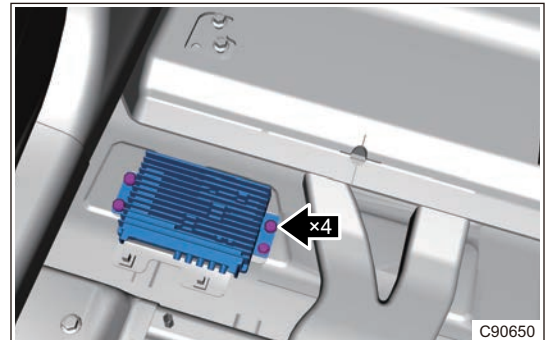
- (4) Turn over the front floor carpet.



- (5) Disconnect panoramic control system module connector.



- (6) Remove 4 bolts from panoramic control system module.



- (7) Remove panoramic control system module assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

- Tighten fixing bolts to the specified torque, when installing panoramic view monitor control module assembly.
- Install connector in place when installing panoramic view monitor control module assembly.
- Check reversing radar system for proper operation, after installing panoramic view monitor control module assembly.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

BODY ELECTRICAL

39.1	Fatigue Monitoring	1531
1	Warnings and Precautions	1531
1.1	Precautions	1531
2	System Overview	1531
2.1	System Description	1531
2.2	System Component Diagram	1531
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	1532
2.4	System Function	1532
39.2	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1538
1	Tool	1538
2	Removal and Installation of Fatigue Monitoring Camera	1538
2.1	Removal	1538
2.2	Installation	1538

39.1 Fatigue Monitoring

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

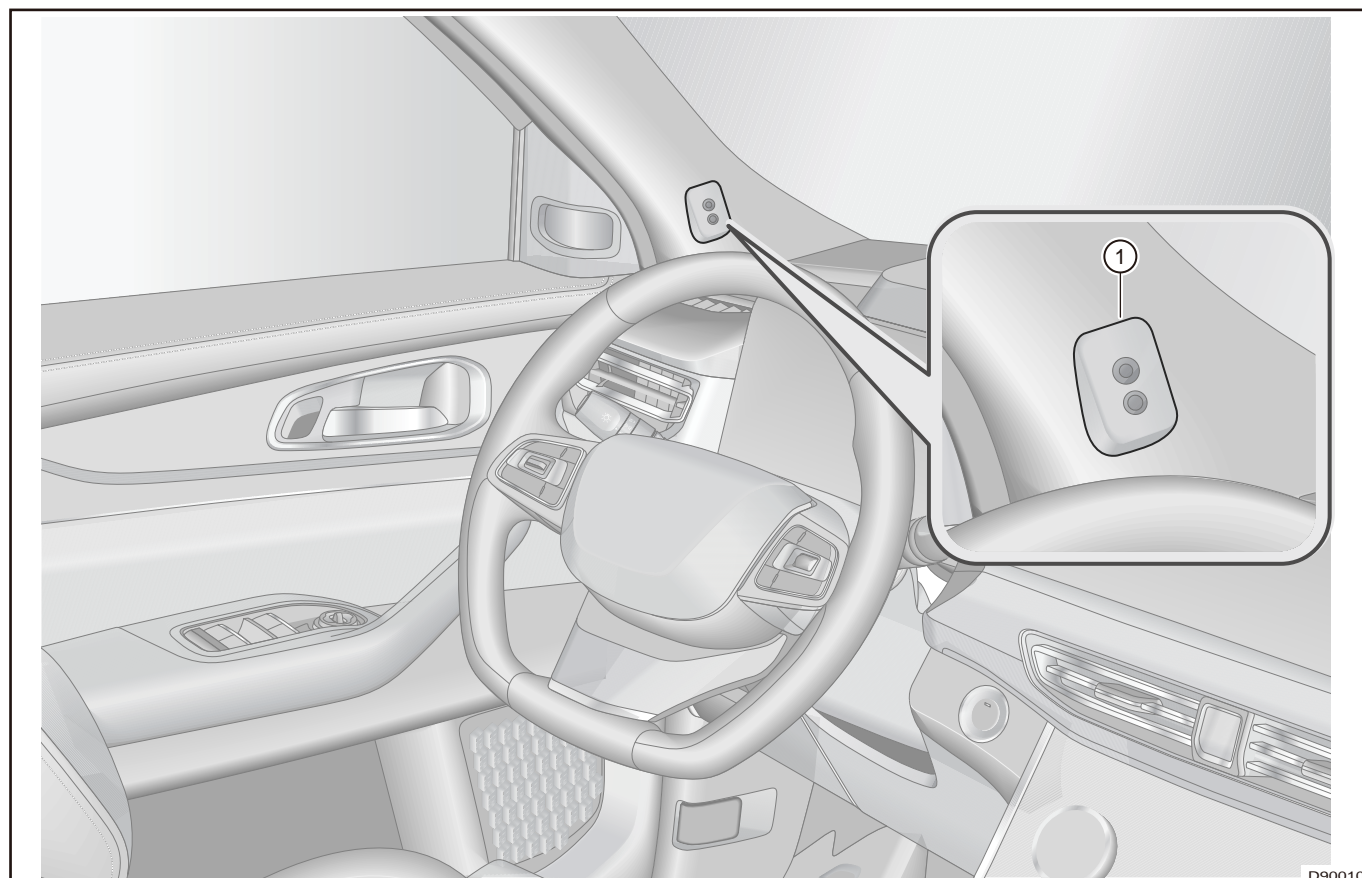
- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing fatigue monitoring camera.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied when removing fatigue monitoring camera. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched when removing fatigue monitoring camera.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

The fatigue monitoring system monitors driver's physiological image response through the camera, and relies on Baidu Vision AI capabilities. When driver's fatigue and dangerous driving state are found, it uses a series of reminders to keep driver's attention in driving state. Avoid danger caused by fatigue driving.

2.2 System Component Diagram

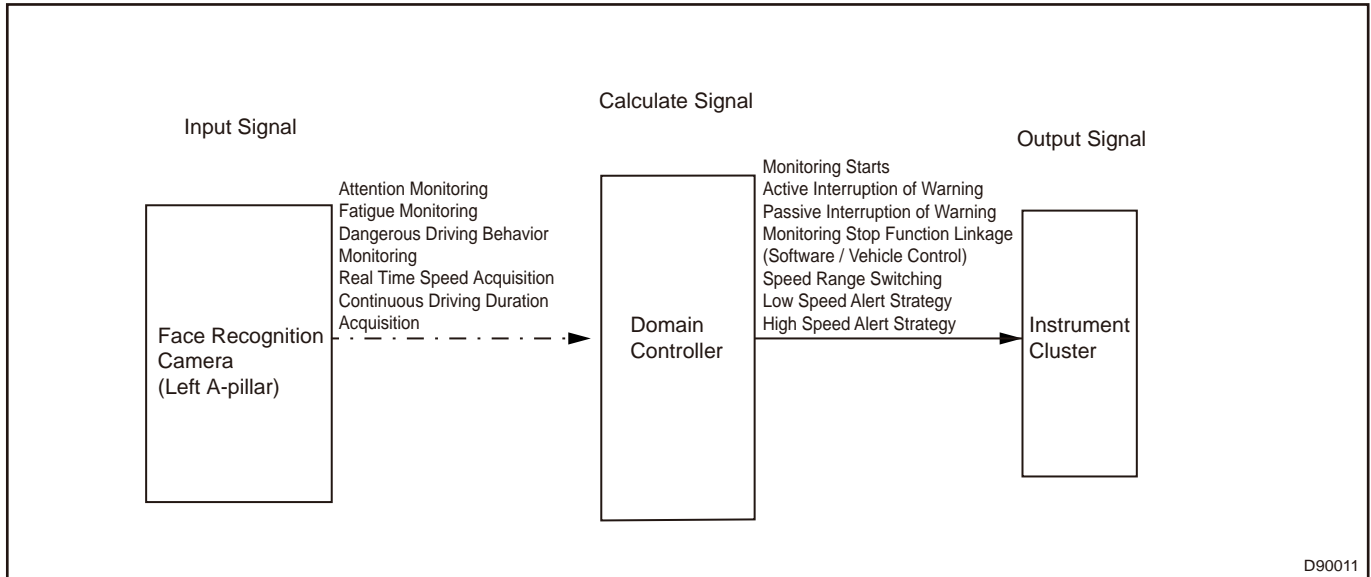


D90010

1

Face Recognition Camera

2.3 System Schematic Diagram









For fatigue monitoring, the signal is input by the face recognition camera, calculated by the domain controller and output to the instrument cluster.

2.4 System Function

■ Image recognition

The image data is collected by the camera, and the data is subject to user's natural action. The camera obtains the following contents in the instrument cluster, and the following is an example of the content (- supports recognition of wearing sunglasses, and the camera has an infrared mode to support night recognition):

Category	Action	Diagram	Note
Dangerous driving behavior	Head movement	 D90020	Detect normal head movement, only head movement may be more dangerous. For example, look to the left, look to the right, etc.
	Drink	 T20030	Take water cup and mineral water to drink normally, excluding detection of eating
	Normal smoking	 D90040	

Category	Action	Diagram	Note
	Normal calling	 D90050	What we detect is driver normal calling action. We will give a prompt only when the calling action lasts for a certain period of time
Fatigue driving feature	Normal yawning	 D90060	
	Eyes closed for a long time	 D90070	Head-down drowsiness is detected by the deviation of sight. Since it is impossible to distinguish head-down drowsiness and looking down, data shows that closing eyes for 1.5s-3s is prone to accidents

■ Fatigue monitoring dimension input

Vehicle monitors the following contents and inputs reminder strategy:

Category	Item	Description
Vehicle speed	$0 \text{ km/h} \leq \text{vehicle speed} < 60 \text{ km/h}$	Generally in special road section, congested road section and urban road section.
	$60 \text{ km/h} \leq \text{vehicle speed} < 120 \text{ km/h}$	Generally in urban express lanes, loops and highway, vehicle speed is relatively high, short-term loss of attention may lead to danger.
	Vehicle speed $> 120 \text{ km/h}$	Beyond the speed of domestic road design, facing greater danger.
Frequency and duration of fatigue behavior	Eyes closed	Duration
	Head movement	Duration
	Calling	Times (only prompt after a single call lasts for a certain period of time)
	Yawning	Number of times
	Drinking	Number of times
	Smoking	Number of times

■ Monitoring switch

The monitoring switch automatically controls the start, pause, and end of monitoring, and at the same time performs mode switching according to the real-time speed.

Status	Value
Start monitoring	When vehicle speed reaches 30 km/h, continuous monitoring starts. The speed can exclude temporary parking rest state and some non dangerous states. After detection starts, instrument panel cluster displays DMS icon
Small eye detection	After driving fatigue monitoring system starts, driver is judged to have small eyes if driver closes eyes continuously for 10 s when the face is detected, long-term eye-close warning will be turned off during this trip (In the application of project, it is necessary to strictly control camera point not to be too high, so as to avoid false recognition of closing eyes at viewing angle); When driving behavior monitoring system is on, whether driver has small eyes or not will be judged again every 30 minutes. If driver has small eyes, long-term eye-close warning will be turned off during this trip
Interrupt warning	When user feels excessively disturbed by reminder, user can actively interrupt reminder of Xiaoyun: Wake up Xiaodu (wake up Xiaoyun to interrupt and end the warning state). The above strategy only interrupts this warning
Stop Monitoring	When speed is lower than 30 km/h, detection will be stopped, and detection record will not be cleared. When speed is 0, detection data will be cleared. There is a monitoring switch in setting
Speed range switching (around 30 km/h)	After switching speed range, monitoring duration and times will not be cleared; Switching speed range will not interrupt current reminder.

■ Warning type

According to strategy, warning can be divided into four levels:

Level	Degree	Strategy	Application	Description	Reminder method
Level 1	Weak	User actively perceives	User attention is normal	Mild behaviors are less dangerous and do not need to disturb user excessively.	Icon (triggered separately, see specific behavior).
Level 2	Light	User passively perceives	Users are not focused	User behavior may bring some dangers, so passive perception intervention.	Icon, sound (-triggered separately, see specific behavior).
Level 3	Light	User passively perceives	Users are not focused	User behavior may bring some dangers, so passive	Icon, sound (-uniform design) voice broadcast (triggered separately, see

Level	Degree	Strategy	Application	Description	Reminder method
				perception intervention.	specific behavior).
Level 4	Medium	Continuous sound awaken	User loses some attention	Short time passive perception fails to take effect, so continuous sound awaken will be performed.	Icon, voice broadcast, continuous sound prompt (- long sound is turned off continuously) (- triggered separately, see specific behavior).
Awakening strategy		Wake-up mitigation strategy	After waking up user, make further mitigation	Through music, chatting and navigating to service area.	Music, voice, navigating to service area (- prompt according to time dimension).

■ Reminder strategy

DMS prompts are divided into [basic prompt strategy] and [awakening strategy]

- Basic prompt strategy: Whole basic prompt strategy adopts successive degradation scheme, the first trigger is prompt, the next trigger is prompt, and the degree of prompt will be weakened.

Recognized Behavior	Duration/Times	Slow Mode	Fast Mode
Eyes always closed	2 s	Instrument cluster icon + voice + short sound	Instrument cluster icon + voice + short sound
	4 s	Instrument cluster icon + voice + long sound	Instrument cluster icon + voice + long sound
One way continuous	3 s/1 time	Instrument cluster icon + short sound	Instrument cluster icon + short sound
Line of sight deviation	3 s/2 times	Instrument cluster icon + short sound+ voice	Instrument cluster icon + voice + long sound
	3 s/3 times +	Instrument cluster icon + short sound	Instrument cluster icon + short sound
Yawning	1 time	Instrument cluster icon + sound (awakening strategy)	Instrument cluster icon + sound (awakening strategy)
	2 times	Instrument cluster icon + sound (awakening strategy)	Instrument cluster icon + sound (awakening strategy)
	3 times +	Instrument cluster icon + sound (awakening strategy)	Instrument cluster icon + sound (awakening strategy)
Calling with hand	1 time	Instrument cluster icon + short sound+ voice	Instrument cluster icon + short sound+ voice
	2 times +	Instrument cluster icon	Instrument cluster icon + short sound

Recognized Behavior	Duration/Times	Slow Mode	Fast Mode
Drinking	1 time	Instrument cluster icon + short sound+ voice	Instrument cluster icon + short sound+ voice
	2 times +	Instrument cluster icon	Instrument cluster icon
Smoking	1 time	Instrument cluster icon	Instrument cluster icon
	2 times	Instrument cluster icon + short sound+ voice	Instrument cluster icon + short sound+ voice
	3 times +	Instrument cluster icon	Instrument cluster icon

- The closed eyes state ends (waking up). During the warning process, when the user corresponding fatigue state disappears, the warning ends:

Strategy	Warning Ends
Eyes closed	Closed eyes state ends: Eyes open, images cannot be recognized, camera malfunctions

- Awakening strategy** Awakening strategy scene: For fatigue states such as yawning and long-time eyes closed, “awakening strategy” will be performed after strategy prompt is completed or user wakes up. After the prompt is interrupted by voice interaction, etc., no awakening strategy will be performed this time. Long sound playing strategy (only long eyes closed and line of sight deviation): After playing for 6 s, system actively stops long sound warning.

■ Dangerous driving behavior warning

Line of sight deviation

Logic	Warning Tips
First time in 10 minutes	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...)
Twice in 10 minutes	When speed \geq 60 km/h, Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s); Voice prompt: Don't be distracted, drive well. Xiaoyun finds that you are distracted, pay attention to road conditions ahead and drive well; Continuous sound: Similar to sound effect of unfastened seat belt. When speed < 60 km/h, Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s); Short sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...); Voice prompt: Don't be distracted, drive well. Xiaoyun finds that you are distracted, pay attention to road conditions ahead and drive well.
3 + times in 10 minutes	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...)

Calling

Logic	Warning Tips
First trigger	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...) Voice prompt: Please put down your mobile phone, it's dangerous to make a phone call while driving; It's very dangerous to call while driving. Please pay attention to driving safety.
2nd + trigger (speed \leq 60 km/h)	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s)
2nd + trigger (speed > 60 km/h)	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...)

Smoking

Logic	Warning Tips
Take the first puff each time (two smoking actions \geq 10 min, count as once)	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s)
Take the second puff each time (two smoking actions \geq 10 min, count as once)	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...) Voice prompt (- only once in the whole process): Choke to death, don't smoke, it's not safe to smoke while driving; Stop smoking and pay attention to driving safety
Take the third puff each time (two smoking actions \geq 10 min, count as once)	Icon: DMS icon flashes

Drinking

Logic	Warning Tips
Drink water for the first time in the whole process	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...) Voice prompt: Drinking water is dangerous when driving, pay attention next time
Drink water for the second time in the whole process	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s)

■ Warning of mild fatigue**Basic prompt strategy**

Trigger Condition	Warning Tips
Mild fatigue (yawn) for the first time	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...) Voice prompt: Prompt end, execute awakening strategy
Mild fatigue (yawn) for the twice + time	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Sound (du... du... du...) Voice prompt: Prompt end, execute awakening strategy

Awakening strategy

- Trigger time: Trigger after the end of basic prompt.
- Time judgment: From the starting time of last awakening strategy (yawn + eyes closed).
- Judge whether music is playing: Just listen, local, Bluetooth, FM (provided by Neusoft interface).

■ Warning of severe fatigue**Basic prompt strategy**

Trigger Condition	Warning Tips
Severe fatigue: Eyes closed for 2 s for a long time	Icon: DMS icon flashes (twice in 1 s, lasts for 2 s) Sound prompt: Similar to sound of not fastening seat belt. Voice prompt: Wake up quickly, pay attention to road condition, it is very dangerous
Eyes closed for 4 s	As above
State of eyes closed for a long time ends	Trigger awakening strategy

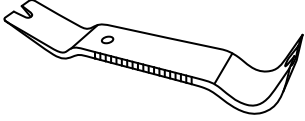
Multiple triggers: Basic prompt strategy of multiple triggers does not make degradation distinction.

Awakening strategy

- Trigger time: Severe fatigue, user wakes up, after the end of basic prompt strategy.
- Judgment of navigating to service area: If it is at a high speed (speed > 60 km/h), navigation guidance strategy will be implemented, otherwise, only voice prompt: Are you very sleepy? Find a place to rest.

39.2 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

2 Removal and Installation of Fatigue Monitoring Camera

2.1 Removal

Warning
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing fatigue monitoring camera. • Appropriate force should be applied when removing fatigue monitoring camera. Be careful not to operate roughly. • Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched when removing fatigue monitoring camera.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left A-pillar upper protector.
- (4) Disconnect the fatigue monitoring camera wire harness connector.
- (5) Remove the fatigue monitoring camera.

2.2 Installation

- (1) Install the fatigue monitoring camera.
- (2) Connect the fatigue monitoring camera wire harness connector.
- (3) Install the left A-pillar upper protector.
- (4) Install the negative battery cable.
- (5) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

BODY ELECTRICAL

40.1	Head Up Display	1540
1	Warnings and Precautions	1540
1.1	Precautions	1540
2	System Overview	1540
2.1	System Description	1540
2.2	System Component Diagram	1544
2.3	System Schematic Diagram	1544
2.4	Human-computer Interaction	1545
2.5	HUD functional requirements	1546
3	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING	1547
3.1	Diagnostic Help	1547
3.2	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1547
3.3	Ground Inspection	1547
3.4	Diagnosis Procedure	1548
3.5	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1548
3.6	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1549
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1553
4.1	Tools	1553
4.2	Replacement of Head Up Display (HUD)	1553

40.1 Head Up Display

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

Be sure to observe following instructions before servicing any parts in this section to avoid possible asset loss, personal injury or even death.

- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing head up display.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied when removing head up display. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched when removing head up display.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

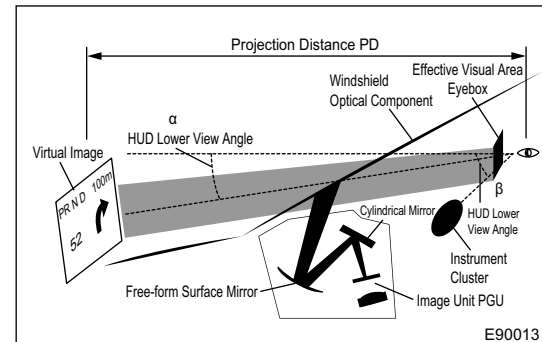
Head up display, call HUD for short, is a driving assist instrument used in vehicle. It is a kind of integrated optical electronic equipment composed of electronic components, display components, controllers, etc. Through optical system and electronic control, HUD projects driving information (such as speed, turning, driving range, etc.), navigation information, driving assistance (ADAS) and other information to front windshield in the form of images and characters, forming a virtual image in front of driver field of vision, so that driver can obtain corresponding information in real time without adjusting line of sight; HUD can adaptively adjust brightness of virtual image to match visual requirements by capturing brightness signal of external environment; At the same time, adjust image position to fully meet needs of drivers of different heights. Through the application of HUD, driving safety and comfort can be greatly improved.

■ Running noise

Under the whole vehicle environment, when adjusting HUD, the noise of test motor is no more than 40 dB at 50 cm away from HUD.

■ Optical principle

The optical imaging principle of HUD is: HUD drives the image unit to emit a light beam, which is reflected by a cylindrical mirror and a free-form surface mirror, then the light beam is projected to the front windshield, and then front windshield reflects the light beam to driver's eyes, so that the driver can see an enlarged virtual image at a greater distance ahead.



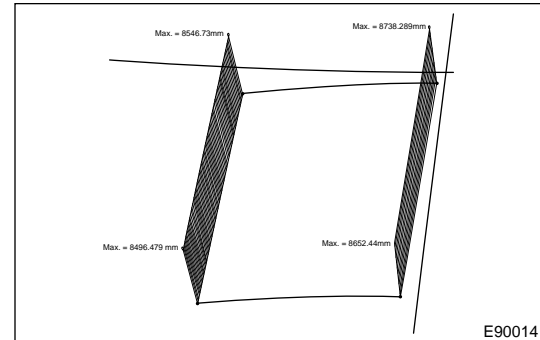
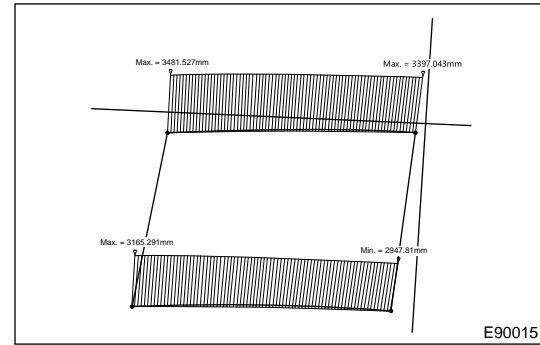
■ Windshield demand

As a part of the imaging system, the front windshield has certain requirements on radius of curvature, variation range and wedge angle. The curvature radius parameter information of front windshield of M32T in the HUD projection area is shown in illustration:

Curvature radius analysis of front windshield of M32T (- transverse direction)

Curvature radius analysis of front windshield of M32T (- vertical direction)

- Variation range of glass curvature radius in horizontal direction: 8500-8700.
- Variation range of glass curvature radius in vertical direction: 2950 - 3500.



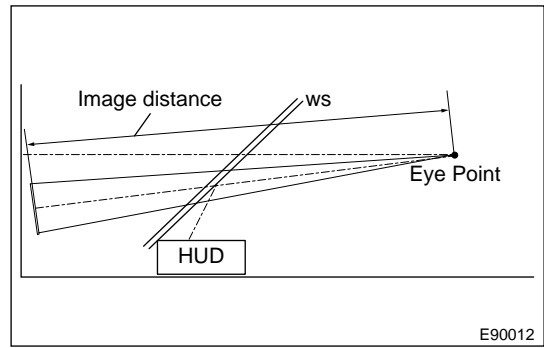
■ Image parameters

(1) The main parameters of M32T HUD image are as follows:

Type	Parameters	Tolerance Requirements	Note
Image size	241 mm x 80 mm	± 6 %	Calculated based on FOV and projection distance
Image distance	2300 mm	± 6 %	/
Field of view angle	6° x 2°	± 6 %	/
Lower view angle	3.5°	± 0.3°	/
Left view angle	0°	± 0.5°	
Eye box size	130 mm × 50 mm	/	Whole image seen within eye box
Eye movement range	± 50 mm	/	Whole image seen within moving range of eye box
HUD virtual image brightness	≥ 10,000 cd/m ²	/	White light brightness, highest brightness
Ghosting	/	Central eye box ≤ 2 mm, total eye box ≤ 3 mm	/
Distortion	/	5%	HUD factory status

(2)

The image distance is the distance from the eye point to the actual virtual image center, and the HUD projection distance is 2300 mm.



- (3) The field of view angle is the opening angle of the left and right edges and the top and bottom edges of the virtual image seen at the eye point. The field of view angle of HUD is 6° x 2°.
- (4) The lower view angle is the angle between the line connecting eye point and center point of virtual image and horizontal plane. The lower view angle of M32T HUD is 3.5°.
- (5) The left view angle is the angle between line connecting eye point and center point of image and vertical plane. The left visual angle of M32T HUD is 0°.
- (6) The size of the eye box indicates the range of eye movement in which whole image can be seen on driver side for the virtual image. The size of the eye box of M36T HUD is 130 mm x 50 mm.
- (7) The eye movement range indicates the adjustable amount of eye box. The eye movement range of M32T HUD is ± 50 mm.
- (8) HUD virtual image brightness is the brightness of HUD virtual image projected on front windshield. The maximum brightness of virtual image of HUD is required to be ≥ 10,000 cd/m2.
- (9) The ghosting defines the overlapping degree of different virtual images formed by reflection of inner and outer surfaces of glass when HUD is projected on the front windshield. The ghosting of HUD requires that the measured value of central eye box ≤ 2 mm, and the range of whole eye box ≤ 3 mm.
- (10) The distortion is that the actual HUD image will deviate from ideal value, which leads to a certain degree of distortion of image. This distortion degree is usually described by a ratio. The distortion requirement of HUD at factory is ≤ 5%.

■ Operating voltage range

HUD		CAN		Description
Data Stream/ Others	Voltage Value	Data Stream/ Others	Voltage Value	
Low voltage function prohibition	8.5 V	Low voltage network prohibition	5.8 V	Drop from normal voltage to the lowest voltage that cannot work
Low voltage function recovery	9 V	Low voltage network recovery	6 V	Recover from low voltage to the lowest voltage that can work normally
High voltage function prohibition	16.5 V	High voltage network prohibition	18.5 V	Recover from normal voltage to the highest voltage that cannot work normally
High voltage function recovery	16 V	High voltage network recovery	18 V	Drop from high voltage to the highest voltage that can work normally
Low voltage recovery time	200 ms ± 10 %	Low voltage recovery time	< 500 ms ± 10 %	Delay time from low voltage to normal voltage

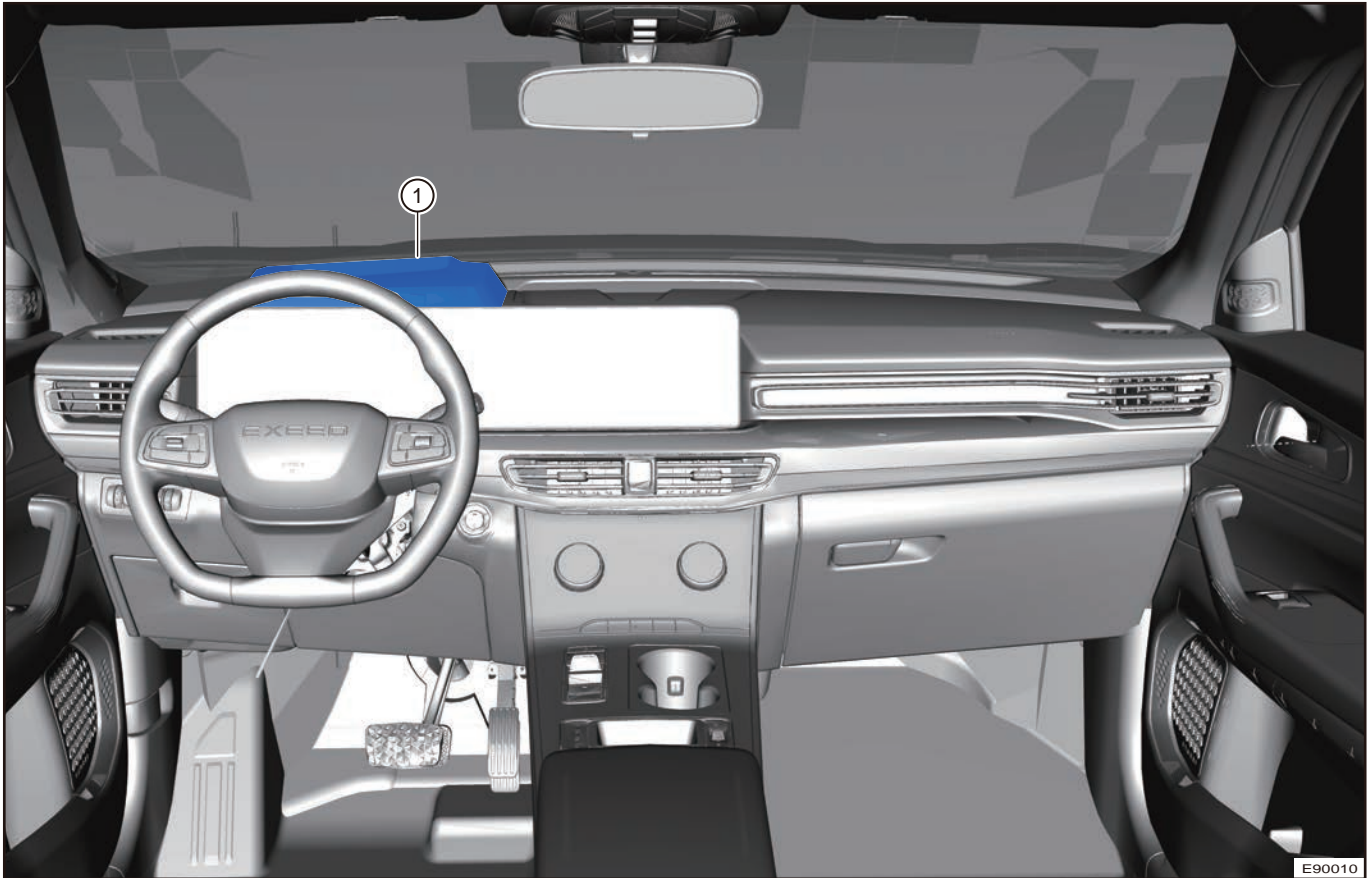
HUD		CAN		Description
Data Stream/ Others	Voltage Value	Data Stream/ Others	Voltage Value	
High voltage recovery time	200 ms ± 10 %	High voltage recovery time	< 500 ms ± 10 %	Delay time from high voltage to normal voltage
<p>Note description:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Setting voltage of DTC is 9 ~ 16 V and delay time is 200 ms ± 10 %. CAN voltage is defined by network platform department. If there is conflict with the above table, the network platform department shall prevail. Deviation of above voltage is controlled within ± 0.1 V. 				

- (1) Normal operating voltage range: 9 V to 16.0 V, including 9 V and 16.0 V (all voltages refer to the voltage at HUD power supply connection):
- When battery voltage is below 8.5 V, HUD output will be controlled according to the definition of low voltage protection.
 - When battery voltage is higher than 16.5 V, HUD output will be controlled according to the function definition of high voltage protection.
 - When battery voltage returns from abnormal to normal, all outputs will return to the output defined by respective function definitions.
- (2) High voltage protection function:
- If voltage is higher than 16.5 V, function output will be suspended in order to protect HUD.
 - If voltage drops from high voltage to 16 V or below, HUD will resume function output.
- (3) Low voltage protection function:
- If voltage is lower than 8.5 V, in order to save power, HUD will turn off output except CAN communication port.
 - If voltage rises from low voltage to 9 V or above, HUD output will resume.
- (4) Voltage range of 6 V ~ 16 V ensures CAN communication is normal.

■ Operating current range

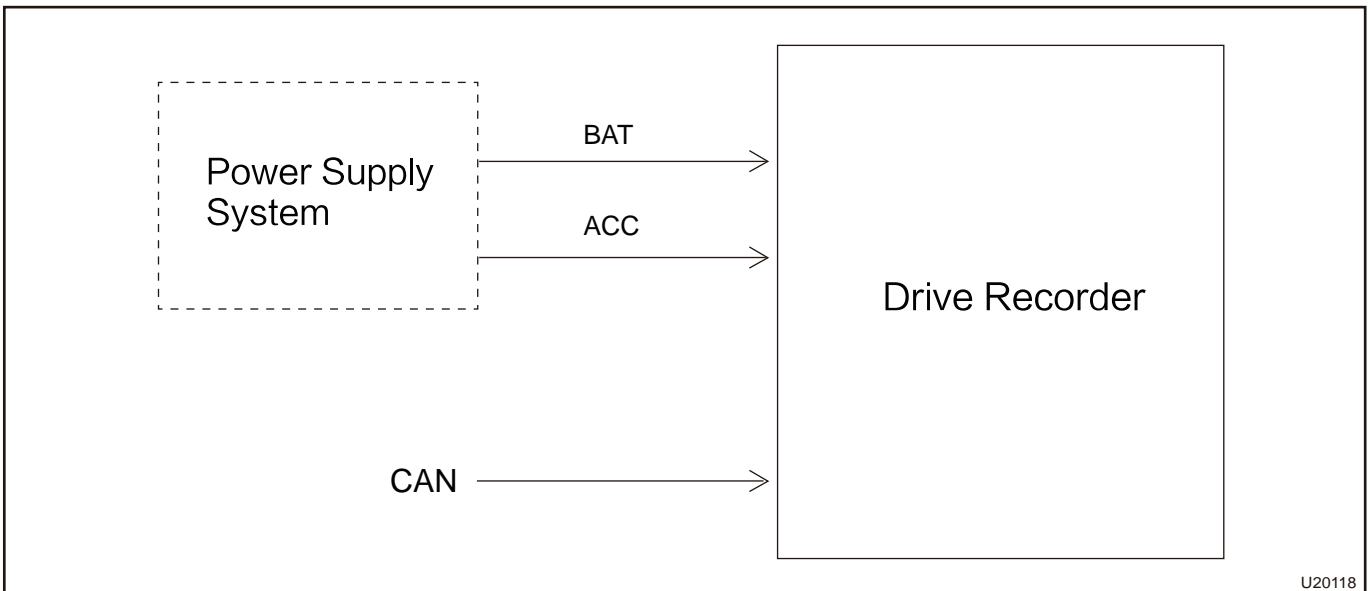
Operating current	Sleep current
< 1 A (HUD current under long-term stable operation condition)	≤ 0.2 mA

2.2 System Component Diagram



1	Head Up Display
---	-----------------

2.3 System Schematic Diagram

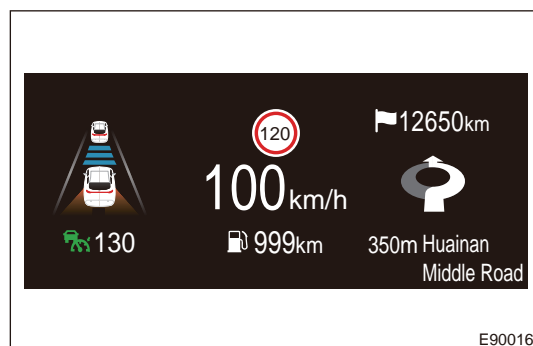


The head up display receives image signal, setting signal, switch signal and rain sensor signal in head unit through CAN and projects driving information, navigation information and driving assistance information to windshield in front of driver through the internal control unit.

2.4 Human-computer Interaction

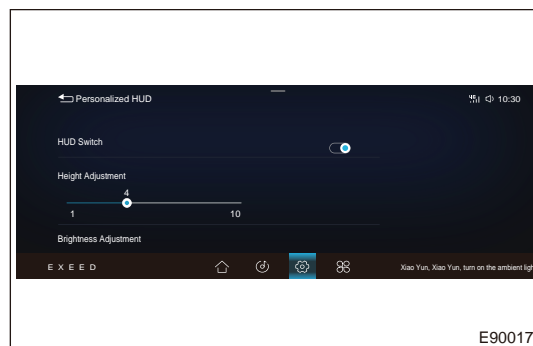
■ HUD display image

HUD display image signal is sent by DMC through CAN. HUD projects image on front windshield after receiving CAN signal. HUD can display driving status, ADAS signal, entertainment, navigation and other information as needed. HUD display information is as shown in illustration:



■ Head up display adjustment/setting

Through the touch screen menu setting, HUD display ON/OFF function can be controlled, image brightness and position can be adjusted, and normal mode/snow mode and other display styles can be switched. As shown in illustration below, brightness, height, function customization and mode switching are only effective when HUD is on.



Setting Item	Function	Description
ON/OFF	Turn HUD display information on or off	Control whether HUD is displayed.
Image height adjustment	Manually adjust the height of HUD display image	Adjust HUD height to adapt to use habits of different drivers.
Image brightness adjustment	Automatic adjustment	Vehicle collects ambient light brightness through rain light sensor, and HUD automatically adjusts HUD display image brightness according to the collected ambient brightness signal value, so as to adapt to different ambient brightness.
	Manual Adjustment	After HUD brightness is adjusted automatically, driver can fine-tune brightness to adapt to usage habits of different drivers
Snow mode switch	Normal mode/snow mode	HUD display style (including normal mode and snow mode) is selected according to the external environment. Snow mode: Due to white and bright background of external environment, HUD is required to adjust display style to meet requirements of user to recognize display content normally.
HUD display mode	Display interface settings	Navigation/ADAS interface interchanges left and right.

2.5 HUD functional requirements

According to CAN signal, HUD displays vehicle information, navigation information, active safety information and entertainment information through optical projection on front windshield. At the same time, the user can turn on/off HUD display, adjust HUD display brightness and height, and switch display mode through touch screen of central console.

It takes about 6 seconds for HUD from wake-up to normal display.

■ HUD function display

(1) Driving information display

- HUD displays current speed and driving mileage.

(2) Active safety display

- When adaptive cruise system operates, HUD displays adaptive cruise state, set target speed information, following distance information and icon of vehicle in front;
- When lane departure system operates, HUD displays different lane information, and prompts warning/alarm status through left and right deviation of vehicle;
- When front collision warning system/automatic emergency braking system operates, HUD displays the warning information of front collision warning system/automatic emergency braking system;
- When traffic signal recognition system operates, HUD displays speed limit information; When driving speed exceeds set speed, HUD displays speed limit information;
- When blind spot monitoring system operates, HUD displays blind spot monitoring information.

(3) Navigation information display

- HUD displays steering angle (straight, right turn, U-turn, left front turn, roundabout and other relevant navigation steering information).

(4) Bluetooth phone information display

- When Bluetooth phone function operates, HUD displays name of corresponding person.

■ HUD action sequence

- (1) When there is no memorized height information, HUD height is 6th gear (a total of 10 gears, 1 gear is the lowest virtual image, 10 gear is the highest virtual image);
- (2) When there is no memorized brightness level information and no RLS valid signal is received, HUD brightness is 25% of the maximum virtual image brightness when backlight is turned on;
- (3) When there is no memorized HUD switch status information, HUD status information is OFF (HUD factory setting is ON);
- (4) When there is no memorized snow mode switch status information, snow mode switch status information is OFF;
- (5) When there is no memorized ADAS position status information, HUD shows that ADAS is on left side;
- (6) The setting interface status of IHU should be displayed according to HUD feedback signal.

■ Over temperature protection

HUD is ON:

Function overview	Through obtaining HUD internal temperature information, judge whether TFT screen is in over temperature state. If TFT temperature is too high, HUD will gradually reduce display brightness.
Basic process	When internal temperature of HUD exceeds a certain value (threshold 1, to be calibrated), HUD will reduce image brightness; If HUD internal detection temperature > 85 °C (to be calibrated), HUD screen will pop up the text "HUD temperature is too high, turn off HUD" for 3 s, at the same time, set STAT_HUDDisplayOnOff value to 0, and then turn off HUD display; When HUD detects that temperature drops to 45 °C, HUD will turn on again, and brightness will be displayed according to gear value and RLS signal value saved during manual adjustment.

Signal process	Precondition satisfied → internal temperature information (sensor) → HUD drives LED → image brightness adjustment.
Others	Vehicle collects ambient light brightness through rain light sensor, and HUD automatically adjusts HUD display image brightness according to the collected ambient brightness signal value, so as to adapt to different ambient brightness.
	When HUD goes to sleep, rotate lens back to Park position to prevent sunlight from shining on screen.

3 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

3.1 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.2 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.3 Ground Inspection

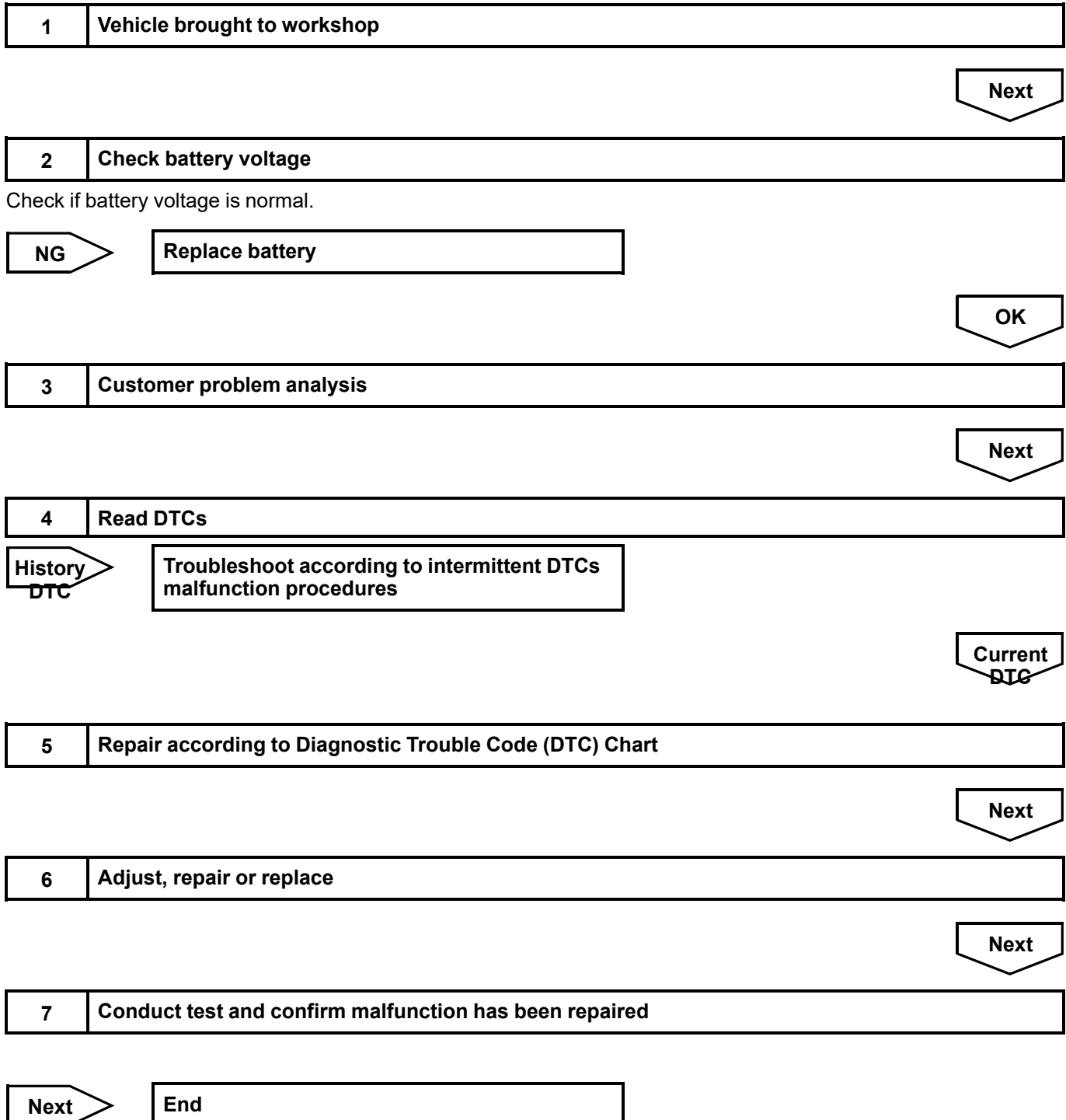
Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.

(6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.4 Diagnosis Procedure

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the system.



3.5 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B136016	Supply Voltage Too Low
B136017	Supply Voltage Too High

DTC	DTC Definition
B136102	HUD Motor Drive Failure
B136203	HUD LED Drive Circuit Short Circuit
B136301	HUD Overheating (Temperature Too High)
B136471	HUD Mirror Position Switch Failure
B136517	HUD TFT Signal Line Error
B136602	HUD FPD Link (Flat Panel Display Link) Lock Error
B136766	HUD Abnormal Reset Error
B136892	HUD EEPROM Error
B136992	HUD FLASH Error
B136A92	HUD RAM Error
U012287	Lost Communication With ESC
U014087	Lost Communication With BCM
U015587	Lost Communication With IPC
U024587	Lost Communication With IHU
U024887	Lost Communication With PEPS
U041681	Invalid Data Received From ESC
U042281	Invalid Data Received From BCM
U042381	Invalid Data Received From IPC
U042681	Invalid Data Received From PEPS
U054681	Invalid Data Received From IHU
U135088	CAN Bus Off

3.6 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B1360-16	Supply Voltage Too Low
DTC	B1360-17	Supply Voltage Too High
DTC	B1365-17	HUD TFT Signal Line Error
DTC	B1367-66	HUD Abnormal Reset Error
DTC	B1368-92	HUD EEPROM Error
DTC	B1369-92	HUD FLASH Error
DTC	B136A-92	HUD RAM Error

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B1360-16	Supply Voltage Too Low	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power supply fault; Line connection fault; HUD intermittent fault; HUD motor fault.
B1360-17	Supply Voltage Too High	
B1365-17	HUD TFT Signal Line Error	
B1367-66	HUD Abnormal Reset Error	

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B1368-92	HUD EEPROM Error	
B1369-92	HUD FLASH Error	
B136A-92	HUD RAM Error	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check battery voltage

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Start engine, and use voltage band of multimeter to check if battery voltage is normal. (Rated voltage: Not less than 12 V)

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
Battery (+) - Battery (-)	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V

NG **Repair or replace battery/alternator.**

OK

2 Check fuse

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Check continuity of fuse MF03 (125A), RF16 (5A) and RF08 (5A) in instrument panel fuse and relay box and engine compartment assembly with digital multimeter.

NG **Replace fuse**

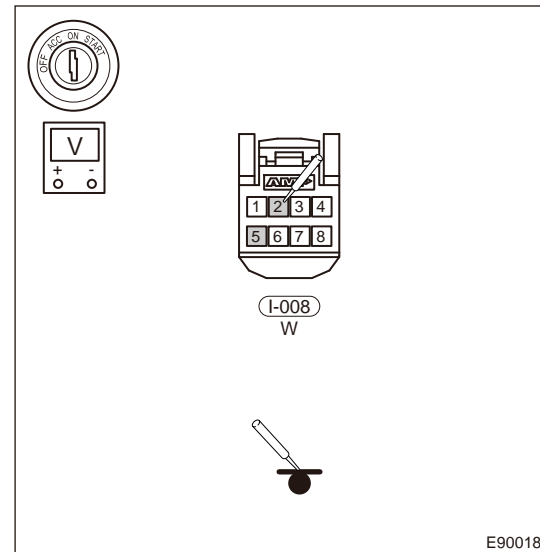
OK

3 Check interior power supply wire harness

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

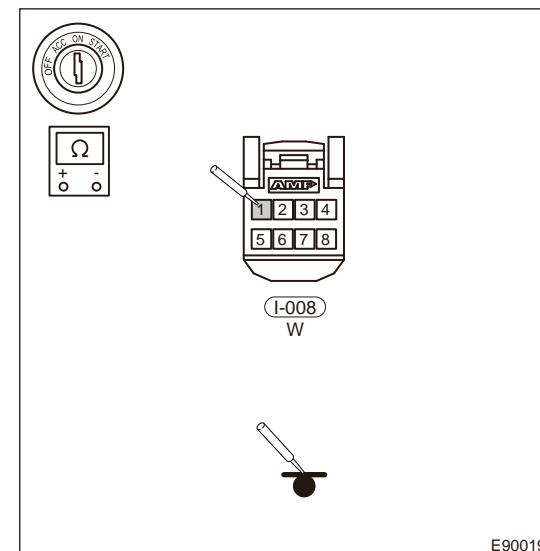
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the head up display connector I-008.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, separately measure the voltage between connectors I-008 (5), I-008 (2) and ground according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-008 (5) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
B-008 (2) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V



- (g) Using a digital multimeter to measure the resistance between interior wire harness connector I-008 (1) and ground according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-008 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



NG Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG Replace the head up display module.

OK System is normal

DTC	U012287	Lost Communication With ESC
DTC	U014087	Lost Communication With BCM
DTC	U015587	Lost Communication With IPC
DTC	U024587	Lost Communication With IHU
DTC	U024887	Lost Communication With PEPS
DTC	U041681	Invalid Data Received From ESC
DTC	U042281	Invalid Data Received From BCM
DTC	U042381	Invalid Data Received From IPC
DTC	U042681	Invalid Data Received From PEPS
DTC	U054681	Invalid Data Received From IHU
DTC	U135088	CAN Bus Off

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

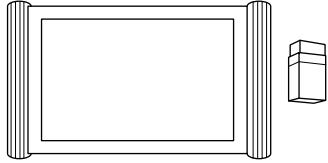
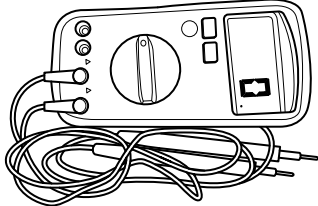
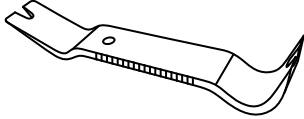
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Refer to CAN communication system for the above communication faults.
----------	--

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

4.2 Replacement of Head Up Display (HUD)

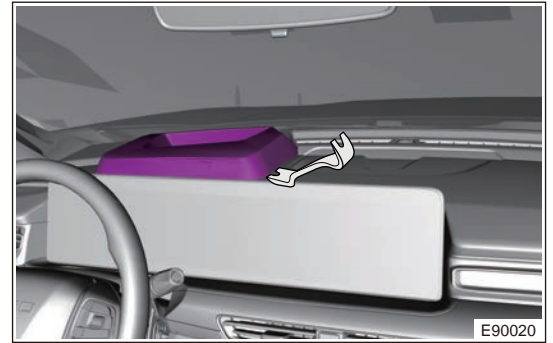
■ Removal

Warning

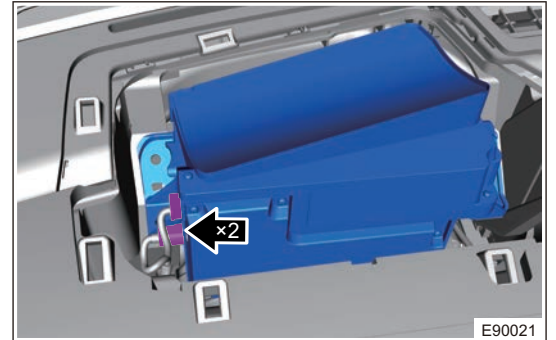
- Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched when removing head up display.
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing head up display.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing head up display. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

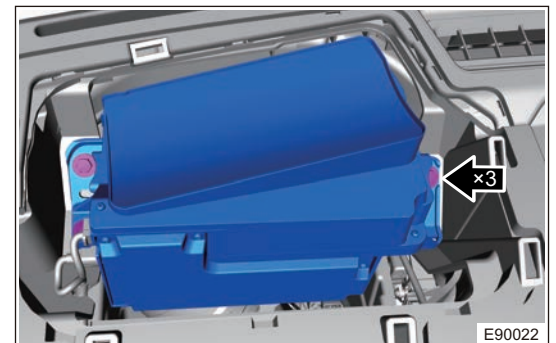
- (3) Remove head up display cover with interior crow plate.



- (4) Disconnect the head up display wire harness connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts from head up display.



- (6) Remove the head up display.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install head up display to a proper position.
- (2) Fix 3 fixing bolts of head up display.
- (3) Connect the head up display wire harness connector.
- (4) Install the head up display cover.
- (5) Install the negative battery cable.
- (6) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

1 Warnings and Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

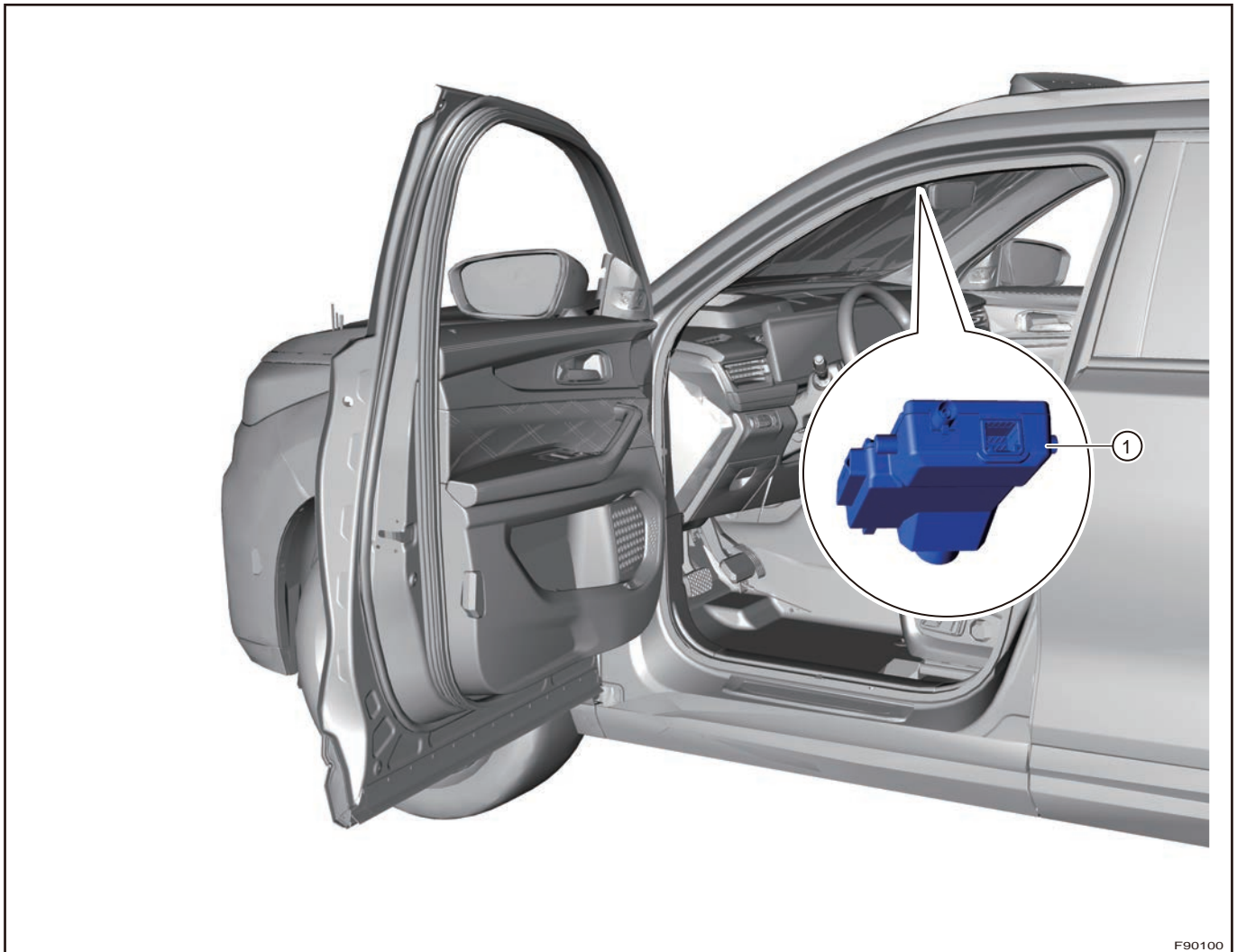
- (1) Prevent camera lens from being scratched during removal and installation of drive recorder.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

This product is a two-in-one product with a drive recorder and an AR navigation camera. The video display operation and AR navigation video of drive recorder need to be displayed on central control navigation screen.

2.2 System Component Diagram

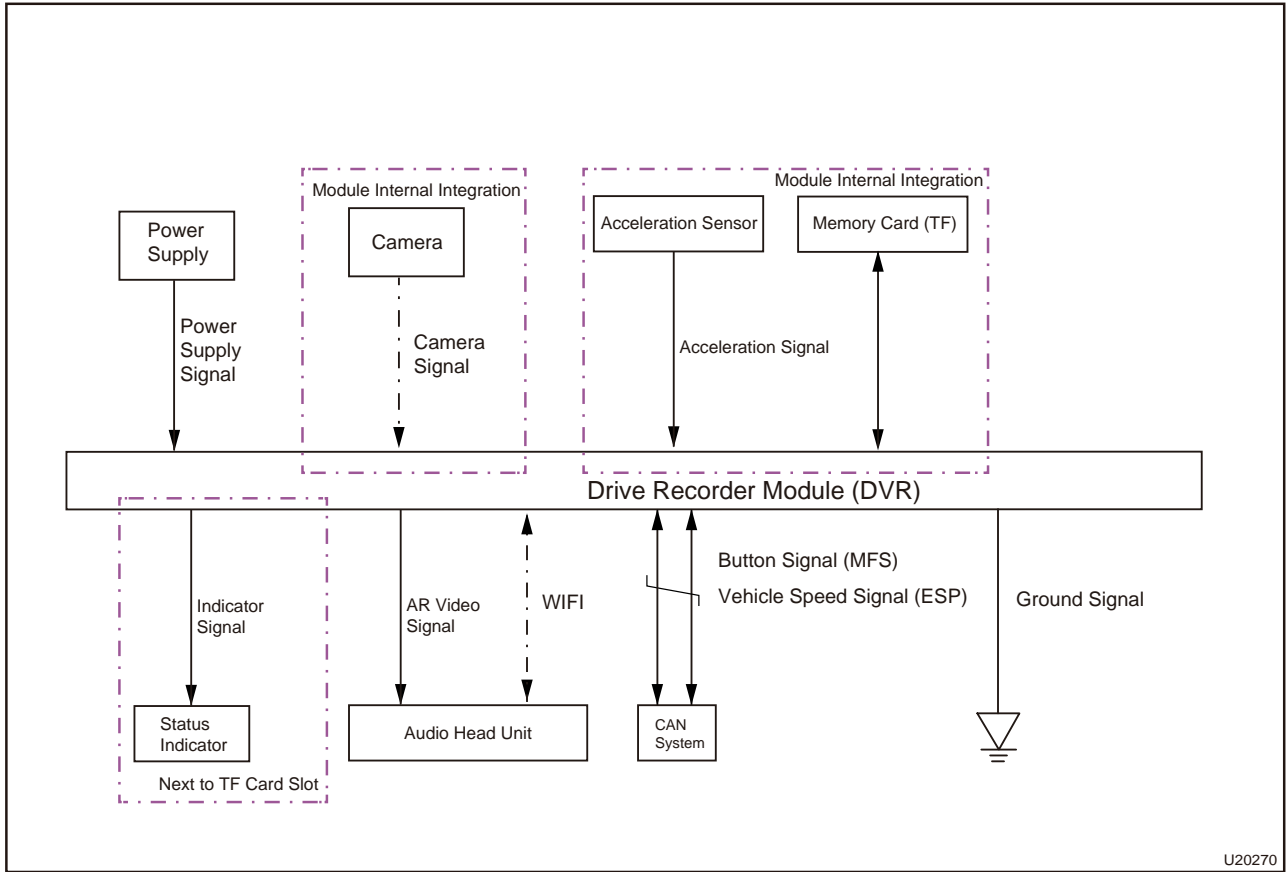


F90100

1

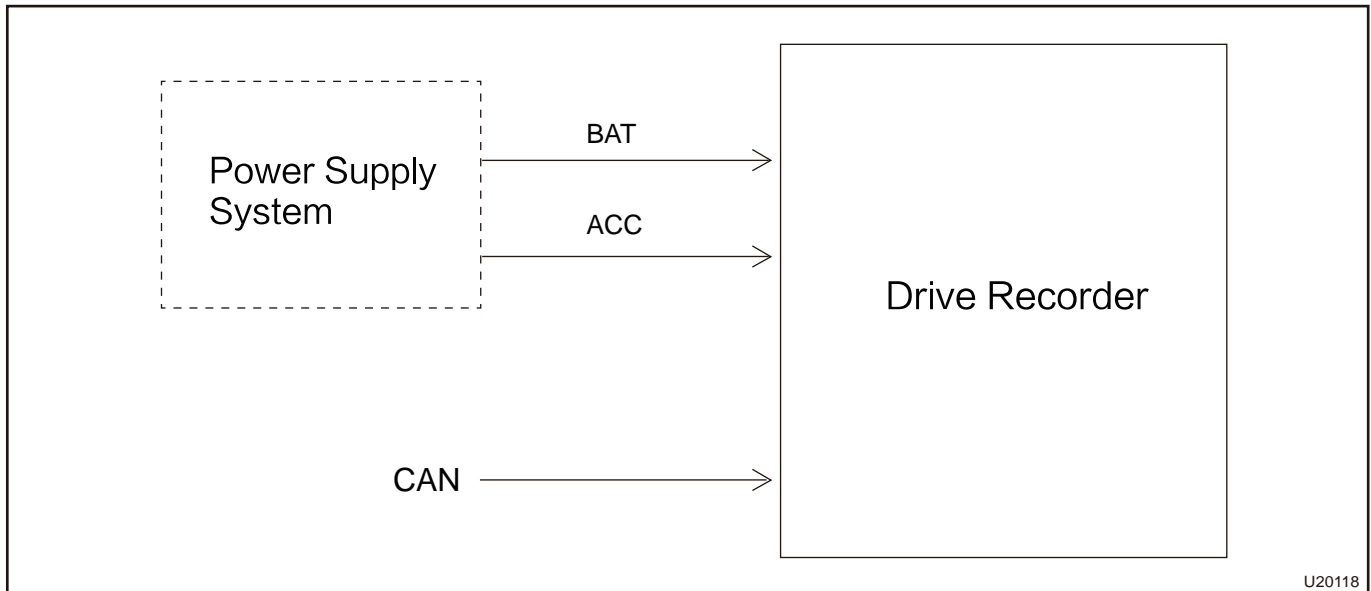
Drive Recorder

2.3 System Schematic



2.4 Function Specification

- (1) Function specification
 - 1) System ON



Under normal operating voltage range, the system ON logic is as shown in table below:

BAT	ON (KL15)	CAN Communication	Parking Monitoring	System Condition
OK	OFF	Available	ON or OFF	System starts and starts to record automatically
		Not available	ON	When vibration intensity of vehicle exceeds the set threshold, the drive recorder will be waken up by the signal from built-in G-sensor to record 20s video. After recording the video, if there is no continuous G-sensor signal, the system will shut down automatically. (no information watermark)
			OFF	Vehicle vibrates and drive recorder cannot be waken up to record video
	ON	Available or not available	ON or OFF	System starts and starts to record automatically
Abnormal	/	/	/	System cannot start

2) System OFF

Under normal operating voltage range, the system OFF logic is as shown in table below:

BAT	ON (KL15)	CAN Communication	System Condition
OK	ON	Available	ON
		Interrupted	Drive recorder can record video properly, but CAN related function cannot operate properly
	OFF	Available	System is in normal operating status, recording is normal and system does not turn off
		Interrupted	System off
Abnormal	/	/	System off

3) Operating current

Single head unit: ≤ 300 mA.

4) Static current

Drive recorder system: ≤ 0.1 mA.

Start drive recorder with BATT terminal of head unit connector connected to multimeter (dialed to current band), cuts off the power supply at ON position under normal operating status, and the stable

current value measured by multimeter after head unit enter sleep mode (CAN network is turned off and system does not operate) is the static current.

(2) Product feature

1) Function overview

Function	Description	Note
DVR Video Output	120° ± 5° in horizontal, 140° ± 5° in diagonal	5G WiFi connection, IHU display realizes display function, time delay ≤ 500 ms
AR Navigation Video Output	Angle 55°, intercept video images according to HMI requirements, and meet AR navigation calibration requirements	LVDS connection, IHU display realizes display function, time delay ≤ 30 ms
Frame Rate	30 fps	
Lens Pixels	≥ 1920*1080	
Low-light Level	0.1 lux	
Dynamic Range	> 95 dB	
Signal Noise Ratio	> 40 dB	
Storage Medium	TF card (8 GB ~ 128 GB supported)	
Record Function	Support	
Parking Monitoring	Support	
Power-off Storage Protection	Support	
ON Position Signal Detection	Support	
Snapshot	Support	
File Playback	Support	
General/Emergency Recording	Support	
CAN Communication	Support	
Indicator	Two-color indicator of red and blue; device operates normally: Blue light constants on; Wi Fi connection/data interaction: Blue light flashes slowly; device failure/function abnormality: Red light constants on; recording abnormality/no TF card: Red light flashes slowly; software upgrade: Red and blue lights flash alternately	

2) System parameter

Function	Description	Note
Drive Recorder	Starts to record automatically after starting	
Recording Resolution	1080P (by default), 720P	
Recording time	1 minute, 3 minutes (by default), 5 minutes	

Function	Description	Note
Driving Information Overlay	ON (by default), OFF	
Recording	ON, OFF (by default)	
Gravity Sensing Sensitivity	High, Medium (by default), Low	
Wide Dynamic	ON (by default), OFF	
Snapshotting	Taking photo, Short video, Taking photo + Short video (by default)	

3) System features

Primary Function	Secondary Function	Description	Note	
General Recording	Video recording	Video recording is circularly covered during recording, video is saved in TF card		
	Video recording switch	Video recording switch	ON by default	
	Recording resolution	1920*1080@30 frame/ 1280*720@30 frame	1920*1080@30 frame by default	
	Sound recording switch	ON/OFF	Sound recording OFF by default	
	Recording file time	1 minute/3 minutes/5 minutes		
	Driving information overlay	Driving information overlay switch		ON by default
			Driving information is from CAN network	
			Driving information includes: Vehicle speed, gear position, accelerator, high beam light, low beam light, front fog light, rear fog light, left turn signal light, right turn signal light, parking brake, foot brake, seat belt	
	Time watermark	When "driving information overlay" is set to on, there is current time watermark in screen of video file; When "driving information overlays" is set to off, time watermark is not overlaid in screen of video file; Time source: DVR RTC clock;		
	HDR switch	HDR switch	ON is for DVR function screen by default	
Emergency Recording	Emergency recording	When vibration is greater than vibration acceleration threshold of emergency	When recording is off, emergency recording will not be turned off	

Primary Function	Secondary Function	Description	Note
		recording, 10 s video before and after vibration moment is saved in emergency video area separately; Emergency video file is overwritten circularly.	
	Vibration acceleration induction sensitivity	Three vibration acceleration thresholds: High, medium, low	Medium by default
	Emergency recording overwriting	Emergency recording overwrite switch; When it is set to on, if emergency recording storage area is full, the earliest emergency video will be replaced by new emergency video; When it is set to off, if emergency video storage area is full, it will not be replaced, only a reminder will be given;	ON by default; Reminder is only displayed to make a text prompt on central navigation screen when WiFi is connected to central control navigation. If central navigation is not connected, it cannot be displayed.
Parking Monitoring	Parking monitoring	If vibration is greater than the parking monitoring vibration acceleration threshold with drive recorder turned off, it will turn off after turning on to record for 20 seconds.	Duration is the same as that of emergency recording video
	Parking monitoring switch	Parking monitoring switch	ON by default
Taking pictures	Taking pictures	1. Photo resolution is the same as current video resolution; 2. Recording is not paused when taking pictures; 3. The photo is stored in photo storage area of TF card; 4. The photo is overwritten circularly.	
	Steering wheel button control capturing	Respond to steering wheel button to take pictures;	
Playback	Video playback	Play the video file recorded by drive recorder in TF card on central control navigation head unit.	
	Photo playback	Play the photo file recorded by drive recorder in TF card on central control navigation head unit.	
File management	File management	Manage (delete) the video and photo file stored in TF	

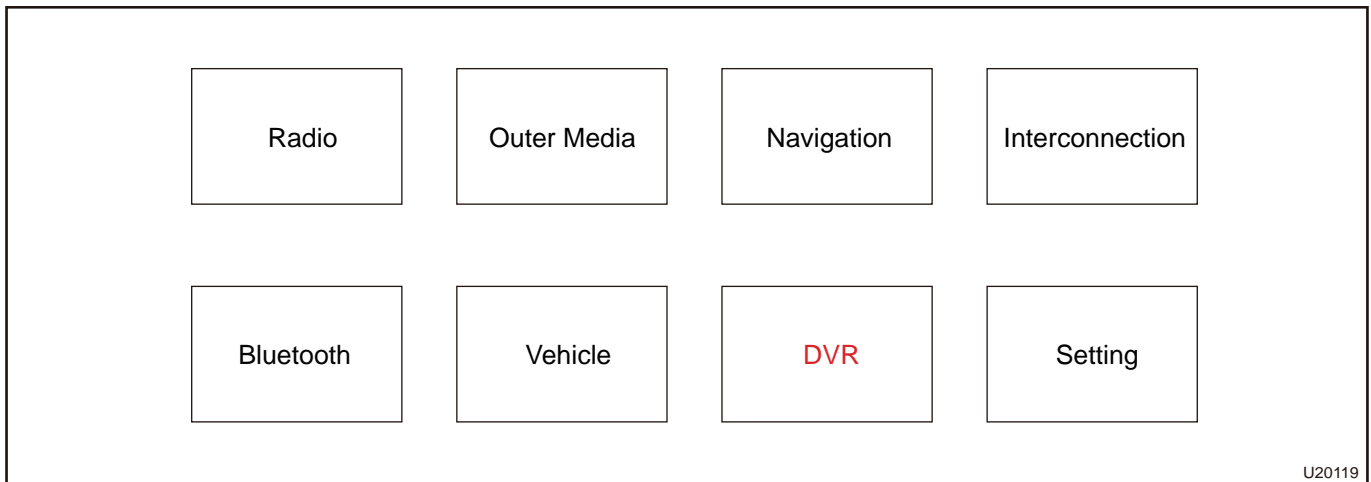
Primary Function	Secondary Function	Description	Note
		card of DVR on central control navigation head unit.	
	Formatting TF card	Format the TF card by central control navigation screen operation.	
AR Navigation Video Output	AR navigation video output	Capture video output of corresponding area with a 55° field of view	Specific angle is subject to real vehicle calibration
		AR navigation optical axis calibration, by adjusting AR navigation video interception area location, make AR navigation video center point coincide with theoretical optical axis center point;	
Specific angle is subject to real vehicle calibration	DVR video output and interaction	DVR outputs video and interacts via Wi-Fi	
		After DVR application is turned on by central control navigation head unit, it connects with wifi and starts to transmit data; After exiting DVR application, it stops data transmission and interaction, disconnect wifi connection;	
		WIFI ID and password are transmitted through LVDS (IIC in LVDS);	
		Use RTSP transport protocol to transmit real-time screen	
		Function includes: Real-time preview, normal video playback, taking pictures, file management, setting, etc.	
		Switching between WIFI 2.4G and 5G, controlled by LVDS (IIC in LVDS);	5G channel by default
Power management, CAN network	ON position signal response	When power is turned on in ON position, system turns on and starts recording; When power is turned off in ON position and there is no CAN communication, system turns off and stops recording, and save the video file.	

Primary Function	Secondary Function	Description	Note
	Video storage protection with power off	When it detects that power supply is cut off, start to save the video when stopping recording. Use super capacitor to save power and save the recording file before the moment of power off.	
	CAN network wake-up	System starts after receiving wake-up command from CAN network.	
	Transmit information	1. Vehicle driving information	
2. Wake-up command			
Status indication	Indicator	Two-color indicator of red and blue; device operates normally: Blue light constants on, Wi-Fi connection/data interaction: Blue light flashes slowly; device failure/function abnormality: Red light constants on; recording abnormality/no TF card: Red light flashes slowly; software upgrade: Red and blue indicator blinks alternately	

(3) Functional requirement

Caution
The schematic diagram of UI interface in this chapter is only for the assistance function description. The specific UI is subject to actual design.

This product is a two-in-one product with a drive recorder and an AR navigation camera. The video display operation and AR navigation video of drive recorder need to be displayed on central control navigation screen. The operation method of DVR depends on whether central control navigation head unit supports it. The function introduction in this section takes touch method as an example. Button operation method depends on whether there are buttons on button panel that support DVR operation. The voice control depends on whether voice engine has supported corpus.



1) Drive recorder connection

Drive recorder is connected with central control navigation through WiFi channel; Without entering DVR function, the WiFi connection between drive recorder and central control navigation is disconnected; When users need to view the video of drive recorder and operate drive recorder, click DVR icon in main interface, and central control navigation communicates through IIC in LVDS, transmits WiFi ID and password, and sends WiFi connection command to DVR; When DVR receives connection command of central control navigation head unit, connect WiFi hotspot of central control navigation head unit; After WiFi connection is successful, central control navigation head unit enters real-time preview interface of drive recorder.

On real-time preview screen, decode and display H.264 video streaming from head unit camera of DVR in real time (there is a certain delay due to video capture, encoding, transmission, decoding and player cache, the delay is less than 500MS).

2) TF card album folder:

i. General recording folder:

- Folder name: "NOR" .
- Internal file name: NOR_date_time A.MP4 (NOR_20180723_123233A.MP4).
- Storage space = (total capacity of TF card - 500M (reserved buffer space)) *3/4.

ii. Emergency recording folder:

- Folder name: "EVT" .
- Internal file name: EVT_date_time A.MP4 (EVT_20180723_123233A.MP4).
- Storage space = (total capacity of TF card - 500M (reserved buffer space)) *1/5.

iii. Photo folder

- Folder name: "PHO" .
- Internal file name: PHO_date_time A.JPG (PHO_20180723_123233A.JPG).
- Storage space = (total capacity of TF card - 500M (reserved buffer space)) *1/20.





3) General recording





i. Recording interface

When B+ and ACC ON signal are powered on, or B+ is powered on and CAN network communication is normal, and voltage and power circuit are normal, drive recorder will automatically start recording.

After the central control navigation is connected with drive recorder, it will enter the real-time preview interface to view the real-time image of the recorder. If the drive recorder is recording video normally, there is REC on the interface accompanied with red dot flashing. If the drive recorder is not recording video normally, only one red dot is always ON but not flashing, and there is no REC.

ii. Video operation

When the drive recorder is in the pause state, click  ICON to continue recording; ICON changes to . When the drive recorder is in the recording state, click ICON  to pause recording; ICON changes to .

The drive recorder is equipped with MIC, which can record audio synchronously while recording video. The user can turn off or turn on the sound recording through the central control navigation screen. Sound recording is OFF by default. In the real-time preview interface, click  ICON to turn on sound recording, ICON changes to . Click ICON  to turn off sound recording, ICON changes to .

iii. Video recording

The video recording of the drive recorder has been continuing. Due to the limited capacity of the TF card, the memory card will be full after the TF card is recorded for a period of time. The drive recorder adopts the logic of cyclic storage of video. When the memory card is full, the latest video will overwrite the earliest recorded video in the folder.

The recorder supports up to 1080P resolution video, and the default is 1920*1080@30 frame; the user can change the resolution to 1280*720@30 frame through the central control navigation screen. After changing to 1280* 720@30 frame, it can also be manually changed back to 1920*1080@30 frame.

The recorded video is stored by time segment. The system default is 3 minutes, which can be manually changed to 1 minute or 5 minutes.

4) Emergency video recording

i. Emergency video trigger

There are two sources of signals that trigger emergency recording: G-sensor of drive recorder and acceleration value of vehicle body. The vehicle transmits the key position status to drive recorder through CAN. When the drive recorder receives the key position status (ignition action) sent by the vehicle, it triggers the emergency recording by judging whether the body gravity acceleration value exceeds the set threshold value (the threshold value needs to be set according to the actual vehicle verification).

When the drive recorder receives the vehicle key position state turns to ON position signal disconnection state after ignition, during ON position signal disconnection and next ignition state, the drive recorder triggers emergency recording through its own G-sensor signal. When the acceleration of vibration exceeds the threshold set by G-sensor, the recorder will be triggered to store an emergency video.

The inductive sensitivity of G-sensor can be set to "high", "medium" and "low" through the large screen navigation of central control. The default is "medium".

ii. Emergency video storage mechanism

The emergency video is a 20s video, which is stored in the "emergency video" folder. The 20s video consists of 10s video before and after the time when the vibration is sensed. The resolution of the emergency video is the same as that of the normal video currently set. If the normal video is set to 1080P or 720P, the resolution of the emergency video is also 1080P or 720P.










Due to the space of the "emergency video" folder is also limited, the memory card in "emergency video" folder will also be full, so the emergency video folder also adopts the mechanism of circular overwrite. When user sets emergency recording overwrite to "ON", when "emergency video" folder is full, the newly generated emergency video will overwrite the earliest recorded emergency video. If user sets emergency recording overwrite to "OFF", when "emergency video" folder is full, the new emergency video will not overwrite any video, only prompt: "Emergency video folder is full, emergency recording overwrite is set to off".

5) Time watermark

The time watermark is corrected by LVDS, and it will be corrected once when starting up. The time watermark contains date and time information in the format of "year-month-day hour: minute: second". The time watermark can be set to off (the same setting switch as driving information overlay setting switch). If user sets it to off, the recorded video does not contain time watermark.

6) Driving information overlay

DVR will receive the vehicle driving information from CAN network and save it in the video recording file in the form of watermark icon. The information watermark of DVR is acquired according to the CAN signal. When there is no CAN signal, the information watermark will not be displayed and CAN network will not actively wake up other ECU. See the table below for driving information.

Display composite information	Vehicle speed	20km/h
	Gear position	D
	Accelerator pedal	
	High beam light	
	Low beam light	
	Rear fog light	
	Right turn signal light	
	Left turn signal light	
	Hand brake	
	Foot brake	
	Safety belt warning status (- consistent with instrument warning light status)	

The watermarks of light, brake and seat belt display as follows:



U20121

Driving information comes from CAN network. When the vehicle performs corresponding actions and the drive recorder receives corresponding CAN information, the corresponding icon will be highlighted; if the corresponding actions are not performed, the corresponding icon will be grayed out; if the high beam light is turned on, the high beam light icon will be highlighted; if the high beam light is turned off, the high beam light icon will be grayed out. Vehicle speed information display: Numbers km / h.

These vehicle status information is not visible on real-time preview interface, but it will be superimposed and recorded on the video stored in TF card. When the user plays back the recorded video, the vehicle driving information can be seen.

7) Video storage protection with power off

When system detects that power supply is cut off, system will immediately start recording stop and recording save action, use super capacitor to store electricity, complete recording file before the moment of power off.

8) Parking monitoring

If the user sets the parking monitoring function as ON, when the vehicle stops and stalls, the ON gear is off, and the drive recorder is shut down, if the vehicle vibrates and the vibration acceleration value exceeds the threshold value of G-sensor, the drive recorder will be awakened and recorded video for a period of 20s after awakening, which is stored in the "emergency video" folder. If G-sensor does not continue to sense vibration, the drive recorder will be shut down.

The parking monitoring function is OFF by default. The user can turn on parking monitoring function through central control navigation.

9) Taking pictures

i. Photograph operation and control

When the drive recorder is on, you can quickly take a picture by pressing TBD button on steering wheel. Press the button once to take a picture. You can take photos by clicking ICON in UI interface of central control navigation. The minimum response interval between two consecutive photographing commands is 500 ms.

ii. Photograph storage





The photos taken are consistent with the currently set video resolution, such as if the set video is 1080P or 720P, and the photos taken are also 1080P or 720P. Photographs are taken during the video recording process, and the video recording is not affected. Photograph storage uses the logic of circular overlay. When the "Photograph" folder is full, the latest photograph will overwrite the earliest photograph.

10) Playback of video/photograph

i. Playback and deleting of video in TF card

On video list interface in TF card, select one video and click "Delete" to delete the video. Long press a video in the list, and the "Select All" option will appear. If all videos are selected, click "-Delete" to delete from the first video, "Delete" icon will change to "Cancel" icon, and click "Cancel" to stop deleting. Deleted videos cannot be recovered.

On video list interface in TF card, select one video and click "Playback" to start playing the current video. If all videos are selected, click "Playback" to start playing from the first video.



Time watermark and driving status information (such as "driving information" setting is on during video capture) can be displayed on the video playback interface. Click  ICON to pause playback, ICON will change to , click  ICON to play continues; ICON will change to . Drag the time progress bar to quickly locate the video playback time.

Click "Return" icon to exit photo playback and return to DVR main interface.

ii. Playback and deleting of photos in TF card

On photo list interface in TF card, select one photo and click "Delete" to delete the photo. If all photos are selected, click "Delete" to delete from the first photo, "Delete" icon will change to "-Cancel" icon, and click "Cancel" to stop deleting. Deleted photos cannot be recovered.

On photo list interface in TF card, click one photo, this photo will be displayed at left area of screen.

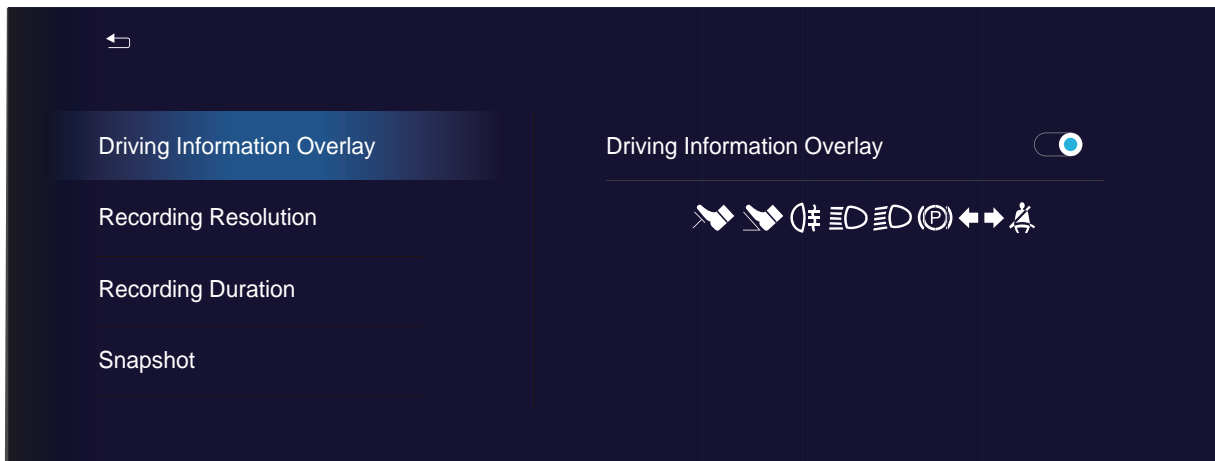
Time watermark and driving information (such as "driving information" setting is on during photo taking) can be displayed on the photo playback interface. Click ICON, the photos will be played automatically at speed of 3 s per photo from the current photo, ICON will change to , click will pause automatic play, ICON returns to .

Click "<" or ">" ICON, it will change to previous or next photo.

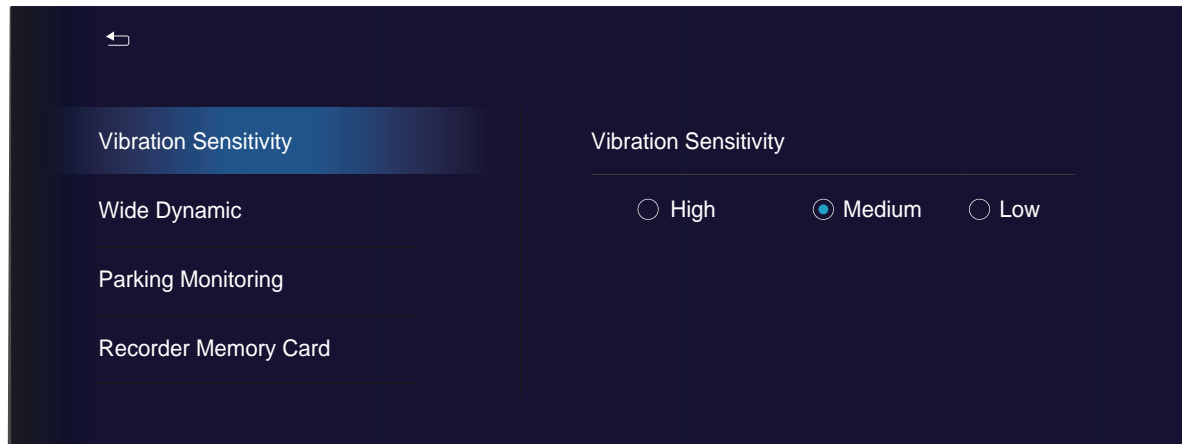
Click "Return" icon to exit photo playback and return to DVR main interface.

11) Setting

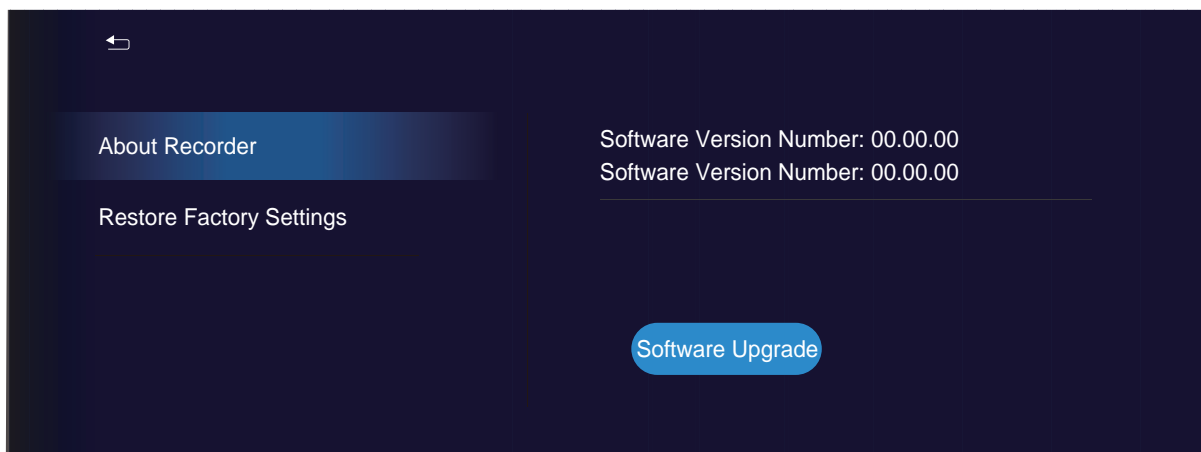
On the real-time preview interface, click setting ICON to enter setting menu interface of drive recorder, setting items of drive recorder contains the following:



U20246



U20248



U20252

Driving information overlay: ON (default) and OFF.

Resolution: 1080P (default) and 720P.

Video duration: 1 minute, 3 minutes (default) and 5 minutes.

Sound recording: ON, OFF (by default).

Vibration sensitivity: High, Medium (default) and Low.

Wide dynamic: ON (default) and OFF.

Emergency recording overwriting: ON (default) and OFF.

Parking monitoring: ON and OFF (default).

Format: Select to format the memory card on the recorder.

Factory settings: Restore the factory default settings of recorder.

Firmware upgrade: When there is a correct upgrade file in TF card, click "Firmware upgrade" to update system firmware of recorder.

12) AR navigation video output

i. AR navigation video output

When DVR is turned on and central control navigation starts and successfully configures LVDS transmission pair (MAX96705), DVR turns on AR navigation video output. When DVR detects that ON signal is turned off, and after CAN network is turned off, DVR turns off AR navigation video output.

ii. AR navigation video requirement

DVR head unit intercepts camera center FOV (H) = 55° range video (resolution: 920*520), transmits it to central navigation head unit via LVDS, for AR navigation map analysis and processing; Output video frame rate requires 30 frames.

13) Status indication

Status indicator is located next to the TF card slot, indicator is red-blue indicator.

Blue indicator constant on indicates that device operates normally.

Blue indicator flashes slowly, that is, blue indicator flashes at a frequency of 0.5 HZ, indicating that the wifi connection is successful.

Red indicator constant on indicates that device failure or abnormal function, including abnormal TF card or low card speed, video stopping and machine fault.

Red indicator flashes slowly, that is, blue indicator flashes at a frequency of 0.5 HZ, indicating that video is abnormal or there is no TF card.

Alternating red and blue flashes indicate that the software is being upgraded.

(4) Electrical requirement

1) Steering wheel drive-by-wire

i. Drive-by-wire button definition

"Mode" button on steering wheel is the user-customizable button, which can be defined by the user as: sound source switching or drive recorder snapshot. If it is defined as drive recorder snapshot, you can perform drive recorder snapshot function by pressing Mode button. User can customize the snapshot in the setting interface of the drive recorder: Photo taking, short video and photo taking + short video (default).

(5) Interaction between DVR and central control

drive recorder function involves the interaction among central control IHU, central control APK and drive recorder.

Main functions of central control are:

- As a hot spot, central control needs to support DVR Wi-Fi access.
- It is necessary to provide CAN writing interface to send CAN data for central control APK.
- It is necessary to provide CAN data callback interface, notify APK when central control receives relevant CAN data.

Main functions implemented by APK:

- Interact with the DVR through Wi-Fi.
- Notify the DVR of some central control information (such as Wi-Fi SSID, etc.) through the CAN writing interface provided by the central control.
- Feedback the CAN information (such as TFC card status, etc.) received by the central control from DVR.

Main functions implemented by DVR:

- Basic functions of drive recorder.

- Report DVR status and other information through CAN.
- Respond APK by requirements sent from CAN (such as TF card status, etc.)

The CAN command interacting with DVR is an event message, and the time interval between two messages is not less than 20 ms. Like a CAN message which is composed of multiple frames, the sending interval of two frames is 20 ms.

The main protocols for CAN interaction between central console and DVR are as follows:

Command Type	Parameter Length	Sending Timing	Note
MAC Address	6 Byte	Sent when IHU is turned on, when there is a change, when DVR requests, and when IHU responds (when DVR is turned on)	For example: 00:23:DE:2C:34:DF, sending from start to end; parameter length (6 Byte) + 1 (1 Byte check digit) is the total data length.
Wi-Fi Name	64 Byte max	Sent when IHU is turned on, when there is a change, when DVR requests, when IHU responds, and when IHU turns on AP	Wi-Fi name is variable length. When the overall length of data is more than 6, it is necessary to send it by frame.
Wi-Fi Password	64 Byte max	Sent when IHU is turned on, when there is a change, when DVR requests, when IHU responds, and when IHU turns on AP	Wi-Fi name is variable length. When the overall length of data is more than 6, it is necessary to send it by frame.
Wi-Fi Connection	1 Byte	When DVR APK starts/exits	
UDP broadcast terminal number	2 Byte	When head unit APK starts, when DVR requests actively	Used for notifying APK to connect with DVR by DVR broadcasting
TF card status	1 Byte	DVR sends actively when TF status changes, DVR sends passively when APK requires actively (- when APK starts)	The status of card includes: TF card status is normal, no card is inserted (IHU display: memory card is not inserted into recorder), TF card is not formatted (IHU display: recorder memory card is not formatted), card is abnormal (IHU display: recorder memory card is abnormal)
DVR Status	1 Byte	DVR sends actively when DVR status changes, DVR sends passively when APK requires actively (- when central console starts)	Included status: DVR status is normal, DVR status is abnormal
Photo folder status	1 Byte	DVR sends actively when photo space is full, DVR sends passively when APK requires actively	Included status: Photo space is not full/Photo space is full (IHU display: photo folder of drive recorder is full)

Command Type	Parameter Length	Sending Timing	Note
Emergency video folder status	1 Byte	DVR sends actively when emergency video space is full, DVR sends passively when APK requires actively	Included status: Emergency video space is not full/Emergency video space is full (IHU display: emergency video folder of drive recorder is full)
DVR Requirement	1 Byte	When DVR needs to actively acquire the central console information	SSID information and others needs to be known when DVR starts
APK Requirement	1 Byte	When DVR needs to actively acquire the DVR status	APK requires actively. After DVR receives this requirement, TF status, DVR status, photo space status and emergency video space is sent by CAN

3 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

3.1 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.2 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.3 Ground Inspection

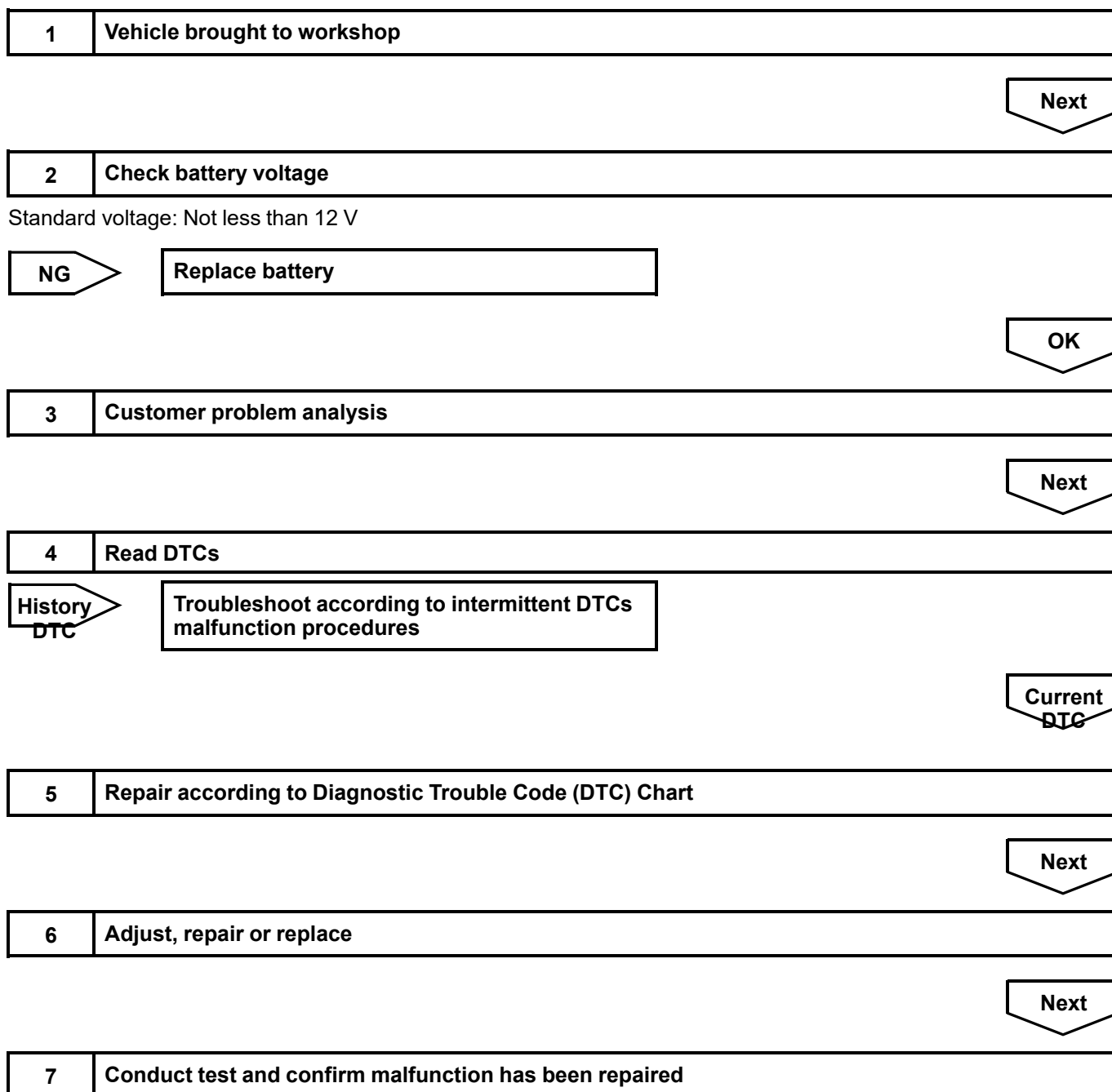
Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation

may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.4 Diagnosis Procedure

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the inside rear view mirror system.



Next End

3.5 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B1B5000	Image Sensor Failure - Abnormal Image Acquisition	Abnormal image acquisition	1. Accidental failure; 2. Sensor failure.	1. Reset module and clear DTC; 2. Replace module for testing.
B1B5100	DSP Failure	DSP failure	1. Accidental failure; 2. Module internal fault.	
B1B5200	WIFI Failure - WIFI Module Abnormal	WIFI module abnormal	1. Accidental failure; 2. Module internal fault.	1. Reset module and clear DTC; 2. Replace module for testing.
B1B5300	G-sensor Fault - Abnormal Collision Sensing	Abnormal collision sensing	1. Accidental failure; 2. Module internal fault.	1. Reset module and clear DTC; 2. Replace module for testing.
B1B544A	Abnormal Memory Card - Low Write Speed of Memory Card, Serious Fragmentation of Memory Card, Memory Card Damage	Low write speed of memory card, serious fragmentation of memory card, memory card damage	1. Accidental failure; 2. The memory card is abnormal.	1. Reset module and clear DTC; 2. Replace a new memory card with a correct format for testing; 3. Replace module for testing

3.6 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B1B5000	Image Sensor Failure - Abnormal Image Acquisition
DTC	B1B5100	DSP Failure

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check intermittent fault

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Wait 120 seconds, ignition switch is turned on and off again;
- (b) Clear DTC again.

OK If DTC still exists, replace module hardware.

NG

2 Check camera

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Check camera for obstruction or damage.

NG

Check, repair and replace module assembly.

OK

3 Check related wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the DVR module assembly connector B-219.
- (c) Check if related wire harnesses are worn, pinched or broken.
- (d) Check if related connector terminals are loose, broken, bent or corrosive.
- (e) According to the table below, use a digital multimeter to check for continuity between DVR module assembly connectors B-219 (1, 2) and I-034 (1, 2).

Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B-219 (1, 2) - I-034 (1, 2)	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-219 (1, 2) - I-034 (1, 2)	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG

Check and repair wire harness and connector.

OK

4 Check controller module

NG

Check and repair or replace controller

OK

Go back to step 1 and recheck.

DTC	B1B5200	WiFi Failure - WiFi Module Abnormal
DTC	B1B5300	G-sensor Fault - Abnormal Collision Sensing

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 | Check intermittent fault

- (a) Wait 120 seconds, ignition switch is turned on and off again;
- (b) Clear DTC again.

OK → **If DTC still exists, replace module hardware.**

NG

2 | Check controller module

NG → **Check and repair or replace controller.**

OK → **Go back to step 1 and recheck.**

DTC	B1B544A	Abnormal Memory Card - Low Write Speed of Memory Card, Serious Fragmentation of Memory Card, Memory Card Damage
------------	----------------	--

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 | Check intermittent fault

- (a) Wait 120 seconds, ignition switch is turned on and off again;
- (b) Clear DTC again.

OK → **If DTC still exists, replace module hardware.**

NG

2 | Check memory card

- (a) Check memory card for contamination or damage.

NG → **Check, repair and replace memory card with correct format for testing.**

OK

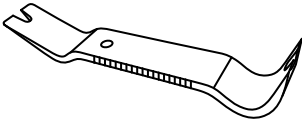
3 | Check controller module

NG → **Check and repair or replace controller.**

OK → **Go back to step 1 and recheck.**

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

4.2 Replacement of Drive Recorder

■ Removal

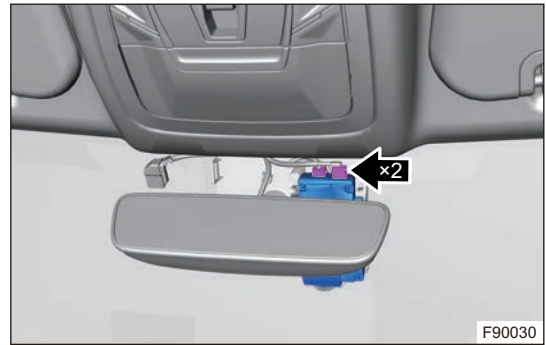
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off and remove the inside rear view mirror right protective cover.



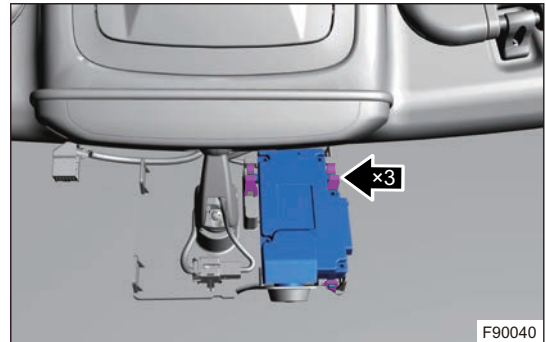
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the inside rear view mirror left protective cover.



- (5) Remove the drive recorder connector



- (6) Remove the fixing columns on both sides of drive recorder along the upward direction of bracket base, and take out the lens of drive recorder and front end pin, and finally remove drive recorder.



■ Installation

- (1) Align lens and front end pins of drive recorder with the corresponding holes on the base of multi-function bracket and insert them.
- (2) When front end pins of drive recorder is inserted in place, the fixed columns on left and right sides of drive recorder are just at upper end of bracket base. Press down the fixed columns on left and right sides along the direction of bracket base, and assemble them to the corresponding structure of base. After drive recorder is assembled, insert connectors of drive recorder respectively.
- (3) Pull off protective film on drive recorder lens.
- (4) Install the inside rear view mirror left protective cover.
- (5) Install the inside rear view mirror right protective cover.

.1 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing outside rear view mirror assembly.
- (2) Operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when removing outside rear view mirror assembly.
- (3) DO NOT scratch interior and body paint when removing outside rear view mirror assembly.
- (4) Avoid breaking claw, when removing outside rear view mirror lens assembly.
- (5) Make sure the lens can move smoothly, flexibly and reliably after installing outside rear view mirror lens assembly.

1 System Overview

1.1 System Description

This vehicle is equipped with power outside rear view mirror assembly and inside rear view mirror assembly. Power outside rear view mirror assembly: Driver can control the rotation of outside rear view mirror internal motor by operating the outside rear view mirror adjustment switch in vehicle, thus adjusting the mirror surface to a required visual angle and folding mirror. Outside rear view mirror adjustment switch: Located on front left door protector. With ENGINE START STOP switch ON, press the outside rear view mirror adjustment switch to "L" or "R" position to select left or right outside rear view mirror assembly, and then press the up or down and left or right button of outside rear view mirror adjustment switch to a required visual angle. Manual glare-resistant inside rear view mirror assembly: It is necessary to adjust inside rear view mirror to desired direction with hands. When driving at night, to reduce glare, adjust the inside rear view mirror assembly to required angle by pulling glare-resistant rod backward. Automatic glare-resistant inside rear view mirror assembly (if equipped): It is composed of a special mirror, two photosensitive diodes and an electronic controller. The electronic controller receives the front and back light signals from the photosensitive diodes. If light shines on the inside rear view mirror, for example if the light behind is brighter than that in front, the electronic controller will output a voltage to the conductive layer. The voltage on conductive layer will change the color of electrochemical layer on mirror surface. The higher the voltage is, the darker the color of electrochemical layer is. At this time, even if a strong light shines on the rear view mirror, a dark light will be reflected on the driver's eyes through the glare-resistant inside rear view mirror, which will not be glaring. The electrochemical layer on mirror surface will change continuously and automatically according to the incident intensity of light behind, thus preventing glare. When reversing the vehicle, the glare-resistant function of glare-resistant inside rear view mirror will be released.

1.2 System Components Diagram



U20010

1	Left Outside Rear View Mirror Assembly	3	Inside Rear View Mirror Assembly
2	Rear View Mirror Folding Switch	4	Right Outside Rear View Mirror Assembly

1.3 System Schematic

Operation of rear view mirror

- The up and down, left and right movement of outside rear view mirror is signaled by front left window switch and adjusted and controlled by door control module.
- The defrosting of outside rear view mirror starts with the defrost request signal received by BCM via CAN (defroster operating time: 20 minutes timing ends, defrosting stops) and then the heating signal is transmitted to the rear view mirror heating relay to perform heating.

2 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

2.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Outside rear view mirror cannot operate	Fuse
	Outside rear view mirror adjustment switch
	Outside rear view mirror assembly
	Wire harness or connector
Outside rear view mirror intermittent malfunction	Ground
	Wire harness or connector
Rear view mirror defroster cannot operate	Wire harness or connector
	Rear defroster switch
	Outside rear view mirror assembly
	BCM is damaged

2.2 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

2.3 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

2.4 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.

- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

2.5 Diagnosis Procedure

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the inside rear view mirror system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V

NG	Replace battery
----	-----------------

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Next

4	Read DTCs
----------	------------------

History DTC	Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTCs malfunction procedures
----------------	--

Current
DTC

5	Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart
----------	--

Next

6	Adjust, repair or replace
----------	----------------------------------

Next

7	Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired
----------	---

Next	End
------	-----

2.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B104111	Outside Rear View Mirror Folding Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply
B104113	Outside Rear View Mirror Folding Relay Circuit Open
B105112	Outside Rear View Mirror Defroster Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply
B105011	Rear Defroster Relay Circuit Open or Short to Ground
B105012	Rear Defroster Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply

2.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B104111	Outside Rear View Mirror Folding Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B104111	Outside Rear View Mirror Folding Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Outside rear view mirror • Check BCM

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

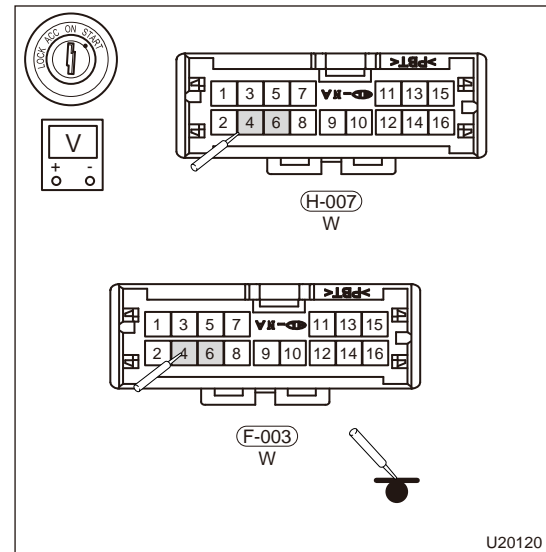
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check for short to power supply in wire harness and connector
----------	--

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the connectors H-007 and F-003.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, check for voltage between H-007 (4) - ground, H-007 (6) - ground, F-003 (4) - ground and F-003 (6) - ground separately.



Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-007 (4) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V
H-007 (6) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V
F-003 (4) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V
F-003 (6) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V

NG Repair or replace faulty wire harness or connector

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the malfunction information and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

NG Replace BCM module

OK System operates normally

DTC B104113 Outside Rear View Mirror Folding Relay Circuit Open

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B104113	Outside Rear View Mirror Folding Relay Circuit Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Outside rear view mirror • Check BCM

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).

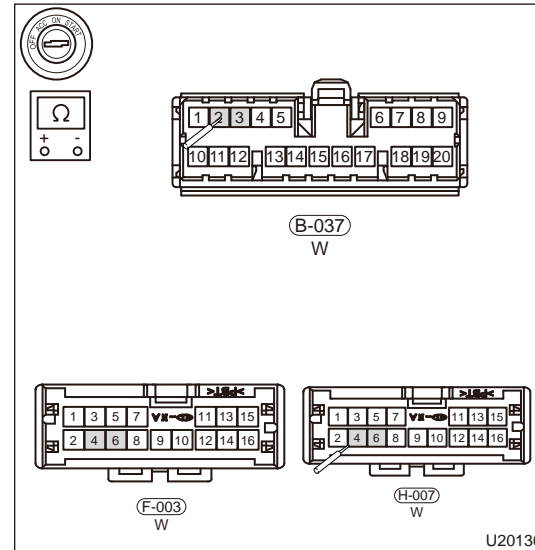
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector for open

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the connectors B-037, H-007 and F-003.
- Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Using voltage band of digital multimeter, check for voltage between B-037 (3) - H-007 (6), B- 037 (3) - F-003 (6), B-037 (2) - H-007 (4) and B-037 (2) - F-003 (4) separately.



Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (3) - H- 007 (6)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-037(3) - F-003(6)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-037 (2) - H- 007 (4)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-037(2) - F-003(4)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG Repair or replace faulty wire harness or connector

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- Read the malfunction information and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

NG Replace BCM module

OK System operates normally

DTC	B105012	Rear Defroster Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply
DTC	B105112	Outside Rear View Mirror Defroster Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B105012	Rear Defroster Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Relay Wire harness or connector BCM module
B105112	Outside Rear View Mirror Defroster Relay Circuit Short to Power Supply	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check relay
----------	--------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, check relay (RRLY11) (RRLY12).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
87#-30#	When battery voltage is not applied to 86#-85#	∞
87#-30#	When battery voltage is applied to 86#-85#	$\leq 1 \Omega$
30#-87#	When battery voltage is not applied to 1#-2#	∞
30#-87#	When battery voltage is applied to 1#-2#	$\leq 1 \Omega$

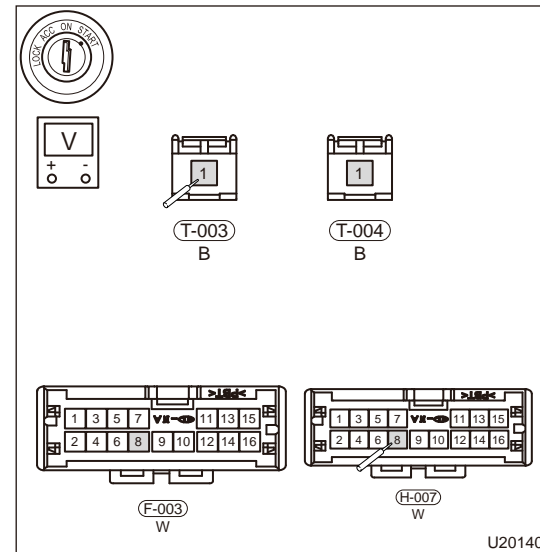
NG	Replace relay
-----------	----------------------

OK

2	Check for short to power supply in wire harness and connector
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the connectors H-007, F-003, T-003 and T-004.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, check for voltage between H-007 (8) - ground, F-003 (8) - ground, T-003 (1) - ground, and T-004 (1) - ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-007 (8) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V
F-003 (8) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V
T-003 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V
T-004 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V



NG → **Repair or replace faulty wire harness or connector**

→ **OK**

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the malfunction information and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

NG → **Replace BCM module**

OK → **System operates normally**

DTC	B105011	Rear Defroster Relay Circuit Open or Short to Ground
DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B105011	Rear Defroster Relay Circuit Open or Short to Ground	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relay • Wire harness or connector • BCM module

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check relay

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, check relay (RRLY12).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
87#-30#	When battery voltage is not applied to 1#-2#	∞
87#-30#	When battery voltage is applied to 1#-2#	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG Replace relay

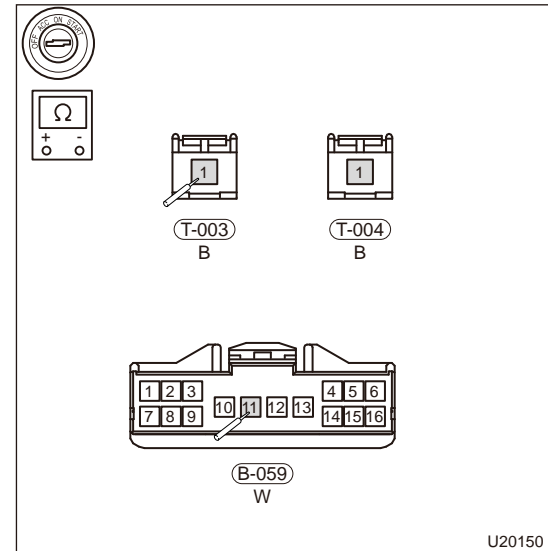
OK

2 Check wire harness and connector for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the connectors B-059, T-003 and T-004.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, check for continuity between B-059 (11) - T-003 (1) and B-059 (11) - T-004 (1) separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-059 (11) - T- 003 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-059 (11) - T- 004 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG Repair or replace faulty wire harness or connector

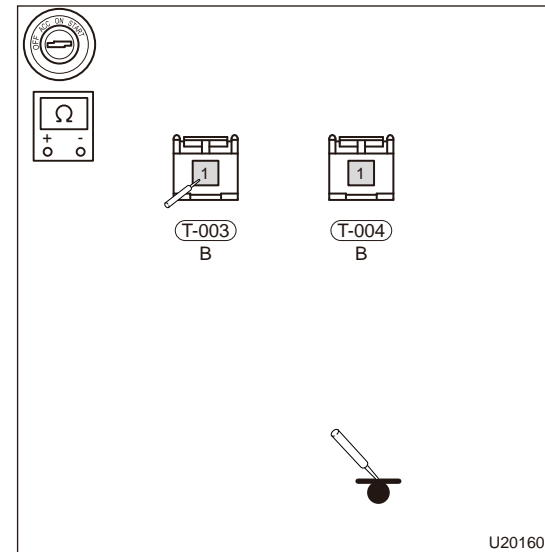


OK

3 Check for short to ground in wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the connectors T-003 and T-004.
- (c) Using voltage band of digital multimeter, check for continuity between T-003 (1) - ground and T-004 (1) - ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
T-003 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
T-004 (1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



NG **Repair or replace faulty wire harness or connector**

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

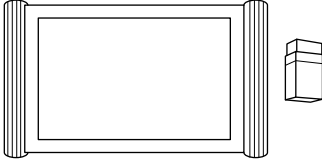
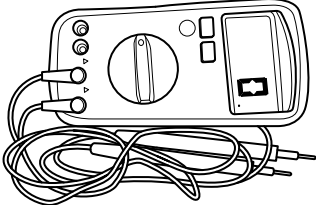
- (a) Connect diagnostic tester and clear DTCs.
- (b) Run the vehicle as specified procedure. The operating way should meet the conditions for corresponding fault diagnosis.
- (c) Read the malfunction information and confirm malfunction has been repaired.

NG **Replace BCM module**

OK **System operates normally**

3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

3.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0001006</p>
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH000206</p>

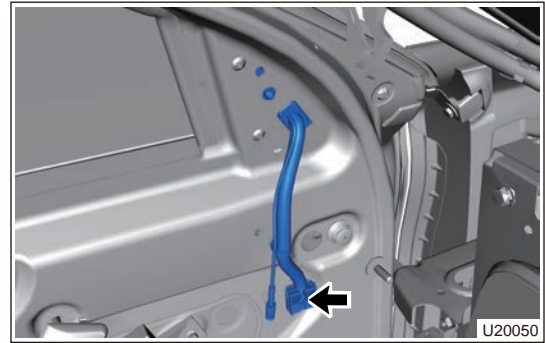
3.2 Replacement of Outside Rear View Mirror Assembly

■ Removal

Hint
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Use same procedures for right and left sides. • Procedures listed below are for left side.
Warning
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing outside rear view mirror assembly. • Operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when removing outside rear view mirror assembly. • DO NOT scratch interior and body paint when removing outside rear view mirror assembly.

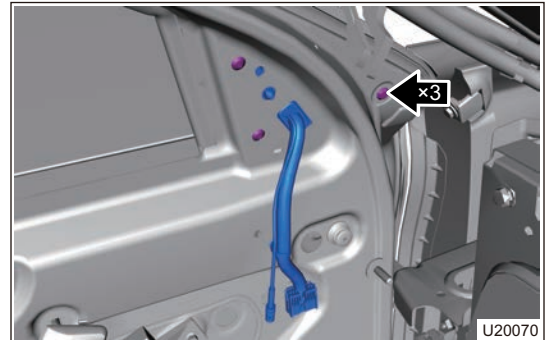
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the front left door inner protector assembly.

- (4) Disconnect the left outside rear view mirror assembly connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts from left outside rear view mirror assembly.

Tightening torque
7 ± 1 N·m



- (6) Remove the left outside rear view mirror assembly.

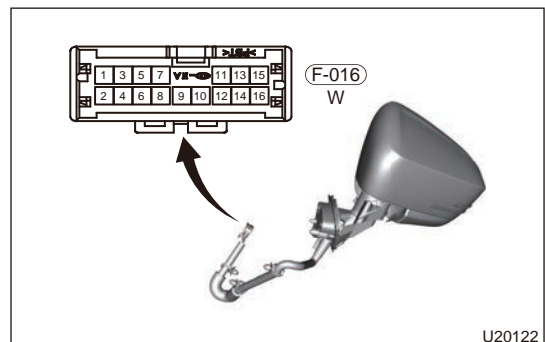
■ Inspection

Caution

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

- (1) Apply battery voltage to terminals of outside rear view mirror assembly connector and check operation of outside rear view mirror assembly according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
Battery positive (+) → Terminal 11 Battery negative (-) → Terminal 12	UP
Battery positive (+) → Terminal 12 Battery negative (-) → Terminal 11	DOWN
Battery positive (+) → Terminal 10 Battery negative (-) → Terminal 11	LEFT
Battery positive (+) → Terminal 11 Battery negative (-) → Terminal 10	RIGHT



■ Installation

Caution

- **Install connector in place and tighten fixing nuts to the specified torque, when installing the outside rear view mirror assembly.**
- **Make sure the outside rear view mirror assembly can move smoothly, flexibly and reliably after installing.**
- **After installing outside rear view mirror assembly, it is necessary to perform panoramic image calibration (if equipped).**

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.3 Replacement of Outside Rear View Mirror Lens Assembly

■ Removal

Hint

- **Use same procedures for right and left sides.**
- **Procedures listed below are for left side.**

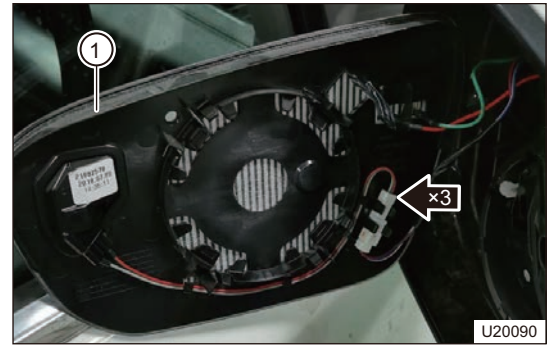
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing outside rear view mirror assembly.**
- **Avoid breaking claw, when removing outside rear view mirror lens assembly.**
- **Avoid damaging lens due to dropping when removing outside rear view mirror lens assembly.**
- **DO NOT scratch body paint when removing outside rear view mirror lens assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Press the outside rear view mirror surface to tilt it.
- (4) Apply protective tape around exterior frame of outside rear view mirror.
- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the claws of outside rear view mirror lens assembly.



- (6) Disconnect the connector from rear view mirror lens assembly, and remove the left outside rear view mirror lens assembly (1) (if equipped with rear view mirror heater).



■ Installation

Caution

- **Make sure the lens can move smoothly, flexibly and reliably after installing outside rear view mirror lens assembly.**

(1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

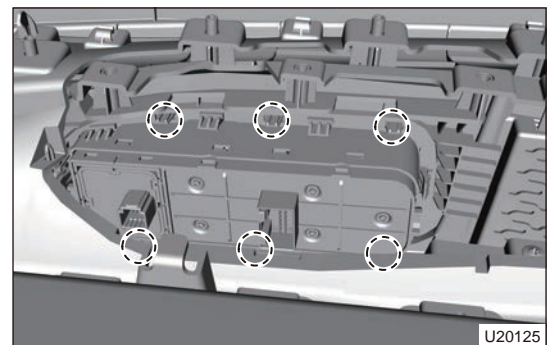
3.4 Replacement of Outside Rear View Mirror Adjustment Switch

■ Removal

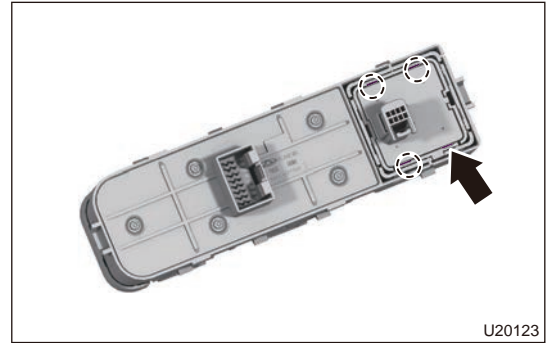
Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing outside rear view mirror adjustment switch.**
- **DO NOT scratch instrument panel assembly when removing outside rear view mirror adjustment switch.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Remove the front left door protector assembly.
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off claws from power glass regulator switch and remove the power glass regulator switch.



- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off claws from outside rear view mirror adjustment switch and remove the outside rear view mirror adjustment switch.



■ Installation

Caution

- Operate carefully to prevent damage to other components when installing outside rear view mirror adjustment switch.
- Install connectors in place, when installing outside rear view mirror adjustment switch.
- Check that switch can operate normally after installing outside rear view mirror adjustment switch.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

3.5 Replacement of Inside Rear View Mirror Assembly

■ Removal

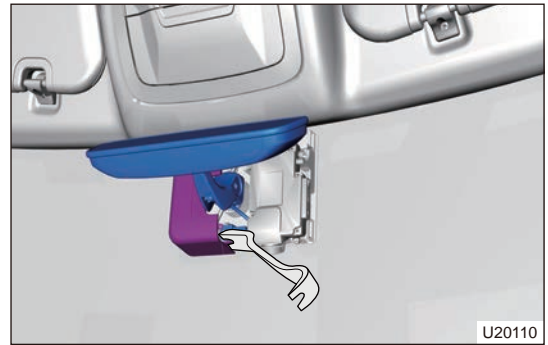
Warning

- Appropriate force should be applied when removing inside rear view mirror assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent front windshield assembly from being scratched when removing inside rear view mirror assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off and remove the inside rear view mirror right protective cover.



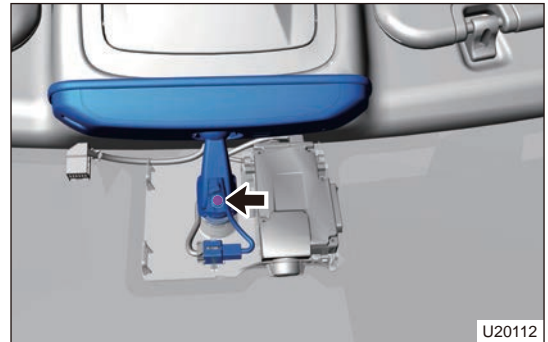
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the inside rear view mirror left protective cover.



- (5) Disconnect the inside rear view mirror wire harness connector.



- (6) Remove screws from inside rear view mirror base and remove inside rear view mirror assembly.



■ Installation

Caution

- Before installation, check if there is any obvious appearance defects (such as scratches, material missing, damage, etc.) and select the qualified parts.
- The inside rear view mirror should be within the normal range required by view and the lens assembly should be matched with lens base assembly firmly without any looseness.

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

BODY ELECTRICAL

41.1	Window/Sliding Roof	1596
1	Warnings and Precautions	1596
1.1	Warnings	1596
1.2	Precautions	1596
2	System Overview	1597
2.1	System Components Diagram.....	1597
2.2	System Schematic Diagram	1600
3	Component Operation Description.....	1600
3.1	Glass assembly	1600
3.2	Glass regulator	1600
3.3	Operation	1601
4	DIAGNOSIS & TEST.....	1601
4.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1601
4.2	Diagnosis procedure	1602
4.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1604
4.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1604
4.5	Ground Inspection	1604
4.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1605
4.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1605
5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1624
5.1	Tools	1624
5.2	Jam Protection Learning	1624
5.3	Replacement of Front Left Door Power Glass Regulator Switch.....	1625
5.4	Replacement of Front Door Inner Weather Bar	1629
5.5	Replacement of Front Door Outer Weather Bar	1630
5.6	Replacement of Front Door Upper Glass Run	1631
5.7	Replacement of Front Door Glass Assembly.....	1632
5.8	Replacement of Front Door Glass Rear Lower Guide Rail Assembly.....	1633
5.9	Replacement of Front Door Power Glass Regulator	1634
5.10	Replacement of Rear Left Door Power Glass Regulator Switch.....	1635
5.11	Replacement of Rear Door Inner Weather Bar	1639
5.12	Replacement of Rear Door Outer Weather Bar	1640
5.13	Replacement of Rear Left Door Run	1641
5.14	Replacement of Rear Door Glass Assembly	1642
5.15	Replacement of Rear Door Power Glass Regulator	1643
5.16	Replacement of Front Windshield Assembly.....	1644
5.17	Replacement of Rear Windshield Assembly.....	1646
5.18	Replacement of Sliding Roof Switch Assembly.....	1650
5.19	Replacement of Sliding Roof Glass Motor	1651
5.20	Replacement of Sun Visor Motor Assembly	1652
5.21	Replacement of Sliding Roof Front Glass	1654
5.22	Replacement of Sliding Roof Rear Glass.....	1654
5.23	Replacement of Sliding Roof Front Left Drain Hose	1655
5.24	Replacement of Sliding Roof Front Right Drain Hose	1657

BODY ELECTRICAL

5.25	Replacement of Sliding Roof Rear Drain Hose	1658
5.26	Replacement of Sliding Roof Assembly	1660

41.1 Window/Sliding Roof

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Warnings

Be sure to observe following instructions before servicing any parts in this section to avoid possible asset loss, personal injury or even death.

- (1) To protect window regulating system, window jam protection function will be canceled in some cases, and auto window UP function will also be canceled, to avoid possible potential risk, at this time window only has general regulating function, window regulating function of corresponding door will resume after jam protection learning.
- (2) When removing/installing sliding roof fixing bracket, an assistant is needed to hold it. During operation, prevent the sliding roof fixing bracket from dropping, which may cause an accident.

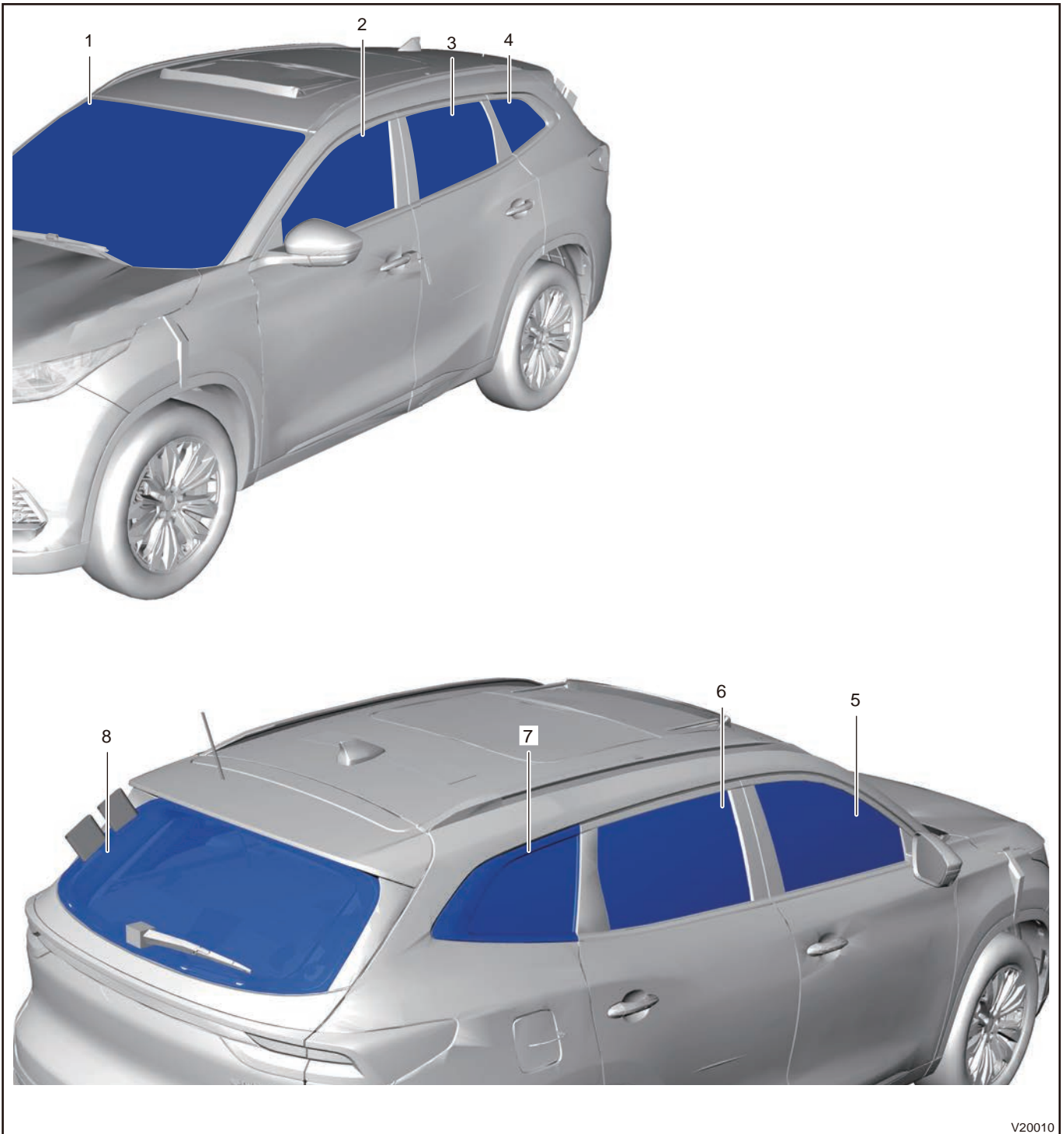
1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing glass regulator switch.
- (2) Prevent window glass from dropping which will cause damage, when removing front and rear door glass assembly.
- (3) When removing front windshield assembly, two persons are required and prevent it from dropping.
- (4) When removing rear windshield assembly, two persons are required and prevent it from dropping.
- (5) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing sliding roof front and rear glass. Be careful not to operate roughly, to avoid damage to sliding roof glass.

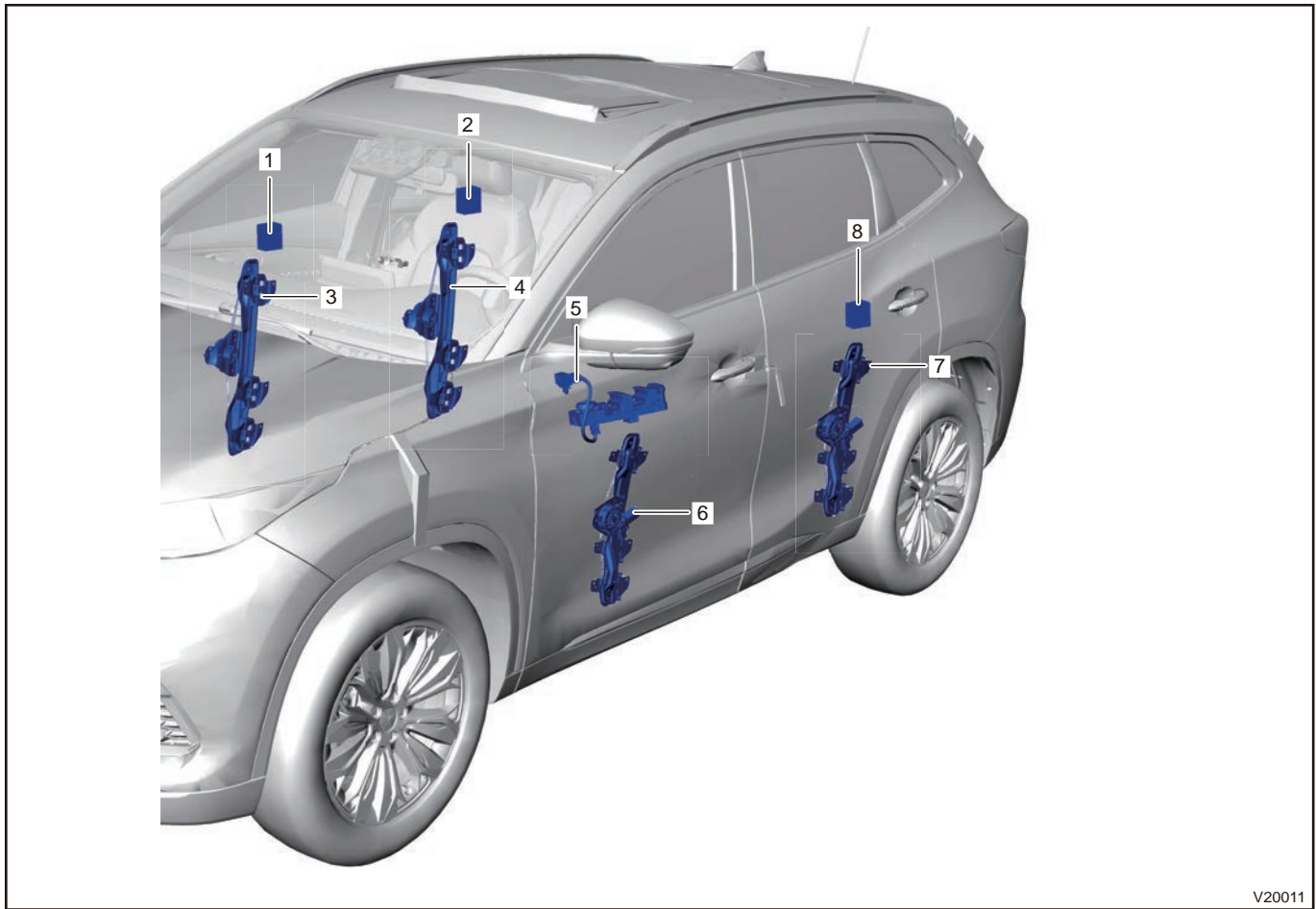
2 System Overview

2.1 System Components Diagram



V20010

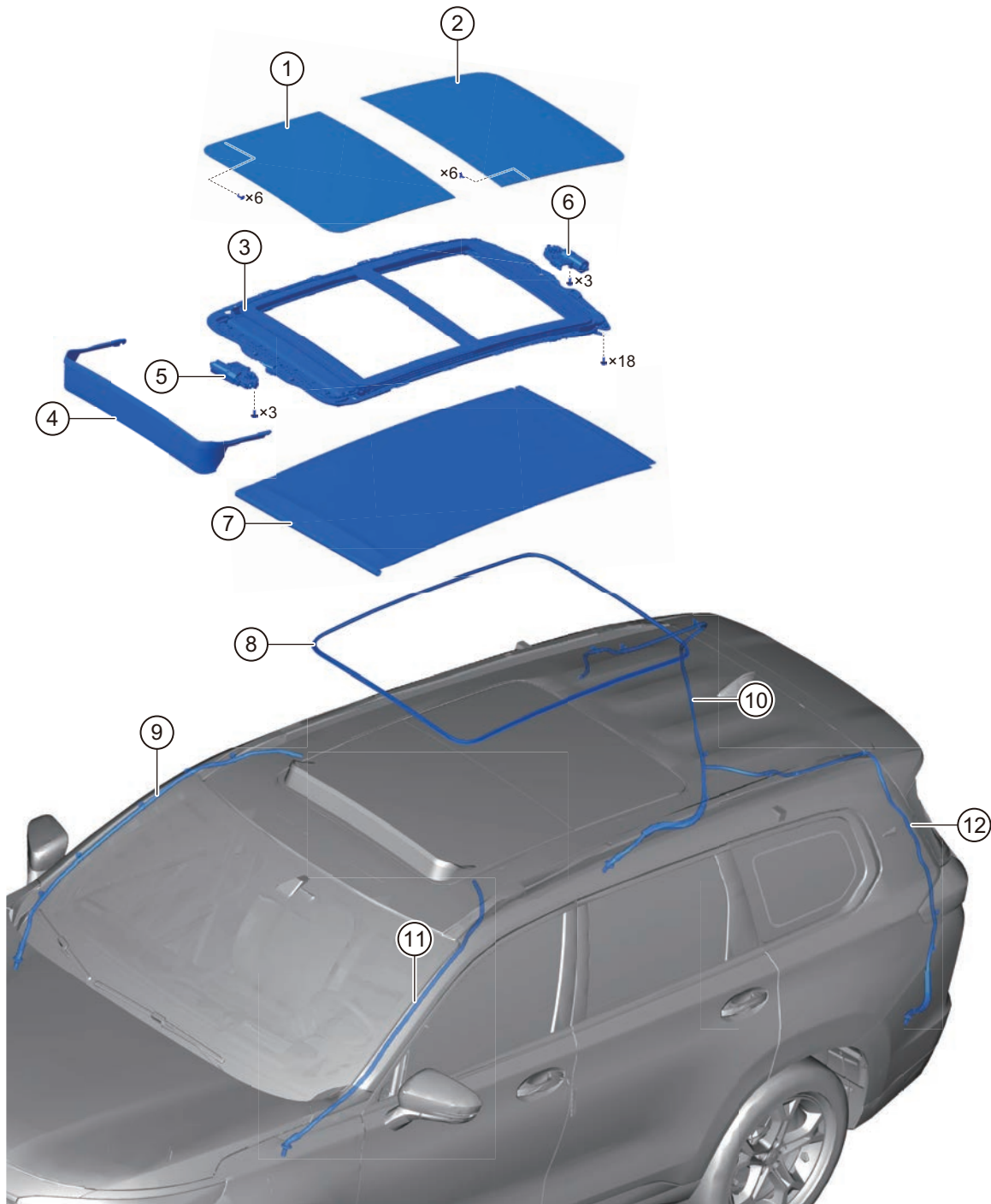
1	Front Windshield Assembly	2	Front Left Door Glass Assembly
3	Rear Left Door Glass Assembly	4	Left Triangular Window Glass Assembly
5	Front Right Door Glass Assembly	6	Rear Right Door Glass Assembly
7	Right Triangular Window Glass Assembly	8	Rear Windshield Assembly



V20011

1	Front Right Door Glass Regulator Switch Assembly	2	Rear Right Door Glass Regulator Switch Assembly
3	Front Right Door Glass Regulator	4	Rear Right Door Glass Regulator
5	Front Left Door Glass Regulator Switch Assembly	6	Front Left Door Glass Regulator
7	Rear Left Door Glass Regulator	8	Rear Left Door Glass Regulator Switch Assembly

Power window control system controls each window glass UP/DOWN function by operating the glass regulator control switches on door inner protector assembly. Main control devices of this system include: Front left door glass regulator switch (built into driver side door) and glass regulator switches (built into front and rear passenger side doors). Press the front left door glass regulator switch or any switch on glass regulator switch, to transmit the UP/DOWN signal to corresponding power glass regulator motor, thus controlling UP/DOWN operation of corresponding power window glass.



V20140

1	Sliding Roof Front Glass Assembly	2	Sliding Roof Rear Glass Assembly
3	Sliding Roof Frame	4	Sliding Roof Wind Screen
5	Sliding Roof Glass Motor	6	Sliding Roof Sun Visor Motor
7	Sliding Roof Sun Visor Assembly	8	Sliding Roof Weatherstrip

9	Front Right Sliding Roof Drain Hose Assembly	10	Rear Right Sliding Roof Drain Hose Assembly
11	Front Left Sliding Roof Drain Hose Assembly	12	Rear Left Sliding Roof Drain Hose Assembly

On this model, panoramic sliding roof consists of sliding roof switch, sliding roof glass, electronic sun visor, glass motor, sun visor motor, control module, wire harness and sliding roof drain hose.

2.2 System Schematic Diagram

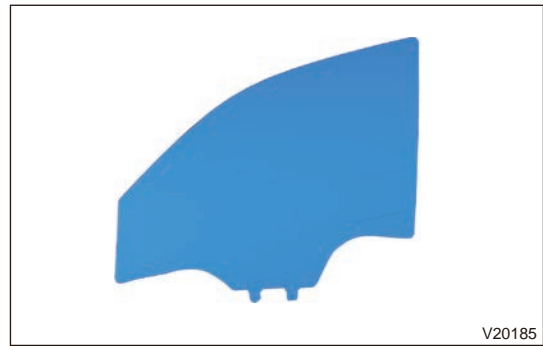
Battery provides 12 V power supply to BCM, four door glass regulator switches send UP/DOWN signals to BCM. BCM controls operation of power glass regulator. So that glass can perform UP/DOWN operation. A/C control panel sends rear defroster request signal to BCM, BCM controls rear defrost relay to engage, and rear defroster performs defrost operation. After that, BCM sends rear defroster feedback signal to A/C control panel, and A/C control panel operation indicator illuminates. Battery provides 12 V power supply to sliding roof module. When sliding roof module receives switch information, sliding roof module drive motor starts to perform open and close.

3 Component Operation Description

3.1 Glass assembly

■ Main function

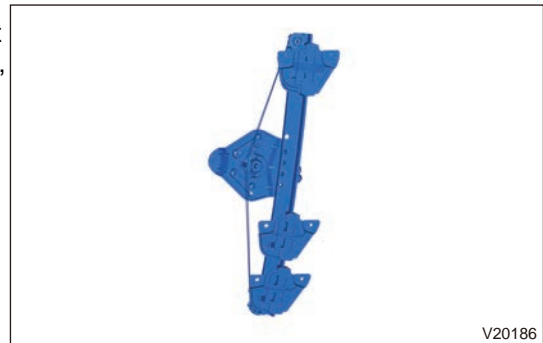
Vehicle glass is indispensable in vehicle body accessories, which is mainly used to provide protective function. There are four types of vehicle glasses classified by location: Front windshield glass, side window glass, rear windshield glass and sliding roof glass.



3.2 Glass regulator

■ Main function

Vehicle glass regulator is a door accessory used to perform up and down movements of door glass in the door system. It is a special component to adjust door glass opening amount, which has a function to ensure stable operation as well as normal opening and closing operation of door glass.



3.3 Operation

■ Main component function

Components	Description
Power window lock switch	Located on front left door inner protector assembly. It controls the operation of front and rear passenger side glass regulator switches. When power window lock switch is in lock position, only driver side glass regulator switch can control UP/DOWN operation of power window glass.
Power glass regulator switch	Located on door inner protector assembly. Each power glass regulator switch controls UP/DOWN operation of corresponding power window glass.
Power glass regulator	It can change position of power window glass.

■ System function

Function	Description
Manual UP function	Power window glass goes up when glass regulator control switch is pulled up and held while it stops as the switch is released.
Manual DOWN function	Power window glass goes down when glass regulator control switch is pushed down and held while it stops as the switch is released.
Automatic DOWN	Power window glass goes down automatically when glass regulator control switch is pressed shortly. To stop it partway, push or pull the switch again.
Power window LOCK function	Operation of corresponding power window glass is impossible with all passenger side power glass regulator switches when power window lock switch is pressed. At this time, only operation of driver side power window glass is possible. This function can be canceled only when power window lock switch is pressed again.

4 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

4.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Caution

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Driver side/passenger side power window glass cannot be operated with driver side glass regulator switch	Power supply, fuse
	Driver side glass regulator switch
	Driver side/passenger side power glass regulator
	Wire harness or connector
	Body Control Module (BCM)

Symptom	Suspected Area
Passenger side power window glass cannot be operated with passenger side glass regulator control switch	Power supply, fuse
	Passenger side power glass regulator switch
	Passenger side power glass regulator
	Wire harness or connector
	Body Control Module (BCM)
Power window glass has intermittent problem	Ground
	Wire harness or connector
Sliding roof water leakage	Sliding roof weatherstrip damaged
	Drain hose clogged or folded
	Distance between sliding roof glass and roof hole is extremely large or height of glass is poor
Wind noise from sliding roof	Poor fixation of sliding roof glass and roof
Abnormal starting and operation	Poor connection in wire harness, fuse or ground wire
	Poor sliding roof control unit, sliding roof motor
	Sun visor control unit, sun visor fault
	Improper installation position between sun visor mounting
	Sun visor comes off from guide rail
	Foreign matters in guide rail
Incorrect starting	Sun visor switch fault
	Poor sliding roof motor
	Sun visor comes off from guide rail, guide rail is scratched with trim strip after it is damaged
	Sun visor module fault
	Sun visor motor fault
Operating noise of sun visor	Operation is resisted when sun visor comes off from guide rail or trim strip is damaged
	Lack of grease in guide rail of sun visor
	Impact between drain hose and vehicle body
	Distance between sliding roof glass and roof hole is extremely large or height of glass is poor
	Sun visor mounting bracket deformed or position incorrect

4.2 Diagnosis procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the control system.

1 Vehicle brought to workshop

NEXT

2 Check battery voltage

Check if battery voltage is normal.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG

Replace battery

OK

3 Customer problem analysis

Next

4 Read DTCs

Result

Result	Go to
DTC is output	A
No DTC	B

B

Perform repair according to problem symptoms table

A

5 Read DTCs (current DTC and history DTC)

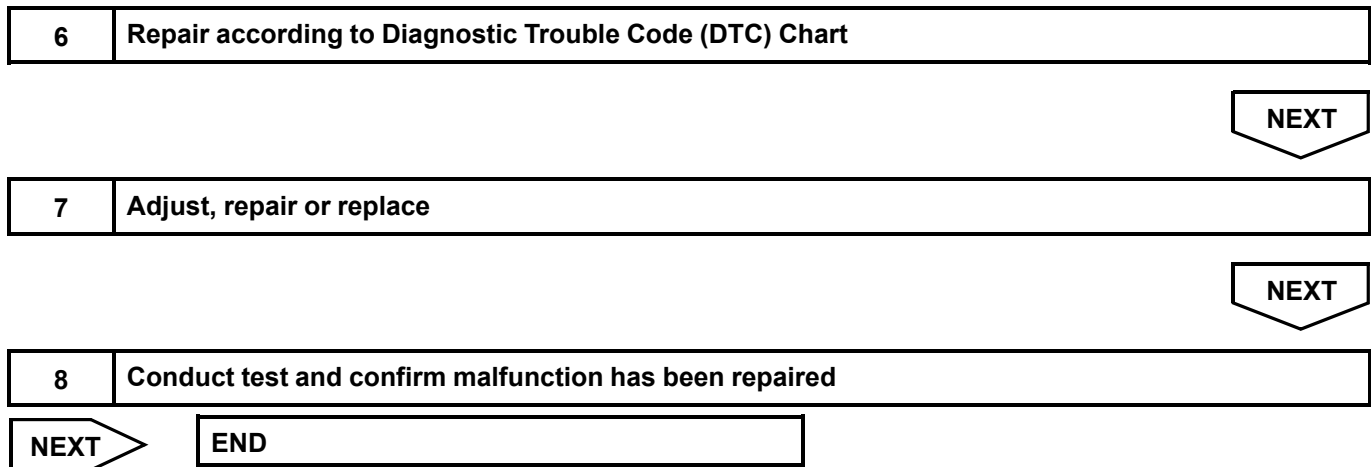
Result

Result	Go to
DTC is output	A
No DTC	B

B

Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTCs malfunction procedures

A



4.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- (5) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait several seconds.
- (6) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- (7) If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- (8) If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B100C13	Front Left Window Circuit Open
B100C71	Front Left Window Relay Stuck
B100D13	Front Right Window Circuit Open
B100D71	Front Right Window Relay Stuck
B100E13	Rear Left Window Circuit Open
B100E71	Rear Left Window Relay Stuck
B100F13	Rear Right Window Circuit Open
B100E71	Rear Left Window Relay Stuck
B100F13	Rear Right Window Circuit Open
B100F71	Rear Right Window Relay Stuck
B103A87	APM Controller Internal Fault
B103287	Lost Communication With APM MCU

4.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B100C13	Front Left Window Circuit Open
DTC	B100C71	Front Left Window Relay Stuck

■ Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B100C13	Front Left Window Circuit Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ground • Line connector • Glass regulator switch • Glass regulator motor • BCM module
B100C71	Front Left Window Relay Stuck	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check ground point
----------	---------------------------

(a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.

(b) Check the BCM ground point.

NG	Repair or replace ground wire harness or ground point.
-----------	---

OK

2 Use diagnostic tester to perform active test for window system

OK

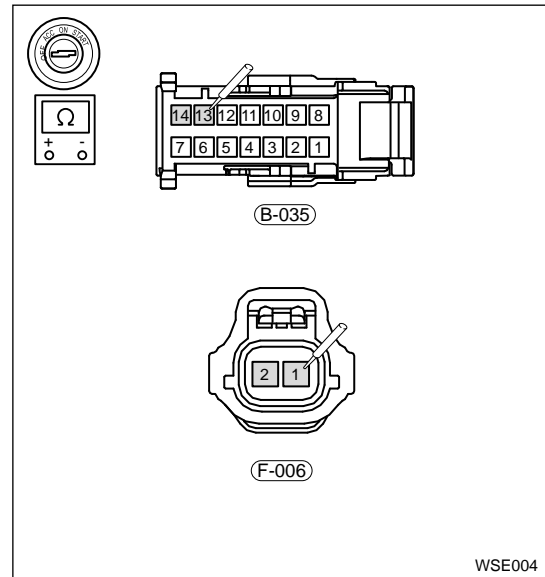
Go to step 5: Check control circuit of front left door glass.

NG

3 Check actuation circuit of front left window system

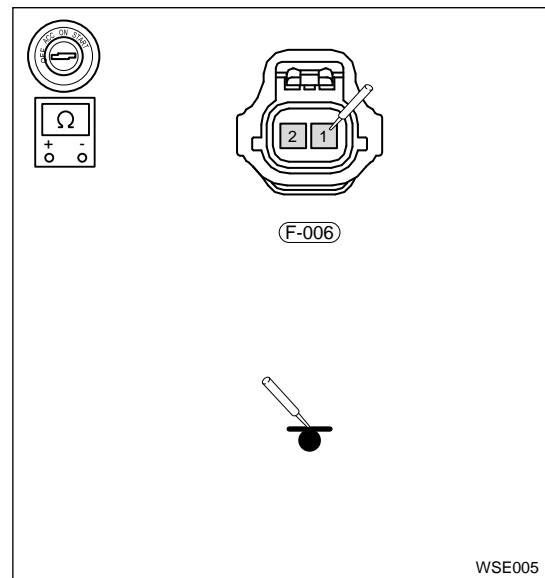
- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect front left door glass regulator motor wire harness connector F-006 and BCM connector B-035.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between F-006 (1) - B-035 (13) and F-006 (2) - B-035 (14) separately.

Digital Multimeter	Condition	Specified Condition
F-006 (1) - B-035 (13)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
F-006 (2) - B-035 (14)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between F-006 (1) and ground, F-006 (2) and ground separately to check if it is short to ground.

Digital Multimeter	Condition	Specified Condition
F-006 (1) - Ground	Always	∞
F-006 (2) - Ground		∞



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between F-006 (1) and power supply (+), F-006 (2) and power supply (+) separately to check if it is short to power supply.

Digital Multimeter	Condition	Specified Condition
F-006 (1) - Power Supply (+)	Always	∞
F-006 (2) - Power Supply (+)		∞

NG

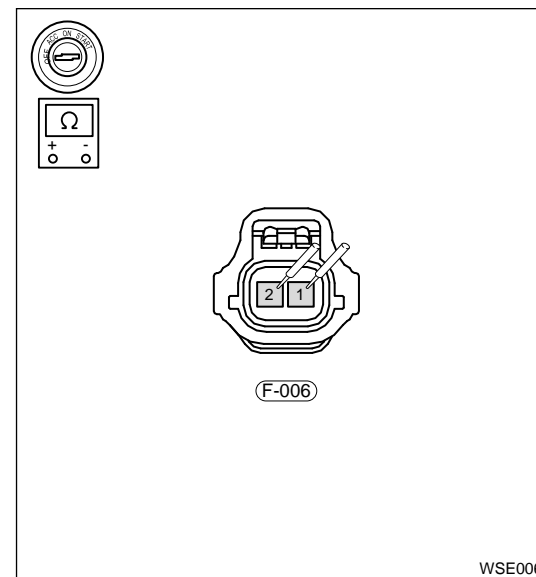
Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

4 Check front left window regulator motor

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" .
- (b) Disconnect the front left window regulator motor connector F-006.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check resistance between F-006 (1) and F-006 (2).

Digital Multimeter	Condition	Specified Condition
F-006 (1) - F-006 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(d) Apply 12 V voltage to both terminals (1) and (2) of front left window regulator motor connector F-006, and observe if regulator motor operates.

NG

Replace front left window regulator motor.

OK

Replace BCM.

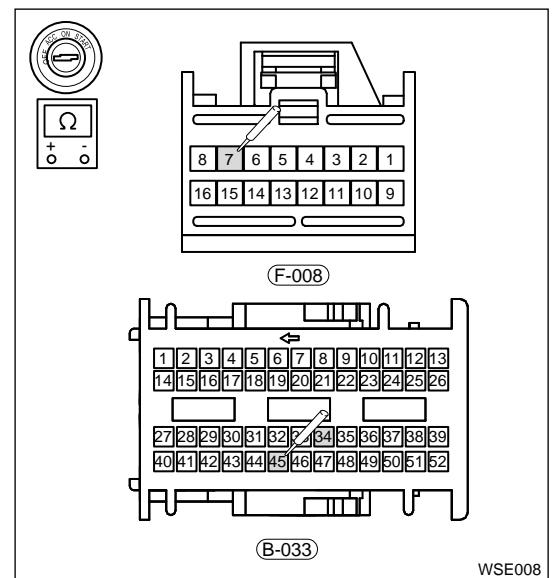
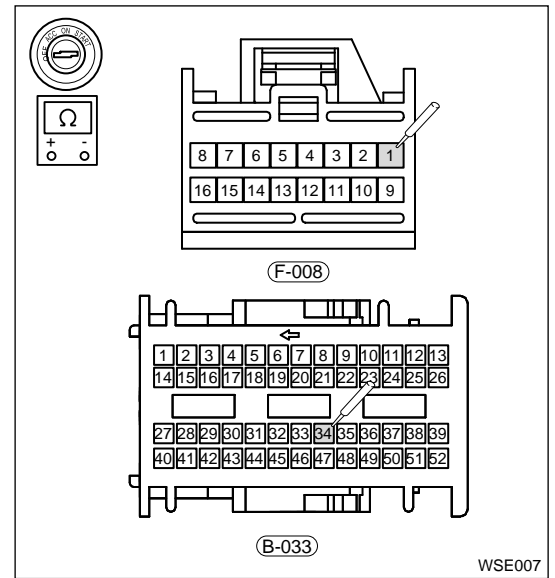
5 Check front left door glass control circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Check if fuse MF03 (125A) of engine compartment main fuse and relay box is blown.
- (c) Check if fuses RF52 (30A), RF51 (30A), RF54 (20A) of instrument panel fuse and relay box are blown.
- (d) Using voltage band of multimeter, measure if the voltage of terminal C5-1, C5-2, C3-6 of front compartment fuse and relay box is 12 V.
- (e) Using voltage band of multimeter, measure if the voltage of terminal BCM B-035 (07), B-035 (10), B-037 (20) is 12 V.
- (f) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (g) Disconnect front left door glass regulator switch connector F-008 and BCM connector B-033.
- (h) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between F-008 (1) and B-033 (34).

Digital Multimeter	Condition	Specified Condition
F-008 (1) - B-033 (34)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$

- (i) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between F-008 (7) and B-033 (45).

Digital Multimeter	Condition	Specified Condition
F-008 (7) - B-033 (45)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

6 Check the front left door power glass regulator switch

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove the front left door power regulator switch F-008.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistance between front left power window regulator switch F-008 (1) and F-008 (7).

Digital Multimeter	Condition	Specified Condition
F-008 (1) - F-008 (7)	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
	Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$
	Auto UP	$\approx 1500 \Omega$

- (d) Check glass regulator switch for stuck and damage.

NG

Replace front left door glass regulator switch.

OK

7

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "ON" .
- (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read the DTCs stored in body control system again.

NG

Replace Body Control Module (BCM).

OK

System operates normally.

DTC	B100D13	Front Right Window Circuit Open
DTC	B100D71	Front Right Window Relay Stuck

■ Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B100D13	Front Right Window Circuit Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ground • Line connector • Glass regulator switch • Glass regulator motor • BCM module
B100D71	Front Right Window Relay Stuck	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check ground point

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check the BCM ground point.

NG Repair or replace ground wire harness or ground point.

OK

2 Use diagnostic tester to perform active test for window system

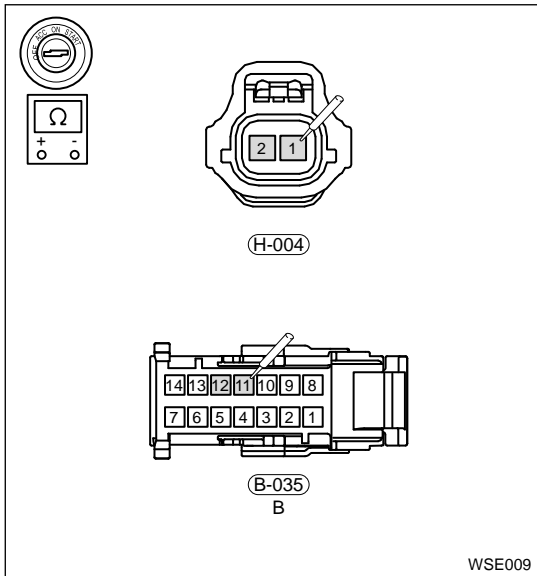
OK Go to step 5: Check control circuit of front left door glass.

NG

3 Check actuation circuit of front left window system

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect front right door glass regulator motor connector H-004 and BCM connector B-035.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between H-004 (1) and B-035 (11), H-004 (2) and B-035 (12) separately.

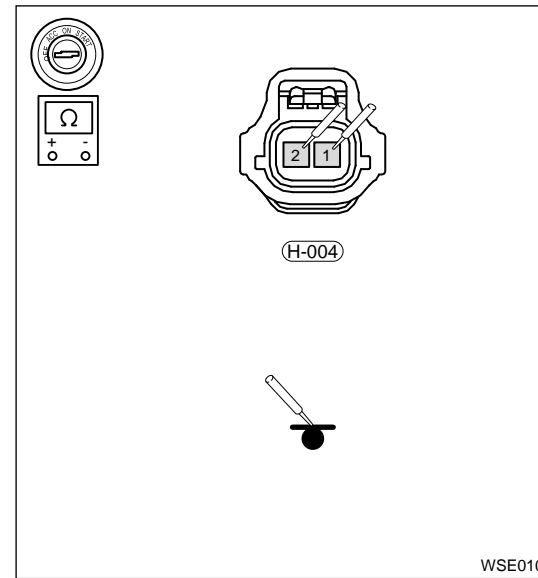
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-004 (1) - B- 035 (11)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
H-004 (2) - B- 035 (12)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



WSE009

(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between H-004 (1) and ground, H -004 (2) and ground separately to check if it is short to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-004 (1) - Ground	Always	∞
H-004 (2) - Ground		∞



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between H-004 (1) and power supply (+), H-004 (2) and power supply (+) separately to check for short circuit to power supply.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-004 (1) - Power Supply (+)	Always	∞
H-004 (2) - Power Supply (+)		∞

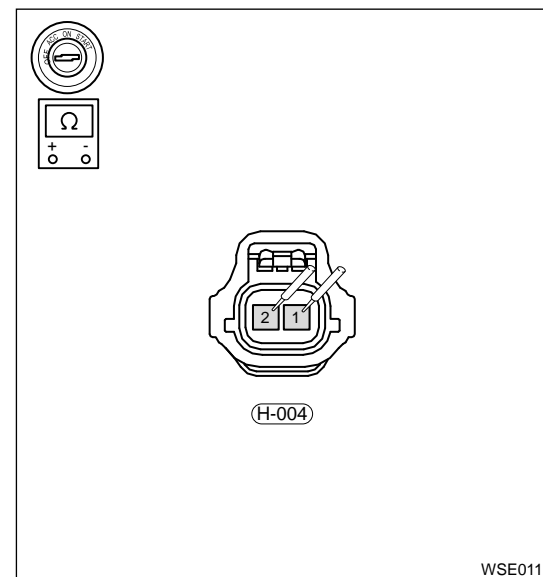
NG Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

4 Check front right window regulator motor

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" .
- (b) Disconnect the front right window regulator motor connector H-004.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check resistance between H-004 (1) and H-004 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-004 (1) - H- 004 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



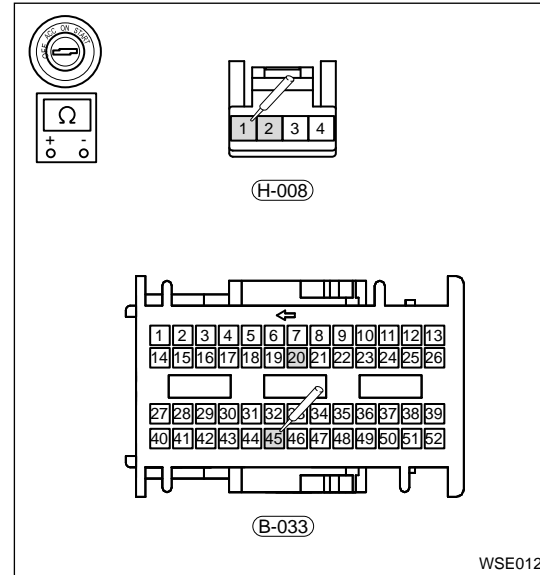
(d) Apply 12 V voltage to terminals (1) and (2) of front right window regulator motor connector H-004, and observe if the regulator motor moves.

NG	Replace the front right window regulator motor.
OK	Replace BCM.

5	Check control circuit of front right glass regulator
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the front right door regulator switch connector H-008 and BCM connector B-033.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between H-008 (1) and B-033 (45), H-008 (2) and B-033 (20) separately.

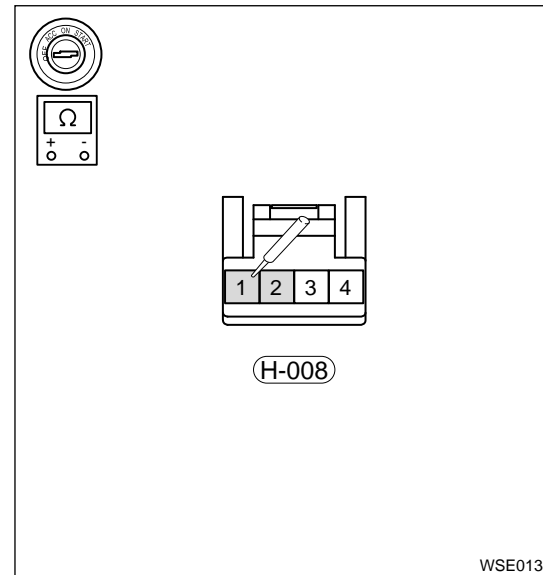
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-008 (1) - B-033 (45)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
H-008 (2) - B-033 (20)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



WSE012

(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between H-008 (1) and ground, H-008 (2) and ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-008 (1) - Ground	Always	∞
H-008 (2) - Ground	Always	∞



WSE013

- (e) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between H-008 (1) and battery (+), H-008 (2) and battery (+).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-008 (1) - Power Supply (+)	Always	∞
H-008 (2) - Power Supply (+)	Always	∞

NG

Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

6

Check front left glass regulator switch assembly (which controls front right regulator)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (b) Remove the front left door power regulator switch F-008.
 (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistance between front left power window regulator switch F-008 (2) and F-008 (7).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
F-008 (2) - F-008 (7)	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
	Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$
	Auto UP	$\approx 1500 \Omega$

- (d) Check glass regulator switch for stuck, damage.

NG

Replace front left door glass regulator switch.

OK

7

Check front right door power glass regulator switch

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "ON" , disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (b) Check glass regulator switch for stuck and damage.
 (c) Remove the front right door power glass regulator switch connector H-008.
 (d) Use ohm band of multimeter to measure resistance between H-008 (1) and H-008 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-008 (1) - H-008 (2)	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
	Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
	Auto UP	≈ 1500 Ω

NG Replace front right door glass regulator switch.

OK

8 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “ON” .
- (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read the DTCs stored in body control system again.

NG Replace Body Control Module (BCM).

OK System operates normally.

DTC	B100E13	Rear Left Window Circuit Open
DTC	B100E71	Rear Left Window Relay Stuck

Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B100E13	Rear Left Window Circuit Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ground • Line connector • Glass regulator switch • Glass regulator motor • BCM module
B100E71	Rear Left Window Relay Stuck	

DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check ground point

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check the BCM ground point.

NG Repair or replace ground wire harness or ground point.

OK

2 Use diagnostic tester to perform active test for window system

OK

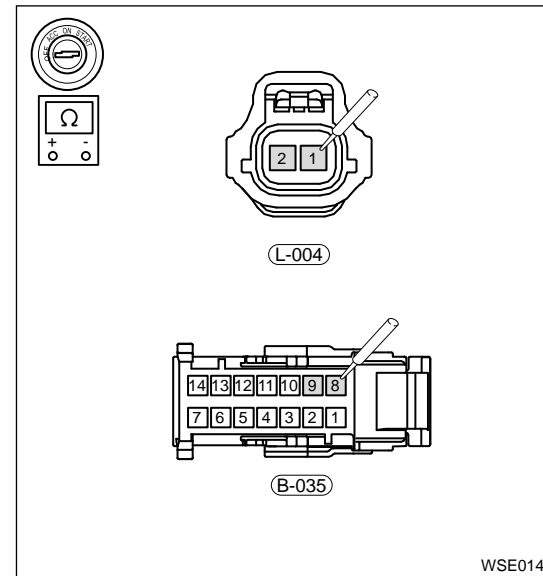
Go to step 5: Check rear left door glass control circuit.

NG

3 Check executive circuit of rear left window system

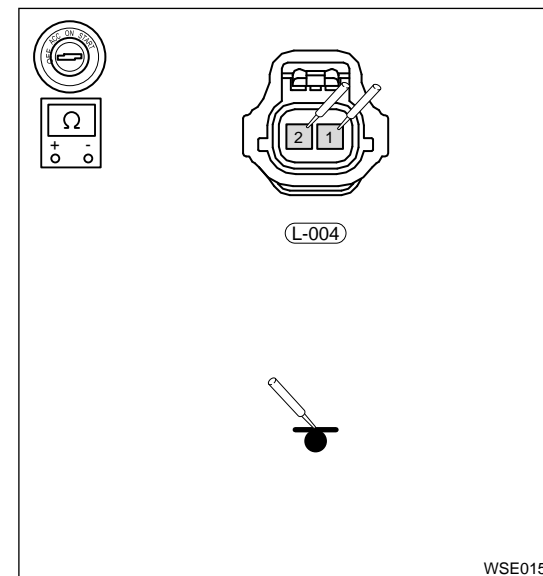
- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect rear left door glass regulator motor connector L-004 and BCM connector B-035.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between L-004 (1) and B-035 (8), L-004 (2) and B-035 (9) separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-004 (1) - B-035 (8)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
L-004 (2) - B-035 (9)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between L-004 (1) and ground, L-004 (2) and ground separately to check if it is short to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-004 (1) - Ground	Always	∞
L-004 (2) - Ground		∞



41 - BODY ELECTRICAL

(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between L-004 (1) - battery (+), L-004 (2) - battery (+) separately to check for short circuit to power supply.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-004 (1) - battery (+)	Always	∞
L-004 (2) - battery (+)		∞

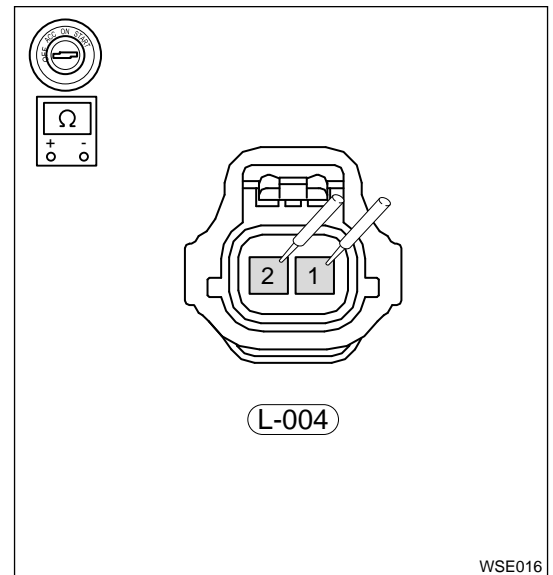
NG Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

4 Check rear left window regulator motor

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" .
- (b) Disconnect the rear left window regulator motor connector L-004.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check resistance between L-004 (1) and L-004 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-004 (1) - L-004 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(d) Apply 12 V voltage to both terminals of rear left window regulator motor connector L-004, observe if the regulator motor is moving.

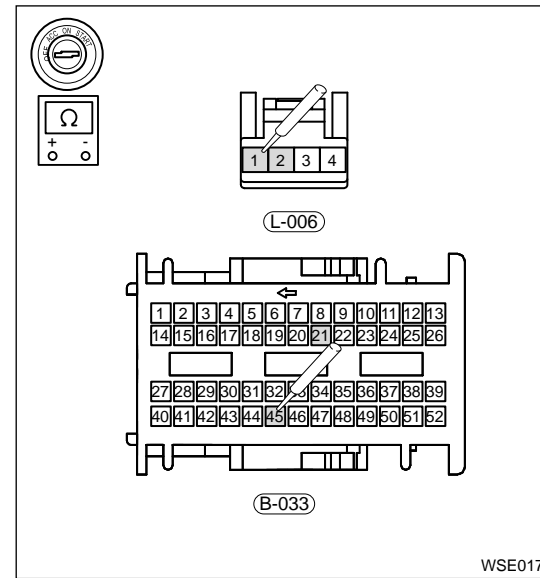
NG Replace rear left window regulator assembly.

OK Replace BCM.

5 Check control circuit of rear left glass regulator

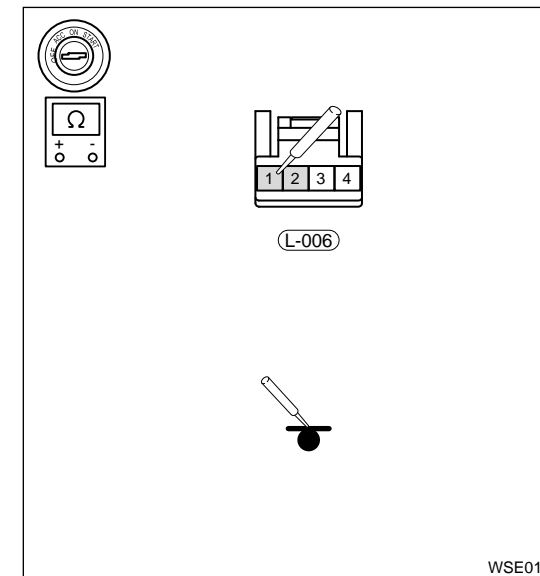
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect rear left door glass regulator switch connector L-006 and BCM connector B-033.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between L-006 (2) and B-033 (21), and L-006 (1) and B-033 (45).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-006 (2) - B-033 (21)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
L-006 (1) - B-033 (45)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between L-006 (1) - ground and L-006 (2) - ground to check for short circuit to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-006 (1) - Ground	Always	∞
L-006 (2) - Ground	Always	∞



- (e) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between L-006 (1) - battery (+) and L-006 (2) - battery (+) to check for short circuit to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-006 (1) - battery (+)	Always	∞
L-006 (2) - battery (+)	Always	∞

NG Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

6 Check front left door glass regulator switch assembly (which controls rear left glass regulator)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove the front left door power glass regulator switch connector F-008.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistance between F-008 (3) and F-008 (7).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
F-008 (3) - F-008 (7)	Manual DOWN	≈ 332 Ω
	Automatic DOWN	≈ 0 Ω
	Manual UP	≈ 3000 Ω
	Auto UP	≈ 1500 Ω

- (d) Check glass regulator switch for stuck, damage.

NG → **Replace front left door glass regulator switch assembly.**

OK

7 Check rear left door power glass regulator switch

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Check glass regulator switch for stuck and damage.
- (c) Remove the rear left door power glass regulator switch L-006.
- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistance between L-006 (1) and L-006 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
L-006 (1) - L-006 (2)	Manual DOWN	≈ 332 Ω
	Automatic DOWN	≈ 0 Ω
	Manual UP	≈ 3000 Ω
	Auto UP	≈ 1500 Ω

NG → **Replace rear left door glass regulator switch.**

OK

8 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “ON” .
- (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read the DTCs stored in body control system again.

NG → **Replace Body Control Module (BCM).**

OK

System operates normally.

DTC	B100F13	Rear Right Window Circuit Open
DTC	B100F71	Rear Right Window Relay Stuck

■ Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B100F13	Rear Right Window Circuit Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Ground • Line connector • Glass regulator switch • Glass regulator motor • BCM module
B100F71	Rear Right Window Relay Stuck	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check ground point

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Check the BCM ground point.

NG

Repair or replace ground wire harness or ground point.

OK

2 Use diagnostic tester to perform active test for window system

OK

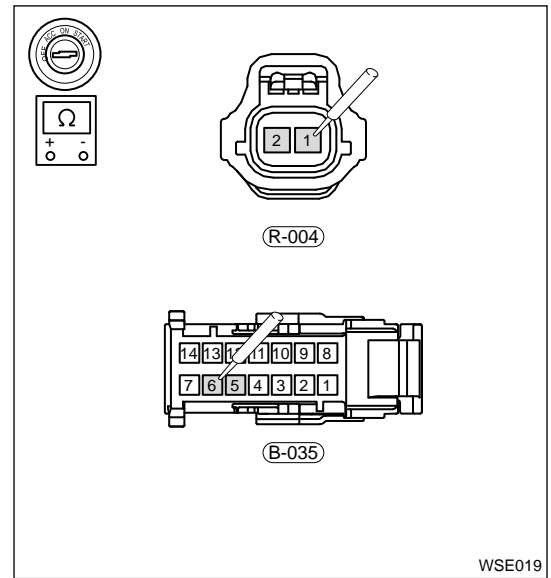
Go to step 5: Check rear right door glass control circuit.

NG

3 Check executive circuit of rear right window system

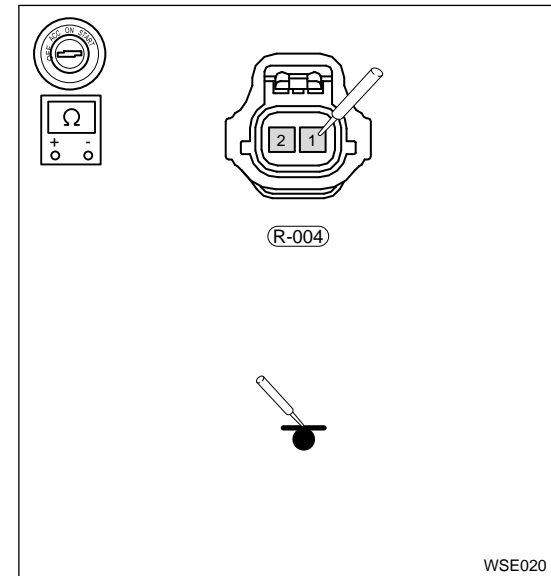
- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect rear right door glass regulator motor connector R-004 and BCM connector B-035.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between R-004 (1) and B-035 (6), R-004 (2) and B-035 (5) separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-004 (1) - B- 035 (6)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
R-004 (2) - B- 035 (5)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity of R-004 (1) - ground, R-004 (2) - ground separately to check for short circuit to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-004 (1) - Ground	Always	∞
R-004 (2) - Ground		∞



- (e) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between R-004 (1) - battery (+), R-004 (2) - battery (+) separately to check for short circuit to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-004 (1) - battery (+)	Always	∞
R-004 (2) - battery (+)		∞

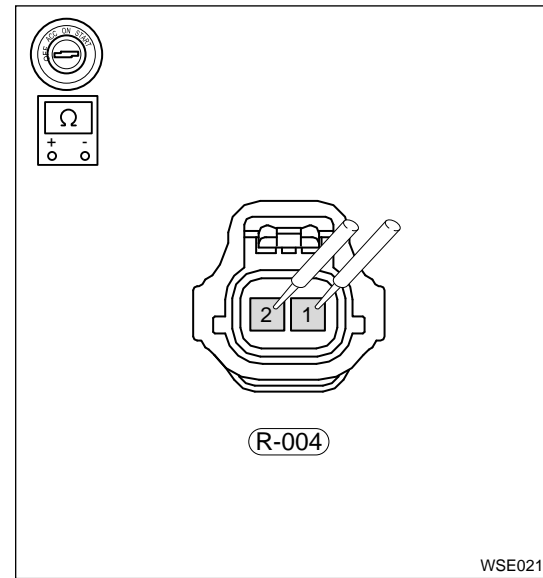
NG Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

4 Check rear right window regulator motor

- (a) Disconnect negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" .
- (b) Disconnect the rear right window regulator motor connector R-004.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check resistance between R-004 (1) and R-004 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-004 (1) - R- 004 (2)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



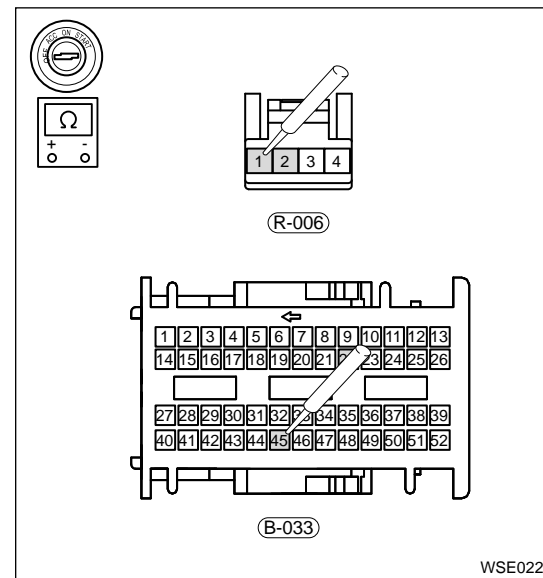
- (d) Apply 12 V voltage to both terminals of rear right window regulator motor connector R-004, and observe if the regulator motor moves.

NG	Replace rear right window regulator motor.
OK	Replace BCM.

5	Check control circuit of rear right door glass regulator
----------	---

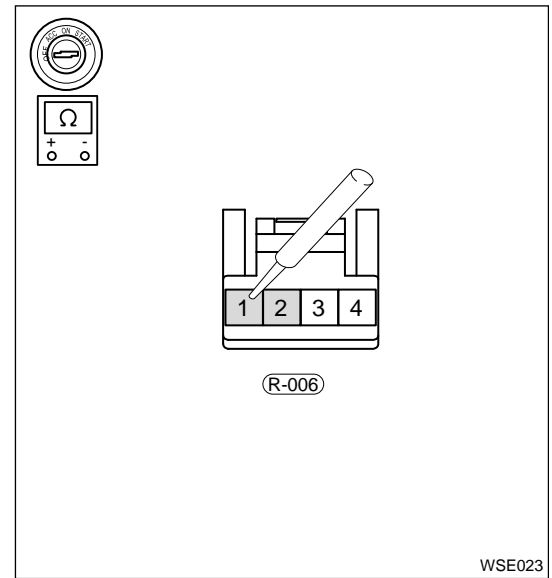
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect rear right door glass regulator switch connector R-006 and BCM connector B-033.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between R-006 (1) and B-033 (45), and R-006 (2) and B-033 (22).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-006 (1) - B- 033 (45)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
R-006 (2) - B- 033 (22)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between R-006 (1) and ground, R-006 (2) and ground to check for short circuit to ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-006 (1) - Ground	Always	∞
R-006 (2) - Ground	Always	∞



(e) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between R-006 (1) and power supply (+), R-006 (2) - power supply (+) to check for short circuit to power supply.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-006 (1) - battery (+)	Always	∞
R-006 (2) - battery (+)	Always	∞

NG Replace wire harness and connector.

OK

6 Check front left door glass regulator switch assembly (which controls rear right glass regulator circuit)

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove the front left door power regulator switch F-008.
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistance between F-008 (4) and F-008 (7).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
F-008 (4) - F-008 (7)	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
	Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$
	Auto UP	$\approx 1500 \Omega$

(d) Check glass regulator switch for stuck and damage.

NG Replace front left door glass regulator switch.

OK

7 Check rear right door power glass regulator switch

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Check glass regulator switch for stuck and damage.
- (c) Remove the rear right door power glass regulator switch connector R-006.
- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, measure resistance between R-006 (1) and R-006 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-006 (1) - R-006 (2)	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
	Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$
	Auto UP	$\approx 1500 \Omega$

- (e) Check glass regulator switch for stuck and damage.

NG

Replace rear right door glass regulator switch.

OK

8 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "ON" .
- (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to read the DTCs stored in body control system again.

NG

Replace Body Control Module (BCM).

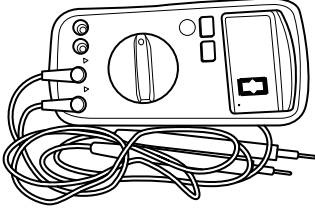
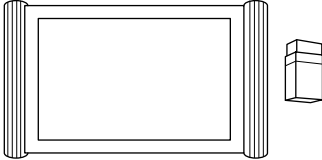
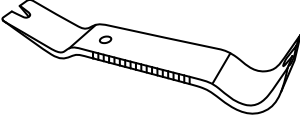
OK

System operates normally.

5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

5.1 Tools

■ General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Diagnostic tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>
Interior crow plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

5.2 Jam Protection Learning

Jam protection learning

■ Jam protection canceling conditions

System will cancel jam protection function in following conditions:

- (1) When jam protection occurs twice continuously (window does not raise to top).
- (2) Control module will cut power regardless of work or non-work status.
- (3) Window position calculation judged by system exceeds limit value (Including over 15 times of window up/down not fully closed operations).
- (4) If there is obstacle as window closes within 10 seconds for first jam protection rollback, jam protection function will be activated again, and window will reverse automatically. At this time, only manual window UP function operates. Window provides maximum closing force within 10 seconds, to make window be closed smoothly in some extreme cases. Please make sure there is no obstacle during closing, avoiding personal injury.

■ Jam protection function manual learning (jam protection module initialization)

- (1) During normal use of window regulating system, such as entering "jam protection canceling" condition without auto window UP (jam protection function), jam protection window regulating system resumes to multiple functions by using manual learning.

Make sure there is no obstacle in window range during learning, manual learning steps are as follows:

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON mode.
 - Operate window glass to raise until reaching top manually and lock it for 2 seconds.
 - Release the switch.
 - Operate window glass to go down until reaching bottom manually and keep it lock for 2 seconds.
 - Release the switch.
 - Try the auto window UP function.
 - If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.
 - It is necessary to perform diagnostic tester learning when replacing door regulating system related mechanisms (such as glass regulator, glass run etc.), to make sure system parameters can be updated. After completing learning, clear the fault codes using diagnostic tester.
- (2) Perform setting with smart key remote one-button window up function. Lower the window to the bottom, then raise it to the top. Window can be closed normally and setting is successful.

5.3 Replacement of Front Left Door Power Glass Regulator Switch

■ Removal

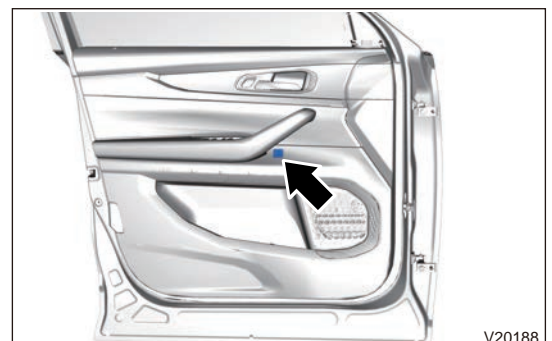
Hint

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front left door power glass regulator switch.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front left door glass regulator switch. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent front door inner protector assembly from being scratched, when removing front left door glass regulator switch.**

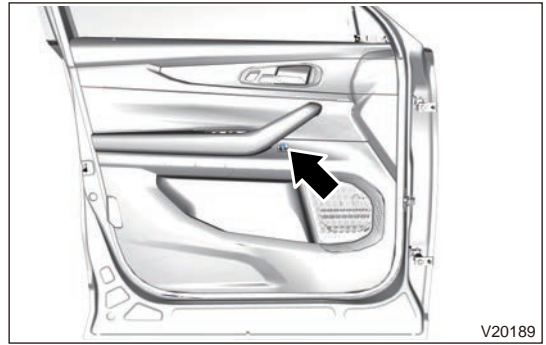
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using a interior crow plate, carefully remove front door triangular block assembly.



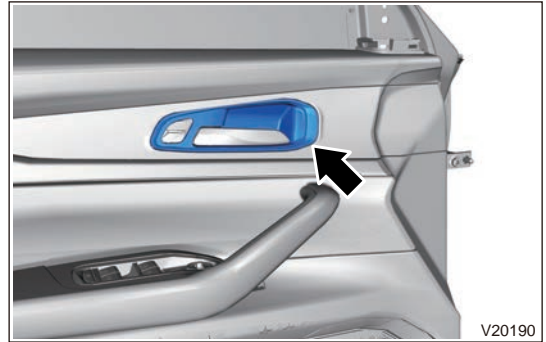
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off front door protector block cover.



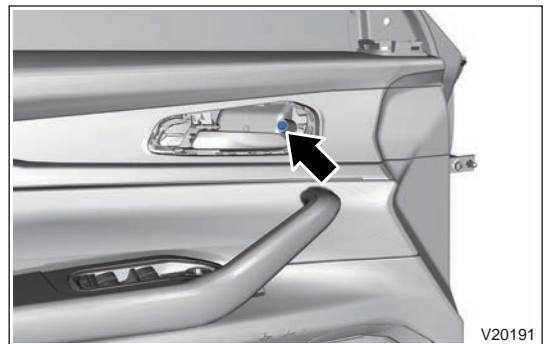
- (5) Remove fixing bolt from the rear side of front door protector block cover.



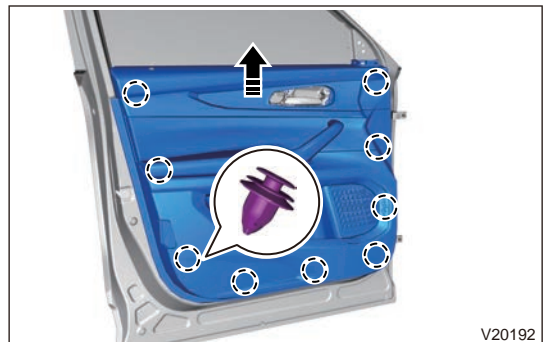
- (6) Remove the front door protector and disconnect the central control switch connector.



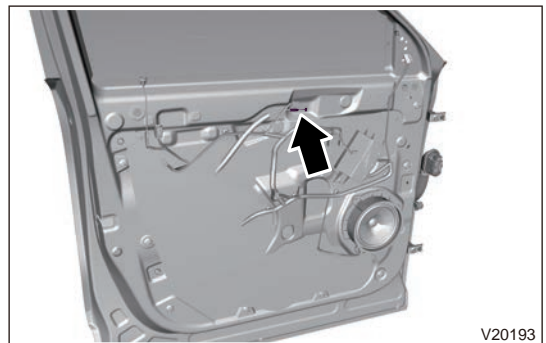
- (7) Remove fixing bolt from the rear side of front door protector.



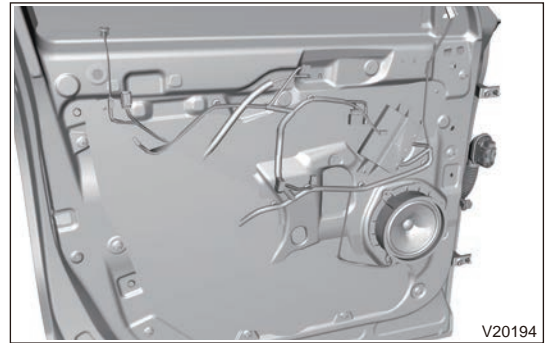
- (8) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off clips on front door inner protector assembly, and loosen front door inner protector assembly in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



- (9) Disengage front door inside handle cable from front door inside handle.



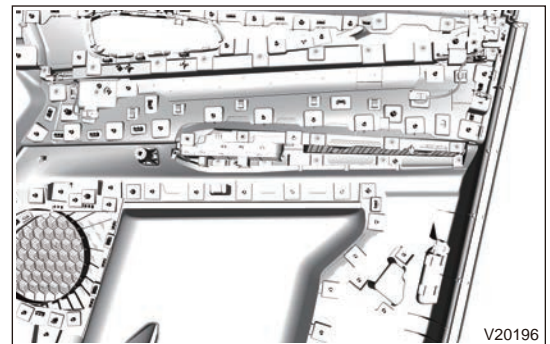
- (10) Disconnect ambient light connector, anti-theft indicator light connector and regulator switch connector.



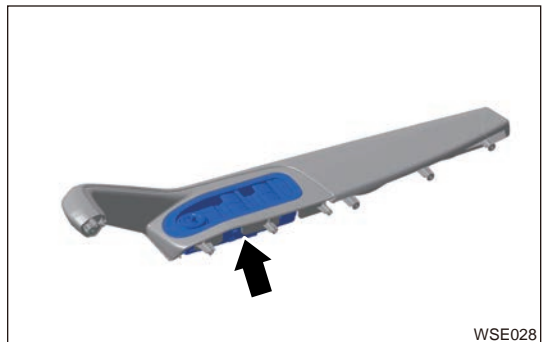
- (11) Remove the front left door protector assembly.



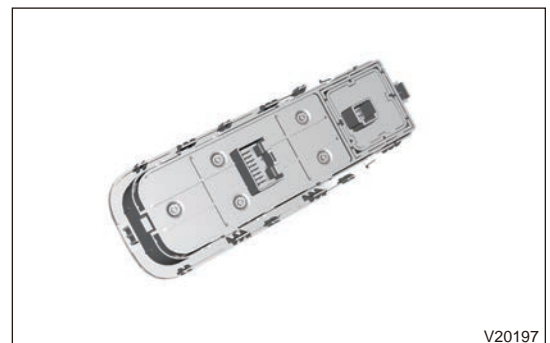
- (12) Remove fixing screw from power glass regulator switch that fixed on door protector assembly.



- (13) Separate the power glass regulator switch.



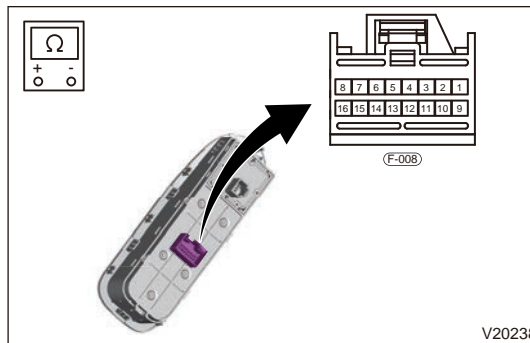
- (14) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, detach claws from front left door glass regulator assembly and remove front left door glass regulator switch.



■ Inspection

- (1) Using a digital multimeter, check for continuity between terminals of front left door glass regulator switch according to table below.

Component	Multimeter Connection	Switch Condition	Specified Condition
Front left door glass regulator switch	1 - 7	Manual DOWN	≈ 332 Ω
		Automatic DOWN	≈ 0 Ω
	1 - 7	Manual UP	≈ 3000 Ω
		Auto UP	≈ 1500 Ω
Front right door glass regulator switch	2 - 7	Manual DOWN	≈ 332 Ω
		Automatic DOWN	≈ 0 Ω
	2 - 7	Manual UP	≈ 3000 Ω
		Auto UP	≈ 1500 Ω
Rear left door glass regulator switch	3 - 7	Manual DOWN	≈ 332 Ω
		Automatic DOWN	≈ 0 Ω
	3 - 7	Manual UP	≈ 3000 Ω
		Auto UP	≈ 1500 Ω
Rear right door glass regulator switch	4 - 7	Manual DOWN	≈ 332 Ω
		Automatic DOWN	≈ 0 Ω
	4 - 7	Manual UP	≈ 3000 Ω
		Auto UP	≈ 1500 Ω



If result is not as specified, replace front left door glass regulator switch.

■ Installation

Caution

- Check if front left door glass regulator switch can be operated normally after installation.

- (1) Install power glass regulator switch to proper position of door protector handle.
- (2) Install fixing screw to door protector handle.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Install door protector handle to proper position of door protector, and install fixing bolt.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (4) Connect ambient light connector, anti-theft indicator light connector and regulator switch connector.

- (5) Install front door inside handle cable to front door inside handle.
- (6) Install front door inner protector to proper position of body panel and fasten the clip.
- (7) Install fixing bolt to rear side of front door protector.

Tightening torque: $5 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (8) Install front door protector and connect central control switch connector.
- (9) Install fixing bolt to rear side of front door protector block cover.

Tightening torque: $5 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (10) Install the front door protector block cover.
- (11) Install the front door triangular block assembly.
- (12) Connect the negative battery cable.

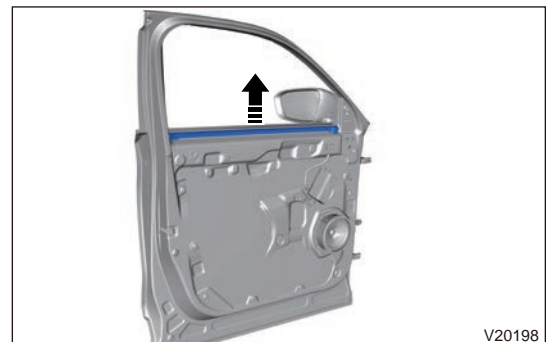
5.4 Replacement of Front Door Inner Weather Bar

■ Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door inner weather bars.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front door inner weather bars. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front door inner weather bars.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, remove front door inner weather bar from slot in direction of arrow.



V20198

■ Installation

- (1) Install front door inner weather bar to proper position of door.
- (2) Install the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (3) Install the negative battery cable.

5.5 Replacement of Front Door Outer Weather Bar

■ Removal

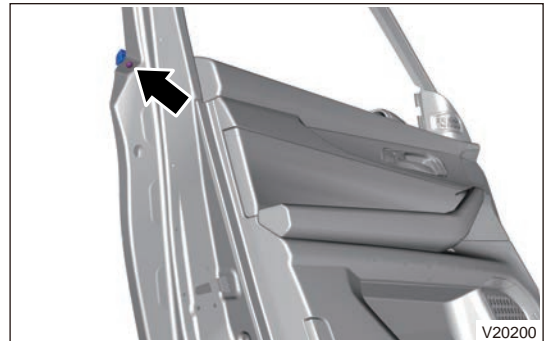
CAUTION

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door outer weather bars.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front door outer weather bars. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front door outer weather bars.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front door inner triangular block assembly.



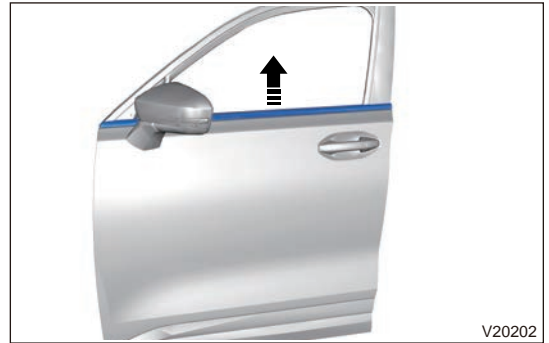
- (4) Remove 1 fixing screw from front left triangular block assembly.
- (5) Using a interior crow plate, carefully pry off front left triangular block assembly.
- (6) Remove 1 fixing screw from left side of front left door outer weather bar.



- (7) Remove 1 fixing screw from right side of front left door outer weather bar.



- (8) Using an interior crow plate, remove front door outer weather bar from slot in direction of arrow.



■ Installation

- (1) Install front door outer weather bar to proper position of door.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws to front left door outer weather bar.

Tightening torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Install the front left triangular block assembly.
- (4) Install 1 fixing screw to front left triangular block assembly.

Tightening torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (5) Install the front door inner triangular block assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

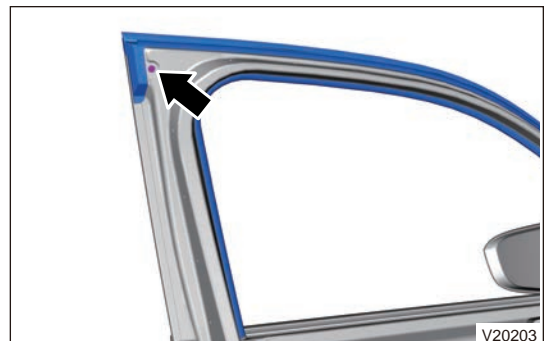
5.6 Replacement of Front Door Upper Glass Run

■ Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing upper glass run.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing upper glass run. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing upper glass run.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the front left door weather bar.
- (5) Remove the front door glass assembly.
- (6) Remove 1 fixing screw from front door upper glass run.



- (7) Remove front left door upper glass run from slot in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



■ **Installation**

- (1) Install upper glass run to proper position of door.
- (2) Install 1 fixing screw to front door upper glass run.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Install the front door glass assembly.
- (4) Install the front left door weather bar.
- (5) Install the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.7 Replacement of Front Door Glass Assembly

■ **Removal**

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door glass assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front door glass assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent window glass from dropping which will cause damage, when removing front door glass assembly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the front left door protective film assembly.
- (5) Remove the front left door weather bar.
- (6) Raise front door glass assembly to a proper position.
- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts from glass bracket and remove front left door glass assembly.



■ Installation

- (1) Install front door glass to proper position of door and install 2 fixing bolts to glass bracket.

Tightening torque: 7 ± 1 N·m

Caution

- **When it is installed in place, power on the regulator to operate it for two cycles. Check if glass runs smoothly.**

- (2) Install the front left door weather bar.
- (3) Install the front left door protective film assembly.
- (4) Install the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

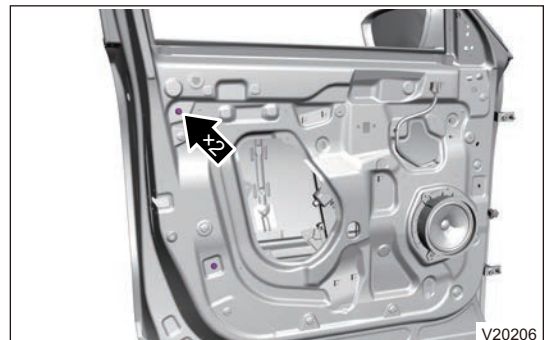
5.8 Replacement of Front Door Glass Rear Lower Guide Rail Assembly

■ Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door glass rear lower guide rail assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front door glass rear lower guide rail assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the front left door protective film assembly.
- (5) Remove the front left door weather bar.
- (6) Remove the front left door glass assembly.
- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts from front door glass rear lower guide rail assembly.



■ Installation

Caution

Check guide rail before assembling. Direction of lower guide rail tongue should be parallel to guide rail body.

- (1) Install front door glass rear lower guide rail assembly to proper position of vehicle body.
- (2) Installation 2 fixing bolts of front door glass rear lower guide rail assembly.

Tightening torque: 7 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Install the front left door glass assembly.
- (4) Install the front left door weather bar.
- (5) Install the front left door protective film assembly.
- (6) Install the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (7) Connect the negative battery cable.

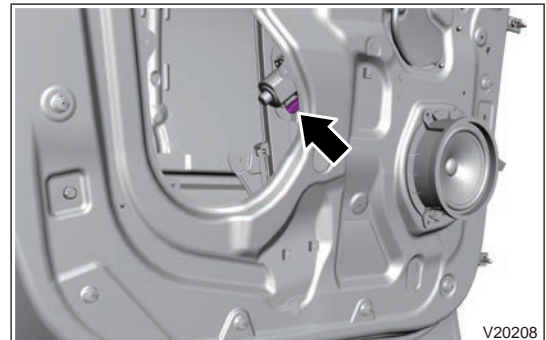
5.9 Replacement of Front Door Power Glass Regulator

■ Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door power glass regulator.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front door power glass regulator. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

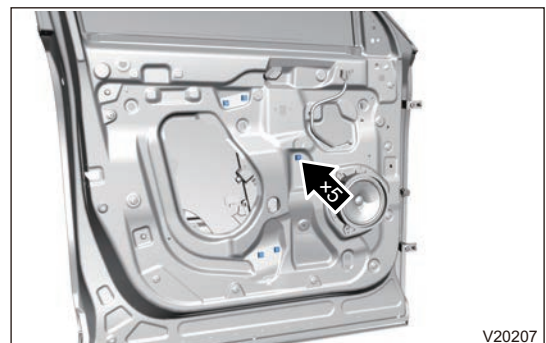
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the front left door protective film assembly.
- (5) Remove the front left door weather bar.
- (6) Remove the front left door glass assembly.
- (7) Disconnect the front left door power glass regulator connector.



- (8) Remove 5 fixing nuts from front left door power glass regulator, and remove front left door power glass regulator assembly.

Caution

Hold the glass regulator assembly with one hand when removing the last nut to avoid falling and damaging the motor.

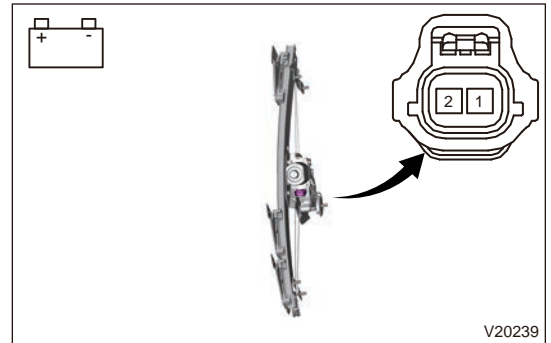


■ Inspection

- (1) Apply battery voltage to the terminals of power glass regulator motor connector, and check the operation of front door power glass regulator motor according to table below.

Battery positive (+)	Battery negative (-)	Specified Condition
1	2	UP smoothly
2	1	DOWN smoothly

If result is not as specified, replace power glass regulator.



V20239

■ Installation

Caution

After installing front door power glass regulator is installed, make sure that window glass can go up and down smoothly and freely without any vibration, chattering or shocking, etc.

- (1) Install the power glass regulator to proper position of the door.
- (2) Install 5 fixing nuts to front door power glass regulator.

Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

Caution

Hold the glass regulator assembly with one hand when installing the first nut to avoid falling and damaging the motor.

- (3) Connect the front door power glass regulator connector.
- (4) Install the front left door glass assembly.
- (5) Install the front left door weather bar.
- (6) Install the front left door protective film assembly.
- (7) Install the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.10 Replacement of Rear Left Door Power Glass Regulator Switch

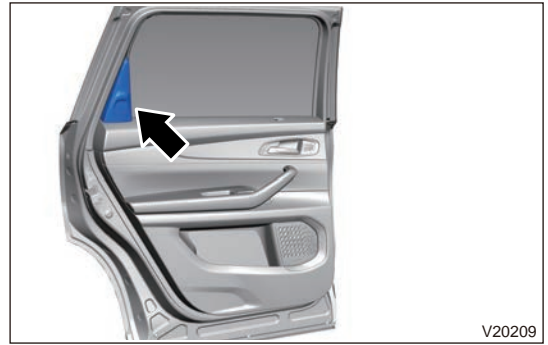
■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing power glass regulator switch.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing power glass regulator switch. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent door inner protector assembly from being scratched, when removing power glass regulator switch.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

- (3) Remove the rear left door inside triangular block assembly.



- (4) Remove the rear left door protector block cover (middle).



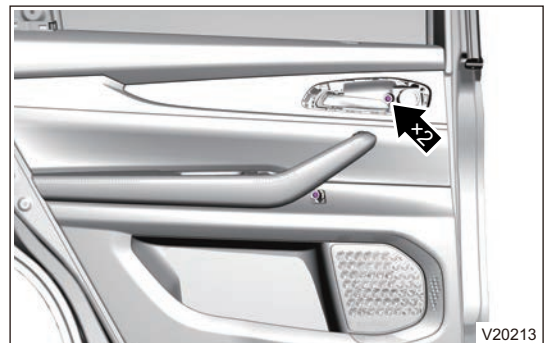
- (5) Remove the rear left door handle box block cover.



- (6) Remove the rear left door front cover.



- (7) Remove rear left door front cover and rear left door protector block cover (middle) rear fixing bolt.

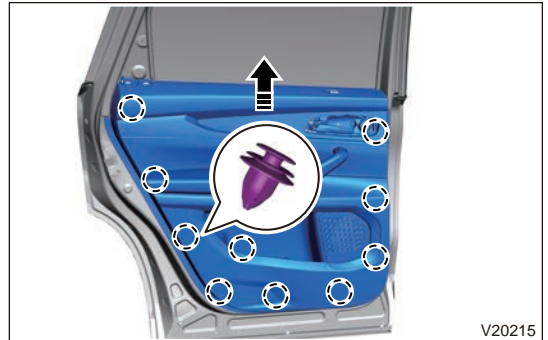


- (8) Remove fixing screw from rear side of rear left door handle box block cover.



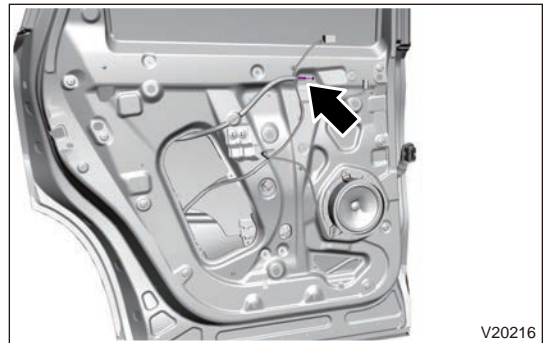
V20214

- (9) Using an interior crow plate, pry up clips on rear door inner protector assembly, and remove rear door inner protector assembly in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



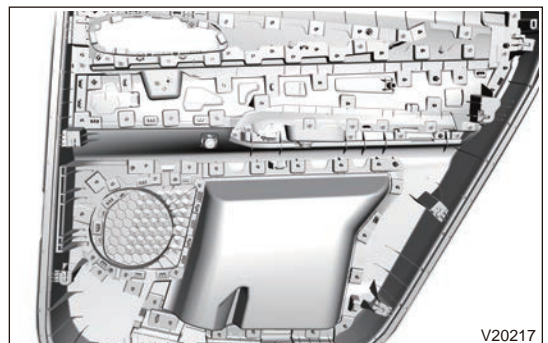
V20215

- (10) Disengage rear door inside handle cable from rear door inside handle.



V20216

- (11) Disconnect DOW, high pitched horn and glass regulator switch wire harness connector.
- (12) Remove fixing screw from power glass regulator switch that fixed on door protector assembly.



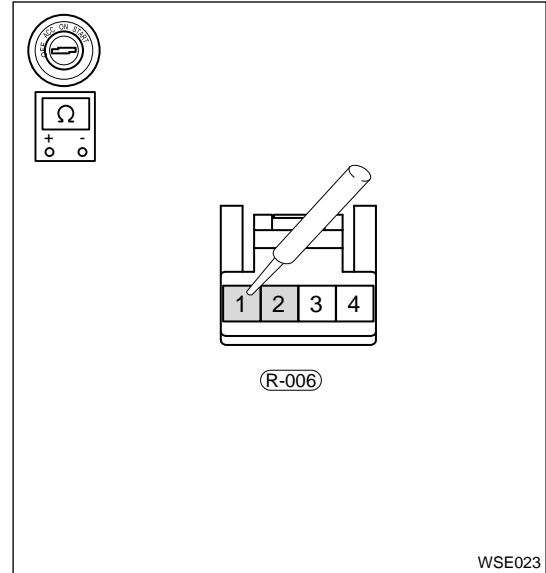
V20217

- (13) Remove the fixing screws.
- (14) Separate the power glass regulator switch.
- (15) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, detach 4 claws from power glass regulator switch and remove the power glass regulator switch.

■ Inspection

- (1) Using a digital multimeter, measure continuity between terminals of three power glass regulator switches according to table below.

Component	Multimeter Connection	Switch Condition	Specified Condition
Front right door glass regulator switch	2 - 1	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
		Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	2 - 1	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$
		Auto UP	$\approx 1500 \Omega$
Rear left door glass regulator switch	2 - 1	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
		Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	2 - 1	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$
		Auto UP	$\approx 1500 \Omega$
Rear right door glass regulator switch	2 - 1	Manual DOWN	$\approx 332 \Omega$
		Automatic DOWN	$\approx 0 \Omega$
	2 - 1	Manual UP	$\approx 3000 \Omega$
		Auto UP	$\approx 1500 \Omega$



If result is not as specified, replace power glass regulator switch.

■ Installation

Caution
Check if rear left door glass regulator switch can be operated normally after installation.

(1) Install power glass regulator switch to proper position of door protector handle.

(2) Install 2 fixing screws.

Tightening torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(3) Install door protector handle to proper position of door protector, and install 16 fixing screws.

Tightening torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(4) Install rear left door protector assembly to proper position of door and connect DOW, high pitched horn and glass regulator switch wire harness connector.

(5) Connect rear door inside handle cable to rear door inside handle.

(6) Align with the clip and press door protector firmly.

(7) Install the fixing screw to rear side of rear left door handle box block cover.

Tightening torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(8) Install rear left door front cover and rear left door protector block cover (middle) rear fixing bolt.

Tightening torque: $5 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(9) Install the rear left door front cover.

(10) Install the rear left door handle box block cover.

(11) Install the rear left door protector block cover (middle).

(12) Install the rear left door inner triangular block assembly.

(13) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.11 Replacement of Rear Door Inner Weather Bar

■ Removal

Warning

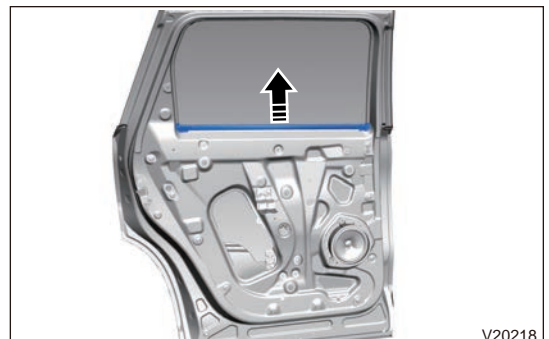
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door inner weather bars.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear door inner weather bars. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

(1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.

(2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

(3) Remove the rear left door inner protector assembly.

(4) Using an interior crow plate, remove rear door inner weather bar from slot in direction of arrow.



V20218

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install rear door inner weather bar to proper position of door.
- (2) Install the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

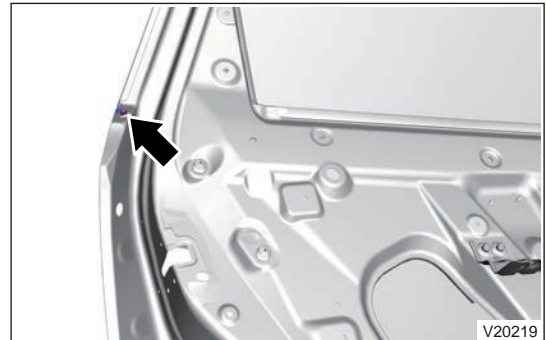
5.12 Replacement of Rear Door Outer Weather Bar

■ **Removal**

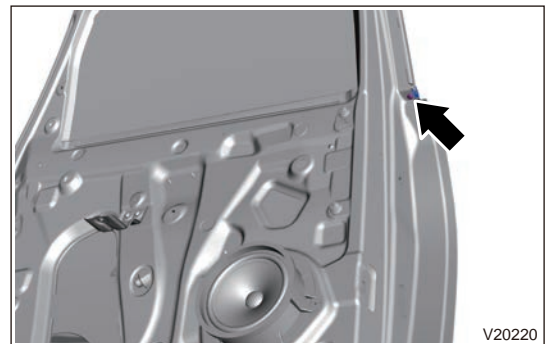
Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door outer weather bars.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear door outer weather bars. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove 1 fixing screw from left side of rear door outer weather bar.



- (4) Remove 1 fixing screw from right side of rear door outer weather bar.



- (5) Using an interior crow plate, remove rear door outer weather bar from slot in direction of arrow.



■ Installation

- (1) Install rear door outer weather bar to proper position of door.
- (2) Install 1 fixing screw to right side of rear door outer weather bar.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Installation 1 fixing screw to left side of rear door outer weather bar.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.13 Replacement of Rear Left Door Run

■ Removal

Warning

- Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear left door glass assembly.
- (5) Remove 2 fixing screws from rear left door run.



- (6) Remove rear left door upper glass run from slot in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



■ **Installation**

- (1) Install rear left door upper glass run to proper position of door.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws to rear left door run.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Install the rear left door glass assembly.
- (4) Install the rear left door frame weatherstrip.
- (5) Install the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

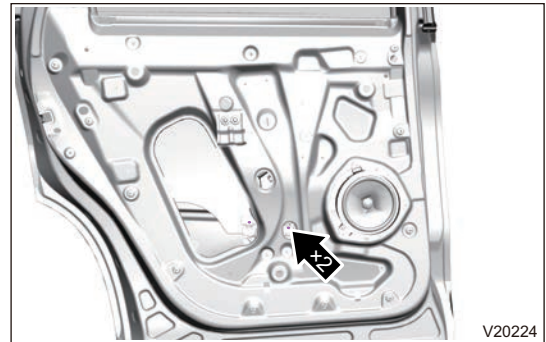
5.14 Replacement of Rear Door Glass Assembly

■ **Removal**

Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door glass assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear door glass assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear left door protective film assembly.
- (5) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear left door glass bracket.



- (6) Remove the rear left door glass.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install rear left door glass assembly to proper position of door and install 2 fixing bolts to rear left door glass bracket.

Tightening torque: 7 ± 1 N·m

Caution

- **When it is installed in place, power on the regulator to operate it for two cycles. Check if glass runs smoothly.**
- **Lower the glass to the bottom for the subsequent installation of B pillar cover plate.**

- (2) Install the rear left door protective film assembly.
- (3) Install the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

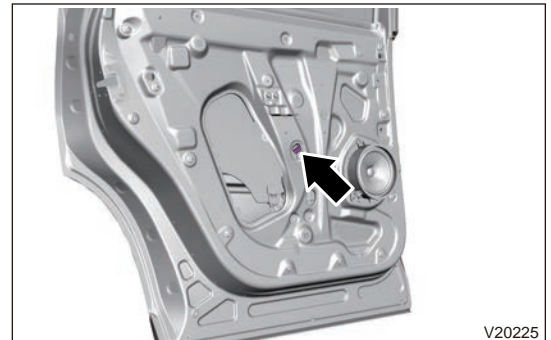
5.15 Replacement of Rear Door Power Glass Regulator

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door power glass regulator.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear door power glass regulator. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

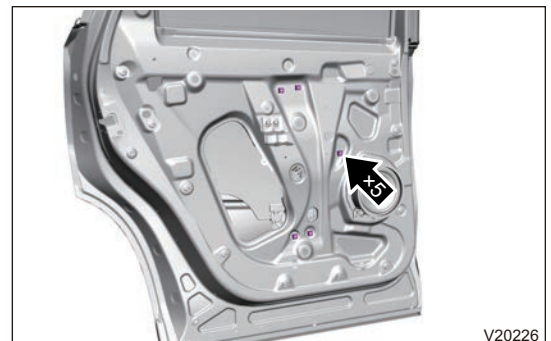
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear left door protective film assembly.
- (5) Remove the rear left door glass assembly.
- (6) Disconnect the rear door power glass regulator connector.



- (7) Remove 5 fixing nuts from rear door power glass regulator.

Caution

Hold the glass regulator assembly with one hand when removing the last nut to avoid falling and damaging the motor.



- (8) Remove the rear door power glass regulator.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the rear door power glass regulator to proper position of door.
- (2) Install 5 fixing nuts to rear door power glass regulator.

Tightening torque: 9 ± 1.5 N·m

Caution

- **Hold the glass regulator assembly with one hand when installing the first nut to avoid falling and damaging the motor.**

- (3) Connect the rear door power glass regulator connector.
- (4) Install the rear left door glass assembly.
- (5) Install the rear left door protective film assembly.
- (6) Install the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (7) Install the negative battery cable.

5.16 Replacement of Front Windshield Assembly

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front windshield assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front windshield assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the roof assembly.

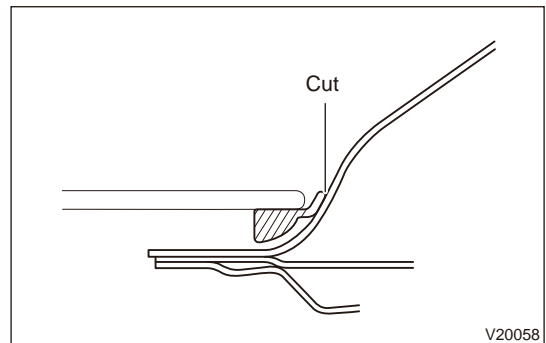
Hint

It is not necessary to completely remove the roof assembly. Lower the front part of roof assembly, so that front windshield assembly can be removed.

- (4) Remove the inside rear view mirror assembly.
- (5) Remove the wiper arm assembly.
- (6) Remove the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (7) Using a knife, cut off the adhesive.

Caution

Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when cutting off the adhesive.



V20058

- (8) Apply protective tape to the outer surface of body to prevent scratches.

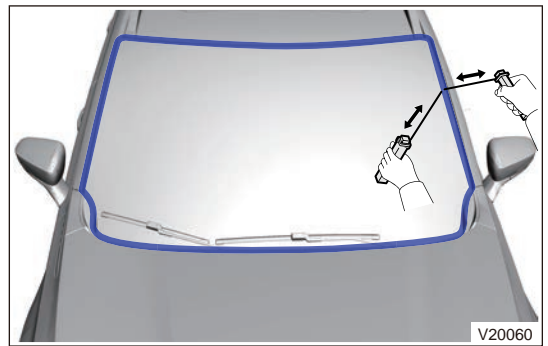
Caution

To prevent instrument panel upper body assembly from being scratched, place a plastic sheet between piano wire and instrument panel upper body assembly.

- (9) Pass a piano wire through the seam between body and front windshield assembly. Tie wooden blocks or similar objects to both piano wire ends, cut off the adhesive by pulling the piano wire around front windshield assembly, and remove the front windshield assembly.

Caution

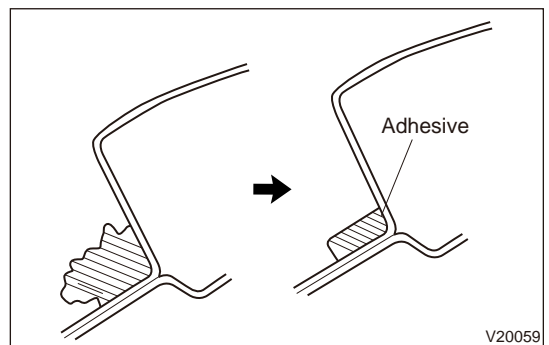
- **When removing front windshield assembly, an assistant is needed.**
- **When removing front windshield assembly, prevent it from dropping.**
- **Leave as much adhesive on the body as possible when cutting off the adhesive.**
- **When separating front windshield assembly from vehicle, be careful not to damage body paint, interior and exterior ornaments.**



- (10) Clean the vehicle body. Using a knife, cut off any excess adhesive on the contact surface of vehicle body as shown in illustration.

Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when cutting off the adhesive.**
- **Leave as much adhesive on the body as possible, when cutting off the adhesive.**



- (11) Clean the contact surface of vehicle body with cleaner.

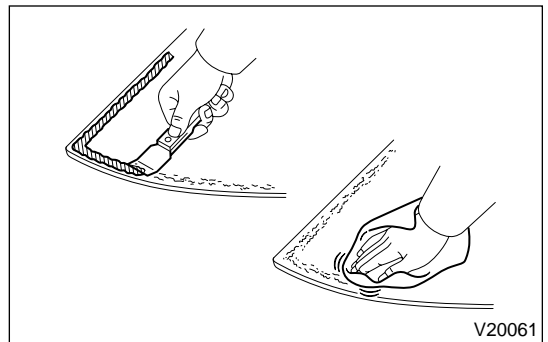
Hint

Even if all adhesive has been removed, cleaning of vehicle body would be necessary.

- (12) Clean the removed glass. Using a scraper, remove the adhesive sticking to glass. Clean the outer edges of glass with cleaner.

Hint

- **DO NOT touch the glass after cleaning it.**
- **Even if a new glass is used, it is necessary to clean it with glass cleaner.**



■ Installation

- (1) Check for small cracks or bubbles exist around windshield, and appearance defects such as scratches on the surface. Check whether any assembly part is missed. Avoid installing an unqualified windshield glass on the vehicle.
- (2) Wipe the primer area with alcohol cloth and width is $18 \approx 20$ mm.
- (3) Apply sheet metal primer (A11-4105013A) to installation area and make sure application width is $9 \approx 11$ mm (edging size: 18 mm); Do not expose it in the air before applying sheet metal primer.
- (4) Using cleaner (A11-4105017 accelerant), clean the area around gum application and make sure cleaning width is $14 \approx 16$ mm.
- (5) Apply A11-4105015 windshield primer on the application position around front windshield. Make sure application width is $12 \approx 14$ mm. Apply gum (A11-4105011) along application line, make sure the gum width is 8 ± 1 mm, height is $11.5 \text{ mm} \pm 1 \text{ mm}$, the height after being compressed is 5 mm, there is no gum leakage or fluid overflowing.
- (6) Align dowel pins of front windshield with corresponding set holes separately for windshield installation on sheet metal of top panel. Install the windshield.
- (7) Adjust glasses to left and right slightly, so as to make the clearance between glass and quarter meet the requirements of DTS; Use center positioning fixture as necessary.
- (8) Slightly tap four sides of glass to install glass in place (height after being compressed is 5 mm) and apply tape (length of tape is $150 \approx 200$ mm) to prevent glass from sliding down.
- (9) Check and repair the sealing of glass.
- (10) Install the front windshield lower trim board assembly.
- (11) Install the wiper arm assembly.
- (12) Install the inside rear view mirror assembly.
- (13) Install the roof assembly.
- (14) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.17 Replacement of Rear Windshield Assembly

■ Removal

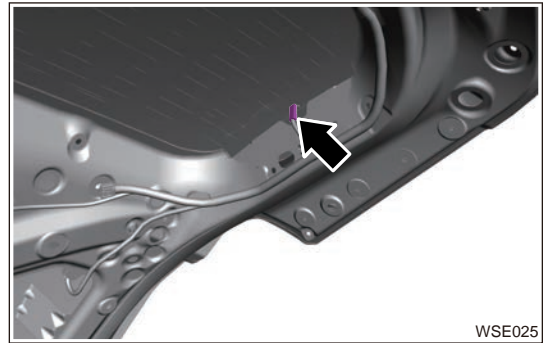
Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear windshield assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear windshield assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear door protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear wiper arm assembly.
- (5) Remove the rear wiper motor assembly.
- (6) Remove the rear spoiler assembly.
- (7) Remove the defroster wire harness assembly.
- (8) Remove the left defroster connector.



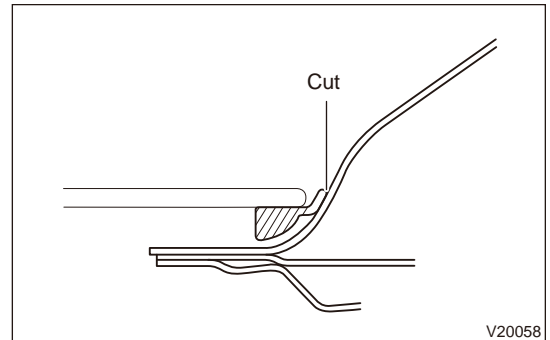
(9) Remove the right defroster connector.



(10) Using a knife, cut off the adhesive.

Caution

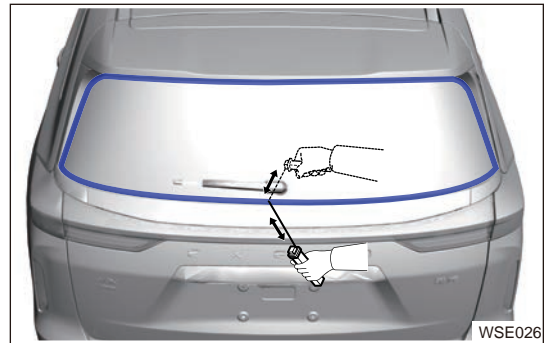
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when cutting off the adhesive.**



(11) Apply protective tape to the outer surface of body to prevent scratches. Pass a piano wire through the seam between vehicle body and rear windshield assembly. Tie wooden blocks or similar objects to both piano wire ends, cut off the adhesive by pulling the piano wire around rear windshield assembly, and remove the rear windshield assembly.

Caution

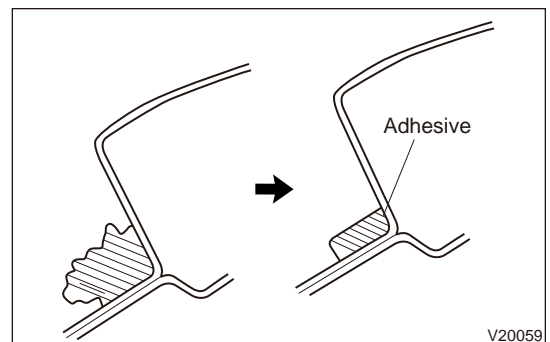
- **When removing rear windshield assembly, an assistant is needed.**
- **When removing rear windshield assembly, prevent it from dropping.**
- **Leave as much adhesive on the body as possible when cutting off the adhesive.**
- **When separating rear windshield assembly from vehicle, be careful not to damage body paint, interior and exterior ornaments.**



(12) Clean the vehicle body. Using a knife, cut off any excess adhesive on the contact surface of vehicle body as shown in illustration.

Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when cutting off the adhesive.**
- **Leave as much adhesive on the body as possible, when cutting off the adhesive.**



(13) Clean the contact surface of vehicle body with cleaner.

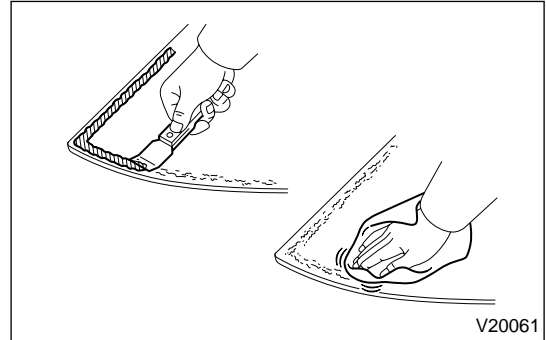
HINT

- **Even if all adhesive has been removed, cleaning of vehicle body would be necessary.**

(14) Clean the removed glass. Using a scraper, remove the adhesive sticking to glass. Clean the outer edges of glass with glass cleaner.

Hint

- **DO NOT touch the glass after cleaning it.**



■ Assembly order:

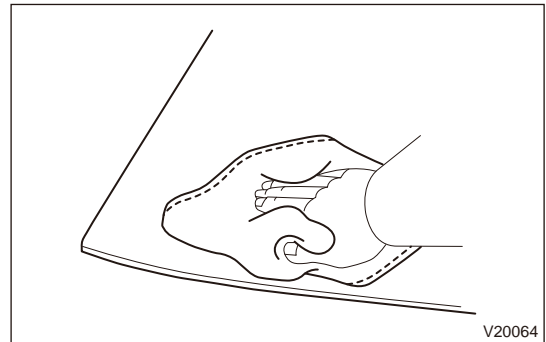
- (1) Check for small cracks or bubbles exist around windshield, and appearance defects such as scratches on the surface. Check whether any assembly part is missed. Avoid installing an unqualified windshield glass on the vehicle.
- (2) Wipe the primer area with alcohol cloth and width is $18 \approx 20$ mm.
- (3) Apply sheet metal primer (A11-4105013A) to installation area and make sure application width is $9 \approx 11$ mm (edging size: 18 mm); Do not expose it in the air before applying sheet metal primer.
- (4) Using cleaner (A11-4105017 accelerant), clean the area around gum application and make sure cleaning width is $14 \approx 16$ mm.
- (5) Apply A11-4105015 windshield primer on the application position around rear windshield. Make sure application width is $12 \approx 14$ mm. Apply gum (A11-4105011) along application line, make sure the gum width is 8 ± 1 mm, height is $11.5 \text{ mm} \pm 1$ mm, the height after being compressed is 5 mm, there is no gum leakage or fluid overflowing.
- (6) Align dowel pins of rear windshield with corresponding set holes separately for windshield installation on sheet metal of top panel. Install the windshield.
- (7) Adjust glasses to left and right slightly, so as to make the clearance between glass and quarter meet the requirements of DTS; Use center positioning fixture as necessary.
- (8) Slightly tap four sides of glass to install glass in place (height after being compressed is 5 mm) and apply tape (length of tape is $150 \approx 200$ mm) to prevent glass from sliding down.
- (9) Apply tape separately on left and right side of rear windshield (length of tape is $150 \approx 200$ mm); Apply 2 tapes on rear windshield upper side (length of tape is $150 \approx 200$ mm).

■ Installation

- (1) Clean the contact surface of rear windshield. Remove any residue on the contact surface of rear windshield with a clean, lint-free cloth soaked with cleaner.

Hint

- **DO NOT touch the surface of rear windshield after cleaning it.**



- (2) Apply a coat of primer on the contact surface of rear windshield assembly. Using a brush, apply a coat of primer on the edge and contact surface of glass. Wipe off excess primer with a clean cloth before drying. Width of primer is 13 to 15 mm.

Hint

- **Allow primer to dry for at least 3 minutes.**
- **DO NOT apply primer to the adhesive.**
- **DO NOT apply too much primer.**
- **DO NOT keep any opened primer for later use.**

- (3) Mix the adhesive. Using a solvent, thoroughly clean the mixing board and scraper. Using a scraper, thoroughly mix 500 g main adhesive and 75 g hardener on the mixing board.

Hint

- **Adhesive should be mixed thoroughly within 5 minutes.**

- (4) Apply the adhesive. Cut off the tip of cartridge nozzle and add adhesive. Install the cartridge to sealer gun.
- (5) Apply adhesive evenly to rear windshield assembly as shown in illustration.

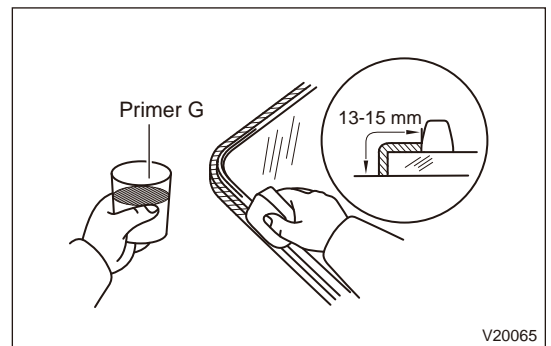
Adhesive width: 8 mm

Adhesive height: 12 mm

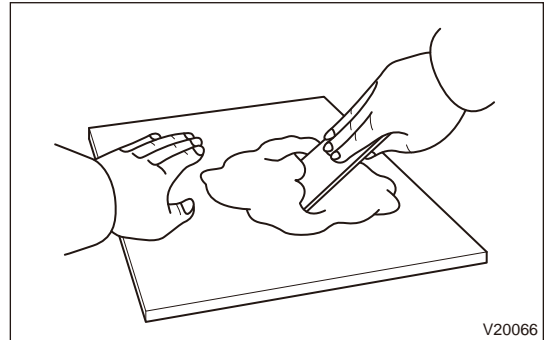
- (6) Install the rear windshield assembly. Align the matchmarks on glass and vehicle body, and gently press in glass along the edge.

Hint

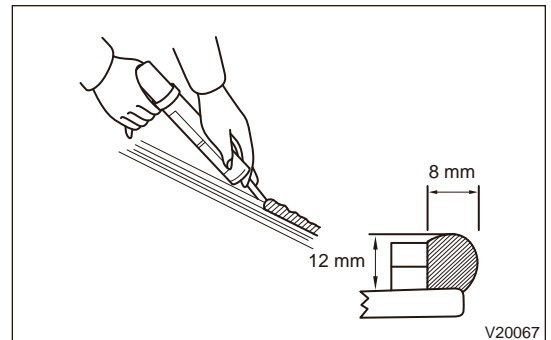
- **Check that upper-and-lower clearance and right-and-left clearance of rear windshield assembly are uniform, to ensure good fitting with weatherstrips all around.**



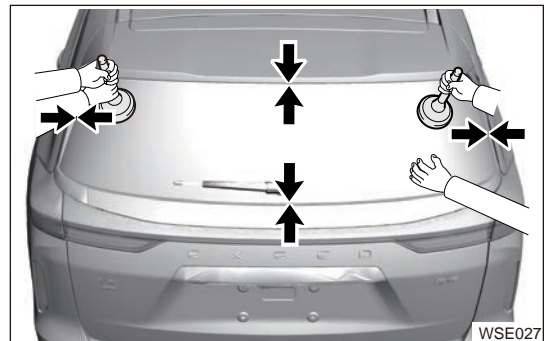
V20065



V20066

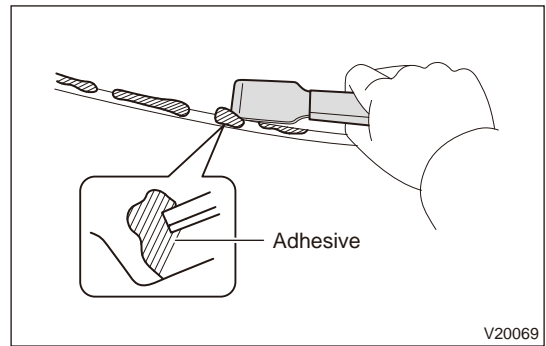


V20067



WSE027

- (7) Using a scraper, uniformly apply adhesive to the glass edge.



- (8) Remove any excess or spilled adhesive with the scraper.
- (9) Apply tape all the way around, and do not remove them until the adhesive hardens.
- (10) Check and repair the sealing of glass.
Check the glass for leakage after adhesive has completely hardened.
If it leaks, seal the leaks by adding adhesive.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.18 Replacement of Sliding Roof Switch Assembly

■ Removal

Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof switch assembly.
- Try to prevent interior from being scratched during operation, when removing sliding roof switch assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Open the glasses box on front dome light as shown in illustration.



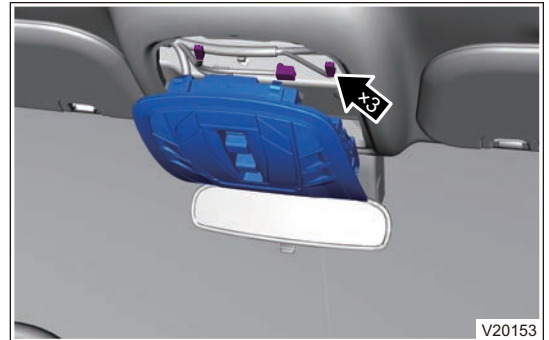
- (4) Remove 2 fixing screws.



- (5) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off clips from sliding roof switch assembly.



- (6) Disconnect each wire harness connector, and remove sliding roof switch assembly.



■ Installation

Caution

- **Connect connector in place and tighten fixing nut to specified torque, when installing sliding roof switch assembly.**
- **Make sure that sliding roof switch functions properly, after installing sliding roof switch assembly.**

- (1) Install sliding roof switch to proper position of roof and connect wire harness connector.
- (2) Install the sliding roof switch.
- (3) Install 2 fixing screws.

Tightening torque: $2.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (4) Close the glasses box.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.19 Replacement of Sliding Roof Glass Motor

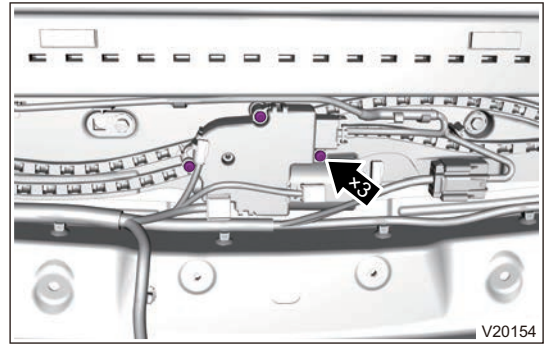
■ Removal

Warning

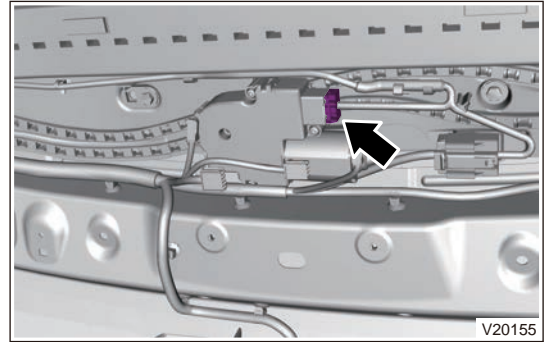
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof glass motor.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing sliding roof glass motor. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the roof.

- (4) Remove 3 fixing screws from sliding roof glass motor assembly.



- (5) Disconnect wire harness connector from sliding roof glass motor assembly.



- (6) Remove the sliding roof glass motor assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

- **Connect connector in place and tighten fixing screw to specified torque, when installing sliding roof glass motor assembly.**
- **After sliding roof glass motor is installed, there should be no abnormal noise and resistance when opening and closing the sliding roof glass.**

- (1) Install sliding roof glass motor to proper position of sliding roof.
- (2) Connect sliding roof glass motor assembly wire harness connector.
- (3) Install 3 fixing screws to sliding roof glass motor assembly.

Tightening torque: 2.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (4) Install the roof.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.20 Replacement of Sun Visor Motor Assembly

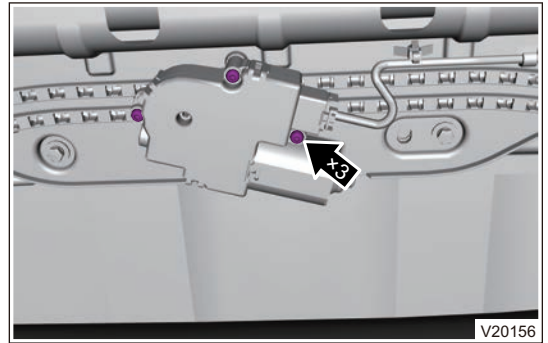
■ Removal

Warning

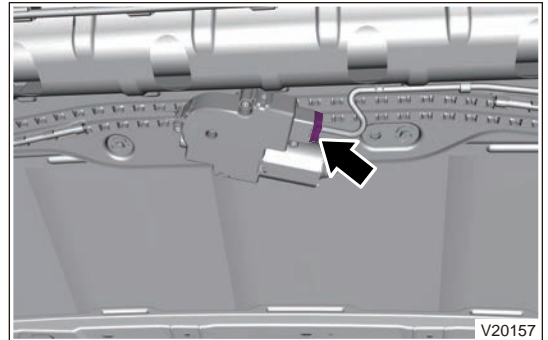
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sun visor motor assembly.**
- **Try to prevent interior from being scratched during operation, when removing sun visor motor assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the roof.

- (4) Remove 3 fixing screws from sun visor motor assembly.



- (5) Disconnect wire harness connector from sun visor motor assembly.



- (6) Remove the sun visor motor assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

- **Connect connector in place and tighten fixing screw to specified torque, when installing sun visor motor assembly.**
- **After sun visor motor is installed, there should be no abnormal noise and resistance when opening and closing the sun visor.**

- (1) Install sun visor motor assembly to proper position of sliding roof.
- (2) Connect the sun visor motor assembly wire harness connector.
- (3) Install 3 fixing screws to sun visor motor assembly.

Tightening torque: $2.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (4) Install the roof.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

■ Matching

- (1) Sunshade losing initial position
 - Definition: Sunshade cannot be opened, closed normally or closed to a normal position and initial movement for sunshade cannot be performed after power off. When there is such problem in sunshade, movement process for sunshade will be disordered, and sunshade initial position is lost.
- (2) Solution Method
 - Press and hold glass CLOSE button, when sliding roof glass reaches mechanical zero point and returns → sun visor reaches mechanical zero point and returns → sun visor opens and reaches full open position → sliding roof glass opens and reaches full open position → sliding roof glass closes and reaches full closed position → sun visor closes and reaches full closed position, reinitialization is forced to be completed, then normal condition resumes.

Caution

- Make sure that power supply shall not be shut off during operation. Confirm that no hard objects (- various obstacles) that block running of sliding mechanism are in sliding roof guide rail and sunshade guide rail.
- The sunshade of this model has no anti-pinch function. Pay attention to safety during operation to avoid accidents.

5.21 Replacement of Sliding Roof Front Glass**■ Removal****Warning**

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof front glass.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing sliding roof front glass. Be careful not to operate roughly, to avoid damage to sliding roof glass.
- Before removing the sliding roof front glass, press the sliding roof switch to open sun visor to a proper position and adjust sliding roof glass to the maximum tilt status.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the sliding roof weatherstrip.
- (4) Remove 3 fixing bolts from left side of sliding roof front glass (use same method for right side).



- (5) Jack front glass assembly to a certain height from bottom, and carefully remove sliding roof front glass assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Install front glass assembly to proper position of vehicle body.
- (2) Install 3 fixing bolts to left side of sliding roof front glass (use same method for right side).

Tightening torque: $4.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

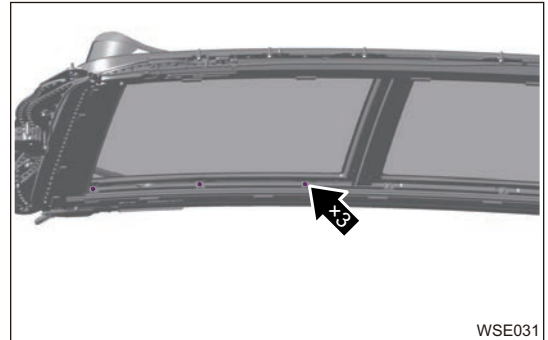
- (3) Install the sliding roof weatherstrip.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.22 Replacement of Sliding Roof Rear Glass**■ Removal****Warning**

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof rear glass.
- Try to prevent interior from being scratched during operation, when removing sliding roof rear glass.

- (1) Open the sun visor.

- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Remove the roof.
- (5) Remove the sliding roof fixing bracket.
- (6) Remove 3 fixing bolts from left side of sliding roof rear glass (use same method for right side).



- (7) Remove the sliding roof rear glass.

■ Installation

- (1) Install sliding roof rear glass to proper position of sliding roof .
- (2) Install 3 fixing bolts to left side of sliding roof rear glass (use same method for right side).

Tightening torque: $4.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Install the sliding roof fixing bracket.
- (4) Install the roof assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.23 Replacement of Sliding Roof Front Left Drain Hose

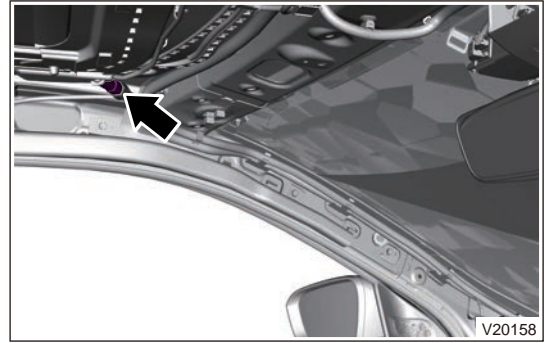
■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof front left drain hose.**
- **Prevent interior from being scratched during operating, when removing sliding roof front left drain hose.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (4) Remove the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (5) Remove the left B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (6) Remove the left C-pillar upper protector assembly
- (7) Remove the roof assembly.

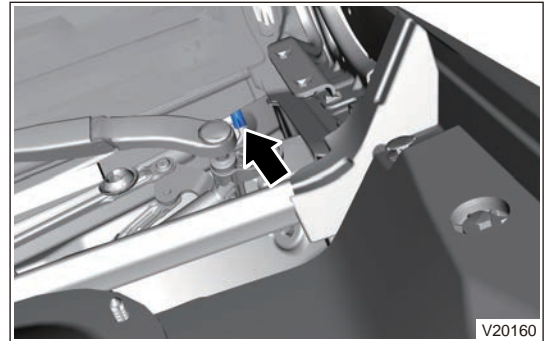
- (8) Detach front left drain hose joint from drain outlet of sliding roof side.



- (9) Detach front left drain hose from wire harness clip.



- (10) Detach water drain valve of front left drain hose from body panel.



- (11) Remove the sliding roof front left drain hose.

Installation

- (1) Install sliding roof front left drain hose to proper position of body.
- (2) Clamp water drain valve of front left drain hose to body panel.
- (3) Clamp front left drain hose to wire harness clip.
- (4) Insert front left drain hose joint into drain outlet of sliding roof side.
- (5) Install the roof assembly.
- (6) Install the left C-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (7) Install the left B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (8) Install the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (9) Install the front windshield lower trim board assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

5.24 Replacement of Sliding Roof Front Right Drain Hose

■ Removal

Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof front right drain hose.
- Prevent interior from being scratched during operating, when removing sliding roof front right drain hose.

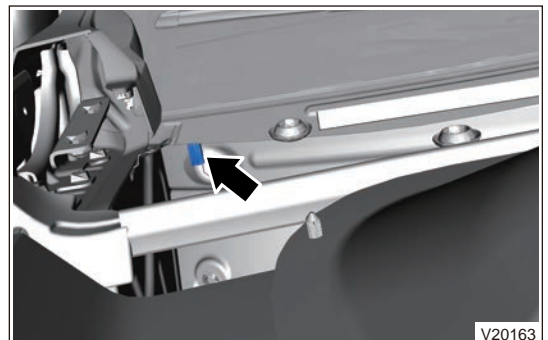
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (4) Remove the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (5) Remove the left B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (6) Remove the left C-pillar upper protector assembly
- (7) Remove the roof assembly.
- (8) Detach front right drain hose joint from drain outlet of sliding roof side.



- (9) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off front right drain hose clip.



- (10) Detach water drain valve of front right drain hose from body panel.



- (11) Remove the sliding roof front right drain hose.

■ **Installation**

- (1) Install sliding roof front right drain hose to proper position of body.
- (2) Clamp water drain valve of front right drain hose to body panel.
- (3) Clamp front right drain hose clip to corresponding vehicle body in order.
- (4) Insert front right drain hose joint into drain outlet of sliding roof side.
- (5) Install the roof assembly.
- (6) Install the left C-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (7) Install the left B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (8) Install the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (9) Install the front windshield lower trim board assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

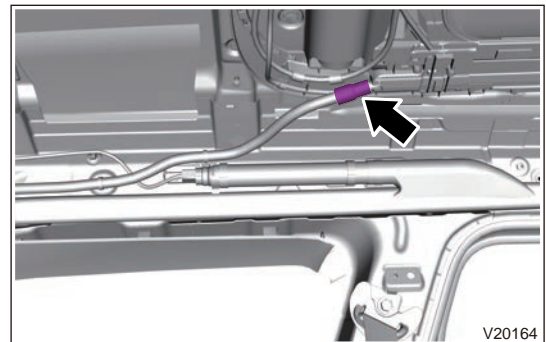
5.25 Replacement of Sliding Roof Rear Drain Hose

■ **Removal**

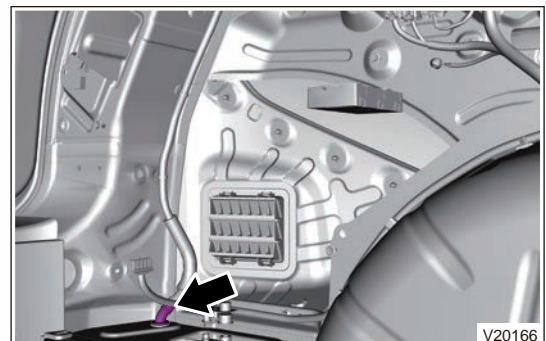
Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof rear drain hose.**
- **Prevent interior from being scratched during operating, when removing sliding roof rear drain hose.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

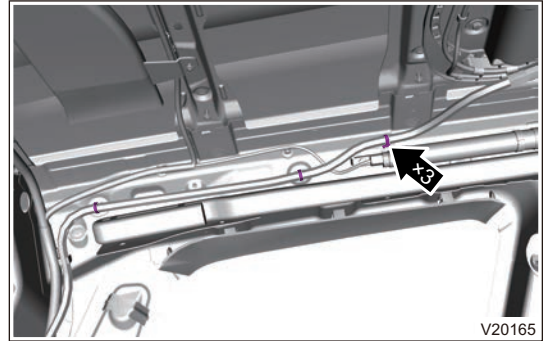
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the left B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (5) Remove the left C-pillar upper protector assembly
- (6) Remove the roof assembly.
- (7) Detach rear left drain hose joint from drain outlet of sliding roof side.



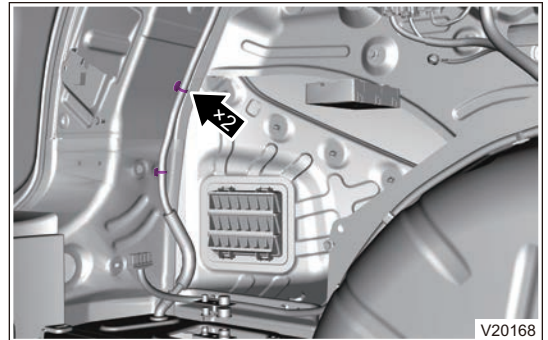
- (8) Detach lower part of rear left drain hose from corresponding mounting hole on vehicle body.



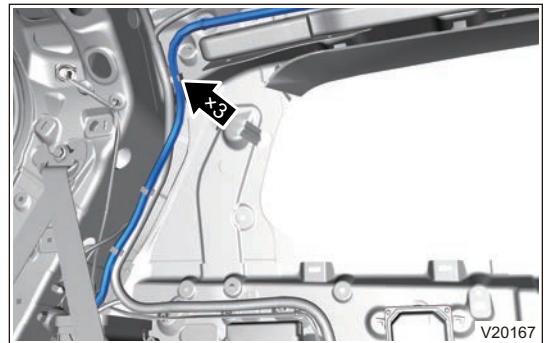
- (9) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off rear left drain hose clip.



- (10) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off rear left drain hose clip.



- (11) Detach rear left drain hose from wire harness clip.



- (12) Remove the rear left drain hose.

■ Installation

- (1) Install rear left drain hose to proper position of vehicle body.
- (2) Secure rear left drain hose to wire harness clip (After it is secured with wire harness clip, check if water hose is bent. If it is bent, it is necessary to smooth the water hose under the bending, and install it only after confirming that it is not bent).
- (3) Clamp rear left drain hose clip to corresponding vehicle body in order.
- (4) Insert rear left drain hose joint into drain outlet of sliding roof side.
- (5) Clamp water drain valve of rear left drain hose to body panel.
- (6) Install the roof assembly.
- (7) Install the left C-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (8) Install the left B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (9) Install the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

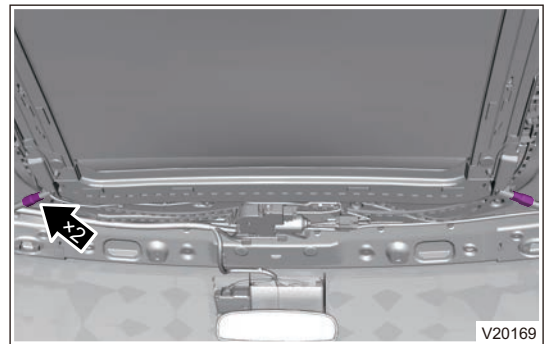
5.26 Replacement of Sliding Roof Assembly

■ Removal

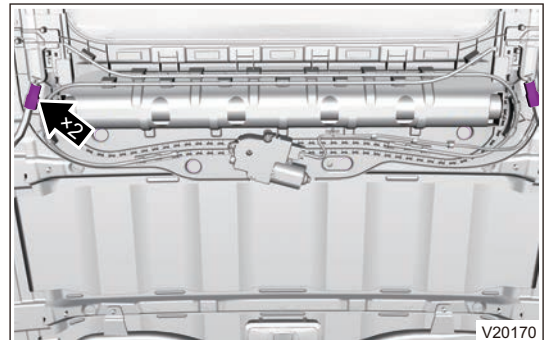
Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sliding roof assembly.**
- **Try to prevent interior from being scratched during operation, when removing sliding roof assembly.**
- **When removing sliding roof assembly, an assistant is needed to hold sliding roof fixing bracket. During operation, prevent the sliding roof fixing bracket from dropping, which may cause an accident.**

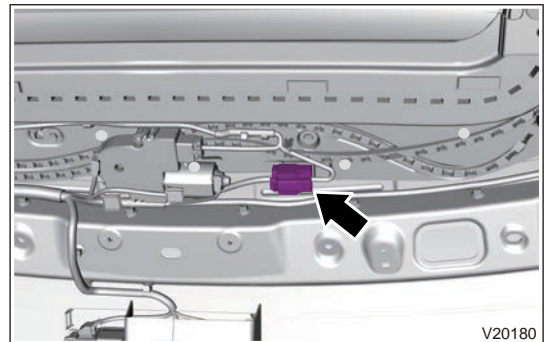
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the interior front dome light assembly.
- (4) Remove the roof assembly.
- (5) Detach joints of front left drain hose and front right drain hose from drain outlet of sliding roof side.



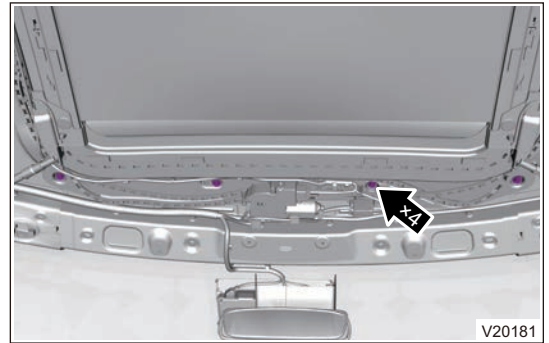
- (6) Detach joints of rear left drain hose and rear right drain hose from drain outlet of sliding roof side.



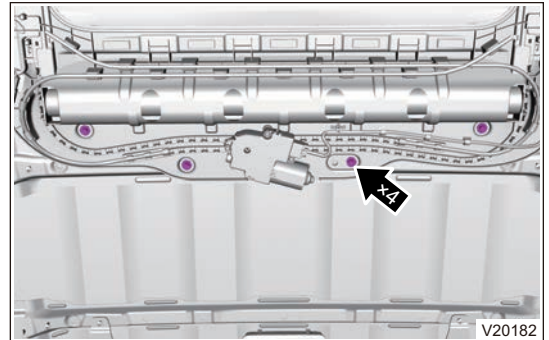
- (7) Disconnect the sliding roof wire harness connector.



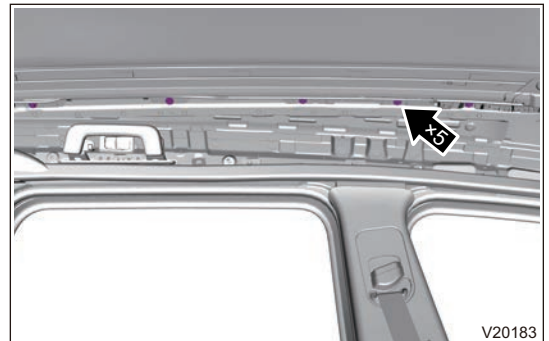
- (8) Remove 4 fixing bolts between sliding roof assembly front side and roof.



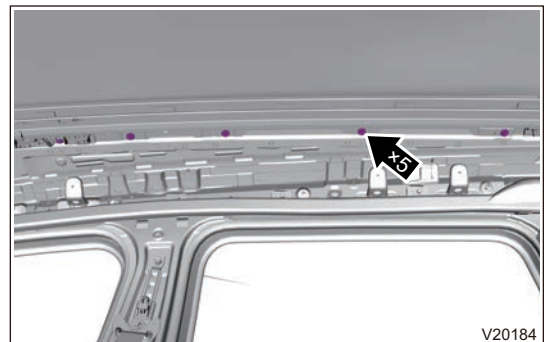
- (9) Remove 4 fixing bolts between sliding roof assembly rear side and roof.



- (10) Remove 5 fixing bolts between sliding roof assembly left side and roof.



- (11) Remove 5 fixing bolts between sliding roof assembly right side and roof.



- (12) Remove the sliding roof assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

When installing sliding roof fixing bracket, an assistant is needed to hold it. During operation, prevent the sliding roof fixing bracket from dropping, which may cause an accident.

- (1) Put sliding roof on the auxiliary tool, and check if dowel pin is on sliding roof.
- (2) Use auxiliary tool to push sliding roof to vehicle interior through front windshield entrance.
- (3) Align sliding roof with roof opening. Raise it up and make sure left and right dowel pins are inserted into corresponding locating holes of sliding roof mounting plate. Be aware not to drop or deform sliding roof weatherstrip due to crush while raising the sliding roof.
- (4) Hold the auxiliary tool in stationary. Tighten 4 diagonal fixing bolts first.

Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (5) Loosen and remove the auxiliary tool.
- (6) Install remaining 14 fixing bolts.

Tightening torque: $9 \pm 1.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (7) Connect the sliding roof wire harness connector.
- (8) Insert left and right front drain hose joints into drain outlet of sliding roof side.
- (9) Insert rear left and right drain hose joints into drain outlet of sliding roof side.
- (10) Install the roof assembly.
- (11) Install the interior front dome light assembly.
- (12) Connect the negative battery cable.

■ **Matching**

- (1) Sliding roof remote control function
 - 1) When ENGINE START STOP switch is OFF and all doors are closed, long press smart key unlock button to open panoramic sliding roof automatically.
 - 2) When ENGINE START STOP switch is OFF, all doors are closed and sliding roof is open, press and hold smart key lock button or enable smart key sensing lock function to close panoramic sliding roof automatically.
- (2) Sliding roof losing initial position
 - 1) Definition: sliding roof cannot be opened, closed normally or closed to a normal position, and initial movement for sliding roof cannot be performed. When there is such problem in sliding roof, movement process for sliding roof will be disordered, and sliding roof initial position is lost.
- (3) Solution Method
 - 1) Press and hold glass CLOSE button, when sliding roof glass reaches mechanical zero point and returns → sun visor reaches mechanical zero point and returns → sun visor opens and reaches full open position → sliding roof glass opens and reaches full open position → sliding roof glass closes and reaches full closed position → sun visor closes and reaches full closed position, reinitialization is forced to be completed, then normal condition resumes.

BODY ELECTRICAL

42.1	Backup Power Supply and Wireless Charging System	1664
1	Warnings and Precautions	1664
1.1	Precautions	1664
1.2	Precautions	1664
2	System Overview	1665
2.1	System Components Diagram.....	1665
2.2	Wireless Charging Usage Description.....	1666
3	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	1667
3.1	Diagnostic Help.....	1667
3.2	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.....	1667
3.3	Ground Inspection	1668
3.4	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1668
3.5	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1669
3.6	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1669
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1674
4.1	Tools	1674
4.2	Replacement of Front Backup Power Supply and Multi-function Interface.....	1674
4.3	Replacement of USB Charging Module	1676
4.4	Replacement of Rear USB Charging Module	1677
4.5	Replacement of Rear Backup Power Supply	1678
4.6	Replacement of Wireless Charging Module.....	1679

42.1 Backup Power Supply and Wireless Charging System

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

Be sure to observe following instructions before servicing any parts in this section to avoid possible asset loss, personal injury or even death.

- (1) When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.
- (2) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing auxiliary fascia console assembly.

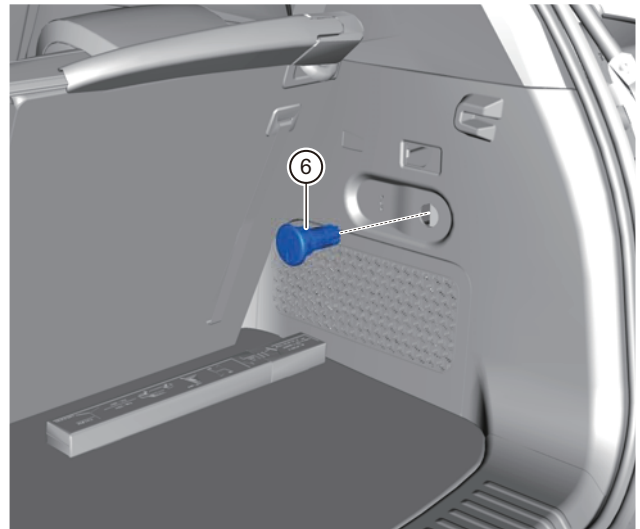
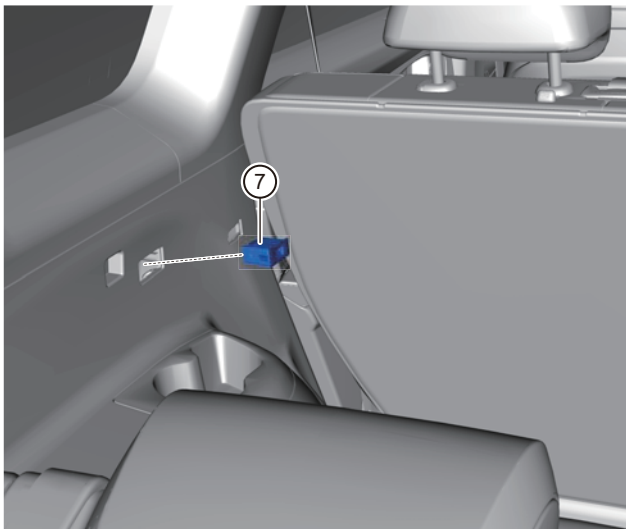
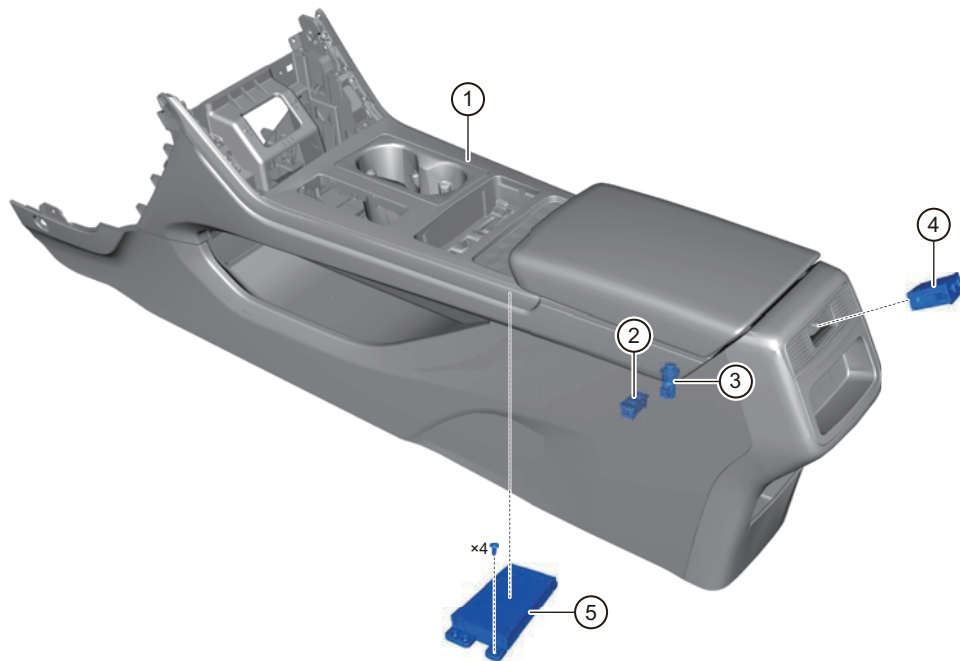
1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed.

- (1) When removing auxiliary fascia console assembly, operate carefully to avoid damaging it .
- (2) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing auxiliary fascia console assembly.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Components Diagram



W20010

1	Auxiliary Fascia Console Assembly	2	Multi-function Interface
3	Cigarette Lighter Assembly	4	USB Charging Module

5	Mobile Wireless Charging Module	6	Rear Cigarette Lighter Assembly
7	Rear USB Charging Module		

This vehicle is equipped with two 12 V backup power sources, which is located in armrest box and on luggage compartment left protector assembly. Wireless charging adopts an electromagnetic induction technology with convenience, versatility, novelty and safety, so that you can have a better experience while driving.

2.2 Wireless Charging Usage Description

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON mode and place mobile phone in the wireless charging sensing area, then the wireless charging starts to operate, and the audio head unit displays a normal charging symbol; After charging is completed, audio head unit will display a charging completed symbol.
- (2) Wireless charging may not work properly in the following conditions:
 - The back of mobile phone is more than 8 mm away from wireless charging sensing area, and mobile phone cannot be charged.
 - There is thick metal on back of mobile phone (such as 1 yuan coin, metal housing of mobile phone), mobile phone cannot be charged, and audio head unit displays a mark with exclamation mark.
 - Wireless charging operation frequency is close to keyless entry working frequency, which is easy to interfere with each other; When door is open/closed, the vehicle will recognize whether the key is left in vehicle, the keyless entry starts to work. At this time, it's necessary to shield charging function; Wait for several seconds, the wireless charging function resumes

Caution

If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that you do not use the wireless charging paster. The quality of wireless charging paster in the market is uneven and easy to be damaged if used frequently (function failure, poor interface contact, identification failure in metal foreign objects, etc.).

- (3) Phone forgetting reminder function
 When ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to OFF mode and driver side door is opened, if mobile phone is placed in the wireless charging sensing area, the system will sound an alarm for 20 seconds and alarm stops if the phone is removed within 20 seconds.

Hint

- **Phone forgetting reminder function only supports the mobile phone with wireless charging function.**
- **Phone forgetting reminder function needs to be set in the audio system.**

- (4) For Wireless Charging System (CWC) function settings and status display item suggestions and signals, refer to signal list:

Level 1 Menu	Level 2 Menu	Selection Item	Note
Vehicle settings	Mobile phone wireless charging function	ON	IHU is set to ON by default, CWC will keep the wireless charging function ON until "OFF" signal is sent from IHU. With wireless charging function ON, CWC starts the wireless charging operation after mobile phone is detected in charging position and ACC signal is received.
		OFF	
	Phone forgetting reminder function	ON	Phone forgetting reminder function will keep ON until "OFF" signal is sent from
		OFF	

Level 1 Menu	Level 2 Menu	Selection Item	Note
			IHU. With forgetting reminder function ON, an alarm signal will be sent to DVD when forgetting reminder condition is detected, and no alarm is sent when forgetting reminder is off.
Display status		In charging	Three display statuses (no icon will be displayed on head unit when vehicle is not charged).
		Charging completed	
		Charging fault	
Forgetting reminder		Sending alarm signal	With mobile phone on CWC, CWC starts to count the time and sends alarm signal to IHU after ACC off signal and driver side door open signal are received by CWC, then head unit alarms. CWC stops sending alarm signal after 20s or if mobile phone is removed within 20s, then head unit stops alarming.
		Stopping alarm signal	

3 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

3.1 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.2 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.

- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.3 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.4 Diagnosis Procedure

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

NG	Replace battery
-----------	------------------------

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Next

4	Read DTCs
----------	------------------

History DTC	Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTCs malfunction procedures
--------------------	---

Current DTC

5	Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart
----------	--

Next

6	Adjust, repair or replace
----------	----------------------------------

Next

7 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End

3.5 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B32-16	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Below Threshold
B1B33-17	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Above Threshold
B1B30-92	Foreign Matters Exist - Performance or Incorrect Operation
B1B31-98	Temperature Too High - Component or System Temperature Too High
U2501-88	CAN Bus Off
U0140-87	Lost Communication with BCM
U0248-87	Lost Communication with PEPS
U1300-55	Software Configuration Error

3.6 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	B1B32-16	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Below Threshold
DTC	B1B33-17	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Above Threshold

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B1B32-16	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Below Threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Disconnection or poor connection between battery and instrument panel after engine starting Power supply is not stable, and some loads may decrease suddenly. Power supply is not stable, and load fails suddenly. Instrument panel wire harness and connector fault.
B1B33-17	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Above Threshold	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Confirm DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector I-044.
- (c) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (d) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (e) Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

NG Repair or replace wire harness and connector.

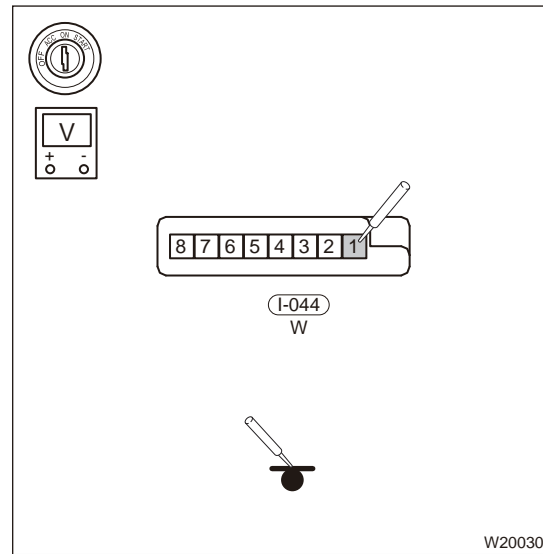
OK

2 | Check instrument panel power supply voltage

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector I-044.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for voltage between the terminals of connector I-044 to check if there is an open in instrument panel power supply circuit according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-044 (1) (2) to ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



NG Check if instrument panel fuse is burnt.

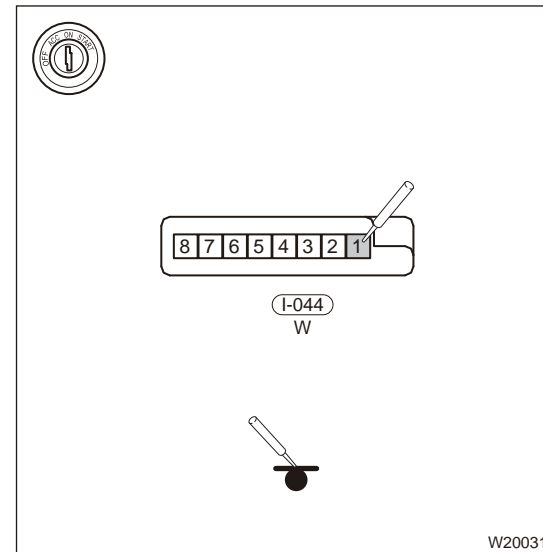
OK

3 | Using a 21 W test lamp, test power supply voltage

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector I-044.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Using a 21 W test lamp, check voltage between the terminals of connector I-044 to check if power supplying of instrument panel power supply voltage is normal according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-044 (1) (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Test light comes on normally



NG

Check or replace instrument panel wire harness or connector

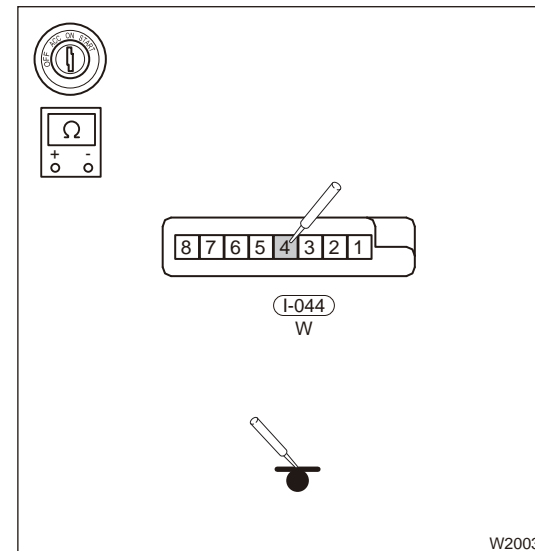
OK

4 | Inspect ground

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector I-044.
- (c) Measure resistance between terminal 4 of connector I-044 and ground and check if it is open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-044 (4) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

Check and repair instrument panel ground wire harness and ground point.

OK

5 | Reconfirm DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace wireless charging module.
OK	System is normal

DTC	B1B30 - 92	Foreign Matters Exist - Performance or Incorrect Operation
DTC	B1B31 - 98	Component or System Temperature Too High

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Cause
B1B30 - 92	Foreign Matters Exist - Performance or Incorrect Operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Foreign matters exist between mobile phone and wireless charger. Excessive charging time. Wireless charging paster damaged. Charging operation out of standard.
B1B31 - 98	Component or System Temperature Too High	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Confirm DTCs
----------	---------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector I-044.
- (c) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (d) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (e) Check if related connector pins are in good condition.

NG	Repair or replace wire harness and connector.
-----------	--

OK

2	Check for foreign matters
----------	----------------------------------

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the instrument panel wire harness connector I-044.
- (c) Check for foreign matters between wireless charging module and mobile phone.

NG

Remove foreign matters

OK

3

Reconfirm DTCs

Use circuit diagram as a guide to perform the following inspection procedures:

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG

Replace wireless charging module.

OK

System is normal

DTC	U2501-88	CAN Bus Off
DTC	U0140-87	Lost Communication with BCM
DTC	U0248-87	Lost Communication with PEPS
DTC	U1300-55	Software Configuration Error

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

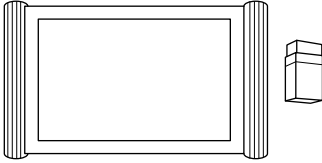
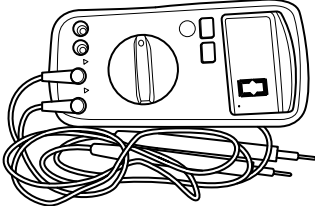
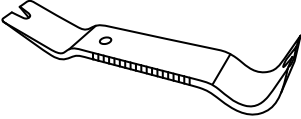
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Refer to CAN communication system for the above communication faults.

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

4.2 Replacement of Front Backup Power Supply and Multi-function Interface

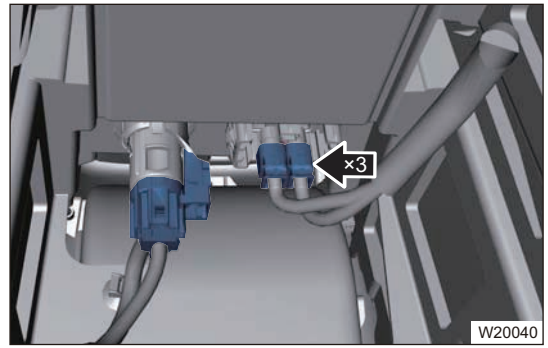
■ Removal

Warning

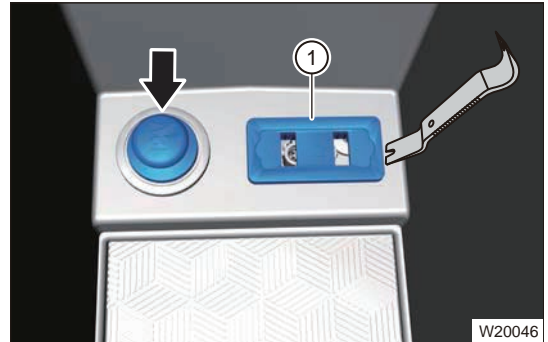
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front backup power supply.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front backup power supply. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly.

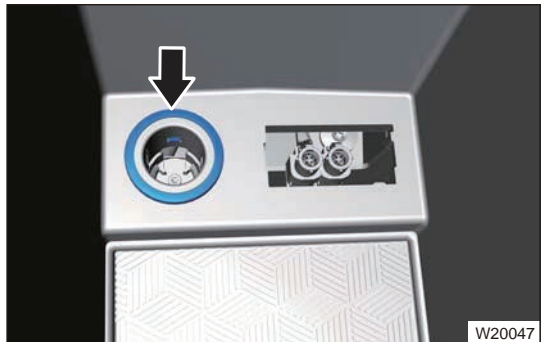
- (4) Disconnect USB connector, backup power supply connector.



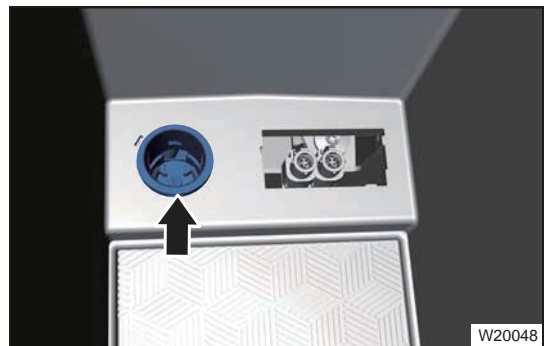
- (5) Remove cigarette lighter block cover, and use interior crow plate to pry off multi-function interface (1).



- (6) Remove the backup power supply mounting ring.



- (7) Remove the cigarette lighter socket.



■ Installation

- (1) Install the cigarette lighter socket.
- (2) Install the backup power supply mounting ring.
- (3) Install backup power supply block cover and multi-function interface.
- (4) Connect USB connector, backup power supply connector.
- (5) Install the auxiliary fascia console body assembly.

- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (7) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

4.3 Replacement of USB Charging Module

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing USB charging module.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing USB charging module assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent auxiliary fascia console rear cover assembly from being scratched, when removing USB charging module assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off auxiliary fascia console rear cover assembly.



- (4) Disconnect the USB charging module connector.



- (5) Remove the USB charging module with interior crow plate.



■ Installation

Caution

- Check USB charging module for proper operation after installing USB charging module assembly.
- When installing USB charging module, assemble it with USB charging module handle facing down and charging symptom at the lower side.

- (1) Install the USB charging module.
- (2) Connect the USB charging module connector.
- (3) Install the auxiliary fascia console rear cover assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (5) Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and perform running test.

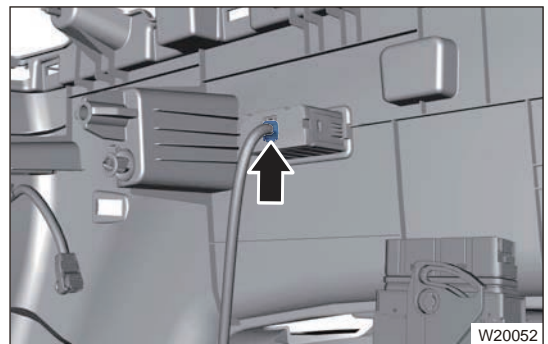
4.4 Replacement of Rear USB Charging Module

■ Removal

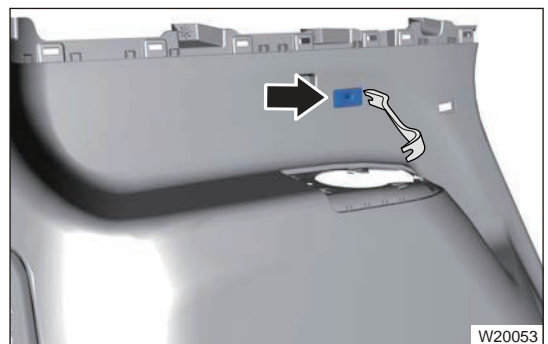
Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear USB charging module.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear USB charging module assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent auxiliary fascia console rear cover assembly from being scratched, when removing rear USB charging module assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left luggage compartment protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the rear USB charging module connector.



- (5) Remove the rear USB charging module with interior crow plate.



■ Installation

Caution

- Check rear USB charging module for proper operation after installing rear USB charging module assembly.
- When installing rear USB charging module, assemble it with USB charging module handle facing down and charging symptom at the lower side.

- (1) Install the rear USB charging module.
- (2) Connect the rear USB charging module connector.
- (3) Install the left luggage compartment protector assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

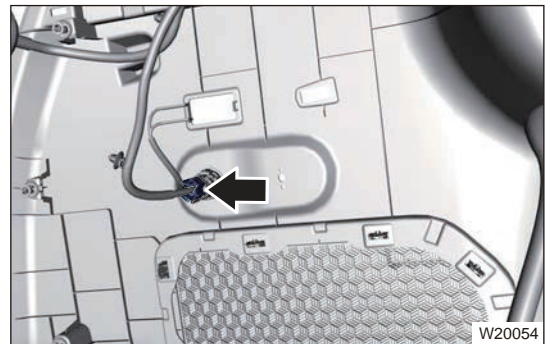
4.5 Replacement of Rear Backup Power Supply

■ Removal

Warning

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear backup power supply.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear backup power supply. Be careful not to operate roughly.

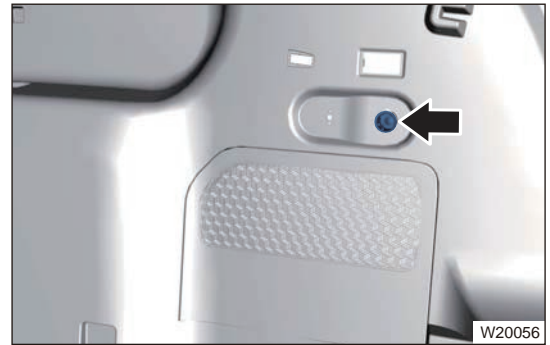
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the right luggage compartment protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the rear backup power connector.



- (5) Remove the luggage compartment right power supply block cover.



- (6) Remove the rear backup power supply rear base assembly.



■ Installation

- (1) Install the rear backup power supply rear base assembly to right luggage compartment protector assembly.
- (2) Install the rear backup power supply block cover.
- (3) Connect the rear backup power supply connector.
- (4) Install the right luggage compartment protector assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (6) Press ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

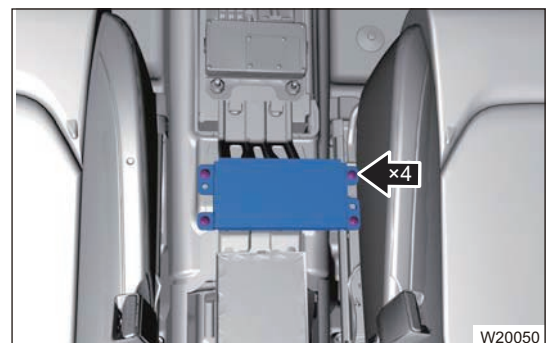
4.6 Replacement of Wireless Charging Module

■ Removal

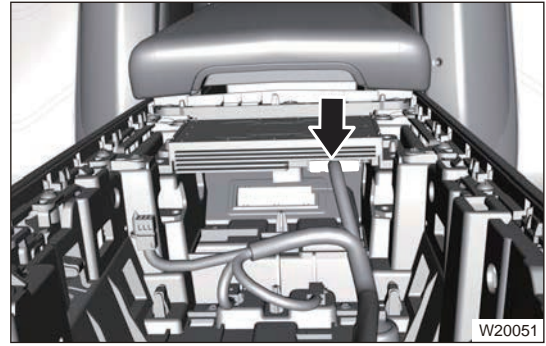
Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing wireless charging module assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing wireless charging module assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent auxiliary fascia console assembly from being scratched, when removing wireless charging module assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the auxiliary fascia console trim panel assembly.
- (4) Using a cross screwdriver, remove 4 fixing screws from wireless charging module.



- (5) Disconnect the wireless charging module connector and remove wireless charging module assembly.



■ **Installation**

- (1) Install wireless charging module assembly and connect wireless charging module connector.
- (2) Tighten 4 bolts of wireless charging module.

Tightening torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Tighten the wireless charging module connector.
- (4) Install the auxiliary fascia console trim panel assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (6) Connect diagnostic tester to read and clear DTCs.

BODY ELECTRICAL

43.1	Wiper and Washer	1682
1	Warning and Precaution	1682
1.1	Warning.....	1682
2	System Overview	1682
2.1	System Description	1682
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1682
3	DIAGNOSIS & TEST.....	1683
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1683
3.2	Diagnostic Help.....	1684
3.3	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1684
3.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1685
3.5	Ground Inspection	1686
3.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1686
3.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1687
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1692
4.1	Tools	1692
4.2	Replacement of Wiper Switch Assembly	1692
4.3	Replacement of Front Wiper Blade Assembly	1694
4.4	Replacement of Front Wiper Arm Assembly.....	1695
4.5	Replacement of Front Wiper Motor and Link Rod Assembly	1696
4.6	Replacement of Front Nozzle Assembly	1698
4.7	Replacement of Rear Wiper Arm Blade Assembly.....	1699
4.8	Replacement of Rear Wiper Motor Assembly	1700
4.9	Replacement of Washer Pump Assembly.....	1701
4.10	Replacement of Washer Fluid Reservoir Assembly.....	1703
4.11	Replacement of Front Washer Line Assembly.....	1705
4.12	Replacement of Rain Sensor Assembly	1707

43.1 Wiper and Washer

1 Warning and Precaution

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe following instructions before servicing any parts in this section to avoid possible asset loss, personal injury or even death.

- (1) When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.
- (2) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing.
- (3) Operate carefully to avoid damaging front/rear windshield to prevent accidents, when removing.

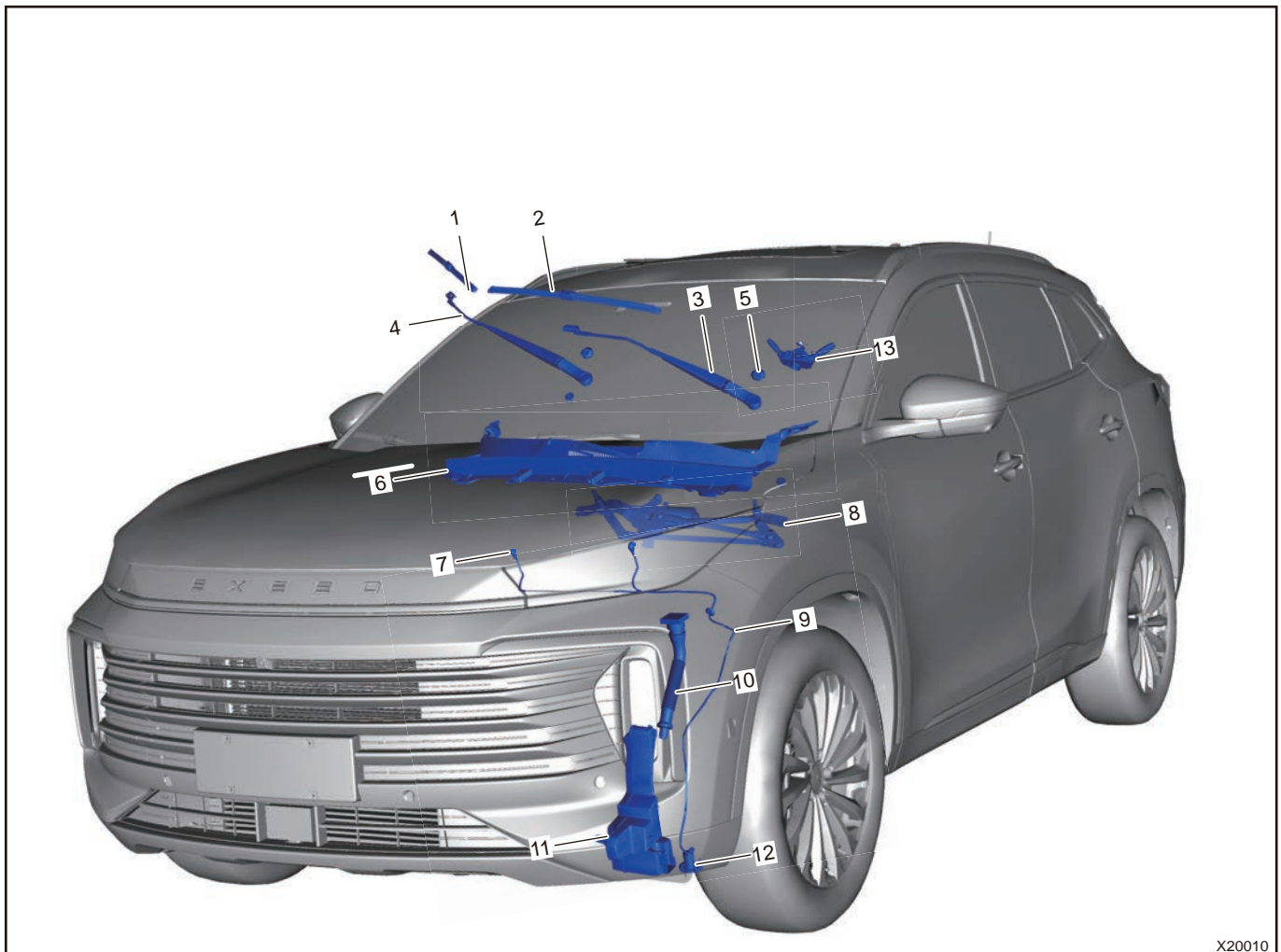
2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Wiper and washer are important equipment for cleaning the front windshield assembly, which can operate only with ENGINE START STOP switch ON. Driver can control all operations of wiper and washer by moving switch control lever.

2.2 System Components Diagram

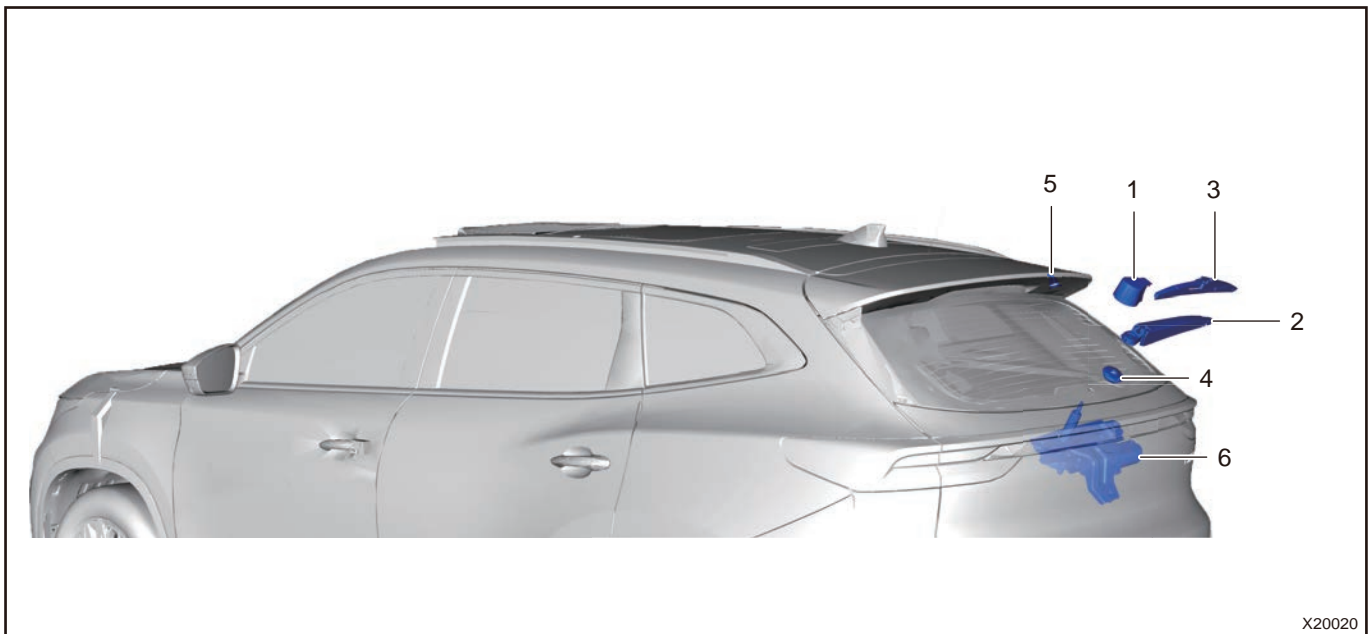
■ Front Wiper Assembly



X20010

1	Sub Wiper Blade	2	Main Wiper Blade
3	Main Wiper Arm	4	Sub Wiper Arm
5	Wiper Arm Trim Cap	6	Front Windshield Lower Support Assembly
7	Front Wiper Nozzle	8	Front Wiper Motor and Link Rod
9	Washer Line Assembly	10	Guide Pipe
11	Washer Fluid Reservoir Assembly	12	Washer Motor
13	Wiper Switch (Integrated in SCM Module)		

■ Rear Wiper Assembly



X20020

1	Rear Wiper Arm Trim Cap	2	Rear Wiper Arm Assembly
3	Rear Wiper Blade	4	Waterproof Bush Rubber
5	Rear Wiper Nozzle	6	Rear Wiper Motor

3 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

⚠ Caution
 Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Possible Cause
Both front wiper and washer systems do not operate	Fuse
	Wiper switch assembly
	Washer pump
	BCM

Symptom	Possible Cause
	Wire harness or connector
Front wiper system does not operate in LO or HI	Wiper switch assembly
	Front wiper motor assembly
	BCM
	Wire harness or connector
Front wiper system does not operate	Fuse
	Wiper switch assembly
	Front wiper motor assembly
	BCM
	Wire harness or connector
Front wiper arm and blade do not return to original position when front wiper switch is turned off	Front wiper motor assembly
	BCM
	Wire harness or connector
Both rear wiper and washer systems do not operate	Fuse
	Wiper switch assembly
	Rear Wiper Motor Assembly
	Washer pump
	BCM
	Wire harness or connector
Washer system does not operate	Nozzle assembly
	Wiper switch assembly
	Washer pump
	BCM
	Wire harness or connector

3.2 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect PAD diagnostic tester (the latest software) with a Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.3 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the control system.

1 Vehicle brought to workshop

Next

2 Check battery voltage

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V

NG

Replace battery

OK

3 Customer problem analysis

Next

4 Read DTCs

Result

Result	Go to
History DTC	A
Current DTC	B

A

Troubleshoot according to intermittent DTCs malfunction procedures

B

5 Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) chart

Next

6 Adjust, repair or replace

Next

7 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End

3.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.

- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B101571	Rear Wiper Built-in Relay Stuck Failure	When output is OFF and ignition switch is OFF, output voltage > 7V. (Deviation is within 10%, duration is more than 100 MS, software performs test once per 10 MS. Test for at least 3 times before confirmation. Starts to test after 2 seconds. Load outputs regardless of key position when load operation condition is met.) Store as current DTC.	Relay fault	1. Internal relay; 2. Check BCM.
B101671	Rear Washer Built-in Relay Stuck Failure			
B101771	Front Washer Built-in Relay Stuck Failure			
B102111	Front Wiper High/Low Speed Relay Short to GND or Open	When output is OFF and ignition switch is OFF, output voltage is > 7 V, stores as current fault. (Deviation is within 10%, duration is more than 100 MS, software performs test once per 10 MS. Test for at least 3 times before confirmation. Starts to test after 2 seconds. Load outputs regardless of key position when load operation condition is met.)	Relay or Wire Harness Problem	1. Check wire harness connector; 2. Relay; 3. Check BCM.
B102511	Front Wiper Enable Relay Short to GND or Open			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B102112	Front Wiper High/Low Speed Relay Short to Power Supply	Output current is > 5A (- Deviation is more than 100 MS, software performs test once per 20 MS. Test for at least 3 times before confirmation. Starts to test after 2 seconds. Turn light outputs regardless of key position when the turn light operation condition is met.) Store current DTC.		
B102512	Front Wiper Enable Relay Short to Power Supply			

3.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ Front Wiper Enable Relay Short to Power Supply Failure

DTC	B1025-12	Front Wiper Enable Relay Short to Power Supply
-----	----------	--

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check the wiper relay
---	-----------------------

- Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Remove the wiper relay and check wiper relay for damage.

NG

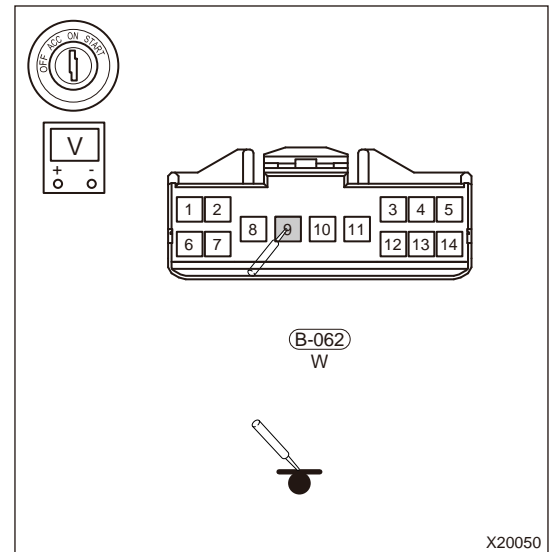
Replace the relay.

OK

2	Check wiper relay power supply voltage
---	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON. Turn on front wiper switch.
- (b) Using a digital multimeter, check if voltage between connector B-062(9) terminal and GND is normal.

Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B - 062 (9) - Ground	Not less than 12 V



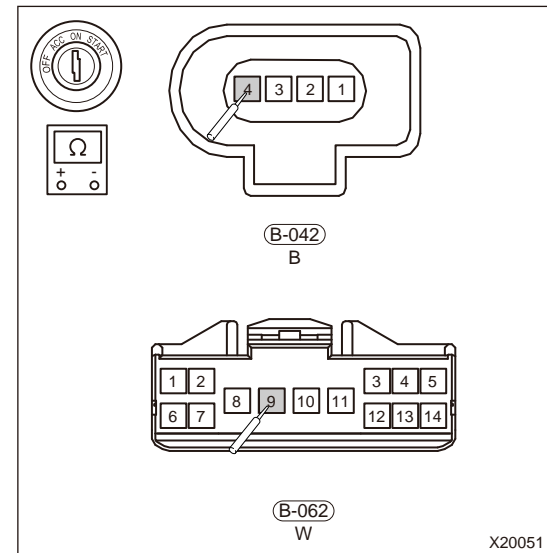
NG Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

3 Check the wiper circuit wire harness

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, measure the resistance between connector B-062(9) and B-042(4) wire harness according to table below. Check if it is normal.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-062 (9) to B-042 (4)	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Check or replace wire harness or connector.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG Replace BCM module.

OK

System operates normally.

■ Washer actuator stuck failure

DTC	B1017-71	Front Actuator Stuck
DTC	B1016-71	Rear Actuator Stuck

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

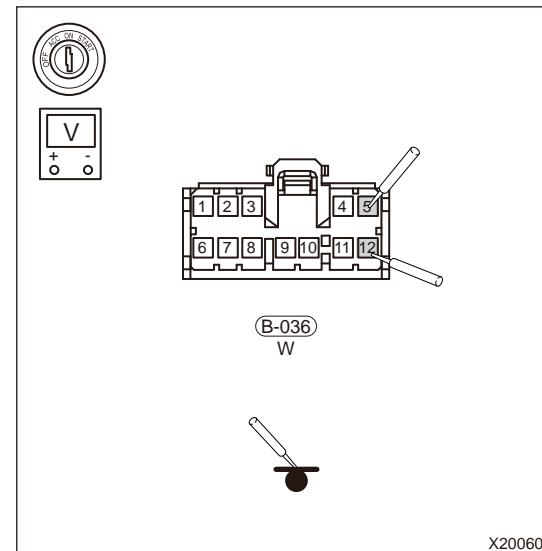
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check washer control circuit output voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON position.
- (b) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of front washer circuit and rear washer circuit according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (5) to body ground	Turn off front washer switch	0 V
B-036 (12) to vehicle ground	Turn off rear washer switch	0 V



X20060

NG

Replace BCM with a new one.

OK

Check washer motor and wire harness.

■ Rear Wiper Control Actuator Stuck Malfunction

DTC	B1015-71	Rear Wiper Control Actuator Stuck
-----	----------	-----------------------------------

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

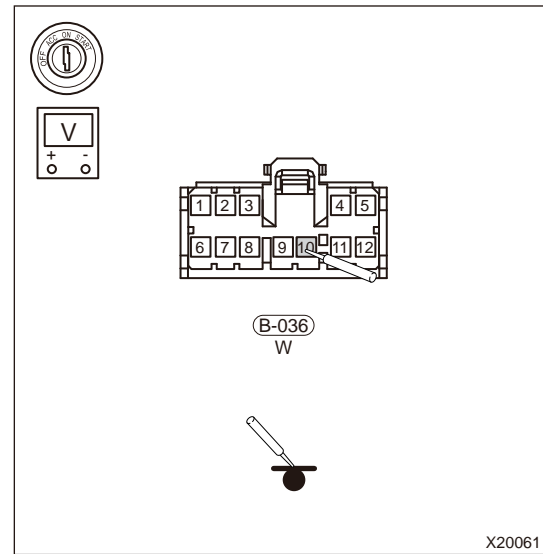
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of rear wiper control circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON position.
- (b) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of rear washer circuit according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (10) to vehicle ground	Turn off rear wiper switch	0 V



OK → **Check the rear wiper motor and wire harness.**

NG → **Replace BCM with a new one.**

■ LIN Communication Timeout between BCM and Rain Sensor

DTC	U1008-87	LIN Communication Timeout between BCM and Rain Sensor
------------	-----------------	--

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check rain sensor connector
----------	------------------------------------

- (a) Check if rain sensor connector is infirmly connected or poorly contacted.

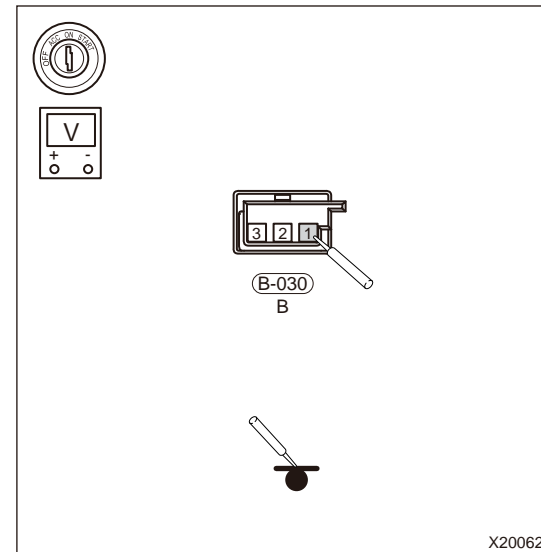
NG → **Check the rear wiper motor and wire harness.**

OK

2	Check rain sensor power supply voltage
----------	---

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON position.
- (b) Check rain sensor terminal B-030 (1) and power supply voltage of body ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-030 (1) to body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch ON	Not less than 12 V



NG

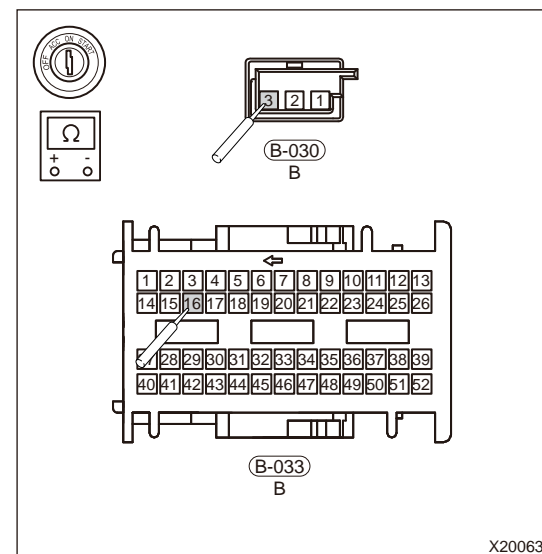
Check wire harness between B-030 (1) and instrument panel fuse and relay box.

OK

3 Check wire harness between rain sensor B-030 (3) and connector B-033 (16).

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, check if continuity of connector terminal is normal according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-030 (3) and B-033 (16)	ENGINE START STOP switch OFF	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

Replace or repair the wire harness.

OK

4 Check the rain sensor

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Install new rain sensor and check if malfunction still exists.

NG

Check wire harness between rain sensor and BCM.

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (c) Using a diagnostic tester, read ECU DTC.
- (d) Check if DTC still exists.

NG

Replace with a new BCM to check if fault reoccurs.

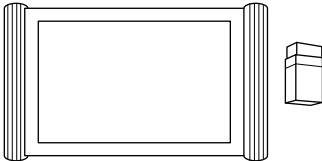
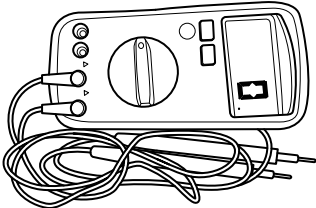
OK

System is normal

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

■ General Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0001006</p>
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH000206</p>

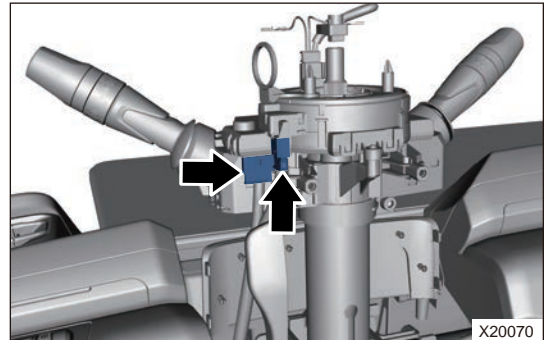
4.2 Replacement of Wiper Switch Assembly

■ Removal

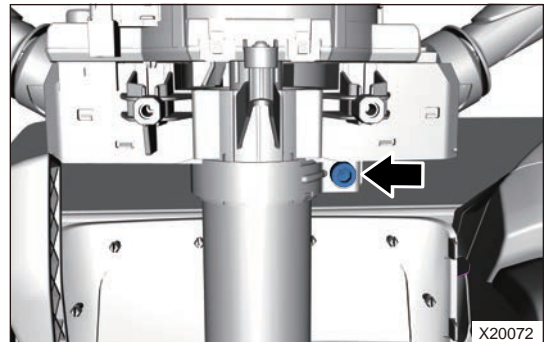
HINT

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing wiper switch assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing wiper switch assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing wiper switch assembly.

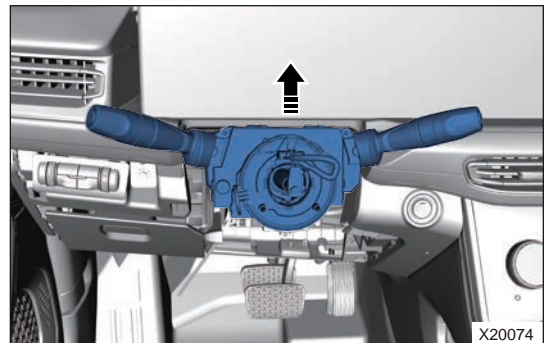
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and the ignition switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the driver airbag.
- (4) Remove the steering wheel.
- (5) Remove the combination switch cover assembly.
- (6) Disconnect wiper switch connector and angle sensor connector.



- (7) Loosen 1 fixing screw of SCM module.



- (8) Remove wiper switch assembly (integrated on SCM module) from steering column in the direction of arrow.



■ Installation

Caution

- Always install correctly according to specified operating instructions.
- Check that horn operates normally after installation.
- Check SRS warning light after installation, and make sure that supplemental restraint system operates normally.

- (1) Install SCM module with coil spring to steering column.
- (2) Install and tighten fixing screw of coil spring.

Installation torque: $6 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Connect SCM module wire harness connector and angle sensor connector.
- (4) Install the combination switch cover assembly.

- (5) Install the steering wheel assembly.
- (6) Install the driver airbag.

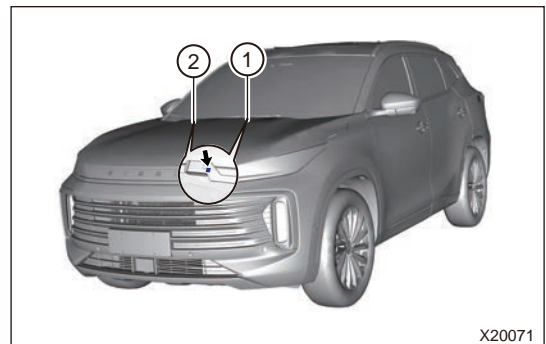
4.3 Replacement of Front Wiper Blade Assembly

■ Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front wiper blade assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front wiper blade assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch, move up wiper switch rapidly on the right side of steering wheel.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) As shown in illustration, press the button in the direction of arrow, slightly pull it outwards to remove front wiper main blade (1) and front wiper sub blade (2).

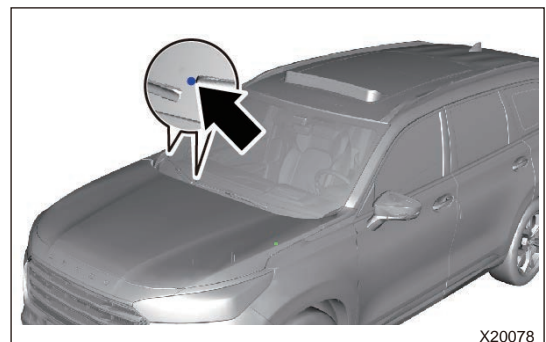


■ Installation

Caution

- **Always operate carefully to prevent other components from being damaged, when installing front wiper arm assembly.**
- **Be sure to tighten fixing nuts to specified torque, when installing front wiper arm assembly.**
- **Check front wiper arm assembly for proper operation after installation.**

- (1) Place the wiper arm in vertical position.
- (2) Insert wiper blade into slot of wiper arm, then pull it securely. It is installed in place until a click sound is heard.
- (3) Pay attention to locating points on front windshield assembly during installation. Wiper arm blade should be pressed against locating points.



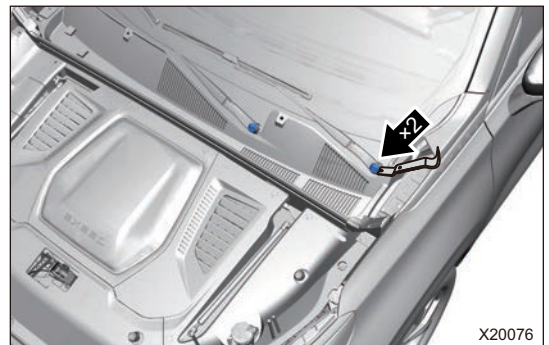
4.4 Replacement of Front Wiper Arm Assembly

■ Removal

Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front wiper arm assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front wiper arm assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent front windshield assembly from being scratched, when removing front wiper arm assembly.

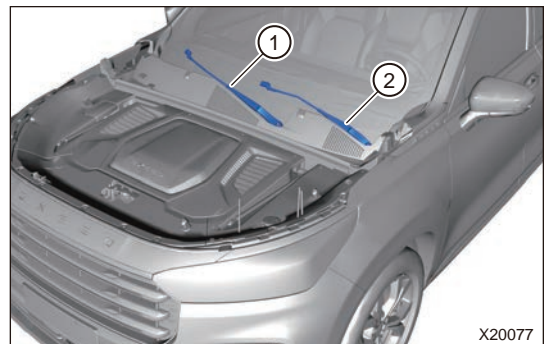
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, remove the front wiper arm trim cap.
- (4) Remove 2 fixing nuts from front wiper arm assembly.



- (5) Remove 2 fixing nuts from front wiper arm assembly.



- (6) Remove front main wiper arm (1) and front sub wiper arm (2).



■ Installation

Hint:

Adjust front wiper arm assembly to proper position when installing.

Caution

- Always operate carefully to prevent other components from being damaged, when installing front wiper arm assembly.
- Be sure to tighten fixing nuts to specified torque, when installing front wiper arm assembly.
- Check front wiper arm assembly for proper operation after installation.

- (1) Install front main wiper arm and front sub wiper arm in order.
- (2) Install 2 fixing nuts to front wiper arm assembly.

Installation torque: 24 ± 2 N·m

- (3) Secure front wiper arm trim cap to nut.

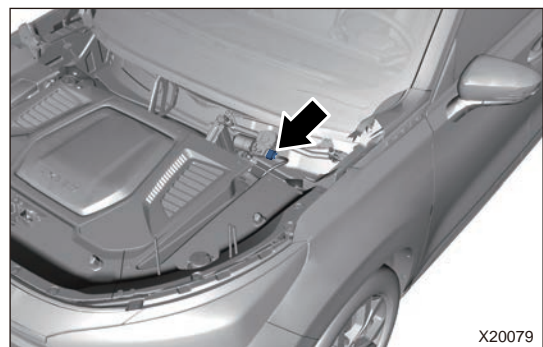
4.5 Replacement of Front Wiper Motor and Link Rod Assembly

■ Removal

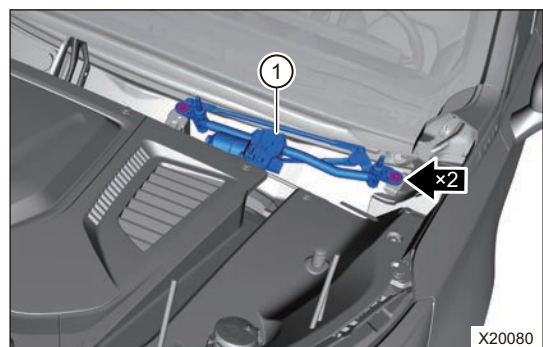
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front wiper motor assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front wiper motor assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front wiper motor assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove front wiper arm and blade assembly.
- (4) Remove the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (5) Disconnect connector from wiper motor and link rod assembly.



- (6) Remove 2 fixing bolts from wiper motor and link rod assembly and then remove wiper motor and link rod assembly (1).



■ Inspection

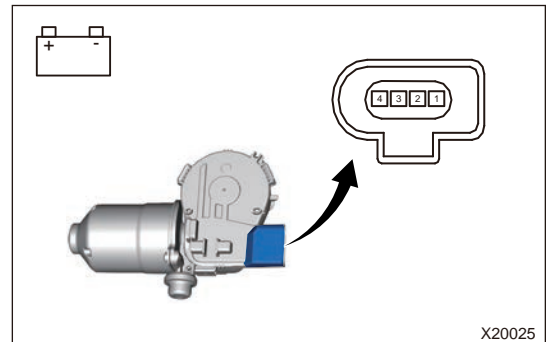
- (1) Check the wiper link rod.

- 1) Check pivot for looseness or falling off, link rod for deformation or breakage, and shaft sleeve for sticking. Replace the wiper link rod if necessary.
- (2) Check the front wiper motor assembly.

- 1) Check the LO operation.

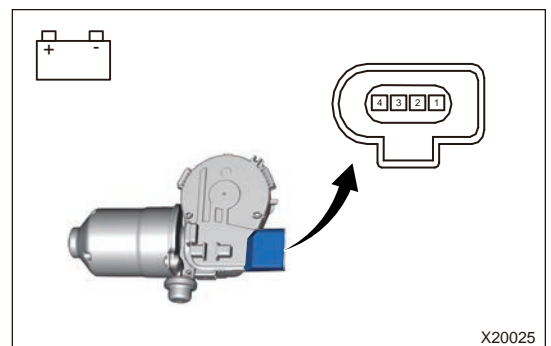
Measurement Condition	Specified Condition
Battery negative (-) → Terminal 4	Motor running at low speed (LO)
Battery positive (+) → Terminal 2	

If result is not as specified, replace front wiper motor assembly.



- 2) Check the HI operation.

Measurement Condition	Specified Condition
Battery negative (-) → Terminal 4	Motor running at low speed (HI)
Battery positive (+) → Terminal 1	



- 3) Check the auto reset function.

- Connect positive (+) battery lead to terminal 2 or 1, and connect negative (-) battery lead to terminal 4. When motor runs at low speed (LO) or high speed (HI), disconnect battery positive (+) to stop front wiper motor at any position other than the original position.
- Connect terminal 4 and terminal 3 with a lead and then connect another to middle of positive (+) battery, and connect negative (-) battery lead to terminal 2 to make motor operate to original position at low speed (LO) again.
- Check whether the front wiper motor assembly can stop automatically after it operates to original position. OK: Motor operates to original position and stops automatically, that is, motor can reset automatically. If result is not as specified, replace front wiper motor assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

- Always operate carefully to prevent other components from being damaged, when installing front wiper motor assembly.
- Adjust and make sure wiper motor and link rod are at original position, before installing front wiper motor assembly, otherwise, wiper system cannot operate normally.
- Install connector in place and tighten fixing bolts and nuts to the specified torque when installing front wiper motor.
- Check wiper system for proper operation after installing front wiper motor assembly.

- (1) Place wiper motor and link rod assembly to its fixing position.
- (2) Secure 2 fixing bolts connected between wiper motor and link rod assembly and vehicle body.

Tightening torque: 7 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Connect wiper motor connector.
- (4) Install the front windshield lower trim board assembly.
- (5) Install the front wiper arm assembly.
- (6) Install the negative battery cable.
- (7) Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and performing running test.

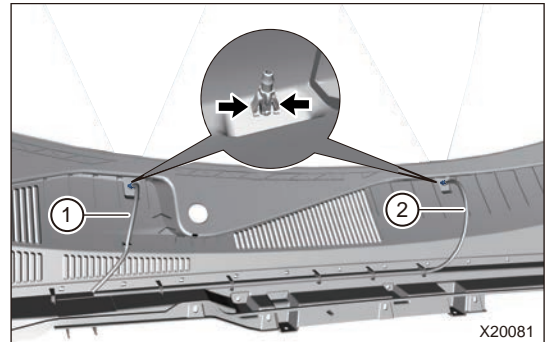
4.6 Replacement of Front Nozzle Assembly

■ Removal

WARNING

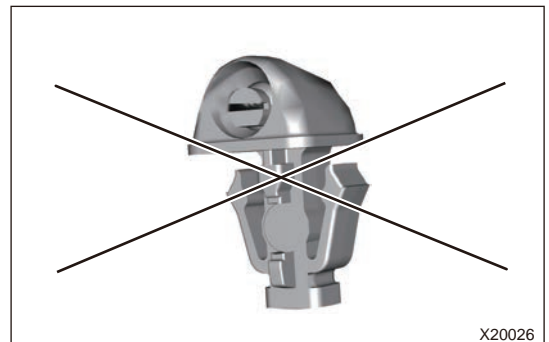
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front nozzle assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front nozzle assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Open the engine compartment cover.
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off front nozzle assembly from engine compartment cover and disconnect spray hose (1), (2).



■ Inspection

- (1) Check front nozzle for blockage, deformation or damage. Replace front nozzle if necessary.



■ Installation

Caution

- Always operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when installing front nozzle assembly.
- Install washer line joints in place, when installing front nozzle assembly.
- Check front nozzle for proper operation, after installing front nozzle assembly.

- (1) Connect spray hose to front nozzle assembly.
- (2) Secure front nozzle assembly to engine compartment cover.

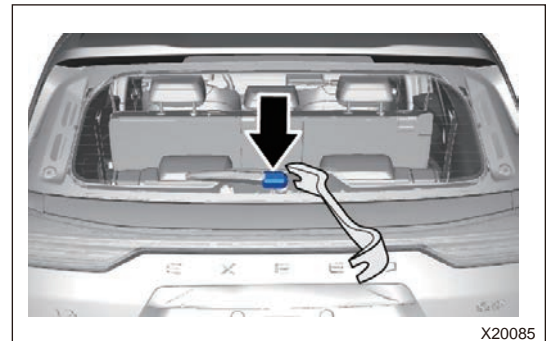
4.7 Replacement of Rear Wiper Arm Blade Assembly

■ Removal

WARNING

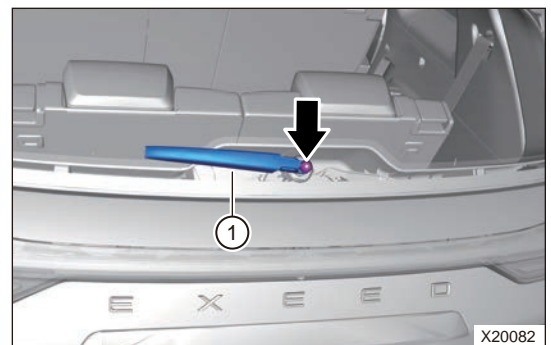
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear wiper arm blade assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear wiper arm blade assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent rear windshield assembly from being scratched, when removing rear wiper arm blade assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Use an interior crow plate to pry up trim cap.



X20085

- (4) Remove fixing nut from rear wiper arm blade assembly and disconnect rear wiper arm blade assembly (1).



X20082

■ Installation

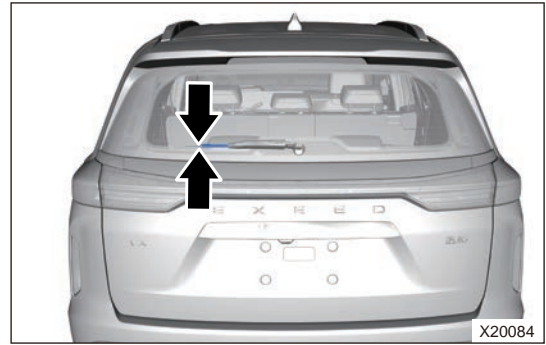
WARNING

- Always operate carefully to prevent other components from being damaged, when installing rear wiper arm blade assembly.
- Be sure to tighten fixing nuts to specified torque, when installing rear wiper arm blade assembly.
- Check rear wiper arm blade assembly for proper operation, after installing rear wiper arm blade assembly.

- (1) Install rear wiper arm blade assembly to a proper position.

Caution

Blade end is located between the lowest electric heat wire and glass black edge.



- (2) Install 1 fixing nut to rear wiper arm blade assembly.

Tightening torque: 10 ± 1.5 N·m

- (3) Install the rear wiper arm trim cap.

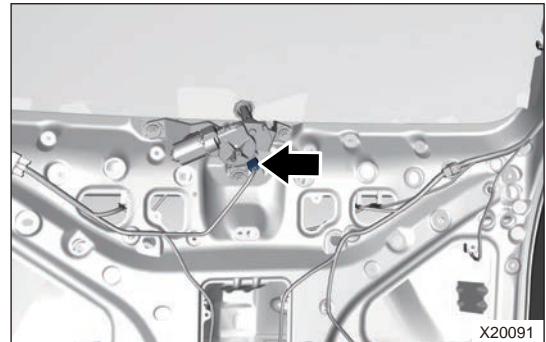
4.8 Replacement of Rear Wiper Motor Assembly

■ Removal

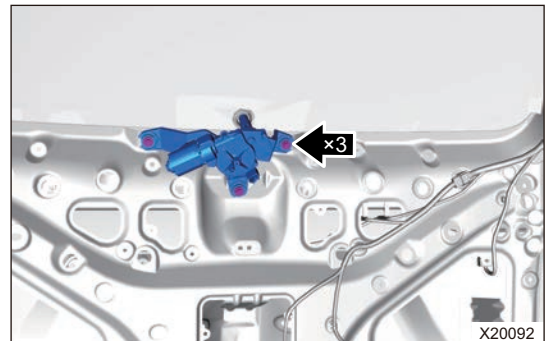
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear wiper motor assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear wiper motor assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent rear windshield assembly from being scratched, when removing rear wiper motor assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear wiper arm blade assembly.
- (4) Remove the back door protector assembly.
- (5) Disconnect the rear wiper motor assembly connector.



- (6) Remove 3 fixing bolts from rear wiper motor assembly.



- (7) Remove the rear wiper motor assembly.

■ Inspection

- (1) Check the rear wiper motor assembly operation.

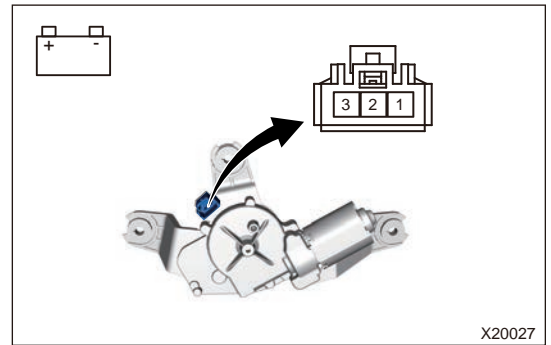
Measurement Condition	Specified Condition
Battery negative (-) → Terminal 3	Motor runs normally
Battery positive (+) → Terminal 1	

If result is not as specified, replace rear wiper motor assembly.

- (2) Check the auto reset function.

- Connect negative (-) battery lead to terminal 3, and connect positive (+) battery lead to terminal 1. Disconnect positive (+) battery lead when motor is operating to stop rear wiper motor on a position except for automatic stop position.
- Connect positive (+) battery lead to terminal 1, and connect negative (-) battery lead to terminal 2 in order to run motor again.
- Check that motor can return to original position automatically.

If result is not as specified, replace rear wiper motor assembly.



X20027

■ Installation

Caution

- **Always operate carefully to prevent other components from being damaged, when installing rear wiper motor assembly.**
- **Be sure to tighten fixing nuts to specified torque, when installing rear wiper motor assembly.**
- **Check wiper arm assembly for proper operation, after installing rear wiper motor assembly.**

- (1) Install and fasten 3 bolts those secure rear wiper motor assembly to vehicle.

Tightening torque: 7 ± 1 N·m

- (2) Connect and fasten rear wiper motor connector.
 (3) Install rear back door protector assembly.
 (4) Install the rear wiper arm blade assembly.
 (5) Install the negative battery cable.

4.9 Replacement of Washer Pump Assembly

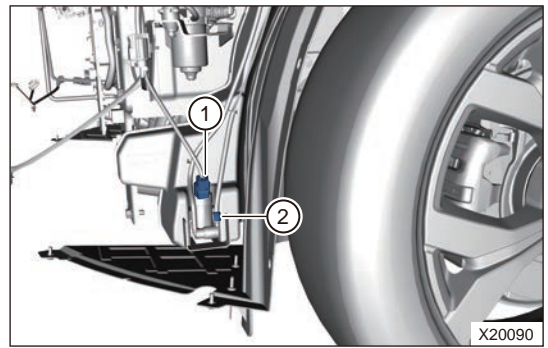
■ Removal

Caution

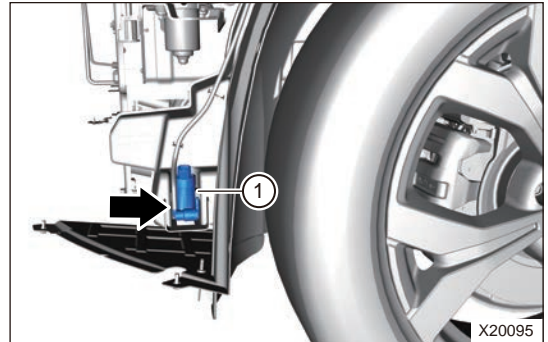
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing washer pump assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing washer pump assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing washer pump assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.

- (4) Disconnect washer pump connector (1), and disconnect joint (2) between rear washer line and washer pump.

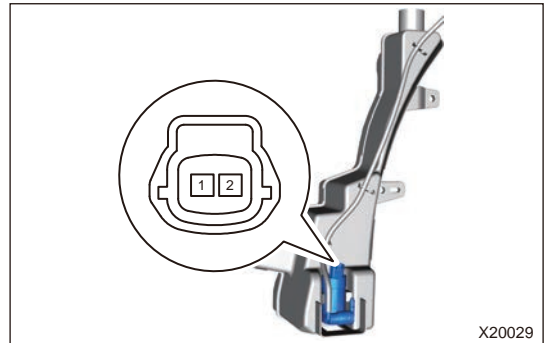


- (5) Disconnect joint between front washer line and washer pump, and remove washer pump assembly (1).

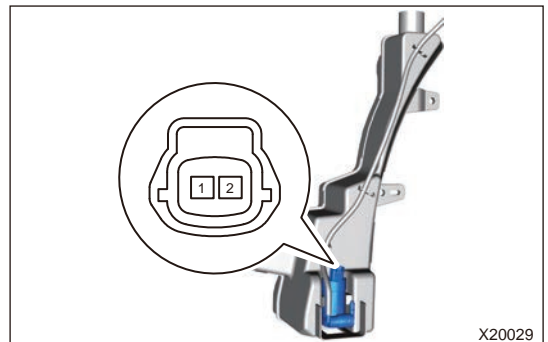


■ Inspection

- (1) Fill washer fluid reservoir assembly with washer fluid.
- (2) Connect positive (+) battery lead to terminal 1 of washer pump, and connect negative (-) battery lead to terminal 2.



- (3) Check that washer fluid flows out of front washer pump. If result is not as specified, replace the washer pump assembly.
- (4) Connect positive (+) battery lead to terminal 1 of washer pump, and connect negative (-) battery lead to terminal 2.



- (5) Check that washer fluid flows out of rear washer pump. If result is not as specified, replace the washer pump assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

- **Always operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when installing washer pump assembly.**
- **Install washer line joint in place, when installing washer pump assembly.**
- **Check washer system for proper operation, after installing washer pump assembly.**

- (1) Secure the washer pump assembly.
- (2) Connect joint between rear washer line and washer pump and joint between front washer line and washer pump.
- (3) Connect the front and rear washer pump connectors.
- (4) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (6) Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and performing running test.

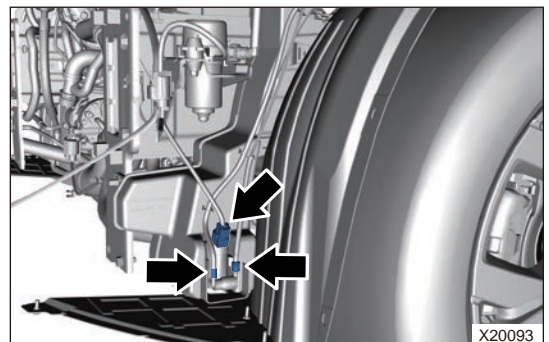
4.10 Replacement of Washer Fluid Reservoir Assembly

■ Removal

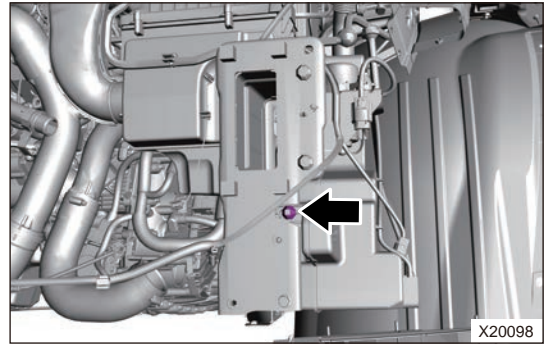
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing washer fluid reservoir assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing washer fluid reservoir assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing washer fluid reservoir assembly.**

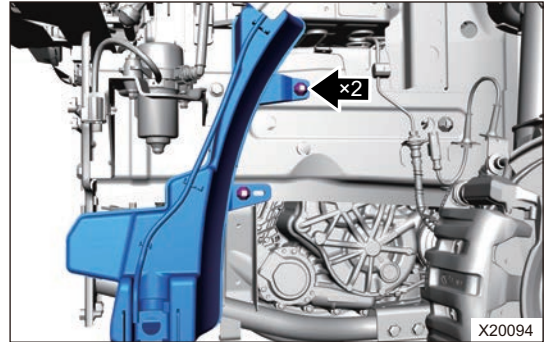
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (5) Remove the front left wheel assembly.
- (6) Remove the front left wheel house protector assembly.
- (7) Disconnect washer pump front/rear spraying pipe and connector, and remove spraying pipe from washer fluid reservoir.



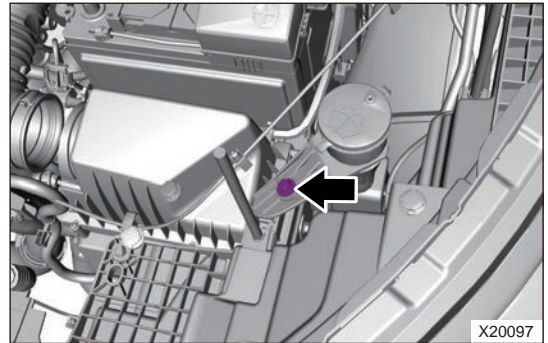
(8) Remove the washer reservoir fixing bolt.



(9) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear side of the washer reservoir.



(10) Remove 1 fixing bolt from washer fluid reservoir filler pipe mounting bracket, and remove the washer fluid reservoir assembly.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check washer fluid reservoir assembly for leakage, deformation or damage. Replace washer fluid reservoir assembly if necessary.
- (2) Check internal and external sides of washer fluid reservoir for dirt. Remove dirt or replace washer fluid reservoir assembly if necessary.
- (3) Check grommet for damage. Replace grommet if necessary.



■ Installation

Caution

- Always operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when installing washer fluid reservoir assembly.
- Tighten fixing bolts to specified torque, when installing washer fluid reservoir assembly.
- Install washer line joint in place when installing washer fluid reservoir assembly.

- (1) Install washer fluid reservoir assembly, install and tighten 3 nuts between washer fluid reservoir assembly and vehicle body.

Tightening torque: 4 ± 1 N·m

- (2) Install and tighten 1 fixing bolt to washer fluid reservoir filler pipe mounting bracket.

Tightening torque: 6 ± 1 N·m

- (3) Connect the washer pump connector.
- (4) Install the washer pump front/rear spraying pipe.
- (5) Install the front left wheel house protector assembly.
- (6) Install the front left wheel assembly.
- (7) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (8) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (9) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (10) Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and performing running test.

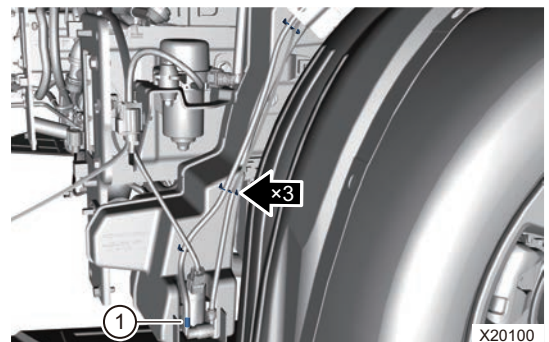
4.11 Replacement of Front Washer Line Assembly

■ Removal

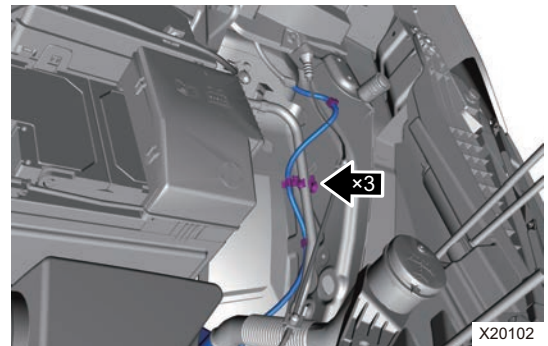
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing washer line assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing washer line assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing washer line assembly.**

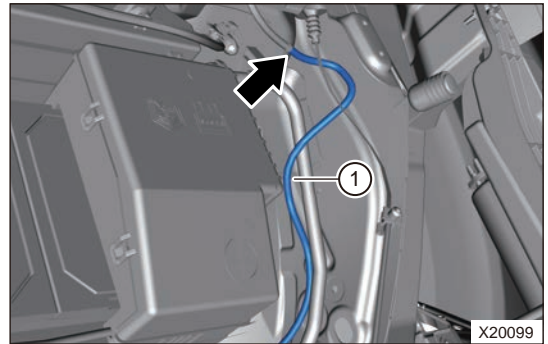
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (4) Remove the front nozzle assembly.
- (5) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (6) Remove the front left wheel assembly.
- (7) Remove the front left wheel house protector assembly.
- (8) Disconnect joint (1) between front washer line and front washer pump, and disconnect 3 fixing clips from washer reservoir.



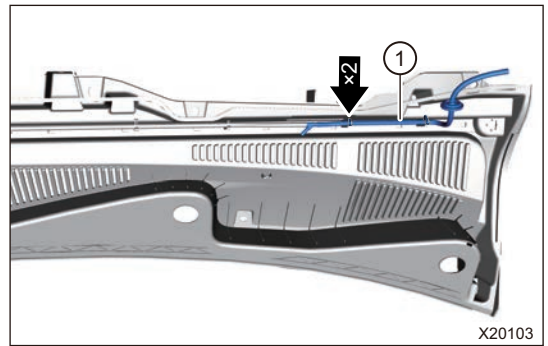
- (9) Remove 3 fixing clips from washer line on the inner side of wing, and remove washer line 2.



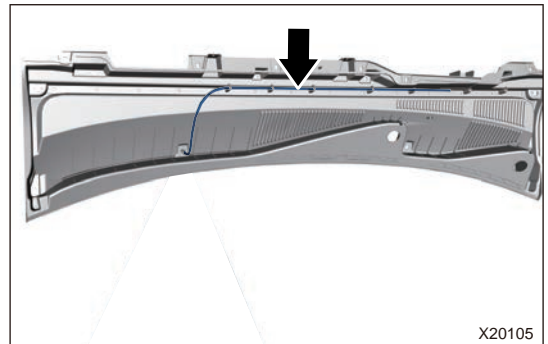
- (10) Disconnect connection between washer line 2 and washer line 1, and remove washer line 1.



- (11) Disconnect 2 fixing clips from front washer nozzle pipe with three way rubber plug assembly and remove front washer nozzle pipe with three way rubber plug assembly (1). Disconnect left nozzle pipe assembly and remove it.



- (12) Disconnect right nozzle pipe assembly and remove it.



■ Installation

Caution

- Always operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when installing washer line assembly.
- Install washer line joint in place, when installing washer line assembly.
- Check washer system for proper operation, after installing washer line assembly.

- (1) Install the right nozzle pipe assembly.
 (2) Install the left nozzle pipe assembly.

- (3) Install the front washer nozzle pipe with three way rubber plug assembly.
- (4) Connect washer line 2 and washer line 1.
- (5) Install washer line 2 and secure 3 fixing clips.
- (6) Install joint (1) between front washer line and front washer pump, and secure 3 fixing clips on washer reservoir.
- (7) Install the front left wheel house protector assembly.
- (8) Install the front left tire assembly.
- (9) Install the front nozzle assembly.
- (10) Install the front windshield lower trim board assembly.
- (11) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (12) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (13) Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and performing running test.

4.12 Replacement of Rain Sensor Assembly

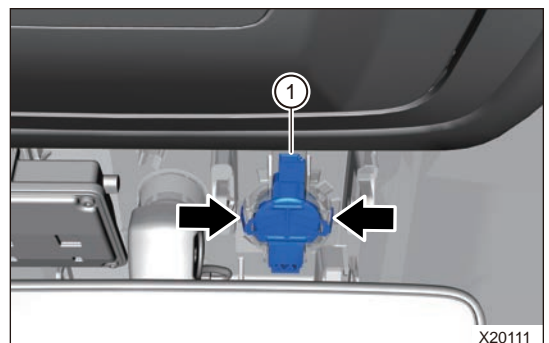
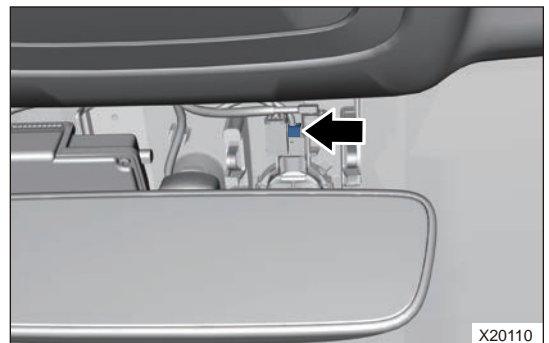
■ Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rain sensor assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing the rain sensor assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent rain sensor from being scratched, when removing front wiper arm assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the driving recorder assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the rain sensor assembly connector.

- (5) Press rain sensor fixing clip and remove rain sensor assembly.



■ Installation

Caution

- **Always operate carefully to prevent other components from being damaged, when installing rain sensor assembly.**
 - **Install the sensor in place when installing rain sensor assembly.**
- (1) Install rain sensor assembly to proper position and tighten fixing clip.
 - (2) Install the rain sensor assembly connector.
 - (3) Install the driving recorder assembly.
 - (4) Install the negative battery cable.

BODY ELECTRICAL

44.1	LIGHTING SYSTEM	1710
1	Warnings and Precautions	1710
1.1	Precautions	1710
2	System Overview	1710
2.1	System Description	1710
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1711
2.3	System Principle	1712
2.4	Intelligent Headlight	1713
3	DIAGNOSIS & TEST.....	1714
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1714
3.2	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1715
3.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1715
3.4	Diagnostic Help.....	1716
3.5	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1716
3.6	Ground Inspection	1716
3.7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1717
3.8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1723
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1747
4.1	Tools	1747
4.2	Replacement of Steering Column Module	1748
4.3	Replacement of Headlight Assembly.....	1749
4.4	Replacement of Front Position Light.....	1753
4.5	Replacement of Rear Combination Light (Body Part)	1754
4.6	Replacement of Rear Combination Light Assembly (Back Door Part)	1755
4.7	Replacement of High Mounted Stop Light Assembly	1756
4.8	Replacement of License Plate Light Assembly.....	1757
4.9	Replacement of Rear Fog Light Assembly	1758

44.1 LIGHTING SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

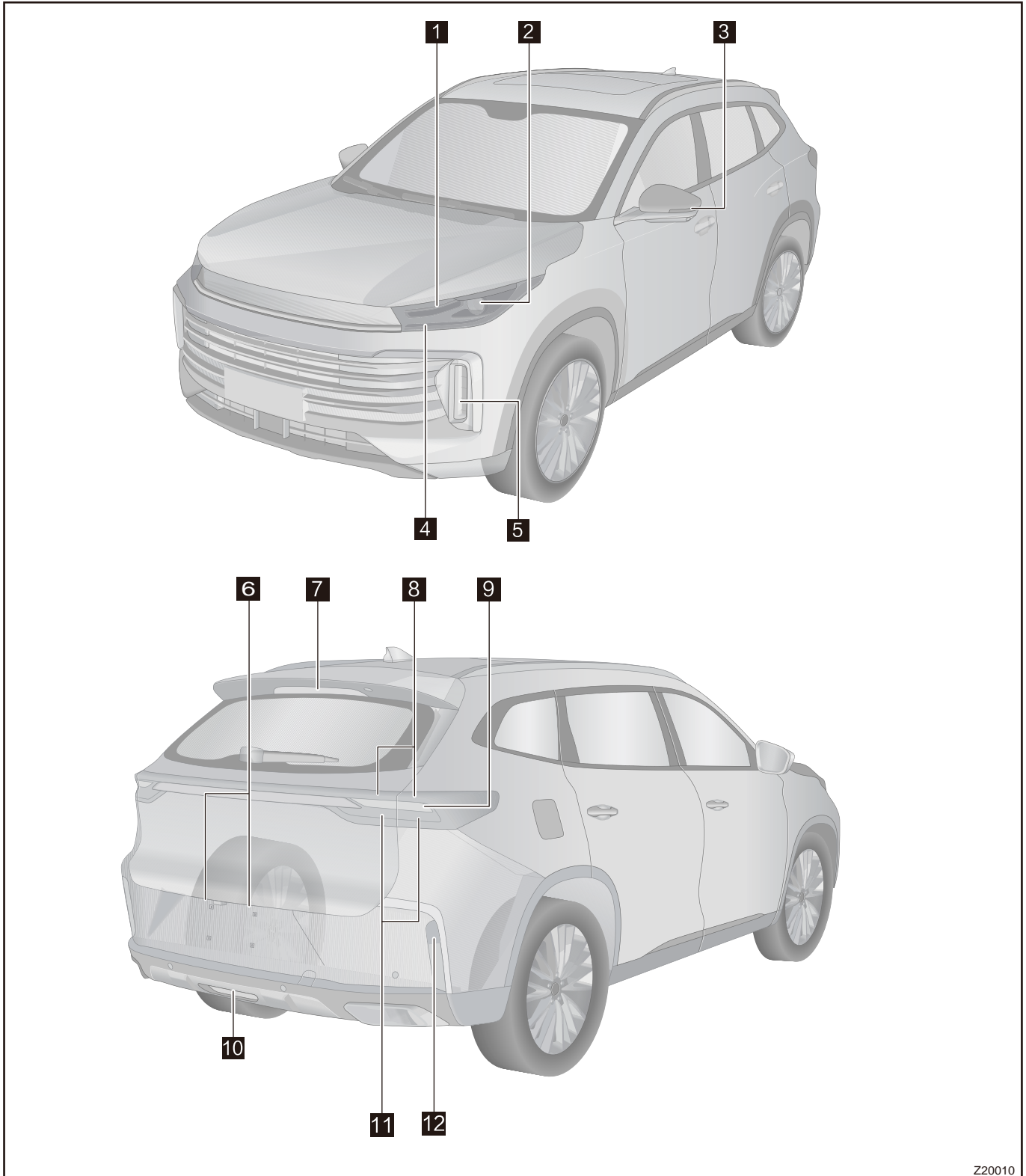
- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing exterior lighting appliance.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied when removing exterior lighting appliance. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing exterior lighting appliance.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

Lighting system on this model consists of vehicle lighting device and light signal device, which are used for normal operation of vehicle and ensures safety when driving at night or in fog. Lighting system consists of headlight assembly, front position light, turn signal light, daytime running light, side turn signal light, foot light, rear fog light, back-up light, brake light, license plate light and high mounted stop light.

2.2 System Components Diagram



Z20010

1	Turn Signal Light	2	High/Low Beam Lights
3	Side Turn Signal Light	4	Position Light
5	Front Fog Light	6	License Plate Light

7	High Mounted Stoplight	8	Position Light
9	Turn Signal Light	10	Rear Fog Light
11	Stop Light	12	Back-up Light

2.3 System Principle

■ Brake Light

Power supply for high mounted stop light and brake light are provided by BCM. There is no fuse in the circuit. Depress brake pedal, BCM 1-39 receives high level signal, and BCM 5-08 and 5-11 output 12 V power supply to turn brake light on. **Trigger conditions:**

- When brake switch is pressed, brake switch is a high level self-locking switch.
- CAN signal 'BrakeLightsRequest=1' sent from EPB is received.
- CAN signal "BLRequestController=1" sent from ESP is received.

■ Daytime Running Light

BCM receives the engine speed signal and position light not on signal through CAN network, and BCM 5-15 and 5-14 output 12 V power supply to turn daytime running light on. **Trigger conditions:**

- Engine starts; low and high beam lights and front fog lights are not activated.
- When daytime running light is operating: Flash function does not affect daytime running light operation.

■ Back-up Light

Power supply for back-up light is provided by BCM 4-08. When BCM receives the following trigger conditions, back-up light will come on. **Trigger conditions:**

- After receiving reverse switch signal or CAN signal sent from TCU, BCM turns backup light on.

■ Position Light

Power supply for position light is provided by BCM. When BCM receives the following trigger conditions, back-up light will come on. **Trigger conditions:**

- IGN ON or ACC; position light input or low beam light input is activated.
- BCM should send ParkLightSts =1(Bcan).

■ Foot Light

Foot light on rear view mirror is turned on by using power supply provided by BCM 5-09. **Trigger conditions:**

- With key in OFF/ACC, perform unlock operation through key or remote function, foot light turns on for 15 seconds.
- In OFF status, BCM receives wireless fortifying/remote fortifying/PLG fortifying signal, and vehicle enters fortifying mode successfully, foot light turns on for 15 seconds.
- With key in ON or after counting down for 15 seconds, foot light turns off.
- In OFF/ACC/ON status, open any door, and BCM controls foot light to turn on for 3 minutes.
- Within 3 minutes after foot light is activated: If another door is opened while one door remains open, foot light continues to come on for 3 minutes, and then fades out.
- In OFF/ACC status, foot light comes on, four doors close, BCM controls foot light to come on for 8 seconds and then go off; Turn key to ON within 8 seconds after foot light is on, and foot light turns off immediately.
- When foot light comes on, if key is turned to ON, four doors close and foot light turns off immediately.

■ Rear Fog Light

Power supply for rear fog light is provided by BCM 5-17. When rear fog light switch is turned on, the rear fog lights turn on. **Trigger conditions:**

- Operating conditions for rear fog light: IGN-ON; Front fog light or low beam lights are activated; Rear fog light switch is activated.
- When rear fog light is operating: Rear fog light comes on and send RearFogLightSts=1.
- When rear fog light is operating: When rear fog light switch is activated again, rear fog light turns off.
- When rear fog light is operating: key is switched from IGN ON to ACC or OFF, rear fog light is turned off.
- When rear fog light is operating: When low beam light or front fog light load is turned off, rear fog lights turn off at the same time.

■ Hazard Warning Light

When hazard warning light switch is turned on, BCM 2-14 receives a low level signal. BCM 2-14 will turn on hazard warning light switch, switch indicator turns on, left and right turn signal lights flash at the same time.

Trigger conditions:

- The corresponding bulb is intact, BCM sends LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts and load operating frequency is the same as that of turn signal light; If any 21 W bulb is damaged, the flashing frequency of turn signal light CAN signals (LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts) and hazard warning light will be 2 times of that when bulb is intact.
- When ABM sends a collision signal, hazard warning light function should be activated automatically (CAN signal of left/right turn signal light, indicator and turn signal light). Automatically activated hazard warning light function due to collision can be canceled as key is switched to OFF, then to ON or hazard warning light button is pressed.
- When turn signal light function and hazard warning light function are both effective, BCM should perform the next action.

■ Turn Signal Light

When turn signal light switch signal is received, BCM outputs power supply to turn on the corresponding turn signal light. **Trigger conditions:**

- IGN ON, turn signal light switch is activated.
- The flashing frequency of turn signal light is 400 ms on and 400 ms off.
- Key is turned from ON to OFF, turn signal light stops operating and meter stops flashing.
- When turn signal light is operating: The corresponding bulb is intact, BCM sends LHTurnLightSts (Bcan & Pcan) and the load operating frequency is the same as that of left turn signal light; If the corresponding 21W bulb is damaged, BCM will send LHTurnLightSts and the frequency will be 2 times of that when bulb operates normally. No matter whether the bulb is damaged or not, BCM will send DirectionIndLeft (Bcan & Pcan) signal continuously.

■ Low Beam Light

Power supply for low beam light is provided by the engine compartment fuse and relay box. BCM receives the combination light switch low beam light signal, BCM 1-18 analogs ground, high beam light relay operates to turn on high beam light. **Trigger conditions:**

- IGN ON; Low beam light switch is activated.
- BCM sends LowBeamSts=1.

■ High Beam Light

Power supply for high beam light is provided by the engine compartment fuse and relay box. BCM receives the combination light switch high beam light signal, BCM 1-43 analogs ground, low beam light relay operates to turn on low beam light. **Trigger conditions:**

- Operating conditions for high beam light: IGN ON; low beam lights are activated, high beam light switch is activated.
- When high beam light is operating: High beam lights come on and send HighBeamSts=1.
- When high beam light is operating: When vehicle cranks, high beam lights temporarily stop operating but CAN data will be sent continuously and resume operation after cranking.
- When high beam light is operating: When high beam light switch is deactivated, high beam light turns off.
- When high beam light is operating: When low beam light switch is deactivated, high beam light turns off.
- When high beam lights are operating: key is switched from IGN ON to ACC or OFF, high beam lights are turned off.

2.4 Intelligent Headlight

■ Function description

The main function of intelligent headlight control system is the intelligent low/high beam switching. The system can request high beam ON/OFF according to the traffic and environmental factors. If there are no relevant traffic participants in front, the system will activate high beam; With system activated, if there is a meeting or following vehicle or street lighting, high beam will be turned off.

■ Control principle

After IGN ON, system switch is turned to ON, and headlight is in AUTO, camera will detect vehicle status, surrounding environment and road condition in front. If IHC opening conditions are met, system will request high beam to be turned ON; When followings, oncomings or vehicles related environment (including the


existence of multiple street lights, if external environment brightness is higher than the threshold, etc.) do not meet the LHC open conditions, system will request high beam to be turned off, once the system ON conditions resume, system will follow a certain delay mechanism and send high beam request without interfering with other traffic participants (ECE48 defined vehicles driving in opposite or same directions, ECE50 defined motorbikes driving in opposite or same directions, electric motorcars with light as well as bicycles with light driving in same direction, light size must be more than 150*150 mm and light intensity is greater than 30 cd). The request of low/high beam switching is transmitted to BCM from multi-function front camera via CAN signal, and driver can change lighting state at any time using light rod.

■ System operating precondition

- (1) IGN ON.
- (2) Headlight switch is in AUTO.
- (3) Low beam light turns on automatically.
- (4) BCM judges that all the above conditions are met, then BCM sends corresponding system switch requests according to functional logic. If any condition is not met, it will send HWASW = 0 continuously and system cancels activation requests.

3 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

 Caution	
Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.	
Current Status	Possible Cause
Low beam light does not come on (one side)	Fuse
	Headlight assembly
	Wire harness or connector
Low beam lights do not come on (both sides)	Fuse
	Headlight assembly
	Combination light switch assembly
	Low beam relay
	Wire harness or connector
	Body Control Module (BCM)
High beam light does not come on (one side)	Fuse
	Headlight assembly
	Wire harness or connector
High beam light does not come on (both sides)	Fuse
	Headlight assembly
	Combination light switch assembly
	High beam relay
	Wire harness and connector
	Body Control Module (BCM)
Position light does not come on (one side)	Position light bulb

Current Status	Possible Cause
	Wire harness or connector
Position lights do not come on (both sides)	Position light bulbs (all)
	Wire harness or connector
	Combination light switch assembly
	Body Control Module (BCM)

3.2 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the lighting system.

1 Vehicle brought to workshop

Next

2 Check battery voltage

Check if battery voltage is normal.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

NG

Replace battery

OK

3 Customer problem analysis

Next

4 Read DTCs

No DTC

Customer problem analysis

Next

5 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End

3.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- (3) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.

- (4) Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the detection system.
- (5) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK and wait for a few seconds.
- (6) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select read DTC.
- (7) If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction. Go to inspection procedure - Step 1.
- (8) If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

3.4 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 PAD (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.5 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.6 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B1000-16	Power Supply Voltage too Low	Battery voltage is less than 9 V	Power supply is not stable, and some loads may decrease suddenly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check fuse • Check charging system • Check wire harness connector • Check BCM
B1000-17	Power Supply Voltage too High	Battery voltage is more than 15 V		
B1002-11	Right Side Turn Lamp Control Circuit Short To Ground	Output current is more than 5 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, turn signal light will output as long as operating conditions of turn signal light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness connector • Turn signal light • BCM 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check turn signal light • Check BCM
B1002-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Right Turn Signal Light	Output current is less than 3 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, turn signal light will output as long as operating conditions of turn signal light are met.)		
B104001	Right Turn Signal Light Feedback Fault	/	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness connector • Turn signal light • BCM 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check turn signal light • Check BCM
B104101	Left Turn Signal Light Feedback Fault			
B101E-11	Right Static Assist Illumination Light Short to Ground	Output current is more than 4 A (Time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, back-up light will output as long as operating conditions of back-	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check load • Check BCM
B101F-11	Left Static Assist Illumination Light Short to Ground			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		up light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		
B101E-13	Open in Right Static Assist Illumination Light	Output current is less than 0.5 A (The error is within a range of 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, back-up light will output as long as operating conditions of back-up light are met.)		
B101F-13	Open in Left Static Assist Illumination Light			
B1035-11	Brake Light Short to Ground	Output current is more than 5 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, brake light will output as long as operating conditions of brake light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check brake light • Check BCM
B1035-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Brake Light	Output current is less than 0.5 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, brake light will output as long as operating conditions of brake light are met.)		
B1036-11	High Mounted Stop Light Short to Ground	Output current is more than 2 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position,		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		
B1036-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in High Mounted Stop Light	Output current is less than 30 mA (The error is within a range of 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)		
B1039-11	Back-up Light Circuit Short to Ground	Output current is less than 0.5 A (The error is within a range of 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, back-up light will output as long as operating conditions of back-up light are met.)	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check back-up light • Check BCM
B1039-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Back-up Light Circuit	Output current is more than 4 A (Time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, back-up light will output as long as operating conditions of back-up light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		
B102211	Short to Ground or Open in Low Beam Light Relay	When output is off and ignition switch is OFF, output voltage is more than 7 V, and it is stored as current fault. (The error is less than 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 10MS,	Relay or wire harness fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check relay • Check BCM
B102311	Short to Ground or Open in High			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Beam Light Relay Circuit	and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will be output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)		
B102212	Short to Power supply in Low Beam Light Relay Circuit	Output current is more than 5 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, turn signal light will output as long as operating conditions of turn signal light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		
B102312	Short to Power supply in High Beam Light Relay Circuit			
B102611	Short to Ground or Open in Front Fog Light Relay	When output is off and ignition switch is OFF, output voltage is more than 7 V, and it is stored as current fault. (The error is less than 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 10MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will be output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)	Relay or wire harness fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check relay • Check BCM
B102612	Short to Power Supply in Front Fog Light Relay	Output current is more than 5 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, turn signal light will output as long as operating conditions of turn signal light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B102811	Open or Short to Ground in Rear Fog Light Relay	Output current is less than 30 mA (The error is within a range of 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check rear fog light • Check BCM
B102813	Rear Fog Light Circuit Short to Power Supply	Output current is more than 2 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		
B102911	Left Daytime Running Light Circuit Short to Ground	Output current is more than 2 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, daytime running light will output as long as operating conditions of daytime running light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check daytime running light • Check BCM
B103011	Right Daytime Running Light Circuit Short to Ground			
B102913	Open or Short to Power Supply in Left Daytime Running Light Circuit	Output current is less than 0.1 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, daytime running light will		
B103013	Open or Short to Power Supply in Right Daytime Running Light Circuit			

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		output as long as operating conditions of daytime running light are met.)		
B103111	Open or Short to Ground in Position Light Relay	When output is off and ignition switch is OFF, output voltage is more than 7 V, and it is stored as current fault. (The error is less than 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 10MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will be output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)	Relay or wire harness fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check relay • Check BCM
B103113	Position Light Relay Short to Power Supply	Output current is more than 5A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, turn signal light will output as long as operating conditions of turn signal light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		
B104201	Position Light Feedback Fault	/	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Position light • Check BCM 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Position light • Check BCM
B103813	Open in Back Door Light Load	Output current is less than 30 mA (The error is within a range of 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check back door light • Check BCM

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B103811	Back Door Light Load Short to Ground	Output current is more than 2 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		
B105313	Rear View Mirror Foot Light Short to Ground	Output current is less than 30 mA (The error is within a range of 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check rear view mirror foot light • Check BCM
B105311	Open or Short to Power Supply in Rear View Mirror Foot Light	Output current is more than 2 A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will output as long as operating conditions of load are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		

3.8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ Power supply voltage fault

DTC	B1000-16	Power Supply Voltage too Low
DTC	B1000-17	Power Supply Voltage too High

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.

- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check battery voltage

- (a) Start engine, and use voltage band of multimeter to check if battery voltage is normal. (Rated voltage: Not less than 12 V)

NG **Repair or replace battery/alternator**

OK

2 Check fuse

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Check for continuity of instrument panel fuses MF03 (125A), RF54 (20A) and RF63 (5A) with a digital multimeter.

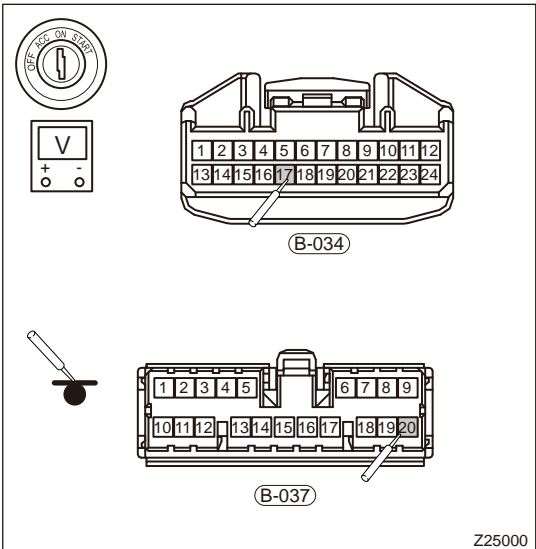
NG **Replace fuse**

OK

3 Check interior power supply wire harness

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 (c) Disconnect the interior wire harness connectors B-034 and B-037.
 (d) Connect the negative battery cable.
 (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (f) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between interior wire harness connectors B-034 and B037 and ground, and detect it with a 21 W test lamp according to table below.

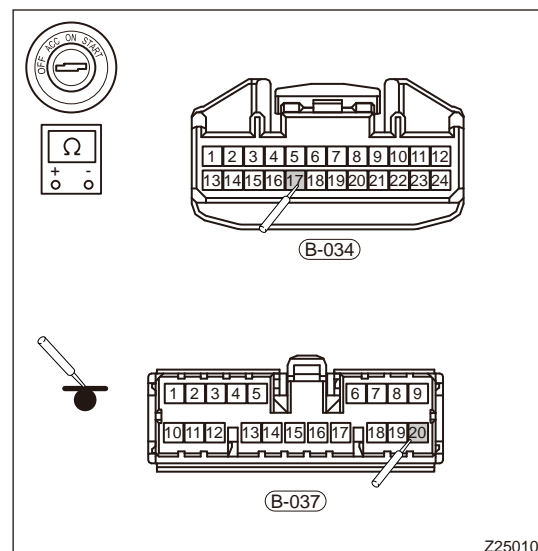
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-034 (17) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
B-037 (20) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V



Z25000

(g) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance between interior wire harness connectors B-034 and B037 and ground according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-034 (17) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
B-037 (20) - Body ground		∞



Z25010

NG Repair or replace related wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG Replace BCM

OK System is normal

■ Turn signal light fault

DTC	B1001-11	Left Turn Signal Light Short to Ground
DTC	B1001-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Left Turn Signal Light
DTC	B1041-01	Left Turn Signal Light Feedback Fault

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

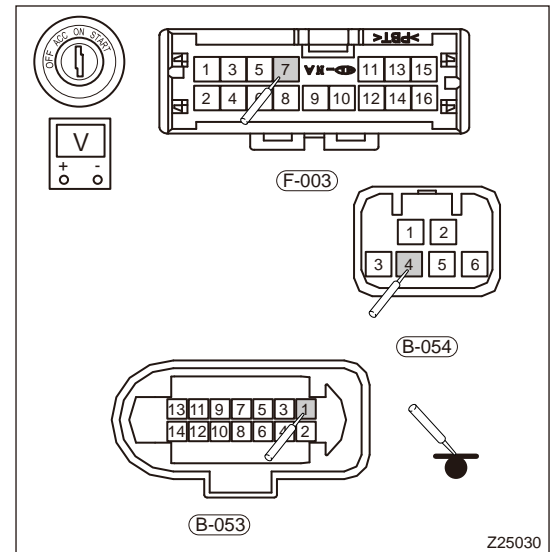
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of left turn signal light control circuit

- (a) First, confirm the operating status of left turn signal light.
- (b) If only left turn signal light does not turn on, check the output circuit of left turn signal light only.
- (c) If either front left or rear left light does not come on, check node line and turn signal light.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Disconnect front left turn signal light connector B-053, left side turn signal light connector F-003 and rear left turn signal light connector B-054.
- (f) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON, and turn on left turn signal light switch.
- (g) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of each turn signal light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Indirect 12 V
B-054 (4) - Body ground		
F-003 (7) - Body ground		

OK → **Replace turn signal light**



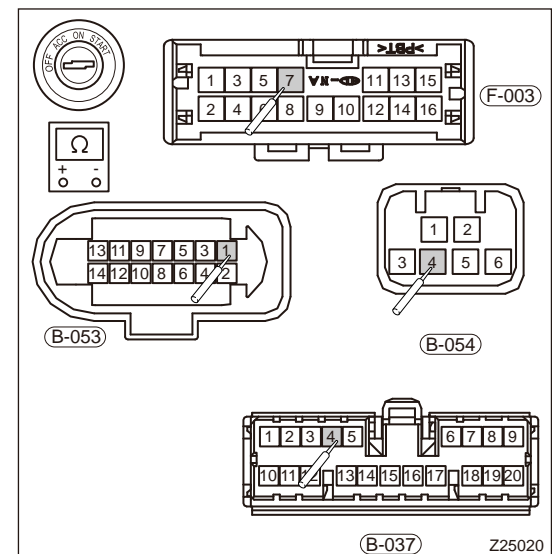
NG

2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-037.
- (c) Disconnect front left turn signal light connector B-053, left side turn signal light connector F-003 and rear left turn signal light connector B-054.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (4) - B-053 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	≤ 1 Ω
B-037 (4) - B-054 (4)		
B-037 (4) - F-003 (7)		

NG → **Replace or repair wire harness**

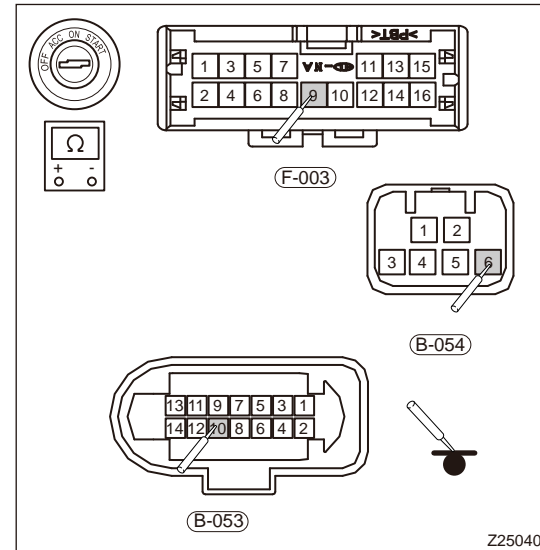


OK

3 Check ground circuit of turn signal light

(a) Using a multimeter, check if ground circuit of turn signal light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (10) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	≤ 1 Ω
B-054 (6) - Body ground		
F-003 (9) - Body ground		



NG Repair ground wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG Replace BCM

OK System operates normally

■ Position light fault

DTC	B1005-11	Open or Short to Ground in Position Light Relay
DTC	B1005-13	Position Light Relay Short to Power Supply
DTC	B1042-01	Position Light Feedback Fault

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

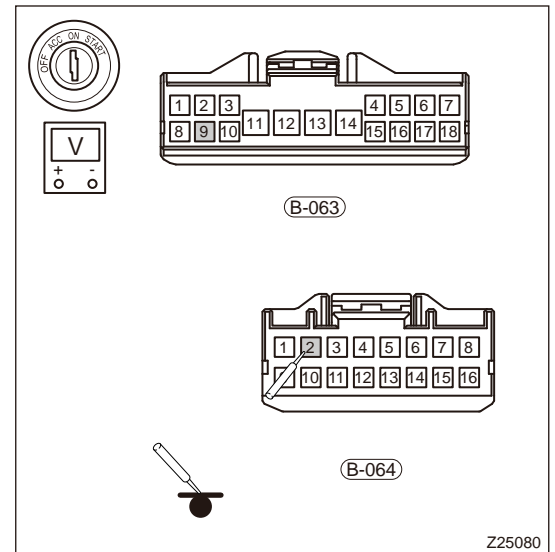
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of position light control circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the engine compartment fuse box connectors B-063 and B-064.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON, and turn on position light switch.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of position light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-063 (9) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
B-064 (2) - Body ground		



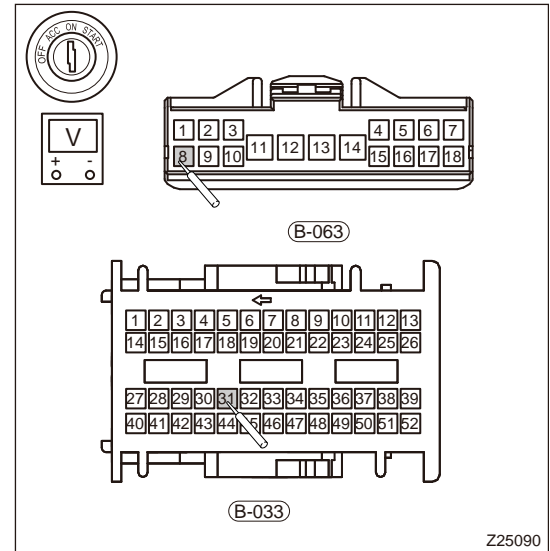
NG Check relay and power supply wire harness

OK

2 Check circuit

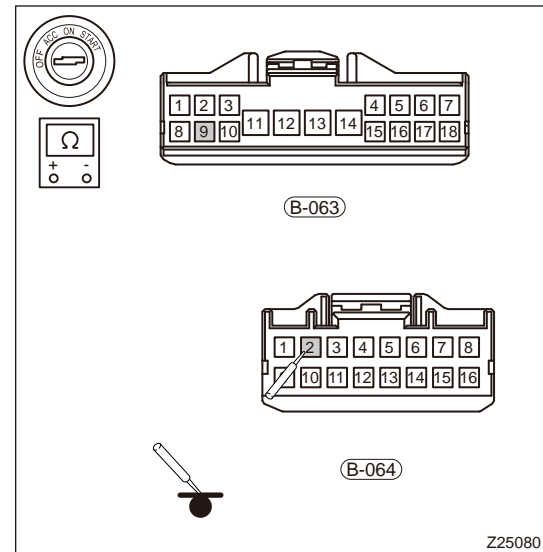
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-033.
- (c) Disconnect the engine compartment fuse box connector B-063.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-063 (8) - B- 033 (31)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	Not less than 12 V



- (e) Turn on the position light switch.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-063 (9) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-064 (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



Z25080

NG

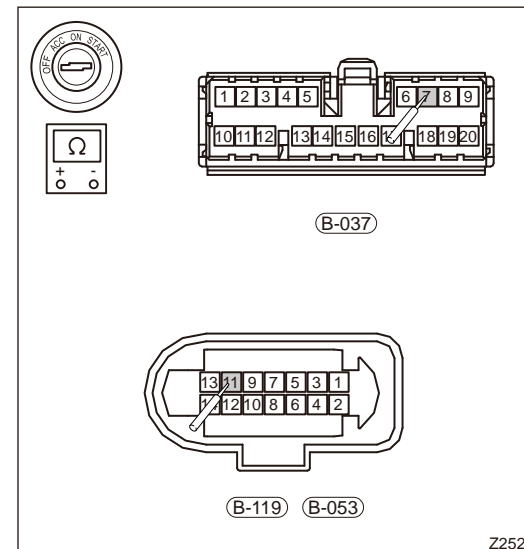
Replace or repair wire harness and position light relay

OK

3 Check front position light feedback

- (a) Using a multimeter, check if feedback circuit of front position light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (11) - B-037 (7)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-119 (11) - B-037 (7)		



Z25260

NG

Repair ground wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

- NG** Replace BCM
- OK** System operates normally

■ Rear fog light fault

DTC	B1028-11	Rear Fog Light Circuit Short to Power Supply
------------	-----------------	---

■ Description

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

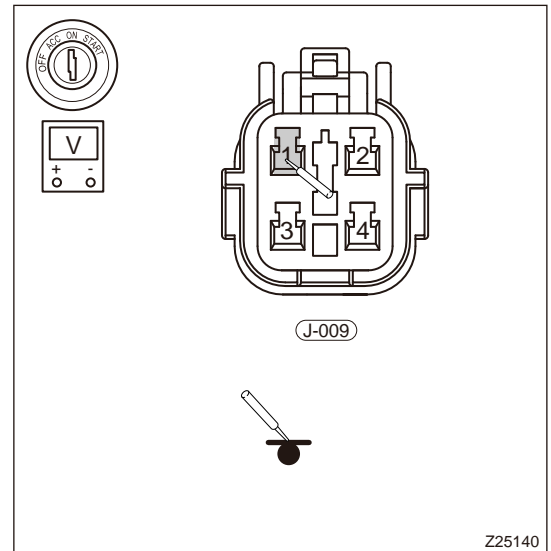
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of rear fog light control circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the rear fog light connector J-009.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON, and turn on rear fog light switch.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of rear fog light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-009 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



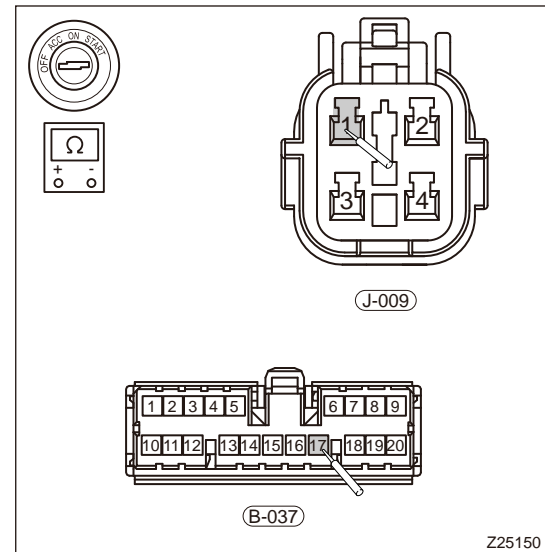
- NG** Check power supply wire harness

OK

2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-037.
- (c) Disconnect the rear fog light connector J-009.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (17) - J-009 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



Z25150

NG

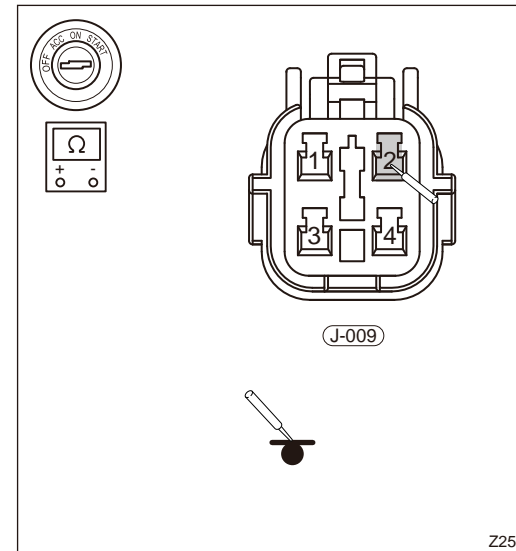
Replace or repair wire harness

OK

3 Check ground circuit of rear fog light

- (a) Using a multimeter, check if ground circuit of rear fog light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-009 (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



Z25160

NG

Replace or repair wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace BCM
OK	System operates normally

■ Daytime running light fault

DTC	B1029-11	Left Daytime Running Light Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B1029-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Left Daytime Running Light Circuit
DTC	B1030-11	Right Daytime Running Light Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B1030-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Right Daytime Running Light Circuit

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

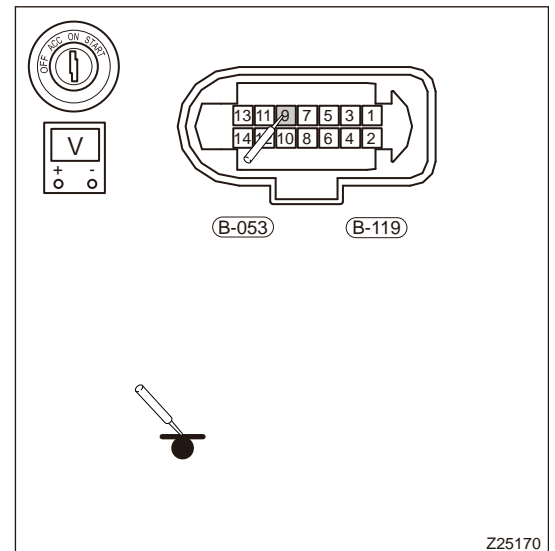
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of daytime running light control circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the left daytime running light connector B-053 and right daytime running light connector B-119.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON and start engine.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of daytime running light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (9) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
B-119 (9) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V



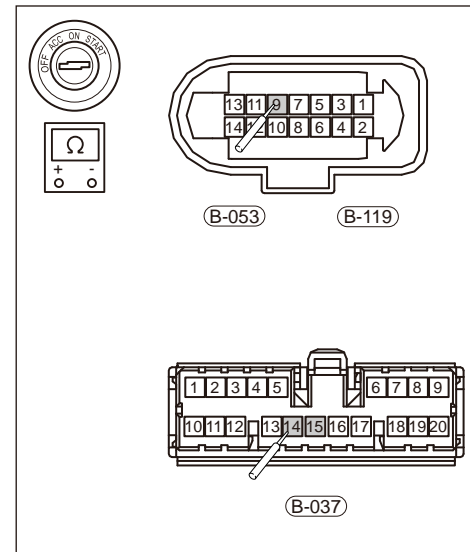
NG	Check power supply wire harness
----	---------------------------------



2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-037.
- (c) Disconnect the left daytime running light connector B-053 and right daytime running light connector B-119.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (9) - B- 037 (14)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-119 (9) - B- 037 (15)		$\leq 1 \Omega$



Z2518

NG

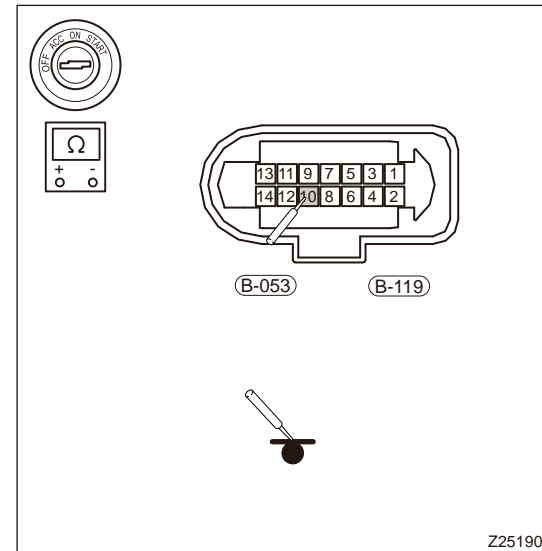
Replace or repair wire harness

OK

3 Check ground circuit of daytime running light

- (a) Using a multimeter, check if ground circuit of daytime running light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (10) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-119 (10) - Body ground		$\leq 1 \Omega$



Z25190

NG

Repair ground wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace BCM
OK	System operates normally

■ Brake light fault

DTC	B1035-11	Brake Light Short to Ground
DTC	B1035-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Brake Light
DTC	B1036-11	High Mounted Stop Light Short to Ground
DTC	B1036-11	Open or Short to Power Supply in High Mounted Stop Light

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

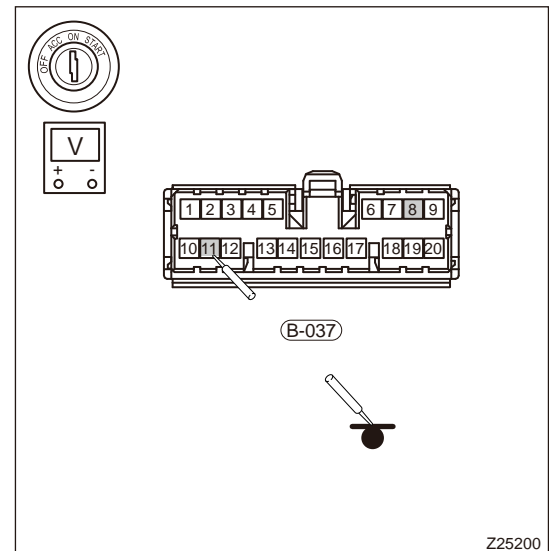
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of brake light control circuit

- (a) Turn ignition switch to ON, and depress brake pedal.
 (b) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of brake light from back of BCM connector B-037 according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (11) - Body ground	Brake pedal depressed	Not less than 12 V
B-037 (8) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V



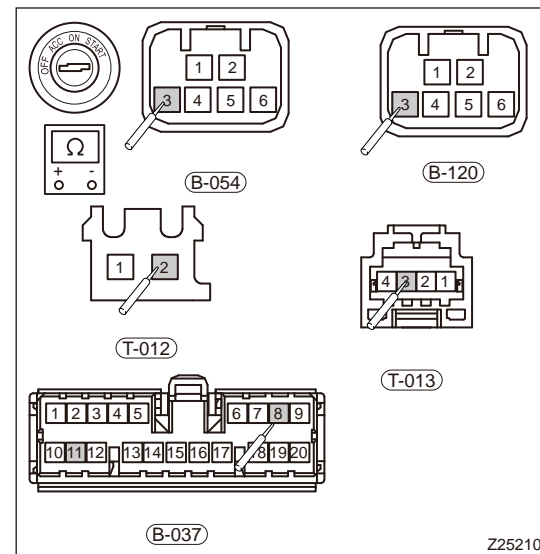
NG	Check BCM module
----	------------------

OK

2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-037.
- (c) Disconnect the brake light connectors B-120, T-012, B-054, T-013 and T-014.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (11) - T-012 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-037 (8) - B-054 (3)		
B-037 (8) - B-120 (3)		
B-037 (8) - T-013 (3)		
B-037 (8) - T-014 (3)		



NG

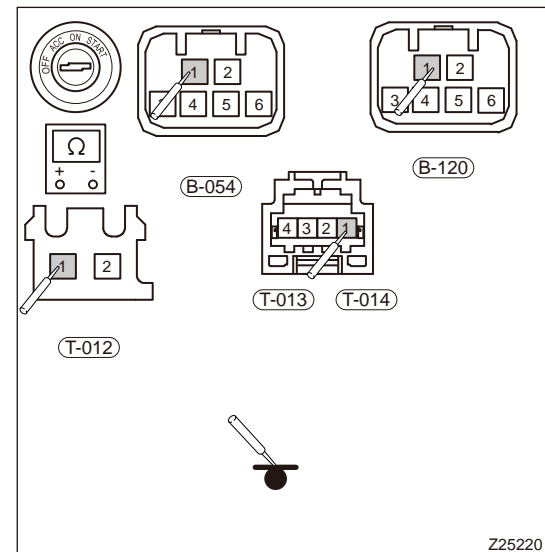
Replace or repair wire harness

OK

3 Check ground circuit of brake light

- (a) Using a multimeter, check if ground circuit of brake light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
T-012 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-054 (1) - Body ground		
B-120 (1) - Body ground		
T-013 (1) - Body ground		
T-014 (1) - Body ground		



NG

Replace or repair wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace BCM
OK	System operates normally

■ Back-up light fault

DTC	B1039-11	Back-up Light Circuit Short to Ground
DTC	B1039-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Back-up Light Circuit

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

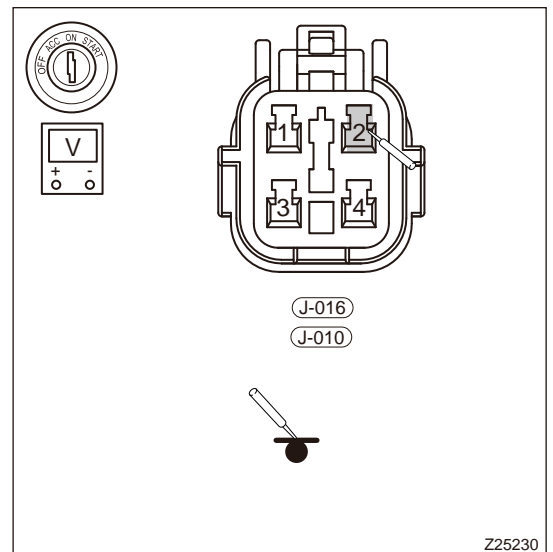
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of back-up light control circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the left back-up light connector J-010 and right back-up light connector J-016.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON, and shift the shift lever to reverse gear.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of back-up light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-010 (2) - Body ground	Brake pedal depressed	Not less than 12 V
J-016 (2) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V



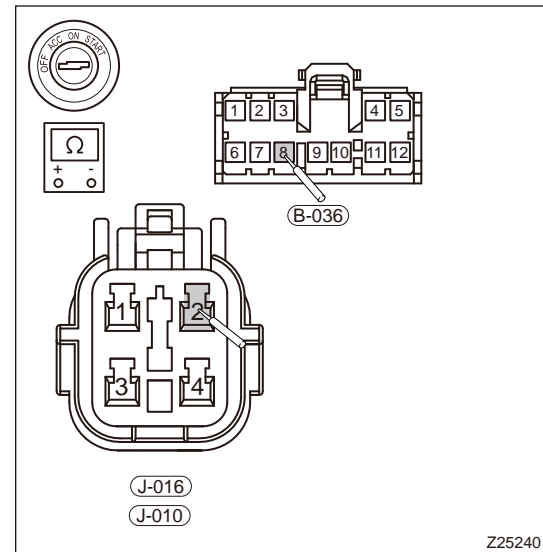
NG	Check power supply wire harness
-----------	--

OK

2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-036.
- (c) Disconnect the left back-up light connector J-010 and right back-up light connector J-016.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-010 (2) - B- 036 (8)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
J-016 (2) - B- 36 (8)		



Z25240

NG

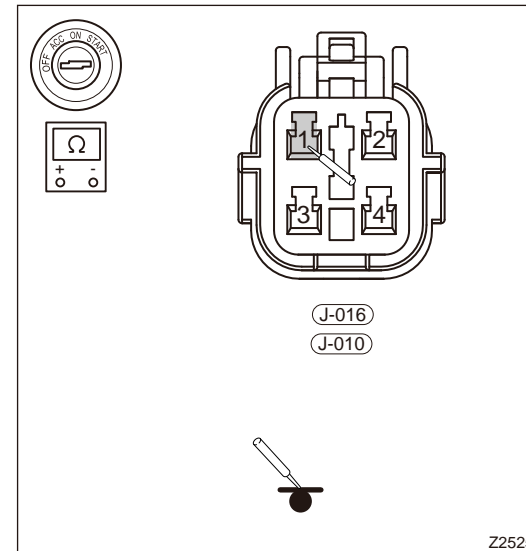
Replace or repair wire harness

OK

3 Check ground circuit of back-up light

- (a) Using a multimeter, check if ground circuit of back-up light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
J-010 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
J-016 (1) - Body ground		



Z25250

NG

Repair ground wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace BCM
OK	System operates normally

■ Front fog light fault

DTC	B1026-11	Short to Ground or Open in Front Fog Light Relay
DTC	B1026-12	Short to Power Supply in Front Fog Light Relay

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

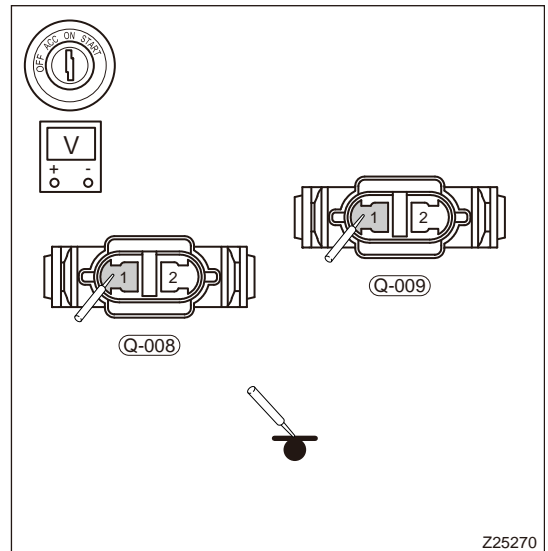
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of front fog light control circuit

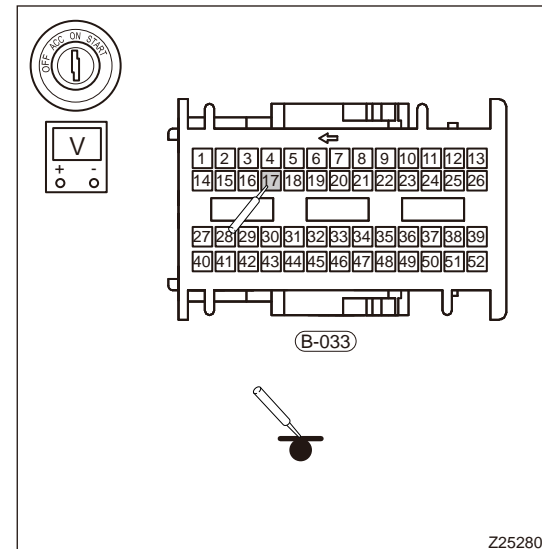
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect front left fog light connector Q-008 and front right fog light connector Q-009.
- (c) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON, and turn on front fog light switch.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of front fog light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
Q-008 (1) - Body ground	Front fog light switch ON	Not less than 12 V
Q-009 (1) - Body ground		Not less than 12 V



(e) Disconnect BCM connector B-033, and check voltage of primary coil for front fog light relay.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-033 (17) - Body ground	Front fog light switch ON	Not less than 12 V



Z25280

NG

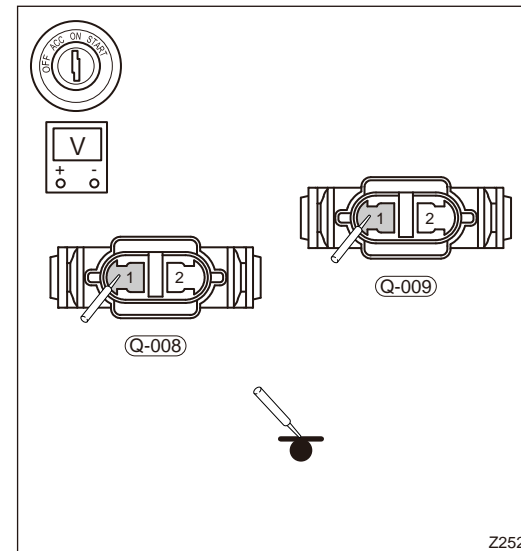
Check power supply wire harness and relay

OK

2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and turn off front fog light switch.
- (b) Disconnect front left fog light connector Q-008 and front right fog light connector Q-009.
- (c) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
Q-008 (1) - Body ground	Front fog light switch OFF	0 V
Q-009 (1) - Body ground		



Z25270

NG

Check for short to power supply in front fog light power supply.

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace BCM
OK	System operates normally

■ Right turn signal light fault

DTC	B1002-11	Right Turn Signal Light Short to Ground
DTC	B1002-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Right Turn Signal Light
DTC	B1040-01	Right Turn Signal Light Feedback Fault

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

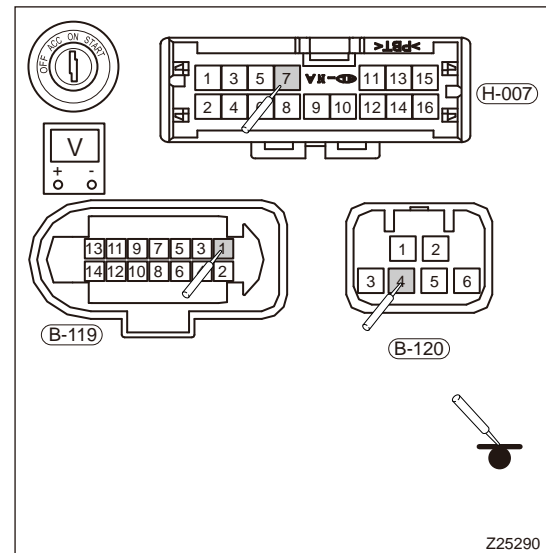
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of right turn signal light control circuit

- First confirm the working state of right turn signal light.
- If only right turn signal light does not turn on, check the output circuit of right turn signal light only.
- If either front right or rear right light does not come on, check node line and turn signal light.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect front right turn signal light connector B-119, right side turn signal light connector H-007 and rear right turn signal light connector B-120.
- Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON, and turn on right turn signal light switch.
- Using a multimeter, check output voltage of each turn signal light according to table below.



Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-119 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Indirect 12 V
B-120 (4) - Body ground		
H-007 (7) - Body ground		

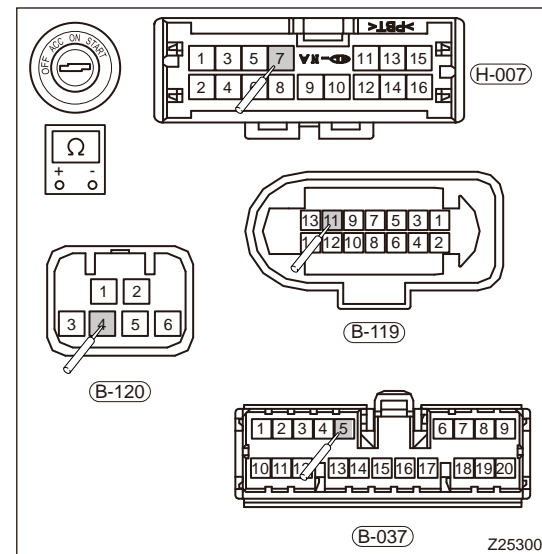
OK	Replace turn signal light
-----------	----------------------------------

NG

2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-033.
- (c) Disconnect front right turn signal light connector B-119, right side turn signal light connector H-007 and rear right turn signal light connector B-120.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (05) - B-119 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-037 (05) - B-120 (4)		
B-037 (05) - H-007 (07)		



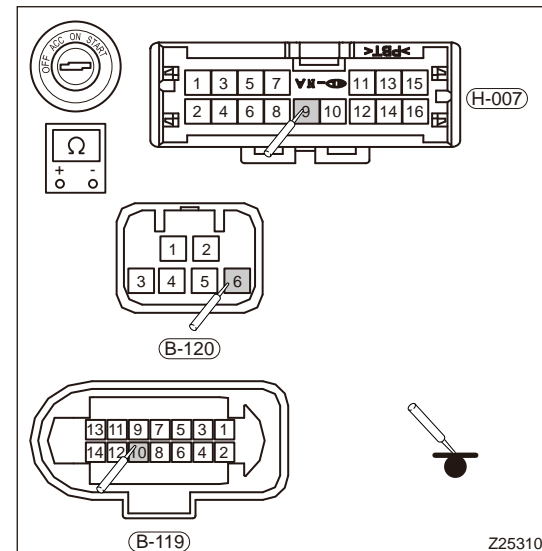
NG Replace or repair wire harness

OK

3 Check ground circuit of turn signal light

- (a) Using a multimeter, check if ground circuit of turn signal light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-119 (10) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-120 (6) - Body ground		
H-007 (9) - Body ground		



NG Repair ground wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

- NG** Replace BCM
- OK** System operates normally

■ Rear view mirror foot light fault

DTC	B1053-11	Rear View Mirror Foot Light Short to Ground
DTC	B1053-13	Open or Short to Power Supply in Rear View Mirror Foot Light

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

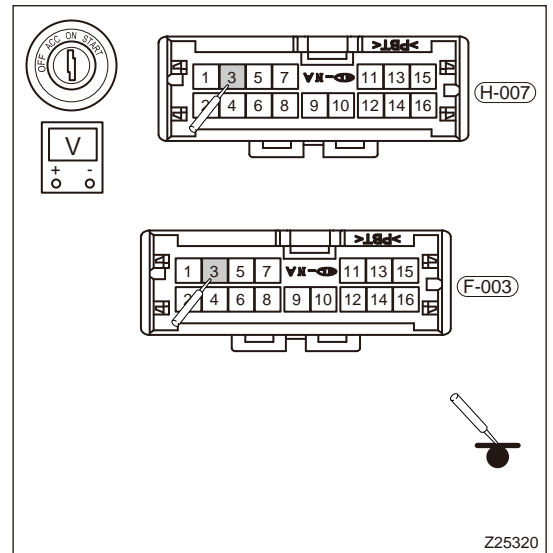
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check output voltage of rear view mirror foot light control circuit

- (a) First confirm the working state of rear view mirror foot light.
- (b) If only right rear view mirror foot light does not turn on, check the output circuit of right rear view mirror foot light only.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect right rear view mirror foot light connector H-007 and left rear view mirror foot light connector F-003.
- (e) Connect the negative battery cable, and unlock the vehicle (foot light will turn on).
- (f) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of each rear view mirror foot light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-007 (3) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
F-003 (3) - Body ground		



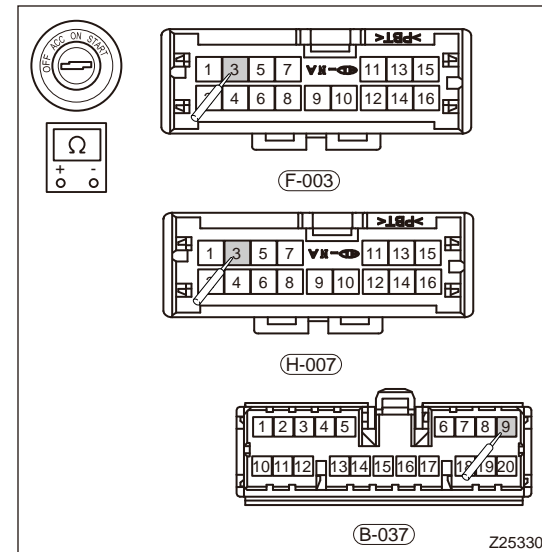
- NG** Check module and power wire harness

OK

2 Check circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-037.
- (c) Disconnect right rear view mirror foot light connector H-007 and left rear view mirror foot light connector F-003.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (09) - H-007 (03)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-037 (09) - F-003 (03)		



NG

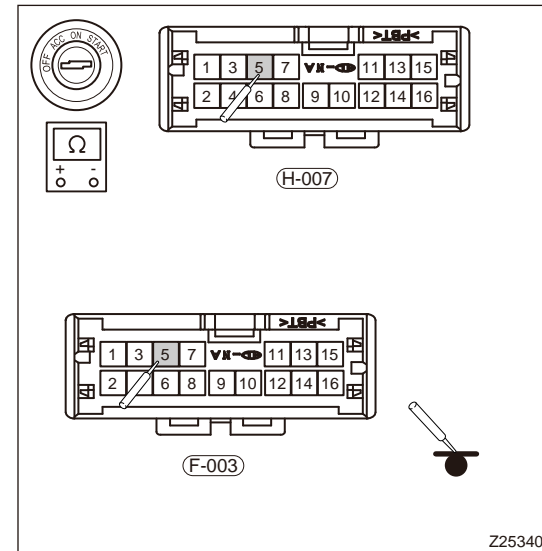
Replace or repair wire harness

OK

3 Check ground circuit of rear view mirror foot light

- (a) Using a multimeter, check if ground circuit of rear view mirror foot light is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
H-007 (5) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
F-003 (5) - Body ground		



NG

Repair ground wire harness

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

- NG Replace BCM
- OK System operates normally

■ Low beam light relay circuit fault

DTC	B1022-11	Short to Ground or Open in Low Beam Light Relay
DTC	B1022-12	Short to Power supply in Low Beam Light Relay Circuit

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuses EF02 (10A) and EF03 (10A) in engine compartment fuse and relay box are normal.

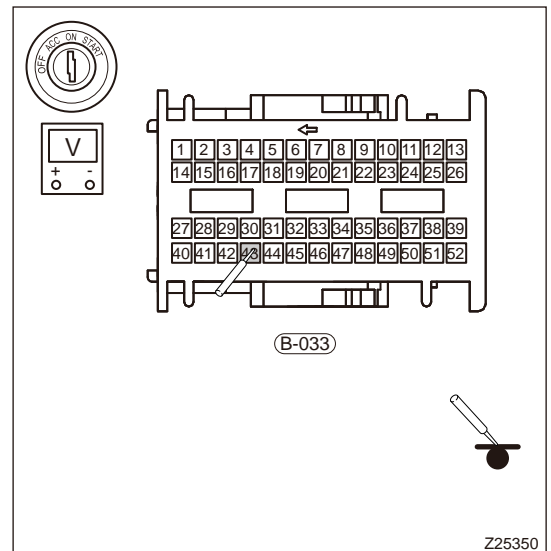
- NG Check and replace fuse



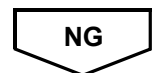
2 Check circuit of primary coil for low beam light relay

- (a) Turn on low beam light switch and check if there is engaging sound from low beam light relay.
- (b) If not, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the BCM connector B-033.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Using a multimeter, check for power supply voltage of primary coil for low beam light relay according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-033 (43) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



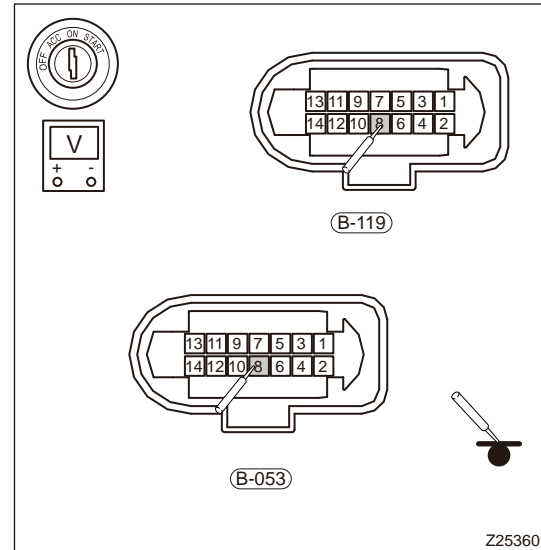
- OK Check module, power supply wire harness and relay



3 Check low beam light relay output power supply circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Connect the body controller connector B-033.
- (c) Disconnect left headlight assembly connector B-053 and right headlight connector B-119.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and turn on low beam light switch.
- (e) Using a digital multimeter, check if low beam light power supply if normal with a 21W test light according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (8) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	≤ 1 Ω
B-119 (8) - Body ground		



NG Replace or repair wire harness and relay

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG Replace BCM

OK System operates normally

■ High beam light relay circuit fault

DTC	B1023-11	Short to Ground or Open in High Beam Light Relay Circuit
DTC	B1023-12	Short to Power supply in High Beam Light Relay Circuit

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check power supply fuse

- (a) Check if fuse EF06 (5A) in engine compartment fuse and relay box is normal.

NG

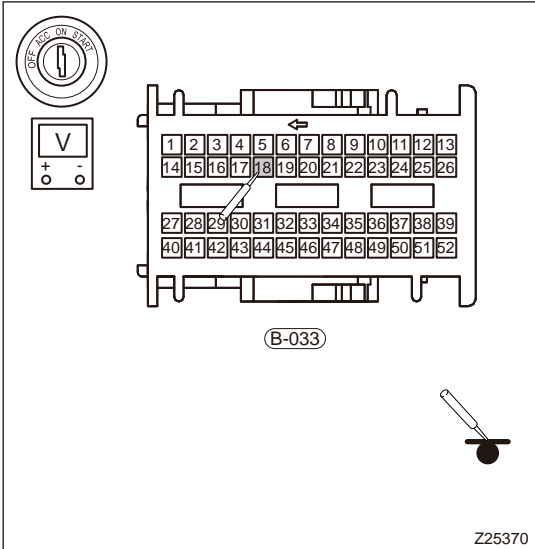
Check and replace fuse

OK

2 Check circuit of primary coil for low beam light relay

- (a) Turn on low beam light switch and check if there is engaging sound from low beam light relay.
- (b) If not, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the BCM connector B-033.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable, and turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Using a multimeter, check for power supply voltage of primary coil for low beam light relay according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-033 (18) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



NG

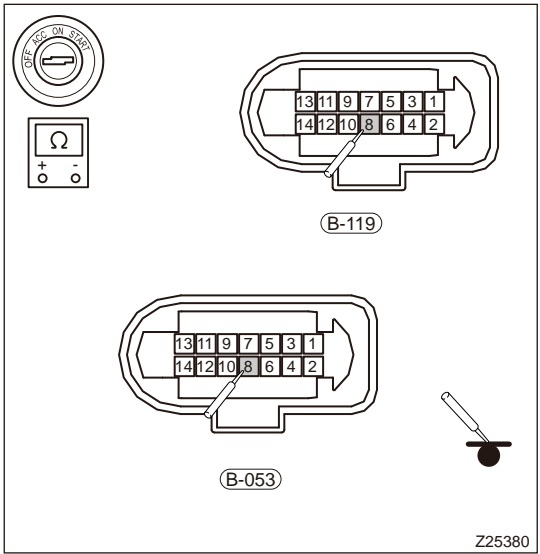
Check module, power supply wire harness and relay

OK

3 Check low beam light relay output power supply circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Connect the body controller connector B-033.
- (c) Disconnect left headlight assembly connector B-053 and right headlight connector B-119.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and turn on high beam light switch.
- (e) Using a digital multimeter, check if low beam light power supply if normal with a 21W test light according to the table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-053 (8) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-119 (8) - Body ground		



NG

Replace or repair wire harness and relay

OK

4	Reconfirm DTCs
----------	-----------------------

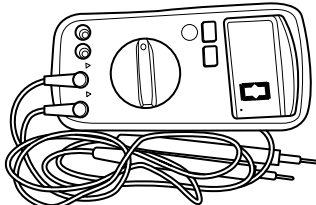
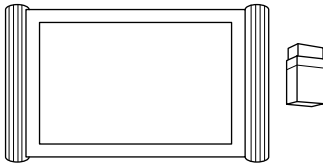
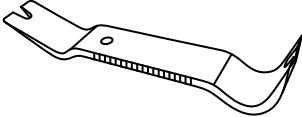
- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace BCM
OK	System operates normally

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

■ General Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;">S00002</p>
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;">S00001</p>
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right; margin-top: 10px;">S00020</p>

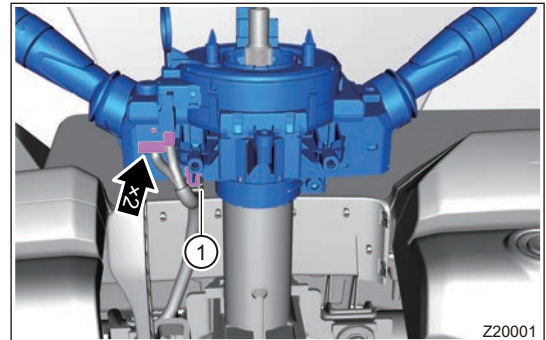
4.2 Replacement of Steering Column Module

■ Removal

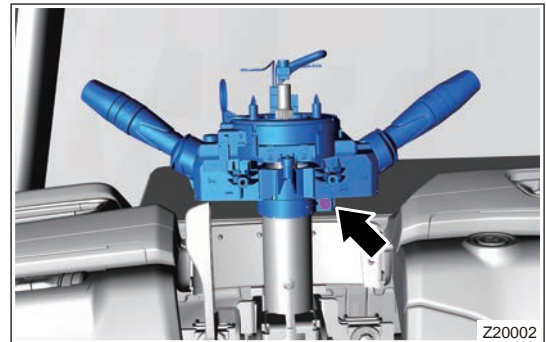
Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing steering column module.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing steering column module. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing steering column module.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable for more than 90 seconds, when removing airbag.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the combination switch upper cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the combination switch lower cover assembly.
- (5) Remove the driver airbag.
- (6) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (7) Disconnect 2 connectors from steering column module, and detach wire harness clip (1).



- (8) Remove 1 fixing screw from steering column module.



■ Installation

Caution

- Always operate carefully to prevent components from being damaged, when installing steering column module.
- Install connector in place when installing steering column module.
- Check switch for proper operation after installing steering column module.

- (1) Install 1 fixing screw to steering column module.
- (2) Install the steering column module connector.
- (3) Install the combination switch lower cover assembly.
- (4) Install the steering wheel assembly.

- (5) Install the driver airbag.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

4.3 Replacement of Headlight Assembly

■ Removal

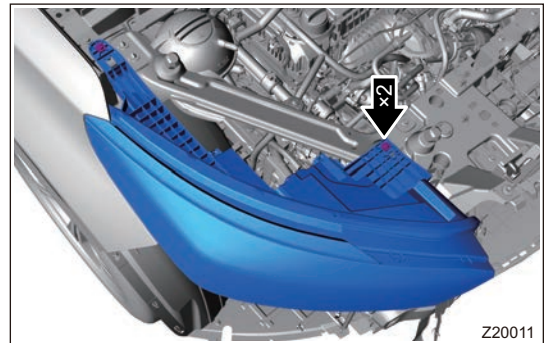
Hint

- Use same procedures for right headlight assembly and left headlight assembly.
- Removal and installation procedures listed below are for right headlight assembly.

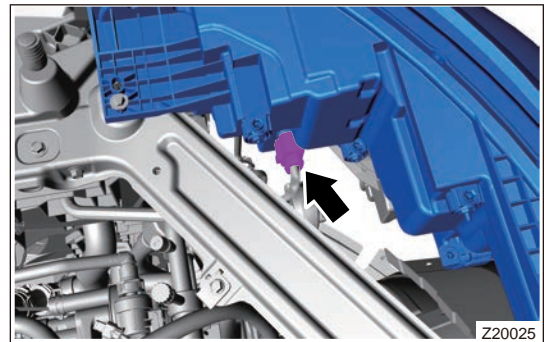
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing headlight assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing headlight assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove 2 fixing bolts from headlight.



- (5) Disconnect headlight assembly wire harness connector and remove headlight assembly.



■ Installation

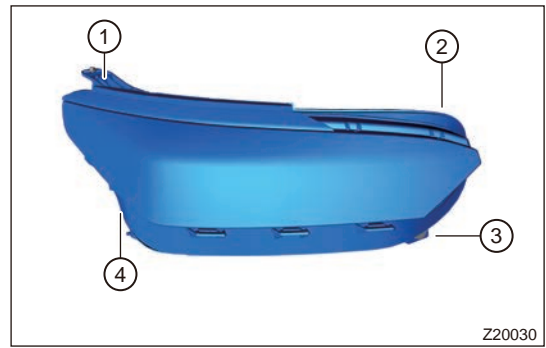
Caution

- When installing headlight assembly, make sure headlight assembly is well fitted with hood, front wing and front bumper. Adjust it as necessary.
- Make sure that headlight assembly operates properly after installing.

- (1) Install the left headlight assembly wire harness connector.

- (2) Tighten fixing bolts in order shown in illustration.

Tightening torque: 3.5 ± 0.5 N•m



- (3) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

■ Adjustment

Preparations:

- (1) Tire inflation pressure comes up to standard.
- (2) Vehicle is unloaded (besides spare tire and tool kit, it is generally specified to include the weight of driver).
- (3) Park vehicle on a level ground or in workplace.
- (4) Keep lens surface of headlight free from dirt.
- (5) Check if power supply operates normally and bulbs are installed correctly.
- (6) Headlight leveling can be adjusted according to the number of passengers and loading condition of vehicle. It can be adjusted by adjustment switch, and there are 4 adjustment bands to select: 0, 1, 2, 3.

Adjust the light level according to table below:

Occupant and Luggage Loading Condition		Knob Position
Occupant	Luggage Loading	
Driver	None	0
Driver + Front Passenger	None	1
Full Occupied	None	2
Full Occupied	Full-loaded Luggage	3
Driver	Full-loaded Luggage	2

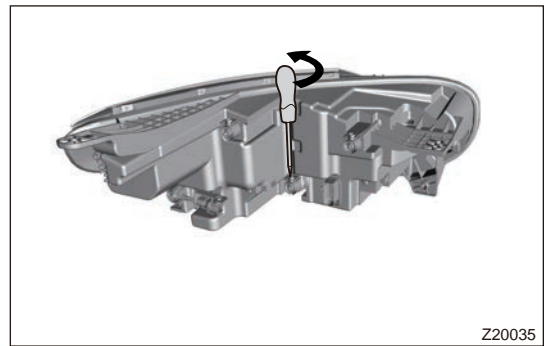
Warning

Whether headlight leveling is correct or not will directly affects driving safety. Be sure to adjust the beam with special tool according to related specification.

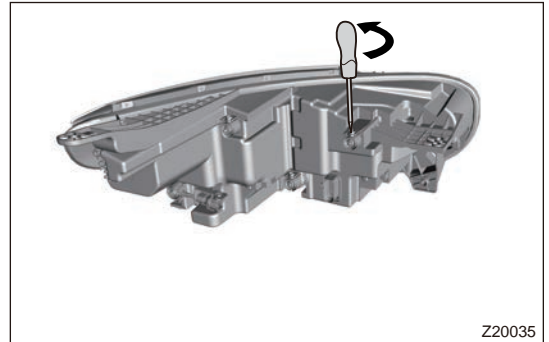
Manual headlight leveling: The headlight leveling can be changed by adjusting the following areas manually as shown in illustration. Take left headlight beam adjustment as an example.

- (1) High beam light left/right adjustment:

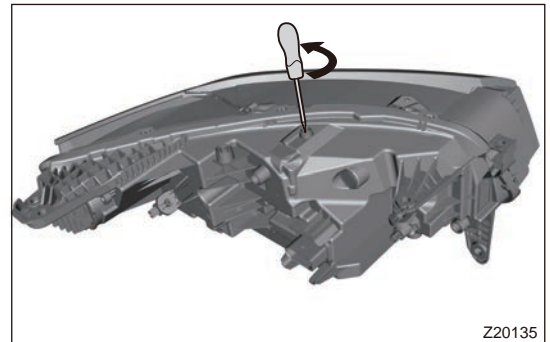
- 1) When rotating inner hexagon clockwise: Beam moves right;
- 2) When rotating inner hexagon counterclockwise: Beam moves left;



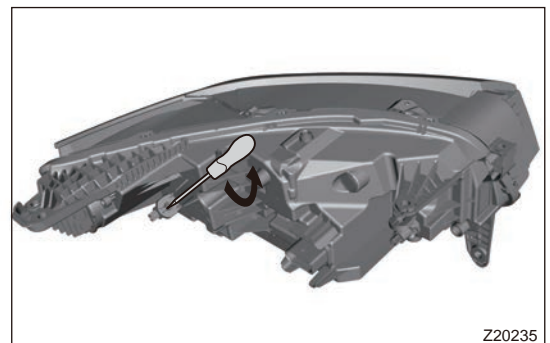
- (2) High beam light up/down adjustment:
- 1) When rotating inner hexagon clockwise: Beam moves down;
 - 2) When rotating inner hexagon counterclockwise: Beam moves up;



- (3) Low beam light left/right adjustment:
- 1) When rotating inner hexagon clockwise: Beam moves down;
 - 2) When rotating inner hexagon counterclockwise: Beam moves left;



- (4) Low beam light left/right adjustment:
- 1) When rotating inner hexagon clockwise: Beam moves right;
 - 2) When rotating inner hexagon counterclockwise: Beam moves left;



The adjustment direction of left and right headlight beams are shown in following table:

Light Adjustment Direction	Rotation Direction for Screwdriver	Headlight Adjustment Direction	
		Left Headlight	Right Headlight
Left-and-right direction	Clockwise	Right	Left

Light Adjustment Direction	Rotation Direction for Screwdriver	Headlight Adjustment Direction	
		Left Headlight	Right Headlight
	Counterclockwise	Left	Right
Up-and-down direction	Clockwise	Up	Up
	Counterclockwise	Down	Down

Low/High Beam Detection Equipment Parameter Table:

Equipment Name	Basis Parameter Required	M31T Headlight	Note
Headlight Tester	Base center height of headlight low beam	919 mm	Confirm followings when adjusting light: (1) Headlight leveling switch is in "0" position; (2) Distance between light detection screen and lampwick is 10 m; (3) Interference between lens and trim ring or even falling of dimming mechanism due to improper dimming method is not allowed; (4) After adjusting low beam up and down, high beam is not adjusted up and down, left and right low and high beams can be adjusted separately.
	Base center distance between both low beam lights	1515 mm	
	Up and down value of low beam	Cutoff line corner height: 789 mm to 829 mm	
	Left and right value of low beam	Offset for left and right low beam: Left \leq 150 mm, right \leq 300 mm	
	Base center height of headlight high beam	906 mm	
	Base center distance between both high beam lights	1206 mm	
	Up and down value of high beam	Height is 759 to 859 mm (- After adjusting low beam up and down, high beam is not adjusted up and down)	
	Left and right value of high beam	Offset for left high beam: Left \leq 150 mm, right \leq 300 mm Offset for right high beam: Left \leq 300 mm, right \leq 300 mm	
	High beam light intensity detection	Light intensity is higher than 18000 cd	

Low beam detection on screen with a distance of 10 m should be performed according to GB7258 requirements:

Configuration	Function	Up and Down Values	Left Offset Values (LHD)	Right Offset Values (LHD)
LED headlight	Left low beam light	669~829 mm	No more than 170 mm	No more than 350 mm
	Right low beam light	669~829 mm	No more than 170 mm	No more than 350 mm

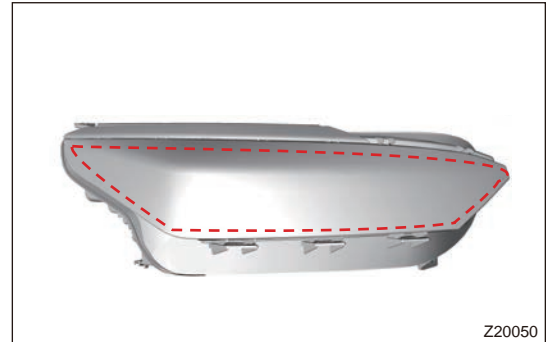
■ Headlight Fogging Judgment Area:

Hint:

- Inside the dashed box are functional areas.
- Outside the dashed box are non-functional areas.

(1) Fogging judgment for outside light after raining:

- If fogging area in functional area is less than 1/3 of total area of the region, or fogging area in non-functional area is more than 1/3 of the total area of the region, vehicle is idling (ambient temperature is not lower than 23 °C), and all functions are on for 15 minutes; If fog in the functional area dissipates and fog in the non-functional area is less than 1/3 of the total area of the region, it is judged to be qualified; if not, it is unqualified.



(2) Water entering and fogging judgment:

- Fogging: Inner surface of light cover, less than one third of the functional area or the non-functional area is coated with a sheet of mist or condensation, there is no water drops and there is no sagging when tapping lightly, all others symptoms indicate that there is a water inflowing.

Hint

- **Mist is a thin layer of opaque water vapor formed on the inner surface of light cover.**
- **Condensation is water drop formed on the inner surface of light cover.**

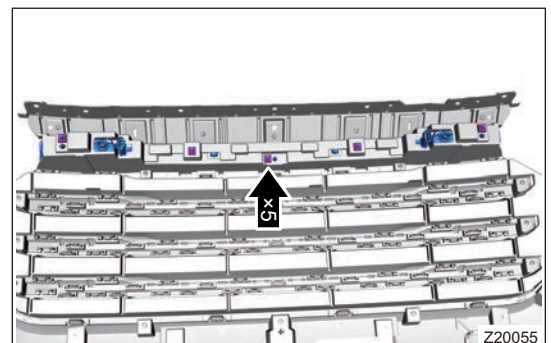
4.4 Replacement of Front Position Light

■ Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front position light.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front position light.**

- (1) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (2) Remove the front bumper grille upper strip.
- (3) Remove 5 fixing screws between front position light and radiator grille housing.



- (4) Remove front position light from grille.

■ Installation

Caution

Make sure that front position light functions properly after installing.

- (1) Install front position light to grille.

- (2) Install 5 fixing screws between front position light and radiator grille housing.

Tightening torque: 3.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Install the front bumper grille upper strip.
- (4) Install the front bumper.

4.5 Replacement of Rear Combination Light (Body Part)

■ Removal

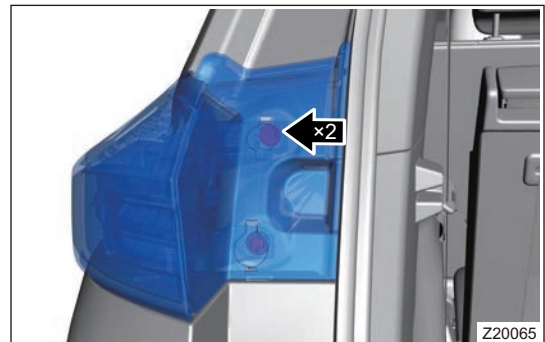
Hint:

Use same procedures for right and left headlight assembly. Removal procedures listed below are for left side.

Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear combination light (body part).**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear combination light (body part).**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off 2 fixing bolt covers of rear left combination light, remove 2 fixing bolts from rear left combination light, disconnect rear left combination light connector, and remove rear left combination light.



■ Installation

Caution

- **Make sure that rear combination light (body part) functions properly after installing.**
- **When pushing rear combination light assembly (body part) toward front of vehicle, note that the positioning pin on combination light is aligned with the corresponding hole in sheet metal.**

- (1) Connect the rear left combination light wire harness connector.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts to rear left combination light assembly.

Tightening torque: 2.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Install the rear left combination light bolt cover.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

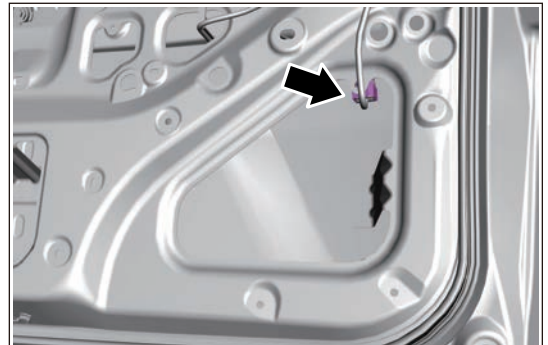
4.6 Replacement of Rear Combination Light Assembly (Back Door Part)

■ Removal

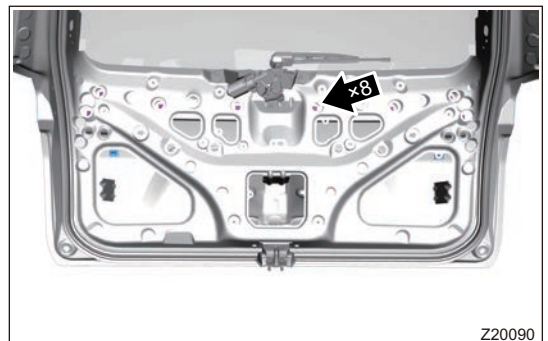
Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear combination light assembly (back door part).
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear combination light assembly (back door part).

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the back door protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect connectors on both sides of rear combination light assembly.



- (5) Remove 8 fixing nuts from rear combination light assembly in order shown in illustration.



- (6) Remove the rear combination light assembly (back door part).

■ Installation

Caution

Make sure that rear combination light assembly (back door part) functions properly after installing.

- (1) Push rear combination light assembly (back door part) into corresponding groove on back door.

- (2) Install 8 fixing nuts to rear combination light assembly.

Tightening torque: $3.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (3) Install connectors on both sides of rear combination light assembly.
- (4) Install the back door protector assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

■ Rear Combination Light Fogging Judgment Area

Hint:

- Inside the dashed box are functional areas.
- Outside the dashed box are non-functional areas.

- (1) Fogging judgment for outside light after raining:
 - Vehicle is idling (ambient temperature is not lower than 23 °C), all functions are on for 15 minutes, then fog in the functional area dissipates, or if fog in the functional area dissipates or fog in the non-functional area is less than 1/3 of the total area of the region, it is judged to be qualified; if not, it is unqualified.
- (2) Water entering and fogging judgment:
 - Fogging: Inner surface of light cover, less than one third of the functional area or the non-functional area is coated with a sheet of mist or condensation, there is no water drops and there is no sagging when tapping lightly, all others symptoms indicate that there is a water inflowing.



Z20950

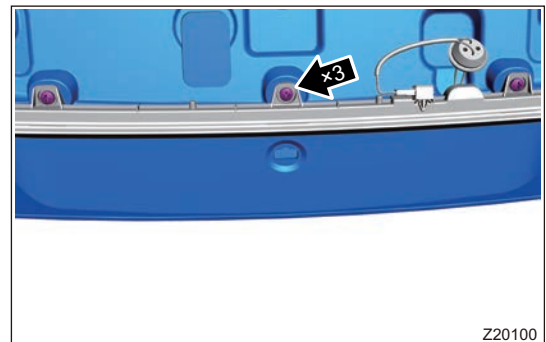
Hint

- **Mist is a thin layer of opaque water vapor formed on the inner surface of light cover.**
- **Condensation is water drop formed on the inner surface of light cover.**

4.7 Replacement of High Mounted Stop Light Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear spoiler assembly.
- (4) Remove 3 fixing screws from high mounted stop light.



Z20100

- (5) Remove the high mounted stop light assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

Make sure that high mounted stop light assembly functions properly after installing.

- (1) Install 4 fixing nuts to high mounted stop light.

Tightening torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (2) Install the rear spoiler assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

4.8 Replacement of License Plate Light Assembly

■ Removal

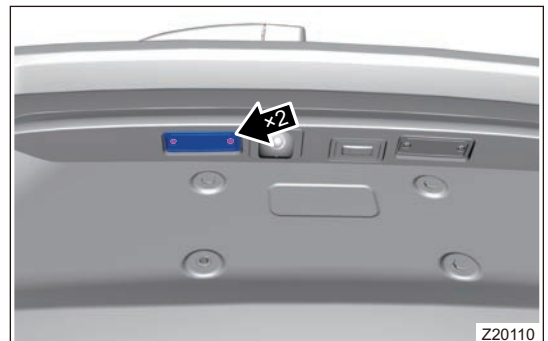
Hint

- Operation steps of right license plate light are same as that of left license plate light.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

Caution

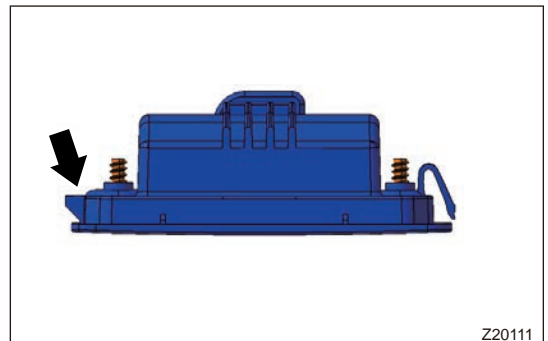
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing license plate light assembly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing license plate light assembly.

- (1) Open the back door.
- (2) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (3) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (4) Removal 2 fixing screws (if equipped) from left license plate light.



Z20110

- (5) Push the license plate light to the right (in +Y direction) until the left clip is exposed, push out license plate light downward, disconnect the connector and remove left license plate light assembly.



Z20111

■ Installation

Caution

Make sure that license plate light assembly functions properly after installing.

- (1) Connect left license plate light connector. When installing, clip the right side into protector first and then push the left side.

- (2) Install 2 fixing screws (if equipped) to left license plate light.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

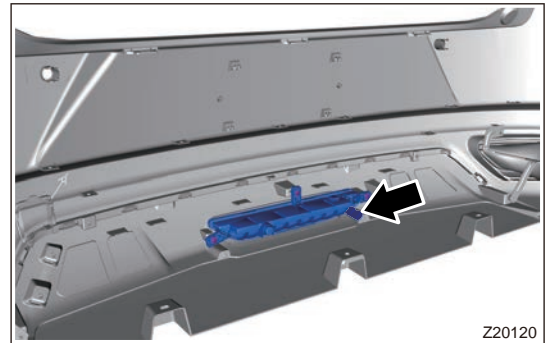
4.9 Replacement of Rear Fog Light Assembly

■ Removal

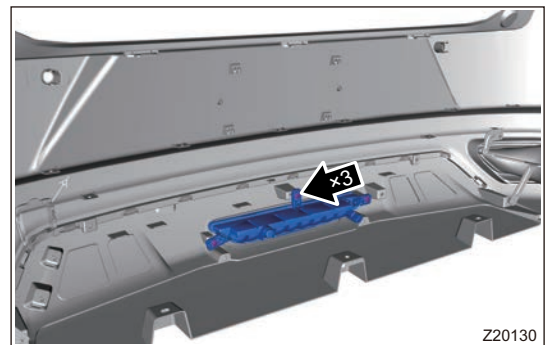
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear fog light assembly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear fog light assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear bumper assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the rear fog light assembly connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing screws from rear fog light assembly.



- (6) Remove rear fog light assembly from rear bumper assembly.

■ Installation

Caution

Make sure that rear fog light assembly functions properly after installing.

- (1) Set rear fog light assembly to a proper position on rear bumper, and install 3 fixing screws to rear fog light assembly.

Tightening torque: 1.5 ± 0.5 N·m

- (2) Connect the rear fog light assembly connector.
- (3) Install the rear bumper assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

BODY ELECTRICAL

45.1	INTERIOR LIGHTING SYSTEM	1760
1	Warnings and Precautions	1760
1.1	Precautions.....	1760
2	SYSTEM OVERVIEW	1760
2.1	System Description.....	1760
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1761
3	DIAGNOSIS & TEST	1762
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1762
3.2	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1762
3.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1763
3.4	Diagnostic Help.....	1763
3.5	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.....	1764
3.6	Ground Inspection	1764
3.7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1764
3.8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1765
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1771
4.1	Tools	1771
4.2	Replacement of Front Dome Light Assembly	1771
4.3	Replacement of Rear Left Interior Dome Light Assembly	1773
4.4	Replacement of Rear Dome Light Assembly	1773
4.5	Replacement of Front Left Door Ambient Light	1774
4.6	Replacement of Anti-theft Indicator.....	1774
4.7	Replacement of Rear Door Opening Warning Light.....	1775
4.8	Replacement of Instrument Panel Ambient Light	1776
4.9	Replacement of Luggage Compartment Light.....	1777

45.1 INTERIOR LIGHTING SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

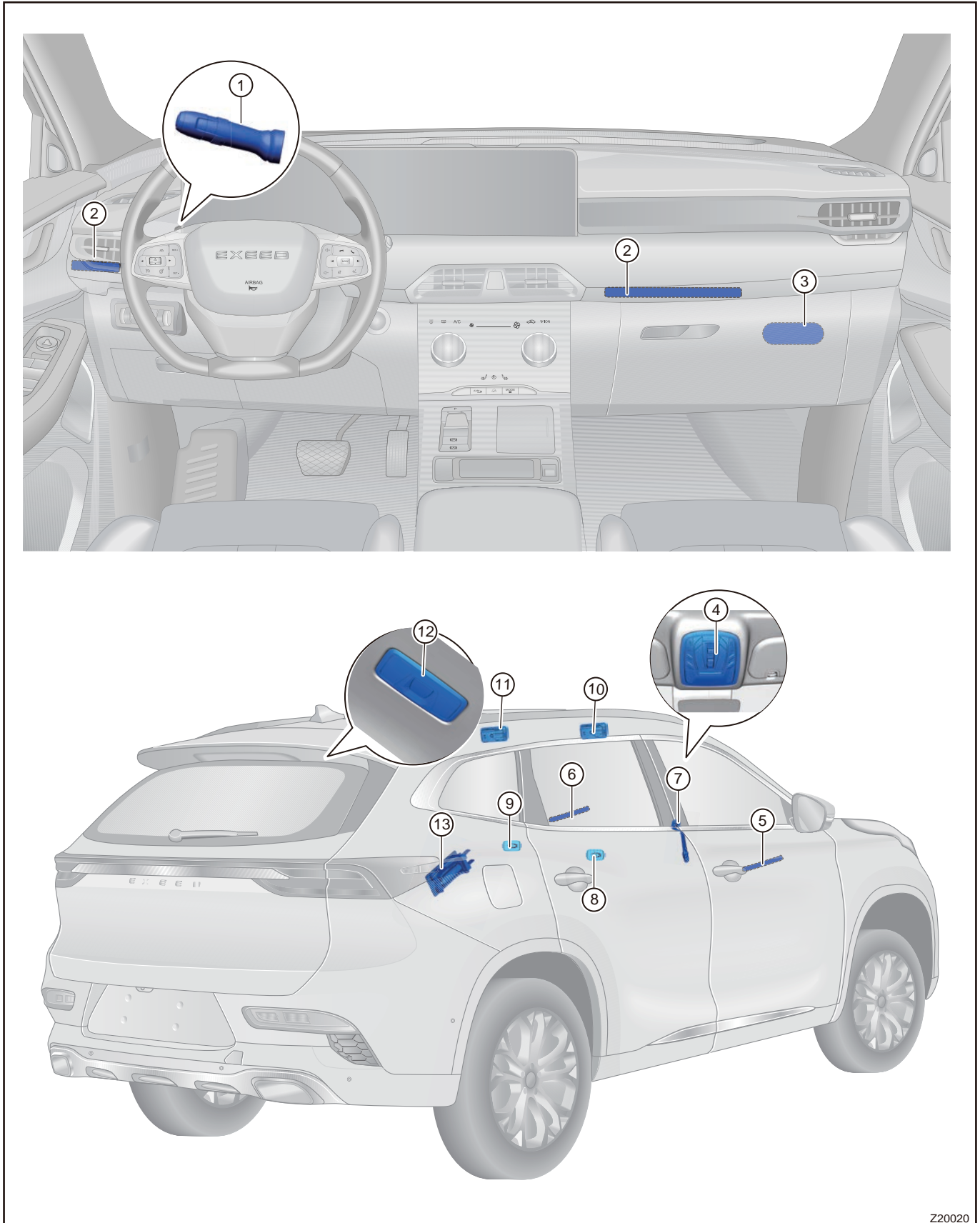
- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing interior lighting appliance.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied when removing interior lighting appliance. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing interior lighting appliance.

2 SYSTEM OVERVIEW

2.1 System Description

Interior lighting system on this model consists of vehicle interior lighting device and light signal device, which are used for normal operation of vehicle and ensures safety when driving at night. Interior lighting system includes front and rear interior dome lights and ambient light.

2.2 System Components Diagram




Z20020

1	Combination Switch	2	Instrument Panel Ambient Light
3	Glove Box Light	4	Front Dome Light
5	Front Right Door Ambient Light	6	Front Left Door Ambient Light
7	Anti-theft Indicator	8	Rear Right Door Opening Warning Light
9	Rear Left Door Opening Warning Light	10	Rear Right Interior Dome Light Assembly
11	Rear Left Interior Dome Light Assembly	12	Rear Interior Dome Light Assembly
13	Luggage Compartment Light		

3 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

 Caution
Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Current Status	Possible Cause
Interior dome light does not operate	Wire harness or connector
	Dome light
	BCM
Ambient light does not come on	Wire harness or connector
	Combination switch
	Ambient light
	BCM
Vanity mirror light does not come on	Wire harness or connector
	Vanity mirror
	Vanity mirror light
	BCM
Glove box light does not come on	Wire harness or connector
	Glove box
	Glove box light
	BCM
Luggage compartment light does not come on	Wire harness or connector
	Back door lock
	Luggage compartment light
	BCM

3.2 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the interior lighting system.

1 Vehicle brought to workshop

Next

2 Check battery voltage

Check if battery voltage is normal.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

NG

Replace battery

OK

3 Customer problem analysis

Next

4 Read DTCs

No DTC

Customer problem analysis

Next

5 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End

3.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- (3) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- (4) Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the blind spot detection system.
- (5) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK and wait for a few seconds.
- (6) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select read DTC.
- (7) If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction. Go to inspection procedure - Step 1.
- (8) If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

3.4 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 PAD (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.5 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.6 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B102411	Blue Ambient Light Short to Ground	Output current is more than 4 A (Time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, back-up light will output as long as operating conditions of back-up light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check ambient light • Check BCM
B102711	Red Ambient Light Short to Ground			
B102413	Open in Blue Ambient Light			
B102713	Open in Red Ambient Light	Output current is less than 0.5 A (The error is within a range of 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, back-up light will output as long as operating conditions of back-up light are met.)		
B102A11	Interior Light Power Supply Short to Ground	/	Wire harness or load fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector • Check load • Check BCM
B104211	Background Light Circuit Short to Ground			

3.8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ Ambient light fault

DTC	B102411	Blue Ambient Light Short to Ground
DTC	B102413	Open in Blue Ambient Light
DTC	B102711	Red Ambient Light Short to Ground
DTC	B102713	Open in Red Ambient Light

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

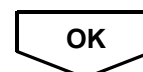
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check fuse
----------	-------------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check for continuity of fuse in instrument panel fuse with a digital multimeter.

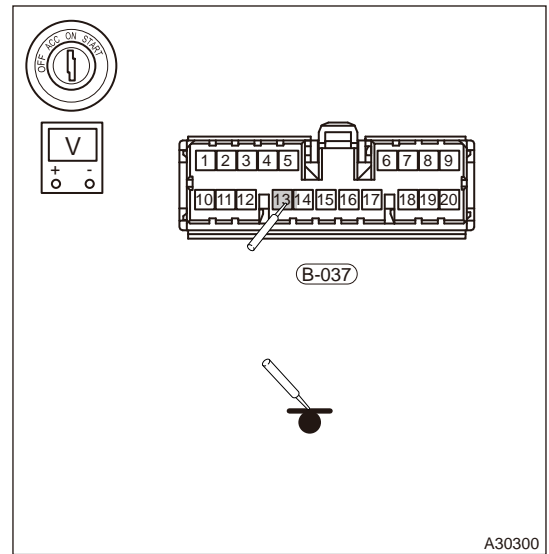
NG	Replace fuse
-----------	---------------------



2	Check ambient light power supply wire harness
----------	--

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the interior wire harness connector B-037.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between interior wire harness connector B-037 and ground, and detect it with a 21 W test lamp according to table below.

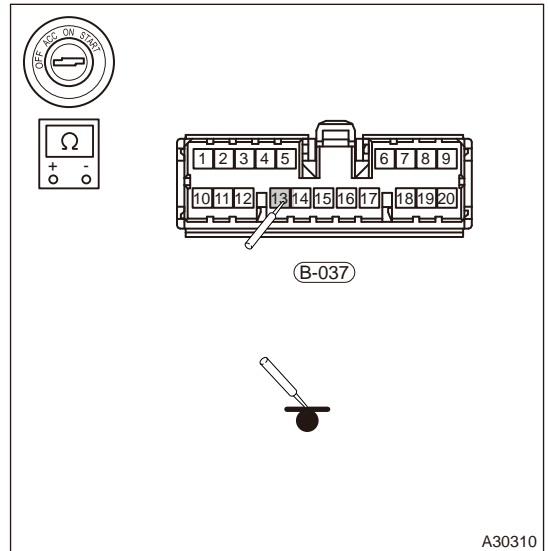
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (13) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



A30300

- (g) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance between interior wire harness connector B-037 and ground according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (13) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



A30310

NG Repair or replace related wire harness

OK

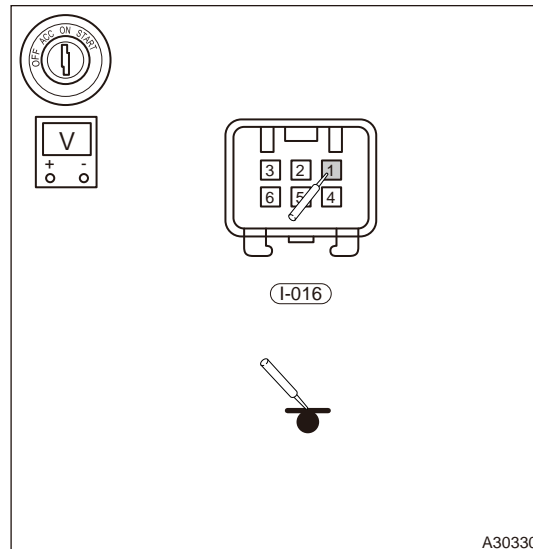
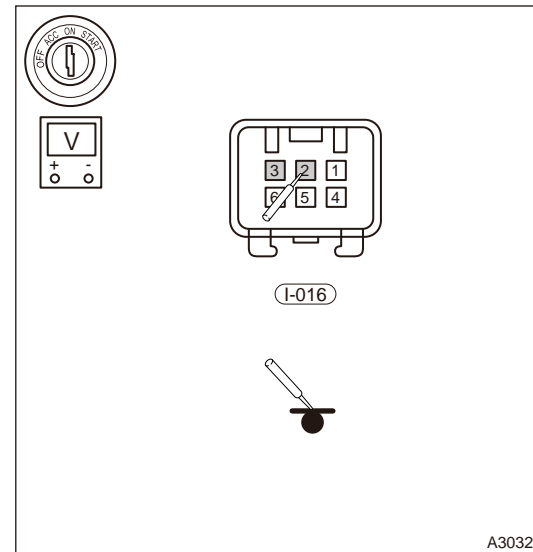
3 Check dual color ambient light output control circuit

- (a) First, confirm the operating status of left turn signal light.
- (b) If only a certain ambient light is not on, check the output circuit of the ambient light only. Take the instrument panel left dual color ambient light as an example.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect the driver side instrument panel ambient light connector I-016.
- (e) Connect the negative battery cable, turn ignition switch to ON, and turn on position light switch.
- (f) Using a multimeter, check output voltage of instrument panel left dual color ambient light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-016 (3) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Indirect 12 V
I-016 (2) - Body ground		

- (g) Using a multimeter, check ground of instrument panel left dual color ambient light according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
I-016 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK

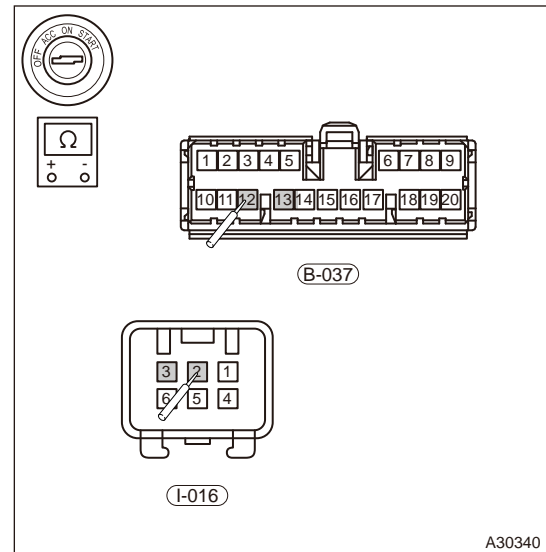
Replace instrument panel left dual color ambient light

NG

4	Check circuit
---	---------------

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the body controller connector B-037.
- (c) Disconnect the instrument panel left dual color ambient light connector I-016.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, check for normal continuity between connector terminals according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (13) - I-016 (3)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-037 (12) - I-016 (2)		



NG Replace or repair wire harness

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG Replace BCM

OK System is normal

■ Interior light fault

DTC	B102A11	Interior Light Power Supply Short to Ground
-----	---------	---

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

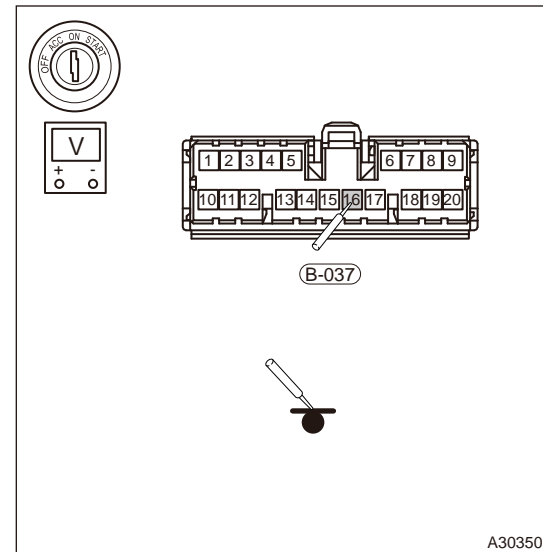
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check power supply wire harness of interior light

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the interior wire harness connector B-037.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between interior wire harness connector B-037 and ground, and detect it with a 21 W test lamp according to table below.

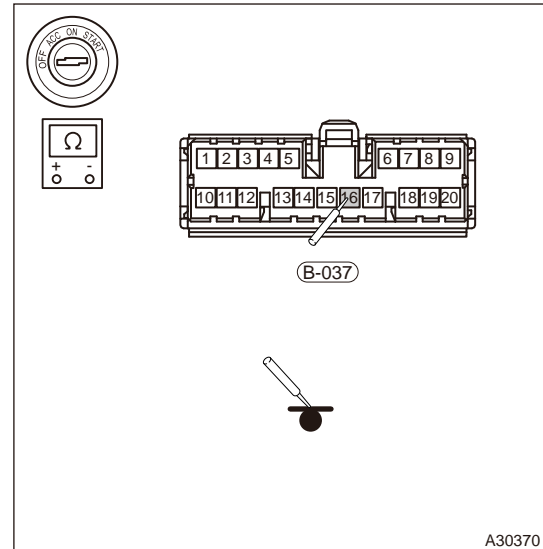
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (16) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



A30350

- (g) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance between interior wire harness connector B-037 and ground according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (16) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



A30370

NG Repair or replace related wire harness

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG Replace BCM

OK System operates normally

■ Background light fault

DTC	B104211	Background Light Circuit Short to Ground
-----	---------	--

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

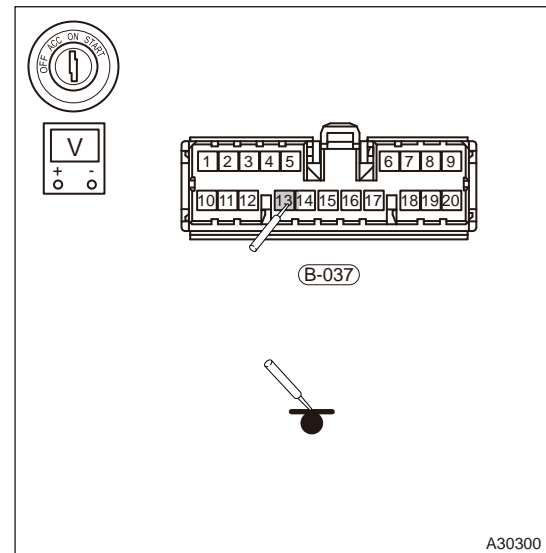
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check power supply wire harness of interior light

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the interior wire harness connector B-037.
- (d) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (f) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between interior wire harness connector B-037 and ground, and detect it with a 21 W test lamp according to table below.

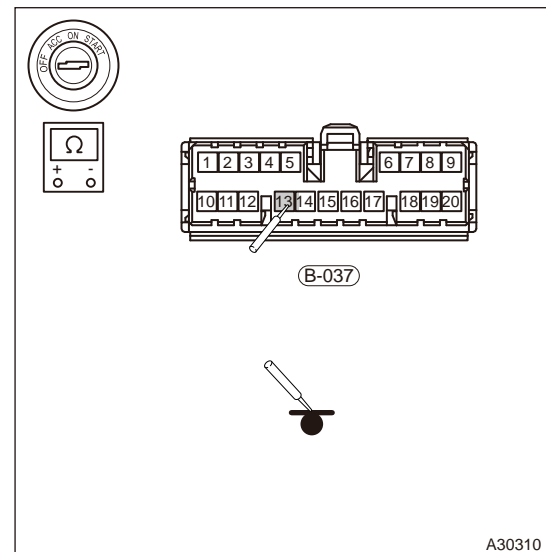
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (13) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V



A30300

- (g) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance between interior wire harness connector B-037 and ground according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-037 (13) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



A30310

NG Repair or replace related wire harness

OK

2 Reconfirm DTCs

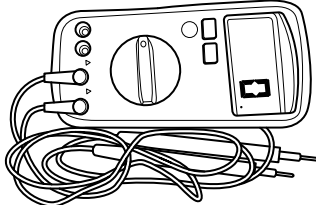
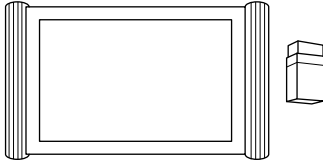
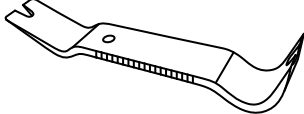
- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Start the engine.
- (d) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG	Replace BCM
OK	System operates normally

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

■ General Tools

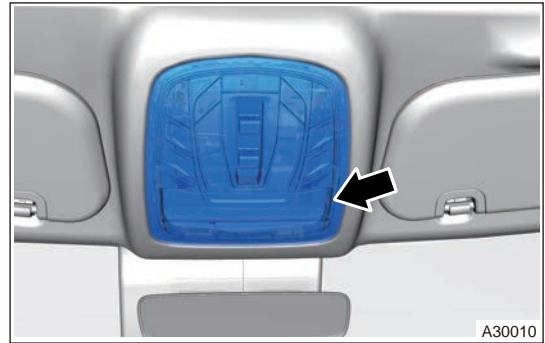
Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

4.2 Replacement of Front Dome Light Assembly

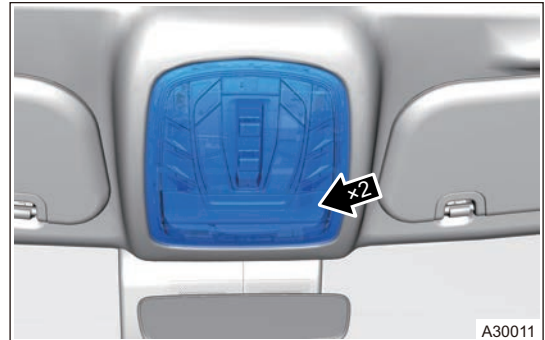
■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

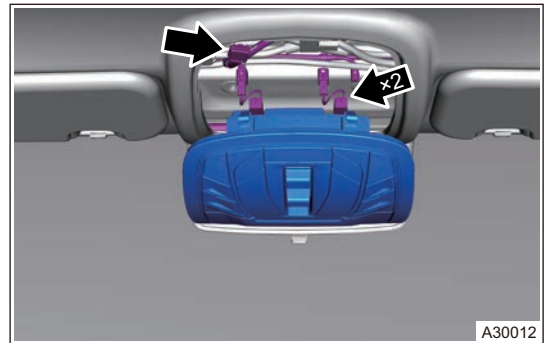
- (3) Open the glasses box on front dome light as shown in illustration.



- (4) Remove 2 fixing screws from front dome light assembly.



- (5) Disconnect front dome light assembly wire harness connector and 2 microphone connectors, and remove interior dome light assembly.



■ Installation

Caution

- Pay attention to wiring harness connection before assembling front dome light assembly to avoid rework.
- The 2 fixing screws of front dome light assembly are hidden in glasses box, pay attention to avoid missing.

- (1) Connect front dome light assembly wire harness connector and 2 microphone connectors, and install interior dome light assembly.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws of front dome light assembly.
Tightening torque: 2.5 ± 0.5 N·m
- (3) Close the glasses box.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

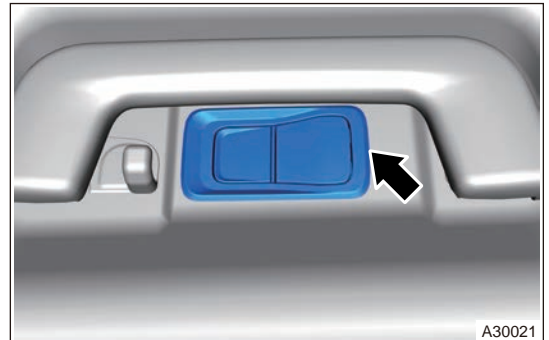
4.3 Replacement of Rear Left Interior Dome Light Assembly

■ Removal

Hint

- Use same operation procedures for rear left interior dome light assembly and rear right interior dome light assembly. Operation procedures listed below are for rear left interior dome light assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Pry off rear left interior dome light assembly with an interior crow plate, disconnect connector and remove rear left interior dome light assembly.



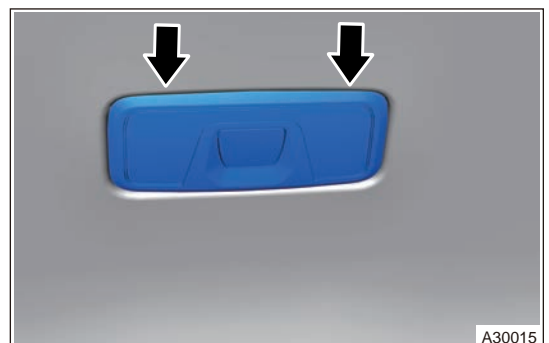
■ Installation

- (1) Connect the rear left interior dome light assembly connector.
- (2) Install the rear left interior dome light assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

4.4 Replacement of Rear Dome Light Assembly

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Pry off 2 spring plates from backside with an interior crow plate.



- (4) Unplug dome light connector, and remove rear dome light assembly.

■ Installation

- (1) Connect the dome light connector.
- (2) Install the rear dome light assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

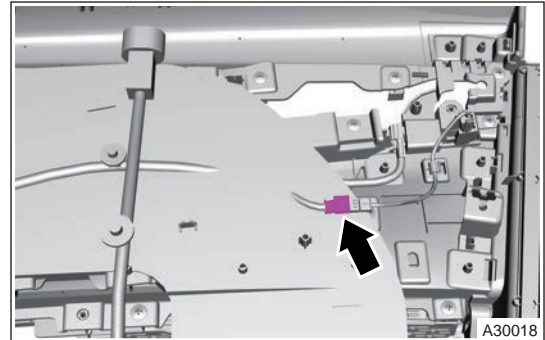
4.5 Replacement of Front Left Door Ambient Light

■ Removal

Caution

- Use same operation procedures for front left door ambient light and front right door ambient light. Operation procedures listed below are for front left door ambient light.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect front left door ambient light connector from front left door, and detach clip.



- (5) Disconnect front left door ambient light connector from front left door, and detach clip.



- (6) Remove the front left door ambient light.

■ Installation

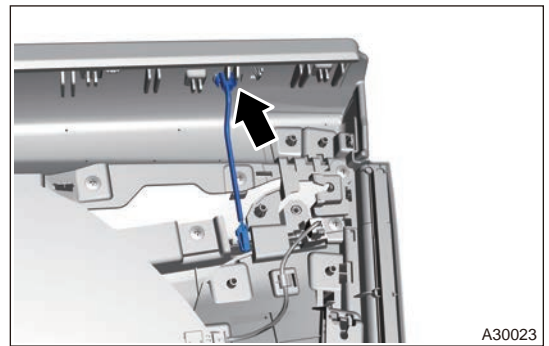
- (1) Install front left door ambient light, and connect 2 connectors of front left door ambient light.
- (2) Install the front left door protector assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

4.6 Replacement of Anti-theft Indicator

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door protector assembly.

- (4) Detach fixing clip of anti-theft indicator from front left door.



A30023

- (5) Remove the anti-theft indicator.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the anti-theft indicator.
- (2) Install the front left door protector assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

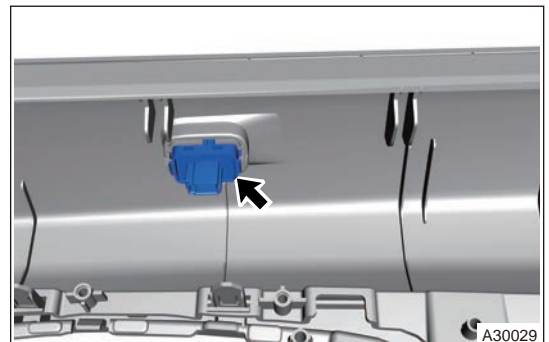
4.7 Replacement of Rear Door Opening Warning Light

■ Removal

Hint

- Use same removal and installation methods for rear right door opening warning light and rear left door opening warning light.
- Operation procedures listed below are for rear left door opening warning light.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door protector assembly.
- (4) Detach fixing clip of rear left door opening warning light from rear left door.



A30029

- (5) Remove the rear left door opening warning light.

■ Installation

- (1) Install the rear left door opening warning light.
- (2) Install the rear left door protector assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

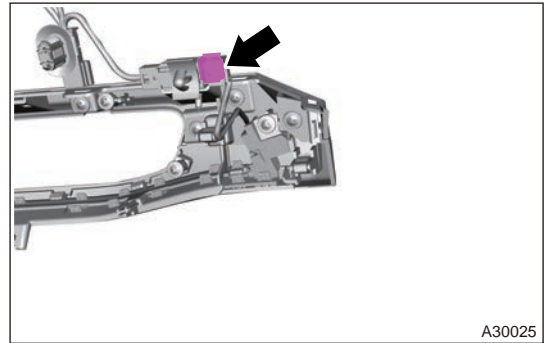
4.8 Replacement of Instrument Panel Ambient Light

■ Removal

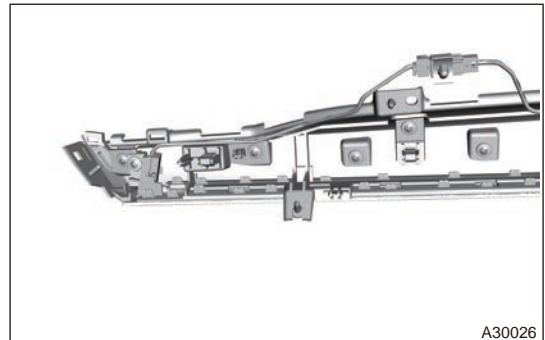
Warning

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing auxiliary fascia console ambient light.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing auxiliary fascia console ambient light. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

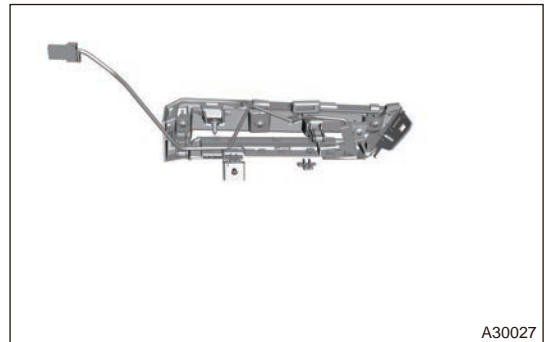
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the right instrument panel trim panel assembly.
- (4) Remove the right instrument panel trim panel assembly ambient light.



- (5) Remove the right instrument panel trim panel assembly.
- (6) Remove the right instrument panel trim panel assembly ambient light.



- (7) Remove the left instrument panel trim panel assembly.
- (8) Remove the left instrument panel ambient light.



■ Installation

- (1) Install the left instrument panel ambient light.
- (2) Install the right instrument panel trim panel assembly ambient light.

- (3) Install the right instrument panel trim panel assembly ambient light.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

4.9 Replacement of Luggage Compartment Light

■ Removal

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Pry off luggage compartment light assembly with an interior crow plate, and disconnect luggage compartment connector.



- (4) Remove the luggage compartment light.

■ Installation

- (1) Connect luggage compartment light connector and install luggage compartment light.
- (2) Connect the negative battery cable.

BODY ELECTRICAL

46.1	CAN SYSTEM	1779
1	Warnings and Precautions	1779
1.1	Precautions	1779
2	System Principle	1779
3	DIAGNOSIS & TEST	1779
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1779
3.2	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1780
3.3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1781
3.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1781
3.5	Ground Inspection	1782
3.6	Failure Analysis Method.....	1782
3.7	Common Troubleshooting	1782
3.8	Oscilloscope Analysis.....	1786
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1796
4.1	Tools	1796
4.2	Gateway Module (CGW)	1796

46.1 CAN SYSTEM

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.


- (1) Read configuration code of CGW module and record it with a diagnostic tester, before removing gateway module.
- (2) Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing gateway module.
- (3) Perform power-off for 5 minutes when measuring resistance in vehicle.

2 System Principle

- Bus speed: 500 Kbit/s.
- Cannot run in single line - If a CAN line of module is disconnected, CAN signal of this module cannot be transmitted.
- Vehicle driving CAN diagnosis is performed through No.6 pin and No.14 pin of diagnostic interface.
- Most controllers and diagnostic interfaces of data communication system are connected via vehicle gateway module (VGW), CAN controller and CAN transceiver are integrated into gateway module. Terminal resistors are respectively integrated into VGW, IPC(DMC), ESP, EMS and IHU(DMC), forming a body CAN bus with VGW and IPC as terminal nodes. EMS and VGW are power CAN bus of terminal nodes, IHU and VGW are information entertainment CAN bus of terminal nodes, and ESP and VGW are chassis CAN bus of terminal nodes. Termination resistance is 120 Ω , termination resistance of gateway module connected with diagnostic interface is 60 Ω .
- CAN bus is a vehicle bus, and full name is "Controller Area Network" which connects the controllers in some form to form a complete system. Each control unit collects different signals by each sensor, and transmits data among modules under the same rules. Network information can meet different real-time requirements by its priority. CAN bus data transmitted by control unit is level signal of binary format, and data transmission line transmits the voltage signal.

3 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

 Caution	
Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.	
Symptom	Possible Cause
Diagnostic interface cannot access to the system	Fuse
	CAN bus
	Gateway module
Engine control system failure	CAN bus
	Battery voltage
	Module damage
	Ground wire
Brake control system failure	Wire harness or connector
	EPB module

Symptom	Possible Cause
Airbag system failure	ECM
	Wire harness and connector
	Airbag module failure
Body electrical failure	Body Control Module (BCM) failure
	Wire harness or connector
	Instrument cluster
Transmission failure	Transmission Control Module (TCU) failure
	Wire harness or connector
	ECM

3.2 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the control system.

1 Vehicle brought to workshop

Next

2 Examine vehicle and check basic items

Check system power supply voltage, and check that fuse, wire harness and connector are connected normally.

OK

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG Check and replace malfunctioning parts

OK

3 Using a diagnostic tester, read related DTC and data stream information

Result

Result	Go to
No DTC	A
DTC is output	B

A Perform troubleshooting procedure without DTCs according to malfunction symptom

B

4	Troubleshoot according to DTCs troubleshooting procedure
----------	---

Result

Result	Go to
Problem is not resolved	A
Problem is resolved	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

5	According to airbag system malfunction repair completion inspection and delivery, confirm that malfunction is resolved.
----------	--

Result

Result	Go to
Delivery inspection is failed	A
Delivery inspection is qualified	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

6	Finished
----------	-----------------

3.3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is normal before performing following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in supplemental restraint system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select Read DTC.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction. Go to inspection procedure - Step 1.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

3.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.

- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.6 Failure Analysis Method

- (1) Use diagnostic tester to diagnose and analyze the trouble code.

When a module or several modules need to receive the data sent by a module to complete the corresponding function, once the data is not received, the module received the data will generate trouble codes, which could be read by diagnostic tester as: “Lost communication with XX module” , “Communication with XX module is not normal” ; When the bus is out of work, the trouble code will be read as CAN bus close; When there is malfunction on module CAN configuration, code will be reported as “configuration code error” .

CAN network failures consist of the following types:

- 1) Receive continuous invalid signals: This type of fault indicates communication effective bit received by control module is “invalid” or invalid signal after processing.
 - 2) Signal is below normal range: This type of fault indicates serial data bus signal is below normal range.
 - 3) Signal is above normal range: This type of fault indicates serial data bus signal is above normal range.
 - 4) Invalid signal: This type of fault indicates serial data bus signal does not match specified execution condition.
 - 5) Lost signal: This type of fault indicates specified no specified information is received.
 - 6) Bus closed: This type of fault indicates bus is out of work.
 - 7) Unstable signal: This type of fault indicates a transient distortion or interruption of a bus signal.
- (2) Waveform analysis.

It is main method to determine the hardware fault of CAN bus system. Check operation of high speed CAN and low speed CAN and judge most CAN network hardware faults through oscilloscope.

For example, if bus waveform is abnormal, after sales staff can judge by “plug and unplug each joint and observe the waveform of oscilloscope at the same time” . If bus waveform is normal after unplugging a joint, the fault is in the module or the bus connected this module. This method is especially suitable for modules that do not have trouble code self-diagnosis.
 - (3) Circuit diagram analysis.

Use multimeter, oscilloscope, diagnostic tester and combine with circuit diagram to determine where is the fault.

3.7 Common Troubleshooting

- (1) Diagnostic tester reads trouble code of CAN configuration error.

Fault expression: CAN or configuration code error is not performed by meter or BCM, read "Software configuration error" , "Configuration code error" with diagnostic tester.

Exclusion methods and steps:

This type of situation usually belongs to CAN system software failure. Write correct configuration code to these modules or sensors or calibrate these sensors, clear the trouble code and verify the malfunction phenomenon again.

- (2) Diagnostic tester cannot communicate with all modules.

Malfunction symptom: If diagnostic tester can be used normally on other vehicle, but cannot communicate with each module on faulty vehicle, malfunction indicators or warning lights on the meter turn on.

Malfunction reason: Diagnostic interface power supply and ground malfunction, diagnostic interface CAN line is open to normal CAN line, bus CAN-H is short to CAN-L, CAN-H is short to ground, CAN-L is short to ground, CAN-H is short to power supply, CAN-L is short to power supply, CAN line is mixed, node (-module) is malfunctioning or power supply grounding is abnormal.

- (3) Exclusion methods and steps:

1 Diagnose if power supply voltage and grounding resistance are correct

NG

Inspect and repair diagnosis interface power supply or ground, verify the fault phenomenon again

OK

2 Use multimeter to detect parallel termination resistor, and check if resistance is correct

NG

Check and repair connecting wire between diagnostic interface and two modules with termination resistor or replace module with incorrect resistance to verify the malfunction symptom again.

OK

3 Connect oscilloscope and observe waveform at the same time. Observe if waveform is normal.

NG

Inspect and repair the power supply and ground of these modules, and verify the malfunction symptom again.

OK

4 Determine type of fault waveform, inspect and repair, then reconfirm the fault phenomenon again.

- (4) The diagnostic tester cannot communicate with several modules.

Malfunction symptom: The diagnostic tester cannot communicate with several modules, but can communicate with at least one module.

Malfunction cause: Module power supply malfunction, CAN main line open, CAN line mixed fitting, node (module) malfunction, gateway module malfunction.

(5) Power supply malfunction (power supply and ground).

The core part of vehicle multiplex system is an electronic control unit containing a communication IC chip. The normal operating voltage of the electronic control unit is generally in the range of operating voltage: $9\text{ V} \leq U \leq 16\text{ V}$. CAN network communication voltage range: $6\text{ V} \leq U \leq 16\text{ V}$. If the operating voltage provided by vehicle power system is lower than this value, some electronic control units with higher requirements on operating voltage will temporarily stop working, thus making multiplex system unable to communicate. The CAN hardware controller inside ECM may not work under 6 V. Use battery tester to detect, if it does not meet the requirements, charge the battery or replace the battery (and also detect the power generated by alternator).

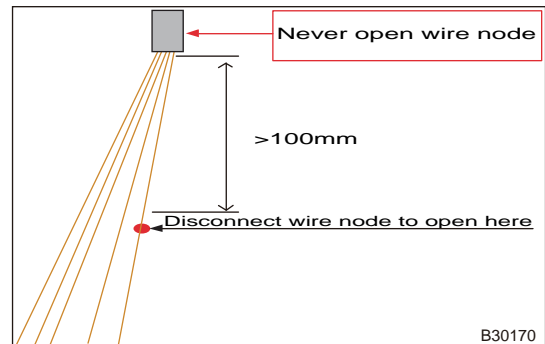
(6) Link malfunction.

Link refers to a communication connection line between nodes. Link malfunction refers to malfunction of data communication lines, such as short circuit, open circuit and communication signal attenuation or distortion caused by changes in physical properties of the lines. These factors often cause multiple electronic control units to fail to work properly or the control system to operate improperly. To determine whether the link is malfunctioning, use an oscilloscope or a specific vehicle CAN tester to observe whether the current data communication signal matches the standard data communication signal. Maintenance methods are generally to repair shorted or open twisted-pair lines, or to eliminate the root cause of changing the physical properties of twisted-pair lines.

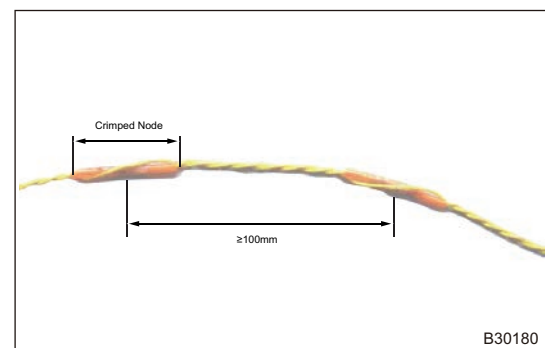
1) Maintenance instructions for CAN line.

Sometimes, in order to determine the malfunction, it is necessary to disconnect a control unit from line connection point and disconnect the CAN bus connected to the control unit, or to repair wire harness after the malfunction has been determined. The data transmitted by CAN bus may even affect vehicle safety and life safety of personnel. Improper maintenance of CAN bus may cause interference or loss of signals, resulting in these data not being transmitted. Therefore, the following regulations must be observed during maintenance:

- During CAN bus maintenance, the disconnection point is required to be at least 100 mm away from the line node, and the line node must never be opened, maintained and updated.
- If the CAN line is to be disconnected, it is only allowed to be carried out at a distance of $\geq 100\text{ mm}$ from the next pressure node; The twisting of CAN lines is of decisive significance to the interference effect of CAN. Only if the twisting is not damaged, the CAN can be protected from interference, so keep as little interference with the twisting as possible during maintenance.



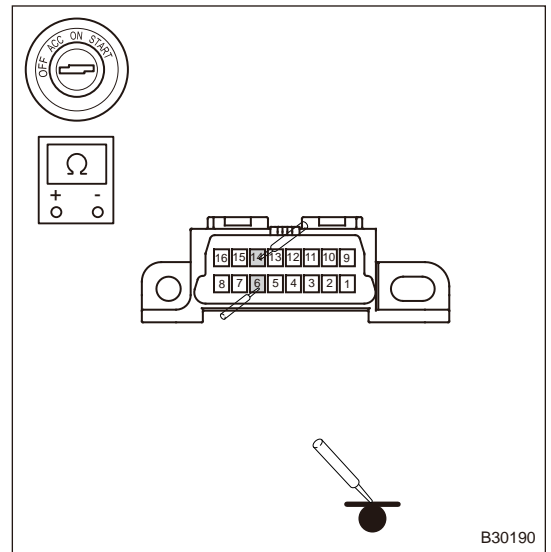
B30170



B30180

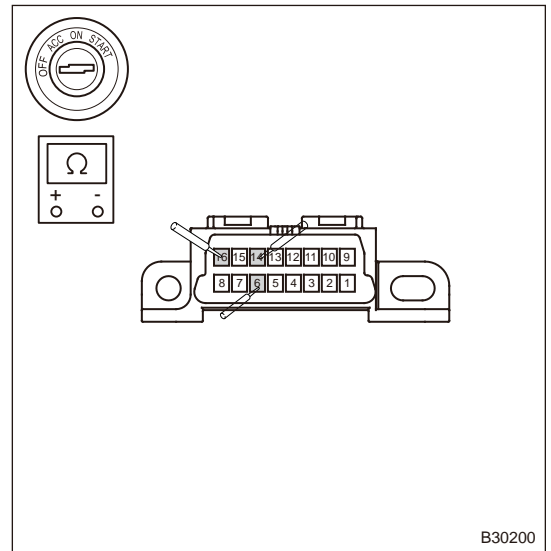
2) Use a multimeter to measure the resistance to ground and power supply of CAN-H and CAN-L.

- After disconnecting battery for 5 minutes, the measured resistance values between diagnostic interfaces 6# (CAN-H) and 14# (CAN-L) and ground are both 32 M Ω .



B30190

- After disconnecting battery for 5 minutes, the measured resistance values between diagnostic interfaces 6# (CAN-H) and 14# (CAN-L) and 16# are both 33.5 M Ω .



B30200

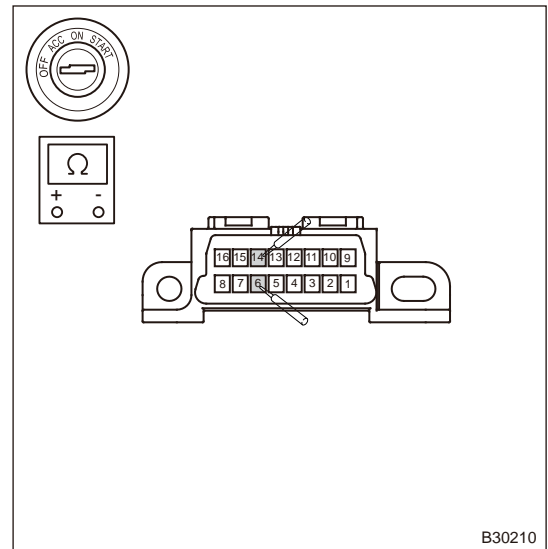
3) Termination resistor.

The termination resistor is installed in gateway module of system and is used to prevent CAN bus signal from reflecting the changing voltage on CAN bus. When the termination resistor fails and the square wave is transmitting, because of the reflection of line, if it is serious, the signal will be deformed and the signal of control unit will be invalid. When measuring the CAN bus signal with an oscilloscope, if the signal does not match standard signal, it is also necessary to check whether the termination resistor is damaged.

Measurement step of termination resistor:

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable;
- (2) Wait about 5 minutes until all capacitors are fully discharged;
- (3) Connect the measuring instrument and measure total resistance. Using ohmmeter, measure resistance between diagnostic interfaces (6) and (14) (standard resistance is 60 Ω).

Measured value (for reference only): the measured resistance between diagnostic interfaces 6 # and 14 # is 58.7 Ω (the two termination resistors are connected in parallel), after gateway module is disconnected separately, and the measured resistance between diagnostic interfaces 6 # and 14 # is ∞ .

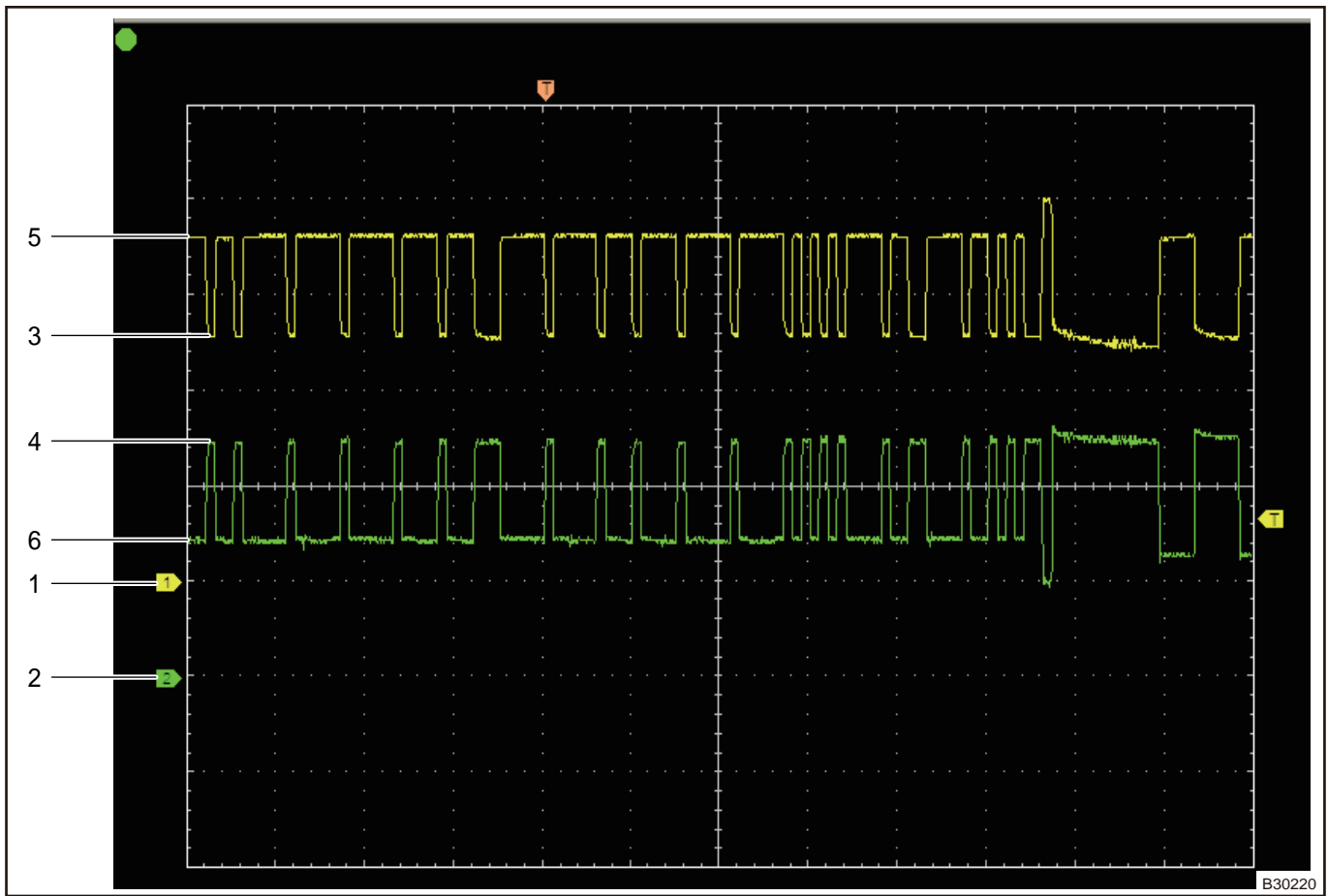


3.8 Oscilloscope Analysis

(1) Oscilloscope connection

CH1 (channel 1) is connected to diagnostic interface 6# (CAN-H), CH2 (channel 2) is connected to diagnostic interface 14# (CAN-L), and alligator clip of the oscilloscope probe is connected to the common body ground.

Normal waveform



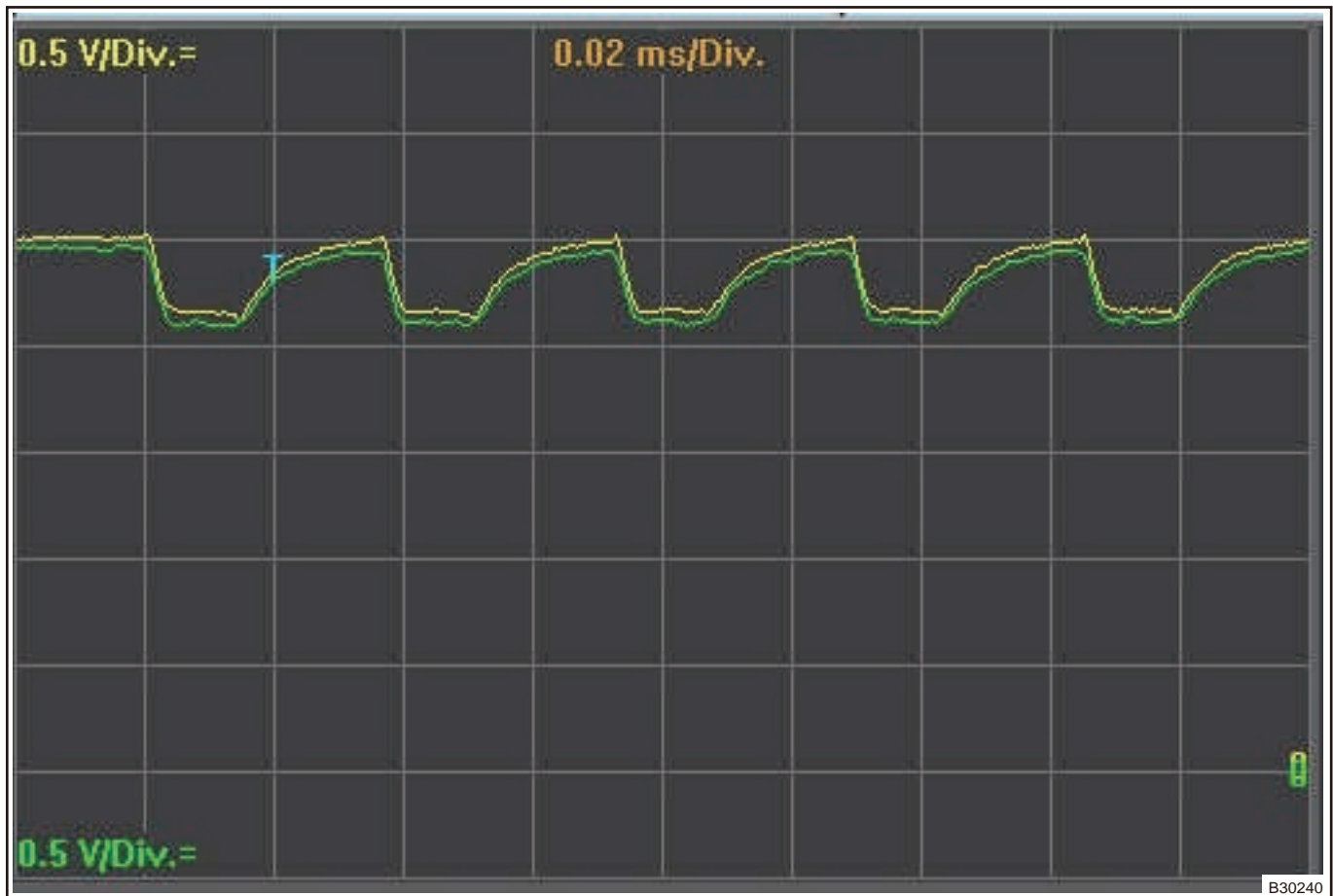
1	Zero potential of CAN-H	4	The recessive voltage potential of CAN-L is approximately 2.5 V (logic value 1)
2	Zero potential of CAN-L	5	The dominant voltage potential of CAN-H is approximately 3.6 V (logic value 0)
3	The recessive voltage potential of CAN-H is approximately 2.6 V (logic value 1)	6	The dominant voltage potential of CAN-L is approximately 1.4 V (logic value 0)

Potential	CAN-H - Ground	CAN-L - Ground	Voltage Difference
Dominant	3.6 V (3.5 V)	1.4 V (1.5 V)	2.2 V (2.0 V)
Recessive	2.6 V (2.5 V)	2.5 V (2.5 V)	0.1 V (0 V)

Hint:

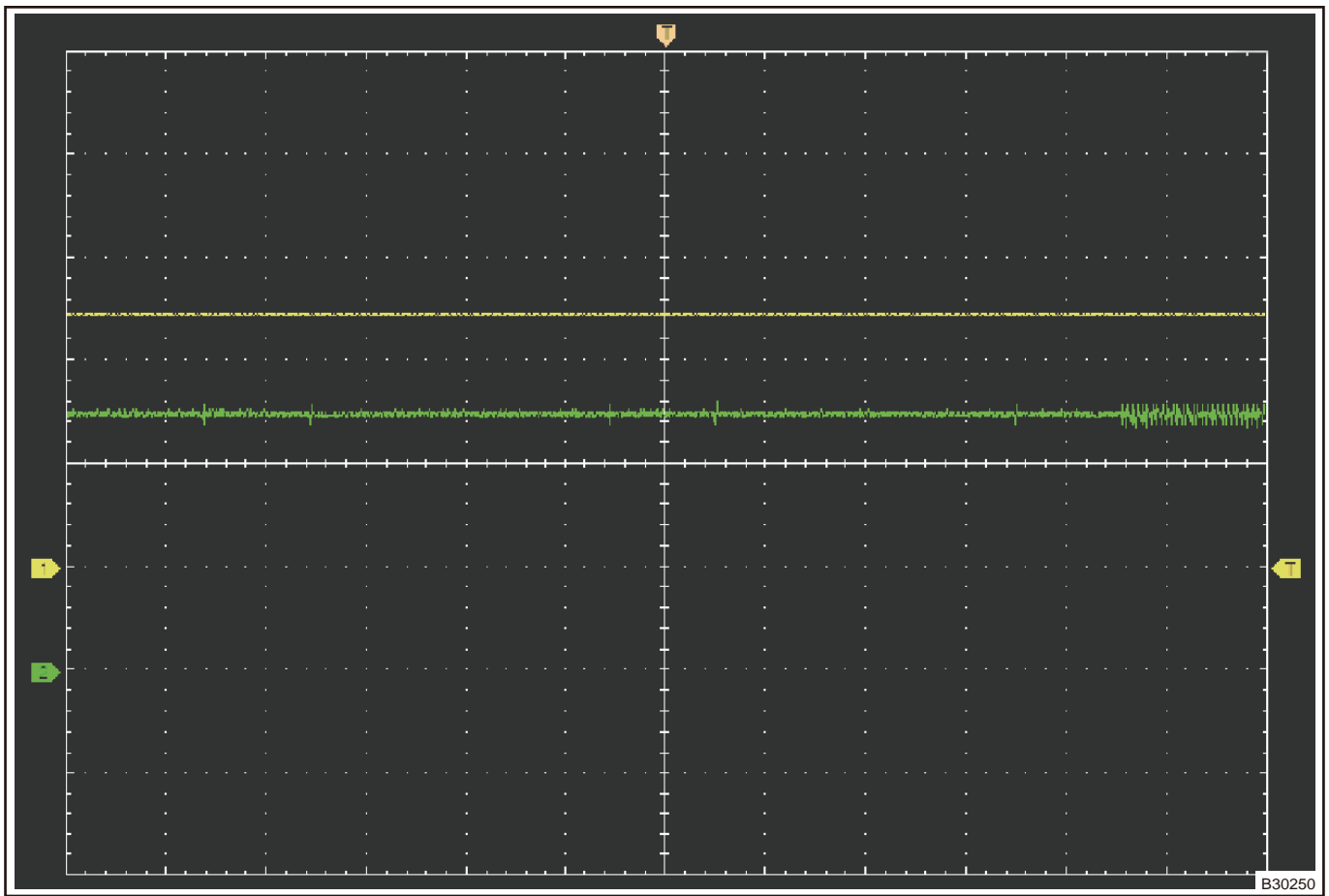
- 1) Always use voltage difference between two lines to confirm data. When voltage of CAN-H rises, the voltage of CAN-L decreases accordingly. The waveform is rectangular and symmetrical.
- 2) As the oscilloscope shows, CAN-Bus has only two operating states. At the recessive voltage potential, the two voltage values are very close. At the dominant voltage potential, the two voltage standard difference is 2.0 V.
- 3) The difference between measured voltage value and standard value is approximately 100 mV.
- 4) During communication, high-speed CAN operating voltage range: CAN-H: 2.75 V~4.5 V (dominant), 2 V~3 V (recessive); CAN_L: 0.5 V~2.25 V (dominant), 2 V~3 V (recessive); No signal transmission means that CAN bus will transmit recessive signals when it is idle, and new information will start with dominant signals.

(2) Short point (arrow) between CAN-H and CAN-L



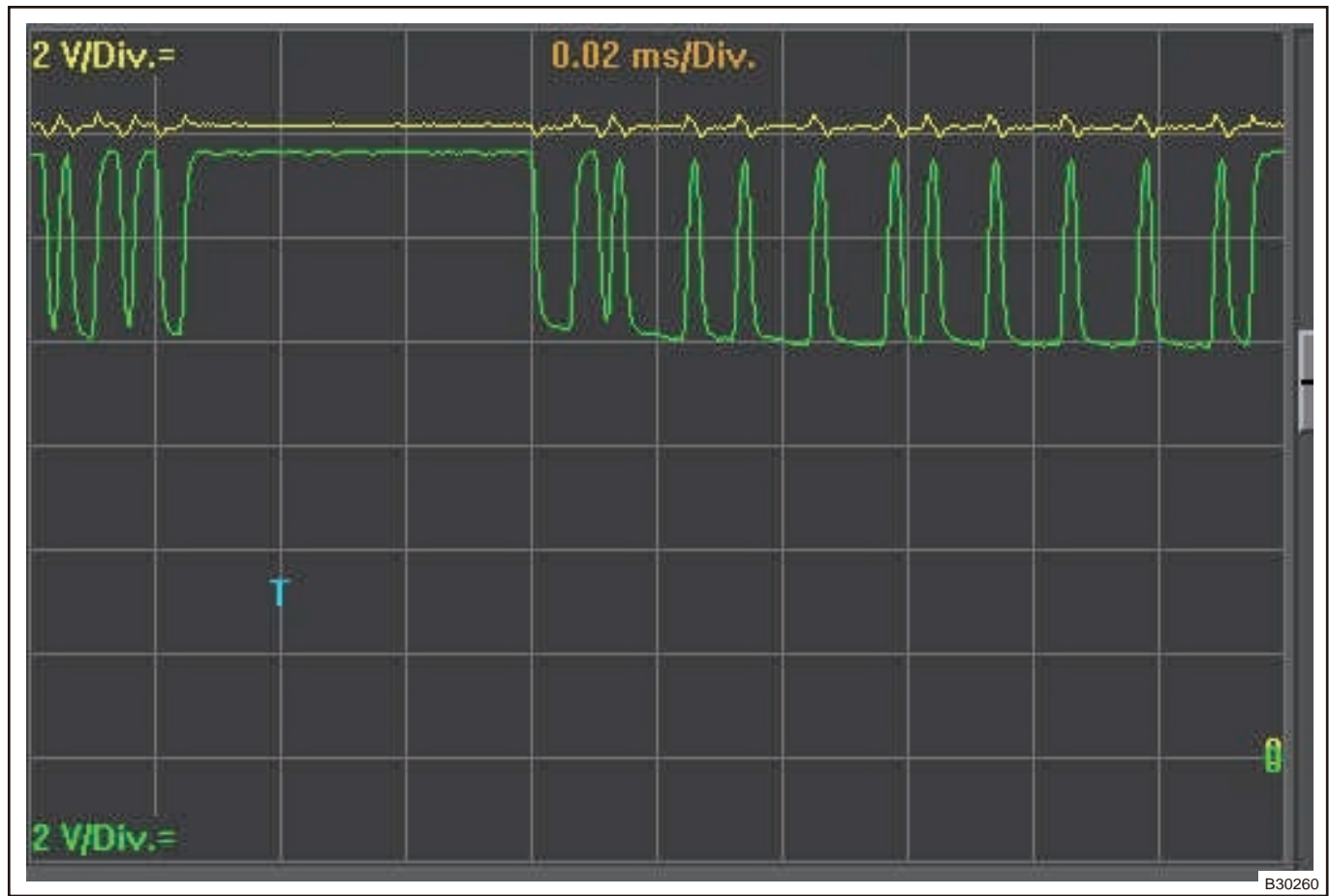
Short circuit malfunction waveform of CAN-H and CAN-L

- Observe with an oscilloscope, the voltage potential is at recessive voltage value (approximately 2.5 V). By moving the position of zero potential on two oscilloscope channels to make the zero potential of two channels be coincident. It can be seen that waveforms of the CAN-H and CAN-L change consistently and their potentials are consistent;
- The short circuit waveforms of CAN-H and CAN-L during actual vehicle test are shown in following illustration. Both waveforms are straight line with a voltage of approximately 2.5 V. Use a multimeter to test that the termination resistor is close to or equal to 0 ohms. Power CAN and body CAN, CAN-H and CAN-L short circuit vehicles can not start.



Troubleshooting procedures:

- 1) By plugging and unplugging control unit on CAN bus one by one and observing oscilloscope waveform at the same time, it can be judged whether it is a short circuit caused by the control unit or by the CAN-H and CAN-L line connection;
 - 2) If the waveform returns to normal when unplugging the connector of a module, this module is malfunctioning;
 - 3) For short circuit caused by short circuit of line, it is necessary to disconnect CAN wire groups (CAN-H and CAN-L) from wire harness connector or wire harness node in turn, and pay attention to waveform of oscilloscope; After disconnecting faulty wire group, waveform of oscilloscope returns to normal.
 - 4) When there is no other measurement method, only CAN line can be disconnected from line connection point. Pay attention to maintenance instructions of CAN line.
- (3) CAN-H is short to power supply

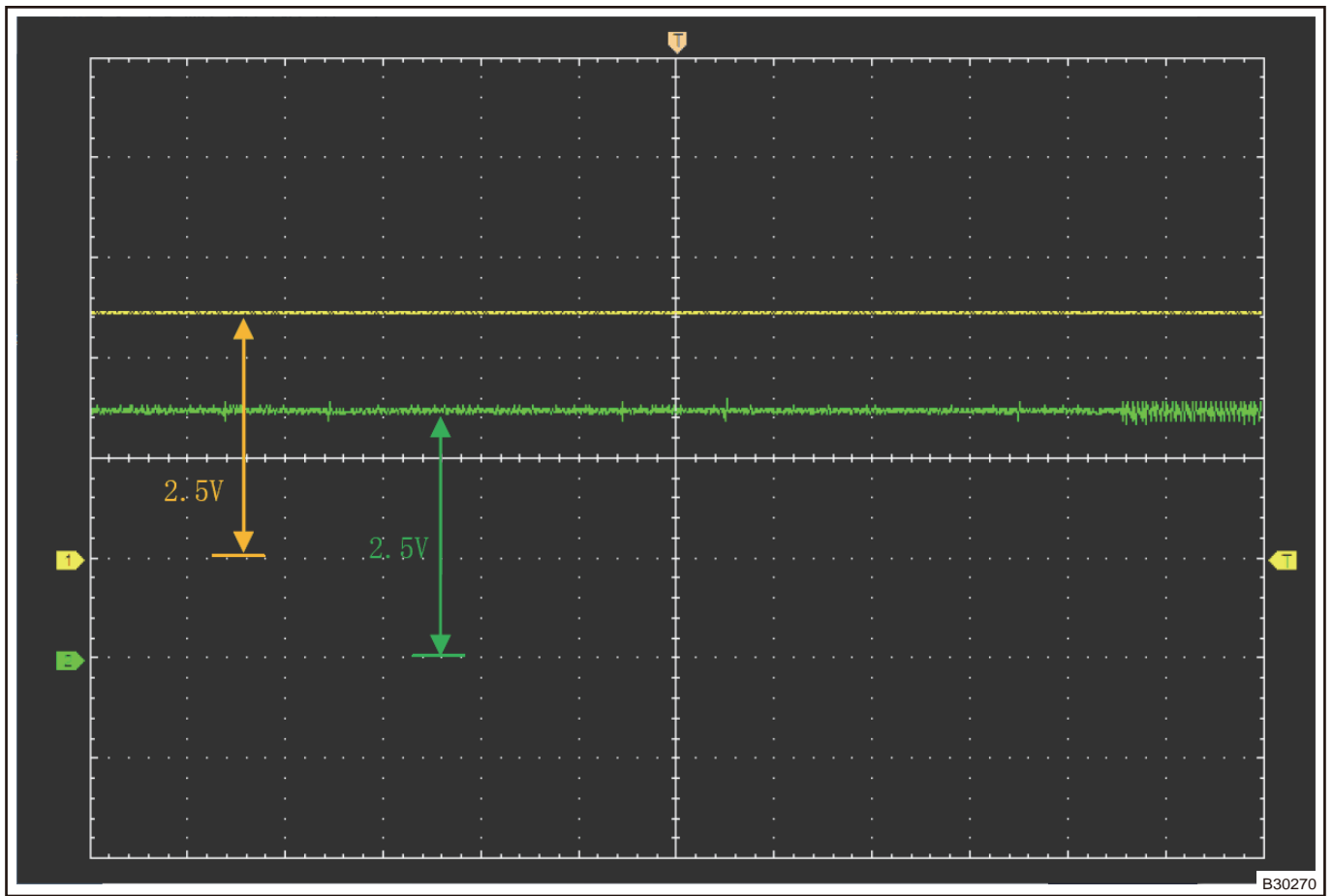


Malfunction symptoms:

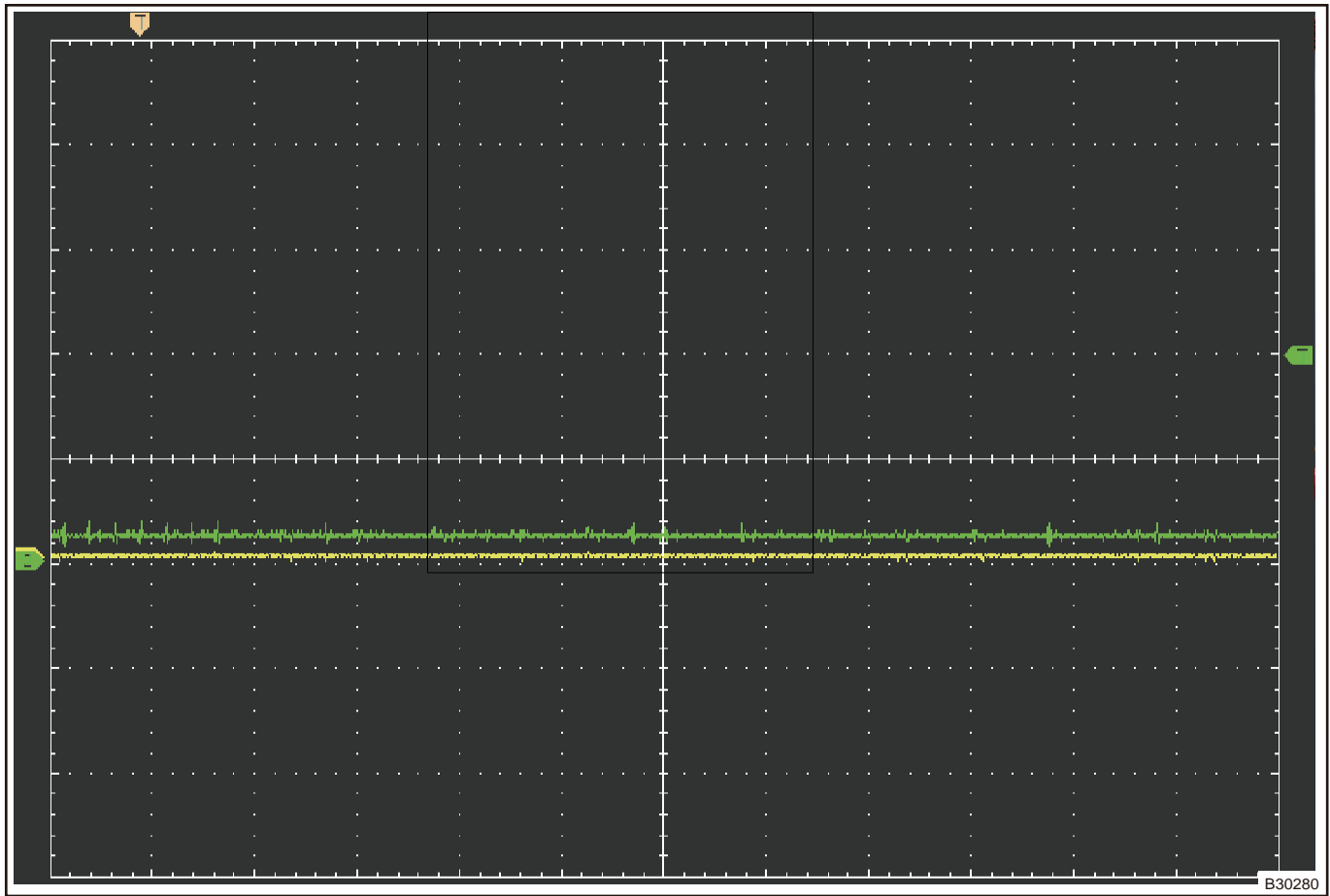
- Observe with an oscilloscope: the voltage potential of CAN-H line is placed at 12 V, the recessive voltage of CAN-L line is placed at approximately 12 V, and amplitude becomes larger due to internal connection of CAN-H and CAN-L in transceiver of control unit.

Troubleshooting procedures:

- 1) By plugging and unplugging control unit on CAN bus one by one and observing oscilloscope waveform at the same time, it can be judged whether it is a short circuit caused by the control unit or by the CAN-H line connection;
 - 2) If the waveform returns to normal when unplugging the connector of a module, this module is malfunctioning;
 - 3) When there is no other measurement method, only CAN line can be disconnected from line connection point. Pay attention to maintenance instructions of CAN line.
- The short circuit waveform to positive in CAN-H during actual vehicle test is shown in following illustration. The voltage potential of CAN-H line is placed at 12 V (battery voltage), and the recessive voltage of CAN-L line is placed at approximately 12 V (battery voltage). The amplitude becomes larger. The diagnostic tester cannot access each module. Power CAN and body CAN, CAN-H short to power supply, vehicles can not start.



- (4) CAN-H is short to ground
Malfunction waveform



Malfunction symptoms:

- Observe with an oscilloscope: The voltage potential of CAN-H line is placed at 0 V, and the voltage of CAN-L line is placed at about 0.2 V (near 0 V).

Malfunction causes

- Bus CAN-H is short to ground, node (module) malfunction.

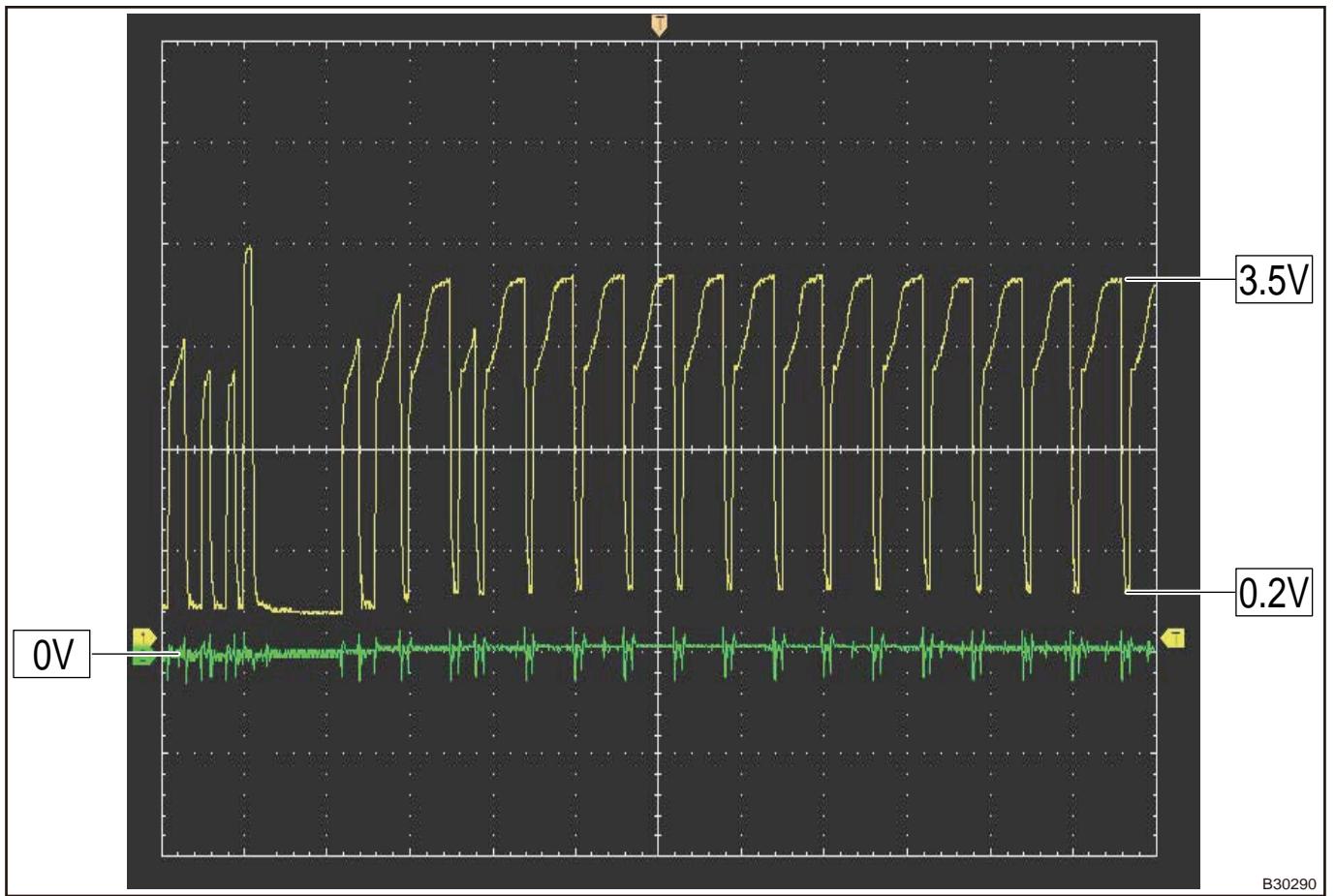
Troubleshooting procedures:

- 1) Plug and unplug control unit on CAN bus one by one, and observe if the oscilloscope waveform becomes normal?
- 2) If the waveform returns to normal when unplugging the connector of a module, this module is malfunctioning;
- 3) When there is no other measurement method, only CAN line can be disconnected from line connection point. Pay attention to maintenance instructions of CAN line.

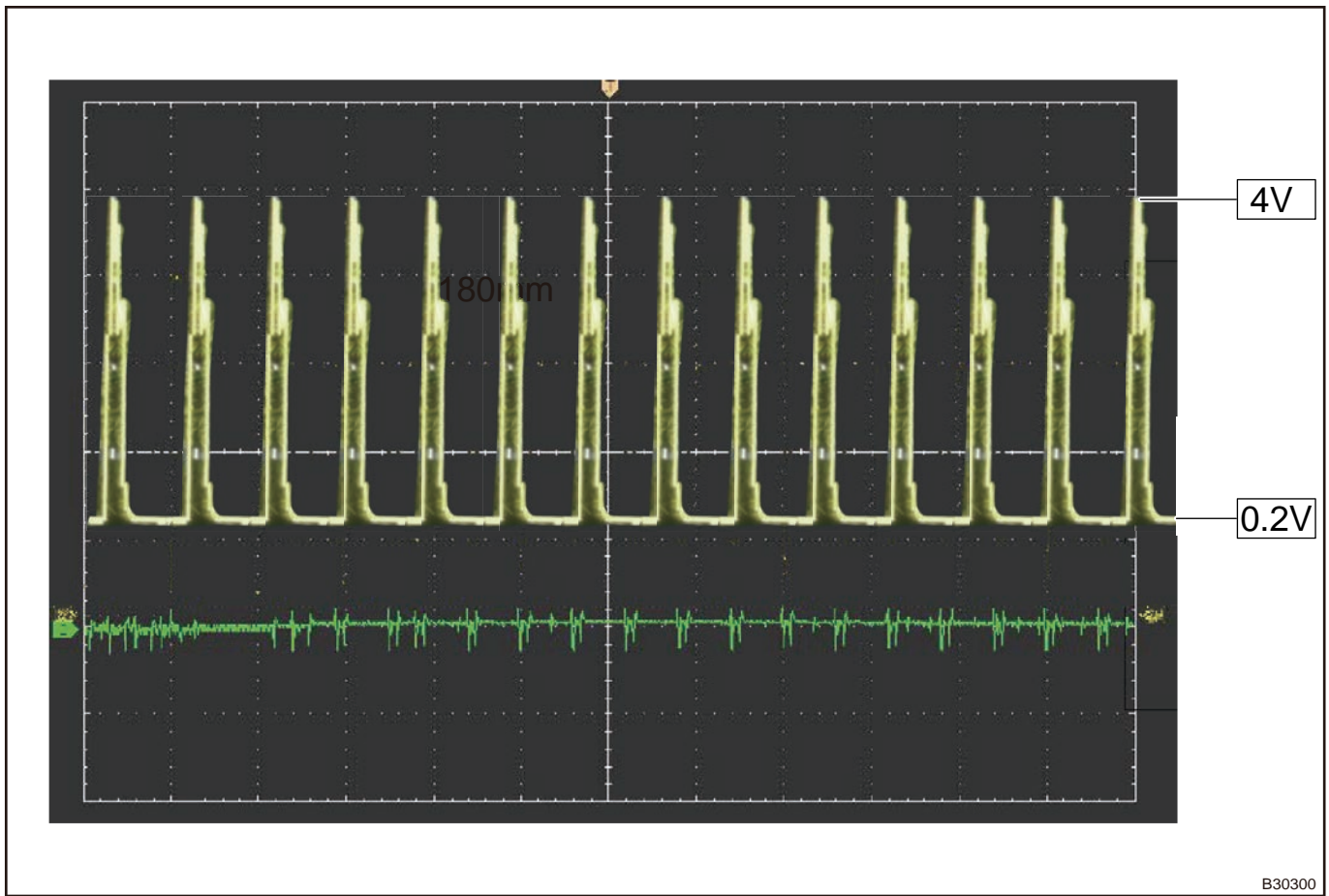
In the short circuit waveform to ground in CAN-H during actual vehicle test, the voltage potential of CAN-H line is placed at 0 V, and the recessive voltage of CAN-L line is placed at approximately 0.2 V. Power CAN and body CAN, CAN-H short to ground, vehicles can not start.

- (5) Short to ground in CAN-L

Malfunction waveform



CAN malfunction waveform



B30300

Malfunction symptoms:

- Observe with an oscilloscope: The voltage of CAN-L is approximately 0 V, and the recessive voltage of CAN-H line is also reduced to 0.2 V (near 0 V). Malfunction cause: Bus CAN-L is short to ground, node (module) malfunction.

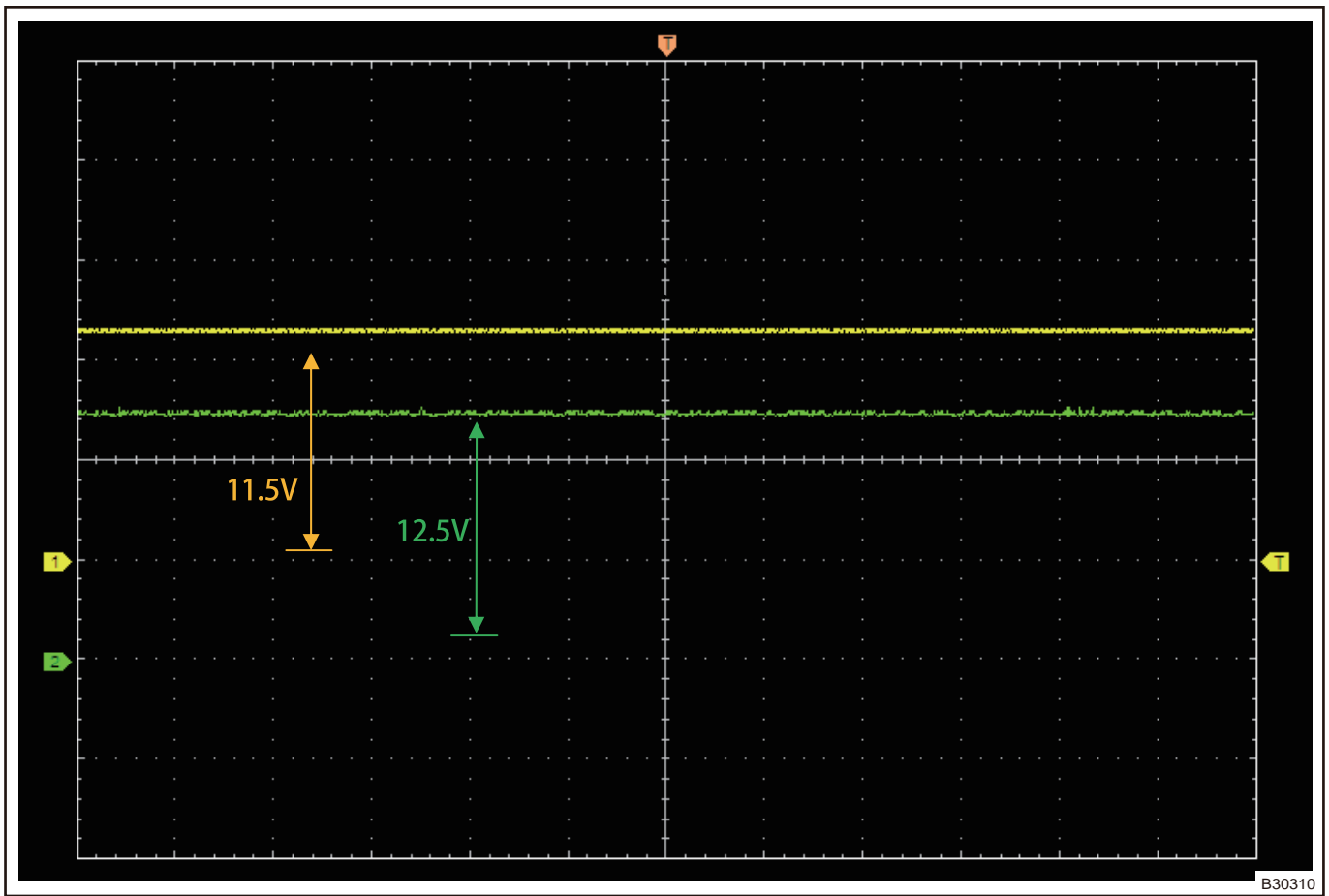
Troubleshooting procedures:

- 1) By plugging and unplugging control unit on CAN bus one by one and observing oscilloscope waveform at the same time, it can be judged whether it is a short circuit caused by the control unit or by the CAN-L line ground;
- 2) If the waveform returns to normal when unplugging the connector of a module, this module is malfunctioning;
- 3) When there is no other measurement method, only CAN line can be disconnected from line connection point. Pay attention to maintenance instructions of CAN line.

In the short circuit waveform to ground of CAN-L during actual vehicle test, the voltage potential of CAN-L line is placed at 0 V. Power CAN and body CAN, CAN-L short to ground, vehicles can not start.

- (6) CAN-L short to power supply

Malfunction waveform



Malfunction symptoms:

- Observe with an oscilloscope: Both bus voltages are approximately 12 V, and waveforms are straight lines.

Malfunction cause: Bus CAN-L is short to power supply, node (module) malfunction.

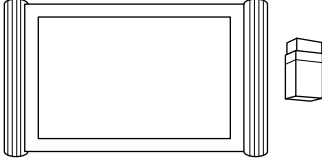
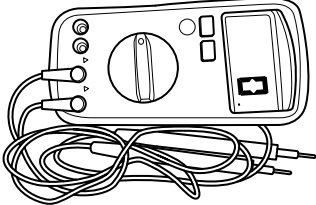

Troubleshooting procedures:

- 1) By plugging and unplugging control unit on CAN bus one by one and observing oscilloscope waveform at the same time, it can be judged that the short circuit is caused by the control unit or short circuit to power supply in CAN-L line;
- 2) If the waveform returns to normal when unplugging the connector of a module, this module is malfunctioning;
- 3) When there is no other measurement method, only CAN line can be disconnected from line connection point. Pay attention to maintenance instructions of CAN line.

After short circuit between CAN-L and power supply is judged during real vehicle test, power CAN and body CAN and CAN- L are short to power supply, and vehicle cannot start.

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p>RCH0001006</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p>RCH000206</p>
Oscilloscope	 <p>RCH006106</p>

Hint:

- Oscilloscopes are available in the market as a general tool. Chery does not provide this tool.
- As a general diagnostic method, oscilloscope diagnosis can be replaced by other diagnostic methods.

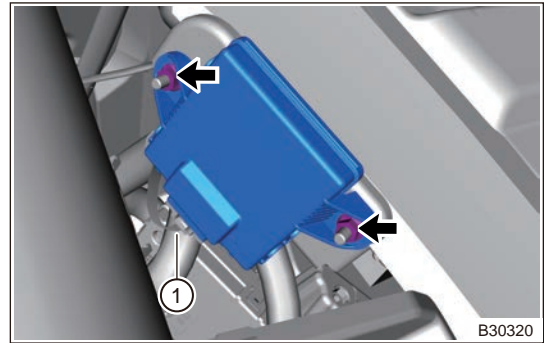
4.2 Gateway Module (CGW)

■ **Removal**

<p>Caution</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Read configuration code of CGW module and record it with a diagnostic tester, before removing gateway module. • Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing gateway module.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel assembly.

- (4) Remove 2 fixing nuts from gateway bracket, disconnect connector (1) from gateway module, and remove gateway module.



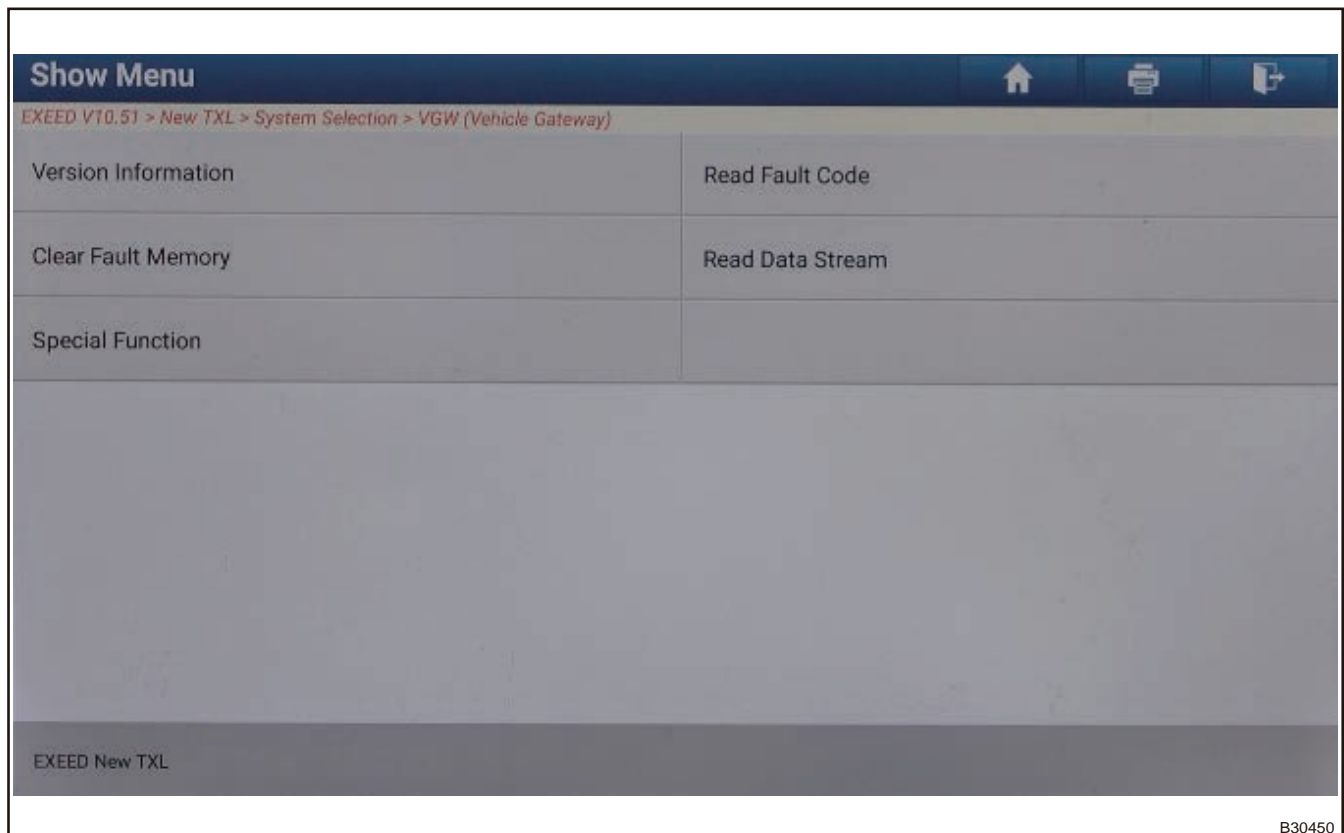
■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.
- (2) Write configuration code with diagnostic tester to check module for proper operation after installation.

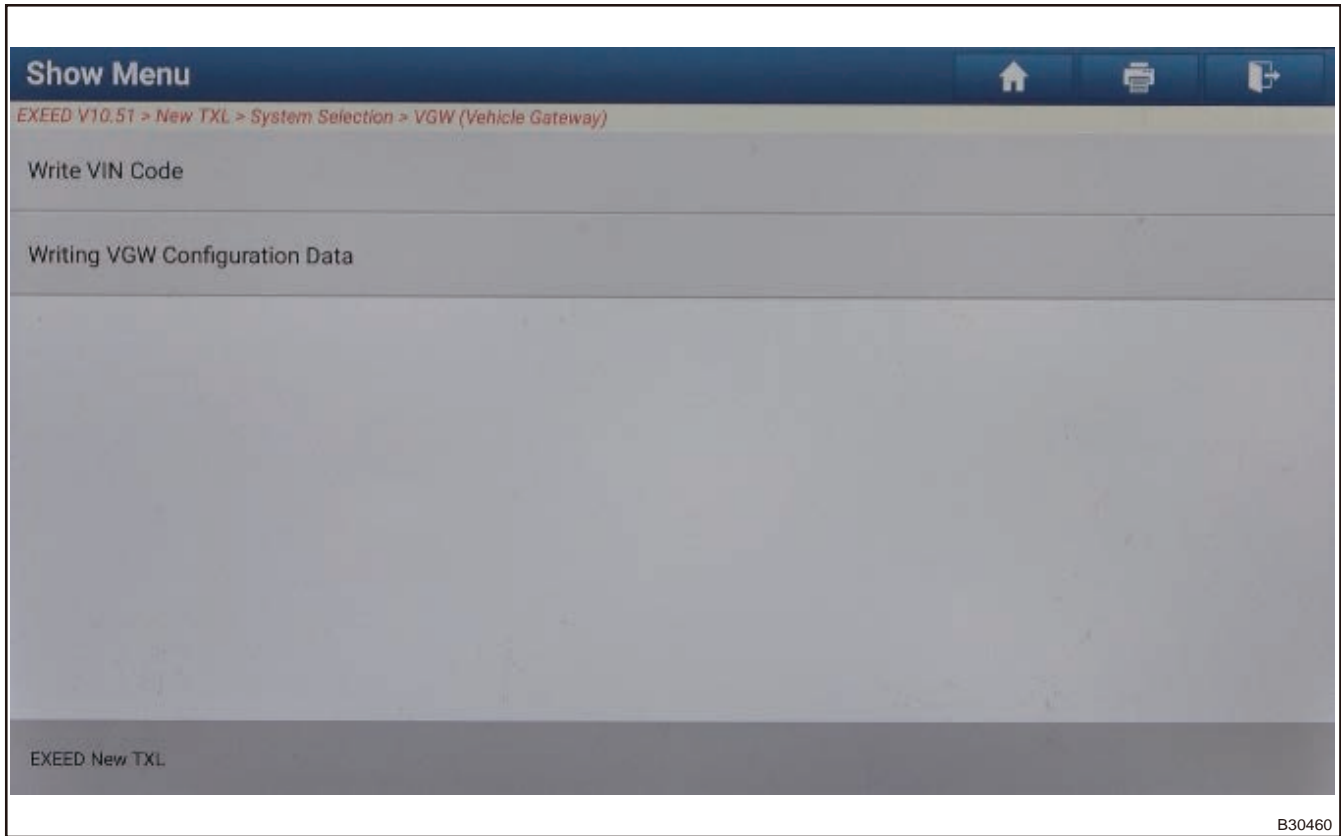
■ Matching Learning

■ Writing VIN Code

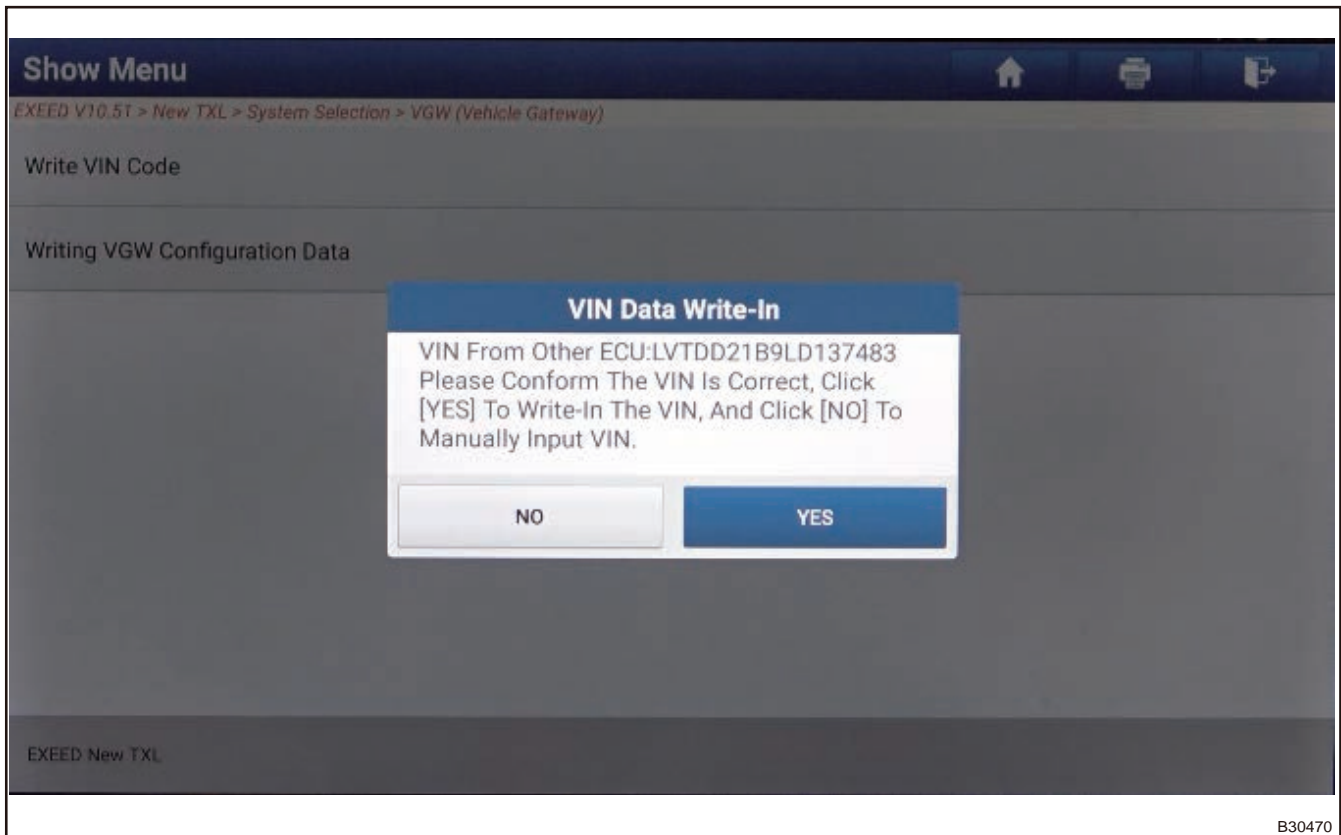
- (1) Connect the diagnostic tester, turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and select model, then enter "CGW" .
- (2) Click "Special Function" .



- (3) Select Special Function and click "Write VIN Code" .

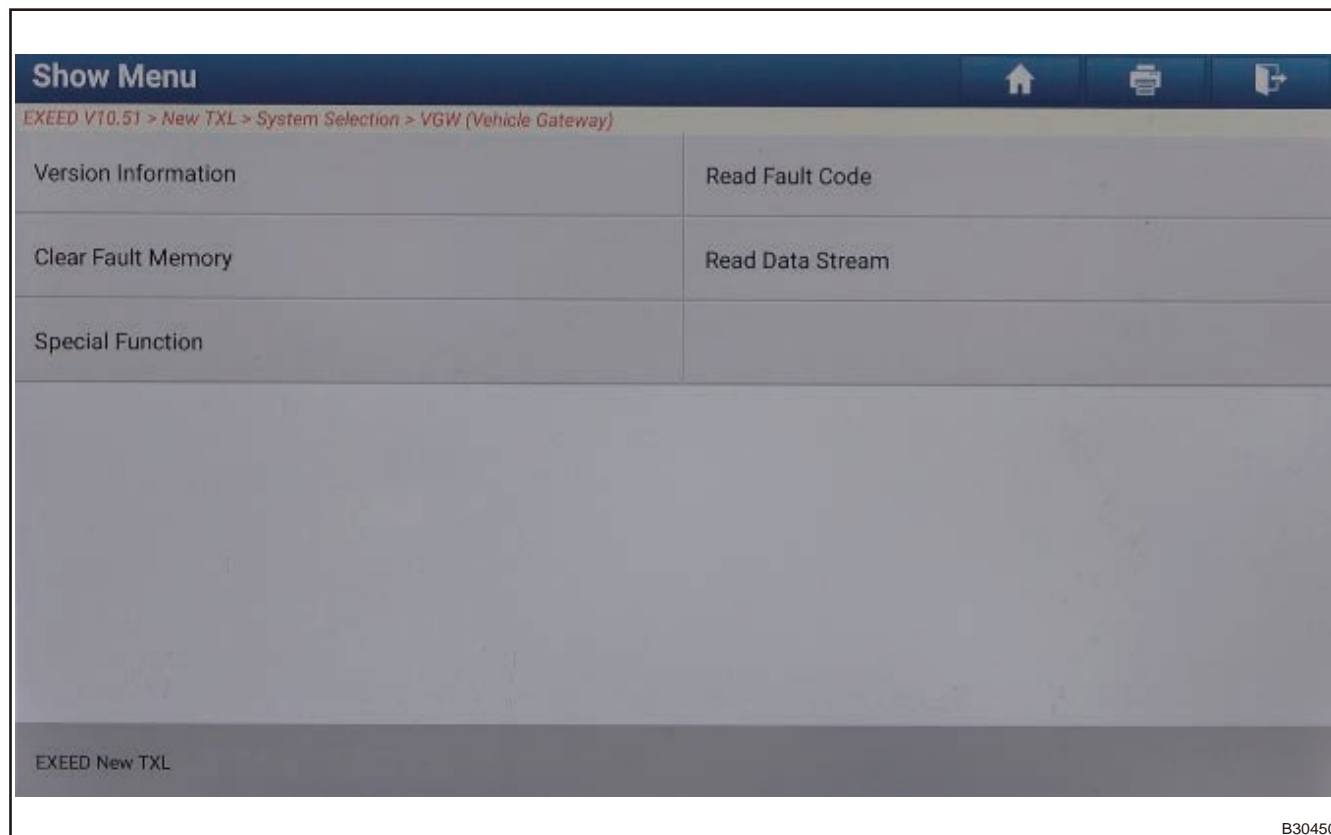


- (4) Enter next screen, determine if VIN code is correct, if correct, click "OK" , if not, click "NO" to input manually.

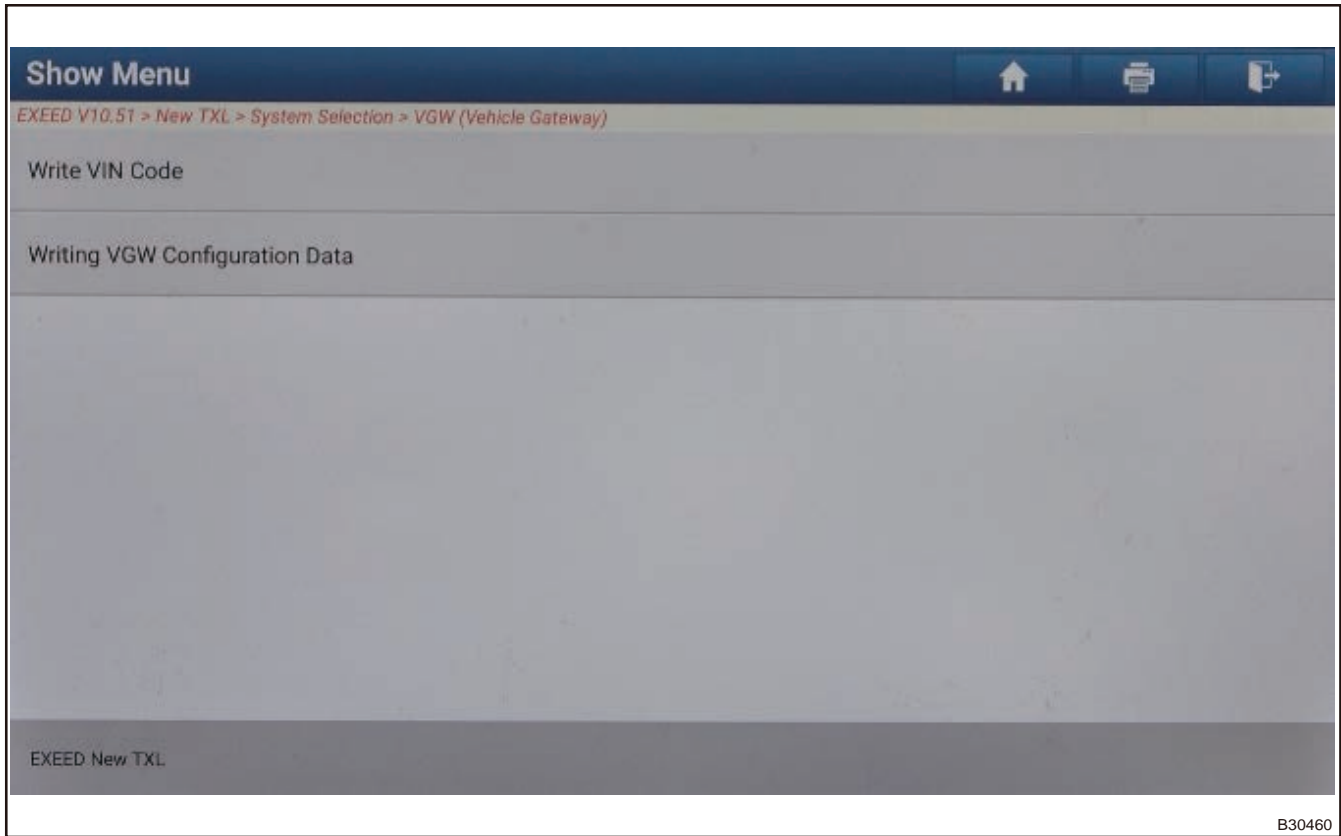


■ Saving Configuration Data

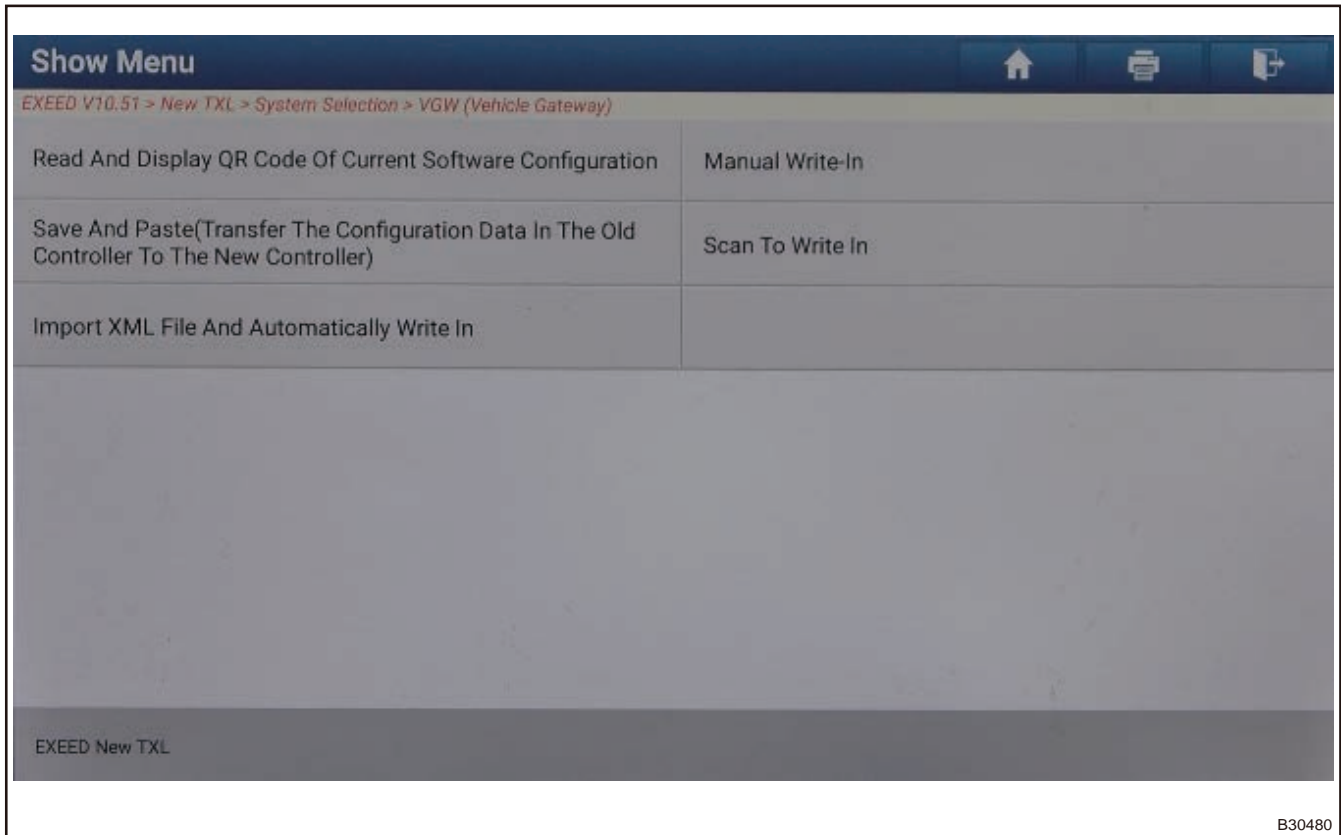
- (1) Click “VGW (Vehicle Gateway Module)” .
- (2) Click “Special Function” .



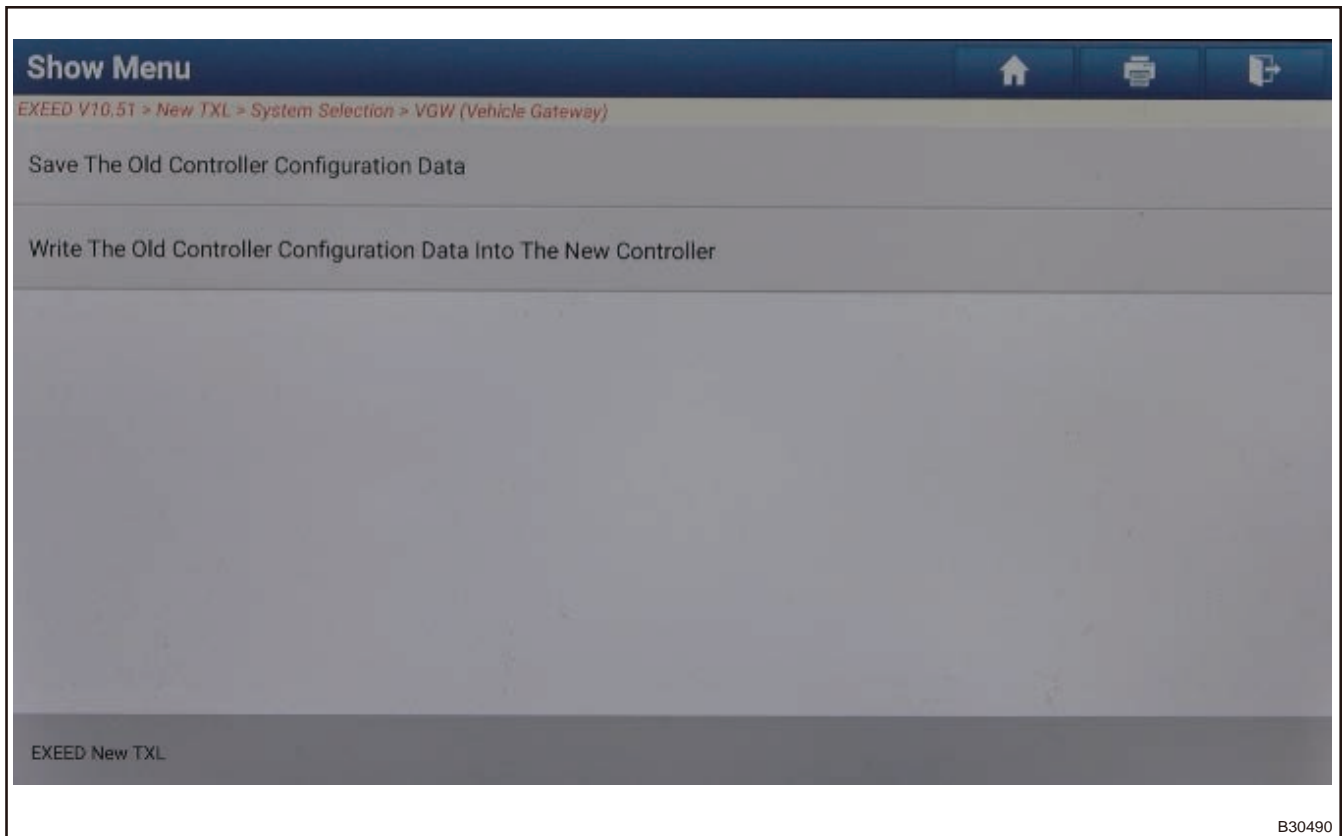
- (3) Click “Writing VGW Configuration Data” .



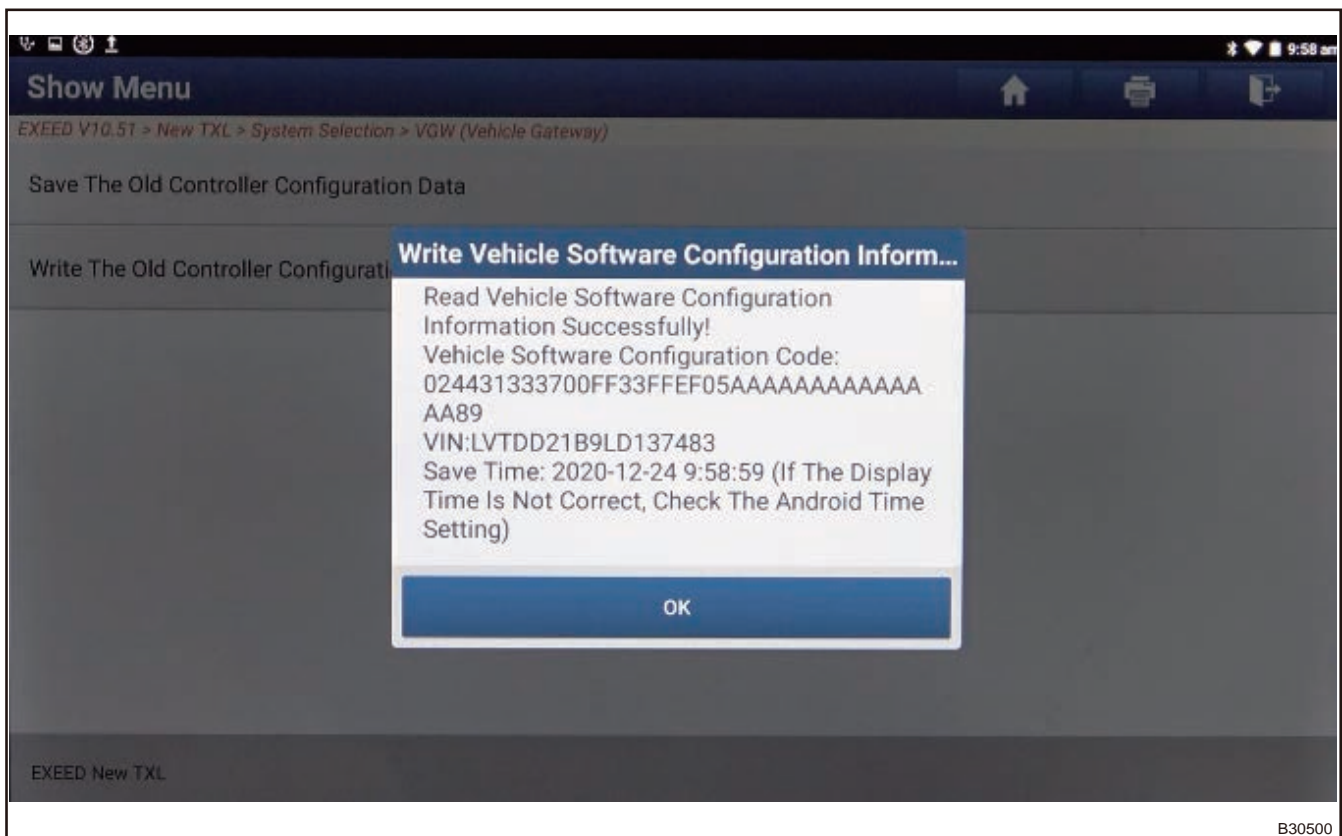
- (4) Click “Save And Paste (Transfer The Configuration Data In The Old Controller To The New Controller)” .



- (5) Click “Save The Old Controller Configuration Data” .

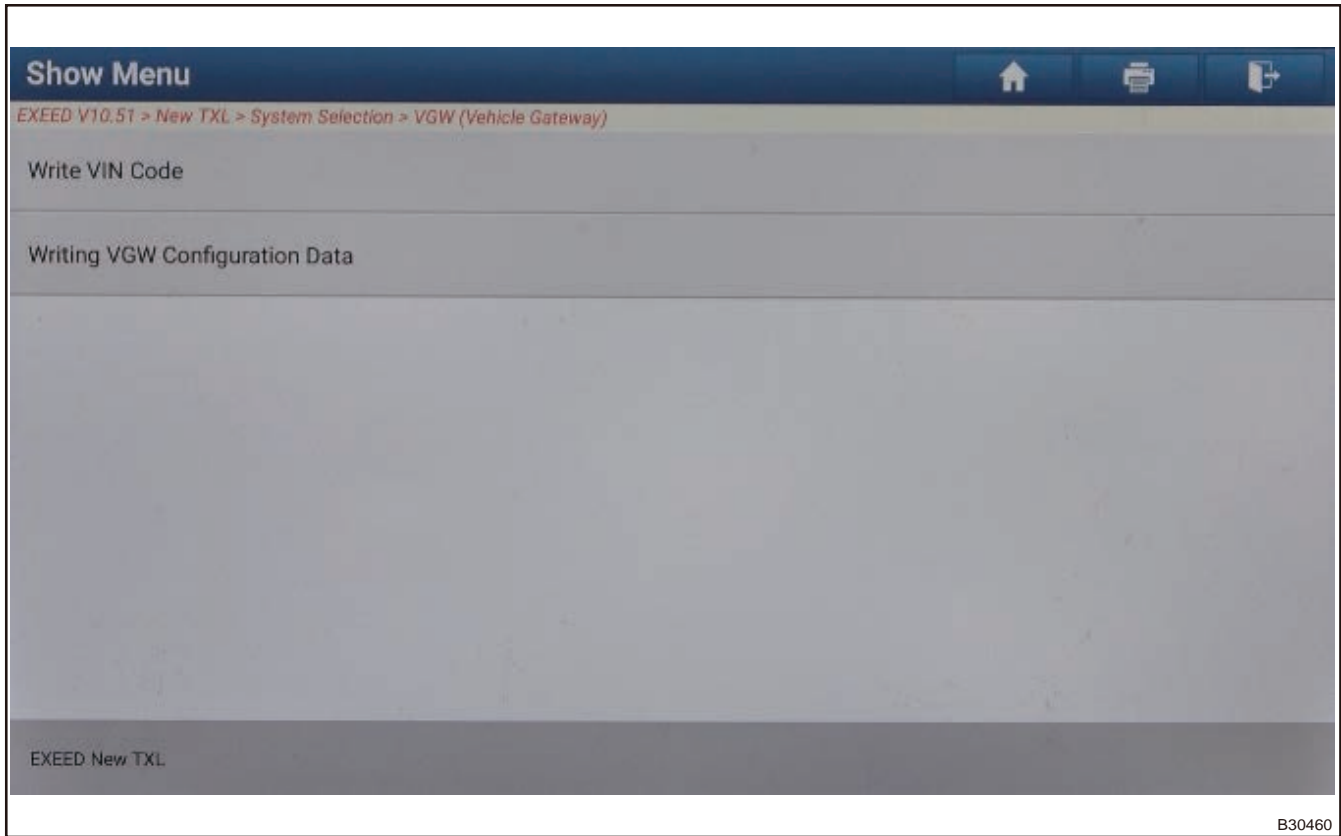


(6) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Read Vehicle Configuration Information Successfully” .

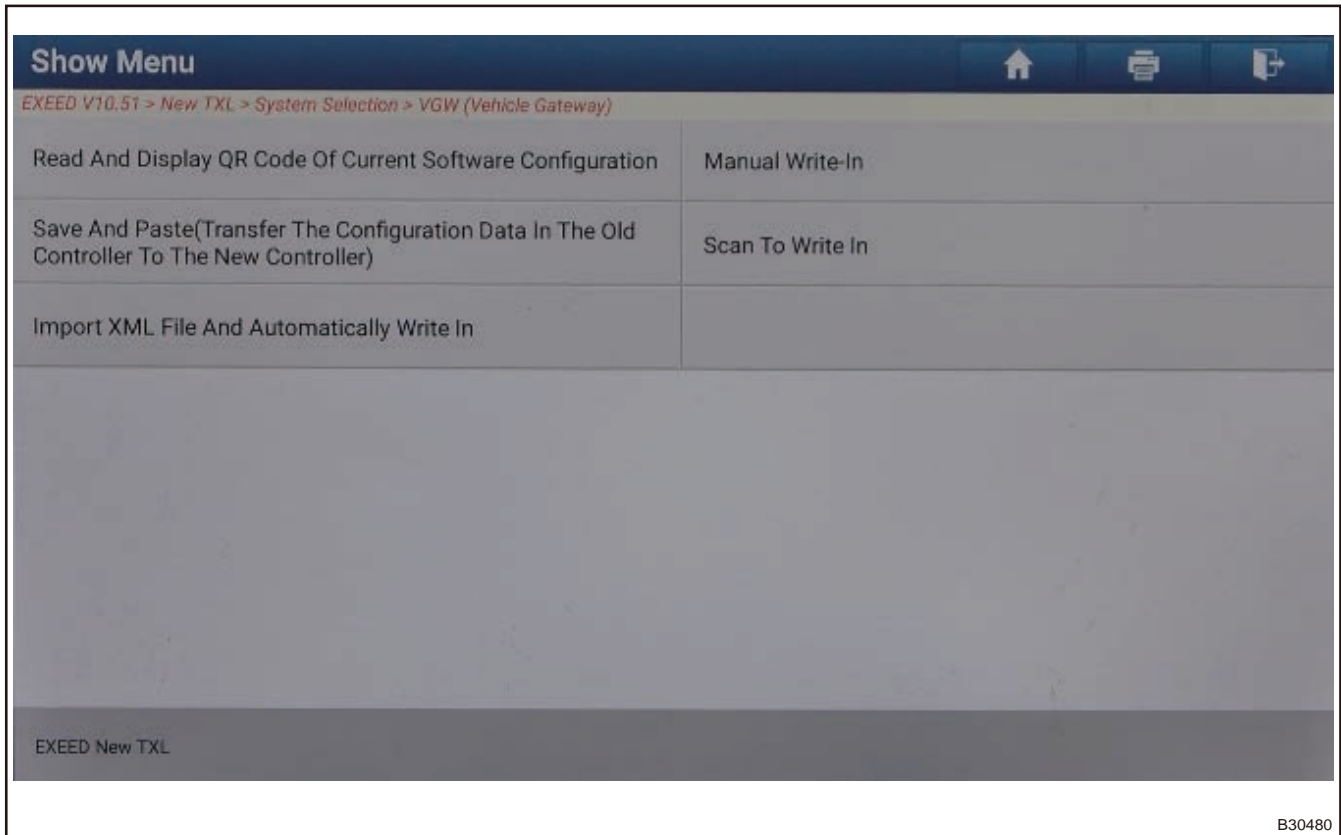


■ Writing VGW Configuration Data

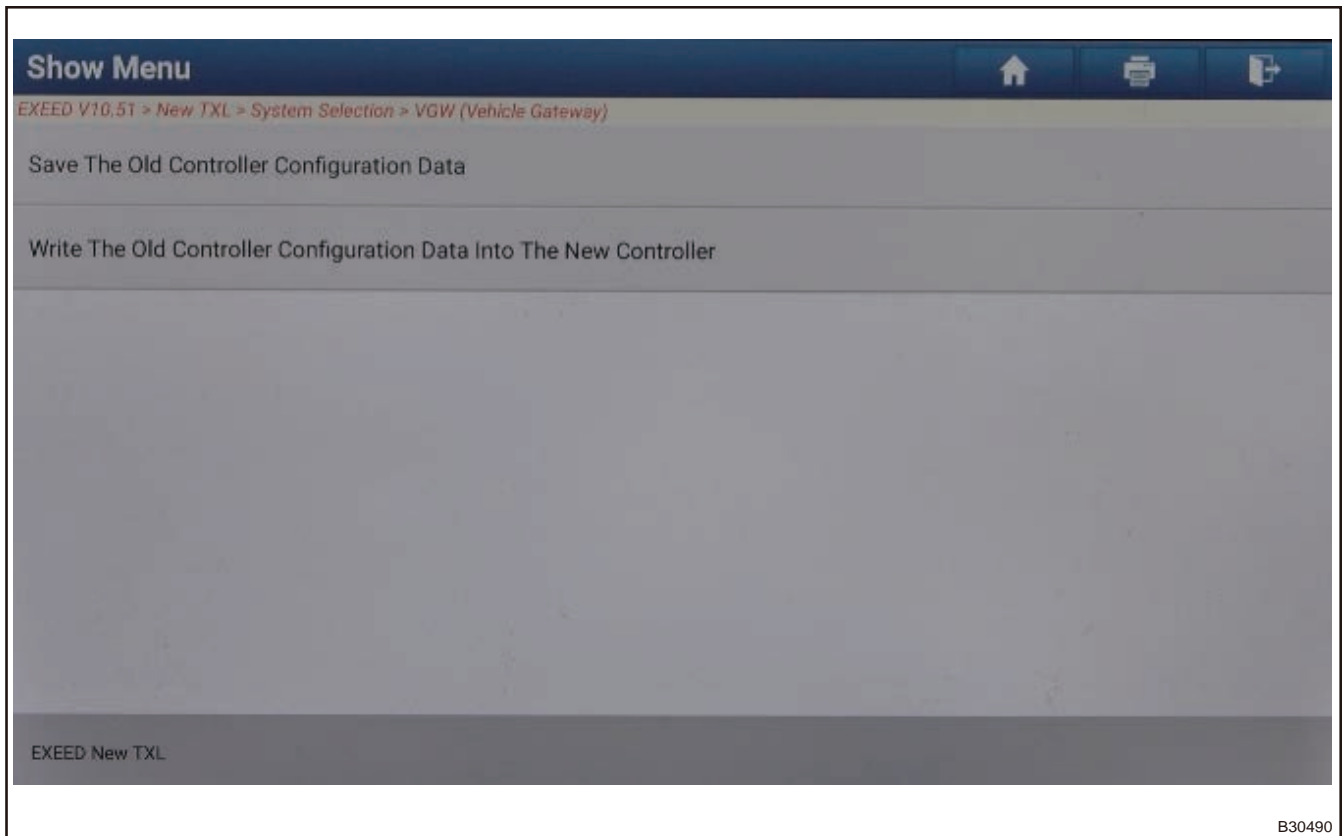
(1) Click “Writing VGW Configuration Data” .



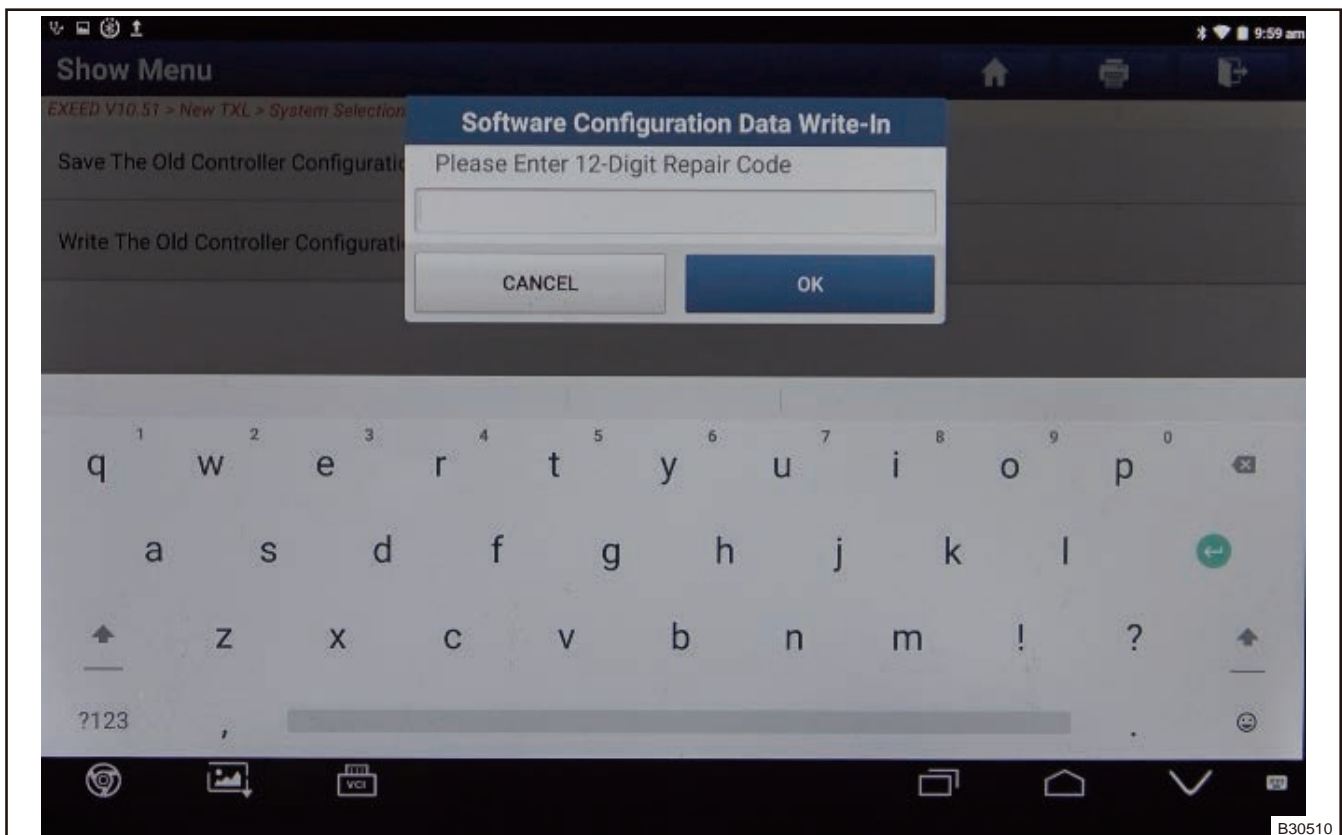
- (2) Click “Save And Paste (Transfer The Configuration Data In The Old Controller To The New Controller)” .



- (3) Click “Write The Old Controller Configuration Data Into The New Controller” .



(4) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Please Enter 12-Digit Repair Code” .



(5) Click “OK” after entering.

(6) Click “YES” after confirming that repair shop code is correct again.

- (7) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Saved Vehicle Configuration Code Last Time” . Click "Yes" after confirming that they are consistent.
- (8) The diagnostic tester interface shows “Write Configuration Data Successfully” .
- (9) Click “OK” .
- (10) The diagnostic tester interface prompts “Configuration Data Check is Valid” , then configuration data check is valid, click “OK” click “OK” .

BODY ELECTRICAL

47.1	HORN	1806
1	Warnings and Precautions	1806
1.1	Precautions	1806
2	System Overview	1806
2.1	System Description	1806
2.2	System Components Diagram	1807
3	DIAGNOSIS & TEST	1807
3.1	Problem Symptoms Table	1807
3.2	Troubleshooting for Abnormal Horn Sound	1808
3.3	Diagnostic Help	1808
3.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1808
3.5	Ground Inspection	1809
3.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1809
3.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1810
4	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1812
4.1	Tool	1812
4.2	Replacement of Dual Pitched Horn	1812

47.1 HORN

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing horn.
- (2) Operate carefully to prevent damage to horn and horn switch, when removing horn.
- (3) Connect connectors in place when installing horn.
- (4) Check that each function can operate properly after installing.

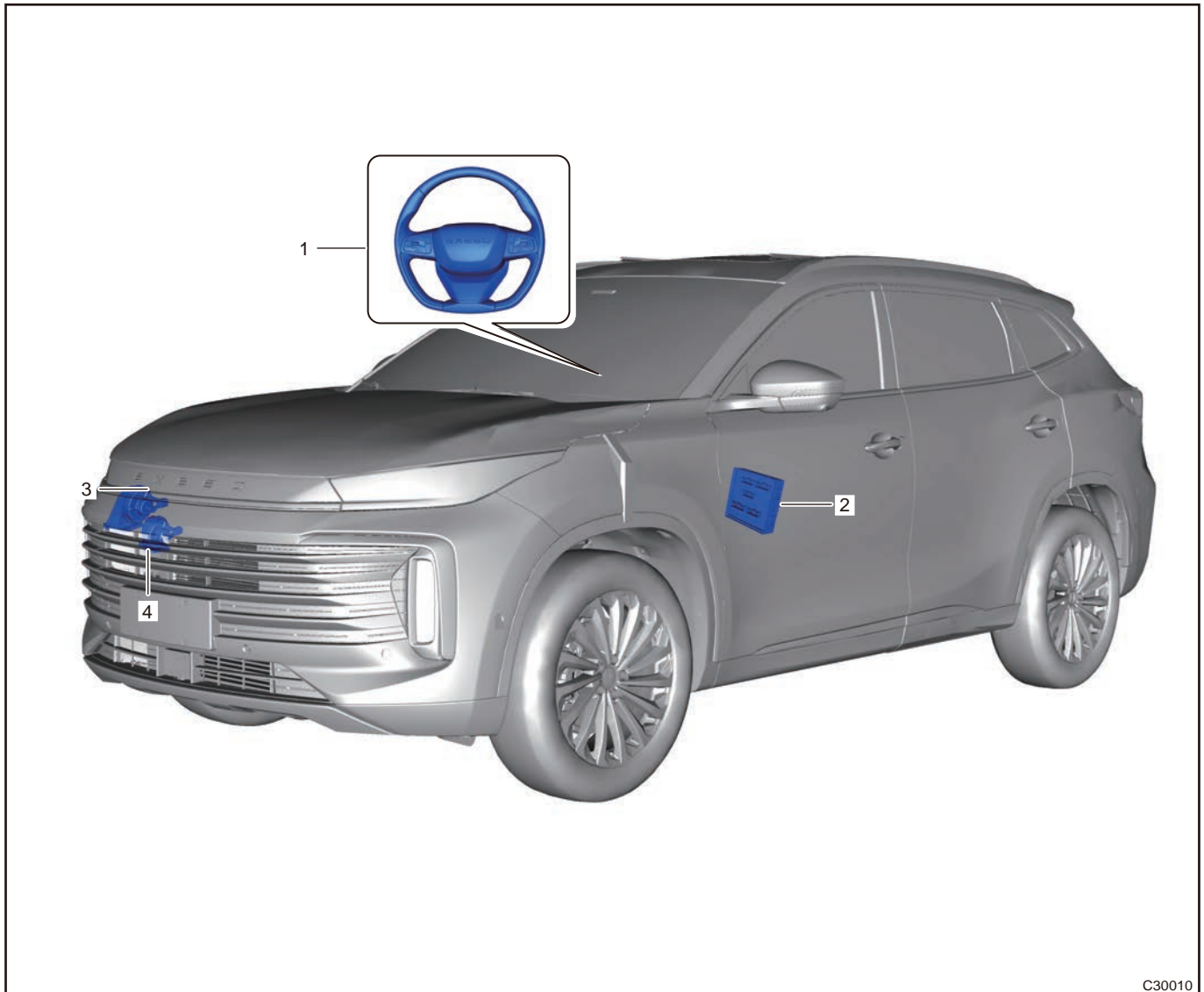
2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

This vehicle is equipped with dual electronic horn (high pitched, low pitched) system. Horn system consists of following components:

- Horn: High pitched horn is installed in groove of front bumper crossmember left mounting plate, and low pitched horn is installed in groove of front bumper crossmember right mounting plate.
- Horn switch: Horn switch is installed on steering wheel.
- Horn fuse: Horn fuse is located in engine compartment fuse and relay box.
- Horn relay: Horn relay is located in engine compartment fuse and relay box.

2.2 System Components Diagram



C30010

1	Horn Switch	2	Instrument Panel Fuse and Relay Box
3	High Pitched Horn	4	Low Pitched Horn

3 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

3.1 Problem Symptoms Table

⚠ Caution

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Current Status	Possible Cause
Low pitched horn does not sound	Low pitched horn (damaged)
	Wire harness (open)
	Connector (loose)

Current Status	Possible Cause
High pitched horn does not sound	High pitched horn (damaged)
	Wire harness (open)
	Connector (loose)
Horn does not sound	Horn fuse (blown)
	Horn relay
	Horn switch (damaged)
	Spiral cable (damaged)
	Wire harness (short or open)

3.2 Troubleshooting for Abnormal Horn Sound

- (1) If horn sound is obviously abnormal, perform the following routine inspection:
 - 1) Check terminals for poor contact; repair any poor contact problem;
 - 2) Check ground circuit; if there is poor contact, repair it;
 - 3) Make sure horn assembly fixing bolt is properly fastened;
 - 4) Make sure there is no contact between horn assembly and any other objects; if contact occurs, determine the correct position of other objects again, bend the horn assembly bracket if necessary, and operate horn to determine if the situation still exists.
- (2) If the situation is still obvious, perform the following specific inspection:
 - 1) Determine the type of sound produced by horn;
 - Grave.
 - Sharp.
 - 2) If it is obviously grave, it indicates that the current is too high and the horn assembly must be replaced;
 - 3) If it is obviously sharp, foreign matters may attach to horn, remove horn assembly and check for foreign matters;
 - 4) Remove any attached foreign matters and reinstall the horn assembly.

Caution

If no foreign matter is found, or if the foreign matter cannot be removed, replace horn assembly.

3.3 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 PAD (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.

- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

3.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

3.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B103711	Horn External Relay Circuit Failure (LSD)	When output is off and ignition switch is OFF, output voltage is more than 7 V, and it is stored as current fault. (The error is less than 10%, the time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 10MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, load will be output as long as operating conditions of load are met.)	Relay or wire harness fault	1. Check wire harness connector; 2. Relay; 3. Check BCM.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B103712	Horn External Relay circuit Failure (LSD) Overload	Output current is more than 5A (The time of duration is more than 100 MS, the software will detect once every 20MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive times of detection. The detection will start after 2 seconds since power supply is turned on. Regardless of key position, turn signal light will output as long as operating conditions of turn signal light are met.) and it is stored as current fault.		

3.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ Controller fault

DTC	B1037-11	Horn External Relay Circuit Failure (LSD)
DTC	B1037-12	Horn External Relay circuit Failure (LSD) Overload

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check horn relay (ERLY13) and fuse EF07 (15A)
----------	--

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Remove horn relay and fuse, test horn relay for damage.

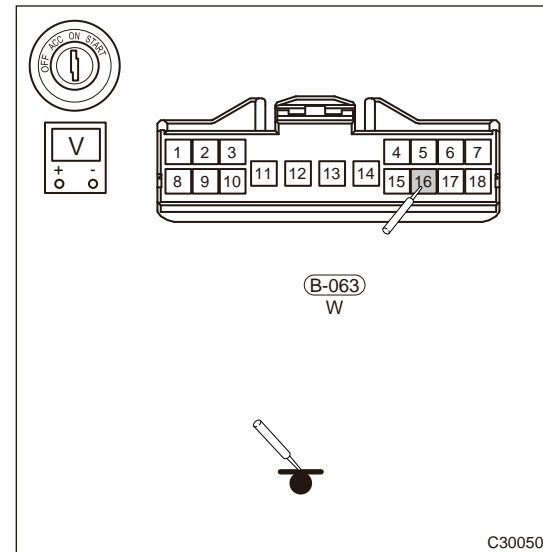
NG	Replace relay or fuse.
-----------	-------------------------------



2	Check power supply voltage of horn relay
----------	---

- (a) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (b) Using a digital multimeter, check if voltage between connector terminal B-063 (16) and ground is normal according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Specified Condition
B-063 (16) - Ground	Not less than 12 V



NG

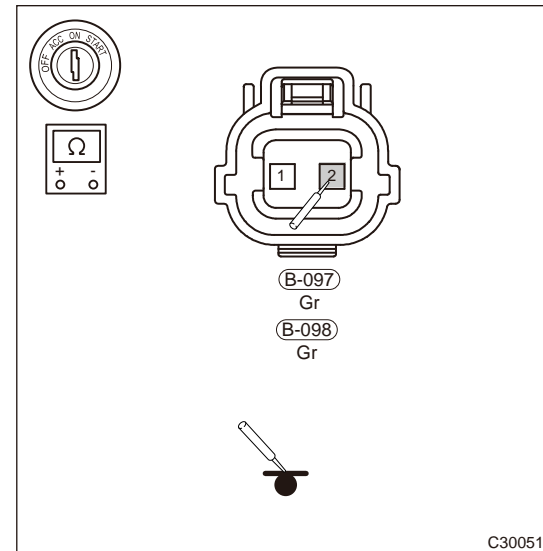
Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

3 Check horn wire harness

- (a) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance between high/low pitched horn connectors B-097 and B-098 and ground to check for an open circuit according to table below.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-097 (2) - Ground point GB-134	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-098 (2) - Ground point GB-134	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

Repair or replace related wire harness.

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (b) Start the engine.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

NG

Replace BCM module

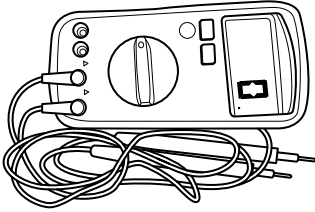


System operates normally

4 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

4.1 Tool

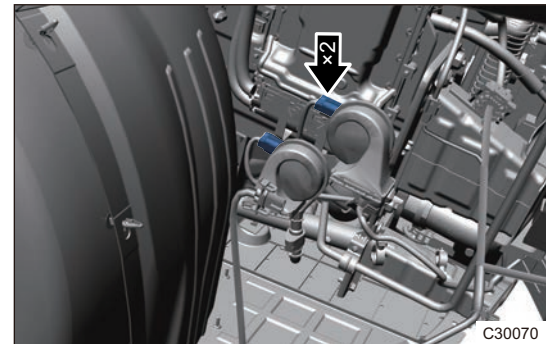
■ **General Tool**

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>

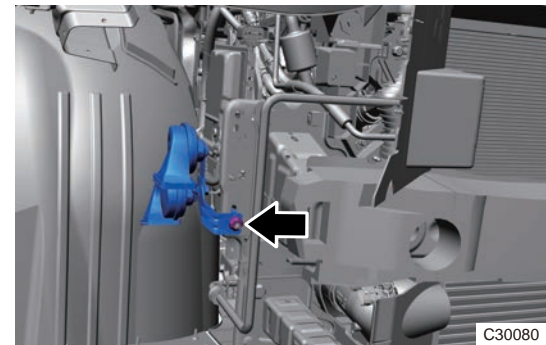
4.2 Replacement of Dual Pitched Horn

■ **Removal**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the low pitched horn and high pitched horn wire harness connectors.



- (5) Remove fixing bolt from dual pitched horn bracket.



■ Inspection

- (1) Check the horn fuse.
 - 1) Identify the horn fuse in engine compartment fuse and relay box.
 - 2) Check the horn fuse.
 - 3) Using a fuse puller, remove the horn fuse EF07 (15A).
 - 4) Check if fuse is blown. Replace fuse if it is blown.

Caution

Use a fuse with the same specification as original fuse to avoid affecting the normal use of electrical equipment.

- (2) Check the high pitched horn.

Apply battery voltage to high pitched horn and check operation of high pitched horn.

Measurement Condition	Condition	Specified Condition
Battery positive (+) - Terminal 1	Always	Horn sounds
Battery negative (-) - Terminal 2		

If result is not as specified, replace horn.

- (3) Check the low pitched horn.

Apply battery voltage to low pitched horn and check operation of low pitched horn.

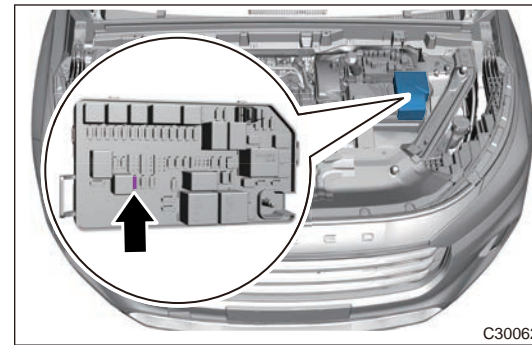
Measurement Condition	Condition	Specified Condition
Battery positive (+) - Terminal 1	Always	Horn sounds
Battery negative (-) - Terminal 2		

If result is not as specified, replace horn.

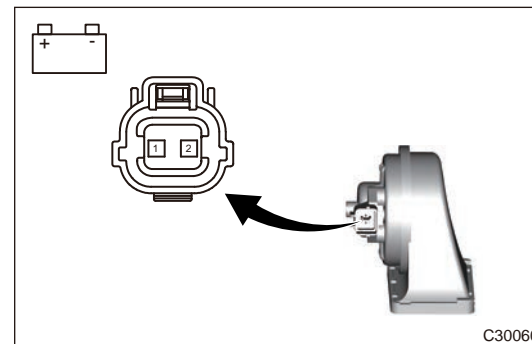
■ Installation

- (1) Install the dual pitched horn bracket fixing nut.

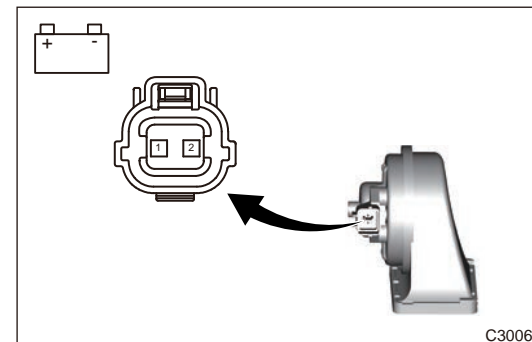
Installation torque: 20 ± 2 N·m
- (2) Connect the dual pitched horn wire harness connector.
- (3) Install the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Connect and tighten negative battery cable.
- (5) Turn the ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and conduct test.



C30062



C30060



C30061

BODY ELECTRICAL

48.1	BODY CONTROL SYSTEM	1816
1	System Overview	1816
1.1	System Components Diagram.....	1816
1.2	Component Operation Description.....	1817
1.3	Defrost function	1817
1.4	Turn signal light function	1817
1.5	Hazard warning light function	1817
1.6	Position light.....	1817
1.7	Low beam light.....	1818
1.8	Follow me home	1818
1.9	Car locating.....	1818
1.10	Automatic lighting.....	1818
1.11	High beam light	1818
1.12	Flash function	1819
1.13	Front fog light control	1819
1.14	Rear fog light control	1819
1.15	Daytime running light.....	1819
1.16	Dome light.....	1819
1.17	Luggage compartment light	1820
1.18	Rear view mirror foot light.....	1820
1.19	Window	1820
1.20	Anti-theft management.....	1821
1.21	Luggage compartment opening management.....	1822
1.22	Door, hood and luggage compartment door status	1822
1.23	Central control lock.....	1823
1.24	Front wiper control.....	1823
1.25	Front washer control	1824
1.26	Rear wiper control	1824
1.27	Rear washer control	1824
1.28	Back-up light control.....	1825
1.29	Emergency alarm function	1825
1.30	Brake light control.....	1825
1.31	Rear view mirror folding and heating	1825
1.32	DVD settings	1826
1.33	Remote control function.....	1826
1.34	LIN ambient light	1827
2	DIAGNOSIS & TESTING.....	1829
2.1	Terminal Definition	1829
2.2	Problem Symptoms Table	1833
2.3	Diagnostic Help.....	1833
2.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1833
2.5	Ground Inspection	1834
2.6	Malfunction Diagnosis Repair Flow.....	1834
2.7	Trouble Symptom Diagnosis	1834

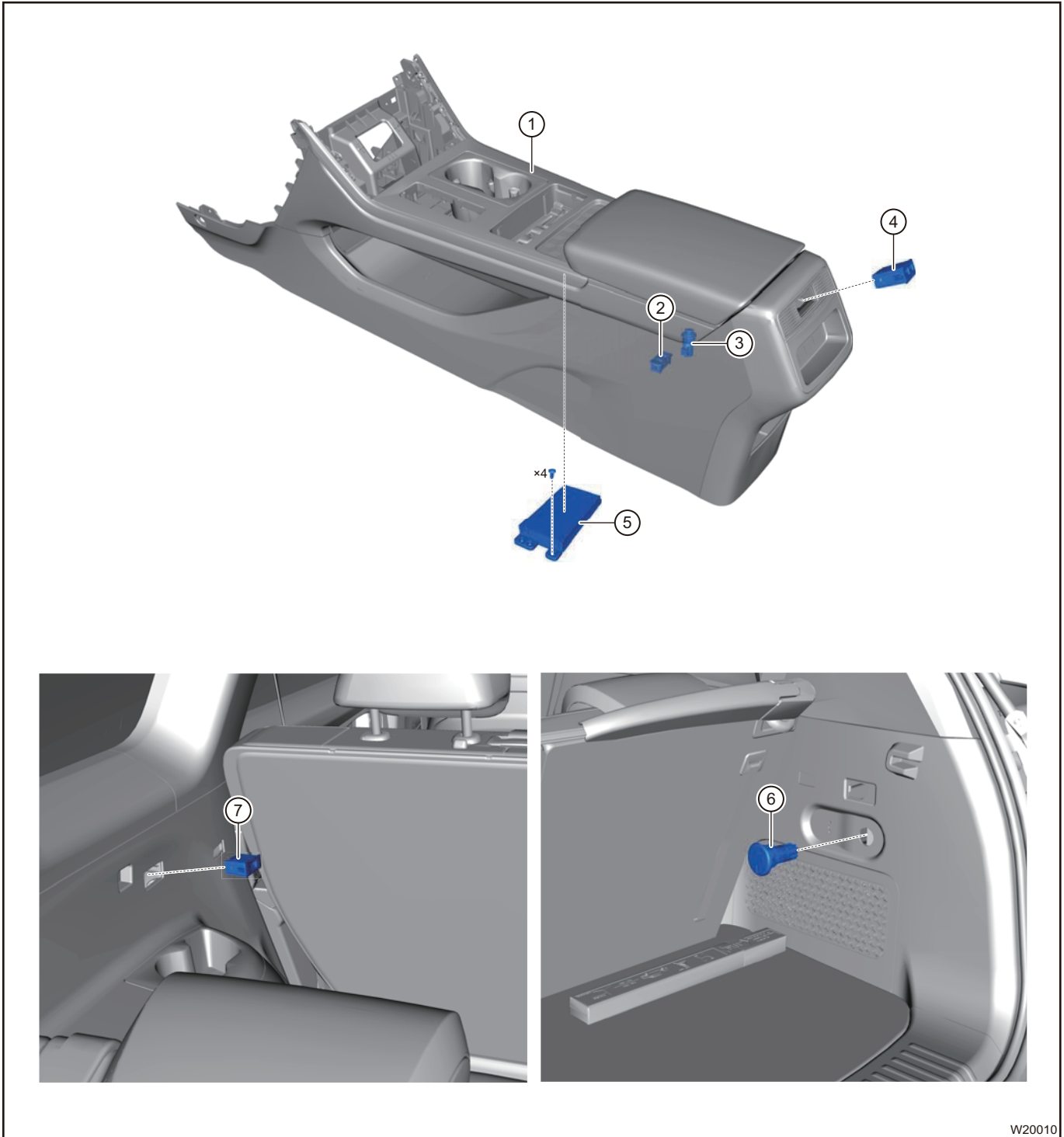
BODY ELECTRICAL

3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1835
3.1	Tools	1835
3.2	Body Control Module	1836

48.1 BODY CONTROL SYSTEM

1 System Overview

1.1 System Components Diagram



W20010

BCM is installed under instrument panel on driver side. Body control module is called BCM for short which integrates most of vehicle electrical appliances, and it is an important part of the body electrical system.

1.2 Component Operation Description

■ Function description

- Tire pressure function (if equipped): Tire pressure monitoring system is an active safety device, which can monitor tire pressure and temperature in real time and display tire pressure and temperature on meter. When tire pressure is too low or temperature is too high, tire pressure monitoring system will warn the driver of driving danger.
- Window jam protection function (if equipped): When window auto up or remote one-button window up function is operated, if a passenger is jammed by automatically rising window due to carelessness, the jam protection control module controls glass regulator motor to operate in reverse before motor reaches the set jam protection force, so that window glass lowers a certain distance, thus preventing passenger from being jammed.
- The main functions are as follows: Defrost, turn signal light, lane change, hazard warning light, position light, park light, low beam light, follow me home, car location, automatic lighting, high beam light, flash function, rear fog light control, daytime running light, battery save, dome light, rear dome light, rear view mirror foot light, window, PEPS start button backlight control, anti-theft management, luggage compartment door opening management (with PLG), door status, central lock, front wiper control, front washer control, rear wiper control, rear washer control, back-up light control, key status position signal, sudden braking hazard warning light double flashing alarm function, assist steering illumination, brake light control, rear view mirror folding, DVD settings, remote control function, LIN ambient light.

1.3 Defrost function

- (1) When IGN ON and engine is started (including the state that engine automatically turns off when idle start and stop system operates), defrost signal is activated.
- (2) When defroster is operating: Defroster stops after 20 minutes are elapsed.
- (3) When defroster is operating: Defroster stops when defroster signal is activated again.
- (4) When defroster is operating: Defroster stops when key is switched from IGN ON to ACC or OFF.
- (5) When defroster is operating: After the operation time reaches to 20 min. \pm 5 s, defroster stops.
- (6) When defroster is operating: Defroster function pauses when engine cranks while it resumes after engine has started.

Caution

Under normal temperature (3°C ~ 5°C), when battery power is less than 35% (open circuit voltage of battery is about 12.22 V), defroster function will be disabled and unavailable; after battery power is greater than 37.5%, defroster function will be available again.

1.4 Turn signal light function

- (1) With hazard warning light not activated, if hazard warning light switch is pressed, BCM should light up turn signal lights on both sides at the same time in a cycle of 960 ms;
- (2) When ignition switch state is in KL15, KL15+ or KL50 and BCM receives a valid CAN signal during emergency braking, BCM should light up turn signal lights on both sides in a cycle of 240 ms;
- (3) When BCM receives a valid CAN network collision signal, BCM should light up turn signal lights on both sides in a cycle of 960 ms.

1.5 Hazard warning light function

- (1) With hazard warning light not activated, if hazard warning light switch is pressed, BCM should light up turn signal lights on both sides at the same time in a cycle of 960 ms;
- (2) When ignition switch state is in KL15, KL15+ or KL50 and BCM receives a valid CAN signal during emergency braking, BCM should light up turn signal lights on both sides in a cycle of 240 ms;
- (3) When BCM receives a valid CAN network collision signal, BCM should light up turn signal lights on both sides in a cycle of 960 ms.

1.6 Position light

- (1) Activation conditions for position light: Power supply is in IGN ON, ACC, START position; position light input or low beam light input is activated.
- (2) When position light is operating: BCM should send CAN signal.

- (3) When position light is operating: When position light input and low beam input are deactivated, position light stops operating.
- (4) When position light comes on, if ignition key is turned to OFF position, position light will turn off after 30 minutes. If any state of four doors and back door changes or an unlock/lock signal is received within 30 minutes, the timing will restart.

1.7 Low beam light

- (1) Activation conditions for low beam light: IGN ON, low beam light switch is activated.
- (2) When low beam light is activated: BCM sends CAN signal.
- (3) When low beam light is activated: When low beam light switch input is canceled, low beam light turns off immediately.
- (4) When low beam light is activated: When key is turned from IGN ON to ACC or OFF, low beam light turns off immediately.

1.8 Follow me home

- Within 1 minute after ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to OFF mode, operate combination light switch to steering wheel side or away from steering wheel side and release, follow me home function is activated, and low beam and position light will come on for 30 seconds; Operate follow me home function again before the setting time is reached, the follow me home function will be turned off; Follow me home function will automatically turn off, and low beam and position light will go off immediately after the setting time is reached.
- When ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to ACC/ON mode, follow me home function will automatically turn off, and low beam and position light will go off immediately.
- User can set delay on/off for headlight in head unit system and turn on follow me home function and set the time for light to automatically turn on; within 1 minute after ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to OFF mode, follow me home function can be turned on and off any number of times.

1.9 Car locating

- After the vehicle is locked, operate remote control lock button twice within 2 seconds to activate intelligent car locating function, low beam light and position light will automatically turn on for 30 seconds, turn signal light will flash three times and horn will sound three times. When car locating function is activated, if accompanying horn sound prompt can be set in head unit.

1.10 Automatic lighting

- (1) Activation conditions for automatic light: IGN is in ON position; light switch is turned to AUTO, LIN valid signal sent from rain sensor is received.
- (2) After automatic lighting is activated, BCM sends low beam light and position light CAN signal to the instrument cluster.
- (3) Low beam lights turn off if any condition is met.
 - IGN switch is not in ON position.
 - Light switch is switched from AUTO.
 - Rain sensor LIN signal is invalid.
- (4) When automatic light function is activated and deactivated, position light and low beam light turn on and off at the same time.

1.11 High beam light

- (1) Operating conditions for high beam light: IGN ON; low beam light is in activated status, and high beam light switch is activated.
- (2) When high beam light is operating: High beam light turns on and sends CAN signal.
- (3) When low beam light is operating: When engine starts, high beam light temporarily stops operating but CAN data will be sent continuously and resume operation after engine starts.
- (4) When high beam light is operating: When high beam light switch is deactivated, high beam light turns off.
- (5) When high beam light is operating: When low beam light switch is deactivated, high beam light turns off.
- (6) When high beam light is operating: When key is turned from IGN ON to ACC or OFF, high beam light turns off.

1.12 Flash function

- (1) Flash operating conditions: It can be activated at any power supply position (except starting process).
- (2) When Flash is operating: High beam lights turn on and send CAN signal.
- (3) When Flash is operating: When engine starts, high beam lights temporarily stop operating but CAN data will be sent continuously and resume operation after engine starts.
- (4) When Flash is operating: When Flash switch is deactivated, high beam light turns off.

1.13 Front fog light control

- (1) Operating conditions for front fog light: With IGN-ON, position light or low beam light turned on, front fog light switch is activated.
- (2) When front fog light is operating: Front fog lights turn on and sends CAN signal.
- (3) When front fog light is operating: When front fog light switch is activated again, front fog light turns off.
- (4) When front fog light is operating: When key is switched from IGN ON to ACC or OFF, front fog light turns off.
- (5) When front fog light is operating: When position light and low beam light are turned off, front fog light turns off.

1.14 Rear fog light control

- (1) Operating conditions for rear fog light: With IGN ON, front fog light or low beam light or high beam light turned on, rear fog light switch is activated.
- (2) When rear fog light is operating: Rear fog light turns on and sends CAN signal.
- (3) When rear fog light is operating: When rear fog light switch is activated again, rear fog light turns off.
- (4) When rear fog light is operating: When key is switched from IGN ON to ACC or OFF, rear fog light turns off.
- (5) When rear fog light is operating: When front fog light is turned off (if front fog light is equipped) or low beam light is turned off (if front fog light is not equipped), rear fog light turns off.

1.15 Daytime running light

- (1) Operating conditions for daytime running light: Engine is started, position light is not activated;
- (2) When daytime running light is operating: When engine is stopped, daytime running light function turns off.
- (3) When daytime running light is operating: Position light or hazard warning light is activated, causing daytime running light to be turned off. When turn signal light is activated, daytime running light on the illuminated side of turn signal light turns off.
- (4) When daytime running light is operating: Flash function does not affect daytime running light operation.

1.16 Dome light

- (1) Dome light ON mode
 - If corresponding map light switch is in OFF state and the current mode switch is in ON state, front map light will be in dome light ON mode; if corresponding mode switch is in AUTO mode, rear map light will also be in dome light ON mode.
- (2) Dome light OFF mode
 - If corresponding mode switch is in OFF state, the corresponding map mode switch will be in OFF mode, and rear map light will be in dome light OFF mode.
 - If the corresponding mode switch is in OFF state, front map light will be in dome light OFF mode when the current mode switch is in OFF mode; if corresponding mode switch is in AUTO mode, rear map light will also be in dome light OFF mode.
- (3) Door opening AUTO mode
 - If the corresponding map light switch is in OFF state, front map light will be in AUTO mode when the current mode switch is in AUTO mode. If the corresponding mode switch is in AUTO mode, rear map light will also be in AUTO mode.

1.17 Luggage compartment light

- (1) Operating conditions for luggage compartment light: When luggage compartment door is opened, luggage compartment light continuously turns on.
- (2) When luggage compartment light is operating: When luggage compartment door is closed, luggage compartment light turns off immediately.

1.18 Rear view mirror foot light

- (1) Unlocking operation triggering foot light function
 - Condition: Complete a unlocking operation successfully in OFF position (including remote control unlocking, mechanical key unlocking, touch door handle switch unlocking and induction unlocking); Operation after the rear view mirror is unfolded in night mode: Foot light comes on for 25 seconds immediately after unlocking operation is performed (if rear view mirror is in folded state currently, a delay of 2 seconds will be required, the light comes on after rear view mirror unfolds; If the rear view mirror is in unfolded state currently, the light comes on immediately); after 25 seconds, if timeout occurs or locking operation is performed or if ignition switch is switched to any position other than OFF, foot light will be turned off immediately.
- (2) Courtesy light triggering foot light function
 - Condition: Courtesy light comes on in OFF position; Operation after the rear view mirror is unfolded in night mode: Foot light comes on for 25 seconds immediately after unlocking operation is performed (if rear view mirror is in folded state currently, a delay of 2 seconds will be required, the light comes on after rear view mirror unfolds; If the rear view mirror is in unfolded state currently, the light comes on immediately); after 25 seconds, if timeout occurs or courtesy light is turned off or if ignition switch is switched to any position other than OFF, foot light will be turned off immediately.
- (3) Door opening triggering foot light function
 - Conditions: Operation with vehicle in deactivation mode, any one of four side doors open and rear view mirror in unfolded state: Foot light comes on for 10 minutes immediately after unlocking operation is performed (if rear view mirror is in folded state currently, the light will not come on); After 10 minutes, if timeout occurs or if ignition switch is switched to any position other than OFF, foot light will be turned off immediately; If the four side doors are closed, foot light will be turned off after a delay of 25 seconds.

Caution
During lighting up of foot light, if other operating conditions are met, foot light will start timing again according to the new operating condition.

1.19 Window

- (1) Activation condition for window: Within 1 minute after turning to IGN ON, ACC or OFF and both front doors are not opened, window switch is activated.
- (2) Window switch has 4 states:
 - Manual UP: When switch is in this position, window is moving up. When switch leaves this position, window stops.
 - Manual DOWN: When switch is in this position, window is moving down. When switch leaves this position, window stops.
 - Auto UP: When switch is in this position, window is moving up automatically until it stops due to block or position changed.
 - Auto DOWN: When switch is in this position, window is moving down automatically until it stops due to block or position changed.
- (3) When window is operated under auto mode: Press corresponding window up or down switch again to stop the operation.
- (4) When window is operated under auto mode: For example, after 1 minutes which described in point 1, the operating window stops after finishing this operation.
- (5) When window is operated under manual mode: For example, after 1 minutes which described in point 1, the operating window stops immediately.
- (6) Within 1 minutes when key is turned to OFF: If front left door opens, window function is disabled.

- (7) When window disable switch is activated: Input of passenger side will be disabled; The automatically operating window operated by passenger side switch will stop after this window operation is completed, and the manual mode window operation operated by passenger side switch will stop immediately. When window disable switch is deactivated, passenger side input is disabled to cancel and window disabled indicator goes off.
- (8) With key in OFF: When front left door is opened, window switch input will be invalid (it is still invalid when front door is opened and then closed); With front door open, the automatically operating window will stop after this window operation is completed, and the manual mode window operation will stop immediately.
- (9) When engine starts, the automatically operating window will stop immediately, and it automatically resumes the operation after starting. The window operation in manual mode will stop when starting, and it cannot resume after engine is started.

1.20 Anti-theft management

- (1) Fortifying mode
 - 1) Trigger conditions:
 - IGN is in OFF (it is not in IGN ON or ACC)
 - Four doors & two covers are closed;
 - BCM receives remote control lock command.
 - 2) BCM feedback when fortifying mode is entered:
 - Turn signal light flashes once and sends corresponding CAN signal;
 - Anti-theft indicator flashes;
 - Actuate the anti-theft horn to sound.
- (2) Fortifying failure mode
 - 1) Trigger conditions:
 - IGN OFF;
 - Any of four doors & two covers is open;
 - BCM receives remote control lock command.
 - 2) When entering fortifying failure mode:
 - If four doors are closed and any of the two covers is open, BCM will perform lock once, while turn signal light flashes three times and horn sounds three times;
 - If any door other than front left door is not closed, BCM will perform central control lock operation, turn signal light will not flash, and horn will not sound;
 - If front left door is not closed, BCM will do not perform central control lock, turn signal light will not flash, and horn will not sound.
- (3) Intrusion mode
 - 1) Trigger conditions: BCM will enter to alarm status after the following conditions are met when the vehicle is in fortifying mode:
 - Doors or engine hood is opened;
 - Key is turned to IGN ON;
 - Luggage compartment is opened forcibly.
 - 2) After entering to intrusion mode, BCM feedback the conditions within one alarm cycle (300 s):
 - After anti-theft alarm is triggered, horn will sound for 30 seconds within one alarm cycle; Turn signal light will flash for 300 seconds; Anti-theft indicator will not flash.
 - 3) All doors, engine hood, luggage compartment and IGN ON illegal activation action are alarm trigger sources:
 - 10 alarm cycles can be triggered at most;
 - Once triggered, no matter whether trigger source disappears or not, an alarm cycle will be completed; If the alarm is triggered again, it will re-enter the alarm state; After the alarm cycle ends, BCM is still in fortifying mode.
- (4) Fortifying deactivation mode
 - Activation conditions: Vehicle is in alarm mode; BCM receives RF unlock command or signal is detected within 1 second after key is turned to IGN ON;

- When alarm is released: Vehicle exits anti-theft function mode; anti-theft horn (high and low pitched horns (if equipped)) stops working, and the turn signal light stops flashing;
 - After alarm is released: Anti-theft indicator turns off.
- (5) Re-fortifying mode
- 1) Trigger conditions:
 - Vehicle is in fortifying mode;
 - BCM receives remote control unlock command.
 - 2) BCM feedback when fortifying mode is released:
 - Theft deterrent indicator turns off immediately;
 - Turn signal light flashes twice and sends corresponding signal.
 - 3) Within 30 ± 2 seconds after fortifying mode is released:
 - If any of all doors, engine hood or luggage compartment are open, BCM exits anti-theft mode;
 - If all four doors & two covers are always closed, BCM will lock automatically and enter the fortifying state after 30 seconds, and anti-theft indicator will flash.
- (6) Luggage compartment opening mode
- 1) Trigger conditions:
 - Vehicle is in fortifying mode;
 - BCM receives the remote control open command of luggage compartment.
 - 2) BCM feedback when luggage compartment opening mode is triggered:
 - Turn signal light illuminates and sends the corresponding signals;
 - Luggage compartment is open and no alarm is triggered.
 - 3) Then close the luggage compartment, vehicle returns to the fortifying state, the luggage compartment switch cannot open luggage compartment.
 - 4) After using remote control to open the luggage compartment: After BCM receives remote control lock command, vehicle will immediately lock and return to fortifying state, but the turn signal light prompts fortifying failure.
 - 5) After using remote control to open the luggage compartment and close it again: After BCM receives remote control lock command, vehicle will immediately lock and return to fortifying state, but the turn signal light prompts fortifying successfully. If there is no registered key after the luggage compartment closed, the switch will not open the luggage compartment.

1.21 Luggage compartment opening management

- (1) When the vehicle is in fortifying deactivation mode:
 - 1) When the luggage compartment switch is activated, the luggage compartment opens/closes, and turn signal light flashes.
 - 2) During the process of opening/closing back door, press remote control briefly to stop the current action of back door.
- (2) When the vehicle is in fortifying mode:
 - 1) Luggage compartment is open/closed.
 - IGN OFF/ACC position;
 - BCM receives remote control luggage compartment command, turn signal light flashes.
 - 2) During the process of opening / closing back door, press remote control briefly to stop the current action of back door.
 - 3) After back door is closed, the vehicle returns to fortifying state.

1.22 Door, hood and luggage compartment door status

- (1) BCM sends CAN signal to open/close front left door.
- (2) BCM sends CAN signal to open/close front right door.
- (3) BCM sends CAN signal to open/close rear left door.
- (4) BCM sends CAN signal to open/close rear right door.
- (5) BCM sends CAN signal to open/close engine hood.

(6) BCM sends CAN signal to open/close luggage compartment.

1.23 Central control lock

(1) Central control lock activation conditions:

- Close all four doors;
- Vehicle is not in anti-theft state;
- Central control lock locked switch is activated.

(2) Central control unlock activation conditions:

- Central control lock unlocked switch is activated;
- Vehicle is not in anti-theft state.

(3) Activation conditions for locking/unlocking mechanical lock:

- Activation conditions for mechanical central control unlock: Power supply is in OFF, ACC or ON;
- Activation conditions for mechanical central control lock: Power supply is in OFF or ACC;

(4) Activation conditions for auto unlock (if equipped):

- Vehicle speed is 0 km/h;
- Door lock is locked;
- Key is switched to OFF from other positions.

Caution

The bench testing needs to ensure that there is no speed signal after IGN is turned off.

(5) Collision unlock:

- After BCM receives CAN signal with IGN ON: BCM performs central control unlock twice and the interval time is 3 seconds (regardless of the door state); lock operation is prohibited; When key is turned to OFF and then back to ACC/ON, or any door status changes from open to closed, BCM receives unlock or lock signal twice within 240 ms, and the second time will be ignored.

Caution

- **BCM receives unlock or lock command twice within 3 seconds and the second time will be ignored.**
- **BCM is powered on again after powered off, BCM has no lock or unlock action.**
- **For remote control lock and unlock function, please refer to lock and unlock contents in anti-theft management.**

1.24 Front wiper control

(1) Low speed wiper mode (Note: Wiper switch)

- Activation conditions: IGN ON, low speed range switch of the wiper is activated;
- When low speed wiper is operating: When wiper switch is switched to other operation mode, the wiper will work in other modes immediately;
- When wiper switch is switched to OFF from low speed range, the wiper will operate at low speed automatically until it returns to wiper stop position (whether it is IGN ON or not).

(2) High speed wiper mode

- Activation conditions: IGN ON, high speed range switch of the wiper is activated;
- When high speed wiper is operating: When wiper switch is switched to other operation mode, the wiper will work in other modes immediately;
- When wiper switch is switched to OFF from high speed range, the wiper will operate at low speed automatically until it returns to wiper stop position (whether it is IGN ON or not).

(3) Intermittent wiper mode (without rain sensor)

- 1) Activation conditions: IGN ON, wiper intermittent/automatic switch is activated.
- 2) Wiper sensitivity switch is used to select 4 gear positions: Intermittent time corresponding to each sensitivity switch of the wiper is related to the vehicle speed. The higher the vehicle speed, the

shorter the intermittent time. When vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h, the intermittent time is: 24s, 15s, 8s, 3s.

- 3) When the intermittent wiper activation status switches intermittent time to other gear positions, the operation status of wiper is as below:

When new time interval is shorter than the original one:

- If wiper is in pause status, wiper will operate at new interval at once;
- If wiper is in moving status, wiper will operate at new interval since it is paused.

When new time interval is longer than the original one:

- If wiper is in pause status, wiper will start to operate at a new interval at once;
- If wiper is in moving status, wiper will operate at new interval since it is paused.

- (4) Auto wiper (with rain sensor)

- With switch at AUTO position, BCM receives LIN signal sent from rain sensor, and drives wiper to operate;
- Once LIN signal S_AUTO_H is received, wiper operates at high speed;
- Once LIN signal S_AUTO_L is received, wiper operates at low speed;
- When LIN signal stops or ignition key is turned from ON, if wiper is not at stop position, wiper stops after operating to stop;
- Operation stops during ignition and restores when ignition is finished.

- (5) Wiper service mode

- Within 30 seconds when ignition state is switched from IGN-ON to IGN-OFF, if ignition switch is valid, BCM drives front wiper to operate in low-speed mode for 700 ms and stop at the middle of the windshield for easy maintenance;
- With wiper in wiper maintenance position, if ignition state is switched to IGN-ON, wiper is activated, or ignition state is switched from OFF to ON again, BCM will drive wiper back to the initial position.

1.25 Front washer control

- (1) Operating condition for front washer: IGN ON.
- (2) Front washer operation will keep on outputting when front washer input is activated, the maximum output time is 12 seconds each time.
- (3) The washer stops operating when starting, and resumes operating after starting.
- (4) When front washer operation is over.
 - When wiper switch is in OFF position, wiper will operate for 3 cycles at low speed, and it operates for 1 cycle again after 6 ± 0.2 seconds; If BCM receives new front washer operation requirements during 3 cycles and 6 seconds of this wiper, wiper will perform new operation;
 - When front washer operation ends, if wiper is in intermittent, low speed, and high speed mode, wiper will wipe at low speed for 3 cycles, and then continue to maintain the previous operating mode.

1.26 Rear wiper control

- (1) Activation conditions: IGN ON, rear wiper is activated.
- (2) During rear wiper is operating, if rear wiper switch is turned to OFF and rear wiper is not in Stop position, rear wiper will continue to operate until it stops at stopping position.
- (3) During rear wiper is operating, if ignition key is turned to ON and rear wiper is not in Stop position, rear wiper will continue to operate until it stops at stopping position.
- (4) During rear wiper operation, the rear wiper when engine starts, and resumes operating after engine has started.
- (5) When BCM judges front wiper is opened and reverse gear is input, rear wiper operates automatically at intermittent position. When either front wiper or reverse gear is closed, rear wiper stops operation.

1.27 Rear washer control

- (1) Operating condition for rear washer: IGN ON.
- (2) Rear washer operation will keep on outputting when rear washer input is activated, the maximum output time is 12 seconds each time.
- (3) The rear washer stops operating when engine starts, and resumes operating after engine has started.

- (4) When rear washer operation is finished:
 - When wiper switch is in OFF position, wiper will operate for 3 cycles at low speed; If BCM receives new rear reset operation requirements during 3 cycles, wiper will perform new operation;
 - When wiper is in sweeping mode, wiper will sweep in original condition and continue to keep original condition after washer switch is released.

1.28 Back-up light control

- (1) If all of the following conditions are met, back-up light should be activated:
 - Ignition state is kl15; or
 - Shift input is activated.
- (2) Shift input is activated.
 - Ignition state is OFF;
 - Reverse gear input is invalid.

1.29 Emergency alarm function

■ Emergency alarm function activated

- (1) BCM should output a alarm request (REQ_PanicAlarm = Activation) through an internal signal, if all the following conditions are met:
 - Emergency alarm function is not activated;
 - Emergency alarm function is set to ON (Setting_Panicenable = Enable);
 - Without DCM: Long press CDL switch lock button (HW_CDL_SW = lock) (press for more than CDL_LONG_PRESS_TIME), after receiving an alarm command, BCM should send an alarm immediately;
 - In addition, once emergency alarm function is activated, BCM will output an alarm message via CAN signal (WarnMsg_BCM) for the message reminder on the IPC.

■ Emergency alarm function OFF

- (1) When emergency alarm function is activated and the following conditions are met, BCM does not output an alarm request through internal signals:
 - Emergency alarm function is set to OFF to receive RKE lock signal from CAN;
 - Receive RKE unlock signal from CAN;
 - Using DCM: Once CDL command signal—value of Lock || is received;
 - Using DCM: Once the CDL command signal with -UnLock || is received;
 - Without DCM: Press CDL switch to lock the button;
 - Without DCM: Press CDL switch to unlock the button;
 - In addition, once alarm function is invalid, BCM will output alarm message via CAN signal for the message reminder OFF on the IPC.

1.30 Brake light control

- (1) When any of following conditions is met, turn on the brake light function:
 - When brake switch is pressed, brake switch is a high level self-locking switch;
 - CAN signal sent from EPB is received;
 - CAN signal sent from ESC is received.
- (2) When brake light function is turned on, left and right brake lights and high mounted stop light turn on at the same time.
- (3) When all the above conditions are not met, left and right brake lights and high mounted stop light will turn off simultaneously.

1.31 Rear view mirror folding and heating

■ Rear view mirror folding

- (1) The switch is point contact type. Press the folding switch, the mirror is automatically folded, and press it again, the mirror is automatically unfolded.
- (2) After power supply is cut off, BCM determines that rear view mirror is in folded state by default, and folding switch operation needs to be operated once to synchronize BCM memory state with the actual state.

- (3) When the vehicle speed is greater than 15 km/h, the folding function is shielded and the unfolding function works.
- (4) When engine starts, the unfolding/folding function is paused and the function resumes after engine has started.

■ Rear view mirror heating

(1) Rear view mirror heating

- Heating state of rear view mirror is the same as that of rear window;
- If rear window heater is activated, BCM should activate rear view mirror heating function at the same time;
- If rear window heating function is in OFF status, BCM should turn off rear view mirror heating function at the same;

(2) Automatic rear view mirror heating

Automatic heating function of OSM complies with the rain condition provided by RLS when front wiper switch is in the "automatic wiper" position. When rear view mirror is automatically heated, it will not be affected by rear window defroster switch command and OSM heating command.

If the following conditions are met, BCM should automatically activate rear view mirror heating function:

- Automatic rear view mirror heating function is set to ON;
- Ignition status is in ON;
- Engine status (KL15+) (EngineState = running);
- Front wiper switch is in "automatic wiper" position;
- While receiving front wiper operation signal, BCM outputs the following CAN signals: Automatic rear view mirror heating; rear view mirror automatically heats up through an alarm message.

Hint
The automatic rear view mirror heating is affected by engine start and stop function.

1.32 DVD settings

(1) Fortifying prompt

- DVD is set to Light, turn signal light flashes once and horn does not sound when it is fortified;
- DVD is set to Horn, horn sounds and turn signal light does not flash when it is fortified;
- DVD is set to Light and Horn, turn signal light flashes and horn sounds when it is fortified.

(2) Auto lock

- DVD is set to ON to turn on the auto lock function; DVD setting is OFF to turn off the auto lock function.

(3) Headlight delay

- DVD is set to On to turn on the headlight delay function; DVD is set to off to turn off the headlight delay function.

(4) Rear view mirror folding

- DVD is set to On to turn on the rear view mirror auto folding function; DVD is set to off to turn off the rear view mirror auto folding function.

1.33 Remote control function

(1) Remote fortifying mode

1) Trigger conditions:

- IGN is in OFF (it is not in IGN ON or ACC)
- Four doors & two covers are closed;
- BCM receives remote fortifying command.

2) BCM feedback when fortifying mode is entered:

- Turn signal light flashes once and sends corresponding signal;

(2) Remote fortifying deactivation mode

- 1) Trigger conditions:
 - IGN is in OFF (it is not in IGN ON or ACC)
 - Four doors & two covers are closed;
 - BCM receives remote fortifying command.
- 2) BCM feedback when remote fortifying deactivation mode is entered:
 - BCM performs fortifying deactivation operation, four doors and luggage compartment unlock and left/right turn signal lights flash twice.
- (3) Remote open luggage compartment mode
 - 1) Trigger conditions:
 - Key position is in OFF;
 - BCM receives remote open luggage compartment command.
 - 2) BCM feedback when luggage compartment opening mode is triggered:
 - Turn signal light illuminates and sends the corresponding signals;
 - Meanwhile, trunk is opened and no alarm is triggered.
- (4) Remote car location mode
 - 1) Trigger conditions:
 - IGN-OFF/IGN-ACC;
 - BCM receives car location function command.
 - 2) BCM feedback when remote fortifying deactivation mode is entered:
 - High and low pitched horns sound, left and right turn signal lights flash and low beam lights turn on.
- (5) Remote start mode
 - 1) Trigger conditions: BCM receives PEPS signal.
 - 2) BCM feedback when remote start mode is entered.
 - Anti-theft alarm function caused by ON gear position is shielded, but caused by four doors, engine hood and luggage compartment is not shielded;
 - After BCM receives engine state signal, it will turn on position light and send signals.
 - 3) Exit remote start mode: Turn the key to OFF position.
 - 4) BCM feedback when remote start mode is exited:
 - BCM will not shield the anti-theft alarm caused by ON gear position;
 - BCM sends signals.

1.34 LIN ambient light

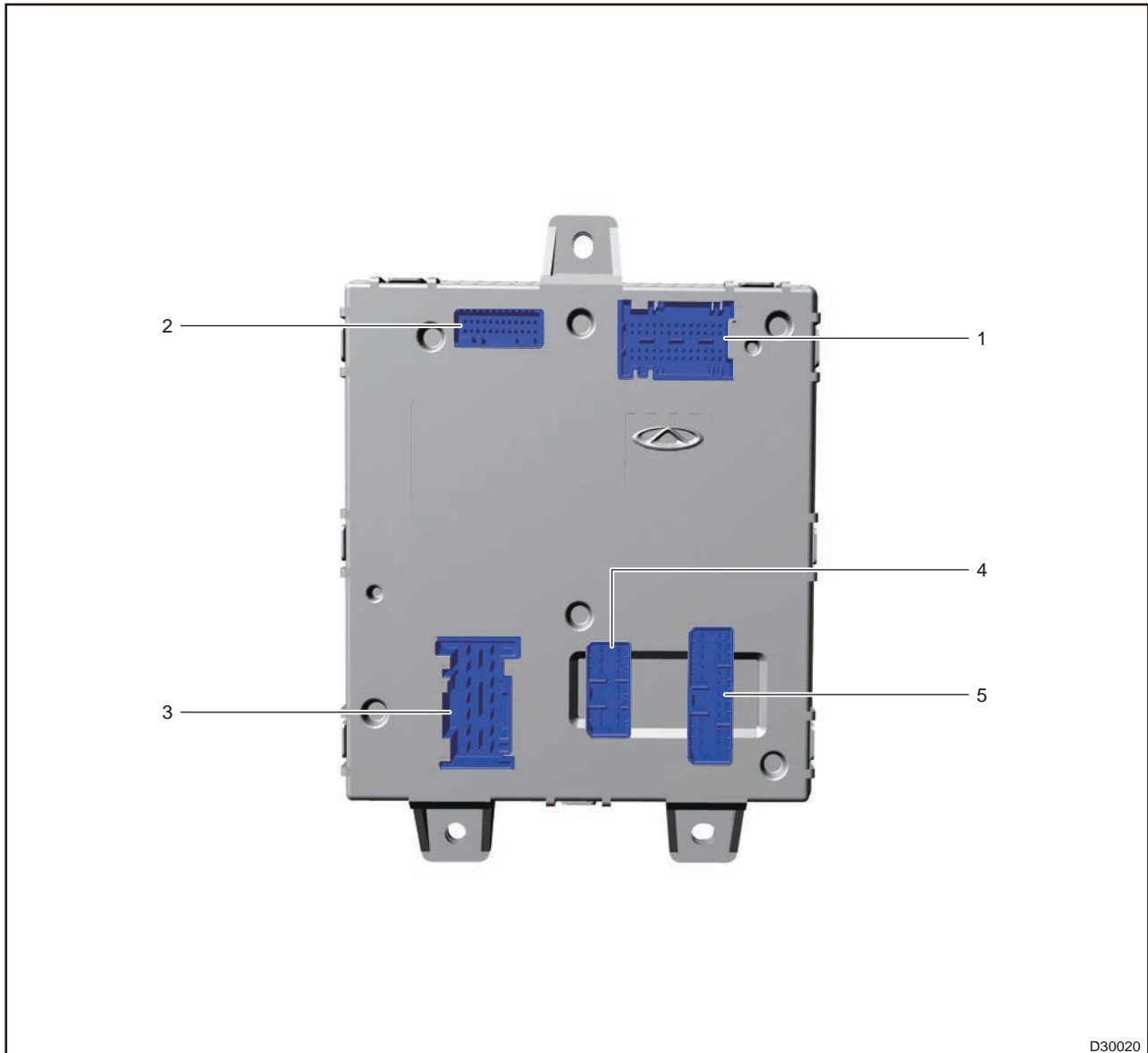
- (1) Initial status
 - When vehicle rolls from the line and powered on for the first time or vehicle battery is powered on again after disconnection, ambient light function default is on, and it turns on/off according to DVD setting.
- (2) Ambient light turns on/off
 - 1) When all the following conditions are met, BCM sends LIN signals (ambient light ON):
 - Position light output is in activated state;
 - DVD setting is ON.
 - 2) Position light output is deactivated or DVD setting is OFF, ambient light turns off.
- (3) Door control logic related to ambient light
 - 1) When all the following conditions are met, BCM sends LIN signals (ambient light ON):
 - Position light output is deactivated;
 - Vehicle is in fortifying deactivation mode;
 - Any door is open;
 - DVD setting is ON.

- 2) Ambient light turns on for 3 minutes.
 - 3) Close all vehicle doors within 3 minutes after ambient light is turned on, and ambient light is turned off after 8 seconds.
 - 4) Open any other door within 3 minutes after ambient light comes on, and then count again for 3 minutes after last door is opened.
 - 5) When the position light output is not activated, if any condition is met, BCM will immediately send LIN signal (ambient light turns off):
 - Vehicle enters fortifying mode successfully;
 - DVD setting is off.
- (4) Ambient light color
- 1) After the vehicle is powered on first time after leaving production line or powered on after battery is disconnected and reconnected from vehicle, the related driving mode is OFF by default. And it turns on/off according to DVD setting.
 - 2) When related driving mode is off: Ambient light default color is blue, and different colors can be selected according to DVD setting.
 - 3) When related driving mode is on:
 - Ambient light is green under ECO mode;
 - Ambient light is red under sport mode;
 - Ambient light is blue under Normal mode.
- (5) Ambient light brightness (musical rhythm)
- 1) Initial status
 - When vehicle rolls from the line and powered on for the first time or vehicle battery is powered on again after disconnection, musical rhythm mode default is off.
 - 2) When musical rhythm mode is off: Ambient light brightness is Level 3, and different levels can be selected according to DVD setting.
 - 3) When musical rhythm mode is on: According to different brightness level signals sent from IHU, it changes levels from zero with the musical rhythm.

2 DIAGNOSIS & TESTING

2.1 Terminal Definition

■ Body Control Module Terminal Definition



D30020

1-52	Pin Connector	2-24	Pin Connector
3-14	Pin Connector	4-12	Pin Connector
5-20	Pin Connector		

■ Pin No.52 Connector Terminal Definition

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
1-01	-	1-27	Dome Light Output
1-02	-	1-28	-
1-03	-	1-29	Rear Defroster Output
1-04	Window Lock Indicator Light	1-30	High Speed Wiper Output

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
1-05	Front Left Steering Diagnosis	1-31	Position Light and Signal Light Output
1-06	Front Right Turn Diagnosis	1-32	-
1-07	Hard Wire Crash	1-33	Driver Side Front Right Window Regulator Switch 8
1-08	Rear Right Position Feedback	1-34	Driver Side Front Left Window Regulator Switch
1-09	-	1-35	Back Door Unlock Signal Input
1-10	Rear Left Door Open Signal	1-36	Passenger Side Window Regulator Disabled Switch
1-11	-	1-37	Front Right Door Open Signal
1-12	Rear Right Door Open Signal	1-38	-
1-13	Front Left Door Unlock Status Signal	1-39	Brake Switch Signal
1-14	-	1-40	-
1-15	-	1-41	Rear View Mirror Defroster Output
1-16	LIN Signal (TDL + RSM)	1-42	Low Speed Wiper Output
1-17	Front Fog Light Output	1-43	Low Beam Light Output
1-18	High Beam Light Output	1-44	Horn Output
1-19	Driver Side Rear Right Window Regulator Switch	1-45	AGND
1-20	Passenger Side Front Right Window Regulator Switch	1-46	-
1-21	Passenger Side Rear Left Window Regulator Switch	1-47	Driver Side Rear Left Window Regulator Switch
1-22	Passenger Side Rear Right Window Regulator Switch	1-48	Back Door Open Signal
1-23	Front Left Door Open Signal	1-49	Central Control Lock Switch Input
1-24	Front Wiper Stop Signal	1-50	Central Control Unlock Switch Input
1-25	Rear Left Position feedback	1-51	-
1-26	Rear Wiper Stop Position Signal	1-52	Engine Hood Contact Switch

■ Pin No.24 Connector Terminal Definition

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
2-01	ESS Indicator Output	2-13	Sign Light Start
2-02	HS-CAN_L	2-14	Hazard Warning Light Operation Indicator Input
2-03	-	2-15	HS-CAN_H
2-04	-	2-16	-
2-05	-	2-17	IGN-ON Signal Input
2-06	-	2-18	-
2-07	ESS Switch Input	2-19	-
2-08	-	2-20	-
2-09	LDW Switch Input	2-21	-
2-10	Rear View Mirror Folding Input	2-22	-
2-11	Hazard Warning Light Input	2-23	-
2-12	-	2-24	Light Adjustment Input

■ Pin No.14 Connector Terminal Definition

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
3-01	Power Supply 3 (Driver Unlock, Rear Wiper and Front/Rear Washer)	3-08	Rear Left Window Up Output
3-02	Power Supply 6 (Door Lock)	3-09	Rear Left Window Down Output
3-03	Ground 1	3-10	Power Supply 1 (Front Right Window and Rear Left Window)
3-04	Ground 2	3-11	Front Right Window Up Output
3-05	Rear Right Window Down Output	3-12	Front Right Window Down Output
3-06	Rear Right Window Up Output	3-13	Front Left Window Up Output
3-07	Power Supply 2 (Front Left Window and Rear Right Window)	3-14	Front Left Window Down Output

■ Pin No.12 Connector Terminal Definition

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
4-01	-	4-07	Backlight Adjustment Output
4-02	Central Control Unlock Output	4-08	Back-up Light Output

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
4-03	Central Control Lock Output	4-9	Power Supply 5 (AZ Lighting and Rear View Mirror)
4-04	Driver Unlock Output	4-10	Rear Wiper Output
4-05	Front Washer Output	4-11	-
4-06	-	4-12	Rear Washer Output

■ Pin No.20 Connector Terminal Definition

PIN	Description	PIN	Description
5-01	-	5-11	High Mounted Stop Light Output
5-02	Rear View Mirror Unfolding Output	5-12	Red Ambient Light Output
5-03	Rear View Mirror Folding Output	5-13	Blue Ambient Light Output
5-04	Left Turn Signal Light Output	5-14	Left Daytime Running Light Output
5-05	Right Turn Signal Light Output	5-15	Right Daytime Running Light Output
5-06	Central Door Lock Indicator	5-16	Battery Save Output
5-07	Front Position Light	5-17	Rear Fog Light Output
5-08	Stop Light Output	5-18	Left Steering Auxiliary Lighting
5-09	Foot Light Output	5-19	Sign Light
5-10	Luggage Compartment Light Output	5-20	Power Supply 4 (Lighting Power Supply)

2.2 Problem Symptoms Table

Symptom	Probable Cause and Recommended Countermeasures
Remote controller failure or distance of remote control is close	<p>(For PEPS model, remote controller failure has nothing to do with BCM. BCM cannot be replaced)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Battery voltage of remote controller is low - Replace the battery. (Voltage of new replaced battery should be more than 2.9 V), it needs to rematch Metallic films are attached to windows, which causes signal to be shielded and vehicle is malfunctioning without any reason. Peel off the metallic films to solve the problem. There is electromagnetic interference. Perform the test at another place. If remote controller is damaged, replace and rematch it.
Rear defroster does not operate	Refer to operation principle (control logic). Check the input and output signal. For diagnosis, please refer to "Perform Diagnosis According to Symptoms"
Turn signal light does not come on	
Small light does not come on	
High beam light does not come on	
Fog light does not come on	
Daytime running light does not come on	
Glass cannot raise up and down	
Door lock cannot lock/unlock/luggage compartment cannot open	
Wiper washer dose not operate or operate abnormally	
Only horn alarms or only turn signal light flashes when it fortifies	It can be set on DVD/navigation interface, refer to On-vehicle Service section

2.3 Diagnostic Help

- Connect diagnostic tester X-431 3G (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- Check and clean all CD system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

2.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.

- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

2.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

2.6 Malfunction Diagnosis Repair Flow

Caution

When reading DTCs, some DTCs are not related to trouble symptom. And these functions are normal and not affect vehicle use, clear them.

- (1) Check if DTC occurs again
 - If malfunction does not occur, check and repair the suspected wire harness and electrical connector. Proceed to the next step if malfunction occurs again.
- (2) Check for DTCs
 - Perform reading to check whether there is any DTC. Proceed to the diagnostic procedures based on malfunction symptoms when there is no DTC. Proceed to the next step when DTC is found:
- (3) Clear and read DTCs again
 - Record DTCs and clear them. Perform test and read DTC again to check whether there is any DTC. Proceed to the diagnostic procedures based on malfunction symptoms when there is no DTC. Proceed to the next step when DTC related to malfunction symptom is found.
- (4) Deal with the malfunction symptom according to DTC
- (5) After inspection and repair, perform test again according to DTC strategy
 - Check and repair it again if malfunction has not been solved.
- (6) After malfunction has been solved, prevent the malfunction from reoccurring according to malfunction causes.
- (7) Malfunction diagnosis ends.

2.7 Trouble Symptom Diagnosis

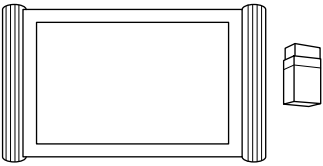
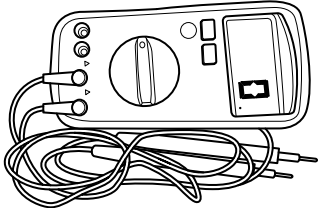
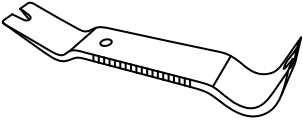
Caution

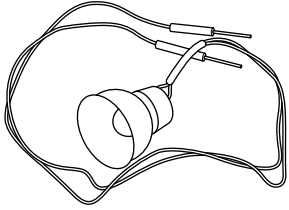
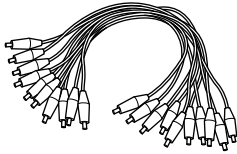
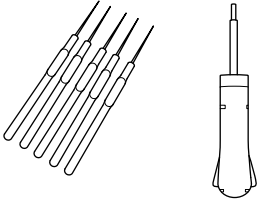
- **If a function of BCM is failed, but there is no DTC, perform diagnosis according to trouble symptom.**
- **This diagnosis needs to combine with control logic (see Operation section). Check input/output signal of BCM for normal operation. If input/output is normal, there is a malfunction in BCM. Otherwise, check the input or output part.**

- (1) Check if DTC occurs again
 - If malfunction does not occur, check and repair the suspected wire harness and electrical connector. Proceed to the next step if malfunction occurs again.
- (2) Check if power supply and ground of controller are normal
 - If it is abnormal, repair the power supply and ground based on the electronic diagram. Proceed to the next step if it is normal.
- (3) According to the control logic, read related data stream with diagnostic tester and check if it is normal
 - If it is abnormal, repair the related input signals based on the circuit diagram. Proceed to the next step if it is normal.
- (4) Perform operation test using diagnostic tester to see if there is any related operations performed by diagnostic tester.
 - If it is normal, input part has no malfunction. Otherwise, proceed to the next step.
- (5) Check if actuator is normal.
 - If result is abnormal, check and repair actuator.
- (6) If above diagnostic results are normal, replace BCM

3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

3.1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH0001006</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH000206</p>
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">RCH002506</p>

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Bulb Test Light (21 W)	 <p>RCH008706</p>
Jumper Wire	 <p>RCH008806</p>
Wire Harness Terminal Tools	 <p>RCH008906</p>

3.2 Body Control Module

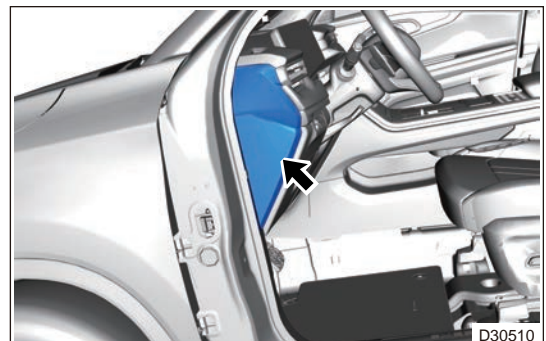
■ Removal

Hint:

- Before replacing BCM, read configurations of the original software. After replacing it, write the original configuration codes.

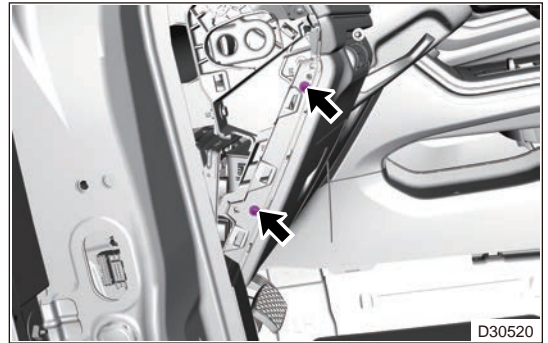
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the body control module.

- 1) Remove the instrument panel left end panel assembly.



- 2) Remove 2 fixing screws from instrument panel lower left protector assembly.

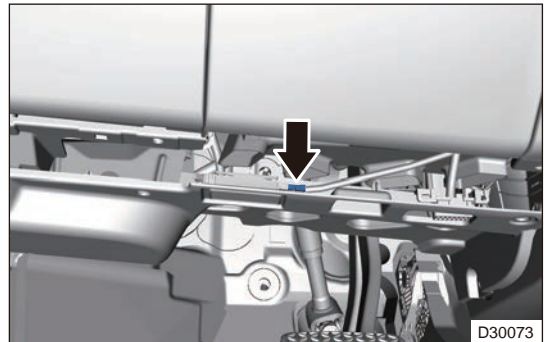
Tightening torque
 $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- 3) Remove the 5 plastic rivets from soundproof board on driver side.



- 4) Disconnect glove box light connector and remove soundproof board on driver side.



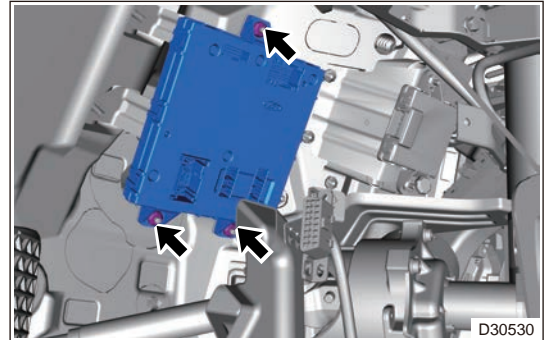
- 5) Remove the instrument panel left lower protector assembly.



- 6) Disconnect the headlight switch wire harness connector.



- 7) Remove the instrument panel fuse and relay box assembly.
- 8) Disconnect the body control module connector.
- 9) Remove 3 fixing nuts from body control module bracket.



■ Installation

- (1) Installation is in the reverse order of removal.

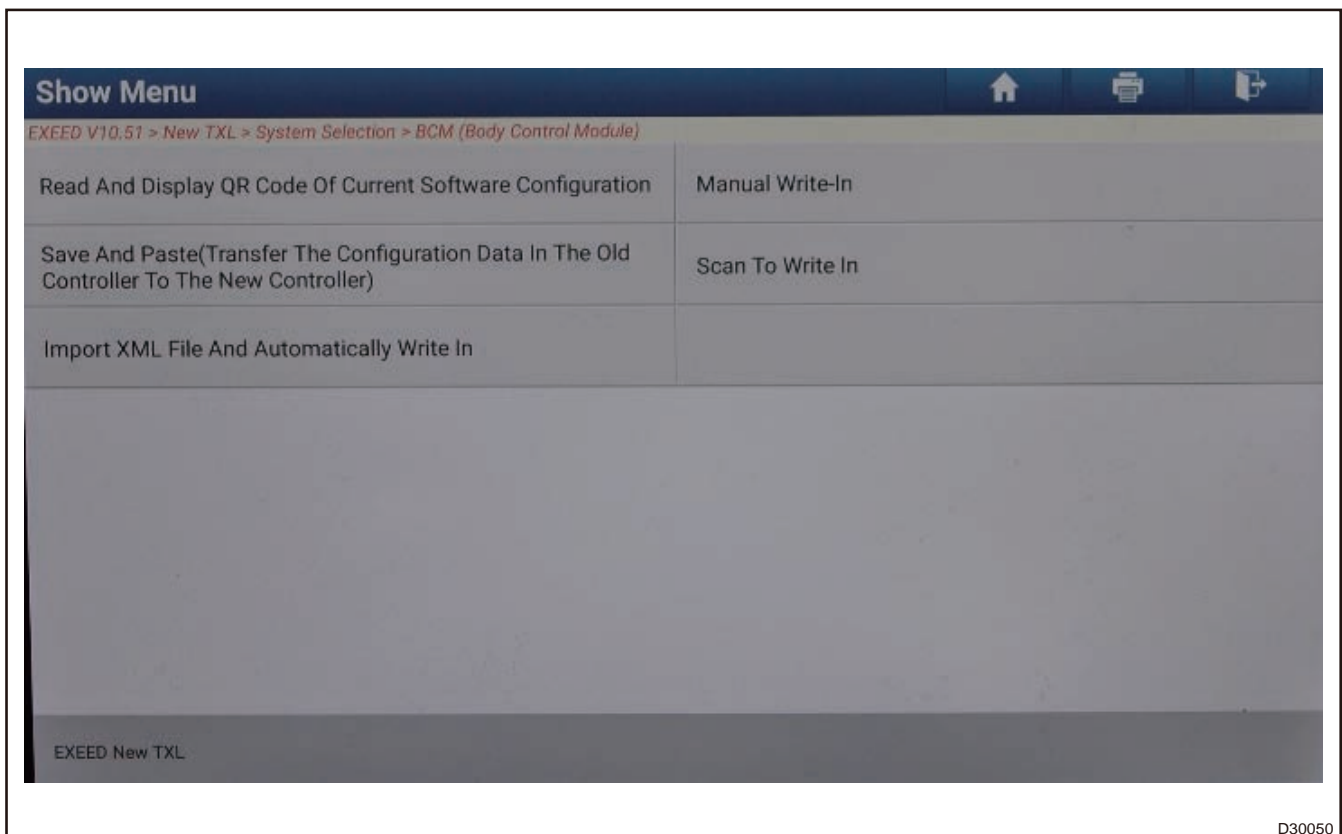
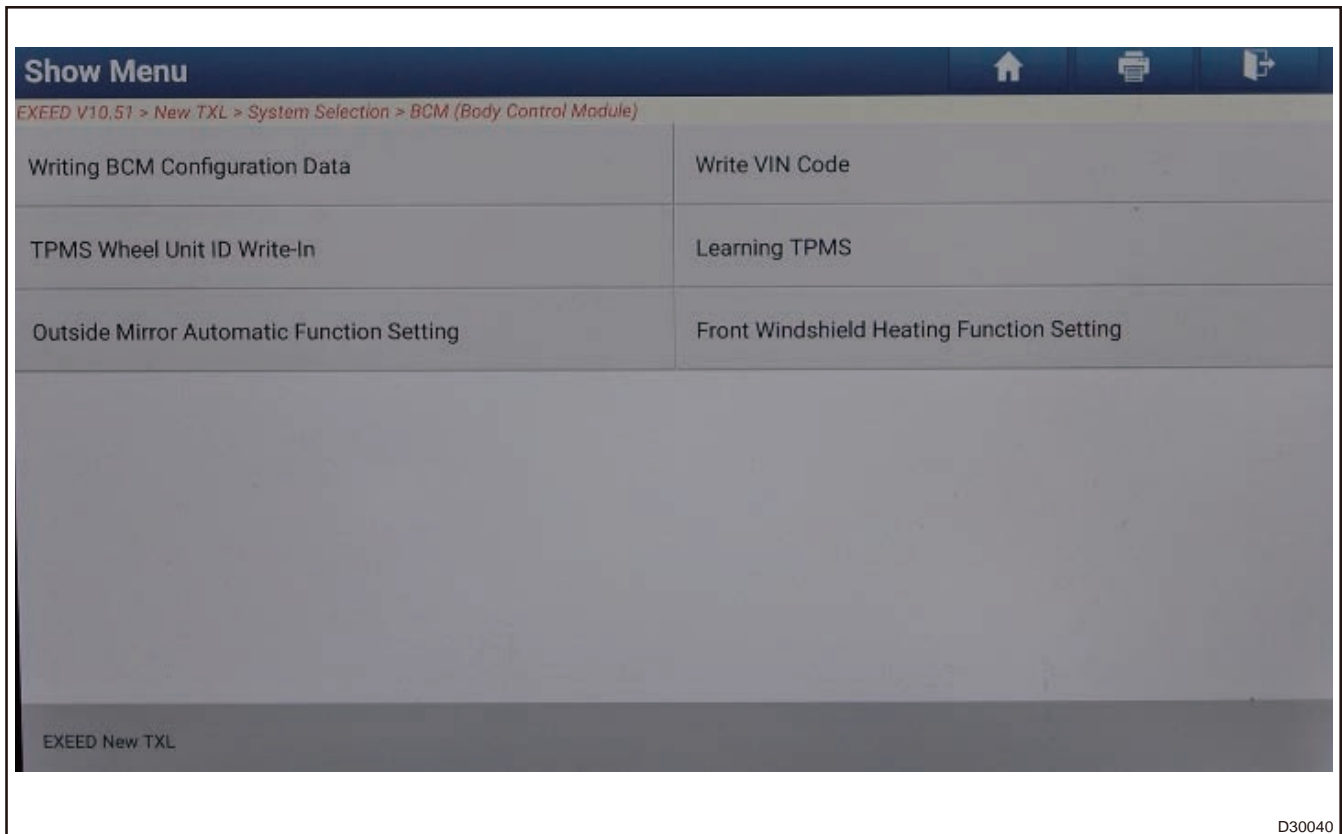
■ Matching Learning

■ Software Configuration Information Writing

Caution

- Write the configuration code after replacing BCM with a new one.
- If it is a non-PEPS model and has engine immobilizer configuration, it needs to be configured for anti-theft matching and then for remote control matching, if it is a PEPS model, there is no need to do the operation in this step.
- Perform tire pressure sensor learning if the vehicle has a tire pressure configuration.
- Perform jam protection learning if the vehicle has a window jam protection configuration.

- (1) Use the diagnostic tester to connect the vehicle to enter the system. Click Body Control Module (BCM).
- (2) Before removing the old BCM, click "Version Information" to read VIN code of the old BCM module; click "Read Data Stream" to read the vehicle configuration code of old BCM.
- (3) After new BCM is installed, click "Special Operation", click "Write Body Controller Module (BCM) Configuration Data" to write the configuration code of the new BCM module by manually writing, saving and pasting; click "Write VIN Code", enter the recorded 17-digit VIN code and then click "OK" , confirm it again and go back.



BODY ELECTRICAL

49.1	REMOTE CONTROL SYSTEM	1841
1	Warnings and Precautions	1841
1.1	Precautions	1841
2	System Overview	1841
2.1	System Description	1841
2.2	System Components Diagram.....	1842
2.3	System Principle	1842
2.4	APP Download and Installation	1843
2.5	My account.....	1844
2.6	Vehicle control	1846
3	System Circuit Diagram	1851
3.1	Module Terminal Definition.....	1851
4	DIAGNOSIS & TEST.....	1853
4.1	Diagnosis Procedure.....	1853
4.2	DTC Confirmation Procedure	1854
4.3	Diagnostic Help.....	1854
4.4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	1855
4.5	Ground Inspection	1855
4.6	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	1855
4.7	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	1856
5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1867
5.1	Tools	1867
5.2	Replacement of TBOX Module.....	1868

49.1 REMOTE CONTROL SYSTEM

Remote Control System

1 Warnings and Precautions

1.1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

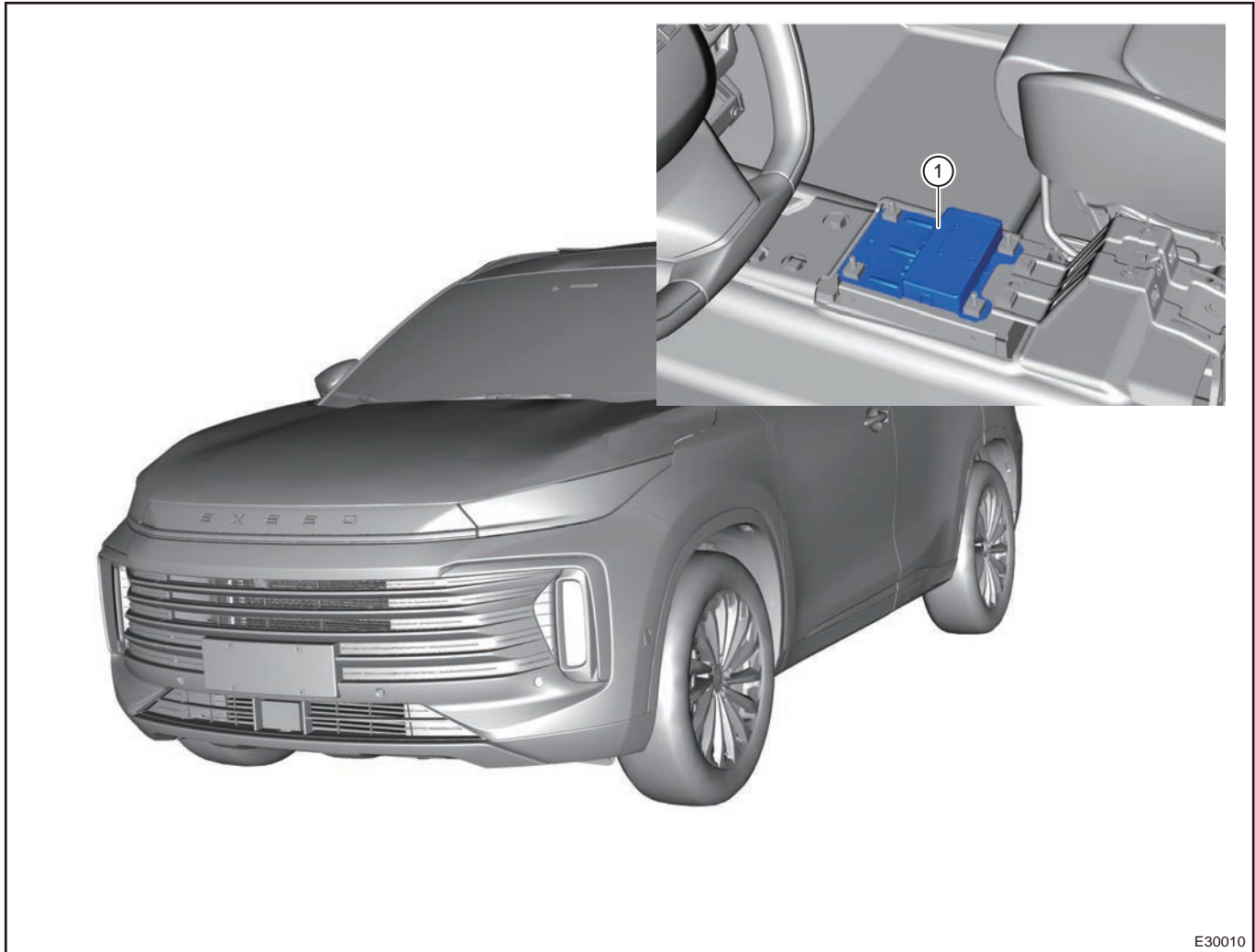
- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing TBOX assembly.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing TBOX assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing TBOX assembly.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

The wireless communication system (TBOX) uses remote control software or remote controller to send control command to the vehicle to realize remote controlling of vehicle. The remote control software or remote controller can be used to effectively manage and control the vehicle. EXEED owner can understand the vehicle status in real time through the remote control software or remote controller, and can also control the vehicle remotely, bringing you a more convenient and intelligent driving experience. The wireless communication system (TBOX) mainly has the following functions: Start engine by mobile phone APP/remote controller, active vehicle location, door lock control, air conditioning control, status safety and maintenance advice, map service and my home page, etc.

2.2 System Components Diagram



E30010

1	Wireless Communication System (TBOX) Module
---	---

2.3 System Principle

- TBOX is actually a box with communication function for Android operating system, which contains a SIM card. The supported hardware of this box also has GPS antenna, 4G antenna, and USB signal transmission line connected with audio head unit.
- TBOX is connected with 4G antenna, and the built-in SIM card of TBOX provides network through USB data cable connected to audio head unit under the premise that the account is activated and the payment is not in arrear.
- TBOX is connected with GPS antenna, and head unit obtains GPS positioning information in real time through USB data output interface.
- It realizes the remote diagnosis control function of vehicle CAN network. The IOV APP can remotely check the status of head unit, remotely turn on the air conditioning, and remotely obtain the status information of head unit, etc. The realization of status query/remote control function for IOV APP depends on TBOX node. TBOX node can receive remote 4G signals. After that, TBOX sends CAN diagnosis and control commands on diagnosis CAN. TBOX also obtains the relevant CAN signals in real time and uploads them to the cloud platform, the cloud platform returns data to the IOV APP. Finally, the remote diagnosis (- remotely obtain vehicle status, remotely read fault codes, etc.) and remote control (control the role of certain intelligent hardware on vehicle, such as air conditioning, etc.) are achieved.

2.4 APP Download and Installation

(1) APP download channels.

- 1) Scanning the QR code in “EXEED Life APP” on the head unit to download the “EXEED Life” APP, or search for “EXEED Life” in the “Apple APP Market” and “Android APP Market” to download and install.

(2) Login and register.

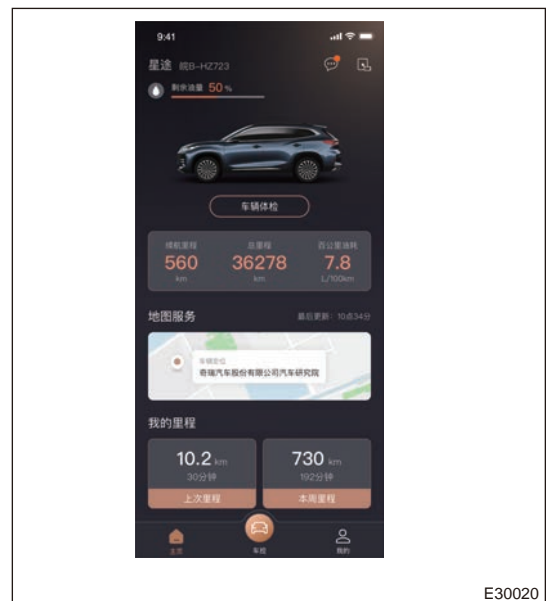
- 1) The owner can register a new user, log in the existing account or perform forgetting password operation by logging in the registration page.
 - a. [Registration]: Click register to enter the registration page, fill in the relevant information to register a new user.
 - b. [Login]: Enter the registered mobile phone number, provide the correct verification code, and click to enter the main interface of application.
 - c. [Account password login]: Click and switch to using user name and password to log in.
 - d. [Forgetting password]: Click and fill in the relevant information to reset the password.
 - e. [WeChat login]: Click to log in by WeChat.



E30010

(3) Home page functions:

- 1) [Message center]: Click the right icon on information bar to enter the message center interface.
- 2) [Vehicle condition inquiry]: Display the latest real-time data information of vehicle.
- 3) [Vehicle diagnosis]: Click to enter the vehicle health examination interface to check the latest diagnosis score and diagnosis module.
- 4) [Map service]: Display the current vehicle position.
- 5) [My mileage]: Display the last mileage and mileage of this week.
- 6) [EXEED advertising]: Click the advertising module to enter the EXEED advertising interface.
- 7) [Business selection]: Provide functional entrances for e-manuals, charging current, vehicle owner clubs, vehicle highlights, and EXEED LAB.
- 8) [EXEED news]: Provide functional entrances for news, brand, and all models, etc.
- 9) [Online mall]: Provide the relevant entrances for the online mall.



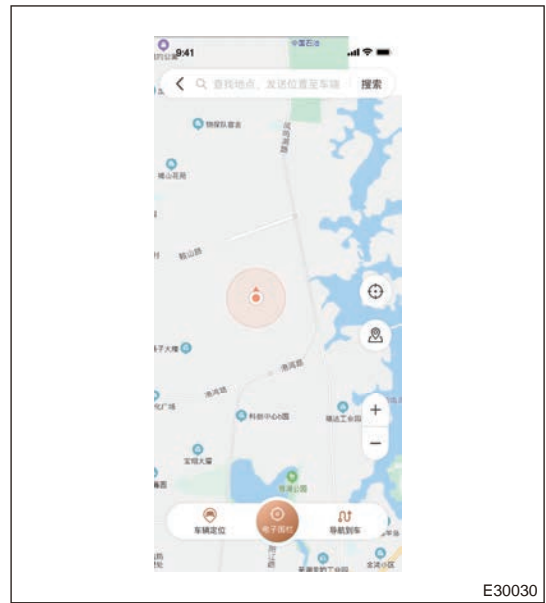
E30020

Caution

- **If the vehicle has abnormal conditions, such as abnormal tire pressure, high coolant temperature, etc., the home page will remind you.**

(4) Map service.

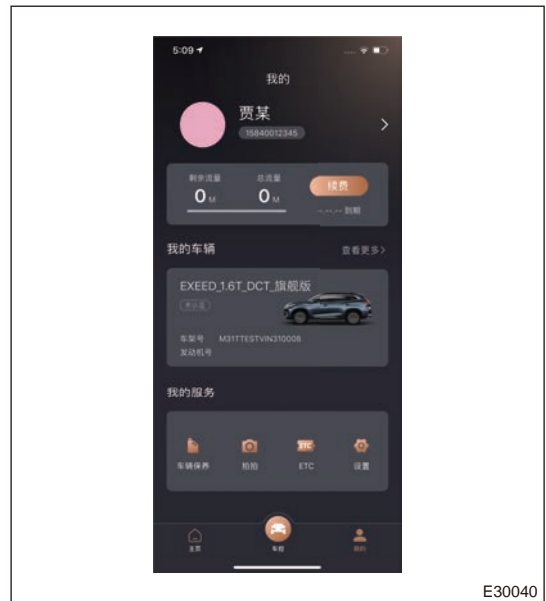
- 1) [My position]: Click the “ ” icon to display my position.
- 2) [Vehicle positioning]: Click to display the current position of vehicle.
- 3) [Electronic fence]: Click to set an electronic fence for vehicle, message reminder will be provided by EXEED Life APP when entering or exiting the fence.
- 4) [Navigate to vehicle]: Click to enter the route planning page, and display the walking route from my current location to the vehicle position.



E30030

2.5 My account

- (1) My home page.
 - 1) [Account management]: Display basic information such as user name, user head portrait, and mobile phone number, etc.
 - 2) [Renewal]: Display the relevant information of mobile traffic.
 - 3) [My vehicle]: Display the relevant information of the binding vehicle.
 - 4) [My service]: Provide functional entrances for vehicle maintenance, shooting, ETC, and settings, etc.

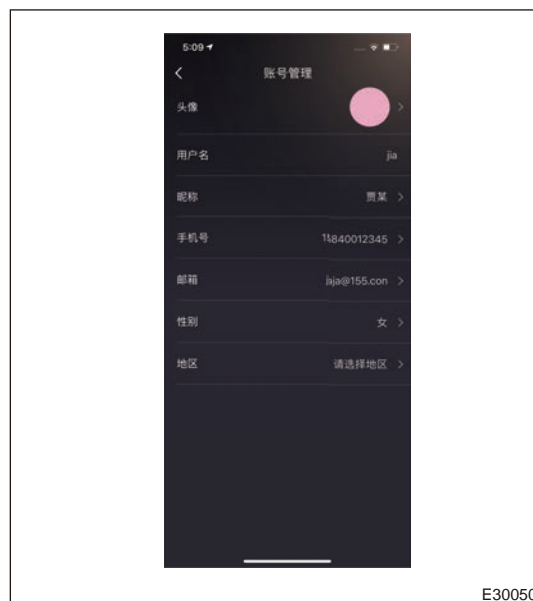


E30040

- (2) Account management.

Check the relevant information of user.

- 1) [Portrait]: Click to modify the head portrait.
- 2) [User name]: Click to check the user name information.
- 3) [Nickname]: Click to modify the nickname.
- 4) [Mobile phone number]: Click to modify the binding mobile phone number.
- 5) [Mailbox]: Click to modify the binding mailbox.
- 6) [Gender]: Click to modify the gender information of user.
- 7) [Region]: Click to modify the region information of user.

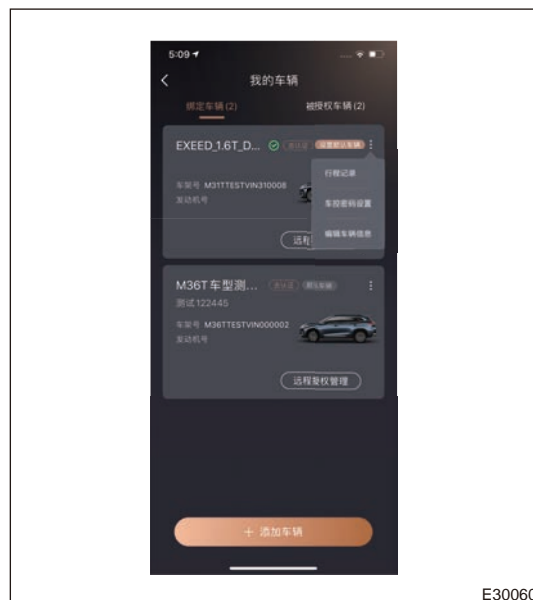


E30050

(3) My vehicle.

Check the relevant information of vehicle configuration.

- 1) [Vehicle list]: Click to check all binding vehicles and authorized vehicle information under the name.
- 2) [Adding vehicle]: Click to enter vehicle information to add a vehicle.
- 3) [Real-name authentication]: Click to perform real-name authentication on vehicles that have not been authenticated.
- 4) [Vehicle setting by default]: Click to set the selected vehicle as the vehicle used by default.
- 5) [Editing vehicle information]: Click to edit vehicle information, bind the vehicle, cancel the real-name authentication, and modify the vehicle information.
- 6) [Vehicle password setting]: Click to enter the vehicle control password setting interface, on which digital password, graphic password, fingerprint password ON/OFF and face password can be managed and set.
- 7) [Remote authorization management]: Click to manage the remote authorization account of vehicle.



E30060

Caution

- **During adding vehicles, for specific data information requirements, please bring related valid certificates to the EXEED service station to apply/change.**
- **When vehicle is transferred or the owner is changed, the original owner is obliged to actively unbind the mobile phone from the vehicle or contact the EXEED service station to assist in unbinding the vehicle, preventing personal information leakage or potential liability risks.**

(4) Setting

- 1) [Modify login password]: Click to modify the login password of the user account.
- 2) [Fingerprint unlock setting]: Click to enable/disable fingerprint login function.
- 3) [Bind/unbind WeChat]: Click to bind/unbind WeChat.
- 4) [Travel record]: Click to open/close the travel record.
- 5) [About]: Click to check version information, copyright ownership, customer service phone number, service agreement, privacy policy, new version detection, etc.
- 6) [Clear cache]: Click to clear the cache of APP.
- 7) [Logout]: Click to log out the current login account.



E30070

2.6 Vehicle control

■ Remote start condition

The following conditions must be met at the same time:

- Remote start request of mobile phone APP is received;
- Body anti-theft is in a fortifying state, and no alarm is triggered;
- All doors, engine hood, and back door are closed;
- There is no valid smart key in the vehicle;
- Electronic parking brake is applied and parking brake function is enabled;
- The vehicle is stationary;
- Two remote start attempts are allowed. After the two opportunities are used up, the engine needs to be started in normal mode and the engine cannot be started remotely until engine stalls.

■ Engine stalling condition after remote start

Any of following conditions is met:

- Start engine remotely and run it until the maximum set time (5 minutes, or 10 minutes, or 15 minutes) is reached;
- Depress brake pedal in fortifying deactivation mode, and there is no smart key in the vehicle, or depress brake pedal in fortifying mode;
- The vehicle starts to move;
- Coolant temperature is too high or oil pressure is too low;
- The voltage is out of the required range;
- The engine hood is opened;
- The anti-theft alarm is triggered;
- The electronic parking brake is released.

- (1) Vehicle control home page.

Vehicle control interface will display the real-time vehicle data information, including tire pressure, temperature, engine status, vehicle lock status, window status, sunroof status, air conditioning status, back door status, and remote control of vehicle.

- 1) [Refresh]: Click the icon in the upper left corner of the vehicle control home page to refresh the page, the current information and status of vehicle will be displayed.
 - 2) [Anti-theft reminder]: Click the icon in the upper right corner of the vehicle control home page to set the anti-theft reminder.
 - 3) [Bluetooth]: Switch between Bluetooth and non-Bluetooth mode (if equipped).
 - 4) [Engine]: Click to remotely start/stop the engine.
 - 5) [Vehicle location]: Click to flash lights and sound the buzzer, and vehicle locating operation option is displayed.
 - 6) [Vehicle lock]: Click to pop up the operation options for door lock.
 - 7) [Window]: Click to pop up the operation options for window.
 - 8) [Sunroof]: Click to pop up the operation options for sunroof.
 - 9) [Air conditioning]: Click the icon and page jumps to the operation page of air conditioning.
 - 10) [Back door]: Click to open/close the back door.
- (2) Anti-theft reminder.

Turn on/off the anti-theft reminder.

- 1) When the vehicle anti-theft alarm function is triggered, the owner will receive a text message as a reminder; if it is turned off, there is no reminder.

- (3) Engine.



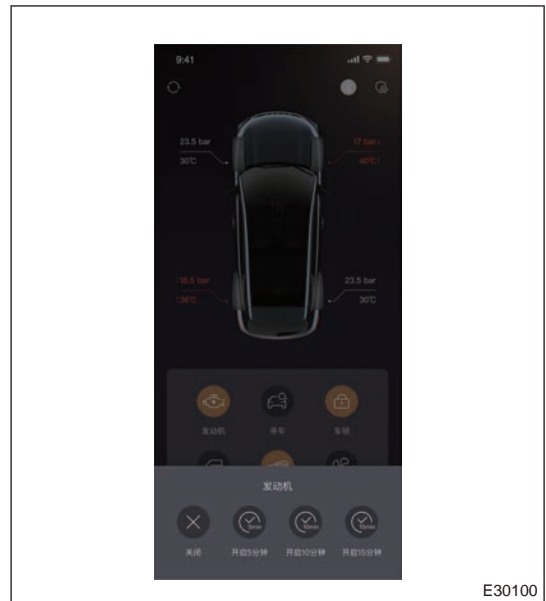
E30080



E30090

1) Remotely start/stop the engine.

Click "Engine" button, enter the vehicle control password/gesture password/face recognition/fingerprint recognition on the APP, and engine can be started/stopped after passing the verification.

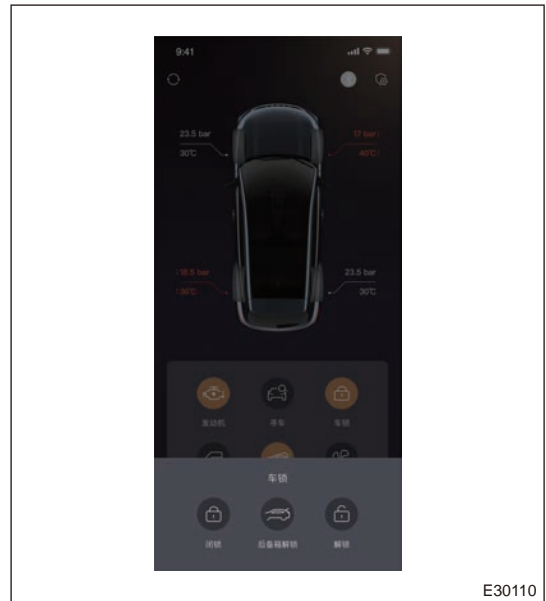


E30100

(4) Vehicle lock.

Remotely unlock/lock the door or luggage compartment door.

- 1) Click "Vehicle lock" button, enter the vehicle control password/gesture password/face recognition/fingerprint recognition on the APP, vehicle can be unlocked/locked and luggage compartment door can be unlocked after passing the verification.



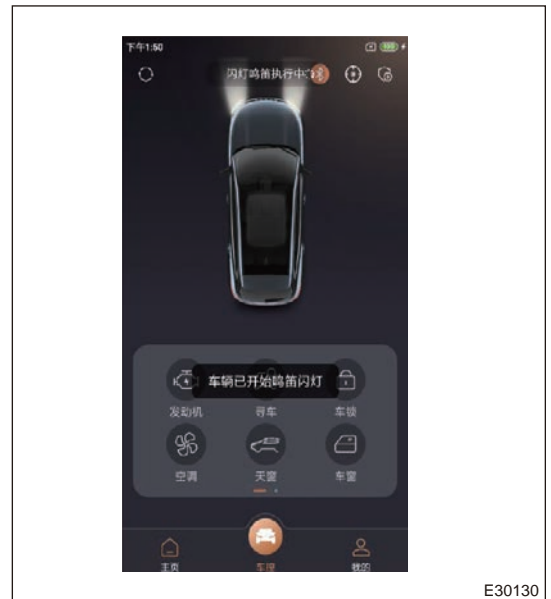
E30110

(5) Vehicle location.

Remotely locate the vehicle and control the buzzer to sound and light to flash.

- 1) Click "Vehicle location" button, select "Sounding buzzer and flashing lights" in the pop-up window, enter the vehicle control password/gesture password/face recognition/fingerprint recognition on the APP, and buzzer will sound and lights will flash after passing the verification.

Click "Vehicle location" button and select "Vehicle location" in the pop-up window to inquire the current location of vehicle.



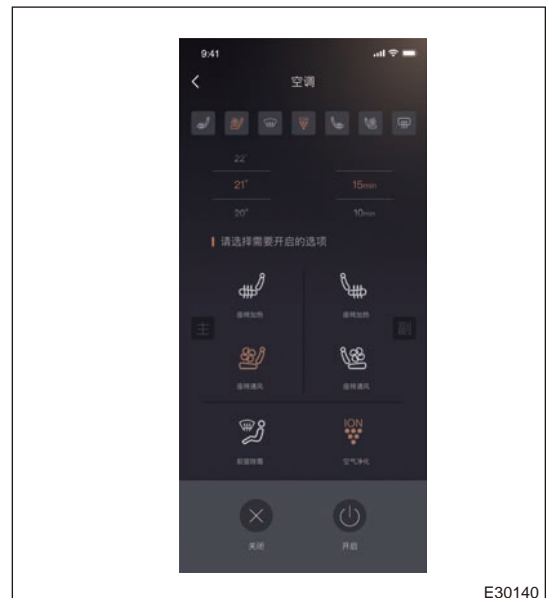
E30130

(6) Air conditioning.
Remotely turn on/off the air conditioning.

- 1) Click "Air conditioning" button, select temperature and time in the air conditioning module, then select air purification, driver/front passenger seat heating, driver/front passenger seat ventilation and vehicle defrosting that you want to turn on. When all functions are selected, click ON button and enter vehicle control password/gesture password/face recognition/fingerprint recognition on the APP, then the corresponding commands will be performed after passing the verification.

Caution

- **Before turning on the air conditioning remotely, turn on the engine remotely first and then the air conditioning control command will be send. The turning on and off conditions also need to meet the conditions when the engine is turned on/off remotely.**

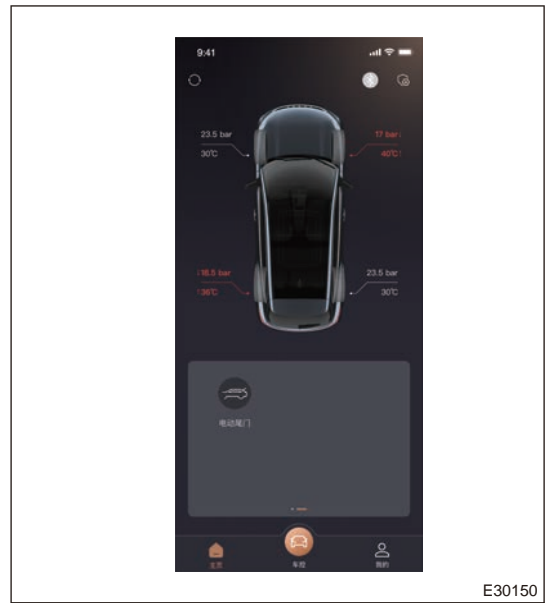


E30140

(7) Power back door.

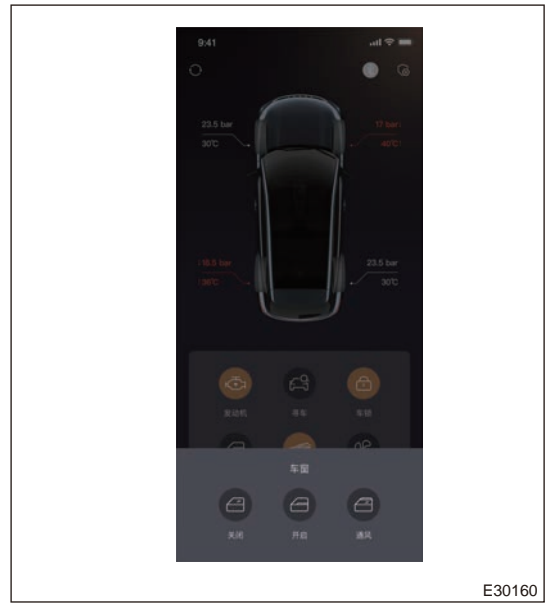
Remotely open and close the power back door.

- 1) Click "Power back door" button, select the opening/closing option of power back door, enter the vehicle control password/gesture password/face recognition/fingerprint recognition on the APP, and power back door will be opened/closed after passing the verification.



(8) Window.
Remotely open, close and ventilate it.

- 1) Click "Window" button, select the opening/closing/ventilation options of window, enter the vehicle control password/gesture password/face recognition/fingerprint recognition on the APP, and window will be opened/closed/ventilated after passing the verification.



(9) Sunroof.

Remotely open, close and tilt it.

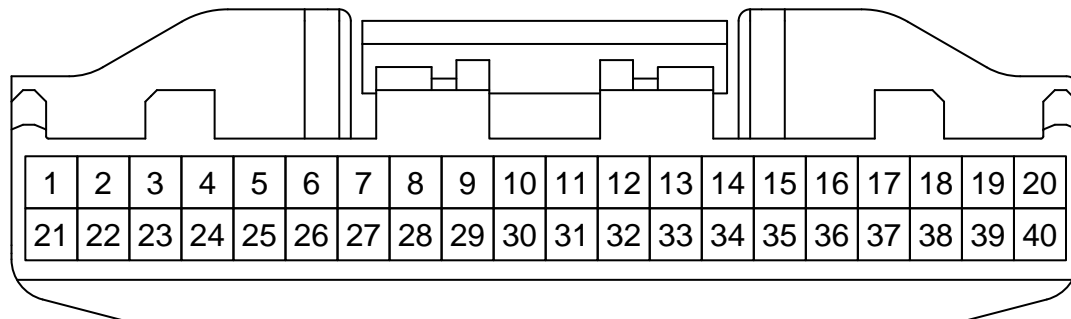
- 1) Click “Sunroof” button, select opening/closing/tilting options of sunroof, enter the vehicle control password/gesture password/face recognition/fingerprint recognition on the APP, and sunroof will be opened/closed/tilted after passing the verification.



E30170

3 System Circuit Diagram

3.1 Module Terminal Definition



E35040

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
1	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply in “ON” status	12 V
2	Body ground	SOS power supply	Power supply in “ON” status	8.9 V
3	Body ground	Ground	Power supply in “ON” status	0 V

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
4	Body ground	LED light controlling SOS ON/OFF	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V when not pressed, keep 1.1 V after being pressed
5	Body ground	MIC shield ground	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
6	Body ground	MIC power supply input	Power supply in "ON" status	6.1 V
7	Body ground	Audio signal shield ground	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
8	Body ground	Audio signal +	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
9	\	\	\	\
10	Body ground	ECALL switch ground	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
11	Body ground	Airbag collision signal	Power supply in "ON" status	Changed between 10 and 11 V
12	\	\	\	\
13	\	\	\	\
14	\	\	\	\
15	\	\	\	\
16	\	\	\	\
17	\	\	\	\
18	\	\	\	\
19	Body ground	CAN-H	Power supply in "ON" status	2.6 V
20	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply in "ON" status	12 V
21	\	\	\	\
22	\	\	\	\
23	\	\	\	\
24	\	\	\	\
25	Body ground	MIC output signal	Power supply in "ON" status	7.6 V
26	Body ground	MIC ground	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
27	\	\	\	\
28	Body ground	Audio signal -	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
29	\	\	\	\

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
30	Body ground	ECALL button signal	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
31	\	\	\	\
32	Body ground	Mute	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V
33	Body ground	LED_red indicator	Power supply in "ON" status	8.2 V
34	Body ground	LED_green indicator	Power supply in "ON" status	When indicator does not flash: 0.01 V; indicator flashes after pressing: Voltage changes between 0 and 8 V
35	\	\	\	\
36	\	\	\	\
37	\	\	\	\
38	\	\	\	\
39	Body ground	CAN-L	Power supply in "ON" status	2.4 V
40	Body ground	Ground	Power supply in "ON" status	0 V

4 DIAGNOSIS & TEST

4.1 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the control system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG

Replace battery

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Next

4 Read DTCs**Result**

Result	Go to
History DTC	A
Current DTC	B

A

Troubleshoot according to Intermittent DTC Fault Flow

B

5 Repair according to Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

Next

6 Adjust, repair or replace

Next

7 Conduct test and confirm malfunction has been repaired

Next

End

4.2 DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK.
- (2) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- (3) Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface.
- (4) Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the detection system.
- (5) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to LOCK and wait for a few seconds.
- (6) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON, and then select read DTC.
- (7) If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction. Go to inspection procedure - Step 1.
- (8) If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4.3 Diagnostic Help

- (1) Connect diagnostic tester X-431 PAD (the latest software) to Data Link Connector (DLC), and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- (2) Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- (3) If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, it indicates that there is a current malfunction.
- (4) Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- (5) Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- (6) Visually check related wire harness and connector.
- (7) Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.

- (8) If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

4.4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Monitor diagnostic tester (the latest software) data that is related to this circuit.
- Wiggle related wire harnesses and connectors and observe if signal is interrupt in related circuit.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect airbag components and mounting areas for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4.5 Ground Inspection

Ground points are very important to the proper operation of circuits. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) may increase load resistance. This situation may change the way in which a circuit operates. Circuits are very sensitive to proper grounding. A loose or corroded ground can seriously affect the control circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- (1) Remove ground bolt or nut.
- (2) Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- (3) Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- (4) Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- (5) Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- (6) If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

4.6 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

DTC	DTC Definition
B144016	Vehicle Power Supply Voltage - Voltage Below Threshold
B144017	Vehicle Power Supply Voltage - Voltage Above Threshold
B144529	Invalid Hardwired Airbag Crash Signal
B144611	Microphone 1 Circuit - Short to Ground
B144613	Microphone 1 Circuit - Circuit Open
B14481E	E-Call Button Circuit - Button Pressed Down But Not Up Again
B144C11	GNSS Antenna Circuit - Short to Ground
B144C13	GNSS Antenna Circuit - Circuit Open
B144D49	GNSS Module Initialization Failed
B144E05	TGW VIN Not Match the VIN Read Out from the BUS
B145187	USB Communication Between TGW and IHU Failed
B145311	Cellular Antenna 1 Circuit - Short to Ground

DTC	DTC Definition
B145313	Cellular Antenna 1 Circuit - Circuit Open
B145511	Cellular Antenna 2 Circuit - Short to Ground
B145513	Cellular Antenna 2 circuit - Circuit Open
B145A49	SIM Card Invalid
B145C13	Backup Battery Not Connected
B146001	Bluetooth Communication Error

4.7 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

■ Module power supply voltage DTC

DTC	B144016	Vehicle Power Supply Voltage - Voltage Below Threshold
DTC	B144017	Vehicle Power Supply Voltage - Voltage Above Threshold

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B144016	Vehicle Power Supply Voltage - Voltage Below Threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power supply is not stable, and some loads may decrease suddenly Battery is damaged
B144017	Vehicle Power Supply Voltage - Voltage Above Threshold	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Power supply is short or open Generating capacity of electrical power generating system is too large or too small.

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

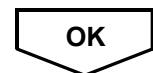
When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between positive battery terminal and negative battery terminal, which is not less than 12 V.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
Battery (+) - Battery (-)	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V

NG	Repair or replace battery/alternator
-----------	---



2 Check charging system

(a) Start engine and use a digital multimeter to measure if system voltage is between 13.5 V and 14.8 V.

NG **Repair or replace alternator and related wire harness**

OK

3 Check power supply fuse of wireless communication system (TBOX) module

(a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (b) Check if engine compartment fuse box and instrument panel fuse and relay box RF58 (10A) and RF39 (5A) are blown.

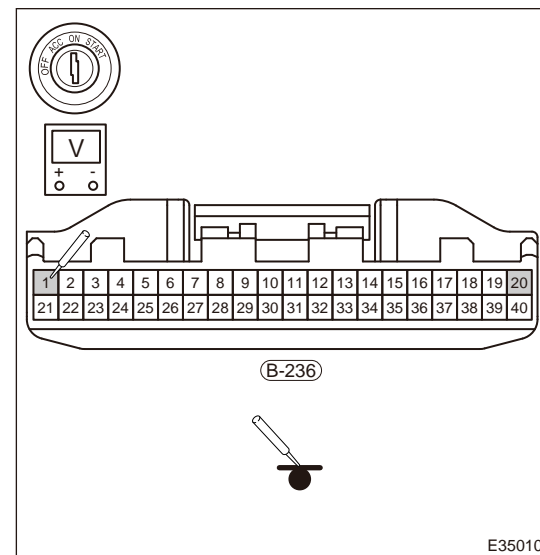
NG **Replace fuse**

OK

4 Check power supply wire harness and connector of wireless communication system (TBOX)

(a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect TBOX module connector and check if connector is dirty or deformed.
 (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
 (d) Using a multimeter, measure if voltage between terminals 1, 20 of TBOX control module connector B-236 and ground is 12 V respectively.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-236(1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V
B-236(20) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Not less than 12 V

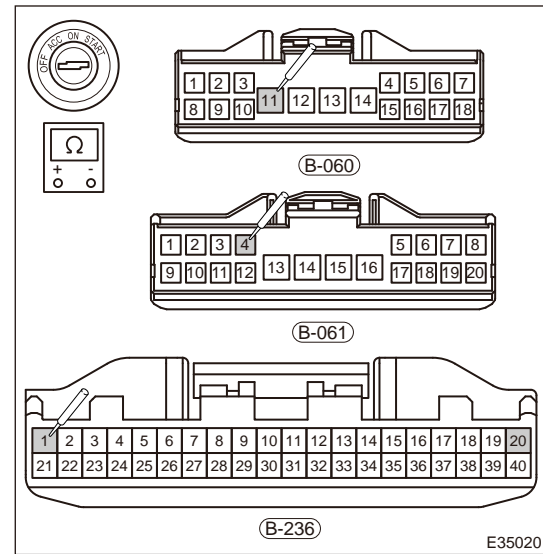


(e) Use 21 W test light to test terminals 1, 20 of TBOX control module connector B-236 to check if the test light comes on.

Test Terminal of 21 W Test Light	Condition	Specified Condition
B-236(1) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	On
B-236(20) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	On

- (f) Use a multimeter, check for continuity in power supply circuit between TBOX control module wire harness B-236 (1) and instrument panel fuse box B-061 (4).
- (g) Use a multimeter, check for continuity in power supply circuit between TBOX control module wire harness B-236 (20) and instrument panel fuse box B-060 (11).

Multimeter Test Terminal	Condition	Specified Condition
B-236 (1) - B-061 (4)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-236 (20) - B-060 (11)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Check wire harness fuse

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
- (b) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTCs stored in TBOX system.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (f) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (g) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in TBOX system.

NG Replace TBOX module

OK System is normal

■ **Combined Antenna DTC**

DTC	B144C11	GNSS Antenna Circuit - Short to Ground
DTC	B144C13	GNSS Antenna Circuit - Circuit Open
DTC	B144D49	GNSS Module Initialization Failed
DTC	B145311	Cellular Antenna 1 Circuit - Short to Ground
DTC	B145313	Cellular Antenna 1 circuit - Circuit Open
DTC	B145511	Cellular Antenna 2 Circuit - Short to Ground
DTC	B145513	Cellular Antenna 2 circuit - Circuit Open

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B144C11	GNSS Antenna Circuit - Short to Ground	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness connector • Antenna damaged • Module failure
B144C13	GNSS Antenna Circuit - Circuit Open	
B144D49	GNSS Module Initialization Failed	
B145311	Cellular Antenna 1 Circuit - Short to Ground	
B145313	Cellular Antenna 1 circuit - Circuit Open	
B145511	Cellular Antenna 2 Circuit - Short to Ground	
B145513	Cellular Antenna 2 circuit - Circuit Open	

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check terminal connector of TBOX module

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the remote control module wire harness connectors B-231 and B-233.
- Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Check if terminal contact pins of related connectors are in good condition.

NG

Repair or replace related wire harness and connector

OK

2 Check combined antenna of remote control module

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect the TBOX wire harness connectors B-231 and B-233.
- Replace combined antenna to check if the fault occurs again.

NG

Replace combined antenna



3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in TBOX system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in TBOX system.

NG Replace wireless communication system (- TBOX) module assembly

OK System operates normally

■ **Microphone fault**

DTC	B144611	Microphone 1 Circuit - Short to Ground
DTC	B144613	Microphone 1 Circuit - Circuit Open

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B144611	Microphone 1 Circuit - Short to Ground	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness connector failure • Microphone failure
B144613	Microphone 1 Circuit - Circuit Open	

■ **DTC Confirmation Procedure**

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector

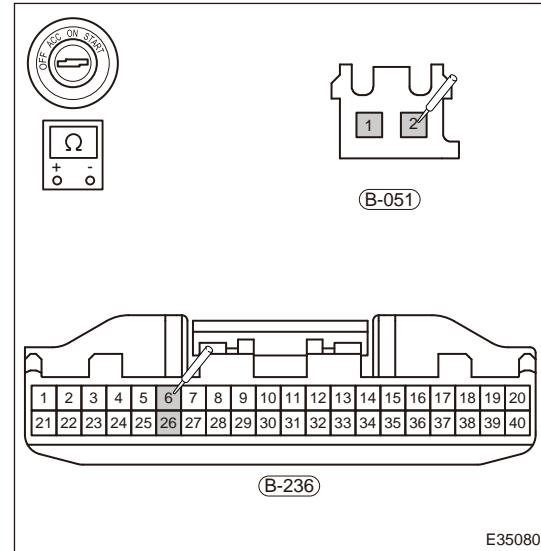
- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect the wireless communication system (TBOX) wire harness connector B-236.
- (d) Check if wire harnesses are worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- (e) Check for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- (f) Check if terminal contact pins of related connectors are in good condition.

NG Repair or replace related wire harness and connector



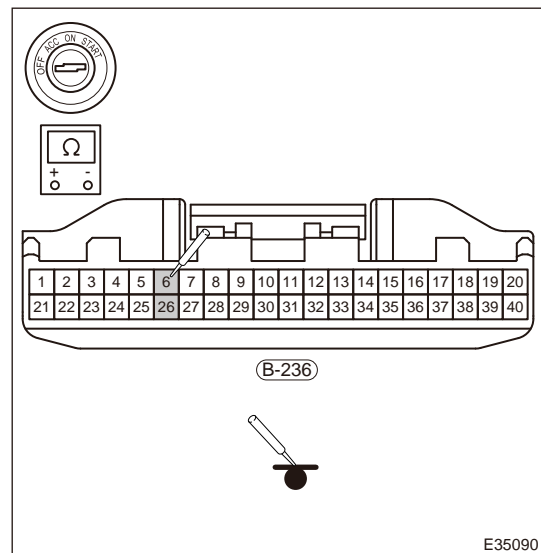
2 Check for continuity of wireless communication system (TBOX) connector wire harness

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect wireless communication system (TBOX) connector B-236 and microphone module connector B-051.
- (d) Use a multimeter, check for continuity between terminals 6 and 26 of TBOX wire harness connector B-236 and terminals 2 and 1 of microphone wire harness connector B-051 respectively.



Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-236 (6) - B-051 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
B-236 (26) - B-051 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$

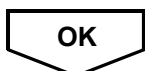
- (e) Using a multimeter, check for continuity between terminals 6 and 26 of TBOX wire harness connector B-236 and ground respectively, and check for short to ground.



Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-236(6) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
B-236(26) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



Repair or replace instrument panel wire harness



3 Check wireless communication system (TBOX) module

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the TBOX wire harness connector B-236.
- (c) Check if pin of TBOX module assembly is bent, broken, retreated, etc.



Repair or replace instrument panel wire harness

OK

4 Check microphone 1 assembly

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the microphone wire harness connector B-051.
- (c) Check if pin of microphone is bent, broken, retreated, etc.

NG **Replace TBOX module assembly**

OK

5 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in TBOX system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in TBOX system.

NG **Replace microphone 1 assembly**

OK **System operates normally**

■ High speed data transmission line DTC

DTC	B145187	USB Communication Between TGW and IHU Failed
-----	---------	--

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B145187	USB Communication Between TGW and IHU Failed	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Wire harness connector failure • Intermittent problem • IHU failure

■ Description

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the wireless communication system (TBOX) module wire harness connector B-234.
- (c) Disconnect the wire harness connector I-038.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check for community between terminal of B-234 and terminal of I-038.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-234 (1) - I-038 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$

NG

Replace instrument panel wire harness

OK

2 Check TBOX module assembly

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove TBOX module from malfunctioning vehicle and install it to a new vehicle to test.

NG

Replace TBOX module assembly

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in TBOX system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in TBOX system.

NG

Replace domain control module

OK

System operates normally

■ Airbag signal DTC

DTC	B144529	Invalid Hardwired Airbag Crash Signal
-----	----------------	--

DTC	DTC Definition	Possible Causes
B144529	Invalid Hardwired Airbag Crash Signal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Signal waveform is disturbed • ACM failure • TGW failure

■ Description

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

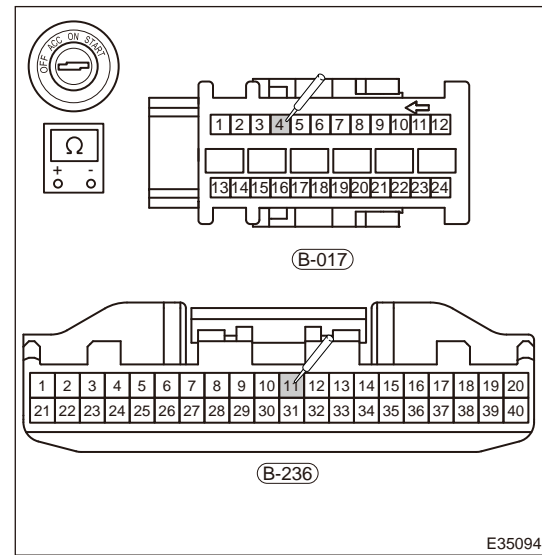
Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check wire harness and connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Disconnect the wireless communication system (TBOX) module wire harness connector B-236.
- (c) Disconnect the airbag module wire harness connector B-017.
- (d) Using a multimeter, check for community between terminal of B-236 and terminal of B-017.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-236 (11) - B-017 (4)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Replace instrument panel wire harness

OK

2 Check TBOX module assembly

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Remove TBOX module from malfunctioning vehicle and install it to a new vehicle to test.

NG Replace TBOX module assembly

OK

3 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to record and clear DTC stored in TBOX system.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- (d) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (e) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in TBOX system.

NG

Replace domain control module

OK

System operates normally

■ Network failure

DTC	U010087	Lost Communication with EMS
DTC	U010187	Lost Communication with TCU
DTC	U012987	Lost Communication with Brake System Controller
DTC	U013187	Lost Communication With Power Steering Control Module
DTC	U015187	Lost Communication with Airbag Control Unit
DTC	U014087	Lost Communication with Body Control Module
DTC	U016487	Lost Communication with A/C Control Unit
DTC	U015587	Lost Communication with Instrument Panel Cluster (IPC) Control Module
DTC	U012687	Lost Communication with Steering Angle Sensor
DTC	U021487	Lost Communication with Passive Entry Passive Start (PEPS)
DTC	U023087	Lost Communication with Power Back Door Controller
DTC	U014687	Lost Communication with Central Gateway
DTC	U020887	Lost Communication with Seat Module Controller

■ Description

■ DTC Confirmation Procedure

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing the following procedures.

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Start engine and warm it up, and then read DTC again. If DTC is detected, malfunction is current.
- If DTC is not detected, malfunction is intermittent.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1

Read DTCs

- (a) Connect the DTC decoding tester.
- (b) Read all DTCs.

OK

No DTC

NG

Check the fault causes indicated by DTCs and repair faulty area

OK

2 Check TBOX ground point

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Check the TBOX ground point GB-243.

OK

Ground point is normal.

NG

Repair or replace ground wire harness or ground point

OK

3 Check TBOX wire harness connector

- (a) Disconnect the TBOX wire harness connector.
- (b) Check the TBOX wire harness connector.

OK

TBOX wire harness connector is normal.

NG

Repair or replace connector

OK

4 Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (b) Use diagnostic tester to clear DTCs.
- (c) Check if the same DTCs are still output.

OK

Same DTCs do not occur.

NG

System operates normally, replace TBOX and perform matching learning.

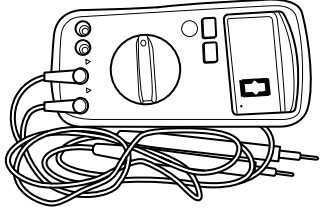
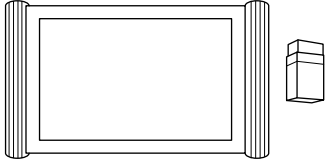
OK

System operates normally

5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

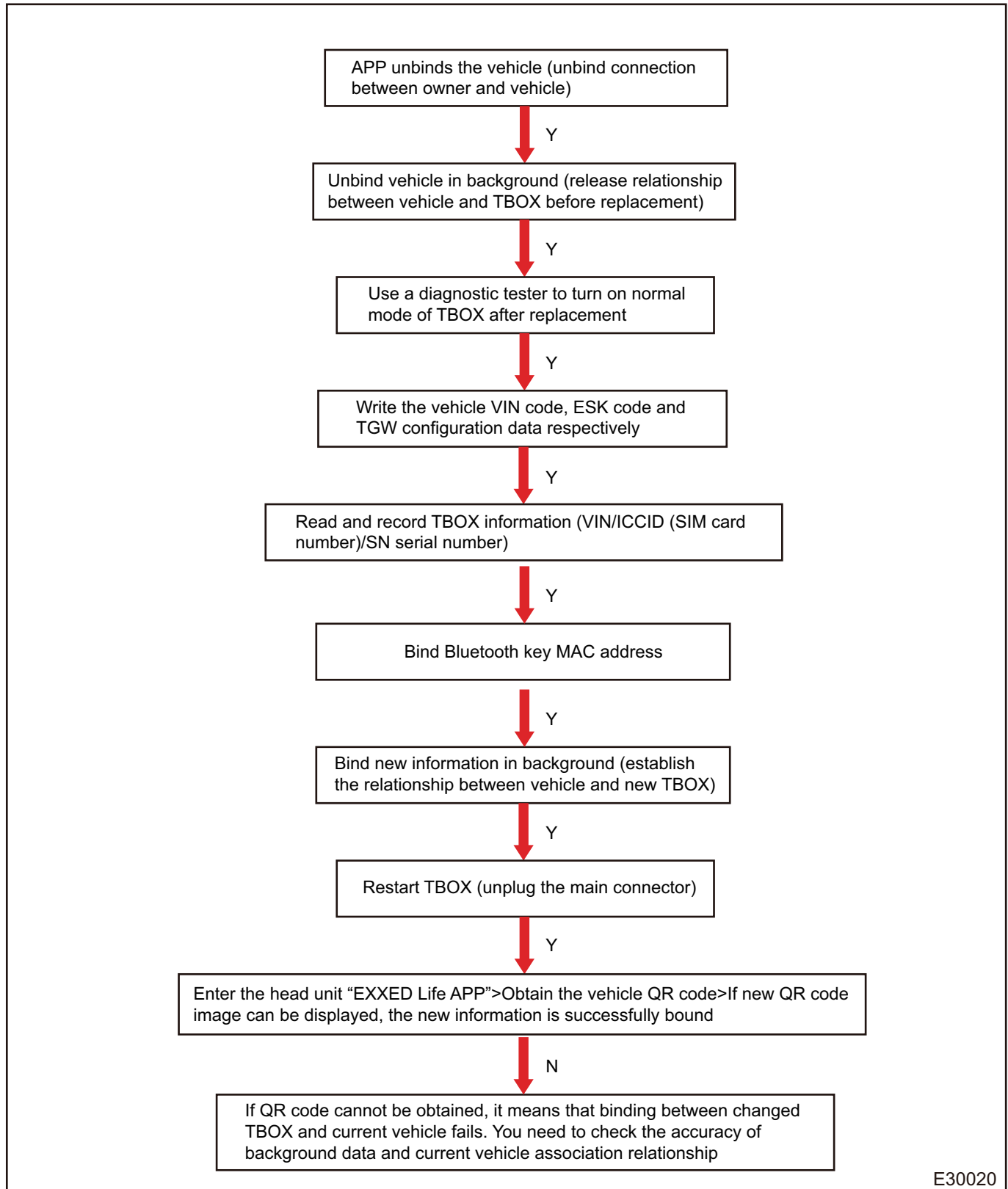
5.1 Tools

■ **General Tools**

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
<p>Digital Multimeter</p>	 <p>S00002</p>
<p>X-431 PAD Diagnostic Tester</p>	 <p>S00001</p>

5.2 Replacement of TBOX Module

■ After-sales replacement process and precautions of TBOX



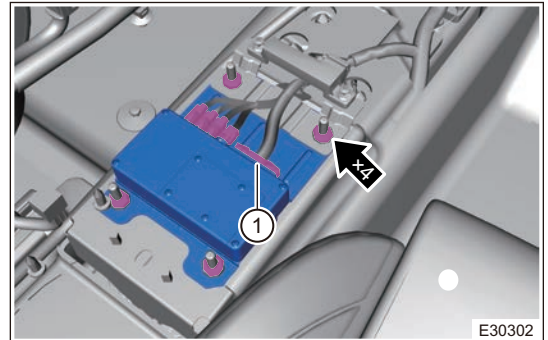
E30020

■ Removal

Warning

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing TBOX module.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing TBOX module. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left seat.
- (4) Remove the front left carpet assembly.
- (5) Disconnect connector (1) from TBOX, and remove 4 fixings nuts from TBOX.



E30302

■ Installation

Caution

- **Tighten fixing nut to specified torque, when installing TBOX module.**
- **Connect connector in place, when installing TBOX module.**

- (1) Install TBOX module and tighten 4 fixing nuts to body.

Tightening torque: 12 N·m

- (2) Install the front left carpet.
- (3) Install the front left seat assembly.
- (4) Connect diagnostic tester, read and clear DTCs.

INSTRUMENT PANEL

50.1	Warning and Precautions	1871
1	Precautions	1871
50.2	System Overview	1872
1	System Components Diagram.....	1872
50.3	On-vehicle Service	1874
1	Tools	1874
2	Replacement of Instrument Panel	1874
2.1	Removal	1874
2.2	Installation	1882
2.3	Disassembly	1883
2.4	Assembly	1884
3	Replacement of A/C to Instrument Panel Left A/C Outlet Pipe Assembly	1885
3.1	Removal	1885
3.2	Installation	1886
4	Replacement of A/C to Instrument Panel Right A/C Outlet Pipe Assembly	1886
4.1	Removal	1886
4.2	Installation	1887
5	Replacement of Left Front and Rear Foot Ducts.....	1887
5.1	Removal	1887
5.2	Installation	1888
6	Replacement of Right Front and Rear Foot Ducts	1888
6.1	Removal	1888
6.2	Installation	1889
7	Replacement of Instrument Panel Crossmember Assembly.....	1889
7.1	Removal	1889
7.2	Installation	1892

50.1 Warning and Precautions

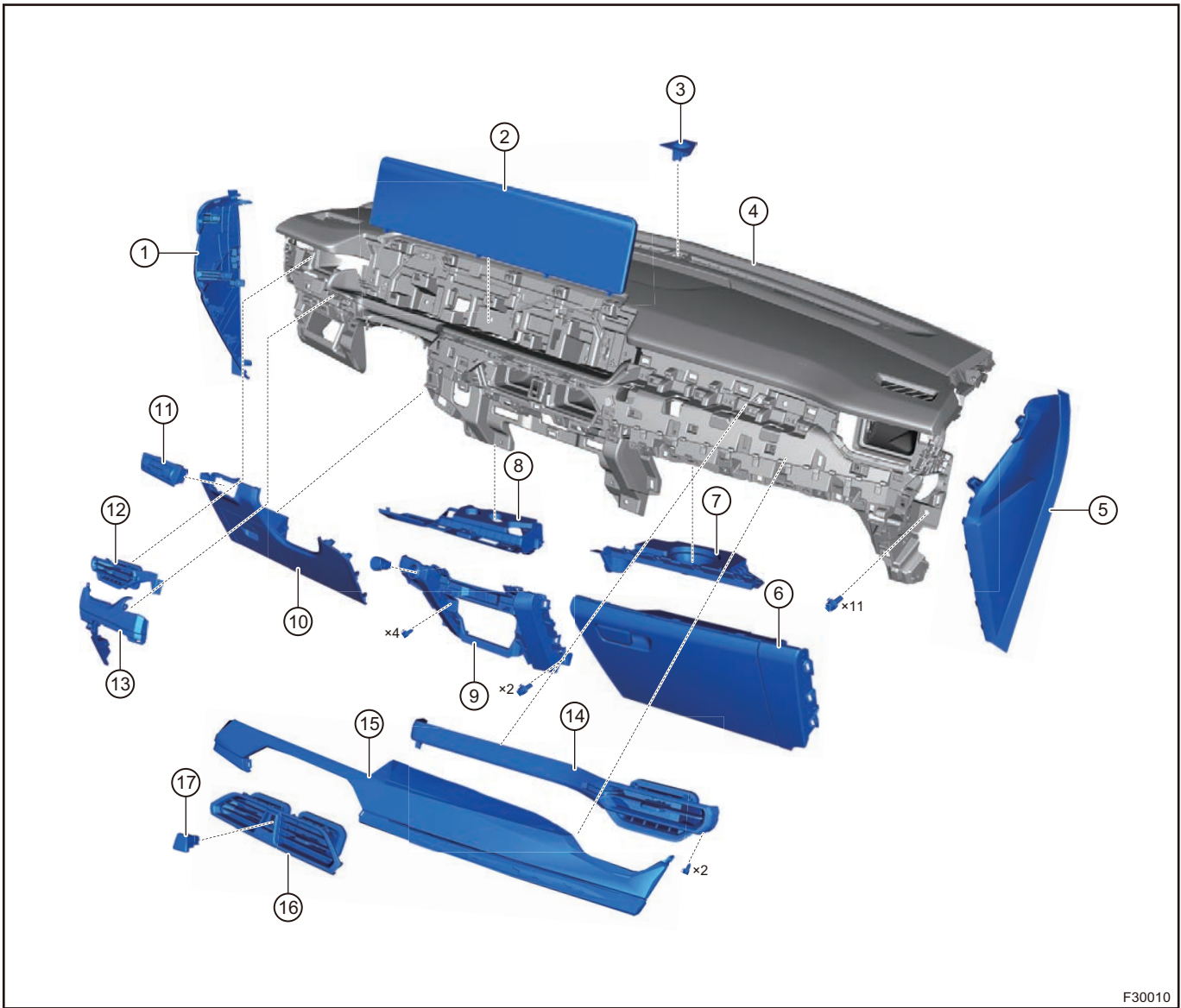
1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, please observe the following instructions before repair.

- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing instrument panel assembly.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing instrument panel assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) DO NOT scratch interior and body paint, when removing instrument panel assembly.

50.2 System Overview

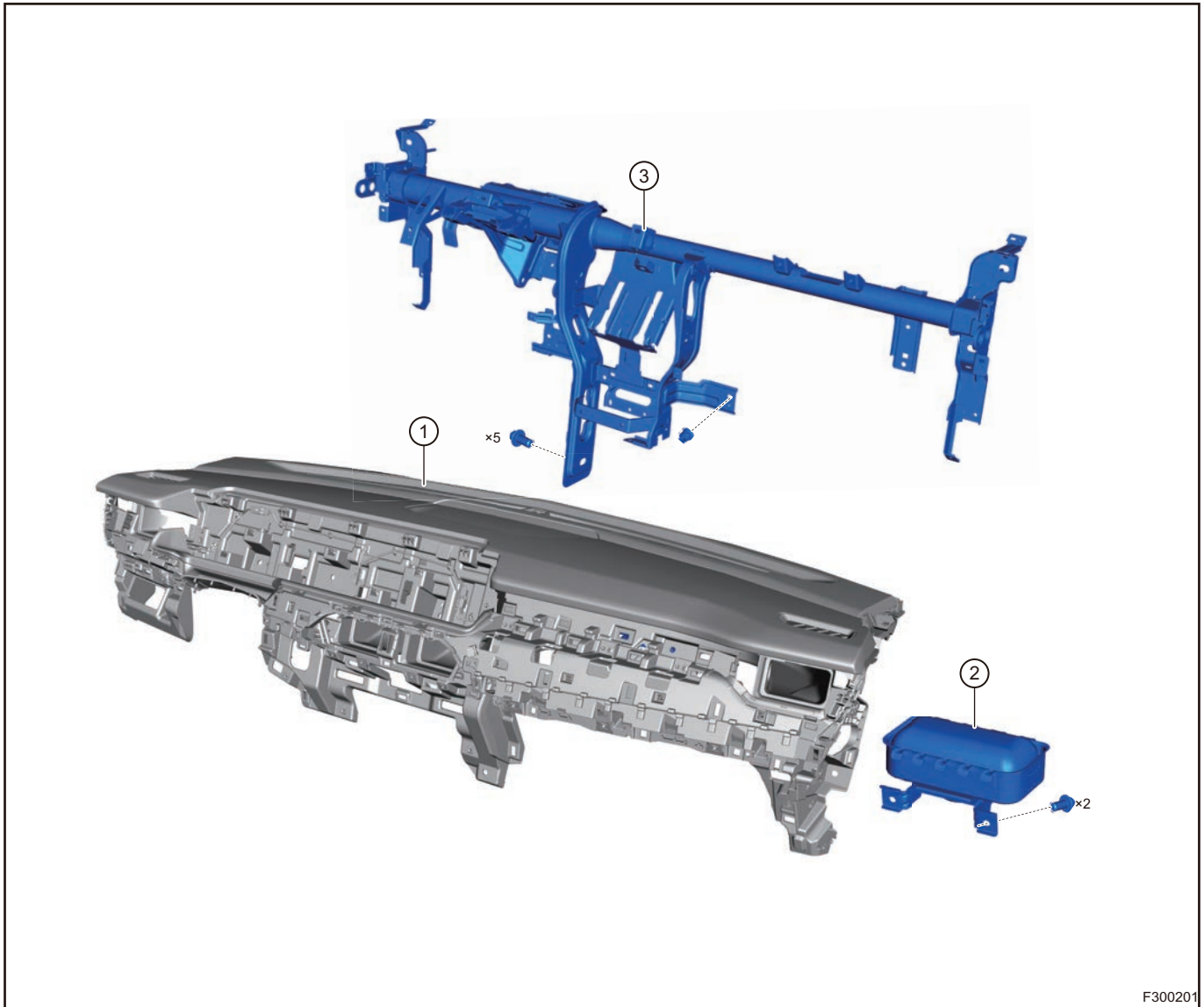
1 System Components Diagram



F30010

1	Left End Panel Assembly	10	Left Lower Protector Body
2	Dual LCD	11	Headlight Leveling Switch
3	Solar Sensor Assembly	12	Instrument Panel Left Outlet Assembly
4	Instrument Panel Body	13	Instrument Panel Left Trim Board Assembly
5	Right End Panel Assembly	14	Instrument Panel Right Outlet Assembly
6	Glove Box Body Assembly	15	Instrument Panel Right Trim Board Assembly
7	Instrument Panel Right Soundproof Board Assembly	16	Central A/C Outlet Assembly

8	Drive Side Soundproof Board	17	Warning Light Switch
9	Center Lower Protector Body		

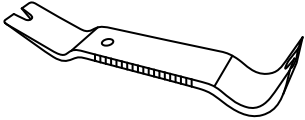


F300201

1	Instrument Panel Assembly	3	Instrument Panel Crossmember Assembly
2	Front Passenger Airbag Assembly		

50.3 On-vehicle Service

1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

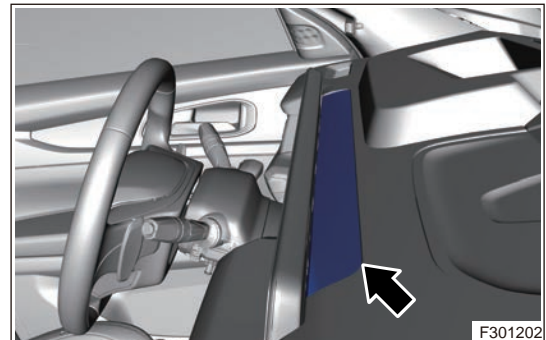
2 Replacement of Instrument Panel

2.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

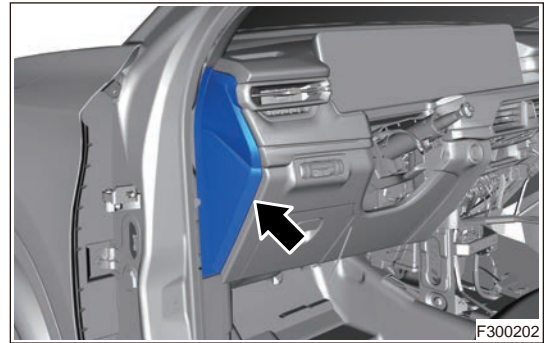
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing instrument panel.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing instrument panel. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (4) Remove the steering wheel assembly.
- (5) Remove the spiral cable assembly.
- (6) Remove the instrument cluster plug (behind dual displays).



- (7) Remove the dual LCD.
- (8) Remove the A-pillar upper protector assembly.

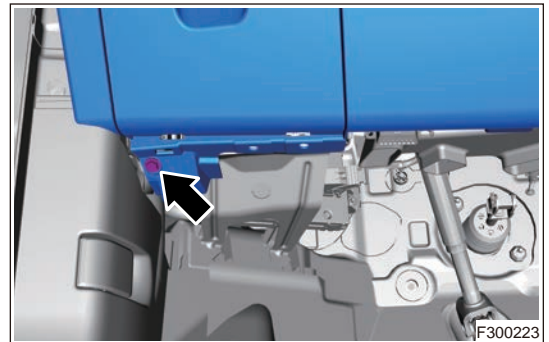
- (9) Using an interior crow plate, remove the instrument panel left end panel assembly.



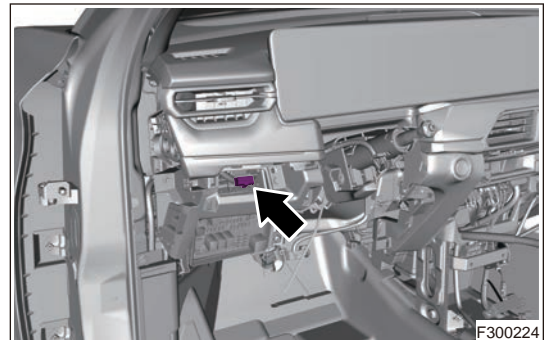
- (10) Remove 2 fixing screws from instrument panel lower left protector assembly.



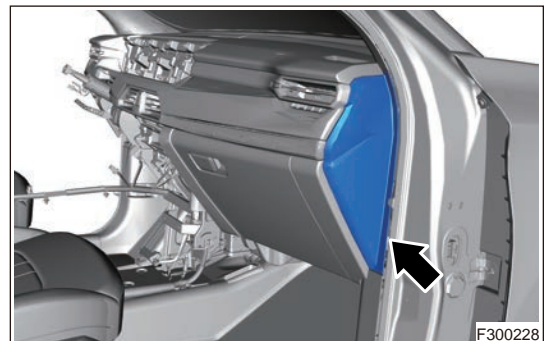
- (11) Remove fixing bolt from lower side of instrument panel lower left protector assembly.



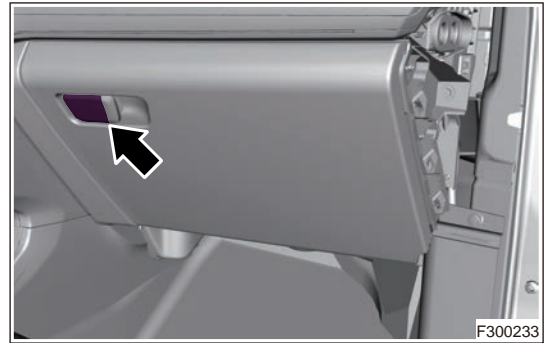
- (12) Using an interior crow plate, remove instrument panel left lower protector assembly, and disconnect headlight leveling switch connector.



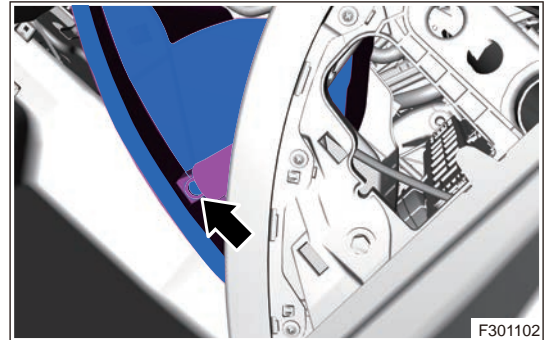
- (13) Using an interior crow plate, remove the instrument panel right end panel assembly.



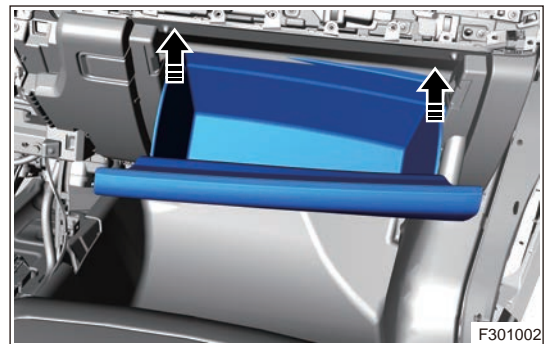
(14) Press glove box lock button to open glove box.



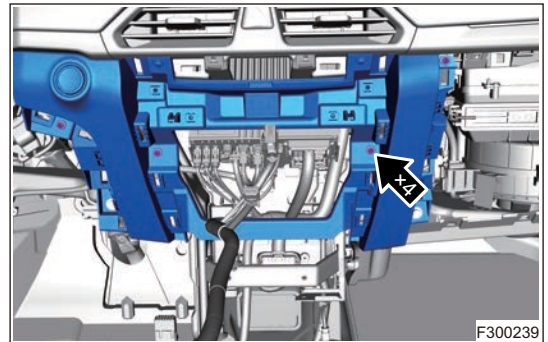
(15) Disengage fixing clip of air damper from glove box to remove glove box assembly.



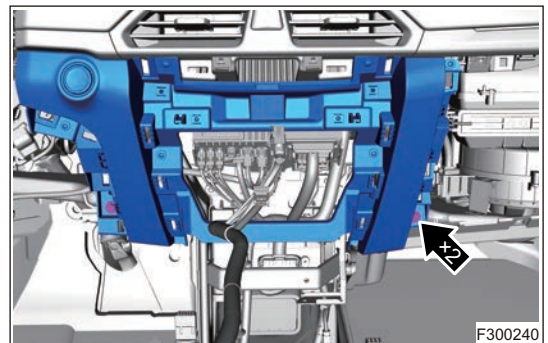
(16) Pull upward in direction of arrow to remove glove box.



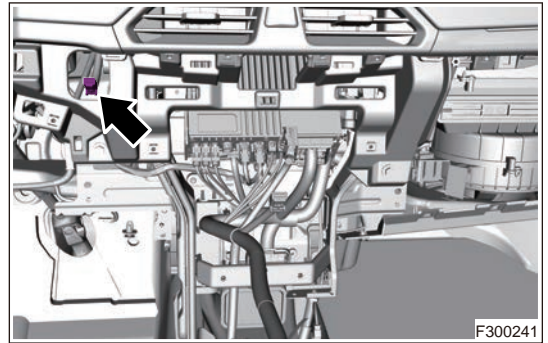
(17) Remove 4 fixing screws from center lower protector body.



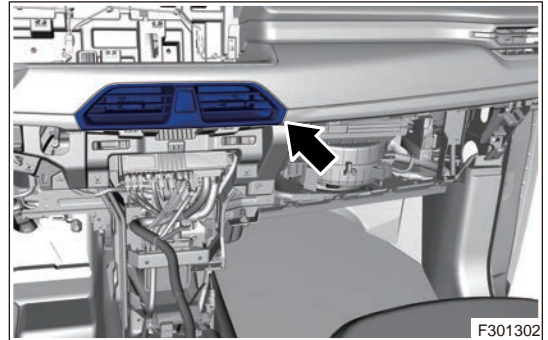
(18) Remove 2 fixing bolts from center lower protector body.



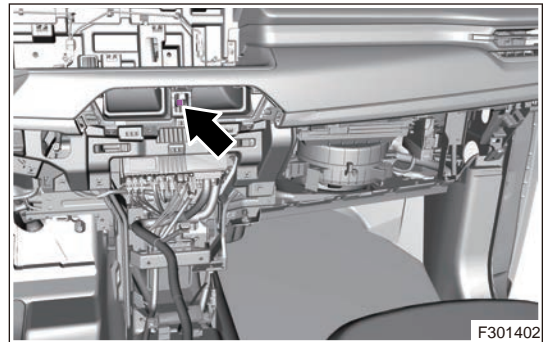
- (19) Using an interior crow plate, remove center lower protector body, and disconnect ENGINE START STOP switch connector.



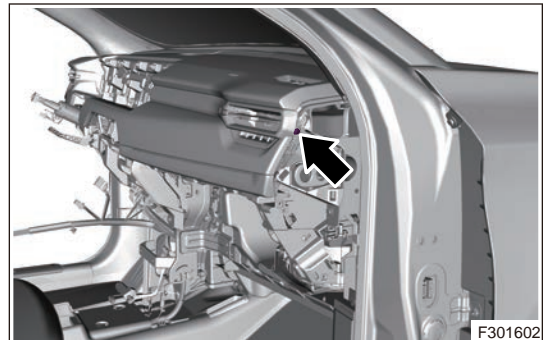
- (20) Using an interior crow plate, pry off central A/C outlet assembly carefully.



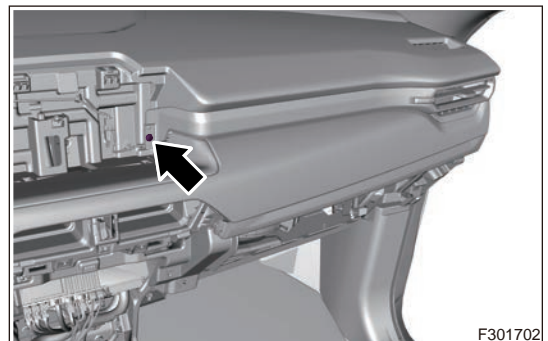
- (21) Disconnect warning light switch connector, and remove central A/C outlet assembly.



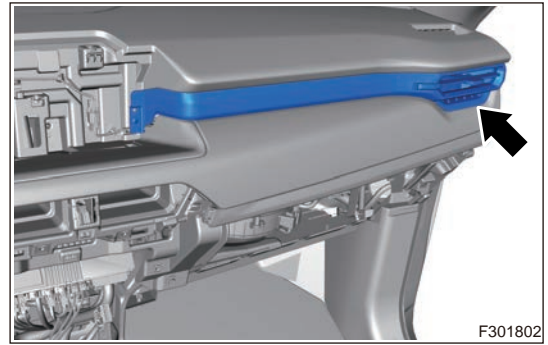
- (22) Remove 1 fixing screw from instrument panel right outlet assembly.



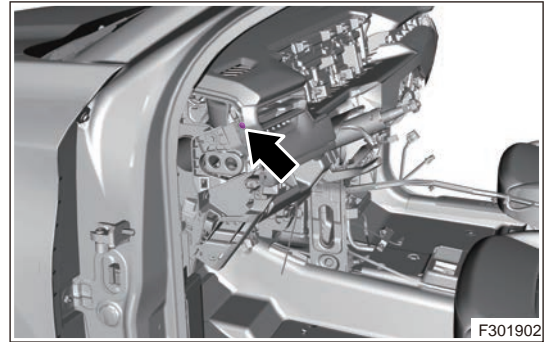
- (23) Remove 1 fixing screw from instrument panel right outlet assembly.



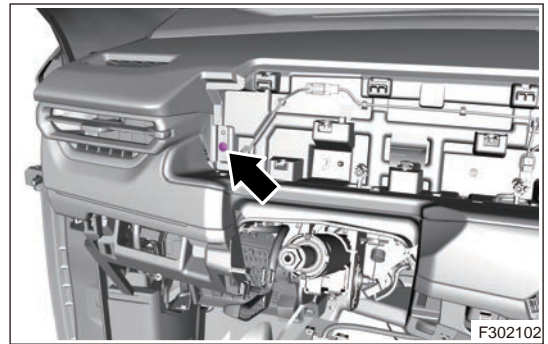
(24) Using an interior crow plate, pry off instrument panel right outlet assembly carefully.



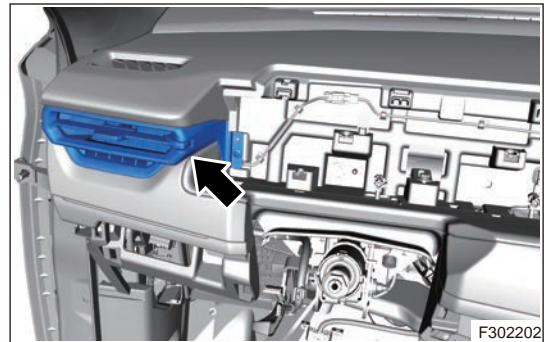
(25) Remove 1 fixing screw from instrument panel left outlet assembly.



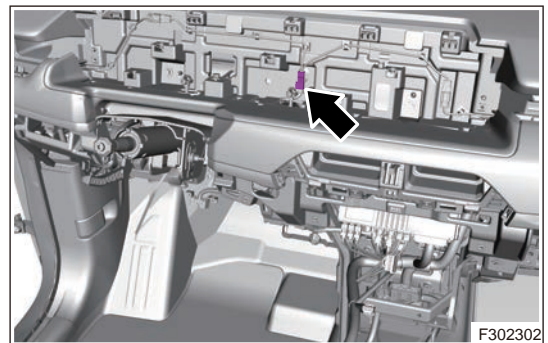
(26) Remove 1 fixing screw from instrument panel left outlet assembly.



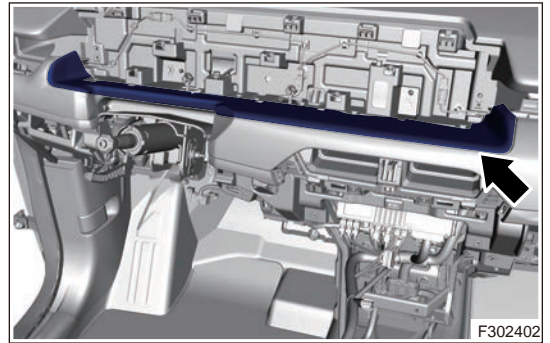
(27) Using an interior crow plate, pry off instrument panel left outlet assembly carefully.



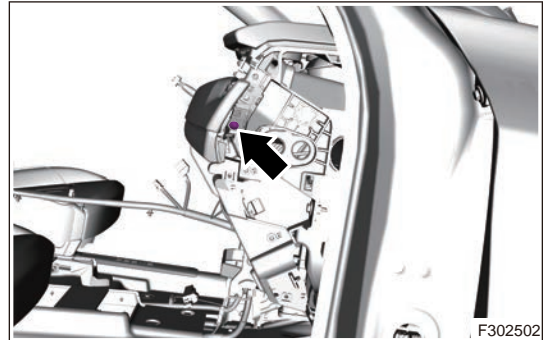
(28) Disconnect the ambient light connector.



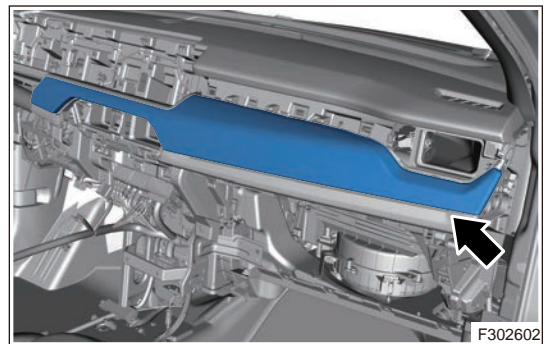
(29) Remove the large display lower finish panel.



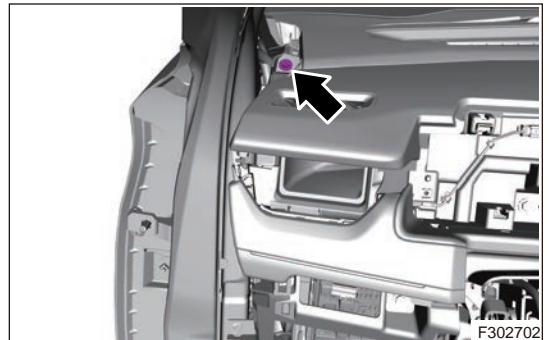
(30) Remove 1 fixing screw from instrument panel right trim board assembly.



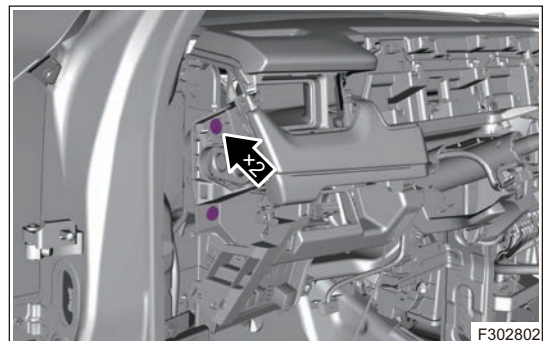
(31) Using an interior crow plate, pry off instrument panel right trim board assembly carefully.



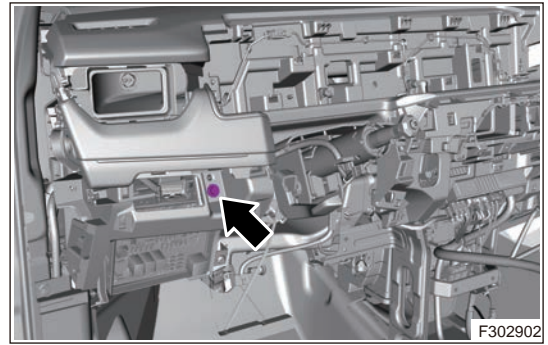
(32) Remove 1 fixing bolt from rear side of left A-pillar upper protector.



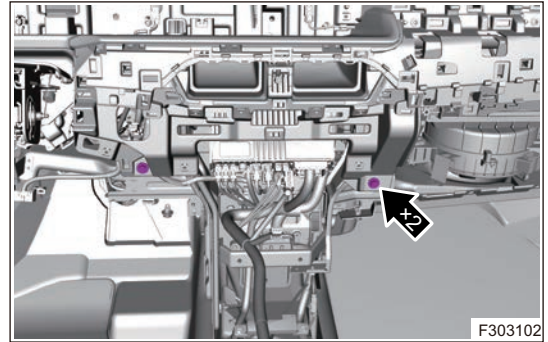
(33) Remove 2 fixing bolts from left side of instrument panel assembly.



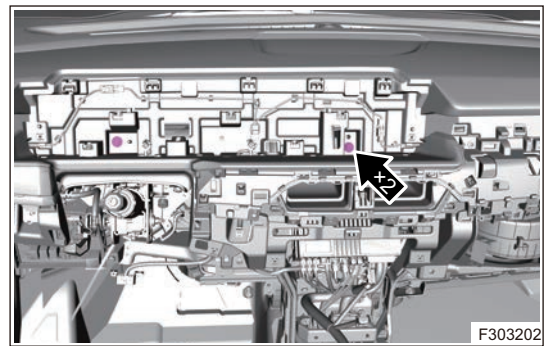
(34) Remove 1 fixing bolt from left side of instrument panel assembly.



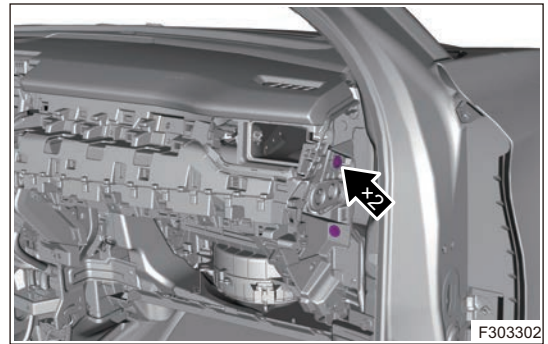
(35) Remove 2 fixing bolts from middle of instrument panel assembly.



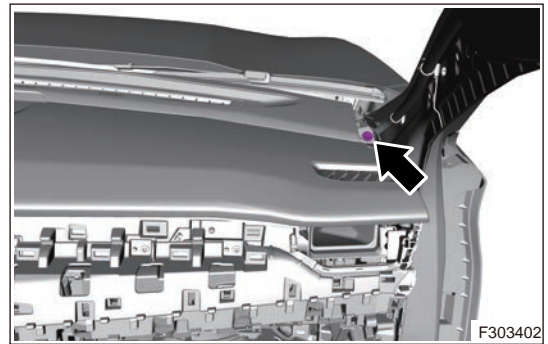
(36) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear side of instrument panel assembly.



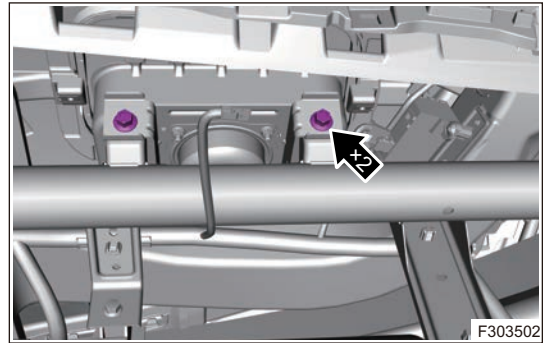
(37) Remove 2 fixing bolts from right side of instrument panel assembly.



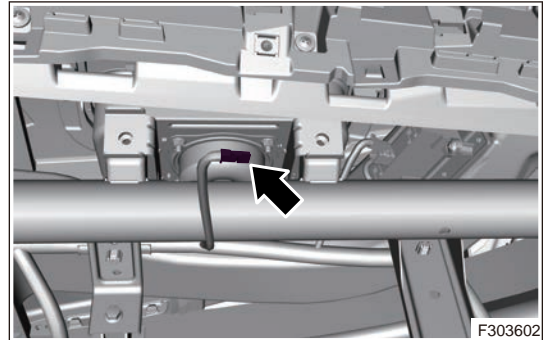
(38) Remove 1 fixing bolt from rear side of right A-pillar upper protector.



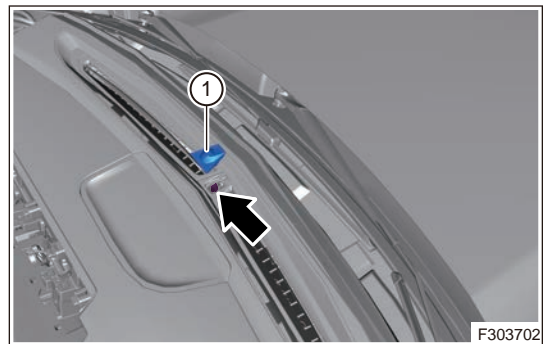
(39) Remove 2 fixing bolts between passenger side airbag and crossmember.



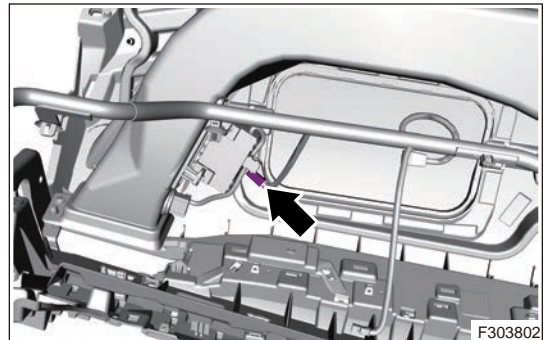
(40) Disconnect the passenger side airbag connector.



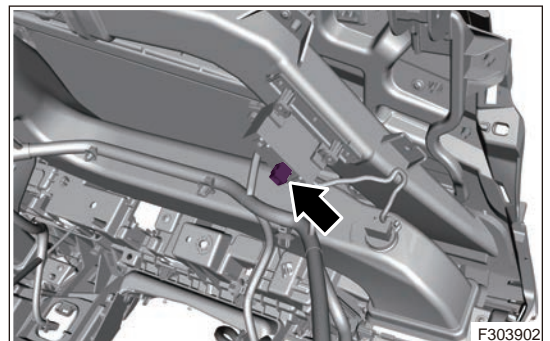
(41) Using an interior crow plate, pry off solar sensor (1), and disconnect solar sensor connector.



(42) Disconnect the right negative ion generator connector.



(43) Disconnect the left negative ion generator connector.



- (44) Remove wire harness clip from instrument panel and instrument panel assembly.

2.2 Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing instrument panel assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing instrument panel assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **DO NOT scratch interior and body paint, when installing instrument panel assembly.**

- (1) Install instrument panel assembly to a proper position of instrument panel crossmember, arrange instrument panel wire harness, and install instrument panel wire harness clip.
- (2) Connect left and right negative ion generator connectors.
- (3) Connect solar sensor connector, and install solar sensor (1).
- (4) Connect the passenger side airbag connector.
- (5) Install 2 fixing bolts between passenger side airbag and crossmember.
- (6) Install 1 fixing bolt on the rear side of right A-pillar upper protector.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (7) Install 2 fixing bolts on the right side of instrument panel assembly.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (8) Install 2 fixing bolts on the rear side of instrument panel assembly.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (9) Install 2 fixing bolts on the center of instrument panel assembly.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (10) Install 1 fixing bolt on the left side of instrument panel assembly.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (11) Install 2 fixing bolts on the left side of instrument panel assembly.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (12) Install 1 fixing bolt on the rear side of left A-pillar upper protector.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (13) Install instrument panel right trim board assembly and 1 fixing screw.
- (14) Install the large display lower finish panel.
- (15) Connect the ambient light connector.
- (16) Install instrument panel left outlet assembly.
- (17) Install 2 fixing screws to instrument panel left outlet assembly.
- (18) Install the instrument panel right outlet assembly.
- (19) Install 2 fixing screws to instrument panel right outlet assembly.
- (20) Install central A/C outlet assembly, and connect warning light switch connector.
- (21) Install center lower protector body, and connect ENGINE START STOP switch connector.
- (22) Install 2 fixing bolts to center lower protector body.
- (23) Install 4 fixing screws to center lower protector body.
- (24) Install glove box and glove box air damper.
- (25) Install the instrument panel right end panel assembly.
- (26) Install instrument panel left lower protector assembly, and connect headlight leveling switch connector.
- (27) Install fixing screw on the lower side of instrument panel left lower protector assembly.
- (28) Install 2 fixing screws to instrument panel left lower protector assembly.
- (29) Install the instrument panel left end panel assembly.
- (30) Install the A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (31) Install the dual LCD.

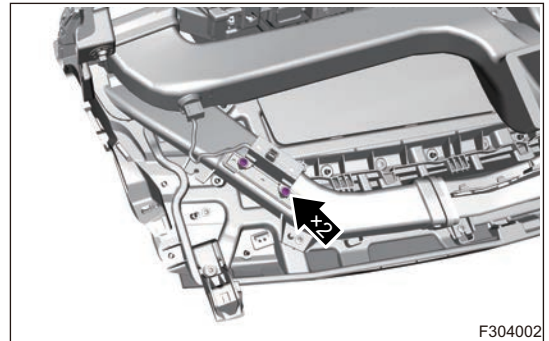
- (32) Install the instrument cluster block cover.
- (33) Install the spiral cable assembly.
- (34) Install the steering wheel assembly.
- (35) Install the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (36) Connect the negative battery cable.

2.3 Disassembly

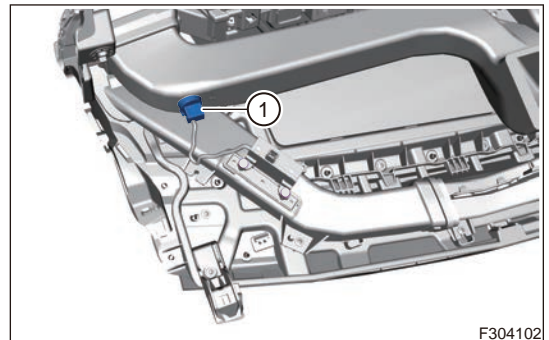
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when disassembling instrument panel.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when disassembling instrument panel. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

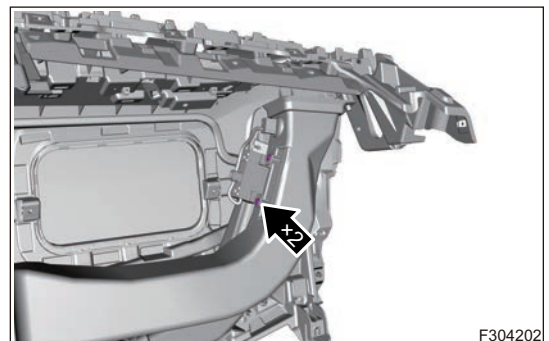
- (1) Remove 2 fixing screws from left negative ion generator.



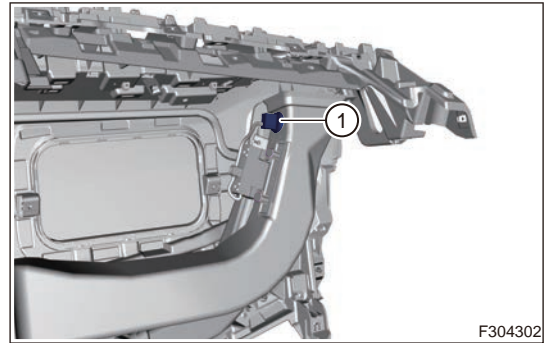
- (2) Rotate and remove negative ion generator emitter (1) from air duct.



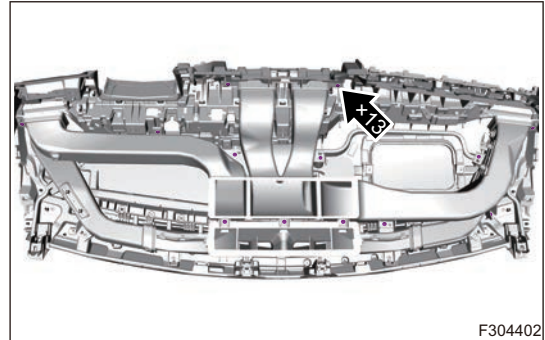
- (3) Remove the left negative ion generator.
- (4) Remove 2 fixing screws from right negative ion generator.



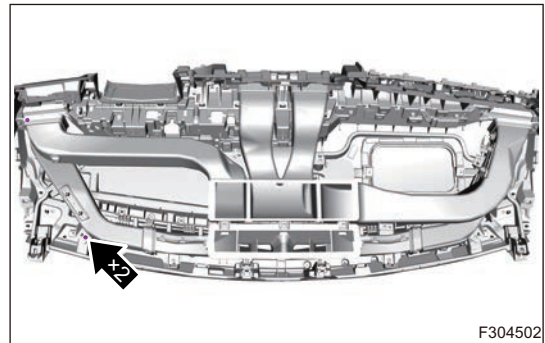
- (5) Rotate and remove negative ion generator emitter (1) from air duct.



- (6) Remove the right negative ion generator.
- (7) Remove 13 fixing screws from central air duct.



- (8) Remove the central air duct.
- (9) Remove 2 fixing screws from left defroster duct.



- (10) Remove the left defroster duct (the right side is same as left side).
- (11) Disengage 9 fixing clips from front passenger airbag assembly.
- (12) Remove the front passenger airbag assembly.

2.4 Assembly

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when assembling instrument panel assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when assembling instrument panel assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Install the front passenger airbag assembly.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws and left defroster duct.
- (3) Install the right defroster duct (the right side is same as left side).
- (4) Install 13 fixing screws and central air duct.
- (5) Install the right negative ion generator.
- (6) Install the negative ion generator emitter (1).

- (7) Install 2 fixing screws to right negative ion generator.
- (8) Install the left negative ion generator.
- (9) Install the negative ion generator emitter (1).
- (10) Install 2 fixing screws to left negative ion generator.

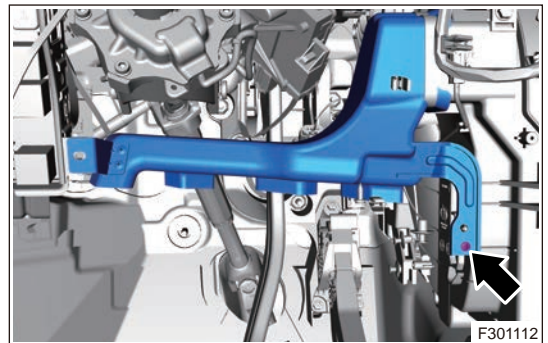
3 Replacement of A/C to Instrument Panel Left A/C Outlet Pipe Assembly

3.1 Removal

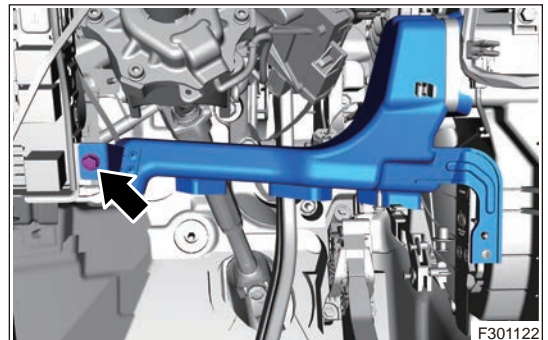
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

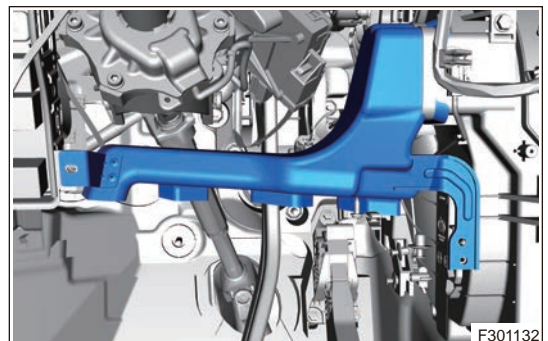
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel left soundproof board assembly.
- (4) Remove the left lower protector assembly.
- (5) Remove 1 fixing screw from A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly.



- (6) Remove 1 fixing bolt from A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly.



- (7) Remove the A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly.



3.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when installing A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Install A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly to a proper position on body.
- (2) Install 1 fixing bolt to A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly.
Torque: 7 ± 1 N·m
- (3) Install 1 fixing screw to A/C to instrument panel left A/C outlet pipe assembly.
Torque: 1.5 ± 0.2 N·m
- (4) Install the left lower protector assembly.
- (5) Install the instrument panel left soundproof board assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

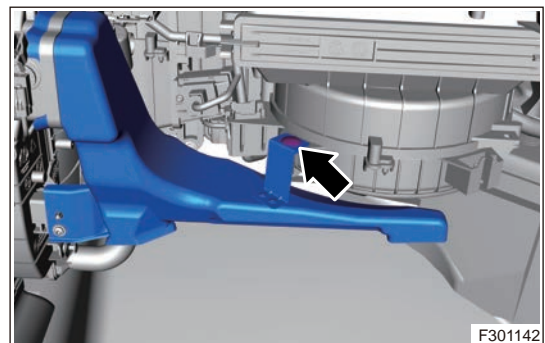
4 Replacement of A/C to Instrument Panel Right A/C Outlet Pipe Assembly

4.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

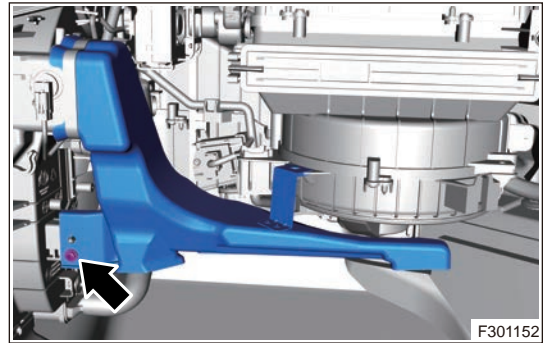
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel right soundproof board assembly.
- (4) Remove the glove box assembly.
- (5) Remove tree-formed fixing clip from A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly.

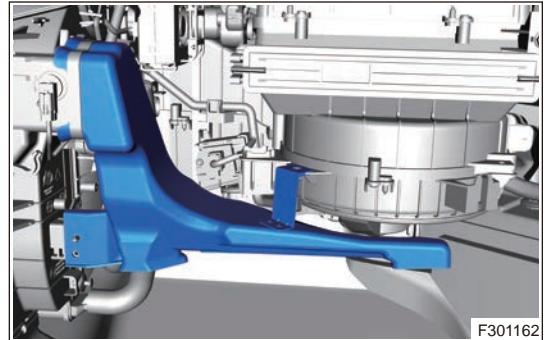


F301142

- (6) Remove 1 fixing screw from A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly.



- (7) Remove the A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly.



4.2 Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Install A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly to a proper position on body.
- (2) Install 1 fixing screw to A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly.
Torque: 1.5 ± 0.2 N·m
- (3) Install tree-formed fixing clip to A/C to instrument panel right A/C outlet pipe assembly.
- (4) Install the glove box assembly.
- (5) Install the instrument panel right soundproof board assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

5 Replacement of Left Front and Rear Foot Ducts

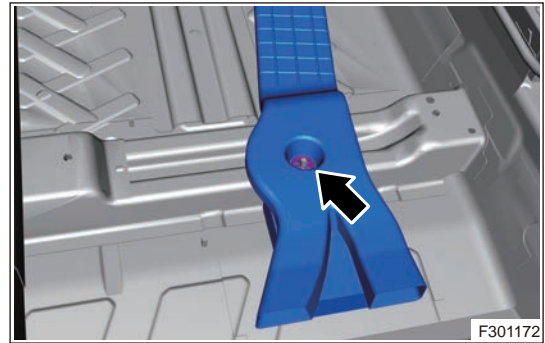
5.1 Removal

Caution

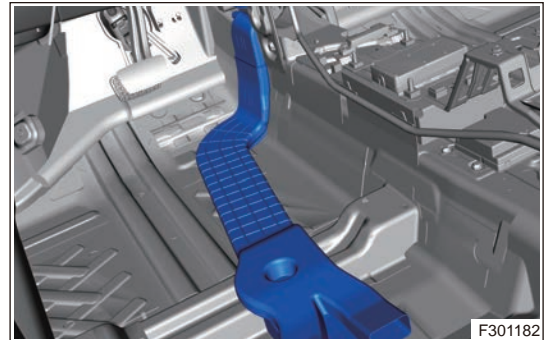
- **When removing left front and rear foot ducts, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing left front and rear foot ducts. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left seat assembly.
- (4) Remove the front carpet assembly (It is not necessary to completely remove).

- (5) Remove clamping washer from left front and rear foot ducts.



- (6) Remove the left front and rear foot ducts.



5.2 Installation

Caution

- When installing left front and rear foot ducts, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when installing left front and rear foot ducts. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Install left front and rear foot ducts to a proper position on body.
- (2) Install clamping washer to left front and rear foot ducts.
- (3) Install the front carpet assembly.
- (4) Install the front left seat assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

6 Replacement of Right Front and Rear Foot Ducts

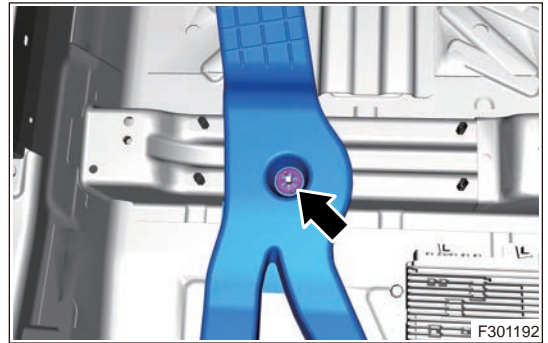
6.1 Removal

Caution

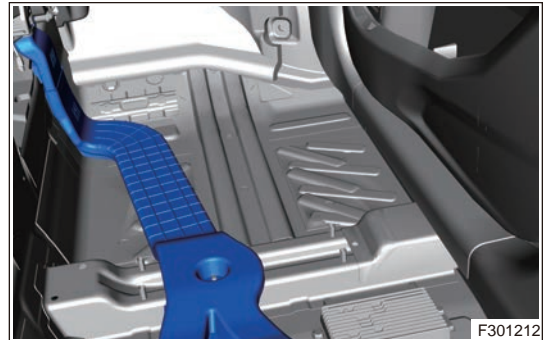
- When removing right front and rear foot ducts, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing right front and rear foot ducts. Be careful not to operate roughly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front right seat assembly.
- (4) Remove the front carpet assembly (It is not necessary to completely remove).

- (5) Remove clamping washer from right front and rear foot ducts.



- (6) Remove the right front and rear foot ducts.



6.2 Installation

Caution

- **When installing right front and rear foot ducts, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing right front and rear foot ducts. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Install right front and rear foot ducts to a proper position on body.
- (2) Install clamping washer to right front and rear foot ducts.
- (3) Install the front carpet assembly.
- (4) Install the front right seat assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

7 Replacement of Instrument Panel Crossmember Assembly

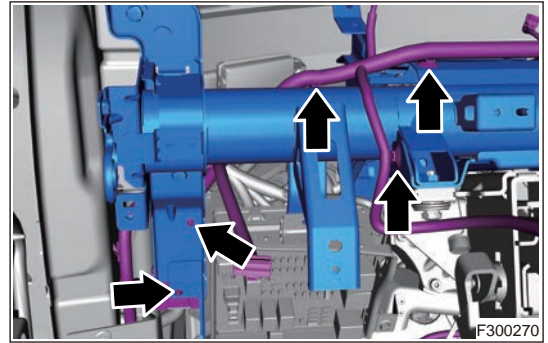
7.1 Removal

Caution

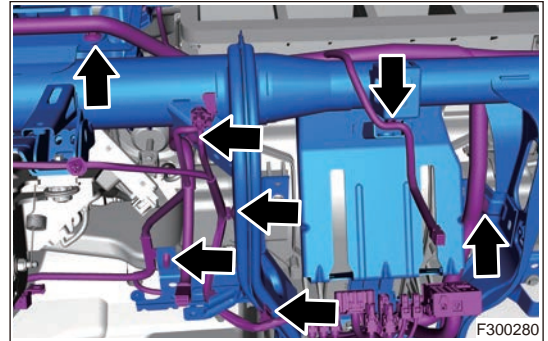
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing instrument panel crossmember assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing instrument panel crossmember assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (4) Remove the instrument panel assembly.
- (5) Remove the front windshield lower trim board body.
- (6) Remove the steering column assembly.

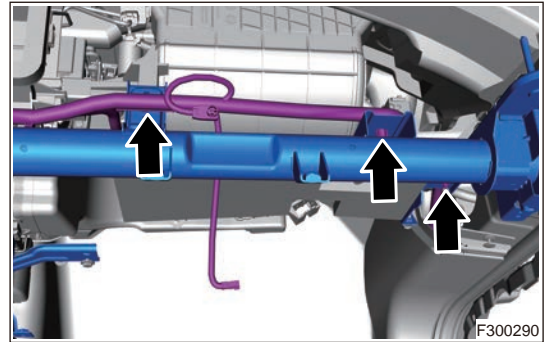
- (7) Remove the domain controller.
- (8) Remove the OBD connector.
- (9) Disengage fixing clips of instrument panel wire harness from instrument panel crossmember.



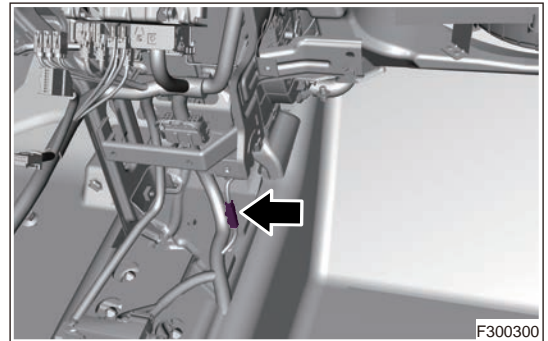
- (10) Disengage fixing clips of instrument panel wire harness from instrument panel crossmember.



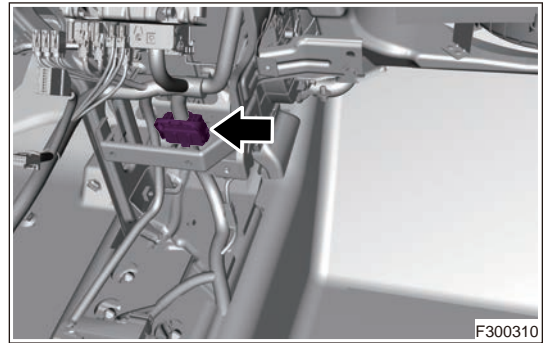
- (11) Disengage fixing clips of instrument panel wire harness from instrument panel crossmember.



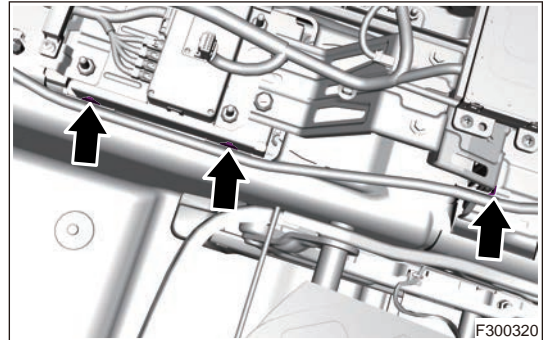
- (12) Disconnect the AM/FM/GPS connector.



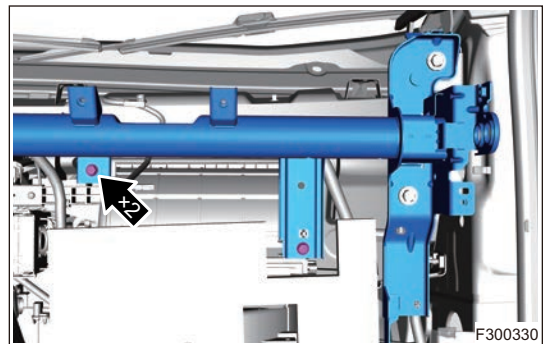
- (13) Disconnect connector between instrument cluster wire harness and central control wire harness.



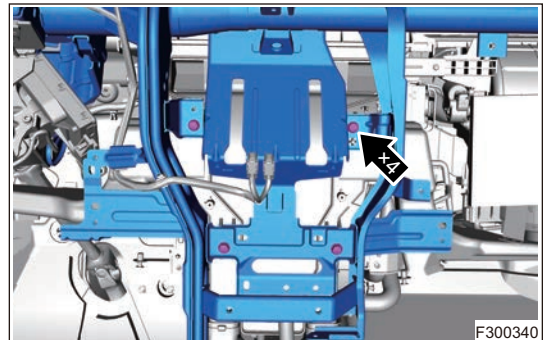
- (14) Disengage fixing clips from wire harness.



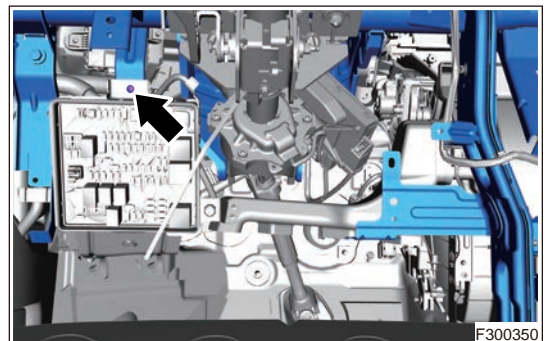
- (15) Remove 2 coupling bolts between HVAC and the right side of instrument panel crossmember.



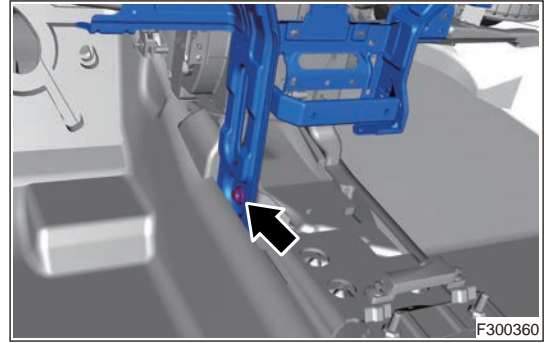
- (16) Remove 4 coupling bolts between HVAC and the middle of instrument panel crossmember.



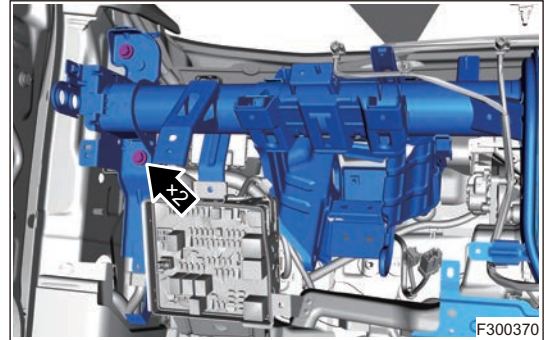
- (17) Remove 1 fixing bolt from instrument panel relay box.



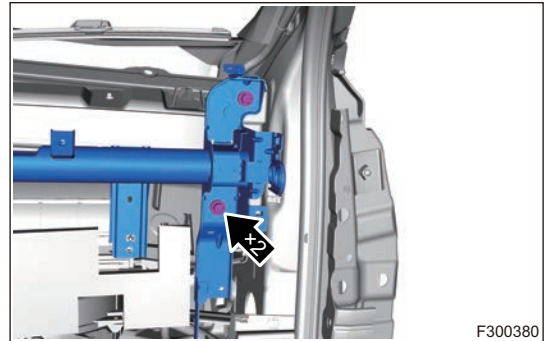
(18) Remove 1 coupling bolt from center of instrument panel crossmember.



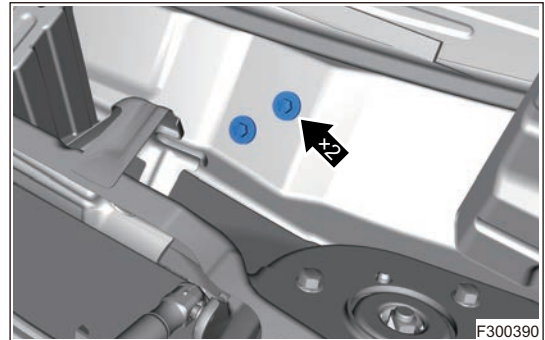
(19) Remove 2 coupling bolts from the left side of instrument panel crossmember and body.



(20) Remove 2 coupling bolts from the right side of instrument panel crossmember and body.



(21) Remove 2 coupling bolts from instrument panel crossmember and cowl.



(22) Remove the instrument panel crossmember assembly.

7.2 Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing instrument panel crossmember.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing instrument panel crossmember. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

(1) Install instrument panel crossmember to a proper position on body.

- (2) Install 2 coupling bolts between instrument panel crossmember and cowl (13# socket wrench).
Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m
- (3) Install 2 coupling bolts between the right side of instrument panel crossmember and body (13# socket wrench).
Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m
- (4) Install 2 coupling bolts between the left side of instrument panel crossmember and body (13# socket wrench).
Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m
- (5) Install 1 coupling bolt on the middle of instrument panel crossmember (13# socket wrench).
Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m
- (6) Install 1 fixing bolt to instrument panel relay box (10# socket wrench).
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (7) Install 4 coupling bolts between HVAC and the middle of instrument panel crossmember (10# socket wrench).
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (8) Install 2 coupling bolts between HVAC and the right side of instrument panel crossmember (10# socket wrench).
Torque: 5 ± 1 N·m
- (9) Connect connector between instrument cluster wire harness and central control wire harness.
- (10) Connect the AM/FM/GPS connector.
- (11) Install all fixing clips on instrument panel wire harness.
- (12) Install the OBD connector.
- (13) Install the domain controller.
- (14) Install the steering column assembly.
- (15) Install the front windshield lower trim board body.
- (16) Install the instrument panel assembly.
- (17) Install the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (18) Connect the negative battery cable.

AUXILIARY FASCIA CONSOLE

51.1	Warning and Precautions	1895
1	Precautions	1895
51.2	System Overview	1896
1	System Components Diagram.....	1896
51.3	On-vehicle Service	1897
1	Tools	1897
2	Replacement of Auxiliary Fascia Console	1897
2.1	Removal	1897
2.2	Inspection	1902
2.3	Installation	1902

51.1 Warning and Precautions

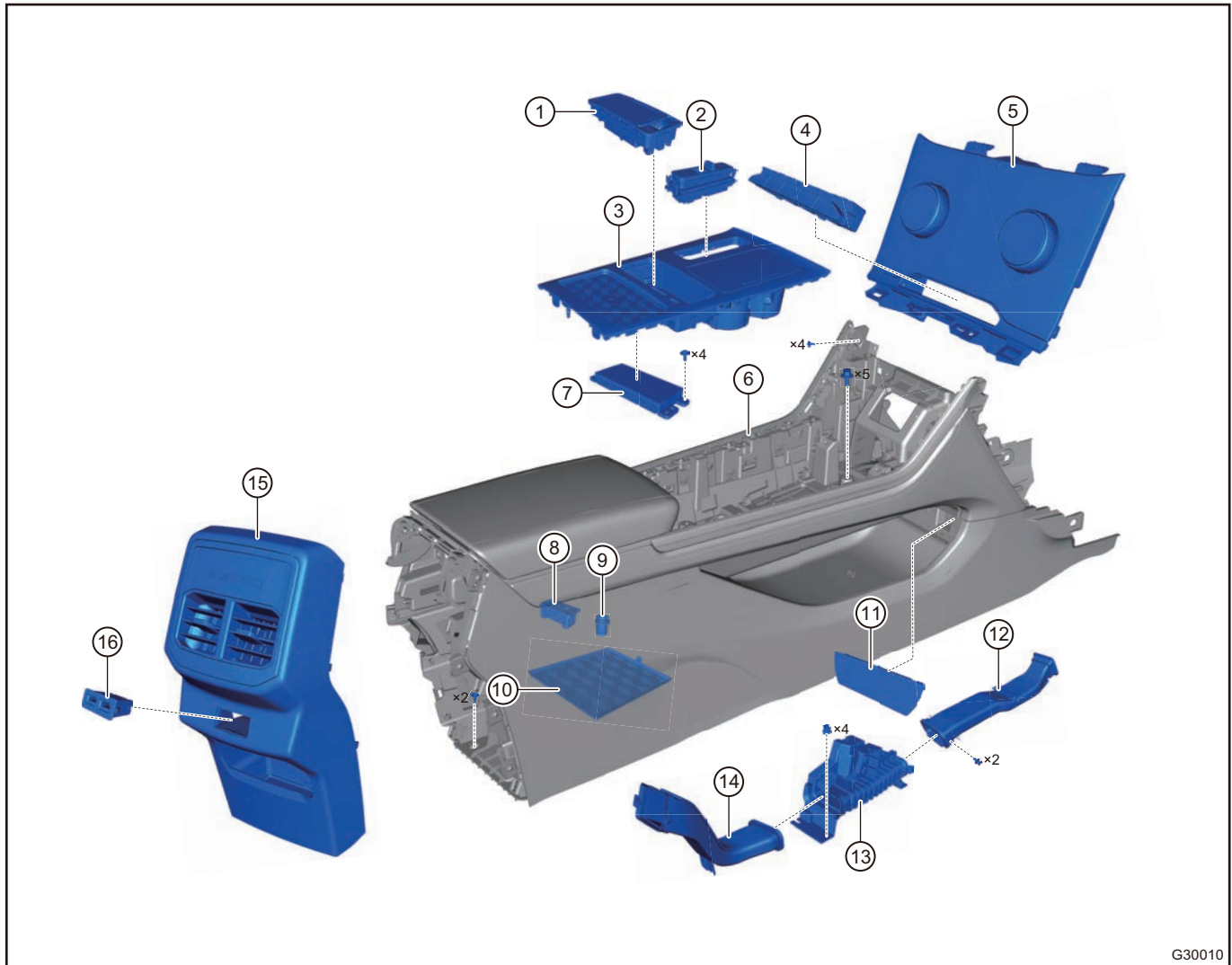
1 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, please observe the following instructions before repair.

- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (2) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing auxiliary fascia console assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (3) DO NOT scratch interior and body paint, when removing auxiliary fascia console assembly.

51.2 System Overview

1 System Components Diagram

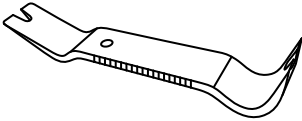


G30010

1	Audio Control Panel	9	Cigarette Lighter Block Cover
2	Electronic Shift Switch	10	Armrest Box Storage Box Rubber Gasket
3	Auxiliary Fascia Console Trim Panel Assembly	11	Auxiliary Fascia Console Body Bolt Cover Plate
4	Central Console Switch Assembly	12	Front Part of Rear Face Air Duct
5	Auto A/C Control Panel Assembly	13	Auxiliary Fascia Console Mounting Bracket
6	Auxiliary Fascia Console Body Assembly	14	Rear Part of Rear Face Air Duct
7	Mobile Phone Wireless Charging Module	15	Auxiliary Fascia Console Rear Panel
8	Multi-function Interface	16	USB Charging Module

51.3 On-vehicle Service

1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

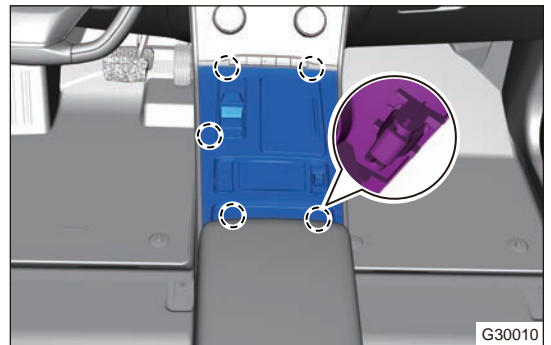
2 Replacement of Auxiliary Fascia Console

2.1 Removal

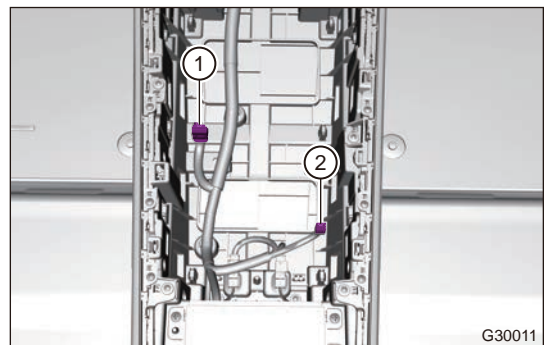
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing auxiliary fascia console.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing auxiliary fascia console. Be careful not to operate roughly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off auxiliary fascia console trim panel assembly carefully (interior crow plate).

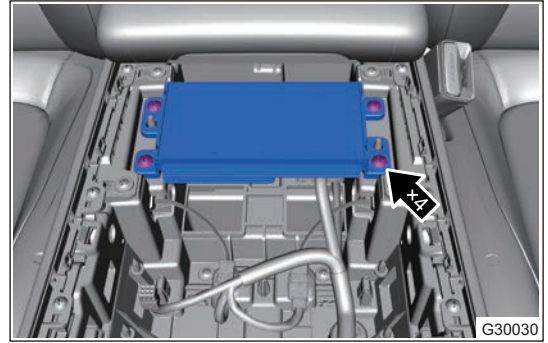


- (4) Disconnect the electronic shift switch connector (1), and audio control panel connector (2).

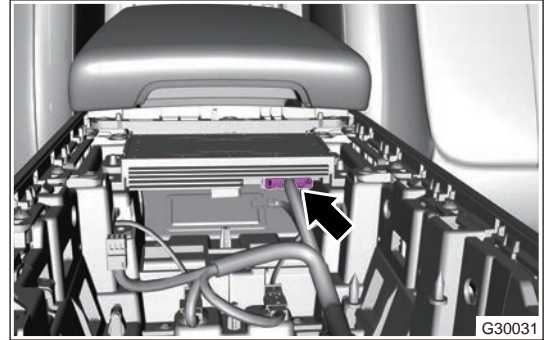


- (5) Remove the auxiliary fascia console trim panel assembly.

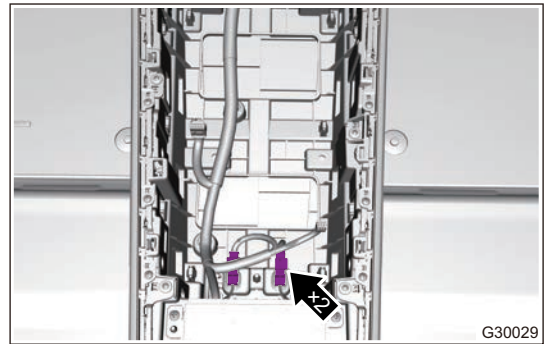
- (6) Remove 4 fixing screws from wireless charging module (cross screwdriver).



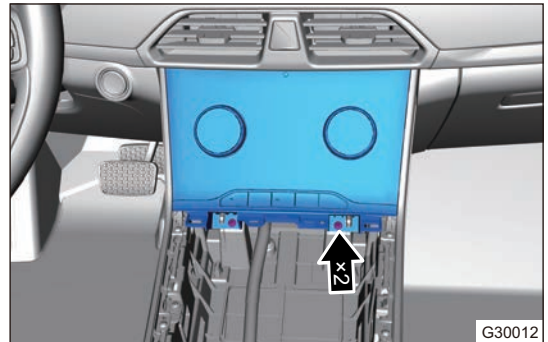
- (7) Disconnect the wireless charging module connector, and remove wireless charging module.



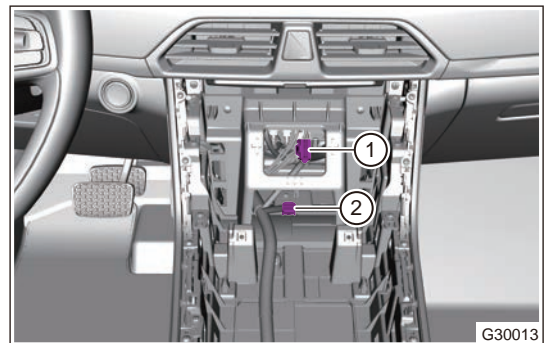
- (8) Disconnect the ambient light connectors.



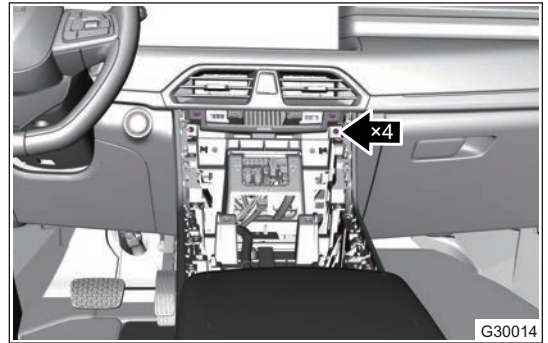
- (9) Remove 2 fixing screws from A/C control panel assembly (cross screwdriver).



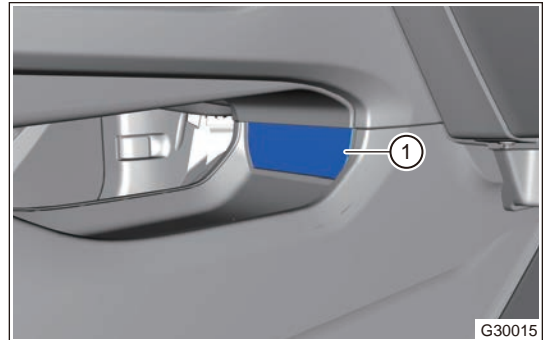
- (10) Using an interior crow plate, pry off A/C control panel assembly carefully, disconnect A/C control panel assembly connector (1) and center console switch assembly connector (2), and remove A/C control panel assembly.



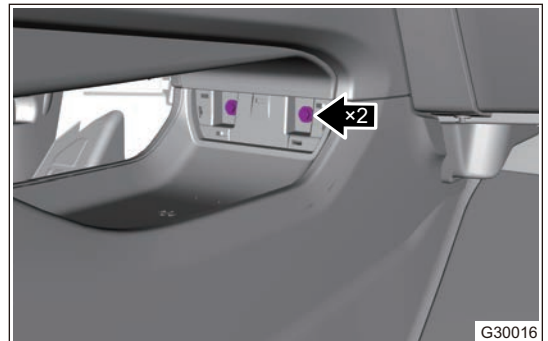
(11) Remove 4 fixing screws from front part of auxiliary fascia console body (cross screwdriver).



(12) Using an interior crow plate, pry off auxiliary fascia console screw cover plate assembly (1) carefully (- interior crow plate).



(13) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear side of auxiliary fascia console screw cover plate (10# socket wrench).



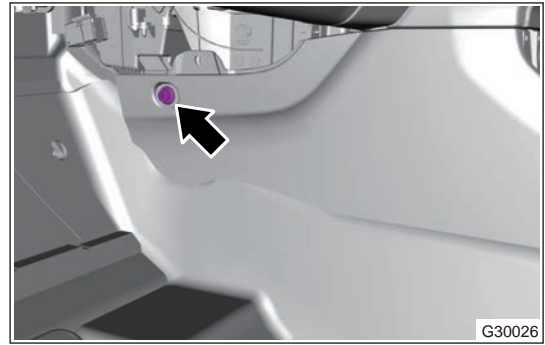
(14) Remove the instrument panel right soundproof board assembly.

(15) Remove the instrument panel left soundproof board assembly.

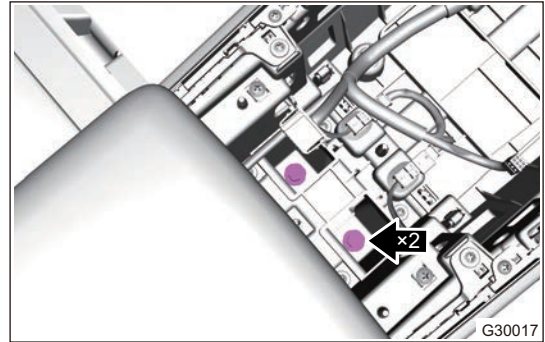
(16) Remove plastic rivet from the right side of front part of auxiliary fascia console body assembly (cross screwdriver).



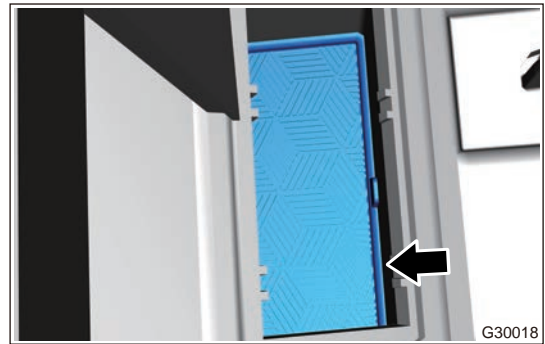
(17) Remove plastic rivet from the left side of front part of auxiliary fascia console body assembly (cross screwdriver).



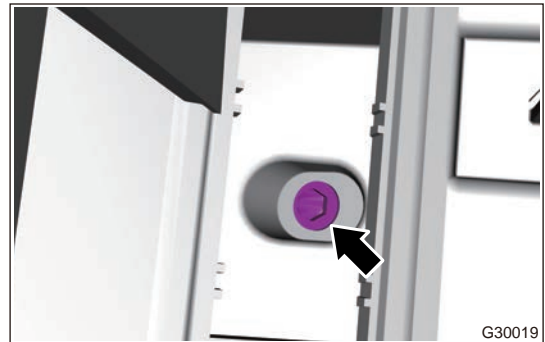
(18) Remove 2 fixing bolts from the center of auxiliary fascia console body (10# socket wrench).



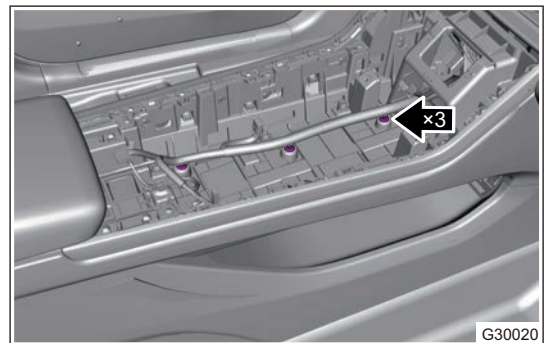
(19) Remove the auxiliary fascia console armrest box rubber pad.



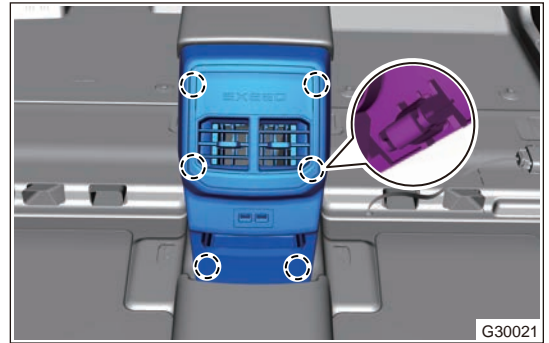
(20) Remove 1 fixing bolt from rear side of auxiliary fascia console armrest box rubber pad (10# socket wrench).



(21) Using an interior crow plate, pry off wire harness clips on auxiliary fascia console body assembly carefully (- interior crow plate).

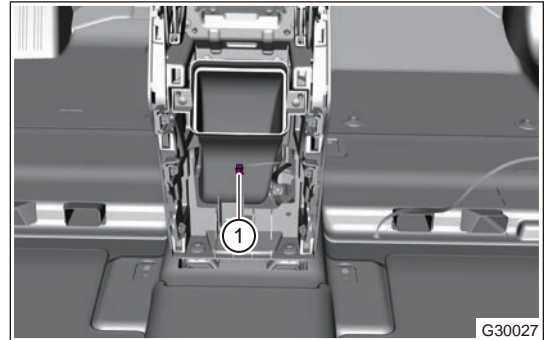


(22) Using an interior crow plate, pry off auxiliary fascia console rear end cover plate assembly carefully (interior crow plate).



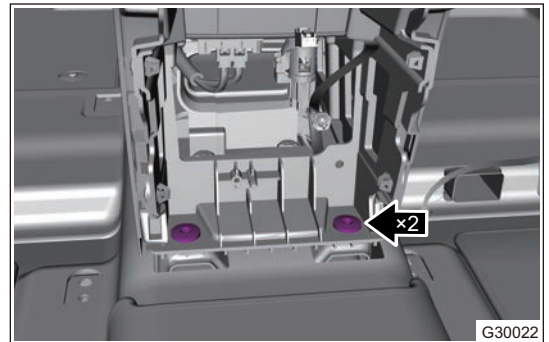
G30021

(23) Disconnect the USB wire harness connector (1).



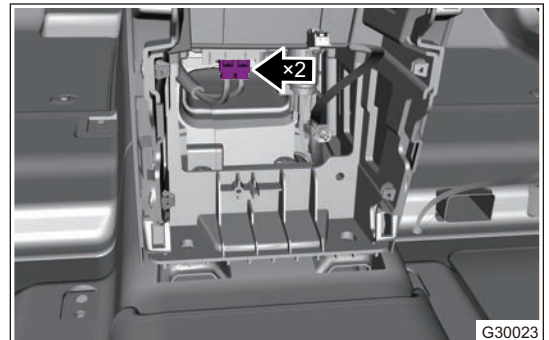
G30027

(24) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear end of auxiliary fascia console body assembly (spline wrench).



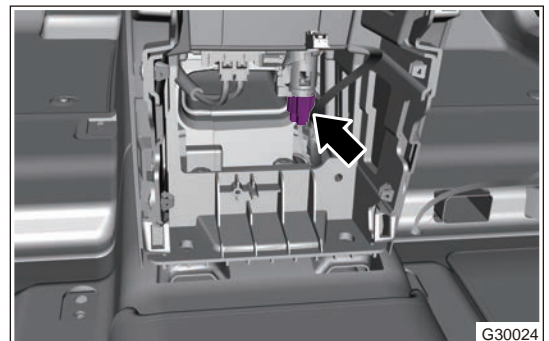
G30022

(25) Disconnect wire harness connectors from multi-function interface.



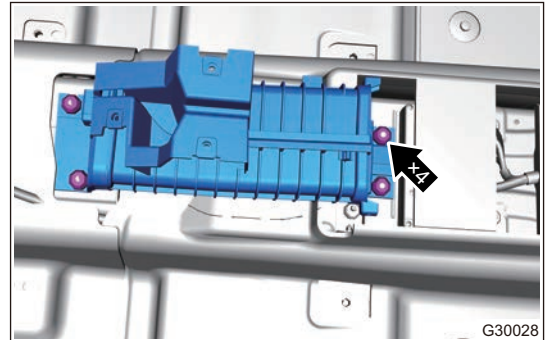
G30023

(26) Disconnect the cigarette lighter connector.



G30024

- (27) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (28) Remove the rear part of rear face air duct.
- (29) Remove the front part of rear face air duct.
- (30) Remove 4 fixing nuts from front bracket of auxiliary fascia console.



- (31) Remove the front bracket of auxiliary fascia console.

2.2 Inspection

- (1) Inspect if front bracket of auxiliary fascia console is deformed and corroded.
- (2) Inspect if auxiliary fascia console has abnormal scratches.

2.3 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing auxiliary fascia console assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing auxiliary fascia console assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **DO NOT scratch interior and body paint, when installing auxiliary fascia console assembly.**

- (1) Install front bracket of auxiliary fascia console to a proper position on body.
- (2) Install 4 fixing nuts to front bracket of auxiliary fascia console.
Torque: 20 ± 3 N·m
- (3) Install the front part of rear face air duct.
- (4) Install the rear part of rear face air duct.
- (5) Install auxiliary fascia console assembly to a proper position on body.
- (6) Connect the cigarette lighter connector.
- (7) Connect wire harness connectors to multi-function interface.
- (8) Install 2 fixing bolts to rear end of auxiliary fascia console body assembly (spline wrench).
Torque: 3.5 ± 0.5 N·m
- (9) Connect the USB wire harness connector.
- (10) Install the auxiliary fascia console rear end cover plate assembly.
- (11) Install wire harness clips to auxiliary fascia console body assembly.
- (12) Install 1 fixing bolt to rear side of auxiliary fascia console armrest box rubber pad (10# socket wrench).
Torque: 5.0 ± 1.0 N·m
- (13) Install the auxiliary fascia console armrest box rubber pad.
- (14) Install 2 fixing bolts on the center of auxiliary fascia console body (10# socket wrench).
Torque: 5.0 ± 1.0 N·m
- (15) Install plastic rivet to the left side of front part of auxiliary fascia console body assembly (cross screwdriver).
- (16) Install plastic rivet to the right side of front part of auxiliary fascia console body assembly (cross screwdriver).
- (17) Install instrument panel left soundproof board assembly and right soundproof board assembly.

- (18) Install 2 fixing bolts on the rear side of auxiliary fascia console screw cover plate. (10# socket wrench).
Torque: 5.0 ± 1.0 N·m
- (19) Install the auxiliary fascia console screw cover plate assembly (1).
- (20) Install 4 fixing screws on the front part of auxiliary fascia console body (cross screwdriver).
Torque: 1.5 ± 0.2 N·m
- (21) Connect A/C control panel assembly connector (1) and center console switch assembly connector (2), and install A/C control panel assembly.
- (22) Install 2 fixing screws to A/C control panel assembly (cross screwdriver).
Torque: 1.5 ± 0.2 N·m
- (23) Connect the ambient light connector.
- (24) Install wireless charging module and connect connector.
- (25) Install 4 fixing screws to wireless charging module.
- (26) Connect electronic shift switch connector (1), and audio control panel connector (2).
- (27) Install the auxiliary fascia console trim panel assembly.
- (28) Connect the negative battery cable.

EXTERIOR

52.1	Warning and Precaution	1906
1	Warning.....	1906
2	Precaution.....	1906
52.2	System Overview	1907
1	System Description	1907
2	System Components Diagram.....	1907
52.3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1910
1	Tool	1910
2	Replace front bumper assembly.....	1910
2.1	Removal	1910
2.2	Installation	1912
2.3	Disassembly	1913
2.4	Assembly	1914
3	Replace Front Bumper Mounting Bracket	1914
3.1	Removal	1914
3.2	Installation	1915
4	Replace Front Bumper Crossmember Assembly	1915
4.1	Removal	1915
4.2	Installation	1916
5	Replace Front Lower Protection Crossmember Assembly	1917
5.1	Removal	1917
5.2	Installation	1918
6	Replace Air Deflector Assembly.....	1919
6.1	Removal	1919
6.2	Installation	1919
7	Replace Front Wheel House Protector Assembly.....	1920
7.1	Removal	1920
7.2	Installation	1921
8	Replace Front Windshield Lower Trim Panel Assembly	1921
8.1	Removal	1921
8.2	Installation	1922
9	Replace Wing Assembly.....	1923
9.1	Removal	1923
9.2	Installation	1924
10	Replace Roof Rack.....	1925
10.1	Removal	1925
10.2	Installation	1925
11	Replace Rear Spoiler Assembly	1926
11.1	Removal	1926
11.2	Installation	1927
12	Replace Engine Compartment Trim Cover Assembly.....	1928
12.1	Removal	1928
12.2	Installation	1928
13	Replace Engine Compartment Lower Protector Assembly.....	1928

EXTERIOR

13.1	Removal	1928
13.2	Installation	1929
14	Replace Rear Bumper Assembly	1929
14.1	Removal	1929
14.2	Installation	1931
14.3	Disassembly	1931
14.4	Assembly	1933
15	Replace Rear Bumper Mounting Bracket.....	1934
15.1	Removal	1934
15.2	Installation	1934
16	Replace Rear Bumper Crossmember	1935
16.1	Removal	1935
16.2	Installation	1935
17	Replace Side Skirt Protector Assembly.....	1936
17.1	Removal	1936
17.2	Installation	1936
18	Replace Front Door Scuff Plate Assembly.....	1937
18.1	Removal	1937
18.2	Installation	1938
19	Replace Rear Door Scuff Plate Assembly.....	1938
19.1	Removal	1938
19.2	Installation	1939
20	Replace Rear Wheel House Protector Assembly	1939
20.1	Removal	1939
20.2	Installation	1940
21	Before Replace B-pillar Trim Board Assembly	1940
21.1	Removal	1940
21.2	Installation	1941
22	After Replace B-pillar Trim Board Assembly	1941
22.1	Removal	1941
22.2	Installation	1942
23	Replace C-pillar Trim Board Assembly	1942
23.1	Removal	1942
23.2	Installation	1943
24	Replace D-pillar Trim Board Assembly	1943
24.1	Removal	1943
24.2	Installation	1943
25	Replace Name Plate	1943
25.1	Removal	1943

52.1 Warning and Precaution

1 Warning

Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents before repairing, to avoid property damage, personal injury or even death.

2 Precaution

It should be avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle when performing the repair in this section.

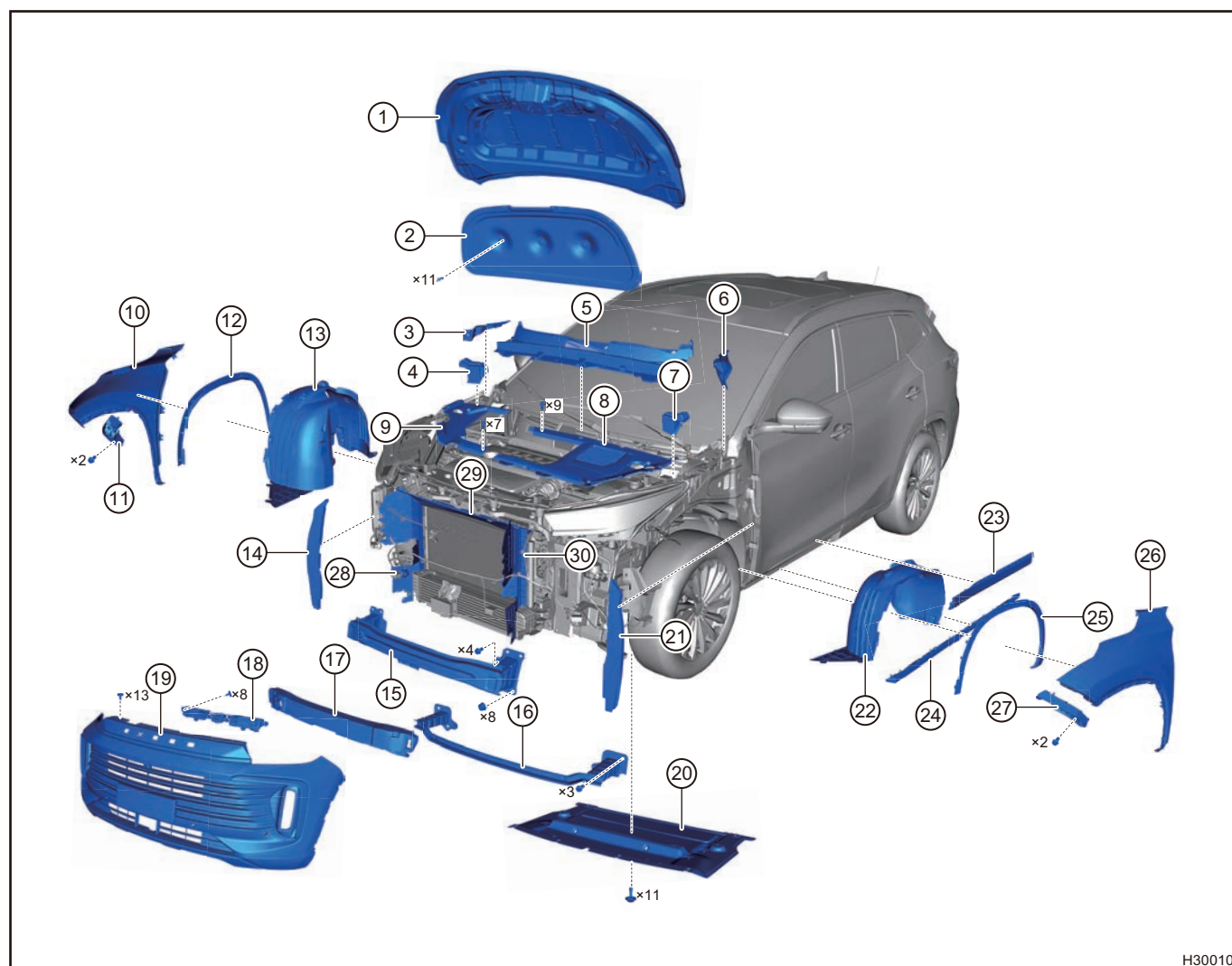
52.2 System Overview

1 System Description

Bumper assembly and bumper crossmember assembly are safety device to protect the front and rear body, which mainly absorb and reduce outside shock.

Exterior mainly consists of front bumper assembly, front bumper mounting bracket, front bumper crossmember assembly, radiator grille, front wheel house protector, front wheel arch, wing assembly, side skirt protector assembly, door trim panel assembly, engine hood lower protector, rear bumper assembly, rear bumper mounting bracket, rear bumper bracket, rear bumper crossmember assembly, rear wheel house protector, front windshield lower trim board assembly, D-pillar protector assembly, roof rack assembly, spoiler, etc.

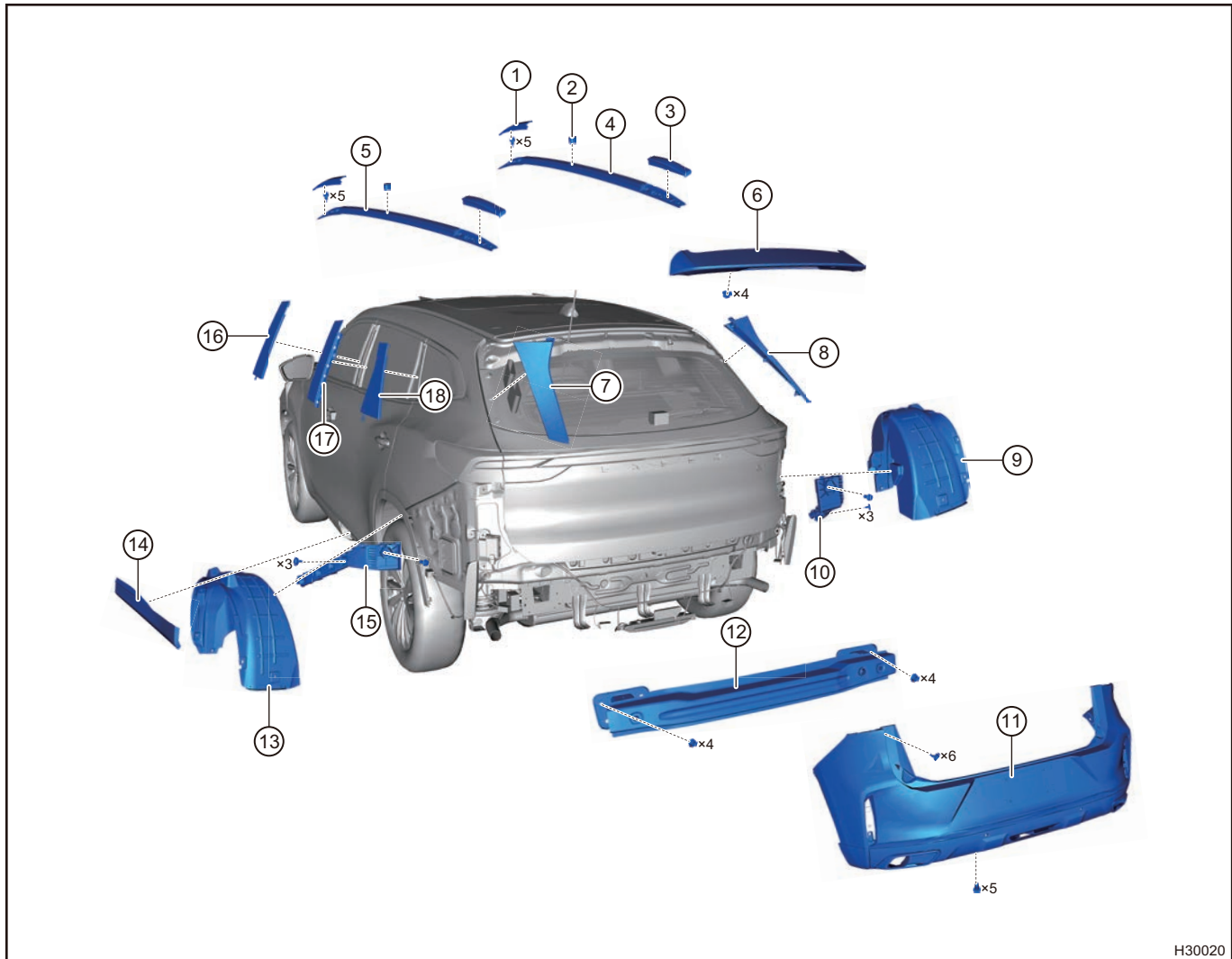
2 System Components Diagram



H30010

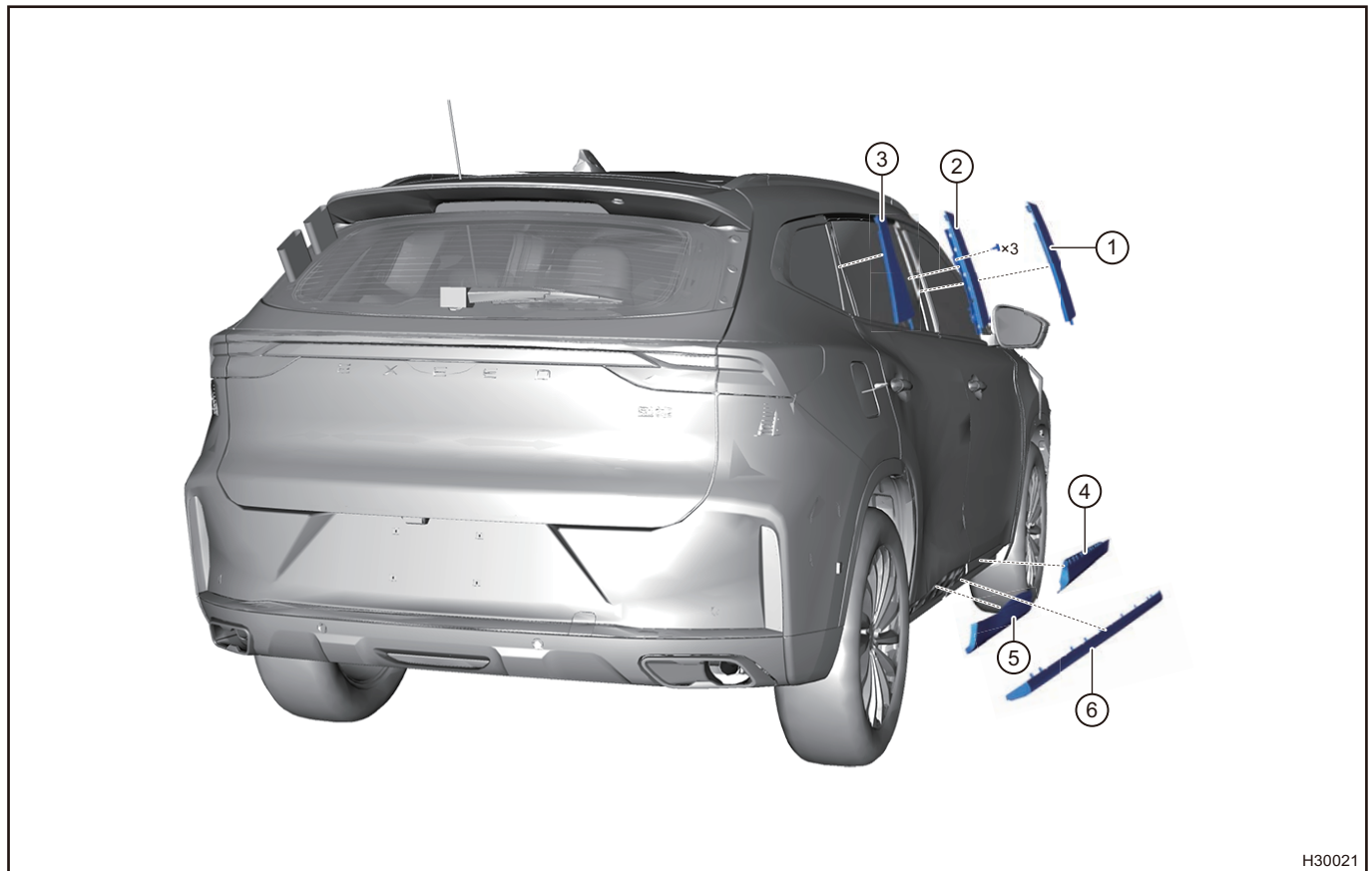
1	Engine Hood Assembly	16	Lower Support Beam
2	Engine Hood Sound Insulator Pad	17	Front Upper Energy Absorbing Block
3	Front Right Windshield Lower Trim Panel Cover Plate	18	Logo Light Assembly
4	Engine Hood Right Sound Insulator Foam	19	Front Bumper Assembly
5	Front Windshield Lower Finish Panel Body	20	Engine Lower Protector Assembly

6	Front Left Windshield Lower Trim Panel Cover Plate	21	Left Wing Spacer
7	Engine Hood Left Sound Insulator Foam	22	Front Left Wheel House Protector
8	Front Left Compartment Trim Cover Assembly	23	Front Left Door Scuff Plate Body
9	Front Right Compartment Trim Cover Assembly	24	Left Skirt Protector Assembly
10	Right Wing	25	Front Left Wheel Arch Body
11	Front Bumper Right Bracket	26	Left Wing
12	Front Right Wheel Arch Body	27	Front Bumper Left Bracket
13	Front Right Wheel House Protector	28	Right Air Deflector Assembly
14	Right Wing Spacer	29	Upper Air Deflector Assembly
15	Front Upper Impact Crossmember Assembly	30	Left Air Deflector Assembly



H30020

1	Front Right Rack End Cover	10	Rear Bumper Right Mounting Bracket
2	Right Rack Center Trim Cover	11	Rear Bumper Assembly
3	Rear Right Rack End Cover	12	Rear Impact Beam Assembly
4	Right Rack Assembly	13	Rear Left Wheel House Protector Assembly
5	Left Roof Rack Assembly	14	Rear Left Scuff Plate Assembly
6	Spoiler Body	15	Rear Bumper Left Mounting Bracket
7	Left D-pillar Trim Board Assembly	16	Front Left Door Cover Plate Guide Rail Assembly
8	Right D-pillar Trim Board Assembly	17	Rear Left Door Cover Plate Guide Rail Assembly
9	Rear Right Wheel House Protector Assembly	18	Rear Left Door C-pillar Cover Plate Assembly

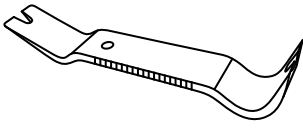


H30021

1	Front Right Door Cover Plate Guide Rail Assembly	4	Front Right Scuff Plate Assembly
2	Rear Right Door Cover Plate Guide Rail Assembly	5	Rear Right Door Scuff Plate Assembly
3	Rear Right Door C-pillar Cover Plate Assembly	6	Right Skirt Protector Assembly

52.3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

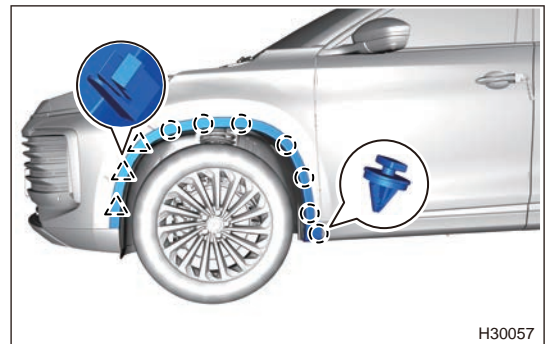
2 Replace front bumper assembly

2.1 Removal

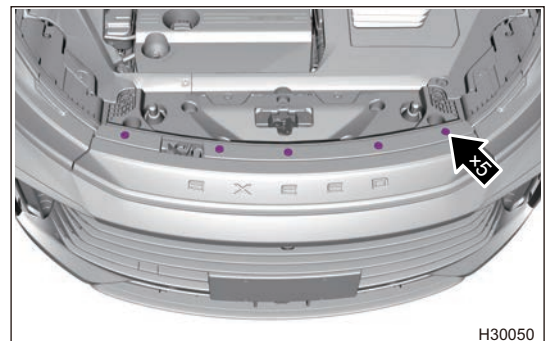
⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front bumper assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front bumper assembly.
- Avoid breaking claws, when disassembling front bumper assembly.

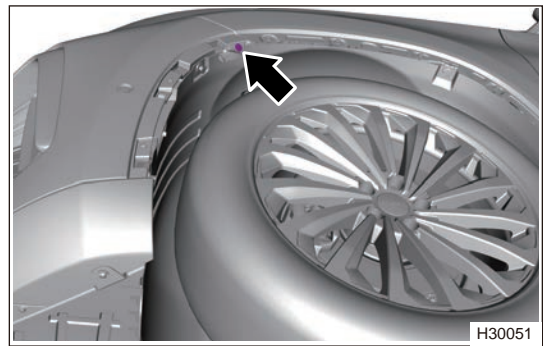
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clip from front left wheel arch carefully and remove the front left wheel arch assembly.



- (5) Remove 5 fixing screws from upper part of front bumper.



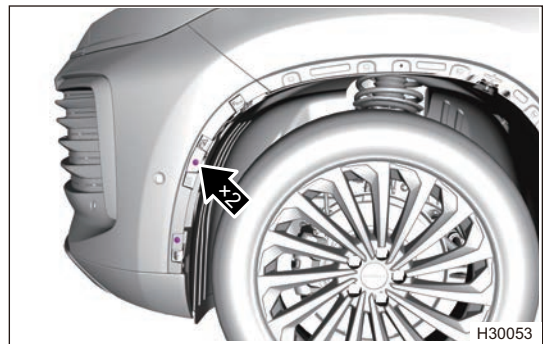
- (6) Remove fixing bolt from left side of front bumper (- removal produces for left and right are same).



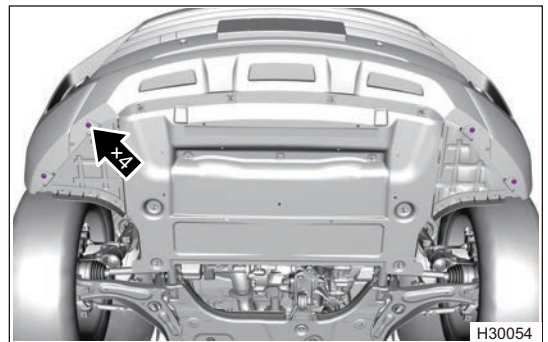
- (7) Remove 3 fixing clips between front bumper assembly and front left wheel house protector (removal produces for left and right are same).



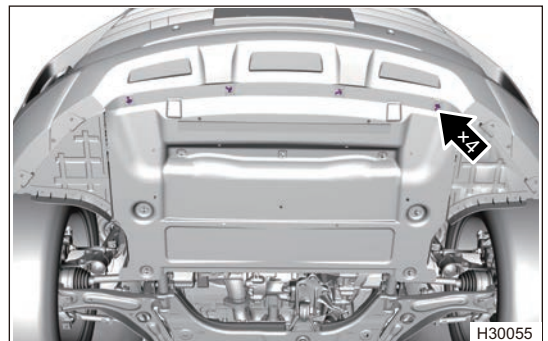
- (8) Remove 2 fixing screws between front bumper assembly and front left wheel house protector (removal produces for left and right are same).



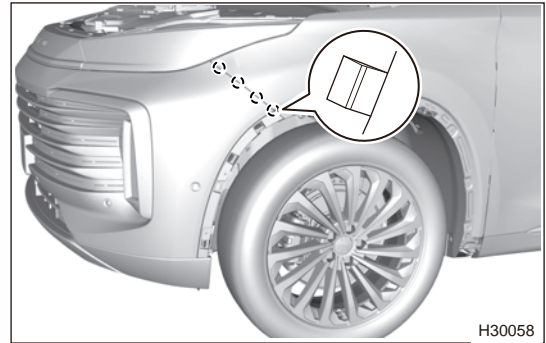
- (9) Raise the vehicle to a proper position, remove 4 fixing screws from the lower part of front bumper assembly.



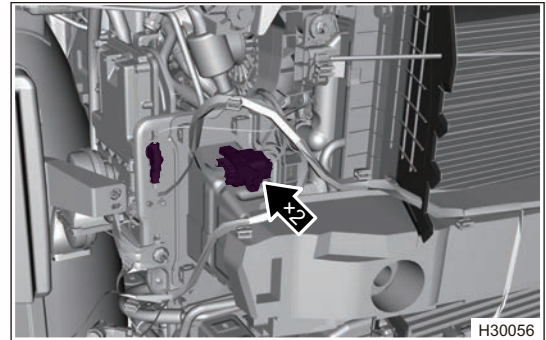
- (10) Remove 4 fixing bolts from lower part of front bumper assembly.



- (11) Disengage the claws from front bumper assembly (take left side as an example).



- (12) Disconnect the front bumper camera connector and wire harness connector, and remove front bumper assembly.



2.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing front bumper assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front bumper assembly.**
- **Make sure that front bumper is installed correctly and fitting clearance between front bumper and body is appropriate, when installing front bumper assembly.**

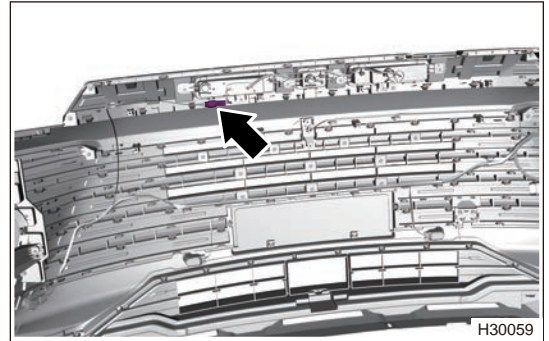
- (1) Connect the front bumper camera connector and wire harness connector, and install front bumper assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Align the flanging of front bumper wing with the bracket in turn and slowly guide it in according to the mating features, and snap the clips into bumper from headlight side in turn.
- (3) Raise the vehicle to a proper position, install 4 fixing bolts to lower part of front bumper assembly.
- (4) Install 4 fixing screws to lower part of front bumper assembly.
- (5) Install 2 fixing screws between front bumper assembly and front left wheel house protector (installation produces for left and right are same).
- (6) Install 3 fixing clips between front bumper assembly and front left wheel house protector (installation produces for left and right are same).
- (7) Install fixing bolt to left side of front bumper (Installation produces for left and right are same).
- (8) Install 5 fixing screws to upper part of front bumper.
Torque: $5.0 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (9) Install the front left wheel arch assembly.
- (10) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

2.3 Disassembly

⚠ Caution

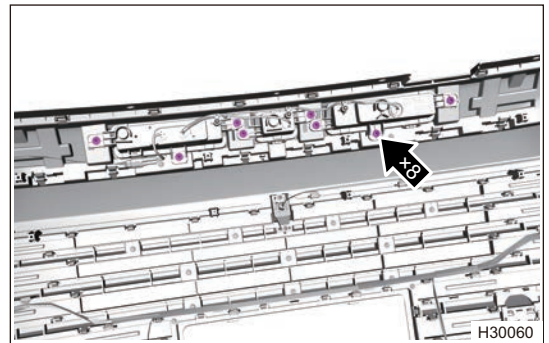
- Appropriate force should be applied, when disassembling front bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when disassembling front bumper assembly.
- Avoid breaking claws, when disassembling front bumper assembly.

(1) Disconnect the Logo light wire harness connector.

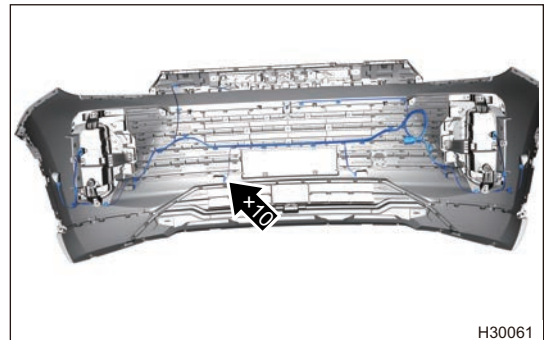


(2) Disengage the light wire harness clip from light case.

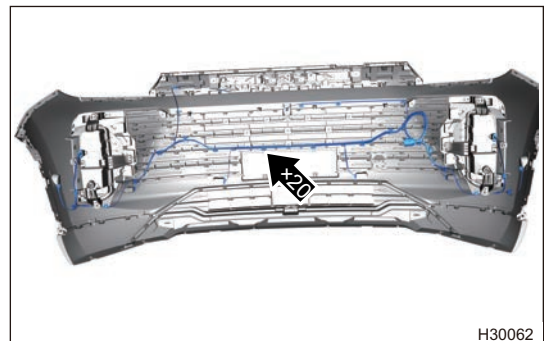
(3) Remove the fixing screws between Logo light and front bumper assembly.



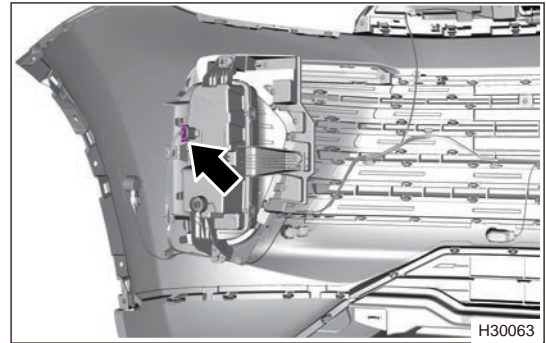
(4) Disconnect the front bumper wire harness connector.



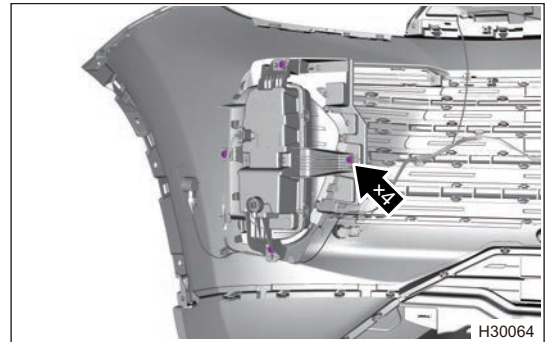
(5) Disengage the fixing clip from front bumper wire harness.



- (6) Disconnect the front fog light wire harness connector.



- (7) Remove 4 fixing screws between front bumper and fog light bracket.



2.4 Assembly

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when assembling front bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Avoid breaking claws, when assembling front bumper assembly.**

- (1) Install 4 fixing screws between front bumper and fog light bracket.
- (2) Connect the front fog light wire harness connector.
- (3) Install the fixing clip to front bumper wire harness.
- (4) Install the front bumper wire harness connector.
- (5) Install the fixing screws between Logo light and front bumper assembly.
- (6) Snap the light wire harness clip into light case.
- (7) Connect the Logo light wire harness connector.

3 Replace Front Bumper Mounting Bracket

3.1 Removal

Hint:

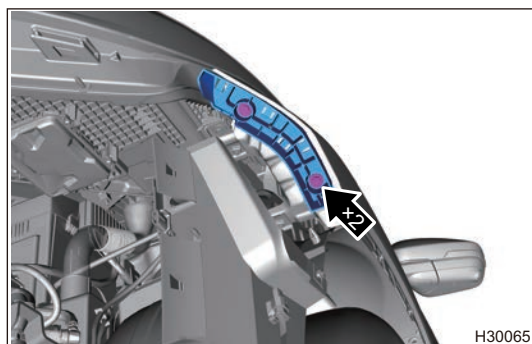
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front bumper mounting bracket. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front bumper mounting bracket.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.

- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove 2 fixing bolts from front bumper mounting bracket.



- (5) Remove the front bumper mounting bracket.

3.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front bumper mounting bracket.**

- (1) Install the front bumper mounting bracket to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts to front bumper bracket.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install front bumper assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

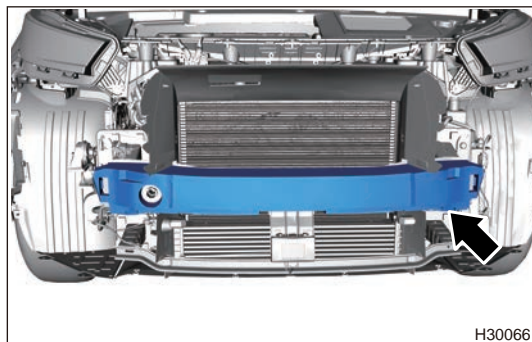
4 Replace Front Bumper Crossmember Assembly

4.1 Removal

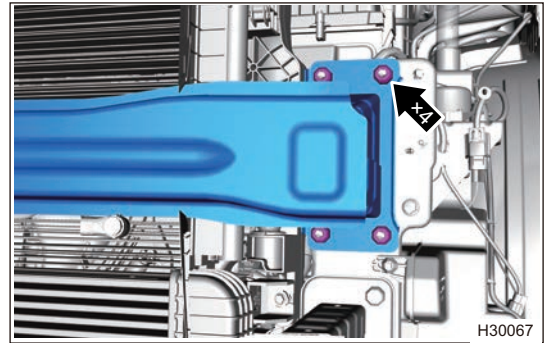
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front bumper crossmember assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front bumper crossmember assembly.**

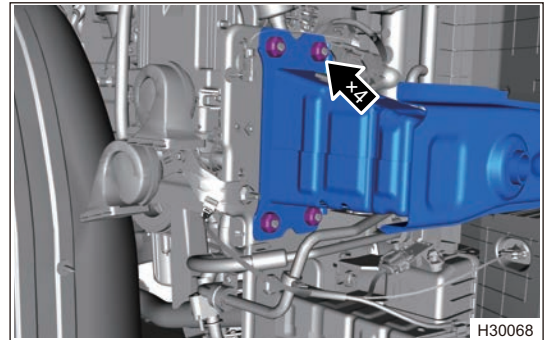
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove the upper energy absorbing block.



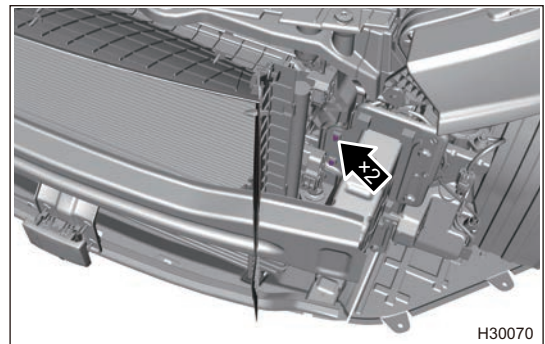
- (5) Remove 4 fixing nuts from right side of front bumper crossmember assembly.



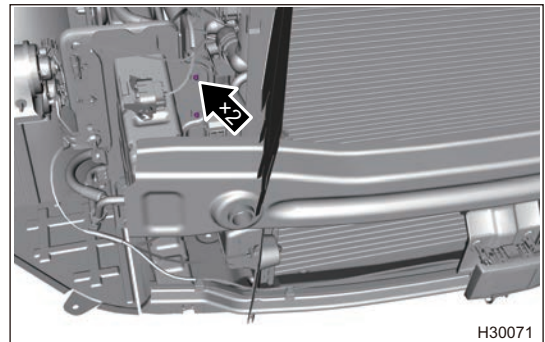
- (6) Remove 4 fixing nuts from left side of front bumper crossmember assembly.



- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts between front bumper crossmember assembly and cooler bracket assembly.



- (8) Remove 2 fixing bolts between front bumper crossmember assembly and cooler bracket assembly.



- (9) Remove the front bumper crossmember assembly.

4.2 Installation

Caution

- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front bumper crossmember assembly.
- There should be no looseness, shaking and deformation, after installing front bumper crossmember assembly.

- (1) Install the front bumper crossmember assembly to proper position on vehicle body.

- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts between front bumper crossmember assembly and cooler bracket assembly.
- (3) Install 2 fixing bolts between front bumper crossmember assembly and cooler bracket assembly.
- (4) Install 4 fixing nuts to left side of front bumper crossmember assembly.
- (5) Install 4 fixing nuts to right side of front bumper crossmember assembly.
- (6) Install the upper energy absorbing block.
- (7) Install front bumper assembly.
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

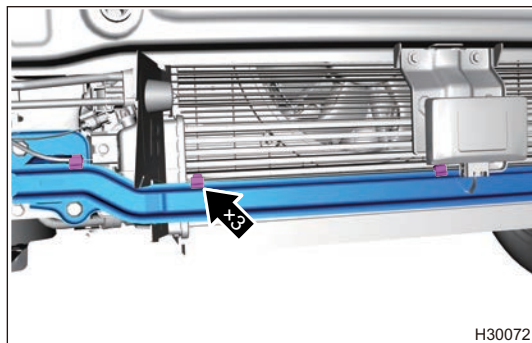
5 Replace Front Lower Protection Crossmember Assembly

5.1 Removal

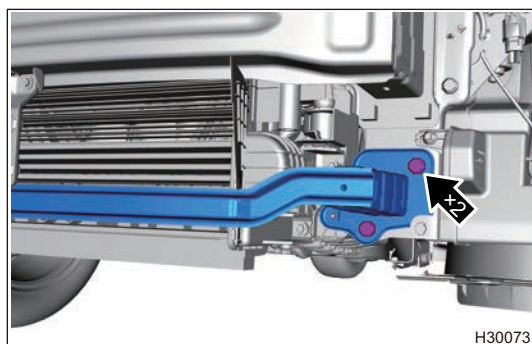
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front lower protection crossmember assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front lower protection crossmember assembly.**

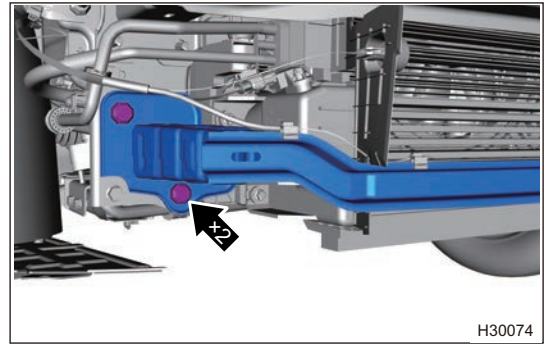
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Disengage the wire harness fixing clip.



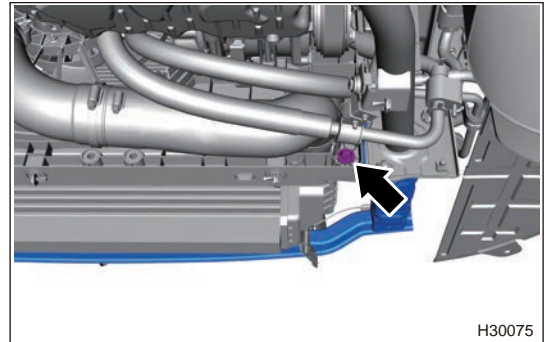
- (5) Remove 2 fixing bolts from right side of front lower protection crossmember assembly.



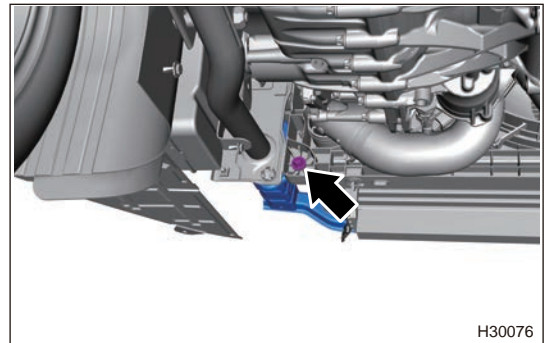
- (6) Remove 2 fixing bolts from left side of front lower protection crossmember assembly.



- (7) Remove 1 fixing bolt between front lower protection crossmember and cooler bracket assembly.



- (8) Remove 1 fixing bolt between front lower protection crossmember and cooler bracket assembly.



- (9) Remove the front lower protection crossmember assembly.

5.2 Installation

Caution

- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front lower protection crossmember assembly.

- (1) Install front lower protection crossmember assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 1 fixing bolt between front lower protection crossmember and cooler bracket assembly.
- (3) Install 1 fixing bolt between front lower protection crossmember and cooler bracket assembly.
- (4) Install 2 fixing bolts to left side of front lower protection crossmember assembly.
- (5) Install 2 fixing bolts to right side of front lower protection crossmember assembly.
- (6) Install the wire harness fixing clip.
- (7) Install front bumper assembly.
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.

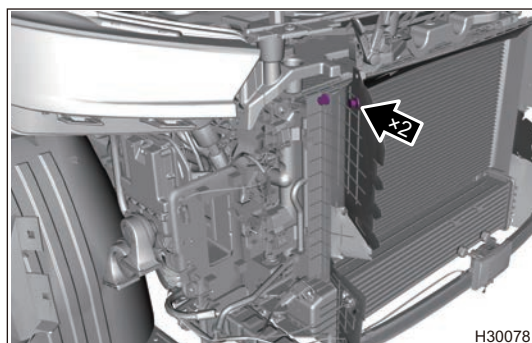
6 Replace Air Deflector Assembly

6.1 Removal

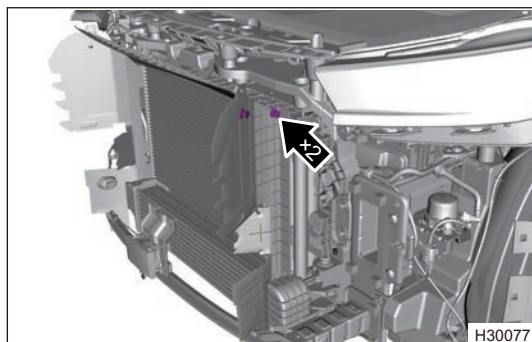
Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing air deflector assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing air deflector assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove the front bumper crossmember assembly.
- (5) Remove 2 fixing clips from left side of upper air deflector.



- (6) Remove 2 fixing clips from right side of upper air deflector.



- (7) Disconnect and remove outside temperature sensor.
- (8) Remove the air deflector.

6.2 Installation

Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing air deflector assembly.**

- (1) Install the air deflector to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Connect and install outside temperature sensor.
- (3) Install 2 fixing clips to right side of upper air deflector.
- (4) Install 2 fixing clips to left side of upper air deflector.
- (5) Install front bumper crossmember assembly.
- (6) Install front bumper assembly.
- (7) Connect the negative battery cable.

7 Replace Front Wheel House Protector Assembly

7.1 Removal

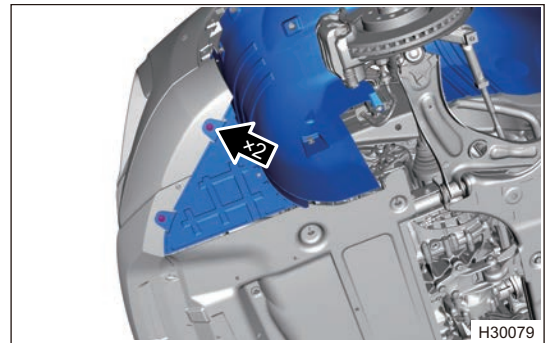
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

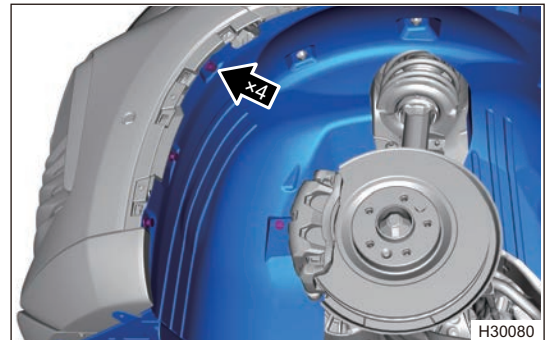
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front wheel house protector assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front wheel house protector assembly.**

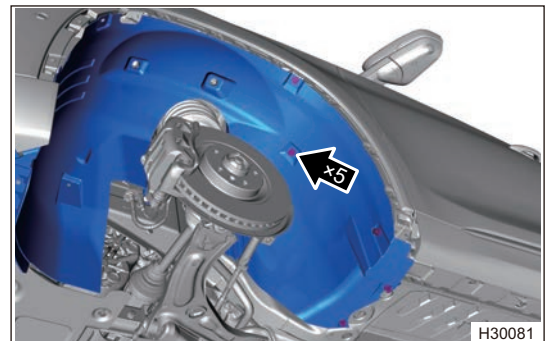
- (1) Remove front left wheel arch body.
- (2) Remove 2 fixing screws from lower part of front wheel house protector.



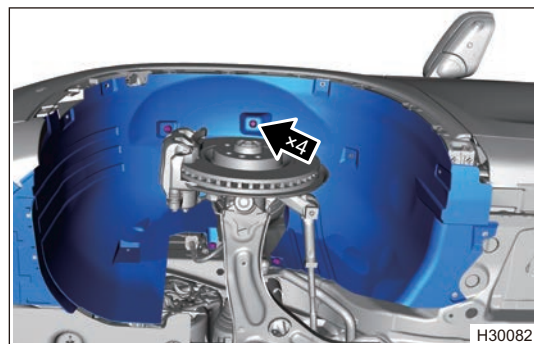
- (3) Remove 4 plastic snap fasteners from front wheel house protector.



- (4) Remove 5 plastic snap fasteners from front wheel house protector.



- (5) Remove 4 plastic nuts from upper part of front wheel house protector.



- (6) Remove the front wheel house protector assembly.

7.2 Installation

Caution

- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front wheel house protector assembly.

- (1) Install front wheel house protector assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 4 plastic nuts to upper part of front wheel house protector.
- (3) Install 5 plastic snap fasteners to front wheel house protector.
- (4) Install 4 plastic snap fasteners to front wheel house protector.
- (5) Install 2 fixing screws to lower part of front wheel house protector.
- (6) Install front left wheel arch body.

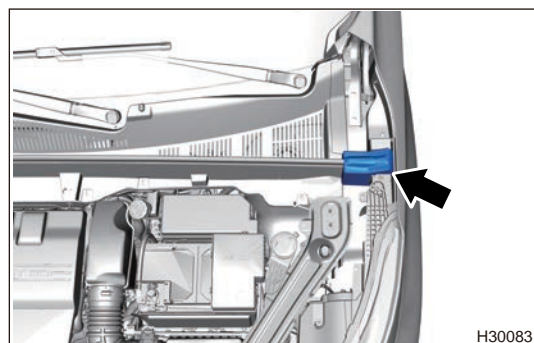
8 Replace Front Windshield Lower Trim Panel Assembly

8.1 Removal

Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front windshield lower support assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front windshield lower support assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the front wiper arm assembly.
- (5) Remove the front windshield lower trim panel left block (take left side as an example).



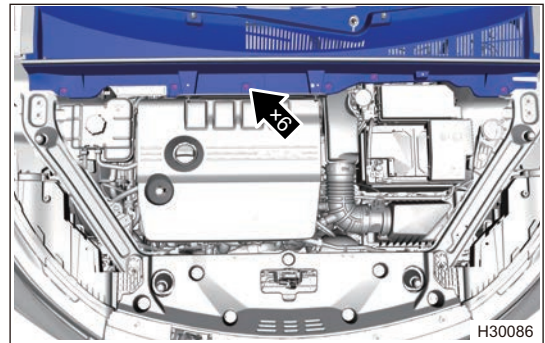
- (6) Remove the fixing clip from front windshield lower trim panel left cover plate (take left side as an example).



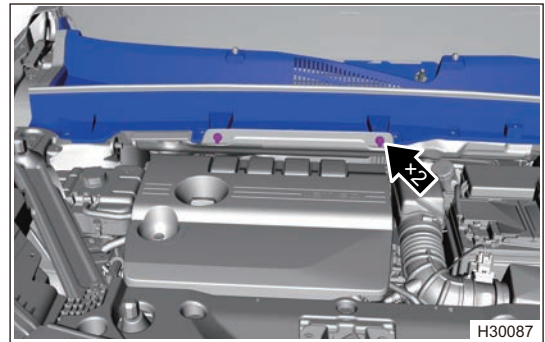
- (7) Using an interior crow plate, pry off front windshield lower trim panel left cover plate (take left side as an example).



- (8) Remove 6 fixing snap fasteners from front windshield lower trim panel.



- (9) Remove 2 fixing clips between front windshield lower trim panel and cowl panel outside isolation pad.



- (10) Remove the front windshield lower trim panel assembly.

8.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front windshield lower trim panel assembly.

- (1) Install front windshield lower trim board assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing clips between front windshield lower trim panel and cowl panel outside isolation pad.

- (3) Install 6 fixing snap fasteners to front windshield lower trim panel.
- (4) Install front windshield lower trim panel left cover plate (take left side as an example).
- (5) Install front windshield lower trim panel left cover plate fixing clip (take left side as an example).
- (6) Install the front windshield lower trim panel left block (take left side as an example).
- (7) Install front wiper arm assembly.
- (8) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (9) Connect the negative battery cable.

9 Replace Wing Assembly

9.1 Removal

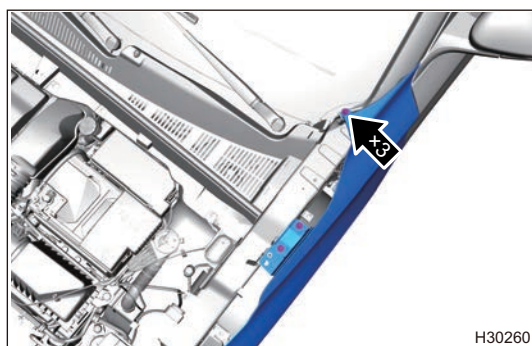
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

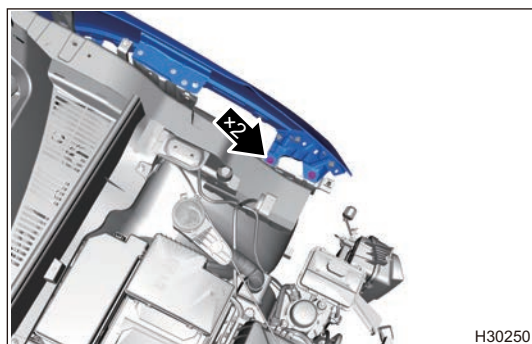
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing wing assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing wing assembly.**

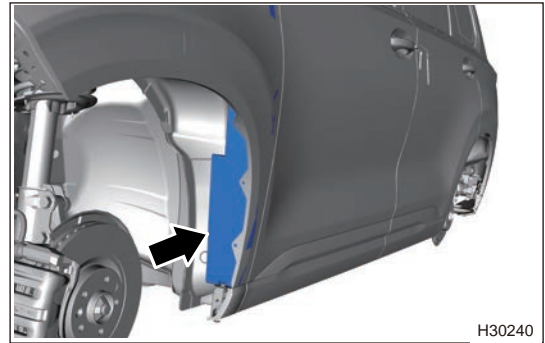
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the front left wheel assembly.
- (5) Remove the front bumper assembly.
- (6) Remove the left headlight assembly.
- (7) Remove the front left wheel house assembly.
- (8) Remove 3 fixing bolts between upper part of wing assembly and body.



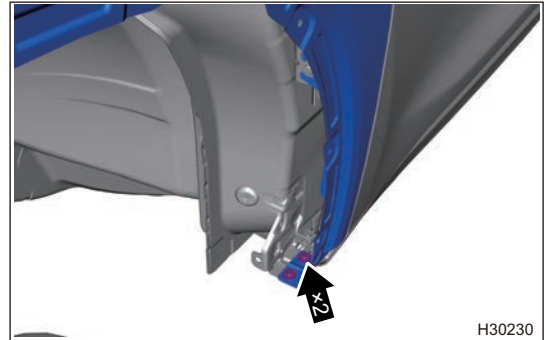
- (9) Remove 2 fixing bolts between front part of wing assembly and body.



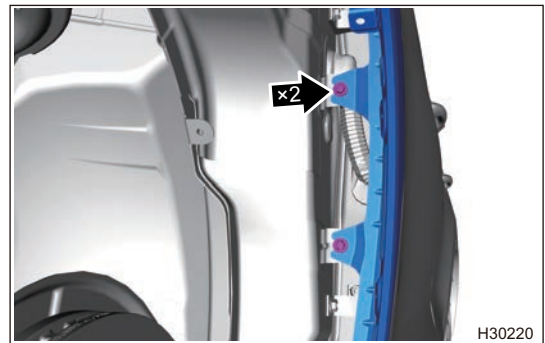
(10) Remove the wing spacer.



(11) Remove 2 fixing bolts between lower part of wing assembly and body.



(12) Remove 2 fixing bolts between rear part of wing assembly and body.



(13) Remove the wing assembly.

9.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing front wing.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front wing.**
- **Make sure that front wing is installed correctly and fitting clearance between front wing and body is appropriate, when installing front wing.**
- **After assembly, it is not allowed to exceed the sheet metal flanging, end stay outside, and obstruct the installation hole of front wheel arch ornament.**

- (1) Install 2 fixing bolts between rear part of wing assembly and body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts between lower part of wing assembly and body.
- (3) Install the wing spacer.
- (4) Install 2 fixing bolts between front part of wing assembly and body.
- (5) Install 3 fixing bolts between upper part of wing assembly and body.
- (6) Install front left headlight assembly.
- (7) Install front bumper assembly.
- (8) Install wing trim panel.

- (9) Install front left wheel assembly.
- (10) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (12) Connect ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

10 Replace Roof Rack

10.1 Removal

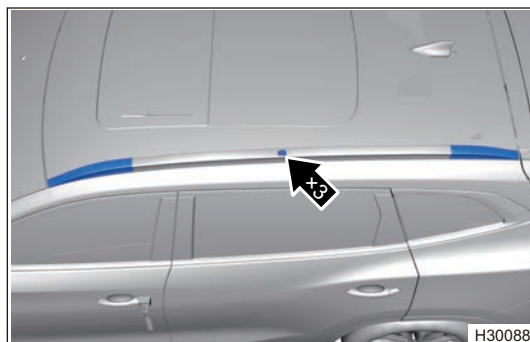
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

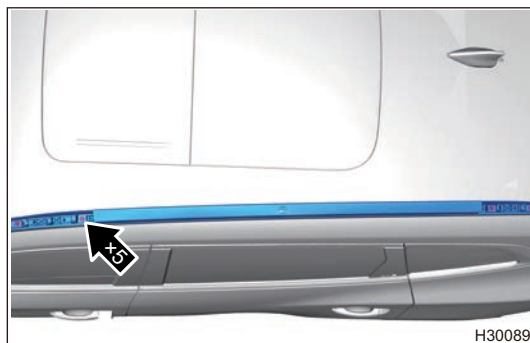
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing roof rack.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing roof rack.**

- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off front, middle and rear end covers of roof rack.



- (2) Remove 5 fixing bolts from roof rack.



- (3) Remove the roof rack.

10.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing roof rack.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing roof rack.**
- **When installing, make sure that there is no clearance between the rubber pad of roof rack and quarter, roof. Pay attention to the alignment of clearance between rubber pad and roof.**
- **It is essential to check whether the clip is clamped in place.**

- (1) Install roof rack to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 5 fixing bolts to roof rack.
Torque: $9.0 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install front, middle and rear end covers of roof rack.

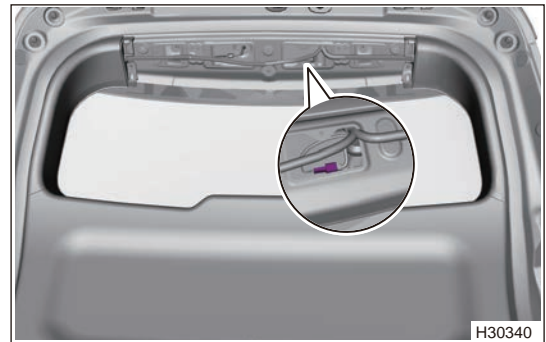
11 Replace Rear Spoiler Assembly

11.1 Removal

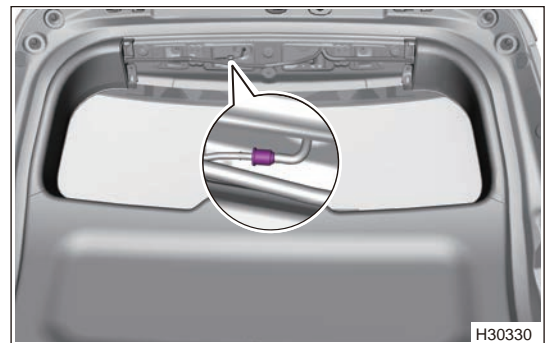
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear spoiler assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear spoiler assembly.**

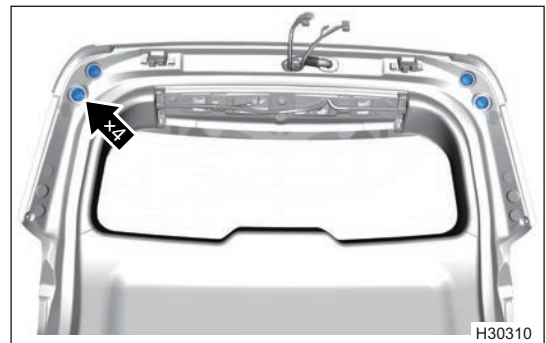
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove back door upper protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect wire harness connector from high mounted stop light.



- (5) Disconnect the washer pipeline from rear nozzle.



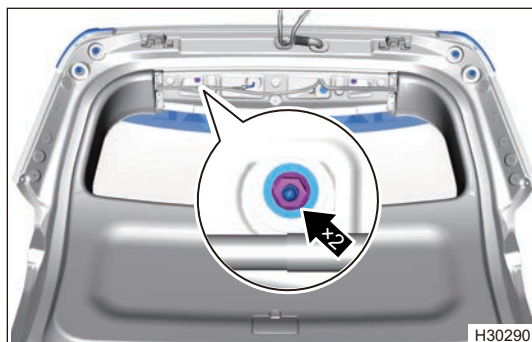
- (6) Using an interior crow plate, pry off plug from rear spoiler.



(7) Remove 4 fixing bolts from rear spoiler assembly.

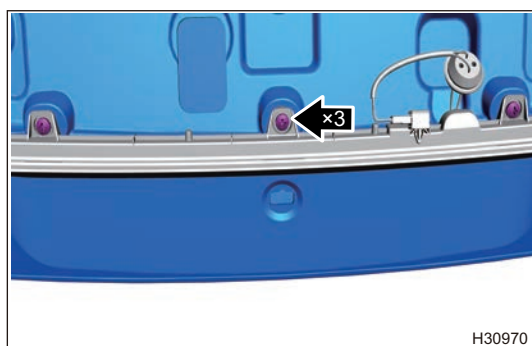


(8) Remove 2 fixing nuts from rear spoiler assembly.



(9) Remove the rear spoiler assembly.

(10) Remove 3 fixing screws from high mounted stop light.



(11) Remove the high mounted stop light.

11.2 Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing rear spoiler assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing rear spoiler assembly.**

- (1) Install the high mounted stop light to proper position on spoiler.
- (2) Install 3 fixing screws to high mounted stop light.
- (3) Install the rear spoiler assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (4) Install 2 fixing nuts to rear spoiler assembly.
- (5) Install 4 fixing bolts to rear spoiler assembly.
- (6) Install the plug to rear spoiler.
- (7) Connect the washer pipeline to rear nozzle.
- (8) Connect wire harness connector to high mounted stop light.
- (9) Install the back door upper protector assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

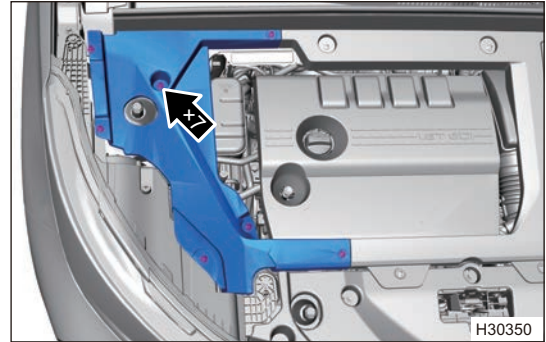
12 Replace Engine Compartment Trim Cover Assembly

12.1 Removal

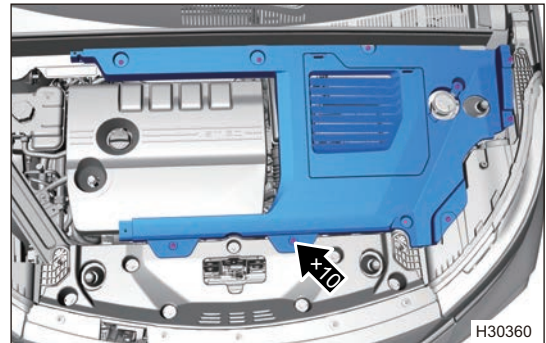
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing engine compartment trim cover assembly.

- (1) Disengage 7 plastic snap fasteners and remove the right engine compartment trim cover assembly.



- (2) Disengage 10 plastic snap fasteners and remove the left engine compartment trim cover assembly.



12.2 Installation

Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- Try to prevent appearance from being scratched, when installing engine compartment trim cover assembly.

- (1) Install the left engine compartment trim cover assembly to a proper position on engine compartment and install 10 plastic snap fasteners.
- (2) Install the right engine compartment trim cover assembly to a proper position on engine compartment and install 7 plastic snap fasteners.

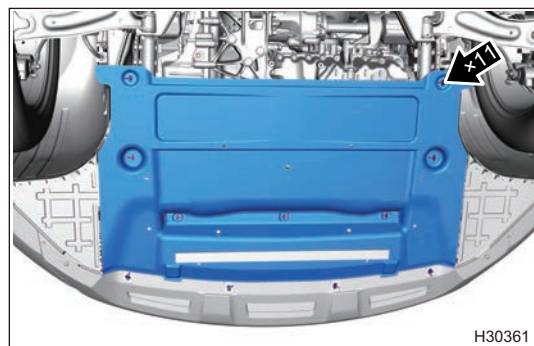
13 Replace Engine Compartment Lower Protector Assembly

13.1 Removal

Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing engine compartment lower protector assembly.

- (1) Raise the vehicle to a proper position.
- (2) Remove 11 fixing bolts from engine compartment lower protector assembly.



13.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing engine compartment lower protector assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing engine compartment lower protector assembly.

- (1) Install 11 fixing bolts to engine compartment lower protector assembly.
Torque: $4 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (2) Lower the vehicle to a proper position.

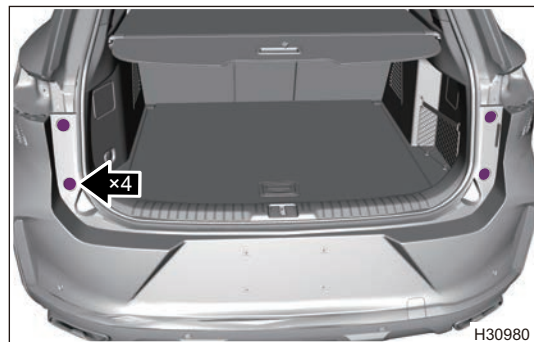
14 Replace Rear Bumper Assembly

14.1 Removal

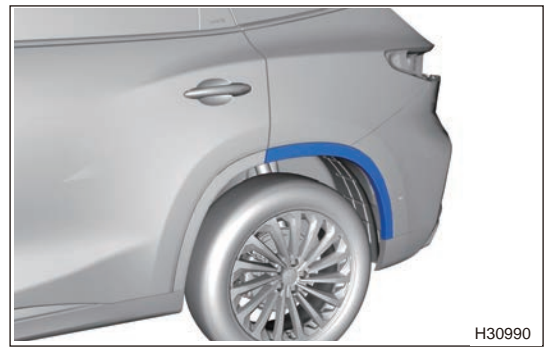
⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear bumper assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear bumper assembly.
- Avoid breaking claws, when disassembling rear bumper assembly.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left and right combination light bodies.
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off screw block cover carefully, and remove 4 fixing screws.



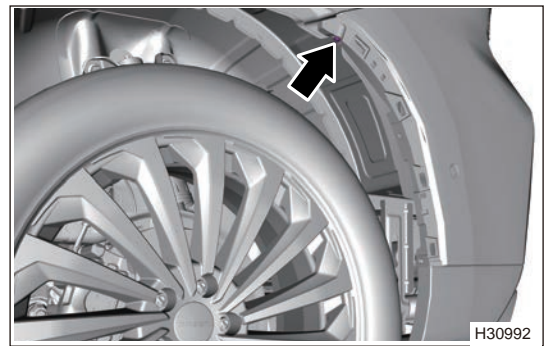
- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clip and remove the rear left wheel arch assembly.



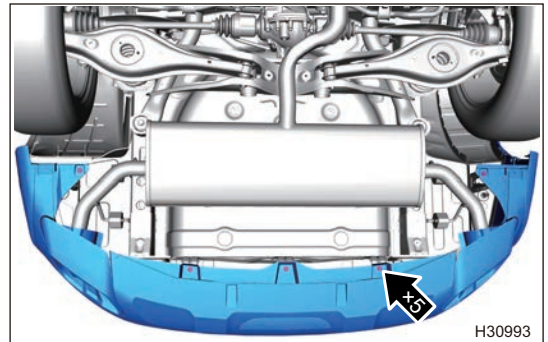
- (6) Remove 2 fixing snap fasteners from left side of rear bumper (removal produces for left and right are same).



- (7) Remove 1 fixing screw from left side of rear bumper (-removal produces for left and right are same).



- (8) Raise vehicle and remove 5 fixing bolts from lower part of rear bumper assembly.



- (9) Disconnect the main blind spot detection radar connector.



(10) Disconnect wire harness connector from rear bumper and remove the rear bumper assembly.

14.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing rear bumper assembly.**
- **Make sure that rear bumper is installed correctly and fitting clearance between rear bumper and body is appropriate, when installing rear bumper assembly.**

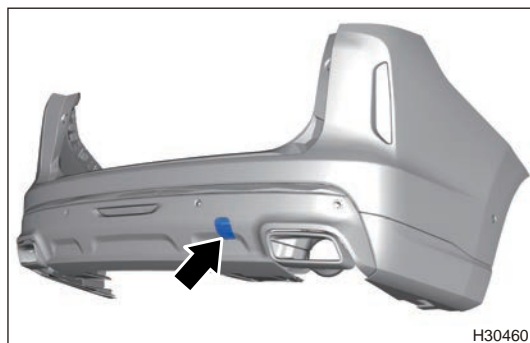
- (1) Connect the rear bumper wire harness connector, and install rear bumper to proper position.
- (2) Connect the main blind spot detection radar connector.
- (3) Raise vehicle and install 6 fixing bolts to lower part of rear bumper assembly.
Torque: $2 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Install 3 fixing screws to rear wheel house protector.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (5) Install 4 fixing screws to upper part of rear bumper assembly. (Take left side as an example)
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (7) Connect ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

14.3 Disassembly

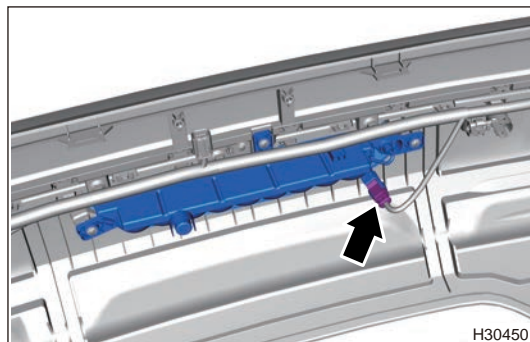
⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when disassembling rear bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when disassembling rear bumper assembly.**
- **Avoid breaking claws, when disassembling rear bumper assembly.**

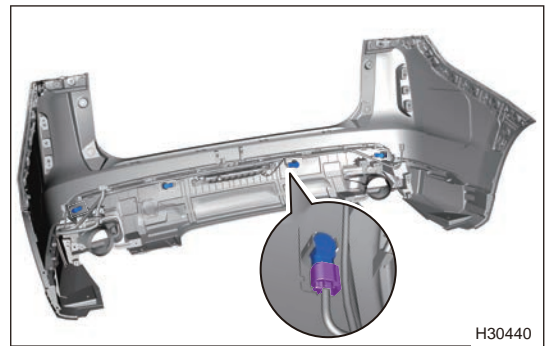
- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off rear bumper towing hook cover claw and remove the rear bumper towing hook cover.



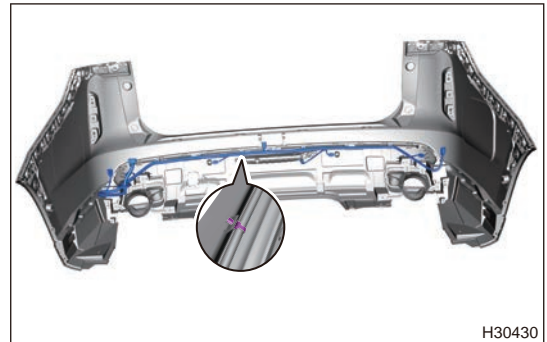
- (2) Disconnect the rear fog light connector.



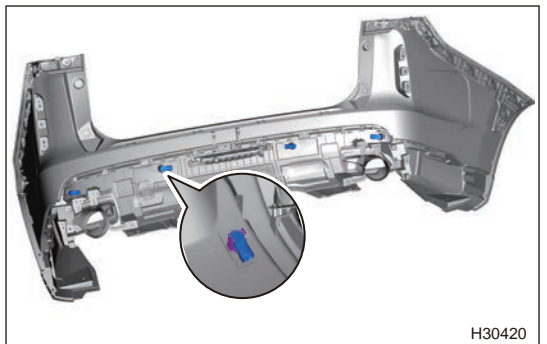
(3) Disconnect the rear bumper sensor connector.



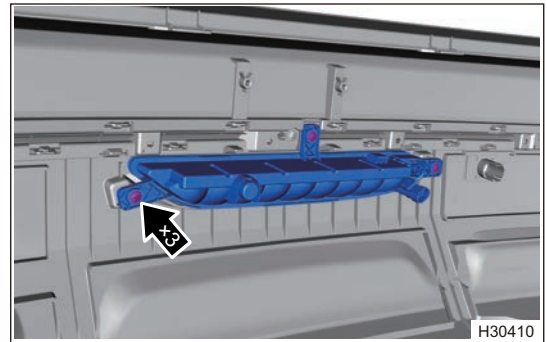
(4) Disengage the rear bumper wire harness fixing clip and remove rear bumper wire harness.



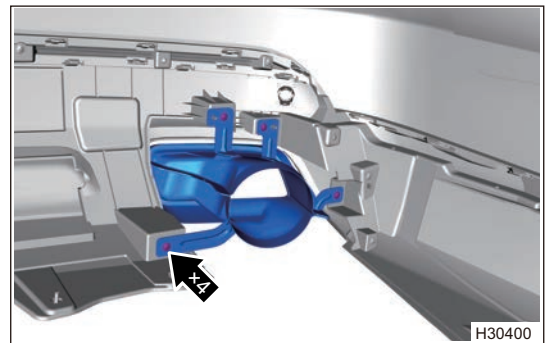
(5) Disengage the clip and remove rear bumper sensor.



(6) Remove 3 fixing screws and rear fog light.



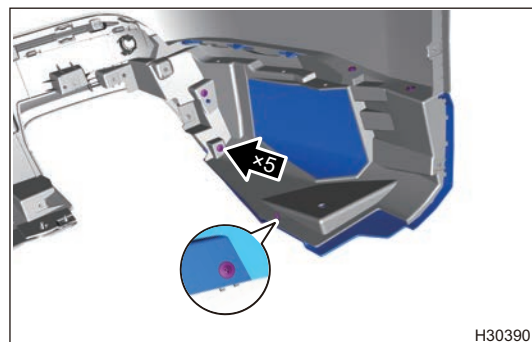
(7) Remove 4 fixing screws from exhaust pipe trim cover and remove exhaust pipe heat insulator steel sleeve (- take left side as an example).



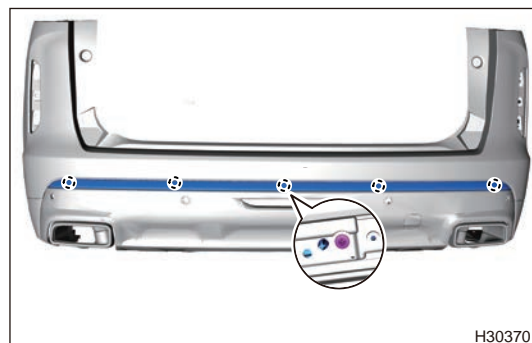
- (8) Remove 2 fixing screws and left retro-reflector assembly (take left side as an example).



- (9) Remove 5 fixing screws and left end ornament of rear bumper (take left side as an example).



- (10) Remove 5 fixing screws and rear bumper center trim strip.



- (11) Remove rear bumper lower trim board.

14.4 Assembly

Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when assembling rear bumper assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Avoid breaking claws, when assembling rear bumper assembly.**

- (1) Install the rear bumper center trim strip to proper position on rear bumper.
- (2) Install 5 fixing screws to rear bumper center trim strip.
- (3) Install left end ornament of rear bumper to proper position on rear bumper and install 5 fixing screws to left end ornament of rear bumper (take left side as an example).
- (4) Install left retro-reflector assembly to proper position on rear bumper and install 2 fixing screws to left retro-reflector assembly (take left side as an example).
- (5) Install exhaust pipe heat insulator steel sleeve to proper position on rear bumper and install 4 fixing screws to exhaust pipe trim cover (take left side as an example).
- (6) Install rear fog light to proper position on rear bumper and install 3 fixing screws to rear fog light.
- (7) Install rear bumper sensor and clip into place.
- (8) Install rear bumper wire harness and fixing clip.
- (9) Connect the rear bumper sensor connector.

- (10) Connect the rear fog light connector.
- (11) Install rear bumper towing hook cover and clip into place.

15 Replace Rear Bumper Mounting Bracket

15.1 Removal

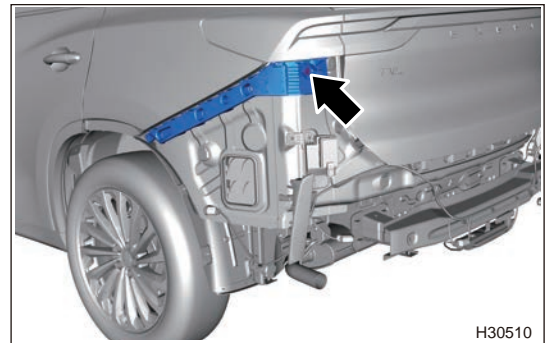
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

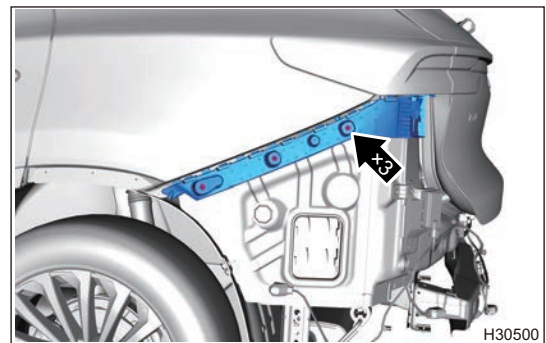
⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear bumper mounting bracket. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear bumper mounting bracket.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove 1 fixing bolt from rear bumper mounting bracket.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing screws from rear bumper mounting bracket.



- (6) Remove the rear bumper mounting bracket.

15.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing rear bumper mounting bracket.**

- (1) Install the rear bumper mounting bracket to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 3 fixing screws to rear bumper mounting bracket.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install 1 fixing bolt to rear bumper mounting bracket.
Torque: $2 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

- (4) Install rear bumper assembly.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (6) Connect ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

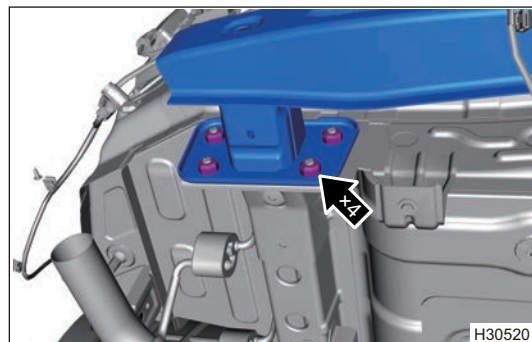
16 Replace Rear Bumper Crossmember

16.1 Removal

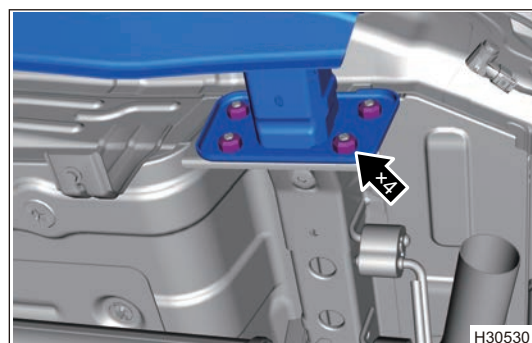
Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear bumper crossmember. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear bumper crossmember.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear bumper assembly.
- (4) Remove 4 fixing nuts from rear bumper crossmember assembly.



- (5) Remove 4 fixing nuts from rear bumper crossmember assembly.



- (6) Remove the rear bumper crossmember assembly.

16.2 Installation

Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing rear bumper crossmember.**
- **There should be no looseness, shaking and deformation after installing rear bumper crossmember.**

- (1) Install the rear bumper crossmember to proper position.
- (2) Install 8 fixing nuts to rear bumper bracket.
- (3) Install rear bumper assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (5) Connect ENGINE START STOP switch and perform running test.

17 Replace Side Skirt Protector Assembly

17.1 Removal

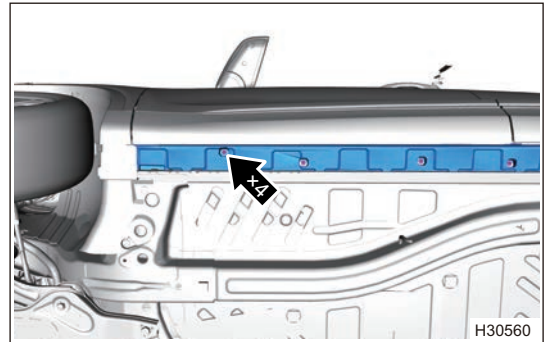
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

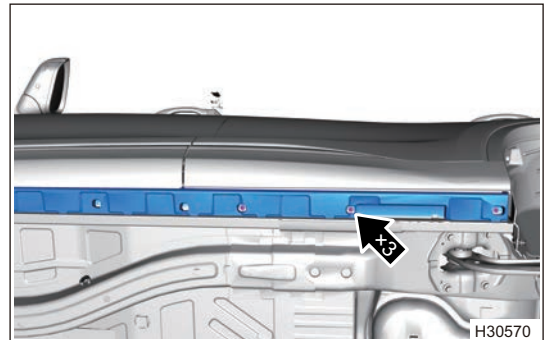
⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing side skirt protector assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing side skirt protector assembly.**

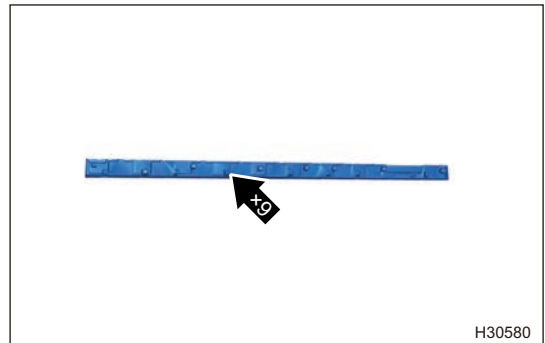
- (1) Remove 4 fixing screws from left side skirt protector assembly.



- (2) Remove 3 fixing screws from left side skirt protector assembly.



- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off side skirt protector assembly and remove it.



17.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing side skirt protector assembly.**

- (1) Install side skirt protector assembly to proper position and clamp the clip into place.
- (2) Install 7 fixing screws to left side skirt protector assembly.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

18 Replace Front Door Scuff Plate Assembly

18.1 Removal

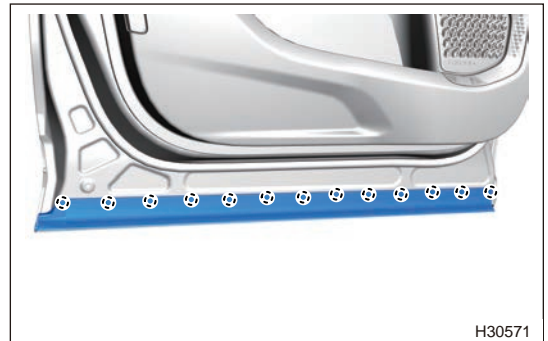
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing front door scuff plate assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front door scuff plate assembly.**

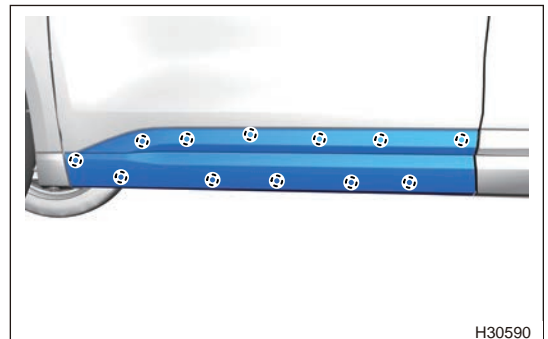
- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off lower weatherstrip.



- (2) Remove 2 fixing screws from front door scuff plate assembly.



- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clips from front door scuff plate assembly.



18.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- Appropriate force should be applied when installing front door scuff plate assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing front door scuff plate assembly.
- After assembly, make sure that the upper edge of scuff plate fits the sheet metal and the two ends of trim board are not sticking out of sheet metal.

- (1) Install front door scuff plate assembly to a proper position and fix the clip.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws to front door scuff plate assembly.
- (3) Install lower weatherstrip.

19 Replace Rear Door Scuff Plate Assembly

19.1 Removal

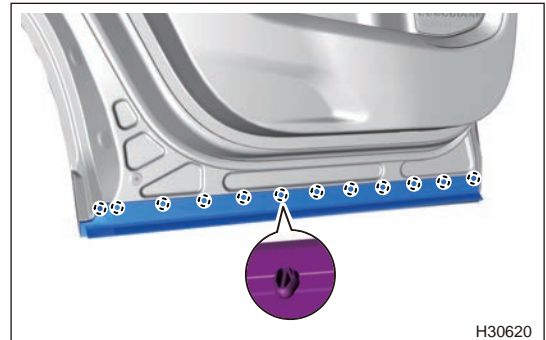
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- Appropriate force should be applied when removing rear door scuff plate assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear door scuff plate assembly.

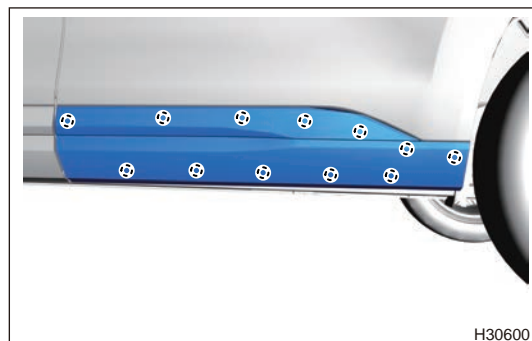
- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off lower weatherstrip.



- (2) Remove 2 fixing screws from front door scuff plate assembly.



- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clips from rear door scuff plate assembly.



19.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied when installing rear door scuff plate assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing rear door scuff plate assembly.**
- **After assembly, make sure that the upper edge of scuff plate fits the sheet metal and the two ends of trim board are not sticking out of sheet metal.**

- (1) Install rear door scuff plate assembly to a proper position and fix the clip.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws to rear door scuff plate assembly.
- (3) Install lower weatherstrip.

20 Replace Rear Wheel House Protector Assembly

20.1 Removal

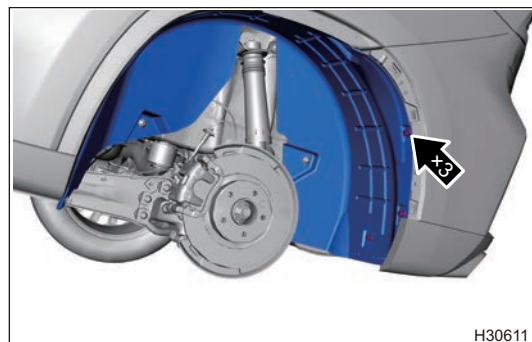
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

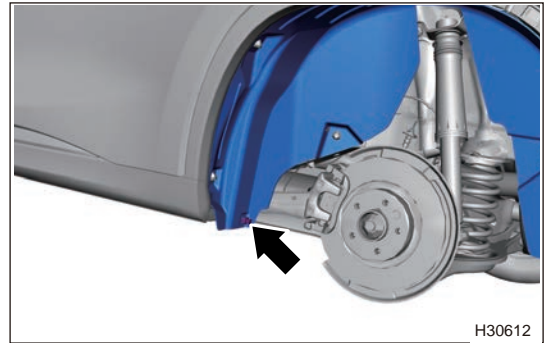
⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear wheel house protector assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear wheel house protector assembly.**

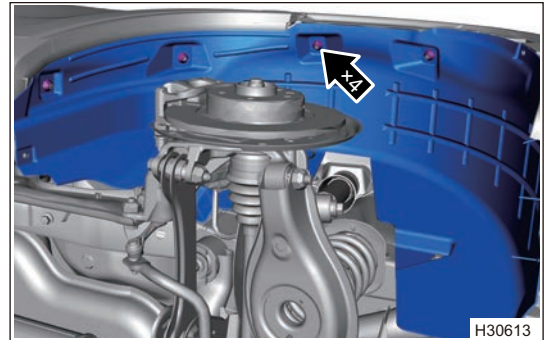
- (1) Remove 3 snap fasteners between rear bumper and rear wheel house protector.



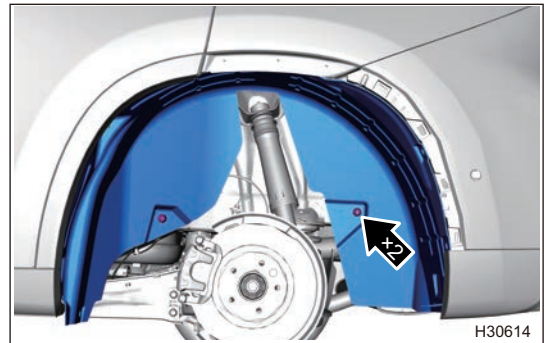
- (2) Remove 1 snap fastener between rear bumper and rear wheel house protector.



- (3) Remove 4 plastic nuts from rear wheel house protector.



- (4) Remove 2 plastic nuts from rear wheel house protector.



- (5) Remove the rear wheel house protector.

20.2 Installation

Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing rear wheel house protector assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing rear wheel house protector assembly.**

- (1) Remove 6 plastic nuts from rear wheel house protector.
Torque: $4 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (2) Install 4 fixing clips between rear bumper and rear wheel house protector.

21 Before Replace B-pillar Trim Board Assembly

21.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

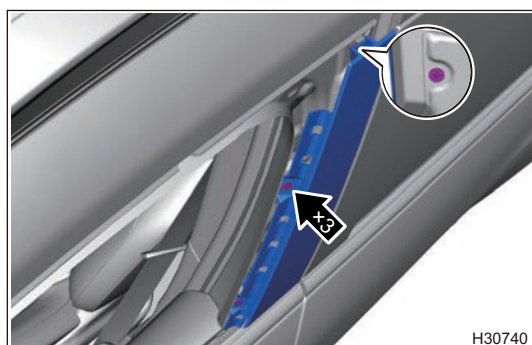
⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing B-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing B-pillar trim board assembly.**

(1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the rear door glass run.



(2) Remove 3 fixing screws from B-pillar trim board assembly.



21.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing B-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing B-pillar trim board assembly.**

(1) Install B-pillar trim board assembly to a proper position and install 3 fixing screws.
Torque: $1.1 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

22 After Replace B-pillar Trim Board Assembly

22.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

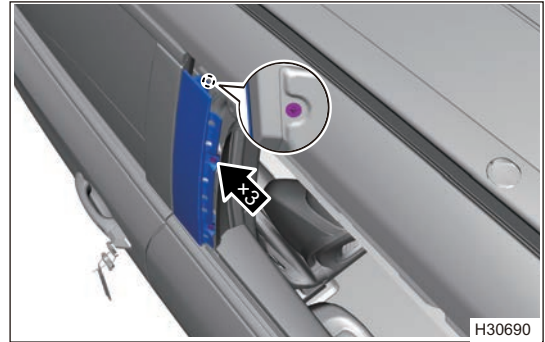
⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing B-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing B-pillar trim board assembly.**

- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the rear door glass run.



- (2) Remove 3 fixing screws from B-pillar trim board assembly.



22.2 Installation

Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing B-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing B-pillar trim board assembly.**

- (1) Install B-pillar trim board assembly to a proper position and install 3 fixing screws.
Torque: $1.1 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

23 Replace C-pillar Trim Board Assembly

23.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

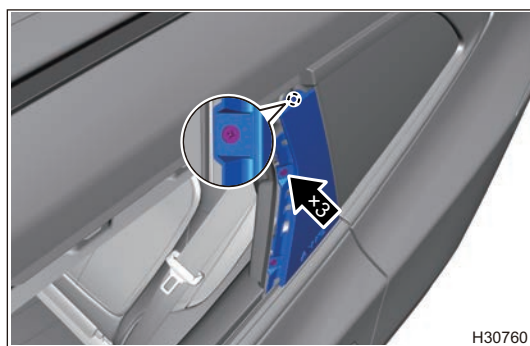
Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing C-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing C-pillar trim board assembly.**

- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the rear door glass run.



- (2) Remove 3 fixing screws from C-pillar trim board assembly.



23.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing C-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing C-pillar trim board assembly.**

- (1) Install C-pillar trim board assembly to a proper position and install 3 fixing screws.
Torque: $1.1 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

24 Replace D-pillar Trim Board Assembly

24.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing D-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing D-pillar trim board assembly.**

- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clips from D-pillar trim board assembly.

24.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Appropriate force should be applied, when installing D-pillar trim board assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing D-pillar trim board assembly.**

- (1) Install D-pillar trim board assembly and fix the clip on rear door trim board assembly.

25 Replace Name Plate

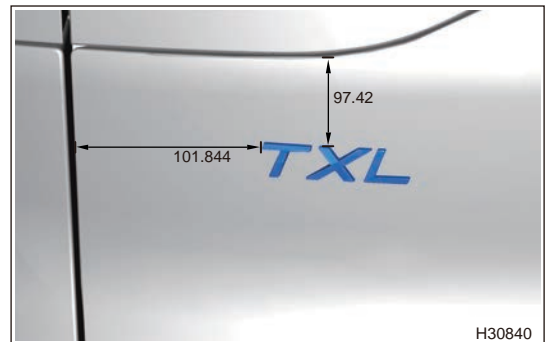
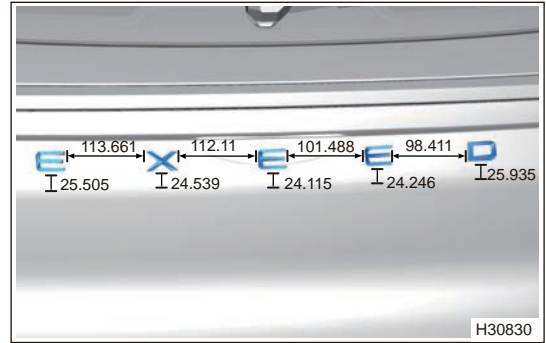
25.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

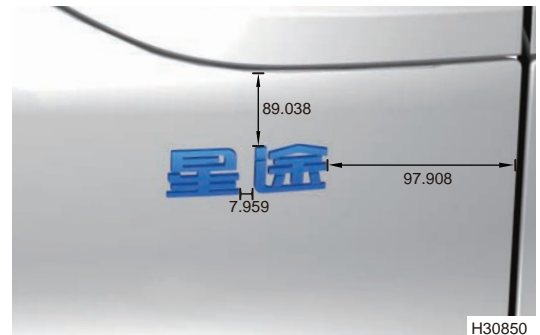
- **The assembly ambient temperature needs to be above $16 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$, if it is below $16 \text{ }^\circ\text{C}$, the name plate needs to be heated.**

- (1) Clean the places where back door outer panel may be in contact with 3M glue. Do not allow any dirt to remain, doing so may affect performance of 3M glue.

- (2) Make sure the tape has not failed and clean off release paper on the 3M double-sided tape around name plate, avoid the contact between hands and 3M double-sided tape.
- (3) Dimension unit: mm, dimensional tolerance: ± 2 .



- (4) Attach the name plate to corresponding position; and apply a certain pressure (2 kg/cm²) to preload for 3 seconds.



INTERIOR

53.1	Warning and Precaution	1947
1	Warning	1947
2	Precaution	1947
53.2	System Overview	1948
1	System Components Diagram	1948
53.3	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	1951
1	Tool	1951
2	Replace Front Doorsill Pedal Assembly	1951
2.1	Removal	1951
2.2	Installation	1952
3	Replace Front Doorsill Pressure Plate Body	1952
3.1	Removal	1952
3.2	Installation	1952
4	Replace Rear Doorsill Pedal Assembly	1953
4.1	Removal	1953
4.2	Installation	1953
5	Replace Rear Doorsill Pressure Plate Assembly	1953
5.1	Removal	1953
5.2	Installation	1954
6	Replace Luggage Compartment Doorsill Pressure Plate Assembly	1954
6.1	Removal	1954
6.2	Installation	1955
7	Replace Front Door Opening Weatherstrip	1955
7.1	Removal	1955
7.2	Installation	1956
8	Replace Rear Door Opening Weatherstrip	1956
8.1	Removal	1956
8.2	Installation	1957
9	Replace Back Door Opening Weatherstrip	1957
9.1	Removal	1957
9.2	Installation	1957
10	Replace A-pillar Upper Protector Assembly	1958
10.1	Removal	1958
10.2	Installation	1958
11	Replace A-pillar Lower Protector Assembly	1959
11.1	Removal	1959
11.2	Installation	1959
12	Replace B-pillar Lower Protector Assembly	1960
12.1	Removal	1960
12.2	Installation	1960
13	Replace B-pillar Upper Protector Assembly	1961
13.1	Removal	1961
13.2	Installation	1961
14	Replace Curtain Support Trim Panel	1962

INTERIOR

14.1	Removal	1962
14.2	Installation	1963
15	Replace Luggage Compartment Wheel House Assembly	1963
15.1	Removal	1963
15.2	Installation	1964
16	Replace Luggage Compartment Side Ornament Support Panel	1964
16.1	Removal	1964
16.2	Installation	1965
17	Replace C-pillar Lower Protector	1965
17.1	Removal	1965
17.2	Installation	1966
18	Replace C-pillar Upper Protector	1966
18.1	Removal	1966
18.2	Installation	1967
19	Replace Sun Visor Assembly	1967
19.1	Removal	1967
19.2	Installation	1968
20	Replace Passenger Grip Assembly	1969
20.1	Removal	1969
20.2	Installation	1969
21	Replace Luggage Compartment Carpet Assembly	1970
21.1	Removal	1970
21.2	Installation	1970
22	Replace Luggage Compartment Front Storage Box	1970
22.1	Removal	1970
22.2	Installation	1971
23	Replace Spare Tire Cover Plate Assembly	1971
23.1	Removal	1971
23.2	Installation	1971
24	Replace Roof Assembly	1971
24.1	Removal	1971
24.2	Installation	1972
25	Replace Front Carpet Body	1973
25.1	Removal	1973
25.2	Installation	1974
26	Replace Rear Carpet Body	1974
26.1	Removal	1974
26.2	Installation	1975

53.1 Warning and Precaution

1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before repairing, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death:

- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing doorsill pressure plate assembly, door opening weatherstrip, protector assembly, etc.

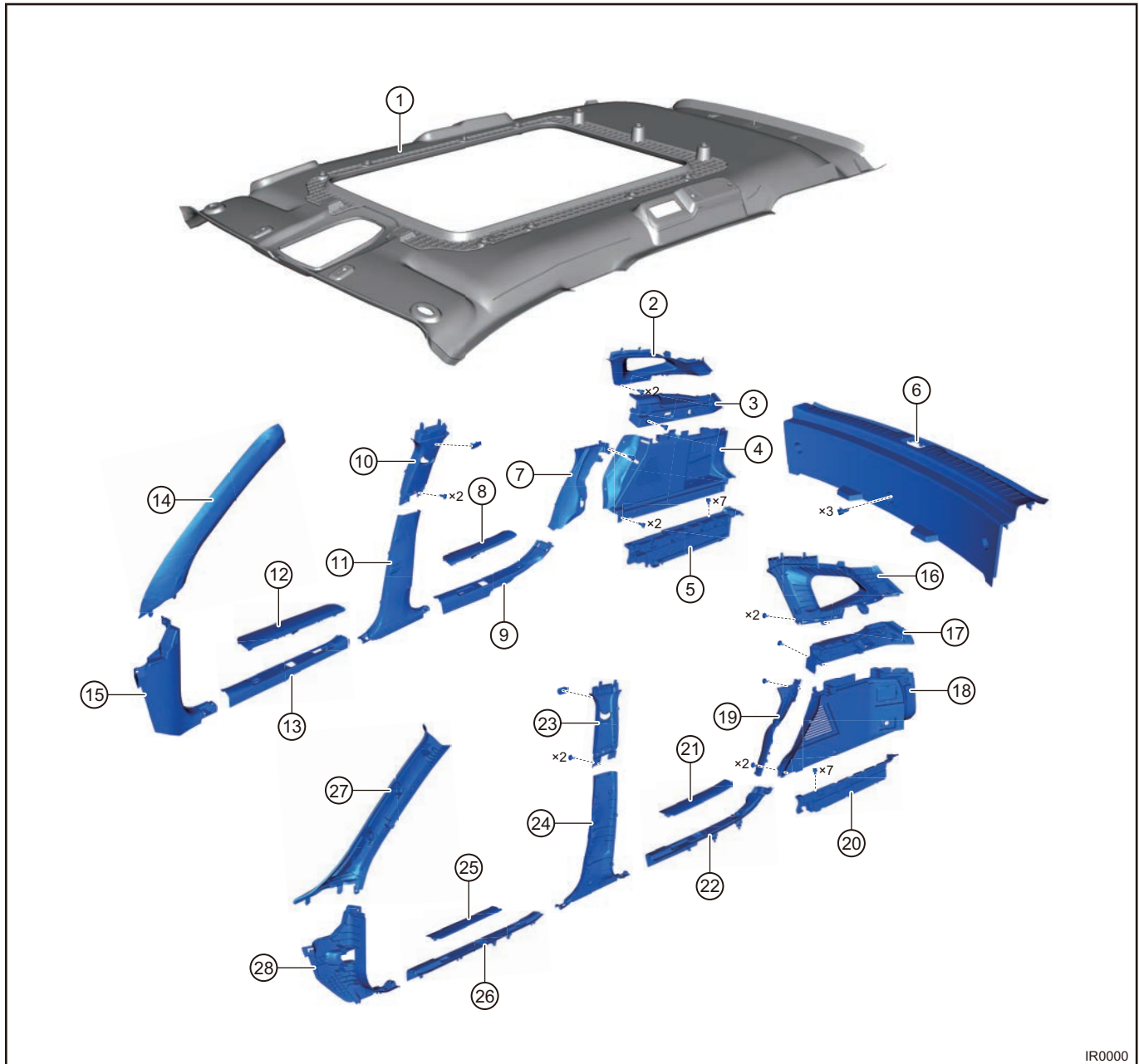
2 Precaution

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle before repair in this section, the following instructions must be observed:

- (1) Appropriate force should be applied, when removing doorsill pressure plate assembly, door opening weatherstrip, protector assembly, etc. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- (2) Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing doorsill pressure plate assembly, door opening weatherstrip, protector assembly, etc.
- (3) Try to prevent door opening weatherstrip from being damaged by excessive force, when removing door opening weatherstrip.
- (4) Replace damaged clips and install doorsill pressure plate assembly in place, when installing doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (5) After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.
- (6) Door opening weatherstrip and body should be fitted with a certain amount of clamping force and the weatherstrip should not fall off easily, when installing door opening weatherstrip.
- (7) When installing door opening weatherstrip, tap all around uniformly with a rubber hammer to install it in place. The surface of weatherstrip should have no defects, such as tapped dents, deformation and warpage after installation.
- (8) After installing door opening weatherstrip, do not remove or install it unless it is necessary. Otherwise the installation holding force of weatherstrip may be reduced.

53.2 System Overview

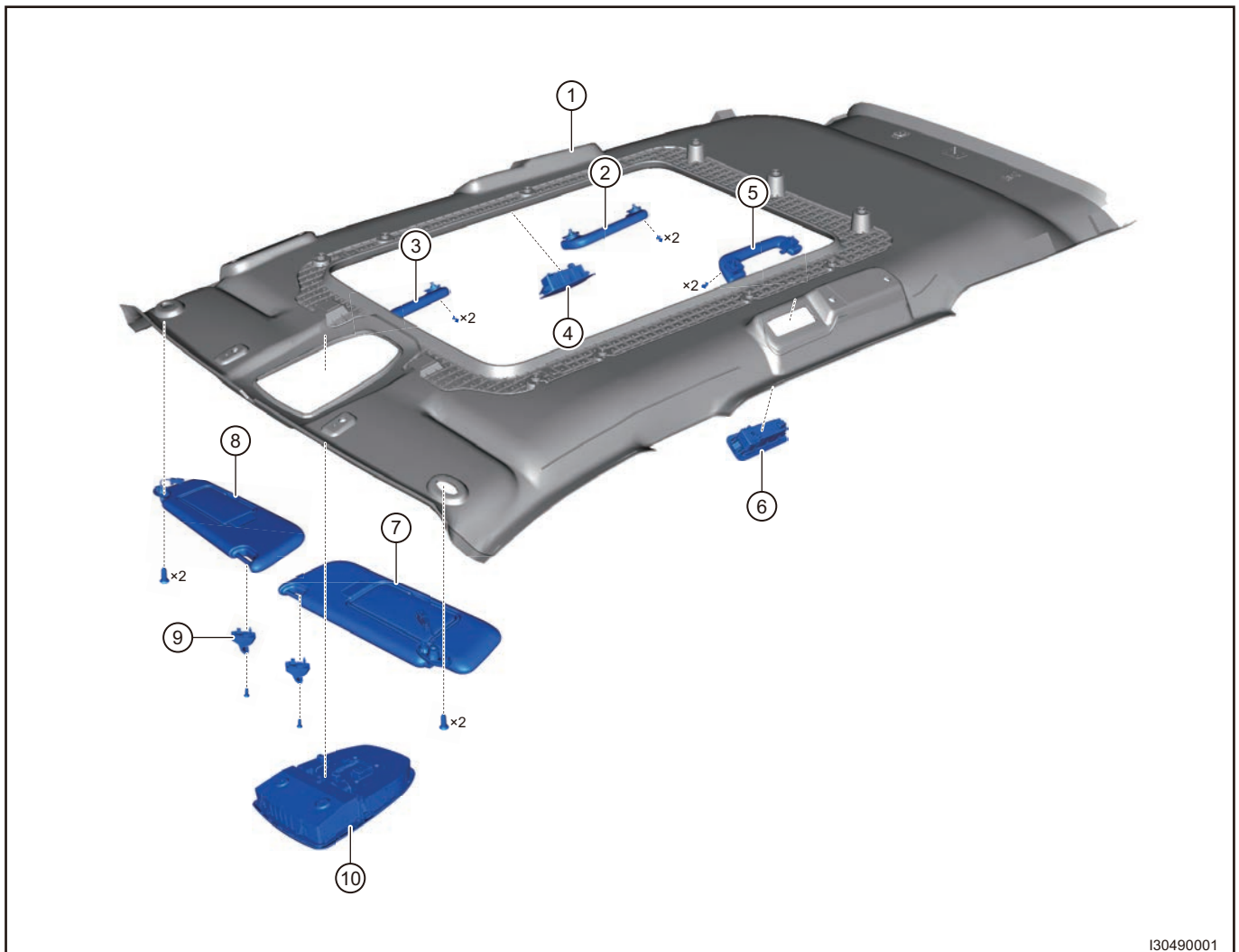
1 System Components Diagram



IR0000

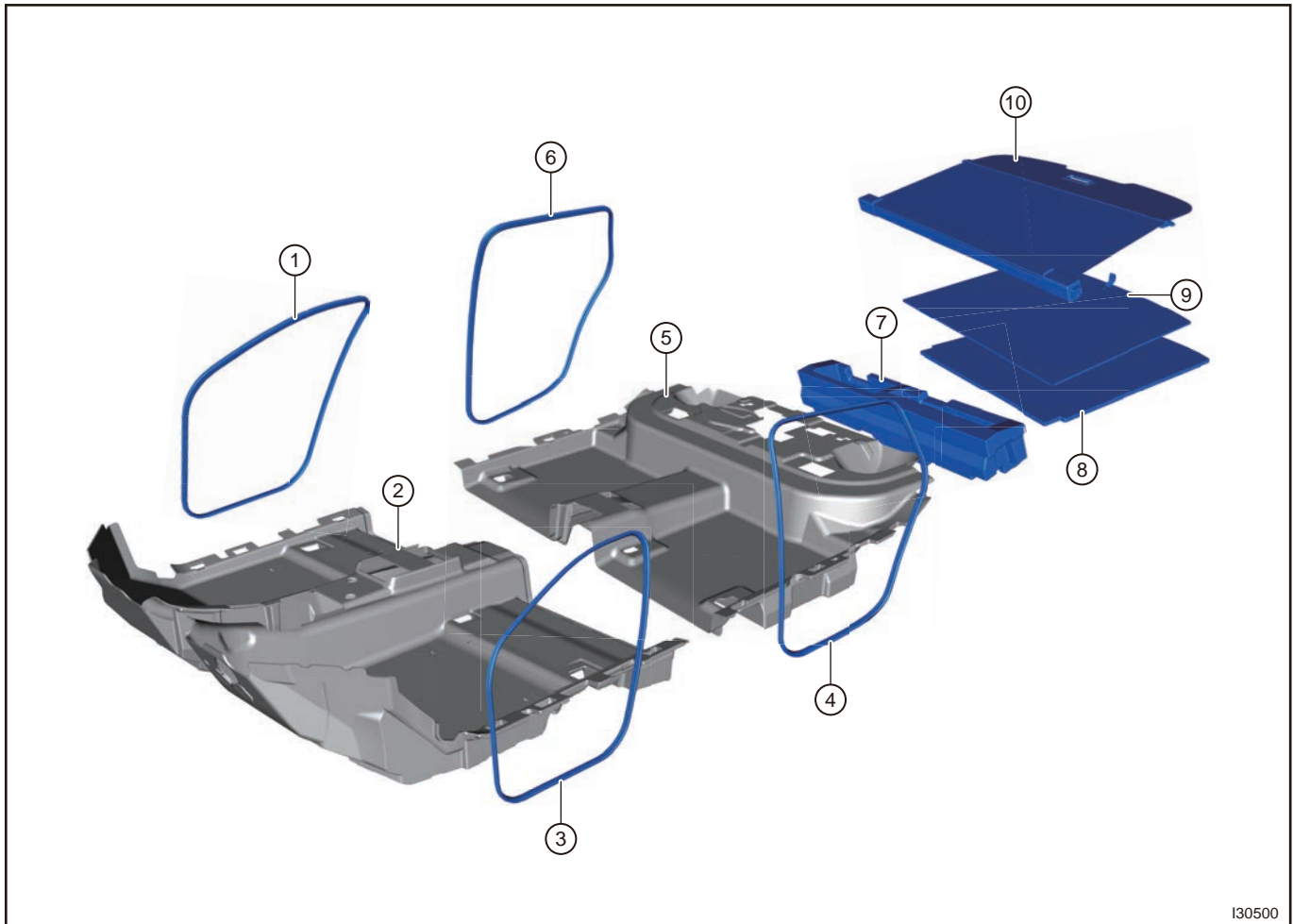
1	Roof Body	15	A-pillar Lower Protector - Right
2	C-pillar Upper Protector - Right	16	C-pillar Upper Protector - Left
3	Right Curtain Support Trim Panel	17	Left Curtain Support Trim Panel
4	Right Luggage Compartment Wheel House Assembly	18	Left Luggage Compartment Wheel House Assembly
5	Right Luggage Compartment Side Ornament Support Panel	19	Left C-pillar Lower Protector
6	Luggage Compartment Doorsill Pressure Plate Assembly	20	Left Luggage Compartment Side Ornament Support Panel

7	Right C-pillar Lower Protector	21	Rear Left Doorsill Pedal Assembly
8	Rear Right Doorsill Pedal Assembly	22	Rear Left Doorsill Pressure Plate Body
9	Rear Right Doorsill Pressure Plate Body	23	B-pillar Upper Protector with Fabric - Left
10	B-pillar Upper Protector with Fabric - Right	24	B-pillar Lower Protector - Left
11	B-pillar Lower Protector - Right	25	Front Left Doorsill Pedal Assembly
12	Front Right Doorsill Pedal Assembly	26	Front Left Doorsill Pressure Plate Body
13	Front Right Doorsill Pressure Plate Body	27	A-pillar Upper Protector with Fabric - Left
14	A-pillar Upper Protector with Fabric - Right	28	A-pillar Lower Protector - Left



I30490001

1	Roof Body	6	Rear Left Interior Dome Light Assembly
2	Rear Left Passenger Grip	7	Left Sun Visor Assembly
3	Front Passenger Side Grip Assembly	8	Right Sun Visor Assembly
4	Rear Right Interior Dome Light Assembly	9	Holder B
5	Rear Left Passenger Grip	10	Front Interior Dome Light Assembly

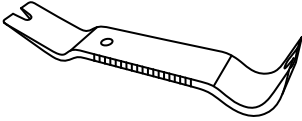


I30500

1	Front Right Door Opening Weatherstrip	6	Rear Right Door Opening Weatherstrip
2	Front Carpet Body	7	Luggage Compartment Front Storage Box
3	Front Left Door Opening Weatherstrip	8	Spare Tire Cover Plate Assembly
4	Rear Left Door Opening Weatherstrip	9	Luggage Compartment Carpet Assembly
5	Rear Carpet Body	10	Curtain Assembly

53.3 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tool

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

2 Replace Front Doorsill Pedal Assembly

2.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front left doorsill pedal assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front left doorsill pedal assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front left doorsill pedal assembly.**

- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off iron fixing clips from front left doorsill pedal assembly.



- (2) Disconnect the connector.



- (3) Remove the front left doorsill pedal assembly.

2.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install the front left doorsill pedal assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Connect the connector.

3 Replace Front Doorsill Pressure Plate Body

3.1 Removal

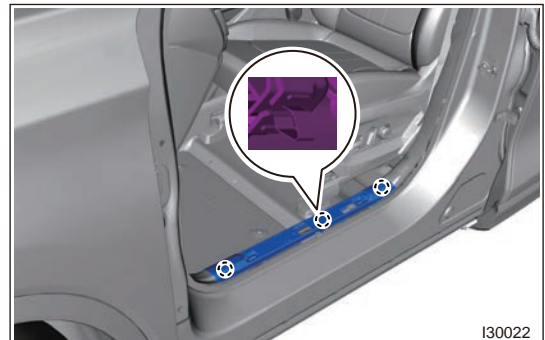
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front left doorsill pressure plate body.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front left doorsill pressure plate body. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front left doorsill pressure plate body.**

- (1) Remove the front left doorsill pedal assembly.
- (2) Remove the front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off 3 iron fixing clips from front left doorsill pressure plate body.



- (4) Remove the front left doorsill pressure plate body.

3.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**
- **After the weatherstrip is installed, the lip of weatherstrip should not cover the mounting hole of doorsill fixing clip.**

- (1) Install the front left doorsill pressure plate body to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (3) Install front left doorsill pedal assembly.

4 Replace Rear Doorsill Pedal Assembly

4.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear left doorsill pedal assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear left doorsill pedal assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear left doorsill pedal assembly.**

- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off iron fixing clips from rear left doorsill pedal assembly.



- (2) Remove the rear left doorsill pedal assembly.

4.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install the rear left doorsill pedal assembly to proper position on vehicle body.

5 Replace Rear Doorsill Pressure Plate Assembly

5.1 Removal

Hint:

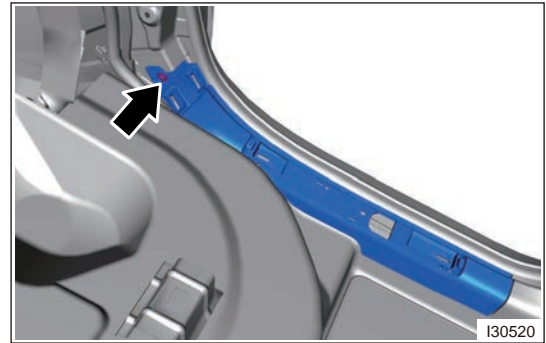
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

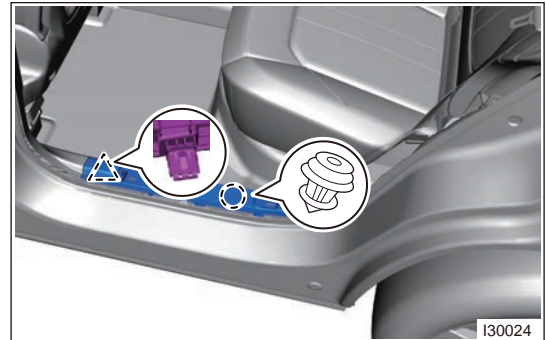
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.**

- (1) Remove the rear left doorsill pedal assembly.
- (2) Remove the rear left door opening weatherstrip.
- (3) Remove the left C-pillar lower protector.

- (4) Remove 1 fixing screw from rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.



- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off plastic clip and iron clip from rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.



- (6) Remove the rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.

5.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.
- After the weatherstrip is installed, the lip of weatherstrip should not cover the mounting hole of doorsill fixing clip.

- (1) Install the rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 1 fixing screw to rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.
Torque: $2 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install left C-pillar lower protector.
- (4) Install rear left door opening weatherstrip.
- (5) Install rear left doorsill pedal assembly.

6 Replace Luggage Compartment Doorsill Pressure Plate Assembly

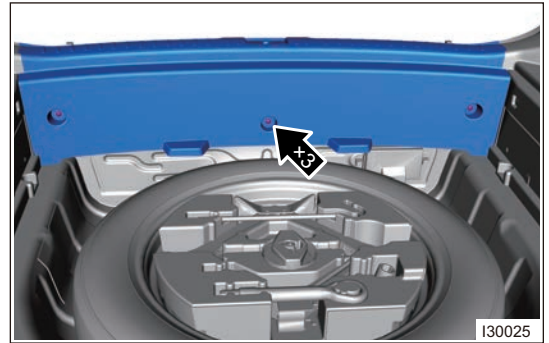
6.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

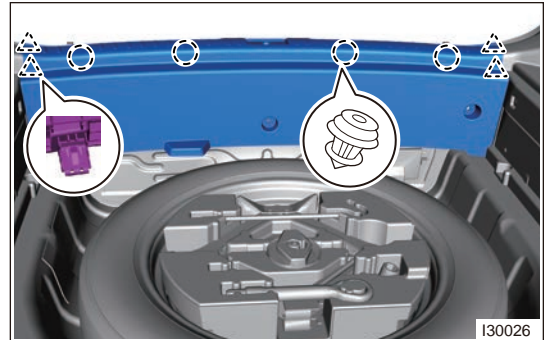
- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly.

- (1) Remove the luggage compartment carpet assembly.
- (2) Remove the spare tire cover plate assembly.

- (3) Remove 3 fixing screws from luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly



- (4) Using an interior crow bar, pry off 4 plastic clips and 4 iron clips from luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly.



- (5) Remove the luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly.

6.2 Installation

Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly in place, when installing luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly.**
- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install the luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Align the luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate clip with corresponding opening, and then tap the 4 clips into corresponding holes from left to right.
- (3) Install 3 fixing screws to luggage compartment doorsill pressure plate assembly.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Install the spare tire cover plate assembly.
- (5) Install the luggage compartment carpet assembly.

7 Replace Front Door Opening Weatherstrip

7.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front left door opening weatherstrip.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front left door opening weatherstrip. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent front door opening weatherstrip from being damaged, when removing front left door opening weatherstrip.**

- (1) Remove the front left doorsill pedal assembly.
- (2) Remove the front left door opening weatherstrip by gently pulling it along edges from one corner of front door opening weatherstrip.



7.2 Installation

Caution

- **Front door opening weatherstrip and body should be fitted with a certain amount of clamping force and the weatherstrip should not fall off easily, when installing front door opening weatherstrip.**
- **When installing front door opening weatherstrip, tap all around uniformly with a rubber hammer to install it in place. The surface of weatherstrip should have no defects, such as tapped dents, deformation and warpage after installation.**
- **After installing front door opening weatherstrip, do not remove or install it unless it is necessary. Otherwise the installation holding force of weatherstrip may be reduced.**

- (1) Place the front left door opening weatherstrip to a proper position, tap all around uniformly with a rubber hammer to install it in place.
- (2) Install front left doorsill pedal assembly.

8 Replace Rear Door Opening Weatherstrip

8.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door opening weatherstrip.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear door opening weatherstrip. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent rear door opening weatherstrip from being damaged, when removing rear door opening weatherstrip.**

- (1) Remove the rear left doorsill pedal assembly.
- (2) Remove rear left door opening weatherstrip by gently pulling it along edges from one corner of rear door opening weatherstrip.



8.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- Rear door opening weatherstrip and body should be fitted with a certain amount of clamping force and the weatherstrip should not fall off easily, when installing rear door opening weatherstrip.
- When installing rear door opening weatherstrip, tap all around uniformly with a rubber hammer to install it in place. The surface of weatherstrip should have no defects, such as tapped dents, deformation and warpage after installation.
- After installing rear door opening weatherstrip, do not remove or install it unless it is necessary. Otherwise the installation holding force of weatherstrip may be reduced.

- (1) Place the rear left door opening weatherstrip to a proper position, tap all around uniformly with a rubber hammer to install it in place.
- (2) Install rear left doorsill pedal assembly.

9 Replace Back Door Opening Weatherstrip

9.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing back door opening weatherstrip.
- Appropriate force should be applied when removing back door opening weatherstrip. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent back door opening weatherstrip from being damaged, when removing back door opening weatherstrip.

- (1) Remove back door opening weatherstrip by gently pulling it along edges from one corner of back door opening weatherstrip.



I30029

9.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- Back door opening weatherstrip and body should be fitted with a certain amount of clamping force and the weatherstrip should not fall off easily, when installing back door opening weatherstrip.
- When installing back door opening weatherstrip, tap all around uniformly with a rubber hammer to install it in place. The surface of weatherstrip should have no defects, such as tapped dents, deformation and warpage after installation.
- After installing back door opening weatherstrip, do not remove or install it unless it is necessary. Otherwise the weatherstrip holding force of installation may be reduced.

- (1) Place the back door opening weatherstrip to a proper position, tap all around uniformly with a rubber hammer to install it in place.

10 Replace A-pillar Upper Protector Assembly

10.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

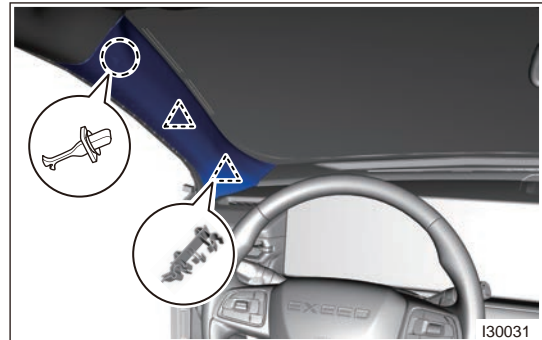
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing A-pillar upper protector assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing A-pillar upper protector assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing A-pillar upper protector assembly.**

- (1) Remove the front left door opening weatherstrip (not necessary to completely remove).
- (2) Using an interior crow plate, remove 1 airbag clip and 2 clips from left A-pillar upper protector assembly carefully.

⚠ Caution

- **Use needle nose pliers to clamp the dovetail of airbag clip and rotate it 90° to separate the A-pillar upper protector from the sheet metal, the secondary clip is left on the sheet metal.**



- (3) Remove the left A-pillar upper protector assembly.

10.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Make sure that damaged clips are replaced and A-pillar upper protector assembly is installed in place, when installing A-pillar upper protector assembly.**
- **A-pillar upper protector assembly should be well fitted with instrument panel and roof headlining, after installing A-pillar upper protector assembly.**
- **A-pillar upper protector assembly and front door opening weatherstrip should be fitted closely, after installing A-pillar upper protector assembly.**
- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install left A-pillar upper protector assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Use needle nose pliers to clamp the dovetail of airbag clip and rotate it 90° to fit the dovetail into protector clip hole, and apply force to connect A-pillar upper protector through the airbag clip.
- (3) Finally, tap A-pillar upper protector and 2 plastic clips to ensure assemble it in place.
- (4) Install front left door opening weatherstrip.

11 Replace A-pillar Lower Protector Assembly

11.1 Removal

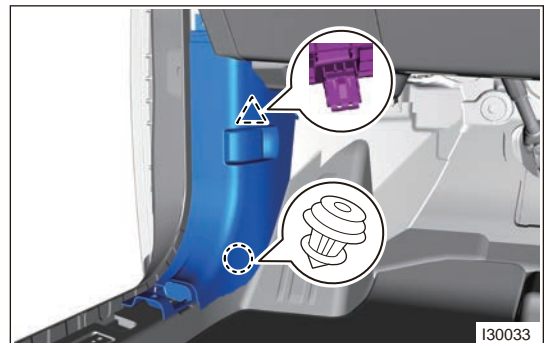
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing A-pillar lower protector assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing A-pillar lower protector assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing A-pillar lower protector assembly.**

- (1) Remove the front left doorsill pedal assembly.
- (2) Remove the front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (3) Remove the front left doorsill pressure plate body.
- (4) Remove the left end cover body.
- (5) Remove 1 fixing screw from left A-pillar lower protector assembly.



- (6) Using an interior crow plate, pry off plastic clip and iron clip from A-pillar lower protector assembly carefully.



- (7) Remove the left A-pillar lower protector assembly.

11.2 Installation

Caution

- **Replace damaged metal clip and install A-pillar lower protector assembly in place, when installing A-pillar lower protector assembly.**
- **A-pillar lower protector assembly and front door opening weatherstrip should be fitted closely, after installing A-pillar lower protector assembly.**
- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install left A-pillar lower protector assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 1 fixing screw to left A-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (3) Install the left end cover body.
- (4) Install front left doorsill pressure plate body.

- (5) Install front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (6) Install front left doorsill pedal assembly.

12 Replace B-pillar Lower Protector Assembly

12.1 Removal

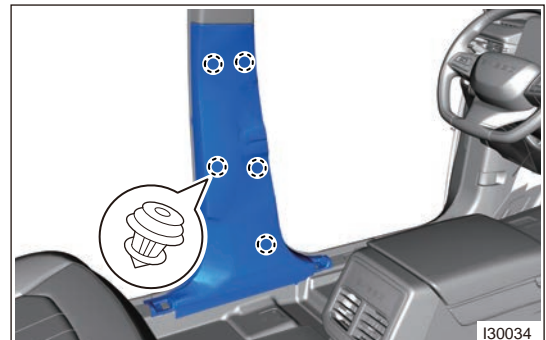
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing B-pillar lower protector assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing B-pillar lower protector assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing B-pillar lower protector assembly.**

- (1) Remove the front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (2) Remove the front left doorsill pressure plate body.
- (3) Remove the rear left door opening weatherstrip.
- (4) Remove the rear left doorsill pressure plate body.
- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clips from left B-pillar lower protector assembly.



- (6) Remove the left B-pillar lower protector assembly.

12.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install B-pillar lower protector assembly in place, when installing B-pillar lower protector assembly.**
- **B-pillar lower protector assembly should be well fitted with front and rear doorsill pressure plate assemblies, after installing B-pillar lower protector assembly.**
- **B-pillar lower protector assembly and front and rear door opening weatherstrips should be fitted closely, after installing B-pillar lower protector assembly.**
- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install B-pillar upper protector to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install front left doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (3) Install front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (4) Install rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (5) Install rear left door opening weatherstrip.

13 Replace B-pillar Upper Protector Assembly

13.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing B-pillar upper protector assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing B-pillar upper protector assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing B-pillar upper protector assembly.**

- (1) Remove the front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (2) Remove the front left doorsill pressure plate body.
- (3) Remove the rear left door opening weatherstrip.
- (4) Remove the rear left doorsill pressure plate body.
- (5) Remove the left B-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (6) Remove the seat belt lower fixing bolts.
- (7) Remove 2 fixing screws from lower part of left B-pillar upper protector.



I30035

- (8) Using an interior crow plate, pry off left B-pillar upper protector assembly.



I30036

13.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **B-pillar upper protector assembly should be well fitted with B-pillar lower protector assembly and roof headlining, after installing B-pillar upper protector assembly.**
- **B-pillar upper protector assembly and front and rear door opening weatherstrips should be fitted closely, after installing B-pillar upper protector assembly.**
- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install B-pillar upper protector to proper position on vehicle body.

- (2) Install 2 fixing screws to lower part of left B-pillar upper protector.
Torque: $2 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install the seat belt lower fixing bolts.
- (4) Install left B-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (5) Install front left doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (6) Install front left door opening weatherstrip.
- (7) Install rear left doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (8) Install rear left door opening weatherstrip.

14 Replace Curtain Support Trim Panel

14.1 Removal

Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing curtain support trim panel.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing curtain support trim panel. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **DO NOT scratch interior and body paint when removing curtain support trim panel.**

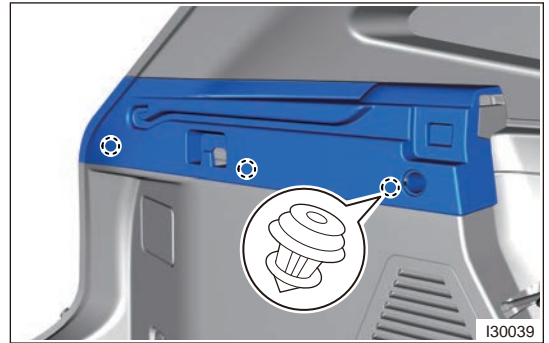
- (1) Remove the curtain.
- (2) Remove the left curtain support trim panel screw block cover.



- (3) Remove fixing screw from left curtain support trim panel.



- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off left curtain support trim panel fixing clip and disconnect the luggage compartment light connector.



- (5) Remove the left curtain support trim panel.

14.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install curtain support trim panel in place, when installing curtain support trim panel.**

- (1) Install the curtain support trim panel to a proper position on vehicle body and connect the luggage compartment light connector.
- (2) Install the fixing screw to left curtain support trim panel.
Torque: $3.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install the left curtain support trim panel screw block cover.
- (4) Remove the curtain.

15 Replace Luggage Compartment Wheel House Assembly

15.1 Removal

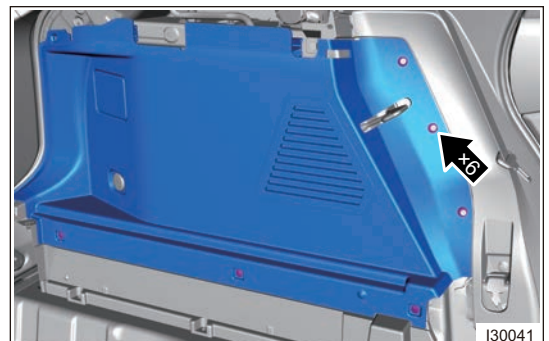
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

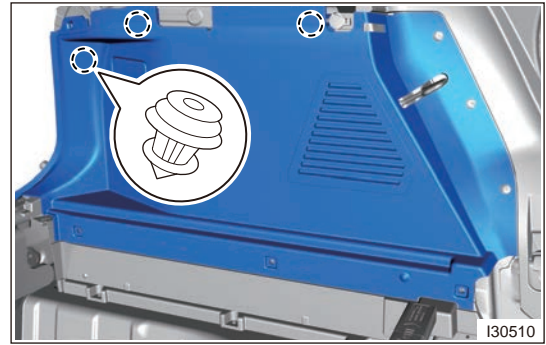
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing luggage compartment wheel house assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing luggage compartment wheel house assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing luggage compartment wheel house assembly.**

- (1) Remove the curtain.
- (2) Remove the left curtain support trim panel.
- (3) Remove 6 plastic fixing clips from luggage compartment wheel house assembly.



- (4) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the fixing clips from luggage compartment wheel house assembly and disconnect the backup power supply connector.



- (5) Remove the luggage compartment wheel house assembly.

15.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install luggage compartment wheel house assembly in place, when installing luggage compartment wheel house assembly.**

- (1) Install the luggage compartment wheel house assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 6 plastic fixing clips to luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (3) Install the left curtain support trim panel.
- (4) Install the curtain.

16 Replace Luggage Compartment Side Ornament Support Panel

16.1 Removal

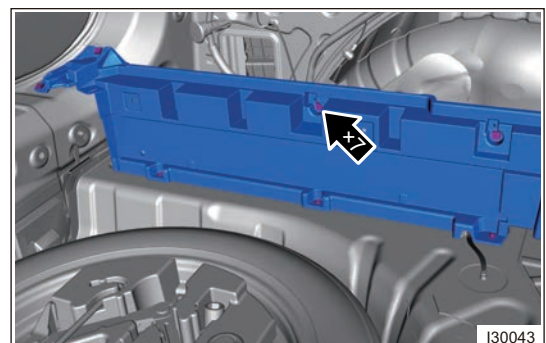
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

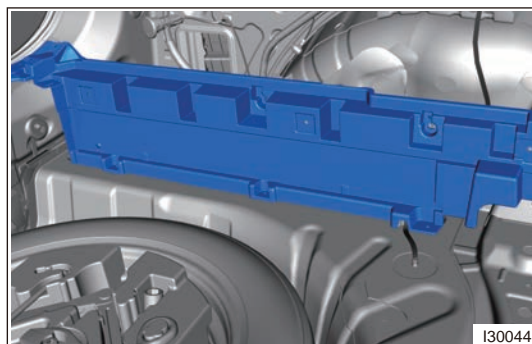
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing luggage compartment side ornament support panel.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing luggage compartment side ornament support panel. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing luggage compartment side ornament support panel.**

- (1) Remove the curtain.
- (2) Remove the left curtain support trim panel.
- (3) Remove the left luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (4) Remove 7 fixing screws from luggage compartment side ornament support panel.



- (5) Replace the luggage compartment side ornament support panel.



16.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**

- (1) Install the luggage compartment side ornament support panel to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 7 fixing screws to luggage compartment side ornament support panel.
Torque: $2 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install the left luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (4) Install the left curtain support trim panel.
- (5) Install the curtain.

17 Replace C-pillar Lower Protector

17.1 Removal

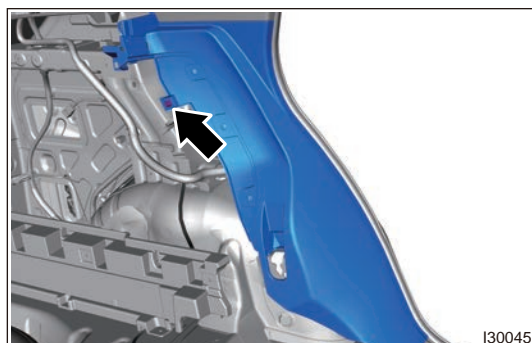
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

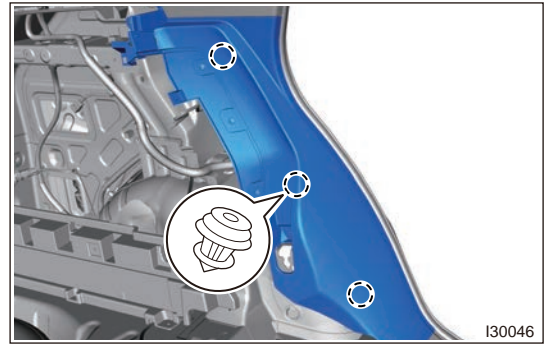
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing C-pillar lower protector.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing C-pillar lower protector. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing C-pillar lower protector.**

- (1) Remove the curtain.
- (2) Remove the left curtain support trim panel.
- (3) Remove the left luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (4) Remove 1 fixing screw from C-pillar lower protector assembly.



- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the fixing clips from C-pillar lower protector assembly, and remove the C-pillar lower protector assembly.



17.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Make sure that damaged clips are replaced and C-pillar lower protector assembly is installed in place when installing C-pillar lower protector assembly.**

- (1) Install C-pillar lower protector assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 1 fixing screw to C-pillar lower protector assembly.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install the left luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (4) Install the left curtain support trim panel.
- (5) Install the curtain.

18 Replace C-pillar Upper Protector

18.1 Removal

Hint:

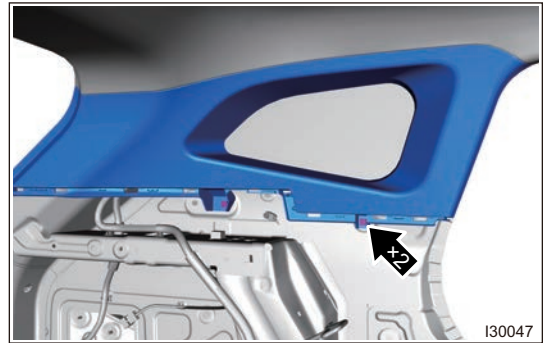
- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

⚠ Caution

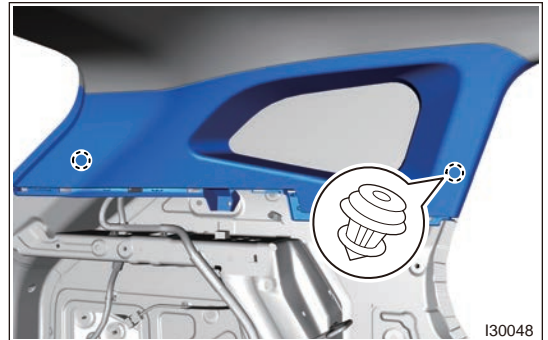
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing C-pillar Upper protector.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing C-pillar upper protector. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing C-pillar upper protector.**

- (1) Remove the curtain.
- (2) Remove the left curtain support trim panel.
- (3) Remove the left luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (4) Remove the left C-pillar lower protector assembly.

- (5) Remove 2 fixing screws from C-pillar upper protector assembly.



- (6) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the fixing clips from C-pillar upper protector assembly, and remove the C-pillar upper protector assembly.



18.2 Installation

Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install C-pillar upper protector assembly in place, when installing C-pillar upper protector assembly.**

- (1) Install C-pillar upper protector assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws to C-pillar upper protector assembly.
Torque: $3 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install left C-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (4) Install the left luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (5) Install the left curtain support trim panel.
- (6) Install the curtain.

19 Replace Sun Visor Assembly

19.1 Removal

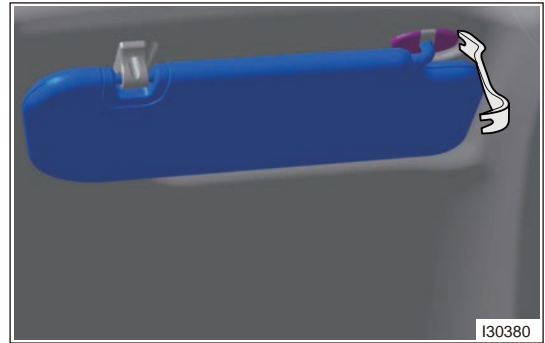
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.

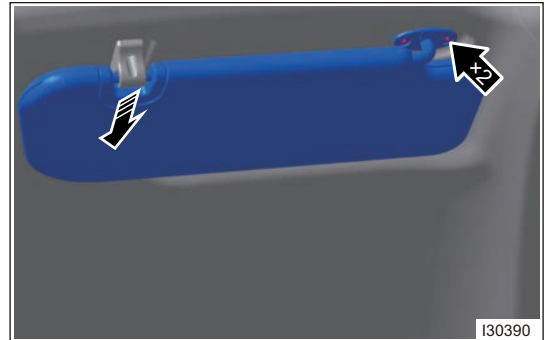
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing sun visor assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing sun visor assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and roof from being damaged, when removing sun visor assembly.**

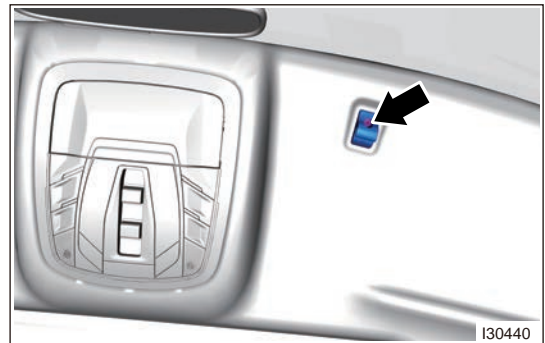
- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off trim cover from sun visor holder.



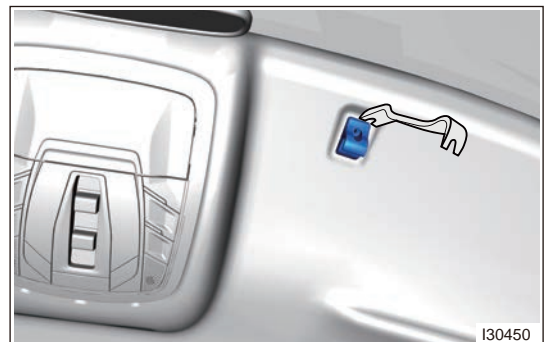
- (2) Detach sun visor assembly from the holder to rear side, and remove 2 fixing screws from front left sun visor.



- (3) Disconnect sun visor connector and remove sun visor assembly.
- (4) Remove 1 fixing screw from sun visor holder.



- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off left sun visor holder B.



19.2 Installation

Caution

- During normal operation, sun visor should move normally without any noise, seizing, etc.
- Sun visor should be fixed by holder securely without any falling off during use.
- Mounting seat, holder should be well fitted with roof with appearance not being affected.

- (1) Install the sun visor holder to roof.

- (2) Install 1 fixing screw to sun visor holder.
Torque: 5 ± 1 N•m
- (3) Fix the left sun visor assembly holder in the body mounting hole with 2 bolts (for high configuration sun visors, connect the wire harness connectors before fixing the screws).
Torque: 5 ± 1 N•m
- (4) Clamp the trim cover into holder.
- (5) Insert the sun visor half shaft sleeve into the holder normally, and then adjust the sun visor to make it in closed state.

20 Replace Passenger Grip Assembly

20.1 Removal

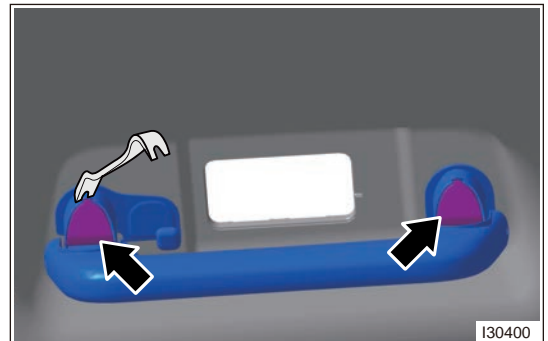
Hint:

- Use same procedures for right and left sides.
- Procedures listed below are for left side.
- The installation method of front and rear passenger grips are same.

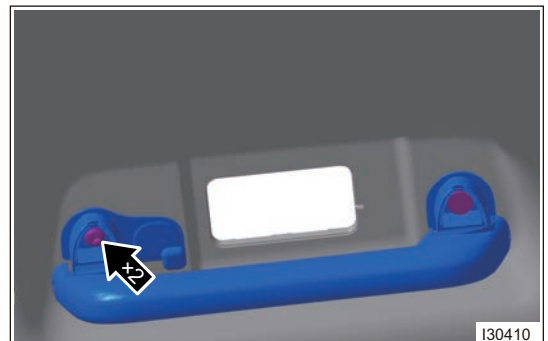
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing passenger grip assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing passenger grip assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and roof from being damaged, when removing passenger grip assembly.**

- (1) Using an interior crow plate, pry off grip fixing screw block cover carefully.



- (2) Using a cross screwdriver, remove 2 fixing screws from passenger grip assembly, and remove the front right passenger grip assembly.



20.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

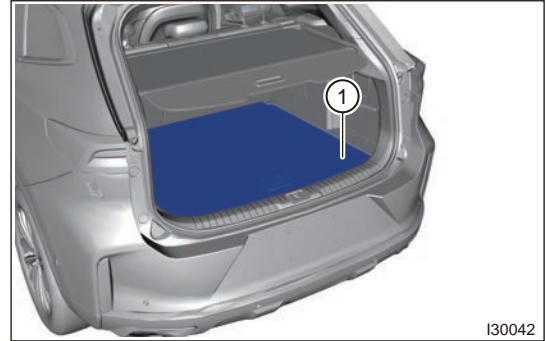
- **After installation, check for looseness, neglected installation, etc.**
- **Grip should return normally without any noise during operation.**
- **Grip should be well fitted with roof and peripheral clearance should be even when it is not in use.**

- (1) Install 2 fixing screws to passenger grip assembly.
Torque: 3 ± 1 N•m
- (2) Install the fixing screw block cover to passenger grip assembly.

21 Replace Luggage Compartment Carpet Assembly

21.1 Removal

- (1) Lift the luggage compartment carpet grip and lift the rear end of luggage compartment carpet.
- (2) Pull the luggage compartment carpet assembly backward and take it out (①).



21.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Make sure that the left and right sides of luggage compartment carpet assembly are fitted in place, when installing luggage compartment carpet assembly.**
- **After installation, check whether the luggage compartment carpet is flat and free of wrinkles.**

- (1) Put the luggage compartment carpet into luggage compartment, lap it on the luggage compartment storage box, and push it toward the front of vehicle until the carpet dowel pin is inserted into the hole of doorsill pressure plate.

22 Replace Luggage Compartment Front Storage Box

22.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing luggage compartment front storage box.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied when removing luggage compartment front storage box. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing luggage compartment front storage box.**

- (1) Remove the luggage compartment carpet assembly.
- (2) The luggage compartment front storage box can be removed directly from vehicle.



22.2 Installation

- (1) Place luggage compartment storage box to rear luggage compartment.
- (2) Install the luggage compartment carpet assembly.

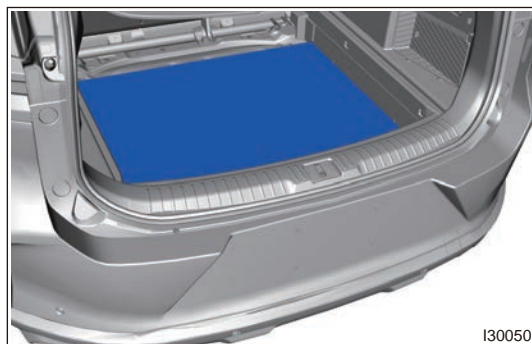
23 Replace Spare Tire Cover Plate Assembly

23.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing spare tire cover plate assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing spare tire cover plate assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing spare tire cover plate assembly.**

- (1) Remove the luggage compartment carpet assembly.
- (2) The spare tire cover plate assembly can be removed directly from vehicle.



23.2 Installation

- (1) Place the spare tire cover plate assembly to a proper position in vehicle.
- (2) Install the luggage compartment carpet assembly.

24 Replace Roof Assembly

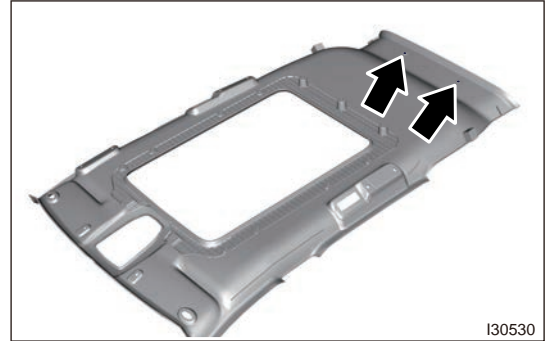
24.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing roof assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing roof assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing roof assembly.**

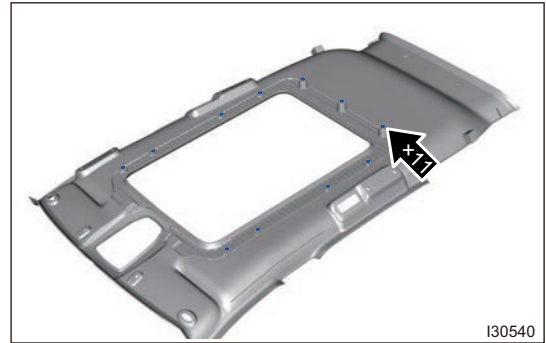
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the interior front dome light assembly.
- (4) Remove the sun visor assembly.
- (5) Remove the sun visor holder B.
- (6) Remove the passenger grip assembly.
- (7) Remove the rear interior dome light assembly.
- (8) Remove the front door opening weatherstrip.
- (9) Remove the rear door opening weatherstrip.
- (10) Remove the back door opening weatherstrip.

- (11) Remove the A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (12) Remove the B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (13) Remove the C-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (14) Using an interior crow plate, pry off 2 fixing clips on end of roof assembly.



I30530

- (15) Disconnect 11 mushroom buckles between the roof and ceiling by force evenly downward around the roof.



I30540

- (16) Remove the roof assembly.

24.2 Installation

Caution

- The position of sun visor, passenger grip and roof fixing clip installation hole should correspond to the position of body screw hole to ensure that the sun visor, passenger grip and fixing clip are installed in place without affecting the appearance.
- The height and edge of front end of roof should not interfere with the installation of front and rear windshield glass. The front and rear corners of roof should not be visible outside vehicle, and the visual angle should be horizontal with the height of roof.
- Replace damaged clips and install roof assembly in place, when installing roof assembly.
- Roof assembly and pillar upper protector should be fitted closely, after installing roof assembly.
- Roof assembly and door opening weatherstrip should be fitted closely, after installing roof assembly.
- After roof assembly is installed, the roof air outlet and air duct interface should be well matched, and the cross section of air duct opening should be pressed on the sponge on the back of air outlet, and there should be no misalignment or leakage.

- (1) Install the roof assembly to proper position on vehicle body.
- (2) Align the roof positioning hole and rear clip in turn.
- (3) Appropriately press the corresponding roof profile of mushroom buckles in sliding roof area to make the mushroom buckle stick tightly on the sliding roof.
- (4) Install C-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (5) Install B-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (6) Install A-pillar upper protector assembly.
- (7) Install back door opening weatherstrip.
- (8) Install rear door opening weatherstrip.
- (9) Install front door opening weatherstrip.

- (10) Install rear interior dome light assembly.
- (11) Install passenger grip assembly.
- (12) Install sun visor holder B.
- (13) Install sun visor assembly.
- (14) Install front interior dome light assembly.
- (15) Turn on all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.

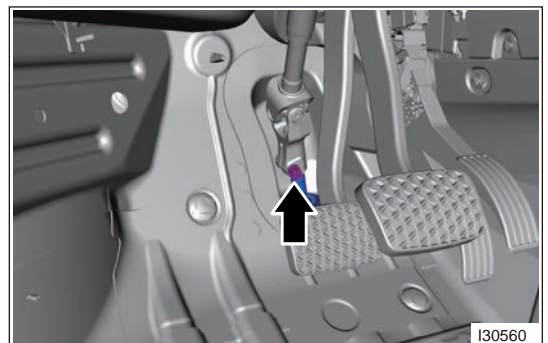
25 Replace Front Carpet Body

25.1 Removal

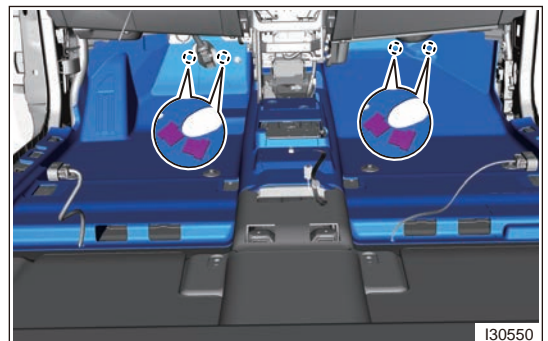
Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front carpet body.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing front carpet body. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing front carpet body.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (4) Remove the front seat assembly.
- (5) Remove the front door opening weatherstrip.
- (6) Remove the front doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (7) Remove the rear door opening weatherstrip.
- (8) Remove the rear doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (9) Remove the A-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (10) Remove the B-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (11) Remove the fixing bolt from intermediate shaft assembly.



- (12) Loosen 2 magical sticks at the front of carpet.



- (13) Remove the front carpet assembly.

25.2 Installation

Caution

- **Always pay attention to the flatness around front floor carpet assembly and the routing of relative body wire harness, when installing front floor carpet assembly.**
- **Spread front floor carpet assembly along the bottom shape, with no obvious bumps and unevenness found. Expose installation holes, and front floor carpet assembly should be firmly abutted against the bottom.**
- **It is not allowed to stand in the area of carpet without protective film to avoid soiling the carpet.**

- (1) Install front carpet assembly to proper position on vehicle body, and the foam surface of front carpet should be attached to the sheet metal of lower vehicle body.
- (2) Install the intermediate shaft assembly fixing bolt.
- (3) Install B-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (4) Install A-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (5) Install rear doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (6) Install rear door opening weatherstrip.
- (7) Install front doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (8) Install front door opening weatherstrip.
- (9) Install front seat assembly.
- (10) Install the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

26 Replace Rear Carpet Body

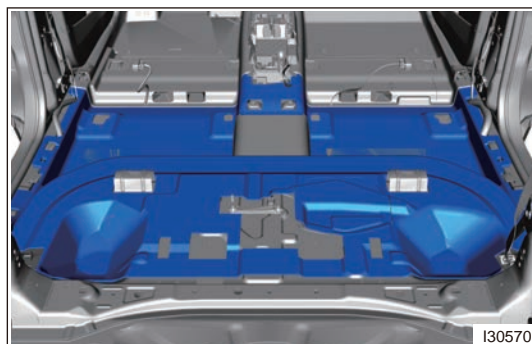
26.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear carpet body.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear carpet body. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing rear carpet body.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (4) Remove the front seat assembly.
- (5) Remove the rear seat assembly.
- (6) Remove the front door opening weatherstrip.
- (7) Remove the front doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (8) Remove the rear door opening weatherstrip.
- (9) Remove the rear doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (10) Remove the B-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (11) Remove the ISOFIX bracket.

(12) Remove the rear carpet assembly.



26.2 Installation

Caution

- **Spread rear floor carpet assembly along the bottom shape, with no obvious bumps and unevenness found. Expose installation holes, and rear floor carpet assembly should be firmly abutted against the bottom.**
- **It is not allowed to stand in the area of carpet without protective film to avoid soiling the carpet.**

- (1) Install rear carpet assembly to proper position on vehicle body, and the foam surface of rear carpet should be attached to the sheet metal of lower vehicle body.
- (2) Install the ISOFIX bracket.
- (3) Install B-pillar lower protector assembly.
- (4) Install rear door opening weatherstrip.
- (5) Install front doorsill pressure plate assembly.
- (6) Install front door opening weatherstrip.
- (7) Install rear seat assembly.
- (8) Install front seat assembly.
- (9) Install the auxiliary fascia console assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

SEAT

54.1	Warnings and Precautions	1978
1	Precautions	1978
54.2	System Overview	1979
1	System Description	1979
2	System Schematic Diagram	1979
3	System Components Diagram.....	1979
4	Power Seat Adjustment.....	1982
5	Seat Adjustment Function.....	1984
6	Seat Horizontal/Height/Seatback/Cushion Angle Manual Adjustment.....	1984
7	Failure Mode and Malfunction Handling	1985
8	Seat Initialization (Learning).....	1985
9	Manual Initialization	1986
10	Diagnostic Initialization.....	1986
11	Clearing Initialization	1986
12	Seat Memory and Recall.....	1987
13	Seat Position Memory	1987
14	Seat Memory Position Recall.....	1988
15	Power On Automatic Position Recall:.....	1989
16	Position Recall Status Feedback (Rear View Mirror Storage Status Signal is Determined according to Configuration):	1989
17	Seat Position Recall Function Interrupted:.....	1990
18	Seat Position Instant Memory Request Management	1990
19	Seat Comfortable Entry And Exit:.....	1990
20	Seat Position Action Status Output.....	1990
21	Seat Position Action Status Output.....	1990
22	Seat Heating	1991
23	Realization of Seat Heating	1993
24	Heating Hard Switch And Soft Switch Signal Priority	1994
25	TBOX Remote Heating Function Logic.....	1994
26	LEVEL 1 mode.....	1994
27	Heating Logic Processing When Starting And Stopping	1994
28	Seat Heating Termination Conditions	1995
29	Failure Mode and Malfunction Handling	1995
30	Seat Heating Interruption	1995
31	Seat Heating Priority	1995
32	Seat Ventilation Function	1995
33	Local Ventilation Function Logic.....	1996
34	Ventilation Hard Switch And Soft Switch Signal Priority	1997
35	Seat Ventilation Termination Conditions	1997
36	Seat Ventilation Interruption.....	1997
37	Seat Ventilation Priority.....	1997
38	Seat Adjustment Data.....	1998
38.1	Front seat.....	1998
38.2	Rear seat.....	1998

SEAT

54.3	System Circuit Diagram.....	1999
1	Module Terminal Definition.....	1999
2	Circuit Diagram	2003
54.4	Diagnostic Information and Steps.....	2006
1	Problem Symptoms Table	2006
2	Diagnostic Help.....	2006
3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	2006
4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting.....	2006
5	Ground Inspection	2007
6	Diagnosis Procedure.....	2007
7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	2008
8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure.....	2014
54.5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	2023
1	Tools	2023
2	Replace Front Seat Assembly	2023
2.1	Removal	2023
2.2	Inspection	2026
2.3	Installation	2028
2.4	Self-learning.....	2028
3	Replacement of Rear Seat Assembly	2040
3.1	Removal.....	2040
3.2	Inspection	2042
3.3	Installation	2042
4	Rear Seat Bracket.....	2043
4.1	Removal.....	2043
4.2	Installation	2044

54.1 Warnings and Precautions

1 Precautions

Precautions for Seat Assembly

- (1) The whole set of seat fabric has no obvious wrinkles and wear caused by installation;
- (2) It is not necessary to remove the plastic protective film provided by the seat during the assembly process so as to protect the seat;
- (3) Assembly methods of driver seat and front passenger seat are the same, and there is no difference in the assembly methods of all configured seats. It should be noted that the wire harness installation methods are different in each configuration.

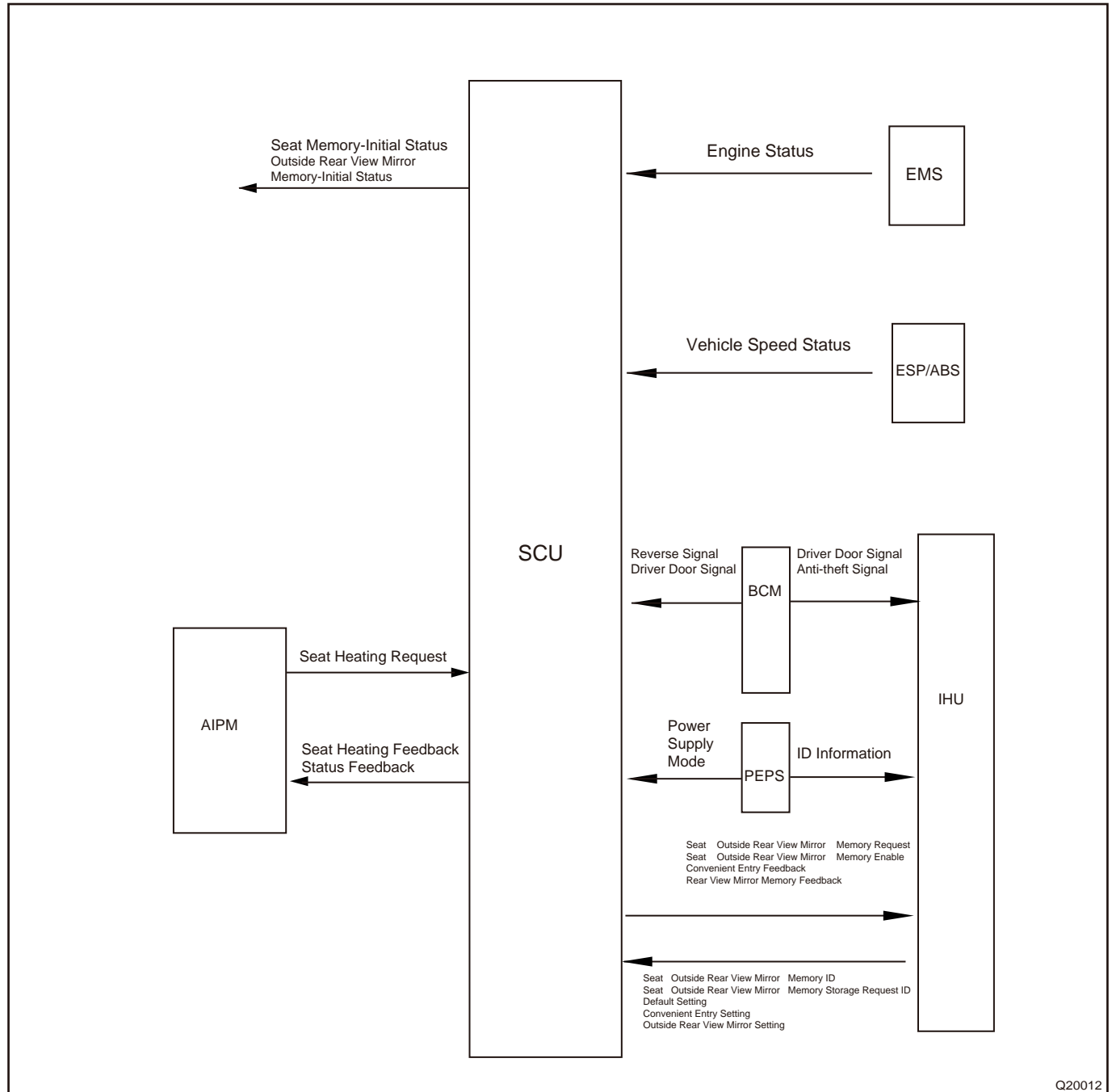
54.2 System Overview

1 System Description

Front seat assembly can be moved forward and backward by front-back adjustment switch, and can be moved upward and downward by seat height adjustment switch (for driver side power seat), and seatback inclination angle can be adjusted by seatback adjustment switch.

Rear seat position is not adjustable; however, rear seatback can be folded forward by pulling seatback unlock mechanism assembly, to help increase the storage space of luggage compartment.

2 System Schematic Diagram



3 System Components Diagram

Driver Seat Assembly



Q20010

1	Front Headrest Assembly	9	Front Left Seat Outside Side Panel
2	Front Headrest Guide Sleeve Free End	10	Driver Seat Side Panel Trim Cover
3	Front Headrest Guide Sleeve Lock End	11	Lumbar Support Switch
4	Front Seat Trim Fabric	12	Seatback Adjustment Button
5	Front Seat Belt Buckle	13	Seat Height and Front-back Adjustment Button
6	Front Left Seat Inside Side Panel	14	Front Left Seat Assembly Front Inner Leg Cover Assembly
7	Front Seat Cushion Sleeve	15	Driver Seat Frame
8	Front Left Seat Adjustment Switch Assembly		

Rear Seat Assembly



Q20020

1	Rear Outside Headrest Assembly	11	Rear Center Seat Belt Outlet Cover Plug
2	Rear Headrest Sleeve Free End	12	Rear Seat Armrest Buckle Cover Plate
3	Front Headrest Guide Sleeve Lock End	13	Rear Left Seatback Assembly
4	Rear Seat Armrest Buckle Cover Plate	14	Child Seat Upper Anchor Cover Plug
5	Rear Center Headrest Assembly	15	Child Seat Upper Anchor Cover Plug
6	Rear Headrest Sleeve Free End	16	Rear Seat Armrest Assembly
7	Front Headrest Guide Sleeve Lock End	17	Rear Right Seatback Assembly

8	Rear Outside Headrest Assembly	18	ISOFIX Bracket - Rear Seatback to Body
9	Rear Headrest Sleeve Free End	19	Rear Seat Cushion Assembly
10	Front Headrest Guide Sleeve Lock End		

4 Power Seat Adjustment

No.	Test Case Description	Step Description	Note
1	Horizontal manual adjustment of seat	Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V. Pressing to adjust the seat horizontally forward is continuously effective	Seat moves forward and stops when the switch is released
		Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V. Pressing to adjust the seat horizontally backward is continuously effective	Seat moves backward and stops when the switch is released
		Battery voltage is too high or too low. Press seat front-back adjustment button	Seat does not operate
		Start the vehicle during seat adjustment	Seat stops during vehicle start-up
2	Vertical manual adjustment of seat	Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V. Pressing to adjust the seat upward is continuously effective	Seat moves upward and stops when the switch is released
		Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V. Pressing to adjust the seat downward is continuously effective	Seat moves downward and stops when the switch is released
		Battery voltage is too high or too low. Press seat up/down adjustment button	Seat does not operate
		Start the vehicle during seat adjustment	Seat stops during vehicle start-up
3	Manual adjustment of seatback	Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V. Pressing to adjust the seatback forward is continuously effective	Seatback moves forward and stops when the switch is released
		Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V. Pressing to adjust the seatback backward is continuously effective	Seatback moves backward and stops when the switch is released
		Battery voltage is too high or too low. Press seatback front-back adjustment button	Seat does not operate
		Start the vehicle during seat adjustment	Seat stops during vehicle start-up

No.	Test Case Description	Step Description	Note
4	Manual initialization of seat in horizontal direction	Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V, adjust the seat forward until it reaches mechanical blocking stop position, blockage occurs; adjust the seat backward until it reaches mechanical blocking stop position, blockage occurs	Initialization is completed in the horizontal direction and soft stop range is automatically generated
		After completion of initialization, the seat will stop when it reaches the soft stop position. If the switch is operated again to move it in the same direction, the seat can exceed the soft stop action range	When the seat reaches the mechanical stop position, it will block and stop
5	Manual initialization of seat in vertical direction	Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V, adjust the seat upward until it reaches mechanical blocking stop position, blockage occurs; adjust the seat downward until it reaches mechanical blocking stop position, blockage occurs	Initialization is completed in the vertical direction and soft stop range is automatically generated
		After completion of initialization, the seat will stop when it reaches the soft stop position. If the switch is operated again to move it in the same direction, the seat can exceed the soft stop action range	When the seat reaches the mechanical stop position, it will block and stop
6	Manual initialization of seatback	Battery voltage is 9 to 16 V, adjust the seatback forward until it reaches mechanical blocking stop position, blockage occurs;	Initialization is completed in the seatback direction and soft stop range is automatically generated, and the backward soft stop position is obtained through calibration
		After completion of initialization, the seat will stop when it reaches the soft stop position. If the switch is operated again to move it in the same direction, the seat can exceed the soft stop action range	When the seat reaches the mechanical stop position, it will block and stop

No.	Test Case Description	Step Description	Note
7	Diagnostic initialization	Initialization is completed by issuing diagnostic instructions from the diagnostic tester	After completion of initialization, the seat will stop when it reaches the soft stop position. If the switch is operated again to move it in the same direction, the seat can exceed the soft stop action range, when it reaches the mechanical stop position, it will block and stop

5 Seat Adjustment Function

6 or 8 directions adjustment for driver seat: Including seat horizontal front-back adjustment, seat height up-down adjustment, seatback angle front-back adjustment, cushion angle adjustment.

6 Seat Horizontal/Height/Seatback/Cushion Angle Manual Adjustment

(1) Manual adjustment operating conditions

- Power supply is not in start gear;
- Normal operating voltage (9-16 V);

(2) Stop conditions

- Seat manual adjustment function stops when the motor is stalling.
- Seat manual adjustment function stops when releasing the switch.
- When the starter starts: Stop the seat manual adjustment function; If the switch input is still detected after the starter starts, it will continue to work.
- Stop the seat manual adjustment function when the seat fails (abnormal voltage, abnormal current, timeout output). When the output is stopped, the Hall signal caused by inertia will be recorded in the seat travel coordinates within 500ms after the output is stopped. The direction of travel counting is the same direction as the last seat output. At this time, Hall signal does not make abnormal judgment and only detects the number of Hall pulses within 500 ms.

(3) Blocking judgment

- Current blocking judgment
- In the process of SCU output, after starting the output for 100 ms (avoiding starting current), the starting current is blocked and detected. When the output current is greater than 75% of the starting current and lasts for 500ms, the current is blocked.
- Motor blocks: Current blocking and Hall blocking occur at the same time, it determines that system has a motor blocking. (All blocks mentioned in the functional specification satisfy this condition unless otherwise specified).
- The 4-axis motor cannot be blocked or started at the same time.

(4) Action delay

- When the seat moves in one direction and the switch state changes to the switch input in the opposite direction, the SCU will not immediately perform action in reverse direction and the reverse direction output action needs to be delayed by 500 ms.

(5) Position recording strategy

- When the seat moves, the position is not recorded to the EEPROM; When the seat stops, the current position information is written to the EEPROM; When the seat moves, it loses its position when the power cuts off.

(6) Shaft action priority

- Height and level adjustments cannot be made at the same time. Front seat cushion and seaback adjustments cannot be made at the same time. Seaback or front seat cushion adjustments can be made at the same time with height or level adjustments.

- 2 shafts are not allowed to start at the same time: In order to avoid excessive starting current at the same time, when the two shafts are started at the same time, the drive output interval is 200ms, and the priority is the seatback shaft/front seat cushion shaft > horizontal shaft/height shaft.
- Blocking current in 2 shafts are not allowed at the same time: In order to avoid excessive blocking current at the same time, when the two shafts are blocked at the same time (height + seatback or horizontal + seatback), stop the output of shaft with low priority. After the shaft with high priority completes the blocking judgment and stops output, resume the action of the other shaft and continue to complete the blocking judgment. The priority is the seatback shaft/front cushion shaft > horizontal shaft/height shaft.

(7) Seat adjustment soft stop function

- In order to prevent the seat from moving to the mechanical stop position frequently, the SCU has a soft stop function when the seat adjustment is initialized. The specific soft stop position is calibrated according to the real vehicle. The seat will stop when it reaches the soft stop position. If the switch is operated again to move it in the same direction, the seat can exceed the soft stop action range.

7 Failure Mode and Malfunction Handling

(1) Current detection

- If the monitored output current is greater than 75% of the starting current and exceeds 500ms (10ms*50), it is considered to be blocked and the output is cut off at this time.

(2) Voltage inspection

- During operation, if the voltage is lower than 9 V or higher than 16 V for more than 500 ms, the default voltage is abnormal, and the output is stopped while the switch input is shielded. After the voltage returns to normal range (9 < V < 16), if the working conditions are still satisfied, the operation will continue.

(3) Timeout detection

- The maximum output time of seat front-back/height/seatback/seat cushion is manually adjusted. When the switch continues to be effective, the output will stop after the maximum continuous output time of 30s.

(4) Seat adjustment failed state output

- When a fault (abnormal voltage, abnormal current, abnormal Hall signal) is detected, the seat module sends the ID of corresponding fault mode to CAN network until the fault is eliminated and the transmission stops.

8 Seat Initialization (Learning)

■ Definition information description during initialization

(1) Mechanical stop position

- Height, front/back shaft and cushion shaft:
During initialization, blocking point is reached forward, SCU takes this point as 0 and the maximum forward stroke position; or blocking point is reached backward, SCU will take this point as the end point and the maximum backward stroke position (height shaft: forward corresponds to up, backward corresponds to down).
- Seatback shaft:
During initialization, blocking point is reached forward, SCU takes this point as 0 and the maximum forward stroke position.

(2) Mechanical stop fault-tolerant range

- After the SCU records 0 and end point, when blocking occurs again, the reasonable difference between the current blocking point and the already recorded 0 or end point.

(3) Soft stop

- In order to protect the motor and seat system, it is necessary to define the motor action range within the software scope, and the soft stop is within the mechanical stop coordinate range. The soft stop interval can be initialized and automatically generated during initialization. The soft stop position is defined as follows:
Height shaft: From 0 or end point.
Front/back shaft: From 0 or end point.
Seatback shaft: From 0 or end point.

9 Manual Initialization

- (1) Initialization conditions
 - Normal operating voltage (9-16 V).
 - Power supply is not in start gear.
- (2) Front-back adjustment initialization:
 - The seat is adjusted forward until it reaches the mechanical blocking stop position. The blocking has occurred and the current point is taken as 0 point.
 - The seat is adjusted backwards until it reaches the mechanical blocking stop position. The blocking has occurred, the coordinate travel and end point are recorded.
 - Automatically generates a soft stop range with a distance of 30 Hall units from the mechanical stop (0 or end point).
- (3) Height adjustment initialization
 - The seat is adjusted upward until it reaches the mechanical blocking stop position. The blocking has occurred and the current point is taken as 0 point.
 - The seat is adjusted downwards until it reaches the mechanical blocking stop position. The blocking has occurred, the coordinate travel and end point are recorded.
 - Automatically generates a soft stop range with a distance of 30 Hall units from the mechanical stop (0 or end point).
- (4) Seatback angle initialization:
 - The seatback is adjusted forward until it reaches the mechanical blocking stop position. The blocking has occurred and the current point is taken as 0 point.
 - Automatically generates a forward soft stop range with a distance of 30 Hall units from the mechanical stop (0 point).
 - Automatically generates a backward soft stop range, and the backward soft stop position is obtained through calibration.
- (5) Seat cushion angle initialization:
 - The seat cushion is adjusted upward until it reaches the mechanical blocking stop position. The blocking has occurred and the current point is taken as 0 point.
 - The seat cushion is adjusted downwards until it reaches the mechanical blocking stop position. The blocking has occurred, the coordinate travel and end point are recorded.
 - Automatically generates a forward soft stop range with a distance of 30 Hall units from the mechanical stop (0 point).

10 Diagnostic Initialization

- (1) Through the diagnostic tester, the front and back adjustment shafts are automatically learned. The seat automatically moves forward to the blocking position and then backward to the blocking position to complete the initialization of the front and rear shafts.
- (2) Through the diagnostic tester, the height adjustment shaft is automatically learned. The seat automatically moves upward to the blocking position and then downward to the blocking position to complete the initialization of the height shaft.
- (3) Through the diagnostic tester, the seatback angle shaft is automatically learned. The seatback automatically moves forward to the blocking position to complete the initialization of the seatback shaft.
- (4) Through the diagnostic tester, the front seat cushion shaft is automatically learned. The front seat cushion automatically moves upward to the blocking position and then downward to the blocking position to complete the initialization of the front seat cushion shaft.
- (5) Through the diagnostic tester, all adjustment shafts are automatically learned; The seat automatically completes 4-shaft initialization.

11 Clearing Initialization

SCU can clear all shafts or single shaft initialized content, as long as there is one shaft clear is initialized, the current shaft is in manual mode.

- (1) Initialize and delete the following information:

- Mechanical stop position (0 and end point).
- Coordinate travel.
- Soft stop position.
- The fault-tolerant range of 0 or end point from the coordinate axis when stopping mechanically.
- Memory positions in all IDs and modes (single shaft clear initialization, clear all shafts memory position).

(2) Trigger clear initialization

- Clear all shafts initializations with the diagnostic tester.
- CAN signal received from IHU is set to the default value = 0x1: Personalization is set to the default value, 0x4: When all is set to the default value, memory positions in IDs and modes will be deleted; After deleting the memory position, set all memory positions under the current ID to the default position.

12 Seat Memory and Recall

No.	Test Case Description	Step Description
1	Seat position memory enabling	<p>Enable conditions: Normal operating voltage is 9 to 16 V . Vehicle speed is lower than 5 kph. Power supply is in OFF/ACC/IG ON . If engine starts, gear position is in P or N, SCU initialization is completed. Seat/rear view mirror will not move by manual control. Gear position is not in R. Vehicle is involved in a collision.</p>
2	Seat position memory recall	<p>Memory: If the user adjusts the seat or the outside rear view mirror through the switch in non-R mode, and does not operate the adjustment switch in the next 3 seconds, and seat and rear view mirror do not move, SCU will send a request for seat memory, and IHU will pop up a dialog box.</p> <p>Recall: When receiving the IHU recall demand, SCU drives the seat to the memory position in the corresponding mode. If there is no memory position before, SCU drives the seat to the default position.</p>
3	Seat convenient access function	<p>Activate this function in IHU interface</p> <p>Power supply is in OFF or remote start condition, when driver door is opened, SCU drives the seat back for a certain distance.</p>

13 Seat Position Memory

The seat control module needs to support the storage of 15 groups of seat position information of different postures. The module shall preset the initialization values in memory mode for all seat positions when the vehicle leaves the factory.

- (1) Seat position memory conditions
Seat module SCU needs to send out the seat memory enabling signal when all the following conditions are met, otherwise the seat module does not meet the position storage conditions:
 - Normal operating voltage is 9 to 16 V.
 - SCU initialization is completed.
 - SCU adjustment switch is not pressed.
 - Vehicle speed is lower than 3 Km/h and vehicle signal is valid. (No judgment when power supply is in OFF or ACC).
 - Rear view mirror switch is not pressed (Determine the signal based on the configuration).
- (2) Seat position memory
 - SCU receives memory request signal via CAN, when receiving CAN signal memory request of IUH (- including requested ID and mode number = 0x0, 0x1, 0x2, 0x3, 0x4, 0x5, 0x6, 0x7, 0x8, 0x9, 0xA, 0xB, 0xC, 0xD, 0xE, 0xF) (0x0 is no action, others correspond to 15 groups of positions).
 - SCU stores the current 4-shaft position to the EEPROM. SCU assigns the EEPROM to store 15 sets of position: 5 IDs, each of which has 3 modes corresponding to the ID and MODE number in the memory request. When the current position storage is completed, the seat module feedbacks CAN signal STAT_ seat memory position = "done", otherwise "failed" is feedback.
- (3) Clearing and covering memory position
 - When the seat module receives the CAN bus: SET_ default = 0X01 and judges the enabling signal of the seat memory at the same time, it sets 3 groups of memory position information under the current ID to the initial default position, non memory position of other ID do not change (the current ID is determined by the ID identified by IHU).
 - When the seat module receives the CAN bus: SET_ default = 0X04 and judges the enabling signal of the seat memory at the same time, it sets all ID for 15 groups of memory position information to the initial default position.
 - When there is memory information in the stored ID and mode, the memory request in this ID and mode is received again, and the current 4-shaft position overwrites the previous memory information.
- (4) Position storage status feedback (Rear view mirror storage status signal is determined according to the configuration).
 - After the seat position is successfully stored and the rear view mirror storage success signal is received, three frames of success signals are sent to CAN.
 - If the seat position storage fails or the rear view mirror storage failure signal is received, three frames of failure signals will be sent to CAN.
 - When the transmission of 3 frames is completed or there is no storage action, the feedback signal is sent to CAN all the time.

14 Seat Memory Position Recall

- (1) Seat memory position recall conditions
 - Seat memory enabling signal.
 - When STAT_ terminal is ON, two conditions of engine condition is "engine running" and transmission gear is "P" do not occur simultaneously.
 - Engine status = starter starts.
- (2) Position recall:
 - When receiving CAN REQ_ seat position = 0x0, 0x1, 0x2, 0x3, 0x4, 0x5, 0x6, 0x7, 0x8, 0x9, 0xA, 0xB, 0xC, 0xD, 0xE, 0xF (0x0 is no action, others correspond to 15 groups of position).
 - When the SCU receives the recall position, it determines whether there is a storage position:
There is a storage position: Drive the seat to the position remembered in the corresponding mode.
No storage position: Drive the seat to default position.
- (3) SCU stops driving when the call action reaches the target position:
 - When the output is stopped, the Hall signal caused by inertia will be recorded in the seat travel coordinates within 500ms after the output is stopped. The direction of travel counting is the same direction as the last seat output. At this time, Hall signal does not make abnormal judgment and only detects the number of Hall pulses within 500 ms.

- (4) Motor runs:
- Height and front-back adjustments cannot be made at the same time. Seatback and seat cushion angle adjustments cannot be made at the same time. Seatback angle or front seat cushion adjustments can be made at the same time with height or front-back adjustments. When the memory position is recalled, after the height shaft and seatback shaft complete the recall action, the front-back shaft and cushion angle shaft actions are performed after 500ms. And you need to avoid simultaneous startup and simultaneous blocking.
- (5) Repeat recall:
- In the process of memory recall, a new memory recall command is received again, stop for 500 ms, and a new recall action is executed again. If there are several new recall commands within 500ms pause time, the last recall command is regarded as the execution command after suspension.
- (6) Recall action termination conditions:
- When the single shaft reaches the memory information position, the single shaft action terminates (- applicable to all shafts).
 - Any manual adjustment switch input of 4-shaft, stop recall action of all shafts.
 - Single shaft detects the short circuit and overcurrent of the relevant drive motor, and stops recall action of all shafts.
 - Single shaft reaches maximum output time and stops recall action of all shafts.
 - Low voltage or overvoltage (9-16 V is the normal operating voltage), stop recall action of all shafts.
 - Memory recall again, stop last recall action and perform this memory recall.
 - Pause recall action of all shafts while starting. If the start status is not satisfied, recall action continues to be executed until the recall action meets the termination conditions.

15 Power On Automatic Position Recall:

When the power gear switches from non-OFF to OFF, SCM stores the current each shaft position of seat (6 or 8 shafts according to configuration); In the future, each time the power gear switches from non-OFF to OFF, it covers the position of last memory. This group of position exists independently, which is different from 15 groups of storage positions. When the power gear is switched from OFF to ACC or IGN ON and the seat memory enabling signal is automatically recalled to storage position of seat when power off.

Condition 1 of automatic memory when power on:

- (1) After switching the IGN status from OFF to ACC or ON, the delay time is 300 ms to determine that the vehicle is in normal mode.

Condition 2 of automatic memory when power on:

- (1) After switching the IGN status from OFF to ACC or ON, the delay time is 300 ms to determine that the vehicle is switched from remote mode to normal mode.
- (2) IGN status is kept in ON.
- (3) The engine is kept running and gear position is in P.

16 Position Recall Status Feedback (Rear View Mirror Storage Status Signal is Determined according to Configuration):

- The seat always sends a signal to CAN during the position call or when it receives a rear view mirror signal.
- When engine starts during position recall of seat, pause the recall action. Still sent during pause (continue).
- The seat reaches the recall position and receives the rear view mirror signal, three frames of success signals are sent to CAN.
- The seat does not reach the recall position or receive the rear view mirror signal, three frames of failed signals are sent to CAN.
- When the transmission of 3 frames is completed or there is no recall action, the feedback signal is sent to CAN all the time.

17 Seat Position Recall Function Interrupted:

If any of the following conditions is met, the seat will be interrupted during the position recall, and function of position recall will not be resumed even if the conditions are not met.

- (1) Manual adjustment has high priority, manual adjustment can interrupt automatic adjustment, automatic adjustment can not be recalled in manual adjustment.
- (2) In the process of memory recall, a new memory recall command is received again, and a new recall action is executed again. If there are several new recall commands, the last recall command is regarded as the execution command after suspension. But it is still in the process of a position recall, always sends a signal (cancel signal) to CAN.
- (3) Gear shifts from P when engine is running.
- (4) CAN signal is received when pressing rear view mirror adjustment switch.
- (5) CAN signal is received when rear view mirror position recall is abnormal.

18 Seat Position Instant Memory Request Management

If the user adjusts the seat using switch, the seat does not move and the rear view mirror does not move for the next 5 seconds, SCU will send a 3-frame seat request to IHU.

19 Seat Comfortable Entry And Exit:

The driver seat comfortable entry and exit function allows the driver to get in and out of the vehicle more conveniently through the seat automatic retreat function. The comfortable entry and exit function only needs to be adjusted in the front and back direction of seat, which can be activated or turned off in the IHU interface.

- (1) Driver seat comfortable entry and exit conditions
 - Normal operating voltage is 9 to 16 V.
 - Initialization is completed.
 - Last time for comfortable entry and exit is 0x1: ON or current is 0x1: ON, comfortable entry and exit of SCU system status is 0x1: ON.
 - No manual adjustment action and memory recall action.
- (2) Seat comfortable entry and exit function logic
 - Power supply is in OFF condition, when driver door is opened, SCU drives the seat to move toward the rear shaft to a predefined easy entry position.
 - Power supply is in non-OFF condition, when driver door is opened, power gear changes from non-OFF to OFF, SCU drives the seat to move toward the rear shaft to a predefined convenient entry position.
- (3) Easy Entry termination conditions
 - Reach the target position.
 - Any manual adjustment switch input.
 - Reach blocking or soft stop position.
 - Short circuit, overcurrent of relating drive motor is detected.
 - Reach the maximum output time of 30 seconds.
 - Low voltage or overvoltage.

20 Seat Position Action Status Output

The seat module will store the ID in E2 after receiving the ID signal of IHU setting personal data. The previously stored ID will always be fed back to IHU before receiving the ID signal.

21 Seat Position Action Status Output

- (1) If the seat motor does not operate, SCU sends a CAN signal to the bus.
- (2) If seat motor causes action by pressing the switch, SCU sends CAN signal STAT_SeatMovement = "Moving by switch" (0x01) to bus.
- (3) If the seat motor causes action by position recall, SCU sends CAN signal STAT_SeatMovement = "Moving by recall" (0x02) to bus.

- (4) If the seat motor is interrupted during the position recall, SCU sends three frames of CAN signal STAT_SeatMovement = "Moving by recall interrupt" to bus.
- (5) If the seat motor causes action by Easy Entry, SCU sends CAN signal STAT_SeatMovement = "Moving by recall" (0x02) to bus.

22 Seat Heating

No.	Test Case Description	Step Description	Note
1	Activate driver and front passenger seat heating function by heating switch	Operating conditions: Power supply voltage is 9 to 16 V ; No seat action (can not operate with seat at the same time) ; Driver/front passenger seat heating switch is activated	Driver and front passenger seat heating function does not output
		Press driver and front passenger seat heating switch once	SCM feedbacks heating in 2nd gear
		Press driver and front passenger seat heating switch once again (- second time)	SCM feedbacks heating in 1st gear
		Press driver and front passenger seat heating switch once again (third time)	Heating off
		If the seat heating function has been turned on, seat heating function will continue to work when the ENGINE START STOP switch is turned off; If the seat heating function is not turned on, operate the heating switch when the ENGINE START STOP switch is turned off, and the seat heating function will not work	
		Adjust seat during driver/front passenger seat heating	Heating is off during seat movement . Heating signal will be sent without interruption during seat movement stops and heating recovery
2	Temperature detection	After the seat heating function is turned on, the seat heating is turned off when the target temperature is reached, and the seat heating is turned on when the temperature is lower than target temperature according to the	Seat heating output is off KEEP Can bus temperature feedback

		temperature feedback from temperature sensor	
		Currently set heating in 2nd gear	High gear is 42°C and low gear is 37°C (This value is still under calibration and may be adjusted in the future)
3	Remote heating function	Operating conditions: Power supply voltage is 9 to 16 V Seat does not move Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in high gear	Driver/front passenger seat heating turns on SCM feedback heating gear position is 2nd gear
		Power supply voltage is 9 to 16 V Seat does not move Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in low gear	Driver/front passenger seat heating turns on SCM feedback heating gear position is 1st gear
		Driver/front passenger seat heating turns on SCM feedback heating gear position is 1st gear Receiving CAN signal for turning off remote heating	Driver/front passenger seat heating turns off
		Driver/front passenger seat heating turns on SCM feedback heating gear position is 2nd gear Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in low gear	Driver/front passenger seat heating turns on SCM feedback heating gear position is 1st gear
		Driver/front passenger seat heating turns on SCM feedback heating gear position is 1st gear Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in high gear	Driver/front passenger seat heating turns on SCM feedback heating gear position is 2nd gear
4	Voice heating function	Operating conditions: Power supply voltage is 9 to 16 V Seat does not move	
		Receiving driver/front passenger seat heating CAN signal via IHU voice	SCM controls driver/front passenger seat heating to the corresponding gear position and feedback the current heating gear signal
5	Heating function interruption	During seat action	Heating interrupts
6	Termination of heating function	If any of the following conditions is satisfied, heating function is terminated.	

		<p>The voltage is not in the normal operating range (9-16 V).</p> <p>When the NTC temperature detects abnormal heating output overcurrent (heating wire is short).</p>	Heating stops
--	--	--	---------------

23 Realization of Seat Heating

(1) Seat heating conditions

- Normal operating voltage is 9 to 16 V.
- Engine is running.
- Start and stop function off: Engine starts;
- No seat action (can not operate with seat at the same time).

(2) Heating gear

- There are 2 gears, low gear (level 1) is 37°, high gear (level 2) is 42°.
- The temperature detects NTC temperature feedback, and the input is resistance value (see the NTC impedance feedback table for details). The high gear corresponds to 48 °C in the NTC resistance temperature table, and the low gear corresponds to 38 °C in the NTC resistance temperature table.
- CAN signal provides enabling signal, 2 heating gears, which needs to collect external NTC feedback, maintain the temperature, each temperature feedback from driver seat and front passenger seat, feedback output of seatback and cushion heating according the same seat NTC temperature is consistent.

(3) LEVEL 0 mode

- Driver seat heating:
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 2 is effective; Set to 2.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.
- Front passenger seat heating:
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 2 is effective; Set to 2.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.

(4) LEVEL 1 mode

- Driver seat heating:
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.
- Front passenger seat heating:
After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed once or the soft switch is pressed once, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.

After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.

After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.

After receiving CAN signal, the heating hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.

- (5) LEVEL 2 mode
Turn off the heating function.
- (6) LEVEL 3 mode
Turn off the heating function.

24 Heating Hard Switch And Soft Switch Signal Priority

Both hard switch and soft switch belong to local switch mode. If both hard switch and soft switch signals are received, SCU will only respond once. If the time of latter switch signal is less than 300 ms compared to the previous switch signal, the latter switch operation is ignored.

25 TBOX Remote Heating Function Logic

LEVEL 0 mode

- (1) Driver seat heating:
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in high gear, gear 2 output is valid; Set to 2.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in low gear, gear 1 output is valid; Set to 1.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating invalid signal, output is turned off; Set to 0.
- (2) Front passenger seat heating:
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in high gear, gear 2 output is valid; Set to 2.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in low gear, gear 1 output is valid; Set to 1.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating invalid signal, output is turned off; Set to 0.

26 LEVEL 1 mode

- (1) Driver seat heating:
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in high gear, gear 2 output is valid; Set to 1.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in low gear, gear 1 output is valid; Set to 1.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating invalid signal, output is turned off; Set to 0.
- (2) Front passenger seat heating:
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in high gear, gear 2 output is valid; Set to 2.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating in low gear, gear 1 output is valid; Set to 1.
Receiving CAN signal for remote heating invalid signal, output is turned off; Set to 0.
- (3) LEVEL 2 mode
Turn off the heating function.
- (4) LEVEL 3 mode
Turn off the heating function.

27 Heating Logic Processing When Starting And Stopping

- When StartStop is not 0, it is determined that the start and stop function is turned on, and then it is determined that engineState is not 03, as a condition to turn off the heating, when StartStop is not 0, it is determined that the start and stop function is turned on, at this time EngineState is not 03, as a condition to turn on the heating, when StartStop switch is stopped, Auto Stopping and Operation, heating is turned on.
- During heating, if ESS signal indicates that stopping automatically is received (StartStop=Auoto Stopping or Stopped), heating function needs to be maintained.
- When not heating, the heating function can be enabled normally when in auto stopping condition (StartStop=Auoto Stopping or Stopped).
- During heating, if ESS signal indicates that stopping automatically is received (StartStop=Auoto Stopping or Stopped), heating function needs to be maintained. When the engine start signal is received (EngineState=activation starter power stage), the actual heating output needs to be turned off, but the bus signal remains in the previous state. After starting, the previous heating output will be restored.
- During heating, it is in start and stop mode and becomes standby after receiving ESS signal. The heating function needs to be turned off.

28 Seat Heating Termination Conditions

- (1) One of driver seat heating and seat ventilation functions can only be turned on at a time, and the latter operation takes precedence; When driver seat heating function is working, the activation ventilation function is satisfied. Driver seat heating is off, and front passenger seat heating is not affected. Seat heating does not activate even if the ventilation function is turned off again.
- (2) One of front passenger seat heating and seat ventilation functions can only be turned on at a time, and the latter operation takes precedence; When front passenger heating function is working, the activation ventilation function is satisfied. Front passenger seat heating is off, and driver seat heating is not affected. Seat heating does not activate even if the ventilation function is turned off again.
- (3) Start and stop function turns off and engine is running.
- (4) Start and stop function turns on and ESS signal changes to standby.

29 Failure Mode and Malfunction Handling

- (1) Seat adjustment failed state output:
When a fault (abnormal voltage, abnormal current) is detected, the seat module sends the ID of corresponding fault mode to CAN network until the fault is eliminated and the transmission stops.

30 Seat Heating Interruption

- (1) When the voltage is not within the normal operating range (9-16 V) and the seat heating is interrupted, set the seat heating driver feedback and SeatheatpsSNGFeedbackSTS to 0. Heating function will resume when voltage returns to normal range.
- (2) When NTC temperature detection is abnormal (within normal temperature change, there is no normal temperature rise or no temperature change after output), the seat heating is interrupted and SeatHeatDriverFeedbackSts and SeatHeatPsngFeedbackSts are set to 0. Heating function will resume after NTC power returns to normal range.
- (3) When the seat moves, seat heating is interrupted. The heating function is resumed after the seat stops moving, and the signal is still maintained during interruption.
- (4) When start and stop function turns off (StartStopState = Auto Stopping or Stopped), seat heating is interrupted during startup, and heating function is resumed after startup. Signal is still maintained during interruption.
- (5) Current diagnostic value exceeds threshold, it is considered overcurrent, seat heating is interrupted. Set SeatHeatDriverFeedbackSts and SeatHeatPsngFeedbackSts to zero at the same time. Heating function will resume after current returns to normal range.
- (6) During the heating interruption, heating function can receive CAN signal to turn off, but it cannot receive CAN signal to turn on, and it can not receive CAN signal to change heating gear.

31 Seat Heating Priority

Seat local heating, seat remote heating, seat voice heating operation is preferred.

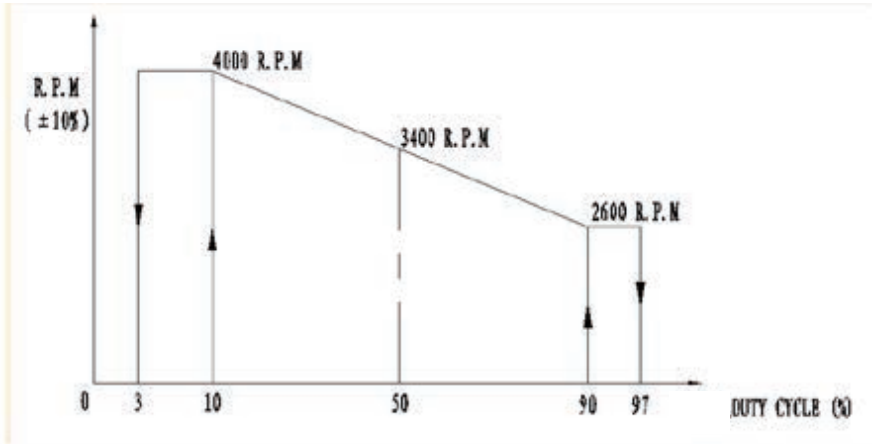
32 Seat Ventilation Function

■ Realization of seat ventilation

- (1) Seat ventilation conditions
 - Normal operating voltage is 9 to 16 V.
 - Engine is running.
 - Start and stop function turns off: Engine starts; start and stop function turns on: StartStop=stopped, Auto Stopping, Operation.
 - No seat action (can not operate with seat at the same time).
- (2) Ventilation strategy
 - There are 2 ventilation gears, low gear (level 1) is 2800 rpm, high gear (level 2) is 4000 rpm.
 - Low gear (level 1) 2800 rpm corresponds to 80% duty cycle, and high gear (level 2) 4000 rpm corresponds to 10% duty cycle.
 - Fan speed is related to PWM.

Voltage: 13.5 V

Frequency: 100 Hz



Relationship Between Fan Speed And Duty Cycle

Duty cycle	0-10%	10%	20%	30%	40%	50%	60%	70%	80%	90%	90%-100%
Speed (rpm)	0	4000 ±10%	3850 ±10%	3700 ±10%	3650 ±10%	3400 ±10%	3200 ±10%	3000 ±10%	2800 ±10%	2600 ±10%	0

Q20011

33 Local Ventilation Function Logic

■ LEVEL 0 mode:

- Driver seat ventilation:
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed once or the soft switch is pressed once, and the output of gear 2 is effective; Set to 2.
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.
- Front passenger seat ventilation:
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed once or the soft switch is pressed once, and the output of gear 2 is effective; Set to 2.
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.

■ LEVEL 1 mode:

- Driver seat ventilation:
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed once or the soft switch is pressed once, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
 - After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.

After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.

After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.

- Front passenger seat ventilation:
After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed once or the soft switch is pressed once, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output of gear 1 is effective; Set to 1.
After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed again or the soft switch is pressed again, and the output is turned off; Set to 0.
After receiving CAN signal, the ventilation hard switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds or soft switch is pressed exceeding 2 seconds. Directly turn off the output regardless of the current state; Set to 0.
- LEVEL 2 mode
Turn off the ventilation function.
- LEVEL 3 mode
Turn off the ventilation function.

34 Ventilation Hard Switch And Soft Switch Signal Priority

Both hard switch and soft switch belong to local switch mode. If both hard switch and soft switch signals are received, SCM will only respond once. If the time of latter switch signal is less than 300 ms compared to the previous switch signal, the latter switch operation is ignored.

35 Seat Ventilation Termination Conditions

- (1) One of driver seat ventilation and driver seat heating functions can only be turned on at a time, and the latter operation takes precedence; When driver seat ventilation function is working, the activation heating function is satisfied. Driver seat ventilation is off, and front passenger seat ventilation is not affected. Seat ventilation does not activate even if the heating function is turned off again.
- (2) One of front passenger seat ventilation and front passenger seat heating functions can only be turned on at a time, and the latter operation takes precedence; When front passenger seat ventilation function is working, the activation heating function is satisfied. Front passenger seat ventilation is off, and driver seat ventilation is not affected. Seat ventilation does not activate even if the heating function is turned off again.
- (3) Start and stop function turns on ($\text{StartStop} \neq 0$) and ESS signal changes to standby.
- (4) Start and stop function turns off ($\text{StartStop}=0$) and EngineState ! = "engine running" .

36 Seat Ventilation Interruption

- (1) When the voltage is not within the normal operating range (9-16 V) and the seat ventilation function is interrupted, set STAT_SeatVentPassenger and STAT_SeatVentDriver to 0. Ventilation function will resume when voltage returns to normal range.
- (2) When the seat moves, seat ventilation function is interrupted. The ventilation function is resumed after the seat stops moving, and the signal is still maintained during interruption. 3) When start and stop function turns off, seat heating function is interrupted when starting engine, and heating function is resumed after Cranking, and the signal is still maintained during interruption.

37 Seat Ventilation Priority

Seat local ventilation, seat remote ventilation, seat voice ventilation operation is preferred.

■ Impedance feedback form

T/ °C	Rmin/KΩ	Rcen/KΩ	Rmax/KΩ
25	9.900	10.000	10.100
26	9.535	9.634	9.734
27	9.184	9.284	9.384
28	8.849	8.948	9.048
29	8.527	8.626	8.725

T/ °C	Rmin/KΩ	Rcen/KΩ	Rmax/KΩ
30	8.219	8.318	8.416
31	7.924	8.021	8.119
32	7.640	7.737	7.835
33	7.368	7.465	7.561
34	7.108	7.203	7.299
35	6.857	6.952	7.047
36	6.617	6.711	6.805
37	6.387	6.479	6.572
38	6.165	6.257	6.349
39	5.953	6.043	6.134
40	5.748	5.838	5.928
41	5.552	5.640	5.730
42	5.364	5.451	5.539
43	5.182	5.268	5.355
44	5.008	5.093	5.179
45	4.841	4.924	5.009
46	4.680	4.762	4.846
47	4.525	4.606	4.688
48	4.376	4.456	4.537
49	4.232	4.311	4.391
50	4.094	4.172	4.251
51	3.961	4.037	4.115
52	3.832	3.907	3.984
53	3.708	3.783	3.858
54	3.598	3.662	3.736
55	3.475	3.546	3.619
56	3.364	3.435	3.506

38 Seat Adjustment Data

38.1 Front seat

The whole stroke for forward and backward adjustment is 240 mm. The seat is adjustable from 180 mm forward and 60 mm backward; The designed seatback angle is 72° and it is adjustable within 22° forward and 50° backward; (Only for driver seat); The whole stroke for height adjustment is 55 mm. The seat is adjustable from 25 mm upward and 30 mm downward.

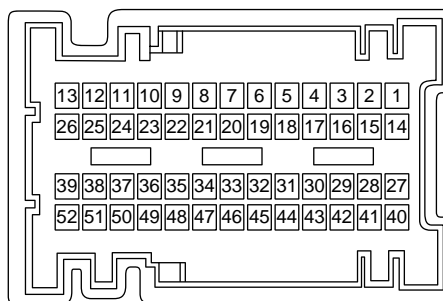
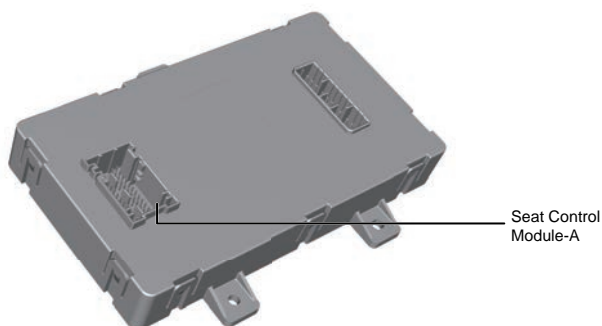
38.2 Rear seat

The designed seatback angle is 10° and it is adjustable within 6° forward and 4° backward.

54.3 System Circuit Diagram

1 Module Terminal Definition

Seat control module-A



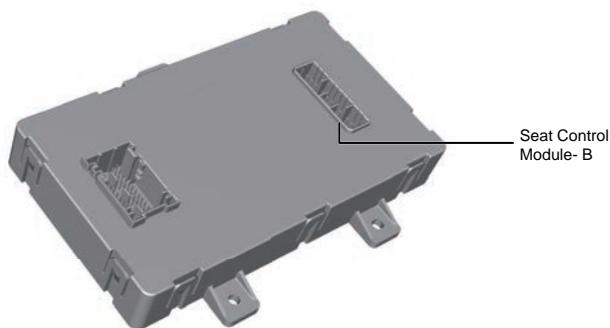
Q20022

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
A1	Body ground	15 power detection	Power supply "ON"	13 V
A2	Body ground	Front left seat height adjustment switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V when not adjusted; 2.8 V for upward adjustment and 6.9 V for downward adjustment
A3	Body ground	Front left seat front-back adjustment switch	Power supply "ON"	11 V when not adjusted; 6.9 V for forward adjustment and 2.9 V for backward adjustment
A4	Body ground	Front left seatback adjustment switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V when not adjusted; 2.7 V for forward adjustment and 6.9 V for backward adjustment
A5	Body ground	Front left seat cushion adjustment switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V when not adjusted; 2.7 V for downward adjustment and 6.9 V for upward adjustment
A6	/	/	/	/
A7	/	/	/	/
A8	/	/	/	/
A9	/	/	/	/
A10	/	/	/	/

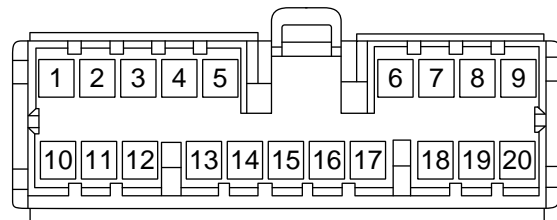
Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
A11	/	/	/	/
A12	/	/	/	/
A13	/	/	/	/
A14	/	/	/	/
A15	/	/	/	/
A16	Body ground	Front right seat NTC feedback	Power supply "ON"	6 V
A17	Body ground	Front left seat NTC feedback	Power supply "ON"	6 V
A18	/	/	/	/
A19	Body ground	Switch ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A20	/	/	/	/
A21	/	/	/	/
A22	/	/	/	/
A23	/	/	/	/
A24	/	/	/	/
A25	/	/	/	/
A26	/	/	/	/
A27	/	/	/	/
A28	/	/	/	/
A29	/	/	/	/
A30	/	/	/	/
A31	/	/	/	/
A32	/	/	/	/
A33	Body ground	Seat height HALL signal	Power supply "ON"	Changes between 4.1 V (lowest) and 7.1 V (highest)
A34	Body ground	Seat horizontal HALL signal	Power supply "ON"	Changes between 4.1 V (foremost) and 6.9 V (rearmost)
A35	Body ground	Seatback HALL signal	Power supply "ON"	Changes between 4.6 V (foremost) and 6.9 V (rearmost)
A36	Body ground	Seat cushion HALL signal	Power supply "ON"	6.9 V
A37	/	/	/	/
A38	/	/	/	/

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
A39	/	/	/	/
A40	Body ground	Front left seatback ventilation	Power supply "ON"	-
A41	Body ground	Front right seatback ventilation	Power supply "ON"	-
A42	Body ground	Front left seat cushion ventilation	Power supply "ON"	12 V when unventilated
A43	Body ground	Front right seat cushion ventilation	Power supply "ON"	12 V when unventilated
A44	Body ground	Seat HALL signal ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A45	Body ground	Front left seat NTC ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A46	Body ground	Front right seat NTC ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A47	Body ground	CANH	Power supply "ON"	2.68 V
A48	Body ground	CANL	Power supply "ON"	2.36 V
A49	/	/	/	/
A50	/	/	/	/
A51	/	/	/	/
A52	/	/	/	/

Seat control module- B



Seat Control Module- B

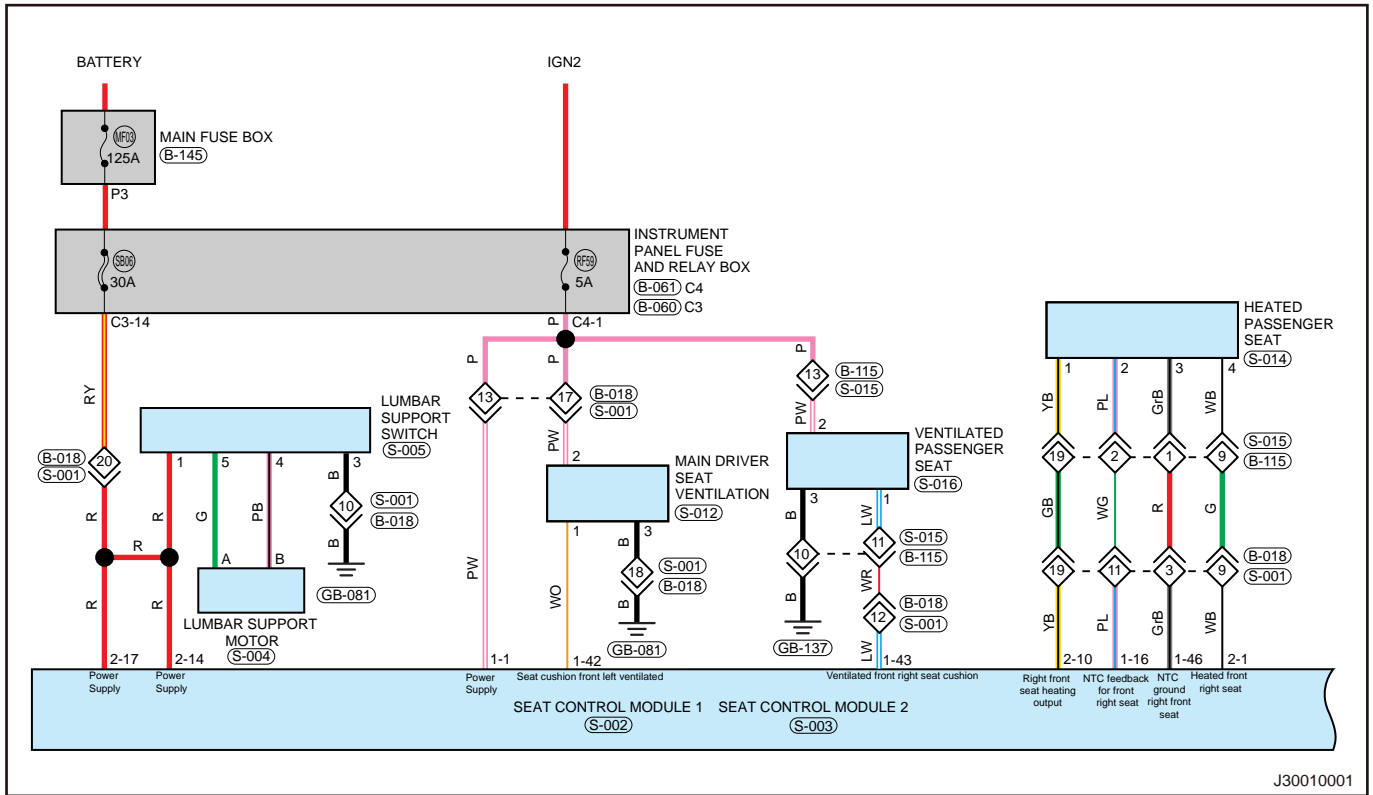


Q20023

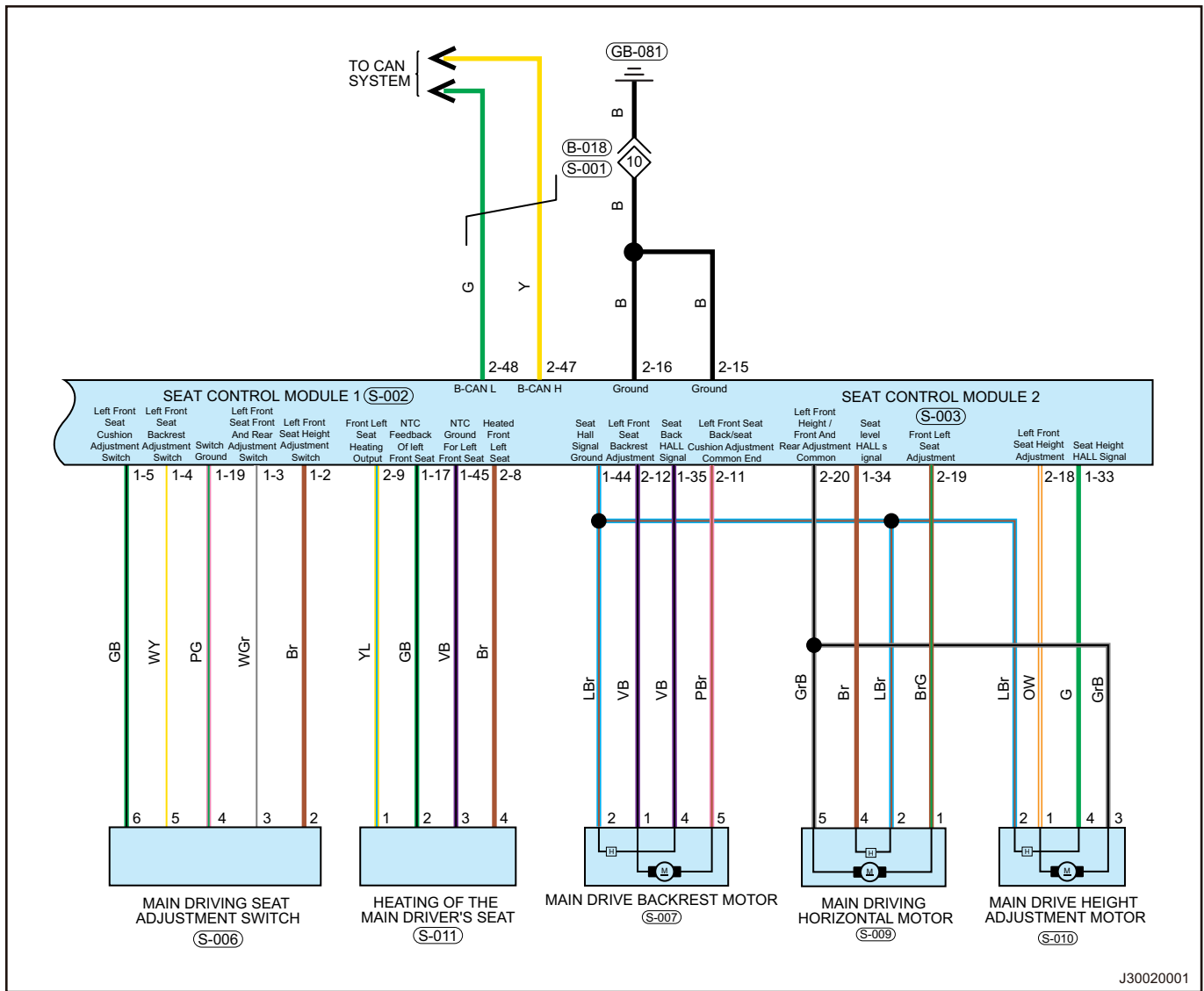
Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
B1	Body ground	Front right seat heating ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
B2	/	/	/	/

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Positive (+) of Multimeter	Negative (-) of Multimeter			
B3	/	/	/	/
B4	/	/	/	/
B5	/	/	/	/
B6	/	/	/	/
B7	/	/	/	/
B8	Body ground	Front left seat heating ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
B9	Body ground	Front left seat heating output	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not heated
B10	Body ground	Front right seat heating output	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not heated
B11	Body ground	Front left seatback/cushion adjustment common terminal	Power supply "ON"	12 V
B12	Body ground	Front left seatback adjustment	Power supply "ON"	12 V when not adjusted; 0 V when adjusted forward
B13	Body ground	Front left seat cushion adjustment	Power supply "ON"	12 V when not adjusted; 0 V when adjusted downward
B14	Body ground	VBAT	Power supply "ON"	12 V
B15	Body ground	GND	Power supply "ON"	0 V
B16	Body ground	GND	Power supply "ON"	0 V
B17	Body ground	VBAT	Power supply "ON"	12 V
B18	Body ground	Front left seat height adjustment	Power supply "ON"	12 V when not adjusted; 0 V when adjusted downward
B19	Body ground	Front left seat front-back adjustment	Power supply "ON"	12 V when not adjusted; 0 V when adjusted forward
B20	Body ground	Front left height/front-back adjustment common terminal	Power supply "ON"	12 V

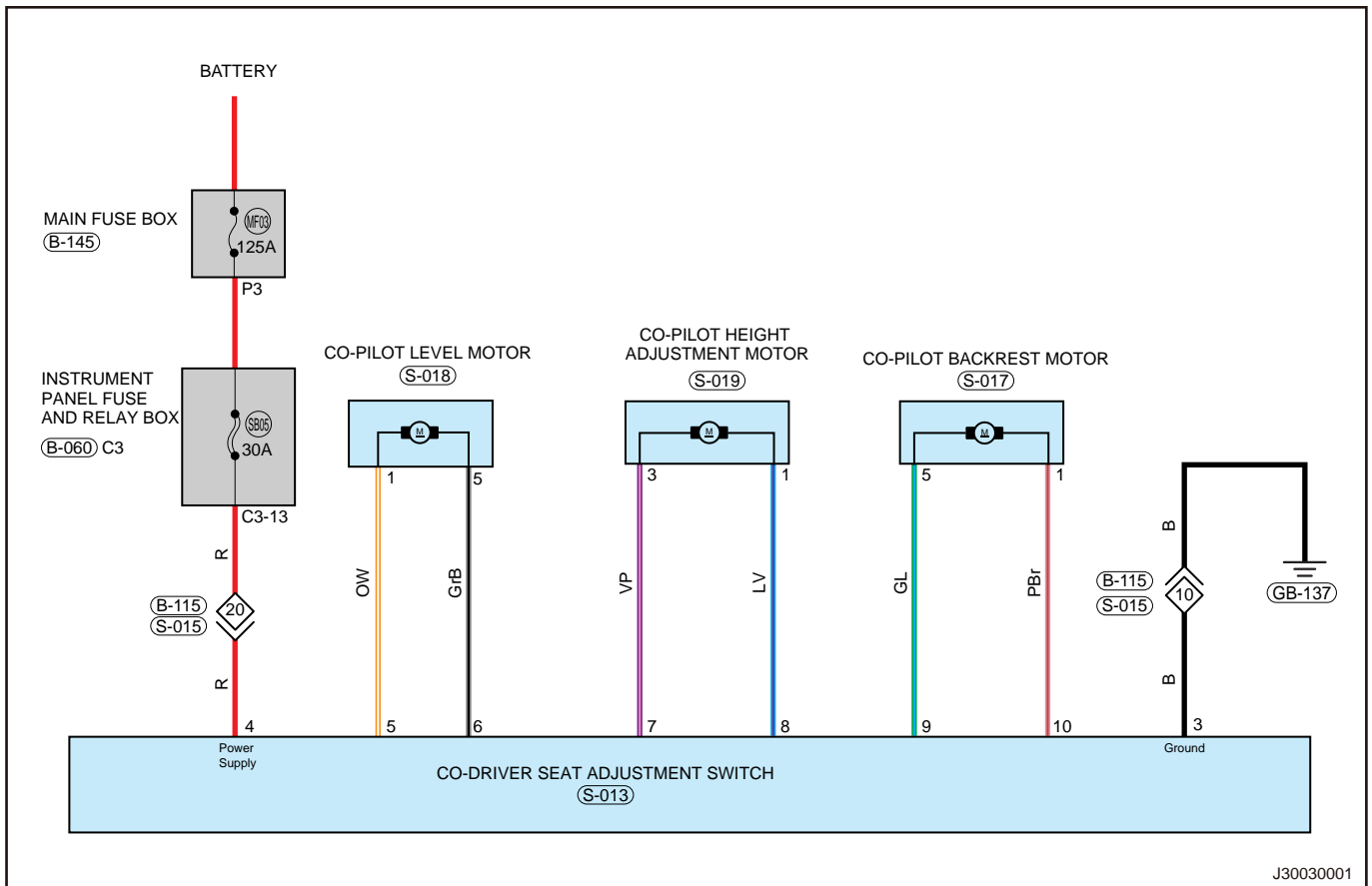
2 Circuit Diagram



J30010001



J30020001



J30030001

54.4 Diagnostic Information and Steps

1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

- Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Symptom	Suspected Area
Seat positions cannot be memorized and portable functions are disabled	Manual learning seat position
	Seat module assembly
	Wire harness connector
Seat position cannot be adjusted	Fuse
	Wire harness or connector
	Switch
	Actuator motor

2 Diagnostic Help

- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface, and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If DTC cannot be deleted, malfunction is current.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

■ **Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.**

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

■ **If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:**

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was reset.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.

- Inspect the mounting areas of instrument cluster, wire harness or wire harness connector and so on for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- Remove instrument cluster from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test. If this DTC cannot be cleared, instrument cluster is malfunctioning. If DTC can be cleared, reinstall instrument cluster to original vehicle.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

5 Ground Inspection

Groundings are very important to entire circuit system, which are normal or not can seriously affect the entire circuit system. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) and oxidation may increase load resistance. This case will seriously affect normal operation of circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

6 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

Standard Condition

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG

Replace the battery.

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Result

Result	Go to
No DTC	A
DTC is output	B

A

Perform troubleshooting procedure without DTCs according to malfunction symptom

B

4

Troubleshoot according to DTCs troubleshooting procedure

Result

Result	Go to
Problem is not resolved	A
Problem is resolved	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

5

According to seat system malfunction repair completion inspection and delivery, confirm if malfunction is resolved.

Result

Result	Go to
Delivery inspection is failed	A
Delivery inspection is qualified	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

6

Finished

7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart**■ Description**

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B1B70 - 16	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Below Threshold	The voltage is less than 8.5V for 5s, which is stored as current fault.	Power supply is not stable, and some loads may decrease suddenly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check battery voltage; • Check alternator power supply system; • Check wire harness connector.
B1B70-17	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Above Threshold	The voltage is less than 16.5V for 5s, which is stored as current fault.	Power supply is not stable, and load fails suddenly.	

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B1B71 - 18	Abnormal Driver Seat Heating Current - Low Current of Driver Seat Heating Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is lower than 1A for 250 ms, stores as current fault.	Load is open or abnormal.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector; • Check heating load.
B1B71 - 19	Abnormal Driver Seat Heating Current - High Current of Driver Seat Heating Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is higher than 9A for 250 ms, stores as current fault.	Load is short or abnormal.	
B1B72 - 18	Abnormal Front Passenger Seat Heating Current - Low Current of Front Passenger Seat Heating Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is lower than 1A for 250 ms, stores as current fault.	Load is open or abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector for open; • Check if heating load is normal.
B1B72-19	Abnormal Front Passenger Seat Heating Current - High Current of Front Passenger Seat Heating Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is higher than 9A for 250 ms, stores as current fault.	Load is short or abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector for short; • Check if heating load is normal.
B1B73 - 18	Abnormal Seat Height and Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit - Low Current of Height Adjustment Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is lower than 0.3A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.	Motor is open or abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector for open; • Check if motor load is normal.
B1B73-19	Abnormal Seat Height and Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit - High Current of Height Adjustment Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is higher than 16A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.	Motor is blocked or short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check whether there is a foreign body stuck in the seat, which causes the motor to stall; • Check wire harness connector for short.
B1B74 - 18	Abnormal Seat Height and Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit - Low Current of Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is lower than 0.3A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.	Motor is open or abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check wire harness connector for open; • Check if motor load is normal.
B1B74-19	Abnormal Seat Height and Horizontal	When output is activated, detected current is higher	Motor is blocked or short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check whether there is a foreign body stuck in the

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Adjustment Control Circuit - High Current of Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit	than 16A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.		<p>seat, which causes the motor to stall;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness connector for short.
B1B75 - 49	Abnormal Seat Height and Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit - Seat Height and Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit Internal Failure	When output is invalid, it detects that circuit output current is higher than 2A for 5000 ms, stores as current fault.	Actuator stuck or feedback circuit fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness connector for fault; Check module (- internal relay fault).
B1B76 - 18	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - Low Current of Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is lower than 0.3A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.	Motor is open or abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness connector for open; Check if motor load is normal.
B1B76-19	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - High Current of Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is higher than 16A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.	Motor is blocked or short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check whether there is a foreign body stuck in the seat, which causes the motor to stall; Check wire harness connector for short.
B1B77 - 18	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - Low Current of Cushion Adjustment Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is lower than 0.3A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.	Motor is open or abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness connector for open; Check if motor load is normal.
B1B77-19	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - High Current of Cushion Adjustment Control Circuit	When output is activated, detected current is higher than 16A for 1000 ms, stores as current fault.	Motor is blocked or short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check whether there is a foreign body stuck in the seat, which causes the motor to stall; Check wire harness connector for short.
B1B7A - 49	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - Seatback and Cushion	When output is invalid, it detects that circuit output current is higher than 2A for 5000 ms,	Actuator stuck or feedback circuit fault	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check wire harness connector fault;

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
	Adjustment Control Circuit Inside Fault	stores as current fault.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check module (- internal relay fault).
B1B80 - 1A	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Driver Seat Heating NTC Input Feedback Value too Small	When output is activated for 25 minutes, it detects that NTC input resistance is lower than 500 Ω for 250 ms, stores as current fault.	Resistance is short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if resistance of seat heating NTC is normal.
B1B80 - 1B	Abnormal Driver Heating NTC Input Value - Driver Heating NTC Input Value too Large	/	Resistance is abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if resistance of seat heating NTC is normal; Check if wire harness connector is normal.
B1B80 - 1E	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Driver Seat Heating NTC Input Feedback Value no Change	When output is activated for 25 minutes, it detects that NTC input resistance is lower than 100 Ω for 1 minute, stores as current fault.	Resistance is abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if resistance of seat heating NTC is normal.
B1B81 - 1A	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Front Passenger Seat Heating NTC Input Feedback Value too Small	When output is activated for 25 minutes, it detects that NTC input resistance is lower than 500 Ω for 250 ms, stores as current fault.	Resistance is short	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if resistance of seat heating NTC is normal.
B1B81 - 1B	Abnormal Passenger Heating NTC Input Value - Passenger Seat Heating NTC Input Value too Large	/	Resistance is abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if resistance of seat heating NTC is normal; Check if wire harness connector is normal.
B1B81 - 1E	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Front Passenger Seat Heating NTC Input Feedback Value no Change	When output is activated for 25 minutes, it detects that NTC input resistance is lower than 100 Ω for 1 minute, stores as current fault.	Resistance is abnormal	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if resistance of seat heating NTC is normal.

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B1B82 - 29	Abnormal HALL Input Signal - Height Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing	When the output is activated, the number of Hall received within 2 seconds is less than 90% of the normal value, stores as current fault.	Motor is abnormal or HALL unit is damaged.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if height adjustment motor is normal. Check if height adjustment Hall sensor is normal.
B1B83 - 29	Abnormal HALL Input Signal - Front-back Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing	When the output is activated, the number of Hall received within 2 seconds is less than 90% of the normal value, stores as current fault.	Motor is abnormal or HALL unit is damaged.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if front-back adjustment motor is normal. Check if front-back adjustment Hall sensor is abnormal.
B1B84 - 29	Abnormal HALL Input Signal - Seatback Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing	When the output is activated, the number of Hall received within 2 seconds is less than 90% of the normal value, stores as current fault.	Motor is abnormal or HALL unit is damaged.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if seatback adjustment motor is normal. Check if seatback adjustment Hall sensor is normal.
B1B85 - 29	Abnormal HALL Input Signal - Cushion Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing	When the output is activated, the number of Hall received within 2 seconds is less than 90% of the normal value, stores as current fault.	Motor is abnormal or HALL unit is damaged.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check if cushion adjustment motor is normal. Check if cushion adjustment Hall sensor is normal.
B1B85-54	No Learning by Seat	When learning matching of module and seat in any shaft of height shaft, horizontal shaft, seatback shaft is not performed or learning is not successful, stores as current fault.	Learning is not performed	Perform seat self-learning.
U134F-88	CAN Bus Off	Short circuit and grounding occur in vehicle CAN, this DTC will be generated when disconnecting, and this DTC is cleared after resuming.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Control module is damaged; Wire harness is broken. 	Refer to CAN Network System for troubleshooting

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
U1160 - 87	Lost Communication With AIPM	If the AIPM message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the AIPM message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		
U0140-87	Lost Communication With BCM	If the BCM message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the BCM message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		
U0199-87	Lost Communication With DCM	If the DCM message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the DCM message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		
U0100-87	Lost Communication With EMS	If the EMS message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the EMS message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		
U0122-87	Lost Communication With ESC	If the ESC message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the ESC message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		
U0245-87	Lost Communication With IHU	If the IHU message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the IHU message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
U0248-87	Lost Communication with PEPS	If the PEPS message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the PEPS message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		
U0101-87	Lost Communication With TCU	If the TCU message is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will be generated. If the TCU message is received for 3 consecutive times, the DTC will be cleared.		
U1471-81	Invalid Data from AIPM	This DTC will be generated when the data received by AIPM is incorrect. This DTC will be cleared after the data is normal.		
U0422-81	Invalid Data from BCM	This DTC will be generated when the data received by BCM is incorrect. This DTC will be cleared after the data is normal.		
U049A-81	Invalid Data from DCM	This DTC will be generated when the data received by DCM is incorrect. This DTC will be cleared after the data is normal.		
U0401-81	Invalid Data from EMS	This DTC will be generated when the data received by EMS is incorrect. This DTC will be cleared after the data is normal.		

8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B70 - 16	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Below Threshold
B1B70-17	Power Supply Circuit Voltage Above Threshold

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1 Check fuse

- (a) Check if fuses MF03, SB06 and RF59 are blown out.

NG

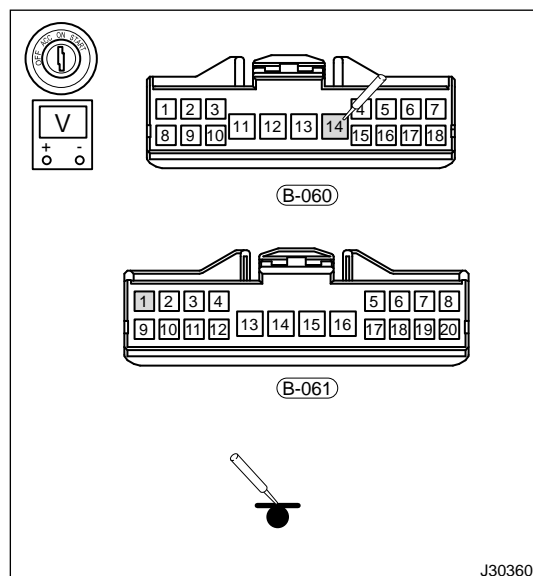
Replace fuse

OK

2 Check instrument panel fuse and relay box output voltage

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Disconnect instrument panel fuse and relay box connectors B-061 and B-060.
- (c) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage between connectors B-061 (1), B - 060 (14) and body ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Operating Voltage
B-061 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12V$
B-060 (14) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12V$



NG

Replace instrument panel fuse and relay box assembly

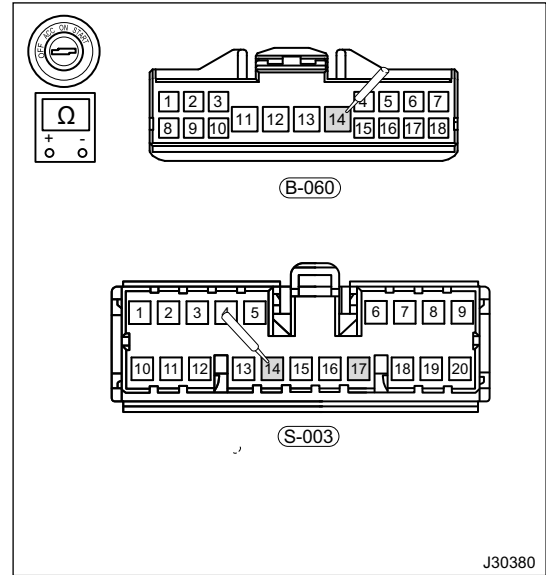
OK

3 Check wire harness for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (c) Disconnect seat control module connectors S-002, S-003, instrument panel fuse and relay box connectors B-061 and B-060.

(d) Using digital multimeter, measure resistance among S-002 (1) - B-061 (1), S-003 (14) - B-060 (14) and S-003 (17) - B-060 (14) to check if the resistance is normal, so as to check wire harness for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
S-002 (1) - B-061 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
S-003 (14) - B-060 (14)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
S-003 (17) - B-060 (14)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK	Replace seat control module assembly
NG	Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B71 - 18	Abnormal Driver Seat Heating Current - Low Current of Driver Heating Control Circuit
B1B72 - 18	Abnormal Front Passenger Seat Heating Current - Low Current of Front Passenger Heating Control Circuit
B1B73 - 18	Abnormal Seat Adjustment Height and Horizontal Control Circuit - Low Current of Height Adjustment Control Circuit
B1B74 - 18	Abnormal Seat Adjustment Height and Horizontal Control Circuit - Low Current of Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit
B1B76 - 18	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - Low Current of Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit
B1B77 - 18	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - Low Current of Cushion Adjustment Control Circuit

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

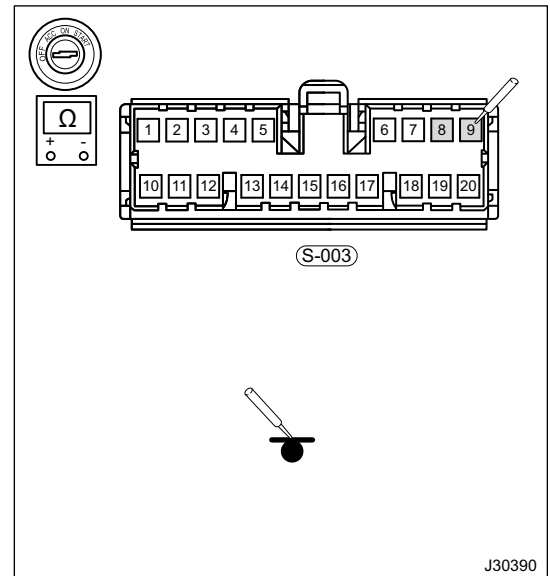
If the seat control module has similar faults, please refer to "Abnormal Driver Seat Heating Current - Low Current of Driver Seat Heating Control Circuit" for troubleshooting.

1	Driver seat heating control circuit low current
----------	--

- (a) Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, displacement and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- (b) Check the continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF", disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect the seat control module connector S-003.

(e) Using resistance band of multimeter, detect S-003 (8) - ground and S-003 (9) - ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
S-003 (8) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
S-003 (9) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



OK

Replace seat control module assembly

NG

Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B71 - 19	Abnormal Driver Seat Heating Current - High Current of Driver Heating Control Circuit
B1B72-19	Abnormal Front Passenger Seat Heating Current - High Current of Front Passenger Heating Control Circuit
B1B73-19	Abnormal Seat Adjustment Height and Horizontal Control Circuit - High Current of Height Adjustment Control Circuit
B1B74-19	Abnormal Seat Adjustment Height and Horizontal Control Circuit - High Current of Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit
B1B76-19	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - High Current of Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit
B1B77-19	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - High Current of Cushion Adjustment Control Circuit

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

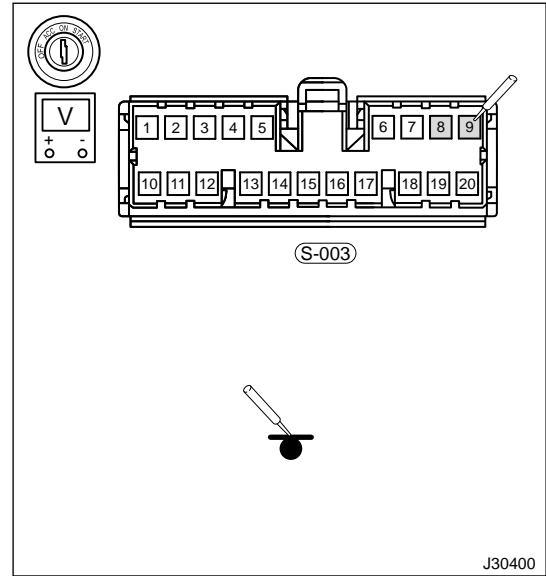
If the seat control module has similar faults, please refer to "Abnormal Driver Seat Heating Current - High Current of Driver Heating Control Circuit" for troubleshooting.

1

Driver seat heating control circuit high current

- (a) Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, displacement and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- (b) Check the continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “OFF” , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect the seat control module connector S-003.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and make all accessories operate.
- (f) Using voltage band of multimeter, detect S-003 (8) - ground and S-003 (9) - ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Operating Voltage
S-003 (8) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch “ON”	0 V
S-003 (9) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch “ON”	0 V



OK	Replace seat control module assembly
NG	Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B75 - 49	Abnormal Seat Adjustment Height and Horizontal Control Circuit - Seat Adjustment Height and Horizontal Control Circuit Inside Fault
B1B7A - 49	Abnormal Seatback Adjustment Control Circuit - Seatback and Cushion Adjustment Control Circuit Inside Fault

Hint:

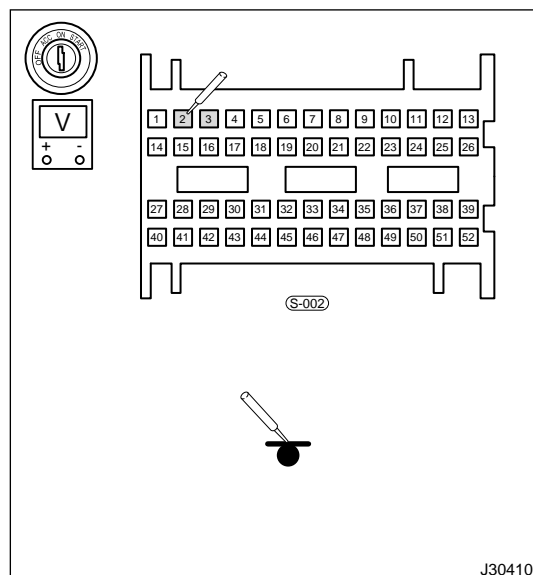
When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.
 If the seat control module has similar faults, please refer to "Abnormal Seat Height and Horizontal Adjustment Control Circuit - Seat Adjustment Height and Horizontal Control Circuit Internal Failure" for troubleshooting.

1	Driver seat heating control circuit high current
----------	---

- (a) Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, displacement and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- (b) Check the continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to “OFF” , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect the seat control module connector S-002.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and make all accessories operate.

- (f) Using voltage band of multimeter, detect S-002 (2) - ground and S-002 (3) - ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Operating Voltage
S-002 (2) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	12 V
S-002 (3) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	12 V



OK

Replace seat control module assembly

NG

Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B80 - 1A	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Driver Heating NTC Input Feedback Value too Small
B1B81 - 1A	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Front Passenger Heating NTC Input Feedback Value too Small
B1B80 - 1B	Abnormal Driver Heating NTC Input Value - Driver Heating NTC Input Value too Large
B1B81 - 1B	Abnormal Passenger Heating NTC Input Value - Passenger Heating NTC Input Value too Large
B1B80 - 1E	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Driver Heating NTC Input Feedback Value No Change
B1B81 - 1E	Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Front Passenger Heating NTC Input Feedback Value No Change

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

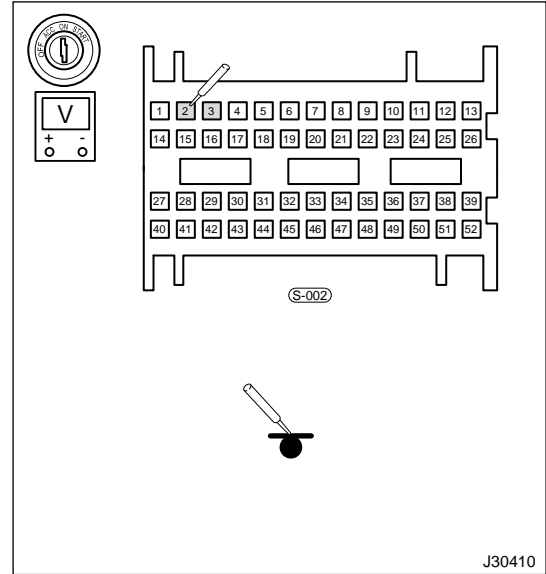
If the seat control module has similar faults, please refer to "Abnormal Heating NTC Input Feedback Value - Driver Heating NTC Input Feedback Value too Small" for troubleshooting.

1

Driver seat heating NTC input feedback value is too small

- (a) Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, displacement and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- (b) Check the continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect the seat control module connector S-002.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and make all accessories operate.
- (f) Using resistance band of multimeter, detect S-002 (17) - ground and S-002 (45) - ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
S-002 (17) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
S-002 (45) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



OK	Replace seat control module assembly
NG	Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B82 - 29	Abnormal HALL Signal Input Signal - Height Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing
B1B83 - 29	Abnormal HALL Signal Input Signal - Front-back Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing
B1B84 - 29	Abnormal HALL Signal Input Signal - Seatback Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing
B1B85 - 29	Abnormal HALL Signal Input Signal - Cushion Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing

Hint:

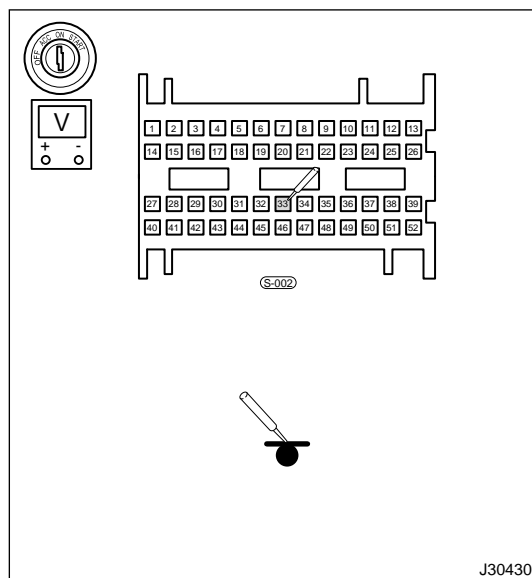
When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.
 If the seat control module has similar faults, please refer to "Abnormal HALL Input Signal - Height Adjustment HALL Input Signal Missing" for troubleshooting.

1	Height adjustment HALL input signal is missing
----------	---

- (a) Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, displacement and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- (b) Check the continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" , disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (d) Disconnect the seat control module connector S-002.
- (e) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and make all accessories operate.

(f) Using voltage band of multimeter, detect S-002 (33) - ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Operating Voltage
S-002 (33) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	6 V



OK

Replace seat control module assembly

NG

Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B1B85-54	No Learning by Seat
1	Seat self-learning

(a) Perform self-learning with diagnostic tester.

OK

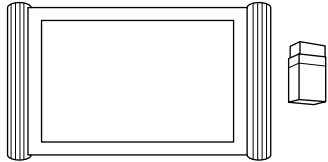
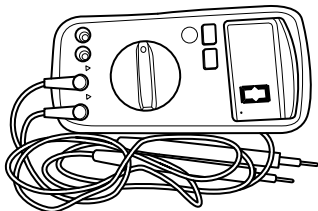
Perform running test after clearing DTCs

DTC	DTC Definition
U134F-88	CAN Bus Off
U1160 - 87	Lost Communication With AIPM
U0140-87	Lost Communication With BCM
U0199-87	Lost Communication With DCM
U0100-87	Lost Communication With EMS
U0122-87	Lost Communication With ESC
U0245-87	Lost Communication With IHU
U0248-87	Lost Communication with PEPS
U0101-87	Lost Communication With TCU
U1471-81	Invalid Data from AIPM
U0422-81	Invalid Data from BCM
U049A-81	Invalid Data from DCM
U0401-81	Invalid Data from EMS
U0416-81	Invalid Data from ESC

U0546-81	Invalid Data from IHU
U0426-81	Invalid Data from PEPS
U0402-81	Invalid Data from TCU
U1300-55	Software Configuration Error
1	Refer to "CAN COMMUNICATION" for troubleshooting

54.5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Diagnostic Tester	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00001</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>

2 Replace Front Seat Assembly

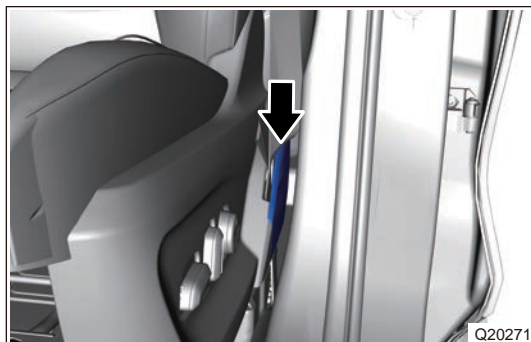
2.1 Removal

Caution

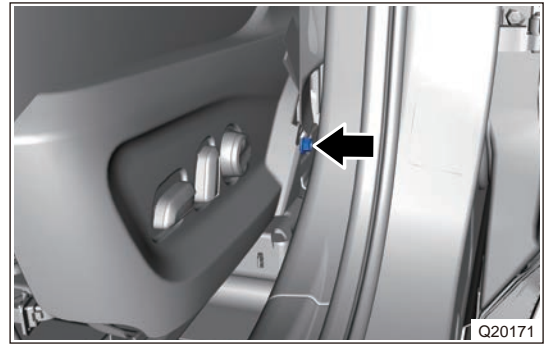
- **When removing driver seat assembly, be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents.**
- **When removing driver seat assembly, appropriate force should be applied. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **DO NOT scratch interior and body paint when removing driver seat assembly.**

Hint:

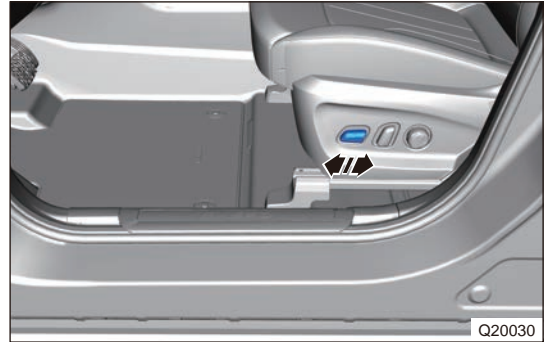
- Removal method of front right seat and front left side is same. Take the left side as an example.
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
 - (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
 - (3) Using an interior crow plate, pry off side panel trim cover carefully.



- (4) Remove 1 fixing bolt from seat belt lower end plate (14# socket wrench).



- (5) Press power seat front-back adjustment switch, and move seat assembly to rearmost position.



- (6) When the seatback is adjusted to a higher angle backward, press the release button of seat headrest guide at the same time, and remove driver seat headrest assembly.



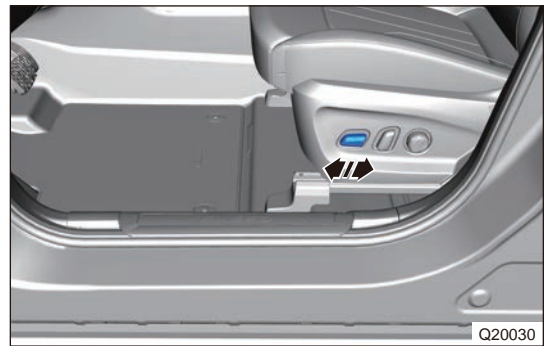
- (7) Remove 2 inner leg cover assemblies from front part of seat assembly.



- (8) Remove 2 fixing bolts from front part of seat assembly.



- (9) Press power seat front-back adjustment switch, and move seat assembly to foremost position.



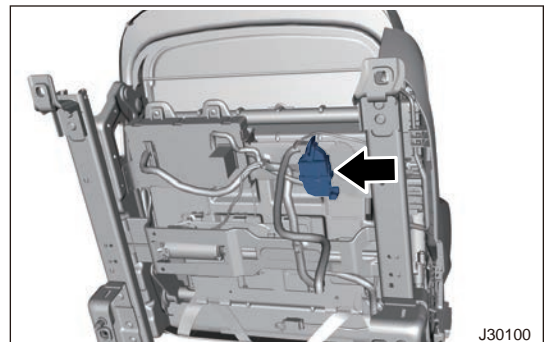
- (10) Remove 2 inner leg cover assemblies from rear part of seat assembly with a flat tip screwdriver.



- (11) Remove 3 fixing bolts from rear part of seat assembly.



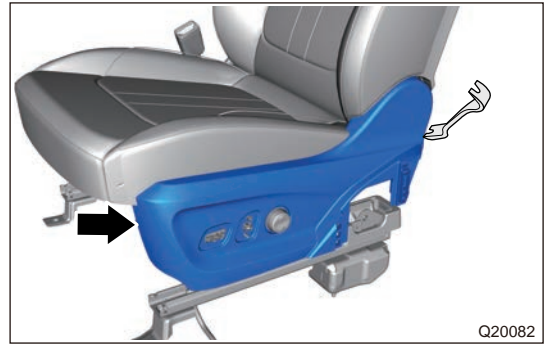
- (12) Disconnect the wire harness connector associated with driver seat assembly, and remove the driver seat assembly.



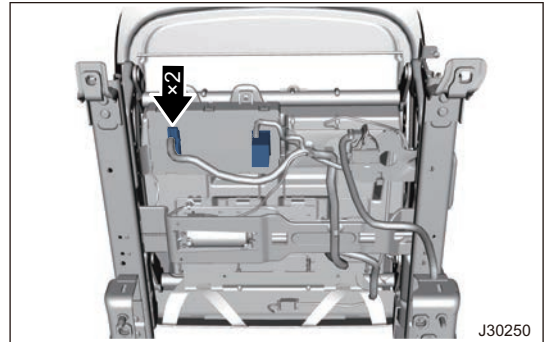
- (13) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, remove seat height front-back adjustment button, seatback adjustment button.



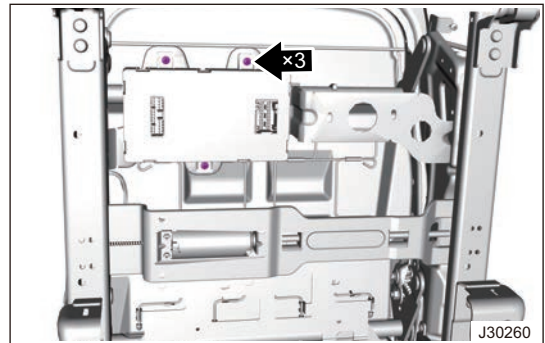
(14) Using an interior crow plate, pry off front left seat outside side panel.



(15) Disconnect the driver seat control module wire harness.



(16) Remove 3 fixing bolts from driver seat control module.



2.2 Inspection

(1) Installation of driver seat and front passenger seat should be firm and reliable. Driver seat belt and front passenger seat belt should be complete and effective.

(2) Check the old and new degree of the seat, the seat surface should be flat, clean and free from damage. After installation of seat assembly is completed, check the basic functions of seat assembly, and confirm that the following functions operate normally:

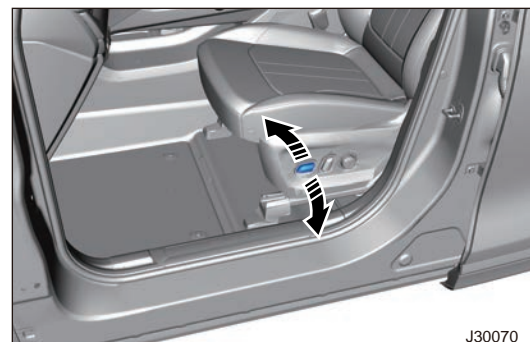
(1) When sliding seat to the foremost and rearmost positions by pressing the power seat adjustment switch, check if the following malfunctions of seat occur: heavy operation, high sliding resistance, stuck and motor noise. If above conditions occur, repair or replace in time.



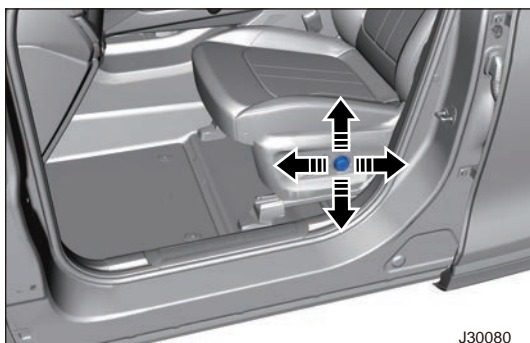
- (2) Adjust the seat reclining to the maximum and minimum angles by pressing the power seat reclining adjustment switch, to check if seatback is heavily turned over and stuck, motor noise, etc. If above conditions occur, repair or replace in time.



- (3) Adjust seat to the highest position and the lowest position by pressing power seat height adjustment switch (for driver side), to check if the operation of seat is heavy and stuck, and motor noise, etc. If above conditions occur, repair or replace in time.



- (4) Press 4-way lumbar support adjustment switch (for driver side) to adjust seat to the limit positions of up, down, left and right to check if lumbar support stretches or retracts difficultly, air pocket is leaked and there is abnormal sound in air pump, etc. If above conditions occur, repair or replace in time.



- (5) Turn power switch to ON, seat belt reminder warning light on instrument cluster should be illuminated, after inserting the front seat belt tab into front seat belt buckle, seat belt reminder warning light should go off (only for seat with Seat Belt Unfasten Reminder (SBR)).
- (6) For front passenger seat with SBR, when a passenger is detected in front passenger seat but the seat belt is not fastened, warning light on instrument cluster should be illuminated, after inserting the seat belt tab into seat belt buckle, seat belt reminder warning light should go off.
- (7) Check the seat occupancy sensor (for front passenger side).
- (8) Measure the resistance of occupancy sensor with a digital multimeter, standard resistance is shown in the table below:

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
Terminal 1 and Terminal 2	Occupied	< 100 Ω
Terminal 1 and Terminal 2	No occupied	> 400 Ω



2.3 Installation

Caution

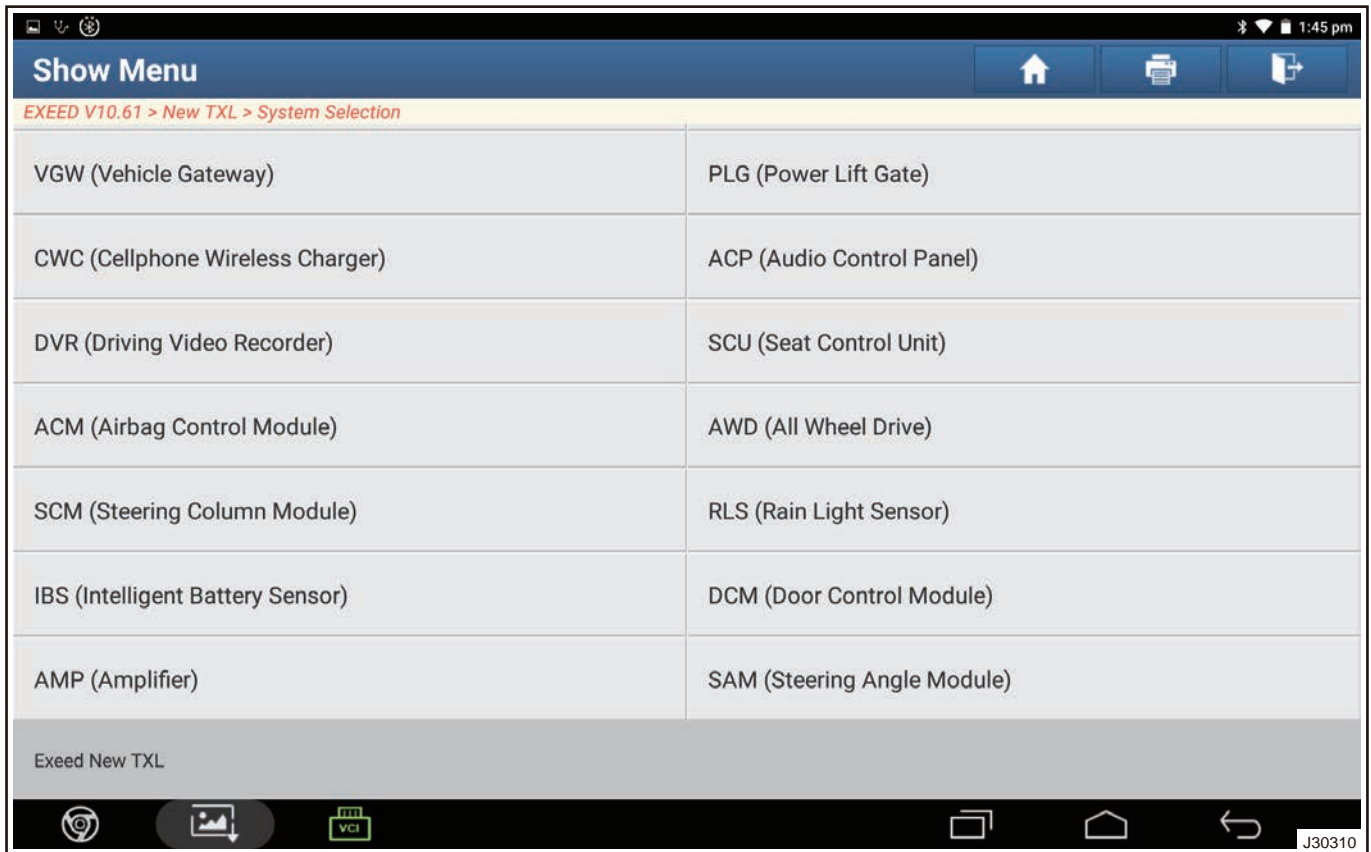
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing front left seat assembly.**
- **When installing front left seat assembly, be careful not to damage the body paint surface.**
- **Try to prevent carpet from being scratched or damaged, when installing front left seat assembly.**

- (1) Install 3 fixing bolts of driver seat control module.
Torque: $2.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (2) Install the driver seat control module wire harness.
- (3) Install the driver seat assembly outside side panel.
- (4) Install seat height front-back adjustment button, seatback adjustment button.
- (5) Install driver seat assembly, connect wire harness connector associated with driver seat assembly.
- (6) Push front-back adjustment button forward, and pull the left and right slide rails to foremost end, so that the positioning pin at the rear fixing point of the seat track is aligned with the positioning pin hole on the body floor. First, pre-screw the bolt into the front installation hole of the seat track, and then tighten 2 bolts at the rear installation point to install the seat rear inner leg protector assembly.
Torque: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (7) Slide the seat to the rearmost position, first pre-screw the bolt into the front installation hole of the seat track, and then tighten 2 bolts at the rear installation point. (Note: For manual seats, adjust the seat forward or backward and the seatback angle by adjusting the seat release lever).
Torque: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (8) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (9) Connect EXEED special diagnostic tester, read and clear DTCs.

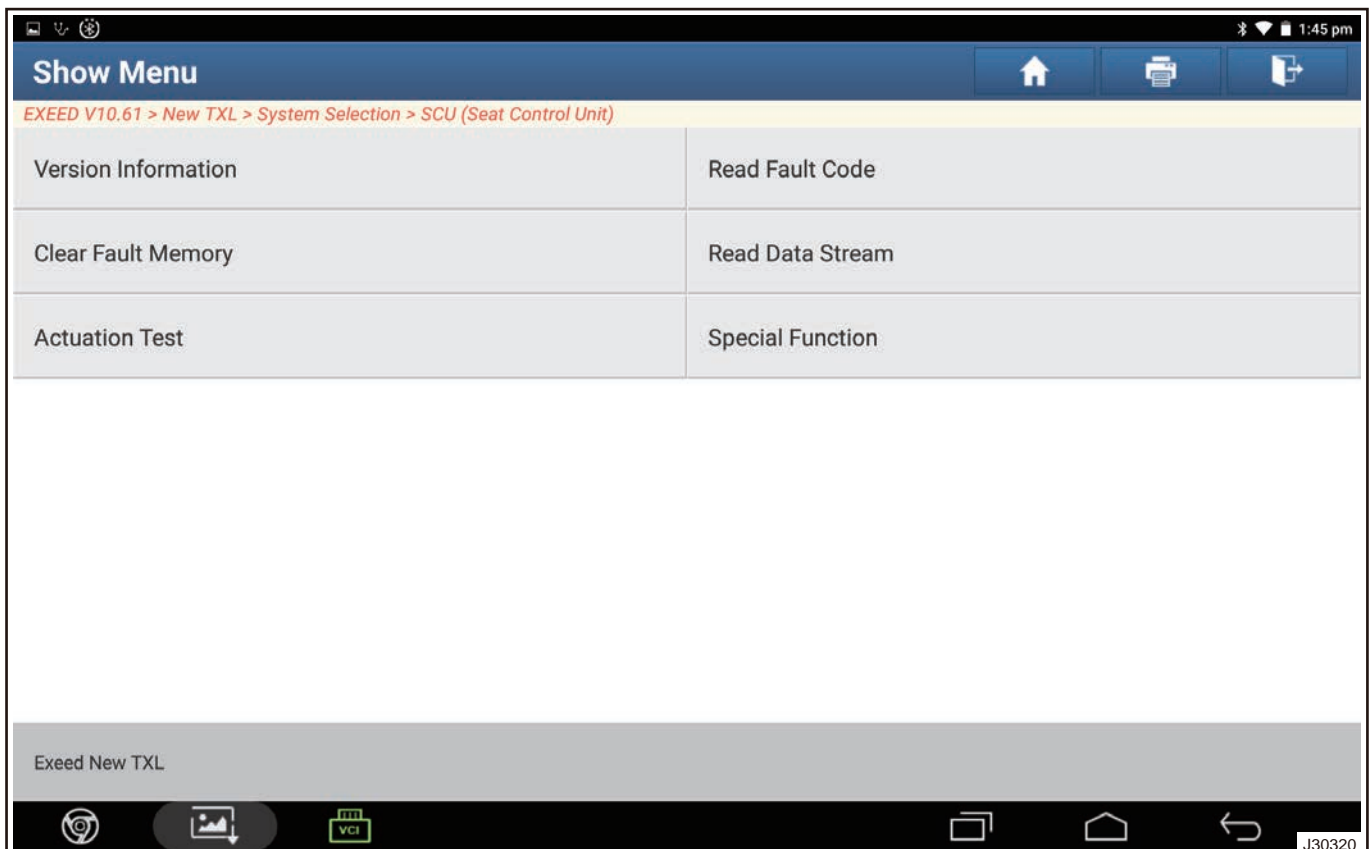
2.4 Self-learning

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Click “Traditional Diagnosis” .
- (5) Click “New TXL” .

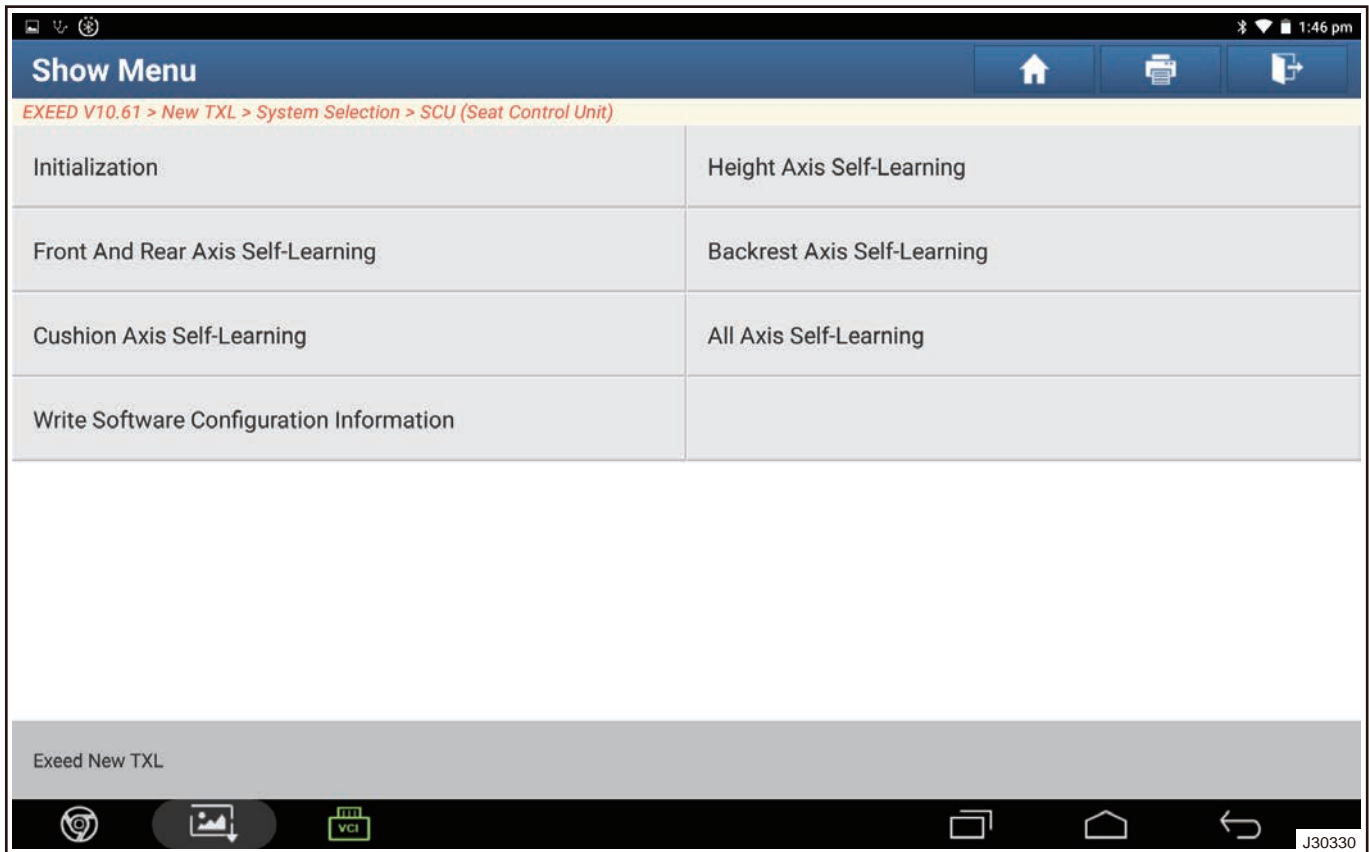
(6) Click “SCU (Seat Control Unit)” .



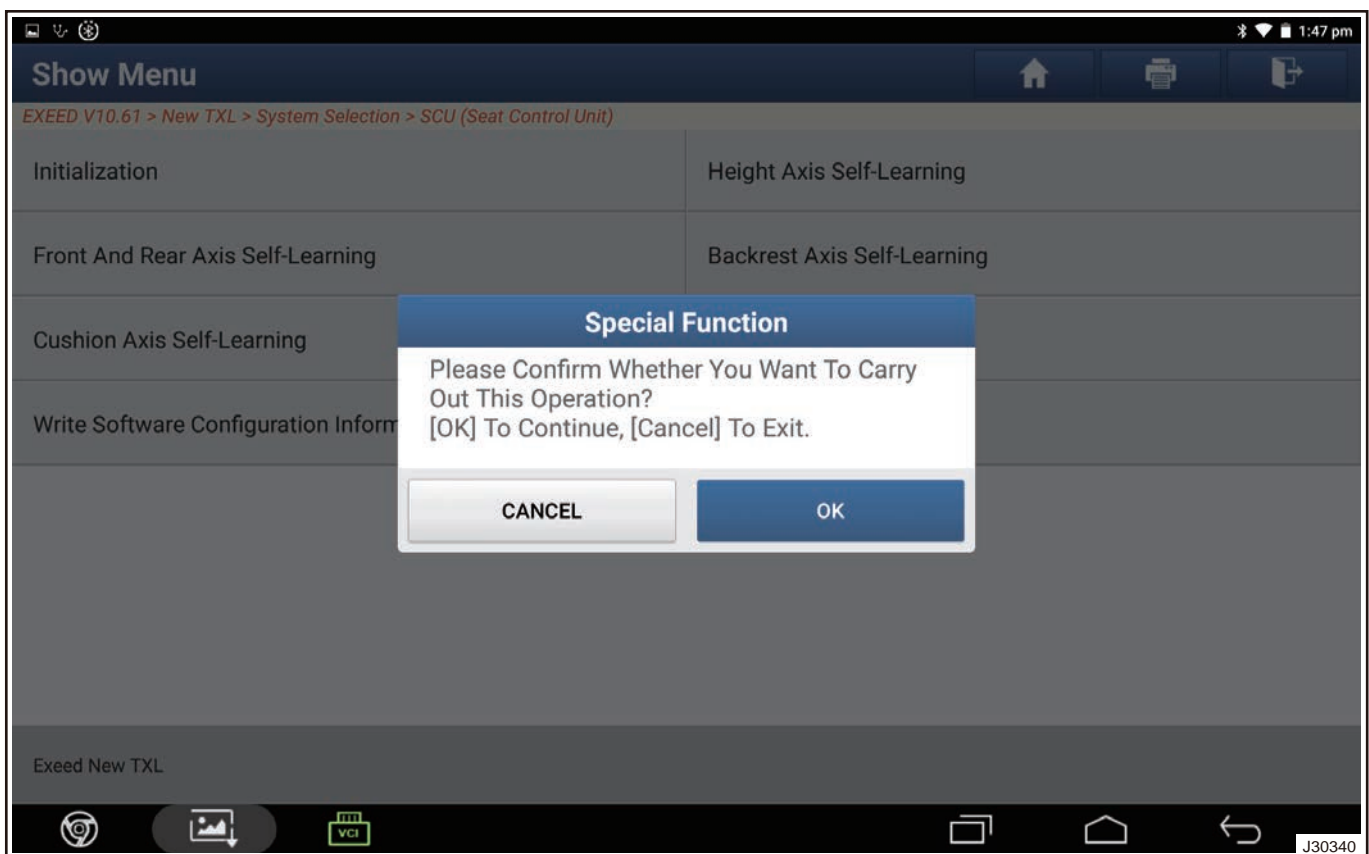
(7) Click “Special Function” .



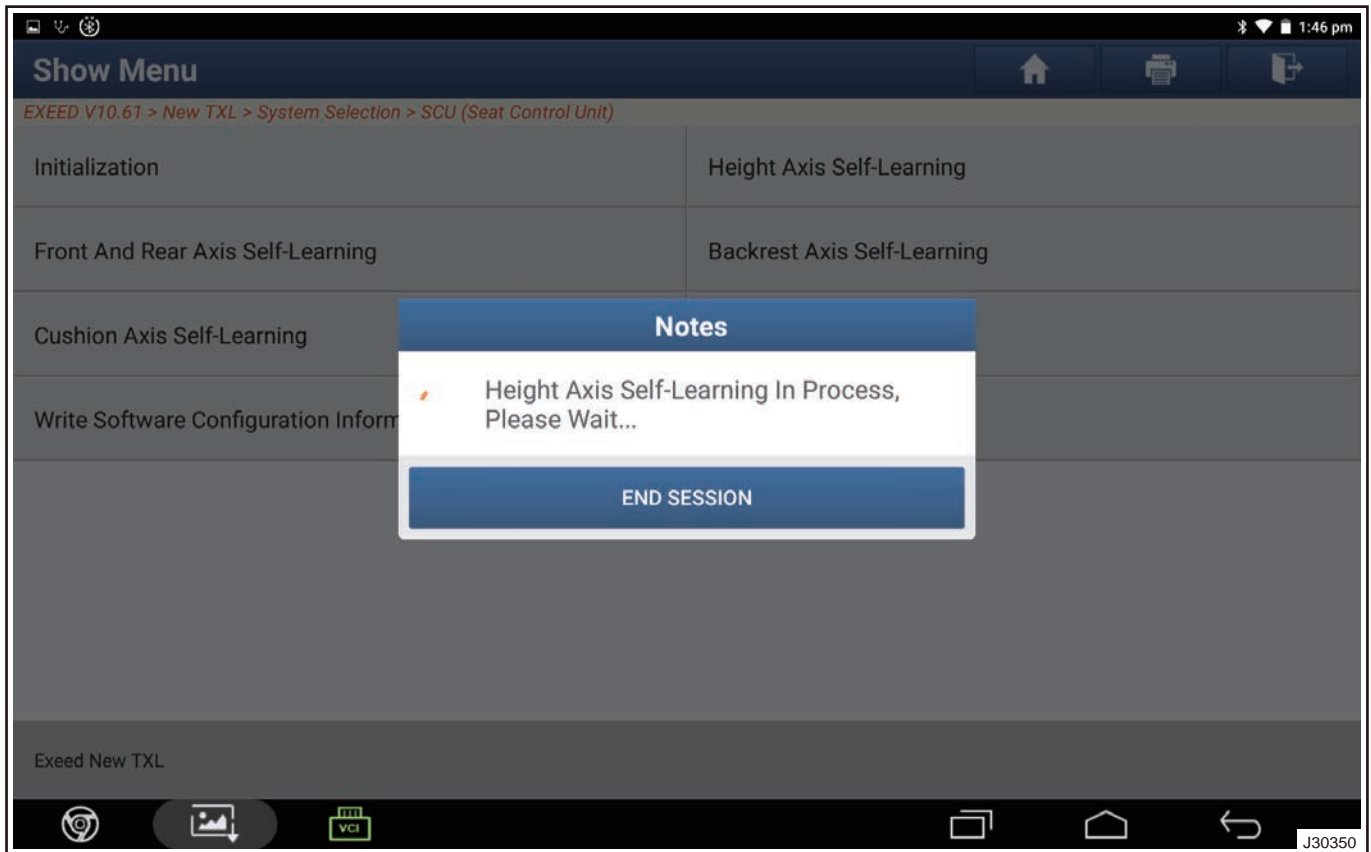
- (8) Click “Height Axis Self Learning” .



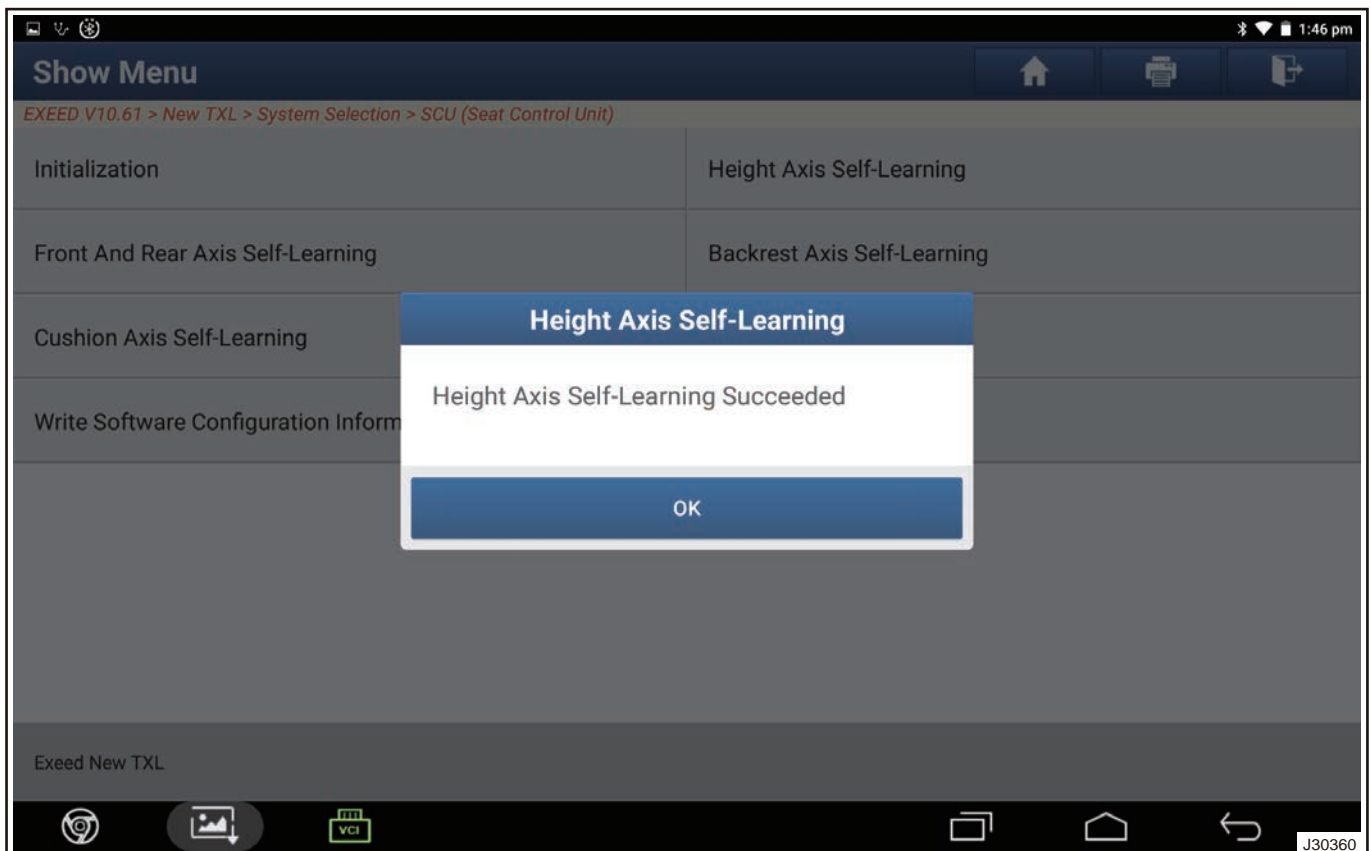
- (9) “Please Confirm Whether You Want To Carry Out This Operation? OK To Continue, Cancel To Exit” is displayed on the screen. Click “OK” .



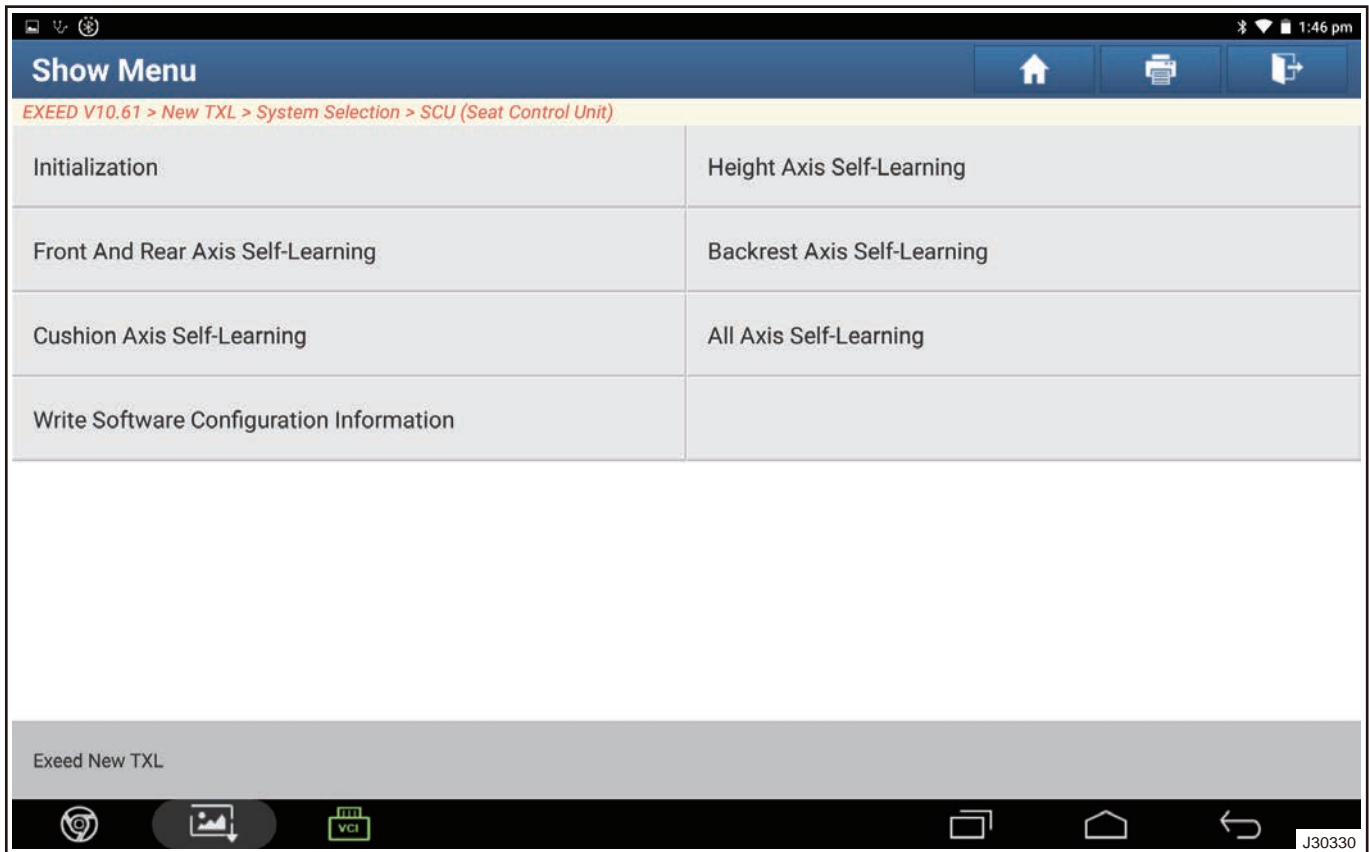
(10) Height Axis Self Learning In Process, Please Wait.



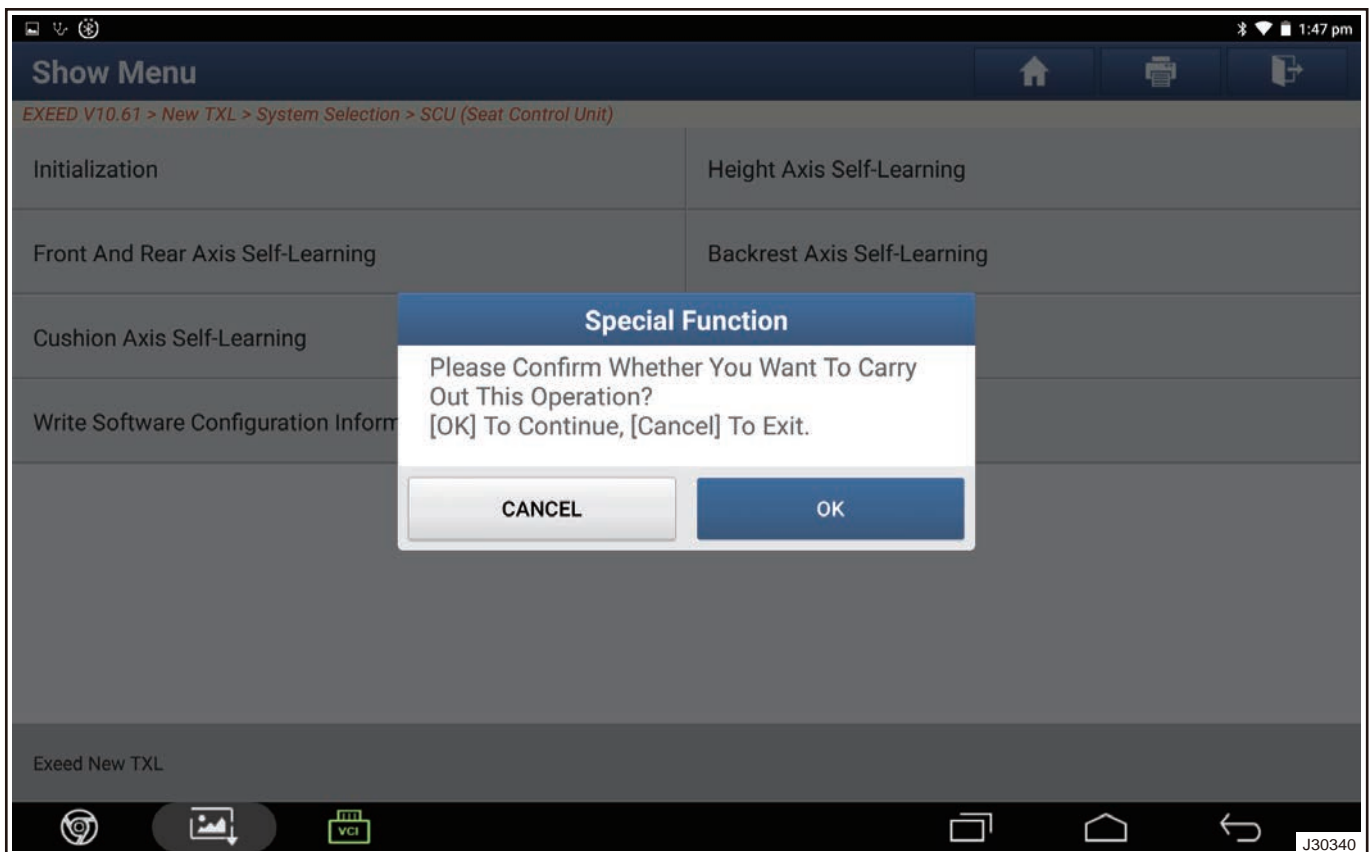
(11) Height Axis Self Learning Succeeded.



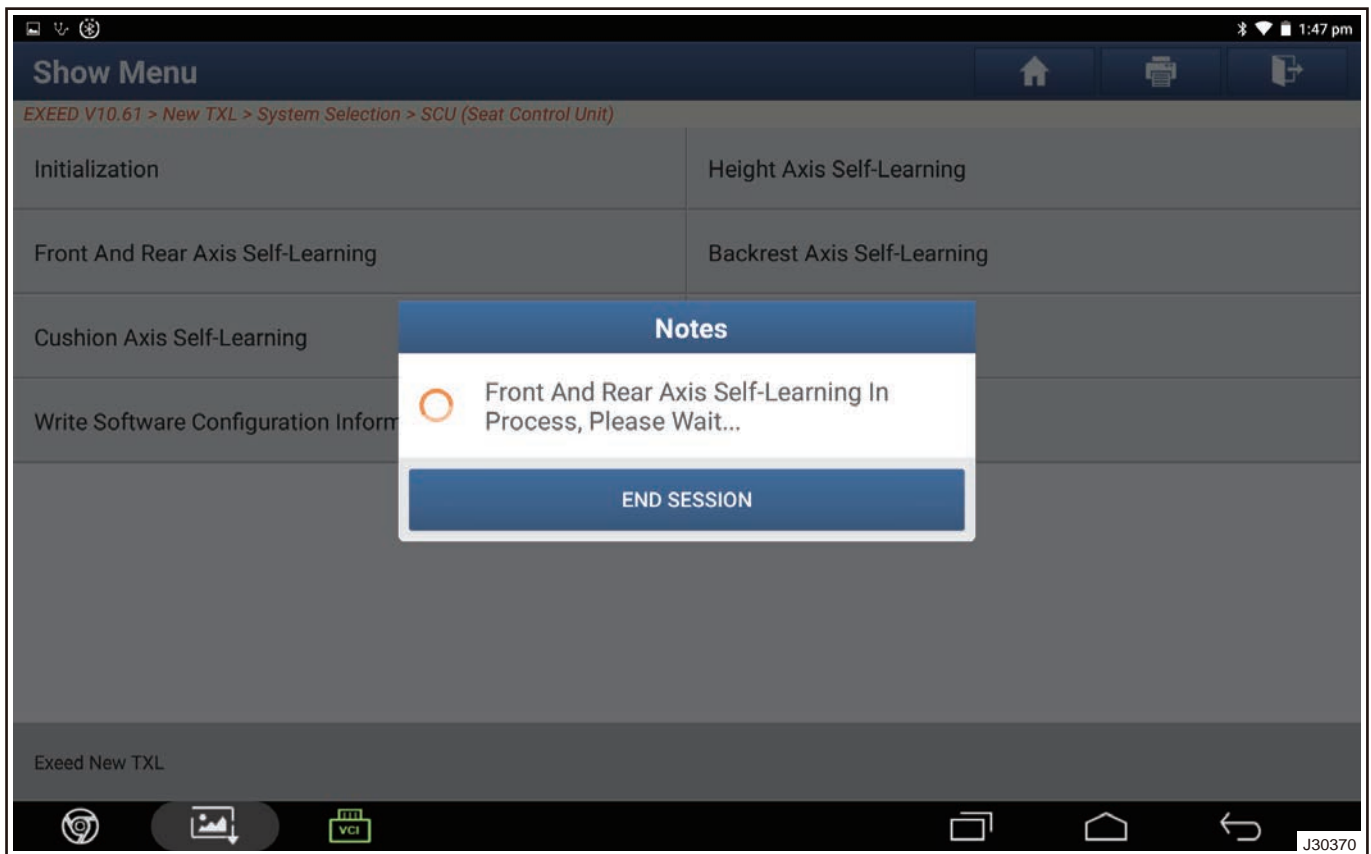
(12) Return and click “Front And Rear Axis Self Learning” .



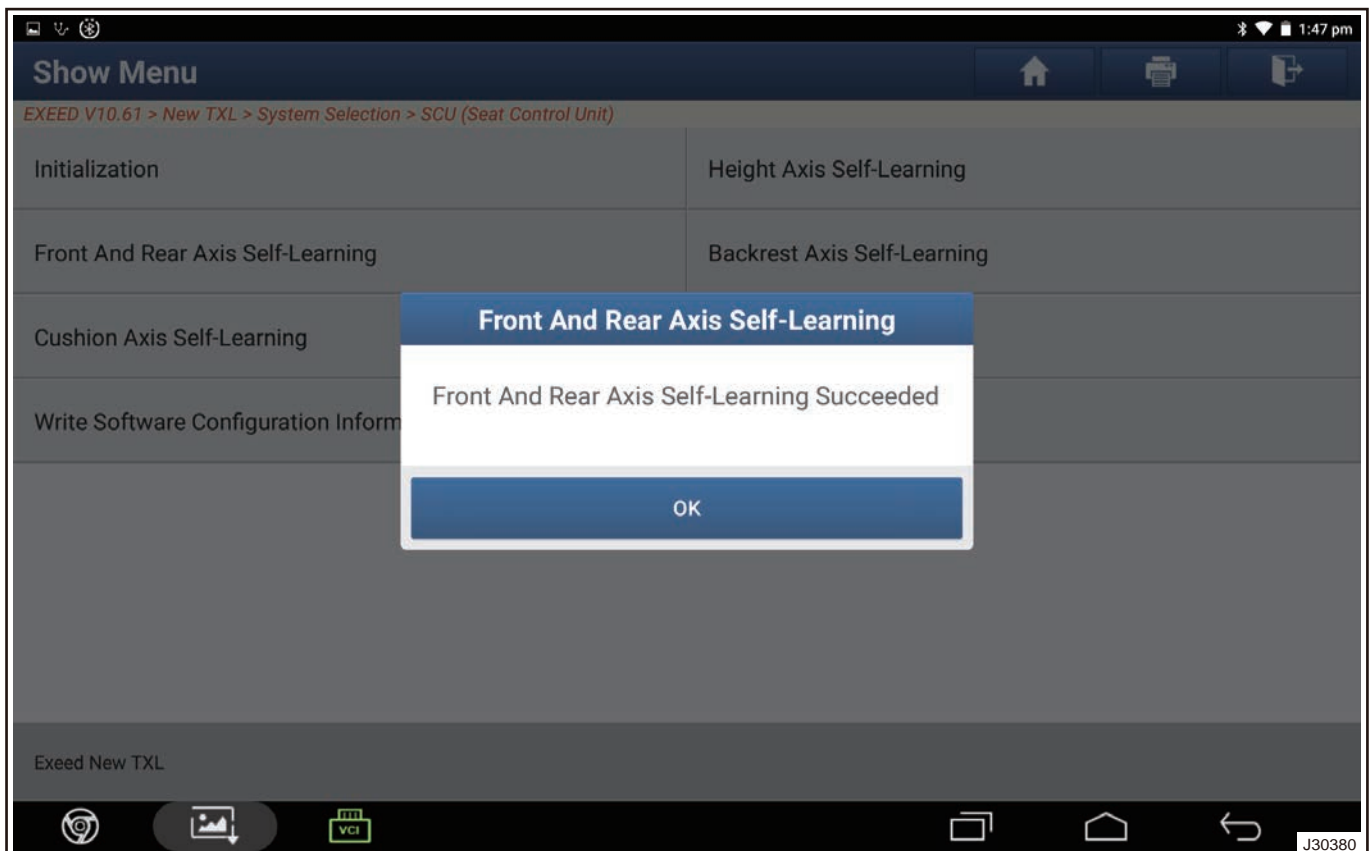
(13) “Please Confirm Whether You Want To Carry Out This Operation? OK To Continue, Cancel To Exit” is displayed on the screen. Click “OK” .



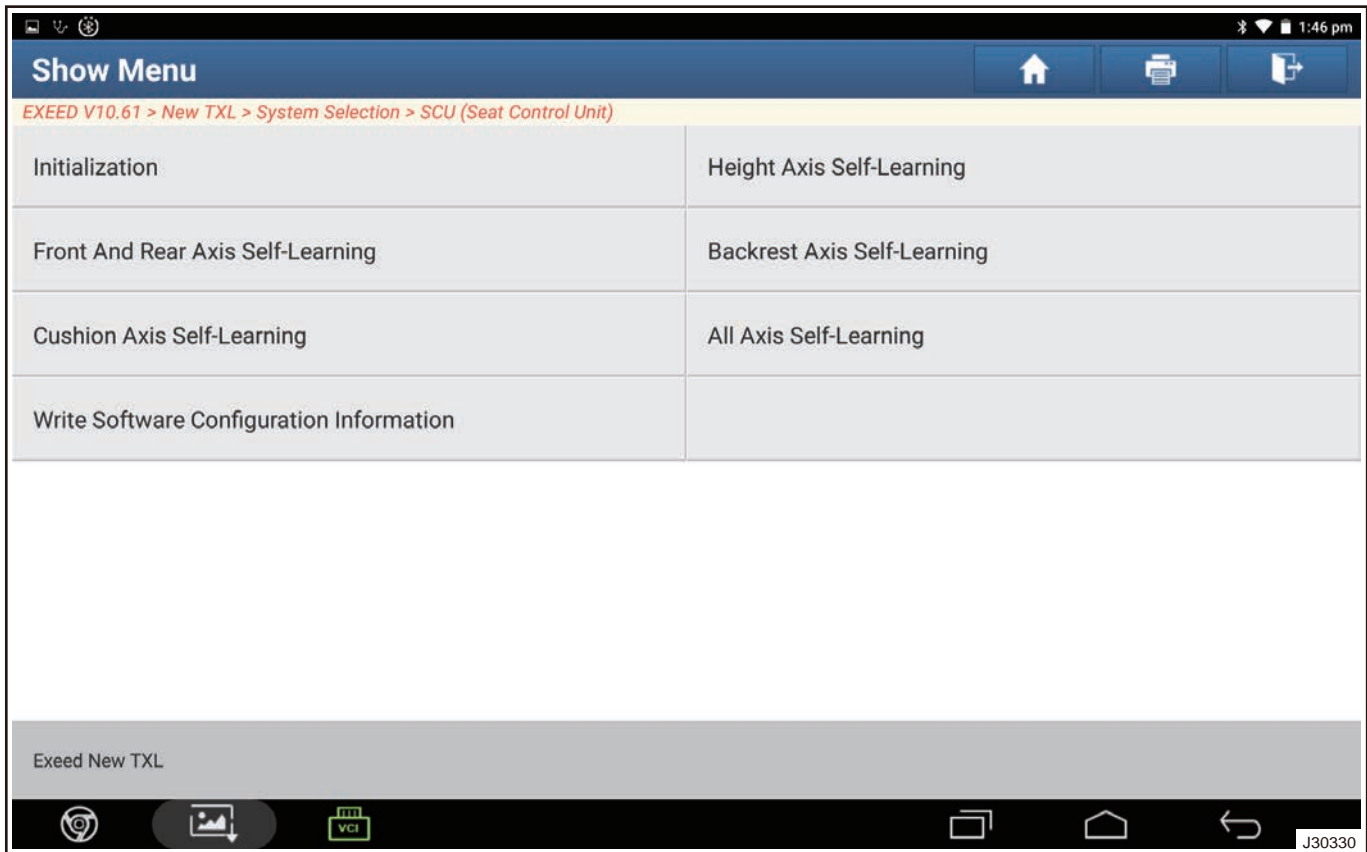
(14) Front And Rear Axis Self Learning In Process,Please Wait.



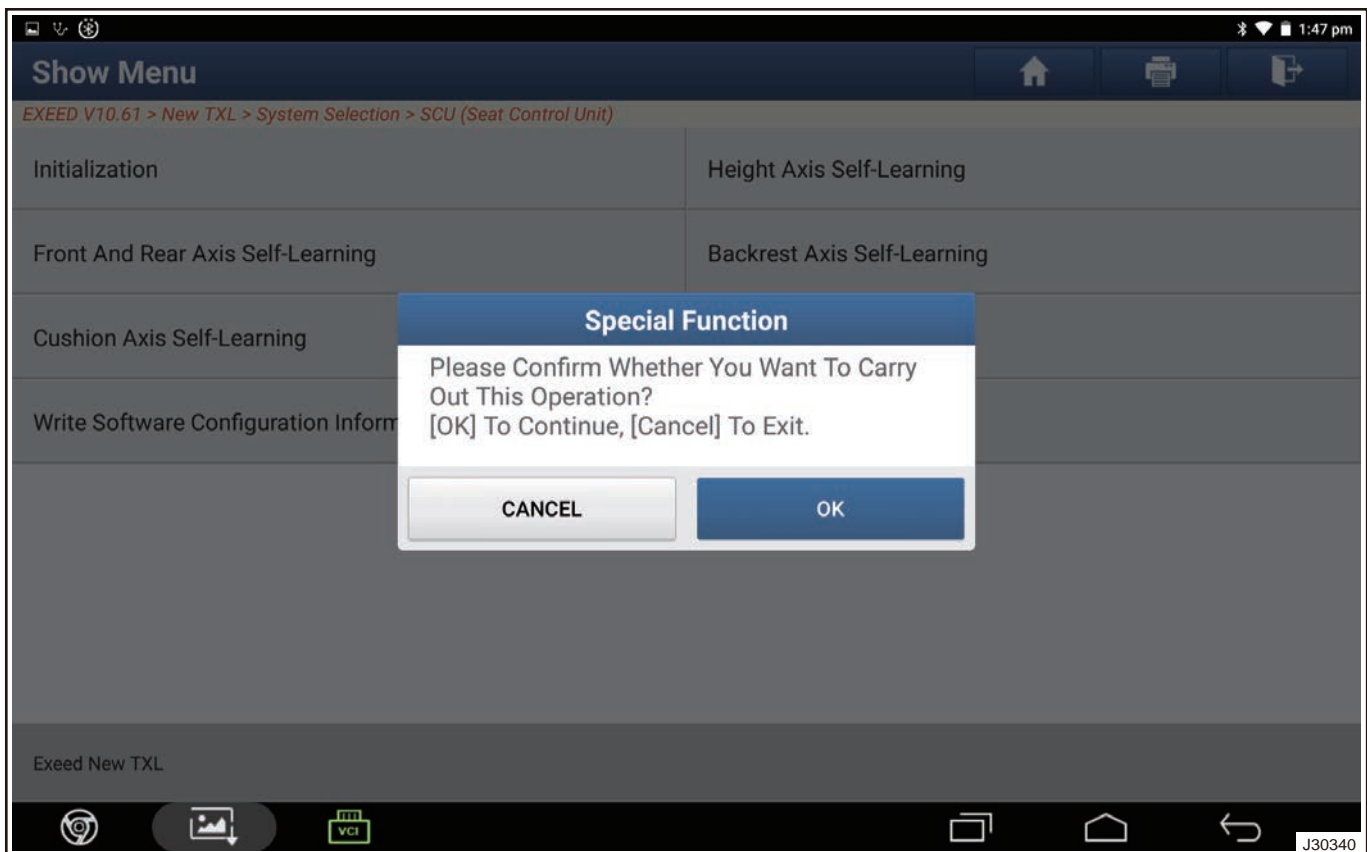
(15) Frount And Rear Axis Self Learning Succeeded.



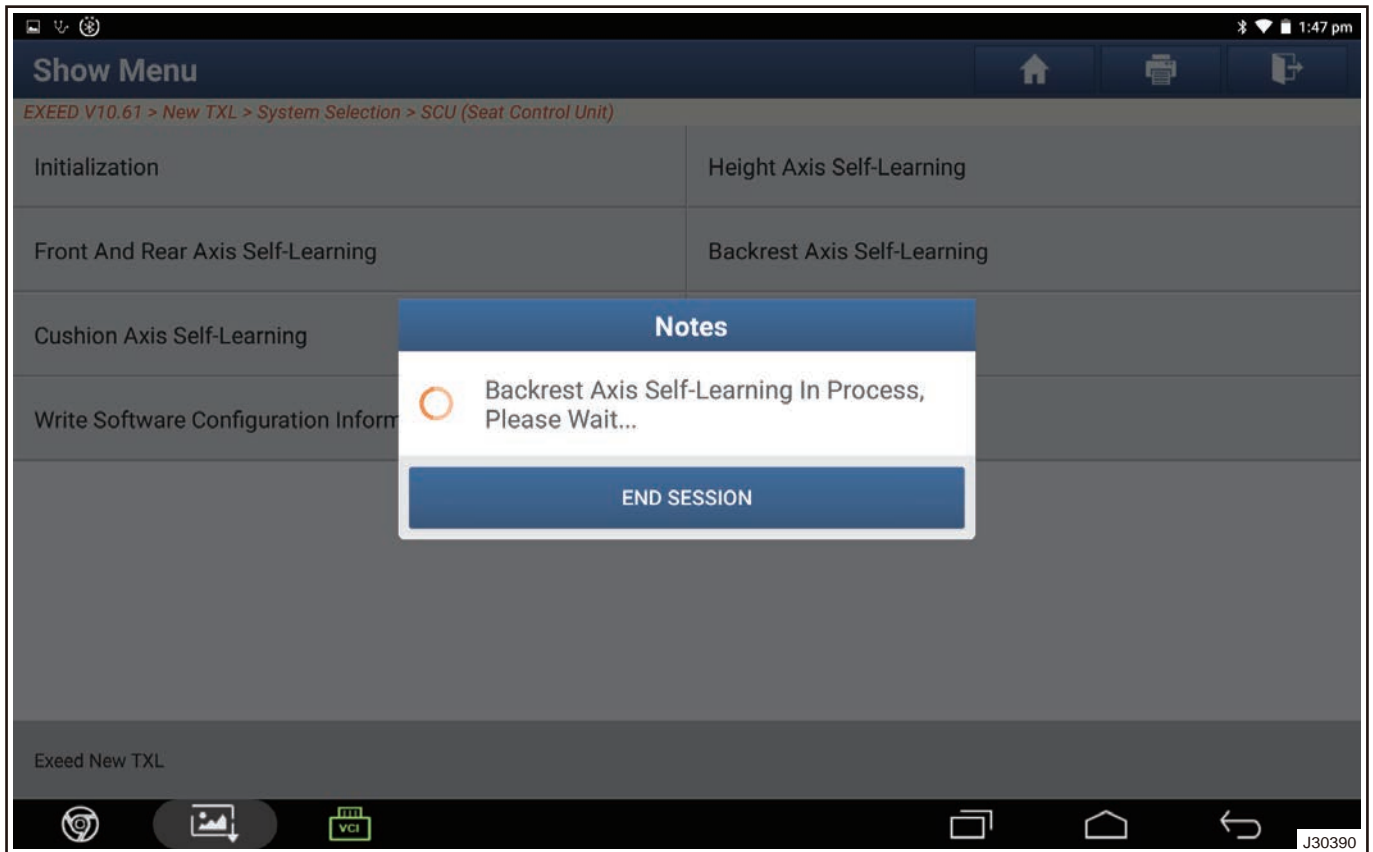
(16) Return and click “Backrest Axis Self Learning” .



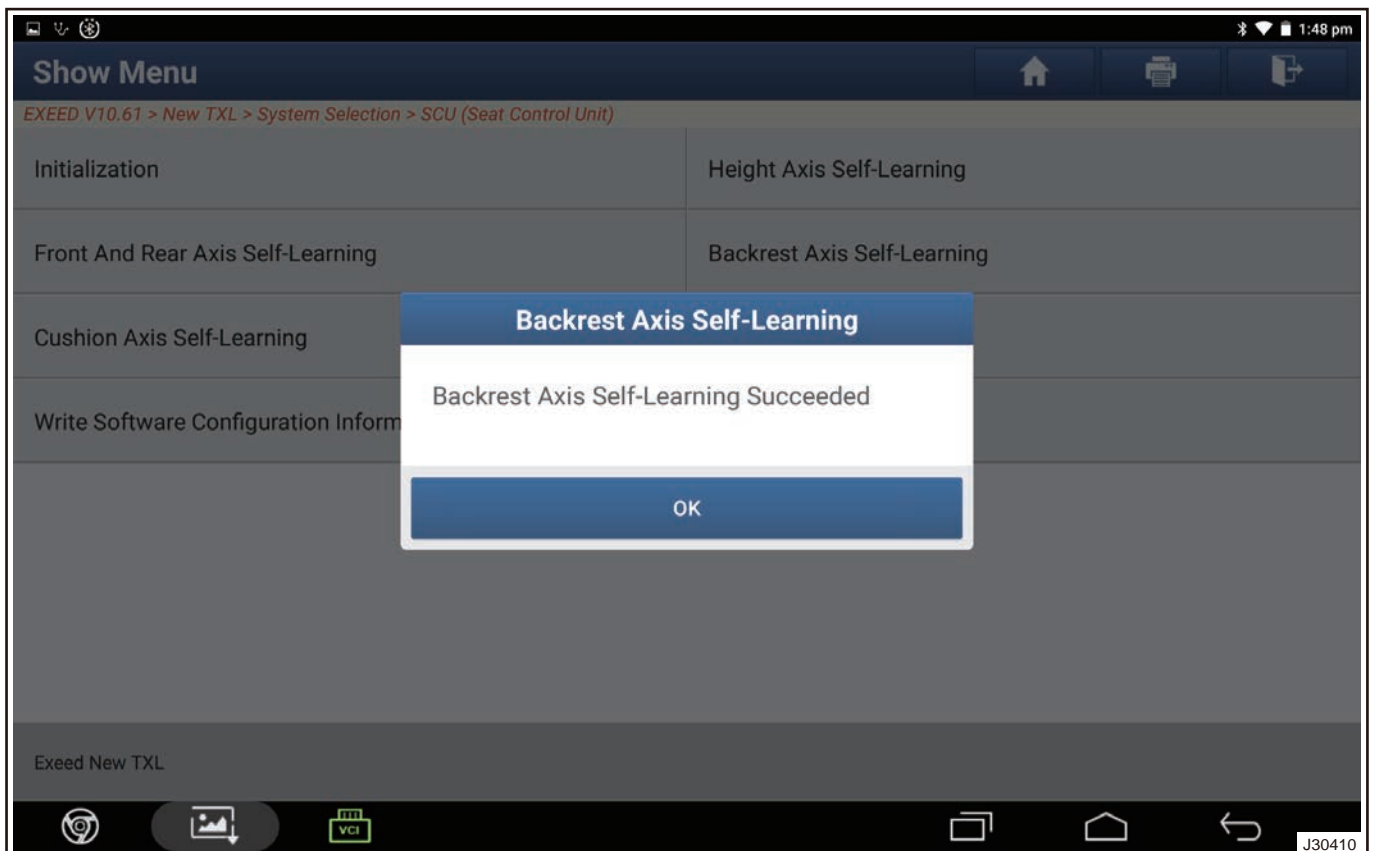
(17) “Please Confirm Whether You Want To Carry Out This Operation? OK To Continue, Cancel To Exit” is displayed on the screen. Click “OK” .



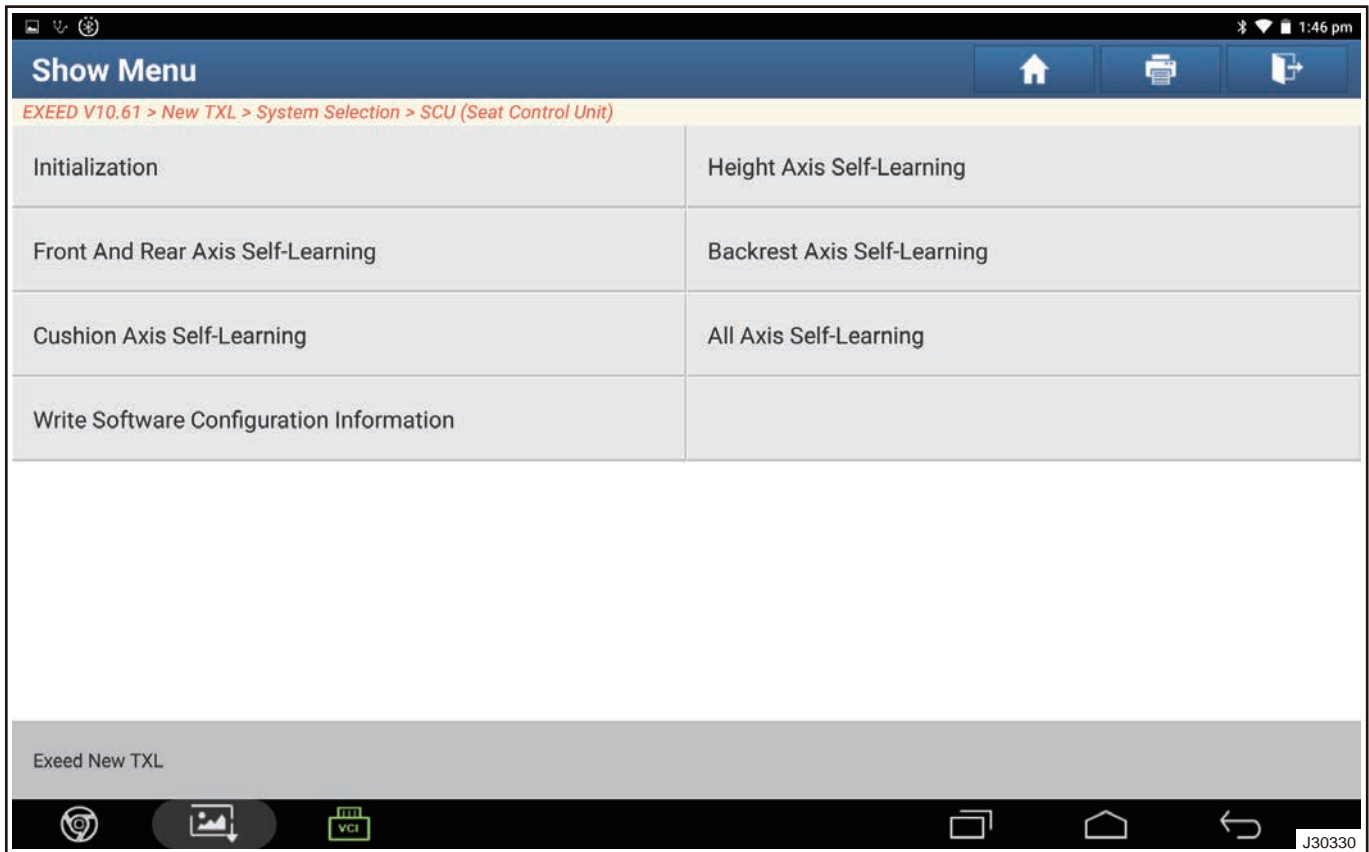
(18) Backrest Axis Self Learning In Process, Please Wait.



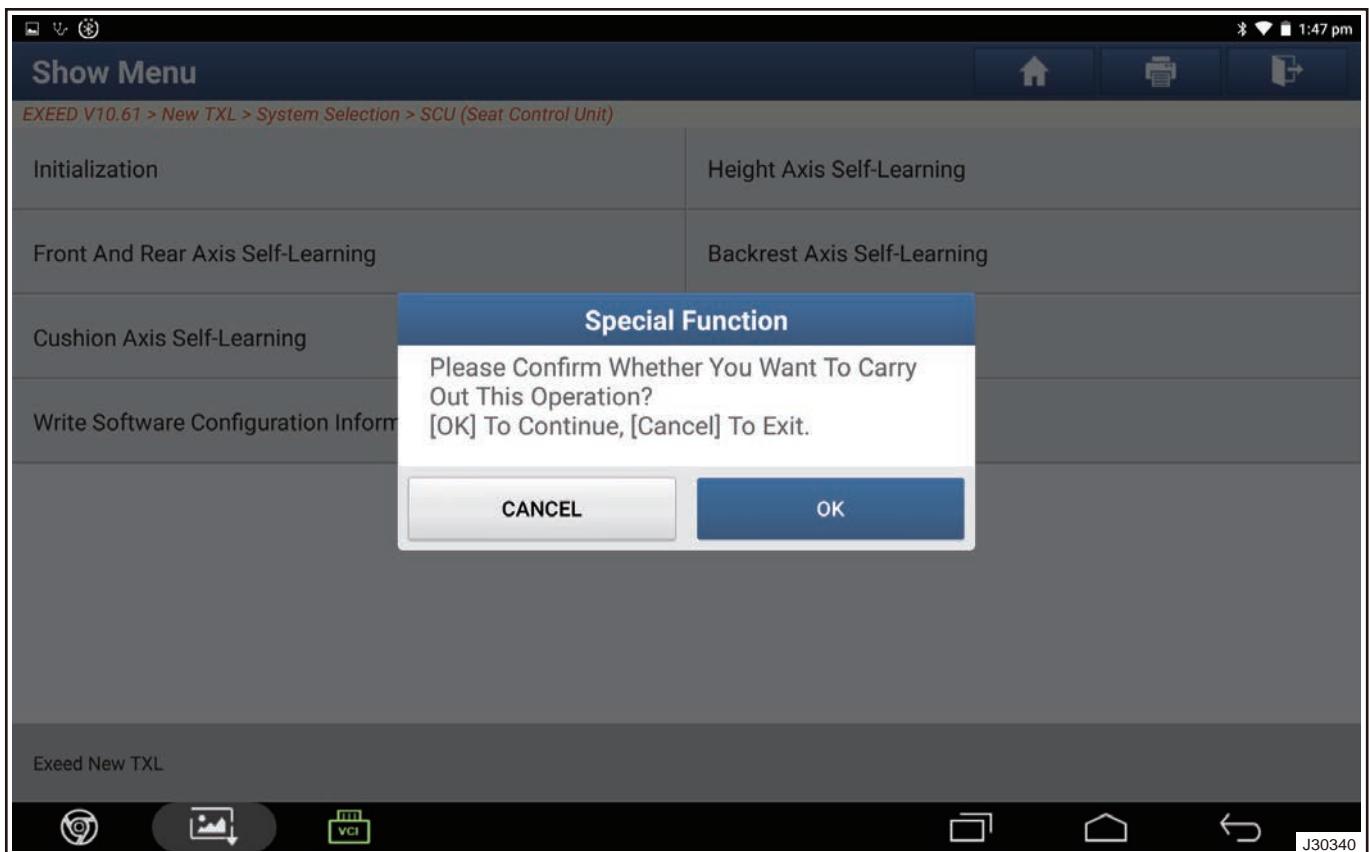
(19) Backrest Axis Self Learning Succeeded.



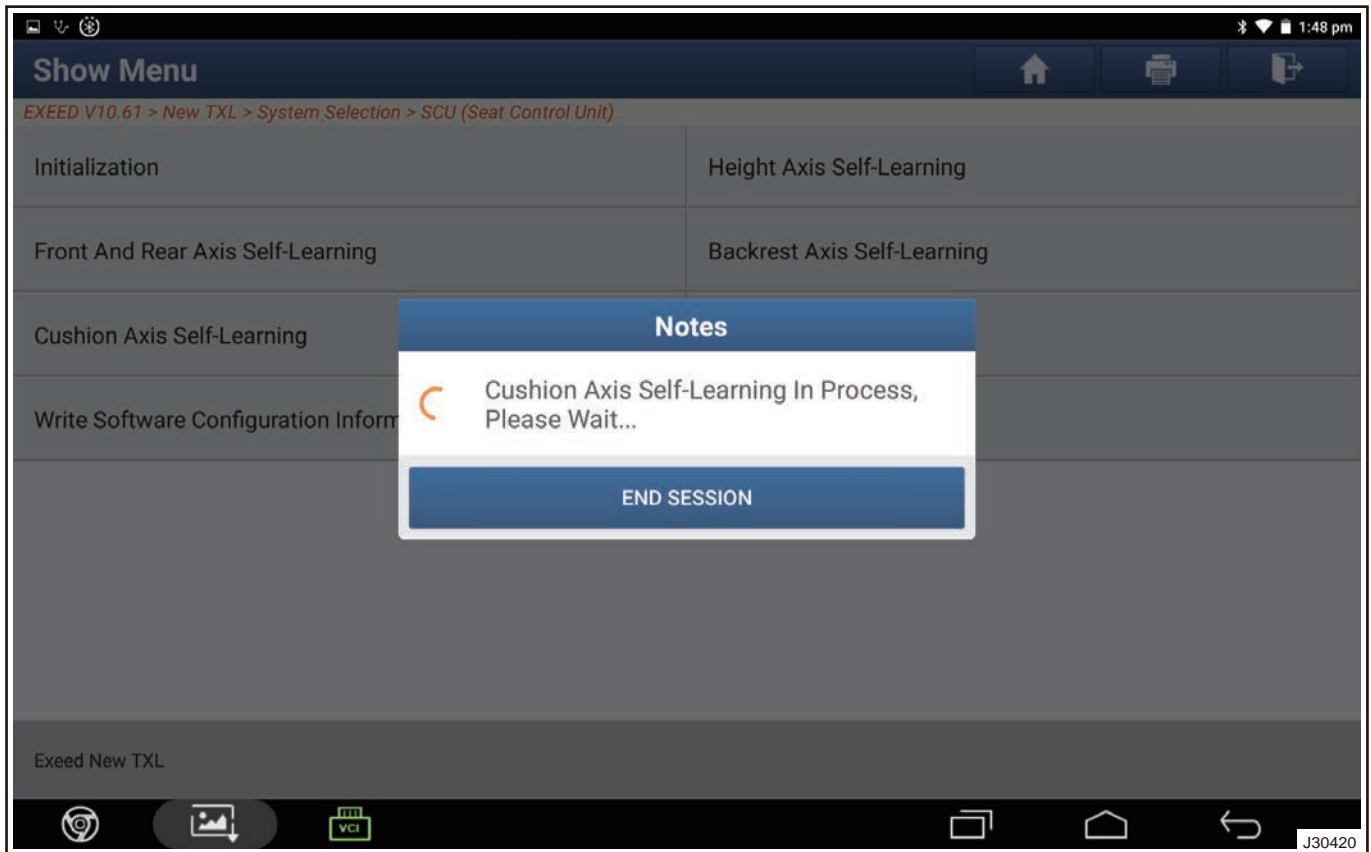
(20) Return and click “Cushion Shaft Auto Learning” .



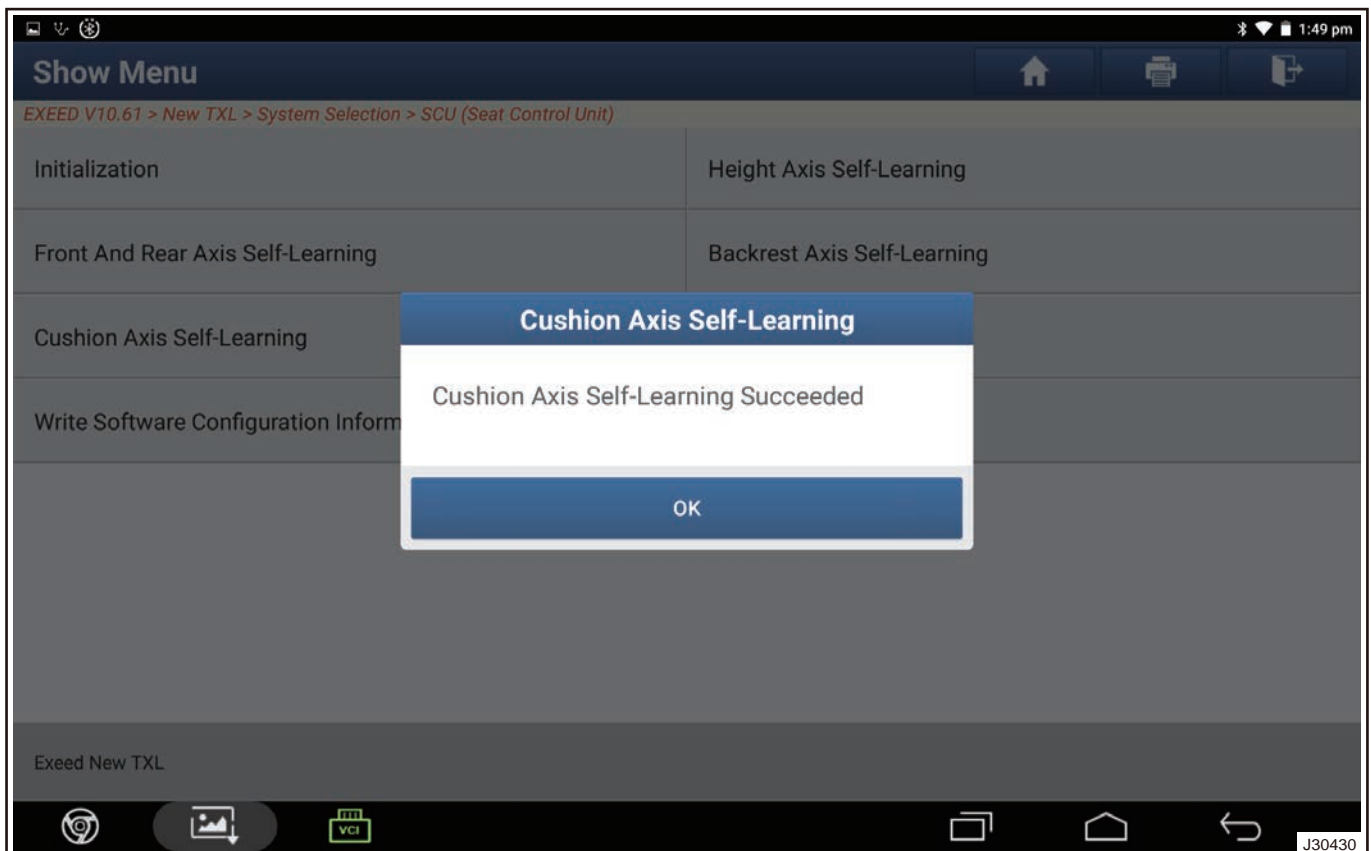
(21) “Please Confirm Whether You Want To Carry Out This Operation? OK To Continue, Cancel To Exit” is displayed on the screen. Click “OK” .



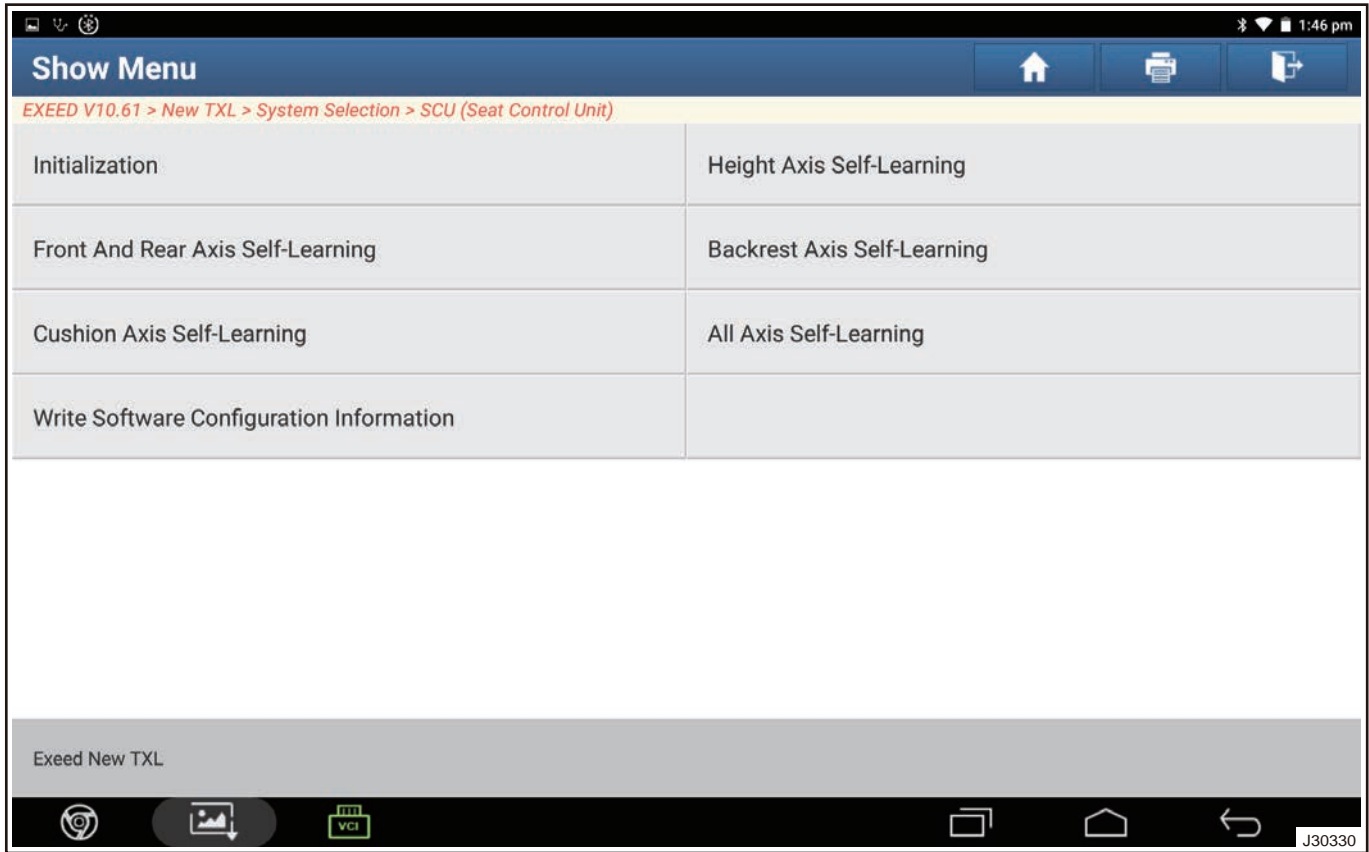
(22) Cushion Axis Self-learning In Process, Please Wait.



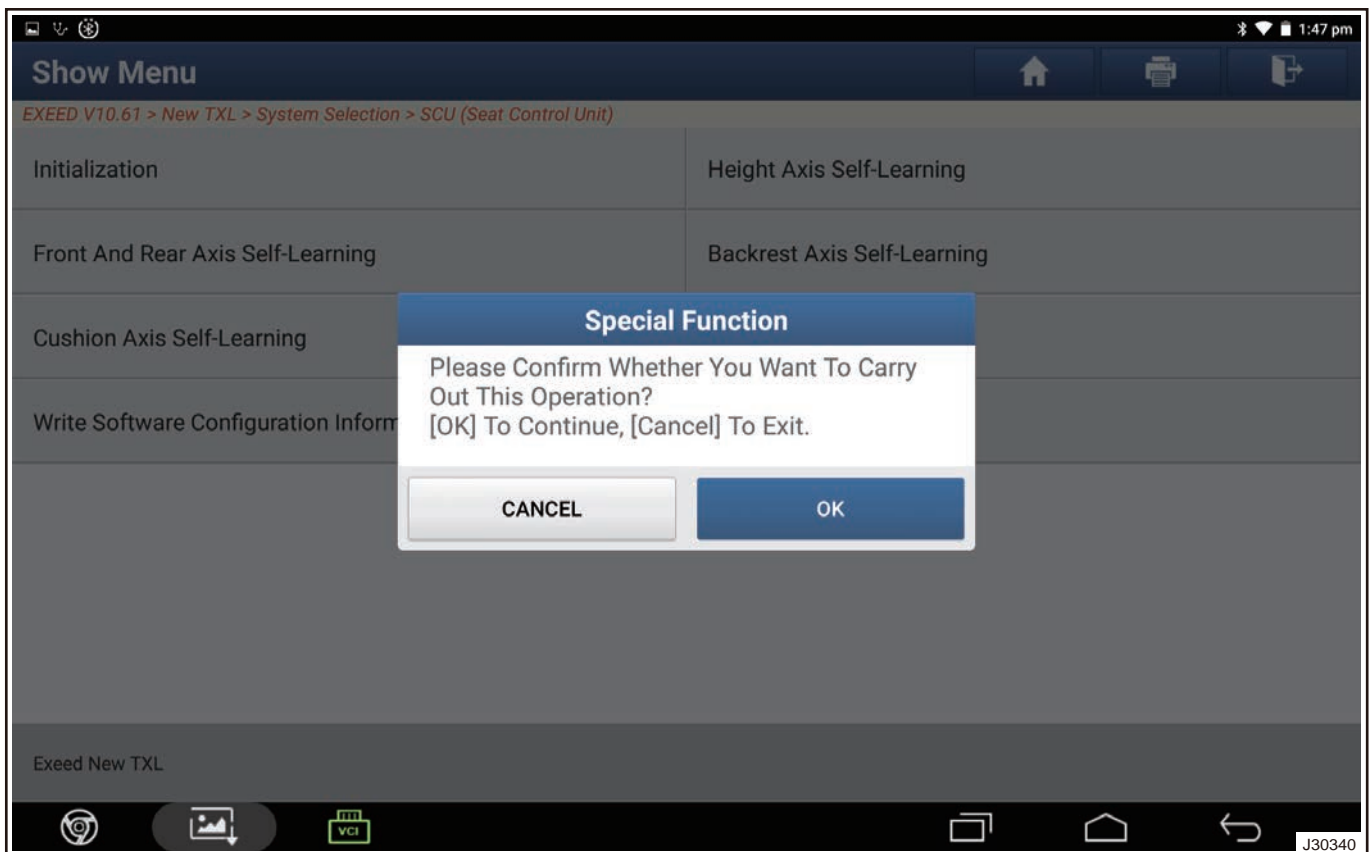
(23) Cushion axis auto learning is successful.



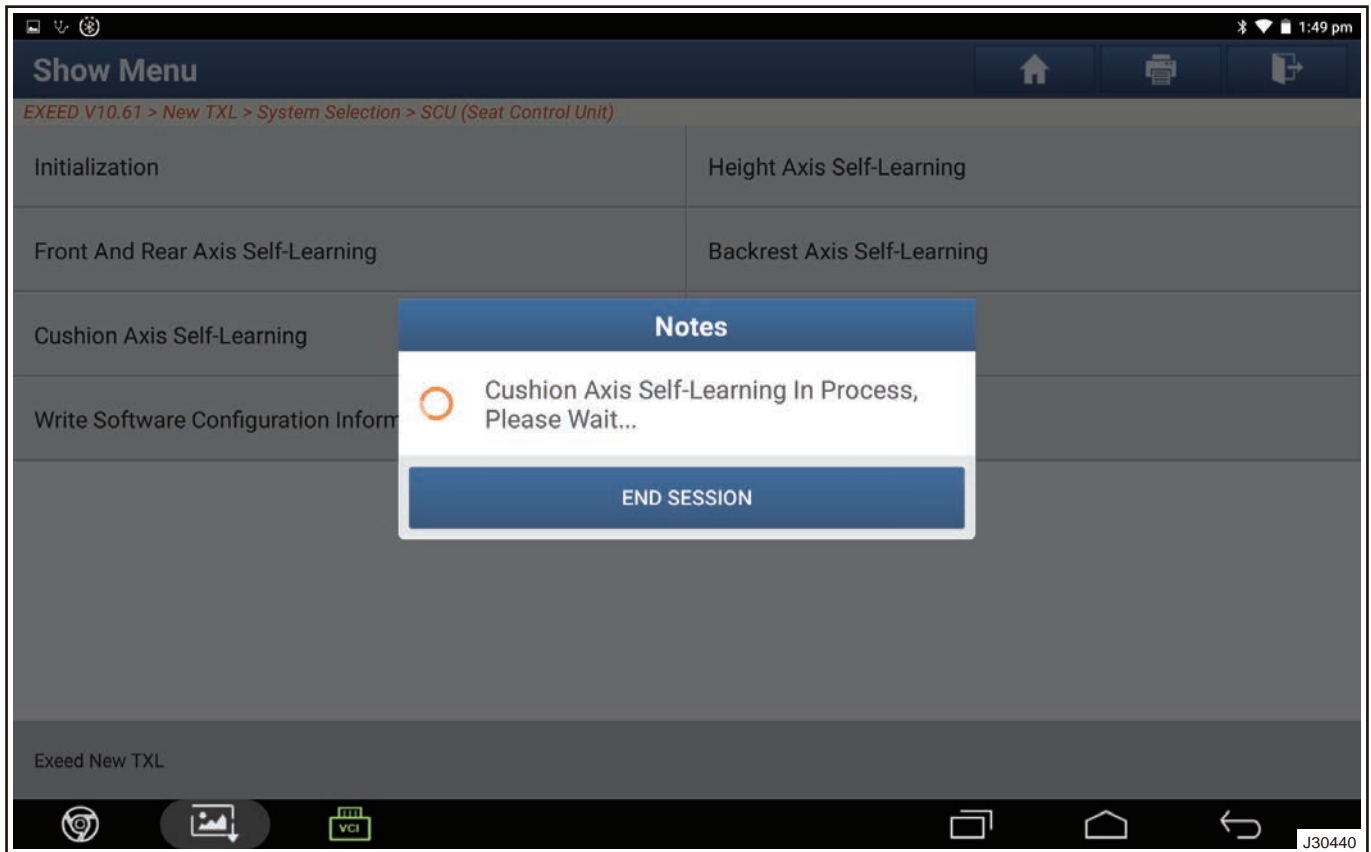
(24) Return and click “All Axis Auto Learning” .



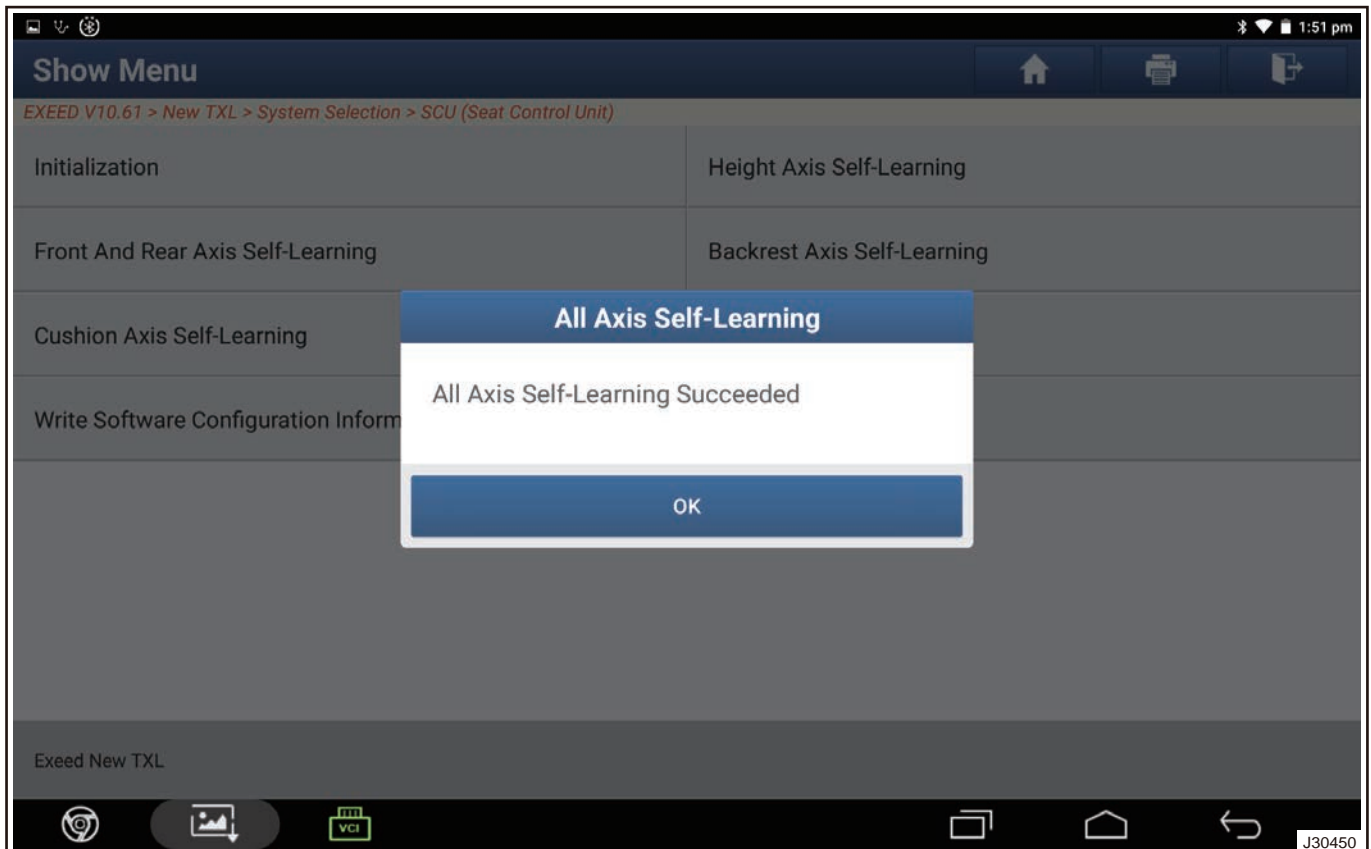
(25) “Please Confirm Whether You Want To Carry Out This Operation? OK To Continue, Cancel To Exit” is displayed on the screen. Click “OK” .



(26) Performing all shafts auto learning, please wait.



(27) All shafts auto learning is successful.



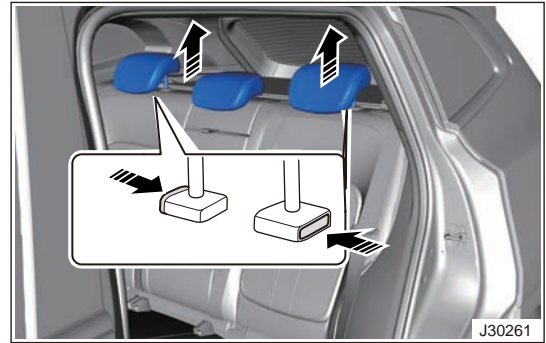
3 Replacement of Rear Seat Assembly

3.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear seat assembly.**
- **Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear seat assembly. Be careful not to operate roughly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear seat assembly.**

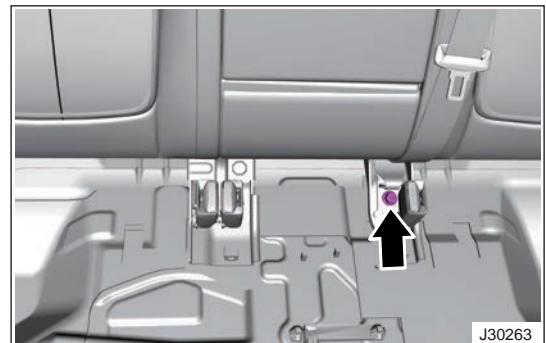
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) As shown in the illustration, press the release button of seat headrest guide (w/ button), and remove rear seat headrest assembly.



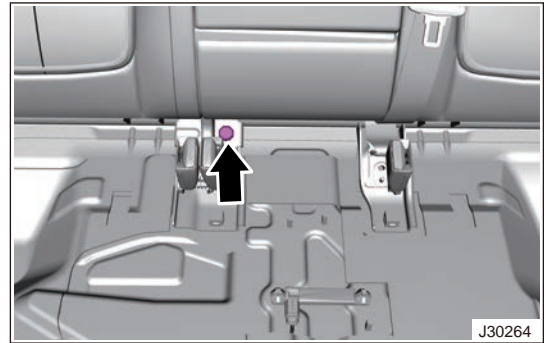
- (4) Detach rear seat cushion holder in direction of arrow and remove cushion as shown in illustration.



- (5) Remove center rear seat belt lower fixing bolt, and detach seat belt buckle.



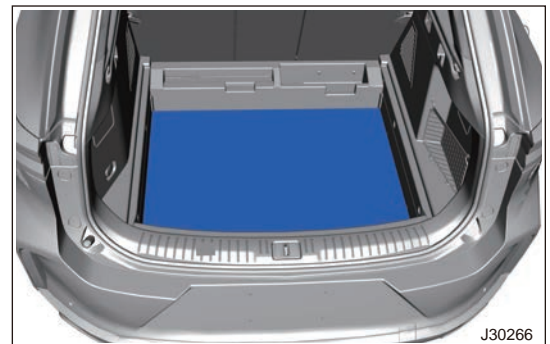
(6) Remove fixing bolt from rear seatback bracket.



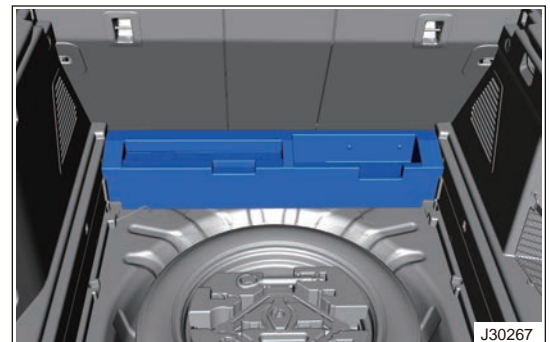
(7) Remove the luggage compartment carpet assembly.



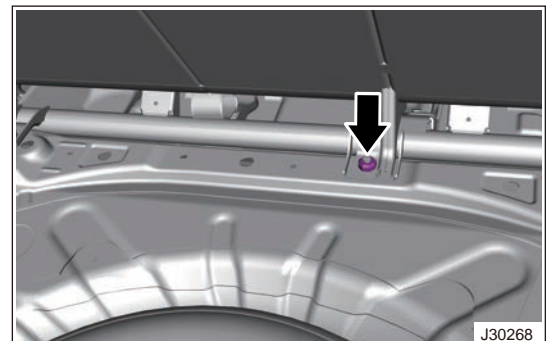
(8) Remove the spare tire cover plate assembly.



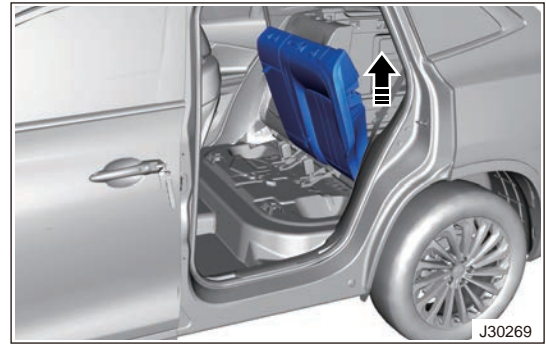
(9) Remove the luggage compartment front storage box.



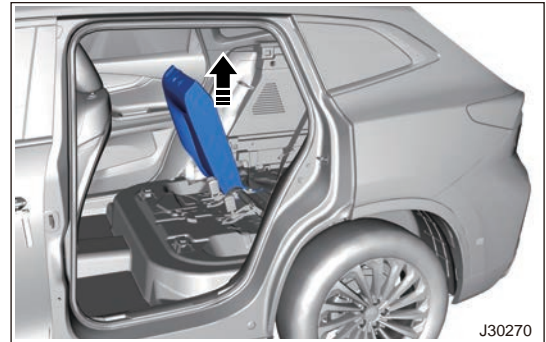
(10) Remove fixing nut from rear seatback bracket.



- (11) Remove 60% of rear left seatback shaft from body groove and remove 60% of rear left seatback in the direction of arrow.



- (12) Remove 40% of rear right seatback shaft from body groove and remove 40% of rear right seatback in the direction of arrow.



3.2 Inspection

- (1) Installation of rear seats should be firm and reliable, and seat belts should be complete and effective.
- (2) Check the old and new degree of the seat, the seat surface should be flat, clean and free from damage.

3.3 Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing rear seat assembly.**
- **When installing rear seat assembly, be careful not to damage the body paint surface.**
- **When installing rear seat assembly, try to prevent carpet from being scratched or damaged.**

- (1) Install the rear left seatback assembly.
- (2) Install the rear right seatback assembly.
- (3) Install fixing nut to rear seatback bracket.
- (4) Install the luggage compartment front storage box.
- (5) Install the spare tire cover plate assembly.
- (6) Install the luggage compartment carpet assembly.
- (7) Install fixing bolt to rear seatback bracket.
- (8) Install seat belt buckle and fixing bolt.
Torque: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (9) Install the rear seat cushion.
- (10) Install the rear seat headrest assembly.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

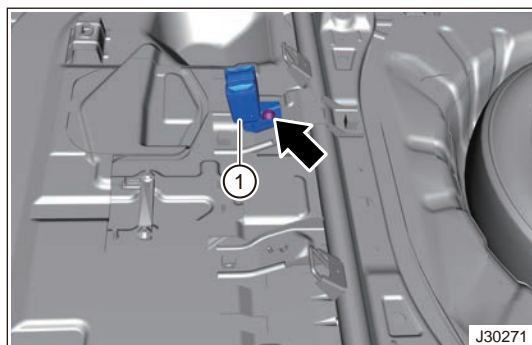
4 Rear Seat Bracket

4.1 Removal

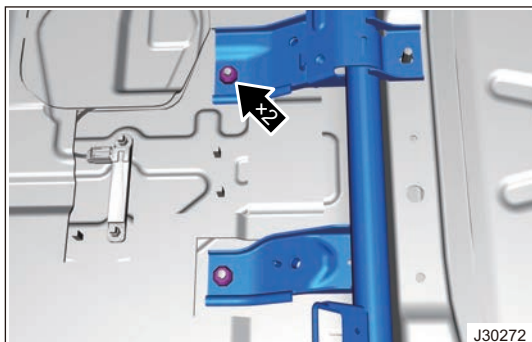
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear seat bracket.
- Appropriate force should be applied, when removing rear seat bracket. Be careful not to operate roughly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear seat bracket.

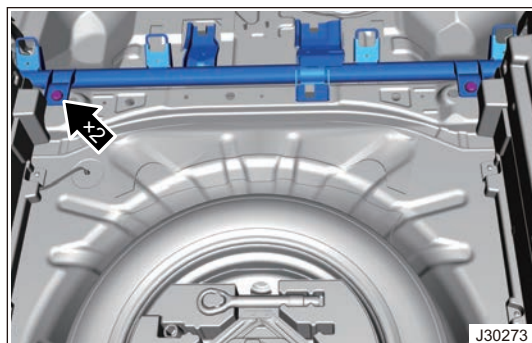
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear seat cushion assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear seatback assembly.
- (5) Remove fixing bolt from rear double-lock buckle bracket, and remove the rear double-lock buckle assembly (1).



- (6) Remove 2 fixing nuts from rear seat bracket.



- (7) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear seat bracket.



- (8) Remove the rear seat bracket.

4.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing rear seat bracket.**
- **When installing rear seat bracket, be careful not to damage the body paint surface.**
- **When installing rear seat bracket, try to prevent carpet from being scratched or damaged.**

- (1) Install rear seat bracket to a proper position in vehicle.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts to rear seat bracket.
Torque: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install 2 fixing nuts to rear seat bracket.
Torque: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Install rear double-lock buckle assembly to a proper position of body, and install 1 fixing bolt.
Torque: $50 \pm 5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (5) Install the rear seatback assembly.
- (6) Install the rear seat cushion assembly.
- (7) Connect the negative battery cable.

DOOR LOCK

55.1	Warnings and Precautions	2047
1	Warnings	2047
2	Precautions	2047
55.2	System Overview	2048
1	System Description	2048
2	System Components Diagram	2049
3	System Schematic Diagram	2050
4	Anti-theft management	2051
4.1	Fortifying mode	2051
4.2	Fortifying failure mode	2051
4.3	Intrusion mode	2052
4.4	Luggage compartment opening management (without PLG)	2053
4.5	Luggage compartment opening management (with PLG)	2053
55.3	System Circuit Diagram	2054
1	Circuit Diagram	2054
55.4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2056
1	Problem Symptoms Table	2056
2	Diagnostic Help	2056
3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	2057
4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	2057
5	Ground Inspection	2057
6	Diagnosis Procedure	2057
7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	2059
8	Relay Stuck Fault	2059
55.5	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	2072
1	Tools	2072
2	Replacement of Engine Hood Lock Assembly	2072
2.1	Removal	2072
2.2	Inspection	2073
2.3	Installation	2074
3	Replacement of Engine Hood Cable Assembly	2074
3.1	Removal	2074
3.2	Inspection	2076
3.3	Installation	2076
4	Replacement of Front Door Lock Assembly	2077
4.1	Removal	2077
4.2	Inspection	2078
4.3	Installation	2078
5	Replacement of Front Door Key Cylinder Assembly	2079
5.1	Removal	2079
5.2	Installation	2081
6	Replacement of Front Door Lock Striker	2081
6.1	Removal	2081

DOOR LOCK

6.2	Installation	2081
7	Replacement of Rear Left Door Lock Assembly	2082
7.1	Removal	2082
7.2	Installation	2083
8	Replacement of Rear Door Lock Striker	2084
8.1	Removal	2084
8.2	Installation	2085
9	Replacement of Rear Left Outside Handle Assembly	2085
9.1	Removal	2085
9.2	Installation	2086
10	Replacement of Back Door Lock Assembly.....	2087
10.1	Removal	2087
10.2	Installation	2087
11	Replacement of Back Door Lock Striker Assembly	2088
11.1	Removal	2088
11.2	Installation	2088
12	Replacement of Central Control Lock Switch	2089
12.1	Removal	2089
12.2	Inspection	2089
12.3	Installation	2089
13	Replacement of Smart Key Battery.....	2090
13.1	Removal	2090
13.2	Installation	2090

55.1 Warnings and Precautions

1 Warnings

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood lock assembly.
- (2) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood cable assembly.
- (3) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door lock assembly.
- (4) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door key cylinder assembly.
- (5) Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door lock striker assembly.

2 Precautions

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

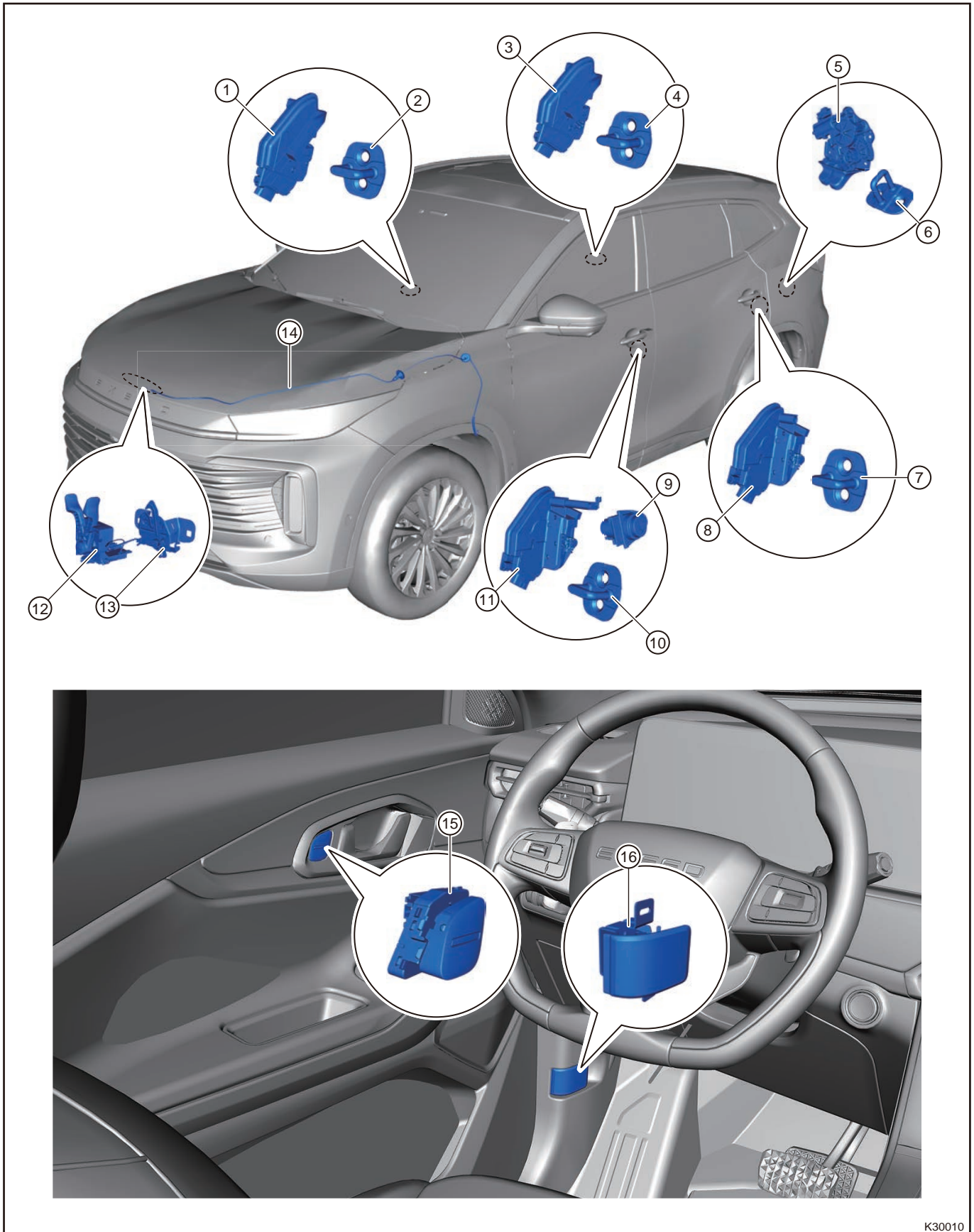
- (1) Side door lock is secured to door inner panel with 3 bolts, evenly apply appropriate amount of thread lock adhesive to 5 to 7 teeth of 3 door lock mounting bolts in advance; pay attention to keep child lock locking when assembling rear door lock.
- (2) Align middle lines in up-down and left-right directions on lock striker with line on quarter, which should be ensured at the center of lock mechanism to ensure flexible locking and unlocking.

55.2 System Overview

1 System Description

Door lock system is a device mounted on the door and its pillar, which can reliably lock the door and realize the opening and locking functions through its internal mechanism. It is a very important accessory of body. It has safety protection function, which must guarantee reliable locking of door in the normal use, preventing the door accident/unintentional recognition to open. It also guarantee that door needs to open smoothly, to ensure that door can open in normal or when an emergency occurs, so as not to cause casualties and property losses which belongs to safety regulations.

2 System Components Diagram

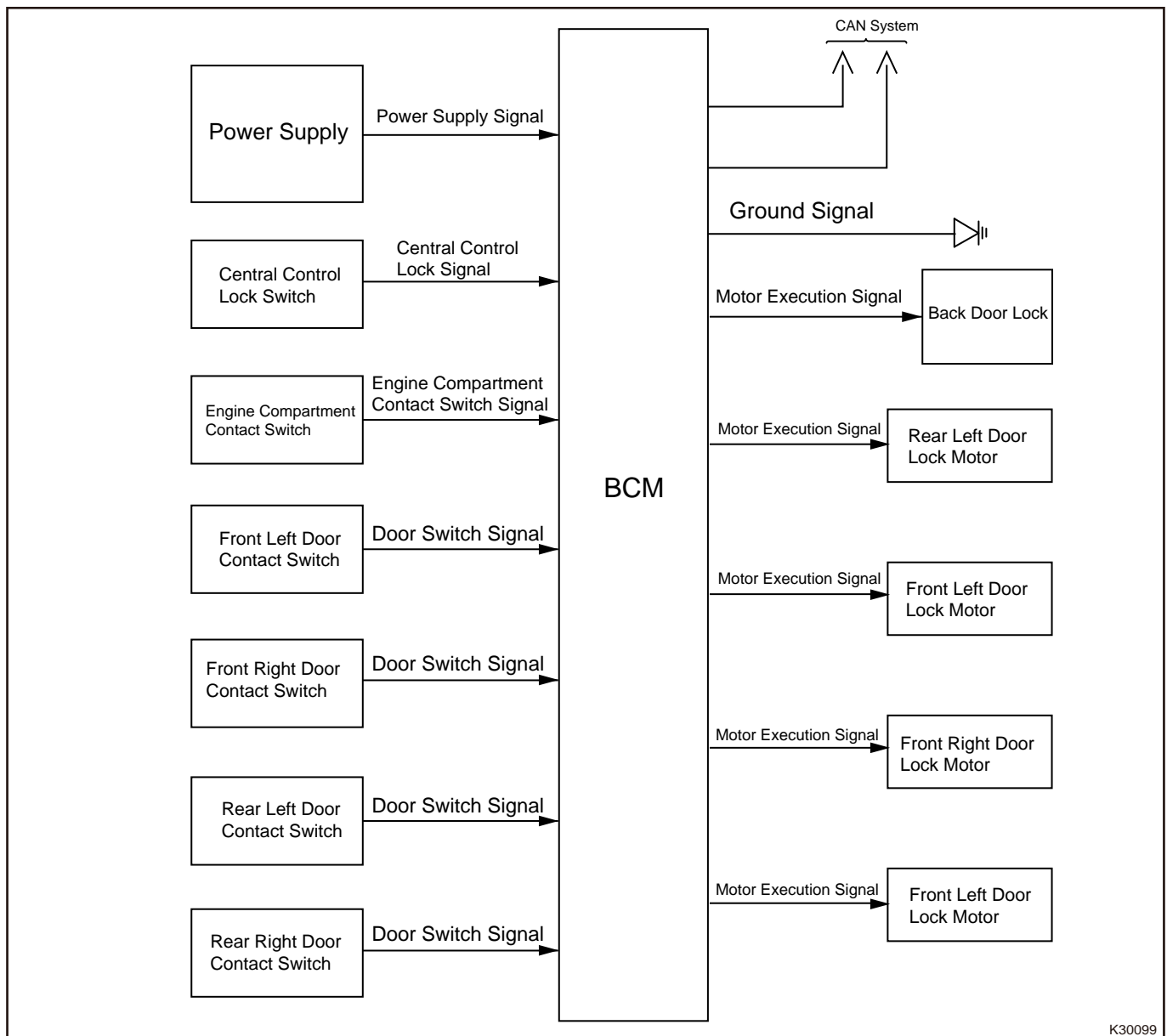


K30010

1	Front Right Door Lock Assembly	9	Front Left Door Key Cylinder Assembly
2	Front Door Lock Striker Assembly	10	Front Door Lock Striker Assembly
3	Rear Right Door Lock Assembly	11	Front Left Door Lock Assembly
4	Rear Door Lock Striker Assembly	12	Engine Hood Secondary Lock Opening Mechanism Assembly
5	Self-engage Back Door Lock Assembly	13	Engine Hood Lock Assembly
6	Self-engage Back Door Lock Striker Assembly	14	Cable Assembly - Connecting Main Lock
7	Rear Door Lock Striker Assembly	15	Central Control Lock Switch
8	Rear Left Door Lock Assembly	16	Engine Hood Lock Cable Release Handle Assembly

3 System Schematic Diagram

Battery provides 12 V power supply to BCM, and BCM controls motor operation. After working, the feedback signal is sent to BCM, and then BCM sends the door closing and opening signals to the instrument cluster via CAN system. At this time, the instrument cluster will display if door lock is closed.



4 Anti-theft management

4.1 Fortifying mode

- IGN = OFF (it is not in IGN ON or ACC position).
- Four doors & two covers are closed.
- BCM receives remote control lock command.
- BCM feedbacks when fortifying mode is entered.
- Turn signal light flashes once (turn on for 500 ms) and sends the corresponding LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts.
- Anti-theft indicator flashes at a frequency of 100 ms on, 1900 ms off.
- Actuate the anti-theft horn for 50 ms and high and low pitched horns for 15 ms.

4.2 Fortifying failure mode

- Trigger conditions.
- IGN = OFF.
- Any of four doors & two covers is opened.

- BCM receives remote control lock command.
- BCM light feedbacks when fortifying failure mode is entered.
- Turn signal light flashes two times (flashing for 500 ms, interval time is 1s) and sends the corresponding LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts signals.
- When entering fortifying failure mode: If four doors are closed and any of the two covers is opened, BCM will perform central control lock command once; If two covers are closed and any of the doors is opened, BCM will perform central control lock command and then perform unlock command (the interval time is 500 ms).

4.3 Intrusion mode

- Trigger conditions: BCM will enter to alarm status after the following conditions are met when the vehicle is in fortifying mode.
- Doors or engine hood is opened.
- Key is turned to IGN ON.
- Luggage compartment is opened forcibly.
- After entering to intrusion mode, BCM feedback the conditions within one alarm cycle (30 s).
- Anti-theft horn (high and low pitched horns sound at frequency of 500 ms on and 500 ms off) operates for 28 ± 2 s, and pauses for 5 s.
- Left and right turn signal lights flash for 28s at frequency of 75 times/min (400 ms on, 400 ms off) and pause for 5 s, and send the corresponding LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts;
- Anti-theft indicator continuously flashes at frequency of 100 ms on, 200 ms off, 100 ms on, 600 ms off.
- Four doors & two covers and IGN ON illegal activation action are alarm trigger sources.
- In the same alarm source, a single trigger source can trigger 3 alarm cycles at most.
- In multiple alarm trigger sources, BCM can trigger 8 alarm cycles at most (after 8 alarm cycles, the sound and light alarm will stop).
- If the intrusion ends, BCM will stop alarming after the current alarm cycle. If the same alarm source is triggered again after the alarm is over, BCM will perform the remaining alarm cycles.
- If the four doors & two covers are closed at the end of the alarm, BCM will enter fortifying mode.
- Fortifying deactivation mode.
- Activation conditions: Vehicle is in alarm mode; BCM receives RF unlock command or BCM detects IMMOCodeWarningLightSts=0 for 1 s continuously after the key is switched to IGN ON for 2 seconds.
- When the alarm is released: vehicle exits anti-theft function mode; anti-theft horn (high and low pitched horns (if equipped)) stops working, and the turn signal light stops flashing.
- After alarm is released, if key is not in IGN ON, anti-theft indicator light still flashes at a frequency of 100 ms on, 200 ms off, 100 ms on and 600 ms off; if the key is in IGN ON, anti-theft indicator light stops flashing.
- Pre-rearming mode.
- Trigger conditions.
- Vehicle is in fortifying mode.
- BCM receives remote control unlock command.
- BCM feedbacks when fortifying mode is released:
- Anti-theft indicator turns off immediately.
- Turn signal light flashes 2 times at frequency of 500 ms on and 500 ms off, and sends the corresponding LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts.
- Within 30 ± 2 s after fortifying mode is released.
- If any of four doors & two covers are open, BCM exits anti-theft mode.
- If all doors, engine hood and luggage compartment are always closed, BCM will lock automatically and enter the fortifying state after 30 s, and anti-theft indicator will flash at the frequency of 100 ms on and 1900 ms off.
- Luggage compartment opening mode.
- Trigger conditions.
- Vehicle is in fortifying mode.
- BCM receives the remote control luggage compartment open command for more than 1.5 s.

- BCM feedbacks when luggage compartment opening mode is triggered.
- Turn signal light illuminates and sends the corresponding LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts.
- Luggage compartment is open and no alarm is triggered.
- Then close the luggage compartment, vehicle returns to the fortifying state, and if there is no legal key, the luggage compartment switch cannot open luggage compartment.
- After using remote control to open the luggage compartment: After BCM receives remote control lock command, vehicle will immediately lock and return to fortifying state, but the turn signal light prompts fortifying failure.
- After using remote control to open the luggage compartment and close it again: After BCM receives remote control lock command, vehicle will immediately lock and return to fortifying state, but the turn signal light prompts fortifying successfully. If there is no registered key after the luggage compartment closed, the switch will not open the luggage compartment.

4.4 Luggage compartment opening management (without PLG)

- When the central control lock is in unlock state.
- When the luggage compartment opening switch is activated, the luggage compartment opens.
- When the central control lock is in lock state.
- Luggage compartment is opened.
- IGN OFF.
- BCM receives RF luggage compartment command for more than 1.5 s.
- Turn signal light illuminates and sends the corresponding LHTurnsignalSts and RHTurnsignalSts.
- Luggage compartment is opened.
- After luggage compartment is opened by remote control, close it manually, if there is no registered key (PKE), the luggage compartment will not open by the luggage compartment button.

Caution

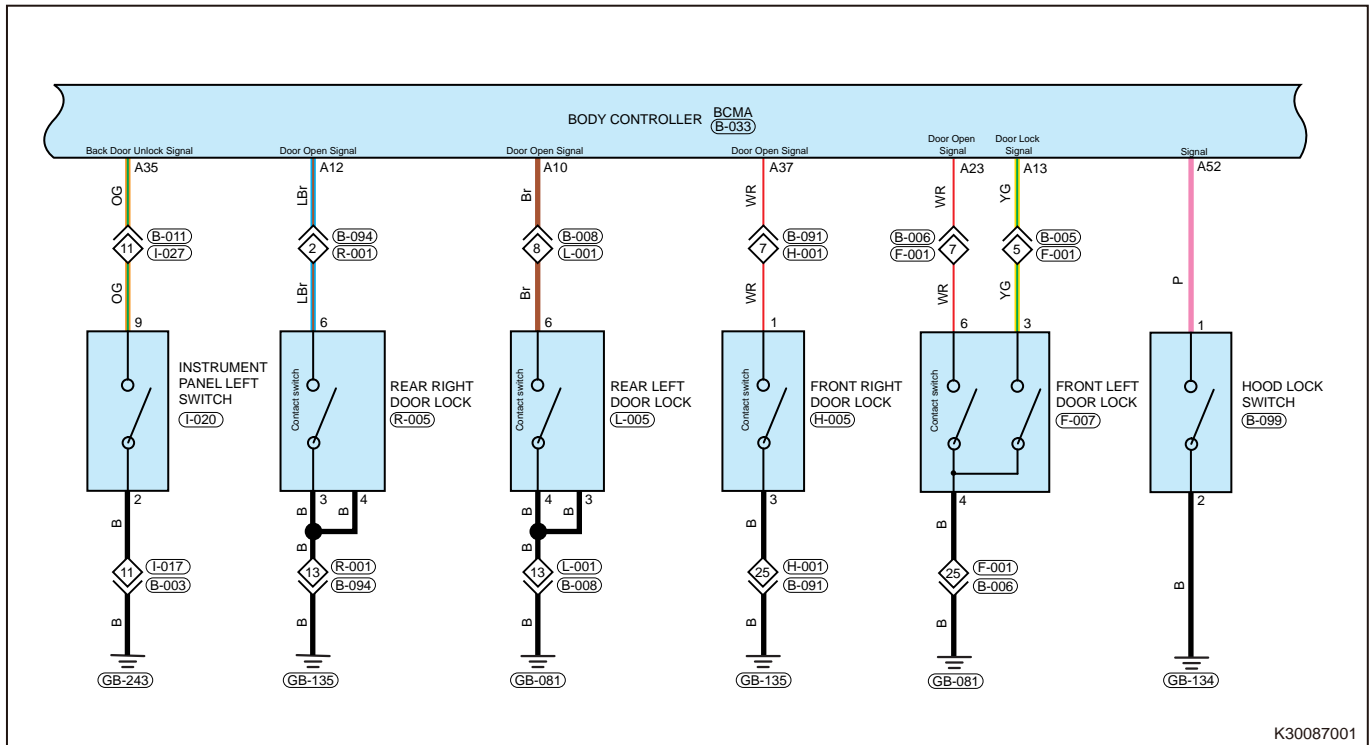
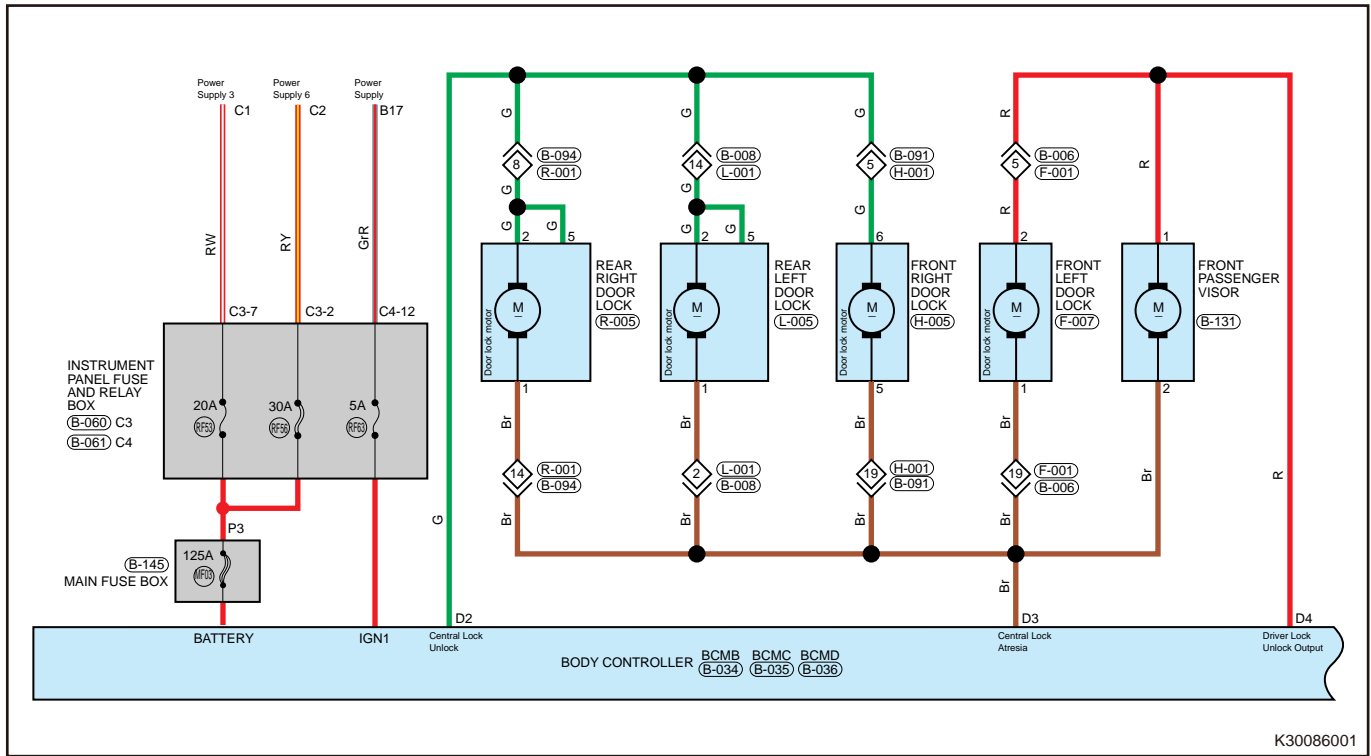
- **When luggage compartment is opened, the luggage compartment light turns on.**
- **When luggage compartment is opened, the actuate time of motor is 200 ms.**
- **When the vehicle speed reaches 10km/h, the luggage compartment will not be opened (please note that the ignition remains in IGN while testing - BSM is 15 nodes).**

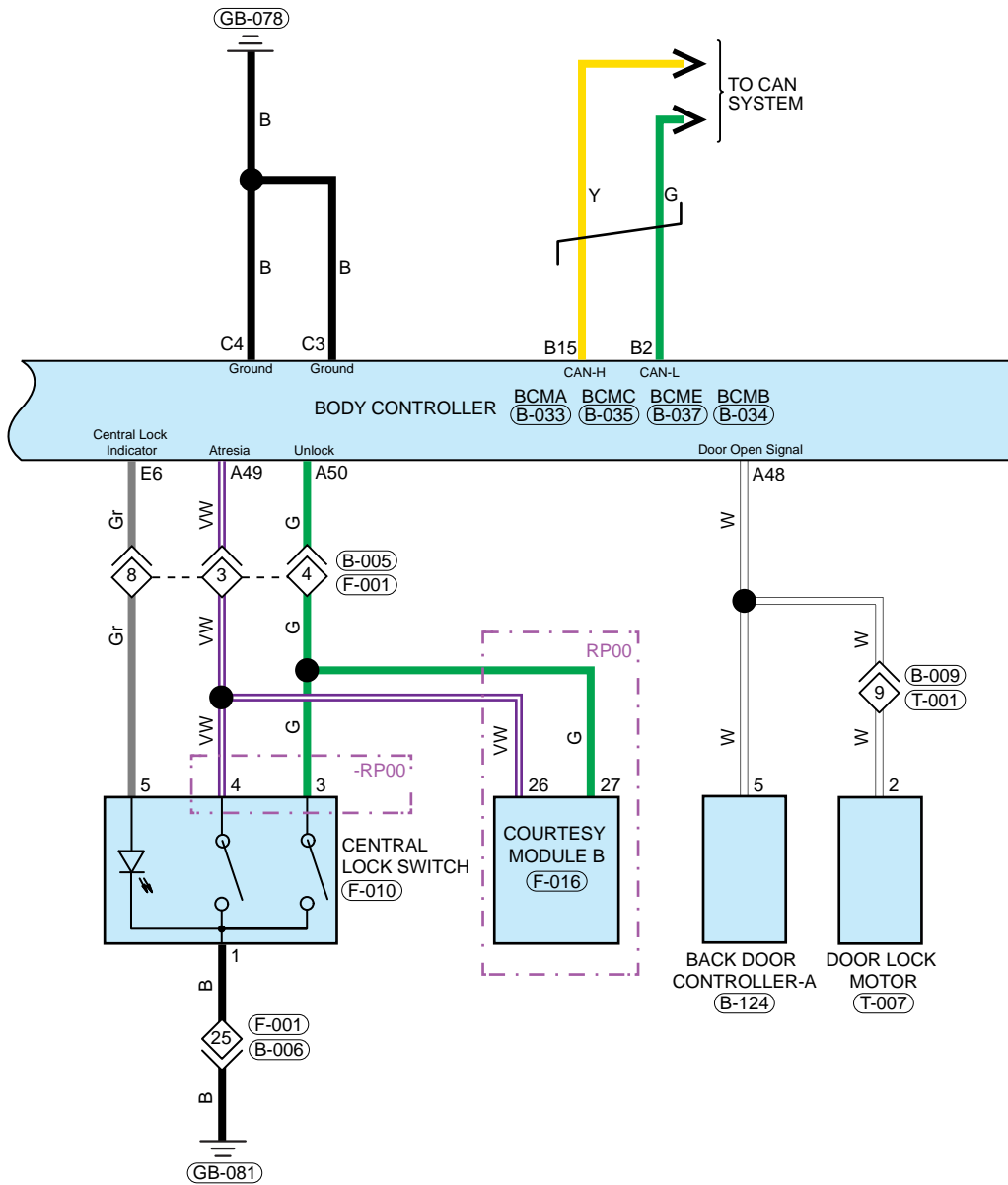
4.5 Luggage compartment opening management (with PLG)

- When vehicle is in fortifying deactivation mode.
- When the luggage compartment switch is activated, the luggage compartment opens/closes; turn signal light flashes twice, 200ms ON - 200ms OFF.
- During process of opening/closing back door, press remote control briefly to stop the current action of back door.
- Global fortifying.
- When GlobaSW is pressed and following conditions are met, BCM performs vehicle fortifying.
- IGN OFF.
- Four doors and engine hood are closed.
- Back door is locked within 10 s.
- When the vehicle is in fortifying mode.
- Luggage compartment is open/closed.
- IGN OFF/ACC position.
- BCM receives remote control luggage compartment command for more than 1.5 s.
- Turn signal light flashes twice, 200ms ON - 200ms OFF.
- During back door opening/closing process, short press wireless controller, back door stops the current operation.
- After back door is closed, the vehicle returns to fortifying state.

55.3 System Circuit Diagram

1 Circuit Diagram





K30088001

55.4 Diagnostic Information and Steps

1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

- Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair, replace or adjust faulty components as necessary.

Power Door Lock Control System:

Symptom	Suspected Area
All door lock/unlock functions do not operate	Body control module (BCM) fuse
	Power door unlock/lock switch button
	Wire harness or connector
	Body Control Module (BCM)
Only driver side door lock/unlock function does not operate	Front left door lock assembly
	Wire harness or connector
Only passenger side door lock/unlock function does not operate	Front right door lock assembly
	Wire harness or connector
Only rear left door lock/unlock function does not operate	Rear left door lock assembly
	Wire harness or connector
Only rear right door lock/unlock function does not operate	Rear right door lock assembly
	Wire harness or connector
Only back door open/close function does not operate	Back door lock assembly
	Wire harness or connector

Wireless Door Lock Control System:

Symptom	Suspected Area
Only wireless control function does not operate	Wireless key battery
	Anti-theft matching
	Wire harness or connector
	Body Control Module (BCM)

2 Diagnostic Help

- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface, and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If DTC cannot be deleted, malfunction is current.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- If numerous trouble codes are set, refer to circuit diagram and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

■ **Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.**

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait for a few seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

■ **If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:**

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was reset.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggle test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect the mounting areas of instrument cluster, wire harness or wire harness connector and so on for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- Remove instrument cluster from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test. If this DTC cannot be cleared, instrument cluster is malfunctioning. If DTC can be cleared, reinstall instrument cluster to original vehicle.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

5 Ground Inspection

Groundings are very important to entire circuit system, which are normal or not can seriously affect the entire circuit system. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) and oxidation may increase load resistance. This case will seriously affect normal operation of circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

6 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the door lock system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

Standard Condition

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V.

Result

NG	Replace the battery.
-----------	-----------------------------

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Result

Result	Go to
No DTC	A
DTC is output	B

A	Perform troubleshooting procedure without DTCs according to malfunction symptom
----------	--

B

4	Troubleshoot according to DTCs troubleshooting procedure
----------	---

Result

Result	Go to
Problem is not resolved	A
Problem is resolved	B

A	Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again
----------	---

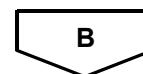
B

5	According to door lock system malfunction repair completion inspection and delivery, confirm that malfunction is resolved.
----------	---

Result

Result	Go to
Delivery inspection is failed	A
Delivery inspection is qualified	B

A	Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again
----------	---



6	Finished
----------	-----------------

7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

■ BCM Door Lock

DTC	DTC Definition	Detection Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B1018-71	Driver Unlock Built-in Relay Stuck Fault	When the output is OFF and ignition switch is OFF, output voltage is more than 7 V, (error is within 10% and duration is more than 100 MS, software will detect once every 10 MS, and it will be determined after at least 3 consecutive detections, detection starts after being powered on for 2 seconds, regardless of the key position, the detection can be performed as long as load working conditions are met and load is output.) It is stored as the current DTC.	Relay problem	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relay • Check BCM
B1013-71	Central Control Lock Built-in Relay Stuck Fault			
B1014-71	Central Control Unlock Built-in Relay Stuck Fault			
B1024-71	Luggage Compartment Unlock Relay Stuck	/		

8 Relay Stuck Fault

DTC	DTC Definition
B1018 - 71	Driver Unlock Built-in Relay Stuck Fault

■ **Malfunction reason:**

- Front left door lock assembly.
- Wire harness or connector.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check front left door lock motor

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the door lock motor connector.
- Apply voltage no less than 12 V to door lock motor, and check if door lock operates.

NG

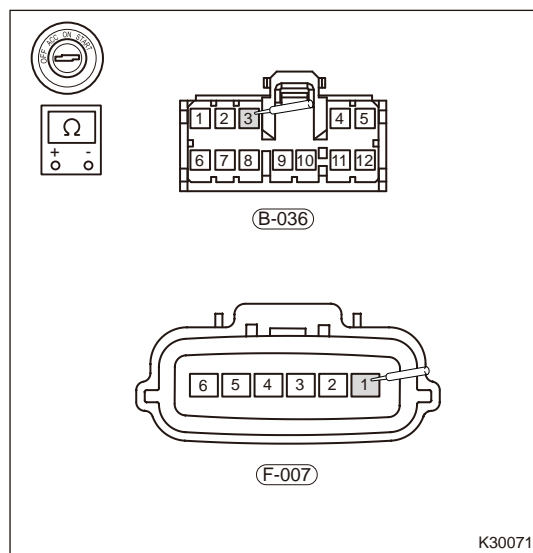
Replace front left door lock motor

OK

2 Check front left door lock motor and wire harness connector

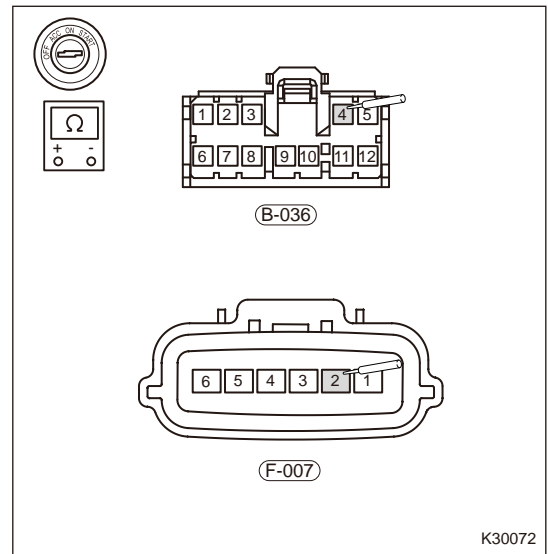
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between connector B-036 (3) and front left door lock motor connector F-007 (1).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (3) - F-007 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between connector B-036 (4) and F-007 (2).

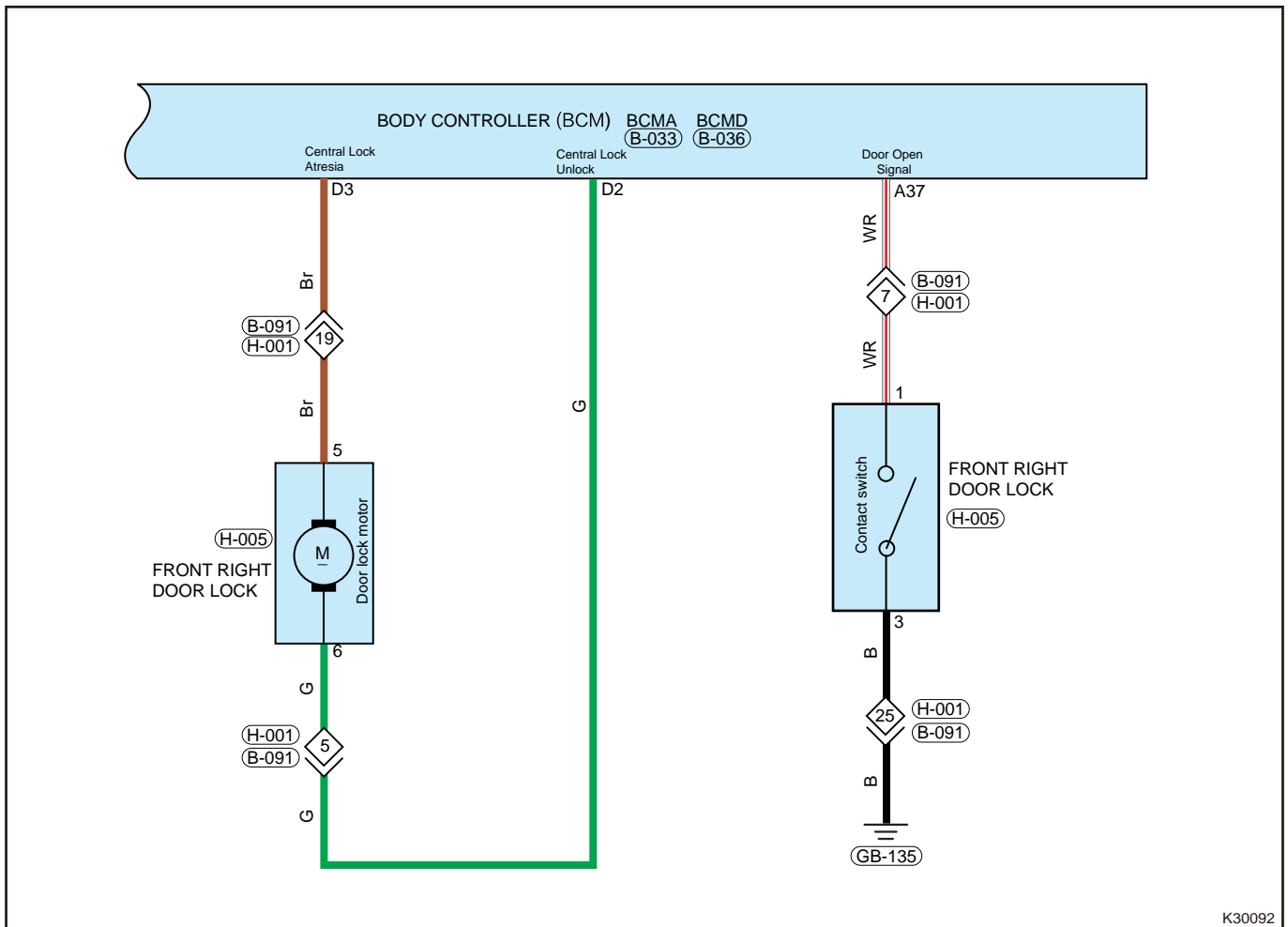
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (4) - F-007 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK	End
-----------	-----

NG	Repair or replace front left door lock related wire harness
-----------	---

DTC	DTC Definition
/	Only Front Passenger Side Door Lock/Unlock Function does not Operate



K30092

■ **Malfunction reason:**

- Front right door lock assembly.
- Wire harness or connector.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check front right door lock motor

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the door lock motor connector.
- Apply voltage no less than 12 V to door lock motor, and check if door lock operates.

NG

Replace front right door lock motor

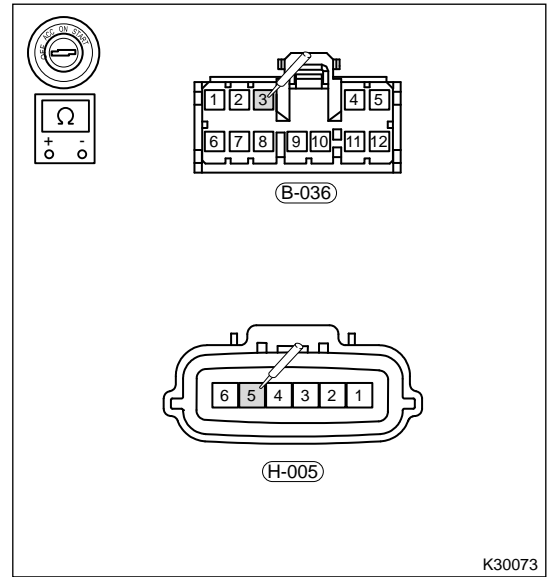
OK

2 Check front right door lock motor and wire harness connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.

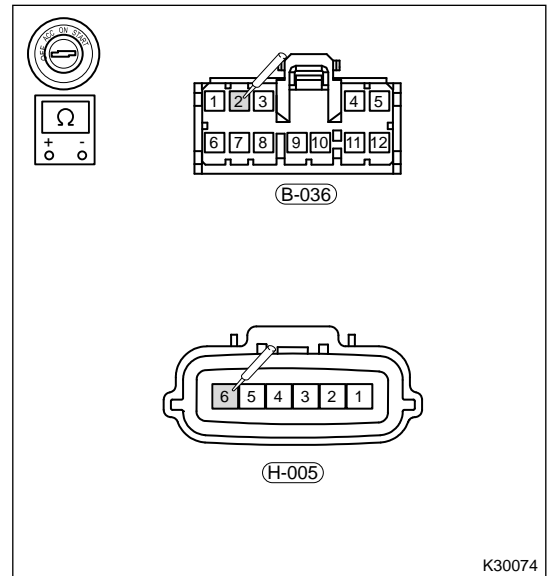
(c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between front right door lock connector H-005 (5) and BCM connector B-036 (3).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (3) - H-005 (5)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between front right door lock connector H-005 (6) and BCM connector B-036 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (2) - H-005 (6)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Repair or replace front right door lock related wire harness

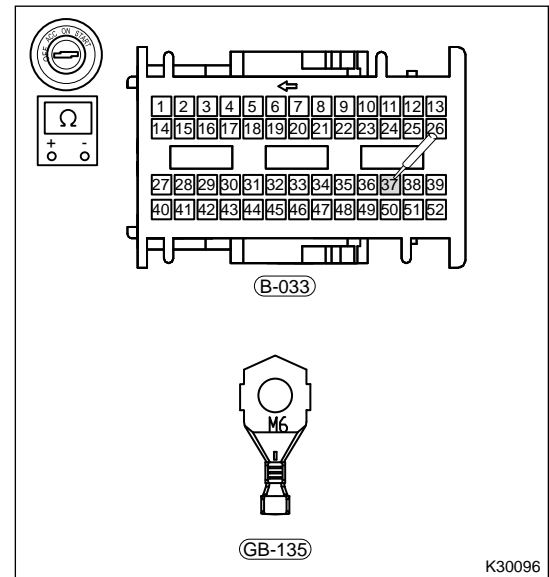
OK

3 Check front right door lock contact switch signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the BCM connector B-033.

- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-033 (37) terminal and front right door contact switch ground point GB-135.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-033 (37) - GB-135	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



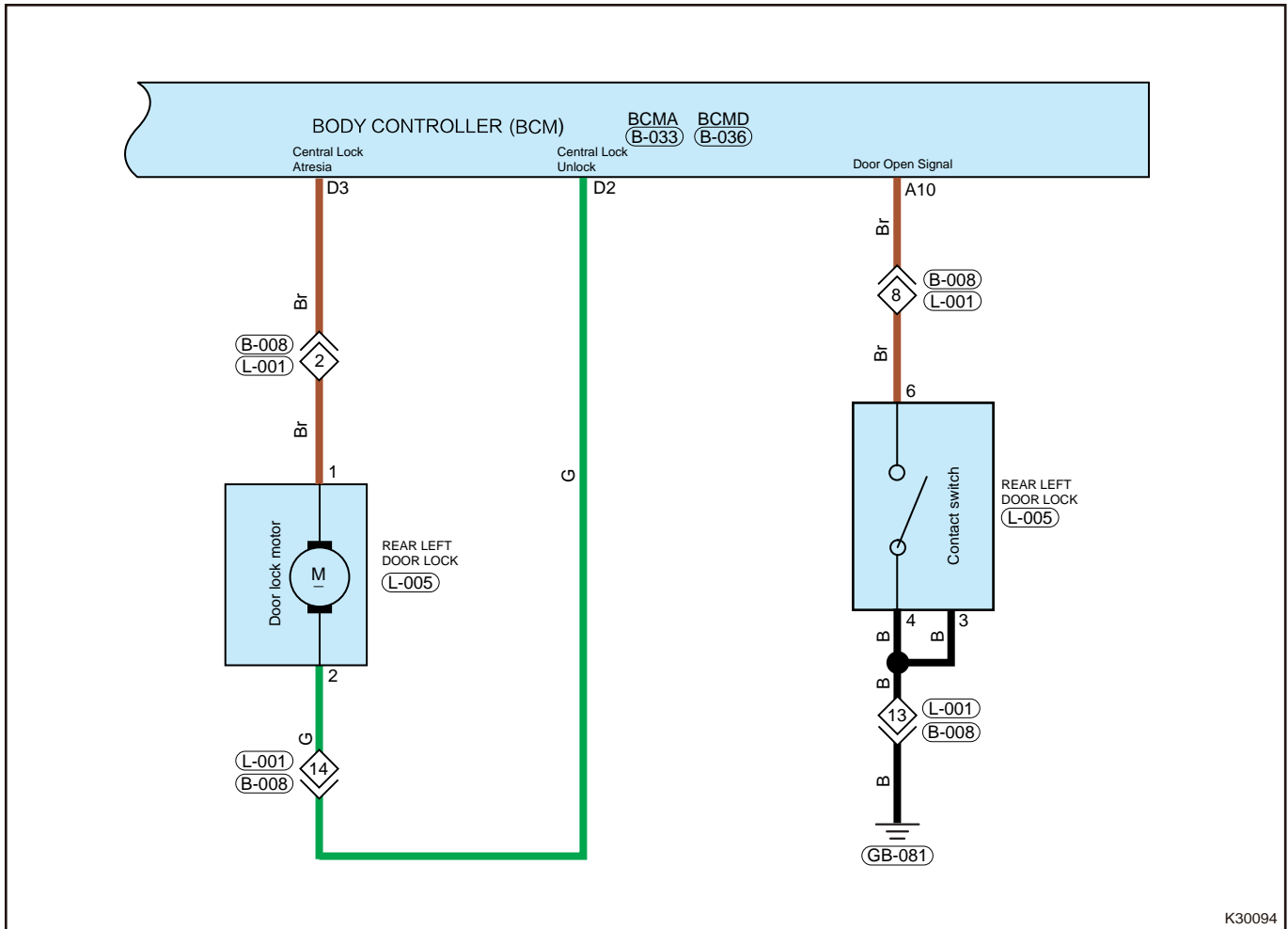
OK

End

NG

Repair or replace front right door lock contact switch ground wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
/	Only Rear Left Door Lock/Unlock Function does not Operate



K30094

Malfunction reason:

- Rear left door lock assembly.
- Wire harness or connector.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check rear left door lock motor

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the door lock motor connector.
- Apply voltage no less than 12 V to door lock motor, and check if door lock operates.

NG Replace rear left door lock motor

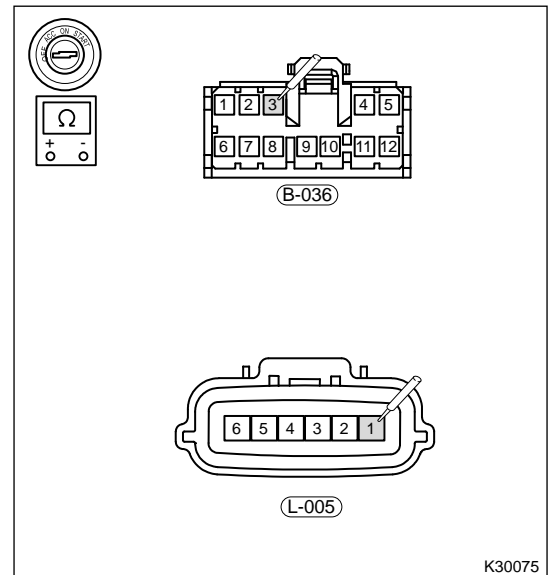
OK

2 Check rear left door lock motor and wire harness connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.

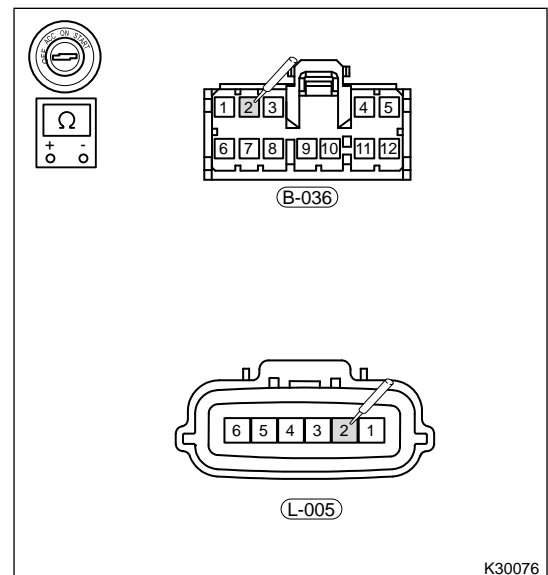
- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between rear left door lock connector L-005 (1) and BCM connector B-036 (3).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (3) - L-005 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



- (d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between rear left door lock connector L-005 (2) and BCM connector B-036 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-036 (2) - L-005 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG

Repair or replace rear left door lock related wire harness

OK

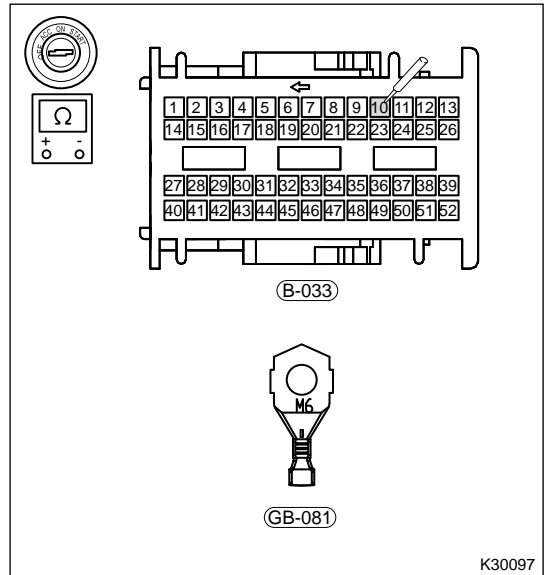
3

Check rear left door lock contact switch signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
 (b) Disconnect the BCM connector B-033.

(c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-033 (10) terminal and rear left door contact switch ground point GB-081.

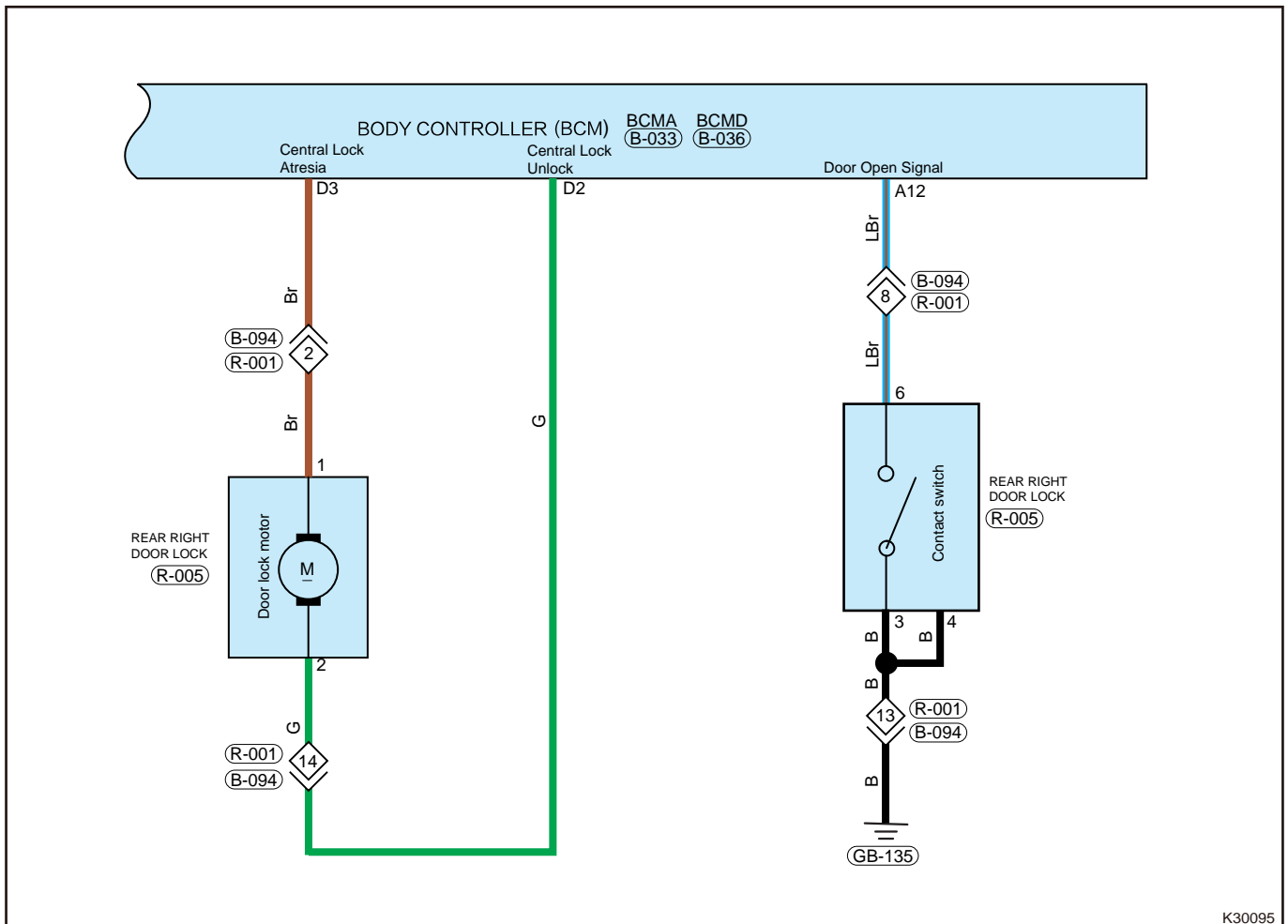
Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-033 (10) - GB-081	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK	End
-----------	-----

NG	Repair or replace rear left door lock contact switch ground wire harness
-----------	--

DTC	DTC Definition
/	Only Rear Right Door Lock/Unlock Function does not Operate



K30095

■ **Malfunction reason:**

- Rear right door lock assembly.
- Wire harness or connector.

Hint:

When performing circuit diagnosis and test, always refer to the circuit diagram for specific circuit and component information.

1 Check rear right door lock motor

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the door lock motor connector.
- Apply voltage no less than 12 V to door lock motor, and check if door lock operates.

NG

Replace rear right door lock motor

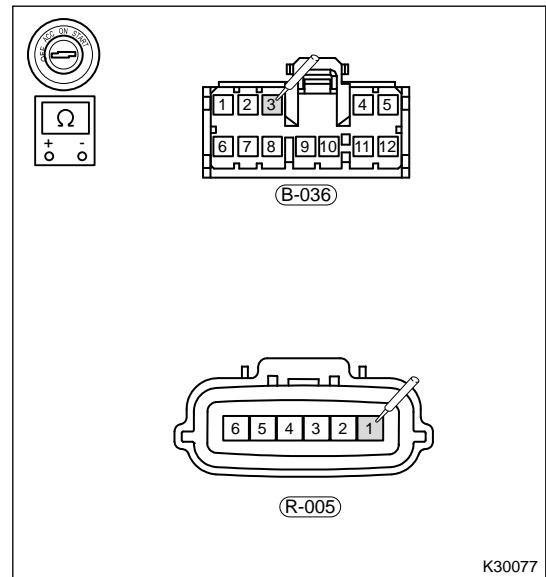
OK

2 Check rear right door lock motor and wire harness connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery cable.

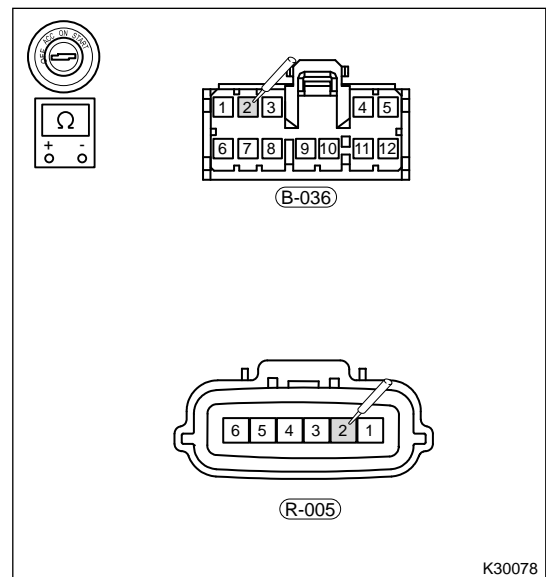
(c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between rear right door lock connector R-005 (1) and BCM connector B-036 (3).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-005 (1) - B-036 (3)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(d) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between rear right door lock connector R-005 (2) and BCM connector B-036 (2).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
R-005 (2) - B-036 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



NG Repair or replace rear right door lock related wire harness

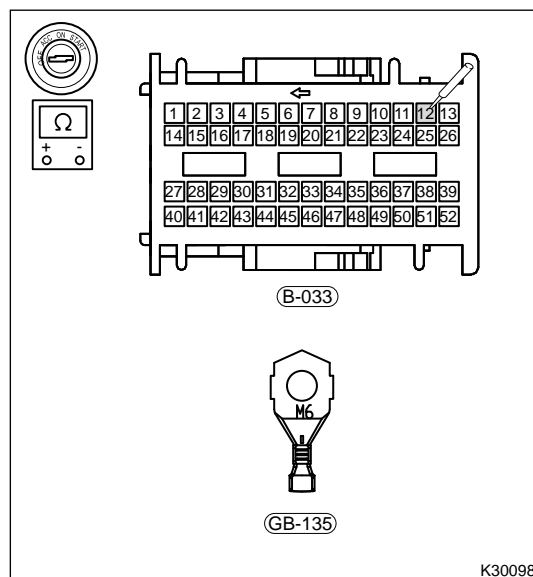
OK

3 Check rear right door lock contact switch signal circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the BCM connector B-033.

- (c) Using ohm band of multimeter, check for continuity between B-033 (12) terminal and rear right door contact switch ground point GB-135.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-033 (12) - GB-135	Always	$\leq 1 \Omega$



OK

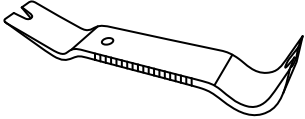
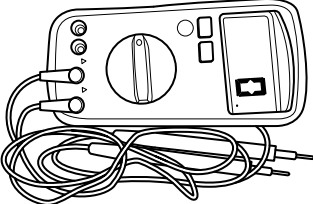
End

NG

Repair or replace rear right door lock contact switch ground wire harness

55.5 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>
Digital Multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>

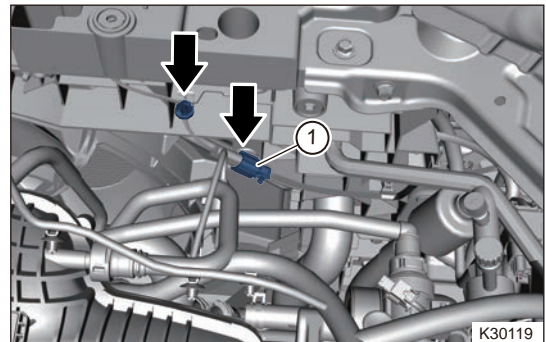
2 Replacement of Engine Hood Lock Assembly

2.1 Removal

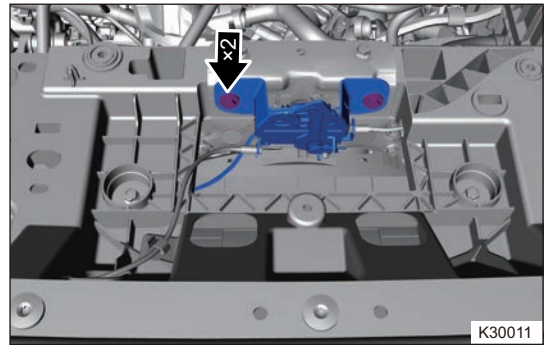
Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood lock assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing engine hood lock assembly.

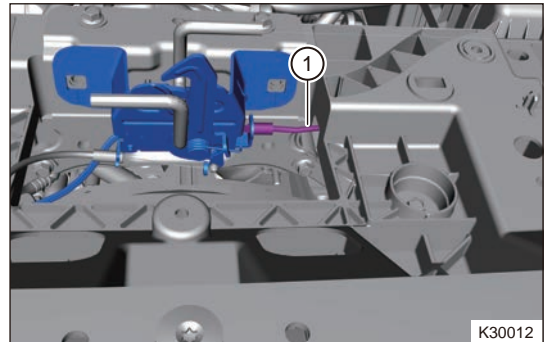
- (1) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (2) Disconnect connector (1) from engine hood lock assembly, and remove 2 fixing clips from engine hood lock.



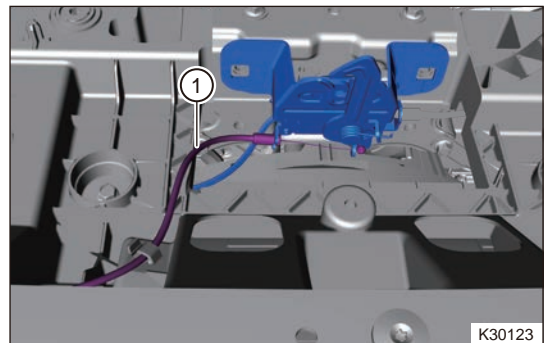
- (3) Remove 2 fixing bolts from engine hood lock assembly.



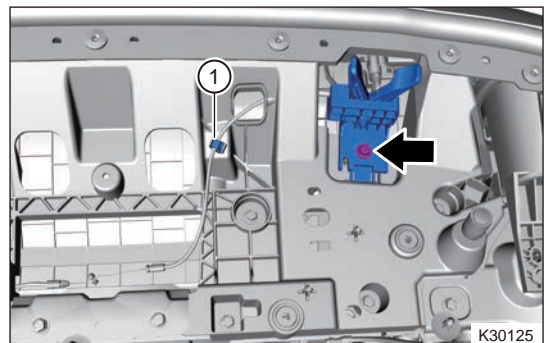
- (4) Release clip, disengage engine hood lock cable assembly (1) from slot.



- (5) Release clip, disengage engine hood secondary lock cable assembly (1) from slot and remove engine hood lock assembly.



- (6) Release clip, disengage engine hood secondary lock cable assembly (1) from slot and remove 1 fixing bolt from engine hood secondary lock opening mechanism assembly.



- (7) Remove the engine hood secondary lock opening mechanism assembly.

2.2 Inspection

- (1) Check if engine hood lock operates properly.
- (2) Check if engine hood secondary lock assembly operates properly.

2.3 Installation

Caution

- **Check if engine hood lock operates properly after installing engine hood lock assembly.**
- **Be sure to install it in place, otherwise, there will be a risk of falling off.**

- (1) Install engine hood secondary lock opening assembly, install and tighten 1 fixing bolt to engine hood secondary lock opening mechanism assembly.
Torque: 10 ± 1.5 N·m
- (2) Connect engine hood secondary lock cable to engine hood lock, and secure engine hood secondary lock cable clip.
- (3) Connect engine hood lock cable to engine hood lock and secure clip.
- (4) Install and tighten 2 fixing bolts to engine hood lock assembly (10# socket wrench).
Torque: 10 ± 1.5 N·m
- (5) Connect the engine hood lock assembly connector.

3 Replacement of Engine Hood Cable Assembly

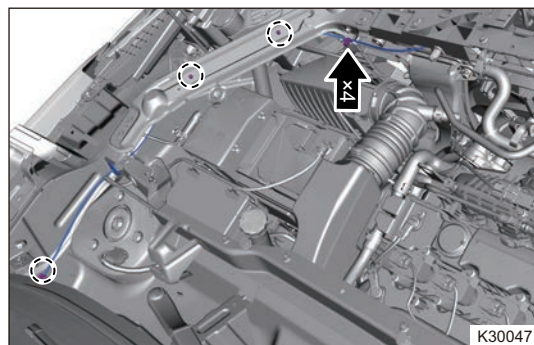
3.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood cable assembly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing engine hood cable assembly.**

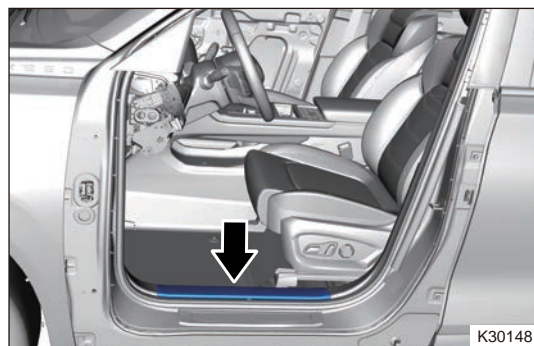
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (4) Remove the wing assembly.
- (5) Remove the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (6) Remove the front wiper motor and connecting rod assembly.
- (7) Remove the engine hood lock assembly.

- (8) Disengage 4 fixing clips from engine hood cable assembly.

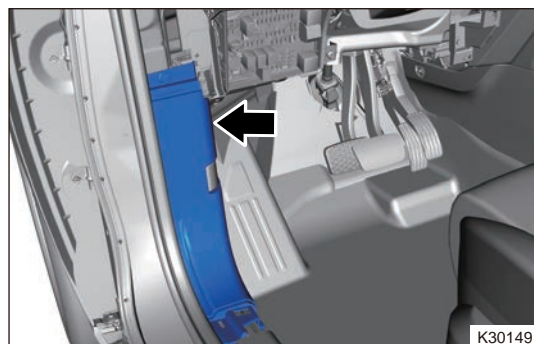


- (9) Remove the instrument panel lower left protector assembly.

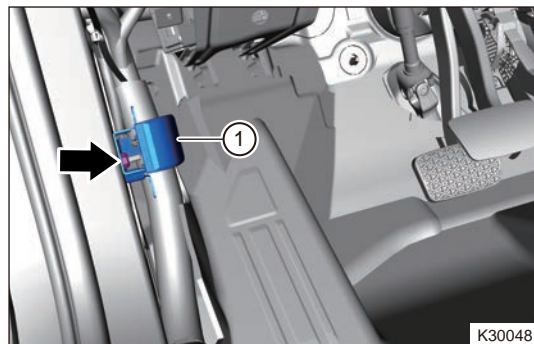
- (10) Remove the front left doorsill pedal body assembly.



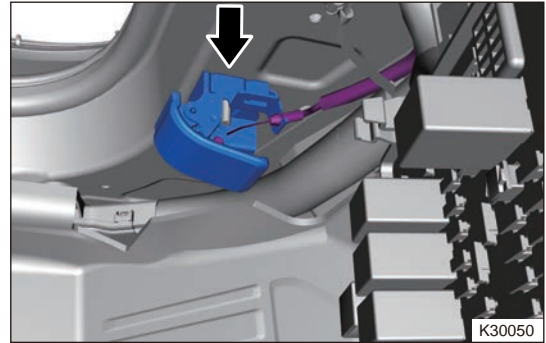
- (11) Remove the left A-pillar lower protector body assembly.



- (12) Remove 1 fixing bolt from engine hood lock cable release handle assembly, and remove engine hood lock cable release handle assembly (1) from cable.



- (13) Disengage engine hood cable and engine hood lock cable release handle assembly.



- (14) Remove the engine hood cable assembly.

3.2 Inspection

- (1) Check if engine hood cable is stuck in back and forth movement.
- (2) Check if fixing clip on engine hood cable is complete.

3.3 Installation

Caution

- **Check if engine hood lock operates properly after installing engine hood lock.**
- **Be careful not to install cable with anti-misoperation mark reversed.**
- **Be sure to clamp in place, otherwise, there will be a risk of falling off.**

- (1) Install the engine hood cable assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Connect engine hood cable and engine hood lock cable release handle assembly.
- (3) Install engine hood lock cable release handle assembly, install and tighten 1 fixing bolt to engine hood lock cable release handle assembly.
Torque: 9 ± 1 N·m
- (4) Install 4 fixing clips to engine hood cable assembly.
- (5) Install the left A-pillar lower protector body assembly.
- (6) Install the front left doorsill pedal body assembly.
- (7) Install the instrument panel lower left protector assembly.
- (8) Install fixing clip to engine hood cable assembly.
- (9) Install the engine hood lock assembly.
- (10) Install the front wiper motor and connecting rod assembly.
- (11) Install the front windshield lower support assembly.
- (12) Install the wing assembly.
- (13) Install the engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (14) Connect the negative battery cable.

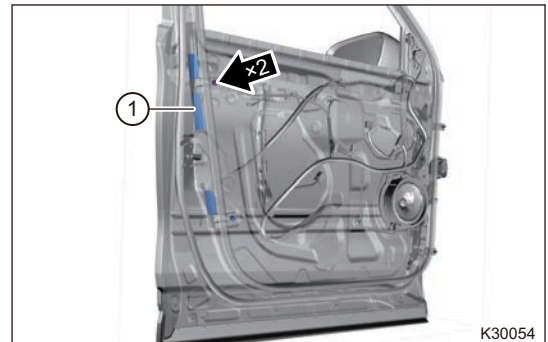
4 Replacement of Front Door Lock Assembly

4.1 Removal

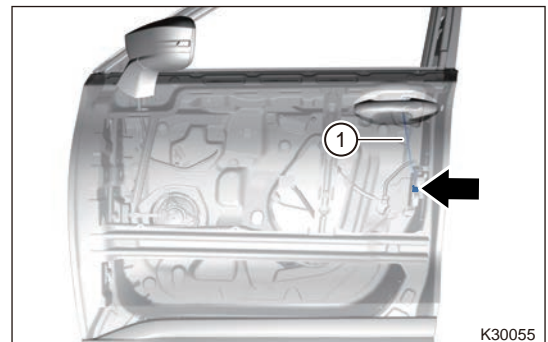
Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door lock assembly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing front door lock assembly.
- Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.

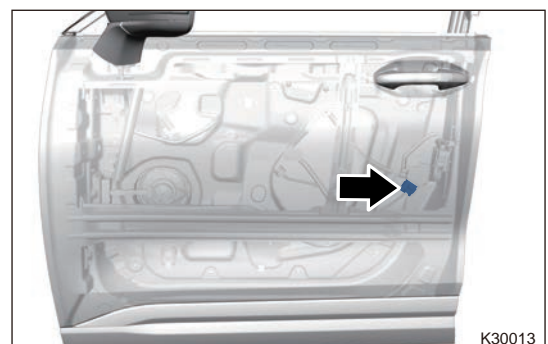
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the door control module assembly.
- (5) Remove the front left door protective film assembly.
- (6) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear left side of front left door glass guide rail, and move away glass guide rail (1).



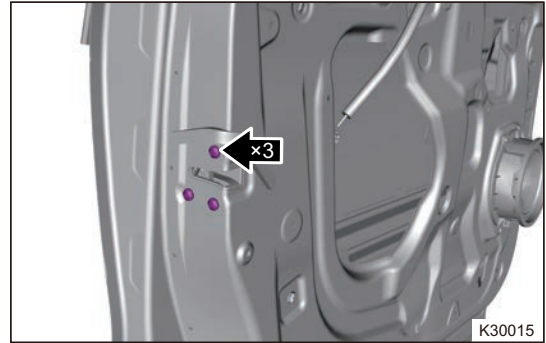
- (7) Remove clip and front left door outside handle rod assembly (1).



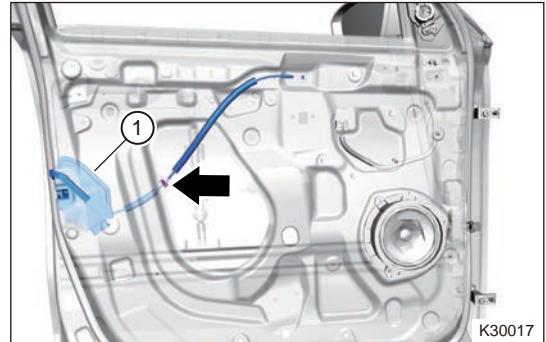
- (8) Disconnect connector from front left door lock assembly.



- (9) Remove 3 fixing bolts from door lock assembly.



- (10) Pry off inside handle cable fixing clip with interior crow plate, and remove front left door lock assembly (1).



4.2 Inspection

- (1) Check if front left door lock is stuck during opening and closing.
- (2) Check if appearance of front left door lock is complete.

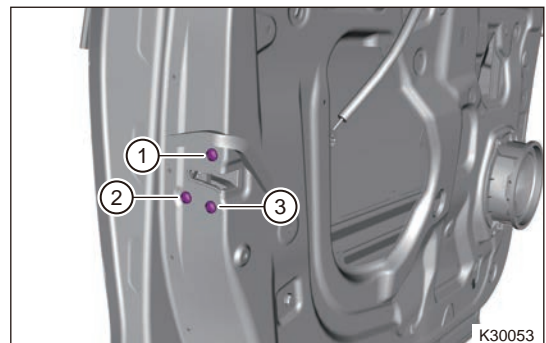
4.3 Installation

⚠ Caution

- Check if connector is installed correctly, when installing front door lock assembly.
- Install clips and cables in place, when installing front door lock assembly.
- Check if front door lock operates properly, after installing front door lock assembly.

- (1) Check if cable on lock body is stuck in place before installing, evenly apply appropriate amount of thread lock adhesive to 5 to 7 teeth of 3 door lock mounting bolts in advance.
- (2) Put assembled front left door lock module into the installation position through front left door inner panel with one hand, place key cylinder lever well, and take out handle end of cable from inner panel.
- (3) Pretighten bolts to door inner panel in the order of ①, ②, ③ in direction of arrow as shown in illustration with the other hand (screw in 2 to 3 teeth) and be careful not to fully tighten it. Then tighten mounting bolts of door lock with a tool in the order of ①, ②, ③.

Torque: $9.5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- (4) Clamp outside push rod into corresponding clip on lock body. When clamping sound is heard, it indicates that it is clamped in place. Continue to press clip to reconfirm if it is clamped in place.
- (5) Clamp key cylinder lever into clip on key cylinder. When clamping sound is heard, it indicates that it is clamped in place. Continue to press clip to reconfirm if it is clamped in place.
- (6) Connect wire harness connector to the corresponding lock body connector (the number of pins inside different connectors of lock body is different, and only the corresponding wire harness connector can be inserted).
- (7) Secure inner cable to fixing part on door panel with a fixing clip.
- (8) Install front left door glass guide rail, then install and tighten 2 fixing bolts.
- (9) Install the front left door protective film assembly.
- (10) Install the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

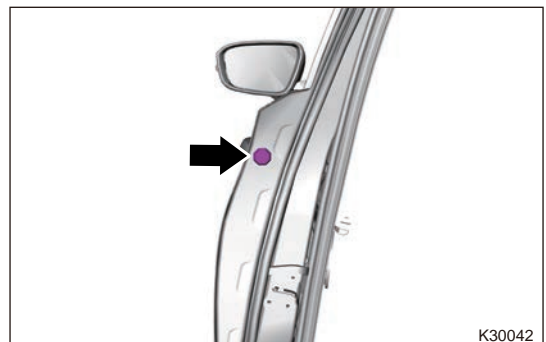
5 Replacement of Front Door Key Cylinder Assembly

5.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door key cylinder assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front door key cylinder assembly.**

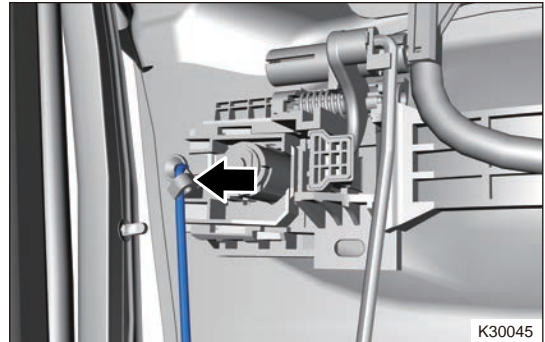
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the door control module assembly.
- (5) Remove the front left door protective film assembly.
- (6) Remove the front door outside handle protective cover block cover.



(7) Loosen 1 fixing screw from front door outside handle.



(8) Disengage the key cylinder lever.



(9) Slide and pull the front door outside handle in direction of arrow to remove it.



(10) Remove the outside handle gasket.



(11) Remove the key cylinder assembly.

5.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Install clip on lever in place when installing front door key cylinder assembly.**
- **Check if front door key cylinder operates properly, after installing front door key cylinder assembly.**

- (1) Install key cylinder assembly to a proper position on door.
- (2) Install the outside handle gasket.
- (3) Install the key cylinder lever.
- (4) Install the front door outside handle.
- (5) Install 1 fixing screw to front door outside handle.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (6) Install the front door outside handle protective cover block cover.
- (7) Install the front left door protective film assembly.
- (8) Install the door control module assembly.
- (9) Install the front left door protector assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

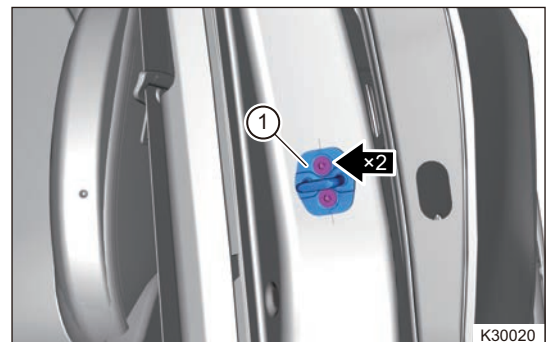
6 Replacement of Front Door Lock Striker

6.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door lock striker assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front door lock striker assembly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Remove 2 fixing screws from front door lock striker assembly, and remove front left door lock striker assembly (1).

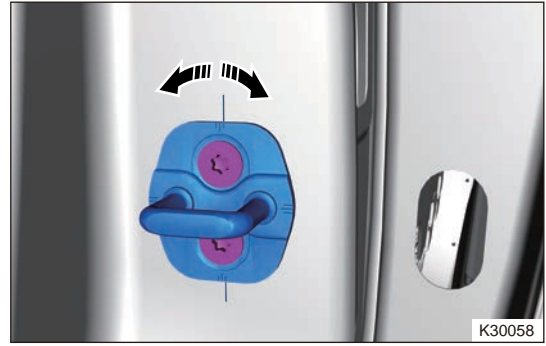


6.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **After installing lock striker to body, make left side of lettering face up and right side face down.**

- (1) Install lock striker to quarter with screw, pay attention to align middle line of lock striker with line on quarter, and then pretighten bolt.
Torque: $2.5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$



- (2) After lock striker position is adjusted, ensure that lock cylinder of lock striker is engaged with lock body in the center line of lock mouth, so as to ensure that the door can be normally opened and closed, finally, tighten it.
Torque: $25 \pm 3.75 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

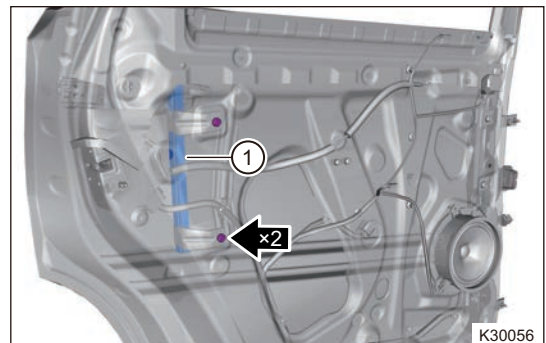
7 Replacement of Rear Left Door Lock Assembly

7.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door lock assembly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing rear door lock assembly.
- Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.

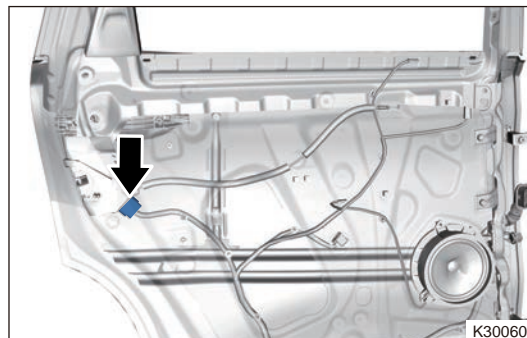
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear left door handle metal bracket.
- (5) Remove the rear left door protective film assembly.
- (6) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear left door rear glass guide rail assembly, and move away glass guide rail assembly (1).



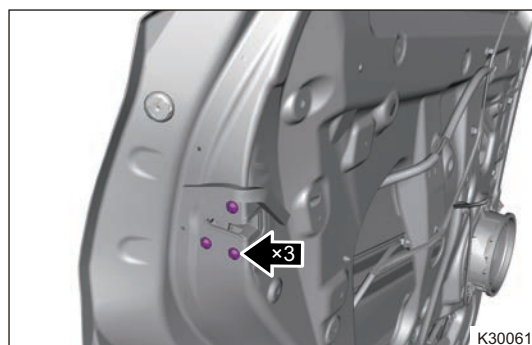
- (7) Remove the rear left door outside handle lever.



- (8) Disconnect connector from rear door lock assembly.



- (9) Remove 3 fixing screws from rear door lock assembly, and remove rear door lock assembly.



7.2 Installation

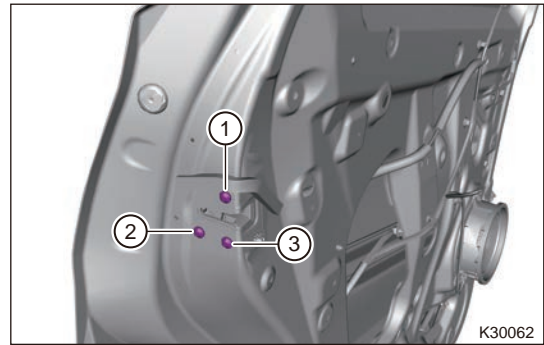
Caution

- Check if connector is installed correctly, when installing rear door lock assembly.
- Install clips and cables in place, when installing rear door lock assembly.
- Check if rear door lock operates properly, after installing rear door lock assembly.
- Pay attention to keep child lock closing when assembling rear door lock.

- (1) Check if cable on lock body is stuck in place before installing, evenly apply appropriate amount of thread lock adhesive to 5 to 7 teeth of 3 door lock mounting bolts in advance.
- (2) Put assembled rear left door lock module into the installation position through rear left door inner panel with one hand, and take out handle end of cable from inner panel.

- (3) Pretighten bolts to door inner panel in the order of ①, ②, ③ in direction of arrow as shown in illustration with the other hand (screw in 2 to 3 teeth) and be careful not to fully tighten it. Then tighten mounting bolts on door lock with a tool in the order of ①, ②, ③.

Torque: 9 ± 1 N·m



- (4) Clamp outside push rod into corresponding clip on lock body. When clamping sound is heard, it indicates that it is clamped in place. Continue to press clip to reconfirm if it is clamped in place.
- (5) Connect wire harness connector to corresponding connector on lock body (the number of pins inside different connectors on lock body is different, and only the corresponding wire harness connector can be inserted).
- (6) Secure inner cable to fixing part on door panel with a fixing clip.
- (7) Install the rear left door glass rear guide rail assembly.
- (8) Install the rear left door protective film assembly.
- (9) Install the rear left door handle metal bracket.
- (10) Install the rear left door protector assembly.
- (11) Connect the negative battery cable.

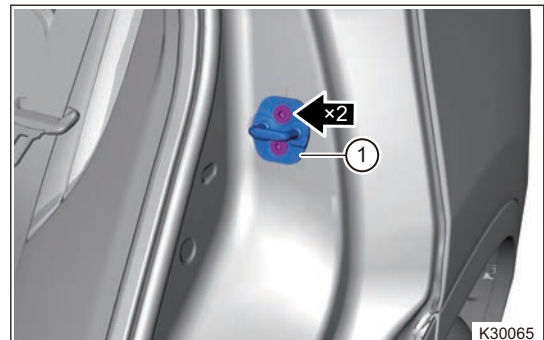
8 Replacement of Rear Door Lock Striker

8.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door lock striker.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear door lock striker.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Remove 2 fixing screws from rear door lock striker, and remove rear door lock striker assembly (1).



8.2 Installation

Caution

- After installing lock striker to body, make left side of lettering face up and right side face down.

- (1) Install lock striker to quarter with screw, pay attention to align middle line of lock striker with line on quarter, and then pretighten bolt.

Torque: 2.5 ± 1 N·m



- (2) After lock striker position is adjusted on CP7, ensure that lock cylinder of lock striker is engaged with lock body in the center line of lock mouth, so as to ensure that the door can be normally opened and closed, finally, tighten it.

Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m

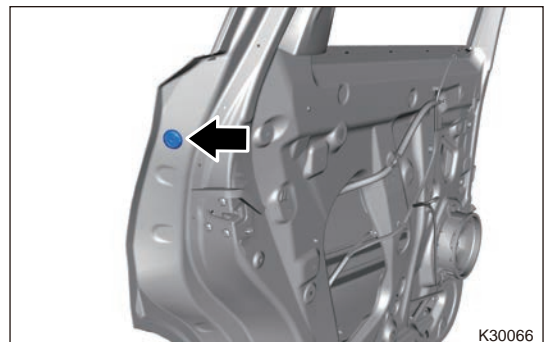
9 Replacement of Rear Left Outside Handle Assembly

9.1 Removal

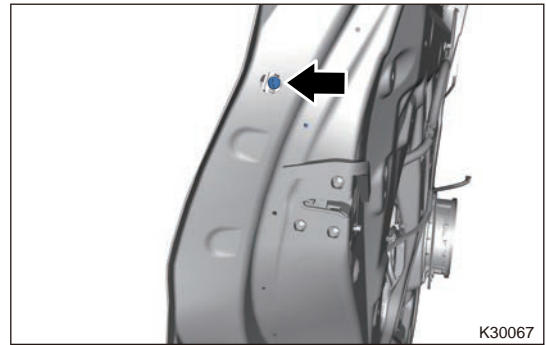
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear left door outside handle assembly.
- Try to prevent interior and body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear left door outside handle assembly.

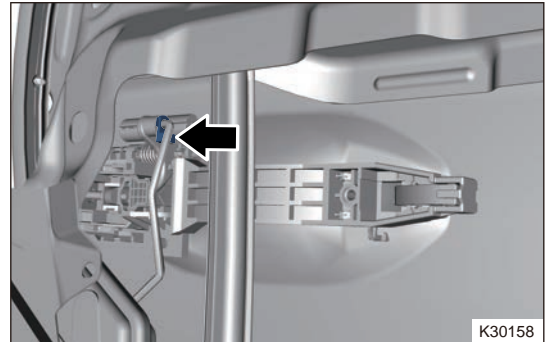
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the rear left door protective film assembly.
- (5) Remove the rear left door outside handle protective cover block cover.



- (6) Loosen 1 fixing screw from rear left door outside handle.



- (7) Disengage the outside handle lever.



- (8) Slide and pull the rear left door outside handle in direction of arrow to remove it.



9.2 Installation

Caution

- Install clip on lever in place when installing rear left door outside handle assembly.
- Check if rear left door key cylinder operates properly after installing rear left door outside handle assembly.

- (1) Install the rear left door outside handle.
- (2) Install outside handle lever to a proper position on door.
- (3) Install 1 fixing screw to rear left door outside handle.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Install the rear left door outside handle protective cover block cover.
- (5) Install the rear left door protective film assembly.

- (6) Install the rear left door protector assembly.
- (7) Connect the negative battery cable.

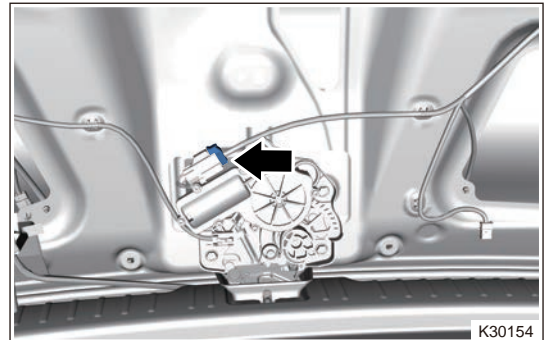
10 Replacement of Back Door Lock Assembly

10.1 Removal

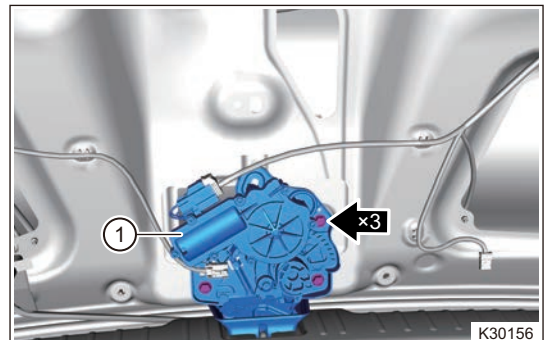
Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing back door lock assembly.**
- **Try to prevent interior and body paint from being scratched, when removing back door lock assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the back door lower protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect connector from back door lock assembly.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing bolts from back door lock assembly, and remove back door lock assembly (1).



10.2 Installation

Caution

- **Check if connector is installed correctly, when installing back door lock assembly.**
- **Check if back door lock assembly operates properly, after installing back door lock assembly.**

- (1) Install back door lock assembly to a proper position on body, and install 3 fixing bolts.
Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m

- (2) Connect connector to back door lock assembly.
- (3) Install the back door lower protector assembly.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

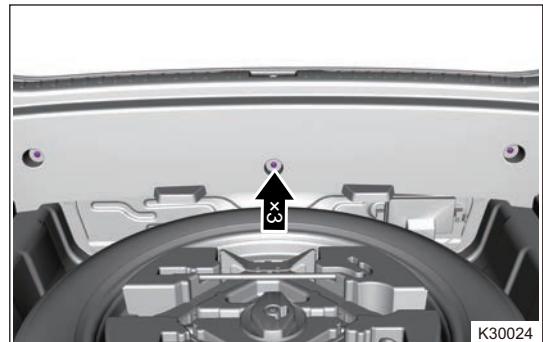
11 Replacement of Back Door Lock Striker Assembly

11.1 Removal

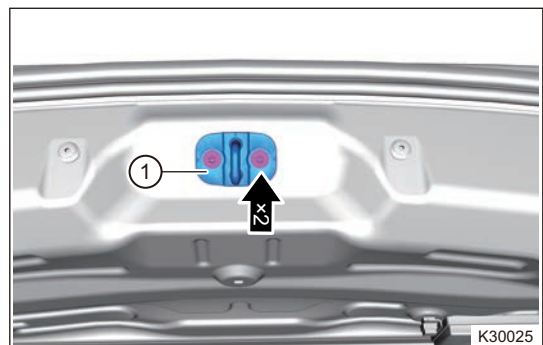
Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing back door lock striker assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing back door lock striker assembly.**

- (1) Remove 3 fixing screws from back door protector assembly, and remove back door protector assembly.



- (2) Remove 2 fixing screws from back door lock striker assembly, and remove back door lock striker assembly (1).



11.2 Installation

- (1) Install lock striker to rear panel assembly with bolt (first perform visual aligning with line and pre-install according to pre-tightening torque), close back door to check matching condition between lock and lock body, if back door is difficult to close, adjust lock striker (adjustment amount: ± 2 mm in Y direction, ± 3 mm in Z direction) until matching surface between lock body and lock striker meets the difference and clearance requirements (no obvious door opening noise), and then tighten bolts.

Torque: 23 ± 2 N·m

- (2) Install back door protector assembly, install and tighten 3 fixing screws.

12 Replacement of Central Control Lock Switch

12.1 Removal

Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing central control lock switch assembly.
- Try to prevent interior from being scratched, when removing central control lock switch assembly.

(1) Remove the front left door protector assembly.

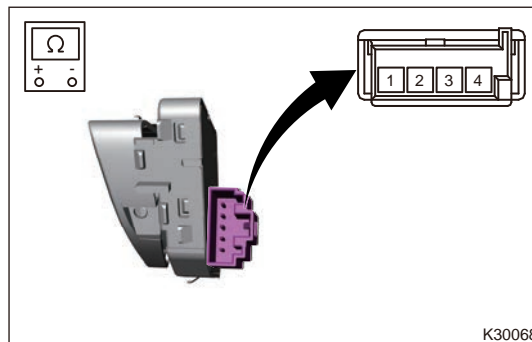
(2) Press and push switch from back.



12.2 Inspection

(1) Using ohm band of digital multimeter, measure central control lock switch terminal.

Multimeter Connection	Switch Condition	Specified Condition
Terminal 1 - Terminal 3	Press to lock	$\leq 1 \Omega$
Terminal 1 - Terminal 4	Press to unlock	$\leq 1 \Omega$



(2) If measurement result is not as specified, replace central control lock switch.

12.3 Installation

(1) Install central control lock switch assembly to a proper position on door, and connect central control lock switch connector.

(2) Install the front left door protector assembly.

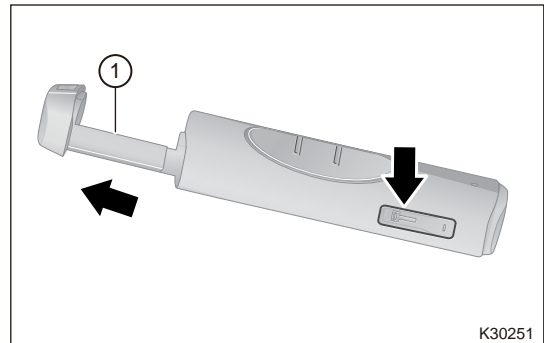
13 Replacement of Smart Key Battery

13.1 Removal

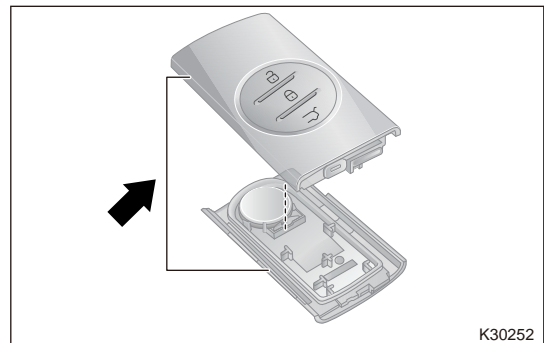
Caution

- **DO NOT** push the terminals with your hands, when removing smart key cover.
- **Make sure** battery positive and negative are installed correctly, when removing smart key cover.
- **DO NOT** pry up battery forcibly, after removing smart key cover. Otherwise, terminals may be damaged.
- **DO NOT** touch battery with wet hands, after removing smart key cover. Otherwise, water may cause rust.
- **DO NOT** touch or move any components inside transmitter, after removing smart key cover. Failure to do so may interfere with proper operation.

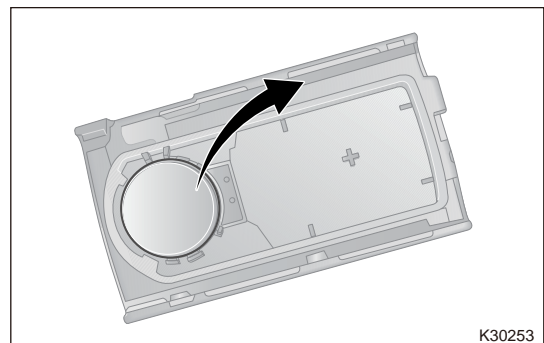
- (1) Press release button (arrow) and remove mechanical key (1).



- (2) Separate smart key cover with a flat tip screwdriver wrapped with protective tape.



- (3) Remove battery from battery holder, and then install new battery with positive (+) facing up.



13.2 Installation

Caution

- **Check that smart key operates properly, after installing wireless key.**

- (1) Install new key to battery holder with positive facing up.
- (2) Assemble the smart key cover.
- (3) Install the mechanical key.

DOOR

56.1	Warnings and Precautions	2093
1	Warnings	2093
2	Precautions	2093
56.2	System Overview	2094
1	System Description	2094
2	System Components Diagram	2094
56.3	System Circuit Diagram	2097
1	Module Terminal Definition	2097
2	Circuit Diagram	2101
56.4	Function Overview	2103
1	Door Opening Warning (Use Same Logics for Left and Right DOW Lights)	2103
2	Rear View Mirror Position Storage	2103
3	Rear View Mirror Position Recall	2103
4	BSD power supply	2104
56.5	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2105
1	Diagnostic Help	2105
2	DTC Confirmation Procedure	2105
3	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	2105
4	Ground Inspection	2105
5	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	2106
6	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	2109
56.6	ON-VEHICLE SERVICE	2113
1	Tools	2113
2	Replace Front Door Inner Protector Assembly	2113
2.1	Removal	2113
2.2	Installation	2116
3	Replace Front Door Assembly	2117
3.1	Removal	2117
3.2	Inspection	2121
3.3	Installation	2123
4	Replace Door Inner Protector Assembly	2124
4.1	Removal	2124
4.2	Installation	2126
5	Replace Rear Door Assembly	2127
5.1	Removal	2127
5.2	Inspection	2130
5.3	Installation	2132

56.1 Warnings and Precautions

1 Warnings

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) When removing front door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold it, prevent front door from falling down during operation, resulting in accidents.
- (2) When removing rear door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold it, prevent rear door from falling down during operation, resulting in accidents.

2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) Replace damaged clips and install front door inner protector assembly in place, when installing inner protector assembly.
- (2) Install connectors in place, when installing inner protector assembly.
- (3) Check that each function can operate properly, after installing inner protector assembly.

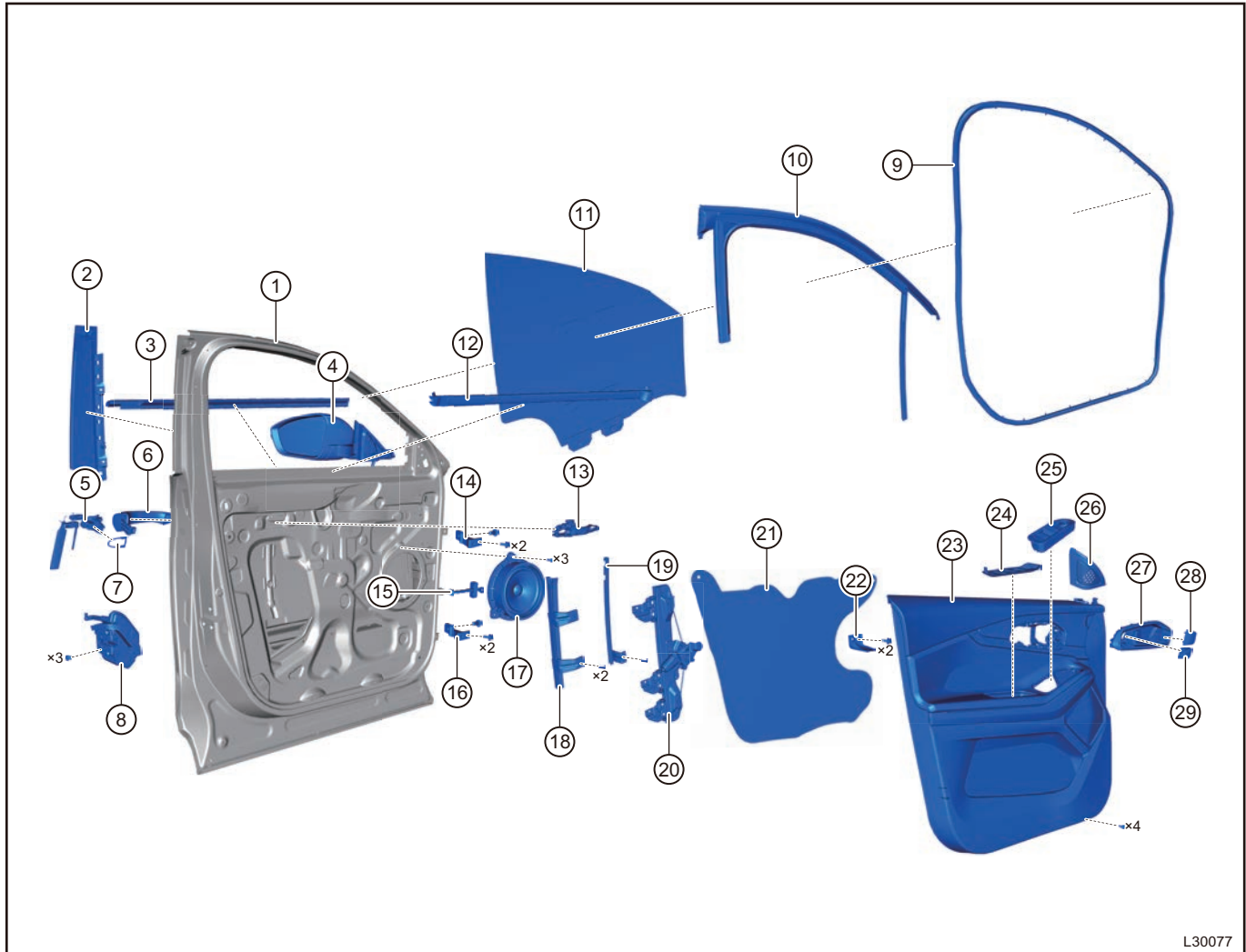
56.2 System Overview

1 System Description

Doors provide driver and passengers with access to and from vehicles, and insulate the outside interference, absorb the side impact to a certain extent, thus protecting passenger. Aesthetic of vehicle is also related to the door modeling. The quality of doors is mainly reflected in anti-collision performance, sealing performance and opening & closing convenience of doors, of course, and there are other usage function targets, etc. Anti-collision performance is particularly important, as when vehicle is involved in a side collision, it is easy to cause inside personal injury due to the very short buffer distance.

2 System Components Diagram

Front Door Assembly

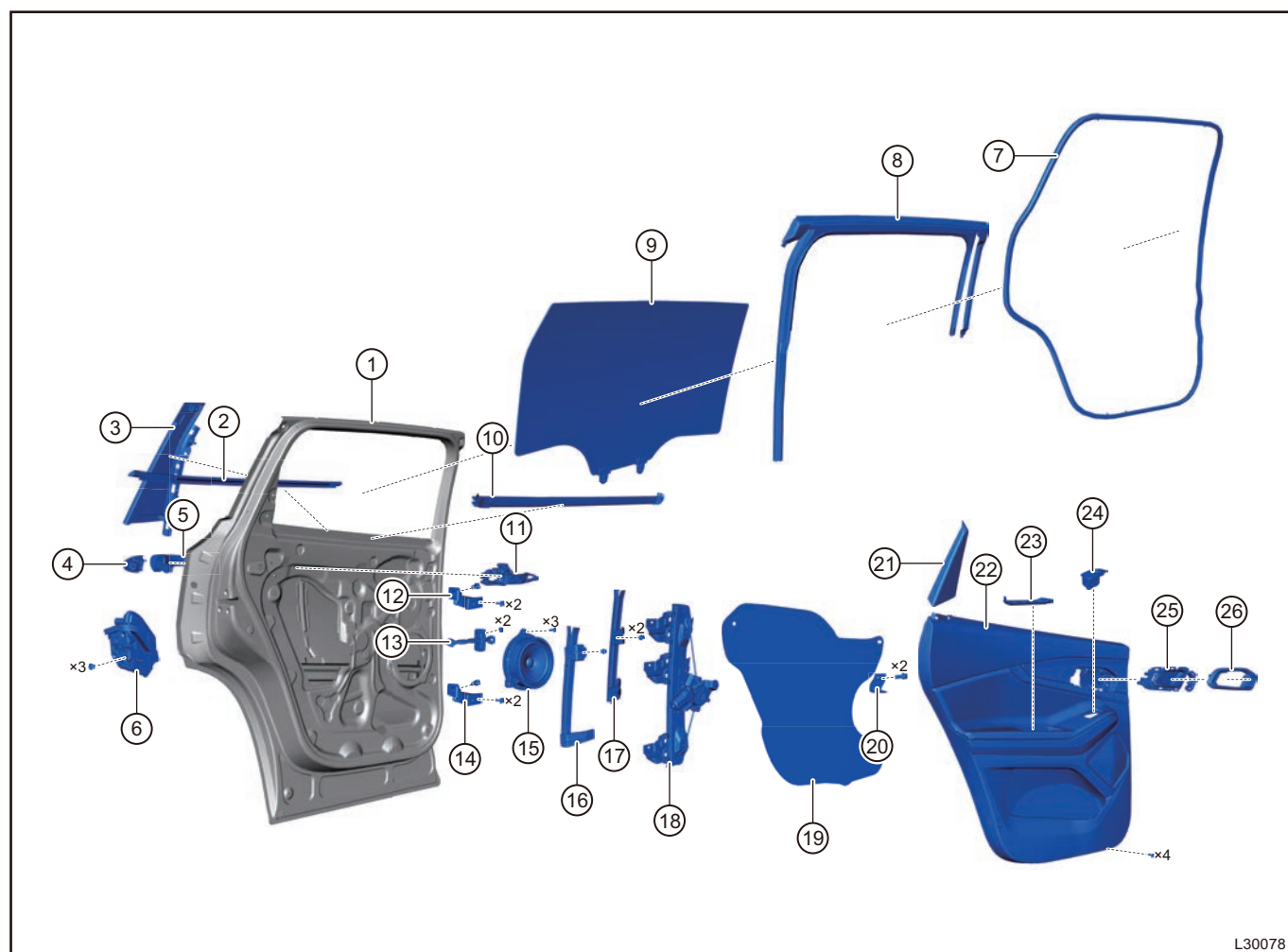


L30077

1	Front Left Door Sheet Metal Assembly	16	Left Door Hinge Assembly
2	Front Left Door Cover Plate Guide Rail Assembly	17	Woofer
3	Front Left Door Outer Weather Bar	18	Front Left Door Rear Glass Guide Rail Assembly
4	Left Outside Rear View Mirror Assembly	19	Front Left Door Glass Front Guide Rail Assembly

5	Front Left Door Lock Cylinder Assembly	20	Front Left Rope Wheel Type Glass Regulator Assembly
6	Door Outside Handle Assembly	21	Front Left Door Protective Film
7	Door Handle Rear Gasket	22	Bracket Between Front Left Door Protector and Door Sheet Metal
8	Front Left Door Lock Assembly	23	Front Left Door Protector Body
9	Front Left Door Frame Weatherstrip	24	Front Left Door Handle Box Rubber Gasket
10	Front Left Door Run	25	Driver Glass Regulator Switch
11	Front Left Side Door Sound-proof Glass Assembly	26	Front Left Door Inner Triangular Block Assembly
12	Front Left Door Inner Weather Bar	27	Front Left Inside Handle Assembly
13	Front Left Outside Handle Seat Assembly	28	Front Left Door Protective Cap Assembly
14	Left Door Hinge Assembly	29	Central Control Lock Switch
15	Front Door Check Assembly		

Rear Door Assembly



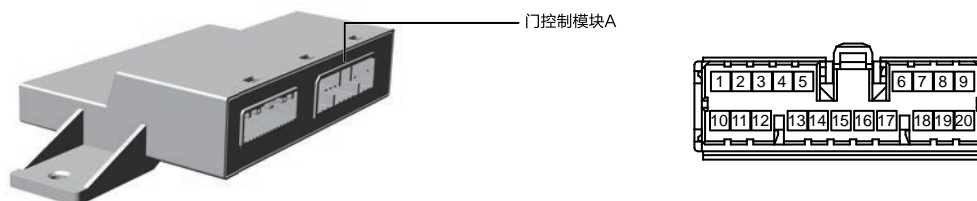
L30078

1	Rear Left Door Sheet Metal Assembly	14	Left Door Hinge Assembly
2	Rear Left Door Outer Weather Bar	15	Woofers
3	Rear Left Door C-pillar Cover Plate Assembly	16	Rear Left Door Glass Rear Guide Rail Assembly
4	Door Handle Cover	17	Rear Left Door Lower Glass Run
5	Door Outside Handle Assembly	18	Rear Left Rope Wheel Type Glass Regulator Assembly
6	Rear Left Door Lock Assembly	19	Rear Left Door Protective Film
7	Rear Left Door Frame Weatherstrip	20	Bracket Between Rear Left Door Protector and Door Sheet Metal
8	Rear Left Door Run	21	Rear Left Door Inner Triangular Block Body
9	Rear Left Door Glass Assembly	22	Rear Left Door Protector Body
10	Rear Left Door Inner Weather Bar	23	Rear Left Door Handle Box Rubber Gasket
11	Front Left Outside Handle Seat Assembly	24	Front Passenger Glass Regulator Switch
12	Left Door Hinge Assembly	25	Rear Left Inside Handle Assembly
13	Rear Door Check Assembly	26	Rear Left Door Inside Handle Screw Block Cover

56.3 System Circuit Diagram

1 Module Terminal Definition

Door Control Module - A



Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
A1	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	-
A2	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	-
A3	Body ground	Blind spot detection output	Power supply "ON"	12 V
A4	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	-
A5	Body ground	Window lock switch indicator light	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A6	Body ground	Rear right door panel warning light	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A7	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	-
A8	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	-
A9	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply "ON"	12 V
A10	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	-
A11	Body ground	Ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A12	Body ground	Ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A13	Body ground	Right rear view mirror adjustment common terminal	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not adjusted; 10 V when adjusted downwards/ rightwards

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
A14	Body ground	Right rear view mirror horizontal adjustment	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not adjusted; 10 V when adjusted leftwards/ downwards
A15	Body ground	Right rear view mirror vertical adjustment	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not adjusted; 10 V when adjusted upwards/ rightwards
A16	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply "ON"	12 V
A17	Body ground	Rear left door panel warning light	Power supply "ON"	0 V
A18	Body ground	Left rear view mirror vertical adjustment	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not adjusted; 10 V when adjusted upwards/ rightwards
A19	Body ground	Left rear view mirror horizontal adjustment	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not adjusted; 10 V when adjusted downwards/ leftwards
A20	Body ground	Left rear view mirror adjustment common terminal	Power supply "ON"	0 V when not adjusted; 10 V when adjusted downwards/ rightwards

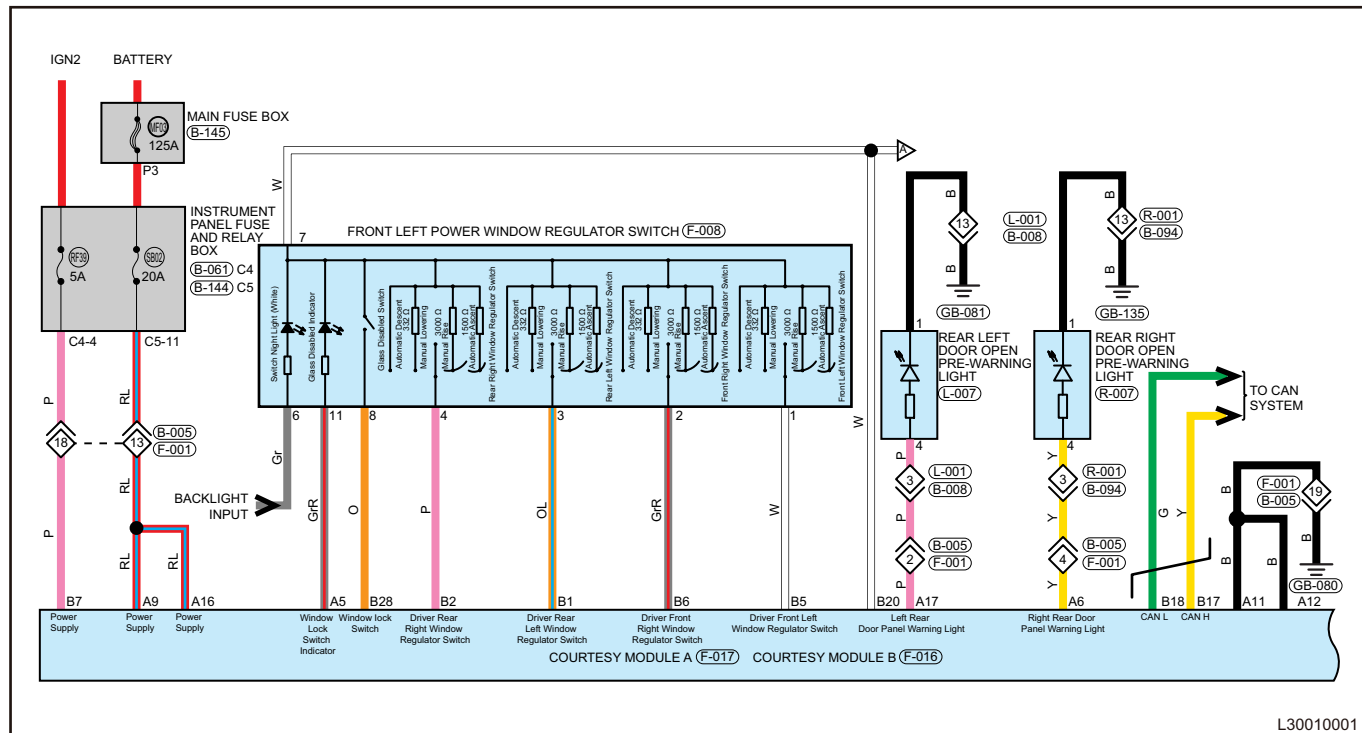
Door Control Module - B

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
B1	Body ground	Driver glass regulator switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V
B2	Body ground	Driver glass regulator switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V
B3	Body ground	Right rear view mirror upper and lower position signal	Power supply "ON"	With the change of position, the voltage is 0.9 V-4 V from bottom to top
B4	Body ground	Right rear view mirror left and right position signal	Power supply "ON"	With the change of position, the voltage is 1.4 V-3.4 V from left to right
B5	Body ground	Driver glass regulator switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V with switch not pushed; 3 V with 1st gear pushed; 0 V with 2nd gear

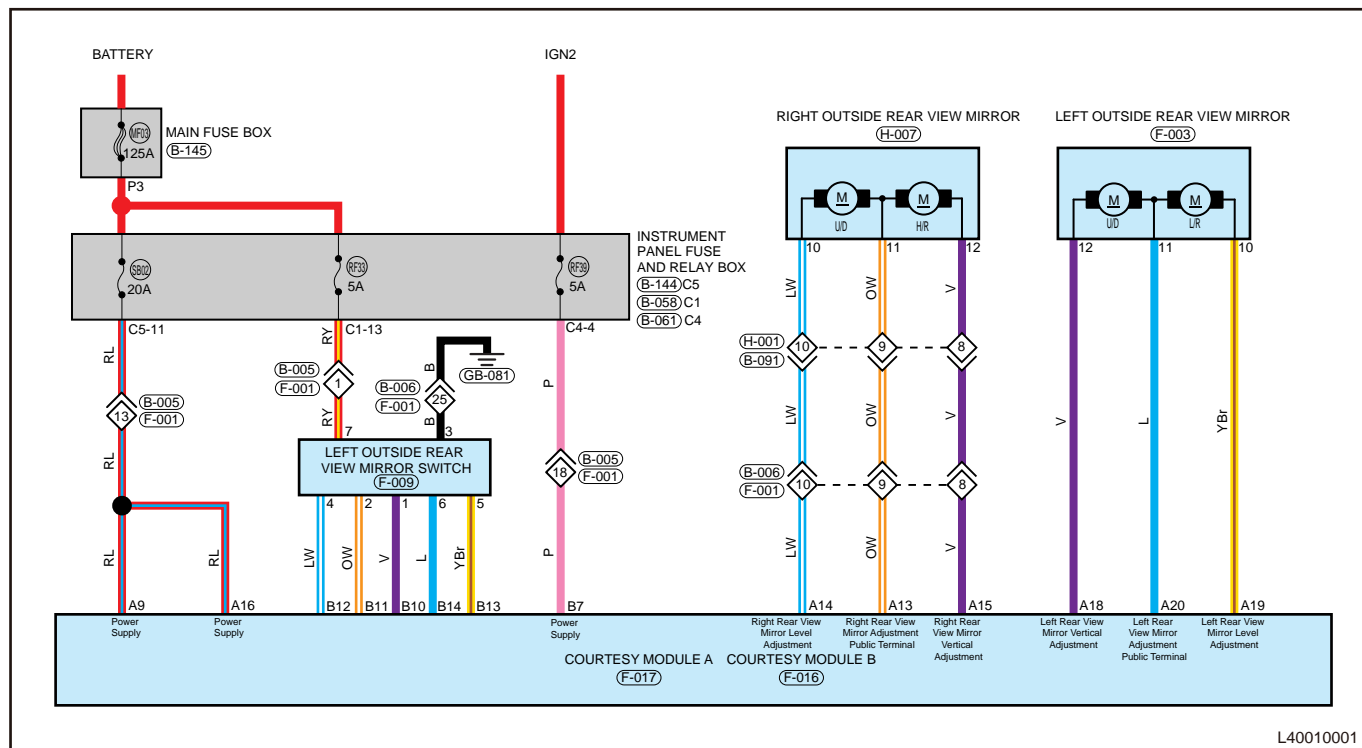
Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
				pushed; 9 V with 1st gear pulled up; 6 V with 2nd gear pulled up
B6	Body ground	Driver glass regulator switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V with switch not pushed; 3 V with 1st gear pushed; 0 V with 2nd gear pushed; 9 V with 1st gear pulled up; 6 V with 2nd gear pulled up
B7	Body ground	IGN power supply	Power supply "ON"	12 V
B8	Body ground	Rear view mirror folding input	Power supply "ON"	12 V with switch not pushed; 0 V with switch pushed and held
B9	/	-	/	/
B10	Body ground	Rear view mirror switch - 1	Power supply "ON"	0 V with switch not pushed; 12 V with both left and right sides upwards/rightwards
B11	Body ground	Rear view mirror switch - 2	Power supply "ON"	0 V
B12	Body ground	Rear view mirror switch - 3	Power supply "ON"	7.2 V at left; 0 V with right side not pushed, 12 V with right side leftwards/downwards
B13	Body ground	Rear view mirror switch - 4	Power supply "ON"	7.2 V at right; 0 V with left side not pushed, 12 V with left side leftwards/downwards
B14	Body ground	Rear view mirror switch - 5	Power supply "ON"	7.2 V at middle and right side; 0 V with left side not adjusted, 12 V with left side downwards/rightwards
B15	Body ground	Left rear view mirror upper and lower position signal	Power supply "ON"	With the change of position, the voltage is 1.1 V-4 V from bottom to top
B16	Body ground	Left rear view mirror left and right position signal	Power supply "ON"	With the change of position, the voltage

Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
				is 1.5 V-3.3 V from left to right
B17	Body ground	CAN-H	Power supply "ON"	2.7 V
B18	Body ground	CAN-L	Power supply "ON"	2.3 V
B19	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	-
B20	Body ground	Ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
B21	Body ground	Sensor ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V
B22	/	-	/	/
B23	/	-	/	/
B24	Body ground	Rear view mirror position sensor power supply	Power supply "ON"	5 V
B25	/	-	/	/
B26	Body ground	Central control switch lock input	Power supply "ON"	12 V with switch not pushed; 0 V with switch pushed
B27	Body ground	Central control switch unlock input	Power supply "ON"	12 V with switch not pushed; 0 V with switch pushed
B28	Body ground	Window lock switch	Power supply "ON"	12 V

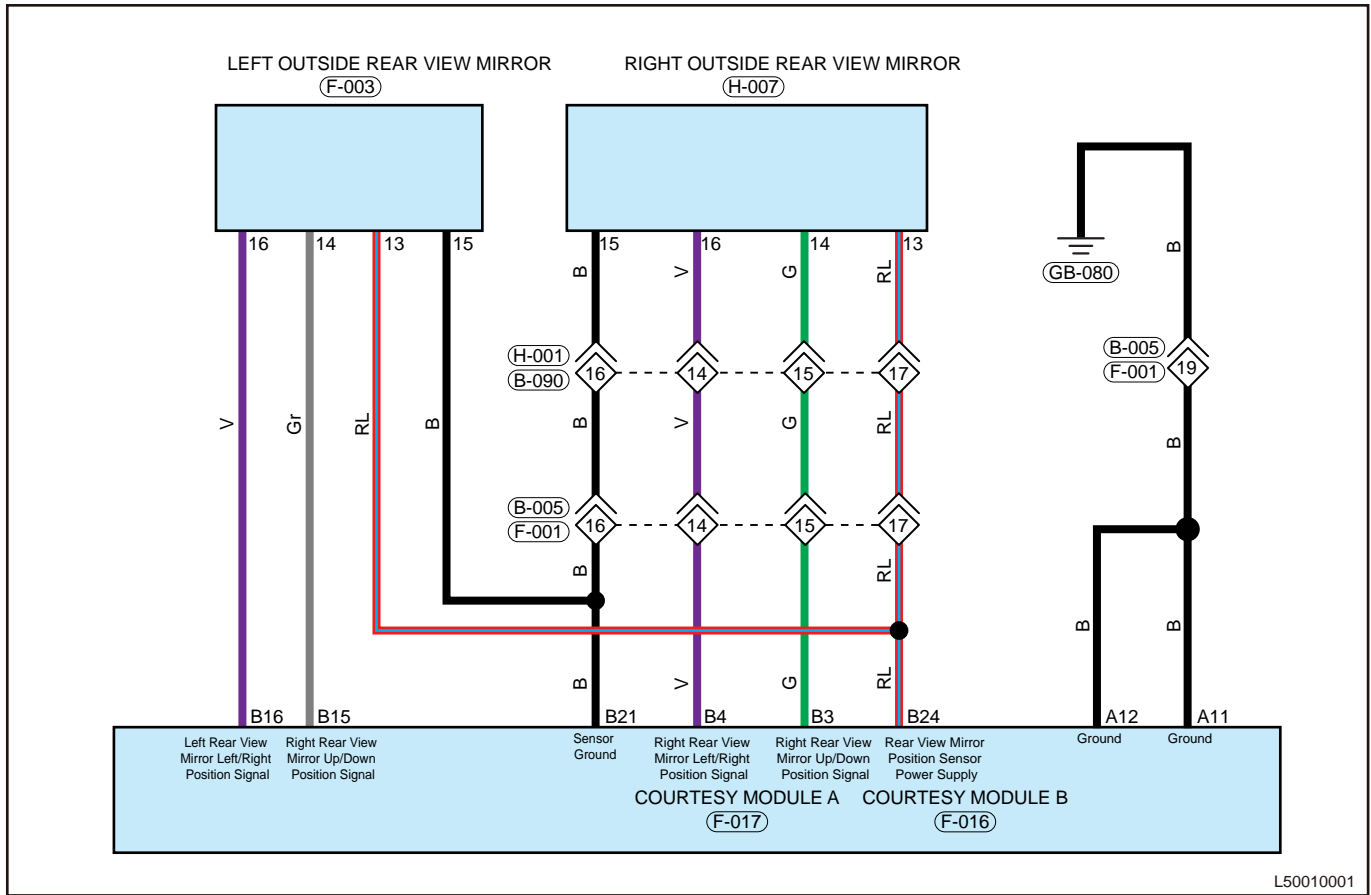
2 Circuit Diagram



L30010001



L40010001



L50010001

56.4 Function Overview

1 Door Opening Warning (Use Same Logics for Left and Right DOW Lights)

- Any power supply mode;
- When DCM receives CAN signal DOW_WarningLH = OFF or DOW_WarningLH = reserved, DCM controls left DOW light to turn off;
- When DCM receives CAN signal DOW_WarningLH = Level1 Warning, DCM controls left DOW light to come on;
- When DCM receives CAN signal which changes alternately between DOW_WarningLH = Level2 Warning and DOW_WarningLH = OFF, DCM controls left DOW light to flash.

2 Rear View Mirror Position Storage

■ Conditions of rear view mirror position storage

- Seat memory enable signal (STAT_SeatMemoryEnable = “enable”) is received, otherwise DCM judges that position storage conditions are not met.
- DCM does not drive rear view mirror to move.
- Communication is not lost with IHU_6
- Communication is not lost with SCU and STAT_MemorySysEnable invalid value signal is not received.

■ Rear view mirror position storage

- DCM receives memory request signal via CAN, when memory request (including ID and mode number of request) of CAN signal from IUH is received.
- DCM stores current 4 shafts positions to EEPROM. DCM is required to distribute EEPROM to store 15 groups positions: There are 5 IDs which each ID has 3 modes, corresponding to the IDs and MODE number in the REQ_SeatPosStore respectively.

■ Clear and cover storage position

- When the seat module receives the CAN bus: Set_Default=0X01, with judging the seat memory enable signal (STAT_SeatMemoryEnable= “enable”), 3 sets of memory position information under the current ID is set to the initial default position, other IDs are not memorized and remain unchanged (current ID is judged according to the ID recognized by IHU).
- When the seat module receives the CAN bus: Set_Default= 0X04, with judging the seat memory enable signal (STAT_SeatMemoryEnable= “enable”), 15 sets of memory position information under all IDs is set to the initial default position.
- When there is memory information under the stored IDs and mode gear, the memory request under this ID and mode gear is received again, and the previous memory information is covered by current position.

■ Clear and cover storage position

- After rear view mirror position is stored successfully, three frames success signals (STAT_MirrorMemoryPosition= “Done”) are sent to CAN.
- If rear view mirror position storage fails, three frames failure signals (STAT_MirrorMemoryPosition= “Failed”) are sent to CAN.
- After sending 3 frames or when there is no storage action, feedback signal (STAT_MirrorMemoryPosition= “No action”) to CAN all the time.

3 Rear View Mirror Position Recall

■ Conditions of seat memory position recall

- Seat memory enable signal (STAT_SeatMemoryEnable= “enable”).
- Engine starting.
- Communication is not lost with IHU_6.
- Communication is not lost with SCU and STAT_MemorySysEnable invalid value signal is not received.

■ Conditions of recalling action termination

- When single shaft reaches memory information position, single shaft action terminates (applicable to all shafts).
- Any manual adjustment input of switch will stop recall action of all shafts.
- When single shaft reaches blocking stopping position, stop recall action of all shafts.

- When single shaft detects short circuit, over-current of related drive motor, stop recall action of all shafts.
- When single shaft reaches the longest output time of 15s, stop recall action of all shafts.

■ Conditions of recalling action termination

- Rear view mirror always sends signal (STAT_MirrorRecallPosition = Recall Ongoing) to CAN during position recalling.
- Rear view mirror reaches recall position, and three frames completion signals (STAT_MirrorRecallPosition = Done) are sent to CAN.
- Rear view mirror does not reach recall position, and three frames failure signals (STAT_MirrorRecallPosition = Failed) are sent to CAN.
- After sending 3 frames or when there is no recall action, feedback signal (STAT_MirrorRecallPosition = "No action") to CAN all the time.

4 BSD power supply

- (1) When power supply is in ACC/ON/Crank, DCM always keeps output to supply power to BSD.
- (2) When power supply is in OFF, if one of following conditions is met, DCM keeps output for 5min to supply power to BSD:
 - Power supply position status is turned from ACC/ON/Crank to OFF.
 - During in OFF, the status of any door (all 4 doors) changes (from opened to closed or from closed to opened).
 - DCM keeps wake-up status within 5 minutes of BSD output.
- (3) When DCM is in OFF, if one of following conditions is met, the output will be off immediately:
 - 5 minutes timing ends in OFF.
 - ATWS status is turned from other statuses to "Secured" status.
 - ATWS status is turned from other statuses to "Partly Secured" status.
 - Power supply position status sent from PEPS is Invalid.
 - Lost communication with PEPS.

56.5 Diagnostic Information and Steps

1 Diagnostic Help

- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface, and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, malfunction is current.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

2 DTC Confirmation Procedure

■ **Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.**

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

3 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

■ **If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:**

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.
- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggling test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect the mounting areas of instrument cluster, wire harness or wire harness connector and so on for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- Remove instrument cluster from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test. If this DTC cannot be cleared, instrument cluster is malfunctioning. If DTC can be cleared, reinstall instrument cluster to original vehicle.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

4 Ground Inspection

Groundings are very important to entire circuit system, which are normal or not can seriously affect the entire circuit system. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) and oxidation may increase load resistance. This case will seriously affect normal operation of circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.

- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

5 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

■ Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B1BA0 - 16	Low Power Supply Voltage	Power supply voltage below threshold detected.	Power supply malfunction; circuit connection malfunction.	Check if supply voltage is less than normal voltage.
B1BA0-17	High Power Supply Voltage	Power supply voltage above threshold detected.		Check if supply voltage is more than normal voltage.
B1BA1 - 11	Power Window Regulator Prohibited Indicator Light Short to Ground	/	1. Circuit malfunction; 2. Indicator light malfunction.	1. Check circuit and connector; 2. Check indicator light; 3. Check module assembly.
B1BA2 - 11	Central Control Lock Status Indicator Light Short to Ground			
B1BA3 - 11	Left Door Opening Warning Indicator Light Short to Ground	/	1. Circuit malfunction; 2. Indicator light malfunction.	1. Check circuit and connector; 2. Check indicator light; 3. Check module assembly.
B1BA4 - 11	Right Door Opening Warning Indicator Light Short to Ground			
U2502 - 88	CAN Bus Off	Vehicle CAN is short to ground, this DTC will occur when disconnected; This DTC will be cleared after returning to normal	1. Control module is damaged; 2. Wire harness is damaged.	Refer to CAN network system for troubleshooting
U0142-87	Lost Communication With AVM	If AVM information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0140-87	Lost Communication With BCM	If BCM information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		

DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
U0232 - 87	Lost Communication With BSDL	If BSDL information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0233 - 87	Lost Communication With BSDR	If BSDR information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0100-87	Lost Communication With EMS	If EMS information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0122-87	Lost Communication With ESC	If ESC information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0245-87	Lost Communication With IHU	If IHU information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0248-87	Lost Communication With PEPS	If PEPS information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0208 - 87	Lost Communication With SCU	If SCU information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3		

DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0101-87	Lost Communication With TCU	If TCU information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0198-87	Lost Communication With TGW	If TGW information is not received within 10 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0422-81	Invalid Data Received from BCM	If incorrect data is received from BCM, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0533 - 81	Invalid Data Received from BSDL	If incorrect data is received from BSDL, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0534 - 81	Invalid Data Received from BSDR	If incorrect data is received from BSDR, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0401-81	Invalid Data Received from EMS	If incorrect data is received from EMS, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0416-81	Invalid Data Received from ESC	If incorrect data is received from ESC, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0546-81	Invalid Data Received from IHU	If incorrect data is received from IHU, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		

DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
U0426-81	Invalid Data Received from PEPS	If incorrect data is received from PEPS, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0509 - 81	Invalid Data Received from SCU	If incorrect data is received from SCU, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0402-81	Invalid Data Received from TCU	If incorrect data is received from TCU, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		

6 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	DTC Definition
B1BA0 - 16	Low Power Supply Voltage
B1BA0-17	High Power Supply Voltage

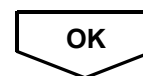
Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

1	Check fuse
----------	-------------------

(a) Check if fuses MF03, SB02 and RF39 are blown.

NG	Replace fuse
-----------	---------------------



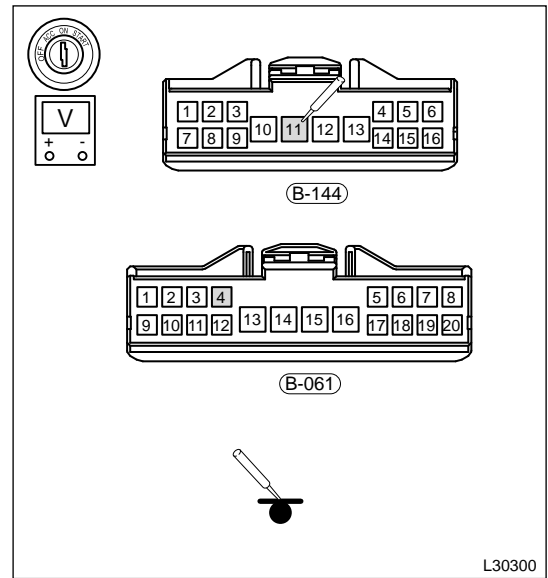
2	Check output voltage of instrument panel fuse and relay box
----------	--

(a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.

(b) Disconnect instrument panel fuse and relay box connector B-061, B-144.

(c) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage value between connectors B-061 (4), B-144 (11) and body ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-061 (4) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12\text{ V}$
B-144 (11) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12\text{ V}$



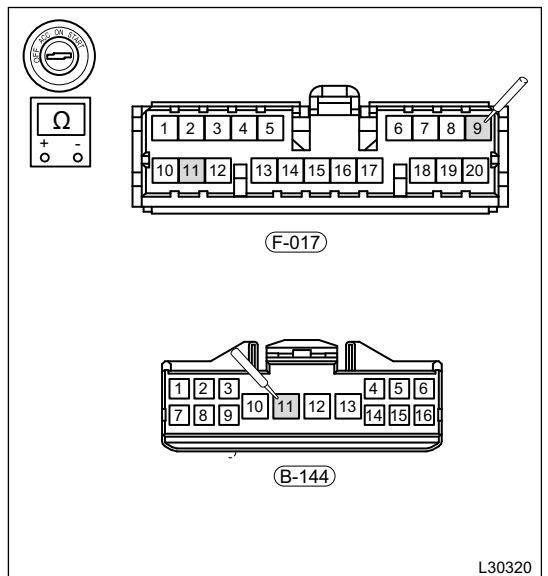
NG Replace instrument panel fuse and relay box assembly

OK

3 Check wire harness for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable.
- (c) Disconnect door control module connectors F-017 and F-016, and instrument panel fuse and relay box connectors B-061 and B-144.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, measure if resistance of connectors F-016 (7) - B-061 (4), F-017 (9) - B-144 (11) and F-017 (16) - B-144 (11) is normal to check wire harness for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
F-016 (7) - B-061 (4)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1\ \Omega$
F-017 (9) - B-144 (11)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1\ \Omega$
F-017 (16) - B-144 (11)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1\ \Omega$



OK Replace door control module assembly

NG Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B1BA1 - 11	Power Window Regulator Prohibited Indicator Light Short to Ground
B1BA2 - 11	Central Control Lock Status Indicator Light Short to Ground
B1BA3 - 11	Left Door Opening Warning Indicator Light Short to Ground
B1BA4 - 11	Right Door Opening Warning Indicator Light Short to Ground

Hint:

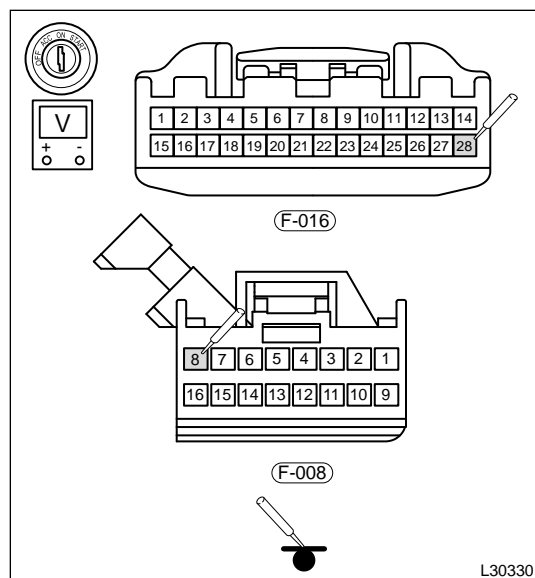
When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

For similar malfunctions of door control module, it's also allowable to refer to "Power Window Regulator Prohibited Indicator Light Short to Ground" for troubleshooting.

1	Power Window Regulator Prohibited Indicator Light Short to Ground
----------	--

- Check sensor connectors, controller connectors for corrosion, poor contact, looseness and repair it if any symptom occurs.
- Check the continuity of sensor wire harness and replace wire harness if open circuit malfunction occurs.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF", disconnect the negative battery cable.
- Disconnect door controller connector F-016 and front left door window switch F-008.
- Using voltage band of multimeter, detect F-016 (28) - ground and F-008 (8) - ground separately.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
F-016 (28) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12\text{ V}$
F-008 (8) - Ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12\text{ V}$



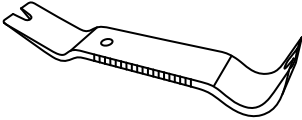
OK	Replace door controller or front left door window switch
NG	Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
U2502 - 88	CAN Bus Off
U0142-87	Lost Communication With AVM
U0140-87	Lost Communication With BCM

U0232 - 87	Lost Communication With BSDL
U0233 - 87	Lost Communication With BSDR
U0100-87	Lost Communication With EMS
U0122-87	Lost Communication With ESC
U0245-87	Lost Communication With IHU
U0248-87	Lost Communication With PEPS
U0208 - 87	Lost Communication With SCU
U0101-87	Lost Communication With TCU
U0198-87	Lost Communication With TGW
U0422-81	Invalid Data Received from BCM
U0533 - 81	Invalid Data Received from BSDL
U0534 - 81	Invalid Data Received from BSDR
U0401-81	Invalid Data Received from EMS
U0416-81	Invalid Data Received from ESC
U0546-81	Invalid Data Received from IHU
U0426-81	Invalid Data Received from PEPS
U0509 - 81	Invalid Data Received from SCU
U0402-81	Invalid Data Received from TCU
1	Refer to "CAN" network system for troubleshooting

56.6 ON-VEHICLE SERVICE

1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior Crow Plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>

2 Replace Front Door Inner Protector Assembly

2.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door inner protector assembly.**

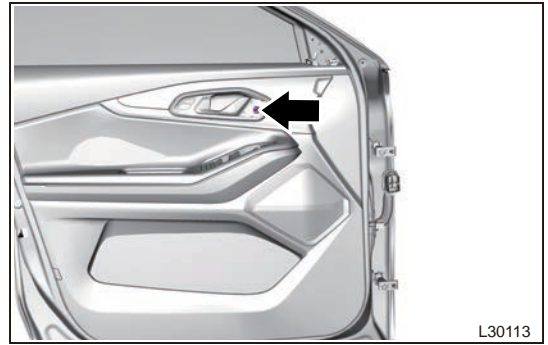
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, carefully remove front door triangular block assembly.



- (4) Using an interior crow plate, carefully remove front left door protective cap assembly.



- (5) Remove the fixing screw on the rear side of front left door protective cap assembly.



- (6) Remove the front left door handle box rubber gasket.



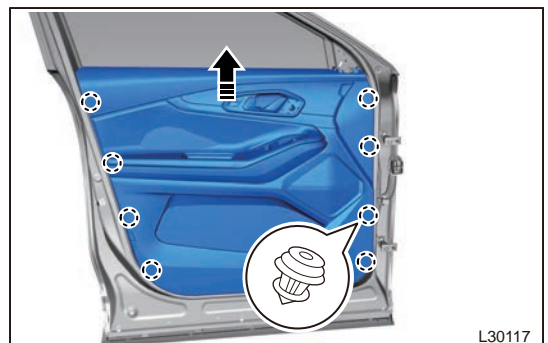
- (7) Remove the fixing screw on the rear side of front left door handle box rubber gasket.



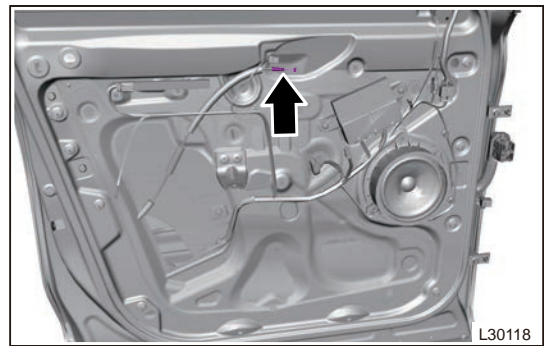
- (8) Remove 2 fixing screws from lower side of front left door inner protector assembly.



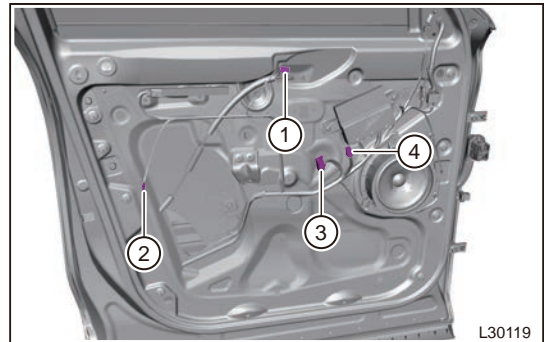
- (9) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off clips on front door inner protector assembly, and loosen front door inner protector assembly in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



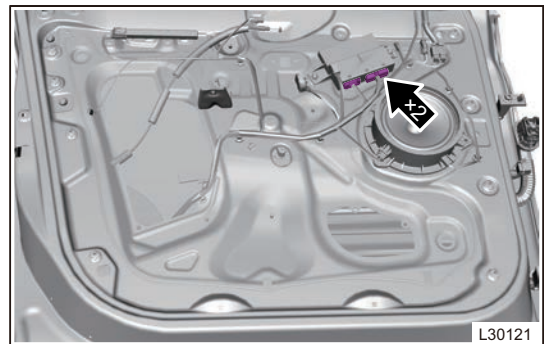
- (10) Disengage the front door inside handle cable (arrow) from front door inside handle.



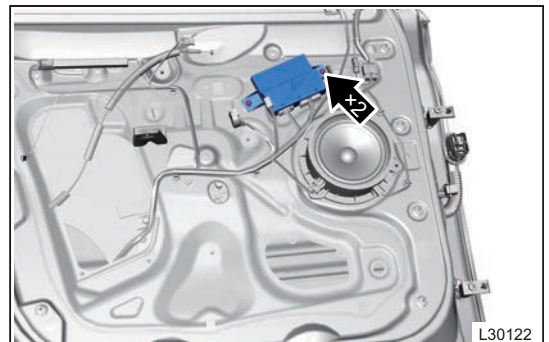
- (11) Disconnect the ambient light, glass regulator switch and rear view mirror adjustment switch, and remove door protector assembly.



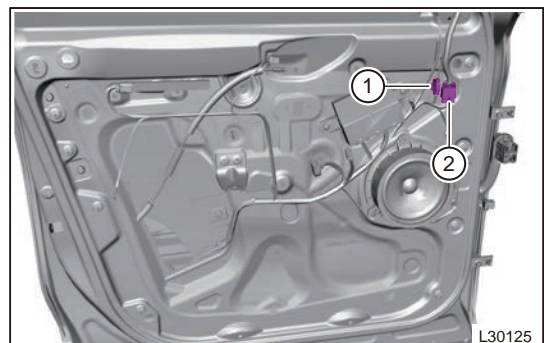
- (12) Disconnect the door control module connectors.



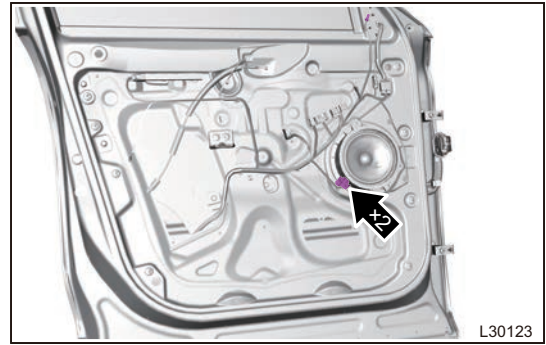
- (13) Remove 2 fixing bolts and door control module assembly.



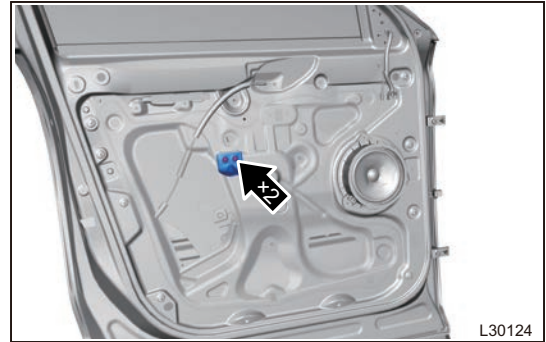
- (14) Disconnect the camera wire harness connector plug (1) and rear view mirror wire harness connector plug (2).



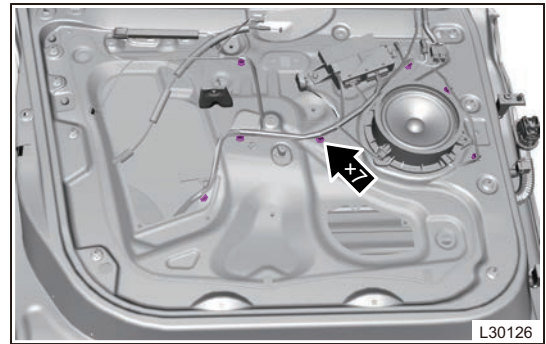
(15) Disconnect the woofer and tweeter connector plugs.



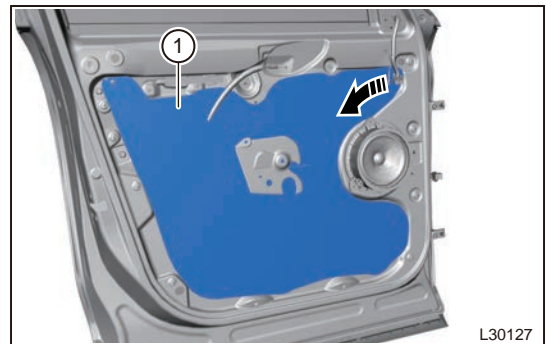
(16) Remove 2 fixing bolts and bracket.



(17) Remove fixing clips from front left door wire harness.



(18) As shown in illustration, remove the front left door protective film assembly (1) by gently peeling it along edges from one corner.



<p>⚠ Caution</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Try to prevent front door protective film from being damaged, when removing front door protective film assembly. • Place front door protective film assembly properly after removal, and prevent adhesive sticker on front door protective film assembly from sticking to other components.
--

2.2 Installation

<p>⚠ Caution</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replace damaged clips and install front door inner protector assembly in place, when installing front door inner protector assembly. • Install connectors in place, when installing front door inner protector assembly. • Check that each function can operate properly, after installing front door inner protector assembly.

(1) Install front left door protective film.

- (2) Fix the fixing clips on the front left door wire harness.
- (3) Install the bracket and 2 fixing bolts.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Connect the woofer and tweeter connector plugs.
- (5) Connect the camera wire harness connector plug (1) and rear view mirror wire harness connector plug (2).
- (6) Install the door control module assembly and 2 fixing bolts.
- (7) Connect the door control module connector.
- (8) Connect the ambient light, glass regulator switch and rear view mirror adjustment switch connector, install front door inside handle cable, and install front door inner protector assembly.
- (9) Install 2 fixing screws on lower side of front left door inner protector assembly.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (10) Install the fixing screw on the rear side of front left door handle box rubber gasket.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (11) Install the front left door handle box rubber gasket.
- (12) Install the fixing screw on the rear side of front left door protective cap assembly.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (13) Install the front left door protective cap assembly.
- (14) Install the front door triangular block assembly.
- (15) Connect the negative battery cable.

3 Replace Front Door Assembly

3.1 Removal

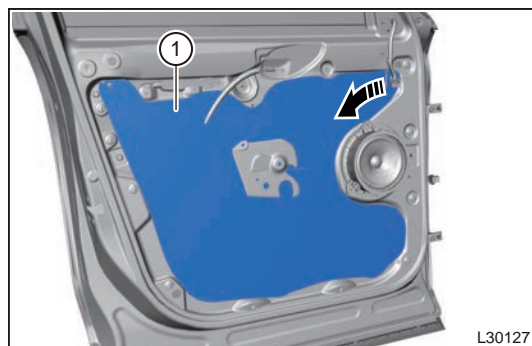
Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing front door assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing front door assembly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**
- **When removing front door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold it, prevent front door from falling down during operation, resulting in accidents.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the front left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the woofer connector.
- (5) As shown in illustration, remove the front left door protective film assembly (1) by gently peeling it along edges from one corner, and pass cable and wire harness through the opening of protective film.

Caution

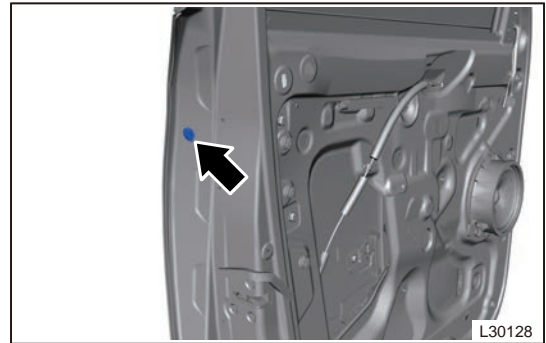
- **Try to prevent front door protective film from being damaged, when removing front door protective film assembly.**
- **Place front door protective film assembly properly after removal, and prevent adhesive sticker on front door protective film assembly from sticking to other components.**



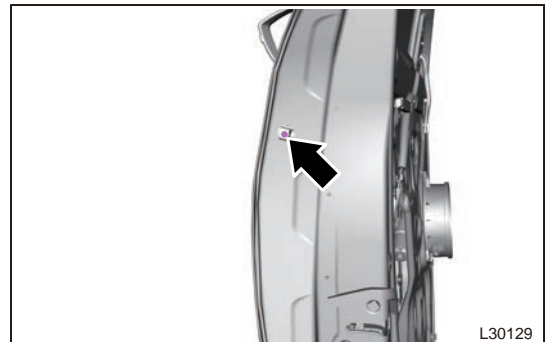
L30127

- (6) Remove the front left door woofer.

- (7) Remove the left outside rear view mirror.
- (8) Remove the front left door weather bar.
- (9) Remove the front door glass assembly.
- (10) Remove the front door glass run.
- (11) Remove the front door glass guide rail assembly.
- (12) Remove the front door power glass regulator.
- (13) Remove the front left door lock assembly.
- (14) Remove the front door outside handle block cover.



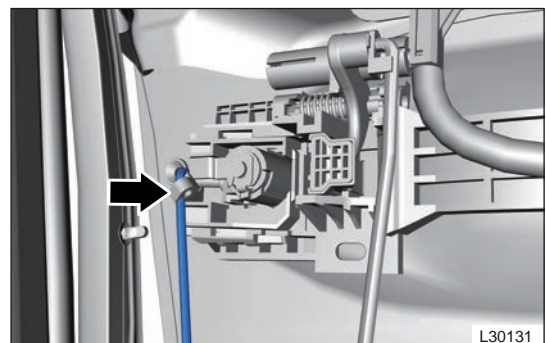
- (15) Remove 1 fixing screw from front door outside handle.



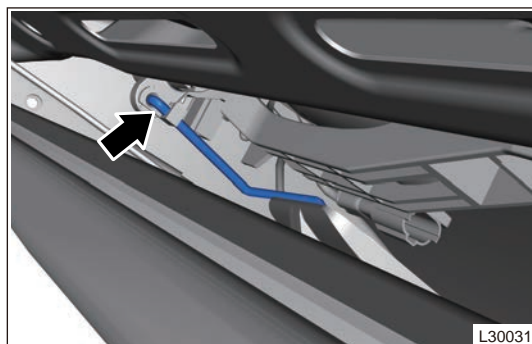
- (16) Slide and pull front door outside handle in direction of arrow as shown in illustration, and remove it.



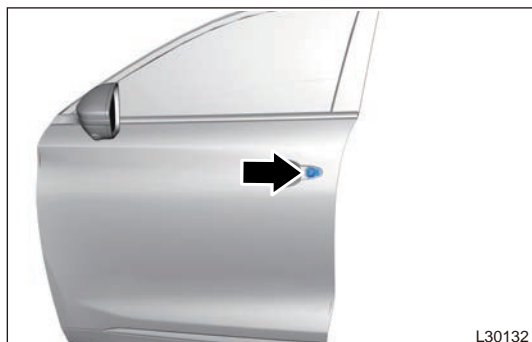
- (17) Disengage the key cylinder rod.



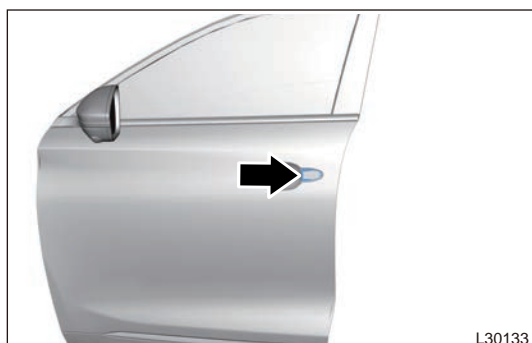
(18) Disengage the outside handle rod.



(19) Remove the key cylinder assembly.



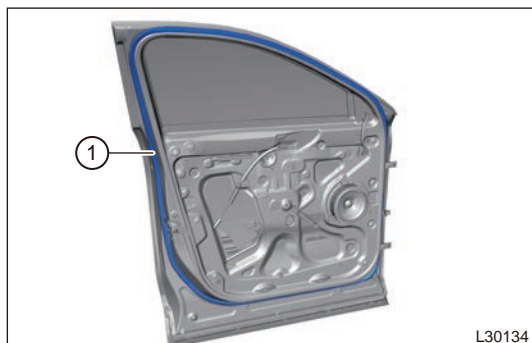
(20) Remove the front left door outside handle rear gasket.



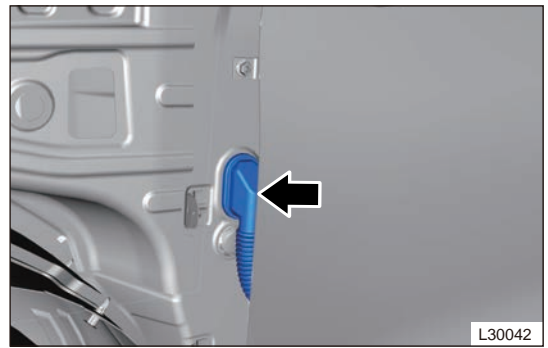
(21) Remove fixing screw from front door outside handle seat assembly, and remove the front left outside handle seat assembly.



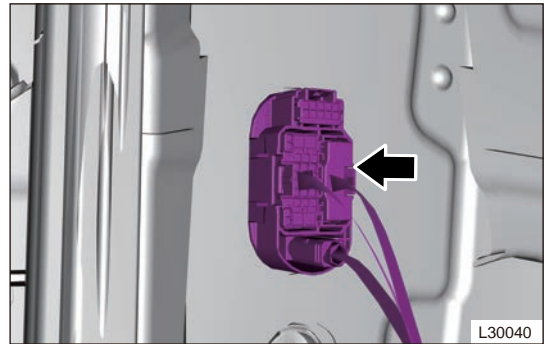
(22) Disengage clips from front door frame weatherstrip, and remove front left door frame weatherstrip (1).



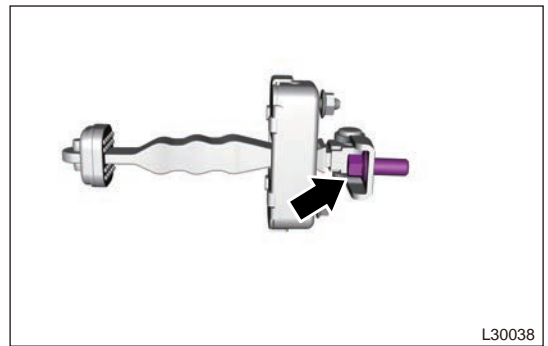
(23) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry off front door wire harness dust boot.



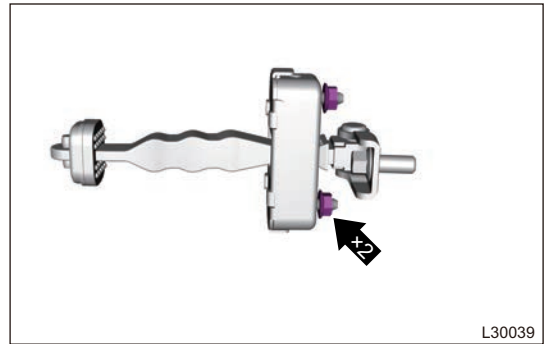
(24) Disconnect the front left door wire harness connector.



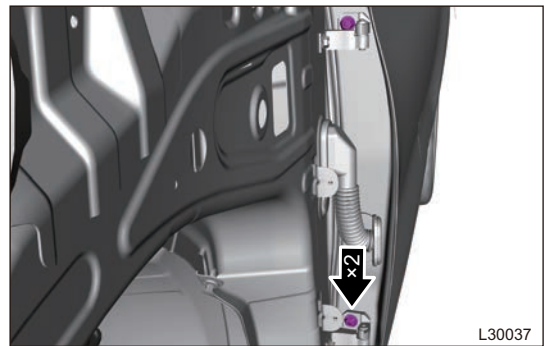
(25) Remove the coupling bolt between door check and front left door.



(26) Remove the coupling nuts between door check and door.



(27) Remove 2 fixing bolts between door and upper and lower hinges.



(28) Remove 1 fixing bolt between door and lower hinge.

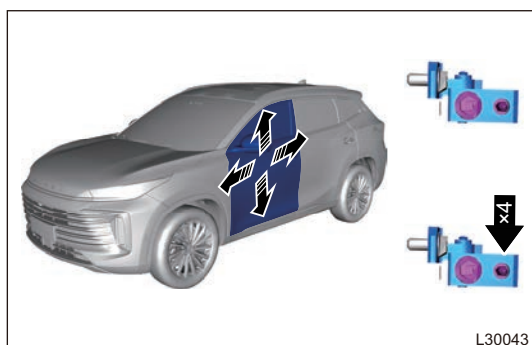


(29) Remove the front left door assembly.

3.2 Inspection

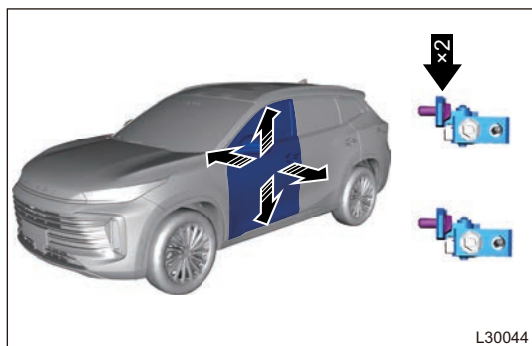
■ Adjust front door assembly

(1) Loosen 4 fixing bolts between front door hinge assembly and quarter, and adjust the front door assembly position in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



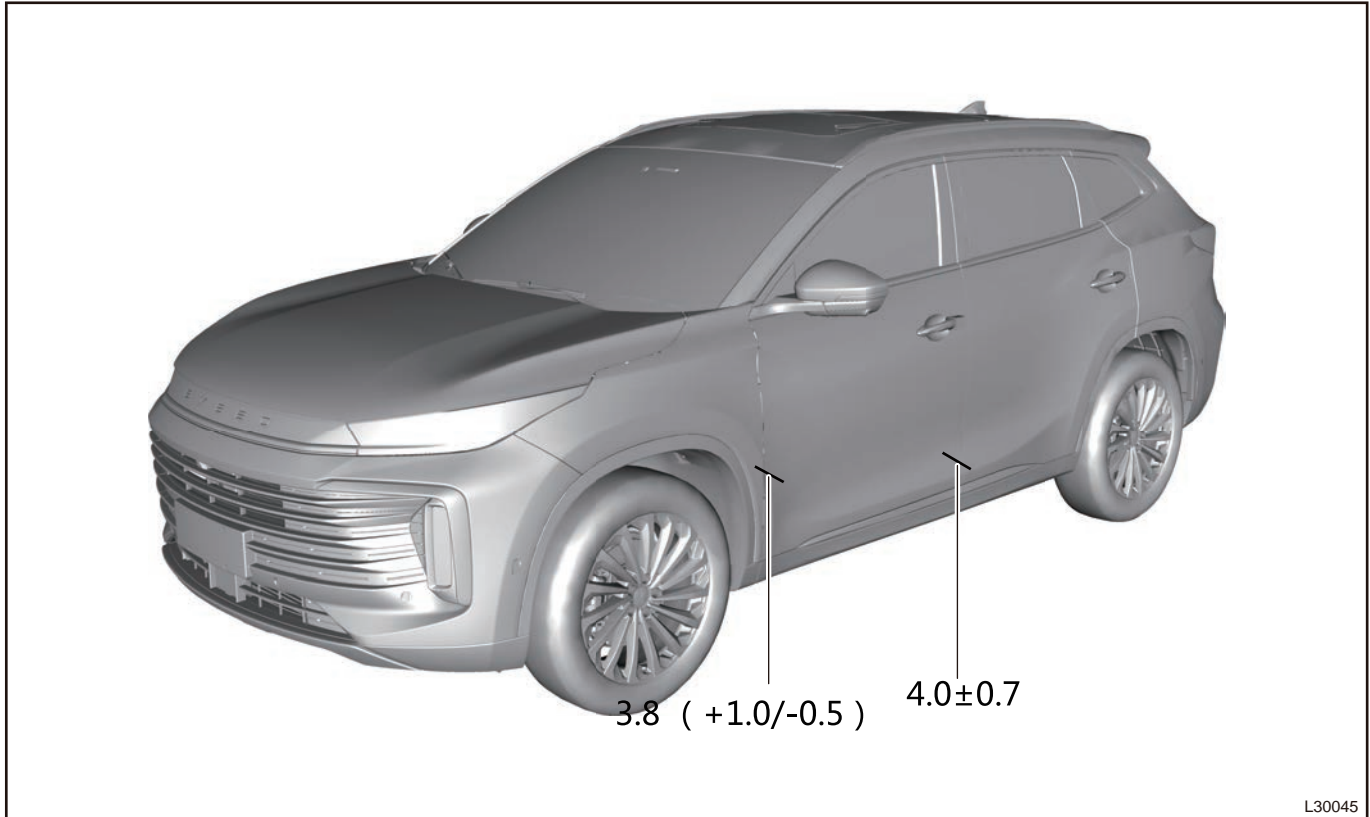
(2) After adjustment, tighten fixing bolts on front door hinge assembly to specified torque.

(3) Loosen 2 fixing bolts between front door hinge assembly and door, and adjust the front door assembly position in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



(4) After adjustment, tighten fixing bolts on front door hinge assembly to specified torque.

- (5) Standard ranges of clearance between installation positions of front door assembly and each part are as shown in illustration.



L30045

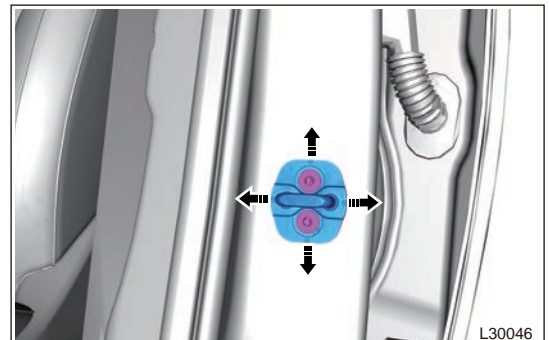
- (6) After adjustment, make sure that alignment between front door assembly and rear door assembly is within standard range.
- (7) After adjustment, make sure that alignment between front door assembly and wing assembly is within standard range.

■ Adjust front door buckle

- (1) Slightly loosen the fixing bolts on front door buckle and tap it with a plastic hammer in direction of arrow to adjust the buckle position.

⚠ Caution

- Align the middle scale of buckle with scale of quarter.



L30046

- (2) Tighten the fixing bolts on front door buckle to specified torque after adjustment.

3.3 Installation

Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install front door inner protector in place, when installing front door inner protector.**
- **Stick protective film in specified position, not in a wrong position or an asymmetric position between left and right sides or cover the mounting holes of other installation parts.**
- **DO NOT drag protective film when sticking. It should be installed under its original condition and ensure sheet metal is clean before installation.**
- **Finished protective film should have no defects, such as wrinkles, bubbles or turnups.**
- **Finished protective film should have powerful adherence. Protective film sticking should be finished at one time. Avoid repeat sticking.**
- **When installing front door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold it, prevent front door from falling down during operation, resulting in accidents.**
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing front door assembly.**

- (1) Install the door to a proper position of body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts between door and lower hinge.
Torque: $24 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install the coupling nuts between door check and door.
Torque: $9 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Install the coupling bolt between door check and front left door.
Torque: $32 \pm 2.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (5) Connect the front left door wire harness connector.
- (6) Install the front door wire harness dust boot.
- (7) Install the front left door frame weatherstrip.
- (8) Install the front left door outside handle seat assembly, and install the fixing screw on the front door outside handle seat assembly.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (9) Install the front left door outside handle rear gasket.
- (10) Install the lock cylinder assembly.
- (11) Install the outside handle rod.
- (12) Install the lock cylinder rod.
- (13) Install the front door outside handle.
- (14) Connect the front door handle sensor connector.
- (15) Install 1 fixing screw on the front door outside handle.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (16) Install the front door outside handle block cover.
- (17) Install the front left door lock assembly.
- (18) Install the front door power glass regulator.
- (19) Install the front door glass guide rail assembly.
- (20) Install the front door glass run.
- (21) Install the front door glass assembly.
- (22) Install the front left door weather bar.
- (23) Install the left outside rear view mirror.
- (24) Install the front left door woofer.

(25) Install the front left door protective film assembly.

Hint:

- Wipe the door sheet metal with alcohol cloth (or fine fiber clean cloth) to ensure that the door inner sheet metal is clean and uncontaminated before assembling the protective film.
- It's strictly forbidden to use liquid products / or products containing surfactants (detergent type) when assembling the door connector.
- Pay attention to prevent protective film from contamination (waterproof, oil-proof, dust-proof, etc.).
- Make sure that there is sufficient pressure on the sticking place/ painted joint surface: 10N/cm² ≤ Rolling pressure ≤ 30N/cm² Using roller.
- Assembly ambient temperature requirement is 18 °C - 40 °C.
- Heating oven temperature requirement is (30+5) °C, 30 minutes ≤ Heating time ≤ 8 hours.

(26) Connect the woofer connector.

(27) Install the front left door inner protector assembly.

(28) Connect the negative battery cable.

4 Replace Door Inner Protector Assembly

4.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door inner protector assembly.**
- **Try to prevent rear door inner protector surface from being damaged, when removing rear door inner protector assembly.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

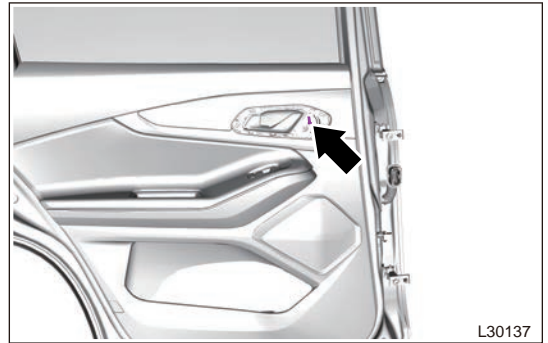
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using an interior crow plate, carefully remove interior rear left door triangular block assembly.



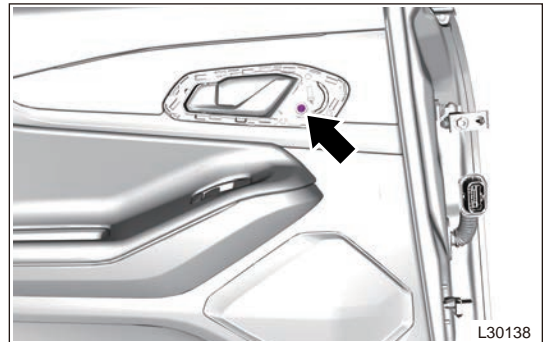
- (4) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off rear left door handle cover assembly.



(5) Disconnect the high frequency speaker connector plug.



(6) Remove 1 fixing screw from door protector.



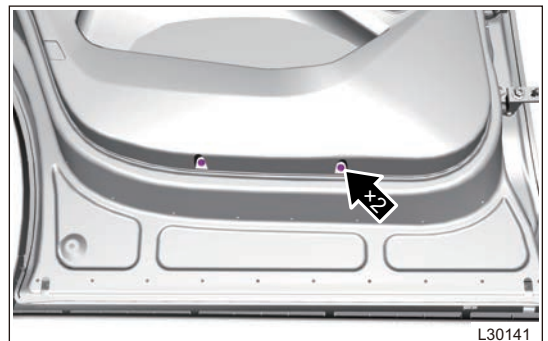
(7) Remove the rear left door handle box rubber gasket.



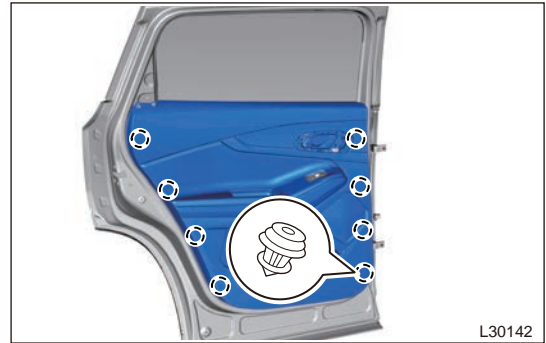
(8) Remove 1 fixing screw from the rear side of rear left door handle box rubber gasket.



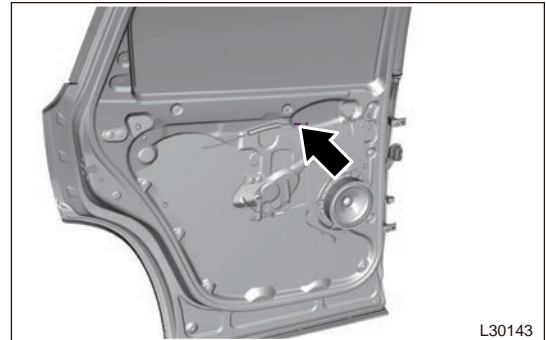
(9) Remove 2 fixing screws from lower side of door protector.



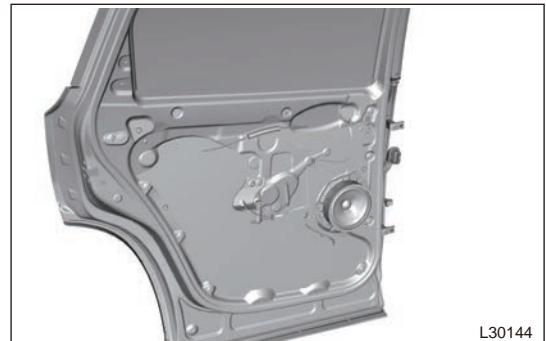
- (10) Using an interior crow plate, carefully pry off fixing clips from rear left door inner protector assembly.



- (11) Disengage the handle cable from rear door inside handle.



- (12) Disconnect the ambient light connector plug, rear door power glass regulator switch, and door opening warning connector plug.



- (13) Remove the rear left door inner protector assembly.

4.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install rear door inner protector assembly in place, when installing rear door inner protector assembly.**
- **Install the connectors in place, when installing rear door inner protector assembly.**
- **Check that each function can operate properly, after installing rear door inner protector assembly.**

- (1) Install the rear left door protector assembly to a proper position.
- (2) Connect the rear door power glass regulator switch connector, door opening warning connector and ambient light connector plug, install the rear left door cable .
- (3) Hang the upper end of door protector on the sheet metal, align door protector clip with the sheet metal hole, and clamp clips to the corresponding mounting hole on sheet metal in the order from up to down.
- (4) Install 2 fixing screws on the lower side of door protector.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (5) Install 1 fixing screw on the rear side of rear left door handle box rubber gasket.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (6) Install the rear left door handle box rubber gasket.

- (7) Install 1 fixing screw on the door protector.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (8) Install the rear left door handle cover assembly, and connect the high frequency speaker connector plug.
- (9) Install the interior rear left door triangular block assembly.
- (10) Connect the negative battery cable.

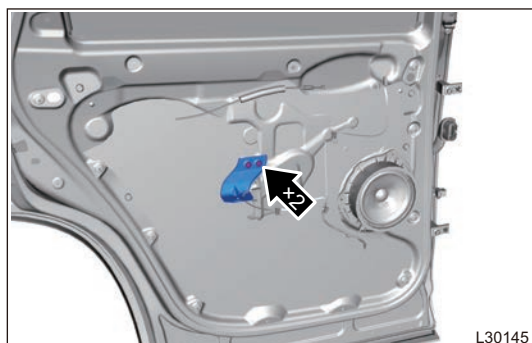
5 Replace Rear Door Assembly

5.1 Removal

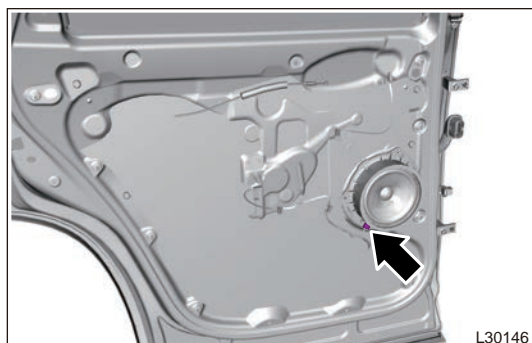
Caution

- Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing rear door assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing rear door assembly.
- When removing rear door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold it, prevent rear door from falling down during operation, resulting in accidents.
- Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.

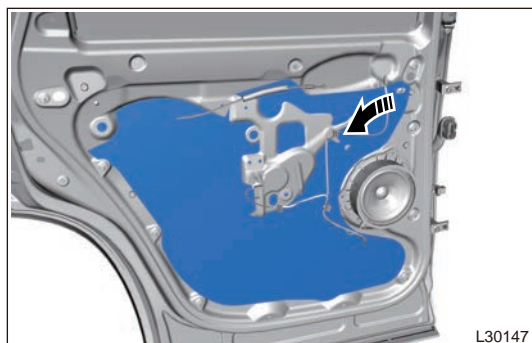
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the rear left door inner protector assembly.
- (4) Remove 2 fixing bolts from rear left door armrest bracket, and remove the rear left door armrest bracket.



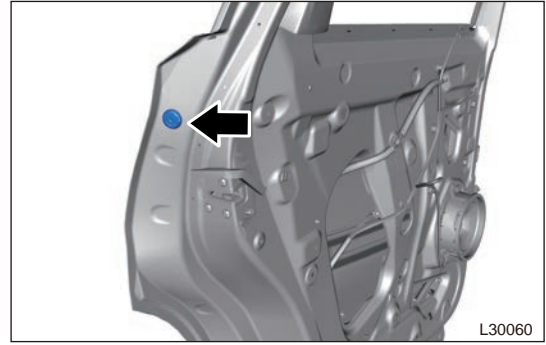
- (5) Disconnect the woofer connector.



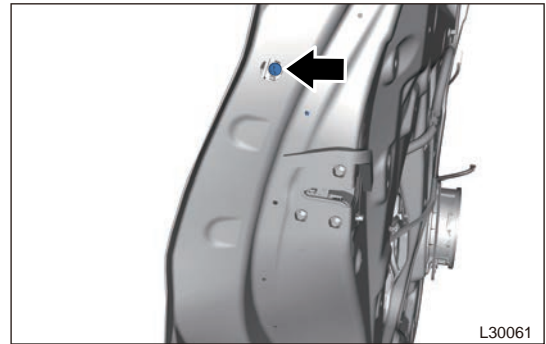
- (6) As shown in illustration, remove the rear left door protective film assembly by gently peeling it along edges from one corner, and pass cable and wire harness through the opening of protective film.



- (7) Remove the rear left door woofer.
- (8) Remove the rear left door weather bar.
- (9) Remove the rear door upper glass run.
- (10) Remove the rear door glass assembly.
- (11) Remove the rear door glass guide rail assembly.
- (12) Remove the rear door power glass regulator.
- (13) Remove the rear left door lock assembly.
- (14) Remove the rear door outside handle cover block cover.



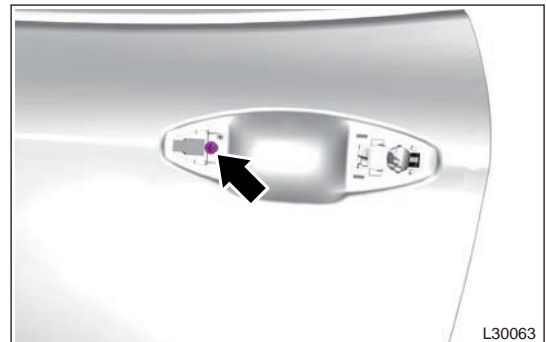
- (15) Remove 1 fixing screw from rear door outside handle cover.



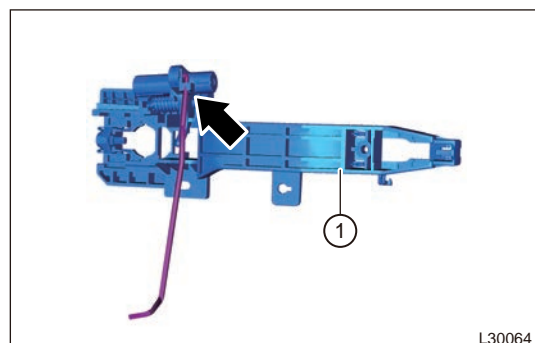
- (16) As shown in illustration, slide and pull the rear door outside handle in direction of arrow, and remove it.



- (17) Remove 1 fixing bolts from rear door outside handle seat assembly.



- (18) Disengage the rear door outside handle rod, and remove rear door outside handle seat assembly (1).



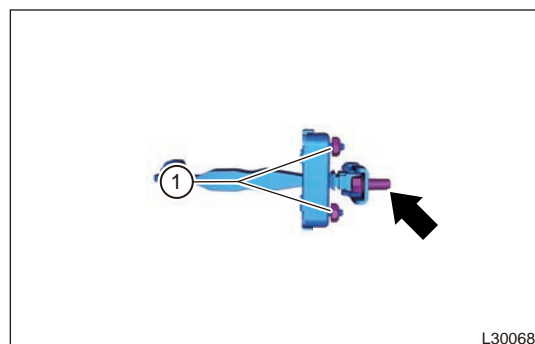
- (19) Disengage clips from rear door frame weatherstrip, and remove rear left door frame weatherstrip (1).



- (20) Using an interior crow plate, pry up the rear door dust boot, and disconnect the rear left door wire harness connectors.



- (21) Remove 2 coupling nuts (1) between door check and rear left door, and remove the coupling bolt between door check and body.



- (22) Remove 2 fixing bolts between rear door upper and lower hinges assembly and rear door assembly.

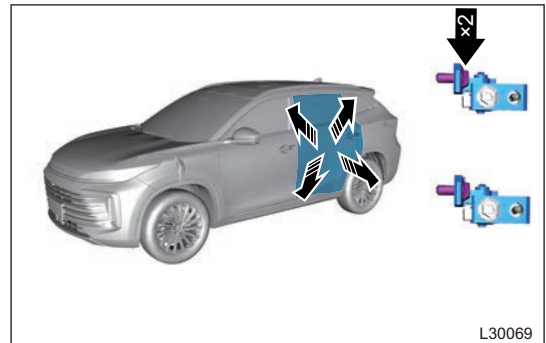


(23) Remove the rear left door assembly.

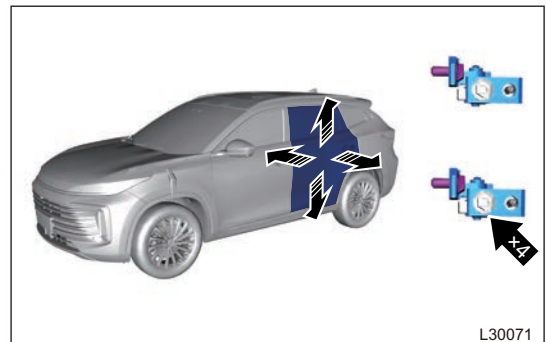
5.2 Inspection

■ Adjust the rear door assembly.

- (1) Loosen 2 fixing bolts between rear door hinge assembly and door, and adjust rear door assembly position in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.

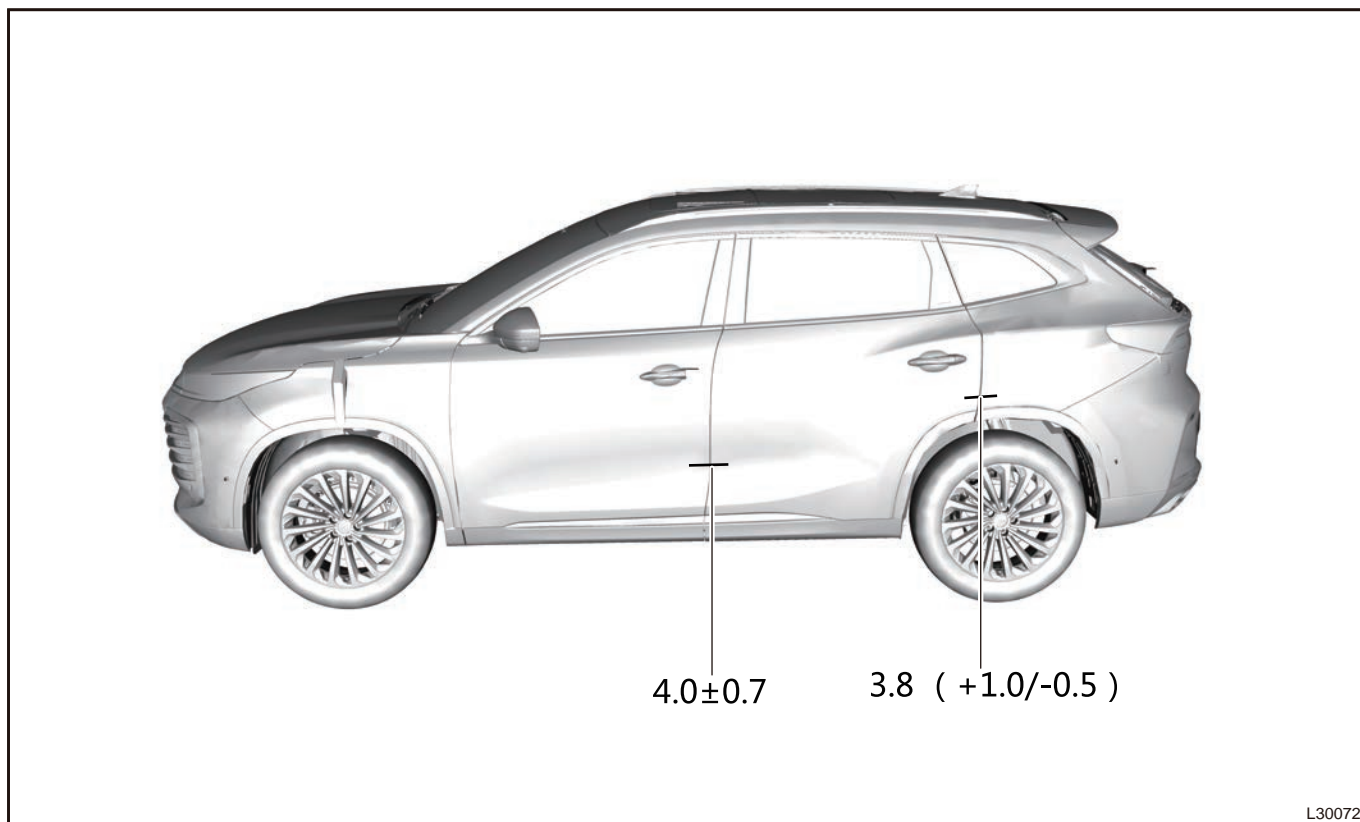


- (2) After adjustment, tighten fixing bolts on rear door hinge assembly to specified torque.
- (3) Loosen 4 fixing bolts between rear door hinge assembly and quarter, and adjust rear door assembly position in direction of arrow as shown in illustration.



- (4) After adjustment, tighten fixing bolts on rear door hinge assembly to specified torque.

- (5) Standard ranges of clearance between installation position of rear door assembly and each part are as shown in illustration.



L30072

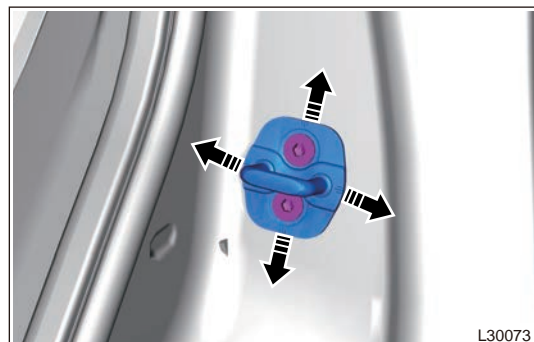
- (6) After adjustment, make sure that alignment between rear door assembly and front door assembly is within standard range.
- (7) After adjustment, make sure that alignment between rear door assembly and body outside panel is within standard range.

■ Adjust the rear door buckle

- (1) Slightly loosen the fixing bolts on rear door buckle and tap it with a plastic hammer in direction of arrow to adjust the buckle position.

⚠ Caution

- Align the middle scale of buckle with scale of quarter.



L30073

- (2) Tighten the fixing bolts on rear door buckle assembly to specified torque after adjustment.

5.3 Installation

Caution

- **Replace damaged clips and install rear door inner protector in place, when installing rear door inner protector.**
- **Stick protective film in specified position, not in a wrong position or an asymmetric position between left and right sides or cover the mounting holes of other installation parts.**
- **DO NOT drag protective film when sticking. It should be installed under its original condition and ensure sheet metal is clean before installation.**
- **Finished protective film should have no defects, such as wrinkles, bubbles or turnups.**
- **Finished protective film should have powerful adherence. Protective film sticking should be finished at one time. Avoid repeat sticking.**
- **Be sure to wear necessary safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing rear door assembly.**
- **When installing rear door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold it, prevent rear door from falling down during operation, resulting in accidents.**

- (1) Install the rear left door assembly to a proper position of body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts between rear door upper and lower hinges assembly and rear door assembly.
Torque: $24 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install 2 coupling nuts between door check and rear left door, and install coupling bolt between door check and body.
Coupling nut torque: $9 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
Coupling bolt torque: $32 \pm 2.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Connect the rear left door wire harness connector, and install the rear door dust boot.
- (5) Install the rear left door frame weatherstrip.
- (6) Install the rear door outside handle seat assembly, and connect the outside handle rod.
- (7) Install 1 fixing bolt on the rear door outside handle seat assembly.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (8) Install the rear door outside handle assembly.
- (9) Install 1 fixing screw on the rear door outside handle cover.
Torque: $1.5 \pm 0.5 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (10) Install the rear door outside handle block cover.
- (11) Install the rear left door lock assembly.
- (12) Install the rear door power glass regulator.
- (13) Install the rear door glass guide rail assembly.
- (14) Install the rear door glass assembly.
- (15) Install the rear door upper glass run.
- (16) Install the rear left door weather bar.
- (17) Install the rear left door woofer.
- (18) Install the rear left door protective film assembly.

Hint:

- Wipe the door sheet metal with alcohol cloth (or fine fiber clean cloth) to ensure that the door inner sheet metal is clean and uncontaminated before assembling the protective film.
 - It's strictly forbidden to use liquid products / or products containing surfactants (detergent type) when assembling the door connector.
 - Pay attention to prevent protective film from contamination (waterproof, oil-proof, dust-proof, etc.).
 - Make sure that there is sufficient pressure on the sticking place/ painted joint surface: $10\text{N}/\text{cm}^2 \leq$ Rolling pressure $\leq 30\text{N}/\text{cm}^2$ Using roller.
 - Assembly ambient temperature requirement is $18\text{ }^\circ\text{C} - 40\text{ }^\circ\text{C}$.
 - Heating oven temperature requirement is $(30+5)\text{ }^\circ\text{C}$, 30 minutes \leq Heating time \leq 8 hours.
- (19) Install the woofer assembly, and connect the woofer connector.

(20) Install the rear left door armrest bracket and 2 fixing bolts.

Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$

(21) Install the rear left door inner protector assembly.

(22) Connect the negative battery cable.

ENGINE HOOD AND BACK DOOR

57.1	Warnings and Precautions	2136
1	Warnings	2136
2	Precautions	2136
57.2	System Overview	2137
1	System Description	2137
2	System Components Diagram.....	2138
3	System Schematic Diagram	2140
4	Function Overview	2141
57.3	System Circuit Diagram	2142
1	Module Terminal Definition.....	2142
2	Circuit Diagram	2145
57.4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2147
1	Problem Symptoms Table	2147
2	Diagnostic Help	2147
3	DTC Confirmation Procedure	2147
4	Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting	2147
5	Ground Inspection	2148
6	Diagnosis Procedure.....	2148
7	Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart	2150
8	DTC Diagnosis Procedure	2153
57.5	On-Vehicle Service	2164
1	Tools	2164
2	Replace Engine Compartment Trim Cover Assembly	2164
2.1	Removal	2164
2.2	Installation	2165
3	Replace Engine Hood Gas Spring	2165
3.1	Removal	2165
3.2	Installation	2166
4	Replace Engine Hood Assembly	2166
4.1	Removal	2166
4.2	Installation	2167
5	Replace Engine Hood Hinge Assembly	2167
5.1	Removal	2167
5.2	Installation	2168
6	Replace Back Door Protector Assembly	2168
6.1	Removal	2168
6.2	Installation	2169
7	Replace Back Door Assembly	2169
7.1	Removal	2169
7.2	Installation	2171
8	Replace Back Door Switch Assembly.....	2172
8.1	Removal	2172
8.2	Installation	2172

ENGINE HOOD AND BACK DOOR

9	Replace Back Door Opening Power Drive Shaft	2173
9.1	Removal	2173
9.2	Installation	2174
10	Replace Back Door Opening Driven Shaft	2175
10.1	Removal	2175
10.2	Installation	2175
11	Replace Spring Upper Bracket	2176
11.1	Removal	2176
11.2	Installation	2176
12	Replace Back Door Anti-pinch Strip Assembly	2177
12.1	Removal	2177
12.2	Installation	2177
13	Replace Power Back Door Module Assembly	2178
13.1	Removal	2178
13.2	Installation	2178
13.3	Self-learning	2179
14	Replace Power Back Door Instrument Cluster Switch Assembly	2183
14.1	Removal	2183
14.2	Installation	2183

57.1 Warnings and Precautions

1 Warnings

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, always follow the instructions below before repair.

- (1) When removing engine hood gas spring assembly, an assistant is needed to hold engine hood. Try to prevent engine hood from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- (2) When removing engine hood assembly, an assistant is needed to hold engine hood. Try to prevent engine hood from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- (3) When removing engine hood hinge assembly, an assistant is needed to hold engine hood. Try to prevent engine hood from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- (4) When removing back door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold the trunk lid. Try to prevent trunk lid from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- (5) When removing back door electric support assembly, pay attention not to bend electric support by lateral force and during removal, one assistance is needed to hold back door; Try to prevent back door from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- (6) When removing balance bar, one assistance is needed to hold back door; Try to prevent back door from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- (7) When removing back door gas spring assembly, one assistance is needed to hold back door; Try to prevent back door from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.

2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, always follow the instructions below before repair.

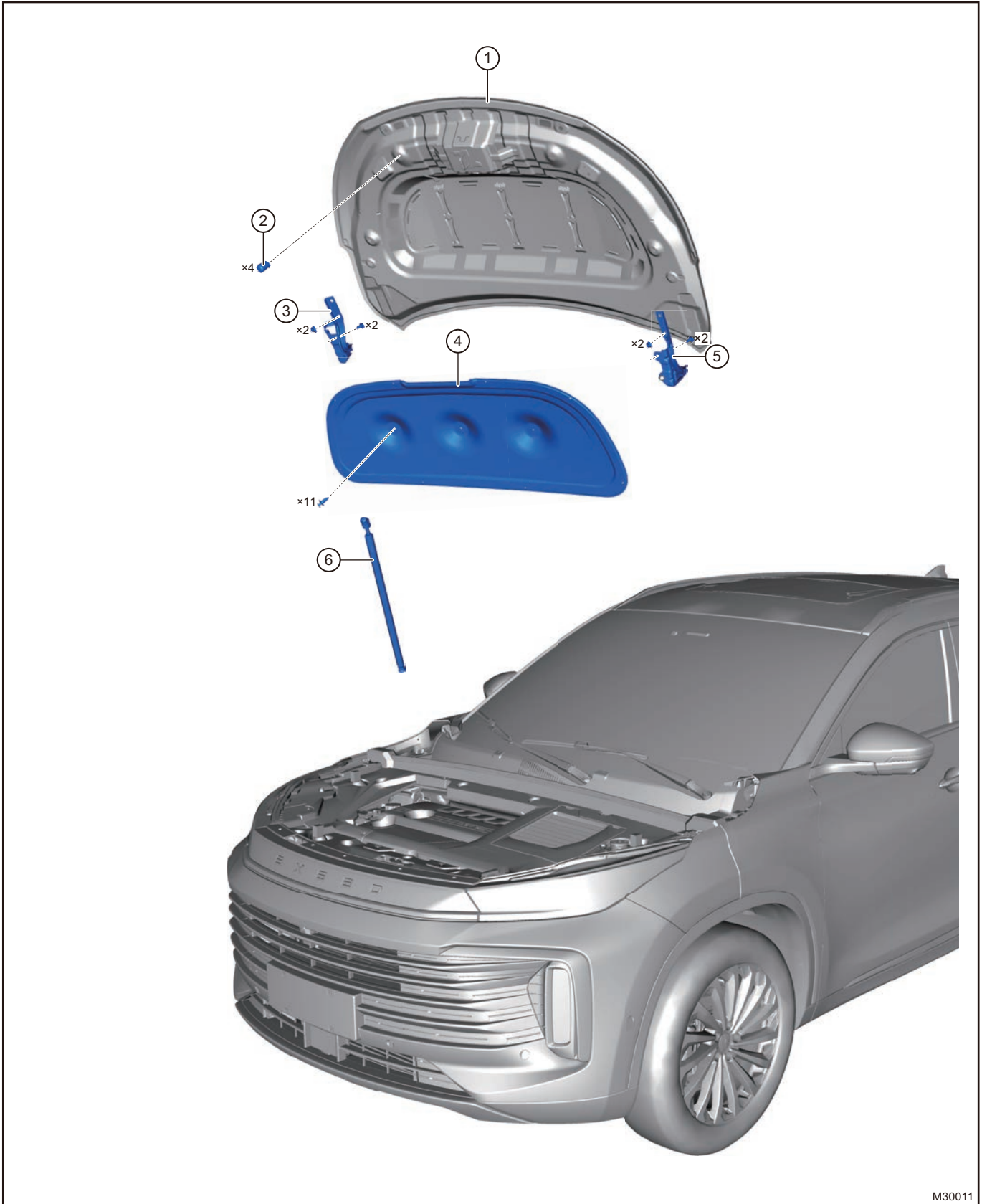
- (1) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood left gas spring assembly.
- (2) Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood assembly.
- (3) When removing engine hood hinge assembly, try to prevent engine hood from falling down during operation, resulting in damage to body or front windshield.
- (4) Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing back door assembly.
- (5) Remove the electric support assembly carefully and avoid it falling down. Once it falls down, internal mechanical damage may occur, which may cause it impossible to use.

57.2 System Overview

1 System Description

Power back door is equipped on the vehicle (for high configuration)(Power back door system consists of PLG module, electric support, anti-pinch strip, various functional switches, back door lock and self-engage mechanism, etc. Once system receives functional switch signal, it will open or close back door a motor-driven manner).

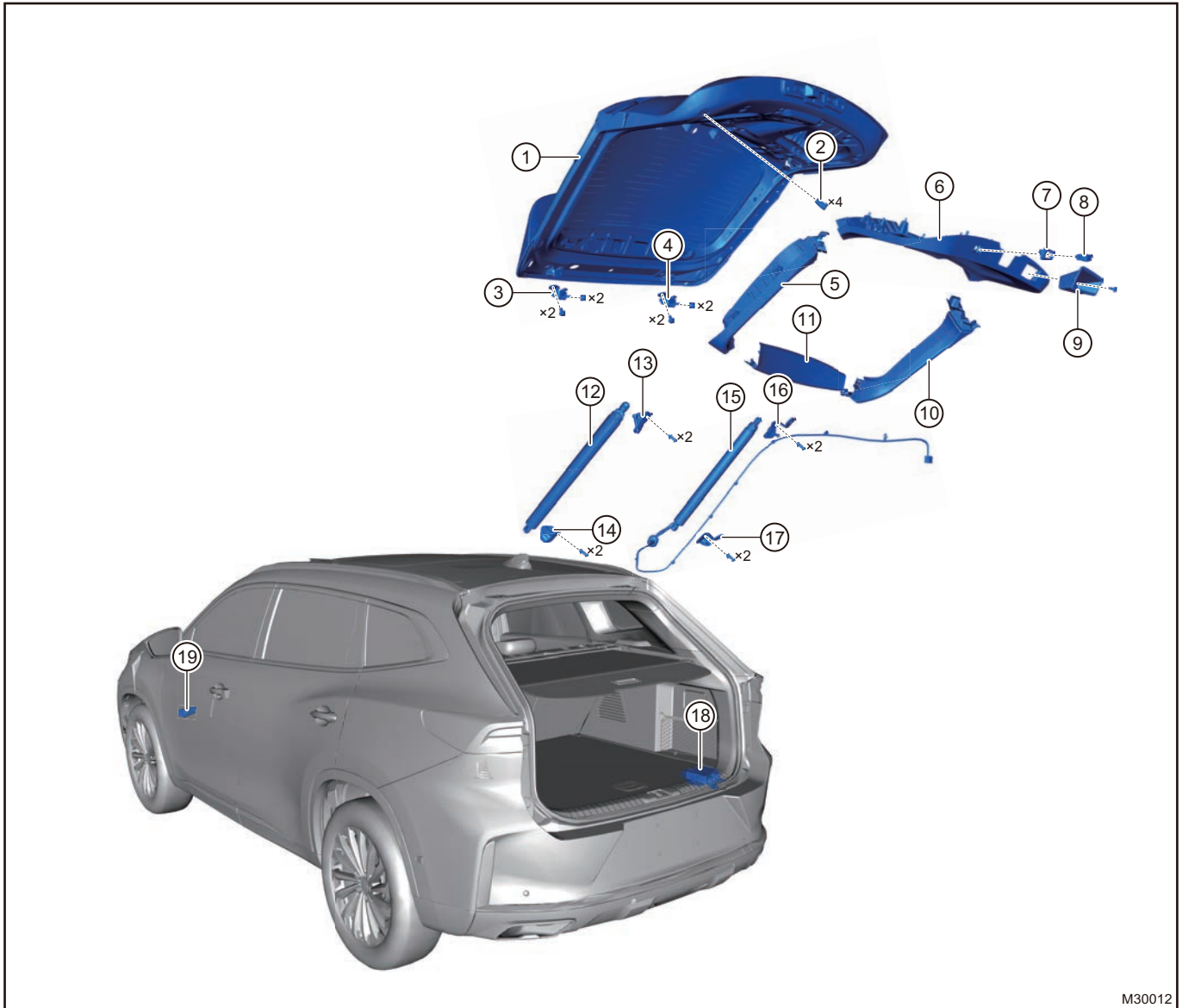
2 System Components Diagram



M30011

1	Engine Hood Assembly	4	Engine Hood Sound Insulator Pad
2	Engine Hood Buffer Block	5	Engine Hood Left Hinge Assembly
3	Engine Hood Right Hinge Assembly	6	Engine Hood Gas Spring

Rear Door Assembly

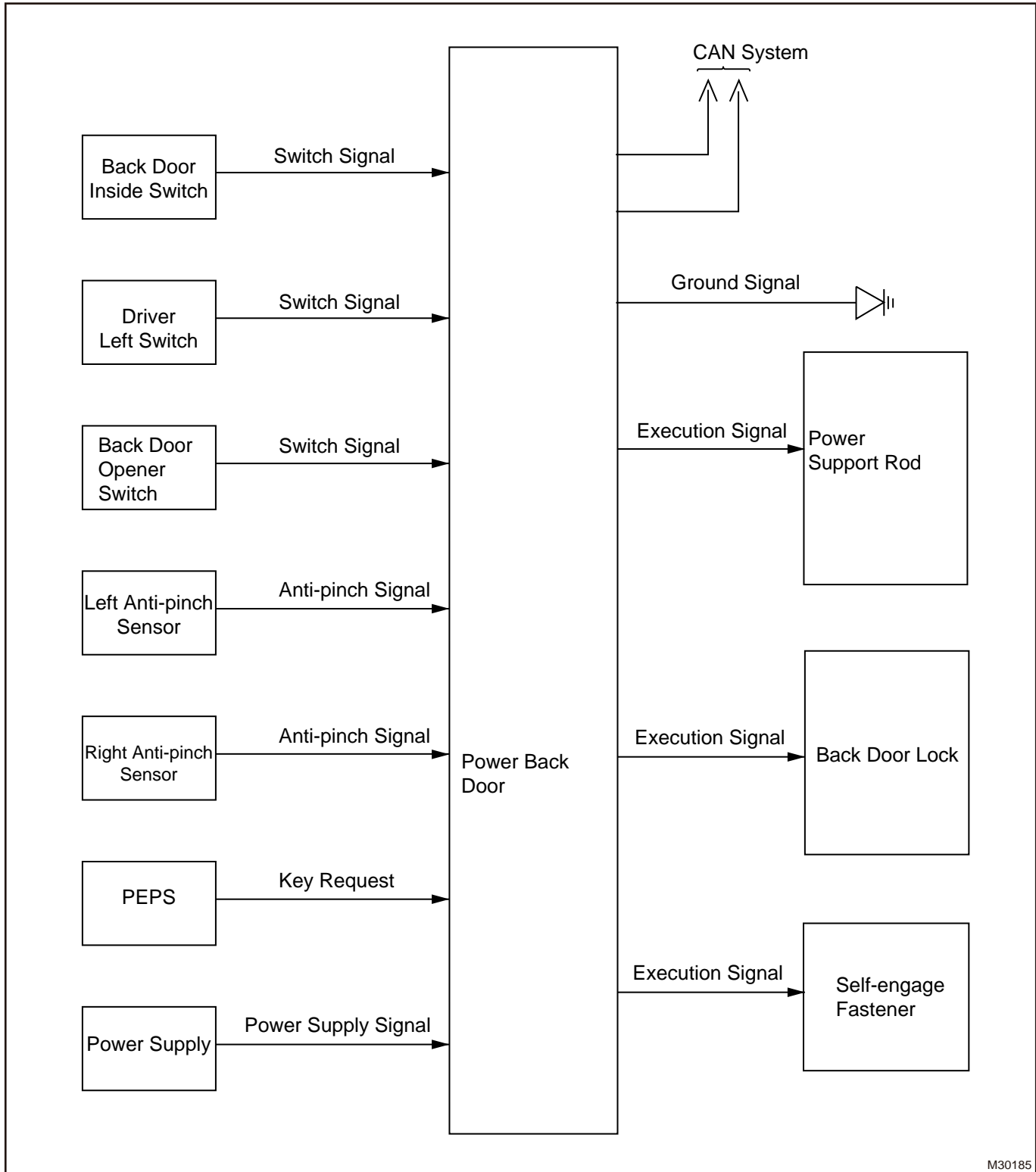


M30012

1	Back Door Sheet Metal Assembly	11	Back Door Upper Center Protector
2	Engine Hood Adjusting Block	12	Back Door Opening Driven Shaft
3	Back Door Hinge Assembly	13	Rear Trunk Lid Lower Left Bracket
4	Back Door Hinge Assembly	14	Power Gas Spring Upper Bracket
5	Left Back Door Protector	15	Back Door Opening Power Drive Shaft
6	Back Door Lower Protector	16	Rear Trunk Lid Lower Right Bracket
7	Back Door Protector Small Block Cover	17	Power Gas Spring Upper Bracket
8	Back Door Closer Switch	18	Power Back Door Module

9	Back Door Grip	19	Headlight Adjustment Switch
10	Right Back Door Protector		

3 System Schematic Diagram



Battery provides 12 V power supply to power back door module (PLG). Power back door module collects information of each sensor and switch command to perform back door action.

4 Function Overview

■ Back door opening function

Back door receives the external input signal (CAN signal or hard wire signal), back door unlocks and moves from closed position to opened position automatically. Back door opening function includes two basic actions, which are back door electric unlocking and back door electric opening.

■ Back door closing function

Back door receives the external input signal (CAN signal or hard wire signal), back door moves from opened position to closed position automatically and rear trunk lid lock is closed to fully locked.

■ Back door hovering function

Back door receives the external input signal (CAN signal or hard wire signal), and stops automatically at any position during movement of switch. Back door receives the external input signal (CAN signal or hard wire signal) at stop position, back door can continue to perform opening or closing action.

■ Back door opening height setting

The maximum opening angle of back door can be adjusted by related operations during back door factory configuration and user usage to meet user operation convenience.

Perform back door opening height setting as follows:

- Factory initialization configuration
- Long press back door closing switch number
- Large screen button setting ght

■ Back door jam protection function

During opening or closing of power back door, it will stop automatically and move in reverse direction after encountering obstacle resistance, prevent surrounding person of rear trunk lid being jammed and crashed.

■ Follow-up function

Under hovering condition of back door, back door will complete opening or closing action automatically after dragging the back door to open or close for a certain distance manually.

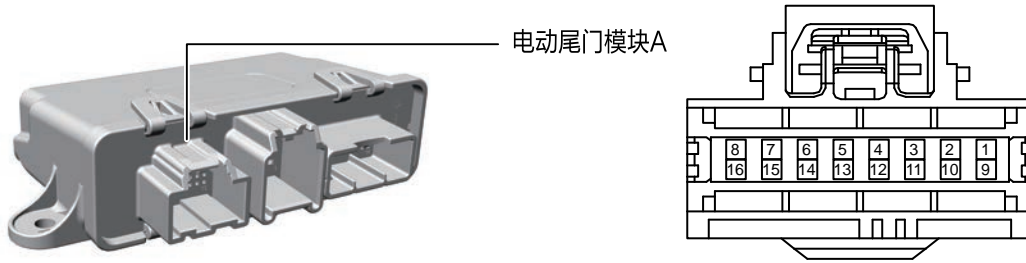
■ Polling function

Vehicle will poll whether it needs to open or close door, the request is sent via signal SATOReq, and PLG will respond after receiving the signal.

57.3 System Circuit Diagram

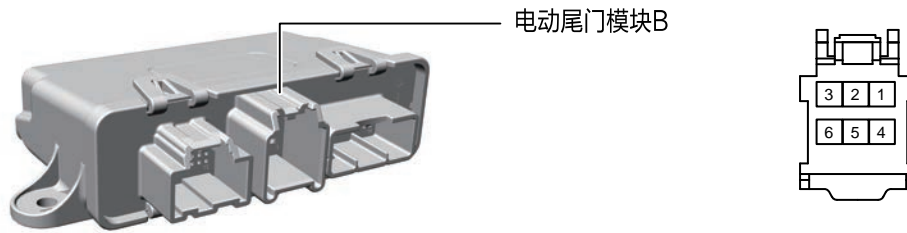
1 Module Terminal Definition

Power Back Door Module J1



Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
1	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	/
2	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	/
3	Body ground	Back door closer switch	Power supply "ON"	/
4	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	/
5	Body ground	Half latch signal	Power supply "ON"	/
6	Body ground	Full latch signal	Power supply "ON"	/
7	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	/
8	Body ground	Right jam protection signal	Power supply "ON"	/
9	/	-	/	/
10	/	-	/	/
11	/	-	/	/
12	/	-	/	/
13	/	-	/	/
14	/	-	/	/
15	/	LIN	/	/
16	/	Signal ground	/	/

Power Back Door Module J2

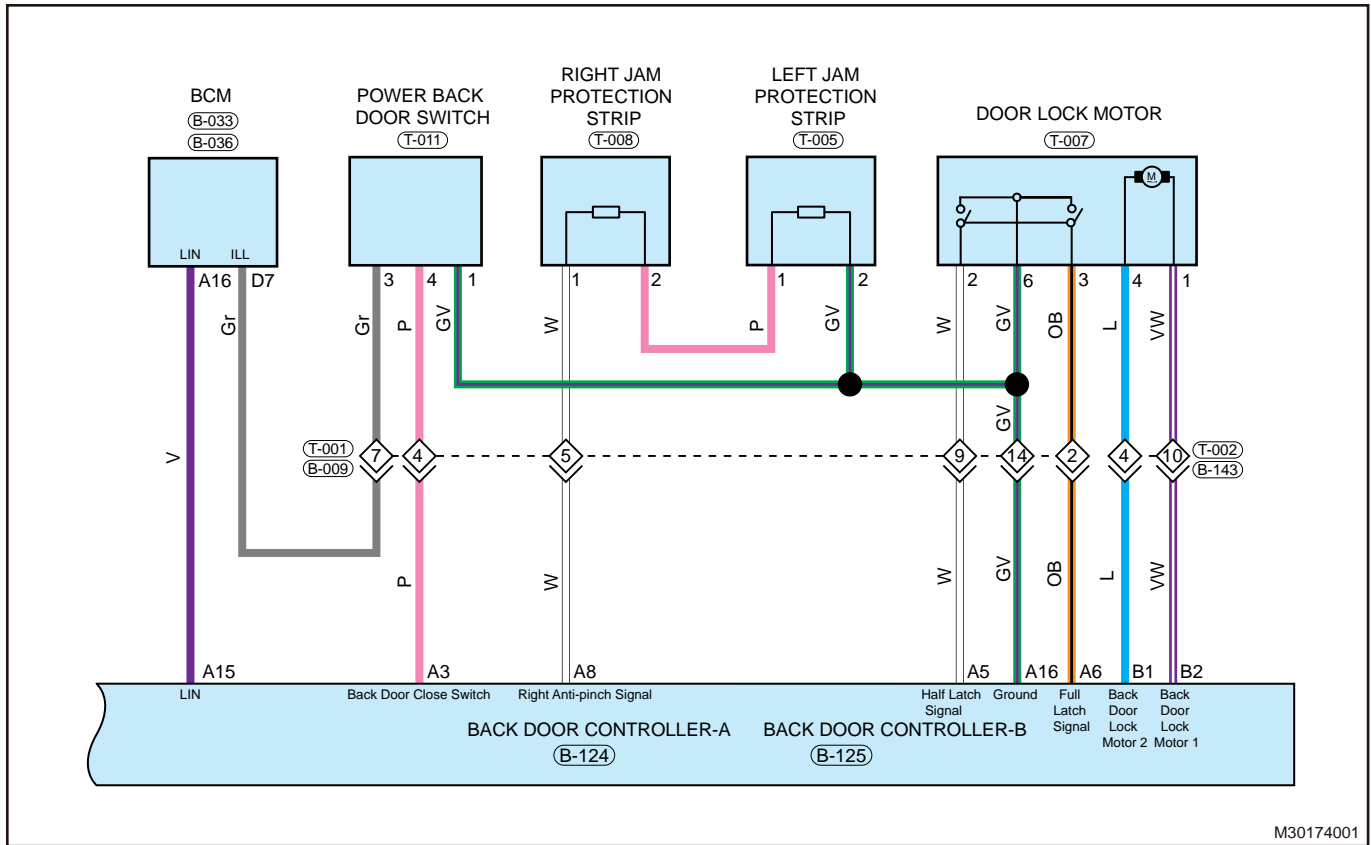


Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
1	Body ground	Back door lock motor 2	Power supply "ON"	3.8 V; Voltage changes during locking (3.8 V - 13 V - 3.8 V)
2	Body ground	Back door lock motor 1	Power supply "ON"	3.8 V; Voltage changes during locking (3.8 V - 13 V - 3.8 V)
3	Body ground	Power supply	Power supply "ON"	13 V
4	Body ground	10A power source input	Power supply "ON"	13 V
5	Body ground	-	Power supply "ON"	0.1 V; 7.9 V when buzzer sounds
6	Body ground	Ground	Power supply "ON"	0 V

Power Back Door Module J3



Terminal Inspection		Terminal Definition	Detection Condition	Measured Value
Multimeter Positive	Multimeter Negative			
1	Body ground	Support motor ON	Power supply "ON"	9.3 V; Changed between 4-5 V during back door opening; 0 V during closing;
2	Body ground	Support motor OFF	Power supply "ON"	9.3 V; 0 V during back door opening; Changed between 4-7 V during closing;
3	/	-	/	/
4	/	-	/	/
5	/	-	/	/
6	/	-	/	/
7	/	-	/	/
8	Body ground	"Hall sensor power supply" of electric support	Power supply "ON"	13 V
9	Body ground	"Hall signal 1" of electric support	Power supply "ON"	13 V (full opening) - 0 V (full closing) Varies according to position
10	Body ground	"Hall signal 2" of electric support	Power supply "ON"	13 V (full closing) - 0 V (full opening) Varies according to position
11	Body ground	"Hall sensor ground" of electric support	Power supply "ON"	0 V
12	/	-	/	/
13	/	-	/	/
14	/	-	/	/



57.4 Diagnostic Information and Steps

1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

- Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. Check each suspected area in sequence. Repair or adjust faulty components, or replace as necessary.

Power door lock control system:

Symptom	Suspected Area
Back door cannot be opened	Switch failed
	Main shaft motor is damaged
	Module is damaged
Back door jam protection failed	Main shaft motor is stuck
	Hall sensor is damaged
	Left/right anti-pinch strip is damaged
Back door cannot be closed	Door lock/pillar is deformed or damaged
	Door opening weatherstrip is not installed correctly
	Anti-pinch strip failed

2 Diagnostic Help

- Connect diagnostic tester (the latest software) to diagnostic interface, and make it communicate with vehicle electronic module through data network.
- Confirm that malfunction is current, and carry out diagnostic test and repair procedures.
- If Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) cannot be cleared, malfunction is current.
- Only use a digital multimeter to measure voltage of electronic system.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.
- Visually check the related wire harness.
- Check and clean all system grounds related to the latest DTCs.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, use circuit diagrams and look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.

3 DTC Confirmation Procedure

■ **Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12 V before performing following procedures.**

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- Use the diagnostic tester to record and clear DTCs stored in the system.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF and wait several seconds.
- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON and check the DTCs in system again.
- If DTC is detected, it indicates current malfunction.
- If no DTC is detected, malfunction indicated by the DTC is intermittent.

4 Intermittent DTC Troubleshooting

■ **If malfunction is intermittent, perform the followings:**

- Check if connector is loose.
- Check if wire harness is worn, pierced, pinched or partially broken.
- Wiggle related wire harness and connector and observe if signal in related circuit is interrupted.

- If possible, try to duplicate the conditions under which DTC was set.
- Look for data that has changed or DTC to reset during wiggling test.
- Look for broken, bent, protruded or corroded terminals.
- Inspect the mounting areas of instrument cluster, wire harness or wire harness connector and so on for damage, foreign matter, etc. that will cause incorrect signals.
- Check and clean all wire harness connectors and ground parts related to DTC.
- Remove instrument cluster from malfunctioning vehicle, then install it to a new vehicle and perform a test. If this DTC cannot be cleared, instrument cluster is malfunctioning. If DTC can be cleared, reinstall instrument cluster to original vehicle.
- If multiple trouble codes were set, refer to circuit diagrams to look for any common ground circuit or power supply circuit applied to DTC.
- Refer to any Technical Bulletin that may apply to this malfunction.

5 Ground Inspection

Groundings are very important to entire circuit system, which are normal or not can seriously affect the entire circuit system. Ground points are often exposed to moisture, dirt and other corrosive environments. Corrosion (rust) and oxidation may increase load resistance. This case will seriously affect normal operation of circuit. Check the ground points as follows:

- Remove ground bolt or nut.
- Check all contact surfaces for tarnish, dirt and rust, etc.
- Clean as necessary to ensure that contact is in good condition.
- Reinstall ground bolt or nut securely.
- Check if any additional accessories interfere with ground circuit.
- If several wire harnesses are crimped into one ground terminal, check for proper crimp condition. Make sure that all wire harnesses are clean and securely fastened while providing a proper ground path.

6 Diagnosis Procedure

Hint:

Use following procedures to troubleshoot the PLG system.

1	Vehicle brought to workshop
----------	------------------------------------

Next

2	Check battery voltage
----------	------------------------------

Check if battery voltage is normal.

Standard Condition

Standard voltage: Not less than 12 V

Result

NG	Replace battery
-----------	------------------------

OK

3	Customer problem analysis
----------	----------------------------------

Result

Result	Go to
No DTC	A
DTC is output	B

A

Perform troubleshooting procedure without DTCs according to malfunction symptom

B

4

Troubleshoot according to DTCs troubleshooting procedure

Result

Result	Go to
Problem is not resolved	A
Problem is resolved	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

5

According to BSD system malfunction repair completion inspection and delivery, confirm if malfunction is resolved

Result

Result	Go to
Delivery inspection is failed	A
Delivery inspection is qualified	B

A

Return to procedure 1 and troubleshoot the process again

B

6

Finished

7 Diagnostic Trouble Code (DTC) Chart

■ Description

DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B14A0 - 11	Spindle Motor Shorted to Ground	ECU monitors that motor voltage is 0 V for 100 ms, when left main shaft motor is not operated.	Wire harness connector failure.	Check connecting wire (used to turn on and off motor) and main shaft motor pin voltages.
B14A0 - 12	Spindle Motor Shorted to Battery	ECU monitors that motor voltage is power supply voltage for 100 ms, when left main shaft motor is not operated.		
B14A0 - 13	Spindle Motor Open Circuit	ECU monitors that motor - 1 pin voltage is 0 V, motor - 2 pin voltage is approximately 9.6 V (value varies with power supply) for 100 ms, when left main shaft motor is not operated.		
B14A0 - 16	Supply Voltage Out of Range (Low)	Power supply voltage is less than 9 V for at least 9 ms.	1. Battery voltage is not stable; 2. Wire harness connector failure.	1. Check battery voltage; 2. Check wire harness connector.
B14A0 - 17	Supply Voltage Out of Range (High)	Power supply voltage is more than 16 V for at least 500 ms		
B14A2 - 39	Hall Sensor A1 Failed	ECU monitors A1 sensor for abnormalities within 1000 ms, when power back door is opened or closed.	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. Main shaft motor failure.	1. Check wire and main shaft motor.
B14A3 - 39	Hall Sensor A2 Failed	ECU monitors A2 sensor for abnormalities within 1000 ms, when power back door is opened or closed.		2. Check wire and main shaft motor.
B14A2 - 41	Left Anti-pinch Sensor Shorted to Battery or Open	ECU detects that anti-pinch motor voltage is 5 V for 100 ms.	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. Anti-pinch sensor failure.	1. Check wire; 2. Check anti-pinch sensor pin voltage.
B14A2 - 42	Left Anti-pinch Sensor Shorted to Ground	ECU detects that anti-pinch motor voltage is 0 V for 100 ms.		

DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
B14A2 - 43	Right Anti-pinch Sensor Shorted to Battery or Open	ECU detects that anti-pinch motor voltage is 5 V for 100 ms.		
B14A2 - 44	Right Anti-pinch Sensor Shorted to Ground	ECU detects that anti-pinch motor voltage is 0 V for 100 ms.		
B14A8 - 11	Latch Motor Shorted to Ground	ECU monitors that motor voltage is 0 V for 100 ms, when latch motor is not operated.		
B14A8 - 12	Latch Motor Shorted to Battery	ECU monitors that motor voltage is power supply voltage for 100 ms, when latch motor is not operated.	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. Latch motor failure.	1. Check connecting wire; 2. Check latch motor pin voltage.
B14A8 - 13	Latch Motor Open Circuit	ECU monitors that motor - 1 pin voltage is 0 V, motor - 2 pin voltage is approximately 9.6 V (value varies with power supply) for 100 ms, when latch motor is not operated.		
B14AA - 11	Speaker Shorted to Ground	ECU monitors that speaker current is more than 5 A for 100 ms, when speaker is operated.		
B14AA - 12	Speaker Shorted to Battery	ECU monitors that speaker voltage is power supply voltage for 100 ms, when speaker is not operated.	1. Wire harness connector failure; 2. Speaker failure.	1. Check wire connector; 2. Check speaker and speaker pin voltage.
B14AA - 13	Speaker Open Circuit	ECU monitors that speaker voltage is approximately 5.7 V for 100 ms, when speaker is not operated.		
U0100-87	Lost Communication With EMS	If EMS information is not received within 100 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3	1. Control module is damaged; 2. Wire harness is damaged.	Refer to CAN network system for troubleshooting

DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0101-87	Lost Communication With TCU	If TCU information is not received within 100 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0122-87	Lost Communication With ESC	If ESC information is not received within 100 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0140-87	Lost Communication With BCM	If BCM information is not received within 100 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0155-87	Lost Communication With IPC	If IPC information is not received within 100 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0164-87	Lost Communication With CLM	If CLM information is not received within 100 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0248-87	Lost Communication With PEPS	If PEPS information is not received within 100 ms, this DTC will occur, if this information is received for 3 consecutive times, DTC will be cleared		
U0401-81	Invalid Data Received from EMS	If incorrect data is received from EMS, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be		

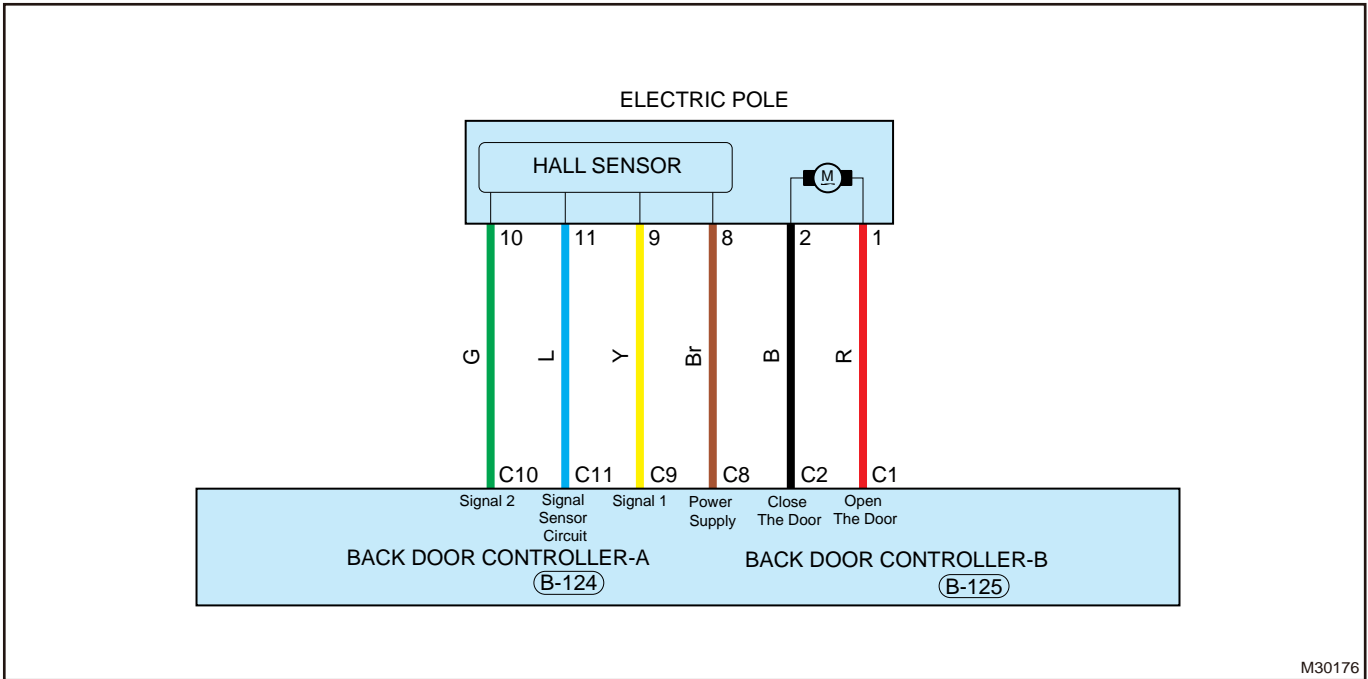
DTC	DTC Definition	Generation Condition	Possible Cause	Maintenance Advice
		cleared after data is normal		
U0402-81	Invalid Data Received from TCU	If incorrect data is received from TCU, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0416-81	Invalid Data Received from ESC	If incorrect data is received from ESC, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0422-81	Invalid Data Received from BCM	If incorrect data is received from BCM, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0423-81	Invalid Data Received from IPC	If incorrect data is received from IPC, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		
U0424-81	Invalid Data Received from CLM	If incorrect data is received from CLM, this DTC will occur, the DTC will be cleared after data is normal		

8 DTC Diagnosis Procedure

DTC	DTC Definition
B1A90-11	Left Main Shaft Motor Shorted to Ground
B1A90-12	Left Main Shaft Motor Shorted to Battery
B1A90-13	Left Main Shaft Motor Open Circuit

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.



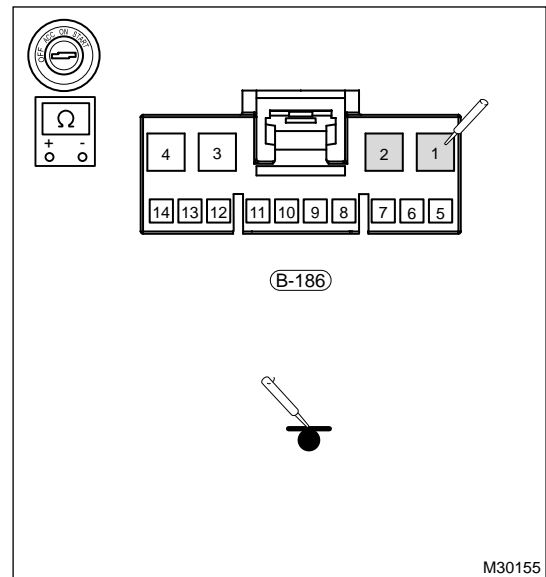
M30176

Confirm that battery voltage is not less than 12V before performing following procedures.

1 Check if left main shaft motor circuit is shorted to ground

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance values between motor support B-186 (1), B-186 (2) and body ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-186 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
B-186 (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



M30155

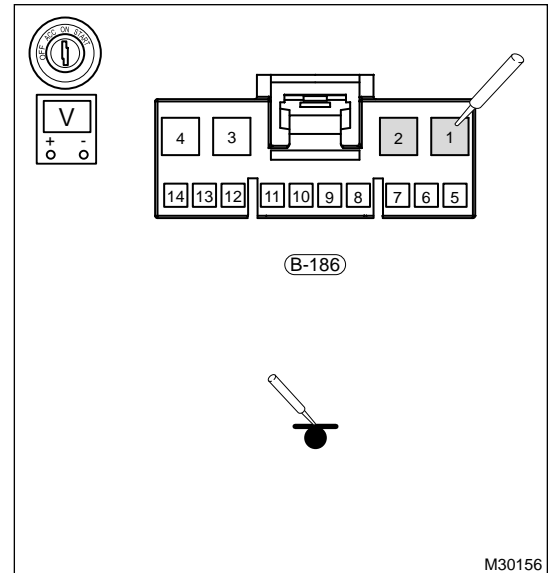
NG Replace or check and repair wire harness

OK

2 Check if left main shaft motor circuit is shorted to battery

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage values between motor support B-186 (1), B-186 (2) and body power supply.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-186 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V
B-186 (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	0 V



NG

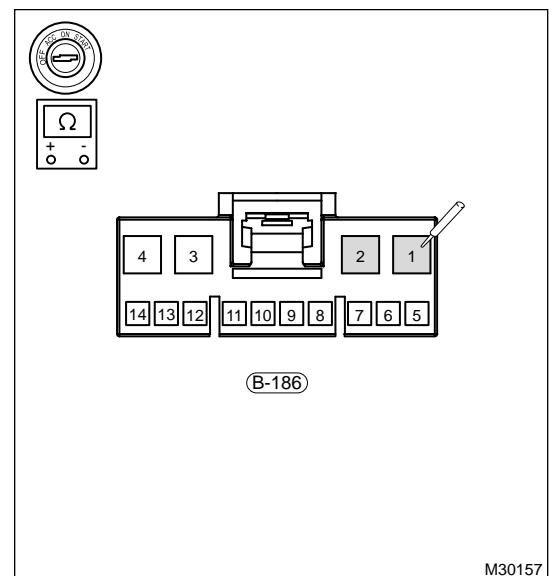
Replace or check and repair wire harness

OK

3 Check wire harness for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable.
- (c) Disconnect the electric support connector B-186.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance value between connectors B-186 (1) and B-186 (2) to check wire harness for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-186 (1) - B-186 (2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	> 0 Ω



OK

Replace power back door module assembly

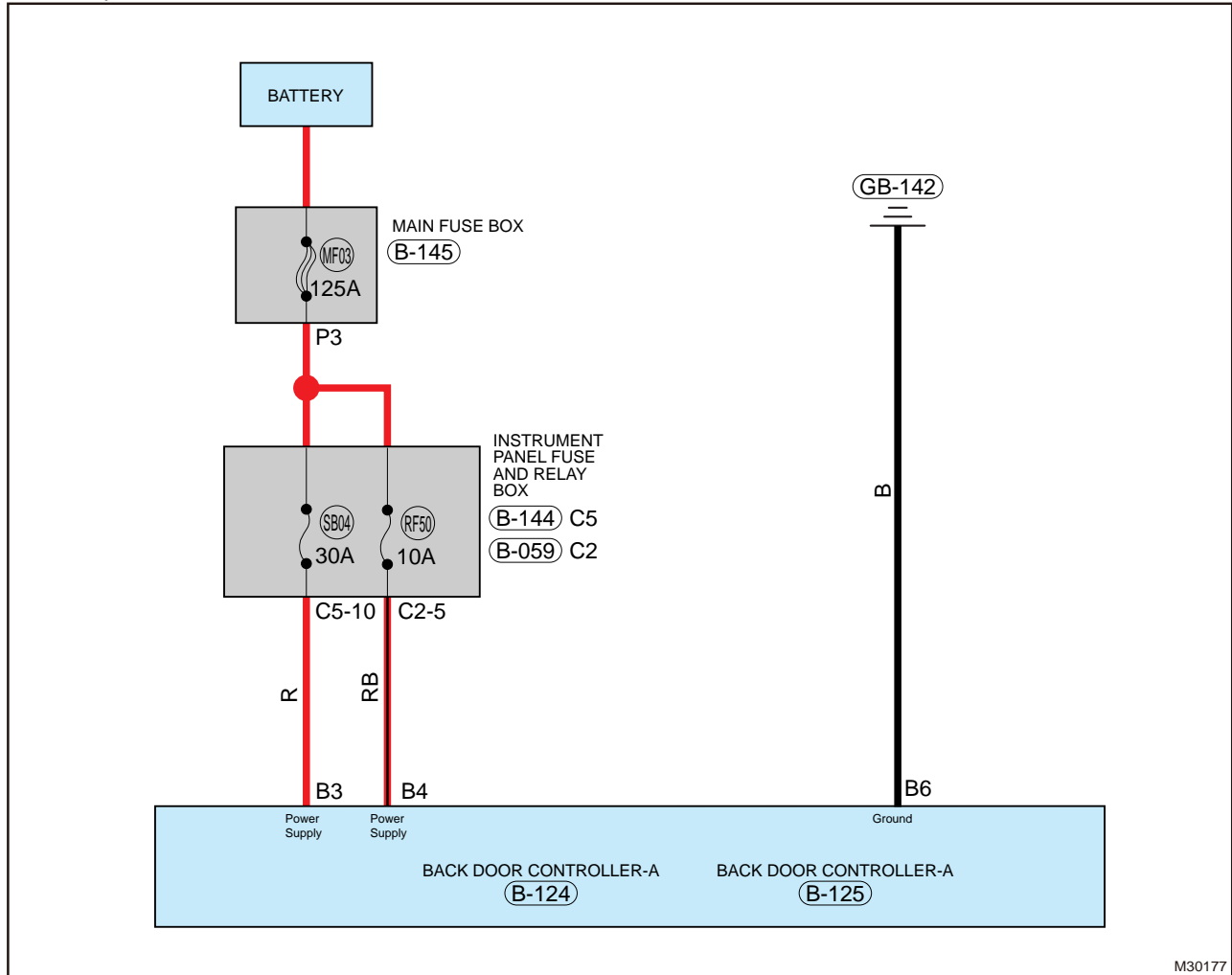
NG

Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B14A0-16	Voltage Too Low
B14A0-17	Voltage Too High

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.



M30177

1 Check fuse

(a) Check if fuses MF03, SB04 and RF50 are blown out.

NG Replace fuse

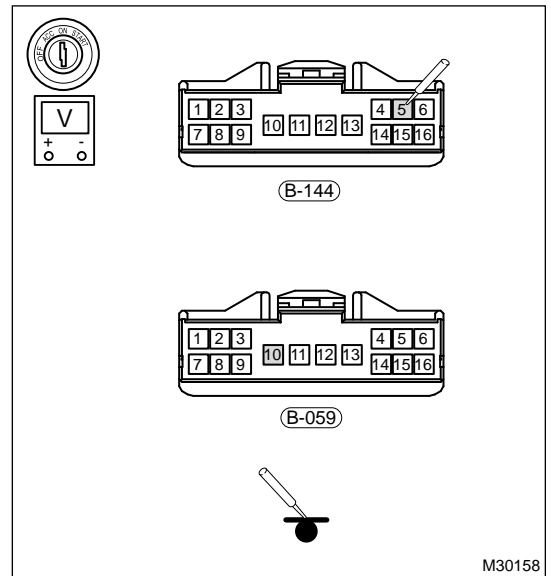
OK

2 Check output voltage of instrument panel fuse and relay box

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Disconnect instrument panel fuse and relay box connectors B-144 and B-059.

(c) Using a digital multimeter, measure voltage values between connector B-059 (5), B - 144 (10) and body ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-059 (5) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12\text{ V}$
B-144 (10) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	$\leq 12\text{ V}$



NG

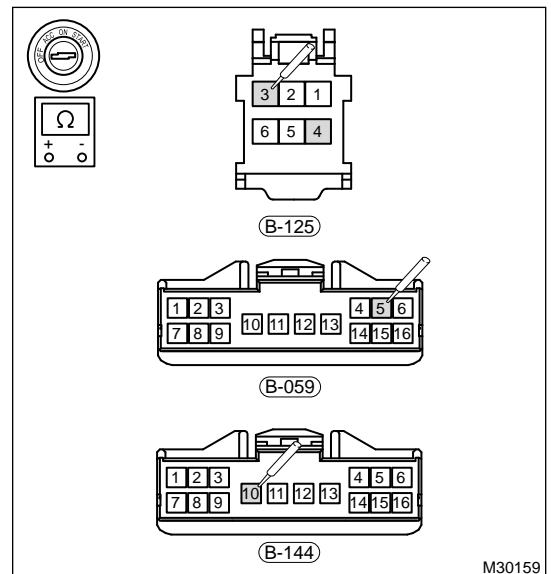
Replace instrument panel fuse and relay box assembly

OK

3 Check wire harness for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable.
- (c) Disconnect power back door module connector B-125, and instrument panel fuse and relay box connectors B-144 and B-059.
- (d) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance values between connectors B-125 (3) and B-144 (10), connectors B-125 (4) and B-059 (5) to check wire harness for open.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-125 (3) - B-144 (10)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1\ \Omega$
B-125 (4) - B-059 (5)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1\ \Omega$



OK

Replace PLG module assembly

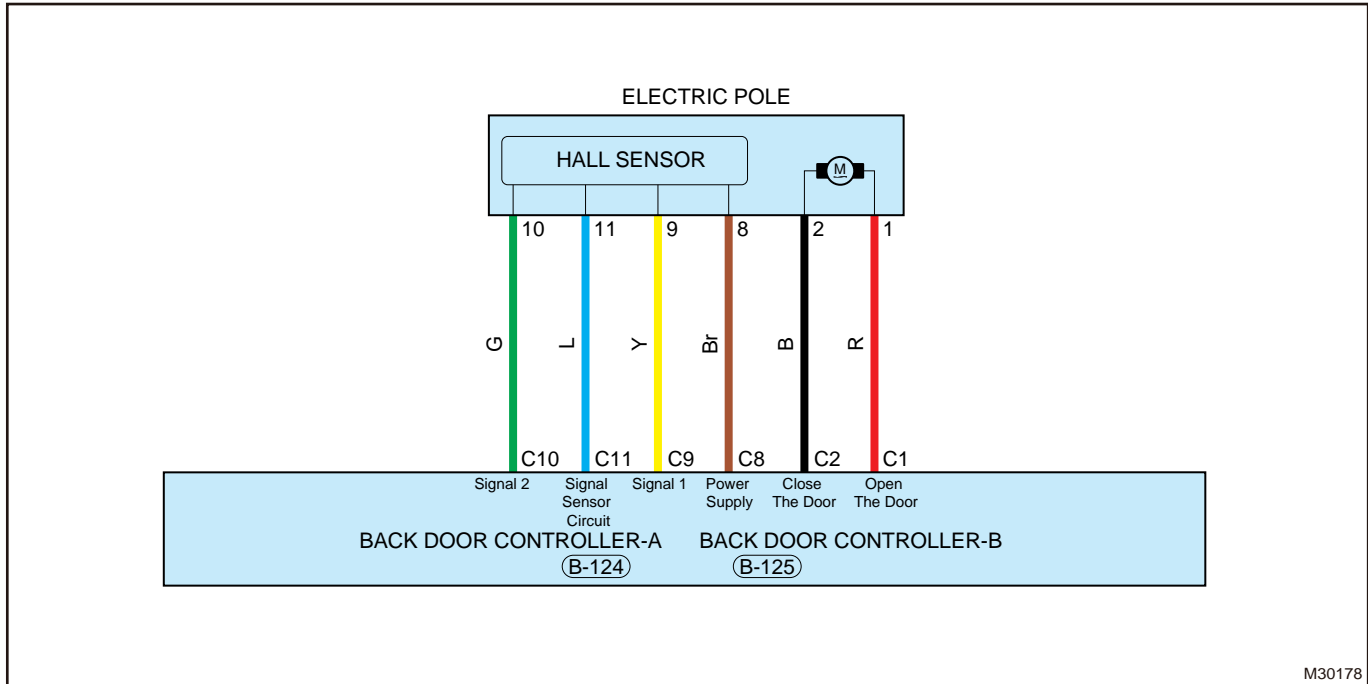
NG

Handle and repair related wire harness

DTC	DTC Definition
B14A2-39	Hall Sensor A1 Failed
B14A8-11	Hall Sensor A2 Failed

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.

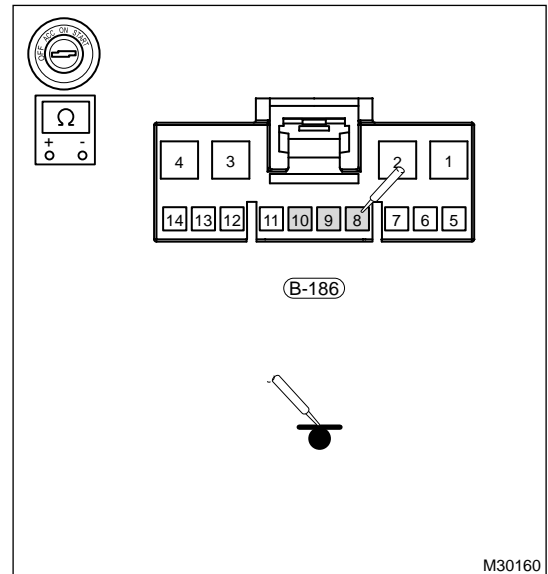


M30178

1 Check motor support signal circuit for open

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Using a digital multimeter, measure resistance values between motor support B-186 (10/9/8) terminals and ground.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
B-186 (10) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
B-186 (9) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
B-186 (8) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



M30160

NG Check and repair motor support assembly

OK

2 Check if motor support sensor is normal

OK

Replace PLG module assembly

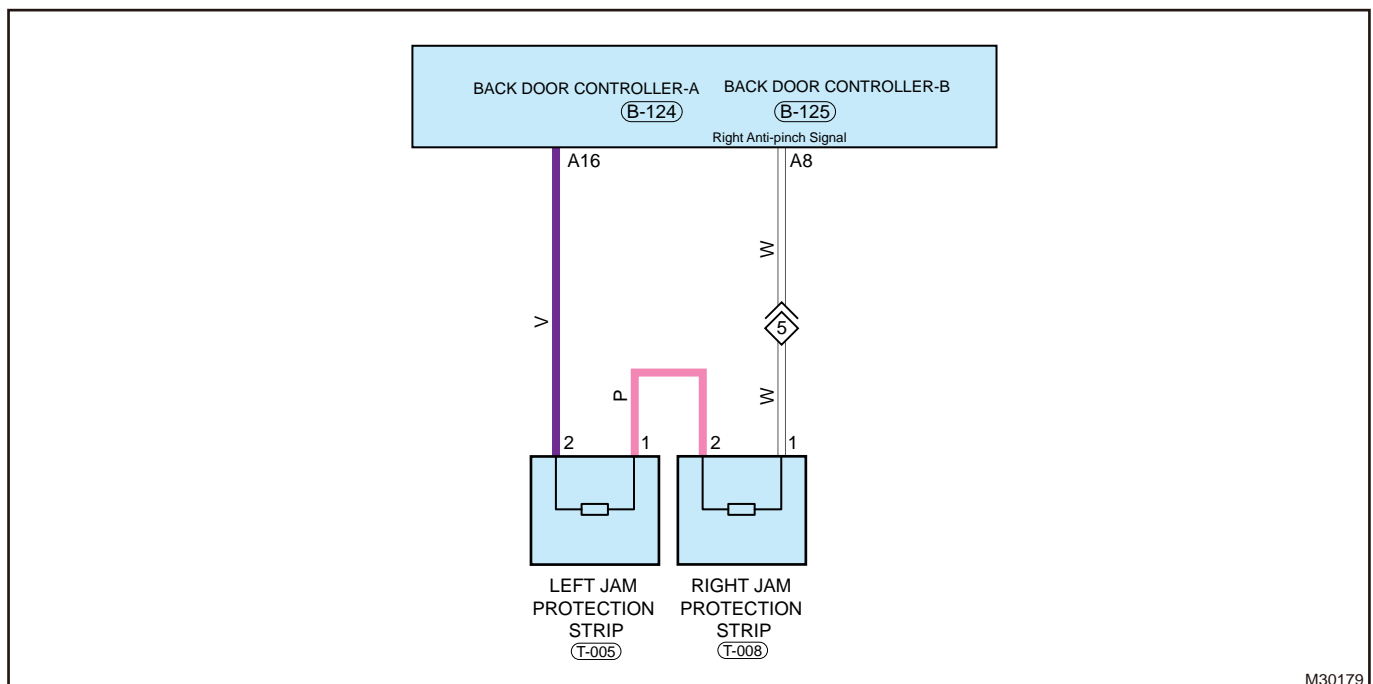
NG

Replace motor support assembly

DTC	DTC Definition
B14A2-41	Left Anti-pinch Strip Shorted to Battery or Open
B14A2-42	Left Anti-pinch Strip Shorted to Ground
B14A2-43	Right Anti-pinch Strip Shorted to Battery or Open
B14A3-39	Right Anti-pinch Strip Shorted to Ground

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.



M30179

Take left rod anti-pinch strip as an example. For right rod anti-pinch strip, refer to LH side.

1 Check left rod anti-pinch strip connector

- Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable.
- Disconnect left anti-pinch strip connector T-005.
- Check wire harness, connector and terminal for deformation, bend or damage.

NG

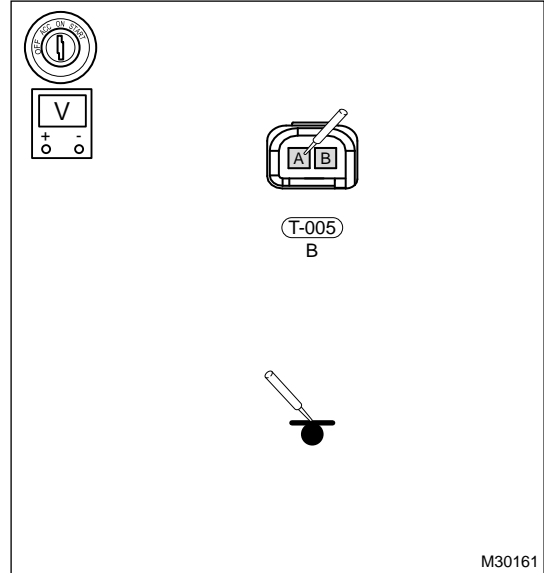
Repair or replace left anti-pinch strip wire harness

OK

2 Check left rod anti-pinch strip wire harness for short circuit

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (b) Measure if left anti-pinch strip circuit is short to power supply.

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
T-005 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	5 V
T-005 (2) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	≈ 0 V



NG Repair or replace left anti-pinch strip wire harness

OK

3 Test left rod anti-pinch strip

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (b) Disconnect left anti-pinch strip wire harness connector and use digital multimeter to measure left rod anti-pinch strip internal resistance.

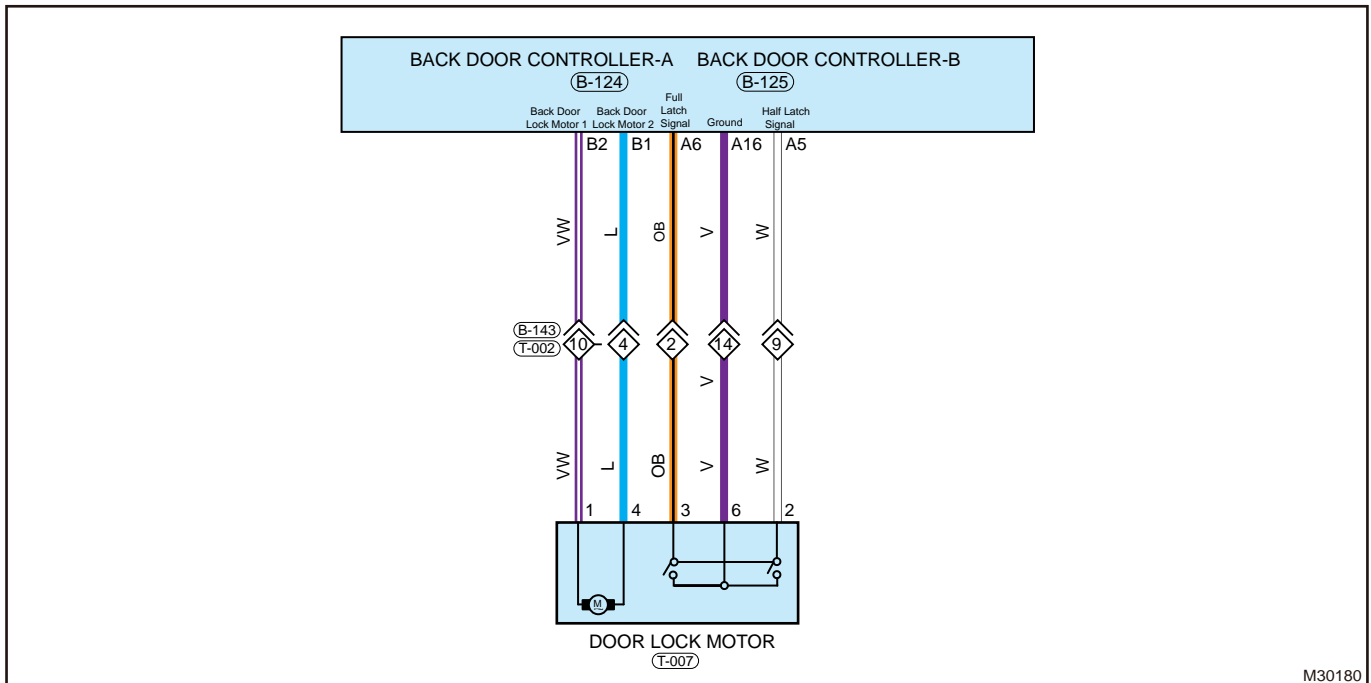
OK System is normal

NG Replace left rod anti-pinch strip

DTC	DTC Definition
B14A8-12	Lock Motor Shorted to Ground
B14A8-13	Lock Motor Shorted to Battery

Hint:

When performing electrical equipment diagnosis and test, always refer to circuit diagram for related circuit and component information.



1 Check lock motor connector

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" .
- (b) Disconnect the connector T-007, and check terminals.

NG

Repair or replace motor wire harness

OK

2 Check lock motor driver

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "ON" .
- (b) Press back door switch and measure T-007 (1), (4) with 21 W test light. The test light should be on.

NG

Replace door lock motor assembly

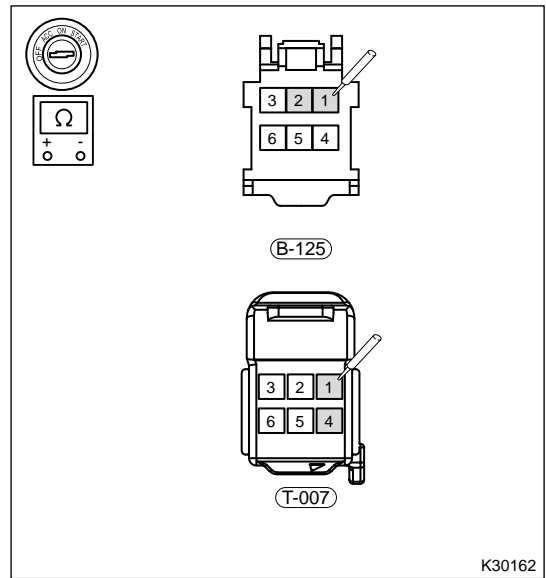
OK

3 Check lock motor wire harness

- (a) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "OFF" .
- (b) Disconnect self-engage and fastener connector T-007, and disconnect power back door connector B-125.

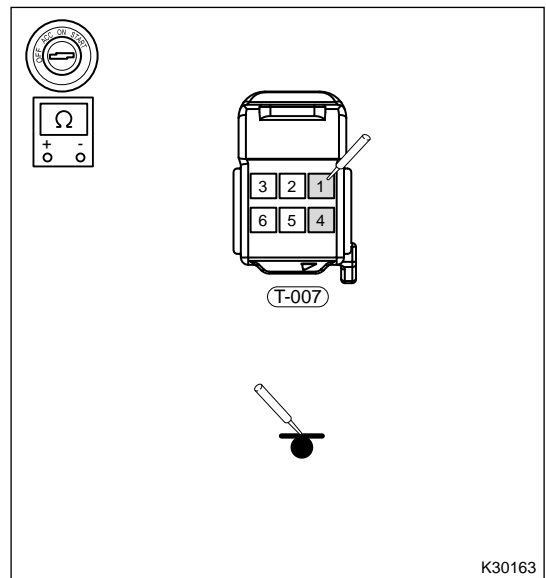
(c) Using multimeter, measure the continuity between T-007 (1) - B-125 (2) and T-007 (4) - B-125 (1).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
T-007 (1) - B-125(2)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$
T-007 (4) - B-125 (1)	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	$\leq 1 \Omega$



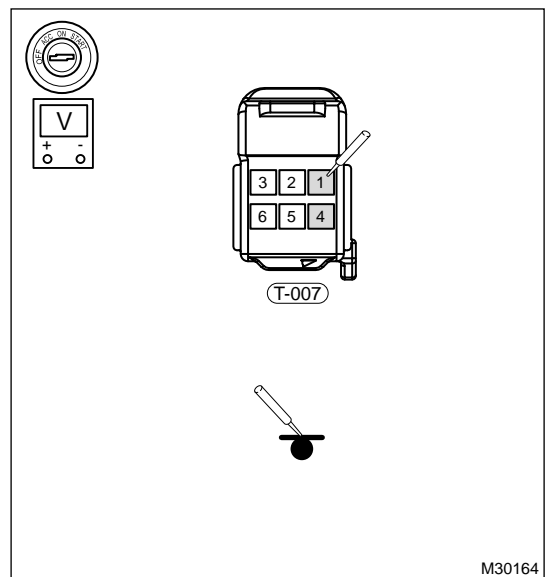
(d) Using multimeter, measure resistance values to ground of T-007 (1) and T-007 (4).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
T-007 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞
T-007 (4) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "OFF"	∞



(e) Using multimeter, measure voltage values to ground of T-007 (1) and T-007 (4).

Multimeter Connection	Condition	Specified Condition
T-007 (1) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Other than power supply voltage
T-007 (4) - Body ground	ENGINE START STOP switch "ON"	Other than power supply voltage



NG

Repair or replace motor wire harness

OK

4

Reconfirm DTCs

- (a) Connect all the connectors.
 (b) Connect the negative battery terminal cable.
 (c) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to "ON" .
 (d) Use diagnostic tester (the latest software) to reread DTC in system.

OK

System is normal

NG

Replace fastener assembly

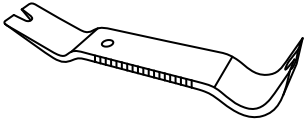
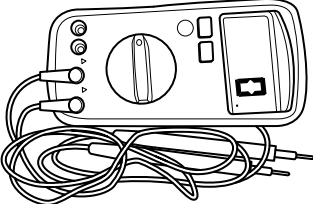
DTC	DTC Definition
U0100-87	Lost Communication With EMS
U0101-87	Lost Communication With TCU
U0122-87	Lost Communication With ESC
U0140-87	Lost Communication With BCM
U0155-87	Lost Communication With IPC
U0164-87	Lost Communication With CLM
U0248-87	Lost Communication With PEPS
U0401-81	Invalid Data Received from EMS
U0402-81	Invalid Data Received from TCU
U0416-81	Invalid Data Received from ESC
U0422-81	Invalid Data Received from BCM
U0423-81	Invalid Data Received from IPC
U0424-81	Invalid Data Received from CLM
U0426-81	Invalid Data Received from PEPS
U0546-81	Invalid Data Received from IHU
UIBOO-88	CAN Bus Off

1

Refer to "CAN" network system for troubleshooting

57.5 On-Vehicle Service

1 Tools

Tool Name	Tool Drawing
Interior crow plate	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00020</p>
Digital multimeter	 <p style="text-align: right;">S00002</p>

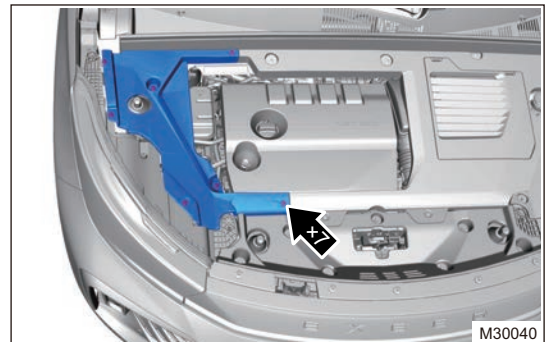
2 Replace Engine Compartment Trim Cover Assembly

2.1 Removal

⚠ Caution

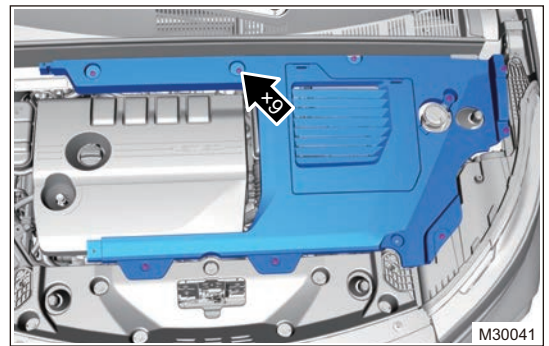
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine compartment trim cover assembly.**

- (1) Remove 7 fixing clips from right engine compartment trim cover assembly.



- (2) Remove the right engine compartment trim cover assembly.

- (3) Remove 9 fixing clips from left engine compartment trim cover assembly.



- (4) Remove left engine compartment trim cover assembly.

2.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **After installation, check whether the fastening is firm, and the buckle cannot be loose.**

- (1) Install the left engine compartment trim cover assembly to a proper position of body.
- (2) Install 9 fixing clips on the left engine compartment trim cover assembly.
- (3) Install the right engine compartment trim cover assembly to a proper position of body.
- (4) Install 7 fixing clips on the right engine compartment trim cover assembly.

3 Replace Engine Hood Gas Spring

3.1 Removal

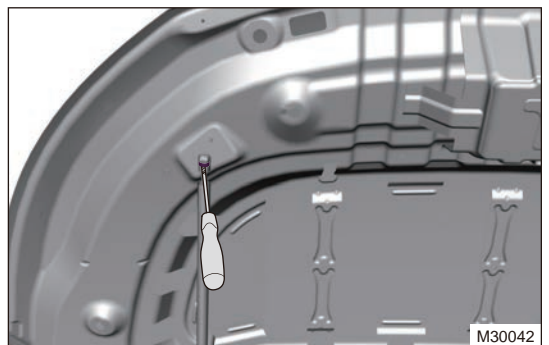
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood gas spring.**
- **When removing engine hood gas spring, an assistant is needed to hold engine hood. Try to prevent engine hood from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.**
- **There may be a certain starting force on gas spring when it is used firstly, although the supplier will run-in to solve this problem before leaving the factory, closing force may too strong after long term storage. For personal safety, it is necessary to close engine hood slowly at the first time, If it cannot be closed, it is necessary to replace gas spring. The gas spring is a product with internal high pressure storage. User is prohibited to approach the gas spring to the fire and heat sources; Never strike gas spring fiercely; Prevent explosion which will cause the unnecessary personal injury. It is forbidden absolutely to disassemble gas spring without site guidance of specialized person. Any small mis-operation during disassembly may lead to piston rod injection or cylinder burst, causing personal injury and accidents.**
- **Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.**

- (1) Insert a flat-head screwdriver into the slot between C-shaped snap spring and plastic ball socket, tilt C-shaped snap spring to a proper position, hold the area nearest to ball socket with a hand, and pull end of gas spring lightly in the opposite direction to remove it.

⚠ Caution

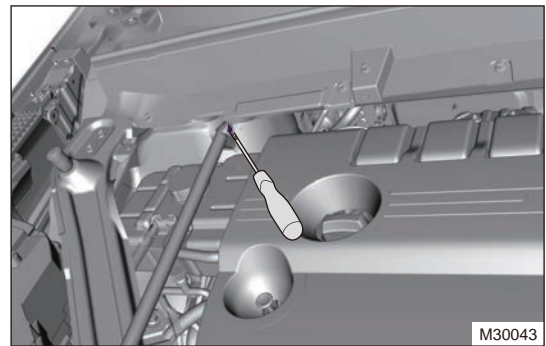
- **When removing gas spring, avoid using tools to knock and removing forcibly.**
- **It is not allowed absolutely to hold center part of gas spring to remove it forcibly.**



- (2) Insert a flat-head screwdriver into the slot between C-shaped snap spring and plastic ball socket, tilt C-shaped snap spring to a proper position, hold the area nearest to ball socket with a hand, and pull end of gas spring lightly in the opposite direction to remove it.

⚠ Caution

- **When removing gas spring, avoid using tools to knock and removing forcibly.**
- **It is not allowed absolutely to hold center part of gas spring to remove it forcibly.**



- (3) Remove the engine hood gas spring.

3.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **When installing engine hood gas spring, an assistant is needed to hold engine hood. Try to prevent engine hood from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.**
- **Pay attention to the installation direction and installation sequence, clamp the piston rod end to engine hood gas spring left mounting bracket, and then clamp the cylinder end to engine hood, so that ball socket cannot slide out.**

- (1) Apply grease to ball socket of gas spring body, and ensure appearance is not being affected, and then clamp the body to ball pin separately.
- (2) Install the C-shaped snap spring at the lower end of engine hood gas spring.
- (3) Install the C-shaped snap spring at the upper end of engine hood gas spring.

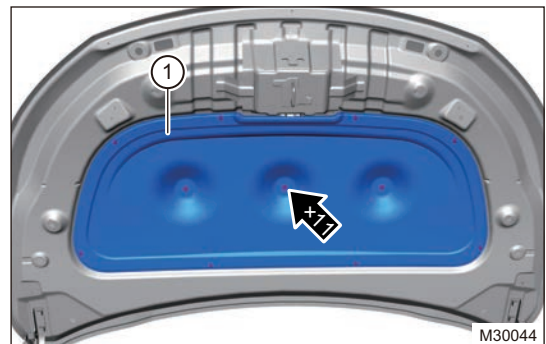
4 Replace Engine Hood Assembly

4.1 Removal

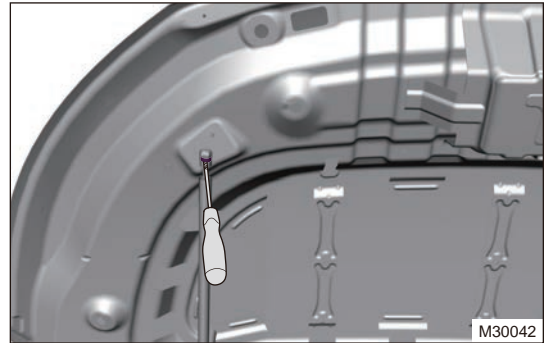
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood assembly.**
- **When removing engine hood assembly, try to prevent engine hood from falling down during operation, resulting in damage to body or front windshield.**
- **When removing engine hood assembly, an assistant is needed to hold engine hood. Try to prevent engine hood from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.**

- (1) Remove clips from engine hood sound insulator pad, and remove the engine hood sound insulator pad (1).



- (2) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry off fixing clips at upper end of engine hood gas spring.



- (3) Remove 4 fixing nuts between engine hood assembly and engine hood both sides hinge assembly, and remove engine hood assembly.



4.2 Installation

- (1) Install the engine hood assembly, install and tighten 4 fixing nuts to engine hood.
- (2) Install the fixing clips at the upper end of engine hood gas spring.
- (3) Install the engine hood sound insulator pad, and install the fixing clips on the engine hood sound insulator pad.

5 Replace Engine Hood Hinge Assembly

5.1 Removal

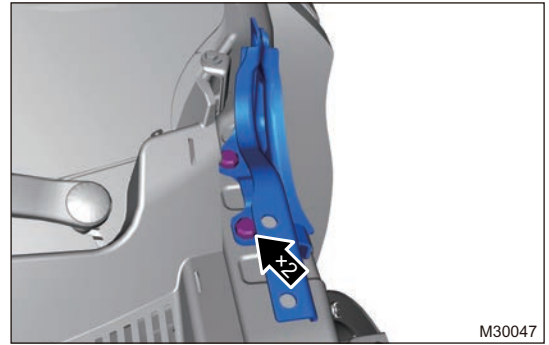
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing engine hood hinge assembly.
- When removing engine hood hinge assembly, try to prevent engine hood from falling down during operation, resulting in damage to body or front windshield.
- When removing engine hood hinge assembly, an assistant is needed to hold engine hood. Try to prevent engine hood from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- Use same procedures for right and left sides, procedures listed below are for left side.

- (1) Remove the wing assembly.
- (2) Remove 2 fixing nuts between left hinge assembly and engine hood assembly.



- (3) Remove 2 fixing bolts between engine hood left hinge assembly and body.



- (4) Remove the engine hood left hinge assembly.

5.2 Installation

- (1) Install the engine hood left hinge assembly to a proper position of body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing bolts between engine hood left hinge assembly and body.
Torque: $22 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install 2 fixing nuts between left hinge assembly and engine hood assembly.
Torque: $22 \pm 1.0 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (4) Install the wing assembly.

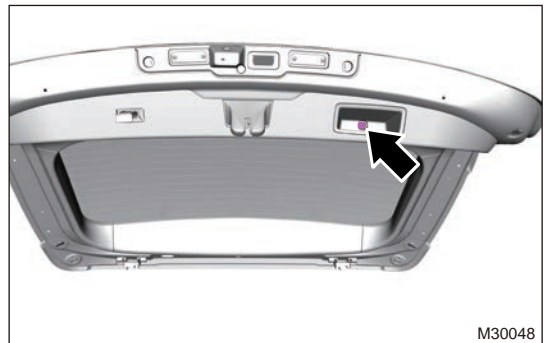
6 Replace Back Door Protector Assembly

6.1 Removal

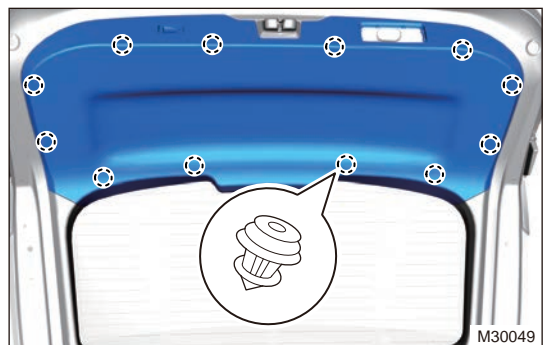
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment when removing back door protector assembly.
- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing back door protector assembly.

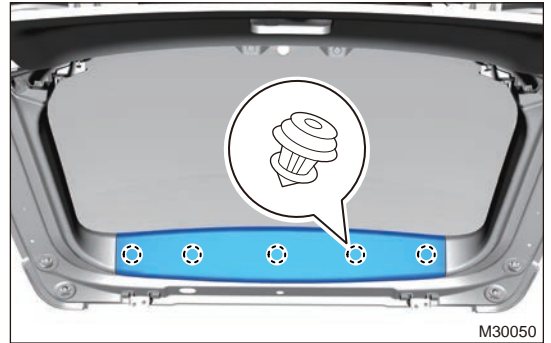
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the fixing screw from grip box.



- (4) Remove the back door grip.
- (5) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clips from back door lower protector.



- (6) Disconnect power back door switch assembly connector, and remove the back door lower protector.
- (7) Using an interior crow plate, pry off fixing clips from back door upper center protector carefully.



- (8) Remove the back door upper center protector.
- (9) Remove 3 plastic rivet from back door upper left protector (Use same procedures for right and left sides).



- (10) Remove the back door upper left protector.

6.2 Installation

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing back door protector assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing back door protector assembly.**

- (1) Install the back door upper left protector to a proper position of body.
- (2) Install 3 plastic rivet on the back door upper left protector (Use same procedures for right and left sides).
- (3) Install the back door upper center protector to a proper position of body.
- (4) Install the back door lower protector to a proper position of body, and connect power switch assembly connector.
- (5) Remove the back door grip, and install the grip box screw.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

7 Replace Back Door Assembly

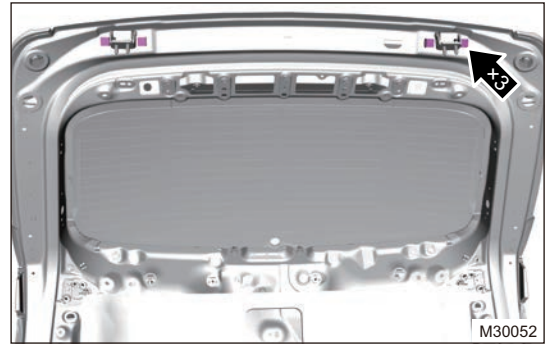
7.1 Removal

Caution

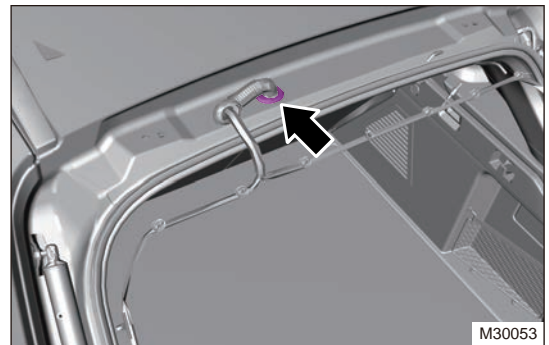
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment when removing back door assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when removing back door assembly.**
- **When removing back door assembly, an assistant is needed to hold the trunk lid. Try to prevent trunk lid from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.

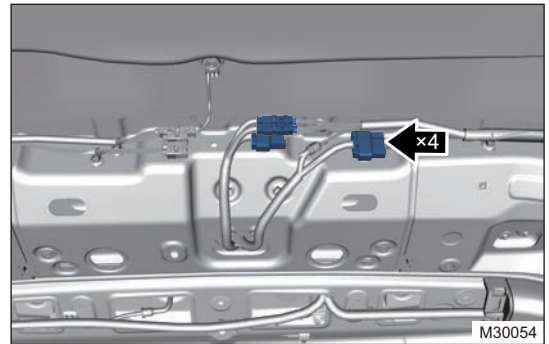
- (3) Remove the back door protector assembly.
- (4) Remove the back door wiper arm.
- (5) Remove the back door wiper motor assembly.
- (6) Remove the back door lock assembly.
- (7) Remove the rear combination B light body.
- (8) Remove the back door anti-pinch strip.
- (9) Remove the rear spoiler plate.
- (10) Remove the roof assembly.
- (11) Remove 4 fixing bolts from back door left and right hinges assembly.



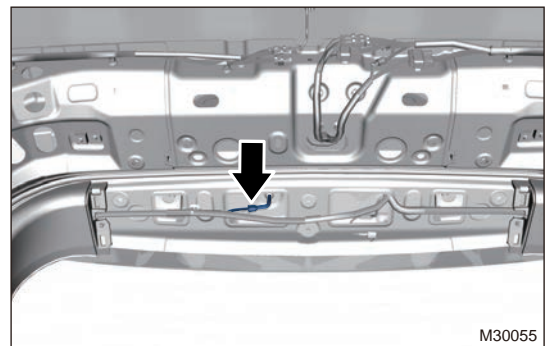
- (12) Using an interior crow plate, pry off the back door wire harness dust boot carefully.



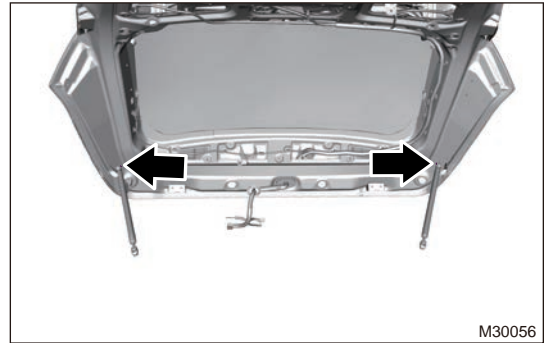
- (13) Disconnect back door wire harness assembly connector plug.



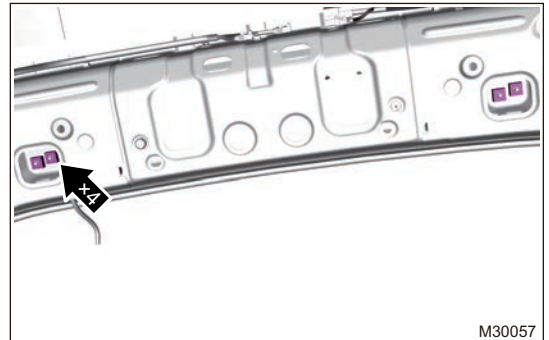
- (14) Disconnect back door wiper spraying pipe joint.



- (15) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry off the upper fixing clips between left electric support and right balance bar carefully.



- (16) Remove the back door assembly.
 (17) Remove 4 fixing nuts from back door left and right hinges assembly.



- (18) Remove the back door hinge assembly.

7.2 Installation

Caution

- **When installing back door hinge assembly, an assistant is needed to hold back door. Try to prevent back door from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.**
- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when installing back door assembly.**
- **Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing back door assembly.**
- **After installing back door assembly, it is necessary to perform panoramic image calibration.**

- (1) Install the engine hood hinge assembly to a proper position of body.
- (2) Install 4 fixing nuts on the back door left and right hinges assembly.
Torque: $25 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install the engine hood assembly to a proper position of body.
- (4) Install the electric support and right balance bar.
- (5) Connect back door wiper spraying pipe joint.
- (6) Connect back door wire harness assembly connector plug.
- (7) Install the back door wire harness dust boot.
- (8) Install 4 fixing bolts on the back door left and right hinges assembly.
Torque: $25 \pm 2 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (9) Install the roof assembly.
- (10) Install the rear spoiler plate.
- (11) Install the back door anti-pinch strip.
- (12) Install the rear combination B light body.
- (13) Install the back door lock assembly.
- (14) Install the back door wiper motor assembly.
- (15) Install the back door wiper arm.

- (16) Install the back door protector assembly.
- (17) Connect the negative battery cable.

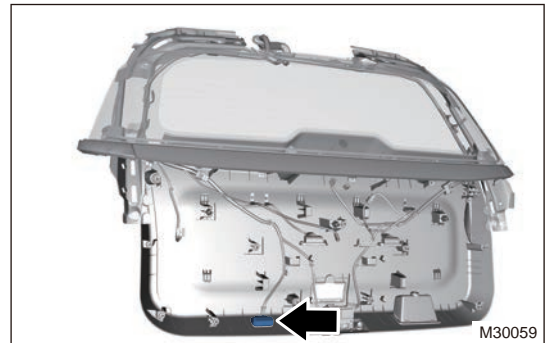
8 Replace Back Door Switch Assembly

8.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing back door switch assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the back door lower protector.
- (4) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, carefully pry off the back door switch assembly.
- (5) Disconnect connector on the back door switch assembly, remove the back door switch assembly.



8.2 Installation

Caution

- **After back door opener switch assembly is installed, install the connector into place.**
- **After back door opener switch assembly is installed, it is necessary to confirm that the function can operate normally.**
- **After installing back door opener switch assembly, it is necessary to perform panoramic image calibration.**

- (1) Install the back door switch assembly to a proper position of back door.
- (2) Connect the connector on the back door switch assembly.
- (3) Press back door switch assembly tightly.
- (4) Install the back door lower protector.
- (5) Connect the negative battery cable.

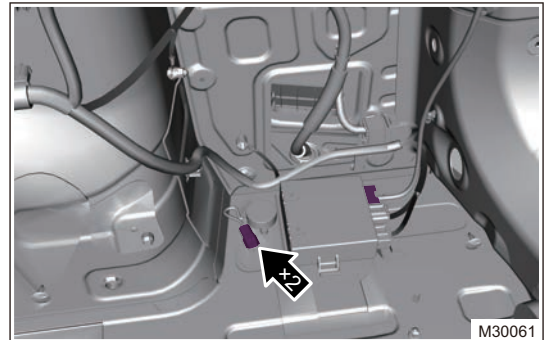
9 Replace Back Door Opening Power Drive Shaft

9.1 Removal

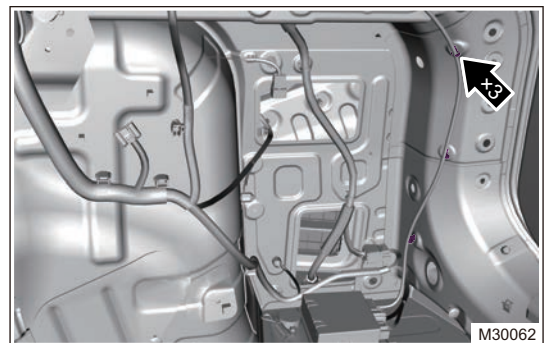
Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing back door opening power drive shaft.
- When removing back door opening power drive shaft, pay attention not to bend electric support by lateral force and during removal, one assistance is needed to hold back door; Try to prevent back door from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.
- Remove the electric support assembly carefully and avoid it falling down. Once it falls down, internal mechanical damage may occur, which may cause it impossible to use.

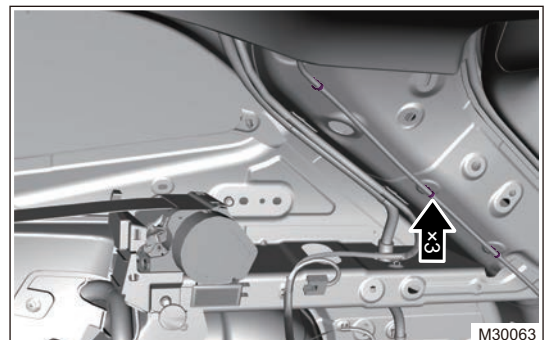
- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the left C-pillar upper protector.
- (4) Disconnect connection between back door opening power drive shaft wire harness and power back door module and buzzer.



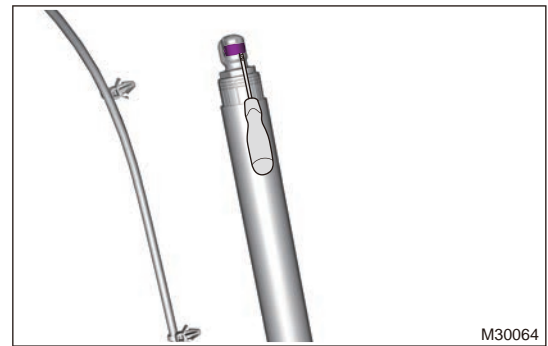
- (5) Disengage fixing clips of back door opening power drive shaft wire harness.



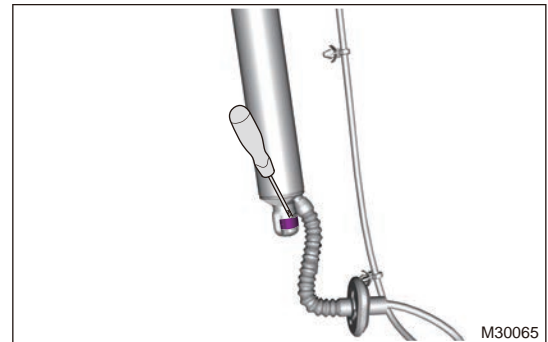
- (6) Disengage fixing clips of back door opening power drive shaft wire harness.



- (7) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry off fixing snap spring from lower part of back door opening power drive shaft.



- (8) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry off fixing snap spring from upper part of back door opening power drive shaft.



- (9) Remove the back door opening power drive shaft.

9.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **Pay attention to the installation direction and installation sequence, clamp the thick end of ball socket to gutter channel side mounting bracket, and then clamp the thin end to back door bracket. Ball socket cannot slide out, it indicates that the matching is tight.**
- **It is necessary for wire harness grommet to be installed in place. If not, water leakage may occur at this area.**
- **After installing electric support ball socket of the gutter channel end, when installing the back door end, if the ball pin of back door bracket is not aligned with electric support ball socket, rotate the fixing end of electric support clockwise and insert ball socket into the ball pin of back door bracket when ball socket is aligned with ball pin. (This assembly method can ensure that the assembled electric support ball socket is tightened and not loose. If assembly is not in this order, it may cause electric support ball socket is loose during assembly.)**

- (1) Apply grease to ball socket of electric support body, and ensure appearance is not being affected, and then clamp the body to ball pin separately.
- (2) Align the center of upper ball socket with the center of ball, and hit ball socket by hand.
- (3) Align the center of lower ball socket with the center of ball, and hit ball socket by hand.
- (4) Install the fixing clips of back door opening power drive shaft wire harness.
- (5) Connect back door opening power drive shaft wire harness and power back door module and buzzer.
- (6) Install the left C-pillar upper protector.
- (7) Connect the negative battery cable.

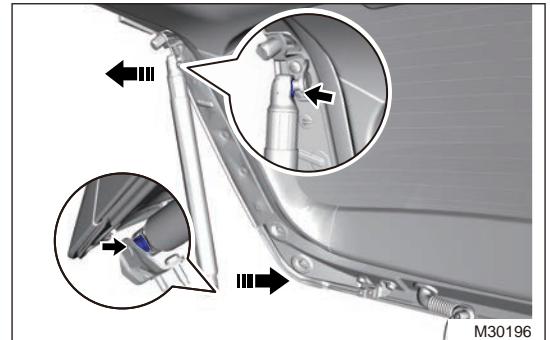
10 Replace Back Door Opening Driven Shaft

10.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing back door opening driven shaft.**
- **When removing back door opening driven shaft, one assistance is needed to hold back door; Try to prevent back door from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Using a screwdriver wrapped with protective tape, pry off fixing snap springs from upper and lower parts of back door opening driven shaft.



- (4) Remove the back door opening driven shaft in direction of arrow.

10.2 Installation

Caution

- **Pay attention to the installation direction and installation sequence, clamp the thick end of ball socket to gutter channel side mounting bracket, and then clamp the thin end to back door bracket. Ball socket cannot slide out, it indicates that the matching is tight.**
- **It is necessary for wire harness grommet to be installed in place. If not, water leakage may occur at this area.**
- **After installing balance bar ball socket of the gutter channel end, when installing the back door end, if the ball pin of back door bracket is not aligned with balance bar ball socket, rotate the fixing end of balance bar clockwise and insert ball socket into the ball pin of back door bracket when ball socket is aligned with ball pin. (This assembly method can ensure that the assembled balance bar ball socket is tightened and not loose. If assembly is not in this order, it may cause balance bar ball socket is loose during assembly.)**

- (1) Apply grease to ball socket of support body, and ensure appearance is not being affected, and then clamp the body to ball pin separately.
- (2) Align the center of upper ball socket with the center of ball, and hit ball socket by hand.
- (3) Align the center of lower ball socket with the center of ball, and hit ball socket by hand.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

11 Replace Spring Upper Bracket

11.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing spring upper bracket.**
- **When removing back door opening driven shaft, one assistance is needed to hold back door; Try to prevent back door from falling down or closing suddenly during operation, resulting in accidents.**
- **Use the same procedures for spring upper bracket and rear trunk lid lower left bracket, procedures listed below are for spring upper bracket.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the back door opening driven shaft.
- (4) Remove 2 fixing screws from spring upper bracket.



- (5) Remove the spring upper bracket.

11.2 Installation

Caution

- **When installing gutter channel mounting bracket, pay attention to the direction of ball pin and install it in opposite inward direction; When installing the gutter channel upper bracket, pay attention to left and right parts which left part has “L” mark and right part has “R” mark.**
- **It is necessary to pre-tighten the upper mounting hole and then pre-tighten the lower mounting hole when installing bolts. When installing bracket tightening bolt, pay attention to installation sequence of the upper and lower mounting holes (pre-tighten round hole first and then waist-shaped hole).**
- **For convenience installing, after bracket is aligned with the hole, pre-tighten bolt to 2-3 threads by hand, and then install, pre-tighten and re-tighten it with tools.**

- (1) After installing spring upper bracket to the upper hole of gutter channel, pre-tighten 2 fixing bolts.
Torque: $5 \pm 1 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (2) After pre-tightening, re-tighten them.
Torque: $25 \pm 3 \text{ N}\cdot\text{m}$
- (3) Install the back door opening driven shaft.
- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.

12 Replace Back Door Anti-pinch Strip Assembly

12.1 Removal

Caution

- Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing back door anti-pinch strip assembly.
- Use the same procedures for left anti-pinch strip assembly and right anti-pinch strip assembly, procedures listed below are for left anti-pinch strip.

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the back door left protector assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the back door left anti-pinch strip connector.



- (5) Remove 3 fixing clips from back door left anti-pinch strip.



- (6) Remove 2 fixing screws from back door left anti-pinch strip.



- (7) Remove the back door anti-pinch strip assembly.

12.2 Installation

Caution

- Try to prevent body paint surface from being scratched, when installing back door anti-pinch strip assembly.

- (1) Install the back door anti-pinch strip assembly to a proper position of body.
- (2) Install 2 fixing screws on the back door left anti-pinch strip.
- (3) Install 3 fixing clips on the back door left anti-pinch strip.
- (4) Connect the back door left anti-pinch strip connector.
- (5) Install the back door left protector assembly.
- (6) Connect the negative battery cable.

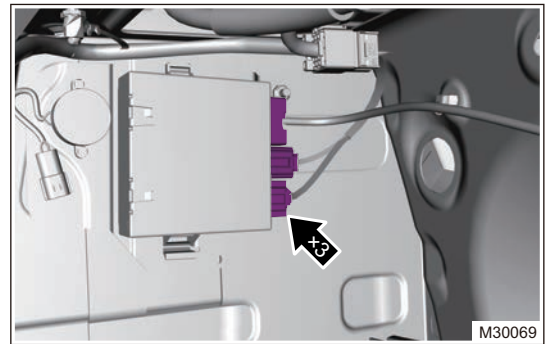
13 Replace Power Back Door Module Assembly

13.1 Removal

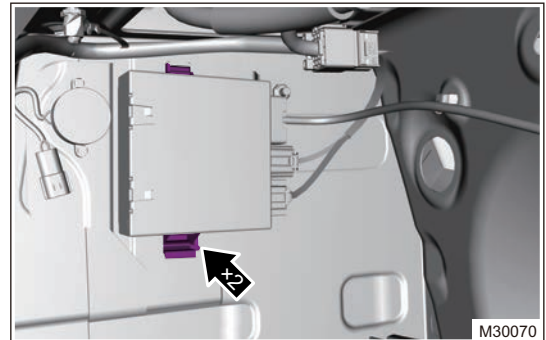
⚠ Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing power back door module assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the right luggage compartment wheel house assembly.
- (4) Disconnect the power back door module assembly wire harness connectors.



- (5) Disengage clips from power back door module.



- (6) Remove the power back door module assembly.

13.2 Installation

⚠ Caution

- **After replacing power back door module, use diagnostic tester to perform self-learning operation, perform corresponding operation on each functional switch after learning is successful, so as to check each function of power back door operates normally.**

- (1) Install the power back door module assembly to a proper position of body.
- (2) Connect the power back door module assembly wire harness connector.
- (3) Install the right luggage compartment wheel house assembly.

- (4) Connect the negative battery cable.
- (5) Connect diagnostic tester, read and clear DTCs.

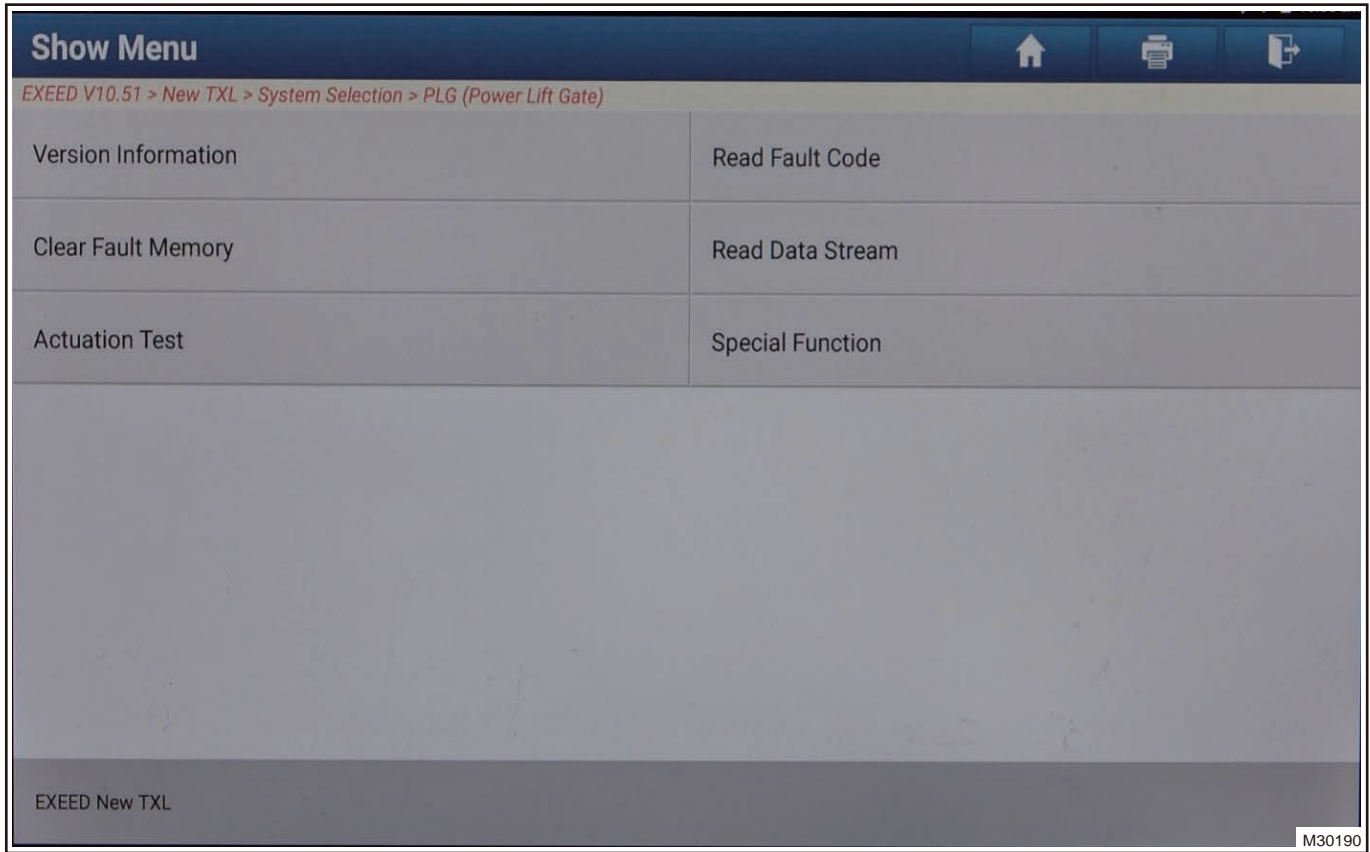
13.3 Self-learning

- (1) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF.
- (2) Connect the diagnostic tester (the latest software).
- (3) Turn ENGINE START STOP switch to ON.
- (4) Click “Traditional Diagnosis” .
- (5) Click “New TXL” .
- (6) Click “PLG (Power Lift Gate)” .

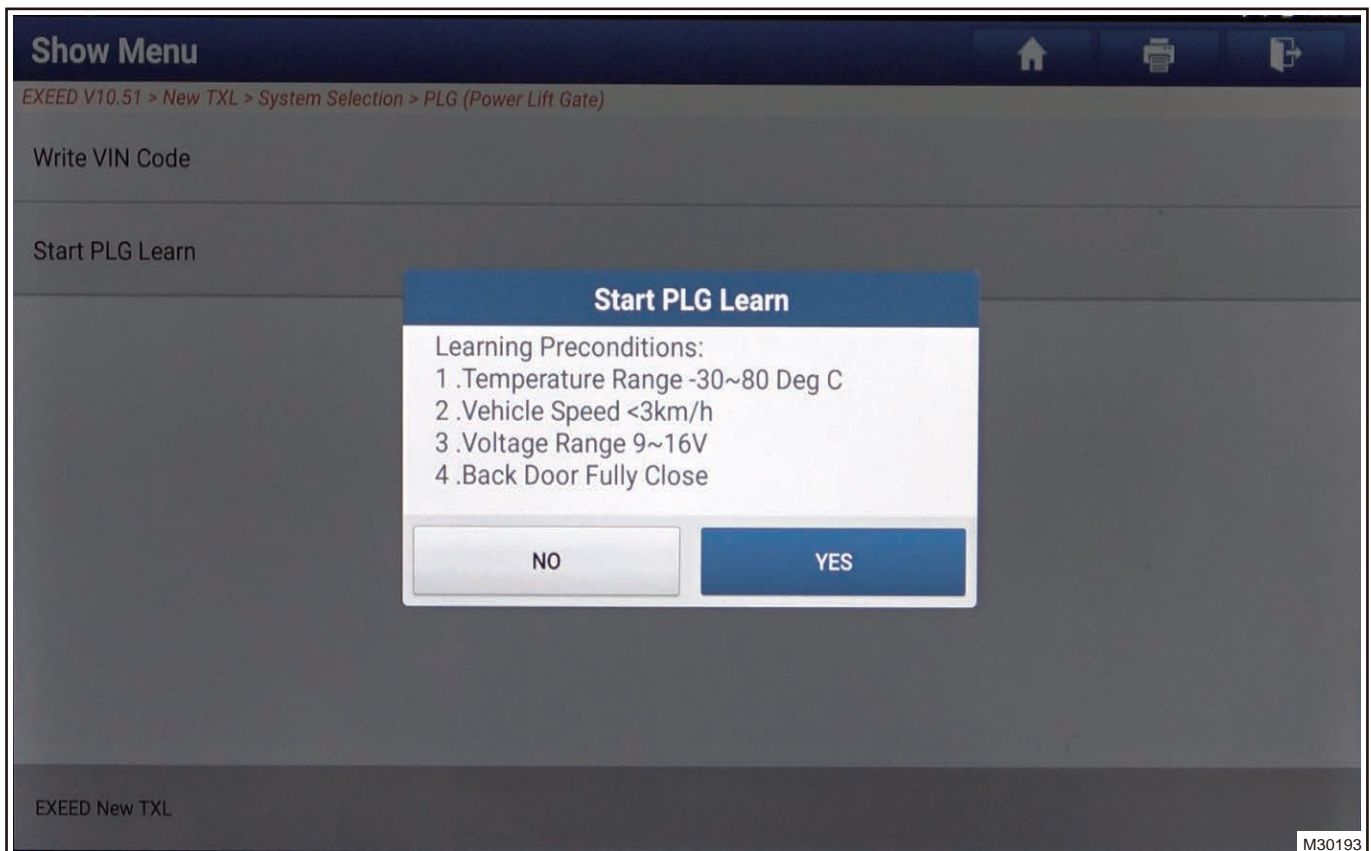
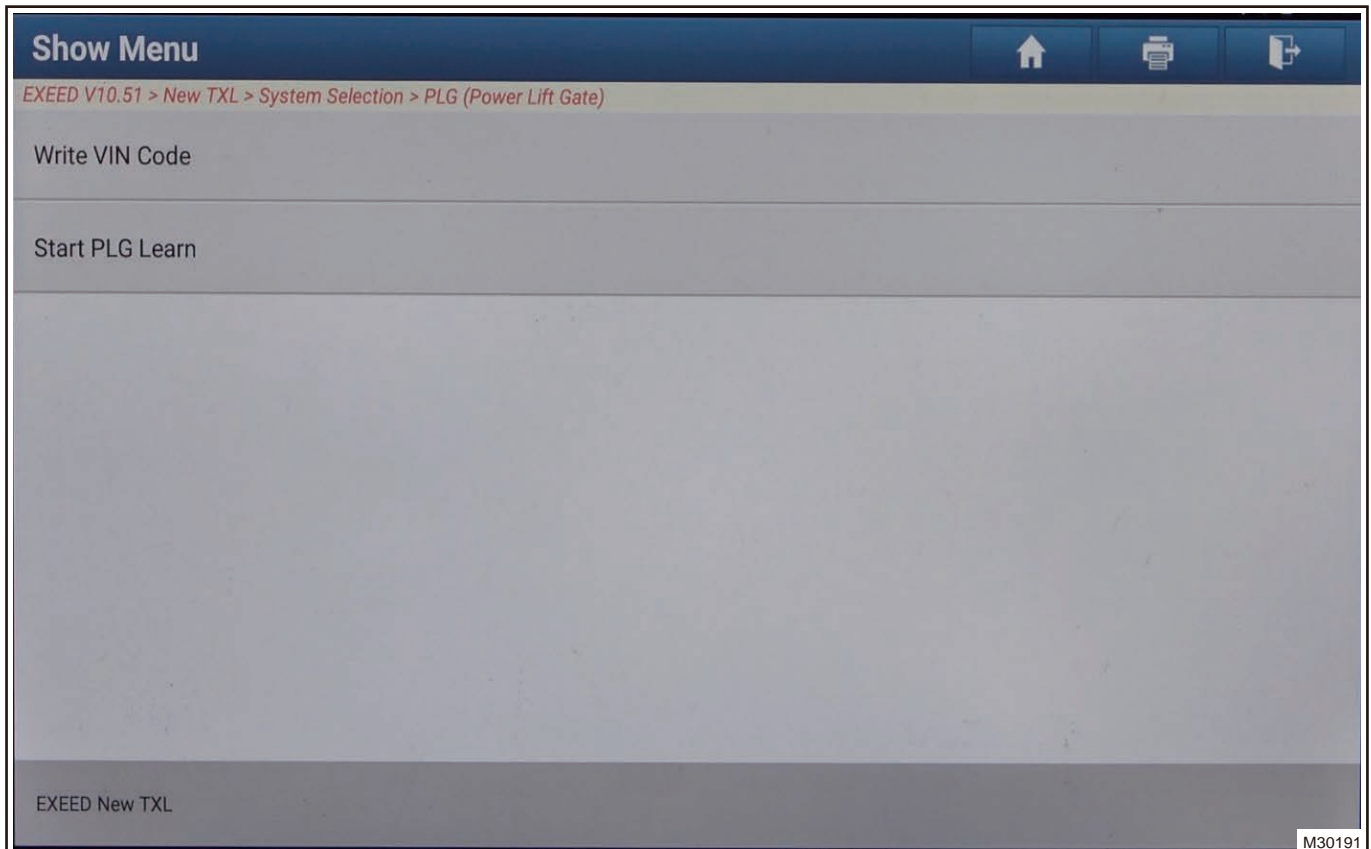
Show Menu	
EXEED V10.51 > New TXL > System Selection	
EGS (Press Key Type Electrical Gear Shifter)	TGW (Telematics Gateway)
VGW (Vehicle Gateway)	PLG (Power Lift Gate)
CWC (Cellphone Wireless Charger)	ACP (Audio Control Panel)
DVR (Driving Video Recorder)	SCU (Seat Control Unit)
ACM (Airbag Control Module)	AWD (All Wheel Drive)
SCM (Steering Column Module)	RLS (Rain Light Sensor)
DCM (Door Control Module)	
EXEED New TXL	

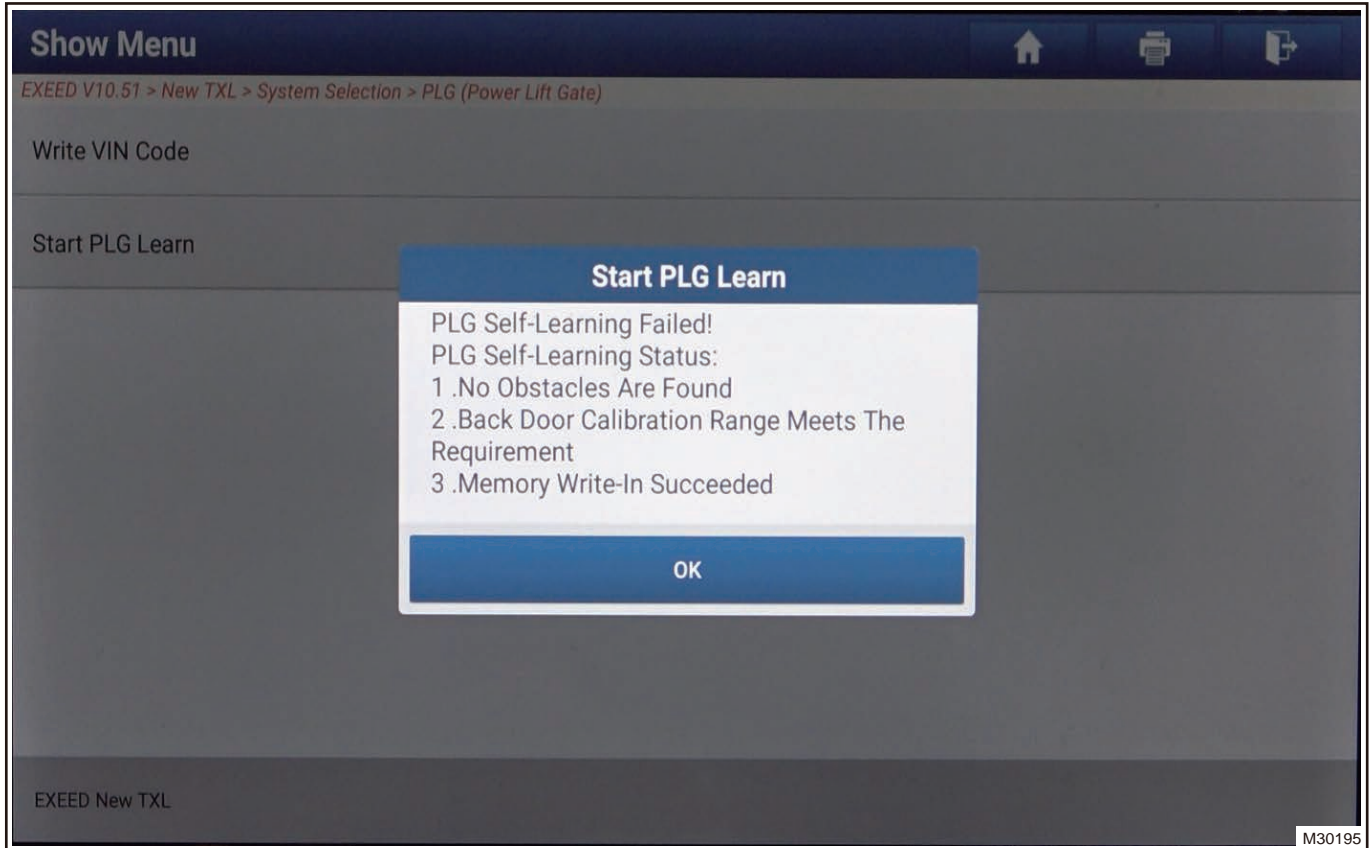
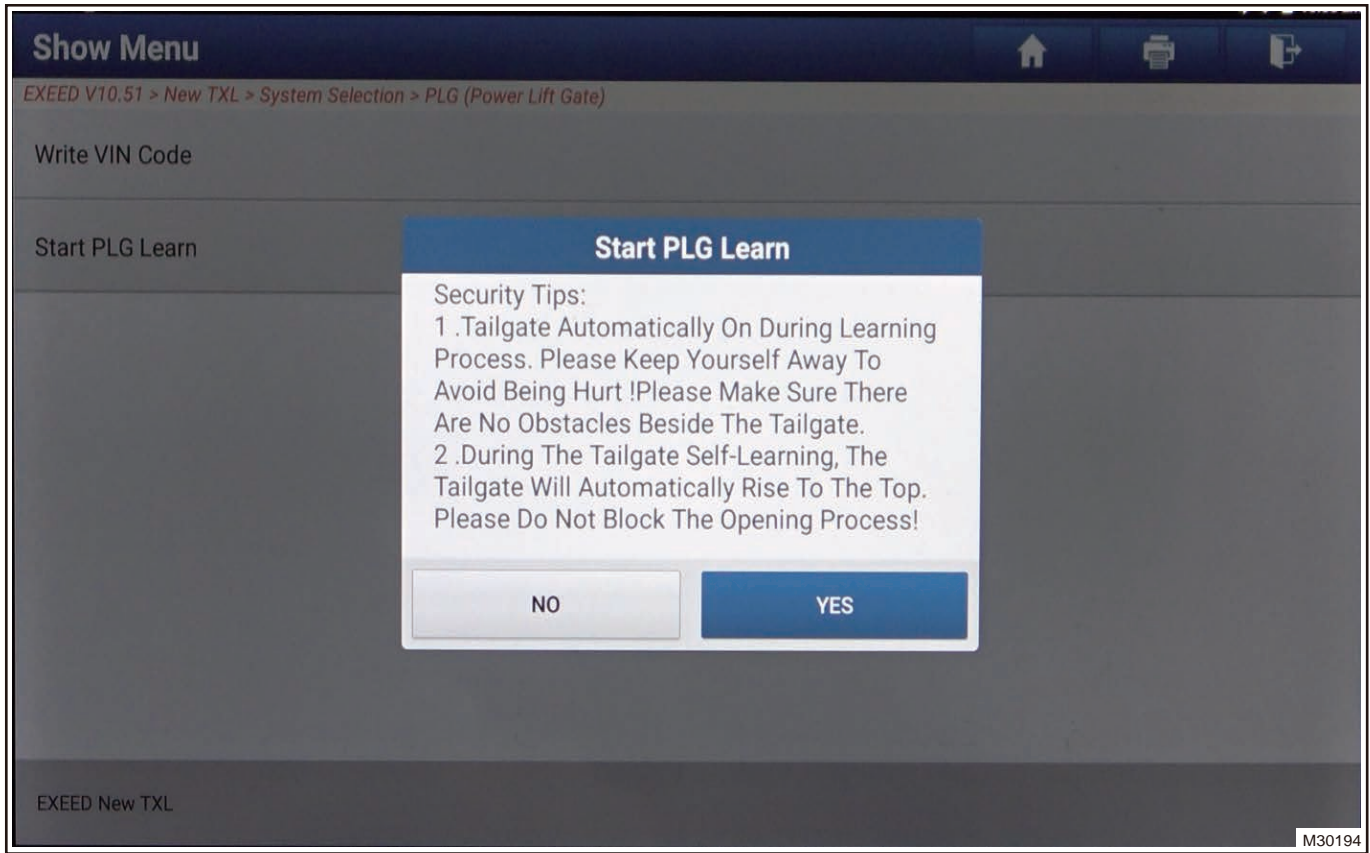
M30189

(7) Click "Special Function" .



(8) Click "Start PLG Learn" .





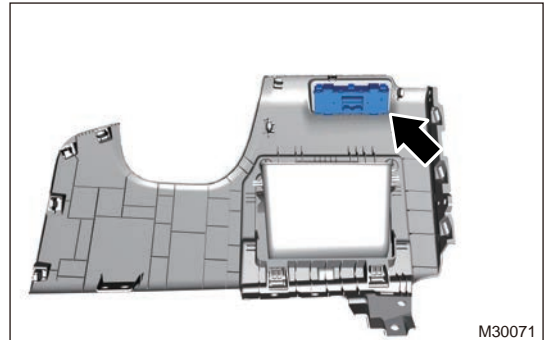
14 Replace Power Back Door Instrument Cluster Switch Assembly

14.1 Removal

Caution

- **Be sure to wear safety equipment to prevent accidents, when removing power back door instrument cluster switch assembly.**

- (1) Turn off all electrical equipment and ENGINE START STOP switch.
- (2) Disconnect the negative battery cable.
- (3) Remove the instrument panel lower left protector assembly.
- (4) Press the switch clip from the back, and push switch out of mounting hole of instrument panel lower left protector.



14.2 Installation

Caution

- **Install the power back door instrument cluster switch assembly, and install the connector in place.**
- **After power back door instrument cluster switch assembly is installed, it is necessary to confirm that the function can operate normally.**

- (1) Install the power back door instrument cluster switch to a proper position of instrument panel lower left protector.
- (2) Install the instrument panel lower left protector assembly.
- (3) Connect the negative battery cable.

BODY

58.1	BODY DIMENSIONS	2185
1	GENERAL INFORMATION	2185
1.1	Description.....	2185

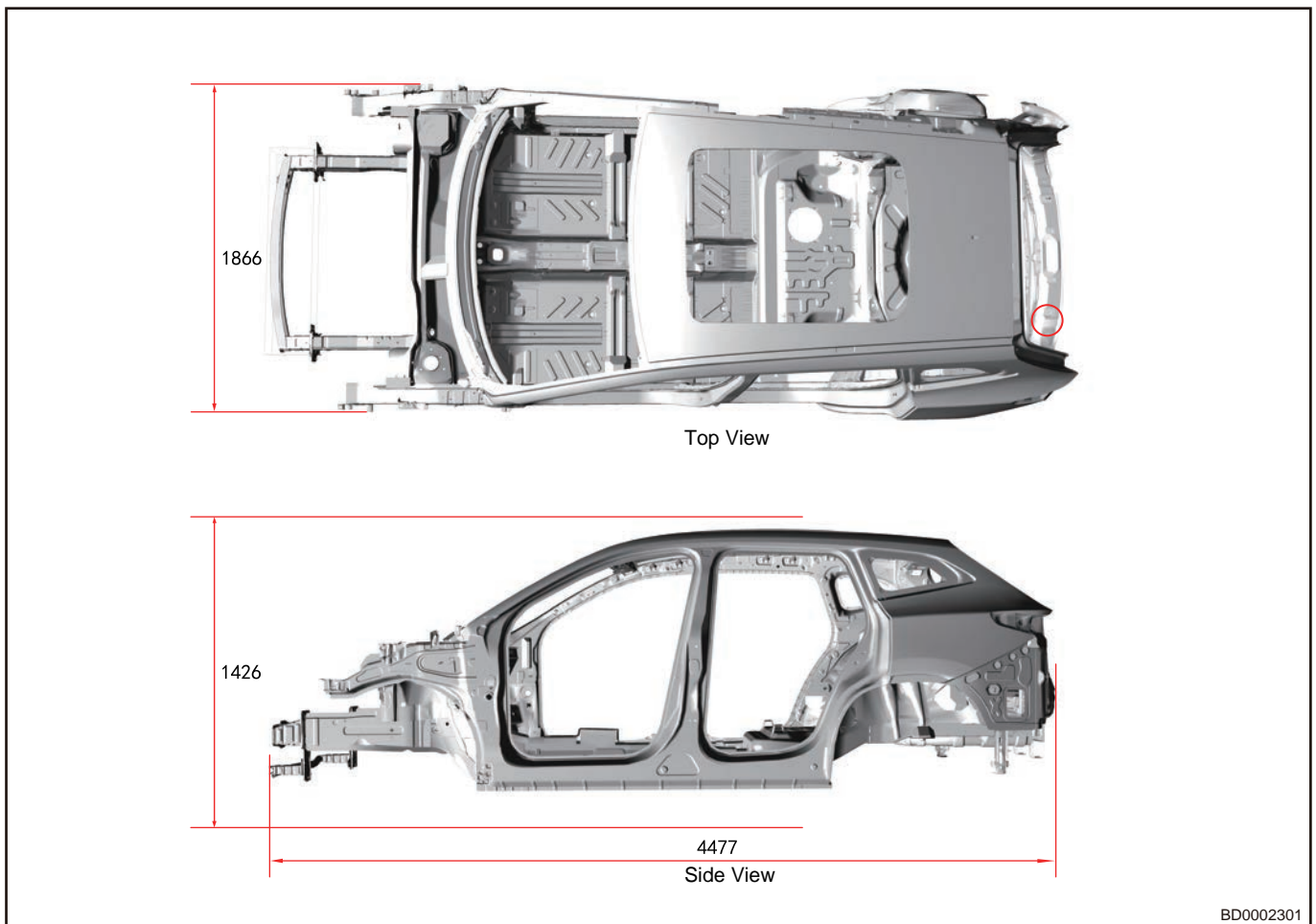
58.1 BODY DIMENSIONS

1 GENERAL INFORMATION

1.1 Description

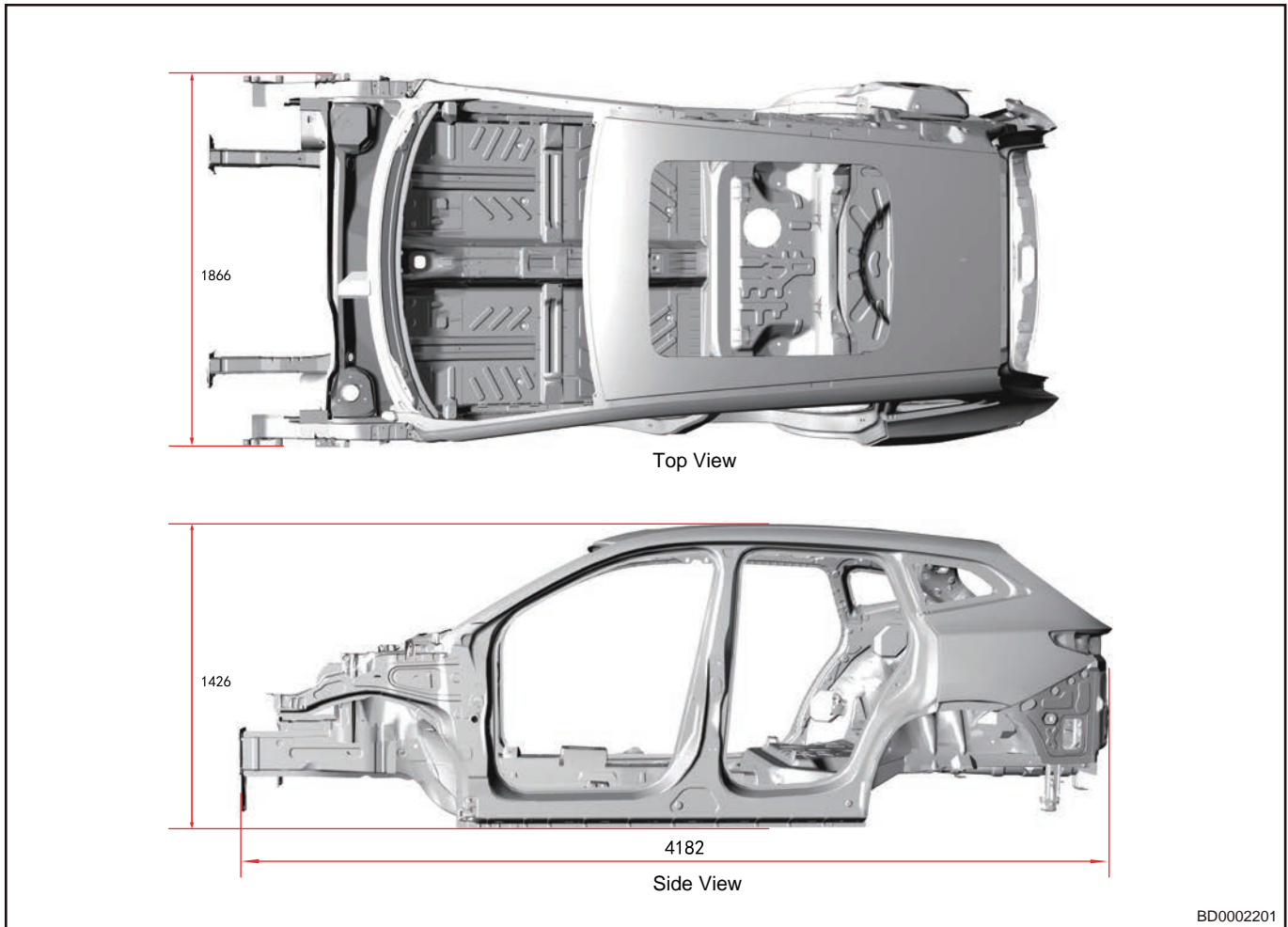
- All measurements should be made from bare metal. Remove trim and bumper covers as necessary.
- Repair seriously damaged areas before taking measurements for underbody alignment.
- Monitor upper body structure for excessive stress or movement while making any corrections to underbody structure.
- Remove all necessary glass to prevent breakage.
- All dimensions are shown in millimeters (mm).

(1) Length, Width and Height of Body with Front/Rear Impact Beam



Length of body	4477 mm
Width of body	1866 mm
Height of body	1426 mm

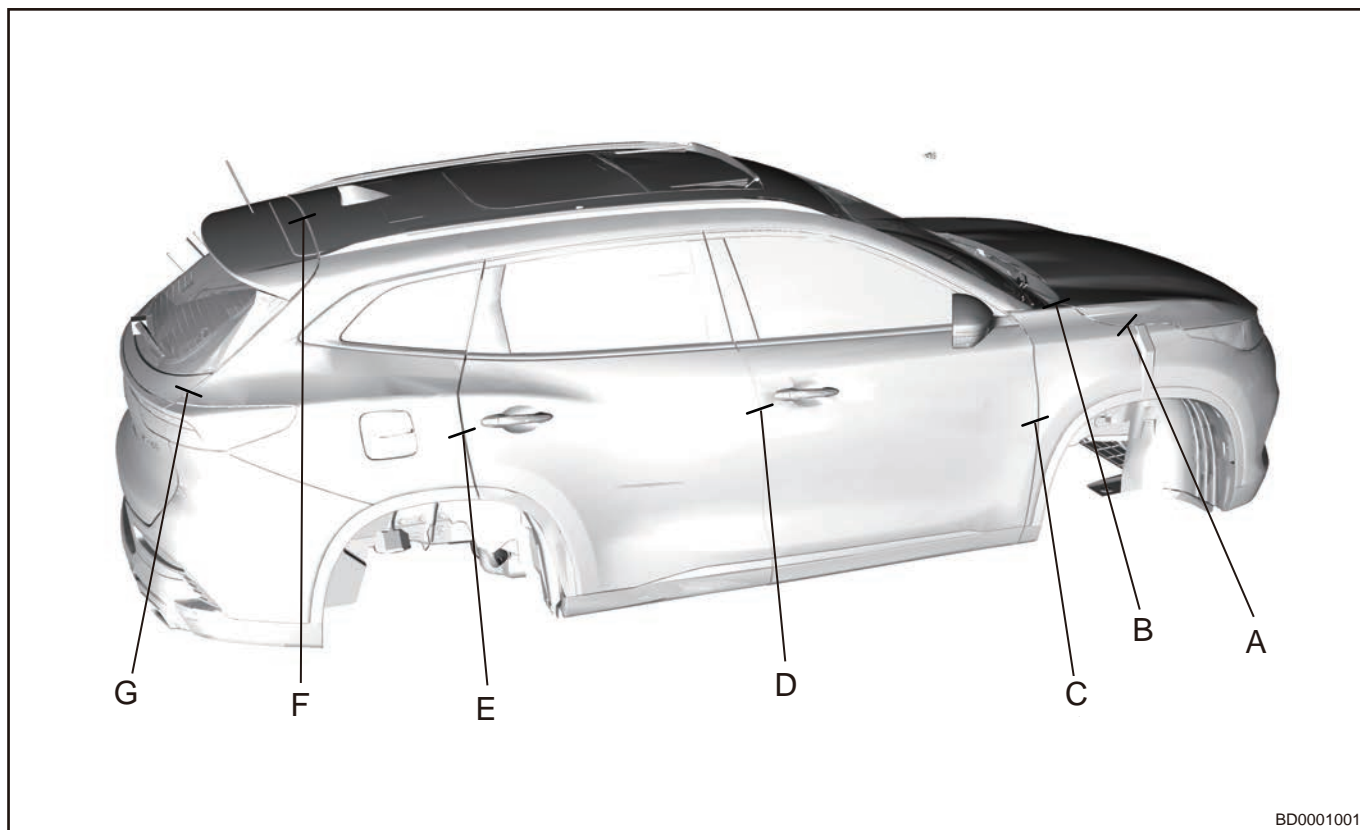
(2) Length, Width and Height of Body without Front/Rear Impact Beam



BD0002201

Length of body	4182 mm
Width of body	1866 mm
Height of body	1426 mm

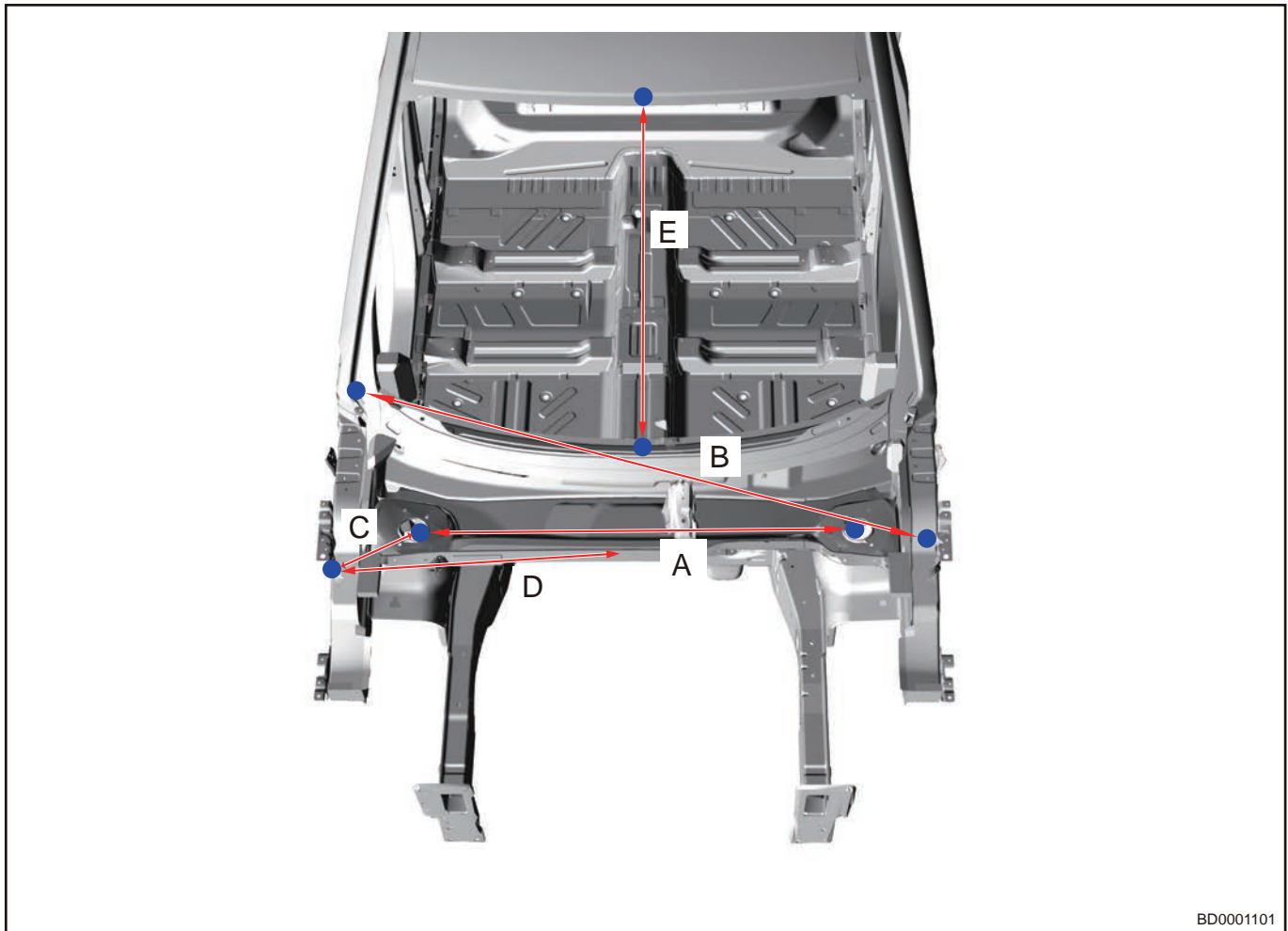
(3) Dimension of Movable Part



BD0001001

Dimension Code	Standard Value
A	3.8 ± 1.0
B	4.0 ± 1.0
C	$3.8 (+1.0/-0.5)$
D	4.0 ± 0.7
E	$3.8 (+1.0/-0.5)$
F	7.0 ± 1.2
G	4.0 ± 1.0

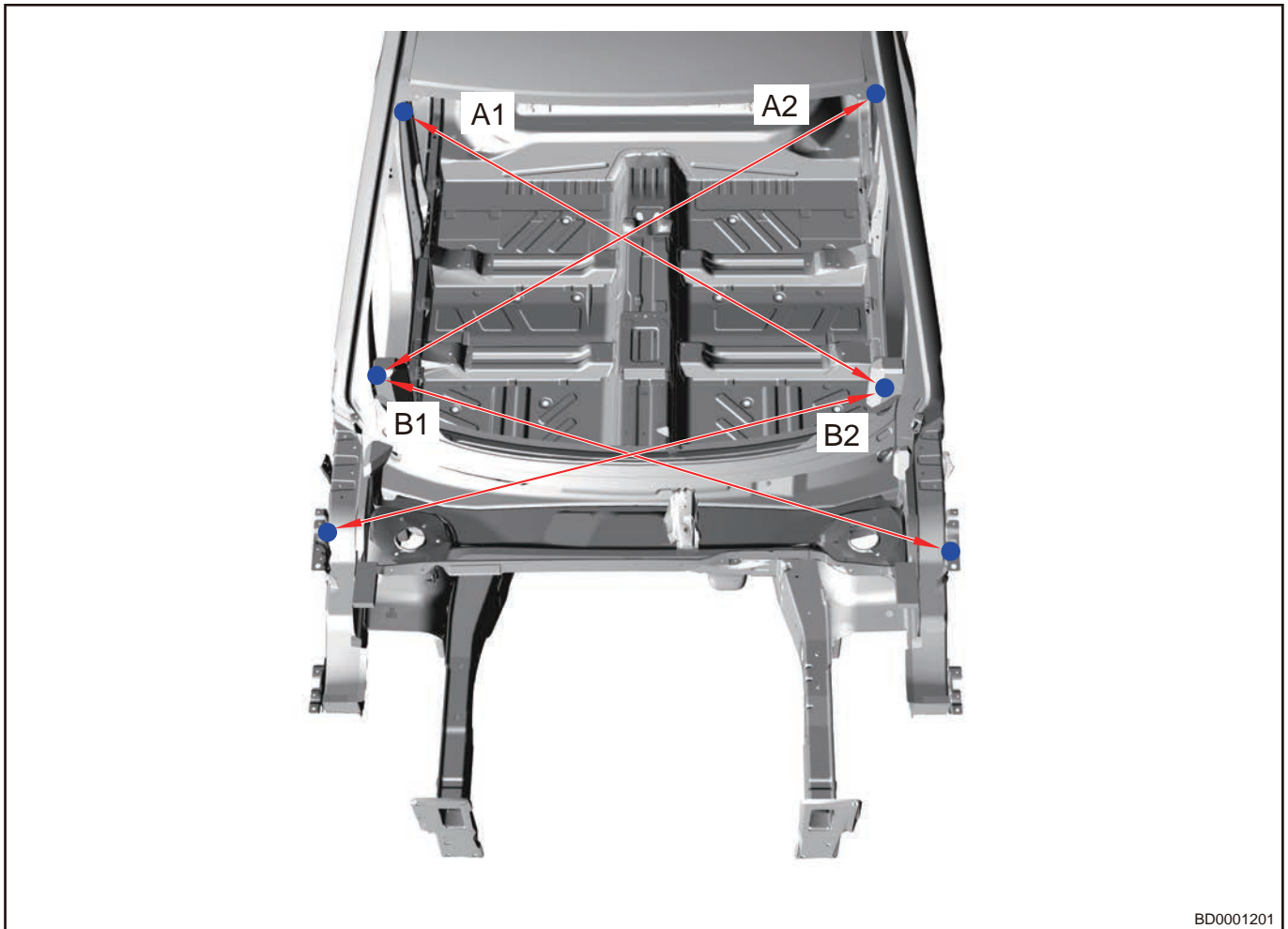
(4) Dimensions of Engine Compartment and Windshield Frame



BD0001101

Dimension Code	Standard Value	Measuring Area
A	1195.6 mm	Front suspension installation center
B	1596.5 mm	Diagonal of wing fixing bolts
C	258.6 mm	Distance between front suspension installation center and wing
D	938.9 mm	Distance between front baffle plate center and wing fixing bolt
E	938.8 mm	Front windshield opening

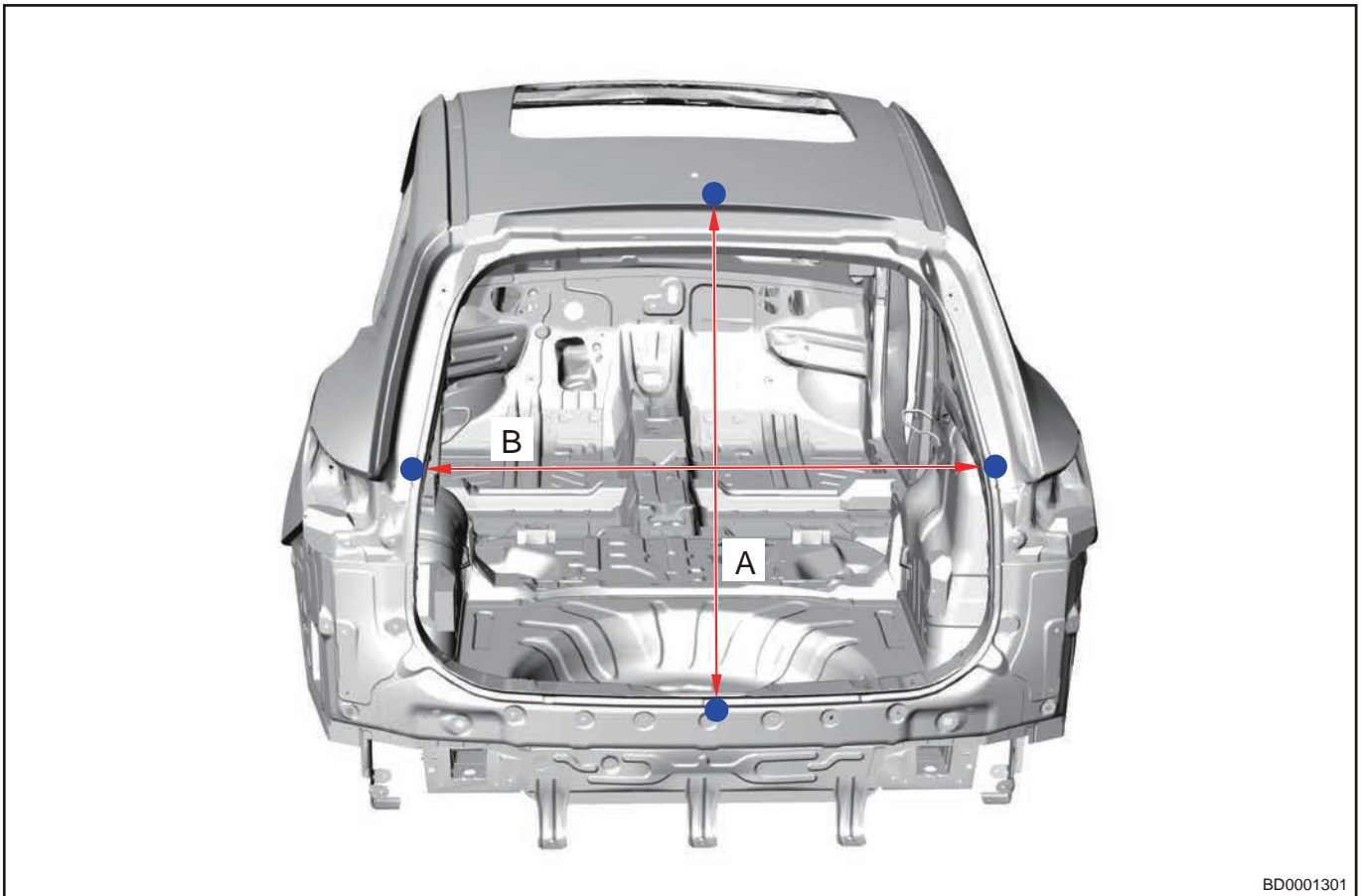
(5) Dimensions of Engine Compartment and Windshield Frame



BD0001201

Dimension Code	Standard Value
A1, A2	A1 = A2
B1, B2	B1 = B2

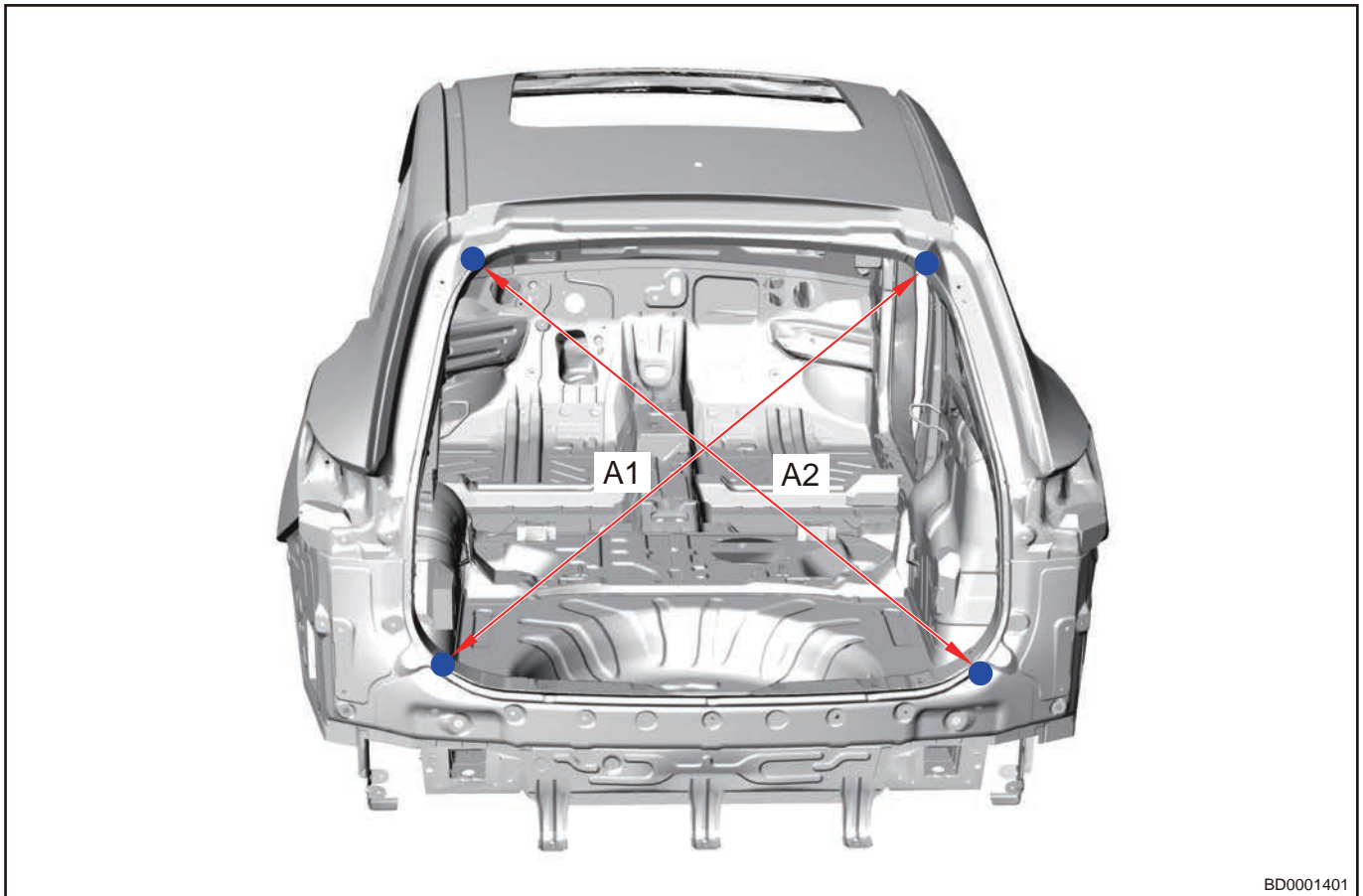
(6) Dimension Measurement of Luggage Compartment Opening



BD0001301

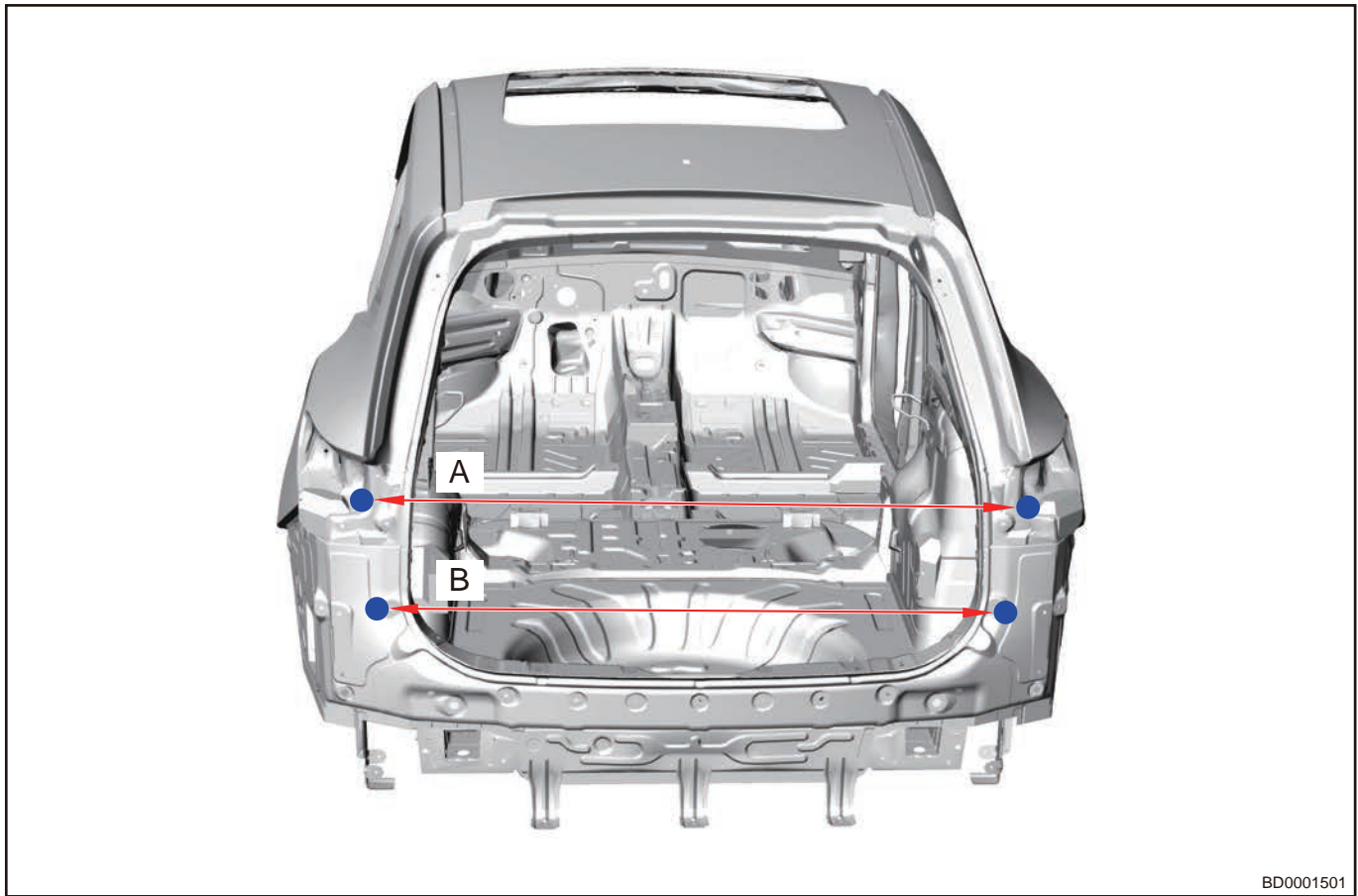
Dimension Code	Standard Value	Measuring Area
A	971.2 mm	Luggage compartment opening
B	1168.7 mm	Y-direction distance of luggage compartment

(7) Dimension Measurement of Luggage Compartment Opening



Dimension Code	Standard Value
A1, A2	A1 = A2

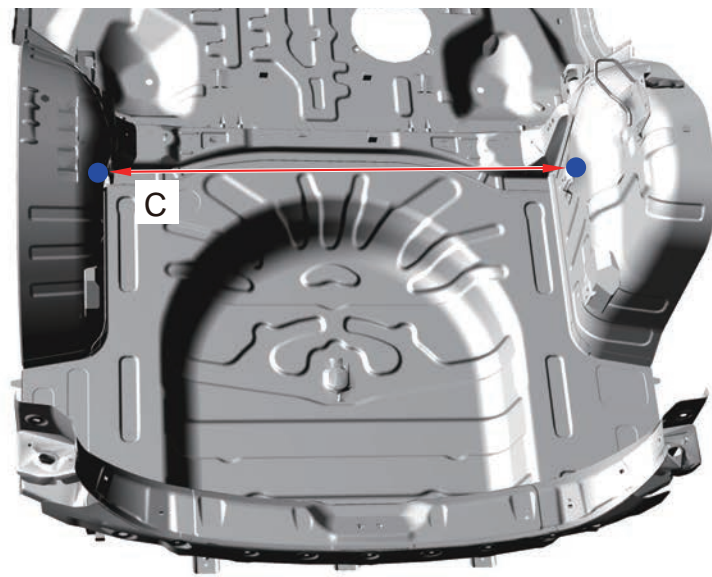
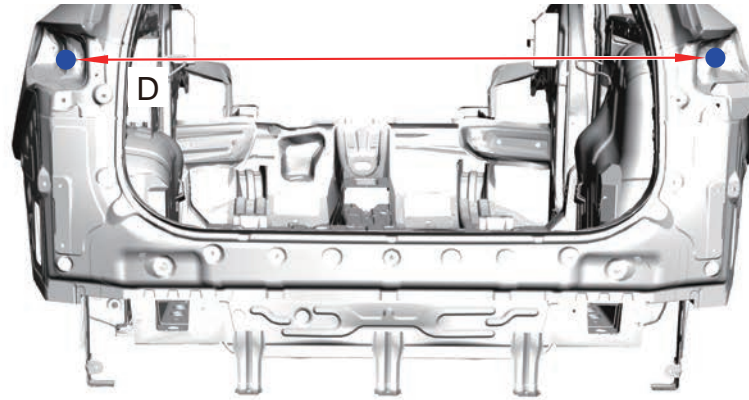
(8) Dimension Measurement Between Body B-pillar and C-pillar



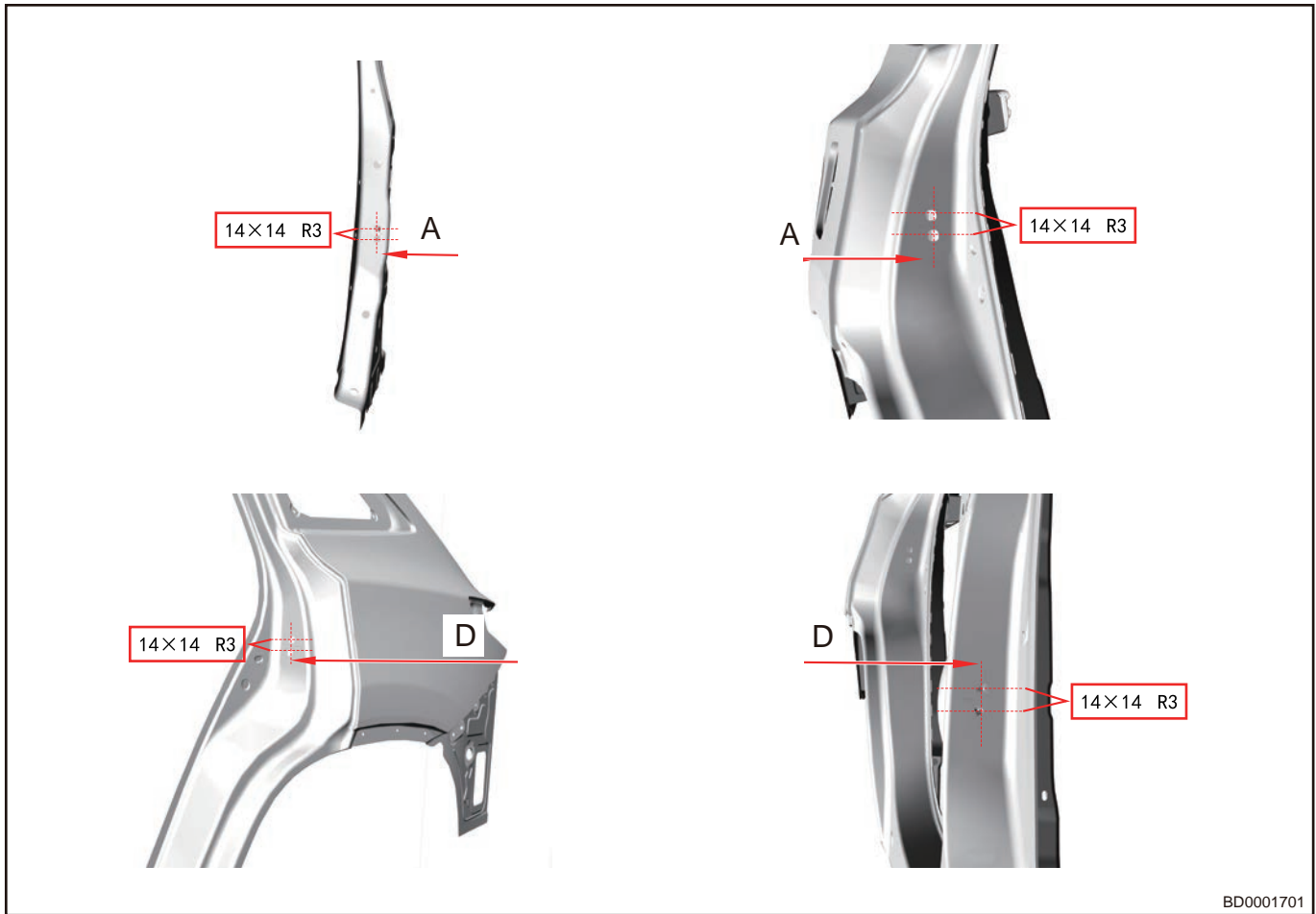
BD0001501

Dimension Code	Standard Value	Measuring Area
A	1595.252 mm	Y-direction distance of B-pillar installation position
B	1419 mm	Y-direction distance of front seat lock pillar belt holder
C	1114.913 mm	Y-direction distance of rear suspension installation center position
D	1554.603 mm	Y-direction distance of rear wing lock pillar installation position

(9) Dimension Measurement Between Body B-pillar and C-pillar



BD0001601



Dimension Code	Standard Value
A	1595.252 mm
D	1554.603 mm

(10) Distance Measurement of Body A-pillar Hinge



BD0001801

Dimension Code	Standard Value	Measuring Area
A	373 mm	Z-direction distance of A-pillar hinge

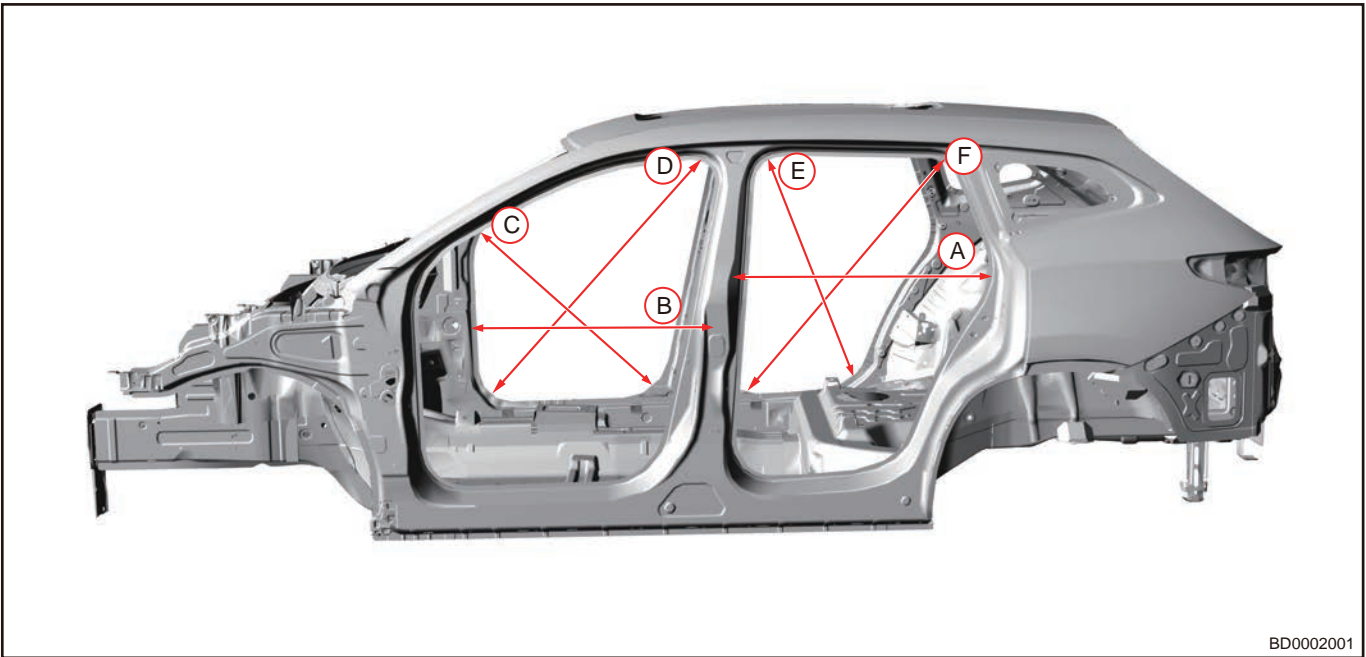
(11) Distance Measurement of Body B-pillar Hinge



BD0001901

Dimension Code	Standard Value	Measuring Area
B	387 mm	Z-direction distance of A-pillar hinge

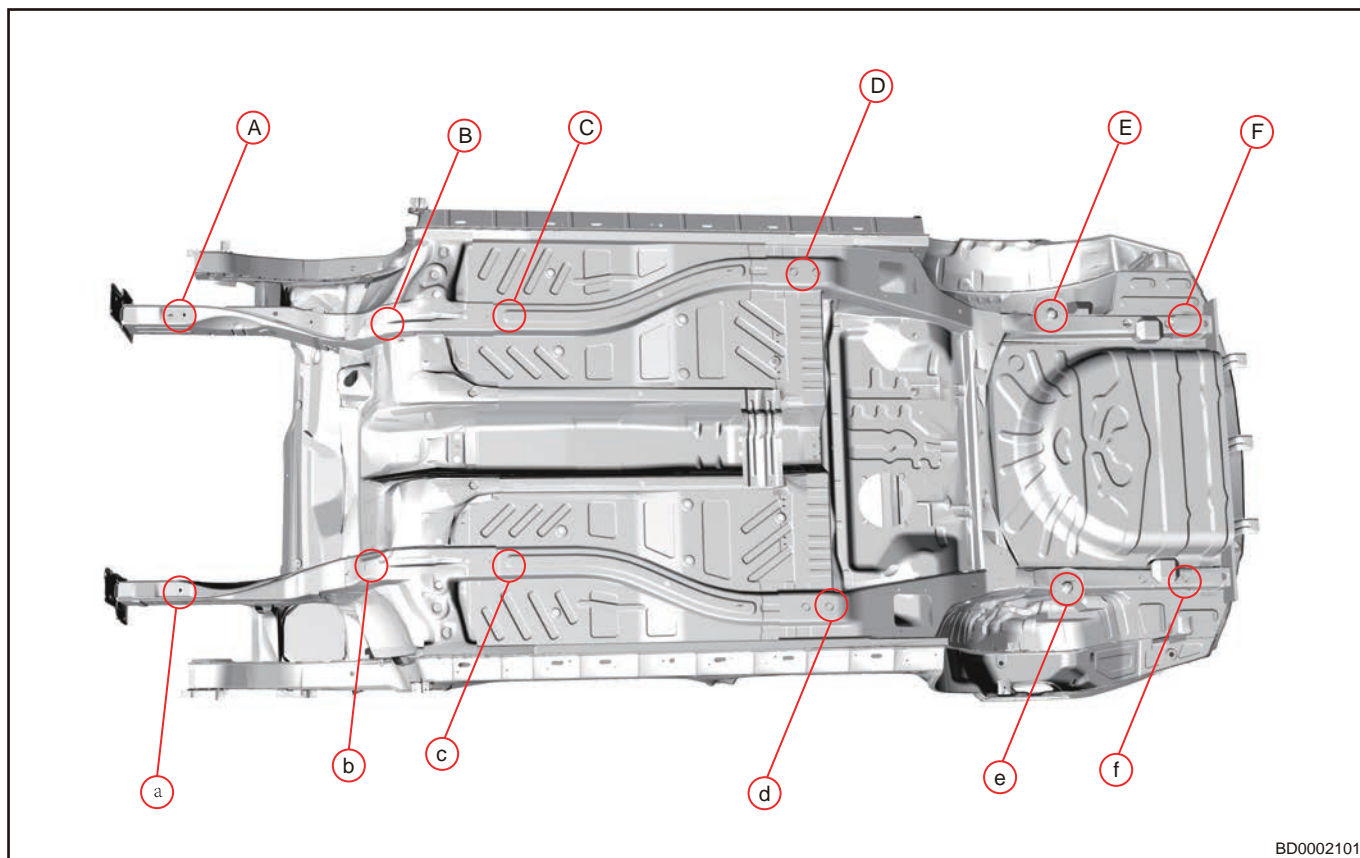
(12) Dimension Measurement of Opening for Front and Rear Doors



BD0002001

Dimension Code	Standard Value	Measuring Area
A	961.7 mm	Distance between B-pillar and rear door lock pillar installation position
B	941.7 mm	Distance between A-pillar and B-pillar lock pillar installation position
C	952.4 mm	Front door opening
D	1365.9 mm	Front door opening
E	1105.8 mm	Rear door opening
F	1263.5 mm	Rear door opening

(13) Dimension Measurement of Body Deck Board



BD0002101

Dimension Code	Standard Value	Measuring Area
1	961.4 ± 1 mm	Between A and a
2	919.2 ± 1 mm	Between B and b
3	858 ± 1 mm	Between C and c
4	1095.8 ± 1 mm	Between C and D
5	1204 ± 1 mm	Between D and d
6	1039.2 ± 1 mm	Between E and e
7	980 ± 1 mm	Between F and f

BODY

59.1	Information and Repair of Plastic Panel	2199
1	Warning and Precautions	2199
1.1	Warning.....	2199
1.2	Precautions.....	2199
2	System Overview	2199
2.1	System Description	2199
3	Inspection and Adjustment	2199
3.1	Repair of Thermosetting Plastic Dent.....	2199
3.2	Repair of Thermosetting Plastic Scratch.....	2200
3.3	Repair of Thermosetting Plastic Crack (The Length is Less Than 100 mm).....	2200

59.1 Information and Repair of Plastic Panel

1 Warning and Precautions

1.1 Warning

In order to avoid possible property loss, personal injury or death, please observe the following instructions before repair.

- (1) Use service materials in a well ventilated environment because the soot particles produced by the service materials are toxic.
- (2) Apply protective cream to exposed skin to prevent skin irritation.

1.2 Precautions

In order to avoid dangerous operation and damage to the vehicle, please observe the following instructions before repair.

- (1) Wear rubber gloves.
- (2) Wear protective glasses when using compressed air and sanding.
- (3) Immediately clear any mixture that contacts your skin because mixture solidifies quickly.
- (4) Wear dust boot and protective glasses when grinding or sanding.
- (5) Clean your skin with cold water to reduce the slight irritation of resin dust on your skin.
- (6) Avoid service materials sticking to your clothes.
- (7) After using, close all service material containers. Dust or moisture will pollute service materials and reduce service effect.

2 System Overview

2.1 System Description

- The materials of interior and exterior surface covering parts are modified PP, ABS, PC + ABS and PVC (-artificial leather materials), which are all thermoplastic plastics and its modified materials. The materials of interior and exterior non-surface covering parts also uses POM, PA and HDPE materials etc. Thermosetting plastic is mainly used as construction part in electronic appliance and safety component. Repairing thermoplastic part uses hot soldering iron plastic materials to fill the welding machine, but the common service uses replacement method. Thermosetting plastic can use epoxy resin or other harder two-component service materials. In this chapter, its service method is simply introduced while the service is not suggested.
- Thermosetting plastic refers to the plastic that can solidify or has insoluble (melting) characteristics under heating or other conditions, such as phenolic plastic, epoxy plastic, etc. Thermoplastic refers to the plastic that can be repeatedly heated, softened and cooled and hardened within a specific temperature range, such as polyethylene, polytetrafluoroethylene, etc. Thermoplastic and thermosetting plastics can be either hard plastic or soft plastic.

3 Inspection and Adjustment

3.1 Repair of Thermosetting Plastic Dent

■ Repair

Warning

- **Wear rubber gloves.**

- (1) Clean and dry the components to be repaired.
- (2) Heat the dent position with a hot air blower until the dent can be flattened with an appropriate tool.
- (3) Polish the dent area with abrasive paper/emery paper.
- (4) Then clean service area with cleaner and dry it out for 5 minutes.
- (5) Apply a thin layer of adhesive on it and dry it out for 10 minutes.

- (6) Fill the uneven surface with adhesive and smooth it with trowel.
- (7) Accelerate solidifying process with infrared lamp, adjust the temperature to 60 - 70 °C and heat it for 15 minutes.
- (8) Polish the dent area with abrasive paper.
- (9) Remove dust and debris.
- (10) Apply a thin layer of adhesive on it and dry it out for 10 minutes.
- (11) Restore paint surface according to the repairing procedure on paint surface of plastic parts.

3.2 Repair of Thermosetting Plastic Scratch

■ Repair

Warning

- **Wear rubber gloves.**

- (1) Clean and dry the components to be repaired.
- (2) Remove protruding materials with abrasive paper.
- (3) Then clean service area with cleaner and dry it out for 5 minutes.
- (4) Apply a layer of adhesive on it and dry it out for 10 minutes.
- (5) Fill the uneven surface with adhesive and smooth it with trowel.
- (6) Accelerate solidifying process with infrared lamp, adjust the temperature to 60 - 70 °C and heat it for 15 minutes.
- (7) Polish the dent area with abrasive paper.
- (8) Remove dust and debris.
- (9) Apply a thin layer of adhesive on it and dry it out for 10 minutes.
- (10) Restore paint surface according to the repairing procedure on paint surface of plastic parts.

3.3 Repair of Thermosetting Plastic Crack (The Length is Less Than 100 mm)

■ Repair

Warning

- **Wear rubber gloves.**

- (1) Clean and dry the components to be repaired.
- (2) Chisel crack end for 5 mm and polish crack to V-shape to internal stress and protruding area.
- (3) Then clean service area with cleaner and dry it out for 5 minutes.
- (4) Apply a layer of adhesive on it and dry it out for 10 minutes.
- (5) Stick reinforcing tape to the back of service part with adhesive and overlap the damaged part for at least 20 mm.
- (6) Accelerate solidifying process with infrared lamp, adjust the temperature to 60 - 70 °C and heat it for 15 minutes.
- (7) Fill the front part of crack with adhesive and smooth it with trowel.
- (8) Accelerate solidifying process of the front part of crack with infrared lamp.
- (9) Polish the dent area with abrasive paper.
- (10) Apply a thin layer of adhesive on it and dry it out for 10 minutes.
- (11) Remove dust and debris.
- (12) Apply a layer of adhesive on it and dry it out for 10 minutes.
- (13) Restore paint surface according to the repairing procedure on paint surface of plastic parts.

BODY

60.1	Paint Coating	2202
1	Warning and Precautions	2202
1.1	Warning.....	2202
1.2	Precautions	2202
1.3	Precautions during Finish Varnish Maintenance and Repair	2202
1.4	Precautions of Anti-corrosion Treatment	2202
2	System Overview	2203
2.1	Description & Operation.....	2203
2.2	Daily Maintenance of Vehicle Paint Surface.....	2203
3	Specifications	2204
3.1	Paint Specifications	2204
4	Diagnostic Information and Steps	2205
4.1	Problem Symptoms Table	2205
5	Removal & Installation	2207
5.1	Examples of Common Paint Film Defects Treatment Process	2207
5.2	Example of General Grinding, Polishing and Beatifying Treatment Process	2208
5.3	Example of Depth Grinding and Polishing Treatment Process	2208
5.4	Tips on Spraying Process of Paint with Rigid Surface.....	2208
5.5	Repairing Procedure of Paint Surface on Plastic Part Surface	2209

60.1 Paint Coating

1 Warning and Precautions

1.1 Warning

Be sure to observe the following instructions before mixing paint and painting, to prevent property damage, personal injury or even death.

- (1) In the process of mixing and spraying paint, diffuse solvents can cause serious respiratory disease. It's necessary to operate in strict accordance with the manufacturers' instruction manual of paint, device and safety device. When performing the operation of this procedure, wear special labor protection appliances such as gas mask, anti-static clothing, protective glasses and gloves etc. to prevent injury.

1.2 Precautions

Never mix paint systems of different manufacturers or substitute products before mixing paint and painting. When incompatible products are mixed, the following phenomena will occur:

- (1) Primer peels off.
- (2) Adhesion between coatings is poor.
- (3) Curing is not completely.
- (4) Gloss is reduced.
- (5) Color accuracy is poor.
- (6) Coating is damaged (dent, bubble, wrinkle without gloss).

1.3 Precautions during Finish Varnish Maintenance and Repair

- (1) Avoid washing vehicle in direct sunlight.
- (2) Avoid using strong soap and chemical detergent.
- (3) Use the brushless automatic car-cleaning equipment.
- (4) Avoid using products containing acid and alkali.
- (5) Do not use a brush or broom to remove snow or ice.
- (6) After cleaning it completely, wipe the remaining rinse water immediately and forbid to make it dry on the surface. It is recommended to dry it with soft chamois leather.
- (7) When the defect on the surface can be eliminated by polishing, the vehicle can be polished.
- (8) If the surface defect is not serious, try to eliminate the repairing area.
- (9) Avoid removing too much celluloid paint, otherwise it cause the paint damage prematurely.
- (10) Use electric polishing device in strict accordance with the requirements recommended by the polishing manufacturer. Do not use wax or silicone products to cover the vortex imprinting (the imprinting will reappear soon and make the user unsatisfied).

1.4 Precautions of Anti-corrosion Treatment

- (1) When spraying sound insulation or anti-corrosive materials, preventive measures must be taken to avoid spraying into component openings (such as door locks, window regulator slots, window regulators and seat belt retractors) and any moving and rotating components. After spraying the materials, make sure that all drain holes on the body are open.
- (2) When using open flame to repair the body, it's necessary to remove the foamed sound insulation materials at the repair areas. When reinstalling the sound insulation materials, avoid inhaling dust that is harmful to the human body.
- (3) When performing the operation of this procedure, wear special protective glasses and gloves to prevent injury.
- (4) When the vehicle leaves the factory, it's necessary to deal with the body metal plates by means of spraying electrophoretic primer. After repairing and / or replacing parts, it's necessary to deal with all exposed metal surfaces with anti-rust primer.
- (5) If the original coating or anti-corrosive material is burnt during welding or heating operation, remove it and carry out anti-corrosion treatment again.

- (6) When carrying out collision service, the metal will be exposed, and it's necessary to spray these surfaces with special anti-corrosion materials.
- (7) Sealant can prevent water and dust from entering the vehicle and it has anti-corrosion function. The original sealed joint is obvious, if these seals are damaged, reseal to calibrate them. Reseal the connection of the newly replaced plate. The sealant used should be flexible after curing and painting. Fill the opening seams sealed with sealant with high consistency filler. Perform operation according to the instructions for the selected material.
- (8) The sound insulation material can control the general noise level in the vehicle. When the sound insulation layer is damaged due to service operation or replacing new panels, it's necessary to replace it with the same material.

2 System Overview

2.1 Description & Operation

■ Paint Coating Description

Paint is a kind of mixed liquid, which can be applied on a variety of base material. After the paint is dry, it forms a solid paint film to protect the base material and beautify the appearance. When the vehicle is delivered out of the factory, the following four layers of paint have been applied to make it have good anti-corrosion and gloss. It mainly consists of the following types:

- Electrophoretic primer
- Intermediate paint
- Pigmented paint
- Celluloid paint (transparent external coating)

■ Main functions of electrophoretic primer:

- Anti-rust
- Improve the adhesion during working
- Provide limited filling capability

■ Functions of intermediate paint:

- Filling capability
- Isolation/sealing
- Serve as the pigmented paint

■ Main functions of pigmented paint:

- Enrich the color
- Improve the gloss

■ Functions of celluloid paint:

- It contains ultraviolet-proof materials, which can resist the ultraviolet rays in the sun.
- Resist the corrosion of environmental dust (acid rain) on the paint surface.
- Make the paint surface friction resistant.
- Make paint surface have better gloss.

■ Requirements of Spraying Paint

- Restore the repaired part to its original appearance; During repair, it is necessary to observe the spraying paint process specified by the manufacturer, refer to Tips on Spraying Process of Paint with Rigid Surface.

2.2 Daily Maintenance of Vehicle Paint Surface

The maintenance of the body aims mainly to prevent the early aging and damage of the coating to keep the body clean and beautiful. In addition, keeping the body clean helps to find the damage of the body coating at any time to repair it in time.

■ Washing Body

- It's necessary to wash the body frequently to keep good paint surface and beauty of the body. However, it should not be performed in strong sunlight or in low temperature condition. In any case, do not wash it until body surface cools. Wash the dirt on the body surface with pressure water flow when using spraying-water washing, and then scrub the body surface with soft and clean sponge or towel from top to bottom. If car detergent is used, wash it with large amount of water. When using the high-pressure washing machine, do not turn the nozzle directly to transmission, steering gear, radiator, engine cover, rubber

protective parts of various components and external ornaments. After washing the car, use high-quality white gauze to dry the body surface. Never use gasoline, kerosene, trichloroethylene, strong alkaline water and alcohol to scrub the body surface and organic glass surface.

■ Cleaning Body

- Before using the wax on the car body coating, remove the oxide, road dirt, oil stain and the dirt that cannot be cleaned firstly. Do not scrape off the asphalt or gasoline stains on the body and bumper, and do not use gasoline or fabric decontamination agent, but use special decontamination products to remove them in time.
- For cleaning of body exterior ornaments and light alloy, firstly use soapy water or water that adds a small amount of decontamination agent or detergent, and then wash with a large amount of water. For scrubbing of windshield and door glass, it is better to use the washer fluid supplied by EXEED service station so as to obtain high-quality scrubbing effect, instead of using silicone based products.

■ Waxing and Polishing Body

- Waxing the body surface is one effective method that protects the gloss of paint coating surface. Wax can protect the paint coating surface well because after waxing, enough grease is kept on the paint surface, which cuts off the contact between water, air and the paint coating, and the coating is free from oxidization, which can effectively prevent the body surface from being eroded. Before waxing, make sure that the body surface is clean and dry; if the paint surface is discolored or oxidized, it's necessary to paint it before waxing.
- It's better to use the waxing tool for polishing wax. If not, wax it with a soft napkin or a soft and lint-free cotton or flannel. Because waxing will change in the sunlight in most cases, sometimes there will be spots on the body surface when waxing in the sunlight, do not wax it in the direct sunlight.
- Water droplet test can be used to check if waxing the body is good. If the water forms a water ball on the body surface, it proves there is the wax layer, otherwise, it needs to be cleaned and waxed.
- Do not wipe off the wax on the body too early and polish it after drying. Polishing the body paint should be carried out when the surface is clean and dry with a polisher (or by hand). Polishing any plastic parts is forbidden.

■ Restoring Scratch on Body Surface

- When the scratch on the body surface is not serious and does not reach the metal, the special paint repair spraying tank can be used. Spraying the paint marked the same color to the scratch surface. The repaired paint will be dry in the air.
- If the scratch on the body surface has damaged the metal with rust stain, remove the rust firstly, then scratch the putty with rubber or nylon scraper, and then perform general repair treatment for the paint and coating surface.

■ Maintenance of Bottom Protective Layer

- There is a protective layer on the bottom of the car, which has a permanent anti-chemical corrosion and mechanical trauma. The car bottom may contact with the road during driving, causing damage to the protective layer of the car bottom. It needs regular inspection and timely service.

■ Treatment of Cavity Anti-corrosion

- If the external temperature is very high, the wax may flow out of the cavity, which can be removed with a plastic scraper. At this time, pay attention to safety and environmental protection. All cavities that may be corroded on the car have been filled with wax for anti-corrosion before leaving factory. Maintenance is free in general condition.

3 Specifications

3.1 Paint Specifications

No.	Material Name	Note
1	Khaki white pearl paint	/
2	Blood red flashing finish paint	/
3	Princess blue metallic finish paint	/
4	Dazzling orange metallic finish paint	/

No.	Material Name	Note
5	Carbon crystal black metallic finish paint	/
6	Celadon gray metallic finish paint	/

4 Diagnostic Information and Steps

4.1 Problem Symptoms Table

Hint:

Use symptoms table below to help determine cause of problem. The black box in the table means the treatment method of product defects.

Symptom	Cause Analysis	Treatment Method
Efflorescence	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The paint film is strongly eroded, such as strong ultraviolet ray. 2. The paint mix ratio is not correct during application. 3. Light and weather resistance of coating is poor. 4. Do not wash the car frequently or do not wash it completely. 5. The selected car cleaner is not suitable or the polishing wax is too coarse. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Peeled off Paint on Plastic Parts	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The adhesion between the coating and the base material is too poor or the upper coating is harder than the lower coating. 2. The coating is too thick, and the paint film is eroded by moisture, acid and alkali in the air. 3. The recoatability of the lower coating is not good, or the treatment is not good; the upper coating have defects such as pinholes, exposed bottom, etc. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Honeycomb cracks	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Do not mix primer coating completely before spraying it. 2. Finish paint coating is too thick. 3. Floating coating is too thick. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bird Droppings Erosion	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Bird droppings erode. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment (mild erosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment (moderate erosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair (- severe erosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Abrasion Imprinting	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The paint film harness is not enough. 2. Hard objects scratch. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment (minor scratches). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

Symptom	Cause Analysis	Treatment Method
		2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment (rough scratches). ■ 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. □ 4. Local spraying paint and repair (-scratch). ■
Corrosion	1. The paint film at the edge is thinner. 2. Collision damage causes corrosion. 3. Acid and alkali erode.	1. Polishing and beatifying treatment. □ 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment. □ 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. □ 4. Local spraying paint and repair (It is necessary to repair metal plate before spraying paint and repairing if there is serious corrosion). ■

Symptom	Cause Analysis	Treatment Method
Peeled off Paint	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The adhesion between the coating and the base material is too poor or the upper coating is harder than the lower coating. 2. The coating is too thick, and the paint film is eroded by moisture, acid and alkali in the air. 3. The recoatability of the lower coating is not good, or the treatment is not good. 4. The upper coating have defects such as pinholes, exposed bottom, etc. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair (It is necessary to repair metal plate before spraying paint and repairing if there is serious corrosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Acid Rain Erosion	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Acid rain erodes 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment (mild erosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment (moderate erosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair (-severe erosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Loss of Gloss	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. The paint film is strongly eroded by acid, alkali, electric arc, sea water and salt mist. 2. The maintenance method of the paint film is not correct in the severe condition. 3. Durability of paint itself is not enough. 4. When the paint is applied, the incorrect mix ratio causes poor durability of the paint film. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment (mild loss of gloss). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment (moderate loss of gloss). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair (-severe loss of gloss). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>
Bubble	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. When the paint film is exposed to the humid environment for a long time, the moisture penetrates into the paint film and moisture raises bubbles when the temperature rises. 2. Base materials are corroded by penetrating materials. 3. The paint film is eroded by gasoline, acid and alkali. 	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 2. General grinding, polishing and beatifying treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 3. Depth grinding, polishing and refurbishing treatment. <input type="checkbox"/> 4. Local spraying paint and repair (It is necessary to repair metal plate before spraying paint and repairing if there is serious corrosion). <input checked="" type="checkbox"/>

5 Removal & Installation

5.1 Examples of Common Paint Film Defects Treatment Process

- (1) Clean the surface to be polished with degreasing material before polishing.
- (2) Make the sponge wet firstly and squeeze out the excessive water.
- (3) Apply a small amount of polishing wax to the surface to be polished, and adjust the speed of polishing machine.
- (4) After the sponge contacts the paint surface, start the machine with the speed of 2500 - 3000 r/min. Then press it for 3 - 5 seconds gently before polishing.

⚠ Caution

- **During operation, keep the machine moving smoothly and gently, and avoid operating too long to avoid overheating and burning the paint surface.**

(5) Wipe off excessive polishing wax with waxing cloth.

5.2 Example of General Grinding, Polishing and Beatifying Treatment Process

- (1) Clean the surface to be polished with degreasing material before polishing.
- (2) Apply a appropriate amount of polishing paste to the surface to be polished, adjust the speed of polishing machine.
- (3) After the polishing wool pad contacts the paint surface, start the machine with the speed of 2500 - 3000 r/min.

⚠ Caution

- **Keep the machine moving smoothly and gently and avoid grinding too much. Make sure that the grinding time is as short as possible and the grinding area is as small as possible.**

(4) Make the sponge wet firstly and squeeze out the excessive water; Apply a small amount of polishing wax to the surface to be polished, and start the machine with the speed of 2500 - 3000 r/min after the sponge contacts the paint surface. Then press it for 3 - 5 seconds gently before polishing.

⚠ Caution

- **During operation, keep the machine moving smoothly and gently, and avoid operating too long to avoid overheating and burning the paint surface.**

5.3 Example of Depth Grinding and Polishing Treatment Process

- (1) Grind the damaged paint surface with # 2000 waterproof abrasive paper, make it parallel and contact with the paint surface to be ground, and carry out circular grinding.
- (2) Clean grinding dust on the surface.
- (3) Apply a appropriate amount of polishing paste to the surface to be polished, adjust the speed of polishing machine.
- (4) After the polishing wool pad contacts the paint surface, start the machine with the speed of 2500 - 3000 r/min.

⚠ Caution

- **Keep the machine moving smoothly and gently and avoid grinding too much. Make sure that the grinding time is as short as possible (3 - 5 seconds) and the grinding area is as small as possible.**

(5) Make the sponge wet firstly and squeeze out the excessive water; Apply a small amount of polishing wax to the surface to be polished, and start the machine with the speed of 2500 - 3000 r/min after the sponge contacts the paint surface. Then press it for 3 - 5 seconds gently before polishing.

⚠ Caution

- **During operation, keep the machine moving smoothly and gently, and avoid operating too long to avoid overheating and burning the paint surface.**

5.4 Tips on Spraying Process of Paint with Rigid Surface**Hint:**

Take the wing as an example to illustrate the local spraying (paint repair) process.

⚠ Caution

- **All paint repairs on rigid surfaces must comply with Chery standards. Confirm the repair area and select the repair scope, such as partial repair, whole pair repair, and whole vehicle repair; if it is collision damage, perform the corresponding repair after repairing metal plate or spray paint after replacing parts according to the damage condition.**

- (1) If the scratch on the wing is severe, use local spraying (paint repair) process.
- (2) Grind (circularly grind) the damaged paint surface with # P500 wet (waterproof) abrasive paper.
- (3) Degrease and clean it with degreasant after grinding.
- (4) When spraying he primer, try to control the scope of the primer and make sure the coating at the edge should be gradual instead of stair-step shape.
- (5) Flash off for 4 - 5 minutes, and dry it and bake it for 20 - 30 minutes. The temperature of baking finish house is 70 - 80 °C.
- (6) After baking, carry out the wet polishing with # P800-1000 abrasive paper.
- (7) Grind it with # 2000 fine waterproof abrasive paper and expand grinding range.
- (8) After polishing is completed, use sticky gauze to remove dust before spraying the paint.
- (9) Spray the base coat.
 - Air pressure: 150 - 200 kPa
 - Spraying distance: 20 - 30 cm

⚠ Caution

- **The spraying range is slightly wider in one layer than in one layer for transition.**

- (10) Flash off for 2 - 3 minutes, and spray the second base coat until the interface position is not obvious.
 - Air pressure: 150 - 200 kPa
 - Spraying distance: 20 - 30 cm
- (11) Flash off for 4 - 5 minutes, and dry it for 20 - 30 minutes.
 - The temperature of baking finish house is 70 - 80 °C
- (12) After drying is completed, use sticky gauze to remove dust before spraying the varnish.
- (13) When spraying celluloid paint, the spraying range should cover the base coat range completely.
 - Air pressure: 150 - 200 kPa
 - Spraying distance: 20 - 30 cm
- (14) Flash off for 2 - 3 minutes, and spray the second celluloid paint, the spraying range should cover the first varnish range completely.
 - Air pressure: 150 - 200 kPa
 - Spraying distance: 20 - 30 cm
- (15) After spraying celluloid paint is completed, immediately replace it with barge saliva or add interface additive or thinner into the original celluloid paint.
- (16) Spray barge saliva or diluted celluloid paint for 2 - 3 times at interface position.
- (17) Bake it for 20 - 30 minutes in the baking finish house.
 - The temperature of baking finish house is 70 - 80 °C

5.5 Repairing Procedure of Paint Surface on Plastic Part Surface

Three basic requirements for the paint surface repairing on plastic part surface:

- The paint and plastic have certain adhesion without damaging mechanical properties.
- The paint film shall be flexible enough to deform with the plastic without cracks.
- The original particles and coarse texture on some plastic part surfaces.

Repairing procedure of paint surface on plastic part surface:

- Repairing of paint surface on plastic primer refers to the above local spraying process, and pay attention to low-temperature baking.

- Baking condition is 70 - 80 °C for 20 - 30 minutes.